





THE  
Compleat Geographer:  
OR, THE  
Chorography *and* Topography  
Of all the known Parts of the  
EARTH.

To which is premis'd an Introduction to Geography,  
And a Natural History of the Earth and the Elements.

CONTAINING  
A True and Perfect Account of

- I. The Situation, Bounds and Extent, Climate, Soil, Productions, History, Trade, Manufactures: The Religion, Manners and Customs of the People; with the Revolutions, Conquests and other Changes  
*Of all the Countries on the Earth.*
- II. The several Provinces that every Kingdom or State is Divided into.
- III. The Principal Cities and most Considerable Towns in the World, the Magnitude, Principal Buildings, Antiquity, Present State, Trade, History, &c. As also the Situation, with the Distance and Bearing from other Towns: Together with all necessary Pieces of Natural History.

The Whole Containing

The Substance of at least an Hundred and Fifty Books of Modern Travels, faithfully  
Abstracted and Digested into Local Order;

WHEREBY

The Present State of the most Remote Countries is truly shewn, and the Obsolete and  
Fabulous Accounts of Former Writers wholly Expung'd.

To which are added MAPS of every Country, fairly Engraven on Copper,  
according to the Latest Surveys, and Newest Discoveries, most Engrav'd  
by HERMAN MOLL.

*The* THIRD EDITION.

Wherein the Descriptions of ASIA, AFRICA and AMERICA are Com-  
pos'd anew from the Relations of Travellers of the Best Repute, especially  
such as have appear'd within Thirty or Forty Years last past.

L O N D O N

Printed for A W N S H A M and J O H N C H U R C H I L L at the *Black-Swan*  
in *Pater-Noster-Row*.

And T I M O T H Y C H I L D E. at the *White-Hart*, at the West-End of St.  
*Paul's Church-Yard*. M.DCC.IX.



# ADVERTISEMENT

Concerning this

## NEW EDITION.

**A**S the Knowledge of Foreign Countries is a Science that no Man of either Learning or Business can excusably be without, so there is no certain way of attaining it, but by consulting the Travellers that have been upon the Spot. But the Number of Travellers is so Great, and their Writings so Voluminous, that the Study of them is Tedious; and considering the many unnecessary Things contain'd in such Writings, the Reading 'em is even Irsome. Wherefore an Abstract of what they have said, to the purpose, of Geography, and their Accounts of Places dispos'd in right Method, cannot but be acceptable to the Publick.

The following Sheets contain that, namely a faithful Description of all the Countries of the Earth, according to the Reports of Modern Travellers. The whole Book is nothing else but the Words of the most Credible Travellers and Historians, and most Judicious Geographers, dispos'd in a regular local Method. And altho' this may be call'd a discredit to our Book, as being only a Collection of what others have said already, yet when it is considered that no one Man can possibly view the whole Earth in a Life-time, and there never having happen'd a juncture wherein any Set of Men have at one time taken a Survey of all Countries, and concurr'd together in one general Description; it is impossible to come at a true Knowledge of the Earth but by this Method.

Had former Writers in Geography taken this Method, we had not had such mistaken Notions of Distant Countries; if the later Writers had not Transcrib'd only those that went before em, this Treatise had been less necessary; but since no Body has yet had recourse anew to the Fountain Heads, and since the last Age has produc'd a new Set of Travellers to all the most distant Parts of the Earth, nothing can be more seasonable and instructive than this Work.

As we have with the greatest Care endeavour'd to Write the exact Truth every where, and admit nothing that wanted good Authority; We have been also careful to avoid all redundancy, and have set down only so much as a judicious Reader will desire for his Information, without extending the Matter tediously to pall his Appetite. And we trust we have been so Happy in this, that it will be very difficult for any Body after us to observe an exacter Medium.

Altho' Geography be the Subject we undertake, yet to illustrate that, we have introduc'd a due Portion of the History of every Nation; but in this too we have been mindful to avoid Prolixity, remembering that it is but a Collateral Part, and only subservient to our proper Design. When Dr. Heylin in his Work enlarg'd so far in the Historical Part, it might indeed be necessary, because at that Time there were not many Histories of Foreign Nations extant in the English Tongue, but since of late Years that defect is so largely supply'd, it would be giving our Readers a double Trouble and Expence to Transcribe 'em.



# ADVERTISEMENT.

It, we hope we have omitted nothing that an Ingenuous Reader would desire in a Work of this Nature; nor have inserted any thing that such a One would wish to be Expung'd.

A Blame perhaps may be laid upon us for sending out the last Edition, without the Improvements that are now made. To that we answer, That these Improvements were then intended, and would have then been made, if an unforeseen Incident had not precipitated that Publication; for when the Maps were all Engrav'd, and Part of the Book Printed, a sudden and unexpected Notice was given of an intended New Edition of Dr. Heylin's *Cosmography*, wherein it was suppos'd the New Editor would have inserted the Observations of Modern Travellers, and renew'd that Learned Author's Descriptions. For this Reason the Design that was then on foot, namely, To abstract all the Modern Travels into Asia, Africa and America, whereby to make the Descriptions of those Parts of the World as Compleat as that of Europe, was by necessity shorten'd. But now that Editor has shewn himself, and let us see that our first Design is perfectly unperform'd by him, we have Resum'd it, and from no less than an Hundred of the Best and Newest Travels, have drawn up a true and full Description of Asia, Africa and America; which we hope is so Accurate as to need no Alteration, and is as full as we ever purpose to make it; and therefore the Buyers of this Edition will be in no danger of having it hereafter Depretiated.

It is necessary to Note, that in this Edition the Additions are as follow.

In the Introduction is added a Natural History of the Earth, Translated from the *Physica, sive de Rebus Corporeis* of Monsieur le Clerc, wherein all the Modern Observations and Discoveries, proper for Illustrating that Subject, are exhibited, and the Opinions of the best Philosophers shewn, concerning all the Qualities and Effects of the Elements.

In Europe all the Alterations and Additions in the several Kingdoms, which the great Actions abroad have made necessary, and all the new Informations that late Travellers have given, are inserted. And because Spain is a Country more talk'd of now than formerly, we have drawn out an entire new Description of that Kingdom from many Writers of that and the neighbouring Nations.

The Descriptions of Asia, Africa and America are Written wholly anew, and so ample Accounts of every Part of those remote Countries are here given, that the Reader may with small Pains acquire almost as intimate a Knowledge of them, as he has of his Native Land.

In the Index of Ancient Names of Places, we have given the Modern Names apposite, that the Reader may at one View be inform'd of what perhaps was all he sought, without the trouble of turning to the Page.

This has encreas'd the Bulk of the Book to Forty Sheets more than it was, and therefore necessarily enhans'd the Price. But it must be remember'd, that in this one Volume the whole Earth is Describ'd, and the Buyer sees at once what he is to expect.



# The Authors Abstracted in this Work.

## OF EUROPE.

**N**O Country has been more judiciously described than *Great Britain* and *Ireland*, by the Learned and Indefatigable Mr. *Camden*, which the Additions of the Skillful Dr. *Gibson*, in the late Edition, renew'd and supply'd; and therefore, when we say, that our Account of those Countries is an Abridgment of that, and made by the Learned Editor, we suppose our Reader will grant it to be a good one.

Monsieur *de la Croix*, Geographer to the French King, having in his Geography, given a very ample Account of *France* in its present State, we have chosen to Translate him entire, and have taken the liberty to add to him out of several late Travellers, as Dr. *Burnet*, Dr. *Northleigh*, Dr. *Lister*, &c. and our own Knowledge. Whereby the Description of that Country is render'd as compleat as can be desired in a Work of this Nature.

The Description of the *Netherlands* is Collected from very many Books of Travels and Histories, which the many Wars there have occasion'd to be very full of the Accounts of Places: This together with our own Knowledge, has enabled us to give, we hope, a very Satisfactory, as well as true Description of that part of *Europe*.

For the Description of *Germany*, we acknowledge our selves beholden to the Learned and Judicious, then Mr. *Nicolson*, now Lord Bishop of *Carlisle*, whose Travels over a great part of that Country, added to his great Reading, render'd him perfectly capable to give the World an ample Description of it. If therefore we confess to have Abridg'd his two Volumes of the *English Atlas*, we trust our Reader will rather Applaud than Censure us.

*Switzerland* and *Italy*, being Countries frequently travel'd thro', the Reader will believe we cannot err much there; we consulted Dr. *Burnet* and Mr. *Misson*, as the most Modern, and many others of earlier date.

Our Accounts of *Spain* and *Portugal* have been improv'd out of *Mariana*, and other Historians, *Poblaciones de Espana por Mendez*. *Sylva Excellencias de Espana de Gregorio Lopez Madera*. *Antiquas Po-*

*blaciones de Poza*. *Cosas Memorables de Espanna de Marinco Siculo*, &c. *Descripcion de Portugal de Duarto Nurex de Leon*. *Excellencias de Portugal de Antonio de Sousa Macedo*, &c. Together with the Modern Travels of Mr. *Willoughby* and others, &c.

*Scandinavia*, or the Northern Kingdoms of *Denmark*, *Sweden* and *Norway*, were so amply describ'd by Mr. *Todd*, now D. D. and Prebendary of *Carlisle*, in that Volume of the *English Atlas* he Compiled, that in Abridging him, and consulting some later Travels, as Mr. *Moldsworth*, &c. we have render'd our Account of those Countries very perfect.

Dr. *Connor* having lived some Years in *Poland*, and made Observations all the time, we may allow his Account of that Nation to bear some Credit, and therefore by Illustrating our Description out of him and some others, we have, we think improv'd it.

The best General Account of *Muscovy* we could Collect out of former Geographies and Atlas's, we have improv'd out of *Olearius*, the Earl of *Carlisle*, some very Modern Anonimous Writers, *Adam Brandt* and his Excellency, *Ysbrandts Ides*.

*Hungary* having been the Theatre of long Wars, the Histories have furnished us with pretty good Accounts of the chief Cities in that and the Neighbouring Countries, which we have improv'd out of Dr. *Edward Brown*, and others.

The Learned Sir *George Wheeler*, by his Travels thro' *Greece*, has enabled us to Illustrate our Description of that part very satisfactorily. And in the other Provinces of *Turkey* in *Europe*, we have pick'd up the best Lights we could out of divers Authors.

Many small Pieces which we have consulted, we have omitted to name, lest we tire the Reader. Among those are the *English Gentleman's Travels thro' Portugal, Spain, Italy, Germany, Sweden, Denmark and the Netherlands*, in the Years 1693, to 1697. An Account of a Journey out of *Poland* into *Muscovy*, and of the Tumult occasion'd in that Court by the present Czar's Sister. A Letter concerning the Siege of *Azoph* and *Kasikermen*. The *Sieur de Beauplan's* Description of the *Ukrain*, and several Provinces of *Poland*. &c.

*A Catalogue of the Books of Travels and Authentick Histories, out of which the Descriptions of ASIA, AFRICA and AMERICA, are almost intirely Extracted.*

*John Bapt. Tavernier's Six Voyages to Persia, India, &c.*

Monsieur *de Thevenot's Travels* into the *Levant*, *Egypt*, thro' *Syria*, and *Mesopotamia* into *Persia* and *India*, between the Years 1660 and 1670.

Seignior *John Francis Gemelli Careri*, L. L. D. his Compleat Travels round the World by Land: thro' *Turkey, Persia, India, China*, the *Phillippine Islands* thence cross the *South Sea* to *Acapulco* in *New Spain*, and thence by Land to *Mexico*, thence to *Vera Cruz*, to the *Havana*, and so by Sea to *Europe*. Perform'd in the Years 1693, to 1697.

The Travels of the Ambassadors from the Duke of *Holstein* to *Persia*, by the way of *Muscovy* and the *Caspian Sea*. Written by their Secretary, *J. Olearius*.

*John Albert de Mandelslo's* continuation of the same Voyage into *India*.

Sir *George Wheeler's Travels* into *Greece* and *Asia Minor*,

Dr. *Thomas Smith's Survey* of the Seven Churches of *Asia Minor*, in the Year 1670.

Mr. *Sandy's Travels* into *Egypt, Palestine, Syria, Asia Minor*, &c.



## Books Abstracted in this Work.

Mr. Manderall's Journey from *Aleppo* to *Jerusalem*, in the Year 1697.  
 Dr. Leonard Rauwolf's Travels in *Syria*, *Palestine*, *Armenia*, *Mesopotamia*, *Assyria*, *Chaldea*, &c.  
 Sir John Chardin's Voyage to *Persia* by the way of the *Black-Sea* and *Caucasus*, in the Years 1671, 2 and 3.  
 Father Aterill's Travels to the *Caspian Sea*, and thro' part of *Tartary*, endeavouring a new way to *China*, in the Years 1655, 6.  
 Sir Thomas Herbert's Travels into *Persia*, *India*, &c.  
 His Excellency E. Ysbrandes Ides Journey from *Moscow*, over Land thro' *Tartary* to *China*, in the Years 1692, 3. &c.  
 Father Verbeest's Journey, attending the King of *China* from *Peking* to the East part of *Tartary*, in the Year 1682, and his Journey the next Year into *Tartary*, 600 Miles Westward.  
 Sir Thomas Roe's Journal of his Embassy from King *James I.* to the *Great Mogul*.  
 Mr. John Nieuboff's Travels into the *East-Indies*, in the Years 1660, to 1672.  
 Mr. Philip Baldaeus Description of *Malabar*, *Coromandel*, *Ceylon*, &c. where he resided many Years, between 1650 and 1670.  
 Capt. Knox's Relation of the Island *Ceylon*, where he resided above 20 Years, viz. from 1657, to 1679.  
 Monsieur Bernier's History of the Empire of the *Great Mogul*.  
 Monsieur Leubiere's Embassy to *Siam*, in the Years 1687, and 1688.  
 Father Borri's Account of *Cochinchina*.  
 Dampier's Voyage round the World, 1688.  
 Father Dominic Fernandez Navarette's Account of *China*, where he resided a Missionary many Years.  
 Father Gabr. Magaillan's Description of *China*, where he resided from 1640, to 1677.  
 A Description of *China*, by Dionysius Kao, a Christian Native of the Countrey, brought thence by his Excellency E. Ysbrandes Ides.  
 Father le Compté's Observations, Political, Natural and Topographical on *China*.  
 Geo. Candidius Account of the Island *Formosa*.  
 The exact Description of the Kingdom of *Japan*, written in *Dutch* by Francis Caron, who liv'd long there, was Master of the *Japoneze* Language, and serv'd the *East-India* Company, as Director of their Trade in *Japan*. Together with the Notes upon him by Hagenan, who also liv'd a long time there.  
 Xavier's Epistles &c.  
 Boland's Observations on the Strait of *Gibraltar*.

**T**HE several general Descriptions of *AFRICA*,  
 Written by Les Africanus, Marmol la Croix, &c.  
*Bibliothèque Orientale* at *Herbelot*.  
 Emanuel de Faria y Sousa *Africa Portuguesa*.  
 Jean Baptiste Gramaye *Africa Illustrata*.  
 M. Lizio Sanuto. *Geographia dell' Africa*.  
*Histoire & Description de Maroc*, &c. par Monette.  
*Etat des Royaumes de Barbarie*.  
 Rise and Progress of the *Xeriffian* Family in *Barbary*.  
 Description of *Algier*.  
 Martin Baumgarten's Travels into *Egypt*.  
 Mr. Sandys's Travels into *Egypt*.  
 Monsieur Thevenot's, ditto.  
 Dr. Leon Rauwolf's, ditto.  
 Mr. Greaves's Description of the *Pyramids*.  
 Voyage to *Mauritania*, by Roland Frejus.  
*Historia del Ethiopia per Telles*, being a Collection

out of several Relations of *Ethiopia*, made by the *Jesuites* Missionaries.  
 Besman's Description of *Guinea*.  
 Richard Jobson's Voyage for the Discovery of the *Gold Trade*.  
 Ja. Lange's Voyage to *Cape Verde*, in 1621.  
 Mich. Angelo & Den. Carli's Voyage to *Congo*.  
 Fer. Meralla da Sorrento's Voyage to *Congo*.  
 Ten Rhyne's Account of the *Cape of Good Hope*, and of the *Hottentots*.

**H**erera's General History of the *WEST-INDIES*.  
 De Laet's Hist. of the New World, or Description of the *West-Indies*.  
 The Life of Christopher Columbus, the Discoverer of *AMERICA*.  
 D'Acosta's Natural History of the *West-Indies*.  
 The several Voyages of Sir Walter Raleigh, Mr. Candish, Hudson, Davis, Fr. Sparrey, and other the first English Discoverers of *America*.  
 Ferd. Magaillan's Voyage and Discovery of the *South Sea*.  
 Other Navigators, thro' the *Magellanick Straights*, as Sibald de Weert, Corneilson, Spillbergen, &c.  
 Sir Richard Hawkins Voyage into the *South-Sea*.  
 History of the Conquest of *Mexico* by the Spaniards.  
 Account of the *Spanish West-Indies*, by Alex. Uryna and others.  
 Gage's Survey of the *West-Indies*.  
 John Monck's Voyage to *Hudson's Straights*.  
 Accounts of the first English Plantations in *Virginia* by several.  
 The Discoveries of John Lederer from *Virginia* to the West of *Carolina*.  
 The present State of *Virginia*, lately Publish'd.  
 Accounts of the Discoveries and first Settlements in *New England*.  
 Account of *Bermudas*, from Captain Smith and others.—*New York*, *Maryland*, *Pensylvania*, *Newfoundland*, &c.  
 Account of the first French Voyages to *North America*.  
 Samuel Champlain's Voyage to *Canada*.  
 Monsieur Mont's Voyage to *New France*.  
 Monsieur Hennepin's Travels in *North America*.  
 De la Salle's Travels, ditto.  
 Bar. de la Hontan's Voyage, ditto.  
 De la Barre's Expedition against the *Iroquoise*.  
 Denonville's, ditto.  
 Voyage to *Florida*, by Pamph. Narvaez.  
 — Ditto, by Ferdin. de Soto.  
*Relacao Annal das Cousas que fizerao os Padres da Companhia na India, e no Brazil*, that is, an account of the Proceedings of the Missionaries in *Brazil*, &c.  
 Nieuboff's Travels in *Brazil*.  
 Ant. Seppé's Voyage to *Paraguay*.  
 Nich. del Tecbo, ditto.  
 Alonso de Ovalle's Historical Relation of *Chili*.  
 Cieza's Description of *Peru*.  
*Historia del Descubrimiento y Conquista del Peru*, de Augustin de Zorate.  
*Historia des Isles Antilles*.  
 History of the *Caribbe Islands*.  
 Ligon's History of *Barbadoes*.  
 Dampier's Voyages.  
 The History of the *Buccaniers* in the *South-Sea*.  
 Sir John Narborough's Voyage.  
 With many others, which we have not room to mention.



# THE CONTENTS.

7

## *An Introduction to GEOGRAPHY.*

CHAP. I. <i>Of the UNIVERSE,</i>	P. iii
Chap. II. <i>Of the SPHERE,</i>	vii
Chap. III. <i>Of the Inhabitants of the Earth, with respect to CLIMATES, SHADOWS, SITUATION, &amp;c. And also a Definition of the Terms LONGITUDE and LATITUDE,</i>	x
Chap. IV. <i>Concerning the EARTH; its Figure, Dimensions, &amp;c. And a Table of Measures,</i>	xiv
Chap. V. <i>Of TERMS used in GEOGRAPHY, Short and necessary Instructions to Beginners for the understanding of Maps,</i>	xv xvi
ADVERTISEMENT <i>concerning this Sett of Maps, and the Correction of LONGITUDE by Modern Observations,</i>	xvii

*A Natural History of the ELEMENTS: Or a Philosophical View of the Sublunary World. In 2 Books.*

BOOK I. <i>Of the Earth and Sea,</i>	xix
Chap. I. <i>Of the EARTH consider'd in its self,</i>	xix
Chap. II. <i>Of Subterraneous Things in general, and first of Sulphur and Bitumen,</i>	xx
Chap. III. <i>Of FIRE in General, and more especially of Subterraneous Fires, and Earthquakes occasion'd by them,</i>	xxii
Chap. IV. <i>Of METALS,</i>	xxv
Chap. V. <i>Of such FOSSILS as are Calcin'd by Fire,</i>	xxx
Chap. VI. <i>Of the MAGNET or LOADSTONE, and its Properties,</i>	xxxiii
Chap. VII. <i>Of FOUNTAINS and RIVERS,</i>	xxxvi
Chap. VIII. <i>Of the SEA,</i>	xxxix

## BOOK II. *Of the AIR and METEORS.*

Chap. I. <i>Of the AIR,</i>	xlii
Chap. II. <i>Of Meteors in General, and Vapours arising from the Water, whence Fogs, Clouds, Dews, Rains, Snow and Hail are produced,</i>	xliv
Chap. III. <i>Of the Rainbow, Halo's, and Parrhelij.</i>	xlv
Chap. IV. <i>Of Fiery Exhalations, Thunder, Lightening, the Thunder-bolt, &amp;c.</i>	xlvi
Chap. V. <i>Of WIND</i>	1

## *GEOGRAPHY, Or a particular Description of all the known Parts of the EARTH.*

*A View of the Earth as it was known to the Ancients.*

*of EUROPE in General.*

*of GREAT BRITAIN in General,* P. 1

*of ENGLAND.*

Cornwal, p. 8. Devonshire, 9. Dorsetshire, 10. Somersetshire, 11. Wiltshire, 12. Hampshire, 13.

Berkshire, 14. Surrey. Sussex, 15. Kent, 16. Gloucestershire, 18. Oxfordshire, 18. Buckinghamshire. Bedfordshire, 20. Hertfordshire. Middlesex, 21. Essex, 23. Suffolk, 23. Norfolk, 24. Cambridgeshire, 25. Huntingdonshire. Northamptonshire, 26. Leicestershire, 27. Rutlandshire. Lincolnshire, 28. Nottinghamshire. Derbyshire, 29. Warwickshire. Worcestershire. 30. Staffordshire. Shropshire, 31. Cheshire, 32. Herefordshire, 33. Yorkshire. West-Riding, 33. East-Riding, 34. North-Riding, 35. Richmondshire, 35. Durham, 35. Lancashire, 36. Westmoreland, 37. Cumberland, 37. Northumberland 38.

W A L E S, 40  
Radnorshire. Brecknockshire, 40. Monmouthshire. Glamorganhire, 41. Caermarthen. Pembroke. Cardigan-Shires, 42. Montgomery. Merioneth. Caernarvon-Shires, 43. Anglesey, 44. Denbigh. Flintshire, 44.

*The ISLE of Man,* 45

NORTH-BRITAIN, or SCOTLAND, 46

*The Shires of Scotland,* 47  
*The Extent of the Dioceses,* 48  
*The Synods and Presbyteries,* 49  
*The Chief Cities and Towns,* 49  
*Ancient Places,* 51

I R E L A N D, 52

*The Provinces and Counties,* 54  
*The Principal Cities and Towns,* 54  
*Ancient Places,* 55  
J E R S E Y and G A R N S E Y, 56

## F R A N C E.

Chap. I. <i>Of France in General,</i>	57
Sect. 2. <i>Of the Ancient State,</i>	59
Sect. 3. <i>Of the French Kings,</i>	61
Sect. 4. <i>Of the Government, Laws &amp;c.</i>	62
Sect. 5. <i>Of Arch-Bishopricks, Bishopricks and Universities of France,</i>	64
Sect. 6. <i>Of the Extent of the French King's Dominions, &amp;c.</i>	65
<i>The Governments and Provinces,</i>	67
Chap. II. <i>Normandy,</i>	68
Chap. III. <i>Picardy,</i>	73
Chap. IV. <i>Champaign,</i>	76
Chap. V. <i>The Isle of France,</i>	80
Chap. VI. <i>Bretaign,</i>	87
Chap. VII. <i>Orleanois,</i>	91
Chap. VIII. <i>Burgundy,</i>	98
Chap. IX. <i>Lyonnois,</i>	103
Chap. X. <i>Guienne,</i>	106
Chap. XI. <i>Languedoc,</i>	112
Chap. XII. <i>Provence,</i>	117

Chap. XIII.



# The CONTENTS.

Chap. XIII. Dauphine,	122
Chap. XIV. Lorraine,	124

## The LOW-COUNTREYS.

<i>Of the NETHERLANDS in General,</i>	127
<i>The Ancient State,</i>	129
<i>The Succession in the House of Burgundy,</i>	130
<i>The Present State of the Spanish Netherlands in General,</i>	131
<i>The PROVINCES, viz.</i>	
Chap. I. Artois	132
Chap. II. Flanders	133
Chap. III. Brabant	137
Chap. IV. Hainault	142
Chap. V. Cambresis,	144
Chap. VI. Luxemburg,	144
Chap. VII. Namur,	145
Chap. VIII. Limburg,	146
Chap. IX. Bishoprick of Liege.	146

## The UNITED-NETHERLANDS.

Chap. X. <i>The United Netherlands in General,</i>	149
Chap. XI. Holland and Westfriesland,	153
Chap. XII. Zealand,	160
Chap. XIII. Utrecht,	162
Chap. XIV. Gelderland and Zutphen,	163
Chap. XV. Overissel,	166
Chap. XVI. Friesland,	168
Chap. XVII. Groningen,	169

## GERMANY.

Chap. I. <i>Of Germany in General,</i>	170
<i>Inhabitants, Ancient State, &amp;c.</i>	171
<i>Of the Power of the Emperor,</i>	175
<i>King of the Romans, Electors, &amp;c.</i>	175
<i>Imperial Cities and Hanse Towns,</i>	176
<i>The Diet of the Empire,</i>	177
<i>Courts, Arch-Bishops, Bishops and Universities,</i>	177
<i>The Circles and Territories,</i>	178, 9, 80
Chap. II. <i>The Spiritual Electorates,</i>	180
<i>Sect. 1. Electorate of Cologne,</i>	180
<i>Sect. 2. Electorate of Trier,</i>	182
<i>Sect. 3. Electorate of Mentz,</i>	183
Chap. III. Hesse,	184
Chap. IV. Franconia,	187
Chap. V. Palatinate of the Rhine,	189
<i>Spire, Worms, Zweybrug &amp;c.</i>	191
Chap. VI. Alsatia,	191
Chap. VII. Schwaben,	193
Chap. VIII. Bavaria,	197
Chap. IX. <i>The Circle of Austria,</i>	200
Chap. X. <i>Bohemia, Silesia and Moravia,</i>	206
Chap. XI. <i>Electorate of Brandenburg, with Magdeburg, Halberstadt and Pomerania,</i>	209
Chap. XII. Saxony,	213
Chap. XIII. <i>Circle of Westphalia,</i>	222

## SWITZERLAND.

Chap. I. <i>Switzerland in General,</i>	228
Chap. II. <i>The Swiss-Cantons,</i>	231
Chap. III. <i>The Grisons and other Allies,</i>	236
Chap. IV. <i>The Subjects of the Switzers,</i>	240

## SAVOY.

<i>In General and Particular,</i>	242 to 246
-----------------------------------	------------

## ITALY.

Chap. I. <i>Italy in General,</i>	247
Chap. II. Piedmont,	253
Chap. III. <i>Coasts of Genoa,</i>	257
Chap. IV. Montferat,	258
Chap. V. Milan,	259
Chap. VI. Parma,	262
Chap. VII. Modena,	263
Chap. VIII. Mantua,	264
Chap. IX. <i>Republick of Venice,</i>	265
Chap. X. Lucca, Republick,	276
Chap. XI. <i>Dominions of Great Duke of Tuscany,</i>	276
Chap. XII. <i>The Pope's Dominions,</i>	280
Chap. XIII. <i>The Kingdom of Naples,</i>	292
Chap. XIV. <i>Islands on the Coasts of Italy,</i>	301

## SPAIN.

Chap. I. <i>Spain in General,</i>	307
Chap. II. Galicia,	316
Chap. III. Navarre,	319
Chap. IV. Arragon,	321
<i>Catalonia,</i>	323
Chap. V. Valencia,	326
Chap. VI. New-Castile,	328
Chap. VII. Old-Castile,	331
Chap. VIII. Leon,	334
Chap. IX. Estremadura,	336
Chap. X. Andaluzia,	338
Chap. XI. Granada,	342
Chap. XII. Murcia,	345
<i>The Islands, Majorca, Minorca, &amp;c.</i>	346

## PORTUGAL. 349

<i>The Province of Entre Douro e Minho,</i>	354
<i>The Province Tras os Montes,</i>	354
<i>The Province of Beira,</i>	355
<i>The Province of Estremadura,</i>	356
<i>The Province of Alemtejo,</i>	359
<i>The Kingdom of Algarve,</i>	360
<i>The Azores or Tercera Islands,</i>	365

## SCANDINAVIA, 363

## DENMARK.

Chap. I. <i>Of Denmark in General,</i>	365
Chap. II. <i>Of Holstein,</i>	368
Chap. III. <i>Of South-Jutland or Sleswick,</i>	370
Chap. IV. <i>Of North-Jutland,</i>	372
<i>Of the Baltrick Sea,</i>	373
Chap. V. <i>Of Seeland,</i>	374
Chap. VI. <i>Of Funen,</i>	375
Chap. VII. <i>Of the rest of the Islands,</i>	376
<i>Of NORWAY in General and particular,</i>	378, to 381

## SWEDE N.

Chap. I. <i>Of Sweden in General,</i>	382
Chap. II. <i>Sweden properly so call'd,</i>	386
Chap. III. Gothland,	388
Chap. IV. Lapland,	391
Chap. V. Finland,	392
Chap. VI. Livonia or Liefland,	393
Chap. VII. Ingria,	395
Chap. VIII. <i>Islands belonging to Sweden,</i>	396

## POLAND.



# The CONTENTS.

## POLAND.

Chap. I. <i>Of Poland in General,</i>	397
Chap. II. <i>Poland properly so call'd,</i>	401
Chap. III. <i>Prussia,</i>	403
Chap. IV. <i>Samogitia and Courland,</i>	406
Chap. V. <i>Lithuania,</i>	407
Chap. VI. <i>Warsovia, Polachia and Polesia,</i>	409
Chap. VII. <i>Red Russia, Podolia, Volhynia, and the Ukrain,</i>	410

## MUSCOVY or RUSSIA.

Chap. I. <i>Of Muscovy in General,</i>	413
<i>A short Abstract of the History of it,</i>	415
<i>Of the Troubles given to the present Czar, by his Sister the Princess Sophia,</i>	417
<i>The Provinces of the Muscovian Empire,</i>	419
Chap. II. <i>The Western Provinces, lying between the Wolga, Poland and Tartary,</i>	420
Chap. III. <i>Provinces lying between the Upper Stream of the Wolga, and the North-Sea,</i>	424
Chap. IV. <i>Nova-Zembla, Samoieda, and Siberia; and the Muscovian Tartary,</i>	427

## HUNGARY.

<i>Of Hungary in General,</i>	431
<i>The Principal Cities and remarkable Towns,</i>	432

TRANSILVANIA <i>in General,</i>	440
<i>The Chief Cities and Towns,</i>	441
SLAVONIA,	442
CROATIA and MORLACHIA,	444

## TURKEY in EUROPE.

Chap. I. <i>Of Turkey in General,</i>	446
Chap. II. GREECE,	448
<i>Macedon, 450. Albania, 451. Epirus, 452. Thessaly, 453. Achaia, 453.</i>	
Chap. III. <i>Peloponnesus or the Morea,</i>	457
Chap. IV. <i>Islands on the Coasts of Greece,</i>	462
Chap. V. <i>Bosnia, part of Slavonia and Hungary, Ragusa and Dalmatia,</i>	466
Chap. VI. <i>Servia and Bulgaria,</i>	468
Chap. VII. <i>Romania or Thrace,</i>	471
<i>Of the Government and Customs of the Turks,</i>	475
Chap. VIII. <i>Walachia, Moldavia, Bessarabia and the Oczakow-Tartary,</i>	478
Chap. IX. <i>Of Tartaria-Minor, and the Crim-Tartary,</i>	480

# The Contents of the Second Part.

## ASIA.

OF Asia in General,

P. 1

<i>The Eastern Part of Tartary, Travell'd thro' by Father Verbiest,</i>	81
<i>An Abstract of the Journey from Muscovy to China, thro' the midland of Tartary; by the Ambassador Isbrandts Ydes;</i>	81

## TURKEY in ASIA.

Chap. I. <i>Natolia or Asia-Minor,</i>	4
Chap. II. <i>Islands on the Coast of Natolia,</i>	12
Chap. III. <i>Syria and Phoenicia,</i>	14
Chap. IV. <i>Of the Modern State of Judea,</i>	21
Chap. V. <i>Of the Ancient State of Judea,</i>	23
<i>The Territories of the Twelve Tribes,</i>	27 &c.
ARABIA <i>in General, and of Mahomet;</i>	37
<i>Arabia Deserta,</i>	41
<i>Petrea,</i>	ibid.
<i>Arabia Felix,</i>	42
Chap. VI. <i>Diarbeck at large, containing the Ancient Mesopotamia, Chaldea and Assyria,</i>	45
Chap. VII. <i>Turcomania or Armenia,</i>	52
GEORGIA, MENGRELIA &c.	55

## PERSIA.

<i>Of Persia in General, Ancient and Modern,</i>	61 to 67
<i>The Provinces and Chief Cities of Persia,</i>	68 to 77

## TARTARY.

<i>Of Tartary in General,</i>	78
<i>The Provinces and Chief Cities,</i>	80

## The EAST-INDIES.

<i>Of the East Indies in General,</i>	82
<i>Of the First European Voyages to the East-Indies,</i>	83
THE EMPIRE of the GREAT MOGUL.	
<i>Of Mogulistan or Indostan in General,</i>	89
<i>Of Aureng-Zebe, his History, Person, Virtues, Family and Death,</i>	93 94
<i>The Provinces and Chief Cities describ'd,</i>	95 to 105
<i>A Relation of the Death of Aureng-Zebe; and the Battle between his Sons,</i>	105
Erratum in the Book, 1706, 7. for 1707, 8.	
THE PENINSULA of INDIA within the GANGES.	107
<i>The Kingdoms and Countrys of it,</i>	107. 8.
<i>Description of the Countrys and Cities,</i>	108 to 115
<i>Of the Diamond-Mines,</i>	112
THE PENINSULA of INDIA beyond the GANGES,	115
<i>Of the Monarchy of AVA and PEGU,</i>	116
<i>Of the Kingdom of SYAM,</i>	117
<i>Of the Peninsula of Malacca,</i>	120
<i>Of Cambodia or Camboya,</i>	120
<i>Of TONQUIN, and Cochinchina or Anam,</i>	121



# The CONTENTS.

## The ISLANDS on the Coast of INDIA.

Santa Helena, 124. Mauritius, 125.	
CEYLON,	125
The MALDIVE-ISLANDS,	127
The SINDA-ISLANDS,	127
The SPIE-ISLANDS,	129
The MOLUCCA-ISLANDS,	130
The PHILIPPINE-ISLANDS,	132
The LADRONES-ISLANDS,	135

## CHINA.

Of China in General,	136
The Tartar-Conquest of it,	141. 2
The Provinces and Chief Cities describ'd	142 to 148
Of the Island FORMOSA,	147

The Land of JESSO.	149
--------------------	-----

## JAPON.

Of Japon in General,	150
Of the Inhabitants,	150
The Power and Revenue of the Emperor,	151
The Temper of the People,	151, 2
The Learning and Religion,	152, 153
The Trade, and the Dutch there,	153
The Persecution of Christians;	153
The Chief Cities, and the Emperor's Palace Describ'd,	154, 155

The Manner of TRAVELLING in India,	155
Of Camels,	156
The Mountains of Asia,	156
Of the MEDITERRANEAN-SEA,	156

## A General and Particular Description of AFRICA.

CHAP. I. Of Africa in General	165
Chap. II. BARBARY in General,	168
Chap. III. Morocco,	169
Chap. IV. Fez,	172
Chap. V. Argier,	176
Chap. VI. Tunis,	181
Chap. VII. Tripoli and Barca,	183
Chap. VIII. Historical Account of Barbary,	185
Chap. IX. Of ÆGYPT,	187
Historical Account of Ægypt,	191
Chap. X. Of BILEDULGERID,	192
Chap. XI. Of ZAHARA, or the Desert,	196
Chap. XII. The Kingdom of NUBIA,	197
Chap. XIII. Of ABYSSINIA, or the Upper ÆTHIOPIA,	198
Chap. XIV. The Coast of ZANGUEBAR, including Aian and Abex,	202
Chap. XV. Of NEGROLAND,	205
Chap. XVI. Of GUINEA,	208
Chap. XVII. Of CONGO, &c.	211
Chap. XVIII. Of MONOMOTAPA, or the Lower ÆTHIOPIA,	216
Chap. XIX. Of the Coasts of the CAFRES,	218
Chap. XX. Of the African ISLANDS.	
Madera and Porto Santo,	220
Canary Islands,	220, 1
Islands of Cabo Verde,	221
Madagascar, Santa Helena, &c.	222 &c.
Of the River NILE, its Fountain, Course, the time of its overflow, &c.	224

## A General and Particular Description of AMERICA.

CHAP. I. Of America in General,	226
Chap. II. The Polar or Arctick Countries,	229
Chap. III. CANADA or New-France,	230
Chap. IV. Of the British Dominions, upon the Continent,	237
Historical Account of them,	245
Chap. V. Of Florida,	247
Chap. VI. Of New MEXICO,	250
Chap. VII. MEXICO or New Spain, divided into three Governments of Gaudalajara, Mexico and Guatimala. And first of Guadalajara,	325
Chap. VIII. Of the Audiencia of Mexico,	257
Chap. IX. The Discovery and Conquest of Mexico,	264
Chap. X. Of Gautimala, the third Division of New-Spain,	267
Chap. XI. Of the Islands, viz.	
Newfoundland,	273
Bermudas,	273
The Lucayo-Islands,	274
Hispaniola,	274
Cuba,	275
Jamaica,	276
Puerto Rico,	277
The Caribbee, Windward and Leeward Islands,	277
California,	280

Chap. XII. Of SOUTH AMERICA. And first of Tierra Firma,	281
Chap. XIII. Of the Kingdom of PERU,	290
Of the Silver Mines,	298
Chap. XIV. Historical Account of Peru,	299
Chap. XV. Caribana, Guiana, &c.	303
Chap. XVI. Of BRAZIL,	306
Chap. XVII. Of Paraguay or Rio dela Plata, &c.	315
Chap. XVIII. Of the Kingdom of CHILE,	323
Historical Account of CHILE,	325
Chap. XIX. Of TERRA MAGELLANICA: and the Straights of Magellan,	326
Chap. XX. Of the ISLANDS of South America, Navigators round the Globe of the Earth,	327

## COUNTRIES about the POLES, North and South.

SECT. 1. The Arctick or Northern Countries,	331
Of the Voyages, in quest of the North-East and North-West Passages to China,	332, 3, & 4
Estotiland, 334. Greenland, 334. Nova-Zembla, 335.	
Spitsberg or Greenland,	335, 6, &c.
Of the Whale, and the method of taking them,	336, 7, 8.
The Discovery of Greenland,	339
The Land of Jesso. New Denmark &c.	340
SECT. 2. The Antarctick or Southern Countries, viz.	341
New Guinea. Terra del Fuogo.	ibid.
Terra Australis, incognita.	ibid.
New Zealand. Van Diemen's Land.	ibid.
New Holland. Carpentaria.	ibid.
La Tierra Austral del Espiritu Santo.	ibid.

An Alphabetical Index of the Countries, Cities and Towns in Asia, Africa and America.

An Alphabetical Index of the Ancient Names of Places, with the Modern Names apposite

An Alphabetical Index of the Principal Matters.



# AN

# Alphabetical I N D E X

*Of all Countries, Cities, Towns, Rivers, Mountains and Remarkable Places  
in EUROPE.*

*Note, The Alphabetical Table of ASIA, AFRICA, and AMERICA stands at the End of the Book.*

Also an Alphabetical Table of the Ancient Names of Places in EUROPE, ASIA and AFRICA, with the Modern Names apposite, is there found. Together with an Index of Principal Matters.

[illegible]



# The INDEX of Places

Afka	288	Barfleur	71	Bernard-Castle	35	Bommence	162
Afri	259	Bargeny	51	Bernay	70	Bonewel	33
Aftorga	335	Bari Prov. and Town	300	Bernburg	216	Bonifacio	304
Aftarcha	330	Barkholm	396	Berry Dutchy	96	Bonne	181
Aftrop-Wells	19	Berkshire	14	Bersello	246	Boneville	245
Afturias	319	Barnstaple	9	St. Bertrand de Comin-	111	Doppart	183
Athens	454	Baronies of Dauphine	123	ges	111	Borch-loen	148
Athlone	54	The Barrows	12	Berwick upon Tweed	38	Borcholm	394
Athos M.	451	Basil Canon	234	Befanco	102	Borgo S. Domino 263. S.	
Attri	299	Basilica	462	Befiers	115	Sepulchro	278
Avalon	100	Basilicata Prov.	297	Beflarabia Prov.	479	Borgo in Finland	393
Aubagne	110	Basingstoke	13	Beftricia	435	Borja	322
Aubuffon	106	Basque Prov.	110	Betanzos	317	Boriffow	408
Auch, or Aux	109	La Basse	134	Petis R.	308	Boriffhenes R.	398
Audenard	136	Basigny Territ.	79	Bethune	133	Bormio County 237. Town ib.	
Ave R.	352	Bastia	304	Beruwe Territ.	164	Bornholm Ifle	377
Areiro	356	Bastogne	143	S. Benner's Ifle	25	Town in Oeland Ifle	396
Arellino	296	Bath County in Hungary	435	Beveland Prov.	161, 162	Borffle's Lordship	162
Averia	295	Bath Monfter	ibid	Beverley	34	Borfer	287
Augsburg	195	Bath City in England	11	Bialla	410	Borftal	20
Augusta	303	Bavaria Circle	197	Bialacerkiew	412	Bofa	304
Avignon	120	Bavay	143	Bialogrod	412, 479	Bofna-Saraya	468
Avila	333	Bauski	406	Bibrach	195	Bofnia Prov.	ibid.
Avis	360	Bautzen	215	Biele Ozoro Prov. and	425	Rofphorus of Thrace	472
Aulis	454	Bayerne	197	Town	425	Boffon	28
Annale	69	Bayeux	07	Bielha	409	Bothnia Prov.	387
Annis	95	Bayonne	110	Eielia	255	Bothnick Bay	383
Auranches	71	Paza	344	Bielsk Palat. and City,	409	Pova	299
Aurich	224	Bazas	107	Bielski Prov.	429	Bouchain	143
Aufta I.	457	Bazran	320	Bielstein	187	Bouckzouka	411
Auftria	200	Bearn Princi.	110	Bienne Town 239. Lake	ibid.	Boverton	41
Aurun	99	Beaujeu,	104	Pier-bcs Lake	158	Bouillon	147
Auvergne	105	Beaujolais Territ.	ibid.	Bighion	445	Boulogn or Bolen	75
Auxerre	100	Beaumaris	44	Bigorre Prov.	111	Bourbon-Lancy 99. L. Ar-	
Auxois	ibid.	Beaumont-le-Roger	72	Bilbao	318	chambaur	105
Axel	137	Beaune	99	Bilchowifie	480	Bourbonnois	105
Axiopolis	470	Beaufle	92	Billingsworder-fconce	169	Bordeaux	107
Azoph	424, 482	Beauvais	85	Piffen	148	Fourdelois Territ.	107
Azores I.	361	Beauvoifis Territ.	85	Binche	144	Bourg en Brefle	101
Azun R.	30	Bedford County & Town	20	Binchefter	36	Bourges	96
		Befort	193	Bingen	184	Bourtanger Fort	169
		Beemfter Territ.	159	Biomeburg	393	Bouvines	146
		Beja	359	Birkenfeld	191	Bozolo Dutchy, 264. Town,	
		Beilstein County & Town	117	Bifcaw woune	8	ibid.	
		Belac	106	Bifcay Prov.	318	Brabant Prov. 137 & fequ.	
		Beira	355	Bifchopfware	380	Spanish, 138 Dutchy. 141	
		Belcz	410	Bifhops-Stortford	21	Braccio di Maria Prov. 458	
		RE L G R A D E	469	Bifignano	298	Bracklaw Palat. & C. 411	
		Belgorod. Prov.	422	Biftricz Town	442	Braga	353
		Belizone Bail.	241	Bivcro	317	Braganza	354
		Bellamoreskoy Leporic		Blackenburg	219	Braila	479
		Prov.	425	Black Foreft	197	Braine	86
		Bellay	101	Blandford	10	Braine le Compte	142
		Belle-garde	99	Blafois	92	Brandenburg Town Elect	209
		Belle-Ifle	91	Blavet	91	Braschow	478
		Bellunefe Territ.	268	Blaye	107	Braslaw Palat.	408
		Belluno	ibid.	Blenheim	199	Brachlaw	478
		Belvedere Prov. 457.		Bleking Prov.	389	Braunflaw	405
		ty	459	Blois	92	La Brazza Ifle	274
		Benevente	358	Blockzil	167	Bray in England	14
		St. Benner's Ifland	25	Bobio	260	In France	69
		Benevento	296	Bochra	401	Brechin	50
		Bensford-bridge	27	Boden-zee	197	Brecknock Conn. and Teri.	40
		Benthem	225	Bodom-zee	383	Breda	141
		Bentivoglio	291	Bodrock	436	Fredenbourg	370
		Benwal	36	Bod-Vari	44	Brevoort	166
		Berdiczow	412	Boglio County and Town	246	Bremen	220
		Beresko	411	BOHEMIA Kind	209	Bremerford	ibid.
		Berg Dutchy	227	Bois-le-duc	141	Bremgarten	241
		Berg Towns in Hunga-		Bois de Vincennes	83	Bremicham	30
		ry	434	Bolano	299	Brefciano Prov.	273
		Bergamo	273	Folduc	442	Breflaw Dutchy	208
		Bergen-op-zoom	142	Bolgoff	420	Brefle Prov.	101
		Bergentz	205	Bologna	291	Breffici	410
		Berghen Prov. & Town	380	Bollwaert	168	Breff	90
		Berlia	210	Bolzano	206	Brefle Prov.	410
		Bern Canton 231. Town	ibid.	Bommel	165	Bretagne Prov	87
		Bern-Castle	183	Bommeiller-waert.	ibid.	Bretenham	24
						Bretueil	



# in EUROPE.

Bretueil	72	Caer Caradock Hill	32	Carolstadt	390	Charante Flav.	91, 106
Beervort	166	Caerdiff	41	Carpentras	120	La Charite	97
Briancon	123	Cear-Laverock	51	Carpi Princip. and Town	253	Charlemont	146
Bride-kirk	38	Caer-Cheon	41	Carthage	346	Charleroy	ibid.
Bridge-water	11	Caermarthen County	42	Casal de S. Vaso	258	Charleville	78
Brie	79	Town	ibid.	Casan Kingdom & Town	429	Charoles	100
Brie Francois	84	Canarvon Comty and Town	43	Cascante	320	Chorolots Territ.	ibid.
Brie Comte-Roger	ibid.		43	Caschaw	436	Chartres	93
Briel	157	Caerphyle Castle	41	Caseloutre	190	Chatamon	101
Brienne	79	Caer-vorran	39	Casolo Castle	291	Chateleraule	95
Briennois	100	Caer-went	41	Caspe	322	Chatean Briant	88
St. Brieux	89	Cassa Town & Straight	481	Cassano	298	Chateau Cambresis	144
Brinn or Brino	208	Cagliari	303	Cassino	262	Chateau Dun	92
Briqueras	255	Cahorle Isle and Town	270	Cassil in Germany	185	Chateau Gontier	94
Brisac	193	Cahors	107	Cassil	54	Chateau Dauphin	123
Brissaw Territ.	191	Cajaneburg	393	Cassino	296	Chateau d'If Isle	121
Brissac	94	Carpania Prov.	392	Castanovitz	445	Chateau-neuf	116
Bristol	11	Cainsham	11	Castel Arogonefe	304	Chateau-Renard	97
BRITAIN	1, 4, 5	Calabria Prov.	298	Castel Novo	467	Chateau-Roux	96
Trixen	205	Catarorra	333	Castelnaudary	113	Chateau Thierry	80
Erdt	444	Calais or Calis	76	Castel Rodrigo	356	Chatham	17
Erodzieck	408	Calamata	459	Castle Selino	464	Chatillon sur Seine	100
Eruel	182	Calatajud	322	Castel Tornese	459	Chaumont 79, 85,	100
Eromley	17	Calcar	226	Castello de Vide	360	St. Chaumont	104
Erouage	95	Calcinato	273	Castiglione della Stivere	264	Chaunes	74
Erougthon	7	Calepio	273	CASTILE Old 331, New	328	Chauny	87
Browerhaven	162	Calmuc Tartars	430	Castleford	34	Chaves	355
Brouchausen	424	Calmar	390	Castle-Town	45	Chebbe	210
Eruck	202	Calshot Castle	13	Castor	24, 25	Chedley	31
Eruges	1, 6	Calvi	304	Castres	113	Chelm Palat & City	410
Erugnetto	258	Cam Fluv.	26	Castri	455	Chelmsford	23
Brunshutte	369	Cambay	146	Castro Dutchy and Town	287	Chelsey	22
Brunsweld Castle	187	Cambresis County	ibid.	Castro de Urdiales	334	Chepstow	40
Brunswick Lucky Town	217	Cambridge County	ibid.	Castromoigorod	422	Cher Fluv.	58, 91
BRUSSELS	138	Camden	18	Cassubens Territ.	212	Cherasco	254
Brzeftly Palat. & Town	403	Camelot	51	Cassum Pacha	473	Cherbourg	70
Buchaw	195	Camerino	289	Catalonia Prov.	323	Cherfo Isle and Town	274
Bucharest	478	Caminha	354	Catania Town and Gulph	302	Cherwell Fluv.	18
Buchorn	196	Caminiec	411	Cathnes	51	Cheshire	32
Buckingham County	20	Camnin	213	Catmore Vale	28	Chester City	ibid.
Buda	437	Campaigna	297	Cattarrick	35	Chester on the Street	36,
Budingen	187	Campaign of Rome	283	Cattaro	274	on the Wall	39
Budoi	467	Campen in France	111	Cats	162	Chesterfield	20
Budziack Tartar.	480	in Holland	167	Catzenelbogen County	186	Cheteler	101
Bueil County	246	Candia Isle 462. City	463	Cavado R.	35	Chiarenza	49
Bugey Prov.	101	Canea	464	Cavaillon	120	Chiari	273
Bugey in Saroy	245	Canina Prov.	452	Cavalla	451	Chiavenna	237
Buckenburgh	225	Canisia Gov.	439	Caudebec	69	Chichester	15
Bulgar Kingdom and	430	CANTERBURY	16	Cause	107	Chielefa	460
by	470	Capaccio	297	Caux	69	Chieti	299
Bulgaria Prov.	470	Capitanata Prov.	300	Caya R.	352	Chillingham Castle	39
Buman's Hole	218	Capo di Istria	267	Cazarne	417	Chiltern Hills	20
Buren	165	Capraria Isle	305	La Cedogna	296	Chimeray Mount. City and	452
Burgaw Marquis.	195	Capri Isle	ibid.	Cefalonia Isle	275, 462	Territ.	96
Burglaw Diocess	373	Capua	295	Ceneda, ta	268	Chionon	270
Burgos	332	Caragoza vide Sara	316	Cental	256	Chiozza	272
Burgundians Peop.	60, 103	za	436	Centron	148	Chiufa	280
Burgundy Prov. 98, 99, &c.	37	Carensebes	346	Ceraunian Mountains	452	Chlinoff	426
Burning-well	27	Caravaca	115	Cerciffigermen	481	Chlopigrod	421
Burton Lazars	23	Carcassonne	42	Cerdana Prov.	305	Chotzyn	479
Bury	442	Cardigan County & Town	392	Cerigo Isle	275, 464	Chremnitz	434
Burzia Territ.	212	Carelia Prov.	70	Cervia	291	Christiana	379
Butow Lordship	452	Carentan	13	Ceva, or Ceba	254	Christianople	390
Butriato	220	Caresbrook Castle	425	Cevennes Mount. 58. Prov.	112	Christianpris	371
Buxtehude	29	Cargapolia Prov. and Town	425	Chaalons sur Marne 77, sur	99	Christianstadt	396
Buxton-wells	123	Caricfergus	54	Soane	ibid.	Chur	236
Buy or Buyz	403	Carignano	203	Chaalonnois Prov.	244	Ciculi Peop.	440
Bydgost	403	Carinthia Dutchy	465	Chablais Dutchy	79	Cilley County and Town	203
Byecks	403	Caristo	25	Chablis	109	Cimmersburg	373
		Carleton	37, 38	Chalosse Prov.	198	Cinofa	464
		Carlisle	444	Chamb	244	Cinque-Port	17
		Carlowitz	445	Champagne Prov.	76, 77	Cirencester	18
		Carlstadt	256	Chanonry	49	Cita di Castello	288
		Carmagniola	341	La Chappelle	74	Citeau	99
		Carmona	203			Ciudadela	347
		Carniola Dutchy				Ciudad Real	336
						Ciudad Rodrigo	335
						Cival	



## The INDEX of Places

Cividal di Friuli	263	Contessa	451	Croya	451	Devil's Dike	24
Civita Vecchia	285	di Conty	75	Cuenca	320	The Levizes	12
Cheri	299	Conwy	43	Culenburg Marquis.	189	Devonshire	9
Civita di Penna	ibid.	Coanza	296	Culenberg Territ.	216	Deux Ponts Dutchy	198
Clackmannan County	47	COPENHAGEN	374	Culenburg	165	I. eyase	137
Clagenfurt	203	Coperberget	388	Culm	405	Die	123
Claine Fluv.	94	Coping	388	Culmsee	ibid.	Diepe	69
Clairy Fluv.	85	Coporio	396	Cumberland County	37	Diepholt County	224
Clamecy	97	Coranto	451	Curisch-haff Lake	405	ibid.	ibid.
Clare in England	24	Corax Mount	303	Curzola	467	Dieren	164
Ireland	54	Corbach	186	Curzolari Isles	462	Diest	139
Clarenza Dutchy	457	Corbeille	84	Cypariffa	459	Diethmold	225
St. Claude Mount	58	Corbey	225	Czaritzza	430	Dietz	387
Town	102	Corbie in France	15	Czallaw	208	Diganwy	44
Clausenburg	427	Corbridge	59	Czermisse Prov.	422	Eigne	118
Cleeve Dutchy and City	226	Cordoua	340	Czernihow Dutchy	420	Dijon	38
Clermont en Beauvoisis	86	Corfu Isle	275	ibid.	ibid.	Dijonnois Territ.	ibid.
en Auvergne	105	Coria	337	Czernobel	42	Dile Fluv.	138
age en Lorraine	125	Corinth	461	Czerskow Palat. and Town	409	Dillenburg County	187
Clervaux	79	Cork	54	475		186	
Cleybrook	57	Corneto	286	Czyrkass	412	Dil-bo	383
Cliffa	274	Cornith Men	2			Dinant in France	89
St. Cloud	84	Cornwall County	8			Liege	147
Clugny	100	Coron	458			Diois Territ.	123
Clundert	158	Corregio Princip.	263			Dirschow	404
Coa R.	352	Corfica Isle	304			Dissenhow	241
Coblentz	183	Corte	ibid.			Ditmarth Prov.	359
Coburg County	187	Cortona	278			Dixmuyde	137
Coererden	167	Cortryck	137			S. Dizier	77
Cognac	95	Corue	32			Dniپر R.	393
Coimbra	355	Corunna	317			Dobrzin Palat.	401
Coire	236	Cosenza	298			Doccum	168
Colberg	213	Coferans	111			Dofrine Mountains	378
Colchester	23	Coffacks Peop.	412			Dogad Prov.	8
Colebrook	20	Cotelenitz	426			Doipet	398
Colen	181	Cotona	298			Dol	89
Coligny	101	Cotwis	215			Dolcigno	451
Colmar	192	Coventry	30			Dole	102
Colmars	118	Covilhao	356			Dol Gelhew	43
Colmenfee	405	Couper	47			den Dollard Bay	169
Colmogorod	388	Couriezou	ibid.			Dombes Princip.	101
Colochima	460	Courland Prov.	406			S. Domingo de la Calzada	334
Colocza	436	Courtenay	85			Don or Tanais Fluv. its	414
Cologne Ele. & City	181	Courtray	137			Source	422
St. Columbs	8	Coutance	70			— Its Course	ibid.
Columiers	80	Coutaise	100			Donawert	199
Colouri	465	Cowale	368			Doncaster	34
Columna	421	Cowbridge	41			Lonsere	116
Colyns Fluv.	162	Cows	13			Donkagorod	422
Comachio Valley & Town	292	Cracow Palatine	401			Doosburg	166
Comb-Martin	9	Crainburg	204			Dorat	106
Combas	482	Craon	94			Dorbzin	403
Comenolitari Territ.	450	Crapack Mount.	440			Dorchester in Dorsetsh.	10
Comines	134	Le Crau Territ.	118			In Oxfordshire	19
Cominges Prov.	111	Craulan	482			Dordonne Fluv.	108
Como	261	Crema	273			Dormans	76
Comorra	432	Cremafeo Prov.	ibid.			Dornick	134
Compeigne	86	Cremona	261			Doroftero	470
Compostella	316	Cremonese Territ.	260			Dorpat	395
Concarneau	90	Crempen	369			Dorsetshire	10
Conde	143	Cremfit	208			Dorsten	182
Condom	109	Crespy	86			Dort or Dordrecht	157
Condomois Territ.	ibid.	Cressy	75			Dortmond	227
Condora Prov.	426	Crevant	100			Douay	134
Condrotz Territ.	147	Crevecoeur	144, 158			Dover	16
Conflent Territ.	114	Creutznach	190			Doulens	75
Congleton	32	Crews Morthard	9			Dourdan	85
Coni	254	Crim-Tartary	481			Douvarenes	90
Connaught Prov.	54	Crim City	482			Down	54
Conquest	90	Crio Cape	464			Drave Fluv.	432
Conserans Prov.	11	Croatia Prov.	444			Drazzi	451
Constance Bish.	196	Crom	420			Drent Territ.	166
Constans	84	Cromartie County	48			Dresden	215
CONSTANTINOPLE	472	Croneburg	393			Dreux	93
Contado di Aughiera	260	Cronenburg Castle	375			Drogenaps Toom	165
		Cronstadt	441			Drogiezyn	409
		Crossen Dutchy	209			Drogobusa	420
						Droit-	



*in* EUROPE.

Droitwich	31	Elden-Hole	29	Falmouth	8	Franche Comte	101
Drontheim Prov.	380	Eleulis	455	Falster Isle	376	Franchimont	148
	<i>ibid.</i>	Elfeld	184	Faro	361	Franconia Circle	187
Druio	408	Elgin County	48	Farfa	453	Franecker Town in Frizeland	168.
Dubizá	445	Elckholm	390	S. Farfeau	97	Fort in Denmark	375
DUBLIN	54	Elnbogen	208	Farcher Principality in Naples	296	Frankenburg	185
Ducagni	451	Elne	114	Fauquemont	146	Frankendal	190
Duderstadt	184	Elfszabern	192	Fawey	8	Frankenland	187
Duero Fluv.	308	Elfalz	191	Feldon Territ.	30	Franks 58, 60, 129, 187	
Duersterde Wyck	163	Elfeneur, ore	374	Felkirk	205	Fredericksburg	375
Duglas	45	Elvas	11	Fellin	395	Fredericksfodde	372
Duina Prov.	425.	Elvers	25	Feltri	268	Frederickstadt in Denmark	379
	414,	Ely	224	Femeren Isle	376	Frederickstadt in Norway	379
Duisburg	226	Embsen County	<i>ibid.</i>	Ferden Prin.	220	Free Provinces of Switzerland	240
Dumblane	50	Emboli	450	Fa Fere	73	Friefingen Bishopr.	199
Dumbritton County	47	Embrick	226	Ferette	192	Freixo de Espadacina	355
Dumfries County	<i>ibid.</i>	Embrun	123	Fermenia Isle	465	Frejus	119
Dunamund Fort.	395	Empoli	278	Fermo	289	French Peo.	60, 62
Dundee	50	Enchuyfen	160	Fero Isle	381	Frescati	285
Dunenburg	395	Engers	183	Ferrara Dutchy	291.	Fresquel Fluv.	112
Dunefley	35	Enghien	145	La Ferte 69.	La Ferte	Freyburg in Saxony	215
Dunfrize	50	Engia Isle & Town	465	Bernard 93.	Milon 86.	Freysack	203
Dunkel	<i>ibid.</i>	ENGLAND 1, 2. & sequ.	2, 3.	Senterte	92	Freystadt	202
Dunkirk	135	English Peop.	2, 3.	Feverham-Pits	17	Friburg Canton	234.
Dun-le-Roy	96	English Apennine Mount	2.	Feuers	104	<i>ibid.</i> In Brisgaw	193
Dunmow	23	Enguedine	443	Fierenzuola	263	Friedburg	185
Dunois Territ.	92	Enkoping	388	Fiesole	278	Frietzar	184
Duns	50	Ens	201	Fife Peninsula	47, 49	Frigalo Cape	452
Dunsby	51	Entre Douro e Minho Prov.	353	Figeac	108	Frisch-haff Bay	404
Dunstable	20	Entrevauz	119	Fillec	436	Friuli Prov.	267
Durango Territ.	318	Epirus Prov.	425	Fille-field Mount.	378	Frizeland Prov. 168.	East-
	<i>ibid.</i>	Epom-Wells	15	Fimes	77	Frizeland 224.	West-
Durazzo	451	Erfurdt or Erdfort	216	Final Marquis. 257.	77	Frizeland	153
Durby	145	Erlaw	436	Finis Terræ Cape	<i>ibid.</i>	Frizons Peop.	168
Duren	227	Erpach County and Town	189	Findland Prov.	307	Fuentaravia	318
Durham	35	L'Escaut Fluv.	128	Finmark	392	Fuld Territ. 186.	Town and
Durlach Marquis.	194	Eschwege	185	Fiorentino Territ.	381	River	<i>ibid.</i>
Duseldorp	227	Escurial	331	Florenzoula	276	Fulham	22
Duytschland	171	Esens	224	Five Churches	263	Fundi Lake	248
Duyveland Isle	161	Esslingen	194	Five-lingo Territ.	439	Funes	375
Dwina Fluv.	393,	Esperies	435	FLANDERS 133.	169	Furtemberg Princip.	196
Dryn	434	Espernay	76	134. Dutch 137.			
		Espernon	93	nith	135		
		Esseck	443	La Fleche	94		
		Esseck-Bridge	432.	Flensburg Bail. & Town	371		
		Essex County	23	Flieland Isle	160		
		Estampes	97	Flintshire	44		
		Estaples	76	Florence	277		
		Estayre	133	S. Flour	105		
		Este	272	Flushing	161		
		Estella Territ. and Town	320	Floari old	33		
		Esthonia Prov.	394	Foborg	376		
		Estremadura Prov. of Spain	360.	Foix	114		
		336. Of Portugal	360.	Foligno	288		
		Estremoz	360	Folkingham	29		
		St. Etienne de Furents	104	Fonrain-bleau	185		
		Everding	202	Fantarabia	318		
		Evesham	31	Fontenay en Orleannois	94		
		Evora	359	En Lorraine	125		
		Evureux	72	Fora Isle	372		
		EUROPE	1, 2	Forcalquier	120		
		Euripus Channel	465	Foretz Prov.	104		



# The INDEX of Places

Genemayden	167	Göttingen	218	Gyula Fluv.	435	Helsenberg	390
GENEVA County & Lake	371	Gottorp. Bail.	371	City	337	Hellingfors	393
239. City	244	Goude	159			Helsingia Prov.	386
Georgenbach	194	Goulet	90			Helvoet-Sluis	157
Gennep	226	Gournay	69	La-Haye	96	Hemingston	24
Genova Coast	257	Goyland Prov.	153	Habsel Town and Gulph	394	Henley	19
City	ibid.	Grabow	404			Herborn	187
Geraperra Town and Cape	464	Gratz	252	Hademar	187	Hercynian Wood	195, 218
Geraw Territ.	186	Grado Isle and Town	270	Haderleben Bail.	371	Hereford County 33 Town ib.	
Gerberoy	86	Græff	141	Hæmus Mount.	471	Herentals	141
Gergeau	92	Graham's Dike	51	Hague.	156	Hermanstadt	441
Gergenti Town & River	302	Gratvandan Prov.	122	Haguenaw	192	Hermanstein	182
	461	Grammont in France	106	Hailbron	194	Hermerder-waert Isle	158
Gereme	84	In Flanders	134	Hainault Prov. 143 French	144	Hern-Grundt	435
S. Germain en Lay	170	Gran City 438. River	432	ibid. Spanish	142	Hernofaud	388
GERMANY	171	Granada King. 342 City	343	Haine Fluv.	211	Hertford County and Town	21
Germani Peop.	148	Grand-lieu Lake	88	Halberstadt Princip. Town	ibid.	S'Hertogenbosch	138
Geronster Spring	182	Grand Recours	125	Halem	139	S'Hertogen-raidt	146
Geseck	385	La Grande Chartreuse	123	Halicz	410	Herry-point	9
Gestrucia Prov.	388	Granfon Bail. 241 Town	ibid.	Halifax	34	Heldin	133
Geralia Urbs & Fluv.	116	Grantcester	26	Hall in Saxony	216	Hesse-Cassel Landgrav.	185
Gevaudan Prov.	101	Grantham	29	In Tyrol	205	Darmstadt	ibid.
Gex Bail.	185	Grauzbain-Hills	47	Halland Prov.	389	Hessen Prov.	184
Geyfmer	135	Granville	70	Halle in Hainault	144	Hethy Isle	52
Ghent	145	Grasse, or Grace	119	Halmstadt	390	Het Y, Haven	154
S. Ghislain	139	Grave	142	Ham in France	74	Heulden	158
Giblon	156	Graveling	135	In Germany	227	Hexam	39
Gibraltar Strait * Town	341	Gravenhague	156	Haman	411	Hey	37
Gien	97	Gravenbrug	195	HAMBURG	221	Heyde Town and Sand	369
Gießen	185	Gray	101	Hammelen	218	Heydukes	433
Gieza	468	GREAT BRITAIN	1	Hamilton	51	Hieres	119
Giglio Isle	305	Grecians Peop.	443	Hammer Gov. and Town	380	Hieres I.	121
Gihlawa	208	GREECE 448 & sequ.	51	Hampshire	13	High-landers	47
Cijna	317	Greenock	17	Hamsted	21	S. Hilary's	56
Girona	325	Greenwich	122	Hampton-Court	ibid.	Hildesheim Bish.	219
Gisburgh	69	Grenoble	119	Hanaw County and Town	187	Hirschfeld	186
Gisors	274	Grimault Gulph.	119	Hannebon	91	Hith	17
Giffa Isle	442	Grisons Peop. and League	226	Hannuye	139	Hither Principality Naples	297
Ginla Fejerway	41	Groeningen Prov.	169	Hannover	218	Hobro	373
Glamorganshire	119	Groll	166	Harburg	219	Hochstadt	199
Glandeve	ibid.	Grosseto	280	Harderwick	164	Hodselbro	372
Glaris Cantons 233. Town	50	Grotkaw Duchy	209	Harewood	20	Hoendwill Castle	194
Glasgow	11	The Groyn	317	Harleur	69	Hoey	224
Glastenbury	435	Grubenhagen Princip.	218	Harkier	373	La Hogue	71
Glashitten	208	Gruiningen Bail.	211	Harlebeck	137	Hohenrechspurg County	196
Glatz	39	Gruftina	428	Harlech Castle	43	Hohenstein County	216
Glenwelt	18	Gruftinsky Prov.	ibid.	Harlemer-meer Lake	155	Hohenzollern Princip. & Town	196
Glocester County & City	209	Guadalajara	330	Harlingen	168	Holach County	189
Glogaw Duchy	425	Guadalquivir Fluv.	308	Harria Territ.	394	Holbeck	375
Glowa Salboda	371	Guadiana Fluv.	308	Harwich	23	HOLLAND Prov. in the Low Countries	153
Glücksburg	369	Gnadix	344	Haselunnen Fort	224	South 158 North	159
Gluckstadt	464	Guarda	356	Hasselt in Liege Bish.	148	Holland Divis. of Linconsh.	28
Gnosias	402	Guarnsey I.	56	In Overissel	166	Hollander-dorp	374
Gnesna	266	Guastalla	264	Hastings	17	Hollen	379
Goch	376	Guben	215	Harfield	21	Hollowood Hill	17
Goldersford Strait	406	Gubio Territ. 290 Town	ibid.	Hattem	165	Holme-Cultram	38
Goldingen	37	Guelderland Duchy	162	Haubo	393	HOLSTEIN Duchy	368
Gold-like Spring	453	Spanish	166	Havelburg	210	Holtrebo	372
Il Golfo di Engia	84	Guelde	166	Haverford-West	42	Holt upon Dee	44
Gonefle	26	Guere	130	Havre de Grace	69	Holywell	ibid.
Goodmanchester	158	Guerande	88	Haynburg	202	Homburg	185
Gortum	169	Gueret	106	Hedemora	388	Honfleur	70
Gorecht Lordship	157	Gueslar Fluv.	345	Heylingenstadt	184	S. Honorat Isle	51, 121
Goree Isle	305	Guienne Prov. 106 & sequ.	15	Heidelberg	190	Honslaer-dyck	157
Gorgona Isle	204	Guildford	354	Hekla Mount.	381	Horn in Brabant	143
Goritia County	463	Guimaraens	76	S. Helen's-head	55	Horn, or Hoorn in Holland	225
Goritz or Gortz	218	Guines	318	S. Helen's-ford	34	160. In Westphalia	225
Gortina	216	Guipuscoa Prov.	73	Helicon Mount.	456	Horsens	372
Goslar	396	Guise	226	Hell-becks Rivers	35	Horton	34
Gotha	383	Gulick	203	Hellespont Straights	472	Hounlaer-dyke	157
Gothland Prov. 383.	390	Gurk Town and River	240	Hell-kettles	36	Hoxter	225
Goths Fez.	236	Gustal Bail.	222	Helmont	143	Howborn Promont.	51
Gottemburg		Gustrow		Helmstadt	218	Hoye County 224 Town	ibid.
Gothelpurg League				Helchenoer	374	Hradiss	



## 211

**e 2**

**TOWN**



# The INDEX of Places

Town	ibid.	Lindaw	195	Lunenburg Dutchy and City	Mardicke Fort	139	
Lay-well	9	Lingen	225		Mare della Tana	482	
Leander's Tower	473	Linkoping	390	Lurc	Mariana	304	
League of the ten Jurisdic- tions	236-7	Linlithgow County and Town	51	Lusatia Marquis.	214	Marieger	373
Lebriza	342	Lintz	201	Lusignan	55	Marienburg in Hainault	144
Lecce	300	Liperean Isles	305	Lusack or Lucko Palat.	411	——— in Livonia	395
Leck Fluv.	128	Lipari Isle	ibid.	Luxburg	371	——— in Prussia	405
Leffour	109	Lippa	436	Luxemburg	145	Mariendal	189
Leeds	33	Lippa Territ.	225	Luyck	147	St. Marino Repub.	292
Leerstrand	380	Lipptsburg	225	Luzzara	164	Mount and Town	ibid.
Leghorn	279	Lire or Liere	141	Lyme	10	Marksburg	203
Legnano	272	LISBON	371	Lynne	25	Marlborough	12
Lehai	394	Lisieux	69	Lyonnois Prov.	103	Marmora Sea	472
Leibana	318	Lismore	55	Lyons City	104	Marpurg	185
Leicester County	27	L'Isle in Flanders	134	Lys Fluv.	128, 132	Marquis. of the H. Empire	138
	ibid.	in Martiques	121			Marne Fluv.	77, 81
Leinster Prov.	54	Litawiski	403			Marosch. Fluv.	468
Leiria	357	Lithuania Dutchy	407			Marfal	125
Leipstick	215	Livadia Prov.	454			Marfalla	302
Leman Lake	289		407			Marfanowits I.	416
Lemberg Palat.	410	Liviner Valley	233			Marseilles	118
	ibid.	Livonia	393			Marlico Nuovo	297
Lengow	225	Livonia Prov.	393			chio	ibid.
Lemwick	372	Llerena	338			Martigues I.	121
Leningen	191	Loches	96			Martinac	238
Leon King.	334	Lodeve	115			Mascon	100
Leonnois Territ.	90	Lodi	261			Masconnois Territ.	ib.
Leontari	460	Logowi Territ.	423			Masko	393
Leopoldstadt in Germany	201	Logronno	334			Masovia	409
in Hungary	434	Lohm-Closter Bail.	371			Massa Cape	280
Lepanto City and Gulph	456	Loja	344			Masseran Princip.	255
Lepori	425	Lombardy	253				ibid.
Lepfina	455	Lombes	111			Matagorda Fort	340
Lerida	324	LONDON	21			Matapan Cape	460
Lerins Isles	121	Londonderry	55			Maubeuge	144
Lerro Fluv.	352	Long Megg and her Daugh- ters	38			St. Maudit Fort	8
Lescar	111	Longueville	69			St. Maur	84
Lessen or Lessines	145	Louigo	225			St. Maura Isle	462
Lessow Isle	373	Loo	164				ibid.
Letten	394	Loots	148			Maurienne County	245
Leuchtenberg	198	Loppa Prov.	427			Maus Thauru	184
Leverpoole	36	Lorca	346			Maxacra	345
Leutkirch	195	Loretto	289			Mayence	183
Leutiche	436	Lorraine Prov.	124			Mayenne Town	93
Leuwarden	168	London	95				River
Leuwe	139	Lough-foyle Lake	55				ibid.
Lewenburg Lordsh.	212	Lough-Longas	51			Mayntz	183
Lewenstein County	189	Lough-Regis	56			Mazara Valley	302
Lewes	16	Louvaine	139			Town and River	ibid.
Lera	393	Louvestein Castle	858			Mazieres	78
Leyden	156	The Low-Countries	127			Meath Prov.	54
Leyton	23					Meaux	79
L'han-vylla	43					Mechlin	140
Lherena	338	Lowicz	403			Mechlenburg Dutchy	222
Libeten	435	Lozicze	409			Town	ibid.
Libourne	107	Lubeck	221			Medelin	338
Lichfield	31	Luben on Spree Fluv.	215			Medelpadia Prov.	387
Lidkoping	390	Lublin Palat & City	402			Nedenblick	160
Lidh or Lida	388	St. Lucar de Barromeda	341			Medina del Campo	336
Liebaw	215	St. Lucar le Mayor	342			Sidonia	241
Liefland Prov.	393	Lucca Repub.	275, 276			Medina de Rio Seco	336
Liege Bish.	146					Medway Fluv.	16
Liepftadt	225	Lucena	341			Megara	455
Lieffe	83	Lucern Canton	232			Megiez	442
Lignitz Dutchy	209	Town, Lake, Valley	ibid.			Meirod	ibid.
	ibid.	Lucomoria Prov.	428			Meissen	215
Lillo	141	Lucon	95			Melangar	380
Lima in Sweden	388	Lucrin Lake	295			Meldrop	369
Lima Fluv.	352	Ludlow	32			Meleda Isle	257
Limburg Prov. & City	146	Lug. Fluv.	33			Melfi	198
Limburg in Germany	183	Lugan Bail.	241			Mellingen	241
——— Territ.	189	Lugo	316			Melton Mawbray	27
Limen Mare	482	Lula Town and River	388			Melun	84
Limerick	55	Lula-Lapmark	392			Memel	405
Limoges	108	Lunden in Holstein	369			Memingen	195
Limonia Territ.	ibid.	in Sweden	389			Mende	116
Lincoln County	28					Mendip Hills	11
	ibid.					Menene	134
						Mentz	

## M.

Macedon Prov.	450	Marfanowits I.	416
Macerata	288	Marseilles	118
Machecon	89	Marlico Nuovo	297
MADRID	328, 329	chio	ibid.
Maelstrand	381	Martigues I.	121
Maerland Isle	162	Martinac	233
Maes or Mose Fluv.	128	Mascon	100
Maesland-Sluis	153	Masconnois Territ.	ib.
Maestricht	143	Masko	393
Maesyeck	148	Masovia	409
Magdeburg Dutchy	211	Massa Cape	280
City	ibid.	Masseran Princip.	255
Maggero Isle	381		ibid.
Magiar	433	Matagorda Fort	340
Magnegalia	470	Matapan Cape	460
Magoy	85	Maubeuge	144
Maguer	342	St. Maudit Fort	8
Mahon Port	347	St. Maur	84
Maiden-Castle	10	St. Maura Isle	462
Maidenhead	14		ibid.
Maidston	17	Maurienne County	245
Maillezais	95	Maus Thauru	184
Main-amber Stone	8	Maxacra	345
Le Main Territ.	93	Mayence	183
Maine Fluv.	189	Mayenne Town	93
Majorca Isle and City	347		ibid.
St. Margaret Isle	121	Mayntz	183
Mala	393	Mazara Valley	302
Maalaga	343	Town and River	ibid.
Malagocz	401	Mazieres	78
Maldon	23	Meath Prov.	54
Malines Lordsh.	156	Meaux	79
	Town	Mechlin	140
	140	Mechlenburg Dutchy	222
Malio-Cape	460	Town	ibid.
Malmogen	389	Medelin	338
Malmsbury	12	Medelpadia Prov.	387
St. Malo	89	Nedenblick	160
Malvasia	460	Medina del Campo	336
Manamo	427	Sidonia	241
Man Isle	45	Medina de Rio Seco	336
Moncheffer	36	Medway Fluv.	16
Manfredonia	300	Megara	455
Mangut	481	Megiez	442
Manheim	190	Meirod	ibid.
Manresa	325	Meissen	215
Mans	93	Melangar	380
Mansfeld County	216	Meldrop	369
	Town	Meleda Isle	257
	ibid.	Melfi	198
Mansfield	29	Mellingen	241
Mante	85	Melton Mawbray	27
Mantois Territ.	ibid.	Melun	84
Mantua Dutchy	164	Memel	405
	City	Memingen	195
	ibid.	Mende	116
Marathon	455	Mendip Hills	11
Marbella	345	Menene	134
La Marche Territ.	105		
Marchena	342		
Marcley-Hill	33		



*in* EUROPE.

Mentz <i>Elect.</i> 183.	City	ibid.	Monte-Marano	296		S. Nicholas <i>in</i> Lorraine	125
Meppen	234		Monte-Mor o Velho	356		<i>In</i> Russia	426
Meran	205		— o Novo	360	N.	By	ibid.
Mergentheim	189		Monte-Pulciano	280		Nickia <i>Isle &amp; town</i>	465
Merida	337		Monte-santo <i>Mount</i>	451	N	Nicopolis	470, 471
Meryonidshire	43		Monte Verde	297	erden	Nicoteia	298
Mers County	47		Montelimar	124	Peop.	Nienmen <i>Fluv.</i>	398
Mersburg	215		Montereal	302	Nagayan Tartars	Niemetaw	410
Mesember	470		Montereau faut-Yonne	80	Nagera	Nienhaus	395
Mefina	302		Montferrat <i>Duchy</i>	258	Nagornoi <i>Territ.</i>	Nieper, <i>or</i> Dniپر <i>Fluv.</i>	398
Metling	204		Montfort <i>in</i> France	89.	Nairn County	Ni-flet	394
Metz	126		Tyrol 205.	<i>In</i> Utrecht	Nakel Town <i>&amp; River</i>	Nieller <i>Fluv.</i>	398
Meuden	159		Montfort L'Amaury	85	Namam	Nieumunster	369
Meurs County	226		Montgomery County	43	Namur <i>Prov. &amp; Town</i>	Nigeboli	470
Meuse <i>Fluv.</i>	77, 128		Town	ibid.	Nancy	Nikoping	373
Meyn	183		Mont-Joux	242	Nantes	Nimeguen	165
Miadzi-l	408		Mont-Jure	102	Nantwich	Nimes	115
Michael Norogorod	430		Montluel	101	NAPLES <i>Kingd.</i>	Nimere	137
St. Michael	125		Montmarte	84	<i>&amp; sequ. City &amp; Gulf</i>	Nions	173
Middlefaert Sound	376		Montmedy	145	Napoli di Malvasia	Nisnovogorod <i>Prov.</i>	421
Middleburg	161		Montmelian	244	Di Romania	Town	ibid.
Middlesex County	21		Montmeliar	124	Narbonne	Nissa River 459.	Town ib.
Midnick	406		Montmorency	84	Narenza, ta	Nivelle	138
Milan <i>Duchy</i> 258, 259	City		Montmorency	84	Narew	Nivernois <i>Prov.</i>	97
	260		Montnoire	94	Narni	Nocera <i>in</i> Umbria	288
Mombaci.	442		Montpelier	115	Narva German.	<i>In</i> Naple,	297
Milford Haven	42		Montroyal	183	ibid Russian	Nogent-le-Rotrou	93
Milhaud	168		Mont St. Michael	71	Nassaw <i>Princp.</i> 186.	Noir-Monstrier <i>Isle</i>	58
Millo <i>Isle</i> 275, 464.	Town		Mont-vog. <i>Isle</i>	58	Natra	Nola	295
	ibid.		Menzao	354	Navarino	Noli	257
Milnan	108		Morat <i>in</i> France 105.	<i>Bail.</i>	Navarre <i>Kingd. Lower</i>	Nona	274
Mindelheim	195		<i>in</i> Switz. 241.	Town	<i>Higher</i>	Nordabblingia	368
Minden <i>Princp.</i> 224.	Town		Moravia <i>Marqu.</i>	207	Naumburg	Nordburg	371
	ibid.		Morawa <i>Fluv.</i>	ibid.	Naxenscoy	Norden	224
Minorca <i>Isle</i>	347		Morbegno	231	Naze Cape	Nordlingen	194
Minski <i>Palat.</i>	408		Mordua-Tartars <i>Peop.</i>	426	Nazum	Norfolk County	24
Miranda de Douro	355		Morea <i>Penins.</i>	457	Nebbio	Norkoping	390
Mirande	109		Moresby	38	Neckar <i>Fluv.</i>	Normandy <i>Prov.</i>	68
Mirandula	264		Morlachia <i>Prov.</i>	445	Nedh	Norstrand <i>Isle</i>	371
Mirepoix	114		Morlaix	89	The Needles	Nort-gow <i>Prov.</i>	197
Mistra	459		Mortaigne	93	Negropont <i>Isle</i> 465.	Northampton County	26
Misnia <i>Marqu.</i>	214		Mortain	71	ibid.	Town	ibid.
Missen-head	56		Mortara	262	Nemours	Northumberland County	38
Mittaw	406		Mortimer's Hole	29	Nepi	NORWAY 378, & sequ.	
Modena	263		Morviedio River and Town	327	Nericia <i>Prov.</i>	Norwich City	24
Modon	458		MOSCOW	421	Nermoutier	Notteburg	396
Mohatz	439		Moscua <i>Duchy</i>	420	Nesse	Nottingham County	29
Mold	44		Mosselle <i>Fluv.</i> 125, 141, 171	459	Nestved	Town	ibid.
Moldadania	479		Mosseniga	459	Netherby	Noto Valley 303.	Town
Moldavia <i>Prov.</i>	ibid		Moska <i>Fluv.</i>	414	The NETHERLANDS	ibid.	ibid.
Mole <i>Fluv.</i>	15		Motril	345	<i>&amp; sequ. United</i>	Novara	261
Molina M.	309		Moulins	105	Neuburg <i>Duchy and Town</i>	NOVA ZEMBLA	427
Molise	299		Mountainous Country	160	Nevers	Novigrod	436
Mologa	425		Mount-Cassel	135	Neufchatel County and Town	Novogrodeck Welcki <i>Prov.</i>	424
Molsetto	456		Moura	360	238. Lake	Novogrodeck Palat.	403
Mon, or Monen <i>Isle</i>	376		Mouremanskoy-Leporie	425	<i>In</i> Lorraine	Town	ibid.
Monaco	257		Prov.	425	<i>In the Netherlands</i>	Novogrodeck Sewerski	420
Mondego <i>Fluv.</i>	352		Monstriers	245	Nenienskoy	Novoguiria	401
Mondonnedo	316		Miscilaw <i>Palat.</i>	408	Neufclos	Noyon	87
Mondovi	254		Mula	346	Neufs	Nuburg	376
Monfort or Namam	355		Muldaw <i>Fluv.</i>	207	Newburg	Nuremberg	188
Monforte	360		Mulhausen <i>in</i> Germany	193	Newbury	Nusco	297
Mongarz	437		216. <i>In</i> Switz.	239	Newcastle upon Tine	Nuys	182
Monmouth	41		Mulheim	182	Newenden	Nybe	373
Monopoli	300		Munich	197	Newhaufel Gov. 434.	Nyburg	376
Monosque	120		Munickendam	159	ibid.	Nykerki	393
Mons	144		Munster <i>Prov. in</i> Ireland	54	Newmarck	Nykoping <i>in</i> Denmark	373
Monstreuil	75		<i>Bish. in</i> Westphalia	223	Newmarker	<i>In</i> Sweden	388
Montargis	85, 97		Munster-Meynfield	183	Newport <i>in</i> Flanders	Nylandia <i>Prov.</i>	392
Montauban	107		Munsterberg <i>Duchy</i>	209	<i>In</i> Holland	Nyllot	393
Mont-beliard	102		Murcia <i>Kingd.</i> 345.	City	Newfidel-see Lake		
Montbeliard County	193			346	Newfol		
Montbrison	104		Murza	355	Newstadt		
Mont-Cassal	135		MUSCOVY 413	<i>&amp; sequ.</i>	Newton-kime		
Mont de Marfan	109		<i>Duchy</i>	420	Newark		
Mont didier	74		Mycone <i>I.</i>	265	Neytra Town <i>&amp; River</i>		
Ment Hulin	76		Myedzyrzeci	410	Nice County 246.		
Monte l'Amaury	85				City ib.		



# The INDEX of Places

Obbo Diocesi and Town	Orleans	92	Patti	303	Placentia Dutchy in Italy	283	
Oby Fluv.	379	Orofio	388	Pau	110	Town	ibid.
Ochie Hole	414	Ordunna	318	Pavia	261	Plalencia in Spain	337
Ocryda	11	Oroxopeda Mount	309	St. Paul in Provence	131	Platza	454
Oczakow Tartary	451	Orfi	286	— In Artoi,	133	Plawen	215
Odenapol	480	Orfoy	226	St. Paul de Leon	50	Trois Pleskow Dutchy	422. City
Odenfee	395	Orti	285	Chateaux	24	ibid.	ibid.
Odepoa Prov.	375	Ortnaw Territ.	191	Peak of Darby	29	Plimouth	9
Oder Fluv.	394	Ortona	299	Pedrogao	358	Ploczko Palat. 403.	City ib.
Oderzo	171	Orvieto Territ & Town	287	Pedt	479	Plowen Town & Lake	370
Oeland Isle	268	Osenburg	225	Peebles	71	Pludentz	205
Odie	395	Osero Isle & Town	274	Peel	45	Podolia Prov.	411
Oenaland Prov.	259	Osimo	289	Peibus Lake	424	Pohem	428
Oefel	389	Osma	333	Peina	219	Poitiers	94
Oering County 194	396	Osnabruck Bish.	224	Pella	451	Poitou Prov.	ibid.
Offa's Lake	ibid.	Offa Mount	453	Pembroke County	42	Poissy	85
Offen	40	Ofuna	342	Penamacor	356	S. Pol de Leon	90
Offenburg	437	Ofterwick	211	Pendinas Fort	8	Pola	267
Ogrania Prov.	194	Ofria	285	Penkridge	31	Polachia Prov.	409
Ohnipach	422	Oftrog	411	Pen-maen-maur Rock	44	POLAND 397, & sequ.	
Okham	189	Other-half-stone	8	Penrith	38	— Proper	401
Okhampton	28	Otmarsen	167	Pera	473	— Lower	402
Old Amp. Territ.	9	Otranto Prov. & City	300	Perche Prov.	93	Pole Prov.	422
Oldelilo	169	Otricoli	287	Perga	452	Polesia Prov.	409
Oldenburg County and Town	370	Ottersberg	220	Perigord Prov.	108	Il Polesine di Adriano	291
in Westphalia 224.	377	Othefundt Lake	373	Periguenx	ibid.	Di Ferrara ibid.	Di St.
Holstein	377	Oude Ampte Territ	169	Perillaw	421	Georgio ibid.	Di Ro-
Oldendrop	228	Oudenard	136	Perith	38	vigno	271
Oldenzyl	167	Overburrow	36	Permia Prov. 426	Town ib.	Policandro l.	464
Oleron Isle	97	Overflakee Isle	157	Peronne	74	Policaftro	297
Oleron in Gascoigne	111	Overiffel Prov.	166	Perpignan	114	Poligny	102
Olesko Town & River	41	Oueffant Isle	90	Perth County 51.	Town ib.	Pollet Fort	72
Olite Territ. 320	ibid.	Oviedo	317	Perthois Territ.	78	Poloczko Palat. 408.	Town
Olmurz	208	Ourem	358	Perugia Prov. 288.	City	and River	ibid.
Olivenza	360	Oustingh Prov. 426	Town	ibid.	Perusa Valley 254.	Town	Pomerania Dutchy
Olschogorod	428	ibid.	ibid.	ibid.	ibid.	Pomeralia Prov.	404
Olyka	411	Oxford County 10	City	ibid.	Pesaro	250	St. Pons de Tomieres
Olympus Mount.	453	Colleges	ibid.	ibid.	Pescara River 199.	Town	Pont-a-Mousson
Ombria Prov.	287	Owar	438	ibid.	ibid.	Pont de l'Arche	69
S. Omer	132	Oye Isle	97	ibid.	Pest	436	Pont des Veaux
Omlands Prov.	169			ibid.	Peterborough	26	Pont-Eland
Ommenburg	184			ibid.	St. Peter's in Carnsey	56	Pontfract
Onega Fluv.	425			ibid.	Petersburg	356	Ponthieu Earld.
Oneglia Princip. 246	Town			ibid.	Peter-waradin	444	Pontico
ibid.	ibid.			ibid.	Petrikow	403	Pont-l'Eveque
Oofenburg	137	P		ibid.	Pettaw	203	Pontoise
Oofduyveland	162	Adafiosk	393	ibid.	Petzora Prov. 426.	Town	l'ont-Orfon
Oofstend	136	Paderborn Bish.	225	ibid.	and River	ibid.	Pont St. Esprit
Ooftergo Territ.	168	Padron	317	ibid.	Pezenas	115	Pont-sur-Seine
Oofterrich Prov.	61	Padua	271	ibid.	Pfaltz (Nider)	189	Pont-sur Yonne
Oofter-Scheld Fluv.	128	Pagafa	453	ibid.	Pfirt	192	Ponte de Lima
Ooftrich	200	Pago Isle	274	ibid.	Pfortzheim	194	Pontico
Coft-velden	223	St. Palais	110	ibid.	Pharfalus	453	Pontrieux
Ootmersum	167	The Palatine of Bavaria	197	ibid.	Philippi	451	Ponza Isle
Opdael	380	Of the Rhine	189	ibid.	Philippine Fort	137	Poule's Hole
Oppelen Dutchy	209	Palencia	336	ibid.	Philippopoli	471	The POPE's Dominions
Or	481	Paleo Patra	458	ibid.	Philipville	144	280, & sequ.
Orange Princip.	120	Palermo	302	ibid.	Philipsburg	190	Poperingue
Orbe Bail. 241.	Town	Palestrina	285	ibid.	Philipstadt	390	Poras l.
River	ibid.	Palma	268	ibid.	Piacenza	263	Port Mahon
Orbitello	280	— In Andalusia	342	ibid.	Picardy Prov.	73	Port St. Mary
Orbotec	482	Palmela	358	ibid.	Pifts-Wall	38	Portalegre
Orchies	134	Palo Cape	267	ibid.	PIEDMONT 253, & sequ.	38	Portel
Ordi Nucro	273	Palus Nazotis	482	ibid.	Pienza	279	Portland Isle
Orcomene	454	Pamiez	114	ibid.	St. Pierre le Moutier	97	Port-Louis
Orebrow	388	Pampelona Territ. 320	City	ibid.	Pignerol	254	O Porto
Orenfe	306	St. Papoul	113	ibid.	Pila Town & River	386	Portsmouth
Orefand Isle	162	Parenzo	267	ibid.	Piffen	208	PORTUGAL 349 & sequ.
Oreska	396	P A R I S	81	ibid.	Piltyn	406	Polna
Ore-fundt Strait 374.	383	Parma Dutchy 262.	City	ibid.	Pinhel	356	Polnania Palat.
Organia	422	and River	ibid.	ibid.	Pinnenberg Co. 370.	Town	ibid.
Orighuella	327	Parnassus Mount	456	ibid.	ibid.	Pollaga County 443.	City ib.
Orihow	411	Parnaw Town & River	394	ibid.	ibid.	Potes	318
Orillac	105	Paffay	51	ibid.	ibid.	Potenza River 297.	Town ib.
Oristagni	303	Paffaw Bish.	198	ibid.	ibid.	Pozen	206
Orkney Isles	51	Patras	458	ibid.	ibid.	Prague	207
Orleanois	91, & sequ.	Patrick's Purgatory	56	ibid.	ibid.	Prato	278
		Patrimony of St. Peter	286	ibid.	ibid.	Premontre	87
		& sequ.		ibid.	ibid.	Presbrig	



# in EUROPE.

Presbrig	32	Recklenhausen	182	Robaczow	408	Sallenit	323
Presburg	434	Recover'd Country	76	Rolduc	146	Salo	273
Prestoe	375	Reculver	17	Rolle-rich Stones	19	Sallowitzogda	426
Preston	36	Redborn	21	Rom Isle	372	Sallon de Crau	118
Preveza	452	Red-Russia	410	Roma Nova	421	Salonichi	450
Propontis	472	Rees	226	Romagna	290	Saltsch	8
Profloriza	470	Regensburg in Germany	117	Romandiola Prov.	ibid.	Saltzberg	379
Provence	117	Regio Dutchy and Town	30	Romania Prov.	290, 471	Saltzburg in Germany	199.
Provins	80	in Naples	302	Romania-Wivar	479	In Transilv.	441
Pruck an den mur	302	Reineck County 189.	403	ROME	283	Saluces Marquis.	256
P. R U S S I A	403	Town	481	Romerwael	162	Saluzzo	ibid.
Przecop	481	Reinstein County 219.	ibid.	Romney	17	Samandrachi Isle	466
Przecop-Tartary	ibid.	Castle	410	Romdalen	380	Samara	430
Przemillaw	410	Reipolskirk	464	Roncal	320	Samogitia Prov.	406
Pfisoriti Mount.	464	Remiremont	435	Roncesvalles	320	Samoieda Prov.	427
Puggantz	435	S. Remo	340	Ronciglione Ter. 287.	Town	Samsoc Isle	376
Puntal Fore	340	Remois	10	Ronda	ibid.	Sandecz	401
Purbeck Isle	10	Remorentih	159	Ronenburg Fort	344	Sandwich	17
Purmer Territ.	159	Renfrew County	ibid.	Rore County	187	San Remo	257
Purmerent	ibid.	Rennes	426	Roschein	241	San Severino	289
Puste Ozoro	426	Rensburg	295	Roschild	192	Santa	255
Puteoli	295	Reschow Dutchy 420.	116	Rosdori Donski Prov.	374	Santa Fe	344
Puy en Velay	116	Town	325	Roses, as	422	Santander	334
Puycerda	325	Reffundt	295	Rosiem	325	Santaren	358
Puzzoli	295	Retelois Territ.	111, 308	Rosoy	406	Santen	226
Pyrenean Mount.	111, 308	Retling		Rossano	84	Santerre Terr.	74
				Rossi Peop.	298	Santia	255
				Rosthow Prov.	379	Sant Illana	317
				Rostock	421	Santorini I.	464
				Rotenburg	222	Sapienza Isle 464.	See ib.
				Rotenberg	189	Saracosa	302
				Rotterdam	221	Saragossa	321
				Rotwel	151	Sarazana	258
				Rotweil	196	Sarburg	183
				Rouen	239	Sardam	159
				Rovergue Prov.	68	Sardinia Isle	303
				Rovigo	108	Sar-Lous	125
				Rozigno Prov.	271	Sargan County	240
				Roumois	ibid.	Sarlat	109
				Roussillon County	69	Sarno	297
				Routon	114	Sarum	12
				Roye	32	Sas van Gandt	136
				Royfton	74	Saffari	303
				Rudisto	21	Save Fluv.	432
				Rugen Isle	472	Saverne	192
				Rumelia Prov.	213	Savillano	254
				Runal	448	Saumur	94
				Rundfeld Mount.	393	Savolaia Prov.	392
				Ruscog	378	Savona	251
				RUSSIA White 413	390	SAVOY 242, & sequ.	214
				Red	62	Sax-Altemburg	ibid.
				Rutlandshire	410	Sax-Hall Dutchy	222
				Rutzenbuttle Fort	28	Sax-Lawenburg	214
				Rye	220	Sax-Mersburg	ibid.
				Ryftow	16	Sax-Naumburg	225
				Ryphzi Montes	412	Saxenhagen	5
				Ryffel	426	Saxon Heptarchy	217
				Ryfwick	134	— Electorate	213
					157	Saxons Peop.	213
						Saxony Circle 213. & sequ.	214
						Lower 217. Upper	373
						Scagen Town & Cape	372
						Scager-Riff	297
						Scala	363
						SCANDANAVIA	467
						Scardona	225
						Scaumberg Castle	ibid.
						County	235
						Schaffhausen Canton	ibid.
						Town	408
						Schedlowitz	128
						Scheld Fluv.	199
						Schellenberg Castle	160
						Schelling Isle	435
						Schemnitz	165
						Schenckenfance	390
						Schening	159
						Schermer Territ.	159
						Schesburg	



# The INDEX of Places

Schesburg	442	Sewold	395	Soure	355	Sunderkoping	390
Scherland <i>Ile</i>	381	Siachia	464	Sorrento <i>Town</i> 295.	<i>Ibid.</i>	Sundermania <i>Prov.</i>	386
Schierland <i>T. &amp; C.</i>	151	Shafesbury	10	Sotona	325	Sutfolk County	23
Schierling	157	Shepey <i>Ile</i>	17	Souabe <i>Prov.</i>	193	Sully	92
Schirta	431	Sherwood- <i>Town</i>	29	Soule <i>Terr.</i>	110	Sulmona	299
Schlestadt	192	Shirburn.	15	<i>The Sound Straights</i> 337, 353	110	Sulzbach	198
Schonen	389	Shrewsbury	31	Southampton	13	Sunderburg	371
Schoonhoven	158	Shropshire	<i>ibid.</i>	Southwark	15	Sundt <i>Straight</i>	373
Schouwen <i>Ile</i>	161	Shugbure	30	Southwell	29	Sunpa-l	380
Schwaben <i>Conte</i> 193, & <i>seq.</i>	185	Siberia <i>Kingd. in Russia</i>	428	Sourvliet	140	Suntgaw <i>Territ.</i>	191
Schwalbach	185	<i>Town in Poland</i>	401	Spa or Spaw	148	Suntra	185
Schwartzburg <i>County</i>	216	Sichem	139	Spalato	274	Suntra	185
Schwartzenburg <i>Dist.</i>	241	Sicily <i>Ile</i>	301	Sphamheim	190	Sura Morzi Lake	482
<i>Town</i>	<i>ibid.</i>	Siculi <i>Peop.</i>	440	SP-IN 307, & <i>seq.</i>	<i>ibid.</i>	Surgut	429
Schwienfurt <i>Dutch</i>	279	Sidagoy	482	La Spezza <i>Town</i> , 458.	<i>ibid.</i>	Surrey <i>County</i>	15
Schweinfurt	189	Siderocapla	450			Sursee	232
Schwinburg	376	Siebenburgen	440			Susa <i>Marque</i> 255,	256
Schwarz <i>Cont.</i> 223.	<i>Town.</i>	Siena	279	Spina Longa	463	<i>Town</i>	<i>ibid.</i>
	<i>ibid.</i>	Siffano <i>Ile</i> 454.	<i>Town</i>	Spinham-lands	14	Susdal <i>Prov. and Town</i>	422
Sclavi <i>Peop.</i>	443	Sigen <i>County and Town</i>	185	Spire <i>Bist.</i> 190	<i>ibid.</i>	Sussex <i>County</i>	15
Sclavonia <i>Prov.</i>	443	Sigerth	439	Spoleto <i>Dutch &amp; City</i> 287.	<i>ibid.</i>	Swabia	193
Scordale	380	Silcester in <i>Hamp.</i> 13.	<i>In</i>	Mount		SWEDEN	382
Scopia	469	<i>Northumb.</i>	39	Spurnhead	35	— Proper	386
Scopulo <i>Ile</i>	466	Silesia <i>Dutchy</i>	207	Squillaci	298	Swarzlys	167
SCOTLAND 46, & <i>seq.</i>		Silistria	470	Stade	220	Swerin	222
Scots <i>Peop.</i>	2, 4	Silves	361	Stafford <i>County</i> 31	<i>ibid.</i>	SWITZERLAND 228 &	<i>seq.</i>
Scorufa	453	Simmeren <i>Dutchy</i> 191	<i>Town</i>	Stafforda in <i>Piedmont</i> 256			
Scutari	451, 473		<i>ibid.</i>	Staffenger <i>Gov.</i> 380	<i>Town</i>	Swoll	167
Seyros <i>I.</i>	466	Sinigaglia	290		<i>ibid.</i>	Sylt <i>Ile</i>	372
Sdilles <i>Ile</i>	465	Nitra <i>Fluv.</i>	398	Stagno	467	Syracuse	303
Seara	390	Sion	238	Stagyra	451		
S. Sebastian	318	Sirad <i>Palat. &amp; Town</i>	403	Stain	202		
Sebenico	274	Sirk or Sirques	125	Stalimene <i>Ile</i> 466	<i>Town</i>		
Seckau <i>Castle</i>	202	Sirmich <i>County &amp; Town</i>	444		<i>ibid.</i>		
Seden	78	Sirmium	444	Stamboul	472	Tabor	208
Seebj	373	Sifeg	445	Stamford	28	Tadcaster	34
Seeland <i>Ile</i>	374	Sisterna	110, 120	Stanton-drew	11	Tafalla	320
Seez	71	Skelskor	375	Storz	233	Tajo or Tagus <i>Fluv.</i>	303
Segetberg	370	Skie <i>Ile</i>	52	Stara Russia	425	Talaveru de la Reyna	330
Segedin	436	Slaboda	426	Stargard	404	Tame- <i>Fluv.</i>	18
Segeswar	442	Slavi <i>Peop.</i>	443	Staveren	169	Tamerton	8
Segna	445	Sleswick <i>Dutchy</i> 370	<i>City</i>	Staky	412	Tanais <i>Fluv.</i>	414
Segni <i>Mount.</i>	286	Slisko <i>Dutchy</i>	207	Steenkirk	145	Tangermund	211
Segorre	227	Sloor	168	Steenwick	167	Tarazona	322
Sagoria	333	Sluys or Sluce	117	Stegeborg	390	Tarbe	111
Seguenza	333	Smaland <i>Prov.</i>	389	Steinfurt	225	Tarentaise <i>Prov.</i>	245
Seine <i>Fluv.</i>	58	Smalcald	185	Stekce	376	Tarento <i>Town &amp; Gulph</i>	301
Seiffel	108	Smolensko <i>Dutchy</i>	420.	Stendal	210	Targorod	479
Selivera	472	<i>City</i>	<i>ibid.</i>	Sterin	212	Tarifa	342
Selkirk <i>County</i> 51.	<i>Town</i>	Sneeck	168	Steyer <i>Fluv. &amp; Urbs</i>	201	Tarnest	395
Selsey	15	Sniatya	410	Steymarck	202	Tarragona	324
Semendria	469	Snowdon <i>Hills</i>	44	Stiva, es	454	Tartaria Mordua	422
Semigallia <i>Prov.</i>	406	Sockzow	479	STOCKHOLM	387	Tartary <i>Crim</i>	481
Semlyn	444	Soest	227	Stockton	35	— <i>Lesser</i>	<i>ibid.</i>
Semur en Auxois	100	Soesdyck	163	Stolberg <i>County</i> 216	<i>Town</i>	Tartars <i>Peop.</i>	480
— En Briennois	<i>ibid.</i>	Soigny <i>Wood</i>	185		<i>ibid.</i>	Taslo <i>Ile</i>	466
Sandomir	401	Soissons	86	Stolp <i>Mountains</i>	436	Tavasthia <i>Prov.</i>	392
Senef	139	Solendael	380	Stone-henge	12	Tavasthus	393
Senes	118	Soleure	235	Stony-Stratford	20	Taverno	298
Senigaglia	290	Solikamskoy	427	Stormar <i>Prov.</i>	369	Tavestock	9
Senlis	86	Solms <i>County</i>	187	Stortford	21	Tavira <i>Territ.</i> 361.	<i>Town</i>
Sens	79	Solothurn <i>Canton</i> 2, 4	<i>Town</i>	Straelsfund	212	Taunton	11
Sephagia	462		<i>ibid.</i>	Stralen	166	Taunton <i>Norib</i>	10
Serfano <i>I</i>	465	Soltwedel	211	Starsburg	191	Teano	296
Serpa	360	Soma	425	Stratford on Avon	30	Tecklenburg	225
Serpenow	428	Somerfetshire	11	Strath-navern	51	Tekin	479
Serpentstones	11	Somerdyck	157	Straubingen	198	Temeswaer <i>Prov.</i>	468
Servia <i>Prov.</i>	468	Somerton	11	Stregnes	388	Temova	470
Sesia <i>Fluv.</i>	464	Sondrio	236	Strelitz	425	Tenbigh	42
Sestos <i>Town and Castle</i>	474	Sonneburg	396	Strivali <i>Iles</i>	462	Tende <i>County</i> 246.	<i>Town</i>
Sesia <i>Prov.</i> 463.	<i>Town</i>	Soor	375	Stromboli <i>Ile</i>	305	Ten <i>Jurisdctions of</i> Swill.	
Setimes	454	Sooska	425	Stronden	380		236
Seven-wolden <i>Territ.</i>	168	Sophia	479	Stubkoping	376	Teneriff <i>Peak</i>	348
S. Sever	109	Sophiaodde	376	Stuhl-Weissenburg	438	Teramo	299
Severia <i>Prov.</i>	420	Sora	296	Strurbride	16	Tercera <i>Iles</i>	361
S. Severina	298	Soratoff	430	Sturgard	194	Ter-Goes	162
S. Severino	289	Soraw	215	Styria <i>Dutchy</i>	202	Ter-Gou	159
Seril	339	Soria	334	Suchana <i>Fluv.</i>	414	Ter-Tolen	162
		Somme <i>R.</i>	75			Ter-	



232

U.



# The INDEX of Places, &c.

W.

W. Aag. Fluv.	422	Wells	11	Wirobitiza	444	felt 24, in Isle Wight 13
Waal Fluv.	128	Wels	202	Wisbaden Co. 187	406	Yedam 159
Wachendonck	166	Wenysfel Territ. 373.	ibid.	Wisburg	356	Yeghall 55
Wad. Bridge	8	Wergins Meadow	33	Wisby	ibid.	YORK County 33. City ibid.
Wad. Fluv.	128	Werle	182	Wischgroed	409	Yorkshire, East-Riding 34.
Wad. Country	137	Wermeland Prov.	389	Wisciffa	408	— North-Riding 35, West-
Wageningen	164	Werminster	12	Wismar	222	— Riding 33
Wageningen Prov.	370	Werrheim County	189	Witepsk Palz. 408.	ibid.	Ypres 134
Wagri Peep.	ibid.	Wesel	226	Withcombe	9	Ysendrick 137
Wackenfeld	34	Wesenburg	394	Witmund	224	Yverdun 232
Walachia Prov.	478	Wesep	159	Wittemburg	214	Yvetot 69
Walcheren Isle	161	Wester Fluv.	171	Wittenstein	394	
Walcourt	146	Westlinburg	369	Wittham	23	
Walcowar	444	Westeras	383	Witzenhausen	185	
Waldburg Barony	196	Westergoe Territ.	168	Wizagna	441	
Waldec County	186	Westerrich Prov.	61	Wladislaw Palz. 403	7	
Waldenses Peep.	113	Westerrick Territ.	390	Wodensdike	12	
W A L E S	40	Westfold Territ.	169	Wolaw	209	
Walfleet	23	West Frizeland Prov.	153	Wolfembutte	218	
Walkowiska	408	Westmania Prov.	385	Wolfendyck Isle	161	
Wall	31	Westminster	22	Wolferdyck	162	
Wallingford	14	Westmoreland County	37	Wolga Fluv.	414	
Wallerland County	238	Westphalia Circle 222.	8	Wolgast Territ. 212.	ibid.	
Walpo Town and River	443	West-reiden	223	Wollin Isle	213	
Wallingham	25	Weterow Prov.	186	Wollosturgy	426	
Walstrode	219	Wetlar	185	Wolmer	395	
Wandike	12	Wexico	390	Wolocz	420	
Waradin	437	White-hart Forest	10	Wolodomir Prov.	421.	
Waradin Great	ibid.	White Sea	427	Town	422	
Warbeck	395	Wiadka Fluv.	426	Wologda Prov. 425.	City	
Warberg	390	Wiadki Dutchy,	426	and River	ibid.	
Warburg	225	Wiborg	393	Woloska Zemla Prov. 478		
Wardhuyte Prov. 381	Town	Wiburg Diocess 373.	City	Wolmer	395	
Ware	21	ibid.	394	Womer Fluv.	21	
Warenburg	375	Wicia Terri.	20	Woodstock	19	
Warneton	134	Wickham	55	Worcester County 30	City ib.	
W A R S A W	409	Wicklow Prov.	403	Worum in Holland 158.		
Warforia Prov.	409	Widlim	200	In Frizeland	168	
Wartemberg	405	Wien Riv. 17.	160	Worms	191	
Warwick County 30.	Town	Wierings Isle	36	Worotin Dutchy 420.	Town	
Warwyck in Flanders	ibid.	Wiggin	13	ibid.		
Waser-Heley	443	Wight Isle	445	Woronitz	422	
Wastlogerod	421	Wihitz	186	Wotton	15	
Warchendonck	166	Wildnagen	408	Wring-cheese Stone.	8	
Waterford	55	Wilkomitz	158	Wurtzburg Dutchy	194	
Watling-chester	21	Willemstadt	188	Wurtzburg Bisthop.	188	
Watling-ft. east-way	27	Wilna Palz. 407.	ibid.	Wyck te Duerfelde	163	
Waygats Straights 427.	332	River	369	Wyke	394	
Wedlec	410	Wiltier Town and Riv.	12	Wyckel	394	
Wedstera	390	Wilton	ibid.			
Ween Isle	377	Wiltshire	10			
Weert	143	Winburne	13			
Weil	372	Winchester	406			
Weilburg County	187	Windaw	37			
Weimar Dutchy	216	Windermere	203			
Wiesbaden	184	Windishmarch Territ.	14			
Wiesburn	438	Windfor	10			
Weisford	55	Windford-Eagle	411			
Weissemburg Stuhl 192.	442	Winnicza	235			
Weissenburg	192	Winsoxbergen	169			
Wakelar	393	Wintheim	189			
		Winwick	36			
		Wirchatoura	426			
		Wiria Territ.	394			

Z.

Z Aaffebes	442
Zabache Sea	482
Zabern	192
Zachonia Prov.	458
Zagrab	444
Zakrotzin	409
Zalland Territ.	166
Zamora	335
Zamoscie	410
Zant Isle 275, 462.	City ib.
Zara Count. 274.	Town ib.
Zaragoza	320
Zarnata	460
Zatmar	437
Zawichost	401
Zbaras	411
Zea Isle	465
Zealand, Low Countr.	160
Zeben	441
Zeingenheim	185
Zeigan	209
Zeitton	453
Zealand Isle in Denmark	374
Zell Dutchy 219.	Town ibid.
ZEMLA NOVA	427
Zeng	455
Zerbft	216
Zergolt	428
Zetere Fluv.	352
Zezimbra	358
Zirmia Isle	465
Zirczee	162
Zirknitz Town 204.	Lake ibid.
Zitton	453
Znaim	208
Zockzow	479
Zonock Co. 437.	Town ib.
Zons	182
Zug Canton 223.	Town ib.
Zurich Canton 231.	City ib.
Zutphen Prov 165.	Town 16
Zuyder-zee	160
Zweybrucken Dutchy	191
Town	ibid.
Zwickow	215
Zwoll	167
Zygeth	439
Zype Territ.	155
Zytomeriez	411

X.

X Aintes	109
Xativa Town and Ri-	327
ver	327
Xeres de la Frontera	341
Xaintonge	109
Xeres de las Cavalleros	338

Y.

Y, Ya, or Ye Fluv.	154
Yarmouth in Nor-	

AN INTRO.



# A N INTRODUCTION To the Study of GEOGRAPHY.

**T**HE Word *GEOGRAPHY*, which is a Composition of the Two Greek Words *Γῆ* and *Γραφή*, the former signifying *Terra* the Earth, and the latter *Scriptura* or *Scriptio* a Writing, Implies a Description of the Earth; in which large Sense I think the internal and constituent as well as the External Parts are included, and therefore it may not be improper to say, that *GEOGRAPHY* Consists of these Two Parts, *Viz.*

- I. A N account of the Elements or Constituent Parts, Namely Earth, Water, Fire and Air.
- II. A VIEW of the Surface of the Land and Sea, or Terraqueous Globe.

THE Latter of these, which is the Whole in the Common Books of *GEOGRAPHY*, Consists of these Parts.

I. CHOROGRAPHY. 2. TOPOGRAPHY. And 3. HYDROGRAPHY.

1. CHOROGRAPHY, (from *Χώρα* *Regio*) is the Description of the respective Divisions or large Parts of the Earth, which bear the general Name of Countreys or Regions; And this may be consider'd four-fold. 1. *Geometrically*, as it relates to the Extent and Boundaries of Countries; to which ought to be added the Subdivisions into Provinces or Shires. 2. *Naturally*, wherein the Situation (with respect to the Heavens) the Climate, Soil and Products, ought to be declar'd. 3. *Politically*, wherein the Government and History is to be consider'd. And 4. *Humanely*, with relation to the Inhabitants of them, their Religion, Manners, Customs, &c.

2. TOPOGRAPHY, (from *τόπος* *Locus*) is the Description of Cities and Towns, wherein the Situation, Magnitude, Government, Trade, Opulency, Publick Structures, together with the various Changes, Improvements or Decrements they have at several times undergon, ought to be told.

3. HYDROGRAPHY, (from *ῥοή* *Aqua*) is the Description of *Rivers* and *Seas*; wherein the Rise and Course of *Rivers* with all the peculiarities belonging to them, such as Rapidity, Cataracts, Overflowings and the like ought to be declared. The Extent of *Seas*; The Islands seated in them; The Shoars they Wash; The Havens, Bays, Capes, Rocks; As also, the Depths and Shoals. But this being a Work as large almost as the Description of the Earth, it is usually perform'd separate for the Use of Navigators.

THESE are the Parts of *GEOGRAPHY* as generally understood; and these are the Heads which we have all along Treated on in this Volume, and have been as particular in, as we judg'd necessary for the Reader's Information and Delight, or as we could with assurance of Truth.



T H E other Part of G E O G R A P H Y we mentioned, namely that which relates to the Internal Constituent Parts of the Terraqueous Globe, their Natures and Effects, is reckon'd to be more properly the business of the Natural Philosopher, and is therefore omitted by Geographers, or at least not compleatly handled. But since that part of Natural Philosophy is in reality necessary to one that desires a full Knowledge of the Earth, We have taken the Liberty to enlarge upon that Subject.

T H E R E is yet another Science which is necessary to a Geographical Student, for without a competent knowledge thereof he cannot have a full Idea of our Sublunary World ; I mean C O S M O G R A P H Y, or the Description of the whole Universe, which acquaints us with the other parts of the World, and shews us the Situation of Our Earth with respect to the Celestial Bodies, and the Distance, Magnitude, and Motion of those Bodies.

And Lastly, T H E D O C T R I N E of the S P H E R E, that is, the Technical or Artificial Part of C O S M O G R A P H Y, wherein the World is divided by Circles, for the better understanding the Motions of the Heavenly Bodies ; and the Seasons and Climates in the Several Parts of the Earth ; must be Learnt before you enter upon the Study of G E O G R A P H Y.

To Render therefore our Work Compleat ; We shall, by way of Introduction, give our Reader,

I. A G E N E R A L View of C O S M O G R A P H Y, wherein the Two Hypotheses of *Ptolemy* and *Copernicus* are explain'd, and the M A G N I T U D E, D I S T A N C E and R E V O L U T I O N S of the P L A N E T S declared.

II. T H E S P H E R E describ'd, in a plain and easy manner.

III. T H E Inhabitants of the Earth consider'd, with respect to Z O N E S, C L I M A T E S, S H A D O W S, &c.

IV. T H E Figure, Motion and Magnitude of the E A R T H.

V. A N Explication of Terms of A R T used in G E O G R A P H Y. Together with short and necessary I N S T R U C T I O N S to Beginners for the Understanding of Maps.

To this, which may properly be called an I N T R O D U C T I O N to G E O G R A P H Y, We shall Subjoyn, Two Books of Natural Philosophy, *Viz.*

B O O K I. Of the E A R T H and S E A.

B O O K II. Of the A I R and M E T E O R S.

T H E Former in Eight Chapters, under these Heads.

1. O F the Earth consider'd in its self.
2. O F Subterraneous Things in general ; and First of Sulphur and Bitumen.
3. O F Fire in general, and more especially of Subterraneous Fires, and Earth-quakes occasion'd by them.
4. O F Metals.
5. O F such Fossils as are Calcin'd by the Heat of Fire.
6. O F the Loadstone and its Properties.
7. O F Fountains and Rivers ; And therein of the Origine of Fountains.
8. O F the Sea.

A N D the Latter in Five Chapters.

1. O F the Air.
2. O F Meteors in general, and of Vapours proceeding from Water, as Mists, Clouds, Dew, Rain Snow and Hail.
3. O F the Rainbow, the Halo or Lunar Iris, Mock-Suns, &c.
4. O F Fiery Exhalations, Thunder, Lightning, &c.
5. O F Wind ; And therein of the Monsoons or Trade-Winds.



# CHAP. I. Of the UNIVERSE.

**T**HE Universe or Whole World is of indefinite Extent, that is, it is so vast and immense that the finite Mind of Man cannot reach its outmost Bounds, but is lost in the Contemplation of it; even almost in the same manner as it is overwhelm'd, when it endeavours to grasp the infinite and incomprehensible Nature of the Deity. Nothing but an Omnipotent God could form so perfect a Structure as that Part of the World, which we with our bodily Eyes behold; and therefore much more must the same God be the adorable Author of that far greater part of it, which we can only perceive and understand with the Eyes of our Minds.

But altho' we are not able to Comprehend the Whole, we may be well acquainted with some Parts of it; and therefore the Vortex of our Sun, and the Great Orbs that are under his Influence, the Wisdom of Humane Nature has obtain'd some tolerable Knowledge of.

By the Naked Eye it was observ'd that the Stars had a Motion; that Five of them particularly, besides the Sun and Moon, were discover'd to change their Situation so much as to obtain the name of *Planets* or Wandering Stars. This Knowledge alone was what the Ancients were contented with; but the ingenious Penetration of more Modern Astronomers, and the Invention of Glasses and Instruments that help the Sight to a vast Degree, have discover'd that those Five Planets are so many Orbs, and that even the Earth on which we Inhabit is like them a Globe also, and most probably to them appears a Star too, by Reflecting the Light that the Sun Darts upon us, which in all probability is the only Light that we Receive from them. That the Moon is an Opaque, or dark Body, is now acknowledged by every Body, and yet we see she affords us Light at certain times; that is, when she is in those Signs of the Zodiack that are in our Hemisphere, and can reflect to us the Light that the Sun casts upon her. It is apparent that she has no Light of her own, both from the deficient Light she affords at the time of her first Appearance, which we call New Moon, even tho' at that time her whole Body be above our Horizon; and especially during the time of an Eclipse, when the Earth interposing between the Sun and it, Robs the Moon of her borrow'd Light, and shews her in her true Condition.

From this Knowledge of the Moon, some curious Philosophers have by Observation and Reasoning, concluded that the Planets are also Opaque Bodies: and even some adventur'd so far as to affirm they are Habitable Worlds, as this Earth of our's is. But that No-

tion we shall leave to others to discuss, and proceed to the General Doctrine of Cosmography, or the Description of the World.

The whole Space of the Universe is fill'd with *Æther*\*, or a purer Air, wherein all the Planets, and even our Earth, continually float in a Regular Course. That the Earth is a Globe, and hangs (if we may so term it) in the Air, is what is now granted by all Philosophers; and tho' at first sight this may seem a strange Doctrine, yet it is not inconsistent with Humane Reason, if we consider, that mighty Castles (for no less are the great Ships built now-a-days) float upon the Water, and great and ponderous Birds fly in the Air; and that the Almighty may as well have made *Æther* strong enough to support this great Globe, and yet flexible enough to let it move in, is not at all more difficult to conceive 'Tis true, the Ancients had no Idea of this, they believ'd the Earth to be a flat Plain, † or at most a Cone or rising Mountain; and so incredible did the Doctrine of the Globular Form of it appear to our Ancestors, that in the Year 612, *Vigilius Bishop of Strasburg* was Excommunicated by Pope *Zachary* for Asserting it. 'Tis strange that the Ancient Philosophers whose studious Enquiries penetrated so far into all manner of Science, should content themselves with so imperfect a Knowledge in this. But tho' they were ignorant of it, we are well acquainted with it. The Discovery of *America*, and the same Ship sailing continually Westward till she Return to the Place she set out from, is an Experimental Demonstration that the Earth and Sea is a Globe.

The Ancients form'd an Idea of the Heavenly Bodies suitable to their Knowledge of the Earth; and accordingly as they fancied That a Flat Plain, so they suppos'd the Heavens like a Canopy spread over it, wherein the Planets fix'd in their Spheres, like a Nail in a Wheel, made a continual Circuit one above another; the Sun, according to them, being one of those Planets. Thus the System of the Universe, form'd by *Claudius Ptolemy*, a most celebrated Astronomer and Geographer, shews us the Earth at the bottom; next above her the Moon; then the Planet *Mercury*; next *Venus*; above her the Sun; next above him *Mars*, then *Jupiter*; beyond him *Saturn*, above whom the Firmament of the Fixt Stars, over which they placed two *Crystalline* Spheres; and lastly, the *Primum Mobile*, which they suppos'd to be the First Heaven that gave Motion to all the Spheres. For the better Illustration, we have here exhibited a Draught of it.

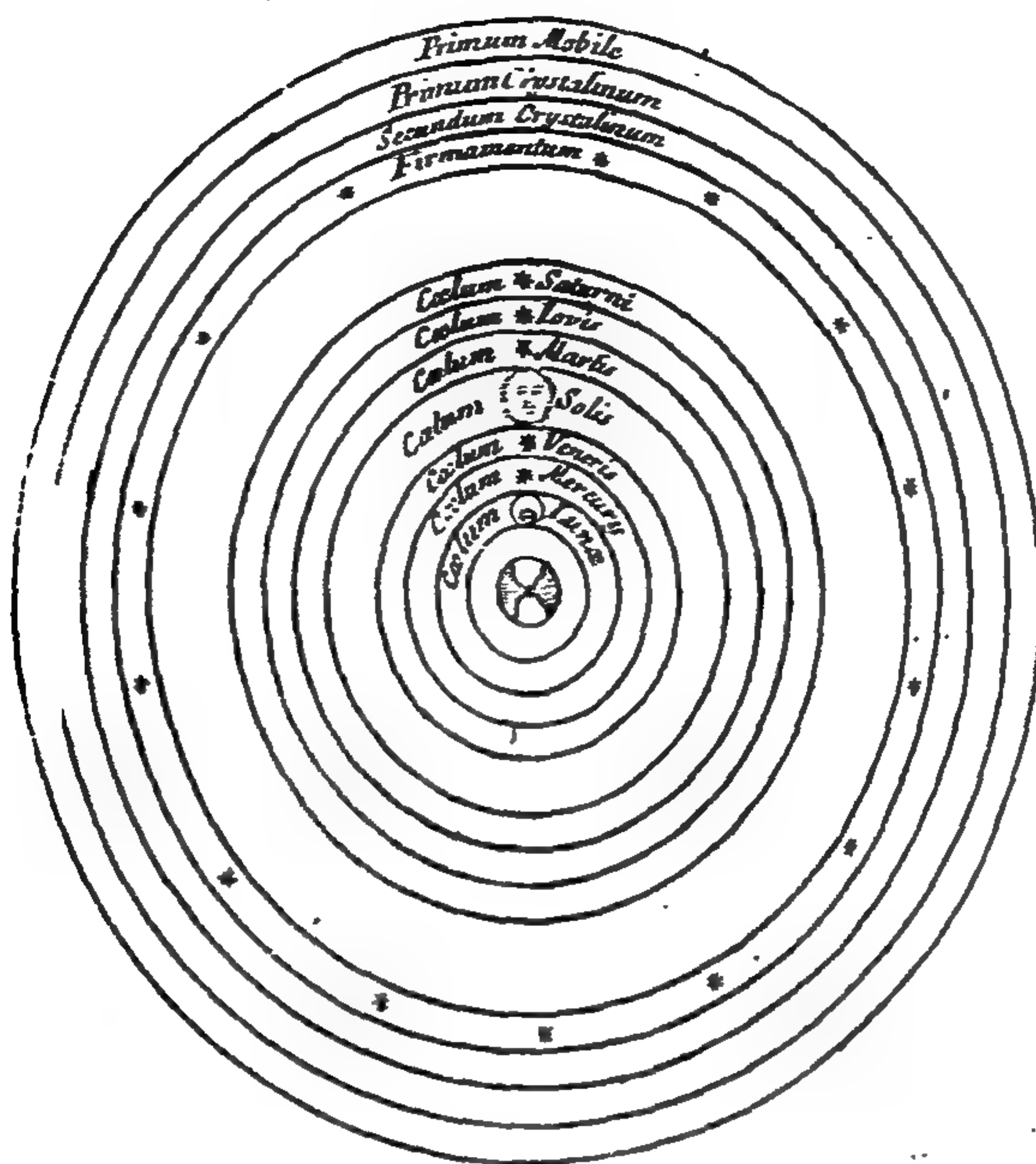
This

\* Note.] It must be advertis'd that tho' this be the *Cartesian* Doctrine, it is not entirely concurr'd in, or indeed it must be acknowledged it is oppos'd by that very great Philosopher and Mathematician Mr. *Newton*; who supposes an Universal Gravity, whereby the Planetary Orbs are sustain'd, and at almost *vacuum* wherein they move. But this Treatise being design'd for Learners, it would be improper to enter so large a Field as that Great Man's Arguments would lead us into; and for the present shall satisfy our selves with having let the young Reader know, that he must hereafter consult that Gentleman and Mr. *Whiston*, if he desires full Information.

† Note.] This Expression may probably be excus'd against by the Learned, in regard that *Pythagoras* is said to have taught, That the Fire or Sun was seated in the Center, and the Earth like a Star suspended in its Sphere, made a Revolution round it: That *Plato* and *Aristotle* have some Expressions that way; and that *Anaxarchus* form'd an Hypothesis upon the same Doctrine. Yet we may justly enough say, the Ancients were of a contrary Opinion, since 'tis well known the general Belief was so.



## SYSTEMA PTOLOMEI



This System was generally believ'd till the Discovery of *America* disprov'd one Part of it, and the Consideration of the Rapid Motion of the Sun, and the other Planets, and the much greater Rapidity of the Motion of the Fix'd Stars, put *Nic. Copernicus*, a famous German Mathematician, about 200 Years ago, upon Forming a New System, which might be more consistent with Reason.

*Copernicus's System.*

The *Copernican* System therefore is thus. The Sun being found to be a Body, at least 300 times bigger than our Earth, it seem'd preposterous that so mighty a Body of Fire should whirl round so large a Circle as his Sphere in the *Ptolemaic* System is, in so short a time as 24 Hours: 'Twas therefore more reasonable to believe the Earth seated in the Sphere that *Ptolemy* had plac'd the Sun in, and that the Sun is plac'd in the Center; for by that means, if the Earth but turn round upon its own Axis in 24 Hours, every Side of it is turn'd to the Sun, and consequently a Day and a Night is afforded to all its Inhabitants, without putting the Sun, or even the Earth, to the necessity of making so vast a Journey as the Circle of its Sphere amounts to. And then he allow'd the Earth a Year in his Circuit round the Sun. This therefore was his Hypothesis; viz. That the Sun is seated in the Center, and has no other Motion than turning round upon its own Axis, which it performs in  $27\frac{1}{2}$  Days. The Sun is surrounded with a vast Space of *Aether*, of many Millions of Miles extent, which is call'd its Vortex, which *Aether* is carried round with the Sun; and because the Planets float in it, they also are carried in a continual Circuit from West to East round the Sun in certain Periodical times, according to their Vicinity or Distance from the Sun. The Earth is one of these Planets, and has another attending her, viz. the Moon; for that Planet belongs

*The Moon.*

to Us only, being in continual Circuit round this Earth, and with It carried on in the Annual Circuit that the Earth makes round the Sun: The Use of it being to Reflect the Sun-Beams to us at such times as He is gon from us. The like Concomitants have some of the other Planets, viz. *Jupiter* four, and *Saturn* five, we suppose for the same reason; and in regard that those Planets are so much more distant from the Sun than we are, they have consequently occasion for more Moons than we have. 'Tis certain by Ocular Demonstration, that there are four little Planets, which we call *Satellites*, that are in continual Circuit round about *Jupiter*; and so regular are their Motions, that the Eclipses of them are Calculated, and thereby a great Help found out to the Correcting of Maps, as we shall have occasion to shew more particularly by and by. The same Demonstration has discover'd the Five *Satellites* of *Saturn*; and moreover, a large Ring of Light surrounding that Planet. Of the other Planets, it is not necessary to speak more than of their Magnitude, Distance and Revolution; but the MOON being a sort of Appendix to the Earth, 'tis necessary to be a little more particular concerning it.

Satellite of Jupiter.

Satellite and Ring round Saturn.

It is suppos'd from the Principle of Gravitation, wherein all Bodies incline to the Center; that the Moon is of a Substance less Dense, or of Parts less compacted than the Earth.

By our Sight it appears to be more dark in some Places than others, which, by the help of Telescopes, is found to proceed from the Inequality of its Surfaces; whereof some Parts rise up into Mountains, and others sink into Valleys, as the Map of it, and the *Selenography*, or Description of the external Face of the Moon, set forth by the learned and accurate *Chr. Hevelius* has shewn.

Upon



Upon the Question, whether it hath any innate Light? or, being an Opaque or Dark Body, reflects only the Light of the Sun? Disputes were held more frequently before the Use of Telescopes had decided the Controversy, and given it to the latter.

These things are to be observ'd. 1. When the Moon begins to recede from the Sun, and in the Evening is seen to rise out of his Rays where it before lay hid; a small portion only of her is seen by us, and appears horned, because the other parts of the enlightned Hemisphere is seen in the other Region of the Vortex. 2. On the seventh and eighth Day, being then the fourth Part of the Zodiack distant from the Sun, we see the half of her Hemisphere enlightned. 3. Afterwards as the Moon proceeds on the Zodiack, it appears more Gibbous, because the greater half of the Hemisphere is turned towards us. 4. When it comes into Opposition to the Sun, that is, to the greatest distance from him, which happens on the fourteenth Day, we see the full Hemisphere of the Moon enlighten'd. And in the same manner in re-treating from the Sun its Light decreases, till it becomes invisible.

The Motion of the Moon is not as that of the other Planets, round about the Sun only, but round the Earth, and with that round the Sun.

The Time of its Revolution round the Earth is about 28 Days; and with the Earth it is carried round the Sun in a Year.

The Course of the Moon is not upon the Ecliptick, as the Earth's, but deviates to the North and South.

These being premised, the Reason of the Eclipses of the Moon will easily be understood. The Moon suffers

an Eclipse, when the Earth in its annual Motion passes between it and the Sun, whereby its Rays, however full they would be upon it, are totally intercepted: which happens only at the Full Moon. But however, it is not at every Full Moon that an Eclipse happens, because the Moon's Course lying to the Southward and Northward of the Ecliptick, she do's not always come within the Shadow of the Earth. Thus therefore at some times, but part of the Moon is Eclips'd. But it is seldom in the whole Year that it quite escapes it. However, altho' the Earth intercepts the Light of the Sun from falling directly on the Moon, yet it do's not nevertheless hinder, but that it will receive a faint imperfect Light, as we see in the Case of a Total Eclipse.

The Reason why the Moon affects the Flux and Reflux of the Sea, we shall speak to in its Place.

We proceed now to the Situation of the Planets, which in this System are thus; *Viz.*

The Sun is seated in the Center.

The Planet nearest to the Sun is *Mercury*.

Next beyond him is *Venus*.

Beyond *Venus* is the Sphere of our Earth, with the Moon.

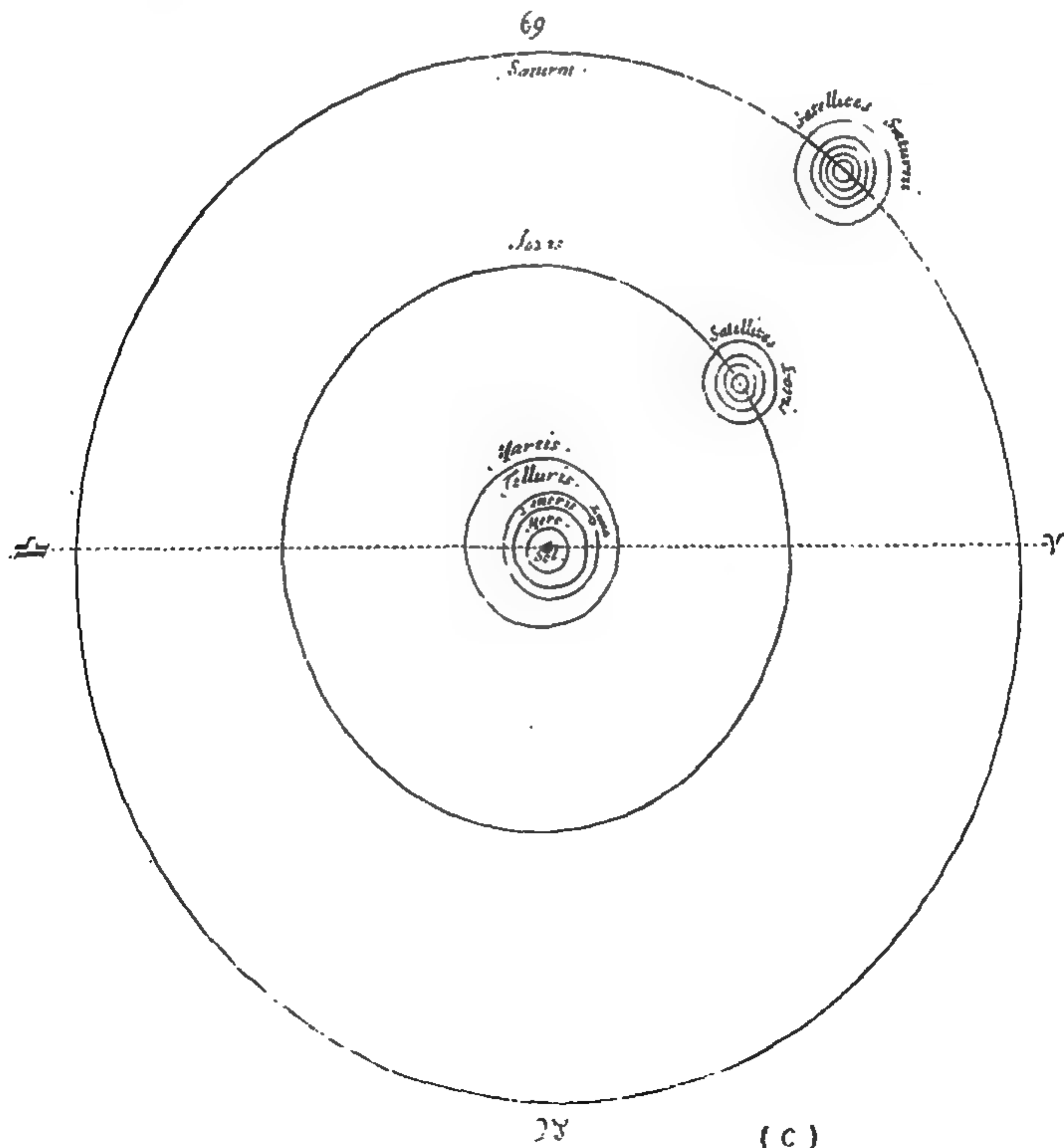
Next to the Earth is *Mars*.

Next *Jupiter*, with his *Satellites*; And lastly,

At a vast greater Distance is *Saturn* with his *Satellites* and Ring.

A view of the whole, in their proportionate Distances from the Sun, is shewn in this Scheme.

SYSTEMA COPERNICI. P. 12.





But, to be more exact, we shall set down the real Distance of every Planet from the Sun, according to the Observations of Astronomers. *Viz.* The Distance of the Earth from the Sun is 750 of the Diameters of the Earth; that is, 6485975 Miles \*. This Distance we shall make a Standard for the rest; that is to say, divide it into 100000 Parts, and shew how many of those Parts each Planet is distant from the Sun, thus:

Distance of the Planets from the Sun.

The Distance of	Saturn from the Sun is—	951000	} of those Parts.
	Jupiter —————	519650	
	Mars —————	152350	
	Earth —————	100000	
	Venus —————	72400	
	Mercury —————	38806	

Magnitude of the Planets.

Next we shall consider the Magnitude of the Planets, *viz.*  
The Diameter of the Earth is 8369 *English* Miles.  
The Diameter of the Sun is equal to 111 Diameters of the Earth; that is, 928959.  
The Diameter of Saturn is to that of the Sun, as 5, to 37  
The Diamet. of Jupiter is to that of the Sun, as 2 to 11  
————— that of Mars, as 1 to 166  
————— that of the Earth, as 1 to 111  
————— that of Venus, as 1 to 84  
————— that of Mercury, as 1 to 290

The Periodical Revolutions of the Planets round the Sun, is thus: *Viz.*

Revolutions of the Planets.

Sat. moves round the Sun in	29 years, 174 days, 5 hours
Jupiter —————	11 y. 317 d. 15 h.
Mars —————	1 y. 322 d. 0 h.
The Earth —————	1 y. or 365 d. 6 h.
Venus —————	224 d. 18 h.
Mercury —————	88 d. ———

This is the Sum of the *Copernican System*, which is found so agreeable to all the Appearances in the Heavens, and all Objections to it have been so well answer'd by *Galileo*, *Gassendus*, *Kepler*, and others, that the generality of Astronomers now-a-days concur in it.

By these Systems we are inform'd of the Situation, Magnitude and Revolutions of the Planets; but of what Substance they are, is another Enquiry, and what we shall not pretend to meddle with. We have said already, that Astronomers judge them to be Opaque, or Dark Bodies; but whether they are inhabited or not,

we shall leave to others to dispute: To which purpose, they that are minded to hear what is said upon that Argument, may consult Mr. *Fontenel's Plurality of Worlds*, and Mr. *Huygen's Celestial Worlds discover'd*.

As to the innumerable Number of those we call *Fix'd Stars*, the Reader must not expect a Theory of them; tis sufficient to say, that their Distance is so great, that, according to Mr. *Huygen's* Computation, a Cannon-Bullet, in as quick a progressive Motion as is common on Earth, (that is, according to *Mersennus*, One hundred Fathom in the Pulse of an Artery) would spend almost 700000 Years in its Journey between us and them. The Experiment, by which he made this Calculation, is set down in the Tract above-mention'd; but whether he be near the Truth, or no, I know not. 'Tis certain they are at too vast a Distance for Us to be well inform'd of 'em. The same Mr. *Huygen* supposes them to be Suns, and probably to have Planets belonging to 'em, as our Sun hath; whereby he imagines an Infinity of Inhabitable Worlds. But whether there be any Truth in his Conjectures, do's not belong to us to determine.

Of the Fix'd Stars Distance from us.

Huygen's Conjecture concerning them.

All the Use that has been hitherto made of the *Fix'd Stars* by Astronomers, has been only to make a kind of Map of the Heavens; for as the several Parts of the Heavens are shewn to us by the Motion of the Earth, it is very useful to us in Navigation, and many necessary Operations in Astronomy to be able to distinguish exactly, and express by writing the particular Parts. Now to do this, Astronomers have fill'd the Heavens with imaginary Images; that is, such a Constellation or Collection of Stars is call'd the Lion, another the Bear, &c. as may be seen on a Celestial Globe: A particular account of them belongs to Astronomy, and should not be mention'd here at all, but for the sake of the Twelve Constellations that compose the *Zodiack*, these being useful to our present purpose; for these Twelve Constellations, commonly call'd Signs, are ranged one by another quite round the Heavens, and serve very aptly to express the Course of the Planets; for when we are told *Jupiter* is in, that is, over-against *Aries*, *Mars* in *Libra*, *Saturn* in *Scorpio*, or the like, we immediately understand in what part of the Heavens those Planets are. The *Zodiack* also denotes to us the Seasons; for when the Sun is in the Ascending Signs, our Summer approaches; as on the contrary, the Winter comes on when he is in the Descending Signs: But of the *Zodiack* more hereafter.

Constellations.

The Zodiack.

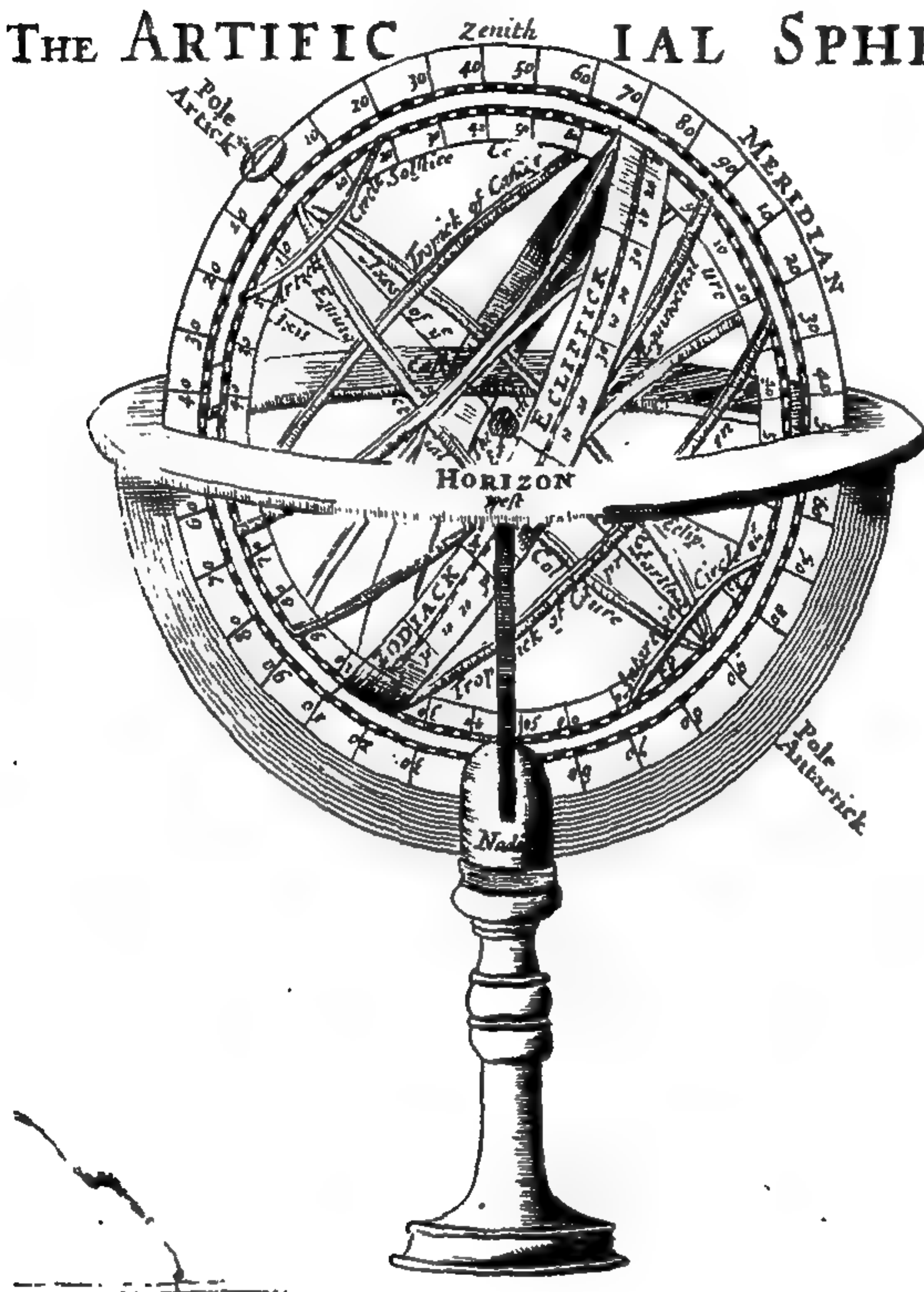
We shall now finish this Chapter, having, we hope, given the Learner a tolerable Idea of the Universe.

\* *Huygen* computes the Distance between the Earth and the Sun to be at least 10000 of its Diameters.



CHAP. II.  
Of the SPHERE.

THE ARTIFICIAL SPHERE



**T**HE Sphere is an Artificial Instrument, consisting of Circles which Astronomers have imagined in the Heavens, and invented for the more certain and easie expressing the Motion of the Planets, &c.

The Picture of it we have here exhibited, and the Description of it is as follows.

An *Axis* passes Diametrically thro' it, upon which the whole is suppos'd to Turn, express'd in the Cut by a single Line.

The two extreame Points thro' which the *Axis* passes are the two *Poles*, the one *North*, and the other *South*, the former call'd the *Arctick* from the *Greek* Word *ἄρκτος*, a Bear, because it is plac'd near that Constellation in the Heavens, and the latter *Antarctick*, as being opposite to it.

The Circles are Eleven in number, whereof seven are call'd the Larger, the other four are Smaller.

The Larger are the *Æquator*, the *Meridian*, the *Zodiack*, the *Ecliptick*, the Two *Colures*, and the *Horizon*; these are of the Circumference of the whole Globe.

The Smaller are the Two *Tropicks*, and the Two *Polar Circles*.

The *Æquator* divides the Sphere into Two Equal Parts, call'd the Northern and Southern Hemispheres. 'Tis also call'd the *Equinoctial Line*, because when the Sun (or rather the Earth) passes under it, the Day and Night is equally long all over the Earth: Which comes to pass twice a Year, viz. *Mar. 11.* and *Sept. 12.* On this Line are computed the Degrees of Longitude, whereof the Number is 360 from *West* to *East* quire round the Earth.

The *Meridian* divides the Sphere into two Equal Parts, call'd the Eastern and the Western Hemispheres. The *Meridian* is mutable, being properly that part of the Heavens where the Sun is at Noon, wherefore every different Part of the Earth has a different *Meridian*; for since the Sun is always moving, the *Meridian* varies as you remove either Eastward or Westward: But in passing *North* or *South* it continues the same. Upon the great or brazen *Meridian* on Globes, the Degrees of Latitude are mark'd; being reckon'd from the *Æquator* to the Pole, both Northward and Southward.

The *Zodiack* is a Circle 16 Degrees Broad, that lies obliquely cross the *Æquator*, enclining on the *East* about



about three Points to the Northward, and on the *West* as many Points to the Southward. It is call'd *Zodiack* from the Greek Word *ζῳδιος* [a Living Creature] because 'tis adorn'd with Twelve Signs or Images of Living Creatures, being so many Constellations, as we have already intimated. The Names, and Characters by which they are express'd are these, *viz.*

*Fig. 1.* Aries, Taurus, Gemini, Cancer, Leo, Virgo, Libra,  
*Fig. 2.* Scorpio, Sagittarius, Capricorn, Aquarius, Pisces.  
*Fig. 3.* ♈ ♉ ♊ ♋ ♌ ♍ ♎ ♏ ♐ ♑ ♒ ♓

*Defn. 1.* The *Ecliptick* is a Line in the middle of the *Zodiack*: And shews the Sun's, or rather the Earth's Annual Course Northward and Southward, which makes the Change of Seasons. The Sun never advances farther than the *Ecliptick*, but the Course of the Moon and the other Planets lies 8 Degrees farther on both sides, which is the Reason that the *Zodiack*, as we said above, is 16 Degrees broad.

*Defn. 2.* The Two Colures cut the Sphere into Four Equal Parts. The Colure of the Solstices pass'g thro' the Poles, cuts the *Zodiack* at the first Degree of *Cancer* and *Capricorn*. The Colure of the Equinoxes in like manner pass'g thro' the Poles, but cuts the *Zodiack* at the beginning of *Aries* and *Libra*. They shew the Seasons, for when the Earth in it's Annual Course passes under the Solstitial Colures the Winter and Summer begin. And when it passes under the Equinoctial Colures, the Spring and Autumn Commence.

*Defn. 3.* The *Horizon* has its Name from the Greek word *ὁρίζων*, to Terminate or Bound; because the *Horizon* determinates the seen Part of the World from the unseen. It is consider'd Twofold, *viz.* the *Rational*, which is a Circle that divides the World into two equal Hemispheres. And the *Sensible*, which is that great Circle,



which a Man being plac'd in a Plain, or on the Sea, determines with his Sight round about, by which the Heavens and the Earth seem to be joyn'd as it were with a kind of Closure. Wherefore the *Sensible Horizon* must change as oft as the Beholder removes himself.

*Defn. 4.* The *Tropicks* are two Circles Parallel to the *Æquator*, and equally distant from it; the one North, and the other South; that on the North passing through the beginning of *Cancer*, takes its Denomination from that Sign; as the other by passing through the beginning of *Capricorn*, has its Name from that Sign. The *Tropick* of *Cancer* is 23 Deg. 31 Min. distant Northward from the *Æquator*, and the *Tropick* of *Capricorn* is the same Distance Southward of it. They were named *Tropicks* from the Greek word *τροπή*, which signifies Conversion, or turning back; because after the Sun has arriv'd at either of them, he goes no farther towards the Poles, but returns back towards the *Æquator*.

We will suppose our Reader a meer Learner, and therefore explain to him the Annual Course of the Sun. He must remember then, that the Sun rises and sets every day a little more Northward than he did the day before, when our Summer approaches; as on the contrary more Southward when the Winter comes on. Thus we will suppose him at the farthest Distance from Us, *viz.* in the *Tropick* of *Capricorn*, which happens every Year on the 11th of *December*, and is with us the shortest Day of the Year; every Day after that he Rises and Sets a little more and more Northward; so that by the 11th of *March* he is in the *Æquator*, and gives an equal Day and Night to all the Earth: Advancing still every Day Northward, he at length arrives on the 11th of *June*, at the *Tropick* of *Cancer*, which makes the longest Day with us, and then returns again to the Southward, toward the other *Tropick*. And thus by advancing Northward and Southward continually, affords a Winter, a Summer, a Spring, and an Autumn to all the Parts of the Earth.

This Definition is adapted to our Senses, because we think we see the Sun move, and rise and fall in our *Horizon*; but the Truth is (at least if we allow *Copernicus's* System) 'tis the Earth only that performs this Motion. We have said already, that the Earth turns round upon its own Axis every day; and in turning round, it advances the length of its Circumference every day upon a Circle (just as a Bowl, for example, upon a Green) so large, that a Year's time is taken up in its surrounding it. Suppose we then this Circle to be the *Ecliptick*, which as we have shewn already, lies obliquely cross the *Æquator* from *Tropick* to *Tropick*, and the Change of the Seasons will be very intelligible to us.

The two remaining Circles of the Sphere are the two Polar, *viz.* the *Arctick* or Northern, and the *Antarctick* or Southern. They are both Parallel to the *Tropicks*, the former 23 Degrees, 31 Minutes from the North-Pole, and the latter the same Distance from the South-Pole. They serve to Bound the two Temperate Zones, beyond them being the Frigid Zones.

So much for the Circles of the Sphere; we must next mention the Points, and then conclude this Chapter.

The Points are the *Vertical*, *Cardinal*, and *Collateral*.

The *Vertical* Points are the *Zenith* and *Nadir*; the former being that part of the Heavens directly over our Heads; and the latter the Point of the Heavens, directly opposite to it. Therefore these Points are mutable, for every Man by removing his Place, changes both his *Zenith* and *Nadir*.

The *Cardinal* Points are the four Quarters of the World, *viz.* *East*, *West*, *North* and *South*. The *East* is that part of the World where the Sun rises, the *West* where it sets, the *South* where it is at Noon, and the *North* opposite to it\*. So that these Points are immutable, and the same to all the World; except with this difference, That in the Southern Hemisphere the Sun is full North with them at Noon.

The *Collateral* Points are the Divisions and Subdivisions of these, invented for the more exact expression of Situations and Bearings; they are those that compose the Mariner's Compass, and are commonly call'd Rhombs, or the Points of the Wind. They were first divided into Eight, then into Sixteen, and lastly, into Thirty-two. The Names whereof are thus: *Viz.* The four *Cardinal* Points,

EAST, WEST, NORTH, SOUTH.

\* This Definition may perhaps be cap'd at, because in the Winter-time the Sun rises much Southward of the East Point, and sets as much short of the West; as also, that when the Sun is much elevated above the Horizon, as in the Torrid Zone, and even with us in the midst of Summer, it can't be said to be in the South; however, the Exceptions will be easily conceiv'd, and in the general I am sure this gives an ignorant Learner the best Idea of the four Quarters of the World. And if the Latin Names of these Points be remember'd, this Definition will need no Apology.



Between each of which are the Principals, *Viz.*  
North-East, North-West, South-East, and South-West.

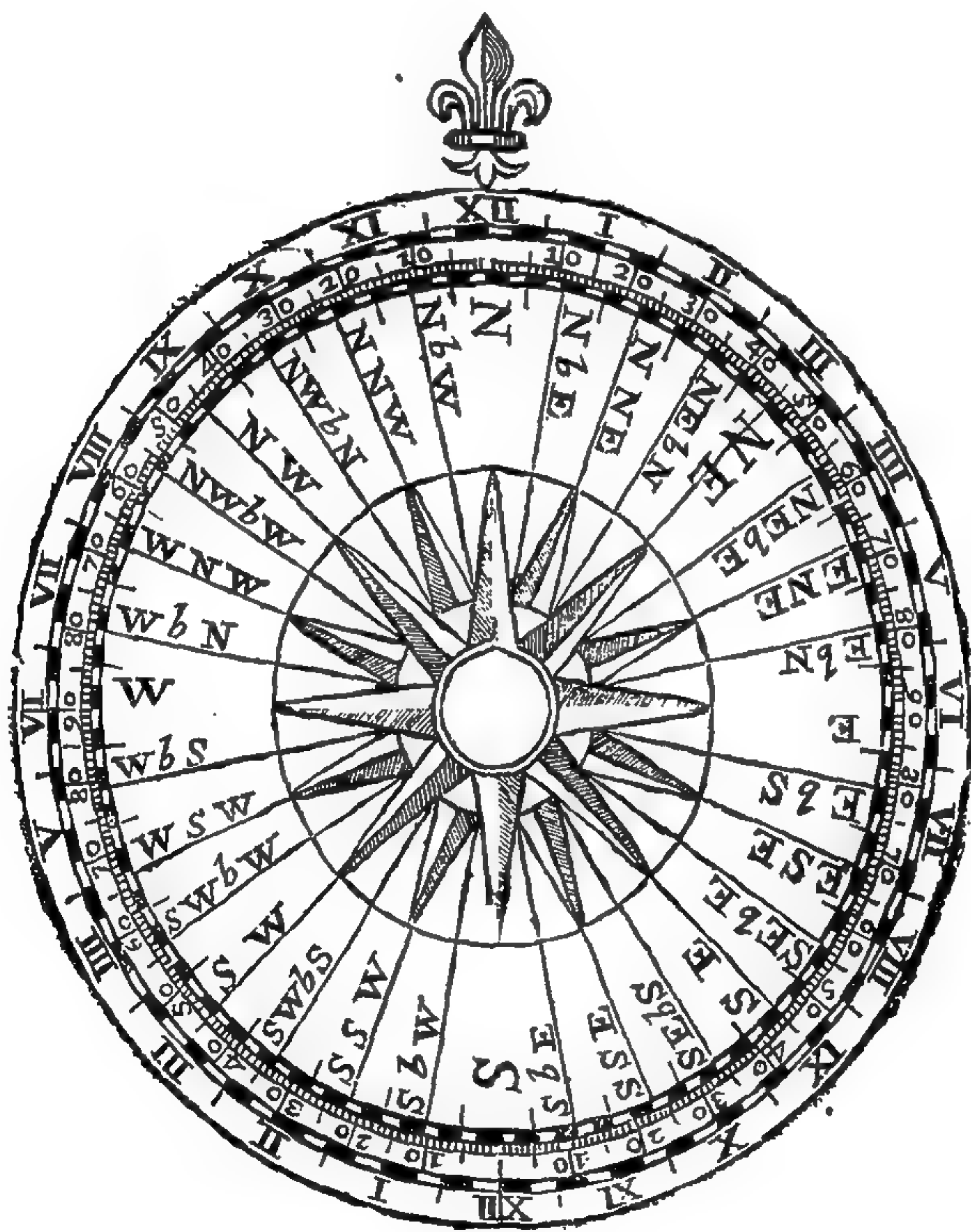
Each of these Eight have two Collaterals; which retaining the Name of their Principals, acquire also a Sir-name from the Cardinal; *Viz.*

North by West, North by East, North-East by North, North-East by East,  
East by North; East by South, South-East by East, South-East by South,  
South by East; South by West, South-West by South, South-West by West,  
West by South; West by North, North-West by West, North-West by North.

These Collateral Points are Sixteen in Number, which together with the Eight Principal make 24, besides the Four Cardinal.

*Lastly*, Between the Eight Principal, Eight others are situated exactly in the midst, *viz.*  
North-North-East. East-North-East. East-South-East. South-South-East.  
South-South-West. West-South-West. West-North-West. North-North-West.

All which are particularly shewn in the SCHEME annex'd.





## C H A P. III.

*Of the Inhabitants of the Earth with Respect, to CLIMATES, SHADOWS, SITUATION, &c. And also a Definition of the Terms LONGITUDE and LATITUDE.*

## §. I. Of ZONES, CLIMATES, and PARALLELS.

AS the Sphere is divided into Five Parts by the Two Tropicks and the Polar Circles, so the Ancients divided the Earth into Five Zones answerable to those Lines, viz. The *Torrid Zone*, Two *Temperate Zones*, and Two *Frigid Zones*.

The  
Zones.

Torrid  
Zone.

The *Torrid Zone* is the Space between the two Tropicks, which are always mark'd on the Globes and Maps answerable to those in the Heavens, and by consulting a Map of the whole World, will be seen to contain the greatest Part of *Africa*, *Arabia*, Part of *India* and *China*, the Islands in the *Indian Ocean*; The Kingdoms of *Peru* and *Mexico*, *Brazil*, &c. This Zone being constantly visited by the Sun, was by the Ancients esteem'd uninhabitable, but the Experience of Modern Navigators has convinc'd us of the contrary. On each side of the *Torrid*, lie the Two *Temperate Zones*: That is to say,

N. Tem-  
perate  
Zone.

The Northern *Temperate Zone*, is the Space included between the Tropick of *Cancer*, and the Northern Polar Circle, which comprehends all *Europe*, a good Part of *Asia*, and North *America*.

S. Tem-  
perate  
Zone.

The Southern *Temperate Zone*, is on the contrary the Space between the Tropick of *Capricorn*, and the Southern Polar Circle; this contains little Land, the South Part of *Africa*, and the South Part of *America*, viz. *Chili*, *Amazonia*, and *Magellanica* being all the Parts of it, we are acquainted with.

The Northern *Frigid Zone*, is that Part of the Earth contain'd within the Arctick Circle all round the North-Pole; and here *Iceland*, *Norway*, *Lapland*, *Finnmark*, *Samoiedia* and *Greenland*, included in it are found to be inhabited, and even *Nova Zembla*, and *Spitsberg* or *Greenland*, are frequently visited by Europeans, altho' the Ancients suppos'd this Zone uninhabitable for it's extream Coldness.

N. Frig.  
Zone.

The Southern *Frigid Zone*, is that Part round the S. Pole opposite or Southern Pole, included in the Antartick or Southern Polar Circle. But what that is, whether Land or Water we are not inform'd.

S. Frig.  
Zone.

These large Zones are again divided into *Climates*, that is, certain Lines drawn round the Globe Parallel to the Equator, to shew the difference of the Days lengths in the several Parts of the Earth. Each Climate being so much, as to make the Difference of half an Hour in the longest Day of the preceding Climate.

Climates.

The *Climates* are subdivided into *Parallels*, or half *Parallels*.

Parallels.

The Ancients reckon'd but seven *Climates*, but the discovery of the rest of the World to the Moderns, has occasion'd the extending the number to Twenty Four, besides those of the *Frigid Zone*.



A TABLE of the Breadth of each CLIMATE.

Climates.	Parallels.	The longest Day.		The Elevation of the Pole.		The Breadth of the Climates.	
		Hours.	Min.	Deg.	Min.	Deg.	Min.
The First Climate.	Its beginning.	12	00	00	00		
	Its Middle.						
	The end of the first, and the beginning of the second	12	15	4	14		
The Second.	The Middle.	12	30	8	25	8	25
	The End.	13	45	12	15		
The Third.	The Middle.	13	00	16	25	8	2
	The End.	13	15	20	15		
The Fourth.	The Middle.	13	30	23	50	7	25
	The End.	13	45	27	40		
The Fifth.	The Middle.	14	00	30	20	6	30
	The End.	14	15	33	40		
The Sixth.	The Middle.	14	30	36	28	6	8
	The End.	14	45	39	2		
The Seventh.	The Middle.	15	00	41	22	4	54
	The End.	15	15	43	32		
The Eighth.	The Middle.	15	30	45	29	4	7
	The End.	15	45	47	20		
The Ninth.	The Middle.	16	00	49	01	3	32
	The End.	16	15	50	33		
The Tenth.	The Middle.	16	30	51	58	2	57
	The End.	16	45	53	17		
The Eleventh.	The Middle.	17	00	54	27	2	29
	The End.	17	15	55	34		
The Twelfth.	The Middle.	17	30	56	37	2	10
	The End.	17	45	57	32		
The Thirteenth.	The Middle.	18	00	58	29	1	52
	The End.	18	15	59	14		
The Fourteenth.	The Middle.	18	30	59	58	1	29
	The End.	18	45	60	40		
The Fifteenth.	The Middle.	19	00	61	18	1	20
	The End.	19	15	61	55		
The Sixteenth.	The Middle.	19	30	62	25	1	07
	The End.	19	45	62	54		
The Seventeenth.	The Middle.	20	00	63	22		57
	The End.	20	15	63	40		
The Eighteenth.	The Middle.	20	30	64	6		44
	The End.	20	45	64	30		
The Nineteenth.	The Middle.	21	00	64	49		43
	The End.	21	15	65	06		
The Twentieth.	The Middle.	21	30	65	21		32
	The End.	21	45	65	35		
The Twenty First.	The Middle.	22	00	65	47		26
	The End.	22	15	65	57		
The Twenty Second.	The Middle.	22	30	66	06		19
	The End.	22	45	66	14		
The Twenty Third.	The Middle.	23	00	66	20		14
	The End.	23	15	66	25		
The Twenty Fourth.	The Middle.	23	30	66	28		8
	The End.	23	45	66	39		
	The Middle.	24	00	66	31		3
	The End.						

Climates of the FRIGID ZONE, where the longest Day increaseth by Months.

Months.	1		2		3		4		5		6
Latitude of the Places, or Parallels.	Deg.	Min.	Deg.	Min.	Deg.	Min.	Deg.	Min.	Deg.		Deg.
	67	30	69	30	73	20	78	20	84		90

§. 2. Of different SHADOWS.

The Ancients used to divide the Inhabitants of the Earth, according to the different Shadows which their

Bodies cast, when the Sun was in it's Meridional heighth, into *Amphiscij*, *Heteroscij* and *Periscij*.

The *Amphiscij* are the Inhabitants of the Torrid Zone, whose Noon-Shadows at different Times of the Year



Year fall different Ways, that is to say, in one part of the Year, when the Sun approaches the Northern Tropick their Shadow falls Southward, as on the contrary it falls Northward, when the Sun arrives at the Southern Tropick. And because twice in the Year the Sun passing directly over their Heads, their Bodies make no Shadow at all, they are also on that Account call'd *Astics*.

*Periæci* The *Heterosci* are those that inhabit the Temperate Zones, whose Noon Shadows always fall one way, that is, in the Northern Temperate Zone the Shadow always lies North, as on the contrary in the Southern Temperate Zone the Shadow always falls South.

*Periæci* The *Periæci* are the Inhabitants under or near the North and South Poles, if any such there be, whose Shadow turns quite round 'em every 24 Hours, when the Sun is above their Horizon.

## §. 3. Of different SITUATIONS.

The Inhabitants of the Earth are also divided, according to their different Situation, into *Periæci*, *Antipodes* and *Antipodes*.

*Periæci* The *Periæci* are those that live in the same Paralell, but opposite Meridians, and consequently must have the same Climate, Seasons and Latitude; but when 'tis Noon with one, 'tis Midnight with the other.

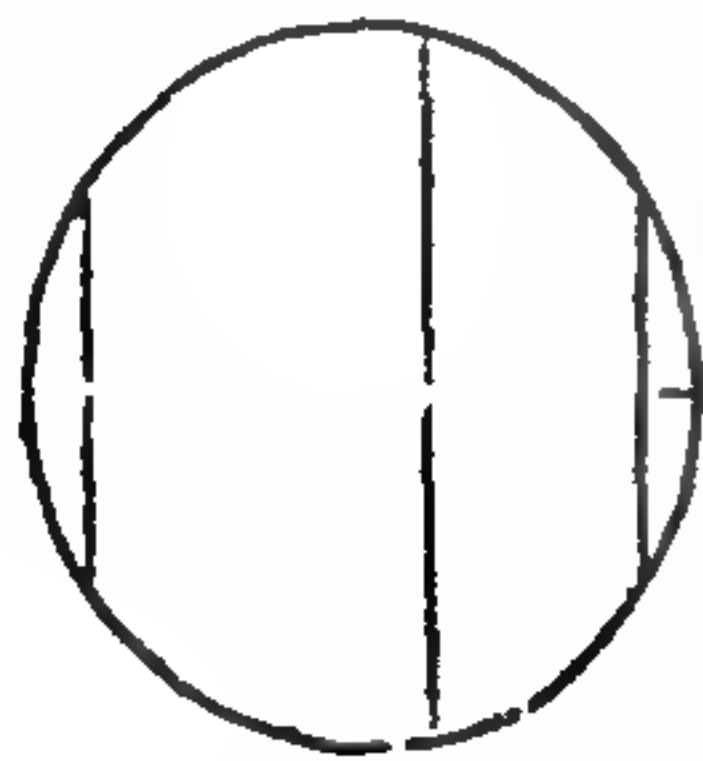
*Antipodes* The *Antipodes* are those that live under the same Meridian, but opposite Parallels. They have the same Longitude, and consequently Day and Night alike. They are also equally distant from the Equator, but on different sides of it, and have therefore different Seasons, so that 'tis Summer with one, when 'tis Winter with the other: And also the length of the Days in the one, is equal to the length of the Nights of the other.

*Antipodes* The *Antipodes* are those that live under both opposite Meridians, and opposite Parallels: Are distant from one another, the whole length of the Earths Diameter, and go with their Feet opposite to each other. And have therefore their Winter and Summer, their Noon and Midnight directly opposite to one another.

## §. 4. Of different SPHERES.

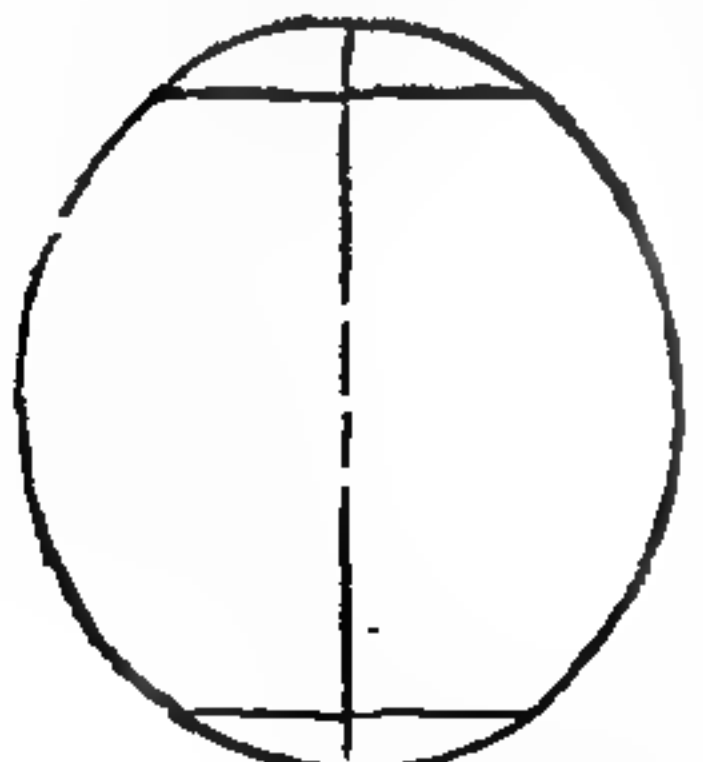
The Inhabitants of the Earth are also distinguish'd, with respect to the various Position of the Horizon to the Equator Threefold: That is to say, as they Live in a *Right*, *Oblique*, or *Parallel* Sphere

*Right Sphere* A *Right Sphere* is that Position of the Globe, which hath these Properties, viz.



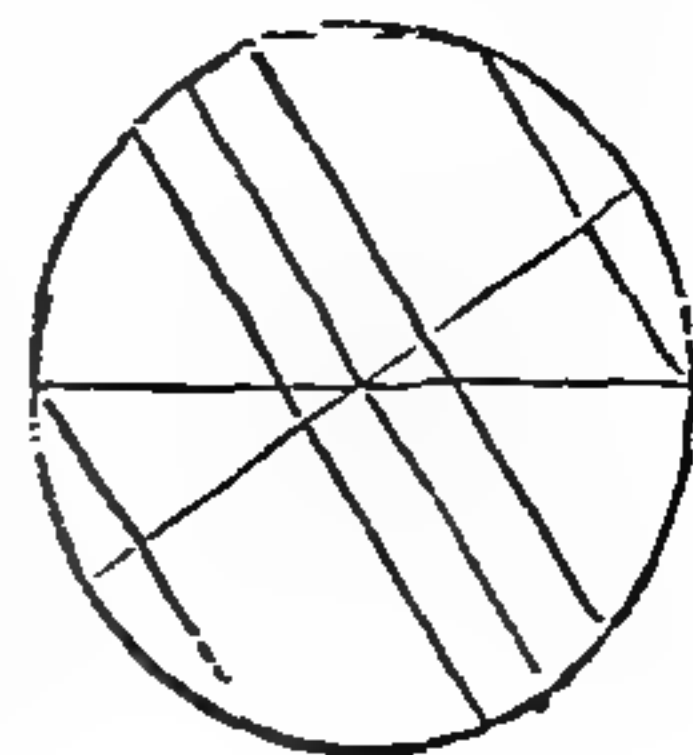
1. Both the Poles in the Horizon. 2. The Equator passing thro' the Zenith and Nadir. And, 3. The Parallel Circles Perpendicular to the Horizon, as by the Cut in the Margin. The Inhabitants of this Sphere are those that Live under the Equinoctial Line.

*Parallel Sphere* A *Parallel Sphere* is on the contrary, that Position of the Globe which hath these Peculiarities, viz.



1. The Poles in the Zenith and Nadir. 2. The Equator in the Horizon. 3. The Parallel Circles Parallel to the Horizon, as in this Scheme. And this Position belongs only to those that Live under the Two Poles, if any such Inhabitants there be.

An *Oblique Sphere* hath these Properties, viz. *Oblique Sphere*. 1. One of the Poles above, and the other beneath the Horizon. 2. The Equator partly above, and partly under the Horizon. 3. The Parallel Circles cutting the Horizon obliquely, as is shewn in this Scheme. All the Inhabitants of the Earth, except those of the Two Poles and the Equinoctial Line, Live under this Position of the Globe.



## §. 5. Of LONGITUDE and LATITUDE.

Lastly, The exact Situation of Places, and consequently of the People that inhabit them, is more particularly and minutely express'd by the Latitude and Longitude, for that being known, 'tis easie to discover what Climate or Parallel they live in, what Seasons, what Length of Days they enjoy; whether they be *Antipodes*, *Periæci*, or *Antipodes* to us; whether they live in a *Right*, *Parallel* or *Oblique* Sphere; and likewise informs us readily to find out any Place in a Map.

The Latitude is the distance of any Place from the Equator towards either of the Poles; so that it is Twofold, Northern, when the Place lies North of the Equator; and Southern, when the Place lies South of the Equator. And since the distance from the Equator to either Pole is but 90 Degrees, the Degrees of Latitude never exceed that Number. The Latitude being known, we are inform'd of the Climate and Length of Days; and may guess at the Fertility and Product of the Earth, in regard that the different warmth of the Sun is the general Cause of Fruitfulness and Sterility.

Note, Degrees of Latitude are of the same Extent in all Longitudes, that is, 60 Miles: But Degrees of Longitudes vary, as we shall shew presently.

The Longitude of a Place is it's distance from the first Meridian. We have already explain'd in the Chapter of the Sphere, what the Meridian is, but what is meant by the first Meridian belongs to this Place. The Reader must know then, that when *Ptolemy* invented the Art of exactly distinguishing the Situation of Places, he did it by the Meridians and Parallels, the former passing thro' the Poles and the Equator, and thro' the Zenith of every Place, and the Latter lying Parallel with the Equator; the Equinoctial Line was found convenient for the Computation of Latitude: And for Longitude he fixt upon the Meridian of the most Western Part of the then known World, which was the Canary Islands, and of them *Teneriffe* having an exceeding high Mountain upon it, the Peak of that Mountain was wisely fix'd upon, to begin the Computation from. Accordingly all the Old Maps have the Longitude computed Eastward from this Peak, and because in *Ptolemy's* Time but one side of the Globe was known, the Degrees extended only to the Number of 180; but since the discovery of *America*, the Number has been increas'd to 360. viz. the Circumference of the whole Globe; the same first Meridian being still continued. About Threescore Years ago the French Geographers pretending to more exactness, remov'd the first Meridian to the Island *Ferro*, two Degrees and half more Westward. Which makes some small Difference in the setting out the Longitude in Maps, the old Ones deducing it from *Teneriffe* and the new Ones that follow the French, from *Ferro*. Again, by reason of the Modern Observations to rectifie Longitude, many new Maps reckon from the real Meridian of the chief City, as *London* for Example in English Maps, Paris in the French ones,



ones, &c in which Case *Longitude* is reckon'd two-fold, that is Westward as well as Eastward. As also in Sea-Charts the *Longitude* is usually computed from some noted Port, Cape, or the like. Thus the *English* Charts reckon from the *Lizard-Point* on the Coast of *Cornwall*: And here also the *Longitude* is reckon'd both *East* and *West*.

*Difference of the time of Day, distant Places, known by the Longitude.*

The *Longitude* of a Place being known, we are inform'd what difference there is in the Hour of the Day between that Place and Us: For in regard that the Sun goes round the whole Earth in 24 Hours, he gains 15 Degrees upon it in every Hour (that being the 24th of 360) or one Degree in 4 Minutes. So that of Consequence at a Place 15 Deg. *East* from us, it is Noon an Hour before it is so with us; and on the contrary, it is Noon an Hour later than with us at a Place 15 Deg *West* from us. Thus for Example, *Constantinople* being 31 Deg. 30 Min. *East* from *London*, it is 2 H. 6 M. past Noon there, when it is exact Noon with us. And *Dublin* in *Ireland* being 7 D. 37 *West* from *London*, their Noon is half an Hour after ours.

*Longitude known by difference of Time.*

And *vice versa* by knowing exactly the difference of Time we may discover the exact difference of *Longi-*

*tude*. Wherefore if a Clock, or any other *Automaton*, could be made to measure the Time exactly when carry'd to distant Places, there needed no more than to attend it carefully, and observe the difference between it and a true made Sun-Dial, to observe the *Longitude* of any Place we come into. But because that is impossible, Modern Astronomers have thought it as effectual to observe some remarkable *Phenomenon* in the Heavens; as an *Eclipse* for Example; which being always calculated, and its appearance with us exactly known, if the time of its being seen in any other Part of the World be observ'd, the difference of that time by allowing 15 Deg. to an Hour, shews the difference of *Longitude*. But we shall have occasion to speak more particularly of this hereafter.

*Note*, Degrees of *Longitude* are of different Extent in different *Latitudes*, because the Meridians joyning together in a Point at each Pole, do necessarily grow narrower as they approach the Poles. So that altho' a Degree of *Longitude* on the *Equator* be of 60 Miles extent (or more exactly 69 Miles, as we shall shew in the next Chapter) yet they diminish in every *Latitude*; as is shewn in this Table.

A TABLE of the Length of a Degree of Longitude in every Latitude.

Latitude.	Miles.	Minutes.	Latitude.	Miles.	Minutes.
<i>Æquator</i>	60	00	46	41	40
Parallel.			47	41	00
1	59	56	48	40	8
2	59	54	49	39	20
3	59	52	50	38	32
4	59	50	51	37	44
5	59	46	52	37	00
6	59	40	53	36	08
7	59	37	54	35	26
8	59	24	55	34	24
9	59	10	56	33	32
10	59	00	57	32	40
11	58	52	58	31	48
12	58	40	59	31	00
13	58	28	60	30	00
14	58	12	61	29	04
15	58	00	62	28	08
16	57	40	63	27	12
17	57	20	64	26	16
18	57	4	65	25	20
19	56	44	66	24	24
20	56	24	67	23	28
21	56	00	68	22	32
22	55	36	69	21	32
23	55	12	70	20	32
24	54	48	71	19	32
25	54	24	72	18	32
26	54	00	73	17	32
27	53	28	74	16	32
28	53	00	75	15	32
29	52	28	76	14	32
30	51	56	77	13	32
31	51	24	78	12	32
32	50	52	79	11	28
33	50	20	80	10	24
34	49	44	81	9	20
35	49	8	82	8	20
36	48	32	83	7	20
37	47	56	84	6	12
38	47	16	85	5	12
39	46	36	86	4	12
40	46	00	87	3	12
41	45	16	88	2	4
42	44	36	89	1	4
43	43	52	90	0	0
44	43	8			
45	42	24			



CHAP. IV.

Concerning the EARTH; its Figure, Dimensions, &c. And a Table of Measures.

THE Opinion of the Ancients concerning the Figure of the Earth, was very different from what is now believ'd: Some held it to be like a large hollow Vessel; others, that it was an immense Plain, supported by Pillars like a Table. Which Opinions were so stiffly maintain'd by some of the Fathers, (particularly *LeSartius* and *St. Augustine*) and so firmly believ'd even after the Year 600. as to cause Pope *Zachary* (as we have said) to Excommunicate and Depose *Vigilius B.* of *Strasbourg* for asserting the *Antipodes*. And many of the Philosophers believ'd it to be a Cone or high Mountain, by which they answer'd for the disappearance of the Sun at Night. But better Philosophers have found that the Body of the Earth and Water is a Globe: Which will be illustrated by these plain and undeniable Arguments.

1. That the Earth is Globular, does plainly appear from the Eclipses of the Moon; for those being always round, the Earth which is the Body that intercepts the Beams of the Sun, and is the undisputed cause of such Eclipse, must necessarily be of a round Form.

2. The nearer one approaches to either of the Poles, the Stars nearest to the Pole are the more elevated from the Horizon toward this Zenith; as on the contrary, the farther one moves from the Poles the same Stars seem to withdraw from him, till at last they quite disappear. Again, the Stars Rise and Set sooner to One that travels towards the East, than they do to One that travels towards the West; insomuch, that if one should spend a whole Year in marching round the Earth towards the East, he would gain a Day; as on the contrary, in making the same Journey Westward, he would lose one. And this is actually seen between the *Portuguese* in *Macao*, an Island on the South of *China*, and the *Spaniards* in the *Philippine* Islands. The Sunday of the former being the Saturday of the latter; occasion'd by what we have said. For the *Portuguese* passing from *Europe* to the *East-Indies*, and thence to *Macao*; and *Spaniards* passing Westward from *Europe* to *America*, and thence to the *Philippines*, between 'em both, they have Travel'd round the Earth.

3. Lastly, That the Earth is round, is demonstrated by the Voyages that have been made quite round it; for if a Ship setting out from *England*, and sailing continually Westward, shall come at last to the *East-Indies*, and so home again, 'tis a plain assurance that it is a Globe, not a Flat, a Cube, a Cone, or any other Form. These Navigations are so frequently made, and afford such a Demonstration, that there is no room to doubt, and makes it lost labour to argue any further.

The Rotundity of the Globe in general, is not to be disputed on account of Mountains, Valleys, Seas, or the like; since little Excrecences or Caverns, as those are in comparison of the whole Body of the Earth, do not alter the main Form of the whole, any more than a Wart or a Scar on a Man's Hand may be said to alter its shape.

'Tis true, Modern Observations have discover'd to us, that the Earth is a little depress'd at the Poles, which alters its Figure from an exact Globe, to an oblate Spheroid; such as a Ball of Wax would be after it had been gently press'd between two parallel Boards.

The measure of the Earth comes next to be consider'd; that is to say, 1. Its Circuit. 2. Diameter. And 3. Surface.

Because it is impossible to measure the whole Circuit of the Earth, it has been judg'd sufficient to measure a part, from whence the length of the whole might be concluded: This Part is that we call a Degree, or the 360th part of the whole Circumference. But how much of the Earth answers to a Degree in the Heavens, has been much question'd of late. A Degree has been always divided into 60 parts, call'd Minutes, each of which, was reckon'd equivalent to a common Mile; but Modern Experiments have shewn that 69 $\frac{1}{2}$  English Statute Miles, are contain'd in a Degree. Among the several Observations in order to discover this, that of Mr. *Norwood's* in *England*, and that of the Academy of Sciences at *Paris* in *France*, are judg'd to be the most exact. The former in the Year 1635. made an Experiment in measuring the distance between *London* and *York*; where by taking the exact Latitude at both Places, he found a Degree to contain 69 $\frac{1}{2}$  of Statute English Miles, each containing 5280 Foot. The Gentlemen of the Academy, a few Years ago, made a new Experiment, wherein they observ'd with great Exactness, and found that 57060 Toises were the length of a Degree. The Toise, or Fathom, is 6 Paris Foot; the Paris Foot is somewhat larger than our English one, so as that 15 of that make 16 London Foot: This Proportion being known, 'tis very easy by Arithmetical Operations to discover that a Degree contains 69 Statute English Miles (of 5280 Foot in each) and 864 Foot. This being premis'd, and the Reader inform'd by what means to correct the common Computation; it will not perhaps be amiss to continue the old way of 60 Miles to a Degree, and the rather in regard that in all Journeys we reckon much frequenter by the large Computed Miles, than by the Statute ones.

The Circumference of the whole Globe of the Earth is	26293 $\frac{1}{2}$ English Miles.
The Diameter of the Earth is	8269 English Miles.
The Surface of the Earth contains	220048209 $\frac{1}{4}$ Square Eng. Miles.
The Solidity of the Earth is	306930160535 $\frac{1}{2}$ Cubick Miles.

It being very conducive to the true Knowledge of *Geography*, to be acquainted with the different Computation of Measures in Foreign Countries we have added this Table.



A TABLE of the LENGTH of MILES in Foreign Countries in proportion to a Degree of the great Circle.

There are contain'd in a Degree;

Of measur'd Statute English Miles,	69 and 864 Foot.
Of common Computed Miles	60
Of Italian Miles of 1000 Geometrical Paces each,	73½
Of ordinary Country Leagues of <i>France</i> each containing 2282 Toises } or Fathoms,	25
Of Spanish Miles, according to common Computation	17½
Of large Marine Leagues of <i>England</i> and <i>France</i> ,	20
Of German Leagues,	15
Of Low-Dutch Hours Travelling,	20
Of Danish and Polonian great Leagues,	15
Of Sweedish Miles,	12
Of Hungarian Miles,	10
Of Versts of <i>Muscovy</i> ,	80
The common Turkish Mile is equal to the common Italian Miles,	60
Of Persian, Arabian and Egyptian Parasanga,	20
Of Indian Cos or Crow,	24
Of Chinese Li's,	250

CH A P. V.

Of TERMS of Art used in GEOGRAPHY.

§. I. Of LAND.

**A** Continent, is a large space of Dry-Land comprehending many Countries, all joyn'd together without any separation by Water. Thus *Europe*, *Asia*, and *Africa*, is one great Continent. As *America* is another.

An *Island*, is a Part of Dry-Land incompass'd with Water: As *England* and *Scotland* for Example, is one Island, *Ireland* another, &c.

An *Archipelago*, is a Cluster of small Islands lying near together; as those in the *Egean-Sea*, between the Coasts of *Greece* and *Asia*.

A *Peninsula* (*quasi penè insula*, Lat. or otherwise *Chersonesus*, Gr. from *χῆρος* Terra, and *νῆος* Insula) is a Part of Dry-Land incompass'd with Water, except on one narrow side which joyns it to the Land, as the *Morea* in *Greece*, &c.

An *Isthmus*, is that narrow Neck of Land which joyns a Peninsula to the Continent.

A *Promontory*, is a high Part of Dry-Land stretching itself out into the Sea.

A *Cape*, is the extream Part of a Promontory, the most advanc'd into the Sea.

A *Mountain*, is a rising Part of Dry-Land over-topping the adjacent Country.

A *Vulcano*, is a Mountain that burns continually; many whereof at some times make violent Irruptions of Fire, as *Vesuvius*, *Ætna*, &c.

§. II. Of WATER.

The *Ocean*, is that Great Sea which surrounds the whole Earth, and hath different Names given to it in different Parts of the World, as the Northern Ocean is call'd the *Hyperborean*. The Western, between the Coasts of *Africa* and *America*, the *Atlantick*. That be-

tween the Coasts of *America* and the *East-Indies*, the *Pacifick*, or the *South-Sea*.

Otherwise, for more particularity, 'tis call'd Sea only, and denominated from the Shoar it washes, as the *German-Sea*, the *British-Sea*, the *Irish-Sea*, &c.

Some Parts of the Ocean run up into the Land, either thro' narrow Passes, or wide Mouths; the former are call'd *Seas*, as the *Mediterranean-Sea*, the *Baltick-Sea*, the *Red Sea*, &c. But the latter are call'd

*Golphys*, as the Gulf of *Venice*, the Gulfs of *Bothnia*, and *Finland*, &c.

But Beds of Water are call'd *Seas*, altho' they lye between Lands, and communicate with other Seas thro' a narrow Straight, if they are extream large, as the *Euxine-Sea*, the *Red-Sea*, &c. Nay, and sometimes, altho' they have no communication, as the *Caspian-Sea*.

A *Bay*, is a Part of the Sea that is half surrounded by the Land, or at least bounded by two Promontories; as the Bay of *Biscay*, the Bay of *Bengale*, the Bay of *Mexico*, &c.

A *Straight* is a narrow Arm of the Sea. having Land on both sides of it. A Straight, is either between one Great Sea and another; between the Ocean and a Gulf; or between one Gulf and another. As for Example: 1. The Straight of *Magellan* lies between the *Atlantick* and the *Pacifick* Oceans. 2. The Straight of *Gibraltar*, thro' which the *Atlantick* Ocean flows into the *Mediterranean-Sea*: Or, 3. The *Hellepont* and the Straight of *Constantinople*; the former of which joyns the *Egean-Sea* to the *Propontis*, and the latter continues that to the *Euxine-Sea*: As again, the Straight of *Cassia* runs between the *Euxine-Sea* and the *Palus Mæotis*.

A *Harbor*, is generally the Bottom of a Bay, or the Mouth of a large River, so call'd as being a convenient



nient Place for Shipping to lye secure from Storms. We call the bottom of a Bay, the innermost part of it towards Land.

A *Read*, is a Place in the Water where is both convenient Harbor, and good Anchorage for Ships.

A *Channel*, is an Arm of the Sea running between two Shoars wider than what we call a *Straight*; as the Chan-nel between *England* and *France*, and that between *England* and *Ireland*. Thus much of the Sea. Next,

### Of WATER within LAND.

A *Lake*, is a Collection of Water surrounded with

Dry-Land, without any visible communication with the Sea.

A *River*, is a flowing Water, arising from a Spring in some high Land, and continually running in a Channel till it empties itself into some other River, or finally into the Sea.

A *Fountain*, is the Place where Water primarily arises or springs out of the Earth.

A *Cataract*, is a Precipice in the Channel of a River where the whole Body of the River falls perpendicularly from a great Height.

## Short and Necessary Instructions to Beginners, for the Understanding of Maps,

**I**N all Maps the *North* is at Top, the *South* at Bottom; the *East* on the Right-hand, and the *West* on the Left: Or, if it be otherwise, it is always express'd either by Words on each side, or by a Mariner's Compass, wherein the mark of a *Flower-de-luce*, always denotes the *North*.

All Maps are laid down and proportion'd to a certain Scale, which is always taken from the Degrees of *Latitude*.

The Degrees of *Latitude*, are always mark'd on the *East* and *West* sides of the Map.

The Degrees of *Longitude*, are always mark'd on the *North* and *South* sides of the Map.

A Degree of *Latitude*, is always of the same breadth, viz. 60 Miles (or more correctly 69 Miles). Wherefore the distance of two Places seated directly *North* and *South*, is immediately known, by knowing the different *Latitudes*. But,

A Degree of *Longitude*, is of different extent; as is shewn at the End of the Third Chapter.

The *Latitude* and *Longitude* of a Place being known, you may find it immediately in the Map by drawing a Line or a Thread cross the Map both ways, and where the two Lines cut one another, the Place stands. Only with this allowance, that the *Longitude* is sometimes computed from *Tenriff*, and sometimes from *Ferro*, in which Case, the difference of two Degrees and half may happen.

The Earth being a Globe, a Map of the whole Earth must necessarily consist of two Parts, both Sides of the Globe being not to be seen at once. Accordingly, in a Universal Map, the Right-hand Circle, shews the Old World, or *Europe*, *Asia*, and *Africa*: And the Left-hand Circle, shews the New World, or *America*.

Upon the General Map, the Circles correspondent to those in the Sphere are Mark'd, viz. The *Equinoctial-Line*, the two *Tropicks*, and the two *Polar Circles*, all which cross the Map from *East* to *West*; and the first *Meridians* surrounding the two *Hemispheres* from *North* to *South*, the *Parallels* lying from *North* to *South* at Ten Degrees distance; and the *Meridians* at the same distance from *West* to *East*, are also mark'd upon General Maps.

Particular Maps, being parts of this, retain the

*Meridians* and *Parallels* belonging to that particular Part. Which are made smaller or larger, as the Paper on which it is drawn will admit, and the distance of Places mention'd in it, are always exactly proportioned to the breadth of the *Parallels*. So that let a Map be never so small, the distance of Places is notwithstanding exactly shewn, if measur'd according to the Degrees of *Latitude* in that particular Map.

In both General and Particular Maps, the thick shadowing denotes the Sea-coast. Rivers are mark'd by large shadow'd Serpentine Lines; Roads by double Lines; Divisions of Countries by Prick-Lines; larger Pricks for Provinces, and smaller for Sub-divisions; and Divisions of Nations, are often shewn by Chain-Lines. Forests are represented by Trees: Mountains by rising Shadows: Sands by Prick-beds: Marshes by shadow'd Beds: Lakes by shadow'd Coasts.

The Names of Provinces, are written in larger Capitals, smaller Divisions, in smaller Capitals; great Cities, in round Roman Characters; smaller Towns, in Italic Characters.

The exact situation of a Town, is express'd by a little round o, by which simply, Villages are mark'd; but larger Places have addition of a Church for a Market-Town, if the size of the Map will admit: A City is noted by a Church with Houses about it, as much as the Scale will admit. Particular Qualifications of Cities are distinguish'd by Marks, viz.

A Bishoprick, has a Cross, or sometime a Mitre over it.

An Archbishoprick, has a double Cross over it.

An University, has a Star, or sometimes a Caduceus.

An Abbey, is shewn by a Crook, or Pastoral Staff.

A Fortress, by Angles like Bastions.

A Castle, by a little Flag,

A Gentleman's Seat, by a House only.

Other Marks are affected by particular Gravers, and are always explain'd in the Margin. These we have mention'd, are the common ones, and being well known to those that are conversant with Maps, the Gravers omit explaining 'em.

But we must Advertise, that in this Set of Maps our Scale is so small, that we have not always room to mark the Distinctions.

A D V E R -



# ADVERTISEMENT

Concerning this Sett of MAPS, and the Correction of LONGITUDE by Modern Observations.

**T**He Art of making MAPS and Sea-Charts, is an Invention of such vast use to Mankind, that perhaps there is nothing for which the World is more indebted to the studious Labours of Ingenious Men. For by the help of them Geography is made plain and easie, the Mariners are directed in fetching us the Commodities of the most distant Parts. And by the help of them, we may at home, with Pleasure, survey the several Countries of the World, and be inform'd of the Situation, Distance, Provinces, Cities and remarkable Places of every Nation. To do this with Exactness, was an Art (to be sure) not easily attain'd; it was not one Man, nor one Generation of Men, that could bring it to any reasonable Perfection; and accordingly, tho' it was very Early begun, it is but now in our Days that a Method is found out, whereby Maps may be truly Corrected.

Even so early as *Anaximander* the Disciple and Successor of *Thales* Geographick Tables, or Maps have had a Being: A plain Demonstration of the Value of this Science; since it began with the beginning of Literature. We are told *Alexander* carried *Callisthenes* with him to *Babylon*, to make a Map of his Conquests; and undoubtedly the *Greeks* as well as the *Romans* had Geographical Tables of all their Countries, tho' none of 'em have been preserv'd to our Days, except that which shews the Unskilfulness of the Ancients in making them, I mean the Ancient Map of the *Roman* Empire still extant, under the Name of the *Peutingerian* Tables, from *Conr. Peutinger*, a Learned Gentleman of *Augsburg*, to whom we are beholden for the Publication of them. Those Tables contain an Itinerary of the whole Empire from *West* to *East*, with the distance of Towns by Mensuration; but then the Seas, Desarts or Forests, being not Travell'd through, or Measur'd, are not set down in their true Form, the Latitude or Breadth from *North* to *South*, being not at all regarded. This to be sure must have been the general Fault, before Astronomy was made to assist Geography, which had been faintly attempted by divers, but never effected by any before *Ptolemy*.

*Claudius Ptolemaeus* a very Learned Astronomer, who flourished at *Alexandria* under the Reign of *Antoninus* the Philosopher, making use of all preceding Discoveries, and joining the Observations of *Hipparchus*, *Timocharis* and the *Babylonians*, with those of his own, formed the System of the Universe, still known by his Name; and prescrib'd the Methods of discovering Longitude and Latitude, by Observation of the fix'd Stars, and the Course of the Planets; inventing also the Meridians and Parallels, the better to direct the exact placing of Towns on the Map; and himself publish'd a Sett of Maps, which were made use of for many Ages.

But since the Invention of the Mariner's Compass, and the great encrease of Navigation by the help of it, we have been able to visit all those most distant Places that *Ptolemy* had but imperfect Accounts of; have especially discover'd that he was very much mistaken in his Accounts of Longitude, and that all Maps hitherto extant are vastly erroneous in the Situation of Places Eastward. The Fault in General was computing the Degrees on the Earth faster than would answer to those in the Heavens, and thereby making Places to seem farther distant from the First Meridian than they really are: Thus *France*, *Italy*, *Greece*, &c. were by little and little so extended, and the Mediterranean Sea thereby so much lengthned, that upon exact Observation it is found, at *Scanderoon*, no less than 13 Degrees were gain'd, and the Voyage thither represented as 200 Leagues longer than it is. And the farther

ther we go Eastward, the greater is the Error, the Coasts of *India* being laid 20 Degrees too far East, and *China* 27 Degrees beyond its true Situation. This fault had like to have prov'd fatal to Mr. *Dampier* and his Company: For when they stood off from the South-Sea to the *East-Indies*, they found the Voyage 500 Leagues longer than the Maps represented it, and themselves almost starv'd by trusting to 'em. But as by Astronomy, Geography was at first Corrected; so the Amendment of these Errors is owing to the great Improvement now made to that Science, and the exquisite Ingenuity and Industry of modern Astronomers; who by the assistance of excellent Telescopes and other Instruments of modern Invention, have made very considerable Discoveries in the Heavens, and thereby found out a way of ascertaining Longitude as well as Latitude at Land, and correcting the Maps to a perfect exactness.

This method is by Observation of Eclipses; whose beginning at *London* or *Paris* being exactly calculated, and thereby certainly predicted, and the beginning of the same Eclipse being observ'd at any distant Place, the difference of Time is certainly known, and 15 Degrees being allow'd to an Hour, the distance of Place may be fix'd to a Mile. The Eclipses of the Sun and Moon only, were at first made use of to this Purpose; but as those occur but seldom, and are visible but in some certain Places, the Observations could not be often made, and therefore this great Work would have been long a doing, if the discovery of the *Satellites* of *Jupiter* and their Eclipses had not afforded a new, and very considerable help to it; for these being four in number that make a continual Circuit round that Planet, there happens almost every day an Eclipse of one or other of them.

The *Satellites* of *Jupiter* were discover'd by *Galileo*, the Eclipses of them by *Huygens*, the Theory of them formed by the Academy of Sciences at *Paris*, and the Eclipses first calculated for a whole Year by Mr. *Flamsteed*, and together with the Method of computing Longitude thereby, communicated in the *Philosophical Transactions* of December, 1683. Since which Time an Ephemeris of them is annually calculated, and Observations for correcting Geography, are very commonly made abroad. Thus this great Work of discovering Longitude, which was thought impossible, is in a great measure perform'd; the Longitude any where on Land being certainly taken, and thereby the Coasts and Situation of Towns exactly laid down; and perhaps in Time the Art may be so improv'd as to be practicable at Sea too. At least if Ships were sent out to make these Observations, at all the Capes and Head-Lands round the Globe, the Seamen would be able to Correct their Reckonings very often in long Voyages.

This being premised, viz. That there is a way of ascertaining the Situation of places *East* and *West*, as well as *North* and *South*, and that many Observations have been made in distant Parts of the Earth, whereby the Coasts and chief Towns have been brought to their right Situation in the Map, and those being known, smaller Towns, and other Places dependent corrected by 'em: To evince that *Sanson's*, and all the Maps formerly Publish'd were exceedingly Erroneous, and that the Sett of Maps contained in this Book are Correct, we shall set down a few of those many Observations that have been made, and subjoin a Table of the differences between those Observations and the common Maps, viz.

*Paris* by Observation is found to be 2 Degrees 25 Minutes East from *London*. *Brest* 4 D. 25 M. West from *Land*. *Madrid* 3 D. 37 M. West from *Land*. *Rome* 13 D. (F)



1. D. East from Lond. Copenhagen 12 D. 53 M. Dantzick 19 D. Moscow 38 D. 45 M. Aleppo 38 D. 45 M. [Philos. Transf. June 1683. Feb. 1691.] At the Cape of Good Hope P. Tachard made an Observat. by the Satellite. June 1682, and found it to be 14 D. 30 M. East from Paris [Voyage de Syam] Aden in Arabia near the Mouth of the Red Sea, by Observation is found to be 47 D. 30 M. East from Lond. Cape Comorin by Observation is found to be 76 D. East from Lond. Bombay on the Western Coast of India, is found to be 72 D. 30 M. East from London Fort St. George 80 D. from London. [Philos. Transf. June 1683. & Observat. Phys. & Math. Europees à l'Acad. de Paris.] An Eclipse of the Moon being by Mr. Halley's Direction observ'd at Pondichy in the Bay of Bengall, by Mr. Benj. Harry, and the same Eclipse observ'd at London by Mr. Halley, at Danzig by Mr. Hevelius, and at Avignon by Mr. Galilei the Meridional Distance between that Place and London, was found to be 57 D. [Philos. Transf. Feb. 1682] P. Camille and P. Beza, by Observation of the Satellites, Sept. 29. 1639. at Malacca found that Place to be 99 D. 45 M. East from Paris. The West Point of Java is observ'd to be 104 D. East from Lond. Syam by Observation of an Eclipse of the Moon by P. Tachard 98 D. 30 M. East from Paris. Nimpo on the Eastern Coast of China, Observation by P. Neel. 117 D. 58 M. East from Paris. [Observ. Phys. & Math] The Western Coast of America was stretch'd out too far, as Mr. Halley's Observations in his late Voyage make appear, Cape Augustin on the Coast of Brasil, being 35 D. West from Lond. notwithstanding a late Author lays it down in 25. And Cape Frio on the same Coast (under the Tropick) is 42 D. 30 M. West from London.

It would be tedious to enumerate all the Observations that have been made; these we have mention'd are at such distant Parts, that almost all our Maps may be examin'd by 'em, and shall trouble the Reader with only these two more, viz.

France in the former Maps of it had been extended

several Degrees on every side, so that the Kingdom was made to seem exceedingly larger than it is, but this has been corrected by many Years labour of the Academy of Sciences at Paris, and now very lately New Map correctly made, according to their Observations, was publish'd at Paris, from which this in our Collection is copied.

Moscow on the other hand, had been contracted in its Southern Part near 250 Miles; for the Palus Meotis was made to rise up to the 52 Deg. of Latitude, and the City of Azoph, is plac'd in 51 D. N. Lat. by Simon and the Dutch Maps. But since the Conquest of that Place, the Czar has caused an actual Survey to be made of the Country South from Moscow, and of the Course of the River Don, whereby it appears that Azoph Lies in 47 D. and that the Course of that River is very much different from what was formerly represented, as may be seen in comparing the old Maps with that in this Book, which is Copied from that Survey.

Abundance of other gross Errors in former Maps corrected in this Set, might be mention'd, such as the Head of the River Nile laid down 15 Deg. that is 900 Miles more South than it really is; the Caspian Sea, being made of Oval form from East to West whereas in Truth 'tis almost an oblong Square from North to South; and many more, which to avoid Tiring the Reader, we omit, and leave it to his own Observation to discover.

But now to apply these Observations to our Maps, it must be remembred that the Degrees of Longitude in them are computed from the first Meridian, which was fix'd at Teneriffe, before the French remov'd it to the Island Ferro 2 D. 30 M. more West; but the Observations we here set down being deduc'd from London, which is 17 D. 30 M. East from Teneriffe, or 20 from Ferro, an Addition must be made of so many Degrees in places Eastward, or Subtraction proportionate for places Westward; and then the true Longitude of these Places as they ought to stand in the Maps will appear thus, viz.

Longitude from London by Observation.	True Longitude.				Erroniously Plac'd in the common Maps.			
	From Teneriffe.		From Ferro.		Sanfon.		Dutch Maps.	
	D.	M.	D.	M.	D.	M.	D.	M.
Paris.	2.	25. East.	19.	55.	22.	25.	23.	30.
Madrid.	3.	37. West	13.	13.	16.	23.	15.	30.
Rome.	13.	— E.	30.	30.	33.	—	36.	—
Copenhagen.	12.	53. E.	30.	23.	32.	53.	32.	30.
Dantzick.	19.	— E.	36.	30.	39.	—	42.	—
Constantinople.	31.	30. —	49.	—	51.	30.	—	—
Moscow.	38.	45. E.	56.	15.	58.	45.	65.	—
Aleppo.	38.	45. E.	56.	15.	58.	45.	72.	—
Cape Good Hope.	16.	55. E.	34.	25.	36.	55.	38.	—
Aden.	47.	30. E.	65.	—	67.	30.	93.	—
Bombay.	72.	30. E.	90.	—	92.	30.	112.	—
Cape Comorin.	76.	—	93.	30.	96.	—	116.	—
Fort St. George.	80.	—	97.	30.	100.	—	119.	—
Bahalore.	87.	—	104.	30.	107.	—	123.	—
Malacca.	102.	10.	119.	40.	122.	5.	140.	30.
Syam.	100.	55.	118.	25.	120.	55.	133.	30.
West Point of Java.	104.	—	121.	30.	124.	—	140.	—
Nimpo in China.	120.	23.	137.	53.	140.	23.	168.	—
Pekim.	117.	45.	135.	15.	137.	45.	—	—
Cape Augustin in Brasil.	35.	— W.	342.	30.	345.	—	348.	—
Cape Frio.	42.	30. W.	334.	30.	337.	—	343.	—

By this Table may be seen the difference between the New Observations, which are according to the Truth, and the Old Maps. And thereby it appears, that India was laid almost 400 Leagues farther off, than it really is, and China no less than 500 Leagues too far to the East. Nay, to go no farther than Rome the fault is there so great, as to lay that City 135 Miles too far off, and the distance between Geneva and Rome, measur'd on an Old Map seems at least 40 Miles more than it is.

By these Tables will also be seen how these Maps agree with the Observations, and consequently whether they are not rather to be consulted than the Old Maps. But it is necessary to Advertise, That the four general Maps of Europe, Asia, Africa and America, are Engraven according to the Old, that so by comparing the particular Maps with them, the New Corrections may the better appear.



A

# NATURAL HISTORY OF THE ELEMENTS:

OR, A

*Philosophical View of the Sublunary World.*

IN TWO BOOKS.

I. Of the EARTH and SEA.

II. Of the AIR and METEORS.

**P**urposing to give our Reader a short Natural History of the Sublunary World, and finding that what is already written upon that Subject, for the Use of the Philosophy Schools is so copious, that there is no room to add; we thought it more proper to choose out one of the best of those Authors and Translate Him, than pretend to Write a New-System, which at last might not be so acceptable.

The *Physica sive Scientia Naturalis* of Mr. Le Clerc, has been well receiv'd and much read as well in Britain as in Foreign Parts. And the Two Books, in that Treatise, upon the Subject we are to speak to, being we think written in a plain and easie Manner, and more suitable to our Design than others, as containing all the Modern Experiments and Observations necessary for illustrating the Argument: We were soon determin'd to make use of Him, and have accordingly Translated those Two Books.

It may perhaps by some be objected, That several Things might have been omitted, as being improper for a meer English Reader. But since in retrenching, it is a difficult Matter to please; altho' we had begun it, we rather chose to leave off, and give the whole, wherein every Man may please his own Taste, and strike out what he thinks fit.

BOOK I.

Of the EARTH and SEA.

CHAP. I.

*Of the EARTH consider'd in its self.*

1. **H**aving gone thro' the Introduction to Geography, we come now, as we promis'd, to give the Reader the Two Books of *Natural Philosophy*, relating to the Elements. And first of the EARTH, whereof we have already mention'd it's Figure, it's Diurnal and Annual Motions, and what Situation it keeps in those Motions; with the principal Consequences following thereupon, which we need not re-

peat here. But shall now proceed to inspect the Bulk of the Earth, and the Materials which are digg'd out of its Bowels.

2. And the first Thing that presents it self to our View, is that huge, massy Substance, the Globe of the Earth, consisting of many solid Materials, as well as great Quantities of salt and fresh Water; for which reason the Philosophers commonly call it, the *Terra-queous Globe*. And tho' the solid Matter may perhaps be more (taking it all together) than the fluid, yet the Water takes up the greater Part of the Surface of the Globe, as it is plain to any one that looks upon a Map of the Earth. For besides the Rivers, and Lakes, and Pools, and Fountains which water the Earth in various



various Places; the Ocean and its particular Seas are much more extended than the dry Land. Which doubtless was order'd by the Maker of all Things, for the good of Mankind; there being such great occasions for Water to moisten the Earth, and supply us with Fish, and facilitate Commerce by Navigation.

3. But to refer what we have to say about the Waters, to another Place, if we consider the Earth properly to call'd, we shall find it to be a heap of various Bodies. For therein are discover'd Sand, Clay, Mould of various Colours, several sorts of Stones, many Salts, Sulphur, Bitumen, Minerals and Metals without number. Nor is it necessary to dig to the Center of the Earth, whither humane Industry can never penetrate, for the discovery of these Things; they are sometimes met with in great abundance, not many Feet deep. But in the Mines of *Hungary* and *Perry*, which are said to be deeper than ordinary, great store of such Things appear.

4. The Ancient Philosophers, (and Schoolmen who follow'd their Opinion, and maintain'd that the Earth is one of those four Elements whereof all Things consist,) observing such a medley of Things to lie under the surface of the Earth, they said this was not the pure Element they meant, but that it was somewhere about the Center. But since no Man could ever yet come at those Parts near the Center of the Earth, this Conjecture of theirs is good for nothing.

5. If *Des Cartes* his Hypothesis were but well grounded, That the Planets were once of the like Nature with the fixed Stars, consisting of a fiery Substance, and came afterwards to be crusted over with thick and solid Matter; there might be still at this Day a great Fire in the Center of the Earth, as some People imagine. But since the grounds on which that great Man supposed the Planets to be derived, may be reckon'd among those Things which are every way doubtful, and only seem not impossible, tho' perhaps as far from being true as real impossibilities; it is a rashness in his too great Admirers, to take this imaginary Fire at the Center of the Earth for a certain Truth.

6. If those Parts which now make up the Earth, were once loose, and carried round the same Center in a circular Motion, we could then gather from most certain Experiments, that the grossest of all the Parts fell down to the Center of the Earth. Now since we know nothing heavier than Metals, it would not be absurd to suppose, that the inmost Bowels of the Earth were fill'd with a prodigious store of various Metals. And this being presum'd, our Opinion would receive Confirmation from magnetick Experiments, by which it generally appears, That the Earth is of the Nature of a great Loadstone. Therefore we might with good Reason suspect, that at the Heart of the Earth, there is Iron and Loadstone in great abundance; which would be just contrary to their Opinion, who hold a fiery Center of the Earth. But this our Hypothesis is built upon no manifest Reason, and therefore for the avoiding of Error, it is much the safest way to suspend our assent in this Case.

7. However this is observable, that the deeper we dig into the Ground, the heavier the Matter is; and tho' there be no coming near the Center of the Earth, yet such Metals are digged out of the deepest Mines, as are rarely found in the Surface: And if instead of digging Mines a Mile and a half Deep, (which yet is hardly ever done) we could go some Miles downward, perhaps the Matter would still be closer and heavier.

8. But be this as it will, thus much we are sure of, as to the Parts about the surface of the Earth, that they are under a continual Change and Alteration; which may proceed from various Causes. Among those Causes we will not reckon human Labours: But this we see, that the hardest Bodies in the World,

the very Adamant it self not excepted, being exposed to the open Air, do wear and waste in Time, and undergo various Alterations without the Hand of Man; and therefore the whole surface of the Earth, whereon the Air perpetually presses, must needs be subject to such Alterations.

9. Besides, the perpetual changing of the Seasons, Heat and Cold, Rains and Winds, Earthquakes and running Waters, &c. are always making a wonderful Change in that Part of the Earth, which is next the surface. And if we take in the daily Mutations of innumerable Animals and Plants, which are fed by the Fruits or Moisture of the Earth; and after a short Time putrifie, and return to Earth again: We shall have reason to believe, That this Surface on which we tread, especially in Countries that have been long inhabited, is for the most part composed of the Bodies of Men and Beasts, or rather of a Matter which is every Day putting on new Forms.

10. And by such perpetual Variations of Matter, there must needs happen an encrease of dry Earth, and a decay of Moisture; for it does not appear, that the parts of fluid Bodies, which have been once blended with Solids, and have been so impregnated with Salts as to lose their fluidness, do ever retrieve it again. This is evident in Plants and Animals, which grow bigger so long as they receive Spirit and Nourishment from Liquors, but afterwards turn to Corruption. Some conclude from hence, that in order to prevent too great a decay, or total failure of moisture in the Planets, God created Comets; that so their Fumes diffusing themselves thro' the Vortex of the Sun, might fall into the lesser Vortices of the Planets, and augment their Liquors.

11. Moreover, there must needs be a vast Change made in the Earth, by means of the many Fires which prey upon its Entrails; concerning which we shall say more in the III. Chapter.

12. We have hinted before, *Sett.* 6. That Philosophers sometimes consider the Earth as a huge Loadstone, which when we come to speak of the Loadstone; we shall have opportunity to enlarge upon. Mean while we may here observe, that in this respect also the Earth is much altered; as appears from the Variations of the Magnetick Needle, which sometimes Points directly at the Pole, sometimes declines several Degrees towards the East or West. But this cannot be, without an Alteration in the pores of that magnetick Matter which flows out of the Earth, and which seems to come at one Time directly from the Pole, and at another Time from those Parts which are on the right or left side of the Pole. And whether this Variation proceeds from the Fires underground, which may spoil here and there a Mine of Loadstone (yet so as that it may afterwards recover it's Virtue again) or whether it be from some other Cause, is what no Man certainly knows.

## CHAP. II.

### Of Subterraneous Things in general; and first of SULPHUR and BITUMEN.

1. WE told you in the foregoing Chapter, that the Bulk of this our Earth is not one sort of Matter, but consists of innumerable Bodies of various kinds. Concerning the chief of which we will be as particular, as the Brevity we have prescribed to our selves, will permit. Proceed we therefore beyond the outward Crust, to see what we can find in the recesses of the Earth.

2. We don't pretend so accurately to divide all Fossils, as to reduce them to certain Heads, that by



by their Definitions might be understood every thing wherein the inferior Species agree, or the general Heads differ one from another. To do this, it would be necessary for us to have (what we are very far from having) a perfect insight into all their Natures. However, to observe some Method, we will divide all the hidden Stores of the Earth, into three Ranks. The 1st, are such as are apt to burn. The 2d, such as are apt to melt in the Fire. The 3d, such as are reducible to Calx. The chief of these several Sorts, we shall consider in their Order.

3. Of those Things which are apt to burn, and easily take fire; the principal are *Sulphur* and *Bitumen*, and their various Kinds, or their different Mixtures, which we shall not enumerate. As for *Sulphur* and *Bitumen*, they are produc'd in abundance of Places, and vary much in their purity, requiring more or less refining to fit them for different Uses.

4. *Sulphur* then, according to the best Discovery of its Nature, is a Fossil of a Yellow Colour mix'd with a faint Green, very brittle, and reducible into the finest Powder, and is very apt to take fire. It has a strong smell, which quickly scents the Air, where but a small quantity of it is burnt; but if a good deal of it be burnt in a close place, it is enough to choak those in the Room, especially short-breath'd People. It is something more compact and heavier than Wood; but it don't weigh so heavy, nor prove so solid as Metals.

5. "It grows, says *Pliny*, in the *Æolian* Islands, lry lib. xviv. 15 between *Sicily* and *Italy*; but the best is in the Island of *Melos*. It is found likewise in *Italy*, about *Naples*, and in *Campania*, in the Hills call'd *Lucogæi*. There it is dig'd out of Mines, and refin'd by Fire. There are four Sorts of it. 1. *Sulphur vivum*, call'd by the *Greeks* *ἀπνεύς*, because it is so pure, that it needs no refining by Fire. This grows in a hard Lump, and is the only *Sulphur* that is fit for Use, and is Transparent and Green as soon as it comes out of the Ground; whereas other *Sulphurs* want to be prepar'd with Liquors and Oyls. The 2d Sort, they call *Glebe*, and is us'd only in Fuller's Shops. The 3d Sort also, call'd *Egula*, is only good for working Woollen-Cloth, because it makes it white and soft. The 4th Sort is most proper to be us'd in Lamps.

6. "The first sort of *Sulphur*, is good for all such Diseases and Pains, as are inrag'd by Cold, and allay'd by Heat; and therefore the Virtue of it is very sensible in hot Springs and Baths whither People resort for the Cure of Pains in their Limbs: Nothing takes fire sooner than this *Sulphur*; by which it appears to be much impregnated with fiery Particles. There is a smell of *Sulphur* often goes along with Thunder and Lightning; and the Flashes are of a sulphureous colour.

7. "As for *Bitumen*, it is much of the same Nature; in some Places it is Slime, in others Earth. It is Slime in (the Dead Sea) a Lake of *Judea*; it is Earth about *Sidon*, a Maritime Town of *Syria*. Both these sorts of *Bitumen* are thicken'd and dry'd. There is besides, a Liquid *Bitumen* brought from *Babylon*, like that from *Zacynthus*, and is of a White Colour, (for *Bitumen* is usually Black.) And a Liquid sort is brought from *Apollonia*.

"All these Sorts, the *Greeks* call *πίσσασφαλτον*, as being a fit Composition of Pitch and *Bitumen* together. There is yet another sort of an Oily Nature, in a Fountain of *Agrigentum* in *Sicily*, which rings the Stream of the River it runs into. The People of the Place gather it upon Heads of Reeds, to which it easily clings; and use it in their Lamps instead of Oyl. As for the rest of its Uses, they are much the same with those of *Sulphur*.

8. *Naphtha* too may be reckon'd a kind of *Bitumen*; for it is liquid, and only differs in this, that it takes fire sooner, and is harder to be quench'd. "Put it to

"the Fire, and it catches immediately; or hold any thing to the Fire that is smear'd over with it, and presently it is all over in a flame: There's no putting it out with Water; for it makes it burn but so much the more, unless you pour on a vast quantity indeed. But the best way is to throw Mire or Vinegar or Allum, or any gummy Matter upon it, which stifles it, and puts it out. There goes a Story of *Alexander the Great*, That being dispos'd to try the Experiment, he order'd a Boy in a Bath to be daub'd over with *Naphtha*, and the Candle to be put to him; in a Moment the Boy was all in a flame, and had perish'd, if the Standers by had not bestir'd themselves to put it out. *Pofidonius* writes, That in *Babylon*, where are Fountains of *Naphtha*, some produce Black, some White *Naphtha*; that the Fountains of White *Naphtha* flow with Liquid Sulphur, and are good for Matches: But those that flow with Black *Bitumen*, furnish the Lamps instead of Oyl.

9. " *Maltha*, seems to be a kind of *Naphtha*; it is an inflammable Slime found in a Pool of *Samosata*, a City of *Commagene*. If it touches any solid thing, it sticks to it, so that 'tis hard to disengage one's self from it. With this, the Citizens defended their Walls, when *Lucullus* besieg'd them, and the Soldiers Armour could not preserve them from being burnt. Water (in moderate quantities) does but inflame it; and Earth alone is found proper to quench it.

10. The Pit-Coal which is found in *Scotland* and the North of *England*, seems to be a Composition of Earth, *Bitumen* and *Sulphur*; and therefore it easily takes fire, and keeps burning till it is all spent. The Smoke of it smells strong of *Sulphur* and *Bitumen*; so that they who Work in Coal-pits, are sometimes kill'd with the Damp, if there happen to be Fire in the Mine. Thus the Vapours of *Vesuvius*, struck them dead, who came too near, or were troubled with shortness of Breath, as it happen'd to *Pliny*, the Famous Naturalist.

11. Having now reckon'd up the Fossils that are most useful for Fire, with their chief Properties, so far as they are known to us; we are next to search into their Internal Nature, from whence the Effects aforesaid do arise. But since our Eyes cannot pierce into the hidden Nature of these Things, we are left only to guess at it by the Effects; and therefore we will not be over-positive about it.

12. We see that all Bodies, as they have some general Properties in common one with another; so they have many peculiar Qualities, which must needs flow from peculiar Causes. Some People talk of I know not what substantial Forms, which make every particular Body to be what it is: But since they don't tell us what the Nature of those Forms is, it is just as much as if they had said nothing; nor are they a whit more Learned herein than the Vulgar, except it be in the use of hard Words. So that we must go another way to work, if we would make any good guess at the Causes of those Effects, which depend on the Nature of particular Bodies.

13. If we had but the Art to see thro' the Texture of *Sulphur* and *Bitumen*, we should probably find them to consist of the finest Parts imaginable, bending and branched, and full of Pores. 'Tis certain, such Bodies appear apter to take fire than any other, and to produce such Effects as we see are produc'd by *Sulphur* and *Bitumen*, and such like things.

14. For, First, since the whole strength of Fire consists in dissolving the union and cohesion of the Parts, as plainly appears in things that are burnt, and as we shall shew more at large in the next Chapter; That which is easy to burn, ought to have fine flexible parts, which will easily come asunder. Secondly, In those parts there must be Pores, which the Particles of Fire may presently enter, and so dilate them, as to

(G)

break



break the Texture of Bodies, and bring them to pieces.

15. Thirdly, We suppose the parts of *Sulphur* and *Bitumen* to be branched, because those Bodies, whether Liquid of themselves, or made so by Fire, appear to be Viscid, and stick fast to the Bodies dip'd in them; which is peculiarly observable in *Bitumen*. Now they would not be so clammy and ropy, were not the parts connected by small Branches; neither would they cling to the Bodies they touch, except those small Branches enter'd the Pores and rugged surface of other Bodies.

16. Fourthly, A moderate quantity of Water cannot quench burning *Bitumen* and *Naphtha*, because their branchy parts, tho' vehemently agitated by the force of the fire, yet are not soon disunited, but continue intangled in one another, for some time after they have taken fire; whence their flame comes to be greater, and of a different colour from the flame arising from other Bodies. Now Water pour'd upon this gross Flame, cannot sink into it, and put it out, because the Flame is very near as gross as the Water. But it must be extinguish'd either by watering it very plentifully, or else by throwing some grosser Body, such as Earth, upon it, and so smothering the Flame with its weight.

17. This is the reason why Workmen in Forges, often throw a dash of Water upon their Fires to keep their Coals from burning away too fast; not to augment the vehemence of their Fire, as some imagine; but by quenching some of its parts, to keep it from spending its force too soon. And for the same reason, burning *Naphtha* seems to be more inflam'd by a lesser quantity of Water, because such a quantity hinders its sudden consumption, and keeps it burning the longer.

18. Thus much in short, of the Nature of those Fossils which easily take fire; as for their differences our Conjectures cannot go far enough to discover them. This one thing perhaps may be properly added; That in some Fossils, those branchy parts are finer and fuller of Pores than in others. *Naphtha* which takes fire at the first touch, diffuses a strong smell, which is nothing but effluvia of the finest Parts, entering like Smoke into the Nostrials of those that are present. Now this Smoke being viscid, and impregnated with the Body of the *Naphtha* itself, immediately upon touching the Flame, it falls flaming with a faint Light, and carries back the Flame even to the *Naphtha*. Of this, an Example shall be given in the following Chapter.

19. From these Explications, we may perceive how little reason we have to wonder that so strong a smell attends the burning of *Sulphur*, *Bitumen* and *Naphtha*; for tho' the Smell be not visible, like the Flame, yet it is gross in proportion to the grossness of the Flame. The Flame indeed breaks the parts of these Bodies into different Pieces, and cuts the Branches of those Parts into various Sizes; but since the Branches may be smaller and smaller in *Infinitum*, it is possible for the Particles that fly in the Smoke thro' the Air, to be still branched, tho' the most and greatest Branches are broken. And for this Reason the very Smell may suffocate; as it happen'd to *Pliny*, at his making too near an approach to burning *Pesuvius*; for when the rest of his Company upon smelling the *Sulphur*, preserved themselves by out-running it; *Pliny*, who was sitting on the Shore, got up, and lean'd on his two Servants, and presently sunk down again, not being able to breath in that gross Smoke, as his Nephew rightly conjectur'd.

20. To explain these Effects, something should have been said by the way, about the means and manner of raising Flame; but this is a thing which deserves to be consider'd more at large, as preparatory to our right understanding of Subterraneous Fires.

### C H A P. III.

#### Of FIRE in general, and more especially of Subterraneous Fires, and Earthquakes occasion'd by them.

1. **B**Efore we come to speak of the Nature of *Subterraneous Fires*, we must say something of *Fire* in general. For we cannot shew how the Matter which maintains them is kindled, unless we first discover the way of producing *Fire*. Therefore we will begin directly to tell the various Effects of *Fire*; and then we will endeavour to find out their Causes: Which when we have perform'd, we will Discourse of *Subterraneous Fires*.

2. Now for the Effects of *Fire*, they are as various as the Matter which feeds it. The most notable are these: 1. If *Fire* be set to Wood, or to looser Materials, they begin to flame. 2. But for exciting a Flame both the *Fire* and the combustible Matter must have the advantage of a reasonable free Air; for else, the *Fire* is choked, and goes out. 3. Tho' a close Place is not wholly without Air, yet if that Air have no communication with the open Air, so as to go backward and forward thro' some passage, the Materials which were set on fire will go out; whereas *Fire* in an open place, will continue to burn till all the Fuel is spent, as it is well known to do in the bituminous Turfs which they burn in *Holland*. So a lighted Candle quickly goes out in a Glais so well stop'd, that no Air can come into it. 4. When Bodies have once taken fire, if we ply them with *Fire* while they are smoking and flaming, they are consum'd faster or slower, according as the Texture of the Parts happen to be close or slight; and nothing remains at last but Ashes. If Liquors are oily, or much of the Nature of Wine, they easily take fire, and are consum'd like other things; but if they be of a waterish Nature, and are put in such a Vessel as will hold out against the *Fire*, they only boil and vanish into Air by degrees, the heat of the *Fire* sending them out in perpetual Vapours. 5. Bodies of a closer Contexture, such as those we call Metals, *viz* Gold, Silver, Brass, Iron, Tin, Lead, and their several Mixtures, are melted by the heat of the *Fire* tho' not in the same space of time, nor with the same facility. Quicksilver, which is liquid, will waste all away in exhalations. 6. Metals when melted, lose much of their weight, and if always kept in the *Fire*, are at length wasted quite away, so as to have nothing remain but Dross; which may be calcin'd itself by a violent *Fire*, and at last reduc'd to nothing. But Gold, the finer it is, the longer it endures the *Fire* without losing its weight like other Metals. 7. Stones, and Bodies of a stony Nature, may be either melted into a glassy transparent Substance, or else be calcin'd, and reduc'd into Dust.

3. We don't reckon that effect of *Fire* which we feel in our Bodies, as distinct from the rest we have already spoken of. For it acts upon our Flesh after the same manner as it does upon any other Flesh: First it affects it gently, if it be at some distance; but if it be put to it, it excites a fervent Heat in the fat and juicy Parts, which running out catch the Flame and vanish in the Air, while the grosser parts are reduc'd into Ashes.

4. These are some of the Effects of *Fire*; but we must further observe how it is lighted, kept in, and put out, if we would be well acquainted with the Nature of it. Now that *Fire* is propagated by *Fire*, sufficiently appears from the fore-going Observations. But where there is none, it may be generated several ways. 1. By collecting the Sun's Rays in a Concave-



Concave-glass, which will set fire to that Point on which the Rays fall, provided it be a combustible Matter, such as Wood, Paper, or the like. 2. By striking Flints soundly one against another, or with a piece of Steel, the Sparks will fly out, and lighting on Sulphureous, or other fine combustible Matter, presently give fire to it. 3. If Wood be rub'd against Wood, or Iron, or any other solid Body, a great while together, and very hard, at last it will take fire, as is observable in Coach-Wheels, which are hard wrought in a dry Season.

5. *Fire* is kept in by adding to it the same Matter wherein it was first lighted, or some other proper Fuel. But there are some Materials, which tho' they will take fire, yet will go out again of themselves, unless you ply them with more of the same sort, or with a strong blast of the Bellows. Thus Wood easily kindles and flames; but a piece by itself goes out; so that you must be often laying on more to it, to burn along with it, if you would fairly burn it out to Ashes. But *Sulphur* and *Bitumen*, and other Bodies, which have an allay of them both, as bituminous Turfs, and Pit-Coals, don't want to be recruited; but when they are once well lighted, they keep in till they are quite consum'd.

6. There are several ways to put out *Fire*: 1. By letting it want Fuel. 2. For want of Air. 3. By pouring Water, or such kind of Liquor upon it. 4. By covering it with Dust, or any such thing as is proper to choke it.

7. Now in order to discover the Cause of all these Effects, as far as we can: We will begin with the Generation of *Fire*, which will open us a way to the knowledge of its Nature. I. In lighting *Fire* by the help of a Concave-glass, the Rays of the Sun, which is of a fiery Nature, are taken in; whence it is no wonder that *Fire* is lighted by *Fire*: All the difficulty is, how the Rays come to burn thro' a Concave-glass, and not thro' any thing else, or directly from the Sun without any *medium*? Now this is because they are scatter'd and divided as they shoot thro' the Air, and are reflected very near alike, from a plain or unequally rough Superficies; so that in this disposition, they have not power enough to burn. But when a Concave-glass is held to the Sun, all the Rays falling upon it, are united at a certain distance from its Center, and by their conjunction have force enough to burn. So we see the *Fire* in a Furnace that is open on every side, does not send up such a brisk Vapour as one that is closer, and has but a narrow vent. From whence 'tis easy to conclude, that *Fire* is a very thin, fluid Matter variously agitated, as that in the Rays of the Sun, which must be brought together into one Point, to set any thing on fire.

8. II. When Flint is struck with a Steel, or two Flints one against another, there darts out a Particle into the Air, which whirling round in a moment, throws off the grosser Matter, and subsists in the very finest which is contain'd in the Interstices and Pores of the Particles of the Air; which makes it reflect Light towards our Eyes, (as we shall shew when we come to treat of Light) and give *Fire* to a Body of a loose texture.

9. III. The Case is much the same in Wood, which is set on fire by much rubbing and fretting. For the Particles of the Wood in such violent action, are certainly loosen'd and divided, and drive the Air with incredible swiftness about the Superficies of the Wood, just as the Particles of Flint do, by which means *Fire* is generated. But because Wood is a softer kind of Matter, the Particles of it don't fly out so soon nor so far, but hang about the Surface, and the Wood requires much chafing to put its Particles in motion, and heat it to that degree as to make the Flame burst out. Besides, Wood while it grew in the Ground, was nourish'd with Sap deriv'd from the Earth, wherein there

is always a mixture of Sulphureous Particles; now the Sap does not only turn into the Substance of the Wood, but after the watry Particles are gone off into Vapours, becomes dry and lodges in the Pores of the Wood like a kind of Rosin; which makes it the easier to take fire. And perhaps in Flints too there are sulphureous Particles, as may be discover'd by the smell: For if you strike one Flint against another a great many times till the Sparks fly in abundance, you'll perceive a smell of *Sulphur*.

10. *Fire* once lighted, must be supply'd with Matter fit for burning, otherwise it quickly goes out. The reason is, because the Flame does not only consist of the finest Matter, which is diffus'd thro' the Pores of the Air, and is extremely fluid; but likewise of a grosser Substance, which works out of the burning Materials with sulphureous or bituminous Particles, and whose force removes the pressure of the Air on every side. Now the said grosser Particles, as soon as they are broken by the violent motion of the Flame, disperse themselves abroad; and so failing at last, cannot withstand the Air any longer, which by virtue of its weight and elastick force, which by many Experiments is found to be in it, prevails upon the finest Matter, and takes it into its Pores again.

11. But however there is some difference in combustible Matters; for some go out unless perpetually and plentifully renew'd; others there are which if the *Fire* once take hold of, it never leaves them till it has quite consum'd them. Such are sulphureous or bituminous Matters, consisting of Parts that are branchy and wonderfully entangled one in another, tho' otherwise of a slight contexture. And when once one has taken fire, it presently communicates its motion to the rest with which 'tis engag'd, and that motion runs thro' the whole Mass, till it be all consum'd. But in other Matters which are little or nothing viscous, the Parts separating and flying off by the force of the *Fire*, don't stir those that remain, unless the Matter be still thrust forward into a Place where the Heat is stronger. One part of a Stick is burnt, and the other remains whole; but then, if there be a greater Flame, and consequently a greater quantity of Matter, it spreads abroad and burns all that may be burnt.

12. We could not well shew how *Fire* is kept in, without giving a hint by the way how it is put out; so that we shall say the less here upon this last Head. I. *Fire* goes out for want of Fuel, as we observ'd Section 10. II. For want of Air, as we see every Day in the choked Embers of Peat; for besides the Fuel, there seems to be something of *Sulphur* and *Nitre* in the Air, which yields a more subtile Aliment to Flame and *Fire*; and which if it be wanting, the grosser parts are not sufficient to continue the rapid motion, and so the *Fire* or Flame must needs go out. Thus in any Pan or Vessel where Live-coals are close pent up, after the nitrous and sulphureous Matter of the Air is spent, which is soon done, the Coals go out. As for the Matter which is diffus'd through the Air, we'll say more of it when we come to Discourse of the Air. III. It is very easy to understand how Water or Dust cast upon Flame, puts it out; for they being thicker and heavier than Air, do with their weight soon dissipate the finest Particles collected out of the Air, unless the force of the *Fire* be very great indeed.

13. And here I must say a Word or two of Smoke, which is the first and last effect of *Fire*. The production of it seems to be after this manner. When the parts of the Fuel are not yet put into such a motion as to crack and fly in pieces, and affect the ambient Air till it yields them out of its Pores a very fine sulphureous Matter, which breaks out into a Flame; yet those parts are mov'd enough to fly out in good store, and by their motion grow light enough to ascend upwards. So likewise when the Flame goes out, there is still motion enough left, tho' not to agitate the Air,

yet



yet to carry the Particles loosen'd by the heat, upwards. Hence also we learn, why watry Liquors don't tak fire, but go off in Vapours, as we shall shew hereafter.

14. From what has been said, it is easy to give an Account of the Properties and Effects of *Fire*. I. Flame catching hold on Wood, agitates its parts with a most violent Motion, and by that means loosens and breaks it. The more subtile parts, and more easy to be reduc'd very small, do with the Smoke vanish into Air, and excite that hot Vapour which we feel when we approach the *Fire*; but the grosser sort, whose Contexture was not quite dissolvable by the *Fire*, turn to Ashes, whose Particles are very porous, as being thoroughly exhausted of every thing that could be devour'd by the *Fire*. And this is the reason why Ashes drink up a great deal of Water, because it sinks into their wide Pores. There is also in Ashes a good quantity of Salt; because the saline Particles, which were mingled with the moisture of the Earth that ascended into the Tree by its Roots, are too coarse and hard to be exhaled with other parts; yet there are Volatile Salts, which pass into the Air, while fix'd Salt remains, as appears by Chymical Distillations.

15. II. We have told you, why Flame requires Air, And III. Why it goes out when 'tis stifled. IV. We have given the Reasons, why things that are burnt, waste away in Smoke and Ashes. V. Liquors are of two Sorts; some are watry, that is, thin, and almost free from any thing viscous: Others are oily, fat and viscous. Water and such Liquors, being put into a Kettle, and set over the *Fire*, are presently in a quicker motion than it is natural for them to be in (tho' all Fluidity is attended with motion) and at last boil up, in which state we plainly see that they are in a very vehement Agitation. At the same time Fumes or Vapours are always rising out of the Liquors, till they are quite spent; because the parts in the briskest Agitation, are gradually separated from the rest, and being so separated, and becoming lighter by their motion, disperse themselves thro' the Air. They are too yielding to dispel the Air in which they roul, and draw forth the more subtile Matter out of the Interstices and Pores of the condens'd ambient Air, so as to be inflamed by it; and therefore they cannot turn to Flame. But the oily and fat Liquors, whose parts are like those of *Sulphur* and *Bitumen*, something yielding, but yet much stronger than watry Particles, do easily form themselves into Flame; which scatters their finer parts variously shatter'd and broken, and violently driven about in the Air, but leaves the grosser and harder, which in all inflammable Matters are much the fewer.

16. VI. Here we might shew how Metals are melted, and how Quick-silver evaporates; but this we shall refer to the Chapter of Metals; where likewise, we will shew how they are consum'd by *Fire*. VII. After which, we will say something of the Calcination of Stones.

17. What has been said, may satisfy us as to the Nature of *Fire*, which produces so many Effects, viz. That it is a very thin Matter, forc'd in great quantity out of the Pores and Interstices of the Air, and gather'd in a place which is rarify'd by the vehement commotion of the Particles of several sorts of Matter. Hence it is, that all the Effects of *Fire* depend upon Motion, as plainly appears from the foregoing Discourse.

18. So that when we say, *Fire* is hot; it is as much as to say, the Particles of it are most vehemently mov'd every way; the heat of *Fire* being nothing else but an extraordinary Agitation of invisible Particles. But, to avoid Mistakes, we must take notice that Hot and Heat have a two-fold sense; for when we speak of more Bodies, they signify no more than we said just now: But when we speak of ourselves, who consist of

Body and Mind, Heat is most commonly taken for a Sensation in the Mind, and we say, we are Hot when we are affected with that Sensation. For tho' we have not that Sensation till after our Bodies are put in some commotion by the *Fire*, or some other Cause; yet we don't use to think of that Commotion, when we say we are hot. But enough of this. Let us now proceed to the Consideration of *Subterraneous Fires*.

19. And it's plain from the Places where they break out, that they are very numerous. "*Ætna* (says *Pliny*) is seen burning every Night, after so many Ages, tho' in Winter the Snow lies on its Top, and its Ashes are cover'd with the Frost. So *Chimæra*, a Mountain in *Phaselis*, flames Day and Night without intermission. And so the *Hephestian* Mountains in *Lycia* (being touch'd with a flaming Torch) burn with that fury, that the Stones and Sands in the Waters thereabouts are burning hot. It is reported, That if one light a Stick at these Hills, and draw Strokes with it on the Ground, a Stream of Fire will follow it. The top of *Cophantus* in *Bactria* is seen on fire in the Night. In *Media*, *Sittacene* burns on the Confines of *Persia*; and at *Susa* near the White-Tower there are Eruptions in fifteen places, the greatest of which is visible in the Day-time. In the Field of *Babylon*, there is about an Acre of burning Ground, somewhat like a Fish-pond. So likewise the *Æthiopian* Fields about Mount *Hesperius*, shine in the Night like the twinkling of the Stars. There is *Fire* too in the Field of the *Megalopolitans*, tho' it don't break out to spoil a thick flourishing Wood that grows in the same place. *Nymphæi Crater*, not far from *Apollonia*, is continually burning, tho' a very cold Fountain is close by it: The Rains enflame it, and it throws out *Bitumen*, more liquid than is found any where else, but is easily qualify'd by that very cold Fountain. But what need we wonder at these Things? since *Hiern* an *Æolian* Island in the middle of the Sea, burnt, and the Sea burnt with it for some Days together, in the *Social* War. But the greatest *Fire* of all, is in a Hill of the *Æthiopians* call'd *Θεῶν ὄχημα*, *The Chariot of the Gods*, where that and the scorching Sun together, make a terrible heat.

To these burning Places, which *Pliny* has mention'd, we may add Mount *Hecla* in *Thule* (now *Ise-land*) the coldest Place of the North, which with the Places lying about it, sends up Flames and Flashes of *Fire* into the frozen Air.

20. There are moreover several Places that are seen to smoke, and may, with the application of a little *Fire*, be put into a flame. In *Dauphiny*, some Miles from *Grenoble*, there is a side of a Hill where this Experiment is commonly made, and *Fire* found hot enough to roast Eggs.

21. If here it be demanded, Whence these *Fires* proceed? That's easily answer'd, by remembering that *Sulphur* or *Bitumen* is usually got in most of those burning Grounds, and they smell very strong a great way about, especially a little before an extraordinary Eruption; so that having found the Matter for the *Fire*, let us next see how it comes to be kindled. And this may be done several ways, but we will not examine them all, but content ourselves with one. Now since the Earth contains such different Matters within it, it may easily be imagin'd, that there are Caverns in some Places, which are fill'd with no other Matter but gross Air, and sulphureous or bituminous Vapours. And it may so happen that a Flint shall drop from the Arch of the Cavern upon another Flint below, and strike fire out of it, which shall either inflame the Vapour, or the sulphureous and bituminous Matter thereabouts; which when they have once taken fire, keep it in very long, and communicate it to other Bodies of a like Nature; and when these get vent, they burst out in very violent Eruptions,

as



as we see in *Ætna* and *Vesuvius*, and other Places aforesaid.

22. But these Eruptions are not alike constant and violent, because the Matter which feeds them is consum'd, and cannot break out again till it is recruited. Besides, it requires time for the Fire to creep thro' the Veins of *Sulphur* and *Bitumen* into new Mines which have never felt the Flame. The various Waters which run thro' the Bowels of the Earth, do sometimes open Passages, and sometimes stop them up, which either delay, or hasten the burning of such Materials. Some Places are almost continually in a flame; especially in the Night, or in Cloudy Weather, or a little before Rain; because in the Day-time, and in clear Weather, the Vapours are dispell'd before they take fire; but in a cold Night, or cloudy Air, the Exhalations are condens'd and easily inflam'd.

23. But when it so happens, that in vast Caverns the Vapours and thicker Matter take fire all at once, the Air in such a violent Commotion cannot rarify and disperse, but it must give a sudden concussion to the upper part of the Caverns, and make all the Ground above it to tremble; and then we are sure to feel an Earthquake. And the deeper the Mine lies, and the larger the quantity of Matter is, which takes fire at one time, the more violent and extensive is the Earthquake. Such a one was that of *Sept. 18. 1692.* which was felt as well in the *Low-Countries* as in *London*, and other Parts of *England* at the same time. But if the Cavern happens to be near the Surface of the Earth, there are many times Eruptions of Fire, which consume the Bowels of it, so that the Ground sinks in, and where the opening is wide enough, Trees and Houses are swallow'd up in it. In the Year aforesaid, in *Jamaica*, an Island of *South-America*, the Concussion was so great, that the Ground sunk in several Places, and a great many Houses fell in with it.

24. Nor is this our Account of Earthquakes, barely conjectural, and without any Proof or Experiment; for the great Eruptions of the famous burning Mountains are always attended with an Earthquake in the Neighbourhood. Some Years ago, when *Vesuvius* burn'd excellently, there was felt in *Naples* and the Parts adjacent, a very great Earthquake. At that memorable Eruption of *Vesuvius*, wherein *Pliny* perish'd, the Houses thereabouts totter'd with the violent and frequent shocks, and seem'd to nod this way and that, as tho' they had been rent from their Foundations, as his Nephew, who stood at no great distance, assures us.

25. But we have other common Experiments to confirm all this. We see when Mines are sprung and carry'd thro' the hardest Rocks, the Train of Gunpowder blows up whole Castles, and shatters the vastest Rocks to pieces. And this Powder is chiefly compos'd of *Sulphur* and *Nitre*, which when fir'd, in a narrow place, strike the Walls with inconceivable force, and blow up or shock the heaviest Weights.

## CHAP. IV.

## Of METALS.

1. **M**ETALS are such Fossils as may be melted by Fire, and beaten out with the Hammer: And of this Kind, there are Seven principal Sorts; Gold, Silver, Copper, Iron, Tin, Lead, and Mercury or Quicksilver; which may be variously mingled and chang'd into something like a new Species of Metals. But as to these Mixtures, we shall not concern ourselves with them in this place; but consider only the Native Metals.

2. There are some Properties common to all Metals, and some peculiar to each One by itself. The chief of them we will Explain in few Words, and give the best Reason we can for them. The common Properties are Three. 1. Liquefaction. 2. Ductility or Malleability. 3. Gravity greater than is found in other Bodies that are known to us.

3. I. Those Bodies are Liquid, whose Parts don't resist the Touch, but are easily separated; and are perpetually stirring up and down one among another; so that they would run about, unless they were contain'd and held in by the Sides of a solid Body. Thus Metals which before were Solid, run about when they are melted, and require some other solid Body to keep their Parts together.

4. Here we may observe how Fire dissolves Metals, viz. the Particles of the Fire penetrating the Pores of the Metals, sever their Particles and drive them about, so that they run to every side, and would be gone presently, did not some solid Body withstand their motion. But since the parts of Metals are very solid and heavy, the Fire does not easily dissolve them; nor are they put into a motion violent enough to evaporate, till they have run long indeed, and that in a most excessive hot Fire. By the same Reason, when the force of the Fire is abated, they quickly recover their former Solidity; for the cause of the Fluidity ceasing, the Fluidity itself stops upon it. The Particles of Metals falling back one upon another by virtue of their own Weight do press out and exclude the Particles of Fire, except fresh ones are still pouring in to keep the Metallick parts loose and in motion by their incessant pushing upon them.

5. So that the Particles in all Metals must be very heavy, that they may not be so hurry'd about by the force of the Fire, as to agitate the Air, and break out in a Flame; nor so soft as to be easily turn'd into Vapours like the Particles of Water; whence it follows, that Metals are neither inflam'd like Wood, nor exhaled and wasted like Water, tho' the force of the Fire makes them as liquid as Water.

6. Yet this is observable, That there must needs be in Metals some finer Particles, perhaps of *Sulphur*, or something like it, because after they have been in the Fire for some time, they loose of their Weight, tho' some sooner than others; as Lead, which looses a great deal of Weight every time 'tis melted. But the very heaviest of them, Gold itself not excepted, loose some of their bulk by a long continuance in the Fire, and an intense Heat: Whence we may conclude, that the most solid parts are at length broken by a long continu'd motion, and reduc'd to the same fineness and rarity which is in the lightest Particles that fly in the Air, and that therefore they pass into Vapours.

7. II. The second common Property of Metals is Ductility, that is, a pliability to the Hammer, to be beaten out into Bars and Plates, tho' in this too they differ, as we shall see hereafter; for Gold is more ductile, as well as more ponderous, than any other Metal.

8. Ductility consists in this, That the bulk of Metal may by the beat of the Hammer, be drawn out to a longer and broader extent, and that without dissolving the Continuity. Wherefore Things that are ductile, must have such parts as can easily lie one by the side of another, and yet their Conjunction be still firm and entire. So then, the Question is, What Figure is most apt to produce this Effect, so as to be consistent with other Properties; for while we explain one Property, we must take care not to overthrow another.

9. If Metals consist of Oblong and Quadrangular Particles, tho' every Metal has something singular in it, that Figure looks likeliest to produce those Effects, which we find common to all Metals. For such Parts may easily be sever'd one from another so as to become fluid by the operation of a vehement Fire;

H which



which when it remits its force, they are too heavy to maintain that Motion, and so return to be Solid *Metals* again. But what we chiefly consider here, is this, That the parts of this Figure when beaten upon an Anvil, can easily suit their sides one to another, so as to run out into long and broad Leaves, without falling in pieces one from another. We don't stand now to enquire, what is the Cause of Solidity, or Cohesion of the Parts. 'Tis sufficient for our purpose, if we find by Experience, that Solid Bodies become Liquid, and again recover their former Solidity, and preserve it intire, while they yield to be extended by the Hammer.

10. Therefore we may suppose, that the Particles of *Metals* are quadrangular and oblong: And this Supposition is confirm'd by an Experiment. If a Plate of *Metal* be heated red hot, and hammer'd upon an Anvil, and drawn out into a length, it is harder to break or split it where it is so drawn out, than in any other part; for which there seems no other Reason but this, That the oblong parts run out longer according to the length of the Plate, and for that reason are more closely united. But in Plates of *Metal* which are not hammer'd, it is otherwise; for they may be split or broken every way with the same ease.

11. III. Since *Metals* are the heaviest of all Bodies that are known to us, and Gravity is found by Experience to be so much greater, as there is a greater quantity of homogeneous Matter contain'd under a less circumference; the Gravity which is proper to *Metals*, seems to arise from one of these two Causes: Either the particular Particles consider'd by themselves, are extremely compact, and have no Pores but what are the smallest that can be; or else in a Lump consisting of many Particles, the Pores between those Particles are few and fine. And perhaps, both these Causes may meet together in *Metals*. Likewise the figure of the Particles in *Metals*, of which we spoke before, helps this. For there is no Figure fitter to make a Body compact, and leave less Pores in it, than the quadrangular.

12. Having thus Explain'd what concerns the common Nature of *Metals*; we will next examine them one by one, beginning with Gold, as first in order. This *Metal* is of a Colour between Red and Yellow, the heaviest of them all, the most ductile of all, and the least wasted in the Fire of all. However, tho' it be the most compact, it is not the hardest of *Metals*; for Iron is much harder, and more difficult to be melted.

13. There are, says *Pliny*, three ways of getting Gold. 1. Out of the Sands of Rivers, such as the *Tages* of Spain, the *Padus* of Italy, the *Helles* of *Torace*, the *Padus* of *Aga*, the *Ganges* of *India*. And this is the finest sort of Gold; for 'tis polish'd by rolling about in the Stream. 2. Out of Pits and ruinous parts of Mountains; where it is discover'd by a sort of shining Mould lying on the surface. Here they make a Drain, and after the Water has well wash'd the Sand, they observe what is left at bottom, and proceed accordingly. Sometimes, by rare good fortune, Gold is found just under the surface, as lately in *Dalmatia*, in *Nero's* time, where they got Fifty Pound weight a Day. In this Case, there is a shining Gum appears upon the Turf. The dry and barren Mountains of Spain, which produce nothing else, are plentifully stor'd with Gold. That which is got out of Pits, they call *Aurum Galaticum* or *Canalicum*, Channel Gold: It grows to the Crust of Marble, and does not sparkle as it is found to do in Saphirs, and other precious Stones in the Eastern Countries. They work their Channels along the Veins thro' the sides of the Pits, (this gives it the Name aforesaid) and prop up the Ground over them with great Posts. When they have brought up the Ore, they hammer it; wash it and burn it, and afterwards pound it in Mortars as fine as Flour.

That which runs from it in the melting (properly call'd Dross in all *Metals*) they call Silver. This is hammer'd and melted o'er again. Their Fining-Pots are made of *Tascony*, a sort of white Earth like Chalk; it being the only Earth that endures the blast of the Bellows, and heat of the Fire and running *Metal*.

14. The third way of getting Gold, is a Work of more than Giganrick Pains. They Undermine the Mountains by Candle-light, &c. leaving Arches and Pillars as they go along, to support them. Sometimes they meet in their way with Rocks of Flint; thro' which they open a passage with Fire and Vinegar. But because the Workers in these Mines would be stifled with the Damp and Smoke arising from hence, their more usual way is to cut them out in pieces of a hundred and fifty pound weight, and carry them on their Backs from one to another in the dark, till they come to the Hands of those that are to lift them quite out, who are the only Men of them that see Day-light. If the Flint appear to be pretty long, they go as much by the side of it as they can. But this working thro' Flint, is none of their hardest Task: They sometimes meet with a sort of white Earth so firmly cemented with Sand and Gravel, that it is almost impenetrable. This they attack with Iron-wedges and Sledges, and find it harder to be conquer'd than any thing but the Love of Gold. When they have finish'd their Mine, they fall to beat down the Props of the Arches, beginning at the hindmost. Mean while there stands One on the highest part of the Mountain to watch when the Ground begins to sink; which as soon as ever he perceives, he gives notice to others to call out the Workmen, and gets away himself as fast as he can. The Mountain cracks, and falls asunder with an incredible noise and blast. The Miners stand by and see the Ruin of Nature, but no Gold is to be found as yet.

15. Before that comes, there's another Task as hard, and something more expensive, viz. To bring a River, and that many times from a hundred Miles distance, to wash these Ruins. And here, above all things, it is necessary to observe the height of Places, and to bring the Water from the highest Parts, that it may fall in upon the Work with a rapid Current. To this end, Troughs are laid a-cross Valleys and low Grounds, and if Rocks stand in the way, a passage is bor'd thro' them. In the brow of the Hills, just above the Work, they sink a Pond Ten Foot deep, and Two hundred wide every way. In it there are commonly Five Sluces about Three Foot square a-piece; when the Pond is full, these are open'd, and send forth a Torrent rapid enough to drive down great Stones before it.

16. A third Task there is still behind. The Trenches into which this Torrent is receiv'd, are thick set with a certain Shrub like Rosemary, which has a roughness and closeness proper to catch the Gold. The sides of the Trenches are made of Planks which may be mounted so, that the Water is carry'd cleverly o'er uneven Places. On these accounts Spain is improv'd and rises in Value. In this manner likewise, the Pit-Gold is wash'd, which keeps it from running into the Ground again, out of which it was dig'd with vast Pains. The Gold which appears immediately upon digging, needs not pass thro' the Fire, but is good Gold without any more ado. Thus there are some *Ingot*s found in Mines, [as in *Potosi* in *South-America*] and Pits too, weighing above Ten Pounds. When the fore-mention'd Shrub is dry'd, it is burnt, and the Ashes of it are water'd upon green Turf, where the Gold may subside.

17. These are the Ways of getting and refining Gold. But before we come to speak of its Intrinsic



Phys.  
Part I.  
c. 9. Sect.  
14. &c.

sick Nature, we will give an Experimental proof of its Ductility out of *Rohalt*. The Weights of two equal Bulks of Gold and Water are one to another as 19 to 1; so that if a cubick Foot of Water weigh 71 Pounds, a cubick Foot of Gold must consequently weigh 1349 Pounds, or 21584 Ounces. Now a cubick Foot contains 2985984 cubic Lines; therefore an Ounce of Gold contains  $138\frac{13}{14}\frac{2}{3}$  cubic Lines. If then an Ounce of Gold were beaten into a cubic Figure, its height would be  $5\frac{1}{7}$  Lines; and its basis 26 square Lines, and  $\frac{1}{2}$ .

18. Besides, 'tis well known, that a Gold-beater will out of an Ounce of Gold, make 2730 square Leaves compleat, every one of whose sides shall be 2 Digits, and 10 Lines. But besides these Leaves, the very parings are near half as much. The Superficies of every Leaf contains 1156 square Lines; so that all the Leaves laid side to side in order, would make up a Superficies of 3155880 square Lines. To which, if a third part be added, which is the least that goes into parings, we may say, that Gold-beaters make of One Ounce of Gold, 4207840 square Lines. Now since this Number contains 159812 times the quantity of the Basis of a cubic Ounce of Gold, the said Ounce being  $5\frac{1}{7}$  Lines in height, is drawn out into 159812 square Leaves.

19. So that from hence it appears how wonderful ductil a Metal Gold is; but this is much more apparent in the Trade of the Wire-drawers. A Silver Cylinder Two Foot Eight Digits long, and Two Digits Nine Lines about, so as to make the whole Superficies 12676 square Lines; such a Cylinder, I say, is cover'd with Gold-Leaf not exceeding the weight of half an Ounce. Afterwards this Cylinder is drawn out by Art smaller and smaller till it becomes Wire. Now if you take and weigh 150 *Parisian* Feet of the finest Wire that is made, it makes much about 36 Grains. Wherefore the whole Cylinder ought to make a Wire 370200 Feet long; whence it follows that it would be 115200 times longer, and 340 times broader than it was at first. Besides, this curious fine Wire when 'tis beaten flat to be twisted with Silk, has a Superficies twice as large as it had before (or 680 times more spacious than 'twas at first) and contains 8616960 square Lines.

20. But when the Silver-wire is thus beaten flat, still the Superficies of it is gilt; which proves that the half Ounce of Gold which cover'd the Cylinder at first, is so very much thin'd and extended as to make a Superficies of 8616960 square Lines. And since that contents contains 325795 times 26 Lines, and  $\frac{1}{2}$  the compass of the Basis of a cubic Ounce of Gold; it follows that the thickness of the Gold which covers the Silver, must be but the 325795 part of the half depth of the cubic Ounce of Gold; and that  $5\frac{1}{7}$  Lines are drawn out into 651590 equal parts.

21. Having said thus much about Gold, I shall take notice of that usual Question concerning it, as well as other Metals, Whether it be generated at this Day in the Bowels of the Earth? And how it is generated? For satisfying which Questions; more things ought to be known, than were ever known yet. In the first place it ought to be known, Whether after all the Gold was clean dig'd out of any Pit, there was ever found a new increase afterwards, when the Pit has been dig'd again. Which is a Secret to us; and if such a thing might be, yet it requires too many Years to make any certain Experiment. And perhaps after all, the whole quantity of Gold and of other Metals in the Bowels of the Earth, is as old as the Creation, and has receiv'd no augmentation since. Secondly, If Gold and other Metals were now generated, in order to know what they are made of, it would be necessary to ransack the Mines, and examine every thing in them, or near them, by various Experiments. This might possibly bring us, after a laborious Search,

to discover the Seeds of Metals, and how they are mingled and united together by the help of *Subterraneous* Heat. But there is reason to fear, we should sit down at last with the loss of our Time and Pains, without finding what we sought for.

22. And here we will touch upon another famous Question, Whether it be possible for the Art of Man to turn Silver, or other Metals into Gold, or Copper into Silver? A great many Stories are told, which have induc'd Credulous Men to believe that this might be done; and they have attempted the doing of it, so long till they have consum'd their Estates, and instead of their imaginary Gold, have found real Poverty at the bottom. The Accounts which are given of such Transmutations, are too uncertain and ill-grounded, to influence a prudent Man. It don't indeed seem to imply any contradiction that Silver shou'd be turn'd into Gold: But since we are ignorant of their Nature and Formation, we cannot determine positively one way or other. It may be utterly impossible; or it may be so difficult, that all the Industry of Man cannot attain to it: But this is certain, that to bestow cost about so doubtful a Matter, is a very great Folly.

23. From the wonderful Ductility of Gold, we may conclude, That the parts whereof it consists come nearer to the perfect Figure of a Right-angled Parallelogram, than those of any other Metals. For so the parts holding close side to side, may be beaten and drawn out into Lengths of the greatest fineness, without breach of their continuity. This also is the cause why it is heavier than other Metals; because the more perfect this Figure is in the constituent parts of any Body, the more easily they cling together, and render the Body so compact as to exclude heterogeneous Matter. And perhaps the Particles of Gold are in themselves less porous, which makes it the heavier, as we observed, *Sect.* 11. and so not easily wasted by Fire.

24. And here we must not omit to take notice of another difference confirm'd by Experiments between Gold and other Metals. There are Two very acid and corroding Waters, call'd *Aqua Fortis*, and *Regalis*; the latter is the more piercing of the two. Now it is well known, that other Metals are dissolv'd in *Aqua Fortis*, but *Aqua Regalis* only dissolves Gold. The reason of which seems to be this, That the Particles of Nitre and Vitriol which are in this Water, are sharper and finer than those in *Aqua Fortis*, and therefore penetrate the very fine Pores and Parts of Gold, and like so many Wedges force them asunder; whereas grosser Particles float about the Surface, but cannot enter into the Pores of Gold to dissolve its Continuity.

25. Next after Gold, Silver is the most ductil and ponderous Metal; and endures the Fire best. And therefore its Particles seem to come nearest those of Gold, since in these Properties 'tis most like it. This makes it easily incorporate with Gold in melting: And indeed, if we will believe *Pliny*, there is a certain quantity, suppose a Tenth, Ninth, or Eighth part of Silver in all Gold.

26. "The same Author tells us, That 'tis found *Plin. lib.*  
"only in Pits, and that without any such hopeful *xxxiii.*  
"glittering signs as are found about the place where  
"Gold grows. The Earth about it is sometimes Red,  
"sometimes Ash-colour'd. It cannot be melted down  
"without a quantity of Lead. Near the Veins of it  
"is commonly found a Matter call'd *Galena*. In the  
"melting, part of it runs down to Lead, the good  
"Silver swimming on the top, as Oyl does upon Water.  
"There is scarce any of our Provinces without  
"it, but the best is in *Spain*, in the barren and mountainous  
"Parts; and wherever one Vein is discover'd,  
"there's generally another not far off; as it happens  
"in almost all sorts of Mines, which gave the *Greeks*  
"occasion to call them Metals; *quasi μετ' ἀλλὰ*, as lying  
"one behind another. The Vein of Silver which lies  
"highest,



" highest, is call'd *Cradaria*. The Ancients in digging for Silver, were us'd to stop when they came to a bed of Allum, expecting to find nothing below that. But of late, they have discover'd a Vein of Copper below Allum, which is now their finishing stroke.

27. Silver and Gold are refin'd the same way, as *Pliny* observes. The Way which the *Spaniards* now use in *America*, is said to be this: first they pound their Ore in a Mortar just as it comes out of the Mine; next, they pour Water into it, which makes a consistence like a Lump of Clay. After this, they throw in Salt and Quicksilver, and beat them all together for a good while, pouring Water upon the Lump, to take off the Dirt; then they put this soft Composition of Gold, Silver and Mercury into a Fining-pot, where, by the help of a gentle Fire, the Mercury evaporates, and the Lump is reduc'd to a kind of Cinder, which afterwards a quicker Fire melts down into [Piggs or] Plates.

28. We told you, that *Aqua Regalis* only dissolves Gold, whereas all other Metals are amovible by *Aqua-Fortis*. But it is further to be observ'd, that *Aqua Regalis* has no effect upon other Metals; the reason of which deserves to be consider'd. Now, first of all, we must take notice, that *Aqua Fortis* is made by a Distillation of Vitriol, Allum and Nitre; but *Aqua Regalis*, over and above all this, has a mixture of Sal Ammoniac. And this Mixture of so many Salts makes the parts of *Aqua Regalis* very subtil, and apt to penetrate the smallest Pores, and sever the finest Parts, between which they are driven like so many Wedges, by the motion of the Water wherein they float; but in wider Pores they loose their effect, just as Wedges cannot split, except they be driven into fissures narrower than themselves. Since therefore, the Pores of Gold are the smallest of all Metallick Pores, they can only take in the Particles of *Aqua Regalis*, those of the *Aqua Fortis* being too gross to enter. But the same Particles of *Aqua Regalis* prove too small to fill up the Pores of any other Metals; they cannot be affected with any thing less gross than the parts of *Aqua Fortis* to fill and dilate them.

29. Copper differs from Silver, as Silver does from Gold, so that we need not insist long upon this Head.

Plin. 33. " As to the Digging and Refining, *Pliny* says, 'tis to be order'd like Silver. There is a Copper-stone call'd *Cassida*, and another call'd *Chalcitis* which are found in Cyprus, from both which, this sort of Metal is extracted. Cyprus was once famous for Copper, as being the Place where it was first found; but since a much finer sort is brought from other Countries, the Cyprian is little valued.

30. Iron is much harder, less ductil, and fuller of dross than any of the Metals aforesaid. Besides, 'tis apt to grow rusty, whether it lie wet or dry; which Copper is not so subject to, Silver still less, and Gold not at all. Experience likewise teaches us, that Iron may be made much harder by Art. For after it has been well refin'd in the melting, and drawn out into Bars, let those Bars be heated again till they are just melting-hot, and then throw them directly into cold Water, and they will be much harder than before. But if you would soften the same Bars again, put them into the Fire, and heat them as before, and then lay them where they may cool by degrees, and they will loose much of their hardness.

31. If we enquire into the Causes of these Properties, we may suppose them to be some such as these:

1. That the parts of Iron are farther from the Figure of a right-angled Parallelogram, and much rougher, than the Particles of other Metals; which makes them more entangled one in another, and harder to be severed and melted. 2. That its parts are more rigid, and consequently, harder to be hammer'd out, and more apt to be broken. 3. That Iron consists of he-

terogeneous Particles, which is the cause, that whenever it is melted, it throws out abundance of dross. And this is the reason why it grows rusty so soon; for the moistness of the Air, and nitrous Particles which fly about in it, fastning upon its rugged surface, dilute and agitate the various Matters whereof Iron consists, which being sever'd one from another, hang upon the surface like so much Dross. And therefore to preserve Iron from rusting, it is found a good way to crust it over with Parget, or Pitch, thro' which the Air can have no passage. 4. That the Fire, in heating Iron till it looks white, does violently agitate its Particles, so that they are very nigh ready to run; at which time the grosser Particles of an irregular Figure, which before made the Pores unequal and large, lose their rigidity, and fall in closer one with another. Then if they be plung'd into cold Water, their motion is stop'd, and they rest in this state, by which means the whole Lump is more compact and hard. Observe, That Iron well refin'd and harden'd, is commonly call'd Steel.

32. Besides what we have now said of the Rust of Iron, it is further observable, that the Rust of Copper and Silver is not of the same Colour, but either Green, or Blew, and sometimes a medley of both. The Rust gathers much more upon Copper than Silver; because the Pores of Silver are smaller, the Parts more solid, and perhaps more refin'd. Gold is free from Rust, because it's solidity and fineness of Pores, is such as keeps out all other Matter: And yet Silver and Gold are softer than Iron, because Iron seems to have a stony Substance in it, which makes it more rigid; and rough Parts are more entangled one with another than smooth ones; tho' smooth Parts of a suitable Figure, render a Body more Compact, as we have observed in Silver and Gold.

33. " The next Metal we are to speak of, is Lead Plin. 33. XXXII. whereof there are two Sorts, Black and White. The White is the best, call'd by the *Greeks* λευκός (by the *Latins* *Stannum*) which is fabulously reported to grow in the Isles of the Atlantick Ocean, and to be brought from thence in Wicker Vessels cover'd round with Hides. (England and the neighbouring Isles appear to have been call'd λευκός, and the report was no Fable.) " Now it is known to grow in *Lusitania* and *Gallacia*; in a sandy black Soil: Which is judg'd of only by the Weight. There are small Stones of the same Nature, to be found in the Brooks when they are dry. The Workmen wash the Sands, and that which proves heaviest they melt in their Furnaces. In the same Place where they find Gold, there are sometimes little black Stones speckled with White, which remain in the washing of Gold, being of the same Weight. These separate and dissolve in the Fire, and turn to white Lead. There is no black Lead made in *Gallacia*, tho' *Cambrisia* which joins to it, abounds with Black alone; nor does the White yield Silver, whereas the Black does.

34. " Black Lead is found two Ways; either in a Mine by it self; or mingled in the same Veins with Silver. The first running of the Furnace is call'd Tin; the second Silver; the remainder which tarries behind in the Furnace (about a third Part of the Ore) is melted again, and the third Part of it turns to black Lead.

35. Here we see *Pliny* reckons Lead and Tin to be much the same sort of Metal; and indeed the only Difference between them is this, that Tin is more refin'd, hard and light; Lead more soft, heavy, and mixt with Sulphur, or some other Fossil. 1. The reason why Lead is heavier, seems to be this, that the metallick Pores are full of heterogeneous and thinner Matter just now mention'd; whereas the Pores of Tin contain nothing but Air, or something more subtil than



subtil than that. 2. Lead is softer, because it's metallick Particles, as well as the accessory Parts of Sulphur and the like Matter, are very flexible. For this reason it melts sooner than Tin, and wastes more in the melting; there being more of it's Parts that evaporate, or turn into dross. 3. The great store of Dross which Lead yields, and the Rust it contracts, shew what a mixt Matter it is.

36. Our last Metal is *Mercury* or *Quicksilver*, which in some Things agrees with, in others differs from the aforesaid Metals. It differs, in that it is Liquid, and when set over the Fire, easily evaporates. It agrees, in that it becomes solid and ductile by tempering Lead with it, &c. and then it is the heaviest of all Liquors. We shall enquire into the Causes of these Things, after we have given you *Pliny's* Method for discovering and making it.

37. "There is a Stone found in the Silver-mines, which yields a restless Liquor call'd *Quicksilver*, an universal Poyson. It eats through Things, and works thro' the Vessels wherein 'tis shut. Every Thing swims in it but Gold, and that sinks, and is very well purged by it: For which purpose they put them together in earthen Vessels. After the Scum is workt off, they pour the Quicksilver into Leathern Bags, through which it sweats, and leaves the pure Gold behind.

38. Besides the native Minium, which is found in Silver Mines, "There is another sort extracted from a Stone found among the Veins, of a different sort from that spoken of in the last Section. Of this second sort of Minium they make Hydrargyrum, which is used instead of Quicksilver. There are two Ways of making it; either by pounding the Minium with Vinegar in a Mortar; or putting it in earthen Platters, and covering them with a hollow Iron Cover, closed round about with Clay; then lighting a Fire under the Platters, and blowing it continually with a pair of Bellows, till the Iron-cover is so well bedew'd, that you may sweep it off. This Dew having the colour of Silver, and the fluidness of Water, is call'd *Hydrargyrum*.

39. Now if the Reasons of all these Things should be askt, we can offer no more but bare Conjectures; yet such as, if they be agreeable to the Principles we have laid down, ought not wholly to be rejected; tho' they are not clear enough to deserve our Assent.

I. The Reason why Quicksilver is liquid seems to be this, that it's Particles are less figur'd like a right-angled Parallelogram, than those of any other Metals, and probably they are cylindrical. The Angles of Square Particles hinder the Bodies which consist of them from being fluid; but if those Particles lost their Angles, and became cylindrical, the Bodies would be in a much greater Disposition to flow. If besides this, we consider how extremly smooth the Surface of such cylindrical Particles are, of which we suppose Quicksilver to consist, we must allow this to Conduce very much to it's fluidity.

40. II. Since Quicksilver is so very heavy, 'tis hard to conceive how its Parts come to evaporate so soon, and with so little Fire. But first, if there be neither Branches nor Angles in those Parts, they must needs fly asunder sooner than the Particles of other Metals. In the next Place, 'tis possible those little Cylinders may consist of finer Particles, which while they are join'd, make them Compact enough; but yet by Reason of their extream smoothness, are easily disjoin'd; so that Quicksilver does not only evaporate over a Fire, but those Vapours, receiv'd in a close Vessel, appear like white Dust; whereby 'tis plain the Figures of the Particles are changed: Just as we see watry Vapours coagulated, make Snow.

41. III. Quicksilver tho' naturally Liquid, yet mixt with Lead, it becomes solid and ductile, because the softer Parts of Lead, embracing the cylindrical and

solid Parts of Quicksilver, stop their fluidity; and being ductile themselves, make the whole Consistence so too; tho' not altogether like other Metals. Do but release Quicksilver of its leaden Fetters, which is done several ways, and it recovers its former fluidity.

42. IV. Quicksilver is very heavy, because the parts of which its Cylinders consist, are so well Cemented together, as to leave no Interstices, but make the Bulk every way solid. Perhaps they are Orbicular, and join their plain sides very close together. And in this Position, they may make a very heavy Cylinder, and yet leave it extream fluid, tho' of themselves they are light enough to evaporate. To make this plainer by a familiar Instance; suppose you take the *Ladies* in Chess, and join their plain sides together, they will make a heavy Cylinder, tho' taken singly they are but light. This Cylinder rolls easily upon a Plane, while the *Ladies* are thus join'd together: But part them and put them in another Position, and when the Cylinder is spoil'd, their volubility is spoil'd too. We dare not affirm, that the Case is certainly the same in Quicksilver: But every Body must allow, that the Effects of it may be well produced by this, or the like way.

43. V. In the Mines Quicksilver is found either pure and liquid, or mixt and encumber'd with the more solid Particles of other Bodies; just as other Metals are mixt or pure. It flows out of the Stone thro' Tubes, which makes *Pliny* call it, *Vomicam aterni liquoris*, i. e. a Liquor vomited out of a Stone, and never coagulated.

44. VI. *It breaks thro' Vessels*, i. e. such as have any chink, or are very porous; for its Cylinders being both smooth and heavy, it either slips thro' the chinks, or works its way through a slight Contexture; which is the Reason that it easily soaks thro' the Pores of Leather.

45. VII. *Every Thing swims in it*, by reason of its gravity; but *Gold, and that sinks*, because it frets the surface of Gold with its active Cylinders, and puts its quadrangular, oblong Parts into Motion, and having thus disjoint'd them it easily admits them into its Pores. For Cylinders leave sufficient Pores between them to take in solid right-angled Parallelograms. But when Quicksilver has Gold enough in it, to fill up all its Pores, then it looses its fluidity, and becomes a soft Consistence, as it does when 'tis united with Lead.

46. VIII. *Being poured upon Leather, it sweats through it, and leaves the pure Gold behind*, because the smooth Cylinders easily pass through the Pores of the Leather; which right-angled Parallelograms cannot do by reason of their Angles.

47. IX. *Of the second Sort of Minium they have found a way to make Quicksilver*, because the Minium is either full of such Metal, which is extracted out of it's earthy Parts by the Method already mention'd; or else it does in good measure consist of such Globules as make the Cylinders of Quicksilver, and compose them by uniting them together, as the heat of the Fire drives them out of the Minium. Hence we see Minium made every Day out of pure Quicksilver, by the help of a vehement Fire, and an artful Management. For so the Cylinders are dissolved, and their Globules are partly broken, and partly alter'd in their Situation; which makes the Light to be variously collected and reflected from the Surface of Quicksilver and Minium, and this is the Cause of their different Colours.

48. And so much of Metals; which is far short of enough to satisfy those, that would be perfectly well seen in their Natures. We judged it sufficient, in a Compendium, to touch briefly upon such Things as are generally well known. A great deal more may be found in the Books of Chymists and Authors, that have made it their business to Study these Things. We have offer'd a Conjecture, which we thought might be of use to solve the Thing in Question; and



shall be glad to have the Benefit of better Discoveries from others: Always allowing the *Greek Poet's* Authority to hold good, more especially in this sort of Knowledge:

*Mentis autem estis auribus nuntius.*

The best Guest is the best Prophet.

## CHAP. V.

Of such FOSSILS as are calcin'd by the heat of FIRE.

1. **T**HE Fossils of the third Kind are now to come under our Examination; and in this Rank we have placed such as don't flame nor melt in the Fire, nor may be hammer'd out into Length and Breadth; but crumble into Dust when they are pound'd, and turn to a *Calx* when heated in the Fire. These again may be subdivided into two Sorts, *viz.* Salts of various kinds, or Fossils which have much of the Nature of Salts: And such as have no manner of affinity with Salt.

Plin. lib. 33. c. 7.

2. Salts are all such Fossils, as have a sharp and pungent taste, tho' not all alike. We will begin with that which is properly so called; "Which (as *Pliny* says) is either made by Art, or comes of it self; there are several Ways for both; and both are made of Water boil'd, or dried up. Thus the *Tarentine Lake* is all dried up in Summer, and turn'd into Salt. In some Places the Edges of Lakes only are dried to Salt, as the *Lacus Cocanicus* in *Sicily*, and another near *Gela*. And the same Thing happens in some Pools of *Phrygia* and *Cappadocia*. Sometimes about half the Pool is dried to Salt, as at *Aspendus*, where it is very remarkable, that whatever quantity is taken away in the Day-time, it is made up again the Night following. Now none of the Salt aforesaid grows together in hard Lumps, but is all small and fine. The Sea-water too yields a Salt of its own accord, which is made of the Froth that is left upon the Rocks and Shores. And some other such Salts there are which Water produces of it self

3. "But besides, there are Mountains of native Salt, as *Ormenus* in the *Indies*, where it is cut like Stone out of a Quarry, and grows again. In *Cappadocia* they dig it out of the Ground, where it plainly appears to have been form'd out of Water congeal'd (as 'twere) and petrify'd like *Ising-glass*. The Lumps which are dig'd out, are very heavy. At *Gerrha*, a Town in *Arabia*, they build their Walls and Houses of large pieces of Salt, cementing the Joynts with Water. When King *Ptolemy* encamp'd about *Pelafiam*, he found Salt in the Ground, which gave the hint to others to remove the Sand, and find it in the Desarts between *Egypt* and *Arabia*; as likewise in the thirsty Sands of *Africa*, as far as the Oracle of *Jupiter Hammon*. For the parts of *Cyrene* are famous for *Sal Ammoniac*, so call'd, because 'tis found under the Sands. It looks like that sort of Allum call'd *Schifam*; coming out in long, dusky pieces, of an unpleasant taste, but useful in Physick, &c. It is gotten likewise at *Egelasta*, in the hithermost Part of *Spain*, in Lumps almost transparent; and this is prefer'd by most Physicians above all other Salts whatever. Lastly, The Places where Salt is found, are always barren, and produce nothing else.

4. "Now for Salt that is made by Art, there are several kinds of it. The common and most useful Sort is made in the Salt-pits which take in the

"Sea-water, with some mixture of Fresh, especially what falls out of the Clouds; but a hot Sun does all in all to the making of it. The *Africans* heap up their Salt about *Utica*, like so many Hills; which Heaps, when they are once well harden'd by the Sun and Moon, are not to be melted with any wet, nor hardly to be cut with Iron. But in *Crete*, and about *Egypt*, they make it of Sea-water only, without any Springs. At *Babylon* they have a thick sort of Water which makes liquid Bitumen like Oyl, and therefore used in Lamps; when the Liquor is spent, there is Salt left in the bottom. In *Chaonia* they boil the Water of a certain Fountain, which as it cools, it turns to Salt; but such as is neither pungent nor white.

5. Salt is all one, as to the Nature of it, whether it be made by Art, or be the Native Product of the Earth, or be owing to the heat of the Sun, which makes the Waters to evaporate, and so fits it for use. For the saline Particles are not produc'd by Art, but are only separated from the watry Particles wherein they floated. All the Difference is in the quickness of its taste, according to the different Situation of Places, and heat of the Sun. Let us proceed therefore to explain the general Properties of Salt, and enquire into their Causes.

6. And 1. Salt is heavier than Water: 2. 'Tis dissolved by it: 3. It melts in the open Air, if it be well refin'd from all heterogeneous Matter: 4. When the Water wherewith it was mingled, is boil'd away and evaporated, it is left in the bottom of the Vessel: 5. It never corrupts, nor suffers Flesh which is season'd with it, to corrupt: 6. It has a very keen taste: 7. It is the only Thing, which, when thoroughly refined, the Fire cannot melt, but reduces to a *Calx*.

7. I. When Lumps of Salt of any bigness, are cast into the Water, they go down directly to the bottom; whence 'tis plain, that a quantity of Salt is heavier than a like quantity of Water. The Reason is, because there is more homogeneous Matter in the Lump of Salt, than in the quantity of Water; the saline Particles lying closer together than the watry Particles can do, for which reason the Pores between them are smaller; as will appear upon observing their Figure. But when a Lump of Salt thrown into the Water, comes to be dissolved by the fretting and agitation of the watry Particles, those Particles insinuate themselves among the Particles of Salt, and receive them into their Pores, and so carry them about according as they move themselves.

8. II. But the way of diluting Salt seems to be this: When the watry Particles like so many Ropes enclose the Salt on every side, and variously toss and drive it about with their Motion, the saline Particles being much of a cubick Figure, acute in the Angles, but smooth on the sides, are at last disjoin'd, and carried away with the Water. Nor is the aforesaid Figure of Salt barely guess'd at, but it's various Kinds having been carefully view'd thro' a Microscope, the parts appear'd much pointed with Angles, tho' the Angles were not equally large and numerous in all the Particles: But the sides appear'd smooth, so that 'tis no wonder they are easily disjoin'd. That common Salt, whether produced by Sea or Land, is of a cubic Figure, is prov'd by Dr. *Lister*, in the beginning of his Book *De Medicatis Angliae fontibus*. Printed 1682.

9. III. Salt expos'd to the Air, is apt to melt, because in the Air there are many watry Particles, which falling upon the Salt melt, or rather dissolve it. And this is confirm'd from hence, That when the Air is very clear, and far from abounding with watry Particles, Salt keeps well in it; but dissolves immediately upon the change of Weather to Rain or Cloudy. We observ'd before, that to make Salt dissolvable in the Air, 'tis necessary it should be refin'd from all heterogeneous Matter; because otherwise the Branches of such Matter hold it together so that the Water cannot loosen it.

10. IV.



10. IV. *Fossil and Marine-Salt*, and such too as is made out of Salt-Springs, when 'tis boil'd in Water, does not evaporate, but remains in the bottom of the Vessel; and thus when the heat of the Sun has drain'd the Water out of Salt-Pits, we see the Salt is left upon the dry sides. The reason of this is not hard to be discover'd, when 'tis remembred (as we said) that Salt is heavier than Water; for that which is heaviest must needs remain last in the bottom of a Vessel exhausted with heat. Besides, whereas the sides of saline Particles, according to our Conjecture, are smooth, they cannot help falling into the Vessel, tho' they be something rais'd while they are engag'd with the watry Particles; for having no Hook to hang upon those Particles as they ascend, their own weight brings them down again.

11. But you must take notice, that this is to be understood of such Salts as come from the Earth and the Sea, which Chymists call fix'd Salts, because their weight fixes them to the bottom of the Vessel. But there are volatile Salts, that is, acid Particles Chymically extracted out of the Bodies of Plants and Animals. Now these being much finer than the other, and perhaps of a slighter contexture, are easily carry'd up into the Air. These Salts derive themselves indeed from the Salt of the Earth, because Plants and Animals are fed, and grow by the moisture of the Earth; but by various Fermentations they are attenuated and made fine enough to evaporate.

12. V. But the great Property of Salt is, That it neither corrupts itself, nor suffers those things on which 'tis sprinkled, to corrupt. Thus we see that Flesh, and other Things which are soon tainted without Salt, will keep good a vast while, when they are sufficiently salted. For the right understanding of this, we will here put in a Word or two concerning Putrefaction. That which makes Flesh, for Example, putrify, is the warmth and brisk motion of the Air, which gets into the Flesh, and by degrees severs the parts of it; these flying about in the Air, get into Peoples Nostrils, and strike upon the Olfactory Nerves so as to excite in the Mind a sense of a noisom Smell. Now this being the Case, it was needful, for preventing Putrefaction, that some Art should be found out, whereby to fix the Parts of Flesh in the same situation, against the force of the incumbent and surrounding Air. Which cannot be done better than by having something at hand, whose acute and rigid Parts may, like so many Nails, penetrate the Particles of Flesh, and fasten them close one to another: And such are the Particles of Salt, as we have represented them before. For this reason, salt Meat does not only keep sweet, but grows hard too; because it cannot be thus closely pinn'd together by the rigid Particles of Salt, but it must become harder. It may here be further observ'd, That as Salt keeps Flesh from being corrupted by the Air; so Flesh defends Salt from being melted by the same Air, because it retains the saline Particles within its deep Pores, and suffers not the humidity of the Air to touch them.

13. When Salt is thrown into the Fire, there are several things observable about it. First, That it crackles very briskly; but has soon done. The Reason of which seems to be this, that there are watry or airy Particles inclos'd in some cavities of the Salt. Now when 'tis thrown into the Fire, those Particles strike against the sides of the Cavities with incredible vehemency, and breaking their prisons, start out into the Air, which makes that crackling noise that strikes our Ears. This is more confirm'd by this Experiment, That if you dry Salt by a gentle Fire, and pound it as small as may be, and then throw it into the Fire, it will not crackle. And the same thing may be argu'd from the shortness of its crackling; for when the heterogeneous Matter is let out, there is nothing more in the Salt to make such a noise.

14. Secondly, Salt well dry'd, and *decrepitated*, as

the Chymists call it, and set over the Fire in a Pan, remains a great while like Calx, just as Stones do; and cannot be melted without an extrem hot Fire, if nothing be mix'd with it. For the Particles of Salt, which are like a Prism, sharp at both ends, are very unapt to move of themselves, because of the mutual hold which their Angles have one of another. But at last the violence of Fire, which conquers every thing, blunts and breaks those Angles, insomuch that they run to Liquor, while the vehement heat lasts. But when it is taken off the Fire, the Liquor settles to a solid Substance like Glais; for which reason Glass-makers use a great deal of Salt and Nitre in their Trade.

15. VI. This seems to be the Nature of Salt, and this is all that we shall say of it at present; only take notice, That as there is a variety in the Taste and Acrimony of Salts, so must the Angles at the ends of the Prisms be various, more or fewer; sharper or blunter; as our naked Eyes may almost discern; but a Microscope makes it plain. Hence it is that Salts put to the Tongue, and variously pricking its Fibres, according to the variety of their Points, excite in us a sense of more than one sort of Taste.

16. To Salt, we will add three other sorts of *Fossils*, Nitre, Vitriol and Alum; whose Properties and Nature we will briefly explain, as well as we can. To begin with Nitre; there's one sort which grows of itself, and another sort which is made. <sup>Plin. lib. xxx.</sup> There is but <sup>c. 10.</sup> " little (says *Pliny*) in *Media*, in their hoary dry Valleys; they call it *Halmyraga*. But in *Thrace* there is <sup>c. 10.</sup> " less; they call it *Agrium* 'tis found near *Philippi*. " There are a great many nitrous Waters, but they are " not strong enough to condense. The most and best " Nitre is to be had at *Lite* in *Macedonia*; the People " call it *Chalastrium*; 'tis white and fine, and very like " Salt. There is a nitrous Lake, with a Fountain of " sweet Water in the middle, &c. And this is what " grows of itself. In *Egypt* they make a great deal " of it, but it is not good; for it is dusky, and full " of knots and stones. It is made almost as Salt is; " only they use Sea-water in their Salt-works; and the " Water of *Nile* about their Nitre. When the *Nile* " retires, their Nitre-pits stand soaking for forty Days " together; but as soon as the Nitre is grown firm, " they are in haste to carry it off, lest it should melt a- " gain in the Pits. They pile it upon Heaps and it keeps " very well. The Nitre-pits of *Egypt* were us'd to be " only about *Naucratis* and *Memphis*; and the former " had the preference; for the *Memphian* Nitre grows " strong as it stands; for which reason there are se- " veral Piles of Stone thereabout. Out of these they " make Vessels, and some they melt down with Sul- " phur among their Coals. This same Nitre they use " also about such things as they would have last a " long time. There are some Pits of reddish Nitre, " according to the Colour of the Earth. In *Asia* the " *Aphronitrum* is reported to be gotten from the di- " stillation of Caverns; which is gather'd and laid to " dry in the Sun. But that from *Lydia* is reckon'd " the best. The proof of its goodness is, that it be " very light, very friable, and very near of a pur- " ple Colour.

17. There is but this difference between the Natural and Artificial Nitre. That the one refines itself, the other is refin'd by the Art of Man, as we said before of Salt. And indeed, all Nitre is a kind of Salt, and hardly differs from Salt, properly so call'd, further than in these three respects, That well refined Nitre is more acid, and lighter than Salt; and easily takes fire.

18. If the ground of this difference be requir'd, it seems to be only this: 1. That the Angles at both ends of the oblong Particles of Nitre, are sharper than the Angles of the saline Particles; which makes them prick the Tongue more vehemently, and excite a greater sense of Acidity. 2. That the Particles of Nitre



Nitre are finer and fuller of Pores, which when the Particles of Fire get in, they soon put the nitrous Particles in a hurry, till they break to pieces, and turn to flame, as we shew'd before. Nitre exceeds Salt in lightness, because the saline Particles contain more homogeneous Matter in the same compass, than the nitrous do. Those that would know more of Nitre, may peruse the accurate Natural History of it, printed at London, in 1690. by *William Clarke*. Dr. *Lifter* has view'd the Particles of Nitre thro' a Microscope, and found them to have six Angles, parallelogram sides, and pointed like a Pyramid at one end.

19. Vitriol, as we now call it, was by the Ancients call'd *Chalcantides*; there are several sorts of it, which we will describe out of *Pliny*. "The *Greeks* (saith he) "have compounded the Name of two Words, signifying Copper and Shoemaker's Black, for they call it *Chalcantides*. It is made in the Pits and Pools of "of *Spain*, which have that sort of Water. It is boil'd "together with an equal mixture of fresh Water, and "is pour'd into wooden Troughs; across these are "fasten'd certain pieces of Wood, from which Ropes "hang down with Stones ty'd at their lower ends. "About these Stones the Mud gathers, and glazes "them so as to make them look like Bunches of "Grapes. Then they take them out, and keep them "Thirty Days a drying. The Colour of this Matter "becomes so shining, that one might mistake it for "Glass. [*Whence it came to be call'd Vitriol.*] When it is "diluted, 'tis as black as Ink; [*for which reason they call it Shoemaker's Black.*]" There are many ways of making it; As by digging Pits in the Ground aforesaid, "the distillations of whose sides are frozen in Winter to "Ice-icles, and make the finest sort. That of a white "violet colour, they call *Lancheton*. 'Tis likewise made "in Cisterns where the Rain-water and Mud is gathered together and suffer'd to freeze. And sometimes "they make it as they do Salt, by thickening it in the "hot Sun. For these Reasons they distinguish it by two "Names, *Fossil* and *Fartitious*. The paler it looks, the "worse it is.

20. Besides this *Chalcantides* of the Ancients, there are other sorts of Vitriol, *Chalcitis*, *Sery* and *Misy*. "*Chalcitis* is the Copper-stone; which differs from the "Stone call'd *Cadmia*, because 'tis cut out of Rocks "standing above-ground, whereas they dig for this "latter. Besides, the *Chalcitis* crumbles to pieces presently, being naturally soft, as if it were *Dewn* "grown together in a Lump; and has long Veins of "Copper. The best is colour'd like Honey, has fine "Veins, is friable, and free from Stones.

21. When it is old, they call it *Sery*, whereof the "best is found in *Egypt*, far beyond that of *Cyprus*, "*Spain*, and *Africa*. The proof of its goodness any "where is, if it have a very strong smell, and "grows oily, black, and spongy by rubbing: But "these are chiefly the Properties of the *Egyptian Sery*; "for that of other Countries grows bright, as *Misy* "does, when 'tis rub'd, and is more stony. They "burn it, as they do the *Chalcitis*, in a Coal-fire.

22. "Some say, *Misy* is made in Pits, by burning "the Stone with a Fire made of Pine-tree, whereby "the Ashes of that Wood incorporates with the yellow Flour of the Stone. It is indeed made of the "Stone above-mention'd; the best is in *Cyprus*, the "marks of it are small sparks of Gold; when it is "scrap'd, the Matter of it appears earthy or sandy, "like *Chalcitis*. A mixture of it is us'd in Refining "Gold.

23. These are the several Sorts of Vitriol; which we will not stand to examine with all their Properties. We will only observe in general, 1. That it is near as heavy as Salt, though the weight of the several Sorts is not all alike. 2. The more refin'd, the sharper it is, and the Spirit, as the Chymists call it, is extremely Acid. 3. It is very Corroive and Astringent. 4. It does not flame in the Fire, but turns to a Powder or *Calx*.

24. I. It is as heavy as Salt, because its Particles are as compact, and therefore contain as much homogeneous Matter in the same compass. II. It is very Acid, by reason of the very sharp Angles at the ends of its Particles, which the freer they are from heterogeneous Matter, the more acute and pungent they are. For as a sharp Knife will not cut so well when the Edge is clog'd with any thick Matter, as it will when the Edge is clean; so the Angles of Vitriol prick and penetrate more or less, as they are more or less clog'd. III. 'Tis no wonder that the Particles being so extremely sharp as to enter any Pores, do corrode things they are laid upon. They do likewise render Flesh firm, by piercing or fixing it like so many Nails or Pins, for the more Pins are driven into the Pores of any Body, the more is the Matter of it squeez'd together, unless they over-strain it, and break its Continuity. IV. Vitriol will not flame for the same reason as Salt will not. Dr. *Lifter* has shewn that the Particles of Vitriol are taper at both Ends, and consist of Ten plain Sides.

25. In the last place we are to speak of Alum, which (as *Pliny* calls it) "Is the Sweat [*Salsugo*] of the "Earth. Of this there are several Sorts. *Cyprus* produces both white and black, more different in their "use than colour; for the white and liquid gives "Wool a bright gloss; the black dyes it of a brown "colour. This latter is also good to purify Gold. "Tis all made of Water and Slime, sweating out of "the Earth in Winter, and harden'd by the Summer's "Sun. The first that's ready is the whitest. It is also "got in *Spain*, *Egypt*, *Armenia*, *Macedonia*, *Pontus*, "*Africa*, and in the Isles of *Sardinia*, *Melos*, *Lipara*, "*Strongyle*. The best is in *Egypt*; the next best in "*Melos*.

26. "Of this there are two sorts, Liquid, and Hard. "The goodness of the Liquid is known by its being "clear and milky, free from roughness, and naturally "warm. The other sort is pale and rough. The "Vertue of the Liquid Alum is to bind, to harden, "and corrode.

27. "There is one sort of Concrete Allum which "the *Greeks* call *Συστήρ*, growing into long streaks "like Gray-hairs: whence some chuse rather to call it "*Τεχγίτης*; and *Chalcitis*, from the Stone of whose "coagulated Sweat it is made. This sort of Alum is "none of the best for stopping running Humours. "Another sort there is call'd *Strongyle*, which grows "deeper in the Ground. This is divided again into "two Sorts. One is fungous, or pappy, easily diluted with any moisture, and good for little. The "other, which is better, is full of holes like a Pumice or Sponge, naturally round, and comes nearer "to the White; it is free from Sand, friable, and "fullies not the Hands with the touch. There needs "nothing be put to it to make it run; a clean Coal-fire resolves it. There is no sort better for its "binding, blackening, and hardening Quality.

28. We will not stand to take notice of some other Sorts of Alum besides those already mention'd. It is suppos'd, that what we now call *Rock-Alum*, which is white and almost transparent, was unknown to the Ancients. But the Nature of them all is much the same.

29. 1. Alum has a Salt taste, tho' not so acid as that of Vitriol. 2. It is extremely binding, whence the *Greeks* call it *συστήρ* *πασα* *τὸ* *σύσκειν*, from its astringent Quality; besides that it corrodes and hardens things. 3. The Fire reduces it to *Calx*. 4. It is commonly lighter than Sea-salt. The reason of these Properties, according to the best Conjectures we can make, may easily be gather'd from what has been said already. The Particles whereof it consists, seem to be something singular in this, that they are thicker, rougher, and have blunter points than the Particles of other Salts. It would require a great many Experiments to be accurate on this Subject. Dr. *Lifter* has shewn, by the help



help of a Microscope, that the Figure of Alum is something flat, and has on that part which may be call'd the top or Head, a Plane of six Angles, and a like Plane on the opposite part; between which are contain'd two other Planes of four Angles a-piece; so that the whole consists of eleven Planes, *viz.* Five of six Angles, and six of four Angles.

30. Thus we have given some Account of Salts, which may furnish some Hints for further Enquiries. We are next to say something of Stones; not of all, or most sorts of Stones, for that would be Work enough for a great Volume; but something of them in general. Now Stones are such *Fossils* as are hard and rigid, easily beaten to Dust with the Hammer, and reduc'd to Calx by the Fire, and without any manner of Taste.

31. These common Properties of Stones may be thus accounted for, from Principles already laid down. I. The whole Substance of Stones is hard and rigid, because it consists of Particles which are so. II. The Hammer beats Stones to Powder, because the rigid Particles cannot bend, or yield to the stroke, and flow down by one anothers sides; and therefore a violent blow makes them fly, and dissolves their continuity. III. Stones don't flame in the Fire, nor evaporate, by reason of the weight and rigidness of their Particles. But since all parts of Stones are not equally hard, a continual Fire eats through the softer places, and often reduces Stones to a pretty light sort of Dust. Which Dust or Lumps of Stone left by the Fire, are call'd *Calx*.

32. Before we proceed with what we have to say about Stones, we will explain a principal and very remarkable Property of *Calx*. Now we see that *Calx viva*, or unslak'd Lime, when cold Water is thrown upon it, presently hizzes and grows hot; the Natural Reason of which, is a Question that deserves to be consider'd. In the first place it may be remember'd, that a vehement Fire wastes the softer parts of Stones, and empties the Pores which were before full of fine Matter. Now these Pores are not only wider and larger for the Air to come in and fill them; but there are besides very narrow recesses and various windings, which cannot admit any Air, but are full of subtiler Matter. So long as the *Calx* is expos'd to the Air, it continues in one state without any hizzing; because the Air don't press upon its surface with more than ordinary weight, nor is the subtiler Matter forc'd on a sudden out of its Pores.

33. But when a pretty large quantity of Water is thrown upon the *Calx*, the watry Particles press and strike its surface with their weight, and various Motion common to all Liquids, so as to enter the Pores, and dissolve the Texture of the *Calx*; at which time that subtiler Matter contain'd in the minutest Pores of the *Calx*, suddenly bursts out with a great force, and makes a ferment in the Water. For as Water over a Fire is made to boil by innumerable Particles of Fire rising up to it to put it in motion; so the bubbling of the Water thrown upon Lime is caus'd by an Eruption of the finest Particles in it. But after the Water has bubbled a little while, those Particles fly out of the Pores, and disperse themselves thro' the Air, and then the hizzing ceases; just as it does in Water set over the Fire, when the Fire is decay'd.

34. IV. Stones, and particularly the harder sort of Stones, have no Taste; because their Particles cannot be moisten'd so thoroughly, as to make a separation of what Salt they have, from the other parts, that it may enter the Pores and prick the Nerves of the Tongue; which is the only way whereby this Sensation, *viz.* the Tasting any thing, is excited in us; as was shewn before.

35. Stones are of two Sorts, the Common or Vulgar, and the Precious: But since this Division don't help to explain their Nature, 'tis better to divide them into Dark and Transparent. Of the first Sort are

Flints, and that great variety of Stones us'd in Buildings and Statues. For the Light which is convey'd to us thro' right Lines falling upon those Stones, either finds no entrance into them, or if it does, it follows such crooked windings as can bring nothing of it to us. For the same Reason many Precious Stones, tho' shining on the outside, yet are very near dark, because they are tinctur'd with deep Colours.

36. Crystal is transparent; so is Adamant, and many Grains of Sand; because the Rays of Light pass thro' their Pores in right Lines: But we cannot insist on this, it requiring a large explication of the Nature of Light to understand it well. Most Precious Stones are either transparent, tho' in a less degree than the Adamant, or glittering and almost transparent.

37. It is a Question among the Philosophers, Whether Salts and Stones are generated in the Bowels of the Earth? Some hold the Negative, and some the Affirmative; which side is in the right, is uncertain. Those that are for their being generated, suppose them to be originally Liquors which grow to a firmness in time; and they imagine that the Subterraneous Fires boil a medley of Things together in the Earth, which afterwards disperse thro' the Veins, where they grow firm as they are found by us. This Conjecture of theirs is supported by an Observation upon the making of Glass, which is compounded of Sand and Stones reduc'd to Calx, and run together by a violent Fire, with a mixture of Nitre; as also by observing the various Mixtures made by the Art of Man, and so order'd as to resemble Precious Stones of divers Colours. But tho' this may possibly be so, yet it may be quite otherways: We don't know the Bowels of the Earth well enough to determine the Matter positively either way.

38. Among Stones, the Magnet is reckon'd for one; which because of its particular Nature, shall be accurately consider'd in the following Chapter.

## CHAP. VI.

### Of the MAGNET or LOADSTONE, and its Properties.

1. **I**T is not my Design to enquire when the *Loadstone* came first to be known, and how useful it is to shew the Poles of the World. Our present Business is only to give the Natural History of it. First then, We will observe its various Properties which Experience has made known: And in the next place, we will propose the most famous Opinions of Philosophers concerning its internal Nature and Disposition.

II. But first of all, it is observable, That the *Loadstone* is found in Iron-Mines, and is much of a Colour and Weight with Iron. However, it is not to be melted and hammer'd out like Iron; but flies to pieces under the Hammer, and turns to a *Calx* in the Fire; which shews that its Parts exceed those of Iron for hardness, rigidness, and an intricate combination one with another: This was worth observing, because it will be of Use in the following Discourse.

III. Let us now enter upon the known Properties of the *Loadstone*. And 1st. When it moves freely and without any obstacle, it points *North* and *South*, so as that part of it which stands to one Pole, never turns to the other. The way to give it a free motion, is to swim it in the Water, upon a piece of Wood.

2. Secondly, Philosophers have observ'd, That the *Loadstone* don't always point full *North* and *South*, but sometimes inclines to the *East* or *West*, without any constant Rule.

3. Thirdly, Two *Loadstones* plac'd at a certain distance from one another, do mutually approach or recede, according



according to their various Positions. Their parts which stand *North*, being oppos'd go off to a distance from each other; but the *South*-end of one draws to the *North*-end of the other; and so *vice versa*. These Parts of the *Loadstones* we shall, for brevity's sake, call their Poles, and for a Reason which will appear hereafter, we shall call that the *South*-Pole which turns to the *North*, and that the *North*-Pole which points to the *South*.

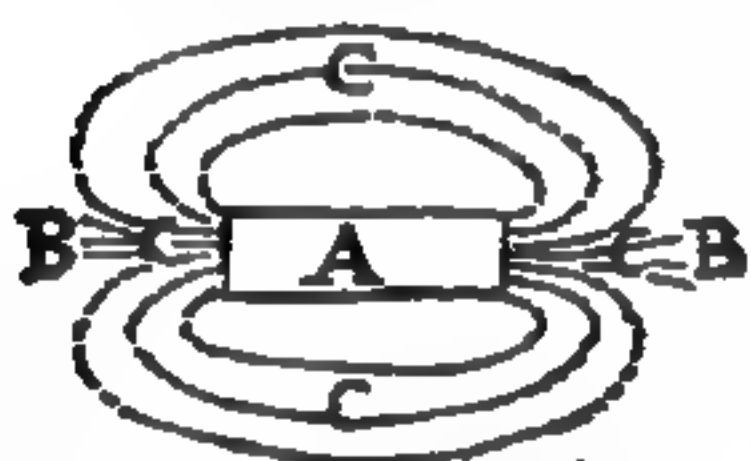
4. Fourthly, Two *Loadstones* will hold up one another in the Air by turns, if the *North*-Pole of the one be put to the *South*-Pole of the other, and *vice versa*; sometimes a lighter *Loadstone* will hold up a heavier, when the heavier will not hold up the lighter.

5. Fifthly, It is observable, that all *Loadstones* are not equally brisk and nimble in turning to the Poles of the World; nor is their Virtue all alike in attracting or holding up Weights.

6. Sixthly, Tho' a *Loadstone* for the most part has two Poles pointing *North* and *South*, as we said before; yet there are some irregular ones, which seem to have more Poles.

7. Seventhly, As one *Loadstone* holds up another, so it does Iron of greater or less weight than itself.

8. Eighthly, If Iron-dust be strew'd upon a *Loadstone*, the Particles will dispose themselves directly between the Poles and then by degrees incline to an orbicular Figure, so as to lie parallel with the Axis of the *Loadstone*, unless it be one of the irregular sort before



mention'd. See the Figure, where A, is the *Loadstone*, B, the Region opposite to its Poles; C, the Dust. A like Observation is that of Iron-filings upon coarse Paper, or a thin Board, that

if the *Loadstone* be held under the Paper or Board, it moves the Filings just as it mov'd itself, provided it be not held at too great a distance.

9. Ninthly, The *Loadstone* imparts its Virtue to Iron so effectually, that Iron touch'd with a *Loadstone*, appears to have all the Properties aforesaid tho' not in an equal degree. The great Use of this communication is experienc'd in the Mariner's Needle, by the help whereof they readily find the *North* and *South*, and all other Parts of the World.

10. Tenthly, 'Tis observable, that on this side the Line, the *North*-point of the Needle is more depress'd than that which stands to the *South*; on the further side the *North*-point is elevated, and the *South* depress'd; but under the Line it keeps no situation, nor is of any use.

11. Eleventhly, As the *Loadstone* communicates its Virtue to Iron; so when 'tis set in Iron, it attracts a greater weight of it, than it does by itself.

12. Twelfthly, *Loadstones* are spoil'd if they are suffer'd to lie long near one another with the *North* or *South*-Pole of the one oppos'd to the same Pole of the other. Or if they are thoroughly heated in the Fire; which likewise spoils the Magnetick Virtue in Iron: And this Virtue is much impair'd in Iron by its Rust, to which the *Loadstone* is not so obnoxious.

13. Lastly, Iron plac'd long-ways between *North* and *South*, and continuing so for a long time without alteration, has often acquir'd a Magnetick Virtue; as the old Crosses upon Churches are found to do.

IV. These are the chief Properties which the *Loadstone* is by Experience found to have; and they have put the Philosophers very hard to it, to assign a probable Reason for such wonderful Effects. However, they have attempted three ways to find it out.

1. Some have affirm'd, That there is a certain Sympathy between the *North*-pole of one *Loadstone*, and the *South*-pole of another; but an Antipathy between the *North*-pole, or the *South*-pole of one, and the same Pole of another. This Antipathy makes them repel one ano-

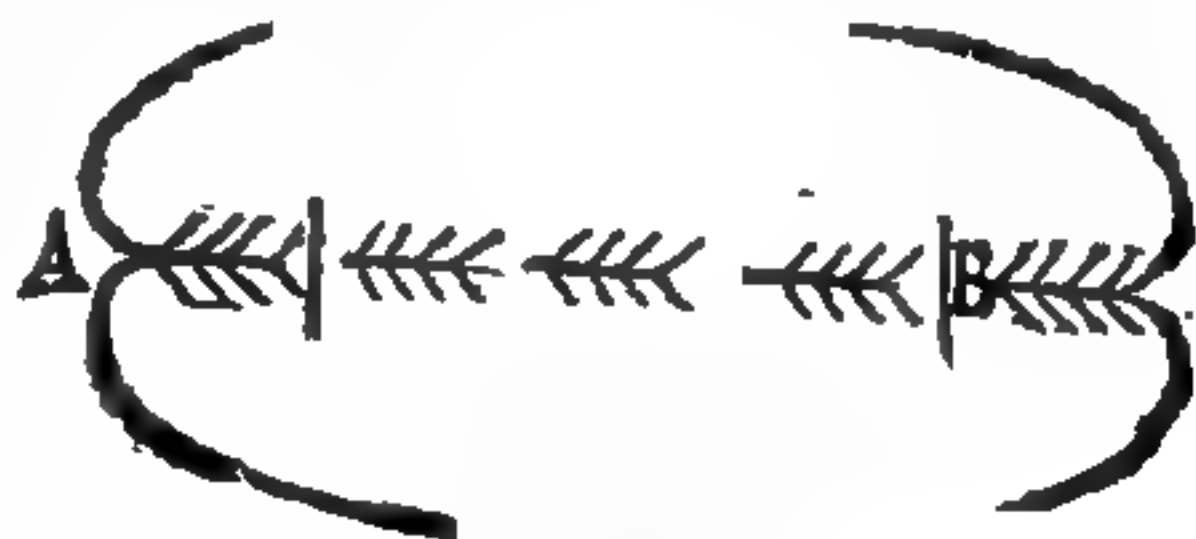
ther, but the Sympathy is the cause of their mutual Attraction. Besides this, they teach that there is a Sympathy between the *Loadstone* and Iron, whereby the latter receives the Virtue of the former. And this way they account for all Experiments, very luckily, as they conceive.

2. But some People are apt to demand, What the meaning of Sympathy and Antipathy is? To these they answer, That Sympathy is an *occult Quality*, consisting in a certain Agreement and Alliance of Nature. But *occult Quality*, is only two Words for something utterly unknown; and therefore it would be a more frank and candid Answer to say, They don't understand, nor can imagine the Reason of these Effects. For to a second Question, What that Agreement and Alliance of Nature is, there is no plainer Answer given. So likewise Antipathy, or the Resistance and Discord of Nature, is an *occult Quality*; which teaches us as much of the Reason why one *Loadstone* recedes from another, &c. as we knew before; and they that say it, had as good say nothing.

3. *Tales* did not speak more intelligibly, when he said, *This Stone had a Soul, which put Iron in motion*. Nor would he, I presume, have given a clearer Answer, if he had been ask'd, What that Soul was? However, we may here take notice by the way, of what very great Antiquity the Knowledge of the *Loadstone* is.

4. Others considering the Experiment of the Dust, how it disposes itself about the *Loadstone*, have conjectured, First, That there is some invisible Matter whirling round the Stone; for otherwise the Iron-Dust would not place itself in that order, it being contrary to the Nature of Bodies to move of their own accord. Secondly, They think, that same Matter may be the Cause of all the wonderful Effects of the *Loadstone*. Thirdly, They suppose that the Earth itself may be of the Nature of a great *Loadstone*, about which the like Matter may circulate; and that a *Loadstone* may be so dispos'd with respect to the Earth, as it is with respect to another *Loadstone*. Of these Three Suppositions, the first seems undoubtedly true, the other Two more uncertain; but yet not contrary to the Nature of Things, and therefore not to be deny'd as absolutely false.

5. These Things being suppos'd, we are next to enquire, What is the Figure of that inconspicuous Matter, by which so many wonderful Effects are produc'd. Some imagine it to be like a Feather, or fletched Arrow, which turn'd the wrong way, would hardly enter there, where it passes clear with the right end of the Feather foremost. See the Figure, where this is represented.



Others rather fancy it to resemble a *Screw*, and that the Pore of the Stone is twisted in the same manner, which therefore can receive it but one way. See the Figure

6. Besides, they suppose the Pores of the Earth and *Loadstone* are parallel to their Axis, and adapted to receive such Particles; so that they may go out through one of the Poles, through which by the Inversion of their Fibres or Screw, they are hindred from retreating back; but if they return into the Earth or *Loadstone*, they may enter at the opposite Pole. So the Particles which come out at the Pole A, cannot return the same way again, but must come about to the Pole B.

V. Having briefly explain'd this Opinion, let us see how consistent it is with particular Experiments.

1. *First*, Since the said Matter flies about the Globe of the Earth, if it meets with any Body which has Pores

Antiqu.  
de An.  
ma, lib.  
1. c. 1



Pores fit to receive it, it enters in, and directs that Body according to its own Course. Its entrance will be there where the Pores lye open, but its Particles cannot return the same way for the Reason assign'd, *Numb. IV. §. 6.* The Point of the Screws or winged Particles will make their entrance at that Part, where the Pores are adapted for such Entrance; and if they meet with Pores otherwise disposed, they will work about the Stone by the force of their Motion, till it is in such a Situation, that they can easily penetrate it. But the same Parts of it will always stand to the *North* and *South*, because the Matter which comes from those two Points, always enters at one Pole of the Loadstone, and comes out at the other.

2. *Secondly*, The inclining of the Loadstone *East* or *West*, may be occasion'd by some change made in the Poles of the Earth; so that the Meatus of the magnetick Matter are turn'd a little on one side or other; the reason of which is unknown. But since there is nothing in it, contrary to the Nature of a Body, the probability of the aforesaid Hypothesis is not overthrown thereby.

3. *Thirdly*, The North-pole of one Magnet, repels the same Pole of another, and the like repugnancy is seen between their South-poles, because the Matter which goes out at the North-pole, cannot enter at the same Pole, by reason of the Figure or Motion of that Matter; and therefore the Pole of one Loadstone repels the same Pole of another, while the Particles of the magnetick Matter strike briskly upon the solid Stone, or its impervious Pores. On the contrary, if the South-pole of the one be set opposite to the North-pole of the other, there is a mutual Attraction of the Loadstones; for while the Matter passes freely thro' their Pores on both sides, and nothing obstructs it, it agitates the Air interspersed between the two Loadstones, and gives it such a strong turn as drives it to the exterior Parts of the Stones, which it forces one towards another; so that they are seen to draw nearer together, because the Resistance between their nearer Poles being removed, makes them give way to the greater pressure incumbent on their exterior Poles. But the two Loadstones ought not to be far from each other; for the magnetick Matter which is carried round them, describes not a very large Circle: So that if they be too far asunder, they are out of the Circle, and consequently out of the mutual Influence of each other. It is likewise further to be observed here, that since 'tis plain, that that Pole of the Loadstone which Points to the same Pole of the Earth, as the Pole of the other Loadstone does, repels this last; if the Earth is to be consider'd as a great Loadstone, that Pole of the Magnet which turns to the South-pole of the Earth, must be the North-pole, & vice versa.

4. *Fourthly*, One Loadstone holds up another, when their Poles are mutually opposed as before, because the Particles of the cochlear or winged Matter, getting into the Pores of the suspended Stone, maintain its hold. Nor is it material how heavy the attracting Stone is; for its attractive Virtue is not owing to its weight, but to the quantity of magnetick Matter, which the more Pores the Stone has fit to receive it, the greater it is.

5. *Fifthly*, There is the same Reason for the difference which is found between the virtue of Loadstones. Such as have most Pores, retain the greatest quantity of the winged or cochlear Matter about them; for when upon the Resistance it meets with from the Air surrounding the Loadstone, it finds Pores enough in the Stone through which it can easily circulate, then it continues to move about the Stone: But if it be repell'd by too great Solidity, it goes off some whither else. Therefore such Loadstones as are destitute of Pores suited for the Reception of this Matter, or whose Pores are but few, have little or no attractive Virtue.

6. *Sixthly*, Loadstones whose Pores cross one another, or run several ways, are irregular in their Situation; for the magnetick Matter flows upon those Parts, where it finds the readiest Admission.

7. *Seventhly*, The Loadstone draws Iron, because Iron has a sort of magnetick Pores, and seems to differ from the Magnet only in this, that it is softer, and more easily changed.

8. *Eighthly*, From the Iron-dust sprinkled upon the Loadstone, and disposed into a Circle about it, the Motion of the magnetick Matter may be discovered, as it was explain'd, *Numb. IV. §. 4.* For the magnetick Matter disposes and moves the Dust, according to its own Motion.

9. *Ninthly*, Iron acquires a magnetick Virtue for the Reason assign'd, §. 7. And yet the Magnet don't lose any Virtue, because it don't depend on the substance of the Stone, which communicates it self to the Iron; but on the external Matter before spoken of, which opens the Pores of the Iron, so that it circulates about it, as freely as it does about the Stone. And if some Particles which belonged to the Stone, remain with the Iron, the Stone is supplied with others from the Poles of the Earth.

10. *Tenthly*, The magnetick Needle is more deprest on this side the Line, because the magnetick Matter of the Earth flows out in great abundance, not only from the Poles, but also from Countreys remote enough from the Poles, by reason of the Earth's thickness, thro' which it reciprocates from both Hemispheres. Which will be better understood, when 'tis consider'd that the Earth is not Spherical, but Elliptical, or very like that Figure. For the same reason, the South Point of the Needle is deprest beyond the Line. But under the Line, the Needle don't Point North and South any longer, because the Circles of the magnetick Matter of the Earth are higher than its Surface thereabouts, so that the Needle is much below the magnetick Matter, which therefore don't pass thro' it, nor direct it any longer. This Scheme gives a view of this. A and B are the Poles of the Earth, thro' which the magnetick Matter issues in a right Line. CCCC denotes the magnetick Matter, flowing out of both Hemispheres, which brings it into a Circular Motion. D is the place where the magnetick Needle is supposed to be; whence it appears plain enough, that it cannot be toucht with the aforesaid winged or cochlear Matter.



11. *Eleventhly*, The force of the Loadstone will be augmented, if both Poles are tip't with Iron, because when the magnetick Matter is imparted to the Iron, its Pores are opened, and it becomes like the Stone; by this means a greater quantity of magnetick Matter gathers about the Loadstone, so that greater Weights may be taken up by it.

12. *Twelfthly*, Loadstones are spoil'd, if they are so set one against another, that the Matter falls upon those Pores where it cannot enter, because it either breaks them, or stops them up. So likewise the Texture of the Stone is disorder'd by lying in the Fire, so as to lose its Virtue, because its Pores are thereby corrupted. By the same way doth Iron lose its magnetick Power, as also by Rust which corrodes or fills up its Pores.

13. *Lastly*, Since the magnetick Matter is always flying about the Earth, no wonder if it settles upon such Iron as constantly stands the same way, and opens it self a free passage through its Pores.

V. This account of the winged or cochlear Matter flowing through the Pores of the Loadstone, will perhaps



haps at first sight seem fully to solve the *Phænomena*, as indeed it is well enough suited to most of them. However there are almost insuperable Difficulties in the Supposition of either sort of Matter.

1. If winged Matter of the same Figure, and acted by the same uniform Motion, comes from both Poles of the Earth, we do indeed understand the reason, why the Poles of the Loadstone should always stand directed to the Poles of the Earth; but no good Reason can be given, why the same Pole should always stand one way, since the winged Matter from *North* or *South* might indifferently enter at either End.

2. If the cochlear Matter be variously inverted so as to answer all this, yet there is another Objection here, which cannot be solved, neither by this, nor the former Hypothesis. For since the Loadstone is a very solid Body, it cannot be doubted, but there are many more solid Parts than Pores in it. Therefore when two Loadstones are placed near one another, the Matter which mutually flows from them both upon each other, and meets with more solid Parts than Pores, ought to move them both backward; for the force of that Matter which we suppose to flow briskly and plentifully upon the solid Stone, is greater than the force of the Air can be, which is agitated and driven by it to the exterior Poles of the Loadstone; especially since the Air is certainly porous enough to give a free Passage to that Matter.

3. In the mean Time it must be allow'd, that this is an ingenious Account, and that nothing hitherto thought of, comes nearer the Truth.

## CHAP. VII.

### Of FOUNTAINS and RIVERS.

1. **H**AVING taken a view of the solid Matter whereof our Earth consists; we come now to the fluid Part, that is, the Fountains, Rivers, Lakes and Seas. But before we examine their Nature and Origin it will be needful to premise something about Water in general, tho' without entering into all the nice Enquiries which might be made about it.

2. In Water there are these Things observable, which Naturalists study to know and account for. 1. It is Transparent. 2. It is Liquid, but capable of being fixt. 3. It may be made Hot or Cold. 4. It easily evaporates by the heat of Fire or Air. 5. It is heavy, compar'd with Air and other Bodies; but much heavier than Air. 6. It is insipid, and without smell. 7. Yet it is subject to putrifie, according as the place is where 'tis kept. 8. It penetrates the Pores of some Bodies, and not of others.

3. I. Water is Transparent, for a Reason given before, *Chap. V. §. 36.* where we spoke of transparent Stones; because, as some are of Opinion, it consists of flexible Particles, like Ropes, which are not so close as to leave no Pores; nor so entangled, but that there are right Lines enough to transmit the Light. For since the Particles are not join'd close together, and are in perpetual Motion, the very fine Particles of Light do easily pass through their right Lines; unless the Water be very deep, or be put in Motion by some external Cause. Then indeed the transparency of the Water is very much obstructed, and it looks of a cloudy, obscure Colour, as it is obvious to observe in a rough Sea. For at such a Time, the vehement Agitation of the Water disturbs the Pores and spoils their straightness.

4. II. Water seems to be Liquid, for the same Reason as other Bodies are so. For since its Particles are flexible like Ropes, as we have described them, and leave Pores between one another, which are fill'd with

finer Matter, when this Matter is put into a vehement Commotion, the Particles are easily tost about every way. Yet when the Motion of this restless Matter is restrain'd, as it is in Winter, then the Water congeals into Ice; whether this comes of Cold only, or there be besides nitrous Particles which fall out of the Air at that Time, and with their rigidity fix the watry Particles.

5. III. The Particles of Water being such as we have said, Ice is soon dissolv'd by the motion of the Particles of Fire. For these getting into the Pores of the Ice, do mightily shake the fine, flexible Particles of Ice, and in a little time restore to them their former motion. But if this Water be taken and set in the cold Air, the fiery Particles quickly vanish and the Water becomes cold as before, or freezes again, if the coldness of the Air be intense enough. And here we may observe by the way, First, That Heat is nothing but the various and vehement Motion of the Particles of the heated Body; and that Cold is nothing but their ceasing to move. Secondly, That Hot and Cold, are for the most part relative Terms; that being call'd Hot whose Parts are mov'd more vehemently than the Particles of that part of our selves wherewith we touch it; and that Cold, whose Parts are more quiet than the Parts of our Bodies. He that has a hot Hand, calls that Water cold, which another would call warm, whose Hand is cool.

6. IV. Water easily evaporates by the heat of the Fire or the Air, because its Parts are quickly separated and get into motion; so that the Airy Particles easily carry those of the Water about with them. Of these watry Vapours we shall say more when we come to speak of Meteors.

7. V. It has been shewn by various \* Experiments, <sup>\* *Cap. Hist. Phil. Trans. A. 1681.*</sup> That the Gravity of the Air in the Place where we live, is to that of the Water as 1 to 840, or something more; so that Water is above Eight hundred times heavier than Air. For which reason we see that a Bladder, or any other thing fill'd with Air, can hardly be sunk under Water. And indeed, to make Air sink, there must be a weight added to it, which shall exceed the weight of the Water, as much as that of the Water exceeds that of the Air, and something more. Hence it is, that Water easily supports Wood, and vast Ships freight with the heaviest Cargo; for the weight alone will never sink them, unless the Goods and Vessel together should make a weight exceeding that of the Water. It is likewise worth observing, that Salt-water, as it is heavier than Fresh, so it bears greater Weights. But we shall say something further of the Gravity of Water compar'd with Air, when we come to speak of the Air itself.

8. Those Things that are heavier than Water, as Metals, Stones, &c. when thrown into it, go down straight to the bottom, and so much the quicker, as their weight is greater. Other Bodies of the same weight with the Water, neither float on the Surface, nor sink quite down, but remain suspended between the Top and the Bottom, as we see the Carcases of Animals do.

9. VI. Water is insipid, because its flexible Parts slip gently o'er the Tongue, and are not sharp enough to prick the Nerves and affect the Taste. But here we must be understood of meer Water, void of all kind of Salt; such in the first place, is Water distill'd; and next, that of Rain. For the most wholsom Fountain-water commonly derives a saltness from the Earth. We don't speak here of Medicinal Fountains, whose Taste is more acute, but of such Water as is usually drank.

10. The purer any Water is, the less Smell it has; for the reason why the Particles don't prick the Tongue, is likewise the reason why they don't affect the Smell; their flexibility and smoothness is such, that they cannot pierce the Olfactory Nerves. Fountain-water



water has indeed some smell, but then this is a sign that such Water is not pure.

11. VII. However, Water is apt to putrify, that is, it grows thick and stinking through heat and rest; as we find it does in Ponds and Marshes, and in close Vessels. It must be remember'd that what we said before of Water, is meant of such as is pure; for so we affirm that unmix'd Water cannot putrify: Which we prove, 1. By the Experiment of distill'd Water, which is kept very long without putrefaction. 2. By Rain-water, which being caught in clean Vessels, and presently stop'd up close, and bury'd Under-ground, is kept many Years in Countries where they want Fountains. This shews that the cause of Putrefaction is not in the Water itself, but in other things which are mingled with it; because pure Water, such as is distill'd, or comes out of the Clouds, keeps sweet for a vast while. But care must be taken that the Vessels in which such Water is kept, be stop'd so well that not the least Fly may get into them; and that they be made of such Stuff as will not corrupt, such as Glass or Clay.

12. Now for Standing water in Ponds or Marshes, it is corrupted two ways: 1. By the nature of the Soil, which often abounds with noisom Sulphur, whereby the Water is impregnated and comes to smell in warm Weather; as it does at *Amsterdam*, not only in the Ditches, but wherever the Ground is open'd for the Foundations of Houses. This Putrefaction is, owing to the Soil, and not to the Water. 2. By the nasty things which are thrown into it, or Bodies of Insects which dye in it; as also by the Eggs of Flies which are drop'd about wherever they go, and breed Worms.

13. Water is corrupted in wooden Vessels, especially at Sea, by the sulphureous parts of the Wood; and by uncleanly Things, as Flies-eggs, &c.

14. VIII. Water penetrates the Pores of certain Bodies, which are wide enough to receive its Particles. Thus it enters the Pores of Sugar and Salts, so as to separate and quite dissolve its Particles. But it cannot get into the Pores of Stones, or but a very little way; so that it only wets their Surface, without diluting them. It hangs on their outsides because they are rough, and because the Extremities of their Pores are open a little way. But such Bodies when wet, are soon dry'd in the Air, because the motion of the airy Particles carries off the soft and smooth Particles of the Water. Here it is observable, that if Bodies rub'd over with Oyl or Fat, be dip'd in the Water, they get very little wet; because the roughness of their Surface whereon the Water should hang, is smooth'd and made even by the Fat, and the Mouths of the Pores are clos'd up, so that there is nothing left for the watry Particles to hold by, and therefore they must needs slide off.

15. It may be demanded, How the Drops of falling Water come to be round, as in Rain, and other Cases, &c. Some answer, This don't happen by any Disposition peculiar to Water, but because the Drops are equally press'd by the Air on every side, and thereby forc'd into a round Figure, the resistance of the Particles as well as the pressure of the Air, being equal every way. This we find in all other Liquors which are let fall by Drops.

16. But others, who will not allow the Particles of Water to be oblong and flexible, according to *Cartesius*, but round and smooth, and mix'd with a kind of viscid Matter, affirm, That that viscid Matter which contains many round Particles, falling along with the Drops of Rain, makes them round too. For the same reason they will have it, 1. That the Drops of Water hang on the Leaves of Trees, and Sides of Vessels. 2. That Water may be condens'd, because the viscid Particles are flexible, and may be contracted into less room; which they prove by an Experiment made

at *Florence*, in the *Academy of Experiments* there. A hollow Globe of Silver was fill'd with Water thro' a little Hole made in it for that purpose; which Hole was afterwards stop'd close with Silver melted into it. This done, they fell to beating the Globe with a Hammer, which reduc'd it by degrees to a Figure less spherical; By this they knew that the Water was condens'd, because a spherical Figure is the most capacious of all others. But proceeding to hammer the Globe, they observ'd after a while little Drops of Water issuing like Sweat thro' the Pores of the Silver; and at last, upon opening the Globe, the Water burst out with great force.

17. 3. They assert, that round Drops of Water have hung on the sides of Vessels, after the Air has been all pump'd out of them; which is a sign that the roundness of the Drops is not owing to the force of the Air. 4. If a Quil, or slender Glass-pipe be dip'd perpendicularly into the Water several times, the Water shall rise higher in it the second time, than it did the first; just as a Staff put into viscid Matter, brings not up so much of it at the first time, as it will the second. 5. From the same Cause they think it is, that when such a Quil or narrow Pipe is held up in the Air, the pressure of the Air don't force the Water out of it; because the viscid Matter of the Water spreads itself like a Net over the Hole of the Pipe, and so hinders the round Drops from falling.

18. We will not take upon us to determine whether of these Opinions has the advantage, because this would require a great many accurate Experiments, which we have not leisure nor conveniencies to make. We shall only remark upon the latter, That it does not furnish us with a Reason, why Water will not hang upon a greasy Staff; for greasy viscid things stick one to another easily enough. However, this Hypothesis seems to explain the suspension of watry Drops better than the former.

19. Having now finish'd our short Dissertation upon Water, we are next to say something about Fountains. Fountains are commonly divided into such as dry up in Summer, and such as flow always. Most are of Opinion, that the former are produc'd by Rain-water; but that the latter are continually supply'd some other way; as we shall see hereafter. But for the present we shall confine our Discourse to the perpetual Springs, which may be defin'd to be, *Collections of Waters running down from the higher to the lower Parts of the Earth*. Out of a great number of such Fountains, Rivers are gather'd, which carry the Waters into the Sea.

20. Before we proceed to enquire into the Original of Fountains, we may observe, That by all Experiments in Hydrostaticks, it appears, that the Surface of Water contain'd in any Vessel always lies even, so that 'tis impossible for any one part of the Surface to be higher than another, except it be made so by some external force. The reason of which is the equal pressure of the incumbent Air on every part of the Water; against which all the watry Particles bear up with equal strength; whence it follows that the Surface is level and even throughout. And it is a further consequence of this, that Pipes cannot convey the Water of a Fountain to a place that is higher than the Fountain itself; because then it would be rais'd above the Line of its Level; which cannot be, for the Reason aforesaid.

21. Now since there are many perpetual Springs which never fail in Summer, some Learned Men have thought their Waters were deriv'd from the never-failing Treasures of the Sea. They say, there are Subterraneous Tubes, thro' which the Sea-water is convey'd to the Fountains; in which Doctrine there are two Difficulties, which they think easy to be solv'd. 1. How is it possible for the Sea-water to be carry'd



up to the Tops of the highest Mountains? 2. How comes it to pass that Fountain-water is not salt?

22. I. Taking it for granted, that there are Tubes in the Earth, thro' which the Water by the help of its weight and easiness to flow, may be carry'd a great way from the Sea, they conceive the Water shall march thro' the Coasts of Subterraneous Fires, such as we spoke of Chap. III. Whereby 'tis rarify'd and turn'd into Vapours; which being violently agitated, and steaming thro' the finest Passages of the Earth, come at last to its Surface, and so to the tops of the Mountains, if there be Tubes to convey them thither, and sometimes fly up into the Air; of which we shall say more when we come to speak of Meteors. And when these Vapours settle about the colder parts of the Earth's Surface, they condense into Water again, and drop from the Brows of Mountains and Hills into the Caverns below, and so run along the Crannies, till they find a place to break out at, and form themselves into Springs.

23. II. They say that Fountains, tho' deriv'd thus from the Sea, yet cannot be salt, both because the saline Particles mixt with the Sea-water, being long and rigid, are strain'd off in the narrow passages of the Earth; and also because those Particles never rise in Vapours, as we formerly observ'd. There are indeed some salt Springs, but their Saltness is not from the Sea, but from salt Mines thro' which they pass. For the Vein of a Fountain in such a passage must needs dilute and carry along with it some of the salt Particles. Thus we find in many Places, Waters impregnated with other Minerals; because they run thro' such Places where those Minerals grow.

24. But there are others, who cannot digest this Hypothesis, and that for several Reasons, two of which we will mention. First, It can hardly be imagin'd how such a vast quantity of Water should run thro' Subterraneous passages to Places so very remote from the Sea, so as to produce Springs in those Places, and in the highest Mountains too, sufficient to furnish the greatest Rivers continually, such as the *Rhine*, the *Rhone*, the *Danube*, &c. And whereas Subterraneous Fires make great and frequent alterations in the Bowels of the Earth, those passages would be often choak'd up, and many of the never-failing Springs must become dry. Secondly, If the Hypothesis were true, those Places that are nearest the Sea, whether Mountainous or Champain, would be most water'd with Fountains; and those that are farthest off would be most without them, because most of the Water would be intercepted, before it arriv'd so far. But Experience teaches us the contrary, viz. That on the Sea-coasts, especially where they are low, there is scarce a Spring to be found; while the greatest Rivers come from the remotest Parts.

25. Others therefore chuse rather to assign Rain for the Origin of Fountains; but their Opinion is liable to this Objection, That if Rain alone is the Cause of Fountains, 'tis hard to conceive how any of them should flow perpetually; since there happens sometimes very great Droughts, whereby many are indeed dry'd up, but yet many continue still to flow, lessen'd perhaps in their Streams, but never quite exhausted.

26. Upon a due Consideration of all these Things, it has seem'd necessary to many Learned Men to account for the Origin of Springs another way. It is well known by Experience that the heat of the Sun exhales a prodigious quantity of Vapours out of all sorts of Water, fresh or salt, as we shall see further when we come to speak of the Sea. Let it suffice at present to have hinted a thing well known to all. Of these Vapours, besides those that turn to Rain, many descend in Dew every Day. And in places remote from the Equator abundance of Snow falls every Winter, which continues upon many high Mountains till the Heat of Summer, and then for the most part

dissolves. These Considerations taken together will make out the Origin of Fountains without our having recourse to those Subterraneous Tubes before spoken of.

27. \* Since then a prodigious quantity of Vapours is rais'd out of the Ocean by the Sun's heat, especially between the Tropicks, and dispers'd abroad by the Winds, they must needs light upon the high Mountains in all the Countries about which they are driven; Such as the *Pyrenean*, the *Alps*, the *Apennine*, the *Carpathian* in Europe: *Taurus*, *Caucasus*, *Imaus*, and several others in Asia; *Atlas* and the *Montes Luna*, with other unknown Ridges in Africa, whence come the *Nile*, the *Niger*, and the *Zaire*; and in America, the *Andes* and the *Apalatean* Mountains; each of which far surpass the usual height to which the aqueous Vapours of themselves ascend, and on the tops of which the Air is so cold and rarefy'd, as to retain but a small part of those Vapours that shall be brought thither by Winds. Those Vapours therefore that are rais'd copiously in the Sea, and by the Wind are carry'd over the low Land to those Ridges of Mountains, are there compell'd by the Stream of the Air to mount up with it to the Tops of the Mountains, where the Water presently precipitates, gleeting down by the Crannies of the Stone; and part of the Vapour entering into the Caverns of the Hills, the Water thereof gathers as in an Alembick into the basons of the Stone it finds; which being once fill'd, all the overplus of Water that comes thither runs over by the lowest place, and breaking out by the sides of the Hills, forms single Springs. Many of these running down by the Valleys between the Ridges of the Hills, and coming to unite, form little Rivulets or Brooks.

28. Many of these again meeting in one common Valley, and gaining the plain Ground, being grown less rapid, become a River: And many of these being united in one common Channel, make such Streams as the *Rhine*, the *Rhone*, the *Danube*, &c. This is the Origin of the *Lago di Marie* in Italy, which being lock'd up in the Mountains, and having no visible outlet, yet does not swell immensely, but either soaks out by subterraneous passages, such as the \* *Os Pitonium* is prov'd to be, or else goes off in Vapours. And thus the *Caspian-Sea*, much larger than this or any other such Lakes; is form'd without growing bigger or less, as we shall see hereafter.

29. No body will wonder at such plentiful Collections of Vapours in the Mountains, except those who have never been there to observe them. All who have spent any time in such Places, have felt the Cold much sharper than in the low Grounds: So sharp even in the midst of Summer are the Nights in those high Ridges, that they are hardly to be endur'd without a Fire. And while the Sun shines clear in the Plains, 'tis common to see the Hills cover'd with Clouds; which the Country People take for a sign of approaching Rain. And hence it is that there is Snow lies at Midsummer in the cavities between the Mountain-tops, as all Highlanders know very well.

30. Nor does this Observation hold only in our Part of the World on this side the Tropick. † For Mr. *Halley* assures us, That during his abode at *St. Helena*, in the Night-time, on the tops of the Hills about 800 Yards above the Sea, there was so strange a Condensation; or rather Precipitation of the Vapours, that it was a great impediment to his Celestial Observations; for in the clear Sky the Dew would fall so fast, as to cover each half quarter of an Hour, his Glasses with little drops, so that he was necessitated to wipe them often; and his Paper on which he wrote his Observations would immediately be so wet with Dew, that it would not bear Ink. By which it may be suppos'd how fast the Water gathers in those mighty high Ridges.



31. If with these Vapours we take in the Rains and melted Snows, there is no doubt, but they will prove sufficient to furnish all the Rivers and perpetual Springs. It is apparent enough, that the greatest Rivers are swell'd by the Rains. Nay, there are many Countries, where the Rivers run highest in the hottest Part of Summer, when there falls not the least Rain; such as the Nile in *Ægypt*, and the Niger in *Æthiopia*, which overflow at a Time of Year, when the Season in those Parts is perfectly dry: The Reason is, because in *Abyssinia* from whence these Rivers come, there are prodigious Rains about that Time for several Weeks together. So likewise the Snows which melt in Summer, and run down from the Tops of the Mountains, do very much raise the neighbouring Rivers at the same Time; which makes the Rhone and the Lake of Geneva bigger in Summer, than in Winter.

32. So that if we take the condensed Vapours, Rains and Snows all together, we shall have Liquor enough and to spare for all the Springs; and there will be no need of subterraneous Pipes for deriving Water from the Sea to the remotest Parts of the Earth.

## C H A P. VIII.

## Of the S E A.

1. **A**fter the Consideration of Fountains and Rivers, it is proper in the next Place to view the common Receptacle of them all, the Sea. Which is that vast quantity of Salt-water extending from North to South, and from West to East, and surrounding the dry Land on every side, into which all Streams discharge themselves, and out of which mighty Gulfs and Bays are form'd, the greatest of which is the Mediterranean. The whole is in one Word call'd the Ocean, but variously distinguished and named from the several Countreys, by whose Coasts it runs. In it there are these Three Properties chiefly consider'd by Naturalists; First, Its inseparable Saltness; Secondly, Its constant equality of Bulk, notwithstanding the incessant flowing of all Rivers into it; Thirdly, The Tide, or flowing and ebbing of its Waters twice every Day. All which Properties we shall proceed to examine, and try to find out the Causes of them.

2. I. Our first Enquiry is, How the Sea comes to be Salt; and in the next Place, why it retains this Property always in the same Degree; notwithstanding the huge heaps of Salt which are daily got out of it, and the innumerable Streams of fresh Water continually running into it. Now the saltness of the Sea-water seems to proceed from the same Cause, as that of several Fountains of like taste, by the boiling of whose Waters Salt is produced, as was shew'd before. For since the bottom of the Sea is a Tract of such vast Extent, 'tis reasonable to think, that there are very large Mines of Salt in many Places of it: Which being diluted, spreads its Particles throughout the Sea. And there is something even in the River-water which helps to increase this Saltness. For the Rivers carry down with them an incredible multitude of saline Particles, which they wash off their Banks as they run along. These Particles are not indeed so considerable, as to Salt their particular Streams; but when they all meet together and settle in one Bottom, they may well be allow'd to change the taste of the Water sufficiently. We took notice before, that Salts don't evaporate; so that all the Salts carried into the Sea, remain there, while abundance of fresh Water is always exhal'd by the Sun. Therefore these saline Particles may increase the Saltness of the Ocean. Let us here consider the Earth as a huge Sponge (tho' more compact) im-

pregnated with various Salts; and the Rains, Dews and Mists as Water falling upon this Sponge, from which it should pass into a Vessel standing under it. Now in a very transient Passage indeed, the Water would not carry Salt enough along with it to make the whole Vessel like Brine, but yet every drop would contribute something to the saltness of the whole. Let us suppose a Fire to be made under the said Vessel; this will make the fresh Water evaporate, and the Remainder still more Salt. But if again those Vapours be received in an Alembick, and let run upon the Sponge, and so into the Vessel, they will qualify the saltness of the Water, provided they contain a greater quantity of fresh Water, than of Salt Particles. All this is easily applied to the Matter in hand.

3. Hence we may likewise be satisfied, why the saltness of the Sea is neither augmented nor diminished, at least not in a sensible manner. It is not augmented by the influx of Salt Particles, 1. Because a World of saline Particles are continually thrown off by the Sea upon its Shores, where they petrifie, and come no more into the Water. 2. Because People make Salt upon the Sea-coasts, where-ever they have heat enough, for common uses. 3. Water can be impregnated with Salt only to a certain Degree, at which it stands and rejects the overplus. In the next Place, the saltness of the Sea is not diminished, because as much is imported or diluted from it's own Mines, as is got out of it. 'Tis possible that in those Mines, from whence certain Parts are daily wash'd off, and diffused through the Sea, other Parts may grow to them again; while the finest Particles in the oblong and pointed Pores of the Earth, grow into a Lump. But this Case would be well worth their Disquisition, who make it their Business to pry into the Bowels of the Earth.

4. II. To help us in finding out the Reason, why the Water of the Sea is not augmented, let us see whether there be not a way for its daily Diminution, as well as increase. This we have already hinted at in our Discourse about the Origin of Fountains, but now we shall give it a more accurate Consideration. It is plain enough, that there is a vast quantity of Vapours in the Air, from the abundance of Snow and Rain, which (as we shall shew more particularly hereafter) are form'd of condensed Vapours. But how to estimate the quantity of the Evaporations of Water by some certain Rule, is the material Point; which the Learned Mr. Halley has happily attempted in the following Manner.

5. He took a Pan of Water about Four Inches deep, and 7 Inches Diameter, salted to the same Degree as is the common Sea-water, by the Solution of about a 40th Part of Salt, in which he placed a Thermometer, and by means of a Pan of Coals, he brought the Water to the same Degree of Heat, which is observed to be that of our Air in the hottest Summer, the Thermometer nicely shewing it. This done, he affixed the Pan of Water with the Thermometer in it, to one end of the Beam of a Pair of Scales, and exactly counterpoised it with weights in the other Scale; and by the Application or removal of the Pan of Coals, he found it very easie to maintain the Water in the same Degree of Heat precisely. Doing this he found the weight of the Water sensibly to decrease; and at the end of two Hours, he observed that there wanted half an Ounce Troy all but seven Grains, or 233 Grains of Water, which in that Time had gone off in Vapour; tho' one could hardly perceive it smoke, and the Water were not sensibly warm. This Quantity in so short a Time, seem'd very considerable, being little less than 6 Ounces in 24 Hours, from so small a Surface as a Circle of 8 Inches Diameter.

6. To reduce this Experiment to an exact Calculus, and determine the thickness of the skin of Water, that had so evaporated, he assumes the Experiment alledged by

See Phil.  
osophi-  
cal Trans-  
actions  
for Sept.  
and Oct.  
1698.



by Dr. *Edward Bernard* to have been made in the Oxford Society, viz. That the Cube-foot *English* of Water, weighs exactly 76 Pounds *Troy*; this divided by 128, the Number of Inches in a Foot, will give 253½ Grains, or ½ Ounce 13½ Grains for the weight of a Cube-inch of Water: Wherefore the weight of 233 Grains is ⅓, or 35 Parts of 33 of a Cube-inch of Water. Now the Area of the Circle whose Diameter is 7.2 Inches, is 49 Square Inches; by which dividing the Quantity of Water evaporated, viz. ⅓ of an Inch, the Quota ⅓ or ⅓ shows, that the thickness of the Water evaporated was the 53d Part of an Inch; but we will suppose it only the 60th Part, for the facility of Calculation.

7. If therefore Water as warm as the Air in Summer, exhales the thickness of a 60th part of an Inch in two Hours from its whole Surface, in 12 Hours it will exhale the ⅓ of an Inch; which Quantity will be found abundantly sufficient to serve for all the Rains, Springs and Dews; and account for the *Caspian* Sea being always at a stand, neither wasting nor overflowing; as likewise for the Current said to set always in at the Straights of *Gibraltar*, tho' those Mediterranean Seas receive so many, and so considerable Rivers.

8. To estimate the Quantity of Water arising in Vapours out of the Sea, he thinks he ought to consider it only for the Time the Sun is up, for that the Dews return in the Night, as much if not more Vapours than are then emitted; and in Summer the Days being longer than 12 Hours, this Excess is balanced by the weaker Action of the Sun, especially when rising before the Water be warmed: So that if we allow ⅓ of an Inch of the Surface of the Sea to be raised *per diem* in Vapours, it may not be an improbable Conjecture.

9. Upon this Supposition, every 10 Square Inches of the Surface of the Water, yields in Vapour *per diem* a Cube-inch of Water; and each Square Foot half a Wine-pint; every space of 4 Foot Square, a Gallon; a Mile Square, 6914 Tons; a Square Degree suppose of 69 *English* Miles, will evaporate 33 Millions of Tons.

10. And if the Mediterranean be estimated at 40 Degrees long and 4 broad, allowances being made for the Places where it is broader by those where it is narrower, (and he says he is sure, he guesses at the least) there will be 160 Square Degrees of Sea; and consequently the whole Mediterranean must lose in Vapour in a Summers Day, at least 5280 Millions of Tons. And this Quantity of Vapour, tho' very great, is as little as can be concluded from the Experiment produced. And yet there remains another Cause, which cannot be reduced to Rule, viz. the Winds, whereby the Surface of the Water is licked up sometimes faster than it exhales by the heat of the Sun; as is well known to those that have considered those drying Winds which blow sometimes.

11. To estimate the Quantity of Water the Mediterranean Sea receives from the Rivers that fall into it, is a very hard Task, unless one had the opportunity to measure their Channels and Velocity; and therefore we can only do it by allowing more than enough, that is, by assuming these Rivers greater than in all probability they be, and then comparing the Quantity of Water voided by the *Thames*, with that of those Rivers whose Waters we desire to compute.

12. The Mediterranean receives these considerable Rivers, the *Iberus*, the *Rhône*, the *Tiber*, the *Po*, the *Danube*, the *Neisser*, the *Borysthenes*, the *Tanais*, and the *Nile*; all the rest being of no great Note, and their Quantity of Water inconsiderable. These Nine Rivers he supposes, each of them, to bring down Ten Times as much Water as the River *Thames*; not that any of them is so great in reality, but to comprehend with them all the small Rivulets that fall into the

Sea, which otherwise he knows not how to allow for.

13. To calculate the Water of the *Thames*, he assumes that at *Kingslon* Bridge where the Flood never reaches, and the Water always runs down, the Breadth of the Chancel is 100 Yards, and its depth 3, it being reduced to an Equality (in both which Suppositions, he is sure he takes with the most) hence the Profile of the Water in this Place is 300 Square Yards: This multiplied by 18 Miles (which he allows the Water to run in 24 Hours, at 2 Miles an Hour) or 84480 Yards, gives 25344000 Cubick-yards of Water to be evacuated every Day; that is, 20300000 Tons *per diem*; and he doubts not, but in the Excess of his Measures of the Chancel of the River, he has made more than sufficient allowance for the Waters of the *Brent*, the *Wandel*, the *Lea*, and the *Darwent*, which are all worth notice, that fall into the *Thames* below *Kingslon*.

14. Now if each of the aforesaid Nine Rivers yield Ten Times as much Water as the *Thames* doth, 'twill follow that each of them yields but 203 Millions of Tons *per diem*, and the whole Nine but 1827 Millions of Tons in a Day; which is but little more than ⅓ of what is proved to be raised in Vapour out of the Mediterranean in 12 Hours Time. Thus has this Learned Man made it appear, that the bulk of the Sea cannot be augmented by the Rivers that run into it.

15. III. We are now in the last Place, to enquire into the reason of the Tide, and shall begin with explaining all the *Phænomena*. Now the Tide is well known to mean the flowing and ebbing of the Sea; concerning which we may observe, 1. That the Waters in these Parts are found at certain Times to run from South to North for Six Hours together; this we call the *Flux* or Flowing; because the Sea, advances upon the Shores, runs up into the Mouths of Rivers, and forces their Streams to go backward. 2. At the end of six Hours, the Water seems to continue in the same height for about a quarter of an Hour; and then it runs back again for 6 Hours more, from North to South, the Waters sink, and the Rivers recover their usual Courses: This we call the *Reflux* or Ebb. And here likewise the Water is at a stand for about a quarter of an Hour, and then it begins to flow again. 3. From hence 'tis concluded, that the Sea rises twice and falls twice in Twenty-four Hours; but yet the *Flux* and *Reflux* don't always begin at the same Hour; for there is about 50 Minutes difference every time; so that if the Tide begin to Day at Twelve a Clock, it will begin to Morrow at Ten Minutes before One. 4. This Tide is observable upon all the Sea-coasts of *Europe*; but the more Northern any Shore is, the greater and later is the Tide. On the contrary, in those Parts between the Tropicks there is hardly any Tide perceiv'd. 5. The *Mediterranean*, *Baltick*, and *Caspian* Seas have no Tide. There are indeed some exceptions, as in the Gulf of *Venice*, and several other Places, where the Water has different motions. But of this we shall say no more at present.

16. Besides these *Phænomena*, it is observable, that there is a great Correspondence between the Tide and the Moon's motion. For 1. As the Tide comes in later by Fifty Minutes every Day; so the Moon's Southing is Fifty Minutes later every Day as she grows older. 2. As often as the Moon approaches to the Meridian, so often the Sea rises; and is down again whenever the Moon is Horizontal; 3. So that from one full Moon to another, the Tides vary thro' all the Twenty-four Hours. Thus, if at this full Moon the Tide comes in at Twelve a Clock, it will set in at the same Hour next full Moon, and not before. 4. The Tides at New and Full-Moon, call'd Spring Tides, are the greatest; and those during the Quarters, call'd Neap-Tides, are the least. 5. 'Tis also observ'd, that *Cæteris paribus*, the Equinoctial Spring-Tides in March and September, or near them, are the



the highest, and the Neap-Tides the lowest of all others at any time of the Year besides.

17. These Things being known of old, tho' not so perfectly as at present, the ancient Philosophers could not chuse but think that the Moon was the cause of the Tide. But if they were ask'd, How this might be accounted for? They answer'd, It was by an *occult Quality*, or influence of the Moon, the Nature of which they did not at all explain. Therefore the Moderns have attempted a different Account of the Tide; and they allow the Moon to be the Cause of it, but as an Agent Mechanically operating upon the Earth.

18. I. We have formerly observ'd, That Bodies which move round their Center, do endeavour to recede from that Center, and this *Comatus* causes them to press upon the Bodies that are under them. And we have taken notice, that the Moon has such a motion round the Earth; whence it follows, that the Moon presses upon the Bodies that are under it, *viz.* the neighbouring Air, or Matter of like Nature. Now this pressure extends to the Center of the Earth, and by consequence must needs affect all the intermediate parts.

19. II. This being so; it is plain that while the Moon is in the Meridian of any Place, the weight of the incumbent Air is greatest upon the Water that lies just under the Moon. Now the Parts over which the Moon hangs perpendicularly, are those between the Tropicks about the Ecliptick, in which Places there are very large Seas running round the Earth from East to West, as upon a view of the Globe, it will readily appear. Therefore when the Moon is in that Tract, the Water must needs be press'd there more than any where else, and so be thrown out upon the Shores that lie North and South. And because the Moon is twice a Day in the Meridian, *viz.* above and below the Horizon; the Water does as often run out upon the Shores, and retire back again. This in short seems to be the reason of the Tide, which may be apply'd to the several *Phænomena* in the following manner.

20. III. 1. The Sea in our Parts ought to run Northward at the time of its Flux, because the Moon is always South of us, who live on the North-side of the Tropick of Cancer. And this Flux ought to last for Six Hours, wherein the Moon is either gaining or leaving the Meridian; for then it presses hardest upon the Water between us and the South. 2. But when the Moon is past on further, and the surface of the Water is come to an *Equilibrium*, finding no more resistance from the Moon, it is carry'd back again by its own weight into its common receptacle. But there is a little stand between the *Flux* and *Reflux*, because after the Water has been carry'd one way, that motion does for a time resist its gravity; besides that the neighbouring Waves which are rais'd at the same time, more toward the West, may stop the *Reflux* a while. 3. The effects of the said pressure must be perceiv'd Fifty Minutes later every time than other, because the Moon comes so much later to the Meridian. 4. The Tide is higher upon the most Northern Coasts,

because the whole Bulk of the Sea which flows towards the Poles, stops there; and later, because the motion of the Waters being successive, it must needs be perceiv'd last in those Places which are furthest off from where it began. On the contrary, the Tide is not very sensible within the Tropicks, because the Water easily runs down from thence towards the Poles; not gathering there, but moving on farther. 5. The *Baltick*, *Mediterranean*, and *Caspian*-Seas, must have no Tide; for they don't only lie from under the Course of the Moon, being without the Tropick; but the passages out of the Main-Ocean into the two former, which are only Bays of it, are so strait, that they cannot take in Water enough at the times of the general Tide, to be sensibly rais'd or mov'd thereby.

21. From hence it is plain enough how the Tide comes to keep time with the Moon's motion, and we need not review what has been said; but proceed to our two remaining Points. I. The Tide is highest at New and Full-Moons, because at those times the Moon presses hardest upon the Places under it; the reason is because 'tis then nearest the Earth, or in the extrem parts of the lesser Axis of that Ellipsis which it describes about the Earth. It is an Observation confirm'd by Experience, That heavy Bodies incumbent on the Center, the nearer they are to the Center, the more they *gravitate*: And therefore the Moon in her *Perigeum* gravitates more towards the Earth, than in her *Apozeum*. But when she is in her Quarters about the extrem Parts of the greater Axis of her Ellipsis, then she gravitates less, because farther from the Center of the Earth.

22. II. The Equinoctial Spring-Tides are the greatest of any, because the Moon is then vertical over the middle of the Ocean, and for that reason presses out a greater quantity of Water on both sides; which may be thus exemplify'd. If you put a Globe into a Vessel full of Water, so as to sink the Globe just in the middle of the surface of the Water, it will raise the Water more on all sides, and force a greater quantity out, than if it had been let fall nearer any side of the Vessel; the reason is, because it presses the bulk of Water more universally further off, than it can do nearer the sides of the Vessel. So likewise the Moon, when it presses upon that part of the Ocean under the Equator, forces up the Water on both sides in greater abundance than it can do in places nearer the Poles. And we may add further, That in that place the Sea is furthest from the Center of the Earth; whereas toward the Poles it grows lower and nearer the Center; and therefore a pressure under the Equator drives it more copiously towards the Poles, than when 'tis press'd on either side the Line.

23. There are some \* very Learned Men, who are of Opinion, That the influence of the Sun, and motion of the Earth ought to be consider'd together with the Moon as concomitant Causes of the Tide: But because these Speculations have something too abstruse and difficult in them, we thought it best to stick to an easie and plainer Hypothesis in this Compendium.

\* See Sir Isaac Newton's Princip. Phys. Math. Lib. III. Prop. XXIV. & XXXVII. And Dr. Wallis in the Philosophical Transactions, Anno 1666. Numb. 16.



## BOOK II.

## Of the AIR and METEORS.

## CHAP. I.

## Of the AIR.

1. **A**IR is that Diaphanous Body wherein the Earth is inclos'd and wrap'd up, and which is so necessary for Life, that we cannot breath without it. The Peripateticks, following Empedocles in this, reckon'd it one of the Elements; and maintain, That there is no Body, which has not Air for a part of its Composition. This is a Controversy we have no design to meddle with; we shall for the present only enquire into the undoubted Properties of Air, and the Causes of them.

2. As for the Properties of Air, they are found to be these: 1. It is Liquid, and cannot be congeal'd like Water. 2. It is much lighter than Water; but yet is not without its gravity. 3. It is Diaphanous. i. e. it transmits the Light. 4. It can easily be condens'd and rarify'd. 5. It has an Elastick Force. 6. 'Tis necessary for Flame and Respiration.

3. These are the chief Properties of Air; Upon each of which we will say something more particular. I. As for its being Liquid, we need not give a Reason for that here, having done it already in our Discourse about Water. But it is much more liquid than Water, and cannot be congeal'd; 1. Because it seems to have much larger Pores, full of finer Matter of a very quick motion, whereby the Particles of Air are continually driven about; as appears from this, That Air pent up in a Vessel is easily condens'd, whereas no body yet has been able to condense Water by any Invention. 2. The Particles of Air are very fine and branched, so that they leave interstices between one another, and can never be form'd into a compact Body.

4. II. When we were speaking of Water, we said, That it was 840 times heavier than Air; whence it follows, that a certain bulk of Air contains in it 840 times less homogeneous Matter, than an equal bulk of Water; and this also is the reason that Air may easily be condens'd, but not Water.

5. If it be enquir'd, What the weight of the Air is that presses upon upon us? This the Philosophers have endeavour'd to demonstrate by various Experiments, two of which we will here set down. I. It is certain, that Pumps 32 Feet long will raise Water so high, and that no Tubes can carry it higher; whence they conclude, That a Cylinder of Air as broad as the Cylinder of Water contain'd in such a Tube, tho' it be taken from the bottom to the top of all the Air, is not heavier than the Cylinder of Water 32 Feet high, because it can bear Water no higher, tho' the Sucker be rais'd and ply'd never so much. For they don't question but the Water in the Pump is rais'd by the force of the incumbent Air, there being no other Cause to be assign'd for it. For as for the *fæta vacui* of the Ancients, 'tis now universally exploded, as it deserves to be.

6. II. The other Experiment is made with Mercury in a Glass-pipe, thus: Take a Pipe 40 Inches long;

stop one end close, and fill it with Mercury; afterwards turn down the open end in a Vessel of Mercury, and hold the Pipe perpendicular; the Mercury will descend to the 30th Inch, or thereabouts (for there is some variety according to the Temperament of the Air) and there it will stand suspended. But if you unstop the upper-end of the Pipe for the Air to come in, all the Mercury falls down directly into the Vessel aforesaid. Whence they justly conclude, That the Mercury is kept up by the weight of the Air, and that the weight of the Cylinder of Air from the bottom to the top is equal to 30 Inches of Quicksilver.

7. From hence we may add something by way of Corollary concerning what we are to think of the height of the whole Air. It appears by another Experiment, that the weight of Mercury is to that of Water as 13; to 1, or thereabout; so that the weight of Mercury to that of Air (supposing Air to be only 800 times lighter than Water) must be as 10800 to 1, or very near; and a Cylinder of Air of 10800 Inches, or 900 Feet, will be equal to an Inch of Mercury. Therefore if the density of the Air were the same throughout, like that of Water, its height would not much exceed 5 Miles. But since the Air grows thinner as the weight of the Atmosphere decreases, and so takes up more room, the upper parts of the Air are much more rarify'd and diffus'd than those below. So that every Space which is equal to an Inch of Mercury, increases with the Atmosphere, and for this reason the Air must be much higher than 5 Miles; but how much is not to be determin'd, unless we knew in what proportion the Air is rarify'd according to its several degrees of distance from the Center of the Earth.

8. III. The Air is diaphanous, because having very wide Pores and separable Parts, it admits the Matter whereof Light consists, thro' right Lines. And hence it is, that not only the Sun and the Planets shine, or reflect their Light, upon us; but likewise the fix'd Stars are seen by us at an immense distance. But as deep Water don't transmit all the Rays which fall upon it, because the Series of Light is interrupted by the motion of the watry Particles; so, many of the Rays which fall upon this prodigious bulk of Air over us, must needs be broken off and intercepted before they reach us. Which perhaps is the Cause that where the Sky is very clear, it is not quite transparent, but appears of a blew and waterish Colour.

9. IV. Air is condens'd and rarify'd, because it consisting of branched Particles, those Particles are easily scatter'd by an extraordinary quick motion, which is call'd Rarefaction: Again, they are easily thrust into a less compais, while their Branches are driven together, and close one with another, and thereby crush out the liquid Matter which lay between them; and this is Condensation. There are innumerable Experiments to prove this; especially these Two: 1. \* Take a Vessel full of Air, and put a Tube open at both ends into the middle of it, keeping the end of the Tube within the Vessel so as not to touch the bottom of it; a large quantity of Water may be pour'd into the Vessel through that Tube, whereby the Air must needs



needs be comprast and forc'd into a less compass, if care be taken to keep the Tube so close that no Air can come out while the Water is pouring in. 2. There are a sort of Guns, into which such a quantity of Air may be forc'd, as shall shoot out a leaden Bullet with great violence.

10. V These two Experiments demonstrate the Air to have an Elastick force, that is, a Power to return to the same State, and reoccupy the same Space which it fill'd before, whenever the force which crush'd it into a narrower Compass is removed. And therefore the Water springs out of the Vessel we just now described with a strong impetus, as soon as the upper end of the Tube is opened; because the Air which was pent up in a narrower Compass, dilates it self again, when the restraining Power of solid Matter is removed. For the same Reason a wind-gun, fill'd with Air, discharges a Leaden Bullet, when 'tis open'd. And such a Gun, when the Air is quite evacuated, and the external Air suddenly let into it, shoots out a Bullet very briskly.

11. And here we might enter into a more curious Enquiry about the cause of Elastick Motions, or how it comes to pass that a Body forcibly pressed out of its posture, recovers it again of its own accord, when the force is removed. But let it suffice at present to say, that this Elasticity is apparent in many Bodies, but particularly in Air.

12. VI. We have shew'd before, Book I. Chap. III. §. 12. That without Air, Flame and Fire go out, and that Air seems to have a nitrous or sulphureous Matter in it, which serves to feed the Fire. And indeed it is impossible, but the Air which lies upon so many Plants, Animals, and Minerals, upon which the Sun's heat continually operates, and extracts a good Part of them, must needs carry away with it innumerable Particles of Sulphur and Volatil Salt wherewith Things abound, as Chymical Experiments demonstrate. So that we laid down nothing in the Place above quoted, but what is agreeable to the Nature of Things. We will now produce an Experiment to prove how easily such Particles fly up into the Air. \* Mr. Boyle extracted a Liquor out of humane Blood, whose colour was as red as Blood. It appear'd by the taste and smell, that many saline and sulphureous Particles of Blood were in it. This Liquor was put into a Glass-Vial, filling it about half full, and stood as still in it as any other Liquor, while it was stopp'd up; but as soon as it was open'd, and the external Air let in, presently a whitish Vapour, nothing of which was seen before, began to rise in great abundance; so that it not only fill'd the upper half of the Vial, but flew about in the Air like Smoke: And had not the Vial been stopp'd, it had quickly been emptied by that Evaporation. And so all Liquors of the same sort would soon flie out into the Air, if they were not kept in Vessels carefully stopp'd.

13. Wherefore no Body ought to wonder at our Opinion, that the Air is full of such Particles. Some Learned Men have thought this a good Reason enough, why Animals are so refresh'd with Respiration, that they can't live without it. But they have made very contrary Explications of this Matter. For some fancy that the nitrous Particles of the Air go into the Lungs, thro' whose Pores they pass into the Blood, to allay the heat of it, left by its perpetual Motion, and the access of sulphureous Particles it should be too much inflam'd. But others are of Opinion, that as the Air is emitted by Expiration, it carries out with it the sooty Particles of the Blood, contain'd in the

Lungs; and so the Blood is cool'd, not by the Admission of nitrous Particles, but by the Emission of sulphureous Fumes which are ejected with the Air. This latter Account is more agreeable to the Experiment produced above, and seems to us the more probable of the two, tho' we don't care to be too Dogmatical either way.

14. Now since we have had occasion to say something here about Respiration, for our better explaining the Nature of Air; tho' this belongs to another Part of Philosophy which treats of Animals; yet we will add here a little more, which we have to say of it. I. That Air is necessary for Respiration, is plain from many Experiments, especially from this following. Mr. Boyle has found out a way of drawing the Air out of a Glass-Vessel, so that little or none shall be left in it. Now if a live Creature be put into this Vessel, upon the drawing out of the Air it presently falls into Convulsions, gasps for Breath, and drops down Dead, unless the Air be let in, and that very quickly.

15. II. The Air which Animals breath, ought not to be too Thin, because it would not suffice to dilate the Lungs, and bear the plying of the Chest in contracting them again. Therefore they that live in a thin Air must breath twice as fast as in a thicker, because all the soot of the Lungs is not clear'd off by one faint Respiration. This is experienced by such as continue for some Time in the Tops of very high Mountains, where the Air is so much thinner as it is higher than in the low Grounds. For tho' they sit down a pretty while to rest themselves after they are got up, they find their Breath shorter than it was below. The Case is the same in Boyle's Engine; for if only some of the Air be pumped out, a live Creature fetches its breath harder and faster than it did before. But in a thick and foggy Air we breath more slowly; because the Vapours hinder the Air from passing to the furthest Recesses of the Lungs, and returning again so fast as it otherwise would do.

16. III. The Air which serves for Respiration must be pure and open. An Experiment has been made upon a Mouse in a Glass-Vessel hermetically Seal'd, so that no external Air could come in; that she has quickly begun to droop, and in less than three Hours has lain for Dead. But by breaking off the Neck of the Vessel, and blowing in Air with a pair of Bellows, she has by Degrees been brought to Life again; tho' had she been let alone a little longer, she had been past recovery. The like Experiment was tried upon a Bird in the same manner. Some think there are nitrous Particles in the Air, which cool the Blood, as we said before, and that when those Particles are spent, the Air becomes improper for this Purpose. But others say, that in the Experiment aforesaid, the Air is so fill'd with the Soot of the Lungs, that it can clear off no more, and so can cool them no longer, because it returns the same Fumes into them which it had carried out.

17. Whichever of these Opinions is true, the Thing it self is certain; and hence it is, that the Air of a close Room when there is much Company in it, grows hot and stifling, and is bad for Consumptive People. From the same Cause it is, that the Air of great Cities is not so wholesom even in clear Weather, as that of Countrey Towns and Villages; because the Countrey Air is perpetually ventilated and renew'd; whereas in great Cities the multitude of Houses hinders this, and by Consequence causes the Air to stagnate and grow corrupt.



## C H A P. II.

*Of METEORS in general, and Vapours arising from the Water, whence Fogs, Clouds, Dews, Rains, Snow and Hail are produced.*

1. **M**ETEORS is a Greek Word, used by Philosophers to signify *all those Things which move up in the Air, and continue suspended in it*, such as are mention'd in the Title of this Chapter. They are divided into two Ranks; for the Meteors aforesaid are form'd of aqueous Vapours; and there are some others wherein are found Exhalations derived from other Bodies, such as Thunder, Lightning, Thunderbolts, and other inflam'd Matters in the Air. This Division shall be follow'd in this Compendium, and therefore we begin with Meteors of the first sort.

2. Vapours are those watry Particles, which are sever'd from others by the Motion of the Air, and are carried about in it several ways, according as the Wind or warmth of the Air serves. We have already shew'd in the VIIIth Chapter of the preceding Book, how copiously they rise out of the Sea and other Waters, and that all Rivers and Fountains are fed by them. Now we will consider them as they hang in the Air.

3. I. We many Times observe in a hot Day, when there is no Wind stirring, such a company of Vapours rise out of moist Ground, as make thick Fogs, which are sometimes higher, and sometimes lower, as the multitude and motion of the Vapours happens to be. They are to be seen on the high Grounds as well as the low, but more especially about marshy Places. They are easily dissipated by the Wind, and particularly by a drying Wind. The Sun has the same Effect upon them; and we commonly see when there are thick Fogs about Sun-rising, they disappear a little while after 'tis up.

4. All this is easie. For 'tis plain, that Fogs consist of aqueous Particles rarefied, because they mightily bedew every Thing that lies open to them. These Particles being soundly moved, must needs fly up aloft in the Air; but if their Motion be something faint, they play about the Surface of the Earth. For this is agreeable to the Laws of Motion, that such Things as are about the Globe of the Earth, the more they are moved, the more they recede from the Earth's Center. Again, these Fogs rise out of all Places, Mountainous or Champain, and continue till they be dispell'd by Wind or Heat; but their Continuance is longest in the lowest Grounds, because those Places are fullest of Moisture, and are not so much exposed to the Winds. But when the Wind rises upon them, wherever they be, they are dissipated and driven about 'till we see no more of them. So likewise the heat of the Sun putting them into a brisker Motion, either dissipates them by Rarefaction, or raises them higher, and Forms them into Clouds.

5. Sometimes the Fogs stink, not because they come from stinking Water, but because the Vapours are mixt with sulphureous Exhalations which smell so. These Exhalations would perhaps fly up directly to the Clouds, if there were no Fogs to hold them, and so would not affect our smell; but after they are entangled and blended with the Fogg, they last as long as it does.

6. II. The Clouds are higher than the Fogs: They hang in the Air, and are carried about in it by the Winds. They are also of various Figures, sometimes so thin, that the Sun's rays pass through them; but often thick enough to intercept and obstruct them.

They appear too of several Colours, as White, Red and sometimes very Dark.

7. To begin with their Colours, they are varied according to the Situation of the Sun, and way of reflecting its Light with respect to us. This we shall enlarge upon hereafter; 'tis enough at present just to mention it. The Density of the Clouds proceeds from the closeness of the vaporious Particles one to another and their thinness from the distance of those Particles one from another; of which there are several Causes. When they are very thin, they leave so many interstices, that the Sun's Rays shoot through them in many Places, but are intercepted in others. As to their Figures, all their Variety arises from their Plenty of Vapours, and the influence of the Sun and Wind. For they cannot be variously condensed, rarefied, and carried about in the Air, but their Figure must needs be changed.

8. These Things are plain enough: But to Account for their hanging in the Air, is a Matter of some difficulty. All the watry Particles whereof they consist, are heavier than Air; and so they would fall to the Earth, if there were nothing to hinder. Now there seem to be two Things which keep them up; *First*, The Winds, which blow from all Parts under the Region of the Clouds, and bear about with them many lighter sorts of Bodies; especially if those Bodies contain but a small quantity of solid Matter under a broad Superficies. Thus we see how easily Boys Paper-kites are kept up by the Wind, when they are mounted pretty high. And so the Particles of Water very much rarefied, may easily be suspended at that height. *Secondly*, New Exhalations and Vapours are perpetually fuming out of the Earth, and by their moving upward, hinder the Clouds from descending, unless the Density of the Clouds preponderate, as we shall see hereafter. Thus we see the vapour of the Fire carries lighter Bodies up the Chimney. Nay, the Smoke can turn a thin Plate of Iron artfully placed in it, so strongly as to turn about a Spit and roast Mear.

9. But it is a Question among the Philosophers, whether Clouds and thicker Fogs are composed alike, or whether there be something more in the Clouds? Some think Clouds to be grosser than all Fogs, and that they are composed of Flakes of Snow, rather than Particles of Water, such as make Fogs. Others again say, 'tis sufficient to consider Clouds as a closer sort of Fogs. And indeed the Fogs which hang upon the Tops of very high Hills, appear to People in the Plains to be all one with the Clouds; though those that are at them, perceive nothing but a thick Fogg.

10. III. There being always many Vapours in the Air, tho' not always visible, hence it comes to pass, that even in clear Weather great Dews fall, especially in Countreys where it seldom Rains. For when it happens, that the scatter'd Vapours are collected and condensed together, and forced downwards, they must needs fall and bedew the Plants and Grass.

11. The Time for the falling of the Dew, is either before Sun-rising, or after Sun-set. But that it may regularly fall at such Times, it is necessary for the Air to be calm; for windy or stormy Weather hinders it. But when it is calm Weather, and gentle Breezes are felt from the *West* about the Setting, and from the *East* about the Rising of the Sun, 'tis probable that by moderately cooling the Air, they collect the Vapours and precipitate them. And because the Morning Breezes are more general than the Evening, for this Reason the Evening Dews fall only here and there, but those in the Morning seldom fail to be universal.

12. It is likewise found by Experience, that the Dews are more copious in hotter Countreys, as \* *Pliny* observes of the Summer Nights in *Africa*, which he calls *ruscæ æstate Noctes*. The Reason of which seems to be this, That in the Day-Time the heat of the Sun raises



raises abundance of Vapours out of the Water, which Vapours are so extremely rarefied by the same heat, that they are dispersed far and wide; but the cool of the Night brings them together, and condenses them to that Degree that they fall to the Ground, but not in such large drops as Rain does. But in colder Countreys where there are frequent Rains, and the Vapours are less rarefied, most of them come down in Rain, and but a small Part turns to Dew. Besides, in *Africa* there is a greater Difference between the heat of the Day and Night, particularly in Summer; for there the Nights are long and very Cold, whereas in the Northern Countreys they are little colder than the Day, and much shorter than in Places nearer the Line.

13. IV. The Difference between Dew and Rain seems to be only this, that Dew falls at some particular Times as aforesaid, and in very small drops, so as to be seen when 'tis down, but scarce perceivable while falling; whereas Rain is grosser and falls at any Time. No Body can doubt, but the Rain drops out of the Clouds, because we find it don't Rain, except where we see Clouds, and the fairer the Weather is, the seldomer it Rains. The only Question is, how the Clouds come to be condensed, and discharge themselves upon the Earth.

14. And there are several Causes, which may, singly or jointly, produce this effect. I. The coldness of the Air may make the Particles of the Clouds to lose their motion, and become less able to resist the gravity of the incumbent Air, and consequently to yield to its pressure and fall to the Ground. II. The Wind may gather the Vapours in such abundance, as first to form very thick Clouds; and then squeeze those Clouds together till the watry Particles make Drops too big to hang any longer in the Air.

15. But here it is to be observ'd, That all Winds don't produce Rain, but only such as collect a great quantity of Vapours. Thus in *Holland* West-Winds are rainy, because they come from the Ocean, and blow up the Vapours; East-Winds blow clear, because they come over large Tracts of Land. North-Winds are Rainy because they come from the North-Sea; but not so Rainy as the West, because the cold North don't yield such a quantity of Vapours, as the kinder Climate of the *Britannick* Ocean. South Winds bring Rain too; for they consist of Vapours rais'd by the heat of the Sun in a hot quarter, and so being elevated above others in the Air, seem to lie upon our Clouds, and press them down towards the Earth. However there are many Exceptions in these Cases, according to the variety of Causes conspiring to the same Effect, many of which we know nothing of.

16. III. Rain may further be produced thus; if the Vapours rise in so great abundance, as to reach and mingle with the Clouds above them, then they cause Rain in very large drops. And this may happen in still sultry Weather; for then the Clouds over our Heads have no sensible Motion, and in the mean Time the heat fills the Air with Vapours, which joining with the Clouds, and so being stop't in their progress, do open a Passage for the Stores of the Clouds to descend upon the Earth.

17. IV. Sometimes also the warm Wind thaws the frozen Clouds into drops, as we see Snow dissolved by heat. Now the thicker and sooner any such Cloud was gather'd, the larger the drops from it are; because the greater store of Vapours was condensed together. Thus we have many Times in Summer sudden Showers of Rain in excessive great drops.

18. And here we ought to remember, that in those Countreys between the Tropicks, when they have the Sun vertical, the Rain pours down for several Weeks together more like pail-fuls than drops. The Reason probably is, because at that Time the Sun draws up abundance of Vapours, and rarefies them extremely, so

that they are elevated as high as possible, and then are precipitated as it were at once, being too copious and heavy to hang any longer in the Air. And besides, there may sometimes be a Concurrence of neighbouring Vapours, which will be ready to run into that Part of the Air, which is most rarefied by the heat of the Sun, and uniting with the Vapours rais'd in that Place, produce very great Clouds and Rains.

19. V. Some parts of the Cloud which should turn into Rain, are sometimes prevented by the Cold, and form'd into a Confluence which we call Snow; which appears to be form'd of watry Particles, from hence, that when it dissolves, it runneth into Water. So that we may easily conceive Snow to be made of watry Particles, harden'd by Cold, and gather'd into Flakes, in such a manner as to leave large interstices between one another. Which Snow is not transparent, as the Water which produced it, was, because its more rigid Particles, being lodg'd together by Chance, don't leave straight Pores between one another, and to keep out the Matter of Light.

20. VI. But when it happens, that the Region of Air under the Cloud is very cold, the drops of Rain are congeal'd as they fall, and come down in Lumps which we call Hail. And these Lumps are greater or less, according to the bigness of the Rain-drops, whereof they are form'd. Further, these Lumps of Hail are sometimes variously figur'd, which we shall not Account for at present. This variety must needs be occasion'd by the infinite Variations and Mixtures of Vapours, Winds, Heat and Cold of the Air, &c.

## CHAP. III.

### *Of the Rain-bow, Halo's, and Parheli.*

OF all Meteors there is scarce any more wonderful than the *Iris* or *Rain-bow*, which therefore the Jews call the *Bow of God*, and the Greeks *Thaumantis*, i. e. the *Daughter of Admiration*. The Red, Blew, and Yellow Colours which appear most lively in it, are so pleasing to our Eyes, that we can hardly look and admire enough. It is therefore well worth our while to enquire into the Nature and Causes of this Meteor.

1. First, We may take Notice, that the *Rainbow* never appears but in a Place opposite to the Sun, so that when we look directly at it, the Sun is always behind us. Secondly, It always Rains somewhere, when the *Rainbow* appears. Thirdly, This is the constant Order of the Colours; the outmost is Red or Saffron-Colour; the next is Yellow; the third is Green; the fourth and inmost is Violet or Blew: But these Colours are not always equally Bright. Fourthly, Sometimes two *Rainbows* appear together, of which one is higher and larger than the other, and shews the Colours aforesaid, but in an inverted Order, and much Paler. Fifthly, The *Rainbow* is always exactly round, but don't always appear equally intire, the upper or lower Parts being very often wanting. Sixthly, It's apparent Breadth is always the same. Seventhly, Those that stand upon the plain, low Ground, never see above half its Circle, and many Times not so much. Eighthly, The higher the Sun is above the Horizon, the less of the Circle is seen, & vice versa, so there be no Clouds to hinder. Lastly, When the Sun is above 41 Degrees 46 Minutes high, never any Bow appears.

3. These are the principal Phenomena of this Meteor, into the Reasons of which we will now enquire. And since none of them affect us so much as the diversity of Colours, we have hopes given us from several Observations, that upon discovering the Reason of



th. we shall get an insight into the rest. And this is done chiefly by the help of a Glass-Prisme, where- in the same Colours are seen in the same Order; as likewise in the Water spouted out of Fountains, by which placing your self as you stand when you see a Rain-bow, you may perceive a colour'd Bow in it. From these two Experiments we may learn by the way, That Colours are nothing else, but Sensations arising from the various Reflections of the Sun-beams to our Eyes; so that in a colour'd Body, the Colour is only a certain Disposition of the Parts, so suited for collecting or dispersing the Light of the Sun, that our Eyes are variously affected with it. Having premised thus much, we shall now proceed to a more accurate Disquisition of the aforesaid *phenomena*.

4. I. The Spectator must always stand between the Sun and the Rain-bow, as he must between the Sun and the Spout of a Fountain, to see the colour'd Bow there; because the Water reflecting the Light of the Sun towards us, that Light cannot come to our Eyes as it should do, but in such a Situation. If the Water of the Fountain be between the Sun and us, the Rays are reflected from it towards the Sun, or the Place over against us, not towards us; for which Reason we see no colours in Water, when we stand so as the Rays cannot come to us.

5. II. As the colour'd Bow at a Fountain disappears so soon as the Spout is stop'd; so when there is no Rain, there is no Rain-bow; because those Rays which form its Colours, are reflected to us by nothing but the watry-drops. Therefore the drops of Rain are, if I may so call them, the Seat of the Rain-bow, and not the Clouds, as the *Peripateticks* and others Thought.

6. III. Since Colours, as we said, arise from the various Ways which the Sun-beams are collected and reflected to our Eyes, they convey the Light to us variously, according to the various Situation of the aqueous Drops with respect to the Sun and us, and do therefore excite in us different Sensations of Colours. This plainly appears in the Glass-Prisme, which if we hold so as to look up at the Sky with it, it represents the Colours in a contrary Order to what it does when we hold it below our Eyes, and look downward. So likewise, as the drops of Rain are higher or lower, they exhibit various Colours to us; as *Jac. Robalt* has nicely and accurately described them, *Phys. Part III. Cap. ult.* which we cannot take in to this Compendium.

7. IV. Besides the brightest *Rainbow*, whose Rays shine most directly and fully upon us, there is sometimes another on the outside of it, in which the same Colours appear in an inverted Order; because the drops of Rain having a different Situation with respect to us and the Sun, collect and reflect the Rays to us in a different way. Which is easily observed in the Prisme variously placed. But because the Rays are not only refracted, as they pass thro' the Air into the aqueous drops, and out of the drops into the Air again, but are also reflected by certain Parts of the Water or Glass, therefore the fuller such Reflection is, the livelier are the Colours. If then the upper Bow don't reflect the Sun's Rays to us so fully as the lower does, the Colours form'd by such a weak Reflection, must needs appear fainter.

8. V. The Form of the *Rain-bow* ought to be round, because the drops upon which the Rays fall, are not all alike capable of reflecting, so as to produce Colours, but only those we see in a Circle about the Place we look at. Now when there is no Obstruction, but that we may see as far one way as another round about us, we seem to be under the one half of a Concave Sphere; thence it is that in that Part of the Air over against us, if it be full of Rain, and no Cloud in our way, we see a colour'd Bow in the drops which fall upon that Arch of the Air we look at.

But as the Rain is various, sometimes falling upon the whole Arch, sometimes only upon Part of it, and as the Clouds may interpose, so the Bow appears perfect or imperfect.

9. VI. But the Arch always appears as part of an equally large Circle, because, when there is nothing to hinder, that part of the Atmosphere to which we turn our selves, seems equally spacious at all Times; and the drops which reflect the Rays to us, must be at one certain Distance, neither nearer nor further off; as *Robalt* has Mathematically demonstrated.

10. VII. When we stand upon a Plain, that part of the Atmosphere before us, must appear but as half a Circle, and therefore the *Rain-bow* seen from such a Place, can be but half a Circle, with the two Extremities touching the Horizon. But if from the Top of a very high Mountain we looked down into a plain, the Atmosphere before us might appear larger than half a Circle; and then if it should chance to Rain, and the Sun shine behind us, the Arch of the *Rainbow* would be bigger.

11. VIII. And because all sorts of solar rays or drops of Rain are not proper to excite in us the sense of Colour; but a certain Situation of Drops, and certain Reflection is required; therefore the Situation of the *Rainbow* must vary according to the height of the Sun. Now the higher the Sun is above the Horizon, the nearer must those Particles be to the Horizon, which are capable of reflecting the Sun-beams, so as they ought to be reflected in this Case; and therefore the less part of the Circle, or shorter Arch appears, the remainder falling below the Horizon.

12. IX. But when the Sun is 42 Degrees high, then the Situation of such drops as should make the Bow appear to us, is so depressed, that they are all below the Horizon; this *Robalt* has exactly demonstrated; we must be content with the bare Mention of it.

13. There is one Thing we may add to the fore said Observations, that as we go towards the *Rainbow*, it seems to retire from us; for there being a particular Distance required to see the Colours, whenever the Spectator changes his Place, the Situation of the *Rainbow* is changed too, provided it Rain beyond that place wherein the Bow first appear'd to be. Hence Philosophers rightly conclude, that the *Rainbow* don't appear the same to two Men; because since they are not in the same Place, the same Rays cannot be convey'd to them both. And indeed when the Extremities of the Bow seem to one Man to bear upon some remarkable Place, another Man that is nearer or further off, takes them to fall on this or that side of it.

14. Near a-kin to the *Rainbow* are the *Halo's*, or party-colour'd Circles, which sometimes appear about the Sun or Moon; so that this is a proper Place to say something of their Nature. 1. Then, it is observable that the Sun or Moon are always in the Center of such Circles, and keep the same Situation as they move. 2. These Circles consist of two Borders, the outer of which is Blew or Yellow, and the inner Red. 3. The Space contain'd in them, especially near the more shining Parts, is dusker than the Air without them. 4. Whereas the *Rainbow* never appears but where it actually Rains, the *Halo's* never appear when it does Rain.

15. To make these Things plainer, we will here set down the \* Account of an Observation of a *Halo* about the Sun, which was seen at *Paris*, May 12. 1667. It appear'd about 9 a Clock in the Morning with a Circle 44 Degrees Diameter, the Limb of which was about half a Degree broad. The upper and lower Parts lookt Red and Yellow, with a Tincture of Purple, especially in the upper Part; the Red was within the Yellow; the other Parts appear'd a little whitish, and but indifferent clear. The Space within the *Halo* was something dusker than that without, especially near the most vivid Colours. The height of the Sun,

\* *Phil. Trans. A. 1667. June 1570. Num. 11*



at the beginning of the Observation, was about 46 Degrees. There were thin white Clouds moving about in the Air, whereby the Blew Colour was made more discernable, and the brightness of the Sun was obscured, so that it was not greater than at an Eclipse. The Weather was something colder than usual at that Time of Year, and People said it froze the Night before. The *Halo* appear'd with the same Colour and Brightness from Nine a Clock till half an Hour past Eleven; at which Time the Colours began to fade and at Two a Clock in the Afternoon they quite vanished, after a short appearance of Recovery but just before.

16. In order to Account for these *Phænomena*, learned Men agreed, I. That the Air at that Time was full of icy Particles, of the shape of a *Lens* or something like it, capable of producing such Colours as Prisms do, by the Refraction of the Light, and reflecting it to us. II. That at such a Juncture the Sun or Moon must shine, that so those frozen Particles may repair from all Quarters about the bright Luminaries.

17. From what has been said we may conclude, I. That the Luminary ought to be in the Center of the *Halo*, because to make the Colours arising from the Refraction and Reflection of Light, visible, there must not only be a certain Figure of the frozen Particles, but the same Distance of them all from the Luminary, whose Light is refracted and reflected by them; as we have observed in the drops of Rain which form the *Rainbow*.

18. II. The Colour of the *Halo* is of two Sorts, because there is made by it a double Refraction of the Particles of Light, one when they enter into the icy Particles, and another when they are reflected back again. But because to make a Variation of Colours, the Rays must be variously collected and reflected, as we shew'd before; therefore 'tis necessary that in the icy Particles there should be some Variety; which some fetch from their Figure, as in the *Rainbow*; others from the internal Disposition of their Parts, which they will have to be such, that there is a kind of opaque *Nucleus* contain'd in them, and inclosed round with transparent Ice. Which if it be so, the Reflection of Light from the *Nucleus*, and from the extrem Parts must needs be different. And since a deeper Colour arises from the Reflection of a thicker Body, the inward Colour must appear Red, and the outward Blew or Yellow; because the Rays coming from the *Nucleus*, are nearer the Center, than those reflected from the transparent Parts.

19. III. The Space comprehended in the *Halo*, especially near the Ring, where the Colours are most vivid, must look something Dusky, because there is the greatest quantity of opaque Particles, as we shew'd before. Therefore the Air must needs be obscured in those Places. Some say the included Space is brighter than that without, because the icy Particles reflect the Sun's rays upon it; but this is contrary to Experience.

20. IV. 'Tis no wonder that *Halo's*, consisting of icy Particles, don't appear when it Rains; for then they must melt and come down. So when the Luminary is gone past the Collection of icy Particles which interposed between it and us, then the *Halo* is at an end.

21. Besides these *Halo's*, there are a sort of new Suns sometimes seen about the old One, call'd *Parhelii*, because they are *παρὰ τὸν ἥλιον*, near the true Sun. 1. There appears a great white Circle, parallel to the Horizon, and passing through the Sun. 2. In several Parts of this Circle are seen the *Parhelii*, tho' not all of a bigness, nor equally vivid. 3. Some represent the Colours of the *Rainbow*; others are Paler, and more like the Circle. 4. With these *Parhelii* there often appears a *Halo*, which touches some of them that are nearest the true Sun. 5. These Suns

don't keep to any certain Number, for sometimes there are Four of them, and sometimes Six. *Gassendus* in a Letter to *Reinerius* has given an Account of Four that were seen at Rome, March 20. 1629.

22. To give a probable Reason of these *Phænomena*, we may in the first Place assume, that they proceed from such like Matter as produces *Halo's*; viz. icy Particles, which fly about in the Air between the Sun and the Eyes of the Spectators, in which notwithstanding there may be some Diversity of Figure.

23. I. The white Circle is form'd by a Reflection of the Sun Beams from the surface of the icy Matter, elevated to a certain height about the Disk of the Sun. For nothing can reflect the Sun's rays to us as is requisite in this Case, but such Things as are elevated above the Horizon to the same Angle with the Sun's altitude. Whence it follows, that the Circle ought to appear every where as high as the Sun, and therefore Parallel to the Horizon.

24. II. The Rays falling upon certain Parts of the Circle are transmitted from the icy Matter to us with a double Refraction and one Reflection; for which Reason they exhibit a Figure like that of the Sun, but colour'd like the *Rainbow*. These Figures are unequal, according as the Rays come to us more directly or obliquely.

25. III. They are colour'd like the *Rainbow*, for the Reason assign'd before; or else are Pale, if the Rays are only reflected to us. For as when we look upon a Glass-prisme at some Yards distance, no Colour but that of the Glass appears, because it only reflects the Light to us; so in the icy Drops which give us the Light only by Reflection, we must expect to see no Colour but that of Ice alone. But as the same Prisme when held before our Eyes, so as not only to give us the Rays reflected from its Surface, but twice refracted too, viz. at going in, and coming back again upon us from the opposite Surface, represents the Colours of the *Rainbow*: So likewise those icy Particles which are so situated between the Sun and our Eyes, that the Rays are reflected to us from the opaque *Nuclei* with the like double Refraction; those Particles, I say, must needs appear of the Colour of the *Rainbow*.

26. IV. 'Tis no wonder, that a *Halo* appears together with the *Parhelii*, because, as we hinted before, they seem to consist of much the same Matter. There is no need to repeat here what we said before about *Halo's*.

27. The Number of *Parhelii* is greater or less, according to the quantity of the icy Matter, which is elevated to the same apparent Altitude with the Sun. There are other peculiar *Phænomena* that belong to this Head, which we will not now insist upon, but leave them to be read in such Authors, as have made it their Business to explain this Meteor.

28. In order to confirm the aforesaid Conjecture by ocular Demonstration, \* a very ingenious Man caused \* Mr. Huygens in the *Philos. Trans-* a Glass-cylinder to be made about a Foot long, and inclosed in it a less Cylinder of Wood to serve for a *Nucleus*; and fill'd up the ambient Space with Water. Then he carried it into the Sun, and upon perusing it, all the forementioned Reflections and Refractions appear'd to the Eyes of the Spectators. Whence we may conclude, that much less Cylinders are able to perform as much. *for May 1670. Num. 21.*

29. It were to be wished that such icy Cylinders, upon their coming down after the appearance of the *Parhelii*, were sought for and well inspected; but supposing they may possibly fall sometimes, yet this is but seldom, because such fine Particles may be born up a great while in the Air by the Winds, and Vapours ascending out of the Earth; and then they may be changed, as they fall thro' various warmer or colder Regions of the Air. Besides, the Winds may drive them into other Places, or they may often fall unobserved.

Certain



Certain it is, that so many Experiments would be required to form an exact Judgment of this and such like Cases, that a long Life would not be sufficient to make them in.

# CHAP. IV.

## Of Fiery Exhalations, Thunder, Lightning, the Thunder-bolt, &c.

1. **B**ESIDES the Vapours which the Sun's heat raises out of Water and moist Places, there are a World of Particles carried off from Sulphur, Bitumen, volatil Salts, and other bodies of the like Nature; these fly about in the Air higher or lower, according to the various Degrees of levity or gravity. These the Philosophers commonly call *Exhalations*; of which together with their Effects we shall discourse in this Chapter.

2. Since 'tis plain that there is a vast quantity of Sulphureous and Bituminous Matter all over the surface of the Earth, and that Plants and Animals abound with volatil Salts; we need not wonder that the heat of the Sun fills the Air with such Particles. And 'tis impossible but the Winds must drive them about all over the Air; but without doubt they rise most plentifully out of dry Sun-burnt places, and hang thereabout, unless the Flux of the Air disperse them. This makes it no hard matter to account for all the Meteors inflam'd in the Air. We will begin with the most sudden and surprizing of them, which we will describe in *Pliny's* Words.

3. \* " I. There are some fiery Meteors which are not seen till they fall, such as that which shot by the People at Noon-day, while they were at the shew of Gladiators exhibited by *Germanicus Cesar*. Of these there are two sorts, which they call Lamps or Torches; and Darts. They differ in this, that the Lamp in falling still appears round, whereas the Dart burns all over and shews its length at once. Much after the same manner the Beams (the *Greeks* call them *Σκαιοί*) appear. One of these was seen when the *Lacedaemonians* were beaten at Sea, in that memorable Engagement which lost them the Empire of *Greece*. There is likewise what they call the *Chasma*, when the Sky seems to open. And sometimes there is an appearance of Fire as red as Blood, falling down upon the Earth; than which no sight can be more dreadful. Such a Meteor as this was seen in the 4th. Year of the CVII *Olympiad*, when *Philip King* of *Macedon* was enslaving *Greece*.

4. \* " In the consulship of *C. Catilius* and *Cn. Papyrius*, and at several other times, a light has been seen in the Sky by Night, very much resembling the Day-light. \* Sometimes there is an Appearance of moving Stars, and that not only in the Air, but also on the Earth, and in the Sea. When *Pliny* was upon the Watch one Night in the *Roman Camp*, he saw such shining Appearances on the *Pallisades*; and they have been seen at Sea on the Sail-yards and other parts of the Ship — just like Birds that were shifting from one place to another. There are likewise instances of Peoples Heads that have been seen to shine in the Night. Among these may be reckoned the *Ignis fatuus* as we call it, which hovers up and down about the Earth. There is such an appearance of them in the Night, in those parts which ly between the Tropicks, that *Pliny* in \* another place takes notice, that the *Aethiopian* Fields about Mount *Hesperides*, shine with them like so many Stars.

5. In all these Aerial Fires, three Things are observable. 1. That they are lighted without any human Means, and by some invisible Way: 2. That they run

about the Air in various figures: 3. That some last longer than others, but all vanish in a very short time. The reasons of which are next to be inquir'd into.

6. I. We will not here repeat what we have said in the last Book about the way of lighting Fire; let it be only remember'd at present, that to make a Flame or Spark appear, there needs no more than that some Particle should be so whirl'd about in the Air, as to cast aside all the grosser matter, and play about in the most subtil part of Air. Now there are, as we said before, some matters apter than others to be put into such a motion, as the parts of Sulphur, Bitumen, Nitre, &c. When therefore a sufficient quantity of such matter is gather'd together, 'tis easie for one or two Particles to be whirl'd about by the heat of the Air, and being once inflam'd, to set Fire to all the rest about it. In consequence of which it may be observed, that the Aerial Fires are very rare in Winter, but common in Summer; and the hotter the Summer, the more common are such Fires; which is a sufficient indication that the matter of them is rais'd and inflam'd by the heat of the Air, and the impetuosity of its motion.

7. This may be demonstrated by an Experiment in what they call *Aurum Fulminans*. If Gold be dissolved in *Aqua Regalis*, and precipitated with Oil of Tartar, the Dust which sinks to the bottom being dried gradually and without Fire, may afterwards be fired by a moderate heat, and will make a noise like the shooting off a Musket. But you may make the Experiment as effectually, and with much less Charge, thus. Take 3 Drams of *Salt-peter*, a Dram and a Half of *Tartar*, one Dram of *Brimstone*, mix them together and beat them to a very fine Powder. This Powder will take Fire as easily as the *Aurum Fulminans*, but gives not quite so great a Crack. Now if we consider, that the Particles of *Nitre*, *Tartar*, and *Sulphur* which fly in the Air, are much finer than those which make the aforesaid Composition, we may easily imagine that a moderate heat will Fire them aloft in the Air, provided they be mixt according to the Proportion aforesaid.

8. II. This sort of Matter must be carried about in the Air in various Figures, according as the Winds blow, and as the quantity of it is greater or less; and according as it takes Fire, it appears in that variety which we have heard out of *Pliny*. If the Fire begins at one end, and burns by Degrees, 'tis call'd a *Lamp*; but if a long Exhalation take Fire at once, 'tis nam'd a *Dart*. Now while these Exhalations are in a Flame, they are sometimes hurried by the Stream of the Air one way or other. But if they continue in the same Place, as they do sometimes, then they are call'd *Beams*. At other Times the Clouds part, and the Sky seems to retire, which may be occasion'd by the Wind; at this opening a Flame flashes out, and this they call a *Chasma*. Burning Exhalations appear as Red as Blood, when they have less Sulphur in them, (which yields a paler Flame) than *Nitre*, *Tartar*, or *Bitumen*. Such an Inflammation may appear by Night or Day; but more plainly by Night in the Sun's absence, whose prevalent Light obscures all others. Shooting Stars are improperly call'd Stars, because they are but small Exhalations in our Air. *Ignis fatuus* seem to consist of a more greasie and gross Exhalation; for we see oily Substances are easily lighted, but not so soon spent, as those of *Sulphur* and *Nitre*.

9. III. Hence we learn, that all such inflam'd Exhalations must soon disappear, because the subtil Matter whereof they consist, is quickly spent. But since the Matter is not all alike, their Continuance is not exactly the same. Thus we see a Flame rais'd out of various Materials, lasts longer, or is out sooner, according as they are. Oil mixt with *Sulphur* or *Bitumen*, flames longer than it does with *Nitre*.

10. Having seen how Flame is suddenly kindled in the Air with a moderate heat, and illustrated this by the Experiment of *Aurum Fulminans*; it will next be easie to conceive



conceive how Thunder is produced. For first it appears by the Experiment, that Flame which throws off the Air with great Violence, does sometimes occasion a great Crack. Now since, as we have observed, 'tis easie for heterogeneous Particles to mix in the upper Region of the Air in great Quantities, and to take Fire with no extraordinary heat; we need not have recourse to any Thing else for explaining the Cause of Thunder; but may define it to be, *a rumbling Noise in the highest Region of the Air, occasion'd by the sudden Inflammation of Exhalations.*

11. We cannot stand now to say much about the Noise, but shall just take Notice how all Experiments satisfy us, that the Noise cannot be produced otherwise than by a swift and vehement Explosion of the Air, which is forced every way, and its Motion being continued to our Ears, strikes the Tympanum, and excites in our Mind the Sensation of sound. This is so plain, and so constantly experienced, that we may take it for granted without further Proof.

12. 'Tis here proper to observe, that the Noise of Thunder sounds as if it pass thro' Arches, and were variously broken. The reason is, because the Flame is kindled among the Clouds, which hang over one another; while the agitated Air flies between them. Thus we observe, that the Inequalities of the Ground make a Gun discharged at a good Distance, to sound to us with several repeated and broken Reports.

13. It further appears, that the Flame is the Cause of the Thunder, because most commonly we see the Flash before we hear the Crack. There is not indeed such a Distance between the firing of the Exhalation and the Concussion of the Air, as there is between our seeing the Flash and hearing the Thunder. But because we see any Thing almost in instant, but a Sound is convey'd to us by a successive Motion of the Air, therefore more Time is required to hear than to see.

14. Some think that the noise of Thunder is caused by the falling of a higher Cloud condensed by sudden heat upon another Cloud under it, so that the Air between them is dispell'd with vast impetuosity, and hardly gets from between them, till the Cloud breaks. But 'tis scarce credible, that a Cloud tho' turn'd all at once into Water, should make any Noise only by falling upon a thinner Cloud, thro' which the Air might easily make its way. Besides, 'tis a Case without all Example. It is better therefore to look upon the firing of an Exhalation to be the Cause of Thunder; for tho' the Flash is not always seen, it don't follow that there is none; for the lower Clouds may easily intercept it from our sight, tho' some, where or other 'tis generally seen.

15. Those that imagine an upper Cloud to fall upon one below, do at the same Time acknowledge, that the Exhalations between them may often take Fire; but then their Notion of kindling Exhalations by Compression, because they are so close pent in between the Clouds, that all the Air is crush'd out from them, and they remain alone in the most subtil Matter, this is utterly unintelligible. Certainly the Matter of the Clouds is not of such a Nature, as can pen up the Exhalations so close: And as for Fire, it is much likelier to be put out than kindled in Clouds.

16. From what has been said, 'tis easie to define *Lightning*, which is nothing else but *an inflam'd Exhalation compos'd of Sulphur or Nitre, or some such Matter, or of a mixture of several Sorts together.* The Inflammation is sometimes with a Noise, as in cloudy Weather, sometimes without, as in clear, which makes some variety in it.

17. We have already accounted for the Noise; but it may lighten without Noise, when the Exhalation consists of Matter softer than ordinary, which is not so soon kindled. For Instance, if it consist only of sulphureous Particles, which are a softer sort, not so

apt to Fire all at once, nor give the Air such a Concussion as shall make us hear the Noise of it. But if with the *Sulphur* be mingled many Particles of *Nitre* and *Tartar*, these last being harder, cause the whole Exhalation to burst at once with such impetuosity as rends the Air, and makes a vast Noise.

18. In cloudy Weather the Noise of Thunder is more diversified, because the Air is variously reverberated from the Clouds to us: But if there be no Clouds, the Air flows more freely and evenly through the open Spaces to our Ears. In such Weather it often Lightens without Thunder, because the Inflammation is only of sulphureous Particles; as on the other Hand, it often Thunders in cloudy Weather without any apparent Lightning, because, as we said before, it is intercepted by the Clouds.

19. Thunder and Lightning is generally attended with Rain, either at the same Instant or soon after. Many Times after a Clap of Thunder it rains faster, so that the Rain seems to be the Effect of the Thunder: Which the Asserters of the Hypothesis we just now Confuted, Account for thus; viz. That the upper Clouds dissolving and falling upon those below, precipitate them to the Earth. But there is no occasion for such a shift; for the heat of the inflam'd Exhalation alone, and the violent Concussion of the Air, are sufficient to dissolve the Clouds and bring them down.

20. When it Thunders and Lightens, sometimes there falls a Thunderbolt, i. e. *A most rapid Flame which darts out of the Clouds to the Ground, and strikes thro' every Thing in its way.* The peculiar *Phænomena* observ'd in it are these: 1. It strikes upon high Places, as Mountains, Trees, Towers, &c. oftner than upon low: 2. Sometimes it burns Mens Garments, without hurting their Bodies: 3. Sometimes it breaks their Bones, without hurting their Garments or Flesh: 4. In like manner, it has melted or broke a Sword without hurting the Scabbard; and on the contrary, has burnt the Scabbard all over, while no harm has been done to the Sword.

21. These are the chief *Phænomena* of the Thunder-bolt, for we will not here insist on those which are peculiar to Times and Places. From these we conclude the Thunder-bolt to be such an Exhalation, as we have described; which is suddenly kindled, and copious enough for the Winds to hurry it down from the Clouds to us. Some fancy that by one Cloud's falling down upon another, the Exhalation between them is struck out at the Extremities of the Clouds. But we have observ'd already, that their moisture would quench it, rather than inflame it, and shoot it to the Earth. It is more probable, that the Flame is beaten down by the Wind, and reaches the Ground before the Matter of it is quite spent. But since the Winds seldom or never blow downright, most Thunder-bolts are darted aslope through the Air.

22. I. For this Reason they strike most commonly upon high Places; for as they fly obliquely thro' the Air, they meet with Mountains, Trees, Towers, &c. in their Way. II. Since the Exhalations which form the Thunder-bolt are as various, as there are kinds of sulphureous, bituminous, and saline Bodies from which they are Collected; 'tis certain that the force of its Flame must be very different: So that sometimes it burns the Garments, and passes over the Body without hurting it. III. Sometimes it harmlessly penetrates the soft Flesh, and breaks the hard Bones: As we see Gold and other Metals dissolved by *Aqua Regalis* and *Aqua Fortis*, while the Paper receives no Injury by them. For the same Reason the Sword is melted, the Scabbard remaining entire; just as it would prove, if they were laid together in *Aqua Fortis*. For the acute Parts of the *Aqua Fortis* don't operate upon soft Matter whose Particles are branched,



as they do upon harder Stuff, into whose Pores they insinuate themselves and dissolve the Contexture, as we shew'd before.

23. Besides, we observe that in Summer and Autumn Thunderbolts are more common; but in Winter and Spring more rare. For which a Threefold Reason may be given; 1. That in Winter and Spring the Cold in the upper Region of the Air is so great, as will not suffer the Exhalations to take Fire. 2. That in those Seasons the Exhalations are much fewer, because the Cold keeps them from ascending; for they cannot rise in any quantity without a considerable Heat. 3. That in Winter and Spring the Air is so fill'd with Vapours and Clouds, that all the Exhalations are diluted, and therefore cannot be inflam'd.

24. There are likewise some Places more obnoxious to Thunder-bolts than others; viz. Such as emit plentiful Exhalations for that Purpose, and where they are not easily dispersed by the Winds. Hence we see, that in the hotter Countreys, where the force of the Sun exhales all that can well be exhal'd out of the Earth, Thunderbolts are much more frequent than in colder Climates. So in very spacious Plains, which are swept, as I may say, with the Winds, the Exhalations are scatter'd and blown about: But in Places encompass'd with high Mountains, where the Wind cannot come to blow so freely, there they are kept together, and there Thunderbolts are very common.

## CHAP. V. Of WINDS.

1. **T**IS well known that Wind is nothing else but the Stream of the Air, together with such Vapours as the Air carries along with it: But there are a great many Phenomena of Winds, the Reasons and Grounds of which are not so easily discover'd, as will appear in this Chapter. Nor is their Cause and Origin, obvious to be Pointed out with due exactness. However, to see what may be done in this Case, we will First, Consider the Winds in general, as they are constant or variat... Secondly, We will particularly examine their various Phenomena: Lastly, We will say something of their first Origin.

2. The Winds may be divided into constant and variable: The former are up and down always at certain Times of the Year, and in certain Parts of the World; but the latter vary so much, that they can be reduced to no Rule. Now since 'tis easier to find out the Cause of one regular Effect, than of many irregular ones, let us in the first Place treat of constant Winds. And here we must take Notice, that the Winds are constant and periodical only in the widest Seas. Now the universal Ocean may most properly be divided into Three Parts, viz. 1. The Atlantick and Aethiopic Seas. 2. The Indian Ocean. 3. The Great South Sea, or the Pacifick Ocean; and tho' these Seas do all communicate by the South, yet as to our present Purpose of the Periodical Winds, they are sufficiently separated by the Interposition of great Tracts of Land; the First lying between Africa and America; the Second between Africa and the Indian Islands, and Hollandia Nova; and the last between the Philippine Isles, China, Japan, and Hollandia Nova on the West, and the Coast of America on the East. Now following this natural Division of the Seas, so will we divide our History of the Winds into Three Parts in the same Order.

3. In the Atlantick and Aethiopic Seas between the Tropicks, there is a general Easterly Wind all the Year long, without any considerable Variation, excepting that it is subject to be deflected there from some few Points of the Compass towards the North or South, according to the Position of the Place. The Observati-

ons which have been made of these Deflections, are these following. That near the Coast of Africa, as soon as you have pass'd the Canary Isles, you are sure to meet a fresh Gale of N. E. Wind about the Latitude of 28 Degrees North, which seldom comes to the Eastwards of the E. N. E. or passes the N. N. E. This Wind accompanies those bound to the Southward, to the Latitude of Ten North, and about a Hundred Leagues from the Guinea Coast, where, till the Fourth Degree of North Latitude, they fall into the Calms and Tornadoes.

4. That those bound to the Caribbe Isles, find, as they approach the American side, that the aforesaid North-East Wind becomes still more and more Easterly, so as sometimes to be East, sometimes East by South, but yet most commonly to the Northward of the East, a Point or Two, seldom more. 'Tis likewise observ'd, that the Strength of these Winds does gradually decrease, as you Sail to the Westwards.

5. That the Limits of the constant and variable Winds in this Ocean, are farther extended on the American side than the African: For whereas you meet not with this certain Wind, till after you have passed the Latitude of Twenty Eight Degrees on this side; on the American side it commonly holds to Thirty, Thirty one, or Thirty Two Degrees of Latitude; and this is verified likewise to the Southwards of the Equinoctial; for near the Cape of Good-hope, the Limits of the Trade Winds are Three or Four Degrees nearer the Line, than on the Coast of Brasile.

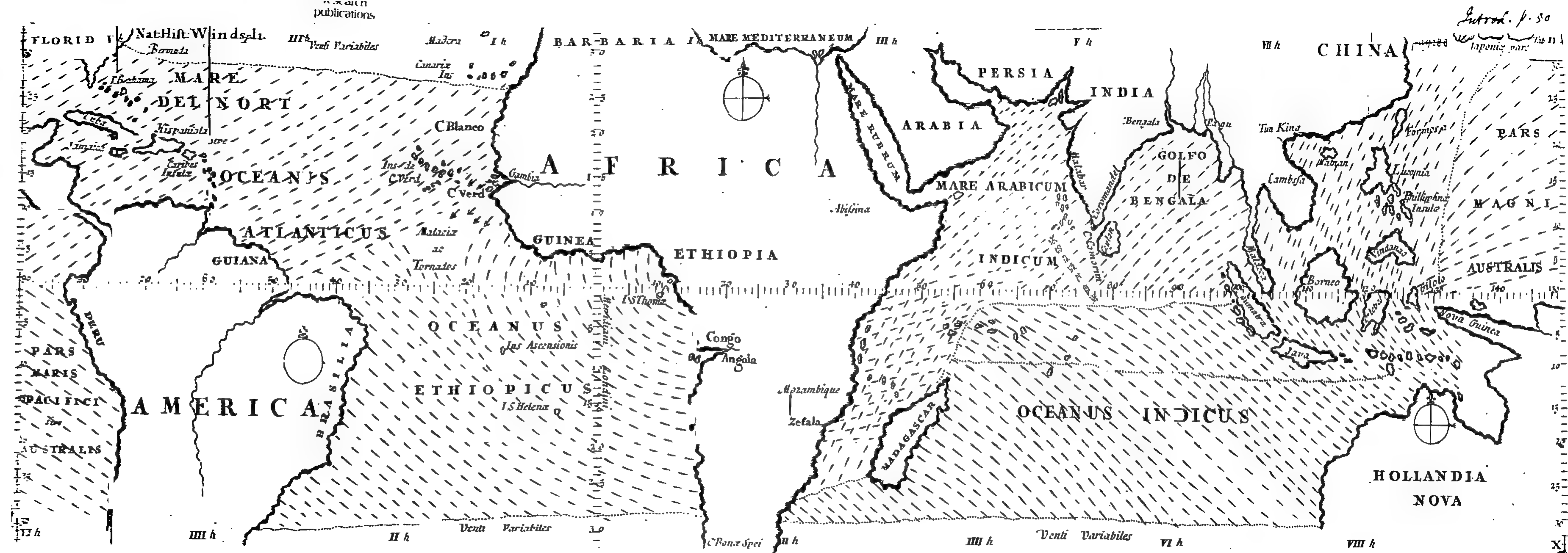
6. That from the Latitude of Four Degrees North, to the aforesaid Limits on the South of the Aequator, the Winds are generally and perpetually between the South and East, and most commonly between the South-East and East, observing always this Rule, That on the African side they are more Southerly, on the Brasilian more Easterly, so as to become almost due East, the little Deflection they have being still to the Southwards. In this Part of the Ocean, the Wind has been nicely observed for a full Year together, to keep constantly about the South East, the most usual Point S. E. by E. When it is Easterly, it generally blows hard, and 'tis gloomy, dark, and sometimes rainy Weather; if it comes to the Southwards, it is generally serene, and a small Gale next to a Calm, but this is not very common.

7. That the Season of the Year has some small Effect on these constant Winds, for that when the Sun is considerable to the Northwards of the Aequator, the South-East Winds, especially in the Strait of this Ocean (if I may so call it) between Brasile and the Coast of Guinea, do vary a Point or Two to the Southwards, and the North-East become more Easterly; and on the contrary, when the Sun is towards the Tropick of Capricorn, the South-Easterly Winds become more Easterly, and the North-Easterly Winds on this side the Line vere more to the Northwards.

8. That as there is no general Rule that admits not of some Exception, so there is in this Ocean a Tract of Sea, wherein the Southerly and South-West Winds are perpetual, viz. All along the Coast of Guinea, for above Five Hundred Leagues together, from Sierra Leone to the Isle of St. Thomas; for the South-East Trade Wind having pass'd the Line, and approaching the Coast of Guinea within Eighty or a Hundred Leagues, inclines towards the Shore and becomes S. S. E. and by degrees, as you come nearer, it veres about to South, S. S. West, and in with the Land South-West, and sometimes West South-West. Which Variation is better expressed in the Map hereto annexed, than it can well be in Words. These are the Winds which are observed on this Coast when it blows true; but there are frequent Calms, violent sudden Gusts call'd Tornadoes, from all Points of the Compass, and sometimes unwholesom Foggy Easterly Winds call'd Hermitian by the Natives, which too often infest the Navigation of these Parts.

9. That







9. That to the *Northwards* of the Line, between Four and Ten Degrees of Latitude, and between the Meridians of *Cape Verde*, and of the Eastermost Islands that bear that Name, there is a Tract of Sea, wherein it were improper to say there is any Trade-wind, or yet a variable; for it seems condemn'd to perpetual Calms, attended with terrible Thunder and Lightning, and Rains so frequent, that our Navigators from thence call this Part of the Sea *The Rains*; the little Winds that are, be only some sudden uncertain Gusts, of very little Continuance and less Extent; so that sometimes each Hour you shall have a different Gale, which dies away into a Calm before another Succeed, and in a Fleet of Ships in sight of one another, each shall have the Wind from a several Point of the Compass. With these weak Brizes Ships are oblig'd to make the best of their way to the *Southward* thro' the aforesaid Six Degrees, wherein 'tis reported some have been detain'd whole Months for want of Wind.

10. From the Three last Observables, is shewn the Reason of two notable Occurrents in the *East-India* and *Guinea* Navigations: The one is, Why, notwithstanding the narrowest part of the Sea between *Guinea* and *Brasile* be about Five hundred Leagues over; yet Ships bound to the *Southward* sometimes, especially in the Months of *July* and *August*, find a great difficulty to pass it. This happens because of the *South-East* Winds, at that time of the Year commonly extending some degrees beyond the ordinary limit of four Degrees *North* Latitude; and withal they come so much Southerly, as to be sometimes *South*, sometimes a Point or two to the *West*: There remains then only to ply to Windward, and if on the one side they stand away *W. S. W.* they gain the Wind still more and more Easterly; but there is danger of not weathering the *Barbican-Shore*, or at least the Shoals upon that Coast. But if upon the other Tack, they go away *E. S. E.* they fall into the Neighbourhood of the Coast of *Guinea*, from which there is no departing without running Easterly as far as the Isle of *St. Thomas*, which is the constant Practice of all the *Guiny-Ships*, and which may seem very strange without the consideration of the sixth Remark, which shews the reason of it: for being in with the Coast, the Wind blows generally at *S. W.* and *W. S. W.* with which Winds they cannot go to the Northward for the Land, and on the other Tack they can lie no nearer the Wind than *S. S. E.* or *South*: With these Courses they run off the Shore; but in so doing they always find the Winds more and more contrary; so that when near the Shore they could lie *South*, at a greater distance they can make their Way no better than *S. E.* and afterwards *E. S. E.* with which Courses they fetch commonly the Isle of *St. Thomas* and *Cape Lopez*, where finding the Winds to the Eastward of the *South*, they keep them favourable by running away to the Westward in the *South* Latitude of three or four Degrees, where the *S. E.* Winds are perpetual.

11. For the sake of these general Winds, all those that use the *West-India* Trade, even those bound to *Virginia* count it their best Course to get as soon as they can to the Southwards, that so they may be certain of a fair and fresh Gale to run before it to the Westwards, and for the same reason, those homeward bound from *America*, endeavour to gain the Latitude of thirty Degrees, as soon as possible, where they first find the Winds to be variable; tho' the most ordinary Winds in the Northern part of the *Atlantick* Ocean, come from between the *South* and *West*.

12. As to those furious Storms call'd *Hurricanes*, which are, as 'twere, peculiar to the *Caribbe* Isles, and which so dreadfully afflict them in the Month of *August*, or not much before or after, they do not so properly belong to this Place, both by reason of their small continuance and extent, as likewise because they are not Anniversary, some Years having more than One,

and sometimes for several Years together there being none at all.

13. What is here said, is to be understood of the Sea-Winds at some distance from the Land; for upon and near the Shores, the Land and Sea-Brizes are almost every where sensible; and the great variety which happens in their Periods, Force and Direction, from the Situation of the Mountains, Valleys and Woods, and from the various Texture of the Soil, more or less capable of retaining and reflecting Heat, and of exhaling or condensing Vapours, is such, that it were an endless Task to endeavour to account for them.

14. In the *Indian* Ocean the Winds are partly general, as in the *Æthiopick* Ocean, partly periodical, that is, half the Year they blow one way, and the other half near upon the opposite Points; and these Points and times of shifting are different in different parts of this Ocean; the limits of each Tract of Sea, subject to the same Change or *Monsoon* (as the Natives call it) are certainly very hard to determine; but the Diligence I have us'd (says Mr. Halley) to be rightly inform'd, and the Care I have taken therein, has in a great measure surmounted that Difficulty, and I am persuaded that the following Particulars may be rely'd upon.

15. That between the Latitudes of Ten and Thirty Degrees *South*, between *Madagascar* and *Hollandia Nova*, the general Trade-Wind about the *S. E.* by *E.* is found to blow all the Year long to all Intents and Purposes after the same manner as in the same Latitudes in the *Æthiopick* Ocean, as is describ'd in the fourth Remark afore-going.

16. That the aforesaid *South-East* Winds extend to within two Degrees of the *Equator*, during the Months of *June*, *July*, &c. to *November*; at which time, between the *South*-Latitude, of three and ten Degrees, being near the Meridian of the *North*-end of *Madagascar*, and between two and twelve *South*-Latitude, being near *Sumatra* and *Java*, the contrary Winds from the *N. W.* or between the *North* and *West* let in and blow for half the Year, viz. from the beginning of *December* till *May*, and this *Monsoon* is observ'd as far as the *Molucca*-Isles, of which more anon.

17. That to the Northward of three Degrees *South*-Latitude over the whole *Arabian* or *Indian*-Sea and Gulf of *Bengall*, from *Sumatra* to the Coast of *Africa*, there is another *Monsoon*, blowing from *October* to *April* upon the *North-East* Points; but in the other half Year, from *April* to *October*, upon the opposite Points of *S. W.* and *W. S. W.* and that with rather more force than the other, accompany'd with dark rainy Weather, whereas the *N. E.* blows clear. 'Tis likewise to be noted, that the Winds are not so constant, either in Strength or Point, in the Gulf of *Bengall*, as they are in the *Indian*-Sea, where a certain and steady Gale scarce ever fails. 'Tis also remarkable, that the *S. W.* Winds in these Seas, are generally more Southerly on the *African* side, more Westerly on the *Indian*.

18. That as an Appendix to the last describ'd *Monsoon*, there is a Tract of Sea to the Southwards of the *Equator*, subject to the same Changes of the Winds, viz. near the *African*-Coast, between it and the Island *Madagascar* or *St. Laurence*, and from thence Northwards as far as the Line; wherein from *April* to *October* there is found a constant fresh *S. S. W.* Wind, which as you go more Northerly, becomes still more and more Westerly, so as to fall in with the *W. S. W.* Winds mention'd before in those Months of the Year to be certain to the Northward of the *Equator*. What Winds blow in these Seas, for the other half Year, from *October* to *April*, I have not (says Mr. Halley) yet been able to obtain to my full satisfaction; for that our Navigators always return from *India* without *Madagascar*, and so are little acquainted in this Matter: The Account that has been given me, is only this, That the Winds are much Easterly hereabouts, and as often to the

*North*



North of the true East as to the Southwards thereof.

19. That to the Eastward of *Sumatra* and *Malacca*, to the Northwards of the Line, and along the Coast of *Cambaja* and *China*, the *Monsoons* blow North and South; that is to say, the N. E. Winds are much Northerly, and the S. W. much Southerly: This Constitution reaches to the Eastwards of the *Philippine* Isles, and as far Northerly as *Japan*. The Northern *Monsoon* setting in, in these Seas, in *October* or *November*, and the Southern in *May*, blowing all the Summer Months. Here it is to be noted, That the points of the Compass, from whence the Wind comes in these Parts of the World, are not so fix'd as in those lately describ'd; for the Southerly will frequently pass a Point or two to the Eastwards of the *Suez*, and the Northerly as much to the Westwards of the *North*, which seems occasion'd by the great quantity of Land which is interspers'd in these Seas.

20. That in the same Meridians, but to the Southwards of the *Equator*, being that Tract lying between *Sumatra* and *Java* to the West, and *New Guinea* to the East, the same Northerly *Monsoons* are observ'd, but with this difference, That the inclination of the Northerly is towards the N. W. and of the Southerly towards the S. E. But the *Plage Venti* are not more constant here than in the former, viz. variable five or six Points; besides, the times of the Change of these Winds are not the same as in the *Chinese* Seas, but about a Month or six Weeks later.

21. That these contrary Winds do not shift all at once, but in some places the time of the Change is attended with Calms, in others with variable Winds; and it is particularly remarkable, that the end of the Westerly *Monsoon* on the Coast of *Soromandel*, and the two last Months of the Southerly *Monsoon* in the Seas of *China*, are very subject to be tempestuous: The violence of these Storms is such, that they seem to be of the Nature of the *West-India* Hurricanes, and render the Navigation of these Parts very unsafe about that time of the Year. These Tempests are by our Seamen usually term'd, *The breaking up of the Monsoons*.

By reason of the shifting of these Winds, all those that Sail in these Seas, are oblig'd to observe the Seasons proper for their Voyages; and so doing, they fail not of a fair Wind and speedy Passage; but if so be they chance to out-stay their time till the contrary *Monsoon* sets in, as it frequently happens, they are forc'd to give over the hopes of accomplishing their intended Voyages, and either return to the Port from whence they came, or else put in to some other Harbour, there to spend the time till the Winds shall come favourable.

22. The third Ocean, call'd *Mare Pacificum*, whose extent is equal to that of the other two (it being from the West Coast of *America* to the *Philippine* Islands not less than 150 Degrees of Longitude) is that which is least known to our own, or the Neighbour Nations: That Navigation that there is on it, is by the *Spaniards*, who go yearly from the Coast of *New Spain* to the *Manilla's*, but that but by one beaten Track; so that we cannot be so particular here, as in the other two. What the *Spanish* Authors say of the Winds they find in their Courses, and what is confirm'd by the old Accounts of *Drake* and *Candish*, and since by *Schooten*, who Sail'd the whole breadth of this Sea in the Southern Latitude of fifteen or sixteen Degrees, is, That there is a great Conformity between the Winds of this Sea, and those of the *Atlantick* and *Æthiopick*; that is to say, that to the Northwards of the *Equator*, the predominant Wind is between the East and North-East, and to the Southwards thereof, there is a constant, steady Gale between the East and South-East, and that on both sides the Line with so much constancy, that they scarce ever need to attend the Sails; and strength, that it is rare to fail of crossing this vast Ocean in ten Weeks time, which is about 130 Miles per Diem: Besides 'tis said, that Storms and Tempests are never

known in these Parts: So that here is the very best of Sailing; no want of a fresh fair Wind, and yet no danger of having too much. Wherefore some have thought it might be as short a Voyage to *Japan* and *China*, to go by the Streights of *Magellan*, as by the *Cape of Good-Hope*.

23. \* This is to be understood of the *Pacifick-Sea* at a great distance from the Shores; for about the Shores are various Winds, and when the S. E. or S. W. blows, this Sea is thereabouts very rough and dangerous; for the least Wind raises it very high. But when the Wind lies, tho' it blow'd never so strong but just before, immediately there is such a Calm, as if there had been no Wind of a long time; whereas the *Atlantick-Sea* rous for several Days after the Wind has lain. The *Pacifick-Sea* at a good distance from the Shore, is known to have a fair steady Wind, and is free from Storms, but the Coasts are apt to be rough; whereas on the contrary, the *Atlantick* is generally smooth on the Coasts, and tempestuous in the Main-Sea.

24. The limits also of these general Winds, are much the same as in the *Atlantick-Sea*, viz. about the thirtieth Degree of Latitude on both sides; for the *Spaniards* homewards bound from the *Manilla's*, always take the advantage of the Southerly *Monsoon*, blowing there in the Summer Months, and run up to the Northwards of that Latitude, as high as *Japan*, before they meet with variable Winds to shape their Course to the Eastwards: And *Schooten* and others that have gone about by the *Magellan* Streights, have found the limits of the S. E. Winds much about the same Latitude to the Southwards; besides a farther Analogy between the Winds of this Ocean and the *Æthiopick*, appears in that upon the Coast of *Peru*, they are always much Southerly, like as they are found near the Shores of *Angola*.

25. In the foregoing History are contain'd several Problems, which merit well the Consideration of our Attentest Naturalists, both by reason of the constancy of the Effect, and of the immense Extent thereof, near half the Surface of the Globe being concern'd. The chief of these Problems are, 1. Why these Winds are perpetually from the East in the *Atlantick* and *Æthiopick*, as likewise in the *Pacifick* Ocean, between the Latitudes of 30 North and South? 2. Why the said Winds extend no farther with constancy, than to the Latitudes of 30 Deg? 3. Why there should be a constant South Westerly Wind upon and near the Coast of *Guinea*? 4. Why, in the North part of the *Indian-Ocean* the Winds, which for one half Year do agree with those of the other two Oceans, should change in the other half Year, and blow from the opposite Points; while the Southern part of that Ocean follows the general Rule, and has perpetual Winds about S. E.? 5. Why, in these general Trade-Winds it should be always true, that to the Northward of the *Equator* it is inclin'd to the Northwards of the East; and in South Latitudes, to the Southward thereof? 6. Why, in the Seas of *China* there should be so great an Inclination from the East to the North more than elsewhere? &c.

26. Among the constant Winds, we may reckon such as blow at certain times in some particular Countries. In *Greece*, *Italy* and the Parts thereabout, "Eight <sup>Plin</sup> Days (says *Pliny*) before the rising of the *Dog-star*,  
" there blow North-East Winds, which they call *Pro-*  
" *dromi*. And two Days after 'tis risen, the same Winds  
" (but then call'd *Etesie*) blow as long as before;  
" and no Winds are more certain. Afterwards there  
" are frequent South-Winds to the rising of *Arcturus*,  
" which is Eleven Days before the *Autumnal Equinox*.  
" At which time *Corus* (a Wind N. W. by N.) sets in.  
" This lasts all the *Autumn*, which is reckon'd a-  
" bout Forty-four Days; then the Constellation call'd  
" *Vergilie* sets, and Winter begins, about the III'd of  
" the *Ides* of *November*. Now the North-East Wind  
" blows

\* Voyage fait à la mer du Sud, en 1684. par Raraccu de Luffa.



"blows again, but very unlike that before. Then  
 " (says *Pliny*, but erroneously) Seven Days before, and  
 " as many after the Winter Solstice, the Sea is calm, to  
 " favour the hatching of the *Halcyons*; whence they are  
 " call'd *Halcyon Days*; the rest are Winterlike. But  
 we may observe this difference between the constant  
 Winds by Sea and Land, that those by Sea are much  
 more constant than those by Land, and freer (nay, in  
 some places always free) from Storms.

27. As for the *Variable Winds*, they are felt most by  
 Land, and in such parts of the Sea as are without the limits  
 of the constant Winds to the North and South, viz. in the  
 colder parts of the Ocean, and all over its outmost Bays,  
 the principal of which are the *Mediterranean* and *Baltick*.

28. The Ancients (says *Pliny*) made but Four  
 "Winds, according to the Four Cardinal Points,  
 " (therefore *Homer* mentions no more;) this was  
 " quickly look'd on as too gross a Division. The fol-  
 " lowing Age added Eight more to this Number;  
 " which was thought too minute and nice a Sub-di-  
 " viding. And therefore they reduc'd this last Number  
 " to Four, taking every other, or middle Wind, and  
 " adding them to the old Account. But our Sailors,  
 who are far beyond the Ancients for their Skill in  
 Navigation, have divided the Horizon into 32 equal  
 parts, adding 28 to the four Cardinal Winds; a thing  
 exceeding useful in Navigation, but of no great con-  
 cern in Natural Philosophy, except it be to give us  
 a hint that the Wind blows from all parts of Heaven.

29. Of Variable Winds, some are common to all Coun-  
 tries, others are more peculiar to some particular Parts.  
 Of this latter sort, the most famous are the Hurricanes;  
 which chiefly infest the *Caribbe Isles*, but are not An-  
 niversary, nor equally frequent. Their Fury is so  
 great, that they throw down all before them, tear up  
 Trees, overturn Houses, toss Ships prodigiously, and  
 blow about things of vast weight. They are not even,  
 continu'd Winds; but blow in Gusts, which suddenly  
 come and go; neither do they extend very wide, but  
 are sometimes confin'd to a narrow compass, and at  
 other times take a larger scope. As for their duration,  
 it is but for a few Days, and sometimes only a few Hours.  
 They are more common in *America* than any where else;  
 but yet *Europe* and *Asia* are not altogether without them;  
 as appears from Histories and Travels.

30. It may be observ'd of all Winds, whether con-  
 stant or variable, That some are drying, others are  
 moist; some gather Clouds, others disperse them;  
 some are warm, others cold. But their Influence is  
 not one and the same in all Places: For such Winds as  
 are cold in one Country, are warm in another: Those  
 which Dry with us, are Wet in other Nations; & vice  
 versa; of which we will give some Instances hereafter.

31. These are the principal *Phænomena* to be observ'd  
 in Winds; for to examine every thing belonging to this  
 Subject, would be the Work of a large Volume: Besides,  
 no Reasons can be given for several things, before the  
 Truth of them is better ascertain'd. Wherefore we shall  
 at present confine ourselves to account for the Premises  
 only, beginning with the Causes of constant Winds.

32. \* Wind is most properly defin'd to be the Stream  
 or Current of the Air; and where such a Current is  
 perpetual and fix'd in its Course, 'tis necessary that it  
 proceed from a permanent unintermitting Cause. Where-  
 fore some have been inclin'd to propose the diurnal  
 Rotation of the Earth upon the *Axis*, by which, as the  
 Globe turns Eastwards, the loose and fluid Particles of  
 the Air, being so exceeding light as they be, are left  
 behind; so that in respect of the Earth's Surface, they  
 move Westward, and become a constant Easterly Wind.  
 This Opinion seems confirm'd, for that these Winds  
 are found only near the *Equinoctial*, in those Parallels  
 of Latitude where the Diurnal Motion is swiftest.  
 And we should readily assent to it, if the constant  
 Calms in the *Atlantick-Sea* near the *Æquator*; the Wester-  
 ly Winds near the Coast of *Guinea*; and the Periodical  
 Westerly Monsoons under the *Æquator* in the *Indian-Seas*,

did not declare the insufficiency of that Hypothesis.  
 Besides, the Air being kept to the Earth by the princi-  
 ple of Gravity, would require the same degree of Ve-  
 locity that the Earth's Surface move with, as well in  
 respect of the diurnal Rotation, as of the Annual about  
 the Sun, which is about thirty times swifter.

33. It remains therefore to substitute some other  
 Cause, capable of producing a like constant Effect, not  
 liable to the same Objections, but agreeable to the  
 known Properties of the Elements of Air and Water,  
 and the Laws of the Motion of Fluid Bodies. Such a  
 one is I conceive, the Action of the Sun-beams upon  
 the Air and Water, as he passes every Day over the  
 Oceans, consider'd together with the Nature of the  
 Soil, and Situation of the adjoining Continents: I say  
 therefore, First, That according to the Laws of *Statics*,  
 the Air is less rarify'd or expanded by Heat, and con-  
 sequently more ponderous, must have a Motion to-  
 wards those Parts thereof, which are more rarified,  
 and less ponderous, to bring it to an *Æquilibrium*:  
 And Secondly, That the presence of the Sun conti-  
 nually shifting to the Westwards, that part toward  
 which the Air tends, by reason of the Rarefacti-  
 on made by his greatest *Meridian* Heat, is with him car-  
 ry'd Westward, and consequently the tendency of the  
 whole Body of the lower Air is that way. Thus a ge-  
 neral Easterly Wind is form'd, which being impress'd up-  
 on all the Air of a vast Ocean, the parts impel one the  
 other, and so keep moving till the next return of the Sun,  
 whereby so much of the Motion as was lost, is again re-  
 stor'd; and thus the Westerly Wind is made perpetual.

34. From the same Principle it follows, that this  
 Easterly Wind should, on the North-side of the *Æquator*,  
 be to the Northwards of the East, and in South-Lati-  
 tudes, to the Southward thereof; for near the Line,  
 the Air is much more rarify'd, than at a greater di-  
 stance from it; because of the Sun twice in a Year Ver-  
 tical, and at no time distant above 23 Deg. and a half;  
 at which distance the heat, being as the Sine of the An-  
 gle of Incidence, is but little short of that of the Per-  
 pendicular Ray. Whereas under the Tropicks, tho'  
 the Sun stay long Vertical, yet he is as long 47 Deg.  
 off; which is a kind of Winter, wherein the Air so  
 cools, as that the Summer-heat cannot warm it to the  
 same degree with that under the *Æquator*. Wherefore  
 the Air to the Northward and Southward, being less  
 rarify'd than that in the middle, it follows, that from  
 both sides it ought to tend toward the *Æquator*: This  
 Motion compounded with the former Easterly Wind,  
 answers all the *Phænomena* of the general Trade Winds;  
 which, if the whole Surface of the Globe were Sea,  
 would undoubtedly blow all round the World, as they  
 are found to do in the *Atlantick* and *Æthiopick* Oceans.

35. But seeing that so great Continents do interpose  
 and break the Continuity of the Oceans, regard must  
 be had to the Nature of the Soil, and the Position of  
 the high Mountains, which I suppose, the two prin-  
 cipal Causes of the several Variations of the Winds  
 from the former general Rule: For if a Country lying  
 near the Sun, prove to be flat, sandy, low Land, such  
 as the Deserts of *Libya* are usually reported to be, the  
 Heat occasion'd by the Reflexion of the Sun-beams, and  
 the retention thereof in the Sand, is incredible to those  
 that have not felt it; whereby the Air being exceed-  
 ingly rarify'd, it is necessary that the cooler and more  
 dense Air should run thitherwards to restore the *Æqui-  
 librium*: This I take to be the Cause, why near the  
 Coast of *Guinea* the Wind always sets in upon the  
 Land, blowing Westerly instead of Easterly.

36. For there is sufficient Reason to believe, That  
 the Inland Parts of *Africa* are prodigiously hot, since  
 the Northern Borders thereof were so intemperate, as to  
 give the Ancients cause to conclude, That all beyond  
 the Tropick was made uninhabitable by excess of Heat  
 From the same Cause it happens, that there are so  
 constant Calms in that part of the Ocean call'd the  
*Rains* (describ'd in the 7th Remark on the *Atlantick-*



See) for this Trade being plac'd in the middle, between the Westerly Winds, blowing on the Coast of *Guinea*, and the Easterly Trade-Winds blowing to the Westwards thereof, the tendency of the Air here is indifferent to either, and so stands in *Æquilibrio* between both; and the weight of the incumbent *Atmosphäre* being diminish'd by the continual contrary Winds blowing from hence, is the reason that the Air here holds not the copious Vapour it receives; but lets it fall into frequent Rains.

37. But as the cool and dense Air, by Reason of its greater Gravity, presses upon the hot and rarified, 'tis demonstrative, that this latter must ascend in a continued Stream as fast as it rarifies; and that being ascended, it must disperse it self to preserve the *Æquilibrio*, that is, by a contrary Current, the upper Air must move from those Parts where the greatest heat is: So by a kind of Circulation, the North-East Trade-Wind below, will be attended with a South-Westerly above, and the South-Easterly with a North-West Wind above; that this is more than a bare Conjecture, the almost instantaneous Change of the Wind to the opposite Point, which is frequently found in passing the Limits of the Trade-Winds, seems to assure us; but that which above all Confirms this Hypothesis, is the Phenomenon of the *Monsoons*, by this means most easily solved, and without it hardly explicable.

38. Supposing therefore such a Circulation as above, 'tis to be consider'd, that to the Northward of the *Indian* Ocean, there is every where Land within the usual Limit of the Latitude of 30. viz. *Arabia*, *Persia*, *India*, &c. Which for the same Reason as the Mediterranean Parts of *Africa*, are subject to unsufferable Heats when the Sun is to the North, passing nearly vertical; but yet are temperate enough, when the Sun is removed towards the other Tropick; because of a Ridge of Mountains at some Distance within the Land, said to be frequently in Winter cover'd with Snow, over which the Air as it passes, must needs be much chilled. Hence it comes to pass, that the Air coming according to the general Rule, out of the N. E. in the *Indian* Seas, is sometimes hotter, sometimes colder than that which by this Circulation is returned out of the S. W. and by Consequence, sometimes the Under-Current or Wind is from the N. E. sometimes from the S. W.

39. That this has no other Cause, is clear from the Times wherein these Winds set in, viz. in April, when the Sun begins to warm those Countreys to the North, the S. W. *Monsoon* begins, and blows during the Heats till October; when the Sun being retir'd, and all Things growing cooler Northward, and the Heat increasing to the South, the North-East Winds enter, and blow all the Winter till April again. And it is undoubtedly from the same Principle, that to the Southwards of the *Æquator*, in part of the *Indian* Ocean, the North-West Winds succeed the South-East, when the Sun draws near the Tropick of *Capricorn*.

40. But I must Confess, that in this latter occurs a Difficulty not well to be accounted for, which is, why this Change of the *Monsoons* should be any more in this Ocean, than in the same Latitudes in the *Æthiopic*, where there is nothing more certain than a S. E. Wind all the Year.

41. 'Tis likewise very hard to conceive, why the Limits of the Trade-Wind should be fixt about the Thirtieth Degree of Latitude all round the Globe; and that they should so seldom transgress or fall short of those Bounds; as also that in the *Indian* Sea, only the Northern Part should be subject to the changeable *Monsoons*, and in the Southern there be a constant S. E.

These are Particulars that merit to be consider'd more at large, and furnish a sufficient Subject for a just Volume; which will be a very commendable Task for such, who being us'd to Philosophick Contemplation, shall have leisure to apply their serious Thoughts about it.

42. As for the North-East Winds, which the *Greeks* call *Etesie*, and which set in at the end of July, and

blow all August in *Greece*, *Italy*, and other Countreys as *Pliny* has told us, they seem to proceed from hence, viz. That the Sun coming to our Tropick at the Summer Solstice, does not only heat the Air directly under it, but diffuses its Heat further North; which Air mounts into the upper Region, and makes room for the more Northern Air, which is heavier and thicker, to come into its Place. Now after this Air is come in, in great abundance, and the Sun retires again towards the South, its own pressure puts it into a Circulation, and being rarified, it mounts, and comes to the North again thro' the upper Region, and so causes a South Wind, which *Pliny* observes to succeed the *Etesie* about the Autumnal *Æquinox*.

43. After this the Stream turns again thro' an overcharge of Air and Vapours crouded up in the North Parts, which produces a N. W. by N. Wind. This Stream, as *Pliny* says, continues all the Autumn; and then through the Winter Season, we have North-East Winds from *Nova Zembla*, and the Northern Parts of *Muscovy*. These Winds coming over vast Tracts of Land, cover'd with Snow and Ice, are extream Cold; and they blow in this Season, because the Air on the left Hand, with respect to the North, being exhausted, the Stream must needs flow from that Part, where the Cold is greatest, and the Air thickest. But a N. W. by N. Wind preceeds the N. E. because it comes from that Quarter, where there are very wide Seas, over which it finds a smoother Passage, than over the uneven Tracts of Land, which lie directly between us and the N. E.

44. And this is the Reason, why the Winds are more regular and constant by Sea than by Land. For the smooth Surface of the Water has nothing to retard their Current, or turn them out of their way; but by Land they meet with Mountains, Valleys, Woods, and other Obstacles, whereby they are retarded, and turn'd aside. Besides, the Vapours which rise out of the Sea, are nearly equal; whereas those from Land are more or less, according as the Wind serves, by which means the Stream of the Air may be variously altered.

45. From the same Cause it is, that the Winds by Land vary so much; concerning which we cannot be nicely exact, unless we knew how to describe the Situation and Nature of all Countreys; which cannot be done, since they were never yet sufficiently known. We must be satisfied with this general hint, that the Mountains and Woods, the Heat and Cold, the Moisture or Dryness of Countreys create such endless varieties in them, as cannot be reduced to any certain Rules.

46. If the causes of Tempests and Hurricanes be demanded, they are hardly to be accounted for in all Particulars. However it may in the first place be noted, that the ratio of all Liquids is much the same, and therefore an extraordinary Motion may be excited in the Air, by the same way as it is in the Water. Now if Water fall from a high Place, or if there be a Confluence of several Streams together, this gives it a violent Motion, and causes many Whirlings and Eddies in it. This is apparent in the Torrents falling down from Rocks, and the Confluences of Rivers. If therefore something Analogous to this may happen in the Air, there must needs be furious Tempests of Wind rais'd in it. And such a Thing may happen, if an extraordinary quantity of Vapours be driven by the Wind upon a certain place, which they cannot easily get over by Reason of Mountains or contrary Winds which oppose them. For Example, suppose a Wind from some Point between North and East, carry a vast Collection of Vapours out of *Africa* into the *Caribbe* Isles; this Wind lights upon the Continent of *America*; now 'tis possible, that not only the Mountains and Woods of *Peuama* may resist the Current of this Wind, and croud the Vapours together there; but a contrary Wind from a Point between South and West, may blow at the same Time on the Western Shore of *America*, which shall force the Vapours back again.

When



When such a rencounter happens, there must be a wild Uproar in the Air about the *Caribbe Isles*, and in all that Tract between *South* and *North-America*, and the Vapours in this circular Motion, must needs be furious on all sides, just as it is in Water. For we see at the Confluence of two Rivers, if their Currents be rapid at the place where they fall in, they cause violent Eddies, which whirl about Things that are cast into them, swallowing them for a Time, and then throwing them up again.

47. This shews us the Reason, why heavy Bodies are often tost in the Air by the whirlings of Hurricanes, and then dash to the Ground again. For the Air being in a circular Motion is with great Fury tost backwards and forwards between the Ground and the Clouds. For as the Waters of the rowling Sea don't run to the Shoars in an even Stream, but in such Waves as dash by fits and turns; so the Course of a violent Wind is in broken and distinct Blasts:

— *Ut undâ impellitur undæ,*

*Urgeturque eadem veniente, urgetque priorem.*

48. Such Tempests don't extend very far, (tho' their Bounds are uncertain) because as the Neighbouring Air gives way to them, they spend themselves in the progress of their Motion. Thus when a great Stone is cast into the Water, we see a great Agitation round about the place where it fell; but the more the Waves retire from the Center of Motion, the slower and less sensible they grow. And as such Motions don't last long in the Water, no more do they in the Air, for the same Reason.

49. Though there may be unusual Storms of Wind any where, when the Air and Vapours are driven together thereabout by contrary Winds; yet they are more frequent about the *Caribbe Isles*, especially when the Sun is vertical there, in *June* and *August*; for their Air being rarified by the Sun's heat, the usual Winds bring thither a vast quantity of Air and Vapours, which being crowd'd together in the Gulf of *Caribbe*, cause a great Æstuation about the neighbour *Islands*. When the Sun is on this side the Æquator, as we said before, the Air is more rarified thereabout, and it may so happen, that the *S. S. E. Wind*, which constantly blows beyond the Line, may sometimes transgress its Limits, and bring the Vapours of the *Æthiopick Sea* to the same place, where those of the *Atlantick* are already gather'd; which being kept in by the Shores of *America*, must necessarily be driven about the *Caribbe Isles*.

50. These are plausible Conjectures, but they cannot be affirm'd for certain Truths, till we are assur'd by good Observations, that at the Time of the Hurricanes, there is a Concourse of all the Winds from the adjacent Seas, about the *Caribbe Isles*; which is an Observation not easily made.

51. To come now to the common Phenomena of Winds, 1. The dry ones seem to be such as carry few Vapours along with them and therefore lick off the moist Particles from Bodies o're which they pass. Thus in *Holland* the *North* and *East Wind* with the intermediate Points, are drying: Because the cold *Northern Sea* yields but few Vapours, in Comparison of those which come from warmer Parts of the Ocean: And from thence towards the *East* are vast Tracts of Land, where the heat at *Midsummer* is but very small. But the other Winds, especially the *Westerly* are moist, because they issue from warm and vaporous Parts. The *Western Ocean* seldom fails to send us rainy Winds. However this Property varies according to the various Situation

b. 11. of Countreys. \* *Pliny* says, that in *Africa* the South Wind blows clear, and the N. E. is cloudy; because the dry Desert of *Africa* don't emit Vapours enough to produce any considerable Rains; whereas the *Mediterranean*, which lies to the N. E. of *Africa*, yields Vapours in great abundance.

52. 2. Such Winds gather Clouds, as blow from the Quarters where the Vapours arise, which in Con-

junction with the Vapours of our own Region, fill the Air. On the other side, those Winds make fair Weather, which bring little Vapour along with them, and bear away that which hangs over us.

53. Winds are warm or cold, as the Countreys are from whence they blow. And therefore when a brisk Wind blows from a cold Quarter, it allays the heat of Summer, which is very tiresome in still Weather. Thus a quick Blast of a pair of Bellows will put out a Flame, which a gentle Blowing increaseth. For the quick Blast drives all the Flame to one side, where, except it find extraordinary Store of Aliment, it is stifled by the force of the incumbent Air: But a gentle Wind augments the Motion of the Flame every way, and makes it seize on more Parts of the Fuel.

54. Now because all the heat or cold of Wind, proceeds from the heat or cold of the Countrey whence it blows; therefore the same Winds are not or cold every where. Beyond the Line, they are just the reverse of what they are with us. Their cold Winds are from the *South*, as ours are from the *North*. And as our *South*-Winds are warm, for no other Reason but because they bring us an Air heated by the Sun, for the very same Reason, the *North*-wind are warm to our *Antipodes*.

55. From what has been said it is manifest enough, that the Sun is the cause of Wind, and Motion the cause of Vapours. But if we except those constant and periodical Winds which blow in some Seas, the limits of the rest cannot be determin'd, nor can we say when they will begin, or when they will end. For instance, we cannot give a reason, why an *East Wind* shall generally blow one Summer, and a *West Wind* another. Possibly the Reason of this might be discover'd, if for several Years together a nice Observation were made of the Winds, and their shiftings in several Countreys; for that which seems unconstant and irregular to us, might perhaps be found to follow certain Courses; at least we should know how far a rais'd Wind would continue its blast. But till such Experiments are made, we must rest satisfied with Conjectures.

56. There are some who fancy, that the Waters in the Bowels of the Earth are rarified into Vapours by the subterraneous Fires, and that those Vapours issuing out at the chinks of the Ground, create Wind. And because the Situation of Mountains is commonly such, as permits those Vapours to flow but one way, therefore, say they, the vehemence of the Wind is in such or such a Place. This they endeavour to make out by the Experiment of the *Æolipyle*, which is a Brass-ball with a Neck, in which there is a very slender Pipe opening into the Ball, thro' which they pour Water into the Cavity thus. First, They throw the Ball into the Fire, that the Air in it may be dilated, and go out at the slender Pipe aforesaid. Then they immerse it in cold Water, whereby the remaining Air is condensed, and makes room for the Water to enter. Which done, the Ball is put into the Fire again, and the Vapours issue out of it with great Violence like Wind.

57. But then they shew us no Place, whence the Matter of the Winds can come with so much force. They talk indeed of \* *Caves* which are the Store-houses of the Winds; but if it were so, all places must be full of Caves, whereas we hear of but very few. Besides, in the Places where such Caves are, the same Winds would blow constantly, or however would seldom fail; but this is what was never found yet. So that we had better acknowledge, that the reason and peculiar Causes of the variable Winds are unknown to us; especially since they blow by Sea as well as by Land, as far as the out-bounds of the constant Winds. A larger or less quantity of Vapours, together with the change of Seasons, causes a ferment in the Air, this is plain; but the Reason why it should be so, is known to him alone who sees all the Air at one view, and knows the various Changes in it; which 'tis past Man's skill or ability to find out.



# A VIEW of the EARTH,

As it was Known to the

# ANCIENTS.

**INSULÆ BRITANICÆ.** { Greater. { Britain, subdivided into { Albion or Britania Major. Eng<sup>l</sup>and  
Caledonia. Scotland.  
Ierne five Hibernia. Ireland.  
Lesser. { Vectis, Wight. Mona, Anglesey. Moneda Man.  
Ebudes or Hebrides, the Western Islands of Scotl.  
Orcaides, the Northern Isl. of Scotl.  
Thule.

**IBERIA EUROPÆA. or CELTIBERIA.** { Tarraconensis. Containing all the North and East Provinces  
of the present Spain.  
**HISPANIA, or SPAIN.** Divided into { Lusitania. The present Portugal, with part of Leon and  
part of both the Castiles.  
Bætica. The South Part beyond the River Guadiana, or  
Andalusia and Part of Granada.

**Islands** { Gadera. Cadix.  
Two Pityusa, Ivica and Formentera.  
Two Baleares. Majorca, and Minorca.

**GAUL or GALLIA.** { The present FRANCE, and Part of  
**TRANSALPINA.** { the Netherl. Divided into

**CELtica** five Lugdunensis. Contain-  
ing all that lyes between the Seine on the  
North, the Loire on the South, and the  
Soane on the E. viz. Normandy, Britain,  
Anjou, &c.

**AQUITANICA.** All the Countrey  
between the Loire Garonne and Ocean.  
The present Orleannois and Guienne.

**NARBONENSIS.** Savoy, Dauphine,  
Provence and Languedoc.

**GERMANIA.** So much of the present Ger-  
many as lyes between the Baltick Sea on the  
North, the Danube on the South, the Rhine on  
the West, and the Weisel on the East.

**VINDELICIA.** Between the Danube and the Inne, and Lake of Constance, i. e. part of Swabia and Bavaria.

**RHÆTIA.** The present Tyrol Countty. The Grisons, and Trent.

**NORICUM.** Austria, Salzburg, and so much of Carinthia as lyes on this side the Drave.

**PANONIA.** { Superior. Stiria, part of Austria, Windischmarck, the rest of Corinthia, Carniola and Croatia.  
Inferior. Bosnia, Sclavonia, and part of Hungary.

**GALLIA CISALPINA** was the North Part of Italy, which has since born the  
Name of Lombardy.

**ITALLIA.** { Insubria. The present Milanese, &c.  
Liguria. The Genouese.  
Etruria and  
Tuscia. Tuscany.  
Umbria. The greatest Part of the State of the Church.  
Picenum. The Marquisate of Ancona.  
Latinum. The Campagna di Roma.  
Samnium. Abruzzo.  
Campania. Lavara.  
Apulia. Capitanis, &c.  
Calabria. Otranto.  
Lucania. Basilicate.  
Magna Græcia. The present Calabria.

**Islands on it's** { Sicilia five Trinacria.  
**Coasts.** { Sardinia.  
Corfica.

**SARMATIA EUROPÆA,** contain'd so much of Poland as lyes beyond the R. Weisel, and so much of Mus-  
covy as lyes between the Head of the Don R. and an oblique Line drawn thence N. W. to the Golf of Finland, where-  
by, Moscow, Rescow, Tweer, Bielski, Part of Pleskow and Novogorod-Weliki; which are Provinces of Musco-  
vy; together with Livonia, Courland, Samogitia, Lithuania and Polish Prussia, as also the lower Part of Musco-  
vy to the Crim Tartary were within it's District.

## SCANDINAVIA.



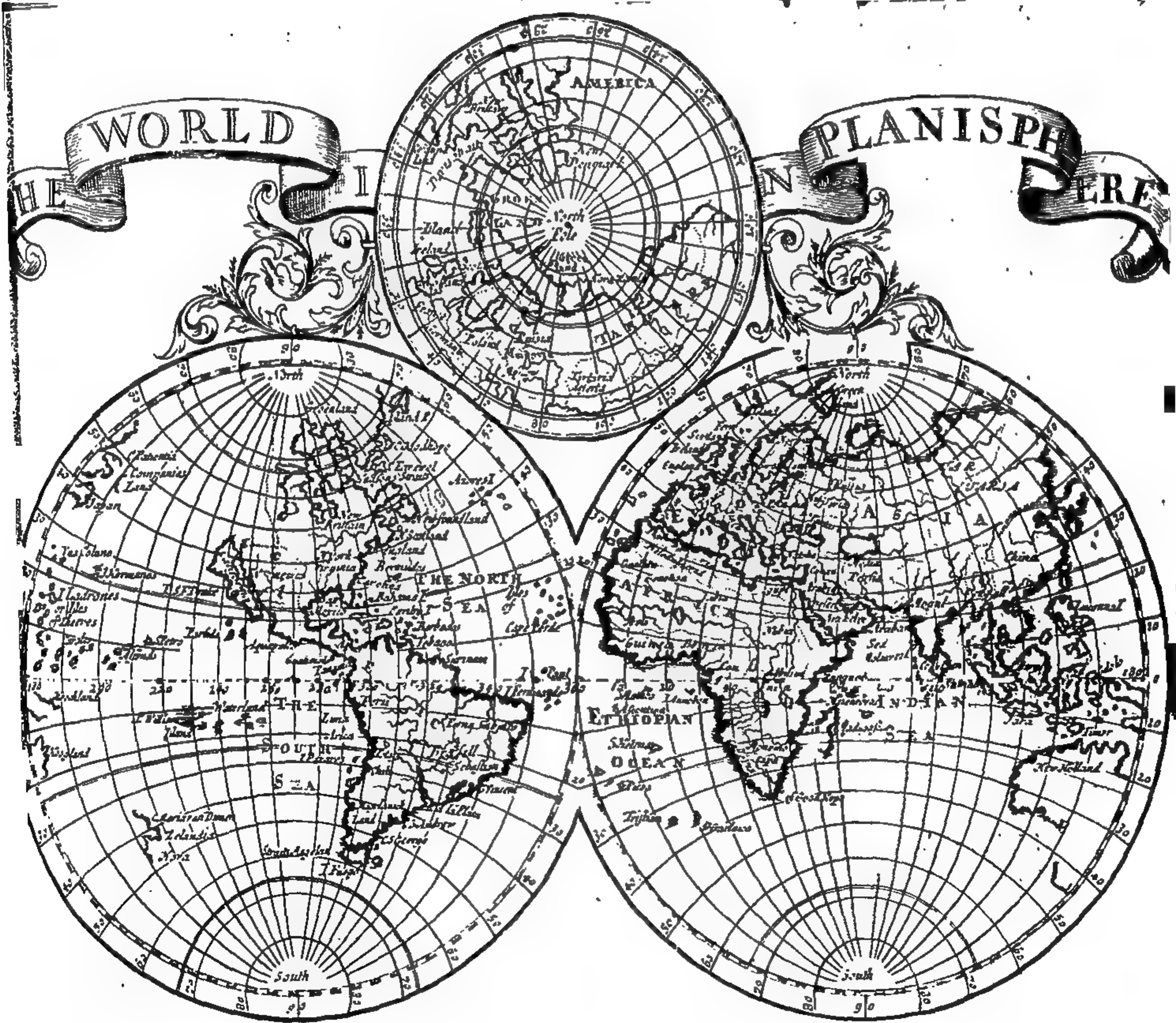
# GEOGRAPHY,

OR, A

## Particular Description

Of all the Known Parts of the

# EARTH.





**SCANDINAVIA.** *Was Norway, and that Part of Sweden, that lies on the same Continent.*  
**CAMBRICA CHERSONESUS.** *Is the same with the Peninsula of Jutland.*  
**TAURICA CHERSONESUS, or EOPHORUS CIMMERIUS,** *is the Peninsula of the Crime Tartary.*  
**JAZYGES.** *Were a People of Sarmatia.*  
**JAZYGES METANASTÆ,** *was the Northern Part of Hungary between Moravia on the West, and Transylvania on the East: From the Frontiers of Poland, to the Frontiers of that Part of Hungary, which was Panonia.*  
**DACIA,** *lay on the North side of the Danube, and comprehended the present Transylvania, Walachia and Moldavia.*  
**MOESIA,** *was the large Country on the South side of the Danube, which was divided into* { Superior, The present Servia. Inferior, Bulgaria and Bessarabia.  
**ILLYRICUM,** *was the Coast of the Adriatick Sea, which was divided into* { Liburnia, The present Morlachia. Dalmatia, Which still bears the same Name.  
**THRACIA,** *was the same with the present Romagnia.*  
**GRÆCIA,** *was divided into* { Hellas vel Græcia Propria. Thessalia. Macedonia. Epirus and Albania. Peloponnesus, or the present Morea.  
**ISLANDS** *in the Ionian Sea, too many to enumerate in this Place.*

ASIA.

**ASIA Minor** { *Contained many Nations and Kingdoms, which we have specified in our Description of that Country in the following Work.*  
**NATOLIA.** {  
**SYRIA** { Camagena. Coelo-Syria. Palmyrena. Batanza. } *The Situation and Limits of these Countreys we have told in the Work.*  
**PHOENICIA.**  
**PALESTINA.** { Galilea. Samaria. Trachonitis. Petra. Judza. Idumæa. } *These also we have shewn there.*  
**ARABIA.** { Petra. Deserta. Felix. } *The same.*  
**SCYTHIA.** *Great Tartary.*  
**SARMATIA ASIATICA.** *Circass and Zagatbay.*  
**COLCHIS.** *Mengrelia.*  
**IBERIA.** { *Imeritia.*  
**ALBANIA.** { *Georgia.*  
**ARMENIA.** *Turcomania.*  
**ASSYRIA.** *Diarbeck.*  
**MESOPOTAMIA.** *Curdistan.*  
**CHALDEA. vel BABYLONIA.** *Terack.*  
**PERSIA.** *The Ancient Provinces, whereof are set forth in the Work.*  
**INDIA.** { *Intra Gangem.*  
*Extra Gangem.*  
*Taprobana Ins.* *Ceylon.*  
*Aurea Chersonesus.* *The Peninsula of Malacca.*  
**SERICA.** *Cathay.*  
**SINÆ.** *China, little known to the Ancients.*

AFRICA.

**MAURITANIA.** *The present Barbary, divided into* { *Tingitana, the West Part*  
*Numidia, the East Part.*  
**AFRICA PROPRIA or Minor.** *Tunis. Tripoli.*  
**LYBIAMARMARICA.** *Bazea.*  
**LYBIA propria vel exterior.**  
**ÆGYPTUS. THEBAIS.** *Ægypt.*  
**GETULIA.** *Biledulgerid.*  
**LYBIA interior sive DESERTA.**  
**ÆTHIOPIA.**

EUROPE



# E U R O P E.



OF the Name of Europe the Ancients tell many fabulous Stories, and make it deriv'd from a certain Daughter of Agenor King of Phœnicia, nam'd Europa, whom Jupiter falling in Love with, metamorphoz'd himself into a Bull, and swam with her on his Back to the Island Creet or Candy. But a little to palliate this Fable, the Poetical Part is taken away by others, and the Story told, That one Asterius a Cretan Captain, making War with the Phœnicians, carried away this charming Princess, and sail'd with her in a Ship call'd The Bull to Creet, where he married her, and had Issue Minos and Rhadamantbus, whom the Poets make two of the Judges of Hell. This Rape is by Historians judg'd to have happen'd about the Year of the World 2665. in the time of Gideon Judge of Israel.

But whether this Lady, or any other particular Person,

or whether the small Province of Thrace, call'd Europa, gave Name to this part of the World, we must conclude with Herodotus, is utterly unknown. But whence soever the Name was deriv'd, it was call'd Europa by the Romans, and at this time l'Europa by the Italians and Spaniards, l'Europe by the French, and Europe by the English, but by the Turks, Rumeli or Alfrank, Frankoba by the Georgians, and Frankistan by the rest of the People of Asia.

It is bounded on the North by the Frozen Ocean; on the South by the Mediterranean Sea, which divides it from Africa; on the East by Asia, from which it is parted by the Archipelago, the Euxine or Black Sea, and the Palus Mæotis, or Sea of Zabacha, and thence by a Line drawn from the River Tanais or Don, to the River Oby in Muscovy, and on the West it is bounded by the Atlantick Ocean.

Europe is seated between the 34th and 72 Degrees of Latitude,



# E U R O P E.

circle, and between the 8th and 10th Degree of Longitude, reckoning the first Meridian to pass through the Island of *Tahiti*; and contains in breadth from the North Cape to *Cape Hispan* in the *Mexa*, about 2000 Miles: And in length from *Cape St. Vincent* in the West, to the Mouth of the River *Oby* in the East about 3000 Miles.

Altho' *Europe* be the least of the four Parts of the World it is however more considerable than any of them; being much to be prefer'd for the Mildness of the Air, the Fertility of the Soil throughout, the many Navigable Rivers, the great Plenty of Corn, Cattel, Wine and Oyl, and all Things necessary, not only for Subsistence but even for the Luxury of Human Life; but especially for the Beauty, Strength, Courage, Ingenuity and Wisdom of its Inhabitants; the Excellency of their Governments, the Equity of their Laws, the Freedom of their Subjects, and which surpasses all, the Sanctity of their Religion.

*Europe* was Peopled after the Flood, as is generally believ'd, by the Posterity of *Japhet*, who came from the lesser *Asia* over the *Hellspont* into *Greece*. Tho' others say, that those of *Shem*, passing by Land betwixt the *Caspian-Sea* and the *Palus Meotis*, went thro' *Tartary* and *Syberia* into *Scandia*, and thence afterwards into *France*, *Germany*, &c. Whether of those two Opinions be most to be credited, we know not: But be that as it will, *Europe* hath for many Ages been exceeding Populous, and her Inhabitants Illustrious for their Courage, Wisdom and Vertue; by which they Conquer'd the greatest part of *Asia* and *Africa*, and made those Parts subject to the two Empires of *Greece* and *Rome*. And in these latter Ages, almost one half of the Earth that was formerly unknown, hath been discover'd by *Europeans*, and possess'd by the Colonies, they have sent thither.

The CHRISTIAN RELIGION is profess'd throughout all *Europe*, except that Part of it possess'd by the *Turks*. But by reason of the Innovations made by the Church of *Rome*, the Western Church is divided; *Italy*, *Spain*, *France*, part of *Germany*, and the *Netherlands*, with *Poland*, still following the Doctrine of the Church of *Rome*, whereas *England*, *Scotland*, *Ireland*, *Denmark*, *Sweden*, *Norway*, great part of *Germany*, the *Unit'd Provinces*, *Switzerland*, &c. have embraced the Reformation, and profess the Protestant Religion. And in *Muscovy*, some parts of *Poland*, in *Walachia*, *Moldavia*, *Podolia*, *Volhinia*, and *Greece*, the Doctrine of the Eastern or Greek Church is follow'd.

For Learning and Arts the *Europeans* have been most renown'd: All the Scholastick Sciences they have brought to a much greater Perfection than either *Asiatics* or *Africans* ever did: And the Invention and Improvement of many useful and ingenious Arts, particularly Navigation, is wholly owing to the Genius and Industry of the Inhabitants of this part of the World.

The Languages of *Europe* are many, but are all deriv'd from these six Original ones, viz. The Greek, Latin, Teutonic or Old German, Celtic, Gothic and Sclavonic; different Dialects whereof, with accidental Additions, being the Languages of all the considerable Parts of *Europe*, except *Tartary* and *Turky*.

The Governments of *Europe* are mostly Monarchical, but exceedingly more easie and gentle than those of *Asia* and *Africa*.

In *Europe* are these Sovereign Princes and States, viz.  
The Emperor of *Germany*.  
The Emperor or Czar of *Muscovy*.  
The Grand Seigneur or Emperour of the *Turks*.  
The Queen of *Great Britain*.  
The King of *Spain*.  
The King of *France*.

The King of *Portugal*.  
The King of *Sweden*.  
The King of *Denmark*.  
The King of *Poland*.  
The King of *Hungary*.  
The Pope.  
The King of *Prussia*.

Six Republicks, viz. 1. The State of *Venice*; 2. The States General of the *United Netherlands*; 3. The Cantons of *Switzerland*; 4. The *Grisons*; 5. The Republick of *Genoa*. And 6. The Republick of *Lucca*.

There are besides these, no less than 300 Subaltern Sovereign Princes in *Germany*, *Italy*, &c. who tho' they are Tributaries or Feoffees to the Emperour, or some other Superiour Prince, have Supream Authority in their own Estates: Of these there are both Spiritual and Temporal.

Of the Spiritual the most considerable are,  
The Grand Master of *Malta*.  
The Grand Master of the *Teutonic Order* in *Germany*.  
The Three Spiritual Electors of the Empire, viz. The Archbishops of *Mentz*, *Triers* and *Cologne*.  
The Archbishop of *Salzburg*, and Twenty Two Bishops in *Germany*.  
The Grand Prior of *Malta*, who is also call'd, The Grand Prior of *Germany*.  
Several Abbots, whereof the Abbot of *Fulda* in *Germany* hath the largest Territory.  
Several Provosties of the Church, whereof the most considerable is that of *Berchtelsghaden*.

Of the Temporal Princes there are  
Five Electors of the Empire, viz. The Duke of *Bavaria*, the Duke of *Saxony*, the Marquis of *Brandenburg*, the Count Palatine of the *Rhine*, and the Duke of *Hanover*.  
The Arch-Duke of *Austria*.  
The Great Duke of *Tuscany*.

Many Dukes; the most considerable whereof are  
The Dukes of *Savoy*, *Mantua*, *Modena*, *Parma*, &c. in *Italy*.  
The Dukes of *Wurtemberg*, *Luncenburg*, *Mechlenburg*, *Holftein*, *Lawenburg*, *Weimar*, &c. in *Germany*. And  
The Duke of *Courland* in *Poland*.

Several Marquisses, viz.  
Of *Baden*, *Durlach*, *Ohnspach*, and *Culembach* in *Germany*.  
Several in *Italy*, whose Estates are of small Extent.  
The Landgrave of *Hesse Darmstat*.

Several Princes, whereof the most considerable are  
The Princes of *Orange*, *Anhalt*, *Dombes*, *Monaco*, *Sofarin* and *Castiglione*.

Divers Counts, the principal whereof are  
The Counts *Nassaw*, *Furstenburg*, *East-Frizeland*, *Henzelzen*, *Arenburg*, &c.

Besides these, there are  
The Cham of *Tartary*.  
The Waiwoods of *Transilvania*, *Walachia*, *Moldavia*, and the *Ukraine*.  
And the small Republicks of *Geneva* and *Ragusa*.

The Division of *Europe* into its different Regions will be seen in the following Description of them.



# G R E A T B R I T A I N.

BRITAIN, Britannia, in General.



**B** R I T A I N, an Island large, populous and fruitful, is, in Longitude, about 15 Degrees and 50 Scruples; and in Latitude, in the North-part 59 Degree, 40 Scruples; but in the South about 50 Degrees and 10 Scruples. Among the Ancients it was look'd upon to

be so considerable, that in their Writings they call'd it *Insula Magna*; and Caesar went yet higher, boasting, That he had found another World. By the best Estimate that can be taken, 'tis computed at about 1836 Miles in Compass, *vz.* from Cathness to the Land's-end, 912. from the Land's-end to the Kentish-foreland,



*foreland*, 320. and from thence all along the Eastern-coast to *Carbnefs*, about 704. The Ancients differ exceedingly in their accounts of this Matter, but their Authority is not much to be heeded: For few of those Writers knew the Island, and those that did, had not yet such a near acquaintance with it, as to take its Dimensions with a tolerable exactness.

The FORM of it is Triangular, the *Lands-end*, the *Kensif-foreland* and *Carbnefs*, shooting out into so many Promontories, and making the three Corners. It's Bound, the Sea, has several Names, adapted to the several Shores: On the North, 'tis called the *Northern-sea*; on the West, the *Irish-sea*; on the South, the *Channel*; and, on the East, the *German-Ocean*. This advantage of the Sea surrounding it, as 'tis a Security against Enemies, so also against the violent Colds to which the Climate would be otherwise expos'd: It supplies us both with Peace, and Health. For the Tides and constant Motions of the Sea send us in a softening sort of Vapour which qualifies the natural sharpness of the Air, even to that degree, that in some parts of *France* and *Italy* they feel more of the Winter than we in *England*.

The SOIL does, in a great measure, owe its Fertility to the same cause; the Vapours not only softening the Air, and by that means nourishing every thing that grows, but also furnishing us with easie Showers in their proper Seasons. Insomuch, that our Ancestors had a fancy, that this must needs be the *Fortunate Islands*, so much talk'd of by the Ancients; as having of all others the best claim to those agreeable Pleasures and Delights, with which they furnish'd that happy place. I know not whether it was, nor more the Courage and Vigour (observ'd to be in these Westerly Inhabitants) than any natural Cause, which gave rise to that Opinion, That the farther West, the Constitutions were more firm and the Courage greater.

That part of the Island which lies toward the Western Ocean; is mountainous, as in *Cornwall*, *Wales*, and also many parts of *Scotland*; but the inner Tracts are generally a plain, champion Country, abounding with Corn and Pasture. The most remarkable MOUNTAIN, is that continu'd Ridge which runs from South to North, dividing, as it were, the whole Island into the *East* and *West* parts, and is by Writers call'd the *English Apennine*.

The ISLANDS lie round it in great numbers; some single, as the *Isle of White*, the *Isle of Man*, &c. others as it were in Clusters, as the *Cassiterides*, the *Orades*, and other little Slips that are scatter'd all along the Coast of *Scotland*. It has on all sides very convenient Harbours, and is accommodated with navigable Rivers in abundance, which convey the Riches of the Sea and of Foreign Nations into the very heart of the Kingdom. Of all the rest, these three are by far the most considerable; the *Tames*, the *Severn*, and the *Humber*, which carry along with them into the Sea vast numbers of lesser Rivers. Their course, with the Towns and Cities they touch upon, are better represented in the Map, than they would be by an enumeration of Particulars.

The INHABITANTS of the several Parts, are of a different original. Those of *Cornwall* and *Wales* are in a great measure the Posterity of the Ancient *Britains*, who, upon the Invasions first of the *Picts* and then of the *Saxons*, betook themselves to those mountainous corners and out-skirts, and have ever since maintained both themselves and their Language too, against the mixture of Foreigners. Of late years indeed, the *Cornish* are come over to the

*English* modes and ways of Living. and have begun to lay aside their ancient Tongue; which cannot perhaps be more plausibly attributed to any one thing than the great number of Representatives they return to Parliament; for whom 'tis natural to carry back with them the Humours and Inclinations of the Court, and, at their return, to settle themselves in a method of Living agreeable to the Entertainments they meet with in their time of Attendance. But the *Welsh* have no such intercourse with the polite parts of the Kingdom; and so keep on in the old Channel, both as to Customs, Language, and other Circumstances of Life. The *Scots* are originally *Irish*, but not without a mixture of *Picts*, who (tho' they were subdued by the former, and fell under their Government) could not yet be entirely cut off, any more than the Conquer'd usually are in other Kingdoms. Bede and our other Historians are very clear and positive in the matter, That the West-parts of *Scotland* were People from *Ireland*; and the *Irish*, which is their Language puts it beyond all dispute: But the exact time when this should happen, is a point the Learned still differ about, while the Natives are concern'd for their own Antiquity, and their Neighbours do not love to see them run up their Original too high. As for the rest of the Island, tho' the *Britains* were for many hundred years in full possession, and after that the *Roman* made a considerable figure among us; yet we can not well imagine there is much of the Blood of either Nation among us at this day. The *Britains* may with some Reason value themselves upon their descent from the *Romans*, with whom, in such a vast compass of Time, they could not but have frequent Inter-marriages, and so incorporate themselves as were into one People. This they may insist upon, and by such a step be carried to the *Trojans*, (whom they are so fond of) with more reason and less vanity. But whoever considers, how the Foreign Wars under the later Emperors clear'd this Island of the *Roman* and how the prevailing power of the *Saxons* sweep'd off the miserable *Britains*, will have but a mean opinion of our Title to a Descent from either. 'Tis true we have more of the *Roman* Language to shew than the *Britains*, but we had it at second hand only from the *Normans*; whereas, the Remains they produce have been deriv'd to them from Age to Age, ever since their mutual Correspondence with that People. So that the *Saxons*, as far as we can go with a tolerable probability; and they, along with the *Danes*, (who for many years over-ran the whole Kingdom) and the *Normans* (who conquer'd it) are the great Ingredients of our Inhabitants at this day.

And as we are a mixture of the Northern Nation and of the French or Norman; so we seem to retain something of the HUMOUR and TEMPER of both, keeping a mean between the two. The French-man is brisk, gay and airy; the Hollander or German is unactive, heavy and unweildy; the English-man has neither so much of the first Qualities as carry him to Levity: nor of the second, as to make him fairly chargeable with Dulness. His Fancy does not out-run his Judgment, nor his Judgment drown his Fancy. This difference is very remarkable in particulars, War and Learning. In the first, we are more notorious than the slowness of the German, and the quickness of the French, and the settled Courage and Conduct of the English. In the second, nothing more apparent, than the Bulks of Lectures, and Comments, and Common-places, that the first has given us; the little Whimsies and pert Essays that



have had from the second ; and the solid Argument and substantial Matter which the last have sent into the World. The *French*, 'tis true, have done great Honour to Learning, under the protection of a Prince, who has establish'd a more lasting Name, by eminent Patronage to that, than by the progress of his Arms. But they have this advantage, that their Language has settl'd it self in most parts of *Europe*, and conveys the utmost extent of their Learning, as far as it reaches. Could but our *English* Tongue propagate it self into as many Corners of the World, or would the great Men among us make themselves Masters of the *Roman* Style, and so pen their Discourses in a Language universally known, our Books would undoubtedly make their own way: They would carry Instruction abroad, and bring Reputation to our own Kingdom. Our Divinity, particularly, as it is grave and substantial, so it is much courted and admired by Foreigners ; insomuch, that of late years we have had great numbers of  *Germans, Swedes, Danes*, and other Nations, who have travell'd into *England* upon no other design, but to inform themselves in our Methods of Preaching, and by learning the Language to be capable of receiving profit by our Writings.

The State of RELIGION, so far as we have any light from History, is in short thus. When *Julius Cæsar* came over, his short stay and small correspondence with the Natives gave him little opportunity of informing himself in their Affairs. But when he observes, that such of the *Gauls* as desired to be instructed in the Rites and Discipline of the *Druids*, came over into *Britain* for that purpose, 'tis plain that this was the Religion of the place. Nor need we build only upon that hint, after he has told us how at that time 'twas a current Opinion, that the Discipline of the *Druids* came originally out of *Britain*, and was thence transplanted into *Gaul*. This was their Religion, till the plantation of Christianity ; for which their old Persuasion (which taught 'em to believe *One God*, and the *Immortality of the Soul*) may seem in some measure to have made way. How early it was introduc'd is a point which has been much disputed among the Learned. Some will have it, that *Joseph of Arimathea* sail'd from *Gaul*, and preach'd Christianity among them : But that, in several particulars, looks too like a piece of Monkish Forgery. The general Tradition is, that, at King *Lucius's* request, Pope *Eleutherius* sent over *Eluthanus* and *Meduanus* to preach Christ ; an Opinion which is handl'd at large by Archbishop *Usher* and Dr. *Stillingsfleet*. The latter of these is inclin'd to have Christianity very early in this Island, proving it to have been planted by no less Hand than that of *S. Paul*. The Reasons alledg'd by the particular Patrons of these Conjectures, are too many and too large for this place : The Authors themselves have deliver'd 'em at large. Upon the Invasion of the *Saxons*, Christianity was confin'd to that poor corner which was the shelter of the *Britains* and nothing but Paganism prevail'd amongst that warlike Crew ; till Pope *Gregory* sent over *Austin* the Monk, who, by his indefatigable Industry, laid such a foundation for Christianity ; that his Successors gain'd ground apace, and in some Years propagated it over the whole Nation. Such was the pious Zeal of those times, that Religion quickly receiv'd encouragement from all Hands, and Kings and Princes honour'd it with *Religious Houses* and *Churches* in great numbers. Thus it went on without Interruption, till the *Danes* broke in upon them ; who, from an innate barbarity and hatred to Religion, as well as a thirst after the Wealth and Riches of those holy

Places, spar'd none of them that lay in their way, but burnt and plunder'd whatever they came near. Upon an accommodation with that People, it reviv'd and grew mightily ; so that *England*, for number of *Religious Houses*, was perhaps as considerable as any part of *Europe*. Till King *Henry* the Eighth by Act of Parliament had them dissolv'd, when (quitting his subjection to the See of *Rome*) he made a Reformation of the Corruptions that had crept in among us and establish'd the *Protestant Religion*.

The first LANGUAGE in this Nation, was *British*, which (as the People and Religion) was driven off by the Conquerors, and succeeded by that of the *Saxons*. By the *Danish* Invasions, a mixture of that Tongue crept in among us ; but did not cause any considerable Alterations, especially as to the Fundamentals, wherein they agree pretty much. But the *Norman* Conqueror, so soon as he was settl'd in his new Territories, quickly discourag'd both ; and succeeded so well in his endeavours to establish the *Norman*, that before the end of *Henry* the Second, (what by contraction of the Old and interpolations of the New) we find the true native *Saxon* quite moulded into another form. For how should it be otherwise ? Their publick Pleadings were in *French*, *French* was the Language of the Court, and Children were to learn no other Tongue. Thus, by degrees, (partly by reason of a fondness we have always entertain'd for *French* Eopperies, and partly because of a harshness that has been still fancy'd to run through our own Language) our Ancestors have endeavour'd to supply and refine it from the *French*, and every Age has been bringing in new Words, new Phrases, and new Dialects. So that now it makes a very great figure in our common Conversation and Writings ; tho' we may still safely affirm, That the most full and significant Words in use among us, are the remains of the old Native Stock. And as it has been an unaccountable Levity in our Ancestors to affect Foreign Commodities when they had more substantial Wares at home ; so would it become their posterity to look back into the Ruins of their original Language, and try whether they cannot meet with expressions of a stronger Meaning, than the loose and verbal Harangue of our Neighbours, agreeable indeed to the Humour of an effeminate Nation, but by no means suited to the masculine Genius of the *English*. This way of restoring our old Words has been of late practis'd, with good success, by an eminent Author.

## SECT. II.

### Of the ancient State of BRITAIN.

The name of *Britannia* and *Insule Britannica* were of a large extent among the Ancients, and us'd sometimes to signify all the Islands lying in this Western part of the World. But to restrain them to the more limited acception : *Britain* (as I observ'd before) was so little known to *Julius Cæsar*, that, as one says, He rather *shew'd* it to the *Romans* than subjected it to the Empire. So that his Accounts of it are short and lame, rather taken from report than any certain knowledge he could have of their Affairs. He tells us. That all the Sea-coasts over against *Gaul* were peopl'd from that Country, but that the inner parts were *Aborigines*, or sprung out of the Ground ; which is a fair Confession that he knew nothing of



the matter. Had he drawn the In-landers from the same Original as he did the Sea-coasts, he had light upon that by Conjecture which after Ages have found reason to advance into an establish'd Opinion. The *British* Language is so much of a piece with the old *Gaulish* (as near as we can judge by the broken remains that are left us of this latter;) the Customs of both Nations were so alike; and 'tis likewise so very natural to imagine, that after the propagation of Mankind, in their progress Westward and their quest after new Countries, out of *Gaul* they should come over into *Britain*, lying within Sight; that an impartial Judge cannot stick in this point. Let it suffice here barely to have recited the common Heads from which the Arguments for this Opinion are fetched; especially since the great Oracle of our Nation, Mr. *Cambden*, has prov'd every Particular with such a strength of Reason and Judgment as puts the matter beyond Dispute. I know the *Britains* are very proud of their original from the *Trojans*, and would fain have *Brutus* to have left his Name to the whole Island; but the same Author has considered the pretences to that Title so exactly, and convinc'd them so fully of their Mistake, that if any thing could, nothing need to be added to what he has left us. *Claudius* was the next Man that came among us, who by his own Conduct and that of *Aulus Plautius*, made his way into the more inward parts of the Island, by the defeat of the *Britains*. After these, *Vespasian*, *Publius Ostorius*, and *Paulinus Suetonius*, prov'd very troublesome to the Inhabitants, who all the while omitted no opportunities of returning their kindness, by surprizing the Roman Legions, entering into Confederacies against their new Governors, and more than once breaking out into actual Rebellion. But it was *Agricola*, who under *Vespasian*, *Titus* and *Domitian*, gave the finishing stroke to the Conquest of *Britain*; not by the same methods which his Predecessors had us'd, Hardships and Severities, but by the more gentle ties of an obliging Humour. 'Tis true, he was almost continually engaging one Party or other of them, for eight years together; but unless his good Temper had seconded this success of his Arms, though he might quell them for the present, yet he had left them in an entire hatred to the Roman Lords, and a full resolution to take up Arms upon the first opportunity. By which means, the Supplies necessary to defend the Garrisons, would have cost the *Romans* more than all the Revenue of the Island was worth. But he observ'd, he had a stubborn morose People to deal with; a Nation that was inur'd to all kinds of Hardship: and therefore instead of Threatnings (which could not work upon them) he betook himself to artificial Insinuations, and began to encourage the *Roman* Customs and Modes of living. This softn'd them by degrees, and melted them into Idleness and Luxury: so that in a short time, he had par'd off that aversion to the *Romans*, and happy was the Man that could imitate them most.

To the *Romans* succeeded the *SAXONS*, who came over upon this occasion. In the Reign of *Valentinian the Younger*, the Necessities of the Empire abroad, had oblig'd the *Romans* not only to recall most of their own Forces out of *Britain*, but also to deprive the Island of her own native Strength by their frequent Levies. The *Scots* and *Picts* (two Warlike People) laid hold of this opportunity to plunder the Frontiers, and make in-roads into the Territories of the *Britains* who by this time were quite dis-

spirited by Slavery, and had suffer'd their old native Courage to dwindle into Eale and Cowardice. In this condition, all the refuge they had, was to fly to the *Romans*, who had neither left them Forces to protect them, nor (which is worse) a manly resolute Spirit to stand upon their own Guard. The *Romans* were too warmly engag'd nearer home, to relieve them; upon which they send the same request to the *Saxons*, who had convinc'd them of their Courage, by their frequent Piracies upon our Coasts even while the *Romans* continu'd among us. So that we find under the later Emperors, the *Comes Litoris Saxonici*, or Count of the Saxon Shore, to have been a standing Officer, whose business it was to guard the Sea-coasts against their In-roads and Depredations. Upon this application, they come over, repel the Enemy, and are mightily pleas'd with their new Quarters, especially being a little straiten'd at home. In short, they begin to lay hold on all occasions of a Quarrel with the *Britains*, pretend they had not stood to their Terms; and carry'd on their Designs so successfully, that they never desisted till they had Banish'd the old Inhabitants, and made themselves Masters of the greatest part of the Island.

The *DANES* about the year 800, though they had not so fair a pretence of coming over, yet by main force edg'd themselves in among the *Saxons*, and us'd them much at the same rate as that People had done the *Britains*. They robb'd and plunder'd, till they had forc'd them to a Composition, and had Lands assign'd them in several parts of the Kingdom. Nor would they be content with this; but made frequent Incursions into their Neighbours Territories, which occasion'd the raising of that sort of Tax call'd *Danegelt*, a Bribe to keep them from over-running the Kingdom. But neither did this do. Their Insolence was such, that the *English* could not long bear it; so, entering into a secret Plot, they made a general havock of them in one single Night, putting them all to the Sword. At this, *Sueno*, King of the *Danes*, was highly enrag'd, and to revenge the Injury, invaded *England* with a strong Army, and possess'd himself of the Crown; which was enjoy'd only by four Kings of that Race, and then return'd to the *Saxons*.

Scarce had the *Saxons* recover'd their ancient Rights and Government, but they fell into a worse Confusion, upon the Death of *Edward the Confessor*. He was an easie Prince, and rather inclin'd to attend the Duties of Religion than the Secular Affairs of his Kingdom. Leaving no Issue behind him, the Title to the Crown came to be contested by two very powerful Parties, who yet had neither of 'em a right to it; for *Edgar Atheling* was the only Man then living of the *Saxon* Line. But *Harold* Earl Godwin's Son took advantage of his tender years, and possess'd himself of the Throne. *William* Duke of *Normandy*, afterwards stiled the Conqueror, took these proceedings very heinously, imagining that by his relation to that Family, by virtue of the Confessor's Promise when he was banish'd into *Normandy*, and also *Harold's* obligation to see it discharg'd, he had fairer pretensions than any other. Whereupon he landed with a powerful Army, Conquer'd the *English* in a set Battle (wherein *Harold* was slain) and immediately took possession of the Government.



SECT. IV.

The Civil Government of BRITAIN.

Of the Administration of the ancient Britains, we have these two general Heads left us by *Julius Cæsar*, That in Times of Peace, the *Druids* had the Conduct of all Civil Affairs; and in Times of War they chose some one of remarkable Courage to be General of their Forces, upon that Expedition. The *Romans* govern'd it by their *Proprætors*, and other subordinate Officers, who were to act according to Instructions from *Rome*, and had some Legions ready for their Defence upon any emergent Occasion. But the *Saxons* as they gain'd Ground, settl'd so many distinct Kingdoms; which upon their entire Conquest, amounted to Seven, and have been since stil'd the *Saxon Heptarchy*. The Names of them, with their Extent and Jurisdiction, are as follows:

The Saxon Heptarchy.

1. The Kingdom of Kent contain'd } The Counties of Kent.
2. The Kingdom of the South-Saxons contain'd } The Counties of Sussex Surrey.
3. The Kingdom of the East-Angles contain'd } The Counties of Norfolk Suffolk Cambridge, with the Isle of Ely.
4. The Kingdom of the West-Saxons contain'd } The Counties of Cornwall Devon Dorset Somerset Wilts Hants Berks.
5. The Kingdom of Northumberland contain'd } The Counties of Lancaster York Durham Cumberland Westmorland Northumberland and Scotland, to the Fryth of Edinburgh.
6. The Kingdom of the East-Saxons contain'd } The Counties of Essex Middlesex, and Part of Hertfordshire.
7. The Kingdom of Mercia contain'd } The Counties of Gloucester Hereford Worcester Warwick Leicester Rutland Northampton Lincoln Huntingdon Bedford Buckingham Oxford Stafford Derby Shropshire Nottingham Chester, and the other Part of Hertfordshire.

But though these were distinct Kingdoms, yet still there was a Face of Monarchy in the Nation; and the Prince that was most Powerful of the Seven, generally Lorded it over the rest, as if they had been only so many tributary Kings. For they were continually at War one with another, and the Conqueror always taking the Dominions of the Enemy into his own Kingdom, they all came at last into that of the *West-Saxons*, under King *Egbert*; who by a publick Edict, order'd the whole Kingdom to be stil'd *Engla-land*, which we have now contracted into *England*. One of his Successors, presently upon this took the Title of *King of Great Britain*, and another that of *Monarch of all Albion*.

The Succession of our English Monarchs from Egbert, is thus:

Came to the Crown.		John,	1199
		Henry III.	1216
Egbert		Edward I.	1272
S. Ethelwolf,		Edward II.	1307
Ethelbald,		Edward III.	1326
Ethelbert,		Richard II.	1377
Ethelred,			
Alfred,			
Edward the Elder,		The Line of Lancaster.	
Athelstan,			
Edmund,		Henry IV.	1399
Eldred,		Henry V.	1412
Edwin,		Henry VI.	1422
Edgar,			
S. Edward, Martyr,			
Ethelred,			
Edmund Ironside,		The Line of York.	
The Danish Race.		Edward IV.	1460
		Edward V.	1483
		Richard III.	1483
Canutus,			
Harold,			
Hardicnute,		The Families United.	
The Saxons Re-possess'd.		Henry VII.	1485
		Henry VIII.	1509
		Edward VI.	1546
S. Edward,		Q. Mary,	1553
Harold,		Q. Elizabeth,	1558
The Normans.		Union of the two Crowns.	
William the Conqueror,		James I.	1603
William Rufus,		Charles I.	1625
Henry I.		Charles II.	1648
Stephen,		James II.	1685
The Saxon Line Restor'd.		WILLIAM III. and	1689
		MARY II.	
Henry II.		ANNE,	1702
Richard I.			



The King is Supreme in all Causes, both *Ecclesiastical* and *Civil*; having the same Power in Matters relating to the Church, that the Pope had, before this Island shew'd his Jurisdiction under *Henry* the Eighth. But yet he cannot enact Laws singly and by himself, but must have the Concurrence of the Lords Spiritual and Temporal, and of the Commons assembled in *Parliament*, before any thing can pass into a Law. The Parliament does not meet but upon the more weighty Affairs of the Kingdom, and are both call'd and dissolv'd at the King's Pleasure, who is suppos'd to be Judge of the Exigencies of the Nation. This is the Supreme Court, wherein Causes are finally determin'd, and from which there lies no Appeal; whereas, Appeals are made to this from the other Courts.

The chief Courts are. 1. The *King's Bench*, so call'd, because the King us'd to sit there in Person; but now administers Justice by a *Lord Chief Justice*, and three more Judges, or as many as he shall think fit. 2. The *Common Pleas* (from determining *Pleas* between Subject and Subject) consists of a *Lord Chief Justice of the Common Pleas*, and three other Judges to assist him. 3. The *Exchequer* (from a Table at which they sat;) where all Matters belonging to the King's Revenue are determin'd by the great Officers and Judges belonging to it, viz. The *Lord Treasurer*, the *Chancellor of the Exchequer*, the *Chief Baron*, and four other *Barons*. 4. The *Chancery*, (so call'd from sitting within the Rails or *Chancels*;) instituted to moderate the Rigour of the Law, which by reason of an infinite number of unforeseen Circumstances that attend a great many Causes, is too often Oppression and Injustice. Hither, therefore, they make their Appeals, who think themselves injur'd by the Letter of the Law: And if it appears that they have *Equity* on their Side, the Judgments given upon strict Law are revers'd, and the Parties reliev'd. In this Court is the *Lord Chancellor*, or *Lord Keeper of the Great Seal*, and twelve *Masters of Chancery*, as Assessors, the chief whereof is the *Keeper of the Rolls*. 5. The *Court of Admiralty*, where Sentence is given in Marine Affairs, by the *Admiral of England*, a Judge, two Clerks, &c. 6. The *Court of Requests* (from the Petitions receiv'd there) managed by the *Lord Privy Seal*, the *Masters of the Requests*, a Clerk, and two or three Attorneys.

The Court of *Wards and Liveries* (from taking Cognizance of the Causes of *Minors*) and the Court of *Star-Chamber* (which was chiefly to restrain the Exorbitances of Great Men, and punish Misdemeanors, &c.) are both abolish'd.

Besides these Courts, the King, for the Ease of the Subject, sends down two Judges into each County; the one of *Life and Death*, and the other of *Nisi Prius*, who are to determine Causes without putting the Parties to the Trouble and expence of giving Attendance at the Superior Courts; except where the Case is weighty and difficult, and then it is referr'd to a Trial at *Westminster*: And as these *Circuits* were contriv'd for the Ease of the Nation in general; for the Peace and good Government of each particular County, the King has *Lord Lieutenants*, whose Care it is that the State suffer no Damage. Each County also has its *Sheriff*, who is to get up the Publick Revenues, to attend the Judges, to take care that such as are condemn'd be duely executed, &c. And several *Justices of the Peace*, who may Commit for *Felonies*, *Trespasses* and other Misdemeanours.

Before the Conquest, we find that *England*, according to its several Branches, was govern'd by three sorts of LAWS, the *West-Saxenlage*, the *Danelage* and the *Merchanlage*. For as the Authority, which the first and last of these three bore in the Hierarchy, was sufficient to establish their own Laws in their Neighbouring Countries; so the Power to which the *Danes* arriv'd, did effectually engage such Places as they over-ran most, in the Use of their Customs and ways of Living. But upon *William* the Conqueror's coming in, these Laws were in a great measure laid aside. At first, he intended to have brought in the *Norman* Usages, and to have establish'd them here entire; till he found the Humour of the *English* were much set upon their own Laws, and so was induced, from a prudent Regard to his own Safety, only to Reform, Alter, Add, &c. but so, that the old Body was his Foundation. Tho' in his whole management of Affairs, he omitted no Opportunities either of Force or Intimation, to discourage the establish'd Customs, and to wean them from the Affection they had to the Usages of their Fore-fathers. Thus, he won upon them by degrees, till he had confirm'd himself in his New Conquests, and in an absolute Power, or something that look'd very like it; especially if we take an Estimate from his Arbitrary Proceedings towards the *English*, rather than from his fair Words, Contracts and Promises; which Conquerors, when they find them inconsistent with their Designs, seldom want either Inclination or Pretences to break and cast off. But the succeeding Kings (whether for want of Policy, or, Courage, or both) found it hard to maintain themselves in that absolute manner of Government, and to complete what their Predecessor had begun. For the People began to insist upon their Liberties (whether justly or unjustly. I shall not determine; 'tis a Controversie has cost Pains and Paper enough already) omitted no Advantages of Wars abroad or Disturbances at home, whereby they might gain Ground and extort new Privileges. More especially in the Reigns of King *John* and *Henry III.* they broke into open Wars, for the Redress of Grievances; and brought them to such Straits, that they were glad to come off by admitting the Nobility and Gentry into a nearer Share of the Government. Whereupon, the Great Charter, call'd *Magna Charta*, was granted, and Statutes began to be made according to the Necessities of the Kingdom; by which, and the *Common Law*, or the common Usages of the Nation, our Law-Courts proceed at this Day, in their Judgments and Decrees.

## SECT. IV.

### *The Ecclesiastical Government.*

The Church of *England* is govern'd by two *Archbishops* and twenty five *Bishops*. The *Archbishop of Canterbury* is Primate of all *England*; the *Archbishop of York* is Primate of *England*, but not of all *England*: A Controversie which caus'd many hot Disputes and Quarrels, but was at last determin'd in favour of *Canterbury*, against all the Pleas and Arguments brought by the other for Independency and Freedom. The *Archbishops* and *Bishops*, with their Extent and Jurisdiction, will best appear from the following Scheme.



Contains

*The other Part of Kent.  
Essex, Middlesex, and part  
of Hertfordshire.  
Suffex.*

*Hampshire, Surrey and Isle  
of Wight, with Gernsey  
and Jersey.*

*Wiltshire and Berkshire.  
Devonshire and Cornwall.  
Somersetshire.  
Glocestershire.*

*Worcestershire, and Part of  
Warwickshire.*

*Herefordshire, and Part of  
Shropshire*

*Staffordshire, Derbyshire,  
and the other Part of  
Warwickshire, with Part  
of Shropshire.*

*Lincolnshire, Leicestershire,  
Huntingdonshire, Bed-  
fordshire, Buckingham-  
shire, and the other Part  
of Hertfordshire.*

*Cambridgeshire, and the  
Isle of Ely.*

*Norfolk and Suffolk.*

*Oxfordshire.*

*Northamptonshire and Rut-  
landshire.*

*Dorsetshire.*

*To these add four in Wales, S. Davids, Llandaff,  
Bangor, and S. Asaph.*

*Cheshire, Richmondshire,  
Lancashire, Part of Cum-  
berland, and of Westmor-  
land, Flintshire and Den-  
bighshire.*

*The Bishoprick of Durham  
and Northumberland.*

*Part of Cumberland and of  
Westmorland.*

*The Isle of Man.*

*Within the Province of  
York, which hath  
Yorkshire and Not-  
tinghamshire for its  
peculiar Diocess, are,*

*Chester*

*Durham*

*Carlisle*

*Sodor*

As to the Precedency of these, the Archbishop of Canterbury is first, York second, London third, Durham fourth, Winchester fifth; and the rest according to order of Consecration.

As in the Civil Government, the Parliament is the Supreme Court, so is a Synod in the Ecclesiastical; call'd among us a Convocation: Wherein Matters of Doctrine and Discipline are from time to time stated and determin'd, and by the King and Parliament pass'd into Laws.

The chief Courts of the Archbishop of Canterbury are,

1. The Court of *Arches*, where the Dean of the *Arches* sits as Judge.
2. The Court of *Audience*, where all Complaints, &c. are received.
3. The *Prerogative-Court*, where the Business of *Wills* is handled.
4. The Court of *Faculties*, where the Rigour of the Canon-Law is moderated.
5. The Court of *Peculiars*, wherein is lodg'd a Jurisdiction over Parishes exempt from the Bishop of the Diocess.

Besides, every Bishop holds his Court within his own Diocess, and takes Cognizance of *Excommunication*, *Censures*, and other things relating to the Church.

## SECT. V.

### The Divisions of England.

The most remarkable Divisions of England, are these three. 1. That of the Romans into *Britannia prima*, *secunda*, *Maxima Caesariensis*, *Valentia*, *Flavia Caesariensis*. The Bounds of these several Branches are very uncertain, and can only be gathered from Conjecture. *Britannia prima* seems to have been the South Part of Britain. *Secunda* probably was *Wales*. *Maxima Caesariensis* and *Valentia* seem to have been those Countries that lay upon the Frontiers of Scotland. And *Flavia Caesariensis* was, likely enough, the Heart of England.

2. That of the Saxons, into seven Kingdoms; whereof we have given an Account, under Sect. 3. concerning the Civil Government.

3. That of King Alfred into *Hundreds* (call'd in some Parts of England, *Wapentakes*) and *Counties*.

Besides these, the Romans branch'd it into so many several People, the Names whereof are generally of a British Original, relating either to the Figure of the Place, the Nature of the Soil, or the Disposition of the Inhabitants. This Division cannot be more conveniently represented, than in a Table along with the Counties of England, as they stand at this Day, and fall within the Bounds of the several People.

*Danmonii.*

*Cornwall,  
Devonshire.*

*Durotriges.*

*Dorsetshire.*

*Belgae.*

*Somersetshire,*

*Wiltshire,*

*Hampshire,*

*Isle of Wight.*

*Atrebates.*

*Barkshire.*

*Regni.*

*Surrey,*

*Suffex.*

*Cantium.*

*Kent.*

*Dobuni.*

*Glocestershire,*

*Oxfordshire.*

*Cattioculani.*

*Buckinghamshire,*

*Bedfordshire,*

*Hertfordshire.*

*Trinobantes.*

*Middlesex,*

*Essex.*

*Iceni.*

*Suffolk,*

*Norfolk,*

*Cambridgeshire,*

*Huntingdonshire.*

*Coritani.*

*Northamptonshire,*

*Leicestershire,*

*Rutlandshire,*

*Lincolnshire,*

*Nottinghamshire,  
Derbyshire.*

*Cornavii.*

*Warwickshire,*

*Worcestershire,*

*Staffordshire,*

*Shropshire,*

*Cheshire.*

*Silures.*

*Herefordshire,*

*Radnorshire,*

*Brecknockshire,*

*Monmouthshire.*

*Glamorganshire.*

*Dimetæ.*

*Caermardhinshire,*

*Penbrokeshire,*

*Cardiganshire.*

*Ordovices.*

*Montgomeryshire,*

*Meirionydshire,*

*Caernarvonshire,*

*Anglesey, Mona.*

*Denbighshire,*

*Flintshire.*

*Brigantes.*

*Yorkshire, West-riding.*

*East-riding,*

*North-riding,*

*Richmondshire.*

*Bishoprick of Durham,*

*Lancashire,*

*Westmorland,*

*Cumberland.*

*Ottadini.*

*Northumberland.*



## CORNWALL.

THE County of *CORNWALL* has its Name from lessening by degrees into a sort of *Horn* : which very exactly answers the Nature and Form of that Tract ; as may be seen either by the General or Particular Maps. As it lies out from the rest of the Kingdom, so had it formerly its Laws and Usages distinct from *England*. But 'tis by degrees reconcil'd, not only to the same Laws, but even to the same Language. Now, few or none among them know any thing of the old *Cornish* ; having a great fondness for the *Englisk* Tongue and Modes of Living.

Their greatest Commodity is *Tin* ; which has given occasion to an Opinion that the *Phanicians* traded thither, and left Name not only to the County in General, but to many Particular Places in it. But whatever Advantage might be reap'd from the *Mines* anciently (which probably was very considerable ; ) 'tis certain that the Earls of *Cornwall* have been prodigiously enrich'd by the Revenues arising from them. Nor could it be well otherwise ; all *Europe* fetching their Supplies, at least the greatest share of them, from these Parts. Which vast In-comes have induc'd the Earls to grant them large Privileges ; to procure them such Charters from Time to Time as might tend to the Improvement of their Trade or Convenience of Management, and to erect Courts and constitute Officers, in a Method agreeable to the Nature of the Employment, and the Humour of the People.

'Tis observable, That through the whole County, abundance of Towns are scatter'd, which have their Names from *Irish Saints*, who had come over into these Parts ; and on account of their Piety and Religious Course of Life had a wonderful Veneration paid them. And after their Deaths, the particular Places wherein they had spent their Time in Devotions and Retirement, were consecrated to their Names, and had signal Pieces of respect paid them by their Neighbours.

The most Remarkable Places are

{	<i>Falmouth,</i>	{	<i>Fowey,</i>
	<i>Launceston,</i>		<i>Saltaſh,</i>
	<i>Truro,</i>		<i>S. Columbs.</i>
	<i>Wadebridge,</i>		

*Falmouth*, a Town of considerable Trade, which the Convenience of the Harbour brings to it: 'Tis a Port very Large, and withal Safe, by reason of the Creeks on all sides, which protect it against the Violence of Winds and Storms. The two Forts, one on each Side, viz. *S. Maudie's* and *Pendinas*, render it a Place of yet greater Strength and Security.

*Launceston* or *Leunston*, on the East-side of the County (call'd in *Domesday* *Launſteverton*, from a College there dedicated to *S. Stephen*) is two Towns, now grown into one, and is become so considerable that the *Affizes* are always held in it.

*Truro*, a Mayor-Town, suppos'd to be so call'd from its three Streets ; but especially considerable in those Parts for the more than ordinary concern that it has in the *Stannaries*.

*Wadebridge*, about five miles from *Padſtow*, is re-

markable for a Bridge of seventeen Arches, the largest by much in the whole Country.

*Fowey*, a Haven on the South-side of the County, remarkable for Sea-Fights ; and has in Memory of them, for its Arms, a Compound of those of the *Cinque-Ports*.

*Saltaſh*, on the West-side of the River *Tamar*, a Town conveniently seated for Trade, well stor'd with Merchants, and endow'd with good Privileges.

*S. Columbs*, not far from the *Irish-Sea*, tho' a Place of no great Trade or Resort, is made famous by its Relation to *S. Columba*, a very pious Woman, from whom it had the Name.

## Ancient Places.

*Voluba* seems to have left its Name in our present *Falmouth* before-mentioned.

*Belerium* can be no other than the *Land's-End* ; call'd also by *Ptolemy* *Ἀρμίσταρον* or *Armistarum*.

*Cenionis ostium*, cannot any where be plac'd more probably than at that large Port, the Convenience whereof we have describ'd under *Falmouth*.

*Ocrinum* (probably so call'd from *Ochr*, an Edge) seems to be that Promontory, call'd at this Day, the *Lizard*.

*Uzella* seems to have left some Remains of its Name in the present *Lestwithiel*, which was a Place of good Note and Trade, till the Sands stopping up the River, hindred Ships from coming up to it.

*Tamara* is the River which parts this County from *Devonshire*, and likewise a Town upon it, now call'd *Tamarton*.

## Things Remarkable.

*Biscaw-woune* (near *S. Burians*) a Place so call'd where are nineteen Stones set in a Circle, which by some are imagin'd to have been erected in memory of a Victory. But if we compare them with others of the same Nature, in other parts of the Kingdom, we imagine them Funeral Monuments, will perhaps be a more plausible Conjecture.

*Main-Amber* (near *Pensans*) a stone of a prodigious Bigness, which yet was so plac'd that one might move it with a Finger. In the late Civil Wars it was thrown down.

*Other-half-stone* (not far from *S. Neot's*) an Inscription, with large barbarous Letters, the Reading whereof implies it to have been a Funeral Monument. See *Camden's Brit. Engl.* p. 9.

*Wring-cheefe* ; near this Place, is a large Stone like a *Cheefe*, and so plac'd between some others, that it seems to be press'd by them.

*Hurlers*, at a little distance, is a square Set of Stones so call'd from an Opinion advanc'd by the common People, that they are so many Men chang'd into Stones for *hurling* the Ball on *Sunday* ; an Exercise for which they have been always famous. But we need not acquiesce in their Fancies, since it appears plain enough, that these (as well as many others in this County) were Funeral Monuments ; from a *Cross* discover'd upon one of them, by an ingenious Gentleman.



## DEVONSHIRE.

AS Devonshire, in the Time of the Romans was included under the same common Name, *Danmonii*, with its Neighbour *Cornwall*; so in after-Ages did it share in several Privileges and Advantages. Particularly in those of the *Tin-mines*, which it had in great abundance; as the four Stannary-Courts, and the Officers belonging to them do plainly evince. Nay, by the best Computations which can be drawn from the Registers and Publick Papers belonging to each County, it appears that this afforded a greater Plenty than *Cornwall*. And that not only of Tin, but also of Silver; Mines whereof were discover'd about *Comb-Martin*, in the Time of *Edward I.* and did great Service to King *Edward III.* towards carrying on the *French Wars*.

The Soil of it self is Lean and Poor; but they improve it strangely, by a sort of Sea-Sand, which they sprinkle upon it: And where that is scarce, they make use of Marle, Lime, and burnt Turf.

The more considerable Towns are,	{	<i>Taustock,</i>	{	<i>Exeter,</i>
		<i>Plimouth,</i>		<i>Barnstaple,</i>
		<i>Torneffe,</i>		<i>Topesham,</i>
		<i>Torbay,</i>		<i>Okehampton.</i>
		<i>Tiverton,</i>		

*Taustock*, adjoyning to *Cornwall*, is not at present remarkable for either Wealth or Buildings; but receives all its Glory from the old Abbey, and the Laudable Custom (while that stood) of reading *Saxon Lectures*, in order to keep up the Knowledge of our old Mother-Tongue.

*Plimouth*, a flourishing Town, occasion'd by the Convenience of its Harbour, for the Reception of great Ships. Which the Government observing, has pitch'd upon it as the most convenient Place in those Parts, for the Building of Ships, and has accommodated it with a *Dry-Dock*, capable of a First-Rate-Ship, a Basin before it of above two hundred Foot square, and Houses for Officers, Stores, &c. in proportion. They had a Mayor granted them by *Henry VI.* who governs the four *Wards*, into which the Town is divided; whereas before they were govern'd by four distinct *Captains* (for they so term'd them) and their Inferior Officers. The Place is eminent for the Birth of Sir *Francis Drake*.

*Torneffe*, upon the River *Dert*, was formerly, a Town of great Note, and accordingly had very considerable Privileges granted by the Kings of *England*. The Condition of it at present, will not bear the Character which it formerly had.

*Torbay*, upon the Eastern Coast, has been very remarkable and much talk'd of for the Landing of the Prince of *Orange*, the late King *William III.* on Nov. 5th. 1688.

*Tiverton*, upon the *Ex.* is remarkable for a good Free-School, and for its Woollen-Trade, which very much enriches the Inhabitants.

**EXETER**, the most considerable Place in all these Parts, stands upon a gentle Hill, and is encompass'd with a Ditch and very strong Walls. That the *Romans* knew it, is plain from the Itinerary of

*Antoninus*, which begins here. The *Saxons* came then into the entire Possession of it, when *Athelstan* turn'd out the *Britains*, who had not till that Time solely enjoy'd it, but had the Liberty of Living in common with the *Saxons*. As the Kings of *England* have endow'd it with many Privileges, so has it suffer'd very much from Sieges: Notwithstanding all which, it might have been more considerable than it is at this day, if the *Wears* of *Topesham* did not hinder Ships of Burden from coming up to the City, as they formerly did. On the East-Side stands the Cathedral, built by King *Athelstan*, and by *Edward III.* honoured with the Title of an Episcopal See.

*Barnstaple*, on the *Irish-Sea*, is a neat Town, govern'd by a Mayor, two Aldermen, and a Common-Council of twenty four. 'Tis a Place of good Trade, so that the greatest part of the Inhabitants are Merchants; and is pretty eminent for a Bridge built by one *Stamford*, a Citizen of *London*.

*Topesham*, a Town near *Exeter*, had its Rise from the Misfortune of that Place: for upon the Obstructions of the River *Ex*, made by *Edward Courtney*, Earl of *Devonshire*, upon a Displeasure conceiv'd against the Citizens; this began to be a Place of Resort, where the Vessels landed, and from whence the Lading was carry'd by Land to *Exeter*. But in the Time of King *Charles II.* such effectual Endeavours were made towards the removing of those *Damms*, that now they carry Lighters of the greatest Burthen up to the City-Key.

*Okehampton*, so call'd from the River *Ock*, upon which it stands, is a considerable Market-Town, incorporated by King *James I.*

### Ancient Places.

*Isca*, mention'd by *Ptolemy*, is so plainly convey'd to us in the present *Ex*, call'd by the *Britains* *Isca*; that there's no place of doubt, but this is the same River.

*Isca Danmehiorum*, is our *Exeter*.

*Moridunum*, tho' it has left nothing of the Name, seems yet to have its Meaning preserv'd in a Sea-Coast-Town, call'd at this Day *Seaton*: For *Mor* is *Mare*, and *Dunum* a Town.

*Herculis Promontorium* is easily discovered by the present Name *Hirty-point*; of which no tolerable Reason can be given, unless we allow it to be a Corruption from that old Name.

### Things Remarkable.

*Lay-well*, is a Well near *Torbay*, which in the Compass of an Hour, ebbs and flows several Times; bubbling up now and then like a boiling Pot. The neighbouring People look upon it to be Medicinal in some sort of Fevers.

At *Withcombe*, in a Storm of Thunder and Lightning (14 Car. I.) a Ball of Fire came into the Church, while they were at Divine Service, which kill'd three Persons and wounded sixty two; and besides, did Damage to the Value of 300 *l.* and upwards.

And at *Crews-Morthard*, in the same County, a like Storm happen'd, which melted the Bells, Lead and Glass; and was so violent, that it rent the Steeple: This was in the Year 1689.



The Organ in the Cathedral at Exeter is accounted the greatest in England, the largest Pipe being 15 Inches Diameter.

At North-Taunton, there is a Pit of ten Foot deep, out of which there sometimes springs up a little Brook, that continues for many Days together.

The Common People tell you, That it presages some Publick Calamity; but whether the particular Times, at which it has been observed to rise, will justify that Interpretation, I know not.

## D O R S E T S H I R E.

THO' the County of Dorset lies much upon the Sea, yet have they not those Advantages from Navigation, or such Conveniency of Harbours, as other Counties that have less Sea-Coast. Which possibly may be owing, in some measure, to the fruitfulness of their Soil, which both employs the Inhabitants, and supplies them with all Necessaries of Life; whilst Parts that are more barren send the Natives to Sea, both to employ their Time and provide a Maintenance.

The more considerable Towns { *Lyme,*  
                                  *Dorchester,*  
                                  *Shirburn,* } { *Shaftesbury,*  
                                                          *Blandford,*  
                                                          *Winburn.*

*Lyme*, a Place of good Trade and well-stocked with Merchants, lies upon the Sea-Coast, near the Borders of *Dorsetshire*. Navigation is that which has raised it from a very mean Condition; for the Convenience whereof they have built a very remarkable Peer, which requires a great Sum of Money yearly to maintain it. This Advantage supplies it with Wealth at home; but, that which has given it a Name abroad, was the Landing of the Duke of *Monmouth*, upon which occasion we frequently meet with it in the Histories of those Times.

*Dorchester*, the Place from which the whole County had its Name, must, for that Reason, have been formerly of much more note than it is at present. Its Decay probably is owing to the Revolutions of Wars; for that it has been a Place of Action, we learn both from our Histories and the Remains of Antiquity they still meet with. Of late Years it seems to have recovered itself; being thought fit to have the Privilege of a Mayor and Aldermen bestow'd upon it by King *Charles I.*

*Shirburn*, upon the Edge of *Somersetshire*, derives its ancient Glory from being an Episcopal See; and its present from Populousness, and their improvement of the Woollen Manufacture.

*Shaftesbury*, seems to have been of considerable Note in the Times of the Saxons; in whose Histories we find it frequently mention'd. That it was built by King *Alfred*, appears by a Stone dug up out of the old Ruins; the Reading whereof *Malmesbury* has convey'd to us. It grew so considerably, that about *Edward the Confessor's* Time it had no less than 104 Houses.

*Blandford* (upon the *Stour*) a pretty Market-Town, which owes its Beauty to a Fire that happen'd in it, and burnt it down; after which it was nearly rebuilt.

*Winburn*, upon the same River, is seated at the Foot of a Hill; being pretty large and populous. In the more early times it was famous upon the account of Religion, and the Nunnery there; But afterwards for being a Seat of War in the Danish Commotions.

In this County, we must also observe *Portland*, an Island of about seven Miles Circumference, guarded with a continual Ridge of Rocks running round it. The Inhabitants are not many; but the Soil affords good store of Corn and Pasture.

And on the East-side of the County, is *Purbeck*, which is of a contrary Nature, being mostly Heath and Wood; but well stock'd with Fallow-Deer.

### Ancient Names.

*Durnovaria*, mention'd by *Antoninus* in those Parts, can be no other than the present *Dorchester*, whether we respect the Name, the Distances, or the Remains of Roman Antiquity, which they trace out.

*Vindogladia*, also discovers it self in the present Name of *Winburn*; the first Syllable whereof is manifestly a Relick of the old Denomination: And the second (which implies a River) does very well answer the *Gladia*, deriv'd from the *British Cledian*, Swords; by which Expression they sometimes denoted their Rivers.

### Things Remarkable.

In the Isle of *Portland*, Wood is so very scarce that their common Fuel is Cow-Dung dried hard by the Heat of the Sun; which being so order'd makes a clear Fire, without any offensive smell.

*Maiden-Castle*, near *Dorchester*, is a most stately Piece of Antiquity, and appears from the Form, Contrivance, and other Circumstances, to have been a Work of the Romans.

*White-Hart-forest*, on the Borders of *Somersetshire*, has its Name from a *White-Hart*, kill'd by a Gentleman of this Country, against the express Order of King *Henry III.* For which fact, there is yearly paid into the Exchequer a pecuniary Mulct, call'd *White-hart-Silver*.

It was a pleasant Humour, and a very lucky Discovery, that happen'd some Years ago near *Winford-Eagle*. Digging a Barrow or Tumulus, the Workmen came to an Oven (with an Urn in it) and one of them putting forward his Hand, in hopes of some farther Discoveries, found it too hot for him to hold it long there. 'Tis probably owing to some Mineral; the same natural Heat being commonly discover'd by the Miners.



SOMERSETSHIRE.

THE County of *Somerset* is not so well accommodated with Harbours, as might be expected from a Tract of Ground that lies so much to the Sea. In some Parts it is exceeding Marshy ; but in others affords plenty of good Corn and Pasture.

The more considerable Towns are,

BRISTOL,	<i>Bridgwater,</i>
BATH,	<i>Somerton,</i>
WELLS,	<i>Taunton.</i>

BRISTOL is parted by the River *Avon*, which divides this County, for some Miles together, from *Gloucestershire*. Its Wealth and Glory cannot be of any great Antiquity, because we find little or no mention of it in the early Times of the *Saxons*. No, nor in the *Danish* Plunders neither ; which few Places escap'd, that had Riches enough to expose them to the Depredations of that People. But after the Conveniency of the Place for Trade with most Parts of *Europe*, was observ'd and understood ; the Inhabitants seem to have flock'd thither, and by their good Success and Commerce to have improv'd it to that Degree of Wealth and Beauty, it may justly glory of at this Day. Their Buildings are fair, the Inhabitants numerous, and their Churches and publick Edifices very Beautiful. To these Advantages, a new Honour was added by King *Henry VIII.* who made it a Bishop's See, upon the Suppression of the Monasteries, and gave it for its Diocess the City of *Bristol* (a County incorporate by it self) and the County of *Devon*, formerly belonging to *Salisbury*.

BATH stands upon the same River, and has the same Dignity of a Bishop's See, but in other respects falls far short of *Bristol*. It lies low in the middle of a Range of Hills, wherewith it is very much fortified. This natural Strength of the Place was, no doubt, the Reason of all those Contests, which the *Saxons* and *Britains* had about it, in their Engagements in those Parts. Its Name and Reputation have both the same Original ; the *hot Springs*, I mean, arising there, which many Ages have known, but none have experienc'd so Medicinal as the present. Great Numbers of the Nobility and Gentry flock thither in the Summer-time, and the Physicians begin to frequent them more than ever : Which Concourse from all Parts, makes it a little strange that the City should not increase more in Wealth and Buildings. As it affords Remedies to the Sick, so does it give a great Diversion to the Antiquaries, by shewing a number of Ancient Monuments and Inscriptions, set up in the Walls. That it enjoys the Title of a Bishop's See, was occasioned by *Joannes de Villula*, Bishop of *Wells* removing his Seat thither, about the Year of our Lord, 1088. Whereupon, to compose a Quarrel which had risen between the Monks of *Bath* and Canons of *Wells*, about the Right of Election ; it was agreed, among other things, That the Bishop should take his Title from both Places ; tho' by others 'tis affirm'd that for some time after, he was only call'd Bishop of *Bath*.

WELLS, so call'd from the *Wells* and *Springs* it, is situated at the Bottom of *Mendip-Hills*. It

was made a Bishop's See by *Edward* the Elder, about the Year 905, and the Bishop kept his Residence in it, till *John de Villula*, the Sixteenth Bishop, having purchas'd the Town of *Bath* of King *Henry I.* transferr'd it thither. The Place is populous, and very beautiful, whether you respect the Publick or private Buildings.

*Bridgwater* (corruptly so call'd from *Bugh-Walter*, as appears by the ancient Records) lies upon the River *Parret*, and is a large and well-peopled Town.

*Somerton*, as inconsiderable as it is at present, was once the chief Town in this County ; as may be reasonably inferr'd from its giving Name to the whole ; and from the frequent mention of it in our ancient Histories.

*Taunton*, a Town seated upon the River *Thone*, which gives it the Name, is very neat and beautiful in it self ; but render'd much more agreeable by the delicate Prospect it gives us of green Meadows, and Numbers of pretty Villages all round.

*Ancient Places.*

*Uzella*, mention'd by *Ptolemy*, is an Aestuary on the West Side of this County, occasion'd by the Concourse of two large Rivers, emptying themselves into the Sea about the *Stert-point*.

*Ischalis*, appears from the Coins and other Marks of Antiquity, that are dug up at *Ivelchester* (a Town upon the River *Ivel*) to have been seated at that Place.

*Aque Solis*, by the Course of the Itinerary, and the Import of the Word, can be no other than our *Bath* ; especially, if we add to these Evidences, the Monuments mention'd to be found, in the Description of that Place.

*Things Remarkable.*

*Ochie-hole*, a remarkable Cave in *Mendip-hills*, of a vast length ; where they discover several Wells and Springs.

The *Serpent-Stones* are common at *Cainsham* near *Bristol*.

Abundance of *Diamonds* are about the Rock near *Bristol* ; being lodg'd very artificially in a hollow sort of Flint.

A Monument of large Stones, not unlike that of *Stone-Henge* in *Wiltshire*, is at *Stanton-drew* in this County ; but being interrupted with Buildings and Enclosures, it is not so much taken notice of as it might otherwise deserve.

*Cheeddar-Cheeses* (so call'd from the Place near *Wells*, where they are made) are so large as sometimes to require more than one Man to set them upon the Table.

The *Elvers* at *Bristol* is a Dish perhaps not to be met with elsewhere : 'Tis a sort of Eel, which at a certain Time of the Year, swims upon the Surface of the Water in great Numbers. These they skim up in small Nets, and by a peculiar way of Dressing, bake them into little Cakes ; and so fry, and serve them up.

Amongst the Rarities of this County, *Glastenbury* may justly be reckon'd ; which by the Remains of Religion and its venerable Aspect, affords abundance of Pleasure to a curious Admirer of Antiquities.



## W I L T S H I R E.

AS the County of *Wilt* was for many hundreds of Years almost a constant Scene of Action in the Wars between the *Saxons* and *Britains*, and afterwards between the several Saxon Kings; so does it afford greater remains of Antiquity than perhaps any County in *England* can pretend to. 'Tis divided into North and South; and agreeable to this Division, is of a different Soil and Aspect. The first abounds with little Hills, which are render'd very entertaining by the small Rivers gliding between; and naturally produces much Wood. The latter is a Champaign Fruitful Country.

Places of greatest Note, are { *Salisbury,*  
*Malmesbury,*  
*Devizes,*  
*Marlborough,*  
*Wilton.*

*Salisbury* is two-fold, the Old and New. *Old Sarum* was seated upon a high Hill (as most of our ancient Towns here in *Britain* are observed to have been) being a Place chiefly intend'd for Strength, and a defence against the Enemy, but what was a security against Foreigners, prov'd a Grievance to the Inhabitants; who found the inconveniences of the Garrison Soldiers to be such, that they seem'd Intolerable. To remedy this Evil, and to accommodate themselves with the convenience of Water (the want whereof had been a great inconvenience in their old Quarters) they began to remove into the lower Grounds in the time of *Richard I.* where they laid the Foundation of *New Sarum*. And immediately *Richard Poor*, the Bishop, began a most stately Cathedral Church which at this day has deservedly a name among the most considerable Structures of this Island. The Bishops See was remov'd to *Salisbury*, upon the uniting of *Shrewsbury* and *Wilton* into one, by *Hermannus*, about the year 1056. But though that may be of advantage to the place, and set it somewhat forward in its growing condition, yet it could never have arriv'd to that Degree of Wealth, Populousness and Splendor, if the Western Road had not been turn'd that way, by the Authority of some who was nearly concern'd for its Prosperity. Their want of Water was amply supplied by their remove from the higher Grounds; for now every Street has its little Rivulet running through it.

*Malmesbury*, though at present a handsom Town and well maintain'd by the Cloathing-Trade, was yet formerly much more considerable on account of its Monastery. For *Maidulphus* an Irish-Score leading here an Hermit's Life, left behind him a Scholar (*Aldhelmus*) a very eminent Man, who built a stately Monastery; whereupon the place was call'd *Mealdelmesburygh*, and by contraction *Malmesbury*; which Name seems to be a compound of *Maidulphus* and *Aldhelmus*, the Master and the Scholar.

*Devizes*, anciently very famous for a strong Castle, the Government whereof has been thought an Hono-

rable Post by Persons of the best Quality. But now that is quite Demolish'd; and the advantage of Peace hath given it what is much more valuable, a good Trade, a thriving People, and plenty of every thing. It is Govern'd by a Mayor, Recorder, &c. and hath in it two great Parishes.

*Marlborough*, upon the River *Kenet*, runs along the side of a Hill: It was formerly eminent for its Castle, and it is mention'd in our Law-books and Courts of Justice, upon account of the Statute made here for the suppression of Riots, in 32 *Henry III.* call'd to this day *Statutum de Marlborough*. The Keep of the old Castle is figur'd into a Mount of curious contrivance, by his Grace the Duke of *Somerset*, the Owner of it.

*Wilton* does not require a mention upon account of any Figure it makes at this Day, but may justly call for that respect, as being once the chief Town in the whole County. And it might have improv'd as well as its Neighbours, had it been allow'd the advantage of the Western Road, which at first it enjoy'd. But when that was turn'd through *Salisbury*, the rise of one was the ruin of the other; and this Place has ever since been dwindling by degrees into that low condition we see it in at present.

## Ancient Places.

*Cunetio* may very probably be sett'd at *Marlborough*; the Castle there appearing from Roman Coins to be of Roman Antiquity.

*Sorbicdunum* is agree'd upon by all Authors to be *Old Sarum*. However they may differ about the original of the Name, they are unanimous in their Opinion of its Situation.

*Verulacio* keeps something of its Name in the present *Worminster*, (a Town lying upon the little River *Drer-ril*;) for by changing the (v) into (w) which without any straining may be done, and adding the Saxon Termination *minster*, we have the Name complete.

## Things Remarkable.

*Wansdike*, or *Wodensdike*, (so call'd from the Saxon God *Woden*) is a wonderful Ditch crossing this Shire from East to West. Whenever it was cast up, the design seems to have been a Boundary or Fence, either to distinguish Territories, or to be a guard against the Enemies in this Frontier Country.

*Stone-henge*, is a Monument so remarkable, that it has engag'd many Learned Pens in conjectures about its Founder's Design and Antiquity. The Opinions contain'd in three or four separate Books written upon that Subject, are crown'd up, and the whole matter Stated in the new Edition of *Camden's Britannia*, Page 108, whither I refer the Reader.

The *Barrows* upon *Salisbury* Plain, lying scatter'd here and there, afford good entertainment to a curious Traveller; and the rather, because they are of several Forms and Figures, which perhaps in other places is not so common.



## HAMSHIRE.

OF all the Counties which border upon the Sea, there are few that have the Advantage of so many Creeks and Havens, as *Hamshire*. By which means the South part is abundantly supplied with all the conveniencies the Sea affords, Through the whole they have good Store of Corn, and plenty of Wood in all Parts; but what they are most remarkable for, is their *Bacon*, which is reputed to be the best in the Kingdom, and accordingly is sold into all parts.

Towns more considerable,  
 are, { *Winchester*,  
           *Southampton*,  
           *Portsmouth*,  
           *Basingstoke*,  
           *Andover*,  
           *Christ-Church*.

*Winchester*, whether we consider its ancient or present condition, may deservedly lay claim to the first Place. For as it was of good Note in the times of the *Romans*, so under the *Saxon* Government was it the Seat of the *West-Saxon* Kings. But that which has chiefly secur'd its flourishing condition, is the Bishop's See, settl'd there very early by *King* *Egils* the *Saxon*; and (which is more) never remov'd from its first Foundation, as most of its Neighbours have been, to the great damage of the Places from which they were drawn. This favourable concurrence of Circumstances was encreas'd by *Edward III.* when he settl'd here the Staple for Cloth and Wool. The Cathedral hath been from time to time enlarg'd and put under the protection of several Tutelar Saints. But its greatest Glory, is the College built here by *William of Wickham*, Bishop of this See; which supplies both Church and State with great numbers of Learned Men. The Royal Palace began by *King Charles II.* is very stately and magnificent; and the Hospital built by *Bishop Morley* for 10 Ministers Widows, is a work of great Charity and Goodness.

*Southampton* within these hundred years was a rich, populous, beautiful Place; but now by the loss of its Trade, all this Finery is gone, the Buildings decay'd, the Town poor, and the Inhabitants thin. It ought not however to be omitted amongst the considerable places of these parts, both upon account of its former Eminency, and also for the Figure it still bears in our Naval Affairs.

*Portsmouth*, after it was by *Queen Elizabeth* completely Fortified with new Works, became a place of great Note and Resort, in times of War especially: but in times of Peace, the Trade it has will hardly maintain it in the same Grandeur. And as the Place is of great importance to the Nation by its Strength, and Works of the best Contrivance; so is it of great consequence to our Fleets, being furnish'd of late years with Docks and all other necessities for building and repairing Ships of the biggest Rates.

*Basingstoke* is a well frequented Market, upon the High-Road.

*Andover* is a Corporation pretty large and populous.

### Ancient Places.

*Regnum* can be no other than the present *Ringwood*, (lying upon the River *Avon*) which may seem

by a fair Interpretation to signify the *Wood of the Regni*.

*Alauni Ostium*, is probably that Mouth out of which the *Stour* and *Avon* empty themselves jointly.

*Trifantonis Ostium* is agree'd upon all hands to be the Harbour of *Southampton*, beginning at *Calshot-Castle*.

*Clasfentum*, by the distances from the two Stations on each side, as it stands in the Itinerary, must of necessity be that Old Town which stood formerly near the present *Southampton*, and was called by the same name.

*Brage*, by the course of the *Itinerary*, is probably a little Country Village that lies between *Salisbury* and *Winchester*, the two Stations on each hand, and is called at this day *Broughton*.

*Venta Belgarum*, is undoubtedly *Winchester*, to which it has probably given the first Syllable of that name.

*Segontiaci*, mention'd by *Caesar*, by all the Circumstances must have been those People who liv'd about the Northern limits of this County, about the Hundred of *Holesthor*.

*Vindonum*, we call at this day *Silchester*; though by the *Britains* it was call'd *Caer Segonte*, as being the chief City of the *Segontiaci*, just now mention'd.

### Things Remarkable.

*Arthur's Round-Table* at *Winchester* is much talk'd of and admir'd as a Relick of *King Arthur's*. But that Fancy is to be reckon'd among those many ridiculous Errors which have been convey'd to the ignorant Country People by Ballads and Romances, and having got such footing that 'tis hard to undeceive them. This Table is probably as old as the *Tornaments*; and it may be a good Conjecture, that it was design'd to prevent all quarrels about Precedency among the Combatants.

*Silchester*, which we observ'd but now to be the *Vindonum* of the Ancients, shews vast remains of its Antiquity and once flourishing condition. The thinness of the Corn where the Walls and Streets have run, with other Observations to be made upon the Place, afford very good entertainment to a curious Traveller.

### The Isle of WIGHT.

South of *Hamshire* lies the *Isle of Wight*, about 20 Miles long, and 12 over, where broadest. The North is mostly taken up with Pasturage, Meadows and Wood; but the South bears abundance of Corn. As to Ecclesiastical Government, it is under the Jurisdiction of the Bishop of *Winchester*; but as to Civil, under *Hamshire*. The Inhabitants are a Stout sort of People, having been all along inur'd to frequent Skirmishes, by lying expos'd to the first Attacks of the invading Enemy.

*Carebrook*, a Castle in the middle of the *Isle*, of very great Antiquity. Of late Years the Imprisonment of *King Charles I.* therein has made it more remarkable.

*Tarmouth* and *Cowes*, both lying over against *Hamshire*, are their two Havens of greatest Safety and Importance.

The *Needles*, the *Shingles*, the *Mixon*, and other Shelves round it, are a good security to the Place against an Enemy, but very troublesome to the Seamen.

BARK-







S U R R E Y.

THE County of *Surrey*, (as we call it at this day) lies all a long upon the South-side of the River of *Thames*; from which Position, it has the Name. For, what our Age has contracted into *Surry*, was call'd by our Fore-fathers *Sutbrige*. That part of the Country which borders upon the *Thames*, is so adorn'd with a mixture of Woods, Meadows, and fair Buildings, that nothing can be more Entertaining: The other parts are Fruitful enough, though not so Pleasant.

More considerable Towns, are, { *Southwark*,  
*Guilford*,  
*Kingston*,  
*Richmond*,  
*Lambeth*.

*Southwark*, (so call'd from its Southerly Situation, with respect to *London*) by its near intercourse with that noble City, has improv'd it self into a flourishing condition, not only beyond all other Places in this County, but equal to most of our Cities in *England*. Before the Building of the Bridge, their Commerce was maintain'd only by Ferrying; but upon erecting a Wooden-bridge, it seem'd to be a sort of Suburbs to *London*; and lastly, by the stately Stone-bridge of 19 Arches, (upon which the buildings are continu'd like a street) one would think it a Part of the City. Accordingly, in the Reign of *Edward VI.* it was annex't to *London*; and by virtue thereof the Inhabitants had a Power granted them to use all such Laws within their Burrough, as the Citizens did within their City.

*Guilford*, (for so it is commonly pronounc'd, though written *Guldford* and *Guildford*) is seated upon the River *Wye*, and is a populous Market-Town; I know not whether we may attribute its growth, in some measure at least, to the Benefaction of Sir *Richard Wyton*; by whose Industry, principally, the River upon which it stands, was made Navigable. 'Tis certain that all this part of the Country is very much en-

gag'd to the first Contrivers, since they receive such considerable advantage from it.

*Kingston* upon *Thames*, has its Name from the Solemn Coronation of three Saxon Kings, *Athelstan*, *Edwin*, and *Ethelred*, in the Danish Wars. 'Tis a Market-Town, not very large indeed, but populous and of good resort.

*Richmond*, hard by, has been particularly pitch'd upon by several of our Kings, for their Diversion and Pleasure, whenever the Affairs of the Nation would give them leave to retire.

*Lambeth*, over against *Westminster*, upon the River of *Thames*, has all its Reputation from the Palace of the Archbishop of *Canterbury*, which is very large and stately. It has belong'd to them successively ever since Arch-Bishop *Baldwin* obtain'd a Manour in this Place by exchange with the Bishop of *Rocheſter*, about the year 1183.

We meet with none of the old Stations in this County; the *Noviomagus*, (which Mr. *Cambden* places at *Woodcot*) being more conveniently settl'd in *Kent*.

Things Remarkable.

The *Mole* (a considerable River) in two several places goes under ground for some space; particularly for 2 miles together, near *Whitchill*; from whence the Place is call'd the *Swallow*.

At *Albury* the *Hypogæum*, or *Perforation*, made through a mighty Hill, and design'd for a Coach-passage, is Remarkable and Surprizing.

*Epsom-Wells* have been in so great request of late years for their Mineral-waters, as to cause a considerable increase of Buildings, for the Entertainment of Gentlemen resorting thither, for their Health or Pleasure.

A *Skeleton* 9 Foot 3 Inches long, taken up in the Church-yard of *Wotton*, and distinctly measur'd, may justly be reckon'd among the Remarkables of this County.

S U S S E X.

*Sussex*, (or as it is more truly written, *South-Sex*) derives its name from the ancient Inhabitants, the *South-Saxons*, who had that denomination with respect to the *East-Saxons*. The Downs take up the Sea-coast; the middle consists of Meadows, Pastures, and Corn-fields; and the more Northerly part of it abounds with Wood. The Iron-works turn to good account; as did formerly the *Glass-Houses*; but now the latter are quite laid aside.

More considerable Towns are, { *Chicheſter*,  
*Arundel*,  
*Lewes*,  
*Ke.*

*Chicheſter*, in its Saxon name *Ciſſanceaſter*, discovers its first Founder, viz. *Ciſſa*, Son of *Wella*, who

settld the Kingdom of the *South-Saxons*. Notwithstanding which Antiquity, we do not find that it flourish'd very much till the Conqueror's time, when the Bishop's See was remov'd from *Self* to this Place; where it still continues in a good condition. The City had undoubtedly been much more Wealthy, Large and Populous, if the conveniency of the Harbour had seconded the advantage of the Bishop's See. But the Haven is of it self not very commodious; and is also at too great a distance.

*Arundel*, owes its Name and Reputation more to the Castle and its Earls, than either the populousness of the Town, or wealth of the Inhabitants. The Castle was a place of great strength, and of considerable moment in our Wars; and the Earls, Persons of great Worth and Honour. But though the condition of



of the place will not answer either the figure it makes in our Histories, or the reputation it has in the opinion of Strangers; as however a Market-Town, and sends two Burgeses to Parliament.

*Lewes*, at a little distance from the Sea, is seated upon a rising ground, and is a Town of good Note: Tho' anciently it seems to have been more considerable. For when King *Athelstan* settl'd *Mints* in the more eminent Towns of the Kingdom, he pitch'd upon this place for one, and gave it two *Minters*.

*Rye*, upon the Sea-Coast, joyning to the County of *Kent*, owes its rise to the decay of its Neighbour *Wincheſea*. For the Sea, in those parts, does as it were dispose of its wealth among the Coasters, according to the several ages. So that by its breaking in one while and retiring another, they enjoy the advantage of it in their turns. *Rye* has flourish'd by its kindness these many ages, in Buildings, Navigation, and Fishing; whilst many of its Neighbours are ready to starve, and are daily drawing towards ruine.

#### Ancient Places.

*Portus Adurni* (the place where the *Exploratores* kept watch against the Saxon Pirats under the later

Emperours; must be upon this Coast. And we cannot pitch upon any part with greater probability, than *Ederington*, a Little Village, which seems still to retain something of the old Name; and besides, is a very convenient place for Landing. Which indeed in our present search, is a circumstance of great moment; since those *Guards* upon the Sea-Coast, were set to hinder the Pirats from Landing; and by consequence, must have been fixt where the shore was most convenient for that purpose.

#### Things Remarkable.

It was a pleasant humour of *John de Camois* Lord of *Broodwater* in this County, in *Edward* the First's time; to make over his own Wife to Sir *William Painell*, by Will, in the same manner as Men bequeath their Goods and Chattels.

The *Arch* with the Inscription, at *Lewes*, in the little demolish'd Church near the Castle, is well worth the sight of a curious Traveller, if there be any thing left of that ancient Building: But if Time has destroy'd it, the best information we can have, is from Mr. *Cambden's* draught, which he has given us in the *Britannia*, under his Description of this place.

## K E N T.

Amongst the Counties of *England*, no one can pretend to lead us so far back into its Antiquities as this of *Kent*. In all Revolutions, this has had the first share: The *Romans* made their first Attempts upon it; and *Julius Caesar* has left us a general account, in what condition he found them at that Time. Their Successors, the *Saxons*, after Depredation, Piracies, and at last open Violence, establish'd their first Kingdom in this Corner, about the Year 456. The *Normans* too (if we may believe Tradition, which is not grounded upon much Evidence from History) had it particularly in his Eye; and had us'd it as he did the rest of the Kingdom, but that they obtained the Continuance of their Ancient Customs and Usages, by a notable Stratagem.

Nor could it well be otherwise: For as their Situation exposes them to the immediate Attempts of Foreigners; so do the Riches and Fruitfulness of their Country invite them to a settlement there before any other Part. The Soil is exceeding rich; so that they abound with excellent Corn-Fields, Meadows, and Pastures. They have *Apples* also, and *Cherries* in great abundance; which turn to better account here than in other places, by reason of their nearness to *London*, whither they sell them by whole sale. Besides this Fruitfulness of the Soil, which furnishes them with most Necessaries; they are supply'd with what conveniences our foreign Trade brings in, by their Harbours and noble Rivers.

More Remarkable Places are, 

{	<i>Canterbury,</i>	{	<i>Deptford</i>
	<i>Rocheſter,</i>		<i>Maidſtone,</i>
	<i>Dover,</i>		<i>Remney,</i>
	<i>Greenwich,</i>		<i>Chatham.</i>

*Canterbury*, upon the River *Stour*, as it is the principal City in those parts, so is it the Metropolis of the whole Kingdom. For upon the conversion of the Saxons to the Christian Faith, *Ethelbert* King of *Kent* gave this Place to *Austin* the Monk; who was made Arch-Bishop of the *Engliſh*, and so fixt his See here. And here it has continu'd ever since; save that for a

little while it was remov'd to *London* (the chief City of the Kingdom;) but in honour and memory of Saint *Austin*, it was return'd to *Canterbury*. The Church that is most eminent, is *Chriſt-Church*; for St. *Austin's* (built below the City for a burying-place for the Kings of *Kent* and the Arch-bishops, when it was not lawful to bury in Cities) is laid in its own ruines; by which we may still perceive what a stately Fabrick has once been. The City is populous and wealthy; having in it abundance of *Italians* and *French*; the first of them settl'd here in the time of Queen *Elizabeth*, and brought along with them the Art of Weaving Silk: the second came over of late years, upon the persecution of *Lewis* the XIV.

+ *Rocheſter* is the other City in this County, being made an Episcopal See by the same *Athelbert* that gave *Canterbury* to St. *Austin*, upon his Conversion to the Christian Faith. The Situation of it, is low, and the bounds narrow, but the Suburbs make it pretty large. Anciently, it was of great note for its Castle, which the nature of the place render'd exceeding strong: So that when *Odo* held it against *William Rufus*, nothing could bring him to a surrender but want of Provisions. The noble Stone-bridge (through which the *Medway* runs with a most hideous noise) was built, upon *Simon Montfort's* cutting down the Wooden one, in his attempts upon this place.

*Dover*, next these two, makes the greatest figure in our Histories; not for its extent or riches, but the convenient passage it affords into *France*. It has also a Castle of great Strength; and was anciently accounted of so much Importance, as to be commonly called the Key of *England*, without which it was impossible for Foreign Enemies to make their way, with any advantage, into this Nation. Upon this account, *William* the Conqueror took particular care to have it well fortifi'd and guarded; distributed vast quantities of Land to his Soldiers, purely for that Service. The *Peer* was built by *Henry VIII.* and repaired by Queen *Elizabeth* at vast expence, after the Sea had began to break in upon it.

+ Dr. *Francis Alterbury B.*  
consec: 7. July 1713.

*Greenwich,*



*Greenwich*, lying upon the *Thames*, is remarkable for its Royal Seat, built by *Humfrey Duke of Gloucester*, and enlarg'd by King *Henry VII.* and is a Place much celebrated in our Histories for giving Birth to that most excellent Princess, *Q. Elizabeth.*

*Deptford* is at a little Distance, and draws its Reputation from the noble Dock, and other Accommodations for building and repairing of Ships; whereby it is of great Use and Importance to the Royal Navy of *England.*

*Maidstone* (so call'd from the *Medway* upon which it lies) is a pleasant populous Town, and seems to have been formerly of greater Eminence than its Neighbours, as being the *Shire-Town*, where the Assizes are generally held. Unless, possibly, the convenience of its situation, almost in the middle of the County, may have been the principal means of procuring that honour.

*Romney*, lying near the Sea-Coast to the South East, was formerly very considerable both for its Harbour, and the Sea-Services done by the Inhabitants to the Crown. But when the Ocean overflow'd these parts, in the Reign of *Edward I.* and remov'd the passage of the River another way, it began to forsake the Town, and by consequence to rob it by degrees of its former glory.

*Chatham*, near *Rochester*, is eminent for the Station of the Navy-Royal; and has been much more so since the improvements of Docks, Launches, Store-houses, &c. made by King *Charles II.* and King *James II.* 'Tis also remarkable for its fund of Naval Charity, for the support of Persons wounded in the Sea-Service; establish'd in the Year 1588. under the Title of the Chest at Chatham.

*Ancient places.*

*Vagniacæ*, by the course of the Itinerary, must be *Maidstone*, especially if *Noviomagus*, the next Station on one Hand, may be fix'd at *Hollowood hill*, and not at *Woodcot* in *Surrey* (as Mr. *Camden* imagines.)

*Durcbrovís* is agreed on all hands to be *Rochester.*

*Regulbium*, mention'd by the *Notitia*, has left the express Remains of its Name in our present *Reculver*; which also demonstrates its Antiquity by the Roman Coins discover'd thereabouts.

*Durovernum* is beyond all dispute to be settl'd at *Canterbury.*

*Duroletum* seems to fall in (as to the Sound) with *Lenham*; which yet is too far out of the Road, and has nothing to support it, besides the bare similitude of Names. *Bapchild* lies directly in the way, and does not want either Antiquity or a due distance to answer the Itinerary; which has induc'd a modern Author to remove the Station thither.

*Cantium Promontorium*, is the *Kentish-foreland.*

*Dubris*, by the present name and the circumstances of the place, can be no other than *Dover.*

*Anderida*, mention'd by the *Notitia*, has been by some fix'd at *Newenden*, by others at *Hastings* or *Pensley* in *Suffex.* Indeed the names mention'd in that Book, wanting the assistance of the Distances; are very hard to find out; having no other Directions, but barely their Situation upon the Sea-coasts; which we infer from the use of them, viz. to be a Guard against the Invasion of Pirates.

*Lemanis* is, by Mr. *Camden*, plac'd at *Stutgal-Castle* near *Hithe*, but by Mr. *Sommer* at *Romney.*

*Noviomagus*, by the Distances in the Itinerary, must be brought much nearer *Maidstone* than *Woodcot* in *Surrey* is, where Mr. *Camden* fixt it. The discovery of a large Roman Camp upon the River *Ravensbourne* (which empties it self into the *Thames* near *Greenwich*) makes it probable enough that the old *Noviomagus* ought not to be sought in another place.

*Rhitupie*, is the same as our *Richburrew*; which daily shews the Marks of its Antiquity; viz. Roman Coins of Gold and Silver.

To these we may add the Island, which *Solinus* (according to different Copies,) calls *Thanatos* and *Atbanates*, from whence the present name of *Thanet* is deriv'd. 'Tis made by a division of the Waters of the River *Stour*, near its entrance into the Sea, and is about eight miles long and four broad. The Soil is a white Chalk, which produces Hay and Corn in great abundance.

*Tutiaris Insula* is probably *Sheppey*,

*Things Remarkable.*

The vast Pits near *Fecsham*, narrow at the top but within very large, are thought to be some of those out of which the *Britains* us'd to dig Chalk to manure their Grounds. Which seems a more probable Opinion, than that the *Saxons* should contrive them, in imitation of their German Ancestors, for a sort of Granary wherein to protect their Corn and Goods against the violence of Cold and Plunders of an Enemy.

Below *Greenwich*, there is great plenty of *Scurvy-grass.*

*Bromley Hospital*, built by the right Reverend Father in God Dr. *John Warner*, for the maintenance of twenty poor Ministers Widows, is a most noble Foundation, and may well serve for a pattern to Persons who are dispos'd to settle such Charities in other Places.

The Royal Observatory at *Greenwich*, furnish'd with all sorts of Instruments for Astronomical Observations, and a Dry Well for discovery of the Stars in the day-time, is very curious.

*Tunbridge Wells* have of late years been found so useful for carrying off several Distempers, that the great resort of Gentry has caus'd the building of a good number of Houses near the place; and a Chapel, wherein Prayers are read twice a day during the Season.

*Gavel-kind* is a Custom peculiar to this Country; whereby all Lands are divided equally among the Males; and in default of them, among the Females. They would derive this and other Privileges from their Composition with *William* the Conqueror; which Opinion is yet stiffly oppos'd by their Learned Country-man Mr. *Sommer*, in his excellent Treatise upon that Subject.

The Cinque-Ports are a Constitution not to be met with in other places, being five Ports under the Constable of *Dover-Castle*, establish'd by *William* the Conqueror for the better security of this Coast. The Ports are *Hastings*, *Dover*, *Hithe*, *Romney*, and *Sandwich*; which, upon account of their Sea-Services, enjoy several Immunities; their Governor is styl'd Lord Warden of the Cinque-Ports.



G L O C E S T E R S H I R E.

THE County of GLOCESTER, according to its several parts, has a different Soil and Appearance. In the East, 'tis hilly ; in the West, woody ; and in the middle, a sweet fruitful Vale. The middle parts are much indebted to the *Severn*, which runs along for Forty Miles together, bringing in Necessaries from abroad, and conveying the Native Commodities into Foreign Parts. The Western Tract was one continu'd Wood, thick and unpassable ; but the discovery of the Veins of Iron (which requires vast quantities of Wood to support them) has made it much thinner.

The more remarkable Towns, are { Gloucester,  
Tewkesbury,  
Cirencester,  
Camden,  
Witchcomb<sup>l</sup>,

GLOCESTER, the principal place in this County, is a Town well-built, beautify'd with many fair Churches, and exceeding well provided with Hospitals for the maintenance of their Poor. The *Severn*, along which it is stretch'd, secures it on one side, and it has Walls to defend it on others. About the time of *William the Conqueror*, *forging of Iron* seems to have been the Business of the Town; since *Domesday* tells us, That the Tribute requir'd of them, was a certain quantity of *Iron-bars*. It has had its misfortunes both from *Wars* and *Fire*, but still rose again and flourish'd, at length *K. Henry VIII.* made it an Episcopal See; which at this Day is its greatest Glory.

*Woolen-clerk.* In the Histories of our Nation 'tis mention'd upon account of the Battle between the Houses of *York* and *Lancaster*, wherein the latter Party was almost entirely defeated.

Cirencester, call'd commonly at this day Ciciter, was of good note both under the Romans and Saxons. Its eminence among the first is discover'd by ancient Coin, Pavements and Inscriptions; and the

frequent mention of it in the *Saxon Histories* make it probable that it bore some considerable Figure among the latter. Add to this, the extent of the Town, which has formerly been two Miles round; but now not above a fourth part of that compass is inhabited. They have also had three Parish Churches, of which only one is left, very fair indeed and large.

*Camden*, in the North part of the County on the edge of *Worcestershire*, is a good Market-town, famous especially for the *Strucking Trade*. The South Isle of this Church is adorn'd with several most noble and curious Monuments of Marble.

*Ancient Places.*

*Abone* appears by its situation upon *Severn*, its distance from the next Station, and most of all from the present name, to be that which we call at this day *Aventon*.

*Trajectus*, where they Ferry'd over the *Severn*,  
was probably at *Oldbray*; which both carries Anti-  
quity in its name, and is situate over against  
*Aloræ*.

*Cerium*, mention'd by *Ptolemy*, was our *Circæfer*.

*Glebeum* is agreed by all to be the present City of Gloucester.

### Things Remarkable.

The *Whispering-place*, in the Cathedral of *Glees-ter*, is a Curiosity much talk'd of and admir'd by Travellers. 'Tis a Wall built so in an Arch of the Church, that if you whisper never so low at one end, another that lays his Ear to the other end shall hear each distinct Syllable. Which yet the more knowing Inhabitants affirm to be purely accidental, and not the Effect of any curious Contrivance.

Stones like Cockles and Oysters are found about the Head of the River *Avon*, or the Hills near *Aldefey*.

In some Parts of the County, they had formerly a Custom very unaccountable, That the Lands of condemn'd Persons should be forfeited to the King only for a Year and a Day, and after that return to the next Heirs; but 'tis now quite abolish'd.

## OXFORDSHIRE.

THE County of OXFORD is accommodated with Three large Rivers, which answer the Necessities of its several Parts. The *Thames* supplies the South and West, the *Teme* the East, and the *Cherwell* the middle. The two last empty themselves into the first, and are carried with it in one Channel into the Ocean. The Bottoms of this Shire abound with Meadows and Corn-ground; the Hills are well stor'd with Wood; but were much more so before the Civil Wars between the King and Parliament.

The more considerable  
Places are, { Oxford, } { Dorchester,  
                  { W. ed sicke, } and  
                  { Banbury, } Henley.

OXFORD, as it gives its Name to the whole County, so is it upon several Accounts very eminent: The Air is sweet and healthful, the Prospect on all Hands very pleasant; the private Buildings are neat, and the publick sumptuous. But that which gives it a Reputation, not only above its Neighbours, but above all other Places in the Kingdom, is, One of the most noble Universities in the whole World. The Constitution whereof is so regular; the Discipline so strict; the Endowments so plentiful and convenient for Studies; and, in a Word, every Thing so agreeable to the Education of Youth, that we need not wonder it should daily send abroad such Numbers of learned Men, for the Service of Church



Church and State. Of what Antiquity it is, I shall not pretend to determine: Whole Volumes have been writ upon that Subject already. Let us thank Providence, that 'tis in such a flourishing Condition at present, and leave the nice Disquisition of what it has been, to others. The following Scheme will afford the best view of its State and Increase, in the several Ages.

Colleges.	Founders.	King's Reigns.
University,	King <i>Alfred.</i>	<i>Alfred.</i>
Banhol,	Sir <i>John Baliol.</i>	<i>Henry III.</i>
Merton,	<i>Walter Merton.</i>	<i>Edward I.</i>
Oriel,	<i>Edward II.</i>	<i>Edward II.</i>
Exeter,	<i>Walter Stapledon.</i>	<i>Edward II.</i>
Queens,	<i>Robert Eglesfield.</i>	<i>Edward III.</i>
New-College,	<i>Wm. of Wickham.</i>	<i>Edward III.</i>
Lincoln,	<i>Richard Fleming.</i>	<i>Henry VI.</i>
All souls,	<i>Henry Chicheley.</i>	<i>Henry VI.</i>
Magdalen,	<i>William Wainfleet.</i>	<i>Henry VI.</i>
Brazen-nose,	<i>William Smith.</i>	<i>Henry VIII.</i>
Corpus Christi,	<i>Richard Fox.</i>	<i>Henry VIII.</i>
Christ-Church,	<i>Henry VIII.</i>	<i>Henry VIII.</i>
Trinity,	Sir <i>Thomas Pope.</i>	<i>Queen Mary.</i>
S. John's,	Sir <i>Thomas White.</i>	<i>Queen Mary.</i>
Jesus,	<i>Queen Elizabeth.</i>	<i>Queen Elizabeth.</i>
	<i>Nicholas</i>	
Wadham,	and } <i>Wadham.</i>	<i>James I.</i>
	<i>Derorby</i>	
Pembroke,	<i>Thomas Tiflat.</i>	

All these are well endow'd with Fellowships, Scholarships, &c. The Halls (where Gentlemen live upon their own Expences) are Seven,

<i>Glocester,</i>	{	<i>Alban,</i>
<i>S. Edmund,</i>		<i>S. Mary:</i>
<i>Magdalen,</i>		<i>New-Inn.</i>
<i>Hart,</i>		

The Danes, who were a rude unpolish'd People, enemies to Learning, Religion, and every thing that was Honourable, sack'd and burn'd this place among others, in their Ravages through the Kingdom. And about the Reign of King *John*, (at which time 'tis said there were three Thousand Students, who lodg'd up and down in the Town,) the Scholars were heavily afflicted with the rude carriage of the Citizens, and retir'd in great Numbers to *Reading*, *Cambridge*, *Salisbury*, and other places; But about *Henry* the Third's Reign, and so downward, (as pious Persons built Colleges and Halls for the entertainment of Students) they began to be less dependent upon the Town; especially being supported with good Revenues, as well as accommodated with convenient Lodgings.

The chief of its publick Buildings are,

1. The *Schools* a noble stately Pile of Building, wherein Exercise for the several Degrees are performed, the publick Lectures read, &c.

2. The Library, built by Sir *Thomas Bedley*, and commonly call'd the *Bodleian* Library; famous throughout *Europe* for its prodigious Stock of Books, both Printed and Manuscript.

3. The Theater a Magnificent Work, and of admirable Contrivance, Built by the Right Reverend Father in God, *Gilbert Sheldon*, Arch-Bishop of *Canterbury*.

4. The Museum, commonly call'd *Ashmole's Museum*, is a neat Building; the lower part whereof is a Chymical Elaboratory; and the upper, a Repository of Natural and Artificial Rarities.

*Woodstock*, distant from *Oxford* about 6 miles to the North, by its name implies a situation in a woody part of the Country; and accordingly its greatest Reputation has been the *Park*, along with a Royal Seat built there by King *Henry I.* who probably was induc'd to pitch upon this place for the convenience of Hunting; a Diversion much us'd and admir'd by our Fore-fathers. At present the Town is not very populous, nor the Trade considerable.

*Banbury*, on the edge of *Northampton-shire*, is a pretty large Town; and is principally known upon account of its excellent Cheese.

*Dorchester* lies upon the River *Tame*, at the other end of the County; and is a place of great Antiquity and Dignity: For, as it seems to have flourish'd under the *Romans*, so had it the honour of an Episcopate under the *Saxons*; till in *William* the Conqueror's Reign, that was Translated to *Lincoln*. The removal of the See, and the turning of the High-road another way, have left scarce any Image of its former Grandure.

*Henly* stands in the utmost Limits of this County, Southward, and is a Town of good Wealth and Buildings. The growth of it has probably been owing to its situation on the River of *Thames*; and partly also to the Passage over the same River by a Wooden-bridge, which drew Travellers that way.

## Ancient Places.

*Ancalites*, a People mention'd by *Cesar*, seem to have liv'd in these Parts; and 'tis probable, by the Circumstances, they were seated about the South-corner of the County; and that *Henly* was their chief Town; especially if it may be allow'd so much Antiquity as some are willing to grant it.

## Things Remarkable.

*Roller-stones*, in the Western part of this County, are a number of huge Stones plac'd in a Circle, which some have thought to be Monuments of a Victory; others, a Burying-place; and again, others, a place for the Coronation of the Danish Kings. See *Plot's Oxfordshire*, p. 342.

The Labyrinth made by King *Henry II.* at *Woodstock*, for his Fair *Rosamond*, is much talk'd of; tho' now nothing is to be seen of it.

*Ashop-Wells* near *Banbury*, have been much reformed to of late years by the Nobility and Gentry.



## BUCKINGHAMSHIRE.

**T**HE County of *Buckingham* (so call'd probably from great numbers of *Bucks* in this Woody Country) is for many miles together extended from North to South. The *Chiltern* is one part of the County; which is a continued Ridge of Hills; and below them lies the other Branch call'd the *Vale*, being a pleasant Champaign Country, consisting of Meadows, Pastures and Corn-grounds.

The more considerable  
Towns are, { *Buckingham,*  
                          *Ailsbury,*  
                          *Wickham,*  
                          *Stony-Stratford.*

*Buckingham* gives name to the whole County, and as at present a Town of good Note; though anciently it was not very considerable, if we may go by the computation of *Hides* and *Burgesses* in *Domesday*. I know not whether the strength of the place, may not be the reason why it made so considerable a Figure, when the Houses were few, and the Inhabitants thin. 'Tis certain the Castle (now quite gone) was built a good while before the Conquest; and Nature too has in some measure contributed towards its Safety, by surrounding it on all sides but the North, with the River *Ouse*; which must needs make it a valuable Refuge in those troublesome and warlike Times.

*Ailsbury* was also a place of Note, in the beginning of the *Saxons*; being taken from the *Britains* about the year 572. At present it is a large and populous Market-Town, pleasantly seated in the midst of Meadows and Pastures, wherein are fed prodigious numbers of Sheep.

*Wickham*, in the Road between *Oxford* and *London*, is a large and populous Corporation, well built,

and of good Trade. It has a throng Corn-Market and the Woods all round bring in considerable Revenues yearly by supplies sent to the neighbouring Counties; some of which are hard enough put to for Fuel.

*Stony-Stratford*, in the North part of the Shire takes its name from the Stony-Ford that led over the River at that Place. 'Tis a good large Town, in the middle whereof stands the Cross, erected by King *Edward I.* to the Memory of Queen *Eleanor*.

## Ancient Places.

*Pontes*, by the course of the Itinerary, must be somewhere about *Colebrook*; for if that Guide were wanting, the condition of the place would naturally point this out in our search after the old name; For where should we search for it, but at division of the River into four Channels; over each of which here is a Bridge, within a very little space one from another?

*Lectodorum* does not discover it self by the same evidence, but yet seems plainly enough to be *Stony-Stratford*, both upon account of its Situation upon the Military way, and also from the import of the name in the British, which by those who are skill'd in the Language, is affirm'd to signify the same thing as our present Appellation.

## Things Remarkable.

At *Borstal* they still preserve the *Horn*, by the Liberty whereof that Estate was convey'd to *Nigel de Borstal* in the time of one of the *Williams*.

*Pen*, and the Towns upon that Ridge, are observ'd to be the highest Ground in all these parts; there being a sensible Ascent thither all along from *London* and as sensible a Descent when you are past it.

## BEDFORDSHIRE.

**T**HE County of *Bedford* in the South part is Barren; in the middle Woody, and in the North Fruitful. As the Soil distinguishes it into these three Parts, so has Nature divided it into two others, by the Channel of the River *Ouse*, which is the principal River of the County, and runs through it.

Towns more remarkable;  
are, { *Bedford,*  
                          *Dunstable.*

*Bedford*, the principal Town of the County, tho' it can hardly pretend to Roman Antiquity, was yet of very good repute among the *Saxons*; and was one of those which suffer'd from the *Danish* Depredations. But its greatest Miseries were occasion'd by the Castle built there after the Conquest, which was a certain refuge to one Party or the other in all the Civil Wars that follow'd. The Town is parted by the River *Ouse*, and join'd by a Stone-bridge: The South-side has two Churches, and the North three. The Site of the old Castle is now a spacious *Boating-Green*, whither the Neighbouring Gentry resort for their Recreation.

*Dunstable*, so call'd from its high situation, stands upon the end (as it were) of the *Chiltern*, upon a dry chalky Soil. This quality of the Soil puts them to some inconvenience for Water; with which notwith-

standing they are supplied tolerably well with four publick Ponds, one in each Street. It is pretty populous, and well furnish'd with Inns, having the advantage of lying upon the Northern-road, from *London*. The Cross in the middle of the Town was erected by *Edward*, to the Memory of his Queen *Eleanor*.

## Ancient Places.

*Saline* must in all probability be the place now call'd *Chesfield*, near *Temerford*, by the course of the Itinerary, the *Roman* Money, with other marks of Antiquity, discover'd there.

*Magionum*, need be sought at no other place than *Dunstable*, which stands upon a Roman-way, and has the evidence of Roman Money to assert its Antiquity.

## Things Remarkable.

At *Henricot*, the River was observ'd to stand in the year 1399; and again in 1648; which have been look'd upon as *Pregnocks*: the first of the Civil Wars that ensu'd; the second of the Death of King *Charles I.*

*Faller's-Earth* is dug up in great abundance about *Hebourn*.

A Woman in *Dunstable*, had nineteen Children at five Births; 5 at two several ones; and three together at 3 more.



## HERTFORDSHIRE.

THE County of *Hertford* seems to owe its flourishing Condition more to its situation than Soil: For the many Thorow-fairs to and from *London*, have mightily Enrich'd the particular Towns, by the advantage of entertaining Travellers; and its nearness to the City, (together with the Healthfulness of the Air) has induc'd great numbers of the Nobility and Gentry to purchase and build in those Parts.

The most remarkable Towns are, { *S. Albans,* } { *Hatfield,*  
 { *Hertford,* } { *Roxham,*  
 { *Ware,* } { *Stortford.*

*S. Albans*, (the old *Verulamium* of the Romans, and the *Malling-shester* of the Saxons) was of such considerable Note under the Romans, as to be a *Municipium*; but in the famous Inturrection of Queen *Boadicea*, was entirely laid Waste by the Britains: However it recover'd it self, and afterwards had the honour of being the Birth-place of *S. Alban* (the Protomartyr of Britain, in the time of *Dioclesian*;) a Person so eminent for Piety and Goodness, that the Town afterwards took his Name, as the greatest Honour it could do it self. For when *Offa* had built a large and splendid Monastery, Dedicated to the Memory of *S. Alban*, the Town presently flourish'd, and was particularly ambitious of a Relation to that Saint. From time to time there have been discover'd vast remains of Roman Antiquity, in the place where the old *Verulamium* stood, now turn'd into a Corn-field. The Church of the Monastery is still standing, and is a most noble Pile of Building. At present, 'tis a large flourishing Town, having the advantage of being a Thorow-fair on the Northern Road from *London*.

*Hatfield*, (so call'd, as if one should say a Ford of Harts; for their Arms is a Hart couchant in the Water) is a Town rather noted for giving name to the whole County, than any riches or beauty of its own.

The Assizes indeed are still kept here, a mark of its ancient Prosperity; but the Place is neither Populous nor of any tolerable Trade.

*Ware*, so nam'd from the *Wear* in the River *Lee*, is a populous thriving Place, owing its rise to the decay of *Hertford*; for about King *John's* time, the High-Road was turn'd this way; and ever since, *Ware* has been encreasing, and the other dwindling away by little and little.

*Hatfield* is more remarkable for the stately Seat of the Earl of *Salisbury*, than any thing the Town it self can boast of beside.

*Roxham*, or *Rox's Town* (on the North-side of the County) is so call'd from a certain Lady nam'd *Roxia*, who erected a Cross in this place. The Town (ever since *Richard I.* granted it the privilege of a Market) has been still growing; and deals especially in Malt and Corn.

*Stortford*, upon the little River *Stort*, is of late years grown into a considerable Market-Town, and is very well furnish'd with good Inns.

### Ancient Places.

*Verulamium* has been by all Men and all Ages so undoubtably settl'd at *S. Albans* that it is even at this day known by the name of *Verulam* in several of our Writings; and commonly enough in Conversation.

*Dunelm-brive*, upon account of the beginning and end, must be sought somewhere upon a River, *dur* signifying Water, and *briva* a Passage. The course of the Road directs us to look for it below *Flemsted*, where the ancient Highway crosses the Water.

### Things Remarkable.

The little Brook *Wormer* near *Redborn*, is by the Inhabitants thought to portend Dearth or troublesome Times when it breaks out. The Font at *S. Albans* wherein the Children of the Kings of *Scotland* us'd to be Baptiz'd, was a most noble Monument, plac'd here by *Sir Richard Lea*, Master of the Pioneers; but it is since taken away, as it seems in the late Civil Wars.

## MIDDLESEX.

THE County of *Middlesex*, or *Middle-Saxons* (so call'd from its situation between the East and South Saxons, is of no large extent, but is furnish'd with great numbers of fair Buildings and sweet Seats, for the retirement of Nobility and Gentry.

Places most considerable are, { *London, Cap.* } { *Fulham,*  
 { *Wesminster,* } { *Chelsey,*  
 { *Uxbridge,* } { *Hampstead.*  
 { *Hampton-Court,*

*LONDON*, (The Metropolis of our Nation) as one of the most flourishing Cities in the whole World, is it of such Antiquity, that the most ancient Records and Memorials can give us no account of its Original. Under the Britains, it was a considerable place; and *Ammianus Marcellinus*, even in his time, call it an ancient City. Its Glory appears most distinctly under the Romans, who probably out of a sense of its Greatness would not grant it the

privilege of a *Municipium*; Governing it by a sort of Commissioners sent yearly from *Rome*. But though they would not allow it too much Power and Authority, they own'd its Glory and Eminence, by giving it the honourable name of *Augusta*. Also, when *Constantine* had confirm'd Christianity, upon the removal of the *Flamin*, a Bishop's See was settl'd here. At the beginning of the Saxon Government, it had its share of the Misfortunes with which this Wainike People oppress'd the whole Nation; but bore up however against the Storm, till the Conversion of that People to Christianity. Then *Ethelbert* King of *Kent*, built a Church Dedicated to *S. Paul*, which Posterity by degrees improv'd into a most stately Fabrick. This, along with the greatest part of the City, was consum'd in that most dreadful Fire which happen'd in the year 1666; and put all things into such confusion, that the ancient State of this noble City, must have been in a great measure hidden

B<sup>d</sup> John Robinson.



from Posterity, had not the industrious and learned Mr. *John Stow*, rescu'd it from Oblivion by his excellent *Survey*. To him I refer the Reader for matters of Antiquity; and shall content my self with a short description of the several Buildings, and other Curiosities, which it boasts of at this day. Premising thus much in general; that within these Hundred years and especially since the above-mention'd Fire, the City has grown so strangely both in publick and private Buildings; has also stretch'd itself out so far on all sides, that by a Draught of an hundred years old; nay, of one taken immediately before 1666, compar'd with its present extent and Beauty, one could not imagine it to be the same City.

I. The *Tower*, at the East-end of the City, is a large stately Fabrick, fortified with Walls and a broad Ditch; where the Arms and other Warlike Preparations are laid up as in a common Store.

II. *Gresham College*, so call'd from Sir *Thomas Gresham* the Founder, was instituted for the Improvement of Arts and Sciences; and accordingly there are great Salaries sett'd for the several Professors of *Divinity, Law, Physick, Astronomy, Geometry* and *Musick*.

III. The *Royal Exchange* was built by the same Sir *Thomas Gresham*, and a most noble Ornament to the City, as well as a singular convenience to Merchants.

IV. *Guild-hall*, (or the *Senate-house*) a most beautiful Building.

V. *Paul's Church*, as was observ'd before, was consum'd in the dreadful Fire of 1666; but is now rising again with new Beauty and Majesty. A magnificent Building it is, if we look upon its Extent and Strength; and if upon the Contrivance, a most curious Fabrick. The Quire is finished, and Divine Service constantly celebrated in it.

VI. *Christ-Church-Hospital* was Founded by King *Edward VI.* for the Maintenance of Orphans: one Thousand whereof are suppos'd to be annually provided for by this Charity. After they have gone through the several Schools, they are bound out Apprentices, at 15 years of Age; or sent to one of the Universities, where they are maintain'd for 7 years.

VII. *Charter-house* (so call'd from the *Carthusian Monks*) was erected into an Hospital by *Thomas Sutton Esq;* by the name of *The Hospital of King James*, endowing it with Revenues sufficient for the Maintenance of 50 Poor Brothers or Pensioners, who are to be either poor decay'd Gentlemen, or Merchants, or Superannuated Soldiers, 40 poor Scholars, who are either put to Trades, or sent to the University; with a *Master, Preacher, Physician, and other Officers*.

VIII. The *Inns of Court* are chiefly Four, The *Inner-Temple*, the *Middle-Temple*, *Grays-Inn* and *Lincolns-Inn*; besides several others of less Note. Here great numbers of young Gentlemen are educated in the study of the Laws, and qualified either for publick Pleadings, or for the Service of the Kingdom in any other Capacity, that requires a more than ordinary knowledge of our Customs and Constitution.

Besides those Ornaments we have mention'd, the Churches are spacious and beautiful; the publick Halls of the several Companies large and stately; the Squares uniform and pleasant, and the private Buildings and Shops exceeding pleasant. A late ingenious Author hath made it probable from the number of Burials and Houses in *London, Paris*, and *Rouen*; that the first of these is altogether as big and populous as both the other two.

*WESTMINSTER*, as it is a City distinct from *London*, with separate Magistrats and Privileges, so was it formerly at least a Mile distant from it, till

by degrees the Suburbs of the former joyn'd the latter, and made them both together like one entire City. It seems to owe its rise to the Church, which *Sibert King* of the East-Saxons built there to the honour of *S. Peter*; and which, together with its Westerly situation from *London*, caus'd its name to be chang'd from *Thorney*, into the present one of *Westminster*. *Edward the Confessor* built it anew, and endow'd it largely: His Fabrick was afterwards demolished by *Henry III.* who erected a new one, very stately and magnificent; to which *Henry VII.* added a Chapel, commonly call'd *King Henry VIIIth's Chapel*, for the burial of himself and Children. It was by *Q. Elizabeth* converted into a Collegiate Church, consisting of a Dean, twelve Prebendaries, &c. The greatest Curiosities it affords are the Tombs and Monuments of our Princes, and of the most eminent Nobility, with several Persons famous for Learning and other Excellencies in their respective Ages.

Near the *Abbey* is *Westminster-Hall*, a spacious Room, wherein (and in places round it) Justice is publickly administred in the several Courts, mention'd in the Introduction. Nor ought the School to be omitted, since it is so serviceable to Church and State, in furnishing both with Persons every way qualified for the discharge of their several Stations.

*White-Hall* is conveniently seated between *S. James's Park* and the *Thames*, and is the Residence of our Kings. It was the House of Cardinal *Wolsey*, and converted into a Royal Palace by King *Henry VIII.*

*Uxbridge*, upon the edge of the County, is a pretty large Town stretch'd out on each side a long Street; lying upon the Road, it reaps great advantage by the entertainment of Travellers, and is well stor'd with Inns. 'Tis mention'd in our Histories, particularly upon account of the Treaty held there, in the Reign of *Charles I.*

*Hampton-Court*, is a Royal Seat, lying pleasantly upon the River *Thames*, and accommodated with most excellent Prospects all round. Cardinal *Wolsey* begun it; and King *Henry VIII.* finish'd it: But their Structure, though very large and magnificent for that Age, is far excelled by the Additions made to it by his late Majesty; whether we compare the Buildings themselves, or the Gardens, and other contrivances about it.

*Fulham*, is only remarkable for the residence of the Bishops of *London*, who have here their Palace for a retirement out of the City.

*Chisly*, situated pleasantly upon the *Thames*, is noted only for its noble Hospital, built for the maintenance of lame and decay'd Soldiers. It was begun by King *Charles II.* carry'd on by King *James*, and finish'd by his late Majesty; a Building as in itself very magnificent, so accommodated with all manner of Offices convenient for the design, and also with pleasant Walks and Gardens.

*Hampstead*, at a little distance from *London* to the Northwest, is remarkable for the goodness of the Air, which has caus'd its enlargement in Buildings of late Years.

#### Ancient Places.

*Sulleniata* is *Breck's-Hill*, upon the edge of this County, as appears both from the distances and remains of Antiquity, (*Coins, Urns, Bricks, &c.*) that have been discover'd there.

*Londinum*, *London*, call'd also *Augusta*, a Title of Preheminence among the Romans.

The *Green-houses* at *Hampton-Court*, with Stoves under them, to preserve foreign Plants in gradual Heats, suitable to the Climes whereof they are Natives, is an admirable Contrivance.



ESSEX.

ESSEX is so call'd from the *East-Saxons* who inhabited it, and had that Name from their Situation, with relation to the *South-Saxons*. As 'tis on the Side accommodated with the Sea, so is it in all Parts furnish'd with good Rivers, which do not only water it, but convey likewise all Necessaries from abroad, and give them an Opportunity of sending out such Commodities as they can spare for the Use of foreign Parts.

Towns more remarkable, are { *Colchester,*  
*Chelmsford,*  
*Harwich,*  
*Maldon.*

*Colchester*, seated on the Brow of a Hill, and extended from East to West, flourish'd in the Times of the *Romans* under the Name of *Colonia*; from whence possibly the present *Colchester* (or as the *Saxons* call'd it *Colneceaster*) has its Original. Next to this their Antiquity; the Inhabitants glory that *Helena*, Mother to *Constantine* the Great, was born in this Place. At present 'tis large and populous, containing a great many Parishes.

*Chelmsford* or *Chelmesford*, has a convenient Situation, just at the Meeting of two Rivers. The Place seems to have been of no great Note, 'till the Bishop of *London*, in *Henry I.*'s Time, turn'd the high Road thro' it, which before lay thro' *Wittle*. At present the *Assizes* are held in it.

*Harwich* is more Famous upon account of its Harbour, than either the Riches or Building of the Town. The Convenience of Passage from hence to *Holland*, is the Occasion why 'tis so much spoke of, and so well known.

*Malden*, tho' of it self large and well inhabited, (being one Street reaching a Mile in length) is yet of greater Eminence by reason of its Antiquity, and the considerable Figure that it made among our Forefathers. *Claudius Caesar*, in his Attempt upon *Britain*, storm'd this Place, and left a strong Garrison to hold and defend it. But when the Insolence of the Soldiers came to such a Height, that the poor *Britains* could no longer bear the Indignities and Oppressions, these (under the Conduct of *Boadicia*) form'd themselves into a Confederacy, burnt this Colony, and put all the Inhabitants to the Sword. Under the *Saxons* we hear little or nothing of it; tho' in the Conqueror's Time, it seems to have been in a tolerable Condition, *Domesday* reckoning 180 Houses.

Ancient Places.

*Dwelitum*, by the Course of the *Itinerary*, the sound of the present Name, and the Remains of

Antiquity discover'd thereabouts, cannot well be any other than *Leyton*, about six Miles from *London*.

*Concennia Insula*, has the plain Remains of the old name left in it the Island *Canvey* above five miles in length, which feeds great numbers of Sheep.

*Cesaremagus* is *Dunmow*, written anciently *Dunmage* and *Dunmawg*, the last Syllable whereof is a plain Relick of the old *magus*; and as for the first (*Dun*) every one knows how common that is in the ancient names of places. All the Objection is, that it lies a little out of the Road, which the *Itinerary* seems to take in that Journey; but any one who observes what wheelings and windings the *Itinerary* takes in other parts of *England*, will reckon that to be no exception.

*Canonium*, is *Wittle*, through which the High-way pass'd before *Henry I.*'s time: And, besides, 'twas a place of Note among the *Saxons*, and after the Conquest; which agrees well with that observation, That the *Saxons* settl'd in the deserted Stations of the *Romans*.

*Othona*, a Garrison under the Count of the *Saxon* Shore, seems to have been at *Ithancester*, mention'd by our Histories, and seated about the utmost point of *Denz* Hundred.

*Camalodunum*, from the present name, the course of the *Itinerary*, and the consent of all judicious Writers, must be concluded to have been at *Maldon*, which we describ'd before.

*Ad Ansam* seems to be *Wittham*; for the Road lies thro' it, the Distances answer, and it still shews an old Camp.

*Colonia* is by all agreed to be *Colchester*.

*Idumani fl. estium*, is *Black-water-bay*, ydu in *British* signifying *black*.

Things Remarkable.

The Caverns near *Tilbury*, in a chalky Soil, have given Occasion to some Conjectures; tho' perhaps no one does so well agree either with the Nature of the Ground or the Custom of the *Britains*, as the Opinion, That they were intended by that People for Supplies of *Chalk* to manure their Lands.

*Wallfleet-Oysters* are got in great Abundance upon this Coast, and so call'd from a Wall (built to secure the Inhabitants against Inundations) along which they lie.

It was a pleasant Custom which they had in the Priory of *Dunmow*, That whoever did not repent of his Marriage in a Year and a Day, upon Oath made thereof before the Prior and Convent, should have a Gammon of Bacon deliver'd him.

SUFFOLK.

THE County of *Suffolk*, contracted from *Suth-folk* (for so it was written among the *Saxons*) is so call'd from its Situation with respect to *Norfolk* or *North-folk*. The Soil is, in most parts, very fruitful; assisted by a sort of *Marle* mixt with Clay.

Towns more remarkable, are { *Bury,*  
*Ipswich,*  
*New-market,*  
*Ciarc.*

*Bury* (so call'd by contraction for *S. Edmunds-bury*) seems



seem to owe its Original and Growth, in a great measure, to the Translation of the Body of *St Edmund* to this Place; an excellent Prince, who was barbarously murder'd by the *Danes*. And even the *Danish* Cruelties, which were the Ruin of most other Places, did a considerable Service to this Town; King *Cenutus*, out of a Desire to make amends for the Injuries done it by his Father *Sueno*, taking a particular liking to it, and endowing it with many Privileges. The Popes also, out of a Regard to the Sanctity of *St. Edmund*, granted it large Immunities. So that the Monastery and Town grew apace in Wealth and Reputation, 'till the general Dissolution by *K. Henry VIII.* And now, tho' the First is destroy'd, the Second is still in a flourishing Condition.

*Ipswich* is a Place mention'd in our Histories about the latter End of the *Saxons*; by whom it was call'd *Gypswic*. The Advantage of a Harbour has made it considerable; and, accordingly, that of late Years having not been so commodious as formerly, the Town it self has gone a little to Decay. For about an hundred Years ago, they had fourteen Churches; which are so far from being encreas'd, that at this Day there remain only twelve. Their Number of Ships also is considerably diminish'd of late Years; which must be an Argument that their Trade is not so good as it has been.

*Newmarket*, upon the Edge of *Cambridgeshire*, by the very Name betrays its want of Antiquity. That it is of Note at present, is not owing either to Manufactures or any particular Commodities; but partly to its Situation upon the Road, and partly to its Convenience for Hunting and Horse Races: By which Entertainments the Court is often drawn thither; and accordingly, there is a House built for her Majesty.

*Clare*, upon the River *Stour*, is very often mention'd in our *English* Histories, on account of the

Earls to whom it has given Title, and who, in their several Ages, have been Men of great Worth and Eminence.

#### Ancient Places.

*Villa Faustini* seems to belong to *St. Edmunds-bury*, by the Course of the *Itinerary*.

*Combretonium* discovers it self in the present *Breton-hem*, upon the River *Breton*; the Termination *Ham* being an Addition purely *Saxon*.

*Extensio*, or 'Eggen', a Promontory, shooting it self a long Way into the Sea; which we, at this Day, call *Easten-ness*.

*Gastionum* is *Burgh Castle*, upon the Coast of *Norfolk*, near *Yarmouth*.

#### Things Remarkable.

That vast Ditch which runs along *Newmarket-beach*, is a Work so prodigious, that the common People cannot conceive it made by any but the Devil; and upon that Fancy have call'd it *Devil's-dike*. Whereas, 'tis plain, that it was contriv'd as a common Fence and Bound between the two Kingdoms in the *Saxon* Heptarchy.

It was a facetious sort of Tenure, by which *Hemingston* in this County was holden, viz. upon Condition, That every *Christmas-day* the Lord of it should dance, make a Noise with his Cheeks puff'd out, and let a Fair in the Presence of the King.

Upon the Sea-coast, near *Aldburrow*, the Inhabitants valu'd themselves upon a signal Favour of Providence; which, in a time of great Dearth, sent 'em a Crop of *Pearls* among the hard Rocks, in the beginning of *Autumn*. But the more Judicious find no Occasion for the Miracle; but think it may be very well solv'd, by imagining the Sea might cast in some Pulse, left in it by the Shipwreck, and so cause that unusual Growth.

## N O R F O L K.

THE County of *Norfolk* is so call'd with respect to *Suffolk*, as if one should say, the *Northern* People, or the *Northern Branch* of the *East-Angles*. Of all the Shires in *England*, this is observ'd to be most populous, for the Compass, and to be thickest set with Towns and Villages. They are generally rich, and live handsomely, which perhaps may be one Reason why they have been so much given to the Study of the Laws; so that even your ordinary sort are not altogether unacquainted with the little Niceties of Courts and Pleadings. Riches breed Quarrels, and Quarrels Law-suits, and those drive the Parties engag'd to the Examination of their Cause; which would never be thought of nor started, if they were as hard put to it for the common Necessaries of Life, as they are in many other Places.

The more remarkable Places, are { *Norwich*,  
*Yarmouth*,  
*Lynne*,  
*Walsingham*.

*Norwich* is as much as one should say a *Castle* or *Fort* to the North, with relation to *Castor*, about four Miles South from it, out of the Ruins whereof *Norwich* seems to have risen. For that it is much more Modern, appears from hence, that we do not find it mention'd before the latter end of the *Saxon* Times;

whereas *Castor* was, no doubt, the ancient *Venta*. It is seated upon the side of a Hill from North to South, about a Mile and a Half, or two Miles in length: The Inhabitants are wealthy, the City populous, and the Buildings (both publick and private) very neat and beautiful. It has 11 Gates, and is surrounded with Walls, except where 'tis defended by the River, viz. on the East. *Domesday* tells us, it had no less than 1320 Burgeses; and altho' it suffer'd very much by the Insurrection of *Ralph* Earl of the *East Angles* against *William* the Conqueror, yet was that Damage abundantly repair'd, when the Episcopal See was remov'd hither from *Thetford*. The great Number of *Netherlanders*, who came over, upon the Tyranny of the Duke of *Normandy*, and sett'd here, seem also to have been a mighty Advantage to the City, by settling the Manufacture of worsted Stuffs.

*Yarmouth*, on the Mouth of the River *Tare*, seems to have risen out of the Ruins of the old *Garionum*, as *Norwich* did out of those of *Castor* or *Venta*. It is not of so much Note, as one wou'd expect from the Advantage of the Sea, and the Convenience of the Harbour. The Reason is, because the Violence of the Wind upon this Coast is such, that they have much ado to keep the Haven so open and free from Heaps of Sand, as to maintain a tolerable Trade. At present their great Business is the *Herring Trade*. They have but one Church, very large and stately, with a high, lofty Spire.

*Lynne*,



*Lynne*, about the entrance of the *Ouse* into the Ocean, next to *Norwich*, is the best Town in those parts, having grown in Wealth, Buildings and number of Merchants, by the convenience of a very safe and advantageous Harbour. The Soil too all about it contributes to its greatness; for 'tis fat and luscious, and very fruitful. The very name implies a *moist, fenny*, situation; *Hlyn* signifying so much in the old *British*.

*Walsingham* was one of the most famous Places in these parts, till the Dissolution of Monasteries by K. Henry VIII. for then, its Monastery (from whence sprung all its Glory, Reputation and Riches,) was plunder'd and demolish'd. Before, rich Jewels, Gold and Silver, were heap'd in with so much profuseness, according to the Superstition of those Times, that it was the great admiration of Strangers and Travellers.

## Ancient Places.

*Silmaragus* seems to be *Tetford*, which was formerly a place of great note, till the Bishop's See was removed to *Norwich*, and then it fell to decay.

*Gariensis Ostrum* discovers it self by the present name of the River *Tare*, and of the Town at the mouth, *Ta mouth*.

*Venta Icenorum*, the capital City of the *Iceni*, was at *Castor*, three miles South of *Norwich*; now fallen to decay, but known to be a place of Antiquity by the old Walls, and the discovery of *Roman Coins*.

*Metaris Aestuarium*, mention'd by *Ptolemy*, is suppos'd to be the *Washes* near *Lynne*.

*Iciani*, by the name should seem to be *Iceborough*.

*Brannodunum* is plainly *Brancafter* near *Walsingham*.

## Things Remarkable.

*Carleton* in this County was held by a pleasant Tenour, That 100 Herrings bak'd in 24 Pies should be presented to the King, in what part of England soever he was, when they first came into season. The custom is still observ'd, and the Herrings duly convey'd to the King by the Lord of the Manor.

Herrings are observ'd to be more plentiful upon this Coast, than any other part of England; which brings in great advantage to the Inhabitants.

*S. Benner's*, an Island so loose and unfix'd, that it seems to be kept from swimming away, only by the Roots of Trees.

# CAMBRIDGESHIRE.

THE County of *Cambridge*, according to different parts, is of a different Soil. The South is fertile, well-till'd, and bears abundance of Barley; whereof they make vast quantities of *Malt*. The North is more wet and spongy, and so fitter for Corn than Pasture; not only upon account of its loose softness, but by reason also of the frequent overflowings in those parts.

The principal; *Cambridge*,  
Towns are 3 *E.g.*

*Cambridge* seems to be the Daughter of the old *Camboritum*, and possibly may have borrow'd the first Syllable of her name from the Mother. The University is her greatest Glory, which for many hundred years has furnish'd Church and State with Persons of Learning, Piety and Prudence. When it was first instituted, let others determine: Thus much is certain, that like *Oxford*, at first it afforded the Scholars no publick reception or place of Studies, but oblig'd them to take up with such Lodgings in the Town as they could get. By degrees, the inconvenience of this method was observ'd, not only from the mean Accommodation they met with, but also from the frequent Commotions caus'd by the Insolence of the Towns-men. Whereupon, pious and charitable Persons began to erect *Inns* and *Hostels* for the reception of Scholars, in order to give them an opportunity of retirement, and an independance upon the Town. But still they liv'd upon their own Estates, enjoying only the convenience of Lodgings, without any manner of Endowments; till, in the Reign of *Edward I.* they began to build Colleges, not only for the Reception, but also for the maintenance of certain numbers of Scholars, according to the Revenues assign'd to that purpose. The order and time of their Foundation, with their respective Founders, are as follow.

Colleges and Halls.	Founders.	Year.
Peter-house,	<i>Hugh Balsham,</i>	1284
Clare-hall,	<i>Richard Badew,</i>	1340
Bennet or Corpus Christi,	Society of Friars in Corpus Christi,	1346
Pembroke-hall,	Lady Mary S. Paul, Count. of Pembroke.	1347
Trinity-hall,	<i>William Bareman,</i>	1353
Gonvil and Caius,	<i>Edmund Gonvil.</i>	1348
Afterwards finish'd by <i>John Caius</i> .		
King's College,	<i>Henry VII.</i>	1441
Queen's College,	<i>Q. Margaret of Anjou.</i>	1448
Katherine-hall,	<i>Robert Woodlark,</i>	1459
Jesius College,	<i>John Alcocke.</i>	1497
Christ College, and S. John's,	Margaret Count- tels of Richmond	1506
Magdalen College,	<i>Thomas Audley.</i>	1542
Trinity College,	<i>Henry VIII.</i>	1546
Emanuel,	<i>Sir Walter Mildmay,</i>	
Sidney-Suffex,	<i>Francis Sidney.</i>	

This University, as well as its Sister *Oxford*, has its publick Schools and Library; but falls far short of them in stateliness of Buildings, number of Books, and other Ornaments. The Structures most remarkable in *Cambridge*, are, 1. *King's-College-Chapel*, which for contrivance and largeness, is look'd upon to be one of the finest in the World. 2. *Trinity-College Library*, begun under the Government of the famous Dr. *Barrow*, and now entirely finish'd; for beauty and design (considering also the bigness of it) perhaps it cannot be match'd in the three Kingdoms.

*Ely* is seated in the chief of those spongy Islands, B. P. W. F. I. wherewith this northern part of the County abounds. *wood.* Whether it had the name from *Eels*, I shall not dispute: 'Tis certain, the softness of the Soil and the watry situation do both make the Conjecture more plausible than *Polydore Virgil's* fancy about the



Greek *μαρσ*, signifying a *marsh*. For what have we to do here with a Greek Original? The place owes its rise to Religion; for *Etbeldreda*, Wife to *Egfrid* King of *Northumberland*, founded here a Nunnery, which afterwards, by the Patronage of Kings and Noblemen, grew up to an incredible degree of Wealth and Revenues. Inasmuch, that in *Henry I.*'s time it was advanc'd to the dignity of a Bishop's See, and had *Cambridgeshire* assign'd it for its Diocese, which before belong'd to *Lincoln*. Notwithstanding these Advantages, the City cannot boast of any great beauty, either in publick or private Buildings; for its fenny situation, making the Air thick and gross, has render'd it no very desirable place of Residence. The Cathedral, indeed, is a spacious and beautiful Building.

#### Ancient Places.

*Cambristum*, situated upon the River *Cam*, and implying as much as *a Ford over it*, is the old *Grancaster* of the *Saxons*, out of the Ruins whereof the present *Cambridge* seems to have risen.

#### Things Remarkable.

The vast *Ditches* thrown up by the *East-Angles* in several parts of this County, to prevent the Incursions of the *Mercians*, are such as few other places can shew.

*Sturbridge-fair*, so call'd from the River *Sture* upon which it is kept every year in *September*, is very famous for resort of People and variety of Wares.

## H U N T I N G D O N S H I R E.

THE County of *Huntingdon* seems to have that name from the convenience of *Hunting*, an opinion that is back'd by the ancient condition of this Shire, which is said to have been almost one entire Forest till the Reign of *Henry II.* At present it is a very good Corn-Country; and the East-parts, which are fenny and very fat, afford excellent Pasture.

The more remarkable  
Towns, are

}	<i>Huntingdon,</i> <i>Goodmanchester,</i> <i>Kimbolton,</i> <i>S. Ives.</i>
---	--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

*Huntingdon*, the chief Town of the Shire, is seated upon the River *Ouse*. Formerly it was much more considerable, than at present it is; as appears from its fifteen Churches, being reduc'd to two. The cause of this decay seems to be the obstruction mention'd by *Speed* to have been made in the River which before was navigable to this Town, to the great profit of the Inhabitants.

*Goodmanchester*, call'd formerly *Gormanchester*, stands over-against *Huntingdon*, on the other side of the River. It has improv'd it self chiefly by *Agriculture*, wherein the Inhabitants are very industrious; and they boast, that at one time they have entertain'd the King in his Progress, with a noble Show of nine-score Plows. And in this their Employment, they have been so successful, that in the Reign of King *James I.* the Town was made a Corporation.

*Kimbolton*, a pretty fair Town, seated in a bottom,

is the Ornament of the East-part of this County.

*S. Ives*, upon the River *Ouse*, is call'd by a late Writer, *a fair, large and ancient Town*: But within these three or four years it was a great part of it burnt down; and so, possibly, may hardly merit that character at present.

#### Ancient Places.

*Durobriva*, i. e. *the passage of the River* (viz. *Nen*) must be *Dornford*, formerly call'd *Dorm-ceaster* and *Caer-Dorm*; whether we respect the course of the Itinerary, the discovery of the ancient Coins, or the marks of an old City.

*Durosponte*, by the import of the Word, must have been some place upon the *Ouse*; the name signifying *a Bridge over the Ouse*. *Gormanchester* bids fairest for it; which, as an Evidence of its Antiquity, throws up old *Roman Money*: And besides, that more modern name was only given it, when King *Alfred* bestow'd these parts upon *Gorman the Dane*.

#### Things Remarkable.

It has been observ'd of this County, that the Families have gone strangely to decay; and that even an hundred years ago, there were few *Sir-names* of any note, which could be drawn down beyond the Reign of *Henry VIII.* The cause is uncertain; unless we should impute it to the great quantity of *Abby-lands* that were in this Shire; which, upon the Dissolution, fell into Lay hands, and perhaps would no more stick by them here, than they have done by their owners in other places.

## N O R T H A M P T O N S H I R E.

THE County of *Northampton* is a plain, level Country, abounding with Pasturage and Corn-fields. The number of Churches is an argument of its populousness; for they are so thick set, that from some places you may see no less than thirty Steeples at a time. For Houses also of the Nobility and Gentry, it may vie with any County in *England*, of an equal bigness.

The more remarkable Towns, are

}	<i>Northampton,</i> <i>Peterborough,</i> <i>Dantrey.</i>
---	----------------------------------------------------------------

*Northampton*, seated at the meeting of two Rivers, seems to be of no great Antiquity, since we hear little of it in our Histories, till after the Conquest. But in the Commotions rais'd by the Rebellious Barons, it was made the Seat of War: And sometimes, the Kings of *England* have held their Parliaments at it; induc'd by the convenience of its situation, almost in the Heart of the Kingdom. The Buildings of it were very handsome, and the Town it self pretty large; having within the Walls seven Parish-Churches, and in the Suburbs, two. But in our Age, a most dreadful Fire laid it in Ashes; by which the Inhabitants







## R U T L A N D S H I R E.

*Rutlandshire* is the least of all the Counties in *England*; and, before the Conquest, seems to have been part of *Northamptonshire*. For till long after the coming in of the *Normans*, we do not find it nam'd as a distinct County. 'Tis of form almost circular; the Soil is rich, and the Situation pleasant.

Towns more remarkable, are } *Uppingham*,  
 } *Okeham*.

*Uppingham*, in the South-part of the Shire, is a well-frequented Market-town, and has a handsom School.

*Okeham* (situated pleasantly in the middle of the Vale of *Camore*, and so call'd from *Oaks*) belong'd formerly to the *Ferrars*, and is at present a Market-town of good note.

*Ancient Places.*

*Margidunum*, by its Termination, seems to point

out to us some *Hill* in these parts, where we are to look for it. *Market-Overton* has certainly the best right; which, as it is seated upon a high Ground, and answers the distances exactly enough, so does it cast up abundance of Coins in Testimony of its Antiquity; and shews store of *Marle*, to answer the *Marga* in the beginning of the old name.

*Things Remarkable,*

At *Okeham*, was born a Dwarf who was scarce 18 inches high, when a year old, and when 30, only about 3 foot and 9 Inches. When the Court came in progress that way, he was serv'd up in a cold Pye at the Duke of *Buckingham's* Table.

'Tis an old custom at the same Town, That the first time any Baron of the Realm comes through it, he shall give a Horse-shoe to nail upon the Castle-gate: And in case he refuses, the Bayliff has power to stop his Coach, and take one off his Horse's Foot.

## L I N C O L N S H I R E.

THE County of *Lincoln* is very large, and is branch'd into three Parts, under three several names, *Holland*, *Kesteven* and *Lindsey*. The first is a soft, marshy Ground, abounding with Rivers and Fens; the second is much better Peopl'd, has a more wholesome Air, and a Soil more fruitful; the third juts out into the Ocean with a large Front, and is bigger than either of the other two,

The more considerable  
Towns, are } *Lincoln*,  
 } *Stamford*,  
 } *Boston*,  
 } *Grantham*.

*Lincoln* (probably so call'd from its watry situation, *Lbin* in *British* implying so much) is the chief Town of this County both in Antiquity and Dignity. For it was fortify'd by the *Britains*; and *Vortimer* himself was bury'd in it. Notwithstanding the Calamities which the *Danes* brought upon it, it still kept up its Head; and, at the Conquest, was in a thriving condition, as we learn from *Domesday*. About which time, the Bishop's See was transferr'd thither from *Derbyshire*; upon a publick Order, that no Bishops should have their Seats in obscure Villages. The Diocese was exceeding large; and notwithstanding *Ely* was taken out of it by *Henry II.* and *Peterbartugis* and *Oxford* by *Henry VIII.* it is still by much the greatest in *England*. The Cathedral, as it now stands, is a most stately Pile, and of excellent Workmanship; to which perfection it was brought by several Hands. 'Tis said, there was once 30 Churches in it; but now not above 18. So much has Time spoil'd it of its ancient Grandeur.

*Stamford*, upon the River *Welland*, is so call'd from the *stony Ford* that was in that place. Before the Conquest, it flourish'd much; and in the time of *Edward III.* upon a Contest between the *Northern* and *Southern* Students in *Oxford*, a great number of them retir'd hither, and settl'd an University. But upon an

Accommodation, they went back again, and a publick Act was pass'd, That no *Oxford-man* should ever profess at *Stamford*. In the Civil Wars between the Houses of *York* and *Lancaster*, it was destroy'd with Fire and Sword, and could never after perfectly recover it self; tho' at present it contains some seven Parishes.

*Boston* or *Botolph's Town*, at the mouth of the *Witham*, is built on both sides that River, and join'd with a wooden Bridge. In *Edward I's* time, it was ransack'd and burnt down by a wicked Gang, which could never be discover'd: Only their Ring-leader confessed the Fact, and was hang'd. But it recover'd it self; especially by the Staple of *Wool* being settl'd here, which very much enrich'd it. The Inhabitants at present deal mostly in merchandise and Grazing; and with so good success, that the Town is populous and well-built, and the Market much frequented. Their Church is a beautiful Building, the high Steeple whereof is a good Guide to Mariners.

*Grantham* is a good Market-town; and is much talk'd of upon account of its exceeding high Steeple.

*Ancient Places.*

*Gaufennæ* may be conveniently enough settl'd at *Brig-casterton* near *Stamford*, where the River *Gwash* or *Wash* crosses the High-way; which possibly may be some remain of the old *Gaufennæ*.

*Ad Pontem* is plainly *Paunton*, near the Head of the River *Witham*; which may be inferr'd not only from the similitude of Names, but also from the distances and marks of Antiquity, discover'd in that place.

*Croscallana*, tho' it wants the Analogy of names to claim a place at *Ancaster*, is yet sufficiently demonstrat'd to belong to it, both by the distances from the Stations on each side, its situation upon the high Way, and the Coins, Vaults, &c. that have been discover'd there.

*Lindum*



*Lindum* is on all hands agreed to be *Lincoln*.

### Things Remarkable.

About *Belvoir-Castle*, they find the *Astroites*, or *Star-stone*, resembling little *Stars* with five Rays.

In *Stamford*, they have the Custom, which *Littleton* calls *Burrough-English*; whereby the youngest Sons inherit such Lands as their Father die possess'd of.

Between *Stamford* and *Lincoln*, they have many *Spaws* or *Chalybate-Springs*: Those which are most used, are *Bourne* and *Walcot*, near *Folkingham*.

At *Wragby*, 8 Miles East of *Lincoln*, a Woman brought forth a Child with two Heads, *Anno* 1676. which lived some Hours.

At *Salselby*, near the Sea-coast, one Mr. *John Wafen* was Minister 74 Years; in which time he bury'd the Inhabitants three times over, save three or four Persons. He dy'd in *August*, 1693. aged 102.

## N O T T I N G H A M S H I R E.

THE County of *Nottingham* is exceeding well water'd by the River *Trent*, and those lesser ones that run into it. The West-part of it is all taken up with the spacious Forest of *Sherwood*.

The Towns more  
considerable, are { *Nottingham*,  
                          *Southwell*,  
                          *Newark*,  
                          *Mansfield*.

*Nottingham*, the chief Town of the County, is very pleasantly situated; having on one side sweet Meadows; on the other, Hills of an easy ascent. The Town is very beautiful, being adorn'd with a delicate Market-place, neat Churches, and convenient private Buildings. But that which has made it most famous in all Ages, is its strong Castle; built by *Pevel* base Son to *William* the Conqueror. In the beginning of the Civil Wars, *Charles I.* set up his Royal Standard here in the year 1642. but a little after it came into the Hands of the Parliament, and that War being over, it was order'd to be pull'd down. The Duke of *Newcastle* hath since erected a splendid Fabrick in the place, begun in the year 1674.

*Southwell* is famous at this day for its Collegiate

Church of Prebendaries, dedicated to the Virgin *Mary*. Here, the Archbishops of *York* have a Palace, and three Parks.

*Newark* is a pretty Town lying upon the *Trent*; so call'd as if one should say a new *Work*, from the new Castle built there by *Alexander* Bishop of *Lincoln*. Our modern Histories mention it pretty much upon account of its being a Garrison for King *Charles I.* which held out to the very last.

*Mansfield* is the chief Town in the Forest of *Sherwood*, and is a plentiful and flourishing Market.

### Ancient Places.

*Agelocum* or *Segelocum* is probably at *Littleburrow* upon *Trent*, both because the old Way goes along by it; and also because within the marks of an ancient Wall in the Neighbouring Field. the Country people meet with Roman Coins, which they call *Swine-penies*.

### Things Remarkable.

*Mortimer's Hole*, and that Vault wherein *David II.* King of *Scotland* was kept Prisoner, are Rarities wherewith they entertain Strangers in the Castle of *Nottingham*.

At *Workensop*, they have *Liquorice* in great abundance.

## D E R B Y S H I R E.

THE County of *Derby*, towards the South part is hardly six miles broad; but in the North, is thirty. The East and South are well till'd and fruitful enough; but the West, commonly call'd the *Peak of Derby*, is nothing but Rocks and Mountains: which yet makes amends for its Barrenness, by the abundance of *Lead*, *Iron*, &c. which they dig in those parts.

The Principal Town of this Shire, is

*Derby*, so call'd from being a shelter for *Deer*, which implies, that this was formerly a woody Tract. It was pretty famous in the times of the *Saxons*; but at the Conquest was very much impair'd: Whether by the *Danish* Tyranny, I know not; only thus much is certain, That the *Danes* made it a Harbour and Retreat in their Depredations, till they were driven out of it by the victorious Lady *Etheifleda*. At present, it is a handsome Town and pretty large, having a reputation for admirable good ALE above its Neighbours. The Trade of the place is a sort of Retail, viz. buying Corn in order to make advantage of it by Sale to the High-land Countries.

The *Peak* (as was observ'd) is a craggy, mountainous Country, yet is not altogether useless; for the Hills feed great numbers of Sheep, and it affords also a mixture of *Vales* pleasant enough. Under Ground they meet with, 1. *Lead*, 2. *Antimony*, 3. *Mill-stones*, 4. the *Fluor*, a Stone like Crystal.

### Remarkable Things.

*Buxton-wells*, in the *Peak* of *Derby*, have a good reputation among the Naturalists; and are said to have a Virtue very Sovereign in many Distempers.

The *Devil's Arse* in *Peak* is a Spacious Hole, with a great many corners, like so many Apartments.

*Elden-hole* is remarkable for its deepness: Mr. *Cotton* plumb'd it to the depth of 800 fathom, but could find no bottom; at least, that he could certainly know to be so.

Near *Poles-hole*, is a little Brook, consisting of both hot and cold Waters, which are unmixt, and yet so near that you may put the Finger and Thumb, one in hot and the other in cold, both at the same time.



## W A R W I C K S H I R E.

THE County of *Warwick* is divided into two parts, the *Felden*, and the *Woodland*; that on the South side, and this on the North-side of *Avon*. By this division 'tis certain, that as one was a *Champaign*, so the other was a *woody* Country: The first afforded all the Pasture and Corn-grounds, and the second was of little use, besides Fuel. But the Iron-works in the Counties round, have so consum'd the Wood, that they have long since made way for the plough; and at present, what by Marle, and other good Contrivances, all this part produces abundance of Corn: So that the *Felden* is turn'd, in a great measure, into Pasturage.

The chief Towns, { *Warwick*,  
are, { *Covenry*,  
          { *Bremingham*,  
          { *Stratford upon Avon*.

*Warwick*, the principal Town of this Shire, tho' it seems to have been eminent even in the time of the *Romans*, does yet owe its rise, in a great measure to the noble Lady *Erbefleda*, who rais'd it out of Ashes. And indeed, we cannot wonder why it should be particularly pitch'd upon, in those warlike times for a Retreat and Sanctuary, since Nature her self seems to have made it for that purpose. The Hill on which it stands, is one entire Rock of free Stone; and the four ways leading into the Town were cut through it. The Castle is exceeding strong, and was of great consequence in times of War; but now 'tis a noble and delightful Seat. On the South of the Town, is a Prospect of a sweet, fruitful *Champaign*; on the North, of Groves and Parks. The two publick Ornaments, are the *County-hall* and the *Market-house*. This was the condition of the place, till of late; when a most dreadful Fire, enforc'd by a very strong Wind, laid the best part of the Town in Ashes: But 'tis hoped, the Contributions of the Kingdom will be so liberal, that in a few years we shall see it rise out of its Ruins with a fresh Beauty.

*Covenry*, so call'd from a *Convent* there, had formerly the honour of a Bishop's See; which, within a few years, was remov'd back to *Lichfield*; but upon this Condition, That the Bishop should take his Title from both places. They own *Leofrick* Earl of *Mercia* and *Godiva* his Wife, for their greatest Bene-

factors. The growth and increase of the Town seems to be owing, in a great measure, to the Manufacture of *Cloathing* and *Caps*, for which they were once very eminent; tho' now they are almost laid aside. That which they value themselves upon, is a stately Cross, built by Sir *William Hellies* Lord Mayor of *London*, for Beauty and Workmanship not to be match'd in *England*. The Walls (which were very strong,) were demolish'd at the Restoration, by order of King *Charles II*.

*Bremingham*, is a very populous Town, abounding with handsem Buildings: It seems to be of a late date, and to have risen chiefly by the *Iron-works*, which are the great Business of the place.

*Stratford upon Avon* is a pretty Market town; and has a fine Stone-bridge over the *Avon*, consisting of 14 Arches.

## Ancient Places.

*Præsidium*, mention'd by the *Notitia*, is in all probability the Town of *Warwick*; than which no situation can be more proper for a *Garrison*.

*Manducædum* must be sought for upon *Watling-street*, and there we meet with *Manchester*; which as it carries in it some Remains of the old Name, so does it shew its Antiquity by a Fort, which they call *Oldbury*.

## Things Remarkable.

On the side of *Edge-hill*, is the shape of a *Hors* cut in the ground; and the Trenches that form it are kept open by a Freehold in the Neighbourhood, who hold Lands by that Service.

About *Shugbury*, they often meet with the *Astretes*; which being put into Vinegar, keep themselves in motion, as appears by Experiment.

In memory of *Godiva* their great Patroness, the Inhabitants of *Covenry* have a yearly *Cavalcade* or Solemn Procession, with a naked Figure, representing her riding naked on Horse-back through the City. The occasion is this: *Godiva* (as Tradition says) redeem'd the Town from very heavy Taxes, laid upon them by her Husband *Leofrick*; these he would upon no Terms remit, unless she would consent to ride through the Town naked; which she did, and cover'd her Body with her long disshovel'd Hair.

## W O R C E S T E R S H I R E.

THE County of *Worcester* is very happy both in its Air and Soil; and is excellently water'd by the River *Severn*, which runs through the very midit of it. The South part has also the advantage of the *Avon*, running out of *Warwickshire* into the *Severn*.

The more remarkable { *Worcester*,  
Towns, are { *Kidderminster*,  
          { *Evesham*,  
          { *Droitwich*.

*Worcester*, the chief place in this County, seems to

have had its original from the convenience of its situation upon the *Severn*. For that River being the Boundary between the *Britains* and *Saxons*, the frequent Incursions of the former oblig'd the latter to fence and guard it with the utmost diligence. And to go yet higher; it might probably enough be one of those *Garrisons* which the *Romans* built to keep in awe the *Britains* in those parts, and to secure themselves against Plots and Insurrections. In the year 650. it was made an Episcopal See, and the Church was fill'd with marry'd *Presbyters*; till *Dunstan* turn'd them out and plac'd Monks in their room. But those



too were at last ejected by King Henry VIII. who plac'd there a *Dean* and *Prebendaries*. The City it self is large, populous and wealthy, dealing much in the *Cloth-Trade*. 'Tis govern'd by a Mayor and six Aldermen, who are Justices of the Peace and elected out of the 24 Capital Citizens.

*Kidderminster*, at a little distance from the *Severn*, is not remarkable for any Antiquity it can claim; but is however, a handsome Town, adorn'd with a beautiful Church, and has a Market very well frequented.

*Evesham*, upon the River *Aven*, was very famous among our Fore-fathers, upon account of the Monastery built there by *Egwin*, about the year 700. The Town is seated upon a gentle ascent, and is neat enough; receiving not only great Advantages, but the pleasure also of an open, free Prospect, from the spacious and fruitful *Vale of Evesham*, which produces Corn in great abundance.

*Droitwich*, upon the River *Salway*, has got both

its Reputation and Riches, by the *Brine-pits*, and the purest kind of Salt which they make. They had a Charter granted them by King James I. and the Borough is govern'd by two Bailiffs and a certain number of Burgeses.

### Ancient Places.

*Branchinum*, call'd also *Branogenium*, is undoubtedly the City of *Worcester*, call'd by the *Britains* at this day *Caer Urangen*.

### Things Remarkable.

The *Brine-pits* at *Droitwich* afford great quantities of fine white Salt; and would yield much more, but that the Proprietors are careful, for their own Interest, not to over-stock the Markets.

The River *Severn*, about *Holt* and the neighbouring Parts, breeds prodigious numbers of *River-Lampreys*.

*Washbourn* under *Breden-hills*, with some other Villages, are entirely sever'd from the main Body of the County.

## S T A F F O R D S H I R E.

THE County of *Stafford*, as to the Figure, is broad in the middle, but narrow towards each end: As to the Soil, 'tis mountainous, and not very fruitful toward the North; but in the middle and South-parts, is very fertile and pleasant.

The chief Towns } *Stafford*,  
are, } *Litchfield*.

*Stafford*, upon the River *Sow*, requires our mention, more upon account of its giving name to the whole County, than any Beauty, Riches or Populousness of its own. Nor was it very considerable, about the Conquest; For we find by *Domesday*, That the King had in this place only 18 Burgeses. The Barons of *Stafford*, owners of *Stafford-Castle*, were exceeding favourable to it, got it erected into a Borough in the Reign of King *John*, and procur'd for it large Privileges and Liberties.

*Litchfield*, upon the River *Trent*, is a very ancient Town, and seems to have had that name from the dead Bodies of those Christians who are said to have been put to death here, in the time of *Dioclesian*. *Oswy* King of *Northumberland* settl'd a Bishop's See in this place, as early as the year 606, which also afterwards had its Archbishop for some time; but that lasted not long. The situation of it is low; and the City is handsome and pretty large. Its greatest Ornaments, are, the *Cathedral*, the *Bishop's Palace*, and the Houses of the *Prebendaries*; which make a noble Show. 'Tis divided into two parts by a fort

of Lough, which yet have communication by two Causeys. It was first made a Corporation by King *Edward VI.* who granted to it *Bailiffs* and *Burgeses*.

### Ancient Places.

*Eroctum* will best suit with the course and order of the Itinerary, if it be settl'd at *Wall*, about a mile South of *Litchfield*. For the Remains of old *Walls* and Buildings, plainly shew it to be a place of Antiquity; which being gain'd, the agreement of the Distances are a sufficient Argument to prefer this place before any other.

*Pennocrucium* should seem at first sight, to be *Penkridge*, upon the River *Penk*; and the Distances, as well as Sound, would favour such a Conjecture well enough. But there is one Objection against it, That it lies a considerable way from the *Old Road*, and so cannot well be suppos'd to be one of their Stations, which seldom were remov'd from the *Way*. *Stretton*, a little lower, carries Antiquity in its very name (as much as if one should say the *Street-Town*) suits the Distances very well, and has the advantage of lying upon the Road, from which it takes the name.

### Things Remarkable.

Below the Confluence of the River *Tame* and the *Trent*, northward, there is great store of *Alabaster*.

The three Stones, erected Spire-wise in the Church-yard at *Checcley*, with the little Images cut upon two of them, upon what account soever they might be set up, are very remarkable.

## S H R O P S H I R E.

*Shropshire* (as a Frontier-County between the Welch and English) has more Castles built in it, than any other County in *England*. Insomuch that a late Author observes, That it seems to be parted from *Wales* with a continu'd Wall of Castles: And is said by another, That no less than 32 Castles have been built within this Shire, besides the fortify'd Towns. The Soil of it is fruitful, and the Country pleasant.

The chief Towns } *Shrewsbury*,  
are, } *Ludlow*.

*Shrewsbury*, the chief Town of the County, tho' it cannot pretend to *Roman* Antiquity, did yet rise out of the Ruins of an old neighbouring City, *Uridundum*; and was of very good note among the Saxons. So that, about the Conquest, we find 252 Citizens reckon'd



reckon'd in it; and *Roger de Montgomery*, who had it bestow'd upon him by the Conqueror, improv'd it considerably with Building; and fortify'd it with a strong Castle. And indeed the natural situation of the Town is encouragement enough to pitch upon it particularly for a place of Strength and Sanctuary. The *Severn* had in a great measure done the work to their Hands, having almost encompass'd it and made it look like a *Peninsula*. At present, 'tis well-built, well-Inhabited and well-traded. For, standing in the Confines of *England* and *Wales*, it is (as it were) the common Mart of both Nations. Of the publick Buildings, the most noted is the *School*, which is a stately stone Fabrick, erected and endow'd by *Q. Elizabeth*, for one Master and three under-Masters. It has likewise a curious Library, which together with the School and Houses for the School-masters, make it look like a College.

*Ludlow*, at the meeting of the Rivers *Trent* and *Corve*, owes its original to the Castle built in the place by *Roger de Montgomery*; which he enclos'd with a Wall. The Town is beautiful and in a thriving condition, notwithstanding all the Misfortunes it has undergone in the turns of War, by being a Frontier between *England* and *Wales*. For which King *Henry VIII.* made it amends very amply, when he settl'd there the *Council of the Marches*, consisting of a Lord President, so many Counsellors and other Officers; which does not only add to its Reputation, but

also is of considerable consequence to it in point of Interest.

#### Ancient Places.

*Rutunium* discovers it self very distinctly in the present name of *Reuten*, in the West-part of this County, not far from the *Severn*; which Analogy of Names is of so much the more force, because the Distances agree very well on both sides.

*Uricinium* is call'd at this day *Wroxeter* (at some distance from *Shrewsbury*); and the ancient Fortifications and Buildings of the *Romans* (the Remains whereof are visible) are nam'd *The old Works of Wroxeter*.

#### Things Remarkable.

Where the Rivers *Clune* and *Temb* meet, arises the famous *Caer-Caradock*, a large Hill, which was the Scene of that Action between *Ostorius* the Roman and *Caratacus* the *Britain*; whereof *Tacitus* has given us a very distinct Account.

The *Swearing-Sickness* in the year 1551. which over-ran the whole Kingdom, was observ'd to begin in *Shrewsbury*.

'Tis a pretty Device the Fishermen in those parts have invented, viz. a little *Ceracle* (as they call it) of an Oval Form, made of split Sally-twigs, and next the Water cover'd with an Horse's hide. In this one Man sits himself, rows with one hand very swiftly, and with the other can manage his Net, Angle or other Fishing-tackle.

## C H E S H I R E.

THE County of *Chester* is a fruitful Country, and very well water'd. It boasts most of its *Pelarine Jurisdiction*, by virtue whereof its Earl was stild *Comes Palatinus*, and all the Inhabitants held of him as in chief, and were under a Sovereign Allegiance to him, as to the King. He held also his Parliaments, where even the *Barons* were oblig'd to give their Attendance. But when this unlimited Power (which had been granted about the Conquest) came to break in by degrees upon the Regal Authority it self, and was justly suspected by our Kings, *Henry VIII.* restrain'd their Sovereignty, and made them dependent upon the Crown. Notwithstanding which, all Pleas of *Lands* and *Tenements*, &c. ought to be judicially determin'd within this Shire; no Crime but Treason forcing an Inhabitant of this County to a Trial elsewhere.

The more considerable  
Places are, { *Chester*,  
                              { *Nantwich*.

Francis Gas-  
sell, B. P. consec.  
r. 4. 1714.

\* *Chester*, call'd from its western situation *West-Chester*, was (under *Agrippa* Lieutenant of *Britain*) the Seat of the Legion call'd *Vicesima Victrix*, settl'd there to curb the Incursions of the *Ordovices*. And accordingly, the discovery of *Roman* Coins, Inscriptions, &c. are a sufficient mark, not only of its Antiquity, but likewise of the Eminent Character it bore in those times. A little after the Conquest, it was made a Bishop's See, by *Peter*, Bishop of *Lichfield*; but did not enjoy that Dignity long. In all the Disturbances between the *Englifs* and *Welsh*, this City has constantly had its share; being immediately expos'd to their Fury when ever they met with any favourable prospect of an Incursion. Perhaps, it might be in consideration of their good Services, that King

*Henry VII.* was mov'd to incorporate the Town into a distinct County. But his Successor King *Henry VIII.* did it the greatest Honour, when upon the expulsion of the Monks, he erected it into a Bishop's See; a Dignity that it had wanted for many hundred years. The City it self is of a square Form, the Buildings whereof are very neat; and the chief Street is adorn'd with Piazza's on each side. It has eleven Parish Churches. The Sea is not so kind as it has been formerly; having withdrawn it self, and depriv'd the City of the advantage of an Harbour.

*Nantwich*, lying upon the River *Wever*, is a Town very well built, with a handfom Church. It seems to owe its Growth to the *Brine-Pits*, which afford them the whitest Salt, in great abundance. Upon which account, 'tis call'd by the Welch *Hellath-wen*; that is, *White-salt-wich*.

#### Ancient Places.

*Deva*, is on all Hands agreed to be the City of *Chester*.

*Benium* seems to have left something of its name in the ancient *Banchoer*, a Monastery of great eminence among our Fore-fathers, lying upon the River *Dee* and the Distances, with other Circumstances, do moreover assert it to the same place.

*Caege*, a People of the *Britains*, are settl'd in those parts upon the Authority of an old Inscription, dug up near this Castr.

*Cendatum* seems to be *Congleton* in this County, by the sound; but the distances and Course of the Itinerary do not much favour the Conjecture. An old Inscription dug up at *Presbrig* in the Bishoprick of *Durham*, would encline us to carry it thither, by its mention of this ancient place.

Things



## Things Remarkable.

The County is remarkable for making excellent *Cheese*, which it sends thorew the whole Kingdom.

In the Hearths and Bottoms, through which the

*Wever* passes in the South-part of the Shire, they dig up Trees under ground; a thing indeed not peculiar to the County, but remarkable enough.

In this County, they make abundance of Salt.

## HEREFORDSHIRE.

THE County of *Hereford* is water'd by the pleasant Rivers *Wye*, *Lug* and *Munow*, which empty themselves in one Chancel into the *Severn*. Being a sort of Frontier in the Wars between the *English* and *Welsh*, it has had greater numbers of Forts and Castles, than most other Counties. Tho' it abounds with good Corn and Pasture-grounds, yet is it most eminent at this day for its vast quantities of Fruit, of which they make so much *Cyder*, as does not only supply their own Families, but furnish *London* and other parts of *England*. Their *Red-streak* (so call'd from the *Apple*) is highly valu'd in all parts.

### The chief Town

*Hereford*, so call'd as if one should say *The Ford of the Army*, is encompass'd with Rivers on all sides, but to the East. 'Tis Daughter to a place of Antiquity at about three miles distance, call'd by the *Romans* *Ariconium*, at this day *Kenchester*. But our *Hereford* seems not to have risen before the *Saxon* Hierarchy was at its height; nor to owe its Growth to any other cause than the Martyrdom of *Ethelbert* King of the *East-Angles*, villanously murder'd by *Quindreda* Wife to King *Offa*, while he courted her own Daughter. Whereupon, he was taken into the Catalogue of Martyrs, and had a Church built to his memory in this place; which was not only soon

after erected into a Bishop's See, but had signal Respects shew'd it by the *West-Saxon* and *Mercian* Kings. The City is pretty large: Before the Civil Wars, it had six Churches; but now it has only four.

### Ancient Places.

*Blestium*, by the Distances, can be no other than *Old Foari* (upon the *Munow*) call'd by the Britains *Castle-bean*, a name implying *Strength* and *Antiquity*.

*Ariconium* must be *Kenchester*, near *Hereford*; which asserts its claim to Antiquity by the old *Walls*, *Chequer-works*, *Bricks*, *Coins*, &c. observ'd and discover'd about it.

### Things Remarkable.

A *Well*, below *Richard's Castle*, is full of small Fish-bones or Frog-bones; and notwithstanding it be sometimes empty'd, a fresh Supply always succeeds: Whereupon, 'tis call'd *Bone-Well*.

*Mareley-hill*, near the Confluence of *Lug* and *Wye*, was in the year 1575. remov'd by an Earthquake to a higher place.

In a common Meadow call'd the *VVergins*, between *Sutton* and *Hereford*, two large Stones set on end were remov'd to about twelvescore spaces distance, no Body knew how: This hapn'd about the year, 1652.

## YORKSHIRE.

THE County of *York* is, by much, the largest in all *England*, being divided into three Branches; each of which is as large, or indeed larger than any ordinary County. The Divisions are term'd *Ridings*; a name corrupted from the old *Saxon* *Thrihing*, which consisted of several *Hundreds* or *Wapentakes*. They are, according to the several Quarters, call'd *West-Riding*, *East-Riding* and *North-Riding*, to which we may add *Richmondshire*. We will consider each of these under their several Heads; but the *West-Riding* being the most flourishing part, and abounding most with beautiful Towns, requires the first place.

### WEST-RIDING.

*West-Riding* is for some time bounded by the River *Ouse*, by *Lancashire*, and the Southern-limits of the County in general.

The more considerable Towns are

*Tork*, *Leeds*, *Ripon*, *Halifax*, *Wakefield*, *Pontefract*.

\* *YORK*, the Metropolis of this County, and an Archiepiscopal See, stands upon the River *Ore* or *Ouse*, which runs quite through it from North to South. At

- John Sharp A.B. consecrat.

Julij 5. 1591.

what time precisely it was built, we have no evidence. Thus much is certain, That it was the Residence of the *Sixth Legion* call'd *Vitrix*, that *Severus* had his Court here, that *Constantius* the Emperor dy'd in this place, and was immediately succeeded by his Son *Constantine* the Great, who receiv'd the last Breath of his dying Father. We need no further evidence of its Glory under the *Romans*. Upon the settlement of the *Saxons*, it was erected into a Metropolitan See by Pope *Honorius*; and has continued so ever since. It suffer'd very much in the Danish Ravages; but it recover'd it self, when the *Norman* Government was establish'd, and the Disturbances of that Revolution were blown over. The City is large, pleasant and adorn'd with beautiful Buildings both publick and private. The Bridge over the *Foss* or *Ditch* is so throng'd with Buildings, that you would take it for one continu'd Street. The publick Structures of greatest note, are. 1. The *Minster*, or Cathedral Church, built in the Reign of *Edward I.* 'Tis a most stately Pile, and particularly remarkable for the fine Carvings in the Quire, 2. The *Chapter-house*, for its small Pillars and the contrivance of the whole Fabric, is one of the neatest Buildings in *England*.

*Leeds*, upon the River *Aire*, is of good Antiquity; and the very name implies that it has been all along a populous thriving Town; for 'tis deriv'd from the *Saxon* *Leod*, gens, *populus*. It has grown strangely

F

b)



by the advantage of the *Cloth Trade* especially; and was by King *Charles II.* honour'd with a Mayor, 12 Aldermen and 24 Assistants.

*Rippon*, situated between the *Ure* and the *Skell*, was of good note even in the Infancy of the English Church, upon account of the Monastery built there by *Wilfrid* Archbishop of *York*. The Town has grown mightily by the Woollen Manufacture, which they have now pretty much laid aside. The Church is a neat and stately Fabrick, with three Spire-steeples; and was built by Contributions.

*Halifax*, upon the River *Calder*, is suppos'd to be nam'd from a certain holy Virgin, who had her Head cut off by a lustful Villain, with whose impure Desires she would not, by any means, comply. Her Head was hung up on a Tree; and was reputed so sacred, as to be frequently visited in Pilgrimage. Whereupon, the little Village of *Horton* came by degrees to be a large and noted Town, and took its name from that which had rais'd its Reputation, viz, the sacred Hair of the Virgin's Head: For so much *Halifax* implies. Notwithstanding the Soil hereabouts is very barren, the Inhabitants by their Industry in the Cloth Trade are grown exceeding rich. The Parish is vastly large, having in it twelve Chapels under the Mother-Church of *Halifax*, two whereof are Parochial.

*Wakefield*, upon the River *Calder*, is a large Town; nearly built, has a well-frequented Market, and has grown mainly by the Clothing-Trade.

*Pontefract*, so call'd from a broken Bridge, is a Town well-built and admirably situated. It had a most noble large Castle, seated upon a high Hill, which is now demolish'd.

#### Ancient Places.

*Danum* mention'd by *Antoninus* and the *Notitia*, is undoubtedly *Doncaster*, call'd by *Ninius* *Caer-Dan*.

*Camlodunum* belongs to the little Village *Almondbury*, six miles from *Halifax*; as appears both by the Distances on each hand, and the Ruins of an old Roman Work, with a triple Fortification, still plainly visible.

*Legecolium* cannot be more conveniently seated than at *Cestreford*, near the Confluence of *Calder* and *Aire*; where they meet with great numbers of Coins, which they call *Saracins Heads*.

*Olicena* appears to be *Ilkeley*, from the affinity of the two names, the remains of Antiquity found about it, and its situation in respect of *York*.

*Calcaria*, tho' commonly seated at *Tadcaster*, and that upon very plausible Reasons, ought nevertheless to be remov'd to its Neighbour *New-ton-kime*, where the ancient High-road runs along, crossing the River at *S. Helensford*, and where they meet with great store of Roman Coins, and other marks of Antiquity.

*Isurium* is sufficiently asserted to *Aldburrow* near *Burrow-bridge*, both by its nearness to the River *Ure*, the great number of Coins they dig up, and its due distance from the City of *York*, answering the computation of *Antoninus*.

*Eboracum* is by all agreed to be the City of *York*, the eminence whereof in the time of the Romans, we have already taken notice of.

#### Things Remarkable.

*Helifax-law* is eminent: By it, they behead any one that's found stealing within such a Liberty, without staying for a legal and ordinary Process.

*S. Wilfrid's Needle* at *Rippon* was mighty famous. In the Church, they had a little close passage into a

Vault, whereby they pretended to try the Chastity of Women: If they were Chaste, they pass'd with ease; if not, they were stop'd and holden, without any visible Impediment.

The *Devil's Rols*, near *Burrow-bridge*, are three huge Stones, set on end in the form of Pyramids: which have their name from a foolish fancy of the Vulgar, that they were pitch'd there by the *Devil*; but are by the Learned (according to different Conjectures) look'd upon to be either Monuments of some Victory, or British Deities.

In the *Levels* or *Marches*, they dig up great quantities of *Fir*, and some *Oak*.

## EAST-RIDING.

The Bounds of the *East-Riding* are thus: The North and West-sides are limited by the River *Derwent*; the South, by the mouth of *Humber*; and the North, by the *German Ocean*. In some parts 'tis pretty fruitful, tho' in every respect it falls much short of the *West-Riding*; the middle of it being nothing but Mountains, which they call *York-moors*.

The chief Towns } *Beverley*,  
are, } *Hull*.

*Beverley* began to be a Town of note, after *John de Beverley* Archbishop of *York*, a Person of great Piety, retir'd hither, and ended his days in it. For King *Athelstan* having a singular Veneration for him, for his sake endow'd the Town with several Immunities; and others of our Kings have been exceeding kind to it upon the same account. So that now (notwithstanding its nearness to *Hull*, which one would think should very much prejudice it) it is above a mile in length; and is adorn'd with two beautiful Churches. The *Miuster* is a very fair Structure. The chief Trade of the place is *Malt*, *Oatmeal*, and *Tann'd Leather*.

*Hull*, or *Kingston upon Hull*, is so call'd from the River upon which it stands, and King *Edward I.* its Founder. By the convenience of their Harbour, the advantage of their *Island Fish-Trade*, and the particular Favours of their great Patron *Michael de la Pele*, the Town is so grown both in Wealth, Buildings, Populoufness and Commerce, that it infinitely exceeds all its Neighbours. They have two Churches, an *Exchange* for Merchants, and a *Trinity-house* for the Relief of Seamen and their Wives; besides other Buildings, which are very ornamental and of great use in the management of their Trade, and the administration of their Government. As to the Strength of the place, they have a strong *Cittadel* begun in the year 1681. But their situation is the best Bulwark against the Enemy: For by advantage of the Level all about, they can let in the Flood, and lay all under-water for five miles round.

#### Ancient Places.

*Derwentio* must be seated somewhere upon the River *Derwent*: *Auldby* is the likeliest place, both upon account of its name, which implies an old Dwelling; and also by reason of the Remains of Antiquity still visible about it.

*Abus* can be no other *Æstuary* than the *Humber*, which is a very spacious one, and receives a great many considerable Rivers.

*Delgovitia* is probably *Wigton*, upon the little River *Foulness*; *Degwe* in British signifying a Statue or Image of a Heathen God, and it appearing that not far from hence there stood an Idol Temple.



*Ocellum Promontorium*, is *Spurnhead*; where *Kelln-*  
*ey* seems to be a Remain of the old *Ocellum*.

*Præterium* discovers it self by the present name *Pa-*  
*trington*, and by its distance from *Delgovitia*.

*Sinks Sanctaris* is that Bay near *Bridlington*; in the  
the turn whereof is *Sureby*, which exactly answers the  
name, as 'tis translated into Latin, from the Greek  
'Εσθuary.

*Things Remarkable.*

The *Gipsys* or *Gipseys* (for so they are call'd at present) about *Flamborough*, are a sort of little Springs which jet out of the Ground, and spout up Water to a great height. They never come, but after great Rains, and lasting wet Weather. See *Camden's Britannia*, English, pag. 748.

## NORTH-RIDING.

The *North-Riding* is (as it were) the Frontier of the other two; extending in a narrow Tract from East to West, for sixty miles together, and bounded on one side with the River *Derwent* and the *Ouse*, on the other by the *Tees*.

The chief Town is,

Gisburgh, four Miles from the mouth of the Tees, formerly famous for the Abbey there; which, by the Ruins, seems to have been equal to some of the best Cathedrals in England. Its Eminence appears, in that it was the common Burial-place for the Nobility in these parts. The pleasant Situation, the goodness of the Air, the neatness of the Inhabitants, and other Advantages, make the place very agreeable and delightful.

### Ancient Places.

*Dunus Sinus* discovers it self by a little Village  
seated upon it and call'd *Dunescy*, hard by *Whitby*.

*Things Remarkable.*

About *Whirby*, they find the *Serpent-Stones*; which the credulous, common People imagine to be *Serpents* turn'd into *Stones* by the Prayers of *S. Hilda*.

Upon the same Shore, they find the *Black-Amber* or *Geate*, which grows within the chink or cliff of a Rock.

The *Seales* (or *Sea-veales*, call'd also *Sea-calves*)  
sleep upon the Rocks near *Huntcliff* in great Drove  
and there Sun themselves.

## RICHMONDSHIRE.

This part of the County lying to the North-west; is almost all Rocks and Mountains, which yet in some places afford good pasture; and under-ground, great store of *Lead, Coal, &c.*

The chief Town is

Richmond, upon the River Swale, so call'd as if one should say a *rich Mount* ; which name it had given it by *Alan* the first Earl, immediately after the Conquest ; who fortify'd it with Walls and a very strong Castle. It has three Gates ; and taking in the Suburbs is pretty large and populous ; but within the Walls it is but narrow.

### Ancient Places.

*Bracchium* is to be sought for at the confluence of *Baine* and *Tre*; where, at a place call'd *Burgh*, are the Remains of an old Fortification, and where an Inscription was discover'd making exprefs mention of this name.

*Catacractonium* (so call'd from a *Cataract* in the River *Swale*) does plainly discover it self in our present *Catcrack*.

*Larabæ*, by the course of the ancient High-way and the Distances in *Antoninus*, must be about *Bowes*, on the edge of *Stranmore*; which has had its Antiquity attested by ancient Inscriptions.

### Things Remarkable.

Upon the Confines of *Lancashire*, where the Mountains are rough, wild and steep, there are little Rivulets hurry along so deep in the Ground, that it creates an Horror in one, to look down to them: Those they call *Hell-becks*, upon account of their gaftliness and depth.

Sir Christopher Medcalf, a Gentleman of these parts when Sheriff of the County, is said to have been attended with 300 Horse, all of his own Family and Name, and all in the same Habit, when he receiv'd the Judges, and conducted them to York.

D U R H A M.

**D***urham* (commonly call'd the *Bishoprick of Durham* from the absolute Power which the Bishops hereof us'd to exercise in this County) is nam'd by our ancient Writers, the *Patrimony of S. Cuthbert*. This Saint, who liv'd here in the Infancy of the *Saxon-Church*, was so much respected by our Kings and Nobility for his exemplary Vertue and Piety, that they thought they could never sufficiently express their respect to his Memory, nor heap *Lands, Privileges* and *Immunities* enough upon his darling Church. Inso-much, that at length, it was made a *County-Palatine*; and accordingly the Bishops have their Royalties, and are both *Spiritual* and *Tempora!* Lords.

The more considerable Towns,  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Durham,} \\ \text{Bernard-castle,} \\ \text{Stockton.} \end{array} \right.$

Durham, in Saxon *Dun-holm*, from its high situation, owes its origin to the miseries and misfortunes of the Monks of *Lindisfarne*, in the time of the

*Danes.* For being by that barbarous People disturb'd in their own Seats, they were forced to seek Protection for themselves, and a shelter for the Relicks of Saint *Cuthbert*, in the most convenient place they should meet with. Here they fix'd ; and when that dreadful Storm was blown over, and Religion reviv'd, they flourish'd in great Pomp and Reputation. In *William* the Conqueror's time the place was made a Seat of War, by those who could not bear the violation of their ancient Rights and Liberties. The Town is defended by the River, on all sides but the North ; and is wall'd round. The Cathedral is a noble Pile of Building, and the Church exceeding rich.

*Bernard-castle*, upon the River *Tees*, was so call'd from *Bernard Baliol* (Grandfather to *John Baliol* King of *Scots*,) its Founder. 'Tis a good Town; and is eminent in those Northern parts for the best *White-bread*.

*Stockton*, about three miles below *Yarum* (a considerable Market-Town) about thirty years ago, had no



Houses but of Clay, and tharch'd. Now, 'tis well built, is a Corporation, and drives a great Trade in *Lade* and *Butter*.

*Ancient Places.*

*Tuesis* or *Tēas* in *Ptolemy*, is plainly the River *Tees*.

*Vedra*, mention'd by *Ptolemy*, does likewise belong to this County, and is undoubtedly the River *Wēre* call'd by *Bede*, *Wirus*.

*Vincium* in *Antoninus*, in *Ptolemy* *Bincium*, seems by the very Name to settle it self at *Binchester*, near the River *Wēre*; where appear large Ruins of Walls: and Coins, with other marks of Antiquity, are dug up.

*Condercum* seems to be *Chester on the Street*, near the River *Wēre*; especially, if the *Saxon* name of the

place be *Corcester*: All the Objection is, That the *Noritia* settles this Station at *Lincoln Valli*, so that *Chester on the Street* is perhaps too far remov'd from the Wall to lay claim to this piece of Antiquity. An Altar found at *Benwell* in *Northumberland* seems to give it to that place, against which there is not the same Objection.

*Things Remarkable.*

The Pits call'd *Hell-kettles* near *Darlington*, are much admir'd both by Travellers and the Inhabitants. There are three of them, full of Water to the brim possibly by a Communication with the *Tees* only: the Water in them is said to be of a different kind from that in the River. They look much like old-wrought Coal-pits that are drown'd.

## L A N C A S H I R E.

THE County of *Lancaster*, call'd by the northern People *Lancaster*, where it is level yields good store of *Barley* and *Wheat*; and in the Valleys, *Oats*. The *Mosses*, tho' as to their produce they are of no real value, are yet of considerable advantage both by the Fuel above ground, and the old Trees underground. Its greatest Glory is, that 'tis a County-Palatine, as well as its neighbour *Cheshire*.

The more considerable  
Towns are, { *Lancaster,*  
                  *Manchester,*  
                  *Wiggin,*  
                  *Liverpool.*

*Lancaster*, (so call'd from the River *Lone* upon which it stands) gives name to the whole County, and was, accordingly, the most flourishing Town in it. But now 'tis much out-grown by *Manchester*, having no advantage of Trade, or any other Employment besides that of Agriculture; to which indeed the nature and situation of the place may seem in some measure to have determin'd the Inhabitants. For the Grounds about it are very fit for Cultivation, and 'tis seated in an open free Tract.

*Manchester*, at the Confluence of the *Irk* and *Irwell*, is the most populous and thriving Town in this County. The Inhabitants may be estimated from the number of Communicants; who in the Town and Parish round it made no less than 20000, sixty years ago; since which time the Inhabitants have increas'd proportionably to their incredible growth in Trade. They are most famous for the *Fustian-Manufacture*, commonly known by the name of *Manchester-Cottons*; tho' they deal also in many other Manufactures, all which are call'd by one general name, *Manchester-Wares*. They have more publick Buildings than are commonly to be met with in our County-towns.

1. The Collegiate Church is a very stately Edifice, the Quire whereof is particularly remarkable for its curious carv'd Work. 2. The College (consisting of a *Warden*, four *Fellows*, two *Chaplains*, four *Singing-men*, and four *Choristers*) is a noble Foundation. 3. The Hospital for the maintenance of sixty poor Boys, is much of the same Government and Constitution with that of *Christ-Church* in *London*. 4. The Library is furnish'd already with Books, to almost the number of 4000, and will daily increase by an annual Salary of 116*l.* per *Ann.* sett'd upon it for that purpose, and for the maintenance of a Librarian. 5. The School

has three Masters, who have plentiful Salaries.

*Wiggin*, near the rise of the River *Dugles*, is handsom, plentiful Town having the honour of Mayor and Burgesses.

*Liverpool* (near the entrance of the River *Mersey* into the Sea) tho' it can boast of no great Antiquity is yet a place both of Name and Wealth. The first it derives from the convenience of a passage from hence over into *Ireland*, which of late years has been much us'd by reason of the Commotions in that Kingdom. The second is owing to its Trade with the *West-Indies*, and the Manufacture round it: But the advantage whereof the Buildings and Inhabitants are more than doubly increas'd, and the Customs augmented eight or ten-fold, within these 28 years last past. Of late, they have built a Town-house, plac'd upon Pillars; and under it, the *Exchange*.

*Ancient Places.*

*Mancunium*, is *Manchester*, which may seem to have taken part of its name from the *Roman* one.

*Bellisama* must be an *Æstuary* hereabouts: The latter Syllable of the name of *Ribell* would induce us to pitch upon the mouth of that River before any other.

*Ribodunum* (if we may change *Ptolemy's* *Rigodunum* into that) need not be sought in any other place but *Rible-chester*, which produces a variety of *Roman* Remains; and however inconsiderable at present gave rise to *Preston*, a handsom, large and populous Town.

*Bremetonacum* cannot probably be more conveniently seated than at *Oveburrew* (at the confluence of the *Irwell* and *Lone*) which, tho' it has no remains of the old name, does yet carry Antiquity in the latter part of its present one, and has the Tradition of the Inhabitants on its side (who tell you of a spacious City that was formerly there) and the Evidence of *Roman* Coins Inscriptions, &c.

*Longovicum* is plainly *Lancaster*, call'd by the Inhabitants and the northern part, *Lancaster*; besides which Analogy of Names, they meet now and then with Coins of the *Roman* Emperors.

*Things Remarkable.*

*Lancashire-Oxen* are famous throughout *England* for huge, bulky Bodies and large Horns.

*Widwick*, near the River *Mersey*, is reckon'd one of the best Parsonages in the Kingdom.



At *Hey* in this County, we see such a Plantation of *Fir-trees* (by the Industry and contrivance of its present Owner *Thomas Brotherton, Esq;*) as perhaps can hardly be met with elsewhere.

*Lathom-spaw* in this County, tho' not much frequented (by reason of the want of suitable Accommodation) has done considerable Cures.

*Burning-well*, near *Wiggin*, if a Candle be put to it, will presently take Fire and burn like Brandy; and in a calm quiet Season will continue for a whole day together, even to that degree, that by the heat of it they boil Eggs, Meat, &c.

## W E S T M O R L A N D.

THE County of *Westmorland* is so call'd from its westerly situation; lying *West* of that great ridge of Mountains which divideth these Northern Counties. The out skirts of it on most sides are hilly and mountainous, which feed great Flocks of Sheep, and have a mixture of fruitful *Vales*; but the heart of it is an open, champain Country, which affords good store of Corn and Wood.

The more considerable { *Apelby*,  
Towns, are { *Kendal*.

*Apelby* claims the first place, both upon account of its Antiquity; and also because 'tis the County-town, where the yearly Assizes are held. Otherwise, 'tis neither rich nor beautiful; only the situation indeed makes it very agreeable, having the advantage of pleasant Fields round it, and being wash'd by the River *Eden*.

*Kendal*, call'd also *Kirby Kendal*, has its name from the River *Can*, and implies as much as a *Dale* or *Vally* upon that River. This is much beyond *Apelby*, whether we respect the Trade, Buildings, Number or Wealth of the Inhabitants. It has two good Streets, which cross each other, and is enrich'd by the Industry of the Towns-men and the Woollen Manufacture, for which they are very eminent, and drive a Trade with it throughout England.

Ancient places.

*Amboylana*, if we follow the Analogy of Names, cannot be plac'd more conveniently than at *Ambleside*, upon *Windermere-water*; which may be done with so much the less scruple, because it shews the Ruins of an old City, and other marks of Antiquity.

*Ituna* is undoubtedly the noble River of *Eden*, which marches through this County, towards the Sea.

*Verteræ* must be Brough under *Stanemore*, for several Reasons: The Name imports Antiquity; then it stands upon a Roman High-way; and lastly, the Distances from *Levatæ* and *Brouonacum* agree very exactly.

*Aballaba* is so visible in our present *Apelby*, and so well answers that situation, that there is no room for dispute.

*Gallatum* is probably *Whelp-castle*, near *Kirby-Thore* where are the Ruins of an old Town, and very considerable Remains of Antiquity.

*Setantiorum Lacus* may well enough be *Windermere* upon the edge of *Lancashire*; one of the largest Lakes in the Kingdom.

Things Remarkable.

*King Arthur's round Table*, in the North of this County, is much talk'd of by the Inhabitants and others: But we need go no farther for its original than the Ages wherein *Tilting* was in vogue; this being a round Entrenchment with a plain piece of Ground in the middle, and very convenient for that purpose.

*Gold-sike*, in the Parish of *Orton*, is a little Spring which continually casts up small thin pieces, of a substance shining and resembling Gold.

In *Windermere-water* there is a great store of the Fish call'd *Charre*, which is not to be met withal in the South, and only in very few places of the North. They are bak'd in Pots, and so sent up to London, and other parts, where they are an acceptable Present.

## C U M B E R L A N D.

THE County of *Cumberland* is the fairest of our English Counties to the North-west, and borders upon *Scotland*. Whether it fetch the name from the old *Britains*, call'd *Cambri* and *Cumbri*; or, (as a modern Author imagins) from our *Cumber*, the Shire being encumber'd with Lakes and Mountains, and made very difficult to Travellers, I shall not determine. The former Conjecture has this advantage, that some of the *Britains* posted themselves for a long time in these parts, when the Saxon Conqueror drove them to the out-skirts of the Island, and made them seek for shelter among Hills and Mountains. The remains of British Names hereabouts concur to the establishment of the same Opinion.

More considerable { *Carlisle*,  
Towns, are { *Penrith*.

*Carlisle* is happy in its situation, standing between the Rivers of *Eden*, *Peteril* and the *Caude*; which, as they make it very agreeable, and furnish it with great plenty of Fish, so do they add considerably to its Strength; a circumstance that in these bordering Counties was very valuable. For before the union of the two Crowns, the Scots were continually making Incursions upon the Frontiers; which put the Government under the Necessity of building Castles, Towers and fortify'd Places, for the defence of it self and of the Subject. The City is wall'd round, has a Castle, with a Citadel built by King *Henry VIII*. Its situation upon the Wall, with the marks of Antiquity dug up about it, put it beyond dispute, that it was a place of some note among the Romans. The Danes utterly destroy'd it, and it lay in desolation for about two hundred years; till *William Rufus* took it into his protection, built here a Castle, and planted it

*Bishop's Dr.*  
*Bradford, co*  
*June 1, 1718.*







Affaults, upon the breaking out of War between the two Nations. By which means it was a sort of continual Garrison, one while in the Hands of the *English*, and then again in the possession of the *Scots*; till it was reduc'd to the obedience of *Edward IV.* and partly by the Union, partly by its great Strength, has ever since continu'd in subjection to our Kings. About a hundred years ago, it was reputed the strongest place in the whole Kingdom; but as the apprehensions of Danger from that Quarter have for many years ceas'd, and so put a stop to the Improvements which would otherwise have been made upon it; so Enemies from other Parts have oblig'd us to spend more Pains and Industry upon *Hull*, *Portsmouth*, *Plymouth*, &c. which at present much out-do it in Strength and Fortifications.

*Hexam* was a place of mighty note among the *Saxons*; and is much talk'd of in our Histories. For here, *Egfrid* settl'd a Bishop's See; which might have continu'd longer (to the honour and interest of the place) if the *Danes* had not given them such violent Disturbances, as put the Monks under a necessity of removing and seeking out for new Quarters. The Church which stands still entire (except the West-end) is a stately Fabrick.

*Ancient Places.*

*Magna*, mention'd by the *Notitia*, is probably *Chester in the Wall*; not only because it stands upon the *Piſs-wall* and takes its name from thence, but also because it has shewn us some Altars and Inscriptions, as Evidences of its Antiquity.

*Hunnum*, tho' it has left no Remains of its name, in any place in these parts, yet the Wing which resided at it, call'd by the *Notitia*, *Sabiniana*, may seem to have given some ground to the present *Sevenshale*, upon the Wall.

*Gallana* discovers it self in the present *Walwick*, which probably had this denomination from the old name.

*Habitancum* should seem to be *Risingham* upon the River *Rhead*, where are many Remains of Antiquity, and an Inscription was dug up which made express mention of the old name.

*Cilurnum* may very conveniently be plac'd at *Cilcester* near the Wall; which may seem to owe the first Syllable of its name to it.

*Axelodunum* is so manifest in our present *Hexam*, that the latter seems only to be a contraction of the former; especially, if we consider the various meltings and mouldings of this name under the *Saxons*. Add to this, that the termination *Dunum* does very well suit with the high situation of this place.

*Protolitia* seems to be our *Prudhow-castle*, upon the River *Tine*.

*Pons Ælii* can be no other, than that which at this day we call *Pont-Eland*, upon the River *Pont*.

*Borcovicus* does still preserve the Remains of its name in *Berwick*, which seems to be a Compound of a *Roman* Initial and a *Saxon* Termination.

*Vindolana*, where the fourth Cohort of the *Galli* kept Garrison, may very well be settl'd at *Old-Winchester*.

*Gabrosentum* is *Gateshead*, a sort of Suburbs to *Newcastle*, where the Wall pass'd.

*Vindobala*, as the *Notitia*; or, as *Antoninus* terms it, *Vindomora*, seems to imply as much as the *Wall's end*; and then we need not be at a loss for its situation, since we meet with a Village in these parts of the very same name.

*Glanoventa* (signifying as much as the bank of the River *Went*) must be plac'd somewhere upon the River call'd at this day *Wentsbeck*; tho' the Distances seem to hit well enough with *Caer-vorran*, near which there is a place still call'd *Glen-welt*.

*Alaunus*, mention'd by *Ptolemy*, discovers it self plainly in the present name *Alne*.

*Tunnocellum* is plainly *Tinnmouth*; call'd formerly *Tunnacester*, from the old *Roman* name.

*Segedunum* needs no clearer Guide to its situation, than the affinity it has with our present *Seghill*, upon the Sea-coast near *Tinnmouth*.

*Alone* may fairly enough be settl'd at *Old-Town*; not only because that place carries Antiquity in the name, but also from its situation upon the River *Alon*, and the proper Distances from the Stations on each Hand.

*Corstopitum*, is evidently *Corbridge*; and probably the same with *Ptolemy's* *Curia Octadinorum*.

*Things Remarkable.*

At *Chillingham-Castle*, 'tis said a live Toad was found in the middle of a Stone at the sawing of it: One part of the Stone is now a Chimney-piece in the Castle, with a hallow in the middle; and the other also has the like mark, and is put to the same use at *Horton-Castle*.

The Improvement in Tillage at *Rock* by *John Salkeld*, Esq; and in Gardening and Fruiterie at *Fal-ladon*, by *Samuel Salkeld*, Gentleman; are Fineries hardly to be met with in these Parts; the latter is the more remarkable, because of an Opinion which has prevail'd in the World, That the coldness of the Climate in these Northern parts, will not allow Fruit to come to its proper perfection and ripeness.

Not far from *Newcastle*, there are some Coal-pits on fire, which have burnt several years: The Flames are visible enough by Night, and the burning may be trac'd on the day time by *Brimstone*, which lies on the Surface of the Ground.



# W A L E S.

**T**HAT the Inhabitants of *W A L E S* are the Off-spring of the ancient *Britains*, who were possess'd of the greatest part of this Island before the coming over of the *Saxons*, we have shewn in the general *Account* of the several Inhabitants. The *Severn* was their Boundary on this side, for a long time; till the prevailing power of the *Saxons*, and of the Kings of *England* after the Conquest, oblig'd them to retire further Westward, and to seek shelter among the Mountains. Notwithstanding which, they still enjoy'd their own Laws, liv'd under their own Princes, and maintain'd their own Liberties against all the Designs and Attempts of the English. Till at last, in the Year 1282, *Llewellyn ap Gryffith*, Prince of *Wales*, lost both his Life and Principality to King *Edward I.* who yet did not think himself safe, notwithstanding his Victory seem'd entire and absolute. For he observ'd the Humour of the *Welch* to be bitterly set against any Foreign Prince or Governor, and was very hard put to it to settle himself in the secure possession of his new Conquests, till he enter'd upon this

lucky Expedient. His Queen was then big with Child; so he sent for her immediately to come to *Carnarvon*, and when she was deliver'd of a Son, he summon'd a Meeting of the *Welch* Lords, and proffer'd them the young Child (a Native of their own) for their *Lord* and *Governour*. To him they readily swore Obedience; and since that time, the eldest Sons of the King of *England* have commonly been created *Princes of Wales*.

As to the present condition of this Principality; it is divided into *South-Wales* and *North-Wales*; from the situation of the several Branches. The Counties of *Hereford* and *Monmouth* (which formerly belong'd to it) are now lopp'd off, and reckon'd among those of *England*. The former of these we have already survey'd: The latter (as being disjointed in a manner by the *Estuary of Severn*) we shall reserve to its proper place, in the Survey of these parts. Passing therefore by *Herefordshire*, the next County to the North-west, is

## R A D N O R S H I R E.

**T**HE County of *Radnor*, on the East and South-parts, is well cultivated and fruitful enough: The rest of it, tho' well water'd, is so very rugged and uneven, that the Plow can have no Employment there

The chief Town is

*Radnor*, from whence the whole County takes its name. *Old Radnor* (call'd from its high situation *Pencreig*) was laid in Ashes by *Rhys ap Gruffydh* in the Reign of King *John*. The new Town is well built, for those parts; and was formerly defended with Walls and a Castle. It might have been much more considerable, had it escap'd the Fury of the Rebellious *Owen Glyndwr*, who burnt it down. But a more immediate cause of its decay, seems to be the Encouragement that was afforded to its Neighbour *Prestean* (about three Miles off) by *Martin* Lord Bishop of *S. Davids*; by whose favour it grew up to a considerable Market, and must by consequence draw off the Trade and resort from *Radnor*.

The ancient Place in this County is.

*Magi*, mention'd by *Antoninus*; which possibly we may soon find about the place we have been just now describing. I mean *Old Radnor*, call'd by the *Britains* *Maesfyed ben*; for the middle-Age Writers call the Inhabitants of those parts *Magesetie*, as much as if one should say the *Seat of the Magi*; and the Distances on both sides will hit well enough.

The Thing most remarkable, is

*Offa's-dike*, a mighty Work of it self, and much talk'd of by our Historians. The name it has from the Contriver of it, King *Offa*, who had it cast up as a Boundary between the *English* and *Welch*, and a Protection from the former against the Invasions of the latter. It runs through *Herefordshire*, so over a part of *Shropshire* into *Montgomeryshire*; then again into *Shropshire*, and so through *Denbighshire* into *Flintshire*; and ends a little below *Holywell*, where that Water empties it self into the *Dee*.

## B R E C K N O C K S H I R E.

**T**HE County of *Brecknock*, on the South of *Radnorshire*, is of great extent, but very mountainous; tho' the pleasant and fruitful Vales (whereof they have a good number) make amends for this unfightly appearance.

The chief Town is

*Brecknock*, upon the River *Usk*; which as it gives name to the whole County, so is it situated almost in the middle of it. The *Roman* Coins, which they discover hereabouts, are a Testimony, that it has been of some note among that People. I know not whe-

ther the Town began to flourish when *Bernard Newmarch* (who conquer'd this Country) built a stately Castle at it; which was afterwards repair'd by the *Breuses* and *Bobuns*. 'Tis certain, King *Henry VIII.* added much both to the honour and advantage of the place, when he constituted here a Collegiate Church of fourteen *Prebendaries*.

There are no *Ancient Places* that can probably be fix'd in this County; nor any *Remarkables* which properly fall under our Design.

M O N.



## MONMOUTHSHIRE.

THE County of *Monmouth*, among other Advantages is abundantly supply'd with Water; being bounded (as it were) on all sides with Rivers, and parted in the middle by the noble River of *Usk*. The East part abounds with Pastures and Woods; the Western parts are a little Mountainous, but yet fruitful enough.

The chief Towns } *Monmouth*,  
are, } *Chepstow*.

*Monmouth* (situated between the Rivers *Mynwy* and *Wye*) is the chief Town of this County, and has been a place of note ever since the Conquest. For the Castle flourish'd in the Time of the Conqueror, and seems to have been of great account in the Civil Wars, which hapn'd afterwards in this Kingdom. Inasmuch, that the Town may seem in some measure to owe its growth to it; King *Henry III.* granting it large Privileges, after he had depriv'd *John*, Baron of *Monmouth* of his Inheritance, either for espousing himself the Interest of the Barons, or because his Heirs had closed with the Earl of *Bretagne*. It glories in the Birth of two Persons, very much talk'd of in our Histories; one for his martial Achievements, the other for his Learning and Knowledge in Antiquities. For here King *Henry V.* the Glory of *England* and Terror of *France*, had his first Breath; and here also was born the noted *Jeffery* (call'd from hence *de Monmouth*) Author of the famous British History. The latter I am the rather inclin'd to reckon an Ornament to the place of his Nativity, because the *Britains* seem to value themselves and their Nation upon the Original he has given them, and are inclin'd to give more Credit to his Relations, than their Neighbours are willing to allow them.

*Chepstow*, near the mouth of the River *Wye*, is of a pure *Saxon* original; which also intimates that it

was a place of Trade and Commerce when that name was given it. The old *Venta Silurum* is about four miles from it; and some affirm, That it arose out of the Ruins of that ancient City: How truly, I know not. 'Tis at present, a Town of good note, secur'd by Walls of a considerable compass.

## Ancient Places.

*Venta-Silurum*, was the chief City of this People, and a large one it was for those Times, the Ruins shewing about a mile in compass. As the Remains of Antiquity point out the place, so is the memory of it preserv'd in the present name of *Kaer-went*, not far from *Chepstow*.

*Gobannium* is seated at the Confluence of the River *Wysk* and *Gavenni*; from which Confluence 'tis at this Day call'd *Aber-Gavenni*.

*Isca* is plainly the River *Usk*; and the Station call'd by *Antoninus* *Isca* and *Legio secunda* is undoubtedly *Kaer Lheion*, call'd also by the *Britains*, *Kaer Lheon ar wysk*, intimating as much as, *The City of the Legion upon the River Usk*; from the *Legio secunda Augusta* which quarter'd there.

*Burrium* is plac'd by *Antoninus* 12 miles from *Gobannium*: 'Tis call'd at this day *Brynbiga* for *Buren-begi* (where the River *Brydwin* falls into the *Usk*) which name seems to retain something of the more ancient Denomination.

The Things most Remarkable in this County, are

The Chequer'd Pavements, which were discover'd about the ancient *Venta Silurum* or *Kaer-went* in the year 1689. Upon taking them up, the Cement was dissolv'd; so that nothing but the cubical Stones of which they were compos'd, do now remain. The Stones whereof these Pavements are made, are of several Colours; and by the Artifice of the Workman are form'd into several Shapes of Men, Beasts, Cups, &c. or whatever else he pleas'd.

## GLAMORGANSHIRE.

*Glamorganshire* is by some suppos'd to take that name from a certain Prince call'd *Morgan*; which is a Conjecture probable enough, considering how common the name is in this Country. But if we respect the Situation of the Country, we must rather fetch it from its relation to the Sea, or the Estuary of the *Severn* upon which it is stretch'd out towards the South; for *Mer* in their Language signifies the Sea.

The chief Towns } *Landaffe*,  
are, } *Caerdiff*.

*Landaffe* is seated in a bottom upon the River *Laf*, from which and the Church there it takes the name: For *Lhan* in British signifies a Church. From this it derives its greatest Ornament and Reputation; being erected into a Bishop's See as early as the suppression of the *Pelagian* Heresie by *Germanus* and *Lupus*, the two Gallick Bishops.

*Caerdiff*, considering it lies nearer the mouth of

the same River, has greater advantage by the Harbour; and is a pretty neat Town.

## Ancient Places.

*Ratostibius* is a Corruption of the British *Traeth Taw* which signifying the sandy Frith of the River *Taw*, we need not give our selves any farther trouble in enquiring after the position of this ancient Place.

*Bovium* is *Beverton*, three miles from *Combridge*, a Market Town.

*Nidum* also points its situation by the present name *Nedh*, a Town of good Note.

*Leucarum* is *Lloghor*.

The Thing most remarkable in this County, is

*Caerphilly-castle*, the noblest Ruins of ancient Architecture that we have in this whole Island; being larger than any Castle in *England*, except only *Windsor*. This seems to have been the *Bellaum Silurum*; which being turn'd into British, is *Caer-Vwl*, and that must be express'd like *Caer-Vyl*, or *Caer-Vyli*.



## C A E R M A R T H E N S H I R E.

THE County of *Caermarthen*, in British *Kaer-Vyrdbin*, bears good store of Corn, and abounds pretty much with Cattel: Besides which Advantage of the Soil, it yields in several places good plenty of Corn.

The chief Place is,

*Caermarthen*, seated pleasantly upon the River *Towy* among Woods and Meadows, whither Ships of small Burden are carry'd up. But the Sea has been a little unkind to it, having well-nigh stopp'd up the mouth of the River with a Ridge of Sand. This

Town has the honour of being the Birth place of the famous *Merlin*, the British Prophet, so much talk'd of in ancient Story.

*Ancient Places.*

*Tobius* is manifestly the River *Towy*, which crosses this County from North to South, and empties it self into the Ocean a little below *Kidweli*.

*Maridunum* is plainly *Caermarthen*, just now described; especially, if we take the British name of the place, *Caer-mardkin*.

## P E N B R O K E S H I R E.

THE County of *Penbroke* (encompass'd with the Sea, except on the North and East-sides) is fertile enough in Corn; which is improv'd by the plenty of *Marle* and other fattening Materials they make use of to enrich the Ground. They are likewise well stock'd with Cattel, and have good store of Coal for Fuel.

The chief Towns } *Penbroke*, } *Haverford-west*,  
are, } *S. David*, } *Tenbigh*.

*Penbroke* (translated by *Giraldus*, *The Cape or Sea-Premontory*) is seated in the Eastern-bay of *Milford-haven*. *Arnulph de Montgomery* built a Castle here in the time of *Henry I.* At present, 'tis a Corporation, and receives great Advantages from the Sea.

*S. David's* (seated in the utmost Promontory to the Westward) has its name from *Dewi* or *David*, a very religious Bishop, who translated the Archiepiscopal See from *Caer-Lewn* to this place. This Honour it enjoy'd for a long time; till the Plague raging in those parts, the Dignity was translated to *Dol in Little Britain*, and never restor'd. Its nearness to the Sea has expos'd it very much to Pyrates; from whose barbarous Cruelties it has been a great Sufferer. So that, at present, 'tis an inconsiderable City; shewing no Buildings of note, besides the Cathedral, the Bishop's Palace, and the Houses belonging to the several Members of the Church.

*Haverford-west*, is a Town of good account and resort; being handsomly built and well peopled. The unevenness of the Ground upon which it stands is a great Enemy to the Beauty and Uniformity of the Streets. 'Tis however a Corporation, and a County of it self.

*Tenbigh*, on the South-coast, is a handfom Town and well fortify'd with strong Walls. 'Tis much noted for its plenty of Fish, and is accordingly call'd in British *Dinbechy Pyskod*: It is also a Corporation.

The ancient Place on this Coast, is *Othopitarum Promentorium*, which is that Neck of Land, where *S. David's* stands, call'd in English *S. David's Land*.

*Things Remarkable.*  
*Milford-haven*, for largeness and security, is perhaps out-done by no Harbour in *Europe*. For it has 16 Creeks, 5 Bays, and 13 Roads.

In that little Tract, lying beyond *Milford-haven* the *Flemings* were settl'd in the Reign of *Henry*. Whose Posterity to this day are manifestly distinguished from their Neighbour-*Welsh*, in Language and Customs, in both which they came so near the English, that the Tract it self is call'd *Little England* or *Wales*.

## C A R D I G A N S H I R E.

THE County of *Cardigan*, on the West and South-sides, is an even champain Country; but on the North and East is taken up with a continu'd ridge of Mountains, which yet afford good Pasture for Cattel, and have in the Vallies underneath several large Lakes.

The chief Towns; *Cardigan*,  
are, } *Aber-yfwyth*.

*Cardigan* (seated near the mouth of the River *Teivi*, and therefore call'd by the Britains *Aber-Teivi*) is the chief Town in this County, from whence the whole is denominared. It was fortify'd by *Gilbert*, Son of *Richard Clare*, but being afterwards treason-

ably surrender'd, was laid waste by *Rhys ap Iorwerth*.

*Aber-yfwyth* is seated at the mouth of the River *Yfwyth*, from which position it has the name. The same *Gilbert Clare* who fortify'd *Cardigan*, did so wall this Town; which by Mr. *Camden* is call'd the most populous Town in the whole County. Whether the condition of it be chang'd since his time, I know not.

*Ancient Places*

*Tuerobius*, mention'd by *Ptolemy*, can be no other than the River *Teivi*; the old name seeming to have been moulded from the British *Dw Teivi*, which as much as *The Water of Teivi*,



*Lovantium* or *Lovantinum* may probably be *Lhan-nia* in the Parish of *Lhan Dhevi Brevi*; ; where they meet with Inscriptions, Coins and other indubitable Marks of Antiquity.

The most remarkable Thing in this County, is,  
The noble *Lead-Mine* discovered in the year 1690.  
in the Grounds of Sir *Carbery Pryse*, Baronet. 'Tis  
said, the Ore was so nigh the Surface of the Earth,  
that the Moss and Grass did but just cover it in some  
places.

THE County of *Montgomery* is a mountainous Tract; notwithstanding which, by reason of an agreeable mixture of fruitful Vales, it affords both good Pasture and arable Lands. *Giraldus* has told us, That 'twas formerly eminent for Horses, stately and exceeding swift.

The Towns more con- } *Montgomery,*  
siderable are, } *Llan Vyllyn.*

Montgomery is the chief Town of the County, so call'd from Roger Montgomery Earl of Shrewsbury, to whom it belong'd. In the same manner as the Welch call'd it Tre'Valdwin from that Baldwin (Lieutenant of the Marches in the Conqueror's time,) who built it. In the year 1095, it was destroy'd by the Welch, but

rebuilt by Henry III. to whom they owe several Liberties and Immunities.

*Llan Vyllyn* is a Market Town of considerable note, incorporated in the time of *Edward II.* It is at present govern'd by two Bayliffs, to whom *King Charles II.* (among other Privileges) granted the Honour and Authority of *Justices of Peace* within the Corporation, during the time of their Office, which lasts for one year.

*Ancient Pieces.*

Maglona seems to have some Remains in the present *Machynlherb*, at the utmost Limit of this County Westward.

*Mediolanum* is, by Dr. *Powel* and a late judicious Author, suppos'd to be *Meirot* (about a Mile below *Mathraval*) where several remarkable Monuments have been discover'd.

**M**erionethshire, in Latin *Mervinia*, is so violently beat upon by the Sea, that some imagine part of it to have been wash'd away by the Violence of the Waves. 'Tis the most mountainous Country in all *Wales*; which is the reason why the Inhabitants apply themselves wholly to Grazing, and live upon Butter, Cheese, &c. And indeed, 'tis an incredible number of Sheep, &c. that graze upon the Mountains in these parts. This figure of the Country, and their way of Living, may possibly be the reason why they have so few Towns, and none of any great note; unless we may reckon

**Dol Gelben, a small Market-Town, and**

Bala, the chief Marker of the Mountaineers in the East-part of the County.

### Things Remarkable.

Kader Idris is one of the highest Mountains in all Britain; and as an Argument of it, affords variety of *Alpine Plants*.

Near the Castle of *Harlech*, was dug up (*An. 1692.*) a golden *Torques*, being a wreath'd bar of Gold, or else 3 or 4 Rods jointly twisted, about four foot long, 'Tis now in the Hands of Sir *Roger Mestlyn*, Baronet.

In this County, they have been much troubled of late with an unaccountable sort of *Exhalation*, which has fir'd several Ricks of Hay, and has poyson'd the Grass to that degree as to cause a Mortality among most sorts of Cattle. A full description is given of it in *Mr. Camden's Britannia*, English, pag. 659, 660, &c.

THE County of *Caernarvon*, in the maritime parts is pretty fruitful and well-inhabited ; but more inward, is so encumber'd with vast Mountains and dismal Rocks, that these (if any) may very well claim the name of the *British Alps*.

The chief Towns are, { *Caernarvon,*  
                                  *Bangor,*  
                                  *Conwy.*

*Caernarvon*, wash'd by the Sea on the North and West-sides tho' it gives name to the whole County is yet of no higher Antiquity than the times of King *Edward I.* For this Prince they own for their Founder; and value themselves highly upon giving Birth to his Son *Edward II.* call'd from thence *Edward of Caernar-*

von, who was the first Prince of *Wales* of English Extraction. The buildings are decent enough, and the Inhabitants civil and courteous.

*Bangor*, seven miles from *Caernarvon*, was formerly a place so large and considerable, as to merit the name of *Bangor vawr*: But 'tis now only a small town, and derives all its Reputation from the Bishop's See, the Cathedral whereof is not very fine, having been burnt down by that profligate Rebel *Owen Glendor*.

*Aber-Conwy*, i. e. the mouth of the River *Conwy*, was built out of the Ruins of the ancient *Conovium* by King *Edward II.* and by its advantageous situation and other conveniences, is grown into a handsome Town.

### *Ancient Places.*

*Canganum* is the Promontory of *Lbyn* (running out



to the South-west) which would tempt one to imagine that *Lengauon*, as some of *Ptolemy's* Copies have it, is the true Reading.

*Legunium* is the Mother of the present *Caernarvon*, and seems to have first taken its name from the River *Selwa*, which runs that way into the Sea.

*Conwy*, is undoubtedly the River *Conwy*; as *Conium* (which had that name from the River) is *Conwy*.

*Dilum* is suppos'd to be the ancient City *Diganwy*, which took that name from the River *Conwy*; but was consumed by Lightning many Ages since.

#### Things Remarkable.

*Snowdon-hills* are the highest ridge of that range of Mountains which takes up the inner parts of the County. The name it has from *Snow*, which you commonly see here about the latter end of *June*, but not the year round, as some Authors have affirm'd.

*Pen-maen-mawr*, is a perpendicular Rock, through which the Road lies, not without great difficulty and terror to Travellers. For on one side, you would think the Rocks ready to crush you; on the other the Sea and the Precipice down to it, are so frightfull and dangerous withal, that one false Step endangers the life.

## A N G L E S E Y.

THE Isle of *Anglesey* is separated from the Continent of *Britain* by the narrow Frith of *Meneu*, being about 24 miles in breadth, and in length some few more. By the Ancients it was call'd *Mona* the Seat of the *Druids*; and was first attempted by *Suetonius Paulinus*, but conquer'd by *Julius Agricola*; as we learn at large from *Tacitus*. Many Ages after, the English

conquer'd it; whereupon it was call'd *Anglesey*, i. e. the Isle of the English, or the English Island.

The chief Town in it is

*Beaumaris*, built on the East-side; which (among other Towns in these Parts) owns King *Edward I.* for its Founder. It is grown into a place of good Note and Wealth.

## D E N B I G H S H I R E.

THE County of *Denbigh*, according to the several Parts, has a different Soil: In the West 'tis somewhat barren; in the middle, an exceeding fruitful Vale; and in the East, not quite so fertile; tho' much better towards the River *Dee*.

The chief Town is

*Denbigh*, which is remov'd from the place of its first Foundation. For it was seated upon a steep Rock: from whence the Inhabitants (either because the decli-

vity of the place was inconvenient, or else for want of a due supply of Water) began in after-Ages to remove to the bottom of the Hill; where a handsome large Town is sprung up by degrees.

The ancient Town in this County, is

*Leonis Castrum* (possibly from the *Legio Vicesima Valeria*) call'd, as is suppos'd at this day, by the more modern name of *Holt*, upon the River *Dee*.

## F L I N T S H I R E.

*Flintshire* is so call'd from *Flint-Castle*, which was begun by *Henry II.* and finish'd by *Edward I.* The Form of the County is oblong, and but small. It consists of a mixture of gentle Hills and Plains, which produce Corn in great abundance.

The chief Town is

*S. Asaph* (at the confluence of *Cluid* and *Elwy*) so call'd from the Patron of the place, a holy and devout Person. It owes its reputation to Religion; having neither Neatness nor Wealth to recommend it. For about the year 560. *Kentigern* Bishop of *Glasgow* settl'd here a Bishop's Seat, and a Monastery consisting of 663 Monks. The Bishop of the Diocese has under his Jurisdiction, about 128 Parishes.

The ancient Place in this County, is

*Varis*, which Mr. *Cambden* has fixt in the Confines of *Flintshire* and *Denbighshire*, at a place call'd to this day *Bod-Vari*.

#### Things Remarkable.

*Holly-well*, near *Basingwerk*, derives its Sanctity from the Memory of *S. Winefrid*, a Christian Virgin: a fabulous Story, which Dr. *Powel* thinks is owing to the Forgery of the Monks of *Basingwerk*, who would probably magnifie the Vertues of it for their own advantage. A little Brook runs out of the Well with such a violent Course, as to be able, immediately almost, to turn a Mill.

In the Parish of *Mold*, upon the sinking new Coals, they have met with Leaves of Plants so exactly delineated in a sort of black Slat, that 'tis almost impossible for any Artist to represent them so completely, unless he take the Impression from the Life in some fine Paste or Clay. The Figure and Descriptions of them, are exhibited at large in the new Edition of *Cambden's Britannia*.



# The ISLE of MAN.

Between *Britain* and *Ireland*, there is stretch'd out a considerable Island from North to South, about 30 *Italian* Miles in length; but, where widest, not above 15 in breadth. The several ancient Writers have given it several names: By *Cæsar* 'tis call'd *Mona*; by *Ptolemy*, *Monoeda*; by *Pliny*, *Monabia*: And the same variety appears in such of our modern Authors, as make mention of it. It was first inhabited by the *Britains*, and then by the *Scots*. Many years after, the *Norwegians* got possession of it, and held it for a long time: Till at last, after several Revolutions, it fell into the Hands of the English about the latter end of *Edward I.* or the beginning of *Edward II.* and has ever since continu'd under their Jurisdiction. It has had several Lords; such generally, as had the greatest Interest in our Princes: Till the Grant hereof, together with the Patronage of the Bishoprick, was made to Sir *John Stanley* and his Heirs by King *Henry IV.* in which Family it has ever since remain'd.

The Soil is very fruitful, and produces such store of *Barley*, *Wheat*, *Rye* and *Oats*, as does not only furnish the necessary uses of the Island, but likewise gives leave for the Exportation of good quantities. According to the distinction of North and South it is different: In the first, 'tis healthy and gravelly; in the second they have good Meadow and Pasture-Ground. The Air is very wholsom (the Plague having never been known to be in the Island) so that Four-score is a common Age there. The People are call'd *Manks-men*, and their Language *Manks*. The common People live in little Huts, and are very abstemious in their Diet. The Gentry are but few; those they have, are very civil and courteous, and live in Houses of English fashion.

The Execution of Justice is manag'd with all the speed and easiness imaginable. 'Tis true, their *Sheeding-Courts* (the same with our *Terms*) meet but twice a year; but they have a Court of *Chancery* (wherein the Governour is sole Judge) which he may hold once every Week, if there be occasion. Every Man pleads his own Cause; without *Lawyers*, *Proctors* or *Attornies*: and they are dispatch'd (whether they be Matters *Spiritual* or *Temporal*) without the Expence of one Farthing.

The great Officers of the Island, are 1. the Governour, who under the Lord, has the entire Command of the Island. 2. The two *Deemsters*, who are their Judges in Matters Civil and Criminal. 3. The Com-

ptroller, who calls the Receiver General to an account. And, 4. The *Receiver General*, who receives all the Rents (due to the Lord) from the inferiour Collectors.

Their way of Trading, is pretty peculiar. They chuse four Merchants to buy all their foreign Commodities, for the use of the whole Island; and these are sworn to the true and faithful discharge of their Trust: Whatsoever Bargain they make with the Vessels that come in, the Island is bound to stand to; and the Inhabitants, in exchange, bring in their Native Commodities, *Wool*, *Hides*, *Tallow*, &c. in lieu whereof they are to have a proportionable share of the Imported Wares. They had no Money before the late Civil Wars; when several of the Royal Party flying thither, supply'd the Island so abundantly, that the Tenant was able to pay his Rent in Coin, which he us'd to do in *Sheep*, *Hogs*, &c.

As to the Ecclesiastical State: The Bishoprick is under the Jurisdiction of the Archbishop of *York*. The Bishop has no voice in the House of Lords; but in the Lower House of Convocation is allow'd to sit uppermost. The Clergy are generally Natives, and have a very good allowance. The Parishes are seventeen; every Church whereof bears the Name of some Saint or other, to whom it was formerly dedicated:

The principal Towns are { *Castle-town*,  
                                  *Duglas*,  
                                  *Peel*.

*Castle-town*, so call'd from a *Castle* and Garrison there, is seated on the North-side of the Island; and is call'd otherwise, *Ruffin*. Here, within a little Isle, was erected a Bishop's See, which had formerly jurisdiction over the *Hebrides*, but is now limited to the *Isle of Man*. This is the Metropolis of the whole Island.

*Duglas* has the best Harbour, and is most frequented by the foreign Traders, who bring over their Bay-Salt, and carry back *Leather*, *Wool*, and *Salt-beef*. The Houses both here and at *Castle-town*, are very uniform; and (which is of no great standing in this Island) three Stories high: They are cover'd also with Tiles instead of Thatch.

*Peel* is eminent for its Castle, being the second Fortrefs in the whole Island, and the common Prison for all Offenders. 'Tis strongly fortify'd both by the Sea, and also by Walls and Rampires.

SCOT.



# NORTH-BRITAIN; or, SCOTLAND



**H**aving survey'd *England* and *Wales*, we come next to *Scotland*; which, as it is a Branch of the same Continent, so it is united under the same Government and Legislature, and makes up a part of the Title of *The King of Great Britain*, Concerning the ancient Inhabi-

tants and some other Heads relating to this dom, we have treated in the *General Account of England*; and shall not here repeat them. Let sufficient to observe, That the two Kingdoms united into one Monarchy in the Person of *James*, the first of *England*, and sixth of *Scot-*



By which the English have been freed ever since from those Incurfions and Plunderings, wherewith that Nation was us'd continually to harras and torment them. And now lately are entirely united into one for ever: The Legislation, which heretofore was vested in the King and Parliament of *Scotland*, independent of the Parliament of *England*, being now removed, and plac'd in the one general Parliament of *Great-Britain*; according to the Articles of *Union*, enacted by both Parliaments, *Anno 5. Regni Reg. AN N Æ.*

All that part of the Continent which lies beyond the Counties of *Cumberland* and *Northumberland*, belongs to *Scotland*, with great numbers of Islands on all the other sides, which are bounded by the Ocean. On the West it hath the Irish Sea, on the North the *Deucalionian*, and on the East the *German Ocean*. 'Tis in length about 250 miles, and 150 miles broad. In the most Southerly part 'tis 54 degr. 54. min. in *Latitude*, and in *Longitude* 15 deg. 40 min. but in the most Northerly, 'tis 58 deg. 32. (or 30 min.) in *Latitude*, and 17 deg. 50 min. in *Longitude*. The longest Day is about 18 hours and 2 minutes, and the shortest night 5 hours and 45 minutes.

The SOIL, take it in general, comes far short of *England* in fruitfulness, being much more fit for Pasture than Corn: Nor, but in some of the In-land Country, they have good store of Grain; wherewith they Trade to *Spain*, *Holland*, and *Norway*. The Skirts of the Country abound with Timber; which is of a vast bigneis, especially *Fir-trees*.

The AIR is very temperate, and not half so cold as might be imagin'd in so Northerly a Clime. Which (as in *England*) is owing to the warm Vapours and Breezes that come continually off the Sea; and likewise purify the Air, and keep it in such constant Motion, as generally frees them from all *Epidemick* Ditempers. The nature of the Country is hilly and mountainous; the Plains being but very few, and those too but small. They have abundance of Cows and Sheep, tho' they are but little; for which defect, the fine taste of their *Flesh* makes amends.

*Learning* flourishes among them in 4 Universities, *Saint Andrews*, *Glasgow*, *Aberdeen*, and *Edinburgh*, wherein are Professors of most of the Liberal Arts, and those maintain'd with competent Salaries.

*Christianity* seems to have been planted here very early; especially, if those words of *Tertullian*, *Britannorum inaccessa Romanis loca, Christo vero subdita*, may be allowed to hint at these parts, as in all probability they do.

SCOTLAND, according to difference of Soil, Customs, Humours; as also of the Fancies and Imaginations of Men, has several Divisions.

1. The most eminent of them, is into the *Highlanders* and *Lowlanders*: The first are rude, barbarous and unciviliz'd, using the Irish Language; the second are civil and courteous, and use the Language and Customs of the English.

2. Into the *Scots* and *Picts*; this is the more ancient Division: The *Scots* had all the Western-Isles and the Skirts of the Country Westward; the *Picts* were possess'd of all that lay upon the *German Ocean*.

3. 'Tis divid'd by the *Monts Grampius* or *Grantz-burghs*, which run from West to East.

4. The Rivers divide it into three Peninsula's; one to the South, one in the middle, and one to the North. For the Rivers on each side run so far into the Country, as to be hinder'd from meeting by a small *Isthmus* only; and if that were remov'd, it would make the main Land of *Scotland*, three Islands.

5. The *Romans* branch'd it into several People, according to the following Scheme.

<i>Gadeni</i> ,	{ <i>Teiſdale</i> , <i>Merch</i> , <i>Lauden</i> ,	{ <i>Fife</i> , <i>Strathern</i> , <i>Argile</i> , <i>Cantire</i> , <i>Lorn</i> , <i>Braidallan</i> , <i>Perth-shire</i> , <i>Angus</i> , <i>Mernis</i> .
<i>Seigove</i> ,	{ <i>Annandale</i> , <i>Niddisdale</i> ,	{ <i>Mar</i> , <i>Buquhan</i> , <i>Murray</i> , <i>Lochaber</i> , <i>Rosse</i> , <i>Surherland</i> , <i>Cathnes</i> , <i>Strath-avern</i> .
<i>Norantes</i> ,	{ <i>Galloway</i> , <i>Carriſt</i> , <i>Kyle</i> , <i>Cunningham</i> , <i>Glotta</i> ,	{ <i>Caledonia</i> .
<i>Dannii</i> ,	{ <i>Cluydesdale</i> , <i>Lennox</i> , <i>Sterling</i> .	

The Roman Wall.

6. 'Tis divided into so many Counties, which are again sub-divided into Sherifdoms, Stewarties, and Baileries, for the more easie Administration of Civil Government.

The Counties or Shires, with their particular Extent are as follows:

The Shire of	{	<i>Edinburgh</i>	<i>Midlothian</i> ,
		<i>Mers.</i>	<i>Mers and Lauderdale.</i>
		<i>Peebles</i>	<i>Tweeddale.</i>
		<i>Silkirk</i>	<i>Etterick and Forest.</i>
		<i>Roxburgh</i>	<i>Teviotdale, Liddisdale, Eskdale, and Eusdale.</i>
		<i>Dumfries</i>	<i>Nithisdale and Annandale.</i>
		<i>Wigton</i>	<i>The West part of Galloway,</i>
		<i>Aire</i>	<i>Kyle, Carriſt and Cunningham.</i>
		<i>Renfrew</i>	<i>The Barony of Renfrew.</i>
		<i>Lancrick</i>	<i>Cledisdale.</i>
		<i>Dumbrilton</i>	<i>Lennox.</i>
		<i>Bute</i>	<i>The Isles of Bute and Arran.</i>
		<i>Inverara</i>	<i>Argile, Lorn, Kynntyre; most part of the West-Isles, as Ila, Jura, Mull, Wyll, Terif, Coll, Lismore.</i>
The Shire of	{	<i>Perth</i>	<i>Menteith, Strathern, Balwhidder, Glenurghay, Stormont, Athol, Gource, Glenshee, Stattendill, Braid Albin, Raynock.</i>
		<i>Striveling</i>	<i>Much of the Ground that lyeth close upon both sides of Forth.</i>
		<i>Linlithgow</i>	<i>West-Lothian.</i>
		<i>Kinross</i>	<i>That part of Fife lying between Lochleven and the Ochill Hills.</i>
		<i>Clackmanan</i>	<i>A small part of Fife lying on the River of Forth toward Striveling.</i>
		<i>Couper</i>	<i>The rest of Fife to the East of Lochleven.</i>
		<i>Fo-far</i>	<i>Angus with its Pertinents, Glen-Ila, Glen-Lock, Glen-Proffin.</i>
		<i>Kinkardin</i>	<i>The Mernis.</i>
		<i>Aberdeen</i>	<i>Mar with its Pertinents, as Birs, Glen Tanner, Glen-Muick, Strath-dee, Strath-don</i>



The Shire of		don, Brae of Mar and Cromar, and most part of Buchan, Fourmartin, Gareock, and Strath-Bogie-Land.
	Bamf	A small part of Buchan, Strath-dovern, Boyn, Einzie.
	Elgin	Strath-Awin and Balvenie.
	Nairn	The East part of Murray.
	Inverness	The West part of Murray.
	Cromartie	Badenoch, Lochabir, and the South part of Ross.
Tayn		A small part of Ross, lying on the South side of Cromartie Frith.
		The rest of Ross, with the Isles of Skey, Lewis, and Her-ris.
	Dornoch	Sutherland and Strathnaver, Cathness.

Their publick COURTS for the administration of Justice, are,

1. The *Parliament*, which is the supreme Court, and has the same Authority as ours in England, They have 32 Persons (elected out of the several Orders) whom they call *Lords of the Articles*; and who seem to be much the same thing, as to their Office, with our *Committees* in England, appointed by the whole House to consider of Matters under Debate: Only theirs are fix'd and certain in all Matters, and are chosen at the beginning of their Meeting; ours are appointed *pro re nata*, upon any emergent Occasion; and when that's over, have nothing to do in other Matters, without a particular Appointment. The *Parliament*, which was the supreme Court, is now by the Act of UNION, united to the *Parliament* of England; and by Representatives of 15 Lords and 45 Commoners, is part of the *Parliament* of Great-Britain; as we have already said.

The next supreme Court was the *Privy-Council*, who perform'd all the Royal Part of the Administration, under, and with the King, or his High Commissioner. But this Court is put down by Act of Parliament, Anno 6. ANNÆ; and one *Privy-Council* only, for Great-Britain, permitted.

The Courts now in Use, are,

1. The *College of Justice*, wherein the particular Officers appointed for that purpose (consisting of the Clergy and Lay) administer Justice (according to the Rules of Equity, and not the Rigour of the Law) from the 1st of November to the 15th of March, and from Trinity-Sunday to the 1st of August, every Day except Sunday.

2. The *Justice-Court*, which is the Law-Court for Causes Criminal as well as Civil. It consists of a Justice-General, Justice-Clerk, and five other Judges, who are Lords of the *Session*: By these, being joyned with a Pannel of 15 out of 45 Cited (like our Jury), all Causes are judged. By Statute in K. Charles's Reign, this Court was order'd to hold Assizes all over the Kingdom once every Year; and now by Statute 6°. ANNÆ, the same Assizes are commanded to be held twice every Year.

3. The *Court of Exchequer*, which, by Statute 6°. ANNÆ, is reform'd, and made like to ours in England.

4. The *Court of Chancery*.

5. The *Sheriff's Court* in every County; where the Sheriff or his Deputy decides Controversies among the Inhabitants, relating to matters of inferiour Concernment. The *Sheriffs* are many of them Hereditary, others for Life, and others *durante bene placito*. And in some *Districts* the Officer of like kind is call'd *Steward*.

6. By the Statute 6°. ANNÆ, that takes away the Privy-Council, it is provided, That Justices of the Peace, shall be established in Scotland, in like manner, and with like Power as in England.

7. The *Commissariat*, wherein are pleaded Actions relating to Wills, Tythes, and other Ecclesiastical Affairs.

8. The *Court of Admiralty*.

The several Orders or Degrees, are,

1. The *King*; to whom the Constitution allows much the same Power and Authority, as ours here in England.

The *Prince* of Scotland, the King's eldest Son: The rest of the King's Children are styl'd simply *Princes*.

3. *Dukes* (who were brought into Scotland about the year 400.) *Marquisses*, *Earls*, *Viscounts* and *Barrons*, as we have in England,

4. Their *Knights* also are the same; only, proclaim'd and created with much more Solemnity.

5. *Lairds*, which were anciently such only as held Lands of the King in *Capite*.

6. *Gentlemen*.

7. *Citizens*, *Merchants*, &c.

The RELIGION of the Kingdom by Law establish'd, is that which is contain'd in the Confession of Faith authoriz'd in the first Parliament of King James VI. For the more convenient Regulation of Church-affairs, they had 2 *Archbishopricks*; under which were contain'd 12 *Bishopricks*, according to the following Scheme.

The Archbishoprick of S. Andrews, under which were,	Edinburgh,	Brechen, Ross, Cathness, Orkney.
	Dunkel,	
	Aberdeen,	
	Murray,	
	Dumblane.	

The Archbishoprick of Glasgow, under which were,	Galloway,
	Lismore,
	The Isles.

The Bounds and Extent of the several *Diocesses*, were as follows:

Diocess of	S. Andrews	Contain'd	Part of Perthshire, and part of Angus and Mernes.
	Glasgow		The Shires of Dunbarton, Renfrew, Air, Lanerick, part of the Shires of Roxburgh, Dumfries, Peebles and Selkirk.
	Edinburgh		The Shires of Edinburgh, Linlithgow, part of Strivelingshire, Berwickshire, the Constabularie of Haddington and Bailerie of Lauderdale.
	Dunkeld		The most part of Perthshire, part of Angus, and part of West-Lothian.
	Aberdeen		Most part of Bamf-shire, and part of Mernes.

The



Murray	The Shires of Elgin, Nairn, and part of Inverness and Banff-shire.
Brechin	Part of Angus and Mernes.
Dumfriesshire	Part of Perth and Striveling-shires.
Refs	The Shire of Tain, Cromertie, and the greatest part of Inverness-shire.
Cathness	Cathness and Sutherland.
Orkney	All the northern Isles of Orkney and Zetland.
Galloway	The Shire of Wigton, the Stewartry of Kircudbright, the Regality of Glenrurie, and part of Dumfries-shire.
Argyle	Argyle, Lorn, Kintyre, and Lohaber, with some of the West Isles.
The Isles	Most of the West Isles.

Besides these, for the more close Inspection into the Affairs of the Church, they had a certain number of Presbyteries, viz.

Dumfries	Kilmore	Turres
Perth	Skey	Fordyce
Dumfriesshire	S. Andrews	Ellon
Argyle	Kirkcaldy	Strathbogie
Galloway	Cowper	Abermethie
Argyle	Dumfermelin	Elgin
Dumfries	Mecle	Forbes
Hadington	Dundee	Aberlour
Dumfries	Arbroath	Chanrie
Edinburgh	Forfar	Tayn
Peebles	Brechin	Dingwall
Linlithgow	Mernes	Dornoch
Perth	Aberdeen	Week
Dumfries	Kirkcaldy	Thurso
Edinburgh	Alford	Kirkwall
Edinburgh	Gareloch	Scalloway
Edinburgh	Deir	Colmkill.

- Under this Constitution, they have
1. A Session in every Parish (consisting of the worshipful Persons therein) which took cognizance of some Scandals.
  2. A Presbytery, wherein Cases too intricate for the Session are try'd; and particularly such as enter into Orders are solemnly examin'd. This consists of a number of Ministers, between twelve and twenty.
  3. The Provincial Synod, who meet twice every year.
  4. The General Assembly or Convocation; which is the supreme.
- And now Presbytery is introduc'd, they retain the same Courts and Governments; with some difference only in the exercise and manner of Proceeding.
- At present therefore, instead of the Bishops, there are thirteen Provincial Synods, viz,

Provincial Synods, containing		
	Presbyt.	Parish.
Lothian and Tweeddale	7	117
Moray and Tiviotdale	6	71
Dumfries	4	54
Galloway	3	37
Glasgow and Ayr	7	127
Argyle	5	49
Perth	5	80
Edinburgh	4	73
Argyle and Mernes	6	85

Aberdeen	8	106
Murray	6	59
Refs	4	38
Orkney	3	42

Having thus far given a short Account of the Soil and Air, the Degrees, Divisions, and Government of Scotland, we are next to take a particular Survey of this Kingdom. Which might have been done most conveniently by running through the several Counties, and observing the same method as we have done in England; but that the Towns here are very thin in many places, and some Counties afford none of any considerable note. I know not how to give a view of the Kingdom more distinct, and more agreeable to our Design, than by drawing up a List of the most eminent Cities and Towns, and of the Ancient Places, in an Alphabetical Order.

The most	Aberdeen,	Dundee,	Hamilton,
considerable	Ayr,	Dumfries,	Inverness,
Places	Albion,	Dunfermline,	Linlithgow,
are,	S. Andrews,	Dunblane,	Paisley,
	Banff,	Edinburgh,	Peebles,
	Brechin,	Glasgow,	Perth,
	Carron,	Greenock,	Selkirk,
	Dumfriesshire,		

ABERDEEN, in the County of Marr, has its Name from the River Don, upon the Mouth whereof it stands; Aber in British signifying a Mouth, or place where a River empties it self. There are 2 Towns of the Name, the Old and New. Old Aberdeen is the Seat of the Bishop, having a large and stately Cathedral, commonly call'd St. Machar's. 'Tis, besides, adorn'd with King's College (so call'd from King James IV. who assum'd the Patronage) wherein is a Principal, with the several Professors of Divinity, Civil Law, Physick, Philosophy, and the Languages. In the Church before-mention'd, there is a most stately Monument erected to the Memory of Bishop Elphinstone, a great Benefactor to the place. Hard by the Church, they have a Library well furnish'd with good Books.

About a Mile from hence is New Aberdeen, built upon 3 Hills; but the greatest part of it upon the highest, to which there is an easy ascent from the Plain. 'Tis, by much, the most considerable place in the North of Scotland; whether we respect the Largeness, Trade or Beauty of the Buildings, both publick and private. Of the first sort, the chief is its College, built by George Keith, Earl Marshall, in the year, 1693. and from him call'd the Marshallian Academy. But since his time, the City of Aberdeen hath adorn'd and beautify'd it with several additional Buildings. They have a Principal, four Professors of Philosophy, one of Divinity, and one of Mathematicks. Add to this, the School, which has a Head-master and 3 Ushers; the Musick-School, for the more polite Education of the Gentry; S. Nicholas-Church, built of free Stone, and cover'd with Lead; an Alms-House, and three Hospitals. Nor must we forget the Library, which was founded at the charge of the City, and is supply'd with excellent Books from the Benefactions of several learned Persons; and also well furnish'd with Mathematical Instruments. The private Buildings are very beautiful, commonly four Stories high or more; behind which stand their Gardens and Orchards; so that the City at a distance looks like a Wood.

Ayr, in Kyle, upon a River of the same name, is the chief Market-Town in the West of Scotland. 'Tis situated



situated in a sandy Plain; yet is furnish'd with pleasant fertile Fields, which afford a Prospect very diverting. It has the honour of being the Sheriff's Seat and contains within its Jurisdiction thirty two Miles. The more ancient Name was *S. John's-Town*; but that is now quite laid aside.

*Alva*, standing in the Shire of *Clackmannan*, is a pretty little Town, and very pleasant. It has a Haven, tho' but small. The greatest Ornament it boasts of, is the Castle, the chief Residence of the Earl of *Mar*. This (with its Neighbour *Clackmannan*, seated upon a Rising Ground, and adorn'd with a stately Castle) receives great Profit from the adjoining Coal-pits; which, together with the *Salt*, furnish out a foreign Trade.

*S. ANDREW'S*, above *Fife*, in the Peninsula of *Fife*, is seated conveniently for a delicate Prospect into the Sea. It seems, the ancient Name of it, was *Regimund*; that is, *Regulus's Mount*: The present Name was given it in honour to *S. Andrew*, (whose Bones are said to have been brought out of *Peleponnesus* to this place, by *Regulus* a Monk, in the year, 369.) It is adorn'd with an *Archbishop's See*, who is styl'd *Primate of All Scotland*; with the *New Church*, wherein is a stately Monument of *Archbishop Sharp*; and with 3 *Colleges*. 1. *S. Saviour*, which has a Library well furnish'd. 2. *S. Leonard's*, wherein are several Professors, and a good Library. 3. *New College*, which, besides its two Professors of Divinity, has a Professor of *Mathematicks*, with an *Observatory*, and *Mathematical Instruments*.

*Bamf* is the chief Burgh in the Shire of *Bamf*, and is a Burgh-Royal, wherein the Sheriff holds his Courts. 'Tis seated in a very fertile Tract, and receives great advantages from the *Salmon-fishing*.

*Brechin* upon the River *Esk*, lies in the Shire of *Angus*, and is a Market-Town, considerable for Oxen, Sheep, Horses, and Salmon. The Ruins of the Bishop's Palace and the Canon's Houses, are an evidence of its ancient Magnificence. Here is a stately Bridge over the River *Esk*.

*Chanterbury* (at *Nest-Mouth* in *Refs*) has its Name from a rich College of *Canons*, that were there. They had a large Cathedral Church, part whereof still remains. Its greatest Ornament, at present, is a magnificent House of the Earl of *Seaforth*, who has considerable Revenues in this Country.

*Dumblane* (seated upon the Bank of the River *Allan* on the Stewartry of *Strathern*) is a pleasant Town, but not large. It still shews the Ruins of the Bishops's and Canon's Houses; and part of the Church (a Fabrick of admirable Workmanship) remains entire. Their great Benefactor was *Re. Leighton* Bishop of the place; a Person of strict Life and Conversation. At his death, he left all his Books to the use of the Diocese of *Dumblane*, with a certain Sum of Money for the erecting of a *Library*; and his Sister's Son settl'd an annual Salary upon the *Library-Keeper*.

*Dundee* (so call'd probably from its Situation upon the River *Tay*) stands in the Shire of *Angus*, in a pleasant Plain; and is beautify'd with very good Buildings, both publick and private. They have two Churches; and the *Consable* hereof, by a peculiar Privilege, is Standard-bearer to the Kings of *Scotland*. The Inhabitants are generally rich, by the great Profits which arise from the Harbour; and by their Trade with Strangers, which is very considerable. There is a large *Hospital*, wherein such as fall to decay by Misfortunes and Losses are provided for.

*Dunfrise*, in the Tract call'd *Niddisdale*, lies near the Mouth of *Neth*, between two Hills; and is a very

flourishing Town. The Streets are large, and the Church and Cattle stately. The Tide flows up to the Town, and makes a Harbour; and for the convenience of Trade, they have an *Exchange* for the Merchants. Here is a fine Bridge over the River, of nine Arches.

*Dunkel*, at the Foot of the *Grainthain-Hills* in the Shire of *Perth*, is conveniently situated in the midst of pleasant Woods, and upon the River *Tay*. It is the chief Market-Town of the *High-lands*; to the Ornaments whereof, the Buildings erected of late by the Marquess of *Athol*, have added very considerably. It still shews the Ruins of a *Cathedral Church*.

*Duns* in *Mers* or *March*, towards the German Ocean stands upon a rising Ground in the middle of the Shire. 'Tis a Burrow and Barony, and has every *Wednesday* a throng Market of Sheep, Horses and Cows. But that which makes it most talk'd of, is, its being urg'd for the Birth-place of *Duns Scotus*, by such as are willing to believe him a *Scotchman*.

*EDINBURGH*, the Metropolis of this Kingdom, built upon an ascent; the Buildings gradually descending from the top to the bottom of the Hill. The original of it seems to have been the erecting of a *Fort* or *Castle* (than which no place could be more convenient for the purpose) under the protection whereof, the Neighbours might be possibly encouraged to fix. At present, 'tis a large beautiful City, a full Scotch Mile in length, and half a one in breadth. Two Streets run along the whole length of the Town; the *High-street* is built, of late, of hewn Stone; since an Act of the Town-Council pass'd, whereby it is not lawful to build any more of Timber, either in City or Suburbs, upon account of the many dreadful Fires that have hapn'd. The City has six *Gates*, the principal whereof lays to the East, and is adorn'd with Towers on both sides. They are supplied with Water from one of the best Springs in the Kingdom; which is about 3 Miles distant, and is brought in Leaden-Pipes to the several *Fountains*. This convenience was projected and carried on at the Expence of the City, about 20 Years ago. Their principal Publick Buildings, are

1. The *Palace* (whereof his Grace the Duke of *Hamilton* is Hereditary Keeper) bounded on all sides with lovely Gardens. It has four Courts: The *Outer*, which is as big as all the rest, has four principal Entries: The *Inner* has *Piazza's* all round, of hewn Stone. The *Long Gallery* is very entertaining; shewing the Pictures of all the Kings of *Scotland*, from *Fergus*.

2. The *College* of King *James VI.* founded in the Year 1580. is a large Building, divided into three Courts. They have their *publick Schools*, and a *common Hall*; with a well-stored *Library*, under which is the King's Printing-House. The Professors and Students are very well accommodated with Lodgings.

3. The *Parliament-house* stands in a large Court, which is enclos'd on one side with the *Exchanges*, and with a Set of very stately Buildings. There is a House (perhaps the highest in the World) which mounts seven Stories above the Parliament-Court; for from the bottom to the top, one Stair-case ascends 14 Stories high.

4. The *Cathedral*, dedicated to *S. Giles*, is built of hewn Stone, and is so large, as to be divided into 3 Churches, each whereof has its Parish.

5. *Heriot's Hospital*, so call'd from its Founder *George Heriot*, Jeweller to King *James VI.* is more like a *Palace* than an *Hospital*. All round the Houses are pleasant Gardens, adorn'd with large *Walks* and *Greens*. Here, the Children of the poorer Citizens have their Education, 'till they be fit for the publick Schools and Colleges.



Glasgow is situated upon the East-bank of the River Clyde; and is, next Edinburgh, the principal City in the Kingdom; whether we consider the Buildings, Trade or Wealth of the Inhabitants. It is, in a manner, four-square; the four principal Streets crossing each other in the very middle. The principal Publick Buildings, are

1. The Cathedral (in the upper part of it) the Pillars and Towers whereof are said to shew a very exact and curious Piece of Architecture. 'Tis, indeed, two Churches; one whereof stands over the other.

2. The Archbishop's Castle, surrounded with a Wall of hewn Stone.

3. The College, parted by an exceeding high Wall from the rest of the Town.

4. The Tolbooth (a stately Building of hewn Stone) which stands at the crossing of the Streets.

Glenock, in the Barony of Ranfrew, is a well-built Town, the most eminent upon all that Coast. 'Tis the chief Seat of the Herring-fishing; and the Royal Company of Fishers have built a publick House at it, for the better convenience of Trade.

Hamilton (in Clydsdale) is the Residence of the Dutchess of Hamilton, and the great Ornament of that part of the Kingdom. The Court is on all sides adorn'd with very noble Buildings, has a magnificent Avenue, and a Frontispiece of excellent Workmanship. The Park is 6 or 7 Miles round through which the Brook Aven has its course.

Inverness, the Head-Town of the Sherifdom of that name, is the Sheriff's Seat, where he keeps his Court. The convenience of its Situation upon the River Ness, gives it a free and easie Commerce with the Neighbours. It has a Castle very pleasantly seated upon a Hill, which affords a noble Prospect into the Fields and Town. They have lately built a Bridge over the Ness of hewn Stone, and of 7 Arches.

Linlithgow, in the Shire of Linlithgow, is a Royal Borough, which glories chiefly in its Palace, built almost in the form of an Amphitheatre. In the midst of the Court there is a Fountain, adorn'd with several curious Statues, the Water whereof rises to a good height. The Town is well built, and has a stately Town-House, with a Harbour at Blackness.

Paslay, in the Barony of Ranfrew, is the most considerable in these parts for ancient grandeur and magnificence. It was formerly a famous Monastery, founded by Alexander II. High-Steward of Scotland. The Abbey and Church, with fine Gardens and Orchards, are all enclos'd with a Stone-Wall, about a Mile in Circuit.

Peebles, the Head-burgh of the Shire of that name, has a pleasant Situation, standing in a Plain on the side of the River. It has a noble Church, and a stately Bridge of 5 Arches over the Tweed.

Perth, in the Shire of that name, is call'd S. John's Town, a modern name, taken from a Church founded there in honour of S. John. Mr. Camden tells us, 'tis so divided, that almost every Street is inhabited by a several Trade apart. 'Tis pleasantly seated between two Greens, and the River Tay at every Tide, brings up Commodities from the Sea, in light Vessels.

Selkirk, in Teisidale, is a Burgh-Royal, has the advantage of a weekly Market and several Fairs, is the Head-Burgh of the Shire, and the Seat of the Sheriff and Commissary-Courts.

#### Ancient Places in the Kingdom of SCOTLAND.

Alauna seems to have some Remarks preserv'd in the River Alon in the Sherifdom of Sterling.

Abravanus (for Aber-ruanus) is the mouth of the River in Galloway.

Alcedum seems to be the present Dundee, in the Shire of Angus.

Banatia, mention'd by Ptolemy, is very probably Bean-Castle (in Murra) which may be inferr'd both from the analogy of Names, and the discovery of an engrav'd Marble Vessel, full of Roman Coins, in the year 1460.

Berubium, a Promontory, is thought to be Urdhead, in Strathnavern.

Bodotria (for so Tacitus calls it, but Ptolemy Boderia) is agreed on all hands to be Edinburgh-frith.

Caledonia is all that part of Britain, which lies Northward beyond Graham's-dike, or the Wall built by Antoninus Pius.

Cantæ, were a People who Inhabited the Parts about Rest.

Catini, mention'd by Ptolemy, (and sometimes written Carini) seems by the sound and other circumstances, to be Cathness.

Castra Alata is agreed upon by all to be Edinburgh, Celnus, a River, now Killian in Rest, upon the Eastern Ocean.

Cerones, a People who dwelt anciently where now Affershire lies.

Corbantorium seems to be Caer-Laverock, anciently a very strong Fort in Nidisdale.

Corda, a Town that anciently stood upon the Lake Lough-cure, out of which the River Nid arises.

Coria Damnorum seems to be Camelot; where are some remains of an ancient City. It stands between the Duni Pacis and the Temple of the God Terminus, in the Sherifdom of Sterling.

Cornabii, a People who dwelt in the utmost Coast of all Britain, towards the North, where now is Strathnavern. 'Tis probable they had that name from the River Rabeus, which Ptolemy places likewise in these parts.

Divæ (mention'd by Ptolemy) is the River Dee in the County of Mernes.

Epidiorum Promontorium (a name possibly taken from the Islands Ebudæ over-against it) is call'd at this day Cantyre, i. e. the Lands-Head.

Glotta is an Island mention'd by Antoninus in the Frith of the River Glotta or Clyde; 'tis call'd at this day Arran, from a Castle of the same name.

Grampius is a continu'd range of Hills, reaching as far as Murray; mention'd by Tacitus in his description of Agricola's Attempts upon those parts.

Horesti seems to imply no more than the High-landers in general.

Ila is a River in Cathness, possibly the same which they now call Nisfe.

Lelanonius, mention'd by Ptolemy, is the River Leven, which gives name to the Country of Lennox, call'd in Latin Levinia.

Leucopibia seems by the sense to be determin'd to Bede's Candida Casa and our Whiterne in Galloway; especially if we may believe that Ptolemy wrote it Λευκὴ κίβητα, instead of which the Transcribers, by a blunder, have made it Leucopibia. The easiness of the mistake will readily be own'd by such as have opportunity of making their Observations upon the intolerable slips of ignorant Librarians.

Lindum is still manifest in our Linlithgow, describ'd among the more eminent Places.

Littus altum seems to be Tarbat in the County of Rest, where the River rises to a great height; enclos'd on one side with the River Killian, on the other with the Haven Cromer.

Longus, a River, retains manifest footsteps of the old name in our present Lough-Longas, in the County



of *Ros*, which empties itself into the Western Ocean.

*Lexa*, by *Ptolemy*, is still evident in our present *Lesse*, in *Murray*.

*Nabeus* seems to be somewhere in the Country of *Strathnavern*, which the ancient *Cornabii* formerly inhabited; a People, that seem to have been originally call'd from the River.

*Nedius* (mention'd by *Ptolemy*, and written in some Copies *Nobius*) is evidently the River *Nid*; from which *Nidisdale* takes the Name.

*Nevarum Chersonesus* is well known at this day by the Name of *Mull of Galloway*.

*Orcas* (call'd also *Tarvedrum* and *Tarvisium*) is at this day nam'd *Hewburn*; a Promontory over-against the Isles of the *Orcades*.

*Randvara* seems to be no other than *Ranfrew*, which gives name to the Barony of *Ranfrew*, and is the principal Town in it.

*Reigionium* is both a Creek and Town, mention'd by *Ptolemy*. *Bargeny* in the County of *Carrick* should be some direction to the old name; especially, considering that an ancient Copy of *Ptolemy* reads it *Beiegonium*.

*Vaccinagi*, a People that liv'd about *Murray*.

*Veneris sinus* is, that Bay upon which *Murray* lies; whether that Country have any remains of the old name, I dare not determine.

*Victoria* perhaps is *Bede's Cair Gwidi*, and our *Inchkeist-Island* in *Lothien*.

*Vidogara* was in *Ptolemy's* time, a place of good note in the Country of *Kyle*. There is *Aire*, at present a Town pretty considerable, which possibly may have the best title to it.

*Virvedrum* is look'd upon to be the farthest Promontory in all *Britain*: We call it at this day *Duncans-bay*, and by contraction *Dumby*.

Upon the Coast of *Scotland* lie dispers'd here and there great numbers of Islands; some of them of considerable note and extent, but the greatest part very narrow and of little importance. The *Western-Isles* so call'd from their westerly situation, are suppos'd by those that have travell'd them, to be in number 300 or more. They belong to the Crown of *Scotland*; but the Inhabitants speak the Irish Language, and retain the Customs and Modes us'd by the ancient *Scots*,

as the *Highlanders* in the Continent do.

Another cluster of Isles upon this Coast is call'd *Orkney*, consisting of 26 Islands that are inhabited; and of some more (which they name *Holms*) used only for Pasturage. Here, the length of the longest day, is 18 hours and some odd minutes. A Particular account of these Islands (with the Customs of the Inhabitants, the Produce of the Country, and other material Heads) is publish'd in the new Edition of *Camden's Britannia*, pag. 1073, &c.

*Ancient names of Islands upon this Coast.*

*Dumna*, possibly *Fair-Isle*, wherein they call the chief Town *Dum*, a Remain perhaps of the old name.

*Epidium* should seem by the name not to be far from the Promontory of the *Epidii*: The situation of *Isa*, a pretty large Island, agrees very well to that description.

*Hebudes*, call'd by a modern Author *Hebrides*, are the *Western-Isles* before mention'd.

*Hebuda* is two-fold, *Eastern* and *Western*. The first is thought to be *Skie*, which lies out in a great length; and the second, *Lewes*, a very craggy and mountainous Island.

*Maleos*, mention'd by *Ptolemy*, is manifestly the Isle of *Mul*.

*Ocetis* may be plac'd among the Islands of *Orkney*, in that we now call *Hethy*.

*Orcades* are the Isles of *Orkney*, just now describ'd.

*Pomona* (call'd by *Solinus*, *Pomona Diutina*) is *Mainland*, the chief of the Isles of *Orkney*, and the Bishop's See.

*Recine*, call'd by *Antoninus*, *Riduna*, possibly instead of *Riclana*; for there is one of the *Western-Isles* call'd at this day *Racline*, which seems to be the very place; and the change of (c) into (d) is very easie, and might be made by a Copyist, otherwise accurate enough.

*Thule* is a place mightily celebrated among the old Writers, and made use of to express the most remote parts of the habitable World; such, at least, as were then known, Sir *Robert Sibbald* has prov'd it to be the North-East part of *Scotland*; to whose Differtation (publish'd in the new Edition of *Camden's Britannia*, pag. 1089, &c.) I refer the Reader, for the particular Reasons.

# I R E L L A N D.

Leaving the Continent, we come to a large Isle on the West-side of *Britain*, call'd by *Ptolemy* *Britannia Parva*, and by other ancient Writers *Feræ*, *Fugetta*, *Iris*, &c. but by the Inhabitants *Erin*, and by the English *I R E L A N D*. The length of it, according to the best computations, is about 300 miles, but the breadth scarce 120. The *Irish Sea* bounds it on the East, the *Deucalionian* on the North, the *Western Ocean* on the West, and the *Virgician* on the South.

The *SOIL* is very moist and Wet, abounding with Bogs and Lakes: Which quality is much lessen'd by the encrease of Inhabitants, who have (with great Industry) drain'd the *Low-lands* and *Marshes*. This abundance of Water and Moisture, makes them very inclinable to *Fluxes*, *Rheums*, and such like Distempers, against which they find their *Usquebab* the

best Remedy. It dries more, but enflames less than our English Brandy. And as the Husbandry of the Inhabitants is seen in these *Drains*; so is it also discover'd by the destruction they have made of the *Woods*, which abounded in this Country. Inasmuch, that now they have great plenty of Corn.

Who the first *INHABITANTS* were, cannot be learnt from *Records*; but must only be trac'd by conjecture and probability. Things at such a distance can receive no light, but what they have by these helps; unless we suffer our selves to be drawn by more modern Writers, into a number of extravagant and foolish Fancies. In short then, That they were *Britains*, we are encourag'd to believe. 1. Because the ancient Writers, some of them, call it *Britannia parva*, and *Insula Britannorum*. 2. *Tacitus* has told us, That in his time, their Customs were much the same with





That it was ever conquer'd by the *Romans*, is an Opinion which some have endeavour'd to establish upon little hints they have met with in the old Authors, that seem to look that way. But after all, there's no just reason to believe it: Nor can we imagine, but the Panegyrist would have run out largely upon such a Conquest, if the *Romans* had ever got footing in the Island. Towards the decay of the *Roman Empire*,

They



They are said to have receiv'd CHRISTIANITY very early. What progress had been made in it before the time of *S. Patrick*, we have no certain account: Probably, not very much. But that *Saint* (who was a Disciple of *S. German*) carried the Work on with so much success and resolution, as to convert the greatest part of the Island; which gain'd him the Character of the *Irish Apostle*, and mighty Commendations from all the Irish Writers. In the next Age, their Reputation was so advanc'd upon the account of Religion, that it was term'd *Sanctorum Patria*; and sent out great numbers of pious and devout Men into other parts of the World. Nor was Religion their only Character; their Learning too is much celebrated by Authors both Ancient and Modern, who tell us, That the *Saxons* (particularly) very commonly sent over their Children hither, for a liberal Education.

Thus much of its ancient Condition. At present, the Inhabitants are in a great measure brought over to the Customs and Fashions of the English: Except in some parts, where they live at a loose, unciviliz'd rate; and are therefore term'd *Wild-Irish*.

They are govern'd by a *Vice-Roy* (sent over by the King of England) stil'd *Lord-Deputy* or *Lord Lieutenant*; whose Jurisdiction and Authority is very large and ample. As for their Orders or Degrees, Ireland has the same, that we have here in England: Their Courts of Justice too, and manner of proceeding, differ very little. The *Parliament* is call'd and dissolv'd, at the pleasure of the King of England. They have their four *Terms*; their *Chancery* also, *King's Bench*, *Common-Pleas* and *Exchequer*; with their Judges of *Assize*, and Justices of the Peace in each County.

Ireland is divided into five parts, arising from the number of its Governors heretofore. These, with their extent, will best be understood by the following Scheme.

- |             |                                                                                           |                                                            |
|-------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1. MUNSTER  | { Kerry,<br>contains the Counties of<br>Cork,<br>Waterford,                               | { Limerick,<br>Tipperary.                                  |
| 2. LEINSTER | { Kilkenny,<br>contains the Counties of<br>Caterlough,<br>Queens-County,<br>Kings-County, | { Kildare,<br>Wexford,<br>Dublin.                          |
| 3. CONAGHT  | { Tormund,<br>contains the Counties of<br>Galloway,<br>Maio,                              | { Slego,<br>Letrim,<br>Rescommon.                          |
| 4. ULSTER   | { Lough,<br>contains the Counties of<br>Cavan,<br>Fermanagh,<br>Monaghan,<br>Armagh,      | { Down,<br>Antrim,<br>Coltrane,<br>Tir-Oen,<br>Tir-Connel. |
| 5. MEATH    | { East-Meath,<br>contains the Counties of<br>West-Meath,                                  | { Longford.                                                |

The CHURCH is govern'd by four Archbishops; *Armagh*, Primate of all Ireland; *Dublin*, *Cassil*, *Tuam*. The particular extent of the Bishopsricks has been so alter'd from time to time, that I had rather omit the List, than run the hazard of giving a false Catalogue. In the Survey of the Kingdom, we will use the method observ'd in Scotland; which (for the Reasons laid down, in the beginning of that Kingdom) is here also most convenient and easie.

The more considerable Towns are,	{ <i>Armagh</i> ,	<i>Down</i> ,	<i>Limerick</i> ,
	{ <i>Athlone</i> ,	<b>DUBLIN</b> ,	<i>Lismor</i> ,
	{ <i>Caricfergus</i> ,	<i>Galway</i> ,	<i>London-derry</i> .
	{ <i>Cassil</i> ,	<i>Kildare</i> ,	<i>Waterford</i> ,
	{ <i>Clare</i> ,	<i>Kilkenny</i> ,	<i>Wexford</i> ,
	{ <i>Cork</i> ,	<i>Kinsale</i> ,	<i>Youghal</i> .

*Armagh*, in the County of *Armagh*, near the River *Kalin*, seems to be the same which *Bede* calls *De-armach*; where (as the same Author adds) *S. Patrick* built a very fine City; only, he subjoins a Roman circumstance, That he follow'd the Model which the Angels had drawn for him. But whoever was the Founder, 'tis certain, That in the year 1142. it was made an Archbishop's See, when Cardinal *Papirio* was sent over into Ireland to revive the decaying Discipline of the Church. Nor is it only an Archbishoprick, but the Metropolis of the whole Kingdom; the Archbishop hereof being stil'd *Primate of all Ireland*. The City was reduc'd under the power of the English by *John de Curcy*; but was afterwards utterly destroy'd by *John O Neal*; so that now nothing remains but a few Cottages, and the Ruins of the ancient Buildings.

*Athlone*, in the County of *Rescammon*, is a place of good strength, and has a fair Stone-bridge over the River. 'Tis much talk'd of in our Accounts of the late Wars in this Kingdom.

*Caricfergus*, in the County of *Antrim*, is the most considerable Town upon all the Coast; having a very commodious Haven. In the late Wars in Ireland, it was much spoken of.

*Cassil*, upon the River *Swire* in the County of *Tipperary*, is only eminent for being an Archbishop's See, establish'd there by Pope *Eugenius III*.

*Clare* is a Market-Town (in the County of that name) standing upon a Creek of the River *Shanon*.

*Cork*, the Metropolis of the County of that name, is encompass'd with the River on which it stands, and is of an oval Form. It has the Honour of being an Episcopal See, and is now mostly Inhabited by the English; who by their diligence and industry have improv'd to that degree, both in Estates, Trade and Buildings, as to exceed all the Cities in Ireland, except only *Dublin*.

*Down* (the principal City in the County of *Down*) is of very great Antiquity; being mention'd almost under the same name (*Dunum*) in *Ptolemy*. 'Tis at present a Bishop's See; and the Inhabitants would claim a farther Honour, by making it the Burial place of the great *S. Patrick*. But *Armagh* in Ireland, *Glasfenbury* in England, and *Glasgow* in Scotland, do envy them that Happiness, and endeavour to assert that Esteem to themselves upon several Authorities, which seem to countenance the several Opinions.

**DUBLIN**, the chief City in Ireland, has a very pleasant situation by reason of Hills to the South, Planes to the West, the Sea to the East, and the River *Liffy* to the North. The River here makes a safe Harbour; but the heaps of Sand thrown into its Mouth by the violence of the Winds, or else the clogging and flowing of the Sea, hinders Ships of any great Burthen from coming up, but at high Water. The City is well Wall'd and neatly built: Within these hundred years, it is doubly increas'd in its buildings, Ornaments, &c. Formerly, it was govern'd by a *Provost*; but King *Henry IV*. granted them a Mayor and two Bailiffs: And the two latter were chang'd into Sheriffs by *Edward VI*. Its publick Buildings of greatest note, are,

1. The College (which is situated in the same place on which the Monastery of *All-hallows* stood) dedicated to the *Holy Trinity*, and endow'd with the Privileges of an University by Queen *Elizabeth*. In *Edward the Second's* time, there was a Foundation laid here for an University, by the Institution of publick Lectures; but the Disturbances which follow'd, broke that Design.

2. The Archbishop's Palace, in the Suburbs of S.



3. *Patrick*: with a stately Church dedicated to *S. Patrick*; eminent without for its high Steeple, and within for its Pavements and arch'd Roof. This consists of a *Dean*, a *Chanter*, a *Chancellor*, a *Treasurer*, 2 *Archdeacons*, and 22 *Prebendaries*.

3. The *King's Castle*, well fortify'd with Ditches and Towers, and furnish'd with a good Arsenal.

4. *Christ's Church*, in the heart of the City; carry'd on and finish'd by *Lawrence* Archbishop of *Dublin*, and others.

5. The *Town-Hall*, built of square Stone, and call'd *Tegiale*.

*Galloway* (the chief place in the County of that name) is a neat Town built of Stone. The convenience of a Harbour has made it well stor'd with Merchants; who, by the advantage of a full Trade both by Sea and Land, are very wealthy.

*Killare* has the honour of giving name to the County wherein it stands; but yet *Naas* is the Shire Town. Its greatest honour is the Bishop's See, stil'd in ancient Writings *Episcopatus Dariensis*.

*Kilkenny* (the chief place in the County, and the best inland Town in the Kingdom) is fair built and very plentiful, standing upon the River *Neure*. 'Tis divided into the *English-Town* and the *Irish-Town*. The *English-Town* is the newer, said to be built by *Ranulph III.* Earl of *Chester*. The *Irish-Town* is like a Suburbs to the other; but yet has the honour of *S. Canic's Church*, who gave name to the City, which implies as much as the *Cell of S. Canic*; a Person very eminent in this Country for an extraordinary piety and strictness of Life. The Bishop of *Offory* has his Seat in this City.

*Kingfale* stands at the Mouth of the River *Bandon*, in a fruitful Soil; and receives its greatest interest and Reputation from the commodious Harbor it enjoys.

*Limerick* (the head City in the County) is encompass'd by the divided Channel of the famous River *Shanon*. 'Tis parted into the *Upper* and *Lower*: In the first stands the Cathedral and Castle; the second is guarded with a Wall and Castle. It is a Bishop's See, and a place strongly fortify'd both by Art and Nature; as we may easily guess from the long Defence it made, when belieg'd by his late Majesty in the Irish Wars. This is the great Emporium of the whole Province of *Munster*.

*Lisnor* (upon the River *Broodwater* in the County of *Waterford*) has a considerable name in the Histories and Records of *Ireland*, upon account of the Bishop's See. But the Revenues thereof being almost quite alienated, and lost, it came afterwards to be annex'd to the See of *Waterford*.

*London-derry*, formerly call'd *Derry*, is now annex'd to the County of that name; and is famous in our modern Histories and publick Papers, for resisting two memorable Sieges, one in the year, 1649. the other in the year, 1689.

*Waterford*, the chief City in the County of that name, can neither recommend it self by a good Air nor fruitful Soil. Notwithstanding which, by the convenience of the Harbour, it was look'd upon for Wealth and Populousness to be the second City in *Ireland*; till *Cork* (as we observ'd before) grew up, and ever-topp'd it. Upon account of its eminent Loyalty to the English, our Kings having granted it several Privileges: But in the Rebellion of 1641. it lost its old Character of *Fidelity*, by the Influence of the Popish Clergy, settl'd there probably to carry on that bloody Design.

*Weisford*, the chief Town of the County seems to be a place of some Antiquity; tho' that name be

modern, and given it by the *Germans* who settl'd themselves here. The Town is remarkable, for being the first in this whole Island that surrender'd to the English, and that receiv'd a Colony of that Nation. Which is the cause why all the neighbouring Parts do so much abound with English Inhabitants.

*Toghall*, near the entrance of the River *Broodwater* into the Sea, stands in the County of *Cork*, being of an oblong form, and wall'd round. The Town is divided into *Upper* and *Lower*. The convenience of the Harbour, with the fruitfulness of the Country round, have made it a place of considerable Resort.

#### Ancient Places in the Kingdom of IRELAND.

*Argita* is a Lake in these parts; perhaps that which empties it self at *Swilly* in the County of *Tirconnel*.

*Ausuba*, mention'd by *Ptolemy*, is a River about *Lough-Corbes*, in the County of *Galloway*.

*Auten*, a People in these parts, seem to have formerly inhabited that Tract where the County of *Galloway* is at present; *Aterith* may well enough be suppos'd to retain something of the old name.

*Blani* were a People, who (along with the *Birgantes*, *Menapii* and *Cauci*) inhabited the Province of *Leinster*.

*Boreum Prora*, now *S. Helen's Head* in *Tirconnel*-County.

*Bovinda* is the River *Boyn*, well known by reason of the late Wars.

*Brigantes* or *Birgantes*, have their name from the River *Brigus* (for so *Ptolemy* calls our *Barrow*) and inhabited *Kilkenny*, *Offory* and *Caterlogh*, which are all water'd by the *Barrow*.

*Cauci* seem by the circumstances to have inhabited the County of *Wicklow*; now full of English Inhabitants, and by them improv'd to that degree, as to make a figure among the best Shires in this Kingdom.

*Concani*, a People in those parts, inhabited the South-part of *Conaught*, viz. *Clare*, *Galloway*, the Territory of *Clan-Richard*, with the Barony of *Aterith*. 'Tis possible, our present *Conaght* may have something of the name of this People; especially, if a more suitable Original cannot be found out.

*Coriondi*, a People who dwelt about the County of *Cork*; to which perhaps it might have left a tincture of the name.

*Darni* (along with the *Voluntii*, *Robogdii* and *Erdini*) peopl'd the Province of *Ulster*.

*Daurona*, mention'd by *Ptolemy*, and by *Giraldus*, call'd *Lauranus*, is probably the River which runs along by *Cork*.

*Dunum* is undoubtedly *Down*; an account whereof we have given in the descriptions of the Towns.

*Duris* seems to be the River which runs by *Trailey* through the County of *Kerry*.

*Etlana* is agreed upon by all hands to be the City of *Dublin*.

*Eblani* were a People in those parts.

*Erdini* inhabited part of the Province of *Ulster*, along with the *Voluntii* and others.

*Hieron Promontorium*, may very probably be that Neck of Land which shoots out into the County of *Weisford*; where *Benna*, a Town's name, implies the same thing as *Hieron*, namely, *sacred* or *holy*.

*Iberni* (call'd in some Copies *Uterini*) seem to have inhabited part of the County of *Desmond*, along with the *Velabri*.

*Fernus* is a River settl'd by *Ptolemy* under the Promontory *Notium*, as emptying it self there into the Sea. *Maire* (which runs under *Drunkeran*) bids the fairest for it.



*Isanium* is a Promontory call'd at this day *S. John's Foreland* in the County of *Dawn*.

*Laterus*, mention'd by *Ptolemy*, seems to be the *Castle Kil-lair*, in the County of *Meth*; a name possibly deriv'd from *Ptolemy's* old one.

*Libnius* keeps something of its name to this day in the River *Liff*, which runs by *Dublin*.

*Legia* is the Lake *Lough-Foye*, in the County of *Tirconnel*.

*Luceni*, a People who formerly inhabited *West-Munster*, along with the *Verabri* and *Uterini*.

*Maelicum*, is now *Maic*, upon the River *Shanon*, in the County of *Long-ferd*.

*Menapii*, mention'd in *Ptolemy*, inhabited the County of *Wexford*; the chief City whereof, of the same name, seems to be the old *Menapia*.

*Modena* is a River in these parts, at the mouth whereof stood the ancient *Menapia*. If the latter be *Wexford*, the former must of course be the River *Sene*.

*Nagnata* is plac'd by *Ptolemy* some where about the present County of *Slego*; the very spot is not yet discover'd, nor any remains of the old name.

*Nagnata* must have their Seat in the same Tract, whereof *Nagnata* may seem to have been the capital City.

*Natium* is our *Missen head* (a Promontory in the County of *Desmond* (under which he tells us the old River *Fernus* empties it self into the Sea.

*Oveca* seems to be that River which empties it self into the Sea, below *Wicklow* or *Arcklow*.

*Revius* is the River *Trebis*, the Northern Bound of

the County of *Slego*.

*Rceba* is still preserv'd entire in the old *Rheba* (near the River *Barrow* in *Queen's-County*) at present an inconsiderable place.

*Regia* may seem to have been seated about *Patric Purgatory*, in the County of *Tirconnel*; because a place, in the Life of *S. Patrick*, is call'd *Reglis*.

*Regia* has some Relicks of the old name, in a Lake we call *Lough-Regith*, in the County of *Long-ferd*: Which is of more moment, because the situation agrees very well with the account left us of it by *Ptolemy*.

*Robogdii* inhabited all the northern Shore of *Ireland*, about *Tirconnel*, &c. *Robogh* still preserves manifest marks of the old name.

*Robogaium Promontorium* must also have been those parts.

*Senus* call'd also *Sena*, *Sacana* and *Flumen Senen* is the noble River of *Shanon*.

*Velabri* (so call'd from the *Friths* and *Æstuar* among which they dwelt; for so much *Aber* implies inhabited part of the County of *Desmond*.

*Vidua* a River in *Tirconnel*, now *Crodagh*.

*Vinderius* is the Bay of *Knock-fergus* in the County of *Antrim*.

*Vodia*, a People, who, with the *Coriondi*, inhabited the Counties of *Cork*, *Tipperary*, *Limerick* and *Wexford*. The Territories *Idou* and *Idouth* seem to have something of the old name.

*Vennicium Promont.* now *Ram's Head* in *Tirconnel* *Voluntii*, along with the *Darni*, *Robogdii* and *Erd*, inhabited the Province of *Ulster*.

## JERSEY and GARNSEY.

BESIDES the Kingdom of *Ireland*, and the other Islands which lie round the Continent of *Britain* (the most considerable whereof are describ'd in the Counties upon which they border) there are two more which could not be conveniently drawn into the Body of the Survey, by reason of their distance from the Continent. And yet they are of so great importance to the Crown of *England*, that in a Description of the three Kingdoms, it will be a gross Error wholly to omit them. These are *Jersey* and *Garnsey*,

*JERSEY* is that which *Antoninus* mentions under the name of *Cæsarea*, about 30 Miles in compass, and defended with Rocks and Quick-sands. The middle parts are mountainous, but the Vallies are delicately water'd with pleasant Brooks, and planted with Fruit-Trees; *Apple-Trees* more especially. The Villages are thick-set, and make 12 Parishes; out of which 12 Jurors are chosen by their respective Parishioners to assist the Bailiff (who is appointed by the Governour to administer Justice) in the management of Causes and Actions, both Civil and Capital. They have no Physicians, nor any Distempers but Fevers; which always come at a certain time of the Year. Instead of Fewel, they use a Sea-weed, which they name *Uraic*; and the Sea now and then furnishes them with a good prize of combustible matter. *S. Hilary's* on the South-side of the Island, is their

chief Town, both on account of its Trade, and *Court of Justice* settl'd in it. The name, it has from *Hilary* (Bishop of *Poitiers*) suppos'd to have been exil'd here, in his Banishment.

*GARNSEY* (20 Miles to the North-west) is *Antoninus* call'd *Sarnia*; inferior to the other upon some accounts: For it contains only 10 Parishes, is not so fruitful: But 'tis better fortify'd, being compass'd with a continu'd Ridge of steep Rocks. This whole Island is Enclosure; but the Inhabitants do not follow Agriculture so closely, as their Neighbours of *Jersey*. *S. Peter's*, a Town consisting of a long narrow Street, and seated upon a Bay in form of a Half-Moon, is their capital Place, whether respect Trade or Strength. For it is well stor'd with Merchants; and has the Mouth of the Haven defended by a Castle on each side. The Governour of the Island keeps his Residence here, and a Garrison for the defence of the place.

The Government of these Islands, is much the same in both; the Customs of *Normandy* obtain in most cases. Their Drink is generally *Cyder*, by reason of the abundance of *Apples*; and *Fish* they have in great plenty. Their Language is the French; tho' they are generally of the same Extraction, they seem not fond of an Alliance to that People, had rather make out a Relation to the English.



# FRANCE.

## CHAP. I.

FRANCE, Gallia, in General.

## FRANCE



THE Country of France is very advantageously situated, in the midst of the Northern temperate Zone, and extended from the 42d degree of Latitude to the 51st degree; and from the 13th degree of Longitude,

to the 25th, degree, reckoning from Teneriffe [But according to Sanfon's Computation from the 15th degree to the 29th degree of Longitude:] So that it includes the space of 173 Leagues or,

The Longitude of France has been strangely confounded by the Ignorance or Vanity of their Geographers, who have in their Maps extended it East and West a hundred Miles or more above its real Length: But the *Mesures de l'Academie des Sciences*, have by exact Observations and Calculations corrected that Error, and by Monsieur du Fer's new Map it appears that the Length of the Kingdom from Conquet to Montbeliard is but 12 Degrees, tho' Sanfon makes it 14 and others much more.



520 Miles, from the *Pyrenean Mountains* in the South, to *Calis* in the North. And from the Point of *Conquet* in *Bretagne* in the West to *Alsatia* in the East, about 500 Miles. On the North-east it is contiguous with the *Spanish Netherlands*, and on the North parted from *England* by the *British Channel*: On the East it is bounded by *Germany*, *Switzerland*, *Savoy* and *Piedmont*, from the last of which it is separated by the *Alps*; on the South by the *Mediterranean-Sea*; and the *Pyrenean Mountains*, which divide it from *Spain*; and on the West by the *Ocean*.

The *AIR* is very temperate, and not subject to the great Colds of *Germany*, *Sweden*, and *Muscovy*, nor to the excessive Heats of *Spain* and *Italy*; but it is more or less hot or cold, according to the different situation of the several Provinces.

The *SOIL* is every where fertile, and produces, besides abundance of Corn and divers sorts of Fruits, a vast quantity of Wine and abundance of Flax; and in *Provence* and *Languedoc*, Oil. The Pastures and Meadows feed great Herds of Cattle, and the Forests, which are spacious enough, but not so large as those of *Germany*, contain much variety of Game. Some Mines of Iron, Lead, Tin, Copperas, &c. are found in *France*, but of these not many nor very considerable. Great quantity of Salt is made in the Isle of *Rhee*, about *Rochford*, and other parts of *France*, which yields the King a great Revenue.

The most noted *MOUNTAINS* here, besides the *Pyrenean* and the *Alps*, are those of *Cevennes*, *Auvergne*, *Mont-jure* or *S. Claude* towards *Switzerland*, and *Mont-dogesse*, or *des-Faucilles* in the Diocels of *Laigres*.

The Chief *ISLANDS* are, I. In the *Mediterranean-Sea*, those of *Hieres*, *S. Margaret*, *St. Honoratus* or of *Lerins*. &c. II. in the *Ocean*, *Oleron* and *Ree* on the Coast of *Sentenge* and *Aunis*; *Noir-Monstrier*, *De-dieu*, *Bell-Isle*, *Queffant*, &c. off of *Bretagne*; and *Alderney* near the Shoar of *Normendy*.

Its chiefest *PORTS* in the *Ocean*, are *Calais*, *Ambletense*, *St. Valery*, *Diepe*, *Havre de Grace*, *S. Malo*, *Brest*, *Rochel*, *Rochfort*, *Bordeaux*, *Bayonne*, &c. And in the *Mediterranean*, *Marseilles* and *Toulon*.

The principal *RIVERS* of *France* are, 1. The *Seine*, which rises in *Burgundy* near *Dijon*, passeth through *Champaign*, the *Isle of France* and *Normandy*, watering by the way, *Trois*, *Paris* and *Roen*, and receiving in its Course the *Tonne*, the *Oyse*, and several smaller Rivers, empties it self into the Sea at *Havre de Grace*, and makes a very good Haven, whence this Town hath its Name. 2. The *Loyre* is the largest River in *France*, and springs in *Languedoc*, in the Mountains call'd *les Cevennes*, passeth by *Nevers*, *Orleans*, *Tours*, *Angers* and *Nantes*, receiving by the way the *Aller*, the *Cher*, the *Indre*, the *Vienne*, the *Sarte*, the *Ardre* and many others, and falls into the Sea about 40 Miles below *Nantes*, and over against *Bell-Isle*. 3. The *Garonne* riseth in the *Pyrenean Mountains*, runst to *Toulouse*, thence flows westward to *Bordeaux*, a little below which the *Dordogne* joyns it, and both together make a very wide Haven, which is emptied into the *Ocean* near the Island of *Oleron*. 4. The *Rhofne* hath its Source in the *Alps*, passes through the Lake of *Geneva*, flows to *Lyons*, where it receives the *Saone*; at *Valence* the *Isere* falls into it, as doth the *Durance* at *Avignon*, and quickly after empties it self into the *Mediterranean-Sea* in Six Channels. Besides these there are a great number of smaller Rivers; which are mentioned in the following Description of the Country.

The particular *COMMODITIES* of *France*

which they send abroad into foreign Countries, a Wine, Brandy, Canvas, and other Linen, Paper, Salt, wrought Silks, Druggets and other Stuffs; several wrought Goods, as Gloves, Lace, &c.

The *PEOPLE* of *France* are a mixture of the Posterity of the ancient *Gauls*, *Romans*, *Franks*, *Vijgoths* and *Burgundians*, but chiefly of the *Gauls*, who though the *Romans* and *Franks* successively subdued they did not however expel, those still remaining ti body of the People, tho' these obtain'd the Government of them.

Of the *TEMPER* of the *Gauls*, *Cesar* say They were quick-witted, but rash and unsteady; and their Successors the *French* are of the same nature. They have generally quick and ready Apprehension but too often run away with a superficial Knowledge of things, without having Patience to dive to the bottom: But tho' this be their general Character, they have been abundance of Particulars that must be excepted: *France* having produced very learned and industrious Men in all Arts and Sciences, especially in our Age; wherein beside the vast improvement they have made to the Art of War, all the parts of Learning have been industriously studied and improv'd by the ingenious *Virtuosi* of *France*; and even a Woman of that Nation hath been found an excellent Critic in Philological Learning. They abound in Compliments, and are really very civil, especially to Strangers; and have a natural freedom in their Conversation, which would be very agreeable if it were not overacted and mixed with Levity. Both Men and Women are full of Talk, and as familiar at first sight, as if they had been long acquainted. In their Habit they are something fantastical, but have generally an Air of Gentility; especially the Women, who are well shaped and fair enough, except in the Southern Provinces, where they have very swarthy Complexions. The *French* are much addicted to Litigiousness; more Law-suits are tried there, than in any Nation in the World; nay some say than in all *Europe* besides; which encourages all sorts of People to breed up their Children to the Law; and if a Father can raise Money enough to purchase his Son an Office, he thinks him well settled: By which means here are swarms of Advocates, Procureurs, Registers, Notaries, and other Men of Law. The Gentry scorn Trade, so that the younger Brothers always apply themselves to the Gown or the Sword, which makes the *French* King's Armies so large and well Stockt with Officers. In War they have been always esteemed furious in attacking, but quick in retreating, not to be brought on a second time, if they obtained not their End at the first Onset. *Sicut primus impetus eis major quam virorum est, ita sequens minor quam faminarum*, says *L. Forus* of them.

But tho' this may still be part of their Character, yet, what by strict Discipline and careful Instruction, their Soldiers will now endure the Fatigues of a Camp and a Siege as well as any in *Europe*, and in Battles too, they have behaved themselves very bravely.

The Religion of the *Gauls* was Paganism in its highest degree, even to the offering of humane Sacrifices (saith *Solinus*); but as they became more civiliz'd this barbarity was laid aside; however, they still remained superstitious Idolaters, till the *CHRISTIAN RELIGION* was planted among them, by some of *St. Peter's* Disciples. *St. Denys*, the *Areopagite*, is pretended to have been the Apostle of *Paris*, and many ridiculous Miracles are related of him in their Legends; particularly, that after he was beheaded his Body rose, took up his Head and walked with it a

Mile



Mile: which is as true, as that this *Denys* was ever there\*. However, it is certain, that Christianity was received here very early, and that the Learned and pious Father St. *Irenæus* came hither in the middle of the second Century, and succeeded *Pothinus* (who was martyr'd *An. Dom. 178.*) in the Bishoprick of *Lyons*, But the *Franks* being Pagans, when they came, Christianity was again suppress'd, till *Clovis* the fifth King being converted, by the Persuasion of his Wife *Crotilda*, and the instruction by St. *Vaast*, and St. *Remigius* the first Bishop of *Rheims*, it was restored.

But in the succeeding Ages of Ignorance and Superstition, the Errors that crept into the Church in most parts of Christendom, prevailed here also; and though the Gallican Church was never so servilely subject to the Court of *Rome*, as those of other Nations, yet the superstitious Doctrines were as generally received here as any where. But when the Reformation was set on foot, great numbers of the People of *France* were convinc'd of the falshood of that Religion, and *Calvin's* Doctrine was readily receiv'd upon the preaching of *Zuinglius*. And so numerous did the Protestants or Huguenots (as they were called by the Romanists) grow, that even so early as the year 1560. there are said to have been 1250 of their Churches in *France*. But they were always persecuted by the Romish party, and even massacred in most barbarous manner several times; particularly at *Paris* on Saint *Bartholomew's* day, in the year 1572. where in the middle of the Night, more than 10000 of them were murder'd at once, and in other Cities three times as many, though a Peace was just concluded, and for assurance the King of *Navarre*, the Head of the Protestant party, was that day married to the French King's Sister. King *Henry IV.* granted them Liberty of Conscience by an Edict made at *Nantes*, and confirm'd and registr'd in the Parliament of *Paris*: By which means they again grew very powerful, and no less than 300 walled Towns were inhabited almost only by them, of which *Rochel* was the chief. But *Lewis XIII.* deprived them of 'em all, even *Rochel* it self, after a long and famous Siege. By which their Strength being broken, and the Heads of the Party being brought over, or otherwise reduc'd, the present King *Lewis XIV.* resolv'd utterly to suppress them; which he began by the revocation of the Edict of *Nants* in the year 1685. notwithstanding it had been so firmly ratified, and made a standing Law of the Kingdom; and afterwards caus'd the Protestants to be most cruelly persecuted by his Soldiers, which continued for two or three years; at the end of which, all those that could not be brought to renounce their Religion, were banished the Kingdom, after they had been long imprisoned, and deprived of all their Goods and Estates. And at this time the Persecution is renewed with such Heat, that none dare own any other Religion, than that of the Romish Church.

The ancient LANGUAGE of the *Gauls* was the same with that of our ancient *Britains*, as the learned Mr. *Camden* has proved at large; but when the *Romans* conquer'd it, they introduc'd the Latin, and by means of the long time they were Masters of the Country, establish'd it so effectually, that the old

Gaulish was quite lost; afterwards the *Franks*, being *Germans*, introduc'd their own Language, which was us'd at Court for some Ages; but the German being a more harsh indocile Tongue, and the Latin the contrary, this prevail'd above that; so that though the present French Tongue be compos'd of the German and Gothick, as well as of the Latin, the last has much the greater share.

It is voluble and elegant, and admir'd for its sweetness; it is true by means of the liberty they take in the pronounciation, (leaving out harsh terminations and Consonants) it is pliant enough, but not so sweet as the Italian. The Royal Academy at *Paris* have of late years much improv'd and refin'd it, however it is not yet copious nor at all heroick; so that though in their Translations they have express'd the sense of some ancient Authors aptly enough in Prose, none of their Ingenious have been able to produce Heroick Poems like those in English.

But notwithstanding that this Tongue hath nothing of signal Majesty or Manliness in it, and seems rather fit for the Conversation of Women than of Princes and Statesmen, yet what by the greatness of the present King, and their Obstinacy in using their own Language in the Businesses other Nations have had occasion to transact with them, together with the splendor of the Prince's Court which hath invited Strangers to visit it, the French Tongue is at present us'd in many Courts of *Europe*, and the most generally understood of any modern one in Christendom.

## SECT. II.

### Of the ancient State of France.

THE want of Literature in the earlier Ages of the World, hath made it extremely difficult to discover the Origin of Nations: The best that can be learnt of that of *France*, is, That it was peopled after the Flood, by the Posterity of *Gomar* the eldest Son of *Japhet*: These growing numerous, compos'd many Nations, to whom the *Greeks* and *Romans* gave the general name of *Galli* or *Celtae*; for what reason, as it is uncertain, so it is not very material; however under that name they were known in the time of *Tarquinius Priscus* the fifth King of *Rome*, and possess'd a Country of very large extent, comprising not only all the present *France*, but part of *Italy* also, as far as the River *Rubicon* or *Pisatello*, which falls into the *Adriatick* Sea between *Ravenna* and *Rimini*; and all that part of *Germany* and *Belgium*, that lies within the River *Rhine*, the Division whereof according to the Roman Accounts, was thus, viz,

I. *GALLIA CISALPINA* or *Citerior*, with respect to the *Romans*, afterwards called *LONGOBARDIA* or *LOMBARDY* from the *Bardi*, a certain Gaulish People, and the *Langons*, so named by reason of their long Javelins.

II. *GALLIA TRANSALPINA*, or *Uterior*, which contained all the present *France*, and that part of *Germany* and *Belgium* westward of the *Rhine*.

The *Gauls* in general were a very vigorous and

\* Dr. *Cave* in his Life of that *Denys* hath sufficiently proved that he was never in *France*, *Lives Fath.* Vol. 1. p. 71. as also their own Country-men, *Launoy*, *Sirmondus* and *du Pin*. V. *du Pin's Hist. Eccles. Writ.* Vol. 1. p. 31. of the Engl. Edit.



warlike People, those of the *Cis-Alpina* fought and defeated a large Army of *Romans*, march'd \* A.M. 3562. up to the City, took and sack'd it \*, U.C. 565. laid Siege to the Capitol, and had well nigh taken it: For having observed on one side of the Castle a place of more easie access than the rest, in the dead of the night some of them climb'd up the Rock there, and got to the top with that silence, that they escaped the Centineils and the Dogs; but disturb'd certain Geese that were in the Capitol, which by gagling and clapping their Wings alarm'd the Soldiers; who presently running to their Arms, drove them back, and by that lucky Accident recover'd the *Roman* State, then reduc'd to its last gasp. At length the Siege was rais'd by *Camillus* the Dictator, and in time the *Gauls* were driven out of the *Roman* Provinces: But left so dreadful a Name behind them, that *Cicero* confesses the *Romans* were more afraid of them than any other Nation of the World. And *Sallust* says, It was not Honour but Life that was to be disputed with a *Gaul*. The *Romans* durst not attempt the Conquest of them, till they had subdued almost all the rest of the then known World. At length, Anno U.C. 628, *Fulvius Flaccus* the Consul made War upon them, and five years after *Fabius Maximus* reduced the *Narbonensis* into a *Roman* Province. About 70 years after this, *Julius Caesar* undertook the Conquest of *Gaul*, which, after a very bloody War he effected, and totally subjected the whole Country to the Power of *Rome*, A.M. 3900. U.C. 703. ante Christ. 48. *Caesar* at his arrival found the whole Country divided into three parts, whereof the *Celte* or *Galli* possessed the best and largest, being all the Country that is bounded by the *Garonne* on the South, the Ocean on the West, the *Loire* and the *Rhine* on the East, and by the *Seine* and *Marne* on the North; From the Confines of the *Gallia Celtica* to the *British* Sea, and along the lower part of the *Rhine* quite to the *German* Ocean was inhabited by the *Belge*; the other part, being all from the River *Garonne* to the *Pyrenean* Mountains, quite cross from the Ocean in the West to the *Mediterranean* in the East, belonging to the *Aquitains*. Of these the *Celte*s were the most civiliz'd, because of their Neighbourhood and Converse with the *Romans*, and the *Belge*s the most warlike by reason of the little Converse they had with other Nations, and the frequent Wars that the *Germans* made upon them. These great Nations were again subdivided into a multitude of smaller, whereof *Caesar* mentions no less than LXIV, that had different Appellations from the chief City, as the *Rhemi* of *Rheims*, the *Suessiones* of *Soissons*, *Bellovaci* of *Beauvais*, *Sessui* of *Seerz*, &c. But by him it was divided into these four great Parts. 1. *Narbonensis*, so called from the City *Narbon*, containing *Languedoc*, *Provence*, *Dauphine*, and some Part of *Savoy*; called also *Braccaria*, from a certain Habit worn by the People. 2. *Aquitanica*, so named from the City of *Aque-augusta*, now d' *Acqs* in *Guienne*, comprehending the Provinces of *Gascogn*, *Guienne*, *Quercu*, *Xaintoigne*, *Poitou*, *Perigord*, *Limousin*, *Auvergne*, *Bourbonnois*, and *Berry*, extending from the *Pyrenees* to the River *Loire*. 3. *Celtica*, called so from the valiant Nation of the *Celte*s, and *Comata* from the long Hair worn by them, and also *Lugdunensis* from the City *Lyon*, extending from the *Loire* to the *British* Sea, and comprehending the Province of *Lycnois*, the Dukedom of *Burgundy*, *Nivernois*, &c. part of *Champagne*, the Isle of *France*, the Provinces of *Normandy*, *Bretaigne*, *Maine*, *Perche*, *Beauce*, *Anjou*, and *Touraine*. 4. *Belgica*, named from the *Belge*s a potent Nation, comprised all the Eastern part of *Gaul*, viz. *Picardy*, the rest

of *Champagne*, the *Netherlands*, and so much of *Germany* and *Belgium*, as lyeth on this side the *Rhine*, with the County of *Burgundy* or *Franch Comte*.

Afterwards the Emperor *Constantine* the Great, divided it into seventeen Provinces or Governments; six of which were Consular and eleven under certain Presidents sent by the Emperor, who resided in these Cities, viz.

1. <i>Narbonensis</i> prima.	<i>Narbonne</i> in <i>Languedoc</i> .
2. ——— secunda.	<i>Aix</i> in <i>Provence</i> .
3. <i>Viennensis</i> .	<i>Vienne</i> in <i>Dauphine</i> .
4. <i>Alpes, Graie</i> and <i>Penina</i> .	<i>Monstriers en Tarantaise</i> in <i>Savoy</i> .
5. <i>Alpes Maritimæ</i> .	<i>Ambrun</i> in <i>Dauphine</i> .
6. <i>Lugdunensis</i> prima.	<i>Lyon</i> .
7. ——— secunda.	<i>Roan</i> in <i>Normandy</i> .
8. ——— tertia.	<i>Tours</i> .
9. ——— quarta.	<i>Sens</i> in <i>Champagne</i> .
10. <i>Sequania</i> .	<i>Besanzon</i> in <i>Franch Comte</i> .
11. <i>Aquitanica</i> prima.	<i>Bourges</i> in <i>Berry</i> .
12. ——— secunda.	<i>Bordeaux</i> in <i>Guienne</i> .
13. <i>Novempopulania</i> .	<i>Aux</i> in <i>Gascogne</i> .
14. <i>Germania</i> prima.	<i>Mentz</i> .
15. ——— secunda.	<i>Colen</i> .
16. <i>Belgica</i> prima.	<i>Triers</i> .
17. ——— secunda.	<i>Rheims</i> .

He also placed Counts in the Cities, and Dukes in the Frontier Towns to administer Justice according to the *Roman* Laws; and A.D. 330. dividing the Office of *Præfectus Prætorio*, or Lieutenant-General of the Empire, among four Persons; appointed one of them to reside among the *Gauls*; and under him, three Vicars, who were dispersed in *Britain*, *France*, and *Spain*.

Afterwards the *Goths* got footing in *Gaul*, the *Narbonensis* being granted to them by the Emperor *Honorius* upon their quitting *Italy*; and afterwards for Service done the Empire. *Aquitain* also was given them. And the *Burgundians*, a great and populous Nation on the *Rhine*, (at first called in by *Stilico* Lieutenant of the same *Honorius*, to defend the Borders against the *Franks*) possessed themselves of all the South-east parts and both the *Burgundies*, from them so called.

This was the State of *Gaul*, when the *Franks* or *French* entred it.

The *FRANKS* were a warlike People of *Germany*, who possessed all the Country that lies between the *Rhine* and the *Weser*, and from the *German* Ocean in the North to the River *Mayne* in the South; and consisted of the Nations of *Sicambri*, *Bucteri*, *Salijs*, *Cherusci*, &c.

They also conquer'd the Country beyond the *Mayne*, and making the Banks of that River their chief Seat, gave the name of *Franconia* to the Country now called so.

The *Sicambri*, from whom some deduce the original of the *French*, are said to be of *Scythian* Extraction, and have come down into *Germany* A.M. 3519. ante J. Chr. 429, in a very great Body, under their Captain *Marcomir*, and settled themselves in those parts now called *East-Friesland*, *Guelderland*, and *Holland*. They were a rough unciviliz'd People, and often invaded and plundered their Neighbours. A.M. 3925. their King named *Francus*, was called by the *Saxons* to their assistance against the *Goths*, where he so signaliz'd himself by his Valour, that, as some Authors report, the Nation had from him the Name of

*Franci*;



*Franci* ; but this seems improbable, since neither *Strabo*, *Ptolemy*, *Pliny*, *Cæsar*, *Tacitus*, or any ancient Author have mentioned them under that Name : From whence it is concluded, That they had it not till long after, that they took it up to denote the *Freedom* they enjoy'd from the *Roman* Yoke, which the Neighbouring Nations were Subject to.

The first notice of them in History under this Denomination is in the Reigns of *Valerian* and *Gallienus*, about A. D. 260, after which they are frequently mentioned on account of the Pillage they made in *Gaul*, &c. *Constantine* the Great, took their Kings *Asteric* and *Rhadagaise* Prisoners, and exposed them to wild Beasts, for having violated their Faith in warring against him.

About A. D. 412 the *Armorici*, who inhabited the Maritime Provinces of *Gaul*, as *Flanders*, *Picardy*, *Normandy* and *Bretaign*, revolted from the *Romans*, to whom the *Franks* joyned, and by that means possessed themselves of part of the *German* and *Belgick* Provinces of *Gaul*, which the *Romans* were forced to grant them. Soon after this it was, that *Pharamond* was chosen their King ; He reigned ten Years and had his Seat in *Gaul*, but about the time of his death the *Romans* beat the *Franks* out of *Gaul* again, and took from them the Lands they had given them, which *Clodion* the Successor of *Pharamond* endeavour'd to regain, but was beaten back. *Meroveus* succeeded *Clodion*, in whose time *Attila* King of the *Huns* invaded *Gaul* with a vast Army, and having plundred several other Cities, besieged *Orleans* ; for the relief whereof *Meroveus* joined his Forces with those of *Ætius* the *Roman* General, and *Theodorick* King of the *Visigoths*, who altogether set upon *Attila*, and in Battle killed 200000 of his Men (as Historians report) and drove him out of *Gaul*. *Ætius*, who was the great support of the *Roman* Power in *Gaul*, was soon after Massacred by *Valentinian*, and he himself kill'd by *Maximus*. This put the *Roman* Affairs into such disorder, that *Meroveus* had time to extend his Conquests, which he did over all *Picardy*, *Normandy* and part of the Isle of *France* ; and *Childerick* his Son took *Paris*, *Orleans*, and several other Cities, and established the *French* Monarchy. *Clovis* his Successor freed the *French* wholly from the *Roman* Power, and gave the Name of *France* to all the Country that reaches from the *Rhine* to the *Loire*. After the death of *Clovis*, the Dominion of the *Franks* was divided into two parts, viz. *Osterrich*, or the Eastern part called *Austrasia*, and *Westerrich*, or the Western part called *Neustria* : The former containing all the old *France*, and the Country beyond the *Maine*, which they had conquer'd, together with *Reims*, *Chalons*, *Cambray* and *Loan* ; which was from that time a separate Kingdom, the Seat whereof was *Mets* in *Lorraine*. The latter contained all the Country that lies between the *Meuse* and the *Loire*, which was again divided into three Kingdoms, viz. 1. Of *France* at *Paris*, 2. of *Orleans*, and 3. of *Soissons* : And afterwards, when the *French* had subdued the *Visigoths* and *Burgundians* ; two other Kingdoms were erected, viz. of *Aquitain* and *Burgundy*. These were several times united and divided, as the Royal Family happened to be more or less numerous. But the Title of Kings of *France*, the Historians have given to those only who have ruled in *Paris* ; who are these mentioned in the following Table.

## S E C T. III.

## Of the French Kings.

OF these Monarchs there are reckon'd three Races. The first is called *Merovingian* from *Meroveus*, who putting aside the Children of *Clodion*, caus'd himself to be chosen King ; and fixed the Regal Seat in *Gaul*, as hath been already shewn. This Race continued during the Reigns of XXI Kings, and ended in *Childerick* III. who being a weak man, was surnamed the Witless, and was degraded by the Assembly of the Estates ; *Pepin* the Son of *Charles Martel*, *Maire* of the Palace, being advanced in his stead ; who began the second Race, called the *Carlinian* or *Carlovinian*.

The *Maire of the Palace* was an Office of great Dignity and Power ; he was at first chosen by the Nobility and confirmed by the King ; and was entrusted with the Management of all Affairs of State : Their Power was very great, which by reason of the Weakness and Supineness of the Kings, they encreased as they pleased ; so that at last it became hereditary. Of these, *Pepin* and his Son *Charles*, surnamed *Martel*, were in a manner Kings themselves during the Reigns of *Dagobert* II. *Chilperick*, *Clotaire* and *Thierry*, and after the Death of the last, *Charles* made himself chief Governour, with the Title of *Maire and Duke of the French*, in which he was succeeded by his Sons *Carloman* and *Pepin* during an Interregnum of 6 or 7 Years ; and after the Expulsion of *Childerick*, *Pepin* obtained the Royal Dignity, as hath been already said. To *Pepin* succeeded his Son *Charles*, called *le Magne* or the Great ; An Epithet the Noble Actions he performed, very worthily deserv'd : For it was he that conquer'd the Barbarous Inhabitants of the most Northern Parts of *Germany*, and establish'd Christianity and Civil Government among them, after he had overcome *Wittikind* the last King of the *Saxons* whereof we shall have occasion to speak more particularly in our description of *Germany*. He also conquer'd the *Boii* or *Bavarians*, became King of *Germany*, and in the Pope's Quarrel carried his Arms into *Italy* against *Desiderius* King of *Lombardy*, who attempted to diminish the Papal Power and make himself King of all *Italy* ; Him *Charles* defeated, seized his Kingdom, and was crown'd King of *Lombardy*. He also conquered the *Saracens* in *Spain*, and the *Huns*, *Danes*, *Normans*, &c. that infested his own Countries : And finally, he was by the *Romans* chosen Emperor, to which he was crowned on *Christmas-day*, A. D. 800. thereby erecting anew the Western Empire, and making himself the greatest Prince of the Universe. But this mighty Monarchy was in a little time reduced to its former Limits ; for his Son *Lewis the Godly* parted his Estates among his four Sons, and erected the Kingdoms of *Italy*, *Aquitain*, *Bavaria*, and *Francia* ; and tho' some of his Posterity succeeded in the Empire, yet his Family degenerating, they not only lost that Title, but *Charles* surnamed the Simple, the great Grandson of *Lewis the Godly*, was for some time kept out of the Throne of *France* also, by *Lewis* and *Carleman* his Bastard-Brothers, and after them by *Carolus Crassus* Emperor, and *Eudes* Earl of *Anjou* ; and though he obtained it at last, he was much disturb'd and forc'd to resign it to *Rodolph* of *Burgundy*, who having enjoyed it two years, after his Death the Son of *Charles the Simple* was restor'd. But his Son



Son and Grandson were disturb'd by *Hugh Capet*, Earl of *Paris* and *Anjou*, and *Maire* of the Palace, descended from the *Eudes* above mention'd, who after the Death of *Lewis the Slothful*, got to be chosen King by the Assembly of the Estates at *Nejon*, in the Month of *May*, A. D. 987 : And began the Third or *Capetine* Race of the Kings of *France*.

*A Chronological TABLE of the Succession of the Kings of France, according to Mezeray.*

The First or Merovignian Race.		
Began to Reign.	A. D.	Reigned Years.
1 <i>Pharamond</i>	418	10
2 <i>Clodion the Hairy</i>	428	20
3 <i>Merovee</i>	448	11
4 <i>Childerick I.</i>	458	23
5 <i>Clouis I.</i>	481	30
6 <i>Childebert I.</i>	511	47
7 <i>Clotaire I.</i>	558	3
8 <i>Cherebert</i>	561	9
9 <i>Chilperick I.</i>	570	13
10 <i>Clotaire II.</i>	584	45
11 <i>Dagobert I.</i>	629	16
	Whereof 6 with his Father	
12 <i>Clouis II.</i>	638	18
13 <i>Clotaire III.</i>	655	14
14 <i>Childerick II.</i>	670	{ in Austria } { & Neust. } 18
15 <i>Thierry I.</i>	674	
16 <i>Clouis III.</i>	691	4
17 <i>Childebert II.</i>	695	17
18 <i>Dagobert II. the Just</i>	711	5
19 <i>Chilperick II.</i>	716	5
<i>Clotaire, set up by C. Martel</i>	721	1
20 <i>Thierry II.</i>	722	17
An Interregnum of 6 or 7 Years		
21 <i>Childerick III. the Witless.</i>	743	8

*The Second or Carolovignian Race.*

22 <i>Pepin the Short</i>	751	17
23 <i>Charlemagn, or Charles the Great</i>	768	46
24 <i>Lewis I. the Pious</i>	814	27
25 <i>Charles II. the Bald</i>	840	37
26 <i>Lewis II. the Stammerer</i>	877	1 7 Months
27 { <i>Lewis III.</i> <i>Carlomen</i> }	879	{ 2 4 }
28 <i>Charles III. the Gros</i>	884	3
29 <i>Eudes crowned King</i>	888	5
30 <i>Charles IV. the Simple</i>	893	29
<i>Robert crowned King</i>	922	1
31 <i>Rodolph crowned King</i>	923	13
32 <i>Lewis IV. Transmarine</i>	936	18
33 <i>Lothaire</i>	954	32
34 <i>Lewis V. the Slothful</i>	956	1 2 Months

*The Third or Capetine Race.*

35 <i>Hugh Capet</i>	987	9
36 <i>Robert the Devout</i>	996	45
Whereof 9 with his Father		
<i>Hugh the Great, crowned, but died before his Father</i>		
37 <i>Henry I.</i>	1033	28
38 <i>Philip I.</i>	1060	48
39 <i>Lewis VI. the Gros</i>	1108	29
<i>Philip crowned, but died before his Father</i>		

40 <i>Lewis VII. the Young</i>	1137	43
41 <i>Philip II. the August</i>	1180	43
42 <i>Lewis VIII. the Lion</i>	1223	3
43 <i>S. Lewis IX.</i>	1226	44
44 <i>Philip III. the Hardy</i>	1270	15
45 <i>Philip IV. the Fair</i>	1286	29
46 <i>Lewis X. Humu</i>	1314	1 6 Months

*Regency.*

*John*, died at 8 Days old.

47 <i>Philip V. the Young</i>	1317	5
48 <i>Charles IV. the Fair</i>	1322	6
After whose Death, <i>Edward III. King of England</i> , claim'd the Crown of <i>France</i> , as next Heir; however it was given to		
49 <i>Philip VI. of Valois</i>	1328	22
50 <i>John the Good</i>	1350	13
He was taken Prisoner by the <i>Black Prince</i> Son to <i>Edward III.</i>		
51 <i>Charles V. the Wise</i>	1364	16
52 <i>Charles VI. Well-belov'd</i>	1380	42
53 <i>Charles VII. Victorious</i>	1422	39
54 <i>Lewis XI.</i>	1461	22
55 <i>Charles VIII. Courteous</i>	1483	15
56 <i>Lewis XII. the Just</i>	1498	17
57 <i>Francis I. the Great</i>	1515	32
58 <i>Henry II.</i>	1547	13
59 <i>Francis II.</i>	1559	1 5 Months
60 <i>Charles IX.</i>	1560	13
61 <i>Henry III.</i>	1574	15
62 <i>Henry IV. of Bourbon,</i>	1589	21
<i>King of Navarre</i>		
63 <i>Lewis XIII.</i>	1610	33
64 <i>Lewis XIV.</i>	1643	now Reigning.

The present King was born *September* the 5th, 1638, succeeded his Father in the Throne, *May* the 14th, 1643, and was Crowned at *Rheims*, *June* the 7th, 1654. He married *Mary of Austria*, Daughter to *Philip IV. King of Spain*, *June* the 9th, 1660, by whom he hath Issue the *DAUPHIN*, born *November* the 1st, 1661, who married *Mary* Sister to the present Elector of *Bavaria*, on the 28th of *January*, 1680, and by her hath Issue Three Sons; viz. the Duke of *BURGUNDY*, born *August* the 6th, 1682, the Duke of *ANJOU*, born *December* the 9th, 1683, and the Duke of *BERRT*, born *August* the 31st, 1686.

SECT. IV.

*Of the Government, Laws, Courts and Officers of Justice, and Taxes.*

*GAUL*, as we have said, was anciently divided into many Nations, each of which was govern'd by a different King; whose Power was limited by Laws agreed between him and the People in a grand Council. But tho' these Nations were separate Governments, they all maintained a general Alliance, and upon extraordinary Occasions, a general Council of the Chiefs of each Nation was conven'd; as we find there *Cæsar, de Bel. Gal. Lib. I.* was to chuse Deputies to congratulate *Cæsar* upon his Victory over the *Helvetians*, and to crave his Assistance against *Arminius* King of the  *Germans*.

And like the *Gauls*, the *French* also at the beginning of that Monarchy, establish'd a grand Council for making Laws, called the Assembly of the Estates; which was composed of Deputies sent from the Nobility, Clergy, the chief Cities of every Province, and from the common People. These being assembled before the King.



King, the Peoples Grievances were heard, the Necessities of the Kingdom considered and Laws were made for Imposing Taxes, Redressing Grievances, and what else was needful for the Publick Good: And the Laws there made obliged the King, as well as the People. The first Assembly of this Council, mentioned in History was *A. D.* 422, at *Saliffon* or *Seitz* in *Alsatia*, which was called (says *du Tille*) to interpret and Reform the Customs of France not yet written; and in this Council 'tis said the famous *Salique Law* was made. Mention is made many times that *Childebert* assembled the Estates. *Charlemagne* called them twenty times, To receive the Annual Gifts, and confirm the Privileges of the Nobility, says a late French Author of good Learning; by which it should seem that they had the same Power that our English Parliament hath. It is at least certain, that in those days this Assembly had great Authority: *Davila* says it was an ancient Question, Whether the Estates or the King were superior. But at length their Power was much restrained, and latterly they were not assembled in many years together. *Lewis XIII.* convoked the Assembly of the Estates to *Sens*, *Sep.* 10. 1614. thence adjourned them to *Paris*, where the Sessions began on the 27th of *October*, and on the 23d of *February*, 1615. the Result of their Deliberations being written down, were presented to the King, but whether passed into Laws or no I am not inform'd, the Historian leaving it there. Since that time they have never met; and the only Legislative Power in France at present is in the King, whose Edicts (with a *Soit, car tel est notre plaisir*; So be it, for such is our Pleasure) being registered in the Parliament of *Paris* (which too is composed of Persons that are at his Devotion) have the full force of Laws.

The Ancient Civil Law is used in France, besides which there are ancient Municipal Laws and Customs, and the Edicts of the Kings.

The *Salique Law* and that of *Appenages* are esteemed Fundamental and irrevocable: The first confines the Succession to the Crown in the Males, excluding the Females, and the Issue of them: What more it contained is not known. Many Conjectures have been made of the Reason of this Name *Salique*: some derive it from the *Salii*, one of the Nations of the *Franks*; others from the River *Sala*, on the Banks whereof it is pretended to be made, &c. But that which seems to be much the most Natural and Probable is the Judgment of a most ingenious Antiquary of our own Nation, who derives it from the Word *SAHL* or *ZAL*, as it is now written, which in the *High-Dutch* (the Language of the *Franks*) signifies a Hall or Court, so that it is the Law *Salique*, *q. d.* the Court-Law, or the Law of the Court, by which the King and the Royal Family were assur'd of their Honour and Prerogative. That of *Appenage* was made by *Charles* the Great, and is to hinder the King's younger Sons from having any part of the Kingdom with their Elder Brother; before which France was frequently parcelled out into several Kingdoms.

For maintaining the Publick Peace, and the better Administration of Justice, the King appoints one of the prime of the Nobility Governor in every one of the Twelve Governments, and under him Lieutenants and Governours of Towns, whose Officers are the same with the ancient Dukes and Counts, first established by the *Romans*, viz. to keep in Obedience the Provinces and Places given them in Custody, to maintain them in Peace and Tranquility, to have Power and command over their Armies, to defend them against Enemies and Seditious Attempts, to keep the

Places well fortified and provided with what is needful, and to assist the Execution of Justice.

The Administration of Justice, both Civil and Criminal belongs to the Parliaments. Anciently the Kings administred Justice themselves, but it being troublesome to them, this Court was establish'd by King *Pepin*, *Anno Dom.* 757. composed of certain Noblemen, whom the King appointed to hear the Complaints, and do Justice to his Subjects. At first it was held where the King resided, and follow'd him in his Journeys: But for the Convenience of the People, *Philip* the Fair made it sedentary, and gave a Part of his Palace at *Paris* to be the fixt Seat of the Parliament; and because of the multiplicity of Business, and the large extent of the Country, succeeding Kings erected new ones in several Parts of the Kingdom, so that at present there are Fourteen Parliaments in France, and its Conquests, viz.

- |                                      |                                               |
|--------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------|
| 1 At <i>Paris</i> .                  | 9 At <i>Pau</i> .                             |
| 2 <i>Toulouse</i> .                  | 10 <i>Besancon</i> .                          |
| 3 <i>Roan</i> .                      | 11 <i>Tournay</i> .                           |
| 4 <i>Grenoble</i>                    | 12 Of <i>Roussillon</i> at <i>Perpignan</i> . |
| 5 <i>Bordeaux</i> .                  |                                               |
| 6 <i>Dijon</i>                       | 13 <i>Arras</i> .                             |
| 7 <i>Aix</i>                         | 14 Of <i>Alsace</i> at <i>Strasburgh</i> .    |
| 8 <i>Rennes</i> , now at <i>Van-</i> |                                               |
| <i>nes</i> .                         |                                               |

These Parliaments are composed of certain Presidents, Councillors, Advocates, &c. and divided into several Chambers, according to the respective Businesses. That of *Paris* is called the Court of Peers, because the Dukes and Peers of France, and several great Officers of State are sworn before it, and are there tryed, when accused of any Crime. It is divided into Ten Chambers, viz.

The *Grand Chamber*, which tries great Causes, and judges Noblemen.

The *Tournelle* (so called, because the Councillors of the Grand Chamber attend in it by Turns;) *Civile*, judges of Civil Causes to the Value of 1000 Livres or 50 Livres per Annum.

The *Tournelle Criminelle*, which judges all Appeals of Criminal Matters from the Subordinate Courts, not made by Noblemen.

Five Chambers of *Inquest*, Wherein the Depositions of Witnesses are written down, and Causes judged thereupon, in the Nature of our Bill and Answer in *Chancery*.

Two Chambers of *Request*, which judge the Causes of those that are privileged.

For the Service of these Chambers, there are one Chief President, and seven Presidents *au Mortier* (so called from a Cap they wear in form like a Mortar) who are all Persons of Quality: Twenty nine Councillors, Clerks, among which the Archbishop of *Paris*, and the Abbot of *S. Denys* have place; One hundred eighty and five Councillors, Laicks; Fourteen Presidents of the *Inquest* and *Requests*; Two Advocates General; one Procureur General, and Twenty Substitutes to him; Three Registers; with Greffiers, Notaries, Ushers, &c. and Four hundred Procureurs or Attorneys.

Besides the Parliaments, there are two other sorts of supreme Courts in France, which are the Chambers of Accounts, and the Courts of Aides.

The Chambers of Accounts are Twelve in Number, and held at these Cities. viz. 1. *Paris*, 2. *Roan*, 3. *Dijon*, 4. *Nantes*, 5. *Montpelier*, 6. *Grenoble*, 7. *Aix*, 8. *Pau*, 9. *Blois*, 10. *Lisle*, 11. *Aire*, and 12. *Dole*. This Court administers the Oath of Fidelity to the Arch-



Archbishops, Bishops, Abbots, &c. They Examine the Accounts of the Treasury, receive the Homage and Vassalage due from the Royal Fiefs, &c. and Register the Treaties of Peace, and all other Contracts, Grants and Gifts of the King whatsoever.

The Courts of Aids are Eight, and held at these Cities, viz. 1. *Paris*, 2. *Montpelier*, 3. *Rouen*, 4. *Clermont-Mont-ferrand*, 5. *Bordeaux*, 6. *Aix*, 7. *Grenoble*, and 8 of *Burgundy* at *Dijon*. This Court Judges without Appeal all Causes relating to the *Tailles*, *Aides*, *Gabels*, and all other the King's Revenues.

Under these Supreme Courts there are other for smaller Matters establish'd in all the Cities, and considerable Towns in the Kingdom, viz.

*Presidial*. A Court composed of several Judges who Try Civil Causes (and Appeals from Subaltern Justices in Villages) of Matters of smaller Importance. Each *Presidial* is divided under two Chiefs; The first judges definitively, and without Appeal, to the Sum of 250 Livres or 10 Livres *per Annum*; The second to the Sum of 500 Livres, or 20 Livres *per Annum*.

*Generalities*. Which are the Treasurers General of *France*; Of these there are Twenty three, conveniently disposed in several Parts of the Kingdom: Each Generality is composed of Twenty three Persons, who have the care of Assessing the Taxes, and Receiving the King's Revenue, in their respective Districts, which for their ease are divided into several Parts, called Elections. When the King in his Council, hath determined what extraordinary Sum must be levied upon the Subjects that Year, the Resolution is sent to the Generalities, who compute the Proportion of it that each of their Districts must raise: And then send their Orders to every Election, to raise so much as their Proportion amounts to, upon the Parishes within their respective Elections; and the Money being Collected, is returned with the accounts to the Generalities, who remit it to the Exchequer, The same Method is used in levying the *Tailles*, and all Money raised for the King.

This is a Court also for judging Matters relating to the Crown-Lands and the Kings Revenue. They have the Inspection of all publick Works, and give out Orders concerning the building and repairing the Royal Houses (except *Versailles* and the *Louvre*) publick Bridges, Causeys, &c. They are Surveyors General of the High-ways, and Judge of the Nuisances without appeal. All Letters of Ennobling, Legitimation and Donation from the King must be registered in their Office. The Places that these Generalities are held in, will be seen in the following Description of the Country.

The *Election* is a subordinate Court to the Generality. It is composed of several Persons who compute the Proportion that every Parish in their Division must raise of the Sum demanded by the Generality, and send out their Orders to the Parishes accordingly, where the Inhabitants chuse one, who proportions it exactly among them, and collects it. This Court judges small Causes relating to the Imposts and Taxes.

For administering Justice and punishing Criminals, there are certain Officers and Magistrates in every considerable Town (who are commonly Lawyers) appointed by the King; they have different Titles, being in some places called *Bailiffs*, in others *Provosts*, and in others *Seneschals*, but their Power and Duty is much the same. The pursuing and seizing of Criminal belongs to them: They have Power also

to punish them, as the Law directs, which they did formerly definitively, but since so many Parliaments have been instituted, Appeals are admitted to the Parliament from their Sentence, The District over which they have the Care is called a *Bailliage*, *Provostie* or *Seneschausee*.

There are also in some Places Officers call'd *Intendants*; these are men of the Law, whom the King sends into the Provinces or Generalities to give Orders in extraordinary Affairs. There are *Intendants de la Justice*, *Police* and *Finance*. They are also called Commissioners of *Paris* for executing the King's Orders in such or such a Generality.

There are a multitude of other Courts and Officers in *France*, too many to describe here; what is said is enough to give the Reader a general Idea of the Government, and to explain the Terms of Generality, Election, &c. which often occur in the ensuing Description of the Kingdom.

The TAXES paid by the Common People of *France* are very large. Those that are constant, besides the extraordinary ones in time of War, are of Six sorts, viz. 1. *Tailles*, a Sum yearly paid by every Householder, according to his Substance, and Family; granted by the Three Estates. 2. *Taillons*, paid by the same Persons as the *Taille*, and amounts to about one third of that; this was first imposed by Henry II. 1549. 3. *Subsistence-Money*, a Duty imposed by this present King for the Subsistence of the Soldiers in Winter, for which the Subject is excused from Free Quarter: It is paid in the same manner as the other two. These Taxes are paid by the Third Estate only, the Nobility and Clergy being exempt. 4. The Customs upon merchandise imported and exported. The *Gabel*, or Excise upon Salt, which is very high, and the People forc'd to take a certain quantity yearly, proportionate to their Family, and pay the Duty whether they can consume it or no. 6. Smaller Excises, Farms and other Demesns of the Crown, to the number of 26; all which raise a vast Sum.

The whole Revenue of the King of *France* in time of Peace hath been computed to amount to more than 150 Millions of Livres, or 11 Millions and 375 thousand Pounds Sterling *per Annum*.

The Accounts in *France* are kept in Crowns, Livres, Solz and Deniers; 12 Deniers make a Sol or *Seu*, 20 Solz a Livre or *Florin*, 3 Livres or 60 Solz make a Crown. A French Crown is of equal Value with Four Shillings and six Pence English; an English Crown yields in *France* 65 Solz; a Pound Sterling yields 13 Livres, and an English Guinea piece of Gold 14 Livres. The other Monies of *France* are a *Double*, which is two Deniers; a *Liard*, the fourth part of a Sol, Pieces of  $3\frac{1}{2}$  and 5 Solz, the quarter and the half Crown. the two Livre piece. And of Gold, the *Crown*, value 5 Livres 14 Solz, *Lys de Or* value 7 Livres 10 Solz, the *half Louis*, the *whole Louis d'Or*, value 11 Livres, *double Louis*, &c.

## S E C T. V.

### *The Archbishopricks, Bishopricks, and Universities of France.*

FOR the Government of the Church, *France* is divided into 18 Archbishopricks, and 109 Bishopricks, viz.

I. Archbishop of *Lyons*, Count and Primate of *France*, hath



hath Suffragans, the Bishops of 1 *Autun*, 2 *Langres*, 3 *Macon*, and 4 *Challon*.

II. The Archbishop of *Sens*, Primate of *France* and *Germany*; Suffragans, the Bishops of 1 *Trois*, 2 *Auxerre*, and 3 *Nevers*.

III. The Archbishop of *Paris*, Duke and Peer; Suffragans, the Bishops of 1 *Chartres*, 2 *Orleans*, and 3 *Meaux*.

IV. The Archbishop of *Reims*, Duke and Peer, Legat of the Holy See; Suffragans, the Bishops of 1 *Soissons*, 2 *Laon*, 3 *Chaalons*, 4. *Noyon*, 5 *Beauvais*, 6 *Amiens*, 7 *Scutis*, and 8 *Boulogne*.

V. The Archbishop of *Rouen*, Primate of *Normandy*; Suffragans, the Bishop of 1 *Bayeux*, 2 *Eureux*, 3 *Auranches*, 4 *Seez*, 5 *Lysieux*, 6.  *Coutances*.

VI. The Archbishop of *Tours*; Suffragans, the Bishops of 1 *Mans*, 2 *Angers*, 3 *Rennes*, 4 *Nantes*, 5 *Courcennaille*, or *Quimper*, 6 *Vannes*, 7 *St. Malo*, 8 *S. Brieux*, 9 *Treguier*, 10 *S. Pol de Leon*, 11 *Dol*.

VII. The Archbishop of *Bourges*; Suffragans, the Bishops of 1 *Clermont*, 2 *Limoges*, 3 *St. Flour*, 4 *le Puy*, 5 *Tulle*.

VIII. The Archbishop of *Alby*; Suffragans, the Bishops of 1 *Castres*, 2 *Mende*, 3 *Rodez*, 4 *Cahors*, 5 *Vabors*.

IX. The Archbishop of *Bordeaux*; Suffragans, the Bishops of 1 *Poitiers*, 2 *Sainctes*, 3 *Angoulesme*, 4 *Perigieux*, 5 *Agen*, 6 *Cendern*, 7 *Sarlat*, 8 *Rochele*, 9 *Lucan*.

X. The Archbishop of *Auch*; Suffragans, the Bishops of 1 *Acqs*, 2 *Aire*, 3 *Bazas*, 4 *Bayonne*, 5 *Comminges*, 6 *Conserans*, 7 *Lectoure*, 8 *Lefchar*, 9 *Oleron*, 10 *Tarbes*, 11 *St. Leger*.

XI. The Archbishop of *Tolouse*; Suffragans, the Bishops of 1 *Pamieres*, 2 *Mirepoix*, 3 *Montauban*, 4 *Lavaur*, 5. *S. Papoul*, 6. *Lombez*, 7 *Rieux*.

XII. The Archbishop of *Narbonne*; Suffragans, the Bishops of 1 *Carcassone*, 2 *Alet*, 3 *Beziers*, 4 *Adge*, 5 *Lodeve*, 6 *Montpellier*, 7 *Nismes*, 8 *Usetz*, 9 *S. Pons* and 10 *Perpignan*.

XIII. The Archbishop of *Arles*, Prince of *Salon*, and *Mont-Dragon*; Suffragans, the Bishops of 1 *Marseilles*, 2 *Orange*, 3 *S. Paul des trois Chateaux*, 4 *St. Toulon*.

XIV. The Archbishop of *Aix in Provence*; Suffragans, the Bishops of 1 *Apt*, 2 *Riez*, 3 *Frejus*, 4 *Gap*, 5 *Sisteron*.

XV. The Archbishop of *Vienne in Dauphine*, Count and Primate; Suffragans, the Bishops of 1 *Valence*, 2 *Die*, 3 *Grenoble*, 4 *Viviers*; as also the Bishop of *Geneva*, and the Bishop of *Maurienne in Savoy*.

XVI. The Archbishop of *Bezancon*; Suffragans, the Bishop of *Belly in Beugey*, together with the Bishops of *Basil* and *Lausanne in Switzerland*.

XVII. The Archbishop of *Ambrun*; Suffragans, the Bishops of 1 *Digne*, 2 *Glandeve*, 3 *Vence*, 4 *Senex*, 5 *Grace*, and the Bishop of *Nice in Savoy*.

XVIII. The Archbishop of *Cambray in French-Flanders*; Suffragans, the Bishops of 1 *Arras*, 2 *Tournay*, 3 *S. Omar*, 4 *Namur*.

In the *French Conquests* are five other Bishops, who are Suffragans to Archbishops of other Nations, viz.

The Bishop of *Strasburgh* to the Archbishop of *Mentz*.

The Bishop of *Mets*, *Toul*, and *Verdun*, to the Archbishop of *Spiers*, and the Bishop of *Hellene in Roussillon*, to the Archbishop of *Tarragone in Spain*.

These Prelates enjoy very large Revenues, and have under their Care above Thirty Thousand Parishes, and a vast number of Monasteries, which are all very richly endowed.

For the Propagation of Learning, there are Twenty one Universities established in *France*, viz.

At *Paris*.

*Toulouse in Languedoc*.

*Bordeaux in Guienne*.

*Poitiers in Poictu*.

*Orleans*.

*Bourges in Berry*.

*Angers in Anjou*.

*Caen in Normandy*.

*Montpellier in Langued*.

*Cahors in Quercy*.

*Nantes in Bretagne*.

*Reims in Champaigne*.

*Valence in Dauphine*.

*Aix in Provence*.

At *Avignon* in the

County of *Avignon*,

*Pont a Mauson in Lorraine*.

*Perpignan in Roussillon*.

*Douay in Flanders*.

*Dole in the County of*

*Burgundy*,

*Friburg in Brisgau*,

*Orange in that Principality*.

*Arles*, an Academy.

## S E C T. VI.

*Of the Extents of the French Dominions, and the Acquisitions of the present King.*

Great part of the present Dominions of this Monarchy, were formerly divided among many Princes. *Normandy*, *Aquitain* and *Anjou*, were for some time subject to the Kings of *England*. *Bretagne* was subject to its own Dukes, till *A. D.* 1484. The Dukes of *Burgundy* were powerful Princes for many Ages, and Lords of great part of the Netherlands, besides the *Burgundies*, till *A. D.* 1476, *Charles* the warlike, being kill'd in Battel by the *Switzers*, *Lewis XI.* seized the *Dutchy of Burgundy*: But that Family enjoyed the Earldom till the present King took it from the King of *Spain*, *A. D.* 1668. but being obliged to restore it at the Treaty of *Aix la Chapelle*, he retook it, *A. D.* 1674. and both the *Burgundies* are now reckoned part of *France*.

Many little Principalities and Lordships were made Hereditary to certain Families, by *Hugh Capet*, which in time fell again to the Crown, as will be seen in the ensuing Description; and when the present King came to the Crown, he was in a manner the only Sovereign, very few of those Princes then remaining, and those that were, in time he found means to deprive of their Royalties, and render himself absolute, and sole Monarch of *France*.

Besides which, he hath encroached upon his Neighbours on every side, and hath made himself Master of the Province of *Artois*, great part of the Provinces of *Flanders*, *Hainault*, and *Aisatia*, the County of *Burgundy* abovementioned, &c. except what are restored by the late Treaty at *Riswick*.

But the Reader may be better informed herein by the following Accounts of the Treaties of the *Pyrenees*, *Aix la Chapelle*; *Nimeguen* and *Riswick*, viz.

By the Peace concluded in the Island of *Pheasants*, near the *Pyrenean Mountains*, *A. D.* 1659, these Towns were granted to the French King, viz. In *Artois*, *Arras*, *Hesden*, *Bapaume*, *Bethune*, *Lilars*, *Lens* County of *St. Pol*, *Terouane*, and all the Bailiwicks and Castleries of *Artois*, except *St. Omer*, *Aire*, and their Dependencies; also *Renty*, if in the dependance of *Aire*, else not. In *Flanders*; *Graveline*, *Pas*, *Fort St. Philip*, with the *Sluce*, *Hannuin*, *Bourburg*, *St. Venant*. In *Hainault*; *Landrecy* and *Quefncy*, with all their Bailiwicks and dependencies, *Marienburg* and *Philipville*, in Exchange for *la Bassée* and *St. Winoburgh*, *Avenne*. In *Luxemburg*; *Thionville*, *Montmidi*, and *Damvilliers* the Provostships of *Ivoy*, *Chavancy*, *Morville*, *Recroy le*



*Chatelet*, and *Linchamp*: So much of the Counties of *Rouffillon*, *Conflent*, and *Cataluna*, as lie on this Side the *Pyrenees*; all the rest of those Counties, together with the Principality of *Cataluna*, being restored to the *Spaniards*. The Upper and Lower *Alsacia*; *Strasbourg*, the County of *Ferrette* and *Brisac*, with its Dependencies, were also granted to the *French*.

The Duke of *Lorraine* by this Treaty was restored to his Dominions, except *Münster*. But the *French* King prevail'd upon him to make a Donation of them to him at his Death; by the Pretence whereof, when that Duke died, *A. 1673*. the *French* entered upon them, and kept out his Nephew the late Duke of *Lorraine*. Afterwards at the Treaty of *Nimeguen*, at the Instance of the Emperor, the Dutchy of *Lorraine* was offer'd to be restor'd to him, but with Condition, That the *French* King still keep the City of *Nancy* and its Jurisdiction, and also have four Roads thro' his Country, of half a League in breadth from *Nancy*, viz. Into *Alsace*; to *Vesout* in the *Franche Comte*; to *Metz*, and to *St. Dizier* in *Champagne*, together with the Sovereignty of all the Boroughs and Villages which lie in the said Roads of half a League's breadth; as also the Provostship of *Langui*, and its Dependencies, for which he was to exchange another Provostship of like Value; by which means the *French* retain'd half *Lorraine*, besides all the Dutchy of *Bar*, the County of *Clermont*, and other Dominions of that Prince. But these Conditions were look'd upon by the young Duke as too hard, especially since the *French* King had promis'd him his whole Country; so that after much time in endeavouring to obtain better Terms, the Peace was concluded without including him; and the *French* possessed the whole Country, till the late Treaty of *Ryswick*, whereby the present Duke was restor'd to the Royalty of his Ancestors: As is more particularly express'd here-under in the Account of that Treaty.

By the Peace of *Aix la Chapelle*, or *Aken*, in the Dutchy of *Fuliers* in *Germany*, *A. D. 1668*, it was agreed,

That the *French* King should enjoy the Fortresses of *Charleroy*, the Towns of *Binch*, *Aeth*, *Doway*, *Tournay*, *Oudenard*, *Lisle*, *Armentiers*, *Courtray*, *Bergues* and *Furnes*, and the whole Extent of their Territories, with the entire Sovereignty thereof.

By the Peace concluded at *Nimeguen* with the King of *Spain*, *A. 1678*, the *Franche Comte*, or County of *Burgundy*, with all the Towns and Places thereon depending, was granted to the *French* King; as also the Towns of *Valencienres* and *Bouchain*, with their Dependencies; the Town and County of *Cambrai*, *Air*, *St. Omer*, *Menin*, *Comde*, and *Ypres*, and their Dependencies; *Wierwick* and *Werneton* on the *Lys*; *Peperinghen*, *Basileul*, *Mont Cassel*, *Bavay*, and *Meulenge*, with their Dependencies; And also the Town of *Dinant*.

And by the same Treaty the *French* restored these Towns, viz.

*Charleroy*, *Ghent*, *Oudenard*, *Courtray*, *Binch*, *Aeth*, *St. Ghislain*, *Lewe*, *Limburgh*, and its Dutchy; the County of *Wes*, and all the Dependencies of every of them in the *Netherlands*; and *Puicerda* in *Cerdagne*, on the Frontiers of *Catalonia*, to the *Spaniards*. And to the *Dutch*, *Maastricht*.

And by the Treaty with the Emperor at the same Place, *A. 1679*,

The Town and Citadel of *Friburgh* in *Brissgau*, with the Villages of *Lehn*, *Matbausen*, and *Kirkzart*, and their Liberties, as also a Passage from *Brisac* to *Friburgh*, were granted to the *French*; and in return, *Philipsburgh* was restored to the Bishop of *Spiers*.

Soon after this Peace, viz. *A. 1680*, the *French* took *Strasbourg*, which they still hold, together with the greatest part of its Bishoprick.

And *A. 1684*, they took the City of *Luxembourg*, and a great part of that Dutchy.

And once more this Monarch for his Glory, kindled the Flame of War in *Europe*, which he began by the Siege of *Philipsburgh* in the Month of *September*, 1688, and took it on the first of *November* following. And afterwards his Armies ravag'd and destroy'd the *Palatinate*, took and destroy'd the Cities of *Heidelberg*, *Spiers* and *Wormes*. And in the *Netherlands* they took the Cities of *Mons* and *Namur*, and the Fortresses of *Charleroy*: And in *Savoy*, *Nissa*, *Suse*, *Montmellian*, and *Villa Franca*. In *Catalonia*, *Barcelona*, &c. But *Namur* was retaken by the Confederate Army, under the Conduct of his Majesty King *William*, and all the rest were restored, together with many other Cities and Places of Consequence, by the Peace concluded at *Ryswick* in *Holland*, *September 20*, 1697; wherein it was agreed,

That to the Empire shall be restored all Places possessed by the *French* in *Germany*, out of *Alsacia*, without Demolition, and with the Artillery in them when taken: Particularly, *Triers* and *Spiers* with all their Dependencies. The *Palatinate* to be restored, and the Dutchess of *Orleans* to receive two hundred thousand *French* Livres per annum 'till her Pretensions be adjusted. *Friburgh*, *Brisac*, *Philipsburgh*, to be restored with all their Dependencies, Fortifications, and Artillery. *Dinant* to be restored, as when taken, to the Bishop of *Liege*. *Sponheim*, *Veldents*, and *Deux-Ponts*, with the Artillery, to the King of *Sweden*. *Montbeliard* to the Family of *Wurtemberg*. The Fort of *Kiel* restored, and those of *Pille*, *Hummingen* with the Bridge, *Montroyal*, *Kembourgh*, and *Ebernbourgh* demolished. *Trarbach* restored, but dismantled.

On the other side, *Strasbourg* was absolutely surrendered to *France*.

To the Duke of *Lorraine* was restored all the Estates which his Uncle was possessed of in the Year 1670, with these Exceptions, *Sar Louis* with half a League round it to remain to *France*, as also the City *Longui* with its Dependencies. *Nancy* and the Castles of *Bisich* and *Hombourg*, to be dismantled: And a Passage permitted to the King of *France's* Soldiers thro' *Lorraine*, in the common Road, paying for what they take, and observing strict Discipline.

To *Spain* was restored *Barcelona*, *Gironne*, *Roses*, *Belver*, and every Place taken by the *French* in *Catalonia*. *Luxembourg* with its Fortifications, together with the whole Dutchy, and the County of *Chiny*. *Charleroy* and *Mons* with the Fortifications. *Aeth* with all its Dependencies, except some few Boroughs. *Courtray* with all its Dependencies and Artillery. And in general all Places taken by the *French* since the Treaty of *Nimeguen* in all the Provinces of the *Netherlands* are restored.

The *French* have also Dominions in *America*; as, *Canada*, or *New-France*, upon the Continent; also Colonies in *New-found-land*, *Martinico*, *St. Christopher's*, and other Islands, &c.



## The Division of *France*.

**T**HIS Kingdom is divided into Twelve Governments, Four of which lye to the North, Four in the middle, and Four to the South, *viz.*

To the North, NORMANDY, PICARDY, the ISLE of FRANCE and CHAMPAIGNE.

In the Middle, BRETAGNE, ORLEANNOIS, BURGUNDY and LYONNOIS.

To the South, GUIENNE, LANGUEDOC, DAUPHINE and PROVENCE.

The Sub-divisions whereof are as follows, *viz.*

Nor-mandy is divided into 7 Dio-cesses.	Diocess of Rou-en in 4 Counties	Vexin-Normand Rouanois Caux Bray	Orlean-nois in- to 14 Coun-tries	Orleannois Proper La Beauce Blaisois Perche La Maine Vendomois Anjou Poictou The Country of <i>Annis</i> . Angoumois Touraine Gatinois. Berri Nevernois The Islands.	Lan-guedoc into 11.	Touloufan Albigcois Lauragais Country of Foix Roussillon Quarter of Narbonne Besiers Nismes Cevennes into 3 Vivarais Givauden Velay
	Diocess of	Lysieux Bayeux Coutance Auranches Secz Eureux				
Picar-dy into seven Coun-tries.		Amienois Ponthieu Boulannois Santerre Vermandois Tiarache Pays re conquis	Bur-gundy into 2.		Dau-phine into 9.	Gresivaudan Diois Baronies Gapencois Ambrunois Brianconnois Viennois Valentinois Tricastin
The Isle of France into 10.		Isle of France, Properly so called. Brie Francoise Hurepois Gatinois Mantois. Vexin Francois Beauvaisis Valois Soissonois Laonnois.	Lionnois into 6 Coun-tries.	The Dutchy into 13 Counties. Auxois Auxerrois Charolois Briennois Macannois Bresse Bugey Bailliage of Gex Princ. of Dombes Bailliage of Dole Amont Aval.	Pro-vence into 13 Diocess- es, 1 Prin- cipal- ity, 1 Country and 4 Islands.	Diocess of Aix Riez Senez Digne Arles Marseille Toulon Frejus Grace Vence Glandeve Sisteron Apt County of Venaissin. Principality of Orange
				The County into 3.		
Cham- paigne into 8 Coun-tries.		Champaigne Proper Remois Perthois Rhetelois Vallage Bassigni Senonois Brie Champenoise	Guien-ne into 19.	Lionnois Proper Forets Beaujolois Bourbonnois Auvergne La Marche	Islands.	Of Martegue in 4. Martegue prop. Pomeguc Pauler Passou
Bre- taigne into 2 parts.	The Upper into 5 bishop-ricks.	Rennes Nantes St. Malo Dol Brieux	The Islands of	Guienne Proper Bazadois Agenois Condomois Saintoigne Perigord Limosin Quercy Rovergne Gascogne Prop. or Chalosse Armagnac The Landes Terre de Labour The lower Navarre Vicounty of Soule Bearn Bigorre Cominge Conserans	Lerin into 2.	Stecca- des or Hy- eres into 5. Ribaudon Ribaudas Titan Porqueyroles Portecros
	The Lower into 4	Treguier S. Paul de Leon. Quimper coretin Vannes.				
The Islands of		Ouessant Belle Isle.				Chateau Dis;



## CHAP. II.

## NORMANDY, Normania.

**T**HIS Province was under the *Romans*, part of the *Lugdunensis* in *Gallia Ceirica*; and when reduc'd by the French, was part of their Kingdom called *Neustria*; to which also *Picardy*, *Champagne*, and part of the *Belgium* belonged. But this part was ravined from them by some of those Northern People, that for many years infested all the Coasts hereabouts, and in the Reign of *Charles the Simple*, forced him to grant it to them: After which it was called *NORMANDY*, and Govern'd by its own Dukes descending from *Rollo*, who were powerful Princes, and often maintained Wars with the King of *France*. Of these *William*, surnamed the Bastard, invaded *England*, upon a right he pretended to that Crown after the Death of *Edward the Confessor*; and by his Valour defeated *Harold* who had Usurped the Crown; and by his prudent Management obtained the Government, and Reigned Twenty years King of *England*. Afterwards this Province was part of the *English* Dominions for several Ages, the History whereof is too long for this place. At present it is one of the most important Governments of *France*, affording a large Revenue to the Prince by reason of its situation on the Sea-coasts, and the fruitfulness of its Soil.

It is bounded on the North and West by the *British* Chanel, on the East by the *Ile of France*, and on the South by *Perche* and *Maine*, being extended from East to West for the space of about 160 Miles, viz. from *Aumale* to the Coasts of *Constantin*; and about 70 Miles from South to North. The Country abounds in good Pastures, and is extremely fertile in Corn and Flax and divers sorts of Fruits, affording great Quantities of Canvass, Cyder, and Beer, but little Wine. There are also Mines of Iron, together with some of Copper and other Metals. Moreover, a considerable Traffick is established in these parts, for Corn, Timber, Coal, Hay, Cattle, and Herbs proper for Dying, as Madder, Woad, &c. Within the Territories of this Government are contained 100 Cities and Towns, 150 large Burghs, and 120 Forests; as also, one Archbishoprick, 6 Suffragan Bishopricks, one University, and one Court of Parliament. It is water'd with 12 principal Rivers, viz. the *Siene*, *Eure*, *Bresle*, *Toque*, *Dive*, *Orne*, *Vire*, *Selune*, *See*, *Soule*, *Orce*, and *Eu*.

*Normandy* is usually divided into the Upper and Lower, the former comprehending four Bailliages, viz. those of *Rouen*, *Eureux*, *Caux*, *Gisors*. And the Lower Three, namely those of *Caen*, *Alençon*, and *Constance*. But we shall distinguish this Province into the Seven Diocesses, which are of *Rouen*, *Lysieux*, *Bayeux*, *Constance*, *Auranches*, *Seez*, and *Eureux*. The four first are situated on the Coasts of the English Chanel, in passing from East to West; the three other lie to the South of these, and are seen in returning from West to East; according to the order of the ensuing Table.

The Diocess of <i>Rouen</i> Archbishoprick divided into four Countries, viz. those of	{	<i>Vexin Normand</i> on	<i>Rouen</i>
		the banks of the	<i>Gisors</i>
		<i>Seine</i> , divided	<i>Port de l'Arche</i>
		into these Parts,	
		<i>Rochemoult</i> ,	
		<i>Caux</i> .	
		<i>Bayeux</i> .	

The Diocess of *Lysieux*, B.  
*Bayeux*, B.  
*Constance*, B.  
*Auranches*, B.  
*Seez*, B.  
*Eureux*.

**ROUEN** or **ROAN**, *Rotomagus* or *Ro-homagus*: the Metropolis of the Province, and Seat of an Archbishop, as also of a Court of Parliament, is seated on the North-side of the River *Seine*, in a valley environ'd with Hills and covered with Woods. It is a very considerable City, both on the Account of the Wealth of its Inhabitants and its Largeness, being extended for the space of seven Miles in compass. The Eastern-side is water'd with divers Rivulets, which passing through the Town cleanse the Streets, and after having turn'd a great Number of Water-mills fall into the *Seine*: Over that River was erected a most stately Stone-bridge consisting of 13 Arches, but it is now ruined, and another of Boats of very artificial Structure, built near it, reaching 270 Paces in length; it rises with the Tide, and is paved like a Street. The City is defended with an old Castle on the *Seine* but that which stood on the adjacent Hill of *St. Catharine*, is now utterly ruin'd. It hath also good Walls, (in which are 16 Gates) large Ditches, Bulwarks, and Ramparts; It is enlarged with six very fair Suburbs, and hath in it 13 Market-places, 136 Fountains, and 35 Parish-Churches, and adorn'd with many noble Piles of Building; and among others the Cathedral Church, dedicated to the Virgin *Mary*, the Quire whereof is lined round about with Copper: It hath Three Towers of a vast height, particularly that of *Reuce*, and that of the Pyramid; the Spire of which Steeple only (being made of Wood and cover'd with gilt Lead) hath 200 Steps, and the whole Edifice above 600. The great Bell in it, called *George d'Amboise*, is 13 Foot high, and weighs 40000 pound: On the great Gate is a Triumphal Arch in Honour of King *Henry IV.* with Emblems of his Conquest over the Holy League: The Body of the Church is supported by 21 Pillars, in which, and in the Chapels, are to be seen the magnificent Tombs of Cardinal *d'Amboise*, and of the Ancient Dukes and Archbishops; as also, the Monument of *John Duke of Bedford*, who was Regent of *France* under our King *Henry VI.* The other remarkable Buildings are, the Convent of the Cordeliers, the Church of the Jesuits, the old Palace or Castle, the Church and Abbey of *St. Ouen*, and the Palace of the Parliament, which are very beautiful Structures. Also, the Archbishop's Palace, call'd *Gaillon*, is a fair Building, adorn'd with fine Paintings and pleasant Gardens.

*Rouen* hath suffered many Calamities and Revolutions, it hath been almost entirely burnt at 13 or 14 several times; was taken by the *Normans*, A. C. 841. the English made themselves Masters thereof in 1418 and in 1449. it was surrender'd to the French King *Charles VII.* Afterwards it was storm'd and taken by the French Protestants, and retaken and pillaged under *Charles IX.* Anno 1562. Anthony of Bourbon.

King



King of Navarre, received a mortal Wound before it, but his Son Henry IV. took it in 1594, King William I. surnamed the Conqueror died here. It is distant 30 Miles from *Eureux*, to the North; 30 from *Diepe* to the South; near 40 from *Beauvais* to the West; 55 from *Amiens* to the South-west, 64 from *Paris* to the North-west, and 52 from *Havre de Grace*.

*Pont de L'arche*, *Pons Arcis*, or *Pons Arcuensis*, is a strong place seated a little below the confluence of the Rivers *Seine* and the *Eure*, and 10 Miles above *Rouen* to the South toward *Eureux*. It is strengthen'd with a Castle, and hath a fair Stone-bridge over the *Seine* built by King *Charles* the Bald. This was the first Town that surrender'd it self to *Henry IV.* after his Accession to the Crown, in 1589. It is a place of Importance, and hath a particular Governour.

*Gisors*, *Gisrium*, *Cesfortium*, aut *Cesfortotium*, stands on the Banks of the River *Esle*, which divides *Normandy* from the Isle of *France*, and is fenced with a Fort now half ruin'd; it is the Capital of a Bailliage, and is distant 40 Miles from *Paris* to the North-west, 30 from *Rouen* to the East.

In the Territory of the *ROUMOIS* are situated some small Towns and Villages, particularly *Quiellebeuf*, at the Mouth of the River *Seine*, and 30 Miles from *Rouen* to the West, and *Montfort*; but neither of these are places very considerable.

The Country of *CAUX* lies to the North part of the *Vexin Normand*, taking up the North East part of *Normandy* on the North side of the *Seine*, and including a Bailliage of Parliament, together with these principal Towns, viz.

*Diepe.*  
*Havre de Grace.*  
*Caudebec.*

} *St. Valery.*  
} *Eu.*  
} *Aumale.*

*Diepe*, *Deppa*, and *Depa*, is a noted Sea-port Town on the Shore of the British Sea, at the distance of 30 Miles from *Rouen* to the North, and 42 from *Havre de Grace* to the North East. It is seated at the foot of the Mountains, and at the Mouth of the River *Arques*, which falling into the Sea makes the Haven; it is fortified with Bulwarks to the Sea, with a Fortrefs at the Suburb called *Polter*, and a Castle; which, together with the craggy Mountains that lie on the South make it a place of good strength; and as such it was chosen by King *Henry IV.* for his Head Quarters when he was opposed by the League at his Accession to the Crown. The Town is reasonably large and well built, and is inhabited by Sea-faring Men, who are reckon'd very expert in Maritime-Affairs: Mechanics, that make curious Works in Ivory, and Merchants, who make considerable Traffick to foreign Parts, especially *Newfoundland* in *America*. Its Inhabitants were mostly Protestants till the late Persecution. The Haven is narrow but very long, and will receive Ships of great Burthen; but by reason of its straits, is of difficult Access. This Town hath been often taken and retaken in the Wars between the French and English. And in the year 1694. was almost totally destroyed by the Bombs that were shot into it from the English Fleet commanded by the Lord *Berkely*.

*Havre de Grace*, *Portus Gratia*, is a strong Scaport Town at the Mouth of the *Seine*, 40 Miles from *Rouen* to the West, 40 from *Caen* to the North East, and 20 from *Lisieux* to the North. It is a pleasant and well-built Town, and a place of good Trade, several Merchants inhabiting here that Trade to *Newfound-*

*land* and other places. *Francis I.* and *Henry II.* fortified this Town to defend it from the Incursions of the English; to which *Lewis XIII.* added a Citadel, which is flanked with Four Royal Bastions. In the Reign of *Charles IX.* it was seized by the Protestants, and by them delivered over to Queen *Elizabeth* in 1562. for the Assistance she gave them. But the next Year it was vigorously besieged by the French, and as courageously defended by the English under the Earl of *Warwick*; but by reason of a Pestilence in the Town, they were forced to surrender on the 17th of July 1563. and returned home. This Town also was almost wholly destroyed by the Fire of the English Bombs the same year, 1694.

*Harfleur*, a small Sea-port Town, stands also at the Mouth of the *Seine*, five Miles from *Havre de Grace* to the East. It was once a considerable Port, but *Havre de Grace* being found more convenient, that is now neglected.

*Caudebec*, *Caledbecum*, is seated near the Bar or Mouth of *Seine*, where that River meets the Seawater, 24 Miles below *Rouen* towards *Havre de Grace*. It is remarkable on the Account of its divers sorts of Manufactures, especially Hats, which bear the Name of the place, and are much esteem'd in *England* and elsewhere.

*Eu*, *Auga seu Augum* & *Eufium*, is seated in the midst of pleasant Meadows, and on the Banks of the River *Brele* which separates *Normandy* from *Picardy*, between *Diepe* and *S. Valery*, at the distance of one League from the Sea, 15 Miles from *Diepe* to the North East, and 15 from *Abbeville* to the West. It is adorned with a stately Castle, an Abbey and a College of Jesuits; it gives Title to a Count and Peet of *France*, which hath been enjoy'd by several Illustrious Families.

*S. Valery*, *Fanum Sancti Valerii*, stands on the Coasts of the British Sea, between *Soreville* and *Veuleres*, 30 Miles from *Rouen* to the North, and 14 from *Diepe* to the North West.

*Aumale*, *Albamala*, called *Albermarie* by the English, stands near the Spring-head of the River *Ruffine* in the Frontiers of *Picardy*, and enjoys the Titles of a County and Duchy: It is distant 36 Miles from *Rouen* to the N. E. 20 from *Abbeville* to the South, and 23 from *Beauvais* to the North.

Near *Caudebec* stands the Village *Tvetot*, which hath the Title of a Principality, and as some say, formerly a Kingdom. *Longueville* 10 Miles South from *Diepe*, and *Estourville* 15 Miles from *Longueville* gave the Titles of Duke to two Peers of *France*, but otherwise not considerable.

The County of *BRAT* lies also on the right side of the River *Seine*, and contains these Towns, viz.

*Gournay*, *Fleri*, *la Ferte*, &c.

*Gournay*, *Gornacum*, is a small Town on the River *Epte*, distant 12 Miles from *Gisors* to the North.

The Diocess of *LISIEUX* lies between those of *Rouen*, *Eureux*, and *Seez*, and the Ocean, on the South side of the *Seine*.

*Lisieux* Bish.  
*Honfleur*.

} *Pont-l' Eveque.*  
} *Bernay*, &c.

*Lisieux* *Lexovium* or *Noviomagus Lexoviorum* a fair and large City, being the See of a Prelate Suffragan to the Archbishop of *Rouen*, is situated in a very beautiful Country in the Upper *Normandy*, and on the Banks of the River *Lizen*, at the distance of



of 15 Miles from the Coasts of the British Chanel to the South, 46 from *Rouen* to the West, and 35 from *Caen* to the East. The Cathedral Church is dedicated to *St. Peter*. This See is of ancient Foundation, for *Leobardus* Bishop of *Lysieux* is found among the Bishops that assisted at the first Council of *Orleans*, held *A. D.* 511. as did also *Theobald* at the Third Council of *Orleans* in 538.

*Honfleur*, *Honfloriam*, stands on the Coasts of the British Sea, at the Mouth of the River *Seine*, over-against *Havfleur*, from whence it is distant 8 miles to the South, as also 5 from *Havre de Grace*.

*Pont L'evêque*, *Ponts Episcopi*, is Watered by the small River of *Lezon*, 8 miles below *Lysieux* to the North, and 5 from the Sea. This Town is more especially famous for a sort of excellent Cheese made in it.

*Berne*, *Bernescum*, is built on the side of the Rivulet of *Carentonne*, almost in the midst, between *Eureux* to the East, and *Lysieux* to the West, at the distance of 25 miles from both these Towns, and 26 from *Cauter* to the South.

The Diocess of *BAYEUX*, lies between the Ocean and those of *Coutance*, *Seez* and *Lysieux*, including these chief Towns, viz.

<i>Bayeux</i> Bish.	} {	17.
<i>Caen</i> .		

*Bayeux*, *Baioca*, *Baicum* and *Baiocensis Urbis*, olim *Biducassell*, *Biducassum* and *Juliobona*, is Seated on the River *Aure*, which a little below is swallow'd up under Ground. It is distant 15 miles from *Caen* to the West, 35 from *Coutance* to the N. E. and but 5 from the Shore of the *British* Sea to the South. It is a very ancient City, dignified with the Title of a County, Bailliage, and Episcopal See; and its Bishop presides in the General Assemblies of the Clergy of the Province, during the Absence of the Archbishop of *Rouen*. The Cathedral Church Dedicated to the Virgin *Mary*, is extremely Magnificent, and Beautified with two high Spire-Steeple, besides a stately Tower. The City is divided into the Upper, and the Lower, or the Suburbs of *St. John*; whereto are joyned those of *St. George* and *St. Patrick*. It hath been often Pillag'd and Ruin'd in the X and XI Centuries, by the Incurfions of the *Normans*, and other barbarous Nations.

*CAEN*, *Cadmus*, or *Cadomum*, is a large and well built City in the lower *Normandy*, having received its Name (according to the Opinion of some Authors) from *Caius Cesar*, as the Latin word *Cadomus*, *Caii Domus*, seems to import, in regard this Emperor resided here for some time, whilst he made preparations to pass into *Britain*. It is situated on the River *Orne*, and divided by its streams into the upper and lower Towns, between which there is a Communication, by the means of the Bridges of *St. James* and *St. Peter*, on the latter whereof is erected a stately Town-House, adorn'd with four large Towers. The upper Town is fenced with a Castle built on a Rock, very well fortified; the lower altogether encompassed with Water. It is a place of good Trade, Boats of good Burden being able to come up from the Sea to the Bridge of *St. James*. King *Charles VII.* Founded an University here, *A. D.* 1430, or 1431 which is become Famous; also a Mint-Office about the same time. An Academy of Ingenious Men hath been Established here about twenty five years ago. It is believed that the second Council which *Maurice* Archbishop of *Rouen* Celebrated, in 1063, was held at

*Caen* in the presence of *William*, surnamed the Conqueror, King of *England*, and Duke of *Normandy*, who was interr'd in the Abby of *St. Stephen* in this City, which he had founded. It is distant 74 miles from *Rouen*, and 30 from *Lysieux* to the West, and 15 from *Bayeux* to the East.

*Vire*, *Vira*, is a very neat Town, Founded on the Banks of a small River of the same Name, about 33 Miles from *Caen* to the South-West, and as many from the Coast of the *British* Sea to the South.

*Torigni*, *Toriniacum*, *Tauriniacum*, is a small Town near the same River of *Vire*, being distant 15 Miles from that Town to the North, and 33 from *Coutance* to the East.

The Diocess of *COUTANCE* lies in the lower *Normandy*, between *Bayeux*, *Auranches*, and the Western Ocean: The Principal Towns whereof are these, viz.

<i>Coutance</i> Bish.	} {	<i>Barfleur</i> .	
<i>S. Lo</i> .			<i>Cherbourg</i> .
<i>Granville</i> .			<i>Valogne</i> .
<i>Carentain</i> .			

*Coutance*, or *Constance*, *Castra Constantia*, or *Consedia*, the Metropolis of the Country called from thence *Le Coutantin*, is a Bailliage, a Presidial, and the See of a Bishop Suffragan to *Rouen*, seated on the River *Burd*, at the distance of 7 miles from the Sea over against the Isle of *Jersey* to the East; and 52 miles from *Caen* to the West. The Aqueducts found in the Adjacent Territories of this City are a sufficient Mark of its Antiquity; and the pleasant Meadows watered with a great number of Brooks, with which it is encompassed, render its Situation very delightful. It is pretty large and populous, and adorn'd with many stately Edifices, particularly the Cathedral Church, the Churches of *St. Peter* and *St. Nicholas*, divers Monasteries, and a College Founded by *John Michael*, a Canon of this Diocess. King *Lewis XI.* caused the Walls of *Coutance* to be demolish'd, because the Inhabitants had declared in favour of Prince *Charles* his Brother; and under the same Reign it was expoied to the Incurfions of the *Britons*. It suffered much likewise during the *English* Wars; and was taken by the French Protestants, *A. D.* 1562.

*Granville*, *Grandivilla*, or *Magnavilla*, a good Seaport, stands partly on a Rock, partly in a plain, on the Sea-Coasts, 6 Leagues from the Island of *Jersey*; as also 16 miles from *Coutance*, to the South.

*Carentan*, *Carentonium*, is built in a Marshy Ground on the side of the River *Orne*, where it receives the *Carentan* or *Carente*, being distant 25 miles from *Bayeux*, to the W. 20 from *Coutance* to the N. and only 3 from the Sea; insomuch, that the Vessels of the largest size arrive there at high Tides. It hath large Suburbs, a strong Castle, and firm Walls, and environed with Ditches full of Water. This Town bears the Title of a County, and hath been Subject to divers Revolutions in the preceeding Age.

*Cherbourg*, *Careburgus*, or *Cesaris Burgus*, is seated on the Sea-coasts between the Cape *La Hogue* and *Barfleur*, and hath a very capacious Harbour, at the distance of 32 miles from *Coutance* to the N. and 24 from *Carentan* to the N. W. In this place was formerly made admirable Glass, which for clearness and beauty even excell'd that of *Venice*; but the Work-houses have been lately remov'd for certain reasons of State, to *Auxerre* in *Burgundy*, and these Glasses are polish'd in the *Fauxbourg* *St. Antoine* at *Paris*. The Town of *Cherbourg* was the last of the Province



Province that remained to the *English*, and fell into the Hands of the *French* under *Charles VII.* in 1453. It is very strong by reason of its Situation, (the Sea flowing almost round it every Tide) and its Fortifications lately erected.

*Valognes*, *Valonia*, olim *Alaune*, is a small Town on the River *Oue*, in the Country of *Contantin*, being distant 10 miles from the Coasts of the British Sea, 14 from *Ch. burgh*, to the East, and 30 from *Contance* to the North.

*Barfleur*, a small Town on the Sea-shoar, 10 miles from *Valognes* to the North. It was formerly the Landing place of our Kings that were masters of that Province. And hath of late been made known by a very signal Victory the English Fleet, commanded by Admiral *Ruffel*, obtained over that of *France* commanded by *Tourville*, May, 1692.

*La Hogue*, a small Sea Town on the Northwest point of *Normandy*, thence called *Cape la Hogue*, hath been made notable to Posterity by the bravery of the English Seamen, who after the above mentioned Victory in 1692, attack'd and burnt the French Admiral, call'd the *Royal Sun*, (a very glorious and large Ship) and twelve more of their best and largest Men of War; which had been run aground here to avoid the English Fleet, and the Cannon carried ashore and planted upon the Plat-forms for their defence; notwithstanding which the English under Sir *Ralph Delaval*, did in their Boats burn them all as abovesaid. This Cape is about 15 miles North-West from *Cherbourg*.

The Diocess of *AURANCHES* lies between those of *Contance*, *Bayeux* and *Seez* in the South west parts of the lower *Normandy*. Its most remarkable Towns are these.

*Auranches* Bish. } } *Mortain*.  
Mont St. Michael. } } Pont Orson.

*Auranches*, *Abrincæ*, olim *Legedia* and *Ingena Abrincaturum*, stands upon a hill on the side of the River *See*, which a little below falls into the Sea, being distant 22 miles from *Contance* to the South, and 50 from *Bayeux* to the S. W. It is a place of very great Antiquity, and (as 'tis supposed) was inhabited by the *Ambialites*, a People mentioned by *Cæsar* in his Commentaries. Its extent is not very large, but it is however a Bailiwick and Vicounty, and hath in it besides the Cathedral, several Parish Churches, and Monasteries. It is well fortified with a strong Castle and other Bulwarks, *Theodia* and *Albert*, Cardinals and Legats of the See of *Rome*, held a Council or Assembly in this City by the special Order of Pope *Alexander III.* to take information concerning the Murderers of *Thomas a Becket* Archbishop of *Canterbury*; and *Henry II.* King of *England* was thereupon oblig'd to clear himself by an Oath from the Accusations laid to his charge. The Bishoprick was erected by *Clovis* the Great.

Mont St. Michael, *Mons Sancti Michaelis in periculo Maris*, is a Town, together with a famous Abby, defended by a strong Castle, built at the foot of a Rock, the Seat of certain Hermits. This Rock stands a League from the main Land in the midst of a large sandy Shoar, or Strand, which is covered with the Sea-water at high tide. There goes a fabulous Story that St. Michael the Arch-Angel appeared A. D. 708 to *Albert* Bishop of *Auranche*, admonishing him to cause a Church to be erected on the top of this Rock, and consecrated to his Name, whose Orders were soon put in execution by the Reverend Prelate, and

*Augustin* Bishop of the same Diocess in the beginning of the VIII. Century, constituted Canons to Officers therein; afterwards, viz. in 966 *Richard I.* Duke of *Normandy*, founded an Abby of the *Benedictine* Order; and his Son *Richard* the II. finished the Church in 1026. This place is famous for the frequent resort of Pilgrims, and on the account of the great quantities of Salt extracted out of the Sands that are impregnated with Sea-water.

*Mortain*, *Moritanium* is seated near the River *Aidee*, on the Frontiers of the Province of *Mayne*, being about 7 miles distant from thence, and 20 from *Auranches* to the East. This Town is the Seat of a Bailiff, and enjoys the Title of a County or Earldom which *Henry I.* King of *England* and Duke of *Normandy*, granted to his Nephew *Stephen* of *Blois*, who obtain'd also that of *Bolen*, by his Marriage with *Maud* the Daughter of *Eustace* Earl of *Bolen*, and was afterwards King of *England*.

*Pont-Orson*, *Pons Ursonis*, stands on the Frontiers of *Britaigne*, near the mouth of the River *Covesnon*, which a little below dischargeth it self into the Sea, 16 miles from *Auranches* to the South-west.

The Diocess of *SEEZ* is extended between those of *Auranches*, *Bayeux* and *Lysieux*, toward the Southern part of *Normandy*, and contains these principal Towns, viz.

*Seez* Bish. } } *Falaize*,  
*Alencon*, } } *Argentan*.

*Seez*, *Sagium*, olim *Sessui* and *Vagoricum Sessuorum*, seated on the River *Orne*, near its Source, is but an ordinary built City, although dignified with the Title of an Episcopal Sec, which (as some Authors say) was translated hither from *Oximum* or *Hiesmes*, an adjacent Town of great Antiquity, *Seez* is distant 64 miles from *Rhoan* to the S. W. 37 from *Lysieux* to the S. 70 from *Auranches* to the E. and 12 from the Frontiers of *Mayne*.

*Alencon*, *Alenconium*, or *Alentia*, is pleasantly seated on the River *Sarte*, in a fruitful Plain between the Forests of *Escours* and *Perseigne*, at the distance of 13 miles from *Seez* to the S. W. and 66 from *Auranches* to the E. It is a very fair and large City, having long since enjoy'd the Title of an Earldom, which was erected into a Dutchy by *Charles VI.* 1414. and hath been often conferr'd on the Royal Progeny of *France*: In the principal Church dedicated to the Virgin *Mary*, are to be seen the Tombs of the Dukes of *Alencon*, and not far from thence a stately Bridge erected over the *Sarte*, where it intermixeth its Waters with those of the *Briane* and forms a small Island in the Town, whereon stands the Convent of St. *Claire*. This City hath been often taken by different Parties, and suffered much damage during the Civil Wars of *France*.

*Falaize*, *Falesia*, or *Falefa*, a small Town of the Lower *Normandy*, took its name from the Rocks that environ it, and is situated on the little River *Anne*, at the distance of 18 miles from *Caen* to the South, and 34 from *Seez* to the North West. The first Dukes of *Normandy* chose it for their Palace in the time of Peace, and Fortrefs during the Wars. Here is a strong Castle built upon a Rock. It was the last place which the English subdued in this Province and was by them exceeding well fortified; and the last in like manner that surrendred to *Charles VII.* in 1430. The Suburbs called *La Guibray*, are famous for the Fairs that have been held there in the Month of *August*, ever since the Reign of *William* the Conqueror. The Town is encompassed with large Moats



Moats and two Ponds, one of which can never be dried up; and not far from thence stands Mount *Aricen*, whence Birds of Prey are often taken, and sometimes Eagles.

*Argentum, Argentum, Argentanum, Argentomacum*, and *Argentomagus*, is a very near Town on the River *Orne*, distant about 10 miles from *Falaise* to the S. E. 12 from *Serz* to N. W. and 20 from *Alencon* to the North.

The Diocels of *EURÉUX* lies between those of *Serz*, *Roan*, and *Lysieux*, and is to the South East part of *Normandy*. The most considerable Towns whereof are these, viz.

*Eureux*, Bish. } *Bayes*.  
*Beaumont le Roger*. } *Vernon*.  
*Brezeuil*.

*Eureux*, *Ebroicum*, olim *Ebroica*, and *Mediolanum Ebroicisum*, is seated in a very fertile Plain in the upper *Normandy*, and on the side of the Rivulet *Iton*, which a little below falls into the *Eure*, being distant 30 miles from *Roan* to the S. 45 from *Serz* to the E. and 54 from *Paris* to the W. It is a very ancient City; and an Episcopal See hath been long since establish'd therein; besides a Bailiage and a Court Prefidial. It contains a great number of Churches and Monasteries, more especially the Cathedral, adorn'd with twelve large Towers, and the Abbies of *S. Thurin* and *S. Saviour*. This City hath been formerly subject to the Jurisdiction of its own Counts or Earls, Princes of the Royal Blood, and other Potent Lords, from whom were descended *Walter* and *Robert D' Eureux*, Earls of *Essex* in *England*, &c.

*Beaumont le Roger*, *Bellomontium Rogerij*, stands on a rising ground, 15 miles from *Eureux* to the N. W. towards *Lysieux*, and is water'd by the River *Rille*. This Town bears the Title of a County or Earldom, and hath been govern'd by very noble Lords, of whom Earl *Roger* gave his a name to it, and caus'd it to be enlarged and beautified with a great many fair Buildings; since when it has been well fortified.

*Brezeuil*, *Bretolium* and *Britolium*, stands near the River *Iton*, about 12 miles from *Eureux* to the West. *Henry II.* King of *England* and Duke of *Normandy*, gave this Town to *Robert de Montford*; and his Sister *Anicia* sold it to the French King *Philip* the August, A. D. 1210. Afterward it devolv'd as an Inheritance on *Charles* King of *Navarre*, who exchange'd it for some other Possessions with *Charles VII.* in 1416.

*Vernon*, *Vernonium*, and *Verno*, is seated on the River *Seyne*, over which is erected a Stone-bridge, now half demolish'd; distant 26 miles from *Roan* to the South, and 16 from *Eureux* to the North-east.

For the Government of this Province the King appoints a Governour or Commander in general, and under him, two Lieutenant-Generals; besides which he hath a Lieutenant in every one of the seven Bailiwicks, and particular Governours in all the chief

Towns, viz. In *Roan*, *Pont de l'Arche*, *Diep* and the Fort of *Pollet*, *Fecan*, *Honfleur*, *Pont-Eveque*, *Caen*, *Cherbourg*, *Carentan* and the Bridge *Pouvre*, *Coutance*, *Granville*, *Mont St. Michael*, *Falaise*, *Argentan*, *Alencon*, *Havre de Grace*, *Monticillers* and *Honfleur*.

### A Chronological TABLE shewing the Succession of the Dukes of Normandy.

	Began their Reigns, A. D.	reig. Y.
1 <i>Rollo</i> , called also <i>Robert I.</i>	912	
2 <i>William</i> , surnamed <i>Longsword</i>	917	21
3 <i>Richard I.</i> the Old or void of Fear	943	53 or 54
4 <i>Richard II.</i> the Undaunted	996	about 30
5 <i>Richard III.</i>	1026	
6 <i>Robert II.</i>	1028	
7 <i>William</i> the Conqueror K. of Engl.	1035	51
8 <i>Robert III.</i>	1087	21
9 <i>William II.</i> Rufus, King of England, slain in	1100	
10 <i>Henry I.</i> King of England	1107	21
11 <i>Stephen</i> King of England	1135	
<i>Maud</i> of England, died in	1167	
<i>Geoffry V.</i> Earl of <i>Anjou</i> , the Husband of <i>Maud</i> ,		
12 <i>Henry II.</i> King of England	1154	31
<i>Henry</i> the younger, surnamed <i>Courtmantle</i>	1161	
Died before his Father	1183	
23 <i>Richard IV.</i> Surnamed <i>Cœur de Lyon</i>	1189	11
14 <i>John</i> King of England, who was Dispossessed of <i>Normandy</i> by <i>Philip II.</i> King of France, in	1202	
And died in	1216	
After this, <i>Normandy</i> was united to the Crown of France, and the Title of it was given to		
15 <i>John</i> of <i>Valois</i> , afterwards King of France, who held it from	1332	23
And to		
16 <i>Charles V.</i> of France in the Life of his Father	1355	
But these enjoy'd the Title only, for it was not alienated till it was regained by the English under our Valiant King <i>Henry V.</i> A. D. 1420. which was 218 years after it was seiz'd by the French; but the English held it not long, for by reason of our unhappy Divisions at home in the unfortunate Reign of <i>Henry VI.</i> this Province was again taken by the French, 30 years after we had regain'd it.		
Afterwards the Title of Duke of <i>Normandy</i> , was given to		
17 <i>Charles</i> , Son of <i>Charles VII.</i> and Brother to <i>Lewis XI.</i> in Anno	1464	
But he parted with it quickly after for that of <i>Guienne</i> ; and ever since it has been no other than a Province of France.		



## CHAP. III.

## PICARDY, Picardia.

PICARDY was part of the ancient *Gallia Belgica*, and inhabited by *Suessones*, &c. But the Original of its present Name, although Modern, is difficult to find out; there is little Reason to believe that it was deriv'd from certain *Picards* of *Bohemia*, who were declared Hereticks; nor from a Greek Word, the Signification whereof is conformable to the hasty and pettish Humour of the Inhabitants.

This Province is the most Northern of all *France*, and is extended along the Banks of the *British* Channel from *Calais* in a narrow Tract of Land to the River *Brele*, which separates it from *Normandy*; from thence being much wider, it goes directly West for near 110 Miles, where it is bounded by the Northern Part of *Champagne*. Its whole Length may be reckon'd 140 Miles, for from *Calais* to *Abbeville* is about 54 Miles, and from thence to the Borders of *Champagne* is about 90 Miles, but then the Breadth is not answerable, for in the broadest Part it is not above 35 Miles, and in the *Bolonnois* not above 15 Miles broad. On the South is bounded by the *Isle of France*, and on the North by *Artois* and *Hainault*.

Picardy is esteem'd one of the most considerable Provinces of the Kingdom, and is remarkable on account of the most ancient Nobility of the Realm, who derive their Original from thence, besides a great Number of valiant Soldiers and experienc'd Commanders; the People are very Generous, Courteous, Civil, and Courageous, yet somewhat too much enclined to Anger and Voluptuousness. The Soil is extremely fertil in Corn and diverse sorts of Fruits, which hath given Occasion to a Saying among the *French*, That *Picardy* is the Granary and Magazine of *Paris*; but this Country affords very little Wine. Its principal River is the *Oise*, which receives into its Chanel the Streams of the *Serre*, the *Somme*, the *Authie* and *Canche*. The two former of these flow towards the East, and the three others towards the West, until they discharge themselves into the *British* Chanel, near the Territories of *Calais*. It is observed, That the Waters of the *Somme* never freeze nor diminish, as do those of the other neighbouring Rivers.

For the Administration of Justice, here are many Bailiages, Presidials, and other Courts of Judicature that depend on the Jurisdiction of the Parliament of *Paris*. The Towns are govern'd by Mayors and Sheriffs; besides the General Governor, there are Eighteen particular Ones. The Bishopricks in *Picardy* are Four, which are subject to the Metropolitane See of *Rheims*. This Province was never alienated from the Demesnes of the Crown, and is usually divided into three Parts, viz. The Upper *Picardy*, the Middle, and the Lower, according to the following Table.

Picardy is divided into three Parts.	The Upper on the <i>Oise</i> in 3 Parts,	The Dutchy of <i>Tierache</i> , Laonnois, Soissonnois.	These two last are annex'd to the <i>Isle of France</i> .
	The Middle on the <i>Somme</i> , in 3	Vermandois, The Country of <i>Santerre</i> or <i>Sangters</i> , Amiennois.	
	The Lower on the Sea-coasts, in 3	Ponthieu, Beaulonnois, The recover'd Countries.	

The Dutchy of *TIERACHE*, *Tieracheia*, is the most Eastern Part of *Picardy*, and lies between *Hainault*, *Champagne*, *Vermandois*, and *Laonnois*, and includes within its Precincts these remarkable Towns, viz.

Guise, La Fere, Vervins, Marle,	}	La Chapelle, Ribermont, Moncornet, Aubenton.

*Guise*, *Guisia*, and *Guisium Castrum*, seated on the River *Oise*, towards the Confines of *Hainault*, is well fortified with a Castle and other strong Ramparts, and was strong enough to oppose the *Spaniards*, who besieged it in the Year 1650. It is distant 80 Miles from *Paris*, to the North-east, 48 from *Amiens* to the East, and 25 from *Cambray* to the South-east. This Town at first bore the Title of an Earldom only, enjoy'd by the younger House of *Lorraine*; till A. D. 528, *Claude*, the younger Son of *Rene*, Duke of *Lorraine*, was created Duke of *Guise*, by *Francis I.* whose Grandson, *Henry* Duke of *Guise*, made himself Head of the Holy League, which under the Pretence of Religion and Extirpation of Heresie, as they call'd Protestantcy, fomented Sedition, and at length took up Arms, and maintain'd a Rebellion against *Henry III.* and *Henry IV.* making *France* a Scene of War and Bloodshed for many Years; till at last *Henry IV.* by his victorious Arms, brought them to Submission, and restored the Peace of his Country.

*La Fere*, *Fara*, is situated also on the *Oise*, near the Borders of the *Isle of France*, at the Distance of 20 Miles from *Guise* to the South, and 15 from *Laon* to the West. It is a strong Place, seated in a marshy Ground, and defended by a strong Castle, which stands between the two Suburbs of *St. Firmin* and the *Virgin Mary*, and deep Trenches full of Water, which renders the Place almost inaccessible; by which means it hath been able to resist diverse Sieges. However, the *Spaniards* made themselves Masters of it during the civil Wars of *France*, in the end of the XVIth Century. But *Henry IV.* regained it in the Month of May, 1597.

*Vervins*, *Vervineum*, stands on the Banks of the Rivulet *Serre*, in the midst between *Chapelle* to the North, and *Marle* to the South, at the Distance of 8 Miles

L from



from both these Towns; as many from the Frontiers of *Compeigne* to the West, and 15 Miles from *Guise* to the East. This Town is more especially Famous for a Treaty of Peace concluded therein between *Henry IV.* King of *France*, and *Philip II.* King of *Spain*, on the 2d Day of *May*, 1598.

*La Chapelle*, is a Fortrefs near the Confines of *Hainault*, and is distant about 3 Miles from the *Oise*, 15 Miles from *Landrechies* to the South-east, and 15 from *Guise* to the North-east. It was built in the last Age, on purpose to restrain the Incursions of the *Flemings*, and hath been often taken and re-taken by the contending Parties.

The Countries of *Leemais* and *Seiffenois*, being taken from *Picardy*, and made part of the *Ile* of *France*, an Account shall be given of them in the Description of that Province.

The Country of *VERMANDOIS*, *Ager Vermandensis*, lies between that of *Tierache* to the East, *Santerre* to the West, *Cambresis* to the North, and the *Ile* of *France* to the South, containing these chief Towns, viz.

St. Quintin,	}	Beaurevoir,
Ham,		
La Caslelet,		Bechain.

*St. Quintin*, *Quintinopolis*, or *Fanum Quintini*, is seated on the rising Ground near the Source of the *Somme*, having the River on one side, and a steep Valley on the other, 15 Miles from *Guise* to the West, and 15 from *la Fere* to the North. It sprang up out of the Ruins of *Augusta Vermandurum*, or *Vermand*, a small Village near it, and is now a considerable City, being very populous, and hath diverse sorts of Manufactures, especially Linen Cloth, made in it. The Collegiate Church of *St. Quintin*, is a noble Pile of Building; there are also other fair and well-built Churches, and a great Number of Monasteries. This Town being besieged by the *Spaniards*, in 1557, the Constable *Montmorancy* came to its Relief, and fought a fatal Battle with the *Spaniards*, wherein the Constable was taken Prisoner, together with the Dukes of *Montpensier* and *Lengueville*, the Marechal de *St. Andre*, 10 Knights of the Order, and 300 Gentlemen; besides 600 Gentlemen and 3000 private Soldiers killed. Upon which the City was taken, but restored two Years after at the Peace concluded at *Chateau Cambresis*, a Town near the Frontiers of *Hainault*.

*Ham*, *Hamum*, is situated in a Plain, having the River on one side of it, and a Marsh on the other, and stands 12 Miles from *St. Quintin* to the West. Here is a Citadel which was built by Order of *Lewis* of *Luxembourg*, or Constable de *St. Paul*, A. D. 1470. This Town was taken by the *Spaniards*, in 1595, after the Battle of *St. Quintin*; but the *French* took it again by Storm, and put the whole Garrison to the Sword.

*SANTERRE*, or *Sangers*, *Ager Sancterriensis*, or *Sanguiterfa*, is extended between *Amienois* on the West, and *Vermandois* on the East. The most considerable Towns of this Country are these, viz.

<i>Peronne</i> ,	}	<i>Nesle</i> ,
<i>Mont-Didier</i> ,		<i>Breteil</i> ,
<i>Roye</i> ,		<i>Chaumes</i> ,
<i>Mercuil</i> ,		<i>St. Just</i> .

*Peronne*, *Perona*, seated on the River *Somme*, is a very strong Hold, and one of the Keys of the

Kingdom of *France*: The *Spaniards* have often endeavoured to surprize it, but the Marshes that encompass it, and the Ramparts that defend it, rendering it exceeding strong, they have always been repulsed. It is distant 15 Miles from *St. Quintin* to the West, 20 from *Cambrai* to the South, and 75 from *Paris* to the North, on the Road to *Dowry*.

*Mont-Didier*, *Mons Desiderii*, or *Mondiderium*, is a large Town, built on a Hill in the midst between *Amiens* and *Compeigne*, at the Distance of 20 Miles from both, 24 Miles from *Peronne* to the South-west upon a small River which falls into the *Aurenge*, that falls into the *Somme* at *Amiens*. It is a strong Town, and has often resisted the *Spaniards*.

*Nesle*, *Nizella*, is water'd with the Brook *Ignen*, which falls into the *Somme*. It stands upon the Road 15 Miles South from *Peronne*. It is a small Town that bears the Title of one of the most ancient Marquisates of the Kingdom. *Charles* the Warlike, Duke of *Burgundy*, took this Place by Storm, in 1472, when it suffer'd all sorts of Outrages, by reason that the Inhabitants had killed a Herald at Arms, who had been sent to summon it and two of his Men, during a Truce which had been granted to them, insomuch that the Altars were not able to protect the miserable People that fled for Refuge into the Churches; and they that escaped the Fury of the Soldiers, were either hang'd, or had their Hands cut off.

*Roye*, stands on the River *Aurenge*, 10 Miles South from *Nesle*, more considerable for its Antiquity than present State.

*Chaumes*, *Celviacum*, situated in the midway between *Amiens* and *St. Quintin*, and 7 Miles from *Peronne* to the South-west, is a small Town, nevertheless dignified with the Title of a Duchy, &c.

*AMIENOIS*, *Ager Ambianensis*, lies between *Artois* to the North, *Santerre* to the East, *Beauvaisis* to the South, and the Country of *Caux* to the West. The Towns of chiefest Note are these, viz.

<i>Amiens</i> , Bish.	}	<i>Pequigne</i> ,
<i>Corbie</i> ,		
<i>Dourlans</i> ,		<i>Centi</i> .

*Amiens*, *Ambienum*, or *Amviani*, and *Samarobrina*, the Metropolis of *Picardy*, and the See of a Prelate Suffragan to the Archbishop of *Rheims*, is situated on the River *Somme*, forming a Triangle with *Paris* and *Roan*, being distant 66 Miles from *Paris*, and 55 from *Roan*, as also 30 from *Arras* to the South, and 24 from *Peronne* to the West. It is a Place of very great Antiquity, the Inhabitants having fought most resolutely against *Julius Caesar*, and even took up Arms against those of *Rheims*, only because they had too easily yielded to the Conqueror. Afterward *Caesar* erected a Magazine for his Army, and caused a general Assembly of the *Gaulish* People to be conven'd there. The Emperor *Antoninus Pius* enlarg'd it, as also did his Son *Marcus Aurelius*. The Emperors *Constantine*, *Constant*, *Julian*, *Valentinian*, *Valens*, *Gratian*, and *Theodosius*, chose *Amiens* for their Royal Seat in *Gaul*. However it suffered much Damage by the Incursions of the *Alans*, *Vandals*, and *Normans*, A. C. 925, and was almost entirely burnt, but soon after re-built. The City affords a very pleasant Prospect, by reason of the Largeness of the Streets, the Beauty of the Houses, and the Extent of the publick Places, of which there are two, where seven fair Streets meet; the Ramparts have two Rows of Trees planted on them, which form a delightful Walk. The River *Somme* enters into the City in three different Cannels thro' as many Bridges, and after having water'd several Parts of



of the City, they are united at the other end of the Town, near St. Michael's Bridge. The Cathedral Church dedicated to the Virgin Mary, is one of the rarest and best adorn'd in France: The Pillars, Quire, Chapels, Tombs and Paintings are admirable, and more-especially the Gate flanked with two high Towers, on which are placed many Statues. King Philip VI. of Valois first fortified this City, which Lewis XI. much improv'd by additional Works, and Henry IV. built a strong Citadel after he had retaken it from the Spaniards, who had seized it by Stratagem in 1597. Queen Isabel of Bavaria establish'd a Parliament there, but that was afterwards remov'd. At present it has a Bailiwick, Presidial, Generality, and the Bishop, Vidame, and Bailly, are after the King, the three chief Lords.

*Corbie, Corbie*, is likewise seated on the River Somme, which there intermixeth its waters with those of the Oise, 7 miles above Amiens to the North-east, and 20 from Peronne to the West. It is a strong Place, but was however surpriz'd by the Spaniards in 1636, and recover'd by the French a little while after. This Town grew up out of an Abby which St. Berthilde Queen of France, the Wife of Clovis II. found-ed together with her Son Clovis III. A.C. 660. It is called *O'l Corbie*, to distinguish it from *Corbie* or *Cer-mey*, a small Town of *Westphalia* in Germany.

*Doulens, Duldium*, is a very strong Town divided into the Upper and Lower, and Water'd by the River Authie on the Frontiers of Artois, being distant 20 miles from Arras to the S. West, and 18 from Amiens to the North. It heretofore belong'd to the Counts of Ponthieu, but was annex'd to the Crown in 1559.

*Conty, Contiacum*, is a small Burg on the Rivulet of Celle, about 10 miles from Amiens to the South: dignified with the Title of a Principality, which hath given name to a Branch of the illustrious House of *Bouillon*. It was at first subject to the Dominion of its own Lords, afterwards transferr'd to the Family of *Mailly*, and at length devolv'd on that of the Prince of Bourbon.

The County and Earldom of *PONTIEU*, *Comitatus Pontivensis*, was formerly an Inheritance of the younger Sons of France, and is extended along the Banks of the River Somme, which renders the Ground every where marthy. The principal Towns are these, viz.

<i>Abbeville.</i>	} Rue.		
<i>St. Riquier.</i>		} Montcuil.	
<i>Pont de Remi,</i>			} Cressy.
<i>Le Crotoy,</i>			

*Abbeville, Abbatia Vilia*, or *Abbevilla*, is seated on the River Somme at the distance of 83 miles from Paris to the North, near 40 from Boulogn to the South, 25 from Amiens to the N. West, and 15 from the Coasts of the British Sea to the South East. It is sup-posed to have been founded by S. Riquier, or some of the Abbots his Successors, and that Hugh Duke of France built the Castle. It is at present the Capital City of the County of Ponthieu, and one of the strong-est and most important places of the Kingdom; it hath always enjoyed certain peculiar Privileges. Here is a Presidial Court, a Canonship, 12 Parishes, and many Religious Houses, among which that of S. Ulfran is most considerable. This City hath produc'd many great Men, and in this Age it hath given the World those Learned Geographers, *Nich. Sanson*, *Will. Sanson* his Son, *Peter Duval*, and *Philippus Briccius*.

S. Riquier, *Centula*, now S. *Richarius*, took its name

from a certain Saint who was a Native of this Place; it is near the River *Canche*, and is distant 5 miles from *Abbeville* to the East toward *Deuon*.

*Montreuil, Montreuilan*, or *Montreuilan*, stands on an Hill the Foot whereof is washed by the River *Canche* 8 miles from the Coasts of the British Sea, (from whence Boats of good burden come up to the Town,) 24 from *Arras* to the North, on the Road to *Calis*. Its name is derived from two ancient Abbeys of the *Benedictin* Order, viz. one called S. *Saviour* for Monks, and the other S. *Aspremont* for Nuns. The Town is distinguish'd into the Lower, built along the Banks of the River, and the Upper, which is separated from the former by a Wall. It is the Seat of a Bailly, and was united to the Crown with the County of *Ponthieu*; and is defended by strong Works and a good Citadel.

*Cressy, Cressiacum*, is a small Town or Burgh on the River Authie on the Frontiers of Artois, and the Baili-ge of *Abbeville*, from whence it is distant 12 miles to the North, famous in our Annals on Account of the memorable Battie fought between the English and French in the time of Philip of Valois, on the 26 of August, 1346. wherein the English, under the Conduct of their Valiant King Edward III. and his heroick Son the black Prince, defeated the French with a very great slaughter, and obtain'd a most signal Victory; for 30000 of the French Infantry, and 1200 Horse were slain in the Field, among whom were John King of Bohemia, Charles Count of Alencon, the French King's Brother, and Lewis Count of Flanders, together with 12 other illustrious Counts and Earls, and even the whole Flower of the Nobles of France. There is also another Town of *Cressy* in the same Province of Picardy, on the River Somme in the County of Tierache, 8 miles from Laon to the North, and as many from Fere to the East, besides a third in *Champaign*, within three Leagues of Meaux, called *Crecy* or *Cressy* in *Brie*, &c.

*BOULONNOIS. Comitatus Boloniensis*, is extended between Artois, the County of Ponthieu, the recovered Country, and the strait of Calis, including these principal Towns, &c. viz,

<i>Bolon, Cap. Bish.</i>	} {	<i>Etaples,</i>
<i>Moni-Hulin,</i>		<i>Ambleteuse.</i>

*Boulon, or Bolen, Bolonia, Gessariacum*, is situated on the Sea shore at the distance of 20 miles from the Town of Calais to the South, 10 Leagues from the near-est Coasts of England, 15 miles from *Montreuil*, and 36 from *Abbeville* to the North. It is divided into the Upper and Lower Town, the former being well fortified with a strong Citadel, and adorned with divers publick Places and Fountains, as also a Palace wherein Justice is administred; a Cathedral Church dedicated to the Virgin Mary, a Parochial Church of S. Joseph, an Abby of S. *Vilemar*, and some other Monasteries. The lower Town is not inhabited by so many Persons of Quality as the other, but is larger and more considerable for its Traffick, and extends along the Port at the mouth of the River *Liane*. The Harbour is not very commodious; in it formerly stood a Watch-Tower, called *La Tour de Oudre*, and by the English, *The Old Man*, said to be built by Julius Caesar, and repair'd by the Emperor *Charle the Great*; but being neglected, is now fallen down. The Episcopal See, under the Metropolitan of Rheims, was establish'd here by Pope Paul IV. after the destruction of *Tre-guier*. This City, together with the



adjacent Territories, was formerly subject to the Dominion of its own Counts of great Reputation, from whom were descended *Godfrey of Boulogne*, and his Brother *Baldwin*, Kings of *Jerusalem*, but it was united to the Crown of *France* by King *Philip II.* the *August*, A. D. 1209. *Belen* was taken by King *Henry VIII.* King of *England*, in 1544. and afterward restor'd to the French King *Henry II.* by Treaty of Peace in the year 1550.

*Mont Hulin*, *Mont-Hulini*, is a Fortress standing on a Hill near the River *Liane* on the borders of *Artois*; it has a Citadel which was built against the *Spaniards*, and is distant 9 miles from *Belen* to the East.

*Estaples*, *Staples*, a large Burgh, is fenced with an old Castle, and stands near the Sea a little above the mouth of the River *Canche*, 6 miles from *Monstreuil*, and 14 from *Belen* to the South.

*Ambleteuse*, *Ambleteuse*, is a Village having a small Port on the Coasts of the British Channel heretofore called *Amflet*; it is distant only 7 miles from *Belen* to the North, and about 12 from *Calis* to the South.

THE RECOVER'D COUNTRIES, *Recuperata Disio*, is a small Tract not above 15 miles over, and lies to the North of *Belen*, containing these Towns, viz.

*Calais*, *Guifnes*. *Ardres*, Principality.

*CALAIS* or *CALIS*, *Calietum*, is seated in a marshy Plain on the Coasts of the British narrow Sea, called from thence the strait of *Calais*, at the distance of 9 miles from *Gravelin*, and the confines of *Flanders* to the West, 20 from *Belen* to the North, and about 8 leagues from *Dover*, and the nearest shoar of *England* to the South-west. It is reported that *Baldwin IV.* surnamed the bearded Count of *Flanders*, first built the Port, and that *Philip* Count of *Belen* caus'd the Town to be encompass'd with Walls, which before was only a simple Burgh. However, it is at present a considerable Mart and a place of strength, its Fortifications consisting of 9 Royal Bastions, besides those of the Citadel, and many other Out works, all lined with Stone; being also encompass'd with a very large and deep Ditch, into which falls the River *Hames*, as well as a great number of other Brooks, after having pass'd through the adjacent Fens, with which it is surrounded, there being only one passage to the Town over a Causey, commonly called the Bridge of *Nieuilay*, and none can enter without the Permission of

the Garrison of the *Riceland* into the Port, which is divided into two parts; one whereof is named *Cap de Grey*, the other is larger and shut up between two Moles built of Stone. The Town is extended in form of a Triangle, with a Castle: The most remarkable things in it are two stately Towers; the Altar of the Grand Church is all of wrought Marble, and its Dome extremely magnificent. In the Marshes are to be seen floating Islands; and Sluces, by which the Country may be overflow'd within a little space of time. *Edward III.* King of *England* took the Town of *Calais* from the *French*, A. D. 1347. but they at length recover'd it under the Conduct of the Duke of *Guise* in 1558. after the *English* had possess'd it above 210 years. Afterwards *Albert* Archduke of *Austria* and Viceroy of the Low-Countries, made himself master of it in 1596. and it was restor'd two years after to the French King *Henry IV.* by the Articles of the Peace of *Vervins*.

*Guifnes*, *Guifne*, is a small Town, yet the chief of a County of the same name, formerly subject to its own Earls, who are celebrated in History: It is seated in a marshy Ground, and is distant 6 miles from the Sea, as many from *Calais* to the South, and somewhat less from *Ardres*.

*Ardres*, *Ardre*, and *Arda*, is a well fortified Town, and bears the Title of a Principality, altho' of a very small extent; It stands on the Frontiers of *Artois*, about 8 miles from *Calais* to the South, and somewhat more from *Gravelin*. A famous Interview was celebrated near this place, between *Henry VIII.* King of *England*, and *Francis I.* King of *France*, in the Month of *June*, 1520. for the ratifying of a Treaty of Peace. The Attendants of these two Princes were most richly cleath'd, and their Court appear'd so splendid that it was termed the Camp of Cloth of Gold. Cardinal *Albert* of *Austria* took *Ardres* in 1596. but was oblig'd to resign it to the French within a little while after.

The Governor-General of *Picardy* is also Governor of *Artois*, and under him are three Lieutenant Generals. There are also particular Governors in these Towns, viz. *Amiens*, *Abbeville*, *Boulogne*, and the *Boulleinois*, the Town and Castle of *Calais*, with the Fort *Nieuilay* and the recover'd Country. *Dourlans*, *S. Valery* upon the *Somme*, *Guise*, *S. Quintin*, the Bailiage of *Vermandois*, *la Fere*, *Peronne* and *Roye*, *Montdidier*, the Town and Citadel of *Ham*, and the Town and Citadel of *Monstreuil*.

## CHAP. IV.

### CHAMPAGNE, *Campania*.

**C**HAMPAGNE is one of the twelve principal Governments of *France*, and the Province that best furnishes the Granaries and Cellars of *Paris*. It is so called (says *Gregory of Tours*) from the spacious and pleasant Plains which are found therein, more especially near *Rheims* and *Chaalons*. This name is Modern, and the first that hath mention'd it, is the Author of the Continuation of the Chronicle of *Marcellinus*, who is follow'd by the said *Gregory of Tours*, and other Writers. The Country of *Champagne* and *Brie* according to the division of *Julius Caesar*, lies partly in *Celtick* and partly in *Belgick Gaul*, being situated between the 47 degree 30 Minutes, and the 50 degree of Lat-

tude, and extends from *Reziere* in *Senonnois* in the South to *Recroy* in *Rhetelois* in the North, about 150 miles. From West to South-east, that is to say, from *Cressy* in *Brie* near *Mauvais*, as far as *Bomben les Bains*, near the Head of the River *Meuse*, about 120 miles: but in some places its breadth is not above 60 miles from East to West. It is bounded on the North by *Picardy*, *Hainaut* and *Luxemburgh*; on the South by *Burgundy*; on the East by *Lorraine*, and on the West by the Isle of *France*.

This Province was heretofore famous for the Grandeur of its Counts or Earls, who possess'd it as absolute Sovereigns, and were so potent that they maintained



rained fierce Wars against the Kings of *France* and *Burgundy*: They were also so illustrious by reason of their noble Descent, that those Princes have not disdain'd to make Leagues with them, and even to contract Marriages with their Family. In the Division of Inheritances among the Sons of *Covis I.* and *Cletaire I.* *Champagne*, constituted a part of the Kingdom of *Messia Augusta*: And in the time of *Segebert* King of *Messia*, A. C. 570. there was a certain Duke of these Territories, named *Lupus*, who shewed much fidelity in preserving the States of the young King *Childebert*, against *Ursion* and *Be-fey*; *Guintrio* or *Vintrio*, whom *Brunaut* caus'd to be assassinated, was afterwards Duke. But this Title denoted then only a kind of Government, and not a perpetual Dignity. The first Hereditary Count was *Robert* of *Vermandois*, who made himself Master of the City of *Troyes* in 953. and left the possession thereof to his Brother *Herbert*. But in the year 1284. the whole Province was inseparably united to the Crown of *France*; which Act was confirmed by the Treaty of *Laon*, in 1317. and by another ratified on the 14 of *May*, 1335.

Among the principal Rivers are reckon'd the *Seine*, which receives into its Channel the Waters of the *Jem* and the *Aube*, the *Marne*, the *Aisne* and the *Veste*, besides a great number of other small Rivulets that are very full of Fish. The River *Meuse* or *Maes* hath its Source in this Province, but it quickly runs out of it into the County of *Harr*, which it croseth from South to North, and then returns into this Province and passes by *Sedan* and *Charleville*, from whence it runs through the County of *Namur*, Bishoprick of *Liege*, and Dutchy of *Guelderland* into *Holland*, where it falls into the Sea near the *Biel*.

The Soil, although white and chalky, brings forth many sorts of Grains in abundance, particularly Rye. The vast Plains are extreamly fertil in Corn and excellent Grapes, and yield good Pasture for Cattle. On the Northern side also are large Forests, affording variety of Game, together with Mines of Iron and other Metals.

For a more particular description of this Province we will divide it into eight Parts, according to the method of most modern Geographers.

Champagne in 8 Parts.	Champagne prop.	Troyes Bish.
	Rhemis.	Rheims Archbish.
	Partheis.	St. Dizier.
	Rhetelois.	Rhetel.
	Velage.	Joinville.
	Bassigny.	Langres.
	Senonnois.	Sens.
	La Brie Champenoise.	Provins.

In the District of *CHAMPAGNE*, properly so called, are comprehended these most remarkable Towns, viz.

Troyes, Bishop.	{	Chaalons, Bish.
Pont sur Seine.		Espernay.
Mezi.		Ai.
Rameru, or Rameru.		Dormans.
Pianci.		

*Troyes*, *Treca*, anciently *Augusta-bona* and *Ticassis*, is seated on the River *Seine*, at the distance of 80 miles from *Paris* to the South-east, 64 from *Rheims* to the South, and 60 from the source of the *Meuse* to the West. It is a City of very great Antiquity, and is reckon'd among the most considerable of the Kingdom

for Trade, which consists chiefly in Linnen Cloth. It hath been long since dignified with the Title of an Episcopal See, the Jurisdiction whereof is extended over 510 Parishes, and depends on the Metropolitan of *Sens*. Nine or Ten of its Prelates have been canoniz'd for Saints; of these *St. Amatie* was the first, and *S. Lupus* the eighth, who hindred *Attila* from ruining the City; which was nevertheless afterward done by the *Normans*. But Count *Robert* caus'd it to be rebuilt, and it is at present a fair well built City, and adorned with a fine Palace; the Cathedral dedicated to *S. Peter*, is a very stately Structure, in which 40 Canons Officiate. There are also two Collegiate and ten Parochial Churches, besides the Abby of *S. Lupus*, a College of the Fathers of the Oratory, and many other Religious Houses. The City is defended with strong Walls, and the Inhabitants are reckon'd Courageous, and are train'd up in Arms. There is a fine Palace, and a Bailiage and Presidial.

*Pont-sur Seine*, *Pons ad Sequanam*, a small Town so called from its Situation and Bridge over the River *Seine*. It stands 22 miles from *Troyes* to the North-West, and 57 from *Paris*. *Rameru*, *Ramerucum*, stands on the Banks of the *Aube*, 20 Miles North E. from *Troyes*. *Pianci* is in like manner water'd by the same River, and stands 15 miles West from *Rameru*.

*Chaalons*, *Catalaunum*, is seated in a most pleasant Plain on the River *Marne*, over which here are many Bridges, distant 50 miles from *Troyes* to the North, and 80 miles from *Paris* to the East. It is a very ancient, large and well fortified City, and was esteem'd one of the Principal of *Gallia Belgica* in the time of *Julian* the Apostate. It is encompass'd with firm Walls and deep Ditches full of Water. The whole City is divided into three Parts, viz. The City it self; the Island formed in it by the River *Marne*; and the Burrough. The Houses appear very white, being built of chalky Stone, and the Streets are large, the publick Places are fair and spacious, more especially those in which stand the Town-house and Collegiate Church, consecrated to the Virgin *Mary*. This City is the Seat of a Bishop. The Cathedral Church is dedicated to *St. Stephen*, and is remarkable on the account of its Tower extreamly high and large. There are also 12 Parochial Churches, 3 Abbeys, and many other Convents. A considerable Traffick is maintained here, in Linens, Cloth and Corn; which by means of the River are conveniently transported to *Paris*. Here is a Court of Justice and a Generality. This City was sometime govern'd by its own Counts, till they resigned their Right to the Bishop, who is dignified with the Title of Count and Peer of *France*. The Plains about *Chaalons* are judg'd to be the *Campi Catalaunici*, wherein the famous Battle was fought by *Merouee* King of the *Franks*, *Theodorick* King of the *Goths*, and *Aetius* the Roman General, against *Attila* King of the *Huns*, whom they defeated with the slaughter of near 200000 of his Men, as the French Historians relate. But others say it was at *Solegne* near *Orleans*, in the *Campis Cecalaunicis* that this mighty Battel was fought. And again, others say, it was near *Toulouse* in *Languedoc*.

*Espernay*, *Epernacum*, is distant 16 miles from *Chaalons* to the West as well as *Ai*; the former of these Towns standing on the South-side of the River, and the other on the North, over against one another.

*Dormans*, *Dormanum*, stands likewise on the Banks of the *Marne*; 19 miles from *Espernay*, and 36 from *Chaalons* to the West. This Town hath imparted its name to the noble Family of *Dormans*.



**REMOIS, Ager Remensis** lies between *Châlons* to the S. *Reims*, *Reims*, &c. Its principal Towns are these, viz.

*Reims*, Archb. Finis, Metropolis.

**RHEIMS**, *Rems*, anciently *Durocolum* and *Remorum* *Civitas*, is situate in the midst of a Plain, where the River *Seille* waives part of its Walls, which are extended in compass above an Hour's Journey, and enclose a great number of spacious Courts, large Streets, well built Houses, and magnificent Churches; more especially the Cathedral dedicated to the Virgin *Mary*, which is a vast pile of Building, the Gate thereof being esteem'd the most stately throughout the whole Kingdom on account of its admirable Architecture, Images and other curious Ornaments. In this Church the Kings of *France* are usually Crowned, and accompanied by the Archbishop of *Reims*, with a sacred Oil preserv'd in a small Vessel commonly call'd *la sainte Ampoule*, or the Holy Bottle, which as they say, was sent from Heaven at the Inauguration of *Charl. I.* and is kept here in the Abby of *S. Remi*. In this City are established, besides a Metropolitan See, a Prædial Court, another of the Bailage, and an University founded by *Charles* of *Lorraine* Cardinal of *Guise*, with the permission of King *Henry II.* The Archbishops of *Reims* are styled the first Dukes and Peers of *France*; twelve or thirteen of these Prelates have been canonized for Saints; and four of them have been Popes, viz. *Syngeser II.* *Colan II.* *Adrian IV.* *Adrian V.* six Princes have possess'd the See, viz. *Arnold* the Son of King *Lewis I.*, and *Henry* the Son of *Lewis* the Great, and four others of the Royal Blood. Here are to be seen some Monuments of Antiquity, as a Fort of *Julius Cæsar's*, and a Roman Triumphal Arch that is quite entire; It is composed of three Arches, adorned with many Figures and Trophies; supposed to have been formerly the North Gate of the Town, and called *Porta Martia*, but had been covered with Earth for many Ages, and not discover'd till the year 1677. The City of *Reims* is distant 74 miles from *Paris* to the North-East; 66 from *Troyes* to the North; and 24 from *Châlons* to the North-West.

*Fimes*, *Fims*, *Fimsa*, is a Burgh on the River *Seille* in the confines of the *Ile of France* 15 miles from *Reims* to the West. It is more-especially remarkable on the account of two Councils held there in the Church of *S. Meire* the Martyr, *Finibus apud sanctam Mairem*, and for a certain Stone fixed not far from thence, which serves as a Boundary between the Bishopricks of *Reims*, *Leon* and *Soissons*.

**PERTHOIS, Ager Perthenfis**, is extended on the Frontiers of *Lorraine* between the Rivers *Marne* and *Orne*, and contains these considerable Towns viz.

*S. Dizier*, } *Vitry le François*,  
*Sermaise*, } *Harzicourt*.

*S. Dizier*, *Fanum Sancti Desiderii* or *Desideriopoli*, stands on the Banks of the *Marne* 30 miles above *Châlons*, near the Frontiers of the County of *Barr*. It was taken by the Emperor *Charles V.* in 1544. after a very notable Siege, and restored to the *French* at the Peace concluded at *Cresse*.

*Vitry le François*, *Vitriciacum Francicum*, took its Name from King *Francis I.* the Founder thereof who caused it to be built in the room of a Neighbouring Town that was burnt, which is at present called *Vitry le Breuil*. It is seated on the Confluence of the *Marne* and the *Orne*, being distant 18 miles from *Châlons* to the S. E.

**RHETELOIS, Rheselensis Ager**, is the Northern

Part of the Province of *Champagne*, and includes the following Towns or chiefest Note, viz.

*Reims*, } *Reims*,  
*Mezières*, } *Sedan*, &c.  
*Charleville*, }

*Rhetel*, *Retium* or *Reiteste*, is situated near the River *Aisne*, 24 miles from *Reims* to the North; 20 from *Sedan* to the S. W. and as many from *Reims* to the S. in the adjacent Territories of this Town which bear the Title of a Duchy, the *French* obtained a great Victory over the *Spanish* Troops, and the Prince of *Conde*, commanded by the Marshal of *Turenne*, A. D. 1650.

*Mezières*, or *Mesieres*, *Maderiacum* or *Macerie*, is a strong Town, and stands in a Peninsula made by the River *Aisne*, partly on a rising Ground and partly in the Valley, the Citadel being fortified with a double Rampart. It is a Place of great importance, being a Passage from *Luxembourg* into *France*. It is distant 23 miles from *Rhetel* to the North, 15 below *Sedan* to the West; not above 7 from the confines of the Duchy of *Luxembourg*, and 46 from *Reims* to the N. E.

*Charleville*, *Caroleopolis*, is in like manner seated on the *Aisne* just over against *Mezières*, and was formerly only a Burrough call'd *Arches*, where *Charles*, *Gonzague* Duke of *Nevers* and *Mantua* caused a very pleasant Town to be built, A. D. 1609, and gave it his Name. It hath been since regularly fortified, and on the other side of the River is erected the strong Fortress of *Mont-Olympe*, where is to be seen the Ruin of an old Castle, supposed to have been a Temple of the Pagans.

*Rocroy*, *Rupes Regia*, is a very strong Hold near the Forest of *Ardenne* on the Frontiers of *Hainault*, being distant 30 miles from *Rhetel* to the N. and 10 from *Mezières* and *Charleville* to the N. W. The *French* Forces under the Conduct of the Duke of *Anguien*, gained a Battle over the *Spaniards*, and defeated their General *Don Francisco de Mele* near this Town on the 19th day of *March*, 1643.

*Sedan*, *Sedunum*, stands on the East side of the River *Meuse* near the Frontiers of *Luxembourg*, at the distance of 15 miles from *Charleville* to the East, and 25 from *Rhetel* to the North-East. This Town was formerly subject to the Archbishop of *Reims*; by whom it was afterwards granted to the King instead of *Cernegy*. In process of time the *Braquemonts* and *Marcans* became Lords of it, and at length it devolved on the Princes of the Family of *La Tour*: But in the Year 1642 it was united to the Crown by a Compact made with Prince *Friederick Maurice de la Tour d'Auvergne*, Duke of *Bouillon* and Lord of *Sedan*. It is a strong place, being defended with a good Castle and Walls, &c. It was chiefly inhabited by Protestants, who had a famous University here before the late Persecutions.

The County of *PALAGE* lies between those of *Perthois*, and *Bessigni*, and contains these principal Towns, viz.

*Francille*, } *Bar sur-Aube*,  
*Brienne*, } *C. d. Jaux*, Abb. &c.  
*Vignory*, }

*Francille*, *Jovis Villa*, *Francvilla*, aut *Joville*, is a small Town, but dignified with the Title of a Principality, seated on the River *Marne* at the distance of 15 miles from *S. Dizier* to the South, and 43 from *Châlons* to the South-East. This Principality was erect-



erected by King Henry II. A. D. 1552, in Favour of Francis of Lorraine, Duke of Guise, to serve as an Inheritance for the younger Sons of that noble Family, and hath been the Burial-place of diverse of these Dukes. But that which hath made this City most noted, is, that the Holy League, which made so much Disturbance in France, was revived here in the Year, 1584, by the Duke of Guise and his Adherents.

Brienne, *Castrum Briennium*, is a Town of a small Compass, nevertheless honoured with the Title of a County, and stands on the Banks of the Aube, 25 Miles from Joinville to the W. and 21 from Troyes. It was in time past one of the 7 Peerages that were establish'd by the ancient Counts of Champagne, and the Place where the Peers usually held their Assemblies.

Bar-sur-Aube, *Barium ad Albulam*, or *Albam*, is so called from its Situation on the River Aube at the Foot of an Hill in a very pleasant Country, about 36 Miles from Troyes to the E. and 15 from Joinville to the S. W. It is a well-built Town, and famous for its good Wines. It was for some time possess'd by certain particular Counts, but was at last re-united to the Crown at the same time with the rest of Champagne.

Clervaux, or *Clairvaux*, *Claravallis*, is an Abbey of the Cistercian Order, famous for the Conversation of St. Bernard, by whom (as they say) it was Founded, thro' the pious Liberality of Thibault or Theobald III. Count of Champagne, A. D. 1115. It is built in a Valley before call'd, *The Vale of Wormwood*, 14 Miles from the Frontiers of Burgundy, and 5 from Bar-sur-Aube to the South.

BASSIGNI, *Bassiniacus Ager*, lies on the South of Valage, between the Spring-heads of the Marne and the Meuse on the side of Lorraine, containing these most considerable Towns, viz.

Langres, Bish. } } Lusi,  
Chaumont, } } Nogent-le-Roy.

Langres, *Linganes*, or *Andomatunum* is very advantageously situated on a Hill near the Spring-head of the River Marne, at the Distance of 10 Miles from the Confines of Burgundy, 50 from Troyes to the S. E. and 35 from Joinville to the South. It is a very ancient, large and well fortified City, and the See of a Prelate, Suffragan to the Archbishop of Lyons. It was ruin'd by the Vandals in the beginning of the IVth Century, but afterward rebuilt and restor'd to its former Grandeur. The Cathedral Church is dedicated to St. Mammet the Martyr. The Bishop of Langres, who takes place among the six Ecclesiastical Peers of France, bears the Title of Duke, Marquis and Baron, as being both Spiritual and Temporal Lord of these Territories, wherein he constitutes Bailiffs, Judges and other Officers of Justice. Five or six Rivers have their Source in the adjacent Country, which on that Account is suppos'd to be the highest Ground of the whole Kingdom of France.

Chaumont, *Calvomontium*, and *Calvus Mons*, stands on a Hill near the Marne between Joinville and Langres, from whence it is distant 20 Miles, and 15 from Bar-sur-Aube to the E. This Town, which had been before only a Burrough, was enlarged and encompassed with Walls, about the Year 1500. It was govern'd by its own Lords, until it was annexed to the Jurisdiction of the County of Champagne.

SENONNOIS, *Senonensis Ager*, is the South West part of Champagne, lying between Champagne proper, Brie, and Gastinois. This Country is extended 16 Leagues in Length and 8 in Breadth, and includes these principal Towns, viz.

Sens, Archb. } } St. Florentine,  
Pont-sur-Tonne, } } Tonnerre,  
Joigni, } } Chabli.

SENS, *Senones*, or *Agendicum Senonum*, is seated in a verdant Plain on the Confluence of the Seine and the Tonne, over which it hath a Stone-bridge; and is distant 55 Miles from Paris to the South, and 30 from Troyes to the West. It is a very fair City, and without doubt one of the most ancient throughout the whole Kingdom of France. For the *Galli Senonenses* heretofore extended their Conquests very far into Italy and Greece, took Rome, and (as it is generally believ'd) founded Sienna, Senigallia, and some other Towns, which still bear their Name. These Territories, during the second Race of the French Monarchs, were subject to the Jurisdiction of certain particular Counts, until King Robert made himself Master of Sens, A. D. 1005. The City is large and well-built, and water'd with a great Number of Brooks, which run thro' all its Parts, and serve for the Convenience of the Inhabitants. It is the See of an Archbishop, who was formerly Metropolitan of Paris, Orleans, and four other Diocesses; but since Paris hath been erected into an Archbishoprick, he hath only Troyes, Auxerre, and Nevers for his Suffragans. The Cathedral Church of St. Stephen is admired for its stately Front, adorned with diverse Figures and two lofty Towers; as also on the account of its large Body, rich Chapels, ancient Tombs, and the costly Basis of the High Altar, where is to be seen a Table of Gold enrich'd with many curious Stones, representing in Bass-relief the Images of the 4 Evangelists and S. Stephen. The whole Diocess comprehends above 900 parochial Churches, and 25 Abbies, 5 of these being included within the City and Suburbs. Diverse Council have been celebrated here, the first of which was held by Archbishop Sevin, A. C. 980.

Pont-sur-Tonne, *Pons ad Icaunam*, or *Pons Syriacus*, stands on the Frontiers of Champagne, and the Banks of the River Tonne, about 8 Miles from Sens to the North toward Paris.

Joigni, *Jogniacum*, or *Juniacum*, a small Town, at the Distance of 15 Miles from Sens to the South, and as many from Auxerre to the North.

Tonnerre, *Tornodorum*, and *Ternodorum ad Hermon-ticnem*, is a considerable Town bearing the Title of a County, and built on the side of the River Armançon in the Confines of Burgundy, about 35 Miles from Sens to the South-east.

Chabli, *Cablicum*, stands about 10 Miles W. from Tonnerre. It is a small Town, but remarkable on the account of the excellent Wines that are made therein, and for the bloody Battle which was fought in the adjacent Plain, between the Sons of the Emperor Lewis the Debonnaire, A. D. 841.

The County of BRIE is divided into two Parts and made part of two Provinces; the Isle of France and Champagne. BRIE CHAMPENOISE, *Bri-giensis Saltus*, or *Bria*, lies between the Rivers Seine and Marne, on the North of Senonnois, abounding in Pasture, and is very Fruitfull in Corn, Fruits, &c. The most considerable Towns in it are these, viz.

Meaux, Bish. } } Colomiers,  
Provins, } } Sezanne,  
Chateau-Thierry, } } Montreuil-faut-Tonne.

Meaux, *Melde*, *Patinum Meldarum*, the Capital City of Brie, and the See of a Prelate Suffragan to the Archbishop of Paris, is situated on the Marne, at the



the Distance of 25 Miles from *Paris* to the East ; 50 from *Rheims* to the South-west, 60 from *Chaalons* to the West, and 50 from *Senz* to the North. It is divided by the River into two Parts, viz. one called the Town, and the other the Market, and surrounded with three Suburbs. The Cathedral is dedicated to St. Stephen, and the Diocesis contains 410 Parishes. There is also a Collegiate Church bearing the Name of St. Simeon first Bishop of *Meaux* ; and some others that are Parochial, and besides the Abbey of St. Faron, appertaining to the Benedictine Monks of the Congregation of St. Maur, a great Number of Monasteries. This City was for sometime subject to its own Lord, before it was united to the Crown of France : It suffered very much in the Year 1358, John King of France being at that time the Prisoner of our King Edward III. For the Dauphine having possid himself of this Place, in his Absence, the Citizens had plotted with those of *Paris* to take it from him, but were not able to effect it, for tho' they let in the Parisians into the Town, the Garrison kept the Market, overcame them, cut them to pieces, and fired and pillag'd the City. It was afterwards taken by the Forces of our valiant King Henry V. after a Siege of three Months. This was the first City of France wherein the Protestants preach'd against the Errors of the Church of Rome, for which many of them suffer'd Martyrdom. In the Civil War, the Protestants got the Possession of this Place, but it was taken from them by Surprize by *Claud Gouffier*, Duke of *Retz* for King Charles IX. It is now a well-built, flourishing, and populous City, and is the Seat of a Bailly and an Election.

*Provins*, *Provinum*, aut *Pravinum*, stands at the Foot of an Hill and the Banks of the Rivulet *Vouzie*, being distant 10 Miles from the *Seine* to the North ; 25

from *Meaux* to the South ; 36 from *Troyes* to North-west, and 38 from *Paris* to the South-east. The small Town is famous for an excellent sort of Roses which grow in the adjacent Fields, and bear the same Name.

*Chateau Thierry*, *Castium Theodericum*, is a very fair Town, with a Castle, enjoying the Title of a Duchy, and seated on the South-side of the *Maine* about 20 Miles from *Meaux* to the East ; 30 from *Rheims* to the South-west ; 40 from *Chaalons* to the West, and 45 from *Paris* to the East.

*Comiers*, *Colomeria*, or *Columbaria*, is adorned with the Palace of *Longueville*, and water'd with the little River of *Morin*, 12 Miles from *Meaux* to the South towards *Provins*, and 30 from *Paris* to the East.

*Montreux-Faut-Yonne*, *Monasterium ad Icaunam* *Monasterium St. Martini in faucibus Icauna* or *Mons Regalis*, takes its Name from a Place where the *Yonne* falls into the *Siene*. Being founded on the Confluence of these two Rivers, and defended with an old Castle, distant 16 Miles from *Provins* to the South-west. The Town it self properly belongs to the Jurisdiction of *Gastinois*, and the Suburbs on the other side of the River to that of *Brie*. It was heretofore a Royal Seat, and is beautified with a fair Stone Bridge, on which John Duke of Burgundy was slain, on the 10th Day of September, 1419.

The Governor General of the Province of *Champagne*, hath under him four Lieutenant-Generals and two Bailiffs, all Noblemen. And in these following Towns there are particular Governors, viz. *Troyes*, *Chaalons*, *Langres*, *Chaumont*, *Retel*, *Chateau-Portier*, *Rocroy*, *Maziers*, *Charleville*, *Sedan*, *St. Menchault*, *St. Dizier*, *Vitri*, *Bar-sur-Aube*, *Epenay*, *Fismes*, and *Brie-Comte-Robert*.

### A Chronological TABLE shewing the Succession of the Counts of Champagne and Brie

	Succeeded A. C.	Govern. Years		Succeeded A. C.	Govern. Years
1 Robert	958		10 Theobald III.	1197	
2 Herbert		died in 993	11 Theobald IV. King of Navarre	1201	5
3 Stephen I.	993	26	12 Theobald V. the Young	1254	10
4 Eudes I le Champenois	1019	18	13 Henry III.	1270	
5 Theobald or Theobald	1037		14 Joanna Queen of Navarre	1274	
6 Stephen II. surnam'd Henry					
7 Theobald II.	1101	51	This last Princess was styl'd Countess Palatine of Brie and Champagne, and married to the French King Philip IV. surnam'd the Fair, A. C. 1284.		
8 Henry I. the Rich	1152	28			
9 Henry II. the Younger	1180	17			

## CHAP. V.

### The ISLE of FRANCE, *Insula Franciæ*.

THE Government of the *Isle of France*, though it be one of the least of Extent, is however the most considerable of the whole Kingdom, on account of its Fertility and pleasant Situation, the great Number of stately Palaces, and the Capital City which stands therein ; but more especially by being honoured with the Presence of the King in his splendid Palaces of *Versailles* and the *Louvre*, *S. Germain*, *Fountainbleau*, and *S. Cloud* ; all which are seated within the Limits of this Government. The *Isle of France*, pro-

perly so called, lies between the River *Seine*, *Marn*, *Oise*, and *Aisne* ; for which Reason the Name of a Island hath been given it. But to make it a Government, some Parts of the neighbouring Provinces have been added to it ; so that at present it is bounded on the East by *Champagne*, on the West by *Normandy*, on the North by *Picardy*, and on the South by *Beauvais* and *Gastinois*, extending it self between the 48<sup>th</sup> Degree 20 Min. and the 49<sup>th</sup> Deg. 40 Min. of Latitude ; and includes from West to East, that is to say from



from Dreux to Lieffe, near 120 miles, and from North to South, viz. from Noyon as far as Tourtenay in Gatinois 100 Miles.

The Soil is very fertile in excellent Wheat, Grapes, and other Fruits: There are also divers verdant Plains and spacious Forests, affording abundance of all sorts of Games. The principal Rivers are the Seine, the Marne and the Oise. The last of these is enlarged with the Waters of the Aisne, that passeth to Soissons, and those of Terrain, which conveys its Streams along the Walls of Beauvais, &c. This Government is usually divided into ten small Countries, nine of which are taken out of the Provinces of Champagne, Beauce, Normandy, and Picardy.

The Isle of France is divided into 10 small Count- ies,	The Isle of France, prop.	Paris, Archb.
	Brie Francoise	Lagni
	Hurepois	Meun
	Gallieno in part	Nemours
	Mantois,	Mante
	Pexin Francois	Pontoise
	Beauvaisis	Beauvais, B.
	Valois	Crespy
	Soissonnois	Soissons, Bish.
	Laonnois.	Laon, Bish.

In the ISLE OF FRANCE, properly so called, are contain'd

Paris, Archbish. Capital of the whole Kingdom.  
S. Dennis  
Montmorency  
Bois de Vincennes.

PARIS, *Parisi*, or *Lutetia Parisiorum*, so called from *Lutum* Dirt, and *Parisi* the ancient Inhabitants of the Neighbouring Country. To omit the several fabulous Accounts of its Origin, it is certain that it is very ancient: *Julius Caesar* mentions it in his Commentaries; and *Eusebius* says, It was older than Rome. The Island in the Seine called *la Cite*, now the middle of Paris, was the first City, built in that place by the *Parisi*, as some say, to avoid the Ravage of War and Pestilence that rag'd among them.

It is the Metropolis of the whole Kingdom of France, and at present one of the largest, most populous and flourishing Cities of Europe. The River Seine which passeth through it from East to West, is broad, but not deep enough to bring up Ships of Burden, whereof none come higher than Roan, and from whence the Goods are brought hither in Lighters: Its Stream is divided by two or three Islands, whereof that call'd *la Cite* above-mentioned is the chief, and is the Center, round which the Additions from time to time have been made of that great number of Houses and Palaces whereof Paris now consists. On the North-lies that part called *la Ville* the Town; and on the South the University, with the *Fauxbourg* or Suburbs of S. Germain, and S. Marcel. The Houses of Paris are mostly built of Stone and Brick, very high, and fill'd with People, every Floor often containing a Family, especially in the Old City, where the Streets are narrow, but those later built are spacious and neat, especially *les Rues Richelieu*, and S. Martin, which are very long, strait and broad.

The whole City, University, and Suburbs of Paris make an Oval of three English Miles long, and two and an half broad, and consequently take up five and a half square Miles of Ground. Concerning the number of Houses and Inhabitants herein contained, Frenchmen talk very largely; but this Matter having been judiciously handled by the ingenious Sir *W. Bourne*, his Computation will be the best account we can give the Reader, which is as follows: The number of Houses are, 23223, together

with 32 Palaces, and 38 Colleges, in which do live 81280 Families, and allowing to each Family 6 Persons, the number will be 487680. To prove this Account, he argues from the number of Burials in Paris, which according to a reasonable Medium, are, 19887 per Annum, whereof 3506 in the *Hotel-Dieu* unnecessarily, which being deducted, the number of Burials of the Inhabitants, is *communibus annis*, 16381, and then allowing one of thirty to die yearly, the number of Souls in Paris will be 491430. The Medium of these two Accounts is 488055. Whereas in London the same Author proves the number of Inhabitants to be 695718, and the number of Houses 105315, and that London contains above 100 thousand Inhabitants more than Paris and Rouen together. But to proceed,

The Places in Paris that most deserve a Stranger's Notice, are the Louvre, the Tuilleries, the Church of Notre-Dame, the University, the Old-Palace, the Town-House, the Place-Royal, the Bastille, Pont-neuf, many stately Palaces of the Nobility, the Hotel-Dieu, and other Hospitals.

The King's Palace, nam'd the Louvre, is a noble and stately Pile of Building: It is one large Square with a Court in the middle, the Fronts of Stone finely adorned with Pillars and Carvings. It was first built by King Philip the August, A. D. 1214, and began to be rebuilt of larger Extent by K. Charles V. in the Year 1364. Francis I. began the Switzer's Hall and the South Porch, which his Son Henry II. finished, and built two Stories over it; he also added an Order of Corinthian Architecture to the inner Front, and adorn'd it with a noble Cornice and curious Carvings. King Henry IV. built a Gallery along by the side of the River quite to the Tuilleries, which is very long, and esteem'd the finest in Europe: Under it is the Royal Printing-house, and the Lodgings of many curious Artists in Painting, Carving, Graving, &c. who have Pensions from the King. Lewis XIII. finished the Front to the West, and built a large Pavillion, in form of a Dome, in the middle, over the Gate, which is supported by two Ranks of very large Pillars of the Ionick Order; and also adorn'd the Architrave of the Front to the Court with fine Sculptures. The present King hath bestow'd great cost upon the East-Front; in the middle whereof is the chief Gate of the Palace. Here are forty Columns of the Corinthian Order detached, which sustain a large Terrace, that is to be rail'd with a stately Ballustrade. The Building is not finished, nor the Lodgings furnish'd, no Body dwelling in it but some few Officers, except the French Academy, who have a Hall here to hold their Assemblies in. Behind the Louvre is a large piece of Ground design'd for a Garden; but the King never coming here, some Persons have been permitted to build upon it, so that at present it is full of Houses, which are to be all pull'd down when the Building is finished, and the King fancies to Reside here.

Behind the Louvre at some distance, stands the Palace called *les Tuilleries*, built by Queen Catherine de Medicis, A. D. 1654. and much improv'd by the present King. It is one Range of Building, with a Pavillion at each end, and a Dome in the middle; before it is a handsome large Space which is divided into three Courts; and behind are exceeding pleasant Gardens, the Walks whereof are every Evening fill'd with People of Fashion that come hither to take the Air. When the King lies at Paris, which is very seldom, he lodges in the Tuilleries. These two Palaces are seated in the West-part of the Town by the River-side; the Garden of the Tuilleries reaching quite beyond the Houses, and is open to the Fields.



The Cathedral-Church of *Notre-Dame* or the *Virgin Mary*, stands near the middle of the City in the Island which thence hath its name: It is a Majestick venerable Building of the *Gothick* Order of Architecture. The Foundation was laid *A. D.* 522. by King *Childerick*; and the Building was afterwards much beautified and enlarged by King *Robert* and his Successors, till *Philip* the August finished it as it now appears. It is in the Form of a Cross, having a small Spire in the middle, and at the West end two large square Towers of 389 Steps high, flat at top, with Balustrades round, which make the Front very spacious and noble. Over the three West Gates is a Row of Niches, in which stand the Statues of 28 Kings of France, Predecessors to *Philip*. The length of this Church is accounted 66 Fathoms, its breadth 24, and its height 17 Fathoms. The Roof is supported by 120 great Pillars, and the whole Building adorn'd with the Ornaments usual to this Order of Architecture, besides several Statues, curious Paintings, rich Tapestries, Silver-Candlesticks, &c. that make the inside appear very Glorious. The Prelate of this See was formerly Suffragan to the Archbishop of *Sens*, till *A.* 1622. when *Lewis XIII.* by permission of the Pope, erected it into an Archbishoprick; and the present King hath added to it the Title of Duke and Peer, (*A.* 1674.) in favour of the present Archbishop.

The University of *Paris* was first founded (as 'tis said) by *Charlemaign*, *A. D.* 791, at the desire of *Alcuin* an Englishman, his Tutor, who was made the first Professor. It is situate on the South-side of the River, and hath been much encreased by *Lewis VII.* *Philip* the August, and several other Persons of lower Rank, particularly *Robert Serben*, who (in the time of *St. Lewis*, *A.* 1252) founded the College called by his Name; which being decayed, was rebuilt by Cardinal *Richelieu*, and made a very beautiful Place. It is esteem'd the strictest College in Europe, the Degree of Doctor in it being only given to those who hold the *Sorbonique* Act, which is to answer all Disputants from Sun-rise to Sun-set. Wherefore the Title of *Sorbon* Doctor is of great Repute. The College of *Navarre*, founded by *Jane* Queen of *Navarre*, is also a very noble Building; and that of the four Nations, founded by Cardinal *Mazzerine*, is very handsome, spacious, and well adorned. The Buildings of the other Colleges, near 30 in number, are not very stately. The Professors have settled Revenues, but the Colleges are not endowed, except with Privileges and Collation to several Benefices.

It will not be amiss to mention here the Academies for Arts, established in *Paris* by the Favour and Encouragement of the present King and his Predecessors. And first, the Academy *Francoise*, is a Society of ingenious Men, the most polite and curious Critics of the Nation; first begun in the Year 1620, by Messrs *Godeau*, *Gombaud*, *Claquein*, *Comard*, and several more, who agreed to meet weekly at one of their Lodgings for Conversation; these being encouraged by Cardinal *Richelieu*, set themselves at work to correct and polish the French Tongue, and in 1635. the Academy was establish'd by the King's Edict, and hath been much honour'd by the present King, who hath given them a Chamber in the *Louvre* to hold their Assemblies in. These ingenious Persons have very much improv'd the French Language, and publish'd a Dictionary of it; and several Members of the Society have publish'd Books that have been very acceptable to the learned World. The number of them at present is forty. They give yearly two Golden Medals to the best Performers in Eloquence and Poetry.

The *Royal Academy of Sciences*, was established Monsieur *Cassini*, *A. D.* 1666, and is composed of the best Philosophers and Mathematicians in the Nation for whose use the King built the *Royal Observatory* the *Fauxbourg St. Jacques*, where they daily make Experiments, and labour in new Discoveries for the improvement of Knowledge.

The Royal Academy for *Painting* and *Sculpture* was established by *Lewis XIII.* and that for Architecture, by the present King in the Year 1671.

The *Gobelins*, which is the King's Work-House of curious Mechanick Arts, such as Tapestry, Plat Mozaick Work, neat Iron, Copper, and Brasses Work, Statuary, Sculpture, Embroidery, and the like, also one of the Remarkables of *Paris*. Its Name taken from one *Gobelin*, a curious Scarlet Dyer, who long since exercis'd his Art at that House.

But to pass on to the other remarkable Things in *Paris*. The Palace is the place where the Court of Parliament is held. It was at first the King's Palace, but was made the Seat of this Court by King *Philip the Fair*. The Hall is arched with Stone, and supported by Pillars: In it are many Shops for Tradesmen and beyond it are several Chambers for the respective Courts.

The *Hotel de Ville*, or Guild-Hall, is a fair Structure; the old one being decayed, this was begun to be built *A. D.* 1533, but by reason of the Civil War was not finished till 1610. It is built of Stone, the Front reasonably handsome, but somewhat Gothick in the middle over the Door there is a Spire, and two Pavillions at the ends; within-side is a spacious Hall and several Chambers.

The *Palais Cardinal*, or Palace Royal, as it is now called, is a handsome Building, composed of two square Courts and fine Gardens; the Apartments in it are beautiful and convenient. This Palace was built by Cardinal *Richelieu*, and at his Death bequeathed to the King: The Duke of *Orleans* dwells in it, altho' he hath another very stately one that bears his Name which was built by the Widow of *Henry IV.*

The *Place Royal* is a Noble large Square, surrounded with Piazza's and very fine Houses.

*Paris* lying on both sides the Water, there is need of many Bridges, of which here are nine of Stone and two of Timber; that named *Pont-neuf*, or the New Bridge, is the most considerable, being the finest built and the longest; it is all of Stone, begun to be built in 1578, and finished in 1604, by King *Henry IV.* whose Statue on Horseback of curious Workmanship stands in the middle.

*Pont au Change* was built of Stone in 1629, and hath two Rows of Houses on it; this being near the Palace, hath the most Passengers of any. *Pont-Neuf* hath Houses on it also. The other Bridges are less considerable.

*Pont-Royal*, a strong and plain Stone-Bridge, crossing the *Seine* to the *Tuilleries*, built by the present King and finished about the year, 1700.

The *Hôtel-Dieu* is a large Hospital for poor sick People, whereof here are commonly no less than 4000 who are serv'd by the Nuns of *St. Augustin*: The Building is old, and not very fine, but the Revenue are very great. There are many other Hospitals, but that which makes the greatest Figure, and is most talk'd of is,

The *Invalids*, built by this King for the Reception and Maintenance of old crippled and disabled Soldiers. It is a very noble Building, exactly square, with five Courts in the middle. It stands in the West end of the *Fauxbourg St. Germain*.

The



The *Bastile* is a Castle built in the Year 1360, for defence of the City, but at present serves for a Prison for State-Criminals. It stands at the East-end of the Town in the *Fauxbourg St. Antoine*. There are also two smaller Castles, which were anciently Fortresses, and without doubt stood at the Limits of the Town, but are now in the middle of it, and serve to hold the Provost's and other Courts in.

The Suburbs of *Paris* are large and well built; that of *St. Germain* hath been taken into the City, and enjoys the same Privileges.

Finally, The *Place des Victoires*, where stands a Massy Statue of Brass of the present King Crown'd by Victory. The Triumphal Arches and Gates, of Modern Structure, in several parts of the City, and several Palaces of the Nobility, are places of such Magnificence and Beauty as are hardly to be paralleld.

For the Civil Government *Paris* hath a Magistrate call'd the *Prevoit des Merchants*, not unlike our Lord-Mayor, and 4 Echevins or Aldermen, 25 Counsellors, 10 Serjeants and under Officers; and is divided into 16 Wards. And for administering Justice, there is a Provost, 3 Lieutenants, and the Judge and Consul of Merchants.

In the City and Suburbs are 10 Collegiate and 44 Parochial Churches, 4 principal Abbeys, besides many other Religious Houses, 30 Hospitals, great number of publick Fountains, and 17 Gates.

This City hath undergone the Fate of most Great Ones, viz. hath been two or three times besieged, twice burn'd, and once much damaged by an Inundation of the *Seine*. Our King *Henry V.* took it, was crown'd here, and kept his Court at the *Louvre* in great State and Splendor, *A. D.* 1422. In the Civil War, *Paris* took part with the *Leaguers*, and was therefore besieged in the Year 1589. by King *Henry III.* who there lost his Life, being murdered by *Jacques Clement* a Friar. The next Year it was block'd up by *Henry IV.* and reduc'd to extream Misery, and to that want of Victuals, that the People made Bread of dead Mens Bones; yet would they not yield, but held out till the Dukes of *Parma* and *Mayenne* came to their Relief, and forced the King to raise the Siege.

*Paris* is situate in the Latitude of 48 Degrees 50 Minutes, and Longitude of 20 Degrees 15 Minutes, reckoning from *Teneriff*; but according to *Sanson*, 23 Degrees, 30 Minutes; and is distant 130 English Miles from *Calais* to the South, 60 from *Roan* to the S. E. 300 from *Brest* to the E. 220 from *Lyons* to the N. W. 130 from *Verdun* on the River *Meuse*, and 230 from *Strasbourg* on the *Rhine* to the W. 180 from *Triers*, 155 from *Luxemburg*, and 140 from *Namur* to the S. W.

The most remarkable Place in the Neighbourhood is the *Bois de Vincennes*, situated at the very Gates of *Paris*, where the Citizens often walk to take the Air, and divert themselves with divers kinds of Sports and Exercises.

*VERSAILLES* is a small, but neat Burrough, situate upon a rising Ground in the midst of a Champaign Country, fit for Hunting, and abounding with Game, at the distance of about 12 Miles from *Paris* to the W. *Lewis XIII.* built a small Castle here, to serve for a Hunting Seat; but the present King fancying the Place, in the Year 1661. began to enlarge it, by the addition of several new Buildings, which he hath increased from time to time, and hath been at prodigious Expence in adorning it and making the greatest variety of Water-Works, and most delightful Gardens that probably are any where to be seen. This

beautiful Palace deserves a more particular Description than we have room to make; what follows will be sufficient to give the Reader a general Idea of it.

The Passage to it is through four long Rows of tall Elm-trees which make three Ayles; the middle one of twenty Fathoms, and the side ones or ten Fathoms wide; at the end of these, on each side, fronting the House, are the Stables which for Symmetry and Convenience are thought the finest in *Europe*; in them are kept near five hundred Horses of the King's. Between this and the Court is a large void space, from whence is a fair view of the whole, all the three Courts being open to the Front, and only divided by Iron Ballustres. The first Court is named the *Place-Royal*; it is very spacious, being eighty Fathoms square: In the Front is only a low Wall and Iron Ballustres, which are carried out in a Half-Moon, and on the Wings are a very handsome Range of Buildings, which are the Lodgings of some of the Nobility that attend the Court. From hence you pass through one large Gate (very finely adorn'd with Trophies in Iron-work gilt) in the middle of a large and high Ballustre of Iron, gilt, into the first or great Court of the Palace, which consists also of two Wings of Building, on each side of a large Court, but so much smaller than the *Place-Royal*, as that that does not hinder the full sight of this; in the middle is a very large Fountain: The Buildings are of Brick and Stone, very stately, and adorn'd with very fine Carvings, and Pillars of the Corinthian Order, which support Balconies at the top, that go quite round each Wing; on the Ballustre whereof stand several Statues of Stone, representing the four Elements; these are the Lodgings of the Officers of the Household: Behind them are square Courts and other Buildings for Offices. Next is the second or smaller Court of the Palace, which is also open to the Front; the Ground is raised three Steps, and paved with black and white Marble: This Court is still smaller than the former, for the same Reason; and here the Sight is terminated by the Building at the end of the Court, which with the two Wings make the Royal Apartment. These Buildings are very magnificent, without side as well as within: The Entrance is by three Doors of Iron, richly wrought and gilt: In the Wings are two very noble Stair-Cases that lead to the Lodgings, in which appear all the Pomp and Beauty that the most curious Sculptures and Paintings by the greatest Masters of the Age, together with excessive rich Furniture, can make: Behind this, and fronting the Garden, is a noble Range of Building, adorned with Statues and Carvings, and a Piazza of 100 Yards in length. The Gardens are extreamly delightful, and surpass all other for pleasant Walks and great number of Fountains, in which the Water is diversified a thousand ways, through a multitude of Marble and Copper Statues, that represent abundance of curious Devices, as the Triumphal Arch, the Water Mountain, the Theatre, the Pyramid, the Basin of *Ceres*, the Basin of *Fiera*, the Basin of *Apollo*, the Basin of *Saturn*, the Basins of the Crown, Mermaid, Dragon, the Water-Bower, the Water-Alley, many of the Fables of *Æsop* represented by Figures, which spout Water; together with abundance more too long to mention. Besides these Fountains here is a very large Canal, in which Yachts and Gallies sail and row to and again. At the bottom of this Canal on one side stands a fine Summer-house called *Trianon*; and on the other side is the Menagerie, where are kept all the Outlandish Beasts of greatest Rarity. Every part of this House and Garden is perfectly beautiful, and gives satisfaction to the most curious Spectators. *Marli,*







*Circle* Governor of the *Gauls*. It was governed by its own Counts from the X. and XI. Centuries, (of whom one named *Aimoin*, founded the Church of *S. Spire*, and established therein a College of 12 Canons in memory of the 12 Apostles; till it was united to the Crown in the time of *Lewis* the Great, but hath still the Title of a County: Here is a fair Stone Bridge of 9 Arches over the *Seine*.

*Fontain-bleau*, *Fons Bellaqueus*, or *Fons Aquæ Pulcræ*, is a very fair Town, distant about 3 miles from the *Seine*, 8 from *Meulan*, and 30 from *Paris* to the South: Near this place is the Forest of *Bieure*, containing 26000 Acres of Ground, together with many Herds of Deer and all sorts of Game; in the midst of which large Wood of high Trees, stands the Royal Palace of *Fontain-bleau*, taking its name from the great number of Springs of clear Water and Fountains that appear on all sides. A Castle was first erected here by King *Lewis* VII. A. D. 1169. but *Francis* I. began to beautify it with divers sorts of Ornaments, more especially a curious Library, which was afterward transported to *Paris*, and his Successors continuing in the same Design, have since render'd it a delightful and magnificent Seat. About 3 Leagues from *Fontain-bleau*, is another stately Mansion-House or Palace, known by the Name of *Fluys*, which is remarkable for a large Canal of Spring-water, enclosed with Walls on both sides, a large Walk shaded with Trees, that seem to be joined together in an admirable Arbour, &c.

The Territory *GATINOIS*, *Vastinium*, lies to the South of *Hurepois* bordering on *Beauce*. It derives its name from the Rocks and Sands which the Inhabitants of the Country call *Gastines*: Part of this Province belongs to the Government of the *Orleannois*; that part that belongs to this Government of the Ile of *France*, contains these principal Towns, viz.

*Nemours*, } *Mercy*,  
*Dourdan*, } *Montheri*,  
*Coutenay*, } *Montargis*.

*Nemours*, *Nemesium*, or *Nemoracum*, is situate in a Plain on the River *Loing*, and defended with an old Castle, being distant 10 miles from *Fontain-bleau*, and 40 from *Paris* to the South. The most considerable publick Edifices are, the Priory of *S. John*, and the Abby of *Nostre Dame de lay Joye*, possessed by Nuns of the *Cisterian* Order. This Town was heretofore subject to the Jurisdiction of certain particular Lords, and afterward to that of its Counts; until at length, *Charles* VI. caused it to be enclosed with Walls, and erected the adjacent Territory into a Duchy, A. D. 1404.

*Dourdan*, *Durdanum*, or *Dardincum*, is a small Town seated on the Frontiers of *Beauce*, on the River *Oise*, 26 miles from *Paris* toward *Orleans*, and 28 from *Nemours* to the North-West. It was part of the Possessions of *Hugh* Capet, but being often pawn'd and sold, was at last bought by *Lewis* XIII. This Town was much infested during the Civil Wars, and taken by the Protestants in the years 1562 and 1567.

*Coutenay*, *Cuteniacum* and *Corteniacum*, stands on a Hill on the Banks of the Rivulet *Clain*, 15 miles South-East from *Nemours*. This Town, tho' of very small compass, hath imparted its Name to divers Princes, whose Actions are celebrated in the French History, and of whom some have been Emperors of *Constantinople*.

*Montargis*, *Montargium*, or *Mons Argi*, is a very fair Town built at the Foot of a Hill, water'd with the River *Loing*, and fenced with an old Castle, which

was re-built by *Charles* V. being distant 25 Leagues from *Paris* to the South towards *Nevers*, 12 miles from *Nemours*, and 30 West from *Sens*. It is annex'd to the Demesnes of the Crown, and bears the Titles of a Bailiage, Election, and Provostship. It was built in the year 1522. and afterward rebuilt and enlarged.

*MANTOIS*, *Medunanus Ager*, is the West part of this Government, and extends from *S. Germain* to the Frontiers of *Normandy*, along the sides of the River *Seine*, and includes within its Territories these considerable Towns, viz.

*Mante*, *Meulan*,  
*Poissy*, *S. Germain en Laye*,  
*Montferri Amaury*,

*Mante*, *McLunta*, is seated on the South-side of the River *Seine*, (which is there covered with a Stone Bridge) near the Frontiers of *Normandy*; from whence it is distant, only 6 miles, and also 25 from *Evreux* to the East, and 30 from *Paris* to the North-West. In this Town died King *Philip* II. surnamed the *Angust*.

*Poissy*, *Pisciacum*, is a small Town situated not far from the Confluence of the *Oise* and the *Seine*, at the distance of 15 miles from *Paris* to the North-West toward *Rouen*. It is famous for the Nativity of *Lewis* IX. King of *France*, and on the account of a Conference held between the Roman Catholics and Protestants, under *Charles* IX. Here are establish'd divers Religious Houses, and among others a Convent of Nuns of the *Dominican* Order, founded by *Philip* the Fair, &c.

*Monfort l'Amaury*, *Montfortium Amalrici*, took the name of *Amaury* from that of its Lords, and stands on an Hill, the Foot whereof is water'd with the Streams of a little River; 27 miles from *Paris* to the West toward *Dreux*, and 15 from *Mante* to the South. King *Robert* caused a Castle to be erected here, which is now half ruin'd, and enclosed the Town with Walls.

*VEXIN-FRANCOIS*, *Veximum*, or *Valcastinum Franciscum*, is extended between the Rivers *Oise* and *Depte*, on the North of *Mantois* to the Confines of *Normandy*, including these Towns within its Jurisdiction.

*Pontoise*, } *Chaumont*.  
*Magny*, }

*Pontoise*, *Pontifara*, or *Pons ad Oesum*, is situate on an Hill and the Banks of the *Oise*, between *L'Isle Adam* and the Confluence of this River, with that of the *Seine*, 20 miles from *Paris* to the North-West towards *Rouen*. It is a place of considerable Importance, and adorned with a fair Stone Bridge over the *Oise*, from whence its name is deriv'd.

*Magny*, *Magniacum*, stands on the confines of *Normandy*, in the midst between *Paris* and *Rouen*, at an equal distance of 34 miles from both these Cities.

*Chaumont*, *Calvromontium*, or *Calvus Mons*, is a small Town between *Beauvais* to the South, and *Mante* to the North, being distant 12 miles from the first, and 20 from the last, and 16 from *Pontoise* to the North.

*BEAUVOISIS*, *Bellovacensis Ager*, lies between the River *Oise* and the Frontiers of *Normandy*, to the North of *Vexin Francois*, containing these Towns, viz.

*Beauvais*, Bish. } *Gerberoy*.  
*Clermont*, } *Merlou*.

*Beauvais*, *Bellovacum*, or *Cesaromagus*, is seated on the River *Thérin*, at the distance of 43 miles from *Paris* to the North, as many from *Rouen* to the East, 30 from *Compeigne*, and 15 from the Borders of *Picardy*.  
It



It is a large and well fortified City and Episcopal See, under the Metropolitan of *Rheims*, the Bishop whereof is one of the twelve Ecclesiastical Peers of the Realm. It is honourably mentioned by *Cæsar*, who says that the People of this Territory were very powerful and withstood him the longest. This is called the Maiden City, having been always faithful and not suffer'd it self to be taken. Our English Forces attempted to surprize it in 1433. but did not effect it. Nor did *Charles* the warlike Duke of *Burgundy*, prove more successful, when he besieged it in 1472, being forced to raise the Siege 26 days after his Trenches were opened. However, violent Commotions often arose in it, on account of Religion, during the Civil Wars of *France* in the last Age. It is a place of good Trade, which consists in Stuffs, Cloths, Earthen Ware, &c. The Bishop was formerly so'e Temporal as well as Spiritual Lord of the City and adjacent Country; but since 1539, a Bailiwick and Presidial have been establish'd here. However, the Bishop hath still great Power, and is temporal Lord of the Borough *Gerbercy*, and rich in great endowments.

*Clermont*, *Clermontium*, or *Clermont en Beauvoisis*, for distinction, is built on a rising ground, and the sides of the River *Bresles*, 16 miles from *Beauvais* to the East, 14 from *Compeigne* to the West, and 10 from *Senlis* to the North. It hath been dignified with the Title of a County ever since the time of *Robert* of *France*, Son of *S. Lewis* and Count of *Clermont*, from whom the Royal House of *Bourbon* is deriv'd.

*Gerbercy*, *Gerberodum*, stands on the Frontiers of *Picardy* 8 miles from *Beauvais* to the North-West. In the Reign of our *Henry VI.* A. D. 1435. the English lost a Barrel near this Town. *Merlou* is a Borough seated on the River *Tercine*, or *Therin*, 4 or 5 miles from *Clermont*.

The Duchy of *VALOIS*, *Valesium*, lies on the East of *Beauvoisis*, between that and *Soissonnois*. In it are these Cities and Towns, viz.

<i>Crespy.</i>	} <i>La fert: Milon.</i>
<i>Senlis</i> Bish.	
<i>Compeigne,</i>	
	} <i>Pont Sainte Maixance.</i>
	} <i>Villers Cotterets, &amp;c.</i>

*Crespi*, *Crepicium*, or *Crispeium*, formerly a very considerable City, now a Town of a small compass, nevertheless the chief of the Country of *Valois*, and hath in it a Provostship and Castellany; it is distant 32 miles from *Paris* to the North-East, 15 from *Meaux* to the North, and 12 from *Compeigne* to the South. In this Town a memorable Treaty of Peace was concluded between the Emperor *Charles V.* and King *Francis I.* on the 18 day of September, 1544. The ancient Counts of *Valois* had the Title of Counts of *Crespi* also, and used to reside here in a Castle said to be built by King *Dagobert*, which is now almost ruin'd.

*Senlis*, *Sylvanectum*, is situated in a very pleasant place on the Brook *Nennette*, near the Forest of *Ress*, which gives occasion to its Latin Name, 25 miles from *Paris* to the North, 16 from *Compeigne* to the South, 5 from the River *Oise*, and 25 from *Beauvais* to the South-East. It is a considerable City, being the Capital of the County, or Bailiage of *Senlis*, and the See of a Prelate, Suffragan to the Archbishop of *Rheims*. *S. Prævalus* converted the Inhabitants to the Christian Religion, and was the first Bishop of this Diocess. The Cathedral is dedicated to the Virgin *Mary*; here are also 7 Parochial and two Collegiate Churches. The City of *Senlis* was besieged by the Leaguers in 1579. but they were beaten thence, and a signal Barrel fought on that occasion, between the

Duke of *Languetille*, who commanded the King's Forces, and the Duke of *Amale*, one of the Principal Heads of the League, wherein the latter lost 1500 Men.

*Compeigne*, *Compendium*, stands on the Banks of the River *Oise*, near its confluence with the *Aisne*, and near the Forest of *Gaise*, at the distance of 16 miles from *Senlis*, and 40 from *Paris* to the N. W. and 30 from *Beauvais* to the East. It had a stately Castle, which was the Seat of several of the Kings of *France*; of these *Charles II.* surnamed the Bald, Emperor, founded a famous Monastery, and repair'd and beautified the whole Town, and called it *Caropolis*. It is still a considerable Town, and a place of good Trade, several Manufactures being made in it. The famous Maid of *Orleans*, *Jean* or *Arcke*, was taken Prisoner here by the English, when they besieged it in 1430.

*Ferte-Milon*, *Firmitas Milonis*, is water'd by the Rivulet *Oure* or *Oureque*, and stands between *Meaux*, *Soissons*, and *Senlis*, 35 miles from *Paris* to the North-east, and 20 from *Compeigne* to the South-east. It was so called, as it were the Force or Fortress of Count *Milon*, who built it under the Reign of *Lewis* the Gros; afterwards it was possessed by *Hugh* the Great, the Son of King *Henry I.* Count of *Vermandois*, *Valois*, &c. who founded the Priory of *Voulgis*. It is a good Town, and hath large Suburbs and a strong Castle. It was very much impair'd during the Civil Wars, in the end of the XVI. Century. A Provostship and Castellany is established here, from whence appeals lie to the Presidial Court of *Senlis*.

*SOISSONNOIS*, *Suessonensis Ager*, lies between *Valois* and *Laonnois*, and hath these chief Towns, viz. *Soissons* Bish. *Braine*, *Velly*.

*Soissons*, *Suessiones*, or *Suessones* and *Augusta Suessunum*, is a very fair, large and well fortified City, seated on the River *Aisne*, at the distance of about 16 miles from the Frontiers of *Picardy* and *Champagne*, 22 from *Compeigne* to the East, 30 from *Meaux* to the North, and 50 from *Paris* to the North-east. In the time of the first Race of the French Kings it was the Capital City of a Kingdom of the same Name; afterward it bore the Title of a County, and was annexed to the Government of *Picardy* as well as *Laon*, although they now depend on that of the Isle of *France*. It is at present the Seat of a Presidial Court, and a Generality, as also the See of a Bishop who is the first Suffragan to the Archbishop of *Rheims* and in his Absence hath a right to Crown the Kings of *France*. The Country hereabouts is very fruitful in Corn.

*Braine*, *Brennacum* or *Brana*, is a small Town and Abby on the River *Vesse*, between *Fimes* to the East, and *Soissons* to the West, about 10 miles from each, and 5 from the River *Aisne* to the South.

*Velly* stands on the *Aisne* 10 miles above *Soissons*, a small Town and not considerable.

*LAONNOIS*, *Laudunensis Ager*, is extended between part of *Champagne*, *Picardy*, *Beauvoisis* and *Soissonnois*, and is the North-east Border of this Government, including these principal Cities, Towns, &c. viz.

<i>Laon</i> Bish.	} <i>Noyen</i> Bish.
<i>Lieffe.</i>	
	} <i>Chaumi.</i>
	} <i>Premontre, &amp;c.</i>

*Laon*, *Laudunum*, or *Laudunum Clavatum*, is a large well fortified City, and an Episcopal See under the Metropolitan of *Rheims*; this Bishop is one of the ancient



cient twelve Peers of the Realm, enjoys the Title of a Duke, and hath the right to carry the Sacred Viol *la St. Ampoule*, at the Coronation of the Kings of France. It was at first only a Castle built at the top of a high Hill, and called *Laudunum*, from a Name commonly attributed by the *Gauls* to all places of such situation, but in time grew to be a pretty good Town which King *Clovis* the Great enlarged and made a City, and *S. Remigius* or *Remi* of *Rheims* erected the Bishoprick and founded a Cathedral Church, on which at present depend 84 Canons, of which four are dignitaries. This City is distant 18 Miles from *Soissons* to the North-East, 35 from *Compeigne* to the East, and 65 from *Paris* to the North-East.

*Lieffe*, *Letitia*, is a small Town on the Frontiers of *Picardy* and *Champagne*, about 8 miles from *Laon*, to the East. It is chiefly famous on the account of the Pilgrims that frequently resort hither from divers parts to pay their Devotions in a Church dedicated to the Virgin *Mary*; where even the Kings of France have used to pay their Devotions as soon as they came to the Crown, without which they believed they had not the Power to cure the King's Evil.

*Noyon*, *Noviodunum*, *Noviomagus*, or *Noviomum*, is situated on the *Ravulet Vorfe*, which a little below falls into the *Oise*, at the distance of 20 miles from *Soissons* to the North-west, 25 from *Laon* to the West, and 45 from *Paris* to the North. The Bishoprick of *Vermandois* was translated hither *A. C.* 520. when *Augusta Vermanduorum*, or *S. Quintin*, the Metropolis

of that Diocese, was ruin'd by the Barbarians. *Noyon* is a well-built City adorned with fair Buildings and Magnificent Churches, the chief of which is the Cathedral, dedicated to the Virgin *Mary*, besides a great number of Fountains, and 4 Suburbs. This Bishop had Jurisdiction over all *Flanders* before *Tournay* was erected into a See. He is still Count and Peer of France. It may not be amiss to note that the famous *John Calvin* was born here, *A.* 1509.

*Chauny*, *Calniacum*, stands on the Banks of the River *Oise*, about 6 miles from *Noyon* to the East. It is a Royal Town and a Castellany, although of a small compass. It was annexed to the Crown by *Charles V.* in 1378.

*Premontre*, *Premonstratum*, is a Village distant 8 miles from *Laon* to the West, about 16 from *Noyon* to the East, and 15 from *Soissons* to the North. It took its name from a Famous Abby of *Canons Regular* of *S. Augustin*, founded there by *St. Norbert*, sometime Archbishop of *Magdeburg*.

The *Isle of France*, with the *Soissonnois*, *Laonnois*, *Beauvaisis*, &c. hath a Governor-General, a Governor of the City, Vicounty and Provostship of *Paris*, besides which there is a Grand Provost of *Paris* and the *Isle of France*, properly so called; 4 Lieutenant-Generals in *Beauvaisis*, and *Vexin Francois*, a Bailly of *Valois*, about 20 Governors of the King's Houses, and particular Governors of *Beauvais*, *Compeigne*, *Marli*, *Laon*, *Noyon*, and *Soissons*, *Villers*, *Senlis*, *Crespi en Valois*, &c.

## CHAP. VI.

### BRETAGNE, *Armorica*, or *Britannia Minor*.

THE Province of *Bretagne*, or the lesser *Britain*, apparently took its modern Name from those People of *Great Britain*, who having escaped the Fury of the *Saxons*, arriv'd on these Coasts, where they were courteously entertain'd by the Inhabitants, and incorporated with them into one Body. They still retain a different Language from the rest of France. This Country was heretofore called *Armorica*, i. e. *ad mare sita*, from its situation on the Sea-shoar, and afterward *Llydaw*, in the British Tongue in the same sense; as also *Letavia* in Latin, by the English Writers of the middle Age. It is bounded on the East by the Provinces of *Anjou*, *Maine*, and part of *Normandy*, advancing itself in Form of a Peninsle to the West into the Ocean, with which it is encompassed on the three other sides. Its utmost extent from East to West, consists of about 170 English miles; that is to say, from *Vitrey* to the point of *Conquet*, and about 100 miles from North to South, viz. From *S. Malo* to the Borders of *Poitou*, but in other Places it is not above 70 miles broad. It is situated between the 47th Degree, and almost the 49th of Latitude.

*Julius Caesar* first made himself Master of this Province, and it remained under the Dominion of the *Romans* till *Maximus* having caused himself to be proclaimed Emperor in England, *A. C.* 382, granted to one of his Lieutenant-Generals named *Conan Meriadec*, the Title of King of *Armorica* or *Bretagne*, which Sovereignty continued to the time of *Clovis* and *Clotperick*, who oblig'd these Princes to be content with the stile of Counts. But they often revolted, until *Dagobert II.* rendred them Tributary; and

*Charlemagne* entirely subdued them *A.* 787. However they took up Arms against *Lewis* the *Debonnaire* and *Charles* the *Bald*, and their last King *Solomon* was slain in Battle. Afterwards the Country was Govern'd by divers Princes until the Year 1213. at which time *Aix*, the Heiress of *Bretagne*, Married *Peter* of *Dreux Maucier*, whose Successors to the number of Ten retained the Possession thereof under the Title of a Dutchy, until the Year 1491, when *Ann* of *Bretagne* the only Daughter of *Francis II.* the last Duke, was espoused to King *Charles VIII.* and afterwards to *Lewis XII.* who inseparably united this Dutchy to the Crown of France.

The Soil of this Province yields Pasture, Hemp, Wood, Minerals, some Corn, but no Wine; and about *Nantes* great quantity of Salt is made. The Meadows feed abundance of Cattel, especially Horses, of which a very good Race are bred here. Hemp and Flax grows in great plenty, so that abundance of Canvas and Linnen is made here. The Forests are many and large, and contain great variety of Game. Between *Chateau-Briant* and *Martignes*, are found Mines of Iron and Lead, and in other places some of Copper and Tin. This Province is happy in Havens, having more good Sea-Ports than any other part of France, and many Islands all round it. The Inhabitants are good Fisher-men, which they are encouraged to by the great variety of delicate Fish daily taken on their Coasts; particularly Salmon, Herrings, Sardines, and a certain Fish of a most delicious taste, called *Imperador*, or *Emperor* at *Marseille*, and *Gracieux Seigneur*, or *Gracious Lord* at *la*



in *Bretagne*; besides *Tunnies*, *Porpeffes*, *Dolphins*, *Sturgeon*, and some others appropriated to the Royal Fishery. Travellers admire the Jewels of Amber at *Belle-Isle*, the Aqueducts at *Dol*, the Vaults between *Rieux* and *Rhedon*, the Subterranean Torrent in the Forest of *St. Aubin du Cormier*, the singular Properties of the River *Ardre*, and the Lake of *Grand-lieu* near *Nantes*, from whence are taken many Toad-stones, and Serpent-Tongues of extraordinary Virtue.

The most considerable Rivers of this Province are the *Leire*, the *Vilaine*, *Rance*, *Blavet*, *Aufen*, *Trieux*, *Laitte*, *Oder*, *Arguenon* and *Couesnon*.

*Bretagne* is divided into nine Diocesses.

The Upper towards the East, in 5 viz.	{	The Bishoprick of Rennes, Chief Town,	Rennes.
		The Bishoprick of Nantes, Chief Town	same Name.
		The Bishoprick of St. Malo.	Idem.
		The Bishoprick of Dol.	Idem.
The Lower toward the West in 4 viz.	{	The Bishoprick of St. Brieux.	Idem.
		The Bishoprick of Treguier.	Idem.
		The Bish. of St. Paul de Leon.	Idem.
		The Bish. of Quimper-Corentin.	Idem.
		The Bishoprick of Vannes.	Idem.

The Bishoprick or Diocess of *RENNES*, *Episcopatus Rhednensis*, is situated on the Frontiers of *Normandy*, and the Province of *Maine*, and bounded on the North by the Bishoprick of *Dol*. The chief Towns are these, viz.

Rennes Bish. } *Fougeres*,  
Vitrey: } *Antrain*, &c.

*Rennes*, *Rhedones* or *Conslutic Rhedomum*, stands on the River *Vilaine*, which here receives the *Lille*, and divides the Town into two parts, and at the distance of 54 miles from *Nantes* to the North, 40 from *St. Malo* to the South, 30 from the Borders of the Province of *Maine* to the West, and 30 from the Borders of *Normandy* to the South West. It is the Capital of *Bretagne*, and was heretofore the Place of Residence of the Counts or Earls of *Bretagne*, and was for some time the Seat of the Parliament of the whole Province, which was establish'd there by King *Henry II.* but has been in this Age remov'd to *Vannes*. It is an Episcopal See under the Metropolitan of *Tours*. The Diocess contains 450 Parishes, besides two notable Abbys, viz. Of *St. Magdalen* and *St. George*, within the City, a College of *Jesuits*, and divers other Houses for Religious Persons. The Cathedral Church is dedicated to *St. Peter*, besides which there are several Parochial Churches. The Palace where the Parliament used to Sit, is a fair Building. The Clock of it is admired, as being one of the largest in *France*. This City is pleasantly seated in a fruitful Country, being environ'd with Pastures and Forests, and hath a good Trade by means of the River.

*Vitrey*, *Vitracum*, *Vitriacum*, or *Victoriacum*, is a fair walled Town, bearing the Title of a Barony, and stands also on the Banks of the *Vilaine*, 14 Miles above *Rennes* to the East, and not above five from the Borders of *Maine*. The Protestants had formerly a considerable Church here.

*Fougeres*, *Firicaria*, is seated on the River *Couesnon*, near the Frontiers of *Normandy* and *Maine*, 15 Miles from *Vitrey* to the North, and near 30 from *Rennes* to the North-East. This Town hath given its Name to a Noble Family, and is noted for the fine Glass made in it. *Raouel de Fougers*, fortified it, and built the Castle.

The Bishoprick of *NANTES*, *Episcopatus Nannetensis*, lies to the South of *Rennes*, between the Frontiers of *Anjou* and *Poitou*, and the River *Vilaine*. The most considerable Towns are these, viz.

Nantes, Bish. } *Machecou*,  
Ancenis, } *Cliffon*,  
Chateau-Briant, } *La Roche-Bernard*, &c.  
Guerande, }

*Nantes*, *Nannetes*, or *Corbiliun*, the Capital City of a County of the same Name, is seated on the Northern Bank of the River *Loire*, near the confluence of the River *Ardre*, about 30 Miles from the Sea to the East, 40 from *Angers* to the West, and 54 from *Rennes* to the South. It was the Seat of the later Dukes of *Bretagne*, and gave the Title of a Count to their eldest Sons. It is at present a handsome large City, well fortified, and hath a strong Castle flanked with Towers and Half-Moons. It is the See of a Bishop, who is Suffragan to the Archbishop of *Tours*, and is a Councillor in the Parliament of *Rennes*. Here is an University, a Presidial, Generality and Chamber of Accounts. The Publick Buildings are the Cathedral dedicated to *St. Peter*, a fair ancient Structure, beautified with two high Towers: In it are to be seen the Tombs of several Dukes of *Bretagne*; the Collegiate Church of the Virgin *Mary*, and some Parochial ones; divers Monasteries; the Town House built after the Modern Architecture; the Palace of the Chamber of Accounts; that of the Presidial Court, with a beautiful Tower and Clock; and a stately Hospital. This City is a great Mart for Trade; vast quantities of all sorts of Merchandizes are brought in by the River *Loire*, which flows up to its Walls, and brings up very large Boats, and Ships of small Burden; and from hence, by the same River Foreign Goods are sent to *Anjou*, *Blois*, *Orléans*, &c. and Native Commodities brought down; an excellent sort of Brandy is exported hence to Foreign Countries. By reason of this convenience of Traffick, the City has from time to time been largely encreased, and there are now 4 Suburbs round it, which are well filled with Inhabitants. A famous Edict in Favour of the Protestants was made here by King *Henry IV.* in the Year 1598, which was registred in the Parliament of *Paris*, and confirmed and sworn to by his Successor *Lewis XIII.* Notwithstanding which the present King hath repealed it in the Year 1685. and severely persecuted the Protestants.

*Ancenis*, *Ancenissum*, and *Andenesium*, was heretofore the chief Town of the *Amnites*, stands likewise near the Banks of *Loire*, and is distant 25 Miles from *Angers* to the West, and 18 from *Nantes* to the North-East. It was formerly defended with a Castle built by *Aremburg*, the Wife of a *Breton* Count, named *Gueree*, &c.

*Chateau Briant*, *Castrum Brientii*, is a small Town fenced with an old Castle on the Frontiers of *Anjou*, about 30 Miles from *Nantes* to the North East.

*Guerande*, *Guerada*, or *Aula Quiriaca*, is between the Mouths of the *Vilaine* and *Loire*, 38 Miles below *Nantes* to the West, and is remarkable on account



... of the adjacent Salt-pits, near the Port of *C. gill*.

*Maheacum, Machicolum*, is the chief Town of a small County commonly called the Duchy of *Retz*, and seated on the South-side of the *Loire*, about 10 Miles from it, 20 from *Nantes* to the South-West, 4 from the Frontiers of *Poitou*, and about 5 from the Coasts of the Ocean.

The Bishoprick or Diocess of *S. MALO, Episcopatus Maclovienfis*, is situated on the Northern Part of the Province near that of *Dol*, and includes these remarkable Towns, *viz.*

*S. Malo, Bishoprick.* } *Jocelin,*  
*Dinant,* } *Montfort,*

*S. Malo, Maclovi*, or *Maclovianopolis*, one of the chief Towns and Ports of the upper *Bretagne*, is seated on the Northern Coast, and built on a Rock in the Sea, call'd the Island of *S. Marou*, and joined to the Continent by the means of a long Causey of not above 30 Fathoms broad, the entrance whereof is defended by a strong Castle, flanked with large Towers, and the Town surrounded with Walls, deep Ditches, and always guarded with a sufficient Garrison; besides which to the Sea it is secured by a shoal of Sand that encompasses it, and several Rocks and small Islands, that make a Haven of difficult access, insomuch that it is reputed one of the Keys of France. It is considerable for its Traffick and Strength, and the skill of its Inhabitants in Maritime Affairs, by which means great numbers of Privateers are in time of War from hence fitted out, and much disturb the Trade of these Seas. It was founded on the Ruines of the ancient *Alet*, or *Guid-Aleth*, and derives its Name from that of its first Bishop *Maclovius*, or *Macutus*, and is distant 10 Miles from *Dol* to the North-West, 36 from *Rennes*, and 90 from *Nantes* to the North, and 200 Miles West from *Paris*. *St Malo* was at first only an Abby, until the Bishoprick of *Quidalet* was translated thither in the Year 1172. But it hath ever since retained the Title of an Episcopal See, under the Metropolitan of *Tours*. The Cathedral dedicated to *St. Vincent*, is one of the most ancient of all France. Besides the Cathedral, there are many fair Monasteries, and some other publick Buildings of good Note.

*Dinant, Dinantium*, stands on the Banks of the River *Rance*, about 15 miles from *S. Malo* to the South. This Town in time past hath been well Fortified, and hath conferr'd the Title of an Earl on the younger Sons of the Duke of *Bretagne*.

*Jocelin* is a small Town on the side of the River *Ouste* or *Aust*, near 40 Miles from *Rennes* to the West, and as many from *S. Brieux* to the South.

*Montford*, a small Town on the River *Melin*, which falls into the *Vilaine*, stands 10 miles from *Rennes* to the West.

The Diocess of *DOL, Episcopatus Dolenfis*, is of small extent, and adjoins to that of *S. Malo*; it lies in the North-East Angle of *Bretagne*, and bounded by the Frontiers of *Normandy* and the Ocean.

The City of *Dol, Dola*, and *Dolenfis Urbis*, is seated on a Marshy Plain, at the distance only of 6 Miles from the Coasts of the British Sea to the South, 10 from *St. Malo* to the South-East, and 130 from *Rennes* to the North. It takes up a very little space of Ground in compass, but is defended with a strong Fort. The Cathedral Church bears the Name of *S. Senjon*, who was the first Bishop of this Diocess; and some of his Successors have assumed the Title of Metropolitans of

the Province, which Pre-eminence nevertheless after a long Tryal at Law, was at length granted to the Archbishop of *Tours*.

The Bishoprick or Diocess of *S. BRIEUX, Episcopatus Briaensis*, lies on the West of *St. Malo*, between *Treguier* and *Vannes*, containing these Principal Towns, *viz.*

*S. Brieux, Bish.* } *Fagon.*  
*Pontrieux,* } *Lambale.*  
*Quintin,* }

*S. Brieux, Bricum*, or *Fannum Sancti Brieci*, is situated on the Gulf of *Hilion*, between the Rivers of *Tricu* and *Auguon*, being distant 25 Miles from *Treguier* to the East, 36 from *S. Malo* to the West, and 55 from *Rennes*. It is well fortified, and hath a convenient Harbour on the Coasts of the British Sea. This City takes its Name from *S. Brieux*, one of its Prelates. The Episcopal See was first Founded by *Neomene* Duke of *Bretagne*, in the time of King *Charles II.* surnamed the Bald, A. C. 144. and its Bishop is Suffragan to the Archbishop of *Tours*.

*Pontrieux*, is a good Town, seated on the River *Tricu*, from which it takes its Name, at the distance of about 10 Miles from the British Sea, and 20 from *S. Brieux* to the West.

*Quintin, Quintinum*, is a small Town, and stands about 10 Miles from *S. Brieux* to the South.

*Lambale, Lambulium*, was heretofore the chief Town of the *Asilates*, an ancient People mention'd by *Cesar* (according to the Opinion of *la Vigenere* and others) and sometime belonged to the House of *Cliffon*; it is distant only 10 or 12 Miles from the British Sea, 12 from *S. Brieux* to the East, and 45 from *Rennes* to the North-West. This place is especially Famous on the account of the adjacent Pastures, wherein are fed many Herds of Cattle, and for its considerable Trade in Parchment, &c.

The Bishoprick of *TREGUIER, Episcopatus Trecoriensis*, extends it self on the Northern Coasts of this Province, between *S. Brieux* and *S. Pol de Leon*, including these chief Towns, *viz.*

*Treguier, Bish.* } *Lannian,*  
*Morlaix,* } *Garlesquin.*  
*Guingamp,* }

*Treguier* or *Lantriguët*, *Trecera* or *Trecoium* anciently *Vorganium*, is a very ancient City on the Northern Coasts of *Bretagne*, and hath been often exposed to the Incursions of the Saxons, Danes and Normans. The Bishop is both Spiritual and Temporal Lord thereof, and assumes the Title of a Count. The Cathedral Church bears the Name of *S. Tudgal*, who was the first Prelate of this City. It hath a safe Harbour on the Coasts of the British Sea, and is distant 25 miles from *S. Brieux* to the North-west, 10 from *Pontrieux* to the North, 30 from *S. Pol de Leon* to the East, and 80 from *Rennes* to the North-West.

*Morlaix, Morlaem* or *Mons Relaxus*, situate on the side of a Hill, between two Valleys, near the Sea-Coasts, on a River of the same Name, which a little below falls into a Bay called *le Torcau*: It is a very large, well-built, and populous wall'd Town; the River is deep, and receives Vessels of 100 Tuns, which come up into the Town; by the convenience whereof it is a Place of good Trade, which consists in Flax, Canvass, Paper (made here in great quantity



city) Linen-Cloth and other Commodities that are exported hence to *England, Holland,* and other parts. This hath so increased the number of the Inhabitants, that two Suburbs have been added to the Town, which are named *Venice* and *S. Matthew*. Here are many beautiful Buildings, among which the Palace called *L'Hospital* is one of the stateliest in the Province, and magnificent Churches, whereof that of the *Virgin Mary* is the most noted. On the top of the Hill stands the remainder of an old Castle, now almost ruin'd. *Morlaix* is distant 30 Miles from *Treguier*, to the South-West, 40 from *Brieux* to the West, and 12 from *S. Pol de Leon* to the South-East.

The Bishoprick or Diocess of *S. POL DE LEON*, *Episcopatus S. Pauli Leonini*, is bounded on the North and West by the Ocean; on the South by the Bishoprick of *Quimper-Corentin*, and on the East by that of *Treguier*. The Principal Towns are these, viz.

<i>S. Pol de Leon</i> {Bish.	} <i>Brest,</i>	
<i>Lefneven,</i>		} <i>Portal,</i>
<i>Landerneau,</i>		} <i>The Isle of Ouessant, or Ushant, &amp;c.</i>

*S. Paul*, or *Pol de Leon*, or *Leonoul*, *Leona* & *Fanum Sancti Pauli Leonini*, or also *Staviocarus Portus*, & *Civitas Osismium*, was a considerable Town even in the time of *Julius Caesar*, who in his Commentaries makes mention of *Osismii*, whose Capital City (according to *Ptolemy*) was *Vorganicum*, which is called *Vorgium* in the Roman Itinerary, and *Osismii* in the *Notitia Imperii*; it hath been ruined long since, and of its ancient Diocess have been formed these three of *S. Pol de Leon*, *S. Brieux* and *Treguier*. This City is situated on the Sea-Coasts between *Lantriguet* or *Treguier* and *Brest*, and is distant about 30 miles from each, and 100 from *Rennes* to the West. It hath a safe Harbour, and is defended with a Fortress, wherein some of the Dukes of *Bretagne* have formerly resided. It is also at present an Episcopal See under the Metropolitan of *Tours*, and the Capital City of a small Territory called *Leonnois*; it had been possessed by its own proper Princes, until about the Year 1254, when *John I.* Duke of *Bretagne* purchased this Principality. Its first Bishop was named *Paul*, who died *Anno 600*, was canonized, and from him the City had its Name. The Chapter is composed of a Chanter, 3 Archdeacons, 16 Canons, 7 Prebendaries styled Vicars, &c. The Inhabitants speak the Low British Language more purely and elegantly than the other of the same Country.

*Landerneau*, stands on the Banks of the little River *Elorne*, which falls into the Bay of *Brest*; and is distant 24 miles from *S. Pol de Leon* to the South-West. It is noted for the Richness of the Soil of its Neighbouring Country.

*Brest*, *Britates Portus*, anciently *Gescribale* and *Gescribia*, is a famous Sea-Port Town, seated on the North-side of a large commodious Bay or Harbour, which opens to the Ocean in the most extreme Western part of the Continent of *France*. The Entrance of this Harbour called the *Goulet*, is exceeding difficult by reason of certain Rocks, known by the Names of *Minors*, *Filets*, and *Mingant*, that lie under Water at high Tide, and is therefore the more secure Retreat for the French King's Ships of War, for which this is the only Port he has on this side the *Mediterranean*. Wherefore this Town is one of the Grand Magazines of the Admiralty of *France*; *Toulon* in the *Mediterranean* being the other; and in this Harbour the greatest number of the French Navy,

as in that the Ships of greatest Burthen Winter, and are fitted out. The Naval Stores and Provisions for 70 Sail of Men of War are laid up in this Town, and Ships of 80 and 90 Guns are built here, which makes *Brest* a populous and rich Place. It is well fortified after the modern manner, with strong Walls and a Castle well sustained with Outworks and Batteries. It is distant 35 miles from *S. Pol de Leon* to the South-West, and 15 from the Promontory of *Conquet*.

*Conquet* is a small Sea-Town, situate near the Southern Cape of the Bay of *Brest*, not considerable, and only mentioned because it gives name to the Road between it and the Islands of *Belinquier*, *Molines*, &c.

The Island of *OUESSANT* or *USHANT*, *Uxentius*, *Uxantis*, and *Uxentissena*, called *Axantos* by *Pliny*, and *Uxantissena* by *Antonius*, lies at the distance of 30 Miles Westward from *Brest*, and is not above 20 Miles in compass; nevertheless it hath obtained the Title of a Marquisate. It is fortified with a Castle, and contains some rich Towns of Note.

The Bishoprick of *QUIMPER-CORENTIN*, is bounded on the N. by that of *S. Pol de Leon*, on the W. and S. by the Ocean, and by the Diocess of *Vannes* to the E. and takes up the S. W. Corner of the Lower *Bretagne*, and contains these remarkable Towns, viz.

<i>Quimper-Corentin</i> , B.	} <i>Dourvarenes,</i>	
<i>Concorneau,</i>		} <i>Chatee-Lin,</i>
<i>Quimperlay,</i>		} <i>Guirene, &amp;c.</i>

*Quimper-Corentin*, *Corisopitum*, anciently *Curiosotiva*, is the Metropolis of a small Territory in the Lower *Bretagne*, named *Cornouaille* from the County of *Cornwall* in *England*, whence the City it self is also sometimes, tho' improperly, called *Cornouaille*. Its ancient Name is *Kemper* or *Quimper*, whereto *Corentin* was added from that of its first Bishop, who is supposed to have been ordained by *S. Martin* of *Tours*, its Episcopal See being as yet subject to that Metropolitan. This City was heretofore possessed by its own Counts or Earls; it is of a large extent, well built, and very considerable for its Traffick, and situated on the *Oder*, into which a small River falls that surrounds the Town, and makes it a kind of an Island. The *Oder* is so deep, that Barks of a large size are convey'd at high Tide to the Port, at the confluence of the two Rivers, where stands the Suburbs term'd, *The Duke's Land*, inhabited by many rich Merchants. The Cathedral is a stately Edifice, and of much Antiquity, adorn'd with two large Towers: There are also divers other Churches, and Monasteries, and the Bishops Palace, which is a very magnificent Pile of Building. This City stands about 12 Miles from the Southern Shore of *Bretagne*, and 30 from *Brest* to the South, and from *Rennes* about 120 to the West.

*Concorneau*, *Conquerneau*, *Concorneum*, is a well fortified Town and Castle on the Sea-Coast, lying between *Blavet* and *Penmark*, 15 Miles from *Quimper-Corentin* to the South-East.

*Quimperlay*, *Quimperlaum*, is a reasonable good Town seated at the confluence of the two little Rivers *Ifotta* and *Laitta*, about 8 Miles from the Sea-Coasts, and 30 from *Quimper-Corentin* to the East.

*Dourvarenes*, a small Town about 10 Miles N. W. from *Quimper-Corentin*, gives name to a large Bay, adjoining to that of *Brest*.

The Bishoprick or Diocess of *VANNES*, is bounded on the South by the Ocean, on the E. by the Diocess of *Nantes*, on the N. by that of *S. Brieux*, and



*Quimper-Correnin*. The

*May, Malestroit, &c. and Belle-Ile.*

*Quimper-Correnin*, or *Quimper*, or *Darionigum Venetorum*, the Capital City of the *Lower Bretagne*, stands on an incommodious Bay, being fill'd with little Islands, into which the Sea flows through a Chancel named *Morvan*, and is distant 55 miles from *Rennes* to the S.W. somewhat less from *Nantes* to the West, and from *Quimper-Correnin* to the East. It is defended with an old Castle called *L'Hermire*, which was formerly a Palace of the Dukes of *Bretagne*. The Cathedral dedicated to *S. Peter*, hath a considerable Chapter, and divers other fair Churches contribute much to render it a splendid City; but the Fury of the Civil Wars hath diminish'd part of its ancient Lustre.

*Port Louis*, or *Blavet*, *Portus Ludovici* or *Blavetum*, is a small but well Fortified Town on the Mouth of the River *Blavet*, that takes its rise near the Burgh or Village of *Grace* in the Diocese of *S. Brioux*, and discharges itself into the Sea at the Port of *Blavet*; which is a capacious and safe Harbour, and distant 25 Miles from *Vannes* to the W. and near 40 from *Quimper-Correnin* to the E.

*Hannebon*, *Hannebontum*, stands on the Banks of the same River *Blavet*, about 8 Miles from *Blavet* to the North, and 26 from *Vannes* to the W.

*Belle-Ile*, *Calonesus*, a considerable Island on the Southern Coasts of the Province of *Bretagne*, lies at the distance of about 3 or 4 Leagues from the Continent of

*France*, and is almost encompassed with small Isles or Rocks. Its extent from W. to E. is about 10 Miles, and its greatest breadth about 5 Miles. It hath a fair Haven and some strong Forts over-against *Vannes* and *May*. The whole Island is at present divided into 4 Parishes, and tho' of a small compass, yet affords much good Pasture-Ground for Cattle. It is also remarkable for its Salt-Pits, and on the account of the frequent Passage of Vessels along the adjacent Coasts, but especially because it is the usual Rendezvous of the French Fleet, when they put to Sea. *Belle-Ile* was heretofore possessed by the Monks of the Abby of *S. C.rix* of *Quimper*, till King *Charles IX.* erected it into a Marquisate, and bestow'd it on the Count of *Raie*, A. D. 1573. The Abby hath been also endow'd for sometime with so plentiful a Revenue, that it was esteem'd a competent Preferment for *Antony* of *Bourbon*, base Brother to King *Henry IV.* to be created Lord Abbot thereof. The Principal Place bearing the Name of the Town, is adorn'd with a very stately Citadel or Castle, called the Palace, and so well fenced of late with Ramparts and other Works, according to the modern Method of Fortification, that it seems to be almost impregnable.

The Governor-General of *Bretagne* hath under him two Lieutenants-General, whereof one hath the Inspection of all the Province except the County of *Nantes*, under whom are two Lieutenants. The other hath the care of that County only. There are also particular Governours in these Places, *viz.* *Nantes*, *Vannes*, *S. Malo*, *Dinant*, *Vitre*, *Brest*, *Quimper*, *Blavet*, and *Belle-Ile*.

## CHAP. VII.

### L'ORLEANNOIS, or, The Government of Orleans.

THE Government of *ORLEANNOIS* is one of the most Fruitful and Pleasant Countries of *France*, and its Jurisdiction is one of the largest extent, as comprehending 14 or 15 small Provinces, every one of which hath its particular Governor. This Government takes its Name from *Orleans*, its chief City, but Appeals lie from thence to the Parliament of *Paris*. It is extended from East to West, that is to say, from the Castle of *Chinon* in *Nivernois*, as far as the Coasts of the Ocean, the space of about 270 miles; and 190 Miles from South to North, *viz.* from *Moubrun* in *Angoumois* to *Nonancourt* in *Normandy*; It is bounded on the North by the Ile of *France* and *Normandy*; on the East by *Champagne* and *Burgundy*; on the South by *Xaintonge*, *Perigot*, *la Marche*, and *Bourbonnois*; and on the West by *Bretagne* and the Sea: and it lies from South to North between the 45th degree 40 minutes, and the 48th degree 50 Minutes of Latitude; and also from West to East, between the 15th to the 21 degree of Longitude, which ought to be understood of its greatest length and breadth.

The Soil is extremely rich, plentifully bringing forth Corn, Fruits, Wine, and every thing necessary for the support of human Life, abounding likewise in verdant Meadows, Arable Land and Woods. The great City of *Orleans* is especially remarkable, containing 87,000 Acres of Land, and double that in the time of *Francis I.* The principal Rivers are the *Loire*, into which the *Indre*, the *Cher*, and the *Vienne*, enlarged

with the Streams of the *Creuse*, discharge themselves between *Montereau* and *Langeft* in *Touraine*: The *Maine* in like manner being joined to the *Sartes* a little above *Angers*, falls into the same River *Loire* about a League below that City. The *Aller* also falls into the *Loire* a little below *Nevers*. Lastly, the *Charante* takes its rise in *Angoumois*, passeth through *Xaintonge*, and runs into the Sea over against the Island of *Oleron*.

Orleans in general divided into Fifteen Counties or Provinces, viz.	1. Orleannois, properly so call'd, chief City.	Orleans.
	2. Blaisois.	Blais.
	3. Beauce, proper.	Chartres.
	4. Perche.	Nugent le Rotrou.
	5. Maine.	Mans.
	6. Vendomois.	Vendosme.
	7. Anjou.	Angers.
	8. Poitou.	Poitiers.
	9. Aunis.	Rochelle.
	10. Angoumois.	Angoulême.
	11. Touraine.	Tours.
	12. Berry.	Bourges.
	13. Nivernois.	Nevers.
	14. Part of Gaslinois.	Montargis.
	15. The Islands of Oleron, Rhe and Oye, Nermontier and Arnot.	



ORLEANNOIS, properly so call'd, lies between Berry, Gersinois, Beauce and Brie. The most considerable Towns of this Country are these, viz.

Orleans, Bifa.	} } S. N.
Baugency,	
La Ferté Seneterre.	
or S. Ailin.	
	} } Gergeau.

ORLEANS, *Arelia, Aurelianensis Urbs*, anciently *Ormatum*, is one of the principal Cities of France; it is situate on the River *Loire*, on the side of a Hill, and in Form of a Bow. It's a very ancient City, and by some said to have been built by the *Druids*; or according to others by the Emperor *Marcus Aurelius*, A. D. 163. who gave it the name. The Buildings are for an Imperial, though old: The Fortifications are a Terrace and strong Wall, with 40 Towers on it.

In the middle of the City there is a Bridge over the *Loire*, built of Stone upon 16 Arches, which leads to one of the Suburbs. On this Bridge stands a Statue of the Virgin *Mary*, and on her right, at some distance a statue of King *Charles VII* and on her left one of the Famous Virago, *Jean d'Arc*, all three of Copper. This City was the Capital of a separate Kingdom in the first Ages of the French Monarch: At present it bears the Title of a Duchy, which is appropriated to the second Sons of the Kings of France. It is also the See of a Bishop, who is Suffragan to the Archbishop of *Paris*, and adorn'd with a Famous University, Founded by King *Philip the Fair*.

The Cathedral is a venerable and sumptuous building; its Chapter consists of 59 Canons, and 12 Dignitaries: Besides the Cathedral, here are 4 Collegiate and 22 Parochial Churches. A Generality is establish'd here (to which 12 Elections, containing 1148 Parishes resort) and also a Bailiage and Presidial. The Country round it is very Fruitful and Pleasant, and the River furnishes them with the Commodities of Foreign Nations from *Nantes*, as well as the Product of their own from the more Southern Provinces. *Orleans* hath sustain'd divers Sieges; *Astil* King of the *Huns* invest'd it A. D. 450. but it was reliev'd, and the *Huns* totally routed by *Aetius* the Roman General, assisted by *Merovaeus* the French King, and *Turabrick* the Goth. In the year 1423. our English Forces under the command of *Thomas Marmont*, Earl of *Salisbury* besieged this City, and reduc'd it to great distress, but a certain Maid of 18 years old, call'd *Jean of Arc*, came to the King of France, and pretending her assistance from God, put on Man's Habit and Armour, and having got into *Orleans*, did so animate the besieged, that by their frequent Sallies, in which *Jean* was always the foremost, they forc'd the English to raise the Siege, having lost the Earl of *Salisbury*, the Lord *Arden*, the Lord *Pymings*, and many Soldiers. This Woman was for some time the Director of the French Armies, in which she had great success, till at length being taken by the English, she was burnt for a Witch. In the Civil War the Protestants made themselves Masters of this City; and being besieged by the Duke of *Guise*, he was treacherously slain by *John Perce* Feb. 14. 1563. and a Month after a Peace was concluded and the City surrendered. But in 1567. the Protestants again seiz'd it, and for a long time it was their Head Quarters. *Orleans* is situate as hath been said, upon the River *Loire*, and is distant 100 Miles from *Paris* to the S. and 120 from *Amboise* to the East. 22 from *Bourdeaux* to the N. E. 110 from *Loire* to the N. W. 130 from the *Loire* to the S. W. 60 from *Tours*,

and 30 from *Blois* to the E. 55 from *Baugency* to the N. and 70 from *Sens* to the W.]

*Sully*, *Sulliacum*, and *La Ferté-Seneterre*, or *S. Ailin*, are two Towns of good Note, both bearing the Title of Duchies; the former is seated on the *Loire*, 2 miles above *Orleans* to the E. and the other 10 miles from the same City to the South-East.

*Gergeau*, or *Gergeau*, *Gergorium*, stands in like manner on the Banks of the *Loire*, 10 miles above *Orleans* to the East. Our English Forces gain'd this Town from the French, A. D. 1420. but *John II. Duke of Alençon*, retook it by Storm in the year ensuing.

*BLIASOIS*, *Blesensis Ager*, is extended between *Berry*, *Orleannois* proper, whereof it is a part, *Beauce*, *Perche*, *Vendomois*, and *Touraine*, the chief Towns of this Country are,

Blois,	} } Mer.
Chateau Dun,	

*Blois*, *Blesæ*, and *Blesense Castrum*, the chief Town of a Territory of the same Name, is seated on the side of an Hill near the South Banks of the River *Loire* over which is built a fair stone Bridge at the distance of 30 Miles from *Orleans* to the West, and as many from *Tours*. It is honoured with the Title of a County, and beautified with a most magnificent Castle, not long since repair'd by *Gaston* Duke of *Orleans*, who (by reason of the pleasantness of the Place, and who somnolent of the Air) hath often afforded a Royal Seat to the Kings of France, and wherein one of them viz. *Lewis XII* was born. Besides that, it hath heretofore afforded Nurture to many young Princes of the Royal Family; not to mention that the first Counts of *Blois* were descended from *Hugh Capet*. Moreover the spacious Park and adjacent Garden are much admir'd by Travellers; it may perhaps not be amiss to observe that divers Queens of France have died at *Blois*, particularly *Ann* the Wife of *Charles VIII.* and *Lewis XII.* A. D. 1514. *Maud* the Wife of *Francis I.* in 1524, and *Catherine of Medicis* the Wife of *Henry II.* in 1589. In the year 1562. this City being possessed by the Protestants, was taken and sack'd by the King's Forces under the Duke of *Guise*. In 1576. the Assembly of the Estates of the Kingdom were convoc'd hither by King *Henry III.* to accommodate the Differences between the Hugonots and the Papists, but broke up in a little time without effecting it. Again, in the Year 1588. they met here upon occasion of the great Disorder the Kingdom was brought into by the Holy League, and the Duke of *Guise*, the Head of it, was here slain in the Castle by the King's command.

*Chateau Dun*, *Castellodunum*, called corruptly *Chaudun*, is a neat well built Town, and the Capital of the small Country of *Dunois*. It hath an old Castle and is distant 25 Miles from *Blois* to the North, and 20 from *Vendôme* to the East; it is seated upon a small River, which ariseth about 20 Miles from hence, and bears the name of the *Loire* also, and falls into the great Stream at *Nevers*.

*Remoretin*, or *Ramoretin*, *Remoretinum*, *Remoretum*, and *Ritus Meretino*, is a good Town, seated upon a small River, that a little below falls into the *Loire*, and is distant 25 Miles from *Blois* to the South-East. Those Geographers that call this part the *Lower Orleannois*, make this Town the Capital of another Division named *Sologne*.

*BEAUCY* or *BEAUCE*, *Belfia*, lies between the Isle of France, *Perche*, *Brie*, *Brie*, and *Orleannois*; and its most remarkable Towns are



Chartres, Bish. }  
Nogent-le-Roy. }  
Dreux. } Caillartion.  
Bonnetal.  
Espernon.

*Chartres*, *Carnutum*, *Carnutes*, or *Autricum*, the Metropolis of the Province of *Beauvais*, and of the Territory of *Chartain*, is situated on a Hill, and on the Banks of the River *Eure*, 45 miles from *Paris* to the South-west, and as many from *Orleans* to the North. It is an Episcopal See under the Archbishop of *Paris*. This City and its Territories were sometimes subject to its own Counts, but united to the Crown, in 1528. And *Francis I.* erected it into a Dutchy in Favour of *Madam Renee* of *France*, Dutchess of *Ferrara*. It is an ancient City, but fair and well-built; the Streets are narrow, but the publick Places are spacious, and the Houses neat; the Churches are magnificent, especially the Cathedral, which is remarkable for its beautiful Quire, Church under Ground, and two very fine Steeples; the Chapter is compos'd of 72 Canons, and 17 Dignitaries; within the Diocess are contain'd 30 Abbies, 257 Priories, and above 1300 Parishes. *Rollo* Duke of *Normandy* Besieg'd the City of *Chartres*, A. D. 911, and in 1019, it was almost entirely consum'd by Fire. In 1568, the French Protestants in vain besieg'd it. It adher'd to the League-Party, and stood out against *Henry IV.* who at length took it, and caus'd himself to be Crown'd therein, A. D. 1591.

*Nogent-le-Roy*, *Nonigentum*, or *Nogentum Regium*, stands on the Banks of the River *Eure*, where it first begins to be Navigable, 12 miles from *Chartres* to the North, and 8 from *Dreux* to the South. This Town about five Ages ago, was named *Nogent l' Erembert*, *Nonigentum Erembertium*, according to the report of the French Historiographer *Du Chesne*, and is remarkable for the Death of King *Philip* of *Valois*, which happen'd there on the 22d Day of *April*, A. D. 1350.

*Dreux*, *Drocum*, the chief Town of a County of the same name, is seated on the River, at the Foot of a Hill, on which is erected a Castle, formerly well Fortified, but now half ruin'd. It is a very ancient Town, and said to be built by *Druis* a King of the *Gauls*. It is distant about 20 miles from *Chartres* to the North, and 40 from *Paris* to the West. *Robert* the Son of *Lewis* the *Great*, obtained the County of *Dreux* in 1137, and from him are descended the Counts of this Name as also a branch of the Family of the Dukes of *Bretagne*. This place is Famous for a bloody Battle fought near it, between the French Roman Catholics and Protestants, A. D. 1652.

*PERCHE*, *Perticus*, is bounded on the North, by *Normandy*, on the West by *Maine*, on the South by *Vendomois*, and on the East by *Beauce*. It is usually divided into the Upper, or the County; and the Lower, or *Perche Comtee*, from the name of one of its ancient Lords. Its chief Towns are,

Nogent-le-Retrou, }  
Mortagne, } Timerais, D.  
La Pierriere.

*Nogent-le-Retrou*, *Nonigentum Retrudum*, anciently *Nichonum* or *Nichinum*, is situated on the River *Huisne*, almost in the midlt between *Chartres* to the East, and *Mans* to the West, about 33 miles from each. It is the principal Town of the upper *Perche*, and generally esteem'd the fairest throughout the whole Kingdom of *France*, and is very much enrich'd by divers Manufactures, particularly of Silks, Linen-

Cloth and Leather. The Earl of *Salisbury* took this place during the Wars betwixt the English and the French in the XVth Century, and caus'd many of the Inhabitants to be Hang'd; but the French King *Charles VII.* recover'd it, A. D. 1449.

*Mortagne*, *Mortania*, stands on a Hill and a Brook which begins to Form the River *Huisne*, or *Uaigne*, about 8 miles from the Frontiers of *Normandy*, and 40 from *Chartres* to the West. It is a very pleasant Town, and adorn'd with divers fair Churches, a Castle, &c.

*Timerais*, *Timerensis Pagus*, is a Town on the Confines of *Normandy*, 30 miles from *Nogent*, bearing the Title of a Principality.

*LE MAINE*, *Ager Meduani*, hath *Normandy* for its Northern Bounds, *Perche*, *Vendomois*, and *Beauce* on the East, *Bretagne* on the West, and *Anjou* on the South. It is usually divided into the Upper and Lower, and contains these chief Towns, viz.

Mans, Bish. }  
Mayenne, D. } La Ferte Bernard.  
Laval. } Sable.  
Beaumont-le-Roche.  
Chateau-du-Loire, &c.

*Mans*, *Cenomenum* anciently, as also *Vindinum*, is situate on the Confluence of the *Sarte* and the *Huisne*, about 60 miles from *Chartres* to the W, 25 from the Confines of *Normandy* to the South, and 40 from *Tours* to the North. It is a very ancient City, but hath been much more considerable than it is at present: For *Aimoin* assures us, that under *Charlemagne* it was one of the most flourishing of *Gallia Belgica*; since which time, the Incursions of the *Normans*, the Wars of the *English*, and the frequent Conflagrations it hath suffer'd, have so far defac'd its Beauty, that it hath often chang'd its Form. However, a Presidial Court is held therein, and it is as yet the See of a Prelate Suffragan to the Archbishop of *Tours*. The Cathedral Church was at first dedicated to the Virgin *Mary*, afterward to *S. Grevaee*, and at length to *S. Julian*, who was the first Bishop of this Diocess.

*Mayenne*, *Maduana*, is pleasantly seated on a River of the same name, 15 miles from the Frontiers of *Normandy*, and 35 from *Mans* to the North-West. This Town formerly bore the Title of a Marquisate and was afterwards erected into a Dutchy, and given to the Family of *Guise*.

*Laval*, or *Laval-Guion*, *Lavallium* or *Valis Guionis*, is situated on the River *Mayenne*, about 16 miles below *Mayenne*, and 15 from the Confines of *Anjou*, to the North. It appertains to the Noble Family of *Tremouille*, and is chiefly remarkable for its Manufacture of Linen-Cloth.

*La Ferte-Bernard*, *Firmitas Bernardi*, is a large Town, built on the side of the River *Huisne*, near the Frontiers of *Perche*. It is distant 25 miles from *Mans* to the East. A Court of Justice is held therein at certain times.

The Dutchy of *ANJOU* borders on *Maine* to the North, *Bretagne* to the West, *Poitou* to the South, and *Touraine* to the East, including about 30 Leagues in length, and 20 in breadth. It affords vast quantities of excellent Wine, and Quarries of Slate, with which all the Houses are cover'd, and is water'd with 36 Rivers, the chief of which are the *Loire*, the *Sarte*, the *Loyre*, the *Mayenne*, the *Dive*, the *Vienna*, the *Touay*, the *Larion*, the *Eure*, and the *Guinate*, besides so great a number of Lakes, Ponds, Brooks, and Springs, that some are of Opinion, that the name of *Anjou* is deriv'd from *Aiguade*, signifying Water. This Province was given by *Charles* the Bald to *Robert* of *Sevray*, A. D. 870, with the Title of Earl of *Anjou*,

whole



whole Son of the King of France, and his Great Grandson of the Count, began the third Race of those Monarchs. *Charle the Great*, Father of *King Charle*, gave it to *Count Foulques*, A.D. 926, whole Grandson of the Province of *Tours*. By Conquest, and by Descentant *Foulques III.* obtained it of *Maie*, and by Marriage A.D. 1144. Which *Foulques* was Father to *Count the Holy* and of *Maie*, Daughter to *King Henry I.* who was married with *Steph.* for the Crown of *England*, which her Son *Henry II.* obtained, and added to it the *Islands*, which continued under the Dominions of the French Crown till the time of *King John*, when *King John*, the French King took it, A.D. 1200. And it is now an Appenage of the Second Son of France. It is usually divided into Upper and Lower, the former being the Capital of the Province, and seat of the *Parliament*. The chief Towns are,

<i>Angers, Bish.</i>	}	<i>Blois.</i>
<i>Saumur.</i>		<i>Chateaux-Gontier.</i>
<i>La Flèche.</i>		<i>Pont de Ce.</i>
<i>Le Mans.</i>		<i>Beaugency.</i>

*Angers, Andegorum*, anciently *Juliacum*, is seated very pleasantly and in a good Air, at the Confluence of the Rivers *Mayne* and *Saure*, and the upper Stream of the *Loire* being distant only one League from the great Stream of the *Loire* to the North, 25 miles from *Saumur* to the West, 40 from *Nantes* to the E. and 55 from *Mans* to the S. W. The greater part of the Town, properly called the City, is built on the side of a pleasant Hill, on which stands the Castle, built on a Rock, flanked with 18 large round Towers and a Half-Moon, and encompassed with a broad flat-bottomed Ditch, cut out of the same Rock on the side of the River, from whence all necessary Provisions are drawn up with Engines. The City is large, well-built and Populous, and hath a good Trade, which consists chiefly in White-Wines, whereof the best in France are made in this Province. The Cathedral Dedicated to *S. Maurice*, is a beautiful Building, and remarkable for its three high Staircases over the Gate, its Body supported without Pillars, and its exceeding rich Treasures. There are also 15 other Parochial Churches, three Abbeys, viz. Those of *St. Albin*, *St. Maurice*, *St. Sulpice*, and a great number of Monasteries, Seminaries, &c. The Episcopal See depends on the Metropolitan of *Tours*. The Civil Government of the City is administered by the Mayor and 24 *Eschevins* or Aldermen. The University here was founded by *Lewis II. Duke of Anjou*, A.D. 1388. and is now in flourishing State, and contains divers Colleges, of which that of the *Port du Fer* and the *Oratory* are most noted.

*Saumur, Sammarum*, or *Salmariam*, anciently *Truacum*, is seated on the River *Loire*, over which it hath a long Stone-bridge, at the distance of 25 miles from *Angers* to the East, 50 from *Mans* to the South, and 30 from *Le Mans* to the East. The situation of the Place is very delightful, and on that account very much admired by Strangers. The Town is adorned with a fine Castle well Fortified; the Church of *Ardillien*, wherein the Fathers of the *Oratory* officiate and have a College, is the most notable in the Town. Here was formerly a Famous Protestant Academy, frequented with Students, not only of Natives, but also young Gentlemen out of *England*, *Germany*, and *Switzerland*; but since the Persecution this hath been destroy'd.

*La Flèche, Fataia*, stands on the Banks of the up-

per Stream of the *Loire* in the Upper *Anjou*, near the Confines of *Maine*, being distant 30 miles from *Saumur* to the North, 28 from *Angers* to the North-East, and about 25 from *Mans* to the South. In this Town is a magnificent College of *Jesuits*, Founded in the year 1603, by *King Henry IV.* containing three Courts, and as many Rows of Apartments, capable of entertaining a Prince. Here is also a Castle, in the Chapel whereof is interr'd the Heart of *King Henry IV.*

*Brissac, Brissacum*, is seated in a Fertile Country near the Bridge of *Ce* over the *Loire*, about 12 miles from *Angers* to the South. It is a Town of small compass, nevertheless dignified with the Title of a Dutchy, erected in Favour of *Charles de Cossy* Marshal of France. It is also adorn'd with a fair Castle, a spacious Park, a Pond extending almost a League in length, &c.

*VENDOMOIS*, a very small Country, lies between *Perche* on the North, *Maine* on the West, *Touraine* on the South, and *Blaisois* on the East. It is a very small Province, not above 20 miles in Extent, and contains not many Towns; the chief are

*Vendosme, Montoire.*

*Vendosme, Vindocinum*, is situate on the River *Loire*, 25 miles from *Chateau-Dun* to the South-West, 20 from *Blois*, to the North-West, and 30 from *Orleans* to the West. It is defended with an Old Castle, and bears the Title of a Dutchy, whereof *Charles of Bourbon*, Grand-Father to *Henry IV.* was the first Duke. A College of the Fathers of the *Oratory*, and some other Religious Houses, are Founded here.

*Montoire*, stands also on the *Loire*, about 12 miles below *Vendosme*, and is a good Town, but of no signal Note.

*POICTOU*, a large Province, is bounded on the East by *Berry*, *Limousin*, and *Touraine*; on the N. by *Anjou* and *Bretagne*, on the W. by the Ocean, and on the South by *Angoumois* and *Saintonge*. It is usually divided into the Upper to the East, and the Lower to the West, and is a very Fruitful Country, supplied also with plenty of Fish from the Neighbouring Sea, and Venison from the Inland Forests. It is also beset with many fair Towns, and Villages, the chief of which are these, viz.

<i>Poitiers, Bish.</i>	}	<i>Richelieu.</i>
<i>Lusen, Bish.</i>		<i>Niort.</i>
<i>Chateaufort.</i>		<i>Rochechouart.</i>
<i>Maillezais.</i>		<i>Fontevault.</i>
<i>Lusignan.</i>		<i>Thouars.</i>
<i>Loudun.</i>		<i>Parthenay.</i>
<i>Fontenay.</i>		<i>St. Mairant, &amp;c.</i>
<i>Mirabeau.</i>		

*Poitiers, Pictavium*, anciently *Limoum*, one of the most ancient and largest Cities of the Kingdom, but not proportionably Opulent, there being Corn-fields and Meadows within the Walls. It is seated on a rising Ground between the River *Clain*, which falls into the *Vienne*, and another Rivulet that springs out of a large Pond, and is joyned to the former at the Eastern end of the Town, near the Gate of *S. Lazare*, where stands an old Castle, together with some remains of an Amphitheatre, and other Roman Monuments. It is an Episcopal See, dependant on the Metropolitan of *Bordeaux*. Besides the Cathedral, the



pos'd to be founded by S. *Martial*, and dedicated to S. *Peter*, there are 24 Parochial Churches, 5 Abbies, and a great number of other Monasteries. Here is also an University, Founded by King *Charles VII.* A. D. 1431. *Poitiers* is a Senechalcy subordinate to the Parliament of *Paris*, besides which Court, here is also a Presidial and a Generality. The Civil Government is administr'd by a Mayor, 12 Eschevins or Aldermen, and 12 sworn Counsellors: The Mayor bears the Title of a Captain and Governor of *Poitiers*, and the Privilege of Nobility and many other Honours and Advantages are granted by the French Kings, to the Person that enjoys this Dignity. The City is distant 28 miles from the River *Loire* to the South, 100 from *Orleans* to the South-West, 65 from *Angers* to the South-East, 90 from the Sea-Coast to the East, 70 from *Saintes* to the North-East, and about 100 from *Bourges* to the West.

*Lucon*, or *Luffon*, *Lucione*, is a City of a very small Compass, and destitute of Walls, situated in a Marshy Ground, near the Confines of the Country of *Aunis*, at the distance of about six miles from the Ocean, 20 from *Maillezais*, and 70 from *Poitiers* to the West. Pope *John XXII.* establish'd its Episcopal See, changing an Abbey of the *Benedictine* Order into a Cathedral, A. D. 1317. One *Lucius* is reported to have founded the Abbey and given Name to the City.

*Maillezais*, *Malleacum*, is a small City or Town, built on an Island form'd amidst the Marshes, by the Rivers *Saure* and *Autise*, being distant 30 miles from *Rochelle* to the North-East, and 50 from *Poitiers* to the South-West. It was heretofore the Place of Residence of the Counts of *Boitou* and Dukes of *Guienne*, but at present is not much inhabited by reason of the unwholsomeness of the Air. The Abbey of *Maillezais* was also erected into an Episcopal See, under the Metropolitan of *Bordeaux*, by Pope *John XXII.* in the year 1317. but *Innocent X.* caused it to be suppress'd A. D. 1649. and translated it to *Rochelle*.

*Lusignan*, *Lusignanum*, stands on the Banks of the *Vonne*, near 20 miles from *Poitiers* to the South-West, on the Road to *Rochelle* and *Bordeaux*. This Town is more-especially famous for the Valour of its illustrious Lords, who were Kings of *Cyprus*, *Jerusalem*, and *Armenia*. The Castle of *Lusignan*, sometime esteem'd as impregnable, was surprized by Mr. *Troligni*, for the French Protestants, A. 1569. But the Prince of *Montpensier*, retook it, after a Siege of eight Months, in 1574, and dismantled its Fortifications.

*Chateaufort*, a good Town on the River *Vienne*, about 20 miles from *Poitiers* to the North, and on the Road to *Blois* and *Paris*, hath the Title of a Dukedom, sometimes possess'd by the *Hamiltons* of *Scotland*, at present by *Mademoiselle Montpensier* the King's Aunt.

*Richelieu*, *Richelium*, or *Ricolocus*, formerly a small Village; but this being the Place of Birth of that great Minister of State Cardinal *Richelieu*, he Rebuilt it and adorned it with a stately Palace and an Academy, and obtain'd it to be erected into a Dukedom and Peerage. It is seated on a little Rivulet that falls into the *Vienne*, and is distant 16 miles from *Chateaufort* to the West, and 28 from *Poitiers* to the North.

*Loudun*, is a considerable wall'd Town, and gives name to the Country about it: It hath a Castle, which with the Town, hath a particular Governor. Here is a Nunnery of *Ursellines*, famous not many years ago, for the Imposture the Nuns were guilty of, in pretending themselves Bewitch'd by the Curate of the

Parish, whom they barbarously caused to be Executed. This Town stands about 10 miles from *Richelieu* to the West, and 20 from *Saumur* to the South-East.

The small Country of *AUNIS*, *Aluensis*, *Alnetensis*, or *Aluensis Tractus*, lies to the South of *Poitou*, and to the East of *Saintonge* proper, whereof it is a part, and bounded on the West by the Ocean, and the Islands of *Rhe* and *Oleron*: Its principal Towns are these, viz.

*Rochelle*, Bish. } } *Marans*,  
*Rochefort*, } } *Brouage*.

*ROCHELLE*, *Rupella*, formerly *Portus Santonum* hath been always a very considerable Port and Mart-town; it is distant only two Leagues from the Island of *Rhe*, 4 from that of *Oleron*, 10 miles from the confines of *Poitou* to the South, about 30 from *Saintes* to the North-West, and 70 from *Poitiers* to the South-West. This City, being the chief Seat of the Protestants, suffered much during the Civil Wars of *France*, and was often valiantly defended, and long possess'd by that Party, till at length *Lewis XIII.* after a long and famous Siege made himself Master of it in the year 1628, chiefly by the means of an admirable Rampart or Bank of Earth which Cardinal *Richelieu* caus'd to be rais'd against it on the side of the Ocean: After it was taken, the King caus'd the Walls and Fortifications to be demolish'd, except only two Towers, which defend the Port. Afterward, in 1649, the Episcopal See of *Maillezais* was removed thither; the Island of *Rhe*, together with many other neighbouring Places, to the number of about 100 Towns and Villages, being taken from the Diocess of *Saintonge* and added to this, as appears by the Consistorial Decree made on that occasion.

*Rochefort*, *Rupifortium*, hath a convenient Harbour at the Mouth of the River *Charante*, capable of receiving Men of War: It was at first only a small Village, but for the sake of its Port, hath of late been wall'd round and fortified with strong Bastions and Ramparts, and some of the smaller of the King's Ships of War being laid up here, a Magazine is kept well stored with all sorts of Ammunition for their Service, and an Hospital built for infirm Sea-men. This Town is distant about 5 miles from the Sea-Coasts, and 15 from *Rochelle* to the South.

*Brouage*, *Broagium*, anciently call'd *Jacquez Ville*, *Jacobopolis* is a small Town and Port, very well fortified, and seated in a Marsh, near the Salt-works, being distant almost 3 Leagues from the Mouth of the *Charante* to the South, 8 from *Rochelle*, 4 from *Royan*, and 8 from *Saintes* to the West.

*ANGOUMOIS*, lies on the South of *Poitou*, and is bounded on the West by *Saintonge*, on the South by *Perigord*, and on the East by *Lymosin* and *La Marche*, being extended 50 miles in length, and about 35 in breadth; The chief Towns in it are,

*Angoulesme*, Bish. } } *Rochefort*,  
*Cognac*, } } *Farnac*.

*Angoulesme*, *Engolisma*, or *Inculisma*, anciently *Ratiastum*, is seated on the top of a Hill, near the River *Charante*, about 50 miles from *Poitiers* to the S. 30 from *Saintes* to the E. and 40 from *Limoges* to the W. It is a very ancient City, adorn'd with the Titles of a Duchy and Senechalcy, and hath a Presidial and Election. It is also an Episcopal See under the Metropolitan of *Bordeaux*; and is well fortified with a strong



strong Castle and other Bulworks, so that it is accessible only on one side. In the adjacent Fields is to be seen a Spring, from whence issueth a Torrent of Waters, as it were a River, &c.

*Reveretum, Ruper Fucellii, and Ruper Fucellum*, is a small Town and Castle on the Rivulet of *Tardone*, about 15 miles from *Angoulême* to the N.E. It bears the Title of a Duchy, and hath imparted its name to one of the most ancient and noble Families of *France*, from whence have sprung divers Branches, &c.

*Jarnac, Jarnacum, and Jarniacum*, stands on the Banks of the *Charente*, almost in the midst between *Angoulême* to the E. and *Saintes* to the W. This little Town is famous for a memorable Battle fought between the Duke of *Anjou*, afterward King *Henry III.* and the Prince of *Condé*, on the 15th of *May*, 1569, wherein the latter was slain.

*TOURAIN* lies on the North-East of *Poitou*. Between *Angou, Bloys, and Berry*. It bears the Title of a Duchy, and its extent is about 60 miles from N. to S. and 50 from E. to W. The Fertility of its Soil, especially in Fruit, makes it be call'd the Garden of *France*. Many Rivers pass through it, as the *Loire*, the *Cher*, the *Indre*, the *Vienne*, &c. The most remarkable Towns of this Province are,

*Tours, Archb.* } *Loches,*  
*Ambaise,* } *Chinon, &c.*  
*La-Haye, Haga Turonum,*

*TOURS, Turones, Turo and Turonica Urbs*, anciently *Cæsaredunum*, is situate in a fruitful Country on the S. side of the River *Loire*, over which it hath a very beautiful long stone Bridge, at a little distance from the North side of the *Cher*. It is a large well built City, and the See of an Archbishop. The Publick Places, Streets, and Houses are fair, and the Cathedral, dedicated to *S. Gratian*, its first Prelate, deserves well to be viewed by Travellers: The Church of *S. Martin*, together with some other Parochial ones, are stately Piles of Building. This City is a Place of very good Trade, and therefore rich and populous, the Silks manufactured here being sent into many Foreign Parts. A Generality, and Presidial Courts are establish'd here. It is seated, as hath been said, on the River *Loire*, and is distant 30 miles from *Vendôme* to the S. 50 from *Poitiers* to the N. 55 from *Angers* to the E. 30 from *Bleis*, and 60 from *Orleans* to the S. W.

*Ambaise, Ambaca, Ambasia and Ambaciensis Vicus*, is seated also on the *Loire*, at the distance of 15 miles E. from *Tours*, and 20 from *Blois* to the S. W. This Town is likewise adorned with a fair Bridge over the *Loire*, and a large Castle built on an Hill, where the French Monarchs have often resided, and in which King *Charles VIII.* was born in the year 1470; and died, in 1498.

*Loches, Lochia and Lecia*, stands on the River *Indre*, about 20 miles from *Ambaise* to the S. and 25 from *Tours* to the S. E. It is a good Town and hath a Castle, wherein King *Charles VII.* usually resided. *Lewis XI.* added divers Apartments to it, and caused a Tower to be built, wherein for a long while he kept the Cardinal *de Balze* Prisoner; and in the same Place *Lewis XII.* confin'd *Lewis Sforza*, who died there, and was buried in the Church of the Virgin *Mary*. A Royal Court depending on the Presidial of *Tours* is held here. The Territory adjacent was the Patrimony of the first Dukes of *Anjou*.

*Chinon, Caino and Chinonium*, formerly a Village, is at present a neat Town seated on the River *Vienne*, and hath a Castle built on the top of a Hill, about 30

miles from *Tours* to the S. W. and 20 from *Saumur* to the E. Here is a Collegiate Church, dedicated to *S. Martin*, the Canons whereof are immediately subject to the Pope. The French King *Charles VII.* retir'd to this Town, when our Kings *Henry V.* and *Charles VI.* had possession of *Paris*; and it was here that *Jean d'Arc*, commonly call'd the *Maid of Orleans*, also mentioned, address'd her self to that King. Our King *Henry II.* died here A. D. 1559. And if it is worth mentioning, *Francis Rabelais* was born here.

*BERRY, Bituricensis Provincia*, bears the Title of a Duchy, and is a Province of larger extent than those we have last mentioned, being 90 miles from N. to S. and 70 from E. to W. It is bounded on the W. by *Touraine*, on the N. by *Orleannois* and *Gascony*, on the E. by the River *Loire*, and on the S. by *La Marche*. The River *Cher* passes through it, the *Indre* hath its Source in it, as have also many other small ones. The Soil is exceeding Fertile, and the Inhabitants are noted Artificers in making a certain sort of thick Cloth, which is thence call'd *Drap-de-Berry*. The ancient People, the *Bituriges*, were famous heretofore for their Conquests, and obstinate Resistance to the *Romans*. This Province was for some Ages subject to its own Counts, but being bought and united to the Crown by King *Philip*, it hath often since been an Appenage of the Sons of *France*, as it is at present to the third Son of the *Dauphine*. The most remarkable Towns here are,

*Bourges, Archb.* } *S. Aignan,*  
*Chateau-Roux,* } *Dun le Roi,*  
*Iffoudan,* } *Sancerre,*  
*Le Blanc,* } *Henrichmont,*  
*Argenton.* } *Valencay, &c.*

*Bourges, Biturix, Bituriges and Biturice*, alias *Avaricum Biturigum*, is situated about the middle of *France*, on the Rivers of *Auron* and *Eure*, or *Terre*, at the distance of 80 miles from *Tours* to the E. 50 from *Orleans* to the S. 30 from *Nevers* to the W. and 60 from the Borders of *La Marche* to the N. It is a large City, dignified with the Titles of a Metropolitan See and Patriarchate, besides a Famous University, a Bailliage, a Presidial Court, a Generality, &c. It is also a place of great Antiquity, for it is reputed to have been already founded in the XLVII Olympiad, and A. U. C. 164. about 590 years before the Nativity of Jesus Christ. *Titus Livius* assures us, that under the Reign of *Tarquinius Priscus*, King of the *Romans*, the Monarchy of the *Celte* was fix'd in this Metropolis of *Berry*, whereof *Ambigatus* was then the Sovereign. *Julius Cesar* made himself Master of it A. U. C. 702. 52 years before the Christian Æra, and of 40000 Inhabitants scarcely saved 800, the rest being put to the Sword. It was afterward the Capital City of the *Aquitania prima*, under *Augustus*. The *Visigoths* pillaged it in the fifth Century, and they were subdued by King *Clevis*; then it fell into the possession of *Clodomir*, and at length of *Contran* King of *Orleans*: *Chilperic* took it A. C. 553. and caused it to be almost entirely burnt: But it hath been since re-established at several times, more especially under *Charlemagne*, and it is now a well built and flourishing City. It was possessed by its own Counts till the time of *Philip King of France*, to whom Count *Herpin* sold it, with the rest of the County.

*Chateau-Roux, Castrum Rufum or Castrum Radulphum*, is a considerable Town, bearing the Title of a Duchy, on the River *Indre*, about 30 miles from



larger to the S. W. Its Castle was built by one Raoul, whence it is called *Chateau-Raoul*, and corruptly *Chateau-Roux*. Here are a Collegiate and 4 Parochial Churches, also a Park, appertaining to Monsieur the Prince. It is a place of good Trade, many sorts of Manufactures being made in it.

*Ussidan*, *Excildunum*, *Exolidunum*, *Exfoldunum*, and also *Enodunum*, is water'd by the Rivulet of *Thiot* or *Thee*, and seated in the mid-way between *Bourges* and *Chateau-Roux*. It is Fortified with a strong Castle, firm Walls and deep Ditches; and is remarkable for its Traffick in Wool and Kid's-leather Gloves. It is adorned with divers magnificent Structures, particularly the Royal Palace, the Court of Justice, the Church of *S. Stephen*, the Convent of *Benedictines*, &c. This Town was one of the twenty burnt by *Cæsar* in one Day.

*Argentum*, *Argentomagus* and *Argentomagus*, stands on the Confines of the Province of *la Marche* and the Banks of the *Creuse*, 40 miles from *Bourges* to the S. W. This Town hath for its defence a fair Castle, flank'd with 10 Towers, one whereof was built by the Emperor *Heraclius*, and on which is carved the Figure of an Ox, with this Device of *Cæsar*; *Veni, Vidi, Vici*. The other Towns are less considerable.

*NIVERNOIS*, *Ager Nivernensis*, is extended along the East Banks of the *Loire*, between *Burgundy*, *Bombonnois* and *Berry*, for the space of about 50 miles from N. to S. and 35 from E. to W. including these principal Towns, viz.

<i>Nevers</i> , Bish.	} {	<i>Donzi</i> ,
<i>La Charite</i> ,		<i>Ciamcey</i> ,
<i>S. Pierre le Moutier</i> .		<i>Vizelay</i> , &c.
<i>Dezise</i> ,		

*Nevers*, *Nivernum*, *Nivernium* and *Niverna*, anciently *Noviodunum Fedicassium*, is situated on the *Loire*, near its confluence with the *Allier*, and the Rivulet of *Nievre*, almost in the midst between *Paris*, to the N. and *Lyons* to the S. about 120 miles from both, as also 30 from *Bourges* to the E. and 20 from the Confines of *Gastinois* to the S. It was heretofore the Capital City of the *Fedicassii*, and *Julius Cæsar* thought fit to make choice of it for a Magazine for his Army. It bore the Title of a County under the first Race of the French Monarchs, and was erected into a Duchy by *Charles VII.* in the year 1457. It is also the See of a Bishop Suffragan to the Archbishop of *Sens*, and the Seat of a Chamber of Accounts, together with a Bannage under the Jurisdiction of the Presidial Court of *S. Pierre le Moutier*. The Cathedral Church is dedicated to *S. Cyres*. There are also Eleven Parochial Churches, divers Religious Houses, and a stately Stone Bridge of 20 Arches, over the River *Loire*. *Nevers* is also famous on account of the great quantities of Glass, white Iron, and fine Earthen Ware there made. In this City died *John Casimir* King of *Poland*, on the 16th day of *December*, A. D. 1672.

*La Charite*, *Charitas*, took its name from the great Charity which the Monks of *Cluny* exercised in these parts toward poor People and Pilgrims; it is seated on the side of an Hill near the *Loire*, over which River here is a fair Stone Bridge, 15 miles below *Nevers* to the N. and 25 from *Bourges* to the E. It is adorned with a large Market-place, divers Churches and a very rich Priory of the *Cistercian* Order. This Town suffered much damage during the English Wars in France, and more in that of the French Protestants, by whom it was often taken and retaken in the years 1562, 1563, &c.

*Dezise*, *Decetia*, is a small Town on the same River *Loire*, which with the Rivulet *Ayon*, that falls into it at the East end of the Town, form a sort of an Island. Here is a good Castle belonging to the Duke of *Nevers*, and a fair Bridge over the River. This Town is distant 20 miles from *Nevers* to the South-east, and belongs to the Duke of *Nevers*.

*GASTINOIS*, *Vastinium*, and *Vastiniensis pagus*, lies between *Nivernois*, *Berry*, *Orleannois*, *Briançe*, *Ile of France*, *Champagne* and *Burgundy*. It hath its name from the Rocks and sandy places in it, which the Inhabitants call *Gastines*. The extent of this Province is near 60 miles from N. to S. and 45 from E. to W. But part of it as we have said, belongs to the Government of the *Ile of France*, and was spoken of there; the other part hath these Towns of chief Note.

<i>Montargis</i> ,	} {	<i>Gien</i> ,
<i>Eslampes</i> ,		<i>Chateau</i> ,
<i>S. Farséau</i> ,		<i>Renard</i> .

*Montargis*, *Montargium*, or *Mons Aigi*, is a neat Town, pleasantly situated at the Foot of a Hill, and the Banks of the River *Loing*, at the distance of 55 miles from *Paris* to the S. and 40 from *Orleans* to the E. It is fenced with an old Castle, that *Charles V.* caused to be repair'd, and which was besieged by the English Forces, A. D. 1426. The Town was burnt in 1528. and after rebuilt with greater magnificence.

*Eslampes*, *Stampæ*, stands on the side of the *Ivaine*, commonly called from thence the River *Eslampes*, in a very Fruitful Country, near the Confines of the *Ile of France*, 30 miles from *Paris* to the S. as many from *Chartres* to the E. and about 25 from *Montargis* to the N. W. It is beautified with a Collegiate Church and divers Monasteries, and enjoys the Title of a Duchy, and belongs to the ancient Demesns of the Crown. King *Robert* Founded a Castle here; and the Town was formerly Fortified, but dismantled by King *Henry IV.* A. D. 1589.

*Gien*, *Genabum*, is a small Town on the *Loire*, over which River it hath a Stone-Bridge below the Canal of *Briare*. It stands 35 miles above *Orleans* to the E. and 28 from *Montargis* to the S.

The principal ISLANDS that lie over-against *Orleannois* in general, more especially the County of *Aunis*, are these, viz.

<i>Oleron</i> ,	} {	<i>Nermoutier</i> ,
<i>Rhe</i> or <i>Oye</i> ,		<i>Aimat</i> , &c.
<i>Ile-dieu</i> ,		

*OLERON*, *Uliarius*, is an Island situated on the Coast of the Province of *Saintonge*, over-against the mouth of the River *Charante*, about 4 Leagues from thence to the W. It is extended from N. to S. for the space of 15 miles, but is not above 4 or 5 miles in breadth, and between 30 and 40 in compass. The Soil is very Fruitful, and produces good Corn; abundance of Rabbits are caught here.

On the Northern part of the Island is erected a very strong Fortress, called the Castle of *Oleron*, which is distant a League and a half from the Mouth of the River *Seudre* to the W. 3 from the *Ile of Rée* to the S. and 6 from the City of *Rochele* to the S. W.

The Island of *RHE*, *Rea*, anciently *Reacus*, lies before the Coasts of the Country of *Aunis*, only 2 Leagues from thence, and 3 from *Rochele* to the W. containing many



Towns or Burghs; the chief of which are those of *S. Martin* and *Oye*, called the *Ile*, by reason of a Channel, over which one must pass to enter into it. The most considerable Fort is that of *la Perce*, containing 4 Bastions, with half-Moons and other Outworks, which have been improved and increased since the late War begun. Here is a high Tower, on which Lights are kept a nights for the direction of Ships. The Cannon of this Fort commands the Land over against it, as well as the Sea all round it. This Island affords great quantities of Wine and Salt, especially the latter, for the making whereof, this is the chief place in the whole Kingdom.

*ISLE-DIEU*, *I. de la Dei*, lies over against the Town of *S. Ger.* in the Province of *Priftou*, about 4 Leagues from the Coasts of that Province.

The Island of *NERMOTIER* lies over against *S. Germain* in *Priftou*, and is distant two large Leagues from the Continent: On it is Founded a rich Convent, &c.

Though the *Orleannois* be call'd one of the Governments of *France*, yet it is divided among nine Governors General, independent of one another, viz. I. The

*Orleannois* proper, *Blaisois*, *Beauce*, and *Vendemois*; under whom are three Lieutenant-Generals: Also a particular Governor of the City of *Orleans*. II. *Poitou* hath a Governor General, two Lieutenant-Generals, and two Seneschals, besides particular Governors in *Poitiers*, *Leudun*, and *Niort*. III. *Anjou*, a Governor General, and under him are one Lieutenant-General, one Seneschal, and particular Governors in *Angers* and *Pont de Ce*. IV. The *Saumurais* with its Dependencies, *Richelieu*, and *Maraleau* is another Government, which hath one Lieutenant-General. V. *Touraine* also hath a Governor General, a Lieutenant-General, two Bailiffs, and particular Governors of *Tours* and *Amboise*. VI. The Country of *Am.*, *Rechele*, *Brouage*, in *Saintonge*, the Isles of *Rhe*, *Oleron*, &c. have a Governor General, a Lieutenant-General, a Seneschal, and particular Governors of *Rechele* and *Brouage*. VII. The Provinces of *Maine* and *Perche* have another Governor General, a Lieutenant-General and a Seneschal. VIII. The Governor General of *Berry*, under whom are a Lieutenant-General and a Seneschal. And lastly, the *Nevernois* hath a Governor, with a Lieutenant-General.

## CHAP. VIII.

### LA BOURGOGNE, or BURGUNDY, *Burgundia*.

Under the Name of *BURGUNDY* is comprehended, at present, the *Lower*, or *Dutchy* of *Burgundy*, the *Upper*, or *County* of *Burgundy*, *Bresse*, *Beugey*, the *County* of *Gex*, and the *Principality* of *Dombes*, which are bounded on the North by *Champagne* and *Lorraine*, on the South by *Lyonnois* and *Dauphine*, on the East by *Mount Jura* to the *Rhesne*, and on the West by *Nivernois* and *Bourlemnois*.

*Burgundy* in General divided into these Parts, viz.

The Lower Burgundy, or Dutchy in 9 small Provinces	1. <i>Dijonois</i> , chief Town.	<i>Dijon</i> , Cap.
	2. <i>Autunois</i> ,	<i>Autun</i> , Bish.
	3. <i>Chalonnais</i> ,	<i>Chalons</i> , Bish.
	4. <i>Auxois</i> ,	<i>Semur</i> ,
	5. <i>Auxerrois</i> ,	<i>Auxerre</i> , Bish.
	6. <i>Charolois</i> ,	<i>Charoles</i> ,
	7. <i>Biennois</i> ,	<i>Semur</i> ,
	8. <i>Maccennois</i> ,	<i>Mafon</i> , Bish.
	9. The mountainous Coun-	<i>Chatillen</i> .

The County of Burgundy in 3 Bailiages, viz.	1. The Middle Bailiage, <i>Bezancon</i> , Archb.
	or of <i>Dole</i> . Cap.
	2. The Bailiage of <i>Vesoul</i> , <i>Amon</i> .
	3. The Bailiage of <i>Aval</i> . <i>Polygny</i> , <i>Bourg</i> , <i>Bellef</i> , Bish.
	The County of <i>Gex</i> , <i>Gex</i> ,
	The Principality of <i>Dombes</i> . <i>Treves</i> .

The *DUTCHY* of *Burgundy* is bounded on the East by the *County* of *Burgundy*, on the North by *Champagne*, on the West by *Bourbonnois* and *Nivernois*, and on the South by *Dauphine* and *Lyonnois*. Its largest extent from South to North consists of about 110 English miles, that is to say, from below *Macon*

as far as *Chateau Vilain* in *Champagne*, and of 90 miles from East to West, viz. from beyond *Auxerre* to the Frontiers of *Garinois*, lying between the 46th and 48th Degree of Latitude, &c. This Province is very considerable on the account of its Largeness, Situation and Fertility, being commonly call'd, the Magazine of Corn, Wine, Hay, Wood, &c. affording also many Iron, Mines, and Springs of Mineral Waters. And indeed, it contributes very much to the subsistence of the City of *Paris*, and almost entirely maintains that of *Lyons*. It is water'd with a great number of Rivers; the *Seine* takes its rise here near a Village named *Sainte Seine*; the *Saone* passeth through the Eastern part, and receives into its Chanel the Streams of the *Debune*, augmented with those of the *Bisfure*, the *Ouche*, and the *Tille*, besides divers other lesser Rivulets and Brooks. On the Western the *Leire* divides *Burgundy* from *Bourbonnois*, and receives into it the *Recece*, the *Brevince*, the *Arroux*, &c. The *Yonne* is there joined to the *Cousin* or *Avalon*, the *Sezin* or *Serin*, and the *Aménin*, into which flow the *Brenne*, the *Oscain*, and the *Oze*, all which Rivers have their Source in this Province.

The *County* of *DJONNOIS*, *Ager Divionensis*, contains these more remarkable Towns, viz.

<i>Dijon</i> , Cap.	}} <i>S. Jean de-Laune</i> , <i>Cîteaux</i> , Abb. &c.
<i>Beaune</i> ,	
<i>Ausconne</i> ,	

*Dijon*, *Dicic* and *Dicidunum*, is seated on the Rivers *Ouche*, and *Suzon*, in the Diocess of *Langres*, from which City it is distant 32 miles to the South, 85 from *Sens*, and 140 from *Paris* to the South-East, 105 from *Lyons* to the North, 80 from *Nevers* to the East, 45 from *Bezancon*, and 15 from the *Saone* to the West.

This



This Town is suppos'd to have been first Founded about *A. C.* 220. It is of a large extent and well-built; the Walls are strong and surrounded with Towers and Bastions, and the Castle flanked with 4 large Towers and 2 Ravelins. The most considerable publick Buildings are, the Church of the *Carthusians*, adorn'd with magnificent Tombs of the Dukes, the Hall of Justice, the Royal Palace, and the Town-house, besides 16 other Churches, 2 Abbies and 5 Hospitals. The States of the Country are usually assembled here every three years. Besides the Court of Parliament held in this Town, here are a Chamber of Accounts, and a Presidial Court.

*Beaune, Bonna* and *Belnum*, is seated on the small River *Bourgeois* and other Brooks that run through the Town at the distance of 10 miles from the River *Saone* to the West, 20 from *Dijon* to the South, and 18 from *Chalon* to the North, and lies on the Road between these two Towns. The Antiquities of this place prove it to have been a Roman Work. It is well built, the Seat of a Bailiage, and the Capital of a small Territory, thence called the Country of *Beaune*, which is very Fruitful, especially in an excellent sort of Wine.

*S. Jean de Laune, Fanum S. Joannis Laudonensis*, or *Laudona*, is a small Town on the *Saone* near the Abby of *Cisterciens*, 15 miles from *Dijon* to the South East. It was formerly Fortified, and is Famous for repulsing the Efforts of the Imperial Army commanded by the formidable *Galas*, Charles Duke of *Lorraine*, the Marquis of *Grana*, and other Illustrious Generals, *A. D.* 1636.

*Citeau, Cistercium* or *Cistertium*, is distant about six miles from *S. Jean de Laune* to the West, and 12 from *Dijon* to the South. 'Tis believed that this Village took its name from the great number of Cisterns which were dug there under ground, and hath acquired much reputation by its Abby of *Cistercian* Monks, which Order was first instituted here; and this Abby built *A. D.* 1098. by Robert Abbot of *Molefine*, assisted by *Orto I.* Duke of *Burgundy*, *Walter*, Bishop of *Chalons*, and *Hugh*, Bishop of *Lyons*. It is a Branch of the *Benedictine*, and hath its name from this Town. The Monks quickly grew numerous, and the Order so powerful, that for a long time it had a great share in the Government of *Europe*, and hath produced four Popes, several Cardinals and Bishops, and a great number of Writers. The Abbot of this House is a Counsellor of the Parliament of *Burgundy*, and general of the whole Order, whereof are said to be near 3000 Convents and Nunneries in the World.

*AUTUNNOIS*, lies on the Frontiers of *Nivernois*, and these whereof are two principal Places, viz. *Autun* Bish. and *Bourbon-Lancy*.

*Autun, Augustodunum*, anciently *Bibraet*, is situated on the River *Arroune*, in the midst between *Lyons* to the South, and *Sens* to the North, 40 miles from *Dijon* to the South-West, and 50 from *Nevers* to the East. It is one of the most ancient Cities of the Kingdom, being said to have been Founded by *Simethus I.* King of the *Gauls*. It was Famous in the time of the *Romans*, and the Capital of the Republick of the *Ædui* or *Hædui*, which comprehended part of the Dutchy of *Burgundy*, the Countries of *Bresse*, *Lyonnois*, *Beaujolois*, *Dombes*, *Nivernois*, &c. The Ruins found here of the Temple of *Janus*, now called *Le Fauveye* or *Jeneroye*, the *Marchaut* or *Campus Martius*, *Mont-Drué* or the Seat of the *Druides*, and *Mont-Jou* or the Hill of *Jupiter*, besides a great number of Statues, Columns, Pyramids, Aqueducts, Triumal Arches, &c. do also sufficiently evince its ancient Grandeur. This City is divided into two parts, viz.

the Upper Town cover'd by Mount *Cenis*, at the Foot whereof stands a Castle, and the Lower, called *Marchent*, which is water'd by the River *Arroux*, discharging it self into the *Loire*, and affording abundance of good Fish. It is an Episcopal See, Suffragan to the Metropolitan of *Lyons* and the whole Diocess, divided into 24 Arch-Priesthoods or principal Cures, contains about 600 Parishes. The Cathedral dedicated to *St. Lazarus*, is a noble and venerable Structure; besides which, here are many other Churches, divers Abbys and Convents, particularly those of *St. Martin*, *St. Andoche*, and *St. John*. This City is also the Seat of a Bailiage.

*Bourbon-Lancy, Berbonium Anselmum*, is a very well built Town and Castle with a Bailiage, standing on the descent of one of those pleasant and fruitful Hills that surround its Territory, and is distant but two miles from the River *Loire*, which separates the Diocess of *Autun* from the Territories of *Bourbonnois*, and 25 from *Autun* to the South-west. It is a fair Town; the Castle is old, but the Walls are strong and surrounded with a Trench cut out of a Rock, insomuch that it could not be taken during the whole Civil Wars of *France*. The Mineral Waters of *Bourbon* were much commended even in the time of the *Romans*, and have been no less esteemed since the Reign of *Henry III.* who preferred them before all the others of his Kingdom.

*CHAALONNOIS, Cabillonensis Ager*, is extended along the Banks of the *Saone* in the midst of the Province and hath these chief Towns, viz.

*Chalons*, Bish. *Verdun*, *Belle-garde*.

*Chalons, Cabillonum*, is situated on the River *Saone*, at the distance of 20 miles from the Frontiers of the County of *Burgundy* to the West, 25 from *Autun* to the East, 40 from *Dijon* to the South, and 65 from *Lyons* to the North. It is a very spacious City, the See of a Bishop Suffragan to the Archbishop of *Lyons*, as also a County and Bailiage, and a Place of great Antiquity, as appears from divers Statues, Vessels and Inscriptions found therein; not to mention the remains of an Amphitheatre, and of many publick Edifices. The *Romans* were wont to keep store-houses of Corn for their Army at *Chalons*; afterward the Emperors constituted it the general place of Rendezvous of their Forces, and the Kings of *Burgundy* took no less delight in its situation. It was ruin'd by *Attila*, and repair'd within a little while after. The Suburbs of *S. Laurence*, are shut up within two Bridges, viz. one of Stone and the other of Timber, on an Island made by the *Saone*; and the Citadel is flanked with four Royal Bastions, whereto some new Fortifications have been lately added. The City it self is divided into the Old and the New, the latter enclosing the other, which consists only of three large Streets, where is to be seen the Palace of the Bailiage, that of the Prince, the Cathedral of *S. Vincent*, and the Town-house, besides the Parochial Churches of *S. George*, *S. Laurence*, and *S. Mary*, the Commandery of *S. Antony*, a stately College of Jesuits, &c. This City was taken by the French Protestants. *A. D.* 1562.

*Verdun, Viridunum* and *Verodunum*, is a small Town near the confluence of the *Doux* and the *Saone*, about 12 miles from *Chalons* to the North East. There is another Town of this Name in *Lorraine*, the Capital of a Bailiage.

*Belle-garde, Belloguardia* stands on the Eastern Banks of the *Saone*, five Leagues from *Chalons* to the N.



East, and was formerly called *Sera*, but the Name was changed when King *Louis XIII.* erected it into a Duchy in Favour of *Roger de S. Lari, A. D. 1620.* It was also well Fortified for some time, but its Bulwarks are now dismantled.

The **MOUNTAINOUS COUNTRY** is the North Corner of Burgundy near the Spring-head of the *Seine*; its chief Towns are these,

*Chaillon sur Seine, Bar-sur-Seine, Aisvi-le-duc.*

*Chaillon sur Seine, Castellum ad Sequanam*, is a fair Town and Abby, extended very far in length along the Banks of the *Seine*, about 40 miles from *Dijon* to the North-west, and 30 from *Langres* to the West. It is divided by the River into two Parts, one whereof is called *The Burgh*, and the other *Chaumont*. Here are to be seen the Ruins of an old Castle; and this Town is the Seat of the Bailly of this Country.

*Bar-sur-Seine, Barium super Sequanam*, takes its Name in like manner from its situation on the *Seine*, near the Confines of *Champagne*, about 18 miles from *Chaillon* to the North, and 15 from *Troyes* to the S. It is a little Town well-built, and stands in the midst of a Fruitful Country.

**ALNOIS**, *Alexandri Traiectus*, bordering on the Frontiers of *Nivernois*, and includes these principal Towns, viz.

*Semur, Avallon, Arrey-le-Duc, &c.*

*Semur, Semurium*, is a small Town on a Rivulet which dischargeth it self into that of *Airmenfin*, being distant 30 miles from *Auxan* to the North, and as many from *Dijon* to the West.

*Avallon, Avale*, is seated in a Plain on the River *Couffin*, 30 miles from *Auxerre* to the South, and about 40 from *Auxan* to the N. W. It is a small City, and hath a Castle and is the Seat of the Bailiage. *Robert King of France* took this Town by Famine after a Siege of three Months, *A. D. 1003.*

*Arrey-le-duc, Arreum ducinum*, is a very pleasant Town, near the Spring-head of the River *Arroux*, and one of the Seats of the Bailly of *Auxois*, being distant 35 miles from *Avallon* to the South-east, and 20 from *Chaillon* to the North-west.

**AUXERROIS**, lies between *Champagne, Gatineis, Auxois*, and *Nivernois*, and is the N. W. Corner of Burgundy. The Places of chiefest note are these, viz.

*Auxerre, Bish. } } Seigneley.  
Coutange, } } Crevant, &c.*

*Auxerre, Autissiodorum*, is seated on the side of a Hill in a Fruitful Country, and on the Banks of the River *Tonne*, where it begins to be Navigable, at the distance of 70 miles from *Paris* to the South, 30 from *Sens*, and 65 from *Dijon* to the West. It is a very ancient City; 'tis said *Julian* the Apostate refreshed his Army here for some time. *A. C. 451.* it was ruin'd by *Attila*, and King *Robert* took it from *Landri Count of Nevers* in 1005. Afterward it became subject to certain particular Counts, and at length was united to the Crown of France. It hath been long since erected into an Episcopal See under the Metropolitan of *Sens*, and its Cathedral bearing the Name of *S. Stephen*, is a very magnificent Structure, hav-

ing a fair Quire, and an exceeding high Tower. Here are also other fair Churches, a stone Bridge over the River, divers publick Fountains and large public Places. It is dignified with the Title of a County Bailiage, and hath a Prebendal and Election from the South-east Parts. It stands upon the great Road to *Paris*, and is therefore much frequented by Traveller

The County of **CHAROLOIS**, *Caroliensis Comitatus* is situated in the South part of Burgundy, betwixt *Bourbonnois* and *Masconnois*. Its principal Towns are,

*Charoles, Cap. } } Toulon,  
Paroi-le-Monial. } } Mient S. Vincent.*

*Charoles, Carolix*, is seated on the Rivulet of *Reconif* 30 miles from *Auxan* to the South, 20 from the River *Loire* to the East, and 20 from *Mascon* to the West. It is a very fair Town, beautified with a Collegial Church and some Monasteries.

*Toulon, or Toulon sur Arroux, Tullonium ad Arrosum* is a small Town through which runs the River *Arroux*, seated almost in the midway between *Auxan* and *Charoles*, and 30 from *Chaillon* to the West.

**BRIENNOIS**, *Briennensis Traiectus*, lies between *Charoles* and *Masconnois*, near the Frontiers of *Beaujalois* and doth not contain any Place of good Note, excepting *Ancy-le-Duc & Semur Semurium*, which stand on a Hill scarcely one League from the River *Loire* to the E. and on the Confines of *Beaujalois*.

**MASCONNOIS**, borders on the Southern part of the Duchy of Burgundy toward *Bresse*, being about 30 Miles long and 24 broad. The chief Towns are these, viz.

*Mascon, Bish. Tournus, Abb. Clugny, Abb.*

*Mascon, Marisco or Mariscena*, is situated on the side of a little Hill on the Bank of the *Saone*, and near the Confines of the Province of *Bresse*, almost in the midst between *Lyons* to the South, and *Chaillons* to the North, at the distance of about 30 Miles from each. It is a place of much Antiquity, an Episcopal See under the Metropolitan of *Lyons*; also a Bailiage and an Election. Here is a stately Bridge over the River *Saone* which leads to the Suburbs of *S. Lawrence*, where are two strong Towers. The Cathedral is dedicated to *S. Vincent*, besides which here is a Collegiate Church the Canons whereof are all of noble Extraction, the Parochial Church of *S. Stephen*, many Religious Houses and a College of Jesuits. This City was often ruin'd by the Incurfions of the *Huns, Burgundians* and *Franks*, but hath been often repair'd by the munificence of divers Kings of France.

*Tournus, or Tournus, Tullonium and Tonnacium*, is a large Town built on the Banks of the *Saone* about 11 Miles from *Mascon* to the North, and 18 from *Charoles* to the South. *Alinus Caesar* was overcome by the Emperor *Severus* near this place; at present it is chiefly remarkable for its Famous Abby.

*Clugny or Clugny*, is a Village seated on a small River called *Grosne*, 10 Miles from *Mascon* to the N. W. and 15 from *Charoles* to the E. It hath imparted its Name to the renowned Abby of *Ciuniack* Monks which is the chief of the whole Order, and was instituted according to the Rule of *S. Benedict, A. C. 910.* by *Bernon* Abbot of *Gigniac*, by the Favour of *William I. Duke of Aquitaine* and Count of *Auvergne*.



**BRESSE**, *Sebastianus Ager*, lies S. E. from *Burgundy*, and is bounded on the E. by *Burgundy* and *Beaujolois*, on the W. by the River *Dain*, which divides it from *Bugey*, on the N. by *Challonnais*, and on the S. by the River *Rhofne*, which divides it from *Lyonnois* and *Dauphine*, and is in extent from North to South about 40 Miles, and from E. to W. 30 Miles. It is a Fruitful Country, but by reason of some Lakes of standing Water in it, not very wholesome in some Parts. It is divided into the Upper, being the Parts about *Bourg*; and the Lower, lying towards the *Lyonnois*. The chief Towns are,

<i>Bourg</i> , Cap.	} from <i>Bourg</i> .
<i>Montluel</i> , a small Town	
on the S. Borders of	
the Province.	
<i>Coligny</i> , 15 Miles North	} <i>Pont des Vaux</i> , near the Saone, and 15 Miles from <i>Coligny</i> to the West.

*Bourg*, *Burgus*, or *Forum Sebastianorum*, call'd for distinction *Bourg en Bresse*, is situate in a Marshy Ground on the Rivulet of *Reissouffe*, at the distance of 15 miles from *Mascon* to the E. and 30 from *Lyon* to the N. being environ'd on the E. by *Mount S. Claude* and the Hills of *Vignoble*, and on the W. by a spacious Plain extended as far as the River *Saone*. This Town, together with the whole Province, hath been subject to the Dominion of the French Kings ever since the Year 1601, whereas before it belonged to the Duke of *Savoy*, who had built a strong Citadel in it in the Year 1569, which was demolished in 1611. However, it is as yet govern'd as it were in Form of a Republick, the Administration of all Civil Affairs being committed to the care of two *Syndicks* or Sheriffs. Pope *Leo X.* erected an Episcopal See at *Bourg*, A. 1515, which was suppressed the Year ensuing. It was also re-established in 1521, but Pope *Paul III.* thought fit to suppress it again by his Bull publish'd in 1534. This Town hath a Bailiage, a Court of Election and a Presidial.

**BUGEY**, *Beugesia*, *Beugia*, *Bugia*, lies between *Bresse* to the W. and *Savoy* to the E. from which it is separated by the River *Rhofne*, including these chief Towns, viz.

<i>Bellay</i> , Bish.	} } <i>Seissel</i> ;
<i>Laniou</i> ,	
	} } <i>S. Rambert</i> , &c.

*Bellay*, *Bellicum*, stands upon a Hill about 2 miles from the River *Rhofne*, 36 from *Bourg* to the S. E. and 40 from *Grenoble* to the N. It is a City of but small compass, nevertheless dignified with the Title of an Episcopal See under the Metropolitan of *Bezancon*. It was ruin'd by Fire in the Year 1385, but *Amedes VIII.* Duke of *Savoy*, caused it to be rebuilt and enclosed with Walls. The Chapter of the Cathedral Church of *S. John Baptist*, which had been before regular under the Rule of *S. Augustin*, was seculariz'd in 1579. The Bishop is both Spiritual and Temporal Lord of the City, which was resigned, together with the adjacent Territories, by the *Savoyards* to the French, A. D. 1601.

*Seissel*, *Seisselium* and *Siffum*, is a large Town where a Bridge of Boats is laid over the River *Rhofne*, which divides it into two Parts, and there begins to be navigable. It stands on the Foot of the Hills, and the very Frontiers of *Savoy*, being distant 20 Miles from *Bellay* to the N. and 15 from *Annecy* in *Savoy* to the W.

The Bailiage of *GEX*, *Gega* or *Gaium*, is a small Territory that lies between the County of *Burgundy*

to the North, and the City of *Geneva* to the South, the Country of *Vaud* in *Suisse* to the East, and *Bugey* to the West. But it doth not comprehend any very considerable place, except the Town of *Gex*, *Gesium*, the Capital and Seat of the Bailiff, which was allotted by the Duke of *Savoy* to the French King, by the Peace concluded at *Lyon*, A. D. 1601.

The Principality of *DOMBES*, *Dumbensis Principatus*, is a small, but very pleasant Country, lying South-west of *Bresse*, along the Banks of the *Saone*, between *Masconnois* and *Lyonnois*, and contains 11 Castellannies, whereof that of *Trevoux* is the chief; the others are *Beauregard*, *Montmerle*, *Taissy*, *Lans*, *Chatamon*, *Cheteler*, *S. Trivier*, *Velleneuve*, *Ambrica*, and *Lignieu*.

*Trevoux*, *Trivoltium*, a small Town, but the Capital of this Principality and a Bailiage, is seated at the Foot of a Hill on the Banks of the River *Saone*, 10 Miles above *Lyon* to the North, and near 30 from *Mascon* to the South.

The County of *BURGUNDY*, or the *UPPER BURGUNDY*, also call'd the *FRANCHE COMTE*, is the Country of the ancient *Sequani*, and part of the ancient *Burgundia Cisjurana*. It is bounded on the E. by *Switzerland*, on the S. by *Bresse*, *Bugey*, and the Bailiage of *Gex*, on the N. by *Lorraine*, and on the W. by the Dutchy of *Burgundy* and part of *Champagne*; and is extended from the 46th Deg. 10 Min. to the 48th Deg. including the space of about 110 Miles; and from the 23d Deg. 15 Min. to the 25th. Deg. of Longitude, which amounts to 72 Miles from the Frontiers of the Bishoprick of *Basil* as far as beyond *Gray*. This Province affords abundance of Corn, Wine, Timber and Cattel, especially Horses. There are also a great number of Salt-Pits, and many Quarries of black Marble, Jasper of divers Colours, and very fair Alabaster, together with some Mines of Iron. The Principal Rivers are the *Saone*, the *Doux*, the *Lougnon* and the *Louve*, which are full of several sorts of Fish. Moreover, the Wines of *Arbois*, *Poligny* and *Vesoul*, are esteemed beyond those of the other Provinces of *France*.

This County was quietly possessed by the Kings of *Spain*, as Heirs of the Family of *Burgundy*, till the time of this present King of *France*, who in the Year 1668. by his Army made himself Master of it, but was obliged to surrender it the same Year by the Treaty of *Aix la Chapelle*: Notwithstanding which, he again invaded and took it in the Year 1674. and forced the *Spaniards* to grant it to him in the following Peace of *Nimeguen*, as we have already elsewhere shewn; It is divided into three Parts.

I. The Bailiage of *VESOUL* or *AMONT*; or the Upper Bailiage of the County of *Burgundy*, which is extended toward the Northern part of this Province, and comprehends these considerable Towns, viz.

<i>Vesoul</i> ,	} } <i>Lure</i> , Abb.
<i>Gray</i> ,	
	} } <i>Mont-beillard</i> County.

*Vesoul*, *Vesulum*, is seated on a small River that runs into the *Saone*, at the distance of 28 Miles from *Bezancon* to the N. 20 from the Borders of *Lorraine* to the S. and 60 from *Dijon* to the North-east. This Town of late hath been often taken and restored, but was at length resigned to the French King by the Treaty of *Nimeguen* A. D. 1678.

*Gray*, *Graium*, *Grcium*, and *Graiicum*, stands on the Banks



Part of the *Seine*, 30 Miles from *Vesoul* to the S. W. It is a fair Town, tho' of small extent, and formerly well Fortified with a Castle, &c. but it was taken by the *French* in 1668, and also in 1674, and not long after all its Bulwarks, together with the Fort, were entirely demolished.

*Lang, Lucra, Ligeris Meneft.* a small Town and Famous Monastery, whose Abbot was Lord of the Town, is seated on the River *Lognon*, 18 Miles from *Vesoul* to the E.

*Ment-beliard, Mens-leiligerdus*, gives name to a County on the N. E. of the *Franche Compe*, and bounded on the N. with *Lorraine*, and on the E. by *Sunt-gau*: It was formerly part of *Germany*, and belong'd to the Dukes of *Wurtemberg*, but hath been made part of *France* by present King. The Town is seated at the Foot of a Rock, on the top whereof stands the Castle, which was the Seat of a Count of the Family of *Wurtemberg*: It had besides a strong Cittadel, now destroy'd. It is but a small place, having not above two or three Streets; and is water'd by the small River *Hel*, or *Aine*, which a little below falls into the *Doux*. This Town is distant 35 miles from *Vesoul* to the E, 40 Miles from *Besancon* to the N. E. and 30 from *Basil* to the W. and not far from the Foot of Mount *Vauge*.

II. The middle Bailiage, or that of *DOLE*, *Dolenfis Tractus*, lies in the midst of this Province, from the Frontiers of the Dutchy of *Burgundy* to those of *Switzerland*, containing these principal Towns, viz.

*Besancon*, Arch. } } *Ornans*,  
*Dole*, } } *Quingey*.

**BESANCON**, *Vesontic, Vesontium* and *Bisuntie*, is a very ancient City, and the Capital of *Franche Comte*, the See of an Archbishop, the Seat of the Parliament, and a considerable University. It is seated on the River *Doux*, which almost encompasses it; and is defended with a good Cittadel lately built. This City was formerly Imperial and Free, under the Protection of the Count of *Burgundy*, but exempted in the Year 1651, and given to the *Spaniards*, from whom it was taken by the *French*, and by the Treaty of *Nimeguen* granted to them with the rest of the Country. It is distant 30 miles from *Vesoul* to the South, 45 from *Dijon* to the East, 30 from the Frontiers of *Switzerland* to the West, and 65 from *Geneva* to the North.

*Dole, Dela*, is in like manner seated on the *Doux*, in a Pleasant and Fertile Country, about 30 miles from *Besancon* to the S. W. and as many from *Dijon* to the N. E. It was the Capital of the Province, before *Besancon* obtain'd that Honour. *Philip* the Good Duke of *Burgundy*, Founded an University here in the year 1426, which the Dutcheß *Margaret* augmented in 1484, and is now in a flourishing State. Here is a Chamber of Accounts and a Bailiage. This City was heretofore well Fortified, but the present French King made himself Master of it in the Month of *February* 1668, and dismantled it before he restored it to the *Spaniards*, as he was forced to do by the Treaty of *Aix la Chapelle*; by which means he the easier retook it in 1674, and hath ever since possessed it. The other Towns contain nothing very considerable.

III. The Bailiage of *POLIGNY*, or *AVAL*, or the Lower Bailiage of the County of *Burgundy*, is situated between *Switzerland* on the East, *Bresse* on

the South, the Dutchy of *Burgundy* on the W. and the middle Bailiage, or that of *Dole* on the North. The chief Towns in it are.

*Poligny*, } } *Orgeler*,  
*Salins*, } } *Arbois*,  
*S. Claude*, Abb. } } *Nosey*,  
*Batrans*, } } *Jougne*.

*Poligny*, *Polichnium*, *Polenium*, and *Poliniacum*, stands near a small River that runs into the *Doux*, and was formerly well Fortified, and more considerable than at present. Its Suburbs are large, encompass'd with Gardens, Hills, and Forests, and the Wines made here are highly esteemed. It is distant 20 miles from *Dole* to the S. E. 30 from *Besancon*, as many from the Frontiers of *Switzerland*, and 35 from *Geneva* to the N. W.

*Salins*, *Salina*, and *Salierse Castrum*, is pleasantly seated in a Valley between two Mountains, on the Rivulet of *Forica*, at the distance of 12 miles from *Poligny* to the N. E. and 20 from *Besancon* to the S. taking its name from an admirable Spring of Salt-waters, whereof are made vast quantities of pure white Salt, that afford a large Revenue to the Prince. This Town is extended very far in length, and well Fortified, its Walls being flanked with high Towers, besides two Castles that defend it on all sides, and the Cittadel on the top of a steep Rock, rendring it almost impregnable. The Hall or Store-house, commonly call'd *La Grand Saulnerie*, (wherein the Salt is boiled and preserved, and the Officers employed in this Operation have their Lodgings) is a stately Building.

*S. Claude*, *Fanum S. Claudii*, is a strong Hold on the Frontiers of *Beugey*, and the Country of *Gex*, about 3 Leagues from the River *Rhosne*, and 5 from *Geneva* to the West. It was formerly called *St. Oyen de Joux*, *Fanum Sancti Eugendi*; and is now chiefly remarkable for its Famous Monastery, in which is preserved the Body of *St. Claude*, Archbishop of *Besancon*, in the VII Century, whose name is communicated to this Town and part of Mount *Fura* in the adjacent Territory.

On the East side of the *Franche Comte*, stands the ridge of Mountains, called *Mont Fura*, which extends from near *Basil* on the *Rhine* in the N. quite as far as the River *Rhosne*, and the Province of *Beugey* in the S. being the whole length of this Country, and divides it from *Switzerland*; but in several places they bear different Names: At the South end it divides into two Branches, whereof one extends to the *Rhosne*, about 12 or 15 miles below *Geneva*, and is called the *Credo*; the other divides the *Franche Comte* from *Beugey*, and is named *Mont St. Claude* from a little Town near it; about the Head of the River *Doux*, it is called *Mont de Joux*; in the Neighbourhood of *Basil*, *Pierrepoint*, and *Botzberg*, and a little more Southward, *Schaffmas*, and by the *Swissers* *Leerberg*.

This Government is divided between two Governours-General, whereof one hath the Dutchy of *Burgundy*, *Bresse*, *Beugey*, *Valromey*, and *Gex*, under his Care; Subordinate to whom the Count d' *Armagnac* is Hereditary Grand Seneschal, and under him are five Lieutenants Generals, twelve Bailiffs, and thirteen Governors of Places, viz. of *Dijon*, *Auxonne*, *Challan*, *Bellegarde*, *Taland*, *Semur* in *Auxois*, the Bridge of *Mascen*, *Aulun*, *Beaume*, *Bourbon*, *Lancy*, *Avalon* and *Châtillon*.

In the County of *Burgundy*, is a Governor General, and under him one Lieutenant-General, and eleven Gover-



Governors of Places in these Towns, viz. *Besancon*, the Citadel of *Besancon*; also the Fort of *S. Stephen*, and the Fort *Gifon*, in the same City have different Governors; *Dole*, *Salins*, the two Forts of *S. Andew* and *Blim*, the Castle of *Joug*, and Town of *Pontarlier*, the Castle of *B'amount*, and the Castle of *Montebiard*.

The *Burgundians*, who gave name to this Country, were once a very powerful Nation, possessing not only this Dutchy and County of *Burgundy*, but also *Astoria*, *Switzerland*, *Wallisland* and *Savoy*, and afterwards *Dauphine*, *Lyonnois* and *Nivernois* also; which great Tract of Country was divided by the *Romans* into *Burgundy Trans*, and *Cis Jura*, with respect to Mount *Jura*. They were originally a Tribe of the *Vandals*, and came from the Parts about *Mecklenburg* and *Pomerania*, and like the rest of those Northern Nations, a rough unciviliz'd People, living in Tents clap'd up for their present Occasions, which in their Language were called *Burghs*, and thence the Men *Burgundians*: Thus saith *Agathias* and other Historians. But *Isidore* derives their Name from *Ognus*, under which name they worshipped *Hercules*: But this, as all Etymologies, is very uncertain; the former seems much the more Natural, and is therefore generally followed. About the beginning of the fifth Century they received Christianity, and began to inhabit the Towns along the Banks of the *Rhine*, and by their valiant resistance of the *Huns*, obtained great Reputation, and for that reason were called into *Gaul* by *Stilico* the Roman General, to assist him against the *Franks*, and for their Service had the two *Burgundies* assigned them; to which they afterward added *Lyonnois*, *Nivernois* and *Dauphine*, and erected a Kingdom, which continued for 120 years in an uninterrupted Succession; at the end of which, *Childebert* and *Clotaire*, the French Kings of *Paris* and *Soissons*, defeated and slew *Gundomer*, the last Burgundian King, by which that Kingdom being broken, the Eastern Parts were seized by others, and the Western made Parts of the French King-

doms, and remained so for some Ages, till at length *Lewis the Godly*, Son of *Charles the Great*, in the Partition that he made of the Kingdom *Charlemaign* left him (already mentioned) erected *Burgundy* again into a Kingdom; the chief Seat whereof being *Arel* it was sometimes called the Kingdom of *Arel*. In this state it continued for near 200 years, till the death of *Radolph III.* 1032, who leaving no Issue, bequeathed his Estate to *Comale* the Emperor, who had married his Sister; or Niece, as others say: After which it was again divided among several Princes; this now called the Dutchy of *Burgundy*, the Ancestors of *Hugh Capet* enjoy'd, and by his Son King *Robert* it was annexed to the Crown; but by his Successor *Henry I.* given in appenage to his Brother *Robert*, whose Posterity continued Dukes of *Burgundy* till 1361. when *Eudes IV.* leaving only one Son, who died young, the Dutchy was claimed by *John* King of *France*, *Charles* King of *Navarre*, and *Edward* Count of *Barr*, all three Descended from the Sisters of *Eudes*; of these *John* got the better, and gave it to his younger Son, *Philip*, who by Marriage obtained also the Counties of *Burgundy* and *Flanders*, and his Successors added almost all the *Netherlands*; insomuch, that *Philip the Good*, and *Charles the Warlike*, the two last Kings of *Burgundy*, were as powerful Princes as any in *Europe*: But the latter being kill'd in his Wars against the *Swissers*, A. 1476. and leaving no Male Issue, *Lewis XI.* seized the Dutchy as an Escheat to the Crown; and it hath ever since been retained by the Kings of *France*; but the County of *Burgundy* with the other Estates of that Prince, descended to *Mary*, Daughter of *Charles*, who marrying *Maximilian* of *Austria*, afterwards Emperor, brought the *Netherlands* into that Family, and *Philip* the Son of *Mary* and *Maximilian*, married *Joan*, Queen of *Castile*, and begat *Charles V.* who was Emperor of *Germany*, King of *Spain* and the *Indies*, Duke of *Burgundy*, and Lord of the *Netherlands*; as will be seen more particularly in our account of *Belgium*.

## C H A P. IX.

### The Government of LYONNOIS, *Lugdunensis Provincia*.

THE Government call'd *LYONNOIS*, comprehends the ancient *Gallia Celtica*, or at least the greatest part thereof, being bounded on the North by *Berry*, *Nivernois* and *Burgundy*; on the South by the Mountains of *Cevennes*, and the Country of *Rouergue*; on the East by *Bresse* and *Dauphine*, and on the West by *Quercy*, *Limousin*, *Angoumois* and *Poitou*. It lies between the 44th degree 26 min. and the 46th deg: 46 min. Latitude, in its greatest breadth from South to North, consisting of about 140 English miles, that is to say, from the Frontiers of *Rouergue* to *Dun-le-roi*, on the Frontiers of *Berry*; as also between the 13th degree, and 23d degree of Longitude. And in its greatest length from W. to E. includes the space of 150 miles, viz. from beyond the Town of *Availle* on the River *Vienne* near the Confines of *Poitou*, as far as *Lyons*. The Soil here is not so Fertile as in other Parts, by reason of the many Mountains that rise up in some of its Parts. The principal Rivers are the *Loire*, the *Rhone*, the *Saone*, and the *Allier*.

In this Government are compriz'd six different Countries, viz.

<i>Lyonnois</i> , Proper	<i>Lyons</i> , Archbishi.
<i>Forets</i> ,	<i>Montbrison</i> ,
<i>Beaujolais</i> ,	<i>Beaujeu</i> ,
<i>Bombonnois</i> ,	<i>Moulins</i> ,
<i>Auvergne</i> ,	<i>Clermont</i> ,
<i>Marche</i> ,	<i>Gueret</i> .

*LYONNOIS*, properly so call'd, *Lugdunensis Ager*, is of but small extent, it lies along the Banks of the River *Rhone* and *Saone*, and is from North to South about 45 miles, and from East to West not above 12 or 15 miles, and is bounded by *Dauphine*; from whence it is separated by the *Rhone* and *Bresse* and *Beaujolais* on the North. *Forets* on the West, and *Vivarets* on the South. The Country round about *Lyons* produces more Grapes than Corn, and the rest is Fertile enough in both, and yields excellent Fruits. Its most considerable Towns are these, viz.

*Lyons*,



Lyon, Archbish. }  
S. Chamaud, }  
                  } *Centurien,*  
                  } *Arse,*  
                  } *Bresse.*

**LYONS**, *Lugdunum*, is a large, populous and flourishing, and next *Paris* may be reckon'd the richest, argest, and most trading City of all *France*, except *Rouen* be prefer'd, which she claims; however it is, *Lyon* is very considerable on account of its great Traffick, which its convenient Situation on the Rivers *Rhone* and *Saone*, and on the Road to *Italy* doth much assist. It is the See of an Archbishop, who hath the Title of Primate of *Gaul*; also a Generality, Election, Seneſchaley, Presidial, and a particular Court for Merchants, call'd the Tribunal of Commerce, and hath also a Famous University, and an Exchange or Course of Money. The Origin of this City is much disputed; some Authors report it to have been built by one *Lugdus*, a King of the *Celts*: *Strabo* makes *Memor* a Gaulish Prince its Founder, which is also disputed by others; and concerning its Name, there is the same difference, some deducing it from *Lugdus* abovementioned, and the old Gaulish Word *Dunum*, a Mountain or rising Ground, such a one being near it; others from an old Gaulish Word, imitating a Hill of Crows, from a lucky Omen of these Birds at its Foundation. There are many others too long and trivial to mention here. It is seated at the Foot of the Mountains on the Frontiers of the Provinces of *Bresse* and *Dauphine*, being separated from the latter only by the River *Rhone*, which passing by the City, hath a long Stone-Bridge over it, and a little below receives the *Saone*, over which in like manner are three fair Bridges. The Town is divided into two Parts, the Greater whereof lying between the *Rhone* and the *Saone*, is the Quarter of *St. Nizier*, and the lesser that of *St. Jean*. These two Quarters are sub-divided into 32 Wards or Precincts, call'd *Paroisses*, and every one of them hath its particular chief Sub-ordinate Officers. The City is likewise surrounded with very large Suburbs, and fenced with an old Castle built on an adjacent Rock, named *Pierre-Scize*, and it is adorn'd with many stately Edifices, among which the Guild-Hall or Town-House is chiefly conspicuous, and esteem'd as a Master-piece of Architecture. Here are likewise to be seen the Remains of some Ancient *Roman* Works, particularly of an Amphitheatre, divers Aqueducts, publick Baths, &c.

The City of *Lyon* having been burnt by Lightning in the time of *Nero*, A. C. 59 was re-built by the Liberality of that Emperor, according to *Tacitus*; which Conflagration is also mention'd by *Seneca*, in one of his Epistles to *Lucilius*. Afterwards *Severus* pillag'd and burnt it in 195, in Revenge, because the Inhabitants had entertain'd *Arminius* his Enemy. It also suffered often by the Incursions of the *Germans*, *Gots* and *Saracens*. The Emperor *Claudius* was born in this City; and the Emperor *Gratian* slain in it by *Andragathus*, A. D. 383. And two General Councils were assembled here in the Years 1245 and 1274. *Lyon* is distant 120 miles from *Paris* to the S. E. 150 from the Banks of the *Mediterranean* Sea to the N. 250 from *Bordeaux* to the E. 70 from *Genoa* to the S. W. 110 from *Nantes* to the S. E. 105 from *Dijon* to the South, and 40 from the Frontiers of *Savoie* to the West.

**FORETZ**, *Forestis Prætorialis*, is usually divided into two Parts, viz. the Upper and Lower, bounded on the E. by *Lyonnois*, and *Brachetis*, on the N. by *Burgundy* and *Dominion*, on the S. by *Vallée*, and *Vi-*

*lains*, and on the W. by the Mountains of *Auvergne*, comprehending these principal Towns, viz.

*Montbrison*, }  
*S. Etienne de Furens*, } *Rouanne,*  
                                  } *Feneux,*

*Montbrison*, *Montbrisonum*, and *Mont-Brisson*, is situated on the Rivulet of *Veize*, at the distance of 6 miles from the River *Loire*, and 30 from *Lyon* to the W. 30 from the Borders of *Beaugogne* to the S. and 20 from the Borders of *Velay*. It was at first only a Castle, but encreased to a Town and enclosed with Walls in the year 1428. It is adorned with a Collegiate Church dedicated to the Virgin *Mary*, divers Monasteries, a Court of Election and a Provostship.

*S. Etienne*, or *S. Steven de Furens*, *Furanum* or *Forum Sancti Stephani*, is seated on the foot of a Hill on the Banks of the Brook *Furens*, about two Leagues from the River *Loire* to the E. and 20 from *Montbrison* to the S. E. The adjacent Country affords good store of Pit-coal, and the Waters of the Brook *Furens* are very proper for the tempering of Iron and Steel, which advantage hath induced the Inhabitants to make vast quantities of small Iron ware, maintaining a very great Trade in these sorts of Merchandizes, which are transported by them into almost all the Countries of *Europe*. The Town of *St. Stephen* suffer'd much damage during the Civil Wars, and was twice taken by the Protestant Party, viz. in 1563. and 1570.

*Reanne*, or *Rouanne*, *Rhodunna*, is a large Town, but destitute of Walls, and Founded on the Banks of the River *Loire*, where it begins to be capable of admitting small Boats at the distance of 20 miles from *Montbrison* to the N. The adjacent Country is call'd from thence *Reannois*, and was erected into a Duchy by King *Charles IX*. The Town it self being beautified with a fair College of *Jesuits*, and divers other Monasteries.

*Feuers*, *Forum Segusianorum*, the chief Town of the Upper *Forets*, from whence the whole Country takes its name, stands on the East-side of the *Loire*, near its Confluence with the *Lignon*, 10 miles N. E. from *Montbrison*, and 20 from *Reanne* to the South, and 20 from *Lyon* to the W.

**BEAUGOIS**, is extended from E. to W. from beyond the River *Saone* to the *Loire*, on the N. of *Lyonnois*, having the principality of *Dumles*, and part of *Majennais* on the E. *Charolois* on the N. and *Franche* on the W. This Country affords abundance of Corn, Wine and Flax, and hath these considerable Towns, viz.

*Beaune*, *Ville Franche*, *Belle-ville*, &c.

*Beaune*, *Baunivium*, *Ballejovium* and *Belijovum*, is a small Town together with a Castle, (on the Rivulet *Ardier*), which hath imparted its name to the Territory of *Beaunois*, and the Lords of the ancient and Illustrious Family of *Beaune*; being distant 25 miles from *Lyon* to the N. and 5 or 6 from the River *Saone*. Over the Gate of the principal Church of this Burgh is to be seen a very old piece of Work-manship in Basso-Relievo, representing a Roman Sacrifice of a Hog, a Sheep, and an Ox.

*Ville franche*, *Francopolis* or *Villa Franca*, is water'd by the Brook *Morgon*, which a little below falls into the *Saone*, and stands upon the Road in the Mid-way between *Lyon* and *Beaune*, 20 miles from *Majennais* to the S. It is at present the chief Town of *Beaugogne*, and remarkable for its Collegiate Church, A.



cademy, Court of Election, Bailiage, and Granary of Salt.

**BOURBONNOIS**, *Borbonensis Provincia*, is divided into the Upper and Lower, and bounded on the E. by the River *Loire*, which divides it from the Duchy of *Burgundy*, on the W. by *Berry*, on the S. by *Auvergne* and *Forets*, and on the N. by *Nevers*, and part of *Berry*. It is extended from W. to E. for the space of about 70 Miles, and 45 from S. to N. The Ancient Inhabitants of *Bourbonnois*, who were a part of the *Boii*, sent many Colonies into *Germany* and *Italy*, under *Ambigatut* Prince of the *Bituriges*, and often maintain'd furious Wars against the *Romans*. This Province hath also acquired Reputation by its Lords, Barons, Counts and Dukes, from whom the present King of *France* is descended. The Mineral Waters of *Bourbon* have been mentioned in speaking of *Bourbon-Lancy*, in *Burgundy*. The most remarkable Towns of *Bourbonnois* are these, viz.

Moulins,	} Vichy,
Bourbon l'Archamb-	
baut,	
Montluffon,	
	} S. Geran,
	} Gannet.

*Moulins*, *Moulinæ*, is seated near the River *Allier*, in a large Fruitful Plain, at the distance of 140 miles from *Paris*, and 20 from *Nevers* to the S. about 50 from *Clermont* to the N. and 70 from *Challou* to the W. It is a Town of very large extent, and was formerly the usual Place of Residence of the Princes of *Bourbon*, who built the Castle, which hath often been the Royal Seat of the French Kings. This Town is also Famous on the account of the singular Virtue of the Medicinal Waters, and the Inhabitants for their Skill in making divers sorts of Knives, &c. *Moulins* is usually divided into 4 Quarters, viz. The Old Town, the New, the Suburbs of the *Carmelites*, and those of the *Allier*. The most remarkable Buildings are the Collegiate Church and two Parochial ones, besides those of the Suburbs, together with divers Monasteries, a Generality and Presidial Courts, and another of Election, and a College of Jesuits. Among the Religious Houses, the chief is that of the *Carthusians*, and the Church belonging to the Nuns of the *Visitation*, wherein stands the Sumptuous Tomb of *Henry II.* Duke of *Montmorency*, Marshal of *France*, &c.

*Bourbon l'Archambaud*, *Borbonium Archimbaldi*, and *Bria*, is a small Town, which nevertheless hath given name to the whole Province of *Bourbonnois*, and is distant about twelve miles from *Moulins*.

**AUVERGNE**, *Alvernia*, bearing the Title of a County, is bounded on the East by *Forets*, on the West by the Upper *Limousin*, *Quercy*, and *Marche*, on the North by *Bourbonnois*, and on the South by *Crennes* and *Rouergue*; its utmost extent from South to N. consisting of about 80 miles, and 60 from W. to E. It is divided into the Upper and Lower Counties, the former to the S. being very Mountainous, among which one called the Mount of *Cantal*, is exceeding high, and the other to the N. extremely Fruitful, especially in the Quarter of *Limagne*. This Province was formerly subject to its own Counts, but united to the Crown of *France* in 1204. by King *Philip* the August, to suppress the Rebellion of the last Count, named *Guy*. The principal Towns are these,

In the Lower,

*Clermont*, B. Riom, Thiers.

In the Upper.

St. Flour,	Mont, Vicomte:
Orillac,	Salers.

*Clermont*, *Ciacomons*, *Clarus-Mons*, *Ciacromontium*, and formerly *Arvernum*, *Arverna*, and *Augustonemetum*, and by some affirmed to be the ancient *Gergovia*; it is a large well-built City, with the Title of a County, and the Metropolis of the whole Province, the See of a Bishop, Suffragan to the Arch-Bishop of *Bourges*; also the Seat of a Court of Aides and a Presidial. It is situate upon a little Hill near the Mountain called the *Puy de Dôme*, and is water'd by the Rivulet *Tiretaine*, which riseth in the Mountain, and falls into the *Allier*; and is distant 50 Miles from *Bourbon l'Archambaud* to the South, and 75 from *Lyons* to the West.

*Riom*, *Ricomagus* and *Riomum*, is seated on a rising ground about 7 or 8 miles from *Clermont* to the N. and is a fair well-built Town, the Churches being magnificent, the Houses beautiful, and the Monasteries fair, and adorned with Fountains and pleasant Walks, insomuch that this Town is term'd, *The Garden of Limagne*. It is the Capital of the Duchy of *Auvergne*, on which depend all the Fiefs and mean Fiefs of the Province, having been erected in Favour of *John* Duke of *Berry*, the Son of King *John*, A.D. 1360.

*Thiers* or *Thiern*, *Thigernum* and *Thiernum*, is a small Town, built on a Hill near the River *Dur*, in the Frontiers of the Province of *Forets*, 20 miles from *Clermont* to the East, toward *Lyons*. The Inhabitants maintain a considerable Traffick in Knives, Scissors, and other small Wares of the like Nature.

*St. Flour*, *Judiciacus*, otherwise *Floriopolis*, a City having the Dignity of an Episcopal See under the Metropolitan of *Bourges*, is seated on the River *Truyere*, 40 miles South from *Clermont*, and somewhat more North-East from *Rhodes*. It had its modern name from its Bishop *S. Flour*.

*Orillac*, *Auriliacum*, is a good Town seated among Mountains, on the Rivulet *Jordan*, which falls into the *Lerre*, about 20 miles distant from *S. Flour* to the W. and 30 from *Rhodes* to the N.

The other Towns are less considerable.

**LA MARCHÉ**, *Marchia*, the most Western Country of the Government of *Lyonnois*, is so called as being a passage or thorow-fare into the Neighbouring Provinces. It is bounded on the North by *Berry*, on the South by *Limousin*, on the East by *Auvergne*, and on the West by *Poitou*. It is divided into two parts, viz. the Upper, having *Gueret* for its chief Town, and depending on the Generality of *Moulins*: And the Lower which hath *Dorat*, and resorts to the Generality of *Limoges*. The Lords of *Luzignen* were formerly Counts of *Marche* and *Angoulême*; but these two Counties were annexed to the Crown of *France* by King *Philip* the Fair; afterward it served as an Inheritance to the younger Sons of the Royal Family, and at length after many Revolutions, was re-united to the Crown in 1531. The principal Towns of this Province are these,



In the Upper Marche,

*Gueret, Aubusson, Grammont, &c.*

In the Lower,

*Dorat, } } Maignac.  
Belac, } } S. Junien.*

*Gueret*, *Gueretum*, *Garaetum* and *Varaetum*, is the Capital Town of the Province of *Marche*, situated near the Spring-head of the River *Gartemp*, hath a Seneschalcy and a Presidial, and is distant about 50 miles from *Clermont* to the West, 40 from *Limoges* to the East, and 30 from the Frontiers of *Bourbon* to the West.

*Aubusson* stands on the Frontiers of *Auvergne*, 20 miles from *Gueret* to the South-East. It is a very populous Town, and remarkable for its Manufacture of Tapistry. The large Towers of an old demolish'd Castle sufficiently shew the Grandeur of the former Lords of this Place, of whom was descended *Peter*

*d' Aubusson*, the Famous Grand Master of *Rhodes*.

*Dorat*, *Odracum*, a small Town, nevertheless the Chief of the *Lower Marche*, stands on the small River *Sore*, which falls into the *Gartemp*, and is distant about 40 miles from *Gueret* to the West, not above 5 or 6 from the Frontiers of *Poitou*, and 25 from *Limoges* to the North.

*Belac*, *Belacum* is seated on the Brook *Vincon* in the *Lower Marche*, about two Leagues from *Dorat*, and hath a Court of Election under the Generality of *Limoges*, &c.

The rest of the Towns are not considerable enough to deserve a particular Description.

The *Lyonnois*, *Forez* and *Beaujolois* hath a Governour-General, a Lieutenant-General, a Bailly and Seneschal of *Lyons*, a Bailly of *S. Stephen* in *Forez*, and another of *Beaujolois*. The *Bombennois* hath a Governour-General and a Lieutenant-General. *Auvergne* hath also a Governour-General, two Lieutenants-General, and two Seneschals of *Rion* and *Cormont*; and *Marche* hath another Governour, a Lieutenant and two Seneschals of *Gueret* and *Dorat*.

## CHAP. X.

### GUIENNE, Aquitania or, Aremorica.

THE Government of *GUIENNE*, which is dignified with the Title of a Duchy, was heretofore call'd the Kingdom of *Aquitaine ab Aquis*; that is to say, from the great number of Springs of hot Water found therein, and was then of larger extent than at present: That part of it which lies on the North-side of the *Garonne* is termed *Guienne*, and the other on the farther side of the same River to the South, bears the Name of *Gascony*.

The whole Country in General is bounded on the North by *Poitou*, *Angoumois* and *Marche*; on the East, by *Auvergne* and *Languedoc*, on the South by the *Pyrenean Mountains*, that separate it from *Spain*, and on the West by the Ocean; lying between the 42d Degree 25 Minutes, and 46th Degree of Latitude; as also between the 14th Degree 20 Minutes, and the 20th Degree and 50 minutes of Longitude; which extent comprehends the space of 230 English miles from South to North; that is to say from *Vic de Sos* on the *Pyrenean Mountains* to that of *S. Jean de Angely* on the Borders of *Poitou*, and about 250 miles from West to East, viz. from *S. Jean de Luz*, beyond *Bayonne* as far as beyond *S. Genier* in *Rouergne*, near *Gracidan*.

The Air is gentle and every where very healthful, and the Soil Fertile in Corn, Grapes and other Fruits, excepting in the Sandy Grounds on the Sea-coasts and the *Pyrenean Mountains*, where there are only Heaths and some Pastures. This Province is water'd with a great many considerable Rivers viz. the *Garonne* or *Gironde*, the *Lot*, the *Dordogne*, the *Adeur*, the *Charente*, &c. But the *Garonne* more especially facilitates

the Traffick of the Inhabitants, which consists in Corn, Wine, Oil, Prunes, Wool, &c.

*Aquitaine*, in the Roman Division of *Gaul*, by *Augustus*, was divided into the *Prima* and *Secunda*, and compriz'd all the Country between the *Loire* and the *Pyrenees*: Which was by *Valentinian III.* given to the *Goths*, as we have elsewhere already said: These were in time conquer'd by the French, and *Aquitaine* made a part of their Kingdom, till *Lewis*, the Godly made it a distinct one, and gave it to his Son *Pepin*; but *Charles the Bald* dispossest'd the Sons of *Pepin*, and bestow'd it on *Arnulph* of *Burgundy*, A. 844. whose Nephew *William* Earl of *Auvergne*, that succeeded him, bequeath'd his Estates to *Ebles III.* Earl of *Poitou*, from whom descended *Eleanor* Wife of our King *Henry II.* in whose right he succeeded in the Duchy of *Aquitaine*, and his Sons *Richard* and *John* successively enjoy'd it after him; but in the time of the latter it was seiz'd by the French King *Lewis VIII.* A. 1202. which causing great Wars between the two Nations, it was at length agreed between *Henry III.* King of *England*, and *Lewis IX.* King of *France*, That the English should quietly possess *Guienne*, bounded on the N. by the River *Charante*, and on the S. by the *Pyrenean Mountains*; and quit *Normandy*, *Anjou*, *Touraine* and *Maine*, which they before possess'd. And from this time our Kings were stiled only Dukes of *Guienne*; which Dignity and Country they enjoy'd till the time of *Henry VI.* in whose unfortunate Reign the English lost all their Possessions in *France*; since when all *Aquitaine* hath been part of the Kingdom of *France*.



Guienne and Gascony at present divided into 17 Provinces, viz.	Guienne in 8	Guienne, Proper.	Bordeaux, Archb. C.
		Bazadois.	Bazas, Bish.
		Aginois.	Agen, Bish.
		Quercy.	Cahors, Bish.
		Vergerue.	Rhodes, Bish.
		Limousin.	Limoges, Bish.
		Perigord.	Perigueux, Bish.
		Saintogne	Saintes.
	Gascony in 11	Armagnac.	Auch, Archb. Cap.
		Gascoigne or Cha'osse.	Aire Bish.
		Condomois.	Condom, Bish.
		les Landes or Sandy Grounds.	d'Aqs, Bish.
		Basques or Labord.	Bayonne, Bish.
		Lower Navarre.	S. Palais.
		Viscounty of Soul.	Mauleon.
		Bearn.	Pau.
		Bizorre.	Torbe, Bish.
Cominge.	S. Bert-and.		
Comerans.	S. Lizier, Bish.		

GUENNE, properly so call'd, or BOURDEAUX, is bounded on the West by the Ocean, on the South by Gascony and Bazadois, on the East by Aginois, and on the North by the Mouth of the Garonne River, and Saintogne. This Country is fruitful in Grapes, whereof excellent Wine is made and transported from Bordeaux into Foreign Parts. The Towns of chief Note are these, viz.

Bordeaux, Archbish. } Blaye.  
Libourne, } Losparre.

BOURDEAUX, *Burdigala*, is situated in a very fertile and well manur'd Country on the Banks of the River Garonne, at the distance of about 40 miles from the Coasts of the Ocean to the East, 60 from Saintes to the South, 110 from Limoges to the South-west, and as many from Toulouse to the North-west, in the Latitude of 44 degrees 45 Minutes. It is the Metropolis of the whole Government of Guienne, and indeed one of the most ancient, and fairest Cities of France, and a Place of great Traffick, being resorted to by Merchants from divers parts of Europe. Its Haven is very capacious and safe, and is call'd *le Port de la Lune*, or the *Port of the Moon*, from its form, being like a Crescent; into which the Tide flows very high, and brings Ships of great Burthen up to the Key. The City it self in form resembleth a Bow, (whereof the River Garonne is the String) and as well built, the Palace, Town-house, Fair, Markets, Publick Fountains, the Key, and the Cathedral dedicated to S. Andrew, are well worth a Stranger's View; as also the Castle, lately well Fortified, and call'd *le Chateau Trompette*. About 18 miles below the City stands a stately Watch-Tower, call'd *la Tour Cordouan*, built by Lewis de Foix, a famous Ingincer. This City is the See of an Archbishop, the Seat of a Parliament, a Court of Aides, Generality, Seneschalcy, an Exchange and a Mint. Also a most flourishing University, which King Charles VII. restor'd to its former Lustre, and Pope Eugenius IV. granted great Privileges to, which were augmented by Lewis XI. Richard II. King of England was born here, in the Year, 1367.

Libourne, *Liburnia*, is a small Town, built near the Confluence of the Rivers Dordonne and Ile, almost over-against Frontac, about 20 miles from Bordeaux to the East, toward Perigueux.

Blaye, *Blavia*, *Blavium* or *Blavutum*, stands on the Frontiers of the Province of Saintogne, on the North

side of the Haven of Bordeaux, where the Garonne falls into the Dordonne, and changerth its own Name into that of Gironde, 10 Leagues from the Mouth of the same River Gironde, 20 miles from Bordeaux to the North, and 30 from Saintes. All Vessels that pass up to Bordeaux are obliged to leave their Guns in this Town. The adjacent Territory is call'd *le Blaignac*.

BAZADOIS, lies between Guienne proper on the North and West, the Landes or Sandy Grounds on the South, and Aginois on the East. It is a Country very fertile in Corn, Wine and Fruits, and comprehends these chief Towns, viz.

Bazas Bish. Castelgeloux. Nerac.

Bazas, *Vasatum* & *Vazatium*, anciently *Cossium* or *Cossio*, is a small City seated in a woody and sandy Country, on a kind of a Rock, the foot of which is wash'd by the Brook of *Lavafane*, about 10 miles from the Garonne to the South, 30 from Bordeaux to the South-east, and 35 from Condom to the North-west. It is an Episcopal See, depending on the Metropolitan of Auch, and the Cathedral Church is dedicated to St. John the Baptist.

AGENOIS, *Aginensis Ager*, borders on Armagnac to the South, Quercy to the East, Perigord to the North, and Bazadois to the West. It is the most fruitful Country of all Guienne, and furnishes several Provinces with Corn, Wine and Oil; the Province is very small, and hath not many Towns, the chief is

Agen, *Aginum*, *Agenum* or *Aginum*, was heretofore the Capital City of the *Nitiobriges*, who were its Founders. It is a very large and populous City, an Episcopal See under the Metropolitan of Bordeaux; and hath a Seneschalcy and a Presidial: And is situated near the River Garonne, where it receives the Gers, 60 miles from Bordeaux to the South-east, 50 from Toulouse to the North-west, and 40 from Bazas to the East. This City had the Honour to be the Birth-place of that Prodigy of Learning, *Jeseph Scaliger*.

QUERCY, *Cadurcensis Tractus*, is bounded on the South by Languedoc, on the East by Vergerue and Auvergne, on the North by Limousin, and on the West by Perigord and Aginois. Its utmost extent, from South to North, consists of about 90 miles, and 50 from West to East. It is divided into the Upper and Lower; the former call'd *Causse*, are the Valleys on the side of the River Lot. And the Lower or *low Towns* lie round about that of *Avcirou*. This Province was united to the Crown of France in the beginning of the Reign of Philip the Hardy, A. 1306. and contains these considerable Towns,

Cahors, Bish. Moissac, Frigeac.

Cahors, *Cadurcum*, anciently *Divina Cadurcorum* is built on a steep Rock, on which formerly stood a Citadel, and encompass'd in form of a Penisle by the River Lot, over which it hath three Stone Bridges; and is distant 40 miles from Agen to the East, 30 from Limoges to the South, and 60 from Toulouse to the North. It is the See of a Bishop, Suffragan to the Metropolitan of Alby, a Seneschalcy and Election. The Inhabitants make divers Manufactures, with which they maintain a reasonable good Commerce, by means of the River. The Cathedral bears the Name of S. Stephen, and was consecrated by S. Martial. Here are also many other Churches and Monasteries, together with a Colledge.

Montauban, *Mons Albanus*, is a good City, with



The town of Tully, the Son of a Barron, and the Seat  
 of an Electing, Miles from C. in the South, on  
 the River of Tully. It is divided into the Old  
 and New C. and had a School on the other side  
 of the River, where the people of the Town by  
 the name of the Tully School, were educated by the  
 Rev. Mr. C. for a number of years by the Instruction of  
 the Rev. Mr. C. in the City of Tully, on the  
 River of Tully.

It is situated, *Hyacinth*, is a small City, and built also on a hill. It is situated on the River of 1/2 Miles from Co. to the East, and near the Borders of the State.

ROBERTSON, *Robertson's Parish*, lies on the West coast of *Quincy* and is bounded on the East by *Crawley*, on the North by *Stargis*, and on the South by *Dequenne*, being divided into three Parts, viz. the County, and the Upper and Lower *Micou*. It is extended from South to North for the space of 7 miles, and at the same from West to East. Its principal *Cities* and *Towns* are,

River Bishop } Mission.  
Valley Bm. } The Franciscan.

R<sup>e</sup> *Rey* or *Racon*. *Raconi*, *Racon*, & *Sagidum* *Racon*, is situated near the River *Ardou*, at the distance of 55 miles from *Cahors* to the East, 40 from *Alby* to the North-east, 30 from *S. Flour* to the South, and about as many from the Mountains of *Cevennes*. It is a very ancient, large, and well fortified City, with the Title of a County, Senascha'cy, and an Episcopal See, subject to the Metropolitan of *Bourges*. The Cathedral is dedicated to the Virgin *Mary*. There are also many other Churches and Monasteries, besides a famous College of *Jesuits*. This City was sometime subject to its own Counts, who kept their Court in that part nam'd the *Burgb*, whilst the Bishops possessed the other under the Name of the City. Afterwards it was bestowed to the House of *Armagnac*, and at length was annexed to the Demains of the Crown by King *Henry IV*. The Adjacent Country abounds in Mines of *Copper*, *Azure* and *Arsenic*: And not far from hence are the Mountains of *Carzac*, which burn when it rains; as also a Cavern call'd *Tindal*, which is 60 Paces wide and 200 deep, &c.

*Palma*, *Palma* is a small City water'd with the streams of the Rivulet *Dourdan*, at the Foot of the Mountains, being distant about 15 Miles from the Confines of *Languedoc*, and 25 Miles from *Rhodes* to the South. It was heretofore only an Abbey of *Benedictine* Monks in the Diocese of *Rhodes*, until Pope Sixt's NNII. erected it into an Episcopal See, under the Metropolitain of *Bayez*, A. D. 1317.

Milieu or Milieu, *Milfieldum* or *Amilbanum*, the principal Town of the Upper Marche of *Revergne*, stands on the Banks of the *Taine* near the Frontiers of *Langue doc*, 20 Miles from *Rodez* to the South-East. It was formerly a strong hold, but its Fortifications were dismantled in 1629.

*Ville Franche, Villa Franca & Francopolis*, is a large well built Town on the River of *Azeriou*, and the chief of the *Lower Marche*, being distant 20 Miles from *Ribray* to the West, and as many from *Cabors* to the East. It hath a *Seneschaley* and a *Presidial*.

**LIMOSIN.** *Limousin*: *Province*, is bounded on the East by *Auvergne*, on the North by *la Marche*, on the West by *Angoumois* and *Perigord*, and on the South by *Quercy*, extending itself from South-east to North-west, to the space of about 65 Miles, and 50 from West to

Barb. The whole Country is generally cold and is very fruitful, scarce affording any good Wine; how ever here grows some Wheat, much Rye, Barley, and Corners, of which last the Indians make one kind Bread. The Principal Cities and Towns are,

*The Baron* } *Barr.*  
*The Baron* } *Capt.*

*Limoges, Lemovicum, or Augustinum Lemovicum* is situated partly on the Top of an Hill and partly in a Valley, on the Bank of the River *Vienne*, at the distance of 120 miles from *Orleans* to the South, 60 from *Poitiers* to the South-East, 90 from *Cahors* to the North, 85 from *Clermont* to the West, and 110 from *Bordeaux* to the North-East. It is a City of large extent, encompass'd with strong Walls and deep Ditches, having been founded (as some Authors alledge) by a certain *Gaulish* Prince, who communicated his Name to it: *Julius Caesar* mentions it as a very populous Place in his Time; and it is at present dignified with the See of a Prelate, Suffragan to the Archbishop of *Bourges*. The Cathedral bears the Name of *S. Stephen*, and *S. Martial* was its first Bishop. There are also three considerable Abbeys, viz. those of *S. Martial*, *S. Augustin*, and *S. Martin*, together with divers other Convents for Religious Persons of both Sexes; a Presidial Court, a Generality and Seneschalcy. The City of *Limoges* was formerly subject to its own hereditary Vicounts, who were likewise Lords of the whole Province of *Limousin*; but it hath been taken at several times by the *Goths*, *French* and *English*; The Constable *de Guéchin* dispossessed the latter in the Year 1371. but *Edward the Black Prince* retook it soon after by Storm.

*Tulle, Tutelas, or Tutella*, is water'd by the River *Corese* and the *Soulane*, about 37 Miles from *Limoges* to the South, and 55 from *Cabors* to the North. It was at first only a Town and Abbey of *Benedictine* Monks of *S. Martin*, which Pope *John XXII.* turned into a Cathedral, *A. D.* 1318. *Arnold de S. Astier* having been its last Abbot and first Bishop. Their Prelates are Viscounts, and Lords of the City, wherein is also established a *Presidial Court*, another of Election, &c.

**PERIGORD**, *Petricoricensis Provincia*, lies between part of *Quercy* and *Limousin* on the East, *Angoumois* on the North, part of *Naincege* and *Guienne* Proper on the West, and *Agénois* on the South : Its utmost extent from South to North, consisting of about 55 Miles, and from West to East 65 Miles. This Province is divided into the Upper and Lower Parts, the former whereof, called the *White*, by reason of the Mountains along the Banks of the *Dordogne* and *Vézère* : And the other on the River *Ille*, is term'd the *Black*, on the account of its Woods. The most considerable Cities and Towns are.

Perigucux, Bish. } } Bergerac.  
Sarat, Bish. } } Montignac.

*Perigucux, Petrocorium*, otherwise *Petrocorii* & *Vesana*, the Metropolis of the Upper *Perigord*, is seated on the River *Ille*, and distant 65 miles from *Bordeaux* to the North-East, and 40 from *Limoges* to the South-West. This City is very Ancient, and hath been often laid waste by the Inroads of the Barbarous Nations; and near its Walls King *Pepin*, surnamed the Short, gained a signal Victory over *Gaiffar* Duke of *Aquitaine*, A. 768. Its ancient Grandeur is evident from the Ruins



Church of the Graciers *1673*, and of an Amphitheatre, together with divers Inscriptions, and other magnificent Arguments of venerable Antiquity, that are to be seen here. It is the See of a Bishop, and the Seat of the Synodical of the Province.

*SAINTES*, the Capital of the Lower *Perigord*, is situated as it were in an Island between the Rivers *Lot* and *Isère*, near the Confines of *Perigord*, 30 Miles from *Perigueux* to the South-East, and many Miles from *Cahors* to the North, it formerly belonged to the Diocess of *Perigueux*, but is now a Metropolitan See, erected out of an Abbey by Pope *Innocent XII.* in the Year 1317. It is also a Place of considerable Strength, and sustain'd two Sieges during the Civil Wars.

*SAINTONGE* or *SAINTONGE*, *Santonum*, *Aggum* is and *Perigord* on the East, the *Lot* and *Poitou* on the North, the *Charente* on the West, and Haven of *Bordeaux* and *Marais* on the South; comprehending from *Angoulême* to the East the Space of about 80 Miles, and from *Angoulême* to the North about 50 Miles: It is a fruitful Country, it yields Corn, Wine, Saffron, and Salt, whereof Saffron is made here. The Towns of chiefest Note in this Province are,

*Saintes*, Bish. }  
*S. Jean d'Angely*. } *Barlaffenx*,  
*Bouage*. } *Aubeterre*, &c.

*Saintes* or *Xantes*, *Santonum*, or *Mediolanum Santonum*, is situated on the River *Charante* at the distance of 60 Miles from *Bordeaux* to the North, 30 from *Angoulême* to the South-East, 35 from *Angoulême* to the West, and about 20 from the Sea-coasts to the East. It is a large City, but not very well built. It is an Episcopal See, under the Metropolitan of *Bordeaux*. The Cathedral is dedicated to *St. Peter*. Here are yet to be seen divers Aqueducts, an Amphitheatre, a Triumphal Arch over the Bridge of the *Charante*, a great Number of Inscriptions, and other Monuments of the ancient Romans.

*S. Jean d'Angely*, *Fanum Sancti Joannis Angerinci*, *Angeriacum* or *Engeriacum*, is a fair Town on the River *Beune*, about 5 or 6 Miles from the Frontier of *Perigord*, and 15 from *Saintes* to the North. It was long time fortified by the French Protestants, but when *Louis XIII.* took it he demolish'd its Fortifications.

### The Provinces of GASCOIGNE.

*ARMAGNAC*, *Armeniacensis Comitatus*, is a County in *Gascogne*, lying between *Languedoc* to the East *Agenois* to the North, *Gascogne* and *Bigorre* to the West, and *Cominge* to the South. It is usually divided into Upper and Lower, and comprehends the ensuing Principal Towns, viz.

*Auch*, Archb. }  
*Lecloure*, Bishop. } *Mirande*,  
} *Verdun*.

*AUCH* or *AUX*, *Aschii*, *Augusta Aufchiorum*, is seated on the River *Giers*, in a very fruitful Country, about 55 Miles from *Bazas* to the South-East, 35 from *Agen* to the South, and 40 from *Thoulouse* to the West. This City is the See of an Archbishop, and the Cathedral, one of the richest and most magnificent of the Kingdom, its Chapter consisting of 15 Dignitaries and 20 Canons, of whom five being Secular, are the

Canon of *Amagrac*, and the four Bishops, of *Montant*, *Perdium*, *Montesquieu*, and *162*. Moreover the Archbishop enjoys half the Lordship of the City, which is also adorn'd with many other Churches and Monasteries.

*Lecloure*, *Leclerium*, a Bishop's See, stands on an Hill near the River *Giers*, 2 Miles North from *Auch*, and 10 East from *Condom*.

*Mirande*, *Mirandis*, is a small Town, and only considerable because it is the Capital of a County, call'd *Astares* or *Ejares*, which takes up the Southern part of the Province of *Armagnac*. The Town stands on the River *Baise*, at the Distance of 10 Miles from *Auch* to the South-West. It was first founded under the Reign of King *Philip* the Fair A. D. 1289.

*Verdun*, 30 Miles East from *Auch*, and near the River *Garonne*, is the Capital of another small Country call'd *Gascogne*.

*CHALOSSE*, *Calosia*, or *GASCONT*, properly so call'd, lies on the West of *Armagnac*, having *Bazadois* on the North, the *Landes* or *Sandy Grounds* on the West, and *Beaumont* on the South. This Country although of small compass, is subdivided into many Territories, viz. those of *Tarsen*, *Marsen*, *Gavardan*, *Narbonne*, &c. The most considerable Towns are these, viz.

*Aire* Bish. *S. Sever*.

*AIRE*, *Alura*, *Atura*, *Aurum*, & *Aurum*, formerly *Vico-Julius* & *Atusatum*, is seated on the River *Adour*, 45 Miles from *Auch* to the West, 60 from *Bordeaux* to the South, and 70 from *Bayonne* to the East. The Kings of the *Visigoths* were wont to keep their Courts in this City, and on the Bank of the River are still to be seen the Ruins of the Palace of *Alarie*: Since which, the City of *Aire* hath been often ruin'd by the *Saracens*, *Normans*, and other Nations, and suffer'd much Damage during the late Civil Wars of *France*. It is an Episcopal See subject to the Metropolitan of *Auch*, and the Civil Government depends on the Courts of Judicature of *Bazas*, from whence Appeals lie to the Parliament of *Bordeaux*. The most remarkable publick Buildings are, the Abbey of *St. Quiterne*, and the Cathedral of the Virgin *Mary*. Two Arch-deaconries appertain to the Chapter, and the whole Diocess is divided into six Arch-Priest-hoods.

*S. Sever*, *Fanum S. Severi*, or *Severopolis*, is a considerable Town at the foot of the Hills on the Banks of the River *Adour*, about 20 Miles below *Aire*.

*CONDOMOIS*, *Condomensis Ager*, is a small Territory lying between *Armagnac* on the South, *Agenois* on the East, and *Bazadois* on the North: Its chief Towns are,

*Condom*, Bish. *Mont de Marsan*.

*Condom*, *Condomum* & *Condomus*, is seated on the River *Blaise*, and distant 20 Miles from *Auch* to the North, 40 from *Bazas* to the South-East, and 15 from *Agen* to the South. It is but a small City, however an Episcopal See, erected in the Year 1327. by Pope *John XII.* who gave it to the Revenue of an Abbey of the *Benedictine* Order, which is now the Cathedral Church. *Reimond Goulard* the last Abbot, was the first Bishop of *Condom*, and the Canons were seculariz'd in 1549. Here are also many other Churches and Monasteries. This City was taken by *Sebriel de Maimancy*, chief of the Protestant Party, in 1569.

*Mont de Marsan*, *Mons Martiani*, stands on the Banks of the River *Adour*, 46 Miles from *Condom* to the



the West, and 15 from *Aire* to the North toward *Bordeaux*. It is the chief Town of a Territory of the same Name, and was built by *Peter Count of Bigorre*, A. D. 1141.

The *LANDES* or *LANNES*, *Landaarum Tractus*, or *Landé Burdigalensis*, is a sandy and barren Country, lies West from *Condomois* to the Seacoast between *Basques* on the South, *Guienne* on the North, and the Ocean on the West, being divided into the *Greater Landes* between *Bordeaux* and *Bayonne*, and the *Lesser* between *Bazès* and *Mont-Marsen*; its principal Towns are these, *viz.*

*Dax*, Bish. *Abret*, &c.

*Dax* or *D'acq*, *Aquæ Augustæ* or *Tarbellicæ*, is situated on the *Adour*, 40 miles below *Aire*, and 25 above *Bayonne*, about 70 miles South from *Bordeaux*. It is a fair well built City, and drives a good Trade by means of the River, (which falls into the Ocean but 30 miles below it) and its Neighbourhood to *Spain*. It hath a Castle for its defence, which is flank'd with many large round Towers, wherein a sufficient Garrison is maintain'd. It is also famous for its Baths of hot Water, that were much esteemed even in the time of the *Romans*. On which account it acquir'd the Name of *Aquæ*, from whence also proceeded that of the whole Province of *Aquitaine*. This City is the See of a Bishop, Suffragan to the Archbishop of *Auch*; and a Seneschalcy.

*Abret*, *Lebretum* or *Lebreti Vicus* & *Abbretum*, is built in the midst of a Forest of the same Name, 40 miles from *Dax* to the North-east, 30 from *Bordeaux* to the South, and 25 from *Bazès* to the South-west. The Town and adjacent Country which it gives name to, was dignified with the Title of a Duchy by *Henry II.* King of *France*. From the noble Family of *Albert* were descended two Kings of *Navarre*.

The County of *LABOURD* or *BASQUE*, borders on the Frontiers of *Spain*, lying between the *Landes* and the *Pyrenean Mountains*, having *Bearn* on the East, and the Sea on the West. The places of chief Note are,

*Bayonne*, Bish. *S. Jean de Luz*.

*Bayonne*, *Lapurdum*, or *Bayona*, is a large, rich and well fortified City, at the Mouth of the River *Adour*, near its confluence with the *Nive*; 15 miles from the Confines of *Spain* to the South, 25 from *d'Acqs* to the South-west, 100 from *Bordeaux*, and 390 from *Paris*. Some Authors are of opinion, That it was the *Aquæ Tarbellicæ* of the *Romans*; but it is certain, that its ancient Name was *Lapurdum*, on which account its Episcopal See (which depends on the Metropolitan of *Auch*) was stiled, *Episcopatus Lapurdensis*, or of *Labourd*, until about the Year 1150. when it began to be call'd *Bayonnensis* of *Bayonne*. Also the whole Territory lying between *S. Sebastian* and *Fontarabia*, was part of the Vicounty of *Bayonne*, and possessed by the Vicount, A. D. 1177. according to the Report of *Roger Hoveden* and *Peter de Marca*, who also with others, affirm, That the Country belong'd to the Diocess of *Bayonne*, till the time of *Philip II.* King of *Spain*, who first obtained for it a Vicar-General during the Civil Wars of *France*, notwithstanding the Remembrance of its proper Diocesan the Bishop of *Bayonne*. The City of *Bayonne* is one of the Keys of the Kingdom of *France* on the side of *Spain*; and hath a very capacious safe and deep Harbour, (a great number of

Vessels passing even into the midst of the Town) and a strong Castle with a good Garrison. The Cathedral bearing the Names of the Virgin *Mary* and *S. Leonard* is surrounded with many other Churches, and diverse Monasteries. Not far from this City stands a high Mountain, from the top whereof one may take a prospect of the Three Kingdoms of *France*, *Spain*, and *Navarre*, &c.

*S. Jean de Luz*, or *Loizune*, *Fanum S. Joannis Lucii & Luifium*, is seated on the Mouth of the Rivulet *Urdacuris*, not 10 miles from the Frontiers of *Spain*, and *Fontarabia* to the East, and about 10 from *Bayonne* to the South-west. Near this Town in an Island made by the River *Bidasson*, which parts *France* and *Spain* call'd *The Isle of Conference*, were celebrated the Matrimonial Solemnities between the present French King *Lewis XIV.* and *Maria Theresa* of *Austria*, Infanta of *Spain*, A. D. 1660.

The Lower *NAVARRÉ*, *Navarra Inferior*, is join'd to the Country of *Labourd* on the West, and that of *Bearn* on the East, and the *Pyrenees* on the South. It is a mountainous and barren Country, and except Fruit which is delicate here, and some Pasturage produces but little. In it are these Towns,

*S. Palais*, *S. Jean de Pied de Port*, &c.

*S. Palais*, *Fanum Sancti Palatii*, situated in the Territory of *Mixe* on the little River of *Ridouze*, 30 miles South-east from *Bayonne*, 8 from the Confines of *Bearn* to the West, and about 20 from the *Pyrenean Mountains* to the North. In this Town were held the Sovereign Courts of Justice, and Chancery for the whole Country before it was united to the Parliament of *Pau*, A. D. 1620.

*S. Jean de Pied de Port*, *Fanum S. Joannis Pedepertuensis*, anciently *Imum Pyrenaum*, is a well fortified Town, built amidst the Mountains on the Banks of the River *Nive* at the distance scarcely of 3 miles from the Confines of the Upper *Navarre* and the *Pyrenean Mountains*, 20 from *S. Palais* to the South-west, and 30 from *Bayonne* to the South-east.

The Vicounty of *SOULE* is a small Territory extended along the side of the River *Gave de Suson*, between *Bearn* to the East, and the Lower *Navarre* on the West. It comprehends 50 Parishes and only one considerable Town, *viz.* That of *Mauléon de Soule*, which gave Birth to that Learned Prelate *Henricus Spondanus*, or *Henry Sponde* Bishop of *Pamiers*, &c.

*BEARN*, *Benarnia*, lying on the West of *Basque*, at the foot of the *Pyrenean Mountains*, is bounded on the East by the County of *Bigorre*, on the North by *Gascoigne*, on the West by the Provostship of *Acqs*, the Lower *Navarre* and the Vicounty of *Soule*, and on the South by the Mountains of *Aragon* and *Ronsal*. Its utmost extent from South to North consists of about 50 miles. This Province is dignified with the Title of a Principality, and was at first possessed by its own Princes. Afterward it became subject to the Dominion of the Kings of *Navarre*, and was at length annexed to the Demesns of the Crown under *Henry IV.* The chief Towns are,

*Pau*, Oclon, Bish. *L'Escar*, Bish.

*Pau*, *Palum*, is seated on the River *Gave de Pau*, 30 miles from *Aire* to the South, as many from the Frontiers of *Spain*, 40 from *S. Palais*, and 60 from *Bayonne* to the East. It is a large Town, and the Seat of one of the Parliaments of *France*, and hath a Castle for



at its distance, wherein on the 13th day of December, 1457. was born Henry IV. surnamed the Great, King of France and Navarre.

Oleron, *Oleronensis Urbis*, *Eborona* and *Iluro*, stands at the Foot of the Pyrenean Mountains, 12 miles from Pau to the West, 20 from the Frontiers of Navarre, and about as many from those of Arragon to the North. This City is the See of a Bishop subject to the Metropolitan of Auch. It was formerly destroy'd by the Normans, and rebuilt by Count Centullus, A. D. 1080. The Gave, a River, separates it from the Suburbs of St. Mary, in which stands the Cathedral Church and some other fair Buildings. The Protestants made themselves Masters thereof in the Civil War time, and Gerard le Roux or Roussel, was install'd Bishop, by Margaret Queen of Navarre.

Lescar or Lascar, *Lascaris*, derives its Name (says Peter de Marca) from the Winding reaches of the Brooks (called in the Basque Language *Lascaries*) with which it is water'd: It is distant 4 or 5 miles from Pau to the East, and 12 from Oleron to the North, and is also an Episcopal See. This City was Founded A. D. 1000, by the Duke of Gascony on the Ruins of the ancient *Benearnum*, which had been utterly raz'd by the Normans in 845. In the Cathedral Church of the Virgin Mary were the Tombs of the Kings of Navarre, but they were demolished by the Fury of the Civil Wars.

The County of BIGORRE, is bounded on the West by Bear, on the East by Cominges and Conserans, on the North by Armagnac, and on the South by the Pyrenean Mountains. Its extent from South to North includes about 40 or 50 miles, and from West to East about 20 or 25. This Province is divided into three parts, viz. the Mountains, the Plain and the Territory of *Rustan*. The Mountains are said to have Mines of Copper, &c. but they are not open. Eneco Arista possessed this Country A. C. 828. before the Kingdom of Navarre was Founded, and after many Revolutions King Henry IV. united it to the Crown of France. The Principal Towns, &c. of it are these, viz.

Tarbes, Bish. } Lourde.  
Vic de Bigorie. } Campen.  
The Baths of Baretge.

Tarbes or Tarbes, *Tarba*, is seated on the Banks of the River *Adour* in a Fertile Country, at the distance of 30 miles from Aux to the South-west, and 25 from Pau to the East. It is a well-built City, but hath only one Street, together with a Castle called *Bigorne*, whence (de Marca says) the whole Province hath its name. The See of a Prelate, Suffragan to the Archbishop of Auch, hath been long since establish'd here: as also, a Seneschal Court. The Cathedral Church is dedicated to the Virgin Mary.

COMINGES, *Comenensis Aget*, lies between Languedoc on the East, Armagnac on the North, the County of Bigorre on the West, and Conserans, on the South. This Country was possessed by certain particular Counts, until it escheated to the Crown of France; It is reasonable Fruitful in Wine, Fruits and Pasturage. And is divided into the Upper or Cominges, and the Lower or Lombes. Wherein are contained these Towns of chiefest note, viz.

S. Bertran l de Cominge, Bish. Lombes Bish.

St. Bertrande de Cominges, *Convene* or *Lugdunum Convenarum*, and *Lugdunum Aquitanice*, is situated on a Hill near the Banks of the River *Garonne* and the Confines of Conserans, 16 miles from *Aque Convenarum* or *Bugneres*, according to the Itinerary of Antoninus, 50 miles from *Thoulouse*, to the South-west, 40 from Auch to the South, and 30 from Tarbe to the South-East. The ancient City of *Convene* was raz'd by the French, A. C. 584. and another built out of its Ruins in 1100 by S. Bertrand, from whom its modern Name is deriv'd. It is an Episcopal See subject to the Metropolitan of Auch, and its Royal Court of Justice depends on the Parliament of *Thoulouse*. The Bishop hath a Seat in the Assembly of the States of Languedoc.

Lombes, *Lombaria* and *Lambarium*, is a small City on the Rivulet of *Save*, distant 30 miles from S. Bertrand, to the North; 20 from Auch to the South-East, 25 from *Thoulouse* to the South-west. Its Episcopal See under the Metropolitan of *Thoulouse*, was erected out of an ancient Abby of Augustin Monks, A. D. 1317. by Pope John XXII. who nominated one Arnold Roger of Cominges to be the first Bishop of this Diocess.

CONSERANS or COSERANS, is a Vicounty lying to the South of Cominges proper, between Languedoc and the Pyrenean Mountains. It was first possessed (as it is generally believed) by Arnold of Spain, under the Title of a County, then pass'd into the Family of the Counts of Carcassone, and from thence was translated to the House of Navarre, &c.

S. Lizier of Conserans *Conseratii*, or *Fanum S. Licerii*, the Capital of Conserans, is a small City seated on the River *Salur*, which about 10 miles from hence falls into the *Garonne*, and is distant 30 miles from *Thoulouse* to the South-W. 46 from Auch to the South-East, and 18 from S. Bertrand to the East. It is the See of a Bishop, and hath a Royal Court of Justice dependant on the Parliament of *Thoulouse*. The City is divided into two Parts, viz. The City and the Town; the former, properly called *Coserans*, is adorned with a Cathedral dedicated to the Virgin Mary, and in the other, named S. Lizier, stands another Cathedral.

The PYRENEAN Mountains which serve as a Boundary between the two Kingdoms of Spain and France, begin near the Town of S. Jean de Luz on the Ocean, and continue Eastward quite cross the *Isthmus* that joins Spain to the Continent of Europe, as far as *Perpignan* on the Mediterranean; the highest of them is that named *Mont-Carrigo*, between *Roussillon* and *Catalonia*, towards the County of *Conflent* on which Snow lies unmelted the greatest part of the Year.

Guienne hath a Governor-General, a Commandant, two Lieutenant-Generals, a Seneschal, and 12 particular Governors of Places. Saintonge and Angoumois have a Governor-General, a Lieutenant-General, two Seneschals, and three particular Governours of Places. Limosin hath a Governour-General, a Lieutenant-General, and a Seneschal. Perigord hath a Seneschal: And Quercy a Seneschal and Lieutenant-General.



## CHAP. XI.

LANGUEDOC, *Occivania*, or *Volcarum Regio*.

THE Province of *LANGUEDOC*, including the Countries of *Cerennes* and *Roussillon*, is bounded on the East by the River *Rhodsne*, which divides it from *Provence* and *Dauphine*; on the North by *Lyonnais*, *Auvergne*, *Rouergue* and *Quercy*; on the West by *A magnac* and *Cominges*; and on the S. by the Mediterranean Sea and the Pyrenean Mountains. It is situated between the 41 Deg. 50 Min. and the 44 Deg. 54 Min. of Latitude; and between the 18 Deg. 5 Min. and the 22 Deg. 40 Min. of Longitude. Its extent from South to North is about 120 miles, and from W. to E, viz. from *Rieux* to *Ville-Neuf-les-Avignon*, 180 miles. In the Roman Division of Gaul, *Languedoc* went by the Name of the *Gallia Narbonensis*, and in the declining of the Empire it was possessed by the *Goths*, who here Founded the Kingdom of the *Visigoths*, which hath been extinct ever since the time of *Charles Martel*.

This Province is esteem'd the most Pleasant and Fruitful of any in the whole Kingdom of *France*, the Air being very Temperate and Healthful, and the Soil bringing forth abundance of Corn and excellent Fruits; its chief Commodities are Wine, Oil, Honey, Wax, Saffron, Silk and Salt. The Upper *Languedoc* affords good Pasture to many Herds of Oxen and Cows. Some Mines of rich Metals and Minerals are found here, and Quarries of Marble and Alabaster. Moreover all sorts of Fish are caught in the Rivers and on the Sea-coasts, and there are divers Springs of Mineral Waters very efficacious in curing Diseases.

But the Country of *Cerennes* hath not the same advantages, as being Mountainous, not so much cultivated, and less delightful in many places. However, it affords Millet, Chestnuts, and some other Fruits. The principal Rivers are the *Rhodsne*, the *Garonne*, the *Tarn*, the *Vistre*, the *Vidoule*, the *Barange*, the *Eraut*, the *Salazem*, the *Berre*, the *Pallas*, the *Agout*, and the *Aude*, intermixing its Waters with those of the *Fresquel*, which is joined by a Canal with the Lesser *Lers*, that runs into the *Garonne*. This is that Famous Canal of *Languedoc*, which hath been lately cut with so vast Expence to make a Communication between the two Seas, viz. the Ocean and Mediterranean, and not yet altogether brought to Perfection. This Country, which hath been subject to a great number of Dukes, Vicounts, and divers other Lords, after many Revolutions, was united to the Crown by King *John*, A. D. 1361.

The States of *Languedoc* are very considerable, and their Assemblies are held every three Years by the three Orders, viz. the Clergy, the Nobles, and the third Estate; the first of these is composed of the three Archbishops; the Second of 22 Barons taken out of every Diocese; and the Third of 22 Consuls of the Capital Cities of every Diocese, &c. The whole Province of *Languedoc* is usually divided into the Upper to the West, and the Lower to the East, and these subdivided as in this Table.

The Upper in 5 Parts viz.	{	<i>Toulousan</i> , chief City <i>Toulouse</i> , Archb.
		<i>Albigensis</i> , ——— <i>Alby</i> , Archbish.
		<i>Lauragais</i> ——— <i>Castelnau-dary</i> .
		The County of <i>Feix</i> . ——— <i>Feix</i> .
		<i>Roussillon</i> , ——— <i>Perpignan</i> , Bish.

The Lower in 4 Parts, viz.	{	The Quarter of <i>Narbonne</i> . <i>Narbonne</i> , Archbish.
		The Quarter of <i>Besiers</i> , <i>Besiers</i> , Bish.
		The Quarter of <i>Nismes</i> . <i>Nismes</i> , Bish.
		<i>Ceven-</i> } <i>Gevaudan</i> . <i>Mende</i> , Bish.
		<i>nes</i> in 3 } <i>Visarais</i> . <i>Uziers</i> .
		<i>ziz.</i> } <i>Velay</i> . <i>Puy</i> , Bish.

*TOULOUSAN*, *Tolosanus Ager*, takes up the more Western part of the Upper *Languedoc*, along the Banks of the River *Garonne*, lying between *Gascogne* on the West, *Albigensis* on the East, and the Country of *Feix* on the South. It comprehends these principal Cities and Towns, viz.

*Telouse*, Archbish. *Lavaur*, Bish.

*TOULOUSE*, *THOULOUSE*, or *TOLOSE*, *Tolosa*, is seated on the River *Garonne*, over which it hath a stately Stone-Bridge, call'd *Pont-neuf*. It is distant 330 miles from *Paris*, 140 from *Limoges*, and 55 from *Cahors* to the South, 60 from the *Pyrenees* to the North, 150 from *Bayon*, and 40 from *Auch* to the East, 170 from the River *Rhodsne*, and 100 from the *Mediterranean* to the West. It was heretofore the Seat of the ancient *Telosages*, (who gain'd so many Conquests in *Asia* and *Greece*) and then a Roman Colony: In process of time it became the Metropolis of the *Visigoths*, afterward of *Aquitain*, and at length one of the most considerable Provinces, or Governments of *France*: Its Episcopal See, which before depended on the Jurisdiction of the Archbishop of *Narbonne*, was erected into a Metropolitan by Pope *John XXII*. A. D. 1317. *Telouse* is Famous for its Traffick, and since a Communication hath been made between the Western Ocean and the Mediterranean, may justly be stild the Mart of both Seas. The City is divided into 8 Parts, call'd *Capitulares*, to which a lesser Quarter, nam'd the *Burgh*, on the other side of the *Garonne*, was added in the Year 1346. The Magnificent Cathedral of *St. Stephen*, is built on a spacious Ground-plat, adorn'd with a Fountain, over which is erected an Obelisk wrought with curious Workmanship. Another Church dedicated to *S. Sernim* or *Saturnim*, the first Bishop of *Tolouse*, is remarkable for its Treasury of Relicks, as also is that of the *Jacobins* for the Shrine of *Thomas Aquinas*. Here are also to be seen many Monuments of Antiquity, particularly a Capitol and an Amphitheatre, together with divers Aqueducts, old Temples, &c. The University of *Tolouse*, is reputed to be the Second of the Kingdom, and consists of several Colleges, among which, that of *Feix* is the most Illustrious; and indeed this place hath been long since the Seat of the Muses, on which account it is call'd *Palladia*, or the City of *Pallas* by *Martianus*, *Aufonius*.



*Aquinus*, and *Sidonius Apollinaris*. The Town-house is a stately Pile of Building, and hath acquir'd the name of the Capitol; neither perhaps will it be improper to mention the Mills of the *Basade* and Castle, every one of which hath 16 or 17 Mill-Stones for the grinding of Corn, and a great number of Engines for the currying of Leather. A Sovereign Court of Parliament was begun here in the time of King *Philip the Fair*, and established by *Charles VII.* Here is also a Seneschalcy and Generality. The City of *Toulouse* after divers Revolutions, remained long in the hands of its own Counts, till *Philip the Hardy* seiz'd on it, together with the whole County, *A. D.* 1271; and King *John* united it to the Crown in 1361.

About this City lie those spacious pleasant Fields, call'd by ancient Writers, *Campi Catalaunici*, in which that Famous Battle was Fought by *Aetius* the Roman General, assisted by the *Franks*, *Burgundians* and *Goths*, against *Attila* King of the *Huns*, whom they utterly defeated and kill'd near 200 Thousand of the 500 Thousand, 'tis said, he brought into the Field. Others place the *Campi Catalaunici* about *Chaulons*, in *Champagne*, tho' with less reason, this place agreeing best with the accounts given of them by the Ancients.

*Lavaur*, *L'Avaur*, or *La Vaur*, *Vaurum*, or *Vaurium*, stands on the Banks of the River *Agour* in the Upper *Languedoc*, and on the very confines of *Albigensis*, at the distance of 15 miles from *Toulouse* to the East. *Isarn* Bishop of *Toulouse*, gave the Town of *Lavaur*, in the year 1098, to *Florady* Abbot of *S. Pons de Thomies*, on condition that he should Found a Priory in it; where afterward in 1318, Pope *John XXII.* established an Episcopal See.

*ALBIGEOIS*, *Albigensis Tractus*, lies between the Diocesis of *Toulouse*, *Vabres*, *Lavaur* and *Rhodes*, being the Country of the ancient *Helufeni*, mentioned by *Cæsar*. It is divided into two almost equal Parts by the River *Tarn*, and comprehends these chief Cities and Towns, *viz.*

*Albi*, Archbish. *Castres*, Bish. *Realmon*.

*ALBI*, *Albiga*, is situated on the River *Tarn*, in a very Fertile Country, about 35 miles from *Toulouse* to the North East, and 30 from *Ville Franche*, in *Rouergue* to the South. It's Bishop's See was formerly Suffragan to the Metropolitan of *Bourges*, but Pope *Innocent XI.* erected it into an Archbishoprick in the Year 1678. The Prelate of this City is also its Temporal Lord, and the King only maintains a Magistrate there, call'd the *Viguier* for holding the Royal Courts of Judicature. The Cathedral of *St. Cécile* hath one of the fairest Quires of *France*.

*Castres*, *Castrum*, or *Castrum Albiensium*, is a fair City on the River *Agout*, distant 20 miles from *Albi* to the South, and 40 from *Toulouse*. Its Episcopal See was Founded by Pope *John XXII.* in 1317, under the Metropolitan of *Bourges*, but it hath depended on that of *Albi* ever since the year 1678.

The Inhabitants of this Country have been Famous in Ecclesiastical History, by the name of *Albigenses*, for their early dissention from the Errors of the Church of *Rome*. They were a Branch of the *Waldenses*, who proceeded from *Peter Waldo*, a rich Merchant of *Lyons*, a very Pious and Charitable Man, who touched with the sudden Death of a Friend at a Feast, set himself seriously to Contemplate upon Eternity, and study the Holy Scripture, which led him to the discovery of the Errors of the Roman Church: And being exceeding Charitable in relieving the wants of

the Poor, and doing other good Offices that lay in his Power, obtained great Respect, and Attention when he argued against the Supremacy of the Pope, Adoration of Images, Invocation of Saints, &c. His Followers grew numerous, and were call'd in Derision by the Papists, *The poor men of Lyons*, and afterwards *Waldenses* from this *Waldo*. The first mention of them in History is about the middle of the twelfth Century, when they began to be Persecuted by the Papists, and were forced to fly into *Piedmont*, where they incorporated with the *Vaudi*, (who were ancient Christians that had never been subject to the Pope's Authority) and were afterwards indifferently call'd *Vaudois* and *Waldenses*. Another part of them retiring into *Languedoc*, settled in this Province of *Albigensis*, and encreased exceedingly. At first the Popes endeavoured to convert them by Preaching; to which purpose the Dominican order of Monks was instituted about the beginning of the thirteenth Century: But these not prevailing, and the *Albigenses* being grown strong by the Patronage of the Counts of *Toulouse*, whom they Converted, the Pope raised a Crusade against them, stirred up the Dukes of *Austria* against the *Waldenses*, and made our *Simon Mountfort* Earl of *Leicester*, Captain against the *Albigenses*, *A. C.* 1213, who with the Popes Legate, the Duke of *Burgundy*, and a great Army which was raised for (as they call'd it) this *Holy War*, were too strong for those poor People, took and plundered their Cities, and barbarously tormented and murdered their Persons, which caus'd them to fly into *Provence* and other Parts, and in time settled themselves at *Merindol*, *Chabriers*, and thereabouts; where in the year 1545, they were most barbarously massacred and cruelly tormented by the French Papists. Those that escaped, sent to *Zuinglius* for Teachers, and incorporated with the Calvinists, who altogether in time grew very numerous and powerful, as we have already shewn in the account of the Religion of *France*.

*LAURAGAIS*, *Lauracus* and *Lauriacensis Ager*; taking its name from the Town of *Laureac*, is extended between the Banks of the River *Ariege* and *Agout*. It is divided into two Parts, *viz.* The Upper and Lower. The chief Cities whereof are,

*Castlenaudary*, *S. Papoul*, Bish.

*Castlenaudary*, *Castellum Arianorum*, or *Castolavium Auriacum*, and *Castellum Novum Arri*, stands on a Hill on the Upper *Lauragais*, 20 miles from *Castres* to the South, and 30 from *Toulouse* to the South-East: A Seneschalcy Court and Presidial have been held in this Town ever since the Year 1553. The Marshal *de Schomberg* gain'd a memorable Battle not far from hence, over the Duke of *Orleans*, in which the Count *d' Moret* was Slain, and the Duke *Montmorency* Wounded and taken Prisoner, *A. D.* 1632. The new Canal passes through this Town, and by reason of a steep Hill which would cause too precipitate a flux of Water, here are five several Locks, with great Sluces one above another, and large Basins between each, whereby the Water is retained and the Navigation continued. These Sluces are Stupendious Works for Art and Strength.

*S. Papoul*, *Fanum S. Papuli* or *Papulepolis*, is a small City on the Foot of Mount *Noire*, near the Rivulets of *Rotoure* and *Lampi*, about a League distant from *Castlenaudary*, and 15 from *Carcassonne*, to the N. W. A certain Monastery was built here about the end of the VIIIth Century which Pope *John XXII.* changed into a Cathedral Church, allotting 43 Parishes for its Diocesis, *A. D.* 1317.



The County of *FOIX* lies on the South-West of *Languedoc*, and is bounded on the S. by the *Pyrenean* Mountains and *Roussillon*, on the W. by *Gascony*, on the N. by *Toulousan* and *Lauragais*, and on the E. by *Narbonne*. It contains 16 Castellanies or small Governments, and many considerable Towns. It was subject to its own Counts, from whom descended *Henry IV.* King of *France*, and so it was added to the Crown, and made part of the Government of *Languedoc*. The chief Towns are,

*Foix*,  
*Mirepoix*, Bish. } *Pamiez*, Bish.  
                               } *Rieux*, Bish.

*Foix*, *Fuxium*, a small Town or Hamlet, formerly well fortified, hath given its name to the whole County, and to an illustrious Family; it is situated on the Brook *Ariege*, and the Foot of the *Pyrenean* Mountains, from which it is distant 15 miles to the N. and 40 from *Toulouse* to the S. and is chiefly remarkable for its Abby, Assembly of the States, Sencischalcy, Treasury-Office for the Receipt of the King's Revenue, &c.

*Mirepoix*, *Mirapincum* or *Mirapiscus*, is watered by the River *Lerr*, and stands 10 miles from *Foix* to the E. This City once belonged to the Diocels of *Toulouse*, but was erected into an Episcopal See under that Metropolitan, by Pope *John XXII.*

*Pamiez*, or *Pamiers*, *Pamiz*, or *Apamia*, stands on the River *Ariege*, and is defended by the Castle of *Fredelat*, whence the City it self was formerly call'd *Fredelas*, and is distant 12 miles from *Foix* to the N. and 30 from *Toulouse*. Pope *Boniface VIII.* chang'd the Abby Church dedicated to *S. Antonin*, into a Cathedral, in the year 1296. And its Episcopal See hath been possessed by divers illustrious Prelates, particularly *S. Lewis* of *Marseille*, a Pope named *Benedict XII.* 4 Cardinals, the learned *Henricus Spondanus*, and others.

*Rieux*, *Rivi* and *Rivene*, is a City of small extent, and stands on the River *Garonne*, near the confines of *Gascony* and *Conserans*, 25 miles from *Toulouse* to the S. and 30 from *Foix* to the North-West. Its Episcopal See Suffragan to the Archbishop of *Toulouse*, was likewise established by Pope *John XXII.* and the Cathedral Church is dedicated to the Virgin *Mary*. The Abby of *Feuillans* is in this Diocels; where are also those of *Lezat*, *Galez*, *Salanques*, &c.

The County of *ROUSILLON*, *Ruscionensis Comitatus*, and *CONFLENT*, lies on the other side of the *Pyrenean*, bounded on the North by *Languedoc*, on the South by *Catalonia*, and on the East by the *Mediterranean* Sea; its extent from West to East is about 60 miles, and 35 from South to North. This County was formerly part of *Spain*, but the French King *Lewis XIII.* took it, and it was granted to *France* by the *Pyrenean* Treaty, *A. D.* 1659. The most considerable Rivers are the *Ter*, the *Tech*, and the *Egly*; and the principal Towns are these, viz.

*Perpignan*, Bish. } *Ville Franche de Con-*  
*Elne*, formerly Bish. } *flent*.

*PERPIGNAN*, *Perpinianum*, and *Papirianum*, is situated on the River *Ter*, and defended by a strong Castle, at the distance of 3 Leagues from the Coasts of the *Mediterranean* Sea to the W. and 30 miles from *Narbonne* to the South. It was built in the year 1480. by Count *Isnard*, out of the Ruins of old *Roussillon*, as yet to be seen about half a League from thence, and

at first belong'd to the Kings of *Spain*, till the French made themselves Masters of it in 1642. ever since which time it hath remained in their possession. This City is adorned with an University Founded by *Perre* King of *Arragon*, is dignified with the Title of an Episcopal See, under the Metropolitan of *Narbonne*, and hath a very strong Citadel for its defence.

*Elne*, *Helena*, anciently *Illibaris*, stands on a Hill near the Banks of the River *Tech*, at the distance only of one League from the *Mediterranean*, 10 miles from *Perpignan* to the South. It was an Episcopal See, but that was translated to *Perpignan* by Pope *Clement VIII.* *A. D.* 1604. The Town of *Elne* was subject to the King of *Spain* till 1640. at which time it fell into the hands of the French: A little below it are still to be seen the Ruins of a Castle, wherein *Constant* the Son of the Emperor *Constantine* was slain, during the Commotions raised by the Tyrant *Magnentius*.

*Ville-Franche de Conflent*, *Villa Franca Confluentum*, the chief Town of the Territory call'd *Conflent*, which lies among the Mountains, is seated at the Foot of the *Pyrenean* Mountains, about 25 miles from *Perpignan* to the S. W.

The Quarter of *NARBONNE*, *Narbonensis Tractus*, lies between *Lauragais* and the County of *Foix*, on the West, *Roussillon* on the South, the Sea and the Quarter of *Besiers* on the East, and *Toulousan* on the North. The principal Cities and Towns of this County, are these, viz.

*Narbonne*, Archb. } *Alet*, Bish.  
*Carcassonne*, Bish. } *S. Pons de Tormiers*, Bish.

*Narbonne*, *Narbo*, *Narbon*, and *Dencamavorum Colonia*, is commodiously seated in a low Country on an Arm of the River *Aude*, commonly called *la Robine*, which was cut by the Romans, and serves to convey Barks laden with Merchandizes from the *Mediterranean* Sea, from which it is distant but 2 Leagues. It is a large well fortified City, and one of the most ancient of the Kingdom, for the Romans establish'd their Colonies therein, as the Capital of one of their Divisions of *Gaul*, which from this City was called *Gallia Narbonensis*; and it was the usual place of Residence of their Pro-consuls, who adorned it with a Capitol, and an Amphitheatre, together with divers Baths, Aqueducts, Municipal Schools, and granted great Privileges to the City, insomuch that the Inhabitants in gratitude for these Favours erected an Altar in honour of *Augustus*, as appears from an Inscription found here in the XVIth Century. The City of *Narbonne* hath been long since the See of an Archbishop, ever since the time of *Constantine* the Great, if we may give credit to some Writers, who also averr, that the Pro-consul *Paulus Sergius*, whom *S. Paul* had Converted, was its first Apostle and Prelate. The Archbishop is President of the States of *Languedoc*. The Cathedral bears the name of *S. Justus* and *S. Pastor*, and is remarkable for its admirable Organs and curious Paintings, wherein are represented the raising of *Lazarus* from the Dead, the last Judgment, &c. There are also 5 other Parochial Churches, the chief of which is the Collegiate Church of *S. Paul*, a College of the Fathers of the Doctrine, and divers Monasteries for Religious Persons of both Sexes. This City belonged to its own Dukes and Lords, till *Gaston de Foix* exchanged it with *Lewis XIIth* King of *France*, for other Lands in the year 1507. It is distant 80 miles from *Toulouse* to the East, 35 from *Perpignan* to the N. 100 from the River *Rhoder* to the West, and about 80 from *Rodez* to *Rouvenac* to the S. *Carcass-*



*Carcaffonne, Carcaffo, Ca caffio and Carcaffum*, is situated on the *Aude*, in the midst between *Perpignan* and *Toulouse*, 20 miles from *Alet* to the North, and 30 from *Narbonne* to the West. It is the Capital City of the Territory called from thence *Carcaffez*, or the Country of *Carcaffonne*, and is the See of a Bishop, Suffragan to the Archbishop of *Narbonne*. It is divided into three Parts, the Upper Town, the Lower where the Burgh formerly stood, and the Castle Precinct, and is especially noted for its woollen Manufactures, &c.

*Alet, Alletia, or Elesta*, stands in like manner on the Banks of the River *Aude*, at the Foot of the *Pyrenean* Mountains, 20 miles from *Carcaffonne* to the South, 20 from *Minerpeix* to the East, and 25 from *Perpignan* to the North-West. This City, together with the adjacent Country, was at first included within the Diocels of *Narbonne*, but was erected into an Episcopal See by Pope *John XXII*.

*S. Pons de Tomiers, Fanum S. Pontii Tomeriarum, Tomeria, and Pontropolis*, was at first only an Abby of the *Benedictine* Order, Founded *A. C.* 936. by *Raimond* Count of *Toulouse*, in honour of *S. Pons*, Bishop of *Cimelo*, or *Nice*, and Martyr; afterward it grew up into a Town, and Pope *John XII*. established an Episcopal See there, in 1318, but the Monks were not seculariz'd until *A.* 1625. The Bishop is Lord of this small City, which stands amidst the Mountains, about 25 miles from *Narbonne* to the North, as many from *Castres* to the East, and 25 from *Abi* to the South-West.

The Quarter of *BESIERS, Bliterensis Tractus*, is extended between that of *Narbonne* on the West, *Rovergue* on the North, the Quarter of *Nismes* on the East, and the Sea on the South, comprehending these chief Cities and Towns, viz.

*Besiers*, Bish. } *Lodeve*, Bish.  
*Agde*, Bish. } *Pezenas*.

*Besiers* or *Beziers, Biteria, Bliteria, or Biterrensis Civitas*, is a very ancient City seated upon a Hill, the Avenues whereof are of difficult access, near the small River *Orb*, which a little below falls into the *Mediterranean*. It was a considerable place in the time of the *Romans*, who built there two Temples in honour of *Julius* and *Augustus*; it was in a very flourishing state in the fourth Century, when the *Goths* took and ruined it: And when afterwards it had recovered it self, the *Saracens* pillaged it about the year 736. And to prevent its being again a Seat for those Infidels, *Charles Martel* quite destroy'd it. However, in time it was again rebuilt, and became flourishing and populous as it is. It was formerly a Vicounty under the Dukes of *Septimania*, but at length united to the Crown of *France*. This City is the See of a Bishop, hath still the Title of a Vicounty, Bailiage and Presidial, and is distant 2 Leagues from the Coast of the *Mediterranean*, 15 miles from *Narbonne* to the North-East, and 45 from *Montpelier* to the West.

*Agde, Agatha*, stands on the Bay of *Lyons*, a little above the Mouth of the River *Erant*, distant one League from the little Island *Brescon* to the North, 15 miles from *Narbonne*, and 12 from *Besiers* to the East, and about 40 from *Montpelier* to the West. This City is remarkable for its Trade, the beauty of its Buildings, and is an Episcopal See under the Metropolitan of *Narbonne*.

*Lodeva, Luteva and Lutava, otherwise Glanum*, stands at the Foot of the Mountains of *Cevennes*, on the Frontiers of *Rovergue*, near the Rivulet of *Lergue*, which falls into

the *Erant*, and is distant about 30 miles from *Agde* and *Beziers* to the North. It was dignified with an Episcopal See, under the Metropolitan of *Narbonne* by the favour of Pope *John XXII*. And the Bishop is its Spiritual and Temporal Lord, having a right to determine all Causes, Criminal and Civil, except High Treason, and assumes the Title of Count of *Montbrun*, which is an adjacent Castle: 800 Gentlemen formerly held Tenures in Fee of these Prelates, and the Bishoprick on that account was stiled the Noble. This City was exposed to great Calamities during the Wars of the *Goths* and *Albigens*; the French Protestants surpriz'd it in the Year 1573. and it was retaken by the Duke of *Montmercy*, *A. D.* 1583.

*Pezenas, Piscena*, is a fair neat Town, seated on a Hill, on the River *Peyne*, near the *Erant*, 12 or 14 Miles North from *Agde*, and 20 South from *Lodeve*; in which the States of the Province commonly assemble.

The Quarter of *NISMES, Nemausensis Tractus*, lies between that of *Besiers* on the West, the *Mediterranean* Sea on the South, *Provence* on the East, and *Cevennes* on the North; and contains the ensuing considerable Cities and Towns, viz.

*Nismes*, Bish. } *Aigues-Mortes*,  
*Montpelier*, Bish. } *Lunel*,  
*Beaucaire*, } *Sommieres*, &c.

*Nismes, Nemausus*, is most pleasantly seated, near the Spring-head of the River *Vistre*, as being surrounded on one side with Hills, on which grows abundance of Vines, and all sorts of Fruit-Trees, and on the other with a spacious Fertile Plain. But it is more especially Famous for its Antiquity, whereof as yet remain many illustrious Monuments: The chief of those is an Amphitheatre, built of Free-stone, of an extraordinary length and breadth, the out-side being adorn'd with Columns and their Cornishes, on which are to be seen the Roman Eagles, and the Figures of *Romulus* and *Remus* sucking a Wolf, besides the Temple of *Diana*, without the Town; an admirable Spring, expatiating in Form of a Pond, mentioned by *Ausonius*. And in this City was plac'd a Colony, which the Emperor *Augustus* brought out of *Egypt*, after the conquest of that Province, as appeareth from divers ancient Medals. Neither is its present Grandeur less considerable, for it is the Seat of a Bishop, subject to the Metropolitan of *Narbonne*, of a Seneschals Jurisdiction, called of *Beaucaire* and *Nismes*; of a Presidial Court; and of an University lately established. It is also a place of very good Trade, which consists chiefly in Woollen Stuffs made here. The City of *Nismes* was possessed by the *Goths*, till the time of *Charles Martel*; and by the Protestants during the Civil Wars of *France*: It is distant not above 10 miles from the River *Rhofne* to the East, 30 from *Montpelier* to the North-East, and 30 from the *Mediterranean* to the North.

*Montpelier, Mons-Pessulanus, Mont-Pessulus, and Mons Luellarum*, the Capital City of the Lower *Languedoc*, the largest and most flourishing of all the Province except *Toulouse*, is pleasantly seated on the top of a Hill, near the Rivulet of *Lez*, at the distance scarcely of one League from the Pool of *Maguelonne*, 2 from the Coasts of the *Mediterranean* Sea, and 60 miles from *Narbonne* to the East. The Episcopal See of *Maguelonne*, depending on the Metropolitan of *Narbonne*, was translated hither under the Popedom of *Paul III*. in the Year 1536. An University for the study of Physick, one of the most Famous throughout Europe, was found-



founded here, as they say, by the Disciples of *Averroes* and *Avicenna*, A. D. 1196. and re-establish'd in 1220. Besides a Law Academy, a College of Jesuits, a Court of Aids, a Chamber of Aids, a Chamber of Accounts, a Generality and a Chamber of the Treasures of *France*, a Seneschals Court, a Presidial, a Chamber of the lesser Seal, and a Royal Court of ordinary Justice. This City is also adorn'd with divers stately Edifices, viz. The Hall of Justice or Sessions-house, the Churches of *S. Peter* and the *Virgin Mary*; and a strong Citadel flanked with 4 Royal Bastions; The King's Physick Garden, without the Town, and other Curiosities, that deserve well to be view'd by Travellers. The Inhabitants are employ'd in making of Treacle, Verdegrease, white Wax, Silk, and other sorts of Manufactures. *Jemes III.* the Son of *Sanchez*, King of *Majorca*, sold the City of *Montpellier* to King *Philip* of *Valois*, A. D. 1349. for the Sum of 26000 Crowns of Gold. The French Protestants made themselves Masters of it in 1561. but *Lewis XIII.* took it from them after a vigorous Defence in 1622.

**GEVAUDAN** or **GIVAUDAN**, *Gabalensis Ager*, lies on the North of *Beziers*, and hath *Vivarais* and *Velay* for its Eastern bounds; the Diocess of *Lodeve* on the South, *Rouergue* on the West, and the Upper *Auvergne* on the North. This Country hath been some time possessed by certain particular Counts, and is very Fruitful, though encompassed with Mountains. The chief City is,

*Mende*, *Mimatum*, or *Mimate Gebalorum*, is situated in a Valley surrounded with the Mountains of *Cevennes*, near the Source of the River *Lot*, 70 miles North from *Montpellier*, 20 from the Borders of *Auvergne*, and 50 from the River *Rhone*. Some Authors make this the ancient *Anderitum* or *Gabalum*, but the Village *Jevoux*, 4 Leagues hence, seems rather to have been that, and that this grew out of its Ruins, having been at first only a Village or Hamlet. It is now a good City, the See of a Prelate, Suffragan to the Archbishop of *Alby*: The Bishop hath the Title of a Count, possesseth the Lordship of the Mannor together with the King, having also enjoy'd in time past a Privilege of Coining Money. This City is beautified with divers fair Churches, a stately Episcopal Palace, &c.

**VIVARAIS**, *Vicariensis Provincia*, was the Country of the ancient *Helvi*, and is now part of *Cevennes*, lying between *Languedoc* proper on the South, *Givaudan* on the West, *Forets* and *Velay* on the North, and the River *Rhone* on the East. It is extended from North to South, the space of about 60 miles, and from East to West about 40 miles, being divided into two Parts, viz. The Upper and the Lower, and comprehending these Principal Cities and Towns, viz.

In the Upper

*Viviers*, Bish. *Tournon*, *Aubenas*.

In the Lower

*Uzes*, Bish. *Pont S. Esprit*.

*Viviers*, *Vicario* or *Vicarium*, is seated on a Hill and the Banks of the River *Rhone*, over-against the Province of *Dauphine*, about 65 miles North from

*Montpellier*, and 70 miles South from *Lyons*. It was at first only a Village, and in process of time grew up into a large City, out of the Ruins of *Abs* or *Abba Helviorum*, which was destroy'd by *Croesus* King of the *Germans*; and that Episcopal See was remov'd thither about A. C. 430. The Bishop is stiled Count of *Viviers* and Prince of *Donferre*, *Chateau-Neuf*, &c.

*Uzes*, *Ucesia*, is the Capital City of a Country, thence so called, and dignified with the Title of a Duchy, and an Episcopal See, depending on the Metropolitan of *Narbonne*. It is distant 12 miles from *Nismes* to the North, 30 from *Viviers* to the South, and 20 from *Avignon* to the West. On the Road between this City and that of *Nismes*, is to be seen the stately Bridge of *Gard*, built over the River *Gardon* between two Mountains; that are thereby join'd together; and indeed its Structure is admirable, as consisting in three Stories of Arches one above another, the last of which was an Aqueduct.

*Pont S. Esprit*, a small City with a good Castle, and a Stone-Bridge over the *Rhone*, is seated on the borders of the *Vivarais*, and at the confluence of the *Ardoche* with the *Rhone*, 20 miles from *Uzes* to the N. and 15 from *Viviers* to the South.

**VELAI**, *Velaunia*, a small Country on the North-West of *Vivarais*, having *Forets* on the North, *Auvergne* on the West, and *Givaudan* on the South. It is divided into two Parts by the Mountains of *Mezeres*, *Pertuis* and *Meigal*, all cover'd with Woods. The chief Town is

*Puy*, or *Puy en Velay*, *Podium*, anciently *Velaunorum Urbs* and *Anicium*, stands on a Mountain, near the River *Loire*, at the distance of 2 Leagues from the ancient Town of *Ruesium*, now the Village of *Saint Paulhan*, out of the Ruins whereof it took its rise, also 50 miles from *Viviers* to the North-West, 60 from *Lyons* to the South-West, and not above 10 from the Borders of *Auvergne*. It is a fair, large, well-built City, and an Episcopal See, which depends immediately on that of *Rome*, not being subject to the Jurisdiction of any Metropolitan. The Cathedral dedicated to the *Virgin Mary*, is an ancient and Noble Pile of Building, but more especially Famous for the concourse of Pilgrims and other devout Persons, frequently resorting thereto. Here are also divers Parochial Churches and a great number of Monasteries. The Bishop is Count of *Velay*, and formerly had a Privilege to Coin Money: He administers Justice together with the King's Seneschal, who hath his Seat here.

*Languedoc* hath a Governour-General, and a Commander in chief for the King, who hath a Lieutenant-General. Here are also 3 Lieutenant-Generals, 1 for the Upper *Languedoc*, who resides at *Toulouse*, 2 for the Lower, residing at *Montpellier*: And 3 for *Vivarais* at *Pont S. Esprit*. There are also the Seneschal of *Nismes*, the Seneschal and Governour of *Toulouse* and *Albigensis*, the Seneschal of the Country of *Foix*, *Carcassonne*, *Beziers* and *Limoux*. A Governour of the Country of *Foix*, 3 Bailiffs of *Velay*, *Givaudan* and *Vivarais*: and particular Governours in *Montpellier*, *Nismes*, *Pont S. Esprit*, *Narbonne*, *Carcassonne*, *Fort of Brescon*, *Egde*, *du Puy*, &c. And in *Roussillon* a Governour-General. There is also a Lieutenant-General and particular Governours in *Perpignan*, and six other Places on the Frontiers.



## C H A P. XII.

PROVENCE, *Provincia.*

THIS Province which bears the Title of a County, is bounded on the East by *Piedmont* and the River *Var*; on the South by the Mediterranean Sea, on the West by the River *Rhone*, that separates it from *Languedoc*, and on the North by *Dauphine*, being extended between the 42d Degree 30 Minutes, and the 44th Degree 6 Minutes of Latitude, as also between the 22d Degree 30 Minutes, and the 25th Degree 40 Minutes of Longitude, comprehending 180 English Miles from S. to N. and 130 from West to East.

PROVENCE was the first part of *Gaul* that the Romans got footing in, and was therefore call'd the Province of the Romans. In the Division by *Augustus*, this was the *Gallia Narbonensis secunda*. It was afterwards possess'd by the *Goths*: And under the French it was part of the Kingdom of *Arles* or *Burgundy*. Afterwards cut off from that, and govern'd by its own Counts for about 400 Years, till the Year 1481, when *Charles*, the last Earl of *Provence* bequeathed it to *Lewis XI.* King of *France*.

The Air is somewhat cold in the Upper *Provence* by reason of the Mountains, but the Country affords Corn, Wine, Almonds, and Fruit, as also very good Pasture for Cattle, &c. In the Lower *Provence*, along the Sea-Coasts it is hot, and hath little Winter except when the North Winds blow. The Soil there is very Fertile, and produces abundance of Corn, Grapes, Olives, Figs, Oranges, Limons, Citrons, Pomegranats, Apricocks, Plums, Almonds, Apples, Pears, &c. Divers sorts of excellent Fish are taken out of the Sea, especially Tunnies. The principal Rivers are the *Rhone*, the *Durance*, the *Verdon*, the *Hubny*, the *Argens*, the *Var*, the *Arc*, &c. It is a Maritime Province and hath these considerable Bays in the Mediterranean Sea, viz. *Marseille*, *Toulon*, *Hieres*, *Grimaut* and *Lerins*.

*Provence* is usually divided into the Upper, Middle and Lower; however, its several Parts may be better distinguish'd by the Diocesses, as they are placed in the ensuing Table.

*Provence* divided into 18 Parts or Diocesses, viz.

The Diocess of <i>Aix</i> ,	<i>Aix</i> , Archb. Cap.
<i>Riez</i> ,	<i>Riez</i> , Bish.
<i>Senes</i> ,	<i>Senes</i> , Bish.
<i>Digne</i> ,	<i>Digne</i> , Bish.
<i>Arles</i> ,	<i>Arles</i> , Archbish.
<i>Marseille</i> ,	<i>Marseille</i> , Bish.
<i>Toulon</i> ,	<i>Toulon</i> , Bish.
<i>Frejus</i> ,	<i>Frejus</i> , Bish.
<i>Grace</i> ,	<i>Grace</i> , Bish.
<i>Vence</i> ,	<i>Vence</i> , Bish.
<i>Glandeve</i> ,	<i>Glandeve</i> , Bish.
<i>Sisteron</i> ,	<i>Sisteron</i> , Bish.
<i>Apt</i> ,	<i>Apt</i> , Bish.
County of <i>Venaissin</i> ,	<i>Avignon</i> , Archb. Cap.
Principality of <i>Orange</i> ,	<i>Orange</i> .

The Islands of *Martegue*,  
of *Stecades*,  
of *Lerins*,  
of *Chateau-d'If*  
in 4. viz. *Martegue*,  
*Ribaudon*,  
*S. Margaret*,  
*Chateau-d'If*.

The Diocess of *AIX*, *Aquensis Diocesis*, is extended along the Banks of the River *Durance*, and includes these chief Towns, &c. viz.

*Aix*, Archbish. } } *Brignole*,  
*S. Maximin*, } } *Barjols*.

*AIX*, *Aqua-sextia*, the Metropolis of *Provence*, is seated in a Plain at the Foot of the Hill of *S. Eutropius*, and near the Rivulet of *Arc*, 20 miles from *Marseille* to the North, 50 from the Confines of *Dauphine* to the South, 80 from *Montpellier*, and about 40 from *Arles* to the East, and 90 from *Nice* to the West. It is a large, well-built and very ancient City, as deriving its Name from the *Bagnio's* that were erected by *Caius Sextus*, who brought hither a Roman Colony. It was formerly the usual Place of Residence of the Counts of *Provence*, and at present the See of an Archbishop, being also honoured with a Parliament, a Chamber of Accounts, a Court of Aids, a Generality, a Treasury-Chamber, the principal Seat of the Grand Seneschal of *Provence*, and that of the ordinary Judge, and another Magistrate appointed by the King, called the *Viguier*. This City was heretofore sacked by the *Lombards*, and afterwards by the *Saracens*; but it hath been since well repaired and much enlarged, so that it may be justly esteemed as one of the Noblest of the Kingdom. The Cathedral bears the Name of *S. Saviour*, and is adorned with a high Tower, a Hexagon Form: The *Baptistery* is an admirable Structure, being adorned with Pillars standing round about the Fonts, which support a Dome over them; and the Chapel of *Nostre Dame de Grace* is extremely rich. Here are also two Parochial Churches, viz. of *S. Magdalen* and the *Holy Ghost*, several Monasteries, a College of *Jesuits*, &c.

The Diocess of *RIEZ*, *Reiensis Episcopatus*, lies on the East of that of *Aix*, and hath these Towns,

*Riez*, Bish. *Valensole*. *Oreson*.

*Riez*, *Reii*, *Reii Apollinari* and *Regium*, is situated in a Fruitful Country on the Rivulet of *Auvertre*, about 35 miles from *Aix* to the N. E. 45 from *Toulon* to the North, and as many from the Frontier of *Dauphine* to the South. It is a small City but well-built, and hath been very considerable in the Time of the *Romans*, as appears from divers Inscriptions and other Monuments of Antiquity found here. The Bishop is also temporal Lord of the Mannor and Suffragan to the Archbishop of *Aix*.

The Diocess of *SENEZ*, *Saniciensis Diocesis*, lies along



along the Banks of the *Verdun*, on the North-East of *Riez*. Its chief Towns are,

*Senez*, Bish. *Castelaine*, *Colmars*.

*Senez*, *Sanitium* or *Sanecium*, is a City below the Mountains, of very small compass, not much inhabited, and now almost reduc'd to a Village; nevertheless it retains the Title of an Episcopal See, under the Metropolitan of *Ambrun*, although its Bishop generally resides at *Castelaine*, a fair Town on the River *Verdun*, from whence it is distant 10 miles to the North, 20 from *Riez* to the N. E. and about 40 from *Ambrun* to the S. The Cathedral Church bears the Name of the Assumption of the Virgin *Mary*; and the Charter which had been formerly of the *Augustin* Order, was seculariz'd by Pope *Innocent X*.

*Colmars*, *Colmartium*, or *Collis Martii*, stands on the Banks of the *Verdun*, near the *Alps* and the Confines of the County of *Nice*, and 20 miles N. E. from *Senez*. It is a well Fortified Town, but sustain'd much damage by a great Fire, which happen'd there, A. D. 1672.

The Diocess of *DIGNE* lies on the North of *Senez*.

*Digne*, Bish. *Collebrioux*.

*Digne*, *Dimia*, is seated at the Foot of the Mountains in the Upper *Provence*, on the River *Bleone*, which there receives a Brook of hot Waters, at the distance of 15 miles from *Senez* to the N. and 25 from the Frontiers of *Dauphine* to the S. It was heretofore the Capital City of the *Sentis*, and is at present the Seat of a Prelate, Suffragan to the Archbishop of *Ambrun*. The Cathedral Church is dedicated to the Virgin *Mary*, and the Chapter was sometime Regular of the *Augustin* Order.

The Diocess or Archbishoprick of *ARLES*, is the South-West corner of *Provence*, lying along the Sea-coasts, and the Banks of the River *Rhose*, the chief Towns are,

*Arles*, Archb. *Salon*.

*ARLES*, *Arelate*, and *Arelatum*, is situated on the Eastern Bank of the River *Rhose*, over which it hath a Bridge of Timber, 40 miles from *Aix* to the West, and as many from *Montpelier*, and in the mid-way between *Avignon* to the South and the *Mediterranean* Sea. The *Romans* established their sixth Colony in this City, and caused the General Assemblies of the six neighbouring Provinces to be held annually here. Many Marks of its ancient Grandeur have been discover'd, as the Remains of an Amphitheatre, several Statues and Tombs, but especially a Roman Obelisk of Oriental Granate Stone (a piece much admired by the Curious.) It is 52 Foot high, and 7 Foot Diameter at the Base, and yet but one Stone. It hath been erected not many years since, and makes a very agreeable shew to Travellers. This was the Capital of the Kingdom of *Burgundy*, and is at present a very fair and large City, dignified with a Metropolitan See, and a Royal Academy for Languages lately established. The Emperors at several times granted large Privileges to it; which though it hath been deprived of by its Princes, yet still hath a Territory of 30 Miles extent, depending on it; which is the Islands made by the three Branches of the *Rhose*, called *Camargue*; and the *Crau* or *Campi Lapidari* of *Strabo* and

*Pliny*, which is a large Country covered with Stones, and reaches from the *Rhose* to the *Mer de Martigne*, a small Bay between that and *Marseilles*.

*Salon* or *Salon de Crau*, *Saloma* or *Salum*, is the chief Town of the *Crau* abovementioned, and is situated 25 Miles from *Arles* to the East, about 20 from *Aix* to the West, and 5 or 6 from the Bay of *Martignes* to the North. This Town is adorn'd with an old Castle, a Collegiate Church and divers Monasteries, and was the place of the Nativity of the Famous *Michael Nostradamus*, who also died there in the year 1566.

The Diocess of *MARSEILLE*, lies along the Sea-Coasts, on the East of *Arles*, and hath these considerable Towns, viz.

*Marseille*, Bish. *Aubagne*.

*Marseille*, *Massilia*, is seated on a little Hill, and hath a very capacious and safe Harbour on the Coasts of the *Mediterranean* Sea, at the distance of 20 miles from *Aix* to the South, and 40 from *Arles* to the South-East. This City was built, as 'tis suppos'd, by the *Phanicians*, and flourish'd in the time of *Julius Caesar*; when it was govern'd in Form of a Republick, and had a Famous Academy much frequented by the young Gentlemen of *France*, and even of *Rome* itself. The Inhabitants acquir'd much Reputation in former times on the account of their Learning and Courteousness, according to the Testimony of *Cicero*, but now they excel chiefly in the Knowledge of Maritime Affairs; for the Capital Gallies of *France* are laid up here, and it is the usual place of Rendezvous of their Levantine Ships. The Port, which is defended on one side by a Fortress and the Abby of *S. Victor*, is flank'd on the other with a Wall above 1300 Paces long; its Mouth being shut up with a Chain lying at a certain distance on three Pillars of Stone, leaving a space open for the Passage only of one large Vessel. The City it self at present enjoys great Privileges, and is one of the largest, fairest, and most populous of the Kingdom, especially since it hath been enlarg'd by the present King. So that its Cittadels, new Streets, publick Places, stately Edifices, magnificent Churches, Monasteries, Colleges, Seminaries, Hospitals, Courts of Judicature, Haven, Arsenal, Gallies, &c. are well worth a Strangers particular observation.

The Episcopal See of *Marseille*, formerly subject to the Metropolitan of *Vienne*, now depends on that of *Arles*. The Inhabitants heretofore often maintain'd Wars against the *Gauls*, *Ligurians*, *Carthaginians*, and divers other Nations, but their City was taken by *Julius Caesar*, afterward became a Prey to the *Goths* and other barbarous People, and was likewise surpriz'd by *Alfonso* King of *Arragon*, in the year 1423. However having been afterwards well repaired, it resisted the Forces of *Charles* of *Bourbon*, in 1524. and those of the Emperor *Charles V.* in 1536. It was for some time subject to the Jurisdiction of certain particular Viscounts, as also to that of the Counts of *Provence*, Anno 1243. and at length was united to the Crown of *France*, together with the whole Country, in 1481.

*Aubagne*, *Aubanca*, is a fair Town, wherein the Assemblies of the States of the Province are often convened. It is distant only 10 miles from *Marseille* to the East, and 15 from *Aix* to the South.

The Diocess of *TOLON*, *Telonensis* Diocess.



Toulon, Bish. *Hieres*.

**T O U L O N**, *Telo*, or *Telo Martius*, *Toionium* and *Antonium*, is situated in a plain Fruitful Country, and on a Bay which makes a very safe, large and commodious Harbour on the Coasts of the Mediterranean Sea, at the distance of 30 miles East from *Marseille* by Land, 75 miles from *Nice* to the West, 90 from the Borders of *Dauphine* to the South, and 400 miles from *Paris*. It is a very fair, strong and well built City, being adorn'd with many stately Churches, Monasteries, and other publick Edifices. King *Henry IV.* Fortified it with strong Walls, and built two large Moles, each whereof is 700 Paces long, enclosing almost the whole Port; near them is also erected an Arsenal furnished with all sorts of Naval Stores, whence the largest Ships of the Royal Fleet of *France* are usually sent out. And for their Security the Fortifications have been much increased by the present King.

On two sides of the City, viz. the N. E. and S. E. at a very near distance, lie very steep and inaccessible Hills; that of *S. Ann's* on the N. E. perfectly commands the Town, and sinks with a Declivity on that side; but on the Country side 'tis a Perpendicular Rock; as this commands the Town, so the Possession of it secures it, and therefore the *Mareschal Tesse* having march'd his Army expeditiously, and taken Possession of this Hill before the Duke of *Savoy* and Prince *Eugene* could get up, frustrated that Famous Siege of this City in the Summer of 1707. The Hill of *S. Catherine's*, which the Allies at that time possessed, lies more to the E. and on the S. E. lies the Hill of *Malgue*, between which and the Town lies a Marsh. On the Sea-side it is extremely well defended by Batteries of Cannon, flanking all the Avenues. In the Mouth of the Haven lies a Stockade or Boom, between which, and a little Neck of Land, there is a pass of good deep Water; but that is secur'd by a great Tower, whereon are mounted 30 Guns which carry twenty four Pound Ball. 'Twas this Tower our Fleet, under Sir *Cloudesly Shovel* endeavour'd to gain, and had in effect done it, if an unlucky Shot had not blown up the Magazine of Gunpowder in *Fort Laurence*, which they had already taken, but being thereby depriv'd of the shelter they had got, could not possibly carry on their attacks on the Tower. The Army on the Land-side finding it impossible to gain *St. Ann's Hill*, and the Fleet on the Sea-side being hereby disappointed, and notice being brought of the near approach of Armies of French detach'd from all Parts, the Duke of *Savoy* found it necessary to raise the Siege, and accordingly drew off the . . . . . *August*, and Retreated in perfect good Order, without any loss.

*Hieres*, *Hierum*, *Area* and *Olbia*, is a small Town on the Coasts, about 10 miles from *Toulon* to the E. and over against the Islands *Stechades*, to which it hath given their modern Name, on which account only this Town is mentioned, being not otherwise considerable.

The Diocess of **FREJUS** lies to the E. of that of *Toulon*, and contains these chief Towns, &c. viz.

*Frejus*, Bish. *S. Tropez*, &c.

*Frejus*, *Foro-Julium* or *Forum Julii*, is seated in a Valley amidst the Marshes, near the Mouth of the River *Agens*, and distant only half a League from the Sea-coasts, 40 miles from *Toulon* to the N. E. and 60 from *Aix* to the E. This City was heretofore very considerable, and there yet remain divers Monuments of Antiquity. It hath also at present a capacious

Harbour, and is dignified with an Episcopal See under the Metropolitan of *Aix*.

*S. Tropez*, *Favum S. Tropetis*, is a small but strong Town on the South-side of the Gulph of *Grimat*, and hath in like manner a large Haven, 5 Leagues from *Frejus* to the South, and 35 miles from *Toulon* to the East.

The Diocess of **GRASSE** is situated on the Coasts to the N. E. of *Frejus*, comprehending these Towns, &c. viz.

*Grasse*, Bish. *Antibes*, *Lanes*, &c.

*Grasse* or *Grace*, *Grassa*, is a very populous and rich City, seated on a Hill 2 Leagues from the Sea, 20 Miles from *Frejus* to the N. and 20 from *Nice* to the E. The Episcopal See of *Antibes* under the Metropolitan of *Ambrun*, was remov'd hither by Pope *Innocent IV.* by reason of the unwholesomeness of the Air of that Place, and the Incursions of Pirates. Besides the Cathedral, there are divers other Churches, and a great number of Monasteries, &c.

*Antibes*, *Antipolis* or *Antipolis Julia Augusta*, was formerly the Seat of a Prelate, and is at present well Fortified with a Castle, and hath a convenient Harbour, about 3 Leagues from *Nice* to the West, and 20 miles from *Frejus* to the North-East.

The Diocess of **VENCE** lies to the North-East of that of *Grasse*, and hath these Towns, &c. viz.

*Vence*, Bish. *S. Paul*, &c.

*Vence*, *Vincium*, *Vintium*, *Venciensis Urbs* and *Vencium*, is situated on the Maritime Alps at the distance of 5 or 6 miles from the River *Var*, about 12 miles from *Grasse* to the N. E. and as many from *Nice* to the N. W. This City is very ancient, as having been a Roman Colony, but not large; and its Episcopal See depending on the Metropolitan of *Ambrun*, was formerly united to that of *Grasse*, but hath been separated from it. The Cathedral is dedicated to the Virgin *Mary*, and *St. Eusebius* was its first Prelate. The Civil Jurisdiction of the City and Lordship of the Mannor, is divided between the Bishop and the Baron of *Vence*.

The Diocess of **GLANDEVE** is extended along the Banks of the River *Var*, to the North-West of *Vence*. Considerable Towns in it are,

*Glandeve*, Bish. *Entrevaux*, &c.

*Glandeve*, *Glandata*, *Glandate* and *Glanateve Capillatiorum*, stands near the Banks of the *Var*, and formerly bore the Title of a County, as also of an Episcopal See under the Metropolitan of *Ambrun*; but at present there remains only a Fortress erected on an Hill, the City it self being ruin'd: For about 800 years ago, the continual overflowing of the River obliged the Inhabitants to settle elsewhere, especially at the Town of *Entrevaux*, where the Bishop now resides. This City hath imparted its name to the Family of the *Glandeves*, one of the most Illustrious of *Provence*, which in the X Century re-established the Bishoprick, after it had been abolish'd by the *Saracens*.

*Entrevaux*, *Intervallium* and *Intervalles*, is seated on the River *Var*, at the Foot of the Mountains, on the very Limits of the Duchy of *Savoy* and County of *Nice*, at the distance only of one mile from the Ruins of the City of *Glandeve*, 16 from *Vence* to the N. W. and 30 from *Digne* to the E.

The Diocess of **SISTERON**, *Segustrensis Diocesis*, lies to the N. and beyond *Digne* to the W. The chief Towns are,

*Sisteron*, Bish. *Forca'quier*, County. *Monsieur*, *Sisteron*,



*Sisteron, Segustera, Segusterorum Urbs, and Sistarica*, is water'd by the River *Durance*, which there receives the Brook *Buech*; and stands near the Borders of *Dauphine*, 50 miles N. from *Aix*, and 45 N. W. from *Glandève*. It was formerly dignified with the Title of a County, and is still a large well-built City, and the See of a Prelate, Suffragan to the Metropolitan of *Aix*. A Seneschal's Court hath been established here ever since the year 1635.

*Forcalquier, Forcaliguesium*, anciently *Forum Neronis*, the chief Town of a County of the same name stands on a Hill, and the side of the Rivulet *Laye*, in the midst between *Sisteron* to the N. E. and *Apt* to the S. W. about 2 Leagues from the River *Durance*.

*Mansque, Manuesca*, is a small but fair Town on the River *Durance*, subject to the Jurisdiction of the Knights of *Malta*, and distant 20 miles from *Riez* to the W. 25 from *Aix* to the N. and about 12 from *Forcalquier* to the S.

The Diocesis of *A P T*, *Aptensis Diocesis*, is situated on the Frontiers of the County of *Venaissin*, the chief City.

*Apt, Aptæ, or Aptæ Julia Vauzentium*, is a small City situate on the River *Culen* near the Mountains, at the distance of 25 miles from *Aix* to the N. as many from *Avignon* to the E. and 40 from *Sisteron* to the S. W. This City was anciently one of the largest and most illustrious of the *Celtae*, and was the Capital of the *Vulgentes* in the time of the *Romans*. It was likewise enlarged by *Julius Cæsar*, who made it a Colony, and caused it to bear his own Name. The most ancient Prelate of this Diocesis was *S. Auspicius Marto*, and the Bishop at present is the first Suffragan to the Metropolitan of *Aix*, and styled Prince of *Apt*, and his Predecessors have had a Privilege to Coin Money. In the Cathedral of *S. Anne*, and the Church of the *Cordeliers*, are preserved a great number of Relicks. Westward from hence lies

The Country of *VENAISSIN*, *Vindascinus* or *Vindascensis Cemitatus*, which is bounded on the E. by *Provence*, on the N. by *Dauphine*, on the S. by the River *Durance*, and on the West by the River *Rhône*, which divides it from *Languedoc*, being extended from S. to N. about 35 miles, and 30 from W. to E. This Country took its Name (as 'tis believed) from *Venasque*, formerly its Capital City, and was granted by *Joanna* Queen of *Naples* and Countess of *Provence*, to Pope *Clement VI.* in 1348. since which time it hath been possessed by his Successors, together with the City of *Avignon*, comprehending an Archbishoprick, 3 Bishopricks, 4 Baronies, and 78 Towns and Villages; the chief whereof are these, viz.

*Avignon*, Arch. } *Cavaillon*, Bish.  
*Carpentras*, Bish. } *Vaison*, Bish.

*AVIGNON*, *Avenio*, is situated on the River *Rhône*, over which stands a Stone Bridge, now half ruin'd at the distance of 25 miles from *S. Esprit* to the S. 20 from *Arles* to the N. and 45 from *Aix* to the N. W. It is a large and flourishing City, a Place of good Trade, which consists chiefly in Silks manufactur'd here; Erected into a Metropolitan See under the Pontificate of *Sixtus V.* in the Year 1475. having been before subject to that of *Arles*. It is also adorned with an University, and a Mint-house for the Coining of Money with the Arms of the Popes, of whom seven successively resided here for the space of 70 years; that is to say, from *A. D.* 1307, to 1377. viz.

*Clement V.* *John XXII.* *Clement VI.* who purchased *Avignon* of *Q. Joanna*, *Innocent VI.* *Urban V.* and *Gregory XI.* who through the Persuasion of *S. Catherine* of *Sienna*, brought back the Papal See to *Rome*. Here are divers stately Palaces, and magnificent public Buildings. The Walls are strong, the Churches stately, and the Avenues of the City very pleasant. The Canons of the Cathedral dedicated to the Virgin *Mary*, wear Scarlet Robes, and the Chaplains others of Violet Colour. As for the Civil Government, it is administered by Consuls, and their Assister, who is as it were chief Justice of the City. The *Viguier*, an Officer like the Provost of the Merchants of *Paris*, judges Causes that do not exceed the Value of 4 Ducats of Gold without Appeal. In greater Causes Appeals lie to the Vice-Legate, who commits the Affair to the Court of the *Rota*, where there are 5 Auditors; and from thence an Appeal lies to *Rome*.

*Carpentras, Carpentoratic*, is watered by the River *Russe*, and seated in a very Fertile Country about 12 miles from *Avignon* to the N. E. as many from *Vaison* to the S. and somewhat more from *Orange*. It is an Episcopal See subject to *Avignon*. It grew up out of the Ruins of *Vindausca* or *Venasque*, and is now the Capital City of the Country of *Venaissin* in its Room. It is enclosed with strong Walls, and stands on the Foot of Mount *Ventoux*, which riseth up from thence 4 Leagues in height. In this City is established a Court of Justice, a Treasury-Office, &c.

*Cavaillon, Cabellio* or *Caballio*, is a City of a small compass now seated in a Plain near the River *Durance*, although it formerly stood on an adjacent Hill, where its Ruins are as yet to be seen. The Prelate of *Cavaillon* is Suffragan to the Archbishop of *Avignon*, from whence it is distant 15 miles to the S. E. and 30 from *Aix* to the N. W.

*Vaison, Vasio, Vasion* and *Vassionensis Urbs*, is built on the side of a Hill on the Banks of the River *Leveze*, at the distance of 12 miles from *Carpentras* to the N. as many from *Orange* to the E. and 24 from *Avignon* to the N. E. This City was heretofore more considerable than at present, having been ruin'd by the *Goths*, *Vandals* and *Saracens*. The Church of the Virgin *Mary*, reported to have been formerly the Cathedral, stands without the City on the Plain, and the other within the Walls, hath a Chapter of Canons, among whom are 4 Dignitaries. The Episcopal See of *Vaison* is subject to the Metropolitan of *Avignon*.

The Principality of *ORANGE*, *Arauscanus Principatus*, is enclosed within the Country of *Venaissin* on the E. and the River *Rhône* to the W. being extended for the space of 20 miles in length. This small Territory of right appertains to the illustrious House of *Nassau*, but was usurp'd by the present French King *Lewis XIV.* on the Pretensions of the Family of *Lengueville*, till by the late Treaty at *Ryswick*, it was restor'd to his late Majesty King *William*. It comprehends the Capital City of *Orange*, together with about 15 other Towns and Villages, the chief of which are these, viz.

*Orange*, Bish. } *Jonquieres*,  
*Courtezen*, } *Bigondas*.

*ORANGE*, *Aurasio*, is situated near the Rivulet of *Egues*, distant 3 or 4 miles from the River, *Rhône* to the E. 12 from *S. Esprit* to the S. and 15 from *Avignon* to the N. It is called *Colonia Secundani* by *Pliny*, in regard that the *Triumviri*, caused the second Roman Legion to be brought hither. This City hath been much larger in time past than at present, as having



having suffer'd great damage by the Inroads of divers barbarous Nations : Of which former Grandeur, there are evident marks in the Remains of a *Cirque*, very artificially built, an Amphitheatre and a Triumphant Arch almost entire, which *Caius Marius* and *Lucius Catulus* had erected after the Victory obtained over the *Cimbrians* and *Teutones*, besides part of a large Tower, which some suppose to have been a Temple of *Diana*, and divers other remarkable Monuments of Antiquity. The Fortrefs which *Maurice of Nassau*, Prince of *Orange* made so regular in the year 1622. stood on a Hill, and render'd this place one of the strongest Holds of *Europe*; but it was raz'd together with the other Fortifications in 1660. The City of *Orange* is the See of a Prelate, Suffragan to the Archbishop of *Arles*, and is also adorned with an University, which *Raymond V.* founded, A. D. 1365. and a Parliament established by *William of Aragon*, 1470. but the French King suppress'd the latter in 1687: and changed it into a *Viguerie*, under the Jurisdiction of the Parliament of *Aix*.

The Principality of *Orange* was convey'd by Marriage to *John de Chaulons* of the Illustrious Family of *Burgundy*, who in the year 1475. became absolute Prince of *Orange*, and was succeeded in it by *William*, *John*, and *Philibert* his Descendants, the last of whom left an only Sister, married to *Henry* Earl of *Nassau*, A. 1515, and had issue *Rene* of *Nassau*, who was Adopted by *Philibert*, and succeeded him in this Estate, from whom descended his late Majesty of *Great Britain*.

The Island of *MARTEGUES*, or *Martigues*, *Maritima Colonia*, lies a little to the West of *Marseille*, and is dignified with the Title of a Principality, and called by some the *Venice* of *France*. It is divided into three Parts, viz. *Fonquiers*, *L'Isle*, and *Forriers*, having a capacious and safe Harbour at the Mouth of the Gulph, named the Bay of *Martigues*, the Town being situate on the Lake of *Berre*, from whence divers deep Channels have been cut to make a Communication with the Sea at the distance of a large quarter of a League. Barks of the largest size pass through these Ditches, to the great advantage of Merchants; and the Towns are joined together by Bridges. The Inhabitants are very expert in sailing on the Mediterranean, and admirable Fishermen, for they take vast quantities of all sorts of Fish in certain Huts made for that purpose of Reeds, or Sea-rushes, and termed *Bourdigous*. This Town hath been possessed by different Lords, especially the Viscounts of *Marseille*, and Counts of *Provence*; but at length *Francesca Lorrain*, Dutches of *Merceux*, *Estampes*, and *Ponthieu*, as also Princess of *Martigues*, brought it to the House of *Vendosme*, by her Marriage with *Cesar* Duke of *Vendosme*, the Natural Son of King *Henry IV.* &c.

The Islands of *STOCHAES*, or of *HIERES*, are so called as lying over against the Town of this

name, between the Gulph of *Grimeur* to the E. and *Toulon* to the W. Among these there are three principal, viz. *The Island of Levant*, or of *Titan* in Latin *Hypæa*, toward the East; that of *Porteros* in the midst; and that of *Portquerolles* to the West: Near to the former are also situated two other small Islands, viz. *Ribaudon* and *Ribaudas*, by the Ancients called *Stirium* and *Phenice* on the Coasts between the Promontory or Cape of *Hieres* to the North, and the Isle of *Porteros* to the South, besides those of *Tele de Can*, *Langoussier*, &c. In the time of *Cassianus*, these Islands were inhabited only by Monks; and there were some of the *Cistercian* Order under the Popedom of *Innocent III.*

The Islands of *LERINS*, *Insule Lerinenses*, are two in number, and lie over-against *Cannes* near *Antibes*. The former called in Latin *Lero*, and commonly *S. Margaret*, from a Chapel dedicated to this Saint, is three quarters of a League long, and one broad, being defended with five Forts and a Citadel, lately Fortified. The other of *S. Honoratus Lerina*, or *Planatic*, is distant about two Leagues from *Antibes* to the South, and five from *Frejus* to the East, taking its name from that Saint, who Founded a Famous Monastery therein, A. C. 375. and was afterward ordained Archbishop of *Arles*. This Solitary Place hath been for many Ages the Seminary of the Prelates of *Provence*, and the neighbouring Churches, having brought forth 12 Archbishops, as many Bishops, 10 Abbots, 4 Monks reckon'd among the Confessors, and 105 Martyrs, together with a great number of other Illustrious Personages. The Spaniards surpriz'd these Islands in the Month of *September*, A. D. 1635. and cut down the Forest of Pine-Trees that afforded a delightful shade during the excessive heat of the Sun, and stood in rows, at the end whereof were certain Oratories in honour of Abbots and Monks, who had been canoniz'd for Saints. But those Spanish Forces were entirely expell'd in the Month of *May*, 1637.

*CHATEAU-D'IF*, *Castrum Iphium*, is a small Island or rather Rock, encompassed on all sides with the Sea, and defended by a strong Fortrefs, distant about a quarter of a League from *Marseilles*, where the very large Vessels ride at Anchor, that cannot sail into the Port for want of a sufficient depth of Water at its entrance. There are also some other Islands at the mouth of the River *Rhône*, but nothing very considerable is to be found in them.

The Governor-General of *Provence* hath under him one Lieutenant-General, three Grand Seneschals, of *Aix*, *Marseille*, and of *Arles*; and particular Governours in *Toulon*, *Marseilles*, in the Island of *Chateau-d'if*. In the Islands of *St. Margaret* and *Honoratus*; in *Antibe*, &c.



## CHAP. XIII.

DAUPHINE, *Delphinatus*.

**T**HIS Province is bounded on the North by *Bresse* and *Savo*y, on the East by *Pieman*t and the *Alps*, on the South by *Provence*, and on the West by the *Rhône*, which separates it from *Lyonnois*. It is situated between the 44 deg. and the 45 deg. 30 min. of Latitude; as also between the 22 deg. 40 min. and the 26 deg. of Longitude, comprehending from South to North in the broadest part, about 100 miles, but in other Parts, not above half so much, and 103 from West to East.

*Dauphine*, was conquer'd by the *Romans*, under whom it was at first part of *Narbonensis*, and afterwards upon the Division of *Gaul* by *Constantine*, it compos'd the *Viennensis*. In the declension of the Roman Empire the *Burgundians* got possession of it, who were again beaten out by the French, and by them it was made part of the Kingdom of *Arles*; and at length became subject to the Emperors of *Germany*; but during the Differences between the Pope and the Emperor *Henry IV.* it was usurped by *Guigne* the Fat, Earl of *Graisivauden*, A. 1100. whose Successor gave it the name of *Dauphine*, either as some say, from the name of his Wife, or as others, from the *Delphin* born in his Arms. In this Family the Sovereignty of this Province continued till the time of *Imbert*, or *Humber* II. Count Dauphin of *Viennois*, who having lost one Son in the Battle of *Crecy*, and unfortunately let fall his youngest out of a Window, whereof he died; perceiving also that *Amedeo*, Count of *Savo*y, his irreconcilable Enemy, insulted over his Calamity, sold his Country to *Philip* of *Valois*, King of *France*, for the Sum of 100000 Florins of Gold, on condition that the eldest Son of the French Monarchs should bear the Name of the *Dauphin*, and that his Arms should be quarter'd with those of *Dauphine*; which Contract was ratified at *Bois de Vincennes*, near *Paris*, on the 23d Day of *April*, 1343. and *Charles V.* the Grandson of the said *Philip* was first stiled the *Dauphin*, in 1350. and the same Custom hath been ever since observed, and *Dauphine* continued part of the Kingdom of *France*.

Tho' this Province be full of Mountains and Hills, it is nevertheless very Fruitful in Wheat, Rye, Oats, and Barley, affording also good Pastures for the feeding of all sorts of Cattle, and the Forests yield good store of Game, as Stags, Fallow-Deer, Roe-Bucks, Wild-Bears, Wild Goats, and Hares, together with Partridges, Pheasants, Heathcocks, Plovers, &c. Some Mines of Iron, Lead, and other Metals are found here. In this Province are to be seen three notable Abbies, being the chief of so many different Orders, namely that of *S. Antony*, that of *S. Ray*, and the great Charter-house, as also four Wonders, viz. The inaccessible Mountain, the Tower without Pillon, the Pit of *Sassenage*, which foretells the Plenty or Dearth of the Year, by a quantity of Water found therein at certain times; and the Fountain or Cuck-Spring near *Grenoble*, that appears covered with Stones and boiling up in great Bubbles,

yet never hot: There is also a certain Hole or Cavern near *Nions*, from whence riseth up a Wind, which can scarcely be felt by those Persons that come near it, and yet blows violently when one stands at the distance of 20 or 30 paces. The Principal Rivers of *Dauphine*, are the *Isère*, which receives the *Drac* below *Grenoble*; the *Durance* that takes its rise and runs into *Provence*; the *Drone*, the Stream whereof is extremely rapid and dangerous; the *Buech*, the *Romanche*, the *Dia*, &c. The whole Province is usually divided into the Upper to the East, and the Lower to the West, which are again subdivided according to the following Table.

Dauphine divided into 2 Parts.	The Upper in 6.	<i>Graisivauden.</i>	<i>Grenoble</i> , Bish.
		<i>Diois.</i>	<i>Die</i> , Bish.
		<i>The Barenies.</i>	<i>Boys</i> .
		<i>Gapençois.</i>	<i>Gap</i> , Bish.
		<i>Ambrunois.</i>	<i>Ambrun</i> , Archbish.
		<i>Brianconnois.</i>	<i>Briancon</i> .
	The Lower in 3.	<i>Viennois.</i>	<i>Vienne</i> , A. B.
		<i>Valentinois.</i>	<i>Valence</i> , Bish.
		<i>Tricastin.</i>	<i>S. Paul Trois</i>
			<i>Chateau</i> , B.

**GRAISIVAUDEN**, *Gratianopolitanus Ager*, is a Valley which was heretofore inhabited by the *Tricollones*, and lies between the Rivers *Isère* and *Drac*, bounded on the North by *Savo*y, properly so called, on the East by the Valley of *Maurienne* and *Brianconnois*, on the South by *Gapençois*, and on the West by *Diois* and *Viennois*. The places of Note are these, viz.

*Grenoble*, Bish. *La Grande Chartreuse*.

*Grenoble*, *Gratianopolis*, anciently *Accusio* and *Cular*, is situated on the Confluence of *Isère* and *Drac*, and on the Foot of the Mountains, being distant 55 miles from *Lyon* to the South-East, about 80 from *Geneva* to the South, 110 from *Aix*, and 60 from the Frontiers of *Languedoc* to the North, and 40 from the River *Rhône* to the East. *Maximian* who was sent into *France* by *Dioclesian*, fortified this Place; and being afterward enlarged by the Emperor *Gratian*, it took the name of *Gratianopolis*, which in time melted into that of *Grenoble*. It is a large well-built City, and adorn'd with divers fair Churches. The Episcopal See depends on the Metropolitan of *Vienn*e, and its most ancient Bishop was *S. Dominus*, who assisted in the Council of *Aquitain*, A. C. 381. His Successors at present assume the Title of Princes of *Grenoble*, by reason of the Donations which the Lords of the Country have made to them at several times. King *Lewis XI.* erected the Dauphinal Council of this Province into a Parliament, in the year 1453: Moreover an University was formerly established here, but *Valence* now enjoys that Honour at present: Besides the Parliament above-mentioned.



mentioned, here is a Chamber of Accompts, a Treasury-Office, a Court of Generality. and a Bailiage. The Grand Charter-house, chief of the *Carthusian* Order, stands three Leagues from this City on one side; and the boiling Spring is at the like distance on the other.

**DIOIS**, lies on the South of *Graisvaudan* between *Valentinois* on the West, *Provence* on the South, and *Gapencois* on the East. The chief City

**DIE**, *Dia*, *Dea Vocontiorum*, or *Dea Augusta* of the Ancients, is seated on the Foot of the Mountains and the Banks of the Rivulet *Drome*, at the distance of 30 miles from *Grenoble* to the South, 26 from *Valence* to the East, and 40 from *Gap* to the West. It was formerly a considerable City, with the Title of an Earldom, and had five fine Churches, and a good Citadel, but through the Wars of the *Lombards* formerly, and the Civil Wars lately, they have been almost destroyed; however, it is still the See of a Bishop.

The **BARONIES** or *Baronie*, lie on the Frontiers of *Provence*; whereof the chief Towns are,

*Le Buys*, *Nions*.

*Buz* or *Buz*, *Buxium*, is a small Town standing upon the River *Louvez*, on the Frontiers of *Provence*, 30 miles from *Die* to the South.

*Nions*, *Neomagus*, stands on the Frontiers of *Provence* and the side of the River *Eygues*, about 28 miles from *Die* to the South, five or six from the Frontiers of *Provence*, and 20 from the River *Rhodie* to the East. It had a Castle, but it is destroy'd, and the Town is not very considerable.

**GAPENCOIS**, is extended toward the River *Isere*, between *Graisvaudan* on the North, *Diois* on the West, and *Ambrunois* on the East, comprehending the chief Town

*Gap*, *Vapincum*, *Vapingum*, and *Vapinquum*, is a large City and well Fortified with a strong Citadel, besides the Fort of *Puymore*, very near it on a rising Ground, scarcely two Leagues from the River *Isere*, 35 miles from *Die*, and 65 from the *Rhodie* to the E. not above 10 from the Frontiers of *Provence*, and 45 from *Grenoble* to the S. E. Its Episcopal See depends on the Metropolitan of *Aix*. The Cathedral Church is dedicated to the Virgin *Mary*. The Bishop assumes the Title of a Count, and bears in his Coat of Arms a Sword and Cross in Pail. The City of *Gap* hath been often Taken and Recovered by the Popish and Protestant Parties during the Civil Wars of France.

**AMBRUNOIS**, is bounded on the North by *Brianconnois*, on the West by *Gapencois*, on the East by *Piemont*, and on the South by part of *Piemont* and *Provence*. The chief City

**AMBRUN** or **EMBRUN**, *Ebrodunum*, and *Ebrodunum*, is seated on a steep Rock in the Confines of *Provence*, near the River *Durance* and the Mountains, 15 Miles from *Gap* to the East, 20 from *Briancon*, and 30 from the Frontiers of *Savoy* to the West, 55 from *Grenoble*, and 110 from *Lyon* to the S. E. It is a City of small compass, nevertheless well Fortified and honour'd with the Title of a Metropolitan See and a Bailiage, the Archbishop sharing

its Jurisdiction with the King. The Judges of the Bailiage are alternative. This City was honour'd with great Privileges by the Romans; for some time subject to the Counts of *Fiscalquier*, and hath since sustained many Revolutions. The Protestants took it in 1583, and found vast wealth there. In the late War, viz. A. 1692, the Duke of *Savoy* besieged, and in 10 days took it: But quitted it soon after.

**BRIANCONNOIS**, lies near the Spring-head of the River *Durance*, between *Piedmont* on the East, the Valley of *Maurienne* in *Savoy* on the North *Graisvaudan* on the West, and *Ambrunois* on the South.

The chief Towns are { *Briancon*,  
*Perouse*,  
*Chateau-Dauphine*.

*Briancon*, *Brigantium*, is remarkable for its situation on the highest Ground (as it is supposed) of Europe being the side of a steep Rock, on which stands, a Castle near the *Alps*, almost in the midst between *Susa*, a Town of *Piemont* and *Ambrun*, at the distance of eight Leagues from the former, and seven from the other. It gives name to this Country, and is the Seat of a Bailiage. A little below this City two Brooks intermix, one of which springs out of Mount *Genevre*, and is called *Dure*, the other comes from the Valley of *Menetier* and *Chantemerle*, and is named *Ance*. These two Rivulets are the Sources of the River *Durance*, and Form its Name. About two Leagues from this Town there is a Passage cut through the middle of a Rock, which as it was a stupendious Labour, gives occasion to many Conjectures concerning the performance of it. Some impute it to *Julius*, others to *Hannibal*, &c.

*Perouse*, *Perusa*, stands on the River *Cluso*, and is defended by a Fortrefs, near the Frontiers of *Piemont*. This Town hath impos'd its Name on the adjacent Valley, and formerly belonged to the Duke of *Savoy*, but was granted to the French by Treaty A. 1631.

*Chateau-Dauphine*, *Castrum Delphini*, is a Town built at the Foot of the *Alps*, on the very confines of *Piemont*, 30 miles from *Ambrun* to the West. It formerly bore the name of *Eufbio*, *Fanum S. Eusebii*, and constituted a part of the Marquisate of *Saluces*, but was granted to the French Kings, in 1375. Which finishes our Account of the Upper or Eastern part of *Dauphine*; what remains are the three small Provinces that lie in the West on the River *Rhodie*.

**VIENNOIS**, *Viennensis Tractus*, is the Northwest part of *Dauphine*, and lying between the Rivers *Rhodie* and *Isere*, was anciently call'd the Island of the *Allobroges*; it is bounded on the East by *Graisvaudan*, on the South by *Valentinois*, on the West by the *Rhodie*, which divides it from *Bugey*. This County was sometime govern'd by its own Princes, under the name of *Dauphines of Viennois*, but came to the Crown of France with the rest of *Dauphine*. The chief City

**VIENNE**, *Vienna* or *Fienna Allobrogum*, is situated at the Foot of a Mountain, on the River *Rhodie*, which there receives the *Gere*, at the distance of 40 miles from *Grenoble* to the West, 20 from *Lyon* to the South, and 35 from *Valence* to the North. It hath been a very large and famous City, but at present is not above the fourth Part of its former extent,



and both its ancient Fortresses, *ruin'd Pipet* and *Bejaces*, are now destroy'd. It was founded (as it is generally believ'd, by the *Albigens*, and afterward became a Colony of the *Romans*, who adorn'd it with a Palace, and Amphitheatre, and divers other magnificent Works, the Ruins whereof are still to be seen. After the Decay of their Empire, this City was sometime the Capital of the Kingdom of *Burgundy*, and the Place of Residence of those Princes; and since hath been subject to many Masters, and suffer'd much by the Wars. However it is the See of an Archbishop, who hath the Title of the Grand Primate of the Primates of *France* and, as they say, *S. Crescens*, the Disciple of *S. Paul*, was its first Prelate. The Cathedral of *S. Maurice* is a stately Pile of Building, as also are some other Churches and publick Edifices. The Inhabitants are very expert in making divers sorts of Manufactures, particularly Plates of Iron and Steel, Paper, &c. by means of certain Mills and Engines upon the River *Gere*.

**VALENTINOIS**, lies between *Viennois* on the North, the River *Rhofne* on the West, *Tricastin* on the South, and *Dicis* on the East. This Country at present bears the Title of a Duchy, and was granted, together with *Dicis* to *Charles VII.* then only *Dauphin* of *France* by *Lewis* of *Poitou*, its last Count or Earl, on the 22d. of *June*, 1419. The Principal Towns are,

*Valence*, Bish. *Montelimar*.

*Valence*, *Valentia*, is seated on the River *Rhofne*, a little below its confluence with the *Isere*, over-against the Province of *Vivarais*, about 30 miles from *Vienne* to the South, 60 from *Avignon* to North, 25 from *Die* to the West, and 40 from *Grenoble* to the South-west. It is a Place of great Antiquity, having been sometime a *Roman* Colony; and is at present a fair reasonable large and well-built City, divided into the City and Town, defended by a strong Citadel, and dignified with the Title of an Episcopal See

under the Metropolitan of *Vienne*, the Bishop bearing the Title of a Count. The Cathedral Church or *Agathianum*, one of its Prelates, was at first dedicated to *S. Stephen*. There is also another Collegiate Church, and the Abby of *S. Ruf* the chief of the Order, together with a great number of other Monasteries and Convents; besides a Famous University, in which are four Professors of the Civil and Canon Law. It was first Founded by King *Lewis XI.* A. D. 1452. and afterward that of *Grenoble* was incorporated into it under the Reign of *Charles IX.* Here is also a Presidial Court.

*Montelimar*, *Amarcorum Mons*, *Mons Adomari*, or *Montilium Ademari*, a Town formerly well fortified, and sustained divers Sieges during the Civil War; stands on a Hill at the distance of half a League from the River *Rhofne*, 25 miles from *Valence*.

**TRICASTIN**, *Tricastinus Ager*, is extended between *Valentinois* on the North, and the County of *Avignon* on the South. The chief City whereof is

*S. Paul-Trois-Chateaux*, *Augusta Tricastinorum* and *Forum S. Pauli Tricastinorum*, anciently *Senemagus*, or *Neomagus*. The Capital City of the small Territory of *Tricastin*, took its modern Name from *S. Paul* one of its Prelates, and is situated on a rising Ground in the Confines of *Provence*, scarcely one League from the River *Rhofne*, 12 miles from *Montelimar* to the South, and as many from *Orange* to the North. Its Episcopal See was formerly subject to the Metropolitan of *Vienne*, but now depends on that of *Arles*, and the Bishop is also styled a Count, sharing the Civil Jurisdiction with the King; so that the respective Judges keep their Courts alternately in the Bailiages. The Protestant Party made themselves Masters of this City during the Civil Wars, and retain'd it in their Power near 50 years.

*Dauphine* hath a Governour-General, a Lieutenant-General, a Seneschal, and a Commandant in the Province, three Bailiffs; and particular Governors in *Grenelle*, *Vienne*, *Ambrun*, *Valence*, *Montelimar*, the Castle of *Briancon*, *Pignerol*, &c.

## CHAP. XIV.

### LORRAINE, *Lotharingia*.

BESIDES the 12 Principal Provinces or Governments of *France*, already described, there are other Provinces and Towns lying on the Frontiers of *Italy*, *Germany* and *Flanders*, made subject to, and reckon'd part of this Kingdom; an account whereof is given in the Description of every particular Country where they are situated, excepting *Lorrain*, which although it be not compriz'd within the aforesaid 12 large Governments, nevertheless constituted a Portion of that Country which is commonly called *France*, till by the late Treaty of *Ryswick* it was restored to the present Duke.

The Duchy of **LORRAINE** and **BAR** is bounded on the North by *Luxemburg* and the *Palatinate*, on the East by *Alsacia*, on the South by the County of *Burgundy*, and on the West by *Champagne*, being extended from the 48th Degree to the 49th Degree 50

Minutes of Latitude, and from the 23d Degree to the 25th Degree 50 Minutes of Longitude; extending from North to South 100 miles, and about the same from East to West. The whole Country is divided into three principal Parts, *viz.*

The Duchy of *Lorrain*, properly so called, in 3 Bailiages, *viz.* The Bailiage of *Nancy*, Chief Town, *Idem*. The Bail. of *Vauze*, *Miracour*. The Bailiage of *Vaudreange*, *Idem*.

The Duchy of *Bar-le-duc*.

Three Bishopricks not properly within *Lorrain*. Bishoprick of *Metz*. Bishoprick of *Toul*. Bishoprick of *Vosges*. The

Lorrain divided into 3 Parts, *viz.*



The Bailiage of *NANCY*, lies in the midst of the Province of *Lorrain*, and comprehends these considerable Towns, &c. viz.

*Nancy*, *S. Nicholas*, *Marsal*.

*NANCY*, *Nanceium*, the Capital City of *Lorrain*, is situated in the midst of the Province, near the River *Meurte*, 155 miles directly East from *Paris*, and 20 from the River *Meuse*, 45 from the Borders of *Alsace*, and 60 from *Strasbourg* to the West. 30 from *Metz* to the South, and 50 from the Confines of *Franché Comté* to the North. It is divided into the Upper or Old Town, wherein stands the Duke's Palace and Magazine, and the Lower and New Town, which is of larger extent, and contains many very fine Buildings, taken into the City in 1587, having been before only a Suburbs. It is also adorned with divers Churches and Monasteries, a College of Jesuits and 3 Gates. A Chamber of Accounts and a Seneschal's Court. This Town, or rather this City, hath been often taken, and sustained many Sieges; for *Charles* the last Duke of *Burgundy*, took it in 1475. from *René* Duke of *Lorrain*; who regained it the next year: At which *Charles* being enraged, immediately besieged it, but lost both his Life and the Battle on the 5th day of *January* following. *Nancy* was extremely well Fortified in 1587. during the Civil Wars: Nevertheless *Lewis XIII.* made himself Master of it in 1633. and its Fortifications were destroyed by the present *French King* in 1661. But they have been since repaired with great advantage, and now by the Treaty are to be demolished.

*S. Nicolas*, *Fanum S. Nicolai*, is a Burrough very pleasantly seated on the River *Meurte*, two Leagues above *Nancy* to the South, and Famous for the Concourse of People resorting thither to pay their Devotions at the Shrine of *S. Nicholas*, sometime Bishop of *Myra* in *Lycia*, who vigorously opposed the Errors of *Arius*, and assisted in the General Council of *Nice*, A. C. 325.

*Vaudemont*, *Vadanus Mons* and *Valdemontium*, stands on a Hill between the *Meuse* and *Moselle*, 20 miles from *Nancy* to the South. It is a small Town, nevertheless dignified with the Title of a Principality, and fenced with a strong Castle, &c.

*Marsal*, *Marsalium*, is a small but well Fortified Town, built on the Banks of the Brook *Selle*, amidst the Marshes, at the distance of about 20 miles from *Nancy* to the East.

The Bailiage of *VAUGE*, is extended on the South side of the Province of *Lorrain*, and comprehends these Principal Towns, viz.

*Mirecourt*, Cap. *Remiremont*, *Fontenay*:

*Mirecourt*, *Mirecurtium*, a small Town, but the chief of the Bailiage; is situated near Mount *Vauge*, from whence the Bailiage hath its Name, on the Rivulet of *Maiden*, which falls into the *Moselle* at *Chaligny*: It is distant 25 miles from *Nancy* to the South, about as many from *Toul*, and 15 from the Confines of *Champagne* to the East.

*Remiremont*, *Remaricus Mons*, *Remarici Mons*, and *Remaricum Castrum*, anciently *Avendi Castrum*, is situated on the River *Moselle*, at the Foot of Mount *Vauge*, and remarkable on the account of a Famous Abby of Nuns there. It is distant only one League

from the Frontiers of the *Franché Comté*, and 30 from *Mirecourt*, and 50 from *Nancy* to the South-East.

*Fontenay* or *Fontenay*, *Fontenacum*, a small Village, seated on the Frontiers of the *Franché Comté*, about 25 miles South from *Mirecourt*; Famous on account of a fierce Battle Fought near it, with a very great Slaughter on all sides, between the Emperor *Lotharius*, *Lewis King of Germany*, and *Charles the Bald*, King of *France*, all three Brothers, A. C. 841.

The Bailiage of *VAUDREVANGE*, *Bellivacius Valdersinga*, takes up the North-East part of *Lorraine*, and contains these Places of chief note, viz.

*Sarc-Louis*,  
*Vaudrevange*,  
*Sirk*,  
} } *Dieuse*,  
} } *Saralbe*,  
} } *Putlange*, &c.

*Sarc-Louis*, *Saravum Ludovici*, is a very strong Fortrefs, lately built on the River *Sarc*, about 2 or 3 miles above *Vaudrevange*, and so called in Honour of the present *French King Lewis XIV.* who built it, and established therein a Presidial Court of a large Jurisdiction. It is distant 12 Leagues from *Triers*, 4 from *Sarbruck*, and 7 from *Homburg*, &c.

*Vaudrevange*, *Valdersinga*, the Chief Town of the Bailiage of the same Name, is likewise seated on the *Sarc*, 30 miles from *Metz* to the North-East, as many from *Thionville*, and somewhat more from *Deux-Ponts*. It was almost ruin'd during the last German War, but hath been since well repaired.

*Sirk* or *Sircques*, *Sirca* and *Sericum*, is watered with the Streams of the River *Moselle*, and defended by a strong Fort built near it on a Hill, and the very borders of the Dutchy of *Luxemburg*, about 20 miles from *Metz* to the North, 15 from *Triers*, and as many from *Luxemburg* to the East. This Town hath been in the Possession of the *French King* ever since the year 1643.

The Dutchy of *BAR* or *BARRAIS*, *Barentis Ducatus*, is extended on both sides of the River *Meuse*, from the Country of *Burgundy* to the Dutchy of *Luxemburg*, between *Lorrain* and *Champagne*. This Country is divided into 5 Bailiages, viz.

The Bailiage of *Bar-le-duc*,  
The Bailiage of *Grand-Recumt*,  
The Bailiage of *Bassigne* or *de-la-Mothe*,  
} } The Bailiage of *S. Michael* or *Miche*,  
} } The Bailiage of *Pont-a-Mousson*,  
} } The Bailiage of *Argonne*, or *Clermont*, &c.

*Bar-le-Duc*, *Baroducum*, stands on a rising Ground, near the Banks of the River *Ornain*, and hath a strong Castle for its Defence, at the distance of about 40 miles from *Nancy* to the West, and 5 or 6 from the Borders of *Champagne*: This Town being the Capital of the Dutchy of *Bar*, is fair and well-built, and is subject to the Duke of *Lorraine*.

*S. Michael*, *Fanum S. Michaelis* is situated on the East side of the River *Meuse*, almost in the midst between *Toul* to the South, and *Verdun* to the North, and 20 miles from *Bar-le-duc* to the East. It hath been for some time a very considerable Town, and is at present the Seat of a Parliament of *Barrois*. It was taken by *Lewis XIII.* in the month of *June*, A. D. 1632. and afterward resigned to the Duke







# THE Low-Countries : Or, Netherlands.

Of the NETHERLANDS in General.

LANDERS or the SPANISH NETHERLANDS  
with the Archbishoprick of CAMBRESIS and Bishoprick of LYEGE &c By H. Moll.



THE ancient Name of these Countries was Belgium, whether from the old Dutch word Balgen to Fight, or from the City Belgium, which some say was Bacy in Hainault, others Beau-

vais in Picardy, is left undecided; several Writers pleading for both. It was also reckon'd part of Germany, and call'd Inferior, for the same reason as now Low Countries and Netherlands, viz. from their low situation



situation : and indeed so very low are the Maritime Provinces, that the Grounds are in many Places even lower than the Surface of the Neighbouring Sea, which the Inhabitants confine and secure their Lands from, by strong Banks, made with great Labour and Ingenuity, and maintained at as great Expence. It was also called *Flanders*, because that Province formerly was the great Mart of *Europe*, and resorted to by all Nations for Traffick ; and therefore because all these Provinces were subject to the same Lord, the particular name of this chief One, was, by Strangers made to intimate the Whole ; and for the same reason, since the Fræction of the Republick of the Confederate Provinces, *Holland* being the principal of them, its name serves to denote, in general, the Countries of the Confederate States.

Its ancient Bounds were very large, for not only all the present *Netherlands*, but the Parts of *France* next them, as *Picardy*, *Champagn*, &c. and (according to some Authors) *Lorrain*, *Berg*, *Fuliers*, *Cleeve*, together with the Bishopricks of *Mentz*, *Cologne*, and *Triers*, were all included in the general name of *Belgium*. The present Limits are the British Ocean on the North, the same Ocean and *Picardy* on the West, the rest of *Picardy* with *Champagn* and *Lorrain* on the South, and the Bishoprick of *Triers*, the Dutchies of *Fuliers* and *Cleeve*, the Bishoprick of *Munster* and the Country of *Emden* or *East Frizeland* on the East : The whole Country, according to *Guicciardine*, is one Thousand Italian miles in Circumference.

It is situated between the 49 Deg. 20 Min. and the 53 Deg. 30 Min. of Latitude, and between the 20 Deg. and 24 Deg. 30 Min. of Longitude.

The chief RIVERS are these, 1. The *Rhine*, which rises in the Country of the *Grisons*, and after it hath passed through *Germany*, entereth into these Countries at *Schenkschans*, on the Borders of *Guelderland* ; at which place it is divided into two Channels, whereof that which retains its name runs by *Arnheim* and *Wageninge* in *Guelderland*, and *Rbeenen* in *Utrecht* to *Duyster de Wyck*, where it meets and mixes with the *Leck*, a small Chanel only that runs toward *Utrecht*, bearing the name of the *Rhine*, which passing on from *Utrecht* runs by *Worden* and *Leyden*, not far from which last place it is lost in the Sandhills, which choak up the mouth whereby it formerly run into the Sea. 2. The *Leck*, which receives the Waters of the *Rhine* at *Duyster de Wyck*, runs by *Culenborch*, *Vianen*, *Schoonhoven*, and at the Village *Crimpen* falls into the *Meruwe*, which falls into the *Maes* not far above *Rotterdam*. 3. The *Waal*, which is the other Branch of the *Rhine*, beginning at *Schenkschans*, flows by *Nimeguen*, *Tiel*, and *Bemmel*, to *Worcum*, where it is joyn'd with the *Maes*, and passing by *Gorcum* receives the *Lingre*, and takes the name of *Meruwe*, otherwise called the new *Maes*, which passing by *Dort* receives the *Leck* above-mentioned, and the smaller *Yssel*, and flows in a broad Stream to *Rotterdam*, where it loses all other names and is called the *Maes*. 4. The *Maes*, called also *Meuse* and *Meuse*, rises in Mount *Vogesus* in *Burgundy*, and passing by *Verdun* and *Charleville*, flows to *Namur*, where it receives the *Sambre* ; thence passes by *Liege*, *Maestricht*, *Venlo*, and *Greez*, to *Worcum*, mixes with the *Waal*, as above-said, and both together run to *Dort*, where the Stream is divided and makes an Island ; but are again united a little below *Vlaerdigen*, and falls into the Ocean at the *Briel*. 5. The *Schelde*, called in French *l'Escaut*, hath its source in *Picardy* and runs by *Cambray*, *Va-*

*lenciennes* and *Oudenarde*, to *Ghent*, whence turning Eastward it passes by *Oudenarde*, and at *Rupelmonde* receives the *Demer*, besides many other smaller Rivers in its Passage, and then flows Northward to *Antwerp*, where it makes a very capacious Harbour ; and a few Leagues below divides it self into two large Branches, one whereof call'd the *Wester Schelde* or the *Hout*, passes betwixt *Flanders* and *Zealand*, and falls into the Sea at *Flushing* ; the other is called *Ooster Schelde*, and runs out of the main Stream at *Santeliet*, passing by *Bergen op Zoom*, and between *Toien* and *South Beveland*, and thence by the Shoar of the Island *Schouwen* falls into the Sea with a violent Current. 6. The *Yssel*, from whence the Province lying beyond it is called *Overyssel*, springs in *Westphalia*, and running through *Zutphen* passes to *Doesburgh*, where it is exceedingly augmented by a Chanel cut from the *Rhine*, by the order of *Drusus Nero*, and thence in a great Stream flows by *Deventer* to *Campen*, parting the Provinces of *Guelderland* and *Overyssel*, and falls into the *Zuyder Sea*.

There is another small River nam'd the *Yssel*, which comes out of the *Leck* near *Vianen*, and running towards *Rotterdam* falls into the *Maes*. Many other Rivers water these Countries, as the *Sambre*, *Lys*, *Aa*, *Demer*, *Scarp*, *Neshe*, *Dele*, *Sinne*, *Dendre*, *Rce*, &c. the course whereof the Reader will discover in the following Description of the Country.

There can be very little said of the MOUNTAINS of these Countries ; for except some few rising Grounds in those Parts lying towards *Germany*, there is no Hill to be seen : On the contrary, all those Provinces towards the Sea lie so very low, that large Parts of them have been many times overflow'd by the Eruptions of the Sea, notwithstanding the strong Banks that the Inhabitants maintain almost all along the Coasts of *Groninghen*, *Friesland*, *North Holland*, *Zealand*, &c.

These Countries were formerly very desolate, and for want of cultivating, the Grounds were either turn'd to Marshes or over-run with FOREST ; of which last that of *Ardenne* is mention'd by *Cæsar* as the largest in *Belgium*, and was indeed of vast Extent ; for, according to *Cluverius*, it reached from *Coblenz* in the Bishoprick of *Trier*, as far as the farthest Borders of *Artois*, which is 220 miles ; and in breadth, to the Sea-shoar and the River *Waal*, near 150 miles. There are still large Remains of it on the Borders of *Luxemburgh*, and in the Bishoprick of *Liege*, as also about *Mentz*, *Triers*, *Worms*, &c. Many other large Forests are found here, as the Forests and Woods of *Soign*, and *Meerdale* in *Brabant* ; *Niep* in *Flanders* ; *Podsberg*, *Faigne*, *Mormant*, and *S. Amand* in *Hainault* ; with many others which are mentioned by *Guicciardine* to be very large, but have been retrench'd since his time by the consumption of the Wood for Fuel, and the Industry of the Inhabitants in cultivating the Land.

The AIR is reckon'd wholesom enough, but is subject to very thick Fogs in Winter, through the moistness of the Country, which would be very Noxious if it were not for the dry Easterly Winds which blowing off a long Continent for two or three Months every Year clear the Air, and cause very sharp Frosts during the Months of *January*, *February*, and *March*, by which means the Ports, Rivers, and Canals, are almost always shut up with Ice during those Months.

The SOIL is generally Fertile ; but because different in the several Parts, the Reader is referr'd to the particular Accounts of the Productions of each



of each Province, in the following Description of them.

The COMMODITIES of these Countries are their Manufactures; for their Productions are very few: Of these, from the *Spanish Netherlands* comes Linen-Cloth, Tapettries, Worsted-Stuffs, Chamlets, Wrought Silks, Lace, &c. and from *Holland* (besides most of the same Manufactures) they export all sorts of *East-India* Goods, Fish, and the Commodities of *Germany*, as Rhenish Wines, &c.

Concerning the INHABITANTS, *Cæsar*, in the beginning of his Commentaries, says, — *Horum omnium fortissimi sunt Belgæ, &c.* "That they were the most Valiant of all the *Gauls* partly because they were far distant and unacquainted with the Civility of the Roman Provinces, and very little visited by Merchants, who import such things as serve to effeminate the minds of Men; but chiefly, because by their Neighbourhood to the *Germans*, they were at continual Wars with them. Many other Authors speak of the Martial Temper of these People, which their long and obstinate War with the *Saxons* in the last Age, is a sufficient proof of. But their Industry is more conspicuous by the vast Traffick they have for many Ages past maintain'd with all Nations of *Europe*, and more remote parts of the World: Their Ingenuity hath also appear'd in the Invention of many useful Arts; such as the making of Tapestry, call'd *Abras*, from that City where it was invented; the making of Cloth and Worsted-Stuffs, which we learn'd of the *Flemings*; and the Perfection, if not Invention, of the Mariner's Compass, is by many Authors attributed to them: Many other ingenious and curious Arts acknowledge the *Netherlands* for their Inventers; to omit that of Printing, which *Haerlem* puts in a good Claim to, but is oppos'd in it by *Mentz* in *Germany*. But notwithstanding these Inventions and the Ingenuity of many particular Men among them, it must be allow'd in general. That they are Industrious rather than Ingenious. They will persevere and plod on in a Road through many Difficulties, but their Apprehensions are dull, and they are not easily perswaded to leave their old way, tho' a new one be apparently more convenient. They are much addicted to Drunkenness, but are not very delicate in their Food. Their Habits and Houses are exceeding Neat and Cleanly, especially the latter, to Superstition.

The Dutch TONGUE is a Dialect of the *German*, but with many French and Latin words intermix'd: It is a harsh, clownish and unpleasant Speech, and hath nothing that can recommend it to Strangers. In the French *Flanders*, *Hainault* and *Luxemburgh*, the French Language is generally understood, and that call'd *Walloon*, which is a corruption of French with Dutch, is usually spoken there. Persons of the best Rank all over the *Netherlands*, understand and speak French, as do also many of the common People.

The RELIGION of these Countries in general was that of the *Roman Church*, before the Reformation, but the Protestant Religion prevailing here, the King of *Spain*, about the year 1566. set up the Inquisition, and gave Orders for the punishing, even to Death, all those whom the Church of *Rome* declar'd Hereticks, which gave great discontent to the People, and was the first occasion of the Disturbance and bloody War, which ended in the total alienation of Seven of the Provinces. At present the *Romish Religion* only is profess'd in the *Spanish Provinces*; and in *Holland* that of *Calvin* is predominant, but with Toleration of all sects.

The convenient situation of *Flanders* in the midway between *France*, *Spain* and *Portugal* on one side, and *Denmark*, *Sweden* and the *Hanse Towns* on the other, together with *Germany* behind and *England* before it, may be esteem'd the chief reason of the vast TRADE that was some Ages since establish'd there; which was so great, that this Province might be accounted the grand Market-place of *Europe*: For in its City of *Bruges* the Merchants of all Nations had their Factories, and great Magazines to lodge the native products of their respective Countries, which they here sold and exchange'd for those of other places. Of these Houses or Colleges there were no less than 17 belonging to these several Nations, viz. *England*, *Scotland*, *France*, *Castile*, *Portugal*, *Navarre*, *Aragon*, *Catalonia*, *Biscay*, the *Hanse Towns*, the Cities of *Venice*, *Florence*, *Genoa*, *Lucca*, *Milan*, &c. In which State the Trade continued at *Bruges* for many years, till about 1480. it began to decline and remove to *Antwerp*, partly because the Port of *Sluys* and the River from thence, was narrow and inconvenient; and partly because of a War that disturb'd the Country thereabouts; whereas on the contrary the River *Schelde*, which leads to *Antwerp*, was large and commodious, and many Gentlemen upon occasion of the Wars between the King of *France* and the Emperor *Charles V.* having quitted the Villages and smaller Towns, retir'd with their Effects to *Antwerp*, built fine Houses there, and by their constant Residence, very much improv'd that City; but chiefly, because at *Antwerp* in 1503. the *Portuguese* fixed their Staple for the Spices and other Commodities of the *East-Indies*, which they brought from their new Conquest of *Calicut*; These and other Causes, drew the Merchants thither, and made it a Place of the greatest Trade of *Europe*, of which the Reader will find a more particular Account in our description of that City. But it lasted not there above 50 years; for the Civil War causing great Disorders, *Antwerp* was twice Plunder'd, and almost quite burnt down; and the Dutch Commonwealth, being Masters of *Zeeland*, were able to stop the Passage of the *Schelde*, and impose what Duties they pleased upon the Ships passing to *Antwerp*, by which they made them put into their Ports; and besides, the English and Dutch having found the way to the *East-Indies*, supplanted the *Portuguese*, and furnish'd *Europe* with the Commodities of those Countries: By all which means the Current of Trade was quite alter'd, and translated to *London* and *Amsterdam*, which are at present, the two great Empories of *Europe*. And the Traffick of *Flanders* is now not considerable, except for their own Manufactures, which we have already mention'd.

### Of the ancient State of the Netherlands in General.

THE greatest part of *Belgium* was Conquered by the *Romans*, and that part of it that lies toward *Gaul*, continu'd under their Subjection till the declination of that Empire; after which the *Franks* were Masters of it, and in the *French Monarchy* it was part of their Kingdom of *Metz*, or *Austrasia*. The Division of it into so many States, is deriv'd from the Earls of *Ardenne*, the Origin of whom was from the Sons of *Clodion* King of *France*, who being kept out of the Succession to that Kingdom, by *Mercoveus* (as we have already shewn in our Account of the Kings of *France*) were forc'd, for their Safety to

be the



betake themselves to the most defensible places of the Forest of *Ardennes*, and the Countries on the Banks of the *Meuse*, where they founded the two great Earldoms from thence denominated. That of *Meuse* belongs to *Germany*, and therefore shall not be treated on here : This of *Ardennes* comprehended part of *Flanders* and *Brabant*, all *Friesland*, *Namur*, *Limburg* and *Luxemburg*, together with the Dukedom of *Bouillon*, (formerly a very large Country, containing the Bishoprick of *Liege*, &c.) These large Estates continu'd peaceably under the Earls of *Ardennes* for sometime, till being grown powerful and great, they became the Envy of their Neighbours, and were therefore set upon by *Dagobert* King of *Metz*, and Son to *Clotaire II.* King of *France*, who in Battle overcame and slew *Brunulphe* Earl of *Ardennes*, and seized his Country, giving only *Hainault* to *Albert* his Son : *Dagobert* succeeding his Father in the Kingdom of *France*, *A. 628.* gave away part of this Country; but the gross of it still bore the Title, and remain'd for a long time a very considerable Estate.

About 940. *Luxemburg* and *Limburg* were rased off, and given to two of the younger Sons of *Ricinus* Earl of *Ardennes*, and about 950 *Namur* was created into an Earldom. The rest was afterwards carried into the House of *Lorraine* by a Marriage, and remain'd there for a long time. Thus we have shewn the Origin of the Earldoms of *Hainault* and *Namur*, and the Duchies of *Luxemburg* and *Limburg*.

Part of *Brabant*, as we have said, was included in the Earldom of *Ardennes*; the other part, being that toward the Sea, was very much infested, and even almost depopulated by the Depredations of the *Danes* and *Normans*; wherefore, to guard the Coast and protect the Inhabitants, a certain Officer was appointed, call'd Lord Warden of the Marches; which Title they continu'd till *Utile*, Nephew of *Aldingerius*, King of the *Boiariens*, having shewn great Courage against those Pirates, was honour'd with the Title of Lord Marquis of *Antwerp*, whose Descendant *Ansegisus*, was Mayor of the Palace in *France*, and made Duke of *Brabant*, and his great Grandson *Pepin* obtaining the Crown of *France*, this Duchy was made a Province of that Kingdom, and afterwards a Member of the Kingdom of *Lorraine*. About 980. the Cities and Territories of *Brussels*, *Louvain*, *Antwerp* and *Nivelle*, were taken out of it and made a new Estate, with the Title of *The Marquisate of the Holy Empire*, by the Emperor *Otho II.* and bestowed upon his Aunt, whose Grand-daughter *Gerleng* succeeding her, convey'd it by Marriage to *Lambert* Son of *Reyner* Earl of *Hainault*, who had the Title of Earl of *Lorraine*, and was succeeded in it by his Family, of whom *Godfrey VII.* Earl of *Lorraine*, Conquer'd the rest of the Country, and was created Duke of *Brabant*.

*Flanders* was a wild, waste Country, the Sea-coasts infested by the Danish Pirates, and the other parts but meanly Cultivated, till it was Conquer'd by the

French Kings, who soon after the Establishment of the Monarchy, appointed a certain Officer with the Title of *Forester of Flanders*, to suppress the Robbers that infested the woody Parts and Sea-Coasts, and by Government and Protection civilize the People and encourage them to Industry. This Office continued for several Descents, and was at length changed into the title of a Count or Earl, about the year 864. by *Charles* the Bald, Emperor and King of *France*, in favour of *Baldwin* the seventh Forester who had Married his Sister.

*Artois* was included in the Earldom of *Flanders* till 1234. when *Robert* the Grandson of *Philip Augustus* King of *France*, and Husband to *Isabel* Daughter to *Baldwin VIII.* Earl of *Flanders*, was made Earl of it.

*Guelderland* was part of the French Kingdom of *Austrasia*, and with that became part of the Empire of *Germany*; and, as such, was govern'd by certain Guardians or Protectors, (first instituted in the Reign of *Charles* the Bald); of whom *Otho* of *Nassau* was the first free Prince, and created Earl by the Emperor *Henry V. A. D. 1079.* whose Descendant *Rainold II* was in 1339. made Duke of *Guelderland*.

*Zurphon* was a separate Earldom for many years till united to *Guelderland* by the Marriage of *Sophie* Daughter of *Wickman* the last Earl, to *Otho* of *Nassau* above-mention'd.

*Holland* and *Zealand*, a rude unpeopl'd Country being much disturb'd by the *Norman* Pyracies, was first made an Earldom by the Emperor *Lewis II.* about the year 863. and given to *Thierry*, in whose Line the Succession continu'd till the Death of *John* about the year 1300. who leaving no Issue, was succeeded by *John* of *Avesnes* Earl of *Hainault*, Son of *Alcide*, the Daughter of *Florence IV.* Earl of *Holland*.

*Friesland* is but part of the Country of the ancient *Frisii*, some part of *Utrecht* and *Overijssel*, as well as *East-Friesland* in *Germany*, being Inhabited by that People, who were Govern'd by their own Kings, till the Emperor *Charlemagne* Conquer'd them; and this part, now one of the Provinces, became part of the Duchy of *Guelderland*, and afterwards a distinct Barony.

*Overijssel* and *Groninghen*, was part of the Episcopate of *Utrecht*, first Founded by *Dagobert* King of *France*, in favour of *Willibald* an Englishman, the Converter of these parts to Christianity, whose Successors were Temporal as well as Spiritual Lords, for 900 years, and were very powerful Princes, but often attack'd by the Earls of *Holland* and Dukes of *Guelderland*; which last got from them the Lordship of *Groninghen*, and in the end so distressed *Henry* Bishop of *Utrecht*, that by reason of that and civil Differences, he chose to surrender his Temporalties to the Emperor *Charles V. A. D. 1527.* who divided it into the two Provinces of *Utrecht* and *Overijssel*.

*How these Provinces became United in the House of Burgundy, will be seen by this Table*

**ARTOIS**, *Robert II.* Earl, left Issue one Daughter named *Maud*, who was Married to

**FLANDERS**, *Lewis de Malaine* Earl, Married  
**HAINAULT**, *John de Avesnes*, Earl, Married  
*Aleide*, Heiress of the Earl of *Holland*.

**HOLLAND**, *Jaqueline*, Daughter and Heiress of *William VI.* Earl of *Hainault*, *Holland* and *Zealand*, surrendered her Estates to *Philip* the Good

*The Family of Burgundy.*

*Otheline* Earl of *Burgundy*, who in that Right succeeded in the Earldom, *A. 1302.*

*Margaret* the Heiress of *Burgundy*, and *Artois*, 1361.  
*Margaret* Daughter of *Lewis de la Malaine*, Earl of *Flanders*, *Artois* and *Burgundy*, Married to  
*Philip* the Hardy, Son of *John* King of *France*, made also Duke of *Burgundy. A. 1363.*

*John* without Fear, his Son, *A. 1404.*

*Author*



**LIMBURG**, *Adolph*, Heir to *Henry*, last Duke, sold it to *Henry*, Duke of *Brabant*, A. 1293.

**BRABANT**, The Marquisate of the Empire or Territory of *Antwerp* and Lordship of *Machlin*, together with the Dutchy of *Limburg* being fallen into this House, upon the Death of *Philip II.* without Issue, it descended to *Philip the Good*, 1430.

**LUXEMBURG**, *Elizabeth* the Niece of *Sigismund* the last Duke, having no Issue, sold this Dutchy to *Philip the Good*.

**NAMUR**. *John VI.* sold it to *Philip the Good*, who was also next Heir to *Theodorick*, Successor to *John*, who died without Issue, about 1430.

**GUELDERLAND**, with **ZUTPHEN** and **GRONINGEN**. *Arnold* the Duke, being inhumanly treated by his Son, sold his Estates to *Charles the Warlike*; notwithstanding which, his Son *Adolph* got possession of them after the Death of *Charles the Warlike*, A. 1473. and left them to his Son *Charles*, who maintain'd long War with the Duke of *Burgundy* to defend his Right, but was at length forced to surrender it to *Charles V.* to be enjoy'd by him after his Decease, which happen'd 1538. and *Charles* accordingly succeeded.

**UTRECHT** with **OVERYSSEL**. *Henry* of *Bavaria* being distressed through War with the Duke of *Guelderland*, and Rebellion of his own Subjects, surrendred his Temporalities to *Charles V.* A. 1527. which was confirm'd by the Pope and the Estates of the Country.

*Anthony the Proud*, his Son, A. 1404. also made Duke of *Brabant* by his Mother.

*Philip the Good*, their Brother, succeeded *John* in 1419. and *Anthony* 1430. and was, in his time, Duke and Earl of *Burgundy*, Duke of *Brabant*, *Limburg* and *Luxemburg*, Marquis of the Holy Empire, and Earl of *Flanders*, *Haynault*, *Holland*, *Zeeland*, *Artois* and *Namur*.

*Charles the Warlike*, his Son, succeeded Anno 1467. and added the Dutchy of *Guelderland* and *Zutphen*. He was killed in War against the *Switzers*, 1475. leaving Issue only one Daughter.

*Mary* Heir to *Charles*, married *Maximilian* of *Austria*, Son to the Emperor *Frederick III.* and afterwards Emperor himself, Succeeded Anno 1482. by *Philip* their Son, who married *Joan* the Daughter and Heir of *Ferdinand* and *Isabel* King and Queen, and first Monarchs of all *Spain*.

*Charles*, the Son of *Philip* and *Joan*, succeeded in the Estates of *Burgundy* in the Right of his Father, A. 1506. to which he added *Overysfel* and *Utrecht*; and in the Kingdom of *Spain* in the Right of his Mother, A. 1516, and was also elected Emperor, being the 5th of that Name, A. D. 1519.

*Charles V.* made these Countries a Circle of the Empire, and resign'd them, with the Kingdom of *Spain*, A. 1558. to his Son

*Philip IV.* of *Burgundy* and II. of *Spain*, in whose time happen'd the defection of the Seven Provinces, whereof an Account shall be given when we come to speak of those Estates.

1599. *Philip III.* surrendered these Countries to his Daughter

*Isabella Clara Eugenia*, married to *Albert* Arch-Duke of *Austria*. After whose death, A. 1621. succeeded *Philip IV.* King of *Spain*; whose Successors will be seen in our Description of *Spain*.

## The Present State of the Spanish Netherlands.

The Supream Lord, as hath been said, is the King of *Spain*, who governs them by a Substitute with the Title of *Governor General of the Netherlands*.

The Governour General is assisted by three Councils, viz.

The Council of State; wherein the most weighty Affairs, as Peace and War, Leagues and Alliances, Treaties with Foreign Ambassadors, &c. are transacted.

The Privy Council; which judges Matters of Right brought before it by Appeal from the other Courts of Judicature; makes Laws and Edicts, determines the Bounds of Provinces, the Right of Lordship, &c. And

The Council of *Finances*; which hath the Care and Management of the Royal Revenues and all Taxes, and of supervising the Accounts of the Receivers. To this Council also belongs the Care of the Fortifications, the adjusting and proportioning the Charge of a War, &c.

But the levying Money and enacting of new Laws, belong to the *Convention of the Estates*, which is compos'd of the Nobility, principal Clergy and Deputies of the Chief Cities; who, being called by the Governour General, assemble at *Brussels*, not in one Body, but by Provinces, (the several Provinces retaining still most of the Particular Privileges they anciently enjoy'd) where the Prince's desires are propos'd to them, in an obliging and endearing manner; (the *Spaniard* having by fatal Experience found his Error in

treating these People with Severity) and if they appear unwilling to Grant what he Demands, the most winning Arguments, with all the power of Rhetorick, are used in his Behalf; which is the more necessary, because every City hath a negative Voice, and the dissenting but of one of them spoils the Law.

The settl'd Revenue of the Crown consists in Customs and Imposts, which, by reason of the great Loss of Trade, and the Encroachments of the King of *France* upon the Country, do not, by much, answer the Charge of the Government; but the King is oblig'd to send continual Supplies from *Spain*.

For maintaining the Peace and taking care of the Armies, &c. there is a Governour in every Province appointed by the King, subordinate to the Governour General.

And for administring of Justice, each Province hath a Provost or Bailiff; and over all there is a Grand Provost, who hath great Power in Criminal Matters.

The Bishopricks of the *Netherlands*, besides those already mention'd under the Archbishoprick of *Cambray* in the Account of *France*, are only these, viz.

The Archbishoprick of *Machlin*, with the Bishopricks of *Antwerp*, *Ghent*, *Bruges*, *Ypres*, *Ruremond* and *Bois le Duc*.

And formerly, the Bishoprick of *Utrecht*, with the Bishopricks of *Haerlem*, *Deventer*, *Groningen*, *Lewarden* and *Middleburg*; which being subject to the States-General, have been suppress'd.



## The UNIVERSITIES.

In the Spanish Netherlands.

Louvain.

In the United Netherlands.

Leyden, Groeningen,

Utrecht, Harderwick.

Franeker,

The Accounts in *Flanders* are kept in Pounds Schellings, and Groots; 12 Groots make a Schelling, 20 Schellings a Pound *Flemish*.

The common Coins are, the *Negenmanneck*, which is the eighth part of a *Stuyver*. An *Oortke*, the fourth part of a *Stuyver*.

The *Stuyver*; the Schelling 6 *Stuyvers*; the *Guilder* 20 *Stuyvers*.

The *Patatoon* is two *Guilders*, and the half *Patatoon* one *Guilder*.

The *Silver-Crown* 2 *Guilders* and 10 *Stuyvers*, the *Rix-Dollar* something more.

The *Ducatoon* 3 *Guilders* or something more.

The Ten Spanish Provinces are,

The Dutchy of BRABANT,	Bruxels, Cap
The Dutchy of LUXEMBURG,	Luxemburg.
The County of ARTOIS,	Arras, Bish.
The County of FLANDERS,	Ghent, Bish.
The County of HAINAULT,	Mons.
The County of CAMBRESIS,	Cambray, Arch.
The Marquisate of the S. Empire,	Antwerp, Bish.
The Lordship of MALINES,	Malines, Arch.
The County of NAMUR,	Namur, Bish.
The Dutchy of LIMBURG,	Limburg.

The Country of *LIEGE*, adjoining.

The King of *France* hath at several times conquered a great part of these Provinces, which by several Treaties of Peace have been granted to him, whereof we have already given an account in speaking of the Dominions of that King, in the general Account of *France*.

## C H A P. I.

The County or Province of ARTOIS, *Artesia*, *Arthesia*, or *Adartesia*.

THE Province of *Artois* is bounded on the North by that of *Flanders*, on the South by *Picardy*, on the East by the Territories of *Cambresis*, and on the West by those of *Boulogne*, extending it self from North-west to South-east about 60 miles, and 23 from N. to S. This is the Country of those ancient People call'd *Atrebares* by *Cæsar*, and is at present entirely subject to the French. Within its Limits are 850 Towns and 9 Castellanies, together with a great number of rich Abbies and Monasteries. It bringeth forth much Corn, abounds in Pastures, and is water'd with divers Rivers; the chief whereof are, the *Lys*, the *Scarpe*, and the *Aa*. *Artois* was at first subdued by the *Romans*, and then by the French; under the second Race of whose Monarchs it obtained certain particular Governours or Earls, who in process of time render'd themselves proprietary Lords thereof; until, at length, after divers Revolutions, the French made an absolute Conquest of this Province, to whom it was granted by the 35th Article of the *Pyrenean Treaty of Peace*, A. D. 1659.

The most considerable Towns, Villages, &c. are these, viz.	{	<i>Arras</i> , Bish.	<i>Aire</i> , Pr.
		<i>S. Omer</i> , Bish.	<i>Terouanne</i> , ruin'd.
		<i>Bapaume</i> ,	<i>Lens</i> ,
		<i>Hesdin</i> ,	<i>Avesne le Comte</i> ,
		<i>Bezbume</i> ,	<i>S. Paul</i> ,
		<i>S. Venant</i> ,	<i>Mont S. Eloy</i> , Ab.

*ARRAS*, *Atrebatum* or *Nemetocerna*, and *Nemetacum*, is seated on the River *Scarpe*, at the distance of 30 miles from *Amiens* to the N. and 30 from *Tournay* to the S. W. 47 from *Dunkirk* to the S. and 18 from *Cambray* to the W. It is a very ancient and large City, defended by a strong Castle, and very good Bulwarks, Trenches, and other Fortifications. It is divided into two parts, call'd the City and the Town, separated formerly by a Wall. The former is the smaller, but best built; in it stands the Cathedral (a beautiful Building, dedicated to the Virgin Mary) wherein are kept some Famous Relicks, particularly a Candle pretended to be dropt down from Heaven, and some Manna shew'd down on *S. Jerome*. The Town hath fair broad Streets, a spacious Mark-place and stately Churches; and is inhabited by wealthy Traders and Artificers, who make *Says* and *Tapestry Hangings*, especially the latter, which Art was invented here, and therefore take their Name from

this City, *Arras* is the See of a Bishop, Suffragan to the Metropolitan of *Cambray*, who is accounted Lord of the City, as the Secular Prince is of the Town. It was taken by the French Troops under the Command of the Marshals *de Chaune*, *Chatillon* and *la Melleraye* on the 10th day of August, A. D. 1640. and hath ever since remained in their Possession. The *Spaniards*, to regain so important a Place, laid Siege to it, but were repulsed with great Loss, on the 25th of August, 1654. *S. Omer*, *Fanum S. Audomari*, or *Audomaropolis*, stands on the River *Aa*, in the Country of the ancient *Morini*, and is also an Episcopal See; the Bishop whereof hath been a Suffragan to the Archbishop of *Cambray* ever since the year 1559. when it succeeded the demolish'd City of *Terouanne* in this Dignity; from the Ruines of which it is distant 3 Leagues to the North, 20 miles from *Boulen* to the East, 20 from *Dunkirk* to the South, and 32 from *Arras* to the North-West. *S. Omer*, Bishop of *Terouanne*, founded a Monastery here, A. C. 660. whither People resorting, Buildings round it were erected, which in time increased to a good Town: And A. 880. *Tongues*, Abbot of *S. Bertin*, began to enclose it with Walls, which were afterward finished by *Baldwin II.* surnamed the Bald, Earl of *Flanders*, in 902. Not far from hence is to be seen a large Lake, in which there are divers floating Islands, which are remov'd by Poles and Cords, and inhabited by certain Families that never depart out of these Islands, and refuse to contract Alliance with any but those of their own Tribe; In one of these Islands stands a Monastery of the Order of *S. Bernard*, and a Church. *S. Omer's* is large and the People rich, by means of their Trade. An *English* Seminary of Jesuits is establish'd here; from whence our Nation hath been infested with Disturbers of the publick Peace. This City is Fortified both by Nature and Art, as being environ'd on one side with the River and Marshes, and on the other with an Hill or rising Ground, defended by a strong Castle, divers Bastions and very deep Trenches: However, the Duke of *Orleans* made himself Master thereof, after having defeated the *Spanish* Forces at the Battle of *Cassal*, on the 23d of April, 1677. And it was yielded up to the French King by the Peace concluded at *Nimeguen* in the Year ensuing.



*Aire* or *Arien*, *Aira*, is situate on the River *Lys*, 10 Miles from *St. Omer* to the South-East, and about 24 from *Arras* to the North-West; and is a very strong well fortified Town, having, besides the Walls, Bastions, Half-Moons, Horn-Works, Redoubts, Counter-carps and Ditches, a Morass which environs it on three Sides; and on the side that is accessible, a Fortlets, call'd *Fort St. James*, which hath 5 Bastions, 2 Half-Moons, and a deep Trench. But notwithstanding its Strength, this Town was taken by the French in 1641, and quickly after, retaken by the Spaniards: And in the Year 1676, the French again took it, and have ever since possessed it.

In the mid-way, between *St. Omer* and *Aire*, are the Ruins of the once considerable City of *Terouanne*, which was famous on Account of the Siege thereof by our King *Henry VIII.* in Person, in the Year 1513, at which the Emperor *Maximilian* assisted, and wore the English Badge (*St. George's Cross*) as a Soldier under King *Henry*. At this Siege, the French attempting to put Provisions into the Town, were beaten by the English with great Slaughter, and by reason of the Haste wherewith the French fled away, 'twas call'd the *Battle of Spurs*; intimating, That those were the chief Weapons they used. Quickly after the City was taken, but dismantled and quitted: Which the French afterwards repairing, it was again taken by the Emperor *Charles V.* and utterly demolished, in the Year 1553, and is at present a small Village only.

*Bethune*, *Bethunia*, a fortified Town, and the Capital of a County, stands on the River *Briette*. 12 miles from *Aire* to the East: An excellent sort of Cheese is made here, and sold into all the Neighbouring Countries. It is a Place of Trade, and hath two annual Fairs.

*Bapaume*, *Bapalma*, another small fortified Town, stands near the Confines of *Picardy* and *Cambray*, about 15 miles from *Arras* to the South-East.

*Hesdin*, on the River *Canche*, being incommodiously seated for Defence, was demolish'd by the Emperor *Charles*, and *Hesdin-Fort* built a little above upon the same River *Canche*, where the *Ternois* falls into it; which was well fortified, and made one of the strongest Towns in these Countries: But was, however, taken by the French in 1639. It is situated near the Confines of *Picardy*, 20 miles South from *Aire*, and about 10 West from *St. Paul*.

*St. Paul*, *Poliniacensis Pagus*, a small Town, the Capital of a County, formerly subject to its own Lords; is seated near the Head of the small River *Ternois*, about 10 miles from *Hesdin-Fort* to the East, 15 from *Arras* to the West, and as many from *Aire* to the South.

*Azincourt*, famous for the Battle between the English and French in 1414, where King *Henry V.* obtained a most signal Victory over the French Army, that was vastly more numerous than his own, was a Village seated near *Hesdin* and *St. Paul*.

## CHAP. II.

### The County or Earldom of FLANDERS, called Vlaenderen in Flemish; Comitatus Flandriae.

THIS is the first and most considerable County or Earldom of the Low Countries, and takes its Name from *Flandrina* the Wife of *Liderick II.* Prince of *Buc*, and Grand Forester of *Flanders*, who govern'd it according to the Orders of the Emperors *Charlemain* and *Lewis* the Debonnaire. Others derive it from that of *Flambert*, the Nephew of *Clodion* King of *France*, who, having married *Belisinda*, the Daughter of *Golduerus*, King of the *Ruthenians*, expelled the *Romans* out of *Gallia Belgica*. This Province is bounded on the North by the German Ocean, and the Mouth of the River *Scheld*, call'd the *Hont*, by which it is separated from *Zeeland*; on the South by *Artois* and *Hainault*, on the East by part of *Hainault* and *Brabant*, and on the West by the Ocean and part of *Artois*. It is extended from North to South for the space of about 60 miles, and 75 from East to West, which must be understood of its largest Dimensions. It is a very fruitful Country, especially that part towards the Sea, which is excellent Pasturage for the great number of Horse brought up in the neighbouring Countries and fed here. The rest of the Country affords store of Corn and Fruit. Within its Bounds are comprehended 28 or 30 walled Towns: many other Towns very remarkable, and 1154 Villages, besides 48 Abbies and a vast number of Priories, Colleges and Monasteries; insomuch, that the Spanish Noblemen, who accompanied *Philip II.* when he took a Progress into these Countries, declar'd, That

*Flanders* was only one continued City. Here are included 5 Vicounties, which are *Gaunt*, *Ypres*, *Furnes*, *Winoxberg* and *Haerlebeck*; 3 Principalities, namely those of *Steenhusen*, *Gaure* and *Espinay*; 5 Ports, formerly very considerable, viz. *Graveling*, *Dunkirk*, *Newport*, *Ostend* and *Sluce*; and 32 Castellanies. The whole Province is commonly divided into 3 Parts: 1. *Flanders Flemish*, where the Vulgar-Language of the Country is spoken, and is stretched forth from the Northern Sea to the River *Lys*: 2. *Gallitan*, where the French Tongue is chiefly predominant, lying to the South of the *Flemish*, and to the North of *Cambrisis*, having the *Scheld* to the East and the *Lys* to the West: 3. *Imperial Flanders*, situated between the *Scheld* and the *Dender*, comprehending the County of *Alost*, together with a few Offices or Districts, which were heretofore possessed by the Emperor. There is also another Division in the same Territories, viz. into *Flanders Teutonic*, *Walloon*, *Imperial* and *Dutch*: The first of these is extended between the Sea and the River *Lys*: The second, betwixt the *Lys* and the *Scheld*: The third between the two others: And the fourth to the North of the two former. But at present the Country of *Flanders* is divided, with respect only to the Sovereign Princes who are possessors thereof; so that it is usually distinguish'd into the *French*, *Spanish* and *Dutch* Quarters, according to the ensuing Table.



French Flanders, wherein are compriz'd these Towns, &c.	<i>Lisle</i> , Cap.	<i>la Basse</i> ,
	<i>Ypres</i> , Bish.	<i>l' Ecluse</i> ,
	<i>Tournay</i> , Bish.	<i>S. Amand</i> .
	<i>Dunkirk</i> , Port.	<i>Lannoy</i> ,
	<i>Graveling</i> ,	<i>Warneton</i> ,
	<i>Berg S. Vinc.</i> ,	<i>Comines</i> ,
	<i>Douay</i> ,	<i>Warwick</i> ,
	<i>Furnes</i> ,	<i>Menin</i> ,
	<i>Mont-Cassel</i> ,	<i>Eftayre</i> ,
	<i>Orchies</i> ,	<i>Poperingue</i> ,
Spanisk Flanders, in which are these Towns, &c.	<i>Baileul</i> ,	<i>Bourburg</i> ,
	<i>Roulers</i> ,	<i>Mardyck</i> .
	<i>Armentiers</i> ,	
	<i>Guant</i> , Bish. Cap.	<i>Ninove</i> ,
	<i>Bruges</i> , Bish.	<i>Damme</i> ,
	<i>Ostend</i> , Port.	<i>Dixmuyde</i> ,
	<i>Newport</i> , Port.	<i>Deynse</i> ,
	<i>Oudenard</i> ,	<i>Gramont</i> ,
	<i>Alost</i> ,	<i>Rupelmond</i> .
	<i>Courtray</i> ,	
Dutch Flanders,	<i>Sings</i> , Port.	<i>Sas van Gand</i> ,
	<i>Oostburg</i> ,	<i>Cassandra</i> ,
	<i>Hulst</i> ,	<i>Philippine</i> ,
	<i>Axtel</i> ,	<i>Terneuse</i> ,
	<i>Ardenburg</i> ,	<i>Middleburg</i> .
	<i>Bierliet</i> ,	<i>Bormhous</i> ,
	<i>Wendick</i> ,	<i>Doel</i> .

## FRENCH FLANDERS.

*L'YSL E* or *RYSS E L*, *Insula & Lila*, so call'd by reason of its situation amidst divers Marshes, which have been drained by the Industry of the Inhabitants, is seated on the River *Deule*, at the distance of 25 miles from *Arras* to the North, 30 from *Newport* to the South West, 12 from *Tournay* to the West, 16 from *Douay* to the North, and 12 from the Confines of *Artois*. *Baldwin IV.* call'd the Bearded, Earl of *Flanders*, founded this City, *A. D.* 1007. and his Successor, *Baldwin V.* surnam'd of *Lisle*, caused it to be encompass'd with Walls. It hath been often taken and sack'd during the Wars of the *Low Countries*, but is at present extremely well Fortified, according to the modern Method, and hath a Citadel flanked with 5 Royal Bastions, besides many Half-moons and other Outworks, raised for its Defence; the Ditches are also double and fill'd with the Waters of the *Deule*. It is a large City and very considerable on account of its Trade, which consists chiefly in Silk Manufactures; and for the conveniency of transporting their Goods, a Canal is cut to the River *Lys*; and it is the usual place of Residence of the Governor of *French Flanders*. It was taken by the Army of the present French King, *Lewis XIV.* in the Year 1667. and was resign'd to him by the Peace of *Aix la Chapelle*, *A. D.* 1668. after which, its Fortifications were exceedingly encreas'd, and the City grew up into so flourishing a State, that it was called *Petis Paris*, as resembling that City in Opulency and Delights. As this was the Darling City of the *Netherlands* to the French King, the Loss of it is to be sure no small Affliction to him. The Confederate Army, after the Battle of *Oudenard*, set down before this City, and after a Siege of two Months, took the Town on the 22d of October, and the Citadel on the 11th of December, 1708. N. S.

*Tournay* or *Dornick*, *Tornacum*, the Capital City of a small County in *Gallian Flanders*, call'd *Teurnaisis*, is seated in the midst of pleasant and fruitful Meadows, on the Banks of the *Scheld*, at the distance of 30 miles from *Cambray* to the North, 30 from

*Gaunt* to the South, and 11 from *Lisle* to the East, lying almost in the midst between *Douay* and *Oudenarde*, as also between *Valenciennes* and *Courtray*. It is a very considerable City, being large, well-built, a place of good Trade, and very populous. It is divided into 10 Parishes, the Churches whereof are stately, and the Cathedral dedicated to the Virgin *Mary*, magnificent. The Buildings in General are very handsom; and here are reckon'd 72 Companies of Traders. It is an Episcopal See under the Metropolitan of *Cambray*, and is well fortified with Walls, Ditches and regular Out-works, besides the Castle, which was built by our King *Henry VIII.* by whom this City was taken, but restored to the French upon Conditions, *A. D.* 1518. Afterwards the Emperor *Charles V.* disposseis'd them in 1521. But the present French King regain'd it from the Spaniards in 1667. and it was granted to him by the Treaty of *Aix la Chappelle*.

*Ipres*, *Ypres*, *Ipræ*, hath its name from the small River *Iperlee*, on which it stands, at the distance of 23 miles from *Lisle* to the North-West, and is a rich well-traded City, the Capital of a Territory of large extent, call'd the Castellany of *Ypres*, which is a very fertile Country. The Trade consists in Sais, wrought Silks, &c. Several Fairs are held here, especially one in Lent, which is very profitable to the Inhabitants. The Buildings are fair and good, but the Fronts of the Houses are of Timber. The public Buildings are the Cathedral dedicated to *S. Martin*, several other Churches, many Convents, a large Hall or Repository for the Wool, and the Marketplace very spacious and handsom. This City is an Episcopal See under the Archbishop of *Malines*, is honour'd with the Title of a Viscounty, and is reckon'd the third of the four that constitute the third Estate of *Flanders*. It was taken by the French in 1678. and yielded to them at the Treaty of *Nimeguen*.

*Menene* is a small Town upon the *Lys*, about 5 or 6 miles above *Courtray*, with a Ditch and other Fortifications to resist a sudden Surprise.

*Armentiers* stands also upon the *Lys*, 12 miles above *Menene*, and 8 from *Lisle* to the West: It is a Town of good Trade and considerable Strength; notwithstanding which, it hath been often taken and retaken, and is at present in the hands of the French, having been granted to them at the Treaty of *Aix la Chappelle*.

*Warwyck*, *Warneton*, and *Comine*, the Birth-place of the famous *Philip de Comines*, are all three seated upon the *Lys*, between *Menene* and *Armentiers*, and all subject to the French.

*Orchies*, an ancient tho' small Town, is situate 12 miles South-East from *Lisle*, 10 from *Tournay* to the South-West, and as many from *Douay* to the North-East, and water'd with a small Rivulet, which 5 miles below falls into the *Scarpe*.

*S. Amand*, formerly a place of good Strength, but now dismantl'd by the French, is seated on the River *Scarpe*, 7 or 8 miles from *Orchies* to the East, and 10 from *Tournay* to the South. It is noted for a famous Abby in it, dedicated to the Saint that gives name to the Town, and formerly for a fine Forest adjoining, of the same name also, which was cut down in 1676. by order of the French King.

*Douay*, *Duacum*, is seated also on the *Scarpe*, on the Frontiers of *Artois*, 16 miles from *St. Amand* to the West, and as many from *Lisle* to the South. It is a very considerable Town, on account of its large Extent, Trade and Strength. Its chief Trade is in making and



and weaving Worsted Camlets, which are bought by all the neighbouring People, especially at the Annual Fair in September. Here is a famous Seminary for English Roman Catholics, first Founded in 1569. by Philip II. Afterwards removed to Rheims in France, but stayed there only 20 Years, in which time they Publish'd an English Version of the Bible. The French Took this Town in 1667, and have ever since posses'd it. It is well Fortified, and hath a Fort upon the Scarpe a Cannon-shot below the Town, which is situated among Marishes, and by Sluces can drown the Country all round.

These are all the Places of any Note in the East part of French Flanders. The most considerable of the West part are, *Winoxberg*, *Cassel*, *Furnes*, *Graveling*, *Mardyke* and *Dunkirk*.

*Winoxbergen*, or *Berg Saint Winox*, *Berga*, or *Mons Saint Winox*, is seated about 18 miles West from *Ypres*, and 14 East from *Gravelin*, as also Eight or Nine from *Dunkirk* to the South; it is the Capital of a Castellany, or large Territory, which is very fruitful, and feeds great Herds of Cattle. The Town hath its name from a Monastery erected on a Hill, in Honour of S. *Winox* an English-man. Woollen Cloth is made here; but its Trade was formerly much more considerable than at present.

*Cassel*, or *Mont Cassel*, *Castellum*, and *Castellum Mynerum*, stands upon the top of a high Hill, at the distance of 10 or 11 miles South from *Winoxburg*, and 15 West from *Ypres*: It is an ancient Town, and hath a considerable Jurisdiction, subordinate to that of *Ypres*. It was formerly a place of good Strength, but having been several times Taken and almost Ruin'd, it is now not considerable. The French took it in 1677. and have ever since held it. Near this Place, in the Year 1677. was fought a very bloody Battle, between the Dutch Army, commanded by the Prince of *Orange*, and the French, commanded by the Duke of *Orleans*, wherein the latter obtained the Victory.

*Furnes*, or *Vuerne*, *Vurna*, is a neat pleasant Town, seated within two Leagues of the Sea, at the distance of about 10 miles from *Dunkirk* to the East, and 5 from *Newport* to the West, 20 from *Cassel* to the North, and about 10 from *Winoxberg* to the North-East. This Town hath a Territory call'd an *Ambacht* belonging to it, which is exceeding Fertile. It is dignified with the Title of a Vicounry, and is a place of Trade, which consists in Linnen Manufactures, &c. It was taken by the French in 1667. and granted to them by the Peace of *Aix la Chapelle*, and since better Fortified. In the Year 1692 our English Forces took it, but the next Winter the French regain'd it.

*Graveling*, or *Graveline*, *Gravelinga* and *Gravelina*, is one of the Sea-ports of Flanders; and seated at the mouth of the River *Aa*, which parts France from Flanders, in the mid-way, between *Calais* and *Dunkirk*, 16 miles North-West from *Cassel*, and 12 West from *Winoxberg*. This being a Frontier of Flanders from France, was Fortified by *Charles V.* in 1528. and is at present very strong, as well by reason of its situation among low Grounds and Dikes, as by the strong and regular Out-works built all round it. It is but a small Town, ill Built, and thinly Inhabited, and at present subject to the French, being taken by them in 1658. and yielded up at the *Pyrenean Treaty*.

Between *Graveling* and *Dunkirk*, about 4 miles from the latter, stands what is left of the Fort of *Mardyke*, formerly a very strong Place, but in the Year

1645 dismantled, and in 1652, quite destroyed; so that there remains now only a small wooden Fort, with some few Guns on it.

*Dunkirk* *Dunquerca*, is situated on the Shoar of the German Ocean, at the distance only of 20 miles from *Calais*, and 12 from *Graveling* to the East, 15 from *Newport*, and 28 from *Ostend* to the West, 35 from *Tournay* to the West, 34 from *Bruges* to the South-west. It takes its name from the Sand-Hills, call'd in Flemish *Duynen*, that are ranged along the Sea-coasts, and on which a large Church, term'd Kirk by those People, is erected; the high Tower thereof appearing very far off to the Mariners as they sail on the Downs. It is a good large Town, well built, with neat large Streets, and very Populous: It is one of the Five Ports of Flanders, and was therefore a place of good Trade in the flourishing time of this Country: Afterwards, in the War-time, it became a Retreat of Pirates and Robbers, who infested the Seas, and very much disturbed Trade. The Emperor *Charles V.* first Fortified it; which the French Demolish'd when they Took and Sack'd the Town in 1558. The Spaniards Re-took it 1581. and here a great part of the Fleet, design'd to invade England in 1588. was Equipp'd by the Prince of Parma, but by the Vigilance of the Dutch Fleet, which lay before the Harbour, were kept in, and could not join the rest of their Fleet; which much facilitated their Overthrow. It was afterwards taken and re-taken by the French and Spaniard, before 1658. when it was finally taken by the joint Forces of England and France, and put into the Hands of the English, in whose Possession it remain'd till 1662. when it was deliver'd to the French by (*Charles II.* upon certain Conditions to us unknown) who have ever since held it, and have very much improv'd it, by enlarging the Town, and building exceeding strong Fortifications, &c. wherein they have bestowed prodigious Expence; having besides the building strong Walls an Ravelins, Half-moons and Counter-scarps, and a Citadel regularly Fortified: I say, besides these, the French King hath dug a large Basin within the Town, capable of receiving 150 Ships of Burden, and cut a Canal through the Splinter-lands out into the Sea, which is secur'd by a Mole or Gallery on each side, that are carried out into the Sea a mile in length, on which are Forts with Cannon planted on them, and on one side a strong Fort, call'd the Rice-bank, well secur'd with an hundred Pieces of Cannon that command the Port; a Work of vast Labour, Art and Expence, by which he intended to make it a Port for his Ships of War, but was disappointed of his Design; for the Sands do so choak up the Harbour, notwithstanding the Mole, that with all the advantage of the highest Tides, they cannot bring in a Ship of 70 Guns, without Unlading her.

### Spanish FLANDERS.

*GAUNT* or *GHENT*, *Gande*, *Gandavum*, is water'd with divers Rivers and Channels, which divide the Town and the adjacent Country into many Islands, being seated almost at an equal distance of 30 miles North from *Tournay*, East from *Ostend*; South from *Middleburg*, and West from *Malines*, as also 26 from *Antwerp* and 23 from *Brussels*. It is the Capital City of the Province of Flanders, and one of the largest Cities of Europe, being 15 or 16 miles in compass; but then Corn-fields and Meadows are included within the Walls. It was built (as it is reported) by

*Julius*



*Julius Caesar*, in a Place extremely advantageous for Traffick, on the Account of its situation at the confluence of four large Rivers, viz. of the *Scoelde*, which flows hither from the Province of *Hainaut*, the *Lys*, which runs from that of *Artois*, the *Lien*, which proceeds from the Port of *Suys*, and the *Meere*, which took its rise near the four Offices, call'd *Limbaetes*. Within the Precincts of *Gaunt* are included 26 small Isles, form'd by the Waters of the Canals and Rivers, and as many large Bridges, under which pass Barks of good Burden, and a great Number of smaller Bridges. The Churches, which are seven in Number, are fair and well built; the Cathedral especially is very stately, and has a Tower of 400 Steps high. The Castle or Prince's Palace, is said to contain 300 Chambers, in one of which the Emperor *Charles V.* was Born. The other publick Buildings are, the Town-house, a high Tower call'd *Be fort*, (in which hangs a great Bell, call'd *Roland*, that weighs 11000 pound weight,) many Monasteries, and several Hospitals. The private Houses are fair and well-built, and the Streets clean and neat. This City hath a good Trade in Cloths, Stuffs and wrought Silks, made here in great quantities. It is much resorted to from the neighbouring Places on account of the Provincial Council of *Flanders*, which was establish'd by *John Duke of Burgundy*, A. D. 1409. and still held in this City. It is also an Episcopal See subject to the Metropolitan of *Mecklin*, and is fortified with a Citadel built in 1540, by the Emperor *Charles V.* a Counterescarp, deep Ditches, Ramparts, and many other Out-works. However, the French King, *Lewis XIV.* took it after a Siege of 9 days, on the 9th of *March*, 1678. but was oblig'd to restore it to the Spaniards at the Peace of *Nimeguen*.

At the distance of 4 Leagues from hence to the North, stands a strong Fortreis, call'd by the Inhabitants, *'t Sas van Ghendt*. It was erected by the Spaniards, and taken by the *Hollanders*, A. D. 1644. by whom it hath been strongly fortified; and made almost impregnable. Between *Gaunt* and *Bruges* there is a Canal which was cut at great Expence by the *Marquis Spinola*, when he was Governor of the *Netherlands*, for conveying Goods and Passengers to and from each City; and is call'd by the Inhabitants *De nieuwen Vaert*, and by Strangers, *The Canal of Bruges*.

**BRUGES**, *Brugs*, so call'd from the multitude of its Bridges, is seated on the Canal of *Reye*, which is here divided into many navigable Rivulets, running through divers quarters of the Town, and afterward re-uniting in the same Canal that passeth as far as *Suys*. But because that Port was in the Hands of the *Hollanders*, about 40 Years ago the Inhabitants made another, which flows to *Ostend*, and is so deep, that Ships of two or three hundred Tuns are brought up to *Bruges*, which thereby maintains a very good Traffick, but small in comparison of what it hath been: For before the Wars in *Flanders*, it was the greatest Mart in *Europe*; Merchants from all Parts resided here, and had Magazines for the Goods of every Country, which were here Barter'd and Sold; of these Merchants, there were no less than 17 Companies, all which remov'd to *Antwerp* about the Year 1500. by reason of the Wars and Disturbances hereabouts, except the English, who, upon the loss of *Calis*, remov'd the Staple for Wool hither in 1558. where it remain'd for a long time, to the great Advantage of the Town. *Bruges* is esteem'd the second City of *Flanders*; it is large, well-built, and reasonably populous; The Form of it is round, and the Cir-

cumference about 4 miles; there are six principal Streets, which begin at the six chief Gates, and center at the Market-place. The publick Buildings are sumptuous, the Houses neat, and the Streets strait and large. Their Trade consists in Spanish Wool, and the Manufactures of the Town, Fustians and other Stuffs, Cloth, Tapistry, &c. This City is an Episcopal See, under the Archbishop of *Malines*: The Cathedral is dedicated to *S. Donat*, besides which there are seven Parish, and two Collegiate Churches, three principal Abbies, and a great number of Religious Houses. The other publick Buildings are, the Castle, the Town-house, and the Water-house of very ingenious Structure. *Bruges* stands in the North-part of *Flanders*, at the distance of 10 miles from the Sea, somewhat more from *Ostend* to the East, and as many from *Suys* to the South-west, as also 20 from *Gaunt* to the North-east.

*Ostende* is a small Town, and one of the five Ports of *Flanders*; it is situate about 10 miles West from *Bruges*, 9 from *Newport* to the North, and at the Mouth of the small River *Guele*, in the midst of a moorish Ground, and divers Channels and Dikes. It was at first only a small Village, but by reason of its convenient Situation, it was wall'd round and fortified; by the Strength whereof and the advantageous Situation, the *Hollanders*, with the Assistance of an English Garrison, sustain'd a Siege three Years and three Months, viz. from the 5th of *July*, 1601. to the 22d of *September*, 1604. when it was taken by *Ambrosio Spinola*, and surrender'd to *Albert Arch. Duke of Austria*. The Spaniards had 78124 Soldier in their Army, and in counting the Officers, together with those that were slain in the Town, the number slain in this Siege is suppos'd to amount to 15000 Men. Since when, it hath been possess'd by the Spaniards, and is at present exactly and regularly fortified, and one of the strongest Places in the *Netherlands*. The Houses are well built, handsom and uniform, and the Streets clean and neat. The Haven is safe, large well defended by Forts, and deep enough to receive Ships of great Burden.

*Newport*, *Novus Portus*, heretofore call'd *Sandhoft* that is to say, the Head of the Sands, hath in like manner a safe Harbour, altho' scarcely capable, even at the high Tides, of receiving Vessels of any great Burden. It is seated near the Mouth of the River *Iperlee*, which falling into the Sea, makes a long and secure Haven, at the distance of 15 miles from *Dunkirk* to the N. E. 9 from *Ostend* to the S. W. 18 from *Ypres* to the North, and 38 from *Gaunt* to the West. It is a Place of good Strength, being well fortified with Walls and several Forts. The Buildings are neat, but low and of Timber: The Inhabitants are maintained by Fishing. From hence the English Paequet-Boat goes weekly to *Dover*. This Town being invested by the *Hollanders* in the year, 1600. under the Command of *Maurice Prince of Orange* assisted by some English Troops commanded by *S. Francis Vere*, the Archduke *Albert of Austria*, the Governor of the *Netherlands*, came to its Relief with a great Army; whence ensued a notable Battle fought on the adjoining Sand-hills, wherein Prince *Maurice* obtained a very signal Victory, and the Archduke was oblig'd to escape by Flight: In which Action the English bore the greatest part.

*Oudenard*, *Aidenarda*, is seated on the River *Scheldt* which divides it into two parts: It is a place of good Wealth by means of the Trade, especially in its own Manufactures, Tapestry and Fine Linen. It is the Capital of a Castellany, which contains 33 Villages and



and a place of good Strength, being fortified with a Castle call'd *Pamele*, join'd to the Town by a Bridge over the River, strong Walls and regular Outworks: but is commanded by a high Hill on the side towards *Alost*, which takes away from its otherwise advantageous situation. In 1484. this Town was taken by Stratagem by *Philip of Cleves* Lord of *Ravestein*; surpriz'd by *Blomart* in 1567. besieg'd and taken by the Prince of *Parma* in 1582. and by the French in 1658. but being restored to the *Spaniards* by the *Pyrenean* Treaty, they again took it in 1667. and had it yielded to them at the Peace of *Aix la Chapelle*: But they were oblig'd to restore it by the Treaty of *Nimeguen*, and it hath ever since been in the Hands of the *Spaniard*. It stands 13 miles from *Ghent* to the South, 17 from *Tournay* to the North, and 14 from *Courtray* to the East. A Battle was fought near this Town on the 11th of *July*, 1708. N. S. between the French Army, under the Dukes of *Burgundy* and *Vendisme*, and the Confederate Army under the Duke of *Mailborough* and the Prince of *Savoy*, wherein a Glorious Victory was obtain'd by the Confederates.

*Courtray*, or *Cortryck*, *Corteriacum*, *Cortracum*, is a very good well-traded Town, seated on the River *Lys*, 14 miles North from *Lisle*, and as many East from *Ypres*. The Inhabitants are excellent Artists in Diapering of Linen: It was several times taken by the French and *Spaniards* before 1667. when the French finally took it, and had it granted to them at the Treaty of *Aix la Chapelle*. It hath a strong Citadel and other Fortifications, which have been much improv'd by the French, and is at present a Place of great Importance.

*Alost* or *Aelft* is seated on the River *Dender*, near the Confines of *Hainault*, 13 miles from *Ghent* to the South-East, as many from *Oudenard* to the East, and makes almost an exact Triangle with those 2 Places. It is reckon'd the Capital of Imperial *Flanders*, and of a County formerly subject to its own Lords. It was taken by the *Spaniards* in 1576, and by the Duke of *Anjou* in 1582. after which it came into the Hands of the English, who sold it to the Duke of *Parma*. In 1667. the French took it, and destroy'd its Fortifications before they restor'd it.

The Territories of this Town are large, being besides the County of *Alost*, the County of *Waes* and the four Offices of *Hulst*, *Axel*, *Bouchout* and *Aflemede*, which comprehend above 150 Villages and 4 Cities.

*Dendermond*, seated on the River *Dender*, where it falls into the *Schelde* (whence the Town hath its name) 6 or 7 miles North from *Alost*, and 12 East from *Ghent*, is a good Town, and considerable for its Manufacture of Fustians and other Stuffs. It is fortified, and was strong enough to resist the Assaults of the French in 1667.

*Ninove* is seated in the Territory of *Alost*, at the

distance of about 8 miles from it to the South, and 12 from *Oudenard* to the East. It is a small Town and not considerable.

*Deynse* is seated on the *Lys*, 8 miles from *Ghent* to the South-west, and 12 from *Oudenard* to the North-West; it is but a small Town, however the Capital of a Territory in the Castellany of *Courtray*, and subject to the *Spaniards*: As is also

*Harlebec* near *Courtray*, a small Town, and the Capital of another small Territory.

*Dixmude* or *Dixmuyde*, is seated on the River *Yperlee*, 20 miles North-West from *Courtray*; and 10 South-East from *Newport*; it is a place of some Trade, and hath an Annual Fair in *July*. It is but small and not very well fortified. Our English Forces took Possession of it in 1692. but the French took it soon after, and have since quitted it.

## DUTCH FLANDERS.

*SLUYS* or *SLUCE*, *Sluys*, *Clausula*, another of the Ports of *Flanders*, is seated in the North part of this Province, about 9 or 10 miles beyond *Bruges*, 16 from *Middleburg* in *Zeeland* to the South, 18 from *Ostend* to the North-East, and 20 from *Ghent* to the N. W: It belongs to the States of *Holland*, and is one of their strongest Frontiers. It hath the largest Haven of all the five, being capable of receiving 500 Ships of Burthen at a time, and was once a place of great Trade and Wealth. This Town having been first, as *Bruges* and *Antwerp* were afterwards, the chief Mart of these Countries; at present it is but poor, and thinly inhabited, but extremely well fortified, and hath a good Garrison.

*Oostburg* and *Ysendrick*, small Towns near *Sluys*, are both guarded by small Forts.

*Philippine* is a pretty strong Fort, seated about 15 miles East from *Sluys*, and 5 or 6 North from the *'t Sas van Ghent*.

*Axel*, the Capital of one of the four Offices, is seated about 6 miles East from *Philippine*, and 12 North from *Ghent*. It was surpriz'd by Prince *Maurice*, assisted by our Sir *Philip Sidney*, in 1586. and is a Place of good Strength.

*Hulst*, the Capital of another of the Offices, stands about 6 Miles East from *Axel*, and in the midst of the Country of *Waes*. It is a place of good Trade, and tolerably well fortified.

*'t Sas van Ghent*, is a strong Fort seated 5 miles South West from *Axel* and 11 miles North from *Ghent*; taken by the *Hollanders* in 1644. and being very much strengthened, has been ever since possess'd by them.

These Towns, together with the *Hont* or *Wester Schelde*, which is an Arm of the Sea, make a secure Frontier toward *Zeeland*.

## C H A P. III.

### The Dutchy of B R A B A N T, Brabantia.

THIS Country lies in form of an Island encompassed round about with Rivers, having the *Maes* to the East and North, the *Demer* to the South, and the *Schelde* to the West, together with the Sea on the Side of *Breda* and *Bergen-op-Zoom*; that is to

say, it is bounded on the North by *Holland*, and part of the Dutchy of *Guelderland*; on the East by part of the same Dutchy, and the Bishoprick of *Liege*; on the South by *Hainault* and the County of *Namur*; and on the West by *Flanders* and part of *Zeeland*.



*Zeeland.* Its extent from South to North consists of about 70 miles ; from West to East, in its broadest part, near as many. The Air is exceeding temperate, and the Soil no less fruitful ; besides the Rivers *Schelde, Maes, Dile, Demer, Aa, Ischer, Domel*, the greater and lesser *Nephe*, and the *Ment*, wherewith it is water'd, many Lakes, Marshes and Pools are found in its Territories : 26 walled and fortified Towns are also comprehended therein, not to mention a great number of others of lesser Consequence. In *Brabant* are compriz'd the Marquisate of the Holy Empire, the Capital City whereof is *Antwerp*, the Lordship of *Melnes*, the Duchy of *Afchet*, the Marquisate of *Bergues*, the Earldom of *Ostreten*, the State of *Maastricht*, formerly of *Liege*, and 19 Baronies. In fine, the whole Province may be thus divided into four Parts, viz.

1. *Spanish Brabant*, properly so call'd, in which are included these principal Cities and Towns ;

<i>Bruxelle, Cap.</i>	<i>Arendonck,</i>
<i>Leuven,</i>	<i>Scepenbewel,</i>
<i>Arfchet,</i>	<i>Meil,</i>
<i>Nivelle,</i>	<i>Walheim,</i>
<i>Tillemont,</i>	<i>Maure,</i>
<i>Gembours,</i>	<i>Genap,</i>
<i>Lire,</i>	<i>Vueren,</i>
<i>Diest,</i>	<i>Affche,</i>
<i>Silverde,</i>	<i>Cantecroy,</i>
<i>Herentals,</i>	<i>Perwys,</i>
<i>Judeigne,</i>	<i>Sombreff,</i>
<i>Siehem,</i>	<i>Tilly,</i>
<i>Leuwe,</i>	<i>Rever,</i>
<i>Lenden,</i>	<i>Heverlee,</i>
<i>Stavelot,</i>	<i>Guesbeck,</i>
<i>Heckstact,</i>	<i>Lew,</i>
<i>Turnhout,</i>	<i>Gesta Viromt,</i>
	<i>Lummen.</i>

on the Banks of the small River *Sinne*, which is join'd to the *Schelde* by a Channel six Leagues in length, cut with great Labour and the Expence of 500 thousand Crowns by *Charles V.* and his Son *Philip*, and finish'd in 1560. by which the Commerce of the Inhabitants with several Places, especially *Antwerp*, was much advanc'd.

This City in general is very well built, the Streets large, handsom and convenient, and secured by double Walls of Brick, and a Ditch quite round the Town. The publick Buildings are : The Palace, which is seated upon a Hill in the upper Town, and is a magnificent and stately Structure, and so large, that several Crown'd Heads were at one time Lodged and Entertain'd in it, viz. *Charles V.* and his Son *Philip* King of *Spain*, *Maximilian* King of *Bohemia* and his Queen, the Queens of *France* and *Hungary*, and an *African* King. Adjoining to this Palace is a pleasant Park, well stor'd with Deer, also fine Gardens, Water-works, Grotto's and pleasant Walks. The Senate-house, a noble Building with a high Tower, whereon stands a large Statue of *S. Michael* in Brass, and the Church of *S. Gudula*, which hath 2 Towers of five hundred Steps high. Several other of the Buildings of *Brussels* deserve particular Descriptions, especially the Gallery which repeats an Echo 15 times, the magnificent Palaces of divers Noble Men, the Royal Stable which holds 120 Horses, together with the Hospitals and Religious Houses ; but for these the Reader must consult *Bleau, Guicciardin*, &c. being too long to be inserted here. The Private Citizens Houses are very fine, and are particularly pleasant by means of the Gardens they are almost all furnished with, which they are extravagantly curious in Cultivating. Flowers being especially valued here. The whole City is divided into the Upper and Lower, whereof the latter is the most pleasant, and adorn'd with artificial Fountains and Canals. with many fair Bridges. The Residence of



Saint Gertrude is a fair Building, and the Convent of 42 Nuns, all of noble Extraction, is considerable.

*Vilverden*, seated upon the River *Sinne* about 6 Miles North from *Brussels*, is a wall'd Town, and by its situation reasonably strong: Here is an old Castle, wherein formerly Prisoners of Quality were kept, and also the Records of greatest concern belonging to the Dutchy of *Brabant*.

Senef, a small Village, 2 miles South of Nivelles, and near the Borders of Hainault, not at all considerable, but for a memorable Battle fought there in the Month of August, 1674. between the Confederate Forces commanded by the Prince of Orange, his late Majesty of Great Britain, and the French commanded by the Prince of Conde.

LOUVAIN or L'OEVEN, *Leuvenium*, is a City of a very large Extent, its Walls being 6 miles in Compass, but include many Meadows, Corn-fields, Vine-yards and Gardens, besides the Houses of the Inhabitants. It is seated in a pleasant Country, upon the Banks of the River *Dyle* at the distance of 15 miles from *Brussels* to the East, and 15 from *Mechlin*, forming a Triangle with those two Cities; as also 26 miles South from *Antwerp*, and 24 North from *Namur*. The private Buildings here are but ordinary. The publick ones are, The Stadt-house or Guild hall, which is a very handsome stately Pile; and the Castle, which is seated on a high Hill, in the midst of Vineyards and Gardens, and in a very wholesome Air, which together with the noble Prospect it affords, make it a most pleasant Seat, and therefore heretofore frequently made the place of Residence of the Dukes and their Children, and particularly the Emperor *Charles V.* <sup>15th</sup> *August* was born here. <sup>15th</sup> *August*; as also the Churches, Religious Houses and Hospitals, are worth a Stranger's View. But that which *Leuven* is chiefly noted for, is the University, which was founded, as some say, in the Year 1363.

peror *Charles V.* and hath a small Territory depending on it:

*Sichem* stands about 4 miles from *Arscho* to the East: It is a small wall'd Town, but not very strong; however, it made a notable Resistance when attack'd by the Prince of *Parma* in the time of the Low-Country War.

*Diest* or *Diestheim*, a large near Town, and of good Trade for several Manufactures, especially of Cloth, stands on the River *Demer*, 3 miles from *Sichem* to the East. It giveth the Title of a Barony to the Prince of *Orange*, and hath a large Territory its dependant. It is also wall'd and reasonably strong. As is also

*Halem*, seated on the River *Velp*, hardly 3 miles East from *Diest*, which tho' a small Town enjoys large Privileges granted to it at several times.

*Leewe*, stands about 6 miles South from *Halem* upon the River *Geer*, it is a small Town, but being near the Borders of *Liege*, is well fortified : It enjoys large Privileges, and the Inhabitants make great profit by a sort of Beer they brew, which is esteem'd and much bought by the neighbouring Towns. Here is a great Priory of the Order of *S. Austin*, whose Prior is one of the Noblemen of the Province.

*Tienen* or *Tilmont*, is seated on the River *Geet*, 6 miles West from *Leewe*, and 8 East from *Louvain*, and was formerly a very large and well-traded City enjoying great Dignity and Privileges; but having suffer'd by the Wars, was much decay'd before the French destroy'd it in 1675. so that at present it is not considerable.

Landen, though small is reckoned among the ancientest Towns of the Province; it is distant about 3 miles from Ticon to the East, and as many from Leewe to the South. Near this Town a Battle was fought on the 29th of July, 1693. between the Confederates and the English.



*Julius Cæsar*, in a Place extremely advantageous for Traffick, on the Account of its situation at the confluence of four large Rivers, viz. of the *Schelde*, which flows hither from the Province of *Hainaut*, the *Lys*, which runs from that of *Artois*, the *Lien*, which proceeds from the Port of *Sass*, and the *Mere*, which took its rise near the four Offices, call'd *Amoëtes*. Within the Precincts of *Gant* are included 26 small Isles, form'd by the Waters of the Canals and Rivers, and as many large Bridges, under which pass Barks of good Burden, and a great Number of smaller Bridges. The Churches, which are seven in Number, are fair and well built; the Cathedral especially is very stately, and has a Tower of 400 Steps high. The Castle or Prince's Palace, is said to contain 300 Chambers, in one of which the Emperor *Charles V.* was Born. The other publick Buildings are, the Town-house, a high Tower call'd *Be fort*, (in which hangs a great Bell, call'd *Relana*, that weighs 11000 pound weight, many Monasteries, and several Hospitals. The private Houses are fair and well-built, and the Streets clean and neat. This City hath a good Trade in Cloths, Stuffs and wrought Silks, made here in great quantities. It is much resorted to from the neighbouring Places on account of the Provincial Council of *Flanders*, which was establish'd by *John Duke of Burgundy*, A. D. 1409. and still held in this City. It is also an Episcopal See subject to the Metropolitan of *Mecklin*, and is fortified with a Citadel built in 1540, by the Emperor *Charles V.* a Countericarp, deep Ditches, Ramparts, and many other Out-works. However, the French King, *Lewis XIV.* took it after a Siege of 9 days, on the 9th of *March*, 1678. but was oblig'd to restore it to the Spaniards at the Peace of *Nimeguen*.

At the distance of 4 Leagues from hence to the North, stands a strong Fortreis, call'd by the Inhabitants, *Castellan Ghent*. It was erected by the Spaniards, and taken by the *Hollanders*, A. D. 1644. by whom it hath been strongly fortified; and made almost impregnable. Between *Gant* and *Bruges* there is a Canal which was cut at great Expence by the Marquis *Spinola*, when he was Governor of the *Netherlands*, for conveying Goods and Passengers to and from each City; and is call'd by the Inhabitants *De nieuwe Vaert*, and by Strangers, *The Canal of Bruges*.

**BRUGES**, *Bruxa*, so call'd from the multitude of its Bridges, is seated on the Canal of *Reye*, which is here divided into many navigable Rivulets, running through divers quarters of the Town, and afterward re-uniting in the same Canal that passeth as far as *Sass*. But because that Port was in the Hands of the *Hollanders*, about 40 Years ago the Inhabitants made another, which flows to *Ostend*, and is so deep, that Ships of two or three hundred Tuns are brought up to *Bruges*, which thereby maintains a very good Traffick, but small in comparison of what it hath been: For before the Wars in *Flanders*, it was the greatest Mart in *Europe*; Merchants from all Parts resided here, and had Magazines for the Goods of every Country, which were here Barter'd and Sold; of these Merchants, there were no less than 17 Companies, all which remov'd to *Antwerp* about the Year 1500. by reason of the Wars and Disturbances hereabouts, except the English, who, upon the loss of *Calis*, remov'd the Staple for Wool hither in 1558. where it remain'd for a long time, to the great Advantage of the Town. *Bruges* is esteem'd the second City of *Flanders*; it is large, well-built, and reasonably populous; The Form of it is round, and the Cir-

cumference about 4 miles; there are six principal Streets, which begin at the six chief Gates, and center at the Market-place. The publick Buildings are sumptuous, the Houses neat, and the Streets strait and large. Their Trade consists in Spanish Wool, and the Manufactures of the Town, Fustians and other Stuffs, Cloth, Tapitry, &c. This City is an Episcopal See, under the Archbishop of *Malines*: The Cathedral is dedicated to *S. Donat*, besides which there are seven Parish, and two Collegiate Churches, three principal Abbies, and a great number of Religious Houses. The other publick Buildings are, the Castle, the Town-house, and the Water-house of very ingenious Structure. *Bruges* stands in the North-part of *Flanders*, at the distance of 10 miles from the Sea, somewhat more from *Ostend* to the East, and as many from *Sass* to the South west, as also 20 from *Gant* to the North-east.

*Ostende* is a small Town, and one of the five Ports of *Flanders*; it is situate about 10 miles West from *Bruges*, 9 from *Newport* to the North, and at the Mouth of the small River *Guele*, in the midst of a moorish Ground, and divers Channels and Dikes. It was at first only a small Village, but by reason of its convenient Situation, it was wall'd round and fortified; by the Strength whereof and the advantageous Situation, the *Hollanders*, with the Assistance of an English Garrison, sustain'd a Siege three Years and three Months, viz. from the 5th of *July*, 1601. to the 22d of *September*, 1604. when it was taken by *Ambercio Spinola*, and surrender'd to *Albert Arch-Duke of Austria*. The Spaniards had 78124 Soldiers in their Army, and in counting the Officers, together with those that were slain in the Town, the number slain in this Siege is suppos'd to amount to 15000 Men. Since when, it hath been possess'd by the Spaniards, and is at present exactly and regularly fortified, and one of the strongest Places in the *Netherlands*. The Houses are well built, handsom and uniform, and the Streets clean and neat. The Haven is safe, large, well defended by Forts, and deep enough to receive Ships of great Burden.

*Newport*, *Novus Portus*, heretofore call'd *Sandkeft*, that is to say, the Head of the Sands, hath in like manner a safe Harbour, altho' scarcely capable, even at the high Tides, of receiving Vessels of any great Burden. It is seated near the Mouth of the River *Yperlee*, which falling into the Sea, makes a long and secure Haven, at the distance of 15 miles from *Dunbirk* to the N. E. 9 from *Ostend* to the S. W. 18 from *Ypres* to the North, and 38 from *Gant* to the West. It is a Place of good Strength, being well fortified with Walls and several Forts. The Buildings are neat, but low and of Timber: The Inhabitants are maintained by Fishing. From hence the English Paequet-Boat goes weekly to *Dover*. This Town being invested by the *Hollanders* in the year, 1600 under the Command of *Maurice Prince of Orange* assisted by some English Troops commanded by *St Francis Vere*, the Archduke *Albert of Austria*, then Governor of the *Netherlands*, came to its Relief with a great Army; whence ensued a notable Battle fought on the adjoining Sand-hills, wherein *Prince Maurice* obtained a very signal Victory, and the Archduke was oblig'd to escape by Flight: In which Action the English bore the greatest part.

*Oudenard*, *Adenarda*, is seated on the River *Scheldt*, which divides it into two parts: It is a place of good Wealth by means of the Trade, especially in its own Manufactures, Tapestry and Fine Linen. It is the Capital of a Castellany, which contains 33 Villages and



and a place of good Strength, being fortified with a Castle call'd *Pamele*, join'd to the Town by a Bridge over the River, strong Walls and regular Outworks: but is commanded by a high Hill on the side towards *Alost*, which takes away from its otherwise advantageous situation. In 1484. this Town was taken by Stratagem by *Philip of Cleves* Lord of *Ravestein*; surpriz'd by *Blomart* in 1567. besieg'd and taken by the Prince of *Parma* in 1582. and by the French in 1658. but being restored to the *Spaniards* by the *Pyrenean* Treaty, they again took it in 1667. and had it yielded to them at the Peace of *Aix la Chapelle*: But they were oblig'd to restore it by the Treaty of *Nimeguen*, and it hath ever since been in the Hands of the *Spaniard*. It stands 13 miles from *Ghent* to the South, 17 from *Tournay* to the North, and 14 from *Courtray* to the East. A Battle was fought near this Town on the 11th of *July*, 1708. N. S. between the French Army, under the Dukes of *Burgundy* and *Vendesme*, and the Confederate Army under the Duke of *Marlborough* and the Prince of *Savoy*, wherein a Glorious Victory was obtain'd by the Confederates.

*Courtray*, or *Certryck*, *Corteriacum*, *Contracum*, is a very good well-traded Town, seated on the River *Lys*, 14 miles North from *Lisse*, and as many East from *Ypres*. The Inhabitants are excellent Artists in Diapering of Linen: It was several times taken by the French and *Spaniards* before 1667. when the French finally took it, and had it granted to them at the Treaty of *Aix la Chapelle*. It hath a strong Citadel and other Fortifications, which have been much improv'd by the French, and is at present a Place of great Importance.

*Alost* or *Aelft* is seated on the River *Dender*, near the Confines of *Hainault*, 13 miles from *Ghent* to the South-East, as many from *Oudenard* to the East, and makes almost an exact Triangle with those 2 Places. It is reckon'd the Capital of Imperial *Flanders*, and of a County formerly subject to its own Lords. It was taken by the *Spaniards* in 1576, and by the Duke of *Anjou* in 1582. after which it came into the Hands of the English, who sold it to the Duke of *Parma*. In 1667. the French took it, and destroy'd its Fortifications before they restor'd it.

The Territories of this Town are large, being besides the County of *Alost*, the County of *Waes* and the four Offices of *Hulfe*, *Axel*, *Bouchout* and *Astemedé*, which comprehend above 150 Villages and 4 Cities.

*Dendermond*, seated on the River *Dender*, where it falls into the *Schelde* (whence the Town hath its name) 6 or 7 miles North from *Alost*, and 12 East from *Ghent*, is a good Town, and considerable for its Manufacture of Fustians and other Stuffs. It is fortified, and was strong enough to resist the Assaults of the French in 1667.

*Ninove* is seated in the Territory of *Alost*, at the

distance of about 8 miles from it to the South, and 12 from *Oudenard* to the East. It is a small Town and not considerable.

*Deynse* is seated on the *Lys*, 8 miles from *Ghent* to the South-west, and 12 from *Oudenard* to the North-West; it is but a small Town, however the Capital of a Territory in the Castellany of *Courtray*, and subject to the *Spaniards*: As is also

*Harlebec* near *Courtray*, a small Town, and the Capital of another small Territory.

*Dixmude* or *Dixmuyde*, is seated on the River *Yperlee*, 20 miles North-West from *Courtray*; and 10 South-East from *Newport*; it is a place of some Trade, and hath an Annual Fair in *July*. It is but small and not very well fortified. Our English Forces took Possession of it in 1692. but the French took it soon after, and have since quitted it.

## DUTCH FLANDERS.

*SLUYS* or *SLUCE*, *Sluys*, *Clausula*, another of the Ports of *Flanders*, is seated in the North part of this Province, about 9 or 10 miles beyond *Bruges*, 16 from *Middleburg* in *Zeeland* to the South, 18 from *Ostend* to the North-East, and 20 from *Ghent* to the N. W: It belongs to the States of *Holland*, and is one of their strongest Frontiers. It hath the largest Haven of all the five, being capable of receiving 500 Ships of Burthen at a time, and was once a place of great Trade and Wealth. This Town having been first, as *Bruges* and *Antwerp* were afterwards, the chief Mart of these Countries; at present it is but poor, and thinly inhabited, but extremely well fortified, and hath a good Garrison.

*Oostburg* and *Ysendrick*, small Towns near *Sluys*, are both guarded by small Forts.

*Philippine* is a pretty strong Fort, seated about 15 miles East from *Sluys*, and 5 or 6 North from the *'t Sas van Ghent*.

*Axel*, the Capital of one of the four Offices, is seated about 6 miles East from *Philippine*, and 12 North from *Ghent*. It was surpriz'd by Prince *Maurice*, assisted by our Sir *Philip Sidney*, in 1586. and is a Place of good Strength.

*Hulst*, the Capital of another of the Offices, stands about 6 Miles East from *Axel*, and in the midst of the Country of *Waes*. It is a place of good Trade, and tolerably well fortified.

*'t Sas van Ghent*, is a strong Fort seated 5 miles South West from *Axel* and 11 miles North from *Ghent*; taken by the *Hollanders* in 1644. and being very much strengthened, has been ever since possess'd by them.

These Towns, together with the *Hont* or *Wester Schelde*, which is an Arm of the Sea, make a secure Frontier toward *Zeeland*.

## CHAP. III.

### The Dutchy of BRABANT, Brabantia.

THIS Country lies in form of an Island encompassed round about with Rivers, having the *Maes* to the East and North, the *Demer* to the South, and the *Schelde* to the West, together with the Sea on the side of *Breda* and *Bergen-op-Zoom*; that is to

say, it is bounded on the North by *Holland*, and part of the Dutchy of *Guelderland*; on the East by part of the same Dutchy, and the Bishoprick of *Liege*; on the South by *Hainault* and the County of *Namur*; and on the West by *Flanders* and part of *Zeeland*.







*Saint Gertrude* is a fair Building, and the Convent of 42 Nuns, all of noble Extraction, is considerable.

*Vilvoorden*, seated upon the River *Sinne* about 6 Miles North from *Brussels*, is a wall'd Town, and by its situation reasonably strong: Here is an old Castle, wherein formerly Prisoners of Quality were kept, and also the Records of greatest concern belonging to the Dutchy of *Brabant*.

*Seneffe*, a small Village, 2 miles South of *Nivelle*, and near the Borders of *Hainault*, not at all considerable, but for a memorable Battle fought there in the Month of *August*, 1674. between the Confederate Forces commanded by the Prince of *Orange*, his late Majesty of *Great Britain*, and the French commanded by the Prince of *Conde*.

*LOUVAIN* or *LOEVEN*, *Leuuanium*, is a City of a very large Extent, its Walls being 6 miles in Compass, but include many Meadows, Corn-fields, Vine-yards and Gardens, besides the Houses of the Inhabitants. It is seated in a pleasant Country, upon the Banks of the River *Dyle* at the distance of 15 miles from *Brussels* to the East, and 15 from *Mechlin*, forming a Triangle with those two Cities; as also 26 miles South from *Antwerp*, and 24 North from *Namur*. The private Buildings here are but ordinary. The publick ones are, The Stadt-house or Guild hall, which is a very handsome stately Pile; and the Castle, which is seated on a high Hill, in the midst of Vineyards and Gardens, and in a very wholesome Air, which together with the noble Prospect it affords, make it a most pleasant Seat, and therefore heretofore frequently made the place of Residence of the Dukes and their Children, and particularly the Emperor *Charles V.* was brought up here. These, as also the Churches, Religious Houses and Hospitals, are worth a Stranger's View. But that which *Louvain* is chiefly noted for, is the University, which was founded, as some say, in the Year, 926, but not confirm'd till 1425. when *John IV.* Duke of *Brabant*, endowed it. At present it is in a very flourishing State, and *Golnitz* says, exceeds *Cologne* for number of Students and neatness of Building: It hath 45 Colleges and a vast number of Students, over whom the Rector is chief Governor, and hath great Honour and Respect paid him, even by the highest Magistrate of the Town. In this City are 11 Market-houses, 4 publick Fountains, 12 principal Streets, and above 100 small ones. The Walls are strongly built, and upon 'em are several Towers, whereof one is very fine, and was built by the Citizens in 1364. who design'd six more, but by reason of the great Expence were deterr'd; wherefore this hath got the Name of *Verloren Kest*, or Lost Expence. The Weaving Trade was formerly very great in this City, insomuch, that about the Year, 1530. there are said to have been 4000 Weaver's Shops, and in each 30 or 40 Men at Work. And of the exceeding populousness of this place, *Lipsius* gives us a notable Instance, viz. 'That when the Bell rung at 11 a Clock at Noon for the Workmen to leave off, the Women in great haste snatch'd their Children out of the Street, lest they should be bore down by the great Crowd. But at present the Trade is not very considerable, some Manufactures of Linens and Stuffs is the chief of it; which, together with the Entertainment of the Students, afford the Inhabitants a good Support.

*Aschot*, seated on the River *Demer*, 10 miles North from *Louvain*, is a good large wall'd Town, dignified with the Title of a Dukedom by the Em-

peror *Charles V.* and hath a small Territory depending on it.

*Sichem* stands about 4 miles from *Aschot* to the East: It is a small wall'd Town, but not very strong; however, it made a notable Resistance when attack'd by the Prince of *Parma* in the time of the Low-Country War.

*Diest* or *Diestheim*, a large neat Town, and of good Trade for several Manufactures, especially of Cloth, stands on the River *Demer*, 3 miles from *Sichem* to the East. It giveth the Title of a Barony to the Prince of *Orange*, and hath a large Territory its dependant. It is also wall'd and reasonably strong. As is also

*Halem*, seated on the River *Velpc*, hardly 3 miles East from *Diest*, which tho' a small Town enjoys large Privileges granted to it at several times.

*Leuwe*, stands about 6 miles South from *Halem* upon the River *Geet*, it is a small Town, but being near the Borders of *Liege*, is well fortified: It enjoys large Privileges, and the Inhabitants make great profit by a sort of Beer they brew, which is esteem'd and much bought by the neighbouring Towns. Here is a great Priory of the Order of *S. Austin*, whose Prior is one of the Noblemen of the Province.

*Tienen* or *Tilmont*, is seated on the River *Geet*, 6 miles West from *Leuwe*, and 8 East from *Louvain*, and was formerly a very large and well-traded City enjoying great Dignity and Privileges; but having suffer'd by the Wars, was much decay'd before the French destroy'd it in 1675. so that at present it is not considerable.

*Landen*, though small, is reckoned among the ancientest Towns of the Province; it is distant about 3 miles from *Tienen* to the East, and as many from *Leuwe* to the South. Near this Town a Battle was fought on the 29th of *July*, 1693. between the Confederate Forces under the Command of his Majesty of *Great Britain*, and the French commanded by the *Marschal de Luxembourg*.

*Hannuye*, a small wall'd Town, the Capital of a *Mayorie* or small Jurisdiction, is seated in a pleasant and rich Country, 5 miles South from *Landen*.

*Judeigne* or *Geldenake*, a wall'd Town larger than *Hannuye*, and the Capital of a *Mayorie* also, stands upon the River *Geet*, in a very pleasant Country, 7 miles West from *Hannuye*, and about 14 South-East from *Louvain*, and hath an old Castle, wherein some of the *Brabantine* Princes have been nurs'd.

*Ramellies*, altho' but a Village, is made illustrious by the Battle fought near it, *May* 12. 1706. between the Armies of the Confederates under the Duke of *Marlborough* and *Monsieur d'Auverquerque*; and the French under *Marschal Villeroy*, wherein a most glorious Victory was obtain'd by the Confederates, and thereby the whole Country reduc'd to the Obedience of King *Charles*. The Town stands upon the Borders of *Liege*, 7 miles South by East from *Judeigne*, and near the Head of the *Gheet*, between which River and the *Mebaigne*, this memorable Battle was fought.

*Gemblours* or *Giblu*, is a good wall'd Town, the Capital of a County, seated on a steep Hill, environ'd with Precipices, near the small River *Lorn*, which 6 miles below falls into the *Sambre*, and is distant 20 miles from *Hannuye* to the East, and 15 from *Nivelle* to the West. Here is a famous Monastery of *Benedictines*, whose Abbot is Lord of the Town. Near this place was fought a notable Battle, in the Year 1578. between the King of *Spain's* Army



and that of the States-General, wherein the former obtain'd a very advantageous Victory.

*ANTWERP*, *Antwerpia*, *Andoverpium*, in *Flemish Antwerpen*, in *High-Dutch Antert*, in *French Anvers*, is advantageously situated on the Banks of the *Schelde*, at the distance of about 60 miles from the Ocean, 26 from *Bruxels* to the North, 26 from *Gaunt* to the East, and about 30 from *Flaeskercn*, one of the Islands of *Zeeland*, to the South. Its Name (to omit the Fabulous Stories of some Authors) is derived from *Werre* a Bank or Wharf, as seated *aen het Werve*, on the Bank of the River. It is the Capital of the Marquisate of the *Haj Empire*, the See of a Prelate, Suffragan to the Archbishop of *Mechlin*, and a very large, rich and well fortified City, enclosing within its compass 200 Streets, 22 publick Places, a great number of fair Houses, and many stately Churches. Among these the Cathedral, dedicated to the Virgin *Mary*, is more especially remarkable: It is in length above 500 Foot, and 246 in breadth; within this noble Fabrick are contain'd 66 Chappels, enrich'd with Marble Columns and Statues, all different and adorn'd with most curious Paintings, as is also the Body of the Church, the Entry into which is through three large Doors of Marble gilt. The Steeple is made very beautiful by its curious Carvings: In it hang 7 or 8 very large Bells, the biggest whereof hath the name of *Charles*, from the Emperor; these, together with near 30 more, make the most melodious Chimes in the World: the Tower is reckon'd 425 Foot high, besides the Cross at top, of 16 more. The Jesuits Church is extremely beautiful, being paved with Marble, and the Roofs, (which are curiously painted) supported by 56 Pillars of the same, and the Walls all lined with rich Stone, so that nothing is to be seen in the inside but Marble, Jasper, Porphyry and Gold, or excellent Paintings drawn by the accurate Hand of the famous *Rubens*. In this City are also remarkable, the Stadthuys or Senate-house, which having been destroy'd by Fire, was magnificently rebuilt about the Year 1576. and hath 4 several rows of Apartments: The House of the *Oosterlings*, or Merchants of the *Baltick Sea*: The Exchange, which is a noble Building, 180 foot long and 140 broad, with covered Walks all round, the Roof whereof, is supported by 43 Marble-Pillars: And the Citadel or Castle, which is a very strong and regular Fortification, built by the Duke of *Ara*, in 1567. It is a Pentagon, or hath five Bastions, together with Ravelines and other Outworks, and is reckon'd among the best Fortifications of *Europe*.

The River *Schelde* being found a convenient Haven, was much resorted to by Merchant-ships from all Nations; and therefore upon the Disturbances and Wars in *Flanders*, the Trade of *Bruges* and other places thereabouts removed to *Antwerp*, which increased to that degree, that in its most flourishing State (about the Years 1556. to 68) there were often seen to lie in the River 2500 Ships together, and 3 or 400 Vessels have frequently come up in one Tide; also 200 Waggons came in every day, laden with Passengers from the neighbouring Countries, and near 1000 every Week with *Germans*, *French* and other Foreigners; and 10000 Country Carts were continually employed in carrying Goods to and from the City. By this means the number of the Houses and Inhabitants grew exceeding great. *Guiccardin* tells us, That *Antwerp* contain'd 13500 Houses, and the number of the People was reckon'd no less than 200000. But this Grandeur quickly declin'd, and is now extremely diminish'd; for the Wars reaching this place also,

*Antwerp* was Sack'd, and 700 of its Inhabitants kill'd by the mutinous *Spaniards* in the Year 1576. and afterwards taken by the Prince of *Parma*, after a remarkable Siege of no less than 12 Months durance. These Calamities, together with the growing power of the *United Netherlands*, who, by the possession of *Zeeland*, were able to stop the Passage of the *Schelde*, and oblige the Ships to come into their Ports, did quite break the Trade of *Antwerp*; which removing to *London* and *Amsterdam*, hath left this City empty of Inhabitants; and though it be still as populous and rich as many others in the *Netherlands*, it is by no means comparable to what it has been. The Houses are all of Brick and uniform, and the Streets large and neat, many particular Houses very stately, and the publick Buildings magnificent. The City is built in form of a Bow on the East side of the *Schelde* which is near 400 Yards broad, and 22 Foot deep at the lowest Tide, so that Vessels of the greatest Burden can come up and unlade upon the Kayes, which lye all along before 8 of the 13 Gates. From the River there are 8 Canals that run through the Town which are deep enough for Vessels of good Burden to come up; and over these Canals there are 74 Bridges. In fine, *Antwerp* is so beautiful a place, that being compar'd to *Florence*, it hath had the Preference by those that have seen both.

About 10 miles from *Antwerp* to the North, and as many from *Bergen-op-Zoom*, stands the strong Fortrefs of *Soutvliet*.

*MECHLIN*, or *Malines*, *Mechlinia*, seated on the River *Dyle*, is the Metropolis of the Lordship of the same name, reckon'd one of the XVII Provinces though of but small extent, being not above 3 League from West to East, and one and an half from South to North. It is the Seat of an Archbishop, whom Pope *Paul IV.* establish'd there, *A. D.* 1559. and dignified with the Title of *Primate* of the *Low-Countries*. The Grand Royal Council instituted by *Charles Duke of Burgundy* in 1473. is held here, as is also the Sovereign Court of all the *Spanish Netherlands* establish'd in the year 1502. The City stands in the midst of the Province of *Brabant*, between *Antwerp* *Bruxels* and *Louvain*, almost at the equal distance of 13 miles from each of them. It was formerly subject to the Dominion of its proper Lords, until the Year 1336. when it became Free. Afterward it fell into the Possession of the House of *Burgundy*, and at length escheated to that of *Austria*, 1477. The Inhabitants were freed from paying Taxes, for the signal Services they perform'd to *Charles the Hardy*, Earl of *Flanders*, at the Siege of *Nuis* on the *Rhine*. It is a large City and very well built, and is even so neat as to have obtained the Epithete of *Fair*. It is also a strong Place, having, besides the Fortifications a natural Security by the flatness of the Country round about, which by that means is easily laid under Water. The Trade of this Town is pretty considerable, consisting in Linen, Lace, Tanning, Casting great Guns, &c. The Tide flows up beyond the Town, by which means Boats come up from *Antwerp*, and the Commodities of this City are Exported. Weavers were formerly very numerous here but upon a Riot by them committed, were deprived of their Privileges, by which the Trade decayed. The Cathedral Church of *S. Rumbald* is a beautiful Building, and hath a very high Tower; beside which, here are 7 other Churches belonging to the 7 Parishes that the City is divided into. The Monastery of the *Franciscans* is a curious and stately Building.



Building; and the Nunnery of *S. Clara* is very fine. A Magazine is kept here that was formerly exceeding well furnish'd. Some particular Companies of the Traders of this City enjoy great Privileges, especially the Tanners, who are very numerous. Other things of *Mechlin* may deserve a Traveller's Observation, whereof we cannot spare room for a particular Description.

*Lire*, or *Liere*, is a neat and pleasant Town, seated on the River *Nethe*, 7 or 8 miles from *Mechlin* to the N. and 20 from *Antwerp* to the S. E. it is a good large place, and strongly Fortified. The Collegiate Church of *S. Gummans*, is a magnificent Building, and the Market-place is remarkable for its largeness, and the curious Buildings that surround the Religious Houses, especially that of the *Cisterciensians*, are very fine. This Town is Inhabited by People of Quality, and rich Merchants retire from Business.

*Herentals* stands 10 miles E. from *Lire* on the River *Nethe* also; it is a wall'd Town, and the Capital of a Majorie.

### DUTCH BRABANT.

*BOIS LE-DUC*, or *BOLDUC*, *Boscu Ducis* or *Sylva Ducis*, call'd by the Inhabitants, *S. Hertogenbosch*, and by abbreviation, the *Bosch*, is the Capital City of the Dutch *Brabant*, and the Seat of its supreme Court of Justice, standing on the Banks of the River *Dromele*, which having there receiv'd into its Chancel the Waters of the *Ande*, and then those of the *Diese*, falls into the *Maes*, about 2 Leagues from thence, at the Place where the Island of *Bomel* is form'd. It is distant only 5 miles from the River *Maes*, or *Mose*, as also from the confines of *Holland* and *Gueiderland*, near 30 miles from *Antwerp* to the N. E. 54 miles from *Maastricht* to the N. about 40 from the River *Rhine*, and 20 from the *Grave* to the W. The Name thereof was taken from a certain Wood, where the Dukes of *Brabant* were wont heretofore to divert themselves by Hunting; which being cut down by Duke *Henry* to facilitate the March of his Army against the *Guelderlanders*, in the year 1172. this City was built in its place by Duke *Geoffry*, and wall'd round by *Henry* his Son, in 1196. Pope *Paul IV.* erected an Episcopal See, and *Franciscus Sonnius* was the first Bishop; but when *Bois-le-duc* was taken by the *Hollanders* in 1629. these Prelates were oblig'd to remove their Station to *Goldorp*. It is a good large Town and well Fortified, having strong Walls, wherein are 7 large Bastions, a deep Ditch, with Ravelins, Counterescarp and other excellent Fortifications, and is seated upon a Hill amidst Marshes, which are easily laid under Water, and thereby the Town made Inaccessible, but by artificial Causeys, which too are all commanded by Forts, so that 'tis in a manner Impregnable. This being an important Frontier, the *Hollanders* take care always to keep a good Garrison in it. It is a place of pretty good Trade for its Manufactures of Woollen and Linen Cloth, Knives, and other Steel-Ware, &c. The Church of *S. John* which was the Cathedral, is a sumptuous Building. The Market-place, seated at the meeting of 10 Streets, the chief of the Town, is surrounded with very good Buildings: several Canals run through the Town, which bring in Vessels of good Burthen; over these are 51 Stone-Bridges, besides others of Wood. In the defection of the *Netherlands*, the *Bosch* took part with the Confederates, and in 1579. embrac'd the Union of *Utrecht*, but was afterwards taken by the Prince of *Parma*, and remained under the *Spaniard* till 1629, when the Prince of *Orange* Re-took it, after a very difficult Siege. In 1672 it was invested by the *French*, but they marched off the next Month without taking it.

*BREDA*, *Breda* stands in a marshy Ground (which is often overflow'd) on the Banks of the River *Merch*, in Dutch *Brabant*, at the distance of 30 miles from *Antwerp* to the N. 8 S. from *Gertruydenburg*, 24 from *Bois-le-duc* to the W. and 22 from *Bergen-op-zoom* to the E. It is considerably large, populous and well-built, and is one of the strongest Places of the *Low-Countries*. It is dignified with the Title of a Barony, comprehending 17 Villages under its Jurisdiction, which in the year 1212 belonged to *Geoffry* Lord of *Bergues*, but descended to the House of *Nassau*, in 1404. by the Marriage of *Mary*, the Daughter and Heir of *Philip* Lord of *Leek* and Baron of *Breda*, with *Egbert* Earl of *Nassau*, in whose Descendants it hath ever since continued, except in the time that the *Spaniards* were Masters of it; viz. from 1581. when it was Surpris'd by the help of the *Roman Catholics* in the Town, to the year 1590. when it was regain'd by a notable Stratagem; for a Boat seemingly laden with Turf for Fuel, but indeed with Armed Men, passed into the Castle undiscover'd, and forced the Garrison to surrender. And again, from 1625. when the Marquis *Spinola* took it, after a long Siege and Blockade, till 1637. when *Friedrick* Prince of *Orange* recover'd it. The Soil of the adjacent Country is very Fertile in Corn, Pasture and Copses. An Academy for Education of Youth is held here under 4 Professors, establish'd by Prince *Frederick* abovementioned. The Prince of *Orange* hath a Palace and Castle in the Town, where a Treaty was held, and a Peace concluded between King *Charles II.* and the States-General, A. D. 1667.

*Bergen-op-zoom*, *Berga ad Zomam*, or *Bercizoma*; by *Guicciardin*, said to have its name from the little River running by it, which he names *Zoom*, but *Bleau* contradicts, and says, The River hath no such name, except from the Town; and that the Town is call'd *Bergen* from the Hill on which it stands, and *Op-zoom*, on the *Scam*, because seated on the edge of the Province. It is conveniently situated between *Brabant*, *Flanders*, *Holland* and *Zeeland*, within half a League of a Branch of the *Ooster Scheld*, 18 miles from *Antwerp* to the N. 20 from *Breda* to the W. and as many from *Middleburg* to the E. It had the Title of a Marquisate given by the Emperor *Charles V.* and was formerly a Place of good Trade, till eclips'd by *Antwerp*: For convenience of its Trade, a Canal was cut through to the *Hout*, or *Wester Schelde*. The Country about it is very low and marshy, by which the Town is much secured, as well as by very strong and well contriv'd Fortifications, which the *Dutch* have built round it, with Forts upon the Channel, and other convenient places. The Buildings are fair, the Church of *S. Lambert* and the Marquis's Palace especially. Here are 3 spacious Market-places, and a large Hospital for the Sick, which was formerly a Nunnery. This Town was subject to its own Lords, from 1212. till 1567. when it was delivered into the hands of the *Hollanders*; from whom the Prince of *Parma* endeavour'd to recover it in 1588. But they defended themselves so courageously, that he was forced to raise the Siege. Again, in 1622. *Spinola* Besieg'd it, but had no better Fortune; for after 70 or 80 days furiously attacking it, he was glad to leave it, upon the approach of the Dutch Forces under Prince *Maurice*.

*Lillo*, a strong Dutch-Fort, stands on the *Schelde* 8 miles below *Antwerp*, and 13 miles S. from *Bergen-op-zoom*. This is the chief of the Forts that commands the passage of the *Schelde*, and at it a Toll is paid by all Ships.

*Grave*, *Gravia*, termed *Graeff* by the Inhabitants, is situated on the S. side of the *Maes*, the Waters whereof fill the large Trenches that environ its Bulworks, in



a Plain on the Frontiers of *Guelderland*, at the distance of 18 miles from *Bois le-duc* to the East, 7 from *Nimwegen* to the S. and about 50 from *Maastricht* to the N. It is a small Town, but very neat and pleasant, and esteem'd the strongest and easiest to be defended of any in the *Netherlands*. It is the Capital of the small Earldom of *Cuyck*, which belongs to the Prince of *Orange*, as doth the Town it self. The Country about it is Meadow, and affords Pasture to a good Body of Horſe that are always kept here: The Town is exceeding well Fortified with Ravelins, Counterſcarp, Palisado, and a very strong Horn-work, and besides secured by the River on one side, and a Morais on another. It was taken in 1586 by the Prince of *Parma*, and recover'd in 1602 by Prince *Maurice*. In 1672 the *French* took it, and upon their being forced to quit *Holland*, had made this their grand Magazine, and therefore defended it for a long time when it was belleged by the Prince of *Orange* his late Majesty, to whom, however, they were obliged to Surrender it, with all the Artillery and Ammunition, on the 28th of *September*, 1674.

This Town makes a very strong Frontier on this side to the Dominions of the States-General.

*Ravenstein*, a neat but not large Town, is seated on the River *Maes*, about 3 or 6 miles below the *Grave*; it is N. E. from the *Bosch*; it is defended by a strong Castle, and hath Jurisdiction of 4 miles broad, extending about 12 miles S. from the *Maes*, towards *Helmont*, the Capital of the Country call'd *Peel-land*:

It is a good walled Town, seated on the little River *As*, that falls into the *Maes* a little beyond the *Bosch*, and is distant 17 miles from the *Grave* to the S.

*Eindhoven*, a good wall'd Town also, and the Capital of the Country call'd *Kemper Land*, stands upon the River *Demmel*, 10 miles W. from *Helmont*, and 14 S. from the *Bosch*.

*Maastricht*, tho' seated in the middle almost of the Bishoprick of *Liege*, is reckon'd part of this Province of *Brabant*, because formerly that Duke had one part, as the Bishop of *Liege* had the other part of the Jurisdiction of it; but since 1633. it hath belonged to the States-General. It stands on the River *Maes*, at a Place where was always a Ferry or Passage, which the word *Treect* in *Dutch* signifies; it is call'd in Latin, *Trajectum ad Mosam* & *Trajectus inferior*, to distinguish it from *Utrecht*. It stand on the W. side of the River, but hath a fair Suburb nam'd the *Wick*, on the other side, which is join'd to the City by a beautiful Stone-bridge of 9 Arches. The old Buildings are but ordinary; but those built since the *Hollanders* have had the Town are of Brick and very Fair, particularly the Stadt-house: The Streets are large, and the Houses cover'd with Slate. Here are 3 *Dutch* Churches, and one for the *English* and *French*; that of S.

*Servatius* was formerly a Collegiate, and had the Honour to have the Duke of *Brabant* always one of its Canons: It was also a Cathedral, built in Honour of that Saint, who planted the Christian Faith here, was the first Bishop, and died A. C. 395. from whom a Succession of 20 Bishops ruled in this City; but upon the Martyrdom of S. *Lambert*, the See was translated to *Liege* in the year 713. The City is large, being reckon'd 4 *English* miles in Circuit, but not very populous. It is very strongly Fortified, having, besides a good Wall and Trench, many Out-works of modern Form, well contriv'd to oppose the Advantages Besiegers may have by the nature of the Earth, convenient for Mines and Trenches, and by a Hill a little distant, that would command the Town if the Bastion to the S. E. were not built very high. At the top of that Hill stands an old Castle, and in the Bowels of it is a Quarry of Stone, of which vast quantities are transported to other Countries. This City descended with *Brabant* to the King of *Spain*, but in the War time taking part with the States, it was Besieged by the Prince of *Parma* in 1579. and though they made a very vigorous defence, were forced to submit, and continued under the *Spaniard* till 1633. when the Prince of *Orange* besieged and took it; and in the succeeding Peace of *Munster*, it was yielded to the *Hollanders*. In 1672. the *French* besieged and took it: They sat down before it on the 15th of *June*, the King of *France* himself, with the Dukes of *Orleans* and *Monmouth*, commanding the large Army that attacked it with great Fury, till the end of that Month; at which time the Burghers mutinying, and the Garrison being much weakned, the Governor was forced to Capitulate; and on the 2d. of *July* the Town was surrendred, and continued under the *French* till by the Peace of *Nimeguen* it was restored to the States General, who still possess it.

On the S. E. of *Dutch Brabant* lies the County of *Horn*, which is a Territory of about 20 Miles extent, bounded on the E. by the River *Maes*, on the N. W. by *Peel-land* in *Brabant*, and on the S. W. by the Bishoprick of *Liege*: It was formerly subject to its own Earls of the Family of *Montmorency*, of whom *Philip* and *Florent* were eminent for their Zeal in opposing the Tyranny of the Duke d'Alva, and assisting the Prince of *Orange* in asserting the Liberty of their Country; but had both the misfortune to lose their Lives, by the practices of d'Alva.

*Horn*, that gives Name to the County, is a small Town with a Castle, seated near the *Maes*, 24 miles S. E. from *Helmont*, 25 N. from *Maastricht*, and 4 or 5 W. from *Ruremond*.

*Weert*, the chief Town, stands 12 miles W. from *Horn*, 16 S. from *Helmont*, and 25 N. from *Maastricht*.

## C H A P. IV.

### The County or Earldom of HAINAULT, Hannonia.

THIS Province derives its name from the River, *Heine*, which passeth through the midit of it; called also *Haingon* and *Hengon* by the *Germans*, and is bounded on the N. by *Brabant*, and part of *Flanders*, on the S. by *Cambresis*, *Picardy* and *Champagne*, on the E. by part of *Brabant* and the County of *Namur*, and on the W. by the River *Schelde*, that separates it from *Artois* and part of *Flanders*. It is extended from N. to S. about 50 miles, and about the same from E. to W. The Air is exceeding temperate and healthful,

and the Soil Fertile and water'd with the *Schelde*, *Sambre*, *Haine*, *Dender*, and divers other Rivers. Here are also found many Lakes and Ponds, Woods, some Mines of Iron and Lead, and Quarries of Marble and Touchstone.

Within this Province are comprised 24 Wall'd Towns, 550 Burroughs or Villages, and several Castles; also 3 Principalities, 10 Earldoms, 12 Peerages, 22 Baronies, and 26 Abbies, not to mention divers Hereditary Offices that appertained to the Prince's Court.



viz. Those of a Marshal, Seneschal, grand Hunter, Chamberlain, &c. The French at present possess the greater part of *Hainault*, and the rest remains under the Dominion of the *Spaniards*, as it is shewn in the ensuing Table.

Aper- taining to the French.	{	<i>Valenciennes,</i>	{	<i>le Quesnoy,</i>
		<i>Bouchain,</i>		<i>Avesnes,</i>
		<i>Cenai,</i>		<i>Landrecy,</i>
		<i>Bavay,</i>		<i>Philipville,</i>
		<i>Maubeuge,</i>		<i>Marienburg.</i>
To the Spani- ards.	{	<i>Mons, Capit.</i>	{	<i>Halle,</i>
		<i>Aeth,</i>		<i>Lessines,</i>
		<i>Brainle Comte,</i>		<i>Rozies,</i>
		<i>S. Ghillain,</i>		<i>Soigny,</i>
		<i>Fagnien,</i>		<i>Beaumont, &amp;c.</i>
		<i>Biuche,</i>		

*Valenciennes*, *Valenciana*, or *Valencena*, is situated on the confines of the Country of *Ostrevant*, on the River *Schelde*, which there receives the *Rouel* that divides it into two parts, and by several Channels passes through most of its Streets; distant 15 miles from *Tournay* to the S. and lying also in the middle between *Mons* to the W. and *Cambray* to the N. E. It was Founded (as is generally believ'd) by the Roman Emperor *Valentinian*, and is at present a very large, fair and rich Town, strongly Fortified. The Church of our Lady is an ancient but stately Building, having Pillars of Marble and Porphyry to support its Arches of Stone. The Church of *S. Peter* is very curiously Carved, as is also the Front of the Town-House adjoining. The Hospital for the maintaining and educating of poor Orphans, is well endow'd. Over the *Schelde* are built 10 Bridges, on which stand many fair and large Houses. The Trade of the Town consists in Linen-Cloth, Mohairs and Tabbies, to which is now added the Staple for French Wines. It was Besieged by the French King in the year, 1677. and taken by Storm; but upon the Inhabitants agreeing to pay 400 thousand Crowns for the building of a Citadel, it escaped being Sacked. It was granted to the French at the Treaty of *Nimeguen*, and hath been ever since possessed by them.

*Bouchain*, a small but strong Town, seated on the River *Schelde*, 10 miles above *Valenciennes*, and near as many from *Cambray* to the North; is of service for the Communication of those two Places in time of War, and therefore Besieg'd by the French in 1676. to whom it was surrender'd after one Assault, tho' an Army was marching to its Relief.

*Quesnoy*, tho' a small Town, hath a good Trade for its Manufacture of Linens and Stuffs, and is reasonably well Fortified. It stands about 15 miles from *Bouchain* to the East.

*Landrecy* is a very strong Town, seated on the *Sambre*, near the Borders of *Cambray*, and not above 6 miles from the Frontiers of *Picardy*, about 10 from *Quesnoy*, and 20 from *Valenciennes* to the S. E. It was formerly subject to the Duke of *Areschat*, under whom it held out against a long and furious Siege by the Emperor *Charles V.* in 1543. and the year following was surrender'd to him, together with *Avesnes*, a small Town 8 or 9 miles E. from *Landrecy*. All these 3 were taken by the French and granted to them by the *Pyrenean Peace* in 1659.

*Maubeuge* stands upon the *Sambre*, in the mid-way between *Avesnes* and *Mons*, about 12 m. from each and is a Place of good Trade for Woollen Cloth.

*Bavay*, call'd *Bavay Wallon*, to distinguish it from *Bavay* in *Picardy*. stands 8 miles West from *Maubeuge*,

and 6 N. E. from *Quesnoy*. It is thought by some to have been formerly a great City, nam'd *Belgium*, from whence the Country had its Name, but is at present but a small Place. These were both granted to the French by the *Nimeguen Treaty*.

*Conde* or *Condet*, a small Town with a Castle, stands upon the *Schelde*, about 15 miles N. W. from *Bavay*.

*Marienburg*, Founded by *Mary of Austria*, Queen of *Hungary*, and Governors of the *Low Countries*, in 1542. and Fortified with a very strong Wall and good Out-works, stands on the Borders of the Bishoprick of *Leige*, about 6 miles from the River *Maes* to the W. 10 from the Frontiers of *Picardy* to the N. and 30 from *Landrecies* to the E.

*Philipville* stands about 4 miles N. from *Marienburg*, and is reckon'd part of the Province of *Hainault*. It was built soon after *Marienburg*, and nam'd from *Philip II.* King of *Spain*, who Fortified it with 5 Royal Bastions, and other strong Works, these two making a Frontier against *France* on that side; but they have been both taken by that King, and granted to him by the *Pyrenean Treaty*.

### Spanish HAINAULT.

*MONS*, *Montel*, and *Montes Hanonia*, the Capital City of *Hainault*, call'd *Berghen* in *Flemish*, is seated on an Hill of easie Ascent, near the Banks of the River *Trull*, which a little below falls into the *Haine*, almost in the midst between *Namar* to the E. and *Doway* to the W. at the distance of 35 miles from both, as also 16 from *Valenciennes* to the N. E. 26 from *Bruxels* to the S. W. and 20 from *Tournay* to the S. E. It is a large City and well Fortified with a Stone-Wall, firm Ramparts, 3 large Trenches and an old Castle. The Buildings are beautiful, the Streets large, and the Market-place spacious: The publick Edifices are also very magnificent, and among others the Palace wherein is convened the general Council of the Province; the Religious Houses, of which the College of Canonesses, Founded by *S. Gualtrude* Princess of *Lorraine*, is more especially remarkable; the whole Society consists only of Ladies of great Quality and high Birth, who are obliged to assist at Mass in the Morning, cloathed in the Habit of Nuns, but have liberty to wear sumptuous Apparel in the Afternoon, and even to spend the rest of the Day in Dancing, and Singing, and other Exercises of a free Conversation; and are also permitted to abandon the Abby, or to marry whensoever they please. The Earls of *Hainault* had formerly the Title of Earls of *Mons*, and with the possession of the County receiv'd the Investiture of the Dignity of an Abbot, and other Perquisites holden in Fee of the Church, from the hands of the Lady Abbess of the said College. *Mons* is a Place of good Trade for divers Commodities, especially Wollen Stuffs, whereof they make great quantities. It was surpriz'd in 1572. by Count *Lewis* of *Nassau* by a Stratagem; for 12 Soldiers in Habit of Merchants obtaining leave to have the Gates opened for them earlier than ordinary, kill'd the Porter, and let in the Count with the Soldiers he brought for that purpose, who took possession of the Town without Opposition: But the same year the Duke d'*Alva* Besieg'd and recover'd it; from which time it quietly remained under the *Spaniard*, till 1678. that the French invested and had much distressed it; when the Prince of *Orange*, his late Majesty, came to its Relief, and gain'd a signal Victory over the Duke of *Luxemburg*, upon which the Peace was immediately concluded. In the late War, viz. the 8th. of *April* 1691. the French took this Town, but it was restored at the Peace.



*Aeth*, a small Town seated on the River *Dender*, 14 miles N. from *Mons*, as many S. from *Oudenard*, and about 20 S. W. from *Brussels*, is a Place of good Trade for Linnen, and by reason of its situation near the Borders of these 3 Provinces of *Hainault*, *Flanders* and *Brabant*, hath been at several times well Fortified, especially by the *French*, after they had taken it in 1667; for being granted to them by the Treaty of *Aix la Chapelle*, *Vaulen* was set to work, and great Cost was bestow'd in strengthening this most advanc'd Frontier; but they were oblig'd to restore it at the Peace of *Nimeguen*. It was again taken by the *French* in 1697. but restor'd at the Peace the same Year.

*Lessin*, or *Lessines*, is a small Wall'd Town, seated also on the *Dender*, about 4 miles N. from *Aeth*.

*Enghien*, or *Anguien*, stands about 8 miles West from *Aeth*, and hath had the Title of a Dutchy.

*Halle* is seated on the very Borders of this Province, within 5 miles S. of *Brussels*, and near 20 from *Mons* to the N. It stands in a very pleasant Country, and is water'd by the River *Sienna*. It is not large nor very well built, and is chiefly noted for the Famous Chappel of the Virgin *Mary*, whose Statue in it is cover'd with Gold, and is much resorted to by multitudes of Votaries, who annually make rich Offerings to it. It is Wall'd, but not being strong enough to endure a Siege, was quit to the *French* in April, 1690. but since they left it, it hath been made stronger, and well Garrison'd for the security of *Brussels*.

*Braine le Comte*, on the Frontiers of *Brabant*, about 8 miles South from *Halle*.

*Soigny*, about 3 or 4 miles South-west from it; and *Roeles*, or *Reux*, 4 miles from *Soigny* to the South, are all 3 Wall'd Towns.

On the Borders of *Hainault*, and Frontiers of *Brabant*, about 3 miles N. E. from *Soigny*, as many S. W. from *Halle*, and about the like distance from *Enghien* to the E. stands the Village of *Steenkirk* upon the *Rivulet Senneque*; a small place and not at all considerable, but for a Battle Fought near it on the 24th of July, 1692. between the *Confederates* and the *French*.

*Bincbe*, stands upon a little Branch of the *Haine*, 7 or 8 miles S. E. from *Mons*; it was formerly a populous Place, and made a Seat of Pleasure by *Mary* Queen of *Hungary*, when she was Governess of these Countries, who had a fine Palace here; but it hath suffer'd much by the Wars, particularly in 1544. it was burnt by the *French*: And since that the *French* took it; but finding they must part with it, demolish'd the Fortifications before they surrender'd it, according to the Treaty of *Aix la Chapelle*, in 1668.

*S. Ghislain* stands about 8 miles W. from *Mons*, it is also a wall'd Town, but not remarkably strong. As is also

*Beaumont*, which stands 12 miles S. from *Bincbe*, and 10 E. from *Maubeuge*. It is a pleasant Town seated upon a Hill, as its name imports. It was anciently an Earldom belonging to the second Son of the Earl of *Hainault*. It was taken by the *French*, and granted to them by the Truce in 1684. as was also *Chimay*, 14 miles South from it.

## CHAP. V.

### The Country of CAMBRESIS, *Cameracensis Ager*.

THIS small Country is bounded on the N. and E. by the Province of *Hainault*, on the W. by that of *Artois*, and on the S. by *Picardy*, including about 18 miles from N. to S. and 25 from E. to W. and is extremely Fertile. Here was concluded a Treaty of Peace at *Chateau-Cambresis*, in the year 1559. between *Philip II.* King of *Spain*, and *Henry II.* King of *France*, which was very disadvantageous to the latter. 198 considerable places being resign'd up for *S. Quentin*, *Ham* and *Charleval*; however the present *French* King *Lewis XIV.* hath found means to get Possession of the whole Country, as well as of *Cambrai*, its Capital City; which were granted to him by the Treaty of *Nimeguen*.

The chief Towns are } *Cambrai*, Arch-bish. and Cap.  
these, viz. } *Chateau Cambresis*.  
              } *Crevecoeur*.

*CAMBRAY*, *Cameracum*, is seated on the River *Schelde*, on the Confines of *Artois*, at the distance of 15 miles from *Doway* to the S. 20 from *Arras* to the E. as many from *Peronne* to the N. 16 from *Valenciennes*, and 60 from *Brussels* to the S. It was heretofore an Episcopal See subject to the Archbishop of *Rheims*, but at length erected into a Metropolitan by Pope *Paul IV.* A. D. 1559. It was also some time an Imperial and Free City under the protection of the Count of *Alost*; but being afterward seiz'd by the Emperor *Charles V.* and Fortified with two Citadels, it fell into the hands of the *Spaniard*, and was united to the Earldom of *Hainault*. At length it was storm'd by the Forces of the present *French* King, on the 18th day of April, 1667. and surrender'd to him by the Articles of the Treaty of *Nimeguen*, in the year ensuing.

## CHAP. VI.

### The Dutchy of LUXEMBURG, *Luxemburgensis Ducatus*.

THIS Province is seated in the Lower Germany, and is bounded on the N. by part of the Bishoprick of *Liege* and the Dutchy of *Limburg*, on the S. by *Lorraine*, on the E. by the River *Moselle* and the Archbishoprick of *Triers*, and on the W. by the River *Meuse*, that parts it from *Champaign* and *Namur*. Its usual extent from S. to N. consists of about 70 miles, and from E. to W. 60 miles. It is by Geographers divided into two Parts, whereof that to the N. call'd *Famenne* is a Fertile Soil, yielding store of

Corn and some Wine; the other towards *France* and the *Maes*, call'd *Ardenne*, is Woody and less Fruitful, but abounds with Venison and Game of all sorts. Here are also some Mountains, in which are found Mines of Iron. The chief Rivers are the *Moselle*, *Else*, *Scmay*, and the *Ourte*. In the extent of this Dutchy are contain'd 20 large Wall'd Towns, and about 1200 Villages. The ancient Earls and Dukes of *Luxemburg* were Princes of great Honour and Interest; of these *Henry II.* obtained the Imperial Dignity;



Dignity ; in 1308. *John* his Son enjoy'd the Crown of *Bohemia* ; *Charles* the Son of *John* and *Wenceslaus* the Son of *Charles*, were successively Emperors: And finally *Sigismund* was Emperor, King of *Hungary* and *Bohemia*, as well as Duke of *Luxemburg*, about the year 1400. *Elizabeth* the Niece and Successor of *Sigismund* having no Issue, sold this Dutchy to *Philip* the Good, Duke of *Burgundy*, and so it came to the King of *Spain*, from whom all the Southern part of it has been wrested by the King of *France*, and Retained till the Peace of *Ryswick*, by which he was oblig'd to surrender the whole Dutchy, and the County of *Chin*. This Province is observed to have more Gentry and Nobility than any of the rest of these Countries. The chief Cities and Towns in it are,

<i>Luxemburg</i> , Cap.	<i>Tvoix</i> .	<i>Rode Macheren</i> .
<i>Troisville</i> .	<i>La Ferte</i> .	<i>Konings Macheren</i> .
<i>Montmedy</i> .	<i>Astenay</i> .	<i>Sirick</i> .
<i>Damvillers</i> .	<i>Morville</i> .	<i>Masieres</i> .

<i>Durby</i> .	<i>Viande</i> .	<i>Neufchatel</i> .
<i>La Roche en Ardenne</i> .	<i>Eichternach</i> .	<i>Virton</i> .
<i>S. Vit</i> .	<i>Bastogne</i> .	

**LUXEMBURGH**, *Luciburgum*, or *Luxemburgum*, is seated partly on a Rocky Hill, which is almost surrounded by the little River *Alfutz*, or *Else*, and partly on a Plain at the Bottom of the Hill, at the distance of 45 miles from the River *Maes* to the E. 12 from the *Moselle* to the W. 70 S. E. from *Namur*, 62 S. from *Liege*, 22 W. from *Triers*, and about 16 or 17 from the Frontiers of *Lorrain*. It is the old Town that stands in the Plain, which being commanded by the Hill, caused the building the new Town there, in which the Buildings are reasonably fair, and many of the Houses of Stone. It is a very strong Place ; for on one side the Hill is very steep and surrounded by the River, which is a good Defence ; and on the other it is Fortified with strong Bastions, Counter-guards, Half-Moons, Ravelins and Ditches, besides two cover'd Ways, and several Redoubts. Notwithstanding which, the *French* took it the 4th of *June*, 1684. after a Siege of 26 Days, and had it granted to them, together with its Dependences, in the succeeding Truce concluded the same Year, but was restored to the King of *Spain* in 1698. in pursuance of the

Treaty of *Ryswick*.

*Theonville* or *Diedenhoven*, *Theonvilla*, or *Theonifvilla*, stands on the Western Bank of the River *Moselle*, 15 miles S. from *Luxemburg* ; it is a good Town, and of old well Fortified by the Emperor *Charles* the Great ; but the *French* having taken it in 1558. when it was restored to the *Spaniards*, they added to its Fortifications 6 Bulwarks, 4 large Hornworks and other Strengths: However, the *French* found means to take it again, and had it granted to them by the *Pyrenean* Treaty ; as was also

*Montmedy*, a good strong Fortified Town, seated on a Hill near the River *Cber*, 34 miles from *Thionville* to the W. and about 20 from the River *Maes* to the E.

*Damvillers*, stands 12 miles S. from *Montmedy*, although it be a Town of good Strength, it was several times taken by the *French*, viz. in 1542. 1552. and 1637. and granted to them by the *Pyrenean* Treaty ; but afterwards, by that of *Aix la Chapelle*, it was dismantled.

*Arlon*, is seated on the River *Scmoy*, 13 miles from *Luxemburg* to the W. It was a neat and handsome Town, but hath suffer'd much in the Wars.

*Neufchatel*, or the New Castle, standing about 14 miles from *Arlon* to the W. was formerly a Place of great Strength and Beauty, but now not so considerable.

*Bastogne*, stands 20 miles N. from *Arlon*, and was heretofore a vast Market for Corn and Cattel.

*Eichternach* stands near the Frontiers of *Treves*, and 25 miles E. from *Arlon*. It is a small Town and not very considerable.

*Vianden* is seated upon the small River *Ourt*, 14 miles from *Eichternach* to the N. W. It is an ancient Earldom, belonging to the Illustrious Family of *Orange*.

*S. Vit*, 18 miles N. from *Viande*, is a neat handsome Town, giving Title to an Earldom, and enjoying a Jurisdiction over several Villages.

*Roche en Ardenne*, is seated on the River *Ourt*, 26 miles from *S. Vit* to the W. and 12 from *Bastogne* to the N. It is a pretty little Town with the Title of an Earldom also, and hath a Territory of several miles extent.

*Durby* is another small Town, seated on the same River *Ourt*, 10 miles N. from *Roche*, and likewise hath the Title of an Earldom.

## CHAP. VII.

### The Earldom of NAMUR, *Namurcensis Comitatus*.

**THIS** County is bounded on the N. by *Brabant*, on the W. by *Hainault*, on the S. by part of *Hainault* and of *Luxemburg*, and on the E. by part of *Luxemburg* and the Bishoprick of *Liege*. It is extended from W. to E. for the space of about 30 miles, and from N. to S. about 24 miles. There are found in it divers Mines of Iron and Lead, also many Quarries of Marble, and a sort of Stone call'd *Houle*, that serves for Fuel. In this Province are reckoned up 6 or 7 considerable Towns, together with 180 Burghs or Villages, and some fair Abbies, viz.

<i>Namur</i> , Bish. Cap.	<i>Bouvines</i> .	<i>Florennes</i> .
<i>Charlemont</i> .	<i>Walcourt</i> .	<i>Charleroy</i> .
<i>Tille-chateau</i> ,	<i>Bonaf</i> , Ab.	<i>Mal-Roy</i> .

**NAMUR**, *Namurcum*, the Capital City of the

Province, is seated at the confluence of the *Sambre* and the *Maes*, between 2 small Hills, at the distance of 24 miles from *Louvain* to the S. 30 from *Bruxels* to the S. E. 30 above *Liege* to the W. 18 from *Huy*, and 35 from *Mons* to the E. Pope *Paul* IV. establish'd therein an Episcopal See under the Metropolitan of *Cambray*, and the Church of *S. Albin*, was erected into a Cathedral in the year 1569. The Town is beautified with many other stately Churches, Monasteries and publick Edifices built of Stone. The greatest part of the City lies on the N. side the *Sambre*, and therein stands the Town-house, the Market-place and several Churches, but the chief Parochial Church stands on the other side, as doth the Castle: A fair Stone-Bridge over the *Sambre* joins these 2 parts, and from the latter is a Bridge also of Stone over the *Maes*. The Fortifications are very strong, having, besides the Wall and Ditches, Ravelins and a Counter-scarp



scarp well built and contrived according to the modern manner; and a Castle upon a Rocky Hill which is reckon'd the best in all the *Netherland*; notwithstanding which, the *French* took it on the 3d of July, 1692. But the Confederates regained it after a long and vigorous Siege, under the Conduct of his late Majesty King *William* in the year 1695.

*Bovines* or *Bevignes*, *Bovins*, *Boviniacum* or *Bovinium*, is situated on the W. side of the *Maes* below *Dinant*, and 10 miles beyond *Namur* to the S. This little Town was encompass'd with Walls in the year 1173. by the Order of *Henry*, firmam'd the Blind, Earl of *Namur*, being a Pais between *Luxemburg* and *Namur*; it suffer'd much by the Wars at several times, and was finally taken by the *French* in 1676. without making the least Resistance.

*Charlemont*, *Carolomontium*, stands on the top of an high Hill, the Foot whereof is water'd by the River *Maes*, being distant 18 miles from *Namur* to the S. It is a strong place, and was Fortified with divers regular Works, A. D. 1555. by the Emperor *Charles V.* to whom it was granted by a certain Bishop of *Liege*, and united to the Earldom of *Namur*.

*Walcourt* or *Valencourt* standing 20 miles S. W. from *Namur*, is a small Town, and not considerable, ex-

cept for the Battle fought near it in the year, 1689. between the *French* and Confederate Armies.

*Charleroy*, *Carolo-Regium*, is a strong Fortrefs, seated on an Hill near the *Sambre* on the Frontiers of *Hainault*, almost in the midst between *Namur* and *Mons*, at the distance of 14 miles from the first, and 20 from the latter; as also 24 from *Bruxels* to the S. The Town was built A. D. 1666. near a small Village named *Charney*, by the Marquis of *Castel-Rodrigo*, on purpose to hinder the Inroads of the *French* Garrisons betwixt the *Sambre* and the *Maes*, and was call'd *Charleroy* in honour of *Charles II.* the late King of *Spain*: However, it was taken by them in the year ensuing, and resign'd to their King *Lewis XIV.* by the Treaty of *Aix la Chapelle*, on the 2d. day of May, 1668. after which they employ'd great Diligence and Cost in repairing the Fortifications and adding new ones, whereby they made it exceeding strong, but were however oblig'd to restore it to the King of *Spain* at the Conclusion of the Peace of *Nimeguen*; but again in the late War they besieg'd it with a very numerous Army, and after 27 days Resistance the Garrison was fain to surrender on the 1st. of October, 1693. But it is now restored to the King of *Spain* in pursuance of the Treaty at *Ryswick*.

## C H A P. VIII.

### The Dutchy of LIMBURG, Limburgensis Ducatus.

THIS Dutchy hath that of *Fuliers* for its Bounds on the N. and East, the Bishoprick of *Liege* on the W. and a small part of *Luxemburg* on the S. It is extended from S. to N. for the space of 30 miles, and about 25 from W. to E. The Country brings forth good store of Wheat and Barly, and other Corn, also very good Pasture and several Medicinal Herbs. Here are also many Mines of Iron and Lead, and Pits of Coal.

The chief Towns are { *Limburg*, Cap.  
                  { *Dalem*, belonging to the *Hollanders*.  
                  { *Rolduc*.  
                  { *Franquemont* or *Valkenberg*.

LIMBURG, *Limburgum*, is advantageously situated on the Frontiers of the Bishoprick of *Liege*, near the Banks of the River *Wesdo*, being distant 20 miles from *Liege* to the E. 20 from *Maestrecht*, about 45 from the River *Rhine* to the W. and as many from the *Meselle* to the N. It is but a small Town, having only one Street, and that but ordinarily built; but is considerable on account of its situation on the edge of a high Rock, which, together with the Wall, Trench, and other Fortifications, made it exceeding strong. It was taken by the *Hollanders* in the year 1633. but the *Spaniards* recover'd it within a little while after; and in 1675. was besieged by the *French*, whom the Garrison very courageously resisted, but were forced however to surrender, and by them it

was dismantled before they restored it at the Treaty of *Nimeguen*.

*Dalem*, *Dalemum*, is a small Town with a Castle, water'd by a Rivulet that dischargeth it self into the *Maes*, and is distant 10 miles from *Liege* to the S. E. and 15 from *Limburg* to the N. W. It formerly enjoy'd the Title of an Earldom under its proper Counts or Earls, and had very large Territories within its Jurisdiction. But *Henry II* Duke of *Brabant* surpriz'd this Town, and united it to his Dominions. Afterward it depended on the Dutchy of *Limburg*, and at present is possess'd by the *Hollanders*, altho' the *French* took it from them in the year 1672, and ruin'd the Castle, together with the other Fortifications, before they could be made to abandon the place.

*Rolduc* or *s' Hertegen raidt*, is seated on the Borders of the Dutchy of *Fuliers*, about 12 miles E. from *Valkenberg*, and 24 from *Maestricht*. It is a neat little Town, and hath an old Castle for its defence.

*Valkenberg*, called by the *French* *Fauquemont*, is a large and neat Town belonging to the Dutch, seated on the River *Geuse*, at the distance of 10 miles from *Dalem* to the N. as many from *Maestricht* to the East; it was well Fortified, and had a strong Castle before the *French* took it in 1672, who added to its Works and made it much stronger; however, the Dutch retook it soon after, and have since demolished the Fortifications.

## C H A P. IX.

### The Bishoprick of LIEGE, Leodiensis Ditio.

THO' the Diocess of *Liege* be part of the Empire, and of the Circle of *Westphalia*; yet because of its situation in the midst of some of those Provinces,

that are always reckon'd part of the *Netherland*, some Geographers have plac'd its Description here, whose Example we shall follow.

This



This Country is bounded on the North by *Brabant*, on the West by part of *Brabant* and the County of *Namur*, on the South by the Dutchy of *Luxemburg*, and on the East by those of *Limburg* and *Fuliers*. Its Extent from South to North consists of about 70 miles, from W. to E. 25 miles; but in some parts it stretches out in a narrow Tract near 60 miles. The Air is temperate and healthful, and the Soil Fertile, bringing forth abundance of Grains, Fruits, Cattle and Venison. It also affords divers Mines of Iron and Lead, together with Quarries of Marble; but more-especially great quantities of Brimstone and Vitriol. The Bishop is Lord of all these Territories, and a Prince of the Empire, bearing also the Title of Duke of *Bouillon*, Marquis of *Franchimont*, and Earl of *Loth* and *Haslain*, which are particular Lordships in this Country. In the Bishoprick of *Liege* are compriz'd 53 Baronies, a great number of Abbies, 24 walled Towns, and above 1500 Villages. The most considerable whereof are,

{ <i>Liege</i> , Bish. Cap.	{ <i>Borch-leen</i> .
{ <i>Dinant</i> .	{ <i>S. Truden</i> .
{ <i>Bouillon</i> .	{ <i>Bilsen</i> .
{ <i>Spa</i> .	{ <i>Hasselt</i> .
{ <i>Franchimont</i> .	{ <i>Maeseyck</i> , &c.

*LIEGE* *Leodium*, or *Leodictum*, call'd *Luyck* by the Inhabitants, and *Luttyck* by the Germans, is seated on the W. side of the *Maes*, in a pleasant Valley water'd with the Rivers *Vesè*, *Ute* and *Ambluar*, that discharge themselves into the *Maes* a little before it enters into the Town, at the distance of 50 miles East from *Brussels*, 65 from *Cologne* to the West, and 12 from *Maestricht* to the S. It is an Imperial and Free City under the Protection of its proper Bishop, whose See was first establish'd at *Tongres*, then translated to *Maestricht*, and at last remov'd hither about the year 713. by *S. Hubert* the Successor of *S. Lambert* Martyr, before which it was a small Village only, but afterwards encreased daily, and in 1007. Bishop *Notger* caused it to be Wall'd, and at present it is a large and beautiful City; the Streets are spacious and well built; the River *Maes* runs through the Town in two Arms, and many smaller Streams, which, together with the *Legie* and the three Rivulets of *Ute*, *Vesè* and *Ambluar* (that take their Rise in the Forest of *Ardenne* and fall into the *Maes* here) Water almost every Street, and have many stately Bridges over them. The publick Buildings are very magnificent, the chief whereof are the Bishop's Palace and 8 Collegiate Churches, together with a great number of Abbies and other Religious Houses, besides the Cathedral Church, dedicated to *S. Lambert*, which is Famous for its Chapter, as being one of the most renowned in *Christendom*, consisting of Princes, Cardinals, and Persons of the highest Quality; neither is any one admitted therein, unless he be descended of a noble Family, or hath merited this Favour on the Account of his profound Learning. In *S. William's* Convent without the Gate, lies buried the Famous *English* Traveller *Sir John Mandevil*. Here is an University, formerly exceeding Famous, for the Persons of great Quality Students in it. Many King's Sons, besides Dukes and Lords, were frequently found here; nay, in 1131. there were no less than 23 King's Sons resident in this University at one time, as *Meibomius* relates. The City is fortified with a Citadel, Bulwarks and several Outworks, and is judged to be about 4 miles in compass. Besides the Churches above-mention'd, there are many others, even to the number of an hundred in all; which, as also the

Convents, are all so stately and well built, that this City is judg'd to outvie any in *Germany*. Among the Religious Houses there is a College of *English* Jesuits. In the year 1468, *Charles* Duke of *Burgundy* took and sack'd this City, and put the Inhabitants to the Sword, of whom, 'tis said, no less than 100000 were destroy'd by him. The *French* surpriz'd it in 1675. and demolish'd the Citadel, which hath been since repair'd, and new Fortifications added, especially in the year, 1693. upon Apprehensions of the *French* Designs against them.

*Tongres*, *Tungri*, or *Aduatica Tungrorum*, a very ancient Town, built on the Banks of the little River *Jecker*, 10 miles from *Liege* to the N. W. and as many from *Maestricht* to the W. It was anciently, even so early as the time of the *Romans*, a very considerable City, of whose Temples and other Buildings there still remain some Monuments. *S. Maternus*, who is said to have been *S. Peter's* Disciple, planted Christianity here, and erected an Episcopal See. After which it grew so large, that when *Attila* the Hun sack'd it, he destroy'd 100 Churches. Of later days it hath not been so very Eminent; for its See was translated to *Maestricht*, and thence to *Liege*, as hath been already said, whereby it declin'd, and is at present a good Town only. The *French* took possession of it in 1672. but quitted it when they had taken *Maestricht*.

*Huy* or *Hocy*, *Huam*, *Huyum* or *Huyonium*, was heretofore a Famous and potent City call'd *Benefactum*, but being afterward often ruin'd by the Incursions of the *Barbarians*, it lost both its Lordship and Name. It stands in the District of *Condrotz*, at the distance of 15 miles from *Liege* to the S. W. towards *Namur* on the E. side of the *Maes*, where the Brook *Huy*, from whence the Town takes its Name, runs into this River, that divides the Town into two parts, and over which is erected a fair Stone-Bridge now half demolish'd. It is defended with a very strong Castle, which was Founded on a high Hill by *Eberard* Cardinal of *March* and Bishop of *Liege*. The Country adjoining was, for some time, govern'd by certain particular Earls, until they resign'd their Right to the Bishop of *Liege*. There are many Iron Mines in the Neighbourhood, whence the Inhabitants of *Huy* have their chief Employment. The Town was taken by the *French* Forces, A. D. 1675. and its Fortifications were destroy'd in the ensuing year; but it being afterward restor'd to the Bishop of *Liege*. he caus'd the Works to be repair'd with much diligence, and render'd it a Place of tolerable Strength. However, the *French* took it in 1693. but the Confederates recover'd it the next year.

*Dinant*, *Dinantium*, *Dinandium* or *Dionantium*, is seated on the E. side of the *Maes*, in the Confines of the County of *Namur*; from the Capital City whereof it is distant 12 miles to the S. as also 7 from *Charlemont* to the N. half a League from *Bouvines*, and 36 miles from *Liege* to the S. W. This Town is a place of good Trade, and Fortified with a strong Castle built on a Rock, cut almost on all sides, but hath been often taken and regain'd during the Wars: It was taken by *Charles* Duke of *Burgundy* the same year as *Liege*, afterwards by the *French* in 1548. The *French* made themselves Masters of it in 1675. and raz'd the Citadel, but afterwards rebuilt it, and maintained a Garrison in the place, till by the Treaty of *Ryswick* they were oblig'd to restore it to the Prince of *Liege*.

*Bouillon* or *Bullogne*, is seated on the River *Semois*, 30 miles S. from *Dinant*, not above 8 or 10 from the Border; of *Champagne*, about 16 E. from the River *Mass*,



*Maes*, and 40 W. from *Luxemburg*. It is well guarded with a strong Castle, and with its small Territory adjoining gives the Title of Duke to the Bishop of *Liege*, which was also claim'd and assum'd by the Barons of *Sedan*. Of this place was that Famous *Godfrey* Duke, who was so celebrated through all Nations for his Courage and Bravery in the Conquest of *Jerusalem*, whereof he was the first Christian King.

*Franchimont*, formerly a considerable City, before *Charles* Duke of *Burgundy* destroy'd it; at present it is a good large Village only, and stands on the River *Thuse* 16 miles from *Liege* and 8 South-West from *Limburg*. This Town, with the adjacent Territory, gives the Title of a Marquis to the Bishop of *Liege*.

About 5 or 6 miles South from *Franchimont*, in a Valley encompass'd with Hills and high Mountains, stands the little Wall'd Town named

*Spa* or *Spaen*, much resorted to for the Famous Medicinal Waters that spring in and near the Town. Of these there are four several Springs; the strongest is that called *Gercusier*, which rises in a Wood on the South-side of the Town: Two other call'd *Sauvenir* and *Tomelet*, rise on the other side the Town; but the chiefest of all is that nam'd *Pobunt*, which springs in the Town, and is beautified with a handsome

Stone-work over it, built by the Bishop of *Liege*, who is Lord of the Town. From this last Fountain vast quantities of the Water is yearly sent out to all parts of *Europe*, besides what is drunk here. These Springs have procur'd the Town a general Protection, so that in the hottest Wars it has always escaped untouch'd.

*Borch-loen* or *Loots*, the chief Town of the Land of *Loon*, formerly govern'd by its own Lords, who had the Title of Counts of *Dioftein*, is seated 12 miles from *Liege* to the North-West; in it stands a Famous Collegiate Church dedicated to *S. Adolphus*.

*S. Truyen*, nam'd from a Monastery of *Benedictines*, dedicated to *S. Trudo*, call'd also by corruption *S. Tron* and *Centron*, is a good wall'd Town, distant 5 miles from *Borch-loen* to the West, and about 3 from *Landen* and *Lzeve* in *Brabant*.

*Bilsen*, a small Town, near which stands a Nunnery of Ladies of Quality, who do not vow perpetual Chastity, but are allow'd to leave their Cells and Marry; it is 6 miles distant from *Maastricht* to the West.

*Hasselt*, a well built and populous Town, is seated on the River *Demer* 8 miles from *Bilsen*, wherein the Bishop of *Liege* hath a noble Palace.

*Maeseyck*, stands on the *Maes*, 18 miles North from *Maastricht*.



## Of the United Netherlands.

## CHAP. X.



M A R E

G E R M A N I C U M



OF the Situation, Soil, Rivers, ancient State and History of these Provinces to the Time of their Subjection to the King of Spain, an Account hath been already given, in speaking of the

Netherlands in general: What remains, is to give the Reader some Idea of the Rise and Establishment of this Republick, known by the Name of *The States General of the United Netherlands*; before we proceed



to the Description of the Country. In order to which it is necessary to begin with the first occasions of their Defection from *Spain*, which were as follow.

The People of these Countries enjoyed large Privileges under the ancient Princes, who were content always to maintain 'em to them, because the smallness of their respective Dominions, made their greatest Strength consist in the Affections of their Subjects: But when, afterwards, all these Provinces became subject to one Prince, who had also large Dominions elsewhere, the People were treated with less Indulgence. *Charles V.* was the first of these, who, as he was King of *Spain*, and Emperor of *Germany*, as well as Duke of *Burgundy*, had different Interests from his Predecessors, and being engaged in a War with *France*, brought Foreign Forces from his other Dominions into the *Netherlands*, notwithstanding the Laws to the contrary; but being a Native of this Country, of a gentle and generous Nature, residing long in it, and making use of the Native Nobility in the Government, he was generally beloved, and his Actions gave no disgust.

But his Son *Philip*, being born in *Spain*, was of the Humour of that Nation, very Austere, and had also so much Affection for his Country-men, that he conferr'd upon them all the Offices of Honour and Authority in these Countries, to the great displeasure of the *Flemish* Nobility; and himself also resided in *Spain*, governing these States by a Deputy; continu'd the Foreign Forces on foot, though the War were at an end; and which most of all disquieted the People, declar'd himself very zealous for the Romish Religion; and therefore the Edicts against *Luther*, that had been made in his Father's time, but by the Indulgence of *Charles*, had not been executed here, *Philip* revives, and commands to be strictly executed; which was very grievous, because the number of the Protestant Party was large.

In the Year 1550. the Dutchess of *Parma*, the King's Sister, was made Governess of the *Netherlands*; she was a Person of great Wisdom and Goodness; but the chief Minister Cardinal *Grandvill*, whom the King appointed to assist her, was of an intolerable proud and cruel Nature, and though of an obscure mean Birth, so insolent to the Nobility, that what with that, and his cruel Prosecution by the Inquisition, which was now set on foot for the suppression of Protestantism, he became universally odious, and the Nobility refus'd to assist at the Councils while he sat at the Head of them: Wherefore the good Dutchess prevail'd upon the King to remove him, and moderate the Edicts about Religion.

But the Inquisition was soon after reviv'd, and notwithstanding the Dutchess's good Offices, the King commands all Hereticks to be put to Death, and many were Executed accordingly; which created Horror and Rage in the Minds of the People, and caus'd them to break out in open Mutinies, to oppose the Executions, and release the Prisoners that were condemn'd for Religion. Also several of the Nobility confederated together against the Inquisition; and a great number, headed by the Lord of *Bredersde*, boldly Petition'd the Governess for abolishing it: To which she gave a calm Answer, and representing the Matter kindly to the King, prevail'd upon him to grant their Request; but the Favour being long delay'd, the People were dissatisfied, and at length broke out into open Rebellion, and committed

many outrageous Actions; but were soon pacified by the Dutchess, and the publick Peace once more restor'd. But the King was still resolv'd to suppress this Heresie, (as he call'd it) and punish these mutinous Subjects; and therefore sent his Favourite the Duke of *Alva*, in the year 1567. into the *Netherlands*, with an Army of 10000 *Spanish* and *Italian* Soldiers, to assist the Dutchess in the execution of his Commands: Upon whose arrival, the People were in general so discontented, that great numbers of the Richer sort retir'd out of the Provinces; and the Dutchess foreseeing the Evils that were approaching, desir'd leave of the King to resign the Government; which was soon granted, and that Charge, with greater Power than usual, conferr'd on the Duke of *Alva*: Who immediately set himself to work to quell the Disorders, but by a different method than what had been used by the prudent Dutchess; for whereas she by mildness had pacified the People and brought them to Reason, he resolv'd by Rigor to force them to submit: And first of all, without regard to the Laws of the Land, he erected a new Court of Judicature, for Trying those that had been concerned in the late Insurrections; and many were Condemn'd and Executed thereupon. The Inquisition was set to work anew, and executed with greater Rigor than before; and many other things transacted that were contrary to the Liberties of the People, the Privileges of the Towns, and the known Laws of the Country: Which though the Nobility and People were exceedingly incens'd at, the Governor was not at all concern'd, but resolv'd to pursue his own Methods, and break the Strength of the discontented Party; which he thought he could not effectually do, without cutting off their Heads; the chief whereof were the Prince of *Orange*, Count *Egmont*, and Count *Horn*.

The Prince of *Orange* was a Person of great Interest, by the large Possessions he was Master of; and by reason of his great Wisdom and Goodness, was beloved by all, as he had particularly been by the Emperor *Charles V.* who made him Governor of *Holland*.

Count *Egmont* was a great Soldier, and had enjoyed the highest Places of Honour and Trust in *Flanders*, and was also exceedingly beloved by the People; as was likewise Count *Horn*, who had a large Estate in *Brabant*.

These three the Duke of *Alva* was resolv'd to take off; and accordingly the two latter were seized and imprison'd, and after some Months time Tried and Executed for being accessory to the late Insurrection, though they had been highly instrumental in suppressing it. But the Prince of *Orange*, having in time retir'd into *Germany*, sav'd his Life, though with the loss of his Estate, for that was seized as forfeited to the King. These Arbitrary and cruel Proceedings of *Alva* enraged the People to the highest degree, and made them resolve Revenge; and in order to it, great numbers flock'd to the Prince of *Orange* as their Head, who with them, and such other Forces as he could raise, invaded the Provinces. But the *Spanish* Army was too powerful, so that the Prince was forced to return without effecting any thing. And *Alva*, glorying in his good Fortune, insolently caus'd his own Statue to be erected, with two Figures, representing the Estates of the *Low-Countries*, under his Feet; and demanded of the States larger Supplies for the Army than they could grant: Who petition'd the King thereupon, but without Redress; and persisting in their Refusal, *d'Alva* published an

Edict



Edict without their Consent, for Levying the Money he demanded; and upon the People's refusing to pay it, caus'd the Soldiers to take it by force, and commanded thole to be hang'd upon the Sign-posts that had refus'd to pay; but was interrupted in his career by the arrival of News from *Holland*, That the *Briel* was seiz'd by the *Guefes*: These were the Protestants, to whom the Papists had given that Name in Contempt, and who, to avoid the Rigor of the Inquisition, and *d'Alva's* Government, had fled, some into the Woods and Fastnesses, and others to Sea, where they liv'd upon Spoil, &c. These being grown strong by the additions of some of the remains of the Prince of *Orange's* Army, landed in *Holland*, and seiz'd the *Briel*; which was follow'd by the Revolt of most of the Towns of *Holland* and *Zealand*; and the Prince of *Orange* coming soon after out of *Germany* with new Forces, became so formidable, that the King found it absolutely necessary to remove the Duke of *Alva*, whose violent Proceedings had rais'd such a Spirit of Hatred, not only of him, but of the whole *Spanish* Interest, that without very prudent and cautious management, there was little hopes of ever bringing these Provinces to Obedience. After *d'Alva's* departure, *Requisenes* had the Government for a little time; but he dying, the Administration fell of course to the Council, till a new Governor came. *Don John* of *Austria* was appointed to succeed; but before he could arrive, the People grew mutinous, and oblig'd the Council to assemble the States, who being met at *Ghent* in the Year 1576. agreed upon the Act, call'd *The Pacification of Ghent*; the Substance whereof was, That all Foreign Soldiers be expell'd, the ancient Forms of Government restor'd, and Matters of Religion referr'd to the States of each Province: But the Foreigners refus'd to depart, and were therefore declar'd Rebels; in revenge whereof they plunder'd several Towns, particularly *Antwerp*. And when *Don John* arriv'd, the Estates refus'd to admit him till he had confirm'd the Pacification of *Ghent*; but he shortly after renounc'd it, and seizing the Castle of *Namur*, gave new occasions for a Breach: And immediately both Parties prepar'd for War. The Provinces call'd the Prince of *Orange* to *Brussels*, and made him Protector of *Brabant*; and the *Spaniards* drew their Armies together in *Namur* and *Luxemburg*; but *Don John* dying suddenly, and a new Party being risen among the Confederates, little was done till the Union of *Utrecht*.

The UNION of *UTRECHT*, from which the Original of this Common-wealth must be dated, was a firm Alliance agreed upon in the Year 1579. by the Seven Northern Provinces of the *Netherlands*, and Sign'd at the City of *Utrecht*: By which they united themselves, so as never to be divided, reserving however to each Province, all its former Rights, Laws and Customs. All the Provinces bound themselves to assist one another against all Enemies whatsoever, to carry on all Wars, and maintain all Frontier Towns at their united Expence; and by a joint Council of the Representatives of all the Provinces, transact all Affairs relating to the Union.

But this new-erected State found it self too weak to resist the valiant Duke of *Parma*, the Successor of *Don John*; who, tho' when he came to the Government, had only the Provinces of *Namur* and *Luxemburg*, free from the Confederacy, yet by his own Conduct and Valour, and the Strength of the Army he got together, was powerful enough in a little

time to reduce the Confederates to such extreme distress, that in the Term of *Poor and Distressed States*, they implor'd the Assistance of our Queen *Elizabeth*, offering her the Sovereignty of their State, if she would afford them Protection. The Queen refus'd the Dominion, but lent them Money and Soldiers, in the Year 1585. upon the Security of the *Briel*, *Flushing* and *Rammekins*, which they put into her Hands: And in 1587. sent over more Forces under the Earl of *Leicester*, whom the States swore Obedience to, and admitted as their Governor: But his Government lasted not long, for some Differences arising between him and the States, the Queen recall'd him, but continu'd her former Assistance to the *Dutch*; who, after *Leicester's* departure, chose Prince *Maurice*, Son to the late Prince *William* of *Orange* (who was Assassinated at *Delft* by a *Spaniard*) for their Governor, who prov'd one of the greatest Captains of the Age, in wise Conduct, admirable Discipline, and excellent manner of Fortifying; which with the Diversion that Queen *Elizabeth* gave the *Spaniards* in her famous War with them, did so restore the Affairs of this State, that the valiant Duke of *Parma* dying, King *Philip* found it necessary to think of Peace; which the States were very little solicitous of. For not only were their Forces under Prince *Maurice* successful enough, but their Subjects had found the way to the *East-Indies*, and began to supplant the *Portuguese*, and make *Holland* the European Staple for the Commodities of those Countries; and were powerful enough at Sea to threaten the *Spanish* Plate Fleets and *West-Indian* Dominions; so that while the *Spaniard*, by the management of the Arch-Duke *Albert*, now Governor of the *Netherlands*, carry'd on the War at great Expence, in hopes of making the States ask a Peace, he found that the underhand Overtures he made them were but coldly receiv'd, and that they refus'd to grant a Cessation of Arms, or to be treated with upon any other Terms than as a FREE STATE, which he was at last forc'd to comply with: And,

In the Year 1609. a Truce was concluded for 12 Years; by which the Provinces were declar'd Free, both Parties allow'd the full Enjoyment of all that they then possess'd, and free Commerce establish'd betwixt them.

And thus this War of 48 Years continuance ended with the total Alienation of 7 Provinces from the *Spanish* Dominions, and the Erection of a State, which though it rose from such poor beginning, and struggl'd with the most Potent Prince of *Europe*, has grown to be one of the most Powerful, Rich, Well-planted and Populous of *Europe*.

*Of the Government of the United Netherlands in general, and of Holland in particular.*

THE Supreme Authority is the Assembly of the Representatives of the Seven Provinces, call'd, *The Assembly of the States General*; which consists of seven Voices, one for each Province, to whom belongs the power of making War or Peace, receiving and dispatching of Ambassadors, taking care of Frontier Towns, and assigning the Sums to be Levy'd for the Defence and Service of the Union. Assistant to these, there are the Council of State, and the Council of the Admiralty. The first is compos'd of 12 Persons, (whereof *Guelderland* sends 2, *Holland* 3, *Zealand* 2, *Utrecht* 2, *Friesland* 1, *Overissel* 1, and *Groningen* 1) who previously deliberate the Matters to be brought before



before the States General, form the State of Expence for the succeeding Year, and propose the ways of Levying it, &c. Assistant to this Council is the Chamber of Accounts, compos'd of two Deputies from each Province, who audit the publick Accounts, and dispose the Finances. The Council of the Admiralty, when the States order the fitting out a Fleet, have the care of it, and the ordering of all Marine Affairs; Sub-ordinate to which are the five Colleges in *Holland*, *Zealand*, and *Friezland*, who execute the Orders they receive from this Council.

The Resolutions of the States General, when they concern Peace or War, Foreign Alliances, or raising Money, are never made but by the Agreement of every Province; nor must the Provinces conclude without the Agreement of every City; so that when such a matter comes before the States, they separate, each Member returning to his respective Province, where in the Assembly of every Provincial State the Matter is propos'd, with which the Deputies return to their Principals the Cities, for their Consent; which makes the Resolutions very tedious and liable to Interruption, by the Interest an opposite Party may make in any one of the Cities; which hath sometimes happen'd, particularly in the case of the Relief of *Luxemburg*, when the City of *Amsterdam* dissenting, hinder'd the raising the 16000 Men propos'd to save that Place, which was, for want of this Relief, taken by the *French* in 1684.

By which, the Reader will see, That though the States General represent the Sovereignty, the Power is diffus'd, and rests indeed in the several Cities that send Deputies to the States of the Province; for every Province is a distinct State, as are also all the Cities, in matters that concern themselves only. As a Specimen of the whole, we shall instance the City of *Amsterdam*, and the Province of *Holland*.

The Sovereignty of *Amsterdam* is lodg'd in the Council or Senate, which is compos'd of 36 Persons, who serve for Life, and upon the Death of one, the rest chuse another of the Burghers to supply his place. This Council chuses the Magistrates and Officers, and the Deputy which represents the City in the Provincial State; (so that the People have no share in Elections) and also make Laws for the Government of the City, and levy the Taxes for the publick Service of the City in particular, and its Quota for the Union in general: By its Magistrates (which are Burgomasters equal to our Lord-Mayor, Schepens, or Judges, and Schout, or Sheriff, the City executes an independent Government, judges all Causes Civil and Criminal, and inflicts Punishments, even to Death, without the Cognizance of any other Power whatsoever. The like Authority is found in all the Cities, but with some little Variation, not needful here to be mention'd.

The Provincial State of *Holland* is compos'd of the Deputies of the Nobility, and the Cities, which make Nineteen Voices, whereof the Nobles have One, and these Cities, viz. *Dort*, *Harlem*, *Delft*, *Leyden*, *Amsterdam*, *Goude*, *Rotterdam*, *Gorcum*, *Scheidam*, *Schonehoven*, *Briel*, *Alcmarr*, *Harn*, *Enchuyssen*, *Edam*, *Monnickdam*, *Medenblick* and *Purmeren*, One a piece, which make the other Eighteen Voices; which, as we have already said, must all concur in the making of any new Alliance, declaring War and making Peace, &c. These assemble at the *Hague*, as do also the States General and the Council of State.

The States of the other Provinces are much the same, only that the Nobility in some of them being

more numerous, have a greater share; and in *Utrecht* the Deputies of the Clergy have Session; and in *Friezland* and *Groningen*, besides the Towns, the Lands divided into Bailiages, send Deputies to the States.

The Prince of *Orange* was the Person that represented the Dignity of this State, by his splendid Court, publick Guards, &c. He was Captain General and Lord High-Admiral, and thereby disposed of all Military and Marine Commands. He was Stadtholder of five of the seven Provinces; (for Prince *Cassimer* of *Nassaw*, is Stadtholder of *Friezland* and *Groningen*) and had the Nomination of Magistrates of the Cities out of a double number presented to him: He pardon'd the Penalties of Crimes, and had Session in the Council of State; and though he did not sit in the Assembly of States General, yet did they not resolve any important Matter without his Advice. He had also great influence in several of the Provincial States, by the large portion of Lands he was Owner of, whereby he had many Voices in Electing the Deputies of the Nobles. He was exceeding Rich, as well by the vast Patrimonial Estate descend'd to him from his Ancestors, among which are many Sovereign Principalities and Lordships, as by the large Revenues belonging to his several Charges and Commands. All which were possess'd by his most Excellent Majesty *William* King of Great-Britain, &c. Whose Ancestors that have enjoy'd the same Dignity in this State, are these, viz.

I. *William* of *Nassaw*, Prince of *Orange*, who was Governor of *Holland* and *Zealand*, under *Charles V.* and *Philip II.* and by his excellent Wisdom, Goodness and Courage, acquir'd the greatest Esteem and Authority imaginable among the People; and was therefore the Person to whom they apply'd themselves for Relief from the Oppressions of the Duke of *Alva*, &c. as we have already shewn. He was Assassinated at *Delft* in *Holland* by a Spanish Soldier, in the Year 1584.

II. *Maurice* of *Nassaw*, Prince of *Orange*, and Son of *William*, by whose wise Conduct the Confederacy (which he found Poor and Distressed) was rais'd to a very powerful State, and acknowledg'd Free by the King of *Spain*. He died A. D. 1625, and was succeeded by his Half Brother.

III. *Henry Frederick*, a Prince of great Valour, Prudence and Fortune: He died in the Year 1647.

IV. *William* his Son succeeded, who Marry'd the Princess *Mary*, eldest Daughter to King *Charles I.* of *England*, and died A. 1650, without Issue born, leaving his Princess then with Child of His late Majesty; which gave the *Louvestein* Faction an opportunity to endeavour to suppress the Authority and Office of Stadtholder, and which they did keep vacant till 1674, when the People having suffer'd a thousand Miseries by the hands of the barbarous *French*, forc'd the Magistrates to retract that Instrument they had Sworn to, and fondly call'd a *Perpetual Edict*, whereby the Office of Stadtholder was to be for ever suppress'd: I say, the People impatient of the Evils they endur'd for want of a Valiant Captain to head their Armies, oblig'd the Magistrates to restore the Prince to the Dignity of his Ancestors.

V. *William Henry* of *Nassaw*, Prince of *Orange*, Son to *William* and *Mary* above-mention'd, was Born November 6. 1650, eight Days after his Father's Death; liv'd privately till the Year 1674, when he was



was restored to the Saththoldership of *Holland, Zealand, Guelderland and Zutphen, Utrecht and Overysse*, which by the States of each of those Provinces was confirm'd to him and his Heirs for ever. In 1677 he Married *Mary our Late Queen of Blessed Memory*; and in 1688. Succeeded in the Throne of *England*, and was King of *Great Britain, France and Ireland*.

The Seven United Provinces are,  
GUELDERLAND, with ZUTPHEN,  
HOLLAND.  
ZEALAND.  
UTRECHT.  
FRIEZLAND.  
OVERYSSEL.  
GRONINGEN.

Chief Cities,  
{ *Arnheim.*  
{ *Zutphen.*  
*Amsterdam.*  
*Middleburgh.*  
*Utrecht,*  
*Francker,*  
*Deventer.*  
*Groningen.*

CHAP. XI.

The Province of HOLLAND and West FRIEZLAND,  
*Hollandia & Westfrisia.*

THE first Inhabitants of this Province of *Holland*, were the *Batavi*, a Branch of the Nation of the *Catti*, a People of *Germany*; but how far their Territory extended, is Disputed. It is said in general in Ancient Authors, that *Batavia* was included between the *Mars* and the *Rhine*; but whether it be to be understood of the old Channel of the *Rhine* which pass'es by *Utrecht* and *Leyden*, or the Channel of *Drusus*, which turn'd a great part of that River into the *Iffel*, is the question in Dispute. If the latter, not only this Province, but those of *Utrecht* and *Gelderland*, must have belonged to them. But however it be, all Parties grant, that at least all the South part of *Holland*, as far as *Leyden*, together with the *Betuwe*, (now part of *Geldre, Nimeguen* the chief City thereof being by some said to have been their Metropolis, was the Seat of the ancient and famous Nation of the *Batavians*, so often mention'd by *Tacitus* and other ancient Writers. As for the Northern part, there is good reason to believe that it was formerly contiguous with *Friezland*, or at least inhabited by that Nation.

The modern name of *Holland* was undoubtedly given it by the *Danes*; who very much infesting these Coasts with their Pyracies in the IXth. Century, had this Province, with the Islands lying South of it, given them by *Leithius* the Third, Son of *Lewis* the Godly, (to whose share this part of the Empire of his Grandfather *Charles the Magnificent* was allotted) and by them nam'd *Zealand* and *Holland* from the two parts of their own Country so denominated. 'Tis true, some Etymologists will have it, that the name of *Holland* was given it *q. d. Hollow-land*, from the lowness of the Country: But since the Story of the *Danes* planting themselves here is undisputed, the former account is much the more rational.

The Original of its Barldom is already mention'd in the general account before the description of the *Spanish Netherlands*, together with its falling into the Family of *Burgundy*, and by Succession to the King of *Spain*; and of its Revolt from him we have been just speaking; as also of its present State.

The present Bounds of this Province (including *West Friezland*, or *North Holland*, which in all publick Acts is mention'd apart) are the *German Ocean* on the West, the *Zuyderzee* on the North, the same Sea with the Province of *Utrecht* and the *Betawe* on the East, and *Brabant* and *Zealand* on the South. It is seated between the 51st. deg. 40 min. and 53.

deg. of Latitude, and 23. deg. 10. min. 24. deg. 20. min. Long. containing in its utmost extent, from North to South, 80 English miles, and from East to West about 25 but in some places above 40. The Soil is low and marshy; but by the Industry of the Inhabitants in draining out the Water by their artificial Channels, it is made to yield very good Pasture, and some Corn; but chiefly the former, for Food to their vast Herds of Kine, from which they receive the almost sole product of the Country, Butter and Cheese. The Air is thick and moist, by the Fogs arising out of the vast number of Channels and Lakes all over the Country, which makes the Inhabitants in many parts of it very subject to Agues, which would be yet much worse if it were not purg'd by the Easterly Winds, which coming over the long dry Continent of *Germany*, purifie the Air, and cause sharp Frosts during the Months of *January* and *February*, by which the Earth is dried, and the Vermine, which the moistness of the Land produces in great quantities, destroyed. The whole Province is divided into two great Parts, North and South; which are again Subdivided thus, *viz.*

NORTH, containing	West Friezland, the chief Towns whereof are,	{ <i>Horn,</i> <i>Enchusen,</i> <i>Medenblick.</i>
	North Holland strictly taken, divided into,	{ <i>The Islands Texel, Vlie, &amp; Schellingt.</i> <i>Eadam,</i> <i>Munickdam,</i> <i>Purmerent.</i>
	Waterland.	{ <i>Alcmar,</i> <i>Harlem,</i> <i>Beverwyck.</i>
	Kenemerland.	{ <i>Amsteland.</i> <i>Amsterdam, Capital.</i>
SOUTH	Goyland.	{ <i>Narden,</i> <i>Muyden,</i> <i>Wesep.</i>
	Rynland.	{ <i>Leyden,</i> <i>Hoerden,</i> <i>Oudewater,</i> <i>Delft,</i> <i>The Hague,</i> <i>Henstaerdick,</i> <i>Miesland Sluys,</i> <i>Vlardingem,</i> <i>Delfs Haven.</i>
	Delfland.	{ <i>Rotterdam,</i> <i>Goude.</i>
	Schieland.	{ <i>Rotterdam,</i> <i>Goude.</i>

X

SOUTH



S O U T H, containing	{	The Bailiwick of Dord, &c.	Dordrecht,
			Guerruydenburg,
			Willemsstadt,
			Klundert,
			Heusden,
			Crovetour,
			Louvenstein,
			Gorcum,
			Worcum,
			Schoonloster,
			Nieuport,
			Vianen,
			Tje Steen.
			Monfort.
			The Land of Veer. Briel.
			The Islands of { Gzee, Ch. Town, Gzee
			Overflackee. Smerdyke.

**AMSTERDAM**, *Amstelredamum*, the chief City not only of *Holland*, but of all the United *Netherlands*, is seated on a small River named *Amstel*, that runs through the Town and falls into an Arm of the Sea, call'd the *Z* (and by abbreviation of the Dutch Article *Het*, & *Z*), which makes a large Haven wherein continually lye vast numbers of Merchants Ships. The City is distant about 30 miles from *Rotterdam* to the North, 20 from *Horn*, and 30 from *Medinblick* to the South, 12 from *Harlem*, and 13 from the Sea-shoar to the East, and about 25 from *Utrecht* to the North-west. It is but of modern Structure, being not mention'd in History before the year, 1297. nor then, but as a small Fisher-town only. *De Witt* hath publish'd Maps of its several Conditions, whereof the first shews it in the Year 1342, a small Town on the East side only of *Amstel*, with one Street in the middle, and 5 or 6 cross ones; which before 1400. was encreas'd to as much more on the other side the River; by 1432. it was again encreas'd on both sides and surrounded with strong Walls; in 1557. being grown populous, and beginning to be the chief Seat of Trade of this new erected State, it was much enlarged, as it was again in 1612. And again a fifth time in the year 1636. a very large space of Ground (great part whereof is not yet built) was taken in and the Walls built anew of Brick, and the Gates of Stone, with a large Ditch all round, which new Addition hath made it a large Semi-circle deriv'd from the River *Z*. It is an exceeding populous, rich and well-traded City, very well built and very nearly kept; the Streets are very large with Canals of Water in them, over which are a very great number of Stone-bridges. The Houses are all built of Brick or Stone, in good repair, and very beautiful, especially those in the newest part of the Town, where the Streets called the *Heer*, *Konings* and *Keyfers Grachten*, or Lords, Kings and Emperors Channels, are fill'd with magnificent Houses, many of them of Free-stone, adorn'd with Columns and Chapters according to the Corinthian Architecture. The principal publick Buildings are the Old, the New, the Western and the Southern Churches, the *Stadhuse*, the Exchange, the Hospitals, the Magazine of the Navy, that of the *East-India* Company's Shipping, and the Sluces; All which we cannot omit giving as particular a description of as our room will admit. 1. The old Church is a Majestick Building of Stone according to the Gothick Order, with a fair Steeple of great height; the Church was begun to be Built in 1360: but the Steeple not finish'd till 1566. 2. The New Church, so call'd in distinction from the former, was founded about the year 1414 but being burnt in 1645. was repair'd,

and is at present a handsome Structure; a Tower was design'd to it of exceeding Height, and a foundation laid accordingly upon 1334 Piles driven into the Ground for that purpose, which was not long after ever found strong enough for the building; but was carried up above 50 or 60 foot. In the Painted Windows of this Church is represented the Liberty of this City to the Emperor *Maximilian*, in presenting him with a large Sum of Money when he was in it, and his Generosity in bestowing an Imperial Crown for a Crest to its Arms. Also in this Church is to be seen the sumptuous Monument of *Admiral Ruyter*, who was kill'd at *Medun*; a Schreiner of the Chancel of cast Brass, which being kept burning, looks very beautifully; and an Organ supported by rich Marble Pillars of extraordinary Workmanship for its numbers of Pipes and Melodious Combination of Humane Voices. 3. The Western Church is a handsome Pile, and hath a beautiful Tower with a large Imperial Crown of Copper on the top of it, which is reckon'd 260 feet from the Ground. 4. The South Church hath also a handsome Steeple, 135 feet high. The other Churches are less remarkable. 5. The *Stadhuse* or Guild Hall, is a very magnificent Structure, all of Free-stone, adorn'd with Pillars, Chapters, Corniches and Carvings according to the Corinthian Architecture; it is a square Building of 252 foot broad, 135 foot deep, and 116 foot high; of which height the Ground-rooms (which are the Offices belonging to the Bank and the Patrons, with some smaller Offices) take up above 20 foot, and the first and second Stories about 30 foot each; and over the middle of the Front (which is somewhat more advanced than the rest of the Work, above the Corniche, rises a Pediment, the Face whereof is of Marble, with a *Basso Relievo* of curious Carving, and on the top and each side of it stand three very large Statues of Brass, and just behind a handsome Tower, which is a Pavillion supported by Pillars, where hang a great number of Bells that compose very musical Chimes. The back face hath also a Pediment with a *Basso Relievo*, on the Top of which stands a very late Elizabethan Statue of *Charles*, with a Globe of Copper on his Back. Within the House is the Gallery and the scales of the Offices are adorn'd with ingenious Carvings in Marble, and the Chambers with Marble Floors, and curious Paintings on the Ceilings and Chimney peices. In this House the Senate of the City hold the *r* Assemblies, the Burghmaster and Causes as well Criminal as Civil are Try'd, the great Bank is kept, and in general all publick Business transacted. This Building was begun in the year 1600 but not finish'd in many years; indeed not yet entirely, for the Ceilings of the Gallery are design'd to be painted, and the Walls faced with Marble. 6. The Exchange is a handsome Structure of Brick with Pillars of Stone all along the Walks, built after the model of our old Royal Exchange before it burnt, and is at least as large. 7. The Hospitals here are many and large; above 300 poor Children are constantly maintain'd with Lodging, Diet and Cloath. 8. The Read and Write at the publick Charge, in the *Wierd-luis*, *Weeyd-luis*, and *Diacon-luis*, three large Hospitals, so call'd; besides which, there is a large House wherein above 300 decrepid old Women are lodg'd and fed; these are all of modern Foundation, and maintain'd partly by the voluntary Charities collected by the Deacons, and partly by certain small Taxes, such as a Penny upon every Person that pass through the Gate after Candle light, half the Money receiv'd at the Play-house, &c. and the rest supplied



out of the publick Revenue. But another Hospital, call'd the old Man's House, wherein 150 old Men and Women are maintained, was formerly a Monastery, the Rents whereof are assign'd for its support: In this House a poor Traveller may have Lodging and Diet for three days gratis. Here is also an Hospital for the Sick, another for Madmen, another for Fools, and a Pest-house.

The Magazine is a handfom large Building of Brick, standing on the Water-side, in the North-east part of the Town; it is three Angles of a Square, in the middle whereof is a Yard for building Ships of War, the Front is 220 and the Wings 200 foot long. In the several Chambers of it are laid up the Rigging of the Men of War belonging to this City, with Stores of Cordage, Arms, &c. all kept in very good order: This Magazine was built in 1655. Not far Eastward from hence is another stately Magazine belonging to the *East-India* Company; it is one Range of Brick Building, behind which is a large Yard with Docks for building Ships, and Shops of Anchor-Smiths, and all other Artificers belonging to Ship-building, particularly a very long Rope-yard: This House serves to lay up their Stores of Shipping, and also for Ware-houses for those Goods that they have not room for in their other Ware-houses; which with their House stands in the middle of the City.

The *Sluces* are Works of prodigious Expence and Art, and worth a Traveller's notice. Formerly the City was frequently damaged by the overflowing of the Water, which, upon the blowing of a North-east Wind, was driven out of the *Zuyder Zee* and *'t* with that violence into the Canals in the Streets, that the Water overflowing, not only run into their Cellars, but even rose to the first Floor of their Houses that stood in the lower parts of the Town; to prevent which, the Magistrates, not many years since caused these Sluces to be made at the mouth of every one of the four Channels that open to the *'t*: These are strong solid Brick-works of 10 or 12 foot thick, rais'd from the bottom of the River to the Surface of the Ground, and built cross the Channels, leaving only convenient places for the passage of Ships, which are again shut up with very strong Flood-gates, able at all times to resist the force of the Water, and secure the Inhabitants from being injured. Here are other publick Buildings worth a Stranger's View, such as the *Ramp-houfe* where Rogues are Imprison'd and kept to hard Labour, as raising Brazil-wood, &c. for 3 4 7. 10 years, or their whole Lives, according to the heinousness of the Crime; the Spin-house, where Whores are kept in like manner to Spinning &c. the East and West-*India* Company's Houses; the Jews Synagogue a noble Building indeed; the beautiful Stone bridge cross the *Amstel*, where it enters the Town; and the Walls all round the Town, which are exceeding near, and well built with Brick, and secure the City from surprize, as the marshiness of the Soil all round does from a formal Siege: The Gates, which are 5 in number, are all built of Stone, and in the Bridge from each of them over the Ditch are 2 Draw-bridges and a Watch-house, wherein, as well as in the Gates, continual Watch is kept by Soldiers maintain'd for that purpose, besides every night a company of the Train'd Bands of the City. And for their security from the Water-side, there are two rows of Pails all along before the Town, with narrow Gaps only at convenient places, for the passage of Ships, which are every night shut up by a Boom laid cross and lock'd. The Wealth and Trade of this City is exceeding great, the number of Shipping lying before the Pails in the Winter-time, when

their *East-land* and other Fleets are in, is not to be computed, their Masts seeming like a great Forest, so thick they stand. The Ground here is Sand which the Water soaks through, and not only hinder them making the Cellars deep, but also obliges the Builders to drive a great number of Piles into the Ground, before they can lay the Foundations of the Houses. Here is no fresh Water, but what they save in Cisterns when it Rains; for though the *Amstel* be good Water, the *'t* is a branch of the Sea, and mixing with it makes it brackish for several miles above the Town.

The Supreme Authority in the City is lodg'd in the Senate, which consists of 36 Persons chosen originally by the People. but at present by themselves, and continue for Life. These chuse the four *Burgomasters*, who are the chief Magistrates; and the nine *Schepens*, who are the Judges of Civil and Criminal Causes; and the *Scout* or Sheriff who hath the care of bringing Criminals to Justice, and executing the Law. But it is necessary to note, That the Senate have not the absolute choice of the *Schepens*, for they return a double number to the *Stadholder*, who chuses those of them he pleases. The *Burgomasters* keep the Keys of the Treasury of the City, and of the great Bank lodg'd here and kept in the Cellars under the *Stadhuys*, which without doubt is a vast Mass of Treasure, but whether so great as it's Credit, is not to be known, since none are permitted to see it; nor hath there ever been but once an occasion to try its Strength, viz. in 1673. when the French having overrun the Country, some People distrust'd the safety of their Money and call'd it out of the Bank, which the Treasurers readily paying, gave satisfaction to the rest, and it hath still remain'd there, tho transfer'd every day from one to another by Bills and Accounts, without ever telling the Money or any one desiring to see it. The compass of *Amsterdam* within the Walls, is reckon'd about 6 miles, but a large part of it is yet unbuilt; the number of Houses is about 25, or as some affirm 28000. The Number of Inhabitants may be guess'd at by the Burials. which in the year 1685, were 6245. according to the publick Account set up in the *Stadhuys*. *Amsterdam* is seated in the Latitude of 52 deg. 28 min. Longit. 24. 2.

*HARLEM*, *Harlemum*, stands about 10 miles West from *Amsterdam*, not above 4 East from the Sea, about 20 North from *Leyden*, and as many South from *Alemer*; it is a large populous and pleasant City; the Buildings are all of Brick, neat, convenient, and in good repair, the Streets large and even, and in some them are Canals as at *Amsterdam*. It is a place of good Trade, which consists in Thread and Tape, Linnen-Cloath and wrought Silks; also Bleaching of Linnen, for which the Water is so fit, that most of the Inhabitants of *Amsterdam* and other neighbouring places, bring their Linnen here to be Wash'd, being curious in its whiteness. This City was made a Bishop's See in 1559. but that Dignity was soon after suppress'd. The Cathedral was dedicated to *S. Bavo*, but is now only call'd the great Church; it is a strong, spacious and beautiful Building. The *Stadhuys* is a handfom old Structure, as is the *Shambels* or *Flesh-market*. The Walls are strong and the Ditch broad, but the Town is commanded by the Neighbouring Sand-hills. The Art of PRINTING is said to have been invented here by one *Lawrence Coster*, who walking in the neighbouring Wood for his diversion, fell to whirling little Sticks, and at length form'd a Letter upon one of 'em, which pressing upon his Hand first,



and afterwards with Ink upon Paper, found it made a legible Impression; which accidental hint, being an ingenious Man, he improv'd and had brought the Art to some perfection, when a Roguish Servant that he employ'd in it, stole his Implements and run away to *Mentz*, where he set up for the Inventor. They of *Mentz* deny this, and affirm, That a Citizen of theirs, *Joan Fauij* by name, was the sole Inventor. The *Harlemers* have many great and learned Men on their side in this Dispute; however, the first printed Books extant having been publish'd at *Mentz*, carries over many to the other Party: But wheresoever it was Invented, this ingenious Art appeared first in the World about the year 1430, or 1440. The *Harlemers* brag also of great Exploits done by their Townsmen who went to the Holy War with *Godfrey of Bolloigne*, particularly the cutting of the Chains that shut up the Haven of the City *Damiata* in *Egypt*, which (according to the Tradition among them) was perform'd by great Saws fasten'd to the Keels of their Ships; in memory whereof the Boys yearly carry little Ships about the Streets; to which purpose they say also are the three Ships that hang up in the great Church. The Siege of this City by the *Spaniards* in the year 1573. was very remarkable, for it continued 7 Months; during which time the Assaults were as violent, and the Resistance as obstinate as has been known, and the Defendants were reduc'd to such a Necessity, that they eat Grass, Leather, and such vile things for their Subsistence. They still shew a mark in the great Church where a Cannon Bullet lodg'd.

Just without the Walls there is a pleasant Wood, wherein the Citizens divert themselves; and a little to the Southward a great Lake call'd the *Harlemer Meer*, which begins near *Amsterdam*, and reaches almost as far as *Leyden*. From the small River *Sparen* which runs through the Town, a Channel was cut in the year 1657. to *Leyden*, whereby the Passage between these Cities hath been much facilitated.

*LEYDEN*, *Lugdunum Batavorum*, also *Leyda*, is esteem'd the pleasantest City in *Holland*; the Buildings being beautiful, the Streets large, the Channels commodious, but chiefly the rows of fine tall Trees in every Street, render them exceedingly agreeable; but then, for want of a good Current of Water, the Canals are apt to stink in Summer. This is an ancient City, and tho formerly but small, hath by several Enlargements been made to exceed any in *Holland*, except *Amsterdam* and *Rotterdam*. The principal publick Buildings, are, the Church of *S. Peter*, a handſom Pile, and had formerly a very high Tower, but it fell down in the year 1512. The Churches of *S. Pancratius* and *S. Mary*; and the new Church, of circular Form and very beautiful; the Hospitals of *S. Katherine* and *S. Elizabeth*, as also those of *S. James* and *S. Barbara*, for the Entertainment of decrepid aged and sick People, which are well endow'd and carefully kept. Here is also a large Hospital for the maintenance of poor Orphans, whereof there are reckon'd to be no less than 700 in it. The Town-house is a noble large Structure. The Burg, a noble piece of Antiquity, said to have been built by the *Romans*, for the Defence of the Town, but stands now in the middle of it, and an Ornament only, is a strong Fortification built of Stone in a round form, very high, the Ascent to it being of 50 Steps, and the Wall about it 21 foot high. In the year 1575 the Prince and States founded an University here, which is become the most famous of these Countries. The Schools is an ancient Building, handſom enough, but not exceeding beautiful;

adjoining to it is the Physick-Garden, which is well stor'd with rare Plants; near the Garden stands a Gallery in which are kept many Curiosities of Nature; also in the Theatre of Anatomy are to be seen many such Rarities, besides Skeletons and Dissections. The Professors have annual Stipends, and make a good profit by their Pupils; but the Students have no Endowments, except some Privileges. They are very numerous, and are a great advantage to the Town. Here is also a large Trade maintained by the making of Woollen-Cloaths. The small branch of the *Rhine*, which retains its name, passes through this City, and is the chief Channel in it. *Leyden* was Besieg'd by the *Spaniards* in 1574. and very well defended by the Citizens for five Months, at the end of which it was reliev'd. It is fortified with good Walls besides Ramparts, Bulwarks and large Ditches, and stands at the distance of 20 miles from *Harlem* to the South, 22 from *Amsterdam* to the South-west, 15 from *Rotterdam* to the North, and 27 from *Utrecht* to the West.

The *HAGUE*, call'd in Dutch, 's *Gravenhage*, (that is, *The Grave of the Earl*) in Latin *Hagæ Comitatus*, is seated about 8 or 9 miles from *Leyden* to the South-west, about 6 from *Delft* to the North-east, 14 from *Rotterdam* to the North west, and not above 2 miles from the little Sea-Town *Schieding*. It glories in being the principal Village of *Europe*, for it is not wall'd, tho otherwise in all respects a City; being govern'd by its own Magistrates, and enjoying all the other Privileges, except sending Deputies to the States, as any City in *Holland* does. It is the Seat of the Princes, and the Assemblies of the States General, of the Provincial States of *Holland*, and of the Council of State; as also the Supreme Courts of Judicature; and is in general the place where all the publick Affairs of the Common-wealth are transacted; where all the Foreign Ministers receive their Audience, and commonly reside: All which causes a continual Concourse of People from all Parts, and very much enriches the Town, which is a neat built place: The Streets are large and adorn'd with Trees; the Houses are all of Brick and very handſom; those that stand near the Court, and in that part of the Town toward the Wood, are very stately, and Inhabited by Persons of Quality. The Palace, containing the Prince's Lodgings, the Chambers of the States General and Provincial, Council of State, &c. is a handſom Building, making two Angles of a Square, in the middle whereof stands a fair large Hall, not unlike that of *Westminster* in form, and in respect to the Shops in it all round, as also for the Standards taken from the Enemies, hanging up in it. but far short of it in largeness, being not so big as the *Guild-hall* of *London*. Adjoining to the Court stands a very noble House of Stone, built by Prince *Maurice* of *Nassau*, and bears his Name: The whole Court is more round, and Guards continually kept at every Gate: On the North-side is a large square Pond call'd the *Vier*, and on the West the Court opens to a large Plain, that is surrounded with fine Hedges. The Town is large and very populous. The great Church is a stately old Building. That of a round Figure, without any Pillars, is a neat beautiful Structure, and not of many years standing: The Town-house is built of Stone, but old and not very remarkable.

The Situation of this Town is very pleasant; for on one side lye lovely Meadows; and on the other a large and pleasant Wood, in the middle whereof stands a House of Pleasure of the Prince's having



having behind it very beautiful Gardens, and in it, besides the stately Lodgings, a very large dancing Room with a high Roof, rising into a Cupola, and at the top of it a Lanthorn, in which is a Gallery for Musick: The Walls and Cielings all round adorned with Paintings of the best Masters, representing the Actions of *Henry Fredrick* (the Father of his late Majesty) by whose Widow this House was built. On the North-side of the Town lies a Walk, paved all the way with Bricks, and shaded by Lime-Trees, planted on each side for 2 Miles in length, which leads to the little Village *Schievling*; from whence his late Majesty King *Charles* took Shipping to his Glorious and Happy Restauration.

About 12 or 14 miles South from the *Hague* stands *Hounslaerdyke*, where is a stately Palace of the Prince's, adorn'd with very fine Gardens; to which he often retired, when the Affairs of the State did not require his presence at the *Hague*. And in the midway between the *Hague* and *Delft* stands the Village of *Ryswick*, and near it the Palace of His late Majesty, which has been render'd Famous, by being the Place of Treaty of the Peace in 1697. It was some time call'd *Newburgh-house*, because a Duke of *Newburgh* laid the Foundation; but his Highness *Fredrick-Henry*, Prince of *Orange*, built it. It is a handsom Structure, and adorn'd with good Gardens.

**DELFT**, *Delphi* or *Delfsum*, is pleasantly seated among Meadows, at a distance of 5 or 6 miles from the *Hague* to the South-east, and about 8 from *Rotterdam* to the North-west, and is a very neat and well-built City, the Streets large and even, with Canals and Trees, as have most of the Cities of *Holland*: It is a silent Town, and inhabited by wealthy Merchants that have retired from Business. The Trade of the Place is chiefly for a sort of Earthen Ware, in imitation of *China*: They had formerly a great Trade in Brewing, as also in Weaving Cloth; but that is remov'd. This City being one of the Chambers of the *East-India Company*, the fine Goods of those Countries, especially Porcellane or China Earthen Ware, is a main Trade of the Inhabitants. The Old and the New Churches are large and fair Buildings; in the latter is to be seen a noble Monument, erected to the Memory of *William I.* Prince of *Orange*, who was barbarously assassinated in this City. The Stadthouse is a handsom Building. Here is kept the Arsenal of the State, which undoubtedly is well stor'd with all War-like Necessaries: The Magazine of Powder belonging to it accidentally blew up in 1654. and destroy'd a great part of the Town; besides which, it had been almost totally consumed by Fire in 1536. so that the present Buildings are but of late Structure: It is a good large City, wall'd and moted, and well inhabited.

**ROTTERDAM**, *Roterodamum*, may be reckon'd the second City of *Holland* for Trade, tho' it be but the seventh in the Convention of the States: It is seated on the North-side of the River *Maes* (which is there very broad, and makes a good Haven) at the distance of about 7 Leagues from the Sea, and 5 from the *Brill* to the East, 8 miles from *Delft* to the South-east, about 30 from *Amsterdam* to the South, near as many from *Utrecht* to the South-west, and about 15 from *Dort* to the West. It is a large, exceeding Populous and well-traded City: The convenience of the Haven is very extraordinary, for by the Canals that run through the Streets, Ships of great Burden can come in and unlade at the Merchants Doors; which, with certain Privileges they

enjoy here, hath made it very much increase, even within 20 or 30 years past. The number of English Ships that use this City is much greater than those that come to *Amsterdam*, this Port being exceedingly more convenient for them than that: An Exchange is held here, where every Day the Merchants meet; the Structure of it is but ordinary, and doth not deserve a Description; but the great Church, dedicated to *S. Lawrence*, is a stately Building, and hath a high Tower, wherein hang very melodious Chimes; the Stadthouse is a fair Structure of Stone, and the great Stone-bridge in the Market-place is very spacious and neat; on it stands a stately Statue of Bräis, of the Famous *Desid. Erasmus*, a Native of that City, and near the great Church is still to be seen the House wherein he was born, with his Picture, and an Inscription in *Latin*, *Spanish* and *Dutch*, over the Door, intimating so much. The Houses here are of Brick, but seem older than those of the other Towns we have named; the Streets are also broad and well paved, but by reason of the multiplicity of Business (for every Canal is full of Ships) cannot be so neatly kept as at *Amsterdam*, (where the Ships lye without the Town) and other places, where less Business is transacted.

The *Brill* is a neat City, well built, reasonably populous, and of some Trade; it is seated on an Island, nam'd *The Land of Voorn*, and hath a convenient Haven at the Mouth of the *Maes*, about 5 leagues below *Rotterdam*, and 30 leagues from *Harwich* in *England*, whence the *Pacquet-boat* uses to come weekly hither; but the Port of *Helvoet* being found more convenient, they come not hither now. The Buildings here likewise are of Brick, and tho' old are very neat, and the Streets large and handsome, especially the great one: The great Church is of Stone, and hath a large Tower which is a good Landmark to Sailers. The Walls are strong, and made very pleasant by Rows of Trees planted on them. This was one of the Cautionary Towns pawn'd to Queen *Elizabeth*, for the Assistance she gave the *Dutch* against *Spain*, and was kept by an *English* Garrison till King *James I.* restor'd it, 30 years after.

*Helvoet Sluys*, is a small Sea-Town, with a very convenient Haven, seated on the South-side of the same Island, and not above 3 miles distant from the *Brill*. The Town is not at all considerable, except for the weekly Arrival of the *English* Packquet-boat, and that His late Majesty set Sail from hence, to his happy Expedition into *England*, in the year 1688.

Not above a League Southward of the *Land of Voorn*, lies the small Island *Goree*, so nam'd from *goed* and *Reed*, which signifie a good Haven for Ships; its chief Town, of the same Name, was formerly a Place of great Trade, but is now not at all considerable.

Eastward from *Goree* lies the Island of *Overslackee*, or *Overlackee*, which is of much larger extent than that of *Goree*, being about 15 miles long and 5 miles broad; and hath on it many Villages and good Towns, the chief of which is named *Somerdyck*.

**DORT**, or *Dordrecht*, *Dordrecht*, is a very ancient City, and the first in Dignity of those that compose the States of *Holland*; also the Capital of a small Country round it, call'd the *Bailiwick of Dort*, and by some *South-Holland*, is seated upon the River *Meruwe* (which, as we have said, falls into the *Maes*) at the distance of 15 or 16 miles from *Rotterdam* to the South-east, about 20 from *Breda* to the North, and 40 from *Amsterdam* to the South. It is strongly situated,



is seated on a small River named *Amstel*, that runs through the Town and falls into an Arm of the Sea, call'd the *Z* (and by abbreviation of the Dutch *Amstel* & *Heer*, & *T*.) which makes a large Haven, wherein commonly 100000 numbers of Merchants Ships. The City is distant about 30 miles from *Rotterdam* to the North, 20 from *Herrn*, and 30 from *Medemblick* to the South, 12 from *Harlem*, and 15 from the Sea-shoar to the East, and about 25 from *Utrecht* to the North-west. It is but of modern Structure, being not mention'd in History before the year, 1270. nor then, but as a small Fisher-town only. Dr *Hist* hath publish'd Maps of its several Conditions, whereof the first shows it in the Year 1342, a small Town on the East side only of *Amstel*, with one Street in the middle, and 5 or 6 cross ones; which before 1400. was encreas'd to as much more on the other side the River, by 1432. it was again encreas'd on both sides and surrounded with strong Walls; in 1557. being grown populous, and beginning to be the chief Seat of Trade of this new erected State, it was much enlarged, as it was again in 1612. And again a fifth time in the year 1656. a very large space of Ground (great part whereof is not yet built) was taken in and the Walls built anew of Brick, and the Gates of Stone, with a large Ditch all round, which new Addition hath made it a large Semi-circle deriv'd from the River *Z*. It is an exceeding populous, rich and well-traded City, very well built and very nearly kept; the Streets are very large with Canals of Water in them, over which are a very great number of Stone-bridges. The Houses are all built of Brick or Stone, in good repair, and very beautiful, especially those in the newest part of the Town, where the Streets call'd the *Heer*, *Konings* and *Keyzers Grachten*, or Lords, Kings and Emperors Channels, are fill'd with magnificent Houses, many of them of Free-stone, adorn'd with Columns and Chapters according to the Corinthian Architecture. The principal publick Buildings are the Old, the New, the Western and the Southern Churches, the *Stadthuse*, the Exchange, the Hospitals, the Magazine of the Navy, that of the *East-India* Company's Shipping, and the Sluces; All which we cannot omit giving as particular a description of as our room will admit. 1. The old Church is a Majestick Building of Stone according to the Gothick Order, with a fair Steeple of great height; the Church was begun to be Built in 1360: but the Steeple not finish'd till 1566. 2. The New Church, so call'd in distinction from the former, was founded about the year 1414. but being burnt in 1645. was repair'd,

which is recken'd 200 foot from the Ground. 3. The South Church hath also a beautiful Steeple, of 137 foot high. The other Churches are less remarkable. 4. The *Stadthuse* or *Gold Hall* is a very magnificent Structure, all of Free-stone, adorn'd with Pillars, Chapters, Corniches and Carvings according to the Corinthian Architecture; it is a square Building of 252 foot broad, 235 foot deep, and 116 foot high; of which height, the Ground-rooms (which are the Offices belonging to the Bank, and the Prisons, with some smaller Offices, take up above 20 foot, and the first and second Stories about 30 foot each; and over the middle of the Front which is somewhat more advanced than the rest of the Work, above the Cornish, rises a Pedement, the Face whereof is of Marble with a *Busto Relievo* of curious Carving, and on the top and each side of it stand three very large Statues of Brasse, and just behind a badsom Tower, (being a Pavillion supported by Pillars, wherein hang a great number of Bells that compose very musical Chimes. The back face hath also the Pediment with *Busto Relievo*, on the Top whereof stands a very large brazen Statue of *Atlas*, with a Globe of Copper on his Back. Within the House, the Gallery and Door-ways of the Offices are adorn'd with ingenious Carvings in Marble, and the Chambers with Marble Floors, and curious Paintings on the Cielings and Chimney peices: In this House the Senate of the City hold their Assemblies, the Burgomasters meet, Causes as well Criminal as Civil are Try'd, the great Bank is kept, and in general all publick Buinesses transacted. This Building was begun in the year 1645. but not finish'd in many years; indeed not yet entirely, for the Cielings of the Gallery are design'd to be painted, and the Walls faced with Marble. 6 The Exchange is a handsome Structure of Brick, with Pillars of Stone all along the Walks, built after the model of our old Royal Exchange before the Fire, and is at least as Large. 7. The Hospitals here are many and large; above 300 poor Children are constantly maintain'd with Lodging, Diet and Cloaths, taught to Read and Write at the publick Charge, in the *Almshouses*, *Wees-hys*, and *Diacony-hys*, three large Hospitals, so call'd; besides which, there is a large House wherein above 300 decrepid old Women are lodg'd and fed; these are all of modern Foundation, and maintain'd partly by the voluntary Charities collected by the Deacons, and partly by certain little Taxes, such as a Penny upon every Person that pass's through the Gate after Candle light, half the Money receiv'd at the Play-house, &c. and the rest supplied



Docks for building Ships, and Shops of Anchor-Smiths, and all other Art's belonging to Ship-building particularly a very long Rope-yard. This House serves to lay up their Stores of Shipping, and also for Ware-houses for those Goods that they have not room for in their other Ware-houses; which with their House stands in the middle of the City.

The *Sluices* are Works of prodigious Expence and Art, and worth a Traveller's notice. Formerly the City was frequently damaged by the overflowing of the Water, which, upon the blowing of a North-east Wind, was driven out of the *Zuyder Zee* and 't' *Y* with that violence into the Canals in the Streets, that the Water overflowing, not only run into their Cellars, but even rose to the first Floor of their Houses that stood in the lower parts of the Town; to prevent which, the Magistrates, not many years since caused these *Sluices* to be made at the mouth of every one of the four Channels that open to the 't' *Y*: These are strong solid Brick-works of 10 or 12 foot thick, rais'd from the bottom of the River to the Surface of the Ground, and built cross the Channels, leaving only convenient places for the passage of Ships, which are again shut up with very strong Flood-gates, able at all times to resist the force of the Water, and secure the Inhabitants from being injured them. Here are other publick Buildings worth a Stranger's View, such as the Ratp house where Rogues are Imprison'd and kept to hard Labour, as raising Brazil-wood, &c. for 3 4 7. 10 years, or their whole Lives, according to the heinousness of the Crime; the Spin-house, where Whores are kept in like manner to Spinning &c. the East and West-India Company's Houses; the Jews Synagogue a noble Building indeed; the beautiful Stone bridge cross the *Amstel*, where it enters the Town; and the Walls all round the Town, which are exceeding neat, and well built with Brick, and secure the City from surprize, as the marshiness of the Soil all round does form a formal Siege: The Gates, which are 5 in number, are all built of Stone, and in the Bridge from each of them over the Ditch are 2 Draw-bridges and a Watch-house, wherein, as well as in the Gates, continual Watch is kept by Soldiers maintain'd for that purpose, besides every night a company of the Train'd Bands of the City. And for their security from the Water-side, there are two rows of Pails all along before the Town, with narrow Gaps only at convenient places, for the passage of Ships, which are every night shut up by a Boom laid cross and lock'd. The Wealth and Trade of this City is exceeding great, the number of Shipping lying before the Pails in the Winter-time, when

ing Criminals to Justice, and executing the Law. But it is necessary to note. That the Senate have not the absolute choice of the *Schepens*, for they return a double number to the *Stadtholder*, who chooses those of them he pleases. The Burrough-masters keep the Keys of the Treasury of the City, and of the great Bank lodged here and kept in the Cellars under the *Stadhuis*, which without doubt is a vast Mass of Treasure, but whether so great as it's Credit, is not to be known, since none are permitted to see it; nor hath there ever been but once an occasion to try its Strength, viz. in 1673. when the French having overrun the Country, some People distrust'd the safety of their Money and call'd it out of the Bank, which the Treasurers readily paying, gave satisfaction to the rest, and it hath still remain'd there, tho transfer'd every day from one to another by Bills and Accounts, without ever telling the Money or any one desiring to see it. The compass of *Amsterdam* within the Walls, is reckon'd about 6 miles, but a large part of it is yet unbuilt; the number of Houses is about 25, or as some affirm 28000. The Number of Inhabitants may be guess'd at by the Burials. which in the year 1685, were 6245, according to the publick Account set up in the *Stadthuys*. *Amsterdam* is seated in the Latitude of 52 deg. 28 min. Longit. 24. 2.

*HARLEM, Harlemum*, stands about 10 miles West from *Amsterdam*, not above 4 East from the Sea, about 20 North from *Leyden*, and as many South from *Alcmar*; it is a large populous and pleasant City; the Buildings are all of Brick, neat, convenient, and in good repair, the Streets large and even, and in some them are Canals as at *Amsterdam*. It is a place of good Trade, which consists in Thread and Tape, Linnen-Cloath and wrought Silks; also Bleaching of Linnen, for which the Water is so fit, that most of the Inhabitants of *Amsterdam* and other neighbouring places, bring their Linnen here to be Wash'd, being curious in its whiteness. This City was made a Bishop's See in 1559. but that Dignity was soon after suppress'd. The Cathedral was dedicated to *S. Bavo*, but is now only call'd the great Church; it is a strong, spacious and beautiful Building. The *Stadhuis* is a handsom old Structure, as is the Shambels or Flesh-market. The Walls are strong and the Ditch broad, but the Town is commanded by the Neighbouring Sand-hills. The Art of PRINTING is said to have been invented here by one *Lawrence Coster*, who walking in the neighbouring Wood for his diversion, fell to whittling little Sticks, and at length form'd a Letter upon one of 'em. which pressing upon his Hand first,



and afterwards with Ink upon Paper, found it made a legible Impression; which accidental hint, being an ingenious Man, he improv'd and had brought the Art to some perfection, when a Roguish Servant that he employ'd in it, stole his Implements and run away to *Mentz*, where he set up for the Inventor. They of *Mentz* deny this, and affirm, That a Citizen of theirs, *Joh. Faust* by name, was the sole Inventor. The *Harlemers* have many great and learned Men on their side in this Dispute; however, the first printed Books extant having been publish'd at *Mentz*, carries over many to the other Party. But wheresoever it was Invented, this ingenious Art appeared first in the World about the year 1430, or 1440. The *Harlemers* brag also of great Exploits done by their Townsmen who went to the Holy War with *Godfrey* of *Bollogne*, particularly the cutting of the Chains that shut up the Haven of the City *Damietta* in *Egypt*, which (according to the Tradition among them) was perform'd by great Saws fasten'd to the Keels of their Ships; in memory whereof the Boys yearly carry little Ships about the Streets; to which purpose they say also are the three Ships that hang up in the great Church. The Siege of this City by the *Spaniards* in the year 1573. was very remarkable, for it continued 7 Months; during which time the Assaults were as violent, and the Resistance as obstinate as has been known, and the Defendants were reduc'd to such a Necessity, that they eat Grass, Leather, and such vile things for their Subsistence. They still shew a mark in the great Church where a Cannon Bullet lodg'd.

Just without the Walls there is a pleasant Wood, wherein the Citizens divert themselves; and a little to the Southward a great Lake call'd the *Harlemer Meer*, which begins near *Amsterdam*, and reaches almost as far as *Leyden*. From the small River *Sparren* which runs through the Town, a Channel was cut in the year 1657. to *Leyden*, whereby the Passage between these Cities hath been much facilitated.

**LEYDEN**, *Lugdunum Batavorum*, also *Leyda*, is esteem'd the pleasantest City in *Holland*; the Buildings being beautiful, the Streets large, the Channels commodious, but chiefly the rows of fine tall Trees in every Street, render them exceedingly agreeable; but then, for want of a good Current of Water, the Canals are apt to stink in Summer. This is an ancient City, and tho formerly but small, hath by several Enlargements been made to exceed any in *Holland*, except *Amsterdam* and *Rotterdam*. The principal publick Buildings, are, the Church of *S. Peter*, a handsom Pile, and had formerly a very high Tower, but it fell down in the year 1512. The Churches of *S. Pancratius* and *S. Mary*; and the new Church, of circular Form and very beautiful; the Hospitals of *S. Katherine* and *S. Elizabeth*, as also those of *S. James* and *S. Barbara*, for the Entertainment of decrepid aged and sick People, which are well endow'd and carefully kept. Here is also a large Hospital for the maintenance of poor Orphans, whereof there are reckon'd to be no less than 700 in it. The Town-house is a noble large Structure. The Burg, a noble piece of Antiquity, said to have been built by the *Romans*, for the Defence of the Town, but stands now in the middle of it, and an Ornament only, is a strong Fortification built of Stone in a round form, very high, the Ascent to it being of 50 Steps, and the Wall about it 21 foot high. In the year 1575 the Prince and States founded an University here, which is become the most famous of these Countries. The Schools is an ancient Building, handsom enough, but not exceeding beautiful;

adjoining to it is the Physick-Garden, which is well stor'd with rare Plants; near the Garden stands a Gallery in which are kept many Curiosities of Nature; also in the Theatre of Anatomy are to be seen many such Rarities, besides Skeletons and Dissections. The Professors have annual Stipends, and make a good profit by their Pupils; but the Students have no Endowments, except some Privileges. They are very numerous, and are a great advantage to the Town. Here is also a large Trade maintained by the making of Woollen-Cloaths. The small branch of the *Rhine*, which retains its name, passes through this City, and is the chief Channel in it. *Leyden* was Besieg'd by the *Spaniards* in 1574. and very well defended by the Citizens for five Months, at the end of which it was reliev'd. It is fortified with good Walls besides Ramparts, Bulwarks and large Ditches, and stands at the distance of 20 miles from *Harlem* to the South, 22 from *Amsterdam* to the South-west, 15 from *Rotterdam* to the North, and 27 from *Utrecht* to the West.

The **HAGUE**, call'd in Dutch, *'sGravenhague*, (that is, *The Grave of the Earl*) in Latin *Hagæ Comitatus*, is seated about 8 or 9 miles from *Leyden* to the South-west, about 6 from *Delft* to the North-east, 14 from *Rotterdam* to the North-west, and not above 2 miles from the little Sea-Town *Schiedam*. It glories in being the principal Village of *Europe*, for it is not wall'd, tho otherwise in all respects a City; being govern'd by its own Magistrates, and enjoying all the other Privileges, except sending Deputies to the States, as any City in *Holland* does. It is the Seat of the Princes, and the Assemblies of the States General, of the Provincial States of *Holland*, and of the Council of State; as also the Supreme Courts of Judicature; and is in general the place where all the publick Affairs of the Common-wealth are transacted; where all the Foreign Ministers receive their Audience, and commonly reside: All which causes a continual Concourse of People from all Parts, and very much enriches the Town, which is a neat built place: The Streets are large and adorn'd with Trees; the Houses are all of Brick and very handsom; those that stand near the Court, and in that part of the Town toward the Wood, are very stately, and Inhabited by Persons of Quality. The Palace, containing the Prince's Lodgings, the Chambers of the States General and Provincial, Council of State, &c. is a handsom Building, making two Angles of a Square, in the middle whereof stands a fair large Hall, not unlike that of *Westminster* in form, and in respect to the Shops in it all round, as also for the Standards taken from the Enemies, hanging up in it, but far short of it in largeness, being not so big as the *Guild-hall* of *London*. Adjoining to the Court stands a very noble House of Stone, built by Prince *Maurice* of *Nassau*, and bears his Name: The whole Court is moored round, and Guards continually kept at every Gate: On the North-side is a large square Pond call'd the *Iiver*, and on the West the Court opens to a large Plain, that is surrounded with fine Houses. The Town is large and very populous. The great Church is a stately old Building. That of a round Figure, without any Pillars, is a neat beautiful Structure, and not of many years standing: The Town-house is built of Stone, but old and not very remarkable.

The Situation of this Town is very pleasant; for on one side lye lovely Meadows; and on the other a large and pleasant Wood, in the middle whereof stands a House of Pleasure of the Prince's having



having behind it very beautiful Gardens, and in it, besides the stately Lodgings, a very large dancing Room with a high Roof, rising into a Cupola, and at the top of it a Lanthorn, in which is a Gallery for Musick: The Walls and Cielings all round adorned with Paintings of the best Masters, representing the Actions of *Henry Fredrick* (the Father of his late Majesty) by whose Widow this House was built. On the North-side of the Town lies a Walk, paved all the way with Bricks, and shaded by Lime-Trees, planted on each side for 2 Miles in length, which leads to the little Village *Schievling*; from whence his late Majesty King *Charles* took Shipping to his Glorious and Happy Restauration.

About 12 or 14 miles South from the *Hague* stands *Houfflaerdike*, where is a stately Palace of the Prince's, adorn'd with very fine Gardens; to which he often retired, when the Affairs of the State did not require his presence at the *Hague*. And in the midway between the *Hague* and *Delft* stands the Village of *Ryswick*, and near it the Palace of His late Majesty, which has been render'd Famous, by being the Place of Treaty of the Peace in 1697. It was some time call'd *Newburgh-house*, because a Duke of *Newburgh* laid the Foundation; but his Highness *Fredrick-Henry*, Prince of *Orange*, built it. It is a handsom Structure, and adorn'd with good Gardens.

**DELFT**, *Delphi* or *Delfium*, is pleasantly situated among Meadows, at a distance of 5 or 6 miles from the *Hague* to the South east, and about 8 from *Rotterdam* to the North-west, and is a very neat and well-built City, the Streets large and even, with Canals and Trees, as have most of the Cities of *Holland*: It is a silent Town, and inhabited by wealthy Merchants that have retired from Business. The Trade of the Place is chiefly for a sort of Earthen Ware, in imitation of *China*: They had formerly a great Trade in Brewing, as also in Weaving Cloth; but that is remov'd. This City being one of the Chambers of the *East-India Company*, the fine Goods of those Countries, especially Porcellane or China Earthen Ware, is a main Trade of the Inhabitants. The Old and the New Churches are large and fair Buildings; in the latter is to be seen a noble Monument, erected to the Memory of *William I.* Prince of *Orange*, who was barbarously assassinated in this City. The Stadthouse is a handsom Building. Here is kept the Arsenal of the State, which undoubtedly is well stor'd with all War-like Necessaries: The Magazine of Powder belonging to it accidentally blew up in 1654. and destroy'd a great part of the Town; besides which, it had been almost totally consumed by Fire in 1536. so that the present Buildings are but of late Structure: It is a good large City, wall'd and moated, and well inhabited.

**ROTTERDAM**, *Roterodamum*, may be reckon'd the second City of *Holland* for Trade, tho' it be but the seventh in the Convention of the States: It is seated on the North-side of the River *Maes* (which is there very broad, and makes a good Haven) at the distance of about 7 Leagues from the Sea, and 5 from the *Brill* to the East, 8 miles from *Delft* to the South-east, about 30 from *Amsterdam* to the South, near as many from *Utrecht* to the South-west, and about 15 from *Dort* to the West. It is a large, exceeding Populous and well-traded City: The convenience of the Haven is very extraordinary, for by the Canals that run through the Streets, Ships of great Burden can come in and unlade at the Merchants Doors; which, with certain Privileges they

enjoy here, hath made it very much increase, even within 20 or 30 years past. The number of English Ships that use this City is much greater than those that come to *Amsterdam*, this Port being exceedingly more convenient for them than that: An Exchange is held here, where every Day the Merchants meet; the Structure of it is but ordinary, and doth not deserve a Description; but the great Church, dedicated to *S. Lawrence*, is a stately Building, and hath a high Tower, wherein hang very melodious Chimes; the Stadthouse is a fair Structure of Stone, and the great Stone-bridge in the Market-place is very spacious and neat; on it stands a stately Statue of Brass, of the Famous *Desid. Erasmus*, a Native of that City, and near the great Church is still to be seen the House wherein he was born, with his Picture, and an Inscription in *Latin*, *Spanish* and *Dutch*, over the Door, intimating so much. The Houses here are of Brick, but seem older than those of the other Towns we have named; the Streets are also broad and well paved, but by reason of the multiplicity of Business (for every Canal is full of Ships) cannot be so neatly kept as at *Amsterdam*, (where the Ships lye without the Town) and other places, where less Business is transacted.

The *Brill* is a neat City, well built, reasonably populous, and of some Trade; it is seated on an Island, nam'd *The Land of Voorn*, and hath a convenient Haven at the Mouth of the *Maes*, about 5 leagues below *Rotterdam*, and 30 leagues from *Harwich* in *England*, whence the Pacquet-boat uses to come weekly hither; but the Port of *Helvoet* being found more convenient, they come not hither now. The Buildings here likewise are of Brick, and tho' old are very neat, and the Streets large and handsome, especially the great one: The great Church is of Stone, and hath a large Tower which is a good Landmark to Sailers. The Walls are strong, and made very pleasant by Rows of Trees planted on them. This was one of the Cautionary Towns pawn'd to Queen *Elizabeth*, for the Assistance she gave the *Dutch* against *Spain*, and was kept by an *English* Garrison till King *James I.* restor'd it, 30 years after.

*Helvoet Sluys*, is a small Sea-Town, with a very convenient Haven, seated on the South-side of the same Island, and not above 3 miles distant from the *Brill*. The Town is not at all considerable, except for the weekly Arrival of the *English* Packquet-boat, and that His late Majesty set Sail from hence, to his happy Expedition into *England*, in the year 1688.

Not above a League Southward of the *Land of Voorn*, lies the small Island *Goree*, so nam'd from *goed* and *Reed*, which signifie a good Haven for Ships; its chief Town, of the same Name, was formerly a Place of great Trade, but is now not at all considerable.

Eastward from *Goree* lies the Island of *Ove-flakee*, or *Overlackee*, which is of much larger extent than that of *Goree*, being about 15 miles long and 5 miles broad; and hath on it many Villages and good Towns, the chief of which is named *Somerdyck*.

**DORT**, or *Dordrecht*, *Dordrecht*, is a very ancient City, and the first in Dignity of those that compose the States of *Holland*; also the Capital of a small Country round it, call'd the *Bailiwick of Dort*, and by some *South-Holland*, is seated upon the River *Meruwe* (which, as we have said, falls into the *Maes*) at the distance of 15 or 16 miles from *Rotterdam* to the South-east, about 20 from *Breda* to the North, and 40 from *Amsterdam* to the South. It is strongly



formed, being an Island between the *Meruwe* and *Maes* on the North, and a large Lake call'd the *Bies-Bes* on the South and East. The City is large and populous, the Houses of Brick and very high, and the Streets broad and very neat: The chief Church hath a high Steeple, from whence that of *Breda* may be seen. Our English Merchants enjoy great Privileges here, as being our Staple for Cloth: This City is also the Staple for *Rhenish* Wines, whereof the Merchants have very great Stocks; as also of Corn, Wood and other Commodities, brought down the *Rhine* and the *Maes*. *Dort* boasts of being a Maiden Town, and never taken by any Enemy, tho' often Besieg'd, particularly by the Duke of *Brabant*, in 1304. whom they repulsed and forced to return home. It hath long enjoyed the Privilege of Coining Money. The City is also noted for the famous Synod held in it, in the year 1619. for Reconciling the Points of Religion then in Debate between the *Arminians* and *Calvinists*: The Room wherein it was held is still shewn, with the Seats in it, as they then stood.

This Bailiwick of *Dort* was made an Island in the Year, 1421 at what time a Tempest drove the Waters up the *Maes* and the *Maruwe*, with that Violence that it overflow'd the Banks, and swallowed a great Tract of Land that lay between *Dort* and *Brabant*, with seventy two Villages and one hundred thousand Persons.

*Geertruydenberg*, so named from a certain Saint *Gertrude* who died in 664. is a very strong fortified Town, on the Frontiers of *Holland* towards *Brabant*, esteemed of that Consequence formerly, that the Earls of *Holland* used to be bound by Oath to keep it, as the Dukes of *Brabant* were to recover it, since the Year 1213 that the former took it. The supreme Jurisdiction of it was conferr'd upon Prince *Maurice*, by the States, in 1611. since when it hath been part of the Patrimony of the illustrious House of *Orange*. It is seated on the South Side of the Lake call'd *Bies-Bes*, where the River *Dong* falls into it; which, tho' narrow above, is here so increased, that it will receive Ships of good Burden; and is distant 12 miles from *Dort* to the South-east, 10 from *Breda* to the North, and near 20 from the *Bosch* to the West. This Town is very strongly Fortified, and hath also the Advantagious situation common in this Country, viz. very low and marshy Grounds round it; notwithstanding which, it was taken by the States, in 1573. and by the *Spaniards* in 1588. and in 1595. retaken by Prince *Maurice*, and ever since been possessed by the States General. About 15 miles Westward from hence stands

*Klundert* or *Clundert*, a strong Fortification belonging to the Prince of *Orange* since 1553. It was formerly call'd the *Nieuwerst*, and the Branch of the *Roo Vaert* was a good Road for Ships. Five miles from hence stands

*Willemsstadt*, a strong but small Town, built in 1553. by Order of *William* Prince of *Orange*, from whom it had its Name, and on whom the Lordship of it was conferr'd by the States. It is seated upon the Water nam'd the *Roo Vaert*, that parts the Island, call'd in general the *Land van Voorn*, from the Continent, and serves to secure the Trade between *Holland* and *Zealand*: It is defended by a Wall with seven Battions and a double Ditch, besides other Fortifications.

*Heusden* is another well fortified Frontier of *Hol-*

land; it stands on a Stream, that running out of the *Maes* forms a little Island call'd the *Hemerder Waer*, at the distance of 12 miles from *Geertruydenberg* to the East, and about 7 or 8 from the *Bosch* to the North-west. It is an ancient Town, and was subject to its own Lords for 500 years, by whom sold to the Duke of *Brabant*, who gave it to the Earl of *Holland*; but being afterwards claim'd by others, gave occasion to grievous Wars. A lamentable accident happen'd here in the Year 1680. for the Magazine of Powder blew up in the Night-time, suppos'd to have been fired by Lightning, and destroy'd great part of the Cattle and the neighbouring Streets, shatter'd the whole Town, and kill'd near two hundred People.

*Crevecœur*, a little Town strongly fortified, stands upon the *Maes*, 5 miles from *Heusden* to the East, and not above 3 from the *Bosch*, and at the most extreme East-part of *Holland*.

The *Bosch* or *Bolduc*, *Breda*, and *Bergen op Zoom*, belong to the States, but being all seated in *Brabant* are already described in our Account of that Province.

*Louvesteine* Castle is seated on the most Western part of the *Bomeier H'ret*, at the confluence of the *Wael* and the *Maes*, and distance of 8 or 9 miles from *Heusden* to the N. W. It is a strong Place, but chiefly remarkable on the account of the Faction against the Prince of *Orange* (his late Majesty of Great-Britain) who about 50 years ago using to assemble in it, gave occasion to the whole Party's being commonly call'd by its Name.

*Worcum*, an ancient and strong fortified Town, is seated on the South-side of the *Wael*, just over against *Louvesteine*, being parted from it by the *Maes*, which falls into the *Wael* betwixt them: It was sometime subject to the Duke of *Cleeve*, afterwards to the Earl of *Hoorne*, and in the Year 1600. sold to the States by the Widow of the last Count; who was Beheaded at *Brussels* by the Duke d' *Alva*.

*Gorcum* is seated at the mouth of the *Ling*, and on the North side of the *Wael*, not above 3 miles from *Worcum*, and about 15 East from *Dort*. It is a neat well-built Town and very strong, as well by reason of its situation as strong Fortifications; and is also a Place of Wealth, having a good Trade by Corn, Cheese, Butter, &c. brought down the *Ling* to its Market, and by the Inhabitants carried to other Places: The Church hath a high Tower, from whence may be seen 22 wall'd Towns, besides a great number of Villages. The Town is reasonably large, and hath a Senate and Magistracy of its own.

*Vianen* is a wall'd Town, formerly subject to its own Lords, seated on the South-side of the River *Leck*, near the Borders of the Province of *Utrecht*, about 8 miles North from *Gorcum*, and as many South from *Utrecht*: It is pleasantly seated and a very neat Town, and hath a Castle and a stately high Tower.

*Schoonhoven*, so call'd for its fine Gardens, *Schoon* in *Dutch* signifying Fair or Clean, and *Hof* a Garden-House, stands on the North-side of the *Leck*, about 12 miles West from *Vianen*, and 15 East from *Rotterdam*; it was so strong, that it was able to repel the French, who endeavoured to take it in 1672, since when it hath been also better Fortified. It is a very pleasant Town, and hath an old Castle, built in 1312.

Just over against it stands *Newport*, formerly a rich and populous Town, but now not considerable.



*Gouda* corruptly call'd *Tou Gou*, is a fair large City, chiefly in Dignity of those that compose the States of *Holland*, and seated on the small River *Gouwe* and the *IJsel*, which about 10 miles below falls into the *Meuse*: at the distance of about 12 miles from *Amsterdam* to the North-West, as many from *Rotterdam* to the North-East, and 24 from *Amsterdam* to the South. It was founded in 1272, but suffer'd much by Fire about a hundred years after, and by Wars in 1420, and again totally consumed by Fire in 1535, but being rebuilt, is now an exceeding neat Place, and more than ordinary clean, by means of the Sluices, the Tide up the *IJsel* into the Channels in the Streets, which carry away all their Ordure. The House of Brick, and tho' of late very neat; the Market place is very spacious, on it stands the *Stadthuis*, and near it the great Church; which being burnt by Lightning in 1552, hath been at vast Expence repaired, and is now a very stately Building; it is especially remarkable for its painted Glass Windows, which are thought to exceed any others in Europe. This City enjoys a healthful Air, tho' it be seated upon a morish Ground, and the Country about it so low, that it may be easily overflow'd by opening the Sluices: Besides which, it is secur'd by Walls and a broad Ditch, and therefore reckon'd a very strong Post and a Security to that side of the Country.

*Nierden* a small City, but very strongly fortified, is seated near the *Zuyder-zee*, 22 miles from *Gouda* to the North-East, 15 from *Utrecht* to the North, and about 12 from *Amsterdam* to the East. It stands in low marshy Grounds, and hath of long time been a considerable Port; in 1481, it was taken by the People of *Utrecht*: But in the same year, the *Nederlands* not only regain'd their City, but obtain'd so great a Victory over their Enemies, that with the Booty they gain'd, a Tower was erected to commemorate it. In 1752, *Frederick* of *Toledo*, the *Spanish* General, in revenge for their having submitted to the Prince of *Orange*, summon'd all the Inhabitants into the Market-place, and caus'd his Soldiers to cut them in pieces, and burnt down the Town; which barbarous Action encreas'd the Hatred of the *Hollanders* to the *Spaniards*, and made them hold out their Towns the more vigorously afterwards. It was taken by the *French* in 1672, and regain'd in 1673. And it being a place of great Consequence as serving to secure *Amsterdam*, the States have lately bestow'd great Cost in Fortifying it, the old Walls being pulled down, and new ones built of Brick, together with Ravelings, Half Moons, Countericarsps, double Ditches, &c. so that it is now a regular Fortification, and as strong as any. The Town stood formerly more Northward, but was swallowed up by the Encroachment of the *Zuyder-zee*, whereof some Remains are still to be seen at Low-water.

*Muiden*, a small wall'd Town, seated upon the *IJsel*, where it falls into the *Zuyder-zee*, in the Midway between *Nierden* and *Amsterdam*, was made a strong Post in the late War, when the *French* were at *Utrecht*; as was also

*Weijp*, another small Town on the *IJsel*, about 2 or 3 miles distant from *Muiden* to the South.

And now having Travell'd round, and brought the Reader back to *Amsterdam*, we must proceed to *North-Holland* or *Wierland*, which is divided from *Amstelland* by the *IJ*, *Ye* or *Ya*, call'd a River, but may be more properly esteem'd a Branch of the *Zuyder-zee* or *South-Sea*, from which it begins at the

*Pampus*, about 3 miles West from *Muiden* in a Channel of about half a mile broad; where breadth it continues to *Amsterdam*, but grows soon after twice so broad, and receives the *Saen*, out of *North-Holland*, and the *Sperren* from *Flaerem*, and then passes Northward to *Berwick*, &c.

*North-Holland* in general is commonly understood by the Name of *Wijl-Friezland*, though but one part of it, viz. that to the North-East (wherein stand *Horn*, *Lucingen* and *Medinbick*, be the ancient *Frisia Occidentalis*. In this Country have 17 of the 18 Cities that have Voices in the Provincial State, viz. Those three now mention'd, and *Munickdam*, *Edam*, *Purmerent* and *Alckmar*.

*Munickendam*, so named from the small River *Monick* that passes through it, is seated on a small Bay of the *Zuyder-zee*, about 8 miles North from *Amsterdam*, and 3 South from *Edam*. It is a small Town of some Antiquity, and defended but by a Rampart, and in some places by a Wall.

*Saenelam*, or *Sardam*, seated on the *IJ*, at the Mouth of the small River *Saen*, about 7 miles North-West from *Amsterdam*, tho' but a Village, deserves mentioning rather than some of their Cities, being so remarkable for Ship-building, that 'tis commonly said of this Town, the Ship-wrights in it will undertake to build so many Ships of War in a year as there are days in it. By this Trade the place is much enrich'd and encreas'd. The old Town stands below the Dam of the River, whence it hath its Name: To which hath been since added a long row of Buildings on both sides the River beyond the Dam, which is called the *New Town*, out of which Ships are haul'd over the Dam upon Rowlers.

*Edam* or *Tedam*, is seated at a little distance from the *Zuyder-zee*, to which it has a Channel or Haven, 3 miles from *Munickendam* to the North, and 10 from *Horn* to the South. It is a small Town, but is noted for Building of Ships, and making excellent Cheese.

*Purmerent*, a good neat Town, fortified with a Rampart and Ditch, is seated about five miles from *Edam* to the West, and 12 from *Amsterdam* to the North, formerly belonging to the Lords of *Egmond*, who sold it to the States in the year 1595.

The Land between *Edam* and *Purmerent* was formerly a great Lake, but by the Industry and Skill of the Inhabitants it was Drain'd, and is at present a fruitful and pleasant Country, bearing still the name of *Purmer*: And Southward from *Purmerent* lies the *Beemster*, a great Lake also before the year 1612, when after four years Labour and vast Expence (the Banks by which the water that was thrown out by their Mills having been broken, the Water return'd, after the Work was half done) it was made dry Land, and is now so planted with Gardens, Orchards, Rows of Trees and fertile Enclosures, that Sir *William Temple* says, it is the pleasantest Summer Landship he ever saw. Its extent contains 7090 Acres, besides the Highways, and the Dikes that surround and cross it in several Places. Of the like nature are the *Wormer*, which lies South of it, the *Schermer* and the *Heer Hagen Waert*, to the West of the *Beemster*, as is also the *Zype* in the most North part of this Province; which last is defended from the Sea by a vast Mole, built of great Beams of Timber driven into the Ground, and the Distances fill'd with Stones.

*Alckmar*, is seated a little beyond the *Schermer*, at the distance of 13 miles from *Purmerent* to the North-West.



West, and about 20 from *Haerlem* to the North. The Buildings are beautiful, and the Streets even and neat, the Houses generally furnished with Gardens, and the Town is rounded with Meadows; and at the end of the Town stands a very pleasant Grove, or Wood of Trees, planted in regular order; all which make this Place esteemed one of the pleasantest in these Countries. The Inhabitants are enriched by the great quantity of Butter and Cheese they receive from the vast Herds of Kine fed in the Neighbouring Pastures. It is Wall'd round, and was strong enough to resist the *Spaniards*, who endeavour'd to take it in the *Netherland War*.

*Harne*, is a good large, pleasant and rich City, with a convenient Port on the *Zuyder-zee*, at the distance of 15 miles from *Alcmaer* to the East, 20 from *Amsterdam*, and 10 from *Edam* to the North; it is surrounded with broad Dykes for its Security, large Pasture Grounds for its Profit, and fine Gardens and Walks for its Pleasure. The Trade of this Place consists chiefly in Butter and Cheese, whereof they export great quantities into *Spain*, *Portugal* and other parts, especially at their annual Fair in the Month of May.

*Enchuyzen*, is seated also on the *Zuyder-zee*, in the most Eastern part of the Peninsula of *West-Friesland*, at the distance of 10 miles from *Harne* to the North-East, and as many from *Medenblick* to the South East, as also 30 miles from *Alcmaer* to the East. It is a fair, neat and large City, with a capacious Port, from whence great Fleets yearly sail to the *Barick* and other parts, by which, as also by their Herring-Fishing, building of Ships, and refining of salt from *Britany* in *France* the Inhabitants are much Enriched. The Buildings are mostly of Brick, for being formerly of Wood they suffered much by Fire, wherefore of late Years no Wooden Houses have been erected. The Steeple of the great Church is remarkably high, considering the *Weakness* of the Soil whereon the City stands, which is thereby secur'd, as well as by the Ramparts and other strong Fortifications about it.

*Medenblick* or *Medemblick*, is one of the most ancient Cities of *North-Holland*, and formerly the Metropolis of it, but *Enchuyzen* hath out-strip'd it in Grandeur, for this is but a small City. It is seated on the *Zuyder-zee*, in the North-west part of *West-Friesland*, 10 miles from *Enchuyzen* to the North-west, as many from *Harne* to the North, and about 25 from *Alcmaer* to the East. It hath a very large and commodious

Haven, and a Castle of very ancient Structure. The Banks are here more strong and large than any in this Country, for there being nothing to break the Sea quite from *der Schelling* and *Flieland* Islands to this Shoar, the Waters beat violently upon it when the Northerly Winds blow. The Country about affords good Pasturage. *Medenblick* had formerly a Territory depending on it, govern'd by an Officer call'd *Dyck-grave*.

Cross the Mouth of the *Zuyder-zee* lye a row of Islands, the first or which named the *Texel* or *Tessel*, is disjoined from the North Cape of *North-Holland*, but by a very narrow Channel; nor are the Distances between the rest much larger. The three nam'd, *Texel*, *Flieland*, and *der Schelling*, are reckon'd part of *North-Holland*.

*Texel*, is a small Island of not above 4 or 5 miles extent but very fruitful, affording especially good Pasturage; it is defended from the fury of the Ocean partly by the Sand-hills, and partly by strong Banks. Here is a large fair Town, besides many Villages; and a strong Fort to command the Passage into the *Zuyder-zee*.

*Flieland* or *Vlieland*, lies North-West from the *Texel*; it is about 10 miles long, but very narrow: It hath only two Villages, and is not considerable, but for abundance of Muscles taken there.

*Schelling*, lies next to *Flieland*, and is longer and broader than that. Here are five Villages, the chief whereof containing near 1000 Houses was burnt, together with above 100 Sail of Merchant Ships, by our *English* Fleet under the Command of Sir *Robert Holmes*, on the 7th of August, 1666.

These Islands, together with some Banks of Sand, break the Assaults of the Ocean, and make two good Harbours denominated from the two first.

Southward from the *Texel*, and in the midway between that and *Medenblick*, lies another small Island call'd the *Wierings*, which hath several good Villages, and a rich and fertile Soil.

Sir *William Temple* is of opinion, That the *Zuyder-zee* hath been made by some great Inundation, there being no mention made of it in ancient Authors; and the great Shoals of flat Sands that are spread almost all over it, and the Row of Islands that lie like the broken Remains of a continued Coast, together with the name of *West-Friesland*, do give good reason to believe, that the outward part, at least, was anciently a continued Country from *North-Holland* to *Friesland*.

## C H A P. XII.

### ZEALAND, *Zealandia*.

**Z E A L A N D**, so call'd from its situation in the Sea, or as others say, so nam'd by the *Danes*, (who formerly used to infest these Coasts) in memory of their principal Island of the same Name, is seated between *Holland* on the North, *Flanders* on the South, *Brabant* on the East, and the *German Sea* on the West. It is compos'd of several Islands, which are usually divided into two Districts, call'd the *Beofter*, [or the Eastern] *Schelde*, and the *Bewesier* [or Western] *Schelde*, from the two different Channels by which that River falls into the Sea. Which Division is Political and made for the more easie Government of them, each District having one grand Magistrate in the nature of a Justiciary, with large Power to punish Vagabonds and Criminals out of the Jurisdic-

ons of the Cities; but this Jurisdiction hath been much restrain'd, and therefore this Division less regarded: And Geographers now only mention the Islands as they are situate beyond the *Ooster-Schelde*, or between that and the *Western*.

Those beyond, or North of the *Ooster-Schelde*, are *Scheuven*, *Duyveland*, *Tolen* and *Oresand*, *Goree*, and *Overflackee* (already mention'd in *Holland*) were formerly reckon'd part of *Zealand*.

Those between the *Ooster* and the *Western Schelde* are *Walcheren*, *North Beveland*, *South Beveland*, and *Wolferdike*.

These Islands were formerly subject to the same Earls with *Holland*, (but with the enjoyment of their own proper Laws and Customs) and with that fell to the



the House of Burgundy, and afterwards associated with the other Provinces in the Union of *Utrecht* (as we have already shewn) and have ever since been a considerable part of the Territories of the States General; for by reason of the situation of *Zealand*, the Inhabitants are much enrich'd by Fishery and Navigation; They Trade into all Foreign Parts, especially the *West-Indies* and *France*. They have few or no Manufacturies, but have an excellent way of boiling and purifying the Salt they fetch from *France*.

The Land here lies extreme low, so that they are forced to be at great expence in maintaining the Banks to keep out the Sea. But then the Soil is fertile and produces very good Wheat and excellent Pasture; also *Madder* for Dying; and *Colewort*, the Seed whereof yeilds them good Profit. The Air is not so wholesome as in the neighbouring Countries, for by reason of the noisom Fogs and Vapours arising from many Pools of standing Waters and the neighbouring Sea, it disposes to Agues and Fevers, and other such Diseases.

The extent of *Zealand* is not easie to be computed, because of the intervening Waters, but reckoning Water and all, from the most Northern Banks of *Schouwen* to the Southern Shore of *Zuyd Beveland*, is about 20 miles, and from the most Eastern part of *Walcheren* to the Town of *Tolen*, near 30 miles. In this Province are 8 Wall'd Towns and 102 Villages; the chief whereof are these, viz.

In *Walcheren* the chief Island of *Zealand* situate the most South-West: For Trade, Wealth, number of Inhabitants, and splendor of its Cities and Villages, much surpassing all the rest.

*Middleburg*, Cap.  
*Flushing*.  
*Armmuyden*.  
*Ter Vere*.  
*Rammekins*.

In *Schouwen*, situate North-East from *Walcheren*,

*Zierzee*.  
*Browers-haven*.  
*Bommene*.

In *Duyveland*, situate on the West-part of the same Continent with *Schouwen*, and divided from that by a small River only.

*Oostduyveland*.

In *Tolen*, situate South from *Duyveland*, and North-East from South *Beveland*.

*Tolen*.

In North-*Beveland*, situate South from *Schouwen*, and East from *Walcheren*.

*Cats*.

In South *Beveland*, situate between *Walcheren* to the South-East, *Flanders* to the North, *Brabant* to the West, and *Tolen*, North-*Beveland* and *Wolfordyk* to the North.

*Tergoes*.  
*Romerwall*.

In *Wolfordyk* a small Island, situate between the 2 *Bevelands*.

*Osterlant*, and 2 or 3 other Villages.

**MIDDLEBURG**, the Capital City of *Zealand*, is situate in the Island of *Walcheren*, at the distance of 40 Miles from *Rotterdam* to the South-West, 42 from *Breda* to the West, and 25 from *Bruges* to the North-East, in the Latitude of 51 deg. 35 min. and Long. of 22 deg. 50 min. and is a large well-built and populous City, the Streets large and neat, and the publick Buildings stately, especially the *Stadthuys*, which is adorn'd with curious Statues. The Churches, whereof here are about twenty, are very fine; the highest Tower is exceeding costly and beautiful. Its Haven hath been made very convenient by a great Channel cut from a little Arm of the Sea, that running out at *Armmuyden* makes a little

Island, and falls in again at *Rammekins*, from the middle of which Branch this Channel is deriv'd, and made to bring up Ships into the Streets of the Town, by which means the City hath been exceedingly enrich'd by Trade, especially by the Staple of *French*, *Spanish* and *Portugal* Wines settled here. In the new Erection of Bishopricks which King *Philip II.* attempted, this City was made one, and the Abby of *St. Nicholas* the Seat, but it was soon alter'd and made the Place of Assembly of the States of this Province, the College of its Admiralty, its Mint, and other publick Offices. *Middleburg* is strongly fortified with a good Wall, large and deep Ditches, and a Counterescarp.

*Armmuyden*, so call'd from the small River *Ame* that runs from hence to *Middleburg*, is at present but a small Wall'd Town, seated about 3 miles from *Middleburg* to the East, at the Mouth of that little Arm of the Sea above mention'd, which afforded it formerly an extraordinary good Haven. and the Town was exceedingly enrich'd by the many Merchant-Ships that frequented it: But the Sands have so choak'd it up, that for many years past Ships cannot enter, and therefore the Trade is now quite decay'd, and the present subsistence of the Inhabitants, is by the Boiling and Purifying Salt. It was formerly a Lordship, but in the last Century, purchased by the City of *Middleburg*, and is now a dependant on that.

*Rammekins*, call'd in Dutch *Zeburg*, is a strong Fort, seated at the Mouth of the Harbour of *Middleburg*, at the distance of about 3 miles from that City to the South-East, and as many from *Flushing* to the East. The Creek whereon it stands is a secure Retreat for Shipping; and to the Land-side it is surrounded with pleasant Meadows and many Villages. This Fort was one of the Cautionary Towns deliver'd to Queen *Elizabeth*.

*Flushing*, call'd by the Dutch, *Vlissingen*, is seated in the most Southern part of the Island, at the distance of about 3 Miles from *Middleburg*; and tho' formerly but a small Place at which a Ferry was establish'd to carry Passengers to *Flanders*, (which is just over against it, at about half a League's distance) is at present a considerable City, well-built, and a Place of good Trade by means of its excellent Port. The Buildings are not quite so good as those of *Middleburg*, nor the Streets so broad, but the *Stadthuys* is a very stately modern Building. It was first Wall'd about 140 years ago, but upon the Erection of this Republick it was very strongly fortified, as being a Place of great consequence. It was formerly subject to its own Lords of the Family of the *Borsals*, of whom it was purchas'd by the Prince of *Orange* about the year 1581. who hath still the Nomination of their Magistrates. This was also one of the Cautionary Towns deliver'd to Queen *Elizabeth* in 1585. and restor'd by King *James* in 1616.

*Ter Vere* is a strong fortified Town with two good Harbours, seated on the North-side of the Island, at the distance of three Miles from *Middleburg*, and hardly so much from *Armmuyden* to the North. It hath been a place of good Trade, especially for the *Stoch* Trade, the Staple of which was fix'd here, but is not now so considerable; it is govern'd by its own Magistrates, and is well fortified, having three strong Bulwarks and a broad Ditch. The Sea hath often assaulted and threatned the Ruin of this Town, as it actually did its Tower that stood on the North-side of the Port, in the year 1630. This Town is also subject to the Prince of *Orange*.



*Zirczee*, or *Zirczee*, the cheif City of the Island of *Schowen*, is seated on the Channel which divides *Schowen* from *Duyveland*, at the distance of about 15 Miles from *Middleburg* to the North-east, and as many from the *Briel* to the South. It is esteem'd the ancientest City of *Zealand*, and is a place of Trade, having a good Haven by means of a Channel from the Sea, by which they receive Salt from *France*, and export Madder in great quantities; though the Harbour, by being somewhat choak'd with Sand, be less convenient than formerly. It is a large place and hath several good Buildings, especially the great Church called *de Munster*, which is a very beautiful Structure: The Walls are old, but by reason of the low Grounds about, which are easily laid under Water, the place is strong enough, and did actually sustain a Siege of the *Spaniards* in 1575. for 8 Months, and at last obtain'd good Terms.

*Brewershaven*, so call'd from the great quantities of Beer brought thither from *Delft* and other places, and distributed to all the Towns in this Province, is seated on the North-side of the Island over against *Goree*, at the distance of 5 Miles from *Zirczee*; and was formerly a place of good Trade, and therefore Wall'd, increas'd in Buildings, and govern'd by its Magistrates; but it is now much declin'd, and subsists chiefly by Fishing and Agriculture,

*Bruennese* stands near the Sea, about a Mile Eastward of *Brewershaven*, over against *Goree* and the West part of *Overflackee*, and is a very strong Fortrefs, being incamp'd with a Wall and a deep Ditch, fill'd by the Sea, besides other Fortifications.

*Oostduyveland*, q. d. in the East of *Duyveland* (so nam'd from the great number of Doves and Pigeons found in this Country) is a Village only; as are also *Oudekerke*, *Nieuwerkerk*, *Vianen*, *Capelle*, *Swaneburg*, &c. situate also in *Duyveland*.

*Tolen* or *Ter Tolen*, the cheif City of the Island of the same Name, is seated on the Channel call'd *Het Slaeck*, which makes *Tolen* an Island and divides it from *Brabant*, and is distant about 10 or 12 Miles from *Zirczee* to the South-East, and 3 or 4 from *Bergen-op-zoom* to the North West. It was formerly the Seat of one of the Custom-houses of the Earls of *Zealand*, whence it had its name, and is at present a well-fortified and strong Place, capable of resisting a powerful Enemy.

This Island is but small, and hath no other considerable Town in it.

*Cass* and *Cohyns Plaet*, are the cheif Towns of North-*Beveland*; the first seated on the Eastern Shore, and the second on the Southern, but neither of them are considerable enough to deserve a particular Description. This Island was formerly exceeding pleasant, but by an Inundation in 1532. the greatest part of it

was overwhelm'd, and therein the City *Cortgeen* (at that time a place of note) with many Villages destroy'd. The Inhabitants have recover'd a great deal of the Land in the North and East part, whereon stand the Towns above mention'd, but cannot regain their ancient State, the place being at present not at all considerable.

*Oresand* or *Maersand*, reckon'd one of the Islands of *Zealand*, is a very small Country lying North-west from North-*Beveland*, and is divided from that but by a narrow Channel, hath no Town in it worth describing.

*Wolferdyck*, another small Island of about 5 Miles long, but not above one Mile broad, is situate between North and South *Beveland*, and contains only 3 or 4 Villages, nam'd *Westerland*, *Oosterland*, *Hongerdyck* &c.

*South Beveland* may be reckon'd the largest of all the Islands of *Zealand*, tho' it be at present of less extent than formerly, the Sea having encroach'd upon it several times, especially in 1532. when the Town and most of the Lordship of *Borsales* was swallowed up. The length of this Island is about 24 or 25 Miles; but all the Eastern part being overflow'd, it cannot be reckon'd above 15 Miles, and its breadth 8 or 9. The Soil of it is in some places Woody, but the rest produces very good Corn and Fruit. The cheif Town here is

*Ter Goes*, seated on the South-side of the Island, 12 Miles East from *Middleburg*, and 15 West from *Bergen-op-Zoom*. It is a reasonable large City, nearly built and well inhabited; the cheif City was burnt down in 1618. but was quickly rebuilt, and is now a stately Structure. Here are three Market-places, a Grammar-school and three Hospitals, all fair and well built. This Town was endow'd with large Privileges in 1530. Wall'd round about in the year 1340. and afterwards strongly fortified by the States in 1585. It hath a Channel to the Sea, by which Vessels of smaller Burden come up to the Town.

There are many large and populous Villages, as also several fine Mansion-houses of Gentlemen in *South-Beveland*; but those containing nothing very remarkable, we must omit them to speak a little of

*Romerswael*, formerly one of the three cheif Towns of this Island, and enjoy'd large Privileges; but by the Misfortunes of six Inundations and one Conflagration which all happen'd in ten years time; about the middle of the former Century was so reduc'd, that though many Attempts were made for its Restoration, the Remains of the whole Town were sold in the year, 1631. for no more than 90 Pounds *Flemish* or 60 Pounds *Sterling*. It stands on the Banks of the *Ooster-Scheld* 10 Miles from *Ter Goes* to the East.

## C H A P. XIII.

### UTRECHT, *Ultrajectina Ditio*.

THE Province of *Utrecht* is bounded on the North by *Holland* and the *Zuyder-zee*, on the South by part of *Holland* and part of *Guelderland*, on the East by *Guelderland*, and on the West by *Holland*, containing in extent about 20 Miles in length, and as much in breadth. The Land here is higher and therefore fitter for Agriculture, and the Country much plea-

santer, than those we have been speaking of: It produces plenty of good Corn, and is replenish'd with fine Gardens and Orchards. An account hath already been given of its having been subject to its Bishops for several Ages, and of its Engagement with the other Provinces in the Union made in its Metropolis; since when it hath been always part of these States



States, but with the same Form of Government, the Bishops excepted as formerly; and tho' the Episcopacy be banish'd, the Canonries and Prebendaries having been disposed of to Gentlemen of the Country, retain the same share in the Government that their Predecessors the Clergy had, and send Eight Delegates to the Provincial States, who, in the name of the Clergy, have Session therein: The rest of the Members of the States being the Deputies of the Nobles and of the chief Towns, as in the other Provinces.

This Province was wholly subjected to the French, in the years 1672. and 1673. their King keeping his Court in the Metropolis some part of the year 1672. & it remain'd their Head Quarters till the end of 1673.

The Chief Towns of this Province, are

{	Utrecht, Cap.
	Amersfort.
	Dufterde Wyck.
	Rhenen,

UTRECHT, *Ultraj. ſium, Trajectum Inferius, & Trajectum ad Rhenum*, ſo nam'd from an ancient Ferry or Paſſage over the Rhine, is a fair, large and populous City, ſeated upon the old Channel of the Rhine, at the diſtance of 24 Miles from *Amſterdam* to the South eaſt, 27 from *Leyden*, and about as many from *Rotterdam* to the Eaſt, 17 from the *Zuyder-zee* to the South, and 34 from *Breda* to the North. The Buildings are of Brick, neat and beautiful, with convenient deep Cellars, not to be found in *Holland*. The Streets are large, but not ſo well adorn'd with Trees, nor the whole City in general quite ſo cleanly and beautiful as ſome in *Holland* are. The Church of *St. Martin* call'd the *Dome*, formerly the Cathedral, was a magnificent Building before a great part of it was deſtroy'd by Tempeſt in 1674. but the large ſquare Tower, of 460 Steps to the top, is ſtill ſtanding. The Churches of our Saviour, *St. Mary*, *St. Peter*, and *St. John*, were formerly Collegiate, the Chapter whereof (tho' now compos'd of Laymen, to whom the Revenues have been given) make the States of the Clergy. The other publick Buildings are ſtately enough but being ancient are not particularly remarkable. The chief Excellence of this City, is its pleaſant Situation, (in a ſerene and whoſom Air, among rich Meadows and Corn-fields, and within a days Journey of at leaſt fifty Wall'd Towns) and its famous Univerſity, at firſt a publick School only, founded by *David of Burgundy*, Biſhop of *Utrecht* in 1459 but erected into a Univerſity by the Magiſtrates, and confirmed by the Provincial States in the year 1636. which is at preſent in a very flouriſhing State. Beſides the Rhine, two artificial Channels call'd *de Maert* and *de Nieuwe Gracht*, run through the Streets, and have 35 arch'd Bridges of Brick over them. The Wall of this City is very high and hath a broad Bank with a ſide to ſuſtain it (which is planted with Trees and makes a pleaſant Walk) but is old and decay'd: and here being pretty large Suburbs, and no Out-

works, the place cannot be eſteem'd fit to reſiſt a powerful Enemy; which was the reaſon the Inhabitants gave for their ſending the French King the Keys of the City in 1672. But the *Hollanders* accuſe them of Treachery and Cowardize, and ſay, They had beforehand made a Bargain, and therefore reſuſ'd to permit new Fortifications to be rais'd, or to admit the Prince of *Orange* with the Army into the City, when the French were at *Arnhem*. But tho' theſe courageous Citizens ſent above 20 Miles to ſeek the Enemy, and preſent them the Keys, they ſared little better than the other Conqueſts of that King, having been forced to pay no leſs than One hundred and ſixty thouſand Pounds *Sterling* to their new Guests while they tarried with them, (which was from the 23d of June, 1672. to the end of November, 1673.) beſides above Fourty Thouſand Pounds at their departure.

*Amersfort*, *Amisfortia*, and *Amisfurtum*, ſtands upon the little River *Eems*, 14 Miles from *Utrecht* to the North Eaſt, and 7 from the *Zuyder-zee* to the South. It is a good large Wall'd Town, well Inhabited, and pleaſantly ſeated between large Corn-fields to the Eaſt and South, and Paſture-Grounds to the North, which afford the Inhabitants a plentiful Subſiſtance, the chief Trade of the Town being Agriculture and Grazing. The Buildings are neat and handſom; among the publick ones are two Churches, ſeveral Hospitals, and a publick School. The Town is govern'd by its own Magiſtrates, and is a place of great Antiquity, but hath been much enlarg'd; for tho' it were formerly a ſmall Place, the compaſs of its Walls at preſent is near an hours Walk. The Strength of it is not conſiderable. It is the uſual Winter Quarters of ſeveral Troops of Horſe.

At a little diſtance from *Amersfort* to the South-weſt lies a large Tract of Hills, Woods, and barren Heath, of near 10 Miles long, and 4 or 5 Miles broad, call'd *Amersforder Burgh*: Juſt upon the edge of which ſtands

*SOESTDICK*, a pleaſant Palace of His Majeſty's adorn'd with fine Gardens, and curious Fountains, delightful Walks ſhaded with tall Trees, pleaſant Parks fill'd with Deer, a large Volary and exceeding fine Stables.

*Duſterde Wyck*, or *Wyck te Duſterde*, *Doroſtatum* and olim *Duroſtadium Batavorum*, is ſeated juſt in the place where the middle Channel of the Rhine joyns with the *Leck*, and is diſtant 15 Miles from *Amersfort* to the South, and as many from *Utrecht* to the South-Eaſt. It is a pretty neat Wall'd Town, pleaſantly ſituated and indifferently rich. It is a place of Antiquity, being mention'd by *Tacitus*, and afterwards ruin'd by the *Normans*.

*Rhenen*, another Wall'd Town of great Antiquity, is ſeated on the Rhine 7 Miles from *Duſterdewyck* to the Eaſt, and 15 from *Amersfort* to the South.

*Montfort* is a good neat Town, tolerably well Fortified, and ſeated about 7 or 8 Miles from *Utrecht* to the Weſt, near the Frontiers of *Holland*. It is water'd by the ſmall River *Iſſel*, and is the Capital of a ſmall Territory adjoining.

## C H A P. XIV.

### GELDERLAND and ZUTPHEN, Geldria & Zutphania.

Gelderland, with *Zutphen*, which is reckon'd part of it, (both together compoſing one Province of the

United Netherlands) is bounded on the North by the *Zuyder-zee* and *Overyſſel*, on the South by *Brabant* and



and the Duchy of *Cleeve*, on the East by the Bishoprick of *Munster*, and on the West by the Provinces of *Utrecht* and *Holland*, containing in extent about 50 Miles from North to South, and about 45 from East to West, without reckoning the *Spanish Gelderland*, which is disjoyn'd from the rest by part of the Duchy of *Cleeve*. The Air of *Gelderland* is Clear and Healthy the Country lying high and Inland, and consequently freed from those Fogs that infest the Maritime Provinces. The Soil of it is Fruitful, producing good Corn and Pasture, except in the *Veluwe*, part of which is Heathy and Barren. *Zutphen* is somewhat more Level and Moorish, and therefore yields not much Corn, but affords very good Grass.

This Province hath in it 25 Cities and Wall'd Towns, besides the Royal Seats of His late Majesty, *Deeren* and *Lo*; many Noblemen and Gentlemens Mansion Houses, and a great number of fine Villages, and is usually divided into these four Parts, viz.

The *Veluwe*, being the Northern part, and seated between the *Zuyder-zee* the *Iffel*, and the *Rhine*, contains these chief Towns.

*Arnheim.*  
*Wageningen.*  
*Harderwyck.*  
*Elburg.*  
*Hattem.*

The *Betuwe*, lying between the *Rhine* and the *Leck* to the South, and the *Maas* and *Merwe* to the North, hath these considerable Towns,

*Nimeguen.*  
*Tiel.*  
*Schenckwijck.*  
*Bommel.*  
*Buren.*  
*Culenbu g.*

*Zutphen*, bounded on the North by *Over-issel*, on the South by *Cleeve*, on the West by *Munster*, and on the East by the *Iffel*, which parts it from the *Veluwe*; wherein these Towns are most remarkable,

*Zutphen.*  
*Doesburg.*  
*Groll.*  
*Brevoort &c.*

The Quarter of *Geldre*, subject to the King of *Spain*, lies at some distance from the rest of the Province, the Western part of the Duchy of *Cleeve* intervening. Its extent is about 25 Miles from East to West, and 15 from North to South; to which the Quarter of *Ruremond* is join'd on the South, and is extended along the Banks of the *Maas* for about 15 Miles more; in both which these are the Towns of chiefest note, viz.

*Geldre.*  
*Venloo.*  
*Stralen.*  
*Wachtendonk.*  
*Ruremond.*  
*Morsert.*

**ARNHEM**, *Arnhemum*, is seated on the Southern Banks of the *Rhine*, at the distance of 60 Miles from *Utrecht*, and 26 from *Rhenen* to the East, 24 from *Amersfort* to the South-east, 28 from the *Zuyder-zee* to the South, 10 from *Doesburg* to the West, and 23 from the *Grave* to the North. It is a very large, neat and strong City, formerly the Seat of the Dukes of *Geldre* and at present of the Supreme Council of the Province. It is very pleasantly situated, having the River on one side, and beyond it the Meadows of the *Betuwe*; and on the other side Heaths, Woods and Hills of the *Veluwe*, which afford abundance of all sorts of Game, and an exceeding wholesome Air, and is therefore Inhabited by many Gentlemen and Persons of Quality. The Buildings are

neat and beautiful: The Church of *St. Eusebius* is a noble Structure, and adorn'd with a stately Tower: The three Hospitals, especially that called the *Island of God*, for the maintainance of decay'd Citizens, are well Endow'd. Large Privileges were conferr'd on this City by *Otho* Earl of *Geldre*, in the year 1233. when it was first Wall'd about; and in 1443, it was incorporated into the Body of the *Hanse* Towns of *Germany*. It is Fortified with a Wall of Brick and strong Ramparts, but is commanded by a Hill on the North-side: However it is esteem'd a place of good Strength, and capable of making a good Defence, although the Inhabitants surrender'd it to the French in 1672. the first day they attack'd it; who remaining there all that, and the following Year, added some new Fortifications, and made it a great Magazine, to which they brought the Canon from *Utrecht* and other places when they quitted them; till at last, being forced also to quit this, they Exacted 17000 Guilders of the Inhabitants, as a Ransom for their City. In the Walls are five Gates, which are very strong; that of *St. John's* was in 1537 fortified with large Out-works. Near the Gate which opens to the *Rhine* is a Bridge of Boats over that River to the *Betuwe*; and on the other side is an exceeding fine large flat bottom'd Ditch lined with Freestone, which almost surrounds the Town, and is fill'd with Water by a Spring arising in the neighbouring Hill.

*Wageningen* is a very ancient Town seated near the *Rhine*, about 10 Miles West from *Arnheim*; It is Wall'd round. and stands in a Moorish Soil, which makes it a place of some Strength.

About 10 Miles from *Arnheim* to the North-East, stands *DIEREN*, where his late Majesty had a stately Palace, adorn'd with beautiful Gardens and exceeding pleasant Walks.

About 17 or 18 Miles from *Arnheim* to the North, and 20 from *Amersfort* to the East, stands *LOO*, another of his Majesty's Houses, which is seated near the middle of the *Veluwe*, in a very sweet Air, and a Country abounding with all sorts of Game, and therefore was the Place he used commonly to reside at all the Summer. The Palace is a noble Building, and the Gardens exceeding Pleasant, being adorn'd with curious Knots of Flowers, fine shady Walks and Grotto's, and admirable Fountains, especially the *Bason of Venus*, and the two great Cascades or Water-falls, which are incomparably beautiful; the Water in the Cascades falling so easily out of one *Bason* into another, that it makes a broad Mirror from top to bottom.

*Harderwyck*, *Hardervicum*, stands on the Banks of the *Zuyder-zee*, 28 Miles from *Arnheim* to the North, and 22 from *Deventer* to the West. It is a fair well-built City, adorn'd with an University, which was anciently a publick School only, but rais'd to this Dignity. and Sallaries settled upon the Professors, by the States of this Province in the year 1648. The Houses in general are well built and very high. The Cathedral Church of *St. Mary* is a stately Building, adorn'd with curious Workmanship on the Roof and Arches within-side, and an exceeding high Tower. A Staple of Fish hath of long time been establish'd here, by which the Inhabitants are Enrich'd; and the Town is defended by an old Castle, a Wall round, a Rampart on the South-side, and some other Fortifications; but was however taken by the French in 1672. as were indeed all the Towns of this Province, as well as *Utrecht*, &c.



*Elburg* is seated near the *Zuyder-zee*, at the distance of 12 Miles from *Harderwyck* to the North-East. It is a small City of an oblong square Form; a small River runs through it, and falls into a Creek of the *Zuyder-zee*, which makes its Port; over this River are built five Stone Bridges. It was surrounded with Walls about A. 1400. and was sometime one of the *Hanse-Towns*, as was also *Harderwyck*.

*Hattem* stands about 10 Miles from *Elburg* to the East, and hardly one from the *Iffel* to the West: It had formerly a very good Castle and other strong Fortifications, but is at present not very considerable.

*Nimeguen*, or *Nieumegen*, *Noviomagus*, famous for the Treaty held in it in the Years 1678. and 1679. and at last a Peace concluded between the King of *France*, and the several Princes then at War with him, is seated on the River *Waal*, at the distance of 10 Miles from *Arnhem* to the South, and 8 from the *Grave* to the North, 30 from *Gorcum* to the East, and 12 from *Schencksconce* to the West. It is a large City, of a semicircular Form, and exceeding pleasant, being built upon five small Hills between the River on one side and an exceeding pleasant Country, consisting of Woody Hills (out of which issue many Springs) Corn-fields and Gardens, on the other. The Houses are of Brick, cover'd with Slate, and very neat, and the Streets spacious and handsom. Among its ten Churches, all well built and adorn'd with Towers; that of *St. Stephen* is chiefly commendable for its stately Tower and costly Structure. The *Stadthuys* is a magnificent Fabrick, adorn'd with the Statues of divers Emperors; as is the publick School with those of the Apostles and Doctors of the Church. Here are two Hospitals for the maintenance of poor Orphans, one for old People, and another for the Cure of the Sick. The Walls of the City are of Brick, exceeding high, and guarded by very strong Towers: The Gates are 12 in number, whereof 7 are toward the Water. This City enjoys great Privileges, and was Imperial and Free before the Year 1248. at which time it was given to the Earl of *Geldre*; and with that Province became subje. to the States General.

*Schencksconce* or *Schencken-schanse*, so nam'd from a famous Captain *Schenck*, by whose direction it was built by the States in 1588 is seated upon the point of the *Betuwe*, where the *Rhine* divides into two great Arms, one whereof retains its Name, and runs to *Dufterde-wick*, and the other is call'd the *Waal*, by which Situation it commands both those Rivers, and the Commerce between *Germany* and the *Netherlands*. It is an exceeding strong Place, having, besides the Rivers on two sides, very strong Walls, with good Bastions, a large Ditch, Half moons and other Fortifications; however, it was taken by the *Spaniards* in 1635. by surprise, but the same Year recover'd by the Prince of *Orange*; and by the *French* in 1672. by the Treachery of the Governour. In 1674. the *French* surrender'd it to the Duke of *Brandenburg*, who claim'd it as a dependent on *Cleve*; and in 1679. sold it to the *Dutch*. It stands about 10 Miles East from *Nimeguen*, and 12 South from *Doesburg*. About 2 or 3 Miles below *Schencksconce*, on the West-side of the *Rhine*, stands a small Fort call'd the *Tollhuys*, which was also taken by the *French* in 1672.

*Tiel* stands upon the South-side of the *Waal*, about 12 Miles West from *Nimeguen*, and 8 Miles South from *Rhenen*, in a marshy Ground, which, together with the narrowness of the Streets, makes the Town somewhat unhealthy. It is well fortify'd, and by reason of the Soil, not attackable but on the North-West side: However it was taken by the *French* in

1672. The Country lying to the Westward between the *Waal* and the *Ling*, depends on it, and is call'd the *Tieler Waert*.

*Buren* is seated about 7 or 8 Miles West from *Tiel*, on a small Stream that falls into the *Ling*; it is a wall'd Town, and the Capital of a small Lordship, which with the Town belong to the Prince of *Orange*, as do also the Town and Lordship of

*Culenburg*, seated on the *Leck*, about 5 or 6 Miles from *Buren* to the North-West, and about 12 from *Utrecht* to the South-East.

*Bommel* is seated on the South-side of the *Waal*, about 12 Miles from *Tiel* to the West, and as many from *Gorcum* to the East. It is a pleasant, neat and well-built City, govern'd by its own Magistrates and sends Deputies to the Provincial State. It is surrounded with very good Fortifications, and seated in a low and marshy Country, which renders the place exceeding strong. It was first wall'd and endow'd with Privileges by the Earl of *Geldre*, in 1229. and in the *Low-Country War* very strongly fortify'd by the States. When the *French* took it, in 1672. it was surrounded with a double Ditch and Ramparts, besides the Walls and Bastions; all which they destroy'd before they quitt'd it, in 1673: But it being a Place of great consequence, the States speedily repair'd the Fortifications, and put it into a state of Defence. *Bommel* stands on an Island made by the 2 Rivers *Maas* and *Waal*, which is call'd the *Bommeller Waert*; on the West-point whereof stands the Castle of *Louvestein*, already mention'd in the account of *Holland*, and on the East stand two strong Holds, call'd *Fort St. Andrew* and *Fort Voorn*, which command the Passage of these two Rivers.

The Earldom of *ZUTPHEN*, reckon'd formerly one of the Provinces, but now, as we have said, only a part of *Gelderland*, lies on the East side of the *Iffel*, between *Cleve* to the South, and *Overijssel* to the North; and is extended about 30 Miles from North to South, and near as many from East to West. The Capital City from which the whole Province hath its Name, is,

*ZUTPHEN*, *Zutphania*, seated upon the *Iffel*, over which it hath a Bridge, at the distance of 25 Miles from *Nimeguen*, 18 from *Arnhem* to the North-East, 42 from *Utrecht* to the East, and 22 from *Hattem* to the South. The River *Berkel*, which rises in the Bishoprick of *Munster*, after it had cross'd the Province, runs thro' the middle of this City, and falls into the *Iffel*, dividing the Town into two parts, call'd the *Old* and the *New*: The chief Church, dedicated to *St. Peter*, is a neat, sumptuous and ancient Structure, the Tower whereof being fir'd by Lightning, was rebuilt in 1635. in most curious manner: The Brazen Font in this Church is particularly remarkable for its curious Workmanship; and the publick Library at the East-end is a reasonable good one. Here is a publick School, and several Hospitals, which, together with the high brick Tower, call'd *Diegenap's Toorn*, are worth a Stranger's View. In this City dwell many Nobles and Gentlemen of Quality, and it is generally reckon'd a Place of much Civility. The Buildings are fair and neat, and the Fortifications very strong, at least were so before the *French* took it in 1672. for then we read, that it had nine Bastions, four Half-moons, a double Ditch, and treble Ramparts: Notwithstanding which, it was surrender'd to them after a very short Siege on the 26 of June 1672. and kept by them till April 1674. In the *Spanish War* it was taken and attack'd



attack'd by *Alva's* Army, and regain'd by the States by this stratagem. A good number of Soldiers coming in the habit of Market-women, loiter'd about the Gate till they found an opportunity to seize it, and let in the rest that lay ready to assist them. But this was attet a long Siege, wherein that Ornament of our Nation, *Sir Philip Sidney*, was unfortunately slain. This City enjoys great Privileges, and was one of the *Hanseatick* Society; as also had the Royalty of Coinage: But this last they parted with to the States in 1604. for an annual Sum of Money to be paid them in lieu.

*Dreesburg* is seated on the Old *Iffel*, 9 or 10 Miles from *Zurphen* to the South: It is strongly situated between the River on one side and a great Marsh on the other, and had good Fortifications when the *French* attack'd it in 1672, so that it might have been expected to have made a very good Defence, but was however quickly surrender'd, the *French* losing only 3 Men in obtaining it, and held it till the *April* following; when, being oblig'd to quit it, they demolish'd the Fortifications.

At this place the Channel mention'd by the Ancients to be cut by *Drusus*, and therefore call'd *Fossa Drusiana*, is let into the *Iffel*, being deriv'd from the *Rhine* a little above *Arnhem*; by which the *Iffel* is very much enlarg'd, and may not improperly be reckon'd another Branch of the *Rhine*.

*Groll* stands on the small River *Slink*, which falls into the *Berkel*, and is distant 18 Miles from *Zurphen* to the East. It was esteem'd a very important Pass from *Germany*, and therefore fortify'd by the Emperor *Charles V.* which was afterward improv'd by the *Spaniards*. The Works describ'd by *Grotius*, in his account of the remarkable Siege of this Place by the States in 1627, being exceeding Strong and Regular, consist'd of five Bastions, joyn'd by strong Curtains, a lower Wall or Rampart under the Bastions, in lieu of the modern Ravelins, a broad Ditch fill'd by the River *Slink*, and a Rampart or Counterescarp beyond it; yet did this Town make but very little Resistance before it surrender'd to the Bishop of *Munster*, in 1672.

*Breevoort* is a good strong Town, having, besides pretty good Fortifications, a marshy Soil all round; by which it is render'd almost inaccessible: And therefore not taken without great difficulty by Prince *Maurice* in 1597. It stands 12 Miles South from *Groll*, and 17 East from *Dreesburg*.

*Spanish-Gelderland*, or the Quarter of *Geldre*, contains these chief Towns, &c.

*GELDRE*, *Geldria*, altho' it hath the Honour to give Name to the whole Province, is but a small City, and not very considerable: It hath an old Castle, and is strongly fortify'd by the Marshes that surround it, which together with its distance from the rest of the Province, has hinder'd its falling into the Hands of the States. It is distant 36 Miles from *Dreesburg* to the South, and 20 from the Frontiers of *Brabant* to the East, 32 from *Nimeguen* to the South-East, and 25 from *Duse-dorp* to the North-West.

*Venloo*, a City of good note, is seated in a flat fenny Country, on the East-side of the *Maes*, about 5 Miles from *Geldre* to the South-west. It is a Place of great Trade for Corn, Brails, Marble, Free-stone, Coal, &c. brought from the Country of *Liege* and other parts of *Germany*, down the River to this City, whither the *Hollanders* and *Brabanders* repair to buy 'em. It was endow'd with the Privileges of a City in 1343, and was strong enough in the last Century to oppose *Margaret* of *Austria* when she besieg'd it; and even to keep out *Charles V.* till he had granted them good Conditions. The States took it in 1532, but lost it again to the *Spaniards* in 1536.

*Wachtendonck*, a very strong Town, is seated on the small River *Niers*, 5 Miles from *Geldre* to the South, and 7 from *Venloo* to the East: It is surrounded by low moorish Grounds, which hinder any access to it, and makes it one of the strongest Towns in the Province. In 1588, it held out three Months against Count *Mansfeild*. In 1600 it was surpriz'd by *Lodowick* of *Nassau* upon the Ice; but in 1605 was finally regain'd by the *Spaniards*.

*Sralen* stands about 2 Miles from *Wachtendonck*, and almost in the mid-way between *Venloo* and *Geldre*; it is a Place of some Dignity, having a small Territory depending on it, but otherwise not very considerable.

*Roe-mond* stands upon the *Maes*, where the small River *Ryer* falls into it, and is distant 12 Miles from *Venloo* to the South; it is a rich and populous City, and remarkable for the Neatness of its Buildings and Strength of its Walls. A Monastery of *Carthusians* here is much spoken of for its Grandeur and Wealth. The City was taken in 1632, by the States, but was restor'd at the Peace of *Munster*, and is still subject to the *Spaniard*.

The *Spanish Gelderland* being possess'd by the *French*, at the beginning of this War, the Confederates recover'd it by Conquest in the Year 1702.

## CHAP. XV.

### The Province of OVERISSEL, Transissalana.

**O**VERISSEL, so nam'd from its Situation beyond the River *Iffel*, is bounded on the North by *Groningen* and *Friseland*, on the South by *Zurphen* and *Gelderland*, on the East by the Bishoprick of *Munster*, and on the West by the *Zuyder-zee*. Its Extent from North to South is about 60 Miles, from East to West about 40 Miles; but the Soil is not very Fertile, a great part of it being either Barren Heaths or Quaggy Marshes; which, together with its Inland Situation, unfit for Trade, and its lying expos'd to Inroads from *Germany*, makes this Province less inhabited than any of the others. It is divided into three Parts, viz.

- I. *Ifeland*, *Ifaland*, and by corruption *Salland* and *Zalland*, lies next the *Iffel*, and contains these Chief Towns. } *Deventer*, Cap.  
*Swoll*.  
*Campen*.  
*Hasselt*, &c.
- II. *Twente*, lies East of *Salland*, and to the Frontiers of *Munster*. In it are these Towns, with many others of smaller moment; } *Oldenzael*.  
*Ormersan*.  
*Enschede*.
- III. *Drent* is the North part of *Overissel*, and contains these Towns of chiefest note; } *Coeverden*.  
*Meppel*, &c.



The small Territory of *Vollenhoven*, on the Banks of the *Zuyder-zee*, is by some Geographers made a separate part, and not included in the *Drent*: In it stand

*Vollenhoven.*  
*Steenwyck.*  
*Swarte-sluyt.*  
*Blockzyl.*

*DEVENTER* or *Daventer*, *Daventria*, is seated on the *Iffel*, 8 Miles from *Zutphen* to the North, and 18 from *Swoll* to the South, 30 from *Amersfort* to the East, and 22 from *Arnhem* to the North. It is a large and populous City, exceeding neatly built and well fortify'd: By means of the River it enjoys a good Trade, and was formerly one of the *Hanse Towns*. It still enjoys great Privileges, particularly the Royalty of Coinage. It is seated in a very fruitful and pleasant Country, and inhabited by many Noblemen and Persons of Quality. The Cathedral Church of *St. Lebuin* is a spacious ancient Structure, and the *Stadthuys* is a handsome old Building; here is a publick School, and several Hospitals, which with the remarkable round Tower, 15 Foot thick, near the *Noremburg-Gate*, are worth a Stranger's notice. The City is fortify'd with a double Wall and Ditch, besides several Outworks; notwithstanding which it was surrender'd to the Bishop of *Munster*, after only 5 Days Resistance, on the 21st of July 1672.

*Swoll* or *Zwoll* is seated in a fruitful Country, between the two Rivers, *Iffel* and *Vecht*, at about 2 Miles distant from the first, and 4 from the last, and 18 Miles from *Deventer* to the North; having also another small River, which rising near *Deventer*, passes through it, and a little beyond falls into the *Vecht*, and with it runs into the *Zuyder-zee*. The Buildings are fair and the Streets neat, which makes the City exceeding pleasant. It enjoys a reasonable good Trade, by means of the aforesaid River, thro' which the Tide flows up to the Town: The Church of *St. Michael* is a stately Structure, and remarkable for its fine Organ, Pulpit, harmonious Chimes and exceeding high Steeple. The publick School is considerable both for its great number of Scholars, and its College for the study of the Sciences. Here are also divers Hospitals, a publick Granary and an Arsenal. The City enjoys great Privileges, particularly the ultimate Determination of all Causes, the Royalty of a Mint, and the Jurisdiction over 18 large and populous Villages, that stand in its Prefecture. It is surrounded with Walls, on which are 24 Towers, and a Trench; and hath 3 very strong Gates, which open to so many Suburbs. In 1672. it was surrender'd to the Bishop of *Munster*, as soon as they heard of the taking of *Deventer*.

*Campan* is seated among pleasant Fields (whence it has its Name) on the South-side of the *Iffel*, near the *Zuyder-zee*, and 8 Miles West from *Swoll*. It is a large, neat and well-built City, and hath a strong wooden Bridge over the *Iffel*, which is secur'd by a Fortification at the end of it. The Churches here are very capacious and of a curious Structure, as is also the *Stadthuys*; but the Custom-house is an exceeding fine Building and much admir'd. This was formerly a place of great Trade, but of late Years the Mouth of the *Iffel* hath been so choak'd up with

Sand, that Ships of Burthen cannot enter. The Wall is high and thick, and provided with many Towers, after the old manner, but not able to resist the modern way of Attacking. This City also Capitulated upon the Surrender of *Deventer*, and was yielded to the Bishop of *Munster*; who delivering it to the *French*, they kept it to the end of the next Year, and then being forc'd to quit it, exacted 80000 Guilders of the Inhabitants to save it from Fire.

At the mouth of the *Vecht*, and on a Bay of the *Zuyder-zee*, call'd the *Zwollsche-diep*, 7 Miles from *Zwoll* to the North, stands the small City *Genemuyden*, which had formerly a good Castle.

*Vollenhoven* stands upon the *Zuyder-zee*, 12 Miles from *Swoll*, and 7 from *Genemuyden* to the North; it is a neat and handsome Town, conveniently seated for Trade, and is a great Market for Corn brought from the *Baltick* Sea and other places.

*Steenwyck* stands near the Frontiers of *Friezland*, 10 Miles North from *Vollenhoven*, and 17 from *Swoll*: It is a small but very strong Town, having been very well fortify'd by Prince *Maurice* after he took it, in 1592. It was taken by the Bishop of *Munster* in the last War, and oblig'd to pay 10000 Guilders as a Ransom, when he quitted it in 1673.

*Blockzyl* stands on the *Zuyder-zee*, 3 or 4 Miles from *Vollenhoven* to the North, and 6 from *Steenwyck* to the South-East. It is a strong Town, and besides, considerable for Navigation and Commerce.

*Swartsluyt*, a Fortrefs standing upon the *Vecht*, 2 Miles East from *Genemuyden*, and 7 North from *Swoll*; being taken from the *Munsterians* in 1672. was by them made very strong, and able to resist three several Attempts of the *Dutch* to regain it.

*Coeverden*, the chief Place of the *Drente*, is seated near the Frontiers of the Country of *Benthem*, and about 12 Miles from the Confines of *Munster*, 30 Miles from *Swoll*, 35 from *Campen* to the East, and near 46 from *Deventer* to the North-East. It is a Fortrefs of very great Strength, having, besides the strong Walls and Outworks, Marshes and impassable Grounds almost all round it. It commands the Passes out of *Munster* into *Friezland* and *Groningen*, and being therefore a Place of great Importance, hath been often besieg'd. It was taken by Prince *Maurice* in 1592. and withstood a Siege of 7 Months by the *Spaniards* the next Year: Yet in July 1672. it surrender'd in 4 Days to the Bishop of *Munster*, but was recov'd by surprize by the *Dutch* in December following: Again, in 1673. the *Munsterians* blockaded it, but could not take it.

*Ootmersum* or *Otmarsen*, a Town of great Antiquity, and said to be founded by *Odomarus* King of the *Franks*, is seated in the *Twente*, near the Borders of *Benthem*, and 20 Miles South from *Coeverden*; it was formerly secur'd by a Rampart and a Ditch round it: But is at present not very considerable.

*Oldenzyl* or *Oldensael*, stands 8 Miles South from *Otmarsen*, and as many West from *Benthem*: It is a wall'd Town, but not remarkable for Strength or Grandeur; it was often taken and retaken in the *Spanish* War; and being taken by the Bishop of *Munster* in the last War, was regain'd by the *Dutch* in 1674.



## C H A P. XVI.

The Province of FRIEZLAND, *Frisia*.

Concerning the Country possess'd by the ancient *Frisians*, there is great dispute among the Learned, some affirming, that they spread over all *Holland*, *Utrecht*, part of *Geiderland*, *Zutphen*, *Overissel* and *Greeningen*, as well as this *Friezland*; and the other call'd *East-Friezland*, beyond the *Ems*: Others say, that of *Holland*, they had the North part only, which is thence call'd *West-Friezland*, whilst others make the old Channel of the *Rhine* the Southern, and the River *Ems* the Eastern Bounds of their Country. The present Bounds of this Country is the *Zuyder-zee* to the West, North and South, *Groningen* and *Overissel* to the East and South, containing in extent from North to South about 35 Miles, and from East to West about 30 Miles. The Land is low and marshy, and frequently overflow'd, however affords good Pasture, and in some Parts store of Corn. The Province is divided into three parts, *viz.*

*Westergce*, or the West Part, containing these Towns,

{	<i>Franecker,</i> <i>Harlingen,</i> <i>Bolswaert,</i> <i>Sneek,</i> <i>Worcum,</i> <i>Seaveren, &amp;c.</i>
---	----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

*Ostergce*, or the East Part, hath these,

{	<i>Leuwarden,</i> <i>Dockum.</i>
---	-------------------------------------

*Seven Welden* is the South-East Part, which being a barren Soil, is but meanly inhabited, and besides 77 Villages, hath only one Town of Note, namely,

}	<i>Sleet.</i>
---	---------------

**FRANEKER.** *Franequera*, & *Franequera*, is seated on the Channel cut from *Leuwarden* to the *Zuyder-zee*, and is distant 40 Miles from *Campan* to the North, 37 from *Greeningen* to the West, not above 7 from the Shoar of the *German Ocean*, and in the midway between *Leuwarden* to the East, and *Harlingen* to the West. It is a fair, neat, well-built City, enjoying a reasonable good Trade by means of its Canals, and inhabited by many Persons of Quality: Being also the Seat of an University, which was erected by the States in the Year 1585. and good Revenues allotted to the Professors out of the Abbey-Lands, confiscated upon the Revolution. The Rector hath the Power of judging Civil Causes, and the Students enjoy many Immunities. The whole Town hath but one Church, which is a spacious Building, with a tall handsom Steeple: Here is an Hospital for Orphans, and a very good Grammar-School. The Town is surrounded with a good Rampart, and a deep Ditch, and hath a strong Castle built of Brick.

**LEUWARDEN,** *Leuardia*, is distant 6 Miles from *Franecker* to the East, 30 from *Greeningen* to the West, and 12 from *Dockum* to the South; and is the largest, richest, best-built, and most populous City of *Friezland*, being also the Seat of the Sovereign Council, and the Residence of the Stadtholder of the Province. It enjoys a good Trade by means of its Channels, whereof that from *Dockum* brings up large Boats

with Goods, from *Hamburg*, *Bremen*, &c. This Place is commended for the Neatness of its Streets and Bridges, the Pleasantness of its Gardens, and the Splendor of its Buildings; among which the Stadtholder's Palace, the Provincial Court, and several Houses of Noblemen, together with the two Hospitals and the Churches, are especially remarkable. It is well fortify'd, being surrounded with a thick and high Rampart, a broad Ditch and 5 Bulwarks.

*Harlingen* Stands on the Banks of the *Zuyder-zee*, in which it hath a good Haven, being distant about 5 Miles from *Franecker* to the West. It was at first a small Village only, but by several Enlargements since 1543. it is become a considerable City, and a place of good Trade, which consists in Corn and the Commodities of *Norway* and the *Sound*; its Harbour being well frequented by Merchants Ships from those Parts. It is well fortify'd, which, with the flatness of the Country round it, (by that means easily overflow'd) makes it a place of good Strength and Security.

*Dockum* is a neat and well-fortify'd Town, seated at the head of the Channel leading to *Leuwarden*, and upon a River, which makes a good Haven of 2 Leagues in length, from a Bay of the *German Ocean*, call'd *Dockumer-diep*, and is distant 12 Miles from *Leuwarden* to the North East, and about 5 from the Ocean to the South. The Streets and Buildings are remarkably neat; the Tower of its Church is high and stately, and the Stadthuys is a handsom Structure. The chief Bridge is of Stone, and very large; besides which there are two others over the River, which runs thro' the Town, and communicates with the Channel of *Leuwarden*. The Harbour is secur'd by Piles of large Timber driven into the bottom of the River, and shut up 2-nights with a strong Boom: And the Town is fortify'd with a Rampart, large Ditch, and Bulwarks, built by the States in 1582.

*Bolswaert* stands about 7 Miles from *Franecker* to the South, and 10 from *Leuwarden* to the South-West. It is a good wall'd Town, formerly one of the *Hanseatick*, and maintaining a pretty good Commerce, by means of the Channels leading from it to *Franecker*, *Leuwarden*, *Worcum*, and other Places.

*Worcum* stands upon the *Zuyder-zee*, 7 Miles South from *Bolswaert*. It hath a small Haven, but by the Tempests from the North and West is almost choak'd up with Sand; but by the many Channels the Inhabitants trade in small Vessels, and supply the Country with store of Fish.

*Sneek* is an ancient populous, neat and well fortify'd Town, 6 Miles distant from *Bolswaert* to the South-East, and as many East from *Worcum*, seated in a low fenny Country, near a Lake of the same Name; which being well stor'd with Fish, afford the Inhabitants a good Support, by furnishing the Neighbouring Parts with that Commodity. Here is a Publick School, which for the number of its Scholars and Salleries is very considerable.

*Sloot* or *Sloten*, stands upon a navigable Channel, which comes from a neighbouring Lake, and falls into the *Zuyder-zee*, about a League below the Town, which is distant 8 or 9 Miles from *Sneek* to the South, and by means of this Channel maintains a Commerce



Commerce with *Holland* and other parts. The Buildings are but ordinary; nor are the Fortifications very strong. It hath one Church, a handsom Stadthuys, and one of the Gates is very large and stately.

*Staveren* stands on the *Zuyder-zee*, at the extream South West Point of *Friezland*, over against *Medenblick* in *North-Holland*, from which it is distant four Leagues to the North East, as also 12 Miles from *Sloten* to the West. It had formerly a capacious Harbour, and was a famous Empory; and the Inhabitants still enjoy particular Privileges in the Sound,

which shews the great Trade they formerly had thither, and was also the third in the Rank of the Hanse Towns: But this Trade is long since decay'd, and the Haven choak'd up with Sand, so that at present the Town is not considerable, and can only brag of what it hath been; wherein they have much to say, for this was anciently the Metropolis of the *Frisons*, and the Seat of their Kings. It is recorded also, That about 500 Years ago, there was a Passage by Land almost quite cross from hence to *Enchusen*, in *North-Holland*.

## C H A P. XVII.

## The Province of GROENINGEN, Groeningia, with the Omlands.

THIS Province is the most North-East Part of the Dominions of the States General, and is seated between the *German Ocean* to the North, *Overissel* to the South, *Friezland* to the East, and the Bay call'd *den Dollert*, which parts it from the Country of *Emden* or *East-Friezland*, to the West. Its Extent from North to South is about 20 Miles, and from East to West about 35. The Soil of it is but poor, except the Parts lying towards the Sea, which afford very good Pasture. The Air is sharp, but wholsom enough, and the Inhabitants long-liv'd. It is divided into

The Lordship of *Gorecht*, a narrow Tract in the middle of this Province; in which stands

*Groeningen*, Capit. The Old Ampt, lying East from *Gorecht*, and extending to the Bank of the *Dollert*, the chief Town whereof is

*Winschoten*. The *Westerwold*, which lies South of the Old Ampt, and runs out, in form of a Wedge, between the *Drente* of *Overissel* and the North-part of *Munster*: It hath several Villages, but no Town of considerable note.

The West Quarter, or the West Part, lying between the River *Lavica*, which parts it from *Friezland*, and the River or Channel leading to *Groeningen*. In it are about 25 Villages, but no considerable Town.

*Hunsingo*, which takes up all the North part of the Province: But hath likewise no Town of note.

*Five-ingo*, which lies between *Hunsingo* to the North, the Old Ampt to the South, *Gorecht* to the West, and the Mouth of the River *Ems* to the East: In which District stand several Villages, and the Town of

*Dam*. GROENINGEN or *Groningen*, *Groeninga*, is seated upon the Confluence of two small Rivers, call'd the *Aba* and the *Hunefus*, with several artificial Channels, which lead to all parts of the Province; and it is distant 30 Miles from *Leuwarden* to the East, 32 from *Coeverden* to the North, 13 from the Sea to the South, and 14 from the Mouth of the *Ems* to the West. It is a large and populous City, surrounded with strong Walls, in which are 17 large Bastions, and other Fortifications; and is the Seat of an University, which was founded in the Year 1614. and well endow'd with the old Abbey-Lands. Besides several other Channels, leading from this City, there is one, which running Westward, falls into a Bay of the *German Ocean*; and another Eastward, that leads to *Dam*, and thence to the *Ems*; by these the Inha-

bitants receive Goods from Foreign Parts, and by the other Rivers and Channels convey them to the other Places of the Province, and so maintain a pretty good Trade. The principal Church is that of *St. Martin*, and next is that of *St. Walburg*, which hath a Tower exceeding high; there are also two other Churches, viz. *St. Mary's*, and the *New-Church*. The Stadthuys is an old Building, and not remarkable; but the broad Market, on which it stands, is very large; as is also the Fish-Market: Upon these Markets 17 Streets meet, 6 whereof lead to so many Gates of the City. The City hath been twice enlarg'd since the Year 1600. and may at present be reckon'd 3000 Paces in compass. Most of the Houses are furnish'd with Gardens, wherein grow many Fruit-Trees, and make the Place exceeding pleasant. It enjoys great Privileges, and was some Ages ago one of the Hanse Towns. In the Low-Country War it sided with the Confederates in 1579. but returning to the *Spaniard*, was taken by Prince *Maurice* in 1594. In 1672. it was besieg'd by the Bishop of *Munster*, but so bravely defended, that after a Month's furious battering it with great Shot and Bombs, he was forc'd to raise his Siege. For which Valour, the *Groeningers* were rewarded with a double Voice in the Council of State.

*Dam* is seated upon the Channel call'd the *Damsterdiep*, about 3 Miles from the Mouth of the *Ems* to the West, and 12 from *Groeningen* to the East. It has a rich Soil about it, and is beautify'd with good Buildings, but hath no Walls or Bulwarks.

*Winschoten* is a strong Fortrefs, which commands the Pass out of *East-Friezland* into this Province, being seated between the *Dollart* Bay on one side, and a great Morass on the other, 17 Miles from *Groeningen* to the East, and 13 from *Dam* to the South. It was fortify'd by the States in the latter end of the last Century, in whose hands it continu'd; but was taken by the Bishop of *Munster* in 1674.

For the better Security of this Pass, there is another strong Fort about 6 Miles South-East from *Winschoten*, call'd *Billingworder-sconce*, which, tho' it be very well fortify'd, was taken by the Bishop of *Munster* in the Year 1672. but soon recover'd by the *Dutch*.

The *Bourtanger* Fort, seated in the middle of a Marsh, on the very Borders of the *Westerwold*, towards *Munster*, and 12 Miles South from the *Dollart*, is another very strong Place, and a good Defence to the Country.



# GERMANY.

## CHAP. I.



**T**HE Bounds of *Germany*, as set out by *Pto-*  
*lemy* and other ancient Writers, were much  
different from what they are at present; for  
according to their Account, it extended Northward

as far as the Ocean, whereby *Denmark*, *Norway*, and  
*Sweden*, were included; and Southward it was bound-  
ed by the *Danube*, so that *Austria*, *Bavaria*, *Stiria*,  
*Carinthia*, *Carniola*, &c. now reckon'd part of it,  
were



were then excluded; as were also *Alsace*, part of the *Palatinate*, and the Spiritual Electorates, the *Rhine* being by them reckon'd the Western Bounds; but these last, together with *Lorrain* and the neighbouring Countries, were afterwards possessed by *Germans*; and being Conquer'd by the *Romans*, were by them nam'd *Germania prima & secunda*.

*Germany*, as it is at present bounded by the *Low-Countries* on the West; *Poland* and *Hungary* on the East; *Denmark* and the *Baltick-Sea* on the North; and *Switzerland*, with the Dominions of the State of *Venice*, on the South; is situated between the 45 D. 12 M. and 54 D. 50 M. of Latitude, and 25 D. and 39 D. of Longitude, in form almost square; extending from North to South (that is to say, from *Straelsund* in *Pomerania*, to the Frontiers of *Carniola* and *Istria*) 150 German Leagues, which is 600 English Miles; and in breadth from the Town of *Spa* in the West, to the Confines of *Poland* in the East, about 500 English Miles.

The SOIL is exceeding fruitful, especially on the Banks of the *Rhine* and the *Danube*, where also the AIR is very Temperate; but in the Northern part it is cold, and the Ground less fruitful. Besides great plenty of Corn, vast quantities of rich Wine is produc'd here and exported to Foreign Nations. The Earth also affords Mines of divers sorts of Metals and Minerals, as Iron, Copper, Tin, Lead, and even Silver in some parts; Alom, Quick silver, Salt &c.

The chief RIVERS, are, 1. The *Danube*, call'd by the Natives *Thonaw*, which rises in *Schwaben*, near a Village call'd *Tone Eschingen*, whence tending Eastwards, it receives two small Rivulets, and soon after divides and encircles the City *Ulm*, where it begins to be Navigable, and having receiv'd the *Iler Gumt*, *Minael* and *Wernitz*, passes on through *Bavaria* receiving the *Lech* at *Lechmund*, the *Altmul* at *Kelheim*, the *Nab*, *Regen*, *Iffer* and *Inn*, watering by the way the Cities *Newburg*, *Ingolstadt*, *Ratisbon*, and *Stranbingen*; thence passes through *Austria*, where, having water'd *Lintz*, it is encreas'd by the Rivers *Fraun*, *Ens*, and others of smaller note, and then runs by the Walls of *Vienna*, receiving the small River *Wien*, (whence that City hath its Name) and afterwards the *Moraw*, pursuing its course still Eastward into *Hungary*, where it passes by *Presburg* and *Gran*; then, tending Southward, it passes by *Buda* and *Belgrade*, being exceedingly encreased by the *Drave*, which it receives at *Esseck*, and the *Save* at *Belgrade*; after which it loses its name and is call'd *Ister*, and running Eastward between *Servia* and *Wallachia*, as also between *Moldavia* and *Bulgaria*, falls at last into the *Black* or *Euxine* Sea in six Mouths, which part *Bulgaria* from *Besserabia*, after having run above 11 hundred Miles an end. It is very broad, runs with a very rapid Current, and hath three great Cataracts, which are, 1. The *Saw-Russel*, or *Swine's Snout*, near *Lintz*, so call'd from a pointed Rock hanging over, which hath under it a dangerous Whirlpool. 2. *Der Strudel* near *Greinen* in *Austria*, where the falling of the Water makes a horrid Noise. And, 3. *Der Warbel*, another very dangerous Whirlpool. The *Rhine* rises in two Springs in the *Alps*, which falling into *Switzerland*, unite near the City *Cur* or *Coir*, and soon after dilates it self into a large Lake, call'd the *Boden* Sea, or *Lake of Constance*; whence passing Westward to *Basil*, it runs up to the North, and runs between *Schwaben* and *Alsace* into the *Palatinate*, receiving the *Nekar* at *Manheim*, and the *Maine* at *Mentz*; then runs to *Coblentz*, where

it recieves the *Moselle*; afterwards waters *Cologne* and passes on thro' the Dutchy of *Cleeve*, receiving the *Rocer* and the *Lippe*, and other smaller Rivers by the way, and passes into the *Netherlands* at *Schenckenschans*. Of its Course afterwards we have already given an account. It is very broad, even two English miles (as some say) at *Schenckenschans*, and its course very swift, but the Navigation of it is interrupted by nine Cataracts; the most remarkable whereof are two in *Switzerland*, one near *Schaffhausen* (where the whole River falls 75 Foot) and the other near *Lauffenburg*. 3. The *Elbe* rises out of the Mountains near *Hirschlung* in *Silesia*, upon the Confines of *Bobemia*, in eleven several Springs, which being united, pass Northward between *Misnia* and *Lusatia* into *Saxony*, receiving by the way the *Warlitz*, *Orlitz*, *Meldau* and *Agra*, passes by *Magdeburg*, *Lauenburg* and *Hamburg*, and a little below *Gluckstadt* divides into two Branches which fall into the German Ocean; it is very large and deep at *Hamburg*, which is above 70 Miles from the Sea; Ships of 4 or 500 Tun ride at Anchor in it. 2. The *Oder* springs in *Moravia*, and after a Current of 300 English Miles, through *Brandenburg* and *Pomerania*, falls into the *Baltick* Sea. 4. The *Weser* rises in the Mountains of *Thuringen*, runs through *Hessen* and *Westphalia*, and empties it self into the Ocean below *Bremen*.

Other Rivers of smaller note the Reader will discover the Course of, in the following Description of the Country; as also an account of the Mineral Waters, Baths, Mines, Mountains, Forests, Lakes, &c. found in several Parts of this great Nation.

### Of the Inhabitants of Germany.

Whether *Germany* was Peopled after the Flood by *Ascanas* the Grandchild of *Japhet*, or whether *Tuisco*, who some say was the Son of that *Ascanas*, and others the Son of *Noah*, was the Conductor of the first Colony hither, is uncertain. *Cluverius* affirms the former, assigning the very Year when this Plantation was made, viz. The 136th after the Flood; and *Verslegan* pleads hard for the latter. However that be, it is certain that *Germany* was Peopl'd very early. The ancient *Germans* had two Deities call'd *Teuto* or *Tuisco*, and *Mannus* his Son, under which Names, by their Songs and Festivals, they honour'd God the Maker of the World, and *Adam* the Propagator of Humane Kind. And from the Names of the former of these two Deities, had the appellation of the *Teutsche* Nation, which by the mutation of T for D is now made *Duytsche*; and the Country *Duytschland*.

Much Dispute hath risen among the Etymologists concerning the derivation of *German* and *Alman*, two other Names of this Nation: The most agree'd on is, That *Gar* signifying *all*, they were call'd *Gar Man*, q. d. *all Man*, denoting their great Manliness and Valour. *All* signifies the same, and therefore *Alman* is but a synonymous Term, signifying the same thing with *German*; though others assign the reason of that denomination to be the many Nations of them, and that it was first given 'em in the Year 358. when they muster'd up a great Army from all parts against the *Romans*; which being a mixture of many sorts of Men, it was call'd an Army of *Almanner*: Which Word afterwards was us'd by the *Italians*, *Spaniards* and *French*, to signify the whole Nation of *Germans*. Again, others say, That the name *Almain*, belong'd to the People of *Schwaben*,



which they took from *Mannus* the Son of *Tuisco*; and that it became not universal, till those Dukes, having obtain'd the Imperial Dignity and kept it many Years, made the Name of the Inhabitants of that Region be extended to the whole Country.

By what we have said, the Reader will judge, That the **TEMPER** of the Inhabitants was Martial; which indeed they were, so far as to oppose the *Romans* for 210 Years, but cannot however be esteem'd to deserve the Character their Name implies; For though they are generally of large Bodies, with big Bones, much Flesh and strong Sinews; they want Spirit to actuate their large Bulk, and Heat to concoct the Phlegmatick Humour where-with their Bodies are fill'd, and therefore are better at guarding a Post than gaining Ground. 'Tis true, in our Days they have notably oppos'd the *Turks*, fought many Battles, and acquir'd great Honour by the glorious Victories they have obtained over those Infidels. They are generally good natur'd, free from Malice and Subtily, much addicted to both Drunkenness and Gluttony, but not over-much to Venery. The poorer sort are Laborious, Sincere and Honest. The Nobility are Men of great Honour, and commonly Scholars. All the Sons of a Noble Man inherit their Father's Title, which exceedingly increases the number of the Nobility, and the more, because the German Women are generally good Breeders; and by that means the Estates of the Princes are so often divided for the sake of younger Children, that the Principalities and Sovereign Lordships have increased to a vast number. All the Nobility scorn Marriage with a Commoner; wherefore the younger Brothers are often oblig'd to take up Arms, or enter into Orders, whereby they are enabled to keep up the Grandeur of the Family, especially by the latter, because the Ecclesiastical Preferments here are both Numerous and Rich. The Women are of good Complexions, Corpulent, and very Fruitful, as we have said, and more obsequious to their Husbands than our Women, many not sitting at Table with them, and none having the upper Place there.

The **GENIUS** of the *Germans* hath appear'd in the Invention and Improvement of many Mechanical Arts, whereof Clock-work especially is owing to them. In this Art they have exceeded all the World in the contrivance of variety of Motions, to shew not only the Course of the Hours and Minutes, but even of the Sun, Moon and Stars; whereof the Clocks at *Strasburg*, *Prague*, and many other Places all over *Germany*, are sufficient Instances. The Emperor *Charles V.* had a Watch in the Jewel of his Ring; and in the Elector of *Saxony's* Stable, is to be seen a Clock in the Pommel of a Saddle. The Story of *Regio Monachus's* wooden Eagle, that flew an English Mile to meet the Emperor *Maximilian*, and return'd with him to *Norimberg*; as also of the Iron Fly (made by the same Person) that flew round the Room, and return'd to his Hand, are seriously related by *Keckerman* and *Peter Ramus*. The *Germans* claim the Invention of the Art of **PRINTING**, whereof something hath been already said in our description of *Hærlæm*; but because that Art is so very curious, and hath been so serviceable to the World, we shall a little enlarge in the History of it. We have said already, That *Lawrence Coster* of *Hærlæm* found out the Art by accident, and had brought it to some perfection, but was robb'd of his Materials by a Servant who fled with 'em to *Germany*: This the *Dutch* Men say; but the *Germans* alledge, That *John Gut-*

*temburg*, an Alderman of *Strasburg*, first Invented it in the Year 1440. and remov'd with it to *Mentz*, Printed several Books, in which he made use of Cast Letters of Metal in the same manner as now used. The *Hollanders* in answer affirm, that it was *Coster's* Servant that taught *Guttemburg*, and that the Servant's Name was *John Faust*; which Name is set in all the first Printed Books, as the Printer of them. *Tully's* Offices, Printed in 1465. is to be seen in the *Bodleian Library* at *Oxford*, and in many other Places, with this Inscription at the end: *Præfens M. Tullii clarissimum opus, Johannes Faust, Moguntinus Cives, non atramento, plumali, canna neq; aurea, Sed arte quadam perpulcra Petri manu pueri mei feliciter efficit, finito Anno MCCCCLXV.* *Angelus Rocca* in his Account of the *Vatican Library* (Printed at *Rome* in 1501.) lays, that he had seen *Donatus's* Grammar, Printed upon Vellum with this Inscription at the beginning; *Johannes Faustus, Cives Moguntinus, Avus Maternus Joannis Schæffer, primus excitavit imprimendi artem Typis æren: Quos deinde plumbeas invenit: multaque ad poliendam artem addidit ejus filius Petrus Schæffer: Impressus est autem hic Donatus primum omnium, A. D. MCCCCL. Admonitus certe fuit ex Donato Hollandicè prius impressio in tabula incisa.* In an old Chronicle of *Colen*, Printed in 1496. 'tis said, That the hint of this Art was given from *Holland*, where an Impression of this *Donatus* had been made before that of *Mentz*. So that upon the whole, the Invention may be granted to *Holland*, but improved and propagated in *Germany*: whence it was carried again to *Holland*, and from thence brought to *England* very early, by *Caxton* and *Tourner*, whom *King Henry VI.* sent at his own expence to learn it: These prevail'd upon one of the Printer's Men at *Hærlæm* to steal away and come with them to *England*; where being arrived, they set to Work at *Oxford*, and having taught other Men, Printing-houses were set up at *Westminster*, *S. Albans*, *Worcester*, and other Places. There is now to be seen at *Oxford*, *S. Jerom* upon the Creed with this at the end; *Explicit expositio Sancti Jeronimi in symbolo Apostolorum ad Papam Laurentium. Impressa Oxoniæ Et finita Anno Domini, MCCCCLXVIII. xvii die Decembris.*

But to return to the *Germans*,

The Invention of Guns is undisputedly theirs, which was also produc'd by an Accident, in this manner. One *Bartbold Schwartz*, a Friar, in making Chymical Experiments, had one Day mixed some Saltpetre and Brimstone with other Ingredients, and set them upon the Fire in a Crucible; but a Spark getting in, the Pot suddenly broke with great violence and wonderful noise; which unexpected effect surpriz'd him at first, but thinking farther on the Matter, he repeated the Experiment, and finding the effect constant, set himself at work to improve it: To which purpose he caused an Iron Pipe to be made with a small Hole at the lower end to fire it at, and putting in some of his new Ingredient, together with some small Stones, set Fire to it, and found it answer'd his expectation in penetrating all before it. This happen'd about the Year 1330. and was soon improv'd to the making of great Ordnance, &c.

To these Inventions of the *Germans*, we may add their improvement of the Art of Chymistry; which being brought hither by *Albertus Magnus*, was very much studied by the Monks, and much time lost by them in the search of the Philosopher's Stone, and the Study of the *Resurrection* Philosophy.

The



The RELIGION of the ancient *Germans* was Paganism, which was driven out of several parts of it by the Preaching of *S. Clemens*, *S. Crescens*, *S. Mark*, *S. Maternus*, *S. Eutharius*, and other the immediate Successors of the Apostles : So that in the middle of the second Century, Christianity was in a flourishing State in *Germany*, as is testified by *S. Irenaeus*. But the remote Northern Parts remain'd long in their blind Superstition ; the *Saxons* not being Converted till the time of *Charles* the Great, as we shall shew more particularly when we come to speak of that Nation.

The Corruptions that crept into the *Romish* Church in the middle Ages, dispers'd themselves hither, and were generally believ'd, before *John Huss* and *Jerom* of *Prague*, about the Year 1407. oppos'd those Errors, and Preach'd up the Doctrin of *Wiclif* ; for which they were both Burnt at the Council of *Constance* : But their Followers in *Bohemia* being numerous, obtain'd a Tolleration of the Emperor, and continued administering the Sacraments in both kinds, and in several things acting contrary to the Church of *Rome* : In which State the Reformation stood when *Luther* appear'd for it, upon the following occasion :

In the Year 1517. *Pope Leo X.* in pursuance of the pretended Power of the Popes in pardoning Sins, sent abroad his Letters and Bulls, promising Pardons to all that would purchase them with Mony : And the Friars were employ'd to Preach up the Doctrin, and Offices establish'd in several parts of *Germany*, to receive the Mony that the ignorant People gave for the Indulgences the Collectors were impower'd to give them. These Preachers continually buzzing in the People's Ears the Efficacy of the Pope's Pardons, and the mercenary manner of prostituting of them, rais'd Indignation in many ; and therefore *Martin Luther* was soon favour'd in opposing it. He was a Doctor of Divinity, and an *Augustine* Friar, living at *Wittenberg* in *Saxony* : At which Place, in the same Year, 1517. he began to Preach against the Pope's Power of pardoning Sins ; and publish'd *Theses* concerning Purgatory, Penance, &c. which were answer'd by *Tetzelius*, *Eckius*, *Prierias* and others, on the Pope's side. To which *Luther* reply'd ; and being now favour'd by *Frederick* the Elector of *Saxony*, proceeded in time from one Point to another, till he shook the very Foundation of the *Roman* Church ; a publick Disputation being held at *Liepsick* in 1519. between him and *Eckius*, wherein the Authority and Primacy of the Pope was the Subject of the Argument. And in a few Years, not only the Elector of *Saxony*, but the Dukes of *Brunswick*, *Mecklenburg*, and *Lunenbourg*, the Marquess of *Brandenburg*, the Landgrave of *Hesse*, together with several other Princes and many Imperial Cities, embrac'd his Doctrin. In 1529. a Decree was made against it by the Diet at *Spire* ; against which, the Elector of *Saxony*, the Marquess of *Brandenburg*, the Dukes of *Lunenbourg*, the Landgrave, together with the Deputies of *Strasbourg*, *Norimberg*, *Ulm*, *Constance*, and ten other Imperial Cities, enter'd a publick Protestation ; which gave Occasion to the Name of *PROTESTANT*, the *Lutherans* from that time being so call'd. In the next Year, the Princes above-mentioned presented the Confession of their Faith to the Emperor, in the Diet at *Augsburg* ; which being reject'd, and a Decree made against their Opinions, the Protestant Princes and Cities met at *Smalcald*, and enter'd into a Defensive League about the end of the same Year, 1530. and not long after a War

broke out, between them and the Emperor, which lasted many Years, till in the end the Emperor comply'd ; and, by the Pacification of *Paffaw* in 1552. agreed, that Matters concerning Religion should be referred to the Diet ; which being assembled at *Augsburg* in the Year 1555. decreed, That neither the Emperor, nor any other Prince or State, should in any manner whatsoever hurt or injure any Man for the Confession of the *Augustan* (or Protestant) Religion, nor force any of the Princes to forsake their Religion, Ceremonies or Laws, which they had already instituted in their Dominions, or which chose of the *Augustan* Confession should thereafter Institute, or that the Emperors or Princes should condemn the same, but suffer them freely to Profess this Religion, and quietly enjoy their Goods and Estates ; together with much more to that Purpose, as may be seen, at large, in *Sleidan's* Hist. of the Reform. in *Germany*, lately Translated into *English*. So that at present the *Lutheran* Religion is profess'd in the Dominions of all those Princes and Cities above-mentioned, and many others ; as the *Roman* Catholick is in *Austria*, *Bavaria*, the Spiritual Electorates, &c.

The *Germans* value themselves extremely upon speaking a Primitive LANGUAGE, and have obstinately refus'd to borrow Words of their Neighbours, tho' they are forc'd to make very uncouth Compounds, to be able to express themselves intelligibly. The Radical Words themselves are very harsh, and abound with Consonants ; and many of these being put together, fill the Mouth, 'tis true, and make a thundering Sound, which is call'd *Manly* ; but to a Stranger it seems as untuneable as the *Welch*, and as difficult to learn. Compounds, 'tis granted, is an Elegancy, but excess in every thing is ill ; and no Language is copious enough of it self to furnish all Words ; which themselves begin to be sensible of, and do therefore now admit some few *French* words, for the better and more intelligible expressing themselves. In short, the High Dutch hath the Reputation of a *Manly* noble Language, but withal, not tuneable or docible, and is fitter for a General than a Courtier. It extends very far, for not only in *Germany*, but in *Denmark* and *Sweden*, the High Dutch is spoken, with some variation of Dialect, as also in *Switzerland* ; not to mention *Holland* and *Flanders*, the Language whereof is of the same Original, but varied so much that the *Germans* disown it, and have given it the Name of Low Dutch for distinction.

Concerning the ANCIENT STATE of *Germany* we can only say, That from the beginning of History it was divided into many Nations, who, tho' they all Spoke the same Language, preserv'd their separate Governments ; and though by Invasion of Neighbours, and Wars among themselves, several Revolutions have happen'd in almost all the Parts, yet to this Day it is divided into a great number of Principalities, every one of which hath had a different Fate ; as the Reader will find in the following Description of them.

The greatest Monarchy that hath been in *Germany* was that of *Charles* the Great, otherwise call'd *Charlemagne*, King of *France* ; for he was not only Lord of the Parts upon the lower *Rhine* and the *Main*, but by his Arms subdued *Saxony* and *Bavaria* ; and acquiring the Honour of Emperor of the *Romans*, resid'd with it here ; and *Germany* hath ever since been call'd, *The Sacred Roman Empire*.

But



But to be inform'd how *Charles* attain'd this titular Honour, it is necessary to look back into the latter State of *Italy*, and see by what degrees the *Roman* Monarchy declin'd, and at last expir'd in the Person of *Augustulus*. 300 Years before the time of *Charles* the Great: The beginning whereof must be dated from *Constantine* the Great; for tho' he was a very wise and excellent Prince, yet by removing the Seat of the Empire to *Byzantium* (now call'd *Constantinople*) he left these Western Parts naked, and exposed to the Ravages of those swarms of Northern People that soon after invaded them. At his Death *Constantine* dividing the Empire between his Sons, first erected the Eastern and Western Empires, the Seat of one being *Constantinople*, and the other *Rome*: But the latter became again united under the Eastern Emperor, and continued so till the Death of *Theodosius*, who again divided it for the sake of his two Sons *Arcadius* and *Honorius*; these were succeeded for about 80 Years by several Eastern and Western Emperors, but both the one and the other very sensibly declin'd; especially the Western Empire, by the Invasion of the *Goths* and other barbarous Northern Nations (who seiz'd its Provinces, invaded *Italy*, and sack'd even *Rome* it self) was brought very low, and none of the latter Emperors made any considerable figure in the World: The last of them was *Augustulus*, against whom *Odoacer* King of the *Heruli* waged War, subdued a great part of *Italy*, took *Augustulus* Prisoner, and made him resign the Empire, and finally determine that Dignity: This happen'd about the Year 476. The *Heruli* reign'd but a little while, being Conquer'd by the *Ostrogoths*, and those at last driven out by *Justinian*, and *Italy* again made a part of the Eastern Empire; till (the Power of those Emperors being much declin'd) the Popes found means to obtain the Temporal as well as Spiritual Jurisdiction over a great part of it; and the *Lombards* conquer'd another large part, and erected a considerable Monarchy; which at last, the Popes grew uneasy at, and therefore stirred up the *French* Kings against them; and Pope *Adrian* I. being besieged in *Rome* by *Desiderius* King of *Lombardy*, sent to *Charlemain* for assistance; who accordingly invaded *Lombardy*, overcame *Desiderius*, and was himself Crowned King: By which he became Lord of a great part of *Italy*, as he was before of *Germany* and *France*. Upon this occasion it was that the Pope, in gratitude for the Service he had done him, and to secure to himself so powerful a Protector, by consent of the People of *Rome*, declared *Charles* Emperor, and erected anew the Western Empire. But inasmuch as the Pope was Lord of the Territory about *Rome*, and *Charles* in his turn must shew his Gratitude, he left that City to the Pope, and fixed the Seat of the Empire in *Germany*; which was also more convenient to him, because more in the middle of his Dominions. Thus *Germany* became the Seat of the Western Empire; which Dignity (tho' but a shadow of the ancient *Roman*) it has ever since born, under the Government of these following Princes.

*A Chronological Table of the Emperors of Germany.*

	Reg. Y.
<i>Charles</i> the Great began to Reign	800 12
<i>Louis</i> the Godly, his Son	814 26
<i>Lotharius</i> , Son to <i>Louis</i>	840 15
<i>Lewis</i> II. Son to <i>Lotharius</i>	855 19
<i>Charles</i> the Bald, Son of <i>Lewis</i> I.	875 2
<i>Lewis</i> the Bald, Son of <i>Charles</i>	878 1

<i>Charles</i> the Great his Son	879 9
He was deposed, and	
<i>Arnolf</i> Son of <i>Carloman</i> , Duke of <i>Carinthia</i> and King of <i>Bavaria</i> , elected Emperor	888 12
<i>Lewis</i> IV. Son of <i>Arnolf</i> , elected	900 12
<i>Conrad</i> Duke of <i>Francia</i> , elected	912 7
<i>Henry</i> the Fowler, D. of <i>Saxony</i> , elected	919 26
<i>Otto</i> the Son of <i>Henry</i>	936 37
<i>Otto</i> II. succeeded his Father	973 11
<i>Otto</i> III. Son of <i>Otto</i> II. in whose time the manner of choosing the Emp. by the 7 Electors 'tis said was instituted	984 18
<i>Henry</i> Duke of <i>Bavaria</i> , chosen by the Princes	1002 22
<i>Conrad</i> . elected	1024 15
<i>Henry</i> the Son of <i>Conrad</i>	1039 17
<i>Henry</i> IV. his Son	1056 50
<i>Henry</i> V. his Son	1106 19
<i>Lotharius</i> Duke of <i>Saxony</i>	1125 13
<i>Conrad</i> Duke of <i>Schwaben</i>	1138 14
<i>Frederick</i> <i>Barbarossa</i> Duke of <i>Schwaben</i>	1138 31
<i>Henry</i> his Son	1190 8
<i>Philip</i> Brother to <i>Henry</i> , elected, but Excommunicated by the Pope	1198 10
<i>Otto</i> Duke of <i>Brunswick</i> , also chosen Emperor.	
<i>Otto</i> Son of <i>Henry</i> the Lion, D. of <i>Saxony</i>	1208 4
<i>Frederick</i> II. King of <i>Sicily</i> , Grandson of <i>Frederick</i> <i>Barbarossa</i>	1212 38
<i>Conrad</i> IV. Son of <i>Frederick</i> , against whom six other Princes were elected by the several Factions now risen in <i>Germany</i> , on account of the Popes assuming Power over the Emperor: Among these seven, <i>Richard</i> Earl of <i>Cornwall</i> , Brother to our <i>Henry</i> III. was one. After a long Interregnum	
<i>Rodolph</i> Earl of <i>Hapsburg</i> was unanimously elected	1273 19
<i>Adolf</i> Earl of <i>Nassau</i>	1292 6
<i>Albert</i> Duke of <i>Austria</i> set up against <i>Adolph</i> , whom he slew, and was Crowned	1298 10
<i>Henry</i> Duke of <i>Luxemburg</i>	1308
Poisoned by a Monk in administering him the Sacrament, after he had reigned	4 Y. 9 M.
An Interregnum.	
<i>Lewis</i> Duke of <i>Bavaria</i> , elected	1318 28
<i>Charles</i> IV. Son of <i>John</i> K. of <i>Bohemia</i>	1346 32
<i>Wenceslaus</i> Son to <i>Charles</i>	1378 22
<i>Rupe</i> Elector Palatine	1400 10
<i>Fodocus</i> <i>Barbarus</i> Marquess of <i>Moravia</i>	1410 5 M.
<i>Sigismund</i> Earl of <i>Luxemburg</i> , Brother of <i>Wenceslaus</i> King of <i>Bohemia</i> and <i>Hungary</i>	1411 27
<i>Albert</i> II. D. of <i>Austria</i> Son of <i>Sigismund</i>	1439 1
<i>Frederick</i> III. Duke of <i>Austria</i>	1440 53
<i>Maximilian</i> Son of <i>Frederick</i> , crowned King of the <i>Romans</i> in his Father's time, and succeeded him	1493 25
<i>Charles</i> V. Son of <i>Philip</i> King of <i>Spain</i> , and Grandson of <i>Maximilian</i>	1519 38
<i>Ferdinand</i> Brother to <i>Charles</i>	1558 6
<i>Maximilian</i> II. Son of <i>Ferdinand</i>	1564 12
<i>Rodolph</i> <i>Maximilian's</i> Son	1576 36
<i>Matthias</i> Brother to <i>Rodolph</i>	1612 7
<i>Ferdinand</i> of <i>Gartz</i> , Grandson of <i>Ferdinand</i> I.	1619 17
<i>Ferdinand</i> III. succeeded his Father	1637 20
<i>LEOPOLD</i> Son of <i>Ferdinand</i> III. elected July 8th	1658 47
<i>JOSEPH</i> [now Reigning]	1705

The



The late EMPEROR was born *Jun. 9. 1640.* nominated King of *Hungary, Jun. 27. 1655.* King of *Bohemia Aug. 2. 1656.* elected King of the *Romans, June 18. 1658.* and crown'd Emperor, *July 22.* He marry'd *Margaret of Austria,* Daughter to *Philip IV* King of *Spain.* and Sister to the late King of *France,* on the 12th of *April, 1663.* She died *Nov. 20. 1673.* leaving Issue one Daughter, who was marry'd to the present Elector of *Bavaria.* The Emperor marry'd again *Octob. 15. 1673.* *Claudia,* Daughter to *Ferdinand* Arch-Duke of *Inspach,* who died *Apr. 5. 1676.* leaving no Issue. He marry'd a third time on the 6th of *Jan. 1677.* *Mary,* eldest Daughter of *Philip* Duke of *Nemburg,* now Elector Palatine, by whom he left Issue

*JOSEPHUS Jacobus-Ignatius-Johannes-Antonius-Eustachius,* born *July 16. 1678.* He was Crown'd King of *Hungary* in 1688. and chosen King of the *Romans, Jan. 24. 1690.* and succeeded his Father, who died *May 5. 1705.* in the Empire.

*CAROLUS Franciscus-Josephus, &c.* born *Oct. 1. 1685.* now King of *Spain.*

And several Daughters.

### *Of the Power of the Emperor.*

Having shewn how the King of *Germany* obtain'd the pompous Title of *Romanorum Imperator,* and how many Princes have succeeded in that Dignity, it remains that we speak something of the Territories subject to his Dominions and of his Power. It is plain, by what we have already said, That *Charles* the Great got nothing but a bare Title by the Pope's saluting him Emperor: *Germany* and *France* were already in his possession, *Lombardy* he had just conquer'd, *Spain* had been long possess'd by the *Goths,* and the Popes had a good part of *Italy;* so that the Citizens of *Rome* had nothing to bestow upon him but the Honour, when they declar'd him their Emperor. However, that Title his Successors have been careful in preserving, and always write themselves *Cæsar* in memory of *Julius,* and *Augustus* from *Octavius,* in imitation of the *Roman* Emperors: They also call *Germany* the *Sacred Roman Empire,* and endeavour in all things to keep up the Grandeur of those ancient Princes. The Dominions of *Charlemain* were soon divided; his Son *Louis* the Godly erecting out of 'em many Kingdoms, as we have already shewn in our account of the Kings of *France:* *Germany* with the Imperial Honour he gave to his eldest Son *Lotharius;* but his Posterity proving mean degenerate Persons, they soon lost it, and several Princes were afterwards elected to that Dignity; *Germany* in time being divided among many Princes, whose Powers were exceedingly increas'd by the Offices and Dignities that the Emperors conferr'd on them, and at several times made Hereditary to their Families. These Offices were *Hertogen,* or Dukes, to whom were committed the Government of the larger parts of *Germany;* *Graffen,* or Earls, who had the care of smaller parts; *Pfaltzgraven,* Counts Palatine, or Præfects of the Court Royal, who administred Justice in the Verge of the Court: *Landgraves,* who were Presidents set over Provinces; *Marggraves,* or Marquisses, who were Presidents of the Marches or Borders for repelling the Incursions of Enemies and administering Justice to the Inhabitants: also *Burggraves,* who were Governors of the Royal Castles or Forts. These Offices being made Hereditary, the Possessors of them in time obtain'd Sovereign Authority in their respective Governments; which the Em-

perors, either thro' their own Liberality, or being prevail'd on by Money or Service, or oblig'd by some exigency of Affairs, have at several times confirm'd to them: So that at present, tho' the Emperor be supreme Lord over all *Germany,* he is not, as Emperor, Master of any particular part of it except some few of the Princes Estates that have return'd to the Crown as Fiefs for want of Heirs, it being all subject to the several Princes; whereof 'tis true, the present Emperor, as Arch-Duke of *Austria,* is the Richest.

The Power of the Emperor hath been so restrain'd by several Capitularies or Agreements between the Emperors and Princes, that 'tis difficult to say what it is: The best Account that can be given of it is. That he exercises Regal Authority all over *Germany,* except in such things as by Grants of his Predecessors he is restrain'd; the chief of which are as follows, according to a late Author that collected it out of them. First, the Emperor hath not the Legislative Power. The general Law all over the Empire is the Civil or *Roman,* mix'd with the Canon, and the old Customs of the *Germans,* and in the several states the particular Laws made by them, which firmly oblige in their own Dominions. To these are added the Statutes of the Diets, by which alone can any new Law be introduc'd, or any Law made that will bind all the States; and such Statute or Recess (as it is call'd) of the Diet, obliges the Emperor also. Next, the Emperor cannot levy Taxes. If there be occasion for Money to be rais'd for the Service of the Empire in general, it cannot be done without the consent of the Diet. By the Capitulary of the present Emperor, he is ty'd up from beginning a War, or making Alliance with a Foreigner, without the consent of the Electors. By the same it is declar'd, That the Emperor shall not deprive any Prince or State of their Dignity or Dominions. Nor can he impose Religion on any Prince or State, or punish any Man on that account.

But what I have been saying of the limitation of the Emperor's Power, is to be understood of him as he is Emperor; for in his own Hereditary Dominions he may act as he pleases, with respect to the particular Laws there: Wherefore, the present Emperor being King of *Hungary* and *Bohemia,* Arch-Duke of *Austria,* Duke of *Silesia,* and Marquess of *Moravia,* Duke of *Stiria, Carinthia* and *Carniola,* Earl of *Tyrol, Cilley* and *Gorice,* and Lord of many Cities and Territories in *Schwaben,* besides what he has lately gain'd from the *Turks,* is a very powerful and mighty Prince, and able to carry on a War at his own Expence, tho' the Diet should happen to disagree with him.

The Emperor only can confer Honours, create Princes, and affranchise Cities; all the Princes receive Investiture from him; he instituteth Universities; and 'tis he only can give leave to build Cities. He is serv'd by the greatest Princes of *Germany,* address'd to by the name of *Cæsar,* and *semper Augustus,* and his Ambassadors in Foreign Courts take place of those of all the Kings and States of *Europe.*

### *Of the King of the Romans, the Electors of the Empire, and the other Princes of Germany.*

The King of the *Romans* is a Dignity erected of late Ages, being begun in the time of *Charles IV.* He is chosen to be the Emperor's Deputy in case of his Absence or Sickness, and upon his Death to succeed



ceed him without other Election. This was introduced in Policy by the Emperors, that they might in their Lives time secure the Succession to their Family, and procure their Successors better Terms than they might be able to obtain in a Vacancy. This Dignity therefore is not constantly in being, and hath been only conferr'd when the Emperors have had a Son to succeed, and have had Interest enough to engage the Electors to chuse him. The present Emperor was elected to this Honour on the 24th Jan. 1653, and Crown'd at *Augsburg* two Days after.

The Electoral Princes are Nine in number, viz.  
 1. The Archbishop of *Mentz*, who is styl'd Arch-Chancellor of *Germany*, Dean of the Electoral College, sits on the Emperor's right Hand in the Diet, and had formerly the right of Crowning the King of *Bohemia*.  
 2. The Archbishop of *Trier*, who is call'd Arch-Chancellor of *France* and the Kingdom of *Aries*, and claims the first Vote in the Election of the Emperor; he sits over against the Emperor in the Diet.  
 3. The Archbishop of *Colen*, he has the Title of Arch-Chancellor of *Italy*, claims the first Vote in chusing the King of the *Romans*, and of setting the Crown on his Head; he sits next the Emperor on his left Hand.  
 4. The King of *Bohemia*, he is Lord Cup-bearer to the Emperor, next of the secular Electors, and in publick Processions walks next the Emperor, or King of the *Romans*.  
 5. The Duke of *Bavaria*, who is Lord Sewer, and carrieth the Globe before the Emperor in solemn Processions.  
 6. The Duke of *Saxony*, he is Lord High-Marshal of the Empire, and carrieth the naked Sword before the Emperor.  
 7. The Marquess of *Brandenburg*, he is Lord High-Chamberlain, and in Processions carrieth the Scepter before the Emperor.  
 8. The Count Palatine of the *Rhine*, who is Lord High-Treasurer, and in the Procession at the Coronation scatters the Medals among the People.  
 9. The Duke of *Brunswick-Lunenbourg-Hannover*.

These have much greater Authority, and enjoy larger Privileges and Rights than the other Princes of *Germany*. They chuse the Emperor and King of the *Romans*, and pretend a Power of Deposing him. In some cases they exclude the rest of the States, and consult by themselves Matters of greatest Importance; the Emperor is oblig'd to ask their Advice when he calls a Diet. In an *Interregnum* the Elector of *Saxony* and the Elector Palatine of the *Rhine* govern the Empire; in which case, the Jurisdiction of the former extends over all the Northern part, and the latter governs all the Countries on the *Rhine*, the Circle of *Schwarzen*, &c. but the Duke of *Bavaria* disputes this Right with the Count Palatine, and at the Death of the former Emperor did actually take the Office upon him; which the other protested against, and complain'd of as an Usurpation upon his Right.

At what time, or by what means, these Princes first obtain'd the Electoral Power, is not certainly known: The common Opinion is, That the Emperor *Otho III.* and Pope *Gregory V.* instituted them; but this is disputed, and many learned Men are of Opinion, That tho' it be true that from the time of *Otho* the Empire was elective, yet that the Elections were not made by these seven Princes only, but by the great Officers of the Empire in general; of whom these being the chief, and most considerable by their Estates, made a shift to overtop the rest, and assume that Power wholly to themselves; this is dated from the time of *Frederick II.* and *Conrad IV.* at the Death of the last of which, several Elections were made at the same time, and the Affairs of *Germany* put into great

disorder thereby. But these Princes having Power enough to repeal this Act, made it a Custom, which was at last pass'd into a Law by the Emperor *Charles IV.* who made that famous *Bulla Aurea* (so call'd from the Golden Seal affix'd to it) that contains the whole Form of the Election and Power of the Electors. The number of these Electors were then but Seven, to whom an Eighth was added in the last Age on the following occasion: *Frederick V.* Count Palatine, falling into difference with the Emperor, and accepting of the Crown of *Bohemia* in opposition to the pretention of *Ferdinand II.* was by him proscrib'd; and being defeated at the Battle of *Prague*, in the Year 1620. was depriv'd of his Country and Honours, which the Emperor bestow'd upon the Duke of *Bavaria*: But great Contests and Wars ensuing thereupon, it was at last agreed in the *Westphalian Treaty*, A. D. 1648. That the Count Palatine should be restor'd to his Electoral Dignity. But because the Duke of *Bavaria* could not be brought to part with his, an eighth Electorate was erected for him, and part of his Country, viz. the *Lower Palatinate*, being restor'd, he has since had the Title of *Electo Palatine of the Rhine*, and the eighth Seat in the Electoral College. To this Number there has been yet another added very lately, viz. in the Year 1693. and by the Emperor's Favour conferr'd on *Ernestus Augustus*, Duke of *Brunswick-Lunenbourg-Hannover*.

The other Princes are, the Dukes of *Lunenbourg*, *Mecklenbourg*, *Wurtemberg*, *Sax-Lauenbourg*, *Sax-Naumburg*, *Sax-Hall*, *Sax-Goth*, *Sax-Mersburg*, &c. the Marquisses of *Baden*, *Culembach*, &c. the Landgraves of *Hesse*, the Princes of *East Friezland*, *Anhalt*, *Montbelliard*, *Birkfield*, *Nassaw*, *Furstenbourg*, *Hohen-zolieren*, &c. the Counts of *Solm*, *Dietrichstein*, *Aversburg*, with many others. As also, the Archbishop of *Salzburg*, the Bishops of *Munster*, *Liege*, *Wurzburg*, *Bamberg*, *Paderborn*, *Osnaburg*, *Aichstadt*, *Strasburg*, *Augsburg*, *Basil*, *Constance*, *Hildesheim*, *Spire*, *Worms*, *Passaw* and *Lubeck*, together with some Abbots, and the great Master of the *Teutonic Order*, &c. These have Sovereign Authority in their own Estates, and govern their Subjects without Cognizance of the Emperor.

There is yet another Class of Sovereign States in *Germany*, viz.

### *The Imperial Cities and Hanse-Towns.*

The Cities of *Germany* were, from their beginning, endow'd with large Privileges, which were given by the Princes that built them, to invite the People to inhabit them, and leave the rude manner of Living they had been accusom'd to before the Fifth Century after Christ. Accordingly, upon this encouragement, they flock'd to the Cities, and betook themselves to Manufactures and Trades; by which, being in time grown Rich, many of the Cities obtain'd by purchase, or otherwise, exemption from the Jurisdiction of the Princes in whose Dominions they stood; and by permission of the Emperors, at several times, were erected into independent States, to be govern'd by their own Magistrates under the Protection of the Emperor, each City paying its Proportion in all Taxes levy'd for the publick Service of the Empire; and these are those Cities that are call'd Imperial and Free, and are very numerous, the Catalogue of them would be too tedious; the Reader will find them noted in the following Description, to which we refer him. These Cities have frequently made

Leagues



Leagues for their mutual Defence, as also for the sake of Trade; upon which account was form'd the famous

*Hanseatick Society*, which was a League made between several of the Maritime Cities of Germany, (whereof *Hamburg* and *Lubeck* were the chief) about the end of the 13th Century, for their mutual assistance in carrying on their Commerce, by which they grew very considerable, and engag'd many Cities into their Society, even to the number of near four-score; they also obtain'd large Privileges, and exercis'd a Jurisdiction among themselves; to which purpose they were divided into 4 Circles, distinguish'd by the Names of the four Principal Cities among them, viz. *Lubeck*, *Cologne*, *Brunswick* and *Dantzick*, wherein were held their Courts of Judicature. They were call'd *Hanse* or *Anse*, q. d. *am zee*, on the Sea, because the Society at first consisted only of such, tho' afterwards many Inland Cities were introduc'd; 'Tis true, this Etymology is disputed, and many others assign'd; but this seems the most probable, and therefore we shall name no more. The most flourishing time of this Society was from about the Year 1400 to 1500. after which it declin'd, and is at present not very considerable.

### Of the Diet of the Empire.

The Diet, or Parliament of Germany is compos'd of the Electors, the Princes Spiritual and Temporal of the Empire, and the Deputies of the Imperial Cities. This general Assembly of all the Estates of the Empire is summon'd by the Emperor, by Letters directed to every Member six Months before the Session, informing them of the time and place. When they are assembled, the Emperor, or his Commissioner, proposes to them the Matters to be transacted, which are things that concern the whole Empire in general, such as raising Money for a Foreign War, and making Laws which oblige all the States. The Diet is divided into three Houses, which are, the Electors, the Princes, and the Cities: In the first, the Bishop of *Mentz* is Speaker; in the second, some Prince of the House of *Austria* and the Bishop of *Salzburg* by turns; and in the third, that City in which the Session is held. The Princes are divided into two Benches, the Spiritual and Temporal: The Cities are also divided into two Benches, the *Rheinische* and the *Schwabische*; on the former sit the Deputies of the Cities on the Rhine, &c. and on the latter the Cities in *Schwaben*, *Franconia*, &c. The Diet was formerly assembled annually, but latterly not so often, except at this time of War; and it is at the Emperor's pleasure to call it; only in case of his omission the Electors may advise him to it; the States judging it convenient that it be assembled once in 3 Years. The place of its Meeting is also at the Emperor's disposal; *Mentz* was by *Charles* the Great appointed for it, but it has since been held at several other free Cities; at present *Ratisbon* is the usual place of its Meeting.

### Of the Supreme Courts of Judicature.

The chief Court for determining great Causes in Germany is the Imperial Chamber: At first the Emperors with their chief Ministers heard and decided all considerable Causes; but those growing numerous,

*Maximilian* I. settled a Court at *Worms* in 1495. which was afterwards remov'd to *Spire*, and nam'd *The Imperial Chamber*, wherein Causes are try'd by certain Judges call'd Assessors: Of these at first there were Sixteen, now Fifty, whereof the Emperor appoints the President and the four chief Officers, the Electors chuse each of them one, and the rest are nam'd by other Princes and States of the Empire. Disputes between the Princes are brought before this Court, as also other Causes, by Appeal from Inferior Courts. The Seat of it was establish'd at *Spire*, never to be remov'd without consent of the Diet; but in this last War, the City having been taken and burnt by the French, it is remov'd and establish'd at *Wetlar* in *Hesse*, by consent of the Diet.

The Emperor holds another high Court in his Palace, which is call'd the Chamber of *Vienna*, and is of equal Authority with that of *Spire*: The Emperor, by himself, or Deputy, sits as Chief, and is assisted by a certain number of Judges, whereof part are Protestants. This Court decides all great Causes brought by Appeal from subordinate Courts, and claims the same Authority with the Chamber of *Spire*.

### The Archbishopricks, Bishopricks and Universities in Germany.

For the Government of the Church, there are seven Archbishopricks, and thirty five Bishopricks; which are as follow.

#### I. The Archbishop of *Mentz* hath 12 Suffragans, viz.

The Bishops of 1. *Spire*, 2. *Worms*, 3. *Strasbourg*, 4. *Wurtzburg*, 5. *Aichstat*, 6. *Verden*, 7. *Chur*, 8. *Hildesheim*, 9. *Paderborn*, 10. *Constance*, 11. *Halberstadt*, and 12. *Bamburg* exempt.

#### II. The Archbishop of *Trier* hath 3 Suffragans, viz.

The Bishops of *Metz*, *Toul* and *Verdun*:

#### III. The Archbishop of *Cologne* hath 4 Suffragans, viz.

The Bishops of *Liege*, *Munster*, *Minden* and *Osnabrug*.

#### IV. The Archbishop of *Madeburg* hath 5 Suffragans, viz.

The Bishops of *Meissen* exempt, *Maesburg*, *Naumburg*, *Brandenburg* and *Havelberg*.

#### V. The Archbishop of *Salzburg* hath 10 Suffragans, viz.

The Bishops of 1. *Freisinghen*, 2. *Ratisbon* exempt, 3. *Passaw*, 4. *Chiemsse*, 5. *Seckaw*, 6. *Lavant*, 7. *Brixen*, 8. *Gurk*, 9. *Vienna* exempt, and 10. *Newstadt*.

#### VI. The Archbishop of *Bremen* hath 3 Suffragans, viz.

The Bishops of *Lubeck*, *Ratzburg* and *Schweirin*.

#### VII. The Archbishop of *Prague* hath 3 Suffragans, viz.

The Bishops of *Olmütz*, *Leutmeritz* and *Königsgrätz*:



And, for Propagation of Learning, Universities are establish'd in these following Cities, viz.

Founded A. D.	At Marburg,	1526
At Vienna,	Strasbourg,	1538
Prague,	Gripswald,	1547
Mentz,	Dillinghen,	1549
Cologne,	Fenza,	1558
Trier,	Leuenghen, about	1560
Liege,	Helmstadt,	1576
Heidelberg,	Herbrun, now Sigen,	1589
Leipsick,		1592
Erfurt,	Paderborn,	1622
Frankfurt,	Altorf,	1607
Innsbruck,	Gieffen,	1669
Tubingen,	Olmütz in Moravia,	New
Regensburg,	Kiel,	
Wittenberg,	Gratz,	
Frankfort on the Oder,	At Hanaw, a Schola illustris.	
		1506

The **EMPIRE** is divided in **TEN CIRCLES**, which are as follow.

The Circle of the **UPPER-SAXONY**, containing the Dukedom of *Pomerania*, the Electorate of *Brandenburg* and the States of *Saxony*; the Earldoms of *Mansfield*, *Schwarzenburg*, *Stolberg* and *Barby*, the Landgraviate of *Thuringen*, the Marquisate of *Misnia*, with the Dutches of *Alzenburg*, *Mersburg* and *Naumburg* and *Voitland*; as also the Bishoprick of *Havelberg*, the Abbey of *Quedlinberg*, &c. The Director of this Circle is the Elector of *Saxony*.

The Circle of the **LOWER-SAXONY**, which contains the Dutchy of *Holstein*, the Dutchies of *Mecklenburg*, *Lawenburg*, *Bremen*, *Brunswick*, *Lunenburg*, *Hannover* and *Magdeburg*, the Principalities of *Halberstadt* and *Ferden*, the Bishopricks of *Hildesheim* and *Lubeck*. The Directors of this Circle are the Duke of *Brandenburg* and the Duke of *Brunswick* by turns.

The Circle of **WESTPHALIA**, containing the County of *Emden* or *East-Friesland*, the County of *Oldenburg* and *Delmenhorst*, the Bishoprick of *Munster*, the Principality of *Minden*, the Counties of *Diepholz*, *Hoya*, *Bentheim*, *Tecklenburg*, *Steinfurt*, *Lemgo*, *Lippe*, *Ravensburg* and *Spiegelburg*, the Bishopricks of *Osnabrug*, *Paderborn* and *Leige*, and the Abbey of *Corbey*; the Dutchy of *Westphalia*, the Dutchy of *Cleves*, the Dutchy of *Juliers*, the Dutchy of *Berg*, and the County of *Marck*. The Directors are the Bishop of *Munster* and the Duke of *Newburg*.

The Circle of the **LOWER-RHINE**, wherein are the three Spiritual Electorates and Archbishopricks of *Mentz*, *Triers* and *Cologne*, the Palatinate and the Electorate of the *Rhine*, with the Bishoprick of *Worms*. The Director is the Archbishop of *Mentz*.

The Circle of the **UPPER-RHINE** contains the Landgraviates of *Hesse* and *Darmstadt*, the Counties of *Nassau*, *Salms*, *Waldeck*, *Hanaw*, *Erpach*; the Bishoprick of *Spire*, the Abbies of *Fuld* and *Hirschfeld*, the Dutchy of *Zweibrücken* and *Alsatia*. The Elector-Palatine and the Bishop of *Worms* are the Directors.

The Circle of **FRANCONIA**, wherein are contain'd the Bishoprick of *Wurtzburg*, *Bamberg* and *Richstadt*; the Principality of *Henneberg*, the Dutchy of *Ceburg*, the Marquisate of *Culembach*, the Marquisate of *Onspach*, the Burgraviate of *Nuremberg*,

the Estate of the Great Master of the *Teutonic Order*, the Counties of *Reineck*, *Wertheim*, *Helach*, *Papenheim*, *Schwarzenberg*, *Castle Seisheim*, &c. The Directors of this Circle are the Bishop of *Bamberg*, and the Marquis of *Culembach*.

The Circle of **SCHWABEN** comprehends the Dutchy of *Wurttemberg*, with the County of *Loebenstein*, and the Principality of *Hoen-Zollerern*, the Marquisate of *Baden*, the Marquisate of *Ortnau*, the Territory of *Brisgow*, the Bishoprick of *Constance*, the Principality of *Furstemburg*, and County of *Reinfelden*, the Bishoprick of *Augsburg*, the Abbies of *Kempten*, &c. the Counties of *Oeting*, *Konigsack* and *Mindelheim*; the Marquisate of *Burgaw*, the Baronies of *Limpurg* and *Justingen*, the Estate of the *Fuggers*, and the Territory of *Ulm*. The Directors are the Duke of *Wurttemberg*, and the Bishop of *Constance*.

The Circle of **BAVARIA** contains the Dutchy and Electorate of *Bavaria*, with the Bishopricks of *Freisingen*, *Ratisbon* and *Passaw*; the Palatinate of *Bavaria*, the Dutchy of *Newburg*, the County of *Sultzback*, and the Abbey of *Waldsassen*, the Archbishoprick of *Salzburg*, and the Provostship of *Bergteiffgaden*. The Directors of this Circle are the Elector of *Bavaria*, and the Archbishop of *Salzburg*.

The Circle of **AUSTRIA**, wherein are contain'd the Arch-dukedom of *Austria*, the Dutchies of *Stiria*, *Carinthia*, *Carniola*, the Counties of *Goritz*, *Cilley* and *Tyrol*, and the Bishopricks of *Brixen* and *Trent*. The Arch-Duke of *Austria* is Director of this Circle.

The other Circle was the 17 Provinces of the *Netherlands*, which the Emperor *Charles V.* made a part of the Empire, by the Name of the Circle of **BURGUNDY**, but those have now no Votes in the Diet; and, having been already describ'd, we need not say any more of them.

To these must be added the Kingdom of **BOHEMIA**, with the Dutchy of **SILESIA** and Marquisates of **LUSATIA** and **MORAVIA**, all subject to the House of *Austria*, and reckon'd part of the Empire.

For more particular Satisfaction, see the ensuing Table of the Division and Sub-division of all Germany, viz.

In the Circle of the Lower-Saxony are comprehended	The Duke-doms of	Mecklenburg, divided into the Territories of	Mecklenburg, Schwerin, Gußrow, Rostock, Weismar.
	The Duke-doms of	Sax-Lawenburg, and County of Ratzeburg.	Part of the Dutchy of Holstein, wherein stands Hamburg, Lubeck.
In the Circle of the Upper-Saxony are comprehended	The Duke-doms of	Bremen	Brunswick, divided into Brunswick, Wolfembüttel, Hanover.
	The Duke-doms of	Lunenburg, divided into	Lunenburg, Zell, D. Dameberg, C.
In the Circle of the Lower-Saxony are comprehended	The Duke-doms of	Magdeburg.	The Bishoprick of Hildesheim, The Principality of Halberstadt, The Principality of Ferden.
	The Duke-doms of		



*In the Circle of the Upper Saxony are*

Pomerania, divided into { Royal, subject to the Swedes, divided into the Territories of { *Bardt, Gutzkow, Walgost, Sterin.*

{ Ducal, under the Elector of Brandenburg, in which are the Territories of { *Pomerania, Cassuben, Verden, Butow, Lawenburg.*

Brandenburg, divided into { *Altmark.*

{ Middlemark divided into { *Middlemark, Prignitz, Rupen, Ukerana.*

{ Newmark divided into { *Newmark, Sternberg.*

The Dukedom of Saxony.

Principality of Anhalt, divided into { *Deffaw, Bramburg, Zerbst, Kotten, Plotzka.*

Earldom of Mansfeld, divided into the Branches of { *Arnstein, Vipran, Wetins, Querurt.*

The Counties of { *Schwartzburg, Hohenstein.*

Landgraviate of Thuringen.

The Territories of { *Erfurt, Eischfeld.*

Subject to several Branches of the House of Saxony. The Counties of { *Hall, Mersburg, Naumburg, Weimar, Gotha, Eysenach, Altenburg.*

The Marquisate of Misnia, divided into the Territories of { *Meissen, Ertzburg, Leypsch.*

Marquisate of Lusatia.

The County of Embden or East Friesland.

The County of Oldenburg, with *Delmenhorst.*

The Bishopricks of { *Munster, divided into the { Upper, Lower.*

{ *Osnabrug, Paderborn.*

The County of Bentheim.

The Principality of Minden.

{ *Diepholt, Hoya, Lemgow, Schaumburg, Lippe.*

The Counties of { *Steinfurt, Ravensburg, Rheda, Spiegelburg, Ritberg, Tecklenburg.*

The D. of Westphalia, under the Elector of Cologne.

The County of Mark.

The Dutchy of { *Berg, Juliers, Cleeve.*

The Bishoprick of Liege.

Several Imperial Cities.

*In the Circle of the Lower Rhine.*

The Archbishops and Electorates of { *MENTZ, TRIERS, COLOGNE.*

The Electorate of the Rhine in which are included. { *The Palatinate of the Rhine, Sponheim, being the 12 Bailiwicks of Simmeren, Creutznach, Openheim, &c. The Bishoprick of Worms.*

*In the Circle of the Upper Rhine.*

Hesse, divided into the Landgraviates of { *Cassel, Marburg, Darmstadt.*

The Abbies of { *Fuld, Hirschfeld.*

The County of Waldeck.

{ *Dillemburg, Dietz, Hadamar, Kerberg, Sigen, Idstein, Weilburg, Wisbaden, Bielfstein.*

Nassau, divided into these Branches, {

The Wetterau, containing the Counties of { *Solms, Hanaw, Eysenberg, Sayn, Wied, Witgenstein, Hatzfeld, Westerbeg.*

The County of Erparch.

The Bishoprick of Spire.

The Dutchy of Zweibruggen, or Deuxponts.

The County of Catzenelbogen.

Landgraviate of Alsatia, divided into. { *Upper, Lower.*

The Territory of the City of Francfort.

*In the Circle of Franconia are these States*

The Bishopricks of { *Wurtzburg, Bamberg, Aichstat.*

The State of the Great Master of the Teutonic Order.

The Marquisates of { *Culembach, Onspach.*

The Principality of Henneberg.

The Dutchy of Coburg.

The Burgraviate of Nuremburg.

{ *Holach, Castel, Schwartzenberg, Reineck, Wertheim, Coburg, Papenheim, Sensheim, Limpurg, Erpach.*

The Counties of {

Several Imperial Cities.



In the Circle of *Schwaben* are

The Dutchy of *Wurtemberg*, { *Loebensteyn*,  
with the Counties of { *Hohenberg*.  
And the Principality of *Heenzollern*.  
*Baden*, divided into the { *Baden*,  
Marquises of { *Durlach*.  
Marquise of *Ortenau*.  
Territory of *Brisgow*.  
The Black Forest, { Principality of *Furstemburg*.  
wherein are { The County of *Rheinfelden*.  
Territory of *He-* { The Bishoprick of *Constance*.  
*gow*, comprizing { Landgraviate *Nellenburg*.  
The Bishoprick of *Augsburg*.  
The Abbies of { *Kempten*,  
{ *Buchaw*,  
{ *Lindaw*.  
The Marquise of *Burgaw*.  
The Counties of { *Oeting*,  
{ *Pappenheim*,  
{ *Koningseck*,  
{ *Hobenrecheburg*,  
{ *Mindelsheim*.  
The Barony of *Walburg*.  
The Estate of the Family of the *Fuggers*.  
The Territory of the City *Ulm*.  
And many Imperial Cities.  
Northw, or the Upper { Landg. *Leuchtenburg*.  
Palatinate, wherein are { County of *Chamb*.  
also included the { Territory of *Amberg*.  
The Dutchy and Electo- { *Munchen*,  
rate of *Bavaria*, divided { *Ingolstadt*.  
into the Territories of {  
Together with the Bi- { *Friesingen*.  
shoprick of { County of *Partenkirk*.  
The Lower *Bavaria*, di- { *Straubing*,  
vided into the three { *Landskut*,  
Territories of { *Burkhausen*.  
The Archbishoprick of *Salzburg*.  
The Bishopricks of { *Ratisben*,  
{ *Passaw*.  
The Dutchy of *Newburg*.  
The Provostship of *Bergtells garden*.  
The County of *Sultzback*.

In the Circle of *Austria*,

The Arch- { Higher, di- { *Muhl*,  
Dutchy of { vided into { *Schartz*,  
*Austria*, { the Terri- { *Haus*,  
ries of { *Traun*.  
divided { Lower, di- { Upper *Viennarwald*,  
into. { vided into { Lower *Viennarwald*,  
the Terri- { Upper *Manhartsberg*,  
-tories of { Lower *Manhartsberg*.  
The Dutchy of *Seyria*, with  
The County of *Calley*.  
The Dutchy of *Carniola*, with the Marquise  
of *Windischmark*, and  
The County of *Goritz*.  
The Dutchy of *Carinthia*.  
The County of *Tirol*.  
The Bishoprick of *Brixen*.  
The Bishoprick of *Trent*.

The Kingdom of *Bobemia* is divided into 16  
Circles.

The Dutchy of *Silesia*, divided into higher  
and Lower.

The Marquise of *Moravia*, into Eastern and  
Western.

Also *SAVOY* and *SWISSERLAND* are  
reckon'd part of the Empire; but these being  
now distinct States shall be spoken of apart  
hereafter.

## CHAP. II.

### Of the Spiritual ELECTORATES.

IN this Description of *Germany*, we shall pursue the  
same Method as in other parts, and without  
regard to the Precedences of Princes, place the De-  
scriptions according to the situations of the Countries,  
and therefore begin with *Cologne*, rather than *Mentz*  
and *Triers*, because this lyes first in the way from  
the *Netherlands*, whence we are last come, omitting  
*Clerve* and *Juliers*, till we come back to *Westphalia*,  
and the Dominions of the Elector of *Brandenburg*,  
whereon they depend.

From *Cologne* we shall pass up the *Rhine*, taking in  
by the way the *Maine* and the *Necker*, together with so  
much of the *M-selle* as lyes in *Germany*: And having  
view'd all the Countries on both sides of these  
Rivers, pursue our Journey through *Suabia* to the  
*Danube* and the Estates of the House of *Austria*;  
thence, through *Bobemia* and its Dependences, Coast  
the *Oder*, *Elbe* and *Weser*, and at last return through  
*Westphalia* again to the Banks of the *Rhine*.

## SECT. I.

### The Electorate of COLOGNE.

The Archbishoprick and Electorate of *COLOGNE*  
is extended on the Western Bank of the *Rhine*, be-  
tween the Dutchy of *Cleves* on the North, and the  
Electorate of *Trier* on the South, the Dutchy of *Ju-*  
*liers* on the West, and that of *Berg* (parted from it  
by the *Rhine*) on the East. It is a fruitful and plea-  
sant Country, producing excellent Wine, besides  
Corn and other Necessaries for Life. Its extent is  
not large, for though it be about 40 Miles in length,  
it is not above 7 or 8 in breadth; the Archbishop is  
Supreme Lord of it, as also of a pretty large Coun-  
try in *Westphalia*, and is richer and more potent  
than either of the other two Ecclesiastical Electors;  
his Annual Revenue being reckon'd to be above 100  
Thousand



Thousand Pounds Sterling. He is dignify'd with the Title of Arch-Chancellor of the Empire, and Legate in *Italy*. This See was advanc'd from Episcopal to Archi-Episcopal in the Year 743; to which was added the Dignity of Elector in 1021. The Archbishop is chosen by the Chapter, which is the most Illustrious of any in *Germany* (being compos'd all of Princes or Noblemen at least, private Gentlemen being excluded) and are 24 in number. The present Archbishop and Elector of *Cologne*, is Prince *Clement*, Brother to the Elector of *Bavaria*, who was chosen July 14. 1688. and invested notwithstanding the Pretensions of Cardinal *Furstemburg*; the Justification of which by the *French* King, and the Opposition of it by the Emperor, was the occasion of the beginning of the late War.

The chief Cities and Towns of this Elec- torate are,	Cologne, Cap.	Breel.
	Bonne.	Zons.
	Mulheim.	Armsberg.
	Rheinberg.	Werle.
	Kempen.	Geseck.
	Kreyserswaert.	Dorsten.
	Nuys.	Recklenhausen, &c.

**COLOGNE**, or *Colen*, call'd *Keulen* by the *Germans*, and in *Latin* *Colonia Agripina*, and *Colonia Ubioum*, is seated on the River *Rhine*, at the distance of 70 Miles from *Mentz*, and 40 from *Coblentz* to the North, 70 from *Nimeguen*, and 20 from *Duseldorp* to the South-East, and 60 from *Maastricht* to the East. It is one of the largest Cities of *Germany*, and very considerable on account of its Buildings, number of Inhabitants, and great Trade in Wine and other Commodities of *Germany*, which by the means of the *Rhine* are brought hither, and transported to *Holland*. It is a free City, being govern'd by its own Senate, which orders and judges all Civil Matters and Causes; but Criminal are judg'd by the Elector. It is also one of the four chief *Hanse* Towns, and is call'd the *Holy City*, because of the many Churches and Religious Houses in it; here being, besides the Cathedral, 10 Collegiate and 19 Parochial Churches; also 37 Monasteries and many Hospitals. In the Cathedral they shew the Tombs of the Three Wise Men that came to worship our Saviour, call'd hence the Three Kings of *Colen*, whose Bones they pretend were remov'd to *Constantinople* by *Helena*, the Mother of *Constantine*; thence they were carry'd to *Milan*, by *Eustorpius* Bishop of that See, and afterwards brought hither by *Rainold* Archbishop of *Colen*: Three Skulls very richly Enshrind are shewn to Strangers, and affirm'd to have belong'd to their Bodies, and to have great Virtue in curing Diseases by Touch, &c. One of the Parish-Churches is dedicated to St. *Ursula*, who, with her 11000 Virgins, they say, were Martyr'd here. An University was long since planted here, which being declin'd, was re-establish'd in 1388. and endow'd with large Privileges by Pope *Urban* VI. and is at present in a very flourishing State. The Walls of this City are flank'd with 83 Towers, and encompass'd with three deep Ditches.

*Cologne* was Built, or Repair'd and Enlarg'd at least, by the *Ubi*, who possess'd the *Weteraw* and *Hassia*, and in the time of *Augustus* obtain'd this Country and *Fuliers* of that Emperor (being disturb'd by the *Catti* their Neighbours) and put themselves under the Protection of *Agrippa*, from whence some say it had its Name, or as others, from *Agrippina* (Daughter to *Germanicus*, Wife of *Claudius*, and Mother to *Nero*)

who was Born here. It was the Metropolis of the *Germania Secunda*, and the Seat of the chief *Roman* Colony. *Meroue*, King of *France*, beat the *Romans* hence about the Year 450. and quickly after *Attila* the *Hunn* ruin'd it. Afterwards the *Romans* rebuilt it, and it was again taken by the *French*, and about the Year 500. made part of their Kingdom by *Clouis* the Great. The Emperor *Otho* about 950. subjected it to its Prelate, which was oppos'd by the Citizens, and great Differences at several times have happen'd thereupon, which were at last compos'd by the Emperor *Maximilian*, and the City made Free and Imperial, but oblig'd to pay Homage to the Elector, who is also oblig'd to confirm their Privileges: And they are still so tenacious of Liberty, that tho' the Elector by his Officers exercise Justice in all Criminal Causes in the City, they will not permit him in Person to reside long in Town, nor come with a great Train; for which reason he lives always at *Bonne*. It was in the Year 1260. that this City entred into the League of the *Hanse* Towns, and was made the Capital of their Fourth Province. *Cologne* is seated in Lat. 51 Deg. and Long. 26 Deg.

In a Convent of *Carmelites*, not far from hence, a Treaty of Peace was set on foot in 1673. between the Emperor, King of *Spain*, *France*, &c. and the several Princes sent their Plenipotentiaries accordingly: But it was interrupted by the Seizure of *William* Prince of *Furstemburg*, since made Cardinal, who tho' a *German* and a Count of the Empire, had espous'd the Interest of *France*, and was made that King's Ambassador at this Treaty, in which he carry'd Matters so high, that he defeated the Endeavours of the several Ministers for Peace, and made the Emperor cause him to be seiz'd and carry'd to *Vienna*, where he was detain'd close Prisoner till the Treaty of *Nimeguen*.

*Bonne*, *Bonna*, *Colonia Julia Bonna*; also *Ara Ubioum*, from the Altars erected here by the *Ubi* the ancient Inhabitants; is the usual place of Residence of the Archbishop of *Colen*, who has a magnificent Palace in the Castle. It stands upon the *Rhine*, 15 Miles South from *Colen*, in a fruitful Country, which produces very good Wine, and the Woods abound with variety of Game. A Ridge of Mountains on both sides the *Rhine*, reach from hence as far as *Bingen*. It is a small City, but well inhabited: The Churches are stately, especially the Collegiate, dedicated to the Holy Martyrs *Cassius*, *Florentius* and *Malusius*, whose Bodies, with several other of the famous *Theban* Legion, are said to be Bury'd in it, being brought hither by St. *Helena*, who Founded this Church to their Honour. The Town-house is well built, and adorn'd with fine Paintings. This was formerly an Imperial City, but now subject to the Elector. *Frederick* of *Austria*, chosen Emperor in opposition to *Lewis* of *Bavaria*, was Crown'd here in 1314. It suffer'd much in the *Low-Country* Wars, was Besieg'd by the Duke of *Parma*, and forc'd by Famine to surrender in 1588. The Fortifications here are regular; the Wall is fac'd with Brick, and the Ditches are very broad and dry, but the Counterscarp is not very defensible: In 1673. it was taken by the Prince of *Orange*, our late King, from the *French*, after a Siege of 9 Days. In 1688. Cardinal *Furstemburg*, in pursuance of his pretended Election above-mention'd, by assistance of the *French* Troops, got possession of it; but the *Germans*, under the Command of the Elector of *Brandenburg*, regain'd it in 1689. after a Siege of 3 Months.

*Rheinberg*



*Reungberg* is a pretty large Town seated on the *Rhine*, in a small Country of 10 Miles extent, belonging to the Archbishop of *Colen*, tho' separated from the rest by the small County of *Mears*. It is distant 20 Miles from *Colen* to the North-West, and 10 from *Geire* to the East; a small River (or Canal rather, for it seems to be Artificial) passes by it, and runs quite cross from the *Rhine* to the *Mars*: By means of this convenient Situation, it hath a good Trade, and the Burghers are reasonably Rich. This Town being near the Borders of *Guelderland*, hath been claim'd by the *Hollanders*, and is therefore strongly fortify'd.

*Kempen*, a strong Town and Castle, stands on the Borders of *Guelderland* and *Fuliers*, 35 Miles North-West from *Colen*, and 10 Miles West from the *Rhine*. It was remarkable for the gallant Defence it made in 1642, when it was vigorously Besieg'd by the French, Hessians and Saxons united.

*Kerleswaert* stands on the East side of the *Rhine*, between *Dunshurg* and *Dufeldorp*, 15 Miles from *Kempen* to the East, and 25 from *Colen* to the North-West. It is a small Town and strong Fort, first built, as 'tis said, by one *Swibert* an Englishman.

*Nuys*, or *Nuss*, *Neustium*, *Nussia*, seated on the River *Exp* and near the *Rhine*, 20 Miles from *Colen* to the North, and 15 from *Kempen* to the South East, is a large City and well fortify'd, having the River on one side, and a double Wall on the other. The *Rhine* did anciently run by its Walls, but having alter'd its Channel, they have been forc'd to make a Trench from it to the *Exp* to bring Vessels up to their Gates. The Citizens enjoy great Privileges, which were granted to them by the Emperor *Frederick III.* in recompence for their Service, in holding out a whole Year's Siege against the Duke of *Burgundy*, who oppos'd *Herman* Landgrave of *Hesse*, chosen Bishop of *Colen* in defence of his Brother, chosen also by another Faction. Here is a fair Collegiate Church, besides other publick Buildings of good Structure.

*Bonn* is a small pleasant Town with a strong Castle, which is the Seat of the Elector when he divers himself with Hunting in the Neighbouring Forests. It stands in the midway between *Colen* and *Bonne*, and 5 Miles West from the *Rhine*.

*Zorn*, a small Town tolerably well fortify'd, stands on the *Rhine*, 8 Miles West from *Nuys*, in a Country producing much Corn, the Sale whereof is the chief Trade of the Town. The Houses are of Brick, and make a good Shew.

*Mulheim*, a fair and large Town on the Eastern Bank of the *Rhine*, 5 Miles below *Colen*, stands in the Limits of *Bergen*, but is subject to this Elector. The Inhabitants attempted to wall it round, and intended to make it an Imperial City, but were oppos'd in it by the Citizens of *Colen*, and forbid by the Emperor, who caus'd the Marquis *Spinola* to spoil their Out-works in the Year 1613. and the next Year the Inhabitants of *Colen* pull'd down all the new Buildings in the Town: Afterwards, during the Wars in *Germany*, they endeavour'd it again, pretending it necessary for their Security; but it was again hinder'd, and it still remains a Dependent on *Cologne*.

On the East-side of the *Rhine*, at about 20 Miles distance from it, lies a tract of Land of about 20 Miles long and 12 broad, bounded on the North by the River *Lippe*, that parts it from *Munster*, and on the South by the River *Emser*, which belongs to the Archbishop of *Colen*, and contains many large Mannors and Lordships, and these two Towns, viz.

*Recklenhausen*, a strong Town in the middle of

this Territory, 35 Miles North-East from *Nuys*; taken in War from the Duke of *Cleve*, by the Elector of *Colen*'s Forces, A. 1343. mortgag'd in 1442. but redeem'd 150 Years after by Archbishop *Salentine*. Here is a Nunnery, the Abbess whereof hath Power of punishing Offenders, even to Death.

*Dorsten*, a place very well fortify'd by the Landgrave of *Hesse Cassel* in 1639. but taken from him two Years after by the Elector of *Colen*'s Forces, after a sharp Siege of two Months. It stands on the River *Lippe*, 10 Miles West from *Recklenhausen*, in the Barony thereof.

To this Electorate also belongs a large Tract of Land in *Westphalia*, wherein are these Towns, viz.

*Ansberg*, a neat and pleasant City on the River *Ruhr*, 60 Miles from *Nuys* to the East, often honour'd with the Archbishop's Presence, who comes hither for the diversion of Hunting. It was formerly subject to its own Lords, and by them given to this Elector.

*Werle*, a pleasant Town, between the Rivers *Ruhr* and *Lippe*, in which the Elector's chief Judge Official in *Westphalia* resides. It is wall'd and fortify'd.

*Geseck*, which stands near the Borders of the Bishoprick of *Paderborn*; it is a fortify'd Town, and came to this Elector in 1501. was taken by the Landgrave of *Hesse* in 1636. but afterwards restor'd.

## SECT. II.

### The Archbishoprick and Electorate of T R I E R.

The Electorate of *Trier* lies between that of *Cologne* and the Duchy of *Fuliers* on the North, *Lorraine* and the *Palatinate* on the South, *Luxemburg* on the West, and *Weteraw* on the East. It is a fruitful and pleasant Country seated on both sides the River *Moselle* and *Rhine*. Its extent from South to North-East is about 70 Miles, and from West to East about 60. It was made a Metropolitan See under *Agilulphus*, in the Year 743. and the Archbishop was made an Elector in 1021. He hath also the Title of *Arch-Chancellor of the Empire in France*, is Temporal as well as Spiritual Lord of this Country and hath Precedency of the Elector of *Cologne*. The Grandeur of this Prince was much greater when the Empire was in the House of *France*, than it is at present: In this Age the French have invaded it often, and taken many of the Towns, which they held till the Peace of *Munster*. And both in the War of 1675. and in this late one, they have overrun and harra's'd it exceedingly. The Revenue of the Elector us'd to be reckon'd near One hundred thousand Pounds *Sterling per Annum*, but hath been much diminish'd by the War. The Chapter is compos'd of 16 Capitulary Canons, who are all of Noble Extraction, and chuse the Bishops always out of themselves.

The chief Towns of this Electorate are,

[ *Trier*, Cap.  
[ *Coblentz*.  
[ *Hermanstein*.  
[ *Meyne*.  
[ *Overeiffel*.  
[ *Bopart*.  
[ *Engers*.  
[ *Sarburg*.  
[ *Bern-Castle* &c.

*T R I E R*, call'd *Treves* by the French and in *Latin* *Trivirum* or *Augusta Triviorum*, is seated on the River



River *Moselle*, over which it hath a fair Stone-bridge, and is distant 55 Miles from *Coblentz* to the South-West, 70 from *Mentz* to the West, and 65 from *Cologne* to the South. It is a large City, and of very great Antiquity, but was often ruin'd by the *Huns*, *Vandals*, *Goths* and *French*. It was afterwards Imperial and Free, but hath been subject to its Archbishop ever since 1561. when it was surpriz'd by the Archbishop *James III.* An University was establish'd here in 1472. which is in a flourishing State, and well fill'd with Students. Here are 4 Collegiate and 5 Parish Churches, 2 principal Abbies, and several other Religious Houses. The City is Fortified with strong Walls and Outworks; but was taken by the *French* in the last War, and recover'd from them in 1675. And in this War they put a Garrison into it in 1688. but quitted it after they had almost destroy'd it.

*Coblentz*, in Latin *Confluentia & Confluentes*, from its situation on the Confluence of the two Rivers *Rhine* and *Moselle*, stands in a pleasant and fruitful Country cover'd with Vines, at a distance of 35 Miles from *Mentz* to the North West, and 40 from *Cologne* to the South-East. It is a large City and built in the form of a Triangle, two sides whereof are secur'd by the two Rivers, and the third by strong Fortifications. It has a Bridge over the *Moselle*, and to guard it a Fort of 3 Battions on the other side, and another Bridge over the *Rhine* to *Hermanstein*. This, in the time of the *Romans*, was the station of their first Legion. It was given to the See of *Triers* about 1000 Years ago by King *Dagobert*, and was afterwards an Imperial City till 1312. when it was separated from the Jurisdiction of the Empire by *Henry VII.* Its situation has made it exceeding populous and of great Trade, which consists chiefly in Wine, Corn, Wood and Iron. The chief publick Buildings are, the Elector's Palace, two great Churches and some Monasteries. The private Houses are generally fair and uniform, and better built than the other Cities on the *Rhine*. It was first encompass'd with Walls by *Arnulphus* Elector of *Trier* in 1250. and afterwards regularly Fortified by *Gaspar a Petra* and other Archbishops, and is now one of the strongest Cities of *Germany*.

On the other side the *Rhine*, just over against this City, stands

*Hermanstein*, or *Ehrenbreitstein*, an Impregnable Fort well defended by Out-works on the top of a steep rocky Hill, twice as high as *Windsor-Castle*, which commands the City and the two Rivers: At the foot of this Fort, on the Banks of the *Rhine* and fronting the River, stands the Elector's Palace, which is a very noble Building. From hence is a Passage to *Coblentz* by a long Bridge of Boats, in the middle whereof two or three are let slip to let any great Vessel pass by, which they easily fasten again.

*Meyn* or *Meyen*, on the River *Nette*, is 15 Miles distant from *Coblentz* to the West: It has a Castle built in 1280. by *Henry* Archbishop of *Trier*, and the Town was wall'd round by his Successor. It gives Name to a large Territory about it, in which stands *Munster* a small Town, for distinction call'd *Munster Meynsfeld*.

*Oberwesel* stands on the West-side of the *Rhine* 20 Miles from *Coblentz* to the South, and 25 from *Mentz* to the West. It was once an Imperial and Free City, but since the Year, 1312. it has been subject to the Archbishop of *Trier*.

*Boppard* is a Town and Fort seated on the *Rhine*, 10 Miles South from *Coblentz*. It was also formerly

an Imperial City, but given by the Emperor *Henry VII.* to *Baldwin* Archbishop of *Trier*, who built the Castle to secure it.

*Engers*, a fair Town and Fort of the *Rhine*, stands between *Coblentz* and *Andernack*, and gives Name to a neighbouring Territory. It has a strong Castle and a noble Bridge over the *Rhine*, founded by *Cuno* Archbishop of *Trier*, who died in 1388.

*Bern Castle* is a good Town pleasantly seated upon the *Moselle*, and makes great quantity of Wine, which enriches the Place, and has made it Populous.

*Sarburg*, on the River *Sar*, is a Town of good Strength; made so and much beautified by *Vestinger* their Archbishop.

*Limburg* stands on the River *Lohn*, betwixt *Idestein* and the County of *Weilburg*; it suffer'd much in the Wars between the *French* King and the Emperor.

*Montroyal*, belonging to the *French*, stands on the Frontiers of the Electorate, 20 Miles from *Triers* to the North-East, and 30 from *Coblentz* to the South-West; it is a strong Fortress, built in a Peninsle made by the *Rhine*, which, with the Citadel and Outworks, render it almost Impregnable.

### S E C T. III.

#### The Archbishoprick and Electorate of M E N T Z.

The Archbishoprick of *Mentz* lyes on the Banks of the River *Mayne*, between the Electorate of *Trier* on the West, the *Palatinate* on the South, *Franconia* on the East, and the *Weteraw* on the North. It is in length from North-West to South-East about 50 M. and about 20 in breadth; but besides this, the Elector hath Dominions in other Provinces. This Prince hath the Precedency of both the other Ecclesiastical Electors, is Dean of their College, and stiled *Arch-Chancellor of the Empire in Germany*. He is Lord of this Country, and maintains in his Court a Marshal or General, and a Chancellor: His annual Revenue is reckon'd above one hundred thousand Pounds. To all which he is Elected by the Chapter of 24 Capitulary Canons, who are all of noble Extraction. This See was formerly Episcopal only, and Suffragan to that of *Worms*, till 745. it was erected into an Archbishoprick. It is a pleasant fruitful Country, very populous, and hath these Towns of note, viz:

<i>Mentz</i> , Capit.	Other Towns subject to this Elector.	{	In Hesse,	{	<i>Fritzlar</i> , <i>Ommenburg</i> , <i>Neustat.</i>
<i>Bingen</i> .					
<i>Aschaffenburg</i> .					
<i>Koningstein</i> .					
<i>Weisbaden</i> .					
<i>Elfield</i>	{	In Thuringen,	{	{	<i>Erfurt</i> , <i>Heiligenstadt</i> , <i>Duderstadt</i> .
<i>Reineck</i> , Coun.					
<i>Lohr</i> , County.					

*MENTZ*, call'd by the *Germans* *Mayntz*, by the *French* *Mayence*, in Latin *Moguntia*, *Magontiacum* & *Mocontiacum*, is seated on the *Rhine* near its Confluence with the *Maine*, at the distance of 65 Miles from *Trier* to the East, 32 from *Coblentz* to the South East, 20 from *Francfort* to the West, and 50 from *Spire* to the North. It is a large City, well fortified and very populous. The private Buildings are not extraordinary, the Houses being old and the Streets narrow: But the publick ones, which are many Churches, the



the Electoral Palace, the Town-house or Guild-hall, three Castles, and a Bridge of Boats over the *Rhine*, are stately Structures. Here is an University which was founded in the Year 800. and re-established in 1482. This City claims the Invention of the Art of PRINTING, which at least was brought to perfection here by *John Faustus*, or, as others, *John Guttenburg*, about the Year 1450. It is a Place of very good Strength, which hath been much encreas'd by a Fortress built not many Years since on a Hill, (wherein stands the Elector's Palace) and by the regular Fortifications that have been added by the late Archbishop, since the beginning of the late War: This City is by the *Germans* pretended to be above 1300 Years older than Christianity; but by others 'tis thought to have been Built by *Drusus*, whose Tomb is still shewn here. It was sometime Imperial and Free, but subjected by its Archbishop *Adolphus* of *Nassau*, who took it in the Year 1462. and his Successors still retain the Authority. *Gustavus Adolphus* took it in 1631. and oblig'd the Citizens to pay 80000 Dollars as a Ransom for their Lives and Houses. And in the late War it was taken by the *French* in the Year 1688. and regain'd by the Duke of *Lorraine* in 1689.

*Bingen* is a pleasant Town, seated on the *Rhine*, 15 Miles West from *Mentz*. It was a Fort in the time of the *Romans*, and thought to be the Place where *Drusus* died. The River *Nabe*, over which here is a fair Stone Bridge, runs through the Town, and empties it self into the *Rhine*: Here is also a Castle, which stands on a Hill, and over-looks the Town. This was also formerly an Imperial City, but is now subject to the Dean and Chapter of *Mentz*.

Between this Place and *Mentz* in an Island in the *Rhine*, stands the Famous *Maus-turm*, an old Watch-Tower, said to have its Name from the Mice and Rats which follow'd hither, and devour'd the covetous Archbishop of *Mentz*, who scoffingly call'd some poor People that begg'd at his Gate, the Rats that eat up the Corn.

*Elfeld* is a strong fortifi'd Town seated on the North side of the *Rhine*, 5 Miles from *Mentz*, to the West, and adorn'd with a fair Church and a high Steeple. It is the chief Town of a small Territory, extended along the *Rhine* 20 Miles, call'd *Ringau*, a Country

richly stor'd with choice Vines; wherein also stands *Erbach*, a stately Monastery, where lie buried many of the Counts of *Nassau*, and *Rodesheim*, a Place noted for the Growth of the best Wines in these Parts.

*Weisbaden* stands about five or six Miles North from *Mentz*.

*Koningstein* is 15 Miles distant from *Mentz* to the North-east.

*Aschaffenburg*, *Aschaffenburgum*, aut *Asciburgum*, is a strong Town and Castle on the Eastern Bank of the *Main*, 40 Miles distant from *Mentz* and 20 from *Francfort* to the East; it is divided into the Upper and Lower Town, and is beautified with a stately Palace, lately built, wherein the Elector often resides; and hath a fair Stone-Bridge over the *Main*.

*Reineck*, the chief Town of a County of the same Name, stands on the River *Syn*, 35 Miles from *Aschaffenburg* to the West, 25 from *Fuld* to the South, and 8 from the *Main* to the North. This Town and County, together with that of

*Lohr* adjoining to it, and on the Banks of the *Main*, do also belong to this Archbishop.

*Ommenburg* or *Amelburg*, a strong Town on the River *Oörn*, 5 Miles distant from *Marpurg* in *Hessen*, and 45 from *Francfort* to the North, is the Capital of a small Territory belonging to this Elector, in which also stands *Neustadt*.

*Freitzlar*, the chief Town of another small Territory, subject to this Archbishop, is seated on the River *Eder*, in the Landgraviate of *Hesse*, about 25 Miles from *Ommenburg* to the North-east, 10 from *Waldeck* to the South-west, and near the mid-way between *Marpurg* and *Cassel*. It hath a Castle and good Fortifications, and is esteem'd a place of as good Strength as any in these Parts.

To this Electorate belongs also a small Country of 20 Miles extent, call'd *Eichfeld* or *Eschfeld*, lying beyond the *Weser*, between the Dutchy of *Brunswick* on the North and the Landgraviate of *Hesse* on the South. In which stand

*Heglingenstat*, built by King *Dagobert*; in it is a College of Jesuits, but is not otherwise considerable.

*Duderstadt*, a small Hanse-Town, anciently subject to the Duke of *Brunswick*, by whom it was sold to *Gerlacus* Archbishop of *Mentz*.

### C H A P. III.

### H E S S E N, *Hassia*.

THE Province of *Hessen* lies on the North Side of the River *Main*, extending as far as the *Weser*, comprehending under this Name in general, besides the Landgraviate of the same Name, the Abbies of *Fuld* and *Hirchsfeild*; the *Weteraw*, in which are also compris'd several Principalities and Lord-ships; and the Landgraviate of *Darmstadt*; together with several Imperial Cities. The whole Country is bounded on the North by *Westphalia*, on the West by the Dutchy of *Berg* and Electorate of *Trier*, on the South by the Electorate of *Mentz*

and *Franconia*, and on the East by the Dutchy of *Weimar* and *Thuringen*. Its utmost Extent from North to South is about 100 *English* Miles, and from East to West as many. The Air is healthful, the Waters wholsom, and the Soil fruitful, producing much Corn, and towards the Banks of the *Rhine* and *Lohr* Grapes; here are also large Forests, which afford store of Deer and other Game; and Mountains, wherein Mines of Copper and Lead are found. This is judg'd to have been the Country of the ancient *Catti*, mention'd by *Tacitus* and others.



It is divided into *Hessen* and *Veteravia*, or the *Veteraw*.

In <i>Hessen</i> are	The Landgraviates of	<i>Hesse Cassel</i> , which lies on the Banks of the Rivers <i>Weser</i> , <i>Eder</i> , and <i>Lohn</i> , and hath these Towns, viz.	<i>Cassel</i> , <i>Rodenberg</i> , <i>Homburg</i> , <i>Witzenhausen</i> , <i>Zeigenheim</i> , <i>Suntra</i> , <i>Geyfmar</i> , <i>Eschwege</i> , <i>Smaicald</i> .
		<i>Hesse Darmstadt</i> , the Territories whereof are divided, part lying on the South side of the <i>Main</i> , and part between <i>Hesse Cassel</i> , <i>Waldeck</i> , <i>Solms</i> and the <i>Rhine</i> .	<i>Darmstadt</i> , <i>Marpurg</i> , <i>Frankenburg</i> , <i>Alsfeld</i> , <i>Giessen</i> , <i>Carzenelbogen</i> , <i>Schwalbach</i> .
		The County of <i>Waldeck</i> , lying West from <i>Hesse Cassel</i> .	<i>Waldeck</i> , <i>Wildungen</i> , <i>Corback</i> , <i>Eyenberg</i> .
		The Territories of <i>Ful'd</i> , the Abbies of <i>Hirschfeld</i> .	<i>Fuld</i> , <i>Hirschfeld</i> .
In the <i>Veteraw</i>		The County of <i>Solms</i> ,	<i>Solms</i> , <i>Brunsfeld</i> .
		The Imperial Cities of	<i>Wetlar</i> , <i>Fridberg</i> .
		The County of <i>Nassaw</i> ,	<i>Nassaw</i> , <i>Dillemburg</i> , C. <i>Sigen</i> , C. <i>Herben</i> , <i>Beilstein</i> , C. <i>Dietz</i> , C. <i>Hadamer</i> , P. <i>Wissbaden</i> , C. <i>Weilberg</i> , C. <i>Idstein</i> , C.
		The County of <i>Hanaw</i> ,	<i>Isenberg</i> , County. <i>Hanaw</i> , <i>Gelnhausen</i> , Imp.

**CASSEL**, *Cassella*, aut *Cassilia*, olim *Castellum Cattorum*, & *Sterdontium*, the Capital City of the lower *Hessen*, is seated in a pleasant Plain on the River *Fuld*, near the Confines of the Dutchy of *Brunswick*, at the distance of 50 Miles from *Marpurg* and as many from *Ful'd* to the North, and 40 from *Paderborn* to the South-east. It is a place of good Trade for Wool and other Merchandizes, and West is fortified with Walls, Ditches, and a strong Citadel: It is the Seat of the Landgrave, whose Palace stands without the Town, and is surrounded by Bulwarks: The Family of *Hesse* is one of the most ancient of *Germany*. This House of *Cassel* is the Elder, and the Landgrave, with his Subjects, are of the *Calvinist* Religion.

*Rodenburg*, a fair Town, stands on the River *Fulda*, 30 Miles from *Cassel* to the South east; it is pleasantly seated, and has a Collegiate Church with a Dean and 20 Canons nobly endow'd. Near the Town is a Quarry of white Marble.

*Suntra* stands 12 Miles East from *Rodenburg*.

*Homburg* is 25 Miles distant from *Cassel* to the South, and 12 from *Rodenburg* to the West.

*Zeigenheim* stands 30 Miles South from *Cassel*. It is a small but fair City, and gives Name to a County.

*Geyfmar*, stands 12 Miles from *Cassel* to the North  
*Witzenhausen* is seated on the *Weser*, 12 Miles from *Cassel* to the East.

*Eschwege* stands also on the *Weser*, 20 Miles above *Witzenhausen*, a wall'd Town, built by *Charles* the Great, and repair'd by *Henry* II.

These are all good Towns, but not particularly remarkable.

*Smaicald* stands in a little Territory on the East-side of the River *Verra*, disjoyn'd from the rest of the Lands of this Prince; it is 50 Miles distant from *Cassel* to the South-East, 30 from *Hirschfeld* to the East, and 20 from *Eysenach* to the South. It is a Town of good Trade for Iron-ware, many Mines in the Neighbourhood furnishing the Inhabitants with plenty of that Metal, which they work and send abroad to foreign Parts. This Place was famous in the last Age, by the assembling of the Protestant Princes here, in the Years 1530, 1531, 1535 and 1537. to make a League for the Defence of the *Augsburg* Confession, against the Emperor *Charles* V. and the Popish Princes of *Germany*: Which League grew so powerful, that they forced the Emperor to a Treaty, held in 1557. at *Passaw*, wherein *Lutheranism* was establish'd in several Parts of the Empire.

*Marpurg*, *Marpurgum*, *Amesla*, is seated on the River *Lohn*, in a pleasant Country, near 50 Miles from *Cassel* to the South-west, and 40 from *Francfort* to the North. It was some time a free and Imperial City, afterwards subject to its own Lords, now the Chief of the Upper *Hesse*, and the Seat of the supreme Court of Judicature; to which Appeals are brought from both *Cassel* and *Darmstadt*. It has a strong Castle, which stands on a Hill, and is otherwise well fortified. The great Church is a stately Building, and has in it many noble Monuments. The University here is one of the most considerable in *Germany*.

*Frankenburg*, on the River *Eder*, 25 Miles North from *Marpurg*, is a large Town, said to be built by *Theodorick* King of *France*, Anno 520.

*Alsfeld* stands 15 Miles from *Marpurg* to the East: It is one of the ancientest Towns of *Hessen*, and had formerly very great Privileges, even Power over Life; but lost their Charter in an accidental Fire many Years since, so that now they have only a Memorial of it, by the chief Magistrate's having a Sword born before him. The Town-house is a fair handsome Building.

*Giessen* is a fair Town, seated on the River *Lohn* 15 Miles from *Marpurg* to the South, and 28 from *Francfort* to the North; the Royalty whereof is divided between the 2 Landgraves of *Cassel* and *Darmstadt*: It is adorn'd with a University, and defended with a strong Wall and regular Fortifications, and hath an Armory very well furnished. The Trade of this Town lies in Dressing and Selling of Cloth.

*WESTLAR*, an Imperial City, stands on the Borders of the County of *Solms*, upon the River *Lohn* not above 6 Miles below *Giessen*, 18 Miles South-west from *Marpurg*, and 26 North from *Francfort*. It is an old Town, and has nothing in it worth notice but the great Church. However, it is at present the Seat of the Imperial Chamber, which was removed from *Spire* hither in the Year 1689. by reason that that City was taken and destroy'd by the *French*.

*FRIEDBURG*, a Rich and Imperial City, stands 15 Miles South from *Wetlar*, and 12 North from *Francfort*: It is seated at the Foot of a Ridge of Hills, call'd *de Hobe*, and enjoys large Privileges, granted by the Emperor *Frederick* II. The Mart, now held at *Francfort*, was, before the Year 1340. held in this Town; at which time it was remov'd, at the desire of the Merchants, and this City. in lieu, hath four annual Fairs.



**D A R M S T A D T**, *Darmstadtum*, seu *Darmstadtium*, a considerable City, seated on the Banks of a River of the same name, in the Country of *Geran*, otherwise call'd the Landgraviate of *Darmstadt*, which lies on the South-side of the *Main*; it is defended by a strong Castle, which is the Palace of the Landgrave; and for the better Security of the Country, there are two Forts, one on the *Rhine*, named *Markburg*, and another on the *Main*, call'd *Russelheim*. The Town is distant 10 Miles from the *Rhine* to the East, and 15 from *Frankfurt* on the *Main* to the South. The House of *Darmstadt*, by the failure of the Second House of *Marpurg*, succeeded to that Lordship, together with those of *Giessen* and *Catzelbogen*, and by that means is become more considerable than the elder House of *Cassel*. The Landgrave usually resides at *Marpurg*; he is of the *Lutheran* Religion, as are also most of his Subjects.

The County of *Catzelbogen* lies on the Banks of the *Rhine*, between that River and *Nassau*; the Town which gives name to the County is but small, and is seated at the distance of 10 Miles from *Nassau* to the East, and about 22 from *Mentz* to the North-west. The Property of this Town and County has been much disputed between the Earls of *Nassau* and the Landgraves of *Hesse*, the former having married the Sister of the last Earl, and the latter pretending a Donation from the Earl: In 1548. the Emperor *Charles V.* adjudg'd it to the Count of *Nassau*; but the Judgment was revers'd at the Treaty of *Passaw*, and Count *William* of *Nassau* surrendred it to the Landgrave *Philip*, who paid him 60000 Crowns for it: However, the Family of *Nassau* does still retain the Title of it. In the same County stands

*Schwalbach*, famous for many Springs of Medicinal Waters in it, which are of great virtue for curing several Distempers. It is distant 10 Miles from *Catzelbogen* to the South, and 12 from *Mentz* to the North.

The Castle of *Rheinfeld*, which gives Name to a small County, stands on the East-side of the *Rhine*, 25 Miles West from *Catzelbogen*, and 20 South from *Coblentz*.

**W A L D E C K**, *Valdecum*, is the Capital of a small Principality, of about 20 Miles Extent, situate in the North part of *Hesse*, beyond the River *Eder*, and Westward of the Landgraviate of *Cassel*. The Country is fruitful, affording Wine as well as Corn and Pasture, besides Mines of Copper, Lead, Quicksilver, &c. The chief Town is but small, and not very considerable; it is distant 30 Miles from *Marpurg* to the North, and 20 from *Cassel* to the South-west.

The other Places of Note in this County are *Wildungen*, a pleasant Town built upon two Hills, in the middle of which lies a very fine Garden;

*Corbach*, formerly a free City, wherein is held a small University; and

*Eyenberg*, a very strong Castle, built upon a Hill near *Corbach*.

The Territory of the Abbey of **F U L D**, call'd by some *Buckem* and *Fagonia*, is a large rich Country, lying South of *Hesse*, and North of *Hanaw*, *Reineck*, &c. extending about 30 Miles in length. The chief Town *Fuld* stands upon a River of the same name, 40 Miles East from *Marpurg*, and 45 North-east from *Hanaw*: The Monastery is of the *Benedictine* Order, and one of the noblest in all *Europe*; it was founded in the Year 744. by *S. Boniface*, and endowed with great Privileges by several Emperors. The Abbot is Lord of the Town and Country, Primate of all the Abbots in *Germany*, a Prince of the Empire, and sits

in the general Diers at the Emperor's Feet. There are many other Towns in this Territory.

The Monastery of **H I R C H F E L D** stands on the River *Fulda*, at the distance of 20 Miles from *Fuld* to the North. It is a very noble Structure, artificially built upon an Arch, supported by 16 Pillars. It was founded by *Sturmius*, Abbot of *Fulda*, and a Territory of about 12 Miles extent given to it. *Alcuinus*, who was Tutor to *Charles* the Great, was Abbot of this Monastery, and lies buried in its Church. The Revenues of this Abbey have been in the Hands of the Landgrave of *Hesse* ever since 1606.

The **W E T E R A W**, *Veteravia*, is the general name of the Country lying between *Hesse* on the North, the River *Main* on the South, the River *Rhine* on the West, and the County of *Reineck* on the East; wherein are contained the Estates of the Counts of *Nassau*, *Solms*, and *Hanaw*, who are constant Confederates for their mutual Defence.

**N A S S A W**, as it is now encreased by the accession of the Counties of *Weilburg*, *Idstein*, *Wiesbaden*, *Dillenberg*, *Brilstein*, *Geilberg*, *Sigen*, and *Hadamars*, is bounded on the North by *Westphalia*, on the East by *Hesse* and *Solms*, and on the West by *Berg*, *Trier*, and the *Rhine*. This Country is fruitful in Corn and Pasturage, abounds with Cattle and Venison, and hath Mines of Iron, Lead and Copper. It was at first only a County, but was made a Principality by the Emperor *Ferdinand II.* Anno 1653. and is subject to its own Princes, a very ancient and honourable Family; from which descended *Adolphus*, chosen Emperor *A. D.* 1292. *Engelbert*, the Seventh Earl of this Family, acquir'd by Marriage the Barony of *Breda*, and other Estates in the *Netherlands*; and *Henry* his Great-grand-son married *Claude de Chalons*, Sister and Heir to *Philibert*, Prince of *Orange*, whose Son *Rene*, in 1530. succeeded in that Principality; which Honour hath ever since remain'd in this Family. These Princes have in all Ages been celebrated for their Bravery, especially in the last, when they so zealously defended the *Belgick* States, and by their Courage and Wisdom rescued them from the *Spanish* Cruelty, and acquitted the Dignity of Hereditary Stadtholder, and Captain General of all the Forces of the *United Netherlands*: Which great Honours being possess'd by *William* of *Nassau*, Prince of *Orange*, King *Charles I.* chose him for a Husband to his eldest Daughter *Elizabeth*; by whom he had Issue *William Henry*, who married *Mary* the eldest Niece of *Charles* the Second, and were both our late King and Queen of *Great Britain*.

**N A S S A W**, *Nassovia*, that gives name to this Principality, is a small Town and Castle seated on the River *Lohn*, 8 Miles from the *Rhine* to the East, 12 from *Coblentz* to the South-east, and 35 from *Frankfurt* to the West. It was the usual Seat of the first Branch of this illustrious Family.

*Dillemburg* stands on the River *Dilla*, 40 Miles from *Nassau* to the North-east, and 16 from *Marpurg* to the West. It is a Town of good Trade, and hath two annual Fairs. Here is a Castle standing on the top of a Hill, which commands the Neighbourhood, and was the Seat of a Branch of the Family of *Nassau*, who had the Title of Counts of *Dillemburg*: In it is a large Armory, very compleatly furnish'd.

*Sigen*, on the River *Siege*, 18 Miles from *Dillemburg*, is seated on the top of a rocky Hill, and defended with a strong Wall and regular Fortifications, and gives Name to a County. Near the Town is a Mine of Iron.



*Herborn* stands upon the River *Dilla*, but 5 Miles South from *Dillemburg*; it is a City of pretty good Trade in Woollen Cloths, and hath an University of good Repute, endow'd with the Lands of some dissolved Monasteries, and hath bred some considerable Scholars; particularly, *J. Piscator*, *H. Martinus*, *G. Passor*, and *H. Alstedius*. This City is wall'd round, and has a Castle.

*Beilstein* gives Name to a County, which was the Inheritance of a younger Branch of the Family of *Nassau*. It is an old Town, seated among rocky Hills, at the distance of 10 Miles from *Herborn* to the South, and hath a Castle and a fair Church.

*Dietz*, the Capital of another County, is pleasantly seated upon the River *Lhon*, 10 Miles from *Nassau* to the East; it is wall'd, and hath two Towers standing upon two Hills in the Town.

*Hademar*, a small Town, the Capital of a Territory which hath the Title of a Principality, stands upon the *Lhon*, at the distance of 20 Miles from *Mentz* to the North.

*Weilberg*, which gives name to another County, stands also on the *Lhon*, 35 Miles from *Nassau* to the East.

*Wisbaden*, the Capital of a County also, stands 5 Miles North from *Mentz*, and 20 South-east from *Nassau*; it is an ancient Town, and much frequented by reason of famous Hot Baths in it which give name to the Place.

*Idstein*, a Town and County, lies next to *Wisbaden* to the North.

The County of *Isenburg* lies between *Solms* on the West, *Hanaw* on the East, the Lands of the Abbey of *Fuld* on the North, and *Nassau* on the South. It is about 20 Miles in length, and 8 or 9 in breadth.

*Budingen*, the chief Town of it, is about 30 Miles North-east from *Francfort*. And

The Castle of *Ronenburg*, a noble old Fort, a few Miles from *Gelnhausen*, was anciently the place of Residence of the Counts.

*S O L M S*, the Capital of another County, subject also to its own Lord, and situate on the South of *Hesse Marburg*. The Town stands in the most Northern Part of the County, 15 Miles distant from *Marburg* to the South-west, and 35 from *Francfort* to the North. The usual Residence of the Count is in the Castle of *Brunsfeld*, which stands 15 Miles South from *Solms*.

The County of *HANAW* is bounded on the North and East by the Territory of *Fuld*, and on the West by the Estates of *Nassau* and the County of *Isenburg*: It extends from the River *Main* North-east, about 40 Miles, and is subject to its own Earl. The chief Town.

*Hanaw*, *Hanovia*, stands upon the River *Kuntz*, near the Banks of the *Main*, 10 Miles East from *Francfort*, 15 from *Aschaffenburg* to the North-west, and 40 from *Marburg* to the South. It is a fair well-built Town, neat and uniform, and a Place of Trade, much resorted to by Foreign Merchants; insomuch that the *French* and *Dutch* have Churches here. It is now defended by strong Walls and modern Fortifications, but was twice taken, viz. in the Year 1631 by the *Swedes*, and in the Year 1658 by the *Germans*, after a long Siege both times, and not without Treachery and Stratagem at last.

*GELNHAUSEN*, an Imperial City, stands in the Limits of this County, on the River *Kintzing*, 12 Miles North-east from *Hanaw*, 15 North from *Aschaffenburg*, and 20 East from *Friedburg*: It is now but a poor City, though very considerable, and inhabited by many Noblemen and Gentlemen before the *German Wars*.

## CH A P. IV.

### F R A N C O N I A, Franconia.

THE Dutchy of *Franconia*, call'd by the *Germans* *Frankenland*, and heretofore *Franconia Orientalis*, one of the chief of the ten Circles of the Empire, is bounded on the North by *Thuringen* and *Hessen*, on the South by *Schwaben*, on the East by the Palatinate of *Bavaria*, and on the West by that of the *Rhine*; extending from North to South about 130 Miles, and from East to West 140. The Soil of it in some parts is mountainous and barren, but in others very fruitful in Corn, Wine, Liquorice, Saffron and Fruits: Here are also several Forrests, well stockt with Game, and Rivers abounding with Fish. This Province is suppos'd to have been the ancient Seat of the *Franks* or *French*, from whence they set forth under *Pharamond*, to their Conquest of *Gaul*; and that the famous *Salique Law* was here made upon the Banks of the River *Sala*: Besides which, the chief Rivers are the *Main*, the *Tauber*, the *Rednitz*, the *Pegnitz*, and the *Altmutz*. Several Sovereign Princes have the Dominion of this Country which is the Reason that several Religions are predominant in several parts; but the *Lutherans* are most numerous.

*Franconia* hath these States and Chief Towns following.

The Bishopricks of	<i>Wurtzburg</i> ,	<i>Wurtzburg</i> ,
		<i>Ochsenfurt</i> ,
		<i>Königshoven</i> ,
	<i>Bamberg</i> ,	<i>Bischoffsheim</i> ,
		<i>Bamberg</i> ,
		<i>Cronach</i> ,
	<i>Aichstat</i> .	<i>Weismann</i> ,
		<i>Forcheim</i> ,
		<i>Aichstat</i> ,
The Estate of the Master of the Teutonic Order,		<i>Ornbaw</i> .
The Marquesates of	<i>Culembach</i> ,	<i>Culembach</i> ,
		<i>Weisinstat</i> ,
		<i>Bertrut</i> .
	<i>Ohmspach</i> ,	<i>Ohmspach</i> ,
		<i>Kregling</i> .
The Counties of <i>Holach</i> , <i>Cassel</i> , <i>Schwartzburg</i> , <i>Sensheim</i> , <i>Limpurg</i> , <i>Lewenstein</i> , <i>Wertheim</i> , <i>Erpach</i> , <i>Hennelberg</i> , <i>Coburg</i> , <i>Papenheim</i> .		



The Imperial Cities of

*Frankfort,*  
*Nuremberg,*  
*Regensburg,*  
*Schweinfurt,*  
*Weinsbheim,*  
*Weissenburg.*

**WURTZBURG**, *Herbipolis*, is the Capital of *Franconia*, and seated on the Banks of the River *Main*, at the distance of 80 Miles from *Mentz*, and 60 from *Frankfort* to the East, 80 from *Cassel* to the South, 40 from *Bamberg* to the West, and 30 from *Regensburg* to the North. The City is divided into two parts by the River, which are again joyn'd by a fair Bridge; besides the *Main* several little Brooks run thro' the Streets, and pleasantly water the Town. It is adorn'd with an University, and one of the richest and most magnificent Hospitals of *Europe*, and defended by a strong Castle, built on a Hill, which is joyn'd to the Town by a Wall, flank'd by four Bastions. This was formerly an Imperial City, but has been subjected to the Bishop. To *St. Burchard*, the first Bishop of this See, the Emperor *Charlemaign* granted the Country of *Francia Orientalis*, upon which account his Successors assum'd the Title of Dukes of *Franconia*. This Prelate is very Potent, being Secular as well as Spiritual Lord of 400 Villages and Towns, and able to raise an Army of 15000 Men. He judges Causes, and condemns Criminals, in token whereof on solemn occasions he hath a naked Sword born before him.

**FRANCFORT**, *Francfurtum* aut *Francfordia*, being the Foord of the *Franks*, and heretofore *Heleopolis*: Now commonly for distinction call'd *Francfurtum ad Moenum*. Is seated on both sides the *Main*, if the Suburb of *Saxenhausen* on the South-side of the River be consider'd as part of it, that as well as the City being strongly fortify'd with Bastions, large Moats, Counterscarps, and other Out-works; and also joyn'd to the City by a Bridge, which is a noble Work, being built of Stone, and compos'd of many Arches. It is a large, populous, rich and well traded City, Imperial and Free, and govern'd by its own Consuls, Senators and Sheriffs, chosen by the Trades-men. In the Church of *St. Bartholomew* here the Election of the Emperor is made, being expressly so ordain'd in the *Golden Bull*, or Grand Charter of *Germany*, made by the Emperor *Charles IV.* Which *Golden Bull* is also it self laid up in the Town-house of this City. Here is also an Imperial Palace, call'd the *Brunsfeld*, a Mansion-house of the Knights of the *Teutonic Order*, which with the Port, the Fortrefs, the Bridge between two Towers, and several Houses of Noblemen, together with the Bridge over the *Main* above-mention'd, are good Ornaments to the Town. The private Houses are of Wood plaister'd and painted over. *Frankfort* is conveniently seated for Trade; for the *Main* receives several smaller Rivers, and it self falls into the *Rhine* about 20 Miles from hence. whereby Goods are easily brought to it, especially at the two great Annual Marts in *April* and *September*, when great quantities of all sorts of Commodities, especially *Wocks*, brought from all parts of *Europe* are vend'd here, to the great profit of the Town. The Inhabitants are generally of the *Lutheran Religion*, and were the first that demanded the free Exercise of it; the Refusal of which in the Year 1525 made them revolt against the Clergy and Senate, and chuse themselves new Magistrates: And in 1530. the *Augsburg Confession* was Establish'd; however other Religions are tolerated; and among the rest, the *Jews*, who are pretty nume-

rous here, but confin'd to live in one Street, which is lock'd up every Night. A Monument is to be seen here of a very Notorious Fact that three of the Nation were guilty of, for which they were ty'd up in Sacks and thrown into the *Main*, and a Memorial of their lewd Action painted over one of the Gates. *Frankfort* stands in the Latitude of 50 deg. and in the Longitude of 28 deg. 10 min.

*Aschaffenburg* on the North-side of the *Main*, with the Counties *Reineck* and *Lohn*, are reckon'd part of this Circle, but belonging to the Archbishop of *Mentz*. They are already spoken of in the account of that Electorate.

**NUREMBERG**, or **NURNBERG**, *Nuremberga*, aut *Noricorum Mons*, one of the largest, richest and most populous Cities of *Germany*, stands at the bottom of a Hill near the Confluence of the Rivers *Rednitz* and *Pegnitz*, at the distance of 55 Miles from *Wurtzburg* to the East, 40 from *Bamberg* to the South, as many from *Ingolstadt* to the North, and 50 from *Ratisbon* to the North-West. It is a very considerable Place on account of its two Annual Fairs, its Traffick and Manufactures, the Clocks and Small-Wares made here being especially admir'd. The Houses are all built of Free-Stone, and 4 or 5 Stories high; the Streets are large, and the Publick Places very regular: The Town-house, or Guild-hall, is very magnificent: Here are 11 Stone Bridges over the *Pegnitz*, whereof that of one Arch is most artificially and admirably built. The other publick Works are 12 Fountains, 26 Wells, and a large Arsenal, containing 300 Pieces of Canon, and Arms for 1500 Men, a strong Castle, and 6 Gates, each defended with a large Tower. In this City the Emperor is oblig'd to hold the first Diet after his Coronation, and for that purpose, the *Regalia* or Imperial Ornaments, viz. the Imperial Crown of *Charlemaigne*, the *Dalmatica*, or Mantle of the same *Charles*, together with his Cloak, Sword, Belt, Gloves, &c. are here laid up. It was made an Imperial City by the Emperor *Frederick Barbarossa*, and purchas'd its Liberty of *Frederick I.* Elector of *Brandenburg*; and it is now govern'd by its own Senators. The Inhabitants are of the *Lutheran Religion*, the *Roman Catholics* having only one Church. A Peace was concluded here between the Princes of *Germany* in the Year 1649.

The City of *Nuremberg* hath a Territory belonging to it of about 20 Miles extent, wherein about 15 Miles to the South stands

*Altorf*, a small Town, but made considerable by an University in it, first establish'd in 1578. but improv'd in 1623. and does now contain at least 200 Students.

**BAMBERG**, *Bamberga*, aut *Babanberga*, took its Name from *Baba*, the Daughter of the Emperor *Otto*. It stands about 40 Miles from *Wurtzburg* to the East, and 30 from *Nuremberg* to the North, in a Country abounding with rich Fruits and Plants, and is water'd by the River *Rednitz*, which a little below falls into the *Main*. It was formerly Imperial and Free, but now subject to its Bishop, who depends on no Metropolitan but the Pope, and is not only Lord of this See (which is 60 Miles in length, and 30 in breadth) but also of divers Mannors in *Carinthia*, and the Castles of *Cronach* and *Forkeim*, besides several Royalties elsewhere, whereby he has the Honour to have 4 of the Electors, viz. the King of *Bohemia*, and the Electors of *Bavaria*, *Saxony* and *Brandenburg*, his Dependents for some parts of their Estates. The Bishop's Palace here is a splendid Building, and adorn'd with fair Gardens and Orchards: The Cathedral Church has a high Steeple



Steeple with 4 Spires, which, with the Jesuits Church and the Castle, are worth a Traveller's View.

**MERGENTHEIM**, or **MARIENDAL**, the Capital of the small Territory of the Great Master of the Teutonic Order, and the usual Place of his Residence, is a small Town, and not very considerable. It stands upon the River *Golach*, 20 Miles South-West from *Wurtsburg*.

**OHNSPACH**, or **ANSPACH**, *Onoldium*, and *Onspachium*, is the Capital of a Marquisate of pretty large extent, which belongs to a Prince of the Family of *Brandenburg*; it is fortify'd, and hath a Castle, situate about 25 Miles from *Nuremberg* to the West, and 20 from *Rotemberg* to the East.

The Bishoprick of **AICHSTADT** lies between the Marquisate of *Ohnspace* and the Burgraviate of *Nuremberg* on the N. the County of *Oeting* and Dutchy of *Newburg* on the S. and the Palatinate of *Bavaria* on the E. It extends about 30 Miles from E. to W. and in some parts of it 15 or 16, in others not above 7 or 8 from N. to S. The Bishop is Temporal as well as Spiritual Lord of it; and the chief City whence it is nam'd stands upon the River *Aemul*, 35 Miles S. from *Nuremberg*, and 8 or 9 N. from the *Danube*.

**ROTEMBURG**, *Rotemburgum*, a Free Imperial City, seated in the Limits of the Marquisate of *Ohnspace* upon the River *Tauber*, 20 Miles from *Ohnspace*, 30 from *Nuremberg* to the West, and 40 from *Wurtzburg* to the South. It obtain'd its Freedom of the Emperor *Frederick I.* in the Year 1163.

**WINTZHEIM**, another small Imperial City, stands also in this Marquisate upon the River *Aisch*, about 16 Miles North from *Rotemburg*, and 20 North-West from *Ohnspace*.

The County of **HOLACH** lies next to *Ohnspace* to the South-West.

The Barony of **LIMPURG** adjoyns to *Holach* on the South.

The small County of **LEWNSTEIN** lies also South from *Holach*, and West from *Limpurg*.

The County of **WERTHEIM** lies on both sides the *Main*, West from the Bishoprick of *Wurtzburg*; 'tis of about 20 Miles extent, of a square Form, and a very fruitful Country, affording, besides Corn and Pasture, very good Wines, the making whereof is the chief Trade of the Town, which stands on the Banks of the *Main*, where it receives the *Tauber*, and is distant 20 Miles from *Wurtzburg* to the West.

**REINECK** County lies on the North of *Wertheim*.

**ERPACH**, the Capital of another County, which lies on the South-side of the *Main*, stands 30 Miles South-East from *Francfort*, and 20 North from *Heidelberg*; it is a Place of no great Trade, nor considerable, but for giving Title to a Count of the Empire.

**SCHWEINFURT**, an Imperial Free City, is seated on the *Main*, 30 Miles from *Wurtzburg* to the N. E. and near as many from *Bamberg* to the East. This City suffer'd much in the German Wars, having been taken by the *Swedes*, and afterwards seiz'd by the Marquess of *Brandenburg* in 1553. but being besieg'd the next Year, he plunder'd and deserted it.

The Marquisate of **CULEMBURG** is reckon'd part of this Circle, tho' it be subject to the Duke of *Brandenburg*. It is a Country of 50 Miles in length from North to South, and 30 Miles in breadth, lying next the Bishoprick of *Bamberg* to the East: The chief Town, which gives name to the County, is seated on the *Main*, 25 Miles East from *Bamberg*.

The **RIVER MAIN** arises in two Springs in *Munt Fichtelberg* on the East-side of this Marquisate, which unite near the Town of *Culembach*, and flowing Westward, receives the *Rednitz*, *Warres*, and other Rivers; and in a Serpentine course runs thro' the middle of *Franconia*, passing by *Schweinsfurt*, *Wurtzburg*, *Wertheim*, *Aschaffenburg* and *Francfort*; and falls into the *Rhine* a little above *Mentz*, after a course of 110 Miles: Its breadth at *Francfort* is reckon'd by English Travellers about half as much as the *Thames* at *London*.

## CHAP. V.

The **PALATINATE** of the **RHINE**, *Palatinus Rheni*, aut *Palatinus Inferior*; in the German Language, *Pfaltz auf Rhein*, or *Nider Pfaltz*.

THE *Palatinate of the Rhine*, call'd the *Lower Palatinate*, to distinguish it from that of *Bavaria*, is bounded on the North by the Bishoprick of *Mentz*, on the South by *Alsatia*, on the East by *Franconia* and *Wirtemberg*, and on the West by *Lorrain* and the Bishoprick of *Triers*: It extends from East to West almost 100 English Miles, and from North to South about 60. The Air is Healthful, and the Soil Fruitful, the Country abounding in delicious Wine, besides Corn and Pasture: Here are also some Mines of Agate and Jasper, and even Gold is found among the Sands of the *Rhine*, whereof particular Ducats are Coin'd. Besides the *Rhine*, which by passing thro' it gives name to this Region, the *Neckar*, a very considerable River, waters the Eastern part of it, and having pass'd by *Heidelberg*, falls into the *Rhine* at *Manheim*; and several other smaller Rivers are found in several Parts of it.

The Dominions of this Elector were much larger before *Frederick V.* (who Marry'd the Daughter of King *James I.*) was dispossest'd of them by the Emperor in 1620. and his Estates, together with the

Electoral Dignity, given to the Duke of *Bavaria*: Afterwards at the Treaty of *Munster* in 1648. he obtain'd this part to be restor'd, but that of the Upper Palatinate he could not recover, nor prevail that the Duke of *Bavaria* should be divested of the Electoral Dignity; however to make him some Amends, he was chosen a-new, and made an Eighth in the Electoral College, with the Title of Elector Palatine of the *Rhine*. But Providence has so brought it about, that now at last his Posterity have it restor'd, in the Person of *John-William-Joseph*, upon the Deprivation of *Maximilian* Duke of *Bavaria*, A. 1708.

The chief Cities and Towns in this Electorate, are,

[*Heidelberg*, Capital,  
[*Manheim*,  
[*Frankendal*,  
[*Openheim*,  
[*Creutznach*,  
[*Altzheim*,  
[*Keiserlauter*,  
[*Newstadt*,  
[*Bacharach*.

HEIDEL



**HEIDELBERG**, *Heidelberg* and *Eldelberga*, the Capital of this Palatinate, is seated on the Banks of the River *Neckar* in a fruitful Plain at the foot of a Mountain near the Frontiers of *Schwaben*, at the distance of 40 Miles from *Frankfurt* to the South, 60 from *Wiesburg* to the South-West, 10 from *Manheim* and the Confluence of the *Rhine* and *Neckar* to the East, and 12 from *Spire* to the North-East. It is a large and flourishing City (at least was so before the *French* destroy'd it) populous and rich; it was much enlarg'd, and a Suburb call'd *Bergheim* added to it, in 1392. It is beautify'd with a magnificent Castle wherein the Elector keeps his Court; and adorn'd with an University, planted by *Rupert* Prince Elector Palatine, in 1387. which hath been happy in the Education of the famous Philologer *Janus Gruterus*, and other considerable Men. The Church of the *Holy Ghost* was remarkable for the famous Library kept in it, which in the Wars with *Spain* was transported to *Rome* for Preservation. The Wine of this place is valued, and the great Tun is much talk'd of, for it's stupendious Bulk, containing no less than 200 Tun of *English* measure: It stands (if the *French* did not destroy it) near the Palace. This City was part of the Bishoprick of *Worms* before the year 1225. at which time *Lewis I.* Elector Palatine was invested with the Castle and old Town, to which his Successors added the New Suburb, as is already said. It has suffer'd much by Wars, having been laid waste by the *Spaniards* and others during the German Wars in the last Century; but more so in the late War, for the *French* have twice taken it, viz. in 1683 and 1692: and most barbarously burnt and destroy'd it.

*Manheim*, seated at the Confluence of the *Rhine* and *Neckar* 10 Miles West from *Heidelberg*, was strongly fortify'd by *Frederick IV.* in 1606. but taken and dismantl'd by the *Spaniards* in 1622. afterwards re-fortify'd by the last Elector, and had besides the Citadel several Outworks and a small Citadel on the *Rhine*, when the *French* attack'd and took it in 1688. who being forc'd to abandon it in 1689. destroy'd all the Fortifications.

*Frankendal* is seated on the West-side of the *Rhine*, 10 Miles from *Manheim*, and 20 from *Heidelberg* to the West. It was at first a Monastery only, but encreas'd to a fair City, and fortify'd by *Frederick III.* Elector Palatine in 1571. afterwards taken by the *Spaniards* and kept by them till the *Westphalian* Treaty. when it was restor'd to the Elector. It hath suffer'd the same Fate as *Manheim* in this War, having been taken and burnt by the *French* in 1689.

*Alzheim* or *Aitzey*, the Capital of one of the Bailiwicks, or *Ampten* and the ancient Seat of the Elector, stands 25 Miles North-West from *Frankendal*: It is a good Town, with a Castle and Walls.

*Creutznach* is a good Town, with a Castle seated upon a Hill, and nam'd *Kansenberg*: The Town stands upon the River *Nabe*, about 18 Miles North-West from *Alzheim*. The Jurisdiction of it is divided between this Elector, the Marquess of *Baden*, and the Prince of *Simmeren*.

The Castle of *Eberimberg*, remarkable for the Siege it sustain'd in 1692. stands on the *Nabe*, not above 8 or 9 Miles East from *Creutznach*.

*Keiser-Lautern*, call'd *Cascloure* by the *French*, stands upon the River *Lautern* near the Borders of the Duchy of *Zweibruggen*, 30 Miles South from *Creutznach*, and 35 East from *Manheim*. It is a small City, formerly Imperial, but exempted in 1401. and now subject to this Elector.

## S E C T. II.

*The Bishopricks of SPIRE and WORMS, the Duchy of ZWEIFBRUGGEN, or DEUX PONTs, with the other smaller States that make up the rest of the Circle of the LOWER RHINE.*

The Bishoprick of *Spire* lies on both sides the *Rhine*, in length from East to West about 40 Miles, and in breadth about 15. It is surrounded by the Dominions of the Elector Palatine, and lies next to the Bailiwick of *Heidelberg* to the South.

The Bishoprick of *Worms* lies also on both sides the *Rhine*, and encompasses'd by the Palatinate; it is small, being hardly 2 Miles in length, and about 7 or 8 in breadth. It lies North-West from *Heidelberg*.

The Duchy of *Zweibruggen* is stretch'd out from North-East to the South-West about 40 Miles in length, and in breadth in some places 25, in others not above 8 or 9. It lies next to the Palatinate to the South-West and is possess'd by a Prince of that Family.

The other Estates, together with the chief Towns, will be seen in this Table, viz.

The Bishopricks of	{ Spire, Worms,	{ Spire, Philipsburg. Worms, Ladenburg.	{ Zweybruggen, Zweybrug, Landsparg, Simmeren, Spanheim, Birckenfeld, Birckenfeld, Lautereck, Lautereck.	{ belonging to several Branches of the Pa- latine Fa- mily.
The Dutchie of	{ Simmeren, Birckenfeld, Lautereck,	{ Zweybruggen, Zweybrug, Landsparg, Simmeren, Spanheim, Birckenfeld, Birckenfeld, Lautereck, Lautereck.	{ belonging to several Branches of the Pa- latine Fa- mily.	{ belonging to several Branches of the Pa- latine Fa- mily.
The Counties of	{ Linange, Rheingraveslein, Reipoltzkirk.	{ Zweybruggen, Zweybrug, Landsparg, Simmeren, Spanheim, Birckenfeld, Birckenfeld, Lautereck, Lautereck.	{ belonging to several Branches of the Pa- latine Fa- mily.	{ belonging to several Branches of the Pa- latine Fa- mily.

**SPIRE**, *Spira*, aut *Noviomagus*, *Numetum* & *Nemetas*, is a large rich and populous City, seated on the East-side of the *Rhine*, where it receives the small River *Sparbach*, being almost in the midst between *Mentz* to the North, and *Strasburg* to the South, at the distance of about 50 Miles from both, and about 12 or 14 from *Heidelberg* to the South-West. Tho' it be the Seat of the Bishop. it is not subject to him, but Imperial and Free. under the Protection of the Elector Palatine. The Cathedral Church is a very stately Building, and hath in it the Monuments of no less than eight Emperors that have been bury'd there; but the private Buildings are not very good. In this City the Imperial Chamber, or supreme Court of Judicature in *Germany*, was establish'd in the Year 1530. and was constantly held here till the Year 1689. when it was remov'd to *Wetlar* in *Hesse*, because this Place was taken by the *French*, and most inhumanly burnt and destroy'd. The Chamber was the chief Support of the Town; so that at present it must needs be in a very ordinary Condition.

*Philipsburg*, *Philoburgum*, formerly a small Town call'd *Udensheim* which was encompass'd with Walls, by *Gelberd* Bishop of *Spire*, in 1343. is now one of the strongest Towns of *Germany*. In 1615. *Philip Christopher* of *Soetern*, Bishop of *Spire* and *Trier*, repair'd and fortify'd it with 7 Royal Bastions, and gave it its present Name. The Castle was founded in 1513. by *George* Count Palatine of the *Rhine* and Bishop of *Spire*, repair'd in 1570 by Bishop *Marquard de Hatstein*, and is a stately Building. The Town is seated in a Plain environ'd with Marshes, which adds much



to its Strength; however it was often taken and regain'd in the German Wars. viz. by the Swedes, in 1634 by Famine; by the Austrian Troops the Year after, by Stratagem; and by the French by Storm, in 1644, which last bestow'd great Cost in fortifying it, adding many Out-works according to the Modern manner, and kept it till 1676, when the Germans regain'd it after a Siege of four Months, and it was granted to them by the Peace of Nimwegen. But they lost it again in the late War, which War began with the Siege of this place by the Dauphin of France, to whom it was surrender'd on the first of November, 1688 and not restor'd till the conclusion of the Peace in 1697. It stands on the East side of the Rhine, 20 Miles from Heidelberg, and 8 or 9 from Spire to the South.

WORMS, *Vormacis*, olim *Borbetomagus*, & *Vangiones*, is seated on the Western Bank of the Rhine. 25 Miles North from Spire, and as many South from Mentz. It was formerly a Metropolitan See, but afterwards reduc'd to an Episcopal, under the Arch-bishop of Mentz. It was made a free and Imperial City by the Emperor Henry II. and is now govern'd by its own Magistrates under the Protection of the Elector Palatine. It was often taken and retaken during the German Wars, and was taken and burnt by the barbarous French in the Year, 1689.

WEYBRUGGEN, in French *DEUX-PONTS*, lar. *Bipontium*, so call'd from Bridges over two small Rivers whereon it stands, at the distance of 45 Miles from Worms and 50 from Spires to the West, as many from Trier to the East, and 40 from

Mentz to the S. is the Capital of a Dutchy, whose Duke Charles Gustavus succeeded in the Crown of Sweden, A. 1654. It is a small but well built City, formerly fenced with a good Fort, which is now demolish'd, the whole Town having suffer'd much during the German War.

SIMMEREN, *Simmera*, the chief Town of the lower County of *Sponheim*, and the Capital of a Territory, formerly govern'd by its own Prince, but now subject to the Elector Palatine, with the Title of a Dutchy, is seated at the distance of 30 Miles from Mentz, to the West, and 25 from Coblentz to the South.

BIRKENFELD, *Bircofelda*, is a small Town, with the Title of a Principality and Dutchy, seated in the upper County of *Sponheim* and District of *Hundsrug* near the River *Nab*, at the distance of 28 Miles from Trier to the East, and 30 from *Zweibrucken* to the North-East. It is wall'd and hath a Castle, wherein died Charles III. Duke of Lorrain, on the 17th. Sept. 1675.

LAUTERACH, is seated on the River *Lauter*, 40 Miles West from Worms, and 18 from *Zweibrucken*.

LENINGEN, the Capital of the County of *Linsage*, stands 18 Miles North-West from Spire, and about 20 South-w<sup>t</sup> from Worms.

RHINGRAVESTINE, stands between *Creutznach* and *Eberemburg*, 35 Miles almost North-west from Worms.

REIPOLSKIRK is 30 Miles West from Worms, and the Capital of another small County.

The *Hunt's-rug*, i. e. *Dog's-back*, is a ridge of barren Hills in this Country.

C H A P. VI.

ALSATIA, Alsatia, in High Dutch *Elsalz*.

ALSATIA is the Country of the ancient *Triboces*, and one of the four Landgraviates of the Empire, but is at present entirely subject to the French, having been conquer'd by the present King. It is seated on the Banks of the Rhine, and bounded on the East by that River, the Dutchy of *Wurtemberg*, and some other parts of *Schwaben*; on the West by a Ridge of Mountains that divide it from *Lorrain*; on the North by the Palatinate; and on the South by *Swisserland*. Its Extent is from North to South 100 English Miles, and from East to West, comprehending *Brisgaw*, 40 Miles, but in the other parts not above 25. The soil is fruitful in Corn, Pasture, Wine and Fruits; and in the Mountains Mines of Copper and Lead. *Alsatia* was erected into a Landgraviate by the Emperor *Otho III.* and some time possess'd by the House of *Austria*; but being conquer'd by the French, was granted to them by the *Pyrenean Treaty* 1659. It is divided into the Upper and Lower, to which is usually added *Suntgaw*, *Brisgaw* and *Ortenow*. The whole contains 46 Towns and 50 Castles, besides a great many Villages. The chief whereof are these, viz.

- In the Lower  
Alface,
- Strasburg,

Savern or Zabern,

Haguenaw,

Fourt Louis,

Weissenburg,

Landaw,

Roschein,

Schlestad,

Colmar.

- In the Upper
- Alface

Munster,

Murbach,

Pfirt or Ferette,

Mulhausen,
- In Suntgaw,
- Befort,

Huningen.
- In Brisgaw,
- Brisac.

Friburg.

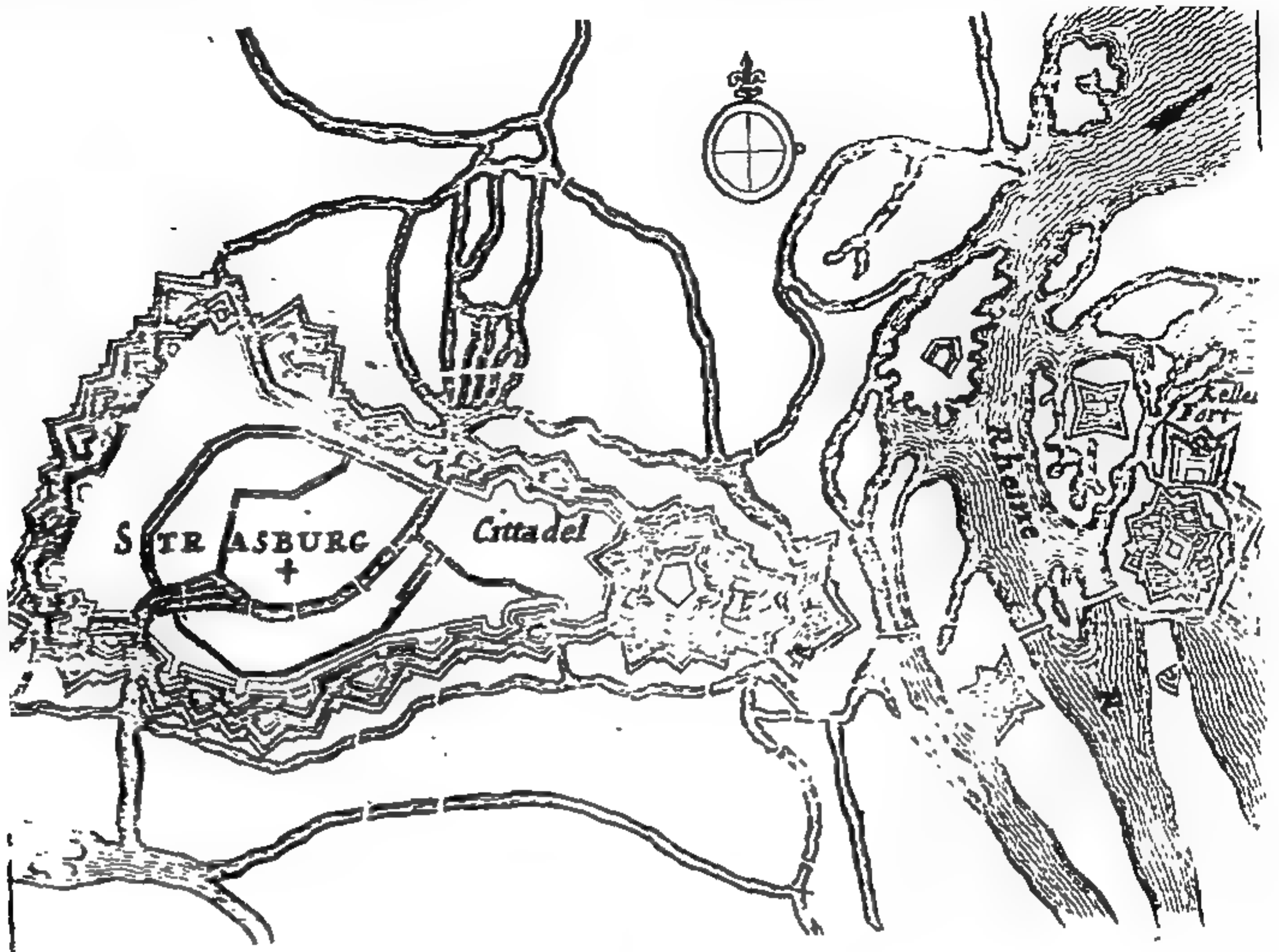
To which may be added:  
The County of *Montbeliard*.

STRASBURG, *Argentoratum*, *Argentina*, aut etiam *Strasburgum*, stands upon the Confluence of the two Rivers *Ill* and *Breusch*, which a little below falls into the Rhine, and is distant 30 Miles from Spire, and 14 from Haguenaw to the South, 30 from Brisac, and 55 from Basil to the North, and about 70 from Nancy, in Lorrain to the East. It is seated in the midst of a pleasant Plain, and is a large, populous and rich City; formerly Imperial, and govern'd by its own Magistrates, from the time of its embracing the Reformation, Anno, 1529, till the French took it in 1682, who having alter'd the Government, has much injur'd the Trade of it. It is an Episcopal See under the Metropolitan of Mentz, and adorn'd with many stately Buildings, among which the Town-house, Arsenal and Cathedral Church are chiefly remarkable; especially the last, the Tower whereof is built in form of a Pyramid 574 Foot high; and hath in it a Clock, exceedingly admir'd for its curious Workmanship.



Workmanship, shewing not only the Hour of the Day; but the course of the Sun, Moon, and all the other Planets. Here is an University, which was founded in the Year 1535, and a considerable Library: Tho' the French be Masters, the Inhabitants are generally of the Lutheran Religion. The old Wall and Fortifications were formerly of no great Strength; but since the French have had it, they have made it very strong by the addition of many new Works and a

Cittadel, with a great Horn-work for its defence that end of the Town next the Rhine, together with Forts in some Islands in the Rhine, which secure Bridge and command the Passage of the River; which will be better understood by this Draught which, because this City was surrender'd to the French by the Treaty of Ryswyck, we have added. By the Treaty the Fort Keil, here also shewn on the other side the River, was granted to the Confederates.



*Zabern*, *Saverne* or *Elfsabern*, is next to *Strasbourg*, the chief Town of the Lower *Alsace*; it is situate 15 Miles North-west from *Strasbourg*, and defended by a strong Castle at the top of a Rock, wherein formerly the Bishops of *Strasbourg* kept a Court of Judicature.

*Haguenaw*, an Imperial City before the French Wars, is seated between the two Rivers, *Motter* and *Sorne*, about 6 Miles from the *Rhine* to the West, and 14 from *Strasbourg* to the North, and encompass'd with thick Woods, and at some distance with Corn-fields and fruitful Vineyards. It was formerly the Seat of the Supreme Court of Judicature for *Alsace*, and had in it a fair Palace of the Emperors built by *Frederick Barbarossa*, in 1164. It was taken by the French, and granted to them by the Treaty of *Munster*, and hath been strongly fortified.

*Fort Louis* stands in an Island of the *Rhine*, almost over against *Baden*, and about 10 Miles East from *Haguenaw*. It is small, but very strong, and was built by the present French King, for the better security of this part of the Country, and the command of the River.

*Weissenburg* was also an Imperial City, and much honour'd by *Dagobert* King of *France*, who presented them with a large Crown of Silver: But now subject to the French. It is situate on the River *Lura*, about 10 Miles West from the *Rhine*, 16 North from *Haguenaw*, and 25 South-West from *Spire*.

*Lander* is seated on the Borders of the Palatinate, 10 Miles North from *Weissenburg*, and 15 West from *Spire*. It was granted to the French by the Treaty of *Munster*, and is now in their Possession, and very strongly fortified.

In 1683, the French lodg'd here the Plunder they took out of most of the Towns of the Palatinate,

which by accidental Fire was all destroy'd the next Year.

*Roschein* stands 12 Miles West from *Strasbourg*.

*Schlestadt*, formerly a free and Imperial City, but taken by the French, and granted to them by the *Westphalian* Peace, is seated 20 Miles from *Strasbourg* to the South, and 12 from *Colmar* to the North. The Fortifications were demolish'd by the Confederates, in 1673, but since rebuilt by the French, and is now a place of good Strength.

*Colmar*, once an Imperial and very populous City, but by the German Civil War, and the French Armies almost quite depopulated, stands in a plain fruitful Country, about 8 Miles West of *Brisac*, and 30 South from *Strasbourg*.

*Pfirt*, call'd *Ferette* by the French, is a small City, but the Capital of *Suntgow*; it stands near the source of the River *Ill*, 30 Miles South from *Colmar*, and about 10 West from *Basil*. It was granted to the French by the Treaty of *Westphalia*, and is now possess'd by them. About 10 or 12 Miles from hence to the North-East, and not above 2 or 3 from *Basil*, stands

*Huningen*, a very strong Fortress, built not many Years since by the French King; it stands on the West side of the *Rhine*, about 2 or 3 Miles North of *Basil*, and 20 South of *Brisac*: It is large enough to hold a Garrison of 4 or 5000 Men, and is compos'd of five Bastions; and had a Magazine vaulted with Brick so strongly, that it is proof against Bombs; besides the Tenails, Ravelines, Counterscarp and double Ditch, two large Horn-works to the North and South, and a third on the other side of the River; and from the Ramparts go Vaults to the Horn-works for conveying Men to them. But all this is destroy'd, as was agreed by the Treaty of *Ryswyck*.

*Mulhauser*.



*Mulhausen*, an Imperial City in Alliance with the *Swiss Cantons*, stands 12 Miles North from *Pfirt*, and near 20 South from *Colmar*.

*Befort* or *Beford*, formerly the Capital of this County, but was almost ruin'd by the Wars, and is now a small City of no great Note. It stands 20 Miles West from *Pfirt*, and as many from *Mulhausen*.

Adjoyning to *Alsace*, and Westward of *Suntgaw*, lies the County of

*MONTEBELGART*, formerly belonging to the Dukes of *Wurtemberg*, but now to *France*: The Capital City is of the same Name, seated in a very pleasant and wholsom Air, 40 Miles South of *Colmar*, and 35 from *Basil*, and about 18 from *Befort* to the West. See the Account of it in the *Franche Comte*.

*Brifac*, the Capital of the *Brifgaw*, stands on the East-side of the *Rhine*, 30 Miles South from *Strasbourg*, 24 North from *Basil*, and 8 West from *Colmar*. It stands on the Banks of the River, and is joynd to two or three Islands in it, by Bridges, which, as well as the Town, are fortify'd. It was heretofore an Imperial City, but was subjected to the House of *Austria* about 1330. and taken by the *French* in 1638. To whom it was granted by the

*Westphalian Treaty*, and had ever since been subject till the Year 1700. when, in pursuance of the Treaty of *Ryswick*, it was restor'd to the Emperor, after the fair Stone Bridge over the *Rhine* was destroy'd. It stands upon a Hill, in a plain level Country, and hath a strong Citadel standing in an Island on the West-side of the Town. The Fortifications are exceeding strong; on the West-side are 8 Bastions fill'd with Earth and fac'd with Brick, and before every Curtine stands a Half-Moon; the Ditch is broad, and the Counterscarp, Cover'd-Way and Palisado, are well executed. The Fortifications are a League in Circumference, and the Place capable of garrisoning 9 or 10000 Men.

*Friburg* stands on the East-side of the *Rhine*, 10 Miles from *Brifac*, in a fertile Plain, at the foot of the Mountains, and on the small River *Treiffheim*, that falls into the *Rhine*; it is a good City, and the Seat of an University, which was first establish'd by *Albert*, Arch-Duke of *Austria*, in 1450. It was thrice taken by the *Swedes* in 1632, 1634, and 1638. and twice by the *French*, viz. 1671, and 1677. and surrender'd to them by the Treaty of *Nimeguen*, and since very strongly fortify'd: But by the Treaty of *Ryswick* it was restor'd to the Emperor.

## C H A P. VII.

S C H W A B E N, *Suevia*.

THE Dutchy of *Schwaben*, or *Swabia*, in *French* *Scuabe*, had its *Latin Name Suevia*, from some Tribes of the *Suevi*, that came down from the Northern Parts against *Julius Caesar*; whose Posterity settling in this and the neighbouring Countries, in time establish'd a powerful State, which was govern'd for some Ages by a Duke, who was at first elected by the People: But about the beginning of the XIIIth Age 'twas made Hereditary to *Frederick* the Ancient; in whose Family it continu'd till about the Year 1268. when *Conradine* dying without Issue, this Country was divided between several Princes, Bishops and Free Cities, who have all Sovereign Power in their respective Dominions, viz. the Bishops of *Augsburg* and *Constance*, the Duke of *Wurtemberg*, and the Princes of *Hohenzollern*, *Furstemburg* and *Mindelheim*, 8 Counts, 5 Barons, the Grand Master of *Malta*, 18 Abbots, the Provost *Valenhausen*, and 34 Imperial Cities.

The Extent of *Schwaben* from North to South is about 110 Miles, and from East to West 130. and its Bounds are, the *Palatinate* and *Franconia* on the North, *Switzerland* on the South, *Alsatia* on the West, and *Bavaria* on the East. The Air of it is Healthy, and the Soil is generally Fruitful; for tho' some Parts be Mountainous and Woody, yet do the Hills afford Mines of Copper, Silver and other Metals, and the Forests much Pine and Fir-Timber, besides great store of Game: And the other Parts of the Country yield great store of Corn, Wine and Flax. The chief River is the *Danube*, which hath its Source here, in the Principality of *Furstemburg*, as hath also the *Neckar* near the same place. The chief Employment of the Inhabitants is making of Linnen Cloth, whereof they vend great Quantities to other Nations.

*Schwaben* hath these States and chief Towns.

The Dutchy of <i>Wurtemberg</i> , wherein these Towns are of the chiefest Note;	{	<i>Stuttgart</i> , Capit.
		<i>Tubingen</i> , Imp.
		<i>Reutling</i> , Imp.
		<i>Esslingen</i> , Imp.
		<i>Hohenwil</i> ,
The Marquisate of <i>Baden</i> ,	{	<i>Schorndorf</i> ,
		<i>Loebenstein</i> , County.
		<i>Eberstein</i> , County.
		<i>Baden</i> , Marquisate.
The Marquisate of <i>Baden</i> ,	{	<i>Durlach</i> , Marq.
		<i>Pfortzheim</i> ,
		<i>Badenweiler</i> .
The Bishoprick of <i>Augsburg</i> ,	{	<i>Augsburg</i> , Imp.
		<i>Dillingen</i> ,
		<i>Fuessen</i> .
The Bishoprick of <i>Constance</i> ,	{	<i>Constance</i> , Imp.
		<i>Mersberg</i> .
The Abbies and Cities of	{	<i>Kempten</i> ,
		<i>Buchaw</i> ,
		<i>Lindaw</i> .
The Principalities of	{	<i>Furstemburg</i> ,
		<i>Hohenzollern</i> ,
		<i>Mindelheim</i> ,
The County of	{	<i>Oeting</i> .
		<i>Papenheim</i> ,
The small Counties of	{	<i>Koningseck</i> ,
		<i>Hohenrichberg</i> ,
		<i>Waldburg</i> .

Imperial Cities not mention'd above.	{	<i>Ulm</i> ,	<i>Isne</i> ,
		<i>Hailbron</i> ,	<i>Ubirlingen</i> ,
		<i>Memmingen</i> ,	<i>Bibrac</i> ,
		<i>Nerdlingen</i> ,	<i>Leutkirch</i> ,
		<i>Rotwell</i> ,	With near
		<i>Ravensburg</i> ,	20 more.
		C c	Subject



Subject to the House of Au- stria,	{	The Marquifate of <i>Burgaw</i> .
		The small Coun- tries of { <i>Rhinfelden</i> , { <i>Nellenburg</i> . { <i>Offenburg</i> , { <i>Gengenbach</i> , { <i>Altorf</i> , { <i>Lauffenburg</i> , { <i>Guntzburg</i> , { <i>Hohenburg</i> , { <i>Waldshut</i> , { <i>Zeel</i> .

The Marquifate of *BADEN* is extended along the Eastern Banks of the *Rhine*, over against *Alsace*, beginning a little below *Philipsburg* on the North, and paſſing on in a narrow Tract to the height of *Baſil* in the South, except where it is diſjoyn'd by the Intervention of *Briſgaw*. It is an exceeding fertile and populous Province producing Corn, Wine, Hemp, Fiſh, Fowl and Veniſon, in great plenty: It is alſo ſo remarkable for Baths and mineral Waters, that the chief Town, and the whole Country hath its Name from them. The Dominion is divided between two Princes of the ſame Family, who are diſtinguiſh'd by the Names of the chief Town of the 2 Marquifates, *Baden* and *Durlach*, whereof *Baden of Baden* is a *Roman Catholick*, and *Baden Durlach* a *Lutheran*.

*BADEN*, *Bada*, aut *Therma Inferiores*, ſtands a *German League*, or 4 *Engliſh Miles* Eaſt from the *Rhine*, 60 from *Briſac* to the North, and 25 from *Heidelberg* to the South upon a hilly craggy Ground, ſo that the Streets lie very uneven. It is famous and exceedingly reſorted unto for its hot Baths, whereof there are many ſpring in the Town, and are reckon'd ſovereign Remedies for the Gout, Cramp, &c. Theſe bringing Nobility and Gentry from all parts of *Germany*, create a great Trade to the Town, which would be otherwiſe not very conſiderable. The Marquels hath his Palace here; and, for the Security of the Town, there is a good Fortreſs built on an adjacent Hill.

*DURLACH*, *Durlacum*, ſtands 12 Miles North from *Baden*, 20 South from *Heidelberg*, and 2 Leagues Eaſt from the *Rhine*. It is ſeated on the Banks of the River *Pfinz*, at the foot of the Mountain, on the top whereof ſtands a ſtrong Tower. The Streets are ſtrait, and the Buildings fair, and the Marquels's Palace remarkably Magnificent, far exceeding that of *Baden*, and even capable of receiving a great Prince's Retinue.

*Pfirtzheim*, is a ſmall City ſeated on the River *Ens*, where it receives the *Nagold*, about 22 Miles South from *Durlach*, between pleaſant Meadows and Corn-fields on one ſide, and Mountains and Woods on the other. It was formerly ſubject to the Duke of *Wurtemberg*, but now belongs to the Marquels of *Durlach*.

*Badenweiler*, the chief City of that part of *Baden* that lies South of *Briſgaw*, ſtands about a League from the *Rhine*, and in the midway between *Briſac* to the North, and *Baſil* to the South, about 15 miles from each. It is famous and much frequented for its hot Baths, which are of great Virtue, but not quite ſo valuable as thoſe of *Baden* above-mention'd.

*Offenburg*, a ſmall Imperial City, under the Protection of the Arch-Duke of *Auſtria*, is the Capital of the Country of *Ortnaw*, and ſeated on the ſmall River *Kintzig*, which falls into the *Rhine* near *Strasburg*, 20 miles South from *Baden*, 30 North from *Briſac*, and 9 or 10 Weſt from *Strasburg*.

*Gengenbach*, another ſmall Imperial City, ſtands on the ſame River, 5 or 6 miles above *Offenburg*.

The Dutchy of *WURTEMBERG*, *Wurtembergensis Ducatus*, lies next to *Baden* to the Eaſtward, between the Palatinate on the North, and the Princi-

pality of *Furſtemburg* on the South, extending near 70 Miles both in length and breadth. The Country is exceeding Fertile, conſiſting of pleaſant Meadows, Mountains, containing rich Mines, and Forreſts, abounding with Variety of Game: A great number of ſmall Rivers water it, which with the Lakes are fill'd with Fiſh. It is very populous, and has no leſs than 63 Cities, 158 good Towns, and a great number of Villages. It was erected into a Dutchy by the Emperor *Maximilian* in the Year 1465. in favour of *Eberhard* Count of *Brutelsbach*, in whoſe Family it hath continu'd, and is now poſſeſs'd by *Eberhard Lewis*, a powerful and wealthy Prince, and of the *Lutheran* Religion.

*STUTGARD*, *Stuttgartia*, the Metropolis of this Dutchy, and the uſual place of Reſidence of this Duke, is ſeated near the *Neckar*, 40 Miles Eaſt from *Baden*, 40 South from *Heidelberg*, and as many North from the *Danube*. It is a fair City, and much reſorted to for its famous natural Baths, which cure ſeveral Diſeaſes. The Prince's Palace is a ſtately Caſtle, and adorn'd with exceeding pleaſant Gardens, wherein are Rows of Orange-Trees, fine Grotto's and curious Water Works.

*Tubingen*, *Tubinga*, is a fair and well-built City, water'd by the *Neckar*, and adorn'd with an Univerſity, founded in the Year 1477 by Count *Eberhard* above-mention'd. It ſtands about 20 Miles South from *Stutgard*, near 30 North from the *Danube*, and 50 Eaſt from *Offenburg*, and boaſts of having been the Seat of the Emperor *Caracalla*, who they ſay had a ſtately Palace, and entertain'd the *Germans* with publick Games in his place.

*Heidwil*, a ſtrong impregnable Caſtle, ſtands on the top of an inacceſſible Hill, near the Banks of the *Rhine*, and belongs to the Duke of *Wurtemberg*.

*Retling*, or *Retlingen*, is an Imperial City under the Protection of the Duke of *Wurtemberg*, being ſeated on the Confines of his Country, 12 Miles South Eaſt from *Tubingen*. It ſtands in a Plain at the foot of the Mount *Alchamack*, but affords nothing very remarkable.

*Eſlingen*, another ſmall Imperial City under the Protection of this Prince, ſtands upon the *Neckar*, 8 or 9 Miles Eaſt from *Stutgard*.

*HAILBRON*, *Hailbruna*, *Fons Salutis*, ſtands alſo in the limits of this Dutchy, but is a Free Imperial City, having been made ſo by the Emperor *Frederick* III. in the Year 1240. It had its Name from the famous Medicinal Springs found in it, and is a goodly City ſeated on the *Neckar* (over which it hath a Stone Bridge) in a pleaſant and fruitful Country, at the diſtance of 28 Miles from *Stutgard* to the North, and 26 from *Heidelberg* to the South-Eaſt.

The County of *OETTING* lies next to *Wurtemberg* to the Eaſt, between the Marquifate of *Onſpach* on the North, and the *Danube* on the South. The Extent of it is about 20 Miles. The chief Town, call'd in *Latin* *Oeni Pontes*, is but ſmall, and not very conſiderable; it ſtands 70 Miles Eaſt from *Stutgard*, 20 South from *Onſpach*, and 15 North from the *Danube*.

*Nordlingen*, a ſmall Imperial City, ſtands in this County on the ſmall River *Eger*, 10 Miles North from the *Danube*, and 6 or 7 South-Weſt from *Oetting*. It was made Free in the Year 1251. and for its Security is in League with the *Switzers*. Two notable Battles were fought near it between the *Swedes* and *Germans*; the firſt in 1634. wherein the *Swedes* were Deſeated, and the latter in 1645. when they and the *French* were Victors over the *Bavarians*.

The



The Bishoprick of *AUGSBURG* lies on the South-side of the *Danube*, extended in a narrow Tract (7 or 8 miles in breadth, a good part of it, and the rest not above 15 or 20) from the Banks of that River to the County of *Tirol*, above 80 Miles, and bounded on the East by the Duchy of *Bavaria*. It is a fruitful pleasant Country, and subject to its Bishop, who is a Prince of the Empire.

*AUGSBURGH* or *AUSBURGH*, call'd in Latin, *Augusta Vindelicorum*, from *Augustus Caesar*, who conquer'd these parts and Planted a Roman Colony here among the *Vindelici*, stands near the Confluens of *Bavaria*, the Confluence of the two Rivers *Lech* and *Wardarh*, which falls into the *Danube* 25 Miles below it; and is distant 80 Miles from *Stuttgart* to the East, 35 from *Munich* to the North-West, and 65 from *Ratisbon* to the West. It is a very ancient and very considerable City, reckon'd the Capital of *Schwaben*, made Imperial by the Emperor *Frederick I.* in 1162, and bought its entire Freedom of *Cesar* Duke of *Schwaben*, in 1266. It is large and populous, the Streets broad, the Market-place spacious, and the Houses tho' built but with Wood and Clay are fair and handfom; the Cathedral Church, the Town-hall and the Conduits, are stately and magnificent. Here are two Arsenals well furnish'd with Arms and Ammunition, publick Granaries full of Corn, and Hospitals well maintain'd. The Inhabitants are much enrich'd by Trade; and the Works of the Goldsmiths, and other Artificers of this Place, are Transported to many parts of *Europe*. The Noble Family of the *Fuggers*, Lords of the adjacent Country, have fair Palaces here; a great Hospital built by them is the most remarkable part of this City; it contains 106 Houses in four Streets built cross-ways, inhabited by poor People, who have yearly Pensions allowed them.

*Augsburg*, is famous for the many Imperial Diets that have been holden in it, but especially for the *Lutheran* Confession of Faith, call'd *Augustan* from its having been first promulgated here, at the Diet held by the Emperor *Charles V.* on that occasion, in the year 1530. *Joseph* King of *Hungary*, his present Imperial Majesty, was here chosen and Crown'd King of the *Romans* in *January* 1689. and this City was terribly ravag'd by the Duke of *Bavaria* in 1703.

The Marquisate of *BURGAW*, subject to the House of *Austria*, lies on the West of *Augsburg*, and South of the *Danube*, extended about 30 Miles in length and breadth. The chief Town stands 8 or 9 Miles South from the *Danube*, 24 West from *Augsburg*, and 12 East from *Ulm*.

The Principality of *MINDELHEIM* lies on the South-West of *Augsburg*: The chief Town, which gives Name to the Country, is seated on the River *Mindel*, in Lat. 47. 50. at the distance of 15 Miles from *Lansperg* on the River *Lech* to the West, and as much from *Memingen* to the East, 30 Miles South-West from *Augsburg*, and 32 South-East from *Ulm*. The Territory is a pleasant fruitful Land of about 80 Miles in Circuit, which was possess'd by the late *Maximilian*, Uncle to the present Duke of *Bavaria*, with the Title of Lordship; but being a Fief of the Empire, it was by the late Emperor erected into a Principality, and conferr'd on his Grace *John* Duke of *Marlborough*, in the Year 1705. whereby he has Session in the Diet of *Germany*.

*ULM*, *Ulma*, is a very ancient, large and Imperial City standing on the *Danube*, which here receives the *Iler*, and begins to be Navigable, 40 Miles distant from *Augsburg* to the West, 50 from *Stuttgart*

to the East, and 80 from *Munich* to the South. It was wall'd in the year 1300. and made Imperial and Free by *Lewis* of *Bavaria* in 1346. Soon after the Citizens purchased the County of *Heisenstein*, the County of *Albeg*, and the Town and Castle of *Grieslingen*, so that they are Lords of a Country of 20 miles in length and 12 in breadth. The City is govern'd by a Senate of 41, and is strongly fortified. It is a rich and populous Place and hath a good Trade, consisting chiefly in Linnen Cloath. The Cathedral Church is a very noble Building, exceeding any of *Germany*, except that of *Strasbourg*; its said the building of it employ'd a great number of Workmen for 111 Years; it has five Spires of great height, and within it an Organ so very remarkable as to have merited a Description of it in Print by two Learned Men; It was finish'd in the Year 1599 after 35 years Labour, and is 93 Foot high and 28 broad; it has 16 pair of Bellows, and the largest pipe is 13 Inches diameter. Here are also many other stately Edifices, among which the *Stadt-hause* is chiefly remarkable. The Reformation was receiv'd here in 1529, and the Inhabitants are mostly *Lutherans*.

*BIRACH*, an ancient Imperial City, is seated in a pleasant and fruitful Valley surrounded with fair Meadows, but some of them boggy and overflow'd in Winter, 20 Miles from *Ulm* to the South, not above 10 from the *Danube*, and 40 from *Constance* to the North-east: It was made free very long since, even in the year 800. as 'tis said. Here is a natural Bath, to which great numbers of the Neighbouring Gentry resort.

*BUCHAN*, is also a small Imperial City, but chiefly remarkable for its Monastery, the Abbot whereof is one of the Sovereign Princes of *Schwaben*. It stands about 7 Miles West from *Bibrach*, and as many South from the *Danube*.

*MEMINGEN*, a free Imperial City also, stands on the River *Iler*, 30 miles South from *Ulm*, and 20 North from *Kempten*: It is a large place and of good Trade, which consists chiefly in making and vending Paper. It is also strong, having the natural Fortification of a Marsh on one side, and the artificial one of a good Wall on the other.

*LEUTKIRK*, a small Imperial City, stands 12 miles South from *Memingen* upon the Road to *Italy*, which makes it pretty much frequented. The Inhabitants have a good Trade for Linnen Cloath, which they make in great quantities.

*RAVENSPURG*, or *GRAVENSPURG*, was anciently a fair Village, but wall'd and made a City in the Year 1100, and afterwards made Imperial and endow'd with Privileges. It has a fair Town-house, and the Churches are well built. It stands upon a small River that falls into the Lake of *Constance*, 20 Miles West from *Leutkirk*, and about 20 South from *Buchaw*.

*KEMPTEN*, *Campodunum*, *Campidona* and *Dru-sogamus*, is one of the Ancientest Cities in *Germany*, and was sometime the Seat of the Dukes of *Schwaben*, at present famous for its Monastery founded by *Hildegard* Daughter to the Duke of *Schwaben*, and Wife to *Charles* the Great; the Abbot whereof is a Prince of the Empire and Lord of the adjacent Territory, and formerly of this City, till the Inhabitants purchased their Liberty: The Emperor *Frederick III.* made it Imperial, and granted the Citizens many Privileges. The Trade of the Place is Weaving and Whitning Linnen Cloath; it lies upon the Road to *Italy*, by which also the Inhabitants make good advantage. The Reformation was receiv'd



here in 1530: and in 1633: the City was taken and plunder'd by the Imperialists. It stands upon the River *Iser*, 16 miles South South East from *Leutkirch*, 50 from *Ulm*, and 20 from *Memmingen* to the South.

*Altshausen* which stands two miles from *Ravensburg*, is an ancient Town, at present belonging to the House of *Austria*; a Lieutenant or High Commissioner of *Suzria* resides here, who in the Emperor's name keeps a Court of Judicature, to hear and determine all Causes brought from the Imperial Cities in *Schwaben*. The famous Family of the *Guelphs* us'd to be buried here.

*LINDAU*, at first a Monastery built in *Sto.* which was in time encreas'd to a City and subject to the Abbess, and after to the Duke of *Schwaben*, but hath since obtain'd its Liberty and Privileges from *Rudolf I. Frederick III. and Sigismund*, and is now an Imperial City. It stands 30 miles West from *Kempten*, and on the North-east Bank of the Lake of *Constance*, part of the City being built on an Island in it, and the other part surrounded with pleasant Meadows and sweet Springs.

*Isere* stands in the midway between *Kempten* and *Lindau*; *Stangen* 10 miles South from *Lindau*; and *Buchhorn* upon the Lake of *Constance* 12 miles West of *Lindau*, are all three Imperial Cities. As is also

*U BERLINGEN*, which stands also upon the Lake of *Constance* 30 miles West from *Lindau*, 50 South-west from *Ulm*, and 23 from *Buchaw*, 30 East, from *Furstemburg*, and 10 North from *Constance*. It is a fair City built on a high Rock, and encompass'd with Vineyards and Orchards, and hath a good Haven, whence are sent out Barges laden with Wine and Fruits which they carry to *Constance*, and other Cities upon the Lake; by which the Inhabitants are enrich'd, being also very industrious and frugal. Here is an Hospital richly endow'd and several good publick Buildings; anciently the Dukes of *Schwaben* have resided here. In the neighbouring Vineyards springs a mineral Water of great Virtue.

*CONSTANCE*, call'd in High-Dutch *COST-NITZ*, or *COSTANTZ*, *Constantia*, *Constanza*, the Metropolis of the *Hegow* or Lower *Schwaben*, had its name, as 'tis said, from *Constantius Cælorus*, Father of *Constantine* the Great, who had his Winter station here. It stands on the South-side of the Lake of *Constance* or *Boden-see*, where the River *Rhine* issues out of it at the distance of 60 miles from *Ulm* to the South-west, 70 from *Basil* to the East, and 30 from *Appenzel* to the North. It was taken by *Attila* the *Hunn*, and afterwards possessed by the Kings of *France*, by whom the Bishoprick of *Windisch* was remov'd hither in the year 594. and the City was enlarg'd, and so fortified before 938. that it withstood a great Army of *Hungarian* Savages that then over-run this Country. It is Imperial, but not perfectly free, for *Charles V.* subjected it to the *Austrian* Family for refusing the Terms concerning Religion tender'd to them; and the Emperor still maintains a Governour and Garrison here, under the Title of Protector. However, the City enjoys many Privileges, is a populous and rich Place, and hath a considerable Trade by means of the Lake. It is also well built and strongly fortified; the Churches are very magnificent, particularly the Cathedral of *St. Stephen*; also the Exchange, Town-house, Markets, Bridges, and other publick Buildings are very stately: As is likewise the Bishop's Palace that stands in the Suburb of *Petershausen*, which was fortified in 1635. when the *Suedes* attempted to besiege the City.

This City was made memorable by a general

Council held in it by the procurement of the Emperor *Sigismund* in the Year 1414. to remove a Schism in the Romish Church, upon Three Popes pretending to the Infallibility; all which Three were deposed, and a new one (*Martin V.*) chosen by this Council. They likewise condemn'd the Doctrins of *John Wickliff*, *John Huss* and *Jerom* of *Prague*, causing the Bones of *Wickliff* to be digg'd up and burnt; and notwithstanding a safe Conduct granted by the Emperor to *John Huss*, he was condemn'd, and burnt by them, as was also *Jerom* of *Prague*. This Council lasted four Years, held 45 Sessions, and ended April 12. 1418 during all which time there are said to have been in this City 4 Patriarchs, 29 Cardinals, 346 Arch-bishops and Bishops, 564 Abbots and Doctors, and 10000 secular Princes, and Noblemen. Also 1600 Barbers, 320 Musicians and (the account is very particular) 400 Harlots.

The Bishoprick of *CONSTANCE* lies along the Banks of the Lake and the Borders of *Switzerland*, among the Allies whereof it is commonly reckon'd. The Bishop is a Count of the Empire. Lord of above 1000 Castles and Villages, and is stiled Baron of *Richeraw*: he was also formerly Sovereign of *Constance*.

The Principality of *FURSTENBURG*, *Furstembergicus Principatus*, is extended in a narrow Tract about 70 Miles in length on both sides the *Danube*, which River hath its Source within its Limits. The chief Town of the same name stands on the South-side of the *Danube*, 30 miles North-west from *Constance*, 20 North from *Saffhausen*, on the *Rhine*, and 35 West from *Bisac*. It is subject to its own Prince, who is a Count of the Empire, and of an illustrious Family, which hath produced divers great Persons; particularly Cardinal *William Egen*, Count of *Furstemburg*, a Bishop of *Strasbourg*, whose pretensions to the Archbishoprick of *Cologne*, (already mention'd) gave occasion to the breaking out of the late War.

The famous *Hercynian* Wood or Black Forrest extended thus far, wherein stands *Tone Eschingen* a small Village, near which the River *Danube* hath its first Rise.

*ROTWEIL*, a small Imperial City, seated on the *Necker* but 10 miles from the head of the River, and is 15 miles distant from *Furstemburg* to the North, and 20 from *Tubingen* to the South. It is the Seat of a Chamber or Court of Justice for the whole Dutchy, first erected in the year 1147. by *Conrad III.* Duke of *Schwaben*. This City was taken by the *French* in 1643. but restor'd at the Treaty of *Munster*.

The Principality or County of *HOHENZOLLEN* is a narrow Tract of Land lying East and West about 35 miles in length, tho' not above 5 in breadth, between the Dutchy of *Wurtemberg*, and the River *Danube*. The chief Town of the same name stands about 20 miles from *Retmel* to the North-east, and 12 from *Tubingen* to the South.

The Country of *KONINGS ECK* lies on the East of *Furstemburg*.

The Barrony of *WALDBURG* is about 30 miles in length, and 10 or 12 in breadth, and lies between the County of *KoningsECK* on the West; the Lands of the Abbots of *Buchaw* on the North, and *Kempten* on the East.

*Hoheneschkurg* County lies on the East-side of the Dutchy of *Wurtemberg*.

*Reinsfelden*, the Capital of a small County, stands on the South-side of the *Rhine* near the Borders of *Switzerland*, and about 10 miles distant from *Basil* to the East.



## C H A P. VIII.

*The Circle of B A V A R I A.*

THE Circle of *Bavaria* is bounded on the North by *Franconia*, *Saxony* and *Bohemia*, on the South by the County of *Tyrol*, Bishoprick of *Brixen* and Dutchy of *Carinthia*, on the East by *Bohemia* and *Austria*, and on the West by *Schwaben*. Its extent from North to South is about 200 miles, and from East to West 120. The Air is healthy; the Soil produces Corn, Wine and Pasture; but the Country is much taken up in Forests and Mountains; the former whereof yield much Venison, and the latter Mines of Copper and some Silver, also Quarries of a sort of Marble. The River *Danube* runs through it, dividing the Palatinate from the Dutchy of *Bavaria*; the *Leck* runs along the West-side of the Dutchy of *Bavaria*, dividing it from the Bishoprick of *Augsburg*; and the *Inn* passes through it, from South-west to North-east and falls into the *Danube*: These, together with the *Amber*, the *Iler*, the *Seltz*, the *Altmul*, the *Nab* and the *Regen*, are the chief Rivers of this Province.

Besides the Dominions of the Elector of *Bavaria*, there are compris'd in this Circle several other Sovereignities, as the Archbishoprick of *Saltzburg*, the Bishopricks of *Ratisbon*, *Passaw* and *Freisingen*, the Dutchy of *Neuburg*, the Landgraviate of *Leuchtenburg*, the Territory of the City of *Ratisbon*, and several Imperial Cities; which are more particularly set forth in this Table.

The Dominions of the Duke of <i>Bavaria</i> are divided into	{	The Dutchy of <i>Bavaria</i> , which lies on the South-side of the <i>Danube</i> , and hath these Towns of chiefest note.	{	<i>Munich</i> , <i>Ingolstadt</i> , <i>Landshut</i> , <i>Straubingen</i> , <i>Donawert</i> , <i>Burkhausen</i> .
		Nort-Gew, or the Palatinate, called the Upper or <i>Bavarian</i> , (to distinguish it from that of the <i>Rhine</i> ) in which stand		<i>Amberg</i> , <i>Newmarckt</i> , <i>Chamb</i> , <i>Sultzbach</i> , <i>Leuchtenburg</i> , <i>Waltmunchen</i> ,
The Arch-bishoprick of <i>Saltzburg</i> lies on the South of <i>Bavaria</i> , wherein are these Towns of greatest note,	{		{	<i>Saltzburg</i> , <i>Lauffen</i> , <i>Windischmatray</i> , <i>Ditmaning</i> .
The Bishoprick of <i>Ratisbon</i> lies on the Banks of the <i>Danube</i> ,	{		{	<i>Ratisbon</i> .
The Bishoprick of <i>Passaw</i> lies on the <i>Danube</i> , next the Borders of <i>Austria</i> ,	{		{	<i>Passaw</i> .
The Bishoprick of <i>Freisingen</i> lies in the Dutchy of <i>Bavaria</i> ,	{		{	<i>Freisingen</i> , <i>Werdenfels</i> .
The Dutchy of <i>Neuburg</i> lies partly on the Banks of the <i>Danube</i> , and part between the Palatinate and the Bishoprick of <i>Ratisbon</i> ,	{		{	<i>Neuburg</i> , <i>Langingen</i> , <i>Hochstat</i> .

*BAVARIA*, call'd *Bayern* by the Germans, is part of the *Rhetia Vindilicia* & *Noricum* of the Ancients; and took its name *Boiaria* (corrupted into *Bavaria*) from the *Boij* a warlike People, that came from *Gallia Celtica* and settled here about 470 Years

after Christ, being govern'd by their proper Kings at first, and Dukes afterwards, to the time of *Charles* the Great, who conquer'd *Tassilo*, made himself Master of the Country and erected it into a Kingdom, in which State it lasted for about 100 Years, when *Lodowick* their King dying without Issue, the *Bavarians* chose *Arnolph*, a Descendent from *Charlemain*, to be their Governor; who contented himself with the Title of Duke, as all the Princes of it have since done; among whom, *Maximilian* was the first that had the Electoral Dignity, which was conferr'd on him, together with the upper Palatinate, by the Emperor *Ferdinand II.* A. D. 1623. in reward for the Service he did him in his War against *Frederick V.* Elector Palatine, chosen King of *Bohemia*.

The present Duke and Elector of *Bavaria*, *Maximilian-Emanuel*, is degraded by the Emperor from all his Dignities and Lives in Exile in the Service of *France*; he was born in 1662. succeeded his Father in 1679. and in 1685. married *Anna-Maria-Josepha*, the Emperor's Daughter by his first Wife *Margaret* of *Spain*, by whom he had a Son. who, if he had lived, would have been Heir to the Crown of *Spain*.

The Country abounds with Forests, which are fill'd with very large Deer, wild-Boars, Bears, and other Venison. Great number of Swine are fed here, which the Peasants make their chief Livelihood.

The most considerable Cities and Towns are these:

*MUNICH*, or *MUNCHE*N according to the pronounciation of the Inhabitants, call'd in Latin *Monachium*, is the Metropolis of *Bavaria* and the Seat of the Duke: It stands on the River *Iser*, 70 Miles from *Ulm* to the East, 40 from *Ingolstadt* to the South, 60 from *Inspiruck* to the North, and 100 from *Linrz* in *Austria* to the West, and is esteem'd one of the most pleasant, rich and populous Cities of *Germany*. The Buildings are fair and uniform, and the Streets broad and even. The Elector's Palace is a most magnificent Structure, the Apartments whereof are adorn'd with exceeding rich Furniture, the stately Galleries with curious Painting and Marble Statues, and the Dukes Closet and Library fill'd with curious Rarities and choice Books; and the spacious Gardens are made pleasant by delightful Walks, Fountains and Grottoes. The Jesuits Church and College is a stately Building; it was founded by *William* Duke of *Bavaria* about the Year 1600. and is the usual burial Place of the Dukes. The great Church of *Munich*, dedicated to the Virgin *Mary*, is also a very fine Building, and hath two Towers of 333 foot high. Here are also other Churches and publick Buildings worth a Stranger's notice. Two great Fairs held yearly here, contribute much to the enriching of the Inhabitants. This City was built in 962. and wall'd round in 1155. *Gustavus Adolphus* took it in 1632.

*Ingolstadt*, *Ingolstadium*, *Aureopolis*, stands on the North-side of the *Danube*, over which it hath a fair Bridge, 40 Miles North from *Munchen*, 12 East from *Neuburg*, and 30 West from *Ratisbon*. It is a fair well-built Place, seated in a pleasant fruitful Coun-



Country, and adorn'd with an University which enjoys great Privileges, and had the Honour to educate the great Cardinal *Bellarmino*. It was first made a City by the Emperor *Levis IV.* and is fortified with a very strong Castle and good Walls, by which means it was able to resist a very notable Siege of the Protestants in 1546. and another of *Gustavus Adolphus* in 1632.

*Landshut* is seated on the River *Iser*, 30 Miles North-east from *Munich*, and 30 South from *Ratisbon*: The Duke's Lieutenant in the lower *Bavaria* commonly resides here. It is a handsom well built City, and adorn'd with a stately Palace of the Elector; and a Church, which, for the height of its Tower, is thought to exceed any in *Germany*.

*Strasbourg* stands about 25 or 26 Miles North from *Landshut* on the Bank of the *Danube*, over which River it hath a Bridge.

*Amberg*, the Metropolis of the Upper Palatinate is seated on the River *Mittels*, 30 miles from *Ratisbon*, and 40 from *Ingelstadt* to the North, and 30 from *Nuremberg* to the East. It enjoys great Privileges, given by the Emperor *Robert*, and is a place esteem'd most considerable for Strength of any in the higher *Germany*. The Inhabitants have a good Trade in Iron and other Metals, that are dug out of the neighbouring Mountains. This City was purchas'd of the Duke of *Schawen* in 1266. by the Elector Palatine, from whom it was taken, together with all this Palatinate, by the Emperor *Ferdinand* in 1623. as we have already related.

*Neumarkt* is a fair City, standing on the Banks of the River *Sulz*, 30 Miles North from *Ingelstadt*, and 20 South from *Amberg*. It has been an Imperial City but was depriv'd of its Privileges, and now subject to the Duke of *Bavaria*. The Country about is pleasant, and is call'd the Territory of *Neumarkt*, tho' but little of it belongs to the City. The Trade of the Place consists chiefly in Iron.

*Chamb*, a small City, seated on the Rivers *Champ* and *Regen*, 40 miles from *Neumarkt* to the East, and 10 from the *Danube* to the North. It was formerly a Marquisate, but now subject to the Duke of *Bavaria*.

*Sulzbach*, is a small City seated on the top of a Hill, 5 miles from *Amberg* to the North-west, which with the County of it was formerly govern'd by an Earl of its own, but has at several times been subject to the Duke of *Bavaria* and Duke of *Neuburg*, a Branch of which last Family does still reside in the stately Palace here.

*Leuchtenberg*, a Castle, seated about 20 miles North-east from *Amberg*, gives name to a small Landgraviate, which was formerly subject to its own Lord, but now to the Duke of *Bavaria*.

*RATISBON*, call'd in Dutch *REGENSBURG*, Latin *Ratisbona*, olim *Reginum*, aut *Castra regina*, heretofore the Seat of the Kings, and afterwards of the Dukes of *Bavaria*, is seated on the *Danube*, where it receives the *Regen*, which running through the Town, gives it its Dutch name: It is distant 60 miles from *Munich* to the North, 60 from *Passau* to the West, as many from *Augsburg* to the North-east, and 25 from *Amberg* to the South. It is a fair large and populous City, the Houses neat, and the Streets large. The Cathedral Church is a fine old Building, as is the Castle wherein the Imperial Diets are commonly held: The Chamber in which they assemble, is a large stately Room hung with Tapestry; the Emperor's Throne is cover'd with Cloth of Gold, the Seats of the Electors with Cloth of Silver,

and the rest with Velvet, Satin, Silks, &c. according to the different Qualities. Here is a Stone bridge over the *Danube*, which is a noble Building; it is 1091 Foot long, 32 Foot broad, 25 15 large Arches, supported by Pillars and strengthen'd by Buttresses, and hath 3 Towers built upon it; this Bridge was finish'd in the Year 1156. *Ratisbon* is an Imperial City, and the See of a Bishop, who is Lord of the adjacent Territory. It is fortified with good Walls, Bulwarks and Trenches.

*PASSAU*, *Passavia* aut *Patavia*, olim *Batava Castra*, stands on both sides of the *Danube*, where it receives the *Inn* on one side, and the *Ilz* on the other, at the distance of 60 miles from *Ratisbon* to the East, and not above 10 from the Borders of *Austria*. It is a large City, Imperial and Free, but under the protection of its Bishop, who is a Prince of the Empire. The Rivers above-mentioned divide it into three parts, viz. *Passau* it self, which stands on the South-side of the *Danube*, and the West-side of the *Inn*; *Innsbruck*, on the other side of the *Inn*; and *Istade*, on the other side the *Danube*, and on the Banks of the *Ilz*. The private Buildings here are of Wood, but the Churches are fair and stately, especially the Cathedral, which is dedicated to *S. Stephen*. The Bishop's Palace, and the Castle on a Mountain near *Istade*, are handsom Buildings. The City is very strong, being fenced on all sides with Rocks and Rivers, and hath been famous by a Peace concluded in it in 1552 between the Emp. *Charles V.* and the Protestant Princes, by which the *Lutherans* were granted the free Exercise of their Religion.

The Bishop is Lord of a Country of about 20 miles extent, lying on the North-side of the *Danube*, between the *Palatinate* and *Austria*, in which stand two strong Castles, nam'd *Obernberg* and *Ebersberg*.

*NEUBURG*, *Neuburgum* aut *Novoburgum* is seated on the South-side of the *Danube*, at the distance of 45 miles from *Ratisbon* to the West, and 55 from *Ulm* to the East, 25 from *Augsburg* to the North, and 40 from *Nuremberg* to the South. It is a place of good Trade for Wines, and well fortified; but chiefly remarkable for being the Capital of a Duchy, erected about 150 Years ago, and given to a Branch of the *Bavarian* Family, whose Descendent *Philip William* succeeded in the Palatinate of the *Rhine*, A. D. 1685. and hath been signally fortunate in an illustrious Issue; for of his twelve Children, he has married three Daughters to the present Emperor, King of *Spain*, and King of *Portugal*, and a fourth to the Prince of *Poland*; his eldest Son, the present Elector Palatine, married the Emperor's Daughter; his second Son is Grand Master of the Teutonic Order; his third Son married the Princess *Radzeville*, the Marquess of *Brandenburg's* Widow; his fourth Son is Dean of *Augsburg* and President of the Chapter of *Constance*; and his fifth Son is Bishop of *Breslaw*. A stately Palace, built in this City by *Otto Henry* its Duke, soon after the Erection of the Duchy, is the usual Seat of this Prince. The extent of his Country is not large: it runs along the Banks of the *Danube* about 40 miles, but is very narrow. In the extrem West part of it stands

*Laugingen*, a strong regular fortified Town belonging to the Duke. It was the Birth Place of the famous *Albertus Magnus*: The great Church is a fine Building, cover'd with Copper, and has a Tower 300 Foot high. Here is also a Castle and a Bridge over the *Danube*.

*Hochstadt*,



*Hochstadt*, which stands on the *Danube*, not many miles East from *Laugingen*, and 12 West from *Donawert* a well fortified Place with a strong Castle, is also under the Duke of *Neuburg*, but claim'd by the Bishop of *Bamberg*. This Place was notable in some degree for a small Defeat the *Germans* receiv'd from the *French* near it in 1703. But a place that will be nam'd by all Posterity by whom for ever the Story will be repeated with wonder and applause, for the most glorious Victory here obtain'd by the Confederate Forces, commanded by *John Duke of Marlborough* and Prince *Eugene of Savoy*, over the most compleat Army of *French* and *Bavarian* Forces, that the great *Lewis* was ever Master of; The Gens-d'Arms; the Household Troops; the Mousquetaire; and in short the Flower of all the Army *France* could produce, together with the best Forces the Elector of *Bavaria* was Master of, were here assembled to conquer *Austria*; and assur'd themselves of Victory over any Army whatsoever that could be brought against them. But they were convinc'd of their Vanity on *Wednesday* the 2d. of *August*, 1704. O. S. and were so entirely Defeated, that there has hardly ever been known a more compleat Victory. The Particulars of this Battle is set down in all the Histories of that Year's Actions.

And altho' it stand in the limits of the next Circle, we are to speak of, namely, *Bavaria*, yet the Connexion will warrant our naming here.

*Bleinheim*, a Village only, which is equally Famous, on the same Account, this Place standing on the Flank of the *French* Army, was crowded by their Soldiers upon the turn of the Battle, and being afterwards surrounded and set on Fire by the Confederates, 10000 Men were forced to surrender Prisoners at Discretion.

*Donawert* or *Thonawert*, formerly an Imperial City, stands in the Confines of this Dutchy, on the Northern Banks of the *Danube*, at the confluence of the *Leck* with it, about 15 or 16 miles West from *Neuburg*; it is on the Road to *Augsburg*, and therefore pretty much frequented by Travellers; here is a strong Castle, which is nam'd *Schellenberg*. This City was divested of its Liberty about the beginning of this Age, for adhering to the Reformed Religion, and is now subject to the Duke of *Bavaria*.

In the Year 1704, when our *English* Forces under the Duke of *Marlborough*, with a Detachment of *Dutch* under Baron *Hompesch*, march'd into the Heart of *Germany* to relieve the Emperor, then in great Danger from the United Forces of *France* and *Bavaria*, a most signal Victory was obtain'd at this Place. The Duke of *Marlborough* understanding that the Elector of *Bavaria* had sent good part of his Forces to the *Schellenberg*, a strong Fortrefs not far from this City, which they had extraordinarily Fortified by several new Intrenchments, in order to stop the Course of our Army; set out on the 2d of *July* at Three in the Morning from *Hemeringden* a Village about Twenty Miles distant, with 6000 Foot, 30 Squadrons of Horse and 3 Regiments of Imperial Granadiers; and notwithstanding the badness of the Roads, and the difficulty of Passing the River *Weyt* which lay in their way, all which so Fatigued the Soldiers that it was Six at Night before they could make the Onset; I say, notwithstanding these Inconveniencies his Grace, suitable to the Character of an Englishman, attack'd the Enemies Entrenchments, which they defended very well; and for an Hour and Half as obstinate Fighting on both Sides was maintain'd as was ever seen; but the

Intrepidity of the Soldiers, the presence of Mind, Judgment and Activity of the General, render'd the Confederates Victorious, and his Grace that Day gain'd a Glory that will ever shine in History. This Heroick Action, which can never enough be applauded, (and 'tis no small Glory to *England* that her General effected it) was the Inlet to all the future Successes of that Glorious Year. No what if, or long-reach Politicks, were thrown here in the way to balk the Soldiers Courage, and most happily, no Envy crept into the Breast of one General to supplant the other's Glory, but by the kind Influence of Heaven good Nature reign'd and the Prince of *Baden*, as well as Baron *Hompesch*, were content to assist the Duke of *Marlborough*; and all Fought as those Heroes always do, that resolve to Conquer.

*FREISINGEN*, *Frisinga*, olim *Fruxinum*, is seated on the declension of a Hill, in a fertile Country, near the Banks of the River *Iser*, about 20 miles North from *Munich*, as many from *Landshut* to the South-west, and 40 from *Neuburg* to the South-east. It is a very ancient City, and was made an Episcopal See in the Year 716. the Bishop whereof is Lord of the adjacent Territory. This City was taken and almost entirely destroy'd by the *Suedes* in 1632. but restor'd in 1639. There is another small Territory lying on the Borders of *Bavaria* and *Tyrol*, subject to this Bishop, call'd the County of *Werdenfels*, from its chief Town, which stands near the River *Iser*, 45 miles South from *Munich*.

The Arch-bishoprick of *SALTZBURG* is a Country of pretty large extent, viz. 70 miles from East to West, and 50 from North to South. It is bounded on the East with *Styria* and the Upper *Austria*, on the West with the County of *Tyrol*, on the North with the Dutchy of *Bavaria*, and on the South with the Dutchy of *Carinthia*, and Bishoprick of *Brixen*. The Country abounds with Salt, Mines of Copper and Iron, and some of Silver, also great Quarries of Stone: A Mineral Water here, call'd the *Gastein-bath*, is famous for its Virtue in curing many Distempers. The Arch-bishop is a Prince of the Empire; by his Place Legate to the See of *Rome* in *Germany*, and, in the Diet, sits on the first Bench next the Electors. He is one of the richest Prelates of *Germany*, and Lord of this Country, which hath its Name from

*Salzburg*, *Salisburgum*, olim *Inuvavia*, seated on the River *Saltza*, 50 Miles South from *Passaw*, 60 East from *Munich*, and 60 from *Innspruck* to the North-east. It is one of the fairest Cities of *Germany*, and very well fortified. The Cathedral Church hath been new built in 1628, and is esteem'd one of the most magnificent in *Europe*. The Arch-Bishop's Palace is very stately; it is in a Castle nam'd *Mirabel*, which stands on a Hill. An University hath been establish'd here not many Years since. In the Church of *St. Sebastian*, lies buried, the famous Physician and Chymist, *Theophrastus Paracelsus*. The whole Town is generally well built, and the Inhabitants have a good Trade, which consists chiefly in the Salt produc'd in the neighbouring Pits. The Archiepiscopal Dignity was remov'd from the See of *Passaw*, and conferr'd on this by Pope *Leo III.* in 798. and the Bishoprick of *Chiamsee* incorporated with it to enable the Bishop the better to support the Dignity. This City had the misfortune to be Burnt down in the Year 1195. but it was soon Rebuilt, and now, as we have said, is in a flourishing State.



## CHAP. IX.

*The Circle of AUSTRIA.*

THE Circle of *Austria* is seated between *Bohemia* and *Moravia* on the North, the Dominions of the Republick of *Venice* on the South, *Hungary* on the East, and *Bavaria* on the West, and comprehends the Estates of the Family of *Austria* viz. *Austria*, *Styria*, *Carinthia*, *Carniola*, *Gilley*, *Goritz*, and *Tyrol*, and the Bishopricks of *Trent* and *Brixen*. The extent of the whole is about 300 miles from East to West, and 200 from North to South. The Soil is fertile, producing Corn, Wine, Pastures and Woods. The *Danube* passes through *Austria*; the *Drave* rises in the Mountains of *Brixen*, and runs through *Carinthia*; the *Save* hath its source in the Mountains in the North-west Borders of *Carniola*, and passes through that Duchy; the *Muer* rises in the Confines of *Salzburg*, runs through *Styria*, and falls into the *Drave* a little above *Canisja*; besides which, a great number of smaller Rivers water the several Provinces of this Circle.

*AUSTRIA*, which is dignified with the Title of an Arch Duchy, lies on both sides the River *Danube* for the space of about 60 or 70 Miles from North to South, and 160 from East to West. It was the *Pannonia Superior* of the Ancients; and its present name of *Ostreich* or Eastern Kingdom, in Latin *Austria*, was given by the *Franks*, because situated Eastward from *France*. It is a very plentiful Country, affording a great quantity of Wine and Saffron, besides Corn and all other Necessaries for Life in abundance. The Air is not of the wholesomest, the Lower *Austria* being subject to Infectious Vapours that cause Agues; to prevent which, may be the reason of their much Drinking, which it seems they are notable for, their Neighbours calling 'em *Paschaller*, or *Ransers*.

This Province, after the *Romans* time was part of the Kingdom of *Boians* or *Bavarians*, afterwards erected into a separate Marquisate by the Emperor *Otto I.* and the *Austrian* Family growing powerful, it was honour'd with the Title of Arch-Duchy.

This great Family is, by the *German* Genealogists, pretended to be deriv'd from the ancient *Greek* or *Roman* Heroes. But the first certain Account that is to be found of it, is, That they were Lords of *Vindonissa*, a City of *Switzerland*, afterwards Counts of *Asemburg*, and Earls of *Hapsburg*; which Honours they had held from Father to Son for 600 Years before *Rudolph*, Earl of *Hapsburg*, was advanc'd to the Imperial Throne in 1273. who, being a very brave Prince, rais'd his Family exceedingly. In his time *Frederick*, Duke of *Austria*, dying without Issue, *Ottocarius* King of *Bohemia* seiz'd upon it, pretending a Right by his Wife, and added to it *Carniola* and *Carinthia*, which he bought of *Ulric* the last Prince of those Provinces; but the Emperor claim'd it as a Fief-Male to return to the Empire, and by Force dispossest *Ottocarius*, and gave it to his Son *Albert*, who, by Marriage with *Elizabeth*, Daughter of *Meinard* Earl of *Tyrol*, obtain'd that Earldom and several Estates in *Schwaben* and *Alsacia*: By all which Accessions he became powerful enough to contend with the Emperor *Adolph*, whom

he slew in Battle, and caus'd himself to be chosen Emperor; but after he had reign'd 10 Years he was slain. He left behind him six Sons, from whom descended *Frederick III.* chosen Emperor 1440. *Maximilian* his Son succeeded him in the Empire, and marry'd *Mary* Daughter of *Charles* the Warlike Duke of *Burgundy* (the richest Heiress of *Europe*); and thereby acquir'd all *Belgium*, or the *Netherlands*. *Philip* the Son of *Maximilian* marry'd *Joan* the Daughter of *Ferdinand* and *Isabel*, the first Monarchs of all *Spain*, and in her Right succeeded in that Kingdom, and began the *Spanish* Branch of the *Austrian* Family. *Charles* succeeded his Father and Grandfather in all their Honours and Estates, so that he was Emperor of *Germany*, and King of *Spain*, *Naples* and *Sicily*, and Lord of *Belgium*, besides the Realms of *Mexico* and *Peru* in *America*, with the Duchy of *Milan*, which were added to *Spain* in his time. This mighty Prince, after he had reign'd 42 Years, voluntarily resign'd all his Dominions; and after he had given his Son *Philip* his Kingdoms of *Spain*, *Naples*, *Sicily*, *Mexico*, with *Belgium*, &c. and obtain'd his Brother *Ferdinand* to be chosen Emperor, himself retir'd into a Monastery. *Ferdinand* was chosen King of *Hungary* and *Bohemia*, which, with the Empire, his Successors have ever since enjoy'd. By the means of this Grandeur, the Family of *Austria* hath obtain'd large Privileges: The Arch-Duke is the first Councillor of the Empire; he can create Barons and Counts all over the Empire: The Princes of this Family cannot be disseiz'd of their Estates, even by the Emperor himself. In case of the failure of the Male-Line, the eldest Daughter may inherit, and her Husband enjoy the Dignity and Privileges of Arch-Duke, &c.

The late Emperor *LEOPOLD* was the Heir of the *German* Branch of this great Family, and Inheritor of all its Honours and Estates.

*Austria* is divided into the Upper and Lower, with respect to the course of the River *Danube*, being divided by the River *Enz*.

In the Lower are these chief Towns,	{	<i>Vienna</i> , Capital.
		<i>Neustat</i> .
		<i>Krems</i> ,
		<i>Stain</i> .
		<i>Baden</i> .
In the Upper, stands	{	<i>Tuln</i> .
		<i>Haynburg</i> .
		<i>Lintz</i> .
		<i>Enz</i> .
		<i>Everding</i> .
		<i>Freistat</i> .
		<i>Steyr</i> .
		<i>Wels</i> .

*VIENNA*, olim *Vindemina* & *Vindobona*, call'd by the Natives *WIEN*, is the Capital of *Austria*, and by being the Seat of the Emperor, is esteem'd the Metropolis of *Germany*; it was originally a Fort of the *Romans*, and not at all considerable, till *Henry* Prince of *Austria* rebuilt it in 1158. It was enlarg'd



larg'd, beautify'd and wall'd round in the Year 1192. with the Money that was paid by the *English* Nation for the Ransom of *Richard I.* detain'd Prisoner by the Marquess of *Austria*, in his return from the Holy Land. It is now a very rich flourishing City, and exceeding populous; great numbers of Strangers, besides Natives of other parts of *Germany*, being brought hither by the Emperor's Court. The Houses are well built of Stone and very high, commonly six Stories, and besides have frequently Cellars sunk four Stories under one another. The Emperor's Palace is a noble piece of Building, but not very large; it consists of two Courts: Over the Entrance are set in Capitals the 5 Vowels, the Exposition of which causes many Conjectures; one that pleases best, is, *Austria Est Imperare Orbi Univerſo*. The Furniture is very princely. But that which most deserves a Traveller's Sight, are, the Repository or Collection of Rarities of Nature and Art, and the Library; in the former of which are kept a vast number of Curiosities, the bare Catalogue whereof takes up a large Vol. in Fol. Dr. *Brown* has mention'd several of the most considerable, to which we must refer the Reader. it being too long to set down here. The Library consists of 8 Chambers, which contain a very valuable and numerous Collection of Printed Books, besides a great number of Manuscripts, and is excell'd by no Library of *Europe*, as containing 80000 Volumes.

This City is the See of a Bishop, who is Suffragan to the Archbishop of *Salzburg*. The Cathedral Church, dedicated to St. *Stephen*, is a stately Fabrick; the Windows are of thick painted Glass, which makes the Church somewhat dark; the Belfry is extraordinary, being adorn'd with Statues and fine Embellishments; the Steeple rises in a Spire to the height of 482 Foot (456. according to Dr. *Brown*) and on the top was set the *Turkish* Arms, a Star and Crescent, to save it from being destroy'd at the time that *Solyman* besieg'd this City, which continu'd there till the Year 1683. when, after defeating the *Turks* that Year, it was taken down. An University is establish'd here, which is endow'd with many Privileges and a fair Revenue, and a great number of Students: It was founded, as some say, by the Emperor *Frederick II.* and enlarg'd and compleated by *Albert III.* Duke of *Austria*, who also obtain'd its Privileges to be confirm'd by the Pope. The Jesuits have two Houses here, which, together with their College and Church, are fine Buildings; as are also the Abbey and Church of St. *Gregory*.

The *Roman Catholick* Religion only is here profess'd, which obliges the *Protestants* to go as far as *Presburg* to Church. The *Jews* had formerly a Liberty to Trade here, but of late they have been wholly banish'd.

The Fortification of this City consists of a very strong Wall, wherein are 12 large Bastions, 2 of which are to the Water, and the other to the Land, and deep Ditches: And indeed this Fortification is needful, for it has been besieg'd no less than four times by the *Turks*. viz. in the Year 1529, by *Solyman* the Magnificent, with an Army of 200000 Men, who were repuls'd and forc'd to return, after they had given two general Assaults to the Town; in the Years 1532. and 1543. and again in our Days. viz. A. D. 1683. at which time the City was reduc'd to great Extremity, being batter'd by the Enemy's Cannon from the 14th of *July* to the beginning of *September*, which they valiantly resisted, under their Courageous Governor Count *Staremburg*; till *John*,

the late King of *Poland*, came up with his Army to their Relief, which being joyn'd with the *Imperialists*, set upon the *Turks* the 10th of *September*, and totally routed and destroy'd their Army, which was said to consist of 100000 Men, and took their Cannon, Camp and Baggage, and so relcu'd the City, which was reduc'd to the last Extremity.

The Suburbs, call'd *Leopoldstadt*, is divided from the Town by a fair Plain of a good breadth, and the River *Danube*; and before the last Siege was almost as considerable as the Town, being fill'd with the Houses of Nobility and Gentry very magnificently built; but this was quite burnt down in the Siege.

The City stands on the South-side of the River *Danube*, which running thro' low Grounds, is here divided into several Streams, and makes many Islands, one of which call'd *Peters*, lies just before the Gates, and is large enough to lodge a considerable Army for their defence; near the Town a small River call'd the *Wien* falls into the *Danube*, over which last here is a Bridge. It is distant 26 German Leagues, or 104 *English* miles from *Lintz* to the East, 6 Leagues from the Confines of *Hungary*, and 10 from *Presburg* to the West, and seated in the Lat. of 48. 20. Long. (reckoning from *Teneriff* according to the old Maps) 36. 10. but according to *Sanſon*, 31. 19.

*Lintz*, *Aurelianum*, *Lyncia* or *Lyncium*, the next considerable City, as being the Metropolis of the Upper *Austria*, is situate upon the *Danube*, over which it has a Bridge, 100 miles from *Vienna* to the West, 30 from *Passaw* to the East, and 50 from *Salzburg* to the North East; it stands in a very pleasant Country, and therefore much resorted to by the Nobility, who have their Houses of Pleasure in its Suburbs on the other side the *Danube*, and in the Neighbourhood. The Emperor has a Palace here, to which he retir'd during the Siege of *Vienna* in 1683. Dr. *Brown* says, This is not a great, but very neat City; the whole Town is built of Stone, the Market-place very large, and not a bad House in it; the Castle stands upon a Hill, is very large and of modern Structure. The Imperial Army rendezvous'd here when the *Turks* came to *Vienna* in 1532. Here was for some time a Church and University of *Lutherans* in so flourishing a Condition, that in 20 Years time there were no less than 3000 Counts, Barons and Noblemen had been educated in it; but it was put down by the *Austrian* Family, when the Emperor *Matthias* resided here for almost a Year together, A. D. 1614. The Church and the Palace in the City and the Monastery of the *Capuchins* in the Suburbs, are the things chiefly worth a Traveller's Sight. There are 2 Fairs held here yearly, which brings great resort of People.

*Ens*, *Anasium*, *Enſum Civitas*, a fair strong and well-built City, stands on a River of the same Name, which 2 miles North of it falls into the *Danube*, and is distant 15 miles from *Lintz* to the East; this Town was built in the place where formerly stood the City *Laureacum*, considerable in the *Romans* time, having been the Seat of some of their Emperors, and since Christianity, was an Archbishop's See; but that City was destroy'd by the *Huns*, A. D. 903. and this of *Ens* built, which was formerly govern'd by its Count, till the Emperor *Rodolph I.* bought it, and annex it to the States of *Austria*.

*Steyer*, a neat handſom Town at the Conflux of the 2 small Rivers, the *Steyer* and the *Ens*, about 10 miles from *Ens* to the South. It is inhabited by Smiths, Cutlers, and other Iron-workers, who, by the *Danube*, furnish the neighbouring Parts with their Ware, and much enrich themselves.



*Wels* a neat Town upon the River *Traune*, 4 German miles from *Linz* to the South, not considerable.

*Eberditz* or *Efferding*, about 12 miles from *Linz* to the West, and near the Banks of the *Danube*, is a strong fortified Town, and defended with 2 Castles, one within the Walls of the Town, and another without which is call'd *Schaumburg*, and gave Title to a Count of the Family of *Fulbach*, to whom this Town belonged; but the Count of *Staremburg* is now Lord of it, his Ancestor having marry'd the Daughter of the last Count *Schaumburg*, about A. D. 1560.

*Frenstat*, on the North-side the *Danube* near the borders of *B. hemia*, is a well-built Town, but not very strong; it stands 25 miles from *Linz* to the North. A Fair is held here once a Year which lasts 14 Days, and brings great Concourse of People to it.

*Newstadt*, the chief Town near *Vienna* of the Lower *Austria*, is seated on a Bog in the middle of a Plain, at the distance of 30 miles from *Vienna* to the South; it is fortified with 2 Walls and a Ditch, which makes it so strong that it resisted the main force of the *Turks*, who were contented to retreat if the Town would give them some Trophy to carry to *Constantinople*, who thereupon sent them their Whipping-post.

*Krems* stands on the North-side of the *Danube*, near a small River of the same Name about 40 miles from *Vienna* to the West. It is a neat, well-built, walled City, and has a good Trade, especially at 2 Yearly Fairs, which last 14 Days.

*Stain* is a small City on the North-side of the *Danube* also, not above 2 miles from *Krems* to the West, and has a Bridge over the *Danube*.

*Baden*, call'd so from the natural Baths that rise here in so many Springs as to supply 2 Baths within the Town, 5 without the Wall, and 2 beyond a Rivulet call'd *Swaerz*, the Waters of which are commended for curing many Distempers, and therefore much resorted to. This Town stands in a Plain about 15 miles from *Vienna* to the South, and as far from *Newstadt* to the West.

*Tu'n* is an ancient Town about 20 miles Westward from *Vienna*, upon a small River of the same Name, which falls into the *Danube* about 5 or 6 miles below it. The Country about it is reckon'd the fruitfullest and healthiest part of *Austria*, but the Town however not very well furnish'd with Provisions for Travellers.

*Hainburg* or *Haimburg*, *Hamburgum Austriae*, was anciently the Metropolis of *Austria* and the Seat of the Dukes, and one of the greatest Mart-Towns in these Parts, but decay'd upon Duke *Leopold's* removing to *Vienna* about A. D. 1200. It is situate on the South-side of the *Danube*, 30 miles East from *Vienna*, and near the Borders of *Hungary*, from whence it has been frequently disturb'd by the Rebels of that Country. They have plenty of Wine and Corn, which is now the chief Trade of the Town. There are still to be seen some Remains of strong Walls and Fortifications round the Town.

The Dukedom of *STYRIA*, call'd in *High-Dutch* *Steiermark*, with the County of *CILLEY*, lies between *Austria* on the North, *Carinthia* and *Carniola* on the South, *Hungary* and *Sclavonia* on the East, and *Salzburg* on the West: Its extent from East to West is about 110 miles, and from North to South in some Parts 30, in others 80 miles. The Soil yields Corn, Wine, Fruits, Mines of Iron and Salt-Springs. Some part of the Country is mountainous and barren, but the Valleys afford Pasture for great Herds of Kine. The Air of the Lower *Styria* is somewhat unwhol-

som. The Disease mention'd by Travellers to be found among the People that dwell at the foot of the *Alps*, viz. a strange Swelling under the Chin, is very frequent here, which grows incredibly large, occasion'd, 'tis judg'd, by drinking Snow-water that comes off the Mountains, which the poorer People are fain to be content with.

*Styria* is divided, with respect to the course of the River *Mur*, into the Upper, wherein are,

*Fudenburg*.  
*Bruck*: *Fisch*.  
*Lawben*.  
*Seckaw*.  
*Isenartz*.  
*Gratz* Capital.  
*Rakelsburg*.  
*Petram*.  
*Marksburg*.

The Lower, whereof the chief Towns are,

The Earldom of *Cilley* lies on the South-side of the River *Drave* extending to the Banks of the *Save*.

*Cilley*.  
*Rain*.

*GRACZ*, *Gracium*, the Capital of *Styria*, is a neat well-built City, standing in a pleasant and fruitful Country, on the Banks of the River *Mur*, 80 Miles South from *Vienna*, 20 from the *Drave*, and 40 from *Cilley* to the North, and about 50 from the Borders of *Hungary* to the West. It is defended by regular Fortifications that render it almost Impregnable, and hath a stately Castle standing on a high Hill, which is a Palace of the Arch-duke, and is adorn'd with fine Furniture, particularly a good Library, and a Repository of Rarities. The Jesuits College here is well endow'd, and hath the Privilege of conferring Degrees, which makes it to be reckon'd amongst the Universities of *Germany*, and well fill'd with Students.

*Fudenburg*, a handsome and well-built Town, famous for two great Fairs for Cattle yearly held in it. The Duke of *Styria* has a Palace here, in which his Deputy sometimes resides: It stands on the River *Mur*, 50 Miles from *Gratz* to the West, in a very pleasant and fruitful Country.

*Lawben* is also on the *Mur*, 25 Miles North East from *Fudenburg*: It is a neat pleasant City, and the Capital of a Barony; but was sold to the Duke of *Carinthia* in 1246, and fell to the House of *Austria* with that Datchy. It was taken and plunder'd in 1292, by the Archbishop of *Salzburg*, then at War with the Duke of *Austria*.

*Bruck* or *Pruck an den Mur*, is an old Town, and has nothing considerable in it, only that the Emperor has sometimes assembled here the State of these three Dukedoms of *Styria*, *Carinthia* and *Carniola*. It stands on the *Mur*, 25 Miles North-West from *Gratz*.

*Seckaw*, a small Cattle on the River *Gail*, 40 miles from *Gratz* to the West, and 60 from *Stain* to the South, is an Episcopal See, erected in 1219, under the Archbishop of *Salzburg*, who has the Power of Electing and Invetting, and receiving an Oath of Fidelity of this Bishop; and he has no Voice in the Diet.

*Isenartz*, famous for Mines and Forges of Iron, (from whence it has its Name) which employ a vast number of Labouring-men, which therefore live here and supply the neighbouring parts with this Metal, and all *Germany* with Steel. They have an annual Fair for Hemp, Leather, Tallow, and all Necessaries. The Mines were discover'd in A. D. 712, and have been wrought ever since without any sensible Decay. This Town stands near a little River call'd *Salza*, that falls into the *Ens*, is distant 12 Miles from *Lawben* to the North-West, and 24 from *Fudenburg* to the North-East.

*Rakelsburg*,



LAV-



**LAUBACH**, *Labacum*, ant *Labians*, the Capital of *Carniola*. stands on the Banks of a small River of the same Name, which falls into the *Save* 10 miles below it, and is distant 30 miles from the River *Drave* to the South, 50 from the Confines of *Croatia* to the West, and 35 from *Trieste* upon the Gulph of *Venice* to the North. It is a well-built City and very populous, the See of a Bishop, hath a large Castle for its defence, but it is commanded by a Hill, and the Town is not very strong; however endured a Siege in 1420 when *Frederick III* being Crown'd at *Aken*, his Brother *Albert* and Count *Ulric* attack'd this City, but it held out till the Emperor came to its Relief.

**Crainburg**, seated on the Banks of the *Save*, 20 Miles from *Laubach* North-west, and 24 from *Clagenfurt* to the South-east, on the top of a Hill, and fortified with a strong Castle. The Town has three Churches in it, and in the Suburbs is a Monastery of Capuchins. It once gave Title to a Marquess.

**Lack**, or *Bishops Lack*, is a handsome well built fortified City, standing upon a small River, 10 Miles South from *Crainburg* and 20 East from *Laubach*. It is subject to the Bishop of *Freyding*, to whom the Emperor *Henry III* gave it, and the Governour of it is his Lieutenant. This Town was plunder'd and burnt in 1451. since when it has been Re-built and better fortified.

**Zirknitz**, a Town of no great bulk, nor considerable but for the Lake near it, to which it gives name.

This Lake is very wonderful; it is about 4 German Miles in length, and 2 in breadth, and from *September* to *June*, is full of Water, but the other six Months is quite dry. In *June* the Water descends thro' many large Holes in the bottom, (at which time the Country People catch abundance of Fish, by laying Nets over the Holes) leaving the bottom quite dry, so that the neighbouring People sow Corn in it, which they have time to reap, and afterwards to put in their Cattle; and let in the Deers and Hares from the neighbouring Forests, which they Hunt in this Lake, and all before the Water returns; for the Earth is exceeding Prolifick: And in *September* the Water returns, spouting up with great Violence, and to a great height, out of these Holes, and soon makes that a Sea, that was before a Field for Corn, Pasture and Hunting; and this happens constantly every Year, and at this certain time.

**Ober-Laubach**, about 16 miles West from the *Laubach*, already described, and on the same River with that, is considerable by being a Mart for *Italian* Goods, which are brought hither in great quantities, and sent to all parts of *Germany*.

**Metling**, *Metulum*, the chief Town of the *Windischmark*, stands on the Frontiers of *Croatia*, 35 miles South-east from *Cilly*, and 25 East from the Lake of *Zirknitz*. It is a Place of no great Consideration: The chief Trade of the Inhabitants lies in Swine, which they fatten in 2 neighbouring Woods of Chestnut-trees and Oaks. In the Year 1431, this Town was surpriz'd by the *Turks*, and the Inhabitants massacred. And again, in 1578, it was plunder'd by 'em.

**Rudolphswarth** or *Neustadt*, stands upon the River *Gurk* 12 miles North-west from *Metling*: It is a very ancient Town, and honour'd with great Privileges, which were given them by the Emperor *Frederick IV*, about the Year 1435, for having oppos'd *Albert* of *Austria* and *Ulric* Count of *Cilly*. This Town is famous for the best Wine in these Parts.

**GORITIA**, a small County in *Friuli*, is subject to the Emperor. The rest of the Province being subject to the *Venetians*, shall be describ'd with the rest of *Italy*. The Chief Town is,

**Gortz** or *Goritz* seated upon the River *Lizonza*, 20 miles from the Gulph of *Venice* and 15 from *Aquileia* to the North, 50 from *Clagenfurt* to the South, and as much from *Laubach* to the West. The Town is old and by some thought to be the old *Roman Noricia* or *Norzia*. *Dieterich*, King of the *Goths*, vanquish'd *Odenacer* King of the *Heruli*, near this Place. The *Slavonian* Tongue, spoke in these Provinces, reaches no farther West than this Town, and here the common People speak a corrupt *Italian*. It was taken by the *Venetians* in 1608, but regain'd by the Emperor the Year after; and in 1616, they attempted to surprize it, but were forced to retreat.

**Trieste**, the chief Town of the small Province of *Karstia*, stands on the *Adriaticque* Sea, or Gulph of *Venice*, 30 miles from *Aquileia* to the East, at the bottom of a Bay, to which it gives Name. It is a small, but strong and populous Place, and a Bishop's See, under the Patriarch of *Aquileia*; it has a large but unsafe Harbour. The Emperor took this City from the *Venetians*, A. D. 1507, and has been ever since in possession of it.

**S. Piet am Flaum**, tho' situate in *Istria*, which is accounted part of *Italy*, yet being subject to the House of *Austria*, must be described here. It is a strong Town, having a Castle, besides Walls and Ditches for its Defence, and is seated on the *Adriatick* Sea, 20 miles South from *Czernickz*, and 30 South-west from *Metling* and at the Mouth of the River *Flaum*. The *Italian* Tongue is here spoken in its Purity, and therefore the *Austrian* Gentry send their Children here to be taught it. In the Suburbs stands a Monastery famous for a Treaty of Peace concluded in it between the Emperor and the *Venetians*, in the Year 1618.

### The County of TYROL, with the Bishoprick of BRIEEN.

**TYROL** is one of the largest Counties of the Empire, its extent being 120 miles from East to West, and 60 from North to South. It is bounded by *Schwaben* and *Bavaria* on the North, the *Grisons* and *Trent* on the South, *Carinthia* on the East, and *Switzerland* on the West. The Country is very mountainous, and the Soil barren in many parts; however, the Valleys are very fruitful and afford good Pasture. Here are divers Springs of mineral and Salt Waters, and Mines of Silver, Iron and Copper. The chief Rivers are the *Eisack* or *Laisack*, the *Inn*, which crosseth this Province from South-west to North-east, and the *Adige* or *Etsch*, which takes its rise here, and passes through the Territories of *Venice*.

*Tyrol* is said to be the *Rhetia inferior* of the *Romans*, and upon the decay of their Power was seized by the Princes of *Bavaria*, and the Governors of it were appointed by them, with the Titles of Margraves; this Margrave was afterwards made hereditary, and a Count of the Empire, by *Frederick I*, about the Year 1350. The Bishoprick of *Trent* was added to it by *Ludowick*, Son to the Duke of *Bavaria* and Count of *Tyrol*, who took that Bishop Prisoner. This *Ludowick* dying without Issue, his Widow settled this County upon the Duke of *Austria*; in which Family it has ever since continued.

It is divided into

*Tyrol*, proper, wherein stands  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Innsbruck, Capit} \\ \text{Ombraz,} \\ \text{Tyrol,} \\ \text{Hall.} \end{array} \right.$

The



The Bishoprick of *Brixen*.*Brixen*.

The Counties of

*Meran,*  
*Pludentz,*  
*Bregentz,*  
*Felakirk,*  
*Montfort.*

**INSBRUCK**, *Oenipons*, is seated in a pleasant Valley, at the Foot of the Mountains of *Venden*, and on the Banks of the River *Im*, which separates the City from its large Suburbs. It is 64 miles distant from *Munchen* to the South, 80 from *Saltzburg* to the South-west, and 70 from *Trent* to the North. Though it be not large, it is well built, and adorn'd with curious Fountains, spacious Market places, and a magnificent Castle, wherein the Arch-Dukes of *Inspruck* used to reside, and has since been the Seat of its Princes of the House of *Austria*; it is a noble Palace, furnished with a Cabinet of curious Rarities in Art and Nature, and adorn'd with pleasant Gardens. *Inspruck* was Wall'd by *Otto* the Great Count of *Meran*, about the Year 1234. but is now destitute of that Defence. But *Ombras*, about an *Engish* mile distant from it, is a very strong Fort: This was the Summer Seat of the Dukes, being exceeding pleasantly situated. The Armory here is very fine; amongst the Arms and Pictures of several Princes, the Statue of *Francis I.* on Horse back, representing him as he was taken Prisoner at *Pavia*, is to be seen in it. And in the Duke's Closet of Rarities, there is a Trunk of an Oak with a whole Deer enclosed in it.

*Hall*, call'd *Im'thall* for distinction, is seated on the River *Im* 10 miles from *Inspruck* to the North-east, and is famous for its Salt-pits, which afford the Inhabitants a profitable Trade. The Pits are about 4 miles from the Town, where the Salt is dug up like Copper Oar, then laid to soak in great Trenches fill'd with Water, and afterwards boil'd up in great Pans here in the City, of which they have four made of Iron that are each 48 Foot long, 34 broad, and 3 deep.

**BRIXEN**, *Brixino*, stands at the bottom of Mount *Brenner*, upon the River *Eysach*, 30 miles South east from *Inspruck*, and 30 from the Confines of *Carinthia*. It was formerly an Imperial City, but it is now the See of a Bishop, who hath Jurisdiction over it, and is a Count of the Empire. The City is small, and not very populous; it lies upon the Road to *Italy*, and is therefore the Station of some Merchants that hand the Commodities of that Country and *Germany* to and again. Here are mineral Waters of good Fame, especially one call'd the Virgin Well, which is much resorted to.

The Diocess of this Bishop is about 40 miles long, and 30 broad.

*Meran*, once the Capital of this County, and gave Title to an Earl, is a small City seated on the River *Erch*, 50 miles South of *Inspruck*. Near it is

*Tyrol*, an ancient Castle, which gave name to the whole Country. It is seated in a pleasant Country, but has nothing considerable in it.

*Pludentz*, stands at the foot of the Mountains upon the Bank of the River *Ill*, about 75 miles West from *Inspruck*.

*Bregentz* stands at the East-end of the Lake of *Constance*, 80 miles West from *Inspruck*.

*Montfort* stands about the mid-way between *Bregentz* to the North, and *Pludentz* to the South.

*Felkirk* stands upon the *Ill*, and near the *Rhine*, about 12 miles West from *Pludentz*.

### The Bishoprick of T R E N T.

This Country is by some Geographers made part of *Italy*: But the Bishop of it being a Prince of the Empire, the *Germans* reckon it into the Circle of *Austria*. It lyes among the *Alps*, between the County of *Tyrol* on the North, the Dominions of the State of *Venice* on the South and East, and the *Grisons* on the West. The extent of it is about 70 miles from East to West, and 50 from North to South. The River *Adige* runs thro' it from North to South and receives several smaller Rivers that rise in the Mountains on each side this Country. The Soil here produces Wine, Oil, Fruit and Pasture, but not much Corn.

The Chief Towns are  $\begin{cases} \text{Trent,} \\ \text{Pozzen.} \end{cases}$

**TRENT**, *Tridenum*, is seated upon the River *Adige*, in a pleasant Vally, between three very high and steep Mountains, 45 miles South-east from *Brixen*, 35 North from *Verona*, 30 from the Confines of the *Valteline* to the West, and 70 from *Inspruck* to the South. It is adorn'd with many stately Palaces, and several beautiful Churches, whereof the Cathedral dedicated to *S. Vigel*, is reckon'd a fine piece of Architecture: It's Chapter consists of Noblemen, who choose the Bishop. Here are also a great number of Religious Houses. The Inhabitants speak both the *German* and *Italian* Tongues very perfect, and are observ'd to be exceeding Civil to Strangers, whereof a great many pass thro' this Place in Travelling into *Italy* and *Germany*. It was formerly an Imperial City, but is now subject to its B.shop, on whom the Emperor *Conrad II.* bestowed the Sovereignty of this Territory, which had before been subject to its own Lord, under the Protection of the Duke of *Bavaria*. This Donation was ratified by the Emperors *Frederick I.* and *II.* and the Count of *Tyrol* made Protector of it. The Bishop is Suffragan to the Patriarch of *Aquileia*, and as we have said, a Prince of the Empire. The Council held here in the last Age hath made this City famous: It began in the Year 1545. but was not ended till 1563. during most of which time there are said to have been in this City 7 Cardinals, 3 Patriarchs, 33 Archbishops, 235 Bishops, 7 Vicars General, and 146 Divines, besides many Ambassadors, who with their Attendants, were provided with Lodging, Victuals, and all Necessaries. This Council was Assembled by Pope *Paul III.* at the instance of many of the Princes of *Europe*, for the Reformation of the Discipline of the Church, but by the contrivance of the Pope and Cardinals, so many *Italian* Bishops were brought to it, that they over-rul'd the Endeavours of the rest, and permitted nothing to be Decreed but what the Pope directed, which was so notorious, that it was a common Jest, *That the Holy-Ghost was sent from Rome to Trent in a Cloak-bag.* And so little was done of what was expected during all this long Session, that not only the Protestants, but the whole *German* and *French* Nations refused to receive its Decrees. This Council began on the 4th of *January*, 1545. and continu'd all the Reign of that Pope, who dying in 1549. it was resum'd by Pope *Julius III.* in 1551. He dy'd in 1555. and a War broke out in *Germany*, which interrupted it till *Pius IV.* re-assembled it on the 18th of *January*, 1562; from which time it continu'd till the 3d of *December*, 1563. when it finally broke up, after having with the utmost Partiality establish'd the Pope's Authority, and ratified the Doctrins of Purgatory, Invocation of Saints, Indulgences, &c.



*Poggen*, call'd by the *Italians* *Bolzano*, is seated on the *Adige*, 25 miles North from *Trent*, and near the *Confines* of *Tyrol*. It is pleasantly situated, and is a Place of good Trade, especially at its four Yearly Fairs, that hold 15 Days each, to which great numbers of Merchants come from several Parts of Ger-

many and *Italy*; for whose sake great Privileges have been granted to the City. Tho' it be seated in the *Diocesis*, this Place is not subject to the *Bishop* of *Trent*, having been taken from him by the *Earl* of *Tyrol*, in 1295.

## CHAP. X.

### The Kingdom of BOHEMIA, with the Dukedom of SILESIA and Marquisite of MORAVIA.

UNDER the name of *Bohemia* in general are comprehended *Bohemia*, *Moravia*, and *Silesia*, which altogether lye in form of a *Lozenge*, between *Austria* on the South, *Brandenburg* and *Lusatia* on the North, the *Palatinate* of *Bavaria*, with part of *Saxony* on the West, and *Poland* on the East, and extends 69 German Leagues, or 276 English Miles from North to South, and 65 Leagues, or 260 Miles from East to West.

Although this Kingdom be compriz'd within the compass of *Germany*, and the King is an *Elect*or of the *Empire*, it hath several peculiar *Constitutions* and *Customs*, and a *Language* different from the *Germans*. The Kingdom is *Elective*; but the *House* of *Austria*, by claiming it as *Hereditary*, occasion'd bloody Wars in the beginning of this Age between the *Emperor* *Ferdinand II.* and *Frederick* Count *Palatine*, who being *Elect*ed, had accepted of this *Crown*. But this Prince being overcome by the *Emperor* in the famous *Battle* of *Prague*, *A. D.* 1620. the Kingdom hath been ever since entirely subject to that Family.

The *Reformation* of Religion was begun very early here by *John Huss* and *Jerem* of *Prague*, and their *Converts* were numerous long before *Calvin* and *Luther* appear'd; whose *Doctrines* also being brought hither, prevail'd much, and the number of *Protestants* were very great, before by *Persecutions* and Wars they were harass'd and subjected to the *Roman* *Catholic*s, which Religion at present is only predominant in this Kingdom.

The ancient History of this Country is very obscure; the best account that remains is, that the People of the more Northern parts came hither for a warmer Climate, and at first liv'd in a sociable Community, distributing all things in common, but differences arising, they were forc'd to *Elect* a Governor, who had at first the Title of a *Judge* only, afterwards honour'd with that of *Duke*, and at length King. The Succession of these Princes, as well as can be made from the imperfect *Chronicles* of this Nation, is as follows.

A Chronological TABLE, shewing the Succession of the Dukes and Kings of BOHEMIA.

#### XVIII Dukes.

Crocus the first Law-giver of Bohemia.

Began to reign A.C. reign'd years.

Lithys Daughter of Crocus, }  
Married Primislus, or } 652 44  
Primisee, he founded Prague.

2	Neramislus.	676	39
3	Mnatha.	715	15
4	Megerius, or Doricius.	735	28
5	Wenceslas, or Wenceslaus.	763	22
6	Crezonislus.	785	19
7	Neclan.	804	35
8	Nasirius, or Hortivilius.	823	17
9	Borivozius, the first Christian } Prince of the Bohemians.	856	48
10	Sbirignus, or Epitifuenus.	904	2
11	Uladislus.	906	10
12	S. Wenceslaus II. Martyr.	916	16
13	Bolislus I. the Cruel.	932	35
14	Bolislus II.	967	32
15	Bolislus III. the Ruddy and } the Blind.	999	13
16	Jacomir, Regent.	1012	25
17	Brezerislus I. the Bohemian } Achilles.	1037	18
18	Spigna, or Sbitignus.	1055	6

#### XXXIX Kings.

	Began to reign A.D	reigned years.
19	Uladislus, or Ladislus I.	1061 31
20	Conrad I.	1092 1
21	Brezerislus II.	1092 7
22	Borivozius, or Borivorus II.	1100 9
23	Suatopukc.	1109 2
24	Ladislus II	1111 16
25	Sobeslaus, or Sobeslaus I.	1125 15
26	Ladislus III.	1140 35
27	Sobeslaus, or Sobierlaus II.	1174 4
28	Frederick Bedricher.	1178 12
29	Conrad II.	1190 2
30	Wenceslaus III.	1192 1
31	Berzbeslaus Henricus.	1193 3
32	Ladislus IV.	1196 5 Men.
33	Primislus, or Ortocarus I.	1199 22
34	Wenceslaus IV. the one Ey'd.	1231 24
35	Ortocarus II.	1253 25
36	Wenceslaus V.	1278 27
37	Wenceslaus VI.	1305 1
38	Rodolphus I.	1306 1
39	Henry, Deposed.	1307 3
40	John of Luxemburg.	1310 36
41	Charles.	1346 32
42	Wenceslaus VII. the Idle.	1348 40
43	Sigismund.	1418 19
44	Albert.	1437 3
45	Ladislus V.	1440 18
46	George Paderbrach.	1458 13
47	Ladislus VI.	1471 45
48	Lewes.	



48	Lewes.	1516	10
49	Ferdinand I.	1526	36
50	Maximilian.	1562	12
51	Rodo'phus II.	1571	53
52	Matthias.	1608	11
53	Ferdinand II.	1617	20
54	Frederick Elector Palatine.	1619	
55	Ferdinand III.	1637	about 9
56	Ferdinand IV.	1646	about 10
57	Leopoldus Ignatius.		
58	Joseph, now Reigning.		

BOHEMIA proper, is bounded on the East by *Moravia* and *Silesia*, on the West by *Misnia* and *Bavaria*, on the North by *Lusatia*, and on the South by *Austria*; it is almost entirely encompass'd with Mountains, out of one of which springs the River *Elbe*. In these Mountains there are Mines of Silver, Copper and Lead, and in them are found certain precious Stones, which the *Jews* send into foreign parts. The River *Muldaw* rises in the Mountains on the South side, as the *Elbe* does in those on the North, both which join a little below *Prague*, and make a good Navigable Stream. Many other small Rivers water this Country. The Soil is good, affording Corn, Pasture and Saffron, and some Wine; as also abundance of Hops, whereof they make Beer that is much esteem'd. The People are generally Strong and Courageous, reckon'd strict observers of their Word, but much addicted to Robbing.

*MORAVIA*, call'd *Morawa* by the Inhabitants, and *Mihern* by the *Germans*, lies between *Silesia* on the North and East, *Austria* on the South, and *Bohemia* on the West. The North and West parts are woody and mountainous, but the rest is fair, champaign and good Soil, yielding much Corn. The Pastures are fill'd with Oxen, Horses, Sheep and Goats, and the Woods with Hares, Foxes, Wolves and Beavers. Here are many Pits of standing Waters of a poisonous and peccilential Quality, which hurt the Vines and Fruits, and make the People subject to Epidemical Diseases: But there are other Waters which make amends, having the Virtue of Curing many Distempers. *Moravia* was anciently the Seat of a Kingdom, including also *Bohemia* and *Silesia*, which being conquer'd by the *Romans*, was parcell'd out into four Dukedomes; th's of *Moravia* was afterwards reduc'd to a Marquisate, which Title it still bears, but is mostly subject to *Bohemia*. The River *Morawa*, which rises in the Mountains on the North part, passes through the middle and gives name to this Province.

*SILESIA*, or *SLYSKO*, lies between *Bohemia* on the South-west, and *Poland* on the North-east: Its utmost length from North-west, to South-east, is about 225 Miles, and its breadth 65 Miles. On the side next *Bohemia* are many Mountains but the rest of the Country is good Soil, and produces Corn, some Wine, Madder and Flax. Here are Mines of Silver, Copper, Lead and Iron, and plenty of Saltpetre. The River *Oder* takes its rise in the Southern bounds of this Province, and traverseth it from South to North-west. The *Vistula*, which is the chief River of *Poland*, springs in the South-east Confin'es of *Silesia*: Many smaller Rivers rise here, and fall into the *Oder*, encreasing it to a large Navigable Stream before it passes into *Brandenburg*. The Meadows have Cattle, the Forre'ts Venison, and the Rivers Fish in good plenty. *Silesia* was part of the Kingdom of *Poland* for many Ages, but revol-

ted under the Reign of *Vladislaus Lothicus*, and is now part of the Kingdom of *Bohemia*: but several Princes have Sovereign Dominion over small parts of it.

The chief Cities and Towns of this Kingdom are these, viz.

In Bohemia.	{	Prague, Capital.	Budweis.
	{	Agra.	Letomeritz.
	{	Koningratz.	Piseck.
	{	Glatz.	Bern.
	{	Pilsen.	Slany.
	{	Czassaw.	Satz.
	{	Tabor.	Tetscen.
	{	Elnbogen.	Tabor.

*Silesia* divided into two parts, viz.

In the Lower,	{	Bieslaw, Capital.
	{	Crossen, Dutchy,
	{	Glogaw.
	{	S g.m.
	{	Lignitz.
	{	Wolaw.
	{	Oelfe.
	{	Fawer.
In the Upper,	{	Schweidnitz.
	{	Oppelen.
	{	Grotzkaw.
	{	Jagensderf.
	{	Troppaw.
	{	Ratibor.
	{	Brinn.
	{	Olmurz.
In Moravia are	{	Iglaw.
	{	Znaim.
	{	Hradise.
	{	Cremfir.

*PRAGUE*, *Praga*, olim *Marobundum Rubienum*, and *Cusurgis*, is seated on the River *Muldaw*, in a very fruitful Country, and is encompass'd with stately Courts and pleasant Places, appearing as it were in the midst of an Amphitheatre; it may be divided into three parts, viz. the *Alt Stadt*, or Old Town, the *Nieue Stadt*, or New Town, which is the chief, and wherein the Royal Palace stands, and the *Kleine Seiten*, or lesser Town on the other side of the *Moldaw*, All the'e together form one of the largest Cities in *Germany*, wherein Dukes, Princes and Emperors have for a long time kept their Court. In the lesser Town stands the Cathedral Church, dedicated to St. *Vair*, wherein are magnificent Tombs and a strong Castle. A stately Stone-bridge of 24 Arches over the *Moldaw*, joyns this to the other Town. The Town-house, the College and Church of the *Jesuits*, and the University, are stately Buildings, which, together with several other beautiful Edifices, make this so fine a Place, that *AEn. Sylvius* compares it to *Florence*, but our ingenious Country-man Dr. *Brown* says, this City is larger and more populous than that; that the River *Moldaw* is much better than the *Arno* at *Florence*, but that the Duke's Palace and the Cathedral at *Florence*, exceed any thing in *Prague*. It is the See of an Arch-Bishop, and the Seat of a flourishing University, Founded by the Emperor *Charles VI.* in the Year 1353. The *Bohemians* brag much of the great number of Students that have been in this University, and say, that in the Year 1409 *J. Huss* alone had above 20000 Scholars. This City was often taken



ken during the *German Wars*; and near its Walls was fought that famous Battle between the *Bohemian* and *German* Protestants, under *Frederick Prince Palatine*, chosen King of *Bohemia*, and the Forces of the Emperor *Ferdinand*, on the 8th day of *November*, 1620. wherein the Emperor obtain'd the Victory, and forc'd the unfortunate Prince to quit his Royalty. *Prague* stands in the Latitude of 50 deg. and in the Longitude of 34 deg. 15 min. and at the distance of 100 Miles from the *Danube* to the North, 145 Miles from *Vienna* to the North-west, 50 from the Confines of *Saxony* to the East, 180 from the borders of *Poland* to the West, and about 40 from the bounds of *Lusatia* to the South.

*Egra*, called by the *Bohemians* *Chebbe*, is a great City at the Borders of *Bohemia*, towards the *Palatinate*, 80 Miles distant from *Prague* to the West; It stands upon the River *Eger*, and is Fortified with a double Wall, &c.

*Königgrätz*, or *Kralovitz*, *Gradium Regium*, *Regis* & *Gradecium*, is a good City, seated upon the River *Elbe*, at 50 Miles distance from *Prague* to the East, and 35 from *Glatz* to the South-west: It is now the See of a Bishop, who is a Suffragan to the Arch-bishop of *Prague*, being lately made so by Pope *Alex. VII.* in the year 1664.

*Glatz* is a small City, built at the Foot of one of the Hills that part *Bohemia* from *Silesia*, and water'd by a small River call'd the *Miza*. It is the Capital of a very rich and fruitful Country of the same Name, (in which are nine great Towns and 100 Villages) is very well Fortify'd, and has a strong Castle which stands on the Top of a Hill: It is distant 85 Miles from *Prague* to the East, and 55 from *Olmütz* to the North-west.

*Elbogen* is a very strong Town upon the River *Eger*, 16 Miles from *Egra* to the West, and near the Borders of *Misnia*; it is call'd the *Bohemian Key* to the *German Empire*.

*Pilsen* is a large strong and well fortify'd City, standing upon the Confluence of the River *Men* and *Caburg*, 40 Miles from *Prague* to the South-west, and 20 from *Egra* to the South-east, was besieg'd in vain by the *Hussites*, but was taken by Count *Mansfield*, and was afterwards the last Town of *Bohemia* that yielded to the Imperialists. The Market-place is spacious, and is seated at the meeting of 4 or 5 Streets of very good Building. They have two very fine Churches.

*Czestaw*, a small City, but the Head of a considerable Prefecture, 40 Miles distant from *Prague* to the East, and 25 from *Königgrätz* to the South. This was the Burial place of *John Ziska*, the famous General of the *Hussites*, who, to revenge the Death of *John Huss* and *Jerome* of *Prague*, got an Army together of 40000 Men, with which he obtain'd many Victories over the Papists. At his Death he order'd, That a Drum should be made of his Skin; saying, The Enemy would fly at the sound of it: Which was done accordingly, and had a strange effect upon the Enemy, who, being raw Soldiers, fancied themselves bewitch'd by this Drum, and shamefully run away without fighting. He flourish'd about the year 1420. And built

*Tabor*, which the *Hussites* fortify'd, and made the seat of their War; from whence, for 20 years together, they ravag'd the Imperial Countries; and thereupon were call'd *Taborites*. It stands upon the River *Laufnitz*, 45 Miles from *Prague* to the South, 35 from *Czestaw*.

*BRINN*, call'd *BRINO* by the *Bohemians*, Lat. *Brinnum* and *Brana*, is situated at the Confluence of

the Rivers *Schwarza* and *Zwitta*, at the distance of 50 Miles from *Vienna* to the North, and 120 from *Prague* to the South-east. It is by some reckon'd the Capital of the Marquisate of *Moravia*, and is defend- ed by strong Fortifications; by the help whereof it sustain'd a vigorous Siege of the *Swedish* Forces in 1645.

*Olmütz*, *Olomutium*, is not very large, but a neat and well-built City, and has a good Trade with the Merchants, of *Bohemia*, *Poland*, *Hungary*, &c. for which it is conveniently seated upon the River *Morawa*, which falls into the *Danube*, 80 Miles below it. It is the Metropolis of this Marquisate, and the only Bishop's See in it, of which *St. Cyril* was the first Bishop, about the year 880. This Bishop was formerly a Suffragan to *Mentz* but in the year 1346. was altered, and made Subject to the Arch-bishop of *Prague*: It is distant 30 Miles from *Brinn* to the North-east.

*Iglaw*, otherwise *Giblaw*, is a pretty large well-built and strongly fortify'd Town, on the Border of *Bohemia* on the Road from thence to *Hungary*, and therefore much frequented by Travellers: It is water'd by a River of the same Name, which springs in *Bohemia* about 20 Miles from hence, and is distant 50 from *Brinn* to the West, and about 70 from *Prague* to the South-east. The chief Trade of the Town is in Beer and coarse Woollen Cloath: The chiefest Building in it is the *Jesuits College*, and *Gymnasium*, which with two Monasteries of *Dominicans* and *Franciscans* are worth seeing. In the *Hussites Wars* this place was obstinate to the Popish side, but very early receiv'd the *Augsburg Confession*. In the year 1645 it was surrendered to the *Swedes*, who defended it for a whole year against all the Emperor's Forces.

*Znaim* or *Znoymo*, *Znigma*, stands upon the River *Taya*, not above 5 Miles from the Borders of *Austria*, and 20 Miles South from *Brinn*, in a pleasant Soil and wholesome Air, and is well fortify'd by a strong Castle, but with the inconvenience of being overlook'd by a Mountain, within Cannon-shot. This City is also on the Road to *Vienna*, which brings a good Trade to it. It was burnt in the year 1145. by *Uladislaus* King of *Bohemia*, but rebuilt by *Przemislaus Ottocar*, about 1222.

*Hradisse* or *Hradisch*, a City situate upon the River *Morawa*, 30 Miles from *Olmütz* to the South, and as far from *Brinn* to the East.

*Kremsir* or *Kremsier*, and by the *Bohemians* *Krome-ritz*, on the River *Morawa*, in the Middle between *Olmütz*, and *Hradisse*, is now become a very fair City, tho' not many Ages ago a poor Village; which was occasion'd by a fine Palace, that *Bruno* Bishop of *Olmütz* built here; which drew so many People together, that in a little time he wall'd it, and made it a City.

*BRESLAW*, *Uratistavia*, the Metropolis of *Silesia*, and of a particular Duchy, to which it gives Name; is seated upon the River *Oder*, at the distance of 120 Miles almost North-east from *Prague*, 110 North from *Brinn*, and 35 Miles West from the Confines of *Poland*. It is a very large, well-fortified, and fair City, the See of a Bishop, establish'd in 1033. and the Seat of an University. It is a free City, being govern'd by a Council of 15 Senators, whereof 11 are Noblemen, and the other 4 chosen out of the Corporations of *Drapers*, *Mercers*, *Brewers* and *Butchers*, The Citizens are rich and have a good Trade.

In the most North-east part of *Silesia* is the Dukedom of *Crossen*, which was anciently part of the great Duke of *Silesia's* Dominions, but was several times pawn'd



gaw'd to the Marquess of *Brandenburg*, and redeem'd; but in the year 1391. it was deliver'd to *John III. Elector of Brandenburg*, with the consent of *Uladislaus, King of Hungary and Bohemia*; which was confirm'd, and the sole and entire Possession of it granted to *Frederick and John, Marquesses of Brandenburg* by the Emperor *Ferdinand I. King of Bohemia*, and is still enjoy'd by that Elector.

*Crossen*, the chief City of it, is seated upon the River *Oder*, where it receives the *Belor* in a Pleasant Plain and good Air, and is distant a few Miles from the Frontiers of *Brandenburg* to the South, and 40 from *Glogaw* to the North-west. It is a neat old City; the Duke's Palace, the Town-house, and some Citizens Houses are built with Stone. The neighbouring Hills are covered with Fruit-Trees of many sorts, and the Country yields some Wine but not very good.

*Glogaw*, call'd the Great, to distinguish it from a small Town of the same Name. It is also the Capital of a Dukedom, some time govern'd by its own Lords, but now subject to the Emperor, as King of *Bohemia*. It was made a City by *Conrad* its Duke, in the year 1260. at which time the Wall and Cathedral Church were built: It was taken by the *Swedes* in 1647. but being restor'd, is now regularly fortified, and has a strong Castle. It stands on the River *Oder*, near the Frontiers of *Poland*, 40 Miles from *Crossen* to the South-east, and 55 from *Breslaw* to the North-west.

*Sagan*, *Regan*, the chief City of another Dukedom, of a small extent, is seated upon the River *Bober* near the Frontiers of *Lusatia*, 25 Miles South from *Crossen*, and as many West from *Glogaw*; it was once one of the most populous and largest Cities of *Silesia*, but is now much decay'd, having been often taken by the *Swedes*, and retaken by the Imperialists in the German Civil Wars.

*Lignitz*, the chief City of a Dukedom also, is a fair City, on the Banks of the little River *Katsbach*, 35 Miles from *Glogaw* to the South, and 36 from *Breslaw* to the West. About the year 1170 this Town was much enlarg'd and fortify'd, which was afterwards so improved in the year 1532. by *Frederick* its then Duke, that it became one of the best Fortifications, next *Breslaw*, in *Silesia*. The Castle is a very strong and noble Building, and the Hospital and Town house are worth a Stranger's seeing. The Country of this Dukedom yields much Corn. In the year 1675. the last Duke dying without Heirs, it fell to the Emperor.

*Hannau* a small inconsiderable City on the North side of the *Oder*, 26 Miles distant from *Lignitz*, formerly part of the Dukedom of *Lignitz*, but now gives Title to a Duke of its own.

*Oels* is a neat uniform well-built City, formerly well strengthened with Walls, Gates, Turrets and other Fortifications, but in the year 1648 they were demolished by the *Swedish* General, and not since rebuilt; here is a fair Church, College, Town-Hall and Market place, which is exactly square. This

City had also a Duke of its own, till in the year 1492 it was given to the Duke of *Munsterberg*, who is still Lord of it, and some other small Cities its dependences. *Oels* is situated about 15 Miles from *Breslaw* to the North East.

*Fauer* and *Schweidnitz*, are two small Dukedoms, (both now in the Emperor) extended on the South-side of the *Oder* between *Lignitz* on the North, *Breslaw*, on the East, and *Munsterberg* on the South.

The City *Fauer* stands in a pleasant Valley, and is fortify'd with high Ramparts, deep Ditches, and a Castle in which resides the Lieutenant of these two Dukedoms.

*Schweidnitz* stands South-east from *Fauer*, and South-west from *Breslaw*, about 20 Miles distant from the former, and 30 from the latter. It is fortified with Walls and Ramparts, and beautified with many fair Buildings, so that it may be esteem'd one of the finest Cities in *Silesia*. In the Armory here, is a Gun of an extraordinary size, being able to carry a Bullet of 320 pound weight. Besides these two Cities, there are 22 Towns in these two Dukedoms.

*Munsterberg*, the Capital of another Dukedom, is a small City seated in a fruitful Plain, 30 Miles South from *Breslaw*. It is an old Castle, which, with the Town-hall, is all worth noting in this Town. Five other Towns are in this Dukedom.

*Oppelen* stands on the Northern banks of the River *Oder*, over which it has a Bridge, 40 Miles above *Breslaw*. It has very thick Walls and strong Gates for its defence. Ever since 1647 it has been subject to the King of *Poland*, and all the People here and in the neighbouring Villages speak the *Polish* Language. This is a Dukedom also, and has 13 Towns its dependences.

*Grotzow*, a small City that stands between *Munsterberg* and *Oppelen*, is the Capital of another Dukedom subject to the King of *Bohemia*; wherein stands also *Neissa* a City of good Trade, seated on a River of the same name, and 11 other Towns.

*Fagensdorf*, call'd by the *Moravians*, *Carnowf*, stands upon the River *Oppa*, 35 Miles from *Oppelen* to the South. It is a small City, and not very considerable, except, that it is the Capital of a Dukedom, which with the City, was by *Lewis* King of *Hungary* and *Bohemia*, given to *George* Marquess of *Brandenburg*, who built a Castle and erected some other Fortifications about it.

*Treppaw*, a small City upon the River *Oppa*, 10 Miles from *Fagensdorf*, has nothing very remarkable in it, nor in its Dukedom, which has 8 other Towns in it.

*Ratibor* is a pretty good City, having in it a Cathedral and the Duke's Palace; the Houses are of Wood, as they are generally all over *Silesia*, but handsome enough, and the publick Buildings are of Stone: It stands in a pleasant Plain on the Banks of the River *Oder*, 35 Miles above *Oppelen*. The Dukedom of *Ratibor*, containing 5 other Towns, fell to the King of *Bohemia* in the year 1516. at the Death of Duke *Valentinus* its last Prince.

## C H A P. XI.

*The Marquisate and Electorate of BRANDENBURG, with MAGDEBURG and HALBERSTADT; and the Dukedom of POMERANIA.*

THIS Country, included within the Circle of the Upper Saxony, is bounded on the North by *Po-*

*merania* and the Dutchy of *Mecklenburg*, on the South by *Silesia* and the Upper Saxony, on the East

E c

by



by Poland, and on the West by the Lower Saxony. It is extended from North to South for the space of about 100 Miles in its greatest breadth, and 30 else where; as also about 200 from East to West. Its principal Rivers are the *Elb*, the *Havel*, the *Spre*, and the *Herr*. The Northern situation of this Country makes the Air cold, and the Winters continue very long, nevertheless the Soil brings forth every thing necessary for Sustenance. Here are very good Pastures, wherein great Herds of Cattle are fed; and large Forests abounding with Venison.

The first Inhabitants of this Country were the *Varii* and *Naitones*, part of the great Nation of the *Saxons*, after whom some Tribes of the *Slaves* possessed it. About the year 920, the Emperor *Henry* conquered these rude People, and planted Christianity among them, and bestowed the Country upon *Sigisfred* Earl of *Ringelheim*, with the Title of *Margrave*, or Lord of the *Markes*, obliging him to defend it against the *Slaves*; which Honour was at first conferred on whom the Emperor pleas'd, and was not Hereditary till the time of *Albert* of *Anno*, Successor to *Henry* the *Lion*; to whom the Emperor *Frederick Barbarossa* gave it, and entail'd it upon his Issue. But this Family failing in the year 1323, several Families succeeded in it, till Anno 1417, the Emperor *Sigismund* conferr'd it upon *Frederick Burggrave* of *Nuremberg*, in whose Family it still remains.

The Elector of *Brandenburg* is Lord of larger Territories, than any other Prince of *Germany*, except the Arch-Duke of *Austria*; for besides this Marquisate, he possesseth many Estates elsewhere, viz. in the Lower Saxony, the Principalities of *Magdeburg* and *Halterslade*, with part of *Pomerania*: In *Westphalia*, the Principality of *Minden*, the Duchy of *Cleves*, and the Counties of *Mark* and *Ravenspurg*; as also the Lordship of *Crossen* in *Silesia*, and part of *Prussia* in *Poland*. The *Lutheran* Religion is predominant, the Princes, Bishops, and most of the People being of that Persuasion; and the rest *Catholicks*, here being few or no Roman Catholics.

*Brandenburg* is divided into three Parts call'd *Marcks*: The chief Towns whereof are these, viz.

In the Middle Marck, which lies West of the Ri- ver Oder, extend- ing to the Havel and Elb.	The Lordship of Preg- nitz, wherein are,  The Lordship of Ru- pin.	} <i>Havelburg</i> , Bish. } <i>Neustadt</i> . } <i>Wistock</i> . } <i>Dalmin</i> . } <i>Rupin</i> . } <i>Premislaw</i> .
The New Marck lies to the North-east on the Banks of the Oder and Havel, stretching North word into <i>Pomerania</i> , and hath these Towns of chiefest note,	The Lordship of Stern.	} <i>Sernburg</i> . } <i>Sonneburg</i> . } <i>Stendel</i> . } <i>Gardeleben</i> . } <i>Seckwedel</i> . } <i>Tangermund</i> . } <i>Seckhausen</i> . } <i>Osterburg</i> .
The Old Marck lies on the West-side of the Elb, between that River and <i>Lutzenburg</i> .	The Lordship of Stern.	} <i>Sernburg</i> . } <i>Sonneburg</i> . } <i>Stendel</i> . } <i>Gardeleben</i> . } <i>Seckwedel</i> . } <i>Tangermund</i> . } <i>Seckhausen</i> . } <i>Osterburg</i> .

To which may be added, being subject to this Elector,

The Duchy of *Magdeburg*. } *Magdeburg*.  
} *Berch*.

And,

The Principality of *Halterslade*. } *Halberstadt*.  
} *Oosterwike*.  
} *Gruningen*.

Of these Towns, those that deserve a particular description, are those that follow.

*BERLIN*, *Berlinum*, is pleasantly situated on the River *Spre* in a very fruitful Country, being environ'd on one side with Vineyards, and another with Marshes, and on a third with Woods full of all sorts of Game. It is esteem'd the Capital City of the whole Marquisate of *Brandenburg*, and is the usual place of Residence of the Elector. The River divides it into 2 parts, the larger whereof, towards the North, retains the name of *Berlin*, and the other to the South, is call'd *Cohn*, in which stands the Elector's Palace; the stateliness whereof, the Grandeur of the Courts, together with the Largeness of the streets, and the regular Architecture of the Houses, render this a very noble and magnificent City. It is distant 68 Miles from *Magdeburg* to the North-east, 45 from *Frankfort* on the *Oder* to the West, and an 150 from *Prague* to the North-west in the Latitude of 52. 30. It was first built by *Albertus Ursus* Prince of *Anhalt*, A. D. 1142.

*BRANDENBURG* or *BRANDEBURG* *Brandeburgian*, was so called, as it were *The Town of Fire*, or took its name (according to the opinion of others) from its Founder *Brennus*, General of the *Gauls*. It is seated in the midst of a moorish Ground, and on the Banks of the River *Havel*, which divides it into two parts, viz. the *Old* or *Upper Town*, and the *New*, being distant only 26 Miles from *Berlin* to the West, and 40 from *Magdeburg* to the North-east, is a very ancient City, and hath given its name to the whole Country, as also a Title to the Elector of *Brandenburg*. It was erected into an Episcopal See under the Metropolitan of *Magdeburg*, by the Emperor *Otho*, surnam'd the great, A. C. 946. Its Bishops have adher'd to the *Augsburg* Confession of Faith ever since the year 1563. In the great Church are many Monuments of Princes, and in the Market-place a *Statua Rolandia*, of which an account is given in our Description of *Bremen*.

*Frankfort* upon the River *Oder*, and for distinction sake usually so express'd, is seated in a fruitful Country, at the distance of 44 Miles from *Berlin* to the East, 70 from *Stetin* to the South, and not above 10 from the Borders of *Lusatia*. It is divided into two parts by the River, over which they have a large Bridge of Wood. It is a place of reasonable good Trade, and hath two Fairs yearly held in it. The Marquesses of *Brandenburg* have at several times, granted the Citizens great Privileges. The City was once free and Imperial, as also one of the *Hanse-Towns*, but now exempt and less considerable than it hath been. In the year 1506, *Joachim* Marquess of *Brandenburg* founded an University here, which is now considerable.

*Havelburg* is seated on the River *Havel*, which a little below falls into the *Elb*, 50 Mile from *Berlin* to the North West. It is the See of a Bishop, who was Suffragan to the Archbishop of *Magdeburg*, but since the Year 1555, the Bishops have been of the *Lutheran* Persuasion.

*Stendal*, a *Hanse-Town*, the Metropolis of the *Alt-Marck*, is seated on the River *Ucht*, in a pleasant Plain, and on the side of a large Forreft; it is a neat well-built City, and strongly fortified. The Inhabitants have a pretty good Trade in Corn and



and Lünen Cloath. It lies upon the Road from *Magdeburg* to *Hamburg* and *Lubeck*, by which the Inhabitants make good profit. The Courts of Civil Judicature for the Old *Marche* are held here. It is distant 32 Miles from *Brandenburg* to the West, and 2 from *Havelburg* to the South.

*Spreedel*, a large Town, 15 miles from *Stendal* to the North-west, 5 from *Zell* to the N. E. and on the Road between *Stendal* and *Lünenburg*. It is seated on the River *Fitzte*, and divided into the old and new Town: Its chief Trade is in Beer. This was formerly the Capital of a Marquissate subject to its own Lord, but was long since united to that of *Brandenburg*.

*Tangermünde* or *Angermund*, seated on the *Elb* at the mouth of the *Anger* or *Tanger*, 8 miles from *Stendal* to the South. It was at first a Castle built by the Emperor *Charles IV.* in the year 1376, but is now a place of pretty good Trade in Corn and other Commodities, convey'd by the *Elb* to other places.

*Landspitz* stands upon the River *Warta*, 20 Miles East from the *Oder*, and 35 North-east from *Frankfurt*: Its convenient situation makes it a place of good Trade: which consists much in casting of Iron Ordnance, &c. This City was often taken and re-taken in the German Wars.

*Kustrin* on the River *Oder*, near the mouth of the *Warta*, 50 Miles from *Berlin* to the East, formerly an inconsiderable Village, now a very strong Town, and esteem'd the Key of the New *Marche*, having been wall'd with Stone, and otherwise strongly Fortified in the last Age by *John Marquis* of *Brandenburg*, and in 1631. was strong enough to baffle *Gustavus Adolphus*, who was forc'd to raise his Siege, and withdraw his Army from before it. The Houses are neatly and well-built, and the Market-place is the handsomest in all the Marquissate.

*MAGDEBURG*, a Territory of about 60 miles in length from East to West, and in some part 30 from North to South, situate between *Brunswick* on the West, *Saxony* on the East, *Brandenburg* on the North, and *Anhalt* on the South, the *Elb* running through it; was formerly an Arch bishoprick, being made so by the Pope at the instance of the Emperor *Otho I.* and its Prelate Primare of all *Germany*, in which state it continued till the Reformation; when the Canons having embrac'd the Doctrine of *Luther* in the Year 1566. chose the Son of the Elector of *Brandenburg* Administrator of their Arch bishoprick, after which it remain'd in the Administration of a secular Prince; till at length, in the Treaty of *Munster*, A. D. 1648. it was agreed, That after the Death of the then Administrator, the whole Country should devolve on the Elector of *Brandenburg* as a secular Estate and a Dukedom, which, together with the Bishoprick of *Halberstadt*, were given him as an Equivalent for the higher or upper *Pomerania*, by the same Treaty granted to the King of *Sweden*. It is accordingly now subject to that Elector, and is thought to have advanced his Annual Revenue at least 600000 *Rix Dollars*.

The City of *Magdeburg*, *Magdelburgum* call'd in old Writing *Parthenopolis*, is seated on the Banks of the *Elb*, 45 miles below *Wittenburg*, in a pleasant Country abounding with Corn, but wanting Wood; as on the contrary the Land on the other side of the River wants Corn, but has plenty of Wood. It is distant 30 Miles from *Brandenburg* to the South-west, 60 from *Brunswick* to the East, and as many from *Leipsick* to the North. It was built, or much enlarg'd at least, and wall'd round, by the Emperor

*Otho*, about the year 940. at the desire of his Wife *Edgitha*, Daughter to our English-Saxon King *Edmund*; and being made a City he endow'd it with large Privileges, made it Imperial built also the stately Cathedral yet standing, and Translated the Bishoprick of *Halberleben* thither, and obtain'd the Dignity of Primacy to be added to it: By which means it grew exceeding Wealthy and Powerful, and continued so till the Year 1631. that barbarous Count *Tilly* having taking the City, Massacred the Inhabitants in a most Bloody manner, and burnt and destroy'd the whole Town, except the Cathedral, and some few inconsiderable Houses; the Slaughter was so great, that of 40000 Citizens, 'tis said not above 400 were left alive, which Loss it has never been able to recover; and tho' the Electors of *Brandenburg* have much assisted it, and repair'd the Fortifications which are very strong, yet it still remains far less considerable than it has been. The Cathedral is a very noble Structure and worth a Stranger's view; in it are forty nine Altars; and in one of the Chappels is the Tomb of the Emperor *Otho* and his Wife *Edgitha*, the Foundress of this Church.

There are 28 Towns more in this Dukedom, but none of them contain any thing worthy of a particular description.

The Province of *HALBERSTADT* is a small Country of about 30 miles in length, and 25 in breadth, being bounded by the Duchy of *Magdeburg* on the North East, the Principality of *Anhalt* on the South, the Bishoprick of *Hildesheim* on the West, and *Brunswick Wolfenbützel* on the North. The Soil of it is good and yields plenty of Corn, and the Forests contain store of Venison. The Bishoprick, which was at first founded in the year 780. by the Emperor *Charles the Great*, and planted at *Osterwyck*, a Town in this Province, being in a little time remov'd to *Halberstadt*, gave name to this Country, which continued subject to its own Prelate till the Civil Wars of *Germany*, when the Bishop *Leopold William* having restored Popery, which had been abolish'd in 1591. The *Swedes* besieg'd and took *Halberstadt*, restor'd the *Lutheran* Religion, and kept the Town and Country till the Treaty of *Munster*, by which this Bishoprick was Seculariz'd and given to the Elector of *Brandenburg*, and now bears the Title of a Principality.

*Halberstadt*, the chief Town, is seated upon the River *Havel*, 32 miles from *Magdeburg* to the South West. It was heretofore an Imperial City, but afterwards exempted and subject to its Bishop, and now under the Elector of *Brandenburg*; it is reasonably well built, the Streets are even, and the Houses neat and uniform. There is an Inn in this City that is thought the largest, and will accomodate the greatest number of Persons of any in Europe.

*Osterwick*, once called *Salingstade*, in which this Bishoprick was first planted, is seated on the River *Ilse*, about 15 miles from *Halberstadt* to the West.

*Gruninghen*, a small Town with a Castle re-built in 1593. formerly the Seat of the Bishop, stands 10 miles from *Halberstadt* to the East. There is a remarkable Wine-vat in it of vast bulk, containing near 1000 Hogsheads.

*Queidlingburg* is also reckon'd in the Limits of this Principality, but belonging to the House of *Saxony*, is describ'd with the rest of that Elector's Estates.



## S E C T. II.

*The Dutchy of POMERANIA, call'd Pommeren in High-Dutch.*

*Pomerania* is the most extreme North-East part of *Germany*, being bounded by the *Baltick Sea* on the North, and *Prussia* on the East, *Brandenburg* on the South, and *Mecklenburg* on the West. It is about 80 Miles broad, and 250 long: The Air is very cold, but the Soil however yields Corn and Fruits, also good Pasture. which is fill'd with Cattle, and Forests which abound with Venison. The River *Oder* falls into the Sea, after it has run thro' the middle of this Country: Besides which, the River *Pen*, *Rega*, *Persant*, *Wiper* and the *Stolp*, water this Dutchy.

*Pomerania* was long govern'd by its own Dukes, of whom *Parnirius* at his Death in 1277. divided it between his two Sons; the Seat of the eldest being *Wolgast*, and of the younger *Stetin*; but the House of *Stetin* failing of Issue in 1464. that part of *Pomerania* Was conferr'd on the Marquis of *Brandenburg* by the Emperor. This the Duke of *Pomeran Wolgast* oppos'd with all his might, and at length forc'd the *Brandenburger* to surrender it, but with this Condition, that if the House of *Wolgast* should fail, the whole Dukedom should descend to the House of *Brandenburg*; which happening in the Year 1637. when *Bugislaus* died without Issue, the Elector of *Brandenburg* claim'd the whole Country: But the *Swedes* in the mean time had got footing here, being call'd in by *Bugislaus* to assist him against the Imperialists in the German Civil Wars, and could not be persuaded to leave a Province which they esteem'd so convenient to them. This caus'd a War between the King of *Sweden* and the Elector of *Brandenburg*, which was ended in 1648. by the Treaty of *Osna-brug* and *Munster*, wherein they agreed to share it betwixt them; the *Swede* having all on the West-side of the *Oder*, and the *Brandenburger* that on the East: And as a Compensation to the Elector, the Dukedom of *Magdeburg* and the Principality of *Halberstadt* were assign'd him by the same Treaty; which however did not satisfy him, and therefore when the rest of *Europe* were in Arms, the Elector of *Brandenburg* assumed his for the recovery of this Country, and entering the Swedish *Pomerania*, took *Stetin* in 1677. and *Straelsund*, and other Places, soon after: But at the Treaty of *St. Germain*, what then remain'd in his Hands was restor'd, and the Country is still divided, as we have said above.

The Division of it will be seen by this Table.

The upper <i>Pomerania</i> , subject to the K. of <i>Sweden</i> , is divided into the Territories of	Stetin,	<i>Stetin</i> ,
		<i>Fasensitz</i> ,
		<i>Ukermund</i> ,
	Wolgast,	<i>Pasjewalk</i> ,
		<i>Wolgast</i> ,
		<i>Gripwald</i> , Hans.
Gutskow,	Gutskow,	<i>Kentzing</i> ,
		<i>Anklam</i> ,
		<i>Gutskow</i> ,
Bardt,	Bardt,	<i>Treptow</i> ,
		<i>Demmin</i> ,
		<i>Bardt</i> ,
The Islands of	The Islands of	<i>Straelsund</i> , Imper.
		<i>Trebesis</i> ,
		<i>Dumgarten</i> ,
		<i>Rugen</i> , <i>Bergen</i> ,
		<i>Usedom</i> , <i>Usedom</i> ,
		<i>Wollin</i> , <i>Wollin</i> ,

The Lower Pomerania subject to the Elector of Brandenburg, is divided into the Territories of	{	Pomerania,	{	Lewenberg,	{ Subject to the K. of Poland.
				Butow.	
	{	Cassuben,	{	Cammin. Bish.	
				Coln, Hans.	
				Hargard, Hans.	
	{	Vendosia,	{	Colbert, Cap.	
				Regemord,	
				Bublitz,	
	{		{	Startgart.	
				Stolp,	
Slage,					
{		{	Rugenwo'd.		

*STETIN*, *Stetinum*, is a very considerable City, the Capital of all *Pomerania*, and a Hans-Town. It is seated on the River *Oder*, at the distance of 18 miles from the Frontiers of *Brandenburg*, 40 from the Coasts of the *Baltick Sea*, and 70 from *Berlin* to the N. E. It is a large, strong, and well-built City, and a Place of great Trade, to which the River *Oder* much contributes; for it self flows from *Silesia*, and the *Warta* falls into it about 50 miles above this City; and about 40 miles below it both together fall into the *Baltick Sea*; so that this is a good Centre for exchanging the Commodities of *Germany*, *Poland* and the *Baltick*. The Palace which was formerly the Seat of the Duke, and is now the Place where the Swedish Governor resides, is an old magnificent Building. This City is exceeding populous, and the Inhabitants are noted for Civility and Valour; an instance of the latter they effectually gave in the gallant defence they made against the Elector of *Brandenburg* in 1677. when tho' he brought a great Army before this City, and very vigorously attack'd it from the 7th of July, he was not able to take it before the 26th of December, and then too gave them very honourable Terms: In the succeeding Peace it was restor'd to the *Swede*, under whom it still continues.

*Wolgast* is seated near that mouth of the *Oder* call'd *Pfin* about 5 miles from the shoar of the *Baltick Sea*, 50 North west from *Stetin*, and 30 South-east from *Straelsund*. It was formerly, as we have said, the Capital of a Dutchy, but now subject to the *Swede*. It is strengthen'd with a noble Castle, and hath the most convenient Haven, except *Straelsund* in *Pomeran*. It was taken by the *Swedes* in 1630. after by the *Brandenburgers* in 1675. and restor'd to the *Swedes* in 1679.

*Straelsund*, a Free City, is near the Banks of the Sea, over against the Island of *Rugen*, 80 miles from *Stetin* to the N. W. and 40 from *Rostock* to the N. E. It is esteem'd the largest and wealthiest City in *Pomeran*, and enjoys many great Privileges, which the Citizens have maintain'd against several Princes that have endeavour'd to subject them, wherein they have been remarkably Brave, having at once oppos'd the united Force of the Kings of *Denmark* and *Sweden*, and Ten other Princes. It is govern'd by its own Magistrates, who judge all Causes as well Criminal as Civil. The Buildings are beautiful, the private Houses being of Stone and uniform: It is a place of very great Trade, (particularly for Corn) having an excellent Haven, and Ships coming up into the very Town. This City was Founded or Re-built at least in 1230. and soon grew populous, and was strongly fortified; by the help whereof, in 1629. it oppos'd Count *Waldeck*, who besieged it: After which, they put themselves under the Protection of *Gustavus Adolphus*, King of *Sweden*, whose Successors have ever since held that Title. In 1678. it was besieg'd and taken by the



the Elector of *Brandenburg*, but restor'd at the Treaty of *S. Germans*, in 1679. The Fortifications consist of regular Bulwarks and large Ditches, besides natural Marthes, through which there is no passing but by Causeys that are well Fortified.

*Bardt* stands in a fruitful Country, 12 miles West from *Straelsund*, upon a little Arm of the Sea, which would be a good Haven, but that the Water is shallow, and so the Town cannot be traded to. It was sometime the Metropolis of the upper *Pomeran*.

*CAMNIN*, esteem'd the Capital of the Ducal *Pomerania*, is seated on the East-side of the mouth of the *Oder* that is call'd *Drawenow*, 30 miles North from *Stetin*, 40 East from *Wolgast*, and 5 South from the Coasts of the *Baltick*. It was formerly a Bishop's See, but by the Treaty of *Munster* it was Seculariz'd and given to the Marquels of *Brandenburg*:

*Colberg*, at the mouth of the small River *Perfant*, and near the Banks of the *Baltick* Sea, 30 miles N. E. from *Camnin*, is a strong Town with a convenient Haven. It is pretty much resorted to for Salt, which is made in great plenty near it; and being hence Transported, makes the Town rich and considerable.

The Three Islands lye in the *Baltick*-Sea, before the Coast of the Upper *Pomeran*. That of *RUGEN* is the largest and most considerable; it is 30 miles in length, and as many in breadth, but with several Arms and Creeks of the Sea within it. It is situate to the N. W. over against *Wolgast* and *Straelsund*, between which last Place and it, the Sea is not above a League broad: The Land of it is exceeding fertile, yielding Corn in great plenty, and very good Grass, whereby great Herds of Cattle are fed. It was formerly govern'd by its own Princes, who, assisted by the notable Valour of the People, long defended it against the neighbouring Kings: But the *Straelsunders* opposing the Authority he pretended over the Strait that leads to their City, occasion'd Prince *Wislous* to besiege it; but the City defended it self so

well, that not only he could not take it, but in a Sally he was slain, and being the last of this Family, that Government afterwards was subjected to the Duke of *Pomeran*, from whom it descended to the King of *Sweden*: But the *Danes*, having some old Pretensions, in the War of 1678. Invaded and took the whole Island; but in 1679. by Treaty, restored it to the *Swede*, to whom it is still Subject. The chief Town is

*Bergen*, which is a Place of no great Note, being not fortified nor even Wall'd, though call'd a City. It contains about 400 Houses; and is distant about 25 miles from *Straelsund* to the North-east, and as many from *Wolgast* to the North.

The Island denominated from the Town *WOLLIN*, call'd anciently *Julium*, is the Western of the 2 Islands that make the three Mouths of the *Oder*. The Town is seated on the Mouth of the *Oder*, call'd *Druenow*, 25 miles North from *Stetin*, and 25 South-west from *Wolgast*. It was anciently one of the largest Cities of *Europe*, and resorted to by Merchants of all Nations, and said to have been so Powerful, as alone to maintain a War against *Denmark*, and three several times took their King Prisoner: But it was partly destroy'd by Lightning, and finally by the Arms of *Woldemar* King of *Denmark*, in 1170. totally demolish'd. Since when it hath been only a small incon siderable Town.

*USEDOM*, which gives name to another Island that lies West from that of *Wollen*, and makes the other two Mouths of the *Oder*, one whereof runs between these two Islands, and is call'd *Swine*, and the other beyond *Usedom*, which is nam'd *Pfin*. Upon the Destruction of *Wollen*, this Town was resorted to by the *Danish* and *Polish* Merchants, and became a Place of good Trade, but in 1473. it was all burnt down by an accidental Fire, which destroy'd its Trade; and it hath since been only a small Sea-port Town, and not considerable.

## CHAP. XII. SAXONY.

### SECT. I.

#### *A short Account of the History of Saxony in General.*

THE Saxons were anciently a great Nation, and Possessed all the Northern Parts of *Germany* from *Franconia* and *Bohemia* in the South, to the *Baltick*-Sea and *Denmark* in the North; and from the River *Elb* on the East, to the *Rhine* on the West; whereby not only the present Upper and Lower *Saxony*, but also all *Westphalia* and *Holstein* were part of their Country: Nay, also *Jutland*, now reckon'd part of *Denmark* was inhabited by them.

Concerning the Etymology of the name *Saxon*, the Learned differ; some are of Opinion, that they were deriv'd from the *Saci*, a People of *Asia*, to which our Learned Country-man Mr. *Camden* inclines. Others say, they were deriv'd from *Saxum* a Stone, as being a hardy strong People. *Verstegan* and others affirm that they had their Name from a Weapon they wore call'd a *Seax*, which was a short Sword of different form from those commonly worn, and peculiar to this Nation.

They were Men of a large Bulk and great Strength, renown'd Warriors; and so notorious for Piracy,

that the *Romans* were oblig'd to keep Forces all along the Coast of *Gaul* and *Britain* to hinder their frequent Incurfions.

It was this Warlike People that *K. Vortigern* invited to *Britain* to assist him against the *Picts* and *Scots*, who upon the *Romans* forsaking them, much annoy'd the *Britains*: But of what part of this great Nation those were that he Invited, is somewhat uncertain; ancient Histories tell us they were *Angles* and *Jutes*: *Jutland* is suppos'd to have been the Country of the latter, but from what part the former came is more disputed: Mr. *Camden* is of Opinion that they dwelt in *Sleswick*, which was sometime call'd *Angle*; though others affirm they came from *Westphalia*, and were accompanied by the *Frisons*. For the Reader's farther Satisfaction, he may consult *Camden's Britannia*, where he will find this Matter most learnedly and ingeniously Discussed.

They were Pagans, and Govern'd by 12 Noblemen, chosen by the Commons, out of whom in time of War they chose a King; which Government continued till the time of *Charles* the Great, who made War upon them, and was long oppos'd under the Conduct of *Wittikind* their King; but the Power of *Charles* prov'd too strong in time, and *Wittikind* was oblig'd to submit and receive the Christian Faith, which



which by the great Care of *Charles* was planted and propagated over the whole Nation, and *Wittikind* was by him created Duke of *Saxony*.

The Race of *Wittikind* continu'd Dukes of *Saxony* till *Otto III.* who being chosen Emperor in 984. gave his Country to *Barnard* Lord of *Lunenbourg*, whose Grandson *Magnus* was depriv'd by the Emperor *Henry III.* and *Henry Guelph*, Duke of *Bavaria*, made Elector of *Saxony* whose Son *Henry*, firnam'd the *Lion*, siding with the Pope against the Emperor *Frederick Barbarossa* about the Year 1170. was proscrib'd, and by the Emperor's Command depriv'd of his Estates by the neighbouring Princes. The Electoral Dignity was Anno 1180. given to *Bernard*, Earl of *Anhalt*, Son to the Marquis of *Brandenburg*, and descended from *Magnus* above-mention'd, who had conquer'd *Lauenburg* from *Henry*, to which the Emperor added the City of *Wittemberg*, and the little Country that lies between the *Elb* and the *Sala* on the North of *Misnia*. and gave it the name of the Upper *Saxony*. The Posterity of *Bernard* enjoy'd this with the Title of Duke and Elector of *Saxony*, till 1422. when *Albert III.* dying without Issue, *Frederick* Landgrave of *Thuringen* and Marquis of *Misnia*, who was the Head of the Family of *Wittikind*, by the Emperor's Favour succeeded; in whose Family it still remains. His Successors have been zealous Defenders of the Reformation, especially Duke *John*, who was one of the Princes who protested against the Decree of the Diet at *Spire* in 1529. as we have elsewhere said, and was the Author of the *Smalcalden* League: But in the War that ensu'd thereupon, his Son and Successor *Frederick John* had the Misfortune to be taken Prisoner by the Emperor *Charles V.* and depriv'd of his Honour and Estate, which in 1547. were given to his Cousin *Maurice*, Grandson to the Landgrave *Frederick* above-mention'd, from whom the present Duke and Elector is descended. Who declar'd himself a *Roman Catholic*, when he was chosen King of *Poland*.

## SECT. II.

### The Upper SAXONY.

The Upper *Saxony* is bounded on the North by the Principalities of *Magdeburg*, *Halberstadt*, and the Marquisate of *Brandenburg*, on the South by *Franconia* and *Bohemia*, on the East by *Silesia*, and on the West by *Hesse* and *Brunswick*. Its Extent is from North to South about 130 *English* Miles, and from East to West 260. The Air is cold but healthful, and the Soil fertile, producing much Wheat, but very little Wine; here are Mines of Lead that are very profitable, and some of Silver, that yield the Elector above 100000 Pounds a Year. The chief Rivers are, the *Elb*, the *Sala*, the *Elster*, the *Unstruck*, the *Spree* and the *Neisse*.

The Religion of the Inhabitants is generally the *Lutheran*, though there are also some *Calvinists* and *Roman-Catholics*.

The Elector of *Saxony* is the wealthiest Prince of *Germany*, except the Arch-Duke of *Austria*, his yearly Income being reckon'd to be 400000 Pounds Sterling; which is rais'd by the Silver Mines above-mention'd, and by Excise upon Beer, Corn, Wine, Fruit, &c. The Splendor of his Court is very great, being attended by a vast number of Servants, among whom are several Gentlemen of great Quality. 'Tis said of the Elector *Christian II.* that he had, besides a great number of the Gentry of his own Country, 3 Dukes, 3 Earls and 5 Barons of foreign Nations his Pensioners at the same time. The Dominions of

this Prince were increas'd in the Year 1620. by the Emperor's Donation of the Marquisate of *Lusatia* to Duke *John George*, in reward for the service he did him in the *Bohemian* War.

So that his present Dominions are, the Dukedom of *Saxony*, and the Marquisates of *Misnia* and *Lusatia*, &c. The chief Towns whereof are seen in this Table, together with those of the other States, that compose the rest of the Circle or the Upper *Saxony*, viz. *Anhalt*, *Thuringen*, &c.

The Dutchy of *Saxony* is but a small Country, lying between *Brandenburg* on the North, *Misnia* on the South, *Lusatia* on the East, and *Anhalt* on the West. The chief Towns are, *Wittemberg*, *Torgau*.

The Marquisate of *Misnia* is bounded on the N. by the Dutchy of *Saxony* and *Anhalt*, on the S. by *Bohemia*, on the East by *Lusatia*, and on the West by *Mersburg*, *Naumburg* and *Altenburg*. Its extent from North to South is near 100 Miles, and from East to West 80.

*Voigland*, the South part of *Misnia*. *Zwickau*, *Plauen*.

The Marquisate of *Lusatia* lies Eastward from the Dutchy of *Saxony* and *Misnia*, and is bounded on the North by *Brandenburg*, on the South by *Bohemia*, and on the East by *Silesia*. It is in length from North to South about 90 Miles, and in breadth about 50 Miles; the chief Towns in it are, *Bautzen*, *Gorlitz*, *Cottbus*, *Guibenz*, *Sorah*, *Liebau*, *Luben*.

Other smaller States belonging to several Branches of the House of *Saxony*, and lie Westward of the Countries above-mention'd, viz.

The Dutchy of *Sax-Hall*, *Hall*.

*Sax-Mersburg*, *Mersburg*.

*Sax-Naumburg*, *Naumburg*.

*Sax-Altenburg*, *Altenburg*.

The Principality of *Anhalt* is a long but narrow Tract of Land lying on the North of *Misnia*. *Zerbst*, *Bernberg*, *Dessau*.

The small County of *Barby* joyns to *Anhalt* on the North.

*THURINGEN*, formerly a Kingdom, afterwards a County, and then a Landgraviate, was govern'd by its own Princes for many Ages, till 1124. when, upon the Death of *Herman*, it descended to the Marquis of *Misnia*, and, with that Country, came afterwards to the Duke of *Saxony*; but is divided into several Lordships and Sovereignities, according to the following Table.

*Erfurdt*, Cap. subject to the Archbishop of *Mentz*.

*Gotha*, Dutchy.

*Eysenack*, Dutchy.

In *Thuringen* are these chief Towns, *Weimar*, Dutchy.

*Mansfeld*, County.

*Stolberg*, County.

*Hohenstein*, County.

*Schwartzemburg*, County.

*Mulhausen*, Imp.

*WITTEMBERG*, *Wittemburga* aut *Vitarum Mons*, the Capital City of the Dutchy of *Saxony*, is seated on the River *Elb*, 40 Miles South from *Brandenburg*, as many North from *Leipzig*, 70 East from *Halberstadt*, and as many West from the River *Oder*. It is a fair large City, of an oblong square Form with one great Street in the middle; adorn'd with an University, which was founded by the Elector *Frederick*.



rick III. in 1502. and made famous by the Preaching of *Martin Luther*: And well fortify'd both by Nature and Art, having Marshes on the North, and a great Canal to the *Elb*, also a very deep Ditch a good Rampart and 5 large Bastions on the side that is most expos'd. This is the Capital of the Electorate, and was the Seat of the Elector, till that Honour came into the Family of *Misnia*, when it was remov'd to *Dresden*.

*Tzgm* is a fair City, built by *John Frederick* the Elector in 1537, and beautify'd with a stately Castle. It is seated on the West-side of the *Elb*, 20 Miles South from *Wittenburg*.

*D R E S D E N*, *Dresda*, is seated on the River *Elb*, which divides it into two Parts, at the distance of 55 Miles from *Wittenburg* to the South-East, 25 from the Confines of *Bohemia* to the North, and 50 from *Leipzig* to the East. It is a large well-built City, and the usual place of Residence of the Elector of *Saxony*; whose Palace is a strong and magnificent Castle, adorn'd with many Curiosities, especially a Chamber of Rarities, and an Armory extremely well furnish'd, as also very fine Gardens and Stables. The City, as we have said, is divided by the River into two parts, that on the Right side is call'd *Alt Dresden* or the Old Town; to which the New is join'd by a Stone Bridge of 17 Arches, which is reckon'd a curious piece of Workmanship.

*Misfen*, *Misnia*, once a rich and populous City, and the Metropolis of the Province, but now not considerable, stands on the Left side of the *Elb*, 12 Miles West from *Dresden*: It is a Bishop's See, and has a Territory belonging to it, which, with the City, was formerly subject to its Bishop, but now in the Hands of the Elector. Here was a wooden Bridge over the *Elb*, that was much admir'd, but was destroy'd in the *German Wars*.

*LEIPZIG* or *Leipsick*, *Lipsia*, *Lupsurdum*, is thought to have been built by the *Vandals* (who were the ancient Inhabitants of this Country) about the Year 700. It stands upon the River *Plesse*, and near the *Eister*, and is distant 50 Miles from *Dresden* to the West, and 40 from *Wittenburg* to the South. It is a very large, rich and populous City, the most considerable of any in this Elector's Dominions. It is very full of Houses, and those well-built and very high, many 7, and some 9 Stories. *St. Nicholas's* Church is very fine, and esteem'd the best of any *Lutheran* Church in *Germany*. The Citizens have a great Trade, especially by reason of 3 Fairs held yearly, which bring a concourse of Merchants from all Parts. A high Court of Judicature is held in this City, which hath great Power, even to summon the Elector himself. Here is also an University, which was establish'd in 1408. by *Frederick Marquis of Misnia*: It hath 4 Colleges and 24 Professors, and is well fill'd with Students. The Castle seated on the *Plesse*, and call'd *Plessenburg*, is a very strong Fort and well guarded. In 1520. *Martin Luther* disputed here with *Eckius* against the Pope's Supremacy, and quickly after this City embrac'd the Reformation. It suffer'd much in the Civil Wars of *Germany*, having been several times besieg'd and taken.

*Freyburg* is a famous and pleasant Town, 20 Miles from *Dresden* to the South-West, very pleasantly situated, near the River *Mulda*. *St. Peter's* Church here is the usual Burial-place of the Electors, many of whose Monuments are there to be seen; but that of the Elector *Maurice* is the most magnificent, not only of those, but of any in *Germany*. But that which makes this Town most considerable, is the famous Mines that are found near it; out of which they dig great quantities of Silver-Ore, besides Copper, Lead,

Brimstone, Vitriol, &c. and so much Silver is hereby produc'd, that the Elector's Profit out of it is esteem'd at 130000 *l. per annum*, clear of all Charges.

*Plawen* or *Pleven*, a small City, the Capital of *Veigtland* is seated upon the River *Eister*, 16 Miles South-West from

*Zwickow*, a small City, seated upon the River *Mulda*, 40 Miles South from *Leipzig*: It was a Free Imperial City till the Year 1308. at which time it was taken by *Frederick Marquis of Misnia*. This Country was the chief Seat of the *German Civil Wars*, and many Incampments were made near this City.

*BAUTZEN* or *BAUDISSEN*, *Budissina* aut *Bubesia*, the chief City of the Marquisate of *Lusatia* or *Lausnitz*, stands on the River *Spree*, near the Frontiers of *Saxony*, 30 Miles from *Dresden* to the East, 20 from *Gorlitz* to the West, and 70 from *Prague* to the North. It was formerly an Imperial City, but lost its Privileges. Before the last *German Wars* it was well built; but in 1634. the Imperialists having got Possession of it, were besieg'd by the Elector of *Saxony* and intending to drive off the Enemy, set Fire to the Suburbs, which was unhappily driven over into the City, and burnt it to Ashes, and soon after it suffer'd much from the *Swedes*; since when it has not been able to recover its former Lustre.

*Gorlitz*, call'd by some the Capital of this Marquisate, is seated in a Marsh upon the River *Neisse*, which rises on the borders of this Country, and after it has run quite cross, it falls into the *Oder*. This is a good City, having many stately Dwelling-houses, and several neat Churches; its Trade lies chiefly in Brewing and making Linnen and Woollen Cloth: It is 20 Miles distant from *Bautzen* to the East.

*Leibaw*, *Lobaw*, *Liben* or *Lubben*, is a small Town, seated in a Plain among pleasant Meadows in the middle between *Bautzen* and *Gorlitz*: It was formerly so rich, that when the *Swedes* plunder'd it in 1639. they confest'd they got 70000 Rix Dollars in Money, besides much rich Booty.

*Soraw*, call'd by some the Capital of the lower *Lusatia*, is a small City 30 Miles North from *Gorlitz*, and very near the Borders of *Silesia*. It was often taken and retaken in the *German War*, but is now subject to the Elector of *Saxony*.

*Luben* on the River *Spree*, 50 Miles North from *Bautzen*, and 30 Miles West from the River *Oder*. This is generally esteem'd the Capital of the lower *Lusatia*. The Elector of *Saxony* has a Palace in it.

*Gulen*, a small but well fortify'd Town, stands in the lower *Lusatia* on the River *Neisse*, 30 Miles from *Luben* to the East, 10 from the *Oder* to the West, and 45 from *Gorlitz* to the North. It was taken by the Imperialists in 1631. and endur'd a Siege of Three Weeks by the *Swedes* in 1642.

*Cotwis* or *Cetbus* is a fair Town, seated on the small River *Havel*, where it falls into the *Spree*, 35 Miles North from *Bautzen*, and 22 South from *Luben*. It is now subject to the Elector of *Brandenburg*, as are also *Peytze*, *Somerfeld*, and some other Towns of less note in this Marquisate.

On the West of *Misnia* lye these Countries:

*MERSBURG*, formerly a Bishop's See, under the Archbishop of *Magdeburg*, but now possess'd by the Elector, as Administrator of it; and with the Territory belonging to it, serves for the Portion for some of the younger Brothers, who are styl'd *Dukes of Sax-Mersburg*. The Town at present consists of a great number of old-fashion'd ruinous Houses, and hath nothing considerable in it but the Cathedral.

*NAUMBURG*, a City once Imperial, now subject to the House of *Saxony*, is seated upon the River

*Sala*,



*Sala*, where it receives the *Unstrut*, 25 Miles West from *Leipsick*, and 15 from *Mersburg* to the South. It is a Bishop's See, under the Archbishop of *Magdeburg*, and has a Territory of about 20 Miles Extent belonging to it, which was formerly govern'd by its Bishop: But it was yielded to the House of *Saxony* by the Treaty of *Passaw* in 1552. one of which Family is Administrator of the Bishoprick.

*ALTENBURG* stands upon the River *Pleisse*, 27 Miles from *Leipsick* to the South, and 46 from *Dresden* to the West. It was once an Imperial City, but was taken by *Frederick* Marquis of *Misnia* in 1378. and united to that Dutchy. It has a Castle in which the Dukes of *Saxony* have some time kept their Palace.

*HALL*, call'd *Halla Saxonum* for distinction, a considerable Town on account of the profitable Salt-Pits near it. It was at first a small Village, and call'd *Dobredor*, but by reason of the Salt-Pits, encreas'd much, and obtain'd a Charter in 981. from the Emperor *Ordo II.* and got at last to be an Imperial City; but it has been long exempted, and subjected to its own Duke, with a Territory belonging to it; since fallen to the Archbishop of *Magdeburg*, and so subject to the Elector of *Brandenburg*. This City is seated on the Bank of the River *Sala*, 24 Miles North-West from *Leipsick*, on the side of a pleasant Hill, cover'd with Vines: It is neatly built, and the Inhabitants are c.v.l. The Salt-Pits yield a Toll to the Administrator of *Magdeburg* of 500 or 600 Crowns a Week.

The Principality of *ANHALT* is bounded on the S. by the Counties of *Hohenstein*, *Mansfeld* and *Hall*, and on the North by the Principality of *Halberstadt* and Dutchy of *Magdeburg*, and is extended from East to West the space of 90 Miles, tho' but very narrow: It is subject to its own Prince who is of a very ancient Family, from which sprung both the Houses of *Saxony* and *Brandenburg*. The chief Towns in it are

*Zerbst*, on the East side of the *Elb*, about 20 Miles from *Magdeburg* to the West and 50 from *Leipsick* to the North; the Place of the Prince's Residence.

*Bernburg*, a fortified Town, seated on the Banks of the *Sala* about 8 Miles from the *Elb*. This is another Residence of the Prince's, whose Palace is separated from the Town by the River *Sala*. In 1636. this Town was taken, and the Garrison put to the Sword by the Elector of *Saxony*.

*Deßau*, on the *Elb*, at the Mouth of the *Mulda*, a strong fortified Town, pleasantly seated, in a fruitful Country, 8 Miles from *Zerbst* to the South, and 20 from *Bernburg* to the East; in which also the Prince has a Palace.

*ERFURT*, *Erford* or *Erfurdt*, lat. *Erfordia*, ant. *Erfurtum*, the Capital City of *Thuringen*, is seated on the Banks of the River *Gere*, 60 Miles West from *Leipsick*, 60 North from *Bamberg*, and 70 South from *Halberstadt*. It is a considerable Place, both on account of the Wealth of its Inhabitants and the Beauty of its publick Edifices, especially the Churches and Abbeys, the stately Castle call'd *Cirixberg* and a famous University. This City hath a large Territory, wherein stand many Villages, all which were subject to the Archbishop of *Mentz*, but at the Reformation the Inhabitants embrac'd the Protestant Religion, and put the City under the Protection of the Elector of *Saxony*, which occasion'd great Contentts between those two Princes: At length the Bishop of *Mentz*, with the Assistance of the *French*, took it by force, and oblig'd the Citizens again to receive his Government. However, by the Treaty of *Leipsick*, 17 of the Villages, its Dependencies, were granted to the Elector of *Saxony*, and the City,

with the rest of the Villages, are still subject to the Elector of *Mentz*.

*Mulhausen* is an Imperial City, but under the Protection of the Elector of *Saxony*. It stands at the foot of a Mountain, upon the River *Unstrut*, near 30 miles from *Erfurt* to the North-west, 20 from *Eysenack* to the North, and 10 from the River *Weser* to the East.

*Weimar*, a neat, well-built, and a very ancient City, stands 12 miles from *Erfurt* to the East, in which is a stately Palace, where the Landgrave of *Thuringen* used to reside. This City gives Title to a Branch of the Family of *Saxony*.

*Jena* is a handsome City, seated on the River *Sala*, 25 miles from *Erfurt* to the East. It is famous for an University, founded here by *John Frederick* Elector of *Saxony*, to which were granted many Privileges by the Emperor *Charles V.* and *Ferdinand*; it is in a flourishing state, and has bred many Eminent Men, particularly *J. Lipsius* the great Philologer. The Town is well Fortified, and stands in a pleasant Vale, in which grows plenty of Vines.

*Gotha*, 16 miles West from *Erfurt*, the Seat of another Branch of the *Saxon* Family, who is still Duke of *Gotha*, and is Lord of this Town, and the Counties of *Altenburg*, *Coburg*, *Honnsburg* in *Franconia*, and *Osterland* in Upper *Saxony*. It is a large wall'd Town, and has a good Trade in the Plant call'd *Woad*, which is sowed and dressed here, and exported in great Quantities.

*Eysenach* or *Isenach*, *Isenacum*, a small City, standing on the River *Nesa*, near the Borders of *Hessen*, and distant near 30 miles from *Erfurt*, and 15 from *Gotha* to the West. It gives Title to a Duke of the Family of *Saxony*, and hath an University in it, which was founded 1555.

The County of *SCHWARTSBERG* is a Tract of Land, of about 40 miles in length and 25 miles in breadth, and is bounded on the S. by *Thuringen*, on the W. by *Naumburg*, *Mersburg* and *Hall*; the chief Town is *Sunderhausen*, of which, as well as *Frankenhausen*, *Herfingen*, *Kirderbruch* and *Keula*, the best Towns in this Country, there is nothing considerable.

The small County of *HOHENSTEIM* lies North of *Schwartsburg*: Its chief Town is *Northausen*, an Imperial City, said to be built in 447. by *Mercoveus* King of *France*. It stands upon the River *Zorge*, 40 miles from *Erfurt* to the North, and is under the Protection of the Duke of *Saxony*.

*STOLBERG* is a very small County, lying North of *Schwartsburg*, between *Hohenstein* to the West, and *Mansfeldt* to the East. Its chief Town is of the same Name.

The County of *MANSFELDT* is bounded on the West by *Stolberg*, on the East by the River *Sala*, on the South by *Thuringen*, on the North by some part of *Anhalt*, and about 30 miles in length from North to South, and 15 in breadth. This Country abounds with Mines of several sorts, but particularly of a Mineral, call'd *Scheifforsstein*, which yields much Copper and some Silver. It is possess'd by its Counts, but now with some acknowledgment of Homage to the Duke of *Saxony*. This Family is branch'd out into several Houses, who have divided the Country among 'em; by which means they are not now so considerable as they have been.

The Chief Town is *Eisleben*, a small City near the Lake call'd *Suffe See*, 40 miles from *Weimar* to the North, and 55 miles West from *Wittenburg*. It has its Name from the abundance of Iron-Ore found



there,



there - The Nurse reply'd *Wölfen* Whelps; he not contented with that Answer examin'd farther, and forc'd her to confess the whole Matter: Upon which he enjoy'd the Woman Secretly, and dispos'd of the Children, and 6 Years after produc'd them all together to his Lady and all their Friends, at a Feast he made for that purpose, and caus'd them all to be call'd *Wölfs* which after alter'd to *Guelphs*.

**BRUNSWICK**, *Brunops is, Tulsurgium*, was first built by *Tanguard* and *Brano*, Dukes of *Saxony*, A. D. 861. since when it has been often enlarg'd, and is now one of the most considerable of the Hanse-Towns. It is divided into 5 several Corporations, each of which hath its Court of Judicature, but unite in Matters relating to the Common Interest. It is a rich and populous Place, and drives a great Trade in Hides and Malt, which is brew'd here by certain Persons who have the Monopoly, and exported to several Countries. *Brunswick* claims to be a Free, Imperial City and has several times disput'd with the Duke, who all along claim'd the Sovereignty; on which account it has endur'd many Sieges, the last of which was in 1671. when it was taken by the present Duke, who has ever since kept a good Guard, and built a Citadel, and otherwise strongly fortify'd it, tho' to the Injury of the City; for the Merchants being displeas'd, have remov'd to other Places. The Houses are well built, and the Town-house is very magnificent: The Form of the Town is almost square, the River *Ocker* running thro' the middle, and is two miles in Circuit, and surrounded with 2 Walls and 2 Ditches. It is seated in a Plain, near the Northern Bounds of the Country, and is distant 100 miles from *Erfurt* to the N. and 40 from *Halbe.stadt* to the N. W. 70 from the River *Elb* to the W. 60 from the *Weser* to the E. and 60 from *Magd.burg* to the W. Lat. 52. 20.

**WOLFENBÜTTEL** stands upon the River *Ocker*, but 10 miles from *Brunswick* to the South. It is the ancient Seat of the Dukes of *Brunswick*. It is divided into 2 Parts, viz. *Arx Guelpica*, the Duke's Palace, and *Hemish Stadt*, the Town. In the Palace is a Library exceeding well furnish'd with valuable Books, founded by the late Duke *Augustus*; in the Town the new Church is remarkable, being an admirable piece of Architecture, and in it are bury'd 21 Dukes and Duchesses of *Brunswick*. It is defended with strong and impregnable Fortifications, and secur'd by marshy Grounds.

**HANOVER**, *Hannovera*, call'd anciently *Laxenroda*, and *Han-over*, from a Ferry over the River *Leina*, on which it stands, 35 miles from *Brunswick* to the West, and 28 from *Zell* to the South. It is a strong and populous City, once Imperial, but has long been subject to its Princes. The Inhabitants are much enrich'd by 4 yearly Fairs held here: It is the Capital of the Territory of *Culenberg*.

**Gottingen**, a City seated on the River *Leina*, near the Confines of *Hesse*. 10 miles from the *Weser*, 60 miles from *Hanover* to the South, and 20 from *Castel* to the North-East.

**Hamel**, seated on the River *Weser*, over which it hath a Bridge at the mouth of the *Hamel*, is a strong, fortify'd and well-garrison'd Town, being near the Confines of *Brunswick* toward *Westphalia*, and call'd the Key of this Duke's Dominions; it is distant 44 miles from *Gottingen* to the North, and near 30 from *Hanover* to the South. There is a Story of a strange Accident, that, they say, happen'd in this Town on the 26th of *June*, 1284. of a Piper that undertook to rid them of Rats, with which they were very much annoy'd, which he did, it seems, by

the power of his Musick; for at the sound of his Tabret and Pipe, all the Rats follow'd him out of the Town to the River, where they were drown'd. When he had done his Work, he return'd for his Pay, which the Townsmen refus'd him, pretending it was too much for so little Work: Upon which he went away in a great Rage; and a Year after came again, and playing as before, all the Children follow'd him into the mouth of a Cave, on the top of a neighbouring Hill, and neither Piper nor Children were ever after heard of. This Story the Townsmen relate with great Confidence, and there is still to be seen, near this Cave's Mouth, a Monument of Stone, with an Inscription expressing the loss of 130 Children swallow'd quick in that Cave.

**Grubenhagen**, a Cattle near the River *Leina*, and about 12 miles from *Gottingen* to the North, has a Territory belonging to it, which is a Dukedom, but subject to the Duke of *Brunswick*; it is very Woody, having been part of the *Hercynian* Forest, and abounds with Pine and Fir-Trees. In this Province are rich Mines of Silver, Copper, Lead, and many sorts of Minerals. These Mines were first discover'd in the Year 972, as the *Germans* relate, by a Hunter who having ty'd his Horte to a Bush, and gon a little from him, at his return found a piece of Ore beat out of the Ground with his Hoof; this Hunter's Name was *Ramm*, whence the Mountain in which this Mine is, was call'd *Ramelsberg*. In 1045. other Mines were also discover'd in the neighbouring Hills; and here are now many Towns inhabited only by Miners. The chief Town of this Duchy is

**Einbeck**, seated at the Confluence of several small Rivulets, which a little lower fall into the *Leina*; it is distant 20 miles from *Gottingen*.

**Helmstedt** a City built by *Charles* the Great, A. 752. is seated near the Borders of *Magdeburg*, and 24 miles from *Wolfenbittel* to the East, wherein is an University, founded by *Julius* Duke of *Brunswick-Wolfenbittel*, A. 1576. which is endow'd with large Privileges; particularly that its Rector should for ever have the Title and Dignity of Count Palatine, and has bred many eminent Men, particularly *J. Horstius Meibomius*, *Reineccius*, *Conringius*, &c.

**Goslar** stands upon the River *Gos*, which falls into the *Ocker* near the Confines of *Hildesheim*, and is 40 miles distant from *Gottingen* to the N. W. and 25 from *Brunswick* to the South; it is a Free and Imperial City enjoying large Privileges. The Origin of this City was a Palace built by the Emperor *Henry* I. The Trade of it is in cleaning tempering and vending all sorts of Metals and Minerals dug in the neighbouring Countries.

The Counties of **BLACKENBURG**, **REINSTEIN** and **QUEIDLINBURG**, (together with *Hohenstein*, *Stolberg* and *Schwarzburg* in the Upper *Saxony*, already describ'd) were formerly one Province, and call'd *Hartingow*. It is a cold Country, and has Mountains, on which Snow lies till Midsummer; affords little Corn; but the Valleys are fill'd with Cattle, and the Forests with Venison. The Inhabitants are thought the longest Livers in *Germany*, frequently arriving to the Age of 100 or 110 Years. They have Mines of Iron in the Bowels of the Mountains, of which one here call'd *Brocken* or *Brocksberg*, is esteem'd the highest in *Germany*.

Between *Blackenburg* and *Elbingrode* is a remarkable Cave, call'd *Buman's-Hole*, of which none can find the End, tho' many have travell'd very far in it. Large Bones are frequently found in it, and not many Years since a Skeleton of a Man of prodigious Bulk was brought out among other Rarities. There goes



goes a Story of a young Fellow, that seeking after his Cattle in this Cave lost his way, and wandering 3 Days together in it, at his return his Hair was chang'd grey, and he told strange Stories of Spirits and Apparitions that he said he had met within it. Here are 2 great craggy Rocks not far from *Blackenburg*, which naturally represent 2 Monks in their proper Habit, as exact as if they were carv'd out.

*Blackenburg* and *Reinſtein* are two small Counties which lie betwixt *Hilberſtadt* and *Anhalt*. They both receive their Names from Castles, of which that of *Blackenburg* ſtands 36 miles from *Wölſenbuttel* to the South, and 25 miles from *Mansfeld* to the North, and is the Hunting-seat of the Duke of *Wölſenbuttel*. That of *Reinſtein* is old and not conſiderable: Many other Castles hewn out of Rocks are to be found in theſe Countries but are not regarded.

*Greidlinburg*, a small City, formerly a Hanſe-Town, now not conſiderable but for a *Lutheran* Nunnery, the Abbeſs whereof is of the Houſe of *Austria*, and Lady of the City and a small Territory belonging to it. It is diſtant 8 miles from *Blackenburg* to the Eaſt, and 10 from *Hilberſtadt* to the South.

The Biſhoprick of *HILDESHEIM* lying between the 2 Rivers *Leina* and *Ocker*, is ſurrounded with the Territories of the Duke of *Brunſwick*, and is before much in his Power, tho' properly under the Elector of *Cologne*, as Administrator of *Hildesheim*, to whom it was reſtored by the Treaty of *Brunſwick*, A. D. 1634. having been for many Years before in the Hands of the Duke of *Brunſwick*. His Suffragan the Biſhop, is the immediate Governor of this County, and Protector of the City of *Hildesheim*, which is a Hanſe Town, and conſiderable on account of the great Trade in Corn, which they maintain. The Buildings are old and venerable, but neat enough. The Inhabitants are moſt of them *Lutherans*, tho' the Biſhop be of the *Romiſh* Church, and the only one in *Brunſwick*. It is diſtant 15 miles from *Hannover* to the South-Eaſt, 50 from *Gottingen* to the North, 30 from *Zell* to the South, and 25 from *Brunſwick* to the South-Weſt.

*Peina*, a small City, ſtands on the River *Fuſe*, about 12 miles from *Brunſwick* to the Weſt, and has a ſtrong Caſtle, the Bulwark of this Biſhoprick, on a Hill; a remarkable Battle was fought near it in 1553. between *Maurice* Elector of *Saxony*, and *Alot* Marquess of *Brandenburg*, in which the former loſt his Life.

#### The Dukedom of LUNENBURG,

Is bounded on the South with *Brunſwick*, on the North with the River *Elb*, on the Eaſt with *Brandenburg*, and on the Weſt with the Dutchy of *Bremen* and County of *Hoye*; it is full of large Woods and Foreſts, which abound with Deer and other Game; other parts of the Country are Heath, barren and deſart Lands of vaſt-Extent. The Inhabitants are the moſt ruſtical of all *Germany*.

The Government of the Dutchy of *Lunenbourg*, as has been already ſaid in the Deſcription of *Brunſwick* hath been all along enjoy'd by the Deſcendants of *Henry the Lyon*, and is at preſent united with that of *Brunſwick*, under the Illuſtrious Prince *Erneſt Auguſtus*, Duke and Elector of *Hanover*, *Brunſwick* and *Lunenbourg*.

*LUNENBURG* or *Lunenburg*. *Lunenburgum*, a Hanſe-Town, and the principal City of this Sovereign Dutchy, is ſeated on the River *Limnaw*, at the

diſtance of 8 miles from the *Elb*, and 35 from *Lunbeck* to the South, 60 from *Brunſwick* to the North, and 30 from *Hamburg* to the Eaſt. It is a ſmall City, of an oblong Form, and about 2 miles in Circumference; the Streets are broad, and the Houſes well built. The Town Hall is a handſom Building, over againſt which ſtands the Duke's Palace; the Bridge over the River is a very ſtately one. There are famous Salt-ſprings near the Town, out of which great ſtore of Salt is made, and affords the Inhabitants a conſiderable Trade. The Cattle that ſtands on an adjacent Mountain, call'd *Kalchberg*, they ſay, is 124 Years older than the City, which was built by *Henry the Lyon* in 1190.

*ZELL*, the Capital of a Dutchy poſſeſs'd by a Branch of the Family of *Lunenbourg*, is ſeated on the River *Ocker*, where the *Fulſe* falls into it, 35 miles South from *Lunenbourg*, 25 North from *Hanover*, and 29 North-Eaſt from *Brunſwick*. The Dukes Palace is a ſquare Building, adorn'd with very pleaſant Gardens, Orchards and Grotto's. It is noted round, and was built A. D. 1485. In it are held the chief Courts of Judicature.

*Bludewick*, but 5 miles diſtant from *Lunenbourg* to the North, was anciently a ſtrong and very populous City but now a poor Village only. The Cathedral Church is the only one now left of 9 that were formerly in this Town, in which is ſtill a College of 8 Reſidentary Canons.

*Hamburg* is a ſtrong Town upon the *Elb*, 30 miles Weſt from *Lunenburg*; it has a Caſtle, and is the ſtrongeſt Frontier of this Country: The Town is but thinly inhabited, and not conſiderable.

*Ulzen*, a little neat Town in the midway between *Lunenbourg* and *Zell*, was formerly call'd *Lewenwald*, and had this Name of *Ulzen* from a Monastery in the Neighbourhood call'd *Olden Stadt*. In the Year 1646. it was deſtroy'd by Fire, but is the greateſt part rebuilt more ſplendid than formerly. The Inhabitants pretend, that the *Engliſh Saxons* went from hence, and that a Ship of Tin gilt, that was to be ſeen in the Market place before the Fire, was hung up in remembrance of it, by ſome of them that return'd.

*Walſtrode*, at firſt only a Monastery, built by one *Walo* Prince of *Anhalt*, A. 986. but now a conſiderable Town, driving a good Trade in Honey, Wax, Wool and Beer; it ſtands in a pleaſant Valley encompass'd with Mountains and Woods, 25 miles from *Zell* to the Eaſt, near the Borders of *Ferden*.

The Counties of *Hoye* and *Diepholt*, already deſcrib'd are ſubject to the Duke of *Lunenbourg*.

#### The Dukedoms of BREMEN and FERDEN.

Eastward from *Lunenbourg*, and between the Rivers *Elb* and *Weſer*, lies the Dutchy of *Bremen*, which was formerly an Archbiſhoprick, and the whole Country ſubject to its Prelate, till about the Year 1644. This Country was conquer'd by the *Swede*, and by the Treaty of *Munſter* the Archbiſhoprick of *Bremen*, with the Biſhoprick of *Ferden*, were granted to that King, and turn'd into a Dukedom: But tho' this is ſpoken of the Country in general, it is not meant of every part of it; for the City of *Bremen* is Free, and has a Territory of its own; the Citizens of *Hamburg* have the 2 Forts of *Ritzenbuttel* and *New Weſer*, and a part of it belongs to the Dutchy of *Sax-Lawenburg*, as will be ſeen more particularly in our Deſcription.



The Soil of this Country is in the middle Parts sandy and barren Heath, but the outer part towards the two Rivers is very fertile, and abounds with pleasant Fields and Meadows.

The Inhabitants are reckon'd as good Soldiers as any in Germany; and 'tis said of the *Wustlanders*, the Inhabitants of that part of the Country that lies to the Sea-side that they will Fight and Drink with the best Men in Germany.

**BREMEN**, *B emia & Bremenfis Civitas*, which gives Name to this Dukedom, is a very considerable, large and well built City, seated in a fruitful Plain on the Banks of the *Weser*, 70 miles from *Zell* to the West, and 60 from *Emden* to the East, 90 from *Munster* to the North, and 60 from *Hamburg* to the South-west. It is very strong, for besides the Walls and Castle, the situation affords them a good Defence, the low Grounds about it being easily overflowed from the *Weser*.

It is a free, Imperial City, and reckon'd the third of the Hanse-towns. *Charles* the Great founded the Archbishoprick, and made it the Metropolis of the North. The Emperor *Henry V.* A. 1111. granted the Citizens great Privileges in reward of their valiant Performances in the Holy War. It receiv'd the Reformation in 1532. and zealously defended it against their Archbishop. Upon which account it was besieged by order of the Emperor *Charles V.* in the Year 1547. but the Citizens so valiantly defended themselves, that *Goenghen* Governor of *Zeeland*, who commanded in chief, was kill'd, and the Duke of *Brunswick* who succeeded him, was forced at last to raise the Siege, after near a Year's labour in vain. It is Govern'd by four Burgo-Masters and 24 Common-Council Men, who also judge all Law-suits between the Citizens. The River *Weser* divides it into two Parts, of which that on the North-side is the Old City, and the other is call'd the New; these are joyn'd again by Wooden Bridges, the biggest of which has a curious Engine on it that raises the Water and distributes it all over the Town. The Streets of the old Town are large and center in the Market-place, wherein stands an old Image of Giganuck Bulk, call'd *Statua Rolandina*, on which is an ancient Inscription, importing it to be a Testimonial of the Liberty granted by *Charles* the Great and other Emperors, to this City. These Statues have been set up in many Cities, and by the Germans (tho' with little reason) said to be the Image of a certain General nam'd *Roland*, employ'd by *Charles* the Great in the Conquest of these Countries; in whose Honour he order'd these Statues to be set up, and made the Condition of their Tenure of certain Privileges. In the old Town stands also the Town-house and the ancient Cathedral Church dedicated to *S. John*, wherein they shew the Tomb, as they say, of *Willibald*, an English Priest, who was sent over into Germany by *Egbert* Arch-bishop of *York*, at the request of *Charles* the Great to convert these Infidels; who, after he had labour'd many Years with great success, was made the first Arch-bishop of this See, and died A. D. 790. In the new Town are the Arsenal and the *Gymnasium* or small University; at first a Free-School, built soon after the Reformation, and endow'd by the Citizens; which encreasing by degrees, is now a noted University, and has educated several famous Men, particularly *Clytræus*, *Pezeli-us*, *Pierius*, *Maz. Martinus*, and *Jo. Cocceius*. This City, by means of the River, is much frequented with Merchant Ships from *Holland* and other Nations, by which they export their own Commodities, Corn, Minerals, Wool, Timber, Fish, Leather,

&c. and receive those of other Countries, which they, by the same River, transmit to the other Provinces of Germany. The Territory of this City extends about 5 or 10 miles round.

*Stade*, the next considerable City in this Dukedom, is situate on the River *Zwinge* near the *Elb* in a fruitful Country and wholesome Air, about 30 miles from *Bremen* to the N. and 25 from *Hamburg* to the W. It is a very strong Place, being fortified with vast Ramparts, Bulwarks, and a strong Castle: It has a commodious Haven, into which larger Ships can enter than are able to get up to *Hamburg*. This City hath been endow'd with great Privileges; particularly it was an *Asylum*, or place of refuge for all Offenders, and had a right to demand a Toll of Ships passing up the *Elb*; besides, it is Hanse-town: By all which means, no wonder it was once rich and populous. But it seems *Hamburg* out-strip it, and this Place became so poor, that they were forc'd to sell its great Privileges to that City and put themselves under the Protection of the Arch-bishop of *Bremen*, and it is now subject to the King of *Sweden*. It was anciently the Capital of a County subject to its own Earl, which was annex'd to the Arch-bishoprick by *Philip* Duke of *Schwaben* an Earl of *Stade*, about the Year 1240. After its decay above-mentioned, our English Merchants, upon some Abuse offer'd them at *Hamburg*, remov'd hither; which reviv'd its Trade, and in a little time made it again rich and populous, and it is at present in good condition. The Town is well built, and the Market-place, Town-hall and Churches, are worth a Traveller's sight.

*Buxtehude*, another Hanse-town, is seated on the River *Esja* near the *Elb*, in a very fruitful and pleasant Country, 15 miles from *Stade* to the West, and as many from *Hamburg* to the East. It is a Granary to *Hamburg*, that City receiving a great part of its Provisions from this.

*Bremerfurde*, a wall'd Town, on the Road betwixt *Bremen* and *Stade*, being distant 25 miles to the North from the first, and 15 to the South from the latter. It was once the Palace of the Arch-bishop and has a Castle, wherein, because it commands the neighbouring Plains, the *Swedes* keep a good Garrison. The Town is otherwise not considerable having little or no Trade.

*Ottersberg*, a small fortified Town defended by a strong Castle, which was for some time the Place of Residence of the Arch-bishop, stands 16 miles from *Bremen* to the East.

*Rutzenbittel* is a strong Fort at the mouth of the *Elb*, 32 miles to the North-west from *Stade*, and no 10 miles from the utmost point of Land of this Country. It belongs to the *Hamburgers*, who have all another small Fort near it, call'd *New-Weick*, and a small Territory round them.

The Duke of *Sax-Lawenburg* is Lord of that part of this Country call'd *Hadelland*, which is the most North east part of it, but contains nothing considerable enough to deserve a particular Description. The extent of it the Reader may judge by the Map when he knows that *Nubenhays* on the *Elb*, and *Carlsstadt* on the *Weser* belong to the *Swedes*. *Hadelland* which gives Name to the Country, and *Ottersberg* are the two best Towns in it.

The Principality of *FERDEN* or *VERDEN* formerly a Bishoprick, and now subject to the *Swedes* as above-said, is situate next to *Lunenbourg*, and bounded on the West by the *Weser*; it was made a Bishoprick by *Charles* the Great. The chief Town of the same Name stands upon the River *Alte* which



which falls into the *Weser*, and is distant 42 miles from *Zell* to the West, and 27 from *Bremen* to the East. It is supplied with all Foreign Commodities by Barges from *Bremen*: The City has nothing very considerable in it. It has been several times taken, viz. by Count *Tilly*, in 1626. by the Imperials, in 1631. In 1676. it was seized by the Duke of *Lunenbourg*, but restored to the *Swede*, in 1679. to whom it still remains.

*Rosenberg*, a small City on the River *Wein*, stands in the Bounds of this Principality and near the Borders of it, 15 miles from *Ferdin* to the North. It was at first the Bishop's Palace, which was Fortified in the Year 1500. and the small Village near it wall-ed in and made a City; which since is considerably encreas'd, and grown a place of some Trade and well inhabited.

### The Cities of HAMBURG and LUBECK.

**HAMBURG**, that flourishing, rich and populous City, is seated on the North side of the River *Eib*, at the distance of 40 miles from *Lubeck* to the South-west, and 65 from *Bremen* to the North east, and 30 from *Lunenbourg* to the North-west. 60 from *Zell* to the North, and 72 from the Mouth of the *Eib*; which River makes it a most commodious Haven, being so deep that Ships of very great Burden can come up to the very Walls of the Town, and the Tide flows up 16 miles above it. It is the chief Port, and hath been long the greatest Mart-town of *Germany*: The Haven is continually full of Ships, and the Exchange daily crowded with Merchants. The Town is divided into two parts, the Old and the New, but both close together and parted only by a Wall, and both well Fortified. The Buildings are of Brick, and exceeding high and stately; the chief Church, formerly a Cathedral, is dedicated to *S. Peter*, and was built about 830. Several of the Earls of *Holstein* and *Schawenburg* lie Buried in it. In *S. Catharine's* Church is a Pulpit of white Marble curiously Carved, and adorn'd with Figures of *Alabaster* and Ornaments of Gold. The Poor and Sick are extraordinarily well provided for in *Hamburg*, by the many Hospitals liberally endow'd. of which there are no less than 6 for the maintaining old, decrepit, poor People; for curing the Sick, for educating poor Children, to receive poor Strangers fallen Sick in Travelling, and for the maintenance of maimed Seamen: Besides which, care is taken of the Widows and Children of those that lose their Lives in the Service of the Publick.

The Trade of the City consists in all manner of Foreign Goods, as well as those of the product of *Germany*, the former being receiv'd by Ships from all parts of the World, and from hence convey'd up the *Eib* to the heart of *Germany*; and the Commodities of the several parts of the Empire return'd by the same River, and transported to other Nations, to the great Profit of the Inhabitants, who are the Managers of this vast Traffick. Our *English* Merchants having brought great Profit to this City, are treated with great Civility and Respect, and have the Privilege of trying and deciding Controversies among themselves, before their own Resident; and are permitted the free Exercise of their Religion, which is denied to other Nations. The Inhabitants, being *Lutherans*, forbid the Exercise of the *Romish* Religion.

This rich and powerful City is a free and imperial State, and independent of any Power but the Emperor's, to whom they pay a small Homage.

They enact Laws, punish Criminals even to Death, levy Taxes, make League and War as they please, by a Grant of the Emperor *Frederick I.* and confirm'd by *Ferdinand II.* The Citizens of *Hamburg* are exempted from all Tolls and Customs upon the *Eib*, betwixt their own City and the Ocean; notwithstanding which, the King of *Denmark* has sometimes compell'd their Ships to pay Toll at his Castle of *Gluckstadt*, which occasioned great Contests. This was made up in the Year 1645. and the *Hamburgers* permitted to re-assume their ancient Privileges, upon the payment of 120000 *Rix Dollars* to that King.

The Government of this City is in its own Magistrates, who are 4 Burgomasters, 20 *Schepins* or Aldermen, and 12 Common-council, call'd *die Oberalten*, or chief Elders. There upon extraordinary Occasions call to their Assistance 60 more eminent Citizens, call'd, *The Elders of the City*; and if it be too difficult a matter for them to determine, the whole Commonality of Free-men are assembled. This City is able to arm 15000 Men.

It was taken by *Waldemar* Duke of *Sleswick* about the Year 1200. who gave it *Albrecht* Earl of *Orlimumd*, of whom the Citizens bought their Liberty, and it became a free State; which was several times confirm'd by the Earls of *Holstein* and *Schawenburg* his Posterity, to the last of that Family, who died A. 1459 after which, the Province of *Holstein* falling into the Hands of *Christian I.* King of *Denmark*, the *Hamburgers* contracted a League of Friendship with that Prince, whose Successors have often endeavour'd to have the Protection of this City, but could never obtain it. In the Year 1510. the City of *Hamburg* was declared Free and Imperial by the Emperor *Maximilian* in the Diet, and the Duke of *Holstein* summon'd to make good his Pretensions to it, or renounce them for ever. In fine, the City has to this Day preserv'd its Freedom, which it has been the better able to do, by reason of the continual Jealousies between the two Northern Crowns; for the *Swede* being Master of the South side of the *Eib*, as the *Dane* is of the North, what mischief this does them from *Gluckstadt*, will be reveng'd by the other from *Stade*. However, the *Dane* has several times fleec'd them; in the Year 1679. he got 220000 *Rix Dollars* of them, to take them again into his Favour, as 'twas term'd in the Treaty; and in the Year 1686. he again brought an Army and Besieg'd it, but was bought off.

**LUBECK**, *Lubeca* & *Lubecum*, an Imperial City, and the Capital of all the Hanse-towns, is conveniently seated near the Sea, and on the Banks of the *Trave*, which having receiv'd the Waters of a lesser River into its Channel, form a kind of Marsh round about the Walls, and passing through the City conveys Vessels of as large size as any that sail upon the *Baltick*, up to the Town, which by that means, is a Place of great Traffick. It was heretofore only a small Town, built by *Adolphus* Count of *Holstein*, under the Reign of the Emperor *Conrad III.* from whom it was taken by *Henry* the *Lyon* Duke of *Saxony*, afterwards conquer'd by *Waldemar* Duke of *Sleswick*; but being ill treated by the *Danes*, the Citizens expel'd them, and put themselves under the Protection of the Emperor *Frederick II.* who constituted it an imperial and free City, A. 1209. and it is at present one of the principal ones of *Germany*. It is distant 10 miles from the Coasts of the *Baltick* Sea, 37 from *Hamburg* to the North-east, and as many from *Wismar* to the West. The Streets are very fair and adorn'd with divers magnificent Buildings, the chief whereof are the



the Cathedral dedicated to *S. John*, the Collegiate Churches of the *Virgin Mary*, *S. James*, *St. Peter*, &c. Its Episcopal See under the Metropolitan of *Bremen*, was translated hither from *Oldenburg*, A. D. 1162. but the Bishops have been Protestants ever since the Year 1561. when the Reformed Religion was introduced here by *Dietterus* of *Reventon*, and a Custom hath prevail'd. That the Administration of the Bishoprick of *Lubeck* should devolve as an Appanage or Inheritance on the younger Sons of the Duke of *Holstein Gottorp*, the shadow of an Election being only left to the Chapter, whence they are stiled Dukes of *Eutin*, from a Town about 4 miles from hence so called, wherein this Prelate usually Resides, and which was annexed to the Episcopal See by *Adolphus II* Count of *Holstein*, when it as yet retain'd the name of *Oldenburg*. The City is Govern'd by twelve Burgo-masters, who are Civilians and Gentlemen. The Common-Council are compos'd of Lawyers and Merchants, Mechanicks being excluded. A remarkable Treaty of Peace was concluded at *Lubeck*, between the Emperor and the King of *Denmark*, A. D. 1629.

The Duchy of *LAVENBURG* lies on the Banks of the *Elb*, between the Dukedoms of *Holstein*, *Mecklenburg* and *Lunenbourg*, and is subject to its own Duke, who is of the Family of the ancient Dukes of *Saxony*. The chief Town of the same Name is seated on the River *Elb*, 25 miles from *Lubeck* to the South, 35 from *Hamburg* to the East, and 15 from *Lunenbourg* to the North. It is said to have been built by *Henry the Lion* Duke of *Saxony*, and thence call'd *Leoburgum*; but in the Wars against that Prince it being much damaged, *Bernard of Anhalt*, who succeeded him, re-edified, eniarg'd and strengthened it, and gave it to *John* his Second Son, with this Duchy; from whence the last Duke of *Sax-Lawenburg* was descended, who dying in the Year 1692. and leaving no Issue Male, the Succession to this Duchy hath been claim'd by the Elector of *Saxony* and other Princes.

*Ratzeburg*, seated on a Lake of the same Name, 15 miles from *Lawenburg* to the North, and 12 from *Lubeck* to the South, is the See of a Bishop, under the Archbishop of *Bremen*, planted by *Henry the Lion*, when he Conquer'd these Parts. It was subject to its Bishop before the Treaty of *Westphalia*, A. D. 1648. by which the Jurisdiction of it was divided between the Dukes of *Mecklenburg* and *Lawenburg*, the Town being given to the former, and the Castle to the latter. This Town receiv'd the *Augustan* Confession, A 1566. It is the Capital of a Country of the same Name, and the ancient Burial-place of the Dukes.

To this Duke, as hath been already said, some part of the Dukedom of *Bremen* is subject, as are also *Frankenhausen*, *Sassenhausen*, and some other Towns on the *Elb*.

### The Dukedom of MECKLENBURG.

The Dukedom of *Mecklenburg* is situate between the

Dutchies of *Holstein* and *Sax-Lawenburg* to the West, the *Baltick* Sea to the North, *Pomerania* to the East, and *Brandenburg* to the South. It is a Country reasonably large, and stor'd with Corn, Fruits, Fish, and Fowl but in an unpleasant Air, being not wholesome in the Summer, and extream Cold in the Winter: The ancient Inhabitants were the *Vandals*. At present the Country is divided between the two Dukes of *Swerin* and *Gustrow*. This Division was made in the Year 1592. for the sakes of the two Sons of *John III*, the Eldest seated in *Swerin*, and the Youngest in *Gustrow*.

*Swerin*, seated upon a Lake of the same name, is distant 40 Miles from the River *Elb* to the North, 20 from the *Baltick* Sea to the South, and 35 from *Lubeck* to the East: It was built by *Henry the Lion*, A. D. 1163. who bestow'd it on *Guntzelone* of his Generals, with the Lordships belonging thereto, and made him Earl of *Swerin*, but his Family ending in 1355. it was annex'd to *Mecklenburg*. The Bishop's See, which had before been at *Mecklenburg*, was about the Year 1260 remov'd to this City, at the request of *Henry*, who built the Cathedral and Library and endow'd it, since which time there was a continual Succession til the Treaty of *Munster*, when the Bishoprick was Seculariz'd. In this City the Duke of *Mecklenburg Swerin* keeps his usual Residence.

*Mecklenburg* is at present a small inconsiderable Village near *Wismar*, tho' anciently a large City, and gave name to this Dukedom. There are some little Remains of Ruins to be seen for some miles round.

*Gustrow*, the place of the Residence of the Duke of *Mecklenburg Gustrow*, is a strong well fortified Town, and stands 35 miles from *Swerin* to the East, and 15 from *Rostock* to the South.

*Rostock* a Free Imperial City and Hanse-Town, but under the Protection of the Duke of *Mecklenburg* is seated on the River *Warna*, which 8 Miles below it falls into the *Baltick* Sea, and makes it a reasonable good Port, which was well frequented by Merchants Ships; but since the Treaty of *Munster* the *Sweeds* have built a Fort at the mouth of the River, and exact a Toll on all Ships that pass by, to the great decay of the Trade of this Town. An University was founded here by the Dukes of *Mecklenburg*, Anno 1419. which is now one of the most flourishing in *Germany*. It stands 16 Miles from *Gustrow* to the North and 36 from *Wismar* to the East.

*Wismar*, a Hanse-Town, is seated at the bottom of a Bay of the *Baltick* Sea, 12 Miles from *Swerin* to the N. *Henry de Mecklenburg* about the Year 1266. establish'd the same manner of Government here as was at *Lubeck* by which it quickly grew rich, and the Haven being convenient, it was made the Harbour of the Men of War belonging to the *Hanseatick* Society, and the Town very strongly fortified. This City was granted to the *Sweed* by the Treaty of *Munster*, and was taken from him by the *Dane* in 1675. By the last Treaty of Peace between those two Princes, it was agreed to be deliver'd to the *Sweed* upon payment of certain Sums of Money, which it seems are not yet paid, for the Town still remains in the Hands of the King of *Denmark*.

## CHAP. XIII.

### The Circle of WESTPHALIA.

THIS Circle lies on the West-side of the River *Weser*, from the *German* Ocean on the North, to the Province of *Hessen* on the South, and between

the Lower *Saxony* on the East, and the *Netherlands* on the West. The utmost extent of it may be reckon'd about 200 miles from North to South, and from



from East to West in some parts 100. in others 150 miles; which Extent comprehends many Sovereignities, viz. the Principality of East Friesland, and Bishopricks of Munster, Osnabrug and Paderborn; the Duchies of Cleve and Juliers, with several smaller States, as is more particularly express'd in the Table annex'd.

It was anciently inhabited by the Saxons, and by them call'd *Westvelden*, from its situation on the West-side of the *Wefer*, as the Country on the other side was call'd *Oost-velden*: From hence, some affirm, the Saxons came that Invaded England; and many Arguments, not altogether improbable, have been made by some Learned Germans to prove it. But since Mr. Camden, who was so indefatigable an Enquirer into, and so excellent a Judge of Antiquity, inclines to the common Opinion, that they came from the most Northern part of Saxony, it is most reasonable to be concluded by him, and reject the Arguments of others, how plausible soever they may seem.

When Charles the Great had conquer'd the Saxons, and planted Christianity among them, he erected several bishopricks, to which he gave Lands for their support. In the part we are speaking of, we find three very considerable ones, besides that of Liege, who have Sovereign Princes; they were not made altogether so potent in his time, but encreas'd their Dominions at the general Partition that was made of the great Dukedom of Saxony, when Henry the Lion was Proscrib'd; 'twas then that the Bishop of Munster enlarg'd his Country, and that the Archbishop of Cologne obtain'd that part of Westphalia which he still holds, and by that part of it styles himself Duke of Westphalia. The other Sovereignities are the County of East Friesland, the County of Oldenburg, the Principality of Minden, the Counties of Hye, Lippe, Ravensburg, &c. together with the Duchy of Cleve, Juliers and Berg; all which have been erected at several times, upon several occasions, which we have not room here particularly to shew.

The Air, especially in the Northern part, is very Cold, and great part of the Ground is Marshy, or Barren; however Corn and Pasture is produc'd in plenty; but the Fruit is very ordinary, and serves chiefly to feed the Hogs, whereof this Country hath good store, and of an Excellent Kind; so that the Bacon which they send abroad, is very much esteem'd. The chief Rivers are the *Wefer*, the *Ems*, the *Lippe*, the *Ruer*, the *Aa*, &c. The Accomodations a Traveller may meet with here, is prettily enough express'd in this *Disick*, very common in Germany, viz.

*Hospitum Vile, Groof Broor, dun Bier, lange Milen,  
Sint in Westphalia: Qui non vult credere, Loop daer.*

That is,

Who Travels into Westphalia's sure to find, vile.  
Long Miles, small Beer, coarse Bread and Lodging

The Circle of Westphalia is thus divided;

The Bishoprick of Munster,  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Munster,} \\ \text{Kloppenburg,} \\ \text{Ietcht,} \\ \text{Meppen,} \\ \text{Tiiligt,} \\ \text{Koesfeld.} \end{array} \right.$   
wherein the chief Towns are

The Duchy of Westphalia, subject to the Elector of Cologne. See the Division of it in the account of the Dominions of that Prince,

The Bishoprick of Osnabrug,

The Bishoprick of Paderborn,

The Abbey of Corbey,

County of East Friesland,

The County of Oldenburg,  
The Principality of Minden,

The County of Bentheim,

The Dukedom of Cleve,

The Duchy of Juliers,

The Duchy of Berg,

The County of Marck,

The County of Lippe,

The County of Ravensburg,

The County of Schaumberg,

The Counties of

Osnabrug,  
Iburg.

Paderborn,  
Lippeburg,  
Warburg.

Hoxter,  
Emden,

Norden,  
Aurich,

Efsen,  
Jever.

Oldenburg,

Minden,  
Petersshagen, C.

Bentheim.

Cleve, Orsoy,  
Embrick, Caliar,  
Rees, Santen,  
Wesel, Meurs, C.  
Genep,  
Duysburg, &c.

Juliers, or Gulick,  
Aken, or Aix la Chapel-  
Duren. [le

Duseldorp.  
Dartmund,

Umm,  
Ham,  
Soest.

Lippe,  
Dithmold,  
Horn,  
Lemgow.

Ravensburg,  
Hervoden,  
Bilevelt.

Schaumberg,  
Saxhagen,  
Buckenburgh,  
Oldendop.

Hoye,  
Diepholt,  
Lingen,  
Delmenhorst,  
Tecklenburg,  
Steinfurt,  
Ravestein.

The BISHOPRICK of MUNSTER is stretched out on both sides the River *Ems*, from the Borders of the County of Emden on the North, to the Duchy of Cleve, County of Mark, and Duchy of Westphalia on the South, being in length near 100 miles. On the East it is bounded by the Counties of Delmenhorst, & Diepholt, the Bishopricks of Osnabrug and Paderborn, and the Counties of Ravensburg and Lippe. On the West it hath the Province of Overissel, the County of Bentheim, and the County of Zurphen, containing in breadth in some parts 60. in others 40. and in some parts not above 20 miles. This Province is intirely subject to the Bishop, who is a Count of the Empire, and a powerful Prince, being able to maintain an Army of 15000 Men. The chief Cities and Towns in his Dominions are these, viz.

MUNSTER. *Monasterium*, olim *Minigroda*, which is reckon'd the Capital of the Circle of Westphalia, takes its name from a Monastery built here by Charles the Great. It is pleasantly situated in a large Plain, on the Banks of the River *Aa*, which falls into the *Ems*, a little below the Town. This was an Imperial City and Hanse-Town, but hath been subject



subject to the Bishop since 1661. It is adorn'd with a stately Cathedral, a College belonging to the Jesuits, and other fair Buildings; and is Fortified with a strong Castle and regular Out-works. An Insurrection of the *Anabaptists* here in the last Age was very remarkable; for these furious Enthusiasticks, under the Conduct of a Sanctified Taylor, call'd *John of Leyden*, seiz'd the City, turn'd out the Magistrates, and Lorded it at pleasure for a Years time: But at last their doughty Prince was taken Prisoner, and duly rewarded with a publick Execution, whereby the publick Peace was restored in the Year 1534. And in this Age, this City hath been made famous by a memorable Treaty in it held, and a Peace concluded between the Emperor and Princes of *Germany*, which put an end to the Civil War first began between the Elector Palatine, but had at last engag'd most of the Princes, and miserably harass'd all *Germany*, from about the year 1618. till 1648. in which year this *Westphalian* Peace was made. *Munster* stands 90 miles South from the *German* Ocean, 60 miles West from the River *Weser*, as many East from the *Rhine*, and an 120 North from the *Maine*, in the Lat. of 51 deg. 40 m. and Longit. 27 deg.

*Kneppenburg* stands at the head of the little River *Sceffe* near the borders of the County of *Oldenburg*, 65 miles North from *Munster*. It is a strong Fortified Town, but was taken by the *Swedes* in 1635. and recover'd soon after by the Bishop, to whom it is still subject.

*Vecke*, the Capital of a small Barony, formerly govern'd by its own Lord, stands near the Borders of the County of *Deipholt*, 15 miles South East from *Kneppenburg*.

*Meppen*, a strong fortified Town, stands on the River *Hase*, where it falls into the *Embs*, 25 miles S. W. from *Kneppenburg*. It was taken by the *Dutch* in 1557. but regain'd, and since, together with *Kneppenburg*, and another Fort call'd *Haselunnen*, made over to the Bishop of *Munster*, by the Counts of *Tecklenburg*, to whom they then belong'd.

*Tilligt*, which stands near the *Embs*, 10 miles West from *Munster*, was made famous by a Convention of the States of *Munster*, held in it, in 1532.

*Kuelsfeldt* is a small Hanse-Town on the River *Berfel*, 20 miles West from *Munster*.

The County of *Embsden*, *Emmerlands*, or *EAST-FRIEZLAND*, is bounded on the North and East by the *German* Ocean, on the West by the County of *Oldenburg*, and on the South by the Bishoprick of *Munster*. This was part of the Kingdom of the ancient *Frisons*; but this part was made a Province of *Germany* by *Charles* the Great, and in 1453. *Ulrich* the Governour of it was made Count, and his Family have since been Princes of it to the present Count *Christian* *Everard*.

*EMBDEN*, *Embsda*, *Amassia* aut *Amisia*, the Capital of *East Friezland*, is seated near the mouth of the River *Embs*, and on the Bay call'd *Dollaert*, at the distance of 25 miles from *Groningen* to the East, 60 from *Bremen* to the West, and 100 from *Munster* to the North. It hath a very convenient and deep Haven, and the People are of an industrious nature, it is therefore a place of good Trade, and much resorted to by Merchant Ships from Foreign parts: Our Merchants, upon their removal from *Antwerp*, brought hither the Staple, or chief Ware-house for *Englisc* Cloath, but being ill-us'd, remov'd it to *Hamburg*. The Houses here are generally well-built, and the Stad-huys, or Town-hall, is very Magnificent. This City was formerly subject to the Count

of *Friezland*, but it hath thrown off his Authority and is now a Free-state, under the Protection of the *Hollanders*. It is defended by two strong Castles, a Wall with Battions and regular Bulwarks, and a double Ditch round about.

*Norden*, a pleasant Port-Town about 15 miles N. from *Embsden*, is well built, but not Fortified. The Harbour is not deep enough to receive Ships of any great Burthen.

*Awich*, in a Triangule with *Embsden* and *Norden*, is the place where the Supreme Court of Judicature for this Country is held. Here is a Castle belonging the Count and a slight Wall round the Town.

*Efens*, 12 miles East from *Norden*, is defended by a strong Castle.

*Wimund* is a good large Town, about 7 or 8 miles S. E. from *Efens*, both formerly Barones, but devolved on the Count of *Friezland*. This was once a place of good Trade, but now much declined.

*Jever*, about 10 miles S. E. from *Efens*, is a fair Town, and gives Title to a Baron. It has a good strong Castle; and by means of the River *Hock*, which falls into the Ocean 10 miles below, it hath acquir'd a pretty good Trade. This Barony is now subject to the Count of *Oldenburg*.

On the South East of *Embsden* lies the County of *OLDENBURG*, a poor barren Country, extended along the Banks of the *Weser*, near 50 miles in length, and 25 in breadth. Its chief Town of the same name is seated on the River *Hunte*, at the distance of 35 miles from *Embsden* to the East, and as many from *Bremen* to the West. It is well Fortified with Walls and Ditches, and a strong well-built Castle, which is the Seat of its Earl. The Houses are very mean, but the place hath a pretty good Trade by the means of the River, which falling into the *Weser*, Ships of Burden can come up into the Town.

*DELMENHORST*, the Capital of a small County, lying next to *Oldenburg* on the South-east, is a strong fortified Town, but otherwise not considerable. It stands upon the River *Dilma*, 16 miles East from *Oldenburg*, and 10 S. W. from *Bremen*.

*DIEPHLOT*, a small County, lies on the South of *Delmenhorst*, and between *Munster* on the West, and *Hoye* on the East. It is now subject to the Duke of *Lunenbourg*. The chief Town of the same name is seated near the Lake call'd *Dummer*, out of which the River *Hunte* arises, and passes by this Town, which is distant 40 miles from *Oldenburg* to the South, and 35 from the *Weser* to the West.

*HOYE*, a County on the Banks of the *Weser*, East of *Diepholt*, and South of *Bremen*, was Govern'd by its own Lords, till 1552. when the last Count dying, it was parted among several Princes. *Hoye*, the chief Town, (a small place, but well Fortified) with *Nieuburg*, *Lavenaw*, and *Bruchausen*, became subject to the Duke of *Lunenbourg*; the Forts of *Selegenaw*, *Ezerburg*, and 5 more Towns, to the House of *Brunswick*; and *Freudenburg* and *Uchte* to the Landgrave of *Hesse*.

*MINDEN* the Capital of a small Principality, is a large rich Hanse-Town, standing on the *Weser*, 55 Miles from *Bremen* to the South, and 35 from *Osnabrug* to the East. This Principality was given to the Elector of *Brandenburg* at the Treaty of *Munster*. It is a good Country and produces plenty of Corn; the extent of it is about 25 miles in length, and 20 in breadth.

The Bishoprick of *OSNABRUG* lyes between *Minden* on the East, and *Munster* on the West *Diepholt* on the N. E. and *Ravensburg* on the S. W.



and in the middle between the two Rivers *Wefer* and *Embs*. Its extent from North to South is 45 miles, and from East to West 25 miles. It is a fruitful Country, and subject to its Bishop, who is a Count of the Empire.

*Osnabrug*, *Osnabrug*, *Osnabrugum*, aut *Osnabrucum*, the Capital, is subject to the Bishop, though call'd a Hanse-Town. It stands upon the River *Hase* in a fruitful Valley, 30 Miles from *Munster* to the North-east, and 60 from *Oldenburg* to the South; it has a Fort for its defence call'd *St. Peter's Castle*. This City was honour'd with a Treaty of Peace between the Emperor and the King of *Sweden*, in the Year 1648 wherein an Agreement was made concerning all the Affairs of the Protestants, and the Bishopricks made alternative between the *Roman Catholics* and *Lutherans*, in favour of the House of *Brunswick*.

*Iburg*, stands about 12 miles South from the City, and is the place where the Bishop resides.

*TECKLENBURG*, a strong Castle and Fort, stands about 10 miles West from *Osnabrug*, and is the Capital of a small County, formerly under its own Counts; now subject to that of *Benthem*.

*SCAUMBURG*, or *Schaumburg*, an old Castle on the top of an Hill, on the North-side of the *Wefer*, 45 miles from *Hoye* to the South, and 50 from *Osnaburg*, and 16 from *Minden* to the East, gives name to a County of 25 miles extent from North to South, and 18 from East to West, which lies on the East of *Minden*, and South of *Hoye*; the River *Wefer* passes cross it; besides which it is water'd with the Rivers *Hannel*, *Alwe*, *Caspaw* and *Exter*; these yield the Inhabitants abundance of Fish, and the Country plenty of Corn, Hay, Timber, and Venison: Here are also Quarries of Stone, which they send abroad, and some Mines of Allum, Coal, &c. This County is subject to the House of *Lippe*.

*Saxenhagen*, or *Sassenhagen*, a Fort and Town in the most Northern part of this County.

*Bukenburg*, the Seat of the second Branch of the House of *Lippe*, who are thence still'd Counts of *Lippe-Bukenburg*.

*Oldendorp*, on the Banks of the *Wefer*, a small but strong Town, 5 miles from *Schaumburg*; it repell'd the Imperial Forces in 1633, but was taken by them in 1639. The Counts of *Lippe* have a Custom-house here to receive Duty paid by all Vessels that pass this way.

*LIPPE*, or *Liepstadt*, is a very strong and well fortified Town, seated on the River *Lippe*, 45 miles from *Osnaburg* to the South, and 35 from *Munster* to the East. This place was besieg'd by the *French* in the War of 1674 but defended it self so well that they were forc'd to raise the Siege. It is the Capital of a Country which lies between *Ravensburg* to the North, and *Paderborn* to the South, a narrow Tract of Land, in length from East to West about 50 miles, and in breadth 15 or 20. Its Counts are of a very ancient Family, and are not only Lords of this County, but of several other places in the Neighbourhood.

*Dietmold*, or *Dietmelle*, as 'tis writ in the Maps, 30 miles from *Lippe* to the N. E. and 25 from *Minden* to the S. is the place of Residence of the Eldest House of *Lippe*, but not considerable on any other account.

*Horn*, an old Town near *Dietmold*, once subject to Counts of its own, now to the Count of *Lippe*.

*Lemgow*, a rich and near Hanse-Town on the River *Pega*, 7 miles North from *Dietmelle*, once subject to the Bishop of *Paderborn*, by whom made over to the Counts of *Lippe*, on whom it hath still some dependance, but hath obtain'd many Privileges.

The Bishoprick of *PADERBORN* is bounded on the North with *Lippe*, on the South with *Hesse-Cassel* and *Waldeck*, and on the West with *Munster* and *Westphalia*, and contains in it 24 Market Towns, 20 Castles, 54 Parishes, and 16 Monasteries, which are all subject to the Bishop.

*PADERBORN*, *Paderborna*, aut *Padrabranna*, stands near the source of the River *Lippe*, from whence it is distant only 16 miles to the South, 30 from *Corway*, 45 from *Cassel* to the North west, and 50 from *Munster* to the South-east, and is handsomely built and well fortified. The Emperor *Charlemagne* made it an Episcopal See, under the Metropolitan of *Mentz*, and held a Convention or Parliament there, A. C. 777. It was a free City, and one of the Hanseatick Society; but the Bishop hath been Temporal as well as Spiritual Lord of it, and of the whole Diocess, ever since the Year 1604. *Theodore* of *Furstemburg*, Bishop of *Paderborn*, built the adjacent Castle of *Newhaufe* or *Nienhus* near the confluence of the *Lippe* and the *Alme*, A. D. 1590 which serves as an Episcopal Palace; he also founded an University in the City, in 1592.

*Lippesburg*, about 5 miles from *Paderborn*, standing on the edge of a great Heath call'd *die Senne*, has a stately Castle belonging to the Dean and Chapter of *Paderborn*, who are Lords of the Town. The River *Lippe* springs near this Castle.

*Warburg*, a Hanse-Town, is seated in a fruitful Country on the River *Dymel*, 25 Miles South-east from *Paderborn*. Some Neighbouring Mines of Iron and Lead afford this Town a good Trade.

Between the Bishoprick of *Paderborn* and the River *Wefer*, lies the Territory of the Abbey of *CORBEY*, founded by the Emperor *Lewes I.* It is about 15 or 16 miles in length, and in it, besides other Towns, and

*Hoxter*, a fair City on the *Wefer*, 25 miles North from *Cassel*, and directly West from *Paderborn*, which by the means of the River, is a place of good Trade.

Besides this Territory, the Island of *Rugen* in *Pomerania* was given to this Abby by the Emperor *Lotharius*, A. 844.

And now having survey'd all the Countries on the East of *Westphalia*, we must cross *Munster*, and before we come to *Cleeve*, and its Dependences, view

The Earldom of *BENTHEM* which lies on the West-side of the Bishoprick of *Munster*, stretching out into the Province of *Overissel*, wherewith it is surrounded on all the other sides. It is in length near 40 miles, and in breadth about 15. The chief Town

*Benthem*, stands near the South-border of the County, 30 miles North-West from *Munster*, 36 West from *Osnabrug*, and 40 East from *Deventer*. It is fortified and has a Castle, but is a place of no Trade, being seated in a Wood and far from a River.

*LINGEN*, a strong Town on the River *Embs*, 40 miles North from *Munster*, is subject to the Prince of *Orange*; tho the County, of which it is Capital, be under the Bishop of *Munster*.

*STEINFURT* or *Borchstenford*, is also a small County, lying South of *Benthem*, to whose Earl it is now subject, tho' formerly it had Lords of its own. The chief Town stands 20 miles North from *Munster*.

The Dutchies of *CLEEVE* and *JULIERS*, with their dependencies the Counties of *MARCK*, *BERG*, *RAVENSBERG* and *RAVENSTEIN*, lie mostly on the Banks of the *Rhine*, but are so intermixt with other Countries, that it is difficult to give the particular Limits. In general, they are

G g bounded



bounded on the N. by *Guelderland*, *Zutphen* and *Munster*, on the S. by the Archbishoprick of *Trier*, on the E. by *Hesse* and *Westphalia*, and on the W. by *Brabant*, *Liege* and *Limburg*. The principal Rivers here are the *Rhine*, the *Roer*, and the *Lippe*; which two latter fall into the *Rhine*, the first at *Duisburg*, and the last at *Wesel*. The Air is cold, but the Soil is fruitful in Corn, and yields some Pasture.

The Right of succeeding to these Territories, upon the Death of *John William* the last Duke, without Issue in 1609. gave occasion to great Commotions in Germany; for the Elector of *Brandenburg*, the Duke of *Neuburg*, the Duke of *Deuxponts*, the Duke of *Saxony*, and the Marquis of *Burgow*, having all marry'd Sisters or Daughters of the Sisters of *John William*, all claim'd to succeed. But the Elector of *Brandenburg* and the Duke of *Neuburg* only maintain'd their Claims by force of Arms; the former by the Assistance of the *Hollanders*, and the latter by that of the *Spaniards*. Until at length an Agreement was made, that *Juliers* and *Berg*, with the small Territory of *Ravenstein* should be granted to the Duke of *Neuburg*, and that the Elector of *Brandenburg* should for ever enjoy the Duchy of *Cleeve*, and the Counties of *Marck* and *Ravensburg*; under which Princes they at present remain.

The Duchy of *Cleeve* is a Country generally Woody and Hilly, but however produces divers sorts of Grain. It lies on both sides of the *Rhine*, between *Munster* on the East, *Guelderland* on the West, *Zutphen* on the North, and *Juliers* on the South, extending about 40 miles from North to South, and 25 from East to West.

The City *CLEEVE*, call'd *Cleef* by the *Germans*, and *Clivis* ant *Clivis* in *Latin*, which gives name to the Country, a very ancient Place, and suppos'd to have been founded by the *Romans*, stands on a Hill, among craggy Cliffs, between the *Rhine* and the *Maes*, about 12 miles South-East from *Nimeguen*, 70 West from *Munster*, and 60 North-West from *Cologne*. It is small, but well peopled; near it are seen an old square Tower and other Remains of Buildings, which shew it to have been formerly much larger. The Castle is old and not very strong, but pleasantly seated, and affords a delightful Prospect from the top of *Span-Tower*. The private Houses are but mean, and the chief publick ones are the great Church and two Monasteries. On the West side of the Town is a very pleasant Park call'd *Prince Maurice's*, wherein are many Ponds and Water-works, above which is the high Hill call'd *Steenberg*, from whence *Utrecht* with four more Cities and several great Towns may be seen, thro' 12 *Fisso's* or strait Walks cut thro' the Wood. On the East of the Town stands the Prince's House, in which are many Rarities and Monuments of Antiquity.

*Embrick*, on the Eastern Banks of the *Rhine*, 8 miles from *Cleeve* to the East, and

*Rees*, on the Banks of the same River, about 10 miles higher, are both well fortified.

*Gennep*, at the Mouth of the *Nierse*, where it falls into the *Maes*, near the Borders of *Guelderland*, 10 miles South-West from *Cleeve*, was anciently a large and populous City, and well fortified; but in the late Wars its Fortifications were demolish'd, and the Town is much decreas'd and now of small moment, tho' conveniently seated for Trade.

*Goch* on the *Nierse*, 6 or 7 miles above *Gennep*, a small Town of no great Strength nor Traffick. All these four, tho' seated in the Duchy of *Cleeve*, have been taken from it at several times by the *Dutch*, and are now subject to them.

*Calcar*, a place of great Strength, and built by the Dukes of *Cleeve* for a Refuge against any sudden approach of an Enemy, is seated near the Western Bank of the *Rhine* over against *Rees*, about 10 miles distant from *Cleeve* to the South East. It quickly grew populous and rich by a Linnen Trade which they manag'd, and since they have been noted for making Malt, which is now a great Trade in this Town. The Town-house, *St. Nicholas's* Church, and the Monastery of the *Dominicans*, are stately Buildings.

*Santen*, on the Western Bank of the *Rhine*, is a Town of very great Antiquity, but not considerable on any other account; it is said to be the place where the *Theban* Legion suffer'd Martyrdom under the Emperor *Maximianus*, and therefore call'd *Santen* Holy.

*Wesel*, call'd *Nether-Wesel* for distinction, seated in a fair Plain on the Eastern Bank of the *Rhine* near the Mouth of the River *Lippe*, 25 miles distant from *Cleeve* to the South-East, and near 10 from *Santen* to the East, is a strong, populous and well-built City, reckon'd the largest and best in this Duchy. It is a *Hanse-Town*, and was Imperial, but exempted by the Dukes of *Cleeve*, of whose Dukedom it was always a Member. It was taken and plunder'd by the *French* in the late War; and, the Burgers being rich, they exacted intolerable Contributions from them. Here is an Hospital for decrepit old People, founded by *H. Oliver Baers*, and nobly endow'd by him and his Son.

*Duisburg*, a small City on the *Roer*, which a little lower falls into the *Rhine*, and on the Confines of *Cleeve* and *Bergen*, 15 miles above *Wesel*, 35 South-East from *Cleeve*, 15 from *Dusseldorp*, and 25 from *Cologne* to the North-West. It was once an Imperial City, but now subject to the Elector of *Brandenburg*, as Duke of *Cleeve*, tho' the Burgers still claim their former Liberty. Here were formerly Fairs held yearly, which brought great Trade to the Town. An University is establish'd here by the Duke of *Brandenburg*, which was open'd Oct. 14, 1655.

*Mews*, a small City, the Capital of an Earldom, lying between the Duchy of *Cleeve* and the Archbishoprick of *Cologne*, belongs to the Prince of *Orange*, to whom it was given in 1600. by the last Countess; but it is claim'd by the Duke of *Brandenburg*, as part of the Duchy of *Cleeve*. In this Earldom stands also

*Orsey*, a small but strong Town, taken from the *Dutch* in 1634. by the Prince of *Orange*, and by the *French* in 1672. but abandon'd by them in 1674.

The Dukedom of *JULIERS* lies between the Rivers *Maes* and *Rhine*, bounded on the North by the *Spanish* *Gueldre* and *Cleeve* on the South by *Luxemburg* and *Trier*, on the East by the Bishoprick of *Cologne*, and on the West by *Liege* and *Limburg*, extending about 60 miles in length, and 30 in breadth. The Country is fruitful in Corn, Hay and Wood, and yields also *Woad* for Dying, whereof the Inhabitants make great Profit; and an excellent Breed of Horses.

*JULIERS*, or *GULICK*, as the Inhabitants call it, *Juliacum*, the Capital of this Duchy, is an ancient City seated on the River *Roer*, at the distance of 50 miles from *Cleeve* to the South, 25 from *Cologne* to the West, and 25 from *Maestricht* to the East. It is a small Place, but neatly built; the Houses are of Brick, and the Streets broad and even: The Citadel is large, and render'd as strong as the best Engineers of *Germany* could make it: Notwithstanding which, it has been often taken in the present Age,



Age, but at last restor'd to the Duke of Neuburg, according to the Articles of the *Pyrenean Treaty*.

*Aken* or *Aquisgranum*, call'd *AIX LA CHAPELLE* by the *French*, anciently a very considerable Place, having been the Seat of the Emperor *Charlemagne*, stands near the Borders of this Dutchy of *Juliers* and that of *Limburg*; it is distant 15 miles from *Juliers* to the South-West, 16 from *Maestricht* to the East, and 36 from *Cologne* to the West. It is an Imperial and Free City, and a very large beautiful Place; and by reason of the hot Baths in it, which cause a great Resort thither, very populous and rich. The chief publick Buildings are the Collegiate Church and the Senate-house; the former was built by *Charles the Great*, who was buried in it, and is a very curious piece of Architecture of the *Gothick Order*: At the West-end stands a high Steeple with several Pyramids, and in the middle a Cupola, the Inside whereof is adorn'd with a great number of Pillars of white Marble and of Brass gilt; also many gilded Statues, Brass doors and Partitions; and the Roof is beautified with *Mosaick Work*. In this Church are kept many Relicks, which are visited by zealous Pilgrims. The Senate-House is a very stately Fabrick, built *A. D.* 1533. and adorn'd with the Statues of all the Emperors; the upper Story of it is only one Room of 162 Foot in length, and 60 in breadth, wherein the Emperors us'd to receive their first Crown of Iron, and entertain the Electors and others that attended at their Coronations.

The Baths are much esteem'd for their Virtue in curing Chronical Distempers. It is said that they were first found out by *Serinius Granius*, Lieutenant-General of *Gallia Belgica*, about the Year of Christ 53. who beautified them, and built a Palace near them. But the Place being afterwards destroy'd by *Attila*, the Baths lay bury'd till the time of *Charles the Great*, whose Horse (as he was Hunting here) accidentally struck his Foot into one of them, which the Emperor observing, caus'd them to be search'd out and rebuilt; and being much taken with the Pleasure of the place, built a Royal Palace and a large Town. Of these Baths there are 3, the chief of which is the very same that *Charles the Great* us'd often, with his Sons and Attendants, to swim in: It is now divided into many Apartments. These Waters rise so hot, that they cool them 12 Hours before they are us'd. There are also others in the other part of the Town, but not so hot. Near the Town are many Mines of Lead, Sulphur, Vitriol and Iron, and in the Mountains which surround the Territory of this City, abundance of *Lapis Colaminaris* is found. In 1656. a great Fire happen'd in this City, which burnt down 20 Churches and 5000 Dwellings, (by which the bigness of this Town may be guess'd at) which were quickly rebuilt, and it is now more large and beautiful. In 1668. a Treaty was held here, and Peace concluded between the Kings of *France* and *Spain*.

In the Village *Borset* or *Porsetum*, about a Furlong South from *Aken*, are many other hot Springs, which are by Pipes convey'd into 28 Baths; these Waters are even hotter than those at *Aken*.

*Duren* on the River *Roer*, 15 miles East from *Aix la Chapelle*, and 10 South from *Juliers*, is a small City, the Building neat and uniform, with a clear Stream of Water running in the middle. It was made Imperial by *Charles IV.* and burnt by *Charles V.* but being rebuilt, is now subject to the Duke of *Neu-*

*burg*. This Place pretends to great Antiquity, and according to *Cluverius*, it was the ancient *Marcodurum*.

*DUSELDORP*, *Dusseldorpium*, is a very pleasant and well fortify'd City on the Banks of the *Rhine*, 20 miles below *Cologne* to the North, and as many from *Juliers* to the North-East. It is the Metropolis of the Dukedom of *BERG*, which is extended along the Banks of the *Rhine*, about 50 miles in length, and in breadth about 20, being craggy and mountainous, and therefore not very full of Inhabitants. The City is pleasantly seated upon the *Rhine*, and adorn'd with some publick Buildings, which make a delicate Show to the River; especially the Palace of the Elector Palatine, who commonly resides here. It was anciently an Imperial City and a place of much Traffick, and the yearly Fairs, since remov'd to *Francfort*, were kept in it.

*DORTMOND*, *Tremonia* aut *Dormanía*, is seated on the River *Empfer*, almost in the midst between those of the *Lippe* and the *Roer*, scarcely distant 6 miles from both, as also from the Territories of the Bishoprick of *Munster* to the South; 30 from the City of *Munster*, 26 from *Soest* to the West, and 33 from *Dusseldorp* to the North-East. It is a Free Imperial City, and one of the *Hanse-Towns* under the Protection of the Elector of *Brandenburg*; and is a small, but rich and populous Place. It is the Metropolis of the County of *MARK*, a Country of about 40 miles in length and 20 in breadth, bounded on the North by the Rivers *Empfer* and *Lippe*, which part it from *Munster*, on the West and South by the Dutchy of *Bergen*, and on the East by *Westphalia*. The Soil is like that of *Westphalia*, not very fruitful.

*Unna*, a poor *Hanse-Town*, but formerly a place of good Trade, till the War between the Dukes of *Brandenburg* and *Neuburg* for the Right of these Countries, disturb'd and spoil'd it, stands 10 miles from *Dortmond* to the East.

*Ham*, another poor *Hanse-Town*, stands 10 miles from *Unna* to the North, on the Road between *Holland* and *Brandenburg*. The Country about it yields store of Corn, Hemp and Flax.

*Soest*, a large and populous City, seated in the neck of Land belonging to this Country that shoots into *Westphalia*, 30 miles from *Dortmond* to the East, and as many from *Munster* to the South. It is esteem'd the largest City in *Westphalia*, except *Munster*, fortify'd with a double Wall, whereon are 30 Watch-Towers, and a large deep Ditch. In it are 10 Parishes and many Churches, one of which is a Collegiate, and under the Jurisdiction of the Archbishop of *Cologne*. This City has many Privileges, and a Court of Judicature within it self, but under the Protection of the Elector of *Brandenburg*, to whom this County is subject.

*RAVENSBURG*, *Ravensberga*, a small Town, the Principal of a County, lying between *Osnabrug*, *Minden*, *Munster* and *Lippe*, stands on a Hill at the distance of 16 miles from *Osnabrug* to the South, about 25 from *Paderborn* to the North-West, and 30 from *Munster* to the East toward *Minden*.

*RAVESTEIN*, *Ravasteinum*, is a small Town seated on the River *Maes*, 20 miles West from *Cleeve*, 20 North-East from *Bolduck*, and 15 South-West from *Nimeguen*; the Capital of a small Territory, bearing the Title of a Lordship, appertaining to the Jurisdiction of the Duke of *Neuburg*, but is at present possess'd by the *Hollanders*.

The Bishoprick of *Liege* is usually reckon'd part of this Circle, but being spoken of already in the Description of the Netherlands, it must be omitted here.



# SWITZERLAND.

## CHAP. I.

Switzerland, Helvetia, or the Swiss-Cantons, together with their Allies and Subjects, in general.



**T**HIS Country was anciently inhabited by the Helvetii, a People, according to Pliny, Strabo, and Tacitus, of Gallia Celtica; who were divided into the Ambrones, Tigurini, Tuzeni,

and Urbegeni; and were bounded on the North by the Rauraci, and Vindelicia, on the East by Rhetia, on the West by the Sequani, and on the South by the Allobroges, Seduni, and Veragzi. Their Chief Towns



Towns were *Aventicum*, now *Avenches*, *Eburacum*, now *Tverdun*, *Sahodurum*, now *Soleure*, *Viscodurum*, now *Wintertthur* and *Urba*, now *Orbe*.

They were a very warlike People, and having joyn'd themselves with the *Cimbri*, had a considerable share in the Victories which those *Barbarians* obtained over the Consuls *Manlius Servilius Cepio*, and *Lucius Crassus*; but after the bloody Battle which they lost against *Marius*, the *Helvetii* retir'd into their own Country, and lived peaceably until the Time of *Julius Caesar*; and having then form'd a Design of making themselves Masters of *Gallia Celtica*, they spent two Years in making the necessary Preparations for that Expedition; and having burnt all their Towns and Villages, to cut off all Hopes of returning, took the Field, in conjunction with the *Rauraci*, *Turingi*, and *Latobriges*, their Neighbours; making in all a Body of above 90000 fighting Men, besides old Men, Women and Children. But *Caesar*, by his good Conduct and Valour did so terrifie them that they were willing to come to Articles with him; and afterwards did gain such a signal Victory over them in a pitch'd Battle, that they humbly beg'd Peace, which he granted them, on Condition that they should return to their own Country, and re-build their Towns and Villages which they had burnt. This they punctually put in execution, and were afterwards faithful and true to the *Roman* Interest.

After the Declining of the *Roman* Empire, they put themselves under the Protection of the Kings of *Burgundy*, and afterwards under that of the Kings of *France*, who sent Governors to Rule them. *Raoul* Duke of *Stavelinguen* taking advantage of *France*, when it was engaged in War with the *Normans*, made himself Master of this Country in the Reign of *Carolus Crassus*. *Raoul* the Third dying without Issue, in the Year 1027. the Emperor *Conrad* the Second, whom he left his Heir, did incorporate it with the Empire, as a Free-State; but during this Union, which was about eighty Years, the Dukes of *Zerighen*, who were descended of *Sigebert* King of *Austria*, acted rather the part of absolute Masters than Governors.

This People having been for a long time kept under, and grievously oppress'd by their Governors, resolv'd at last rather to venture all than live in perpetual Slavery. The first who began were the three small Cantons of *Ury*, *Switz*, and *Under-Walden*, commonly call'd the three *Forrest Towns*. They enjoy'd very ancient Privileges, which they pretended to have been granted them by the Emperor *Lewis*, surnam'd the *Picus*, Son of *Charles* the Great; yet so that the Emperor used to send a Judge or *Vicar* thither, who had the supreme Jurisdiction in Criminal Affairs. During the Differences between the Emperors and the Popes, the Noblemen (of whom there were a great Number in that Country) got the ascendant over the common People, and did mightily oppress their Liberty. The Divisions betwixt the Nobility and the People (the former siding with the Popes, the latter with the Emperor) grew very high, especially during the great Interregnum which happen'd after the death of the Emperor *Frederick* the Second, which breaking out into an open War, the Nobility was driven out of the Country; but by the Emperor *Rudolph's* Authority, a Reconciliation was made betwixt them, and the Nobility restor'd to their Estates. Thus these Countries did enjoy their former Liberty till the Rign of *Albert* the First, about the Year 1300.

who having conceiv'd a hatred against them, because they had sided with his Rival *Adolph* of *Nassau*, was very desirous to annex them to his Hereditary Countries. The Monasteries, and most of the Nobility having, upon his desire, submitted themselves to the Jurisdiction of the House of *Austria*, and the three above-mention'd Places refusing to do the like, they had Imperial Vicars set over them; who, contrary to ancient Custom, began to reside in strong Castles, and greatly oppress the People, whose Petitions and Complaints found no manner of Redress from the Emperor; which so encourag'd the Tyranny and Insolence of those Vicars, that *Geisler*, the Judge of *Under-Walden*, was so ridiculous as to set his Hat upon a Pole at *Altorf*, and demanded the same Respect to be paid to it as to himself; which one *William Tell* refusing to do, was ordered to shoot an Arrow through an Apple which was placed upon his own Son's Head, which he perform'd, and sav'd his Life, and by a providential Escape from the Imprisonment design'd him by the Government, had the opportunity of retiring into the mountainous part of the Country, where he skulk'd till he found an opportunity to revenge himself by the Death of *Geisler*, whom he Shot as he pass'd along the Road by those Mountains: After which the People universally express'd their Hatred against the Judges, and the three foremention'd Places entred into a Confederacy to rid themselves of this Tyranny and restore their ancient Liberty, *An.* 1307. In the Year 1315. *Leopold* Arch-Duke of *Austria*, the Son of *Albert* the First, march'd against them with an Army of 20000 Men, but was defeated near *Morgarten*. After which, they renew'd their Confederacy, and confirm'd it by solemn Oaths, that it should continue for ever; which was done at *Brun*, on the 7th of *December*, 1320. But tho' they administred their own Affairs at Home, and did not send Deputies to the Diets of the Empire, they were not declar'd Independent of the Empire till the *Westphalian* Peace, *An.* 1648: In the Year 1332. *Lucern*, and in the Year 1351. *Zurick*, entred into this Confederacy. Immediately after *Glaris*, in the Year 1352. *Zug* and *Bern*, in the Year 1481. *Friburgh* and *Solothurn*, in the Year 1501. *Basil* and *Schaffhausen*; and at last all *Appen-Zell*, were united with this Confederacy; which made up the whole Body of the *Swiss-Cantons*, consisting of thirteen Common-wealths: Whereof *Zurick*, *Bern*, *Lucern*, *Zug*, *Basil*, *Friburg*, *Solothurn*, and *Schaffhausen*, are Cities; *Ury*, *Switz*, *Under-Walden*, *Glaris*, and *Appen-Zell*, are Countries, in which are a good number of Towns and Villages. The *Switzers* (which is a general Name for them all) have also some other Confederates, viz. the Abby and City of *St. Gall*, the *Grisons*, the *Vallesins*, the Cities of *Retweil*, *Munthusen*, *Bienne*, the *Biel*, *G-neva*, and *Newburg* on the Lake; besides several Cities and Countries (which we shall treat of particularly afterwards) that are either subject to the whole Confederacy, or to some particular Common-wealths: Every one of these Cantons is absolute within it self; but they differ as to the Nature of their Government and Constitution, some being more Aristocratical, others more Democratical.

The Christian Religion is said to have been planted in this Country pretty early; and the Reformation was begun here by *Zuinglius*, who was afterwards slain in a Battle against the *Roman* Catholics.



As to the *Genius* of the People, they are generally **Honest** and **True** to their Word. Simple and Plain-dealing, without any great Cunning or By-designs, Stout and easily Provok'd, Stedfast in their Resolutions, and abundantly Valiant; which together with their Tallness and Strength of Body, has so recommended them to a great many Princes, that they have chose them for their Guards, particularly the King of *France*, who maintains a considerable Number of them. They don't care for undergoing much Hardship and Labour, and expect to have their Pay duly,

The modern Bounds of all that Country which goes under the Name of *Switzerland*, especially if you take in the Allies and Subjects of that State are different from those of the antient *Helvetia*. It is extended from South to North for the Space of about 180 Miles, from the Bailiage of *Mendrisi* to the Frontiers of *Schwaben*; and 280 from West to East, from the County of *Bormio* to Mount St. *Claude*. It is bounded on the North with *Alsace* and *Schwaben*, on the South by *Lombardy* and the Lake of *Geneva*, on the East by the County of *Tyrol*, and on the West by *Burgundy*. The whole of it may be divided into four Parts, *viz.* The 13 Cantons, the Allies, the Subjects, and Stipendiary Towns; as is to be seen in the following Table, where the Cantons are set down according to their Precedency in the General Diets.

## CHAP.



## C H A P. II.

## The SWISS CANTONS.

THE Canton of *ZURICH*, *Tigurinus Pagus*, is bounded with *Schaffhausen* on the North, *Appenzell* on the East, *Zug* and *Switz* on the South, and *Bern* and *Lucern* on the West. Its Extent South and North is about 60 Miles, and 48 from East to West. This Canton is very powerful and richer than that of *Bern*, altho' it be not so large. It is so well Peopled, that in Twenty four Hours it is able to raise Fifty thousand Men: And comprehends One and Thirty *Bailiages*; whereof there's Nine that are call'd *Great Bailiages*, and the rest *Chatellanies*. The Bayliffs and *Chatellans* that are sent to them have full Power to Judge both in Matters Civil and Criminal, and are chosen out of the Grand Council. The People of this Canton enjoy greater Privileges, and are more highly Tax'd than in most others, where the Bayliffs are in a manner absolute Masters. The great *Bailiages* are those of *Gniffensee*, *Gruningen*, *Wädischweil*, *Regensburg*, *Eglisow* upon the *Rhine*, *Andelfingen* along the River *Thur*, *Lauffen*, below the Cataracts of the *Rhine*, and *Kiburg*. The most considerable *Chatellanies* are those of *Stein* upon the *Rhine*, and *Wintethur*, upon the *Eulac*. The most considerable Towns and Villages in this Canton are.

<i>Zurich</i> , Ch. Cit.	{	<i>Andelfinger</i> .
<i>Kiburg</i> .	{	<i>Griffensee</i> .
<i>Gruningen</i> .	{	<i>Ktingenw</i> .
<i>Lauffen</i> .	{	<i>Eglisow</i> .
<i>Ru</i> .	{	<i>Regensburg</i> .
<i>Wädischweil</i> .	{	<i>Stafen</i> .

*Zurich*, *Tigurum*, *Cesar* and *Livy* place it in *Gallia Celtica* and its call'd *Turegum* by the Authors of the middle Age. It lies in the midst betwixt *Schaffhausen* and *Lucern*, about 32 Miles from either, 11 from the *Rhine* to the South, 30 South-west from *Constance*, and about 60 North from the *Alpes*, and is divided into two Parts by the River *Simath*, where it comes out of the Lake of *Zurich*. It is thought to be one of the most ancient Towns in that Country; for according to an ancient Tradition it is said to have been built sixteen Years after *Treves*. It shook off the unsupportable Yoke of its Lords in the Year, 1218. After the Death of *Berthold* 5th Duke of *Zerlingen*, and put it self under the Protection of the Emperor, upon Condition that it should never be alienated; which was confirmed by the Emperor *Richard*, in the Year, 1262; but 68 Years after, the Emperor *Lewis* of *Bavaria*, being drain'd by an expensive War, and not in a Condition to Pay, after the Battle of *Muldorf*, to *Frederick* Duke of *Austria*, the Sum which he had promis'd him to renounce his Pretences to the Empire, offered to give him the Towns of *Zurich*, *Schaffhausen*, *Rhinteild* and *Neulurg*; but the Inhabitants of *Zurich* opposing that Alienation, he was fain to give *Brifac* in lieu of it; which so enraged the Dukes of *Austria*, that they turn'd its mortal Enemies, and made as many others

so as they could, which was the principal Cause of their entering into Alliance with *Ury*, *Switz*, *Underwalden* and *Lucern*. There is in this City a noble Library, a Strong, regularly Fortified, and well furnish'd Arsenal; and several other Things very well worth the observation of a curious Traveller, particularly a fine Collection of Medals. The Lake of *Zurich* is about 24 Miles long, and 2 or 3 broad: And the River is very useful for carrying away to the *Rhine* their Manufactures, whereof that of *Crape* is the most considerable, and turns to the best Account.

*Kiburg*, *Kiburgium*, stands upon a Hill, near the River *Tess*, about 7 Miles from *Zurich*, to the East, towards *Constance*, and about half a Mile from the Ruins of *Vitodorus* or *Winterthun*. It was once famous for its Counts, who were Men of great Note.

The Canton of *BERN*, *Bernensis Pagus*, is bounded on the North with that of *Solothurn*, and a part of the Bishoprick of *Basil*, on the East with *Lucern* and *Underwald*, on the South with the *Vallais* or *Wallisland*, and the Lake of *Geneva*, and on the West with the *Franche Comte*, and the County of *Neufchatel*. It is very large and comprehends almost a third part of *Switzerland*, being in length from South-East, to North-West about 172 Miles, in breadth, from West to East, about 132. It contains 72 *Bailiages*, which comprehend the greatest part of *Nuitland*, *Argow*, and the *Pais de Vaud*. Those which lie within *Argow* and *Nuitland* do make that which is called the *German Territory*, and the *Pais Vaud*, the *French Territory*, or the *New Conquests*. The first contains 300 Parishes, the other 150. The Bailiffs who govern these *Bailiages* are nominated by the Council of 200; and are at once both Judges and Governors, and their Office continues six Years. They choose their Assessors in the Country under their Jurisdiction, and to them Appeals may be made from the *Chatellanies*; but after they have pass'd Sentence of Death, it cannot be put in execution, before it be confirm'd by the Grand Council. The Towns of greatest Note in this Canton.

<i>Bern</i> , Ch.	{	<i>Buk</i> .
<i>Laufanna</i> .	{	<i>Niou</i> .
<i>Theim</i> .	{	<i>Sana</i> .
<i>Arberg</i> .	{	<i>Aubone</i> .
<i>Vangen</i>	{	<i>Brientz</i> .
<i>Lansburg</i> .	{	<i>Valen</i> .
<i>Erlach</i> .	{	<i>Yverdon</i> .
<i>La Serre</i> .		

*Bern*, *Berna*, is seated on the Banks of the River *Aar*, between *Solothurn* and *Friburg*. It is not a large City, but very neatly built, and is said to owe its Name to a Bear which *Berthold* the 4th Duke of *Zerlingen* kill'd as he was laying the Foundations of it; for *Bern* in the Language of the Country signifies a Bear. *Berthold* the 5th finish'd it, Ann. 1191.

The



The Emperor *Frederick II.* did incorporate it with the Empire, 1291, and granted considerable Privileges to it. It did afterwards own for its Superior *Philip Earl of Savoy*, to whom it lent Communi-  
*oners*, in the Year, 1263. to Swear Fealty to him. *Philip's* Successors did afterwards restore them to their ancient Liberty, in recompence of the good Service they had done them against the Bishop of *Lausanne*, the Earls of *Neuchâg*, and *Charles the Terrible*, Duke of *Burgundy*. This City stands in a Peninsula wash'd on three sides of it by the *Aar*, the fourth being well Fortified with Bastions and Trenches. The Streets are very neat, and watered with clear Brooks running through the middle of 'em, and adorn'd on each side with Portico's, Arches and Pillars of Free-stone. The principal Church is a very noble Structure, as are also the Town-House, the Court of Chancery, the Arsenal and publick Library. In one of the Apartments of the Arsenal, which is furni'd with Arms for 4000 Men, is to be seen the Statue of *William Tell* of *Schmitz*, whom the Governor commanded to shoot an Apple off his Son's Head, with an Arrow; which with other Grievances provok'd the *Switzers* to take up Arms for asserting their Liberty.

*Lausanne*, *Lausonium* or *Laufanna*, is the chief Town of the Country of *Vaud*, and has its Name from its Situation between the Brooks *Lau* and *Anna*. It stands near the North-side of the Lake of *Geneva*, which because of the Situation of this Town is often call'd the Lake of *Lausanne*. It is 30 Miles from *Geneva* to the North-East, 64 from *Bern* to the South-West, 25 from *Friburg*, 20 from *Yverden* to the South, and 70 from *Lucern* to the West. The Situation of it is pretty odd, it being built on three Hills; and that part of it which they call *The Old Town* enjoys great Privileges, especially that of the Power of Life and Death. It was formerly a free and Imperial Town, but has been under the Jurisdiction of *Bern* since the Year, 1536. It was also an Episcopal See under the Arch-bishop of *Basle*, but after the Protestants had made themselves Masters of the Town, it was Translated to *Friburg*. There is an old Tradition pass'd among the Inhabitants, that *Hercules* in his passage from *Spain* into *Italy*, finding the Country adjacent to this Place so Fruitful and Pleasant, left some of his Troops under the Command of *Arpinthus*, who they say was the Founder of *Arpentina*, upon the Ruins of which *Lausanne* (as they say) is Built: But the Reader may believe as much of this Story as he thinks fit.

*Yverden*, *Ebrodunum*, lies in the Country of *Vaud*, upon the Lake of *Neuchâtel*, where the *Thile* runs into it, about 10 Miles from the Confines of the Country of *Burgundy*, and 15 from *Friburg*. Formerly both it and the adjacent Country was under the Jurisdiction of the Duke of *Savoy*; but in the Year 1536. it was taken by the *Bernois*, who are still Masters of it.

The Canton of *LUCERN*, *Lucernensis Pagus* borders with those of *Bern*, *Zug*, *Schmitz*, and *Underwald*. It was anciently the Country of the *Ambrones*, who having join'd the *Teutoni*, were defeated by *Marius* in the Plains of *Perriers* in *Provence*. It is divided into 12 Baillages, which are governed by the Counsellors of *Lucern*, except those of *Wiken* and *Sempach*, whose Bailiffs are choien from among the Burghers of these Towns, by the Grand Council of *Lucern*. This Canton is extended from North

to South for the space of about 43 Miles, and from West to East 32, and was united to the other confederate Cantons in the Year, 1332. The most considerable Towns in it are.

<i>Lucern</i> , Ch.	{	<i>Sauhen</i> .
<i>Sempach</i> .		<i>Wiken</i> .
<i>Suſee</i> .		<i>Wilsen</i> .
<i>Rot</i> .		<i>Herburg</i> .

*Lucern*, *Laceria* or *Lucerna*, is situated on the Lake of *Lucern*, at the Mouth of River *Rust*, 36 Miles from *Bern* to the East and 40 from the *Rhine* to the South. Some Historians say, That it was call'd *Lacucerna*, as if one should say, *Quod vicinum lacum cernat*; but there is more reason to believe, that it was so call'd from a Lanthorn, which was set up there in the Night-time to direct Travellers; for one may now see an old Tower near the Bridge, which seems to have been design'd for that use; and to confirm this Opinion, there is to be seen another Tower of the same kind near *Zurich*, which is call'd *Vallenberg*. This Town owes its Original to an Abbey which *Vigard* Brother, of *Robert*, Duke of *Swabia*, founded there. *Pepin* gave it to the Abbey of *Murbach*; and this Donation was confirmed by *Leobardus*, Ann. 850. The Abbots of *Murbach* gave it great Prerogatives; but one of their Successors sold it for 2000 Marks of Silver to *Albert* Duke of *Austria*. This Town is the ordinary Residence of the Pope's Nuncio: And from hence Goods may be carried down the *Rust* into the *Rhine*, and so to the Ocean. It was once a free and Imperial City, but united it self to the other Cantons, Ann. 1332. The Things most remarkable here are, the great Church, adorn'd with two large Steeples, an Altar beautified with fine Marble Columns, an excellent Pair of Organs and fair Cloyster. The Market-place also is both large and lately; and so is the Town-house and College of *Jesuits*, and two Bridges about 500 Paces long.

*Suſee*, stands on the Lake of *Sempach*, about 20 Miles from *Lucern* to the N. W. The *Avoyer* or Governor of it takes an Oath of Fidelity to this Canton. There is one thing peculiar to this Place from all the rest of *Switzerland*, which is, that they only make use of a Brass Cornet instead of a Trumpet; because, as they say, they had one of these presented to them by *Charles* the Great, in Recompence of the good Service they did him in the Wars against the *Sarazens*.

The Canton of *URI*, *Pagus Uranius*, or *Uronsis*, lies between the Mountains of *Crispaleberg* and *St. Gotthard*, and the River *Rust*; having the Canton of *Schmitz* to the North, those of *Underwald* and *Bern* to the West, the Valley of *Verzasco* to the South, and the *Gifſen* League with the Canton of *Gris* to the East. It is in Length, from South to North, about 60 Miles; and in Breadth from West to East, about 20. This Country belong'd anciently to the Abbey of *St. Felix*, and *St. Regulus* of *Zurich*, by the Donation of the Emperor *Lewis* the *Debonaire*, whose Daughter *Hildegade* was first Abbess of it; but it was transferr'd from the Abbesses of *St. Felix* to the Abbots of *Perſinger*; having afterwards purchas'd its Freedom by a Sum of Money, did put it self under the Protection of the Emperors, who sent Governors to it, from whose Sentence there was no Appeal in Matters Criminal, there being other Judges for Civil Causes who were assisted by certain Counsellors choien from among the



the People of the Country : And thus they continu'd so long as the Emperors let them enjoy their ancient Privileges ; but so soon as the Dukes of *Austria* began to encroach upon them, and endeavour to make themselves absolute, they took up Arms for the defence of their Liberty and Privileges, as we have said before. This Canton is divided into 10 Parts, which the Inhabitants commonly call *Gnoszaminen*, and has under its Jurisdiction these Towns,

*Altorf*, Ch. } *Ariola*.  
*Airinghusen*. } *Gessinen*.  
*Zornike*.

*Altorf* or *Altdorf*, *Altorsium*, that is to say, the old Village is seated in a Plain, near the River *Russ* at the Foot of the *Alps*, about 12 Miles from *Lucern* to the South East, and about 24 from *Schwitz* to the South. It is a very fine and delightful Place, the Houses being very near, and the Streets well pav'd ; and there being so many Gardens and Country-houses round about it, it affords a most lovely Prospect ; and which contributes to its Greatness. and helps to encrease its Riches, is, that the Courts of Justice for the whole Canton are held in it. But it is a Place of very difficult Access, by reason it stands at the bottom of the dangerous Precipices of the Mountain *St. Godard* ; near to which four considerable Rivers, *viz.* the *Russ*, the *Tessin*, the *Rhone*, and the *Rhone* have their Source. Besides this, there are under the Jurisdiction of this Canton, that which the Ancients call'd *Leopontiorum Vallis*, and now by the French call'd *la Valle de Liviner*, situate at the Foot of those Hills which the Italians call *Monte di San Bernardino*, which is govern'd by a Bail ff, that is chang'd every third Year, and is Judge in all the Affairs, together with Assessors, who are chosen from among the Inhabitants. The Inhabitants of *Mont St. Godard* are also subject to this Canton.

The Canton of *SCHWITZ*, *Suitienfis Pagus*, is bounded on the North with those of *Zurich* and *Zug*, on the West by *Lucern* and *Underwald*, on the South by that of *Uri* and part of *Glaris*, and on the East by the same Canton of *Glaris*, and the Bailiage of *Gastellen* and *Ulzenach*, and is extended from North to South about 28 Miles, and from East to West about 36. The whole Country that now goes under the Name of *Switzerland*, has its Denomination from hence ; either because the Wars which these People began for recovering their Liberty took their Rise here ; or because they first entered into a Confederacy for that end in this Place. The Inhabitants of it pretend to be descended from the *Cimbri* ; but I am apt to believe that it is much easier for them to say than to prove this. This Canton is divided into 6 Parts, and the most considerable Towns in it are,

*Schwitz*, Ch. } *Wag*.  
*Kusnach*. } *Grinow*.  
*Elriselden*. } *Eumchen*.

*Schwitz*, *Suitia*, is only a large Village standing on the Banks of the River *Muse*, in a Valley surrounded with Hills, which for the most part are cover'd with Snow ; about 2 miles from the Lake of *Lucern*, 10 from the Town of the same Name to the East ; and as many from *Glaris*. This little Town was once an Imperial and Free one ; but it ceas'd to be so in the Year 1315.

The Canton of *UNDERWALD*, which by Geographers is commonly call'd *Sylvania*, or *Sylva-*

*nienfis Pagus*, from a Forest of Oak Trees which divides it into two Parts, *viz.* *Above* and *Below* the Wood. The whole Canton has its Name from the latter, *Underwald* being no other than *sub sylva*, or under the Wood. It lies between *Schwitz* and *Lucern* to the North, between the Provinces of *Lucern* and *Bern* to the West and South, and that of *Uri* to the East ; and is extended North and South 32 Miles East and West 24. *Leopold* Duke of *Austria* invaded this Country *An.* 1336. and was defeated ; Nevertheless he attempted it again, with an Army of 15000 Men, and march'd as far as *Navalia*, but was again worsted by a handful of the Inhabitants of *Glaris* and *Schwitz*, and forc'd to leave the Field, with the loss of 3000 Men. Since which time these People have retain'd their Liberty. This Canton contains no very great Towns ; but those of greatest Note are,

*Stantz*, Ch. } *Liungeren*.  
*Krientz*. } *Bakerriet*.  
*Sarnen*. } *Hamstade*.  
*Engelberg*.

*Stantz*, *Stantia*, is no more than a large Village near the Lake of *Lucern*, at the Foot of the Mountains, about 12 Miles from the Town of *Lucern*, to the South East. In this Place the Great Seal of the Canton us'd to be kept.

The Canton of *ZUG*, *Tugienfis Pagus*, is bound-ed with that of *Zurich* on the North, that of *Schwitz* on the East and South, and that of *Lucern* on the West. Its Breadth and Length are much about one, neither exceeding 12 Miles. It was anciently govern'd by Lords of its own ; but afterwards came under the Jurisdiction of the Dukes of *Austria* ; whose insupportable Yoke it threw off with the rest, in the Year 1352. that is 44 Years after *Schwitz*, *Uri*, and *Underwald* had done so. It comprehends 6 Bailiages, and the most remarkable Towns in it are,

*Zug*, Ch. } *Egen*.  
*Cham*. } *Rische*.  
*Bar*. } *Oberwil*.

*Zug*, *Tugium*, is a pretty little Town, standing on a Lake of the same Name, at the Foot of a Hill, some part of which produces good store of Grapes, the rest is Pasture Ground and Wood, which affords plenty of Game. It is 12 Miles from *Lucern* to the East, and 18 from *Zurich* to the South.

The Canton of *GLARIS*, *Glarenensis Pagus*, is bounded with the River of *Limath* on the North, the *Grisons* on the East and South, and the Cantons of *Schwitz* and *Uri* on the West. It is about 30 Miles North and South, and 25 East and West, *Ursus* and *Landolph*, who were Lords of it, gave this Country to the Abbey of *Seckingen* ; to which the Inhabitants paid the tenth and hundredth Parts of their Rents ; but the Mayoralty depended on the Emperor. The Emperor *Barbarossa* gave it to *Otto*, Count Palatine of *Burgundy* ; and from his Posterity it pass'd to the House of *Hapsburg* ; and from thence to that of *Austria*. This Canton is partly Popish, partly Protestant, which is the cause of frequent Squabbles betwixt them ; and therefore it is appointed that such Differences shall be decided by Judges, two thirds of whom are of the Defendant's Persuasion. The most considerable Towns in this Canton are,



Glaris, Ch. } Nestel.  
 Wesen. } Elin.  
 Urnen. } Quart.

*Glaris*, *Glarona* or *Clarena*, stands in a Valley of the same Name, upon the River *Sarnegg*, surrounded by the Mountains call'd *Glerenschberg*, 18 Miles from *Aarau* to the North East, as many from *Schwitz* to the South East, and 30 from *Cour* or *Choir*. The Inhabitants are reckon'd the wisest People in *Switzerland*.

The Canton of *BASIL*, lies betwixt *Brissgow*, the Canton of *Lucern*, the Bishoprick of *Basil*, and *Sungow*. It is of no great Extent, containing only 5 Bailiages, and about 30 Parishes, and is entirely Protestant. The most considerable Towns and Villages are,

*Basil*, Ch. } *Veltemburg*.  
*Dagst*. } *Grolingen*.  
*Dornach*. } *Dirmenach*.  
*Augst*. } *Belingen*.  
*Leichstall*. } *Videstein*.  
*Manchstein*. } *Ramstein*.  
*Hamburg*.

*Basil*, or *Bale*, *Basilea*, stands upon the *Rhine*, on the Confines of *France* and the Empire, about 24 Miles from *Friburg*, 64 from *Constance* to the West, 48 from *Zurich*, and 56 from *Strasbourg* to the South. It is thought to have rise from the Ruins of the old *Augusta Rauracorum* or *Raurica*, some Vestigia of which are still to be seen near the Village *Augst*, about 7 Miles distant from it to the East. *Cluverius* thinks it was formerly call'd *Arialbinum*; but it owes its Name of *Basilea* to *Julian* the Apostate, who would have it call'd so in Honour of his Mother *Basilina*. The Romans sent a Colony to it under the Conduct of *Munatius Plancus*, and the Emperor *Gratian* did greatly enlarge it. The Hungarians having ruin'd it, the Emperor *Henry* the Second, caus'd it to be re-built, *An*. 1010. and granted such Privileges to those who would set up there, that in a little time it became considerable. There was a Council held here, *An*. 1431. under Pope *Eugenius* the Fourth, and was adorn'd with an University 1460. The *Rhine* divides it into two unequal Parts. That which lies on the German side, is call'd the Lesser, and is not much above the fourth Part of the whole Town, and is join'd to the other by a large Stone Bridge. It was formerly an Episcopal See, suffragan to the Bishop of *Bisanzien*; but since the Protestant Religion got footing there, the Bishops have been oblig'd to live at *Bronschus*, or *Parentau* (as the French call it) upon the Confines of the Higher *Alsace*. The most remarkable Things in this City are, the Cathedral Church of *St. Mary*, the Arsenal, and their Guildhalls, and the curious Paintings in the *Dominicans* Cloyster, and the University; where, besides many others, *Des. Erasmus*, *Amerbachius*, and *Joh. Buxorf* were educated. There are also several considerable Libraries, and some fine Collections of Medals, particularly that of *Mr. Sebastian Fisch*. The Repository also of *Erasmus* and *Amerbachius*, belonging to the University, in which are preserv'd 20 Original Draughts of the famous Painter *Holben*, a Native of this City. There is also in the Publick Library a rare Manuscript Copy of *Virgil*, and another of the *Alcoran*, written on China Paper. Ordinary Paper is said to have been first made here, by *Antony* and *Michael Galician*, *An*. 1417. And Printing was first begun here by *Bernard Rickel*, 1478. And the Reformation advanc'd by *Oecolampadius*,

1522. *Erasmus* died, and was buried here in July, 1536. aged 70 Years. This Town is well fortified.

The Canton of *FRIBURG*, *Friburgensis Pagus*, is surrounded almost by that of *Bern*, and is divided into two Parts by the River *Sane*. It comprehends 19 Bailiages, 5 of which are about *Friburg*, the rest are in *Nutland*; among which is that of *Gruyeres*, which was once the Residence of the Counts of that Name; the last of whom sold it to *Bern* and *Friburg*, who divided it, *An*. 1554. And it is to be observ'd, that the Earls of *Gruyeres* were Vassals of the Duke of *Savoy*, and always paid him Homage for the Lordships of *Leuanel*, *Gringin*, *Granges*, *Chatelard*, *Molin* and *Treves*. It join'd in Confederacy with the rest, *An*. 1481. The Towns of greatest Note are,

*Friburg*, Ch. } *Corbert*.  
*Romont*. } *Rut*.  
*Gruyeres*. } *Peterlingen*.  
*Tavernach*. } *Montenach*.

*Friburg*, *Friburgum*, stands upon the River *Sane*, in a very pleasant Country, about 28 Miles from *Solothurn* to the South, 24 from *Lausanne*, and 9 from *Bern* to the South West. It was built in the Year 1179. by *Berthold* the Fourth, Duke of *Zeringen*, who also built *Friburg* in *Brissgow*. It was for some time possess'd by those descended from him; but after the Death of *Berthold* the Fifth, who was the last of that Race, *An*. 1218. it came into the Hands of the Earls of *Kiburg*. *Eberhard* Count of *Hapsburg* became Master of it, *An*. 1260. and in the Year 1277. sold it to the Emperor *Rodolphus*, for four thousand Marks of Silver. Some time after it did redeem it self from under the Sovereignty of the House of *Austria*, and put it self under the Jurisdiction of the Duke of *Savoy*, by an Act of the 10th of June, 1450. upon Condition that he should preserve and maintain them in the full use of their Privileges; but afterwards there happening some Difference betwixt *Yoland* Duchess of *Savoy* and them, upon the account of some Money which she was oblig'd to pay them, they shook off that Yoke, *An*. 1477, and for the better securing of their Liberty, enter'd into a Confederacy with the rest, *An*. 1487. The most remarkable Things in it are, its Piazza's and publick Buildings, as the Cathedral with its high Altar, the Town-house, and high Tower, the Fountain with its Basin and Foot, a Commendary of *Malta*, and several Churches and Convents of *Jesuits*, and a College of these founded by *Petrus Canisius*, who died *An*. 1597. The 2d. of May, and the 22. of June are observ'd as great Festivals in this Place, for two signal Victories obtain'd over *Charles* Duke of *Burgundy* on these Days. But the Reader must not confound this Town with another of that Name in *Brissgow*, which was taken by the French, under the Conduct of *Mar. de Crequi*, from the House of *Austria*, *An*. 1677 and restor'd by the Treaty of *Nimiguen*, *An*. 1679.

The Canton of *SOLOTHURN*, or *Soleure*, *Salodorusensis Pagus*, is bounded on the North by that of *Basil*, and part of *Alsace*, on the West by the Bishoprick of *Basil*, and on the South and East by the Canton of *Bern*. It is divided into 12 Bailiages, and the most considerable Towns in it are,

*Solothurn*, Ch. } *Leingen*.  
*Osten*. } *Balslem*.



*Solothurn* which the *French* and Inhabitants commonly call *Soleure*, stands upon the River *Aar*; and as it is a delightfully situated Town, so it is thought to be one of the most ancient in that Country. It stands betwixt *Basil* and *Friburg*, about 28 Miles from either, and 20 from *Bern*. It is said to have been built at first by some of the ancient Kings of *Gaul*; but this Opinion has no other Foundation than that of an old Inscription, which calls it *The Sister of Treves*. Some Historians say, That it owes its Name to an old Tower, which is still to be seen there, call'd *Soloturn*; that is, the Tower of the San. Queen *Bertha* gave this Town to a Chapter that she founded there. It came afterwards under subjection to the Bishop of *Geneva*; and after that was an Imperial Town, and then subject to the Empire, whose Yoke it at last shook off, and entered into a Confederacy with the other Cantons, *An.* 1481. In the Year 1531. the People of this Place were pretty well dispos'd to receive the Protestant Religion; but a popular Commotion arising on that account, the Mass was re-establish'd, and so they still persist in their Superstition. Bishop *Burnet* gives an account of them and their Religion in his Letters. In their great Church they have God the Father represented as an old Man with a black Beard, with Jesus Christ on his Knees, and a Dove over his Head. Superstition equal to, if not exceeding, that of the wildest Heathens. The Houses of this Town are very fair, and the Streets large, adorn'd with many Fountains. There is also a stately Church, and a College of Jesuits, towards the Building of which, the present King of *France*, *Lewis XIV.* gave 10000 Livres. The Fortifications likewise are very strong, and have cost a vast Sum of Money, being all of very fine and large Stones.

The Canton of *SCHAFFHAUSEN*, *Scaphusianus Pagus*, is bounded on the West with the *Black-Forest*, on the South with the Canton of *Zurich*, on the East with *Turgau*, and on the North with *Schwaben*. It is but of small Extent, not exceeding 12 Miles North and South, and about 20 East and West. The Chief Towns in it are,

*Schaffhausen*, Ch. } *Newkilch*.  
*Herblingen*. } *Halaw*.

*Schaffhausen*, *Scaphusia*, stands upon the *Rhine*, on the *German* side, about 4 Miles from *Constance* to the West, 2 from the Lake of *Zell*, 6 from *Basil*, and 4 from *Zurich* to the North. It is sometimes call'd *Probalopolis*, because it has a Sheep for its Arms, which is also stamp'd on its Coin. It owes its beginning to an Abbey founded there by *Eberard* Count of *Nellenberg*, about the Year 1052. in honour of *All Saints*. The Emperor *Frederick II* made it a Free and Imperial City, in which the Abbey enjoy'd great Privileges. In the Year 1320. the Emperor *Lewis* of *Bavaria* engag'd it, together with *Rhinseid*, *Newburg* and *Brisac*, to *Frederick le Bel* Duke of *Austria*; but about 80 Years after the Emperor *Sigismund* restor'd it to its Liberty. It entered into a League with *Zurich* and *St. Gall*, *An.* 1424. and with *Zurich*, *Bern*, *Lucern*, *Switz*, and some other Cantons, *An.* 1501. The Reformation was carry'd on by *Jacobus Riegius* and others, *An.* 1520. The

Cataracts of the *Rhine* oblige the Vessels that come from the Lake of *Constance* to unload their Merchandise in this Town; which are put on Board again below it, where the Stream becomes more gentle. The Streets of it are broad, and the Houses for the most part painted without, as in many places of *Switzerland*. At the upper end of the Town stands a large Tower, which, they say, the *French* King keeps in Repair, according to a Treaty of Alliance with the *Swiss*; it has a good number of Guns mounted on it, but serves more for Ornament than Defence of the Town.

The Canton of *APPENZEL*, *Abbatifellensis*, lies betwixt the Abbey of *St. Gall* and the *Rhine*, which separates it from the *Grisons*, having the Republick of *Leichtenstein* on the West, and the Country of *Rhental* on the East, about 30 Miles long, and 24 broad. It is divided into 12 Communities, which they call *Roden*. There are 6 of 'em call'd by the *French*, *Les Oudres du dedans*, that is, the *Inner Appenzel*; the other are nam'd, *Les Order du dehors*, or *Outer Appenzel*. This Country is so call'd from a Town of that Name. Both Papists and Protestants are tolerated in this Canton, as in that of *Glaris*. It formerly depended on the Abbey of *St. Gall*, and entered into the general League with the other Provinces, *An.* 1353. The Protestants possess the *Outer*, and the Papists the *Inner Appenzel*. It is the last in order of all the 13 Cantons, and contains these Towns,

*Appenzel*, Ch.

*Gonten*.

*Urnaschen*.

*Appenzel*, *Abbatifcella*, is a rich and populous Town, situated near the Source of the small River *Sintra*, near 30 Miles from *Chur*, about 16 from *St. Gall*, and 30 from *Constance*. It was formerly the Residence of the Abbots of *St. Gall*; but the Inhabitants redeem'd themselves from under the Jurisdiction of those with a good Sum of Money, at a Treaty concluded at *Constance* with *Cunon de Stoufen*, Abbot of *St. Gall*, by the Emperor *Robert's* Mediation; and for the better Security of their Liberty, entered into a League with the Cantons of *Uri*, *Schwitz*, *Underwald* and *Lucern*. The Abbots of *St. Gall* protested against this Alliance; and *Henry* of *Mandorf* renew'd his Pretensions at the Emperor's Court, *An.* 1425. and had them declar'd Enemies to the Empire. The People of *Appenzel* were not much troubled at this, but march'd into the Territories, demolish'd some Castles, and oblig'd him to make Peace. Not long after the Abbot of *St. Gall* entered into a Confederacy with the Nobility of *Constance* against them; but their Troops were beat; and the *Appenzelins* made themselves Masters of *Rhental*, and oblig'd the Lords of *Rangewil*, who held that Valley by Engagement, to part from their Right for 6000 Crowns. In the Year 1457. they made a perpetual Alliance with the 7 other Cantons, and did considerable Service against the Dukes of *Austria* and *Burgundy*; and at last in the Year 1513. they were receiv'd into the number of the 13 Cantons.



## C H A P. III.

*The Allies of the Switzers.*

## The G R I S O N S or G R A U B U N D E N.

**T**HE Country of the *Grisons* is a part of the ancient *Rætia*, the old Inhabitants of which, a Savage People, were subdu'd by *Drusus* and *Tiberius*, in the Time of *Augustus* and was call'd *Rætia Prima* by the *Romans*, who govern'd it by a President that depended upon the *Præfectus Prætorio* of *Italy*. This Province being ravag'd by the *Germans*, and afterwards expos'd to the Irruptions of the *Babarians*, submitted it self to the Emperors of the West. The People of this Country, being born Soldiers, have often list'd themselves in the Service of foreign Princes, especially the Kings of *France*. In the Year, 555. they assist'd *Chilperic* against the *Lombards*: And serv'd *Thierry* King of *Burgundy* in the Year, 616. *Charlemain* had many of them in his Service, in his War with the *Saxons*: And under the first Kings of the third Race, we find them in many Battles against the Enemies of *France*. *Lewis XI.* employ'd them in his conquest of *Burgundy*. *Charles the VIII.* in the Kingdom of *Naples*. *Lewis XII.* when he attack'd the Dutchy of *Milan*. *Frances the I.* did comprehend them in the Treaty of *Perpetual Peace*, which he made with the *Swiss*, Ann. 1516. and was renew'd by some of his Successors; but *Lewis XIV.* excluded them, Ann. 1663.

This Country is bounded with *Swabia* on the North, *Tirol* on the East, the State of *Venice* and the *Milanese* on the South, and *Switzerland* on the West. It is a mountainous and barren Country, which obliges them to bring Corn from the *Milanese* for their Subsistence (altho they might have as much as they have occasion for from *Alsace* and the State of *Venice*) which makes them adhere so much to the Interest of *Spain*.

The *Grisons* in general make up a Commonwealth, which is commonly call'd the *Grison Leagues*; because it is compos'd of Three lesser Leagues; each of which has its own Laws and Jurisdiction, and forms a particular State, whose Government is popular. The first is that which the *French* call *La Ligue haute, ou Grise*, the *Upper League*, which comprehends 23 Communities; whereof 18 are Popish, and 10 Protestant. Each Community is a little sort of State by it self, and the People of it meet every Year to choose their Judges, whom they call *Amman*s, who determin in all Matters Criminal and Civil, and from whom there is an Appeal to the Assembly of the League. The Second is the League of the *House of God* or *Cadee*, which the *Germans* call *Gotteshpunt*, which comprehends 24 Communities almost all Protestant. The Third is the League of the *ten Jurisdictions*, which the *Germans* call *Zehen Gerichtenpant*, and the *French*, *les dix Droitures*. These three Leagues entred into a perpetual Alliance in the Year, 1437. and the Sovereignty is represented by a *Diet*, which meets sometimes at *Tanz* in the *Grison League*, sometimes at *Chur* in the *Cadee*, and sometimes at *Davas* in the *Ten Jurisdictions*. It consists of 67 Deputies, viz. 28 from the First League, 24 from the Second, and 15 from

the Third, who must all be Men known to be true to their Country, and who have no Pension from, or are in the Service of any Prince. When any Affair of great Importance happens, which requires speedy Dispatch, it is remitted to the Senate, which is made up of the principal Magistrates, and the chief Men of the three Leagues, viz. the *Grand Prevot* of the *Grison League*, the *Burgomaster* of *Chur* for the *Cadee*, and the *Amman* of *Davas*, for the *Ten Jurisdictions*; but their Resolutions must be confirm'd by the Communities.

The *Grisons* possess likewise the *VALTELINE*, and the Counties of *Chiavenna* and *Bormio*, ancient Dependences of the Dutchy of *Milan*; which *Maximilian Sforza*, Duke of *Milan* gave them in recompence of their good Service done him; and which *Francis I.* afterwards confirm'd to them. Of these we shall treat particularly afterwards.

The *GRISON League*, is bounded with the Canton of *Glaris* on the North, that of *Uri* on the West, the 4 Governments of *Italy* on the South, and the ten Commonalties on the East, and has within it these Towns,

*Ilantz*, Cap. } } *Flintz*,  
*Dissentis*. } } *Splagen*.

*Ilantz*, a small Town upon the *Rhine*, about 15 Miles from *Chur* to the South-west, wherein the Assemblies of the three Leagues meet.

The League of *Cadee* or *Gotteshpunt*, is bounded on the North with the *Ten Commonalties* and the Province of *Tirol*, on the South with the Country of *Chiavenna*, on the West with the *Grison League*, and on the East with the Country of *Bormio*. The most considerable Towns in it are,

*Chur*, Cap. } } *Vesprum*.  
*Cassaccia*. } } *Bergon*.

*Chur*, *Curia*, by the *French* call'd *Coire*, is the chief City of this League, and the most considerable Town in the *Grison Territories*, seated at the Foot of two Mountains, on the Banks of the little River *Plesur*, about a mile and a half from the *Rhine*, 26 miles from *Chiavenna* to the North, 41 from *Altorf* to the East, and 60 from *Constance* to the South. It was formerly defended by the Castles of *Marsoil* and *Imburg*, and was a free Imperial Town till the Year, 1498. The Bishop of *Chur* is a Prince of the Empire: And his Revenues were formerly very considerable, the greatest part of the League of *Gotteshpunt* depending on him. But the most part of the Commonalties of that League redeem'd their dependance with a Sum of Money, and the rest shook off the Yoke upon the change of Religion; so that his Revenue is not now above Sixteen Thousand *Livres per Annum*.

The League of the *TEN JURISDICTIONS*, *Fædus decem Jurisdictionum*, viz. *Taffas*, or *Davas*, *Alfenau* or *Belfort*, *Churwalden*, *Langwis*, *S. Peter*, the *Abby* in *Perigow*, *Schiers*, *Langquart* and *Musenfeld*. The first eight of these belong'd to the House of



of *Austria*, by a Donation made in the Year, 1489. by *Gaudens* Count of *Amat*, who was Heir to the Counts of *Toggenburg*, who succeeded the Barons of *Varz*. The other two belong'd to the Counts of *Toggenburg*, from whom the Counts of *Brandis* did purchase them. Their principal Town is *Davas*, which stands on a Lake about 20 Miles from *Chur*, to the North-East.

The *VALTELINE*, *Vallis Tellina*, or *Volturena Vallis*, is a part of *Rhetia propria*, anciently inhabited by the *Vennones*. It is a long and pleasant Valley, stretch'd out betwixt the Lake of *Como* and *Tirol*. It owes that Name to the Castle of *Tell*, situated on the top of a Hill, whose foot is wash'd by the *Adda*. It is bounded by the *Grisons* on the North, *Tirol* on the East, the State of *Venice* on the South, and the *Milanese* on the West. The Soil of it is very Fertile, and the Country well Peopled. It is ordinarily divided into 3 Parts, or *Terziaria*, which the *Italians* call, *il Terzero di Sopra*, or the upper third Part, *Terzero di Mezzo*, or the middle, and *Terzero di Sotto*, or the lower. In the First of these is *Tirano*, in the Second *Sondrio*, and in the Third *Morbegno*.

*Tirano*, *Tiranum*, the chief Town of this Province, is seated on the Banks of the River *Adda*, about 6 Miles from the Frontiers of *Italy* and Territories of *Venice*, 85 South East from the Lake of *Constance*, and 50 from *Chur* to the South-West. It has eleven Communities depending on it.

*Sondrio*, *Sondrium* or *Sondrisum*, the chief Town of this Part of the *Valtelline*, stands also upon the *Adda*, where it receives the Brook *Maler*, almost in the middle between *Tirano* to the East, and *Morbegno* to the West, 37 Miles from *Chur* to the South, and 40 from the Head of the *Rhine* to the East. It is the Place of greatest Strength in all the *Valtelline*; and the Captain of the *Valtelline*, who is both first Administrator of Justice and Commander in chief of the Forces, keeps his ordinary Residence there. He can substitute a Deputy to determine Causes both Civil and Criminal, but there lies an Appeal from him to the General Diet of the *Grisons*.

*Morbegno*, *Morbonium*, a little Town, in this Valley, about 8 Miles from the Lake *Como*, and 16 from *Sondrio* to the North-East, on it there depends eleven Communities.

The *Spaniards* have, since the beginning of this Century, attempted several times to make themselves Masters of this Valley, that they might the more easily bridle the *Grisons*, and secure the Communication betwixt the Territories of the House of *Austria* in *Germany*, with those of that House in *Italy*, but the *French* have not suffer'd them to keep possession of it.

The County of *CHIAVENNA*, *Comitatus Clavennae*, which is of no great extent, is bounded on the North and West by the *Grison League*, on the South by the 4 Governments of *Italy*, and on the East by the *Valtelline*. It is divided into two *Bailiages*, viz. *Chiavenna* and *Pleury*.

*Chiavenna*, *Clavenna*, is a little Town upon the River *Maira*, at the foot of the Mountains, which a little below falls into the Lake of *Como*; it is delightfully Situated, and very well Built. It was once much larger than it is now, but about Five hundred Years ago, all the north Part of it was Buried in the Ruins of a Mountain. The like sad Accident befel the Town of *Pleury*, on the 25th of *August*,

1618. It was not so large a Town as *Chiavenna*; but the Houses were finer, insomuch that it pass'd for one of the finest Towns in *Italy*; but the Inhabitants were horribly leud and debauch'd, and so drew down that heavy Judgment upon themselves.

The County of *BORMIO*, *Bormiensis Comitatus*, by the *Italians* call'd *il Contado di Bormio*, is bounded on the North and West by *Cardee*, on the West by the *Valtelline*, on the South by the *Venetian* Dominions. It is surrounded with inaccessible Mountains, and divided into 5 *Bailiages*, which they call *Communities*, or *Neighbourhoods*.

*Bormio*, *Bormium*, is the Chief Town of the County of that Name, and is otherwise call'd *Worms* by the *Germans*. It stands on the *Adda*, 3 Miles from its Spring, near the entrance of the *Valtelline*, and the South side of the River *Oglio*, 40 Miles from *Chiavenna* to the East, near 50 West from *Trent* to the West, and 50 from *Chur* to the South-East.

The ABBEY OF *S. GAL*, *Fanum Sancti Galli* or *Respublica Sancti Galli*. This Abbey, from which the Country has its Name, was founded in *Turgow*, in the Reign of *Dagobert*, by one *Gal*, a *Scotchman*, who having successfully preach'd the Gospel in those Parts, about the Year, 630. refused, as they say, the Bishoprick of *Constance*, and retir'd into a Desert, and was followed by a great many People, and founded this Monastery, or rather it was built afterwards in Honour of him. *Sigebert* King of *Austria* bestowed great Revenues on it. About 80 or 100 Years after, the King of *France* erected it into an Abbey, and gave the Monks the Privilege of choosing their own Abbots. *Omer* having been chose Abbot, and finding *St. Gal's* Rules to be a little too rigid, chang'd them for those of *St. Bennet*. Several of the Bishops of *Constance* enjoy'd that Dignity, till the Monks growing jealous of the Bishop's Authority, resolv'd to own none for their Governour, but their own Abbots. *Udo* of *Alsace* was made a Prince of the Empire by the Emperor *Philip*, and extended his Dominions considerably. *Cunon* of *Stouffen* had great Differences with the People of *Appenzel*, who had redeem'd themselves from under his Sovereignty. *Henry* of *Mandorff* renew'd his Pretensions at the Emperor *Sigismund's* Court, Ann. 1425. But *Gasperd* of *Landenberg*, a Man of greater Temper and Moderation than his Predecessors, knowing very well that those Pretensions would be the ground of a perpetual War, did renounce them, by the Alliance which was made with the Cantons of *Zurich*, *Lucern*, *Schwitz* and *Glaris*, in the Year, 1454. This Territory lies on the North of the Cantons, and on the Banks of the Lake of *Constance*.

The Town of *S. GAL* has its Name from an Abbey, which we have describ'd. It stands in *Turgow*, 3 Mile from the Lake of *Constance*, and 12 from *Lindaw* to the West. The Emperor *Frederick* I. made it an Imperial City, and bestow'd upon it great Privileges, which were confirm'd by the Emperor *Frederick* II. Ann. 1220 it redeem'd itself with a Sum of Money, and entred in'o Alliance with the Cantons of *Zurich*, *Bern*, *Lucern*, *Schwitz*, *Zug* and *Glaris*, in the Year, 1454. The Government of this Town is in the Hands of a Society of the Nobility, and six Companies of *Tribuns* of the People; the first of which is that of the Weavers, because *Linnen Cloth* is the greatest and most profitable



table Commodity of that Country. Out of all these Companies there are 90 Chosen, 66 of whom make up the Grand Council, and 24 the Lesser. The former meets five times a Year; the other every *Tuesday* and *Thursday*, except Holy-days and Fair-days. There are several other Courts of Justice, particularly one for inspecting the Cloth; which as we have said, is their greatest Manufacture.

Besides this, the Abbot of *St. Gal* possesses the Country of *Toggenburg*, the Seignorie and Town of *Gerskufzule* in *Turgow*, and several other Places in *Rhental*.

The Country of *VALAIS*. *Vallesia*, by the  *Germans* called *Wallisserland* and *Valinfa*, by some Writers of the middle Age, the ancient Seat of the *Seduni* and *Veragri*, a People of *Gallia Narbonensis*, lies among the Alps, between *Switzerland* on the North and East, the *Milan* and the Dutchy of *Acust* on the South, and *Savoy* on the West. It is divided into the Higher and Lower; the Higher is divided into 7 Parts, call'd *Dizains* by the *French*, and *Zenden* by the *Germans*. The Lower, which lies to the West of the other, is divided into six Parts or Communities, called *Bannieres*, according to *Piatina*. They entered into Alliance with the Cantons of *Lucern*, *Uri* and *Underwald*, in the Year, 1446. and with that of *Bern*, 1475. at last the Bishop of *Sion* and the other *Dizains*, have entered into and confirmed a particular Alliance with the seven Popish Cantons, by the Treaties made in the Years 1553, 1600 and 1634. This Country is a large, pleasant and fruitful Valley, surrounded with Hills and Rocks, having but one Passage into it, where there are two Gates and a Castle. It produces plenty of Corn, Saffron, Grapes and other Fruits; also some Mines, and Springs of Mineral Water. It is reckoned to be 80 Miles long, and between 10 and 20 broad. The most considerable Towns in it are,

*Sion*, Cap.  
*Martinach*.  
*St Maurice*.

*Sion*, *Sedunum*, anciently a Town in *Gallia Narbonensis*, posses'd by the *Seduni*. and now called *Sitten* by the *Germans*, stands upon the River *Sitte*, which throws it self into the *Rhone* a little below. It is situated in a delightful Plain, overlook'd by a Hill of a moderate height, on the East-side. The Hill rises up with two Tops; upon the highest of which *Majoria*, as they call it, there is a Fortrefs, where the Bishop for the most part resides. Upon the other top is the Fortrefs call'd *Valeria*, and the Third call'd *Tubison*, is a Fortrefs built upon the top of the *Majoria*. This Town is distant from *Bern* to the South about 55 Miles, from *Geneva* 65, to the East, and 100 from *Milan* to the West. It belongs to the Bishop ever since the Donation made by *Charlemain* to *Theodisius*, who then govern'd that Church. *Adrian* of *Ribemont* made an Alliance with the Seven Catholick Cantons, in the Year, 1533. chiefly for the sake of their Religion.

*Martinack*, or *Martigny*, the ancient *Oledurum* or *Oledurus*, as *Rhenanus* and *Simlerus* think, a Town in *Gallia Narbonensis*, according to *Cesar*, tho' there was another *Oledurum* in *Hispania Tarraconensis*. It stands upon the little River *Dranse*, which falls into the *Rhone* a little below. There are to be seen the Ruins of a strong and very fine Castle; and here they say it was that the *Theban Legion* call'd *Fulminatrix*, whereof *St. Maurice* was Chief,

was first decimated, and afterwards cut in Pieces, under the Emperor *Dioclesian*, for not assisting at the Pagan Sacrifices, and embracing that Religion. It lies 12 Miles to the West from *Sion*, 30 to the North from *Acuste* in *Piedmont*, and 20 East from the Lake of *Geneva*.

The Country of *NEUCHATELL*, called *New stat* by the *Germans*, lies extended for the space of about 22 Miles, between the Mountains *Jura* on the West, which separates it from *France* and *Burgundy*, and the Lakes of *Neufchatell* and *Bien* on the East, which divide it from the Canton of *Bern*, and between *Basil* on the North, and *Lausanna* on the South. *Memphis* was Count of *Neufchatell* about the Year 815; but to trace down the Succession from him to this present time, would be tedious; and therefore we shall only put the Reader in mind, That *Johanna* of *Hochberg*, Heiress of *Neufchatell*, having married *Lewis* of *Orleans* Duke of *Longueville*, about the Year 1504. translated that Country into this Family. *Francis* his Son dying without Issue, 1551. *Leonor* of *Orleans*, Marquis of *Rotelin*, his Cousin, succeeded him; *James* of *Savoy*, Duke of *Nemours*, Son of *Philip* and *Charlotte* of *Orleans*, Sister of *Lewis* Duke of *Longueville*, laid claim to the half of the Country, which *Leonor* would have consented to, but the States of that Country would not allow it, because they could not endure to have two Masters. Thus the Matter stood undecided for some time, till the Year 1557. that the Estates summon'd the Dukes of *Longueville* and *Nemours* before the Council of *Bern*, where it was concluded, That the Country of *Neufchatell* should remain intirely in the Possession of the Duke of *Longueville*; and that the Duke of *Nemours* should have 2000 Livres a Year in Land, in the Dutchy of *Burgundy*, and 2000 Crowns from the Town of *Neufchatell*. *Leonor* left by *Mary* of *Bourbon*, *Henry I.* who had by *Katharine* of *Gonzague*, *Henry II.* who died, An. 1663. leaving by his first Marriage with *Louisa* of *Bourbon*, Daughter of *Charles* of *Bourbon*, Count of *Soissons*, *Mary* of *Orleans*, who was married to *Henry* of *Savoy*, Duke of *Nemours*, in the Year 1657. *Henry II.* took for his second Wife *Ann Genevieve* of *Bourbon*, Daughter of *Henry* of *Bourbon*, Prince of *Conde*, by whom he had *John-Lewis-Charles*, and *Charles-Paris*; the former of whom gave the Country of *Neufchatell* to his Brother, in the Year 1668. upon Condition that if he should die without Children, the Country should return to him; which case happening in the Year 1672. he entered again into the Possession of his Estate; and so the Dutcheß of *Nemours* his Sister, putting in for his Successor in the Country of *Neufchatell*. the Matter was brought before the Estates of the Country, who rejected her Pretensions, and adjudged the Sovereignty to his Brother. After whose Decease the Succession was claim'd by the Dutcheß of *Nemours* and the Prince of *Conti*, between whom a Suit was commenc'd in the Parliament of *Paris* wherein the Prince obtained a Decree in his Favour; but the Estates of the Country acknowledg'd the Dutcheß for their Sovereign, and continued their Obedience to her Death, which happen'd in the Year 1707. Several Pretenders put in their Claims immediately, and after mature deliberation the Tribunal of the City declared the King of *Prussia* their Sovereign, Nov. 3. N. S.

The Town of *Neufchatell*, is seated on a Lake of the same Name, and so call'd from a Castle built



on a Hill that commands the Town, being distant 30 Miles from *Laufanna* and the Lake of *Geneva* to the North, 28 from *Bern* to the West, and 30 from *Solothurn* to the South West.

**MULHAUSEN**, *Mulhusia*, stands in the upper *Alsace*, upon the River *Ell*, about 10 Miles from *Pfirt* to the North, as many from *Basil* to the North West, and *Newenburg* to the West. It freed itself from the Jurisdiction of the Bishop of *Straßburg*, *Ann.* 1261. and was made an Imperial City, and has been in Alliance with *Switzerland* since the Year 1515. There is another City of this Name in *Thuringen* under the Protection of the Duke of *Saxony*.

**ROTWEIL**, *Rotevilla*, a Town in *Schwaben*, and one of the Allies of *Switzerland*. It stands on the River *Necker*, near the Mountains of *Albenow*, about 40 Miles from *Brisac* to the East, and 42 from *Schaffenhäusen* to the North. Duke *Conrad III.* erected a Court of Justice here for the whole Province of *Schwaben*, *Ann.* 1147. and *Mr. de Guebriant* Marshal of *France*, being mortally wounded in the Siege of this Place, died in it after it was taken by the French, 17 Nov. 1643.

**BIENNE**, *Bienna*, is a small Town on the Banks of the River *Tschus*, which empties it self into the Lake of *Bienna*, a little way from the Town. It lies within the Bishoprick of *Basil*; but is free and independent. The Bishops of that See have had great Pretensions to it; and therefore finding it self like to be hard put to it, allied it self with the Canton of *Bern*, *Ann.* 1552. and afterwards more strictly, *Ann.* 1567; which it confirm'd with *Solothurn*, *Ann.* 1597. and not long after with the Canton of *Friburg*. However, notwithstanding this Alliance, it does in some measure own the Bishop's Superiority, since it is obliged to furnish him a certain Number of Men in the time of War, and to pay him Tithes. The Valley of *St. Immer*, otherwise call'd the Lordship of *Largue*, belongs to this Town. It is divided into several Communities, who have each of 'em their *Amman*, from whom their lies an Appeal to the Council of the Town.

**GENEVA**, *Genava* & *Aurelia Allobrogum*, or *Genuesium Civitas*, anciently a City of the *Allobroges* in *Gallia Narbonensis*, stands on the River *Rhone*, where it comes out of the Lake *Leman*, commonly call'd the Lake of *Geneva*. In the Lat. of 46. 20. Long. 26. at the distance of about 80 Miles from *Bern* to the S.W. as many from *Lions* to the N.E. and 110 from *Basil* to the South West. The *Rhone* divides it into two Parts, the South part of it, which stands upon a rising Ground, and is the greater, is call'd *Geneva*; the other, which properly belongs to the Country of *Gex*, is call'd *Gervais*. This City is very considerable, for its Antiquity, advantageous Situation, the great number of its Inhabitants, and its Commerce. It was here that *Cæsar*, to prevent the Irruptions of the *Helvetii*, caused an Entrenchment to be made 19 Miles long, and 16 Foot high, from the Lake of *Geneva* to the Mountains of *Jura*; some Vestigia of which are still to be seen near *Gingin*. It was almost burnt to Ashes in the Time of *Helioabutus*, and ordered to be re built by *Aurelian*, who would have it nam'd after him; but after his Death it resum'd its former Name. The *Burgundians* are said to have driven the *Romans* from hence, and after the fall of their Kingdom, it became an imperial Town; and a

long time after the Bishops of it were both Spiritual and Temporal Lords, but it was with great difficulty that they preserved their Sovereignty, by reason it was disputed by the Counts of *Geneva*, after they became Vicars of the Empire. *Peter* dying without Children, *Ann.* 1392. appointed *Humbert de Villars*, his Nephew, his Heir; who died, *Ann.* 1400. *Odo de Villars*, his Uncle, succeeding, sold the Country of *Geneva* to *Lewis* Count of *Savoy*, *Ann.* 1401. But the Male Race of the House of *Geneva* failing, this Prince was forc'd to desire a new Investiture; which the Emperor *Sigismund* granted him, *Ann.* 1424. and *Maximilian I.* confirm'd it, *Ann.* 1519. as did also *Charles V.* *Ann.* 1530. The Dukes of *Savoy* pretended that the Town of *Geneva* was under their Jurisdiction. It is true, they did appoint Judges and Notaries in it, and coin'd Money; but all this was owing to the weakness of the Bishops, who were not able at that time to oppose such Inroachments. The Publick Cries were made always in Name of the Bishop or his Vidame; the inferior Officers did so much depend upon him that he could depose them when he thought fit: And the Magistrates received Power from the Bishop to judge in Criminal Causes, when the Person was not an Ecclesiastick. Nor need it be brought as an Argument against their Sovereignty, that before they entred upon Possession of their Bishoprick, they took an Oath to maintain the Liberty and Privileges of the City, since that it is no more than what most Kings and Princes in *Europe* do at their Coronation. At last, in the Year 1535. the Reformation prevailing in this City, the Bishop, *Peter de Beaum*, together with the *Roman* Catholicks, was obliged to leave the City; nor has he or any of his Successors ever been able to return, but live in the enjoyment of their empty Title at *Annecy*, about 26 Miles from *Geneva*. After this Revolution, the Form of Government was chang'd, and a new Constitution establish'd, which is popular, and not much different from that which is in most of the *Swiss* Cantons; for the Sovereignty is lodg'd in the Council of 200, out of which Number 25 are chosen to make up the lesser Council; both are for Life, and serve as Checks on one another; the Sovereignty residing in one and the Magistracy in the other. The lesser inspects into the great, when they choose the Council & *Colonias*, fellows; and the great examines all that the lesser *Allobrogum* does. Besides these two, there is a third Council, consisting of 60 Persons chosen out of that of 200, which is properly the Council of State; and it is they who direct and advise the lesser Council, in Matters of Importance and Difficulty. The Syndicks are the Chief Magistrates of this little Commonwealth; and are elected by the whole Body of the Burgeses on the first Sunday of the Year. There are several other inferiour Courts and Judges, appointed by the grand Council, whose Office is annual: This City is pretty well fortified, and their Ramparts might secure it against any sudden Surprise or Scalade, but are not sufficient against the vigorous and frequent Attacks of a numerous Army; and therefore they place their greatest Strength and Security in that firm Alliance which they preserve with the Cantons of *Zurich* and *Bern*. The most remarkable Things in this City, are the Arsenal, which is very well furnish'd, and (as Doctor *Burnet* says) the best in the World in proportion to the State, there being Arms in it for more Men than there are in the State; with good store of Cannon. In the Arsenal are also to be seen the famous Scaling Ladders, which the



the *Savoyards* made use of when they attempted to surprize the Place, *An.* 1602. and the *Petard*, with which they design'd to have broken the New Gate. The Town-house, which has a Stair-Case of singular Workman-ship, and is a very fair and stately Building. The publick Library, which is, at the College, and consists of about 3000 Volumes; but it is not in very good order, by reason here is no Fund for augmenting the number of Books or maintaining a Library-keeper. The Academy; which is furnish'd with able Professors; but since the Protestants were expelled *France*, the number of Students of Divinity is much less: But to make amends for that, especially during the late Wars, many come to this Place to learn their Exercises, especially Protestants. The principal Church is dedicated to *St. Peter*, and in it is to be seen the Tomb of *Hen. II. Duke of Rohan*. There is also a *Dutch* and *Italian* Church, and there was an *English* one.

The Streets of this City are very large and beautiful, and the greatest part of their Houses, especially such as have been built within these 20 or 30 Years are of free Stone; but the Town is neither large nor very fine, yet it may (according to *Misson*) be call'd a very lovely Place. It has the advantage

of pleasant Walks, and the Conversation of the Inhabitants is very familiar and easie. The common People are clownish, but honest; and the Persons of Note are extremely kind, civil and ingenious. The vulgar Tongue here is *Savoyard*, but People of Quality and Breeding speak French. The Revenues of this little State may amount to about 100000 Crowns: And they keep some Gallies on the Lake, and so does the Duke of *Savoy* and the *Switzers*.

The Lake is above 50 Miles long, and 12 at most broad, for its depth is not equal or easily found in some Places, as exceeding 500 Fathoms. It is very well stockt with great Variety of good Fish, especially Trouts, some of which weigh above 50 Pound. Which tho' it looks a little strange to us here, *Mr. Misson* says, he saw one in one of the Halls of the Arsenal of *Munich*, that weigh'd 73 Pounds. The Water of the Lake extremely clear and fresh, except when it is disturb'd by the Winds, then it rages like a little Sea. Nor is it credible, that the *Rh-ne* passes through it without mingling his Waters, as *Polybius*, and after him other Authors have maintain'd; for considering the length and crooked Figure of the Lake, that seems absurd and impossible.

## CHAP. IV.

### The Subjects of the Switzers.

THE Cantons of *Switzerland* having entred into Alliance with one another, not at the same, but at different times, they must have their particular and separate Subjects; because when a new Canton was receiv'd into the Society of the perpetual League, they did not at the same time enter into the Participation of what the rest possess'd, but only those that they should hereafter acquire. So the Bailiages of *Usnach* and *Gustal* belong to the Cantons of *Schwitz* and *Glaris*, and *Rhin-tal* to the seven first Cantons; and that of *Appenzel*. These Bailiages and Places are all govern'd after the same manner, without derogating from their Laws or encroaching upon their Privileges and Customs. The Cantons to whom they belong send once a Year or once in two Years sometimes, Governors, who are Judges in all Matters, who receive the Revenues and Customs, and make account of their Managements to the Diet of *Baden*. Nevertheless those Governors are not look'd upon as such in the Bailiages before they take an Oath for maintaining inviolable the Privileges of the Country, which they call their *Municipal Laws*. In *Switzerland* these Governors are call'd *Bailiffs*; but in *Italy*, Captains. In Criminal Cases they make the Country Magistrates their Assessors, and give an account of their Administration to the Deputies who are sent by the Cantons to *Lugan* to determin Appeals. In the time of War these Bailiages are oblig'd to send their Militia to be list-ed under the Banners of the Cantons to which they belong.

The Bailiages of *Usnach* and *Gustal* lie between the Lakes of *Zurich* and *Wesen*, and because they depend upon the Canton of *Schwitz* as well as that of *Glaris*, they have a Governor from each Canton by turns.

*Rhin-tal*, *Rhingovia*, has its Name from the Situation of it along the *Rhine*, extending from the Lake of *Constance* to the Barony of *Sax*. It is divided in-

to two Bailiages; that which lies on the right Bank of the *Rhine* belongs to the House of *Austria*, that on the other side belongs to the 7 first Cantons and that of *Appenzel*; and in it there are two little Towns, *viz.* *Altest* and *Rhinec* upon the *Rhine*, in the latter of which the Bailiff keeps his Residence. The Inhabitants of this Valley are chiefly employed in spinning Flax, the greatest part of which is employed in the Manufacture of *St. Gall*.

The County of *Sargan*, *Sarentia*, is separated from the *Grisons* by the *Rhine*, and owes its Name to the River *Sarn* which divides it into two; tho' others are of Opinion that it is so call'd from the *Sarnutes*, People of *Rhetia*, who dwelt about the Source of the River *Inn*; but it is not worth the while to debate it. This Country was sold to the 7 first Cantons by the Count of *Montfort*, in the Year 1488. There are in it, besides *Sargan*, which is a pretty little Town, and enjoys several Privileges, *Valbenstat*, upon the Lake of *Riva*, *Ragatz*, and the Abby of *Pfuers*, of the Order of *St. Bennet*, founded, *An.* 720.

The Free Provinces, *Provincia Libera*, consist in certain Villages and Castles lying along the River *Rufs*, above and below *Bremgarten* on the left Bank of the River. They are call'd *Free*, because the Villages of *Mayenberg*, *Richensea*, and *Argow*, set themselves at Liberty, and choose their particular Magistrates. These Provinces formerly made up the County of *Rore*, the Lord of which resided at *Arow*. The *Lucernois* made themselves Masters of it in the time of the Council of *Constance*, and would have appropriated it to themselves, in prejudice of the 7 old Cantons; but the Canton of *Bern* being made Umpire to decide the Matter, condemn'd the *Lucernois*, and made the other Cantons Sharers. Within this Country is the Abbey of *Muren*, which is the ordinary Residence of the Bailiff.

The Country of *Turgow*, *Turgea* or *Turgovia*, is of a pre-



a pretty large Extent, reaching from the Lake of Zurich to that of Constance, and takes its Name either from the *Taurisci*, who inhabited it, or the River *Thur*, which washes it. The 7 old Cantons possess only a small part of it, viz. that where *Dissenhofen* lies upon the *Rhine* between *Stein* and *Schaffhausen*; which the *Swiss* made themselves Masters of, *Ann.* 1460. The rest is possess'd by several Proprietors, some of whom are Lay-men, some Clergy-men. The Bishop of *Constance* possesses the Lordships of *Arbon*, *Tannez*, *Guittengen*, *Gottlieb*, and *Bischoffzel*. The Chapter of *Constance* that of *Altnau*; the Abbot of *St. Gall*, a considerable part of it. Among the Lay mens Possessions may be reckon'd, the Seigniories of *Pfin*, *Winfilden*, *Burglen*, *Wingi*, and *Spiegelberg*.

The County of *Rore*, comprehends the Burroughs of *Meimberg*, *Richace*, *Mury*, *Bremgarten* and *Vilzergen*.

The Bailiage of *Morat*, lies between the County of *Arbeg*, the Canton of *Friburg*, and the Bailiages of *Louppen* and *Avenzel*. It is the first of the 4 Bailiages that depend on the Cantons of *Bern* and *Friburg*. Which they made themselves Masters of during their Wars with *Charles the Terrible*, Duke of *Burgundy*.

The Town of *Morat*, *Moratum*, or *Muratum*, lies in the County of *Romont*, on a Lake of the same Name, about 6 Miles from *Friburg* to the North, and 12 from *Bern* to the West. It is famous on the account of a signal Victory which the *Switzers* obtained over the Forces of *Charles Duke of Burgundy* on the 22d of *June*, 1476. in which they slew above 18000 of his Men; and as a Monument of their Victory, built a Chappel in the Field of Battle, in which they put the Bones of the slain. At *Friburg* they renew the Memory of this and another Battle, by solemn Feasts and publick Rejoycing, twice a Year, viz. the 2d of *March*, and 22 of *June*.

The Bailiage of *Orbe*, is so call'd from a little Town of the same Name, which stands on a Hill, near the little River *Orbe*, about 5 Miles from *Iverdun* to the West, and 18 from the Lake of *Geneva* to the North. It is said to be the ancient *Urba*, where the *Urbigeni* dwelt. In this Bailiage also stands the Borough of *Eschalen*, near the little River *Talen*.

The Bailiage of *Granson*, is likewise so call'd from a Town of that Name, near the Lake of *Newschatel*, about a Mile from the Town of *Newschatel* to the South, and 15 from *Friburg* to the West. It is also famous for the Battle which the *Bernois* and *Friburgois* gain'd over *Charles Duke of Burgundy*, *Ann.* 1476. on the 2d *March*; where this Prince left all his Baggage, which consisted in Money and other Things of great Value.

The Bailiage of *Schwarzenburg* is upon the Confines of the Canton of *Friburg*, and is very well peopled, having many good Villages in it; the chief of which are *Valeren*, *Albingen*, and *Guggisberg*.

The Bailiage of *Lugan*, *Lucarn*, *Mendrisse*, and *Palmedie* belong to the 12 first Cantons by a Donation, which *Maximilian Sforza* made, in the Year 1512. which was confirm'd by *Francis I.* after the Battle of *Marignan*. The Governors of these Bailiages are sent from the several Cantons to which they belong, by turns. They are very well peopled; that of *Lugan* comprehending 90 Villages, *Lucarn* 5 Parishes, and the rest proportionally.

The Bailiages of *Belizone*, *Valbrun*, and *Riviere*,

belong to the Canton of *Uri*, *Schwitz* and *Underwald*. They did depend on the Duchy of *Milan*; but were given to these Cantons in the Year 1422. The Dukes of *Milan* took Possession of them again; but by the Treaty of Alliance which was made between *Francis I.* and the Cantons, it was agreed. That they should return to the Cantons of *Uri*, *Schwitz*, and *Underwald*, to be enjoin'd by them for ever.

### The Stipendary Towns of the Switzers.

THE Towns of *Baden*, *Bremgarten*, *Mellingen*, *Rapservivil*, *Frawensfeld*, are under the Dominion of some of the Cantons, and are call'd *Stipendary*, because they enjoy some Immunities, as, to live according to their own Laws and Customs, and to choose their own Magistrates; but are oblig'd in the time of War to raise a certain number of Troops, and maintain them at their own Charges.

*Baden*, *Castellum Aquarum*, or *Thermarium*, anciently call'd *Aque Helvetiae*, stands upon the River *Limath*, which a little below falls into the *Aar*. It is distant 6 Miles from the *Rhine* to the South, 30 from *Basil* to the East, and about 12 from *Zurich* to the North West. It was the chief Town of a County which pass'd into the Hands of the Counts of *Kyburg*, *Ann.* 1180. by the death of *Henry* last Count of *Baden*. *Herman* of *Kyburg* leaving no Children, and the Succession being disputed by several Pretenders, *Radolph* Count of *Hapsburg* made himself Master of it; and his Successors kept it 'till the time of the Council of *Constance*. This Town, on the account of the Conveniency of its Situation, several Houses in it being fit for great Assemblies, was chosen for the ordinary Place of the Meetings of the General Diets of the Cantons, and for entertaining Foreign Ambassadors. It is famous for a Conference that was held in it about Matters of Religion, *Ann.* 1526. and the mutual League made with the Cantons the same Year. It is call'd *Ober Baden*, or *Upper Baden*, to distinguish it from another Town of that Name in *Schwaben*. Both of them are famous for their hot Baths, and each of 'em are defended by a strong Castle built on a Hill.

*Bremgarten*, *Bremocartum*, is a little Town upon the Banks of the River *Russ*, 10 Miles from *Baden*, towards *Lucern*, and 8 from *Zug* to the North. It was once an imperial Town, afterwards subject to the Counts of *Hapsburg*, from whom it pass'd to the Dukes of *Austria*, and from them to the *Swiss*, and belongs to the 8 first Cantons.

*Mellingen*, *Mellinga*, stands upon the same River, about 12 Miles from *Zurich* to the West, and about 28 from *Lucern* to the North. The Emperor *Sigismund* sold it to *Zurich*, and it now belongs to the 8 old Cantons.

*Rapservil* *Rapserville*, or *Ruperti Villa*, stands upon the Lake of *Zurich*, where it is divided into the Lake of *Zurich*, properly so call'd, and the *Upper Lake*. It formerly belong'd to the Counts of that Name, who were succeeded by the Counts of *Hapsburg*. The People of *Zurich* having ruined it, it was re-built, *Ann.* 1351. by *Albert Duke of Austria*. It is 26 Miles from *Zug* to the East, and 15 from *Zurich* to the South East, towards *Chur*.

*Frawensfeld*, stands upon the River *Murg*, about 20 Miles from *Constance* to the West. The *Swiss* made themselves Masters of it, *Ann.* 1460. in the time of *Sigismund Duke of Austria*.



**S A V O Y, Sabaudia.**



**T**HIS Country was anciently inhabited by a part of the *Allobroges*, the *Centrones*, the *Nantuates*, *Garocelli*, the *V-ragri* and the *Salassi*. The *Allobroges* possess'd that part of the Country which lies between the *Rhone*, where it comes

out of the Lake Lemán, the Country of the Nantuates, that of the Centrones and the Isere. The Centrones liv'd in the Valleys of the Alpes Graie (le Mont Joux) now call'd Tarantaise: The Garocelli, in the Country now call'd Maurienne: The Nantuates in that



that which is now *Chablais* and *St. Maurice*; The *Verag-i*, in that part of the *Valais* where *Martigni* is; and the *Salaffi*, in that which is now the Valley of *Aouft*. *Terentius Varro* subdu'd the *Salaffi*, and *Augustus* vanquish'd the rest of those People. After the *Roman* Empire became a Prey to the barbarous Nations, this Country was possess'd sometimes by one, sometimes by another of them. The *Burgundians* remain'd Masters of it for a long time, and incorporated it into the Kingdom which they establish'd of a part of *Gallia Celsica* and *Gallia Narbonensis*. *Bosc*, Count of *Ardenne*, who Marry'd *Ermenega de*, Daughter of *Lewis II.* Emperor of *Italy*, caus'd himself to be chosen King of *Provence* by the Estates of that Country, assembled at *Mental*, in the Month of *October*, 879. *Lewis* his Son surnam'd the *Blind*, who was likewise King of *Italy* left by *Adelias*, *Charles Constantine* Prince of *Vienne*, who had by *Th.berge*, *Amadeo* Father of *Humbert*, surnam'd *White Hands*; from whom some Authors derive the Succession of the Princes of *Savoy*; tho' others, considerable both for their Authority and Number, will have them come from *Berold* of *Saxony*, as the more honourable Stock. And therefore since Historians are so much divided about it, we must desire the Reader to have recourse to those Authors, and go on to that which more properly belongs to a Work of this Nature.

*Savoy* is bounded on the North by the Lake of *Geneva* and *Valais*, on the East by the Valleys of *Sesia* and *Piedmont*, on the South by *Dauphine*, and on the West by the *Rhone*; which separates it from *Bugey*. The Soil of this Country is generally very good; the Valleys affording plenty of Corn and Grapes, and the Mountains Pasture for great Numbers of Cattle, and good Variety of Game. The Lakes afford good store of Trout, Pikes and Carps, and several other sorts of Fishes. This Country is very well provided with Timber, especially Walnut and Chestnut Trees. The Air is also cool and temperate, by reason of the great number of Mountains that are always cover'd with Snow. The *Isere*, *Arche* and *Arve*, are the most considerable Rivers, as those of *Biarget* and *Annacy* are the most noted Lakes. The *Savoyards* are an industrious and courteous People, and of a gentle Disposition, especially the Persons of Quality, who have something of Greatness in their Looks and Mien. They are all of the *Roman* Catholick Religion.

The chief Commodities of this Country are Paper, Fustians, Raw Silks, Hides, Cloths, Linnen, Thread, Iron-work, Fir-trees for Masts of Ships, and other valuable Things.

JUSTICE is administred in this Country very regularly and orderly. There are three Senates, to whom Appeals are made from the Bailiages and inferior Tribunals. The first is for *Savoy*, the second for *Piedmont*, and the third for the County of *Nice* and its Dependencies. The Seat of the first is at *Chambery*; and it is compos'd of 4 Presidents, 15 Senators, without reckoning the Abbot of *Hautecomb*, who is a Senator born, 1 Advocate General, 1 Procurator General, 2 Registers, and 2 Secretaries. It was instituted by *Amadeo VIII.* 1430. The Senate of *Piedmont* was establish'd by *Lewis I.* Duke of *Savoy*, who resolving to reside in *Piedmont*, did by his Ordinance the 15th of *May*, 1459 create a Council in the City of *Turin*, to determine Affairs in that Country without Appeal; which afterwards assum'd the Name of Senate. It consists of 4 Presidents, 2 Knights, 18 Senators, an Advocate General, and a

Procurator General. The Senate of *Nice* was instituted by *Charles Emanuel*; and it is compos'd of 2 Presidents, 6 Senators, an Advocate General, and a Procurator General.

Besides these Sovereign Courts, there are 2 Chambers of Accounts, and a Council of Finances. That of *Savoy* was instituted by *Amadeo the Green*, An. 1351. and *Philbert Emanuel* declar'd it Sovereign and Independant of the Senate of *Chambery*, by an Edict, dated at *Mendovi*, 6 Oct. 1630. and at the same time created that of *Turin*, with the same Prerogatives. The Superintendent of the Finances presides in the Council of that Name, and appoints the Meetings of it. He examines all the Accounts of those who have the Management of the publick Money; and it is here that all Affairs relating to the Finances are examin'd and determin'd.

Altho' the Duke of *Savoy* be a Vassal of the Empire, he governs his own Dominions with an absolute Authority. His Revenue in all may amount to about 5000000 Livres; and his Army in time of Peace is very small, but in time of War about 10 or 11 thousand Men. The Situation of his Dominions upon the Confines of *France*, and at the Entry to *Italy*, renders this Prince considerable. The *Alps* were formerly a Rampart to them against the Attacks of their Enemies; but after the *French* King took *Pignerol*, those Mountains were found not to be inaccessible, *Savoy* is defended by several strong Places, the best of which is *Montmelian*. *Nice*, when it is in the Duke of *Savoy's* Hands, secures the Communication with the *Mediterranean*; and towards *Lombardy* there are several well fortified Places, to oppose the Insults of the *Spaniards*, who questionless would most willingly have *Piedmont*, which without doubt is one of the finest Countries in *Italy*.

#### Earls and Dukes of *Savoy*.

999. 1. *Berold* of *Saxony*.
1027. 2. *Humbert*, the first Earl of *Maurienne*,
1048. 3. *Amadeo I.*
1076. 4. *Humbert II.*
1109. 5. *Amadeo II.*
1154. 6. *Humbert III.*
1201. 7. *Thomas*, Son of *Humbert*.
1234. 8. *Amadeo III.*
1246. 9. *Boniface*, *Amadeo III's* Son.
1257. 10. *Peter*, call'd little *Charlemain*.
1268. 11. *Philip*, *Peter's* Brother.
1285. 12. *Amadeo IV.*
1323. 13. *Edward*, his Son.
1329. 14. *Amadeo V.* *Edward's* Brother.
1342. 15. *Amadeo VI.*
1385. 16. *Amadeo VII.*
1397. 17. *Amadeo VIII.* first Duke of *Savoy*.
1434. 18. *Lewis*, his Son.
1461. 19. *Amadeo IX.*
1475. 20. *Philibert*, his Son.
1481. 21. *Charles*, *Philibert's* Brother.
1484. 22. *Charles II.*
1495. 23. *Philip II.*
1496. 24. *Philibert II.*
1504. 25. *Charles III.* thrust out of his Dominions by *K. Francis I.*
1559. 26. *Emanuel Philibert*, restor'd by his Marriage with *Margaret*, *K. Francis I's* Sister.
1580. 27. *Charles Emanuel*.
28. *Amadeo X.* call'd *Victor*.
1637. 29. *Charles Emanuel II.* Son of *Amadeo Victor*.
1675. 30. *Victor Amadeo Francesco*,



*Savoy* is commonly divided into 8 small Provinces, as you may see in the following Table,

<i>Savoy</i> , properly so call'd,	<i>Montmelian</i> , Ch. Town.
The County of <i>Geneva</i> ,	<i>Annecy</i> .
The County of <i>Chablais</i> ,	<i>Tonnon</i> .
The County of <i>Aouste</i> ,	<i>Aouste</i> .
The <i>Tarentaise</i> .	<i>Meuthiers</i> .
The Valley of <i>Morienne</i> ,	<i>S. John de Maurienne</i> .
The County of <i>Fossigny</i> .	<i>Bonneville</i> ,
Part of <i>Bugey</i> ,	<i>Yenne</i> .

*SAVOY* in particular, or properly so call'd, is bounded on the North with the County of *Geneva*, on the East by *Tarentaise* and *Maurienne*, on the South by *Dauphiny*, and on the West with *Bugey* and the *Rhône*. The chief Towns in it are,

<i>Chambery</i> , Ch.	<i>Rumilly</i> .
<i>Montmelian</i> .	<i>Aix</i> .

*Chambery*, *Cameriacum*, or *Camerium*, stands on a Plain, at the Confluence of the two little Rivers *Laiſſe* and *Albens*, 10 miles from *Montmelian* to the South, 7 from the Lake of *Bourget* to the North, about 60 from *Lyon* to the East, and 30 from *Grenoble*, and 70 from *Geneva* to the South. It is a rich and well peopled City; and some take it for the ancient *Forum Voconii*, which *Pliny* and the Itinerary of *Antoninus* make mention of; tho' *Cluverius* and others think *Draguignan* in *Provence* has a better Title to that ancient Name: And some think it is *Civara* that *Cicero* speaks of in his Epistles; but whatever may be of that, it is now the Chief City of the Dutchy of *Savoy*, and in it's ancient State might be call'd a well built Town, but 'twill hardly now bear that Character. The publick Buildings are very beautiful, particularly an ancient Castle, the principal Church dedicated to *S. Leger*, the Jesuits College, and some Monasteries. Divers Channels of the River *Albens* run through this City, as do several little Streams of Springs rising in *St. Martin's Hill*. In this Place the Emperor *Sigismund* erected the County of *Savoy* into a Dutchy, 19 Febr. 1416. It was taken by the *French*, 1690. and restor'd by the Treaty of Peace at *Turin*, 1696. But seiz'd again by the *French* in the Year, 1703.

*Montmelian*, *Menfmeianus*, is a little City on the right Bank of the *Isere*, defended by a Citadel, whose principal Strength consists in its Situation, being founded on a high Rock; in which is cut out a large Well which supplies the Garrison with fresh Water. The *French* under the Command of the Constable of *Lesdiguières*, took it 9. Nov. 1600. And again it was Besieg'd by the *French*, under the Command of *M. Catinat*, 1691. and taken after a vigorous Resistance; but restor'd by the Treaty of Peace at *Turin*, 1696.

*Aix*, *Aque Gratiæ*, is the chief Town of a Marquisate, and famous for the hot Baths, which were the Work of the *Romans*; as the Town was rebuilt by the Emperor *Gratian*. It stands at the Foot of the Mountains between *Chambery*, *Annecy* and *Rumilly*. Its Waters are impregnated with Allom and Sulphur, and are very much frequented.

The County of *GENEVA*, *Genevensis Tractus*, lies between *Bugey*, the County of *Gex*, *Faucigny*, *Savoy*, properly so call'd, and the *Rhône*, about 45 miles long. It was formerly possess'd by its own Lords who did bear the Title of Counts. and were Vassals to those of *Savoy*. Pope *Clement VII.* was the last of that Family: After whose Death, his Sisters, the eldest of whom was married to the *Sir de Villars*, the other to the Prince of *Orange*, preten-

ded to succeed him; but the Emperour *Sigismund* adjudg'd it to *Amadeo* the 8th. Duke of *Savoy*, and with it all the Right the Emperor could pretend to that Country, and came to an Accommodation with the House of *Villars* for their Pretensions: And after he was in peaceable Possession of it, gave it to his Son *Amadeo*, who died without Children, as *Janus* Son of *Lewis* Duke of *Savoy* also did. *Philip* youngest Son of *Philip* Duke of *Savoy* got it for his Appanage, or Portion, together with *Faucigny* and *Beaufort*; and so it has been handed down from one to another, and at last to this present Duke. The Chief Towns of this Country are,

<i>Annecy</i> , Cap.	<i>Tonnes</i> .
<i>Aibi</i> .	<i>Clairmont</i> .
<i>La Roche</i> .	<i>Chamont</i> .

*Annecy*, *Annecium* or *Anneciacum*, stands on the Lake of the same name, at the foot of the Mountains about 20 miles from *Geneva* to the South 24 from *Chambery* to the N. W. and about as many from *Bellay* to the East. There are several little Streams flowing from the Lake through the Town, which form themselves into a River call'd *Trioud*, and render the Situation of the Town very delightful, and is a great convenience to the Inhabitants. It was formerly a very large and well Peopled City; but since the Fire that happen'd in it, *Ann.* 1448. it has hardly recover'd its former greatness, or number of Inhabitants. It has been the Residence of the Bishop of *Geneva* ever since the Year, 1535. that the Reformers drove him out of *Geneva*: And here, in the Cathedral Church is preserv'd the Corps of *S. Francis Sales*, Bishop of *Geneva*. There are here also two Collegiate Churches, a Seminary of Priests of *S. Lazarus*, a College of *Barnabites*, a Convent of *Dominicans*, a Monastery of *Capuchins*, and one of *Benedictins*, and several others, some of which are very Magnificent. This Place was taken by the *French* in the Year, 1630. and again by them in the Year, 1690. but restor'd *Ann.* 1696. by the Treaty of Peace at *Turin*. And again taken and possess'd by them during the late War.

The Country of *CHABLAIS*, *Caballicus Ducatus*, is bounded on the North with the Lake of *Geneva*, on the East with the *Valais*, on the West by the Counties of *Fossigny* and *Geneva*. The Emperor *Conrad Salis* gave it to *Humberg White Hands*; and the Emperor *Frederick* the II. erected it into a Dutchy, *Ann.* 1238. Formerly it reach'd as far as *St. Maurice*: The *Valeese* made themselves Masters of this Country, *Ann.* 1536. when *Bern* and *Friburg* were engag'd in a War with *Charles III.* Duke of *Savoy*. They were ordered, by an Arrest of the Imperial Chamber to restore it; and *Charles V.* sent an Herald to Summon them to do it; but they mock'd the Emperor's Threatnings; and by the Treaty of the fourth of *August*, 1569. they yielded all that lies between the Rivers *Morſes* and *Dranſe*; the *Bernois* having before, in execution of the Treaty of *Laufanna* 15 Oct. 1564. surrender'd all that they possess'd in the Bailiage of *Tonnon*, *Ternier* and *Galliard*. This Province is about 30 miles long, and 12 broad. The chief Towns in it are,

<i>Tonnon</i> , Cap.	<i>Ternier</i> .
<i>Evian</i> .	<i>Galliard</i> .
<i>Aups</i> .	<i>Ripaille</i> .

*Tonon*, *Tunonium*, stands upon the Lake of *Geneva*, about 25 miles from the City of that Name to the East, 30 from *Annecy* to the North-east, and



15 from *Lufanna* to the South; and is a very delightful Place.

The Dutchy of *AOUSTE*, *Augustanus Ducatus*, is bounded with *Valais* on the North, *Vercellois* and the Valleys of *Sesia* on the East, *Maurienne* on the South, and *Savoy* and *Foucigny* on the West. It is a mountainous but fertile Country, and is divided commonly into 7 Parts or Valleys. It was anciently inhabited by the *Salassii*, and afterwards had its own particular Masters, till the Marquiss of *Susa* took possession of one part; and the Bishops of *Aouste* became Proprietors of a part of their Diocels under the Emperor's Sovereignty. This Dutchy was united to *Savoy* by the Marriage of *Adelaide* of *Susa* with *Amadeo* the II. Count of *Savoy*, together with the Marquisate of *Susa*, and the Dutchy of *Turin*. The Emperor *Frederick* the II. erected it into a Dutchy in the Month of *February*. 1238. in favour of *Thomas*. The chief Towns in it are,

<i>Aoste</i> , B. Cap.	} <i>Chantillon</i> .
<i>Morges</i> .	
<i>Issigne</i> .	
<i>Montjoux</i> .	
<i>Bardfort</i> .	
	} <i>Cour-majeur</i> , anciently
	} <i>Curia Major</i> .
	} <i>Donas</i> .

*Aouste*, *Augusta Prætoria* or *Augusta Salassiorum*, stands in the middle of a Valley of that Name, upon the Banks of the *Dorea*, where the Rivulet *Baurreggio* runs into it; 25 miles from *Jurea* to the N.W. 50 from *Turin* to the North, and but 10 from the Confines of the *Milaneze* to the West. *Augustus* (as it is commonly believ'd) sent a Colony here, and would have it nam'd after him, *Augusta Prætoria*, whereas before it was call'd *Cordella* by the *Salassii*, from one *Cordellus Stasiellus*, who they say, was the Founder of it. There is still to be seen here a Triumphal-Arch rais'd in Honour of *Augustus*, in Memory of the Victory he obtain'd over the People of the *Alpes*; and 'was for this Reason that it was call'd the *Trophæe* of the *Alpes*; which some less knowing Writers have plac'd at *Turbie* near *Monaco*. The Bishop of *Aouste* is Suffragen to the Archbishop of *Tarentaise*. *St. Anselm* Bishop of *Canterbury* was Born here. This City with the rest of *Savoy* was taken by the *French* in 1704.

The *TARENTEISE*, *Tarentasia*, is bounded with the *Alpes*, and the Dutchy of *Aouste* on the East, *Toffigny* on the North, *Savoy proper* on the West, and the Valley of *Maurienne* on the South. It was anciently inhabited by the *Centrones*, and for a long time was govern'd by Lords of its own; from whom it pass'd to the House of *Briançon*. *Amery* did treat his Subject's so cruelly, that *Humbert* II. Count of *Savoy*, being invited by *Heraclius*, Archbishop of *Tarentaise*, made himself Master of this Country, and united it to his Dominions. It lies extended between the Village *S. Germain*, which is at the Foot of the Hill call'd little *S. Bernard*, to Mount *Sapey* and *Regnez*, about 36 Miles in length. The most considerable Towns in it are,

*Moustriers*, Ch. Ar. B.  
*S. Maurice*.  
*Briançon*.

*Moustriers*, *Monasterium*, or *Forum Neronis*, stands upon the *Ifere*, where the Brook *Doron* runs into it 25 miles from *Chambery* to the East, towards *Aouste*, 60 from the Lake of *Geneva* to the South, and 60 from *Turin* to the North West. The River *Ifere* divides it into two Parts, and the Avenues to it are extremely difficult by reason there is no way to come at it but by defiles, or narrow passes betwixt Torrents and Precipices. Some Geographers have taken

this for the ancient *Tarentasia*, which had been formerly call'd *Forum Claudii*; but they mistake it, for after this Town was ruin'd, the Archbishoprick was transfer'd to *Moustriers*. The Bishopricks of *Aouste* and *Sion* are Suffragans to it.

The County of *MAURIENNE*, *Mauriana*, lies between the *Alpes* and the *Ifere*, between *Tarentaise* on the North, and *Dauphiny* on the South. It is a Valley of about 50 miles long, beginning at *Chamoux*, a little below the Confluence of the *Arche* and *Ifere*, and ending at the foot of Mount *Cenis*. It is a fertile Country, particularly of Saffron and Pasturage, and contains about 100 Parishes: And is a part of the ancient Estate of the House of *Savoy*; for *Humbert White Hands*, had for his Patrimony the County of *Savoy* and that of *Maurienne* together with *Chablais* and *Valais*. The only considerable Town in it is *St. John Mourienne*, altho' there be several others of less note,

<i>S. Andrew</i> .	} <i>La Chambre</i> .
<i>S. Michael</i> .	
<i>Modane</i> .	
	} <i>St. Julian</i> .
	} <i>Isse</i> .

*St. John Mourienne*, *Fanum S. Johannis Mauriani*, stands upon a Plain in the middle of a Valley, upon the Banks of the little River *Arche*, 10 miles from the Frontiers of *Dauphine* to the East, 65 North West from *Turin*. It is a very fair Town, but not Fortified: And is an Episcopal See, Suffragan to the Archbishop of *Vienne*. In the Cathedral Church of *S. John* are to be seen many Tombs of the Dukes of *Savoy*.

The Province of *FOSSIGNY*, or *Foucigny Fociniacensis Tractus*, lies at the Foot of the *Alpes*, between the County of *Geneva* on the West, of which it was formerly a part, and that of *Valais* on the East. For a long time it was govern'd by particular Lords, descended from *Emerard*, who liv'd in the 10th. Century, and whose Posterity fail'd Ann. 1200. in the Person of *William*, whose only Daughter and Heire's married *Thomas* Count of *Savoy*. It has been the Portion of the Brothers of this Family, but was re-united to the Dukedom of *Savoy*, 1659. The most remarkable Towns in it are,

<i>Bonneville</i> , Cap.	} <i>Salanches</i> .
<i>Passi</i> .	
<i>Vieu</i> .	
	} <i>Cluse</i> .
	} <i>Tanning</i> .

*Bonneville*, *Bonnopolis*, stands in the Low *Foucigny*, at the foot of the Mountains, on the River *Arve*, 16 miles below *Cluse*, 15 from *Amery* to the N.W. and 20 from *Geneva* to the South East. It is defended by an old Castle, and is the Seat of the chief Justice of the Country.

That part of *Bugey*, which remains in the possession of the Duke of *Savoy*, by the Treaty of *Lions*, comprehends only that which lies on the other side of the *Rhone*, and is 24 miles long, and 6 broad; from the Mountain *Chall* to the *Rhone*. The most remarkable Towns in it are, *Yenne*, a little Town, surrounded with a Wall, *Loiffey*, a considerable Burrow, and chief Town of a Barony, and the Suburbs of *Pont-Beauvoisin*, a Town in *Dauphiny* upon the River *Gue*, which is the Bounds betwixt this Province and *Dauphiny*.

The County of *NICE*, &c.

THE County of *Nice* is bounded on the North with the Marquisate of *Saluzes*, the County of *Tende* and the *Genovesat* on the East, the Mediterranean



raean Sea on the South, and the County of *Bueil* and *Provence* on the West. The *Vediantii* were the ancient Inhabitants of it. *Amadeo the Red*, Duke of *Savoy*, got it by a voluntary offer of the People of *Nice*, in the Year, 1338. *Ladislaus* Son of *Charles de Duras* not being in a Condition to give them Succour. *Ladislaus* is said to have confirm'd this Alienation by an Act made at *Viterbo*, the 18 of *January*, 1402. And by the Treaty of *Chambery*, the 15th of *October*, 1419. *Island of Arragon*, Mother and Tutors to *Lewis III.* King of *Naples*, and Count of *Provence*, d'd resign to *Amadeo the VIII.* all the Right that her Son could claim to that County, and the Principality of *Barcelonnet*; in recompence of which *Amadeo* did discharge the Sum of a Hundred and fixty Thousand Livers, which *Amadeo the VI.* his Uncle had lent to *Lewis the I.* Uncle of *Lewis the III.* for his Expedition into *Naples*. But this Cession of *Island's*, as most think, was contrary to the Fundamental Laws of the Land, and the express Acts of the Counts of *Provence*, and consequently of no Force. However the Case may be, we must leave it to be decided by others, and go on to that which is more properly our Business. The most considerable Towns in this County are *Nice* and *Ville franche*.

*Nice*, *Nicaea*, from whom the County takes its Name, stands on the Sea, and is defended by a very strong Citadel, which stands on a Steep high Rock inaccessible on all sides but on that from the Town; it also may command the Port; which is none of the best, the Anchorage not being good. This Town was built by a Colony of the *Misiliani*; from the Ruins of the ancient *Cemenelium*, a City of the *Vediantii*. It is an Episcopal See, Suffragan to the Archbishop of *Ambrun*: And is distant about 2 Miles from the Mouth of the River *Varo*, and 7 from *Monaco*, and 15 from the Frontiers of the *Genovese* to the West, and 60 from *Pignerol* to the South. It was taken by the *French* in the Year, 1691. and restor'd, *Ann.* 1696. by the Treaty of Peace at *Turin*. The *French* took the Town in the late War, but not being able to conquer the Castle they undermined and blew up the Fortifications of the Town, when they quitted it in *Aug* 1705. Afterwards at the latter end of the same Year they besieg'd the Castle, which after a brave Defence surrender'd on the 4th. of *Jan.* 1706. The Fortifications whereof they also destroy'd.

*Ville Franche*, *Olivula*, stands upon the Sea of *Genova*, about 2 Miles from *Nice*. It is thought to be the ancient *Olivula Portus* by some; but others, particularly *Petrus Jofredus*, think that *Olivula Portus* stood 5 Miles to the East of *Nice*; but whatever may be of that, *Charles II.* King of *Naples* and Count of *Provence* caus'd it to be built, *Ann.* 1295. It stands in a Bottom among high Hills which render its Harbour an excellent Shelter from Winds, and the entry to it is defended by a Castle, and within by a strong Citadel; which *Emanuel Philibert* Duke of *Savoy* caus'd to be built. It was restor'd to *Savoy* by the King of *France*, *Ann.* 1696. by the Treaty of Peace at *Turin*. This Town was taken by the *French* in 1704. and the Castle in *April* 1705.

The Principality or Valley of *BARCELLONET*, *Barcino*, is bounded on the North with the Marquisate of *Salusse* and *Ambrun*, on the East by

the County of *Nice*, and on the South and West by *Provence*. The Inhabitants of it acknowledg'd *Amadeo the VII.* Duke of *Savoy* for their Lord, in the Month of *May*, 1338. The Town of *Barcelonnet* is no very large one, tho' it be the only one of any Note in this Valley. It stands upon the little River *Hubay*, near the Frontiers of *Dauphine*, and 20 Miles South East from *Embrun*; and was built by *Ramond Berenger*, Count of *Provence*, *Ann.* 1232. There are besides in this Principality *Peget*, and the Valley of *Etienne*, which has its own particular Governour, and is properly an Annex of the former.

The County of *Tende Comitatus, Tentendensis*, is bounded on the North by *Piedmont*, on the East by the County of *Gonoua*, and on the South and West by the County of *Nice*. It was formerly in the Possession of the Family of *Lascais*, who were descended from the Emperors of *Constantinople* by the Mother's side. It pass'd into the Family of *Savoy* by the Marriage of *Ann*, only Daughter of *John Antony* last Count of *Tende*, with *Reney* of *Savoy*, natural Son of *Philip* Duke of *Savoy*; who in consideration of this Marriage, gave his Son all his Estate; which was done the 25th of *January*, 1501. The Town of *Tende* is a pretty little Burrough, in the *Appenines*, upon the Confines of the County of *Geneva*, about 30 Miles from *Nice* to the North, and 50 from *Turin* to the South.

The County of *Bueil* or *Boglio, Boleensis Comitatus*, is bounded with *Barcelonnet* on the North, the County of *Nice* on the East, and *Provence* on the South and West. For a long time it belong'd to the Family of *Grimaldi*; who had a very just Title to it; but the Senate of *Nice* having condemn'd *Hannibal Grimaldi*, Count of *Bueil*, as guilty of Treason, under the Reign of *Charles Emanuel*, confiscated all his Estate. *Andrew Grimaldi* his Son, was restored to it by Prince *Maurice*; but by some secret Article of the Accommodation, agreed upon between this Prince and the Dutchess of *Savoy* the 14th of *July*, 1642. She, without either approving or disapproving what *Maurice* had done in favour of this *Andrew*, promis'd to allow him 30000 Livers per Annum during the Minority of the Duke of *Savoy*, her Son: And that, till he should be of Age to do him Justice, he should remove out of the Dominions of *Savoy* with all his Family: Since which time, neither he nor his Children have been able to obtain Satisfaction for this Usurpation. The Town of *Boglio* or *Bueil*, stands on the Frontiers of *Provence*, about 30 Miles from *Nice* to the North, and 40 from *Pignerol* to the South.

The Principality of *Oneille* or *Oneglia, Onelis Tractus*, is almost enclosed within the West part of the *Genovese*. It formerly belong'd to the Family of *Doria*; till *Jerom Doria*, either exchang'd it for some other Lands, or sold it to *Emanuel Philibert* Duke of *Savoy*, in the Year, 1576. *Charles Emanuel* erected it into a Principality, by his Letters Patents dated at *Turin*, the 17th. of *December*, 1620. It comprehends the Lordships of *Marro* and *Prela*, which are very fertile and well Peopled Countries. The Town of *Oneglia* or *Oneille* stands upon the Sea, about 10 Miles from *Nice* to the West, 20 from *Vintimeglia*, and as many from *Monдови* to the South: And drives a great Trade in *Oyl*.



# ITALY.

## CHAP. I. Of ITALY in General.



**I**TALY, as it was anciently the most famous Country in the World, being the Seat of the glorious Roman Empire, from whence Laws and Decrees were issued out almost over all the then

known World, for the Government of those mighty States and powerful Kingdoms which it had swallowed up and brought under its Subjection; So it is at this time one of the most Fertile, and on many Accounts



Accounts most delightful Countries on Earth. If one does consider the vast number of valiant and prudent Generals, as *Camillus*, *Fabius Maximus*, the *Scipios*, *Pompey*, *Cæsar*, &c. The famous Orators, as, *Cicero*, *Hortensius*, *Antonius*, &c. the Admirable and almost inspir'd Poets, as *Virgil*, *Ovid*, *Catullus*, *Tibullus*, *Plautus*, *Terence*, *Horace*, *Juvenal*, *Perseus*, &c. all excellent in their kind; the renowned Historians, as, *Livy*, *Tacitus*, *Salust*, &c. I say if one should consider all these, and besides, the stupendous and lasting Monuments of Power and Wealth, such as, particularly, their Publick Buildings, Causeways, and such like, he must necessarily confess, that never any Country had more advantages than this has had; inasmuch, that the Gods and Muses seem to have been emulously concern'd to make it the Glory and Envy of the World in those Days, as it is the Wonder and Admiration of all who see it in these. And altho' the Art of War and Arms flourish'd more in this Country anciently than it does now, when the softer Arts, of *Painting*, *Architecture*, *Musick*, &c. seem to be the chief Study and Employment of the Inhabitants; yet it cannot be said that the former has been quite neglected, or that the Muses have forsaken this Country. *Thomas Aquinas*, *Beaumont*, and *Baronius*, were great Divines in their way: *Rodolphus Valterranus*, and *Picus Mirandula*, were good Humanists; *Ficinus*, *Cardan*, *Galileo*, *Torricelli*, *Malpoggi*, *Borelli*, *Redi*, &c. good Mathematicians and Philosophers; *Panigarelle* and *Loredano* good Orators; *Guicciardine*, *Bentivoglio*, *Davila*, and *Strada*, excellent Historians; *Tasso* and *Ariosto*, famous Poets, and *Raphael*, *Michael Angelo*, *Titian*, &c. admirable Painters.

As for the NAMES of this Country, it has had several, as *Hesperia*, *Saturnia*, *Ausonia*, *Oenotria*, and *Latium*, which, tho' they were but the Names of particular Parts of it at first, were used by the ancient *Grecians* to signify the whole; and in that they were imitated afterwards by the Latin Poets. How it came to be call'd *Italia*, is much (and perhaps too nicely) disputed among the Antiquaries; some deriving it from the Greek word *Ἰταλῆς*, which signifies the same as *Taurus*, a Bull; because this Country abounded with such, of an extraordinary size, and very beautiful. Others, with greater probability, bring it from one *Italus*, King of the *Siculi*, who first inhabited *Sabina* and *Latium*; and that this Name afterwards was given to the whole Country betwixt the *Alpes* and the *Streights* of *Messina*, or *Il Faro de Messina*. There are several other Accounts of it, but we hope the Reader will excuse the omitting them here; or if he has a mind to know more of this Matter, he may consult *Bochart* and others, who have laboured abundantly in that sort of Criticism.

Nature seems to have had more than ordinary care of this Country, in giving it so convenient a Situation; it being bounded on the North with the *Alpes*, on the East with the River *Arso*, in *Histria*, and the Gulf of *Venice*, on the South with the *Tuscan Sea*, on the West by the *Alpes* and the River *Var*. Its length (according to *Cicero*) from *Acuste*, a Town at the Foot of the Mountain call'd *Great S. Bernard*, to *Ragusa*, and the *Capo del Armi*, is about 900 Miles. Its breadth is different, but under the *Alpes* it is about 350 Miles broad. It lies between 26 and 33 degrees Longitude, and 37 and 46 Latitude; the figure of it resembling a Man's Leg; and some, who trace this Comparison a little nicely say,

that the end of it serves to kick *Sicily* into the Sea; tho' indeed I should think this Island deserved better Treatment from *Italy*; for it was very useful to the ancient *Romans*, by reason of its Fertility and great Product of Corn; and the modern *Italians*, no doubt, are often beholden to it. They say farther, that the Toes of it appear at the *Faro* of *Messina*, the Heel about *Otranto*, the Soal towards *Mount S. Angelo*, the Calf about *Ancena*, the Ham about *Ravenna*, the Kneetowards *Piombino* and the Port of *Leghorn*, and the Thigh towards the *Alpes*.

The SOIL, generally over all *Italy* is very good, and watered with a good number of Rivers, whose Courses are not long by reason the Country is not very broad; and the Air (some Places in the Ecclesiastical State excepted) healthful and pretty temperate; but after hot Days the Nights are found to be very cold in comparison. The Product of *Italy* is, Corn, Grapes of several kinds, of which many sorts of Wine are made, Oranges, Citrons, Lemons, Pomegranates, and Olives, whose Oyl turns to good account. And in the South part of it, are some Sugar, Almonds, and abundance of Mulberry-Trees, which have render'd that Country famous for its Silk Manufactories. Their Meadows are well stock'd with Bufflers and other sorts of Cattle, as their Forests are with great variety of Game. There are likewise in this Country Rocks of Alabaster, and a rich kind of Jasper; also Mines of Iron, Allom, Sulphur, Gold and Silver.

The most considerable Rivers are, the *Po*, the *Tyber*, the *Arno*, the *Adige*, the *Adda*, and the *Tesin*. The chief Lakes are those of *Como*, *Isco Luzano*, *Garda*, that of *Trafimenus*, *Ulsin*, *Braciano*, *Tuinas*, *Fundi*, *Lago di Castello*, *Gendafho*, *Celano*, *Andera*, *Param Lescino*, and that of *Bolsano*. The most remarkable Mountains are, the *Alpes*, the *Apennines*, *Mount Misso*, *Mount Barbaro*, *Vesuvius*, and *Mount S. Angelo*.

*Italy* hath been differently divided by the Ancients, according as Nations shifted their Habitations or mingled with one another. After vast Numbers of the *Gauls*, who liv'd betwixt the Ocean, the *Rhine*, the *Alpes*, the *Mediterranean Sea* and the *Pyrenees*, had cross'd the *Alpes*, and taken Possession of that part of *Italy* which lies between the *Alpes* and the *Apennines*, as far as the River *Æsis*, or *Esino*, the *Romans* call'd that Country *Gallia Italica*, and *Gallia Citerior*, and *Cisalpine*, and *Gallia Circumpadana*, and also *Tigata*, because they had assum'd the *Roman Habit* as well as their Customs; whereas that on the other side was call'd *Gallia Comata*, because the Inhabitants used to wear their Hair long. The Emperor *Augustus*, as *Pliny* relates, divided *Italy* into 11 Regions, viz. *Liguria*, *Ætruria*, *Latium*, *Campania Felix*, *Sannium*, *Picenum*, *Umbria*, *Gallia Tigrata*, *Gallia Transpadana*, *Venetia* and *Istria*. *Strabo* divided it into 8 Regions or Parts, viz. *Venetia*, *Liguria*, *Picenum*, *Lucania*, *Tuscia*, *Roma*, *Campania*, and *Apulia*. *Antoninus* the Emperor in his Itinerary, divides it into 16 Provinces; and *Prohemius* into 45 Nations or People. After the Dignity and Seat of the *Roman Empire* was translated to *Germany*, *Italy* was at several times strangely harass'd and torn in a great many little Pieces, which were establish'd into Principalities, Duchies, Counties, and Marquissates, as the Marquissate of *Istria*, the Duchy of *Friuli*, the Duchy of *Milan*, the Duchy of *Mantua*, and a great many more. *Italy*, as it is now, may be very fitly divided according to the several Sovereignities in it; of which we shall treat afterwards. Who



Who the first Inhabitants of *Ita'y* were, is a very hard matter to tell, it being so long ago since it was first Peopled. Whether any one People sometime after the Flood came into this Country and in time spread themselves over it all, or whether different People at different times came in'o it and possess'd themselves of such Parts of it as they found uninhabited, and gave different Names to the Places where they settled, is more than can be well determin'd. The *Aufenes* are said to be the most ancient, and to have possess'd the most Southern Parts of *Italy*, where the *Brutii* and *Lucani* liv'd afterwards; next to these the *Opici* and *Ofci*, who liv'd in *Campania* and *Samnium*; then the *Siculi*, in *Sabina* and *Latinum*; the *Umbri*, whose Territories reach'd between the *Mare Superum*, or *Hadriatick*, and *Inferum*, or *Tyrrhenian Sea*; next to these the *Tusci*, whose Country reach'd as far as the *Alpes*; and next to them again the *Ligures*, whose Dominions reach'd as far into *Gallia* as the *Rhone*; beyond these were the *Veneti*, whom some will have to be come from *Illyricum*, others from the *Hereti*, a People in *Paphlagonia*. The *Gauls* drove out the *Tusci*, as these did the *Umbri* out of their Territories. A certain People, call'd *Oenotrii* from their Leader, drove the *Aufenes* out of their foresaid Habitations, and forc'd them to seek themselves a new Seat as far North as the River *Luis* or *Borigliano*, and *Vulturnus*, or *Volturno*; and not satisfied with that, they likewise expell'd the *Siculi* out of their Country, and assum'd the Name of *Aborigines*, as they did afterwards that of *Latini*. The *Sabini* were descended from the *Opici*, of those came the *Picentes*, *Vestini*, *Marfi*, *Prentani*, *Peligni*, *Maruccini*, *Samnites*, and from these the *Campani*, *Lucani*, and the *Brutii*. In the mean time several Families arriving from *Greece*, at different times, fill'd all the Sea Coast along the *Mare Superum* and *Inferum*, and built many good Towns; and by this means, as *Strabo* and *Trogus* relate, *Italy* and *Sicily* came to be call'd *Magna Græcia*. But other People having expell'd the *Grecians* out of most of their Possessions, forc'd them to confine themselves within that which afterwards was call'd *Magna Græcia*, and is now call'd *Calabria Superior*. But after the *Roman State* was become powerful, and had subdued all *Italy*, it continued under the *Roman Jurisdiction*, divided and distinguished into Regions and People, as we've said already, 'till the time of *Honorius* the Emperor; when the *Goths*, *Vandals*, and *Heruli*, People of *Germany*, and the *Huns* passing the *Alpes*, invaded this whole Country, and divided it into several little Kingdoms and States. *Justinian* having driven out all these, establish'd the *Exarchat* of *Ravenna*, whilst *Rome* lay in its Ruins. At last the *Longobards* having taken *Ravenna*, establish'd their Kingdom in *Gallia Togara*; but they were rooted out by the Valour and Conduct of *Pepin King of France*, and his Son *Charlemain*, who had been call'd into *Italy* for that end by the Pope; to whom he gave a great part of the Revenues of that Country, reserving to himself the Sovereignty. *Pepin* died in the Year 768. and *Charlemain* was Crown'd Emperor in 800.

I am in hope the Reader will not think himself abused, or look upon it as a thing foreign to a Work of this Nature, if we refresh his Memory a little here with some few Hints concerning the Rise, Progress and Fall of the *Roman Empire*. Every Body almost knows that the first Inhabitants of *Rome* were a sorry Rabble of indigent People, and the very Dregs of *Italy*; who might justly be call'd a Den

of Wolves, since they liv'd by continual Robberies, and thirsted after their Neighbours Goods and Blood. The hand-breadth of Ground which they first possess'd, was too little to maintain a considerable number of People; and therefore they must either have always remain'd Beggars, or cut out their Fortunes with their Swords. As mean and inconsiderable as their beginning was, by the Valour of some of their Kings, and prudent Management of others, and afterwards by the good Qualifications of their Generals, and Wisdom of their Senate, they grew up to such a Pitch of Power and Glory, that never any State on Earth was able to equal, much less to excel them. One good Politick of theirs was, that they no sooner conquer'd a Nation, than they transplanted the best and richest Men of it to *Rome*, and sent *Romans* in their Places. *Athens* and *Lacedæmon* seldom naturaliz'd Strangers; but *Rome* observ'd that good Politick, *Romulus* its Founder having set the Copy; for 'tis said of him, That he us'd to receive as Citizens of *Rome* in the Evening, those with whom he had fought in the Morning. *Servius Tullius* did prudently correct a considerable Mistake in the former Reigns; for under them it was allow'd that every Body without distinction should serve in the Wars; whereas he ordered that only the ablest and most wealthy Citizens (except upon extraordinary Occasions) should serve as Soldiers, who were to equip themselves according to their Ability; wisely considering, that their Wealth was a Pledge of their Fidelity; and by fighting valiantly for their Country, they secur'd their private Possessions; whereas a poor Man carries all his Wealth with him; and if he has a Prospect of being better with the Enemy, 'twill be no hard matter to persuade him to desert his own Party. And after this Custom grew out of fashion, in the time of the Emperors, yet they us'd to keep part of the Soldiers Arrears behind, to secure the Fidelity of the Army, which was never clear'd 'till they were dismiss'd.

Never any but *Porfenna* and the *Gauls* were able to bring them to dishonourable Conditions of Peace; the first having oblig'd them to give Hostages, that they should make no Iron-work, but what was requisite to Till the Ground; the other, forcing them to prevent the utter Ruin of *Rome* by a Sum of Money. For the Story of *Camillus's* coming up just at the time of weighing out of the Gold, and driving the *Gauls* from the Capitol, is look'd upon by many as fabulous. The former of these the *Roman Writers* have cautiously avoided to speak of, as they have taken care to disguise the other. These, I think, are the only Instances. Upon all other Occasions they did bear their Misfortunes and Losses with the greatest Fortitude and Constancy imaginable, and sometimes rather deliver'd up their Generals, and suffer'd their Soldiers to be made Slaves than agree to base and disadvantageous Conditions. It is very well known that their Form of Government was various. They began with the Kingly, which lasted 242 Years, 'till *Sixtus Tarquinius* gave some sort of Pretence for altering it, by his ravishing *Lucretia*. The Fact was abominable, 'tis true, and *Junius Brutus* had good reason to be angry; but whether his and the Peoples Resentment ought to have been carried so high, is more than I will say. For (as the judicious *Puffendorf* observes) a Fact, tho' never so criminal, committed by a Son, without the Knowledge and Consent of his Father, ought not to be prejudicial to the Father and Family; much less could be a pretence to depose a King from a Throne which



be lawfully possess'd; especially since to take Vengeance of Criminals belongs to the King, and not to the Subjects. After the Expulsion of the Kings, an Aristocratical Form of Government was introduced, which prov'd as heavy a Yoke to the Necks of the People as the former. For at that time there were no written Laws in *Rome*; and the Nobility being in Possession of all publick Offices, gave Sentence more according to Favour and Affection than Justice. And the Citizens being obliged to serve in the Wars at their own Charge, became miserably exhausted, and were forc'd to borrow from the richer sort; and not being able to pay their Debts, were grievously oppress'd by their Creditors, and at last reduc'd to that degree of Despair that they unanimously left the City. Neither could they be persuaded to return, before the Senate had agreed to constitute Magistrates, call'd Tribunes of the People, who were to protect the Commons against the Nobility; which, as it form'd a new Division in the State at that time, did afterwards afford perpetual Fuel for Civil Divisions, 'til at last they broke out into Civil Wars, and sheath'd their Swords in each others Bowels.

After this Common-wealth, notwithstanding all those intestine Commotions and Divisions, had arriv'd to its highest Pitch of greatness, it return'd again to a Monarchy, tho' not of the best kind. *Augustus*, as he laid the Foundation of it, so by his wise and prudent Management he seem'd to have settled it pretty well; but the Nobility not being able to brook the Government of one Person, who was rais'd by the Soldiers, without their Consent, was always for recovering their ancient Liberty; which obliged the succeeding Emperors, first to weaken, and afterwards extinguish the Power and Splendor of this Order, insomuch that within the space of 200 Years, few of them were left, and upstart Favourites put in their Places. Thus the Senate and People became empty Names; and the Emperors were no more than the Creatures of the Army: And as double Pay and great Presents purchas'd them the Favour of the Soldiers, and procur'd them the Title; so the want of Money to support themselves withal, was thought sufficient ground for taking away their Lives, to make way for another whose Coffers were fuller. Hence came nothing but Misery and Confusion in the *Roman Empire*: And oftentimes the bravest Princes were basely murder'd, and some of the lowest Rank and meanest Capacity set up in their Room: And sometimes two or more were declar'd Emperors, by several parts of the Army, who made horrid slaughter among the Citizens in deciding their Titles to the Empire. As this did mightily weaken the Strength of this vast Body, so *Constantine* the Great hasten'd its Fall, by transferring the Imperial Court to *Constantinople*, and sending away the veterane Legions which guarded the Frontiers of the Empire along the *Danube* and *Rhine*, to the Eastern Parts, whereby the Western Provinces, destitute of their Guards, became a Prey to other Nations. After the Western Empire had fallen into the Hands of the *Germans*, *Goths*, *Vandals*, *Suevians*, *Franks*, and others, the Eastern Provinces remain'd for a great many hundred Years after, 'till at last the City of *Constantinople* being storm'd and taken by the *Turks*, in the Year 1453. this part of the *Roman Empire* also was brought to its fatal Period, and *Constantinople* made the Place of the ordinary Residence of the *Ottoman Emperors*.

The Roman Emperors who resided in *Italy*.

A. M.

3918. 1. *Julius Caesar*, the last Dictator, and first Emperor.

3923. 2. *C. Octavius Caesar Augustus*, in whose time J. Christ was born.

A. C.

17. 3. *Tiberius Nero*, *Augustus's* Son-in-Law.

39. 4. *Caius Caligula*.

43. 5. *Claudius Caesar*.

57. 6. *Domitius Nero*, the last of the *Cæsars*, and first publick Persecutor of the Christians.

70. 7. *Sergius Galba*.

8. *Salvius Otho*.

9. *Aulus Vitellius*.

71. 10. *Flavius Vespasianus*.

80. 11. *Titus Vespasianus*, the brave and fortunate Conqueror of the *Jews*.

82. 12. *Flavius Domitianus*, the second Persecutor of the Christians.

97. 13. *Nerva Cocceius*, the first Emperor that was not a *Roman* born.

99. 14. *Ulpus Trajanus*, a *Spaniard*, and Persecutor of the Christians.

118. 15. *Ælius Adrianus*, who continued the Persecution.

138. 16. *Antoninus Pius*.

162. 17. *Marcus Antoninus*, the Philosopher, who associated *L. Verus* in the Government, and Persecuted the Christians.

181. 18. *L. Antonius Commodus*.

194. 19. *Ælius Pertinax*, made Emperor against his Will.

23. *Didius Julianus*.

195. 21. *Septimius Severus*, the fifth Persecutor of Christians.

213. 22. *Basianus Caracalla*.

220. 23. *Opilius Macrinus*.

221. 24. *Varius Heliogabalus*.

225. 25. *Alexander Severus*.

238. 26. *Maximinus*, a Man meanly Born, and sixth Persecutor of the Christians.

241. 27. *Gordian*, Elected by the Senate against *Maximinus*.

247. 28. *Philip an Arabian*, suppos'd to be a Christian,

252. 29. *Decius*, the seventh Persecutor of the Church.

254. 30. *Gallius Hostilianus*.

256. 31. *Æmilianus*, the Moor.

256. 32. *Valerianus*, the eighth Persecutor of the Church,

33. *Gallienus*, Son to *Valerianus*.

271. 34. *Claudius II.* who abdicated in favour of

272. 35. *Quintillus*, his Brother, who reign'd but 17 Days.

272. 36. *Valerianus Aurelianus*, a great Persecutor of the Church.

279. 37. *Amnius Tacitus*.

38. *Florianus*, who reign'd only 2 Months:

280. 39. *Valerius Probus*.

286. 40. *Aurelius Carus*, with his Sons *Carinus* and *Numerianus*.

288. 41. *Dioclesian*, the tenth Persecutor of the Church, resign'd the Government and liv'd a private Life at *Salona*.

308. 42. *Constantius Chlorus*, with *Galerius*, *Severus*, *Maximianus*, &c.



310. 43. *Constantine* the Great, the first Christian Emperor, who removed the Seat of the Empire from *Rome* to *Constantinople*, and divided the Empire into several Independent Sovereignties among his three Sons, allotting to *Constantinus*, *Greece*, *Thrace* and all the Provinces of the East; to *Constans*, *Italy*, *Illyricum* and *Affrick*; to *Constantine*, *Gaul*, *Spain* and *Britain*.

#### The Western Emperors.

341. 1. *Constans*, the youngest Son of *Constantine* the Great, sole Emperor of the West, after the Death of his Brother *Constantine*.  
 354. 2. *Constantius*, who after the Death of both his Brothers, re-united the Empire.  
 3. *Valentinian*, Emperor of the West, while *Valens* ruled the East,  
 4. *Valentinian* the II.  
 377. 5. *Honorius* the II. Son of *Theodosius* the Emperor.  
 425. 6. *Valentinian* the III.  
 455. 7. *Maximus*, who kill'd *Valentinian* the III. and was himself ston'd to Death by his own Soldiers.  
 456. 8. *Avitus*  
 457. 9. *Majoranus*.  
 461. 10. *Severus*.  
 467. 11. *Anthemius*.  
 471. 12. *Olybrius*, who reign'd only 4 Months.  
 472. 13. *Glycerius*.  
 14. *Julius Nepos*.  
 473. 15. *Augustulus*, vanquish'd by *Odoacer* King of the *Heruli*, &c.

As to the Forms of Government and Administration of Justice in *Italy*, the Reader is to expect that in the particular Description of the several Sovereignties in it; and so we go on to the

GENIUS and CUSTOMS of the *Italians*, They are generally very Ingenious, ready Witted, and of great Application in Study and Business: Of a middle Temper, between the starchy Gravity of a *Spaniard*, and the Levity of a *French* Man. They have a great Sense of Gratitude, and are willing and ready upon all Occasions to return a Favour done them, tho' never so inconsiderable; but on the other Hand, they are revengeful in the highest degree, and cannot forget Injuries. They have a great Affection towards their Kindred and Alliance; and are very Ambitious of Honours and Preferment. To keep the World and themselves in Mind that they are the Successors of the old *Romans*, they mightily affect their ancient Names with a variation, as, *Camillo*, *Scipione*, *Julio*, *Mario*, *Pompeio* &c. For all their Gravity, there's no People on Earth that can Act a Buffoon, Mimick or Scaramouch, comparable to them. They shun all occasions of Quarrelling, especially with Strangers; to whom they are very Civil and Courteous, after once you have got their Acquaintance. They are great Lovers of Liberty; and therefore in many Places Discourses and Books about former Revolutions are forbid. The *Italian* Nobility and Gentry live most in Towns, and lay out their Money more upon fine Houses and Gardens, Pictures, Statues, and such Things as may contribute to the adorning

their Houses; and upon fine Coaches and a handsome Retinue of Servants (who are for the most part at Board-wages) than on luxurious Tables and strong Liquors; which is too common in other parts of *Europe*. If there are two or more Brothers in a Family, it often happens that only one of them Marries, commonly the Eldest; and the rest live upon Purchase. In many Places they have Hospitals for entertaining Pilgrims and poor Travellers; and others for nursing and bringing up Children, whom Fear or Shame obliges the Parents to expose. When they lay them down, they have no more to do but ring a Bell, and tell the Officer that comes for the Child, whether it be Baptized or not. The *Italians* are the most scrupulously nice upon all the little Punctilios of Civility of any People in the World, and profusely lavish of their Complements and high Titles: And know exactly how to receive and entertain Persons of all Ranks and Conditions. They never Whisper in any Company, or Talk in another Language, or interrupt any Man before he has done what he had a mind to say; and nothing is thought more odious among them than Slandering and Backbiting. They never visit Persons of Note without first sending them Word. The Right Hand is more Honourable than the Left, when two Walk together, and the middle when Three. Their Conversation is very Civil and Obliging, nor does the greatest Familiarity make them forget their courteous Carriage.

They have some Customs more peculiar to themselves, such as their reckoning their Hours from Sun-set to Sun-set, as the *Athenians* of old did. They Sleep commonly two Hours after Dinner. They make their Children go Bare-headed till they are five Years old, to harden them and prevent Catarrhs when they come to be old. Their Women affect yellow Hair, as the *Roman* Ladies and Courtezans did of old, and have a particular Wash for it. After the Men have been abroad visiting or so, they throw off their Hat, Bands and Cuffs; and put on a Gray Coat and a Cap, which they commonly Dine in. When they call one at a Distance, they point to him with their Finger downwards, looking upon't as an Affront to do it upwards. At their Meals, they begin with their Roast Meat and end with their Pottage; and Roast their Meat very dry. Boyl'd Snails serv'd up with Pepper and Oyl, and fry'd Frogs serv'd up the same way, are in great esteem. They commonly eat *Kites*, *Hawks*, *Magpies*, *Jackdaws*, and several other lesser Birds which are not us'd here: And drink their Wine in Winter as well as in Summer out of Snow.

The *Italian* Language is the old *Latin* corrupted by the *Goths*, *Vandals* and other Nations. In *Savoy* and *Piedmont* the *French* is generally Spoke. There are in *Italy* above 30 Archbishopricks; and the inferior Bishopricks, as they are generally small, so they are almost innumerable. There are also 12 Universities, viz. *Padua*, *Venice*, *Turin*, *Pavia*, *Siena*, *Bononia*, *Rome*, *Ferrara*, *Macerata*, *Fermo*, *Naples* and *Salerno*. *Bononia* was formerly Famous for the Study of the *Roman* Laws, as *Salerno* was for that of Medicine. There are several of the most considerable Cities and Towns in *Italy* that have peculiar Epithets commonly given them, as, *Rome* the *Holy*, because it is the Seat of the Pope; *Naples* the *Noble*, because of the great Number of Nobility and Gentry that are in it: *Florence* the *Fair*, because of the stateliness of the Houses, and the broadness and cleanness of its Streets; *Venice* the



*Ricb*, because of its Power and great Riches; *Genova* the *Stately*, because of its magnificent Buildings; *Milan* the *Great*, because of its Largeness and great number of Inhabitants; *Ravenna* the *Ancient*, because it is so; *Padua* the *Learned*, because there Learning flourish'd; *Bononia* the *Fat*, because of the Excellency of the Soil about it: *Leghorn* the *Merchandizing*; *Verona* the *Charming*; *Lucca* the *Jolly*; *Casal* the *Strong*, &c

As we have said already, *Italy* cannot be more fully divided, considering the present State of it, and by whom it is now possess'd, than according to the several Dominions and Sovereignies that are in it, viz. those of the King of *Spain*, the *Pope*, the *Republick* of *Venice*, the *Great Duke* of *Tuscany*, the *Republick* of *Genova*, the *Duke* of *Parma*, the *Duke* of *Savoy* in *Piedmont*, the *Swissers* beyond the *Lakes* of *Maggiore* and *Como*. The *Grisons* in the *Alpes*, the *Arch-Duke* of *Austria* in *Tirol*, *Friuli* and *Istria*, the *Duke* of *Modena*, the *Duke* of *Mantua*, the *Duke* of *Urbino*, the *City* of *Lucca*, the *Count* of *Mirandola*, and the *Republick* of *St. Marino*. But because throughout all this Work we have observ'd one Order of describing the Kingdoms and Countries according as they are situated next to one another, (tho' perhaps describing the Dominions of particular Princes altogether, however they may be dispers'd, as those of *Spain* are in *Italy*, would be no ill Method) we shall begin with that part of *Italy* that lies next to *France*, and so go on to the most Southern Parts of it, in the same Order as you see in the following Table.

- I. The Dominions of the Duke of Savoy in Piedmont.
- II. The Coasts of Genova.
- III. The Marquisate of Montserrat.
- IV. The Dutchy of Milan.
- V. The Dutchy of Parma.
- VI. The Dutchy of Modena.
- VII. The Dutchy of Mantua.
- VIII. The Republick of Venice.
- IX. The Republick of Lucca.
- X. The Dominions of the Duke of Tuscany.
- XI. The Ecclesiastical State.
- XII. The Republick of St. Marino.
- XIII. The Kingdom of Naples.
- XIV. The Islands of Sicily, Corsica, Sardinia, &c.

Which are subdivided thus:

- I. Piedmont divided into 10 Parts, Chief Town.
  1. Piedmont proper, whereof the Ch. T. is Turin.
  2. French Piedmont. Pignerol.
  3. The Lordship of Verceil. Verceil.
  4. The Principality of Masseran. Masseran.
  5. The Marquisate of Furea. Furea.
  6. The County of Asti. Asti.
  7. The Marquisate of Susa. Susa.
  8. The Marquisate of Saluzzo. Saluzzo.
  9. The Valleys of the Vaudois. Pragelas.
  10. The Principality of Boglio. Boglio.
- II. The Coasts of Genova comprehending,
  - The Dominions of the Republick. Genova:
  - The Principality of Monaco. Monaco:
  - Several Towns belonging to other States.

- III. The Dutchy of Montserrat, divided between,
  - The Duke of Savoy. Ales.
  - The French King till the late Peace, possess'd Casal.
  - The Duke of Mantua. Acqui.

- IV. The Dutchy of Milan. Milan
- V. The Dutchy of Parma. Parma
- VI. The Dutchy of Modena. Modena.
- VII. The Dutchy of Mantua. Mantua.
- VIII. The Republick of Venice, divided into
  - The Terra Firma. Venice.
  - The Territories of Paduano, Veronese, &c.
  - Several Towns on the Coast of Dalmatia.
  - Several Islands in the Adriatick Sea.
  - Several Islands in the Archipelago.

- IX. The Republick of Lucca. Lucca.
- X. The Dominions of the Great Duke of Tuscany.
  - Divided into the Territories of
    - of Florence.
    - of Pisa.
    - of Sienna.

- XI. The Pope's Dominions, which contain,
  - The Campaign of R O M E. Viterbo.
  - St. Peter's Patrimony. Orvieto.
  - Sabina. Magliana.
  - Ombria, or the Dutchy of Spoleto.
  - The Country of Perugia.
  - The Marquisate of Ancona.
  - The Dutchy of Urbino.
  - Ravenna.
  - Bologna.
  - Ferrara.

- XII. The little Republick of St. Marino.

- XIII. The Kingdom of Naples divided into 12 Parts.
  1. The Province of Lavarò. Naples.
  2. The farther Principality. Benevento.
  3. The higher Principality. Salerno.
  4. Basilicata. Acerenza.
  5. The higher Calabria. Cosenza.
  6. The farther Calabria. Reggio.
  7. The higher Abruzzo. Chieti.
  8. The farther Abruzzo. Aquila.
  9. The County of Molise. Bolano.
  10. The Province of Capiciana. Manfredonia.
  11. The Province of Bari. Bari.
  12. The Province of Otranto. Otranto.

- XIV. The Islands on the Coasts of Italy.
  - Sicily divided into 3 Parts, the Valleys of
    - Palermo.
    - Messina.
    - Nolo.
  - Sardinia divided into 2 Parts.
    - Capo di Cagliari.
    - Capo di Lagudori.
  - Corsica. Bastia.
  - The Liparean Isles,
    - Lipari.
    - Volcano.
    - Stromboli.
    - Lisca Bianca.
  - 7 in Number.
    - Le Saline.
    - Paschu.
    - Felicur.
  - Islands lying along the
    - Capri.
    - Ischia.
    - Ponza.
    - Gibbio.
  - Coast of Italy, between the Liparean and Genoa,
    - Elba.
    - Capraria.
    - Gorgona.



## C H A P. II

## P I E D M O N T.

*Piedmont*, *Pedemontium*, owes its Name to its Situation, at the Foot of the Mountains. It was anciently call'd *Gallia Subalpina*, and is bounded (according to *Baudrand* and others) with the *Dutchy of Milan* and *Montferrat* on the East, the *Genouois* and the *County of Nice* on the South, *Dauphine* and *Savoy* on the West, and the *Dutchy of Aouste* and a small part of the *Dutchy of Milan* on the North: And divided into two Parts by the River *Po*. It is about 140 Miles long, South and North, and 100 broad, East and West. *Charles Emanuel*, Duke of *Savoy*, divided it into 12 Parts or Provinces, to which his Successor, Duke *Victor Amadee*, added 4 more: So that now (according to *Franciscus Augustinus*, Bishop of *Saluzzo*) it is divided into 16 Provinces.

*Theodorick*, King of the *Goths*, having vanquish'd *Odoacer*, King of *Italy*, gave this Country to the *Hermuli*, who were subdu'd by the *Lombards*; whose 17th King, *Aripert*, gave it to the Church of *Rome*; but it lying far off, and not being confirm'd by his Successors, at the Subversion of that Kingdom, it fell into the Hands of the Kings of *Italy*, of the House of *Charles the Great*. *Thomas* and *Peter*, Counts of *Savoy*, made themselves Masters of the greatest part of it by force of Arms; the former in the Year 1210. the latter in the Year 1256. since which time the eldest Son of *Savoy* is styl'd Prince of *Piedmont*. The Marquisate of *Saluzzo* (which we shall have occasion to speak of afterwards) was annex'd to it by the Marriage of a Daughter of this Family with *Charles* Duke of *Savoy*, An. 1481.

*Piedmont*, as it is a very fertile and rich Country, so it is also one of the most pleasant and plentiful in all *Italy*. It produces plenty of Corn, Wine, Fruit, Hemp, Flax, Metals, and affords good store of Cattle, and every thing fit for the use and delight of Man; and is so populous, that the *Italians* us'd to say, *That the Duke of Savoy had but one City in Italy 300 Miles in Compass*. Notwithstanding the different Divisions that have been made of this Country at several times, as we said before, it may not improperly be divided now into 10 Parts: Altho' one of them, call'd the *French Piedmont*, was restor'd to the Duke of *Savoy*, by the Treaty of Peace at *Turin*, An. 1696. The 10 Parts are,

- |                                          |   |                                         |
|------------------------------------------|---|-----------------------------------------|
| 1. <i>Piedmont</i> , properly so call'd. | } | 7. The Marq. of <i>Susa</i> .           |
| 2. <i>French Piedmont</i> .              |   | 8. The Marq. of <i>Saluzzo</i> .        |
| 3. The Lordsh. of <i>Vercell</i> .       | } | 9. The Valleys of the <i>Vaudois</i> .  |
| 4. The Prin. of <i>Masseran</i> .        |   | 10. The Principality of <i>Boglio</i> . |
| 5. The Marq. of <i>Furea</i> .           | } |                                         |
| 6. The County of <i>Asti</i> .           |   |                                         |

*Piedmont*, properly so call'd, is bounded with *Montferrat* on the East, the Territories of *Genova* on the South, the Marquisate of *Saluzzo* on the West, and that of *Susa* and a part of *Montferrat* on the North. The principal Cities and Towns in it are,

<i>Turin</i> , Ch.	}	<i>Ceva</i> .	}	<i>Chieri</i> .
<i>Fossano</i> .		<i>Savillano</i> .		<i>Moncallier</i> .
<i>Mondovi</i> .	}	<i>Coni</i> .	}	<i>Orbasson</i> .
<i>Carignan</i> .		<i>Cerasco</i> .		<i>Vigon</i> .

*Turin*, *Augusta Taurinorum*, and *Taurinum*. *Pliny* and *Ptolemy* place it in *Gallia Subalpina*. *Livy* and *Appianus Alexandrinus* call it *Taurasia*, and *Stephanus Taurenia*. This City is seated at the end of a Charming Plain, upon the River *Po*, which furnishes it abundantly with all Necessaries and Conveniences of Life. It is enclos'd with strong Walls, and surrounded with broad, deep, and well lin'd Ditches. The Citadel is a Master-piece of Fortification; and the present Duke has done all he can to make it Impregnable. The Streets of the new Town are broad and strait; but the old Town is very irregular, the Streets narrow and crooked, and the Houses not worth looking at. The publick Places in the new are Spacious; the Palaces are the noblest Improvements of Architecture, the Paintings, Guilding and other Ornaments of the Churches are suitable to the Beauty of the Buildings; the Shops are all well furnish'd, and the Academies for Riding, Dancing and Martial Exercises, well provided with Masters; and in short, hardly any thing wanting to make it a most glorious City. And to compleat the Glories of the Place, there is a Court, that, notwithstanding its Smallness, may be justly reckon'd the Seat of Gallantry and Politeness. All the Ornaments of this City are Modern; except what's to be seen in the Duke's Gallery, there's scarce any thing of Antiquity here. It is full of all sorts of fine Paintings, rare Manuscripts, Medals, Vases, and other Curiosities of that Nature. There is lately added to the Cathedral Church, dedicated to *St. John*, a Chappel of surprizing Beauty and Riches. It was Built on purpote in Honour of the Holy Sheet, or Cloth (as they say) in which our Saviour was wrapt at his Burial, and upon which the Image of his Face was miraculously stamp'd. The University was erected here under the Pontificat of *Benedict XIII*. An. 1405. and the Citadel built by *Emanuel Philibert*, Duke of *Savoy*, An. 1565. which, notwithstanding its great Strength, was taken by the *French*, under the Command of Count *Harcourt*, An. 1640. But both that and the City have been so exceedingly well Fortified by the present Duke of *Savoy*, that it was able to resist the vigorous Attacks of the *French* for 3 Months in the Year 1706. at the end of which, Sept. 6. the Duke of *Savoy* being reinforc'd by the Imperial Army under Prince *Eugene*, they rais'd the Siege, and obtain'd a most signal Victory. It stands in the Lat. of 44. 40. about 12 Miles from *Pignerol* to the North East, 45 from *Vercelli*, 25 from *Asti* to the West, and 80 from *Genova* to the North West, 70 from the *Mediterranean Sea* to the North, and 100 from the Lake of *Geneva* to the South.

*Fossano*, *Fossanum*, so call'd from the wholesome Springs that are in its Neighbourhood. It was built in the Year 1236. and stands upon the River *Stura*, between *Saluzzo* to the West, and *Mondovi* to the South West, 6 from *Coni*, 24 from *Turin* to the South, and 26 from *Pignerol* to the South East. Pope *Gregory XVIII*. founded an Episcopal See here, under the Arch-Bishop of *Milan*. The Duke of *Savoy* had posted himself very strongly near that City at the time of the Siege of *Turin*, but was forc'd from it by the Duke de *Fenilade*.

*Lombardy*.

*Mon-*



Lombardy.

*Mondovì*, *Mons Reatis*, or *Mons Vici*, stands at the Foot of the *Appennines*, 2 Miles from the River *Tanaro*, 13 from *Cuni* to the East, 26 from *Fossano* to the North West, and 37 South E. from *Turin*. It was once a part of the Marquisate of *Montferrat*, till at the Solicitation of *Tobedore II.* Marquis of that Name, it was erected into a Bishoprick, *An.* 1385. subject to the Archbishop of *Turin*. Pope *Pius V.* was sometimes Bishop here, call'd then Cardinal *Macliel Giffertius*. There was formerly an University here, which was translated to *Turin*. In the beginning of the Year 1699. the Inhabitants of the flat Country, about *Mondovì*, join'd with the *Banditi*, who were the Ringleaders of it, form'd a formidable Rebellion against the Duke, and in several Skirmishes wasted his Forces, and killed several Officers of Quality, and a great many of his Soldiers. 'Tis true, the *Mondovì* in general, are no better than the *Banditi*; but whether His Royal Highness's Rigour towards his Subjects was to blame for this, or no, we leave to others to decide: He at last extinguish'd this Flame, by the Blood of such of the Offenders as were taken.

*Carignano*, *Carinianum*, stands on the *Po*, about 5 Miles from *Turin* to the South, and near as much from *Carmagnole*; and did bear the Title of a Principality, with which *Thomas Francis* of *Savoy*, fifth Son of *Charles Emanuel I.* and *Catherine Michelle* of *Austria*, was honour'd, as he was likewise with that of Great Master of *France*. It is defended by a strong Castle, and has the Advantage of a stately Bridge over the *Po*. It was taken by the *French*, *An.* 1691. and regain'd the same Year by the Duke of *Savoy*.

*Ceva*, *Ceba*, or *Ceva*, stands upon the River *Tanaro*, near the Confines of the Dutchy of *Montferrat*, about 7 Miles from *Mondovì* to the East, and 40 from *Turin* to the South East. It had formerly Marquises of that Title, and from it the neighbouring Country was call'd the Marquisate of *Ceva*. The Castle is strong, and was able to preserve itself from the *French*, in 1706. when they had taken possession of the Town.

*Savillano*, or *Savigliano*, *Savillanum*, stands upon the River *Magra*, in the middle between *Fossano* to the East, and *Saluzzo* to the West, about 5 Miles from either, and 20 directly South, from *Turin*. It is most advantageously situated between 2 Rivers, insomuch that 'tis said that *Philibert Emanuel*, Duke of *Savoy*, design'd to make it the Metropolis of his Dominions.

*Cuni*, or *Cunio*, *Cunium*, is a strong Town and Castle built on a Hill, at the Confluence of the Rivers *Stura* and *Ge*. It held out against *Francis I.* King of *France*; but was taken by Count *Harcourt* in the Year 1641. in the Reign of *Lewis XIII.* of *France*. In the Year 1691. the *French* attempted to take it; but were forc'd to raise the Siege. It stands about 11 Miles from *Fossano*, and 30 from *Turin* to the South, and is said to have been built in the Year 1150.

*Cherasco*, *Carrea*, stands in the County of *Asti*, upon the River *Tanaro*; but this old Name, according to *Francis Augustin* Bishop of *Saluzzo*, belongs rather to *Chieri* in *Piedmont*; which was once a considerable free Town, before it fell into the Hands of the Duke of *Savoy*. It stands about 5 Miles from *Turin* to the East.

The Country which of late has been call'd **FRENCH PIEDMONT**, does not now deserve that Name; since by the Treaty of Peace be-

tween *France* and *Savoy*, concluded at *Turin*, *An.* 1696. it was agreed, That the City and Citadel of *Pignerol*, after the Fortifications should be demolish'd, at the King's Charge together with the Forts of *St. Bridget*, the *Percuse*, &c. as well as the Territories and Dominions compriz'd under the Name of the Government of *Pignerol* (which did belong to the House of *Savoy*, before the Cession of *Surrender*, that *Victor Amadeo*, the first Duke of that Name, made to *Lewis XIII.* of *France*, should be restor'd to the Duke of *Savoy*. This Country lies between *Piedmont* properly so call'd, and the Valleys of the *Vandois*; and contains these Places,

*Pignerol* Cap.

*Percuse*.

*Briqueras*.

*Pignerol*, or *Pinarolo*, *Pinariolum*, stands upon the River *Chisius*, commonly by the *Italians* call'd *Il Chiese*, at the Foot of the *Alpes*, near the Confines of *Dauphiny*. It was lately a very well fortified Town; and the Citadel as it was before the demolishing of it, might have been justly reckon'd one of the Strongest Places in *Europe*; and a terrible Thorn in the Duke of *Savoy's* Foot while it remain'd in the *French* King's Hands; which one day might have made him halt, if he had not taken care to pluck it out by the late Treaty. It was formerly under the Jurisdiction of *Savoy*, and was commonly an Appenage of the younger Sons of that Family, till it was taken by the *French* Forces, under the Conduct of *Armand John de Plessis*, Cardinal of *Richelieu*, in the Year 1630. and afterwards sold by Duke *Victor Amadeo*, together with the Fort and Valley of *Percuse*, for the Sum of 494000 Crowns to the King of *France*; who, besides this Sum, resign'd to the Duke the City of *Alba* in the Dutchy of *Montferrat*, with the adjacent Territories, by a Treaty concluded at *Cherasco*, 31 March 1631. In the Year 1693. the Duke of *Savoy*, at the Head of the Confederate Forces, laid Siege to it; but afterwards his Royal Highness thought fit to leave it and go meet General *Catinat*, who then lay encamp'd with 12 or 13000 Men between the Mountains of *Fenestrelle* and *Biffi*, about 20 Miles North West of *Pignerol*; but finding it hard to come at him, went back and open'd the Trenches before *Pignerol*, in September. In the mean while *Catinat's* Army was reinforc'd with several Retachments from *Germany* and *Catalonia*; and the Confederates rais'd the Siege, blew up the Fortrefs of *St. Bridget* (which has a Communication with the Citadel by a cover'd Way, and a Passage under Ground) and set forward to meet him, near *Orbassan* in the Plains of *Marcellane*; where a bloody Battle was fought on the 4th of October, 1693. in which the *French* won the day but lost above 6000 Men, and the Confederates about 5500. The City of *Pignerol* (as we said before) was surrendred to the Duke of *Savoy*, and all its Fortifications demolish'd, by the Treaty of *Turin*, 1696. It stands about 20 Miles from *Turin* to the South West, 24 from *Susa* to the South, 15 from *Saluzzo* to the North, above 40 S. West from *Casal*, and 350 from *Paris* to the South East.

*Perusa*, (or *Perouse* by the *French*) *Perusa*, stands near the River *Clurius*, or *Il Chiese*, at the Foot of the Hills, and gives Name to a Valley. It belong'd formerly to the Duke of *Savoy*; but fell into the *French* King's Hands, *An.* 1631. and was restor'd by the Treaty of *Turin*, 1696. It stands 4 Miles from *Pignerol* to the North; and must not be confounded with another Town in the Popes Dominions,



ons, which the *French* call *Perouse*, but the *Italians* *Perugia*; in Latin *Perusia*, of which we shall have occasion to treat afterwards.

*Briqueras*, or *Bricherasco* by the Inhabitants, *Briquerascum*, stands near the little River *Peles*, on the Confines of *Dauphiny*, about 5 Miles from *Pignerol* to the South. In the Year 1592. It was taken by the *French*, under the Command of *M. de Lesdiguières*, who caus'd it to be well fortified, but *Charles Emanuel Duke of Savoy* afterwards re-took it.

The Lordship of *VERCELL*, or the *Vercellese*, *Vercellense Dominium*, is bounded on the North and East with the Dutchy of *Milan*, on the West with the *Biellese* and *Canavese*, and on the South with *Montferrat*. By the Treaty of *Turin*, 1427. *Philip Marias Duke of Milan* resign'd it to *Amadeo Duke of Savoy*, reserving to himself only that part that lies between the *Novarassa* and the River *Sesia*. The most considerable Towns in it are,

*Vercell*.

*Biella*.

*Santia*.

*Vercell*, or *Vercelli*, *Vercella*, stands on the Confines of the Dutchy of *Milan*, upon the River *Sesia*, or *Sessites*, which 10 Miles below, falls into the *Po*, about 12 Miles from *Casal* to the North, in the midst between *Milan* and *Turin*, about 40 Miles from each, and 30 from *Jurea*. It is the Seat of a Bishop, Suffragan to the Archbishop of *Milan*. It has a Castle and Citadel, and is pretty well fortified; and contains several fine Churches, and a good Hospital. Pope *Leo IX.* conven'd a Council in this Town against *Berengarius Arch-deacon of Anger*, who was cited, but did not appear. The *Spaniards* made themselves Masters of the Town, *An.* 1638. and restor'd it to the Duke of *Savoy* by the *Pyrenean Treaty*. It was taken by the *French*, after a brave Defence in the Year, 1705. but immediately after the raising the Siege of *Turin*, *Sept.* 1706. they dismantled, and quitted it.

*Biella*, *Biella*, and *Bugella*, stands at the Foot of the Mountains, 25 Miles from *Vercell* to the West, about 12 Miles from *Jurea* to the North East, and gives Name to the adjacent Country, call'd the *Biellese*.

*Santa*, *Fanum Sanctæ Agathæ*, gives Name to the adjacent County, in the *Vercellese*; and is distant about 16 Miles from *Vercelli* to the West, and 20 from *Jurea*. *Francis d'Este*, the second Duke of *Modena*, that famous Warrior died here, 14 Octob. 1658.

The Principality of *MASSERAN*, or *Masserano*, *Masserani Principatus*, lies near the Confines of the Dutchy of *Milan*, between the *Vercellese* and the *Biellese*. It had formerly Princes of its own of the Family of *Flisca*; but by adoption fell into the House of *Ferrara*, and so now its Princes are call'd of the Family of *Ferrara Flisca*. It is a Vassalage of the Pope's, and has under its Jurisdiction *Crevacore* adjacent to it, and some other Places of little moment: The only remarkable Town in it is,

*Messeran*, or *Messerano*, *Messeranum*, seated on a Hill, in the Confines of *Milan*, about 18 Miles from *Jurea* to the East, about 20 to the North West of *Vercelli*, and 36 from *Turin* to the North East.

The Marquisate of *JUREA*, *Eporrediensis Marchionatus*, was anciently a considerable part of *Gallia Subalpina*. About 400 Year ago it was a con-

siderable Country in *Italy*, lying along the Foot of the Mountains, between them and the *Po*, and was under the Jurisdiction of its own Marquesses; but afterward came to be divided into several Parts and so lost its old Name, as *Baudrand* says; who mightily blames some modern Geographers, for placing this Marquisate in part of *Italy*, now call'd *Il Canavese*. The only Town of Note in it is,

*Jurea*, a Town anciently belonging to the *Salassi*, which *Pliny* calls *Eporredia*, *Strabo*. *Eporadia* and *Antoninus*, *Eporadia*, stands on the River *Derea Baltea*, where there is a stately Stone Bridge; and was built as some say (particularly *Buno*) about 100 Years before the Birth of Christ. It was an Episcopal See Suffragan to the Archbishop of *Turin*, and is a Place of great Importance to the Duke of *Savoy*, into whose Hands it came, according to *Baudrand* and others, in the Year 1313. being well defended by a Citadel and Castle. It was taken by the *French*, *An.* 1554. and restor'd sometime after. It is distant from *Turin* about 25 Miles to the North, 30 from *Aouste* to the South, and as many from *Vercelli* to the West. It is famous for the excellent Cheeses that are made in and about it.

The County of *ASTI*. *Contado d'Asti*, *Astensis Comitatus* anciently a part of the Dutchy of *Milan*; but has been subject to the Duke of *Savoy* since the Year 1531. by the Concession of the Emperor *Charles V.* who had taken it from the *French* two Years before. It is bounded on the West by *Piedmont*, and on all other Parts by the Dutchy of *Montferrat*. The Towns of note in it are,

*Asti*.

*Verrua* or *Verua*.

*Asti*, *Aste*, by the *French* *Asta*. *Ptolomy* makes it the Name of a Town and Colony of *Gallia Cisalpine* in *Liguria*. It stands on the River *Tenaro*, about 15 Miles from *Alba* to the North East, 16 from *Casal* to the South West, and 26 from *Turin* to the East. It was once a considerable Republick, but afterwards fell into the Hands of the Viscounts, and so became a part of the Dutchy of *Milan*; from which, after many Turns and Revolutions it fell to the Duke of *Savoy*, by the Gift of the Emperor *Charles V.* to *Charles III.* Duke of *Savoy*, *An.* 1531. It consists at present of several Parts, viz. the City, the Burrough, the Citadel, the Fort and Castle of *St. Peter*; all which are pretty well fortified. The neighbouring Fields are very Fertile, and produce, particularly, a fine sort of Melon, very much esteem'd.

*Verrua* or *Verua*, *Veruca*, is a Fortress, built on a high Rock, on the Banks of the *Po*, over against *Crescentino*, near the Confines of *Montferrat* and the *Canavese*, about 16 Miles above *Turin* and somewhat less from *Casal* to the West, and 12 from *Asti* to the North. It was strongly fortified by *Charles Emanuel Duke of Savoy*, and in vain attempted by the *Spanish Forces*, *An.* 1625. Famous by its glorious Defence against the *French Army*, from Octob. 1704, to April 1705.

The Marquisate of *SUSA*. *Segusinus Marchionatus*, lies along the Foot of the *Alpes*, between *Piedmont*, properly so call'd, on the East, and *Dauphiny* on the West. It was formerly of greater Extent and inhabited by the *Segusini*, according to *Cluverius*; and is now subject to the Duke of *Savoy*. The only Town of Note in it is,

*Susa*,



*Lombard).* *Susa*. *Suse* by the French, *Sezorium*. It is a little City seated among the Mountains, by which it is commanded almost on every side, on the River *Doria*. It gives Name to the Marquisate, and is distant about 3 Miles from the Confines of *France* and *Dauphine*, 24 from *Turin* to the West, and as many from *Briançon*. Here, they say, is to be seen a Triumphal Arch, erected in Honour of *Augustus*, A. U. C 742. (which Mr. *Misson*, I think, takes no notice of) And some think this is the Town where that Emperor set up his Trophy 14 Years before the Birth of Christ; tho' others are of opinion it was not here, but at a Place call'd *Tourbie*, at the Foot of the *Maritime Alpes*, because there is a Stone to be seen in that Place with this Inscription, *Sentes Alpine devictæ*. At this Place was found the Sepulchre of *Cottus*, from whom the *Alpes Cottæ* took their Name. The French took this Place, An. 1630. and fortified it strongly; but afterwards restor'd it. They took it again in the Year 1690. and restor'd it, An. 1696. But took it again in this War, and held it till the Duke of *Savoy* recover'd it by taking the *Cattle*, Oct. 5. 1707. N. S.

The Marquisate of *SALUCES*, as the French call it, and the *Italians* *Saluzzo*, *Salutiarum Marchionatus*, lies at the Foot of the *Alpes*, having *Piedmont* on the East, *Dauphine* on the West, and the Country of *Nice* on the South. It formerly belong'd to *France*, till *Henry IV.* gave it to *Charles Emanuel*, Duke of *Savoy*, in Exchange for *Bresse*, *Bugey*, and other Places on this side the *Rhone*, in the Year 1601. That River takes its Rise near this Country, from the Mountain *Viso*, which is thought to be the highest of the *Alpes*. The Marquesses of *Saluzzo* have caus'd a famous Vault 4 Miles long to be hew'd out of the Rock near this Place, thro which Mules may easily pass with Goods from *Italy* into *France*. This Family derives its Original, they say, from one *William*, an *Italian* Count, who flourish'd about the beginning of the 10th Century. The most remarkable Towns belonging to this Country are,

<i>Saluzzo.</i>	}	<i>Cental.</i>
<i>Carmagnola.</i>		<i>Requispariero.</i>
<i>Revel.</i>		<i>Birgues.</i>
<i>Stafforda.</i>		

*Saluzzo*, or *Saluces*, *Salutæ*, and *Augusta Vagiennorum*, stands on a Hill at the Foot of the *Alpes*, about a Mile from the River *Po*, 10 from *Fossano* to the West, 24 from *Turin* to the South, and 12 from *Pignerol*. It has been an Episcopal See under the Arch-Bishoprick of *Turin* since the Year 1511. and the Cathedral Church is very Magnificent and Rich. It was taken by the French, An. 1691. and retaken the same Year.

*Carmagnola*, *Carmaniola*, is seated above 2 Miles from the *Po*, and 8 from *Turin* to the South. It was taken in the Year 1588. during the Civil Wars of *France*, by *Charles Emanuel* Duke of *Savoy*, and had it confirm'd to him by a Treaty of Peace 1600. The French took it in the Year 1691. but lost it again that same Year.

*Stafforda*, is a small Town, no other way remarkable than for the Victory which the French obtain'd near it over the Duke of *Savoy*, in the Month of *August*, 1690. where the French are said to lose 500. and his Royal Highness near double that Number.

*Cental*, *Centale*, is a little Town, not long ago fortified, upon the River *Mila*, in the midit between *Coni* and *Savigliano*.

The Country commonly call'd the *THE VALLEYS OF THE VAUDOIS*, lies between *French Piedmont*, on the West and North, *Piedmont* properly so call'd, on the East, and the Marquisate of *Saluzes* on the South, and is commonly divided into 3 remarkable Valleys, viz.

<i>Pragelas</i> or <i>Ciufon.</i>	}	<i>Angrogne.</i>
<i>Percuse.</i>		<i>Lucern.</i>
<i>St. Martyn.</i>		

The People commonly call'd the *Vaudois*, owe their Name, as it is said, to one *Peter Valdo*, or *Vaud*, a rich Merchant of *Lyons* in *France*, about the Year 1160. who seeing a Friend of his die suddenly, became mighty serious upon it, and sell a reading the Bible; and by that means discover'd the Errors of the Church of *Rome*, and communicated what he had learn'd to a great many of his Friends and Neighbours, who very quickly grew up to a considerable Party. Whereupon *Peter* was excommunicated by the Clergy, and several of his Disciples persecuted; which oblig'd them to retire into the Valleys of *Piedmont*. They have suffer'd many Persecutions, and particularly in the Year 1688. the Duke of *Savoy* persecuted the poor Inhabitants of those Valleys; who having in vain endeavour'd to preserve their Religion and Liberties, many of 'em were made Prisoners; and the rest, at the Solicitation of the Protestant Cantons, permitted to go where they would. In the Year 1689. a great many of them put themselves in Arms in the Cantons of *Bern* and *Switzerland*, and with a Secrecy that prevented even the Suspicions of their Enemies, form'd two Bodies, one of 1200, and the other of 3000 Men; and embarking on the Lake of *Geneva*, forc'd their way thro' *Savoy* into their own Country, in spite of the united Forces of *France* and *Savoy*, who oppos'd their Passage, and oblig'd them to five or six little Battles, in which the *Vaudois* had still the Advantage: And all this without any Officers, except one Mr. *Arnaud*, a Minister; and under him a Mason, nam'd *Turel*, for their Lieutenant General. In the Year 1690. the Duke of *Savoy*, by the Mediation of King *William*, recal'd these Refugees, and restor'd them to their former Privileges and Immunities. But by the Treaty of Peace between the King of *France* and the Duke of *Savoy*, concluded at *Turin*, 1696. it is agreed, That the Inhabitants of the Valleys of *Lucern*, call'd the *Vaudois*, shall have no Communication in Matters of Religion with that King's Subjects: Nor shall his Royal Highness suffer any of his Majesty's Subjects to make any Settlement in the Protestant Valleys, under colour of Religion, Marriage, or any Pretence whatsoever; nor any Protestant Ministers to come from thence into any of his Majesty's Dominions, without incurring the severest Corporal Punishment. Since which time his Royal Highness has been very severe upon those poor People, and driven them all out of his Dominions into the Protestant Countries of *Europe* and *England*, since the beginning of this Year 1699. has had its share.

As to the Counties of *Boglio*, *Oneile* and *Tende*, they are treated of already in our Description of *Savoy*.



## C H A P. III.

*The Coasts of Genoa, or Genoua, Ora Genuensis.*

WHEN we speak of the Coasts of *Genoua*, we do not mean only the Places and Towns on those Coasts belonging to that Republick, but also several other little Towns and Countries along the Coast of that Sea, commonly call'd the Sea of *Genoua*, in the possession of several Princes and States: Extending in length from the River *Var* that separates *Provence* from *Italy*, to the *Magra*, which falls into the *Mediterranean Sea*, near the Ruins of the City *Luna*, now call'd *Luna Destrutta*. Its Length is computed to be about 150 Miles, from West to East; and its Breadth about 30 at the broadest, and not above 6 or 7 at the narrowest. It is bounded on the South by the *Mediterranean Sea*, on the North by the Duchies of *Parma*, *Milan* and *Montferrat*, on the East by *Tuscany* and *Massa*, and on the West by the River *Var* and *Provence*. It makes up the greater part of the ancient *Liguria*, which was divided into *Liguria*, *Littorea* and *Liguria Mediterranea*; the former of which seems to have been the Country we are now treating of; which (as we said before) comprehended several Places besides what belong to the Republick of *Genoua*, as you may see in the ensuing Table.

Subject to divers Sovereigns,	{ <i>Nice</i> , <i>Ville Franche</i> , <i>Maro</i> , <i>Donas</i> , <i>Monaco</i> , to the Prince of <i>Monaco</i> . <i>Final</i> , to the King of <i>Spain</i> .	} belonging to the D. ol <i>Savoy</i> .	{ <i>St. Remo</i> . <i>Vintimiglia</i> . <i>Albenga</i> . <i>Noli</i> . <i>Savona</i> . <b>GENOVA.</b> <i>Sarzana</i> . <i>Brugnatto</i> . <i>Rapallo</i> . <i>La-Vegna</i> . <i>La-Pezza</i> . <i>Torreglia</i> .

We have already treated of *Nice* and *Ville Franche* in the Description of *Savoy*; *Donas* and *Maro* are so inconsiderable, that we find very little said concerning them, only that the latter is both the Name of a Town and a Marquisate, belonging to the Duke of *Savoy*.

*Monaco*, *Herculis Monsci Portus*, call'd by the People of *Provence* *Mourgues*; is a little Town, but well fortified, with an old Castle, and a very safe Harbour. It stands upon the Confines of the County of *Nice*, 6 Miles from the Town of that Name towards *Albenga*. This Town gives Name to a little sort of Principality, govern'd by its own Princes, of the Family of *Grimaldi*, who are also Peers of *France*; and having expell'd the *Spaniards* in the Year 1641. were oblig'd to crave Protection of the French King, and receive a Garrison of his Soldiers. This Principality is so little, that besides the Town of *Monaco*, it comprehends only a little Town call'd *Menton*, and a Village *Roccabruna*. The present Prince is the French King's Minister at the Court of *Rome*.

*Final*, *Finalium* or *Finarium*, stands in the midst between *Savona* and *Albenga*, on the Coasts of *Genoua*, and is dignified with the Title of a Marqui-

sate. It was formerly govern'd by its own Princes *Lombardy*, of the Family of *Carrelo*; but has been under the Jurisdiction of *Spain* since the Year 1599. that *Andreas Sforza*, the last Marquis, sold it to the *Spaniards*. The Town is at present pretty well fortified, and hath a strong Castle on the top of a Hill; the Avenues of which are guarded by 2 Forts.

*San Remo*, *Fanum Romuli*, stands on the Coast of *Genoua*, (to which Republick it belongs) about 9 Miles from *Vintimiglia* to the East, and about 30 from *Nice*. It is a Place of Importance, and stands in a very fertile and pleasant Valley, that produces Oranges, Citrons, Olives and other Fruits.

*Vintimiglia*, *Albintemelium*, (the same with *Vintemelium* and *Albintimilium*, mention'd by *Tacitus*, *Varro*, and other Authors) stands on the Sea-shoar, near the Frontiers of *Savoy* and the County of *Nice*, 14 Miles from the Town of *Nice* to the East, 8 from *Monaco*, 30 from *Coni* to the South, and 85 from *Genoua* to the West. It is an Episcopal See, Suffragan to the Arch Bishop of *Milan*, and has been under the Jurisdiction of *Genoua* ever since the Year 1238.

*Albenga*, *Albigaunum* or *Albingaunum*, stands on the Sea-shoar, on the West part of the Coast of *Genoua*, over against a little Island, or rather a Rock in the Sea, call'd *l'Isolotto d'Albenga*, 50 Miles to the West of *Genoua*, 35 from *Vintimiglia*, and 40 from *Alba* to the South. It was erected into an Episcopal See under the Arch-Bishop of *Genoua*, in the Year 1179. It was formerly a considerable and rich Town; but of late has begun to decay.

*Noli*, *Naulum* or *Naulium*, stands in a pleasant Plain on the Coasts of *Genoua*, not above a Mile from *Final*, between *Savona* to the North East, and *Albenga* to the South West. 10 Miles from the former, and 12 from the latter. It is a Bishoprick, Suffragan to the Arch-Bishop of *Genoua*, and was formerly a free Town, but is now under the Jurisdiction of *Genoua*, and has not the Advantage of an Harbour.

*Savona*. *Savona* stands on the West Coasts of *Genoua*, about 3 Miles from *Vado*, which is a small Port, to the North East, 8 from *Noli*, 30 from *Albenga*, as many from *Genoua*, and 22 from *Acqui* to the South. It is an Episcopal See under the Arch-Bishop of *Milan*, and is defended by a Citadel and 2 Fortresses. It had once a very large and good Harbour; but it was stop't up by the *Genouese*, upon Jealousie of its being too much favour'd by *Francis I.* King of *France*.

*GENOVA* or *Genoua*, *Genua*, is a very ancient Town in *Liguria* in *Gallia Cisalpina*, according to *Pliny*, *Strabo* and others. It was sack'd by *Mago* the *Carthaginian*, 549 Years after the building of *Rome*; and afterwards rebuilt by the *Romans*. There has been a great deal of Dust rais'd about the Etymology of this Word, some maintaining it came from double-sac'd *Janus*; others, that it was deriv'd from *Janua*, because it was, in a manner, a Gate into *Italy*; some from *Janus* first King of *Italy*, or *Janus* King of the *Teians*; but 'tis not worth the while to examine who has the most Reason for his



*Lombardi*. Affertion, only this is plain, that the fore-cited Authors call it *Genus*, and so does *T. Livius*, and a Stone that was found by a Peasant as he was Tilling the Ground, *An. 1507.* has an Inscription on it, where the *Genese* are call'd *Genuates*. It was burnt by the *Saracens* in the Year 935 all the Citizens being either kill'd, or carry'd away Prisoners; but they were brought back by the Means of the *Doge of Venice* and the Town rebuilt, and made more Magnificent than it was before. It was dignified with the Title of an Arch-Bishoprick, by Pope Innocent II *An. 1132.* It is now the Capital City of *Liguria*, and Head of a Republick; and seated at the bottom of a little Gulf, on the Declivity of the Foot of a Hill, seeming to consist of several Stories. The Port lies very open towards the Sea, and therefore cannot afford safe Anchorage for Ships. The City contains 36 Parishes; the Streets are for the most part uneven and very narrow; and the Houses are 6 or 7 Stories high in the lower part of the Town: but by degrees, as the Ascent rises, the Houses are lower, and built at a greater distance. The Situation of it affords a very fine Prospect, but is very inconvenient for those that would ride in Coaches; and therefore Persons of Quality use Litters and Chairs. It is absolutely false that this City is built of Marble, as most People believe; Brick and Stone, or both mixt together, are the ordinary Materials of its Houses; and the Walls are generally cover'd with Plaster. There are some Houses, among those more lately built, that are richly adorn'd with Marble; but there's as good Reason for saying *London* is built of Stone, as *Genoua* is built of Marble. But tho' the City is not built of Marble, it may justly boast of some very Beautiful Structures; for the Houses are extremely large and fair in 5 or 6 Streets that are of a considerable Breadth, and in the Magnificent Suburb of *St. Pietro d' Arena*. This City suffer'd very much by the Bombardment in the Year 1634. but few of the most beautiful Edifices receiv'd any great hurt by the *French* Bombs, private Persons, and those of inferior Rank having suffer'd most by it.

The Government of this Republick is Aristocratical. The *Doge* (whose Government lasts 2 Years) is the supreme Magistrate, assisted by 8 Senators or Governors, a certain number of Procurators and a Grand Council consisting of a certain number of the Nobility, who are in all 700. The *Doge* cannot be continu'd above 2 Years, but may be chosen again 5 Years after the end of his Government: And none of his Relations can be elected immediately after him. He is styl'd His *Serenity*, as the Senators are Their Excellencies, and the Noblemen Most Illustrious. The Power and Grandeur of this Republick is extremely decreas'd since those glorious Days,

when they extended their Conquests to the *Tanais*, and made themselves Masters of all the Coasts of *Asia*, and the Island of *Cyprus*, *Scio*, *Lesbos* &c. They still retain the Island of *Cosica*, with the Title of a Kingdom, and are extremely proud of it; for the *Doge* is crown'd with a Royal Crown of Gold, and a Scepter is put into his Hand, because of it. The Trade of *Genoua* is very much decay'd. It consists particularly in Velvet, Point, Gloves, dry Confections, Anchovies, and several sorts of Fruits. There are some private Persons very Rich; but the Republick is poor. Neither Corn or Wine are sold in the Markets; for the Government reserves that Trade for it self, and the Bakers must fetch their Corn from the publick Granaries. This City stands 270 Miles from *Rome* to the North West, 75 from *Turin*, 135 from *Florence* to the West, 220 from *Venice* to the South West, and 80 from *Milan* to the South. Lat. 43. 50. Long. 27. 0.

*Sarazana*, *Serezana* or *Sergianum*, stands near the Mouth of the River *Magra*, in the midlt between *Massa* and *Spetoia*; about 34 Miles from *Lucca* to the North West, and 18 from *Brugnetto*. It is defended by a strong Castle, and is an Episcopal See, under the Arch-Bishop of *Pisa*. Its Rile is from the Ruins of a neighbouring Town, call'd *Luna*; and Pope *Nicholas V.* a Native of this Place, translated the Bishoprick of *Luna* hither, with the Title of both Sees, in the Year 1450.

*Brugnetto*, *Brunetum*, or *Bruniacum*, stands upon the River *Verra*, at the Foot of the *Apenines*, 9 Miles to the West of *Pontiermoli*, as many from *Spetoia* to the North, and 50 from *Genoua* to the East. It is but a small Town, and not well inhabited, but is an Episcopal See under the Arch-Bishop of *Genoua*.

*Rapallo*, *Rapalium*, is a little Town under the Jurisdiction of *Genoua*, upon that Coast, with a Harbour, about 23 Miles from *Genoua* to the East, and 3 from *Portofino*. Near to it is the little Bay call'd *Golfo di Ripallo*. The Reader must take notice that *Rapolla* in *Basilicata* in the Kingdom of *Naples* sounds very like this. tho' the *Latin* Word for that is *Rapallio*, as *Rapalium* is for this.

*Lavagna*, *Lavania*, or *Labonia*, a little Town on the Coast of *Genoua*, at the Mouth of the River *Entella*, belonging to the Republick of *Genoua*, between *Chiavari* to the West, and *Cesire di Levante* to the East.

*La Spezza*, *La Spetia*, *Spedia*, is a little Town, belonging to the Republick of *Genoua*, standing at the bottom of the *Golfo della Spetia*, 7 Miles from *Sarazana* to the North West, as far from *Lunade-strutta*, 4 from *Porto Venere*, and 11 from *Brugnetto*.

## C H A P. IV.

### The Dutchy of Montferrat.

*Montferrat*, *Mensferratus*, or *Mensferratus*, so call'd from the fruitful Soil of the Hills and rising Ground in it, as if it were *Monsferax*, is bounded on the East by the Dutchy of *Milan*, and a part of the Dominions of *Genoua*, on the North by the *Vercellese* and *Bugellese* and the *Canavese*, on

on the West with *Piedmont*, properly so call'd, and the Countrey of *Asti*, and on the South by the Western Dominions of *Genoua*, from which it is separated by the *Apenines*, and comprehends a great part of the ancient *Liguria Mediterranea*. It fell into the House of *Mantua*, in the Year 1535. by the



the Marriage of *Margaret*, Wife of *Frederick I.* Duke of *Mantua*, after the Death of *Boniface* her Brother, last Marquis of the Family of the *Palca-igi*. It was formerly of greater Extent, comprehending a part of the *Canavese*, and of the Higher *Langhe*, which were given to the Duke of *Savoy* by the Treaty of *Cheasco*, in the Year 1631. together with a part of *Montferrat* beyond the *Po*; so that after it was divided into 2 Parts, viz. into *Montferrat*, properly so call'd, which lies to the East and South, and was under the Duke of *Mantua*, except *Casal*, and *Montferrat* near *Piedmont*, which lies towards the West and North, under the Duke of *Savoy*. But when the Duke of *Mantua* was put under the Ban of the Empire in 1707. his Part was by the Emperor given to the Duke of *Savoy*; and *Casal* being recover'd from the *French*, that Prince remains sole Sovereign here. The chief Towns are,

<i>Casal,</i>	}	<i>Aequi,</i>
<i>Alba,</i>		<i>Rippalia,</i>
<i>Bianza,</i>		<i>Occimian,</i>
<i>Salugio,</i>		<i>Belzoia.</i>
<i>Verolunso,</i>		

*CASAL*, *Casale*, call'd by the *Ligurians* *Bodincomagus*, by the *Romans* *Industria*, afterwards *Sedulia*, as appears by the *Annals* of the City. It is also call'd *Casale St. Vaso*, from *St. Evastus*, its Patron, to distinguish it from other Towns of the same Name. It stands on the *Po*, 4 Miles from *Trino*, to the East, 15 from *Asti* to the North, 40 from *Turin* to the East, and about as many from *Milan*. In the Year 1474. Pope *Sixtus IV.* erected it into a Bishoprick, under the Arch Bishop of *Milan*, at the request of *Gulielmus Paleologus*, Marquis of *Montferrat*. It is famous for the many Sieges which it has sustain'd *Gonzales* at the Head of the *Spanish* Forces invetted it in the Year 1629. but was forc'd to leave it in the Night-time, on the approach of the *French* Forces. The *Spaniards* attempted it next Year after, under the Command of *Ambrosio Spino-la*; but the Marquis de *Torres* defended it so vigo-

rously, that they lost their Labour. In the Year 1640. *Lombard* they came before it again, under the Command of the Marquis de *Leganes*; but Count *Harcourt* drove them away, taking several of their Standards their Baggage and Ammunition, and above 2000 Prisoners, and kill'd as many. In the Year 1652. the *Spaniards* taking advantage of the Commotions of *France*, made themselves Masters of it, and afterwards surrender'd it to the Duke of *Mantua*, who kept a Garrison in it, till he sold it to *Lewis XIV.* King of *France*, on 30 Sept. 1681. The Duke of *Mantua* still receiving some inconsiderable Duties from it. It was lately a very well fortified City, with a Castle and Citadel, which was of great Importance; the *French* having corrected all Irregularities of the Fortifications, and added a great deal more to what there were formerly; but in pursuance of the Articles of Capitulation with the Duke of *Savoy*, who besieg'd it with the Confederate Army 1695. it was demolish'd. It was possess'd and fortified by the *French* in the late War; but recover'd by the Duke of *Savoy*.

*Alba*, *Alba Pompeia* stands on the River *Tanaro*, 12 Miles from *Asti* to the South, 7 from *Cherasco*, and 28 from *Turin* to the South West. It formerly belong'd to the Duke of *Mantua*, but was yielded to the Duke of *Savoy* by the Treaty of *Cherasco*, Ann. 1631. It has suffer'd several Chances and Revolutions, and is in a decaying Condition, and indifferently inhabited. It is however an Episcopal See, under the Arch Bishop of *Milan*.

*Aequi*, *Aque Statellæ*, or *Statellæ*, or, according to *Pliny*, *Aque Statyellæ*, stands on the River *Barnio*, near the *Appennines*, 16 Miles from *Alleffandria della Paglia* to the South, as many from *Savona*, somewhat more from *Asti* to the South East, and *Alba* to East. It is famous for its hot Sulphurous Waters, to which great Numbers of People come to be freed from their cold noxious Humours, as *Ferrarius* relates; and the Seat of a Bishop, Suffragan to the Arch-Bishop of *Milan*.

## C H A P. V.

### The Dutchy of Milan, Mediolanensis Ducatus.

THE Dutchy, commonly call'd the *Milanese*, is the North part of *Liguria*, and was anciently inhabited by the *Insubres*. The *LONGOBARDI*, a People of *Germany*, having overrun *Pannonia*, in the Year of Christ 526. made Incursions into *Italy*, in the Year 552. and having expell'd the *Goths* in the Year 572. establish'd a new Kingdom here, which lasted about 206 Years, till *Charles the Great* abolish'd it. About the Year 1389. the *French* first laid claim to this Country; and upon this account, *Lewis* Duke of *Orleans*, Brother of *Charles VI.* Marry'd *Valentina*, the Daughter of *John Galeaceo*, Viscount of *Milan*, with this Condition, that he shou'd receive immediately as a Dowry, not only a great Treasure of Money and Jewels, but also the County of *Asti*; and in case her Father should die without Issue, the whole Country should devolve on *Valentina* and her Children: Which Contract has not only furnish'd *France* with a pretension to *Milan*; but has also been the occasion of great Calamities. In the

Year 1499. *Lewis XII.* pretending a Right to this Dukedom by his Grandmother's side, conquer'd it in 21 Days, and forc'd *Lewis* the *Black* to fly into *Germany*; but the Inhabitants of *Milan* not being able to endure the too free Conversation of the *French* with their Wives, recall'd their Duke, who being assisted by an Army of *Swiss*, regain'd the whole Country, except the Castle of *Milan*, and the City of *Novaro*; but *Lewis XIV.* sending timely Relief from *France*, and the *Swiss* proving Treacherous to the Duke, and refusing to fight against the *French*, he was forc'd to endeavour his Escape in a common Soldier's Habit; and being taken, was kept Prisoner at *Loches* 10 Years, where he died; and so the *French* were absolute Masters of *Milan*; but in the Year 1512. they were forc'd to leave *Italy*, and *Maximilian* Son of *Lewis* the *Black*, was restor'd to the Dutchy of *Milan* by the help of the *Swiss*. Afterwards *Francis I.* invaded *Italy*, and beat *Maximilian*, having kill'd 10000 *Swiss*, with the loss of 4000 of his best *French* Troops.



*Landmark.* Troops. After which *Maximilian* surrendered himself and the whole Country to the King, on condition of an Annual Pension of 30000 Ducats to be paid him. In the Year 1521. *Francis* was led out of Milan and *Francis Sforza* Restor'd by the means of the Emperor and the Pope; but at last after so many Changes and Revolutions, by the Peace Concluded at *Cambry*, in the Year 1529 *Francis* renounc'd all his Pretensions to *Milan*, and afterwards the Emperor *Charles V.* annexed it to the Crown of *Spain* for ever. And therefore seized by the *French* in behalf of the D. of *Anjou*, when he ascended the Throne of *Spain*. But recover'd for King *Charles* in the Year 1706. by the Victorious Prince *Eugene*.

This Country is well Watered, and very Fruitful, producing abundance of *Corn*, *Wine*, *Flax*, and several sorts of good Fruit. It is Ruled by a Governor sent from the King of *Spain*; who Rules the Inhabitants with absolute sway, and squeezes great Sums of Money out of them, besides the King's Revenue; which some say amounts to 3000000 Livres, besides a Million more in time of War. The Country is commonly divided into these Parts or Territories, viz. *il Territorio di Milano*, *il Pavese*, *il Novarese*, *il Comasco*, *il Ledegino*, *il Cremonese*, *il Tortonese*, *il Alessandrino*, *il Contado di Augbiera*, and *la Laumetlina*: and the Chief Towns in it are,

Milan.	Lodi.
Alessandria.	Novara.
Bobbia.	Pavia.
Como.	Vivezzano.
Cremona.	Mortara.
Tortona.	

*Milan*, *Mediolanum*, is Situated in a pleasant Plain, and Watered by the little River *Olona*, and has also the advantage of two Canals, one of which is call'd *Novalia Delle Martegano*, which begins at *Terra*, and reaches in a strait Line, within half a Mile of *Milan*, being 20 Miles in Length; and supplied with Water from the *Adda*. The other is call'd *Novalia Tefinello*, and comes from the *Tefin*. This City is said to have been Built by the *Gauls*, 395 Years after the building of *Rome*: and tho' it hath been often wasted, and even destroyed by the terrible Scourges of War and Pestilence, having been Besieged 20, and taken 22 times; and particularly Raz'd and Sowed with Salt, by *Frederick Barbarossa*, Ann. 1162; yet it is so well recovered at present, that it justly deserves the Name of Great, and may be reckon'd among the best and finest Cities in *Europe*. Its Figure is round, its Walls are Ten Miles in Compass, and its Inhabitants are thought by some to be 250000, by others 300000. It is divided into 6 Parts or Regions, which have their Names from so many Gates. The Citadel is a regular Hexagon, well lin'd and stored with Canon, and surrounded with a great Ditch and Countericarp. The Principal Buildings in *Milan*, without mentioning the Churches and Convents, (which are very many) are the Arch-Bishop's Palace, the Houses of the Marquis *Homadeso*, Count *Barb. Arese*, and Signior *T. Marini*; the Seminary, a noble Structure, Founded by *Charles Borromeo*; the Colleges of the *Switzers* of *Breva*, and of the *Jesuits*; The Town-house and the Chief Hospital; The *Lazaret*, or place appointed for those that are Sick of Pettilential Distempers, begun Ann. 1489, by Duke *Lewis Sforza*, call'd the Moor, and Finish'd by *Lewis XII.* 1507, consisting of 4 Galleries join'd in a Square, each containing 92 Chambers, the Doors of which are so contriv'd, that all the Sick

Persons may see the Mals laid from their several Beds; the Altar being in the middle of the Square, under a Dome, supported by Columns. The Cabinet of the late Canon *Manfredi Sattola*, a Person of great Learning and Ingenuity, as well as a dextrous Workman in several things, is very well worth seeing; for there are several sorts of very ingenious Machines, contriv'd for finding out the perpetual Motion. Looking Glasses and Dials of all sorts, Ancient and Modern, Musical Instruments, Books, Medals, Seals, Rings, Pictures, Indian works, Mummies, &c. with an infinite variety of all sorts of Antiquities, a great piece of Cloth made of the Stone *Ambra*, and several Monitors, a Dish of yellow Amber, two Foot in Diameter; also several rough pieces of the same sort of Amber, enclosing Arats, Spiders, Grasshoppers, Flies and other Insects, which appear distinctly in the middle of them; a piece of Crystal also, in which several sorts of Substances are enclosed, particularly an Olive Leaf, and a drop of Water, which seems to move. The Cathedral Church likewise deserves the particular notice of a Traveller, being a prodigious Work beyond *St. Peter's* at *Rome*, for the laboriousness of its Structure, tho' a Sixth part less. The Ambrosian Library, so Named by Cardinal *Frederick Borromeo*, Arch Bishop of *Milan*, who Founded it, and Dedicated it to *St. Ambrose*, is said to contain 14000 Manuscripts besides Printed Books; which some say are in Number 72000. There is also adjoining to the Library an Academy for Painting, in which are a great many curious Pictures: Besides all these, there are an infinite number of Curiosities, and things worth an Ingenious Man's particular notice, too many to be inserted here, and therefore those who have not had the advantage of Travelling and seeing them, must have recourse to the late Travellers, for a more full account of them. This City is distant 43 Miles from *Casal* to the East, 65 from *Genova* to the North, 72 from *Parma* to the N. West, 80 from *Turin*, as much from *Modena* to the West, and 192 to the N. West of *Rome*. It was possess'd by the *French* in behalf of *K. Philip*, and held by them till September 1706, when it submitted to Prince *Eugene*, and swore Allegiance to King *Charles III.*

*Alessandria della Paglia*, or *Alexandria*, *Alexandria Statellicrum*, is divided into two Parts by the River *Tanaro*, above 52 Miles from *Milan* to the South West, and in the midst between *Genova* to the South, and *Turin* to the West 44 Miles from either, according to *Philippus Ferrarius*, who was Born in this place. The Emperor *Frederick Barbarossa* call'd it *Cesarea*; but Pope *Alexander III.* would have it nam'd *Alexandria*. 'Tis false that ever any Emperors were Crown'd in this City with a Crown of Straw, (as Mr. *Misson* observes) and it will be pretty hard to prove that *Frederick* in derision call'd it *Alexandria* of Straw: However it retains that Name to this Day. The City is but little, and the Fortifications at present are but indifferent. The foresaid Pope Erected it into a Bishoprick, subject to the Arch-Bishop of *Milan*, in the Year 1175. It was recover'd to the Obedience of King *Charles*, by Prince *Eugene*, after a Siege of 3 Days, in October, 1706.

*Bobbio*, or *Bobi*, *Bobium*, is a little Town upon the River *Tebia*. Situated in a Plain, upon the Confines of the Dutchy of *Parma*, and not far from those of the *Genuefe*. It was anciently only an Abbey Built by *St. Columbanus*, through the Liberality of *Theodolinda* Queen of the *Longobards*; but afterwards grew



grew up to a considerable Town under those, the Monastery still remaining. It gives name to a Country call'd after it *il Bobiese*: and is a Bishop's Seat Suffragan to the Arch-Bishop of *Genoua*. It stands 35 Miles from *Dertona* to the South East, 35 from *Genoua*, 23 from *Piacenza* to the North, and 35 from *Pavia*.

*Como*, *Comum*, or *N. vecomum*, stands upon a Lake of that name, about 25 Miles from *Milan* to the North, as many from *Bugomo* to the West, and 80 from *Turin* to the North East; and gives name to the adjacent Country call'd *il Comasco*; the People of which City calls *Comenses*. *Pomponius Tregus* says it was Built by the *Gauls*, as *Asian*, *Trent*, *Verona*, and several other Towns were. It is an Episcopal See, under the Arch-bishop of *Milan*, in the Patriarchat of *Aquileia*. This City has given Birth to several Illustrious Persons, particularly *Pliny* the younger, *Paulus Jovius*, and Pope *Innocent XI.* of the Family of *Odescalchi*.

*Cremona*, *Cremona*, is Seated on the left Bank of the *Po*, on the Confines of the Dutchy of *Milan*, in the midit between *Pavia* to the West, and *Mantua* to the East, about 40 Miles from either, 50 from *Milan* to the East, and 13 from *Piacenza*. 'Tis a pretty large City, but Poorer and less Populous than *Piacenza*. Their famous Tower, so much talk'd of, especially by some of their own Authors, is neither handsom nor very high. The Castle is an old, shapeless, and ruinous Mass; which never deserv'd the name of a Fort, tho' it might have signified something in the days of Yore, when Cross-bows were in Fashion. The Tower is said to have been Built by the Emperor *Frederick Barbarossa*, Ann. 1184. The People of *Cremona* boast much of the Antiquity of their City, but want Proofs to confirm it. It is said to have been Built the 445th Year of the City of *Rome*, and afterwards made a Roman Colony. It hath suffered many Changes and Revolutions, and hath often changed its Masters. *Himibal* Pillaged it in his Passage to *Italy*, the *Goths* committed horrible Outrages in it, and the *Sciaonians* and *Lombards* entirely ruined it; and *Frederick Barbarossa* Rebuilt it. It was once Govern'd by its own Viscounts, but the *French*, *Venetians*, Duke of *Milan*, and the *Spaniards* have at different times been Masters of it; the last of which is still in possession of it. It is an Episcopal See under the Arch-Bishop of *Milan*. Being Garrison'd by the *French* and *Spaniards* for *K. Philip*, Prince *Eugene* of *Savoy* attempted, by Stratagem, to surprize it in Febr. 1702. which he so far effected as to get into the Town, and brought off the Marshal *Villeroy* Prisoner, but his Reinforcements not coming up time enough he was forc'd to quit the Town. It Surrendred with the rest of the *Milanese* to Prince *Eugene* at the latter end of the Year, 1706.

*Tortona*, *Dertona*, or *Tordona*, which *Strabo* calls *Derton*, is a little, ruinous and ill Fortified City upon the River *Iria*, or *il Staffora*, about 8 Miles from the Confines of the Dominions of *Genoua* to the North, as far from the *Po*, 10 from *Alessandria* to the East, 25 from *Pavia*, and 45 from *Piacenza*. It is an Episcopal See, under the Arch-Bishop of *Milan*. It is defended by a Citadel, which is regular and naturally Strong, but not kept in very good order. This Town as well as *Milan*, was destroy'd by the Emperor *Frederick Barbarossa*, and Rebuilt by the *Milanese*; but has never recovered its former greatness. It was taken by the *French* in the Year 1642, and recovered by the *Spaniards* the Year following. It gives name to the adjacent Country call'd

*il Tortonsese*. The ancient *Dertone* stood on the Eminency where the Citadel stands at present.

*Lodi*, *Laus Pompeia*, was an ancient Town in *Insubria*, according to *Strabo*, and the name of a Colony. It is said to have been Built by the *Gauls*, call'd *Boli*, when they came first into *Italy*, according to *Pliny*; and call'd *Pompeia* afterwards, because *Pompeius Strabo*, Father of *Pompey* the Great, carried a Colony thither. It stood on the River *Silaro*; but was destroyed by the *Milanese*, Ann. 1155, and is now only a little Village call'd *Lodi Vecchio* and *Lodize*, by Abbreviation, that is, the old *Laus*. The new *Lodi*, which stands about 5 Miles from it, on the River *Adda*, in the Dutchy of *Milan*, was Built by *Frederick Barbarossa*, 46 Years after the Destruction of the other; and stands at the distance of 20 Miles from *Milan* to the West, and as many from *Cremona*: It is an Episcopal See, under the Arch-Bishop of *Milan*.

*Novara*, *Novaria*, the chief City anciently of the *Laevi*, in *Insubria*, stands about 25 Miles from *Milan* to the West, 16 from *Casal* to the North East, and 14 from *Verceil* in *Piedmont*. There are several Inscriptions on Marble which plainly shew its Antiquity. It is an Episcopal See, (whereof *Benedictus Odescalchi*, afterwards Pope *Innocent XI.* was once Bishop) under the Arch Bishop of *Milan*. *Lewis Sforza* Duke of *Milan*, was taken by the *French* before this place, Ann. 1500. and *Petrus Lombardus*, Master of the Sentences, (as he's commonly call'd) was Born here. This Town gives name to a very Pleasant and Fertile Country, lying about it, call'd *ill Novarese* by the Inhabitants. It is a strong Fortress, but was, however, taken by Prince *Eugene* in Sept. 1706. after a Siege of three Days.

*Pavia*, *Ticinum*, anciently Inhabited by the *Insubres*, and said to have been Built by the *Levi* and *Marici* before *Milan*. It was afterwards call'd *Flavia Pappia*, and *Papia* by *Paulus Diaconus*, and other late Authors. It was Subdued by the *Romans*, Sack'd by *Attila* in the 5th Century, and at last Ruin'd by *Odoacer*. It was taken by *Albinus*, King of the *Lombards*; and in the Year 774, *Charles* the Great Storm'd it, and carried *Didier* last King of the *Lombards* away Prisoner. In the Year 951, it was taken by the Emperor *Otho I.* and in the Year 1004, it was almost entirely laid in Ashes by an Accidental Fire. In the Year 1059, it enter'd into a bloody War with *Milan*; and after that time was subject to several Masters, till it was annex'd to the Territories of *Milan*. *Francis I.* King of *France* laid Siege to it, Anno 1525; but his Army was Routed, and himself taken Prisoner: And two Years after the *French* took it under the Command of *Odo de Laure*. At last the *Spaniards* made themselves absolute Masters of it. It is an Episcopal See under the Arch-Bishop of *Milan*, but exempted from his Jurisdiction, and depends immediately on the See of *Rome*. The City of *Pavia* has lost all its ancient Lustre, insomuch that one who sees it now will hardly be persuaded that it was once the Metropolis of a Kingdom, and the Residence of 20 Monarchs. The Castle and Fortifications are in a very ruinous Condition; and the University (which as they say, was Founded by *Charles* the Great) is Decayed as well as the Town. The Cathedral is an old dark Structure, Built awry; over against which there is a Figure on Horseback of Brass, said to be the Statue of *Anronius Pius*. This City stands upon the River *Tesin*, 4 Miles from the *Po*, 150 from *Genoua*, and 34 from *Piacenza* to the West, and gives name to that part of the Dutchy of *Milan*, which is call'd *il Pavese*, or *Territorio*

*Lombardy*



*Lombardi.* *Territorio di Pavia.* Count *Toussain* reinforc'd by the Prince of *Sax-Gotha*. Reduc'd *Pavia* to the Obedience of King *Charles*, October 3. 1706.

*Vivegano, Vigebanum*, is a little Town upon the River *Tessin*, with a Castle, about 20 Miles from *Milan* to the West, as many from *Casal*, and 12 from *Pavia*. It is so called, as *Gaudentius Merula*, conjectures from *Vilis Gieba*, because of the bad Soil of the neighbouring Country, to which it gives Name. It is an Episcopal See, of no long standing, under the Arch-Bishop of *Milan*.

*Mortara, Mortaria*, is a pretty large Town and well Inhabited, upon the River *Gegna* about 4 Miles from *Vivegano* to the South-West, 10 from *Navara* to the South-East, and 24 from *Pavia* to the West.

It is the chief Town of a Country call'd *Lumellina*; and was anciently call'd *Bella Sylva*; but afterwards *Mortaria*, on the account of the signal overthrow which the *Lombards* receiv'd by the Army of *Charles the Great*, when he took their last King *Didier* Prisoner, and put a Period to their Kingdom. In the Year 1658 it was taken by the *French* under the Command of *Francis* Duke of *Medena*, but restor'd to the *Spaniard* by the *Pyrenian Treaty*, Ann. 1660.

*Cassano*, a small Town and Castle, famous for the Battle between the *Imperialists* under Prince *Eugene*, and the *French* under the Duke of *Vendôme* and the Grand Prior, Aug. 16. 1705. Stands on the West side the *Adda*, about 19 Miles East from *Milan*.

## C A A P. VI.

### The Dutchy of Parma, Ducatus, or Ditio Parmensis.

THE Dutchy of *Parma*, which the *Italians* call *lo Stato del Duca di Parma*, is Bounded with the Dutchy of *Milan* on the North and West, that of *Modena* on the East, and the Dominions of *Genova* and part of the Valley of *Magra* on the South; and was anciently Inhabited by the *Anamari*, a People of *Gallia Cispadana*, and a part of the *Boii*. The parts into which it is commonly divided are, the Dutchy of *Parma* strictly taken, the Dutchy of *Placenza*, the State of *Busseto*, and a part of the State of the Valley of *Taro*, and formerly comprehended also the Dutchy of *Castro* and the State of *Renciglione*. After many Changes and Revolutions, this Country fell into the Hands of the Pope. And Pope *Paul III.* before his Accession to the Chair, call'd *Alexander Farnese*, Created *Pedro Luige Farnese* Duk of *Parma*, in the Year 1545: and so this Duke is a Vassal of the See of *Rome*, to which he Pays a yearly Acknowledgment of 10000 Crowns. The Revenues of this Dutchy are said to be about 400000 Crowns, and his ordinary Forces 5000 Men. This Dutchy's being a Fief of the Pope's Demeans, had like to have prov'd Fatal to Prince *Rannucio*, Son and Heir to *Alexander Farnese* Duke of *Parma*, and Governor of the *Netherlands*; For Pope *Sixtus V.* having by repeated Orders forbid the carrying of secret Arms, was inform'd, that this young Prince ordinarily carried Pocket-Pistols; and thereupon (this Prince being his Vassal) ordered him to be Arrested, and his Pistols taken from him in one of the Chambers of the Pope's Palace, and afterwards to be carried to the Castle of *St Angelo*. His Uncle Cardinal *Farnese* left no means unessay'd to procure his Liberty, but all in vain; for the Pope sent an Order to the Governor of the Castle to cause him to be Beheaded; but the Cardinal coming shortly after, (as if he had known nothing of the Fatal Order) to renew his Solicitations, the Pope to be rid of him, sent him away with a new Order to the Governor, to set *Pannucio* at Liberty, not doubting but it would come too late. The Cardinal having by Money procured all the Clocks in the City to be kept back, except the Pope's, and coming to the Castle in all haste, found his Nephew all in Tears, in the Arms of his Confessor; but quickly producing his new Order, and the Governor concluding that the Pope had at last been prevail-

ed with, delivered up his Prisoner, who by his Uncle's Command immediately took Post, without staying to thank his Holiness for his Life; which by chance had been rescued from the Jaws of Death. This Country produces plenty of good Wine and Oyl, and was famous for excellent Cheese; which they say is not at present made here, but in the *Milanese* about *Lodi*. The most considerable Cities and Towns in it are,

*Parma*, } } *Borgo S. Domino*,  
*Placenza*, } } *Pierenzuola*.

*Parma.* *Parma*, anciently a City Inhabited by the *Boii* in *Gallia Cisalpina*, according *Strabo* and *Pliny*, stands upon a River of the same Name, which divides it into two Parts, about 10 Miles from the *Po* to the South, in the midst between *Modena* and *Placenza*, 35 Miles East of the first and as many West of the other, 86 from *Florence* to the N.W. 60 S.E. from *Milan*, and above 200 from *Rome*. It is a very pleasant City, and the Avenues to it are Broad and Straight. The most remarkable things in it are, the great Theatre, which is so rare a Structure, that neither *Paris* nor *Venice*, can boast of the like. It is extremely large, but so contriv'd, that the least Whisper can be heard thro' all the Parts of it. Instead of Boxes the Floor is surrounded with Benches, rais'd after the manner of an Amphitheatre. It may be filled with Water to the Height of above 3 Foot: And this little Lake is cover'd with Gilt Boats; which make a very charming Spectacle, by the help of a fine Illumination. The Citadel of *Parma* was Built after the Model of that of *Antwerp*, and the Fortifications of the City are also very good. The Ducal Palace has nothing extraordinary in it; but that which was a building in the Year 1688, is Larger and more Regular. Besides the ordinary Schools of the University, there is a large College, call'd the College of the Nobility: and not only the Sciences, but also all manner of Exercises are taught here. There is abundance of good Company and fine People, to be seen here at the *Cours* or Walk, especially handsome Women; but it is thought as great a Crime, and would be as odd to see both Sexes in one Coach, as to walk Naked about the Streets. This City is honoured with an Episcopal See, under the Arch-Bishop of *Bologna*; but was formerly Subject to that of *Ravenna*.

*Placenza*,



*Placenza, Placentia*, Anciently a Town in *Gallia Cispadana*, Inhabited by the *Anamani*, now call'd by the Inhabitants, *Piacenza*, stands upon a Plain, about half a Mile from the *Po*, 40 Miles from *Milan* to the South East, 35 from *Parma*, 30 from *Pavia* to the East, and 18 from *Cremona*. It is the chief Town of a Duchy of that Name, Subject to the Duke of *Parma*, since the Year 1540. It is a very ancient Town, and was Burnt and Pillag'd by the *Carthaginians*, under the Command of their General *Hamilcar*, (as *Livy* informs us) and afterwards did Bravely sustain a long Siege, which *Attila* King of the *Goths* laid to it. It is a pleasant Town, Bigger than *Parma*; the Houses low and prettily Built. There is in the Street which they call *Stradon*; a Foot part next the Houses defended with Posts, as in *London* about 10 Foot distant from each other. The Town is thinly Inhabited: and the Houses are generally of *Brick*. The Fortifications are not very considerable, tho' they are very much extoll'd commonly. The Statues of *Alexander Farnese* Governor of the *Spanish Nether-*

*lands*, and of his Son *Rannucio* the first, are set up *Lombardy* in the great Palace.

*Borgo S. Domino, Fidentia*, Anciently a Town belonging to the *Anamani*, in *Gallia Cispadana*, according to *Antoninus*. It appears by an old Inscription that it was call'd *Julia Fidentia*; *Livy* calls it *Fidentiola*, and the Roman *Martyrology* *Julia*. It is now a little dismantled Town on the Confines of the State of *Buffeto*, about 15 Miles from *Parma* to the West, and 20 from *Piacenza*. It had been an Episcopal See, but ceasing to be so for some time, was restor'd to that Dignity by Pope *Clement VI.* Ann. 1601.

*Fierenzuola, Florentiola*, Anciently a Town in *Gallia Cispadana*, Inhabited by the *Anamani*, stands in the County of *Buffeto*, about 13 Miles from *Piacenza* to the East, 6 from *Borgo S. Domino*, and 22 from *Parma*; it is the name also of a pleasant Valley, in a Barren and Desert Country, between *Florence* and *Bologna*. It was Built by the *Florentines*, Anno 1332. There are other Towns of this Name, viz. one in *Tuscany*, and another in *Apulia*.

## C H A P. VII.

### The Dutchy of Modena. Mutinensis Ducatus.

THIS Dutchy is made up of several little Dutchies and Principalities, viz. The Dutchy of *Regio*, the Principality of *Carpi*, the Principality of *Corregio*, the Signiorie of *Sassuolo*, *Frignana*, and the greater part of *Grafignana*; and is Bounded on the North with the Dutchies of *Mantua*, and *Mirandola*, on the East with the *Bolognese*, and the Territories of the Church, on the South with the Dominions of *Tuscany*, and those of *Luca*, and on the West with the Dutchy of *Parma*. Its Length from South to North is about 60 Miles, (according to *Baudrand*, from East to West 45. It was anciently Inhabited by the *Boii*, People of *Gallia Cispadana*; and was formerly subject to the Dukes of *Ferrara*, of the Family of *Este*; but the little Principality of *Corregio* was but lately annexed to the Dominions of *Modena*; being formerly Govern'd by its own Princes. The most considerable Towns in this Dutchy of *Modena* are,

*Modena.* } *Regio.*  
*Carpi.* } *Borsello.*  
*Corregio.* }

*Modena, Mutina*, Anciently a Colony and Town in *Gallia Cispadana*; but Ruin'd by the *Goths*, and *Lombards*, and afterwards re-built at the Charge of the Citizens. During the distractions of *Italy* between the Emperor and the Pope, *Guido* the Pope's Legat and Bishop of this Place, consign'd it to *Azzo*, of the House of *Este*, Lord of *Ferrara*. Ann. 1304 upon the Payment of 10000 Crowns a Year; since which time it hath for the most part continued in the Possession of that Family. It is seated on a Plain, upon the River *Secchia*, about 20 Miles from *Bologna* to the West, 16 from *Regio* to the East, 20 from the *Po* to the South, and 40 from *Mantua* to the South East, it is at present destitute of Trade, and consequently Poor. Its Fortifications are in a decaying condition. The Portico's with which the Streets are Bordered are low and narrow, neither are any of its Churches remarkable. In short, where it not for its ancient Reputation, and because it is the Resi-

dence of the Duke at present, it would hardly be taken notice of. It is an Episcopal See, under the Archbishop of *Bologna*, whereas formerly it was Suffragan to that of *Ravenna*.

*Carpi, Carpum*, Stands upon a Canal of the River *Secchia*, 12 Miles from *Modena* to the North, and near 4 from *Corregio*. It is but a little Town, with a pretty Strong Castle; but is Honour'd with the Title of a Principality, (which is no greater matter in *Italy*) and was for a long time Possessed by the Family of the *Pio's*; but at last in the Year 1550, it fell into the hands of the Dukes of *Modena*. The Collegiat Church in it was first Built by King *Aistulphus*, and afterwards Repaired with much Magnificence, by *Albertus Pius*, then Prince. It is in no Diocesis, and is exempted from the Jurisdiction of the Neighbouring Bishops, by the Concessions, particularly of Pope *Julius II.* and *Leo X.* The French possessed it in the late War in these parts, and abandon'd it in 1703, but in 1705, took possession of it again, and were taken Prisoners of War in it by Prince *Eugene*, Aug. 5. 1706.

*Corregio, Corregium*, or *Corrigium*, is a pretty large and well Inhabited Town, with a Castle, about 10 Miles from *Regio*, and 13 from *Modena* to the West. It was formerly under Princes of that Name; but since the Year 1635, it has been Subject to the Duke of *Modena*.

*Regio, Reggio, Regium Lepidi*, to distinguish it from *Regium Julium*, another Town of that Name in *Calabria ulterior*, (of which afterwards in its due place) is seated in a pleasant Country, between *Parma* to the West, and *Modena* to the East, about 20 Miles from either. Mr. *Misson* tells us, that there is nothing particularly remarkable in this City, except that it is better Built, and more pleasant than *Modena*. Tho' they boast much of their Church of *S. Prosper*; yet it is nothing in comparison with those at *Rome* or *Naples*. They strive also (says this Author) to gain some Reputation by making Spurs, and working in Bone; of which they make Rings for 6d. a Dozen,



*Lombard*, Dozen, Death's Heads, Shrines for Relicks, *Agnus Dei's*, &c. all very coarse. It is an Episcopal See, formerly Suffragan to *Ravenna*, but now to *Bologna*.

*Brescia*, *Brixellum*, Anciently a Colony and City in *Gallia Cispadana*, which *Suetonius* and *Pliny* call *Brixillum* stands upon the *Po*, over against *Viadana*, 8 Miles from *Parma* to the North 25 from *Mantua*, 28 from *Cremona* to the West, and 17 from *Regio* to the South West. The Roman Emperor *Otho* died here after the Battle of *Bebriacum*, (now called *Corneto*) which he Fought against the Forces of *Vitellius*, his Rival for the Empire.

*Mirandula*, *Mirandula*, is the name of a little Duchy, and also of the chief Town in it; which is said to have been Built in the time of *Constance*, Son of *Constantine* the Great. The Duchy lies between that of *Mantua* to the North, and *Modena* to the South. The Town (which is Fortified and Defended by a Castle) stands about 10 Miles from the *Po* to the South, and 22 from *Modena* to the North. This Place with the adjacent Country, hath for a long time been subject to the Family of the *Pici* (of which was *Picus Mirandula*, that Famous Scholar) as also the County of *Concordia*.

## C H A P. VIII.

### The Duchy of Mantua, Mantuanus Ducatus.

**T**His Duchy is bounded on the East with the Duchy of *Ferrara*, on the North with the Territories of *Bresciano* and the *Veronese*, on the West with part of the Duchy of *Milan*, near *Cremona*, and on the South with the Duchies of *Modena* and *Mirandula*; where anciently a part of the *Cenomani* dwelt. A great part of the Duchy of *Mantua* belongs to this Duke; who is descended from the House of *Gonzagua*, in whose Possession these Territories have been ever since the Year, 1327 or 1328. that *Lewis de Gonzagua* a Nobleman, with the assistance of the People, kill'd their Tyrant: *Passarino Bencolsa*, and took the Government upon him. The Emperor *Sigismund* created *John Francis Gonzagua* Marquis, Ann. 1431. and *Charles the V.* erected it into a Duchy, Ann. 1530. This is a Fertile Country, affording Plenty of Corn and Pasturage, but the Wine is not so much commended: And the most considerable Towns in it are,

*Mantua*, Ch.

*Guastalla*.

*Castiglione delle Stivere*.

*Mantua*. *Mantua*, a very ancient City, Built before *Rome*, anciently Inhabited by the *Cenomani* in *Gallia Cispadana*. It stands on a spot of firm Land within a Marsh, made by the River *Mincio* upon a flat Country; which cannot properly be called a Lake; for in some parts of it the Water is always in Motion, tho' in others it Stagnates, which makes the Air so Infectious that few stay in the City during the great Heats, except such as cannot conveniently leave it. This City is not well Fortified, being only enclosed with a Wall, and defended by a Citadel: The City is indifferently large, and the Streets are broad and straight; but the Houses are very indifferent, and generally unequal, The Dukes Palace is a large and commodious Pile of Building, but has very little else to recommend it. It is said to have been very richly furnish'd, before *Colalto*, General of the Emperor's Forces, pillaged it in *July*, 1630. and however this Palace may be furnish'd at present, the Duke's Apartment is in very good Order: And the Hall of Antiquities is full of rare and fine Pieces; and the Cabinet of Curiosities is pretty well furnish'd. The Duke has Seven or Eight

Pleasure-Houses, most of which are very lovely Seats. Besides the Cathedral, the Churches of the Jesuits, *St. Barnabas*, *St. Maurice*, *St. Sebastian*, *St. Ursula* and *St. Barbara*, the Town-House, Theatre, Manufactories, the Mill of the 12 Apostles, Synagogue and Shambles are all very well worth one's seeing, as is also the Palace of Justice: Near this City in the Village *Andes* was the immortal *Virgil* Born; which is one of the most considerable Things that render this City Famous. It is an Episcopal See, under the Patriarch of *Aquileia*, but exempted from that Jurisdiction ever since the Year 1453. and stands about 5 or 6 Miles from the *Po*, 75 East from *Milan*, 75 West from the Gulf of *Venice*, 90 North from the Mediterranean Sea, and 30 North East from *Parma*.

*Guastalla*, *Guardistallum*, or *Vastalla* and *Guastalla*, stands near the River *Po*, on the Borders of the Duchy of *Modena*, in the midst between *Mantua* to the North, and *Regio* to the South. It, with a little Country about it, is honoured with the Title of a Principality. There was a Council held here, under Pope *Paschalis* the II. Ann. 1106. It has been subject to the Duke of *Mantua*, ever since the Year, 1677. that its last Duke died.

*Luzzara*, about 3 Miles North from *Guastalla*, and near the right Bank of the *Po*, is a Castle which was made Notable for the Battle near it, between the Germans and French, in the late War. An.

*Castiglione delle Stivere*, *Castilio Stiverorum*, is a little Fortified Town, with a pretty Strong Castle, on the Confines of the Duchy of *Mantua*, 12 Miles from *Peschiera*, and almost in the middle between *Mantua* and *Brescia*. It gives Name to the adjoining Country, which together with the Town are subject to a Prince of the Family of *Gonzagua*. At this Place the Duke of *Vendosme* drew his Troops together in *April*, 1706, in order to Surprize the Imperialists, at *Monte Chiaro* and *Calcinato*, which produc'd the Battle denominated from the latter.

*Bozolo*, *Bozolum*, is a little sort of a City, enclosed with certain Works, which pass for Fortifications: And stands 2 Miles from the River *Olio*, and almost in the middle between *Mantua* and *Cremona*. It gives Title to a Duke, who besides this Place, is Sovereign of a Territory that extends four or five Miles.



## C H A P. IX.

*The Republick of Venice. Ditio Veneta.*

**T**HE Dominions of the Republick of *Venice*, or the State of *Venice*, taken in a large Sense, may be divided into three Parts, according to the distinct Countries in which they lye, viz. *The Venetian Dominions in Italy*, which they commonly call *la Terra ferma*: In *Dalmatia*, comprehending their Dominions on that Coast and some adjacent Isles: And their Dominions in the *Ionian* and *Ægean* Seas, which the *Italians* call *Il Levante*. We shall treat particularly of the first Two in this Chapter, and some of the Third, the rest being describ'd in that which treats of *Turkey in Europe*.

Whatever the *Venetians* may pretend for the Antiquity of their State and the perpetual Freedom and Independency they have ever enjoy'd, this seems pretty clear, That their City, and consequently their State owes its Original to that of *Padua*. For we are told by Authors of undoubted Credit, that the Seat of this City did belong to *Padua* before the Building of *Venice*; which was not till about the Year, 420. and that *Padua* had a little sort of Colony there, for the Conveniency of Trade and Commerce, before ever one Stone of this City was laid, or before the coming of *Attila*, King of the *Huns* into that Country. And in Testimony of *Venice's* depending on *Padua*, it is as certain that for a considerable time there were Consuls chosen in *Padua*, who were to go to *Venice* and there to exercise the Supreme Authority: and not only so, but as a further confirmation of this Dependency, they sent one *Ægidius Fontana*, a Man of singular Prudence, and eminently skillful in the Laws, to frame such Laws and Constitutions for them, as he should think most fit and convenient for this Infant City; which (as we hinted before) ought to date its beginning to be a Town from the Day on which the Church of *St. James de Rialta* was Consecrated, which was (as *Jn. Favoldus*, a Man well enough affected to the Interest of *Venice* affirms) on the 25th of March 421. There is no Question but the number of its Inhabitants were mightily encreas'd, and consequently the Bounds of their City enlarged after *Attila's* coming into that Country; for he having destroyed *Aquileia*, *Altino*, *Oderzo*, *Concordia* and *Padua*, the Inhabitants of those Cities fled to the little Islands upon which *Venice* now stands, about the Year, 453. which beyond all doubt as it did mightily encrease this City, so in many respects it began to look quite another thing from what it had been formerly, and to grow in Riches and Trade as well as Extent of Dominion, till it has at last arriv'd at that pitch of Grandeur which we now see it. Whoever desires to have a full and distinct, and at the same time a brief Account of this Republick, as to its Antiquity and Independency, he may, I suppose, find Satisfaction in a little Book written by *Don Alfonso de la Queva*, (Ambassador from the Court of *Spain* to the State of *Venice*) call'd originally *Squiliuo della Liberta Veneta*: which tho' it may be thought the Product of his ill Will to that State, yet the Gentleman being one of the greatest Genius's of his Age, and a Man of Honour and Wisdom, 'tis not to be thought that he would invent both Authors and Citations from them;

which the Reader is particularly concern'd in in that little Treatise. He clearly proves, First, That *Venice* was not originally a free State, nor has always been so in any Sense, but has been Subject to another. Secondly, That it has been Subject to the Emperors, to *Odoacer*, and the *Gothish Kings*. Thirdly, That it came again under Obedience to the Emperor after the Destruction of the *Goths*, and continued so to be for the space of a hundred Years. Fourthly, That in process of Time it recover'd its Liberty in a manner; that is, not in respect of private Persons, but only of the Duke, in whose Hands solely the whole Administration was lodg'd. Fifthly, That afterwards it was restor'd to a full and intire Liberty, in which all the Citizens shar'd in common, and were equally capable of sitting in their Council. Sixthly, That afterwards this universal Liberty came to be restricted and confin'd to the Rank of those who now are only capable of holding the Reins of Government, that is, the Nobility, to the exclusion of all the rest of the Citizens. These Propositions being prov'd, as we think this Author does to the satisfaction of any unprejudic'd Person, they must certainly be in a vast Mistake who do with so much Passion and Heat maintain the original and perpetual Liberty of this State, as well as those who endeavour to prove its present Freedom and Independency, in a large Sense, that is, including the whole Body of the Citizens, since it is plain that the Nobility only are so, the rest not having the least degree of Freedom, beyond what *Padua*, *Verona*, and the other Cities under the Obedience of this State enjoy.

The first Government then of this City was Consular, which lasted about 40 Years, and then was chang'd for that of the *Tribunes*; then came in the *Dukes* or *Doges*, who for a long time were either appointed or confirm'd by the Emperor, or the *Exarch*, by whom also this State was confirm'd in its former Privileges, and allow'd to Coin Money. Afterwards the *Doges* became absolute, and exercised arbitrary Power: And then the City was just as free as *Rome* was under the first *Cæsars*; but now the Case is quite altered; for the *Doge* of *Venice* is no more than a meer gawdy Slave loaded with Fetters, which are not the less heavy because they are gilded; and his Authority extends no further than to nominate some Officers of the Palace, to have two Voices in the *Great Council*, and to create some Knights of *St. Mark*. He is as much Subject to the Laws as the meanest Person: And the Inquisition of the State is more severe upon him than upon others. He is chosen by the whole Body of the Nobility, and enjoys this imaginary Honour during Life. When he is Sick or Dies, a certain Counsellor takes his Place and represents his Person in publick Ceremonies, and other Occasions; but neither wears his Habit, nor sits in his Seat. The *Doge* cannot Pardon Criminals; nor take a Journey to the Continent without permission from the State; and when he goes, he leaves all his Honours behind him, and is no more than a private Nobleman: and the very Moment he's Elected, all his Relations who were in Offices are



*Lombard*, turn'd out. The Letters of Princes are directed and presented to the *Doge*, but he must not open them before they are communicated to the Council; that is, the Council receives them by his Hands. He gives Answer to Ambassadors; but must not alter one Syllable of what the Council has put in his Mouth, otherwise he must expect a Reprimand on the very Spot. As to what concerns Acts of State, he is but the Herald; the Senate Enacts, and the *Doge* Publishes them. His Revenue according to Mr. *Miffen* amounts to near 6000 *Sequins* or 2700 Pound English. He has some Marks of seeming Honour put upon him; which in effect, are rather given to the Republick in his Person than to him. He is call'd Prince, and has the Title of Serenity bestowed on him. There are some Marks of Royalty in his Apparel also. When he marches in State he has a Torch carried before him, a Chair with two Arms and no Back, and a Cushion, 8 Silver Trumpets, some Hantboys, and 8 Standards, and a kind of Canopy like an Umbrella carried hard by him; tho' there's no Canopy in his Apartment, nor even in the Hall where he gives Audience to Ambassadors. He never pulls off his *Corno*, but either at the Moment of the Elevation of the Host, or when he receives a Visit from a Prince of Royal Blood, or from a Cardinal.

As to the Nobility of *Venice*, tho' they all bear the same Name, and are united into one Body, their Families are not equally Illustrious. The first Classis or Rank consists of those Families who founded the Republick, and were Nobles before that Time. The Second comprehends those who were elected before the shutting up of the Council; which was call'd *Il Serrar del Consiglio*. The Third contains those who obtain'd that Honour as a Recompence for some eminent Services done to the State: And therefore call'd Gentlemen by Merit. The Fourth is made up of *Nobili per Soldi*, or Gentlemen by Purchase, who bought the Title. But notwithstanding these Differences, all of 'em, from the highest to the lowest, have an equal Right to give their Voices, and enjoy the same Privileges: All go to the *Great Council*, and are honoured with the Title of *Excellency*. The Order of Knighthood may be divided into these Classes or Ranks. The First comprehends the Knights of the *Golden Star*, who are all Noble *Venetians*, that owe their Dignity to their Merit, and wear a Star bordered with a Gold Galoon. The Second Rank consists of the Knights of *St. Mark*, who are call'd *Knights of the Senate*: And this Honour is usually confer'd as a Recompence, on Colonels, and even sometimes on Captains, who have signaliz'd their Bravery in an extraordinary Manner, or rendered some important Service to the Republick. The Captain-General recommends the Person to the Senate, who, if the balloting run in his Favour, receives the Order, and with it a Pension of at least a thousand Ducats a Year. These Knights wear a Medal at one of their Button-holes, with the Figure of *St. Mark* on one side, and a Device on the

Reverse, according to the Pleasure of the Senate. This Honour is indifferently bestowed on all, Noble or Ignoble, *Venetian* or Foreigner. The Third Rank is made up of the *Doge's* Knights, who confers this Honour on whom he pleases, and oftentimes on very mean Persons; who can buy it at any time for a hundred Chequins. This Classis consists chiefly of Foreign Officers, who besides the additional Respect it begets them, are by this means secured in their Places.

As to the Government and Administration of Justice, we are told that there are 5 principal Councils or Courts establish'd in this State. The First is the Grand Council, comprehending the whole Body of the Nobility, who are of Age to sit in Council, that is 25 Years old; whose Number is thought to be about 1400, tho' not above one half of 'em are at Home at one Time, being employ'd in other Places, either in Civil or Military Offices, or on Embassies to Foreign States. The Second call'd *Pregadi*, determines all Matters relating to Peace and War, Alliances and Leagues. The Third is the College compos'd of 26 Noble-men, that give Audience to Ambassadors, and Report their Demands to the Senate, which alone hath Power to return Answers. The Fourth is call'd the Council of Ten, and decides all Criminal Matters. This Court is renew'd yearly, and 3 Inquisitors of State are chosen from among them every Month. The Fifth is the Spiritual Council, in which the Patriarch of *Venice* presides; who is always a Noble-man, and is Elect-ed by the Senate, and confirm'd by the Pope. His Dignity is very eminent, but his Authority is extremely bounded. He can only nominate to two Benefices, for the Clergy are chosen by the People, and can hardly be said to acknowledge any Superiority but that of the State.

The Forces of this Republick both at Sea and Land, hardly amount to four and twenty Thousand, and of these there are usually twelve or fifteen Thousand in the Field. The Captain General who Commands 'em, is always a Noble *Venetian*, and has under him a General of the Land Forces, Lieutenant-Generals, and Sergeant-Majors, who are almost always Foreigners; for the Noble *Venetians* are not very Ambitious of Military Employments, because they must come to the highest Posts by degrees; and a Noble *Venetian* can hardly find in's Heart to stoop so low, as to carry a Musquet, or even to accept a Captain's Commission. A Foreign Captain's Pay is a hundred Ducats, or 250 French Livres a Month, a Lieutenant's 30, and an Ensign's 25, but the *Italian* Officers have but half so much. The Common Soldiers have but 3 *d.* a Day, and out of that must furnish their own Cloaths; but those who serve at Sea have Cloaths given them.

We said before, that the whole Dominions belonging to the Republick of *Venice*, might be divided into 3 Parts, according to the several distinct Countries where they lye, as you may see in this Table:

The Terra firma, or Dominion of Venice strictly tak- en.	Contains the Countries of	Istria.	And the Terri- tories.	Paduano.
		Friuli.		Versnese.
		Trevigiana.		Vicentino.
		Dutchy of Venice.		Bresciano.
		Rovigno.		Bergamasco. Cremasco.



## II.

On the Coast of Dalmatia, the Towns of } *Zara.* } *Trau.* } the } *Cherso.* } *Pago.* } *Lefina.*  
 of Dalmatia, } *Nona.* } *Cliffa.* } the } *Ofero.* } *Isola longa.* } *Curzola, &c.*  
 the Towns } *Spalato.* } *Cattara.* } And } *Veglia or Vegia.* } *la Brazza.* }  
 of } *Sebenico.* } } *Arbe.* }

The Fortresses of *Chonin, Sign, Ciclut, Gabella.*

## III.

The Levante or Venetian Dominions in the East, the Isles of, } *Cephalonia.* } *Cerigo.*  
 } *Corfu.* } *Tine.*  
 } *Zant.* } *Kimolo or Argentara.*  
 } *la Praga.* } *The Morea.*  
 } *Millo.* }

## TERRA FIRMA.

THE first of these, viz. The *Terra firma*, or Dominion of *Venice*, strictly taken, was Anciently a part of *Gallia Cisalpina*, Inhabited by the *Veneti*, *Carni*, *Istri*, and *Enganei*; and is Bounded on the North with the *Valtelline*, Country of *Tirol*, and *Carinthia*, on the West with the Dutchy of *Milan*, on the South with the Dutchy of *Mantua*, the Ecclesiastical State, and the Gulf of *Venice*, which Bounds it also on the East. Its greatest Length from East to West is about 240 Miles, and greatest Breadth about 100, but in some places it is very Narrow.

*ISTRIA*, was Anciently a part of *Gallia Transpadana*, on the Confines of *Illyricum*. It is bounded on the North with *Germany*, and the Dutchy of *Carniola*, from which it is separated by the *Montidella Venia*, on the East with the *Golfo Carnero*, on the West with the Gulf of *Venice*, with which also it is Bounded on the South. It is in Length from North-West to South-East, about 60 Miles, but not near so Broad. The Air of it is not very Healthful, especially on the Coast, but the Country is abundantly Fertile, producing Corn, Timber, Grapes and Olives. The Senate of *Venice* sends a Governour to it, and receives a considerable Revenue from thence. The chief Towns in it under the *Venetians* are,

*Capo d' Istria.* } *Cito Nuovo.*  
*Parento.* } *Pola.*

*Capo d' Istria*, *Justinopolis*, from *Justin* the Emperor, who Rebuilt it, whereas formerly it had been call'd *Aigida*, according to *Pliny*. It stands in an Island, within three Arrow-shots from the Continent, to which it is joyn'd by certain Bridges, that may be drawn at Pleasure, which makes the Place so strong that it is call'd on that account *Castellum Leonis*, or the *Lion Castle*. It is an Episcopal See, under the Patriarch of *Aquileia*, and stands on the Coasts of the Gulf of *Venice*, about 18 Miles South from *Trieste*, and 80 from *Venice* to the East.

*Parento*, *Parentum*, which *Pliny* and *Ptolomy* make mention of, as a Town in *Italy*, is seated upon a Peninsula, and Fortified, and has a pretty good Harbour; but is Inhabited by very few, by reason of the unwholsom Air. It is however the name of an Episcopal See, under the Patriarchat of *Aquileia*, about 7 Miles distant from *Cito Nuovo*, 28 from *Capo d' Istria* as much from *Pola*, and 80 from *Venice* to the East.

*Cito Nuovo*, *Civitas Nova*, is a little Town near the Gulf of *Venice*, that rose from the Ruins of the old *Aemonia*, which was destroy'd by the Hungarians. It stands upon the River *Quieto*, about 3 Miles from the Ruins of *Aemonia*, 30 from *Trieste* to the South, and 8 from *Parento*. It has the name of an

Episcopal See, under the Patriarchat of *Aquileia*; but the Air being so bad, no body lives in it but a few Fishermen in the Winter time; for in the Summer it is quite desolate and abandon'd.

*Pala*, or *Pola*, was anciently call'd *Julia Pera*, according to *Pliny*, and Built by the *Colchi*. It is a little Ill-inhabited Town, near a Promontory of the same name, about 88 Miles from *Parento* to the South, 60 from *Trieste*, and about 100 from *Ancona*, and is an Episcopal See under the Patriarch of *Aquileia*.

The County of *FRIVULL*, *Forum Julium*, or *Julienfis Provincia*, was Anciently Inhabited by the *Carni*; and is Bounded on the South with the Adriatick Sea, and the Gulf of *Trieste*, on the West by the *Marcha di Tervigiano*, and a part of the County of *Tirol*, on the North by the higher *Carinthia*, and the higher *Carniola*, and on the East by *Carniola*, *Sicca*, and part of *Istria*. This Country comprehends several lesser ones, as *il Cadurino*, *la Carnia*, *il Carso*, which are Subject to the *Venetians*, the County of *Gorizia*, and the Territories of *Aquileia*, that are Subject to the House of *Austria*. This Province was formerly given by the Emperors to the Patriarchs of *Aquileia*; from whom afterwards the Dukes of *Austria* and *Carinthia* took a great part of it: And after many Bloody Battles between the *Venetians* and the Patriarchs of *Aquileia*, at last by a Treaty of Peace, in the Year 1455, the Province of *Friuli*, excepting what we just now mention'd, was yielded to the *Venetians*. Besides *Aquileia*, which belongs to the House of *Austria*: The most remarkable Towns in it, Subject to this State are,

*Udino.* } *Palma Nuovo.*  
*Venezona.* } *Civida di Friuli.*  
*Marono.* }

*Aquileia*. *Aquileia*, of old the Chief City of the *Carni*, according to *Livy* and *Pliny*, stands upon the River *Natisone*, not far from the Shoar of the Adriatick Sea; about 50 Miles from *Venice* to the North-East, about 30 from *Trieste* to the West, and as many from *Concordia* to the East. It was Anciently a Famous and very Rich City, by reason of its Commodious Situation for Trade and Commerce: And was the Bulwark of *Italy* on that side; and therefore it was that two noble Romans who had been Consuls maintain'd it against *Maximius*, as *Constantinus* did against his Brother *Constantinus*, and afterwards *Maximius* endeavour'd to possess himself of it against *Theodosius* the Emperor. *Attila*, King of the *Huns*, after a Three Years Siege, took and Sack'd it, in the year 452. *Narjes* afterwards Repair'd it; and in the Year 590 it was reduc'd to Ashes by the *Lombards*; and afterwards Rebuilt by the Patriarch Pope; whose Successors were Possessors of it a long time, till at last it fell into the Hands of



*Lombardy.* the Archdukes of *Austria*, who remain Masters of it. At present there's hardly any body living in it, except a few Fishermen, by reason the Air is so Unwholesome and the Rubbish of the old City so lying scatter'd up and down. The Patriarch of it lives now at *Udine*.

*Udine* *Utinum*, Anciently a City belonging to the *Carni*, Stands near the River *Torre*, 20 Miles North from the Shoar of the Adriatick Sea, as many to the North-west of *Aquileia*, 11 from *Palma*, 20 from *Gorizia* to the West, and 5 from *Cisadal di Friuli*. It is now the chief Town of this Country, since the Patriarch remov'd his Seat from *Aquileia* hither; whereas formerly it was an Episcopal See, but no great Town. It has been subject to the State of *Venice*, since the Year 1420.

*Palma*, *Palma*, is a Place of great Strength and Importance, being Built upon the Confines of the *Austrian* Territories, in a Plain near the River *Natisone* where formerly the Church of *St. Laurentius de Ronchi* stood, about 10 Miles from *Udine* to the South East, as many from *Aquileia*, 18 from *Marano* to the North, and 15 from *Gorizia* to the South-West. The Foundation of it was laid on the 7th of *October*, 1593. and was design'd by the *Venetians*, as a defence to their Dominions against the *Austrians*.

*Cisadal di Friuli*, *Ferum Julii*, was Anciently a Colony and Town belonging to the *Carni*, according to *Ptolemy* and *Tacitus*, which *Paulus Diaconus* calls *Castrum Julienne*. It stands on the River *Natisone*, about 7 Miles from *Udine* to the East, and 15 from *Gorizia*.

The Country of *TREVIGIANA*, or *La Marca Trevigiana*, lies betwixt the Territories of *Friuli* on the East, and those of *Vicentino* and *Trent* on the West. It was formerly much larger; but now comprehends only the Territories of *Trevigiano*, *Bullunese* and *Feltrino*, and is comput'd to be 48 Miles East and West, and 68 North and South. The most considerable Towns in it are,

<i>Trevise</i> , Cap.	}	<i>Conegliano</i> ,
<i>Belluno</i> ,		<i>Oderzo</i> ,
<i>Feltri</i> ,		<i>la Mesa</i> ,
<i>Ceneda</i> .		<i>Cadara</i> ,
<i>Saravalle</i> ,		

*Trevise*, *Trevisi*, or *Treviso Tarvisum*, Stands upon the Banks of the River *Stile*, about 18 Miles from *Venice* to the North West, 15 from *Oderzo* to the South-West, and 20 from *Padua*. It is a pretty Large and Strong Town, especially on the account of its being almost surrounded with Water, which makes it almost Inaccessible and Impregnable. It has been subject to the State of *Venice* since the year 1336; for tho' the Emperor *Maximilian* took it in the year 1519. yet it was restor'd to the *Venetians* shortly after. It is an Episcopal See under the Patriarch of *Aquileia*.

*Belluno*, or *Cisadal di Belluno*, *Belurum*, mentioned by *Pliny* and *Ptolemy*, is a little Town, but well Inhabited, on the River *Piave*, about 30 Miles to the North of *Trevise*, and 50 from *Venice*; and gives name to the adjacent Country. It is an Episcopal See under the Patriarch of *Aquileia*.

*Feltri* *Feltia* which *Antoninus* places in *Venetia*, in *Gallia Cisalpina*, Stands upon the River *Aso*, which a little below falls into the *Piave*, about 10 Miles from the Confines of the Country of *Trent* to the East, 15 from *Ceneda*, as many from *Belluno*, and 45 from *Venice* to the N. W. It is an Episcopal See, and gives name to the adjacent Country, and hath been un-

der the Jurisdiction of *Venice* since the Year 1400.

*Ceneda*, *Ceneta*, or *Ceneda Agathia*, and Anciently *Acedum*, Stands at the Foot of the H.I's, near the Spring-Head of *Montegano*, in the midst between the Rivers *Piave* to the West, and *Livenzo* to the East, at the distance of 10 Miles from either, 13 from *Belluno* to the South, as much from *Oderzo*, and 15 from *Trevigo*. It is a pretty little Town, and well Inhabited. The Episcopal See of *Belluno*, which was Subject to the Patriarch of *Aquileia* was Translated hither; but the Bishop ordinarily Resides at *Saravalle*, a little Town about 2 Miles from this Place.

*Oderzo*, *Opitergium*, which *Strabo* places in *Venetia*, of *Gallia Transpadana*, Stands upon the little River *Montegano*, about 12 Miles from *Trevigo* to the North East, 35 from *Udine*, as many from *Ceneda* to the South-East, and 24 from *Venice* to the North. It was formerly an Episcopal Seat; but was destroy'd by *Rotharis* King of the *Lombards*, and the Bishop's Seat remov'd to *Ceneda*, under the Patriarch of *Aquileia*.

The *DOGADO* or Dutchy of *Venice*, is a little Country lying along the Shoar of the Gulf; round the City almost, extending from the Mouth of the River *Lisonzo*, to the Mouth of the *Adige* having *Friuli*, the Territories of *Padua* and *Rovigno* on the West and South, and comprehends the *Lagune di Venetia*, *Lagune di Morano*, and all betwixt the Village call'd *Capo d'Argere*, or *Cavarzere*, as far as *Grado*, for the space of about 34 Miles Long, and 7 or 8 Broad. The most considerable Towns in it are,

<i>Venice</i> ,	}	<i>Lio</i> ,
<i>Chioggia</i> ,		<i>Rebba</i> ,
<i>Tercello</i> ,	}	<i>Morano</i> ,
<i>Grado</i> ,		<i>Malamocco</i> ,
<i>Castel-novo</i> ,	}	or the Port,
<i>Caborte</i> .		of <i>Venice</i> .
<i>Loreda</i> ,	}	

*VENICE*, *Venetia*, or *Venecia*, (of whose Beginning and Encrease we have spoken already, in our account of the Rise and Progress of the Commonwealth, whereof this City is the Celebrated Seat) is commonly said to stand upon 72 Islands, (tho their number is much greater) but whether they are Natural or Artificial is not agreed among Travellers; some thinking that the *Venetians* might dig their Channels, for the more convenient Carriage of their Goods, (which by this means are brought to their Doors:) And for the Embellishment of the City; which is the only Town in the World that can boast of such a Situation; others maintaining, that if Nature had not done it, the *Venetians* would never have thrown away so much of their Ground, which they have always taken so much care to Husband. And besides, that if they had cut out such Channels for their conveniency, why would they have left so many large spots of Ground entire; for tho' it is commonly Reported that a Man may go in a Boat to any House in the City, yet we are not to take that in a strict sense, since there are some Houses not within several Hundred Paces of a Canal. But whether this Account or that be the Truer, it is most certain, that no City on Earth affords a finer Prospect from without, or greater variety of diverting Objects within. At the distance of 30 Miles one begins to see the Spires of the Churches, and the Prospect is still enlarg'd the nearer one approaches, which gives the Ravish'd Spectator the Idea of a great City Springing out of the Water; nor can one get free of the delusion before




he has enter'd the City, for all the outer Houses of it are founded on Piles in the midst of the Water, for it stands entirely separated from the main Land of Italy, but the distance is only 5 Miles. And the *Gondola's* Pass from *Mestre* in the *Paduano* to *Venice*, in an Hour and half. The Port is a large Plain cover'd with Water, in which there are certain Islands, or rising Grounds level with the Water, on the biggest of which *Venice* is built; most of the other Islands are cover'd with Buildings, and make particular Towns, the most considerable of which is call'd *Judecca*, or the *Jews Quarter*. These Islands are call'd *Lagunes*, or *Lagunas*. Two of them are set apart for the use of those who come from the *Levants*, where they are oblig'd to perform their Quarantine, in certain large Hospitals call'd *Lazarettos*, one of which, call'd *Lazaretto Vecchio*, is a Mile distant from *Venice*, the other 5. The design of these Places is to preserve the City from contagious Distempers: and those who keep them are so very nice and scrupulous, that they will not receive any thing from a Stranger that there's a Thread in, nor so much as a Letter till it be open'd and Smok'd.

The City of *Venice* has neither Gates, Walls, nor Citadel, and yet cannot be justly said to be Weak. Many Authors have esteem'd it Impregnable; and the Venetians themselves have told Strangers the Story so often, that now they are fully convinc'd themselves that it is so. The opinions concerning the extent of this City and number of its Inhabitants are very different. It is commonly said to be 8 Miles in Compass; but Mr. *Misson* makes it pretty plain that it is not 5. The number of the Inhabitants have been said to be 2 or 3 Hundred Thousand Souls, and some have advanc'd it to four; but whatever it might be when the Trade of *Venice* Flourish'd, it is thought at present not to contain above a Hundred and forty Thousand Souls, comprehending the Isle of *Guidica*. The World has been impos'd upon by some who have endeavour'd to make People believe that there were a vast number of Gardens and Places in *Venice*. As to the former, setting aside that towards *Santa Maria del Orto*, and about twenty more less considerable ones, all the rest will not be one with another, above 10 Foot square; and as for the latter, properly speaking, there is but one Place in *Venice*, the Famous and Magnificent Place of *S. Mark*; which is really the Soul and Glory of that City. 'Tis two hundred and fifty Paces long, and eighty Broad, or according to others 280 Long, and 100 Broad. The Church of *St. Mark* faces one end of it, and that of *St. Geminian* the other. 'Tis Bordered on each side with those stately Piles of Building call'd the old and new *Procuraties*, or Lawyers Offices and Lodgings. That on the right hand as you go to *St. Mark's Church* is call'd the new, and that on the left the old *Procuratory*. The first has two Principal Fronts, one of which looks into the Place of *St. Mark*, and the other into the *Broglio*, over against the Palace of *St. Mark*, which is an Ancient and Magnificent Structure, where all the Councils meet; such as the grand Council, the Council of Finances, call'd the *Ceca*, the Marine Council, &c. Here the Money is Coin'd, and the publick Treasure kept in great iron Chests, secur'd with three Locks: the Keys of which are committed to three Procurators, who under pain of Death, dare not make the least attempt to open them till they all meet together. The Council sits twice a Week; which are the only days for all sorts of Payments. All the Streets of the City, without exception are

narrow and crooked; but to make amends for these Disadvantages, they are so clean that one may walk a whole Year in them without meeting with any Dirt, and besides they are Pav'd with large square Stones; which always after a Shower grow as white as Marble. As one may go to most Houses in *Venice* by Water, so also by Land; there being about 430 Bridges over the Canals, the Principal of which is that of *Rialto*, an admirable Structure, consisting of one Arch Founded on ten Thousand Piles of Elm, and is said to have cost two hundred and fifty Thousand Ducats. Mr. *Misson* gives us the exact measure of this Arch, whose words are these, *viz.* The compass of the Arch makes exactly the third part of a Circle, and the Breadth on the Level of the Water, from one extremity of the Arch to the other is ninety five Foot, and the height twenty four Foot. The Air of *Venice* is pretty wholsome, but the Water not so; for of an hundred and fifty Wells that are within the City, there are but two or three good for any thing; and the best they have is Rain-water, which they preserve in Cisterns. Some have reckon'd the Palaces in *Venice*, to be about 400. but tho' this is a bold Assertion, one may venture to say that they are so numerous and Magnificent, that they are sufficient to Adorn Ten Cities; and the finest of them are upon the great Chanal.

The most remarkable things in *Venice*, next to the Place of *St. Mark*, are, the Arsenal, which claims a particular observation. It is almost two Miles in compass; for within its inclosure are comprehended the Magazines for their Vessels, Melting-Houses, Rope-yards, Forges, Lodges for the Galleasses, Gallies, and the Bucenaur, besides the Havens and Docks, for Building and Resitting of Vessels. The Ammunition with which the Arsenal is crowded, is said to be sufficient to Arm and Equip 15 Gallies, 4 Galleasses, as many Ships, and 10000 Men. It is Govern'd by three Noblemen, and under them by the Pilot of the Republick, whom they call the Admiral, who is entrusted with the Care and Inspection of the Stores; and Steers the Bucenaur on Ascension-day, when the Duke accompanied by all the Nobles performs the Ceremony of Wedding the Sea. The Treasury has been much Richer, but still contains a great deal of rare and valuable things, as the two Crowns of the Kingdoms of *Candia* and *Cyprus*, many fine Vessels of Agar, Emerald and Crystal a Sapphire of 10 Ounces, the Doge's Corno, Valued at 200000 Crowns, and many other rare and precious things, which the Reader may find in the latest Travellers. The Republick, as *St. Didier* says, had a Chain of Gold enough for 40 Men to Carry, to which there was a Link added every Year; and 15 Millions in Gold, which they kept as a reserve for extraordinary occasions; but this Treasure was partly Exhausted by the War of *Candia*, and partly by some Venetian Families, who have Enrich'd themselves with the Spoils of it. The Palace of *S. Mark* where the Doge Lodges, is a large Building, after the Gothick manner, but Magnificent. It has been Burnt 4 or 5 times, and the various Reparations of it, have spoil'd the Uniformity of the Structure. The *Broglio* is the Walk of the Nobles, who always take up one side of the Place. This is the general Rendezvous where Visits are made, and Business Dispatch'd. No inferior Person is suffer'd to Walk on that side where the Nobles are, but the other side is free. When a Nobleman is come to Age, and puts on the Gown, and is fit to sit in Council, he is Introduc'd by some of his Friends with a great deal of

*Lom. b. n. d. i.*  




Lombardy.



of Ceremony into the *Breglio*. St. Mark's Church is a large Structure, Square on the outside, cover'd with 4 Leadn Domes, without any Spires or Steeple. The Top is surrounded with Stone Balustrades, for the conveniency of Walking. The little Arterial of the Nobles (which is the Parish of St. Mark) is full of the Noblemens Arms, which are always kept ready Charg'd in case of a Surprise. The Library of the Procuratives has several rare Greek Manuscripts in it, but no great number of Books, nor kept in good order, but has abundance of good Painting, of Titian's, and other Famous Masters doing; and several fine Greek Statues. There are several other good Libraries in Venice; and as many Paintings as there are at Rome.

The Carnival begins always the second Holy-day of Christmas, that is, from that time People are permitted to wear Masks, and to open the Play-Houses, and Gaming-Houses. There is then an Universal Change in the Habits, Customs and Laws. All marks of Distinction and Superiority are forgotten, or at least neglected; All Persons are, or seem to be equal; Respect, Constraint, Ceremony, Care and Business, are Banish'd from Society; and are succeeded by Joy, Liberty, and an agreeable sort of Folly. During the Fair, the whole Place of St. Mark, and part of the *Breglio*, is cover'd with Shops; the other part is full of Jugglers, Tumblers, Puppet Players, Dancing Bears and Mountebanks; which are frequented by all sorts of People, from the Noblemen to the Gondalier. The Opera's and Comedies may be reckon'd one of the Principal diversions of the Carnival. All the Beauty of the Opera's consist in vocal Musick and Machines; for there is nothing in the Habits Dancing, and even in the Plays themselves, that deserves a particular description. The *Radetti* or Gaming-Houses, are properly Academies of *Basse*; and are opened at the same time with the Theaters: and none but Noblemen keep the Bank. There are a great number of fine Churches in this City, particularly that Dedicated to St. Mark, and one of the peculiarities of Venice is, that some of them are Dedicated to Saints that were never Canoniz'd, such as *Jeh*, *Moses*, *Samuel*, *Jeremy*, *Daniel* and *Zachary*, &c. There are also many rich Cabinets, particularly those of the Palace of *Resini*, of the Procurator *Justiniani*, of the Family of *Capello*, &c. There are a great many other Things which deserve particular Observation, but it would be tedious to insert them all; and therefore we must send the Reader to the latest and best Travellers to be more particularly inform'd.

The Noblemen of Venice are variously represented by Travellers; some making them a parcel of proud, insulting, and cruel Men; but we have good reason to believe that it is otherwise. 'Tis true, they take care to maintain the Honour of their Birth, and their Authority over the Citizens and the rest of their Subjects; but they are so far from insulting or Tyrannizing over them that they are always ready to grant their Protection to honest Men; and as for Strangers, there is no City in the World where they meet with a kinder and more civil Entertainment. And however the Barbarous Custom of employing Bravo's to Murder and abuse People, might have for a long time been too much used; yet the Government has taken such effectual ways for removing them, that now the whole Race of them seems to be almost extinguish'd. The Noblemen never appear Publickly but in their Black Robes: nor must they meet in Cabals, or Converse with the Servants of

Foreign Ambassadors. A Nobleman may Poison his Wife for Adultery, and cause her Gallant to be Pondered, without fearing to be call'd in question for so Bloody a Revenge. Which cruel Custom, if it were in Fashion in some other great Cities of the World, the Prices of Poison would quickly Rise, and Dagger making become a considerable Trade. The *Venetians* in their Marriages regard only Kindred and Riches; and for the most part, the Persons to be Married never see one another till they come to be joyn'd in the Lawful Bond of Matrimony. It is ordinary here for Mothers to find out Concubines for their young Sons, to keep them out of Contagious Pits; and a Man that has a mind, may have choice of handom Girls, whom their Mothers expose to Sale as commonly, as Sheep with us in *Smithfield*. One may purchase a handom Maiden girl for 150 Crowns in hand, and as much a Year for Entertainment, and for 200 one may have the choice of the Market.

St. Theodore was formerly Patron of Venice, but St. Mark has had that Office ever since the Ninth Century; about the beginning of which, as the Story goes, the Merchants of Venice brought the Body of St. Mark thither, from the City of *Alexandria*, *Greeks*, *Armenians*, and *Jews* are allow'd the free Exercise of their Religion in Venice; but no Jesuits are allow'd to live there, except those that are Natives of the State, and their Superior must be one Born in the City.

The City of Venice is divided into 6 Parts, which they call *Sestiers*, viz *Sestier di Castello*, *Sestier di Mon Marco*, *Sestier di Conarejo*, *Sestier di San Paulo*, *Sestier di Santa Croce*, and *Sestier di Dorso duro*. It was from the Year 774 an Episcopal See, under the Patriarch of *Grado*; and then the Bishop was call'd *Episcopus Olivulensis*, and afterwards *Castellanus*. But in the Year 1455. Pope *Nicolas V.* Translated the Patriarchat from *Grado* to Venice, which is situated 260 Miles from Rome to the North, 280 from Vienna, 100 from *Ravenna* to the North, 150 from Milan to the East, 70 from *Palma*, and 80 from *Grado*. Lat. 45. 30. Long. 30. 20.

*Chiczza*, or *Chiczgia*, *Clodia Trssa*, a Town of *Venetia*, according to *Pliny*, call'd by later Authors, *Clugia*, stands in a little Island of the Gulf of Venice, on the Coast of the *Dogado*, near the *Lagune di Veneta*, about 15 Miles from Venice to the South, towards *Loreda*, near the Island *Brondelo*, and has a very good Harbour. It sprung from the Ruins of the ancient *Motemaucum*, and is the Seat of a Bishop, subject to the Patriarch of Venice. It was heretofore famous for the Victory which the *Genouese* obtain'd at it, when they made themselves Masters of it, in the Year 1350. but is now subject to the State of Venice.

*Torcello*, *Torcellum*, is a small Town, about 5 Miles from Venice to the North, near the *Altino*, from whence the Episcopal Seat was Translated thither, in the Year 635. It is very ill inhabited, by reason of the Unwhollomness of the Air.

*Grado*, *Gradus*, or *Aquileia Nova*, stands in an Island of the Gulf of Venice, of the same Name, near the Borders of the Province of *Friuli*, but in the *Dogado* of Venice, (to which State it is subject) near the Continent, about 12 Miles from *Aquileia* to the South, and 50 from Venice to the East. It was Built by the *Aquileians*, after *Attila* had destroy'd their City. It was for some time the Seat of the Patriarch; but he returning to *Aquileia*, the People of

Grado



*Grado*, let up a Patriarch of their own, in the time of *Charles the Great*, as *Egingba dus* and *Reginus* relate; and so the Patriarchat was divided into that of *Aquileia*, and that of *Grado*; but in the Year 1455. Pope *Nicolas V.* Translated it to *Venice*, where it still continues.

*Cabrie, Caprule*, is a little Ill inhabited Town, because of the Unwholsomeness of the Air, in an Island of the same Name, near the Confines of *Friuli*, about 4 Miles from the River *Lemene*, about 20 from *Venice* to the North-East, 30 from *Aquileia*, and 11 from *Concordia* to the South. It is the Name of a small Bishoprick, under the Patriarch of *Venice*, to which State it belongs.

The Country call'd by the *ITALIANS* *Il Po-lesine di Rovigno, Rodigina Peninsula*, lies East and West between the *Po* and the *Alige*, South and North between the *Paduano*, and the Dutchy of *Ferrara*. It was formerly a part of *Romardiola*, subject to the Duke of *Ferrara*; but hath been under the Jurisdiction of *Venice* ever since the Year 1500. The Towns of any Note in it are,

*Rovigo.*

*Adria.*

*Labadia.*

*Rovigo, Rhodigium*, is a little City, encompass'd with a ruinous Wall, upon the Confines of the *Paduano*, 30 Miles from *Venice* to the South West, 25 from *Ferrara* to the North, and as many from *Padua*. It belong'd formerly to the Duke of *Ferrara*, but is now subject to the State of *Venice*; and is the Residence of the Bishop of *Adria*. That Ancient and Famous City, which gave its Name to the Gulf, being now but a pitiful half-drown'd Village.

*Adria* or *Adila*, anciently a Town in *Gallia Transpadana*, in the Country of *Venetia*, according to *Strabo*, which *Mela* calls *Atria* and *Hadria*, stands upon the little River *Tartaro*, almost 5 Miles from the Confines of the Ecclesiastical State, and Dutchy of *Ferrara*, 50 from *Ravenna* to the North, 30 from *Ferrara* to the North-East, and 25 from *Venice* to the South. It was formerly a Bishop's See, Suffragan to the See of *Ravenna*; but now a very inconsiderable Town, being almost destroy'd by the Violence of the Waves of the Sea, so that the Bishop resides at *Rovigo*. *Pliny* calls it *Atria*, and the Sea had its Name from it, being first call'd *Atriatum Mare*, afterwards *Adriaticum*, and by *Horace* *Adriaticum*.

The *PADUANO*, *Patavinus Ager*, anciently inhabited by a part of the *Veneri*, is bounded on the North with the *Marca di Trevigiana*, on the East with the *Dogado di Veneta*, on the South with the Country of *Rivigno*, and on the West with the *Veronese*. It owes its Name to the Chief City of it, and has been under the Jurisdiction of *Venice*, since the Year 1403. The most considerable Towns in it are,

*Padua, Ch.*

*Este.*

*Campo St. Pietro.*

*Pieve di Sacro.*

*Mirano.*

*O. ago.*

*Cittadella.*

*Montagnana.*

*Castelbaneo.*

*Monfence.*

*Padua, or Padoua, Patavium*, anciently a City in the Country of *Venetia*, in *Gallia Transpadana*, according to *Pliny*, *Ptolomy* and *Mela*, stands about 24 Miles from *Venice* to the West, 18 from *Vicenza*, and 48 from *Ferrara* to the North. It was anciently, according to *Mela*, one of the Richest and most flourishing Cities in *Italy*; but is now (according to

*Misson*) a Poor and Ill-peopled City. The Circuit of it is very considerable (some reckoning it 8 Miles) but there's a great deal of waste Ground, where there are no Houses, and many Houses wherein there are no Inhabitants. The Ancient *Padua* hath still retain'd its first Walls; but the City falling into the Hands of the *Venetians*, in the Year 1403. in 1519. they pull'd down the Suburbs, in which were 10 Monasteries, 6 Churches, 7 Hospitals, and about 3000 Houses. There are Porches or Piazza's almost throughout the whole City, which are convenient to shelter People from the Rain, but make the Streets both narrow and dark, and give opportunity to those frequent Robberies and Murders, which they call in *Padua* *Qui va li*. It is a sort of a Sport which the Students have there; who hiding themselves between the Pillars, watch the coming of some unhappy Passenger, whom they immediately kill or lame, without the least hope of Redress. But the University has of late been in so poor a Condition, and the Number of the Students so small, that People are not much afraid of the *Qui va li*. Some are of opinion, that *Padua* was anciently a Sea-Port Town; because the Ancients speak of it as a very rich Place; and because when they dig Wells and Foundations of Houses, they find in several Places Anchors and Masts. But whether it has so, or Ships brought up there by a large Canal, we will not determine. *Antenor* has commonly been believ'd to have been the Founder of this City; but tho' we are told that he came into this Country, and Built a City call'd *Patavium*, we are not very sure that this is the Place.

The most remarkable Things in *Padua* are, the Church of *St. Anthony* of *Lisbon*, whom they call *St. Anthony* of *Padua*, because (altho' he was a *Franciscan* of *Lisbon*) he Died and was Buried there. It is very large and full of fine pieces of Sculpture and Painting. Also many Magnificent Tombs, particularly that of *Alexander Contarini*, Admiral of the Republick, and Procurator of *St. Mark*; and that of Count *Horatio Sizzo*, who was kill'd at *Vienna* in the last Siege. In this Church are also the Chappels of *St. Anthony* and *St. Felix*, both very well worth an Ingenious Man's Observation. The Church of *St. Justina*, is also a very fine one; and the Monastery is very Large and Noble. The Hall of the Town-House is very large, but dark, being 256 Foot long, and 86 broad; and is of the Figure of a Rhomboides; but supported by no Pillars. *Peter Aponus*, who was the Architect, and a Famous Necromancer, says *Cardan*, adorn'd the Roof with Constellations, and Astronomical Figures, which are still to be seen. There is a Monument erected in the Palace of Justice, in Honour of *Tit Livius*, the Famous Roman Historian, who was Born in this Place; for in the Year 1413. there was found in the Gardens of *St. Justina*, a Coffin of Lead, which they presently concluded to be that of *T. Livius*; and putting what was within it in a Coffin of Wood, the most considerable Persons of the City carry'd it to *St. Justina's* Church, where it lay till the Year 1447. when it was remov'd to the aforesaid Palace, and the Monument erected; to which they added an Inscription, which was found near the Place where the Temple of Concord stood; and plac'd over the Inscription a Head of Marble, which had been in the possession of a Gentleman of *Padua*, thought to be that of *Lentulus Marcellinus*. 'Tis true, both Head and Inscription are old; but by a late Differtation it appears, that this Inscription did not belong to the Famous



*Lombard.* Famous Historian, but to one *T. Livius*, a Freed-Man of one of the Historians Daughters. There are in this City a great many knowing Antiquaries, and several Cabiners of Curiosities. The University is in a very mean condition: for of 11 Colleges there are 9 employ'd to other uses; but that which remains is a fine Building. This University was Founded, or (as some say) repair'd and re establish'd by the Emperor *Frederick*, Ann. 1222. This City was taken by the Emperor *Maximilian*, 1509. but recover'd not long after.

*Este, Atteste*, anciently a Town in *Gallia Transpadana*, according to *Pliny* and *Tacitus*, upon the River *Bacigione*, near the Hills call'd *Monti di Padua*, about 12 Miles to the South of *Padua*, 5 to *Minfelice*, and 30 from *Venice* to the South-West. It was formerly a Bishop's Seat under the Patriarch of *Aquileia*; and from hence the Princes of *Este* had their Name, in whose Possession the Dutchy of *Ferrara* was for a long time, as now *Modena* is.

The Country call'd *VERONESE*, *Veronensis Ager*, is bounded with the Country of *Trent* on the North, the *Vicentino* and *Paduano* on the East, the Dutchy of *Mantua* on the South, and the *Bresciano*, and the *Lago di Garda* on the West; and was anciently inhabited by a Part of the *Cenomani*. It lies South East and North-West, for the Space of 56 Miles; and the Towns of any note in it are,

<i>Verona.</i>	}	<i>Garda.</i>
<i>Paschiera.</i>		<i>Chiusa.</i>
<i>St. Benifacio.</i>		<i>Legnano.</i>

*Verona.* *Verona*, anciently a City of the *Cenomani*, in *Gallia Transpadana*, according to *Strabo*, *Livy* and *Ptolemy*; in *Rhetia*, according to *Pliny*, was built by the *Euganei* and *Rheti*, and afterwards possess'd by the *Cenomani*. It has always been a famous City in many respects. The Situation of it is admirable, the Air good, and the City large; and affords a ravishing Prospect from any neighbouring Eminency. It is divided into two Parts by the *Adige*, over which there are Four stately Stone Bridges, which make the Communication between these Parts. The Castles of *St. Felix* and *St. Peter*, command the Town; but the other Fortifications of this Place are much neglected, and very irregular. The Amphitheatre in *Verona* is a most surprizing piece of Antiquity: The outward Wall is almost destroy'd; but Care has been taken to repair and preserve the Benches, whereof there are 44. The longest Diameter of the *Arena* is 233 French Feet, and the shortest or breadth 136. Every Step is 1 Foot 3 Inches of the same Measure, and about 2½ Foot broad. It is commonly believ'd that *Augustus* built it, tho' some attribute it to the Emperor *Maximin*. The Cathedral is a little dark Church; in which is to be seen the Monument of Pope *Lucius III.* who, as well as his Predecessor *Alexander III.* had great Broils with *Frederick Barbarossa*. The Church of *St. Zeno* is said to be built by *Pepin*, Son of *Charlemain*, and King of *Italy*; who, as some believe, lies Buried here. Near the Church of *St. Maria Antica*, there are several Magnificent Tombs of the *Scaligers*, who were Princes of *Verona*, before that City belong'd to the Republick of *Venice*. The Cabinet of Count *Mascardo* is a rare and wonderful Collection of Pictures, Books, Rings, Animals, Plants, Monstrous Productions of Nature, and curious Works of all Fashions; but especially, a vast Number of old Instruments and Utensils,

which were us'd in the Pagan Sacrifices; above Five Thousand of all sorts of Medals, great Variety of Coins, some whereof are of Leather; and also a great Collection of Shells, Fossils, Lamps, Urns, and a Thousand other Things, too many to be inserted here.

This City has been subject to the Republick of *Venice* since the Year 1403. and in an old Inscription is call'd *Colonia Augusta*. It was the Birth-place of the Poet *Catullus*: And was taken by the Emperor *Maximilian* in the Year 1509. but restor'd in the Year 1516. to the *Venetians*. It is an Episcopal See, under the Patriarch of *Aquileia*: And is distant 35 Miles from *Trento* or *Trente* to the South, 22 from *Mantua*, 40 from *Brescia* to the East, and 70 from *Venice* to the West.

*Chiusa, Veruca*, which *Cassiodorus* makes mention of as a Fortrefs of *Rhetia*, stands upon the River *Adige*, 10 Miles above *Verona*, at the Foot of a high Rock, with a Passage leading to it, cut out of the same Rock; on the other side whereof is a Precipice, the Bottom whereof is wash'd by the River *Adige*. *Cluverius* thinks that *Veruca* is rather the Name of a Fort, call'd *il Castello della Pietra*, in the County of *Tirol*, belonging to the House of *Austria*, about 4 Miles from *Rovereto* or *Rovere* to the North, and 9 from *Trente*.

*Legnago, Leonicum*, stands upon the *Adige*, about 27 Miles below *Verona*, and as many from *Ferrara*: And is improperly taken by some for *Liniacum*.

On the North of the *Veronese* lies a small Territory which was part of the County of *Tirol*, but now under the Bishop of *Trent*, under Homage to the Emperor, wherein stands *Roveredo*, a strong fortified Town, which was often talk'd of during the late War, as lying on the Road by which the Imperialists pass'd into *Italy*.

The Country call'd *il VICENTINO*, *Vicentinu Ager*, is bounded with the Country of *Trent* on the North, the *Marca di Trevigiana* on the East, the *Veronese* on the West, and the *Paduano* on the South and partly on the East. The Towns of Note are *Vicenza* and *Lenigo*.

*Vicenza, Vicentia*, anciently a City in *Gallia Cisalpina*, according to *Tacitus*; by *Ptolemy* call'd *Vicentia*, and *Vicetia* by *Pliny*; stands at the Confluence of the Rivers *Bacigione* and *Verone*, 18 Miles from *Padua* to the West, 30 from *Verona*, and as many from *Feltri* to the South. It is about half as big as *Verona*, and encompass'd only by old Walls; and the two or three little Rivers which meet here, tho' they are very useful, yet are not Navigable till they all meet. There are some pretty good Churches in it; but these, as well as other Things that are to be seen here, do not at all deserve the lofty Names the Inhabitants give them. The Church call'd the *Coronata* is well Pav'd and Wainscoted: That of the Nuns of *St. Catherine* hath three fine Altars. The Town-House is very indifferent; but they boast of it as a rare Piece. There are some Ruins of an ancient Amphitheatre at *Vicenza*; and the Theatre and the Academy of the *Olympicks* is the Work of the famous *Palladio*. The Triumphal Arch without the Gates, at the Entrance of the Plain, which is call'd the *Field of Mars*, is in Imitation of the ancient way of Building, by the same *Palladio*. This City was taken by the Emperor *Maximilian*, in the Year 1508. but restor'd by a Treaty of Peace in 1516. and has continu'd ever since under the Republick of *Venice*. It is an Episcopal See under the Patriarch of *Aquileia*.  
T



The Country of **BRESCIANO**, *Brixianus Ager*, which lies to the West of the *Veronese*, was formerly a part of the Dutchy of *Milan*, but has been subject to the Republick of *Venice* about 200 Years, is bounded on the North with the *Valtelline* and the County of *Tirol*, by the *Cremonese* on the South, the *Veronese* on the East, and the *Bergomasco* on the West; and was anciently inhabited by a part of the *Cenomani* and *Enganei*. The Towns of any Note in it are,

Brescia.	}	Roca d' Anso.
Asola.		Porto Vigo.
Montebello.		Orci Nuovi.
Salo.		Orci Vecchi.
Iseo.		

*Brescia*, *Brixia*, anciently a City and Colony of *Gallia Transpadana*, and Metropolis of the *Cenomani*, according to *Strabo* and *Pliny*, and at present a well-inhabited Town, and of considerable Traffick, stands on the River *Mela*, 15 Miles from the Lake of *Garda* to the S. W. almost as much from that of *Iseo* to the S. E. 30 from *Mantua* to the W. near as much from *Bergamo* to the E. and about 50 from *Milano*. It is a fortified Place with a Citadel upon an adjacent Rock. It is said to have been Built by the *Insubres*, or by the *Senones*, together with *Como* and *Bergamo*. It is a Bishop's Seat, Suffragan to the Arch-Bishop of *Milan*. The Palace of Justice in this City is a great and fair Building, of a certain hard Stone resembling Marble. Opposite to this Palace there is a Portico 500 Paces long, almost quite fill'd with Armourers Shops. The Fire Arms that are made here being famous all over *Italy*. In the Cathedral they preserve with great Veneration that which they call *Constantine's Cross*; which they say is a Blew Cross of an unknown Matter; but it is never fully shewn, and so we cannot describe it; only this much is certain, that this cannot be the Cross which appear'd to *Constantine* when he fought against *Maxentius*, since that was only a Figure in the Air, and not a palpable Substance.

*Salo*, *Salodium*, stands on the West side of the Lake *Garda*, between *Brescia* and *Trente*, 20 from the former, and 30 from the latter, and 30 also from *Verona* to the West.

*Orci Nuovi*, *Orci Novi*, is a Place of considerable Strength, being upon the Confines of the Dutchy of *Milan*, near the River *Oglio*.

*Calcinato*, a small Town, seated in the midway between *Brescia* on the West, and *Castiglione* on the East; made notable by the Defeat of the Imperialists near it, by the *French* and *Spaniards* under the Duke of *Vendôme*, in April 1706.

*Chiari*, another small Town, which was made famous by a Battle in 1701. wherein the Imperialists defeated the *French*. It stands in the Western Confines, 5 Miles East from the River *Oglio*, and 12 Miles West from *Brescia*.

The Country call'd **BERGAMOSCO**, *Bergomense Territorium*, anciently a part of *Gallia Transpadana*, inhabited by the *Orobii*, formerly belong'd to the Dutchy of *Milan*; but in the Year 1428. it revolted to the *Venetians*, who still retain the Possession of it. It is bounded on the North with the *Valtelline*, on the East by the *Bresciano*, on the South and West by the Dutchy of *Milan*, and contains these Towns,

Bergamo.	}	Romano.
Martinengo.		Calepio.
Clusano.		

*Bergamo*, *Bergamani*, anciently a City in *Gallia Transpadana*, inhabited by the *Orobii Cenomani*, is at present a strong Town, and a Place of considerable Traffick, seated on a little Hill at the Foot of the *Alpes*. Besides its Fortifications, which are well In'd, and in good Repair, it has a Citadel with some Forts and advanc'd Works, which defend the strong Grounds that command it. It has also five Suburbs, every one of which is worth a little Town. In the Cathedral Church is to be seen the Tomb of the brave *Barth. Cagliene*, Commander of the *Venetian* Forces against *Milan*; and who was the first General who brought Cannons into the Field. *Ambrosius Calepinus*, who was Born at *Calepio*, a Village near this Place, lies inter'd at the *Augustin's*. The *Bergomense Fargon* is reckon'd so ridiculous, that the *Italian* Buffoons affect to imitate it; but that which makes them more disagreeable, is the Wens or Lumps on their Throats, which disfigure their Countenances. These are natural to 'em, and they think it an Ornament rather than a Blemish. This City was formerly subject to the Duke of *Milan*; but after the Death of Duke *Philip*, the Inhabitants came under the *Venetian* Jurisdiction. *Lewis XII.* King of *France*, having beat the *Venetian* Army in the Battle of *Agnadel*, took *Bergamo*, but restor'd it to that Republick six Years after, by a Treaty of Peace, *An.* 1516. It is an Episcopal See under the Arch-Bishop of *Milan*; and stands between the River *Serio* to the East, and that of *Brembo* to the West; 30 Miles from *Brescia* to the West, as many from *Milan*, and 30 also from *Como*.

*Calepio*, *Calepium*, is a little Town on the River *Oglio*, near the Confines of the *Bresciano*, about 12 Miles from *Bergamo* to the East, and 3 from the Lake of *Iseo*. It gives name to the adjacent Valley, and was the Birth-place of that Learned Man *Ambrosius Calepinus*.

The Country call'd **CREMASCO**, *Cremonensis Ager*, owes its Name to the Chief Town of it, and is surrounded by the Territories of the Duke of *Milan*. It is but of small Extent, but very Fertile, and well Water'd. It formerly belong'd to the Duke of *Milan*, but is now subject to the *Venetians*. The only Place of any Note in it is,

*Crema*. *Crema*, a fortified Town on the River *Serio*, 24 Miles from *Brescia* to the South West, 20 from *Piacenza*, and 24 from *Bergamo* to the South. It was formerly call'd *Diuguntorum*, according to *Cluverius*, and was erected into a Bishoprick, under the Arch-Bishop of *Bolegna*, in the Year 1579.

### The Venetian Dominions on the Coast of Dalmatia.

**Dalmatia**, so call'd either from *Delmius* or *Delminium*, a City in *Illyricum*, was anciently the Eastern Part of *Illyricum proprium*. The *Dalmatini* having asserted their Liberty in the Reign of *Gentius* King of *Illyricum*, and having twenty Cities under their Jurisdiction, gave the Country the Name of *Dalmatia*: And having afterwards added sixty Towns more to their former Dominions, and extended their Conquests as far as to the Sea Shoar, began to make Incursions into the Territories of the *Tragurini* and *Epetini*; which was the Ground of the first *Dalmatian* War; at which Time the *Romans* reduc'd that Country into a Province. But afterwards, the *Dalmatians* having acquir'd the

N n

Western



*Lombard*. Western Part of the Country from the *Liburni*, as they did *Illyrium proprium* from the *Romans*, extended their Dominions all along between the Rivers *Ticinus* (now *Il Kik*) and *Drilo* (now *la Drina*) *Liburnia* being then included in *Dalmatia*. After the declining State of the *Roman Empire* its Limits were further extended: And a long time after it came to be confin'd within much narrower Bounds; so that it border'd with *Pannonia Savia* on the North, the *Cyper Melia* on the East, *Istria* on the West, and the *Adriatick* or *Illyrian Sea* and *Macedonia* on the South. It was otherwise divided into *Dalmatia on the Coast*, and *Inland Dalmatia*: And of all the Provinces of the Western *Illyricum*, *Dalmatia* alone retain'd its ancient Name; till it fell into the Hands of the *Slavi*, and then it was divided into *Croatia*, *Servia*, and *Dalmatia*. The *Slavi* (People who came from the *Palus Marotis*) were subdu'd by the *Hungarians*; from whom the *Turks* at last took the Inland Country of *Dalmatia*; and the *Venetians* possess'd themselves of a great part of the Sea Coast, and are now Masters of these Places following.

*Zara*, *Zadera*, anciently a Colony and City in *Illyricum*, according to *Pliny*, and Metropolis of *Liburnia*, stands on the *Adriatick Sea*, or rather is almost quite surrounded with it, and joyn'd to the Continent by a Bridge. It formerly belong'd to the Kingdom of *Hungary*, till the Year 1409. that King *Ladislaus* sold it, together with *Novigrod* and some other Places, to the *Venetians*, for 100000 Ducats, as *Job. Lucius* relates. It is now the Metropolis of *Dalmatia*, and the Seat of an Arch-Bishop, and defended by a strong Castle. It stands in the Latitude of 44. 30. and is distant 180 Miles from *Venice* to the East, 100 from *Pola* in *Istria*, 40 from *Sebenico* to the North West, and 116 from *Ancona* to the North-East; and gives a Name to the adjacent Country, vulgarly call'd *il Contado di Zara*. Near this Place lies *Zara Vecchio*, where the Ruins of the ancient *Zadera* are still to be seen.

*Nona*, *Enona*, or *Enona*, according to *Pliny*, stands on the *Adriatick Sea*, almost encompass'd with the Water, and well Fortified. It is no very large Town, but an Episcopal See under the Arch-Bishop of *Zara*. It stands over against the Island of *Pago*, from which it is divided by a Streight 4 Miles broad, about 10 Miles from *Zara*, and 35 from *Segna* or *Zeng*.

*Spalato*, *Spalatum*, and *Aspalathum* by *Constantinus Porphyrogenitus*, is a pretty large and strong Town, with a very safe and large Harbour; and was anciently Honour'd with the Palace of the *Roman Emperor Dioclesian*, to which it is said to owe its Name. It owes its Rise to the Ruins of *Salona*, an ancient Town 4 Miles to the North of it; in whose place it was made the Seat of an Archbishop. It has belong'd to the *Venetians* since the Year 1420. notwithstanding several fruitless Attempts made by the *Turks* to make themselves Masters of it. It is seated 70 Miles East from *Zara*.

*Sebenico*, *Sebenicum*, or *Sibenicum* (which some inconsiderately take for the ancient *Sicum*, the Ruins of which are to be seen on the Coast between *Traw* and those of *Salona*), is a fortified Town upon the *Adriatick Sea*, about 40 Miles from *Zara* to the S. E. 30 from *Spalato* to the North-West, and 300 from *Venice* to the South East. It has been under the *Venetians* Jurisdiction since the Year 1412. and Pope *Boniface VIII.* erected it into a Bishoprick.

*Traw*, *Tragurium*, which *Strabo* and *Pliny* make mention of as a Town in *Dalmatia*, is now a little

but pretty strong Town, built upon a small Island, and joyn'd to the Continent by a Bridge, over against the Island of *Bua*, to which a Bridge likewise joyns it, 12 Miles West from *Spalato*. It is a Bishop's Seat, Suffragan to the Arch-Bishop of *Spalato*, and has belong'd to the *Venetians* since the Year 1420.

*Cliffa*, *Cliffa*, anciently call'd *Andetrium*, as *Job. Lucius* of *Traw* relates, is a strong Castle in *Dalmatia*, built on a Rock, about 6 Miles from the Shoar, as many from *Spalato* to the North, and 4 from the Ruins of *Salona*. It formerly belong'd to the *Turks*, but was taken by the *Venetians* in the Year 1643. and confirm'd to them, together with a little part of the adjacent Country, by the Treaty of Peace at *Cambray*.

*Cattaro*, *Cattara*, stands on a Gulf of the same Name, far more to the East, over against the farthest point of *Italy*, is defended by a strong Castle built on a neighbouring Hill. It, together with 17 little Villages, has been subject to the Republick of *Venice* since the Year 1420, and is the Seat of a Bishop, Suffragan to the Arch-Bishop of *Bari*, but formerly to *Ragusa*. *Dominicus Niger* takes this place for the ancient *Ascrivium* or *Ascrovium*, mention'd by *Pliny* and *Ptolemy*; others think that Name belongs rather to *Castell- Novo*, on the same Gulf; and some to *Melata Grande*, a Fortrels upon the Coast of the *Adriatick*.

The Island of *CHERSO*, which *Pliny* calls *Cresa*, *Ptolemy Crespa*, is one of the *Abysrtides*, in the *Golfo di Carnero*, over against *Venice*, lies between *Istria* and *Morlachia*, and is joyn'd by a Bridge to the Island *Ofero*, whereof formerly it was a part. Upon this Island stands a Town of the same Name, about 12 Miles from *Fiurme* to the South, and as many from *Fianano* to the East.

The Island of *OSERO*, which *Mela* calls *Abforus*, *Ptolemy Apforus*, and *Pliny Abysrtium*, is also one of the *Abysrtides*, according to *Strabo*, and separated by a small Streight from *Cherso*, to which it is joyn'd by a Bridge, having upon it a Town of the same Name, dignify'd with the Residence and Title of a Bishop, Suffragan to the Arch-Bishop of *Zara*. It lies 30 Miles from *Segna* in *Morlachia* to the South-West.

The Island of *Vegia* or *Veglia*, *Curicta*, lies in the *Golfo di Carnero*, behind *Cherso*, a few Miles off the Coast of *Liburnia* or *Morlachia*, and is about 55 Miles in Circumference. The Town of the same Name (*Caricum*) stands upon the West side of the Island, and has the advantage of a good Harbour, and a Castle to defend it. It is about 16 Miles from *Ofero* to the East, and as many from *Segna*: It is an Episcopal See, and has been under the *Venetian* Jurisdiction since the Year 1430.

The Island of *Arbe*, *Arba*, lies also in the *Golfo di Carnero*, on the East of *Vegia*, 15 Miles East and West, and about 4 from the Coast of *Liburnia*. The Town of the same Name stands on the South side of it, and is dignified with the Title of an Episcopal See under the Arch-Bishop of *Zara*. It stands over against *Segna*, from which it is 13 Miles distant.

The Island of *Pago* or *Giffa*, lies on the East of *Arbe*, along the Coast of *Morlachia* also, from which it is divided by a Streight 3 Miles broad. It is reckon'd 16 Miles long, and 46 in compass, and lies between the Island *Arbe* to the North West and the Town of *Nona*, which is distant 4 Miles from it.

The Island of *la Brazza*, *Brattia* or *Brachia*, mention'd by *Pliny* and *Antoninus*, lies off the Coast of *Dalmatia*, between *Spalato* to the West and *Narenta* to the East, not far from *Traw* and the Isle of *Lefina*, which lies on the South of it.



# THE Venetian Dominions in the Ionian and Aegean Seas.

**C E P H A L O N I A**, *Cephalonia*, an Island in the Ionian Sea, between that of *Leucada* or *St. Maura* on the North, and *Zante* on the South, 12 Miles from the former, and 20 from the other, and not above 20 Miles from the West Coast of the *Morea*. It has 10 Miles on the E. d *Santa*, *Melena*, *Tecbea* and *St. George*, and is 9 Miles in Compass. It is an Episcopal See under the Arch Bishop of *Cosfu*, and hath been subject to the State of *Venice* these several Ages; and the Inhabitants observe the Rites of the Greek Church. There were formerly Four considerable Towns in it; but now only a few Villages, with the best call'd *Cefalonia*, built on a Hill, about 2 Miles from which lies the Port call'd *Aggesta*, on the South side of the Island. It is said to have its Name from *Cephala* an *attention*. And *Hier* reckons the *Aggesta* among those who follow'd *Ulysses* in his Expedition. *Antimus*, *Cicero's* Collegue in the *Cyrene* was banish'd to this Island. And be- fore it was call'd a City, but never built it.

The Island call'd **C O R C Y R A**, mention'd by *Pliny*, is call'd *Placena* by the Poet. It is off the Coast of *Epirus*, the North part not being above 2 Miles from the Continent of *Epirus* extended 70 Miles long, from North to South, and is 12 in Compass, between *Monte de e Chimera*, (*Montes Acherontici*) to the North, and the Island of *Leucada* to the South, from which it is 150 Miles distant, and 50 from *Capo di Santa Maria di Luce* (*Tapigium Promontorium*) to the South East. It has been under the *Venetian* Jurisdiction, since the Year 1356. that the *Corcyraeans* willingly offer'd themselves Subjects to that Republick; and in the Year 1401. their Title was fully confirm'd, by *Ladislaus* King of *Naples* for 5000 Ducats. The *Corinthians* are said to have transplanted a Colony hither in the Reign of *Namus*. It was anciently famous for its Naval Force, and in it was *Cassope* (now *Sant Maria di Cassope*) where stood the Temple of *Jupiter*.

The Town of *Cosfu*, *Coreira Urbis*, stands on that side of the Island that lies opposite to *Epirus*, from which it is distant above 12 Miles to the West.

The Island of **Z A N T**, *Zacynthus Insula*, lies in the Ionian Sea, about 18 Miles from the *Cape Teneise* in the *Morea*, to the West, and 12 from *Cephalonia* to the South: And the Streight betwixt these two

is call'd the Canal of *Zant*. It is divided into three Bars, viz *la Mantigna*, *il Piedemonte*, and *la Pianura*, and contains near 100 Miles in compass, and produces great store of delicious Wines, both *Muscadine* and other Sorts. But since *Italy* is sufficiently stock'd with these Commodities, the Inhabitants do most of their Grapes, and send 'em to *England* and *Holland*.

The City of *Zant* stands on the East part of the Island, which with the Harbour are command'd by a very fine Castle, where the *Procuratore*, who is always chosen out of the principal Nobility of *Venice*, resides. The Inhabitants are Rich, and there are several Gentlemen among 'em. Those of the Greek Church abound most in this Place; but the *Venetians* have built several Churches for the use of those of the *Romish* Faith; and do what they can to establish that Religion, in opposition to that of the Greeks. Here, as at *Venice*, those that come from the *Levant* are not suffer'd to go ashore till they have perform'd their *Quarantine*.

**MILLO** is fully describ'd in the Account of *Turkey* in *Europe*, and therefore we shall say nothing of it here.

The Island of **C E R I G O**, *Cithera*, anciently (according to *Pliny*) call'd *Peophyrus*, and *Peophyrus* by *Arifstot*, by others *Scythia* is the farthest West Island in the *Aegean* Sea, or *Archipelago*; and lies about 8 Miles from the *Cape Malio* in the *Morea*, to the South. It has been subject to the *Venetians*, since the Lords of *Morea* gave it them: and is reckon'd to be about 60 Miles in compass. It is a Mountainous Country, but has a good Harbour towards the South part of it: And is distant 15 Miles from the Island (or rather Rock) call'd *Cecirigo*, and 35 from the nearest part of the Island of *Candia*, to the North-West. There is a Bishop of the Greek Church in it.

The Island of **T I N E**, *Teros*, one of the *Cyclades* (according to *Periplus* and by *Arifstote* call'd *Hydrussa*, for its great plenty of Water (as *Pliny* relates). It is said to be about 37 Miles in compass; seated between *Negropont* and *Samos*, about 10 Miles from the former, and near 20 from the latter, and near 40 North from *Cerigo*. It has been subject to the Republick of *Venice* about 300 Years; and there is at present a Bishop of the *Latin* Church in it.

**Riondo**, or *Argentana*, *Cimelus*, is describ'd in our Account of *Turkey* in *Europe*; whither we must refer the Reader for a full Account of the *Morea*, with all the remarkable Places and Things in and about it.

## C H A P. X.

### The Republick of Lucca: Lucensis Ditio.

**T H I S** Free State lies on the Coast of the *Mediterranean* Sea, between the *Genoese* on the West, *Melena* on the North, and the Dominions of the Great Duke of *Tuscany* on the East: is reckon'd to be about 30 Miles long, and 20 broad. It is a Part of the Empire, and under its Protection. Its Government is purely Aristocratical, the Sovereignty being lodg'd in the Hands of 240 Nobles, who are divided into two Bodies; which succeed one another every six Months, with the *Gonfaloniere*, or Standard-bearer, at their Head. This *Gonfaloniere* is the

Chief Magistrate, and is assisted by 9 Counsellors, call'd *Azziani*; but he enjoys the Supreme Dignity but two Months, during which time he has the Title of a Prince, and is stily'd his Excellency; but all the Advantage he gets by it, is to have his Table maintain'd at the Publick Charge; and after an Interval of six Years he is capable of being chosen again. The Publick Revenues are said to be about 100000 Crowns. How far this may go towards maintaining an Army, or supporting the Dignity of a free State, I will not determine: Some say they



can raise, upon occasion, 15000 Foot, and 3000 Horse, and others screw it up to 30000 in all; but that is to be understood, I suppose, in Cases of great Danger and Necessity, when they put all in Arms that are able to carry them.

The City of *Lucca*, *Luca*, (which is said to have been built by the *Tuscans*, and owes its Name to *Lucumo*, one of their Kings) stands in the midst of a fertile Plain about 15 or 20 Miles long, and is surrounded with very rich and well-inhabited Hills, near the River *Serchio*, about 13 Miles from the Shoar of the *Tuscan Sea* to the East, 10 from *Pisa* to the North, 25 from *Florence* to the West, 60 from *Sienna* and 30 from *Luna*. It gives Name to the adjacent Country call'd *il Lucchese*, and is an Episcopal See under the Arch-Bishop of *Pisa*; from whose Jurisdiction it is now exempted. This City is not very large, since one may walk round the Ramparts in an Hour. The Fortifications are pretty regular and well lin'd; but their Foundations are almost level with the Plain. The Things most re-

markable in this Place, are, the Palace of the Republick, where the *Gonsalonnier* lodges with his 9 Counsellors. The Arsenal, where there is a considerable quantity of Arms for so small a State, and kept in very good Order. The Cathedral, Dedicated to *St. Martin*, in which is the Chappel of the *Volto Santo*, where the Famous Crucifix is kept, that the Angels finish'd after *Nicodemus* had for a long time in vain endeavour'd to do it. The Church of *St. Fredian*, in which there is a Tomb-stone, with this Inscription, *Hic jacet Corpus Sancti Richardi Regis Ang.læ. Here lies the Body of St. Richard King of England*; but it is hard to tell who this Royal Saint should be, since it is very well known that all the Kings of *England* of that Name died and were buried elsewhere. This is still a populous City; but several Noble Families, as, the *Calendrini*, *Burlamachi*, *Turretini*, *Micheli*, *Minfoli* and *Diodati*, and several others remov'd from this Place to *Geneva* about the time of the Reformation.

## C H A P. XI.

### *The Dominions of the Great Duke of Tuscany, Hetruria.*

**I**T is certain, that the Bounds of the Ancient *Hetruria*, were much larger than those of the Modern *Tuscan*, this being but a part of that *Hetruria* or *Etruria*, which was bounded on the North and East, with the *Appenine Mountains*, and the River *Tyber* on the West, and on the South with the *Tyrenian* (now *Tuscan Sea*, from the River *Magra*, to the Mouth of the *Tyber*; but the Modern *Tuscany*, which the *Italians* call *Toscana*, comprehending the greater part of the Ancient *Hetruria*, is Bounded (according to *Bzudrand*, with the *Appenines* on the North, on the West with the River *Magra*, on the South the *Tuscan Sea*, on the East with the Rivers *Tyber* and *Arno*: and comprehends the Territories of *Florence*, call'd *il Fiorentino*, those of *Sienna*, call'd *ill Senese*, of *Pisa*, call'd *il Pisano*, and *ill Luca*, call'd *Lucchese*) now a free and separate State, with several other Countries and Places belonging to the Duke of *Modena*, the State of *Genoa*, and the King of *Spain*.

The Dominions of the great Duke of *Tuscany*, are Bounded on the North and East with the Ecclesiastical State, on the South with the *Tuscan Sea*, on the West with the Territories of *Lucca*, and *Modena*. It is a Pleasant and Fruitful Country, producing abundance of Olives, Citrons, Oranges, Safron, Flax, and Wool, and in several Places there are Mineral Waters, which effectually cure many dangerous Distempers. The Manufactures also of Serges, Woollen-Cloath, Silks, Tapestries, Gilded-Leather, Earthen Vessels and Perfumes, contribute much to its Riches.

That the Reader may the more distinctly conceive the Constitution and Government of this Dukedom, it will not be amiss to refresh his Memory with some hints of its Rise and encrease; beginning from the very Original of the City of *Florence*, and tracing it down to the present time. The City of *Florence*, (as *Machiavel* relates) was begun by the Merchants of *Fiesole*, (*Fesula*) and Augmented by Colonies sent thither from *Rome*; for those Merchants finding it convenient for People to come thither, either to Buy

from them, or Sell to them, by reason their Town stood on the Top of a Hill, appointed a place for them in the Plain, betwixt the Foot of the Mountains, and the River *Arno*, so that what was at first but Store-houses for keeping Commodities, became afterwards a Town, and a place of Habitation. After the Civil Wars in *Rome*, first betwixt *Marius* and *Sylla*, then betwixt *Cæsar* and *Pompey*; afterwards betwixt the Murderers of *Cæsar* and the Revengers of his Death; by *Sylla* first, and then by *Cæsar Augustus*, *M. Antonius*, and *M. Lepidus*, who Revenged the Assassination, and divided the Empire, Colonies were sent to *Fiesoli*, all or most of whom settled in the aforesaid Plain, where the Town was already begun; which did so mightily enlarge its Bounds, and encrease the number of its Inhabitants, that it justly might claim a place among the Cities of *Italy*. It was at first call'd *Arnina*, afterwards *Florentia*; but whatever might be the Original of that Name, whether from one *Florinus* the Chief Man of the Colony, or the Flourishing State of this Infant City, this is certain, that it was Founded under the Emperors of *Rome*, being mention'd in the History of the first Emperors: That when the *Barbarians* made Inroads into, and Ravag'd the Empire, *Totila*, King of the *Ostrogoths*, Demolish'd *Florence*. That 250 Years after it was Rebuilt by *Charles the Great*, from whose time till the Year 1215, it followed the Fortune of the rest of *Italy*, and was subject to those that commanded; first to the Successors of *Charles*, afterwards to the *Berengarii*, and last of all to the Emperors of *Germany*. In those Days it was not in the *Florentines* Power to extend the Bounds of their Dominions, by reason they were subject to a Foreign Power, unless in the time of an *Inter-regnum*, between the Death of one Emperor, and the Creation of another when all the Cities were free; as in the Year 1010 when they took *Fiesoli*, when the Inhabitants were employ'd about Celebrating their Festival of *St. Romulus*. But afterwards the Popes assuming more Power, and the Emperors losing what they formerly had



had, the Cities began to disregard their Princes, and Italy seem'd divided betwixt the Emperors and the Popes. The Florentines in the mean time submitting themselves to the Conquerors, kept themselves quiet and intire, till the Year 1215. After which, they fell into Divisions, and Civil Commotions were never long satisfied with any form of Government, but always contriving new Models; which bred infinite Confusion in the State, (a thing unavoidable in a Society, where Restless and Turbulent Spirits are suffer'd to Live) and Animosities among the People. Sometimes the Nobles fell out among themselves, sometimes with these the Citizens, and sometimes the Richest with the Inferior sort. In all which unreasonable Jars, no sooner was any Faction uppermost, than it split and divided again; and the true and natural effect of all this was, Murder, Banishment and Dispersion of Families, where oftentimes the Wisest and best deserving had the hardest Fate, whilst those of no Worth enjoy'd what was only due to true Merit; which often happens where Passion prevails over Reason, or the unthinking Multitude meddles in the Affairs of State. Notwithstanding all those Divisions, and the innumerable Changes in their Form of Government, the State of *Florence* preserv'd it self, but was certainly depriv'd of vast Advantages it might have reap'd, had it been Managed by Wise and constant Politicks. Had the *Florentines* been so happy, after they shook off the Emperors Yoke to assume such a form of Government, as would have preserv'd themselves in Unity; it is highly probable, that in process of time they might have vy'd in Riches and Power, with almost any State, ancient or Modern: as we may see in this one Instance. For after they had expell'd the *Ghibelins*, who were so numerous as to fill all *Tuscany* and *Lombardy*, the *Guelfs* and such as staid behind, in the expedition against *Arezzo*, were able to draw out of their own Citizens, 12000 Foot, and 1200 Horse. And in the War against *Philippo Visconti*, Duke of *Milan*, being to try their Fortune rather with their Purse than their Swords, in the space of 5 Years that the War lasted, the *Florentines* expended 5 Millions, and 5 hundred thousand Florins; and after all that, when the War was at an end, they March'd out with an Army, and belieg'd *Lucca*. Thus the *Florentines* continu'd in a free State, till about the Year 1410. that *John de Medicis*, (whose Posterity are now Dukes of *Florence*) became so Rich, and acquir'd such Repute among them, by defending the People against the Nobles, that almost the Sovereignty of the City was put into his Hands. His Son *Cosmo* Reform'd the State, and enlarg'd its Dominions, by the addition of *Casentino*, and several other Places. He died in the Year 1464 and left the Management of Publick Affairs to his Son *Peter*; who transmitted it to his Sons *Lorenzo* and *Julian*; but the People growing jealous of their Liberty, and fearing lest the Sovereignty should become Hereditary to this Family, put the Administration of the Government into the hands of that of the *Sodo eni*, whom they Entrusted with it, knowing how fickle the Multitude was, devolv'd all upon the 2 young Gentlemen; against whom the *Pazzi* conspiring, kill'd *Julian*, but *Lorenzo* escap'd and afterwards went to *Naples*, where he enter'd into a perpetual League with King *Frederick*. After his Death his Son *Peter* fell in Disgrace with the *Florentines*, and was Banish'd with his whole Family, but was Restor'd by his Kinsman Pope *Leo X.* After whose Death they were again Banish'd; but Pope *Clement VII.* Son to the aforesaid *Julian*, prevail'd with

*Charles the V.* to Besiege the City, which yielded after two Years Resistance. The Emperor then gave it to *Alexander de Medicis*, *Peter's* Granchild, by his Son *Lorenzo*, Ann. 1531. but he was Murder'd by his Cousin *Lorenzo de Medicis*, who fled to *Venice*. After which the Family of *Medicis* sent to the Country for *Cosmo*, (who was then but 18 Years old) to be their Prince, being next Heir to the Family, according to the entail made by the Emperor *Charles*. He was Crown'd with the Title of Great Duke of *Tuscany*, in the Court of *Rome*, by Pope *Pius*, the V. Ann. 1570. By this the Reader may see how this State began, and advanc'd, and what the nature of its Government was, and how much different from what it is at present. The Duke of *Tuscany* is a Rich and Powerful Prince; his ordinary Revenue (as is generally reported) is above 1500000 Crowns, and some raise it to 2000000, and he is said to have in his Treasury 20000000 pieces of Gold, besides Jewels and other things of great Value. Which if it is so, 'tis no hard matter for him to raise 40000 Foot, and 3000 Horse, and to put to Sea 12 Gallies upon occasion, 2 Galleasses, and 20 Ships of War.

We have already told what the Bounds of the ancient *Hetruria* were, and how different that was from the Modern *Tuscany*, whose Bounds are of a much narrower compass, and also what share of *Tuscany*, in a larger Sense, belongs to the great Duke; whose Dominions are commonly divided into 3 parts, as you may see in the following Table.

TUSCANY Divided into 3 Parts.

I.		
The Territories of Florence.	Florence.	Borgo St. Sepulchro.
	Pistoia.	Empoli.
	Prato.	Arezzo.
	Cortona.	Fiesoli.
	Scarparia.	
II.		
The Territories of Pisa.	Pisa.	Volterra.
	Leghorn.	Campiglia.
III.		
The Territories of Siena.	Sienna.	Monte Pulciano.
	Pienza.	Chiusi.
	Mont. Alcino.	Massa.
	Piombino.	Grassetto.
	Orbitello.	
Port-Hercule.		belonging to the Spaniards.

**FLORENCE**, which the *Italians* call *Fiorenza*, *Florentia*, (of whose original and encrease we have spoke already, in our account of that State whereof it is the Metropolis) stands upon the River, *Arno*, in a delightful Plain, surrounded with very fertile Hillocks, on all sides, except that which looks to *Pistoia*; which rise insensibly, and unite themselves to the Mountains. The vast number of Houses which cover both the Hills and the Interjacent Plain, make a most Ravishing Prospect, from any Eminence or Tower within the City. It is said by some Travellers, to be 7 Miles in compass, by others but 6. According to one of our latest Travellers, it is said to contain within its Walls 8800 Houses, 60000 Souls, (tho' others screw up their number to 70000) 22 Hospitals, 89 Convents, 84 Fraternities, 152 Churches, 18 Halls or Galleries, belonging to Merchants, 72 Courts of Justice, 6 Columns, 2 Pyramids, 4 Bridges, 7 Fountains, 17 Palaces or Courts, and 160 publick Statues. The Streets are all Pav'd with large pieces of gray Stones, call'd by the Inhabitants *Pietra forte*, brought from the Neighbouring Quarries; and the Palaces



Palaces of *Florence* are reckoned the handsomest Structures. *Italy*. The most remarkable things in this City are, the Celebrated Palace *Pitti*, where the great Duke lodges, at the great Gate of which is a large Iron Cannon said to weigh about 5000 Pound. In this Palace there are several Galleries, and other Rooms full of all manner of Rarities, both Ancient and Modern, the most precious and valuable of which are kept in the Octagonal Room, call'd the Treasury, built by *Brunelleschi*, which is 24 Feet in Diameter, and is cover'd with an Arced Dome. The Floor is Pav'd with several sorts of Marble, Artificially laid out there, the Walls are Hang with costly Velvet. Beauried with an infinite number of rare Ornaments, the Windows are of Crystal, and the top of the Dome is cover'd with Mother of Pearl. Nothing is admitted into this Place, but what is of great Value, and exquisite Beauty. the Chief of which is that lovely and famous Diamond, which Weighs 130 Carrats and a half. There is also an Antique Head of *Julius Caesar* of the same Figure, as big as an Egg, a Cupboard full of Vessels of *Agate*, *Lapis Lazuli*, &c. A large Table and Cabinet wholly made up of Oriental Jasper, Chalcidony, Rubies, Topazes, and other precious Stones, admirably well Wrought: A Collection of rare Medals, and a prodigious number of Antique Pieces of Carv'd and Engrav'd Work, Select Pictures and Statues. The Cathedral is a very large and neatly Building, tho' several parts of it are of Gothic Architecture. It is all Cover'd over on the outside, and Pav'd within with Polish'd Marble, of several Colours. It is 70 Feet long, and 300 high, to the Top of the Cross on the Globe, and contains many pieces of fine Painting and Statues. *S. Laurence's Church* is very Large and Rich, and the famous Crispin, its Founder, is the finest Picture of that nation in the World. The Library of *St. Laurence's* is particularly Famous for its Manuscripts; among which there is one of *Virgil's Works*, of the Age of *Tiberius*, and a large Greek one, containing the Characters of *Hippocrates*, *Galen*, *Alexander*, and other Ancients. The Arsenal and Citadel of *St. John Baptist* is a Strong Place, and in very good order; but the 2 Forts of *Benedicte* and *St. Miniato* are in a manner wholly neglected. This City as we said before was begun by the Merchants of *Florence*, then *Fiesole* enlarg'd by the Colonies sent thither by *Agrippa*, *M. Antonius*, and *Leptinus*. Sack'd by *Tullius*, Rebuilt by *Charles the Great*, and again almost quite reduced to Ashes, (whether by Accident or done on purpose by a certain Nobleman is uncertain) in the Month of *July* 1374, made an Archbishoprick by Pope *Martin the V.* 1425, and honour'd with a general Council, under Pope *Eugenius the IV.* *Ann.* 1439, in which *Johannes Palaeologus*, Emperor of *Constantinople* was present. It stands about 50 Miles from *Bologna* to the South, 60 from *Modena* to the South East, 90 from *Parma*, 104 from *Manza* to the South East, 126 from *Firenze* to the South, and 127 from *Rome* to the North West.

*Pistoia*, which *Pliny* call'd *Pistorium*, *Antoninus*, and *Pistoris*, stands in a Plain, on the Banks of the Rivulet *Stella*, 30 Miles from *Lucca* and 20 from *Florence*, 12 from the Borders of the Ecclesiastical State, and the *Bolognese*. It is at present as Mr. *Misson* Relates, a very Poor and Desolate City, quite destitute of Trade, and subsisting merely by the Fruitfulness of the Neighbouring Country. It is bigger then *Lucca*, and its Streets are large and streight, and the Remainders

of its Ancient Beauty, are sufficient to convince one that it was formerly a fine City. *Bruno* tells us that *Desiderius* King of the *Lombards* Built a Wall round it; and that the *Florentines* threw it down. It is an Episcopal See under the Archbishop of *Florence*; and the People are great Admirers of *S. James*, to whom they say they are nightly beholden, and therefore preserve a great number of his Relicks.

*Prato*, *Pratum*, is a little Town in the midl between *Florence* to the East, and *Pistoia* to the West, and is the Seat of a Bishop Suffragan to the Archbishop of *Florence*. *Bruno* calls it one of the four strongest Fortresses in *Italy*, and Built by *Friedrich the II.* and says that here the Girdle of the Blessed Virgin is carefully preserv'd.

*Cortona*, *Cortona*, the name of a Colony, and one of the most Ancient Cities in *Latium*, according to *Strabo* and *Pliny*, and call'd *Cortunum*, according to *Plinius*. *Bruno* tells us, that it is a very Ancient Town, having been Built long before the *Trojan War*; and that the *Peasants* took it from the *Umbrians* under the Conduct of their Leader *Tarco*, and made use of it as a Battle upon the *Umbrians*; and that *Herodotus* says, that in his Days the *Cortunians* spoke the *Pelasgic* Language. It stands near the Confines of the Ecclesiastical State and *Ombria*, 4 Miles from the Lake of *Perugia* to the N. 43 S. E. from *Florence*, and S from the Lake of *Chianti*, and 35 from *Siena* to the East; and was made a Bishoprick by Pope *John XXII.* under the Archbishop of *Florence*, in the Year 1323, but it depends now immediately on the See of *Rome*.

*San-Sepulchro*, *Burgum S. Sepulchri*, is a little Town in the *Ombria*, on the Confines of *Tuscany*, near the River *Tyber*, about 50 Miles from *Florence* to the East, and S from *Citta di Castello* to the North. It is the Seat of a Bishop, Suffragan to the Archbishop of *Florence*; and formerly belong'd to the Ecclesiastical State, before Pope *Eugenius IV.* Part'd it to the Duke of *Florence*. It was made a Bishoprick by *Leo X.* *Ann.* 1515.

*Empoli*, *Emporium*, is a near little Town, upon the River *Arno*, 20 Miles from *Florence* to the West and 40 from *Pisa*.

*Arezzo*, *Arretium*, according to *Pliny*, and by *Pliny* call'd *Arretium*, stands in a Valley, about 3 Miles from the Ferns of *Chiana*; which empty themselves into the *Arno* a little below, 25 from *Siena* to the North-East, 30 from *Perugia* to the North-West, and 40 from *Florence*, to the East. It is said to have been Built by *Arcta*, the Son of *Janus*, and was one of the first 12 *Trojan Colonies*. It is an Episcopal See under the Archbishop of *Florence*, but exempted from his Jurisdiction; and *S. Donatus* was Bishop and suffered Martyrdom here. The Vessels that were made in this Place, were in great esteem with the Ancients, as *Martial* in his 12 Book of Epigrams makes mention; and *Guido* the famous Musician, who invented the Musical Notes, *ut, re, mi, fa, so, la*, was Born here.

*Fiesole*, which *Pliny* call'd *Fesula*, *Persemy Fesula*, and *Silius Fesula* was Anciently a Town of Note, being a Place of Commerce and Trade, to which *Florence* ow'd its beginning as we have said before in the description of that City. It was destroy'd by the *Goths*, afterwards taken by Stratagem by the *Florentines*, *Ann.* 1110, who sent all the Inhabitants to *Florence*; and now lies in its Rubbish, nothing remaining except the Cathedral Church, a Monastery and some few dwelling Houses. It has however the Title



Title of a Bishoprick under the Archbishop of Florence; from which City it is about 2 Miles distant to the North West.

*PISA* or *Pise*, (Anciently *Holonia Julia pisanus*) said to have been Built by the *Pisani*, a People of *Peloponnesus*, according to *Strabo*, stands in an even and level Plain, on the River *Arno*, 6 Miles from the Mouth of it into the *Tuscan* Sea, 54 from *Florence* to the West, 10 from *Lucca*, 14 from *Leghorn*, and 55 from *Siena* to the West. It is a great City, being the second of *Tuscany*, and the Streets are large, Strait and Pav'd with great Stones, and the Houses generally well Built; but at present it is very Poor and Ill-inhabited, which seems partly to be owing to the Miseries it suffer'd during the last War with the *Florentines*, partly to its Situation in the Neighbourhood of *Leghorn*, to which many Inhabitants have remov'd. It was once a Free State, and while it was so, gave several Proofs of its Power; for it took *Sardinia* from the *Saracens*, made it self Master of the *Balears*, subdued *Carthage*, and prov'd very useful to the Eastern Christians. But it was taken by the *Florentines*; and tho' *Charles VIII.* King of *France*, Restor'd it to its former Freedom; yet it fell again into the hands of the *Florentines*, where it still remains. It was made an Archbishoprick, by Pope *Urban II.* Ann. 1092. Adorn'd with an University, Ann. 1349. There was a Council held in it in the year 1400. where *Alexander V.* was created Pope. Pope *Gregory VIII.* Died there, in the year 1187. and the Knights of the Pope and Martyr *St. Stephen*, (whom the great Duke *Cosmo I.* Instituted, on *August 6.* 1561. after he had won the Battle of *Marciano*) have their Residence here. The most remarkable Things in *Pisa*, are, the Cathederal Church, which was Finish'd An. 1153. The Baptistry, which is 180 Foot round, and in which there was formerly a Pillar, on which were discover'd all the private Machinations against the State, as in a Mirrour. The leaning Tower in shape of a Cylinder. Built by one *Bennatus*, 188 Foot high. The Burial-place call'd *Campo Santo*, because of the Earth of the *Pisans* brought from the Holy Land, (when they assist'd *Frederick I.* call'd *Barbarossa*, who took *Jerusalem*) in the year 1228. is a kind of Cloyster, 190 Paces Long, and 66 Broad, comprehending the breadth of the Porrick's; under one of which there is an Inscription, which is a Decree of the City of *Pisa*, occasion'd by the Death of *Cesar*, ordaining the People to wear Mourning a whole Year, and in the mean time to abstain from all Publick Diversions.

*Leghorn*, which *Polybius* calls *Liburnus*, *Antoninus*, *Liburni Portus*, *Cicero* *Labro* and others *Ligurnus*, is a famous Sea-Port Town, standing in a Plain, about 14 Miles from *Pisa* to the South, 10 from the Mouth of the *Arno*, 17 from *Vada*, and about 60 from *Florence* to the S. W. It formerly belong'd to *Pisa*, while that City Flourish'd, but the *Genovese* took it from them, and while they were in Possession almost destroy'd it. It was afterwards by a Treaty of Peace, An. 1297. restor'd to *Pisa*. Afterwards *Charles VIII.* King of *France*, took it from the *Pisans*, and gave it to the Great Duke, in whose Possession it remains; and is his only Sea Port Town. It is surrounded with handsome Fortifications, lin'd with Brick. The Streets are large, strait, and parallel: the Houses equally high, and for the most part Pav'd on the outside. The Harbour (tho' it is both large and safe) is not so well stor'd with Ships (as *M. Misson* relates) as several others; but the Trade on the Bank is very considerable: and it is the Station of the Great

Duke's Gallies. The ancient *Liburni* were so dextrous at making light, and swift-sailing Gallies, that the *Romans* call'd all such Vessels, wherever they were made, *Liburnica Naves*.

*Volaterra*, *Volaterra*, the name of a very ancient City in *Italy*, and one of the 12 first Colonies of *Etruria*, stands on a Hill near the right Bank of the River *Cecina*, 34 Miles from *Florence* to the South, and 37 from *Leghorn* to the East. There were a Company of People who had been perscrib'd by *Sylla* that fled hither, and having form'd a Body of 4 Cohorts of Arm'd Men, held out the Place for the space of two years, before they yeilded it, and submitted to the *Roman* Government. Near to it is the ancient *Vada Volaterrana*, now *Vada*, and the *Aque Volaterrane*, which are very remarkable hot Springs, that send forth such strong sulphurous Steams, (that as *Buno* particularly relates) the Birds whose hard Fate it is to Fly over these Waters, immediately drop down Dead; and so violent a motion there is in them, that they rise about 9 Foot high, and fall down with a great noise, and the Heat so great, that if one throws in the Carcass of any Creature, in a trice you shall see it thrown up, Boil'd to that degree, that the Bones are as bare of Flesh as a Cane is. *Volaterra*, is an Episcopal See, under the Arch Bishop of *Florence*.

*Siena*, which *Florus* calls *Sena*, *Ptolomy* *Sena*, *Pliny* *Colonia Senensis*, others *Sena Julia*, and *Sena*, stands near the Confines of the *Florentino*, 32 Miles from *Florence* to the South, 107 from *Rome*, 26 from *Mont Pulciano* to the West, and 55 from *Perugia*. It was a Free City, and Head of a Republick for several Ages, but was taken by the *Spaniards*, in the year 1555. and restor'd to the Duke of *Tuscany*, 1557. together with the adjacent Country, excepting some few Towns, which still belong to *Spain*. It is an Archbishoprick, and the third City in *Tuscany*, and one of the most pleasant Places in it. Its Situation being high and low (as *Mr. Misson* observes) makes it somewhat incommodious, but it enjoys a good Air, and its Streets are neat, and almost all Pav'd with Bricks laid side-ways; besides, the Houses are handsome, and the waters excellent: and here the *Tuscan* Language is Taught, and Spoke to perfection; which obliges those who would Learn the Italian to reside for sometime here. The most remarkable Things in this City, are, the Cathedral, which tho' it be of Gothick Work, yet is compleat in all parts, the Walls being covered over with Marble, without and within; and the Pavement of Mosaick Work is very well worth Observation. The Place where the Library was formerly kept, where are now those fine Pictures, which represent the whole Story of Pope *Pius II.* design'd by *Raphael*, but the Painting was perform'd by *Pietro Perugin*, his Master, and some others. The Citadel of *Siena* is a very good one, and there are also 15 or 20 square Towers like those at *Viterbo*.

This City bears for its Arms, the famous *She-wolf* giving Suck to the Royal Twins, which was often set up (as appears by several Medals) in the Towns that were made *Roman* Colonies. The great Place of *Siena* is hollow, like a Boat or Scalop Shell, and may be fill'd with Water when any Fire happens in the City.

*Pienza*, *Pientia*, anciently *Corfinianum*, stands upon a Hill, about 30 Miles from *Siena*, and 55 from *Florence* to the South-East, and 10 from the Confines of the State of the Church. It was call'd *Pienza* by Pope *Pius II.* who before was call'd *Aeneas Sylvius*, because he was Born there while his Father was in his Banishment; and afterwards Erected into a Bishoprick



by him, under the Archbishop of *Siena*, in the year 1462.

*Piombino*, *Piombinum*, is said to owe its Rise to the Ruins of the ancient *Populonium* which are to be seen not far from it. It stands on the Coast of the *Tuscan Sea*, in the midst between *Orbetello* to the North-West, and *Leghorn* to the South-East, 50 Miles from either, as many from *Siena*, and about 10 from the Island *Elba*; which belongs to this little Principality, which is Govern'd by its own Princes, under the Protection of the King of *Spain*, who keeps a Garrison in this Place.

*Monte Pulciano*, *Mons Politianus*, is a little Town standing upon a Hill, near the Confines of the Pope's Dominions, about 25 Miles from *Perugia* to the West, as many from *Siena* to the South-East, and 12 from *Chiafi*. It is famous for the generous Wine that grows about it, and was Erected into a Bishoprick by Pope *Pius IV.* Ann. 1561.

*Chiusi*, *Clusium*, which was the name of an ancient City in *Etruria*, according to *Strabo* and *Polybius*; and one of the first *Tuscan* Colonies, and ordinary Residence of old King *Porfenna*, stands on the Confines of the Pope's Dominions, in a little Country call'd *Valle di Chiana*, from a Lake of that name near to which this Town stands; about 40 Miles from *Siena* to the South-East, 20 from *Perugia* to the South-West, and 10 from the Lake of that name. It is a small Town, and but indifferently Inhabited, by reason of the unwholesomeness of the Air; but is an Episcopal See under the Archbishop of *Siena*.

*Massa*, *Massa*, or *Massa Veterenensis*, is a small Inhabited Town on the Coast of *Tuscany*, standing upon an height, 35 Miles from *Siena* to the S. W. and 15 from *Porto Barato*, where the Ruins of *Popu-*

*lonium* are. It has the name of a Bishoprick, Suffragan to the Archbishop of *Siena*; under the Jurisdiction of which are the Islands of *Elba* and *Capraia*. *Onuphrius* says, the Emperor *Constantius Gallus* was Born here. This is the name of several other Places, particularly of a Duchy, belonging to the Family of *Cibo*, lying between the Territories of *Genoa*, on the West, those of the Great Duke of *Tuscany* on the North, those of *Lucca* on the East, and the *Tuscan Sea* on the South.

*Groffetto*, *Rosetum*, or *Groffetum*, stands 6 Miles from the *Tuscan Shoar*, about 3 from the River *Ombro* to the West, 6 from the *Lago di Castiglione*, 10 from *Piombino*, and 40 from *Siena*. It owes its Rise to the Ruins of ancient *Russellæ*, near to which it stands, and is an Episcopal See, under the Archbishop of *Siena*.

*Orbetello*, *Orbetellum*, and *Urbatellum*, stands near the *Tuscan Shoar*, at the Foot of the Mountain *Argentario*, 35 Miles from *Civita Vecchia* to the West, and 50 from the Island *Elba* to the East; and depends on the Abbot of *le tre Fontane*, in Spirituals, as it did formerly in Temporals. It owes its beginning to the Ruins of *Cosò*, now lying in its Rubbish not far from this Place. This Town belong'd to the State of *Siena*, from the Year, 1451. till the Time that *Siena* fell into the Hands of the Great Duke: And then *Orbetello* came under the Jurisdiction of the *Spaniards*, together with *Telamone*, *Porto Hercule*, *Porto Stefano* and *Mont Argentaro*, which they Fortified, and put Garrisons into, inasmuch that the adjacent Country lying along the Coast, is call'd commonly *Lo Stato delli Prassidii*; The Country of Garrisons.

## C H A P. XII.

### *The Pope's Dominions, Dominium Pontificis Romani.*

THE Pope of *Rome* being no inconsiderable Temporal Prince, we shall take the same Method in describing his Dominions, as we have done in those of other Kingdoms and States. We have already, in our General Description of *Italy*, put the Reader in mind who the ancient Inhabitants of these Parts were, and what were the most remarkable Changes and Revolutions that happen'd in them: As also hinted a little at the Beginning, Progress, and Decay of the famous *Roman Empire*: And therefore we shall now only consider briefly the Ways and Methods by which this Ecclesiastical Monarchy, has rais'd it self, from so small a beginning to its present Grandeur: And what the Nature, Constitution and chief Pillars of it are.

The Increase of this Papal Monarchy is owing, First to that Barbarity and profound Ignorance, which after the Decay of the *Roman Empire* did overpread the Western Parts of it: For bad Wares are best vented in the Dark, or at least by a dim Light. Those barbarous Nations no sooner invaded this part of the Empire than they destroyed the Schools, and sent the Teachers to shift where they best could: And wherever they set up, either out of Zeal for their Religion, or hatred of the Heathen Philosophers, who were no Friends to it, they were care to endeavour all they could to extirpate

and forbid the Reading of Heathen Authors; as appears by an Act of the Council of *Carthage* 400 Years after the Birth of Christ: And the small Remnants of Learning that were left, were lodg'd among the Clergy, who were the only Instructors of Youth, and in whose Power it was to form their tender Minds as they thought fit. But afterwards the Popes, perceiving that some among the most considerable Nations in *Europe* could be no longer kept in this gross Ignorance, introduc'd into the Schools (over which they had assum'd an absolute and supreme Direction) the most miserable sort of Pedantry, that ever plagued the Reason of Mankind; and which some are mighty fond of to this Day. And being ambitious to raise their own Authority and Power, did endeavour to lessen that of the Civil Magistrate, and breed a hatred of Monarchy in the Minds of those People over whom they had got an Ascendant; which the Emperors, by their Lives and tyrannical Proceedings soon confirmed.

*Rome's* being the Residence of this Ecclesiastical Monarch, did not a little contribute to the advancement of the Papal Power and Authority; for this was the glorious Seat of the celebrated *Roman Empire*, and here the Christian Religion did first rise and mightily encrease in those Parts: And therefore the Bishops of *Rome* thought this a plausible Topick for



not their having the first Place, as those of *Constantinople* claim'd the Second, as Bishops of *New Rome*: And after the Western Empire had come to decay, and the City lost its primitive Lustre, disputed the Precedency with the *Roman* Bishop. The Emperor *Phocas*, out of Spite to the Patriarch of *Constantinople*, granted the Precedency to *Boniface* the III. the then Bishop of *Rome*; but this extended no farther than a bare Precedency, and imply'd nothing of Jurisdiction over the rest: Or if it did, it was owing merely to the Emperor's Bounty, whose Laws were of no force without the Limits of his Empire. And admitting that other States have allowed the Popes a certain Power over the Churches in their Dominions: This being an Act of the State, and probably done for Reasons of State, may be annull'd when the same State in other Circumstances sees good Reason for doing so.

The Emperors removing their Court from *Rome* gave the Popes a fair Opportunity: And the Barbarous Nations, who had establish'd several new Kingdoms within the Western Empire, being converted to Christianity by the Church of *Rome*, which on that account commanded a great deal of Respect and Veneration from them, did mightily contribute to the Growth of this rising Sovereignty. And 'tis to be remark'd, that after the 5th Century, the Bishops that liv'd on this side of the *Alpes*, us'd to go to *Rome*, to pay their Devoirs to the Sepulchres of *St. Peter* and *St. Paul*; which Voluntary Devotion was by degrees made necessary, and the Bishops at last oblig'd to come to *Rome* for his Holiness's Confirmation. It was usual also for some other Bishops and Churches, who were but Novices in respect of *Rome*, to come there for Advice in Matters of Moment, or when Debates happen'd (as 'tis natural for the younger to have recourse to those of greater Experience) which the Bishops of *Rome* so wisely improv'd, that they soon began to issue out their Decrees, before their Advice was desir'd, to decide Controversies, depose Bishops, and bring Causes before their Tribunals. In the 8th Century, an *English* Friar, whose Name was *Winifred*, before he chang'd it for that of *Boniface*, having a Zeal to reform the lewd Lives of some Clergy-men, and establish the Christian Religion in *Germany*, the better to procure the Pope's Favour, became a vigorous Defender of his Authority; in recompence of which good Service, he receiv'd the Episcopal Pall, with the Title of Arch-Bishop of *Mayence*: And was constituted Pope *Gregory* the Third's Vicar, with full Power to call Councils, and constitute Bishops in those Parts where he had planted the Faith. By which means, and the Assistance of the *French* King, his Authority became so great, that he brought over all the Clergy in *Germany* and *France* to the Papal Interest; and was the first who put it upon the *German* Bishops to receive the Pall from the Pope, who sent it to those of *France* without their Request, to unite them the more to the Chair. And this growing customary, at length became necessary; the Popes also assum'd a Power of translating Bishops, and annulling Acts of Provincial Synods; and Pope *Gregory* VII. forc'd the Bishops to swear Fealty to Him, and forbid all Condemnation where Appeals were made to him.

As this Ecclesiastical Sovereignty grew up and came to Perfection, the Wealth and Riches of the Church did increase in proportion. The Foundation was laid by the Liberality and Charity of Princes and others, and the Superstructure advanc'd by those

who believ'd it meritorious, as certainly it is, when confin'd within moderate Bounds. As Wealth encreases, so Avarice rises in proportion with it, and that finds out Ways and Means to encrease the Stock, without considering whether these be just and reasonable or not. Then came in Masses for the Dead and Living, Purgatory, Indulgences, Dispensations, Pilgrimages, Jubilees and the like, without measure; and in the 11th and 12th Centuries Crusades too turn'd to very good Account. For in those Expeditions, after People had taken the Sign of the Cross to assist in the Recovery of the Holy Land, the Popes pretended to the Supreme Command and Direction; and took the Persons and Estates of such People under their Protection. And the Pope's Legats had the absolute Disposal of all the Alms, Collections and Legacies that were given for that purpose: And under the same Pretext receiv'd Tithes from the Clergy, and even put their Commands upon Princes themselves to receive the Cross.

In the 7th Century, Friars and Nuns (who first appear'd in the time of Persecution, and us'd to live by their Handy-work) were very much in Vogue, and multiply'd exceedingly, by the Bounty of Princes and Great Persons, who fill'd every Place with Monasteries and Nunneries; but at last, in the 13th Century, Charity began to cool, and even seem'd almost exhausted: And then the Mendicant Friars were erected; who, as they were a Plague to the Laity, and a Curb on the Clergy, so they were of singular use to the Pope, who employ'd them as so many Spies upon the Bishops, who could no sooner think of attempting any thing against the Papal Chair than they inform'd their General at *Rome* of it: And he told the Pope, who was sure to take effectual Ways for preventing any Designs the Bishops might have against him.

Thus the Wealth and Power of this Ecclesiastical Sovereignty began and advanc'd, and Ecclesiasticks multiply'd exceedingly; but without an Independence from any Temporal Power this Monarchy could never have been absolute: And therefore, First, it was necessary that he should reside at a Place free from all Subjection to any Civil Power, and be Master of an Estate sufficient to support his Grandeur; and which no Pretext whatsoever could deprive him of. But this was hard to bring about, so long as there was an Emperor of the West, or the Empire of the *Goths* lasted in *Italy*. But this being destroy'd by the Emperor *Justinian*, and *Rome* made a Province of the *Roman* Empire; and the Emperors Authority growing weak in *Italy*, partly by their own Fault, and partly by the Mismanagement of their Governors at *Ravenna*, the Popes had a fair Opportunity to bring about what they so earnestly long'd for. Besides, some of the Emperors being against the Adoration of Images, and *Leo* *Isaurus*, particularly, having thrown them out of the Churches, his Holiness was so nettled at it, that he stirr'd up the *Romans* and *Italians* to refuse to pay the Emperor his usual Tribute; and they kill'd his Governor at *Ravenna*, while he was endeavouring to maintain his Master's Rights. Whereby the *Grecian* Emperors lost all their Jurisdiction in those Parts; and the Cities and Countries began to set up for free and independent States. By these Means the Pope rid himself of the Eastern Emperors Jurisdiction; but was very hard put to't by the Kings of the *Lombards*, till *Charles* the Great, having conquer'd these, gave to the Papal Chair all that Tract of Land,



which had been formerly under the Eastern Emperors Jurisdiction; which were held of the Emperors as Sovereigns, till the Reign of the Emperor *Henry IV.* And tho' *Henry V.* endeavour'd to recover what his Father had lost, and made Pope *Paschal* a Prisoner, yet the Clergy created him so much Trouble, that he was oblig'd to resign all into the Pope's Hands, about the Year 1122. And the two Factions of the *Guelfs* and *Gibelins* (the former whereof was for the Pope, the other for the Emperor) arising, and growing so powerful in *Italy*, created such Confusion, and gave the Emperors so much Work, that they were never able afterwards to reduce that Country to entire Obedience. And the long Vacancy happening after the Death of the Emperor *Frederick II.* the Empire was put into such a confus'd State, and the succeeding Emperors found so much Work in *Germany*, that they had no leisure to mind *Italy*; and by this Means the Pope had a fair Opportunity to establish an Independent Sovereignty over the Dominions of the Church.

The Popes having by degrees rais'd themselves to this pitch of Power and Grandeur, they began to assume a Superiority over Princes, to decide Controversies betwixt them, to relieve those that pretended to be oppress'd, to maintain Subjects in their Liberties and Properties, and free them from their Allegiance to their lawful Sovereigns, whom they sometimes Excommunicated; To forbid to Marry within the seventh degree of Consanguinity, and the fourth of Affinity, without a Dispensation from the Pope, which turn'd to very good Account, both as to the encrease of their Riches, and creating Dependence on them: And they also took special Care to have the ablest and wisest Men they could find about their Court, who were to be promoted according as they were able and diligent in advancing the Papal Greatness and Power.

But after the Popes seem'd to have fix'd and establish'd a lasting Spiritual Sovereignty over *Christendom*, and a Temporal Jurisdiction over their Dominions in *Italy*, there happen'd several Things which had almost reduc'd this Monarchy to a tottering Condition. The Schisms that arose about the Electing of the Popes, and their Antipopes, who mutually revild and excommunicated one another, were like to prove very pernicious, and laid open to publick View Things which they had no mind to discover. *Clement* the Fifth's transferring the Papal Seat from *Rome* to *Avignon*, weaken'd their Power in *Italy*, and prov'd very prejudicial to their Revenues there: And *Rome* it self grew Disobedient; but at last submitted, and suffer'd *Boniface IX.* to put on the Bridle, by Building the Castle of *St. Angelo*. Afterwards when the Papacy seem'd to have recover'd its former Grandeur, *Luther* stood up, and in all appearance would have given it a fatal Blow, had not the Divisions among the Protestants, and the licentious Lives of some of them prevented it. And now the Chair seems to be pretty well fix'd, that Church having in a great measure either quite abolish'd such Things as *Luther* most upbraided it with, and would have done it most Mischief; or Matters are transacted in a more decent Manner, and with greater Art and Cunning. Princes are treated more civilly, the Clergy are more Learned, and lead better Lives. They are active and diligent in the Conversion of Heathens, and bringing Protestants over to their Church, tho' by different Methods, Violence and Persecution being us'd where they safely may, and softer Ways

where they may not: And the Riches of that Church enable them to provide a suitable Maintenance for those who want Bread, or would have more plentifully.

As to the Nature and Constitution of this Papal Sovereignty (which is certainly the most artificial Fabrick of this kind in the World) it is Monarchical: And a Monarchy it must be since no other Form would have been consistent with its Constitution. It is also an Elective Monarchy, and no other it could be; for if it had been Hereditary, Minors might sometimes have mounted the Chair, and then it would have been very unseemly to see the Head of the Church, and Christ's Vicar on Earth, under Tutors, and perhas riding a Hobby-Horse. Nor must this Spiritual Monarch be Marry'd; for then there must have been a vast Train of Ladies and Women about the Court, which would have been very unsuitable to the Gravity and Sanctity (tho' it had been but seeming) of such a Court: And besides, the Dominions of the Church must have been entail'd on a Family, and divided into several Appenages of the younger Sons.

The College of Cardinals is as it were the standing Council of the Ecclesiastical State, as the Chapters of Cathedrals are to Bishops. In the time of Pope *Paschal I.* about the Year 817. the Parish Priests in *Rome*, by reason they were near and ready at every Election, to adorn their Power with a more illustrious Title, began to be call'd *Cardinals*, assuming to themselves (after they had banish'd the popular Election) the sole Power of creating Popes; and that out of their own Number. With these Cardinals the Pope advises concerning Matters of the greatest Moment, only sometimes he with his Nephews do Business without them. Their chief Prerogative is that they have the Power of Chusing a Pope, and that out of their own Body, as being best acquainted with the Affairs of that Court. Their ordinary Number is 70; but that Number is seldom compleat. Their Title formerly was that of *Illustrious*; but that growing too common in *Italy*, they have now that of *Eminence*. The Election of them depends absolutely on the Pope; who in that Matter is often influenc'd by *France*, *Spain*, or some other State. They pretend to have the Precedency before the Electors of the Empire: And some of the Court Parasites maintain that their Cap is not inferior in Dignity to the Crown of some Sovereign Princes. Since the time of Pope *Urban VIII.* a Custom has been introduc'd to make one of the Pope's Nephews Chief Minister of the Ecclesiastical State, whom they call *Cardinal Patrono*, or *Patroon*.

By what has been said, we may consider the Pope in two Respects, viz. as he's Spiritual Monarch of *Christendom*; and secondly, as a Prince in *Italy*. In the First, his Subjects may be divided into two several Sorts; the first of which comprehends the whole Clergy; the Second all the rest of *Christendom*, as far as the same professes the Roman Catholick Religion. The first may not unfitly be compar'd to the standing Army of a Prince, who thereby maintains his Conquests; the rest are to be deem'd as Subjects that are Tributaries to the Prince, and are oblig'd to maintain those Forces at their Charge. One may guess how vast the Number of the Clergy is, from what is related of Pope *Paul IV.* who us'd to brag that he had 228000 Parishes, and 4400 Monasteries under his Jurisdiction, if he did not mistake in his Account, especially as to the Monasteries.



nasteries. In the second Place we may consider the Pope as a Potent Prince in *Italy*, (whose Sovereignty is principally supported by a Jealousie and even Ballance betwixt the Crown of *France* and *Spain*) tho' in no ways to be compar'd with the other Princes in *Europe*. The Popes Revenues (which we will not particularly determine) are very considerable, and out of them a good number of Soldiers could be maintain'd; but his Military Force is scarce worth taking notice of, since he uses means to maintain his State quite different from those of other Princes. He maintains about 20 Gallies; which have their Station at *Civita Vecchia*. The Countries under his Jurisdiction are, the City of *Rome*, with her Territories, situated on both sides of the *Tyber*, the Dukedom of *Benevento* in the Kingdom of *Naples*, the Dukedoms of *Spoletto*, *Urbino* and *Ferrara*, the Marquisate of *Ancona*, several places in *Tuscany*, *Romaniola* and *Flaminia*, where are situated *Bologna* and *Ravenna*. In *France* the Country of *Avignon* belongs to him. *Parma* is a Fief of the Church, which *Paul* the III. granted to his Son *Lewis Farnese*.

The Pope's Dominions, call'd by the *Italians* *la Stato della Chiesa*, lie about the middle of *Italy*, and are bounded (not including the Territories of *Benevento* in *Naples*, and *Avignon* in *France*) on the North with the *Venetian* Dominions, and the Gulf of *Venice*, on the East with the Kingdom of *Naples*, on the South with the *Tuscan* Sea, and on the West with the Dukedoms of *Tuscany* and *Modena*: And are in length (according to *Baudrand*) from North to South about 240 Miles, in breadth from East to West, at the broadest, that is, between *Ancona* to *Civita Vecchia* 120, but in other Places much less, as in *Romaniola*: And comprehend the abovesaid Countries, as you may see more plainly in the following Table, according to the forecited Author.

The Campaign of *Rome*, comprehending the *Campagna di Roma*, properly so call'd, and *la Marina*.

*St. Peter's* Patrimony, comprehending the Dutchy of *Cai*, the Territory of *Orvieto*, and the County of *Ronciglione*.

*Salina*.

*Ombria*, or the Dutchy of *Spoletto*, comprehending the Territories of *Perugia*, and the Contado di *Citta di Castello*.

The Marquisate of *Ancona*.

The Dutchy of *Urbino*.

The greatest Part of *Romandiola*, comprehending *Romandiola*, properly so call'd, or *Romagna*, the *Bolegnese* and the Dutchy of *Ferrara*.

The Campaign of *R O M E*, *Campania Romana*, which comprehends the greatest part of the ancient *Latium*, where the *Latini*, *Aequi*, *Hernici*, *Rutuli*, and most part of the *Vulsci* dwelt, is bounded on the West with the Province of the *Patrimony* and the *Tiber*, on the North with *Sabina*, and the River *Anio*, now *Tivernone*, on the South with the *Tuscan* Sea, and on the East with *l' Abruzzo Oltra*, and the *Terra di Lavoro*, Provinces of *Naples*: And is divided, as we said, into *la Campagna*, properly so call'd, which lies most northerly, between the River *Anio*, and the Mountains call'd *Mons Lepinus*, or *la Montagne di Segni*, and is a very Mountainous Country; and *la Marina*, which lies between the foresaid Mountains and the *Tuscan* Sea extended from East to West; which tho' it be a plain Country is but indifferently Inhabited, because of the unwholsom-

ness of the Air, and the neighbouring Lakes. The most noted Cities and Towns in the *Campagna di Roma* (as the *Italians* call it) are,

<i>Rome.</i>	}	<i>Terracina.</i>
<i>Tivoli.</i>		<i>Veletri.</i>
<i>F. escati.</i>		<i>Segni.</i>
<i>Ostia.</i>		<i>Anagni.</i>
<i>Palestrina.</i>		<i>Albano.</i>

*R O M E*, *Roma*, (once the Mistress of the World, and for several Ages last past the Seat of the Spiritual Monarch of *Christendom*) is said to have been founded by *Remulus* and *Remus*. It was anciently call'd *Septicollis*, because it stood on seven Hills or rising Grounds of an easie and almost insensible Aspect. Before the Reign of *Servius Tullius*, the number of these Hills was no more; but since that time it has been much enlarg'd, and at present contains 12 viz. *Monte Capitolino*, *Palatino*, *Aventino*, *Celio*, *Esquilino*, *Viminale*, *Quirinale* or *Monte Cavallo*, *Janiculo*, *Pincino*, *Vaticano*, *Citorio* and *Giardano*. Whatever *Vespiscus* (who liv'd under the Reign of *Dio-clesian*, and who positively asserts that the Walls which *Aurelian* built round this City were 50 Miles in compass) and others may say; it is certain (as several late Authors have demonstrated) that these Walls, which are almost the same with those which *Aurelian* built, did not exceed 13 Miles. 'Tis true the Suburbs extended very far on all sides, and made the City in a manner infinite; but we are not to imagine that all these were within the Walls. At present there is not above one third of that which is comprehended within the Walls inhabited; the other Two being fill'd with Gardens and Ruins. 'Tis as hard a matter almost to determine the exact number of the Present Inhabitants of this City (which as some say are about 200000 Souls,) as to reconcile the accounts of ancient Authors concerning it; for some tell us that under the Reign of *Augustus* there were 3001037, others 4000000, others 5000000; and *Suetonius* computes that in the Reign of *Tiberus*, who was the immediate Successor of *Augustus*, there were only 1600000.

It is not to be expected that in a Work of this Nature we should give the Reader a full and particular account of the ancient and present State of this famous City, especially considering that many learned and judicious Writers, as *Onuphrius Panvinus*, *Boissard*, *Justus Lipsius*, *Phil. Cluverius*, and some late Travellers have done that to so good purpose already; that it would only be repeating, and perhaps confounding, what they have said so well on the Subject, and swelling this Work beyond its design'd Bounds, if not altering the Nature of it. We shall therefore confine ourselves to that which is more properly our Business, and only take notice of such things as are most remarkable in and about this City, and refer those that have a Mind to be further inform'd to the fore-cited Authors, and the latest and best Travellers, particularly *M. Misson*, who seems to be a diligent and curious Enquirer into such Things.

The City of *Rome* stands on the River *Tyber* (which hath receiv'd more Honour from the City, than the City from it) about 12 Miles from the Sea, 120 from the City of *Naples*, 60 from *Terracina* to the North West, 140 from *Florence*, 300 from *Genoua*, 135 from *Ancona*, and 120 from *Loreto* to the South. About 365 Years after the Building of the City, and 3d of the 97 Olympiad, it was taken by the *Galli Senones*. In the Year of Christ, 410. by



the Greeks and their King *Antiochus*. In the Year, 455 by the *Lombards*, under their King *Geisericus*; 15 Years after by the *Huns*; 14 Years after that by the *Goths*; 12 Years after that by the *Goths* under their King *Thilas*; and at last on the 6th Day of May 1527. it was taken, and miserably plundered by the Emperor *Charles the V's* Army, when his Holiness was besieged in the Castle of *St. Angelo*, and forced by Famine to surrender, and comply with the Emperor's Conditions. There are above 300 little Towers upon the Walls of the City, but many of them are gone to Ruin. It is divided into 12 Parts or Regions call'd *li Rioni*, and has 20 Gates and 5 Bridges over the *Tyber*, one of which is ruinous. The Houses are, for the most part, built of Brick, plastered and whited over on the outside: And the Roofs of them are ridgd; but the Angle at the Top is very obtuse. That part of the City which stands on the Right Bank of the River is not above a fifth or sixth part of the other: And is call'd *Tropea*. 'Tis impossible (says Mr. *Misson*) to walk fifty Paces in or about this City without observing some Remains of its ancient Grandeur. The Statues of *Rome* have been call'd a *Great Nation*, and the *Colleges* might not unfitly been call'd the *Giantes*. And besides these, the City was wonderfully adorn'd with Temples, Palaces, Theatres, Representations of Sea-Fights, Triumphal-Arches, Circuses, Columns, Fountains, Aqueducts, Obelisks, Mausoleums, and other magnificent Structures; which tho' at present they lie almost buried in their own Ruins, seem still to discover a great deal of their ancient Splendor. If we consider the Magnificent Monuments of Antiquity, and the Modern Structures and Ornaments of this City, we shall find it much easier to admire than form a right Imagination of it: And to frame an Idea of it than represent it distinctly to others. The Pantheon, tho' it hath lost much of its ancient Magnificence, is still one of the most entire and beautiful antique Edifices in Italy. Whether it was anciently so call'd because its figure resembled that of the Heavens, or because *Agrippa* consecrated it to *Jupiter* and all the Gods, is uncertain; but at present the Common People call it *Rotunda* from the Roundness of its Figure. Pope *Boniface* the IV. dedicated it to the Virgin, and all the Martyrs, and call'd it *Santa Maria ad Martyres*; but some of the succeeding Popes would have all the Saints come in for a share in the Dedication with the Martyrs. There are said to be 300 Churches in *Rome*, the greatest and most magnificent of which is that of *St. Peter*, the most noble and majestick Structure of that kind in the World. The Harmony and proportion of the Architecture are so judiciously observ'd, the fineness and great variety of Gild-work, rare Pictures, Emboss'd-work, Statues of Brass and Marble, &c. all so happily contriv'd and regularly dispos'd, that one can no sooner see this glorious Structure than he must indispensably be struck with an agreeable Admiration and Astonishment. It was first built by *Constantine* the Great, and begun to be repair'd by Pope *Julius* the II. the Reparation was carried on by some of the succeeding Popes, and *Paul* the V. finish'd it; so that it was the Work of a whole Age, or 100 Years, as ap-

\* *Paulus V. Pont. Max.*  
*Vaticanium Templum.*  
a *Julio II. imperat.*  
Ejusq; a *Greg. & Clement.*  
*Sacella*

pears by this Inscription in the Church. \* We will not determine what the Charge of Building and Adorning this Church was;

*Ashleio Certum Anno. aut*  
*Christo Production.*  
*Terra Mollis A. et H. ne*  
*Consequum Consequuntur*  
*Epistola Antonium inludens,*  
*Corfari.*  
*Confessionem S. Petri exornavit.*  
*Frontem Orientalem & Porticum*  
*Extruxit.*

Sir P. *Syaut's* Lives of the Popes, p. 264

but this is certain that it must have amounted to a vast Sum, since as *Charles Fontana* in his *Templo Vaticano* proves by an Abstract of Registers that the adorning of *Peter's* Church cost 107551 Roman Crowns each Crown being worth 5s. 6d.

The measure of this Church, according to the latest Travellers is thus: The length within side 594 Foot, the length of the Cross from North to South 438 Foot; the breadth of the body of the Church 86 Foot, the height of the Body of the Church 144 Foot, the height of the *Cupola*, with the Lanthorn, to the very top of the Cross is 432 Foot, whereof the Ball and Cross may be reckon'd to take up the odd Feet; for the Diameter of the Ball alone is 8 Foot, and then the Cross which stands upon it, must needs be at least 3 times as high, the Circumference of the *Cupola* within side 5620 Foot, its Diameter within 143 Foot, The Portico or Entrance is a large Plain, Surrounded with a Piazza of Circular Form, having in the midst an eminent Obelisk, and two large Fountains. The Palace of the *Vatican* is adjacent to *St. Peter's* Church; and is said to contain 12500 Chambers, Halls, and Closets. It is not a regular Building, but rather a heap of Beautiful pieces of Architecture ill tack'd together, and spoils in some Measure, the Prospect of *St. Peter's*. The *Vatican* Library has receiv'd considerable additions, (particularly by that of *Hydelberg*, and of the Duke of *Urbino*); but the opinions about the number of Books in it are so different, that we must leave it undecided. The Arsenal is said to be furnish'd with a sufficient number of Arms, for 20000 Horse, and 40000 Foot; but this is what many doubt. As his Holiness may conveniently descend from the *Vatican* Palace to *St. Peter's* Church, so on the other side, he may go without being seen to the Castle of *St. Angelo*, through a Gallery which *Alexander VI.* Built for this purpose. *Urban VIII.* Fortified the Castle with four Battions, and thought fit to give them the names of the four Evangelists. In a little Arsenal within this Castle the Popes Triple Crown is kept, as also an Armory of Prohibited Arms, taken from such as us'd them after they had been forbid. The Capitol is a Modern Structure rais'd upon the Ruins, and even upon the Foundation of the ancient Edifice: and is full of remarkable and rare Pieces of Antiquity, as the *She Wolf* of Brass suckling *Romulus* and *Remus*: the famous Courier pulling a Thorn out of his Foot. a Statue of *Cesar* with his Cuirass, another of *Augustus* and a great many more. The famous *Rupes Tarpeia*, (so call'd from *Tarpeia*, a *Roman* Damsel, slain in this Place by the *Sabines*) is at present (says Mr. *Misson*) an inconsiderable Rock about 20 Foot high. The prodigious Amphitheatre, call'd *Coliseum*, is round on the outside, but the *Arena* or place of Combat is oval. It contain'd 85000 Spectators, without reckoning the *Excubiti*, who stood in the passages to the number of 20000. The Church of *St. John* of *Lateran* is very Large and Magnificent, and pretends to be Head and Mother of all Churches. It was repair'd in a great measure by Pope *Innocent X.* and owes its name to a certain *Roman* Nobleman whose Gardens lay near that Place, call'd *Plancius Lateranus*, who had been nominated Consul, and was Kill'd by *Nero's* Order. There are a great many Cabines



hats of Rarities and Libraries at Rome, but since they frequently pass from the Possession of one to that of another, 'tis almost to no purpose to name the present owners of them. There are still many of those ancient Vaults, known by the name of *Catacombs*, in and about Rome; but the Earth has fallen in and Stopped up the Entries of many of them. Some of them are like to many Lanes, which turn, wind, and cross one another like Streets of a City, and spread themselves under all the Suburbs. The *Remains* of the Vaults to have been the Sepulture of the primitive *Christians*, which Furnishes them with an opportunity of making great Markets of the Relicks drawn thence, but with much more reason they are believed to be only the Burying-place of the *Roman Slaves*. The Statues of *Pasquin* and *Marforio* must not be omitted; since many more hear of these two names than know the meaning of them. The former is an old maim'd Statue, leaning against the corner of a House, where several Streets meet, and owes its name to a *Witty*. Jovial and Satyrical Taylor call'd *Pasquin*, who liv'd near this Place. His Lampoons were usually call'd *Pasquinades*; and to persuade the World that he was the Author of all the witty and cutting jests that came out in his time, they took care to affix them to this Statue, which was at his Gate; and which by degrees came to be known by the name of *Pasquin*. *Marforio* is another maim'd Figure, standing in one of the Courts of the Capitol, representing the *Rhine*, as some say, or the *Nere* or as others say *Jupiter Parricinus*; and owes its name to the Place call'd *Forum Martis*, where it stood. 'Tis probable (says Mr. *Misson*) that it was formerly the Mode to affix the *Pasquinades* on the Statue of *Pasquin*; but that Custom is laid aside, and he only answers the Questions that *Marforio* proposes to him: These are only very short and imperfect accounts of a few of the most considerable Places and things about Rome; for if we had attempted to describe all that's worth a curious observer's while, this Description of the City would have swell'd up to a large Volume; and that is not our present business.

*Tivoli*, *Tibur*, which *Ovid* calls *Tybur*, *Procopius* *Tiburis*, and *Tiber Herculeum* in some ancient Inscriptions, is a little Town, Seated on a Hillock, 18 Miles from Rome to the East, 12 from *Frescati* to the North, and as many from *Palestrina*. It is a Bishop's Seat, and the Duke of *Medena* has a Pleasure-house in it, which is commonly call'd the Cardinal d'Este's Palace, because it is set apart for the use of the Cardinals of that Family when there is any. The Palace is large and makes a handsome Show; but neither Apartments or Furniture are fine. The Gardens are not large, but are thought to excell all the Works of that nature in *Italy*. The Cascade of the River *Anio* or *Teverone*, is the most remarkable thing in this little Town. This River (says Mr. *Misson*) forms a very large and pleasant Sheet, but the Fall is not very high. The Hill of *Tivoli* has furnish'd time out of Mind the greatest part of the Stones that are used at Rome. The *Coliseum* or Amphitheatre was cover'd over with it, and the Front of St. Peter's Church is built of the same.

*Frescati*, *Tusculum*, which *Livius*, *Strabo*, *Pliny* and others, make mention of as a very ancient Town in *Latium*, and which *Kircher* says was Built 300 Years before the Trojan War, is now a very small Town, Seated on the Brow of a Hill, 12 Miles from Rome; in which there are several Houses of Pleasure, belonging to some *Roman* Princes, as, the *Monte Dracone*, belonging to the Prince *Borghese*, *Belvedere*, to

the Prince *Pamphilio*, and the *Villa Ludovisia*, to the Dutchess *Guadagnola*, the Constable *Colona's* Sister. There are some who think that not the Town of *Tusculum*, but *Tusculanum*, *Cicero's* Country-House, where he wrote his *Questions* stood formerly where *Frescati* is now; but both the Situation of *Frescati* and *Strabo's* Description of *Tusculum* contradict this Opinion; for the *Tusculanum Cicero's*, where there are a great many Ruins to be seen still, and where now the *Grotta Ferrata* stands, is 16 Miles from Rome, where as *Frescati* (as we have said) is but 12, and the great plenty of Water, and standing near a high and steep Rock, agrees with the latter, but not at all with the former. The ancient *Tusculum* was quite demolish'd in the time of Pope *Celestin III.* and *Frescati* was erected into a Bishoprick by Pope *Paul III.* in the Year 1537. the Bishop of which is call'd *Episcopus Tusculanus*, and is one of the 6 eldest Cardinals.

*Ostia*. *Ostia*, anciently a Town and Colony of *Latium*, 12 Miles from Rome, near the Mouth of the *Tiber*, and therefore call'd *Ostia Tiberina* by *Strabo*, *Pliny* and others, and said to have been Built by *Anco Martius*. It was destroy'd by the *Saracens*, and now lies almost Buried in its Ruins, and Inhabited by few or none because of the unwholsomeness of the Air. It still retains the Title of a Bishoprick, which is joyn'd to that of *Veletri* and its Bishop is always Dean of the College of Cardinals. Here *Monica St. Augustine's* Mother Died.

*Palestrina*, *Præneste* anciently a Town in *Latium*, on the Confines of the Country of the *Aequi*, according to *Ptolemy* and *Strabo*, and call'd sometime *Stephane* according to *Pliny*; and from a Colony made a Free Town by *Tiberius Augustus*, as *Gellius* relates, stood anciently, partly on the Top of the Hill, and partly on the Valley, where there are still to be seen the Ruins of some old Walls, and Subterraneous Passages, through which *C. Marius* when he was Besieg'd by *Lucretius Aselia*, one of *Sylla's* Faction, in vain endeavouring to make his Escape, with *Pontius Telestinus*, who was in the same Circumstances. They both drew their Swords, and the former Kill'd the other; and afterwards procur'd the favour of his Servant to dispatch him. Here stood the famous Temple of *Fortuna Primigenia*, where the *Sortes Prænestinae* were kept. The old Town of *Præneste* was Demolish'd by Pope *Boniface VIII.* and the new one Built in the Valley, near the River *Ofa*, about 22 Miles from Rome to the East, 12 from *Tivoli* to the South-East, 16 from *Agnani*, and 12 from *Segni*. It is the Title of a Bishoprick, which is commonly bestow'd on one of the eldest Cardinals: and is dignified with the Title of a Principality, belonging to the Family of the *Barbarini*. Whoever has a mind to be further inform'd concerning this Place may consult the description of it written by *Joseph Maria Saverio a Frenchman*.

*Terracina*, *Anxur*, *Terracina* or *Tarracina*, anciently a Town belonging to the *Volsci*, and sometime call'd *Thranche*. The old Castle stood on the Top of an Hill, where the Ruins are still to be seen, of a square Figure, but the greatest part of the Town was Built in the Plain where *Terracina* now stands. On the top of this Hill stood the Temple of *Jupiter Anxur*, and the Vestigia of the Harbour of *Terracina* are still to be seen in the Sea. We find mention made of the *Aque Terracinenfes*, which were very wholsom Waters, and the *Fons Neptunius*, of which (as *Vitruvius* says) whosoever had the ill luck to Drink, shortly after lost their lives. *Solinus* and *Martianus*



*rianus Capella* are mightily mistaken, who think that *Terracina* was sometime an Island; but it is certain, that all that Plain about *Veletri*, *Cori*, *Norma ruinata*, *Sermoneta*, *Sezze* and *Piperno*, as far as *Terracina*, was call'd *Campus*, or *Ager Pomptinus*, from the Lake *Pomptinus*, which *Julius Caesar* design'd to have drain'd, and *Augustus* accomplish'd. This Town stands near the Mouth of the River *Ufens*, now call'd *il Portatore*, 2 Miles only from the Confines of the Kingdom of *Naples* to the West, 15 from *Gaeta*, and about 30 from *Rome*; but is very ill-inhabited, because of the Unwholsomeness of the Air, which is occasion'd by the neighbouring Lake, now call'd *Paludi Pontine*.

*Veltri*, *Vetula*, the Name of a Colony, and very ancient Town belonging to the *Volschi*, according to *Livy*, *Halicarnassæus* and *Suetonius*, said to have been taken by King *Ancus Martius*, and almost quite dispeopled by the Plague afterwards (as *Livy* relates) in the Consulship of *Furius Camillus* and *C. Menius Nepos*, its Walls were demolish'd, because of its frequent Rebellicions, and the Inhabitants sent to dwell on the other side of the *Tibur*. It is an Episcopal See, joyn'd to that of *Osia*, and is a pretty handsome Town, and well inhabited, distant about 20 Miles from *Rome* to the East.

*Signi*, *Signia*, a Town anciently belonging to the *Volschi*, according to *Strabo*, *Livy* and *Pliny*, which owes its Name to the *Signa* or *Ensigns*, which the Roman Soldiers set up there; for the Soldiers keeping their Winter Quarters there, did so fortifie themselves and dispose every thing for their Convenience and Accomodation, that the Camp differ'd very little from a Town, insomuch that King *Tarquin* led a Colony thither, as *Dion Halicarn* relates. It is now an Episcopal See, and honour'd with the Title of a Dukedom, which one of the Family of *Sforza* enjoys; and is distant about 32 Miles from *Rome* to the East, and 12 from *Palestrina* to the South.

*Anagni*, *Anagnia*, anciently the Chief Town of the *Hernici*, and now an Episcopal See, Suffragan to none. It stands on a Hill, and is of no great Compass, but neat and well inhabited at the distance of 36 Miles from *Rome* to the East, 16 from *Palestrina*, 32 from *Terracina*. It was here that *Marcus Antonius*, after he had Divorc'd *Octavia*, *Augustus's* Sister, Marry'd *Cleopatra*; and here were Born Pope *Innocent III.* *Gregory IX.* *Alexander IV.* and *Boniface VIII.*

*Albano*, *Albanum*, anciently call'd *Villa Pompeii*, (according to *Baudrand*) which afterwards became so considerable as to bear the Title of a Bishoprick, whose Bishop is subject only to the See of *Rome*, and one of the first six Cardinals. Mr. *Misson* in his Travels, says, he visited this little Town of *Albano*, where the famous City of *Alba* formerly stood; and that he saw there a kind of ruin'd Mausoleum, commonly call'd the Tomb of *Ascanius*. This little Town is distant 14 Miles from *Rome* to the East, and about 2 from the Ruins of *Alba Longa*, which *Tullius Hostilius* raz'd, and from the Ruins of which *Alban* sprung; it is mention'd by *Horace*, and was Famous for the Excellent Wine that grew thereabouts.

The *PATRIMONY*, or Province of the *PATRIMONY* of *St. PETER*, which the *Italians* call the *Provincia del Patrimonio*, makes a great part of the Dominions of the Pope, and was anciently the South part of *Hetruria*. It was given to the Church by that Famous Woman *Mathildis*, and comprehends (according to *Baudrand* and others) the

Country call'd *il Orvietano*, the Duchy of *Castro*, and the Country call'd *La Stato di Ronciglione*. It is bounded on the North with *Ombria*, on the East with *Sabina*, and the *Campagna di Roma*, on the West with the *Senese*, in the South of *Tuscany*, and on the South with the *Tuscan Sea*; and the most considerable Towns in it are,

<i>Viterbo.</i>	}	<i>Suni.</i>
<i>Civita Vecchia.</i>		<i>Bracciano.</i>
<i>Civita Castellana</i>		<i>Castro.</i>
<i>Corneto.</i>	}	<i>Orvieto.</i>
<i>Toscanella.</i>		<i>Aquapendente.</i>
<i>Orti.</i>		<i>Bagnarca.</i>
<i>Nepi.</i>		

*Viterbo*, *Viterbium*, (sometimes call'd *Tetrapolis*, and the Inhabitants *Quaterni Populi*, because it was one of the four Cities which *Desides*, last King of the *Insubrians*, united under the Name of *Viterbo*) is at present a City indifferently big, almost wholly built of Stone, and enclos'd with a Wall, distant about 40 Miles from *Rome* to the North-West, and among other Things remarkable in this City, there are 8 or 10 square Towers, which are seen at a distance, and make an odd kind of Prospect, and were a sort of Forts or retiring Places, built hard by the Houses of the richest Inhabitants, during the Fury of the *Guelf* and *Gibelin* Factions.

*Civita Vecchia*, *Centumcellæ*, a Town in *Hetruria*, (according to *Pliny*, *Antoninus* and *Paterculus*) on the Coast of the *Tyrrhenian* or *Tuscan Sea*, formerly a Bishop's Seat. It was destroy'd by the *Saracens*, and afterwards rebuilt by Pope *Leo III.* on a Hill about 5 Miles distant, and call'd *Cincelle*; which now lies hid in its Rubbish, the Inhabitants having all return'd to their old City, which some of the late Popes, particularly *Urban VIII.* have been at the Charge to fortifie, and make a good and large Harbour, which is the Station of the Pope's Gallies, and defended by a strong Castle. It is but ill-inhabited by reason of the Air; and is distant about 40 Miles from *Rome* to the West. The last Pope made it a free Port.

*Corneto*, *Cornuetum* or *Cornetum*, stands on a Hill near the River *Marta*, on the Confines of the Duchy of *Castro*, near the Ruins of *Graviscæ* and *Tarquinia*, 4 Miles from the *Tuscan Shoar*, 22 from *Viterbo* to the South, and 46 from *Rome*. It is an Episcopal See, Suffragan to none; but is very ill-inhabited because of the South Winds, which are great Enemies to Health in those Parts.

*Toscanella*, *Tuscania*, is now but a small Town, on the River *Marta*, on the Confines of the Duchy of *Castro*, and 15 Miles from *Viterbo* to the South-West. It was anciently call'd *Salumbrina*, afterwards *Tyrrhenia*, *Tuscia* and *Tuscania*; and was then a very large and flourishing City, which probably gave the Name of *Tuscia* to the Country; but it has been sixteen times taken and ruin'd, and now lies in its own Rubbish.

*Orti*, *Hortanum*, or *Orta*, (according to *Paulus Diaconus*) is a little Town in the Province of the *Patrimony*, standing on the *Tyber*, where the River *Nara* falls into it, on the Confines of *Ombria* near *Oricoli*, about 34 Miles from *Rome* to the North, and 14 from *Viterbo* to the East. It has the Title of a Bishoprick, which in the Year 1437. was perpetually united to that of *Civita Castellana*, by Pope *Eugenius IV.*

*Nepi*, *Nepes*, which *Livy* calls *Nepete*, *Protony Nepeta*, *Strabo Nepita*, and *Procopius Nepetes*, stands on the Rivulet *Pozzolo*, between *Rome* and *Viterbo*, and has the Title of a Bishoprick, which has been united



united to that of *Sutri* since the time of Pope *Eugenius IV.* *An.* 1436. and is Suffragan to no other See but that of *Rome*.

The Duchy of *CASTRO*, *Castrensis Ducatus*, was formerly subject to the Duke of *Parma*, but has been in possession of the Pope since the Year 1649. and is bounded on the North with the *Orvietano*, on the East with the Province of the *Patrimony*, on the South with the *Tuscan Sea*, and on the West with the *Senese*. The chief Town of it was *Castro*, which now lies so hid in its own Rubbish, that one can hardly know that ever there was a Town there. It was a strong Town, and the Seat of a Bishop till the Year 1649. that Pope *Innocent X.* caus'd it to raz'd, to avenge the Death of *Christopher Giarda*, last Bishop of it, who was slain *April* 18. 1649. near *Monterosi*; and the Bishoprick was translated to *Acquapendente*. It stood about 13 Miles from the *Tuscan Shoar* to the North, and as many from *Toscanelle* to the West, and sprung from the Ruins of a neighbouring Town call'd *Volscia*.

The Territory of *ORVIETO*, or *il Orvietano*, *Urbevetanus Ager*, is bounded with *Ombria* on the East and North, the *Senese* on the West, and the *Patrimony*, properly and strictly so call'd, on the South. It was anciently a part of *Etruria*; and the most considerable Places in it now are, *Orvieto*, *Acquapendente* and *Bagnarea*.

*Orvieto*, *Oropitum*, or *Urbs Vetus* by *Paulus Diaconus*, *Herbanum* by *Pliny*, *Urbevetanum* by *Procopius*, *Urbiventum* or *Orbiu-tum* by others; is a Town built on a rising Ground, and naturally strong, being surrounded with high Rocks and Precipices; about 20 Miles distant from *Viterbo* to the North, 60 from *Rome* to the North-West, and about 15 from the Confines of the Duke of *Tuscany's* Dominions, and the *Senese* to the East.

*Acquapendente*, *Acula* or *Aquila*, stands on a rising Ground, about 40 Miles from *Siena* to the East, and 20 from *Orvieto* to the South-West. It was erected into a Bishoprick by Pope *Innocent X.* in the Year 1650. in the room of *Castro*, which he caus'd to be raz'd, to punish the Inhabitants for murdering their Bishop.

*Bagnarea Balneoregium*, stands upon a Hill, between *Orvieto* to the North, and *Montefiascone* to the South, about 6 Miles from either, and 10 from *Viterbo* to the North. It is an Episcopal See, but a small and ill-inhabited Town; and by some thought to be the *Novempagi* mention'd by *Pliny*.

*Ronciglione*, *Roncilio*, stands about 30 Miles from *Roma*, and 10 from *Viterbo*. It belong'd formerly to the Duke of *Parma*, and gives Name to the adjacent Country, which the *Italians* call *la Stato di Ronciglione*.

The Province of *SABINA*. *Sabina* is bounded on the North with *Ombria*, on the East with the farther *Abruzzo*, on the South with *Compagna di Roma*, and on the West with the Province of the *Patrimony*, is of much narrower Bounds than the Country of *Sabina* formerly was, and has only one Town of any Note, call'd *Magliano*, the Residence of the Bishop of *Sabina*, near the *Tyber*, and 30 Miles North from *Rome*.

*Ombria*, or the Duchy of *SPOLETO*, *Umbria* five *Ducatus Spoletanus*, seems to have had the latter of these Names from those Dukes whom *Longinus* the Exarch appointed. The *Longobards* having made themselves Masters of it, under King *Alboinus*, about the Year 571. it retain'd the Name of a Duchy, and

was govern'd by 8 Dukes successively of its own, and 13 likewise descended from *Charles the Great*, till the Year 1198. Afterwards it retain'd the same Name and Dignity under the Popes of *Rome*, till the Year 1440. when it recover'd the ancient Name of *Umbria*, or *Ombria*; but the ancient *Umbria* was of much larger Extent than this Country is now. It lies on the North of the *Patrimony* and *Sabina*.

These are the Chief Towns.	{	<i>Spoleto.</i>	{	<i>Todi.</i>
		<i>Narni.</i>		<i>Nocera.</i>
		<i>Otricoli.</i>		<i>Torni.</i>
		<i>Reati.</i>		<i>Affisi.</i>
		<i>Foligno.</i>		<i>Amelia.</i>

*Spoleto*, *Spoletum*, mention'd by *Livy*, *Cicero* and *Ptolomy*, as a City in *Umbria*, and the Chief one of the Duchy of *Spoleto*, now of the Province of *Ombria* is distant 40 Miles from *Rome* to the North, and as many from *Perugia* to the South-East. *Baudrand* says it is a large Town, built partly on a Hill, partly in the Valley; and Mr. *Misson* says, it is a poor City, thinly Peopled, ill Built, and in a very uneven Situation. The most remarkable Things in it are, the Cathedral, the Castle, (which as the latter of these two says) is only strong by its Situation, and has nothing in it to recompence the Trouble of going up to it. About half a Mile from the City there is a Temple anciently Consecrated to Concord, which is now call'd the Chappel of the Holy Crucifix. There are also to be seen here a Triumphal Arch half ruin'd, some Remains of an Amphitheatre, and an Aqueduct, which joyns the Mountain of *St. Francis* to that of *Spoleto*; which is entire, and has been in use ever since it was first built. 'Tis 350 Paces long, and about 700 *English Foot* high. *Maphæo* Cardinal *Barbairini*, afterwards Pope *Urban VIII.* was Bishop of this Place.

*Narni*, *Narna*, or *Narnia*, stands at the Foot of a Hill, on the River *Nera*, (from which it has its Name) near the Confines of *Sabina*, between *Terni* and *Genicoli*, 6 Miles from the former, and 8 from the other, and 40 from *Rome*. It was one of the 12 Towns which refus'd to assist the *Romans* against *Hannibal*; and was anciently (according to *Pliny*) call'd *Nequinum*, from *Nequitia* (Frowardness) because when it was Besieg'd, the Inhabitants chose rather to kill themselves and their Children than Surrender. It is at present (as Mr. *Misson* relates) a desolate, dirty and beggarly Place; but that there are observable in it, two pretty handsome Fountains of Brals; and near it the Ruins of a stately Bridge, (Built as they say) by *Augustus*, which joyn'd the Mountain of *Spoleto* to a neighbouring Mountain; it is of an extraordinary Height, but of its 4 Arches there remains but 1 entire. The Top of the greatest is broken; but he says he was credibly inform'd that the Breadth of this Arch is 170 Foot.

*Otricoli*, *Otriculum*, or *Otriculum*, stands in a Plain about 2 Miles from the *Tyber*, about 3 from the Conflux of that River with the *Nera*, between *Narni* and *Civita Castellana*, and about 30 Miles from *Rome*. The ancient *Otriculum* is often confounded with the *Ocrea* or *Interocrea* of *Antoninus*; but most Authors believe that *Otricoli* stands now where the ancient *Otriculum* stood, and that the Ruins that appear a little lower on the Right-hand towards the *Tyber*, are the Remains of the *Ocrea*; but the Conjecture would not be unreasonable, if one should say that *Otriculum* is only a Diminutive of *Ocrea*, implying the Suburbs of it.



*Reate*, *Reate*, mention'd by *Strabo* and *Ptolemy*, a Town in the *Salines*, stands upon the River *Vellina*, near a Lake of that Name, upon the Confines of the Kingdom of *Naples*, and the farther *Abruzzo*, in the midit between *Aquila* to the East, and *Narni* to the West, and 25 from *Spoleto* to the East. It is a pretty well inhabited Town, considering the Air; which is unwholsome, by reason of the neighbouring *Marshes*; and is an Episcopal See, subject immediately to that of *Rome*.

*Foligno*, *Fulginium*, stands at the foot of the *Apennines*, in a Plain, 21 Miles from *Perugia* to the South East, 10 from *Affisi*, and 13 from *Spoleto*, and has the Title of a Bishoprick. It is seated in a Terrestrial Paradise, (as Mr *Misson* says) but has nothing else to recommend it, except that it is said to have a better Trade than most other Cities in the Ecclesiastical State. The Trade of it consists in Cloth, Gold and Silver Lace, some Silks, and Spicery. It was several times plunder'd by the *Goths*, and there are no old Monuments remaining.

*Todi*, *Tuder*, or *Turde*, according to *Ptolemy*, stands on a Hill near the *Tyber*, almost in the midit between *Perugia* to the North, and *Narni* to the South, about 20 Miles from either, and has the Name of an Episcopal See.

*Nocera*, *Nuceria*, call'd *Constantia Colonia*, in the Itinerary of *Antoninus*, stands at the Foot of the *Apennines* on the Confines of the *Marca d' Ancona*, 16 Miles from *Spoleto* to the North, 15 from *Camerino* to the West, and as many from *Foligno* to the North-East; and is an Episcopal See, immediately subject to that of *Rome*.

*Terni*, *Interamnus*, or *Interamnina*, stands in a Plain, on the River *Nars*, near the Confines of *Sabina*, about 12 Miles from *Spoleto* to the South, and 6 from *Narni*. It is a very ancient City, having been Built about 670 Years before Christ, in the Days of *Numa Pompilius*. It owes its ancient Name to its Situation, between the two Arms of the River which waters it, and the Bridge, (as the Inscription which was put on it in the time of Pope *Urban VIII.* says) was Built by *Pompey* the Great. The whole Trade of this City consists in Oyl, of which (as they say) they make during six Months of the Year, 100 Charges every Day, each Charge weighing 600 Pounds, and is worth 12 English Crowns.

*Affisi*, *Affisium*, or *Æsisium*, stands on a Hill, 4 Miles from the River *Chiascio*, 11 from *Perugia* to the East, and near 60 from *Rome* to the North-West. It is an Episcopal See, Suffragan to none, and the Birth place of *St. Francis*, and *St. Clara*.

The Country of *PERUGIA*, *Perusinus Ager*, call'd by the *Italians* *il Peruzino*, is bounded with the *Tyber*, and ancient *Umbria* on the East, the *Marshes* of *Chiana*, and the Territories of *Florence* on the West, and the Territories of *Orvieto* on the South; and owes its Name to the chief Town in it.

*Perugia*, *Perusia*, *Perusium*, and *Perrasium*, was a very ancient City, and Famous for the Calamity which beset it, when *Octavius Augustus* block'd up *L. Antonius*, the Brother of *Marcus* the *Triumvir*, within it; and having forc'd him to surrender, let him go without any harm, pardon'd the Soldiers, but executed the utmost degree of Rage, not only on the *Perusians*, but also on the *Romans*, nor sparing those of the first and second Quality, who were cruelly Butcher'd at the Altar of *Julius Caesar*, tho' this seems to have been the effect rather of the brutal Fury of the Soldiers than the Orders of the General.

One of the Citizens of *Perusia* having set Fire to his House with all his Goods, and thrown himself into the Flame, it burnt so violently that it quickly brought the Neighbourhood into the same Calamity; and in a little time the whole Town, except the Temple of *Vucan*, was reduc'd to Ashes. But not long after a new City sprung up from these, which was call'd *Augusta Perusia*. Between this City and *Cortona* lies the *Lacus Trasimenus*, or *Perusinus*, Famous for the signal Overthrow which the *Romans*, under the Consul *Faminius*, in the second Punic War, w'd from *Hannibal* the *Carthaginian* General, on the North Borders of it. It was one of the first 12 *Tuscan* Colonies, and is at present a large and pretty well inhabited City, situated on a Hill near the *Tybur*, about 28 Miles from *Orvieto* to the North, and 60 from *Rome* to the North-West, and 12 from *Affisi*, towards the Lake now call'd *Lago di Perugia*, or *Lugo di Castiglione*, which is about 9 Miles from the City. It has the Title of a Bishoprick, and is adorn'd with an University, and defended by a strong Citadel.

*Citta di Castello*, *Tifernium Tiberinum*, is a fortified Town, and well inhabited, on the Confines of *Tuscany*, near the *Tyber*, 25 Miles North from *Perugia*, and gives Name to the Country about it, call'd *il Contado di Citta di Castello*.

The Marquiate of *ANCONA*, or *Marca d' Ancona*, *Marchia Anconitana*, which anciently made up the greater part of *Picenum*, is a fertile and pleasant Country, producing particularly abundance of Wax and Flax; only the Air is bad. It is bounded on the North with the Gulf of *Venice*, on the East with the Duchy of *Urbino*, on the West with the farther *Abruzzo*, and on the South divided from *Umbria*, by the *Apennines*. The most considerable Towns in it are,

<i>Ancona.</i>	}	<i>Osimo.</i>	}	<i>Recanati.</i>
<i>Macerata.</i>		<i>Camerino.</i>		<i>Tolentino.</i>
<i>Ascoli.</i>		<i>Fermo.</i>		<i>San Severino.</i>
<i>Jesi.</i>		<i>Loretto.</i>		

*Ancena*, *Ancena* is a very ancient City, said to have been Built by the *Syracusians*, who left their Country to avoid the Tyranny of *Dionysius*. It stands on the *Adriatick* Shoar, over against *Dalmatia*, near the *Promontory*, anciently call'd *Crumerum*, now, *monte S. Ciriaco*, about 30 Miles from *Fermo* to the North, 13 from *Osimo* to the North-East, between *Loretto* to the East, and *Sinigaglia* to the West, and 110 from *Rome* to the North. It has a very good Harbour (as Mr. *Misson* relates) but the Trade is quite ruin'd. The Unevenness of its Situation renders it very inconvenient. The Streets are narrow and dark. There are neither fair Houses, nor fine Churches in it. The Citadel commands both the City and Haven; and at the entrance of the Mole or Peer, there is a Triumphal Arch of very fine white Marble, which was erected by *Trajan* by order of the Senate. The fore-cited Author says, that Victuals are very dear and scarce in this Place, insomuch that a Fricasse of 3 Eggs, or as many Pilchards, was brought them for a Supper to serve six Persons; and that you must fight for them too, before you can have them.

*Macerate*, *Macerata*, stands on a Hill not far from the Ruins of *Hevia Recina*, in the midit between *Recanati* to the East, and *Tolentino* on the West, and 20 Miles South from *Ancena*. It was Built (as some say) from the Ruins of *Hebia Recina*, An. 410. Pope *Nicholas IV.* erected its University in the Year



Year 1200. and Pope *Jehn XXII.* made it a Bishoprick in the Year 1586.

*Alcum Picenum*, stands on a Hill near the River *Tonto*, on the Confines of the farther *Abruzzo*, and was anciently the Chief City of *Picenum*. It is divided (as *Baudrand* says) into 4 Parts, has two old Castles, 100 old Towers, 6 Bridges and 9 Gates; and is distant 20 Miles from the Adriatick Sea to the West, 9 from *Montalto* to the South, 18 from *Fermo*, and 20 from *Aquila*; and is a well Inhabited and Fortified Town.

*Osimo, Auxunum, or Oxinum*, stands on a Hill, about 10 Miles from *Ancona* to the South, and about as much from *Jesi* to the West, and *Loretto* to the East; and is in a decaying condition, tho' it has the name of a Bishoprick; which in *Italy* are generally small, as they are very numerous.

*Camerino, Camerinum*, is situated at the Foot of the *Apennines*, on the Confines of *Umbria* in the midst between *Macerata* to the South West, and *Spoleto* to the North East, and 60 from *Rome* to the North. It is an Episcopal See, subject to none but the Pope, and formerly was govern'd by its own Dukes.

*Fermo, Firmium*, mention'd by *Strabo*, *Mela* and *Cicero* as a Town and Colony of *Picenum* in *Italy*, is pretty well Inhabited, and Built on the rising Ground, near the Coast of the Adriatick Sea, 30 Miles South-East from *Ancona*, and 90 from *Rome* to the North-East. It was dignified with the Title of an Archiepiscopal See by Pope *Sixtus V.* who had formerly been Bishop there.

*Loretto, Lauretum*, stands about 3 Miles from the Shoar of the Adriatick Sea, 10 from *Fermo* to the North-West, 20 from *Ancona* to the South-East, and near 100 from *Rome* to the North-East. It is a little Place, but very well Fortified, and has the Title of a City and Bishoprick, Erected by Pope *Sixtus V.* Anno 1586. to which the See of *Recanati* was united Anno. 1591. *Loretto* has been a famous Place for a long time, but because every body does not particularly know the reason why it is so, they must be put in mind, that it is pretended that the House in which the Virgin *Mary* is said to have been Born, where she was Betroth'd and Married to *Joseph*, where the Angel saluted her, and where the Son of God was Incarnated, was brought by the Angels from *Nazareth* to *Dalmatia*, and plac'd on a little Mountain call'd *Tersatto*, on 12 May, 1291. That 3 Years and 7 Months after it was remov'd thence, and brought by them to a Forest in the Territory of *Recanati* in the *Marca d' Ancona*; from whence after it had been 8 Month there, it was remov'd a Mile further to the same Hill where it now stands. But a difference happening between 2 Brothers to whom the Ground belong'd, it was remov'd some Paces from thence, and set down in the midst of a High-way, from whence it has never been stir'd since. To prevent inconveniences that might happen, particularly a new removal, they Built a Magnificent Church in the midst of which it remains secure against all Assaults; about which they have since Built 4 Walls. The *Sacra Casa* consists of one Chamber, 44 Spans Long within, 18 Broad, and 23 High; 1½ Palm, being 13 Inches *English* Measure. The Holy Tabernacle stands East and West, and over the little Chimney in the Chamber, in a Nich, stands the great Lady of *Loretto*, about 4 Foot-High, made (as they say) of Cedar wood, and wrought by St. *Luke*. The Ornaments with which she is usually deck'd, especially the Mantle, which is adorn'd with

an infinite number of precious Stones, are of an inestimable Value. She has a great number of Robes for change, and 7 different Mourning Habits for the Holy Week. Her Triple Crown was presented her by *Lewis XIII.* of *France* who also gave a little Crown to the Infant *Jesus*, both wonderful Rich, the former being all cover'd with precious Stones. The Altar made by the hands of the Apostles, and the Stone upon which St. *Peter* Celebrated his first Mass, were Transported at the same time with the House. All round the Statue there is nothing but Lamps, Statues, Busts, and other Figures of Gold and Silver; 28 Candlesticks of Silver and Vermilion, 12 of Malt-y Gold, Weighing 37 Pound each. 'Tis incredible what vast numbers of Pilgrims come here to pay their Devotion, especially at *Easter*, and the Virgin's Nativity; (which is Solemniz'd in the Month of *September*) insomuch that in the Years of greatest concourse, they have counted 20000 Pilgrims and upwards during these 2 Festivals. The Treasury-Chamber is a spacious Room, having 17 large Presses with Folding-Doors, instead of Wainscot to the Walls; which are fill'd with pure Gold, Jewels of the greatest Value, and Vessels and Ornaments more precious than Gold; for Silver is not admitted into these Presses but lies in confus'd Heaps, in several Places till they have occasion for't. 'Tis impossible to imagine the vast quantity and variety of Riches that are amass'd here; and it would be in vain to attempt a particular account of them. They have been bestow'd by Princes, States, and People that own the Papal Supremacy, who have emulously strive who should out-do one another. Nor is the Treasury all the Riches that belong to this Place: There are settl'd Revenues, and Lands Purchas'd out of Sight, and they have built not only a stately Church, but also a Magnificent Palace, and no doubt have Chests full of Money. There is also an Arsenal; but not very considerable. In the publick Place an admirably beautiful Fountain of white Marble, enrich'd with Statues of Brass, and a fine Statue of Pope *Sixtus V.* Erected by the Inhabitants of *Loretto*, in acknowledgment of the Privileges they received from him. The principal Trade of this little City, consists in Medals, Rosaries, Sanctified Beads, Images, *Agnus Dei's*, and such like Commodities.

*Recanati, Recinetum*, is a little City on the Top of a Hill, near the River *Potenza*, about 4 Miles from *Loretto* to the South-west, 10 from *Macerata* and 13 from *Ancona* to the South. It has been an Episcopal See, since the Year 1240. but in the Year 1591. it was united to that of *Loretto*.

*Tolentino, Tolentinum*, is a little Town, Situated on a rising Ground, about 25 Miles from *Ancona* to the South, and 15 from *Camerino* to the North-East. It was made a Bishoprick by Pope *Sixtus V.* Anno. 1586. under the Archbishop of *Fermo*, but it is now united with the See of *Macerata*.

*San Severino, Septempeda*, is a little Town, on the Banks of the River *Potenza*, 6 Miles from *Tolentino* to the West, and 12 from *Camerino* to the North. The ancient Town of *Septempeda* was destroy'd by the *Goths*, in the Year 543, and from its Ruins *Septempeda Nova* did arise, or *Fanum Sancti Severini* (from whence the Modern *Italian* name *San Verino*) in the Year 1198. where formerly a little Castle stood call'd *Castrum Regale*, near the Ruins of the old Town. It was erected into a Bishoprick by Pope *Sixtus V.* Anno. 1586. whereas formerly it was in the Diocess of *Camerino*. In passing now North west thro' the rest of the Pope's Dominions we enter



A part of the *Ducatus*, or Duchy of Urbino, is bounded by the *Apennines*, which are the *Iunibri* dwells; it is bounded North with the *Gallia Tiberina*, and Remains to the East with the *Mare Adriaticum*, or the Sea of *Ombria*, and on the West with the *Toscana*. It was formerly Dukes of its own; and the Family of *Montefeltro* was the last that had it; for the Most Noble Prince in the Person of *Francis Maria Rector* he sometime before he died, to prevent all disputes that might happen after his Death, gave it to Pope Urban VIII. in the Year 1631. It is about 70 Miles extent, and may be divided into these Countries, the Dutchy of *Urbino*, the County of *Montefeltro*, the Territory of *Gubbio*, the Signiory of *Pesaro*, and the Vicariate of *Senigaglia*; and comprehends these Towns,

Urbino. } { Foss. mbrone.  
Cagli. } { Pesaro.  
Gubbio. } { Sinigaglia.

Urbino, *Urbinum*, stands on a Hill near the Head of the River *Foglia*, about 20 Miles from the Adriatick Shoar, 50 from *Florence* to the East, and 100 from *Rome* to the North. It was Erected into an Archbishoprick by Pope *Pius IV.* Ann. 1563. and was the Birth-place of *Poysdore Virgil*, and the famous Painter *Raphael*.

*Gubio, Eugubium*, anciently call'd *Iguvium*, stands at the foot of the *Appennines*, on the Confines of the *Marca d' Ancona*, 26 Miles from *Urbino* to the South, and 16 from *Perugia*. It is an Episcopal See, under the Archbishop of *Urbino*, but not subject to his Jurisdiction.

*Fossombrone, Forum Sempronii.* stands near the River *Marro*, about half a Mile from the old Town, 10 Miles from *Urbino* to the East, in the midst between *Pesaro* to the North, and *Cagli* to the South, about 15 Miles from either. It was Sold to *Frederick* Duke of *Urbino* by *Galeazzo* *Mazatesta*, Lord of it, for the Sum of 13000 Florins of Gold, in the time of Pope *Sixtus* the IV.

*Pesaro, Pisanum*, the Name anciently of a Town and Colony of *Umbria* in *Italy*, according to *Pliny* and *Ptolemy*, is at present a large, well built and pleasantly situated Town, on the River *Fog'ia* near to where it empties it self into the *Adriatick Sea*, in the midst between *Sinigaglia* to the East, and *Rimini* to the West, and 20 Miles from *Urbino* to the North East. It was rais'd by *Totila* King of the *Goths*, and rebuilt by *Belisarius* (as *Procopius* relates) and is an Episcopal See Suffragan to the Archbishop of *Urbino*. It is tolerably well Fortified, tho' somewhat after the old Fashion, and the Houses are generally handiome: And it is excellently provided with all the Conveniencies of Life. The best Meat (as *Mr. Misson* says) costs not full two Farthings a Pound, which weighs 18 Ounces; and the Bread, Wine and other Things are proportionally cheaper: But the Air is very bad in Summer, and extremely dangerous in *July* and *August*.

*Sinigaglia, Senogallia*, anciently a Town of *Umbria* in *Italy*, according to *Pliny*, *Strabo*, *Paul Diaconus* and others. *Ptolemy* calls it *Senagallica*: And it is mentioned by *Livy*, *Polybius* and *Stephanus*. It was built by the *Galli Senones*, in the 396th Year of the City of *Rome*: And is now a little but delightfully situated Town in a Plain, near the *Adriatick Sea*, and on the *Confines* of the *Marca d'Ancona*, in the midst almost between *Ancona* to the East, and *Pesaro* to the West. 22 Miles from either, and 3 $\frac{1}{2}$  from *Urbino* to the East. It belong'd formerly

to the Family of *McLeston*, afterwards to the Dukes  
of *Urt* till it fell into the Church in the time of  
Pope *Urt* the VIII.

*ROMANDIOLA* *Propria*, or *ROMAGNA*, and formerly call'd *Æmilia Regio*, lies next to *Urbino* between the *Reignese*, on the West, the *Duchy of Ferrara*, on the North, *Urbino* and *Tuscany* on the South and East. A great part of it towards the *Apennines* is subject to the Duke of *Tuscany*, and therefore call'd *Romandicla Fiorentina*. The most considerable *Towns* in that part of it which belongs to the Church are,

Ravenna.	}	}	Ferli.	}	}	Cervia.
Faenza.			Bestinero.			Cesena.
Imola.			Rimini.			Sassima.

*Ravenna.* *Ravenna*, anciently a City of *Gallia Cispadana*, according to *Pliny*, *Strabo* and *Ptolemy*, was one of the chief Cities in that Country we now call *Italy*, and the Residence of the *Exarch* or *Governour* sent by the *Emperour* of the East to govern that Country. It was formerly the Principal Haven that the *Romans* had on the *Adriatick* Gulf: And its situation is represented by the ancient Geographers like that of *Venice*; but the Case is quite altered now; for not only the *Lagunes* are dried up, but the Sea has retir'd almost four Miles from it, and those Plains that were formerly under Water, are now the most fruitful Fields in *Italy*. There are to be seen in the Walls towards the Sea, great Rings of Iron, which served formerly to fasten the Vessels, and the Remainders of the *Pharos* are still visible. Fresh Water is very scarce here, which gave occasion to that Epigram of *Martial*,

*Calidus Impesuit...*

which Mr. Addison has so wittily translated, that I cannot omit inserting it.

By a Ravenna Vintner once betray'd,  
So much for Wine and Water mix'd I paid ;  
But when I thought to purchas'd Liqueur mine,  
The Rascal fobb'd me off with only Wine.

By reason of the many Disasters which this City hath suffered by the Wars there are but few Marks of Antiquity left in it. Without the Walls, near the ancient Haven, stands the *Mausoleum* which *Amalasuntha* erected for her Father *Theodick*, King of the *Ostrogoths*, who kept his Court at *Ravenna*, which they have turn'd to a little Church, and call it *Rotunda*; and which is covered with a Stone 38 Foot in Diameter and 15 thick. The Cathedral is an old Church, the Nave or Body of which is supported by 56 Pillars of Marble, of the *Archipelago*. There are several other fine Churches, as, that of the *Theatines*, *St. Vitalis*, *St. Apolinarius*, *St. Romaldus*, *St. Andrew*, *St. Celsus*. In the Great Place stands a fair brazen Statue of Pope *Alexander* the VII. and at the other end of it are two Columns, upon which were the ancient Patron, and the Arms of *Venice*, while *Ravenna* belong'd to that State; but since it belong'd to the Church, the Pope has plac'd on these Pillars, the Statues of *Victor* and *Apolonarius*, who are the Patrons of *Ravenna*. The City was taken by the *Longobards* in the Year, 744. and is now the chief City of *Romandiola*, distant about 45 Miles from *Bologna* to the East, 102 from *Ancona* to the North-West, 60 from *Florence* to the North-East, and 42 from *Ferrara* to the South-East.

*Faenza, Faventia*, anciently a Town in *Gallia Cisalpina*, according to *Livy* and *Pliny*, upon the River *Anemo* now *Lamone*, in the midst between *Imola* to the West, and *Forlì* to the East, and 8 from the



the Confines of the Great Duke of *Tuscany's* Dominions, 25 Miles West from *Ravenna* to the South-West. It is an Episcopal See, under the Archbishop of *Ravenna*.

*Imola* or *Jumela*, *Forum Cornelii*, anciently a City belonging to the *Lingones* in *Gallia Cispadana*, sometimes call'd *Connelium*, and *Syllæ Forum*, is at present a pretty neat Town, and well Inhabited, distant about 20 Miles from *Bologna*, to the East, 10 from *Favenza*, 25 from *Ravenna*, and 16 from the Confines of the Dominions of *Florence* to the North; and is an Episcopal See under the Archbishop of *Ravenna*.

*Ferli*, *Forum Livii*, anciently a City of the *Senones*, in *Gallia Cispadana*, Situated in a Plain near the Mountains, 15 Miles from *Ravenna* to the South, and 4 from *Citta di Sole*, and the Confines of *Tuscany*; and is an Episcopal See under the Archbishop of *Ravenna*.

*Rimini*, *Arimnium*, stands in a Plain, on the Coast of the Adriatick Gulf, at the Mouth of the River *Ariminus*, now *la Marecchia*. *Baudrand*, (who Travell'd that Country not very long ago, and is reckon'd a pretty good Geographer) calls it *culta & elegans*; but Mr. *Misson* says, it is a little poor City. It is distant 20 Miles from *Pesaro* to the North-West, 25 from *Ravenna* to the South-East, somewhat less from *Urbino* to the North, and in the midit between *Bologna* to the West, and *Ancona* to the South East: It was Fortified by *Sigismundus Pandolphus Malatesta*, but at present it has only a Wall, and that in no good condition. The Bridge of Marble Built by *Augustus* and *Tiberius*, and the Triumphal Arch Erected by *Augustus*, the Ruins of an Amphitheatre, the Tower of Brick, which was anciently the *Pharos*, but now encompass'd with Gardens (since the Sea has fallen back half a Mile) are the only Monuments of Antiquity now remaining. It is an Episcopal See, under the Archbishop of *Ravenna*. Not far from *Rimini* on the side towards *Ravenna*, the River *Pisatello* falls into the Sea. This was the ancient *Rubicon*, so fam'd in the Roman Story on account of *Julius Caesar*.

*Cervia*, *Cervia*, anciently call'd *Phicocle*, *Ficocle*, and *Ficode*, stands in the midit of a Boggy Country, near the Coast of the Adriatick Gulf, about 12 Miles from *Ravenna* to the S. E. and 15 from *Rimini*. It is but thinly Inhabited, by reason the Air is very bad, in omuch (as *Baudrand* relates) there are not above 400 Inhabitants in it: but it has the Title of a Bishoprick, Suffragan to the Archbishop of *Ravenna*.

The Country call'd *BOLOGNESE*, *Bononiensis Ager*, was anciently Inhabited by a part of the *Boii*, and *Lingones* in *Gallia Cispadana*; and is Bounded on the North with the Dutchy of *Ferrara*, on the East with *Romandiola*, properly so call'd, on the West with the Dutchy of *Modena*, and on the South with *Tuscany*, from which it is separated by the Appennine Mountains. It's Soil is very Fertile and well Improv'd; and it was given to the Church by *Pepin* King of *France*, and *Charles* the Great. The most considerable Places in it are, *Bologna*, and *Bentivoglio*, tho' there are several others of less Note.

*Bologna*, *Bononia* (commonly call'd the *Fat*) is plac'd in *Gallia Cispadana* by *Pliny*, *Livy* and *Tacitus*; and was at first call'd *Felsina*, from *Felsinus* a *Tuscan* King, by whom it is said to have been Built. It stands on the little River *Reno*, 25 Miles from *Ferrara*, and 92 from *Venice* to the South, 54 from *Florence*, and 192 from *Rome* to the North-West, between *Milan* to the West, and *Ancona* to the East, 125 from the former, and 135 from the other. It

has been the Seat of an Archbishop (who has also the Title of a Prince of the Empire) since the year 1582. that Pope *Gregory XIII* Erected it; and is Greater and Richer, as Mr. *Misson* relates, than *Florence*, and containing more Inhabitants by a third part. All the Fortification of this City is a single Wall; for when it submitted it self to the Pope, *Ann.* 1278. (*Nicholas* being then in the Chair) they made an Honourable Composition with his Holiness, viz. That he should never Bridle them by a Citadel, or Confiscate their Estates upon any pretext whatsoever; and that they should have an Auditor of the *Rota*, and an Ambassador at *Rome*. The Houses are generally Built of Stones or Brick, Plaster'd over, and the Streets are pretty streight. The University was Founded by *Theodosius* the younger, *Ann.* 425. but it owes most of its splendor to *Charlemain*. There are several fine Churches in this City, particularly that of *St. Petronius* which is the greatest; and in which is to be seen *Cassini's* Meridian Line, drawn on a Copper Plate, set in the Pavement, and is 220 Foot long. The Church of the Dominicans, in which are the Chappel and Tomb of *St. Dominick*, is very magnificent. There are also several stately Palaces in this City, whereof that which belongs to General *Caprara* is the finest. The Cardinal Legate, and the Gonfalonier with his Counsellors lodge in the Publick Palace, above the Gate of which there is a Statue in Brass of *Gregory XIII.* which weighs 11000 Pounds, and on one side of the Gate, that of *Boniface VIII.* There are likewise in this City several Cabinets of Curiosities, particularly that of *Aldrovandus*. It is also worth ones while to observe the great Tower *Asinelli*, which was Built by *Gerrard Asinelli*, *Ann.* 1109. It is 376 Foot high, as that of the other Tower near to it, call'd *Garisenda* from its Founder, is 130. The latter was Built by *Otho*, and *Philip Garisendi*, *Ann.* 1110. and leans to one side like the Tower of *Pisa*; and its inclination is about 9 Foot. The shining Stones, known by the name of *Bononian* Stones, are found on the Hill *Paderno*, about 3 Miles from the City. There are in this City 400 Silk-mills; and the Trade consists chiefly in Wax, Hemp, Flax, Hams, Sauciges, Soap, Snuff and Perfumes; and sometime their little Dogs turn'd to a very good Account.

*Bentivoglio*, *Bentivolium*, formerly call'd *Pons Poledranus*, stands about 10 Miles to the North of *Bologna*, towards *Ferrara*. It was formerly a very fine Place, but now is almost quite Ruin'd. From hence the *Bentivoglio's* had their name, who had the Jurisdiction of this Place many Years.

The Dutchy of *FERRARA*, properly so call'd, became a part of the Ecclesiastical State, after the Death of *Alphonfus II.* *Ann.* 1598. and is Bounded on the North with the *Polesine di Rovigno*, on the West with the Dutchy of *Mantua*, on the South with the *Bolognese*, and *Romandiola* properly so call'd and on the East with the Gulf of *Venice*. It is divided (by *Baudrand*) into these following Parts, *il Polesine di Ariano*, *il Polesine di Ferrara*, *il Polesine di S. Giorgio*, *la Valle di Commachio*, *la Valle di Marrara*, *la Valle di Maremorta*; and the most considerable Towns in it are, *Ferrara*, *Comachio*, and *Cento*.

*Ferrara*, *Ferraria*, anciently call'd *Forum Asieni*, stands on a little Branch of the *Po*, call'd *Po Morto*, from whence there is a Canal made to *Fransolino*, about 6 Miles long, for the conveniency of Commerce. It stands in the midit between *Mirandola* and *Comachio*, and about 28 Miles from *Bologna* to the North-East,



30 from the *Adriatick* Sea to the West, and 60 from *Venice* to the South: While it remain'd in the Hands of the Princes of the House of *Este*, it might justly have been reckon'd one of the most flourishing Cities in *Italy*; but since it became a part of the Ecclesiastical State, it has mightily decay'd, insomuch that at present tho' it be a large and pretty handsome Town, it is very ill Peopled, Poor and almost Desolate. In the Year 1570. in the space of 40 Hours, it suffer'd 160 Jolts of a dreadful Earthquake, which had well nigh reduc'd it all to Rubbish. The Citadel, which was Built by *Clement VIII.* and which they say, cost 2000000 Crowns, is still in good order; but the other Fortifications are quite neglected. The Ducal Palace, the Marquis *de Villa's* House, the Cathedral and several other Churches and Convents, are worth a Traveller's Notice; but do not deserve a particular Description.

*Comacchio*, *Comaculum*, or *Comacula*, is a little Town standing in a Marshy Ground, about 3 Miles from the *Adriatick* Shoar to the West, 20 from *Ravenna* to the North, and 35 from *Ferrara* to the East. It is inhabited only by a few Fishermen, by reason of its unwholesome Situation; but is however an Episcopal See under the Arch-Bishop of *Ravenna*.

The Republick of *St. MARINO* has its Name from a Mountain in the Province of *Romandiola*, and a Town of that same Name, which is so call'd from a certain Holy Man call'd *Marinus*, who liv'd a Hermit there in the time of the Emperor *Diocletian*. It has been a free State ever since the Year 600. and has under its Jurisdiction several little Towns and Villages in the adjacent Country; for in the Year 1100. in the time of the Emperor *Otho III.* it Bought the Castle of *Pennarossa* from the Count of *Mentseirat*, and that of *Cesolo*, in the Reign of the Emperor *Frederick Enobarbus*; each of which Places is about a Mile distant from *St. Marino*. In the Year 1463. Pope *Pius II.* gave them the Castles and Villages of *Serravalle*, *Fuente*, *Mongiandano*, and *Florentino*, and the Village of *Piogge*. It had several others, but the Dukes of *Urbino* have taken them from this State; so that the whole Inhabitants of this little State, are not thought to be above 6000. The Town of *St. Marino* (*Titinus*) stands on a steep Hill, and is pretty well Fortified. It is govern'd by two Officers, call'd *Caprains*, who are chang'd twice a Year, viz in the Months of *March* and *September*. This Town is distant above 30 Miles from *Ravenna* to the S. E. 20 from *Urbino* to the N. E. and about 60 from *Florence* to the E.

## C H A P. XIII.

### *The Kingdom of Naples, Regnum Neapolitanum.*

THE Kingdom of *Naples*, which comprehends those Parts of *Italy*, that were anciently call'd *Samnium*, *Campania*, *Apulia*, and *Magna Græcia*, owes its Modern Name to the City of *Naples*; it having been formerly call'd the Kingdom of *Sicily*, on this side the *Pharo* (viz. of *Messina*). It came to be reduc'd into the form of a Kingdom (as *Cluverius* and others relate) in this manner. About the Year of Christ 1000. the *Saracens* being in possession of this Country and the Island of *Sicily*, one Tancred a *Norman*, who had 12 Sons, and not over-much to give them, came together with them into *Italy*, and offer'd his Service against the *Saracens*, who being happily expell'd *Italy* and *Sicily*, he and his Sons had large Possessions assign'd them, both in the Kingdom of *Naples* and *Sicily*. After which his Son *Robert* was made first Duke of *Apulia* and *Calabria*; whose Son *Roger* was created King of *Sicily* and *Naples*, and both together were call'd the Kingdom of the 2 *Sicily's*; for that which is now call'd the Kingdom of *Naples*, was then call'd *Sicily* on this side the *Pharo*, and the Island it self *Sicily* beyond the *Pharo*. *Roger* was succeeded by his Son *William*, Ann. 1135. His Son *William*, surnam'd the Good, (as his Father had been call'd the Bad) succeeded him, An. 1166. who left both the Kingdoms to his Bastard Son *Tancred*, against whom the Pope conceiving a mortal Hatred, and resolving to do him a Mischief, caus'd *Henry VI.* Son of the Emperor *Frederick I.* Duke of *Swaben* to Marry one *Constantia*, whom he brought out of a Nunnery, and declar'd him Heir of those Kingdoms. The Emperor *Frederick II.* *Henry VI's* Son by that Marriage, marry'd *Iole*, *John* of *Brenne's* Daughter, King of *Jerusalem*, and by that means laid claim to the Title; and therefore the succeed-

ing Kings of *Sicily* were likewise call'd Kings of *Jerusalem*. The Popes still entertaining an inveterate Hatred against this *Frederick* and his Posterity, Pope *Urban VIII.* prevail'd with *Charles I.* Earl of *Anjou*, to come from *France* and invade *Manfred*; and having first kill'd him, and then *Conradin*, *Frederick II's* Grand child, he took possession of the Kingdom. But he did not enjoy it long; for he with his *Frenchmen* did so oppress the *Sicilians*, that they form'd a Conspiracy against them, and on *Easter Eve*, An. 1282. upon a Signal given as was agreed, put all the *French* to the Sword; which Action is still known by the name of the *Sicilian Vespers*. *Peter* of *Arragon*, who had Marry'd *Constantia*, *Manfred's* Daughter, and whom *Conrad* a little before his Death had appointed his Heir, deliver'd the *Sicilians* from the Tyranny of the *French*; and having made *Charles II.* who had been beat at Sea, his Prisoner, did not dismiss him before he had consented to content himself with *Naples*, *Calabria*, *Apulia* and *Tarentum*, and resign *Sicily* and *Sardinia* to the *Arragonians*. *Robert*, who in vain attempted to recover *Sicily*, succeeded *Charles*, to whom succeeded *Joanna I.* After her *Charles* of *Durazzo*, then *Ladislaus*; next *Joanna II.* who first nam'd *Alphonfus* of *Arragon* her Heir; but repenting of that before 2 Years were at an end, she nam'd *Lewis IV.* Duke of *Anjou*, who disputed the Kingdom of *Naples* with *Alphonfus*, till the Year 1434. that both he and *Joanna* Died. Afterwards *Alphonfus* did expel *Rene*, who pretended to succeed his Brother; and by his latter Will appointed *Ferdinand I.* his Bastard, his Heir, with whom *John* Duke of *Lorraine*, *Rene's* Son, disputed the Title, and was Crown'd by Pope *Pius II.* But after several Battles, fought with various Success, was forc'd to leave the Kingdom, *Charles VIII.*



VIII. King of *France*, claiming the Crown as Heir to the Earl of *Anjou*. *Charles* did also drive *Ferdinand II.* out of the Kingdom; but shortly after, *Charles's* Affairs obliging him to return to *France*, *Ferdinand* was call'd home by the *Neapolitans*. At last *Frederick*, *Ferdinand's* Uncle, being at once attack'd by *Lewis XII.* of *France*, and *Ferdinand* the Catholic, and not being able to make head against both, surrender'd himself to the former, and let his Kingdom fall to the Conquerors; but a Strife arising about the dividing of it, they went by the Ears, and the *Spaniards* drove the *French* clear out; and *Ferdinand* united *Sicily* to *Naples* to his other Dominions. And so ever since the Year 1504. it hath been subject to the King of *Spain*, who pays a certain Acknowledgement of Homage due to the Pope, as a vassal Gennet, and a Sum of Money, presented with great Ceremony every Year, in Testimony of this Kingdom's Dependence on the Holy See.

This Country has been variously divided at different times. Under its first Kings, it was divided into 4 Parts, viz. The Provinces of *Lavaro*, *Abruzzo*, *Apulia* and *Calabria*; afterwards into 7 Provinces, and at last into 12, of which we shall treat particularly hereafter. It is bounded on the North with the Gulf of *Venice*, on the South with the *Tuscan* Sea, on the East with the Mouth of the Gulf of *Venice* and the *Ionian* Sea, and on the West with the Ecclesiastical State; and is in Length (according to *Cruvier*) from the River *Tronto*, to the Promontory now call'd *Capo Spartivento*. 360 Miles in Breadth from the Promontory *Massa* to *Monte di St. Angelo*, 120.

The Air in some places is excessively hot, especially on the South side of the *Appennines*, but on the other Temperate, except in *Apulia*. It is almost every where well provided with Springs and Rivers, which flow from both sides of the *Appennines*. The Soil produces Wine and Oyl, and pretty good Pasture; and the *Neapolitan* Horses are in great Esteem. Also good store of Almonds, Olives, Figs, Citrons, Oranges, Grapes, Corn, Hemp, Line, Pulse, Anniseed and Coriander-seed. There are said to be no Venomous Creatures in this Country, except the *Tarantula* and *Chersydros*, an amphibious kind of Serpent; and the Locust that sometimes annoys the product of the Ground. The Soil of *Campania* is so Fertile, that it produces the same Flowers twice a Year. The Air of the hither Principality is reckon'd very temperate, and the People live to a great Age. The farther Principality abounds in Cattle, and several sorts of good Fruit. *Basilicate* produces Saffron, and plenty of Honey and Wax. *Calabria* especially affords good store of Manna. The hither *Calabria* produces Corn, Oyl and Mulberries; the farther excels in good Horses, and fine Honey. *Apulia*, by reason of the excessive Heat, is so plagu'd with Flies, that it is a common Proverb, If one would have a Fore-taste of Hell Torments, let him go spend a Summer in *Apulia*. In *Capitanata* the Soil is dry and sandy, and the Grass short, but very good. In *Bari* the Air is pretty temperate; but the *Tarantula* is very troublesome, and so are some other little Serpents, whom the Stork is a great Enemy to. *Otranto* is said to produce as much Oyl as might serve all *Italy*. In *Molise* there's so great plenty of Venison, that it is much cheaper than Beef or Mutton. The hither *Abruzzo* is the coolest place of the Kingdom, yet produces plenty of Corn, Wine, Oyl and Saffron.

As to the Genius and Manners of the *Neapolitans*, we shall only tell you the Proverb that passes commonly in *Italy*, viz. The Kingdom of *Naples* is a Paradise, but the Inhabitants Devils. They are naturally Seditious, and abominably Unclean. They are very Sumptuous in their Apparel, especially on Sundays and Holy-days, insomuch that 'tis hard to distinguish a Lady from a Cobler's Wife.

It is very well known the Kingdom of *Naples* is govern'd by a Viceroy sent by the King of *Spain*, whose Government is generally for 3 Years: He is commonly one of the *Grandeos* of *Spain*; and the People have no great reason to brag of the Gentleness of his Government. The Revenues of this Kingdom are said to be about 3000000 Ducats, and if we may believe Mr. *Lassels*, the Kingdom is able to raise 150000 Foot, and 100000 Horse. The Number of Cities and great Towns in this Kingdom are said to be 148. Arch-Bishopricks 20. Bishopricks 128. and the number of Princes, Dukes, Marquises and Earls is incredible.

The latest and most common Division of the Kingdom of *Naples*, as we said before, is into 12 Provinces, as you may see in the following Table.

- I. The Province of *Lavaro*.
- II. The farther Principality.
- III. The hither Principality.
- IV. *Basilicata*.
- V. The hither *Calabria*.
- VI. The farther *Calabria*.
- VII. The hither *Abruzzo*.
- VIII. The farther *Abruzzo*.
- IX. The County of *Molise*.
- X. The Province of *Capitanata*.
- XI. The Province of *Bari*.
- XII. The Province of *Otranto*.

The Province of *LAVARO*, *Terra Laboris*, comprehends a part of the ancient *Campania Felix*, (so call'd by *Pliny* for its Fruitfulness) and *Latium Novum*; and is bounded on the North with the Country of *Abruzzo*, on the East with the Country of *Molise*, and the farther Principality, on the South with the hither, and on the West with the *Tyrrhenian* Sea, and the Campaign of *Rome*. It is water'd by the *Garigliano*, and the *Volturno*; and is said to be about 74 Miles long, and 40 broad. The most considerable Towns in it are,

<i>Naples.</i>	}	<i>Gaeta.</i>
<i>Puzzo'si.</i>		<i>Aquino.</i>
<i>Capua.</i>	}	<i>Sora.</i>
<i>Sorrento.</i>		<i>Cassino.</i>
<i>Nola.</i>	}	<i>Venafro.</i>
<i>Aversa.</i>		<i>Tiano.</i>
<i>Cajazzo.</i>		

*Naples*, *Neapolis*, which *Cicero*, *Pliny* and *Strabo* place in *Campania Felix*, was anciently call'd *Parthenope*, from the Sea Nymph, or *Syrene* of that Name, whose Enchantments, as the Story goes, *Ulysses* and his Companions had enough to do to escape; or from *Eumelus*, the King of *Theffaly's* Daughter, who is said to have brought hither a Colony. Some are of opinion that the *Grecians* built it, and call'd it *Neapolis*; others affirm that *Augustus* gave it that Name; but however that may be, it is certainly one of the noblest and finest Cities in the World, distant about 100 Miles from *Rome* to the South East,



East, 200 from *Palermo* to the North-East, 200 from *Florence* to the South-East, and about 300 from *Verice*, Lat. 41. Long. 32. 40. It is seated on a Gulf of the same Name with the City, and has a large and safe Harbour to the *Mediterranean* Sea. It is a large and well Peopl'd City, and is reckon'd 9 Miles in Compass round the Walls, and 18 if you include the Suburbs. It is divided into 29 Parts, call'd *Ortine*, and is pav'd throughout with large square Stones, Chequer-wise. The Streets are strait, and most of 'em broad. The Houses are high and uniform, and have flat Roofs, and are generally very beautiful. The Sea washes it on the South-side; on the North there are little Hills, that rise insensibly into *Campania Felix*; on the East, a Plain which leads to Mount *Vesuvius*; and on the West the upper Town. There are in this City many very fine Palaces, viz. that of the Viceroy, those of the Dukes of *Matalone*, *Gravina*, *Airola* and *de la Tour*, &c. The three Castles which defend the City, the Academy which they call *Studii Nuovi*, the Academy for riding the great Horse, the Convents, Arsenal and Magazines for the Gallies, are all very fine Buildings. There are also many Fountains, which are very convenient, and serve to adorn the City. But above all, the Number and Magnificence of Churches surpasses Imagination. Their Frontispices and Gates, the Chappels, Altars and Tombs, seem to be Pieces of the finest Architecture in the World. One that would see the rarest Pictures, Sculptures, and Vessels of Gold and Silver, must go to the Churches. The Roofs, Wainscots, Walls are all cover'd with pieces of precious Marble, most artificially laid together or with Compartiments of *Bass Relievo*, or Joiners Work, Gilded and Enrich'd with the Work of the most famous Painters. There is nothing to be seen, but Jasper, Porphyre, Mosaick of all Fashions, all Master-pieces. In a Cloyster belonging to the *Carthusians*, is to be seen the famous Crucifix of *Michael Angelo*, drawn, as they say, after the Life from a certain Peasant, whom that Painter Crucified for the purpose. The Picture is upon Wood, and is not above half a Foot high. Mr. *Misson* finds fault with *Michael*, for he says the Crucifix holds his Head exactly strait, which is not like a Man expiring on a Cross.

Altho' the greatest part of the Antiquities of this Place be buried in the Ruins, yet there are several to be seen still. The Front of *St. Paul Major*, one of the *Theatine* Churches, is the old Frontispice of the Temple of *Apollo*. The Columns of *San. Restituta* are said to have been taken from the Temple of *Neptune*. There are also some Remains of an Amphitheatre, and a Statue of the *Nile*, supported by a Crocodile: Also the Head and Neck of a large Brazen Horse, without a Bridle; which formerly stood in one of the Publick Places of *Naples*, as an Emblem of its Liberty, when it was a Common-wealth; but King *Conrad* caus'd a Bit to be put in the Mouth of it, to signify they had now lost it. In this City, as in most places in *Italy*, the Women are all hid. The Habits and Equipages of this City are of Black and Dark Colours. They are forbidden to wear Gold or Silver, or Silk upon Silk, and the *Spanish* Dreis is generally us'd. The greatest Lord can keep but two *Staffieri*, or Footmen, and their Coaches are for the most part drawn by Mules. The Trade of this City is much decay'd, and consists at present in Soap, Snuff, Stockings, Waistcoats of fine *Naples* Silk &c.

It will not be improper to subjoin to this short Description of *Naples*, a brief account of those Things that are most remarkable in the Neighbourhood of it. In the first place the famous Mount *Vesuvius*, to which the Ancients gave different Names, but all ending or sounding very like this. It is now call'd by the *Italians* *Vesuvio*, or *Monte di Somma*, and is distant about 8 Miles from the City of *Naples*. During the first 4 Miles along the Coast, there are many good Villages, and a very well manur'd Country, which seems to have receiv'd little or no Damage by Eruptions; but tho' one may travel on Horieback 2 Miles further, it must be thro' loose Stones, and Heaps of burnt Earth, which the Mountain hath vomited up; and the further one advances, he finds the Ground crack'd, dry, and cover'd with calcin'd Stones, and the Channels of Sulphur and Bitumen, which have run down the Mountain. To omit the less formidable and more recent Eruptions, since the Birth of Christ it is said to have had 12 dreadful ones, particularly that in *December*, 1631. when the Sea retir'd several times, and left the Ships dry on the Shoar, and the Floods of Fire ran in great Streams into the Sea, many Villages were turn'd topsy turvy, and above 30000 Persons, with an infinite number of Cattle perish'd; and the beautiful City of *Naples* was threatned with its last calamity. But we must refer the Reader to be more fully and particularly inform'd, concerning the more ancient Eruptions before *Augustus's* time, and those that have happen'd since the middle of this Age, with the several Alterations they have made on the Mountain, to those Authors who have wrote fully and learnedly on the Subject, particularly *Julius Caesar Recupitus*, and Mr. *Misson*, the latter of which tells us, that the Country about it is very Rich, and that the East-side of the Mountain it self bears abundance of good Vines; and 'tis from hence we have the famous *Greco*, *Malateste*, and *Lacryme Christi*.

Between the Suburbs of *Naples* and *Puzzoli*, there's a little Hill call'd *Pausilypus*, which has a most Charming Situation, and is all cover'd over with Houses of Pleasure, and abundance of excellent Vines, and is very well cultivated. The Ascent to it is not very difficult, and might have been easie, but out of an extravagant Humour, they have pierc'd the Mountain, and made a Hole, which is a shorter, but much more troublesome Passage. This Cave is call'd the *Grotta* of *Puzzoli*, and is in some places cut thro' the Rock, in other places thro' the Sand. It is almost a Mile long, between 30 and 40 Foot high, and about 18 broad. It has no Light but at the Ends, and thro' a little Hole in the middle, over an Oratory which is made in the Rock, by enlarging that part of the Way a little. This is an ancient Work, and *Seneca* makes mention of it. It is said to have been made by one *Cocceius*; but whether he was a Prince of that Country, or only the Undertaker, is no easie matter to tell.

A little beyond *Pausilypus* is the Lake of *Agnane*, between two little Hills. It is round, and about a Mile in Circumference. On the Banks of it are two Caves, which deserve to be taken notice of, viz. the Caves call'd the *Barb* of *St. German*, and the *Grotto del Cane*. The former of which is said to be an excellent Remedy for the Gour, and several other Distempers; for you no sooner go down 3 or 4 Stairs, than you are seiz'd with a Heat, which smells of Brimstone, and puts one into a sudden Sweat. The other is as it were the beginning of a Cave, at the



Foot of a Hill, and is 9 or 10 Foot long or deep, and 1 Broad, and 5 high. There arises out of the Earth in this *Grotto*, a thin and piercing Exhalation, without any Smoak, which seizes on the Breath and chokes one in a Moment; but 2 Foot or less from the Earth there is no danger, because the Spirits or Steams, grow thin, and are dispers'd. The Experiment has been try'd on Dogs, and other Animals, and sometimes on Malefactors; who in an instant lost their Breath, and seem'd to be quite dead, and would really have been so, if they had not immediately been put into the Lake, (which is not above 20 Pace from this *Grotto*) where in a Minute they resume their Spirits, and come to themselves again; which Effect the open and free Air has often produc'd.

*Puzgoli*, *Putcoli*, anciently a great and famous City, which *Pliny* says was formerly call'd *Dicearchia*, and *De's Minor*, according to *Festus*, because there was a Temple there Dedicated to *Apollo*, after the manner of that at *Delos*. It was Built by the *Samii*, (according to *Stephanus*) and is said to owe its Name to the word *Putor*, Stink or Rankness, because of the Sulphurous Exhalations that arise from it. It was anciently (according to *Strabo*) a Haven belonging to the *Cumani*, and that which is now call'd the Gulf of *Naples*, was then call'd *Sinus Cumannus*. It was the most famous Port on all that Coast, for the Corn and Goods brought thither from *Egypt*: And here were the Houses of Pleasure, and delightful Retreats of the *Roman* Emperors; but now it is a very inconsiderable Place, about 8 Miles from *Naples* to the West, and 3 from *Baia*. Wars, Earthquakes, Insults of the Sea, and Time, that brings all things to Destruction, having almost reduc'd it to nothing. The great quantity and variety of stately Ruins that are to be found among it, do evidently demonstrate its former Magnificence. There are the Ruins of an Amphitheatre, the *Arena* of which was 172 Foot long, and 88 broad; near to which there are other Ruins, almost quite buried, which they say was anciently a Labyrinth, but it looks like those of a Fish-pond. The Cathedral is built on the Ruins of a Temple of *Jupiter*. Betwixt the City and the Amphitheatre, are to be seen the Ruins of a Temple of *Diana*; and when the Sea is turbulent, it throws out several Marks of the Magnificence and Richness of the ancient Palaces of this place, among which are oftentimes Cornelian Stones, Agats, Jasper, Amethysts, &c. and between this and the Lake *Lucrin*, are to be seen the Remains, as they call 'em, of the famous Bridge, which *Caligula* built between *Baia* and *Puzgoli*; tho' there is better Reasons for believing that *Caligula's* Bridge was of Boats, and not of Stone or Bricks.

The Lake of *Lucrin* is about 2 Miles from *Puzgoli*, and is now but a little Pond (as *Mr. Misson* says) a Quarter of a Mile long, 100 Paces broad, and about 70 from the Sea, to which it was formerly join'd, but separated from it by Art. The Waters of it are salt, and the Oysters found in it were anciently reckon'd the best. The new Mountain, call'd *Monte Nuovo*, hath almost fill'd it up. This Mountain was brought forth in the Night, between the 19th and 20 of September, 1538. Its perpendicular Height is about 400 Fathoms, and its Circuit about 3000 Paces. On the other side of the *Lucrin* Lake stands another Mountain, call'd *Monte di Christo*, and about a large Mile from it is the Lake of *Averno*, that other Gulf of Hell, which is as big almost as that of *Agnino*. Whatever *Virgil*, *Lucretius*, *Si-*

*lius Italicus*, *Pliny*, and others have written concerning the deadly Vapours that ascended from it, and choak'd those poor Creatures, whose hard Fate it was to fly over it, it is certain (says *Mr. Misson*) that now Birds fly over it, and swim in it, without any harm.

Near to this is the Cave which they call the *Grotto* of *Sybill*, the principal Entry to which, they say, was near *Cumæ*, but is now fill'd up. It has been about a League long, 10 Foot broad, and 12 high, and does not at all seem to be the Lodging of *Sybill*, it being too large for her either to have Made or Liv'd in. The *Italian Cimerians*, who liv'd between *Baia*, and the Lake *Averno*, were notorious Robbers and Murderers, seem rather to have been both the Work-men and Inhabitants of it. See *Mr. Misson's* Discourse concerning it.

*Capua*. *Capua*, anciently a famous City in *Campania Felix*, standing in a Plain, near the River *Volturnus*, and built by the *Osii*, according to *Hannibal*. It revolted to *Hannibal* in the second *Punic* War, which so enrag'd the *Romans* against it, that they laid Siege to it, and having taken it, put 80 of their Senate to Death, made 300 of their greatest Men of their City Prisoners, and sold a vast number of the Inhabitants. It was raz'd by *Genfericus*, King of the *Vandals*, rebuilt by *Narses*, and afterwards destroy'd by the *Longobards*. From its Ruins there arose another *Capua*, upon a neighbouring Hill call'd *Pisfiscus*; but it being often almost quite destroy'd by Fire, Count *Lando*, and *Landulphus* the Bishop, remov'd it to the Place where New *Capua* now stands, about the Year 856. It is situated in a most fertile Plain, on the River *Volturno*, 2 Miles from the Ruins of the ancient City of *Capua*, 16 from *Naples* to the North, as many from *Sessa* to the South-East, and 12 from the *Tuscan* Shoar. Pope *John XIII.* made it an Arch-Bishoprick, in the Year 968. *Conrad*, Son of the Emperor *Frederick II.* did almost quite ruin it; which, with several other Calamities it hath since suffer'd, have put it into a decaying Condition, insomuch that at present (as *Mr. Misson* relates) it is a very small and inconsiderable City in all respects.

*Sorrento*, *Surrentum*, mention'd by *Pliny*, *Strabo* and *Livy*, as a Town in *Campania*, stands on the Shoar of the Gulf of *Naples*, in a pleasant Plain, on the Confines of the hither Principality, 24 Miles from *Naples* to the South, and 6 from *il Capo Campanello*, or *Promontorium Minervæ*. It is thought by some to owe its Name to the *Sirenes*, who had their Residence near this Place. The *Surrentini Colles*, (now *la Montagna Sorrento*) were famous for the excellent Wine that grew upon them.

*Nola*. *Nola*, anciently the Name of a Town and Colony in *Campania*, stands about 14 Miles from *Naples* to the East, and somewhat nearer to *Sarno* and *Acerra*. It is pretty well inhabited, and is an Episcopal See, under the Arch-Bishop of *Naples*. *Augustus Caesar* Died in or near this Place, and *St. Paulinus* its famous Bishop was Born in it.

*Aversa*, or *Adversa*. *Aversa* is a little City, situated in a delightful Plain, in the midst between *Capua* to the North, and *Naples* to the South. It is said to have been built from the Ruins of *Atella*, or *St. Arpino*, by *Robert Guiscard* Duke of *Normandy*. It was destroy'd by *Charles I.* King of both *Sicilies*, and afterwards rebuilt. The Bishoprick of *Atella* was translated hither by Pope *Leo IX.* and tho' the Bishop lives within the See of *Naples*, he is not under that Arch-Bishop's Jurisdiction.

*Gasta*,



*Gasta, Caieta*, anciently a City belonging to the *Aurunci* in *Latium Novum*, according to *Ptolemy*, is situated on a Rock, on the *Tyrrhenian* Shoar, about 40 Miles from *Naples* to the N. W. 155 from *Rome*, and 15 from the Confines of the Pope's Dominions to the East. Between this Town and *Fornia*, (now *M. J.* stood the *Villa Ciceronis*, call'd alio *Fornia*, where *Cicero* was Murder'd by an Order from *Anthonus*, by *Herennius* a Centurion, and *Papilius* a Tribune, (for whom he had once Pleaded when he was Try'd for Murder) in the 64th Year of his Age. Here are to be seen the Tomb of *Charles of Bourbon*, Countable of *France*, who was Kill'd at the Sacking of *Rome*, and an ancient *Mausoleum* of *Minutius Plancus*, now call'd the Tower of *Orlando*, or *della Guardia*. The Cathedral Church, (the Steeple of which they say, was built by the Emperor *Frederick Barbarossa* by way of Penance for his Sins) is very well worth the seeing. There is a Pillar in it which they pretend belongs to *Solomon's Temple*, and an ancient Vessel in form of a Bell, made of white Marble, which serves for a Font in the Baptistry of the Church; and is a curious piece of Work. This Place is defended by a Garrison of *Spaniards* and is an Episcopal See, under the Archbishop of *Capua*, but not subject to his Jurisdiction.

*Aquino Aquinum*, anciently the name of a Town and Colony, on the Confines of *Campania*, stands on the Rivulet *Melita*, not far from the *Liris* or *Garigliano*, and about 5 Miles from the Borders of the Pope's Dominions, and 45 from *Naples*. It was Sack'd by the Emperor *Conrad*, and is at present a place of no great Note, but an Episcopal See, and the Birth-place of *Thomas Aquinas*, that famous Schoolman.

*Sora*, *Sora* stands on the *Liris* or *Garigliano* about 16 Miles from *Aquino* to the North, 25 from *Gasta* to the North, and 55 from *Rome* to the East. It is an Episcopal See, Suffragan to none; and the Title of Duchy impropriated to the Family of *Boncompagni*, and the Birth-place of the Learned Cardinal *Cesar Baronius*.

*Cassino, Casinum*, anciently a City of the *Volsci*, in *Latium Novum*, on the Confines of *Campania*, but now lying in its Rubbish; from which hath arisen the Town of *St. Germano*, distant about 25 Miles from *Naples* to the N. W. towards *Aquila*, 8 from the River *Garigliano*, 6 from *Aquino* to the North-East, and 12 from the Confines of the Pope's Dominions. Near to this place is the Hill call'd *Monte Cassino*, upon which stands the fair Monastery of the *Benedictines*, where their Founder liv'd many Years, and where he also Died.

*Terracina, Terracina* is a little Town situated upon a rising Ground near the River *Luturno*, 26 Miles from *Gasta* to the North-East, and 22 from *Capua* to the North. It is Honour'd with the Title of a Principality, which one of the Family of *Sabellii* in *Rome* enjoy, and is an Episcopal See, under the Archbishop of *Capua*.

*Terra, Terracina Sidicinum*, is a small Town situated on a Hill, in the midst between *Sessa* to the West, and *Caserta* to the South-East, 6 Miles from either, 12 from *Capua* and 20 from *Cassino*. It is an Episcopal See, under the Archbishop of *Capua*.

The Farther *PRINCIPALITY Principatus Ugentini*, anciently Inhabited by the *Hirpini*, lies towards the *Appennine* Mountains, between the *Capitanata* to the North and East, *Campania Felix* to the West, and the higher Principality to the South. The most considerable Towns in it are

<i>Benevento</i> ,	} <i>St. Agatha</i> { <i>Monte Morone</i> .		
<i>Conza</i> ,		} <i>Treviolo</i> { <i>Monte Verde</i> .	
<i>Avellino</i> ,			} <i>Bijaccia</i> { <i>Nusco</i> .
<i>Ariano</i> ,			

*Benevento, Beneventum*, anciently a City and Colony of the *Samnites*. Bordering upon the *Hirpini*, *Pliny* says, it was formerly call'd *Mileventum*, and *Ptolemy* calls it *Venebentus*. It is said to have been built by *Diomedes*, and is distant 28 Miles from *Capua* to the East; as many from *Salerno* to the North, and 32 from *Naples* to the North East. It stands at the Conflux of the Rivers *Sabato* and *Calore*, and call'd by *Frontinus* *Concordia Colonia*. It was given to Pope *Leo IX.* by the Emperor *Henry III.* in the Year 1053. for *Bamberg*, a Town in *Germany*, and is an Archiepiscopal See. Near to this place *Manfred*, King of both the *Sicilies*, was Defeated and Kill'd by King *Charles of Anjou*, Ann. 1266. It gives name to the adjacent Country call'd by the *Italians*, *il Territorio di Benevento*: But the Duchy of *Benevento* was of much larger extent, comprehending all *Apulia*, *Sannium*, *Campania*, and a small part of the Country of the *Bruttii*. It was Erected by *Autharis* King of the *Longobards*, and lasted till about the Year 850. Consult *Camillus Peregrinus* of *Capua's* Dissertation on this Subject.

*Conza, Compsa* or *Consa*, stands on a rising Ground at the Foot of the *Appennines*, near the Springs of the River *Aufidus*, or *Ofanto*, on the Confines of the *Capitanata*, and the higher Principality, 50 Miles from *Naples*, 25 from *Salerno*, and 30 from *Benevento* to the South-East. *Baudrand* says, there are not above 70 Families, and 120 Souls in it; so small a Town is it at present, and yet an Archbishoprick.

*Avellino, Abellinum*, anciently a Town belonging to the *Hirpini*, stands about a Mile from the River *Salato*, in the midst between *Benevento* to the North, and *Salerno* to the South, 16 Miles from either, and 40 from *Naples* to the East, and 4 from *Monte Vergerne*. It is Honour'd with the Title of a Principality, Enjoy'd by the Family of *Caraccioli*, and is an Episcopal See, under the Archbishop of *Benevento*, but united to that of *Friocenti*.

*Ariano, Arianum*, stands on a steep Hill, at the Foot of the *Appennines*, 12 Miles from *Benevento* to the East, and 30 from *Salerno* to the North-East. It is a pretty near Town, subject to the Duke of *Bovino*, who is Count of this place, and an Episcopal See, under the Archbishop of *Benevento*. There is another Town of this name in the Duchy of *Ferrara*, near the Confines of the *Venetian* Dominions.

*Sant, Agatha di Goti, Agathopolis*, or *Fanum S. Agathae Gothorum*, stands near the Confines of the *Terra di Lavoro*, in the midst between *Benevento* to the East, and *Capua* to the West, 14 Miles from either, and is an Episcopal See, Suffragan to the Archbishop of *Benevento*.

*La Cedogna, Laquearia*, or *Aquilonia*, anciently a Town of the *Hirpini*, in *Sannium*, according to *Livy* and *Pliny*, but destroyed a long time since, *Cluverius* thinks this ancient name belongs rather to *Carbonara*, a little Town in this Principality, near the River *Aufidus* or *Ofanto*, in *Capitanata*, between the ancient *Alicidonia* to the West, and *Monte Verde* to the East, and as many from *Benevento*; but the former Opinion seems more probable. It is an Episcopal See under the Archbishop of *Conza*.

*Monte Marano, Mons Maranus*, is a very small Town on the Banks of the River *Calore*, about 10 Miles from *Avellino* to the East, and 6 from *Nusco*.



It is an Episcopal See, Suffragan to the Archbishop of Benevento.

*Monte Verde, Mons Viridii*, a small Town, on the Banks of the *Aufidus*, or *Ofanto*, on the Frontiers of the *Capitanata*, and *Basilicata*, between *Melfi* and *Cedogna*, 13 Miles from *Conza* to the East, and 23 from *Acerenza* to the North-West, and is an Episcopal See, Suffragan to the Archbishop of *Conza*.

*Nusco Nuscum*, is a very little Town, at the Foot of the *Appennines*, between *Monte Marano* and *St. Angelo*, 18 Miles from *Benevento* to the South-East, and 25 from *Salerno* to the North-East.

The hither *PRINCIPALITY*, *Principatus Picentini*, comprehends that part of *Italy* which the *Picentini* anciently Inhabited, and the West part of *Lucania*; and is bounded on the North with the former Principality, and part of *Campania Felix* on the West with the *Tyrrhenian Sea*, and on the South and East with the Province of *Basilicata*. It reaches from North-West to South East, for the space of 70 Miles; and the most considerable Towns in it are,

<i>Salerno.</i>	{	<i>Campagna.</i>	{	<i>Nocera.</i>
<i>Amalfi.</i>		<i>Scala.</i>		<i>Minori.</i>
<i>Acerno.</i>		<i>Policastro.</i>		<i>Capaccia.</i>
<i>Sarno.</i>		<i>Marisco Nuovo.</i>		<i>Caggiana.</i>

*Salerno, Salernum*, anciently a Town and Colony of the *Picentini*, stands on a Bay of the same name, near the Coast of the *Tyrrhenian Sea*, 24 Miles from *Naples* to the South-East, as many from *Capo Capaccio*, and 30 from *Benevento* to the South. It is the chief City of the Province, and was formerly the Title of the eldest Sons of the Kings of *Naples*. It is an Archiepiscopal See, and has a very good Harbour and strong Castle, and is pretty well Inhabited. On a Hill hard by it, there are to be seen several Vestiges of a Town, which has made some People think that *Salernum* stood formerly there. The University of this place has been famous for the study of Physick.

*Amalfi, Amalfis*, anciently a Town belonging to the *Picentini*, now a little and Ill-Inhabited one, on the Bay of *Salerno*, (the West part of which is call'd *la Costa d'Almafi*) 11 Miles from *Salerno* to the South-West, and 24 from *Naples* to the South-East. It is an Archiepiscopal See, and Honour'd with the Title of a Duchy. The use of the Scaman's Compass is said to have been first found out here, by one *Flavius Blendus*, or *Gicia*, about the Year 1300: where they lay, the Body of *St. Andrew* the Apostle is said to be.

*Acerno, Acernum*, anciently a Town belonging to the *Picentini*, is now a very small one, (tho' a Bishop's Seat, Suffragan to the Archbishop of *Salerno*) standing at the Foot of the Hills, about 15 Miles to the North-East of *Salerno*.

*Sarno, Sarnum*, stands partly on a Hill, and partly on a Plain, about 13 Miles from *Salerno* to the North, 8 from *Nola*, and 5 from *Nocera*, and the Source of the River of the same name. It is an Episcopal See, Suffragan to the Archbishop of *Salerno*, and belongs to the Family of *Barberini*.

*Campagna, Campania*, stands near the Rivers *Atro* and *Tenza*, 16 Miles from *Salerno* to the East, and 11 from the Sea-Coast. It is an Episcopal See, under the Archbishop of *Conza*, and formerly belong'd to the Prince of *Monacho*.

*Scala, Scala*, anciently call'd *Cama*, stands bout 2 Miles from *Amalfi* to the East, and as many from the Bay of *Salerno*. It seems by the Ruins and Vestiges that are still to be seen, that it was formerly a great Town, but at present it is a very inconsiderable one,

not containing above 150 Houses. It is an Episcopal See, Suffragan to the Archbishop of *Amalfi*.

*Policastro, Policastrum*, or *Palaocastrum*, is a small Town, almost deserted, and no better than a Village, on the Coast of the *Tuscan Sea*, 8 Miles from the Confines of the Province of *Basilicata*, 17 from Promontory of *Posinuro* to the East, and 55 from *Salerno* to the South-East. It is an Episcopal See, Suffragan to the Archbishop of *Salerno*.

*Marisco Nuovo, Mariscum*, is so call'd to distinguish it from *Mariso Vecchio*, in the Province of *Basilicata*; and is a pretty little Town standing on a rising Ground, at the Foot of the *Appennines*, near the Source of the River *Agri*, on the Counties of the *Basilicata*; 6 Miles from *Marisco Vecchio* to the North-West, 55 from *Salerno*, and 10 from the Gulf of *Policastro* to the North; and is an Episcopal See, Suffragan to the Archbishop of *Salerno*.

*Nocera, Nuceria*, anciently a Town of *Campania Felix*, by *Livy* call'd *Asptaterna*, and mention'd by *Silius* in his 8th Book, stands between *Sarno* and *Cava*, 10 Miles from *Amalphi* to the North, 8 from *Salerno* to the North-West, and 22 from *Naples*. It is an Episcopal See under the Archbishop of *Salerno*, and Honour'd with the Title of a Duchy, enjoy'd by the Family of *Barberini*. There is another Town of this name in *Ombria*, within the Pope's Dominions.

*Capaccio, Caput-aqueum*, a Town of no great Note, which sprung from the Ruins of the ancient *Pestum*, or *Pesti*; which was Raz'd by the *Salacens*, Anno. 930. and stood 3 Miles from *Capaccio*, which formerly stood on a Neighbouring Hill, and was defended by a strong Castle, before it was destroy'd by the Emperor *Friederick*, Ann. 1249. but was afterwards built on a Plain at the Foot of the same Hill, and lies now in Ruins, about 22 Miles from *Salerno* to the South, and retains the Title of a Bishoprick under the Archbishop of *Salerno*.

The Province of *BASILICATA*, which formerly comprehended the greater and better part of *Lucania*, is bounded on the North with the Province of *Bari*, and a part of *Otranto*; on the East with the Bay of *Taranto*; on the West with the 2 Principalities, and on the South, with the hither *Calabria*: and is a Barren Country, and no ways improv'd or well Inhabited. The Towns of any note in it are,

<i>Acerenza.</i>	{	<i>Melfi.</i>
<i>Potenza.</i>		<i>Rapolla.</i>
<i>Tricarico.</i>		<i>Venosa.</i>
<i>Lavello.</i>		

*Acerenza*, or *Cirenza, Acherontia*, or *Acherontus*, is the chief Town of *Basilicata*, and stands at the Foot of the *Appennines*, 10 Miles from *Venosa* to the South-East, and 28 from *Matera*. It is a little Town, and in a decaying condition, but has the Title of an Archbishoprick, to which the See of *Venosa* is united.

*Potenza, Potentia*, stands at the Foot of the *Appennines*, about 15 Miles from *Acerenza* to the South-West, and as many from *Marisco Nuovo* to the South: and is an Episcopal See under the Archbishop of *Acerenza*.

*Lavello, Lavellum*, or *Labellum*, is a little Town on the Confines of the *Capitanata*, about 3 Miles from the River *Aufidus*, or *Ofanto*, between *Melfi* to the West, and *Minervino* to the East, and 20 from *Acerenza* to the North-West. It is Subject to the Prince of *Minervino*, and an Episcopal See, under the Archbishop of *Bari*; and there are several pieces of Antiquity to be seen about it.



*Melfi*, *Melfis*, stands upon an uneven Height, on the Rivulet *Melfa*, on the Confines of the *Capitana*, and the farther Principality ; 4 Miles from the River *Otento*, 65 from *Naples* to the East, and 40 from *Policastro*. It is an Episcopal See, under the Archbishop of *Acerenza*, and has been united with the See of *Rapolla*, since the Year 1528. It is a pretty large and well-Inhabited Town, and is honoured with the Title of a Principality, enjoy'd by the Family of *Doria*.

*Rapolla*, *Rapolla*, is a little Town, almost desolate, about a Mile from *Melfi* to the East, 20 from *Conza* to the East, and 50 from *Policastro* to the North. It is an Episcopal See, Suffragan to the Archbishop of *Siponto* ; but was united to the See of *Melfi*, by Pope *Clement VII.* in the Year 1528.

**CALABRIA**, which was otherwise call'd *Mesapia*, was quite different from the Country that bears that name now. It was bounded on the North and East with the *Adriatick* Sea, on the South with the *Salernini*, and on the West with *Apulia* *Peuentia*. The Country that bears that name now, lies towards the South, overagainst *Sicily*, and is that part of *Magna Græcia* which the *Brutii* anciently Possess'd. It hath the Title of a Duchy, which formerly the Eldest Son of the King of *Naples* used to have : And is Bounded with the Province of *Basilicata* on the North, with the *Ionian* Sea on the East, the *Tyrrhenian* Sea on the West, and on the South with that of *Sicily* ; and sometime comprehended the Country of *Basilicata*. Also *Calabria* strictly taken, is divided into the hither and further *Calabria*. The former of which lies most Northerly, and comprehends these Towns, viz.

<i>Cosenza</i> .	}	<i>Amantea</i> .
<i>Rossano</i> .		<i>Martorano</i> .
<i>Cassano</i> .		<i>Cariati</i> .
<i>Bisignano</i> .		<i>Umbriatico</i> .
<i>Strongoli</i> .		<i>Cirifano</i> .

*Cosenza*, *Consentina*, anciently a City belonging to the *Brutii*, according to *Pliny*, *Strabo*, and others, stands on a Plain near the River *Grati*, where the *Vasento* falls into it, about 12 Miles from the Shoar of the *Tuscan* Sea to the East, 40 from the *Ionian* Sea, 60 from *Policastro*, and 150 from *Naples* to the South-East. It is the chief Town of the hither *Calabria*, and an Archbishoprick. *Isabel* of *Aragon*, *Philip* the Hardy's Queen, died here, in the Year, 1270. As did also *Alaricus*, King of the *Visigoths*.

*Rossano*, *Roscianum*, or *Ruscianum*, is a pretty large and well-Inhabited Town, built on a Hill, surrounded almost with high Rocks, about 3 Miles from the Gulf of *Taranto*, 16 from that of *Bisignano*, 35 from *Cosenza* to the North-East, and 12 from the Ruins of the ancient *Tburium*. It has the Title of a Principality, and is an Archiepiscopal See.

*Cassano*, *Cassenum*, or *Cosanum*, is a little Town, near the River *Bano*, about 10 Miles from the *Apennine* Mountains, as many from the Gulph of *Taranto*, and 20 from *Rossano* to the North. It is an Episcopal See, under the Arch-Bishop of *Cosenza*.

*Bisignano*, *Besidia*, or *Desidia*, anciently a Town belonging to the *Brutii*, stands on a Hill, and is defended by a Castle, distant 15 Miles from *Rossano* to the West, as many from the Coast of the *Tuscan* Sea, and 36 from *Cosenza* to the North. It has the Title of a Principality, belonging to the Family of *San Severino*, and is an Episcopal See, under the Archbishop of *Rossano*, but exempted from his Jurisdiction.

*Amantea*, *Amantia*, or *Adamantia*, anciently a City of the *Brutii*, stands on the Coast of the *Tuscan* Sea, near the *Golpho di S. Euphemia*, and 15 Miles from *Cosenza* to the South-west. It belongs to the Prince of *Bisignano*, and was once a Bishoprick under the Archbishop of *Regio*.

The Farther **CALABRIA**, *Calabria ulterior*, makes up the South-part of the Duchy, and is wash'd by the Sea on the East, South and West. There are few Towns of any Note in it ; but the most considerable are these,

<i>Regio</i> .	}	<i>Taverno</i> .	}	<i>Melito</i> .
<i>S. Severina</i> .		<i>Nicastro</i> .		<i>Oppido</i> .
<i>Cotrone</i> .		<i>Monte</i> .		<i>Boia</i> .
<i>Isola</i> .		<i>Leone</i> .		<i>Givita</i> .
<i>Belcastro</i> .		<i>Seminara</i> .		
<i>Nicotera</i> .		<i>Squillaci</i> .		

*Rhegio*, *Rhegio Julium*, anciently a City belonging to the *Brutii*, stands overagainst *Sicily*, on the opposite Coast of the *Pharo* of *Messina*, 28 Miles from the *Zephyrium Promontorium*, now *Tarfu*, and about 90 from *Cosenza* to the South. It is said to have been built by the *Chalcidenses*, and is at present pretty well Inhabited, considering how oft it has been Pillag'd by the *Turks*.

*San Severina*, *Siberena*, a small, but well-built City, and the See of an Archbishop, stands on the Confines of the hither *Calabria*, near the Coast of the *Ionian* Sea, 40 Miles South-East from *Rossano*, and as many East from *Cosenza*.

*Cotrone*, *Cotron*, anciently a Town in *Magna Græcia*, belonging to the *Brutii*, and more lately call'd *Crotona*, stands on the Mouth of the *Esaro*, on the Coast of the *Ionian* Sea, about 6 Miles from the Promontory, call'd *Capo della Colonne*, to the North, and 50 from *Cosenza* to the East. It is said to have been Built by *Miscellus*. 80 Years after the Building of *Rome*, and was anciently a great City, 12 Miles in compass (as *Baudrand* from *Livy* relates) the River running through the middle of it. The best Wrestlers and Boxers used to be brought from this Place, among whom *Milo* call'd from hence *Crotoniates*, who was very Famous. The Emperor *Charles V.* Built a Fort, and put a good Garrison in it, for a Guard to that Coast ; but this place is now dwindled into a little Town, and but indifferently Inhabited, and nothing like what it was formerly.

*Nicotera* *Nicotera* is a little Town, which sprung from the Ruins of *Medama* or *Rossano*, about 10 Miles from the Mouth of the River *Marro* to the North, and as many from *Tropea*. It stands on a Hill, and was almost reduc'd to Rubbish by an Earthquake, in the Year 1638. but still retains the Title of a Bishoprick, Suffragan to the Archbishop of *Regio*.

*Taverno*, *Taberna*, stands at the Foot of the *Apennines*, near the Ruins of the *Trifchene*, from which it took its rise, about 8 Miles from *Catanzaro* to the North, 15 from *Squillaci*, 37 from *Rossano*, and 14 from *Nicastro* to the East. It was formerly an Episcopal See, under the Archbishop of *Regio*, but in the Year 1122, Pope *Calistus* the II<sup>d</sup>. remov'd it to *Catanzaro*.

*Squillaci*, *Scyllacum*, anciently a Town and Colony in *Magna Græcia*, according to *Mela* and *Solinus*, stands on a Hill, near the Rivulet *Favelone*, about 3 Miles from the Coast of the *Ionian* Sea, 18 from that of the *Tyrrhenian*, 75 from *Regio* to the North, 45 from *Palepoli*, or the Ruins of the ancient *Locri*, and 36 from *Cosenza*. It is at present a little ill Inhabited.



bited town, consisting of about 300 Houses, but is Honour'd with the Title of a Principality, and is an Episcopal See under the Archbishop of *Regio*.

*Bova*, *Bova*, anciently a Town belonging to the *Buthi*, stands on a very high Hill, surrounded with Rocks, about 5 Miles from the Shoar, 7 from the *Cap di Spartivento*, anciently call'd *Herculis Promontorium* to the West, and 22 from *Regio*. It is an Episcopal See under the Archbishop of *Regio*.

Having now pass'd *Naples* from West to East on the South side, we shall return back to view the Provinces on the *Adriatick* Coast, beginning in the West, as before.

*ABRUZZO*, *Aprutium*, taken in a large Sense, comprehends the County of *Molise* also, and was formerly Inhabited by the *Frentani*, *Marrucini*, *Marsi*, *Peligni*, *Vestini*, and a great part of the *Samnites*; but taken strictly it contains only the farther and hither *Abruzzo*.

The farther *ABRUZZO*, *Aprutium ulterius*, where the *Marsi Vestini*, and part of the *Picentini* anciently dwelt, is bounded on the North and West with the Pope's Dominions; on the South with the *Campagna di Roma*, and *Terra di Lavarò*, on the East with the *Adriatick* Sea, and the hither *Abruzzo*, and is almost divided in two by the *Appennines*. The Towns in it of greatest note are,

*Aquila*. } *Teramo*.  
*Atri*. } *Civit di penna*.

*Aquila*. *Aquila*, the chief Town of this Country, stands near the River *Pescara*, about 60 Miles from *Rome* to the North-East, 70 from *Ancona* to the South, and 90 from *Naples* to the North-West. It was either Built or Enlarged by the *Longobards*, from the Ruins of *Amiternum* and *Forconium*, and Fortified by the Emperor *Frederick II*. It is an Episcopal See, under the Archbishop of *Chieti*; Pope *Alexander IV*. having Translated the See of *Forconium* hither, in the Year 1257.

*Atri*. *Atria*, *Adria*, or *Hadria*, the Birth-place of the Emperor *Hadrian*, and anciently a Town and Colony of *Picenum*, is situated on a Hill, about 4 Miles from the *Adriatick* Sea, and 30 from *Aquila* to the North-East. It is Honour'd with the Title of a Principality, belonging to the Family of *Aquaviva*, and is an Episcopal See, immediately subject to that of *Rome*. Erected by Pope *Innocent IV*. Ann. 1252.

*Teramo*, *Interamnium*, anciently a Town belonging to the *Samnites*, stands near the River *Trontino*, 20 from *Aquila* to the North, and 14 from the *Adriatick* Sea to the West. It is an Episcopal See, under the Archbishop of *Chieti*.

*Civita di penna*, *Pinna*, anciently a Town of the *Vestini*, is situated 20 Miles from *Aquila* to the East, and 10 from the *Adriatick* Sea to the South. It belongs to the Duke of *Parma*, and is an Episcopal See under the Archbishop of *Chieti*, and was united with the See of *Atri*, by *Innocent IV*. 1252.

The Hither *ABRUZZO*, *Aprutium Citerius*, anciently Inhabited by the *Frentani*, *Marucini*, and *Peligni*, is Bounded on the North with the *Adriatick* Sea, on the East with the Province of *Capitanata*, on the South with the County of *Molise*, and part of the *Terra di Lavarò*, and on the West divided with the farther *Abruzzo*, by the River *Pescara*. The Towns of greatest Note in it are,

*Chieti*, or *Civita di* } *Sulmona*.  
*Chieti*. } *Pescarra*.  
*Lanciano*. } *Ortona*.

*Civita di Chieti*, *Teatea*, or *Theatea*, anciently the chief City of the *Marrucini*, according to *Strabo* and *Ptolomy*, is now the chief Town of this Province, and the Residence of the Governor. It is large and well Inhabited, and situated on a Hill, near the River *Pescara*, on the Confines of the farther *Abruzzo*, in the midst between *Lanciano* to the South-East, and *Atri* to the North-West, 14 Miles from either, 100 Miles from *Rome* to the North-east, and 25 from *Aquila* to the East, and as much from the *Adriatick* Sea. The Order of the *Theatines* have their Names from hence; for *John Peter Canassa*, Archbishop of this place, afterwards Pope *Paul IV*. was their chief Founder. *Pliny* relates *l. 2. ch. 83*, that about the latter end of *Nero's* Reign, there happen'd a Prodigy near this Place; for a whole Olive-Garden is said to have risen up and plac'd itself on the other side of a High-way, the Fields on the other side shifting to the Place where the Garden had been.

*Lanciano Anxanum*, anciently the Town belonging to the *Frentani*, according to *Ptolomy*, is a large well-Inhabited Town, and famous for its Fairs, to which People come from both sides of the *Adriatick*. It is distant a few Miles from the *Adriatick* Sea, 60 from *Naples* to the North, and 90 from *Rome* to the North-East, and has the Title of an Archbishoprick, since the Year 1562.

*Sulmona*, *Sulmo*, anciently the chief City of the *Peligni*, according to *Livy* and *Strabo*, stands on a Plain that is surrounded with Mountains, between two Rivulets, that rise in the *Appennines*, about 8 Miles from the Confines of the farther *Abruzzo*, to the East, and 26 from *Aquila* to the South-East. It has the Title of a Principality, belonging to the Family of *Borghese*; and is an Episcopal See, within the Archbishoprick of *Chieti*, but exempted from that Jurisdiction. It was the Birth-place of the Poet *Ovid*, who makes mention of it in his *lib. 2. Amor.* as *Silius* does *lib. 8*.

*Pescara*, *Alaternum*, anciently a City of the *Marrucini*, stands on the Confines of the farther *Abruzzo*, at the mouth of a River of the same name, 16 Miles from *Lanciano* to the North-West, 12 from *Civita di Penna*, to the East, and 8 from *Civita di Chieti* to the North. It is a Fortified Town, with a Castle, and is the Title of a Marquis, to whom it belongs.

*Ortona*. *Ortona*, anciently a Town belonging to the *Frentani*, in *Samnium*, according to *Pliny*, is call'd *Ortona a Mare*, to distinguish it from another place in that Province, call'd *Ortona di Marsi*. It is distant about 8 Miles from *Lanciano* to the North, and has a very safe Harbour, but is thinly Inhabited, and is an Episcopal See, under the Archbishop of *Chieti*.

The County of *MOLISE*, *Molifinus Comitatus*, anciently Inhabited by a part of the *Samnites*, is Bounded with the hither *Abruzzo* on the North, the *Capitanata* on the East, and the *Terra di Lavarò* on the West, and comprehends these Towns,

*Bolano*. } *Trivento*.  
*Molise*. } *Ifernja*.

*Bolano*, *Boianum*, or *Bovianum*, a Town and Colony, anciently of the *Samnites*, according to *Strabo*, stands at the Foot of the *Appennines*, on the River *Biferno*, 23 Miles from *Capua* to the North, and 40 from *Sora* to the East. It is a little Town, and thinly Inhabited, but has the Title of a Bishoprick, under the Archbishop of *Benevento*.



*Melfe, Melfia*, is a place of some Strength, but in a decaying condition, distant 10 Miles from *Belluno* to the North.

*Tricento, Tricentinum*, is a very little Town, standing on the River *Tigne*, upon a Hill, 17 Miles from *Belluno* to the North, and 20 from the *Adriatick* Sea. It is an Episcopal See, under the Archbishop of *Benevento*.

*Iernia, or Sernia, Esernia*, anciently a Town and Colony in *Samnium*, now a pretty large and well Inhabited one, stands 4 Miles from the River *Volturno*, and 30 Miles from *Sora* to the East, and as many from *Capua* to the North; and is an Episcopal See, under the Archbishop of *Capua*.

The Province of *CAPITANATA*, formerly call'd *Apulia Daunia*, is Bounded on the North and East with the *Adriatick*, on the West with the Country of *Melfe*, and on the South with the hither Principality. The Country is very Fertile and well Watered, and comprehends these Towns,

<i>Manfredonia.</i>	}	{	<i>Ascoli.</i>	}	{	<i>Toronzuela.</i>
<i>Monte S. Angelo</i>			<i>Lucera.</i>			<i>Vulturata.</i>
<i>Tricento.</i>			<i>Vieste.</i>			

*Manfredonia, Manfredonia*, or *Sipontum Novum*, because it stands near the Ruins of the ancient *Sipontum* which was Raz'd by the *Saracens*, in the time of *Charles the Great*, and whose Ruins are still call'd *Siponto*. It is Seated at the bottom of a Bay of the *Adriatick* Sea, 75 Miles North-East from *Naples*, 50 North from *Cirence*, and 85 from *Taranto* to the West. It has the Title of an Archbishoprick, to which it succeeded in the place of *Sipontum*.

*Monte S. Angelo*, so call'd from the Apparition of *Michael* the Arch-angel. Some give this as a general name, to the whole *Mons Garganus*, which (as *Baudrand* says) makes the greater part of the *Capitanata*, and is about 50 Miles in Circumference, taking in that part of *Apulia* which juts out into the *Adriatick* Sea, between the Bays of *Siponto* and *Rodi*. But the Town of *Monte S. Angelo* stands on Mount *Gargano*, about 7 Miles from *Manfredonia* to the N.

*Treia, Treia*, formerly call'd *Æce, Æcana* and *Ecana*, is a little Town, with the Title of a Bishoprick, under the Archbishop of *Benevento*, but exempted from his Jurisdiction at the Foot of the *Appennines*, 25 Miles from *Benevento* to the East, and somewhat more from *Manfredonia* to the West. It was Built in the Year 1008. and has the Title of a Principality.

*Ascoli, Asculum, Apulum*, stands on the Confines of the farther Principality at the Foot of the *Appennines*, 35 Miles from *Benevento* to the East, 16 from *Conza* to the North-East, and 30 from *Manfredonia* to the South. The old Town was laid in Rubbish by an Earthquake, in the Year 1399. but the Inhabitants Built the new one in the Year 1410. not far from the former. It is an Episcopal See, Suffragan to the Archbishop of *Benevento*.

The Province of *BARI, Barianus Ager*, a great part of the Country formerly call'd *Apulia Peucetia*, is Bounded on the North and East with the *Adriatick* Sea, on the West with the *Capitanata*, from which it is divided by the River *Ofanto*, on the South with the Province of *Basilicata*, and the Province of *Otranto*; comprehends these Towns.

<i>Bari.</i>	}	{	<i>Conversano.</i>	}	{	<i>Ruvo.</i>
<i>Andria.</i>			<i>Graviano.</i>			<i>Trani.</i>
<i>Bitonto.</i>			<i>Melfetto.</i>			<i>Biseglia.</i>
<i>Monopoli.</i>			<i>Polignano.</i>			<i>Canosa.</i>

*Bari, Barium, Baris Vetus*, stands on the *Adriatick* Sea, in the midst between *Polignano* to the East, and *Trani* to the West, 20 Miles from either, 35 from *Manfredonia*, and 120 from *Naples* to the East, and (according to *Festus*) has its name from *Bari*, a little Island near *Brindisi*. It has the Title of an Archbishoprick.

*Andria, Andria*, is a pretty large and well-inhabited Town, Situated in a Plain, 4 Miles from *Belluno*, 6 from *Trani*, and 25 from *Bari* to the West. It is an Episcopal See, under the Archbishop of *Trani*, but a very little one, for it reaches no farther than the Town.

*Monopoli, Monopolis*, is a little but finely Built Town, 20 Miles from *Bari* to the East, 25 from *Taranto* to the North, and 40 from *Brindisi* to the North-West. It stands on the Gulf of *Venice*, and is an Episcopal See under the Archbishop of *Bari*, but has little or nothing under its Jurisdiction without the Town.

*Trani, Tranium*, stands on the Coast of the *Adriatick*, in a fruitful Country, about 6 Miles from *Andria*, and 24 from *Bari* to the West. The Inhabitants pretend that it was anciently call'd *Trajanum*, from the Emperor *Trajan*, who they say, Built it. It is an Archiepiscopal See, and once had a very good Harbour, but now 'tis fill'd up with Stones.

The Province of *OTRANTO, Hydruntina Provincia*, where anciently the *Salentini* and *Calabri* dwelt, is almost in form of a *Peninsula*, and is Bounded with the *Adriatick* Sea on the East, and partly on the North, the Gulf of *Taranto* on the South, the Province of *Bari* on the North, and *Basilicata* on the West. The most considerable Towns in it are,

<i>Otranto.</i>	}	{	<i>Castellaneta.</i>	}	{	<i>Matera.</i>
<i>Brindisi.</i>			<i>Gallipoli.</i>			<i>Nardo.</i>
<i>Lecce.</i>			<i>Ostuni.</i>			<i>Taranto.</i>

*Otranto, Hydruntum*, anciently a City Inhabited by the *Calabri*, stands on the *Adriatick* Sea, and is a Place of Strength with a Castle, which *Mahomet II.* Emperor of the *Turks*, Took and Pillag'd in the Year 1480. but was retaken by the Christians, and is possess'd by the *Spaniards*. It was formerly the chief City of this Province, but is in a decaying state. It stands on the Sea-shore, on the extreme South part of *Italy*, 40 Miles from *Brindisi* to the South, 20 from *Lecce*, 24 from *Gallipoli* to the East, about 20 Leagues from the nearest part of the Coast of *Epirus*, and 19 from *Capo d' S. Maria di Leuca* to the North, and has the Title of an Archbishoprick.

*Brindisi, Brindisium*, anciently a City of the *Salentini*, call'd otherwise *Brendisium*, by *Ptolemy*, and *Brentesium* by *Stephanus*, is a Town with a large and safe Harbour, on the *Adriatick* Sea, 36 Miles from *Taranto* to the East, 40 from *Otranto* to the North, and 64 from *Bari* to the East. It is said to have been Built by the *Æoli, Diomedes's* Companions; and here *Cæsar Octavius*, and *M. Antonius* lay Encamp'd, the latter being nearer the Town, because he had invested it: and *Servilius* designing to go over from hence to *Cæsar*, with a Body of 7000 Horse, was surpris'd by *Antonius* with a handful, and routed near (*Uria*) before they were quite awake. *Cæsar* in the 1st Book of his Commentaries, gives a description of the Harbour of this Place.

*Lecce, Aletium*, and *Litium* by latter Writers, anciently a Town belonging to the *Salentini*, is a large and well inhabited City, and one of the most Populous in all the Kingdom of *Naples*, the City of that name



same only excepted. It stands between *Brindisi* to the North, and *Otranto* to the South, at the distance of 2 Miles from either, 7 from the *Adriatick* Sea to the West, 15 from *Nardo*, 50 from *Taranto*. It is an Episcopal See, under the Archbishop of *Otranto*.

*Callipoli*, *Gallipolis*, or *Callipolis*, anciently belonging to the *Salentini*, stands on a Rock in the Gulf of *Taranto*, and tho' it be little, is a very strong and well inhabited Place; being surrounded by the Sea, except at one Place where it is joyn'd to the Land by a Bridge, which is defended by a strong Fort; which with its Situation makes it almost impregnable. It is distant 25 Miles from *Otranto* to the West, 35 from *Taranto* to the South-East, and 24 from the Promontory call'd *Capo di S. Marcadi Leuca*, and is an Episcopal See, under the Archbishop of *Otranto*, but the Bounds of the Diocess, are the same with those of the City.

*Taranto*, *Tarentum*, anciently a City of the *Salentini*, call'd *Taras* by *Strabo*, and *Oebalia* by *Virgil*. It was Built by the *Lacedemonians*, and was once the Head of a Republick, which made War against

the *Romans*, in the Year of their City, 472. After *Pyrrhus*, whom the *Tarentines* had invok'd over to their Assistance, was defeated, the *Romans* became Masters of it. In the Punick War, *Hannibal* Took it, but it was Retaken by *Q. Fabius Maximus*, who brought away their famous *Colossus* of *Hercules*, made of Brass, and the Workmanship of *Lysippus* and set it up in the Capitol at *Rome*. In the Year of the City, 631. *Tarentum* was (according to *Velleius*) made a *Roman* Colony. It is now a little Town, but well Inhabited, and defended by a Fort. in which there are a strong Garrison of *Spaniards*. It is Situated in a Peninsula, in the bottom of the Gulf of *Taranto*, near the Mouth of the River *Tara*, 32 Miles from *Brindisi* to the West, 20 from the Ruins of *Metapontus*, 50 from *Promentrium Japygium*, now *il Capo di S. Maria di Leuca* to the West, and 35 from *Matera* to the East. It has the Title of an Archbishoprick, and had once a very large Harbour, but it is now so stopp'd up with great Stones, and spoil'd, that none but very small Vessels can come into it.

## C H A P. XIV.

### The Islands on the Coast of I T A L Y.

THESE Islands, since they belong to some State or another in the Continent of *Italy*, cannot be more properly plac'd than after the description of that Country. We shall Treat of them according to their Dignity, and in their particular descriptions inform the Reader, in whose Possession they are at present. The number and order of them are to be seen in this short Table.

<i>Sicily</i> .	}	{	The Isles of <i>Lapari</i> .	}	{	<i>Capri</i> .
<i>Sardinia</i> .			The Isles about <i>Sardinia</i> .			<i>Ischia</i> .
<i>Cosica</i> .			The Isle of <i>Elbe</i> , &c.			<i>Ponza</i> .

#### The Island of SICILY.

*SICILY*, is the Largest and most Fertile Island in the *Mediterranean* Sea; and if we will believe the ancient accounts of it, once a part of the Continent of *Italy*. We shall not trouble the Reader with a tedious Enquiry into the Etymology of its Name, only putting him in mind that it was call'd *Sicilia* from the *Siculi*, a People in *Italy*, and *Sicania*, from a King call'd *Sicanus*, who before the time of the *Troian* War, Landed there with a great Body of *Iberians* or *Spaniards*, and call'd both the Island and People after his own Name. It has also been call'd *Trinacria* and *Triquetra*, from its Triangular Form. It lies between 35 Deg. 40 Min. and 38 Deg. 30 Min. Latitude, and 35 and 39 Longitude. Its greatest Length (according to *Cluverius*) between *Pelorum*, or the *Capo di Faro*, and *Libæum*, or the *Capo Boco*, is 200 Miles; its Breadth from *Pachinum*, or *il Capo Pessaro* to the Town *Cephalidis*, or *Cefalus*, 180. and its Circuit 600.

The Air of *Sicily* is very good, and Healthful, and the Soil so Fertile, that this Island hath been deservedly call'd, the Store-house of *Italy*; for it abounds in Corn, Wine, Fruits, Sugar, Honey, Wax, Oyl, Saffron, and Silk. It affords also some Mines of Gold, Silver, Iron and other Metals; Salt Agates,

*Emeralds*, *Jasper*, *Porphyry*, &c. and on the Coasts towards *Trapano*, the Inhabitants find a good deal of excellent Coral.

The first Inhabitants of this Island (according to *Cluverius*) were the *Cyclopes* and *Lestrigones*, Barbarous and Savage People. After these came the *Iberi* from *Spain*, under the Conduct of *Sicanus*, as we said before. Next came the *Siculi* from *Sicily* in *Italy*. After these came the *Phenices* from *Tyre* and *Sidon*, and Possess'd themselves on the Coast of this Island; but the *Grecians* drove these away, and introduc'd their own Language.

The Form of Government that was first used here was Monarchical; which continued till the *Carthaginians* had made themselves Masters of the greatest part of the Island. But the *Romans* having Defeated these, became Masters of it, and reduc'd it into the Form of a Province, which was the first they ever made. In the time of the Emperor *Justinian*, the *Vandals* from *Africk*, took Possession of it; but *Belisarius*, General of that Emperor's Forces, having driven them out, the *Saracens* afterwards Invaded it. At last *Tancred* the *Norman* Expell'd them, and his Grandchild *Roger* was declar'd King of *Apulia* and *Sicily*. Afterwards the *Suavi* from *Germany* became Masters of *Sicily*; but were Expell'd by the *French*; who being all cut off, at the famous *Sicilian Vespers*, the Island fell first into the hands of the Kings of *Aragon*, and at last into those of the Kings of *Castile*.

This Island is govern'd by a Viceroy, sent from the King of *Spain*, and the yearly Revenue Paid to His Catholick Majesty, is said to be about Four Millions of Crowns; the Inhabitants (as *Puffendorf* observes) are an ill sort of People, who must be kept under, according to the old Proverb, *Insulani quidem mali, Siculi autem pessimi*.

*Sicily* has been variously divided at different times, but is now commonly divided into 3 Parts or Provinces call'd Valleys, as you may see in the following Table.

Sicily



## Sicily divided into Three Parts or Provinces

I.	Palermo.	II.	Messina.	III.	Noto.
	Montreal.		Catania.		Syracuse.
Valley of Ma- zara, in which are these Cities and Towns.	Mazara.	Valley of De- meni, in which are these Cities and Towns.	Cefalu.	Valley of Noto, in which are these Cities and Towns.	Augusta.
	Gergenti.		Pati.		Iarratana.
	Palymita.		S. Marco		Castro Giovanni.
	Marsalla.		Melazzo.		Calata Xibeta.
	Castella Mare.		Palizzzi.		Modica.
	Catalasimi.		Termini.		Birtera.
	S. Vito.		Centorvi.		Terra Nuova.
	Trapani.		Nicesia.		Alicata.
	Xacca.		Randazzo.		Calcata Giorni.
	Castel Veterano.				Ragusa.
	Salemi.				Mazarino.

*Palermo*, *Panormum*, or *Panormus*, is a large and well built City, on the North Coast of the Island, distant about 60 Miles from the Promontory, anciently call'd *Lilybæum Promontorium*, now *il Capo Bæo* to the North-East, 4 from *Mont Real*, 140 from *Messina* to the West, and 150 from the Promontory, now call'd *Capo di Faro*, anciently *Pelorum Promontorium*. It was built by the *Phanicians*, about the time of the *Grecians* coming into *Sicily*, and made the Metropolis of the Island, in the time of *Roger*, Count or Earl of *Sicily*; and is now the ordinary Residence of the *Spanish* Viceroy. It has a large and safe Harbour, and is defended by a strong Castle, call'd *Castel a Mare*, with a Garrison of *Spaniards*. It is an Archiepiscopal See, and near it the *Spaniards* and *Dutch* were soundly beat by the *French*, in the Year 1676.

*Montreal*. *Mons Regalis*, is a little Town standing on a Hill, about 4 Miles from *Palermo*, where *William II.* King of *Sicily*, built a magnificent Church, and endow'd it with large Revenues, and procured to it the Title of an Archbishoprick, from *Pope Lucius III.* in the Year 1182.

*Mazara* or *Mazera*. *Mazara* stands on the South-side of the Island, at the Mouth of a River of the same Name, with a large, safe and well defended Harbour, in the midst almost between *Termini* to the East, and the *Capo Bæo* to the West, 24 Miles from *Trepani* to the South-East, and 55 from *Gergenti* to the West. It was formerly the Residence of the *Saracen* Princes, and is an Episcopal See, under the Archbishop of *Palermo*.

*Gergenti*, *Agrigentum*, call'd *Agragas* by the *Grecians*, was anciently the greatest and richest City in all this Island; and no less Famous for its Hospitality to Strangers, than 'twas Infamous for its Luxury. It was built by the *Geiensés*, near the River *Agragas*, now call'd (according to *Baudrand*) *il Fiume di S. Biagio*, or *Gergenti*. It stands about 3 Miles from the Sea, 55 from *Palermo* to the South, 64 from the *Capo Bæo* to the East, and 72 from the *Capo Pessaro*, or *Pachynum*. It was anciently 10 Miles in Compass, but is now much decay'd. On the North-side it is defended by a strong Fort, and there is but one Passage into it. It was formerly remarkable for the Cruelty of the bloody *Phalaris*, who us'd to torment People in his Brazen Bull, which *Perillus* made; and had the first Experiment of it try'd upon himself. It is an Episcopal See under the Archbishop of *Palermo*.

*Marsalla*, *Marsala*, stands on the West-side of the Island, on the Promontory, call'd *il Capo Bæo*, and has risen from the Ruins of the Town of *Lilybæum*.

It was so call'd by the *Saracens*, and had once an excellent Harbour, before *Charles V.* caus'd the Mouth of it to be stop'd up with great Stones, lest the *Africans* should make use of it.

*Trapano*, *Drepanum*, anciently a famous Mart-Town, with an excellent Harbour, on the West-side of the Island, about 15 Miles from *Lilybæum Promontorium* to the North, 22 from *Mazara*, and 55 from *Palermo* to the South-West, near the Foot of the Mountain *Eryx*, now *il Monte di Trapano*, where there was a Temple of *Venus*, and *Anchises's* Burial-place. It was well fortified by *Hamilcar*, *Hanibal's* Father, who kept it a considerable time, and made it the Seat of War against the *Romans*, till by an Order from *Carthage*, he made a Peace with *Lutarius*.

*Messina*, *Messana*, *Mesene* or *Messane*, anciently call'd *Zanche*, is a large and fine City, and the greatest Mart-Town in all the *Mediterranean* Sea, having a very large and safe Harbour, about 6 Miles from the Coast of the farther *Calabria* to the West. 12 from *Regio*, about 140 from *Palermo*, 12 from the *Capo di Faro* to the South, and 60 from *Catania*. The private Houses in it are very fine, and the public Buildings magnificent, especially the Viceroy's Palace, and the Arsenal, which is very well furnish'd with Arms and Ammunition. It has 4 Suburbs, call'd *Zacra*, *San Filippo*, *San Deo*, and *Porta Imperial*, which lie stretch'd along the Shoar for a great way; and its Situation between the Mountains and the Sea, makes it a very long City. The Emperor *Charles V.* fortified it with 14 Bastions, and 4 Forts, in the Year 1535. whereof one is within the Town, the rest without for the Defence of the Port. This City was recover'd from the *Saracens* by *Roger* the *Norman*, in the Year 1060. and afterwards govern'd by the Kings of *Sicily*, now by a *Spanish* Officer, whom they call *il Stradigo*. But being mightily gall'd by the *Spanish* Yoke, it was provok'd to shake it off, on the 7th of July, 1674. and maintain'd its Liberty, with the Assistance of the *French*, till the 16th of March, 1678. when it willingly return'd to its former Allegiance. Its chief Trade consists in Silk, with which it furnishes a great part of *Europe*; and it is an Archiepiscopal See.

*Catania*, *Catana*, or *Catina*, stands on the Coast of the *Ionian* Sea, on a Gulf of the same Name, near the little River *Judicello*, 40 Miles from *Syracuse* to the North, and 50 from *Messina*. It was built by the *Chalcidenses*, as *Eusebius* relates, and was fortified by *Charles V.* It is the great Unhappiness of this Town, that it stands too near Mount *Ætna*, which is now call'd *il Mont Gibello*, whose fiery Streams have



have often prov'd fatal to the neighbouring Country. This Mountain is reckon'd 9 Miles high, but not of perpendicular Height, and in Compass 50. The South-side of it is almost cover'd over with Vines, and the North-side with other Trees and Shrubs, and no part of it is Barren and Unmanur'd, except the Top. The most considerable Eruptions that have happen'd, were in the Years 1169. 1329. 1408. 1444. 1447. 1536. 1554. by the last of which, *Catania* and the adjacent Country were well nigh destroy'd, as they were also in the Year 1669. But we must refer the Reader for the Causes of those Eruptions, and a particular Account of them to those who have written fully on the Subject, particularly *Thomas Fazellus*, and *Philippus Cluverius*.

*Patì*, *Pañe*, or *Paña*, a pretty well inhabited little Sea Town, on the North-Coast of the Island, near the Ruins of *Tyndaris*, now call'd *S. Maria di Tindari*. 48 Miles from *Messina* to the West, and half a Mile from the *Tyrrhenian Sea*. It has the Title of a Bishoprick, under the Archbishop of *Messina*.

*Nea*, *Netum* or *Nea*, from which the third Division, or Valley of *Sicily* has its Name, is a large and well inhabited Town, standing on a high Hill, surrounded with high and steep Rocks, in the South part of the Island, 8 Miles from the Sea, 15 from *Capo Pessaro* to the North-West, and 25 from *Syracuse* to the South.

*Syracuse* or *Saracossa*, *Syracuse*, anciently a famous and great City, said to have been Built by *Archias*, a *Cornubian* consisting of 5 Parts, viz. *Acradina*, *Tyrtia*, *Neapolis*, *Insula* and *Epipolæ*, and 180 *Stadia*, or 22 Miles and half in Compass. It was first grievously oppress'd by the *Dionysii*, afterwards by *Agathocles* and others. It suffer'd a Siege of 3 Years by the *Romans*, in the first *Punick War*, when its holding out so long was owing to the singular Art of that famous Mathematician *Archimedes* who was unhappily murder'd by a barbarous Soldier, contrary to the express Orders of the *Roman General Marcellus*, when he took the City. It has now lost much of its ancient Splendor and Greatness, being confin'd within the Island *Ortygia*, but has 2 Harbours, which the Inhabitants call *il Porto Maggiore*, and *il Porto Piccolo*, and one Gate on the little *Isthmus*, defended by 2 Forts. It is distant 40 Miles from *Catania* to the South, 23 from *Augusta*, 38 from the *Capo Pessaro*, and 60 from the little Town, now call'd *Castro Joanni*. It was formerly an Archbishoprick, but is now under the See of *Montreal*.

*Augusta*, *Augusta*, a little but well inhabited and strong Town, built at first in a *Peninsula*, on the East-side of the Island, about 18 Miles from *Catania* to the South, and 24 from *Syracuse*. It was built by the Emperor *Frederick* in the Year 1229. who also built a Fort which commands it, in the Year 1232. Above an Hundred Years since it was fortified, and the *Peninsula* on which it stood made an Island, and joyn'd to the Continent by a Wooden Bridge. It was taken by the *French*, after a vigorous Resistance, in the Year 1675. and deserted by them 3 Years after. It has a very large and safe Harbour, and as *Cluverius* says, was anciently call'd *Viphenia*.

### The Island of SARDINIA.

The Island of *Sardinia*, which the *Grecians* call'd *Sardon* and *Fehnusa*, lies North and South, between the *Tuscan Sea* on the East, and the *Sea of Sardinia* on the West, between 37 Deg. 20 Min. and 40 Deg.

10 Min. Lat. and 31 Deg. 10 Min. and 33 Deg. 15 Min. Long. It is in Length from *Calaris* or *Cagliari*, to the Channel betwixt *Sardinia* and *Corfica* (according to *Cluverius*) 180 Miles, and in Breadth from the *Capo di Monte Falcone*, and *Capo di Argentera*, to the *Capo Sarda* 104. But *Baudand*, who makes it 500 Miles in Compass, will have it to be only 170 in Length, from South to North, and 90 in Breadth; and others less, as to both. We shall not trouble the Reader with the various Conjectures about the Etymologies of its Name, and the first Inhabitants of it, but only put him in mind, that anciently the *Carthaginians* were Masters of it; next them the *Romans*, who kept possession of it, till the declining State of that Empire, when it fell into the hands of the *Saracens*, who were expell'd by the *Genouese* and *Pisans*. At last in the Year 1326. Pope *Boniface VIII.* gave it to *James II.* King of *Arragon*, who after a great deal of struggling made himself Master of it, and handed it down to his Posterity. It is now subject to the King of *Spain*, who governs it by its Viceroy.

The Air of this Island is very Unhealthful, but the Soil is good, and fit to produce Corn, Wine, and Oyl; but the Inhabitants being for the most part *Barbarians*, are Lazy, and do not Cultivate and Improve the Ground as it ought to be, which is the reason why this Island, tho' it be large, is not very Rich. It was formerly divided into 4 Parts, which were subject to their respective petty Princes; but now it is divided into 2 Parts or Provinces, call'd *il Capo di Cagliari*, and *il Capo di Logudori*; which, with their several Towns, are to be seen in the following Table.

I.	{ <i>Cagliari</i> .
	{ <i>Oristagni</i> .
<i>Capo di Cagliari</i> ,	{ <i>Villa d' Iglesias</i> .
in which are	{ <i>Galtelli</i> .
these Towns.	{ <i>S. Pietro</i> .
II.	{ <i>Sassari</i> .
	{ <i>Castel Aragonese</i> .
<i>Capo di Logudori</i> ,	{ <i>Bosa</i> .
in which	{ <i>Algheri</i> .
are these	{ <i>Sardata</i> .
Towns.	{ <i>Terra Nuovo</i> .

*Cagliari*, *Calaris*, is the chief City of *Sardinia*, and gives Name to a Province, a Gulf, and a Promontory, and is the Residence of the *Spanish Governor*. It is said to have been Built by the *Phenicians*, and afterwards inhabited by the *Carthaginians*. It was destroy'd by the *Arabians*, and afterwards rebuilt by the *Pisans*. It was taken by *James II.* King of *Arragon*, in the Year 1330. since which time it, together with the whole Island, has been subject to *Spain*. It is a pretty large City, having 3 Suburbs, viz. *Estampache*, *Villa-Nova*, and *la Marina*, and is distant 30 Miles from *Oristagni* to the East; and has the Title of an Archbishoprick.

*Oristagni*, *Arborea*, stands in the West part of the Island, 6 Miles from the Sea, 60 from *Sassari*, and 30 from *Bosa*. It has the Title of an Archbishoprick, as also that of a Marquisate, which was formerly govern'd by its own Princes, call'd Judges, who are famous in the Histories of those Times, when the *Arragonians* invaded this Island; but at present it is very thinly inhabited, because of the Unhealthfulness of the Air.

*Sassari*, or *Sacer Sassari*, is a pretty large Town, in the North part of the Island, about 12 Miles

from



from the Ruins of *Turritana*, or *Turris Libiſſonis*, which the *Longobards* raz'd in the Year 596, to the South, as many from the Sea, and 18 from *Algheri*. It stands in a Plain, but is well fortified; and the Archbishopal See of *Turritana* was translated thither by Pope *Eugenius IV.* An. 1441.

*Castel Aragonese*, *Castrium Aragonense*, is a little well inhabited and fortified Town, with a Castle, in the North part of the Island, standing on a Rock, and having the advantage of a good and large Harbour, at the Mouth of the River *Coquina*. It is distant about 100 Miles from *Caligari* to the North, 50 from *Oristagni*, and 24 from *Sassari*. The See of *Emperie* was remov'd from thence to this Place, in the Year 1503, and is under the Archbishop of *Sassari*.

*B-fa*. *Befa*, stands on the West part of the Island, on the Coast of the Sea of *Sardinia*, at the Mouth of the River *B-fa*, 30 Miles from *Oristagni* to the North, and 35 from *Sassari*. It has the advantage of a large Harbour, and a Fort call'd *San Ale*.

*Algheri* or *Algher*, *Alerium* or *Algharia*, is a little but well fortified and inhabited Town in the North-West part of the Island, about 16 Miles from *Sassari* to the South, and as many from *B-fa*. *Cluverius* says it was anciently call'd *Ceraxa*; but *Franciscus a Vico*, a *Sardinian*, says it sprung from the Ruins of a neighbouring Town, call'd *Tylium*. It is an Episcopal See, under the Archbishop of *Sassari*.

### The Island of CORSI CA.

The Island of *Corfica*, call'd also *Cyrnus* by *Ptolemy* and *Strabo*, lies between 40 Deg. 20 Min. and 42 Deg. 15 Min. Lat. and 31 Deg. 20 Min. and 32 Deg. 30 Min. Long. It is in Length, according to *Cluverius*, from the *Sacrum Promontorium*, now *Punta di Marone*, or *Capo Corso*, to the Promontory *Graxianum*, or *Capo di Manza*, 120 Miles; in Breadth, from the Promontory call'd *Capo di Foro*, to *Aleria Desirata* 50. But *Baudrand*, who makes it 250 Miles in Compass, allows it only 110 of Length, and 50 of Breadth.

It has been subject to the Republick of *Genova*, since the Year 1144, that they expell'd the *Saracens* out of it, notwithstanding the several Attempts that have been made by the *Pisans*, and the Kings of *Aragon* to take it from them, particularly in the Years 1320, and 1435, and the *Doge* of *Genova* is Crown'd with a Royal Crown of Gold, and a Scepter put in his Hand, because of the Kingdom of *Corfica*. It is govern'd by one sent thither every 2 Years from that State, who is assisted by a Lieutenant, and several Commissaries.

The Air of this Island is very unwholesome, and the Soil for the most part but indifferent, the Country being Mountainous and Woody, and the Ground Stony. In some Places however, it brings forth good Corn, Vines, and several sorts of Fruit, as Figs, Almonds, and Chestnuts; nor are the Forests and Pastures unprovided of Venison, Cattle and Wild Fowl. The Natives of *Corfica* are said to be Revengeful, Cruel and Unciviliz'd; and some are of Opinion that the word *Corfairs*, which signifies *Pirates*, or *Robbers* on the Sea, has its Original from them.

The Island of *Corfica* is computed to be about 100 Miles from *Genova* to the South, 60 from *Leghorn* to the South-West, and 65 from *Picmbino* to the West. It was formerly divided into two Parts, viz. South and North, but is now (according to *Baudrand*) di-

vided into four, viz. *Di quo di Monti*, or on this side the Mountains; *Il lato di dentro*, or the inner side; *Di la di Monti*, on the other side of the Mountains; and *Il lato di fuori*, or on the outer side: And the Towns that are now, or have been of any Note in it, are,

<i>Bastia</i> .	{	<i>Ajaçço</i> .
<i>Corte</i> .		<i>Bonifacio</i> .
<i>Nebbio</i> .		<i>St. Fiorenzo</i> .
<i>Mariana</i> .		<i>Calvi</i> .
<i>Aleria</i> .	{	<i>Accia</i> .
<i>Sagona</i> .		<i>Sarteni</i> .
<i>St. Pietro</i> .		

*Bastia*. *Bastia*, or *Bastila*, is the chief City of this Island, situated in the North part of it, with the advantage of a good Harbour, and a Fort, distant about 20 Miles from the *Cape di Corso* to the South, and 70 from *Bonifacio* to the North. It stands where the Town of *Mantinum* formerly stood, and is the ordinary Residence of the *Genueſe* Governor.

*Corte*, *Cenſum*, a small City next *Bastia*, reckon'd the Chief of the Island, it stands in the very Centre of it, and is an Episcopal See.

*Nebbio*, *Nell'Isola*, a ruinous and decay'd Town, in the North part of the Island, about a Mile from the Sea, not above half a Mile from *St. Fiorenzo*, which some think arose from its Ruins, and 9 from *Bastia* to the South-West. It was the Seat of a Bishop, who now resides at *St. Fiorenzo*, and is Suffragan to the Archbishop of *Genova*; but at present there are not above 15 Houses, and about 70 Souls in it.

*Mariana*. *Mariana* was anciently a considerable Town, and the Name of a Roman Colony, and adorn'd with several magnificent Buildings, and a Colossus; but is now lying in its Ruins, which are call'd *le Rouina di Mariana*, nothing remaining but the Cathedral Church, and some other Buildings, without Roofs. It stood upon the River *Eolus*, which divided it into 2 Parts, viz. the South, call'd *Casinea*, and the North, call'd *Mariana*; and is an Episcopal See, under the Archbishop of *Genova*. It is distant 20 Miles from the Ruins of *Aleria* to the North, and 15 from *Bastia*, where its Bishop hath resided since the Year 1575.

*Aleria* and *Sagona* have scarce any thing but their Names left.

*Ajaçço*, *Adjacium*, anciently call'd *Urcinium*, is a pretty well inhabited Town, with a Fort and a good Harbour, on the West side of the Island, on a Bay of its own Name, about 40 Miles from *Bonifacio* to the North-West, 40 from *Calvi* to the South, and about 1 from the Ruins of the old *Adjacium*. It is subject to the State of *Genova*, but its Bishop is under the Archbishop of *Pisa*.

*Bonifacio*, *Bonifacium*, is a fortified and well inhabited little Town, on the South-Coast of the Island, situated on a Rock, which is almost surrounded by the Sea; and from it the Channel which separates this Island from *Sardinia* is call'd, *le bocche di Bonifacio*, formerly *Fretum Taphros*.

*Calvi*, *Calvium*, stands on the West-side of the Island, with a very strong Fort, in form of a Peninsula, which makes it only accessible at one Place, where the *Franciscans* Convent stands. It has been several times in vain attempted by the *Saracens* and *French*; and is distant 35 Miles from *Bastia* to the West, and 30 from *Ajaçço* to the North.

Several



*Several other Islands of less Note.*

The *Liparean* Islands, which *Pliny* calls the *Æolie*, and *Vulcanic*, and the *Grecians* *Hephestiades*, lie off the North-Coast of *Sicily*, in the *Tyrrhenian* or *Tuscan* Sea, where, as the Poets say, brottring King *Æolus* Reign'd of old. These Islands did anciently belong to *Sicily*; but afterwards the Kings of *Naples* unjustly wrested them from it, and *Charles V.* confirm'd the Possession of them to *Naples*, till at last, in the Year 1609. they were restor'd to *Sicily*, to which they are still subject. They are in Number seven, viz.

*Lipara*, now *Lipari*.

*Hiera*, now *Volcano*.

*Strongylæ*, now *le Saline*.

*Evonymos*, now *Lisca bianca*.

*Didyme*, now *Stromboli*.

*Ericusa*, now *Paschu*.

*Phenicusa*, now *Felicur*.

*Lipari*, *Lipara*, is the biggest of all the *Æolian* or *Vulcanian* Islands, being 18 Miles in Compass; and distant about 40 Miles from the North-Coast of *Sicily*, and 50 from the nearest Part of the Farther *Calabria*. This Island did formerly vomit up Fire, as may be seen still by the Vestiges and Marks of it; and its Baths were very wholesome. There is a Town in it of its own Name, which was almost destroy'd by *Barbarossa*, the *Turkish* Admiral, in the Year 1544. but afterwards repair'd, and is now pretty near and well inhabited, and has a strong Fort, call'd *la Pignatara*. Pope *Eugenius III.* erect'd this Place into a Bishoprick, in the Year 1151. and since the 1627. it has been exempted from the Jurisdiction of the Archbishop of *Messina*, till of late, that it owns its Subjection to that Metropolitan.

The most considerable of those little Islands that lie about *Sardinia*, are,

St. Pietro.	}	Di Toro.
St. Antiocha.		Tavolato.
Di Vaccha.		Asinaria.

The most considerable of those that lie along the Coast of *Italy*, between the *Liparean* Islands and *Genova*, are these,

Capri	}	Monte Christo.
Ischia.		Formiche.
Ponza.		Pianosa.
Gianuti.		Capracia.
Giglio.		Maloria.
Elba.		Gorgona.

*Capri*, *Caprea*, an Island in the *Tyrrhenian* Sea, belonging to the Kingdom of *Naples*, in the Province of *Terra di Lavarò*, at the entry of the Gulf of *Naples*, near the *Capo Campanello*, from which it is divided by a Channel 3 Miles broad, call'd *le bocche di Capri*. It is about 12 Miles in Circuit, and has a little Town in the South part of it, of its own Name, which has the Title of a Bishoprick; the Revenues of which are paid in Quails, which at two Seasons of the Year are catch'd in vast Numbers in this Island.

This Place was once the delightful Retreat of the Emperor *Tiberius Augustus*; and the Island is call'd *Telonis* by *Silius*. It contains at present about 1500 Souls, who are exempted from all manner of Taxes.

*Ischia*, or *Iscla*. *Ischia*. otherwise call'd *Inarime*, and *Ænaria*, lies in the *Tyrrhenian* Sea, off the Coast of *Naples*, in the Province of *Terra di Lavarò*, from the Coast of which it is distant 2 Miles, as many from the *Capo Miseno*, and 1 from the Island of *Prochita*. It is about 20 Miles in Compass, having a Town of its own Name, with a strong Fort, on the South-side of it, joyn'd to the Island by a Bridge. *Ferdinand* King of *Naples* made this his Refuge, in the time of *Charles VIII* King of *France*, who in a few Days overran that whole Kingdom, in the year 1495. This Town has the Title of a Bishoprick, under the Archbishop of *Naples*.

*Ponza*, *Pontia*, is an Island in the *Tyrrhenian* Sea, reckon'd a part of the Kingdom of *Naples*, but belonging to the Duke of *Parma*, 13 Miles from the *Circeum Promontorium*, now *Monte Circella*, 20 from *Terracina*, and 8 from *Pandataria*, now *Santa Maria*. There was a Colony sent into this Island (as *Livy* relates) in the Year of the City 441. and a Town built in it by the *Volsce*; but being quite dil-peopl'd afterwards, there were new Inhabitants sent into it, in the Year of Christ 1583. It was anciently a Place where many banish'd *Romans* were oblig'd to go, particularly *Caligula's* Sitters, whom he sent thither.

*Giglio*, *Ægilium*, or *Igium*, is an Island in the *Tuscan* Sea, off the Coast of the *Sinefe*, of which it is a Part, and subject to the Great Duke of *Tuscany*, 10 Miles from the Shoar of *Cosano*, and as many from *il Monte Argentario*. It is subject to the Spiritual Jurisdiction of the Abbot of *Tre fontane*, near *Rome*, and about 25 Miles in Compass.

*Eiba*, *Ilua*, or *Æthalia*, is an Island in the *Tuscan* Sea, over against *Piombino* in *Tuscany*, from which it is distant about 10 Miles. It is about 40 Miles in Compass, and abounds in Iron, belong'd formerly to the Republick of *Siena*, but is now a part of the Principality of *Piombino*, under the Protection of the King of *Spain*, who has a Fort in it of considerable Strength, call'd *Porto-longone*, and the Duke of *Tuscany* has another, call'd *Porto-Ferraro*.

*Capraria*. *Capraria*, so call'd, from the great abundance of Goats which us'd to be in it, is an Island in the *Tuscan* Sea, lying between the State of *Tuscany* to the East, and *Corfica* (on which it depends) to the West. It is very Mountainous, and about 18 Miles in Compass. It belongs to the State of *Genova*, who have a Fort and a Garrison in it, to defend it from the Pyrats, and contains about 600 Inhabitants.

*Gorgona*, *Gorgon*, or *Urgo*, according to *Pliny*, is a little Island in the *Tuscan* Sea, between the Coast of *Tuscany* to the East, and *Corfica* to the West, and about 25 Miles from *Leghorn* to the South-West. It was formerly subject to the *Pisans*, but belongs now to the Great Duke of *Tuscany*. It is 10 Miles in Compass, and has only one little Town, and a sort of a Fort in it.



# SPAIN.

## SPAIN and PORTUGAL



**A**mong all the Countries of Europe this of Spain, altho' it may justly claim an equal rank with the best, is unhappily pass'd over by modern Geographers with slight Accounts of it, as if with the Grandeur of the Monarchy, the Country too were so far sunk as to deserve little notice; perhaps the little visiting it by Strangers, except in the Maritime Towns of Trade, may be the reason that we are unappriz'd of the Magnitude and Beauty of its many Cities; for the unhappy Lazyness of its Inhabitants hinders 'em from making any curious Manufactures, which in other Countries tempt the Merchants to Travel over the Land; and withal this Kingdom being a Peninsula, lies not on the Road to the Countries beyond it, and so is not travell'd thro' by those that make the Tour of Europe. If therefore we presume to say that the former descriptions of this Land are imperfect, and the differences that will be found between what has yet appear'd in English and this Account that follows, are only alterations for the sake of Truth; we hope we shall be believ'd, when we tell the Reader that it is wholly Collected out of these Authors, viz.

Historic



Historia General de Espanna por el P. Juan de Mariana.  
 Compendio Historial de las Chronicas de Espanna, por Estevan de Garibay.  
 Poblacion General de Espanna, por Rodrigo Mendez Silva.  
 Catalogo Real Genealogico de Espanna, por Rodrigo Mendez Silva.  
 Europa Portuguesa, por Manuel de Fariay Sousa.  
 Descripcion del Escorial, por el P. F. Francisco de los Santos.  
 Teatro de Madrid, por el Maestro Gil Gonfales de Avila.  
 Historia de Madrid, por Geronimo de Quintana.  
 Historia de Toledo, por el Doctor Francisco de Piza.  
 Granderas de Espanna, de los Maestros Medina y Mesa.

Cosas Memorables de Espanna, de Marineo Siculo.  
 Excellencias de Espanna, de Gregorio Lopez Madera.  
 Antiquas Poblaciones, de Poza.  
 Corografia de Gaspar Barregros.  
 Descripcion de Portugal, de Duarte Nurez de Leon.  
 Travaux de Mars, *for the Modern Fortifications in Portugal*  
 Excellencias de Portugal, de Antonio de Sousa Macedo.  
 Mr. Willoughby's *Travels over Spain*.  
 — *Besides several Manuscript Observations by divers Persons, never Printed; and particular Verbal Accounts of some Friends of the Authors, of undoubted Veracity, and some things of his own Knowledge.*

## C H A P. I.

## S P A I N.

**S** P A I N is the most Western Part of all the Continent of Europe, encompass'd on all sides with the Sea, except towards France, from which it is separated by the Pyrenean Mountains. On the East and South, it is bounded by the Mediterranean Sea, the Streights of Gibraltar, anciently call'd *Fretum Gaditanum*, and part of the Atlantick Ocean; on the West, by the same Ocean, and on the North, by the Sea call'd the Bay of Biscay, and the Pyrenean Mountains; which last divide it from France. Its situation is in the Temperate Zone, betwixt 35 and 44 Degrees of North Latitude, and the 8th and 24th of Longitude, under the 5th, 6th, and 7th Climates. Thus we see it is a long Peninsula, and in form of an Ox's Hide extended, the Neck being the *Isthmus*, which joyns it to France, along which the Pyrenean Mountains run from Sea to Sea; that is, from Cape Olarso, near *Fuenterabia*, on the Bay of Biscay, to Cape Creux, or Cruzes, formerly *Veneris Promontorium*, on the Mediterranean, being 80 Leagues. From the aforesaid Cape Creux, or Cruzes, to Cape S. Vincent, along the Coast of the Mediterranean Ocean, are reckon'd by all Spanish Geographers, 275 Leagues, which we may call the East and South sides. The West-side from Cape S. Vincent, to Cape Finisterre, 125 Leagues. The Northern Coast from Cape Finistre to *Fuenterabia*, 140 Leagues: All which, with the 80 along the Pyrenean Mountains, make the whole compass of Spain 620 Leagues; which is to be understood Travelling by Land from Town to Town, and Port to Port, without running round all Creeks and Bays, or taking it directly in a Strait Line.

We have told you already in the Introduction, that of Spanish Leagues there go Seventeen and a half to a Degree, whereby their League is about 3 Miles and a half: But in all Dimensions following it must be observ'd once for all, that we have, to avoid all Controversie or Mistake, Calculated the Leagues to the most usual measure of 20 to a Degree, or 3 Miles to a League, which the Reader is desir'd to observe, that he may proceed upon sure

Grounds.] But taking the greatest Length, which is from Cape S. Vincent to Cape Creux, or Cruzes, across the Country in a direct Line, it extends near 700 Miles North-East, and South-West. And the greatest Breadth North-West and South-East, from Cape Finisterre in Galicia, to Cape Palos in the Kingdom of Murcia, over-Land also in a Strait Line, being about 550.

Among the Ancients We find this Country call'd *HESPERIA*, which some derive from *Hesperus*, a Fabulous King of it; and others with more Reason, from *Hesperus*, the Evening Star, because of its Western Position: But Italy being also call'd *Hesperia*, for Distinction sake, that was call'd *Minor*, the Lesser, and this *Ultima*, the Remotest. Another Name it had was *IBERIA*; from the *Iberi*, a People of Asia, who are said to have first Inhabited it: As also *Celtiberia*, from the *Celts* of Gaul, mixing with the *Iberi*. The Scripture calls it *Sepharad*, being the Hebrew name which S. Jerom says signifies a Bound or Limit, because it is the furthest part of Europe. The Chaldeans nam'd it *SPHAMIA*; the Syrians, *ISPHANIA*, or *Sphania*, as appears by the Chaldaick and Spanish Versions of the Bible; and from this last, the common Name of *HISPANIA* might proceed, as well as from any other Derivation, and much more probably than from Bochart's Notion of *Spania*, in the Punick Language a Cony, or from Justin's imaginary King *Hispanus*, or Cluverius's Conceit of *Hispalis*, the name of the City of Sevil. However it may be Deriv'd, most certain it is, the Romans, and we after them, in Latin, call it *HISPANIA*, the Spaniards themselves *Espanna*, and we by Corruption, *Spain*.

The Romans anciently divided it into three Provinces, *TARRACONENSIS*, *BOETICA*, and *LUSITANIA*. The first had its name from *Taragona*, now an Archbishoprick in Catalonia, and was bounded on the East by that part of the Mediterranean call'd the Balearick Sea; on the North by the Pyrenean Mountains and Bay of Biscay; on the West by the main Ocean; and on the



South, by the River *Duero*, which separated it from *Lusitania*; beyond which a Line is to be drawn including the greatest part of *Old and New Castile*, and terminating with the farthest extent of the Kingdom of *Murcia*. Thus we see this Province contain'd the Kingdom of *Murcia*, *Valencia*, *Aragon*, *Navarre*, and *Galicia*; the Principality of *Catalonia*, most of *Old and New Castile*, and the Countries of *Biscay*, *Asturias*, *Entre Duero, y Minho*, and *Tralos Montes*. *BOETICA* on the North, was enclos'd by the River *Guadiana*, parting it from *Lusitania*; on the West, by the same River and the Ocean; on the South by the *Mediterranean*, and on the East by a Line drawn from Cape *Gata* to the Fountains of *Guadiana*; which shews that within it were the Kingdoms of *Sevil*, *Cordova* and *Granada*, and the Province of *Estremadura*, beginning at the City *Badajoz*. *LUKITANIA* reach'd on the North, from the Mouth of the River *Duero*, as far as *Simancas*; on the West, it ran along the Ocean, from the said Mouth of *Duero*, as far as Cape *S. Vincent*, along the Ocean: On the South the same Ocean wash'd it, from Cape *S. Vincent*, to the Mouth of *Guadiana*: There on the East, the same River divides it from *Betica*, as does a Line drawn from *Old Calatrava* to the Bridge of *Simancas*, separate it from the Province *Tarracensis*; so that it wanted that which is now the Northern part of *Portugal*, beyond the *Duero*, and on the East took in a part of *Estremadura*, *Old Castile*, and the Kingdom of *Leon*.

Besides this ancient Division, there was another, into only two Provinces, *CITERIOR*, and *ULTERIOR*, the nearer and the farther, which was in respect to *ROME*. The first being only that Part which lies North of the River *Ebro*, and the other all beyond the said River, which was beyond all comparison, the Greater. There was also another Sub-division into 14 *DISTRICTS*, each subject to its Sovereign Court; for the Great Provinces being under the Direction of *Prætors*, or *Pro-consuls*, who were in the nature of *Vice-Roys*, there were Courts erected in several Parts for the administration of Justice, whereof there were 7 in the Province *Tarracensis*, settled at *Tarragona*, *Zaragoza*, *Cartagena*, *Astorga*, *Lugo*, *Braga* and *Crunna*, now a small Town in the Bishoprick of *Osma*. In *Betica* there were 4; at *Cadiz*, *Cordova*, *Exija*, and *Sevil*. And in *Lusitania* only 3, at *Merida*, *Badajoz*, and *Santaren*.

When the *GOTHS* had expell'd the *Romans*, and made themselves Masters of all *Spain*, they united it into one solid Body, without any distinction of Provinces that we know of, and so it continued many Years, as long as their Sovereignty, till the *Mosses* overrunning the greatest part of it, several small Christian Kingdoms were erected, and the Infidels themselves set up a greater Number: Of all which, it would be too tedious to speak; but from thence proceeded the present Division of *Spain* into 14 Kingdoms and Provinces, besides the Islands, and without including *Portugal*, as being under a distinct Sovereign. Each of these is to be particularly describ'd, for which Reason, we shall here only give their Names in the same order we design to treat of them, and then go through with the general Account of *Spain*, before we come to the Particular; First observing, that in describing *Spain*, hitherto *Portugal* has been of necessity included, as being a part of the whole, and not well to be se-

parated, till we come to each Province. The 14 Divisions we mention'd, are

- |               |   |                  |
|---------------|---|------------------|
| 1. GALICIA.   | } | 8. NEW-CASTILE.  |
| 2. ASTURIAS.  |   | 9. OLD-CASTILE.  |
| 3. BISCAY.    |   | 10. LEON.        |
| 4. NAVARRE.   |   | 11. ESTREMADURA. |
| 5. ARAGON.    | } | 12. ANDALUZIA.   |
| 6. CATALONIA. |   | 13. GRANADA.     |
| 7. VALENCIA.  |   | 14. MURCIA.      |

The Islands of *MAJORCA*, *MINORCA*, *YVIZA*, and *FORMENTERA*.

The next in course to be spoken of, are the principal *RIVERS* and *Mountains* in *Spain*.

To begin with the *Rivers*; The *EBRO*, anciently *Iberus*, rises at *Fontibre*, a small Town near *Aqui'a del Campo*, on the Borders of *Biscay*, thence crosses *Navarre*, *Aragon*, and *Catalonia*, and falls into the *Mediterranean*, below *Tortosa*, after a course of about 100 Leagues: By the way it takes in the smaller Rivers *Baya*, *Zadorra*, *Alava*, *Oja*, *Tiron*, *Nagrilla*, *Fruega*, *Lecia* and *Meloro*, before it comes into *Navarre*: In that Kingdom, the *Egao*, *Arga*, and *Aragon*: In the Kingdom of *Aragon*, the *Gallego*, *Torio*, *Xalon*, *Conguedo*, *Veron* and *Sigre*. *DUERO*, formerly *Durius*, springs near the City *Soria*, in *Old Castile*, and running through *Old Castile*, *Leon*, and *Portugal*, loses itself in the Ocean a League below the City *Porto Port*, in the Kingdom last nam'd. *TAGO*, or *TAGUS*, has its Source in the Mountains of *Molina*, cuts all *New Castile*, *Estremadura*, and *Portugal*, into two Parts, and falls into the Sea at *Cascaes*, below *Lisbon*, after running 120 Leagues, and taking in the Rivers *Henares*, *Xarama*, *Guadarama*, *Alberche*, and many others. It was formerly famous for its Golden Sands. *QUADALQUIVIR*, formerly *BETIS*, in Arabick signifies a great River, has its Origin in the Mountains of *Segura*, crosses all *Andalusia*, and mixes with the Ocean at *S. Lucar* in the same Province, when it has run 64 Leagues, and reciev'd many lesser Waters. *GUADIANA*, in Latin *Anas* flows from certain Lakes 4 Leagues from *Montiel*, in *New Castile*, where it has first the name of *Ruydera*; and having run about 8 Leagues, sinks all together under Ground, near the Village of *Argamasilla*, continuing a subterraneous course 7 Leagues; after which, it comes up again near the Town of *Daymiel*, in another Lake. Here it takes the name of *Guadiana*, and loses that of *Ruydera*. Besides this, it again sinks twice under Ground, till having cross'd *Estremadura* and part of *Portugal*, it is finally swallow'd up by the Ocean at *Ayamonte*, between *Algarve* and *Estremadura*. Besides these, we might sum up near 150 other Rivers, not contemptible, were it not too tedious; and for Springs the number is infinite. For Bridges, the Curious have reckon'd 700 of Note.

The most noted *MOUNTAINS* are first the *PYRENEANS*, beginning at Cape *Olarso*, near *Fuenterabia* in *Biscay*, do not run in a strait Line to the *Mediterranean*, but make a great Bow, taking the compass into *Spain*; first entering *Navarre*, where they run to *Val de Salazar*, and *Val de Romcal*, to *Hisara*, which is the end of them in *Navarre*; whence they proceed into *Aragon* above *Jaca*, and thence to *Catalonia*, at the City call'd *Sen de Urgel*, then passing by *Belver*, *Puicerdan*, *Villa Franca de Conflent*, the Fortrefs of *Guardia* and *Lampurdan*, they stretch to Cape *Creuz*, or *Cruzes*, on the *Mediterranean*, their whole length being 80 Leagues. On the Frontiers of *Biscay* and *Navarre*, at the place



place call'd *Roncivualles*, there branches out from the Pyreneans, a ridge of Mountains, which running to the Westward, is the Southern Boundary of *Biscay* and *Asturias*, cuts *Galicia* in two, and end at *Cape Finisterre*, upon the Ocean, yet has not any general Name, but receives several Appellations from the places it passes by. Again, from this last Mountain, on the South-side of it, near the Springs of *Ebro*, sprouts out another call'd *Idubeda*, now *Montes de Oca*, from an ancient City then nam'd *Auca*, 5 Leagues above *Burgos*; thence stretches to *Briviesca*, so to *Calatayud* and *Deroca*, and at last expires in the *Mediterranean*, near *Tortosa*. From this *Idubeda* jus out the Mountain *OROSPEDA*, rising very gently, till it forms the Mountains of *MOLINA*, then those of *CUENCA*, where the River *Tagus* springs. Next, it makes the Mountains of *Consuegra*, then passes on to *Alcaraz* and *Segura*, at *Cazorla*. This Mountain *Orospeda* divides itself into two Branches, one of which terminates in the Sea, opposite to *Murcia*, near the Town of *Muxarcra*, formerly *Murgis*: The other stretches towards *Malaga*, and joyning the Mountains of *Granada*, runs on beyond *Gibraltar* and *Farifa*. From the same *Orospeda*, near *Alcaraz*, proceed the *Marian Mountains*, now call'd *SIERRA MORENA*; along the bottom of which, the River *Guadalquivir* keeps close almost all the way to the Ocean. Besides these, there are many other Mountains all Branches from the Pyreneans, now call'd by several Names, from the places of Note near them, as of *Soria*, *Segovia* and *Avila*, and these divide *Castile* into the Old and the New: These run on by *Coria* and *Plasencia*, and entring *Portugal* on the North-side of *Tagus*, divide that Kingdom into two Parts, and terminate in the Ocean at *Sintra*, forming the Cape formerly call'd *Promontorium Arrabrum*, now *Rocca de Sintra*, and by our Sailors, the Rock of *Lisbon*.

Many of the Rivers and Mountains running through *Portugal* or part of it, and the ancient Division concerning it as well as the rest of *Spain*, there was no speaking of it apart, as to those Particulars; for what follows, the Reader must observe, that in speaking of *Spain*, we no way include *Portugal*, which is to be spoken of apart, as a distinct Kingdom. In *Spain* therefore, as abstracted from *Portugal*; there are at present 8 Archbishopricks, 46 Bishopricks, and 14 Universities, the Names of all which will be found in their proper Places, and therefore are not mention'd here. There are 16000 Towns, 125 Cities, 110000 Churches, 75000 Parishes, 9300 Monasteries of Religious Men, 370 of Nuns, above 5000 Hospitals; and about the Year 1650, the Inhabitants were reckon'd to amount to 8500000 Souls.

The Temperature of the AIR is generally wholesome and delightful, its situation being about the middle of the Temperate Zone, and therefore not so much scorch'd as *Africk*, nor subject to such violent Frosts, continual Rains, and stormy Winds, as the Northern Parts. It is true the Summer Heats are by Northern People thought excessive in the height of Summer; yet it is certain they are nothing compar'd with other Countries nearer and within the Tropicks, and as that does not last above 2 or 3 Months, as all the remaining part of the Year is Temperate: Besides, the Air is generally serene and pleasant, and the great Rains fall regularly in their Seasons, of Spring and Autumn. And it is to be observ'd, that as with us, most Di-

stempers proceed from Colds, so in *Spain* they are generally the Effect of Heat, as burning Fevers, Pleurifies, Quinsies and Lethargies, all which are very Mortal, without speedy and frequent Bleeding. But the Degrees of Heat and Cold, vary much in the Northern and Southern Parts, and not only in regard to Latitude, but to other Circumstances; as the Sea-Coasts, much cool'd by constant Sea Breezes, and Mountains, which are naturally cold, and sometimes communicate cooling Breezes to the adjacent Plains.

The SOIL, as in other Countries, is not all alike, but generally very Fruitful, notwithstanding the false Representations of some Writers, who knew nothing of it: And there needs no other proof of its Fertility, than the Product, so well known throughout all *Europe*. The Barrenest part is the most Northern, and yet even that does not deserve that Name. The Mountains are the worst, and even they produce something for use, the most uncouth part of them is cover'd with stately Trees of all sorts, yielding excellent Timber and Fuel; in other Places there grows the Plant they call *Esparto*, whereof, they make all sorts of Ropes; in Boggy Lands, Rushes for Mats and other uses; and the sides of Hills of any moderate height, have always Grass and many Sweet-Herbs, which feeds vast Flocks of Sheep. If these happen to be scorch'd up with too much Heat in Summer, the Cattle are drove down to the Meadows, by the River sides, some whereof are so order'd that they can Water them, and there a sufficient quantity of Grass is always preserv'd to supply the Flocks; so that there is never any Want. The Spanish Wheat is inferior to none, if not the best in *Europe*, as all Men testify by the goodness of the Bread who have eaten of it; and the common Product is more than the Natives can consume; for *Portugal* has always been supply'd from thence, being in continual Want; which is now supply'd from the North. Barley is the common Grain for Horses and Mules, for they use no Oats, neither do they make Hay, but instead of it, the Cattle eat Straw. Wine is so plentiful, that the meanest People drink it; and there is no occasion to speak of its Goodness, where most Men are acquainted with several sorts of it, as *Malaga*, *Sherry*, *Galicia*, *Navarre*, *Alicant*, *Barcelona*, and many other Names of it, which seldom or never come among us, tho' nothing Inferior to those above, only because being higher up the Country, the Land Carriage hinders their Exportation. Besides the Fruits which *England* affords, which there grow in greater Perfection, we have had from thence Oranges, Lemmons, Almonds, Raisins, Pruens, Olives, Capers; Figs. Chestnuts. and Pomgranates; and there are many too tedious to name. Herbs and Flowers are most sweet and odoriferous, and many of them grow wild, which other Places cannot produce without much Industry. Nor is there less Diversity and Plenty of Fowl both Wild and Tame, or of Four-footed Game, as Deer Red and Fallow, Rabbits, Wild-Boars. And as for the Tame Swine, all that have had Experience, allow the Spanish Bacon exceeds the *Westphalia*. Then for Oil, there is as good as that of *Florence*; and Wax and Honey as good as any in the World. We must not forget the Horses, so famous for Swiftnefs, that the Poets Feign'd they were engender'd by the Wind; the great Value of them among us testify what they are; and of these there are large Breeds in *Estremadura* and Parts adjacent; other Provinces breeding good serviceable



serviceable Horses, tho' not so valuable. Mules it has of no less Price than good Horses, so sure Footed, that they are always us'd to travel over the craggiest Mountains, and so strong as to carry mighty Burdens, many of them 16, and some 17 Hands high. Nor are the Sheep to be forgotten; nor to speak of the Excellency of their Flesh, but for their incomparable Wool, known to exceed all other, which all the *English* Cloath-workers can testify. So much Silk is made, that *Spanish* Authors affirm it employs a Million of People, in feeding, gathering, curing the Worms spinning, weaving, and making rich Tabbies, Velvets, Damasks, Taffata's, Satins, Shags, and many other sorts. In short, some Parts produce Flax, Hemp, Cotton, Saffron, Sugar, Pitch, Rozin, and Scarlet Dye. Then if we descend into the Bowels of the Earth, we shall find rich Quicksilver Mines, whereof great Quantities are sent to the *West-Indies*, Sulphur, Lead, Jear, Alom, Copper; and for Iron, all *Europe* receives great Quantities from *Biscay*, and it is better than any other; and of Stones, Agates, Cornelians, Granets, Crystal, Marble, Alabaster and Jasper. We will not run into the Variety of delicious Fish, which would be endless, nor discourse of the vast Treasures of Gold and Silver all Authors unanimously agree the *Carthaginians*, *Phenicians*, *Greeks* and *Romans* drew from this Nation, because these Metals are not sought for here, since the *West-Indies* have sent over such endless Masses of them.

In speaking of the PEOPLE of *Spain*, we shall not go to fetch their Original from *Tubal*, the Grandson of *Noah*, and a Colony most *Spanish* Authors pretend he brought from the Tower of *Babel*; or examine how the *IBERI*, a People of *Asia*, should come to it, and give it their Name, these fabulous Accounts deserving little Credit, and nothing appearing more likely than that it was first peopled either out of *France*, which is contiguous, or out of *Africk*, which is only divided by the narrow Streight of *Gibraltar*. Their most ancient History, like all others, is too Romanick to be rely'd on. But this is certain, that their Government was Monarchical and Hereditary, till thro' what Accidents no Man can tell, the Country came to be divided, and so weakened, that all other Nations skill'd in Sea Affairs attempted to make Conquests in it, and to carry away its Treasures. The *Greeks* gain'd Footing on the Eastern Coast of *Reses*, and *Saguntum*, now *Morvedro*; the *Phenicians* at *Cadiz*, and other Places; but the *Carthaginians* made a much greater Progress, and conquer'd a very considerable Part of the Country. The *Romans* after much Bloodshed expell'd them, and by degrees brought it all into Subjection; which was not compleated till the Emperor *Augustus* subdu'd the *Cantabrians*, which are the *Biscainers* and Parts adjacent. From that Time it continu'd as a Province, till the *Roman* Empire declining, and many barbarous Nations sharing it among them, the *Vandals*, *Suevians*, *Alans* and *Silingians* overrun the Country in the Days of *Honorius* the Emperor, which was in the Beginning of the 5th Century, destroy'd all they found, and had almost made themselves Masters of all the Country, but were stop'd in their Career by the *Goths*. *Ataulfus*, Brother to the famous *Alaricus*, King of that Nation, having Marry'd the Emperor *Honorius's* Sister, had the Parts of *France* and *Spain* about the *Pyreneans* assign'd him, and kept his Court at *Barcelona*; whence that Nation spread all over *Spain*, and a considerable Part of *Africk*. Peace and Plen-

ty having debauch'd the *Goths*, and *Roderick* their last King Ravishing Count *Julian's* Daughter, that Nobleman in revenge brought over the *Saracens* into *Spain*, in the Year 714. who overthrowing the degenerate *Goths*, in 8 Months time overran the greatest part of *Spain*, almost 300 Years after the Conquest of it by the *Goths*. The Mountains descending *Biscay* and *Asturias*, *Pelago*, or *PELAGIUS* was there receiv'd as King, and gain'd several considerable Advantages over the *Moors*, as did several of his Successors, who advancing their Conquests, remov'd the Court from the City of *Oviedo* to that of *Leon*, about the Year 920. Others had before this time erected the Kingdoms of *Aragon* and *Navarre*, and the Earldom of *Barcelona*, as shall be touch'd in the Catalogue of Kings here subjoyn'd.

### The Succession of the *KINGS* of *SPAIN*.

1. *Ataulfus*, Brother to *Alaricus* King of the *Goths* in *Italy*. Marry'd *Galla Placidia*, Sister to the Emperor *Honorius*, and had the Country about the *Pyrenean* Mountains allotted him to settle in with his People, keeping his Court sometimes at *Barcelona* and sometimes at *Narbonne*; and being a peaceable Prince was murder'd by his barbarous Subjects in the Year 417. when he had Reign'd but 2 or 3 Years.
2. *Sigericus* succeeded him, and was also murder'd in a very short time.
3. *Walia*, or *Ubalia*, increas'd his Dominions, and Died Ann. 420. after 3 Years Reign.
4. *Theodoredus*, or *Theodorick*, or *Thierry*, Reign'd 31. Years, assisted the *Romans* in the great Battl against *Attila* the *Hun* in *France*, where he was bore down and tramp'd to Death by his own Men, in the Year 451.
5. *Torismund* was Son to the last, help'd to drive *Attila* out of *France*, yet Reign'd but 3 Years and was murder'd by the Contrivance of his own Brothers; of whom,
6. *Theoderick*, ascended the Throne, and enlarg'd his Dominions in *Spain* by gaining upon the *Suevians*; and having Reign'd 13 Years, was in 467 murder'd by his own Brother.
7. *Euricus*, who succeeded him, and extended his Dominions both in *France* and *Spain*; Reign'd 1 Years, and Died in 483.
8. *Alaricus*, Son to *Euricus*, was kill'd in a Batt by *Clovis* King of *France*, in the Year 506. when he had Reign'd 23.
9. *Gesaleycus*, his Bastard Son, usurp'd the Crown and Reign'd 4 Years.
10. *Amalaricus*, lawful Son to *Alaricus*, was Enthron'd by the *Ostrogoths*, and Reign'd 21 Years.
11. *Theudis*, of the Race of the *Ostrogoths*, was Chosen King, the Family of the *Visigoths* being extinct, and was murder'd by one that feign'd himself Mad in the Year 548.
12. *Thudiselus*, of another Family, and a wicked Prince; Reign'd but one Year.
13. *Agila* was also Elected, but murder'd after being defeated by,
14. *Athanasildus*, who Reign'd 13 Years, and Died in 567.
15. *Liuba* was next Chosen, and Reign'd 5 Years.
16. *Leuvigildus*, Reign'd 4 Years in conjunction with his Brother *Liuba*, overthrew the *Suevians* and joyn'd their Kingdom to his own, his whole Reign being 18 Years.
17. *Flac*



17. *Flavius Recaredus*, was the first Catholick Gothic King of Spain (his Predecessors being *Arians*) and converted his Subjects. He Reign'd 15 Years, and Died in 601.
18. *Lioba II.* Son to *Recaredus*. succeeded him, and Reign'd but 2 Years, being murder'd by,
19. *Witericus*, who Reign'd 7 Years, and was murder'd by the Multitude.
20. *Flavius Gundemar*, Died after a Reign of 2 Years.
21. *Sisebutus*, subdu'd the *Asturians*, and Reign'd 8 Years and a half.
22. *Recaredus II.* Son to the last, 3 Months.
23. *Flavius Suinthila*, Son to *Recaredus I.* quite expell'd the *Romans*, and was the first absolute Monarch of all Spain; but was expell'd, after 10 Years Reign, by,
24. *Sisenandus*, who held the Crown almost 4 Years, and Died in 635.
25. *Chintila*, Elected, Reign'd 4 Years.
26. *Tulga*, but 2 Years
27. *Flavius Chindasuindus*, got the Crown by Force, and held it 7 Years.
28. *Flavius Reccesuinthus*, 24 Years.
29. *Wamba*, *Ubamba*, or *Bamba*, of whom many fabulous Stories are written, was depos'd by,
30. *Flavius Ervigius*, who Reign'd 7 Years.
31. *Flavius Egica*, his Son-in-Law, 14 Years.
32. *Wiriza*, Son to *Egica*, a most wicked Prince, to disable the People from Revolting, threw down the Walls of most Towns, and destroy'd all the Arms that could be found. He Reign'd 10 Years.
33. *Roderick*, succeeded him in the Throne and his Lewdness, which prov'd the Ruin of him and Spain; for having ravish'd the Daughter of Count *Julian*, his great Favourite, that Traitor call'd in the *Saracens*, who coming over 60000 strong, overthrew the King in a Battle, which lasted 8 Days. What became of him was never known; but the Infidels in 8 Months overran the greatest Part of Spain; which afterwards took up above 700 Years to recover from them. He Reign'd but 3 Years, and was thus overthrown in 714.
34. *Pelago*, or *Pelagius*, of what Race is uncertain; being powerful in *Biscay* and *Asturias*. gather'd a small Body of Men, routed and gave a Check to the Infidels, and recover'd many Places from them; for which he was declar'd King, and Reign'd 19 Years in these Mountainous Countries.
35. *Favila*, his Son, succeeded, and Reign'd but 2 Years.
36. *Alonso*, the Crown now becoming Hereditary, succeeded in Right of his Wife *Ermesenda*, the Daughter of *Pelagius*; overthrew the *Moors* in 34 Battles, and Reign'd 18 Years.
37. *Fruela*, his Son, kill'd 54000 *Moors* in one Battle; and Reign'd 11 Years, was murder'd by his Brother
38. *Aurelius*, who Rul'd 6 Years.
39. *Silon*, in the Right of his Wife *Adofinda*, the Daughter of King *Alonso*, enjoy'd the Crown 9 Years.
40. *Mauregatus*, Bastard-Son to King *Alonso*, usurp'd the Throne, and sat in it 5 Years, with the Assistance of the *Moors*.
41. *Bermudo*, or *Veremundus*, whose Son not known, but of the Royal Family, 6 Years.
42. *Alonso II.* call'd the Chast, Son to *Fruela*, the first that call'd himself King of *Oviedo*. gain'd much from the *Moors*, Reign'd 48 Years, and Died in 843.
43. *Ramiro*, Son to *Bermudo*, slew 60000 *Moors* at the Battle of *Clavijo*, and Reign'd 7 Years.
44. *O donno*, Son to *Ramiro*, gain'd much upon the Infidels, and Reign'd 12 Years.
45. *Alonso III.* call'd the Great, Son to *Ordonno*, gain'd many Victories, and Reign'd 48 Years.
46. *Garcia*, Son to *Alonso*, 3 Years.
47. *Ordonno II.* Brother to *Garcia*, settled his Court at *Leon*, gain'd some Victories over the *Moors*, but was himself defeated by them, going to assist the King of *Navarre*. He put to Death the Earls of *Castile*, *James Porcelos*, *Nunno Fernandez*, and *Ferdinand Anzules Almondar*. The King of *Navarre* here mention'd, was descended from *Garcia Ximenez I.* Proclaim'd by a few People about the *Pyrenean Mountains*, the Time of whose Inauguration is uncertain; but he Died in the Year 758. His Successors by degrees extending their Dominions, were at last Masters of all that we now call *Navarre*. The first Earl of *Castile* we find in History, was *Roderick*, who liv'd in the Days of *Alonso* the Chast, above-mention'd. These Earls were created by the Kings of *Leon*, and subject to them, till growing powerful they usurp'd a Sovereign Authority. About the Year 815. *Lewis*, Son to *Charlemain*, King of *France*, having taken *Barcelona* from the *Moors*, made one *Bernard*, a *French* Man, Governor and Earl of it; and his Successors, like those of *Castile*, at length pretended to be Absolute. Much the same, and about the same Time, was the Rise of the Kingdom of *Aragon*, which began in one *Aznar*, created Earl of *Aragon* by *Garcia*, King of *Navarre*, whose Successors afterwards grew up to be Kings of *Aragon*. But to return to the Lines of the Kings of Spain.
48. *Fruela II.* Brother to *Ordonno*, usurp'd the Crown from his Nephews, and Reign'd 1 Year and 2 Months.
49. *Alonso IV.* Son to *Ordonno*, Reign'd 6 Years, and resign'd the Crown to
50. *Ramiro*, his Brother, who was very successful against the *Moors*, killing 80000 of them in one Battle, and Died in 950. when he had Reign'd 20 Years.
51. *Ordonno III.* Son to *Ramiro*, 5 Years.
52. *Sancho*, call'd the Fat, or the Gross, Brother to *Ordonno*, was expell'd for a Time by *Ordonno*, Son to King *Alonso*; but recover'd his Crown, with the Assistance of the *Moors*; was the first that made the Gentry of Spain free from Taxes; and was Poison'd in the Year 967. when he had Reign'd 12 Years.
53. *Ramiro III.* Son to *Sancho*, 15 Years.
54. *Bermudo II.* call'd the Gouty, Son to King *Ordonno*, suffer'd mighty Losses by the *Moors* and rebellious Counts of *Castile*; the former destroying many Cities, and even those of *Leon* and *Compostella* in *Galicia*; yet he afterward overthrew them, and Reig'd 17 Years.
55. *Alonso V.* Son to *Bermudo*, recover'd the City of *Leon*; but was kill'd at the Siege of *Viseo* in *Portugal*, after 29 Years Reign, Anno 1028.
56. *Bermudo III.* had Peace with the *Moors*; but King *Sancho* of *Navarre* having possess'd himself of *Castile*, in Right of his Wife *Nunna*, eldest Sister to *Garcia*, Earl of that Country, compell'd him by force of Arms to give his Sister *Sancha* in Marriage to his Son *Ferdinand*, before by him declar'd King of *Castile*, that so *Bermudo* having no Issue, he might inherit the Crown, Yet this did



did not hinder the renewing of the War,, in which *Bermudo* was kill'd. after a Reign of 9 Years.

57. *Ferdinand*, then possess'd himself of the Kingdom of *León*, in Right of his Wife, and gain'd many Places from the Infidels, overthrew his elder Brother *Garcia*, King of *Navarre*, and Reign'd gloriously 28 Years. At his Death he divided his Dominions.

58. *Sancho* II. his eldest Son, had *Castile*; *Alonso* II. *León*; and *Garcia* III. *Galicia*; both whom he soon expell'd, and was himself kill'd at the Siege of the City of *Zamora*, which his Father had left to his Sister *Urraca*, in the Year 1073. when he had Reign'd 6 Years and 9 Months.

59. *Alonso* VI. of *León*, and I. of *Castile*, Brother to *Sancho*, succeeded him in all his Dominions; was successful against the *Moors*, and took from them the City of *Toledo*, and made it his Residence. His Reign lasted 35 Years, and he Died in 1108.

60. *Alonso* VII. before King of *Aragon*, now inherited the Dominions of *Castile* and *León*, in Right of his Wife *Urraca*, Sister and Heiress to *Alonso* VI. but she being a Lewd Woman, he was divorc'd from her; and the Crown being hers, his Right ceas'd; so that,

61. *Alonso* VIII. the Son of the said Queen *Urraca*, by her first Husband *Raymund*, Earl of *Burgundy*, compelling her to resign, after a Reign of 15 Years, was Crown'd at *Toledo*, and took the Title of Emperor. In his Days *Alonso*, Son to King *Henry* of *Burgundy*, whom King *Alonso* VI. had made Earl of *Portugal*, usurp'd that Dominion, and took upon him the Title of King, which he left to his Posterity. Our *Alonso* took many Towns from the *Moors*, and Reign'd 34 Years. His Death was in 1157.

62. *Sancho*, Son to King *Alonso*, succeeded in the Dominions of *Castile*, those of *León* being given to his Brother *Ferdinand*, and Reign'd but one Year.

63. *Alonso* IX. call'd the Good and the Noble, Son to *Sancho*, Marry'd *Ellenor* the Daughter of *Henry* II. King of *England*; and being joyn'd by the Kings of *Aragon* and *Navarre*. slew 200000 *Moors* in one Battle, which was call'd of *Nabas de Tolosa*. and by that Advantage gain'd many Towns. He Reign'd 56 Years, and Died in 1214.

64. *Henry*, Son to *Alonso*, Reign'd but 3 Years, being kill'd at the Age of 14 by a Tile falling from the top of the House.

65. *Ferdinand* III. call'd the Holy, Son to *Berengaria*, King *Henry's* Sister, succeeding in both the Kingdoms of *Castile* and *León*, took from the *Moors* the Cities of *Cordova*, *Murcia*, *Jaca*, *Carmona*, *Sevil*, and many other Places; and Reign'd 35 Years. His Death was in Anno 1252.

66. *Alonso* X. Son to *Ferdinand*, call'd the Learned, for his great Knowledge in Astrology and other Sciences, was Chosen Emperor by some of the Electors, and took upon him the Title; but his many Troubles hindred his going out of *Spain*, where he suffer'd much from rebellious Subjects, and his wicked Son *Sancho*; yet Reign'd 32 Years, and Died in 1284.

67. *Sancho* IV. call'd the Brave, second Son to *Alonso*, usurp'd the Crown from his two Nephews, *Alonso* and *Ferdinand*, Sons to his elder Brother *Ferdinand*, from whom the present Dukes of *Medina Celi* are lineally descended. Much Blood was spilt in his Time, on account of the rightful Heirs to the Crown; but he prevail'd, and Dying

in the Year 1295. after a Reign of 11 Years, he left the Crown to his Son,

68. *Ferdinand* IV. who had many Troubles, being unlawfully possess'd of the Throne. In his Days the Order of Knights Templars was suppress'd; and he having wrongfully condemn'd two Gentlemen to Death, they at their Execution summon'd him to appear before the Tribunal of God within 30 Days, and the 30th Day he Died, after a Reign of 17 Years, in 1312. for which he was afterwards call'd *Ferdinand the Summon'd*.

69. *Alonso* XI. Son to *Ferdinand*, in whose Time the famous Battle was fought at *Tarifa*, by all the Spanish Kings united, against the *Moors*, of which 200000 were slain. He Reign'd 38 Years, and Died in 1350.

70. *Peter*, commonly call'd the Cruel, Son to *Alonso*, had continual Broils with his Subjects, and was in the end murder'd by his Bastard Brother *Henry*, after 19 Years Reign.

71. *Henry* II. Bastard Son to *Alonso*, enjoy'd the Fruits of his Uturpation and Murder 10 Years

72. *John*, Son to *Henry*, had Wars with *Portugal*, to assert his Right to that Crown by his Wife *Beatrice*, who was Heiress to it; but *John*, the Bastard of King *Ferdinand*, carry'd it from him, and he at last was kill'd by a Fall from his Horse, in the Year 1390. when he had Reign'd 11.

73. *Henry* III. call'd the Sickly, Son to *John*; he Marry'd the Lady *Catherine*, Daughter to *John* of *Gaunt*, Duke of *Lancaster*. and Grandchild to King *Peter* of *Castile*; Reign'd 16 Years, and Died in 1406.

74. *John* II. Son to *Henry*, who being an Infant, the rebellious Nobility would have given the Crown to his Uncle *Ferdinand*, which he generously refus'd; a wonderful Example of Justice, and supported the young King in his Throne, till he was call'd himself to take Possession of that of *Aragon*. He being son. *Don Alvaro de Luna* so entirely won the young King's Heart, that he had the whole Power of Government; for which the Great-ones maliciously persecuted him, till they had his Head cut off, without being able to prove any one Crime upon him. The rest of this King's Reign was no less full of Troubles than the former part, yet he held it 48 Years, and Died in 1454.

75. *Henry*, Son to *John*, was most villainously treated by his rebellious Subjects, who would have set up his Brother *Alonso* against him; but he Dying, some of them submitted, and others offer'd the Crown to his Sister *Elizabeth*, whom they had oblig'd the King to declare his Heiress, tho' he had a Daughter of his own. In this turbulent Condition he Reign'd 20 Years, and Died in 1474.

76. *Ferdinand*, Son to King *John* of *Aragon*, having Marry'd *Elizabeth*, commonly call'd *Isabel*, Sister to King *Henry*, they jointly usurp'd the Crown due to *Joanna*. Daughter of the said *Henry*, and thus united the Crowns of *Castile* and *Aragon*. They conquer'd the Kingdom of *Granada*, which was the last Footing the *Moors* had in *Spain*. In their Days *Columbus* discover'd the *West-Indies*, which have since been such an Addition to the Monarchy of *Spain*. Next they added the Kingdom of *Navarre* to their Dominions, and subdu'd all the Kingdom of *Naples* in *Italy*. Thus was all *Spain*, except *Portugal*, united under one Monarch, and mighty Foreign Dominions added to it, which has continu'd ever since in the same Posture



- posture. They reign'd 30 Years, and *Elizabeth* dying in 1504, the Crown devolv'd to,
77. *Philip*, Son to the Emperor *Maximilian*, Arch-Duke of *Austria* and Duke of *Burgundy*, who marry'd *Joanna* Daughter of *Isabel*, in whose Right he succeeded in the Kingdoms of *Castile*, but Dy'd in the Year 1506, when he had reign'd but 2 Years, and Queen *Joanna* being distracted, her Father *Ferdinand* took upon him the Government again, and held it till 1516, when he departed this Life, and with him ends her Reign, which was of 13 Years, for by reason of the Queen's incapacity to Govern.
78. *Charles*, her Son by *Philip*, came into *Spain*, from *Flanders*, where he had been born and bred, and was proclaim'd King of the united Kindoms in 1517. The Emperor *Maximilian* dying in 1519. *Charles* was chosen in his Place, being the 5th of that Name, and became thereby the greatest Prince that ever was in *Europe* at least since *Charlemain*; for as we have shewn in its place, as Grandson to *Maximilian* (who marry'd the Heiress of *Charles* the Warlike, Duke of *Burgundy*) he possessed in his own right the XVII. Provinces of the *Netherlands*, and now in his Mother's Right he succeeded to *Spain*, *Naples* and the *Indies*; By Election, as we have said, he wore the Imperial Crown. And to all this added the Dutchy of *Milan*. In his time there was a Rebellion of the Commons in *Spain*, which was soon suppress'd, and no such thing has been since known in the Dominions of *Castile*. The next War was with *France*, in which King *Francis* was taken Prisoner by the *Spaniards*. The Emperor had also Wars in *Germany*; Took *Tunis* in *Africk*, made an unfortunate Expedition to *Argier*, and reign'd gloriously 40 Years, at the end whereof in 1556 the Year he more gloriously, of his own free will resign'd the Empire to his Brother *Ferdinand*, and the Dominions of *Spain* to his Son *Philip*. By him the Crown of *Spain* had the Addition of all the Low-Countries, the Dukedom of *Burgundy* and that of *Milan*. After his Resignation, he liv'd two Years a Holy Life, in the Monastery of *St. Justa*, of the Order of *St. Jerome*, near *Placencia* and dy'd in 1558.
79. *Philip II.* Son to *Charles V.* from whom the *Dutch* revolted, and being supported by *France* and *England* could never be reduc'd. The *Moriscoes*, or Race of the *Moors*, rebell'd in *Spain*, but were entirely subdu'd. Prince *Charles* the King's eldest Son was put to Death by his Father's Command, on some jealousy. In the Year 1571 Don *John* of *Austria*, *Philip's* Bastard Brother, obtain'd the famous Naval Victory over the *Turks* at *Lepanto*. *Henry* the Cardinal, King of *Portugal*, dying without Issue, King *Philip* in 1580 possess'd himself of that Crown, as Son of *Elizabeth*, the Daughter of King *Emanuel*, and by that means, united all the Kingdoms of *Spain* under one Head. In 1588, he set out the famous Fleet against *England*, most of which perish'd by Storms. He built the *Escorial* in 30 Years, and besides many other Cruelties he was guilty of, oppress'd the Kingdom of *Aragon*, for asserting its own Rights, and at length dy'd, in the Year 1598, after a bustling, but inglorious Reign of 42 Years.
80. *Philip III.* Son to *Philip II.* The most remarkable Action of whose Reign was the Banishing of the *Moriscoes*, or Progeny of the *Moors* out of *Spain*. The number of those that departed, is by some set

at 8, by others 900000 Souls. He Reign'd above 22 Years, and departed this life in 1621.

81. *Philip IV.* Son to *Philip III.* was a Prince wholly addicted to Pleasure, yet intangled in bloody Wars all his life time. With the *Dutch*, who revolted under his Grandfather, and whom at last he was oblig'd to allow to be a free State. With *France* upon many old Pretensions; with the *Rebellious Catalonians*, whom he reduc'd; and with *Portugal*, which revolted, and by the assistance of *France* and *England*, prevail'd and has been ever since an independent Monarchy. He Reign'd 44 Years, and dy'd in 1665.

82. *Charles II.* Son to *Philip*, a weak Prince, both in Body and Mind, in whose Minority a Peace was concluded with *Portugal*. He had Wars with *France* the greatest part of his Life, but always came off loser. He reign'd 35 Years, and dy'd in 1700, being the last of the *Spanish* Male Line, which was the occasion of the bloody Wars that ensu'd and still continue, on Account of the Succession to that Crown. *Philip* Duke of *Anjou*, Grandson to the present King of *France* *Lewis XIV.* being immediately proclaim'd King, and soon after receiv'd in *Spain*, as Grandson to King *Charles II's* eldest Sister. But *Lewis XIV.* having upon his Marriage with the Infanta of *Spain*, for himself and his Heirs. in the most solemn manner renounc'd all pretention to the Succession by virtue of this Marriage; The late Emperor *Leopold* being the next Heir laid claim to the Crown, and gave his Right to his second Son, the Arch Duke *Charles*, who was immediately declar'd King of *Spain*, and at this present time (*Ann.* 1708) is in possession of all the *Italian* part of the *Spanish* Dominions, and a good part of the Continent of *Spain*, and is in a fair way of obtaining the whole.

By this succinct Table of Kings it appears, that the Crown of *Spain* is hereditary, and has been so ever since the *Moors* overran that Country: And it is to be observ'd that the Heir to the Crown is always call'd Prince of *Asturias*.

The DOMINIONS of this Crown are certainly the largest, and perhaps the wealthiest of any Monarchy in the World; for the Kingdoms of *Mexico* and *Peru* in *America* extend about 2000 Leagues in Length from North to South, besides all the Islands and other vast Dominions in those Parts, whose infinite Wealth is well known: *Spain* itself we see here is one of the largest Countries of *Europe*, besides which it possesses the Kingdom of *Naples*, the Islands of *Sicily* and *Sardinia*, the Dukedom of *Milan*, part of the Low Countries, all in *Europe*: the *Canary* Islands in *Africk* and the *Philippine* Islands in *Asia*, wherefore the *Spaniards* with Reason say, the Sun never sets upon their Kings Dominions. It seems almost incredible that a Kingdom having such large and wealthy Dominions, should be so weak, as experience shews it to be; yet this will seem no wonder, if we consider that the great distance between all those several Dominions is a great weakness; then the continual Wars we may say for some Ages have extremely wasted it; but above all the ill Government ever since *Charles V.* has been more destructive than even all the rest, the Revenues have been extravagantly wasted by extortion, and consum'd by Pensions to such an infinite number of Persons that very little remains to the Crown.



Having mention'd the REVENUE it will not be improper to give the Estimate of it we find in *Rodrigo Mendez Silva*, as it stood in the Year 1675, when he writ, which is thus. The Revenue of the Crown arising from *Spain* only, without including the *West Indies*, or any foreign Parts: is 28 Millions of Ducats, which is near eight Millions Sterling, Yearly. The Revenue of the Archbishops and Bishops of *Spain* all together 1900000 Ducats. The Prebendaries Parishes and other Ecclesiastical Benefices, as much more. The Estates of the Dukes, who are *Grandeess* 1990000 Ducats; those of *Marquesses* *Grandeess* 350000; those of *Earls* *Grandeess* 350000; those of *Dukes* *Marquesses* and *Earls* who are no *Grandeess* 3150000. By this some Guess may be given at the rest, which it is impossible for us to come at.

The Money of *Spain* is of several sorts; Gold Pieces, as Pistoles about 17 Shillings value, half Pistoles, double Pistoles and Quadruples; the Pistoles are call'd also *Doblones*. The Silver Coin, Royals, which we commonly reckon worth 6 Pence; Pieces of Eight, that is 8 Royals, which we find are worth 4 Shillings 6 Pence, or more, and therefore the Royal must be above 6 Pence; half and quarter pieces of Eight, but these are rare. Royals Brads, which they call *Vellon*, are not any particular Pieces, but only a way of reckoning as we do by Pounds, and the Royal Brad is worth but 4 Pence. Of small Brads Money call'd *Quartees* and *Ochavos*, or Half-pence and Farthings there is an infinite quantity. *Maravedies*, tho' often nam'd in Accounts, have no being but the Name, as Mites among us. Ducats will frequently be here mention'd, and which are no particular Pieces, but are of the same value as the *Spanish Escudos*, or Crowns, and those are worth five Shillings and Sixpence of our Money, at Sixpence for a Royal Plate, but six Shillings, allowing the Royal to be above Sixpence, as was observ'd above.

The CORTES are the same thing as a Parliament, being an Assembly of Lords Spiritual and Temporal and Commons, whereof the Nobility and Clergy are much more numerous than in *England*, and the Commons much fewer, for there are generally but 17 Cities, and one Market Town, that send their Representatives to the Cortes of *Castile*; each sends two, and are these; *Burgos*, *Soria*, *Segovia*, *Avila*, *Valladolid*, in old *Castile*; *Leon*, *Salamanca*, *Zamora*, *Toro* in the Kingdom of *Leon*; *Toledo*, *Cuenca*, *Gaudalajara*, *Madrid* in new *Castile*; *Sevil*, *Granada*, *Cordova*, *Murcia* and *Jaen* for *Andaluzia*. This is for the Dominions of *Castile*; for those of *Aragon*, *Catalonia* and *Valencia* meet apart, and *Biscay* is a separate Lordship. In the chusing of the Commons, the King generally recommends the Persons, and is always comply'd with.

The great Councils which sit in the King's Palace at *Madrid* are, 1. The Cabinet Council, to which seldom above 3 are admitted, besides the King. and resolves matters of the greatest moment. 2. The Council of State, like our Privy Council, instituted by *Charles V.* Ann. 1526. 3. The Royal Council of *Castile*, instituted by King *Ferdinand III.* Ann. 1246. for the particular Affairs of that Kingdom, and the ultimate Appeal in all Law Sutes, for which reason there are 12 able Lawyers in it, and the Person appealing to it is to lay down 1500 Pistoles, which he forfeits if cast, to prevent vexatious and needless Appeals. 4. The Council of *Aragon* for the Affairs of that Crown and its dependences, by

*Charles V.* Ann. 1542. 5. The Council of War for all for martial Affairs. 6. The Council of *Italy* for the *Spanish* Dominions there, by *Charles V.* Ann. 1556. 7. The Council of the *Indies* for disposing of all things in those Parts, by *Charles V.* Ann. 1524. 8. The Council de *Hazienda*, or of the Revenues, for the better management of them, by *Philip III.* An. 1602. 9. The Council of Orders for regulating all things belonging to the Knights of *Santiago*, *Alcantara* and *Calatrava*, by King *Ferdinand*, Ann. 1489. 10. The Council of *Flanders*, to take Charge of the *Low-Countries*, by *Philip IV.* Ann. 1628. 11. The Council of the *Inquisition*, by *Ferdinand*, Ann. 1483. 12. *La Junta de Millones*, or Council of Millions, by *Philip IV.* Ann. 1653, so call'd because the Revenue passes through its Hands, and is an Exchequer Court, to assist the Council of the Revenue. 13. The Council of the *Croizade*, by Queen *Joanna*, Ann. 1509, for the receiving and disposing of the Money rais'd upon the Bull of the *Croisade*. 14. The Council de *Aposento*, or of Lodgings, for Lodging and Quarters all Persons in the King's Service, by King *Alonso*, Ann. 1341. 15. The Council de *Camara*, or of the Chamber, for furnishing all Posts and Offices vacant. 16. *La Junta de Bosques Reales*, by *Charles V.* to take care of all the King's Woods and Forreits.

The GRANDEES of *Spain*, are the Prime Nobility, who have that Title given them for some extraordinary Service, and their Privilege is to be cover'd before the King. There are Noblemen of all Degrees, as Dukes, *Marquesses* and *Earls* admitted to this Honour, and others of all the said Degrees have it not, it being as has been said, a peculiar distinctive mark of Favour, bestow'd on some Families, and not inherent to the Titles of Dukes, *Marquesses* and *Earls*. There are two Classes, or Ranks of them, only distinguishable by their being so call'd, and that the last created of the first Class, takes Place of the Eldest of the second Class, for they are all cover'd in the King's Presence, and the method is, that as soon as the King puts on his Hat, they put on theirs.

To give an account of the Genius, Manners and Customs of our Neighbour *European* Nations, seems needless, where every Man sets up for a Judge of them, and believing he knows as much as another, seldom Credits any thing, but what jures with his own Notion, and that for the most part is only Reflection and Scandal. Thus we generally see the Characters given by our Writers of *Forreign* Nations, are rather *Invectives* and *Libels*, than impartial Representations. To give the *Spaniards* their due, no Man, who has read any thing of History can deny their Bravery, and being excellent Soldiers in all Ages. Their Genius for Learning is inferior to none, and yet it must be own'd that of late Years, they have so much apply'd themselves to metaphysical Notions, wherein they exceed all others, that they have in a manner forsaken more useful Studies. For Loyalty to their Princes no Nation can compare, especially with the Subjects of the Crown of *Castile*, and all of them in general have been known to starve in the Armies, yet none of them ever to desert. What account may be given of their Wit, appears by the many Books, of that sort we have Translated into *English*, besides many more: In a word, they are zealous in Religion, constant in Friendship, modest in Behaviour, undaunted in Danger, patient in Hardships, charitable,



charitable, generous and free hearted. This, those who can endure nothing but railing will call a Panegyrick, rather than a Character, and yet it is no more than what is literally true. But they are not without their Faults, they are too much addicted to the fair Sex, and what Nation is not? They are Haughty, which is rather in Appearance than otherwise, for no People in the World are more Courteous. 'Tis true, this Humour is too Epidemical, for those of the lowest Ranks and Condition are as Proud as the highest, which has this very ill effect, namely, that they think themselves above mechanick Arts and servile Employments, whereby themselves are Starv'd, while *French* Men and other Foreigners run away with great Earnings by performing those Works here. They are Passionate, and carry their Resentments too high, and being nice to a Fault in points of Honour, are apt to be guilty of Bloodshed. To conclude, this is a Subject too difficult to handle, and there are good and bad of all Nations.

But these *Spanish* Authors have been a little too kind to their own Country, if we may believe Mr. *Willoughby's* Character of it, who spent near three Months there, in the Year, 1664. and pass'd from *Roussillon* thro' *Catalonia*, *Valencia*, *Murcia*, *Granada*, *Andalusia* and *Castile*, and so to *Guiposcoa*, whereby he may be thought to have seen enough of the Land to be able to give an account of it; but a transient view only is not sufficient to enable a Man to give a full Judgment of a Country, since the appearance of many things at that instant may be different from what they are at other times; and the novelty and strangeness of Persons and Places we see but once, may make us have wrong Notions of them. It is apparent that Gentleman was not inclin'd to speak with any advantage of *Spain*, since he passes over many things worthy of observation without so much as naming 'em, and those he does name he gives not their due praise; as for Example, the *Plaza Mayor*, or great Square at *Madrid*, which every Body grants to be both Magnificent and Beautiful to a high degree, he only calls a fair *Piazza*, or Market. And the *Escorial* which is past contradiction a most noble Palace, he only names, as if not worthy of any Character: Abundance of instances of like sort are found in the relation of his Journey, and therefore his descriptions of Towns are not to be very much regarded. His general Character of the Country is in sum as follows:

*Spain* is in many Places, not to say most, very thin of People, and almost desolate; and in all the Towns, especially in the South and West Parts, many Ruins of Houses are seen. The Tilled Land is only so much as lies near Towns, the rest a wild Country wherein grows Rosemary, Lavender, Juniper, &c. and at least one half of *Spain* is Mountainous. They have little or no Hay, the Horses and Mules feeding on Straw. The People (says he) are not abstemious, as is reported, Poverty more than Virtue leads 'em to that, for where they Eat at another Man's Cost they are free enough; they are so Lazy that the Shopkeepers will often deny they have a Commodity, rather than take the Pains to reach it, and the ordinary People will not be hired

to carry a Burden under an excessive Price. Of their fantastick Pride, even in the midst of Poverty, all the World rings; if you would employ them upon any thing servile, they cry, send for a *French* Man; and indeed the *French* do almost all the Work in *Spain*, and I believe (says he) one fourth or fifth part of the People in *Spain* are of that Nation. In all kind of Learning the *Spaniards* are far behind all the rest of *Europe*, their chief Study being the old Philosophy and School Divinity. In Religion they are the most rigid *Romanists* in the World, and have a Saying, *If you leave the Church in one Puntillo, God b' w' y'*. For Fornication and Impurity they are the worst of all Nations in *Europe*, and have impudent Whores in their Inns, who are to be hired at a very cheap rate. They Travel mostly on Mules, who are better at climbing Mountains than Horses, will endure longer and harder Travel, and are maintained with less charge. The People take great liberty in censuring the evil Counsellors, and complaining of Taxes, but at the same time express great Honour for the King, who they say means well. Bread is often very scarce and dear, especially when the Summer proves Dry, for the Soil is in great part barren, and the People's Sloth makes a great deal lie Untill'd that would be Prolifick. As to their Dress which that Author describes, every Body is acquainted with it. And the rest of what he remarks is too Trite, and therefore we shall here conclude the summary of what he has said.

The general LANGUAGE of *Spain* is that they commonly call *Romance* or *Espannol*, and sometimes *Castellano*. The first Name is taken from its Affinity to the *Latin* or *Roman*, which is so great that it frequently agrees in Words and Composition, so that there are several Pieces to be seen, which are both *Spanish* and *Latin*. The second Name is plain *Spanish*, and the third *Castilian*, because in that Kingdom it is spoken in most perfection. The *Portuguese* resembles it, but is more harsh and uncoth. In *Catalonia* and *Valencia* they have a peculiar Language used most by the poorest sort, which is a Dialect of the old *French*, but very corrupt and unintelligible to others. The *Biscayners* retain the old Language of *Spain*, that was in use before the Conquest of the *Romans*, quite different from all the rest, yet *Biscayners*, *Catalonians* and *Valencians*, all speak *Spanish*, tho' not generally so perfectly as the *Castilians*.

*Spanish* Authors contend that the Christian RELIGION was first planted among them by St. James the Apostle, four Years after our Saviour's Death. St. *Chrisostome*, *Theodoret* and others affirm that St. Paul was actually there, and others assert that St. Peter sent Bishops thither. No doubt but Christianity was very early in *Spain*, and imbraced by many Thousands. The *Gothish* Kings were *Arrians*, till *Recaredus*, the XVII. of that Race, coming to the Crown in the Year 586. restor'd the *Catholic* Religion, since when there has never been any Change. Having thus run through all that need be said of it in general, it is time we come to speak of the particular Kingdoms and Provinces, in the same Order as they have been rank'd in speaking of the modern Division of *Spain*.



## C H A P. II.

*The Kingdom of GALICIA.*

**T**HIS Kingdom is wash'd on the West by the Ocean, on the North by the *Cantabrian Sea*, or Bay of *Biscay*, on the East it borders on *Asturias* and *Leon*, and on the South upon *Portugal*, from which it is parted next the Sea by the River *Minho*; its figure almost square, being about 40 Leagues over every way. The Name has alter'd very little since the time of the *Romans*, for *Justin* calls it *Gallæcia*, and says it abounded in excellent Horses, Copper, Lead, Vermilion, and was wonderful Rich in Gold, insomuch that they often turn'd it up in Plowing. *Gallæcia* is suppos'd to be a corruption of *Gallio-Græcia*.

To speak of what it is at present, it produces Wheat, Miller, all sorts of Herbs, plenty of Cattle, especially Swine, whose Bacon far exceeds the *Westphalia*; strong Mules, good Horses, but not large, and noble Wines, as is well known, particularly that of *Ribadavia*. The Turnips here grow to such a Bulk that they often serve for Children to sit on like Blocks, and are so sweet that they often eat slices of them raw. It is Cold for *Spain*, and very Mountainous, but those Mountains afford plenty of Firing and Timber for building Houses and Ships, and in them were Mines of Gold, Silver and other Metals, as all ancient Authors affirm, but at present either worn out or neglected; but there is very good Marble. The Soil also produces Flax, whereof they make Linnen Cloth.

The Natives speak *Spanish* somewhat mix'd with *Portuguese*, which makes it harsh like our Northern *English*. They are naturally Compassionate, Docile, Affable and Constant in what they take to; the meaner sort Laborious and Industrious. *Pemna-lofa*, says they, can serve their King with 8000 Foot, and 2000 Horse; being under an *Adelantado* or Lord-Lieutenant, a Dignity entail'd in the Family of the Earls of *Ribadavia*, under whom the King appoints a Governour and Captain General.

In this Kingdom there are 7 Cities, very many Towns and Villages, 54 strong Holds, but most of them gon to ruin, 48 Sea-Ports great and small, one Archbishoprick, and 4 Bishopricks. The Chief Towns of *Galicia* are,

<i>Compostela.</i>	} <i>Mondornedo.</i>
<i>Lugo.</i>	
<i>Tuy.</i>	
<i>Orense.</i>	
	} <i>Coruna, or the Groyne.</i>
	} <i>Retanzos.</i>

**COMPOSTELA**, or *St. Jago de Compostela*, the Capital City of *Galicia*, is seated betwixt the two Rivers *Sar* and *Sarela*, which meet half a League from it, and are call'd the Archbishop's River, at the Foot of the high Mountain *Pedroso*, encompass'd with strong Walls, in which there are 7 Gates, the Work of *Don Sancho* the I. King of *Leon*, An. 966. It has several fair Streets and spacious Squares, and stately Structures, besides a Castle. The Territory yields all necessary Provisions for the support of Life; the Inhabitants of the City amount to 10000, in 12 Parishes, with 7 Monasteries of Friars, 5 of

Nuns, 4 Chappels, and 4 Hospitals, one of which is the magnificent and delicate reception for Pilgrims, which never has less than 200 Sick. Here is a sovereign Court, consisting of 6 Judges, a Court of Inquisition, and an University erected by *D. Alonso de Fonseca*, Archbishop of the Place, An. 1532. with 4 magnificent Colleges, when the City was made Tax-free. The Archbishops is absolute in Spirituals and Temporals, but the City is govern'd by a Corregidor and two Alcaldes, keeps two Fairs in a Year, and a Market every Week. The Name of *Compostela* is a Composition of *Campo Estela*, the Field of the Star, given it by the Founder King *Alonso* the Chast, on Account of a Star said to have appear'd over it several Nights, to shew where the Apostle *St. James's* Body lay hid. It was erected into an Archbishoprick by Pope *Calixtus*, in the Year, 1120. and has 20 dignify'd Priests, 43 Canons, 18 Demi-Canons, 100 principal Chaplains, and 50 smaller in the Cathedral; the Archbishop's Revenue is 80000 Ducats a Year, or better; within his Diocess are 1183 Parishes. All the dignify'd Priests, and 7 of the Canons, have the Title of Cardinals, like those of *Rome*, and are allow'd to say a Pontifical Mass in *St. James's* Chappel. The Apostle's Church is most Majestick, the Cloister joyning to it the best in all *Spain*, the Cupula of a vast height and extent, adorn'd with four stately Towers about it, besides another far exceeding them all, built by *Lewis* the XI. King of *France*, in which there are 24 extraordinary great Bells, one of them of a wonderful Magnitude. The Tabernacle is the noblest in the World, whereon four Kings of *Spain* hold up the Effigies of the Apostle, and six Angels standing on as many Columns support all the Tabernacle.

*Lugo*, formerly *Lucus Augusti*, whence the present Name by Corruption, is a handsome, tho' small City, not far from the source of the River *Minho*, 70 Miles from *Compostela* to the East, enclosed with strong Walls, so wide that two Coaches can go abreast on them, on which are 30 Towers and 5 Gates. The Territory produces all sorts of Provisions, and among the rest excellent Turnips of 50 Pounds weight. The Inhabitants 1000 Families, many of them Gentry of Quality, in 3 Parishes, with 2 Monasteries of Friars and 2 of Nuns, 1 Seminary, 5 Chappels and 2 Hospitals. It is the See of a Bishop, and to the Cathedral belong 11 Dignify'd Priests, 24 Canons, and 8 Demi-Canons, the Bishoprick containing 1020 Parishes, the Prelates Revenue 18000 Ducats.

*Tuy*, another pleasant City, seated near the Mouth of the River *Tuy*, in a Valley about 40 Miles South from *Compostela*, has 5 Gates, 3 Markets, curious Gardens, delicious Wines, variety of Fish, and 1000 Families, in 2 Parishes, with one Monastery of *Dominicans*, 2 of Nuns and an Hospital. It is also a Bishop's See, and to the Cathedral belong 8 dignify'd Priests, 27 Canons, and 4 Demi-Canons, the Diocess containing 246 Parishes, the Prelate's Revenue 10000 Ducats.



*Orense*, another Episcopal Sea, is seated on the Banks of the River *Minho*, over which it has a strong Bridge, 40 Miles South-East from *Compostela*, the Place Wall'd, well Built, with handfom Streets, has plenty of Provisions, 2000 Families, in 4 Parishes one Monastery of Friars, a College of Jesuits, a good Hospital, 4 Chappels. The *Romans* call'd it *Aque Calida* and *Urentes*, from which last by Corruption came *Orense*, which name it had by reason that within it there are Springs so hot, that they will boil an Egg, and are us'd for washing, but not medicinally, but without it there are other hot Springs resorted to for the Cure of many Diseases. The Cathedral has 19 dignify'd Priests, 18 Canons, 12 Demi-Canons, in the Diocess 654 Parishes, the Prelate's Revenue 10000 Ducats.

*Mondonedo*, seated in a Hollow, not far from the Bay of *Biscay*, 70 Miles North East from *Compostella*, and but 16 from the Sea-coast, and Water'd by the Rivers *Valinadares* and *Sixto*: The City is Wall'd, has 5 Gates, handfom Buildings, 400 Families, one Parish, and without it one Monastery of Fryers, and one of Nuns. Its ancient Name was *Brutonia* and *Britonia*. The Cathedral has 11 Dignify'd Priests, 4 Canons, and 6 Demi-Canons; the Diocess 356 Parishes; The Bishop's Revenue 7000 Ducats; and he is Lord of the City.

*Corunna*; by English Seamen corruptly call'd The *Groin*, a famous Sea-port, on the Bay of *Biscay*, safe against the Winds, and defended by two Castles against Enemies. The City is Wall'd, and contains 1500 Families, in 4 Parishes; one of them Collegiate, besides 3 Monasteries of Friars, one of Nuns, 3 Hospitals, and 10 Chappels. It stands between the two Promontories of *Cape Finisferre* and *Cape Ortegal*, 30 Miles North from *Compostella*, and is Wealthy, being a Place of considerable Trade.

*Betanzos*, seated in a Plain to the Northward of *Corunna*, is a Sea-port, between the Rivers *Mandeo* and *Casca*, the City Wall'd, has 5 Gates, 1000 Families, 2 Parishes, 2 Monasteries of Friars, 1 Hospital, and 3 Chappels. The ancient Name was *Flavium Brigantium*, the last corrupted to *Betanzos*.

Besides these Cities, there are many Towns of Note, as *Padron*, on the Ocean; and has 2 stately Bridges over the Rivers *Sar* and *Ulla*; the one built by *Pompey* the Great, the other by *Julius Caesar*. *Noya*, between the Rivers *Tamor* and *St. Justo*, Wall'd. *Pontevedra*, Inhabited by 1500 Families. *Ribadavia*, famous for its delicious Wine, on the River *Avia*, not far from *Minho*, has 400 Houses. *Vigo*, not far from *Tuy*, famous of late, for the Burning of the Spanish and French Ships near it, by the English and Dutch, in the Year, 1702. Wall'd, and contains 500 Houses. *Bayona*, below *Vigo*, without the Mouth of *Minho*, 400 Houses. *Bivero*, a Sea-port, next to *Asturias*, at the Mouth of the River *Landrove*, 400 Houses, 2 Parishes, 4 Monasteries, 2 Hospitals, and a College. *Ribadeo*, another Port on the very Edge next *Asturias*, Wall'd, and containing 350 Houses, and the Title of an Earl. *Monforte*, another Earldom, has a Castle and Palace, with a stately Bridge over the River *Babe*, contains 100 Houses, 2 Parishes, 3 Monasteries, and 1 Colledge. *Monterrey*, within Land, towards the Frontiers of *Portugal*, Wall'd, with an old Castle, 1 College, 1 Monastery, and 1 Parish. *Ferrol*, on the Bay of *Biscay*, a good Harbour, 2 Leagues from *Corunna*. *Aranjo*, *Celanova*, *Viana*, *Condomar*, and many more, too tedious to describe.

It must be Noted, that *Cape Finisferre*, often mention'd by our Seamen, is the most Western Point of this Province.

### The Principality of ASTURIAS.

Some say *ASTURIAS* signifies a forgotten Land, in the *Basquish* Tongue; others derive the name from the *Asturians*, a Nation among the *Celts*, who came out of *Gaul*; and those who deduce all things from *Troy*, pretend it was call'd *Astiria*; some *Astir*, who after the Destruction of that City, came and Settled there. On the North it lyes along the Bay of *Biscay*; on the West borders on *Galicia*; on the South it is divided from *Castile* and *Leon*, by a ridge of Mountains, which, as was said in the General Description, has no Name to express it all, but takes several from the Places it passes by. On the Coast it reaches to the Port of *Llanes*, where it joyns a narrow slip of Land belonging to *Old Castile*, which runs to the Sea between *Asturias* and *Biscay*. The whole Length is about 45 Leagues, and the greatest Breadth under 20.

The General and Great Division of it is into two Parts, the one call'd *Asturias de Oviedo*, and the other *Asturias de Santillana*; but the Sub-division is into 7 Liberties, call'd *Merindades*, and a little separate Province, call'd *Liebana*. The whole makes a Principality, and is the Title of the King's Eldest Son, who is Stil'd Prince of *Asturias*, ever since the Year, 1388, when it was first conferr'd on *Henry*, Son to King *John* the First, upon that Prince's Marrying *Catherine*, the Daughter of *John* of Gaunt, Duke of *Lancaster*, in Imitation of the English Heirs, call'd Princes of *Wales*. And this Province was pitch'd upon to give the Title, because it was that where *Pelayo*, or *Pelagius*, made a stand and oppos'd the *Moors*, when they had overcome the rest of *Spain*; this Country being never Subdu'd by them. The Places of chiefest Note are,

*Oviedo*. } { *Gijon*.  
*Santillana*: } { *Liebania*. Prov:

*OVEDO* is the only City in *Asturias*, seated on a high Flat, betwixt the Rivers *Ove* and *Deva*, from which with some little Alteration the name proceeded; formerly the Court of the First Christian Kings, after the conquest of the *Moors*, till they remov'd to *Leon*. It is Wall'd, has 7 Gates, an old Castle, 1400 Houses, a Cathedral, 4 Parishes, 4 Monasteries of Friars, and 3 of Nuns; 4 Hospitals, and 6 Chappels; and is an University, and Episcopal See. To the Cathedral belong 17 Dignify'd Priests, 50 Canons, 24 Demi-Canons. The Bishoprick contains 1048 Parishes; and the Prelate's Revenue is, 12000 Ducats. The country about it Mountainous, abounding in Cattle, Indian Wheat, Chestnuts, Corn, and all sorts of Game. The City is about 7 Leagues distant from the Bay of *Biscay*.

*Santillana*, tho' no City, is the Capital of that part of *Asturias* which takes Name from it, and is 5 Leagues East from *Santander*, on a small River, and contains but 300 Houses, in one Parish, which is Collegiate. The name of it is a Corruption of *Santa Juliana*; and it is a Marquisaet, in the House of the Dukes *Del Infantado*, thought to have been formerly call'd *Concana*.

*Gijon*, was once the Capital of *Asturias* and the Court of *Pelayo*, or *Pelagius*, the first Christian King



King after the *Menise* Invasion; seated on a Plain near the Sea: It is Wall'd, and has a Castle, a good Port, about 200 handſom Houſes, and one Pariſh. The *Romans* gave it the name of *Ara Sextæ*.

The little Province of *Leizana*, above-mentioned, is 9 Leagues in length, and 4 in breadth, being one of the moſt craggy Mountainous parts of Spain, exceſſive high, and almoſt inaccessible, call'd *Euzopa*, in fight of the Sea, and produces plenty of Corn, Wine, Fruit, Cattle and Game, containing 266 Towns and Villages; the chief of them call'd, *Potes*, 9 Leagues from *Santillana*, on the River *Deza*, and has 200 Houſes, one Pariſh, and one Monastery, with another half a League from it. The Province conſiſts of 5 Valleys, call'd *Cellerigo*, *Valdegrado*, *Labehara*, *Cereceda* and *Polanes*. It is an Earldom belonging to the *Dukes del Infantado*, and was never conquer'd by the *Mozs*, by reaſon of its natural Strength. Unleſs it be here we ſhall not know where to look for the fabulous Mountain Country, by ſome confidently reported to have lain unknown many Ages in Spain, and accidentally diſcover'd by the Duke of *Alva's* Servants looking after a Hawk, which Story being no better than a Dream, it is heedleſs to ſay any more of it, than to warn the Reader not to credit ſuch Chimeras.

### The Lordſhip of Biſcay.

**Biſcay**, As generally taken, is divided into three Provinces, *Biſcay* properly ſo call'd, *Guipuzcoa* and *Alaba*. The whole is bounded on the Weſt, by that ſlip of *Caſtile*, which reaches to the Sea, and parts *Aſturias* and *Biſcay* on the South. The ridge of Mountains, before taken notice of, branching from the *Pyrenees*, parts it from *Old Caſtile* and *Navarre*; on the Eaſt the ſame Mountains ſeparate it from *Navarre*, as does the little River *Vidaro* from *France*; all the North ſide is waſhed by that Sea, we commonly call the Bay of *Biſcay*. The whole length from Eaſt to Weſt is near 40 Leagues, the greateſt Breadth from North to South not 20, and much leſs in other Parts. This is properly the ancient *Centabria*, never ſubdu'd by the *Romans* till the Emperor *Augustus* came in Perſon to reduce it. The Country is Mountainous, and produces neither Wheat, Wine, nor Oyl, but abundance of Miller and Fruit, ſo that Cyder is the common Drink, unleſs we reckon a ſmall ſort of Wine made there call'd *Chacelin*, which will keep but a ſhort time, yet is pleaſant, and drank there like ſmall Beer. Flax alſo grows here, and abundance of Timber fit for building of Ships: But its greateſt Treafure lyes in the inexhauiſtible Mines of Iron, the beſt in the World, and tranſported thence to all Parts. There are whole Towns of Smiths, who make all ſorts of Iron Ware, and great ſtore of Swords and Fire-arms. There is alſo much Wool Ship'd off in the Sea-ports, but moſt of that comes out of *Caſtile*, tho' this Country is not altogether without it, but not ſo fine as the other.

The Natives ſpeak the Original *Spaniſh* us'd before the coming of the *Romans*, which they have preſerv'd under all Governments, tho' there are none but what ſpeak the preſent *Spaniſh* alſo. They are Generous, Brave, Warlike, Hardy, uſing few words, Colerick, Active, excellent Pen-men, which advances them to high Poſts; and able Sailors. Their Valour has acquir'd their extraordinary Privileges, from all that have govern'd them, and at preſent the King of Spain,

only ſtiles himſelf Lord of *Biſcay*, they are extraordinary Loyal, are govern'd by their own Laws, and never admit of any Innovation. The chief places,

In <i>Biſcay</i> , proper.	{ <i>Ordunna</i> . <i>Bilbao</i> . <i>Durango</i> .
In <i>Guipuzcoa</i> .	{ <i>Fuenterabia</i> . <i>St. Sebastian</i> . <i>Tolosa</i> .
In <i>Alaba</i> .	<i>Vitoria</i> .

**Biſcay**, properly ſo call'd, on the Weſt, borders upon that ſlip of *Old Caſtile* which runs to the Sea, on the South upon *Caſtile*, and part of *Alaba*, Eaſt-ward upon *Guipuzcoa*, and has the Bay of *Biſcay* on the North.

*Ordunna*, is the only place in this Province, dignified with the Title of a City, ſeated in a pleaſant Vale under high Mountains, about 6 Leagues from the Sea, being a Town of good Trade, containing 300 Houſes, 2 Pariſhes, one of them Collegiate, one Monastery of Friars, and one of Nuns.

*Bilbao*, tho' no City, is now the Capital of *Biſcay*, as being a place of great Trade, by reaſon it has a good Port, ſmall Veſſels coming up to the Mole, and others of leſſer Bulk lying further out. The great Export here is of Wool and Iron, moſt of this in Bars, but very much alſo in Swords, Horſhoes, Fire-Arms and other neceſſaries. The Town ſtands 2 Leagues from the Sea, on the River *Ibañabal*, formerly call'd *Nervius*. It contains about 1200 Houſes, 5 Pariſhes, 5 Monasteries of Friars, and 7 of Nuns, and a Bridge over the River. It was built by *Don James Lopez de Haro*, Lord of *Biſcay*, Ann. 1300, calling it *Bello Vado*, that is, Good Ford, from one there is by it, corruptly *Bilbao*, and hither remov'd the Trade of *Bermeo*, the ancient *Flavio-briga*, which ſome miſtake for this Place, which ſtands where formerly was the *Portus Amanus*. It lies in the Latit. 43 Deg. 20 Long. 16 Deg. If any Stranger takes a Houſe in this Town, before the Year is up, they oblige him to give an account of himſelf, to prove that he is well Born, and of ancient Chriſtian extraction, which done he is never more diſturb'd, but if he cannot do it, they oblige him to quit the Place. The Reaſon is, becauſe the People of this Country, have always preſerv'd themſelves from mixing with any of *Jewiſh*, or *Mooriſh* Race, and therefore will have none to ſettle among them, but ſuch as are untainted in Blood, and for the ſame reaſon they admit of no Slaves among them. The ſame is practis'd through all *Biſcay*, taken in the largeſt extent,

*Durango*, is 5 Leagues to the South Eaſt from *Bilbao*, on a ſmall River, among Mountains, inhabited by 1400 Families, moſt employ'd in Forging of Sword Hilts, and other ſorts of Iron Work.

**GUIPUZCA** follows next, borders Weſt-ward on *Biſcay* and *Alaba*, South-ward on *Alaba* and *Navarre*, Eaſtward on *Navarre* and *France*, and North-ward lyes along the Bay of *Biſcay*.

*Fuenterabia* is its only City, ſeated on an Eminence which is almoſt a Peninſula, on the River *Vidaro*, near that part of the *Pyreneans*, call'd *Sierras de Faſquivel*, and Cape *Olearzo*, on the utmoſt Borders of Spain next to *France*, from which 'tis only ſeparated by the aforeſaid River. It is well fortified, but has not above 200 Houſes, and one Pariſh: The Original name was *Ondarribaya*, ſignifying, the Strand of the River, by Corruption *Fuenterabia*. *Flavius*



*Flavius Suinthila* the *Gothish* King built it, in the Year 626, but the Castle was erected by *Sancho VIII.* King of *Navarre.* Ann. 1194. Here the Kings *Henry IV.* of *Castile*, and *Lewis XI.* of *France* had a meeting in the Year 1463. And in a small Island form'd by the River *Vidazo*, (which is the Boundary of *France* and *Spain*) call'd the Island of *Pheasants*, was the famous Congress Ann. 1659, when the Peace was concluded betwixt *France* and *Spain*. It is 3 Leagues from *St. Sebastian* East-ward, and 6 from *Bayonne* in *France* Westward.

*St. Sebastian*, a noted Port on the Bay of *Biscay*, 3 Leagues West from *Fuenterabia*, almost enclos'd by Rivers falling into the Sea, particularly that they call *Brunco*. The Mole will receive 200 Ships. The Town is enclos'd by a triple Wall, the Work of *Charles V.* besides a strong Castle built by *Sancho VIII.* King of *Navarre.* Ann. 1194. The Inhabitants amount to 1500 Families, in two Parishes, with three Monasteries of Friars, two of Nuns, and an Hospital. Some suppose it to have been anciently call'd *Salus Bassiani*, and thence corruptly *St. Sebastian*. Others say the name of the Place was *Tzum*.

*Tolosa*, by the French call'd *Tolosette*, to distinguish it from *Toulouse* in *Languedoc*, lies in a Valley, between two Mountains, a pleasant Place, 4 Leagues South from *St. Sebastian*, on the Banks of the River *Araxes*, over which it has a stately Bridge; the Town is Wall'd and has a good Ditch, contains 400 Houses, one Parish, one Monastery of Friars, and one of Nuns.

Besides these here mention'd, *Villa Franca*, on the same River *Araxes*, is wall'd, as is *Mondragon* on the River *Deva*, *Placencia*, on the same River, *Segura*, on the River *Araxes*, and many more.

*Alava* borders Westward, on *Biscay*, and *Old Castile*, Southward still on *Old Castile*, Eastward on *Navarre*, and Northward on *Guipuzcon* and *Biscay*.

*Vitoria*, its Capital City, is seated on the side of a Hill, Wall'd, and has 10 Gates, and 11 Streets, 9 of them ending in the great Market-place, where a Market is kept 3 Days in the Week. There are in it 1200 Houses, 5 parishes, one of them Collegiate, 2 Monasteries of Friars, 2 of Nuns 6 Chappels, 3 Hospitals and a Grammar School. Some will have it to have been anciently call'd *Bizantium*, and others give it other names, but the most probable Opinion is, that it was built by King *Leuvigildus*, Ann. 580, and call'd *Vitoriacum*. It is needless to mention *Trevinno*, *Salvatierra*, *Alegria*, *Muga* and several others places of less note, there being nothing in them remarkable.

Before we quit these Provinces, it will be proper to observe that *Biscay* is by *Spanish* Authors of good note, said to have been a Lordship in the days of the *Gothish* Kings, and they name *Andeca*, one of those Lords, slain in the unfortunat Battle with King *Roderick* against the *Moors*. Whatever there was before, certain it is that *Biscay* was never subdu'd by those Infidels, nor will the Natives ever suffer any of them, or the *Jews* to live among them, and have been always extraordinary nice in preserving themselves, from mixing with any of those Races. The House of *Haro* were a long time Lords of *Biscay*, (till the Province properly so call'd, was annex'd to the Crown of *Spain*, by King *John* the first, Ann. 1371) he coming to it by Inheritance, in the Right of his Mother the Lady *Joanna Manuel*, sole Heiress of that Family. This Prince according to the Custom of the Country was Sworn, under the Tree, near the little Town of *Garnica*; King *Alonso IX.* Ann. 1200 united the Province of *Guipuscoa* to *Castile*, having taken it from the King of *Navarre*. *Alaba* voluntarily submitted it self to King *Alonso XII.* Ann. 1332, who in Return, not only confirm'd all its ancient Privileges, but added many new ones.

## C H A P. III.

### The Kingdom of NAVARRE.

*Navarre* is one of the ancient Kingdoms of *Spain*, erected soon after the Conquest of the *Moors*, as may be seen in the Table of Kings, it was the Country of the *Vascones*, and said to have been call'd by the *Romans* *Ruronia*. The present name some fetch as far as from Mount *Vinius*, whence the People call'd *Navinii*, corruptly *Navaii*, and thence *Navarre*, which is a strange notion. Others say King *Sancho VII.* taking for his Device, a Bar with two Lyons tugging at it, which were the Kings of *Castile* and *Aragon*, from thence his Country was call'd *la Barra*, the Bar, and by changing one letter *Navarra*. Others again derive it from *Nova Ara*, an new Alter, but the most natural and likely is, that it is so call'd from the Valleys, at the Foot of the *Pyrenean* Mountains, in the *Basquish* Tongue call'd *Navas*, and a Country of such Valleys *Navarraea*, whence easily came *Navarra*, only omitting the Letters *e* and *i*.

On the North it is divided from *France* by the *Pyrenean* Mountains, which also cut it into two parts, the upper and the lower, the former being much

the largest, and on the *Spanish* side is that we are to speak of; the other beyond the Mountains being much smaller, and belonging to *France*, which the Reader may see describ'd in that Kingdom. On the West, this we here speak of borders upon *Biscay* and *Old-Castile*, Southward upon *Old-Castile* and *Aragon*, and Eastward upon *Aragon*. The length of it from North to South is 30 Leagues, the greatest breadth from East to West 27.

It is divided into 5 Districts call'd *Merindades*, which are those of *Pamplona*, *Tudela*, *Estela*, *Olite* and *Sanguessa*, parted by prodigious high and uncoth Mountains, yet yielding good Corn, Wine, Oyl, Honey, Fruit, Grain, Herbs, and feeding much Cattle, besides infinite number of Fowl wild and tame. Here are abundance of curious Springs, and healthful Baths; and formerly there was Gold and Silver. The Natives speak the *Basquish* Tongue, somewhat different from the *Biscainers*. They are affable, brave, martial, pleasant, compassionate, charitable, religious, laborious, little talkers, but have good Wits when improv'd.

This



This Country had Kings of its own from about the Year 724, for Authors vary some Years, but was united to the Crown of *Castile* by King *Ferdinand*, in 1515, when he had expell'd the lawful Possessor *John d. Albret*, on no other account but to satisfy his unbounded Ambition. Ever since this *Navarre* has continu'd annex'd to the Crown of *Castile*, the lower *Navarre* which is on the *French* side, the *Alps* remaining to the rightful Kings, who afterward inheriting the Crowns of *France*, annex'd it to that. In the *Spanish Navarre* there are 7 Cities, one Bishoprick and several good Towns. The chief whereof are,

<i>Pamplona.</i>	}	<i>Olite.</i>
<i>Tudela.</i>		<i>Viana.</i>
<i>Estela.</i>		<i>Tafalla.</i>
<i>Caserte.</i>		<i>Paleata, Tudela, &amp;c.</i>

**PAMPLONA**, the Capital of this Kingdom, is seated in a spacious Plain, at the Foot of the *Pyrenean* Mountains, on the Banks of the River *Arga*, over which it has 5 Bridges, every way encompass'd with high Hills, and under them pleasant Meadows and delightful Gardens. The Walls have 5 Gates and the Castle is strong, built after the model of that at *Antwerp*, by King *Philip II.* on the West side, with several Bastions and Cazemats, and within it a Church, Mills, and a good Well, and all other conveniences, with 100 Families, besides the Garrison. The City is divided into 3 Quarters or Wards, call'd the Burrough of *St. Cernon*, the Town of *St. Nicolas* and the *Navarrería*, amongst which there were formerly great Factions, which ran so high that much Blood was shed among them, till united by King *Charles III.* of *Navarre*, Ann. 1423. The Country about produces Wine, Fruit and some Corn, and has plenty of Cattle, and all sorts of Fowl. The Inhabitants are 5000 Families, in three Parishes, with 8 Monasteries of Friars, 5 of Nuns, 4 Hospitals. Here is an University founded in the Year 1608, and a Bishop's See, under which are 1156 Parishes, the Prelates Revenue 28000 Ducats, and to the Cathedral belong 10 dignify'd Priests, 24 Canons and 16 Demi-Canons. *Spanish* Authors suppose this City to be built by the *Greeks*, and rebuilt by *Pompey* the Great, by the name of *Pompeyopolis*, whence corruptly *Pamplona*. The *Moor*s took and call'd it *Sanfuerza*, the Emperor *Charlemain* recover'd it; but being lost again it was retaken by King *Garcia Inniguez*, Ann. 785, who thereupon stil'd himself King of *Pamplona*. In 831, it fell again under the *Moorish* Dominion, and was again recover'd 8 Years after by King *Innigo Arista*, from which time it was possess'd by the Kings of *Navarre*, till *Ferdinand* of *Aragon* took it in 1512, and united the Kingdom to *Castile*, as has been said. It is Head of a District, or *Merindad*, in which there are 11 Towns, and 258 Villages.

**Tudela**, a City on the Banks of the River *Ebro*, about 18 Leagues South from *Pamplona*, on the side of a Hill, is Wall'd, has an old Castle and fruitful Territory, with about 3000 Houses, in 10 Parishes, one of them Collegiate, 6 Monasteries of Friars and 2 of Nuns, and is Head of a *Merindad*, or District, in which there are 2 Cities and 22 Towns. It has a stately Stone Bridge over the River *Ebro*, built by King *Sancho VIII.* Ann. 1194. The *Latin* Name is *Tutela*, corruptly *Tudela*:

**Estela**, a City built by *Sancho Remirez*, King of *Navarre*, Ann. 1128, for the conveniency of Pilgrims going to *Santiago*, through the difficult pass call'd *Lizarra*, signifying a Star, whence the name o. *Estela* from *Stella*. It is seated in a Plain, on the River *Ega*, over which it has 4 handsome Bridge, 5 Gates in the Walls, a good old Castle stately Buildings, the Houses about 2000, in 6 Parishes, with 4 Monasteries of Friars, 2 of Nuns, a noble Hospital and a College, as being an University ever since the Year 1565, abounding in all things necessary for Humane Life, and being Head of a District, or *Merindad*, in which is one City, 24 Towns and 106 Villages.

**Caserte**, on the Banks of the River *Quelles*, not far from *Tudela* to the South, in a fruitful Territory, inhabited by 800 Families in one Parish, with one Monastery of Friars, and another of Nuns. King *Philip IV.* made it a City, Ann. 1630, having been anciently a *Roman* Colony, and is in the District of *Tudela*.

**Olite**, a small City on the Banks of the River *Cidazo*, in a pleasant Plain, betwixt *Pamplona* and *Tudela*, Wall'd, and in such a fruitful Territory, that it is become a Proverb, *Olite and Tafalla the flower of Navarre*. A stately Palace built by King *Charles III.* of *Navarre*, is a great Ornament to it, the Houses being but 400 in 4 Parishes, with 2 Monasteries of Friars; but is Head of a District or *Merindad*, in which are one City, 19 Towns, and 26 Villages.

**Viana**, stands on the Frontiers next *Castile*, in sight of *Logronno*, on the opposite Banks on the River *Ebro*, wall'd, and has 4 Gates and a Castle, all in a very fertile Territory. The Houses 700, in 2 Parishes, with one Monastery, and a good Hospital: King *Philip* made it a City, Ann. 1630, and suposed to have had this name of *Viana*; by Corruption from *Diana*, a Temple of which Goddess is said to have been formerly in that Place.

**Tafalla**, the River *Zidazo* washes the Walls and Castle of this City, which stands on a Declivity, with a noble Palace built by King *Charles III.* of *Navarre*, in a most delightful and exuberant Territory, the Houses in it being 800 in 2 Parishes, with one Monastery of Friars, made a City by King *Philip IV.* Ann. 1630.

Besides these Cities there are many good Towns, as *Peralta*, 6 Leagues from *Tudela*, with 400 Houses, one Parish, one Monastery, an Hospital and 5 Chappels; *Puente de la Reyna*, 4 Leagues from *Pamplona* of 500 Houses; *Vera* of 150, *Milagro* of 200 and many others.

This Kingdom lies along the *Pyrenean* Mountains 22 Leagues, and has 10 Passes over them to *France*, all an uncouth craggy Country, the most tolerable parts whereof are certain Vales, known by several names. Among these is *Baxtan*, a prodigious height, extending 7 Leagues in length, from North to South, and 3 and a half in breadth, in which are 29 ancient Seats of Heads of noble Families, and 14 Parishes, inhabited by a Race of People of great Antiquity, fierce, active, daring, and skilful at their Weapons. *Roncesvalles* is famous in *Spanish* History, for the overthrow there given by King *Alonso* the Chast to *Charlemain*, Ann. 809. The Vale of *Roncal*, lies East and West betwixt *Spain* and *France*, enclos'd by almost inaccessible Mountains, in whose Rocks are found Caves, and in them Bones of humane Bodies of great Antiquity.



## C H A P. IV.

*The Kingdom of ARAGON.*

**I**S the second in Dignity of the Kingdoms of Spain; so call'd from the River of the same Name, and was first an Earldom, in the Year, 780. under *Don Aznar*, Son to *Eudo*, Duke of *Guienne* in *France*, and Lord of *Biscay*, as it continu'd till 1034. when it was made a Kingdom, under *Don Ramiro*, Son to *Don Sancho* the Greater of *Navarre*. In 1137. the Principality of *Catalonia* was annex'd to it, and in 1238. the Kingdom of *Valencia*. At last King *Ferdinand* marrying *Isabel*, or *Elizabeth*, Princess of *Castile*, in 1469. those two Crowns were united, as they have continu'd ever since. The Privileges of this Nation were so great, that they had always a Supreme Magistrate, call'd *El Justicia Mayor de Aragon*, or Chief Justice of *Aragon*, who was a check upon the King, his Business being to do the Subject Right against the Sovereign, and therefore Appeals were brought to him from the other Courts, and from the King himself. Nor was this all, for by Contract made with their first King, and Sworn to by all his Successors, if any of them infring'd their Franchises, they might lawfully take up Arms against him, under the said Justice, without being reputed Rebels. King *Peter* of *Aragon* prevail'd with the *Cortes*, or Parliament, to abolish this Privilege, granting them others in lieu of it; but King *Philip* the II. of *Spain*, inrag'd at their defending his Secretary *Antony Perez*, sent an Army, which broke through all their Liberties, and reduc'd them to no better Condition than the meanest Province.

This Kingdom is bounded on the North by the *Pyrenean Mountains*, dividing it from *France*; on the West it has *Navarre*, and the 2 *Castiles*, New and Old; on the South the Kingdom of *Valencia*, and on the East the Principality of *Catalonia*, and part of *Valencia*. The whole length of it from North to South is 70 Leagues, and the Breadth between 30 and 40. The Country is Mountainous, but full of delightful Vales, extraordinary fertile, producing Wheat, Wine, Oyl, Saffron, and most delicious Fruit, and Breeding great Numbers of Cartel, and multitudes of wild and tame Fowl. The Mountains are said to have Mines of Gold and Iron, of which little is made, but the Rivers have great store of Fish.

The Natives are Generous, Courteous, well Bred, Ingenious, good Soldiers, zealous in Religion, and strict observers of their Laws; being at the same time austere in Conversation, and positive in their Opinions. In some Parts a Dialect of the *Catalonian*, or the old *French*, of the Province of *Limosin* is spoken, which is only among the meaner Sort, but all in general speak the common *Spanish*, tho' not so Elegantly as in *Castile*. The River *Ebro* cuts the whole Kingdom into two equal Parts, North-West and South-East, yet that Division is not taken notice of, there being no other Provinces now than what are made by the Diocesses, which are 7, being 1 Archbishoprick, and 6 Bishopricks. There are also 10 Cities, 7 very rich Abbeys, and 2 famous Universities. Which are,

<i>Saragosa.</i>	}	<i>Calatayud.</i>
<i>Huesca.</i>		<i>Daroca.</i>
<i>Zaca.</i>		<i>Borja.</i>
<i>Tervel.</i>		<i>Caspe, Town, &amp;c.</i>
<i>Tarazona.</i>		<i>Ribagorça, Earld.</i>
<i>Albaracin.</i>		<i>Sallent in the</i>
<i>Balbastro.</i>		<i>Valde Tena.</i>

**ZARAGOZA**, or *Saragossa*, the Metropolis of this Kingdom, is seated almost in the midst of it, on the Banks of the noble River *Ebro*, in a large, fertile and delightful Plain, water'd by the Rivers *Xalon*, *Gallego* and *Guerva*, in Lat. 41. 30. Long. 42. The Walls of it, tho' old, are strong, with many handsome Towers and 4 Gates. It has two stately Bridges, spacious fine Streets, stately Palaces, other magnificent Structures, and pleasant Gardens, Orchards, and shady Walks. Besides, the Air is serene and healthy, and the Country furnishes it with all Things for Service and Delight. The Inhabitants amount to 15000 Families, very many of Quality, divided into 14 great Parishes, besides 3 small ones, as also 23 Monasteries of Friars, 13 of Nuns, a noble Hospital, endow'd with Revenues to serve 800 Sick Persons, and 2 others for Orphans. It has an University founded in the Year 1474. by *Don Peter Cerbuna*, Bishop of *Tarazona*, and enlarg'd by King *Philip* the II. Ann. 1542. The Exchange is a good Structure, and was Built in 1551. The Archbishop's Revenue is 45000 Ducats a Year; for it was made Metropolitan by Pope *John* the XXII. Ann. 1318. and the Cathedral is serv'd by 12 Dignify'd Priests, 24 Canons, 39 Demi-Canons, and 70 Benefic'd Priests. The Tabernacle of it, which is most curiously wrought, weighs 612 Pounds, all of massive Silver. The King's Palace stood without the City, and since their residing at *Madrid*, has been given to the *Inquisition*, which keeps its Court there. The Name of it is a Corruption of *Cesar Augustus*, given it by *Augustus*, when he either built or repair'd it, during his War with the *Cantabrians*. The Church call'd of Our Lady of the Pillar, from a Statue of the Blessed Virgin standing on a Column, *Spanish* Authors say was Founded by *S. James* the Apostle, and is resorted to from all Parts, as a Place of singular Devotion. The *Moors*, when they overran *Spain*, made themselves Masters of this Place, and several of their Kings made it their Residence, till retaken by King *Alonso* the I. of *Aragon* and *Navarre*, in 1118. who kept his Court in it, as did all his Successors, till the Kingdom being united to *Castile*, as was said before, the Kings have ever since resided in *Castile*.

**HUESCA**, formerly call'd *Osc*, about 10 Leagues North-East from *Zaragoza*, stands on an Oval rising Ground, in the midst of a spacious delightful Plain, on the River *Isuela*, in a healthy, pleasant Air, and fertile Soil. The strong Walls of it were Built by the *Moors*, and have on them 99 Towers, and 10 Gates. The Inhabitants amount to 5000 Families, in 4 Parishes, with 5 Monaste-



ries of Friars, and one of Nuns. Being an University, it has 6 stately Colleges; and is also a Bishoprick, worth 13000 Ducats a Year to its Prelate, and he takes Place next to the Archbishop of *Zaragoza*. To the Cathedral belong 9 Dignify'd Priests, 28 Canons, and 6 Demi Canons, and the Tabernacle in it weighs 232 Pounds of Silver. It continu'd, after the Conquest of the *Moors*, 380 Years under the Power of those Infidels; and was recover'd from them by King *Peter I.* of *Aragon*, in the Year 1096.

*Jaca* is at the Foot of the *Pyrenean* Mountains, in a Plain about 20 Leagues North from *Zaragoza*, and 10 from *Huesca*. It is Round, Wall'd, has a strong Castle, good Buildings, a wholsom Air and fruitful Soil. The Inhabitants not above 800 Families; only one Parish, which is also the Cathedral; 3 Monasteries of Friars, one of Nuns, and a good Hospital. *Don Aznar*, the first Earl of *Aragon*, recover'd it from the *Moors*, *Ann.* 795. It is an Episcopal See, and to the Cathedral belong 9 Dignify'd Priests, 17 Canons, the same number of Demi-Canons; and the Bishop's Revenue is but 3000 Ducats, the smallest of any in all *Spain*.

*Teruel*, in the South part of the Kingdom, 27 Leagues from *Saragossa*, on the Banks of the River *Turia*, or *Guadalquivar*, as the *Moors* call it, signifying clear Water, on an Eminence, encompass'd by large Meadows, and those shut in by Mountains, affording a delightful Prospect, being cover'd with stately Trees, odoriferous Plants and fragrant Flowers, in curious Gardens and Orchards, besides exuberant Corn-fields. The City Wall'd, Inhabited by 1300 Families, in 8 Parishes, with 4 Monasteries of Men, one of Nuns, and a wealthy Hospital. The *Romans* either founded or rebuilt it, by whom it was call'd *Tintania*, *Turupia*, and *Tiar-Julia*: Being destroy'd by the *Moors*, it was rebuilt by King *Alonso II.* of *Aragon*, *Ann.* 1171. The Dignity of a Bishoprick was conferr'd on it, *Ann.* 1577. The Prelate's Revenue being 12000 Ducats; the Cathedral serv'd by 6 Dignify'd Priests, and 14 Canons.

*Tarazona*, Seated on the Foot of the famous Mountain *Moncayo*, 3 Leagues from the Frontiers of *Castile* and *Navarre*, and 12 Leagues North West, from *Saragossa*, is Wall'd, well-built, and has a considerable Trade; water'd by many Springs, and the little River *Chiles*, fertilizing its Territory to produce Corn, Wine, and Oyl. The Inhabitants are 5000 Families, in 3 Parishes; with 4 Monasteries of Friars, 3 of Nuns, and a good Hospital. the present Name is a corruption of the Ancient, which was *Tyria Aufonia*. The *Moors* destroy'd it in 724, but repair'd it: From whom it was Taken by King *Alonso I.* of *Aragon*, *Ann.* 1119. and is a Bishoprick, worth above 20000 Ducats a Year.

*Albarracin*, on the side of a craggy Hill, surrounded with uncor'd Mountains and broken Rocks, near the South-west Frontiers, towards *Castile*, about 5 Leagues West from *Teruel*, the River *Turia* running by its strong Walls and stately Castle; Inhabited by 1000 Families, in 3 Parishes, with one Monastery of Friars, and another of Nuns. King *Jame*, or *Jaymes II.* of *Aragon*, raised it to the Dignity of a City, *Ann.* 1300. The ancient name was *Ausa*; the present it took from *Abenracin*, a *Moor*, who was Lord of it; Corruptly, *Albarracin*. It was long in the Christian Family of the *Azagra*s of *Navarre*, who call'd themselves Vassals of St. Mary; till sub'd by King *Peter IV.* of *Aragon*. It is a

Bishoprick worth 6000 Ducats a Year to its Prelate.

*Balbastro* stands about 17 Leagues East from *Zaragoza*, on the pleasant River *Vero*; over which it has a stately Bridge, in a spacious Plain; Wall'd with many strong Towers; Inhabited by 1500 Families, in one Parish, which is also the Cathedral; having 7 dignified Priests, 12 Canons, as many Demi-Canons, and 40 Chaplains. Here are also 4 Monasteries of Friars, one of Nuns, an Hospital, and 18 Chappels. The *Goths* call'd it *Bigaastro*; whence, with little Alteration, *Balbastro*. The Bishoprick is worth to its Prelate, 8000 Ducats a Year.

*Calatayud*, about 15 Leagues West South-west from *Zaragoza*, at the Foot of a high Hill, on the delightful Banks of the River *Xalon*, where it receives the *Xiloca*, inferior to none for pleasant Air and fertile Soil. The strong Walls have many Towers on them; the Inhabitants are 3000 Families, in 13 Parishes, with 11 Monasteries of Friars, and 4 of Nuns. The ancient Name of it was *Bilbilis*; which being destroy'd, was Re-built by *Ajud* the *Moorish* King of *Sevil*, calling it *Calatayud*, which is the present Name. It was gain'd by King *Alonso I.* of *Aragon*, *Ann.* 1120.

*Daroca*, 16 Leagues South-west from *Zaragoza*, strongly seated on a craggy Ground, between two Hills, with strong Walls, and on them 114 Towers, with 7 Gates; the whole Circumference being 8527 *Roman* Feet, the River *Xiloca* passing by it, and watering its delicious Fertile Plain with several Trenches drawn from it. The Inhabitants are 1000 Families, in 7 Parishes, one of them Collegiate, where are the Corporals, or Linnen Cloths, said to be stain'd with the Blood gushing from a Consecrated Host, when it was Wounded; to which there is a vast resort of People from all Parts. Here are also 4 Monasteries of Friars, and one of Nuns; 8 Chappels, 7 Squares, as many Conduits, and an Hospital. King *Alonso I.* of *Aragon*, recover'd it from the *Moors*, *Ann.* 1122. Near this City is a wonderful Cave, 8 Yards in Breadth, the same in Height, and 78 in Length.

*Borja*, is 10 Leagues from *Zaragoza* to the Westward, a little inclining Northward, not far from the High Mountain *Moncayo*, at the Foot of a Hill, near the Borders of *Castile* and *Navarre*, abounding in all Things; and well Water'd by several Springs and Rivulets; the Walls adorn'd with many Towers; the Castle strong; the Inhabitants 800 Families, in 3 Parishes, one of them Collegiate; 4 Monasteries of Friars, and one of Nuns; a noble Hospital, and several Chappels. The *Romans* call'd it *Belsinum*. The *Moors* gave it the Name of *Borja*; from whom it was Taken by *Alonso I.* of *Aragon* *Ann.* 1121.

We cannot descend to particularize any below Cities, tho' there are Towns not Inferior to some of them, and others of good Note; as *Caspe*, 6 Leagues from *Zaragoza*, of 1000 Houses: *Exea*, 12 Leagues from that Capital, of 600 Houses: *Alcaniz*, of 1500 Houses; *Monzen*, of 800; *Epila*, of 650; *Ayerre* and *Montalvan*, of 400 each; *Hijar*, of 500; *Tausle* of the like number; *Sos* the same; *Ariza* the same; *Belchite*, the same; *Miquinenza* and *Sarinnena*, 400 each; *Villa de un Castillo*, of 500; *Ainza*, 500; *Canta Vieja* 400; not to mention others of lesser Note. Only the small Village of *Telilla*, tho' it contains not above 60 Houses, is Remarkable on account of a Bell there is in the Steeple



Steeple of its Church, said to ring of itself, without any help, before any extraordinary Revolution or Calamity happens in *Spain*, whereof several Authors mention many Instances, too long for this Place; nor do we pretend to vouch for the Truth of it.

*Ribagorça* is an ancient Earldom, in the North part of this Kingdom, 15 Leagues in Length, and 6 in Breadth, in which space, there are 350 Towns and Villages, most of them so small, that in the whole they contain but 4600 Houses; the little Town of *Benabarre* being the Head of all the rest, and has plenty of Provisions. Here a Noble Man of the same Family with *Charlemain*, first began, in 741, to oppose the *Moors*, (who had overrun all *Spain*); and succeeded so well, through his Valour, that he recover'd all this Country, and call'd himself Earl of *Ribagorça*; since which the Country has retain'd the Title of an Earldom, and is a distinct Liberty from the rest of the Kingdom.

*Sallent*, and *Val de Tena*, the first the principal Town of the latter. This is a Valley in the very Heart of the *Pyrenean* Mountains, the highest and remotest toward *Gascogn* in *France*, and utmost extent of *Aragon*. The Town of *Sallent* has 200 Houses; all the rest of the Valley but 500 more. The Town a League and a half from the Spring of the River *Gallego*, which runs down to it. The name of *Sallent*, is deriv'd from *Salio*, to Leap, from a mighty Fall the River call'd *Agualimpida*, has close by it. In Summer this Place has a good Trade but is inaccessible in Winter, by reason of the Snow lying on the Mountains; and the Trade is occasion'd by 2 Passes leading into *France*, the one on the West, over the River *Gallego* to *Bearn*, and the other on the East, through *Forqueta* to *Bigoire*. Here are above 200 Springs, which bring up abundance of Grass to feed above 30000 Head of Cattle: Besides which, there are great Numbers of Deer and Hares, and multitudes of Wild-Fowl. Wheat they have very little, but great store of Rye, Barley and Hay.

## CATALONIA

Is no Kingdom, but a Principality, by the *Spaniards* call'd *Catalunna*, by the *French* *Catalogne*, and by us between both *Catalonia*. This Name some will derive from *Castellaneis*, because there were many Castles in the Country; others from *Catalon*, or *Cartalon*, a *French*, or *German* Commander, who came into these Parts to assist the Christians against the *Moors*; others from the *Goths* and *Alans*, who came into *Spain* from *Gothalandia*; and by Corruption, *Catalonia*: And lastly, others from the *Catti*, a Nation that came in with the *Alans*, and thence *Catalonia*.

On the North it borders upon *France*, and is parted from it by the *Pyrenean* Mountains; on the West, by the Kingdom of *Aragon*, and a small part of that of *Valencia*; from the first of which it is separated in part, by the Rivers *Noguera* and *Martorell*, and some Hills; and from the latter, by the River *Genia*: On the South and East, the *Mediterranean* washes its Shoars, and forms several good Ports. The Land is a mixture of Plains and Mountains, the Part next to *France* most Hilly, but farther in, many large and delightful Levels. The Climate is neither so hot as *Andalusia*, nor so cold as the most Northern parts of *Spain*. This Tempe-

ration and the many pleasant Streams, make the Soil very Fruitful. The Proauct, which it has in great plenty, is excellent Wheat, rich Wine, sweet Oyl, exquisite Honey, delicious Fruit, abundance of Cattle, swarms of Fowl, great store of Deer, Hares, Rabbits, and all other Game; good Hemp, fine Flax, excellent Saffron, all sorts of Grain, variety of Herbs, a considerable quantity of Silk, fine Wool, and infinite Fish and Salt; besides Quarries of Marble, Alabaster, and Jasper-Stone, and Coral, taken out of the Sea.

The Language is the ancient *Limosin*, with a mixture of other Languages, not intelligible to other *Spaniards*; but all People whatsoever speak *Spanish* also. The Natives have generally sharp and ready Wits, and are naturally Warlike, which makes them often in Arms and Rebellion; Inasmuch, that the *Castilians* and other *Spaniards*, will scarce allow the *Catalans* for their Countrymen, looking upon them as a disloyal and faithless People; and not without Reason. This is, for the most part understood of the meaner sort, who are very rude, and had rather Rob than Work; which makes them always joyn with any that enters their Country, in hopes of Plundering their Neighbours. But the Nobility and Gentry have preserv'd their Reputation, and been always look'd upon as Men of Honour, Worth and Gallantry.

In this Principality there are 11 Cities, one Archbishoprick, 8 Bishopricks, abundance of considerable Towns, a vast number of Villages, 28 Miter-Abbeys, 30000 Churches, 13 strong Towns, and 7 Universities. The ancient Inhabitants of it, are the *Ausetani*, *Castellani*, *Illergetes*, *Laetani*, and *Lacetani*; and this a Part of *Hispania Tarraconensis*, or *Citerior*.

*Catalonia* and its City *Tarragona*, was the Metropolis of the *Roman* Dominions in *Spain*, that City giving its name to the Province, which contain'd about one half of the whole Country. The *Goths* entering *Spain*, for a considerable time kept their Court at *Barcelona*, and the *Moors* overrunning *Spain*, *Catalonia* sunk under the common Calamity. *Charles Martel* of *France* began to recover some part of this Province from the Infidels; and *Charlemain* his Grandson, prosecuted it with more Vigour, creating *Bernard*, one of his Commanders, Earl of *Barcelona*. From that time, the Affairs of the Christians in *Catalonia* began to prosper; the Earls took upon them a Sovereign Power, and left it to their Posterity for several Successions. In the Year 1137, *Raymond* the Fifth of the Name, and XIIth Earl of *Barcelona*, Marry'd *Petronila*, only Daughter and Heiress to *D. Ramiro*, King of *Aragon*; by which March, the two Dominions were United, and so continu'd ever after in their Line. *Ferdinand* and *Isabel*, or *Elizabeth*, afterwards uniting the Crowns of *Aragon* and *Castile*, as has been before observ'd, *Catalonia* became a Province of the *Spanish* Monarchy, and so has continu'd. The Chief Towns in *Catalonia* are,

<i>Barcelona.</i>	}	<i>Vique.</i>
<i>Tarragona.</i>		<i>Solsona.</i>
<i>Tortosa.</i>		<i>Balaguer.</i>
<i>Lerida.</i>		<i>Manresa.</i>
<i>Girona.</i>	}	<i>Roses.</i>
<i>Bardona.</i>		<i>Puycerda.</i>



**BARCELONA**, the Capital, inferior to few in *Europe*, that are not the Courts of Princes, is seated betwixt the Rivers *Lobregat* and *Besòs*, which pay their Tribute to the Sea on both sides of it. The Coast it stands on is a good safe Road, but the Port small, yet as much as has made it a Place of considerable Trade, but had much more when the *India* Commodities were brought from *Turky* and *Aegypt* through the *Mediterranean*. It is in a large Plain, at the foot of the Mountain *Monjuque*, on which is a strong Castle, which generally decides the Fate of the Town. The Walls have Ramparts in some Places, in others are only Stone Work, with several Bastions, and 9 stately Gates. The Streets are fair and wide, the Churches Beautiful and Rich, the Gardens delightful, with many Fountains of excellent Water. The Territory is stor'd with Necessaries for Sustenance and Delight, as Wheat, rich Wines, Oyl, Fowl, Cattle, Fruit, Honey, Wood, and all sorts of Game. The Inhabitants about 15000 Families, in 9 Parishes, with 19 Monasteries of Friars, 15 of Nuns, 6 Colleges and 6 Hospitals. It is an University of great Reputation, and a considerable Bishoprick, worth to its Prelate 12000 Ducats a Year, and the Cathedral serv'd by 11 Dignify'd Priests, 34 Canons, 12 *Parrors*, being a sort of Demi-Canons, 280 Benefices, and several Chaplains. By the Cathedral is a Church, call'd *Capitlimisna*, where 300 Poor are Fed every Day. The ancient Name *Barcinone*, corruptly *Barcelona*, was given it from *Amilcar Barcinus*, the *Carthaginian* General, Father to *Hannibal*, who Built it 250 Years before *Christ*. The *Moors* over-running *Spain*, made themselves Masters of it in 717. from whom it was recover'd in 793. After being united to the Crown of *Aragon*, it rebell'd against King *John* the II. and own'd King *Henry* of *Castile*, Ann. 1462. and was reduc'd in 1471. In 1640. this City again Rebell'd, and gave it self into the Hands of the *French*; yet repenting in 1650. they betray'd the *French* they had call'd into their Assistance. In 1697. the Duke of *Vendôme* Commanding the *French* Army, lay'd Siege to this City on the 12th of *July*, and took it on the 15th of *August*. Being with the rest of the Kingdom subjected to *Philip*, Duke of *Anjou*, it was in the Year, 1705. attack'd by K. *Charles* III. who, assisted by the Confederate Forces of *England* and *Holland*, with Sword in Hand immediately gain'd the strong Fort or Castle *Monjuque*, which lay on the West side at some distance from the Town, and then having secur'd a Hill which Commands the Town, in 17 Days after, viz. *October* the 4th N. S. the City Capitulated. An Action that will always be admir'd, when 'tis consider'd, that the Army of the Assailants were hardly so numerous as the Garrison, who had the advantage of such Fortifications as enabled the Confederates the next Year to defend the City against a Royal Army, well furnished with Artillery and all Necessaries, and Commanded by K. *Philip*, and the Marshal *Tesse*, who with all their Force, attack'd it from the 2d of *April* to the 11th of *May*, when most happily the *English* Fleet arriving with Succours, they were forc'd to raise the Siege, and retire with the greatest Precipitation, leaving a noble Train of Artillery (above 100 Brass Cannon) and great Stores of Ammunition behind 'em.

*Tarragona*, now the second, formerly the first City of *Catalonia*, call'd *Tarraco*, and from it all the

Province *Tarraconensis*, stands near the Coast of the *Mediterranean* Sea, on the brink of a pleasant Hill, at the foot whereof is a safe Harbour for small Ships, betwixt the Rivers *Gaya* and *Franceli*. The ancient Walls are said to have been 40842 Yards in Compass, the present 2361, with 6 Gates. The Climate so Temperate, that the Trees bear Fruit and Blossoms in *December*; the Territory beautify'd with delightful Gardens, Orchards and Country seats, the Fields abounding in Corn, Wine, Oyl, Fowl, Game, Flax, Hemp, and the Sea furnishing it with Fish. The Inhabitants about 3000 Families, in 4 Parishes, with 8 Monasteries of Friars, 1 of Nuns, a stately Hospital, and learned University. *S. Francis's* Square, or Market-Place in it was once a *Roman* Amphitheatre. It is an Archbishoprick, worth to its Prelate 16000 Ducats a Year. In the Year 719. the *Moors* took and level'd that with the Ground, putting all the Inhabitants to the Sword. In 1705. it follow'd the Example of *Barcelona*, and submitted to the *English* and *Dutch* Forces. It is about 17 Leagues West from *Barcelona*, and 15 East from *Tortosa*.

*Tortosa*, Stands 4 Leagues from the Frontiers of the Kingdom of *Valencia*, on the Banks of the River *Ebro*, not far from the Sea, which forms a good Bay that comes up near to it. The Situation is in the midst of a pleasant Wood, and has a Bridge over the River. The Walls are Ancient, and of great Compass, without any Outworks, but what have been made since the present War, which are said to be considerable; besides which there is a Castle, call'd *Zuda*. The Gates are 5, the Streets 78, and a spacious Square, or Market-place, on the Bank of the River, planted with Poplar Trees, near which are 2 Towers to defend it, call'd *Carroba* and *Campredo*. Without is a most beautiful Plain, 6 Leagues in length, and 2 in breadth, Water'd by the River, and producing Corn, Wine, Oyl, Fruit, Timber for Shipping, Palm Trees, and has plenty of Fowl, Game, Cattle, and much Silk, made here into Sarcenets. There are abundance of curious Springs, Quarries of Jasper Stone, and Salt-Pits. The Inhabitants amount to about 3000 Families, in 4 Parishes, 7 Monasteries of Friars, 2 of Nuns, an Hospital, and an University Founded in 1540. *Scipio* is thought to have Built and made it a *Roman* Free-Town, by the Name of *Dertosa*, corruptly *Tortosa*. The *Moors* took it in 716. and it was recover'd by *Don Raymond Berengarius*, Prince of *Aragon*, An. 1149. The Cathedral erected here in 1347. is reckned one of the best Structures in *Catalonia*, serv'd by 11 Dignify'd Clergy-men, 20 Canons, and as many Petty-Canons. Under the Diocess are 125 Towns and Villages, and the Bishops Revenue is 14000 Ducats. In 1705. it follow'd the Fate of *Barcelona*, and surrendred to the *English* and *Dutch* Forces, but was taken by the *Spanish* and *French* Forces, under the Command of the Duke of *Orleans*, in *July* 1708. Mr. *Willoughby* calls this a poor desolate Town. At two Miles from it there is a Quarry of Jasper Stone.

*Lerida* is on the Borders of *Catalonia*, next to *Aragon*, and on the Banks of the River *Segre*; over which it has a good Stone-Bridge: Not far from whence the *Cinca* falls into it. The Situation is strong, and the Place has been always Fortify'd, but much more of late; the Walls being ancient, of Stone, have 7 Gates: And besides all other Works, there is a Castle very difficult of Access. The Country about it is pleasant and Fruitful, and the City



City particularly noted for making good Gloves. The Inhabitants are about 3000 Families, in 6 Parishes, 9 Monasteries of Friars, 2 of Nuns, a good Hospital, and a famous University, founded by King James II. of Aragon. It was Built by the Ibergetes, and call'd *Ilerda*, whence corruptly *Lerida*, where *Africanus* and *Petreius*, Pompey's Legates, were Defeated by *Julius Caesar*. *Raimond Berengarius*, last Earl of *Barcelona*, recover'd it from the Moors, Ann. 1149. The Bishop's Revenue is worth 12000 Ducats. From *Barcelona*, it is 35 Leagues West, somewhat Northerly, 24 East from *Tarazona*, and about 18 North from *Tortosa*. King Charles III. took this City, and held it till (after the unfortunate Battle of *Almanza*) the Duke of Orleans commanding the Spanish and French Forces, took it, after a long Siege, Nov. 12, 1677, N. S. It is a Place of good Strength, especially the Castle, which with a small Garrison, defended itself a long time after the Town was Taken. And it is withal so conveniently Seated, as to be a Pais from Aragon to Catalonia.

*Urgel* lies betwixt two Mountains, on the Banks of the River *Segre*, not far from the Foot of the Pyrenean Mountains, about 30 Leagues North, somewhat Easterly, from *Barcelona*, is Wall'd, and has an ancient Castle: Its Territory wonderful Fertile, yielding an Hundred for One in Corn, abundance of Almonds, and other Fruit, and feeding multitudes of Cattle. The Inhabitants are not above 600 Families, 2 Parishes, and 3 Monasteries of Friars. The ancient Names of it were *Orgelium*, *Urgela*, and *Orgia*; and it was formerly a famous Earldom, and is still a Bishoprick, whose Prelate's Revenue is worth 9000 Ducats a Year.

*Girona*, lies along the side of a Hill, in the East part of the Province, on the Banks of the River *Ter* which washes its ancient Walls, in which are 4 Gates, and several Fortifications about them, its Figure being almost Triangular. On the top of the Hill stands the Cathedral, the Bishop's Palace, and the Tower call'd *Gironela*. The Inhabitants are about 2500 Families, 3 Parishes, 9 Monasteries of Friars, 4 of Nuns, and a good Hospital. The Bishop's Revenue is 8000 Ducats: The Altar of the Cathedral is of great Value, being all of rare Stones. The Eldest Sons of the Kings of Aragon, were call'd Dukes of *Girona*, from the Year 1351, till 1414, when they took that of Princes of *Girona*; which was afterwards continu'd. The ancient name of it was *Gerunda*, and it is about 7 Leagues from the Sea, and 20 to the North-East of *Barcelona*. In the Revolution happening in Catalonia, Ann. 1705, this Place Declar'd for King Charles, and is still kept by his Forces.

*Vicque*, or as we Write it, *Vich*, is a small City, in a sort of Peninsula, made by the Rivers *Ter* and *Garre*, which almost encompass it, 12 Leagues North from *Barcelona*, at the Foot of Hill, Wall'd, and has 7 Gates, 3 Bridges, and near it a fruitful Plain. On the Mountain *Mosen*, 2 Leagues from the City, are found excellent White and Purple *Amethysts* and *Topazes*. It contains about 1200 Families, one Parish, 8 Monasteries of Friars, 2 of Nuns, and an Hospital. The first Name we find of it, was *Ausa*; afterwards the Romans call'd it *Vicus Aquarius*; as also *Aque Vacmie*; and from *Vicus* came the present Name of *Vique*. The Emperor *Ludovicus Pius*, recover'd it from the Moors, Ann. 825. The Bishop's Revenue is 600 Ducats. This was the first

Place in Catalonia that Declar'd for King Charles, and still continues in his Hands:

At 2 Leagues distance from *Vicque* are Mines of *Amethysts*, on the side of a Hill: They are found in a fat yellowish or reddish Earth; and the best sort are of a deep Violet Colour. And in the Neighbouring Mountains are some Emeralds, Gold, and other Minerals and Stones, but so little as not to answer the Labour of Searching. And on the Shoar of the Lake *Silles*, near *Gironna*, *Topazes* are found. [*Willoughby*,]

*Solsona* stands upon the River *Cardona*, in the middle of this Province, at the Foot of the Mountains, in a pleasant Plain, above 20 Leagues North-West from *Barcelona*, and near the same Distance North from *Tarragona*; is Wall'd and has two Castles, an old and a new. It is thinly inhabited, and has but one Parish, and two Monasteries, yet is an University and a Bishoprick, worth 4000 Ducats a Year to its Prelate. Great Quantities of dry'd Peaches are sent from hence to several Parts.

*Balaguer*, on the Banks of the River *Segre*, over which it has a great Stone Bridge, 20 Leagues West from *Solsona*, and 3 Leagues North-East from *Lerida*, at the Foot of a Hill, Wall'd, and has an old Castle, 800 Families, one Parish, 3 Monasteries of Friars, and one of Nuns: Here is an Image of our Saviour in great Veneration, reported to have been made by *Nicodemus*. *Don Armengol*, Earl of *Urgel*, recover'd it from the Moors, An. 1091. Its ancient Name was *Ballegonium*.

*Manresa*, 10 Leagues North from *Barcelona*, on the River *Cardoner*, which a little below falls into the *Llobregat*; seated in a spacious Plain, Wall'd, and has an old Castle, 1000 Families, one Parish, 5 Monasteries of Friars, and one of Nuns. Its ancient Name was *Minorissa*, corruptly *Manresa*: *Don Raimund Berengarius*, Earl of *Barcelona*, recover'd it from the Moors, Ann. 1038.

All these hitherto mention'd are Cities; but we must not forget to take notice of *Roses*, or *Rosas*, according to the Spaniards, tho' but a Town, as being a Place of considerable Strength and a good Harbour; seated at the Point of the Pyrenean Mountains next the Mediterranean, 10 Leagues South from *Perpignan*, and about the same Distance from *Girona* North-East. It was founded by the *Rhodiens* 910 Years before Christ, calling it *Rhodope*, and grew very great under the Romans; but declin'd, and came to nothing, till the Emperor Charles V. fortified and peopled it. Since then it has always held up, and been several times taken by the French and restor'd upon Peace. During the present War the Spanish Garrison in it kept it for King Philip, when all the rest of Catalonia took part with King Charles; and the French have always taken care to supply and maintain it.

*Puycerda*, formerly *Jugum Ceretanorum*, is the Capital of the Province of *CERDANNA*, often spoken of since this present War, as being in the way out of France, on the River *Segre*, about 7 Leagues East from *Urgel*, and 30 North, somewhat Westward, from *Barcelona*: It is no way considerable either for Strength, or number of Inhabitants, being easily taken by any small Power. *Palamos* has also been spoken of in these Wars, which is an inconsiderable Town on the Sea, about 20 Leagues from *Barcelona* to the North-East. *Cardona*, is 3 Leagues South from *Solsona*, 12 or 14 North-West from *Barce-*



*Barcelona*, Wall'd, is a Dukedom, and contains about 400 Families. *Ager*, Wall'd, 3 Leagues North from *Baquer*, 400 Families: *Tarrega*, Wall'd, 6 Leagues South-East from *Lerida*. *Libia*, 400 Families, and Wall'd. *Blanes*, 8 Leagues South from *Girona*, no Walls but an old Castle, and 600 Families. *Guisora*, betwixt *Manresa* and *Lerida*, 600 Families, and Wall'd; besides many more of less Note, too tedious to mention.

Near *Cardena*, (which stands 20 Miles from *Girona*), there is a Mountain of Salt, which yields an annual Revenue of 30000 Pieces of Eight. The

Salt is Transparent, and when Powder'd, exceeding White.

*Cardena* gives Title to a Duke, who is one of the richest Grandees of *Spain*, and is Sovereign of this Town and 3 or 4 Villages, which he governs by a Council of 36, chosen by themselves every Year, and receives Tythes of the Corn, Wine, &c. which is the only Taxes they are subject to. [Willoughby]

The Country of *Rousillon*, being formerly a Part of *Catalonia*, has been long since annex'd to the Crown of *France*, and therefore is spoken of in that Kingdom.

## CHAP. V.

### The Kingdom of VALENCIA.

THE Kingdom so call'd from its Capital City of the same Name, was anciently the Country of the *Edetani* and *Contestani*. On the East it lies along the *Mediterranean*, facing the Islands of *Majorca* and *Yviza*, only one small Part lying next *Catalonia*, and parted from it by the little River *Cenia*; on the North it has the Kingdom of *Aragon*, on the West *New-Castile* and *Murcia*; and the small Part of it which runs to the South, joyns with the same Kingdom of *Murcia*. The Length of it is 70 Leagues the greatest Breadth 18.

This whole Kingdom is a Garden of Delight, or Earthly Paradise, the Air being always so Temperate that it enjoys a perpetual Spring, the Fields and Trees being always green, and the Weather pleasant, never excessive hot, nor cold, nor disturb'd with immoderate Rains; so that it is not only the most delicious Part of *Spain*, but perhaps of the World. This kind Disposition of the Heavens is the Cause that the whole Country is cover'd with curious Gardens, pleasant Orchards, delightful Groves, Gentlemens Seats and Farm-Houses, the Ground that is not employ'd for Pleasure, producing immense Plenty of Wheat, Wine, Oyl, Honey, Flax, and all sorts of Herbs, Flowers, and most Charming Fruit: Besides all which, the Silk, Sugar and Rice it produces every Year, are valu'd at 3 Millions of Pieces of Eight. Not to speak of Gold, Silver and Precious Stones found here formerly, but not of late. Here is abundance of Alum, the best and finest of white Lime, and store of scarlet Berries for dying that Colour. The Earth about *Valencia*, *Gandia*, &c. is so well Cultivated, that they have five Crops a Year, viz. Mulberry Leaves for Silk, Wheat and other Grain, Grapes, Olives, Maiz, or *Indian* Wheat, and Sugar Canes. [Willoughby]

The Natives are Pleasant, Free-hearted, Witty, inclin'd to Learning, addicted to good Cheer, Courteous, Well-behav'd, fond of doing Good, Bold and Resolute, and will take no Wrong. The common Sort retain that old *Limousin French* above spoken of in *Catalonia* and *Aragon*; but besides that, all Persons whatsoever speak *Spanish*. This Province seems to be more free than the rest of *Spain* for Mr. Willoughby tells us the King cannot raise Taxes here without consent of the 3 E-

states, Clergy, Nobility and Cities, which are represented by 6 Deputies. This Kingdom, together with that of *Murcia*, according to *Pennalosa*, is able to raise and maintain 16000 Foot, and 8000 Horse. King *James I.* of *Aragon*, recover'd this Kingdom from the *Moors*, and annex'd it to the Crown of *Aragon*, in the Year 1238. and it was united to *Castile*, with that Kingdom, as has been said above.

In it are 6 Cities, a great number of notable Towns and Villages, 1 Archbishoprick, 2 Bishopricks, 4 Collegiate Churches, 2 great Abbeys, 2500 simple Benefices, 600 Parsonages, 1 Military Order, 4 Universities, 3 principal Sea-Ports, and 300 Forts and Watch-Towers along the Sea-Coast. The Chief whereof are,

<i>Valencia.</i>	}	<i>Denia.</i>
<i>Segorbe.</i>		<i>Gandia.</i>
<i>Xativa.</i>		<i>Morvedra.</i>
<i>Alicant.</i>		

*VALENCIA*, the noble Capital of this Kingdom, is seated on the shady Banks of the River *Turia*, over which it has 5 Bridges, in Lat. 39. 20. its Figure round, the ancient Walls strong, and adorn'd with many Towers and 13 Gates, being 6440 Paces in Compass; half a League distant from the *Graco*, which is its Port on the *Mediterranean*, abounding in all Things for Conveniency and Delight, as was said speaking of the Country, the Sea furnishing all possible Variety of Fish, the neighbouring Lake, call'd *Albufera*, infinite numbers of Water-Fowl. The Inhabitants amount to 15000 Families, in 14 Parishes, 48 Monasteries of religious Men and Women, besides 4 of Military Orders, 6 Chappels, 6 Hospitals, and 20 Brotherhoods, which every Year Marry off 130 poor Maidens, 5 Colleges, a noble University, (In the University of *Valencia* they know nothing of the new Philosophy; and in short, they are just at that pitch of Learning that our Universities were 100 Years ago.) [Willoughby] a Sovereign Court of Justice, a Court of Inquisition, a curious Exchange, a Guild-Hall, which has a Revenue of 100000 Ducats a Year. The Archbishop's Revenue is worth 30000 Ducats a Year, the Cathedral serv'd by 7 dignified Priests, 24 Canons;



rons; in it, besides other Treasure, is a Chalice of a rich sort of Agat, said to be the same our Saviour us'd at the last Supper with his Disciples. Here are also two of the Pieces for which Judas sold our Saviour, being Silver, each weighing two Royals and a half, or Fifteen-pence, with the Emperor's Head on the one side, and a Branch on the reverse. The *Scipio's* are suppos'd to have Built it, and given it the Name it now bears. The *Moors* possessing themselves of it, with the rest of *Spain*, are said to have call'd it *Medina Tiarech*, the City of Air, and made it the Seat of many Kings, till they were finally expell'd by King *James I.* of *Aragon*, Ann. 1238. In the Year 1705. all *Catalonia* having submitted to King *Charles*, this City follow'd their Example and open'd its Gates to the Earl of *Peterborough* and the *English* Forces; but in 1707. after the Battle of *Almanza*, the Duke of *Orleans* commanding the *Spanish* Forces recover'd it, and the Inhabitants have suffer'd for their forwardness in Revolting. It is about 60 Leagues South-East from *Madrid*, 45 from *Zaragoza* almost South, and about 60 from *Barcelona* South-West.

*Segorbe*, the ancient *Segobriga*, as most Authors agree, is seated on a rising Ground, in the midst of a spacious Valley, shut in with Mountains. It stands on the Banks of the River *Morviedro*, formerly call'd *Palancia*; is wall'd and defended by a stately old Castle. The Number of Inhabitants about 800 Families, in one Parish, 7 Monasteries of Friers, and 1 of Nuns, within and without it. *Nebrija* says the *Romans* carry'd the finest Marble from its neighbouring Mountain *Segarra*, to beautify their stateliest Structures. King *James I.* of *Aragon*, recover'd it from the *Moors*, in the Year 1245. Its Bishoprick is worth to the Prelate 12000 Ducats a Year, and it is a Dukedom in the noble Family of *Cardona*; distant from the City *Valencia* 10 Leagues North, somewhat Westerly, near as much West from the Sea, and about 50 South-East from *Madrid*.

*Origuela*, is in a Plain at the Foot of a Mountain, on the Banks of the River *Segura*, near the Borders of *Murcia*, strong by Situation, Wall'd and has a good old Castle; the Inhabitants 2500 Families, in 3 Parishes, with 6 Monasteries of Friers, 3 of Nuns, and 2 Houses for Women to live retir'd; being a Government distinct from *Valencia*, only subject to the Sovereign Court and Chancery, its Territory extending 12 Leagues in Length and 6 in Breadth, and that so fertile, that it is become a Proverb, *Whether it Rains or not, there is Corn at Origuela*, the Reason whereof is, because they have Trenches cut every way to water the Ground in case of need; and in *Spain* there is never any Scarcity but for want of Rain. The *Romans* call'd it *Auriolla*, Pot of Gold, from the Mines of that Metal they found about it, whence by Corruption *Origuela*. King *James I.* of *Aragon* regain'd it from the *Moors*, Ann. 1264. King *Philip II.* made it a Bishop's See, worth to its Prelate 10000 Ducats a Year, and yet it contains but 60 Parishes, the Cathedral serv'd by 6 dignified Clergy-men, 16 Canons, and 12 petty Canons; distant from *Murcia*, Capital of the Kingdom of that Name. 4 Leagues East, 26 South from *Valencia*, 5 from the Sea, and about 68 from *Madrid* South-East. During the present War it receiv'd the Confederate Forces in the Year 1705. and in the Year 1707. the *Spanish* Troops, commanded by the Duke of *Berwick*, took it again by Storm.

*Xativa*, is a City Inhabited by 1800 Families, in 4 Parishes, one of them Collegiate, with 10 Monasteries of Friers, 2 of Nuns, and 3 Hospitals, standing on the side of a Hill, over a River of its own Name, Wall'd, hath 9 Gates, and a strong Castle, seated on a craggy Rock, which has 4 Gates, 30 Towers, and 12 great Cisterns for Water, being sometimes a Prison for Persons of the greatest Quality. The *Romans* call'd it *Setabis*; and it is 12 Leagues North, a little Westerly from *Alicant*, 7 due West from *Gandia*, 10 South from *Valencia*, and near 60 South-East from *Madrid*.

*Alicant*, formerly *Alone*, a famous City and Sea-Port on the *Mediterranean*, 14 Leagues from *Murcia* to the North-East, 20 South from *Valencia*, and about 70 South-East from *Madrid*. The City is Wall'd, and over it a Castle on a Rock, Built by King *Philip II.* About 1700 Families inhabited it before the present War, in 2 Parishes, one of them Collegiate, with 6 Monasteries of Friers, 2 of Nuns, and 3 handsome Market-places. It is well known for a Place of considerable Trade, whence the *English* us'd to bring rich Wine, and delicious Fruit; and in 1705. some of their Forces Landed there out of the Fleet, made themselves Masters of it and the Castle, and maintain it to this Day.

*Denia*, another small City of about 500 Families, and 11 Leagues distant from *Alicant* to the North-East, was also taken the same Year by the Confederate Forces, and still kept. It stands at the Foot of the high Mountain *Mongan*, is a Sea-Port on the *Mediterranean*, Wall'd, with a good old Castle, 1 Parish, 1 Monastery of Friers, 1 of Nuns, and a good Hospital. The ancient Name was *Dianium*, from a famous Temple of *Diana*, whence by Corruption *Denia*, being at this time a Marquisate under the Dukes *del Infantado*.

*Gandia*, as well as the 2 last submitted to King *Charles*, in 1705. and is still kept for him, being but 5 Leagues from the last to the North-West, half a League from the Sea, on the River *Alcoi*, is Head of a District, Wall'd, with 4 Gates, a strong old Castle, 1200 Families, 1 Collegiate Parish, 2 Monasteries of Friers, 1 of Nuns, and is an University, and a Dukedom in the noble Family of *Borja*. Whether it be a City or no, is not decided, the Inhabitants pretending to it; but *Rodrigo Mendez Silva* says he search'd the Records and could not find it. In its Territory, besides all other Things, grows the finest Sugar in the World.

*Morviedro*, a Town about a League from the Sea, and 4 from *Valencia* to the North, on the River *Palencia* or *Morviedro*, with a large Tower, on which some Cannon are planted. This is the famous ancient *Saguntum*, so well known for its Fidelity to the *Romans* and miserable Destruction by *Hannibal*. It stands at the Foot of a Hill, Wall'd, with many Towers, 5 Gates, and on the Hill a large Fort. It is inhabited by 700 Families, in one Parish, which has 4 Churches, besides which there are 2 Monasteries of Friers, 1 of Nuns, and 2 Hospitals. The Name is properly *Murviedro*, from *Muro Viejo*, an old Wall, on account of its ancient Ruins. This Place has been made remarkable in our Days by the witty Stratagem of the Earl of *Peterborough*, in gaining the Town and adjacent Country, and frightening away the *Spanish* Forces, whereby he open'd himself a Way to the City *Valencia*.



The other Towns of Note are too many to mention them all; some of the most remarkable are *Concense*, 14 Leagues from *Valencia*, of 600 Families. *Liria*, 4 Leagues from *Valencia*, of 500 Families. *Onda*, 2 Leagues from the Sea, 400 Families. *Morrela*, in the Frontiers of *Aragon* and *Catalonia*, 700 Families. *Villa-Real*, 8 Leagues from *Valencia*, 400 Families. *Castello de Plana*, 9 Leagues from *Valencia*, 1200 Families. *Sexona*, near *Alicant*, 600 Families. *Alcira*, in the Center of the Kingdom, 800 Families. *Ontinente*, near the Borders of *Castile*, 1000 Families. *Bacayrente*, 13 Leagues from *Valencia*, 500 Families. *Alcoy*, 15 Leagues from *Valencia*, 1000 Families. *Xelva*, 7 Leagues from *Valencia*, 500 Families. *Trayguera*, next the

Borders of *Catalonia*, 400 Families. *Benicarlón*, near the Sea, 400 Families. *Elche*, 4 Leagues from *Alicant*, 1000 Families. *S. Mateo*, on the Road to *Barcelona*, not far from *Catalonia*, 600 Families. *Sueca*, 4 Leagues from *Valencia*, 400 Families. *Binaroz*, a Sea-Port, 500 Families. *Xerica*, on the River *Morviedro*, 600 Families. *Oliva*, a League from *Gandia*, 600 Families. *Elda*, near *Alicant*, 600 Families. *Biar*, near the Frontiers of *Castile*, 400 Families. *Aspe*, near *Elche*, 500 Families. *Xavea*, near *Denia*, 500 Families. *Ayora*, near the Frontiers of *Castile*, 800 Families. *Carcaxente*, near *Alzira*, 450 Families. Most of these, if not all, are Wall'd; besides which there are many more we have not room to treat of.

## CHAP. VI.

### The Kingdom of NEW-CASTILE.

**T**HIS, the *Old-Castile* and *Estremadura*, are rather three Parts of one Province, than three distinct Provinces; and most *Spanish* Authors do speak of them as such; for we shall often hear them name *Castile*, without distinguishing which of them; and speaking of Places in *Estremadura*, say they are in *Castile*. However, since this Division has prevail'd, and they are generally known by these three Names, we will speak of each apart.

*NEW-CASTILE* was in the Days of the *Romans* the Country of the *Carpetani*, and *Oretani*, and *Vaceti*, and a Part of *Hispania Tarraconensis*; and after the Conquest of the *Moors*, distinguish'd by the Name of the Kingdom of *Toledo*, those Princes having possess'd the greatest part of the Country we now know by the more modern Name of *New-Castile*. On the North it borders all along upon *Old-Castile*, from which it is every where divided by Mountains, taking their Names from such places of Note as they pass by; on the East from *Estremadura*, by the Mountains of *Guadalupe*, and *La Serena*; on the South by those call'd *Sierra Morena* from *Andaluzia*, and by an imaginary Line from *Marcia*; and on the East by the River *Segura*, and Mountains of *Almanza* and *Requena* from *Valencia*, and by those of *Maja*, *Daroca* and *Molina* from *Aragon*. The Length of it from North to South is about 60 Leagues, and the greatest Breadth from East to West as much; but the Figure somewhat irregular.

The Climate is hotter in Summer, and colder in Winter, than the other Parts of *Spain*, which are in the same Latitude upon the Sea, this Country being all *Mediterranean*, and consequently wanting to be temper'd by the Sea Air. The Soil is generally Fruitful, producing Wheat, Barley, Wine, Oyl, all sorts of Herbs, and feeds great numbers of Cattle, all sorts of Game and Tame-Fowl; and the Rivers which fertilize it, are well stor'd with excellent Fish.

The Natives are Brave, Ambitious, wonderful Loyal, Upright, Generous, Modest, Affable, Courteous, Well-bred, Witty and addicted to Learning; but are prone to Feasting, Pleasure and Delight,

contrary to the Practice of former Ages, when the People of this Country were Laborious, and enur'd to Hardships, as the *Roman* Authors inform us, and had several Laws to protect the Husbandmen, who are now too much condemn'd, which discourages them from following their Profession.

The Name of *Castile* is said to have been given it from the many Castles there were in it; but whether that Appellation might not come from the *Castellani*, an ancient People, is not certain; for tho' they were seated about *Catalonia*, yet we see all *England* took its Name from the *Angles*, who were but a small part of the *Saxons*, which same might as well happen elsewhere; however, we see the Arms of *Castile* are still a Castle. Here the *Spanish* Tongue is spoken in the greatest Perfection, the City of *Toledo* being famous for purity of Language, and the Court of *Madrid* enjoying it to the highest Degree, as generally all Courts do, being the Resort of all the Learned and Polite People of every Nation.

This great and principal Province has but 6 Cities, 1 Archbishoprick and 1 Bishoprick; but we shall find sufficient Amends made by its having *Madrid*, tho' no City, yet the Court of the Kings of *Spain*, and finest Town in the World; *Alcala de Henares*, a famous University, and many other Towns not inferior to Cities, and the Archbishoprick of *Toledo*, the greatest and richest in the Universe, next to *Rome*, of all which we are now to speak. First, observing that there is an ancient Division of this *Castile* into 3 Parts, the Northern call'd *Algarria*, the Southern *La Mancha*, and the Eastern *La Sierra*, now little taken notice of. The Chief Places of *New-Castile* are,

MADRID.	}	Ciudad Real.
TOLEDO.		Alcala de Henares.
Cuenca.		Talavera de la Reyna.
Guadalajara.		Almanza.
Huete.		The Escorial.
Alcaraz.		Aranjuez.

*MADRID*, the Court of the Kings of *Spain*, and Capital of those Kingdoms, never receiv'd the Title



Title of a City, as is falsely attributed to it by many, but is call'd *Villa*, signifying a Market-Town. It is seated in the heart of *Spain*, in 40 Degrees, 25 Minutes Latitude; and 15 Degrees, 45 Minutes Longitude, on the Banks of the little River *Manzanares*, in a wholesome Air and fertile Soil. The Time of its first Foundation is uncertain, some placing it in 878. others in 1154 Years before Christ. By the *Romans* it was call'd *Mantua Carpetana*, or *Carpetanorum*, from the *Carpetani*, People inhabiting that part of *Castile* in which it stands; tho' some falsely call it *Mantua Carpentana*, deriving the Name from *Carpentum*, a Cart or Waggon, which is a gross Mistake. It is true, some will have *Villamanta*, a Village 2 or 3 Miles from *Madrid*, to be the true *Mantua Carpetana*, which is a bare arbitrary Supposition, contrary to all ancient Authority. The Town at present contains 400 Streets, the Houses fair and lofty, built of Brick, with Lattice Windows. But the better sort have Glass in Winter, which during the Summer Heats they take down, and put up either Lattice or Canvas, 14 Squares, 18 Parishes, and many Chappels, 57 Monasteries of Religious Men and Women, and 22 Hospitals and charitable Foundations. Among them the general Hospital for all Nations and Distempers, seldom entertains less than 500 sick Persons, and sometimes 1000, with 100 Persons to attend them, and the constant Revenue 30000 Ducats, besides a greater Sum in charitable Gifts and Contributions. The *Plaza Mayor*, or Great Square, is 436 Foot one way, and 334 the other, all Arch'd, after the manner of *Convent-Garden*, with open Walks underneath to be shelter'd from the Rain or Sun, and on the Arches or Pillars 136 stately Houses, all Uniform, with continu'd Rows of Balconies joyning to one another, and all exactly alike, none being permitted to vary in the least from the appointed Form of Building, either in Windows, Balconies, or any thing else that may any way be a Blemish to Uniformity. This is the Place where the Bull-Feasts are kept, and all other publick Shows, and it contains 50000 Spectators with Ease and Conveniency. The King's Palace in the Town is Magnificent, Spacious and richly Furnish'd, the main Structure consisting of 3 fair Courts, about which are several Apartments for the Royal Family, Offices and Lodgings. The better sort of Inhabitants Houses are about 12000. all Spacious and Beautiful, and most of them containing several Families. Besides which, there are many ancient, and some modern Majestick Palaces of the Nobility and Great Men, all built with Stone, and many of them so stor'd with Plate, that to mention it would appear incredible. The Bridge call'd of *Segovia*, over the little River *Manzanares*, cost King *Philip II.* 200000 Ducats building; and being so long and lofty, a *Biscayner*, who saw it in Summer, when that River is almost dry, is reported to have said, *Madrid should either buy Water, or sell the Bridge.* However in Winter, when the Rains fall, and the Floods come down from the Mountains, the Bridge is found to be little enough for it. At the end of the Town is the *Prado*, a delightful Plain, shaded with orderly Rows of Poplar Trees, and water'd by 23 curious Fountains, being the Place of Recreation for all the Inhabitants, where they go out to air and divert themselves, the Nobility and Gentry in their Coaches and on Horseback, and the Common Sort walking and using several Exercises. Many of the Monasteries above-mention'd are stately Structures,

as are generally all the Churches, especially the Great one. The Town is govern'd by a *Corregidor*, who is like a Lord-Mayor, but chosen by the King, and not a Citizen, but a Gentleman, and one that understands the Law, being a Judge, and under him 41 *Regidores*, answerable to Aldermen. At the end of the *Prado* above-mention'd, is a new Majestick Palace, call'd *El Buen Retiro*, or the Good Retreat, as serving the Kings to retire out of the Town. It consists of a large Square, containing most stately Rooms and curious Apartments, adorn'd with the costliest Furniture, and Paintings of the greatest Masters. The Gardens are a perfect Paradise, for shady Walks, Fountains, Water-works and all Productions of Art and Nature. The common Annual Expence of Provisions in *Madrid*, is 500000 Sheep, 12000 black Cattle, 6000 Kids, 10000 Calves, 13000 Swine, 90000 Arrobas, each of which is 25 Pounds weight of Oyl, and 80000 of Wine, this last every Month, and an infinite Number of Tame and Wild-Fowl; these Quantities are known, as paying Duties at the Gates when brought in; besides, a vast Expence of all sorts, the Duties whereof are stolen. The Number of the better sort of Houses, was said to be about 12000, the poorer sort at least as many more, and the whole Compass of the Town reckon'd about 3 Leagues.

**TOLEDO** is the ancient Capital City, not only of *Castile*, but of all *Spain*, and yet we have given the Precedence to the Town of *Madrid*, on account of its being the King's Court, and daily improving, (as the other declines. It's Situation is on a high, steep and craggy Hill, very strong by Nature, as being almost inaccessible, and yet much more fortified by the Waters of the famous River *Tagus*, over which it has 2 Bridges, its Waters encompassing 3 parts of the Rock, and surrounding it like a Horse-shoe, at the same time fertilizing the spacious Plain about it, which abundantly produces all Things for Conveniency and Delight. The Land-side is shut in by strong double Walls, with 150 Towers, and 5 great Gates, besides Posterns. The Streets are after the ancient manner, steep and narrow, but the Buildings lofty; and there are in it 17 Squares or Market-places. Formerly it was extraordinary Populous, but since forsaken by the Court so much declin'd, that it scarce contains above 5000 Families, among which very many of Quality, divided into 23 Quarters or Wards, and 27 Parishes, 38 Monasteries of Religious Men and Women, 2 Colleges, being an University, 4 stately Houses for Women to live retir'd, 20 Chappels, 28 Hospitals, one of them call'd the *Nuncio's*, Famous for Curing of Distracted Persons. Here is a stately Palace, Built by King *Alonso VI.* who took it from the *Moors*, and an ancient Mint. It has no Water but what is brought up from the River *Tagus*, and kept in great Pans and Cisterns; and the same is brought up to the Top of the Palace, which is 500 Cubits above the River, by an admirable Machine, invented by a *Flemming*; but according to *Mr. Willoughby* this Engine is ruin'd. What is not common in other Places, it has large Common-Shoars, which convey all the Filth of the City down to the River. It has the Title of *Imperial City*, given by King *Alonso VI.* when he took it from the *Moors*, and styl'd himself Emperor; King *Henry IV.* gave it the other Title of *Right Noble and Loyal City*. The Time of its Foundation is so variously deliver'd, that nothing of Certainty appears yet we know it was the Capital City of the *Carpetani*,



*ami.* a Place of Arms with the *Romans*, the Court of several *Goths*, *Moorish* and Christian Kings. The Cathedral some will have to be erected by the Apostle *St. James*; certain it is, that King *Recaredus* restor'd it; after being profan'd by the *Arrians*, the *Moors* made use of it as their Chief Mosque, till the Year 1036, when King *Alonso* recovering the City, as has been said, plac'd one *Bernard*, a *Frenchman*, Archbishop. The Church was rebuilt in 1227. by King *Ferdinand III.* and is 384 Feet in Length, 191 in Breadth, and 107 in Height, all of curious white Stone, artificially Carv'd, the high Roof supported by 88 Columns, which divide it into 5 spacious Isles, the middlemost Beaureous and Majestick, divided into 2 Choirs, wonderfully Carved and Inlaid; the one of them the Chappel of the Blessed Sacrament and Burial-place of many Kings, shut in with most costly Iron Grates, fix'd on Bases of Jasper Stone, and on each Side a Brass Pulpit fix'd on Pillars of the same Metal. The other Choir belongs to the Canons, shut in no less nobly, and adorn'd to Admiration with curious Works in Wood and Jasper Stone; all the Outside of them adorn'd with excellent Imagery in Niches, representing the History of the Old and New Testament. Eight great Gates of Brass, with magnificent Portico's, lead into this glorious Fabrick, over which is a surable Tower, and Bells of a prodigious Magnitude. The Altars, Lamps and Windows, are a greater Number than we can exactly tell; but there are 34 Chappels, many of which might pass for stately Churches. To describe it particularly would take up a Volume; but it is serv'd by 14 dignify'd Clergy-men, 40 Canons, 50 Petty-Canons, and in all has 600 Persons belonging to it. In the Diocess there are 802 Parishes; the whole Revenue of the Archbishoprick is 600000 Ducats, the one half whereof belongs to the Archbishop, the other half to the Cathedral, where there are every Day 8 Bushels of bak'd Bread given to the Poor, besides 30 needy Persons always maintain'd out of the Prelate's Revenue. The Treasury is of inestimable Value in Gifts and Presents made in all Ages, and all the Utenils for the Service of the Church are wonderfully Rich. In short it is one of the noblest and wealthiest Cathedrals in the Universe, and the Archbishop the greatest next to the Pope. The City was formerly Famous for many National Councils held in it, being above 20. Without the Walls on the North-side, still remain some Ruins of an ancient *Roman* Theatre; and about half a League from the City, of an enchanted Tower, fabulous Historians pretend King *Roderick* caus'd to be open'd, and there saw the Fatal Destruction of *Spain*, which soon ensu'd by the *Moors*. *Toledo* is 12 Leagues from *Madrid*, 51 from *Burgos*, from *Zaragoza* 63, from *Sevil* 72, from *Granada* 54, and from *Murcia* 59. Its Situation almost in the Center of *Spain*.

*Cuenca*, formerly *Concha*, or *Conchana*, in that part of *Castile* call'd *La Sierra*, being the Mountain part, towards the East, seated on a high Hill, and difficult of Access, the River *Xucar*, which in *Arabic* signifies sweet Water, running by the one side of it, and the *Hucar* by the other. along whose Banks there are pleasant Gardens. The Ascent to the City, which is Wall'd, and has 5 Gates, is steep, the Streets narrow, the Fountains many, brought from the neighbouring Mountains, not far from the Sources of the Rivers *Tagus*, *Xucar*, *Cabriel* and *Turia*, which fertilize the Country, and make it a-

bound in all Things that Luxury can desire. The Inhabitants are about 1300 Families, in 14 Parishes, with 8 Monasteries of Friars, 6 of Nuns, and 16 Chappels and Hospitals, a Mint, a noble Free-School and Court of the Inquisition. Its Bishop's Revenue is worth 50000 Ducats a Year, the Parishes in the Diocess 354, the Cathedral serv'd by 13 dignify'd Clergy-men, 26 Canons, and 22 Petty-Canons. It is about 26 Leagues East from *Toledo*, near the same Distance from *Madrid* East, somewhat Southerly, and about 30 North-East from *Valencia*.

*Guadalajara* is the Capital City of the Territory call'd *Alcarria*, seated on the Banks of the River *Henarez*, with a stately Bridge over it, on an uneven rising Ground, Wall'd, and has handsome Streets, lofty Houses, delicate Springs, curious Gardens and plenty of Provisions, besides noble Structures built by Men of Quality, 1000 Families, 10 Parishes, 7 Monasteries of Nuns, as many of Friars, 2 Hospitals, 8 Chappels and a Free-School. Its first Name was *Turria*, afterwards *Caraza*; the *Moors* having enlarg'd it, gave it the Name of *Guadalbichara*, signifying River of Stones, because the River is there Stony, and by Corruption *Guadalajara*. It is 10 Leagues from *Madrid* to the North-East.

*Huete*, or *Guete*, Built by the *Celtiberi*, and call'd *Opta*, had by *Julius Caesar* the Title of *Julia* added to it, which was by the *Moors* chang'd into *Gasta*. It is seated in a delightful Plain, Wall'd, with 8 Gates and a Castle, call'd *de Luna*, or of the Moon, by which runs the pleasant Brook *Cada*, which bubbles out of the Ground hard by, and drives seventeen Corn and several Fulling-Mills. The Inhabitants are 600 Families, in 10 Parishes, with 5 Monasteries of Friars, 2 of Nuns, 3 Hospitals and a large Territory, producing, besides all Necessaries for Life, 40000 Pounds of Saffron every good Year. It is about 20 Leagues from *Madrid* West, somewhat Southerly, and a little more from *Toledo* West, a little Northerly.

*Alcaraz*, a small City, seated on a high Hill, Wall'd, with 8 Gates and a strong old Castle, on the Banks of the River *Guadarmena*, which rises 4 Leagues from it, on whose Banks noble Horses are bred. The Inhabitants are 600 Families, in 5 Parishes, 5 Monasteries of Friars, and 2 of Nuns. It is about 5 Leagues from the Frontiers of *Andaluzia*, the same from those of *Murcia*, and about 40 Leagues South-West from *Madrid*.

*Ciudad Real* is about 20 Leagues South from *Toledo*, 32 the same way from *Madrid*, and 27 North from *Granada*, seated in a deep Bottom, which has prov'd dangerous, as wanting a Current to carry off the Rain; so that in 1508. a great Part of it was Drown'd, with the Concurrence of the River *Guadiana* overflowing, tho' it is a League distant, and this, notwithstanding its strong Walls, in which there are 6 Gates. The Inhabitants 1200 Families, in 3 Parishes, 4 Monasteries of Friars, 2 of Nuns, a College to maintain 12 ancient Men of good Birth, and 3 Hospitals. It is famous for making good Gloves, and was Built by King *Alonso* the Wise, Ann. 1262.

*Alcala de Henares*, is a Town but 6 Leagues from *Madrid*, well deserving a Place among Cities, standing in a spacious Plain, on the River *Henares*, with delightful Woods and Groves about it. a stately Bridge over the River, Wall'd, has 12 Gates, spacious Streets, lofty Buildings, stately Churches, a



magnificent Palace, 2 large Squares, besides other open Places, 4 publick Conduits. 1000 Familis, 3 Parishes, 19 Monasteries of Friars, 9 of Nuns, 20 Colleges, 4 Hospitals, and several Chappels. The University was Founded by the Cardinal *Don Francisco de Ximenes Cisneros*, Archbishop of *Toledo*, in the Year 1499. The great College, call'd of *St. Ildefonsus*, which has the Direction over all the University, maintains 40 Professors, has a noble Theater, for all publick Acts, and is frequented by 2000 Scholars. The Town was founded by the *Romans*, and call'd *Complutum*; the name of *Alcala* was given it by the Moors, with the addition of *Henares*, from the River it stands on.

*Talavera de la Reyna*, may not be forgot among the Towns of Note, as containing 3000 Families, 7 Parishes, 7 Monasteries of Friars, 5 of Nuns, 7 Hospitals, and 8 Chappels, seated on the River *Tagus*, 12 Leagues West from *Toledo*, famous for its Woolen Manufacture of Stuffs, and particularly for extraordinary fine Earthen Ware. The ancient Name was *Talabriga*, corruptly call'd *Talavera*, with the addition of *la Reyna*, or the Queen's, because it was given in Dower to some Queens.

Other Towns are too numerous to be mention'd, tho' many of them considerable enough; but it would require a Volume to treat of them all; but the little Town of *Almanza* has been lately made Remarkable, on account of the Battle fought near it on the 14th of *April*, 1707, O. S. between the Confederate Forces under the Earl of *Galway*, and the French and Spanish, under the Duke of *Berwick*, which proved fatal to the former. The Town is in a Plain, on the Borders of *Castile*, next those of *Valencia*, in 39 Degrees Latitude, 8 or 9 Leagues West from *Xativa*.

The *Escorial*, tho' the name of a poor Village, is also that of the King of *Spain's* Palace, and one of the Noblest in the World, with the Monastery of *Jeronimites* and their Church, the whole Building by King *Philip II.* of *Spain*, under the Invocation of *St. Laurence*, on whose Festival his Forces obtain'd a Signal Victory over the French, at *St. Quintin* in the Low Countries, Ann. 1557. The *Pantheon* or round Chappel, for the Burial of Kings, added afterwards by King *Philip IV.* The whole Structure is one large Square, 2980 Foot in Compass, all of curious white speckled Stone, besides the Ornaments of Marble and Jasper. This main

Pile contains 13 several Cloisters, besides two without the great Square, 3 great Courts, 9 lofty Towers; the Windows on the four out-Fronts of the Square 1110, those within 1578, 16 great Gates into the main Building, 14 Halls, 86 Fountains within, 80 Stair-cases. The number of Rooms of all sorts cannot be told, but there are 8 Galleries, 24 publick Rooms in the Monastery and Colleges, in which there are 200 Religious Men, and as many Seculars, by which some guests may be given at other Cells and Chambers, not to speak of the Royal Apartments. Seven Oratories and Chappels without the Church, 5 large Refectories, or Eating-Rooms, 5 Infirmaries, or Hospitals for the Sick, 5 large Rooms for the Apothecary's Shop, besides small ones; 2 Apartments to entertain Strangers, 9 Kitchens, above 40 stately Rooms under Ground for Offices, with 11 vast Cisterns, the least of them containing 200 Tun of Water. The Church is 364 Foot Long, and 230 in Breadth, divided into 6 stately Isles with 48 Altars, and 26 Arches, and the Sacristy or Vestry, tho very large, has 8 great Rooms depending on it. In fine, it is computed to be 4 whole Days Journey, to visit all the Rooms and Apartments of the House, and that to go through them all, would make out 33 measur'd Leagues. Besides for Ornament, there are 51 large Statues, 50 small, Paintings 1622, most of them of Famous Masters. The Library is no less Magnificent, all the Stands or Shelves for the Books, being Inlay'd with the richest sort of Wood in *Spain* and the *Indies*. To conclude, the description of the *Escorial*, from which this is Collected, is itself a Volume in Folio, and thence we may judge how much more is to be said of this wonderful Structure, which is 7 Leagues from *Madrid* Westward.

*Aranjuez*, is another Palace of the King's on the River *Tagus*, inferior to the *Escorial* for Structure, but no less exceeding it in delicious Gardens and surprizing Water-works, all which it has to the greatest Perfection; the Gardens being in an Island in the midst of the River, so that abounding with Water, they are never scorched with the Sun, but kept continually Green, and the immense variety of Water-works abundantly supply'd by the River. Yet this delicious Place has been somewhat neglected for the *Escorial*, but never loses its Beauty; which we have not room to Speak of more at large.

## C H A P. VII.

### The Kingdom of OLD-CASTILE,

IS that which was formerly an Earldom; the *New Castile*, as has been said, being properly the Kingdom of *Toledo*. The Moors having overrun *Spain*, and the Christians from the Mountains beginning to recover their own, we find this Earldom very early, for *Garibay* shews, by ancient Records, that one *Roderick* was call'd Earl of *Castile*, in the Year 762. But the History of those Times is so obscure, that no other Earl is mention'd till 860, when we have *Don James Porcellos*, who, upon what account is not known, was put to Death by King

*Ordonno* of *Oviedo*. The *Castilians* wanting a Head, made choice of *Don Nunno Nunez Rasura* and *Lain Calvo*, to Govern them, with the Title of Judges, in the Year 898. *Don Gonzalo Nunnex* was the next Judge after them, and his Successor *Ferdinand Gonzalez*, again took the Stile of Earl, which continu'd under his Successors, *Don Garcia Fernandez*, *Don Sancho Garcia*, and *Don Garcia*, who was Murder'd by three Brothers call'd *Belas*, and by his Death, that Earldom was united to the Crown of *Navarre*, in the Person of *Don Sancho*, the great King of Na.



carre, as Husband to *Munia*, Daughter and Heiress to the aforesaid Earl; and in this King ended the Earls of *Castile*. *Ferdinand*, Son to *Don Sancho* succeeded his Father, and call'd himself King of *Castile*, in the Year 1034, his Elder Brother *Don Garcia Sanchez*, inheriting the Crown of *Navarre*. This *Ferdinand* soon after falling at Variance with his Brother-in-Law King *Bermudo*, Slew him in Battle, and possess'd himself of that Crown, in the Right of his Wife *Sancha*, Sister and Heiress to the said *Bermudo*, from which time the two Crowns of *Castile* and *Leon*, have ever continu'd United.

*Old Castile* being a part of the ancient Province *Tarraconensis*, borders all along the South upon *New Castile*, from which it is divided by Mountains, taking their Names from the Places of Note they pass by, as of *Molina*, *Siguenza*, *Segovia*, &c. The Ridge call'd *Sierra de Tablada*, on the West, the Mountains of *Pico* and *Banos*, part it from *Estremadura*, as do those of *Avila* and *Pernia*, with the little Rivers *Carrion*, *Pisuerga*, and *Heban*, from *Leon*. On the North-part the Ridge of Mountains, which runs Westward from the *Pyreneans*, separates it from *Asturias*, between which Country and *Biscay*, a narrow slip of it runs up to the Bay of *Biscay*, in which are the four Seaport Towns of *Laredo*, *Santander*, *Castro de Urdiales*, and *San Vicente de la Barquera*, which are a part of this *Castile*; notwithstanding most Foreign Geographers, not well acquainted with *Spain*, place them in *Biscay*. The same ridge of Mountains above-mention'd, continues to part *Castile* on the North from *Biscay*. Lastly, on the East, the River *Ebro* and Mountains *Duca*, for a considerable Part make the Boundaries betwixt *Castile* and *Navarre*, and *Aragon*. Its greatest Extent from North to South, is about 60 Leagues, and about the same from East to West, both ways taken where largest, for the Figure is very Irregular, and not near answerable in other Parts.

The Climate differs somewhat from that of *New-Castile*, the Country being more Mountainous, which makes several Parts vary according to their Situation; some deep Valleys being excessive Hot, the upper Grounds Cool and Temperate, and so others, as the Proximity of the Hills either sends down refreshing Gales, or causes a more violent Reflection of the Sun. The Soil for the most part is good, the Plains yielding all sorts of Grain and Fruit, and the sides of Hills good Pasture, while the tops furnish Fewel, and in some Places Snow in the midst of Summer, which is carry'd to the Towns, as is usual, throughout all *Spain*, to cool their Wine.

The Natives are, for the most part, a sincere hearty People, Brave, Ambitious, and great asserters of the Nobility and Antiquity of their Families, especially those on the Mountains, who tho' reduc'd to Poverty, still endeavour to maintain the Honour gain'd by their Progenitors, and are accordingly respected, tho' their Fortunes are not suitable to their Birth. Many of these Gentry, notwithstanding the lowliness of their Condition, preserve the Purity of the *Spanish* Language among them; so that it is observ'd, they speak as Politely as in the Court, but among the meaner Sort, the Tongue is corrupted, and there is a Tone and Dialect very disagreeable to such as have been us'd to *Madrid* and other parts of *New Castile*.

The number of Cities here is greater than in *New Castile*, being 11 in number, one Archbishoprick, 6 Bishopricks, 6 Universities, besides many Towns

of Note. Of the former we are now to speak, as much as this Volume will allow. The Chief whereof are,

<i>Burgos.</i>	}	<i>Calahorra.</i>
<i>Valladolid.</i>		<i>St. Domingo de la</i>
<i>Segovia.</i>		<i>Calzadas.</i>
<i>Avila.</i>		<i>Soria.</i>
<i>Osma.</i>		<i>Logronno.</i>
<i>Siguenza.</i>		<i>Nagera.</i>

**BURGOS**, the Capital of this Kingdom, so call'd from *Burgo*, a Borough, because *Don James Porcellos*, the first noted Earl of *Castile*, gather'd the People from many scatter'd Boroughs to build this City, in the Year 884, and therefore in *Latin* nam'd *Burgi*. It is seated betwixt the Rivers *Alanzen* and *Arlanza*, which water the Plains about it, on a high Ground, encompass'd with Mountains. The Walls are strong, but ancient, in which are 7 Gates; over the River *Arlanza* 3 stately Bridges, and on an inaccessible Rock, on the North side, a strong Castle, of which the Dukes of *Lerma* are Hereditary Constables. The Situation is very disagreeable for temperature of Air, whence it is become a Proverb in *Spain*, that *Burgos* has, *Nueve meses de Invierno y tres de Infierno*, Nine Months of Winter, and three of Hell; the Nine being continual Cold, or Rains, and the other three intolerably Hot, by Reason of the violent reflection of the Sun from the Mountains, and want of Air. In former Ages it was very Populous, at present reduc'd to about 1000 Families, in 15 Parishes, with 5 Hospitals, 6 Chappels, one College, 10 Monasteries of Friars, and 9 of Nuns, one of which is the Royal Foundation of *Huelgas*, of the Order of *St. Bernard*, by King *Alonso IX.* Ann. 1187. to whose Abbess 12 other Monasteries, 13 Towns, and 50 Villages are subject, and it's Revenue 80000 Ducats a Year. Besides the Monastery of *St. Augustin*, is Famous for a Miraculous Crucifix in it, said to be made by *Nicodemus*. The Cathedral built by K. *Ferdinand III.* Ann. 1122, is one of the noblest in *Spain*, 260 Foot long, and 206 in breadth, where, in 5 several Chappels Divine Service may be Sung with Musick, and not disturb one another. To it belong 18 Dignify'd Clergy-men, 45 Canons, of which the King is always the first, and 40 Petti-Canons, the Archbishoprick extending over 1756 Parishes, and that Prelate's Revenue amounting to 40000 Ducats. It was first made a Bishoprick, translated thither from *Oca*, the ancient *Auca*, by King *Alonso VI.* Ann. 1076, and rais'd to the Archiepiscopal Dignity, by King *Philip II.* Ann. 1571. In the City there are several stately ancient Palaces of Nobility; the other Houses after the old manner of Structure, and the Streets narrow; but there are several Squares or Market-places, and many curious Fountains. This City claims the Precedence of all others in the *Cortes* or Parliament of *Castile*, which being oppos'd by *Toledo*, the Difference was reconcil'd by King *Alonso XII.* Ann. 1349. Ordering that the Representatives of *Burgos* should speak first, and he would speak himself for *Toledo*, which ended the Dispute, without disobliging either Party; and that Custom remains to this Day. This was the ancient Court of the Earls of *Castile*, but not reckon'd Healthy, for the Reasons aforesaid. It is distant from *Madrid* 39 Leagues to the North; from *Bilbao*, 30 Leagues to the South, 52 West, somewhat Northerly from *Zaragoza*, and 119 North-East from *Lisbon*.  
*Valladolid,*



*Valladolid*, formerly *Pintia*, according to some, had its present Name from one *Ulid* a Moor, who Enlarg'd it, whence call'd *Valle de Ulid*, the Vale of *Ulid*. Another Opinion is, it came from *Valle de Lid*, the Valley of Contention, because it was the Boundary of the ancient *Arevaci*, *Carpetani*, *Celestini* and *Astures*, who all repair'd to this Place to decide their Differences. It stands on the Banks of the River *Pisuerga*, over which it has a stately Bridge, besides 19 small ones over another Rivulet call'd *Esgueva*, which runs through several of the Streets, and passing thence Waters the Fields and Meadows, and fertilizes the Soil, to produce all things necessary. It is Wall'd, and has 6 Gates, having been once the Residence of Kings. The great Square, which is the Model of that at *Madrid*, has 300 Arches, and 2000 Windows, being capable of containing 30000 Souls. The Inhabitants of the City are 4000 Families, in 16 Parishes, 46 Monasteries of Religious Men and Women, 13 Hospitals, and 12 Colleges and Chappels, being the next University to *Salamanca* in Dignity, founded in the Year 1346. The great Church, which was formerly Collegiate, ever since the Year 1118, but made a Cathedral by King *Philip II.* Ann. 1595; worth to the Bishop 15000 Ducats a Year, serv'd by 6 Dignify'd Clergy-men, 22 Canons, and 18 Petty-Canons, the Diocess containing 132 Parishes. Here is also an Eminent Palace of the Kings, and the Inhabitants are reckon'd as Polite and Well-bred, as any in all *Spain*. From *Madrid* it is 33 Leagues to the North-West: From *Burgos* 22 South-West: From *Sevil* 94 North, a little Easterly: And from *Zaragoza* 60 West.

*Segovia*. By *Pliny* call'd *Urbs Arevacorum*. by *Ptolemy*, *Segubia*; and by others, *Segabia*, is a City seated in a Valley at the foot of Mountains, encompass'd on the North by the River *Eresma*; on the South by the Brook *Clamores*, and the River call'd *Frio*, or cold, in the midst of it; over which is the Noble Bridge. or rather the Wonderful Aqueduct, built by the Emperor *Trajan*, of a vast length, and two rows of Arches, one above another, carrying Water to serve the City, which is Wall'd, has 8 Gates, 4000 Families, 27 Parishes, 13 Monasteries of Friars, 8 of Nuns, 5 Hospitals, 3 Chappels, 7 Squares, and 43 noted Streets, with 25 Corn-Mills, 14 Pulling-Mills, and 3 Places for washing of Wool on the River. The Principal Mint of *Spain*, is fix'd in this City, which, when it Works, can Coin 30000 Ducats Plate every Day. Good Printing-Paper is made here, there being 2 Mills for that use; but the Woollen Manufacture here, is the best in all *Spain*, and the Cloth inferior to none in the World, all made of rich *Spanish* Wool, whereof there is great Plenty in this Territory on the numerous Flocks of Sheep it feeds. The Castle call'd, *El Alcazar de Segovia*, is very strong by Nature, but has no addition by Modern Works, which would tender it almost Impregnable. This is also an University and a Bishoprick, the latter erected Ann. 1088, containing, at present, 438 Parishes; the Bishop's Revenue 24000 Ducats, and the Cathedral serv'd by 8 dignify'd Clergy-men, 40 Canons, and 20 Petty-Canons. No Person is here to be seen idle, or Begging, except Disabled by Sicknes or Age; and thence the City has by some, the additional Title given it of *Laboriosa*. From *Valladolid*, it is distant 17 Leagues South, somewhat Easterly: From *Toledo* 25 North; from *Avila*, 10 East; from *Birceïona*, 110 West.

*Avila*, suppos'd to have been anciently call'd *Abula*, *Albula*, and *Albucella*; Famous for St. *Teresa's* being born in it, stands on a Hill on the Banks of the little River *Adaja*, in sight of the Mountains of *Pico*, very strong by Nature, the Walls 9073 Foot in Compass, with 86 Towers on them, and 10 Gates, within them 127 Streets, the Buildings generally good, some of them stately, 9 Squares, 2000 Houses, 9 Parishes, 9 Monasteries of Friars, and 7 of Nuns, 2 Colleges, 9 Hospitals, and 18 Chappels, and a Charitable Revenue given by the Inhabitants, of 10000 Ducats a Year for the maintenance of Orphans and other needy Persons, and is an University and a Bishoprick, under which are 577 Parishes; the Prelate's Revenue 15000 Ducats, the Cathedral serv'd by 8 Dignify'd Clergy-men, 20 Canons, and as many Petty-Canons. It is call'd *Avila del Rey*. or the King's, because the Inhabitants serv'd and defended the Infant King *Alonso VIII.* against his Father-in-Law *Alonso VII.* Distant from *Salamanca* 17 Leagues South-East, about the same from *Madrid* North-West.

*Osma*, formerly *Uxama*, Destroy'd by *Pompey* the Great, and again by the *Moors*, was Rebuilt in 950, at the Foot of a Hill, near the River *Duero*, and Water'd by those of *Abion* and *Uxero*, has not above 50 or 60 Houses on that side of the River, but about a Musket-shot from it, beyond the River, over which is a Bridge, there are 200 Houses, call'd *Burgo de Osma*, within a Wall, one Monastery, a Chappel, and its Parish Church is a Cathedral; for as low as it is brought, it is still an University, and a Bishoprick, worth to its Prelate 26000 Ducats a Year, and under him 405 Parishes; the Church serv'd by 10 Dignify'd Priests, 10 Canons, and 12 Petty-Canons. Distant 24 Leagues North from *Madrid*, 22 South-East from *Burgos*, and 25 East, a little Southerly, from *Valladolid*.

*Signenza*, formerly *Secontia*, or *Segontia*, or as *Roderick Mendez Silva* writes, *Saguntia*, from *Saguntum*, being Built, as he says, by some few Inhabitants of that Town, that escap'd when it was destroy'd by *Hannibal*. It stands on a Hill, near the Frontiers of *Aragon*, about 20 Leagues North-East from *Madrid*, on the Banks of the River *Henares*, whose Springs are not far off in certain Fields, where much Hay is made; has very handsome Buildings, good Streets, several Fountains, strong old Walls, 7 Gates, an ancient Castle, the Bishop's Palace, 1500 Houses, 3 Parishes, one Monastery of Friars, and another of Nuns, 3 Colleges, as being an University, 2 Hospitals and 7 Chappels. The Bishop is Lord of it, whose Revenue is 40000 Ducats a Year, and under him 516 Parishes, the Cathedral serv'd by 14 dignify'd Clergy-men, 40 Canons, and 20 Petty-Canons.

*Calaborra*, the *Calagurris* of the Ancients, is seated near the Borders of *Aragon* and *Navarre*, on a Hill over the River *Cidazo*, not far from the *Ebro*, Wall'd, has 4 Gates, 2000 Houses, 3 Parishes, 2 Monasteries of Friars, 1 of Nuns, 8 Chappels and 4 Squares. King *Philip II.* made it a Bishoprick, Ann. 1572. under which are 1013 Parishes, the Bishop's Revenue 18000 Ducats, the Cathedral serv'd by 8 dignify'd Clergy-men, 24 Canons, and 18 Petty-Canons. This Place is famous for the Siege laid to it by *Afranius*, *Pompey's* General, whom the Inhabitants withstood till they eat one another for Hunger; whence came the Latin Proverb of *Fames Calagurritana*, the Famine of *Calaborra*. Distant from *Logronno* 8 Leagues



Leagues South East, from *Tudela* 10 North-West, from *Madrid* 45 North-East.

*Santo Domingo de la Calzada*, Built by King *Alonso I.* of *Aragon*, *Ann.* 1125. where a Church had been before erected by *S. Dominick de la Calzada*, from whom it had the Name. Its Situation is in a Plain, on the Banks of the River *Laglera*, over which it has a stately Bridge, is Wall'd, and has 6 Gates, 600 Houses, 1 Parish, which is Collegiate, 1 Monastery of Friars, 1 of Nuns, 5 Chappels and an Hospital. It belongs to the little Province call'd *Rioja*, is above 40 Leagues North East from *Madrid*, and a little less North-West from *Zaragoza*.

*Soria*, was the ancient and renown'd *Numantia*, whose Original is uncertain, but its Destruction by *Scipio* well known, after it had baffl'd several *Roman* Armies, who at last utterly destroy'd and laid it level with the Ground, as it continu'd till the Year 1119. when rebuilt by King *Alonso I.* of *Aragon*. Others will have it, that *Numantia* stood a League from this Place, where now is *Garay*; be that as it will, *Soria* is seated among craggy Hills and intricate Woods, which render the Access difficult; its Walls Three Quarters of a League in Compass, besides a good Castle. The Inhabitants 1100 Families, in 13 Parishes, one of them Collegiate, 7 Monasteries of Friars, 4 of Nuns, 23 Chappels and 4 Hospitals. Distant from *Madrid* 35 Leagues to the North-East, and 25 West from *Zaragoza*.

*Logrono*, suppos'd to be Built by *Augustus Caesar*, or at least, rais'd from an inconsiderable Place to something of Note, and call'd *Juliobriga*; stands upon the first Stream of the River *Ebro*, near the Confines of *Navarre* and the Province of *Alaba*, and in a most delightful Plain cover'd with Groves, Gardens and Orchards. The Situation naturally impregnable, as being free from Heights to command it, and the Ground so full of Springs, that there is no undermining of it. On the Land-side it has strong Walls, with Ramparts in some Places,

5 Gates, a strong Castle, a deep Ditch, which upon occasion can drown the Country. The rapid River runs thro' a magnificent Bridge, 716 Foot in Length, and consisting of 12 Arches. The Inhabitants fill 1500 Houses, in 4 Parishes, one of them Collegiate, besides 5 Monasteries of Friars, 2 of Nuns, 1 good Hospital, and Grammar, Rhetorick and Philosophy Schools. Distant from *Madrid* near 50 Leagues North-East, and from *Zaragoza* 33 North-West.

*Nagera*, which some will have the *Romans* to call *Tiburicium*, and others *Tricium*, is in the little Province of *Rioja*, at the foot of an Ascent, which defends that side of it with a Castle, on the River *Nagerilla*. The Inhabitants 1300 Families, in 3 Parishes, 2 Monasteries of Friars and 2 of Nuns. Some ancient Kings of *Navarre* kept their Court here, and it is distant from *Madrid* somewhat above 40 Leagues North, a little Easterly, and little less than 40 from *Zaragoza* North-West, and about 12 Leagues from both the Borders of *Navarre* and the Province of *Alaba*.

Besides these Cities, there are very many Wall'd Towns, and considerable enough to be taken notice of; as *Penafiel*, of 700 Houses, 4 Parishes, 3 Monasteries and 2 Hospitals. *Agreda*, of 1000 Houses, 6 Parishes, 3 Monasteries and 2 Hospitals, with many more. But we must not forget to mention the 4 Sea-ports of *Old-Castile*, which lie upon the Bay of *Biscay*, the First of which is *Laredo*, of 300 Houses, 1 Parish and 2 Monasteries, Wall'd, and 4 Gates. The Second *Sansander*, of 700 Houses, 2 Parishes, one of them Collegiate, and 4 Monasteries. The Third *Castro de Urdiales*, of 400 Houses, 1 Parish, 2 Monasteries and 2 Hospitals. Lastly, *San Vicente de la Barquera*, 300 Houses, 1 Parish, and 1 Monastery. They are all 4 Wall'd, and good Harbours for small Ships, all of them under the Government of a *Corregidor*, who is also Captain General, and is a Post of Honour and Profit.

## C H A P. VIII.

### The Kingdom of LEON

**T**AKES Name from its Metropolis, of which we shall speak in its Place, and here of that Country properly so call'd; for under the Crown of *Leon* were *Asturias* and *Galicia* already describ'd, as being distinct Provinces, tho' subject to the Kings of *Leon*. The Beginning of this Kingdom is generally plac'd in the Year 722. when *Pelayo*, or *Pelagius I.* who oppos'd the *Moors* after the Overthrow of King *Roderick*, took upon him the Title of King; but it must be observ'd, that *Mariana*, *Garibay* and other *Spanish* Authors all agree, that *Pelayo* and his Successors call'd themselves Kings of *Oviedo* only, for many Years, as appears by ancient Records, and yet later Writers have given them the Title of Kings of *Leon*; whereas the aforesaid Historians affirm, that King *Ordonno*, the 2d. of the Name, and 14th of the Race, was the first that assum'd this Title, about the Year 894. and *Garibay* rather believes it was *Ramiro II.* the 17th king of the Race

who call'd himself so, *Ann.* 942. having upon search found no Records to prove that any before did take the Stile. But this is not worth our Controversing, they being the same Race of Kings, and the same Kingdom, only changing Names as it enlarg'd; for first those Princes were call'd Kings of *Asturias*, next of *Leon*, then of *Castile*, and now of *Spain*, as they extended their Conquests, or united other States to their Crowns, which Unions we have seen before.

The Kingdom of *Leon* properly so call'd, was formerly the Habitation of the *Astures Cismontani*, part of the *Vaccei*, and some of the *Vettones*. It is now bounded on the North by *Asturias*, and parted from it by the Mountains call'd of *Asturias*. On the East it has *Old-Castile*, from which divided by the Mountains of *Pernia*, and the Rivers *Carrion* and *Pisuerga*, as far as the *Ebro*, then by the Rivers *Heban* and *Reganon*, till it comes to the Mountains of *Roxilia*.



*Benilla de la Sierra*; on the South the Mountains of *Bannos* and others run betwixt it and *Estremadura*; and on the West the Rivers of *Agueda* and *Duero*, and some Mountains separate it from *Portugal*, as doe the same Hills continu'd from *Galicia*. The Length of it is near 50 Leagues, the Breadth above 30. the River *Duero* running East and West cuts it in the middle, leaving one half on the North, and the other on the South.

The Air and Soil differ very little, or not at all from *Old-Castile*, as lying in the same Latitude, contiguous, and of the same Nature in Hills and Plains, which occasion the same Degrees of Heat and Cold, and a like Production, being much excellent Wheat, and other Grain, Pasture, Wine, Oyl, Honey, Game and Cattle. The Natives Brave, Hardy, Robust, Laborious and Temperate in their way of Living, as also much addicted to Learning, and the Nobility and Gentry Courteous and Affable. In the Mountains there are Quarries of curious Marble and Jasper Stone, and sometimes others of greater Value have been found, as Turkey Stones, Garnets, &c.

Under the *Romans*, who never thorowly conquer'd it, till *Augustus Caesar*, and held it about 400 Years, all that half which lies South of the River *Duero*, belong'd to the Province of *Lusitania*, as did the Northern half to the *Tarraconensis*. The *Goths*, who succeeded the *Romans*, were Masters 300 Years, after whom follow'd the *Moors*, who soon lost the Capital City *Leon*, and were by degrees expell'd all the rest. When it became subject to Kings of its own, as has been said, and those as they grew greater removing into *Castile*, it was put under a Governor call'd *Adelantado*, which is as much as a Lord Lieutenant; and that Title continues Hereditary to this Day in the Dukes of *Nagera*. In this Kingdom there are 8 Cities, no Archbishoprick, 6 Bishopricks, and 1 University. The Chief whereof are,

Leon.	}	<i>Palencia.</i>
<i>Salamanca.</i>		<i>Toro.</i>
<i>Ciudad Rodrigo.</i>		<i>Medina de Rio Seco.</i>
<i>Zamora.</i>		<i>Tordesillas.</i>
<i>Astorga.</i>		<i>Medina del Campo.</i>

**LEON**, the Capital City of the Kingdom of the same Name, corruptly so call'd, from *Legio*, a *Roman* Legion planted there, and in those Days a City of *Hispania Tarraconensis*; is seated at the Foot of the Mountains of *Asturias*, between the Rivers *Ezla* and *Vernezga*, in a temperate and healthy Air, 55 Leagues from *Madrid* North-West, 16 from *Oviedo* South-East, and 20 from *Zamora* North. The Walls of it were built by King *Ordenno*, Ann. 918. in which are 11 Gates, the Country about pleasant and fruitful, the Structures within good, after the ancient manner, consisting of 2000 Houses, 13 Parishes, 6 Monasteries of Friers, 5 of Nuns, 15 Chappels and 4 Hospitals. The Cathedral is one of the finest in *Spain*, as appears by the *Spanish* Proverb, *Sevil for Greatness, Toledo for Riches, Compostela for Strength, and this for curious Workmanship*; it is serv'd by 8 dignify'd Clergy-men, 84 Canons, 20 Petty-Canons, the Diocess which is under the Archbishop of *Compostela*, extending its Jurisdiction over 1020 Parishes, the Bishop's Revenue 13000 Ducats. The King of *Spain* is always one of the Canons of this Church, as is the Marquis of *Astorga*, as Lord of *Villalobos*. Nor to

speak of fabulous Originals, the Emperor *Trajan* was the Founder of this City, who plac'd in it the 7th Legion, call'd *Gemina*. King *Pelayo* recover'd it from the *Moors* in 722. or 723. but it was retaken by those Infidels, and ran several Fortunes, till King *Alonso V.* the last time recover'd and fortify'd it.

*Salamanca*, call'd in *Latin* *Salmantica*, and *Urbs Vettonum*, and perhaps *Elemanica* by *Polybius*, is now the greatest University in *Spain*, and perhaps inferior to none in the World, about 37 Leagues from *Madrid* North-West, from *Lisbon* 78 North-East, from *Valladolid* 25 South-West, and from *Zamora* 12 South. The City is round, built on 3 Hills and 2 Valleys, the Walls 6366 Paces about, built in the Year 1147 by King *Alonso VIII.* in which there are 13 Gates, and within them 17 Squares, 162 Streets, 5000 Houses, many stately Buildings, 25 Parishes, 20 Monasteries of Friers, 11 of Nuns, 2 Houses for Maidens to live retir'd, 16 Chappels, 6 Hospitals, and 25 Colleges. The Celebrated River *Tormes* runs by it, along which there are delightful Gardens, pleasant Orchards, and fine shady Walks. The University was remov'd hither by King *Ferdinand* of *Castile*, in the Year 1240. afterwards enlarg'd and encourag'd by King *Alonso XII.* ever since which Time it has flourish'd, insomuch that there have been there, not many Years since between 7 and 8000 Scholars enroll'd, and above 15000 of all Sorts. It generally maintains 75 Professors, who have plentiful Salaries, and have produc'd many Men know in the World for their extraordinary Learning in all Sciences. The Colleges are most of them noble Structures, and the great publick Schools extraordinary Magnificent. This City is also a Bishoprick, under the Metropolitan of *Compostela*, and contains 240 Parish Churches, the Bishop's Revenue 24000 Ducats: To the Cathedral belong 10 dignify'd Clergy-men, 26 Canons, 30 Petty-Canons.

*Ciudad Rodrigo*, formerly *Merobriga*, next *Augustobriga*, being utterly ruin'd was rebuilt Ann. 1102. by *D. Rodrigo Gonzalez Giron*, and from him call'd *Ciudad Rodrigo*, or *Roderick's City*. It was again destroy'd and rebuilt by King *Ferdinand II.* of *Leon* in 1160. for a Check upon *Portugal*, being about 4 Leagues from the Frontiers of that Kingdom, 43 West from *Madrid*, and 60 North East from *Lisbon*. It stands on the River *Agueda*, has good Walls, 9 Gates, 3 Squares, 54 Streets, 2000 Houses, 8 Parishes, 9 Monasteries of Friers and Nuns, 10 Chappels and 3 Hospitals. The Founder abovemention'd made it a Bishoprick, under the Metropolitan of *Compostela*, with only 63 Parishes subject to it, yet worth 10000 Ducats a Year to the Prelate, and the Cathedral serv'd by 7 dignify'd Clergy-men, 20 Canons and 7 Petty-Canons.

*Zamora*, some will have to be the ancient *Sentica*, which others deny, alledging that was the Name of *Simancas*, and therefore say this was call'd *Sisapona*, tho' there is another place of this Name in *Andaluzia*; so that it does not appear whether ever it had a Being till Built by King *Alonso III.* of *Leon*, Ann. 904. memorable for the Murder of King *Sancho II.* of *Castile*, Stabb'd before it by the Traitor *Bellido Dolfos*. It stands on an upright Rock, on the Banks of the River *Duero*, over which it has a noble Bridge of 17 Arches, with 2 Towers; in its Walls are 10 Gates, near them a stately Castle, within 3000 Houses, 24 Parishes, 6 Monasteries of Friers, 8 of Nuns, 6 Chappels and 4 Hospitals.

King



King *Alonso VIII.* of *Castile* made is a Bishoprick, *Ann.* 1119, or 1124, which extends over 256 Parishes, the Bishop's Revenue 20000 Ducats, to the Cathedral belong 9 Dignify'd Clergy-men, 24 Canons, and 12 Petty Canons. Distant from *Madrid* about 40 Leagues North West, 5 from *Toro* West, and from *Leon* 20 South.

*Astorga* seated in a pleasant Plain, on the Banks of the River *Tuerto*, is square, wall'd, has 500 Houses, 7 Gates, 8 Parishes, 4 Monasteries, 16 Chappels, and 9 Hospitals. The *Romans* call'd it *Asturia Augusta*, as being a noble City in those days. King *Alonso* recover'd it from the *Moors*, and built the Cathedral, which is one of the ancientest in *Spain*, but was again destroy'd, and afterwards rebuilt by King *Ordono I.* *Ann.* 851, it is serv'd by 14 Dignify'd Clergy-men, 50 Canons, and 10 Petty-Canons, the Diocess extending over 913 Parishes, the Bishop's Revenue 10000 Ducats a Year. King *Henry IV.* made it a Marquisate, conferr'd on *Don Alvaro Peter Osorio*, Earl of *Traстамara* and *Villalobos*, in whose Posterity it continues. Distant from *Madrid* about 45 Leagues North West, from *Zamora* 15 North, and 8 from *Leon* South, somewhat Westerly.

*Palencia*, formerly *Palantia*, famous among the *Romans*, for the overthrow of some of their Generals, afterwards destroy'd, remain'd so till the Year 1032, or 33, when rebuilt by King *Sancho* the Great, King of *Navarre*, upon his finding *S. Antolin's* Cave, as he was in Chace of a Wild-boar. He encompass'd it with strong Walls, in which there are 9 Gates, the Territory most delightful and fertile, as seated on the River *Carrión*, formerly call'd *Nubis*, in a spacious Plain. It contains 3000 Houses, 5 Parishes, 5 Monasteries of Friers, of which the *Dominicans* keep Schools of Philosophy, 6 of Nuns, 2 Hospitals, and 11 Chappels. It is a Bishoprick, under the Metropolitan of *Compostela*; the Cathedral serv'd by 14 Dignify'd Clergy-men, 42 Canons, 24 Petty Canons, and 40 Chaplains, the Diocess containing 881 Parishes, worth to the Bishop 24000 Ducats a Year. Distant from *Madrid* 40 Leagues North West, 18 West from *Burgos*, and 8 North West from *Valladolid*.

*Toro*, some say was formerly *Ostodurum*, others *Sarabis*, but being destroy'd and rebuilt by Prince afterwards King *Garcia*, *Ann.* 904, it had the present name of *Toro*, signifying a Bull, on account of a Stone Bull found in the Place, made by the *Romans*. It is seated on the Banks of the River *Duero*, which washes its lofty Walls, in which there are 7 Gates, and over the River a stately Bridge. Besides the other plentiful Products of the Country,

it is famous for generous Wine much celebrated in *Spain*. The pleasant and wholesomeness of the Air, has invited many great Men to build themselves noble Palaces in the City. which are a great Ornament, besides which it contains 2500 Houses, 22 Parishes, 9 Monasteries of Friers, 5 of Nuns, 4 Hospitals, 6 Chappels, and a stately ancient Palace and Castle, besides a magnificent Collegiate Church. Here the *Spaniards* gave the *Portugueses* invading *Spain* a memorable overthrow in the Year 1476. It is about 35 Leagues from *Madrid* to the North-West, 5 East from *Zamora*, and 24 South West from *Burgos*.

*Medina de Rio Seco*, a rich and plentiful City, standing in a spacious Plain, hemm'd in with Mountains, and so fruitful in Pasture, that scarce any in *Spain* exceeds it, besides which it produces all necessaries for Food and Delight. The City contains 2000 Houses, 3 Parishes, 3 Monasteries of Friers, 2 of Nuns, 3 noble Hospitals, and 16 Chappels, and adjoining to it a lofty Castle. King *Philip IV.* made it a City, *Ann.* 1632, and it has 2 Fairs every Year, where vast numbers of Cattle are sold. The *Romans* call'd it *Forum Egurorum*, and the *Moors*, gave it the name of *Medina*, signifying a City, with the Addition of *Rio Seco*, to distinguish it from other *Medinas*, and is still a Dukedom in the Family of *Enriquez*, who are Admirals of *Castile*. Distant from *Madrid* 40 Leagues North East, from *Burgos* 18 Leagues West, and from *Salamanca* 22 North East.

*Tordesillas*, tho' but a Town may vye with many good Cities, as consisting of 1000 Houses, 6 Parishes, 2 Monasteries of Friers, 2 of Nuns, and a good Hospital, call'd by the *Romans* *Turis Syllana*, perhaps because founded by *Caius Aneus Sylla's* General, whom he sent against *Sertorius*. It is on the River *Duero*, 33 Leagues North West from *Madrid*, and 4 East from *Toro*.

*Medina del Campo* another Town, 8 Leagues from *Valladolid* to the South, and 27 from *Madrid* to the North West, has been the Court of some Kings, seated on the River *Zapardiel*, in a Morassy Ground and cloudy Air, yet has 1800 Houses, 14 Parishes, 9 Monasteries of Friers, 6 of Nuns, and 4 Hospitals, besides a Collegiate Church, with this peculiar Priviledge that neither the Pope can bestow any Benefice, nor the King any Employment in it. *Medina*, as was said above, is the name given by the *Moors* signifying, a City, and *del Campo* is the Distinction, importing in the Fields, because seated in a Plain. What ancient *Roman* name it had does not appear, the present is turn'd into Latin, *Metonyma Campestris*. Many other Towns of good note we must pass by for want of room.

## CHAP. IX.

### The Province of ESTREMADURA.

WAS the ancient Country of the *Vettones*, and principal Part of the Province call'd *Lusitania*, tho' now quite cut off from *Portugal*. On the North it joyns to the Kingdom of *Leon*, without any noted River or Mountain to part them; on the East the Mountains of *Banos*, *Pico* and *Guadalupe* divide it from the two *Castiles*; on the South a part of that call'd *Sierra Morena* separates it from *An-*

*daluzia*; and on the West the Rivers *Elia*, *Caya*, and some others of less note make what distinction there is betwixt it and *Portugal*.

The Name of *Estremadura* is variously deriv'd, but the most receiv'd and probable Opinion is, that it comes from *Estremo*, that is the Borders, or extreme Parts, the Boundaries between the Kingdom of *Leon*, and the *Moorish* Dominions, having been  
a long



a long time in this Province. The Rivers *Tagus* and *Guadiana* running through it from East to West, divide it into three Parts, the most Northern beyond *Tagus*, the next betwixt *Tagus* and *Guadiana*, and the most Southern beyond *Guadiana*. The Length of it from North to South is 50 Leagues, and the Breadth from East to West 40.

The Natives Speak the better *Spanish*, the nearer they are to *Castile*, and somewhat more corrupt as they approach to *Portugal*; they are addicted to Tillage, somewhat Haughty and Conceited; good Friends, strong of Body, and Warlike. The Climate is Hot, being most Plain, remote from the Sea, and wanting the cooling Gales, which the Hills and the Ocean communicate to the adjacent Parts.

No part of *Spain*, or of the World, can exceed this in Fertility, for an Instance whereof we need only speak of that they call *La Vera de Plasencia*, which is, the Plain of *Plasencia*, of which it might suffice to say, that many of the Ancients plac'd the *Elysian* Fields in it, as knowing nothing more Beautiful or Delicious, and in it is the celebrated Monastery of *S. Justa*, to which the Emperor *Charles* the V. after resigning all his vast Dominions, retir'd and liv'd two Years, till he exchang'd this Life for a better. The Sweets of the Place draw abundance of Nobility and Gentry to spend the Summer in it. The Length of it is 12 Leagues, the Breadth 3, in which Space there are 13 small Towns or Villages, and 5000 Houses, all the rest either cover'd with the greatest variety of Fruit-Trees *Europe* affords, or distributed into Olive Groves, Vineyards, Meadows, delightful Gardens, Corn, and Flax Fields, the whole water'd by pleasant Springs and purling Streams, full of excellent Trouts. In fine, such is the Product of this Valley, that the Territory of only 4 inconsiderable Villages, of the 13 said to be in it, has been computed to yeild 150 Tun of Oyl, 550 of Wine, 60000 Bushels of Chestnuts, and an infinite Quantity of Wheat, other parts yielding much more in proportion, besides all other Fruit, Flax, &c. and abundance of Silk, Wax and Honey. There is another Valley call'd also of *Plasencia*, and reaching to the City, nothing inferior to this. Besides what has been said, all this Province does so abound in Pasture, that in Summer they drive innumerable Flocks of Cattle out of both *Castiles*, and even from *Asturias* and other Parts, to Graze in it. Nor is this all, for on the Banks of the two Rivers *Tagus* and *Guadiana* are very numerous Breeds of *Spanish* Horses, so much valu'd throughout all *Europe*.

This rich Province contains 7 Cities, 3 Bishopricks, many large and stately Towns, equal to Cities; and abundance of populous Villages, not inferior to good Towns. The chief are,

Merida.	}	Xeres de los Cavallos.
Badajoz.		Llerena.
Plasencia.		Alcantara.
Coria.		Medellin.
Truxillo.		

**MERIDA**, was anciently the Capital of all the Province of *Lusitania*, as it is still of *Estremadura*, being 10 Leagues East from *Badajoz*, and consequently little more from the Frontiers of *Portugal*, 16 North from *Sevil*, and near 55 South-West from *Madrid*, the noble River *Guadiana* washing its stately Walls, adorn'd with many Towers. The Situation is high, the Air wholesome, the Houses 1000, Parishes, 3 Monasteries of Friars, 3 of Nuns, 1 Hospital, and 7 Chappels, and under its Jurisdiction are 15 Towns and 13 Villages. *Augustus Caesar*

built it for his old Soldiers, call'd *Emeriti*, naming it *Emerita Augusta*, from himself and them, whence corruptly came *Merida*: It made the bravest Defence of any Town in *Spain* against the *Moors*, but was at last oblig'd to submit to the Fate of the Nation, yet Capitulating that all the Inhabitants should be conducted safe, with all their Goods, to Christian Dominions.

**Badajoz**, Founded by the Emperor *Augustus*, and from his own Name calling it *Pax Augusta*; when taken by the *Moors*, said to be by them nam'd *Beled Aix*, signifying Land of Holiness; or, according to others, *Baxaugus*, which is Land of Walnut-Trees and thence by Corruption *Badajoz*, seated on the South Side of the River *Guadiana*, half a League from the *Caya*, which is the Boundary of *Portugal*, 10 Leagues West from *Merida*, above 60 South-West from *Madrid*, and 27 North, a little West-ly from *Sevil*. It stands high, has a strong Castle, a stately Bridge over the River *Guadiana*, good Walls, repair'd and fortify'd in 1641. and 42. and 8 Gates, 2300 Houses 3 Parishes, 5 Monasteries of Friars, 7 of Nuns, 3 Hospitals and 10 Chappels. It is a Bishoprick, worth to its Prelate 18000 Ducats a Year, tho' there be but 53 Parishes in the Diocess; the Cathedral is serv'd by 2 Dignify'd Clergy-Men, 15 Canons, and 14 Petty-Canons. In the Year, 1289. this City was divided into two Factions, one of which declaring for the rightful Heir of the Crown, *Don Alenso de la Cerda*; the Usurper, King *Sancho* IV. with the assistance of the other Faction, enter'd the Place, and Butcher'd 4000 of the Loyallists, who were Bury'd without the Walls, in a Place, thence call'd *Offario*, or the Charnel, and thence corruptly *Emsario*. In this same Place *Alonso* I. who took upon him the Title of King of *Portugal*, was taken Prisoner by his Son-in-law King *Ferdinand* II. of *Leon*, An. 1179. and generously set at Liberty, An. 1658. the *Portuguese* having Revolted in 1640 laid Siege to this Place, but after 4 Months, upon the News of the *Spanish* Army coming to relieve it, broke up with precipitation and departed. They again sat down before it, in conjunction with the Confederate Forces in 1705. and went off upon the *Spanish* Forces appearing on the other side of the River.

**Plasencia**, seated on the Banks of the little River *Xerte*, with 3 Bridges over it, 72 Towers on the Walls, 7 Gates, as many Squares, the same number of Fountains, 22 great Streets, stately Buildings, 2000 Houses, 7 Parishes, 4 Monasteries of Friars, 5 of Nuns, 7 Chappels, 5 Hospitals and 2 Colleges. *Alonso* IX. of *Castile*, rais'd it in the Year, 1180. as is thought, out of the Ruins of the ancient *Deobriga*, tho' others say *Ambrosia*, and call'd it *Plasencia*, from the pleasantness of the Situation. Seventeen Years after he enclos'd it with double Walls on the solid Rock, which are the same now standing, and made it a Bishoprick, the Prelate's Revenue 40000 Ducats, Parishes subject to it 101; to the Cathedral belong 8 Dignify'd Clergy-Men, 16 Canons, and 5 Petty-Canons; distant from *Madrid* about 40 Leagues South-West, 13 from *Coria* East, somewhat Southerly, and 25 from *Madrid* North-East.

**Coria**, a City and Bishoprick, anciently call'd *Caurium*, or *Coria*, seated in a pleasant Valley on the River *Alagon*, Wall'd, has 5 Gates, 700 Houses, 2 Parishes, 1 Monastery of Friars, 1 of Nuns, 2 Hospitals and 3 Chappels. King *Alonso* VIII. recover'd it from the *Moors* in 1142. instituting it a Bishoprick, worth to its Prelate 26000 Ducats a Year, and under



der it 371 Parishes, the Cathedral serv'd by 9 Dignify'd Clergy-Men, 9 Canons, and 6 Petty-Canons. It is a Marquisate belonging to the Dukes of *Avon*. Distant from *Madrid* about 40 Leagues West, somewhat Southerly, 6 East from the Borders of *Portugal*, and 24 North from *Merida*.

*Truxillo*, a City founded by *Julius Caesar*, and call'd *Torris Julia*, corruptly *Truxillo*, stands on the top of a Hill, with a Castle over it, built upon the Rock, contains 1200 Houses, 6 Parishes, 4 Monasteries of Friers, and 6 of Nuns, having Jurisdiction over 17 Villages. Here was Born *Don Francisco Pizarro*, the famous Conqueror of *Peru*. Distant from *Madrid* 42 Leagues S. W. from *Merida* 12 East Northerly, and 20 from *Alcantara* South-East.

*Xeres de las Cruçleros*, the name *Xeres*, corruptly from *Xara* a Bramble, the Place on which it was Built by King *Alonso X.* of *Leon*, An. 1229. being full of them; the addition, *de las Cruçleros*, or of the Knights, because King *Ferdinand III.* gave it to the Knights Templers in 1232. before which, the distinctive Appellation was *de Badajoz*, for its nearness to that City. It is seated in a spacious Plain, half a League from the River *Ardilla*, is Wall'd, and contains 1400 Houses, 4 Parishes, 3 Monasteries of Friers, 6 of Nuns, 15 Chappels, and 6 curious Conduits; 65 Leagues distant from *Madrid* South-West, and 8 from *Badajoz* South.

*Llerena* City. seated in a Valley, Wall'd, and contains 1600 Houses, 2 Parishes, 3 Monasteries of Friers, 4 of Nuns, and Founded by some great Master of the Military Order of *Santiago*, but not known which of them. Some call it *Ellerena*, and it stands near the Foot of the Mountain call'd *Sierra Morena*, 55 Leagues South-West from *Madrid*, and 18 North a little Easterly from *Sevil*.

*Alcantara* is the first Town, not a City, that deserves any mention, being seated on the River *Ta-*

*gus*, over which it has a magnificent Bridge, built by the Emperor *Trajan* the Town being the Foundation of *Julius*, or *Augustus Caesar*, and call'd *Nova Casarea*, but the *Moors* gave it the Name of *Alcantara*, signifying a Bridge, from the excellency of that Structure. King *Alonso X.* of *Leon*, recovering it from the *Moors* in 1214. gave it to the Knights before call'd of *S. Julian del Pereyro*, and since from this Place, of *Alcantara*, whose principal Seat it has been ever since. It is Wall'd, and contains 1200 Houses, 2 Parishes, 2 Monasteries of Friers, and 2 of Nuns. In the Year 1706. April the 14th it was Taken by the Portuguese and Confederate Army, but the *Spaniards* re-took it the same Year, December the 15th, by *Escalade*. It is about 3 Leagues from the Frontiers of *Portugal*, 55 from *Madrid* South-West, and 15 North from *Badajoz*.

*Medellin* is a good Town on the River *Guadiana*, over which it has a stately Bridge, as also a Castle, 800 Houses, 4 Parishes, 1 Monastery of Friers, 2 of Nuns, 4 Chappels, an Hospital, and a House for Girls that are Orphans, formerly call'd *Metallinum* and *Metallensis Colonia*. *Alburquerque*, corruptly from the Latin, *Alba Quercus*, 3 Leagues from the Frontiers of *Portugal*, Wall'd, has a Castle, and 2000 Houses. *Bejar*, 10 Leagues from *Plasencia*, of 700 Houses. *Caceres*, 8 Leagues from *Truxillo*, 2000 Houses. *Montijo*, 4 Leagues from *Merida*, 700 Houses. *Zalamea de la Serena*, 9 Leagues from *Llerena*, 700 Houses. *Fuente de Cantos*, 600 Houses. *Villa Nueva de la Serena*, 800 Houses. *Belalcazar*, on the Borders next *Andaluzia*, 1000 Houses. *Azuaga*, 5 Leagues from *Llerena*, 850 Houses. *Zafra*, 1200 Houses. *Almendralejo*, 900 Houses. *Villafra*, 6 Leagues from *Merida*, 700 Houses; and many more considerable Places, too tedious to give an Account of.

## CHAP. X.

### The Province of ANDALUZIA.

Taken in the largest Acception, contains the *Moorish* Kingdoms of *Sevil*, *Cordova*, *Jaen* and *Granada*; but this last is generally look'd upon as a separate Province, and as such we are to treat of them both; yet it must be observ'd, that together they made the *Roman* Province call'd *Betica*, only wanting as much of *Estremadura* and *Castile*, as lies between the River *Guadiana*, and the Mountains of *Sierra Morena*. This same was afterwards the Seat of the *Vandals*, that overrun *Spain* and *Africa*, and from them call'd *Vandalitia*, corruptly *Andaluzia*. It had also the Name of *Turdetania*, from the *Turduli*, its ancient Inhabitants.

To come to that now properly so call'd, the long Ridge of Mountains call'd *Sierra Morena*, divides it on the North from *New Castile* and *Estremadura*, as does the River *Chanca* on the East from *Portugal*, and the *Guadiana* from *Algarve*; on the South it has the Ocean, the Mouth of the *Streights*, and part of the *Mediterranean*; along the South-East lies the Kingdom of *Granada*, without any noted Boundaries for the most part, except the Mountains of *Cazorla* and *Sierra Segura* for some few Leagues of the Eastern Part, on which side it joyns to the Kingdom of *Murcia*, some of the Mountains last nam'd making a part of the Separation. Thus the whole Length from East to West will appear to be

about 90 Leagues, and the greatest Breadth from North to South 46, which is only where it stretches out to form the Mouth of the *Streights*, from whence it narrows both ways, especially to the Eastward, where it runs into a Slip, less than 10 Leagues over, for at least 30 Leagues in Length.

The People of this Country Speak the *Spanish* more harsh and unpolish'd than the *Castilians*, which in a great measure proceeds from their having continu'd longer under the *Moorish* Subjection, and retaining much of their hard Pronunciation; besides that we see in all Countries, the farther from the Court, the more the Dialect alters, and that most upon the Coasts, as for instance in the West of *England*. The *Andaluzians* are sharp Witted, Discreet, well Bred, Resolute, Constant, extraordinary Loyal, ambitious of Honour, and Lovers of Learning; but withal Haughty and Conceited of themselves, apt to take Revenge for the least Wrong, and over nice in Points of Honour. The *Castilians* say of them, *Al Andaluz, hazelle la Cruz*, that is, make the Sign of the Cross, when you see an *Andaluzian*, or beware of him, and stand upon your Guard, because they are a sharp subtle People, and the *Castilians* Ingenuous and Sincere. The Fiction of these or any other *Spaniards* making their Wives serve them at Table is malicious and groundless, for no Na.



Nation honours Women more than they do, or pays more Respect to their Wives.

It is most certain, that no Country exceeds this in Wealth and Fertility; the quantities of Wheat, Wine and Oyl it produces are incredible, for one single Township has been known to make 70000 Pipes of Wine in a Year, and no less quantity of Oyl. Besides here are infinite Numbers of Cattel: We need not commend the so well known *Sevil* Oranges, the Lemmons, Raisons, Almonds and Figs, all the growth of this Province. Here is also plenty of curious white Salt, the best of Sugar, precious Scarlet Berries for Dyeing, and in fine, every thing that can make a Country delightful and wealthy. We will not say any thing of the Mines, since they have not been regarded since the discovery of *America*; but there is nothing more certain than that the *Phenicians* and *Carthaginians* Traded hither for Silver and Gold as we do to the *West-Indies*, and still we see it is a Place of vast Commerce, and resorted to by all Nations of *Europe*.

We must not forget the most celebrated Breed of Horses, so famous in all Nations and Ages, tho' something was said of them in *Estremadura*, for there, as was observ'd, they have them on the *Guadiana* and *Tagus*; but the Country of *Andaluzia*, and the River *Guadalquivir*, the renown'd *Betis* of the Ancients, have always exceeded all other Parts, and *Cordova* now keeps up the great Name, for those so much valu'd Creatures. All the Objection that can be made against this Country, is its violent Summer Heats, which however are not so lasting but they may be born with, in consideration of the other Advantages, and the many ways there are found to make them easy.

*F. Pennalosa* says this Province and *Estremadura*, are able together to raise 50000 Foot, and 20000 Horse to serve their King in his Wars. It is under the Direction of an *Adelantado*, or Lord Lieutenant, which Honour is hereditary in the Dukes of *Medina Celi*; and it contains 21 Cities, 1 Archbishoprick 3 Bishopricks, and abundance of stately Towns, and large wealthy Villages. The Chief are,

<i>Sevil.</i>	<i>Medina Sidonia.</i>
<i>Cordova.</i>	<i>Port St. Mary.</i>
<i>Jaen.</i>	<i>Anduxar.</i>
<i>Cadiz.</i>	<i>Carmona.</i>
<i>Xerez de la Frontera.</i>	<i>Alcala la Real.</i>
<i>Ezija.</i>	<i>Lucena.</i>
<i>Gibraltar.</i>	<i>Arcos.</i>
<i>Ubeda.</i>	<i>San Lucar la Mayor.</i>
<i>Baeza.</i>	<i>Mcguer.</i>
<i>San Lucar.</i>	<i>Marchena.</i>
<i>de Barrameda.</i>	

*SEVIL*, by the *Spaniards* call'd *Sevilla*, by the Ancients *Hispalis*, which is variously deriv'd, and the Founder as uncertain, for which reason we shall not enter upon those Controversies. But *Julius Caesar* is said to have Rebuilt and Wall'd it by the Name of *Julia Remula*, or *Julius's little Rome*. Several *Gothish* Kings kept their Court in it, as did the *Moors*, till afterwards it became the Head of a Kingdom, when the Infidels set up many in *Spain*, and so continu'd till King *Ferdinand III.* of *Castile* recover'd it from them, in the Year, 1248. after a Siege of 16 Months, when 400000 *Moors* are said to have been drove out of it, to make room for Christians to supply their Places, after they had been possess'd of it 534 Years. As it was a Capital City in those Ages, so it still continues the Metropolis of *Andaluzia*, seated in a spacious Plain.

on the River *Guadalquivir*, which is Navigable for great Ships 15 Leagues from the Sea, and over ths River is a strong Bridge of 17 Boats, which joyns the City to *Triana*, a Suburb beyond the Water of 6000 Houses, including the which, and the others, the whole compass of *Sevil* is 14 Miles; the stately Wall is but 8 Miles about, with 15 Gates, and 166 Towers in it. The Inhabitants are 300000 in 14000 Houses, distributed into 29 Parishes, with 44 Monasteries of Friars 30 of Nuns, 24 Hospitals, the same number of Squares, or Market-Places, plentifully supply'd with all that can be wish'd, and very many stately Buildings. Here are 24 Secular and Ecclesiastical Courts, the supreme Magistrate is call'd *Affistente*, and generally is a Nobleman, with whom are 62 *Ventiquatres*, answerable to Aldermen, but Men of Birth and Quality, 60 *Jurados*, which may more properly be Aldermen, as being Citizens. The *Alguazil*, Mayor, or head Officer of Justice, is always the Duke of *Alcala*, as the Duke of *Ormond* is for *Westminster*; the Admiral of *Castile* is Standard Bearer. The *Casa de Contratacion*, or *India House*, was erected here in the Year 1513. for regulating all things relating to the Trade of the *West-Indies*. A Royal Court in 1556: consisting of a Regent and 8 Judges. The Exchange for the Merchants in 1583. cost a Million of Ducats. The Mint employs 180 Officers, and when it Works, can Coin 700 Marks, each being 8 Ounces, of Gold and Silver every Day. To the Custom-House belong 257 Officers, whose Salaries amount to 54000 Ducats. The King's Pallace, a most magnificent Structure, rebuilt by King *Peter* in 1360. but decay'd and put to other uses since the Kings have left that City. The Court of Inquisition, to which belong 4000 Officers. Some Colleges there are, this being also an University, Founded in the Year, 1405. A Charitable Foundation, call'd *La Misericordia*, or the House of Mercy, where upwards of 54000 Ducats are lay'd out every Year in charitable Uses. The great Heat of the Summer is recompens'd by the pleasantness of the Winter, and plenty of all Things for Sustenance and Delight; the neighbouring Wood call'd *Ajorafe*, signifying in *Arabick*, Farm of Olives, extending 9 Leagues in compass, and produces several Thousand Tun of Oyl, nor is there less plenty of Wine and Corn. In the City Silks and Silver Stuffs are Wove. In *Triana*, above-mention'd, over the River, there are 50 Work-houses of curious Earthen-ware, and fine Glaz'd Tiles, like those we call *Dutch Tiles* for Chimneys, and there is Yearly made 15000 Hundred Weight of *Spanish* Soap, transported thence to several Parts. Without the City there are Salt-Pits, and noble Quarries of the finest Jasper, Marble and other curious Stones. The greatest Trade is that of the *West-Indies*, which *Roderick Caro* cast up out of the Books of the *India-House*, taking the Return from thence as enter'd at *Sevil*, from the Year 1492. till 1592. being the first Century after the Discovery, and found it to amount to the value of Five thousand Millions in Gold, Silver, Pearls, and other Product of *America*, this being what was enter'd, what never was accounted for being much more. And should we see the Computation of the next Century to that, which is the last now past, it must infinitely exceed it. This has been an Archbishoprick of great Antiquity, and the Dignity restor'd, as soon as recover'd from the *Moors*, the Archbishop's Revenue at present being 120000 Ducats a Year, and 234 Parishes subject to the Diocesis.



cells. The Cathedral was a Mosque built by the Moors, in the Year 1000. and is one of the majestic Structures of Spain, in length 407 Feet, 271 in breadth, and 128 in height, with 9 Gates, 80 Windows, and 82 Altars on which 500 Masses are said every Day. The Tabernacle weighs 6 Hundred weight and a half of massive Silver, and the Workmanship of it cost 40000 Ducats. The stately Tower is 350 Foot high, containing 24 Bells, and on the Top the famous Statue of a Woman call'd *Giralda*, which turns to point out the Wind like a Weather Cock. This Cathedral is serv'd by 11 Dignify'd Clergy-men, 40 Canons, the same number of Petty-Canons, 20 Benefic'd Priests, and 30 Chaplains. All along the River there are curious Keys, along which Vessels of good Burden may lye, and near the said River stands a Tower, which is a noble Structure, and call'd the Golden Tower. *Sevil* is 15 Leagues from *S. Lucar*, which is at the Mouth of the River, from *Madrid* about 80 South-West, from *Lisbon* 63 South-East, and from *Granada* 36 West. The River overflowing here has made wonderful Havock, as in 1626. when 4000 Persons are said to have been Drown'd; and again this present Year 1708. there was so great an Inundation, that it overthrew some Hundreds of Houses. In 1463. there was such a dreadful Storm of Wind, that it carry'd away a Pair of Oxen, as they were Yoak'd at the Plow; and in the City threw one of the Bells of *S. Augustin's* Church, above a Bow Shot from the Steeple; but the dreadfulest Judgment was in the Year 1649. when 280000 People Dy'd of the Plague.

*Cordova*, the next noble City, and Capital of another Kingdom, anciently call'd *Corduba*, and *Colonia Patricia*, being a Roman Colony, and the Birth-Place of both the *Senecas*, *Lucan*, *Averroes*, the famous Arabian Philsician, and *Hesius*, who presided at the Council of *Nice*, besides many other Men fam'd for Learning. It is seated in a pleasant wholesome Air, in a delicious Plain, at the Foot of the Mountain *Sierra Morena*, and on the Banks of the mighty River *Guadalquivir*, over which it has a stately Bridge of 17 Arches, with several Towers, built by *Hazzan*, a Moorish Governour, An. 722. The Plain abounds in all Things for Suttenance and Delight, also great Quantities of Silk, whereof rich Stuffs are here made, as also very fine Cloth, and curious gilt Leather; but above all are the most celebrated Horses, so Fleet, Merlesome, good Temper'd and Warlike, that scarce any in the World surpass them, towards which Breed the King always keeps 500 Mares in magnificent Stables. The City lying along the aforesaid River, which is Navigable, is handsomely Built, has many fine Fountains, the Streets spacious, the Walls of Stone, with 13 Gates in them, a stately old Palace Built by the *Goths*, An. 700. within a particular Wall on the West side, now belonging to the Inquisition. The Inhabitants are 14000 Families, in 13 Parishes, with 15 Monasteries of Friars, the same number of Nuns, 12 Hospitals, and some Colleges, as being an University. King *Ferdinand III.* recover'd it from the Moors, An. 1236. and Consecrated the great Mosque, built by King *Abderramen*, An. 787. which is one of the Wonders of the World, being 600 Foot long, and 500 in breadth, with 350 Pillars of Marble in 10 Rows, forming 11 Isles, 366 Altars, and 24 Gates; in short it is a prodigious Structure for Magnitude, serv'd by 8 Dignify'd Clergy-men, 20 Canons, 30 Petty-Canons, besides many other Priests.

The Diocess extends over 92 Parishes, the Bishop's Revenue 40000 Ducats. The Suburb call'd *Axarquiza*, on the River without the East Gate, is not inferior to a good City, has a Wall, and joyns to the main Body. This City is about the midway betwixt *Sevil* and *Granada*, 23 Leagues West from the latter, and somewhat more East from the former, and from *Madrid* 61 South, very little Westerly. Above 37000 Persons are reckned to have Dy'd in it of the Plague, in the fatal Year 1649.

*Jaen* may be reckned the third City, as having also given Name to another Moorish Kingdom, seated at the Foot of a Hill, on the Top whereof is a strong Castle, defended on the South by Mountains of difficult Access, in a healthful Air, and fruitful Territory, is Wall'd, with many Towers, and 6 Gates, inhabited by 5000 Families in 12 Parishes, 11 Monasteries of Friars, 8 of Nuns, 12 Hospitals, as many Chappels, and a Cathedral serv'd by 8 Dignify'd Clergy-men, 21 Canons, and 24 Petty-Canons, the Bishoprick extending over 84 Parishes, the Prelate's Revenue 40000 Ducats. King *Ferdinand III.* recover'd it from the Moors, An. 1466. suppos'd to have been call'd *Giennium*, or *Gienna* by the Romans. It stands a League from the River *Guadalbullon*, about 18 East from *Cordova*, and 55 South from *Madrid*.

*CADIZ* is the next to the Kingly Cities, Famous in all Ages, by the Names of *Erythrea*, *Aphrodisia*, *Continusa*, but most by that of *Gades*, whence the present Name came by Corruption; resorted to formerly by *Phenicians*, *Greeks*, *Carthaginians* and *Romans*, and now by all European Nations, for the Product of Spain and Wealth of the *West-Indies*, being a spacious Harbour, receiving all the Treasure of *America*. The Island it stands in lying betwixt the Mouths of the River *Guadalquivir* and of the Streights, on the *Atlantick* Ocean, was once reckned 10 Leagues in Length, at present scarce 3, and joyn'd to the Continent by a Bridge call'd *Zuzo*, and produces much Wine. The City is inhabited by 5000 Families, yet has but one Parish, which is also a Cathedral, being a Bishoprick, with 5 Monasteries of Friars, and 2 of Nuns. The Bay which forms the Harbour is very spacious, defended by several Forts, the chief of which are call'd *Puntal* and *Matagorda*, on two Points at the Entrance. The Cathedral is serv'd by 6 Dignify'd Clergy-Men, 10 Canons, and 12 Petty-Canons; only 14 Parishes being within the Diocess, which is nevertheless worth 20000 Ducats a Year to its Prelate. Lovers of Fabulous Antiquity will have it to be Built by *Hercules*; the most like Opinion is, that the *Phenicians* were the Founders. The *Romans* enlarg'd and beautify'd it, with the Title of a *Municipal*, or Free-City, and look'd upon as one of the best in the Empire, as having at one Time 500 Roman Knights in it, which no other had but *Padua*. The Moors utterly destroy'd it, and so it continu'd till recover'd by the Christians, who Re-built and Fortify'd it, as a most convenient Harbour. It was taken by the English Forces under the Earl of *Essex* in the Year 1596. who Plunder'd and quitted it a Fortnight after. Another Attempt was made upon it in the Year 1625. but without Success, as was that under the Duke of *Ormond* in 1704. since when it is well Fortify'd and secur'd by a strong Garrison. It is distant from *Madrid* near 100 Leagues to the South-West, 20 from *Sevil*, and 18 from *Gibraltar* North-West. Above 12000 Persons dy'd here of the Plague in the fatal Year 1649.



*Xerez de la Frontera*, a City famous for the fatal Battle fought in its Plains between the Goths and Moors, which made the latter Masters of all Spain. It is seated in the aforesaid Plain 2 Leagues from the Sea, 16 South from *Sevil*, on the little River *Guadalete*, in so fruitful a Territory, that besides vast quantities of Wheat, Fruit, Cattle, &c. it yields 60000 Pipes of that generous Wine we from it call Sherry, and us'd not many Years since to Breed 2000 noble Horses every Year. The City is adorn'd with a stately Castle, other handsome Structures, strong Walls 4 Gates, and Inhabited by 7000 Families, in 8 Parishes, 1 of them Collegiate, with 9 Monasteries of Friars, 5 of Nuns and an Hospital. King *Alonso* the Wise, recover'd it from the Moors, An. 1264.

*Exija*, a City stands in a delightful Plain, on the River *Xenil*, which falls into *Guadalquivir*, Wall'd, handsomely Built, and has 9 Gates, the Territory besides immense Quantities of Corn, Wine, Oyl, Silk, &c. producing a considerable quantity of Cotton and Breeding noble Horses. The Inhabitants amount to 8000 Families, in 6 Parishes, 10 Monasteries of Friars, 6 of Nuns, 5 Hospitals and 9 Chappels. To pass by fabulous Stories of Founders, the Romans gave it the Name of *Augusta Firma*, and the Moors that of *Exija*, signifying, little Frying Pan. Distant about 15 Leagues from *Sevil* to the East, 9 West from *Cordova*, and 65 from *Madrid* South, somewhat Westerly.

*Gibraltar*, the ancient *Calpe*, which is the Name of the Mountain, at the Foot whereof this little City stands, famous for being reckned the western Boundary of the Earth, or one of *Hercules's* Pillars, the other call'd *Avila*, being on the African Shore. The City is Wall'd, and so inclos'd with Hills, that it is almost inaccessible from the Land, having but 2 Gates on that side, and as many to the Sea, and us'd to be Inhabited by 1200 Families, in 1 Parish, with 3 Monasteries of Friars, 1 of Nuns and 2 Hospitals. When taken by the English in the Year 1704 all the Inhabitants quitted it, so that at present there are very few, besides the English Garrison, and such as depend on it. The present Name is deriv'd from the Arabick, *Gebal*, a Mountain, and *Tarif*, the Name of the Moorish General, who first pass'd over out of *Africk* to Conquer Spain. It is at the Mouth of the Streights, opposite to *Ceuta* in *Africk*, 18 Leagues South-East from *Cadiz*, 33 South from *Sevil*, and 100 South-West from *Madrid*.

*Ubeda*, said to be call'd by the Romans *Ubea*, or *Uetula*, is a City seated on a Hill, Wall'd, with a stately Castle, 1500 Families, 11 Parishes, 1 of them Collegiate, 7 Monasteries of Friars, 5 of Nuns, and 2 good Hospitals. It is 49 Leagues South from *Madrid*, 12 North from *Granada*, and 24 East from *Cordova*.

*Baeza*, a good City, 5 Leagues from *Ubeda*, last mention'd, to the South-West, anciently call'd *Bia-tia* or *Beatia*, seated on a high Hill, divided into 2 little ones by a small Valley, a League from the River *Guadalquivir*, has strong Walls, with lofty Towers, 4000 Families, 12 Parishes, 1 of them Collegiate, and another a Cathedral, but united to the Bishoprick of *Jaen*; 10 Monasteries of Friars, 6 of Nuns, and 7 Hospitals, and is Famous for Dyeing the finest Scarlet Cloth, and making rich Taffeties. It is also an University, Founded in the Year 1533. and was a Roman Colony, recover'd from the Moors by King *Ferdinand* III. An. 1227.

*San Lucar de Barrameda*, a City and Port well known throughout Europe, at the Mouth of the River *Guadalquivir*, 15 Leagues below *Sevil*, much more resorted to before the *West-India* Fleets were allow'd to set out from, and return, to *Cadiz*; defended by 3 Castles, and adorn'd with a Palace, inhabited by 6000 Families, most Trading People, yet but one Parish, 9 Monasteries of Friars, 2 of Nuns and an Hospital. The Ancient Name was *Fanum Luciferi*, the Temple of the Evening Star, from a Temple dedicated to the Goddess *Venus*, and thence by Corruption *San Lucar*.

*Medina Sidonia*, formerly *Affindum*, or *Affidonia*, a Roman Colony, the Moors adding the Title of *Medina*, signifying a City, produc'd the present Name. It stands on the Ridge of a Hill, strong by Nature, plentiful in all Things, inhabited by 1500 Families, in 2 Parishes, 4 Monasteries of Friars, and 1 of Nuns, and is an ancient Dukedom in the most noble Family of *Guzman*. Distant from the Ocean about 4 Leagues, 9 from *Cadiz* Eastward, and 20 South from *Sevil*.

*Port St. Mary*, in Spanish, *Puerto de Santa Maria*, rais'd by King *Alonso* the Wise, An. 1264. out of the ancient Ruins of *Portus Menesthei*, seated in a Plain, at the Mouth of the little River *Guadalete*, much resorted to, and inhabited by 1500 Families, 1 Parish, 3 Monasteries of Friars, 2 of Nuns and an Hospital. It is an open Place, and was Rich, till Plunder'd by the English in the Year 1704. and is an Earldom belonging to the mighty Dukes of *Medina Celi*.

*Anduxar*, by the Romans call'd *Forum Julium*, is a City containing 3000 Families, 5 Parishes, 6 Monasteries of Friars, 3 of Nuns and 2 Hospitals, and seated on the Banks of the River *Guadalquivir*, in a delightful Plain, with a magnificent Bridge, a strong Castle and stately Buildings. Distant from *Sevil* 37 Leagues to the East, and above 50 South from *Madrid*.

*Carmona*, formerly *Carmon*, a City in the middle of *Andaluzia*, seated on a craggy Eminence, with 118 Towers on its strong Walls, and a noble Castle, the Rivers *Corbones* and *Guadama*, which fall into the *Guadalquivir*, watering its spacious Plains. It contains 3000 Inhabitants, 7 Parishes, 5 Monasteries of Friars, 5 of Nuns, good Hospitals and Chappels. *Julius Caesar* made it a *Municipium*, or Free City, and King *Ferdinand* III. recover'd it from the Moors. It is 11 Leagues East from *Sevil*, and 66 South from *Madrid*.

*Alcala la Real*, by the Moors call'd *Alcala de Ben-zaide*, 9 Leagues North-West from *Granada*, and 45 South from *Madrid*, stands on a Hill among Mountains, a Wall'd City, with several Towers Inhabited by 2000 Families, 2 Parishes, one of them Collegiate; 4 Monasteries of Friars, and 2 of Nuns. What Name it had formerly, or by whom built, does not appear; but King *Alonso* XII. recover'd it from the Moors, Ann. 1341.

*Lucena*, suppos'd to be call'd by the Romans, *Luceria*, is as delicious and fruitfully seated as any City in Europe, no spot of Ground producing greater Plenty of generous Wine, sweet Oil, and choice Meat, than its Territory does, being seated on the little River *Guelves*; Inhabited by 5000 Families, in 2 Parishes, with 4 Monasteries of Friars, 2 of Nuns, and 14 Chappels. Fifteen Leagues distant from *Sevil* to the South-West; about the same distant from *Cadiz* North-West.

*Arcoz*,



*Ates*, distinguish'd by the Addition, *de la Frontera*, or of the Frontiers; a small City of 2000 Inhabitants, 2 Parishes, 3 Monasteries of Friars, and 2 of Nuns, seated on a very high upright Rock, only accessible on the East side, the other Parts being enclosed by the River *Guadalete*. Under the *Romans*, it had the Names of *Astobriga*, and *Arcensium Colonia*; recover'd from the *Moors* by King *Alonso* the Wise, *Ann.* 1263; and seated 12 Leagues South from *Sevil*, and about the same distance North-East from *Cadiz*.

*Sanlúcar la Mayor*, or *Sanlúcar* the Greater, to distinguish it from the other above-mention'd of *Barrameda*, stands in a Plain on the River *Guadigamar*, 4 Leagues West from *Sevil*, is but a small City of 800 Families, in 3 Parishes; made a City by King *Philip* IV. *Ann.* 1639. The *Roman* name, some will have to be *Misova*, others *Solucar*.

*Maguer* is still a smaller City, of 700 Families, one Parish, one Monastery of Friars, and one of Nuns; made a City as the last, by King *Philip* IV. *Ann.* 1642. and seated on the River *Azige*, or *Tinto*, the last name signifying Colour'd or Dy'd, because it rises in *Sierra Morena*, of a yellowish Colour, petrifying the Sands it runs over, parching up the Plants and Roots of Trees it washes, and breeding no Fish, nor any other living Creature; but is good to cure Cattle of the Worms.

*Marchena*, the last City of this Province, 9 Leagues distant from *Sevil* to the East, somewhat Southerly, pleasantly seated, with a strong Castle, handsomely Wall'd, and containing 3000 Families, one Parish, 4 Monasteries of Friars, 2 of Nuns, and an Hospital; said to be Founded by *Claudius Marcellus*, 50 Years before *Christ*, and from him call'd *Marcia*; by Corruption, *Marchena*: Yet others say, *Lucius Marcius* was the Founder, 208 Years before *Christ*.

Some Towns of Note under the degree of Cities are, *Tarifa*, on the Mouth of the Straights, of 500 Families. *Lebriza* 5 Leagues from *Xeres*, 1500 Fa-

milies. *Offuna*, 5 Leagues from *Ecija*, of 3500 Families, and a noted Dukedom *Arcudete*, 6 Leagues from *Jaen*, of 1800 Families. *Paima*, 9 Leagues from *Cordova*, 2500 Families an Earldom first, and then a Dukedom in the Family of *Potocariro*, of which is the present famous Cardinal of the name, and Archbishop of *Toledo*. *Martos*, 3 Leagues from *Jaen*, 15000 Families; *Ayamonte*, on the Borders of *Agarve*, 1300 Families. *Lora*, 9 Leagues from *Sevil*, 2000 Families. *Porcuna*, between *Cordova* and *Jaen*, 1000 Families. *Cazorla*, 6 Leagues from *Baeza*, 3000 Families. *Arjona*, 2 Leagues from *Anduxar*, 1000 Families. *Utrera*, 5 Leagues from *Sevil*, 3000 Families. *Alcala de Guadaira*, 2 Leagues from *Sevil*, 1400 Families. *Moron*, 9 Leagues from *Sevil*, 2500 Families. *Zahara*, 14 Leagues from *Ronda*, 800 Families. *Canes*, 700 Families. *Constantina*, on the Mountain *Sierra Morena*, 1000 Families. *Cazalla*, 14 Leagues from *Sevil*, 1000 Families. *Lepe*, near *Ayamonte*, 700 Families. *Certaya*, a League from the last, 700 Families. *Aracena*, next the Frontiers of *Portugal*, 1000 Families. *Cabra*, 2500 Families. *Priego*, 3 Leagues from *Cabra*, 2000 Families, a great Place for Weaving of Taffaties. *Archidona*, on the Frontiers of *Granada*, 700 Families. *Baena*, 8 Leagues from *Cordova*, 1800 Families. *Liruela*, half a League from *Cazorla*, 800 Families. *Espozo*, 5 Leagues from *Cordova*, 800 Families. *Fuente Ovejuna*, 14 Leagues from *Cordova*, 1300 Fam. *Villanueva del Arzobispo*, near *Cazorla*, 800 Families. *Villa Martin*, 7 Leagues from *Utrera*, 700 Families. *Veger*, near the Mouth of the Straights, 1500 Families. *Guadalecanal*, 4 Leagues from *Elerena*, 1400 Families. *Montoro*, 7 Leagues from *Cordova*, 1000 Families. *Fuentes*, 4 Leagues from *Ecija*, 700 Families. *Esteja*, 5 Leagues from *Ecija*, 1500 Families. Most of these are also Wall'd, and many have Castles, as also Monasteries, and some Palaces of Great Men. Besides which there are very many more too numerous to name.

## CHAP. XI.

### The Kingdom of GRANADA.

AS was before observ'd, is one of the four that compose the Province of *Andaluzia*, taken in its largest extent, being almost all the *Roman* Province, call'd *Betica*, and the later *Vandalitia*, or Country of the *Valdals*. The name of *Granada*, the Country had from its Capital City, and is now generally reckon'd apart from *Andaluzia*, because it was the last Kingdom of the *Moors*, that remain'd in *Spain*, holding out several Years after all the rest were subdu'd, and subsisting by its great Wealth and the Valour of its Natives, with the Supplies they receiv'd from *Africa*, till *Ferdinand* and *Elizabeth*, King and Queen of *Spain*, finally expell'd those Infidels, as we shall see in speaking of the Capital, and other Cities.

On the North, this Kingdom lies all along joyn- ing to the Province of *Andaluzia*, the Mountains of *Cazorla*, *Sierra Segura*, and some others, making what separation there is: On the East another ridge of Hills divides it from *Murcia*; on the South it is wash'd by the *Mediterranean*; and on the West, it

again joyns to *Andaluzia*, without any noted Boundaries. The whole length of it from East to West, is about 70 Leagues; the greatest Breadth, 24; the Circumference above 180.

The People here differ little or nothing from the rest of *Andaluzia*, in Language, Customs, and natural Disposition. The Climate is also the same; nor can we find much alteration in the Soil; only this may be said, that the *Moors* descended from those who were expell'd it, still pray to be restor'd to that happy Country, looking upon it as a Paradise, scarce inferior to that their Prophet has promis'd them in the other World. Nor are they to be blam'd; to speak of the Country as it deserves, would amaze those who have not seen the Wonders of Nature in other Parts. Not to mention the infinite quantities of Corn, Wine, Oil, Fruit, Cattle, Game, and all Things already spoken of in other Provinces, as common to them all; in this the highest and most un- coth Mountains are cover'd with Vines and Fruit- Trees; and that which some will think incredible, here



here are often Bunches of Grapes like that the Scripture mentions of the Land of Promise, which they may carry on a Pole between two Men; and there are Persons of known Truth and Sincerity, who have seen a Bunch that weigh'd 40 Pounds. Sugar grows here as well, and what there is, finer than in any other Part; and of Silk there is a prodigious Quantity made, which they Spin and Weave to serve the whole Kingdom, besides what is Exported. The Fields are as much cover'd with Time and other sorts of Sweet-herbs, as Grass, which makes the Flesh of Cattle feeding on it delicious; and Laurel, Myrtle, Sweet-Basil, and many odoriferous Plants, grow wild to such a height as to make Hedges of them.

The *Mahometan* Kingdom erected here subsisted 256 Years, and ended in 1492. when King *Ferdinand* and Queen *Elizabeth*, the Christian Monarchs of *Spain*, after ten Years War, put an end to the Dominion of the Infidels in *Europe*. Under those *Moors* the Kingdom was extraordinary populous, but the expelling such Multitudes of them, has of necessity much lessened the number of Inhabitants. In their Days it contain'd 33 Cities, whereof at present only 16 retain that Title, and among them one Archbishoprick, and 3 Bishopricks, besides many stately Towns. The *Moorish* Kings Revenue, at the Time the Kingdom was gain'd, was worth a Million of Ducats a Year, a vast Sum in those Days, before the Treasures of *America*, had been brought into *Europe* and produc'd that extraordinary plenty of Gold and Silver we see in our Days. The Kingdom is now Govern'd by an *Adelantado*, or Lord Lieutenant, which Honour is Hereditary in the Dukes of *Maqueda*. The Places of Chiefest Note, are

Granada.	}	Marbella.
Malaga.		Vera.
Almeria.		Alhama.
Guadix.		Velaz Malaga.
Ronda.		Almunecar.
Antequera.		Guescar.
Baza.		Muxacra.
Leja.		Motril.
Santa Fe.	}	Las Alpujarras.

*GRANADA*, the *Illiberis* of the Ancients, tho' some will have that City to have stood on the Neighbouring Mountain *Elvira*, because of the resemblance of the Names, is the Capital City of this Kingdom, a most noble City for its Situation, Largeness and Structures, Forts and Walls. It is seated at the foot of the Mountain call'd *Sierra Nevada*, or the Snowy Mountain, from the Snow continually lying on the top of it. This Mountain is on the South-side, and runs from it as far as the *Mediterranean*. On the East-side of it is the above-nam'd Mountain *Elvira*; on the West runs a delightful Plain, about 20 Leagues in Compass, and wonderful Fertile, being Water'd by 36 Springs, falling from the adjacent Mountains. The City itself is seated partly on the Plain, and partly on two Hills, between which glides the River *Darro*, which as soon as out of the City, mixes with and loses its Name in the *Xenil*, that Waters the whole length of the Plain. The whole City is enclos'd with strong Walls, on which there are 1030 Towers, at equal Distances, and in them 20 Gates, the Compass being betwixt 3 and 4 Leagues, in which there are 50000 Families, abundance of them of Quality, 24 Parishes, 22 Monasteries of Friars, 18 of Nuns, and 13 Hospitals. At the two

opposite ends of it stand the two Castles call'd *el Alhambra* and *el Albayzin*. The first of them *Alhambra*, signifies Red, from the Red Earth about it, is on the South-East side, enclos'd with a Wall of its own, rising above all the other Buildings, and so large, that it looks like a City of itself; and in it is the King's Palace, and the Monastery of *S. Francis*. The other Castle, call'd *Albayzin*, is, as has been said on the opposite side, within its own Wall, and so great, that the People thought the *Moorish* King who built it, had found the Philosopher's Stone to defray such an immense Charge. Next the *Alhambra*, is the Suburb call'd *Cherra*, and the Street call'd *De los Gomeles*, and on the opposite side, the Street call'd *Elvira*, and the rising *Xenete*, most ill contriv'd, the Streets narrow and crooked, the *Moors* being nothing curious in their common Buildings. Without the City is the Royal Hospital, and the Monastery of *St. Jerome*, both of them Magnificent. The Armory is one of the best furnish'd in *Spain*, both for ancient and modern Arms, and great variety of Statues of all sorts. The Cathedral stands next the Plain, where the access is easiest: The *Moorish* Mosque which stood there, is a heavy *Gothick* Building; the New Church is very curious and regular; it is Serv'd by 7 dignify'd Clergymen, 12 Canons, 12 Pettry-Canons. To the Diocels are subject 194 Parishes, the Archbishop's Revenue 40000 Ducats. Near this Church is the great Place or Square of *Bivarambla*, 200 Foot Broad, and 600 in Length; all the Buildings about it regular, and the Shops beautiful. Besides this, there are 5 other large Squares, and some spacious Streets, tho' not many. When it had been 778 Years possess'd by the *Moors*, King *Ferdinand* recover'd it, Ann. 1492, and erected it a Metropolitan See, as has been said. The Emperor *Charles V.* made it an University, in 1531; and it has now 5 good Colleges. It is 60 Leagues distant from *Madrid* to the South, 23 from *Cordova* East, 19 from *Malaga* North-East, and better than 40 from *Murcia* West.

*Malaga*, is a good Port, and one of the best Roads on the Coast of *Spain*, being Seated on the Coast of the *Mediterranean* into which runs a Mole, 530 common Paces long, and 20 in Breadth, with four Stairs to take water at, 24 Pillars of Jasper Stone, to make fast the Ships to, and a Chappel for Sea-faring People to hear Mass. The City is Round, double Wall'd, and has many Towers and 9 Gates, the Sea washes the Walls, and near it runs the River *Guadalmedina*, signifying in *Arabick* the River of the City; and another smaller, over both which it has two stately Bridges, the Situation being in a Plain among Hills, Mountains and broken Grounds, cover'd with Vines and all sorts of delicious Fruit, as we may perceive by the very rich Wine, Raisins, Almonds, Figs &c, brought from thence. There is a large old Fortress call'd the *Alcazava*, which in *Arabick* signifies a Castle, and another less to the Sea, nam'd *Gibraltar*, that is, the Mountain of the Light House. The exportation of Wine and other Commodities is so great here, that it has been said to yield the King in Duties 800000 Ducats Yearly. The Inhabitants amount to 12000 Families in 4 Parishes, with 10 Monasteries of Friars, 6 of Nuns and as many Hospitals. It is supposed to have been built by the *Phenicians*, and call'd *Malago*, from their Commander of that name, changing the *o* into *a*; but that looks like a Romance; for it is reported to have been call'd *Menance* by the *Greeks*, and some will have the *Carthaginians* to be the Founders; whosoever founded it, the *Moors* were in



in Possession of it 73 Years, till King *Ferdinand* recover'd it, after a Siege of 3 Months, in 1487. He also erected it into a Bishoprick, to which are subject 105 Parishes, the Prelate's Revenue 50000 Ducats. The Cathedral, a magnificent Structure is serv'd by 8 dignity'd Clergy-men, 17 Canons and 10 Petty Canons. It is distant from *Madrid* 85 Leagues South somewhat Westerly; from *Sevil* 25 South-East and about the same distance from *Granada* South-West.

*Almeria*, suppos'd by some to have been formerly call'd *Urei*, but being ruin'd to be rebuilt by *Amalicus* King of the *Goths*, by the name of *Amalaria*, corruptly *Almeria*, which is a blind Guess, for there is no doubt but *Almeria* is an *Arabick* Name, as are all those beginning with the Article *Al*. The Sea washes its Walls, which are a League in Compass, with 2 Gates, standing on a Plain, and have a safe Harbour, the Climate so favourable, that the Trees and Fields are green all the Year, and about it are found many curious Stones, as Amethysts, Emeralds, Garnets and particularly Agates, from which the Neighbouring Cape took Name; tho' now corruptly call'd *Cabo de Gata*, instead of *Azatas*. This was once so great a City, that there is a *Spanish* Proverb importing, that when *Almeria* was *Almeria*, that is, in its Splendor, then *Granada* was its Farm. However at present it contains but 600 Houses, 4 Parishes, 3 Monasteries of Friars, one of Nuns, a noble Hospital and 10 Chappels. It has also a Castle which belongs to the Duke of *Masqueda*, and is a Bishoprick containing 70 Parishes, the Bishop's Revenue 6000 Ducats, the Cathedral serv'd by 6 Dignify'd Clergy-men, 6 Canons, and as many Petty Canons. King *Ferdinand* recover'd it from the Infidels *Ann.* 1490, and it is distant from *Madrid* 71 Leagues South-East, 21 from *Granada* East, and 25 from *Murcia* South-West.

*Guadix*, an ancient *Roman* Colony call'd *Acci*, the *Moors* gave it the name of *Guadix*, signifying River of Life. It stands in a deep Valley, enclosed with craggy Hills and Rocks, which render the Access very difficult, encompass'd with strong Walls, with Towers and a Fausse-Bray, water'd by the little River *Fuente*, besides many other Springs. The Inhabitants amount to 1500 Families, in 3 Parishes, with 4 Monasteries of Friars, and 2 of Nuns. King *Ferdinand* recover'd it from the *Moors*, *Ann.* 1459, and restor'd the ancient Episcopal See, which contains 37 Parishes, the Bishop's Revenue 8000 Ducats, and the Cathedral serv'd by 6 Dignify'd Clergy-men, 6 Canons, and as many Petty-Canons. Distant from *Madrid* 60 Leagues South, and 8 East from *Granada*.

*Ronda*, formerly *Arunda*, whence the present name with a little Corruption; but this stands 2 Leagues from the ancient, now call'd *Ronda la Vieja*, or old *Ronda*, and said to be built by the *Moors* and call'd *Hiznarunda*, signifying the Castle of the Laurel. It is the Capital of a small Mountain Province, call'd *La Serrania de Ronda*, seated on a high and inaccessible Ridge, near the River *Gaudiara*, with a stately Castle, on the Land Side, seated on a Rock, which looks as if Nature had form'd it for that Purpose. It has strong Walls and a deep Ditch, into which a Brook runs, besides two other small Rivers running near by, whose names are *Gaza* and *Guadalupe*, which are low in Winter, and not fordable in Summer, occasion'd by the melting of the Snow with the Heat on the Mountains. Within this City is a deep Cave of 400 Steps, whence the Christian Slaves

fetch'd up Water for the *Moors* in Skins. *S. Frances's* Square has three delightful Poplar Walks, and is water'd with several Fountains. The old Suburb is populous, Wall'd and Water'd by the Brook *Culebras*. The Inhabitants are 1600 Families, in 3 Parishes, with 4 Monasteries of Friars and 2 of Nuns. King *Ferdinand* recover'd it from the *Moors* *Ann.* 1485, the distance from *Madrid* 85 Leagues South, somewhat Westerly, from *Sevil* 24 South-East, and 10 from *Gibraltar* North-East.

*Antequera* some reckon in the Kingdom of *Sevil*, and others in that of *Granada*, seated partly on a Hill and partly in the Plain, with 6 Gates in its Walls, and a good Castle on the Banks of the River call'd *de la Villa*, or of the Town. It contains 7000 Families, 6 Parishes, one of them Collegiate, 11 Monasteries of Friars, 7 of Nuns, 11 Chappels, and 3 Free-Schools, beside a most noble Hospital, which maintains Foundlings. Near it is a Salt Pit, a League in Length, and a half in Breadth, which serves the Country about; and 3 Leagues from it is the Spring, whose Water cures the Stone, which has drawn such a Concourse of People, that a small Town is built about it. Another Rarity near this City is a great Parcel of high Rocks, call'd *El Torcal*, which represent Men, Beasts and Structures at a distance, being a wonderful Work of Nature. Here are besides, the subterraneous Caves they call of *Merga*, and of *Camorra*, being wonderful Mines carry'd on by the *Romans* to draw thence the Precious Metals the Country afforded. The City stands 72 Leagues South from *Madrid*, 25 from *Sevil* West-South West, and 24 from *Granada* South East.

*Baza*, once the Capital of the *Bassetanis*, stands in a deep Valley, call'd *Hoya de Baza*, at the Foot of a Hill, a small River running by its Walls, in which there are 4 Gates, and by them an old Castle. The Inhabitants 1600 Families, in 3 Parishes, one of them Collegiate, with 5 Monasteries of Friars, one of Nuns, 5 Chappels and an Hospital. The ancient Name was *Bassa*, corruptly *Baza*. King *Ferdinand* took it from the *Moors*, *Ann.* 1489, after a Siege of 7 Months. It is near 60 Leagues from *Madrid* South East; 18 East from *Granada*, and 25 West from *Carragena*.

*Loja*, a City seated in a deep Valley, betwixt two lofty Hills, full of Springs, some of them Medicinal, curiously built, with a strong Castle, on the highest Rocks, double Wall'd, and 11 Gates, the River *Genil* running through it, over which it has a strong Bridge of 5 Arches. Near the great Market Place is a large Pool, from which above 200 Pipes of Water are laid to several Parts. About 1400 Families inhabit the Place, in three Parishes, as many Monasteries of Men, 1 of Women, 4 Chappels and a good Hospital. The *Romans* are thought to be the Founders, and to have call'd it *Lacivis*; the *Moors* gave the present Name of *Loja*, from whom it was taken by King *Ferdinand*, *Ann.* 1486. It is 60 Leagues South from *Madrid*, 37 East from *Sevil*, and 7 West from *Granada*.

*Santa Fe*, tho' inconsiderable in itself as containing not above 300 Families, is yet a City and remarkable because founded by King *Ferdinand*, in 1491, when he lay'd Siege to *Granada*, for the Headquarters of his Army, to shew he would not stir from thence till he had reduc'd *Granada*. It is wall'd and stands in the great Plain, two Leagues from that Capital City, near a Spring, call'd the Source of *Guescar*.

*Marbella.*



*Marbella*, another small City, of 480 Families, one Parish and 2 Monasteries, yet wall'd, seated on the Sea Coast, in the Western part of this Kingdom, 6 Leagues East from *Ronda*, and 10 South from *Malaga*; some think it was formerly call'd *Barbesola*, and that the present Name is a Composition of *Marbella*, a beautiful Sea.

*Lucena*, anciently *Belaria*, or according to others *Legi*, stands in a Plain, near the Sea and the River *Guadalmazor*, is wall'd and has 2 Gates, not above 300 Families, one Parish and a Monastery of Friars, yet is also a City, near 70 Leagues distant from *Madrid* South East, 30 East from *Granada*, and 13 South West from *Cartagena*.

*Albama*, a City of 800 Houses, one Parish, 2 Monasteries of Friars, one of Nuns, well built on the side of a Hill, upon a small River, and has good old Walls, and handsome market Places. Famous for its celebrated medicinal Baths, for the Cure of Distempers, especially proceeding from Cold, where many Cripples have their Limbs restor'd. It was formerly call'd *Artigis*, but the *Moors* gave it the Name of *Al Rama*, signifying Baths, recover'd from them by King *Ferdinand*, Ann. 1482. Distant from *Madrid* 63 Leagues South, 9 from *Granada* South West; and 15 from *Cordova* South East.

*Velex Malaga*, is also a City, not far from the Coast of the Mediterranean, with a strong Castle above it, and containing 1200 Families, 2 Parishes, 3 Monasteries of Friars, and 1 of Nuns, thought to be the *Menova* of the Ancients, by the *Moors*, call'd *Velex*, with the addition of *Malaga*, for its nearness to that City, which is about 5 Leagues from it to the South West.

*Almunecar*, is a good Sea-port, on the Mediterranean, shelter'd from the West Wind, has strong Walls, a good Castle, and but 280 Families, one Parish and a Monastery of Friars, yet is an ancient City.

*Guescar*, another City, seated in a Plain at the Foot of Mount *Sagra*, which is always cover'd with Snow, betwixt the Rivers *Guardadar* and *Bravate*, falling down from it; has strong Walls with many Towers, an old Castle, 3 Gates, inhabited by 500 Families, in 2 Parishes, with 2 Monasteries

of Friars, as many of Nuns, an Hospital and 5 Chappels. It is a famous Place for washing of Wooll, at which 3000 Men are frequently employ'd, and 400000 Hundred Weight of Wooll has been known to be wash'd there in a Year. Some will have it to be anciently call'd *Afcua* or *Efcua*, and corruptly *Gurscar*; but others say it was built by the *Moors*, expell'd *Huesca* in *Aragen* and so call'd by them. It is 57 Leagues from *Madrid* South East. 21 from *Murcia* West, and 18 from *Almeria* North.

*Muxacra*, the last City we find in this Kingdom, stands on the top of a high Mountain, is wall'd and has but one Gate, scarce 200 Families, and one Parish, so much it is decay'd since the expulsion of the *Moors*. Distant from *Madrid* 72 Leagues South-East, and 16 from *Cartagena* South West.

*Motril*, is no City, but contains 2000 Houses, 2 Parishes, 2 Monasteries of Friars, an Hospital and 4 Chappels. Seated on the Mediterranean Sea, 11 Leagues from the City *Granada*, by the *Romans* call'd *Firmium Julium*, and now famous for making abundance of Sugar, which grows round about it, and supplies a great part of *Spain*.

*Las Alpujarras*, is the name of a famous Ridge of Mountains, branching out from *Sierra Nevada*, or the Snowy Mountain, on the South, next the Mediterranean, having the City *Almeria* on the East, *Motril* on the West, and *Granada* on the North; being 17 Leagues long, and 7 in breadth. It is all generally very high, craggy and difficult of Access, but the bottoms delightful, and producing all sorts of Fruit and Grain, feeding abundance of Cattle, and yielding a very great quantity of Silk. This Ridge of Mountains is divided into 11 *Taas*, which in *Arabick* signifies, Heads of Districts, Govern'd under the *Moors* by *Alcaydes*, and then including a City call'd *Cobda*, and 120 Villages, some of them, since the banishing of those Infidels, almost deserted. The *Taa* of *Origiva* has but 250 Families, that of *Puqueyra* 140; that of *Pitres* 230; that of *Jubiles* 640; that of *Uxixar* 600; *Andaxar* 250; the *Taa* of *Sebel*, the Greater and the Less, 470; of *Adra* 100; of *Verja* 350; Lastly, that of *Dalcas* 530; with which we conclude this Kingdom.

## C H A P. XII.

### The Kingdom of MURCIA.

Takes its Name from the Capital City, so call'd, and is a Part of the Roman Province *Tarracensis*. The *Moors* after their Conquest dividing *Spain* into several Kingdoms, as we have seen before, erected this little Province into a Monarchy, since when it preserves the Title. King *Ferdinand III.* recover'd some Part from those Infidels in the Year 1241. and his Son, King *Alonso* the Wise, subdu'd the rest in 1266. annexing the whole to his Crown.

Northwards it Borders upon *New Castile*; on the West it is parted from *Andaluzia* and *Granada*, by the Mountains of *Segura*, and others running down to the Sea; on the South it has the Mediterranean; and on the East, part of the same Mediterranean,

and of the Kingdom of *Valencia*. The greatest Length North-West and South-East is 33 Leagues, and the greatest Breadth North-East and South-West 23.

The Air is somewhat Hot, but the Soil, tho Mountainous, extraordinary Fruitful, never failing but through Drought, and generally yielding great Plenty of Wheat, Barley, Wine, Oyl, Fruit and Pasture; it also abounds in Honey, but above all affords vast quantities of Silk, which makes the principal Wealth of the Natives, who differ little from their Neighbours of *Castile* and *Andaluzia*.

The Government of the Country is in an *Adelantado*, or Lord-Lieutenant, which is Hereditary in the *Marqueses de los Velez*. It contains but 3 Cities,

Y y

and



and 1 Bishoprick, besides some good Towns, and many Villages of note. The chief whereof are,

Murcia.	} } Caravaca.
Cartagena.	
Lorca.	
	} } Mula.

**MURCIA** City, the Metropolis of this Kingdom, is encompass'd with a good Wall, which has 12 Gates in it, rebuilt by King *Henry IV.* who added to the City several good Structures and handsome Squares. It is seated in the midst of a most delightful Plain, so Fertile, that it often yields an hundred for one in Corn, besides all other Things mention'd in the general Account of the Country, a vast compass about being cover'd with Gardens and Orchards, Water'd with the Chrystaline Streams of the River *Segura*, which rises in the Mountains of that Name, and furnishes the City with delicious Trouts. An infinite number of Mulberry-Trees, grow round about, which serve to feed as many Silk Worms, as generally make every Year 210000 Pounds of Silk. The City and Suburbs contain 6500 Families, in 11 Parishes, 10 Monasteries of Friers, 6 of Nuns, a general Hospital and 2 Colleges, a Court of the Inquisition, and a stately Palace Built by King *Henry III.* An. 1395. Some will have this to be the ancient *Murgis*, others *Vergilia*, not to quote fabulous Founders; the *Moors* took it in the Year 714. after a vigorous Resistance, and it was recover'd by King *James* of *Aragon*, An. 1265. when 30000 Infidels were expell'd; but the following Year it fell to the Lot of King *Alonso* the Wise, of *Castile*, who erected it a Bishoprick, containing 89 Parishes, the Prelate's Revenue 24000 Ducats. In the Year 1651. the River *Segura* swell'd to such a height that it threw down 1065 Houses, and 4 Monasteries, destroying abundance of People, and the Water flow'd as high as the top of the Altar in the Cathedral. It is distant from *Madrid* 65 Leagues South-East, 7 North from *Cartagena*, and 29 South and by West from *Valencia*. Mr. *Willoughby's* Character of this Place in 1664. is thus, *Murcia* is a pitiful desolate Town. and the Country near it very miserable.

*Cartagena* is seated on the Side of a Hill, Wall'd, and has a Castle built by King *Henry III.* An. 1395. on the Coast of the *Mediterranean*, being one of the noted Sea-Port Towns of *Spain*, defended from Storms by a small Island call'd *Escambrada*, which gave Occasion to *Andrew D'Orta*, that great Seaman, to say, There were three good Harbours in the *Mediterranean*, viz. *June*, *July* and *Cartagena*, meaning those two calm Months and that Port, which yet is not reckned so good a Harbour at present as some others in the Streights; but it has good Fresh Water upon the Shoar, and Ships off much Wooll for *Italy*. The Air is Temperate in Summer, and so mild in Winter, that there are Roses fresh at *Christmas*, and besides the plentiful Product of the Earth, there are Amethysts, Garnets, Agats, and other precious Stones, found in the Neighbourhood. The City contains 1200 Inhabitants, 1 Parish, 4 Monasteries of Friers, and 1 of Nuns. It was once a Bishop's See, which was remov'd thence to *Murcia*, An. 1291. *Asdrubal*, the *Carthaginian*, was the Founder, calling it *New-Carthage*. 225 Years before *Christ*. The *Romans* took it, under *Scipio Africanus*, under whom it continu'd till taken by the *Vandals* first, and then by the *Goths*, having been one of the principal Cities in *Spain*,

under both *Carthaginians* and *Romans*. In 739: the *Moors* possess'd themselves of it, and kept it till recover'd by King *Alonso* the Wise, An. 1244. who built the Castle, and in 1266. enlarg'd and beautify'd the City. King *Philip II.* Fortify'd the Harbour and City in 1570. It is distant from *Madrid* 70 Leagues South East, 7 South from *Murcia*, and 42 East from *Granada*.

*Lorca*, the third and last City in this Kingdom, is seated on the River *Guadaleatin*, along the Side of a Hill, Wall'd, has a good old Castle, about 2000 Families, 7 Parishes, 4 Monasteries of Friers, and 2 of Nuns. It was formerly a Town of the *Bastetani*, enlarg'd by the *Carthaginians* and *Romans*, and call'd first *Heliocrata*, and afterwards *Ilorci*. Under the *Vandals* it was in a flourishing Condition, and recover'd from the *Moors* under King *Ferdinand III.* An. 1244. and having been in former Ages an Episcopal See, translated to *Cartagena*, it still retains a Collegiate Church. From *Madrid* it is 60 Leagues to the South-South-East, 14 West from *Murcia*, 15 from *Cartagena*, and 10 from the Sea.

*Caravaca*, is a Town nothing inferior to some Cities, as containing 2000 Families, 1 Parish, 4 Monasteries of Friers, and 2 of Nuns. It stands 14 Leagues from *Murcia* City to the West-North-West, in the midst of a pleasant Plain; on the Walls are 17 Towers, and on the upper Ground stands a Castle. This Place is most remarkable for a Croix kept in it, said to have been brought by two Angels, in the Presence of a *Moorish* King, and several other Infidels, who were thereupon Converted.

*Mula*, is another good Town, 7 Leagues from *Murcia*, in a Plain, on a small River, Wall'd, with a good Castle, 1500 Families, 2 Parishes, and 1 Monastery of Friers. *Totana*, 4 Leagues from *Lorca*, contains 800 Families; *Alcantarilla* a League from *Murcia* 400; besides others we have not room to speak of. All which Places, if any Rain falls, which is the only Thing they sometimes want, enjoy the greatest Plenty of all Things imaginable, if not they preserve enough to subsist by ways they have of Watering.

### The Islands of MAJORCA, MINORCA, &c.

Are said to have been first call'd *Gymnesie*, by the *Greeks*, because the Inhabitants went naked afterwards they had the Name of *Baleares*, from the *Greek Ballein*, to throw, because they were thought the expertest People in the World at throwing Stone with Slings, which were their principal Weapons. They first practis'd Piracy, yet were not allow'd to keep Gold, Silver, or precious Stones, lest their Wealth should invite others to subdue them. Being brought under by the *Carthaginians*, they assist'd them in their Wars against the *Romans*, till *Q. Cecilius Metellus* Conquer'd them, after the third Punic War, and was therefore call'd *Balearicus*. Next the *Moors* took possession of them, in the Year 72 some say sooner, and erected a little Kingdom of these two *Ioiza*, and the other small ones, all of them under the Name of *Majorca*, by the *Spaniards* call'd *Mayorca*, and by some *Mallorca*, corruptly, the right Names being *Mayorca* and *Minorca* importing bigger or lesser. In the Year 1230. King *James* of *Aragon*, conquer'd *Majorca*, and in 123 of *Minorca*. King *Peter IV.* of *Aragon*, a  
next



next'd them to his Crown in 1344. for which reason the Kings of Spain among their Titles take that of *Majorca*.

The Island of *Majorca* lies in the *Mediterranean*, directly East from the City of *Valencia*, and 40 Leagues distant from it, but not above 20 South from *Ba celona*, being under the 39th and 40th Degrees of Latitude, and the 23th and 24th of Longitude. It is near 20 Leagues over, where longest, from East to West, and 17, where broadest, from North to South. The Figure is a sort of Square, the Coast difficult of Access in most Places, but has several good Ports; the 4 Points of the Square pointing to the 4 Parts of the World. The Cape and Port *Palomera* is on the West, and before it the Island *Dragonera*; Cape *Salinas* looks to the South, Cape *Piera*, or *Pera* to the East, and Cape *S. Vincent*, or *Formenter* to the North. This Island and *Majorca*, are said to have been so overrun with Hares and Rabbits, under the *Romans*, that the Natives were oblig'd to crave Aid of the Emperor *Augustus* against those domestick Enemies, who destroyed all their Corn. The Land is very Fertile for producing of Wheat, Barley, Wine, Oyl, Fruit, Pasture, Saffron; besides it is famous for good Cheele, Wool and Horses. The Natives Speak the corrupt *Lemusin*, or old *French*, spoken of in *Catalonia* and *Valencia*, but they all use the *Spanish* besides. They are Bold and Daring, and make the best Privateers in the *Mediterranean*. In the Year 1624. this Island is said to have yielded 16000 Tun of Oyl. It contains but 1 City and Bishoprick, besides several indifferent Towns and good Villages.

*Majorca* City, the Capital of the Kingdom, and Residence of the Viceroy, Bishop, Court of Justice, and that of the Inquisition, is seated on the South-West Side of the Island, facing a large Bay the Sea makes before it, in a Plain, encompass'd with high Hills, the form of it Square, among many Springs and little Rivers, enclos'd with strong Walls, in which are 5 Gates, a deep Ditch, and 3 well Fortify'd Castles. The Buildings are handsome, the Inhabitants 15000 Families, divided into 6 Parishes, besides the Cathedral, a noble Structure, 14 Monasteries of Friars, 9 of Nuns 7 Hospitals, and a Seminary for Education of young Maidens. The Bishop's Revenue is 20000 Crowns, and to the Cathedral belong 6 Dignify'd Clergy Men, 2 Canons, 4 *Pabordes*, being a sort of Petty-Canons, and 250 Benefices.

*MINORCA* Island lies 10 Leagues to the East of *Majorca*, in 40 Degrees Latitude, and between 24 and 25 of Longitude; its greatest Length North West and South-East 15 Leagues, and the greatest Breadth 6, the whole Compass about 33. It produces all Sorts of Grain and Fruit, but abounds most in Cattle. On the South-East part of it is the famous Harbour call'd *Port Maon*, one of the finest in the World, both for Capaciousness and Security, either from Winds or Enemies, which has occasion'd it to be attempted since the present War by the Confederates, but without Success, some new Forts having been lately Built for its Defence. The Capital City is call'd *Ciudadela*, and stands on the West Side of the Island, Fortify'd with Walls and Bastions, inhabited by 1000 Families, and the Residence of the Governour, who has his Court, from which there lies an Appeal to that of *Majorca*. There is a good Harbour to it for small Ships, and it is suppos'd to be the *Jaxus* of the Ancients.

*IBIZA*, formerly *Pityusa*, whence this and *Formentera* adjacent to it, were call'd *Pityusæ* in the plural Number, from the abundance of Pine-Trees found in them by the *Greeks* who first gave them the Name. The *Carthaginians* coming after them, found this Island to stand conveniently for their Designs upon Spain, and therefore Built a City on it, which they call'd *Ebusus*, which Name from that Time was given to the whole Island, and by corruption at last came to *Ibiza*. It lies between the Island of *Majorca*, and the Kingdom of *Valencia*, almost equi-distant from them both, being but 11 Leagues from the nearest Part of the former, and about 12 from Cape *Martin* in the latter, but 16 from the City *Majorca*, and 29 from that of *Valencia*; in 39 Degrees Latitude, and between 21 and 22 of Longitude. The greatest length of it from East to West is 12 Leagues, the greatest breadth North and South 7, the whole Circumference about 30. It produces Corn, Wine, Fruit and Oyl, but its principal Commodity is Salt, whereof it has vast Quantities. One Thing remarkable is, that no venomous Creature will live in it, tho' brought from Abroad. The only Place of Note in the Island is *Ibiza*, the ancient *Ebusus*, as was said above, seated on the South-side, with a good Harbour, and a Fort, and containing 1000 Families, being the Residence of a Governor, and Deputy-Governor, subordinate to the Vice-Roy of *Majorca*, and in Spirituals to the Archbishop of *Tarragona*; tho' under the *Goths* it had a Bishop of its own. King *James* of *Aragon* recover'd it from the *Moors* An. 1234. and annex'd it to the Crown.

*FORMENTERA*, the other of the *Pityusæ*, lies 2 Leagues South from *Ibiza*, opposite to the City of that Name, being about a League over one way, and something more the other, but not Inhabited. Some will have this to be the *Colubaria* of the Ancients, tho' others affirm that Name belongs to a very little Island near the West Point of *Majorca*, now call'd *Dragonera*, the resemblance of the Names making for the latter Opinion. Some Geographers pretend this *Formentera* is not Inhabited by reason of the many Snakes and venomous Creatures it abounds with, for which I have not found any Authority among *Spanish* Authors, no more than for the Fable of the Inhabitants of the other Islands having formerly carry'd all their noxious Animals into this, not daring to Kill them, as believing the Transmigration of Souls, and believing those of their Forefathers might be in some of those Creatures. That this is a meer Dream or Chimera plainly appears, besides the Folly of the Invention, in that, as has been said, none of those mischievous Animals will live in the other Islands, and therefore they could have none to carry out.

There are many more inconsiderable Islands scatter'd up and down about these great ones here nam'd, too inconsiderable to deserve any Description, nor indeed do we find any thing but the bare Names of them, which are, about *Ibiza*, on the East, *Isleta Negra*, or the Black Isle, and *Isleta de los ahorcados*, the Isle of the Men that were Hang'd; then nearer the Coast, where Salt is Shipp'd, *La Isla de la Esponja*, the Island of the Spung, near Fort *S. George*, *La Isla de los Ratones*, the Island of Mice; farther from the Shore two call'd, *de los Puerros*, of Leeks; near *Ibiza*, *La Isla del Escolla Negro*, the Island of the Black Rock, and that *del Bitose*; farther off the two *de los Dados*, or the Dice, and *El Escollo Dorado*, the gilt Rock; then follow *Botafuego*, Spitfire,



*Conjera*. Rabbe Island, *La Isla de Cabo lebrei*, *la Isla de la Punta de Arabe*, *Tago Maga*, on the Eastermost Point and South of it *Las Dos Hormigas*, *Balaguer*, *La Isla Murada*, and 4 very small call'd *Las Baidas*. *Monte Calibre* and 3 or 4 very small Islands between *Valencia*, *Catalonia* and *Majorca*, on the Mouth of the River *Ebro*, and about 10 Leagues from it to the South-East. Just without the Mouth of the said River, is a long slip of an Island, call'd *Ailsche*. Off from the Westernmost Port of *Majorca*, lies the *Dragonera*, which some suppose to be the *Cultraria* of the Ancients; near the South Point, is *Cabrera*, and besides these, several others of no Note, and not worth naming.

BESIDES this Continent, and the Islands here named; the Crown of *Spain* possesses, as we have said, the large Continent of *America*, the *Philippine* Islands on the East-Coast of *Asia*, whereof we shall speak in its Place; and the **CANARY ISLANDS** on the North-West of *Africa*; whereof the Reader will find an Account among the *African* Islands, after the Description of that Continent. But in regard that our Merchants Trade much thither, and the high **PEAK** or Mountain of **TENERIF**, is the Subject of common Discourse, we will detain the Reader a little, to speak of the height and Nature of that Mountain, from the Relation of some considerable Merchants and Gentlemen of Credit who actually Travell'd to the Top of it, as we find it communicated to the Royal Society, viz.

Setting forth from *Oratava*, a Port Town on the North-side of the Island; they travell'd Eight Hours in getting up the first Mountain towards the *Pico*. From thence proceeding through much Sandy way, and over many lofty Mountains, they arriv'd at the Foot of the Great Mountain. Here they found many huge Stones, which seem'd to have been fallen down from the upper Part. They began to ascend it about Six in the Evening, but after having Travell'd a Mile, the Way being not passable for Horses, they were forc'd to quit them. In this Mile's ascent, some of the Company grew faint and sick: and when they began to taste their Wine, they found it so wonderfully cold, that they could not drink it without warming. The Air was moderate, and the Wind was calm, till the Sun was Set, but then the Wind blew with great Violence, and the Air became excessive cold: They rested some Hours in the Night among the great Stones, keeping great Fires against the intense Cold; and at Four in the Morning set forward again. When they had Travell'd another Mile, they came to the Black Rocks; passing over which, they came to that part of the Mountain call'd the Sugar-Loaf, where the Soil was a White-Sand. Climbing up still, they arriv'd at last with great Pains, at the Summit. In the Passage they found no considerable alteration of the Air, and very little Wind, but being at Top, it was so impetuous, that they could hardly stand against it. The Top is a narrow brink of not above a Yard wide; round the Pit, call'd the *Caldera*, which is about 2 Musket shot over. There appears below a continual Smoak, which is not seen at top, unless by stirring the loose Earth and Stones in the *Caldera* you raise it. The depth of the *Caldera* is in shape conical, descending 80 Yards, and is cover'd all the way with loose Stones mix'd with Sulphur and Sand, from among which issue many Spracles of Smoak and Heat, and when stirr'd,

puffs out with Noise, emitting a stinging Vapour; the Stones are also hot, so as not to be handled. But notwithstanding this Vapour, they tell us they descended into it four or five Yards, and say, that some People have gone down quite to the bottom. From this *Pico*, they could see the Grand *Canaria*, which is 14 Leagues distant; the Island *Palma*, which is 18 Leagues off; and the *Gomera*, 7 Leagues; and even *Hierro* or *Ferro*, which is above 20 Leagues distant. The Sea between *Teneriff* and *Gomera*, although 7 Leagues, seem'd to them not broader than the *Thames* at *London*. When the Sun was risen some time, the Clouds arose so fast, that their Prospect was intercepted, and they could see only the tops of the neighbouring Mountains. It is worth Observation, that when they tasted their strong Water on the top of the *Pico*, they found it had lost its Strength, and was almost insipid, whereas their Wine was rather Insipid. They observ'd, that many excellent and very exuberant Springs issued from the other Mountains, gushing out in great Spouts; and that in the *Pico*, there is a perpetual trickling of Water in the crannies of the Rocks. They speak of a Cave or Pit, which they saw in their Passage down; but there is nothing remarkable in it, but that it is 10 Yards deep, 15 broad, and partly fill'd with Snow. They perform'd the Journey up and down in two Days, and found no Trees, Herbs, or Shrubs in all the Passage, except Pine-Trees, and among the White-Sand, a kind of Broom, and in some Places a sort of Cordon bearing Berries, which contained a poisonous Milk. The whole perpendicular height of the *Pico* (says he) is vulgarly esteem'd two Miles and an half. *Varenius* indeed calls it 4 Miles, 3 Furlongs; but he is much mistaken; for besides what this Author says of it, I have the Testimony of another Learned Gentleman now in *London*, who made an Observation upon the Barometer, and found the Quicksilver to have sunk eleven Inches, at the top of the *Pico*, that is to say, from 29 Inches, to 18 Inches, which by the Tables drawn from Experiment and sound Reason, by the Accurate and Judicious *Edm. Halley*, will be found to answer to about 2 Miles and a quarter.

I know not whether our Reader will Thank us for spending Time in talking of the manner of the Old Inhabitants; but since such things are Entertaining and Instructive with some Persons, we shall for this Time, a little enlarge upon that Subject, and the rather because there is something Singular in it, and withal, 'tis part of the same Relation sent to the Royal Society.

The *Guanchia's* or ancient Inhabitants of *Teneriff*, live in the Mid-land mountainous Parts, and had formerly little or no Converse with the *Spaniards*, whom looking upon as their Enemies, they would not Inter-marry with. They are of Stature Tall and Lean; of Temper Active, and full of Courage. Their Food is chiefly a mixture of Barley-Flower, made after the Corn has been Roasted, with Milk and Honey. They drink no Wine, nor eat but little Flesh. They are surprizingly Active in leaping from Rock to Rock, jumping from Stage to Stage sometimes 10 Fathom at a Leap. Their manner is thus; They poise their Lance firm in their Hands point it at the piece of Rock they intend to light on and at their going off, clap their Feet close to the Lance, and carry their Bodies so even in the Air that the point of the Lance shall come first to the Ground.



Ground, which breaks the Fall, and gives them opportunity to alight with Ease. They have a Faculty of Whistling beyond what can be imagin'd, for the *Spaniards* affirm, that to hear it in a close Room, it is so loud and shrill as to endanger the Ear; and they say they ordinarily hear 'em at 4 or 5 Miles distance. But the greatest Curiosity among them, is their Mummies (as we call 'em) or dead Corps preserv'd in Caves, where they have lain many Ages without Decay. These Bodies are preserv'd in Goat-Skins, fitted very close, and sewed very tight; and therein, by the Arts that had been used, the Corps are preserv'd entire: The Faces appear only shrivel'd and discolour'd, but the Features and all the parts of the Body perfect, with the Hair on, and the Sexes distinguishable. This Gentleman

who saw them (which is a great Favour) was a Physician, and therefore was curious to find out the Art they us'd, but found it is now Lost, and the Oldest among them could only tell him, that of Old there was a Tribe of Men that had this Art among themselves, which they kept as Sacred, and never communicated; but at the Conquest by the *Spaniards*, they were mostly Destroy'd, and the Art lost. Our Author saw three or four Hundred of these Corps in several Caves, some of them standing, others lying on Beds of Wood, which were so far hardned by an Art they had, that no Iron can pierce it. The Bodies are very light, but the Parts are so intirely preserv'd, that in some broken Limbs, he observ'd the Nerves and Tendons, and also some Strings of the Veins and Arteries.

## The Kingdom of P O R T U G A L.

*Consult the Map of Spain.*

**T**H O' generally it is call'd by the *Latin* Name, of *Lusitania*; it contains more to the North, and less to the East, than that *Roman* Province did, which was then bounded on the North by the River *Durius*, or *Duero*, on the West and South, by the Ocean, and on the East the River *Guadiana* divided it from *Betica*, as did a Line drawn from Old *Calatrava*, on the same River, to the Bridge of *Simancas* on the *Duero*, from *Tarragona*. Thus we see that ancient Province waer'd all the Province now call'd *Entre Douro e Minho*, on the North, of what *Portugal* now comprehends, and on the South-East, that slip of Land on which *Mina Scopa*, and *Olivenza* stand; whereas it included all the Province of *Esiremadura*, with some part of New and Old *Castile*, and half the Kingdom of *Leon*, the best part of the Province being now quire cut off from it. In the Territory betwixt the River *Guadiana* and Cape *S. Vincent*, then *Pementorium Sacrum*, liv'd the *Turdetani*: Next to them Northward, towards the River *Tagus*, were the *Celtæ*; along the Sea coast, Westward from the *Celtæ*, were the *Santii*, a wild, rude, and savage People. On the North side of *Tagus*, as far as the *Duero*, were the *Tinduli*. The *Pesures* liv'd along the Mountain call'd *Serra da Estrella*, and the *Bracori*, and *Garii*, betwixt the Rivers *Duero* and *Minho*.

The present Kingdom of *Portugal*, borders Northward on *Galicia*, from which it is divided by the River *Minho* next the Sea, and by some small Rivers and Hills farther up the Land; the West and South-sides are all water'd by the Western, or *Atlantic* Ocean, including the little Kingdom of *Algarve* on the South; and on the West, the River *Guadiana* parts the said little Kingdom from *Andalusia*; from whence Northward, *Portugal* borders on *Andaluzia*, *Esiremadura*, and the Kingdom of *Leon*. The whole extent of it from North to South,

is 100 Leagues; the Breadth in the widest part, which is in the Middle, 40 Leagues, and in the narrowest place next *Algarve*, 20. As to Latitude, it has between 36 Deg. 50 Min. and 42 Deg. 10 Min. and in Longitude between 9 Deg. 10 Min. and near 12 Deg.

The Etymologies of the Names given to this and other Countries, are for the most part meer uncertain and even improbable Guesses, being generally contriv'd to gain the Reputation of Antiquity, altogether Fabulous. Such is the notion of deriving *Lusitania* from *Lusus*, an imaginary King of *Spain*, or from *Lysias*, the Son of *Bacchus*, or such others. That *Portugal* was once call'd *Suevia*, is certain, and that it was from the *Suevians*, who settled in it, when *Spain* was overrun by those People, the *Alans*, *Silingians*, *Vandis*, and others. The first of whom settled this Province, and erecting it into a Kingdom, Govern'd for some Years. The present name of *Portugal* is of no less obscure an Original than the first, some deducing it from *Portus Cale*, an ancient Town opposite to *Porto*; others from *Portus Graus*, a Town thought to be built by the *Greeks*, and now call'd *Gaya*; and others from *Portus Galus*, because of the *French* resorting to the City *Porto*.

Of the remotest Antiquities of this Nation, as much as is requisite has been said in the general Account of *Spain*, for it never was a Kingdom, till, as was hinted above, the *Suevians* erected themselves a Monarchy in it. But they being Subdu'd by the *Goths*, all *Spain* was again united under one Head. So it continu'd till the fatal Conquest by the *Moors*; after which every Commander among the Infidels seiz'd what he could, and became a Sovereign; and in *Portugal* we shall find there were several Petty-Kings of them. In process of Time, the Christians gaining Ground upon them; and having recover'd *Galicia* and *Leon*, spread by degrees  
into



into *Portugal*, where the Kings of *Leon* made themselves Masters of a considerable part of the Country. Many noble Adventurers at this time resorting to *Spain*, to signalize themselves against the Infidels, among them came *Henry*, Grand-son to *Robert* the First Duke of *Burgandy*, tho' others say of the House of *Lorraine*. He having done notable Service with some Forces he brought along with him King *Alonso* VI. of *Leon*, and First of *Castile*, who then Reign'd, as a Reward for his Merit, in the Year 1095, gave him in Marriage his Bastard-Daughter *Teresa*, with the Title of Earl, of as much as was then Conquer'd in *Portugal*, which was no more than General, or Governour. His Son *Alonso*, having obtain'd a great Victory over the *Moors* at *Ourique*, was declar'd King by his Army, and took upon him that Title; but having no Right to usurp what was committed to him in Trust, He pretended that Christ had appear'd to him and given him the Kingdom of *Portugal*; a notable Forgery to impose upon the Ignorant, but very Ridiculous to all others. Yet not satisfy'd with this Grant from Heaven, he is said to have obtain'd another from Pope *Alexander* III. both of them of much equal Authority. However the Kingdom was got, he and his Successors defended it by the Sword; and therefore we will here give a Chronological Table of them.

#### *The Succession of the Kings of PORTUGAL.*

1. *Alonso* I. above spoken of, was very successful against the Infidels; and having Reign'd 46 Years, died in 1185. His Son
2. *Sancho* succeeded him, and was call'd Peopler, from the many Towns he brought Inhabitants to, after expelling the *Moors*. He Reign'd 26 Years, and died in 1212.
3. *Alonso* II. succeeded his Father, and Reign'd 12 Years; died in 1223.
4. *Sancho* II. Surnam'd *Capelo*, and Son to *Alonso*, after many Turmoils, was by his Rebellious Subjects expell'd the Kingdom, and forc'd to fly to *Teledo*, where he died in Exile, in the Year, 1246, when he had Reign'd 22.
5. *Alonso* III. Brother to *Sancho*, from whom he usurp'd the Royal Power, under the Title of Governor, upon his Death without Issue, ascended the Throne, and put away his Lawful Wife *Maud*, Countess of *Flanders*, to Marry *Beatrix*, Bastard-Daughter to King *Alonso* the Wise, of *Castile*, by that means to serve his Interest against his wrong'd Brother. He Reign'd 32 Years, and died in 1279.
6. *Denis*, Surnam'd the Builder, for his many Structures, and Son to *Alonso*, reign'd next with great Reputation of Magnanimity and Generosity. He was Husband to the famous *S. Elizabeth*, Queen of *Portugal*, Daughter to King *Peter* III of *Aragon*. He sat on the Throne 46 Years, and died in 1325.
7. *Alonso* IV. Surnam'd the Fierce, Son to *Denis*, had some Troubles at Home, rais'd by his Brother, call'd also *Alonso*, whom at last he drove out of the Kingdom; and afterwards was in Person at the Great Battle, call'd *del Salado*, in which the Christian Princes of *Spain*, overthrew the Infidels, with the Slaughter of 200000 of them. His Reign was of 30 Years. He died in 1357.

8. *Peter*, Son to the last, by some call'd the Cruel, but by others more properly, the Fulfiller of Justice, as soon as possessor of the Crown put to death all those who had any Hand in the Murder of the Lady *Agnes de Castro*, to whom he was privately Marry'd whilst Prince; then proving his Marriage with her, he executed rigid Justice on all Offenders, during the rest of his Reign, which lasted 10 Years, and died in 1367.
9. *Ferdinand*, Son to *Peter*, succeeded his Father, and had some Troubles with his own Subjects, on account of his Marrying the Lady *Eleanor* *Telex*, a private Gentlewoman, which was also the occasion of Wars with *Castile*, because he rejected that King's Daughter, to whom he was before Contracted. He Reign'd 16 Years, and died in 1383, being the last of the Lawful Line of *Portugal*; for his Successor was,
10. *John*, Bastard-Son to King *Peter*, set up by the Multitude, in Opposition to King *John* I. of *Castile*, who had Marry'd the Daughter and Heiress of the late King *Ferdinand*. This Usurper made good his Title by the Sword, and gave the *Castilian* a great Overthrow at *Aljubarrota*, which fix'd him on the Throne. He was also supported by the famous *John* of *Gant*, Duke of *Lancaster*, whose Daughter *Philippa* he Marry'd, and Reign'd 48 Years, his Death happening in 1433.
11. *Edward*, Son to *John*, had but a short Reign of 5 Years, dying in 1438.
12. *Alonso* V. Son to the last, came to the Crown at 6 Years of Age; he afterwards took *Arzila* and *Tangier*, on the Coast of *Africk* and espous'd the Quarrel of the Princess *Joanna* rightful Heiress to the Crown of *Castile*, but was Routed at *Toro*, by the Forces of *Ferdinand* and *Isabel*, who had usurp'd that Crown; and having Reign'd 43 Years, died in 1481.
13. *John* II. Son to *Alonso*, in whose Days the Discoveries (began before along the Coast of *Africk*) were carry'd on beyond the Cape of Good Hope. He put to Death the Dukes of *Braganza* and *Viseo*, with others of the greatest Men, for Conspiring against him; and having Reign'd 14 Years; died in 1495.
14. *Emanuel*, Son to *Ferdinand*, Duke of *Isjeo*, and Grandson to King *Edward*, in whose Reign, *Vasco de Gama* first sail'd to the *East-Indies*, round the Cape of Good Hope, by whose means the *Portugueses* engros'd all the Trade of those Parts, as they had done before of the Coasts of *Africk*, and accidentally discover'd *Brazil*. He also took the Towns of *Sasin*, *Azamora*, and *Almidina* in *Africk*: By which Discoveries and Conquests, he so much Enrich'd his Kingdom, that his was call'd the Golden Age. He Reign'd 26 Years, and died in 1521.
15. *John* III. Son to *Emanuel*, carry'd on the Discovery and Conquest of the *East-Indies* very successfully, altho' other European Nations began already to interfere with him in those Parts. But there being a Dispute betwixt the Crowns of *Spain* and *Portugal*, concerning the Title to the *Molucco Islands*, he purchas'd the Title of the *Spaniards* to them for 300000 Ducats of the Emperor *Charles* V. and died in 1557. after Reigning 35 Years.
16. *Sebastian*, Son to *John*, who was left an Infant at 3 Years of Age; as soon as he came of Age, undertook a fatal Expedition into *Africk*, under colour



colour of assisting *Muley Mahomet*, King of *Morocco*, against his Uncle *Muley Moluc*, who had expell'd him the Throne, rais'd a powerful Army, fill'd up with all the Flower of the *Portuguese* Nobility and Gentry, with which he Sail'd over into *Africk*, where he was Overthrown and Kill'd, and most of his Troops either cut in pieces or Taken. Being so Young and never Marry'd, he left no Issue, and was succeeded by

17. *Henry* the Cardinal, his Uncle, and Son to King *Emanuel*, then almost 66 Years of Age, the rest of the Male Line being now extinct, was set up. He Reign'd but a Year and an half, and died in 1580.

18. *Philip II.* of *Spain*, being descended by his Mother, of the Royal Blood of *Portugal*, had before set up his Claim to that Crown, and upon the Death of King *Henry*, sent the Duke of *Alva* with a small Army, to make it good, who presently overrun the Country, and brought it to Obedience. *Antony* the Bastard, assisted by the *French* and *English*, set up his Pretensions to the Crown, relying on the Example of King *John* the Bastard, but prov'd not so successful, being twice Routed, and forc'd to depart the Kingdom. King *Philip* took Possession in the Year 1580, and died in 1598. having reign'd in *Spain* 41 Years, and over *Portugal*, 18.

19. *Philip III.* of *Spain*, and II. of *Portugal*, Son to the last above-nam'd, reign'd peaceably over *Portugal*, 22 Years, and died in 1621.

20. *Philip IV.* of *Spain*, and III. of *Portugal*, Son to the former, Reign'd over *Portugal* 19 Years; after which the *Portuguese* in 1648, Revolted, and Proclaim'd

21. *John*, Duke of *Braganza*, King, being the 4th of that Name, who prov'd very Successful, defeating the *Spanish* Armies, by which he secur'd the Crown to himself, with the Assistance of the *French* and *English*; and having Reign'd 8 Years, died in 1656.

22. *Alphonso VI.* Son to *John*, was no less successful against the *Spaniards*, than his Father had been; by which means, through the Mediation of King *Charles II.* of *England*, who had Marry'd his Sister *Catharine*, and supported him with Forces. He concluded a Peace with *Spain*, and was own'd King of *Portugal*. But all his good Fortune against Enemies abroad, could not protect him against his own Brother and Subjects at Home, who Dethron'd and Imprison'd him, under colour of his being unfit to Govern, tho' it is certain the Kingdom never Prosper'd better than under him. This Revolution hapned in the Year, 1668, when *Alphonso* had Reign'd but 12 Years; after which he liv'd 16 more in miserable Confinement, which are yet reckoned in his Reign; his Brother all that while calling himself Prince Regent, tho' he had taken not only his Brother's Kingdom, but his Wife. So that reckoning in this Time, that unfortunate Prince's Re'gn was of 28 Years; and he died in 1683.

23. *Peter*, Brother to *Alphonso*, and second of the Name, who, as is said above, had Imprison'd his Brother, and Govern'd 16 Years, now upon his Death, took the Title of King, Reign'd 13 Years, and died in 1706.

24. *John V.* Son to *Peter*, succeeded his Father, and now Reigns.

The **KINGS** of *Portugal*; are Absolute at Home, and own no Superior Abroad; and the Titles they assume, run thus; *John, by the Grace of God, King of Portugal, and of the Algarves, on this Side, and beyond the Sea in Africk, Lord of Guinea, of the Navigation, Conquests and Commerce, in Ethiopia, Arabia, Persia, India, &c.* As to his Revenue, I find nothing certain, tho' some by Guess have rais'd it to near a Million Sterling; which to such as are acquainted with the Country, seems much to exceed the Truth, tho' most Duties there run very high: But since we cannot ascertain, we will not dispute it.

The *Portuguese* **DOMINIONS** Abroad, were once very Great and Rich, but of late, much diminish'd by the *Dutch*; however, they still possess in *America*, the Province of *Brazil*, being a Tract of Land extending very far in length along the Sea, but extremely narrow towards the Inland, yet very Profitable, as yielding abundance of Sugar, Tobacco, Ginger, Cotton, Indigo, Hides, and Woad for Dyers. They have the Islands *Azores*, or *Terceras*, and that of *Madera*, Westward from their own Coast. In *Africk*, the Islands of *Cabo Verde*, the Fort of *Marzagao*, on the Coast of *Barbary*; *Mina* and *Arquin*, On that of *Guinea*; several on that of *Congo* and *Angola*. *Mozambique*, on that of *Zanguebar*; and in *Asia*, *Goa*, *Diu*, *Damam*, and *Chaul*. And on the Coast of *China*, the Town of *Macao*; but that tho' Inhabited by *Portuguese*s, is entirely Subject to the *Chinese*s.

The *Dutch* have not only work'd the *Portuguese*s out of the Trade of *Africk* and *India*, but taken from them the best of their Possessions in the latter; as the rich Island of *Ceylon*, those of the *Moluccas*, the the Town of *Malaca*, and many other Places, too long to enumerate. Not so satisfy'd, they never desisted till they Expell'd them, and with them Christianity, out of the great Island of *Japan*, where the *Jesuits* were said to have Converted 400000 Souls; but the *Hollanders*, as may be seen in *Puffendorf* and others, perswaded the Emperor, that the *Portuguese* had a design to bring his Dominions into Subjection to the Pope and King of *Spain*; which so incens'd that Monarch, that he rais'd a most dreadful Persecution against the Christians, so that in the end, there was not one left in *Japan*, and the *Portuguese* were forbid ever to return, upon Pain of Death: The *Dutch*, who afterwards Traded to *Japan*, were forbid by their own Superiors, to shew the least Token of Christianity; and if the *Japoneses* ask'd *Whether they were Christians?* They answer'd, *They were Hollanders.*

The Religion of **PORTUGAL** is altogether Roman-Catholick, no other being so much as known among the Natives, except the *Jewish*, of which there are great numbers, but all Private; being in all outward appearance like Christians, and endeavouring to out-do them the better to conceal themselves. These, if discover'd, are Punish'd by the Inquisition, where upon abjuring, they are only expos'd to publick Shame, and then instructed in Christianity. If upon Conviction they remain Obstinate, they are Burnt, as are those who have relaps'd after being Pardon'd before. Neither *Jews*, nor Herericks who were never Roman-Catholicks, are punishable by the Inquisition, unless they commit some Crime, as the *Jews*, in living like Christians, which is a Profanation of Religion. Therefore all Foreigners of what Religion soever, live undisturb'd in their own way, provided they Affront not the Government,



or establish'd Church. Besides *Jews* and *Hereticks*, the Inquisition punishes *Sorcerers*, *Witches*, *Hypocrites*, *Solomites*, *Blasphemers*, *perjur'd Persons*, and all Crimes that immediately regard Religion.

The most noted **MOUNTAINS** in *Portugal*, are, 1. *Serra da Estrella*, formerly *Herminius Mons*, betwixt the Provinces of *Beira* and *Tralos Montes*, running North and South, on the top whereof are two Lakes of a vast extent, and such depth, that one of them could never be fathom'd; and pieces of *Wrecks* are said to have been found in them; besides that, they are calm when the Sea is so, and rough when that is rough; whence it is judg'd, they have some subterraneous communication with it. 2. *Serra de Marvão*, or *Herminius Minor*, in the Province of *Alentejo*, stretching out to the Town of *Marvão*. 3. The Rock of *Sintra*; or according to our Seamen, the Rock of *Lisbon*, formerly *Promuntorium Lunæ* about 5 Leagues West from *Lisbon*, on which are 2 Monasteries, entirely cut out of the solid Rock. 4. *Serra da Arrabida*, or *Promuntorium Barbaricum*, on the South-side of the *Tagus*, famous for another Monastery of Friars like the former. 5. *Monte Junto*, *Mons Tagrus*, joyning to the Rock of *Lisbon*. 6. *Serra do Algarve*, formerly *Ci us*, which divides the little Kingdom of *Algarve* from *Portugal*. 7. Mount *Gerve*, which in part divides *Portugal* from *Galicia*. Besides which there are many more of less Note, as *Montemuro*, *Alcoba*, *Anciao*, *Offa*, *Pertel*, *S. Isidoro*, *S. Lewis*, *Monte Corvo*, *Saço*, *Marão*, *Mentoso*, *Caldeirão*, *Obr*, *Dala Bazo*, *Bibera Couva*, *Rebordaos*, and others.

The greatest **RIVERS**, as *Minho*, *Duero*, *Tagus*, and *Guadiana*, have been spoken of in the General Description of *Spain*; the others are, 1. *Mondego*, formerly *Munda*, or *Munda*, rising in the Mountain *Serra da Estrella*, and running Westward by the City *Cimbra*, falls into the Ocean at *Buarcos*. 2. *Lima*, the ancient *Lethe*, is swallow'd by the Sea, not far from *Viana*. 3. *Sadao*, the Old *Calipus*, makes a great Bay at *Setúval*, in *Alentejo*. 4. *Vcu-ga*, once *Vacua*, mixes with the Ocean near *Aveiro*, in *Beira*. 5. *Leza*, formerly *Celandes*, is lost in the Ocean, near the Town of its own Name. 6. *Ave*, cuts the Province betwixt *Duero* and *Minho*, and glides into the Ocean, scarce Navigable. 7. *Cavado*, runs by *Braga* to the Sea. 8. *Zezere* rises in *Serra da Estrella*, and falls into the *Tagus*. 9. *Aba* Springs in the aforesaid Mountain, and joins the *Mondego*. 10. *Coa* rises towards the Frontiers of *Castile*, and runs to the *Duero*. 11. *Laura*; and 12. *Camba*, in the Province of *Alentejo*, meet, and are both lost in the *Tagus*. 13. *Caya* in the same Province, gushes out near *Portalegre*, and falls into *Guadiana*, between *Badajoz* and *Elvas*. So many may suffice, for to mention all, would be too tedious.

There are also hot Waters, famous for the cure of many Diseases, of which the most frequented, are those call'd *Caldas*, 15 Leagues North from *Lisbon*, where there is an Hospital for the Poor, well Endow'd, with a Physician, an Apothecary, and other Servants, but very wretched Accommodation for other Persons out of it. There are other hot Baths, call'd of *S. Peter*, or of *Alvor*, in *Algarve*.

As for the **SOIL**, it is certainly the worst Part of *Spain* yet not contemptible, but like all Countries has better and worse: It never produces Corn enough

to maintain the People, but has always been supply'd out of *Spain*, and now during the War, from the Northern Countries; and it has been always known that it will not yield a sufficient quantity of Wheat. Pasture is no less scarce, except in some of the most Northern Parts, where is the greatest breed of Cattle, which at *Lisbon*, and all Southward, is always very lean, but the Flesh good. To make amends, here are vast quantities of Wine, which is the best Commodity of the Kingdom, and at present all sorts of it so well known in *England*, that no more need be said of it. Oyl is also plentiful, but very rarely good, being strong, and such as none who are acquainted with the *Spanish* and *Italian*, will eat. Immense Store of Salt is every Year Exported from *Setúval*, to most Northern Nations. Oranges and Lemons are another considerable Commodity, tho' their Sower Oranges are not to compare to those of *Sevil*; nor is any of their Fruits, their Almonds, Chestnuts, Raisins, &c. being much smaller than those of *Spain*, and not so well Tasted. Common Herbs and Flowers, are plentiful and good, and they make abundance of Sweet Waters. The Woollen Manufactures of the Country, are only worn by the meanest sort of People, being fit for no others.

To give **CHARACTERS** of Nations, is one of the boldest Undertakings a Man can venture upon, and indeed the most unlikely to succeed, for either Malice, finds nothing but Vice, or Affection, can speak nothing but Virtue, and no Country is without some mixture of both. To avoid all blame on either Hand, tho' I have liv'd in *Portugal*, and am well acquainted with the People, I will chuse to transcribe a few Words out of *Emanuel de Faria y Sousa*, a Portuguese Author, who says thus of his Countrymen. *The Nobility think themselves Gods, and require a sort of Adoration: The Gentry aspire to be equal to them; and the Commonality disdain to be thought inferior to either. If this be so with the Subjects, what is then the Prince, who is Head of so many Petty-Gods?* These are the Portuguese Author's Words. As an Instance of this Haughtiness, of my Knowledge, most Women of Quality are serv'd up on the Knee by their Maids and Slaves, which is become so Habitual to those poor Creatures, that they offer it to all sorts, Men or Women, and few refuse it. Nay, the Women of High Rank, will scarce be spoke to by mean People, but on the Knee. However, I must do the Fair Sex so much Right, as to clear them of the Scandal they generally lie under, of bearing few Children, Conceiving too soon, and giving over too early; which is a meer Notion; for they are certainly as Fruitful as any others, and bear their Children at the same Age. For Beauty they have as great a share as any Nation, did not they spoil their Faces with filthy Paint and Washes. In Wit I am confident they yield to none, but rather seem to exceed the Northern Parts, and do so also in Charity and Generosity; and for Modesty and Preciseness, in all that relates to their Honour, none can compare with them. The much inculcated Story of Men and Women in *Spain* wearing Spectacles for Gravity and Pride, is a meer Chimera, grounded on their being us'd by some Young People, whose Eyes are frequently much impair'd by excessive Bleeding.

As for their **HABIT**, the Men generally wear short black Cloaks, little Doublets, wide Breeches and long Swords; the Garments either of Bays or Silk, according to the Season and their Ability.



All Women going Abroad on Foot, use Veils, but their Faces bare; those of Quality in their Coaches or Litters, wear Fardingales, short Doublers, Periwigs, and some of them Daggers by their sides. In the House, they generally have short Doublers with the Smock appearing round the Waist and open before; the Maidens in their Hair, and others with a fine sort of Muzlin on their Heads. Of later Years, both Sexes begin to follow the French Mode.

Of the Ancient LANGUAGE of Spain, which which was doubtless the same spoken in Portugal, as a part of the whole, something has been said in its Place: That now in use in this Country, has some resemblance with the Spanish, yet is nothing near so Polite, but uncouth, rude and ungrateful to the Ear, being a Composition of Old Spanish, barbarous Latin, obsolete French, much Arabick, and some Greek, and remains of the Gothish, and other Northern Nations which Conquer'd Spain.

The general way of reckoning Sums of MONY in Portugal, is either by Reis, or Cruzadoes; the first, the smallest Brass, and the other the biggest Silver Coin of the Country but one; of Brass there are Single Reis, pieces of a Rei and a half, of 5 Reis, and of 10 Reis. Of Silver, the first piece is a Vin-tein, of 20 Reis; the half, Tistao, of 50 Reis; the

Tostao of 100 Reis; the Piece of 250 Reis; the Cruzado, of 400 Reis, and the Piece of 500 Reis: Besides which, they stamp the number 600 on the Spanish Pieces of Eight, to denote it shall pass for so many Reis. In Gold, they use Moeda's of 4000 Reis; and half Moeda's. For the understanding of the Value of all which, it is to be observ'd, that the general Proportion betwixt our Coin and theirs, not to speak of Exchange, which rises and falls, according to the course of Trade, is 3000 Reis to one Pound Sterling, or 100 to Eight pence English; by which any one may see what all their Pieces are worth.

The whole Kingdom of Portugal is divided into 5 Provinces; and adding the little Kingdom of Algarve, they will be in all six, which we will next speak of in Order, beginning in the North, and so descending Southward; the Names of them are these.

1. ENTRE DOURO E MINHO.
2. TRASOS MONTES.
3. BEIRA.
4. ESTREMADURA.
5. ALEMTEJO.
6. ALGARVE.

## CHAP. I.

### The Province call'd ENTRE DOURO E MINHO.

THAT is, betwixt the Rivers Duero and Minho, and in Latin, *Interamnenfis*, has the latter of these Rivers on the North, to divide it from Galizia: and the first on the South, to part it from the Province of Beira: On the West of it is the Ocean, and on the East, a ridge of Mountains severs it from the other Province of Trasos Montes. It is almost Square, none of its sides being much above or under 18 Leagues, and tho' so small, in Fertility exceeds the rest of Portugal; yet is for the most part Mountainous, but those Mountains are the best Grazing Land in the Kingdom, and yet indifferent, compar'd with other Countries. The Plains are full of Vines and Trees of several sorts, and generally pretty well Water'd. In this Province is the Archbishoprick of Braga, the Bishoprick of Porto, the Collegiate Churches of Guimaraens, Barcelos, and Cedofeita; the Dukedoms of Barcelos and Caminha; the Earldoms of Celorico de Basto, and Villa Nova da Cerveira; the Viscountship of Lima, 130 Monasteries and Abbies, and 1500 Parish-Churches, Chappels, and Oratories, 6 Seaport Towns, Caminha, Viana, Espofende, Villa de Conde, Leza and Porto. The most remarkable Places, are

The Cities of  
Braga and  
Porto.

The Towns of  
Guimaraens.  
Viana.  
Caminha.

{ Valenza.  
Monza.  
Barcelos.  
Ponte de Lima.  
Villa de Conde.  
Amarante.

BRAGA, a City and Archbishoprick, is seated on the Southside of the River Cavado, in about 41 Degrees and a half of North Latitude. The Buildings are ancient, but handsom in that way, and strong, being made of a very durable sort of Stone found hereabouts; the Walls Re-built by King Ferdinand in the Year 1375. on the Foundation laid by King Dennis. The Cathedral is large and strong, and the Archbishop's Palace an old Pile of Building; the number of the Inhabitants may be about 3000 Families, in 5 Parishes, with 3 Monasteries of Religious Men, 3 of Nuns, a noble Hospital, a College, and a House of Misericordia, which is a Charitable Foundation, therefore call'd the House of Mercy, for relieving of Persons well Born, but fallen into Want, which is done with wonderful Privacy, Marrying of young Maidens, and putting out Boys to Employments, which is here declar'd once for all. About the Founder of the City Authors vary and run into Fables; all we know is, that the Romans enlarg'd what they found and made it a Court of Judicature, and Augustus Caesar, a Roman Colony, by the name of Augusta Bracara. Under the Suevians it was the Court of their Kings. The Moors took it in 716. King Alonso III. new Peopl'd it in 904. To pass by Conjectures and Follies; the first Archbishop we find there, was in the Year 1067. whose Revenue is now 40000 Cruzado's, amounting to about 6000 Pounds Sterling, and under him 13 dignify'd Clergy-men, a considerable number of Canons and Petty-Canons, and 1800 Parishes. Distant 60 Leagues from Lisbon to the North.

Z z

Porto,



*Porto*, a City, Bishoprick and Seaport, well known and much frequented, on the North-side of the River *Duero*, about a League from the Sea, pleasantly seated on uneven rocky Ground, the River washing the Walls, which were built by *Don Gonzalo Pereira*, Archbishop of *Braga*; the Streets are generally narrow, but well pav'd; the natural Rock in some Places, making up part of the Pavement, and even of the Walls of Houses; the Buildings Ancient, but Graceful, all of Stone, and the Churches rich and magnificent. The Inhabitants amount to about 4000 Families, in 5 Parishes, with 9 Monasteries of Friars, 4 of Nuns, 8 Chappels, 4 Hospitals, and a House of Mercy. King *Alonso III.* of *Castile* recover'd it from the *Mosrs*, in the Year 905, after which it was again raz'd by them, continuing so, till rebuilt 932, by a Fleet of *Gascons*. The Bishop's Revenue is 15000 *Crusado's*, about 2000 Pounds Sterling, and under him are 8 dignify'd Clergymen, 12 Canons, and 600 Parishes. It stands in 41 Deg. 10 Min. Lat. 40 Leagues North from *Lisbon*. The Harbour is safe against all Winds, but when the Floods come down, no Anchors will hold the Ships, but they are forc'd to make them fast all along the Walls, one by another, to avoid the Fury of the Water. At the Entrance to it is a dangerous Bar, and on the Shoar a Castle call'd *S. John's*. Opposite to the City over the River, is a little Town call'd *Gaya*.

*Guimaraens*, is a Town 3 Leagues from *Braga*, seated on a Hill, Wall'd by King *Denis*, has a good old Castle, an ancient Palace, where some of the first Kings of *Portugal* Resided, and other handson Structures, about 1000 Inhabitants, 4 Parishes, one of them Collegiate, 2 Monasteries of Friars, one of Nuns, a House of Mercy, and an Hospital, and a considerable Trade of Linnen Cloth and fine Thread.

*Viana de Fez de Lima*, so call'd, because it is at the Mouth of the River *Lima*, six Leagues from *Braga*, with strong Walls, a Castle, the Buildings handson, 1500 Inhabitants, one (Collegiate) Parish, 3 Monasteries of Friars, one of Nuns, a House of

Mercy, an Hospital, and is become a Place of good Trade, since the great consumption of *Portuguese Wines* in *England*, this Country producing a small sort, more like the *French* than others to the Southward. It is one of the pleasantest Towns in *Portugal*, (says a late Traveller) seated along the Sea-side, so that from the Key you may see any Ships along the Coasts: It is well Pav'd, the Streets upon a level, with very good Buildings. The Castle stands on the Sea-side, and commands the Harbour, and this War-time has always a very good Garison in it. The King has newly built a Magazine, wherein are said to be kept Arms for 20000 Men.

*Caminha*, another small Town. of 500 Inhabitants, one Parish, one Monastery, a House of Mercy, and an Hospital, standing at the mouth of the River *Minho*, which runs by its Walls.

*Valenza de Minho*, is 4 Leagues above the last, on the same River, and Wall'd, yet has not above 250 Inhabitants, one Collegiate Parish, one Monastery of Nuns, and one of Friars, near it.

*Monza*, two Leagues above the last on the same River, double Wall'd with a Castle, 400 Inhabitants, one Parish one Monastery of Jesuits, and 2 of Nuns.

*Ponte de Lima*, about 60 Leagues North from *Lisbon*, on the River *Lima*, over which it has a Bridge, and thence takes the Name, is Wall'd, and contains 500 Inhabitants, one Parish, one Monastery of Friars an Hospital, and a House of Mercy.

*Barcelos*, a Town of 400 Inhabitants, one Collegiate Parish, a House of Mercy, and an Hospital, is Wall'd, and stands on the River *Cavado*, in the Territory of *Viana*, the first Earldom in *Portugal*, now lost in the House of *Braganza*.

*Villa de Conde*, stands on the Sea-coast, at the Mouth of the River *Ave*, with an old Castle, 500 Inhabitants, one Parish, one Monastery of Friars, and one of Nuns.

*Amarante*, 55 Leagues from *Lisbon*, on the River *Tamaga*, the Rivulet *Locia* running through the middle of it, with about 500 Inhabitants, one Parish, one Monastery of Friars, and an Hospital, and has a Linnen Manufacture.

## C H A P. II.

### The Province call'd TRAS-OS-MONTES.

OR beyond the Mountains, in Latin, *Transmontana*, is enclos'd like the last, by the same River *Duero*, on the South, to part it from *Beira*; by the aforesaid Mountains on the West, dividing it from *Entre Minho e Douro*; on the North it borders on *Galicia*, and Eastward, on the Kingdom of *Leon*. Very few Rivers water this Province, which are the *Tuelo*, falling into the *Taage*, the *Pinhao*, *Sabor*, and *Carcedo*, all three losing their Names in the *Duero*. The Land is dry, uncouth Mountains, and Barren, yielding little or no Wheat at all, some Rye, but plenty of Wine. In length it is 26 Leagues, in Breadth 17. There are some few Gentry, but all the People are Rude and Clownish, and speak a barbarous sorry Language. As for Churches, there are not many, but the few well enough Endow'd. There is one Bishoprick of *Miranda*, the Great Dukedom of *Braganza*, now in the Crown; the

Marquisate of *Villa-Real*, and the Earldoms of *Vimiofo*, and *Villa-Flor*. The remarkable Places, are

The Cities of	}	<i>Villa-Real.</i>
<i>Braganza</i> and		<i>Murza.</i>
<i>Miranda.</i>		<i>Monforte.</i>
The Towns of	}	<i>Villa-Flor.</i>
<i>Chaves.</i>		<i>Freixo.</i>

*BRAGANZA*, the first City in this Province, is Seated in the 42d Deg. of Lat. near 70 Leagues from *Lisbon*, North-East, standing on the farthest Angle of *Portugal*, but 2 Leagues from the Borders of *Leon*, and as near those of *Galicia*, on the Banks of the River *Fervenza*, in a large Plain, is Wall'd, and has an old Castle. The Inhabitants not above 600 Families, 2 Parishes, 2 Monasteries of Friars, 2 of Nuns, one College, a House of Mercy and



and an Hospital. This, or some other Town near it, was standing in the Days of the Romans, and was call'd *Cetabriga*, and *Tuntabriga*, as also *Brabantia*. It was the greatest Dukedom in Portugal, which is now in the Crown, since that Family possess'd it of the Throne.

*Miranda de Douro*, a City and Bishoprick, Seated in 41 Deg. 45 Min. Latitude, above 60 Leagues from *Lisbon* to the North-East, and 7 South of *Braganza* on the North-side of the River *Duero*, on a Rocky Mountain; its Walls are wash'd by a large Brook, and the City is defended by a Castle. It contains but 400 Families, one Parish, a House of Mercy, and an Hospital. King *Denis* of Portugal was the Founder, and built the Walls and Castle; and King *John III.* erected it a Bishoprick, in the Year 1355. To the Cathedral belong 7 Dignities, 7 Canons, and 6 Petty Canons, and the Prelate's Revenue is 10000 Cruzadoes, or about 1400 Pounds.

*Chaves*, a small Town, 2 Leagues from the Borders of *Galicia*, Wall'd, yet has but 300 Inhabitants, one Parish, a Monastery near it a House of Mercy, and an Hospital. The Founder was the Emperor *Flavius Vespasian*, Ann. 78. and from him call'd *Aqua Flavie*, corruptly *Chaves*.

*Villa-Real*, a Town above 50 Leagues North

from *Lisbon*, and 4 from *Lamego*, in 41 Deg. and a half Latitude, betwixt the Rivers *Corgo* and *Ribeira*, Wall'd, and has 3 Towers, call'd *Villa-Vela*, the old Town. The Inhabitants about 800, 2 Parishes, 2 Monasteries of Friars, one of Nuns, an House of Mercy, and an Hospital. The Founder King *Denis*, Ann. 1289. It has been an Earldom, a Marquisate, and a Dukedom, all now Extinct.

*Murça*, has but 200 Inhabitants, one Parish, and one Monastery of Nuns, and is seated in a Plain, near a small Rivulet, 5 Leagues from *Villa-Real*.

*Monforte*, or *Namam*, 5 Leagues North East from *Lisbon*, once a Wall'd Town, now quite Ruin'd, only a Suburb, subsisting of 120 Families in one Parish.

*Villa-Flor*, is Wall'd and contains 400 Families, one Parish, 5 Chappels, a House of Mercy, and an Hospital; seated in a Plain, at the foot of a Mountain. The Founder King *Denis*, Ann. 1286.

*Freixo de Espadacinta*, seated near the River *Duero*, where it parts *Spain* and *Portugal*, on a Hill, at the Foot of a Mountain, contains 400 Inhabitants, whose chief Trade is in fine Webs for Sieves. Founded by King *Denis*, Ann. 1310, who built the Castle.

## C H A P. III.

### The Province of B E I R A.

Extends above 30 Leagues every way, being almost Square, excepting some Points of it, which run into the *Portuguese Estremadura*, and *Alentejo*. On the North, the River *Duero* parts it from the Province *Entre Minho e Douro*; on the West, it has the Ocean, and part of the *Portuguese Estremadura*; on the South, another part of the same Country and the River *Tagus*; and on the East, it borders on the *Spanish Province of Estremadura*, and the Kingdom of *Leon*. The People here, says *Faria*, for the most part are Poor, the Gentry inconsiderable, the Garb and Conversation mean, and the Language scarce intelligible. That Parsimony so much celebrated by the Ancients, to be found among the *Lusitanians*, as having no other Bed at Night, than the Cloaths they wear in the Day, is to be seen in this Province; yet this proceeds not from their Moderation, but from Want, or Laziness, tho' the Land produces all sorts of Grain, yet the Natives are so addicted to Begging, that those who are worth something, ask Alms as much as those that are worth nothing. At certain Times of the Year *Spain* swarms with these People, who having Plow'd and Sow'd their Corn, go abroad a Begging till Harvest-Time; then they, who the Day before with heavy Countenances and doleful Voices ask'd a Charity, return and view their Crops with Pleasure. These are the words of the aforesaid *Portuguese Author*. Here are 4 Cities and Bishopricks, one Dukedom, 3 Marquisates, and 9 Earldoms. For Rivers, those of *Lomba*, *Arda*, *Paiva*, *Tavora*, *Tourens* and *Coa*, fall into the *Duero*; those of *Zezeze*, *Penjal*, *Arauil* and *Elia*, into the *Tagus*; the *Mon-*

*dego* and *Vonga*, after taking in other smaller Streams, run into the Ocean. The most noted Places are,

#### The Cities of

*Coimbra*.  
*Lamego*.  
*Viseo*.  
*Guarda*, and  
*Idanha*.

#### The Towns of

*Aveiro*.  
*Castel-Rodrigo*.  
*Pinhel*.  
*Almeida*.  
*Covillam*.  
*Montemor o Velho*.

*COIMBRA*, a famous City, Bishoprick and University, is seated on the North-side of the River *Mondego*, over which it has a stately Stone-Bridge of 29 Arches; on the Walls are many Towers and Turrets, with 4 Gates to them, the Buildings within Ancient, and among them a Palace, built by King *Emanuel*. The City contains about 5000 Families, 7 Parishes, 5 Monasteries of Religious Men, 4 of Nuns, 16 Colleges, a House of Mercy, and a great Hospital. The University was settled there by King *John III.* in the Year, 1553. and maintains 50 Professors, under whom are sometimes 3000 Students; and their Allowance is 30000 Cruzado's, or 4000 Pounds Sterling. To pass by Fables, this Place was built by *Attaces*, King of the *Alans*, Ann. 417, as a Fortress, in his Wars against *Hermenericus*, the *Suebian King of Galicia*. The *Moors* took it in 716. And King *Ferdinand I.* of *Castile*, recover'd it after a Siege of 7 Months, Ann. 1040. The Bishop of it, is always Earl of *Arganil*, an Honour granted to him by King *Alonso V.* Ann.



1472. And his Revenue, 40000 Crusado's, or 6000 Pounds Sterling. To the Cathedral belong 7 dignify'd Clergy-men, 24 Canons, 6 Petty-Canons, and 14 Chaplains. The chief Convent is that of *St. Cruz*, being all Noble-men, of the Order of *St. Austin*. The Church of it, is a large Structure, richly adorn'd with Gildings and Plate. And in the Repository they shew many Relicks. This City lies in 40 Degrees and a half of Latitude, and about 30 Leagues from *Lisbon* to the North.

*Lamego*, City and Bishoprick, in 41 Degrees Lat. about 40 Leagues from *Lisbon* to the North-East, seated on the River *Balsamao*, not far from the *Duro*, contains about 2000 Inhabitants, 2 Parishes, 2 Monasteries of Friars, one of Nuns, and a House of Mercy, and a great Hospital. Earl *Henry*, Father to the first King of *Portugal*, recover'd this City from the *Mahometans*, and made it a Bishoprick worth 15000 Crusado's, or 2500 Pounds to its Prelate, under whom are 7 dignify'd Clergy-men, 10 Canons, and 6 Petty-canons. Here King *Alonso I.* of *Portugal*, held the *Cortes*, or Parliament, in which the first Laws of the Kingdom were Enacted.

*Viseo*, City, is seated in a pleasant Plain, in 40 Deg. 45 Min. Lat. 40 Leagues from *Lisbon*, and contains about 1000 Inhabitants, 3 Parishes, one Monastery of Friars, one of Nuns, a House of Mercy, and an Hospital. The *Romans* call'd this *Vicus Aquarius*; and King *Ferdinand I.* of *Castile*, recover'd it from the *Moors*, *Ann.* 1038. It is a Bishoprick. The Prelate's Revenue 16000 Crusado's, or 2500 Pounds; the Cathedral serv'd by 7 Dignitaries, 18 Canons, and 11 Petty-Canons.

*Guarda*, another City and Bishoprick, in 41 Degrees and a half of Latitude, about 40 Leagues North-East from *Lisbon*, seated on a Rocky Hill difficult of Access, has a Castle, Walls, with several Towers on them, 6 Gates, and good old Buildings. The Inhabitants about 1000 Families, 5 Parishes, one Monastery of Friars, one of Nuns, a House of Mercy, and an Hospital. King *Sancho I.* of *Portugal*, was the Founder, *Ann.* 1199, calling it *Guarda*, as being a Guard, or Frontier against *Lecn*, and Translated to it the Episcopal See of *Idanha*, and yet the Bishops are call'd *Egitanen-ses*; their Revenue, 22000 Crusado's, near 3000 Pounds. The Cathedral serv'd by 5 Dignitaries, and 25 Canons and Petty-Canons.

*Idanha a Velha*, a ruin'd Place, tho' ancient City, so far Decay'd, that it retains not above 60 Inhabitants, 40 Leagues North-East from *Lisbon*, formerly call'd *Igeditania*, and is still an Earldom.

*Aveiro*, is a Market-Town in 40 Deg. 40 Min.

Lat. 39 Leagues North from *Lisbon*, and 9 from *Coimbra*, seated in a Plain upon a Bay, at the Mouth of a Creek, which divides it into two Parts, join'd by a stately Bridge, forming a Haven, and making great quantities of Salt which serves great part of the Kingdom, and is much of it Exported. The Town is Wall'd, has 9 Gates, 2000 Inhabitants, 4 Parishes, 3 Monasteries of Friars, one of Nuns, an Hospital, and a House of Mercy. It is the first Dukedom of *Portugal*, since that of *Braganza* has been in the Crown, and the Dukes of it call themselves *de Alencastre*, as being descended by a Female, from the House of *Lancaster*.

*Castel-Rodrigo*, a Town next the Frontiers of the Kingdom of *Leon*, seated on a high Hill, adorn'd with a Noble Palace of its Marquesses, whose Family continuing in *Spain* when *Portugal* Revolted, lost it. The River *Agueda* runs by the Town, which contains not above 250 Inhabitants, one Parish, and one Monastery.

*Pinhel*, 2 Leagues from *Castel-Rodrigo*, and 3 from *A'mayda*, seated on a Hill, wall'd, with 7 Towers, 6 Gates, a Castle, and 500 Inhabitants, 6 Parishes, a Monastery of Nuns, an Hospital, and a House of Mercy.

*Almeida*, 2 Leagues from the Frontiers of *Leon*, opposite to *Ciudad-Rodrigo*, standing on an Eminence, near the River *Cea*, from which the Territory is call'd *Riba de Coa*, has a good Castle 300 Inhabitants, one Parish, one Monastery, a House of Mercy, and an Hospital, and is Wall'd. The *Moors* Founded it by the name of *Talmaida*, signifying a Table, from the flatness of the Ground it stood on; but King *Denis* remov'd it to the present Place.

*Covilhao*, a good Town, about 35 Leagues from *Lisbon*, North East, and 6 from *Guarda*, South-West; seated near the River *Zezere*, and containing 1200 Inhabitants, 13 Parishes, 2 Monasteries of Friars, a House of Mercy, and an Hospital. The Founder, King *Sancho I.* 1186.

*Monte-mor o Velho*, 27 Leagues from *Lisbon* to the North, and 5 from *Coimbra* South-West; seated on a rising Ground, near the River *Mondego*, has a strong Castle, about 1000 Inhabitants, 5 Parishes, 1 Monastery of Friars, 1 of Nuns, a House of Mercy, and a great Hospital.

Besides these, *Penamacor*, 9 Leagues from *Guarda*, has 800 Inhabitants.

*Idanha a Nova*, 35 Leagues East from *Lisbon*; about the same number of Families; and all the rest smaller, and so inconsiderable, as not to deserve particular Mention.

## C H A P. IV.

### The Province of ESTRE MADURA, in Portugal.

**I**S a long narrow slip of Land reaching from the Mouth of the River *Mondego* in the North, below the Town of *Setuval* in the South, about 35 Leagues in length, and scarce 16 in breadth where largest. On the North it is bounded by the afore-said River *Mondego*, which parts it from *Beira*; on the West it has the Ocean, on the South the Pro-

vince of *Alentejo*, and the same Province and *Beira* on the East. The Land is most of it the best in *Portugal*, the People above Want, the Gentry considerable, the Commonality live well, and the meanest Sort are not Beggarly, so that all subsist of themselves. In this Province there are 2 Cities, 1 Archbishoprick, 1 Bishoprick, 1 Dukedom, 1 Marquisate



late, 7 Earldoms, and the Grand Priory of Crato of the Knights of Malta. Places of most Note are,

The Cities of	{	Alenquer.
Lisbon and	{	Torres Vedras.
Leiria.	{	Palmela.
The Towns of	{	Benavente.
Setubal.	{	Ourem.
Santarem.	{	Lezimbra.
Sintra.	{	Villa-Franca.
Alcazar do Sal.	{	Allandra.
Tomar.	{	Pedrogao.
Abrantes.	{	Soure.
Torres Novas.	{	

LISBON, the Capital City of Portugal, has employ'd the Portuguese Authors to find its fabulous Founders, and do fix for the most part upon *Ulysses* for the Man, from the resemblance of his Name with *Olyssippo*, *Olyssippo* and *Ulyssippo*, for so variously it is written. Yet it does not appear to have been a Place of any Note, till many Years after the erecting of the Portuguese Monarchy; for during the Roman Government, *Emerita*, now *Merida*, in Spain, was the Metropolis of *Lusitania*, and besides that *Pax Julia*, or *Beja*; *Scalabis*, or *Santarem*; *Liberalitas Julia*, or *Evora*; *Augusta Bracara*, or *Braga*; and several others were more noted than *Lisbon*. The *Suevian* Kings kept their Court at *Porto*; the *Gothish* Monarchs never resided in Portugal, and under the *Moors* this Place was inferior to many others. Whatsoever it was formerly, it is now the Residence of the Kings, the great Seat of all Courts of Justice, an Archbishoprick, an University, and the best Sea-Port in the Kingdom. Seated in a Hot Climate, viz. in 38 Degrees and a half Latitude, but refresh'd by the Breezes from the Sea, and standing on the River *Tagus*, which conveys up to it the Wealth of the East and West-Indies, and the Commodities of all European Nations, the Harbour lying most conveniently for Trade upon the Western Ocean, and being it self of such wonderful Capaciousness as might contain 10000 Ships, all riding in Safety without encumbering one another; having Water for the greatest Vessels often to Anchor before the Windows of the King's Palace. To defend this Haven there are 2 Forts at the Mouth of the River, the first call'd *S. Julian's* on the Shore, large, regular and beautiful; and opposite to it in the midst of the Water, on a Shelf, is another round Fort, all of Wood, call'd *Torre do Bougio*. Nature has provided another Defence, which is the Bar, very Dangerous to pass without Pilots of the Place; within these is a vast Bay, till drawing nearer the City, the River contracts it self, and on the straightest part of it is another Fort, call'd *Torre de Belen*, or the Tower of *Bethlehem*, standing far in the Water, at the Flood, but to be approach'd on the Sand at the Ebb. The Name is given it from a good Village opposite to it on the North Shoar, which first receiv'd it from a magnificent Monastery of *S. Jerome*, with a most stately Church, Dedicated to the Infant *Jesus*. Besides which there is here an Hospital for the maintenance of decay'd Gentlemen, who have serv'd their Prince, and have no Fortune to support them. Under the afore-said Fort runs the Channel of the River, which again opens till it is a League over, with Water enough every where for the greatest Ships. The City it self stands upon seven Hills, very steep in many Places, and the Streets generally narrow,

which makes Horse-Litters more in use than Coaches. Those Streets which have a Descent are wash'd clean by the violent Rains, the others which lye level, are intolerably full of Filth, of all sorts, thrown out of the Houses, and seldom carry'd away. In bigness it is nothing to compare to *London* or *Paris*, but exceeds any other City in either Country. The Form is irregular, lying in Length along the River, and no where so broad as long, but the greatest Breadth is about the middle, whence it falls off narrowing towards both Ends. The Houses are for the most part old, nothing beautiful, and using Lattice Windows, except some few of Glass of later Years. But the Houses of the Nobility and other Persons of Quality are fair Structures, all of Stone, and standing on much Ground. The Monasteries and Churches are a great Ornament, tho' the latter of Modern Structure, come not near the Ancient for Beauty, but are richly adorn'd within. The Cathedral is a vast Pile, but heavy and Gothick, and stands on one of the seven Hill above mention'd. It would require a particular Treatise to describe all the Monasteries and Churches, for here are no less than 40 Parishes, 25 Monasteries of Friers, 18 of Nuns, and several Hospitals. The Noble House of Mercy constantly breeds up 60 Boys, and gives Portions to 114 Maidens, besides other incredible Sums of Money, Charitably expended in relieving Prisoners, and decay'd Persons, who cannot beg. The great Hospital receives all Persons, of what Degree, Nation, or Religion soever, without exception, and can refuse none upon any Pretence; nor is it only the Sick it entertains, but Naturals, Lunatics and foundling Children. The King's Palace by the River side, yields a good Prospect, for as much as there is of it, being only one Side of a Square, intended to be built by King *Philip II.* of Spain, and before it is a large open Square, where the Merchants use to meet. But the best Square in the City is before the great Hospital above mention'd, and is call'd *Roxio*. Near to the Square of the Palace is the great Market of the City, being the only one that can deserve the Name of a Market, and not far from it the Shambels, the Slaughtering Place being at the End of the City, where all Butchers Meat is very slovenly kill'd and dress'd. Besides the Palace abovesaid, there is near the River a large Square House, built by the famous *Marquess de Castel Rodrigo*, and upon that Family's adhering to the Crown of Spain, it was confiscated to the King. The Castle of *Lisbon* stands upon one of the Highest Hills, and is an ancient Moorish Fabrick, in which is nothing worth taking notice of. The Archbishop's Revenue is 40000 Cruzadoes, about 6000 Pounds, and under him 8 Dignify'd Clergy-Men, 20 Canons and 4 Petty-Canons.

*Leiria*, is a City and Bishoprick, about 20 Leagues from *Lisbon* to the North, in 39 Degrees 43 Minutes Latitude, on the Banks of the River *Lis*, which falls into the *Lena*. The City is Wall'd, and on the Walls are strong Towers, the Inhabitants about 2000, 3 Parishes, 2 Monasteries of Friers, one of Nuns and a House of Mercy. King *John III.* made it a City and Bishoprick, which is worth to the Prelate 18000 Cruzado's, or 2400 Pounds a Year, and to the Cathedral belong 5 Dignify'd Clergy-Men, 10 Canons, 10 Petty-Canons, 5 Quarter Canons, and 8 benefic'd Priests.

*Setubal*, is 6 Leagues South from *Lisbon*, beyond the *Tagus*, but in the same Province, and 38 De-

great



groes 20 Minutes Latitude, seated on a Bay close to the Ocean, where the River *Zadon* disburdens itself, and is noted to by most Northern Nations, for the vast quantity of Salt made there every Year. The Town is Wall'd, with many Towers, 13 Gates and some Out-works, which make it strong to the East. Two Forts or Castles defend it, the one Ancient, the other Modern; this last built by King Philip II. of Spain, strong and beautiful. The Inhabitants about 3000, 2 Parishes, 3 Monasteries of Friars, 2 of Nuns, 5 Chappels, a House of Mercy, 2 Hospitals, 2 Markets and 2 Conduits, to which the Water is brought by an ancient noble Aqueduct, from a great distance, on Arches. Our Seamen barbarously call this Place *Saintubes*, the ancient Name was *Cestriga*.

*Santarem* is in 39 Degrees 20 Minutes Latitude, 14 Leagues from *Lisbon* to the North-East, seated on a high Hill, close to the River *Tagus*. The *Moors* for its great Height call'd it *Albasa*, that is, Dreadful, and it was with them a common Precipice for Malefactors. On the South Side of it is a deep Valley, with a steep winding Ascent to the Town, call'd *Alsanse*, that is, Snake. On the North Side are inaccessible high Rocks; on the West, pleasant Gardens and fruitful Fields producing Corn and Oyl. The Walls of it were built by the *Romans*, who call'd it *Scalabis* and *Julium Prædium*. The Buildings are old, the Inhabitants about 3000, 13 Parishes, one of them Collegiate, 7 Monasteries of Friars, 2 of Nuns, several Chappels, a House of Mercy, and 2 Hospitals. The name of *Santarem*, is a corruption of *Santa Irene*, a Saint honour'd there.

*Sintra* stands 5 Leagues West from *Lisbon*, near the Sea, at the Foot of the Mountains, and by the Cape of the same Name, being the most delightful Spot in *Portugal*, and the Territory fruitful in Corn and Wine, with a Quarry of Curious black and white Stone. The Inhabitants of the Town are about 1000, 6 Parishes, 3 Monasteries of Friars, one of them of *Jeronimites*, all entirely, with its Church, hew'd out of the Rock, and Earth brought from other places to make the Garden, the whole the work of King *Emanuel*, who also built the Royal Palace in the same Place, where the Kings of *Portugal* us'd to pass the Heat of the Summer, and of latter Years the unfortunate King *Alphonso* liv'd and dy'd in miserable Confinement. Formerly there was a Temple of the Moon, on the Rock then call'd *Premontorium Lune*, now *Roca de Sintra*, and by our Seamen, the Rock of *Lisbon*, and because the Moon was call'd *Cynthia*, thence we may suppose by Corruption, came the Name of *Sintra*, or *Cintra*.

*Alcazar do Sal*, is beyond the River *Tagus*, about 10 Leagues from *Lisbon* to the South-East, on the River *Zadon*, so call'd from much Salt made about it. The barren Territory affords little but Rushes, whereof at *Lisbon* they make those fine Mats, we see frequently in *England*. The Town is Wall'd and has an old Castle on a steep Rock, about 400 Inhabitants, 2 Parishes, 2 Monasteries of Friars, one of Nuns, a House of Mercy and an Hospital. The *Romans* built and call'd it *Salacia*, from the Abundance of Salt.

*Tomar* is 7 Leagues from *Santarem*, and 21 from *Lisbon* to the North East, pleasantly seated, in a

Plain, on the River *Nivas*, being the chief Seat of the Military Order of *Christ*, the Inhabitants about 800, 2 Parishes, both Collegiate, 3 Monasteries of Friars, one of Nuns, a House of Mercy and an Hospital. The name is a Corruption of *Thomas* taken from *S. Thomas of Canterbury*.

*Abrantes*, is 20 Leagues from *Lisbon* North East, seated on an Eminency by the River *Tagus*, and over it an old Castle, strong by Situation. The Inhabitants about 2000, 4 Parishes, 4 Monasteries of Friars and Nuns, some Chappels, a House of Mercy and an Hospital. The Name in the Days of the Emperor *Augustus* is supposed to have been *Tubili*. King *Philip II.* of Spain made it a Dukedom, and gave the Title to the eldest Son of the Duke of *Aveyro*.

*Torres Novas*, is 19 Leagues North-East from *Lisbon*, and 5 from *Santarem*, seated in a Plain, through which the River *Almonda* runs, about a League from the *Tagus*, is Wall'd, has a Castle with 9 Towers, whence call'd *Torres Novas*, that is, new Towers, instead of *Torres Nove*, nine Towers, says *Silva*; but I rather believe it is call'd *Torres Novas*, new Towers, to distinguish it from *Torres Vedas*, or old Towers, another Town so call'd. It contains 1000 Inhabitants, 4 Parishes, 2 Monasteries of Friars, 1 of Nuns, a House of Retirement for Penitent Women, a House of Mercy, and an Hospital.

*Palmela* contains 800 Inhabitants, 2 Parishes, 2 Monasteries, 6 Chappels, a House of Mercy, and an Hospital, and is betwixt *Lisbon* and *Setuval*, on a Hill, the Top whereof is taken up by a Rock; the Town Wall'd, with many Towers about it. The Name *Palmela* or little Palm-Tree, taken from those Trees, with the Diminutive, to distinguish it from *Palma* in *Andaluzia*.

*Benavente*, 9 Leagues from *Lisbon* to the North-East, but on the South Side of *Tagus*, has 400 Inhabitants, and but one Parish, which is a Priory, belonging to the Knights of *Avis*.

*Ourem*, has as many Inhabitants as the last, in one Collegiate Parish, and stands 20 Leagues from *Lisbon* to the Northward.

*Zeçimbra* is above 5 Leagues from *Lisbon*, upon the Shoar of the Ocean, beyond *Tagus*, and has 900 Inhabitants, in 2 Parishes.

*Villa Franca*, 4 or 5 Leagues from *Lisbon*, up the River, seated in a large Plain, with 400 Inhabitants, in one Parish, said to be founded by the *English*, who came to assist King *Alonso* the first in his Wars, and to have been by them call'd *Cornwal*, afterwards chang'd to *Villa Franca*, on Account of its many Franchises.

*Allandra*, 5 Leagues from *Lisbon* up the River, and on its Banks, with 600 Families, and one Parish and one Monastery.

*Pedrogao*, 20 Leagues North-East from *Lisbon*, on the flat Top of a Hill, encompass'd by the Rivers *Zeçere* and *Pera*, with 400 Inhabitants and one Parish.

*Score*, 26 Leagues from *Lisbon* to the North, and 6 from *Leiria*, seated on a Brook, not far from the Ocean, with an old Castle and Palace; about 800 Inhabitants, 1 Parish, 1 Monastery of Friars, and 1 of Nuns.



## C H A P. V.

*The Province of ALEMTEJO.*

SO call'd, because in regard to *Lisbon*, it lies beyond *Tagus*, as also sometimes *Entre Tejo e Guadiana*, as lying for the most part betwixt those two Rivers, Borders Northward on a Piece of the Portuguese *Estremadura*, and the River *Tagus*; Eastward on the Spanish Provinces of *Estremadura* and *Andaluzia*; to the South it has the little Kingdom of *Algarve*, and on the West the Ocean and Part of the Portuguese Province of *Estremadura*. The greatest Length of it is above 40 Leagues, and the greatest Breadth, upwards of 30, but much less in other Places. The People, says *Faria*, are the richest and best Bred in *Portugal*, as Inhabiting the best Part of that Country: They are generally Farmers; and as they gather a little Wealth, send their Sons to the University, where they improve themselves so as to fill all the Courts in the Kingdom; thus of Farmers, by their Education, becoming Ministers of State. The principal Rivers in this Province, are the *Guadiana*, *Enxarama*, which loses itself in the *Adas*, and this pays Tribute to the Sea at *Serual*, the *Diwor*, and the *Teva*, which fall into the *Tagus*. Here are 4 Cities, 1 Archbishoprick, 2 Bishopricks, 1 Marquisate, 4 Earldoms and 1 Barony. The Places of most Note are,

The Cities of	{	<i>Oliveira</i> .
<i>Ebora</i> .	{	<i>Moura</i> .
<i>Portalegre</i> .	{	<i>Serpa</i> .
<i>Elvas</i> and	{	<i>Campo Mayor</i> .
<i>Beja</i> .	{	<i>Viana</i> .
The Towns of	{	<i>Monte Mor o Novo</i> .
<i>Villa Vixosa</i> .	{	<i>Portel</i> .
<i>Estremoz</i> .	{	<i>Monforte</i> .
<i>Avis</i> .	{	<i>Castelo de Vide</i> .

*Ebora* City is seated in the midst of this Province, as Head of it, on a Hill, encompass'd with Mountains, and has a strong Wall, adorn'd with many Towers, the Work of King *Ferdinand*, who threw down the old one, Built by *Sertorius*. It has 10 Gates, and is a League in Compass, containing 4000 Inhabitants, divided into 5 Parishes, in which are 9 Monasteries of Religious Men, 7 of Nuns, a House of Mercy, and a good Hospital. Prince *Henry* made it an University in the Year 1559 but does not flourish much as such, *Coimbra* carrying all from it. The Portuguese *Faria* says, it was once memorable for many stately Structures, and being the Seat of the Portuguese Kings; now little remains but the Ruins of what it was. The first Founder is uncertain, but *Sertorius* resided in, and Wall'd it; *Julius Caesar* gave it the Name of *Liberalitas Julia*, and made it a *Municipium*, or Free-Town. It was made a Bishoprick by King *John III.* and afterwards an Archbishoprick; the Prelates Revenue 6000 Cruzados, or 8000 Pounds, and under him 7 Dignify'd Clergy-Men, and a considerable number of Canons and Petty Canons. It is 20 Leagues South-East from *Lisbon*, and was Fortify'd by Monsieur *Mallet*, a French Ingenier, with the addition of 2 detach'd Forts to defend the Eminence.

*Portalegre*, is 30 Leagues East from *Lisbon*, and 3 from *Albuquerque*, the Frontier Town of the Spanish *Estremadura*, seated on the side of a high Mountain. The City is Wall'd, with 8 strong Towers and a good Cattle, 8 Gates, 10 noble Fountains, one of which continually empties itself at 9 Mouths, about 3000 Inhabitants, dealing in the Woollen Manufacture, settled there, but very mean; 5 Parishes, 3 Monasteries of Religious Men, 2 of Nuns, 9 Chappels, a House of Mercy and an Hospital. King *Alonso III.* of *Portugal* built it in the Year 1259. and King *John III.* made it a Bishoprick, worth about 500 Pounds a Year to the Prelate, under whom are 5 Dignify'd Clergy-Men, 6 Canons, and 6 Petty-Canons. It is also an Earldom belonging to the Marquess of *Gouvea*.

*Elvas* is 30 Leagues from *Lisbon* to the Eastward, standing on an Eminency, strong by Nature, 2 Leagues from the Borders of the Spanish *Estremadura*, where the River *Coa* divides it from *Portugal*. It has a double Wall, with many Towers on it, a strong Castle, a pleasant Plain without, the Houses within well Built, about 2500 Inhabitants Trading in the Woollen Manufacture, 4 Parishes, 3 Monasteries of Friers, 2 of Nuns, 13 Chappels, a House of Mercy and 2 Hospitals. The ancient Name was *Helva*. King *Emanuel*, in 1513. made it a City, and King *Sebastian*, An. 1570. a Bishoprick, worth to its Prelate 10000 Cruzados, or 1400 Pounds, and serv'd by 5 Dignitaries, 10 Canons, 2 Petty-Canons, and 12 Benefic'd Clergy-men. In 1658. it was in vain Besieg'd by *Don Lewis de Haro*, the great Favourite of King *Philip IV.* of *Spain*, and in 1667. Fortify'd by Monsieur *Mallet*, a French Ingenier, so that it has 7 whole Bastions, besides several Demi-Bastions, most of them with Counterguards before them, because the Situation being on a Rock, the Ditch is not above 4 or 5 Foot deep. On one side of it is the Fort call'd *S. Lucy*, which serves instead of a Citadel, seated on the highest Ground, being the old Fort, included within 4 handsome Bastions. On another little Eminence, at a small Distance, is another Counterguard, or small Redoubt, so that this City is the strongest Place in *Portugal*. See it in *Mallet's Travaux de Mars*. Near it is a noble Aqueduct 3 Leagues and half long, and of a vast height in some Places where the Ground is low, having, says a late Traveller, for a great way together, no less than 4 Arches Built upon one another.

*Beja*, stands on the flat Top of an Eminence, 20 Leagues South-East from *Lisbon*, and 2 from the River *Guadiana*; in Figure round, has strong Walls, with many Towers on them, an ancient Castle Built by King *Denis*; the Inhabitants about 3000, 4 Parishes, 3 Monasteries of Friers, 3 of Nuns, 7 Chappels, a House of Mercy and an Hospital. King *Emanuel* made it a City, and *Julius Caesar* had formerly honour'd it with the Title of *Pax Julia*, making it a Roman Colony.

*Villa Vixosa* is a good Town, about 30 Leagues from *Lisbon* Eastward, 8 from *Ebora*, and 5 from *Elvas*,



*Elvas*, and has a Noble Palace, built by King *Denis* of *Portugal*, afterwards the Great Seat of the House of *Braganza*, of which the Kings of *Portugal* come. Adjoining to the Palace is a Park three Leagues round. The Inhabitants of the Town are about 2000, 2 Parishes, 5 Monasteries of Friars, 3 of Nuns, a House of Mercy, an Hospital, and 4 magnificent Conduits. King *John IV.* of *Portugal*, caus'd it to be Fortify'd by Monsieur *Mallet*, a French Ingenier, who because the Ground was large, Fortify'd only the upper part of the Town, which commands the rest, and may hold out long after the lower Part is lost.

*Estremoz*, 28 Leagues from *Lisbon*, and 2 from *Villa Vizosa*, seated on a high Hill, on the Top whereof is the Castle, the Town along the Side, encompass'd with double Walls, strengthened and adorn'd with many Towers; and when *Portugal* Revolted from the *Spaniards*, Fortify'd by Monsieur *Mallet*, a French Engenier, with 5 regular Bastions, and the old Castle on the top of the Hill, strengthened, after the Modern manner. Here is made a curious sort of Earthen-Ware, much us'd in *Portugal* for drinking Water, it has a pretty Scent, and they are Ingenious Workmen; but if the Water stands long in any Vessel, it soaks thro'; it is Red, and was once of some Efficacy in *England*. to stand among Coins, now quite out of Fashion. Near the Town is a Spring, gushing out so much Water in Summer, as drives several Mills, and, contrary to all others, dries up in Winter, and also turns Wood into Stone, or rather breeds a Stone Case over the Wood. The Town contains 2000 Inhabitants, 3 Parishes, 3 Monasteries of Friars, 1 of Nuns, a House of Mercy, and an Hospital. There are about the Place, 5 good Bastions, and 3 Demi-Bastions, besides the Fort above mention'd.

*Avis*, 20 Leagues East from *Lisbon*, seated on an Eminence, Wall'd, with an old Castle, 400 Inhabitants, and 1 Parish, is only Remarkable for being the Head Seat of the Knights of the Military Order of the same Name.

*Odivenqa*, is 30 Leagues East, somewhat Southerly from *Lisbon*, seated in a Plain, on the East-side of the River *Guadiana*, next the *Spanish Estremadura*. King *John IV.* upon the Revolt of *Portugal* from *Spain*, caus'd it to be Fortify'd after the Modern manner, by Monsieur *Mallet*, a French Ingenier, who shut up the old Wall within its Works, adding 9

regular Bastions, a Ditch, and Covert-way. The Inhabitants are about 1800, 2 Parishes, one Monastery of Friars, one of Nuns, 9 Chappels, a House of Mercy, and an Hospital.

*Mou-a* is 30 Leagues South-East from *Lisbon*, seated in a Plain, half a League beyond the *Guadiana*, betwixt two Brooks, which fall into the River *Ardita*; the Inhabitants about 2000, 2 Parishes, 2 Monasteries of Friars, 2 of Nuns, an House of Mercy, an Hospital, and a good Fort. It was Taken by the *Spaniards*, in 1707, and Demolish'd by them this present Year, 1708.

*Serpa*, is about 25 Leagues from *Lisbon*, South-East, beyond the River *Guadiana*, towards *Andalusia*, is Wall'd, and has a strong Castle, 1800 Inhabitants, 2 Parishes, 1 Monastery of Friars, a House of Mercy, and an Hospital. Taken as well as the last, by the *Spaniards*, in 1707, and Demolish'd this Year, 1708.

*Campo Mayer*, 30 Leagues East from *Lisbon*, on the Borders of the *Spanish Estremadura*, seated on the flat top of a Hill, is Wall'd, and has a Castle, 1200 Inhabitants, 1 Parish, 1 Monastery of Friars, 6 Chappels, a House of Mercy, and an Hospital.

*Viana*, 20 Leagues from *Lisbon* South-East, and 4 South from *Ebora*, has 600 Inhabitants, one Parish, one Monastery of Friars, and one of Nuns.

*Monte Mor o Novo*, 15 Leagues from *Lisbon*, towards *Elvas*, seated on a rising Ground, with a Castle on the top of it, and the River *Canha* below. Here are made curious Cups and Pitchers for drinking Water, adorn'd with bright white Stones. The Inhabitants near 2000, 4 Parishes, 1 Monastery of Friars, a House of Mercy, and an Hospital.

*Portel*, about 20 Leagues from *Lisbon*, South-East, Seated on an Eminency, with a Castle on the top, is Wall'd, and contains 700 Inhabitants, 2 Parishes, and 2 Monasteries of Friars.

*Monforte*, is 25 Leagues from *Lisbon*, South-East, and 4 from *Villa Vizosa*, is Wall'd, has 4 Gates, a Castle on the Hill, 700 Inhabitants, 3 Parishes, 1 Monastery of Nuns, 6 Chappels, a House of Mercy, and an Hospital.

*Castello de Vide*, is near 30 Leagues East from *Lisbon*, and 2 from *Portalegre*, seated in a bottom betwixt 2 Mountains, and containing 800 Inhabitants; the Parishes I do not find, but 1 Monastery of Friars. Other Places are inconsiderable.

## C H A P. VI.

### The Little Kingdom of A L G A R V E.

BEING the Southermost part of *Portugal*, has the Ocean on the West and South, is parted from *Andalusia* by the River *Guadiana*, on the East, and from the Kingdom of *Portugal*, or Province of *Alemtejo*, by the Mountains, call'd *Serra do Algarve*, or *Calderao*, and *Monchique* on the North; being 27 Leagues in Length where largest, and but 8 in Breadth. It is a Mountainous Country, but abounds in Wine, Figs, Raisins, Oyl and Almonds, which are much inferior to those of *Spain*: It has also plenty of Dates, and the People make many Curiosities of the Palm-Tree Leaves. In it are 3 Cities,

such as they are, 1 Bishoprick, and 3 Earldoms. The principal Places,

The Cities of	}	<i>Loule.</i>
<i>Silves.</i>		<i>Sagres.</i>
<i>Tavira.</i>		<i>Castromarin.</i>
<i>Lagos.</i>		<i>Alejur.</i>
<i>Faro.</i>		<i>Cacela.</i>
The Towns of	}	<i>Villa-Nova de Por-</i>
<i>Albufeira.</i>		<i>rimao.</i>
<i>Albor.</i>		



*SILVES*, keeps the Name of a City, tho' it has not now above 40 Houses, and is 30 Leagues South from *Lisbon*, on a small River not far from the Ocean.

*Tavira*, about 37 Leagues from *Lisbon*, to the South East, 5 from *Faro*, Eastward, and as much Westward, from the Mouth of the River *Guadiana*. seated on the Coast of the Ocean, a small River running through the midst of it, over which is a stately Bridge, and at the Foot of it a Castle, the City is Wall'd, and contains 2000 Inhabitants, 2 Parishes, 4 Monasteries of Friars, one of Nuns, a House of Mercy, and an Hospital.

*Lagos*, is also about 37 Leagues South from *Lisbon*, and 5 East from Cape *St. Vincent*, seated on a large Bay, to the Ocean, where several Fleets have Anchor'd since the late Wars. It is Wall'd, has 8 Gates, an old Castle, call'd *Penhas*, about 2000 Inhabitants, 2 Parishes 2 Monasteries of Friars, one of Nuns, several Chappels, a House of Mercy, and an Hospital.

*Faro*, about the same distance as the last from *Lisbon*, South East, in the mid-way betwixt Cape *S. Vincent*, and the Mouth of *Guadiana*, seated on the Ocean, which there makes a Bay, and has a strong old Castle, 2000 Inhabitants, 2 Parishes, 3 Monasteries of Friars, 1 of Nuns, a House of Mercy, and an Hospital. The Episcopal See was remov'd hither from *Silves*, Ann. 1590. which is worth to the Bishop 5000 *Cruzado's*, or 700 Pounds a Year; and to the Cathedral belong 7 Dignitaries, 12 Canons, and 6 Petty-Canons.

The other Places here are all very inconsiderable, as *Alburey* a on the South-Coast, half way betwixt *Lagos* and *Faro*; *Albor*, in the Territory of *Lagos*, of 350 Inhabitants; *Laule*, the best of them, Wall'd, and of 800 Inhabitants; *Sagres*, *Castromarin*, *Estombar*, *Alejur*, *Cacela*, and *Villa Nova de Portimao*. Of all whch, there is nothing worth observing, nor any more of this little Kingdom of *Algarve*, or of the whole Kingdom of *Portugal*.

The King of *Portugal*, as we have told you, possesses also the large Tract of *Brazil* in *America*, the City of *Goa*, &c. in the *East-Indies*; the Islands of *Cabo Verde*, and the Island of *Madera*, on the Coasts of *Africa*; with several Forts and Towns on the Continent of *Africa*, on every side. All which are described in their proper Places, and therefore need no further mention here.

But the *Azores*, or *Tercera* Islands are seated too far to the North-West to be referr'd to *Africa*; and tho' nearer to *America* than they are to any other Continent, are never reckon'd into that part of the World; and therefore must be esteem'd part of *Europe*, and cannot be spoken of any where more properly than here, as being part of the Dominions of the King of *Portugal*, and seated in the same Latitude with his own Kingdom, although distanc'd from it no less than 16 Degrees, which in that Latitude, is 250 Leagues.

### Of the AZORES, or TERCERA Islands.

These Islands are Seven in number, besides the two small ones of *Flores* and *Corvo*. Viz.

St. Michael.	}	St. George:
St. Mary.		Pico.
Tercera.		Fayal.
Graciosa.		

These lie in a Cluster, between the 37th and 40th Deg. Lat. and between 21 and 26 Deg. Long. West from the *Lizard*. It is reported, that the first Discovery of them was made by a Merchant of *Bruges*, who in a Voyage to *Lisbon*, in the Year 1449, was driven, by stress of Weather, very far to the Westward, and at last arriv'd at these Islands, where he found no Inhabitants. He gave them the Name of the *Flemish Islands*, and return'd to *Lisbon*, where he talk'd of his Discovery, and gave the *Portuguese* such hints of the Situation, that they immediately went and took Possession of them. *Anthony Gonvallo's* Book of the Discoverers of the World, tells us that *Don Henry* who was that Ingenious Prince of *Portugal*, that was so industrious in Discoveries, went himself to the *Azores* in 1449.

Tradition tells us also, that upon the Information this Merchant gave his Countrymen at his return to *Bruges*, they set upon an Expedition thither, and planted a Colony, whose Posterity 'tis said, do still remain in *Fayal*, which was the Island they Occupied.

The Accounts given us by Travellers of these Islands, are thus.

*St. Michael*, is the most East, and *St. Mary* the most South in Situation. The former of 20 Leagues in Circumference, and yields much Wheat. The latter very small, and yields Provisions of most kinds, and Potter's Earth.

*Tercera*, which lies 28 Leagues more to the West, has its Name, as being the third (which *Tercera* signifies) of these Islands, in Situation, altho' the first in Dignity, and therefore communicates its Name in common Dialect, to the whole. It is reckon'd the largest of them, and yet not above 15 Leagues over, but is of Fertile Soil, the very Rocks, which seem bare, producing Vines, whence a good Wine is made, but not comparable to that of *Madera*, or the *Canaries*: The Land yields plenty of Wheat, Oranges, Limons, and most sorts of Fruits; the Pastures feed very large Oxen, and the Country wants nothing necessary for Life, but Oyl and Salt. But the Island is subject to Earthquakes. The Metropolis is *Angra*, where the King's Governor resides; it is seated on the South-Coast, well Built, and hath a strong Castle for its Defence, wherein King *Alphonso* was confin'd Prisoner by his Brother *Peter*, in the Year, 1668. This City is the See of a Bishop, Suffragan to the Archbishop of *Lisbon*. Here is a capacious Harbour for Shipping, whence the Town has its Name, *Angra*, signifying a Station of Ships; and withal it is the only safe Port in all these Islands: It is enclos'd like a Crescent, by two Mountains, which are seen at 14 or 15 Leagues distance at Sea; however it is not safe with all Winds. 'Tis chiefly for the sake of this Port that the *Portuguese* have been always careful of these Islands, and are shy of letting Strangers approach it; for its Situation is very convenient to refresh their Ships in the *Brazil*, and other long Voyages.

*Graciosa* lies the most Northward, had its Name from its pleasantness, and yields much Fruit.

*St. George* is Mountainous, and yields much Cedar-Wood.

*Il Pico* is so nam'd from the very high Mountain on it, thought by some to be equal to that of *Teneriff*, the Soil of this Island is said to be more Fertile than the rest.



*Fayal*, more Westward, is nam'd from the quantity of Beech-Trees growing on it; it yields Provisions and Fish. The Posterity of the *Flemmings*, as we have said, Inhabit here.

*Flores*, so nam'd from it's plenty of Flowers; and *Corta*, from the multitude of Crows found on it, are small Islands, which the Portuguese took Possession of also, to prevent an Enemy's Planting there. They lie 70 Leagues West from the rest of the *Azores*, and therefore are by some excluded that Class.

The Air of these Islands is in general Clear and Wholsom, but so sharp, as to corrode Iron, and consume Stone; which makes the People build with the finest Flints.

It was of Old, an Opinion of the Seamen, that as soon as you have passed the *Azores* in Sailing from *Europe*, all the Fleas, Lice, and other noisom Vermin, die instantly.

Having thus shewn our Reader all the WEST Part of EUROPE, and led him through every Region in a Natural Travelling Method, We shall in the same Method, proceed to the EAST Parts. And beginning with that nearest to BRITAIN, which is DENMARK, we shall Survey all that Kingdom and NORWAY, then proceed to SWEDEN, and thro' POLAND to MUSCOVY; and having viewed all those Countries, turn down into HUNGARY, and so through TURKEY in *Europe*, pass on to CONSTANTINOPLE. After which, by taking a Turn into the LESSER TARTARY, we shall have given you a Compleat View of all EUROPE.

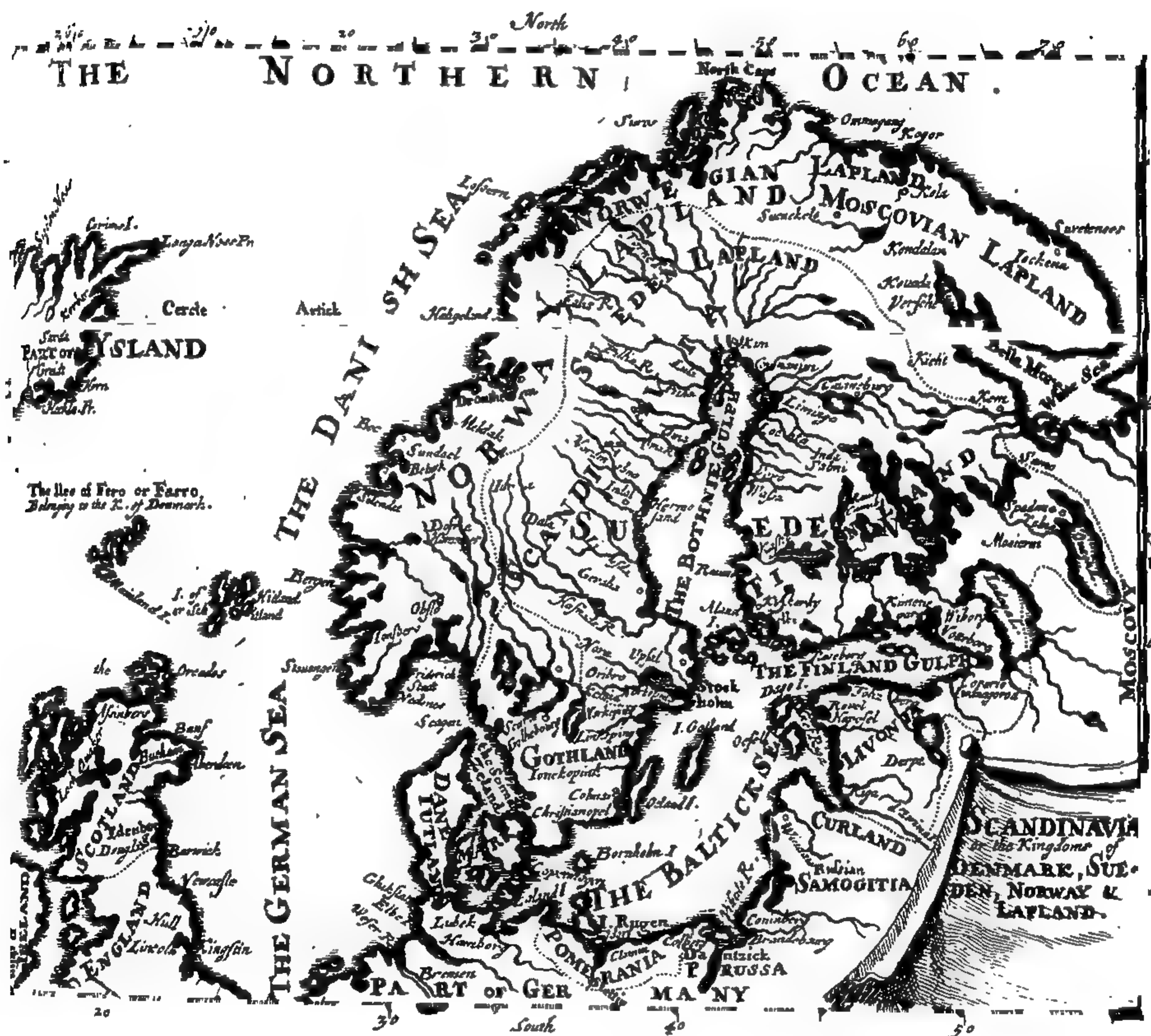
SCANDI-



# SCANDINAVIA,

COMPREHENDING

*Normy, Sweden, and part of Denmark.*



**S**CANDINAVIA, which Pliny falsely calls *Insula incomperta Magnitudinis* an Island, whose Bounds were unknown; and which according to Diodorus and Ptolemy, was anciently call'd *Balehea* and *Pasilea*, (the latter perhaps being but a corruption of the former) comprehended all that vast Tract of Land, in form almost of a *Peninsula*, which is now call'd *Sweden* and *Norway*. It is the utmost Bounds of *Europe*, towards the North, and is Bounded with *Denmark* and *Germany* on the South, with the Ocean on the North and West, and *Russia* on the East, and lies between the 56th and 72d Degree of Latitude, and 25th and 60th of Longitude.

Its Soil according to *Andrew Bureus*, and others, in the South Parts of it, where the elevation of the Pole is not above 60 Degrees, is abundantly Fruitful, and the Air pretty Temperate: But about the middle between the 60th Degree, and the Arctic Circle, the Soil is much encumbered with Woods and Rocks, and otherwise but indifferent, and the Air very Cold. But the most Northern Parts which lie beyond the Arctic Circle, have very little of the Blessings of either the Heavens or the Earth: Only Nature has kindly provided the Inhabitants with plenty of Fish and Venison to supply the wants of Fruit and Corn.

A a a z

How



How it came to be called *Scandinavia* or *Scandia*, and what the Etymologies of these and such like Words are, is hardly worth the Enquiry; and whether the *Scannij* gave name to the Place, or the Place to the People. That being neither instructing nor delightful, we shall rather proceed to give a brief Account of the ancient Inhabitants of that Country, and how they were seated in respect to one another. The *Scannij* or *Scandij* possess'd that part now called *Sebenen*. The *Hilleviones*, whom *Tacitus* calls *Helufij*, and *Amianus Marcellinus*, *Heilij*, inhabited *Haland*; the *Sitones*, whom some have called *Ganipotes*, *Norway*; which was anciently called *Nerigon*. Beyond these lived the *Marchio-Finni*, commonly call'd *Marchfennen*, and the *Scritto-Fenni*. To the East of whom were the *Lappnes* or *Lappij*. To the South lay the *Suiones*, commonly called *Suedi* or *Sweeds*; and next to them the *Gutæ* or *Guti*, whose Country is now called *Gutland* or *Gothland*.

*Scandinavia* seems to have been much more populous of old than it is now, as appears by the frequent Expeditions that have been made from thence into other Parts of the World, which may be attributed partly to the fruitfulness of the People, partly

to the barrenness of the Soil and scarcity of Provisions which forced them to seek better, as well as to the war-like disposition of the People. The great heaps of Stones, which formerly have been gathered together for clearing their Grounds, and now found in the middle of large Woods, are a probable Argument that those Places were once well cultivated.

Some Writers have attempted to give account of the Religion, Policy, Government, and way of Living of these People, but we will neither trouble the Reader with our own Guesses, nor repeat those of others. Only thus much we think, that 'tis more than probable, these People lived more like Brutes than Men, that they were absolute Strangers to all manner of Commerce, without Laws, Government, or Religion, and buried in profound Ignorance. And so we leave them and return to the Country, which, as we have said, comprehended *Norway* and *Sweden*, and a great part of *Denmark*. But *Norway* being subject to the King of *Denmark*, and *Denmark* being the noblest and better part of that Prince's Dominions, we shall give it the first Place, and afterwards Travel thro' *Norway* and *Sweden*.

## DENMARK



# DENMARK, Dania.



**D**ENMARK is one of the most ancient Kingdoms of Europe, and is divided into two Parts by the Baltick Sea, viz. Jutland, and the Islands. The former is that which was Anciently call'd Chersonesus Cimbrica, and is now Divided into North and South Jutland. It is bounded on the North and West with the German Ocean, on the East with the Middlefare Sund, commonly call'd the Lesser Belt, and the Baltick; and on the South with the River Eyder, which divides it from Holstein. The length of it (according to Buno) from Cape Scagen to Holstein, is 212 Miles; the breadth is not alike in all parts of it, but at most does not much exceed 50 Miles. The Islands, which make up the other part of this Kingdom, are Seeland, Falster, Langeland, Funen, Laland, Bornholm, and many others of

lofs Note; as Monå, Fermeren, Alsen, Arroë, Anous, Lesloe, Samosoe, &c. of all which hereafter more particularly. The King of Denmark hath also other Territories, as the Isles of Ferro and Island, &c. The Countries of Oldenburg and Delmenhorst in Germany; Christianburg, on the Coast of Guinea; a Port call'd Tranquebar, in the East-Indies, and St. Thomas's Island in the West-Indies: But we must refer the Reader for a Description of these to the Kingdoms and Countries where they lye.

The Dutchy of **HOLSTEIN**, tho' in strictness it be reckon'd part of Germany, yet having been several times subject to the King of Denmark, we have chosen to place the Description of it here, preceeding to Sleswick, to which it is contiguous, as the Reader



der will find after we have done with the general account of *Denmark*.

The AIR, tho' very cold in *Denmark*, is not so sharp as in some places of *Germany*, that are situate much more South; which may be attributed to the Sea's blowing about it, which (as in *England*) keeps the Air warm in Winter, and by gentle Breezes, makes it cooler in Summer. The SOIL tho' in most Places Barren and cover'd with Mountains and Woods, hath been of late much improv'd by the Inhabitants and yields the Husbandman Corn, Hay, and Pasture, wherein vast Herds of Kine are fed, and an excellent Race of Horses bred. The Rivers of *Denmark* cannot be brag'd of; for according to Mr. *Mölsworth*, there is not one Navigable; the *Elbe* is the best, the *Elbe* being to be reckon'd only a Boundary, and not in this Country. There are indeed some Lakes that afford good quantities of Fish. The Forests are abundantly stock'd with Venison of all Kinds, as Stags, Elks, Wild Boars, Hares, Conies, &c. and Wild-Fowl in great plenty.

The extent of *Denmark* cannot be exactly set down, because of the disjunction of its Parts, and intervention of the Sea. It was much larger before *Schonen*, *Bleeking* and *Holand*, were taken from it by the King of *Sweden*, to whom these were granted for ever, at the Treaty of *Ryswick*, in 1658, which was again confirm'd in 1660. We have already spoken of the extent of *Jutland*, and the Islands will be particularly describ'd hereafter.

The Commodities of *Denmark* for Exportation, are very few; Cattle is the chief, which they vend to the *Netherlands*: But Manufacturies they have none.

The first INHABITANTS of *Denmark*, were the *Cimbri* and *Teutones*, who were also call'd *Dani* and *Codani* from whom (as *Cluverius* says) the Country derives its Name. This Kingdom is thought to have been establish'd long before the Birth of Christ, but for want of good Histories, it cannot be precisely determin'd when it began, how long each of its ancient Kings Reign'd, or what great Acts they did. According to Mr. *Dauisfred*, the *Cimbri* Inhabited *Jutland*, and the *Teutones* the Isles. It is uncertain from whence they came into that Country: But finding it at last (says he) too little for them, resolv'd to seek themselves a more convenient Seat: And about 110 Years before Christ, joyning all in one Body, they march'd into *Germany*, and having travers'd all that Country, divided themselves into two Bodies, and took different courses. The *Teutones* and *Ambrones*, march'd into *Gaul*, and committed great Ravage there. The *Cimbri* march'd against the Roman Army commanded by M. *Junius Cyllanus*, and both in that and several other Engagements, worsted the Romans, till *Marius* happily put a stop to the Career of their Victory, by routing the *Teutones* and *Ambrones* at *Aix* in *Provence*, as he did the *Cimbri* afterwards at *Vercell*.

After the *Cimbri* and *Teutones* had left the North, (as this Author continues) the *Fure*, a People originally of *Germany*, took possession of their Country, and chose for their King, *Dannus*, the Son of *Humblus*, King of *Gerbia*, who Reign'd about the Year of the World, 3009. And after his Family was extinct, *Hater*, the Son of *Attila*, King of *Sweden*, Reign'd, whose Posterity fail'd in the Person of *Haldan* III. But the History of those Times being very Imperfect and Fabulous, we shall trouble the Reader no more with them.

It is evident, (as *Puffendorf* observes) the *Danes*

are not so Warlike now as they were formerly: The Nobility is turn'd Lazy, and the Commoners have follow'd their Example.

The Danish LANGUAGE is no other than a corrupted High Dutch, being manifestly a Dialect of the old Teutonic; and High-Dutch itself is much affected by the Gentry, and ordinarily spoken in *Copenhagen*, and other Trading Cities.

The Popish Religion had been predominant till the time of *Federick* I. Who introduc'd the *Lutheran* Confession into all the Churches of his Dominions, and made a League with the Protestant Princes of *Germany*; whose Son, *Christian* III. continu'd the Work, and establish'd the LUTHERAN, which has ever since been the only RELIGION profess'd here, except one French Calvinist Church at *Copenhagen*, and one Popish Chappel at *Gluckstadt*.

The form of GOVERNMENT in *Denmark*, mightily alter'd from what it was; formerly the State had all the solid and substantial Part of Government and management of Affairs, and left the King nothing but the appearance of Royalty. He could neither make Peace nor War without them, nor lay on Taxes on the Subject, but by their consent. They oblig'd him to Swear at his Coronation, that he would consent to his own Degrading, if without their allowance or consent, he but touch'd the Publick Treasure, which was kept in *Cronenburg*, and reserv'd for the extraordinary Necessities of State: And besides this, they had the disposal of all Offices and vacant Fiefs, which created them many Dependants and Creatures. But the Case is now quite otherwise, for in the Year 1660, the Crown was made Hereditary, and the King Absolute. This remarkable Revolution particularly relat'd by Mr. *Mölsworth*, who tells us, that upon the finishing the War betwixt *Sweden* and *Denmark*, a large Debt remain'd on the Nation, wherefore the States were Assembled to consider of the Ways and Means of paying that, and re-establishing the Publick Affairs: But a difference happen'd between the Nobility and the Commons, the former pretending themselves Privileged from Taxes, and the latter having fought well during the War, and been much exhausted by it; and withal the Nobility having always exercised a sort of despotic Power over their Tenants, and now in this Assembly express'd great Contempt of the Commons, they were so far provok'd, that breaking up from the Assembly, the Commons, together with the Clergy (which compos'd the other Estate) assembled themselves in another Place, and in few Hours resolv'd to make the King a Present of an Absolute Power, and his Family the Succession to the Crown, (that was before this Elective) which they accordingly the next Day put in execution; and tho' at first the Nobility hesitated on the Matter, they also were soon comply'd, and in three Days time the Alteration was compleated: And since that, the King Governs in such manner as he thinks fit, without the contradiction of the Nobility or Senate.

For the administration of Justice, there are 4 Tribunals in *Denmark*. 1. The *Byfoght's* Court, in Cities and Towns. 2. *Heredsfoght's* Court, of the same nature in the Country; from both which lies an Appeal to the 3d *Landstag*, or general Head Court of the Province; but the 4th and Supreme Court, is the *Høj-Recht*, which is held at *Copenhagen*, and compos'd of the Principal Nobility of the Kingdom, and even the King himself sometimes sits in it. There are also a Chancery Court; a Rent-Chamber, &c.



our Exchequer, for judging the Causes relating to the Revenue; and an Admiralty Court for Maritime Affairs. But it is very remarkable, that Law-causes are the soonest decided here of any place whatsoever, none being permitted to lie above a Year and a Month, altho' it pass through all the Courts. The whole Body of the Law is compriz'd in one Volume in *Quinto*, and written so plainly, that every Man understands it, and may plead his own Cause. The Judges are appointed by the King, and their Salaries paid out of the Exchequer, no Fees being paid them by the Clients: And upon unjust proceeding, they forfeit half their Estate, whereof one Moiety to the Injur'd Person. Altho' the word Nobility be used, it is not to be understood as in *England*, for there are not above half a dozen that bear the Title of Counts or Barons; the rest, tho' without that Title, having the same Honours and Privileges. The greatest distinction seems to be the Order of Knighthood of the *Elephant*, which is conferr'd by the King on Persons of eminent Honour and Merit; it is a very ancient Order, but when commenc'd is uncertain; the Knights wear a white Elephant, adorn'd with 5 large Diamonds, in a blue Ribbond cross their Shoulder. They have also another Order call'd the *Dane-broge*. Founded by K. *Waldemar I.* and reviv'd by the late King, in the Year 1672. The Knights wear a White-Cross edg'd with Red, in a Red Ribbond.

The Revenues of the King of *Denmark*, are reckon'd by Mr. *Moldsworth*, to amount to 2 Millions, and 200000 Rix Dollars, each Rix Dollar being somewhat less than an English Crown. They arise by Excises, Customs, Tolls, Poll-Tax, or Fortification-Tax, the Revenues of *Norway*, Crown-Lands, and the Toll, or Ships passing through the *Ore Sundt* and *Belt*. This Duty for Custom on Ships is very considerable; for the Straight of the *Sound*, being the most frequented of any in *Europe*, except that of *Gibraltar*, and all Nations except *Swedes*, paying for every Ship that passes, (the Sum uncertain, because it has been often alter'd, but as near as I can gather, about 100 Rix Dollars per Ship, says Mr. *Moldsworth*.) Great Controversies have at several times arisen between the *Danes* and the *Hollanders*, as also the *Hanse-Towns*, about the exorbitant encrease of this Toll, from time to time, which produc'd several Treaties and Agreements about it: And since the *Swedes* have had the opposite Shoar of *Schonen*, the *Danes* have always been more moderate in their Demands.

At this time, there is a *Tarrif*, or Rate-Book, whereby the Duty upon each particular Goods are ascertain'd; and the Master of the Ship produces a Certificate of his Lading from the Ports he came from.

The ancient History of *Denmark* is so confus'd, that 'tis not possible to draw out an exact Chronology of the Succession of their Kings; wherefore omitting the earlier times, we will give a List of those since Christianity began to be preach'd here, which is as follows

A Chronological Table of the KINGS of *Denmark*.

	Began to Reign.	
<i>Harald</i>	826	<i>Gormo</i>
<i>Eric</i> about 845. or 850.		<i>Harold Blatand</i>
<i>Canutus</i>	902.	<i>Sveno</i> , who Invaded
<i>Erotho</i>	912.	<i>England</i> 975.

Began to Reign.

<i>Canute the Great</i>	1014.	<i>Eric Menved</i>	1286.
He was K. of <i>England</i> ,		<i>Christopher II.</i>	1316.
<i>Denmark</i> and <i>Norway</i> .		Interregnum.	
<i>Hardicanute</i>	1041.	<i>Waldemar III.</i>	1334.
<i>Magnus</i>	1041.	<i>Margaret</i>	1375.
<i>Sveno</i>	1048.	<i>Eric</i> , Son to the Duke of	
<i>Harold</i>	1074.	<i>Pomeran</i>	1412.
<i>St. Canute</i>	1076.	<i>Christopher</i> , Duke of <i>Ba-</i>	
<i>Olaus</i>	1082.	<i>varia</i> .	1439.
<i>Eric</i>	1096.	<i>Christian I.</i> Count of <i>Ol-</i>	
<i>Nicholas</i>	1106.	<i>denburg</i>	1448.
<i>Eric Edmund</i>	1135.	<i>John</i>	1482.
<i>Eric Lamb</i>	1135.	<i>Christian II.</i> De-	
<i>Sveno and Canute</i>	1147.	pos'd.	1514.
<i>Waldemar</i>	1147.	<i>Frederic I.</i>	1523.
<i>Canute</i>	1182.	<i>Christian III.</i>	1533.
<i>Waldemar II.</i>	1203.	<i>Frederick II.</i>	1559.
<i>Eric</i>	1241.	<i>Christian V.</i>	1587.
<i>Abel</i>	1250.	<i>Frederick III.</i>	1648.
<i>Christopher</i>	1252.	<i>Christian V.</i>	1660.
<i>Eric Glipping</i>	1259.	<i>Frederick VI.</i>	1695.

The whole Kingdom of *Denmark* may be divided into the Continent and Islands.

The Continent contains *Jutland*, (which is divided into North *Jutland*, or *Jutland*, properly so called, and South *Jutland*, or the Dutchy of *Sleswick*) and the Dutchy of *Holstein*. The Subdivisions whereof are thus,

HOLSTEIN contains,	I. <i>Holstein</i> , properly so call'd, wherein these Towns are most considerable.	<i>Keil.</i>
		<i>Rensburg.</i>
		<i>Wilster.</i>
		<i>Itzehoe.</i>
	II. <i>Ditmarsh</i> , wherein are these Towns.	<i>Nieumunster.</i>
		<i>Mildorp.</i>
		<i>Heyde.</i>
		<i>Lundun.</i>
	III. <i>Stormar</i> hath these Towns.	<i>Brunsbüttel.</i>
		<i>Hamburg.</i>
		<i>Altena.</i>
		<i>Gluckstadt.</i>
	IV. <i>Wagria</i> , or <i>Wagerland</i> , wherein are,	<i>Krempe.</i>
		<i>Pinnenburg.</i>
		<i>Bredenburg.</i>
		<i>Lubeck.</i>
		<i>Segeberg.</i>
		<i>Oldestoh.</i>
		<i>Ploen.</i>
		<i>Oldenburg.</i>

SLESWICK, or South <i>Jutland</i> , divided into many Bailiages, whereof the particular Names are unnecessary. These are the Cities and Towns of most Note.	<i>Sleswick.</i>
	<i>Gottorp.</i>
	<i>Tonningen.</i>
	<i>Flensburg.</i>
	<i>Appenrade.</i>
	<i>Hadersleben.</i>
	<i>Eckrenford.</i>
	<i>Christianpris.</i>
	<i>Lucksburg.</i>
	<i>Tonderen.</i>
	<i>Hufum.</i>
	<i>Fredericstadt.</i>
	<i>Lohm-Closter.</i>

The



JUTLAND, called North <i>Jutland</i> , divided into 4 Diocesses, viz.	The Diocess of <i>Ripen</i> , wherein are these Towns.	<i>Ripen.</i> <i>Kolding.</i> <i>Weile.</i> <i>Warde.</i> <i>Ringkoping.</i> <i>Lemwick.</i> <i>Holstebro.</i> <i>Aarhus.</i>	<i>Fanen or Fionia.</i>	<i>Odensee.</i> <i>Nuburg.</i> <i>Schwimburg.</i> <i>Fiborg.</i> <i>Affens.</i> <i>Middlefar.</i> <i>Sophia odde.</i> <i>Rutcoping.</i>
	The Diocess of <i>Aarhusen</i> , wherein are,	<i>Horsens.</i> <i>Randers.</i> <i>Ebeltoft.</i> <i>Marieger.</i> <i>Hobro.</i>	<i>Langeland</i> <i>Laland.</i>	<i>Naxkow.</i> <i>Newstadt.</i> <i>Mariebo.</i> <i>Nykoping.</i> <i>Stubkoping.</i>
	The Diocess of <i>Wiburg</i> .	<i>Wiburg.</i> <i>Halkier.</i> <i>Nybe.</i> <i>Aalborg.</i> <i>Tysted.</i>	<i>Falster.</i> <i>Mona.</i> <i>Femerens.</i>	<i>Stekoe.</i> <i>Borg.</i>
	The Diocess of <i>Aalborg</i> .	<i>Nikoping.</i> <i>Seeby.</i> <i>Seagen.</i> <i>Wenslyssel.</i>	<i>Amaga.</i>  <i>Bornholm.</i>	<i>Hollenderdorp.</i> <i>Sund-bye.</i>  <i>Sanilwyck.</i> <i>Rottum.</i> <i>Nexoa.</i> <i>Hammerbusen,</i> <i>&amp;c.</i>

The Islands, with the principal Cities and Towns on them, are these, viz.

#### In the BALTICK.

S E A L A N D or <i>Zeeland</i> , the chief Towns whereon are,	<i>Copenbagen.</i> <i>Roschild.</i> <i>Elfseneur.</i> <i>Fredericksburg</i> <i>Holbeck.</i> <i>Kallenburg.</i> <i>Ringstede.</i> <i>Sor.</i>
	<i>Koge.</i> <i>Prestae.</i> <i>Warienburg.</i> <i>Nestved.</i> <i>Skelskor.</i> <i>Korsor.</i>

#### On the Coast of *Jutland*, in the German Ocean.

<i>Alsen.</i>	<i>Sunderburg.</i> <i>Nordburg.</i>
<i>Sylt.</i>	<i>Syderdorp.</i>
<i>Fora.</i>	<i>Utersen.</i>
<i>Northram.</i>	<i>Kelworm, &amp;c.</i>

#### Territories in GERMANY.

The Counties of	<i>OLDENBURG.</i> and <i>DELMENHORST</i>
-----------------	------------------------------------------------

## CHAP. II. OF HOLSTEIN.

**H**OLSTEIN, *Holsatia*, lies on the South of the *Cimbrica Chersnesus*, or *Peninsula* of *Jutland*. Bounded on the East by the Duchy of *Lawenburg* and the *Baltick* Sea; on the South by the River *Elbe*; on the West by the German Ocean; and on the North by the Duchy of *Sleswick*. Its Extent from North to South, is about 50 Miles, and from East to West, about 100 Miles. The whole Country, including *Ditmarsh*, *Wagerland*, and *Stormar*, was formerly known by the name of *Nordalbingia*, or the Country Northward of the *Elb*: The modern Name of *Holstein*, being derived, (as *Adam Brenensis* says) from *Holes-Geseten*, i. e. seated in a Wood or Forest. It was at first, only a Province of the Great Duchy of *Saxony*, but was bestowed by the Duke, (afterwards Emperor) *Lotharius*, upon *Adolph*, Earl of *Schaumburg* about the Year 1114. and at last chang'd into a Dukedom by the Emperor *Frederick III.* Anno Dom. 1474. in favour of *Christi-*

*an*, the twelfth Earl, who succeeding in the Throne of *Denmark*, convey'd *Holstein* to the Crown, and the *Danish* Kings are on that account reckon'd among the Princes of the Empire, tho' not obliged to repair to the Dyets. Afterwards it became an Appenage, and, with the Title of Duke, was conferr'd on *Adolph*, Brother to *Christian III.* Upon the Decease of this Duke without Issue, the Title was given to *Ulrick*, Brother to King *Christian IV.* From him have in time sprung up divers Families or Houses of *Holstein*, as *Sunderburg*, *Norburg*, *Ansbeck*, *Gottorp*, *Ploen*, and *Oettingen*; of these *Christian Albert*, Duke of *Holstein Gottorp*, is the chief; and claims the same Authority and Privileges as were given to Duke *Adolph* above-mention'd. But the Grandeur of this Prince giving Jealousie to the late King of *Denmark*, or rather being provok'd by his siding against him, during his War with the *Swede*, in 1675. he seiz'd on his Person and Country, obliging him



him to renounce and resign his Right; but the Duke afterwards protesting against these Violences, and the Neighbouring Princes at length intermediating in his favour, especially his Majesty King *William III.* of *Great Britain*, the greater part of his Countries were restored in 1689: But in the Year 1700, a new War was Commenced here, by the King of *Denmark*, by reason of some Forts the Duke of *Holstein* had Built, which the King of *Denmark* would have demolish'd, the success of which War is in every Bodys Memory.

The Country is very Fertile, and being Seated conveniently for Trade, *Holstein* is reckon'd the Richest part of *Denmark*. The Inhabitants are of a strong Constitution and undaunted Courage, and so Sincere and Just, that *Holstein Glaube*, or the Fidelity of a *Holsteiner* has even pass'd into a Proverb.

The Towns in *HOLSTEIN* properly so called, that chiefly deserve to be taken Notice of are these, viz.

*Kiel*, *Chilonum*, a well frequented Mart-Town on the *Baltick-Sea*, so call'd (as some are of Opinion) from its situation in a Neck of Land, between the Mouths of two Rivers, the German word *Kiel* signifying a Wedge. It stands in the Latitude of 54 deg. 15 min. and the Longitude of 30, at the distance of 50 Miles from *Hamburg* to the North, and about 40 from *Lubeck* to the North-West. It has a large commodious Haven, well frequented by Ships from *Germany*, *Sweden*, &c. and a Castle on the Top of a Hill which secures the Town and Haven. The Industry and Traffick of its Inhabitants makes the Town Populous and Wealthy, which together with its being the Place where the Annual Assembly of the States of *Holstein* are held, renders this the Capital of all *Holstein*. It is adorn'd with a Stately Palace and other fair Buildings, particularly a *Franciscan* Monastery Founded by *Adolph* of *Schaumburgh*; but since the Reformation, changed into an Hospital: Here is also a College, and an University Established in the Year 1669. This Town suffer'd much during the War between *Sweden* and *Denmark*.

*Rensburg*, or *Reinolsburg*, stands on the River *Eyder* (by which it is almost encompassed) on the Borders of *Sleswick*, near 20 Miles W. from *Kiel*. It is reckon'd the strongest Town in *Holstein*, having besides its convenient Situation, a strong Castle, and good Fortifications for its Defence. The Castle was Built by *Gerhard II.* Earl of *Holstein*, but the Town owes its Foundation to one *Reinold*, of whom there is no certain Account, except that he was a Prince of the Blood, or at least a very considerable Nobleman. Its Fortifications are lately much improv'd and render'd a la Moderne, very considerable.

*Wilster*, is a neat well Built Town, seated on a River of the same Name, which falls into the *Stoor*; about 30 Miles South-West from *Rensburg*.

*Itzehoe*, stands a few Miles East from *Wilster*, on the Navigable River *Stoor*, which furnishes it with Fish, and Traffick from abroad.

*Nieumunster*, about 20 Miles more Eastward, not far from the Head of the River *Stoor*.

*DITMARSCH*, lyes between *Holstein* Proper, and the German Ocean, having the River *Elbe* for its Southern, and the River *Eyder* for its Northern Bounds. Some write the word *Deutefschmarsh*, or *Teufschmarch*, i. e. *Dutchmarsh*, because the Inhabitants of this Province, are the Offspring of the ancient

German Saxons, and retain'd so much of their ancient Valour as not to be made submit to the Earls of *Holstein*, as their Neighbours the *Sto: marians* and *Wagrians* had done, until the force of all *Denmark* threaten'd them, when the Earldom was United to the Crown; nay, even then, they soon threw off the Yoke, and refused to do Homage to *Christian* Earl of *Oldenburg* and *Holstein*, to whom the Emperor *Frederick III.* had given their Country: But at last they were by *Frederick II.* King of *Denmark*, Anno 1559. assisted by the Duke of *Holstein*, entirely subdued, and the Country shar'd between the King and the Duke. The chief Towns in it are.

*Meldorp*, seated on the German Ocean. 30 Miles South-West from *Rensburg*, and 20 Miles North from *Gluckstadt*, the chief Town of the Province, and a Place of good Trade.

*Heyde*, a large but poor City, seated on the Border of the great Barren Sand of the same Name, which over-spreads the middle of the Country.

*Lunden*, near the Mouth of the *Eyder*, 15 Miles North from *Meldorp*.

*Brunsbittel*, a Sea Town on the *Elbe* Stream, about 12 Miles South from *Meldorp*. And

*Weslingburn*, near the Sea-Shoar, about the midway between *Meldorp* and *Lunden*.

*STORMAR* or *STORMARSH*, according to the signification of its Name is a Morass or Marshy Ground lying along the Banks of the River *Stoor*; it lyes on the South of *Holstein* Proper, and from it is divided by the River *Stoor*; and on the North of the River *Elbe* and *Lunenburgh*. The Soil here, as also in *Ditmarsh* is rich, and in most Places resembles that of *Holland*, not only in its Fertility and manner of improvement, but also in the Dikes and Banks raised by the Inhabitants, to keep out the swelling Ocean, which however often overflows the lower Grounds. The People here make good Advantage by the Traffick they are able to carry on by means of their Neighbourhood to the *Elbe* and the City of *Hamburg*, which stands in the Limits of this Province, but is one of the *Hanse-Towns*, and Governed by its own Magistrates. Having already given a Description of that City, in our Account of *Germany*, we refer the Reader thither, and shall now proceed to speak of the other Places of note in this Province.

*Altena*, a small City, remarkable for the Treaty held there between the King of *Denmark*, and the Duke of *Holstein*; stands within a Mile or two of *Hamburg*.

*Gluckstadt*, is a little City seated on the Bank of the *Elbe*, 30 Miles below *Hamburg*, and 35 Miles South of *Rensburg*. It was first Fortified by *Cristian IV.* King of *Denmark*, about the Year 1620. and afterwards much improv'd by his Successors, altho' its Strength soon after the Building was so considerable as to resist the Siege the Emperor *Ferdinand II.* laid to it, for two Years together. It is at present, a Strong-hold, and of considerable Importance to the *Dane*, for it Commands the Passage of the *Elbe*, and thereby keeps the *Hamburger's* in Awe.

*Krempe* or *Crempen* seated on a small River of the same Name, which a little below falls into the *Stoor*, about 5 or 6 Mile from *Gluckstadt*, is also a Place of great Strength, and reckon'd one of the Keys of *Denmark*. *Christian IV.* likewise Fortify'd this,



and in the Years 1627. and 1628. it was famous for gallantly resisting a Siege and furious Attacks of Count *Wallenstein* for thirteen Months; and tho' at last it was forced to submit to that fortunate General, yet obtain'd very honourable Terms.

*Pinnenberg* stands about 20 miles South-East from *Glücksstadt*, and 10 from *Hamburg*; it is not very considerable, and only mention'd because it gives Name to a County.

*Bradenberg* is one of the fairest little Towns in all *Denmark*, and the ancient Seat of the Noble Family of the *Rantzow's*. It was remarkable for the stout opposition it made to Count *Wallenstein*, who at last took it, and put all the Garrison to the Sword.

**WAGEREN or WAGERLAND.** *Wagria*, lies on the East of *Holstein*, is almost encompassed by the *Baltick* Sea, and the two Rivers, *Trave* on the South, and *Suenin* on the West. Its extent is about 50 miles from North to South, and about 30 from East to West. The Country had its Name from the *Wagii*, a People of *Slavonia*, who Conquered these Parts, and is a Fertile Land well Peopled. In the Limits of this Province stands the Hans-Town *Lubeck*, which being like *Hamburg*, an Independent State, and part of the Empire, we have already described it also in our Account of *Germany*. And therefore pass on to the other Places of Note here.

*Segeberg*, stands on the River *Trave*, about 12 miles from *Lubeck* Westward, and 40 from *Glücksstadt* to the East. According to *Pontanus*, it was anciently call'd *Helberg*, and took its present Name

from the Castle Built by the Emperor *Lotharius* about the Year 1134. upon a high Hill, to Check the *Slavonians*.

*Oldelsloh*, or *Odelfo*, is a fair Town seated also on the *Trave*, about 10 miles West from *Lubeck*, and not above 7 South from *Segeberg*. It was purchased in the Year 1338. by *John* Earl of *Wagria*, for 10000 Marks of Silver, and continued for a long time in a flourishing Condition: But having suffered much in the Wars between *Eric* of *Pomerania*, and the Dukes of *Sleswick* and *Holstein*, it could never yet recover its Beauty and Grandeur.

*Plezen* is a Town of good Antiquity, and has been always valued for its Strength. It stands on a Lake (to which it gives Name,) that almost surrounds it, and has a strong Castle built not long since by *Joachim Ernestus* Duke of *Holstein*. This Place has the Honour to give a Title to one of the Houses of *Holstein*; the Valiant Prince that bears it at present, signaliz'd himself on several Occasions in the late War.

*Oldenburg*, a Place considerable for its ancient State, stands in the North-East Corner of *Wagerland*, upon the River *Bockaw*, about 25 Miles from *Plezen* to the North-East. It gives Name to a small Country, and was anciently the Metropolis of the *Wagri* and *Venedi*, two Warlike Nations, to whom the greatest part of *Mecklenburg* was subject. *Otho* the Great founded a Bishoprick here, which was afterwards Translated to *Lubeck*. It had a great Trade, and was exceeding Populous, but the Port being stop't up by Command of Queen *Margaret*, and a great Fire having destroy'd its Buildings, the Place is now not very considerable.

## C H A P. III.

### Of South-Jutland, or SLESWICK.

**T**HE Duchy of *SLESWICK* is an ancient Dependence on the Kingdom of *Denmark*, which King *Nicolas I.* in the Year 1128. gave to his Nephew *Canute*, Son of *Eric*, surnamed *Ejegod*. *Margaret*, Queen of *Denmark*, confirm'd it to the Earl of *Holstein* and his Successors in the Year 1338. which Earl the Emperor *Lewis* of *Bavaria*, Created Duke of *Sleswick*, whose Posterity failing in the Person of *Adolphus* in the Year 1459. *Christian I.* United it to the Kingdom of *Denmark*, and now it is partly under the Jurisdiction of *Denmark*, and partly Subjected to the Duke of *Holstein Gottorp*; but their Dominions and the Divisions of the Country are so intermix'd, that it is hard to give a distinct Account of them. The Bayliages of *Hadersleben*, *Ripen*, *Flensburg*, the Territory of *Christianspris*, the Isles of *Røm*, *Mandø*, and the West Side of the Isle of *Foer*, are under the King of *Denmark*. The Bayliages of *Gottorp*, *Tondern*, *Appenrade*, *Husum*, *Ejdersted*, and *Lohm* *Closter*, the Isles of *Femeren*, *North-Strand*, *Sylt*, and the East Side of *Foer*, are under the Duke of *Holstein*. And *Arce* and *Alsen* are under the Duke of *Sunderburg*. The Chief Towns in *Sleswick* are these,

*Sleswick* or *Sleswick*, *Slesvicum*, the Metropolis of the whole Province, is seated on a River, or rather a small Arm of the Sea Nam'd *de Siye*, at the

distance of about 20 Miles from *Kiel* to the North-West. Christianity was Established here in the ninth Century, and the great Church was then Founded by King *Erick Barn* assisted by St. *Anschar* Bishop of *Hamburg*; and in 930 King *Harald Blatand* Established an Episcopal See in it; afterwards in 1064. the *Slavonians* invaded these Parts, ruin'd the Church, and Re-established the Heathenish Superstitions; but soon after these Foreigners were entirely expelled, Christianity Restored, and the Cathedral Re-edified. In the next Century it was a Place of very great Trade, and much frequented by Merchants from *Britain*, *France*, *Spain*, *Flanders*, &c. And even so considerable was this City that *Adam Bremenfis*, who flourish'd about the Year 1100. calls it *Civitatem Opulentissimam ac Populosissimam*. The *Angles*, who were great Traders here, Built the Church Dedicated to the Holy Ghost, and the Hospital adjoining. In the last Age, viz. 1556. King *Frederick II.* took this City and annexed it to his Dominions. Near the Walls of it are to be seen the Ruins of a Temple, which the *Slavonians* Built in Honour of the Deity which they worshipped.

Within a few Miles from *Sleswick* to the South are yet to be seen in many Places the Ruins of the famous Wall and Trench, which was Built in ancient



ent times by the *Danish* Kings against the Incursions of the *Saxons*. It is thought to have been begun by *Gotheric*, or *Gothofred*, King of *Denmark*, to exclude the Armies of the Emperor *Charlemagne*, about the Year 808. afterwards improved by Queen *Thyra* and other *Danish* Monarchs, and made so strong as to be esteemed impregnable by the Councillors of *Henry the Lion*, Duke of *Saxony*, who dissuaded that Victorious Prince from attempting so hazardous an Undertaking. This Rampart was called *Danewerk*, and like *Hadrian's Wall* in *England*, is reported to have reached from Sea to Sea, quite across this Neck of Land.

*Gottorp*, the ancient Palace of the Earls and Dukes of *Holfstein*, stands about 15 Miles West from *Sleswick*, on a Lake made by the River *Sleye*, which almost Encompasses it; the Waters whereof are clear and full of Fish; and carries Vessels of small burden to and from the *Baltick* Sea: This is reckoned one of the finest Seats in all these Northern Parts, having very large Gardens, beautified with curious Fountains, Walks, &c. besides a noble and spacious Park, or, rather Forest adjoining, well stock'd with Deer, wild Boar, and other sorts of Game. The Palace is a noble Building, and is especially adorn'd with a very choice Library containing a large Collection of Printed Books and Manuscripts, and among other Rarities one of singular Ingenuity, viz. a Globe of Copper Ten Foot and half in Diameter, with a Sphere, wherein the Sun moves on the Ecliptick, and all the Heavenly Bodies are carried round in exact order by the means of certain Wheels which are turned about by Water convey'd from the adjacent Mountain. *Gottorp* is well Fortify'd, and has a Toll-Booth, or Custom House, where Toll is paid every Year, for 50000 Head of Cattel, which pass out of *Gotland* into *Germany*.

*Eckrenford* or *Ekelford*, stands on the bottom of a Bay of the *Baltick* Sea, which makes a very Commodious Haven, about 10 Miles South from *Sleswick*, and near 20 North from *Kiel*. Its said to have its Name from the abundance of Squirrels found in the Neighbouring Woods, tho' with more probability, it is called so from an old Castle, out of whose Ruins it arose. It is a Town of good Trade, and one of the safest Ports on the *Baltick* Shoar.

*Christianpris* is a Sea-Town about 15 Miles South-East from *Eckrenford*, Seated on the neck of the Haven of *Kiel*, and seems to have been built to command that Passage.

*Frederickstadt*, is a little Town on the Bank of the River *Eyder*, at the distance of 30 Miles from *Eckrenford* to the West. It owes its Foundation to *Frederick* Duke of *Holfstein*, and *Sleswick*, who endeavour'd to settle a Silk Trade there, and to that purpose sent a famous Embassy to *Miscovy* and *Persia*, which gave occasion to *Adam Olearius*, Secretary of it, to Publish an excellent Book of Travels in an account thereof.

*Tonningen* Seated also on the River *Eyder*, about 5 Miles below *Frederickstadt*, and about 4 Leagues from the *German* Ocean, is a place of Traffick, and very well Fortify'd.

*Husum* stands upon the Gulf of *Hwer*, 10 Miles South from *Frederickstadt*, and has a good Harbour, which opens to the *German* Ocean; it is defended by a Citadel built by *Adolph* Duke of *Holfstein* in 1581. after his Victory over the *Ditmarshians*: It was fortified during the late Wars, but the King of *Denmark* has since Demolished them.

Over against the Gulf of *Husum* lyes the Island of *Northant*.

*Flensburg*, so called from the Bay of *Fens* on which it stands, and by it receives Ships of Burden from the *Baltick* Sea; is about 20 Miles distant from *Husum* to the North-East. It is a fair City of one large Streer near two Miles in length, and the Haven so commodious that the Burghers can Load and Unload the Ships at their very Doors; the Suburbs are Guarded by a Castle that stands on the top of a Hill, and Commands both the Town and Harbour. The Situation of this Place is extream Pleasant, being a Fruitful Valley encompass'd with Hills. The Country lying between this Place and *Sleswick* was formerly Inhabited by the ancient *Angles*, that Invaded *Britain*, and gave it the Name of *England* as *Ethelwetr* an ancient English *Saxon* Historian affirms.

*Apenrade* is Seated on another Bay of the *Baltick* Sea, about 15 Miles North from *Flensburg*, and is much frequented by *Danish* Fishermen

*Luxburg* or *Glucksburg*, a little Town and Castle 4 Miles East from *Flensburg*, has the Honour to give Title to the Dukes of *Holfstein* *Glucksburg*.

*Hadersleben*, a noted Sea-Port, on a River, or rather narrow Bay, that about 3 Leagues below falls into the *Baltick* Sea, about 30 Miles distant from *Flensburg*, and 15 from *Apenrade* to the North, is a fair well built Town, the Streets large, and the Buildings uniform. It had formerly a strong Castle on the top of a Hill near the Town, for its defence, but that was demolished by *John* Earl of *Holfstein*, Son to King *Christian I.* who began to build a new one called from his Name *Hansburg* (or *John's* Building) which was afterwards finished by King *Frederick II.* This Town and Castle were twice taken by the *Swedes*, during their Wars with the *Danes*, and restored by the Peace concluded in 1658. It is also remarkable for giving Birth to *Frederick III.* in 1609.

*Tunderen*, two Port Towns, the greater and less, stand on the Western Shoar, or Coast of the *German* Ocean, about 25 Miles West from *Apenrade*, and the same distance North from *Husum*.

*Lohm Closter* stands about 10 Miles North from *Tunderen*.

The Islands adjacent to *Sleswick*, are these,

*ALSEN*, Situated in the *Baltick* Sea, over-against the Country that lyes between *Flensburg* and *Apenrade*; on it are two Towns, besides several Villages, viz.

*Sunderburg*, which stands on the South part of the Island, and is the ordinary Residence of the Dukes of *Holfstein* *Sunderburg*: It is a good Town, and adorn'd with a stately Castle built by *Christopher I.* King of *Denmark*. This is a very strong Hold, and was able to sustain the Attack of General *Wrangel*, and even make him quit the whole Island.

*Nordburg*, Seated on the North Part of the Island, and the Residence of another Duke of the Family of *Holfstein*, who has his Title from it. Was Built by King *Sueno*, called *Grottenbede*, about the middle of the Twelfth Century.

And on the Western Coast in the Ocean, are these Islands.

*NORTSTRANT* which lyes over-against *Husum*, with several smaller Isles about it.



*FORA* a little North of it, and *Amrom* behind it.

*SYLT* over-against *Tunder*. *ROM* a little North of it, with *Lordsand*, *Min.d.*, &c. but on

these are no very considerable Towns, and therefore we shall pass them by, and proceed to the Third and last Division of *Holstein*.

## C H A P. IV. Of NORTH-JUTLAND.

**JUTLAND**, which takes up all the Northern part of this Continent, was the Country of the ancient *Jutes*, who assisted their Neighbours, the *Angles* in the Conquest of *Britain*; and according to the Opinion of divers Learned Men, was very anciently Inhabited by Men of a Gigantick Stature, who being in this Country Language call'd *Kempers*, gave occasion to the *Romans*, who wanted the Letter *K* to call them and the whole Nation from them *Cimbri*, whence the whole Country, together with *Sleswick* and *Holstein*, *Cimbrica Chersonesus*, q. d. The Peninsula of the *Cimbri* or *Kempers*. The whole Country is subject to the *K.* of *Denmark*, and is divided into divers great Lordships; but according to other Geographers, we shall consider it as divided into 4 Dioceses, and note the most considerable Towns therein.

The Diocese of *RIPEN* takes up all the South-West part of *Jutland*, and has within the Districts of it (according to *Baudrand*) 30 Prefectures, 252 Parishes, 10 Royal Ports, and these 7 Cities, viz.

*Ripen*, Seated on the River *Nipsick*, which parting its self into 3 Streams, divides the City into so many parts, and falling into the *German Ocean*, makes a commodious Haven; about 50 Miles South West from *Flenzburg*, and 30 West from *Hadersleben*. It is a Place of considerable Traffic, and good Structure; the Cathedral especially is magnificent, being Built of hewn Stone, and has a Steeple of great height, which serves as a Land-mark, to the Sailers on these Coasts. This Church was Founded by King *Eric Barn*, about the Year 848. but the Episcopal See not establish'd till 150 Years after, when the Pagan Idolatry having again prevail'd here, was expell'd, Christianity re-establish'd, and the Church re-edify'd. It is also adorn'd with a sort of University, and Guarded by a Castle of reasonable Strength. In the *Swedish War A. D.* 1645. this City was taken by them, but recover'd by the *Danes* soon after.

*Kolding*, Seated on a River that falls into a Bay of the *Baltick Sea*, over-against the Island of *Finland*, near 30 Miles East from *Ripen*, and 70 North from *Sleswick*, is a City of good Trade and Strength; being the Seat of the King's Custom-house, where the Oxen and Horses, and other Cattle, and Merchandise, that pass from *North-Jutland* to *Holstein* and other Parts, are oblig'd to pay considerable Imposts; and is Fortify'd by a strong Citadel or Castle nam'd *Arnsburg*. The City was Founded about the Year 1268. by King *Eric Glipping*, in the place of an old ruinous Castle, and strengthened with good Walls, and deep Ditches, to serve as a Frontier to the *Danish* Dominions which at that time extended no farther. King *Christian III.* was so pleas'd with the Situation and Pleasantness of the Neighbouring Country, that he not only Repair'd the Castle of *Arnsburg*, but remov'd his Court thither, and Died in it. The Buying and Selling of Cattle by the

Drovers that come from all Parts every Year, is a great part of the Trade of this Town.

*Fredericksodde*, is a small Port, on the Banks of the lesser *Belt*, 20 Miles East from *Kolding*; not remarkable, except on account of *Gustavus's* Passage over the Ice, from it to *Funen*, and the other Islands, in the Year 1657.

*Weil*, Seated like *Kolding*, on a little River that falls into the *Baltick*, and makes a large Harbour, is a compact, neat and well Built City, but not very large; about 15 Miles distant from *Kolding* to the North. Over-against it about 30 Miles directly West, stands *Warde*, on a River that falls into the *German Ocean*, and makes it a Place convenient for Trade.

*Ringkoping*, stands about 30 Miles North from *Warde*, on a Bay of the *German Sea*, made by a Neck of Land, that stands near 30 Miles from North to South, between it and the Ocean, and thereby makes an excellent Haven.

*Lemwick* stands on the Banks of the Bay of *Limford*, whence it has its Name, on the utmost Northern Bounds of the Diocese of *Ripen*; about 30 Miles North from *Ringkoping*.

*Hodselbro*, or *Holstebro*, stands about 20 Miles South-East from *Lemwick*, and about the same distance North-East from *Ringkoping*. It is an Inland Town, but stands on a River which falls into a Lake, that opens to the *German Ocean*.

The Diocese of *ARHUSEN* is the South-East part of *Jutland*, extending about 60 Miles along the Coasts of the *Baltick Sea*, and contains 304 Parishes, 5 Castles or Forts, and these 7 Cities and Wall'd Towns.

*Aarhus*, or *Arhusen*, stands on the Catgar, at the Mouth of the *Gude*, which falls into the *Baltick*, 110 Miles directly North from *Sleswick*, 60 Miles East from *Ringkoping*, and *Hodselbro*, and about 90 Miles South from the *Scager-Riff* or utmost North-Land of *Jutland*, and 30 Miles North from the Island *Funen*. It is a neat and pleasant Town, Seated in the heart of *Jutland*, and furnish'd with all manner of Necessaries, which the Country affords them plentifully; and Foreign Commodities of all sorts are daily brought them by Shipping. It is adorn'd with a Cathedral Church of curious Architecture, and Beautified with many stately Monuments of Prelates, Noblemen, &c. But the Bishop's Palace, which was formerly a magnificent Structure, is fallen to decay. The Episcopal See was establish'd here about the latter end of the Tenth, or beginning of the Eleventh Century. This City was taken, and almost destroy'd by the *Swedes*, in 1644.

*Horsens* stands about 15 Miles South from *Aarhus*, on a River that falls into a Bay of the *Baltick*.

*Randers* stands about the same distance North from *Aarhus*, and has the same convenience for Navigation, being Seated on the River *Gudden*, that a few Leagues below falls into the *Baltick*, and is a Place



of good Trade, and famous for the best Salmon in *Jutland*.

*Elbinger* 15 Miles, and *Gråaa* 20 Miles North-East from *Aalburg*, are both Towns of Trade on the *Baltick*; and also,

*Møllegaard*, about 12 Miles North from *Rande*.

*Holm* stands on the same River a few Miles above it.

The Diocese of *HIDELBERG*, lies in the middle of *Jutland*, having *Aalborg* on the North, *Aarhus* on the East, and *Ripen* on the West and South. It is of smaller extent than the other Dioceses, being no above 40 Miles over, and of form near round. Although an Inland Country, it wants not the convenience of Navigation, for here are large Lakes which branch out into several Parts of this Land, and from whence by the means of the *Lymford* that passes out of them, and falls at last into the *Baltick* Sea, they receive Vessels of great Burden: Among these Bays and Lakes, there is one, nam'd, *Othefundt*, from the Emperor *Otho*, surnam'd the Great, who about 980 made an inn at this way, and penetrated even as far as this Land, and casting his Javelin into the Water, gave it the name it still retains; the best Horses in *Denmark*, are bred in that part of this Diocese, nam'd *Salling*. In this Territory are comprehended 16 Bailywicks, 218 Parishes, and 3 Castles, the Towns of chiefest note are these,

*Willing*, which stands in the very middle of *Jutland* is an exact Line, between *Hedsebro* to the East, and *Randers* to the West, 130 Miles North from *Sleswick*, 35 North-West from *Aarhus*, and 35 South from *Aalborg*. It is a Place of great Resort, being the Seat of a High Court of Judicature, which receives the Appeals from Inferiour Courts, but none can be made from it, save to the King: It has been the See of a Bishop for above 600 Years, but the exact time cannot be fix'd, for it is a matter still disputed whether this or *Aalborg* be the most ancient.

This Place was anciently call'd, *Cimmersburg*, as being the Chief City of the *Cimbri*, and whence it had its present Name, is not very certain; but by a reasonable Conjecture, a late Author supposes it to be call'd so from its being the Habitation of the Pyrates, that anciently were very powerful in these Parts, and were call'd *Wigs* or *Wikenger*.

*Hakker*, 25 Miles North from *Wiburg*, and

*Nibe*, about 10 Miles North-East from it, are both noted Horse-markets.

The Diocese of *AALBURG*, otherwise call'd *Buglaw*, is the extreme North Part of *Jutland*, and surrounded by the Sea, on all Parts but the South, where it is divided from *Wiburg* and *Ripen*, by the Bay, call'd the *Lymford*, which runs from the *Baltick* Sea above 100 Miles an end, and is shut out of the German Ocean, by a narrow *Isthmus*, made by the Sand hills on the West Shoar of *Jutland*; over-against the great Shoar, call'd the *Jutsche Riff*. It is a fruitful Country, and pretty well enrich'd by Trade. Its Length from North-East to South-West, is 130 Miles, but the Breadth is not proportionable. It is divided into 13 Bailywicks or Herriors, which contain 165 Parishes, 100 Castles, and 6 Principal Towns.

*Aalborg* stands on the narrow Branch of the *Lymford*, about 15 Miles from the Sea, 50 Miles from *Aarhus*, and 35 from *Wiburg* to the North. The Bishoprick was founded about the Year 1060, but the Bishops Resided at *Borlum*, a Neighbouring Village till the Reformation; since when the *Lutheran* Bishops have had their Place here. The City was anciently call'd *Burgle*, and is said to have taken its present Name from the multitude of the Eels taken near it in the *Lymford*, and by the Inhabitants Sold to other Parts.

*Tysted* stands near 50 Miles from *Aalborg*, in the middle of a *Peninsula*, made by the *Lymford*, and the German Ocean, which is reckon'd the most Fertile Part of this Diocese. The Place is noted for a kind of University in it, which was at first a Free-School only, Founded by King *Christian III*.

*Nikeping*, about 15 Miles South-East from *Tysted*, stands in an Island made by the *Lymford*, call'd *Mors Insula*.

Northward of *Aalborg* lies the Country call'd *Wensyssel*, whose Inhabitants are reckon'd the lustiest and hardest of the King of *Denmark*'s Subjects; the chief Town bearing the same Name, stands about 20 Miles West of *Aalborg*.

*Seelby*, a Port-Town on the Eastern Shoar, 20 miles North from *Aalborg*, stands in this Territory; as does also,

*Seagen*, Seated on the Promontory, the most Northern Land of *Jutland*, which it gives Name to; and is a Place of considerable Trade, being much frequented by Merchants from all parts of *Europe*.

On the Eastern Coast of these Countries lie several Islands, whereof *Samsoe*, over-against *Aarhus*, and *Lessow*, over-against *Aalborg*, are only worth mentioning.

### Of the BALTICK SEA, and the rest of the Principal ISLANDS of DENMARK.

The *BALTICK SEA*, (call'd also the East Sea) wherein these Islands that make so considerable a part of the Kingdom of *Denmark*, do lie, was anciently call'd *Sinus Codanus*, q. d. the *Danish Bay*, and 'tis thought took its modern Name from the Word *Belt*, as the Streights between *Seeland* and *Funen*, and that between *Funen* and *Jutland*, are at this Day call'd. It is a very large Bay, extending from the 54th Degree of Latitude to the 66th, and washes the Shoars of *Denmark*, *Sweden*, and some part of *Poland* and *Muscovy*; by the means whereof the Inhabitants of those Countries enjoy the great convenience of Navigation, and cheap communication, with all the Maritime parts of *Europe*. The Passage into it is by the narrow Streights of the *Belt*, and the *Sund*, the former, as we have said, lying between the two Islands, &c. the latter is on the East Side of *Seeland*, between that and *Sweden*, which is the most frequented, and by the power the King of *Denmark* has over it, he raises a vast Income, by the Toll which Ships that pass in and out, pay him at his Castle of *Cronenburg*.



## C H A P. V.

### Of S E E L A N D.

**S E E L A N D**, or **Z E L A N D**, the largest and most fruitful Island in the *Baltick* Sea, lies in the Latit. between 55. 31. and 56. 32. and in Longit. between 31. 0. and 33. 0. being in Length about 60. and in Breadth about 40 Miles. It is divided from *Schonen*, a part of *Sweden* on the East by the *Scand*, and from *Funen* on the West, by the greater *Belt*, and has *Falster* and *Laland* on the South. It is a Country in most places, very pleasant, being beset with little Hills, Woods of Beech-Trees, Rivulers and Lakes; the Soil also is very fertile, producing Rye. Oats and Barley in abundance, and the Pastures have very good Grass. Some pretend its modern Name came from the plenty of Corn, that is, *See'land* q. *Seedland*. The Lakes and Rivers are stor'd with Fish, and the Forests with Game, such as Stags, Roe-Bucks, Wild-Boars, &c. According to *Cluverius*, this and the Neighbouring Islands, were Inhabited by the ancient *Teutones*, who by a variety of Dialect, were call'd *Godani*, *Codani*, and *Dani*, whence the Island was anciently nam'd *Codanania*. In it are 340 Parishes, and these Principal Cities and Towns.

**COPENHAGEN**, *Hafnia*, ant *Haunia*, the Chief City of the Island, and the Metropolis of the whole Kingdom, stands in a Plain on the Banks of the *Sunde*, about 5 Leagues West from the Coasts of *Schonen*, call'd by the Inhabitants *Kiobenbaum*, and by the Germans *Copenhaven*, corruptly for *Kiobsmannbaum* : q. d. *Portus Mercatorum*, or the Merchants Haven. It is a place of no great Antiquity, having grown up from a Castle, Built about the Year 1168. by *Axil Wide*, the Archbishop, which being a Protection from the Pyrates, the Neighbouring Inhabitants resorted thither, and Building themselves Houses, laid the Foundations of a Town, which being improv'd by all the *Danish* Kings, especially *Christian IV.* it is become a City of the first Rank, and for the Beauty, Strength and Bulk, not exceeded by very many. It was also at several times endow'd with Immunities, especially in the Year 1443. by *Christoffer* of *Bavaria*, King of *Denmark*; which were afterwards Ratified by King *Christian III.* and *Frederick II.* The Situation of this City is exceedingly advantageous, having on the Land side, a very pleasant Country, and on the Sea side one of the finest Havens in the World, capacious enough to hold 500 Sail of Ships, the Road without is very safe, and secur'd from the violence of the Waves by a large Bank of Sand, and the entrance of the Port so narrow, that but one Ship can pass at a time; this is shut up every Night with a Boom, and the Passage Guarded by the Citadel on one side, and a Block House on the other. The whole City is environ'd with deep Ditches and high Ramparts of Earth, according to the modern Fortification, and on the East side it is join'd by a Bridge to the Island *Amak*. The Streets are broad, clean and neat; and tho' formerly Citizens Houses were but poorly Built, at present they are fair enough. The chief Churches are those dedicated to the Holy Ghost, *S. Nicholas* and the Cathedral of *S. Mary*, wherein the Kings are usually Crown'd: It is a-

dorn'd with a stately Copper Spire, Built at the Cost of King *Christian IV.* This is a Bishop's See, and the Seat of an University, Founded by *Christian I.* in 1478. And not many Years ago an Academy was establish'd here for teaching all sorts of Martial Exercises, Foreign Languages, and the Mathematicks: The late King much improv'd this College, and endow'd it with considerable Revenues and Privileges. Among the other publick Buildings, the chief are the Citadel, the Observatory, call'd the Round Tower, the Royal Palace, with the adjoining Gardens, and Banqueting-House of *Rosenburg*, the Exchange, and the Arsenal, which is reckon'd one of the best in *Europe*, and much celebrated for that wonderful Celestial Globe, of 6 Foot Diameter, made by *Tychon Brabe*: The Market-Place is very spacious, and a great Ornament to the Town. The City is Govern'd by 4 Burgo Masters, one of whom is for Life. In the *Swedish* War *Copenhagen* was Besieg'd by *Charles Gustavus*, Ann 1659. but the City held out, and the *Swedes* were forc'd to leave it.

Over-against *Copenhagen*, on the other side the Haven to the Eastward, lies the Island of *Amak*, about 6 Miles in Length, which is wonderfully stock'd with all sorts of Fowl and Venison, has plenty of Corn and Milch-kine, and furnishes the Markets at *Copenhagen*, with Weekly Supplies. In this Island are 2 Towns, call'd *Hullander Doip*, and *Sundbye*. The *Swedish* Forces made a Descent here on the 9th Octob. 1658. and the next Day burnt down the Villages, but on the 10th Decemb. following, they were so warmly attack'd by the *Danes*, that King *Charles Gustavus*, and General *Wrangle* were forc'd to leave their Army Engag'd, and make their escape in a Fisher-Boat.

*Roschild*, stands at the bottom of a narrow but deep Bay, call'd the Bay of *Isere*, 20 Miles West from *Copenhagen*. It was formerly the Metropolis of the whole Kingdom, having had in it (as *Lysander* informs us) no less than 27 fair Churches; but the encrease of *Copenhagen* so near it, has drawn off its Trade and Inhabitants, and the Place is at present not very considerable. About the Year 1012. King *Sueno* establish'd an Episcopal See here, which is now remov'd to *Copenhagen*. Afterward *Sueno Grotensbede* Fortify'd the Town with a Wall, Ditch, and Ramparts. The Cathedral is a large old Church and famous for the Tombs of many *Danish* Kings, some whereof are very Magnificent: Among them stands a Marble Pillar, on which *Margaret* Queen of *Denmark* hung the Whetstone that *Albert* King of *Sweden* scornfully sent her to sharpen her Needles; but the Jest cost him dear, for this Heroine defeated and took and detain'd him Prisoner seven Years and made him renounce his Right to the Kingdom of *Sweden*. It is still a Town of some Trade, and is notable for a Treaty of Peace concluded in it between the *Swedes* and *Danes* in 1658.

*Elfsleur*, *Elfsleur*, *Helchenoor*, *Helsingor* or *Helsingor*, (as it is variously Written) is so nam'd q. d. *Haen Oor*, i. e. an Ear in the Neck, as being at first only a Watch Tower, Built on the Neck, or Straight of the Sea, call'd the *Sund*, or *Ore Sundt*; It is so probable that the Castle of *Helsingburg*, on the o-



posite Shoar derives its Name from the same Origin: Between these 2 Forts pass all Vessels that Trade in the *Baltick*, so that this Strait next that of *Gibraltar*, may be esteem'd the most frequented of any in *Europe*. *Elseneur* stands about 15 Miles North from *Copenhagen*, and is defended by the Neighbouring impregnable Castle of *Cronenburg*, which commands this side of the Sound, as *Helsingburg* does the other. It was Built by *Frederick II.* of Free-stone brought from *Gothland*. Every Ship that passes this Strait must strike Sail at *Cronenburg*, and come to the Town to Compound for the Custom, under a Penalty of Confiscating his Vessel and Cargo. *Charles Gustavus* King of *Sweden*, took it in the Year 1658. and restor'd it at the Treaty of *Copenhagen*, in 1660.

*Fredericksburg*, about 12 Miles W. from *Elseneur*, and 20 N. from *Copenhagen*, is a stately Castle and Royal Palace seated in a pleasant Wood. It was a Monastery, and turn'd into a Castle by *Frederick II.* whose Son *Christian IV.* not only compleated the Building, but adorn'd it with Painting, Statues, and the richest Furniture; to which his Successor *Frederick III.* still added, so that it has the character of one of the finest Palaces in *Europe*, and is the King's Place of Retirement for Pleasure.

*Helboek* stands about 18 Miles West from *Roskild*, at the bottom of a Bay, whereby it has the advantage of a small Traffick.

*Kallenburg* stands on the Western Coast of the Island, just over-against *Copenhagen*, at 50 Miles distance from it, and 35 from *Roskild*, to the West. It is a Place of considerable Traffick, and has a very safe and commodious Harbour; formerly, being a small Village Inhabited by Fishermen, it was call'd *Hermig*, till *Esbern*, Brother to *Axel* or *Absalom Huid*, Archbishop of *Lunden*, about the middle of the 12th Century, rais'd it to the dignity of a City, and beautified it with a Church, Castle and other publick Edifices:

*Ringstede*, Seated near the middle of *Seeland*, about 15 Miles from *Roskil* to the South, and 15 from *Koge* to the West, is a Place of the greatest Antiquity in *Seeland*, except *Roskild*, and has been honour'd with the Interment of many *Danish* Kings, particularly *Waldemar I.* and *Eric* the Pious; But it being a Place of no Trade, is not at present very considerable.

*Sor*, *Soor* or *Sora*, is seated in a pleasant Woody Country, 7 Miles from *Ringstede*. About the mid-

dle of the 12th Century, *Absalom Huid*, Archbishop of *Roschild*, and Bishop of *Lunden*, Founded a fair Monastery here, and endow'd it with large Revenues for the maintenance of Learned Men, by the encouragement whereof, *Saxo Grammaticus* collected Materials, and compos'd his excellent History of the *Danish* Kings. *Esbern* the Archbishop's Brother enlarg'd it, and augmented the Revenues by the addition of 14 Villages. Afterwards King *Frederick II.* remov'd the School he had establish'd at *Fredericksburg*, for the Education of young Noblemen to this Place, and from a rich Popish Monastery, it was converted into one of the noblest Free-Schools in the Reform'd part of *Christendom*; to which *Christian IV.* added Professors with proper Salaries, to teach Academical Learning: And also constituted an Academy; with Masters to instruct young Gentlemen in all sorts of martial Exercises. So that *Sora* became a considerable University, and well Endow'd, the Lands of the Demolish'd Nunnery of *Mariebo* in *Laland*, having been given to it in 1621. But at present all its Revenues are possess'd by the King; and tho' he sometimes talks of restoring them, the Professors of *Copenhagen* will use their interest against it, and *Sor* is still likely to remain only a pleasant Country Town.

*Koge*, is a small but very Populous Town, Seated on a small Bay of the Sound, 20 Miles South from *Copenhagen*. It is enrich'd by Traffick, which consists chiefly in Corn and Fish, and the Country about it is remarkably Pleasant.

*Prestoe*, a Trading Town, stands on the Bay of the Sound, on the South side of *Seeland*, over-against the Island *Mena*, 30 Miles South from *Koga*.

*Warienburg* stands about 10 Miles South-West from *Prestoe*, on another small Bay, over-against the Island *Falster*, and is a Place of some Trade.

*Nestued* stands 20 Miles North from *Warienburg*, on a small River that falls into the *Belt*.

*Skelskor* stands on the West side of *Seeland*, on the Coast of the *Belt*, 30 Miles North-West from *Warienburg*, and 35 West from *Koge*.

*Korsor*, about 8 or 9 Miles North-West from *Skelskor*, stands on a Promontory or small Cape, that jers out over-against *Funen*, and makes a good Haven on the North side of it. This was the Place that *Carolus Gustavus*, King of *Sweden*, first arriv'd at with his Fleet in 1658. when he Invaded this Island.

## C H A P. VI.

### Of F U N E N.

*FUNEN*, or *FIONIA*, the next considerable Island of *Denmark*, lies on the West of *Seeland* between that and *Jutland*, being separated from the former by the Strait, call'd the greater *Belt* on the East, and from the latter by the Streight, call'd by the Inhabitants the *Medilsøsfund*, or the lesser *Belt*: It is about 50 Miles long, and 40 Miles broad, and produces plenty of Corn, even enough to export abroad, and has Pasture for a vast number of Cattle that are bred here; whereof the Horses are

much esteem'd. This Island is an Appenage of the eldest Son of the King of *Denmark*; and the Government of it is one of the most considerable in the Kingdom. Here are 264 Villages, 4 Garrisons, and these 4 considerable Towns.

*Odensee* or *Ottensee*, the chief City, stands in the middle of the Island, about 80 Miles West from *Copenhagen*, 70 North from *Sleswick*, and about 20 Miles South from the beginning of the Strait of the *Belt*. The annual Sessions of the Nobility and Ma-



Magistrates are held here, as were formerly the general Conventions of the Realm, till the Crown was made Hereditary in the Year 1660. It is a handsome Town, the Buildings being fair, and the Streets broad and uniform; the Town-House is a stately Structure, and stands on a very spacious Market-place. Among other publick Buildings are 2 fair Churches, dedicated to St. Francis, and St. Cruce, a Danish King, who was Martyr'd in this City, *An. Dom.* 1056. and whose Body was found in this Church, as the Workmen were Repairing the Quire, in the Year 1582. the Coffin that contain'd it was of Copper Gilt, adorn'd with precious Stones, and bore an Inscription, declaring who it was. This is an Episcopal See, Erected in the Year, 950. and in the Town-Hall the ancient League between the Crown of Denmark, and the Dukes of *Helfstein*, and *Sleswick* was renew'd by *Frederick II* in the Year 1575.

*Nuburg*, or *Niburg*, Seated on the Eastern side of the Island, over-against *Korsør* in *Seeland*, 15 Miles East from *Odense*, is one of the Principal Towns in *Funen*, and the usual Passage from thence to *Seeland*;

And has a capacious and safe Haven, wherein Ships of the largest Burden may ride at Anchor. It is also well Fortify'd, and has been anciently honour'd with the Residence of the Danish Kings, and the Session of their Parliaments.

*Schwinburg* stands on the South-East corner of the Island, 30 Miles South from *Nuburg*, and has a large and commodious Harbour; it is famous for the Passage of the Swedish Forces over the Ice (in the Year 1658.) from hence to *Seeland*.

*Foberg* stands also on the South Coast, 10 Miles Westward from *Schwinburg*.

*Affen* stands on the western Coast over-against *Hadersleben* in *Sleswick*, and 30 Miles South-West from *Nuburg*.

*Middlefar* lies also on the Western Shore, 25 Miles North from *Affens*, and is the common Passage from this Island to *Kolding* in *Jutland*. *Charles Gustavus*, King of Sweden, led his Army from *Jutland*, over the Ice to this Place, on the 13th of Jan. 1658. and overrun all the Island.

*Sophiaodde* stands about 10 Miles North from *Middlefar*, just over-against *Frederickodde* in *Jutland*.

## C H A P. VII.

### Of Langeland, Laland, and the rest of the smaller Islands of D E N M A R K.

**L**ANGELAND, so call'd from its long narrow Form, lies on the South-East of *Funen*, in length about 30 Miles, but in breadth hardly 8. It is a fruitful Soil, and adorn'd with many Noblemens Seats; on it are 16 Parish Churches, and a strong Fort, call'd *Frænker*. The chief Town is *Ruskoeping*, Seated on the Western Coast, over against *Schwinborg* in *Funen*; between which lies the small Island *Tassing*. And a little to the West and on the South of *Funen*, over-against *Feburg*, lies *ARROE*, another small Island.

**L**ALAND, or **L**AWLAND, lies on the South of *Seeland*, from which it is separated by the narrow Streight of *Gronesond*, or *Golderfond*, as it is written in the Maps, and takes its Name from its low Situation. Its extent is about 30 Miles from East to West, and 20 from North to South, having a Rich Soil that produces Corn and Pasture in abundance. In it are 4 Herriots or Lordships, and 4 good Towns, among which *Naxkow* that stands on a Bay that opens to the Belt, is the Principal, and is well Fortify'd. *Newstadt*, was once famous for a noble Monastery, Founded there *Ann.* 1268. And the Nunnery of *Mariebo*, mention'd in the description of *Sor*, was sometime as remarkable as any Place in the Island.

**F**ALSTER adjoyns to *Laland*, being divided by only a narrow Bay, and lies on the South of *Seeland* (whence it is separated by the *Gronesundt*) just over against *Warienburg*. Its length from North to South, is about 20 Miles. but the lower part of it is but very narrow; on the North part it is about 16 Miles broad. Its Soil is very fruitful, and much Corn is sent from hence to *Mecklenburg*, and other parts

of Germany. It is divided into 2 Bailiwicks, viz. *Narre-Herriot* and *Synder-Herriot*; and has several Towns, among which the Principal are, *Nykoping*, Seated on the West side of the Island, one of the most pleasant and best Built Towns in the whole Kingdom, and stiled by Dr. *Heylin*, the *Naples* of Denmark. *Stubkoping*, Seated on the North Coast, and a Place of Trade, and the usual Passage from *Seeland*.

**MON, MEUN, MONEN**, or *Mona*, lyes on the North-East of *Falster*, and South of *Seeland*, 15 Miles in length, and about 5 or 6 in breadth. It is a Landmark to the German Vessels, that frequent these Coasts. And because of its Situation was formerly given to the Admiral of Denmark, being a convenient Place for his Residence. Its chief Town is *Stekoe* or *Stege*, which was remarkable for the gallant defence it made against the *Lubeckers* in 1510. And the Valour of the Inhabitants of the whole Island was signalized in 1659. when they defended themselves better against the *Swedes*, than the other larger Islands had done.

**FEMEREN**, Seated on the Coast of *Wagerland*, from whence it is parted by a very small Channel; tho' it be but a small Plot of Ground, has always been esteemed of great importance, being one of the Keys of Denmark on the side of Germany. And on that account King *Christian IV.* in the Year 1628. caused the chief Places on it, especially *Borg*, to be strongly Fortify'd.

**SAMSOE**, lyes on the North of *Funen*, and a few Leagues East from the Coast of *Jutland* over-against *Aarbusen*. It is an Island of small extent, yet



yet has been lately Erected into a County by the late King *Christian V.* in favour of *Madam Mofe*, a Citizen's Daughter of *Copenhagen*, on whom that Prince begot two Natural Sons, and Created the Mother Countess of *Samsøe*.

*HUEN*, or, as others Write it *Ween*, is a small Island Situate in the Streight of the Sound between *Seeland* and *Schonen*, to the North-West of *Copenhagen*, and was formerly famous for the Castle or Tower of *Uraniburg*, wherein that noble Danish Baron *Tycho Brahe* made his Astronomical Observations; but it is now demolished: He had also here a deep Dungeon called *Stelliburg*, from whence he could view the Stars in the Day time.

The Island of *BORNHOLM* lyes very remote from *Denmark*, viz. 25 Leagues from *Seeland* to the East, and not above 6 Leagues from the Coast of *Schonen* to the South-East. It is about 20 Miles in extent, from North to South, and about 12 from East to West, and of an Oval Form. It was anciently call'd *Boringia*, *Borunda*, and *Holma*, and is said to have been discovered by *Thielorans*, the Son of a *Futland* Prince. It is a Place of great Importance for its Situation and Fruitfulness; and once belonged to the Archbishop of *Lunden*, but *Christian II.* took Possession of it in 1524. being absolutely necessary for the Fleet which he designed against the *Swedes*. Which Usurpation *George Sefteberg*, who was then Archbishop, opposed with all his Power, but in vain, for he was at last forced to fly into *Germany*, to avoid the effects of the King's displeasure. During the late War this Island was often wasted by the *Swedes*, to whom it was surrendered by the Treaty of *Roschild*, but the *Danes* have since redeemed it by the Exchange of several Lands in *Schonen*, *Sandwyck* on the Northern Coast, and

*Rottum* on the South-western, are the chief Towns, besides which, there is the Town of *Nexoa*, and the Castle of *Hammerbusen*, and several Villages.

There are many other small Islands on the Coasts of *Futland* and *Zeeland*, but they are not considerable enough to deserve a particular Description.

Besides the Continent and Islands above-mentioned the King of *Denmark* is possessed of the two Counties of *OLDENBURG* and *DELMENHORST* in *Germany*, which lye separated from *Holstein* by the Dutchy of *Bremen*.

*OLDENBURG* is a flat Moorish Country lying in the Circle of *Westphalia*, between the Dutchy of *Bremen* on the North-East, *East-Friesland*, or the County of *Embsen* on the West, part of the Bishoprick of *Munster* to the South, and the *German Ocean* on the North: It is about 50 Miles in length, and 25 in breadth. The chief Town which gives Name to the County, is seated on the River *Hunte*, at the distance of 50 Miles from *Embsen* to the East, and 30 from *Bremen* to the West. It is well Fortify'd with Walls and Ditches, and a strong well built Castle. The Houses are very mean, but the Place hath a pretty good Trade by means of the River, which falling into the *Weser*, Ships of small Burden can come up to the Town. This Country is noted for an Excellent Breed of Horses, introduced some Years ago, by *Anthony Hunter*, the last Count, descended from *Wittikind* the first Duke of *Saxony*, whose Line intirely failing in the Year 1676. this County fell to the King of *Denmark*, who is descended from that Family.

The small County of *DELMENHORST* adjoyns to *Oldenburg* on the South-East, the chief Town of the same Name, stands on the River *Dilma*, 16 Miles East from *Oldenburg*, and 14 West from *Bremen*: It is strongly Fortify'd, but otherwise not very considerable.



# NORWAY, Norwegia.

Consult the Map of Sweden.

**N**ORWAY has its Name from its Situation towards the North Pole; for *Nordweg* in the Language of that Country, signifies the Way of the North. It was anciently according to *Pliny*, call'd *Nerigon*, and by others, *Nordmania*. As the Story commonly goes, *Norus*, the Son of *Humbius*, King of *Sweden*, was the first King, who by his prudent Management and good Example, reclaim'd and Civiliz'd the Barbarous *Sitones*, the first Inhabitants of this Country. After his Death, they fell to parting the Kingdom among themselves, and so were engaged in Civil Wars; and at last being either weary of shedding their own Blood, or forc'd for want of Provisions, they left their own Country, and betaking themselves to Piracy on the Seas, became formidable Conquerors. They Ravag'd the Coast of *Friesland* and *Britain*, and after many Engagements, wherein they always came off Victorious, *France* at last became the Object of their Ambition; and having enter'd the Mouth of the *Loire*, after the Death of *Charlemaign*, they Sack'd the Cities of *Nantes*, *Tours*, and *Angers*; but from thence Marching into *Gascogne*, were repuls'd, and entirely defeated. A Party of them went into *Italy*, expecting the Fortune of the *Goths*, but proceeded no further than the Surprising some Places in *Liguria*, and return'd to *France*, where they join'd a new Herd of their Countrymen, and under the name of *Normans*, became considerable; insomuch, that in the time of *Charles* the Simple, they settled themselves in *Neustria*, from them since call'd *Normandy*; which that Prince was obliged to surrender to them. Some Historians are of Opinion, that *Charles* encourag'd them, in order to have their assistance against *Eudo*, his Rival for the Crown, for he Married his Daughter *Giselle*, to *Rollo*, their General, who became Duke of *Normandy*, and was succeeded by his Posterity. The Posterity of *Norus* being extinct, *Sudlager*, Son-in-Law to *Gram*, King of *Denmark*, came to be King of *Norway*. *Harald*, Surnamed *Harfagie*, Reigned about the Year 978, and after the Death of *Olaus*, the last of his Race, the Crown of *Norway* was convey'd to *Denmark*, by the Marriage of *Haquin* their King, to *Margaret*, Daughter of *Waldemar* III. King of *Denmark*. A. D. 1357. Since which time, *Norway* has been Governed by a Vice-Roy of the King of *Denmark*. The *Norwegians* have made several attempts to set up Kings of their own Nation, particular *Hermelaus Huldphat*, but to no purpose, and those Conspiracies have only tended to the encreasing of their Chains. The best account we can give the Reader of the Succession of these Kings, the History of this Country being very obscure, is here set down.

## A Chronological Table of the Succession of the Kings of Norway.

Began to Reign.		
<i>Arold, Harold, or Arand I.</i>	978	<i>Magnus IV.</i> 1185
<i>Sueno, or Suenin,</i>	998	<i>Haquin, a Tyrant.</i> 1232
<i>St. Olaus.</i>	1011	<i>Olaus, Surnam'd An-</i>
<i>Sueno.</i>	1031	<i>gofanus.</i> 1263
<i>Magnus I.</i>	1039	<i>Eric I.</i> 1280
<i>Herola, or Ervold,</i>	1055	<i>Haquin II.</i> 1300
<i>Magnus II.</i>	1070	<i>Magnus V. King of</i>
<i>Magnus III. Expell'd</i>	1110	<i>Sweden.</i> 1315
<i>Harold II.</i>	1138	<i>Haquin III.</i> 1326
<i>Magnus III. Re-esta-</i>		<i>Magnus VI.</i> 1328
<i>blish'd.</i>	1148	<i>Haquin IV.</i> 1339
<i>Ingo, Surnam'd Gibbus</i>	1158	<i>Olaus III.</i> 1375
<i>An Interreg. of 4 Years.</i>		<i>Haquin and Ma-ga-</i>
		<i>ret.</i> 1389

**NORWAY** is a long, but narrow (in comparison of its length) Tract of Land, on the West-side of *Scandinavia*, between *Sweden* and the Ocean; having on the Eastside a long Ridge of Mountains, call'd at different Parts by different Names, as *Fillefield*, *Defre-Field*, *Rund-Field*, *Daar-Field*, &c. But they are commonly by Historians stiled the *Defrine* Mountains: These divide *Norway* from *Sweden*, and the Ocean washes all the Western Coast, as also the Southern, and Northern. It lies between 58 and 72 Deg. of Lat: and 24 and 52 Deg. of Long. Its length is about 800 Miles, reckoning from the North Cape in *Finnmark*, to the *Naze*, in the mouth of the *Baltick*, but its breadth is not above 100 Miles, and in some parts not near so much. The Southern Part is reasonably Temperate, but the *AIR* is very Cold, and the Land produces very little Corn or Fruits; its Wealth consisting chiefly in the vast Forests of mighty Fir-Trees, whose usefulness in Building makes the Merchants of *England*, *Holland*, and other Nations flock thither to Buy 'em: The Earth hath Mines of Iron, Copper, and some Silver; which with Pitch and Tar, and Fish, (whereof great quantities are taken on the Coasts) are the **COMMODITIES** of this Country.

The **INHABITANTS** are generally Strong and Courageous: And (as *Puffendorf* observes) undergo all sorts of Hardship, with more Vigour than the *Danes*, being inured to Severity by their Soil and Climate: But the *Danes* keep them under, and give 'em no opportunities of shewing their Strength, and have gradually removed all their ancient Nobility to prevent any potent Faction to arise. The King

being



being careful to keep this Country to himself, especially on account of the good Revenue he receives from it, which is reckon'd by Mr. *Moldsworth*, at seven hundred Thousand Rix Dollars *per Annum*. The *Norwegians* are good Seamen, and are therefore Cherish'd by the *Hollanders*.

The Christian RELIGION is said to have been planted here about the middle of the Tenth Century, and the Reformation was introduced by the *Danes*, so that *Lutherism* is the profess'd Religion.

Norway is divided into five Dioceses or Prefectures, viz. Those of *Aggerhusen* or *Obflo*, *Bergben*, *Drontheim*, *Wardbus*, and *Babus*, and several Islands.

The Cities and chief Towns are these,

In the Diocese of <i>Aggerhusen</i> , or <i>Obflo</i> .	{	<i>Obflo</i> , or <i>Christiana</i> .
		<i>Aggerhusen</i> .
		<i>Frederickstadt</i> .
		<i>Saltzberg</i> .
		<i>Hollen</i> .
In the Diocese of <i>Bergben</i> .	{	<i>Hammer</i> .
		<i>Tonsberg</i> .
		<i>Scheen</i> .
		<i>Bergben</i> .
		<i>Staffanger</i> .
In the Diocese of <i>Drontheim</i> , call'd <i>Nidrosiana</i> .	{	<i>Eyde</i> .
		<i>Bischopswarc</i> .
		<i>Drontheim</i> .
		<i>Leerstrand</i> .
		<i>Stronden</i> .
The Diocese of <i>Wardbus</i> , divided into	{	<i>Scoerdale</i> .
		<i>Opdael</i> .
		<i>Sundael</i> .
		<i>Romsdalen</i> .
		<i>Solendael</i> .
In the Diocese of <i>Babus</i> , Subject to the Swede.	{	<i>Melanger</i> .
		<i>Scheen</i> .
		<i>Wardbus</i> , and
		<i>Finmark</i> .
		<i>Babus</i> .

The Islands depending on Norway.

<i>Ifeland</i> .	{	More to the North.
<i>Schetland</i> .		
<i>Fero</i> .		
<i>Hitteren</i> , off the Coast of <i>Drontheim</i> .		
<i>Maelstrom</i> .		
<i>Lofoen</i> .	{	Off of <i>Wardbus</i> .
<i>Tromanes</i> .		
<i>Sanien</i> .		
<i>Sallero</i> .	{	On the Coast of <i>Finmark</i> .
<i>Sueroy</i> .		
<i>Maggere</i> .		

*Greenland* and *Greenland*, are also reckon'd Dependencies on Norway.

The Map of Norway is joyned to that of Sweden, and contained in the same Plate.

The Province of *AGGARHUSE* is the South-East part of Norway, being seated between the Pro-

vince of *Bergben* on the West, the Confines of *Sweden* on the East, the Mouth of the *Baltick* Sea on the South, and the Government of *Drontheim* on the North; its extent from North to South, is about 250 Miles; and from East to West, in the South part, about 180, but grows narrower Northwards, till it ends in a Point, being in form of a Cone. The Land is Mountainous and Woody, but the Vallies are reasonably Fruitful, water'd by many Rivers and Lakes, that pass through the Country and fall into the *Baltick*. It is divided into six smaller Governments, viz. *Agdesinden*, *Hallingdal*, *Hammer*, *Hennemark*, *Romericket*, and *Teliemark*, which *Ortelius* takes to be the ancient *Thyle*. The chief Cities and Towns are,

*Anflo*, or *Obflo*, call'd also *Christiana*, seated at the bottom of a narrow Bay, at the distance of about 14 Leagues from the *Baltick* Sea, and 50 Leagues from the *Seagen* Cape in *Futland* to the North, in the Latitude of 60 Deg. 30 Min. and Longitude 28. 30. is the Seat of the chief Court of Judicature for the whole Kingdom, as also an Episcopal See. The City owes its Foundation to King *Harold*, Contemporary with *Sueno Estbrich*, King of *Denmark*, who about the middle of the eleventh Century, kept his Court here: But the Old Town being destroy'd by Fire, *Christian IV.* King of *Denmark* and *Norway*, Re-built it, about the Year, 1614. and gave it the Name of *Christiana* by which it is at this Day generally called, and is a Place of good Trade for Fir-Timber, Pitch, &c. The Cathedral is Dedicated to St. *Alward*, and in it is shewn the Sword of *Hugin*, one of their ancient Kings, the Hilt whereof is of Crystal, and is a notable curiosity for Art, as well as Antiquity. In this City the Nuptial Rites between King *James VI.* of *Scotland*, afterwards King of *England*, and *Ann* the Daughter of *Frederick II.* King of *Denmark*, were Solemniz'd on the 23d of November, 1589. that Prince having taken a Voyage hither, upon the Lady's being driven back by contrary Winds when she first set out for *Scotland*,

*Aggarhusen*, or *Aggerhuslot*, from which the whole Province takes its Name, is a strong Castle seated on the other side of the Bay, over-against *Anflo*, from which it is distant but a few Leagues to the West. It was remarkable for the brave resistance it made against the *Swedish* Army, in the Year, 1567, which Besieged it hotly for 18 Weeks together, but was at last beat off, and forced shamefully to Retire,

*Frederickstadt* stands on another Bay of the *Baltick*, called the *Catgate*, and the Mouth of the River *Glammen*, that rises in *Drontheim*, and having passed through the Province of *Aggerhusen*, here falls into the Sea, and by the convenience thereof affords the Town a good Trade. It is seated about 60 Miles from *Christiana* to the South-East, and about the same Distance from *Futland* to the North. It had its Name from *Frederick III.*

*Saltzberg* stands on the River *Drammen*, about 20 Miles North-West from *Christiana*; it is a good City, having a considerable Trade from the Neighbouring Copper and Iron Mines.

*Tonsberg*, seated on the Bay of *Obflo*, and *Scheen* but a few Miles from it, about 40 Miles South from *Saltzburg*, are both Places of good Trade, by means of the same Mines, and a Silver one that was discovered in the Reign of *Christian IV.*

*Hollen*, seated on the Lake *Nordsee*, 15 Miles North-West from *Tonsberg*, is remarkable for its Church, which is cut out of the Rock called *Vear*, and



has a Burying place on the Top of it; it is very ancient, and supposed by *Olaus Wormius* to be Originally a Heathenish Temple.

*Hamar*, formerly a Bishop's See, which is now united to that of *Ahus*, stands on the River *Glamme*, 50 Miles North from *Ahus* or *Christiana*. Near this City in a little Island call'd *Moos* (as *Olaus Magnus* reports, a monstrous Serpent always appears before any notable Revolution in the State of *Norway*).

The Northern part of this Province is very Mountainous and not very Populous, so that there are few Towns of Note that way.

The Province or Government of *BERGHE N*, takes up all the West-side of *Norway*, lying between the Government of *Aggerhus*, and the Coasts of the Ocean, from the Cape call'd the *Naze* in the South, up to the Latitude of 63. 0. where the Government of *Drontheim* begins. It is divided into the Governments of *Bergben* and *Staffenger*: Which are again subdivided into smaller Prefectures. Those under *Bergben* are, *Nord Holand*, *Sud Holand*, *Hardanger*, *Hordaland*, *Lerdal*, *Soghne*, *Sund-fiord*, *Nord-fiord*, and *Sundmarland*.

*Bergben*, an ancient and famous Sea-port, mentioned by *Pomponius Mela* and *Pliny*, stands on a Bay of the Ocean, which makes a commodious Harbour, in the Latitude of 61. 0. at the distance of 140 Miles from the *Naze* to the North, and as many from *Christiana* to the West; it is almost surrounded with Hills, from whence it has its Name. It is reckon'd the largest, most beautiful, and most populous City of *Norway*, as also the principal Mart and Magazine for Merchandize; divers sorts of Furrs, vast quantities of Hides, Tallow, Fir-Timber, &c. being brought hither by the Neighbouring Provinces and Shipt off to Foreign Parts. The Inhabitants likewise, drive a great Trade in Stock-Fish, which are taken on these Coasts. The Buildings were formerly very mean, but through the flocking of Strangers hither, on account of Trade from *Hamburg*, *Lubeck*, *Holland*, *England*, &c. The Place is so Enriched, that the Houses are not only new Built, but it is also Beautified with a fair Exchange. The Haven is surrounded with Hills, which render it secure from the Weather, is very Capacious, and deep enough to receive Ships of above 200 Tuns, and is defended by a strong Castle. The City is endow'd with many Privileges, and honour'd with the Presence of the Vice-Roy. All which render this the Metropolis of the Kingdom of *Norway*.

*Eyde*, about 15 Miles East from *Bergben*, and

*Bischofsware*, 10 Miles from *Eyde*, are reckon'd the other Principal Towns in this Government.

*Staffenger* or *Stavanger*, is seated in a Peninsula, upon a spacious Bay of the Ocean, full of small Islands, at the distance of 90 Miles from *Bergben* to the South, and 150 from *Christiana* to the West. The Harbour is very large and safe; and tho' the City be but a small one, it is the See of a Bishop, and the chief of a Government, which has under it the Prefectures of *Carmen*, *Ryfoll*, *Feren*, and *Dalene*: And is Guarded by the strong Fortrefs of *Dofwick*, which stands to the Sea-ward, about 2 Miles from the Town.

The Government of *DRONTHEIM* is the largest part of *Norway*, being near 500 Miles in

length, and in some parts, 120, tho' generally about 80 Miles in breadth. It lies along the Coasts of the North-Sea, from the 63d to the 69th Degree of Latitude, having some Provinces of *Sweden* and the *Swedish Lapland* on the East, the Ocean on the West, *Bergben* on the South, and *Wardhuys* on the North. The Country is mountainous, Woody, Cold and Barren; so that tho' it be large, the Towns are not very considerable. For Civil Government, it is divided into the Prefectures or Districts of *Nordmer*, *Surendal*, *Fesserlen*, *Stadt-burghen*, *Nordbiegden*, *Normandal*, *Faderogen*, *Maffen*, *Scerduel*, *Strinden*, *Seöer*, *Lenstrand*, *Bynes*, *Schoenien*, *Guldael*, *Mesdael*, *Oerkedael*, *Singefegan*, *Rendebone*, *Obdae* and *Salten*. The Provinces of *Jemmland* and *Hardendal*, were also part of this Government before they were united to the Crown of *Sweden* by the Treaty of *Breslau*; and indeed the whole Country was given to the *Swedes* by the Treaty of *Roschild*, in 1651. but was restored by the Treaty of *Copenhagen*, in 1660.

*Drontheim* or *Truntheim*, is seated on the Coasts of the Northern Ocean, at the Mouth of the River *Nider*, from which it was anciently named *Nidrosia*, in the Latitude of 65. 20. about 300 Miles North-East from *Bergben*. It is an Archiepiscopal See, and was heretofore the Royal Seat of the ancient Kings of *Norway*, being then a large City, but is at present not considerable, having suffer'd thro' many Conflagrations, particularly in 1522. when the stately Cathedral, dedicated to St. *Olaus*, which surpassed in Beauty all the Churches in the Northern Countries, was almost destroy'd. The Palace also is fallen to decay, and the Walls, Bulwarks, and Trenches in Rubbish; so that the City is rather now a Village, the Port is incommodious, the Entrance being obstructed by Rocks, and in general the Place not at all considerable, except for the Seat of the Governor, who usually Resides in the Castle.

The country round about is very Barren, and even Wood is so scarce, that a little beyond the City, the People are fain to use Fish-bones for Fuel and divets Utensils.

*Leestrand* stands about 10 Miles South from *Drontheim*.

*Stronden* stands 40 Miles South-East from *Drontheim*, on the River *Nider*.

*Scerdale* stands on the other side of the same Bay, about 7 Leagues North-West from *Drontheim*.

*Opdael* and *Sunpael*, both seated at the bottom of a narrow Bay, about 10 Leagues from the Ocean, and 100 Miles South from *Drontheim*.

*Romsdalen* stands at the bottom of another Bay, 70 Miles South-East from *Opdael*, 170 from *Drontheim*.

*Solendael*, about 30 Miles South-West from *Romsdalen*, stands on another Bay. They are all Places of some Trade, but we find nothing remarkable of 'em in Authors.

Northward, on the extream Point of this Province, near the Confines of *Wardhuys*, and the Latitude of 69. 20. stands *Melanjar*, upon the Bay of the Ocean, and about 80 Miles from it stands *Seöer*, which are the two chief Towns of the Northern Division of *Drontheim*, called the Government of *Salten*.

The Province of *WARDHUTS*, or the *Norwegian Lapland*, and *Finmark*, or as it is called by the Natives *Taakemark*, is the most Northern Part of *Norway*, and bounded on the North and West by the



the Ocean, on the East by the Muscovite Lapland, and on the South, by the Sweedish Lapland. Its extent is near 300 Miles from East to West, and 200 from North to South. From the Northern Situation we cannot expect much produce from the Earth, or plenty of People, and consequently no Cities, or considerable Towns that make any Figure in History. It was anciently Inhabited by the Finni, of whom Tacitus says, *They are a People extraordinary Savage, and miserably Poor, have neither Horses, Arms, Houses, nor Home, but feed upon Roots, and such Provisions as their Bows and Arrows can procure, and are clothed with the Skins of Wild-Beasts.* And to this day they live very Rudely, but their Manners being much the same with the Sweedish Laplanders, we shall refer the Reader thither, intending to speak more particularly of those People who are so different from other Nations.

*Wardhus*, the Seat of the Governor, is a Castle, with a Street, or small Town of Cottages, Inhabited by Fishermen on the Island *Warda*, which lies on the North-East point of Norway, near the Confines of the Muscovite Lapland; the Castle is old, and not very well Fortify'd, and the Island is but small, being only 14 or 15 Miles in Circumference, and separated about 2 Leagues from the Continent. The Inhabitants of this and the Neighbouring Islands, live upon dry'd Stock-Fish, and have neither Bread, nor Beer, but what is brought them from other Parts, by the English and Dutch Ships, that come this way to trade.

On the Island *Maggero*, (the Land whereof makes the North Cape, or *Promontorium Rutube*) as also on *Suroy* and *Trommes*, 2 other Islands more Southward, are Churches for Christian Worship, but on the Continent the People are stupid Idolaters.

We have said above, that the Government of *Wardhus* comprehends *Finmark*, and the Norwegi-an Lapland, tis necessary to subjoyn that the Maritime part of it is *Finmark*, and the upland and Southern Part is *Lapland*.

There are a great number of Islands lie along on the Coasts of all this Kingdom, but they are not considerable enough to deserve naming. Only *Iseland* must not be omitted.

**ISELAND**, so call'd from its extreame Coldness, is an Island seated in the Northern Ocean, about 150 Leagues Eastward from the Coast of Norway, and 120 Leagues North from Scotland. The *Arctic Circle*, and the *First Meridian*, both pass over this Island, so its Latitude and Longitude is easily guess'd at. Its extent from East to West, is near 300 Miles, and from North to South, about 150. The Soil (tho' the most South part of the Island, lies in near the same Latitude with *Drenthaim*, where the Land is barren) is reasonably Fertile, and affords Pasture for Horses, Cows, Oxen, and other Cattle: The Air is extreame Cold but very Healthy, and the Inhabitants are strong, and remarkable for their Long Lives, without knowing the use of Physick. In the Woods are White Bears, Foxes, Hares, and other Game, of whose Skins the Inhabitants make their Cloaths. On the Coasts they catch Whales, and so great a quantity of other Fish, that when they want Hay, they dry 'em to give their Cattle. The Mountains are always cover'd with Snow; three of them are *Vulcano's*, and continually cast out Fire, the most remarkable whereof is Mount *Hekla*, which cannot be approach'd nearer than 2 Leagues without Danger; at the Foot of it are several Mines of Brimstone. Such

shoals of Ice with melted Snow, come down from the Mountains, that frequently Trees and Cattle are carry'd away. The People are honest, and reckon'd the best and faithfullest Servants in the World; and in the Towns the Christian Religion, according to the *Lutheran Perswasion* is profess'd, but in the ruder Parts Idolatry is still follow'd. The chief Town is *Skalholt*, which stands in the Latitude of 66. 0. to the North-East of Mount *Hekla*, the other chief Towns are *Hola* on the North Coast, *Bereft* on the South-East, *Hamer* on the South-West, &c. In the Castle of *Bested* the King's Vice-Roy Resides. The Houses are Built of Wood, and cover'd with the Bark or Trees, Skins of Turfs; the Villagers upon the Sea-Coasts, and along the Rivers remove their Houses, as their occasions or inclinations lead them. The Havens of *Hancfroid* and *Keplaurch*, are much frequented by Ships from *Hamburg*, *Denmark*, *England*, and other Parts, who bring the Inhabitants the Necessaries they want, and receive in Exchange Tallow, Hides, Butter, Whale-Oil, dry'd Fish, and Sea-Horse-Teeth, which is as good as Ivory.

The Islands of *Schetland* and *Fero*, which lie between *Iseland* and *Scotland*, in the same Latitude with the Government of *Berghen* in Norway, are also Subjects of the King of Denmark.

The King of Denmark also reckons *Greenland* and *Greenland*, part of his Dominions; but of it we shall speak hereafter, when we come to treat of the Countries lying about the North and South Poles.

And now having pass'd from the *Naze* to the North-Cape, and taken a sufficient View of Norway, we might pass on to Sweden, but that the little Province *Bahus*, tho' belonging to the Swede, was formerly part of Norway, must be mention'd here.

The Province or Government of **BAHUS**, is the most South part of Norway, a narrow Tract of Land lying on the Coast of the *Baltick Sea*, about 90 Miles in length from North to South, between the *Baltick* on the West, *Sweden* on the East, *Aggarhusen* on the North, and *Gothland* on the South; its Breadth is not proportionate to the Length, being in some parts 10. in none above 25 Miles Broad. The Country is Fruitful enough, but a great part of it is taken up by the large Lakes of Water. It formerly belong'd to the King of Denmark, till by the Treaty of *Roschild*, in 1658, it was given to the Swede, to whom it is now Subject; and is divided into two Parts, *Inlande* and *Wychsiden*.

*Bahus*, which gives name to the Province, is a strong Castle built on a small Island, made by the River *Trolbeta*, 150 Miles South-East from *Aggarhusen*, 9 Miles from *Gotteberg*, and 20 Leagues East from the Cape *Scagen* in *Jutland*. It was Founded by *Harquin II.* King of Norway, in the Year 1309. and stands on a steep Rock near the Banks of the River, and was reckon'd a sufficient Bulwark against the Swedes and *Ostrogoths*. It was Surrender'd with the Province to the Swedes, in 1658. but afterwards in 1678, when the Danes assembled to retake it, it withstood their Assaults.

*Maeistrand*, or *Maeisterland*, is the only remarkable Town in the Province of *Wychsiden*, and is seated on a Rocky Peninsula, about 10 Miles below *Bahus*; it is a place of great Trade for Herrings, and other Sea-Fish; and is guarded by a strong Castle, Built at the Mouth of the River *Wener*, which not far from thence falls into the *Catgat*. It was taken by the Danes, in 1676. but restor'd by the Treaty at *Fountainbleau*, in 1679.

SWEDEN;



# SWEDEN, Suecia.



**S**WEDEN, which takes up the greatest part of Scandinavia, is Bounded with Norwegian Lapland, and the North Sea on the North, the Baltic Sea on the South, Muscovy on the East, and Denmark and Norway on the West. The extent of the whole Kingdom is about 800 Miles from North to South, and much about the same from East to West. It lies between the 56th Degree and the 68th Degree of North Latitude, and from the 30th Degree to the 60th Degree of Longitude, in form resembling a Vine-Leaf, whereof

the Gulf of Bothnia, is the Stem, round which the several parts of Sweden are seated; Gothland and Sweden Proper on the West-side, Finland and Livonia on the East, and Lapland on the North. The Country is very much cover'd with Lakes and Forests, and some parts with craggy Mountains; however, the other parts of the Land afford Corn sufficient for the Inhabitants, Pasture, and Breeds of Horses and Cattle: Westmania and Dalecarlia, have rich Copper-Mines, and even one Silver one. Finland produces Pitch, Tar, and Fir-Timber, and Vermelandia good



good store of Masts for Shipping. So that the Native **COMMODITIES** of Sweden, are Copper, Iron, Tar, Pitch, Hemp, Masts, Deal-Boards, &c. which are so useful Commodities, that all the Nations of Europe resort hither, and bring the Inhabitants every thing they want in Exchange. But the Commodities whereof they make the greatest account, are Copper and Iron, which they Manufacture, and send abroad in great Quantities.

The Seas which wash the Coasts of Sweden, are the *O. Sund*, vulgarly call'd the *Sound*: The *Baltick* or *East-Sea*: The Gulf of *Bothnia*, or as the Natives call it the *B. d. m. Zee*, and the Gulf of *Finland*. The *Sund* divides *Gothia* and *Scania* from *Denmark*; the *Baltick* flows between *Schonen* and *Germany*, and also between *Gothia* and *Poland*. The *Bothnic-Bay*, lies between *Sweden* and *Finland*, and the Gulf of *Finland*, divides *Finland* from *Livonia*; and has also communication with the Lake *Ladega*, by means of the River *Nieva*, which passes out of that Lake into the Gulf. The Lakes within the Land are almost innumerable, but those of greatest extent, are the *Stene Mitter*, and *Möler* in *Gothia*, the *Ula-Treft* in *Bothnia*, the *Jende* or *Pejende* in *Finland*, the *Onega* and the *Ladega* on the Confines of *Finland* and *Muscovy*, and the *Peibus* in *Livonia*. Into these and the other Lakes, run a vast number of Rivers, which not only afford the Inhabitants abundance of Fish, but also a conveyance of their Copper and Iron, as the Forests do Fuel, by means whereof their Mines are wrought with great facility; and do in effect produce more of these Metals, than any other Country in the World.

The **INHABITANTS** are undoubtedly the Progeny of the ancient *Goths*, (of whom more hereafter) with great mixture of *Germans*, and other Neighbours. They are in their Temper Honest, Frank and Plain-Dealers, of a large Stature, and handsom Proportion; the Gentry Travel much, and usually speak several Languages. The Women are also Handsom, Modest and Neat, and the Common People Laborious and Frugal.

The ancient Bards that sung the Stories of their Heroes, and the *Rimick* Character in which they wrote them, are curious Speculations to Learned Critics; but otherwise Learning was anciently in no great Vogue in Sweden; but since Christianity has been Establish'd, many Universities have been Erected, and several Persons of eminent Learning, have flourish'd here.

The **LANGUAGE** of Sweden is a Dialect of the ancient *Teutonic*, and not exceedingly different from the *German* and *Danish*; it is the harsher of the three; and therefore in Writing, the *Dutch* is rather used by the Gentry.

The ancient Inhabitants of Sweden, were gross Idolaters in Religion, till about the Year 800, at the Request of *Biorno* then King of Sweden, the Emperor *Charles the Great*, sent able Ministers to Preach Christianity here, which was continu'd with application, but the Establishment of it not Effectuated, till 1013, at which time *Ethelred* King of *England*, sent *Sigfrid*, Archbishop of *York*, on this Pious Work, who Baptiz'd the King *Olaus*, and caus'd Churches to be built in every Province, and Christianity continu'd to be exercis'd, but with the intermixture of Popish Superstition, till about the Year 1530. King *Gustavus I.* establish'd the **LUTHERAN REFORMED RELIGION**, which has ever since been profess'd here.

### Of the Ancient State of S W E D E N.

The various and different Accounts of Authors, about the Primitive State of Sweden, is so distracting, that it is almost impossible to draw a coherent Story out of them, and therefore we chuse rather to give the Reader a Summary of what is related on this Subject, by the Judicious Historian *Samuel Puffendorf*, who was a Native of this Country, and an able Statesman, and may be suppos'd to know the Affairs of his own Country. The Swedish Historians, says he, have out of their ancient Monuments, shewn the World that this Kingdom is the most ancient in Europe, and that this Country was after the Deluge, sooner stored with Inhabitants than the other parts of Europe: Nevertheless, it is very uncertain who were the first Inhabitants, and at what time they first settled here, as likewise whether they were immediately Govern'd by Kings, or whether the Fathers of Families had the chief sway among them, till the Regal was grafted on the Paternal Power. The Names and Deeds of their Kings, and the times of their Reigns are also not easie to be determin'd, for the List of these Kings which have been Published, is not so Authentick, but that it may be call'd in question. And as to the Transactions of those Times, they are most of them taken out of ancient Songs, and fabulous Legends, and some of them out of the Allegorical Traditions of their ancient Poets, or Scalders, which perhaps have been wrongfully Interpreted by some Authors. And *Johannes Messenius* in his *Scandinavia Illustrata*, does not stick to say, That the old Swedish Historiographer *Johannes Magnus*, did strive to outdo in his History, the Danish Historian, *Saxo Grammaticus*. *Joh. Magnus*, makes *Magog* the Son of *Japhet*, and Grandson of *Noah*, the first Founder of the *Scythick* and *Gothick* Nations, and says, that from his two Sons, *Sveno* and *Gether*, or *Gog*, they had their Names. He Relates, that after this Family was extinguish'd, Sweden was for the space of 400 Years, under the Government of certain Judges; and that about 800 Years after the Deluge, both the Kingdom of *Swedes* and *Goths*, were united under *Beiricus*, who in Person planted a Colony of the *Goths* beyond the Seas, after having Conquer'd the *Ulmiruges*, who then Inhabited *Prussia*; from whence he extended his Conquests over the *Vandals*. A considerable time after, these Nations settled themselves not far from the Mouth of the *Danube*, near the *Black-Sea*; from whence having undertaken several Expeditions both into *Asia* and *Europe*, at last in the Third and Fourth Centuries after the Birth of *Christ*, they enter'd the Roman Provinces on this side the *Danube*, and carried their Conquering Arms into *Italy* and *Spain*, where they Erected two Kingdoms. But the former part of this Relation is contradicted by *Messenius*, who also rejects the the List which *Joh. Magnus* has given us of the Kings before our Saviour's Birth, alledging that the times before *Christ's* Nativity, are all invol'd in fabulous Narrations, as in those Northern Parts: And that most of these Kings liv'd after the Birth of our Saviour. But the Chronology even of the first Centuries after our Saviour, and the Genealogies of those Kings being uncertain, we shall only give the Reader a List of the Names and Succession of those that Reign'd Since Christianity began to be Preach'd here; which according to *Puffendorf* is as follows.

A Chro-



*A Chronological Table of the KINGS of  
S W E D E N.*

	Began to Reign, A. D.
<i>Bero or Biarno III.</i>	780.
<i>Amundus.</i>	824.
<i>Sivardus II.</i>	827.
<i>Hererus or Haraldus.</i>	834.
<i>Charles VI.</i>	856.
<i>Biarno IV.</i>	868.
<i>Ingellus.</i>	883.
<i>Olaus, converted to Christianity.</i>	891.
<i>Ingo his Son.</i>	900.
<i>Eric, Weatherbat.</i>	907.
<i>Eric, Segerhesel.</i>	917.
<i>Steenchild the Mild, suppressing Idolatry, he was Massacred by the Pagans.</i>	
<i>Olaus, Skot-koning.</i>	1012.
<i>He was Baptized by Sigisfrid, sent by King Ethel- red of England. He united the Kingdom of Swedes and Goths.</i>	
<i>Amund Slemme.</i>	1035.
<i>Haquin the Ruddy.</i>	1041.
<i>Steenchild the Younger.</i>	1059.
<i>Ingo the Pious.</i>	1059.
<i>He destroy'd the Idol at Upsal, for which he was Murder'd by the Pagans.</i>	
<i>Halsian.</i>	1066.
<i>Philip.</i>	1080.
<i>Ingo III.</i>	1100.
<i>Ragwald Knapbosde.</i>	1129.
<i>Swercher II.</i>	1140.
<i>Eric, the Saint.</i>	1154.
<i>Charles, Son of Swercher.</i>	1162.
<i>Cnut, the Son of Eric.</i>	1168.
<i>Swercher III. Son of Charles.</i>	1192.
<i>Eric Cnutson.</i>	1210.
<i>John, Son of Swercher.</i>	1219.
<i>Eric the Lisper.</i>	1223.
<i>He converted Finland to Christianity.</i>	
<i>Waldemar.</i>	1251.
<i>Magnus.</i>	1279.
<i>Briger II.</i>	1291.
<i>Magnus Smeek.</i>	1319.
<i>He was Depos'd.</i>	
<i>Albert, Duke of Mecklenburg.</i>	1364.
<i>Margaret, Queen of Denmark and Norway.</i>	1388.
<i>She made a Solemn Union of the Three King- doms at Calmar, 1396. appointing her Nephew Eric to succeed.</i>	
<i>Eric XIII.</i>	1396.
<i>He Married the Daughter of Henry IV. King of England. The Swedes Rebell'd against him, and constituted a Marshal to Govern the Realm.</i>	
<i>Christopher Duke of Bavaria.</i>	1439.
<i>Charles Cnutson Marshal, chosen King.</i>	1448.
<i>Christian I. King of Denmark.</i>	1458.
<i>He was Expell'd, and forc'd to Resign.</i>	
<i>Eric Axelsson, Regent.</i>	1466.
<i>John, King of Denmark.</i>	1481.
<i>Steno Sture the Regent, oppos'd him.</i>	
<i>Christian II. King of Denmark.</i>	1520.
<i>He Murder'd the Nobility and Senate, and com- mitted many Barbarities.</i>	
<i>Gustavus Erickson, oppos'd the Danes, and chosen King.</i>	1523.
<i>The Crown was made Hereditary to his Family, and he introduc'd the Reformation of Religion.</i>	
<i>Eric XIV. his Son.</i>	1559.

He introduc'd the Titles of Earls and Barons, and made them Hereditary.

On account of Disorders between him and the Family of the *Stures*, a Rebellion was fomented, and he at last Depos'd.

*John III.* his Brother, Succeeded. 1568.

He made his offers at restoring Popery, but was oppos'd in it by his Brother *Charles*, Duke of *Sudermania*.

*Sigismund* his Son, King of *Poland*, Succeeded. 1592.

But *Charles* his Uncle, Administer'd the Govern-ment. *Sigismund* endeavouring to introduce Po-pery, caused a Defection in *Sweden*, and was in the end Depos'd, and his Son also Excluded.

Wherefore his Uncle,

*Charles IX.* Son of King *Gustavus*, Succeeded 1604.  
*Gustavus Adolphus*, his Son. 1611.

An Heroick Valiant Prince, whose Actions are sufficiently known. He was Kill'd in the Battle of *Lutzen* in *Germany*, Nov. 6. 1633.

*Christiana* his Daughter succeeded. 1633.

She resign'd the Crown to her Nephew,  
*Charles Gustavus*, Duke of *Deux Ponts*, who was accordingly the same Day Crown'd King of *Swe-  
den*, June 6. 1654.

*Charles XI.* his Son, succeeded. 1666.

*Charles XII.* his Son, now Reigning. 1697.

Tho' the *Swedish* and *Gothick* Nations have been anciently famous for Warlike Atchievements, and the Men are very fit to endure the fatigues of War, yet were their Military Affairs in former Times but very indifferently order'd, their chief Force consisting in the Boors, till *Gustavus*, and his Successors, with the assistance of some German and Scotch Officers and Soldiers, have introduc'd such Discipline as that now they do not stand in need of Foreigners, except upon an emergency to make up the number of Men, where- with they are not overstock'd, especially since the late great Wars under *Gustavus Adolphus*. The late King has put their Forces both Horse and Foot into a bet- ter condition than ever they were before, and they are maintain'd with very small Charge to the Crown, the Foot being maintain'd by the Boors, and the Horse have for the most part small Farms of the King's assign'd them, the Rents whereof are their Pay; so that only the King's Guards are paid out of the Treas- ury. For the Naval Security, the Kingdom of *Sweden* has a considerable Fleet of Ships of War, the Station whereof was formerly at *Stockholm*, but of late Years a new Harbour has been made at *Bleking*, whence the Ships may put to Sea with more expedition and convenience. And on the Land-side *Sweden* is Guard- ed with inaccessible Rocks towards *Norway*, and strong Forts towards *Muscovy* and *Poland*.

*Of the Government of S W E D E N.*

The Crown of *Sweden* was anciently bestow'd by Election of the Great Men and Estates of the Realm, on such Person of Merit as they thought fit, till the Kings of *Denmark* by their Interest, having got into the Throne, and used the *Swedes* with too much se- verity, especially *Christiern II.* who committed great Cruelties on them, *Gustavus Ericus* a Nobleman of great Courage and Honour, and Nephew to *Steno Sture*, the preceeding King, appearing at the Head of the remainder of the *Swedish* Nobility that had escap'd the Massacre, drove out the *Dane*, and in Reward had the Crown conferr'd on him, and made



made Hereditary to his Posterity; this happen'd in the Year 1544. And tho' the Estates at that time reserv'd to themselves the Power of chusing again, if the Race of that Prince should happen to fail, yet when Queen *Christina*, the only Issue of *Gustavus Adolphus*, resign'd the Crown, and nominated *Charles Gustavus*, Duke of *Deux Ponts*, her Nephew, to succeed her, it was not oppos'd: And furthermore in the Year 1680. in the Assembly of the Nobility held at *Stockholm*, it was agreed, That in case of the King's dangerous Sickness he might nominate his Successor without the Advice of the Five Great Officers, which was confirm'd by the Estates. And in 1682. it was further Enacted, That Daughters should succeed in case of failure of Male Issue.

The Estates of the Realm (whose Authority was much greater before the Form of Government was chang'd, consists of Four Orders, viz. The Nobility, the Deputies of the Clergy, Burgeses and Peasants. The Nobility have for their President the Marshal of the Dyet, appointed by the King; the Clergy the Archbishop of *Upsal*, as Primate of the Kingdom: The Burgeses usually the Burgomaster of *Stockholm*; and the Peasants chuse a President or Speaker of their own.

Next to the States General, the Senate is the most considerable Body in the Nation. The Number of Senators is not fix'd; they are sometimes more, and sometimes fewer, as the King sees fit. In Queen *Christina*'s time they were Forty, in *Charles Gustavus*'s time Twenty Four, and now they are but Twelve. They were formerly call'd Senators of the Kingdom, but now the King's Senators. Formerly they were Judges of the King's Actions, but now they are no more than Witnesses. And altho' he takes their Advice in Matters of State, they are not permitted to prescribe. The King alone has the Power of establishing Imposts, of regulating the Magazines for the Soldiers in the Provinces, of Coining Money, and Digging Salt-peter Mines. He names all Magistrates and Officers, and has Power, in case of necessity, to take the tenth Man in the Nation for the Wars; tho' oftentimes he takes Money for them, and hires Foreigners, which is the Reason there are so many Strangers, especially *Germans*, in the *Swedish* Armies.

The Five Officers of the Crown are, 1. The *Drotset*, or Chief Justice. 2. The Lord High Constable. 3. The High Admiral. 4. The High Chancellor. And 5. The Treasurer. The *Drotset* is the Chief Officer in the Nation, and was formerly a kind of Vice Roy; he has the Honour of putting on the King's Crown at the Coronation: He presides in the Supreme Court of Justice, to which there is Appeal from all other Courts. The Constable presides in the Council of War, and has the Inspection of the Discipline and managing the Army, and has many great and honourable Privileges. The Admiral's Power is also very great; he has the ordering of the Fleet, and the naming all the Officers in it, with many other Privileges. The Chancellor is the Chief Officer in the State for administering Justice under the King, for rectifying Abuses, and giving necessary Rules for the good of the Publick; he keeps the great Seal, and dispatches all Affairs of State. The Lord High Treasurer has the Administration of the King's Revenues, pays all the Officers of the Kingdom, and presides in the Chamber of Accounts: He has also many Privileges.

The REVENUES of the KING of *Sweden* were anciently so small, that they were hardly enough to maintain him, consisting only of Duties on Exported and Imported Goods, and the Discovery of Mines. But the Riches and Revenues of the Church, that have been Seculariz'd since the Reformation, have contributed much to the Increase of them: And the Resumption of Lands granted away from the Crown by preceding Kings, to the Nobility and Gentry, have rais'd them to the highest Degree. This was done by the late King, in the Year 1680. and tho' it was much oppos'd by the Assembly of the Estates, yet the lower Orders consenting, the Nobility were fain to comply. Besides these Branches the King has a third part of all Fines, when they do not exceed 40 Marks of Silver; and if they do, he takes it all. He has also all Forfeitures upon account of High-Treason; and the Estates of Strangers, if their Heirs do not appear within a Year after their Death.

The Administration of JUSTICE in *Sweden* is perform'd in Five several Courts. 1. The King's Chamber, wherein all superior Causes, as between Noblemen, Senators and Publick Officers are heard, and Appeals receiv'd from inferior Courts: The *Drotset* sits as Judge here. 2. The Court Marshal, wherein all Matters relating to War are determin'd: The Grand Marshal of the Army is President of it, and has two Assessors that are Senators or Officers of State to assist him. 3. The Court of Chancery, where all Mandates, Edicts, Commissions, &c. in the King's Name are made: The Chancellor of the Kingdom presides in it, and is assisted by Four Senators, Assessors, and the two Secretaries of State. 4. The Court of Admiralty, which transacts all Business Marine: Here the High Admiral presides, attended with Four Vice-Admirals, as many Senators, and several Captains Assessors. 5. The Court of Exchequer for deciding Controversies relating to the King's Revenue: The Grand Treasurer presides here, and has four Assessors, two Senators, and two Noblemen to assist him.

There are other Courts that judge all common Causes, both Civil and Criminal, without Appeal; they were Establish'd by King *Gustavus Adolphus*, and planted in convenient places all over the Kingdom. Each consists of a President, who is a Senator, and a certain number of Lawyers and Gentlemen for Assessors. These Parliaments are held at these Cities, viz. 1. *Stockholm*. 2. *Jenekoping* in *Gothia*. 3. *Abo*, in *Finland*. 4. *Derpt*, in *Livonia*. And 5. at *Wismar*, in *Germany*.

*The Dominions of the King of Sweden, consist of these Eight Parts.*

I. *SWEDEN* properly so call'd, lying between *Norway* on the West, and the *Bothnick-Bay* on the East.

II. *GOTHLAND*, on the South of *Sweden*.

III. *FINLAND*, on the East-side of the *Bothnick-Gulf*.

IV. *LIVONIA*, on the South-side of the *Finnic Bay*.

V. *INGRIA*, on the East of *Livonia*.

VI. *Swedish LAPLAND*.

VII. Several ISLANDS in the *Baltick Sea*.

D d d

VIII. P Q.



VIII. *POMERANIA*, and some other Parts of *Germany*.

The Sub-divisions whereof are seen in this Table, and the Principal Cities and Towns in each, are describ'd in the particular Accounts of the Provinces which follow.

Sweden in General, in Eight Parts, is thus Divided.

- |                                                |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
|------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| I. Sweden properly so called, in Eleven Parts. | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>{ Uplandia.</li> <li>{ Sudermania.</li> <li>{ Westmania.</li> <li>{ Nericia.</li> <li>{ Gestricia.</li> <li>{ Helsingia.</li> <li>{ Dalecarlia.</li> <li>{ Medelpadia.</li> <li>{ Angermania.</li> <li>{ Femperia.</li> <li>{ Bottnia.</li> </ul> |
| II. Gothia, in Three Parts.                    | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>{ East-Gothland.</li> <li>{ West-Gothland.</li> <li>{ South-Gothland.</li> </ul>                                                                                                                                                                  |

These are Sub-divided into Nine smaller Parts.

- |                |                                                                                                                    |
|----------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| East-Gothland. | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>{ East-Gothland proper.</li> <li>{ Smaland.</li> <li>{ Oenaland.</li> </ul> |
| West-Gothland. | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>{ West-Gothia.</li> <li>{ Wermeland.</li> <li>{ Dalia.</li> </ul>           |

South-Gothland.

{ Schonen or Scandia;  
Bleking.  
Halland.

III. Swedish Lapland, in Five Parts.

{ Torne-Lapmarck.  
Kimi-Lapmarck.  
Lula-Lapmarck.  
Pitha-Lapmarck.  
Uma-Lapmarck.

IV. Finland, in Seven Parts.

{ Finland proper.  
Cajania.  
Savolaxia.  
Kexholm.  
Carelia.  
Nylandia.  
Tavasthia.

V. Livonia, or Liefland, into Three Parts.

{ 1. Esthonia, which is Subdivided into five Parts. { Alentakia.  
Wiria.  
Harria.  
Mika.  
Fervia.  
2. Oedepoa.  
3. Letten, or Letitia.

VI. Ingria.

{ Ingria proper  
Ingermania.  
Soluska.

VII. The Islands of

{ Gotblandia.  
Oeland.  
Oesel.  
Dagho.  
Aland.  
Huena.  
Rugen.

VIII. The Upper Pomerania, Bremen and Feraen in Germany.

## The particular Description of the Kingdom of S W E D E N.

### C H A P. II.

#### Of S W E D E N properly so call'd.

**S**WEDEN properly so call'd, is bounded on the North with *Lapland*, on the South with *Gothland* and *Schonen*, on the East with the *Bothnick* Bay, and the West with the *Dofrine* Mountains; extending 300 Miles from North to South, and 200 from East to West; a Fruitful, but in some Parts, Mountainous Country, abounding with rich Mines of Copper, and affording Conveniencies of Water and Fuel for working them, It is divided into Eleven Parts, viz.

1. *Uplandia*, a small Province, but the most Fruitful; it is surrounded by the *Baltick* Sea on the North-East and South-West, having *Sudermania* on the South, *Nericia* and *Westmania* on the West, and *Gestricia* on the North.

2. *Sudermania*, divided from *Upland*, on the North, by the *Lake Meller*, hath *East-Gothland* on the South, *Nericia* on the West, and the

*Baltick* on the East. This is the place of Building Ships.

3. *Westmania*, lies on the West of *Uplandia*, having *Nericia* on the South, and *Dalecarlia* on the North. The Soil is Fruitful, and the Mines afford Steel, Iron, Copper, Lead and Sulphur.

4. *Nericia*, lies between the three above-mention'd. It abounds with Mines.

5. *Gestricia*, is North of *Upland*, along the Coast of the *Bothnick* Gulf. It has some Iron Mines, and good Corn.

6. *Helsingia*, North of *Gestricia*, having the *Bothnick* Gulf on the East, and *Dalecarlia* on the West. The Soil produces Corn and Pasture; and the Inhabitants are chiefly employ'd in Breeding Cattle.

7. *Dalecarlia*, an inland Province on the West of these Two, and bounded on the West by *Norma*; it is a large Tract of Land from North to South, but



is a Woody, Barren, and somewhat Mountainous Country; however 'tis considerable on account of the Mines of Copper, Allum and Vitriol, with which it abounds.

8. *Medelpadia*, on the North of *Helsingia*, and formerly part of it, is a smaller Country of the like Soil, only more Woody and Mountainous.

9. *Angermania*. And 10 *Jemtia*, lie on the North of *Medelpadia* and *Dalecarlia*; the former is a very Fruitful and Pleasant Country, the Soil Rich, and producing plenty of Corn, but withal somewhat Mountainous; it has the *Bothnick* Gulf on the East, and *Bothnia* on the North. *Jemtia* is more Mountainous, and lies on the West of *Angermania*.

11. *Bothnia*, call'd *West-Bothnia*, the opposite Land in *Finland* being the *East-Bothnia*, is a narrow Tract of Land lying along the Shoar of the *Bothnick* Bay, and on the other Parts surrounded by *Lapland*. It is a Sandy Barren Soil, but has store of Fish.

The Cities and Chief Towns in these Provinces are these,

In Upland,	{ <i>Stockholm</i> .
	{ <i>Upsal</i> .
	{ <i>Engkoping</i> .
	{ <i>Nykoping</i> .
Sudermania,	{ <i>Stregnes</i> .
	{ <i>Torsilia</i> .
	{ <i>Arosio</i> .
Westmanaa,	{ <i>Koping</i> .
	{ <i>Arboga</i> .
	{ <i>Ordbo</i> .
Nericia,	{ <i>Kunda</i> .
	{ <i>Gevalia</i> .
Gestrucia,	{ <i>Coperberget</i> .
	{ <i>Hundswickwald</i> .
Helsingia,	{ <i>Dilsbo</i> .
	{ <i>Alta</i> .
	{ <i>Idra</i> .
Dalecarlia,	{ <i>Limna</i> .
	{ <i>Hedemora</i> .
	{ <i>Hersonand</i> .
Angermania,	{ <i>Natra</i> .
	{ <i>Tuna</i> .
Medelpadia,	{ <i>Judal</i> .
	{ <i>Reslundi</i> .
Jemtia,	{ <i>Lidk</i> .
	{ <i>Torne</i> .
West-Bothnia,	{ <i>Uma</i> .
	{ <i>Pila</i> .
	{ <i>Lula</i> .

*Stockholm*, *Holmia* aut *Stocholmia*, the Metropolis of the whole Kingdom, being the Seat of the King: Is situated on the side of the Lake *Meller*, on several small Islands like *Venice*, in the Latitude of 59. 0. and Longitude of 35. 0. but few Leagues from the *Baltick* Sea, near 300 Miles from *Copenhagen* to the North-East, and as many from *Christina* to the East. It is encompass'd, especially toward the Sea, with steep craggy Rocks, as also with high Mountains and Lakes, which render its Prospect somewhat uncouth. It was heretofore a Place of little Note, Founded by King *Birgerus* in 1291. and took its Name from the great quantity of Timber us'd in Building it, *Stock* signifying *Wood*, and *Holm* an *Island*. In 1407. it was consum'd by Lightning, and some Thousands of People perish'd in the Conflagration. By the Tyrannical Oppression of *Christian II.* King of *Den-*

*mark*, the Inhabitants fled away, but were call'd home again by *Gustavus I.* in 1529. In 1552. a Fire happen'd, which by reason of the Wooden Houses, consum'd the greatest part of the Town. But it was soon Re-built upon Piles, partly with Stone and partly with Brick; so that it is at present a Beautiful City, and has for these two Ages been the Seat of the *Swedish* Monarchs. Its Haven which opens into the *Baltick*, is of dangerous access, by reason of the Rocks; but within is one of the most Commodious in *Europe*; for the Ships of the largest size lie close to the Kays, and so secure from the Wind, that they need no Anchors or Cables to hold 'em: Its Entrance is defended by two Forts, and the City is guarded by a strong Castle. It is the most considerable place for Trade in the whole Nation, and one of the chief Emporia of *Europe*: Corn, Honey, Wax, Fir-Timber, Copper, Iron, Steel, Lead, Pitch, Tar, Hides and Tallow, are the Commodities they Export. The City consists of six small Islands, and two Suburbs; the Islands are *Stockholm*, *Riddersholm*, *Konungsholm*, *Heglandsholm*, *Schipsholm* and *Ladduggarland*, which are joyn'd together by Bridges. In the first, which is properly call'd the City, stands the Palace of *Kiddarichuset*, where are held the Assembly of the States, the Grand Market-place, the Citadel and Castle, which is the King's Palace, the King's Chappel, and the Magnificent Church of St. *Nicholas*, Founded by King *John*, on Marble Pillars, and cover'd with Copper. In the Castle, besides the stately Apartments of the King and Queen, are the Senate House, the Court of Chancery, the Criminal College, and a famous Library. In *Riddersholm*, or the *Knight's Island*, are many pleasant Gardens, and the Cloister Church, wherein the two late Kings *Gustavus Adolphus*, and *Carolus Gustavus*, lie Interr'd. *Heglandsholm* is inhabited chiefly by Mechanicks. In *Schipsholm* are the Courts of Admiralty, the Arsenal, and other Magazines of Naval Stores. *Ladduggarland* is fill'd with Houses of Pleasure, Gardens, and the King's Warren, Aviaries, &c. And in the Southern Suburbs live the wealthy and industrious Merchants, who have a stately Exchange, and drive a great Trade to all the Neighbouring Nations.

*Upsal* stands on the River *Sall*, (which falls into the Lake *Ekolen*) 40 Miles from *Stockholm* to the North. It was heretofore the Capital City of the Kingdom, and Seat of the King, and is at present the only Metropolitan Sec, and an University. The See was Establish'd in 1148. and the Archbishop is esteem'd the first Person in the Kingdom, next the Royal Family: There are seven Suffragan Bishops, and many Superintendents that exercise Episcopal Jurisdiction under him. At the Reformation, the Learned *Johannes Magnus*, who was then Archbishop, not submitting to the *Lutheran* Confession, was forc'd to retire to *Rome*. The University begun at first in the Year 1306, by a College of four Professors; but in 1476. being honour'd with large Privileges by Pope *Sixtus IV.* and endow'd with large Revenues and Immunities by King *Charles IX.* and *Gustavus Adolphus*, it became as considerable as any, and is styl'd by Authors, *Academia Insignis & Illustris*. The Cathedral Church is cover'd with Copper, adorn'd with a Clock of admirable Workmanship, and honour'd with the Tombs of divers Princes. Here is also a Royal Palace, wherein the late Queen *Christina* Abdicated the Crown; and a Castle of Modern Fortification seated on a Neighbouring Hill, which commands the Town.



*Engkoping* stands on the Lake *Meller*, at the Confines of *Westmania*, near 40 Miles Westward from *Stockholm*, and 20 South from *Upsal*.

*Nykeping*, the chief City of *Sudermania*, and the Seat of its ancient Dukes, stands on the *Baltick*, 70 Miles South-West from *Stockholm*; it has a good Haven, and is a Place of Trade. As are also *Trosa* and *Teiga*, both standing on the same Coast, in the way to *Stockholm*.

*Stregnes*, a Bishop's See, stands near the Lake *Meller*, 30 Miles North from *Nykeping*, and as many South from *Engkoping*.

*Torsilia* stands on the same Lake, 18 Miles North-West from *Stregnes*.

*Orebro*, the Chief Town of *Nericia*, stands on the *Hielmer* Lake, or *Telmer* Sea, at the Mouth of the River *Trosa*, 40 Miles East from *Torsilia*.

*Oresio* or *Westeras*, the chief City of *Westmania*, stands on the North-side of the Lake *Meller*, 35 Miles West from *Upsal*. It is a Bishop's See, and in the Cathedral are found several ancient *Gotbick* Inscriptions. In this City the Agreement was made by the Estates of the Kingdom, in 1514, whereby the Crown of *Sweden* was given to *Gustavus I.* who had rescued the People from the Tyranny of the *Danes*, and made it Hereditary to his Family; whereas before the Kings were always Elected.

*Coping* or *Koping*, and *Arbogia*, stand to the West of *Oresio*, the former 20, and the other 25 Miles distant.

*Gevalia*, the chief City of *Gestrucia*, is seated on the Gulf of *Bothnia*, at the Mouth of a River of the same Name, 50 Miles North from *Upsal*, and is a Place of good Trade.

*Casperberg* stands 50 Miles West from *Gevalia*.

*Hundswickwald*, the chief Town of *Helsingia*, stands on the Gulf of *Bothnia*, 80 Miles North from *Gevalia*; a Place of great Trade for Fir-Timber, Pitch, Rosin, Corn, Hides, &c.

*Dilsbo* stands 25 Miles West from *Hundswickwald*; and *Alta* near 40 Miles South from *Dilsbo*.

*Tuna*, the chief Town of *Medelpadia*, stands on the River *Nieurand*, near the *Bothnick* Gulf, 25 Miles North-West from *Hundswickwald*, and is said to have been the Seat of the ancient Kings of *Helsingia*.

*Indal* stands on a River of the same Name, 2 Miles North from *Tuna*, and as many West from the *Bothnick* Bay.

*Hernofand* is the chief Town of *Angermania*, and stands on the *Bothnick* Bay, 50 Miles from *Hundswickwald*, and like that, is a Place of good Trade.

*Natra* stands 30 Miles to the North of *Hernofand*.

*Uma* in *West-Bothnia*, stands on the *Bothnic* Gulf, at the Mouth of a River of the same Name 80 Miles North of *Hernofand*.

*Pila* and *Lula* likewise stand at the Mouths of two Rivers, to which they give Name, 80 Miles North from *Uma*.

*Torne*, the chief Town of *West-Bothnia*, stand at the Bottom of the Gulf of *Bothnia*, near the Confines of *Lapland*, 60 Miles North-East from *Pitha*. It has a good Haven, and is a Place of Trade.

*Ressundt*, a Fortrefs in *Jemptia*, stands 50 Miles West from *Hernofand*.

*Lidh* or *Lida*, reckon'd the chief Town of *Jemptia*, stands about 20 Miles North from *Ressundt*.

Tho' *Dalecarlia* be a very large Province, yet being an Inland Mountainous Country, it hath but few Towns of Note.

*Idra*, which stands on the River *Elfiwan*, 17 Miles West from *Hundswickwald*.

*Lima*, 50 Miles South from *Idra*, and *Hedemora*, on the River *Dalecarlen*, near the Confines of *Westmania*, 60 Miles North-West from *Upsal*; are reckon'd the chief Towns.

## CHAP. III.

### Of GOTHLAND, or Gothia.

**GOTHIA** or *Gotbland*, a large Fruitful Country, lies on the South of *Sweden*, properly so call'd, and surrounded on the East, West and South, with the *Baltick* Sea. Its Extent from the Confines of *Dalecarlia* in the North, to the Coasts

of *Schonen* in the South, is about 270 Miles; and from *Gotteberg* in the West, to *Stegeberg* in the East about 160 Miles. It is divided into three great Parts *East-Gotbland*, *West-Gotbland*, and *South-Gotbland*, which are again sub-divided into Provinces, thus

**EAST-GOTHLAND**, contains,

*East-Gotbland*, properly so call'd; the chief Towns whereof are,

*Nortkoping.*  
*Soderkoping.*  
*Lincoping.*  
*Wadstena.*  
*Schoning.*

*Smaland*; the chief Towns are,

*Calmar.*  
*Wexia.*  
*Jonekoping.*  
*Ekesio.*  
*Westerwick.*

*Oenaland*,

*Barkholme.*

WES



WEST-GOTHILAND.	West-Gothland proper.	{ Gottenborg. Lidköping. Scaren. Mariestadt. Talleköping.
	Wermeland.	{ Carolstadt. Philipstadt. Ruscog.
	Dalia.	{ Daleborg. Tweta.
SOUTH-GOTHILAND.	Schonen.	{ Lund. Malmagen. Landskroon. Helsingborg. Ydstede.
	Bleking.	{ Christianople. Christianstadt. Abuys. Rotenby. Elleholm.
	Halland.	{ Helmeftede. Falkenberg. Labolm. Wardberg.

*East-Gothland*, properly so call'd, lies between *Sudermania* on the North, *Smaland* on the South, the *Baltick* Sea on the East, and the Lake *Wetter* on the West; it is a Champaign Country, and produces plenty of Corn and Cattle; as also Fish, Fowl and Venison.

*Smaland* has *East-Gothland* on the North, *Bleking* on the South, the *Baltick* on the East, and *Halland* on the West; it is a large Province, abounds much in Wood, and has great store of Cattle, which are exported abroad; here are also Mines of Copper, Lead and Iron.

*Oeselundia* is a pleasant and fruitful Island, lying off the Coast of *Smaland*, formerly belonging to the *Dane*, but yielded to *Gustavus Adolphus*, An. 1613.

*West-Gothland*, properly so call'd, is also a large Province, lying North from *Smaland*, between the Lake *Wetter* on the East, and *Halland* and the *Baltick* on the West; it affords abundance of excellent Pasturage, whereby great quantities of Cattle are bred, and the Country made wealthy by the Vent of them.

*Wermeland* is parted from *Westro-Gothland*, on the South by the large Lake of *Wenner*, hath *Dalecarlia* on the North, *Westmania* and *Nericia* on the East, and *Dalia* on the West. It is a Mountainous and Woody Country, having some Mines of Iron, and one of Copper; many Lakes, and some Rivers.

*Dalia*, a smaller Province than any of the former, lies on the West of the Lake *Wenner* and *Wermeland*, hath the Government of *Babuys* (already mention'd in our Account of Norway) and the Province of *Aggerbuys* on the East and South: It is a mountainous and barren Country; but being water'd with many Rivers and Lakes, it affords pretty good Pasturage for the Cattle, which are of a larger size than ordinary.

*Schonen* or *Scania*, is a *Peninsula*, surrounded by the *Baltick* Sea, except on the North, where it is join'd to *Smaland*. *Luyts* calls it *Provincia Nobis*.

*liffima Gothia*; it abounds with Corn, Cattle, Fowl, and all Conveniencies of Life, and hath also Mines of Silver, Lead and Iron: It is in Form near square, and about 50 or 60 Miles over either way. This Province formerly belong'd to the *Dane*, and was yielded to the *Swedes* in 1660. as was also at the same time

*Bleking*, a narrow Tract of Land, lying along the Coast of the *Baltick*, on the South of *Smaland*, and East of *Schonen*: It is a mountainous and woody Country, and not to compare for Fruitfulness with *Schonen*.

*Hallandia* is another Tract of Land, lying along the Coast of the *Sinus Codanus*, or Mouth of the *Baltick*, having *Westro-Gothia* on the East and North, and *Schonen* on the South: It is a pleasant and fruitful Country. This also was formerly a part of *Denmark*, but was in 1645. put into the Hands of Queen *Christina*, as a Security for the *Swedes* free passing the Sound; and since by the Treaty at *Reschild*, in 1658. it was granted to 'em for ever.

### The Cities and Towns of chief Note in Gothland.

*Lunden*, the Metropolis of *Schonen*, stands in the Latitude of 56 Deg. at the distance of 30 Miles East from *Copenhagen*, 250 South-East from *Stockholm*, and about 10 Miles West from the Streight of the Sound. It was formerly the Seat of an Archbishop; but in 1658. when the *Swedes* took the City, that Dignity was remov'd to *Copenhagen*; and it is now only an Episcopal See, and adorn'd with an University, Erected by the *Swedes* in 1668. It has been a very considerable City, having in it 22 Churches; whereof the Cathedral of *St. Laurence* is a magnificent Structure, having a very high Spire that is a Landmark for Sailers; and a Clock of most ingenious Contrivance, said to be the Work of *Caspar Bartholinus*; which not only shews the Hour, Day, Month and Year, together with all the Festivals, but also the Movements are so artificially contriv'd, that at the Hours two Horsemen come forth and encounter each other, giving so many Blows as the Hammer is to strike upon the Bell; then a Door opens, discovering the Virgin *Mary* sitting on a Throne with *Christ* in her Arms, and the *Magi* doing Reverence, and two Trumpeters sounding the while. The Altar also of this Church is of beautiful Structure, and the Vault under the Quire very spacious. At present, the City is not in so flourishing a State as it has been. Near it is a Hill, where (according to *Joan. Meursius*) in ancient Times the Kings were Elected.

*Malmogen*, a Port-Town of good Trade, stands on the Sound, over against *Copenhagen*, and 10 Miles South-East from *Lund*; it is sometimes nam'd *Ellebogen*.

*Landskroon* stands also on the Sound, 16 Miles West from *Lund*; it is a strong, well-fortify'd Town, Built by *Ericus VIII.* in 1413. having a very good Haven, a fair Market place, and is much resorted to by Merchants, especially at its Annual Fair at *Midsummer*. *Christian III.* King of *Denmark*, built the Castle and improv'd the Fortifications; and it is at present a Place of great Importance and Strength.



*Helsingborg*, a mean Town but fortified with an impregnable Castle, stands on the Shoar of the Sound, 20 Miles North-West from *Lund*, over against *Elfsborg*, and is the other Key to the Passage of the Sound; in the Castle there is a very high square Tower, which is a Direction to Sailers; and in the Town are held two Annual Fairs, wherein great quantities of Merchandize are vended. It was granted to the Swedes by the Treaty of *Roschild* in 1559. Re taken by the Danes in 1676. but restor'd the next Year.

*Alings* in *Bleking*, stands on the *Baltick*, on the Coast of *Schonen*.

*Christiansstad* stands a few Miles to the Northward; it is a strong Place being built in a Marsh, which renders it inaccessible; but it was taken by the Danes in 1676. and re-taken by the Swedes two Years after.

*Eksim* or *Eickholm*, are both Port-Towns on the *Baltick*, as is also

*Christianople*, the chief Town in *Bleking*, situated on the extreme East part of it, 100 Miles North-East from *Lund*, and near 300 South from *Calmar*. It was very well fortify'd by *Christian IV.* against the Irruptions of the Swedes.

*Calmar*, the Capital of *Smaland*, is a considerable City, situate on the *Baltick*, over against the Island of *Orus*, 160 Miles South-West from *Stockholm*, and about 100 North-East from *Lund*. It has a very convenient Harbour much frequented by Merchants from divers Nations and gives name to the Channel between it and *Orus*, call'd *Calmar Sund*. The City is regularly fortify'd, and the Citadel much esteem'd for its Strength. This was formerly a Bishop's See, and the Cathedral dignify'd with the Privileges of an Ecclesiastical College; at present a Superintendent for the Government of the Clergy resides here, who is honour'd with a Place in the publick Consistory of the Kingdom. In 1647. so dreadful a Fire happen'd here, that the whole City, except about 60 Houses, were burnt down; but it was soon Re-built, and is a Place of very good Trade, and the Passage from *Sweden* to *Germany*. In the Wars between *Sweden* and *Denmark*, this City was several times taken and re-taken, particularly in 1611. *Christian IV.* King of *Denmark* gaining it by Storm, put all the Inhabitants to the Sword.

*Wexio*, a Bishop's See, where some of the first Planters of Christianity lie Buried, stands on the Bank of a Lake, near 60 Miles West from *Calmar*.

*Westerwick*, a Port-Town of good Trade on the *Baltick* Sea, stands 50 Miles North from *Calmar*.

*Eksjö* stands 50 Miles West from *Westerwick*. And,

*Fenecoping* 20 from it, 75 from *Calmar* to the North-West, and 35 directly North from *Wexio*, and stands on the Lake *Wetter*. It is a City naked of Walls, but of great Antiquity; and some Trade by means of the Lake.

*Halmstadt*, the Capital of *Halland*, stands on the *Sinus Ccdanus*, or Mouth of the *Baltick* 130 Miles West from *Calmar*, and 60 North from *Lund*; it is a good Port, and a Place of Trade.

*Falkenberg* stands on a River of the same Name not 20 Miles from *Helmstadt*.

*Labholm*, a fortified Town, on the South-side of *Helmstadt*, on the River *Laga*: And,

*Warberg*, about 20 Miles North from *Falkenberg* are all Port-Towns and Places of Trade.

*Gottenburg* or *Gothburg*, the chief Town of *West-Gothia*, stands on the *Sinus Ccdanus* at the Mouth of the River *Tollhetta*, in the Latitude of 58 c. about 110 Miles North from *Lund*, 170 West from *Calmar*, and 260 South-West from *Stockholm*. It is a considerable Mart-Town, with a very commodious Harbour, and endow'd with many Privileges, which makes it frequented by Merchant Ships from all Nations. The Town is strongly fortified, and was able to resist the Danish Fleet, who attack'd it in 1644.

*Scara* or *Scaren*, the ancient Seat of the *Gothic* Kings, and at present a Bishop's See, stands 7 Miles to the North-East of *Gottenburg*. It is now a fenceless City, tho' heretofore the Metropolis of *West-Gothia*.

*Lidköping* stands 15 Miles North from *Scaren* and on the Banks of the Lake *Wenner*; and *Mariestadt* on the same Lake, 30 Miles East from *Lidköping*, are both Cities, but at present not very Eminent.

*Dalcborg*, the chief Town of *Dalia*, stands on the Lake *Wenner*, 45 Miles North from *Gottenburg*.

*Tweta* stands also on the same Lake, 30 Miles more to the North.

*Carostadt*, the Capital of *Wermelandia*, is seat'd on the North-East-side of the same Lake *Wenner* 150 Miles West from *Stockholm*. It was Built by *Charles IX.* King of *Sweden* in the place of the ancient City *Tingvalla*.

*Philipstadt* stands about 20 Miles East from *Carostadt*: And,

*Rusecg*, about the same distance South from *Philipstadt*.

*Linköping*, the Capital of *Ostro-Gothia*, stands in the middle of that Province, 80 Miles North from *Calmar*, and near 100 South-East from *Carostadt*. It is a pleasant, but small City, the See of a Bishop and has a stately Church, Built by one *Herebertus* one of the first Planters of Christianity here.

*Suderköping*, a handsome, but fenceless City, stands about 20 Miles East from *Linköping*.

*Stegeborg* stands on the *Baltick*, a few Miles East from *Suderköping*.

*Norköping* stands on the Banks of a Lake, between *Linköping* and *Suderköping*.

*Schening* was anciently a famous City, where a Council was held in 1284. but is now a ruin'd and inconsiderable Town.

*Wedstena* stands on the Lake *Wetter*, 25 Miles West from *Linköping*.



## C H A P. IV.

*Swedish* L A P L A N D.

AND now having surveyed *Sweden* and *Gotthland*, we shall pass to *Lapland*, the Inhabitants whereof being far different in their Manners and Customs from other *Europeans*, we shall detain the Reader with a short Account of them.

**SWEDISH LAPLAND** is a large Country lying North of *Sweden* properly so called, extending from East to West above 400 Miles, and from the 63th to the 68th Degree of Latitude; being bounded on the North by the Province of *Wardbys*, or the Norwegian *Lapland*; on the East by the Muscovian *Lapland*; on the West by the Mountains of *Daarfeild*, which divide it from *Norway*; and on the South by the Provinces of *Fempria*, *Angermund*, *West Bothnia*, the Gulf or Sea of *Bothnia*, and *East Bothnia*. The Air is extreme Cold, and the Soil barren, except in the southern Parts, where some Pot-herbs and Roots, as Parsnips, Coleworts, &c. are produc'd, but no sort of Grain will grow there. The Country is Water'd with many Rivers and Lakes, and vast Woods are seen here, which shelter abundance of wild Beasts; such as Bears, Elks, Rain-Deer, Stags, Wolves, Foxes, Sables, Martins, Ermines, Otters, Beavers, &c. the Skins whereof afford the Inhabitants Cloathing, and their Flesh Food. Horses, Oxen and Sheep they have none, but make use of Rain-Deer to draw the Sledges on which they Travel and carry Burdens, and slide along on the Snow with great Celerity. The Inhabitants are of short Stature, but strong and nimble, and employ themselves in Hunting the wild Beasts: They are in their Temper Superstitious, Timorous, and mean Spirited, exceedingly addicted to Magick, and very Revengeful; but withal, they are Charitable; and tho' notoriously Deceitful in Bargaining, are never guilty of Theft. Their Houses are but Tents, made of Posts cover'd with Canvas, or by the poorer sort, only with Boughs of Trees; and are removed as their Occasions for Hunting or Fishing require, or as the Season invites 'em Northward, or drives 'em Southward. Their Garments are made of the Skins of wild Beasts, or else of our courtliest Woollen Cloath, which the better Sort wear on Holy-days; on their Heads they wear Caps made of the Skin of some Fowl, with the Feathers outwards, and Wings on. Their Diet is either Fish, or the Flesh of Rain Deer, which they sometimes Eat raw, or the better sort boil it, but most commonly it is dryed in the Sun; and for Bread, they make use of dryed Fish ground small: Their Drink is fair Water, and sometimes when they can get it, Brandy, which they much esteem, as also Tobacco: Their Children they use to great Hardness, dipping 'em as soon as born in cold Water, afterwards in hot Water; and then covering 'em in Moss, carry 'em many Miles to be Baptiz'd; as they grow up, they use them betimes to the Bow and Arrow, and place their Victuals on a Post which they must shoot down before they eat it. Marriage is held sacred among them, and Adultery rarely committed, or if known, constantly Punished; Po-

lygamy is never allowed, nor clandestine Marriages ever contracted. Their Wealth consists in the numbers of Rain-Deer; and the Tribute they Pay the King, consists in dryed Fish, Furrs, and sometimes Rain-Deer, or in lieu of it Mony, which every Man pays annually, according to his Circumstances, to the King's Commissioners: They have Markets and Fairs among them, to which Merchants resort out of *Sweden*, *Muscovy*, and *Norway*, to buy Furrs and sell Cloaths and other Necessaries: Some Mony the richer sort have, but not much; and the generality live without it upon the Beasts and Fish they catch themselves.

The *Laplanders* are supposed by some, to have been descended from the *Finlanders* and *Samoieds*, who were driven from their own Country, first by the *Tartars*, and afterwards fled from the *Swedes*, when about the middle of the Thirteenth Century King *Ericus* subdued the *Finlanders*, and planted Christianity among them. The word *Laplander* implies a banish'd Man or Runagade, wherefore the better sort of 'em will not to this Day be call'd so: They lived for some Ages in a stragling condition, without Laws or Government, practising their stupid Idolatry and diabolical Magick, till in the end they were intirely subdued by the *Swedes* about the Year 1600. and Christianity planted among them. King *Gustavus Adolphus* built publick Schools and many Churches, which by the pious Care of succeeding Princes being encreased, and Ministers maintain'd by the King out of the Tributes paid by the People, Christianity has made considerable Advances; not but that there are still a great many Idolaters and Magicians in *Lapland*. In their Idolatry they worship the Sun, and several Deities which they represent in Wood, every Family having one. The chief God to whom they make publick Sacrifice, they call *Thor*; he is represented by the Stump of a Tree, and the usual Sacrifice is a Rain-Deer; another of their Gods they call *Storjunkaer*, whom they suppose to be *Thor's* Lieutenant. The Temples of the God *Thor* are usually in the Woods, consisting in Trees laid in round form one on another without any covering; *Storjunkaer* they worship in Mountains and Rocks. Their Magick is exceeding wonderful, at least if the Relations of Travellers be true; for they tell us, that the Mariners for a Sum of Mony, can procure of them such Winds as their Voyage requires, receiving a String with several Knots, which being untied, cause the Wind to encrease. In their Divinations they use a Drum, which having struck violently on, they lye down as in a Trance for a short space, and then answer the Question. They have also magical Darts, whereby they do what Injuries they please; and even so powerful are their Charms, that they will split Rocks and level Mountains. But these devilish Practices are suppress'd by the *Swedes*, and being discovered are severely punished, which makes 'em much less frequent than formerly.



The Swedish Lapland is divided into five Provinces, viz.

*Torne Lapmark* the most Northern Part, in which stands the Town *Tingwara*, in the Latitude of 68. 20. *Segeura* about 30 Miles to the South of it; *Peldjerfui* 100 East from *Tingwara*; *Kittilaby* on the Confines of *Kimi Lapmark*, 70 Miles South from *Peldjerfui*; and *Torne* a Port-Town at the bottom of the Bothnick Gulf.

*Kimi-Lapmark* on the East of *Torne*, and on the North of *Cajania*; in it are *Somby*, *Kimibi*, *Kolajersfui*, all within 20 Miles of one another, at the Foot of the Mountains, which part this from the Norwegian and Muscovite Lapland. *Solden-Kyle*

and *Kitijersfui* more to the Southward, and *Kimi* on the Bothnick Gulf near *Torne*.

*Lula-Lapmark* lies on the South of *Torne* from the Confines of *West Bothnia* to the *Dofrine* Mountains, and has these Towns, *Torpajour* in the North Part, *Sirkesluch* 30 Miles more South, and *Jokemuka* to the Westward.

*Pitha-Lapmark* the next southern Province, hath *Sitonia* in the North near the *Dofrine* Mountains, and *Lochtari* near the Confines of *Bothnia*.

*Uma-Lapmark* the last and most southern Province, adjoyning to *Angermania* with *Bothnia* on the East, and the *Dofrine* Mountains on the West, hath *Loisby* or *Laisby* in the middle, and *Semisjerfie* on the Confines of *Pitha*.

In the Province of *Torne-Lapmark* is a Mine of Iron, and in *Pitha-Lapmark* is a Mine of Silver.

## CH A P. V.

### F I N L A N D.

**FINLAND**, a large Country, extending from the Arctic Circle, or the Confines of *Kimi-Lapmark* in the North, to that Branch of the *Baltick-Sea*, to which it gives Name in the South; the *Onega-Lake* and *Muscovy* being its Boundary on the East, and the *Bothnick Bay* on the West, being 400 Miles in length, and as many in breadth. It was formerly a barbarous Nation, govern'd by Kings of their own, but conquer'd about the middle of the Thirteenth Century by *Ericus IX.* King of Sweden; and since that hath been sometimes the Inheritance of the Brothers of the Kings of Sweden, but is now united to the Crown. It is divided into these seven Parts, viz.

**C A J A N I A**, otherwise call'd *East-Bothnia*, the most northern Province extending from *Kimi-Lapmark* along the Gulf or Sea, to which this and the other *Bothnia* give Name, near 300 Miles in length: It abounds with Rivers which empty themselves in the *Bothnick-Bay*, and hath a large Lake call'd *Ula-Tresk*; Mountains also fill up the northern and eastern Parts, and the rest of the Country is reasonably Fertile.

**S A V O L A X I A**, which hath *Cajania* on the North, *Carelia* on the South, *Kexholm* on the East, and *Tavasthus* on the West. This Province, as also *Kexholm*, abounds with Lakes and Rivers which discharge themselves into the great Lake *Ladoga*, and afford the Inhabitants abundance of Fish.

**K E X H O L M** lies between *Savolaxia* on the West, and *Muscovy* on the East, *Muscovian-Lapland* on the North, and the Lake *Ladoga* on the South. It is a large Tract of Land, but on the North and East very mountainous, and the other part almost cover'd with Lakes. It formerly belong'd to the *Russians*, but conquer'd by *Gustavus Adolphus*, was granted to him at the Treaty in 1616. This Province, by some Geographers, is included under the general Name of *Carelia*.

**C A R E L I A** lies on the South of *Savolaxia* to the Banks of the Gulf of *Finland* and Lake of *Ladoga*. It is a flourishing Country, extending from

East to West near 200 Miles, but its breadth is not proportionable. Formerly subject to the *Muscovites*.

**NYLANDIA** is a small Province on the Gulf of *Finland*, between *Carelia* on the East, *Finland* on the West, and *Tavasthia* on the North, so call'd, q. d. *New Land*, because its ancient Inhabitants the *Finlanders* being driven out, new Colonies of Swedes were sent to possess it.

**TAVASTIA** is an inland Province between *Finland* on the West, *Savolaxia* on the East, *Cajania* on the North, and *Nylandia* on the South; it hath several Lakes, especially the great one of *Jende*.

**FINLAND**, properly so call'd, hath *Nylandia* and *Tavasthus* on the East, the *Finnic-Bay* on the South, *Cajania* on the North, and the *Bothnick-Bay* on the West. It is in some parts Mountainous, but otherwise a rich Soil; and being half encompass'd by the Sea, hath the advantage of much Traffick. The Country is so Pleasant that some have fancied it to be call'd *Finland*, q. d. *Fine-Land*. This Province, *Nylandia* and *Carelia* afford good Pasturage and large Breeds of Oxen, Horses, and other Cattle.

The Cities and chief Towns in the respective Provinces are these,

In Cajania,	{	<i>Cajeneburg.</i>
		<i>U'aboung</i>
		<i>Ula.</i>
		<i>Lochta.</i>
<i>Savolaxia,</i>	{	<i>W'assa.</i>
		<i>Kosking.</i>
		<i>Rumal.</i>
		<i>Nyslot.</i>
<i>Kexholm,</i>	{	<i>Lexa.</i>
		<i>Kexholm.</i>
<i>Carelia,</i>	{	<i>Wiburg.</i>
		<i>Wekelax.</i>
		<i>Mala.</i>



Nylandia.

Tavasthia.

Finland, di-  
vided into  
South and  
North,

{ *Helsingfors.*  
*Borgo.*  
*Elima.*  
*Tavasthus.*  
*Haubo.*  
*Padafski.*  
*Biorneburg.*  
*Abo.*  
*Raumo.*  
*Nykirky.*  
*Masko.*  
*Raseborg.*

*Cajaneburg*, is a Fort seated on the North-East side of the Lake *Ula*, about 30 or 40 Miles from the Confines of *Lapland*, and 120 from the Coast of the *Bothnick* Gulf, in the Latitude of 65. 0.

*Udelong*, another Fortress stands on the Coast of the *Bothnick* Bay, in the same Latitude with *Cajaneburg*.

*Ula* is a Sea-Town near it, at the Mouth of the River, to which it gives Name.

*Loelta* and *Wassa* are both Sea-Towns on the same Coast; the former 60, and the latter 150 Miles to the South of *Ula*.

*Kiskinpa*, the chief Town of *Savolaxia*, stands on a Lake in the Latitude of 62. 0. about 130 Miles from the *Bothnick* Coast.

*Nyssa*, is a strong Fort, seated on a Lake about 50 Miles East from *Kiskinpa*. It was built in the Year 1475. by *Eric Axelsson*, Governor of *Abo*, and is of use against the Invasion of the *Muscovite*.

*Rumal*, is Named by *Lutiz* as one of the chief Towns of this Province, but by the Maps *Saminge*, which stands on the Banks of the same Lake, a few Miles South from *Nyssa*, as *Rumal* does about 30 Miles more to the West, seems rather to deserve the Character.

*Lexa*, in the North part of the Province of *Kexholm*, stands on the Banks of a Lake in the Latitude of 63. 40. Longitude 55. 0.

*Kexholm*, which gives Name to the Province, but call'd by the *Russians*, *Careligorod*, stands on the West-side of the Lake *Ladoga*, in the Latitude of 61. 10. It is a strong Town, and with the Province, formerly was subject to the *Muscovite*, 'till about the beginning of the last Century, when the Czar promised *Charles IX.* King of *Sweden* to surrender this Town and Country to him if he would assist him against the *Poles*, by whom he was then hardly beset; but being freed from the Danger, refused to perform, which made the *Swedes* invade his Countries, and oblige the *Russes* to yield up by

Treaty, in the Year 1616. not only this, but also the most considerable Places of *Ingria*.

*Wiborg*, the chief City of the Swedish *Carelia*, stands at the bottom of a Bay of the *Finnick* Gulf, about 40 miles South-West from *Kexholm*: It is a Place of great Trade, and the See of a Bishop; has a convenient Haven, and is fortify'd with Trenches, Forts, and a strong Castle, by the means whereof it has often resisted the furious Attacks of the *Muscovites*.

*Mala* stands about 30 miles South from *Wiborg*, on a small Bay that reaches to *Kexholm*, and falls into the Lake *Onega*.

*Wekelax* is a Sea-Port on the *Finnick* Bay, about 60 miles West from *Wiborg*.

*Helsingfors* the chief City of *Nylandia*, stands near the Mouth of the River *Winda*, which falls into the *Finnick* Gulf, 150 miles West from *Wiborg*, and about 90 East from *Abo*.

*Borgo*, another Port-Town, stands at the Mouth of a small River, about 20 miles East from *Helsingfors*.

*Tavasthus*, called also *Croneburg*, the Capital of *Tavasthia*, is a strong Fortress built by *Berjerus Fert*, the Swedish General in 1250. when he had conquer'd this Country and establish'd Christianity there. It stands 70 miles North from *Helsingfors*, and about 90 North-West from *Abo*.

*Haubo* stands on a Branch of the Lake *Jende*, which extends almost the length of this Province; about 20 miles North from *Tavasthus*.

*Padafioski* stands on the Lake *Jende*, about 30 miles North-East from *Haubo*.

*Abo*, the Capital of South Finland, stands on the River *Aviorki*, near the *Baltick*-Sea, and about 50 miles from the Gulf of Finland, in the Latitude of 61. 0. Longitude 44. 0. and 160 miles North-East from *Stockholm*. It is the See of a Bishop, and adorn'd with a University; and is also a City of good Trade.

*Biorneburg*, the chief Town of North Finland, stands on the Coast of the *Bothnick* Gulf, 90 miles North from *Abo*.

*Raumo* and *Nykirky* stand both on the same Coast, the former 30, and the latter 60 miles South from *Biorneburg*.

*Masko* stands about 10 miles West from *Abo*.

*Raseborg* stands on the Gulf of Finland, 50 miles East from *Abo*. It is by some Geographers reckon'd to stand within the Limits of *Nylandia*; and has sometime had a Territory belonging to it which constituted a Principality.

## C H A P. VI.

## L I V O N I A or Liefland.

**L**I V O N I A, or as it is called in the Language of the Country, **LIEFLAND**, is a Fertile Country, lying on the South side of the Gulf of Finland, having a part of the *Baltick* Sea, denominated the Gulf of *Riga*, on the West, *Muscovy* and *Ingria* on the East, the Duchy of *Courland*, and some part of *Lithuania* on the South, and as we have said, the *Finnick* Gulf on the North. So that it is surrounded on the West and North with the

Sea, on the East hath the great Lake of *Peibus*, and on the South the commodious River *Dwina*; which rising in *Muscovy*, passes by the Confines of *Livonia*, dividing it from *Courland*, and thereby the convenience of Navigation is afforded to every part of this Province: In the middle of it are three other Lakes, and many small Rivers, which Water the Country; and tho' in some Parts it is marshy, yet in the general 'tis very fruitful, yielding especially



cially Corn, Pasture, and Honey in abundance. Its Extent from North to South is about 160 miles, and from East to West 120 miles. The many Conquests this Country has suffered render its Inhabitants a mixture of *Muscovites*, *Swedes*, *Pelanders* and *Germans*, the latter whereof being the most numerous makes their Language generally spoken. In its ancient State the Duchy of *Courland* and *Samigallia* were reckon'd part of *Livonia*; but the *Swedes* having this, and the *Poles* those, it has, for some time stood thus divided. From the first Conversion of this Country, the Archbishop of *Riga* and the Teutonic Order seem to have had the Government of it, 'till about 1557. upon a Difference between the Archbishop and the Grand Master, the Czar of *Muscovy* invaded *Livonia*; but the *Swedes* being call'd in to assist the *Lieflanders*, drove out the *Muscovites*; and the *Poles* having Pretensions to this Country, for sometime a Contest was carried on between them, 'till by the *Muscovites* gaining Ground, they perceiv'd their Mistake and agreed; and finally, in the Year 1660. this Province was resign'd to Sweden by *John Casimir* King of Poland. It is to be noted, that the most southern Part of *Liefland* is still subject to Poland. It is divided into three Parts, 1. *Esten* or *Esibonia*, which takes up all the northern Part. 2. *Odepsa*, the middle; And, 3. *Letten* or *Letitia*, the Southern Part. *Esibonia* is again divided into five Parts, viz. *Alentakia*, *Wiria*, *Harria*, *Wicia*, and *Fervia*. When the Czar began the War against the King of Sweden in 1700. this Country was for some time the Seat of it, and miserably ravag'd. The chief Towns in this Province are these,

In <i>Esthonia</i> , subdivided into these Parts,	{	<i>Alentakia</i> ,	{	<i>Narva.</i>	
			{	<i>Nieflct.</i>	
			{	<i>Wesenberg.</i>	
		{	<i>Waria</i> ,	{	<i>Tolsburg.</i>
			{	<i>Borcholm.</i>	
		{	<i>Harris</i> ,	{	<i>Revel.</i>
			{	<i>Badis.</i>	
		{	<i>Vika, Wicia,</i>	{	<i>Hadsel.</i>
			{	<i>Lehal.</i>	
		{	or <i>Wikke</i> ,	{	<i>Wickel</i> or <i>Wyck.</i>
			{	<i>Wittenstein.</i>	
	{	<i>Fervia</i> ,	{	<i>Oberpalen.</i>	
		{	<i>Lan.</i>		
In <i>Odepsa</i> ,			{	<i>Parnaw.</i>	
				<i>Derpat</i> or <i>Derpt.</i>	
				<i>Warbeck.</i>	
				<i>Ringen.</i>	
		{		<i>Odepol.</i>	
			<i>Nienhausen.</i>		
			<i>Marienburg.</i>		
			<i>Tarnest.</i>		
			<i>Fellin.</i>		
		{		<i>Riga.</i>	
	<i>Dunamund.</i>				
In <i>Letten</i> ,		{		<i>Keckenhaus.</i>	
			<i>Walmer.</i>		
		{		<i>Wenden.</i>	
			<i>Seefeld.</i>		

*Narva* is seated on a River of the same name (which separates *Livonia* from *Ingria*, and here falls into the *Finnick* Bay, in the Latitude of 59°. Longitude 50. 0. at the distance of 170 Miles from *Riga* to the North East, and 100 from *Revel* to the East, and is called the *German Narva*, to distinguish it from the *Russian Narva*. It is a Place of great Strength and Consideration, and well Garrison'd by

the *Swedish* Soldiers; it is also defended by a strong Castle, named *Juanogorod*, which stands on the other side of the River in *Ingria*, and was taken by *Gustavus Adolphus* in 1617. In general it is reckon'd one of the best Fortresses in this Country. The Town was built by *Waldemar II.* King of Denmark in 1223. was taken by the *Muscovites* in 1558. recover'd by the *Swedes* in 1581. and granted to them by Treaty in 1599. The *Muscovites* having Besieged this City in the Year 1700. after ten Weeks lying before it, were set upon by the King of Sweden on the 10th of November, and entirely Defeated. The Victory was so entire, that not only the Baggage and Canon were taken, but also the Duke de *Croy* (the *Muscovite* General) with the rest of the Generals and Principal Officers surrender'd themselves Prisoners of War, and the common Soldiers were made to lay down their Arms and pass Bare-headed thro' the *Swedish* Camp, being too numerous to be detain'd Prisoners. But the Czar however four Years after set down before this City, and after no long Siege took it Sword in Hand on the 10th of Nov. 1704. and still possesses it. It has a convenient Port to the Gulf of *Finland*, and is a Place of Trade.

*Nieslot* or *Neuschlos* is a strong Fort on the River *Narva*, near the Lake *Peibus*.

*Borcholm* stands about 60 Miles West from *Narva*. *Wesenburg*, 20 Miles North-West from *Borcholm*, near the River *Weisenna*, is a Place of Strength, and was taken from the *Muscovites* by the *Swedes* in 1581.

*Tolsburg*, a Port-Town on the *Finnick* Gulf, is about 12 Miles distant from *Wesenburg* to the North.

*Revel* or *Revalia*, anciently the Metropolis of *Liefland*, is a small but handsome and well Fortified City, seated on the *Finnick* Gulf, about 60 Miles from *Tolsburg*, and about 100 from *Narva* to the West. It is one of the most considerable Mart-Towns in these Parts, and is adorn'd with a Gymnasium, or small University, wherein Professors and Tutors are maintain'd to teach the Liberal Arts. It was formerly an Episcopal See, but since *Lutheranism* has been establish'd here, a Superintendent governs the Ecclesiastical Affairs. The City was founded by *Waldemar II.* King of Denmark in 1230. was sold to the great Master; and in 1561. being in danger of falling into the *Muscovites* Hands, it subjected its self to the *Swede*, who has ever since had the Protection of it, but it still enjoys large Immunities, and is very considerable on account of its Trade and commodious Haven.

*Badis* or *Padis*, is a Fort seated on the River *Adia*, about 20 Miles West from *Revel*.

*Habsel*, Seated on a small Gulf of the *Baltick*, to which it gives Name, over-against the Island *Dagö*, 30 miles South-West from *Padis*, and about 20 South-West from *Revel*, was formerly subject to the *Danes*, but in 1572. being taken by the *Muscovite*, was gained by the *Swede*, in 1551. and was sometime the See of a Bishop.

*Lehal* stands also on the *Baltick*, 15 Miles South from *Habsel*, it is a Place of Strength, and has a Castle of good Force.

*Wyckel* or *Wyke*, is another Fort in the same Neighbourhood.

*Wittenstein*, 70 Miles East from *Lehal*, and 25 South-East from *Revel*: As also *Oberpalen* and *Lanate*, all Places of Moment for Strength.

*Parnow*, *Parnavia*, seated on a River of the same Name, which here falls into a small Bay of the *Baltick*,



*Baltick* at the distance of about 50 Miles from *Revel* to the South, 90 from *Riga* to the North. It is a small City, but a Place of good Trade, great quantity of Corn especially being Ship'd hence for the *Netherlands*. It is pretty well Fortify'd, but owes it's Strength chiefly to its Citadel. The *Poles* made this the Capital of one of their Palatinates, when it was under their Jurisdiction; but since the Year 1617. it has been subject to the *Swede*, after having been taken and retaken many times in the last Age.

*Derpat* or *Derpt*, *Torpatum*; a large and ancient City on the River *Embeck*, 15 Miles from the Lake *Peibus*, and somewhat more from the *Werczer zee* another Lake, 100 Miles from *Parnow* to the East, and 120 from *Riga* to the North East. It was formerly the See of a Bishop, and is at present adorn'd with an University founded by *Gustavus Adolphus* in 1632. on account of its being a pleasant healthy Place, and abounding with Provisions and all Necessaries: The Buildings are of Stone and Brick, but not so well maintained and inhabited as they have been. It has a strong Castle for its Defence, seated on a Hill, but has however been subjected to many Matters, for the *Teutonic* Knights took it from the *Muscovites* in 1280. the *Poles* took it in 1552. afterwards the *Swedes* drove them out, but in 1603. they took it and kept it till 1625. when the *Swedes* finally took it again.

*Wale klanen* on the Mouth of the River *Embeck*, near the Lake *Peibus*.

*Nienhaus* 20 Miles South from *Derpt*, on the Borders of *Muscovy*. And

*Muenburg*, about 20 Miles South-West from *Nienhaus*, are all three Forts of good Strength.

*Odenopol*, 12 Miles South from *Derpt*, is a small Town, and only considerable for giving Name to this Division of *Livonia*.

*Fellin* stands on a small River that passes from the *Werczer-zee* to *Pernaw*, 50 Miles from that City to the East, and as many from *Derpt* to the West.

*Ringen* is a Fort 35 Miles distant from *Fellin* to the South.

*Tarnest* is another Fort formerly very strong, when in the Hands of the *Muscovites*, but so demolished when the *Poles* took it, that tho' the *Swedes* have spent much in repairing it, is not yet arrived to what it was.

*Riga*, call'd *Riig* by the Inhabitants, and *Rigen* by the *Germans*, is the Metropolis of *Livonia*, the See of an Arch bishop, and a great Emporium. It is seated on the River *Duina*, near its Mouth, which makes a commodious Haven. from the Gulf of the *Baltick* Sea that takes its Name from this City, in the Latitude of 57. 0. Longitude 26. 0. and at the distance of 90 Miles from *Pernaw*, and 120 from

*Revel* to the South, 25 from *Mittaw* in *Courland* to the North, not above 4 Leagues from the Gulf of *Riga* to the East, and about 8 Leagues from *Stockholm* to the South East. It is a very considerable City, being well built, full of Inhabitants, and a Place of vast Traffick for Corn, Hemp, Flax, Pitch, Tar, Planks, Skins and Furs of all Sorts; all which, with many other necessary Commodities, are brought hither on Sledges over the Ice and Snow in the Winter, and stor'd up for the *English*, *Dutch* and *German* Merchants, who send large Fleets of Ships in the Summer-time to fetch these, and carry the Inhabitants the other Goods of Southern Countries. The City was first Founded about the latter end of the Twelfth Century, and in 1215. was made a Metropolitan See by Pope *Innocent III*. It was sometime the Seat of the Great Master of the *Teutonic* Order, and afterwards entered into the *Hanseatick* League, and was for some Years a Free-Town, under the Protection of the Emperor: In 1581. it was taken by the *Poles*, and soon after endowed with large Immunities: The *Swedish* King *Charles IX*. twice attempted it, and his Son *Gustavus Adolphus* finally took it, since when it has always been subject to the *Swede*. It was in the present War Besieg'd ineffectually by King *Augustus*.

It is a large City, but however well Fortified, having strong Walls, Bulwarks, and a very large Trench on the Land-side, and a strong Castle on the River, wherein resides the general Governor of *Livonia*. The Haven is furthermore securely guarded by the

*Dunamund-Fort*, or as it is called, the *Dunamunder Schans*, seated about 2 Leagues below the City, near the Mouth of the River *Dwina*, as its name declares, and is a Fortress of great Importance, having the command of the Passage to *Riga*; so that without leave from the Governor no Ship can sail thither. It was always esteemed a Place of great Strength, but could not however resist the Courage of the King of *Poland's* Saxon Army, who by general Assault took it in the Year 1699.

*Kakenhusen* or *Kockebaus*, is a strong Fort seated on the River *Dwina*, 60 miles East from *Riga*: It was anciently the Residence of the Archbishop.

*Sewold* or *Segenwold*, stands 30 miles, and *Wenden* 45 miles, North-East from *Riga*, both on the South-side of the River *Teyder*: And,

*Wolmer* stands on the North-Bank of the same River, 60 miles North-East from *Riga*.

Many lesser Towns and Forts are found in this Country, particularly *Dumenburg*, seated on the *Dwina*, 60 miles above *Kakenhausen*; but this being subject to *Poland*, may be more properly spoken of there.

## C H A P. VII.

### I N G R I A.

**INGRIA** or **INGERMANLAND** is a fruitful and pleasant Province, lying on the North-East of *Livonia*, having on the North the Lake *Ladoga*, the River *Nieva* (which divides it from *Carelia* in *Finland*) and the Gulf of *Finland*.

On the South and East *Muscovy*, and on the West *Livonia*. Its Extent from East to West, is near 150 miles, and from North to South about 80 miles. It is a good Country, free from Lakes, but Water'd with Rivers, and produces the Necessaries for Life.



It abounds with Cattle and Beasts ; and has especially a great number of *Elks*, who in the Summer Season change their Quarters and swim over the River *Nieva* into *Carelia* ; but at the approach of Winter return the same way. This Country was formerly subject to the *Muscovite*, but added to Sweden by *Gustavus Adolphus*, to whom it was entirely resign'd by the Czar *Michael Fedorowitsh*, in the Treaty of *Stockholm*, A. D. 1618. which was afterwards confirm'd in 1661. Its Situation renders it very considerable, being a Communication between *Finland* and *Livonia*, and a Frontier against *Muscovy*. It is by some Geographers divided into three Parts, 1. *Ingria*, 2. *Ingermania*, and 3. *Solushia*. The chief Towns in this Province are,

*Nottelburg*, or *Oreska*. } *Ivanagorod*.  
*Coporio*. } *Zamagorod*.

*Nottelburg*, called by the *Russians*, *Oreska* or *Nut*, from its compactness and Strength, is seated on a small Island, in the Mouth of the River *Nieva*, near the Lake *Ladoga*, in the Latitude of 60. 0. Longitude 54. 0. 300 miles from *Riga*, and 120 from *Narva* to the North-East. It is the chief Town of

this Province both for Trade and Strength, being very well fortified, and besides well secured by the breadth of the River. When *Gustavus Adolphus* besieg'd it, in the Year 1614 it made so vigorous a Resistance, that till an unhappy Distemper seized the Inhabitants, he was by no means able to take it.

*Ivanagorod*, call'd also the Russian *Narva* is seated overagainst *Narva*, and built on a Rock in an *Isthmus*, made by the Confluence of two Rivers, and is a Place of very great Strength. Since his present Czarish Majesty has taken *Narva* he has encreas'd the Fortifications of this Place, and chang'd it's Name to *Petersburg*.

*Coporio*, a strong Fort, stands on the *Finnick Gulf*, 30 miles North from *Ivanagorod*.

*Zamagorod*, another Fortreis, is seated on the River *Laga*, about 15 miles from *Ivanagorod* to the South East.

These and several other Towns and Forts, together with the whole Country, were delivered up to the *Swedes* by the *Muscovites*, at the Treaty above mentioned.

## C H A P. VIII.

*The ISLANDS belonging to Sweden are these.*

**GOTHLAND** Isle, situate in the *Baltick*, 20 Leagues from the Coast of *Gotland* to the East, about 60 Leagues from *Livonia* to the West, and in the Latitude of 56. It is a narrow Tract of Land, stretch'd out in length from North to South about 70 miles, and not above 20 in breadth. It is fruitful, and affords good Pasture for Cattle, especially Horses and Oxen. This Island was formerly subject to *Denmark*, but granted to the King of *Sweden* in 1645. in 1677. re-taken by the *Danes*, and in 1679. restored by Treaty to the *Swedes*.

*Wibby* or *Viburg*, the chief Town of this Island, and the Seat of its Governor, was heretofore a large and famous Mart, containing 10 Churches, and 4 Monasteries, but is now much decayed. It is reported, that Hydrographical Tables and Sea-Charts, and the Rules for Navigation were first Printed here.

**OELAND**, a narrow slip of Land over-against the Continent of *Gotland*, from which it is distant not above 5 or 6 Leagues, is in length about 70 miles from North to South, but hardly 10 miles broad. The Soil affords good Pasture, and many Herds of Oxen, Horses, and Fallow Deer. The chief Place upon the Island is *Bornholm* or *Barkholm*, a strong Fortreis seated in the middle of the Isle, just over-against *Calmar*. There are many other Forts and Castles to defend this Island, which have been often attack'd. In 1536. *Frederick III.* King of *Denmark* took it ; soon after it was regain'd by the *Swedes*, but being lost again, *Gustavus Adolphus* finally recover'd it in 1613. since when it has been constantly possess'd by the King of *Sweden*.

**OESEL** and **DAGHO** two Islands lying off the Coast of *Livonia*, make the Gulf of *Riga* ; the former is much the larger of the two, being about 40 miles long, and 20 broad ; whereas the other is hardly 20 miles either way. *Oesel* lies about 15 Leagues West from *Pernaw*, and has on it the City of *Arnsburg*, fortified with a Castle, and another Fortreis called *Sonneburg*.

*Dagho* lies to the North of *Oesel*, about 7 Leagues West from *Leba* ; it is of a Triangular Form, and has on it two Castles called *Padem* and *Dagheroart*.

**ALAND**, an Island in the Mouth of the Gulf of *Bothnia*, surrounded with a great number of smaller Islands, lies between *Uplandia* to the West, and *Finland* to the East, in near the same Latitude with *Upsal*, and in the mid-way between *Stockholm* and *Abo*. It abounds with Fish, and has some Cattle ; on it stands the Fort of *Castleholm*.

**HUENA**, a very small Island in the *Ore Sund*, just over-against *Landskroon*, Lat. 56. 20. On it stands *Uraniburg*, a small City and Castle, built at the Cost of the King of *Denmark*, for the use of the famous Mathematician *Tycho Brahe*. It was surrendred to the *Swede* by the Treaty in 1660.

**RUGEN**, an Island on the Coast of *Pomerania* in *Germany*, is also subject to the King of *Sweden* ; but of that, as also of *USEDOM* and *WOLLIN*, having already spoken in our Account of *Germany*, need not here be repeated.

To the King of *Sweden* are also subject some parts of *Germany*, as the *Upper Pomerania*, and the Duchies of *Bremen* and *Ferden* ; which have likewise been spoken of in their proper Places.

As also the Province of *Babuy*, whereof we have spoken already in our Account of *Norway*.

P O L A N D.



# POLAND.



## CHAP. I.

### Of POLAND in General.

**T**HE Kingdom of **POLAND**, which is now of vast Extent, was at first (according to *Cluverius*) not above 320 Miles long, and 240 broad, consisting at that time only of that part, which for distinction, is usually Nam'd, Poland, properly so call'd, but it hath since received great Additions; *Lithuania*, The lesser or Red-Russia, *Podolia*, *Volhinia*, *Polesia*, *Massovia*, *Prussia*, *Samogitia*, and part of *Livonia*, having been annexed to it. The *Sarmatæ*, as the same Author shews, were the first

Inhabiters of it, and the Country anciently Nam'd *Sarmatia*. It owes its present Name, as *Reiskius* particularly says, to some Colonies of the *Slav*, who came into that Country, and either drove out, or mingled themselves with the ancient *Sarmatæ*, and called the Land *Pole*, which signified in their Language a Plain: Tho' some are of Opinion, that the word *Polacki*, is as much as to say, the Posterity of *Lechus*. This Nation, as *Puffendorf* says, did formerly Inhabit nearer to *Tartary*; but after vast numbers



bers out of Germany, enter'd the Roman Provinces, their Places were supplied by the Nations behind them; and it seems that Poland being in the same manner left by its Inhabitants, which were the *Venedi*, or *Wends*, they made room for the next that took their Place. These then, as it is said, having taken Possession of this Country, about the Year, 550. did under the Conduct of *Lectus*, lay the Foundation of a new State.

Poland, as it is now extended, is bounded on the North with *Livonia*, *Muscovy*, and the *Baltick*; on the South with upper *Hungary*, *Transilvania*, and *Wallachia*; on the East with *Muscovy* and the Little *Tartary*, and on the West with *Germany*. Its Extent is from the Frontiers of *Pomerania* in the West, to the Frontiers of *Tartary* in the South East, about 700 Miles; and from the Frontiers of *Livonia*, to the *Carpates*, or *Krempach Mountains*, which are the Limits of *Hungary*, above 600 Miles. And its Situation is between the 48th and 57th Degree of Latitude, commencing in Longitude at the 34th Degree from *Teneriff*, and extending to the 50th Degree: And some part of *Volhynia*, even 2 Degrees more.

By the Situation it may be guessed, that the CLIMATE is Temperate, and the Air not excessive Cold, as in effect it is, except in the Northern part of *Lithuania*. The SOIL also is generally Fertile, fit for Tillage and Pasture, and produces a vast quantity of Corn and Cattle; even enough to Feed the Populous Nation of *Holland*, who Yearly send vast Fleets to *Dantzick* to buy the Corn and Oxen, sent down thither from the several parts of *Poland*. *Lithuania* produces Honey, Wax, Hemp, Flax, Leather, Pot-Ashes, Salt, Woad, Salt-petre, Vitriol and Quick-silver. With these Staple Commodities they purchase those of other Nations, viz. Wines, Cloath, Stuffs, Wrought Silks, &c.

It is a plain flat Country, rather enclining to Marsh than Mountain Lands, so that no considerable Mountains are found here, except those that make the Frontier to *Hungary*, which is a craggy Ridge of 300 Miles in Length, and called the *Carpates*, or *Krempach Mountains*. But RIVERS it abounds with, the most considerable whereof are the *Vistula*, the *Niemen* or *Cronus*, the *Nieper* or *Boristhenes*, the *Niesler* or *Tyras*, the *Bog* or *Vegus*, whose Springs and Courses, are more distinctly perceiv'd by Viewing the Map, than by giving account of them.

As to the GENIUS of the People, they are, as *Puffendorf* observes, commonly Downright and Honest, very seldom guilty of Dissimulation, of a Generous Spirit, and expect a great deal of Respect, to which they make you suitable returns. They are also Fierce and Extravagant, much inclin'd to an uncontrolled Liberty, or rather Licentiousness and Pernancy, which produces frequent Factions and Conspiracies. They do not want Courage, but are more fit for sudden Action than the long Fatigue of a War. This is spoken of the Gentry. But the meaner sort are Poor Spirited, and therefore the Polish Infantry are not valuable, but *Cossacks*, or Foreigners are made use of on all occasions of War. This abject Spirit of the Peasantry proceeds from the Servile Vassalage they pay to their Lords, who exercise it with all the Haughtiness imaginable; and not only does the poor Labourer never acquire Wealth, but he is even hardly permitted to gain himself Bread, being oblig'd to Work for his Lord four or five days in the Week, without Pay or Food.

As to the Military Force, their chief Strength

consists in the Nobility. It has been given out, that the *Poles* could raise 150000 or 200000 Horse, but unless one should reckon their Attendants and Servants, the number is too great to be Credited. I must be acknowledged there is no Kingdom in Europe can pretend to so great a number of Nobility as they can do; and therefore considering that they are Brave, 'tis Morally impossible to Conquer their Country, so long as they are Unanimous. And the surprizing Progress that the Army of *Charles Gustavus* made here, was owing to the Differences at Home; which was made appear by the precipitant Flight of the *Swedes*, as soon as the *Poles* return'd to their Duty. The *Cossacks* can furnish them a considerable Infantry, and their Neighbours readily serve in their Armies, if the Nobility will permit the King to Levy Taxes to Pay 'em; but tho' they are Rich enough, they are not over ready in giving Supplies, or paying them when Assess'd.

The Inhabitants of Poland were converted from Paganism to Christianity, by *Aldebert*, Archbishop of *Gnesna*, about the Year 964. and ever since the RELIGION of the Church of Rome hath been Predominant here, except in *Red-Russia*, where the People adhere to the Greek Church; and in *Prussia* there are whole Cities of *Lutherans*, as *Dantzick*, *Elbing*, *Thorn* and *Marienbourg*, and some *Calvinists*, especially in the Ducal *Prussia*. *Faustus Socinus*, the Reviver of the *Arian* Heresy, was of this Nation. And his Followers from him, call'd *Socinians*, grew numerous in the last Century, but King *John Casimir* Expell'd them in the Year 1658.

Concerning the Form of GOVERNMENT in Poland, it is to be observ'd, that the *Poles* live under one Head, who bears the Title, and lives in the Splendor becoming a King; but if you consider his Power, as it is circumscrib'd within very narrow Bounds, he is in effect no more than the Prime or Chief Regent in a Free Common-wealth; since he can do nothing without the bounds of that Authority, which the Laws of the Land have given him, and the Nobles take care to maintain. This King is always Chosen by a Free Election, where every Nobleman present has his Vote; and tho' the *Poles* may have some inclination to the Royal Race, yet have they never consented to declare a Successor during the Life of the present King, but have always expected the Vacancy of the Throne, that they might at that time regulate Abuses, and by the *Pacta Conventa*, which the King solemnly Assents to, secure to themselves their Liberties. During an Interregnum, the Archbishop of *Gnesna* is *ex Officio*, Regent of the Kingdom: Or if there be no Archbishop of *Gnesna*, the Office devolves to the Bishop of *Cujavia*; and if that See be Vacant, to the Bishop of *Poznan*. The *Poles* have had an ancient Maxim, That their King ought rather to be Elect'd out of a Foreign Princely Family, than out of their own Nobility; being of Opinion, that thereby the equality among the Nobility, may be the better preserv'd. In the two Elections preceeding that of *Augustus*, they swerved from this Maxim, and Chose out of their own Nobility; and whether it had not been better to have done so then too, Time will shew, if they are not sensible of it already.

'Tis the Nobility or Gentry only, that have any share in the Government, the other Subjects being by the Laws deem'd Boors; for the Traders being mostly Foreigners, and the Husbandmen meer Vassals, the Gentry totally exclude them both from any share in the Legislation or Administration. The Senate,



Senate or Diet of Poland, is made up of the Bishops, Great Officers of State, viz. The Great Marshal of the Kingdom, the Great Marshal of the Duchy, the High-Chancellor of the Kingdom, the Chancellor of Lithuania, the Vice-Chancellor of the Kingdom, the Vice-Chancellor of Lithuania, the Treasurer of the Kingdom, the Treasurer of Lithuania, the Marshal of the Court of the Kingdom, and the Marshal of the Court of the Duchy, and the Palatines: To which are added the Lesser Senators, which are the Castellans or Lieutenants of the Palatinates, and the Deputies of the Nobility. This Court, which in the whole consists of One Hundred and Fifty Persons, is look'd upon as the Bulwark of the Commonwealth, against the attempts of the King, and therefore four of them are always about his Person, on pretence of giving him Counsel, but in Truth to be Spies upon him. However, the King having the disposal of the Great Offices and the Bishopricks, he can in Time, make a sufficient Party in the Senate, and the rather because the Palatines are commonly divided among themselves. This is the Legislative Power of the Nation, like as our Parliament in England, but with this difference, that the Deputies of the Nobility are like the Tribunes of the People in Old Rome, and have Power by the dissent of but one Voice, to hinder the Passing any Decree. And the Time of the Diet's Sitting being confined to six Weeks, it has often happen'd that the Labour of a whole Session has been lost, by the Caprice of one Member.

But the Great Diet, or General Assembly of the Nation, is the whole Body of the Nobility or Gentry, (for they are not distinguish'd by Titles in these Countries) which is exceeding Powerful, both by reason of their Number and Wealth. These meet on Horseback in the Plains near Warsaw, and are seldom Assembled but for the Election of a King. and 'tis they that prescribe the Rules by which he must Govern, call'd the *Paſſa Conventa*: The Heads of the Principal Parts whereof, it will not be amiss to set down, viz. The King must not call in, or admit Foreign Forces, without the Consent of the Estates. He must not encrease the number of the Militia, raise Forces privately, or send Aid to any other Prince, without the Consent of the Estates. He must not commit the Trust of Forts and Castles, to Strangers or Boors. He must not make an Offensive War, without the General Assembly. He must not make Peace, without the Approbation of the Estates: Only ancient Alliances may be Renewed by the King, with consent of the Senators residing at Court. And because the King has the disposal of all Civil and Ecclesiastical Dignities, it is usually stipulated in the *Paſſa Conventa*, that he shall not encrease or diminish the number of the Officers. Many other Conditions are prescribed in the *Paſſa Conventa*, which the King solemnly Swears to maintain.

For the Administration of Justice Civil and Criminal, several Courts, as usual, are held in Poland, but the most considerable are the Parliaments. Composed of a certain Number of Gentlemen, Clergy and Laity, who are Chosen in each Palatinate, the Lay Members once in four Years, and the Ecclesiastical once in two Years. Of these Parliaments there are two for the Kingdom, and one for the Duchy. Those for the Kingdom, Sit at Lublin in Upper, and Petricow in Lower Poland. And that for the Duchy, is held one Year at Vilna, and the other Year at Minski or Novogrodeck by turns. These Courts receive Appeals from Inferior Courts, and from them lies no Appeal, except to the King and Senate.

The Revenues of the King of Poland arise out of the Salt-Pits, the half of the Customs of Danzick, and the Royal Oeconomies, all which may amount to above 100000 *l. per Annum*, but then it is a' clear to himself, for he pays no Troops, not even his own Guards. And all the Officers of the Household are Gentlemen of Poland, who Serve without Salary, in expectation of some Office. And all the Charges of the Army, and other publick Expences being provided by the Senate, he has no manner of Charge but that of his own Family. Moreover the Estates provide a suitable Maintenance for the Queen, after the King's Death; but then he cannot Marry or Divorce, without their Consent, nor can the Queen be Crown'd without being of the *Romish Religion*.

*The Succession of the Kings and Princes of POLAND, as well as it can be Collected from History, is as follows.*

	Anno Dom.
1. <i>Lechus</i> , The Founder of the Monarchy.	550
After his Death, the Government of the Kingdom was committed to 12 Palatines.	
2. <i>Cracus</i> , who built Cracow.	700
3. <i>Lechus II.</i> The Son and Murderer of <i>Cracus</i> .	
4. <i>Venda</i> , both a Beautiful and Valiant Princess.	750
After her Death, the Kingdom was again Govern'd by 12 Palatines.	
5. <i>Primislaus</i> , or <i>Leschus I.</i> Rais'd from a low condition to the Throne, for his extraordinary Courage and Wisdom.	760
6. <i>Leschus II.</i> Sirnam'd the Black	804
7. <i>Leschus III.</i> Son and Successor of <i>Leschus II.</i>	810
8. <i>Popiel I.</i> a Debauch'd and Effeminate Man.	815
9. <i>Popiel II.</i> Son of <i>Popiel I.</i> who was eaten up by Mice:	830
10. <i>Piaſtus</i> , advanc'd from the Plow to the Throne.	842
11. <i>Semovitius</i> , or <i>Ziemonitus</i> , a Warlike Prince.	861
12. <i>Leschus IV.</i> who concluded Peace with all his Neighbours.	892
13. <i>Semislaus</i> , or <i>Ziemonislaus</i> , a Peaceable Prince.	913
14. <i>Mescho</i> , or <i>Miecislauſ</i> , the first Christian Prince of Poland.	964
15. <i>Boleslaus I.</i> Sirnamed <i>Chrobri</i> , who is said to have assum'd the Title of King, whereas his Predecessors had contented themselves with that of Duke.	999
16. <i>Mesco</i> or <i>Miecislauſ II.</i> an Effeminate Prince	1025
17. <i>Casimir I.</i> was Dethron'd, and enter'd into a Cloister, but afterwards he Defeated the Usurper.	1041
18. <i>Boleslaus II.</i> Sirnamed the Bold, a Valiant Prince, before he degenerated into a barbarous Murderer, and fell in Love with a Mare; for which detestable Crimes, both he and his Posterity were depriv'd of the Royal Dignity.	1059
19. <i>Uladislaus I.</i> Sirnam'd <i>Hermannus</i> ,	1082
20. <i>Boleslaus III.</i> Sirnam'd <i>Crivoustus</i> .	1103
21. <i>Uladislaus II.</i> who was Expell'd the Kingdom.	1139
22. <i>Boleslaus IV.</i> Sirnam'd <i>Crispus</i> .	1146
23. <i>Miecislauſ III.</i> Sirnam'd the Aged, who was Depos'd for Oppression and exorbitant Impositions.	1174
24. <i>Casimir II.</i> who redress'd all the Grievances of his Brother's Reign.	1178
25. <i>Leschus</i> ,	



25. *Leschus V.* Surnam'd the *White*, who was Murder'd by his Uncle *Miecislus* the Aged. 1195
26. *Bleslaus V.* Surnam'd the *Chaste*. 1226
27. *Leschus VI.* Surnam'd the *Black*. 1279
28. *Premislaus II.* who reassum'd the Regal Title by advice of the Nobility, but was Kill'd in his Camp, in the first Year of his Reign. 1295
29. *Wenceslaus*, King of *Bohemia*, obtain'd the Crown of *Poland*. 1296
30. *Uladislaus III.* Surnam'd *Lothicus*. 1305
31. *Casimir III.* Surnam'd the *Great*, a Just and Peaceful Prince. 1333
32. *Lewis*, King of *Hungary*, was chosen King of *Poland*. 1370
33. *Uladislaus IV.* call'd *Jagello*, who United the Dutchy of *Lithuania* (whereof he had been Duke, to the Crown of *Poland*. 1386
34. *Uladislaus V.* who was Kill'd in a Battle against the *Turks*. 1434
35. *Casimir IV.* Surnam'd the *Great*. 1447
36. *John Albert*. 1492
37. *Alexander*, successful against the *Muscovites* and *Tartars*. 1501
38. *Sigismund I.* who subdued *Prussia*. 1507
39. *Sigismund II.* Surnam'd *Augustus*. 1548
40. *Henry of Valois*. 1574
41. *Stephen Bathori*, Prince of *Transilvania*. 1576
42. *Sigismund III.* Son of *John*, King of *Sweden*, renounc'd the *Protestant* Religion, and was chosen King of *Poland*. 1587
43. *Uladislaus VI.* Son and Successor of *Sigismund*. 1632
44. *John Casimer*, formerly a Jesuit and Cardinal. 1648
45. *Michaël Ceribut Wisnowiecki*, descended of the Family of the Dukes of *Lithuania*. 1669
46. *John Sbieski*, descended of a very Noble Family in the Palatinate of *Lublin*, was chosen May 10. 1674
47. *Frederick Augustus*, Duke of *Saxony*, after a Year's Interregnum, was chosen King of *Poland*: But as he was oppos'd by the Primate and his Party, who declar'd the Prince of *Conti* Chosen, so he had a very troublesome Reign. To keep down the Factions against him, he brought in a Body of Troops from *Saxony*, which offending the People, he employ'd them in the Conquest of *Livonia*, which was formerly possess'd by the *Poles*, This brought the King of *Sweden* upon him, whose prevailing Arms enabl'd him to cause a new Election, wherein *Stanislaus*, a *Polish* Nobleman, was declar'd King in the Year 1704. And finally, by Invading *Saxony*, the King of *Sweden* oblig'd King *Augustus* to quit his Royalty, in the Year 1707. And *Stanislaus* is now King.

### The Particular Description of P O L A N D.

The Kingdom of *Poland* consists of these Parts.

- I. *P O L A N D*, properly so call'd.
- II. *P R U S S I A*.
- III. The Great Dukedom of *L I T H U A N I A*.
- IV. *S A M O G I T I A* and *C O U R L A N D*.
- V. *W A R S O V I A*, *P O L A C H I A*, and *P O L E S I A*.

VI. *R E D - R U S S I A*:

VII. *P O D O L I A*.

VIII. *V O L H I N N A*, and the *U K R A I N*

Of these, *Courland* and *Samogitia*, lie in the Northern part.

*Prussia* on the Banks of the *Baltick* Sea.

*Poland* takes up all the Western Part.

*Warsovia*, *Polachia*, and *Polesia*, the Middle.

*Lithuania*, *Volbinia* and the *Ukrain*, the Eastern part. And

*Red-Russia*, with *Podolia*, the Southern.

The Sub-divisions whereof are thus

*Poland*, properly so call'd, is divided into the Upper and Lower.

Upper *Poland*, call'd also the Lesser *Poland*, contains the three Palatinates of

*Cracow*,  
*Sandomir*,  
*Lublien*.

*Poznania*,  
*Kalisch*.

*Brezestye*,  
*Wladislaw*.

*Lencici*,  
*Inowloiz*.

*Sirad*,  
*Rawa*.

*Ploczko*,  
*Dobrizin*.

*Royal*,  
*Ducal*.

*Wina*,  
*Troki*.

*Beslaw*,  
*Nowogrodec*.

*Minski*,  
*Mzeislaw*.

*Witepsk*,  
*Polocza*.

*Risem*,  
*Midnik*.

*Schwende*,  
*Semigallia*.

*Courland*,  
*Czersko*.

and the City  
*Warsaw*.

*Bielsk*,  
*Bressici*.

or  
*Brest*.

*Lemberg*,  
*Bielz*.

*Chelm*.

Lower or Greater *Poland*, contains the Ten Palatinates of

*Prussia* is Divided into

*Lithuania* is divided into Eight Palatinates.

*Samogitia* hath these Cities.

*Courland* is divided into,

*Warsovia*, otherwise call'd *Masovia*, hath one Palatinate of

*Polachia*, the Palatinate of

*Polesia*.

*Red-Russia* contains three Palatinates.

*Podolia* divided into

Upper, wherein the Palatinate of *Caminiac*  
Lower, wherein the Palatinate of *Braclaw*.

*Volbinia*, divided into the Upper, which contains the Palatinate of *Lusuck*.

The Lower, which is commonly call'd the *Ukrain*, contains the Palatinate of *Kiow*.



C H A P. II.

of P O L A N D, properly so call'd; divided into the Upper and Lower.

THE Upper or Lesser Poland, is situated between the Lower Poland and *Warsovia* on the North, *Hungary* on the South, *Red-Russia* on the East, and *Germany* on the West, containing in extent from East to West, near 200 Miles; from North to South above 120; lying between 49 and 51 Degrees of Latitude. The River *Vistula* passes thro' it; the River *Warta* hath its Source here, and several other smaller Rivers water the Land, which is reasonably fruitful but over-run with Woods. It is divided into three Palatinates, wherein are these Cities and chief Towns, viz.

In the Palatinate of *Cracow*, being the South-West part of the Province, are,

- Cracow.*
- Novoguiria*
- Severia.*
- Czenterow.*
- Lelow.*
- Ozwiecin.*
- Zator.*
- Wielicz.*
- Bochna.*
- Sandecz.*
- Lubowla.*
- Byecz.*

In the Palatinate of *Sendomir*, which is the middle part, are,

- Sendomir.*
- Zawichost.*
- Kunow.*
- Schedlowitz.*
- Radom.*
- Zarnaw.*
- Malogocz.*
- Pikzow.*
- Wislickia.*
- Corezin.*
- Polaniez.*
- Pilsno.*

In the Palatinate of *Lublin*, which is the North-East part, are

- Lublin.*
- Kazimiers.*
- Piotrowin.*
- Urzendow.*
- Opol.*
- Scodleck.*

an admirable Prospect; the Cathedral of St. *Stanislaus*, the Church of St. *Mary* in the Grand Place, surrounded with four Rows of very fine Buildings, with 50 other Churches, are the most considerable. This City was made the See of an Archbishop, at the first planting of Christianity here, in the Year 964: but about 100 Years after, upon some Difference with the Pope, it was reduc'd to an Episcopal, and made Suffragan to *Gnesna*: It is also adorn'd with an University, honour'd with the Session of the Supreme Court of Judicature, the keeping of the Royal Ensigns or Regalia, and is the Place of the King's Coronation. *Cracow* in general comprehends the three Parts of 1. *Cracow*, 2. *Stradomira*, and 3. *Cazamira*. The first is encompass'd with a Ditch and Wall, flank'd with round Brick Towers, and in it stands the Castle, a Mile in Compass, founded on a Rock, with noble Buildings of Stone, round a square Court, and Galleries supported by Marble Pillars, the King's Apartments are adorn'd with very curious Paintings and Statues; and the North Gallery Built by King *Sigismund* affords a Prospect over all the fine Country in the Neighbourhood.

*Novoguiria*, 25 miles West from *Cracow*. *Siberia* 30 miles N: from it. *Lelow* the same distance North-East from *Siberia*, with some other Towns in their Neighbourhood, are noted for their Silver and Lead Mines. *Czenterow*, on the River *Warta*, near the Confines of this Palatinate, 60 miles North-West from *Cracow*, is famous for its well endow'd Monastery of Hermits and religious Votaries: *Ozwiecin* and *Zator* on the South-side of the *Vistula*, over against *Novoguiria*, are honour'd with the Title of Dukedoms. *Wielicz* on the same side of the *Vistula*, a few miles from *Cracow*, and *Bochna* famous for Rock Salt, as hard as Stones dug out of Mines.

*Sandecz*, 40 miles South from *Cracow*, hath Mines of Gold and Copper; as *Byecz*, 20 miles East from it, hath of Vitriol. *Lubowla* 20 miles South from *Sandecz*, is a strong Fortrefs, formerly in the hands of the *Hungarians*, but now possess'd by the *Poles*.

*Sendomir*, the Capital of the Palatinate, stands on a Rock near the Banks of the *Vistula*, where it receives the *Sanus*, about 100 miles East from *Cracow*, and 120 South from *Warsaw*. It is a pleasant City and fortified with Walls, a strong Castle, and some regular Out-works, rais'd by *Casimer* the Great. Among the publick Buildings, the Monastery of *Dominican* Friars, is chiefly remarkable. This Town was sack'd by the *Tartars* in 1240. and was taken by the *Swedes* in 1655. but restor'd the Year following.

*Zawichost* stands on the East-side of the *Vistula*, near 20 miles below *Sendomir*. *Kunow*, 40 miles North from *Sendomir*, hath Quarries of Marble. *Schedlowitz*, 30 miles West from *Kunow*, and 50 North-West from *Sendomir*, abounds with Iron and Steel.

*Radom* stands on the North-East of *Schedlowitz* about 20 miles, and *Zarnaw* is about 40 miles from it to the West. *Malogocz* stands 70 miles East from

R f f

Sendec

*Cracow*, *Cracovia*; the Metropolis of the Kingdom of Poland, is seated on a Rocky Bank of the River *Vistula*, about the middle of the Palatinate, 50 miles North from the Confines of *Hungary*, 40 East from *Germany*, 250 South from the *Baltick* Sea, and in the Latitude of 49. 40. Longitude 40. 20. It had its Name, as is suppos'd from one *Cracus*, a Person of great Reputation, and as the *Bohemians* brag, one of their Princes, whom the *Polanders* entreated to take upon him the Government, after they were weary of the Twelve Waywodes, that succeeded King *Lechus* I. but others make it the *Carodunum* of *Ptolomy*. It is the largest and best built of any Town in Poland, the Houses being of Free-Stone, and very high, the Streets large, and the publick Buildings Magnificent: Among which the King's Palace seated on a Hill, which affords it



*Sendmir*, and *Pikzow* 25 South from it. *Vislicza* stands in the midway between that and *Corezin*, which stands on the *Vistula*, as doth *Polaniez*, about 25 Miles below it. *Pilsno* stands on the South, about 20 Miles from the *Vistula*, and near 60 from *Sendmir*.

*Lublin*, the chief Town of the other Palatinate, stands at the Foot of a Hill near the River *Ustrieza*, 50 Miles from *Sendmir*, and 90 from *Cracow* to the North-East, and 80 from *Warsaw* to the South-West. It is not a very large, but well-built Town, and much frequented by Merchants from *Muscovy*, *Germany*, and other Parts, at the three great Fairs kept Annually here. The great Church Dedicated to St. *Michael*, and several Monasteries here are magnificent Structures; and the Town is honour'd with being the Seat of one of the two Supreme Courts of Judicature in *Poland*. It is wall'd round, and environ'd with Marthes; and is, besides, defended by an adjacent Castle, that was at first Built by the *Russians*, all which render this a Place of Strength.

*Kazimiers* and *Piatrowin*, stand on the *Vistula*, about 15 Miles asunder, and 25 from *Lublin*. *Urzadow* is about 12 Miles South East from *Piatrowin*. *Opal* stands 25 Miles North from *Lublin* and *Scodick* as far beyond it, near the Confines of *Warsavia*.

The LOWER or larger *POLAND*, so call'd, because *Lechus* the first King of the *Poles* chose this Country for his Seat, lies on the North of the Upper *Poland*, between *Warsavia* on the East, *Germany* on the West, *Prussia* on the North, and the Lesser *Poland* and *Silesia* on the South. It extends from the 51st to the 53d Degree of Latitude, and from the 37th to the 42d Degree of Longitude, being from North to South about 100 Miles, and from East to West above 200 Miles. It is generally a level Champaign Country, abounding with pleasant Rivers, Lakes and Ponds, among which the River *Warta* is most considerable, and passes thro' a great part. The Land produces plenty of Corn, and the Inhabitants are plentifully furnish'd with Cattle, Fish and Fowl. This Province comprehends 10 Palatines, wherein these Cities and Towns are of chiefest Note, viz.

In the Palatinate of *Pofnania*, the most Western part of *Poland*,

*Pofnan.*  
*Rogofno.*  
*Krofcian.*  
*Cieblow.*

The Palatinate of *Kalish* lies on the East of *Pofnania*,

*Kalish.*  
*Gnesna.*  
*Kamin.*  
*Laudick.*  
*Nakel.*

*CUCAVIA* lies on the North-East of *Kalish*, and comprehends the three Palatinates of

I. *Brzefte.*

*Brzefte.*  
*Cowale.*  
*Kruswick.*

II. *Wladislaw.*

*Wladislaw.*

III. *Inowlocz.*

*Inowlocz.*

The Palatinate of *Dorbzin*, lies on the East of *Cujavia*,

*Dorbzin.*  
*Libna.*  
*Rippina.*

The Palatinate of *Plocsko*, lies on the South-East of *Dorbzin*,

*Plocsko.*  
*Rafuntz.*  
*Plonsko.*

The Palatinate of *Rava*, lies on the South of *Dorbzin* and *Cujavia*,

*Rava.*  
*Lowicz.*  
*Gostymin.*  
*Gabin.*

The Palatinate of *Lencicia*, is on the West of *Rava*,

*Lencicia.*  
*Breffini.*  
*Inowlocz.*

The Palatinate of *Sirad* is the most Southern part of the Lower *Poland*,

*Siradia.*  
*Widlin.*  
*Pietrikow.*

*Pofna*, *Pofnania*, call'd *Poznan* by the Inhabitants and *Pofen* by the *Germans*, is situated on a Plain in the midst of Hills, and on the Banks of the River *Warta*, 170 Miles North-West from *Cracow*, 150 West from *Warsaw*, and 100 Miles South from *Dantzick*. It is a City of small Compass, but well built and strong, being surrounded with double Walls and a deep Ditch, and adorn'd with a stately Castle: The Suburbs are encompass'd by a Moats and deep Lake. It is also the See of a Bishop and a Place of good Trade. The Mayor or chief Magistrate, who is chosen Annually, is dignify'd with the Title of General of Great *Poland*. *Joh. Lubranski*, sometime Bishop here, founded a small University, in the Suburbs of *Pofna*; which Structure was afterwards very much Beautified by *Adam Canar*, one of his Successors, and it is in a flourishing State. The other most considerable Buildings are the Jesuits College and Monastery. The Inhabitants of this City are very Wealthy and Civil, and appear finer in their Apparel and Houses than ordinary.

*Rogofno* stands about 20 Miles North from *Pofna*, *Krofcian* in the very middle of the Palatinate, 30 West from *Pofna*. *Cieblow* 20 Miles West from *Krofcian*, stands on a small River that a little below falls into the *Oder*.

*Kalish* stands in a marshy Land near the Banks of the River *Drofna*, 40 Miles South East from *Pofna*. It is fortified with a strong Brick-Wall, and adorn'd with a stately College of Jesuits.

*Gnesna*, call'd *Gnisen* by the *Germans*, the chief City of the Lower *Poland*, and formerly the Metropolis of the whole Kingdom, and Seat of the King stands in the middle of the Palatinate, 30 Miles from *Kalish* to the North, and as far from *Pofna* to the West. It was Built, as is generally reported, by King *Lechus* I. Founder of this Monarchy, and call'd *Gnesna*, from an Eagle's Nest found there, which in the *Polish* Language is call'd *Gnesiad*. A dreadful Fire which happen'd in 1613. miserably laid it waste, and it has ever since declin'd. This is the See of the Archbishop, a Person of great Dignity and Power, being Primate of all *Poland*, Legate of the Holy See; and in case of the King's Death, is Regent till a new King be chosen, whom also he claims the right of Declaring and Crowning. The Cathedral is a venerable Building, and exceeding Rich, having Gates of *Corinthian* Brass, and a Treasury of inestimable Value.

*Kamin* and *Laudick*, both stand on the River *Warta*, 20 or 30 Miles East and South-East from *Gnesna*. *Nakel* stands on a River to which it gives Name, 35 Miles North from *Gnesna*.

*Brzefte.*



*Brziesze* stands upon a Causeway among Marshes, 60 Miles East from *Gnesna*, and is only considerable on account of its being the Seat of a Palatine: *Crowie* stands upon the *Vistula*, 20 Miles East from *Brziesze*. *Kruswick* stands upon the Lake *Gropi*, about 30 miles West from *Brziesze*, and is remarkable for the Death of *Popiel II.* Duke of Poland, who was devour'd by Rats, a just Punishment from Heaven, for having poison'd a great number of his Friends and Relations at a Feast, as *Staravolscius* relates. *Bidget*, in this Palatinate, has been mention'd in History, on account of the Treaty of Peace concluded there, Nov. 6. 1657. between the King of Poland and the Duke of Brandenburg.

*Wladislaw*, *Uladislavia* stands upon the *Vistula* in the midway between *Ploczko* and *Thorn*, about 20 miles from *Brziesze* to the North, in a marshy Soil, but surrounded with a plentiful Country. It is the Seat of the Bishop of *Cujavia*, whose stately Palace is the chief Ornament of the City. The Cathedral is an old Building, but very rich in Plate and Furniture. This is the chief Palatinate and Capital of *Cujavia*.

*Inowlocz* about 30 or 40 miles West from *Uladislaw*, is the Seat of the third Palatine of *Cujavia*, but otherwise not very considerable. *Bydgosk*, a wall'd Town, stands on the River *Barde*, which falls into the *Vistula*, and is a Place of good Trade, especially for Salmon.

*Dorbzin* is a little Town, built upon a Rock near the Banks of the *Vistula*, about 15 miles East from *Uladislaw*, and only notable for being a Palatinate; and about 25 miles North from it stands *Libna* and *Rippina*, a Fortress.

*Ploczko* the chief City of the Palatinate, and the See of a Bishop, is seated on a high Bank on the *Vistula*, whence is a fair Prospect of a pleasant and fruitful Country: It is distant 15 miles from *Dorbzin* to the South, near 30 from *Brziesze* to the East, and about 50 from *Warsaw* to the North-West; and is a populous Place, having several religious Houses and Churches, besides a Cathedral, very well endow'd. *Rassuntz* and *Plonsko* stand about 30 miles to the North-East from it.

*Rava*, a populous City, the Head of the Palati-

nate, stands on a River of the same Name, 50 miles South from *Ploczko*, and about as far South-West from *Warsaw*. It is built of Wood, and guarded by a Castle, which is the Prison of such Persons of Quality as are committed, and also the Repository of part of the Crown Revenues. Here is also a wealthy College of Jesuits. About 25 miles North from hence stands *Lowicz*, the Residence of the Archbishop of *Gnesna*, whose Palace is a magnificent Fabrick: The Town is very populous, and much resorted to by Merchants at its Annual Fair. *Gostyrin* stands about 10 miles North from *Lowicz*, on the River *Bsura*, as does *Gabin* 10 miles East from it.

*Lowicz* is seated among Marshes, 20 Miles from *Rava*, guarded by a Castle, and adorn'd with a stately Church, and the Palace of the Archbishop of *Gnesna*, who usually resides here.

*Lancicia* or *Lanschet*, which gives Denomination to a Palatinate, stands on the River *Bsura*, about 40 or 50 miles from *Rava* to the North West, and 80 from *Warsaw* to the West. It stands among Marshes, and hath a good Castle for its Defence, built on Rock. *Bressini* and *Inowlocz* stand in the extreme South-West part of this Palatinate, near the Confines of Upper Poland, about 60 miles from *Lancicia*.

*Sirad* stands in a Plain, on the Banks of the River *Warta*, 60 miles West from *Rava*, and near 70 South from *Pozna*: 'Tis a mean-built Town, the Houses being of Wood, but is surrounded with a strong Brick-Wall. It is the Head of a Palatinate, and was formerly a Dukedom, usually given to the second Son of the King. *Petrikow*, about 30 or 40 miles from *Sirad* to the East, is a neat and well-built Town, but stands among Marshes, and was almost quite burnt down in the Year 1640. Here was formerly a Royal Palace, but it is now ruinous. The other Parliament, or Supreme Court of Judicature in Poland, is held yearly in this Town, for deciding Differences between the Nobility, and determining Causes by Appeal from Inferior Courts. *Widlim*, a neat Town built of Brick, stands about 25 miles South from *Sirad*.

## C H A P. III.

### Of P R U S S I A.

**P R U S S I A** is a large Country, lying on the North of Poland Proper, between that and the Baltick Sea, with *Lithuania* and *Samogitia* on the East, and *Pomerania* on the West. Poland Proper, as we have said, with *Warsovia*, being the Southern, as the Baltick Sea and *Samogitia*, is the Northern Bounds. It lies between the 53d and 55th Degree of Latitude, and in Longitude from the 38th to the 44th Degree. Its Length is about 200 miles; the Breadth in the Eastern Part, is at most but 80 miles; but in the Western Part it runs up to near twice as much. The Soil is reasonably Fruitful, but somewhat overrun with Weeds, and abounds with

Rivers, whereof the *Wesel* or *Vistula* is the most considerable; that River rises in the Mountains, on the Borders of Hungary, passes cross Poland, and falls into the Baltick at *Dantzick*, having first divided itself into several Branches, and made the three Islands called the *Werder*: The larger Branch passes by *Marienburg*, and at *Elbing* falls into the Bay *Frisch-Haft*, which is a safe Harbour from the Baltick. Here are also many small Lakes, which afford the Inhabitants plenty of Fish, as the Woods do with Venison, and the Lands with Cattle and Corn; one Commodity especially, *Prussia* hath pec-



cularly, which is Amber found on the Sea-coasts in great plenty. *Prussia* was formerly a rude Country, inhabited by *Barbarian* Idolaters, long after *Poland* had received Christianity; for though many Endeavours were used to Convert 'em, nothing could be effected, till the Knights of the *Teutonic* Order attempted it; who in the middle of the Thirteenth Century, Conquer'd the Country, planted Christianity, and succeeded in the Sovereignty of the Eastern part of it; and *Albert*, Marquess of *Brandenburg* and first Duke of *Prussia*, becoming Master of the Order, conveyed the Dominion of that part, since called the Ducal *Prussia*, to his Successors the Marquises of *Brandenburg*, who still enjoy it: But the Eastern part was Conquer'd by the *Poles*, and is still part of their Country. At the Reformation the *Lutheran* Religion prevail'd here, and is still generally profess'd in the Regal *Prussia*; but the late Marquise of *Brandenburg* introduc'd *Calvinism* into *Koningsberg*, and other Parts of the Ducal *Prussia*.

*Prussia* is divided into two large Parts, viz. Royal and Ducal. The former subject to the King of *Poland*, is the Western part, bounded on the North by the *Baltick*, on the South by *Poland*, on the East by the Ducal *Prussia*, and on the West by *Pomerania*. It is divided by the River *Vistula*, that part lying on the East of the River, being call'd *Pomerelia*. The chief Cities and Towns are these, viz.

In *Pomerelia*.

*Dantzick*.  
*Dirschow*.  
*Stargard*.  
*Grabow*.  
*Pautzko*.

Within the *Weissel*.

*Elbing*.  
*Marienburg*.  
*Culm*.  
*Culmsee*.  
*Thorn*.  
*Wartemberg*.  
*Braunsberg*.

*Dantzick*, *Dantiscum*, ant *Gedanum*, the Capital City of *Pomerania*, is seated on a Bay of the *Baltick* Sea, near the Mouth of the River *Vistula*, 140 miles North West from *Warsaw*, near 120 East from *Sterin* in *Pomerania*, and about 30 West from *Elbing*, in the Latitude of 54. and Longitude of 40. It is a large, well-built, rich, and populous City, the greatest Emporium of the *Baltick*-Sea, and perhaps one of the greatest Granaries in *Europe*. It is one of the chief of the *Hanse*-Towns, and a famous Mart Town for Corn and other Commodities of *Poland*; vast Fleets of *Holland* Ships come Yearly hither, from whence they fetch almost all the Corn used in *Holland* and *Zealand*. It was erected into a City in 1295. by King *Primislaus*. and in 1343, Wall'd round by the Knights of the *Teutonic* Order, whose Master. *Conrad Wallenrodt*, built that part of the City call'd *De rechte Stadt*, in 1390. Besides which, *Dantzick* consists of two other Parts, which are Govern'd by three distinct Senates, and so might be called three Towns; but is however, but one City, under the Government of its own Magistracy, and Protection of the King of *Poland*. Two Rivulets pass through the Town, and feed it with Water, as well as drive many Mills for the Conve- nieny and Profit of the People. The publick Build-

ings are very fair, especially the Church of *St. Mary*, which is very magnificent in its Building, and rich in its Ornaments, the Font alone being said to have cost five thousand Pounds; the Town-House, the Arsenal, the Exchange, the place of *St. Dominick*, and a College of *Jesuits*, with several Churches, are the other Buildings of chiefest Note here. This City hath suffer'd many Revolutions: About the Year 1100, the *Danes* possess'd it; afterwards the *Polanders* gain'd it: In 1305, the *Teutonic* Knights were Masters of it: In 1454, *Casimer* III. King of *Poland* regain'd it, and granted great Privileges to the Citizens; who afterwards in defence of the *Augsburg* Confession, sided with *Maximilian* of *Austria* against the *Poles*, which provok'd King *Stephen Batthori* to Besiege them in 1577. But by the Mediation of other Princes, they were restor'd to their Religion and Liberties, in 1597. And in 1632, the City was made a Member of the State, and admitted to a Suffrage in the Election of the King. In 1656, they vigorously repuls'd the *Swedes*, and adhered to the Interest of King *John Casimir*.

*Stargard* and *Dirschow* stand about 20 miles South from *Dantzick*, the latter on the *Vistula*.

*Grabow* stands on the Borders of *Pomerania*, 80 miles South-West, and seated on the Bay.

*Elbing* stands on a little River of the same Name, which rises out of the Lake *Drausen*, and falls here into the *Frisch Haff*, a Bay of the *Baltick*, which is the Haven of this City, at the distance of 4 or 5 miles from the *Vistula*, 30 from *Dantzick* to the East, about 60 from *Uladislaw* to the North, and 120 North-West from *Warsaw*. It has a most delightful Situation, is very Populous, and a Place of great Trade, the Inhabitants being wholly addicted to Business and Commerce. The City was built in 1239, and is divided into the Old and New Town. It was at first a Free and Imperial City, but afterwards fell into the Hands of the Knights of the *Teutonic* Order, and when *Dantzick* and *Thorn* shook off their Yoak, it follow'd the Example, and submitted itself upon certain Conditions, to the King of *Poland*. In the Year 1629, it was Taken by the *Swedes*, and being afterwards Surrender'd, was Taken again by them in 1655. There is an University in it, which was Founded by *Albert* of *Brandenburg*, Duke of *Prussia*. This Town, together with *Thorn* and *Dantzick*, are the Repositories of the Treasure and Archives of Royal *Prussia*. On the 14th of *October*, 1698, General *Brandt*, with a Body of Horse of the Elector of *Brandenburg*'s Forces, came into the Neighbourhood of this Place, with design to put a Garison into it, upon account of an Agreement formerly made between the then King of *Poland* and the late Elector of *Brandenburg*, at the Treaty of *Velaw* and *Bigost*, that this City should be put into the Hands of the Elector, as Security for Payment of a Debt of 400000 Dollars, due to him for the Assistance he had given the Republick of *Poland* in the War against *Sweden*, neither of which having been performed, he came now to demand it; but the City not receiving his Garison, he Block'd it up and made every thing ready for Bombarding it. Upon which the Citizens, unwilling to let things come to Extremity, and despairing of Relief from *Poland*, which was then in great Confusion, submitted upon Articles, and 1200 *Brandenburgers* enter'd the 11th of *November*, and kept Possession of the Place, till the beginning of the Year 1700, when



when the *Poles* agreed to pay the Money; and till it could be raised, put into the Elector's Hands the Jewels of the Crown, and accordingly the *Brandenburgers* quitted the City, which remains in its former State.

*Mirienburg*, *Marieburgum*, called also *Margemburg* by the Inhabitants, and *Malbork* by the *Polanders*, is seated on the *Nogat*, a Branch of the *Vistula*, at the distance of 25 miles from *Dantzick* to the South-East, and about 20 from *Elbing* to the South-West. It was heretofore the chief Seat of the *Teutonic* Knights, having been Founded by a Cross-bearer of that Fraternity, and took its Name, thay say, from a Miraculous Image of the *Virgin Mary*. The Castle was built in 1281, and reckon'd one of the strongest in these Parts: But in the *Swedish* Wars in 1644, it was burnt down, and the New one since built, is not so considerable, nor the Town very Noble; the Houses being of Wood and but mean, and the Inhabitants but Poor. The Town was Taken by the *Poles* in 1460. And by the *Swedes* in 1625, and in 1655. But was restor'd afterwards to the *Poles*, who still possess it.

*Cu'm*, an ancient famous City, stands on a Hill, the Foot whereof is Water'd by the *Vistula*, 50 miles South from *Dantzick*, and 40 North-West from *Uladislaw*; it is at present in mean State, having suffer'd much in the *Swedish* War, but was anciently a Fortress of great Importance; the Town was built by the Cross-bearers of the *Teutonic* Knights in 1223, and afterwards well Fortified against the Irruptions of the Heathen *Prussians*. *Herman de Salza*, Master of the Order, prescrib'd Laws for its Government, which were so considerable as to be taken notice of publicly, and a Specimen of them have been publish'd by *Lambecius*. It was also honour'd with an Episcopal See, but since the decay of the City, the Bishoprick hath been translated to

*Culmensee*, or *Culmsee*, a small Town about 12 Miles South-East from *Culm*.

*Thorn*, *Torunum*, which stands on the *Vistula*, about 20 Miles South from *Culm*, and 30 North-East from *Uladislaw*, 100 North-West from *Warsaw* and 50 South-East from *Dantzick*; is the fairest and best built Town in Royal *Prussia*, the Streets being much broader, and the Houses statelier than at *Dantzick*; it is also adorn'd with a *Gymnasium*, or small University, a Library, Hospital, and a stately Town-House, exceeded by none but *Amsterdam*. All which Structures were erected in the beginning of this Century, through the Care and Industry of *Henry Stroband*, one of the *Burgomasters*, who died 1609. It was heretofore subject to the *Teutonic* Order, from whom it revolted in 1254, and was afterwards a free Imperial City; and tho' at present exempted from the Empire, and under the Protection of *Poland*, enjoys many Privileges. Here is a Bridge over the River, and at Old

*Thorn*, a mile off, are still the Ruins of a Castle. The famous *Nicolas Copernicus*, Author of the *Theory*, was born here. This City was Taken, and Regain'd several times in the *Swedish* Wars, from 1655, to 1665.

*Braunslaw* stands on the *Frisch-Haff*, 20 miles North-East from *Elbing*.

*Wartemberg* is 45 miles East from *Elbing*, in that part of the Regal *Prussia*, which advances forward into the middle of the Ducal.

The Ducal *Prussia* (which may now be also call'd Royal, in regard that the Elector of *Brandenburg*, hath chosen this part of his Dominions to Honour with the Title of Kingdom, in his late Creation) is bound on the North with the *Baltick*, and *Samogitia* on the South with *Warsovia*, on the East with *Lithuania*, and on the West with *Prussia* Royal. It is the larger part of *Prussia*, extending Eastward from the Sea-Coast, above 100 Miles, and Southward towards *Warsovia* as far. The chief Towns in it are,

<i>Koningsberg.</i>	}	<i>Pillaw.</i>
<i>Memel.</i>		<i>Heiligpeil.</i>
<i>Labiau.</i>		

*Koningsberg*, the chief City of the Ducal *Prussia*, and a place of great Trade, stands at the Mouth of the River *Pregel*, which here falls into the *Frisch-Haff*, 80 miles East from *Dantzick*, about as far West from the Confines of *Samogitia*, and 130 miles North from *Warsaw*. It is a large and well-built Town, divided into three parts; whereof that which is properly the Old *Koningsberg*, and was built in 1260, by the *Teutonic* Order, hath the Ducal Palace in it; The second stands in an Island, and is called *Kniphoff*, from an Officer of that Name, who joined it to *Koninsberg* in 1380. In this Part stands the Cathedral of the Bishoprick of *Smarland*, and an University Founded by Duke *Albert*; the third is called *Lebenicht*, which *Berthold* of *Austria*, added to the two former. The Lake called the *Frisch-Haff*, opens to the *Baltick* Sea, and makes a convenient Port to this City, which is thereby a great Emporium, and hath been subject to the *Brandenburger* since the Year 1525:

*Memel* stands at the extream North-part of *Prussia*, upon a Lake of fresh Water, called the *Curisch-Haff*, which opening to the *Baltick*, makes a convenient Port, at the distance of 90 miles from *Koningsberg* to the North, and 60 from *Mittaw* in *Courland*, to the West. It is seated among Lakes, and is Fortified with a strong Castle, which renders it the Northern Key of this Country.

*Labiau* stands at the bottom of the *Curisch-Haff*, about 25 miles North-East from *Koningsberg*. *Pillaw*, a very safe Port on the *Baltick*, at the Mouth of the *Frisch-Haff*, about 30 miles West from *Koningsberg*. *Heiligpeil* stands overagainst it, within-side the Lake.



## C H A P. IV.

## Of S A M O G I T I A and C O U R L A N D.

*SAMOGITIA* lies on the North of *Prussia*, in a Triangular Form, between *Courland* on the North, *Lithuania* on the East and South-East, and Ducal *Prussia* on the South West; a small part of it extending quite to the *Baltick* on the West, and the extent of it is about 100 Miles. It is a Marshy Soil, whence the Country has its Name, *Samogitz*, signifying such in the Language of the Inhabitants, and hath abundance of Rivers and Lakes, that often overflow the Land, which yields Pasture and Corn; but especially Woods in abundance, wherein great quantity of excellent Honey is found: A Race of Horses are bred here, which tho' small, are of a sprightly generous Nature. The River *Chrozas*, otherwise call'd the *Russe*, passes through the South-Point of this Country, whence running cross *Prussia*, falls into the Lake *Curisch-Haff*. The Inhabitants are a dull stupid People, and were with great difficulty converted from Paganism by King *Uladislaus Jagello*; nor even to this day is it entirely rooted out, the Inhabitants of some of the more desert Parts Worshipping Idols. This Country was sometime subject to the *Russians*, afterwards to the *Teutonic* Order, and at last Conquer'd by *Uladislaus Jagello*, King of *Poland*, in the Fourteenth Century, and hath ever since been part of the Kingdom. There are no considerable Cities here; those of greatest Note are,

<i>Rosiem.</i>	}}}	<i>Birze.</i>
<i>Midnick.</i>		<i>Kiedainy.</i>
<i>Schwenden.</i>		

*Rosiem*, or *Rosienie*, is a small City seated near the River *Dubissa*, in the Latitude of 55, about 70 miles East from the *Baltick* Sea, near 50 West from the Confines of *Lithuania*, near 30 North from the River *Russ*, and about 80 miles North-East from *Koningsberg*. It is a Place of no great Note, but is by some reckon'd the Capital of *Samogitia*; tho' others give that Honour to

*Midnick*, or *Permatis*, because it is the Seat of the Bishop of *Samogitia*: It stands on the River *Witwits*, about 25 miles North-West from *Rosiem*, and is but a very poor ordinary Place:

*Kiedainy* stands 30 miles South-East from *Rosiem*. *Schwenden* 60 miles to the North of *Rosiem*, and near the Confines of *Courland*. And *Birze*, which bears the Title of a Dukedom, stands 100 miles East from *Schwenden*.

*C O U R L A N D*, or *Kurland*, lies on the North of *Samogitia*, between that and the River *Duina*, which divides it from *Lithuania*; whereof

this was formerly reckon'd a part. The *Baltick*-Sea bounds it on the West, the Gulf of *Riga* and *Duina* on the North, *Samogitia* on the South, and *Lithuania* on the East. It is in length above 150 miles, but the breadth is not proportionate, being but 40, and in the Eastern part not above 20 miles. The Country is plain and fruitful, abounding with Corn and Honey; some parts of it are Fenny, and full of Lakes and Rivers. The River *Duina* washes its Coasts, and affords them Water-Carriage for their Goods to *Riga*, as the *Baltick*-Sea does for Foreign Trade. This Country was formerly subject to the *Teutonic* Order, afterwards to the *Poles*, and tho' at present it has its own Duke, he pays Homage to the King of *Poland*. It is divided into two Parts. 1. *Courland*, and 2. *Semigallia*; the chief Towns whereof are,

In <i>Courland</i> , which is the Western part	}	<i>Goldingen.</i>
divided from <i>Semigallia</i> by the River		<i>Windaw.</i>
<i>Mussa.</i>		<i>Piltyn.</i>

In <i>Semigallia</i> , the Eastern part beyond the <i>Mussa</i>	}	<i>Mittaw.</i>
		<i>Egypten.</i>
		<i>Bauske.</i>

*Goldingen* is usually reckoned the Capital of *Courland*, but otherwise not considerable. It stands upon the River *Wetaw*, about 30 miles from the *Baltick*, 130 Miles North from *Koningsberg*, and 60 South West from *Riga*.

*Piltyn* is the Seat of the Bishop of *Courland*, and stands upon the same River, about 20 Miles North from *Goldingen*.

*Windaw*, called by the Inhabitants *Kies*, is seated at the Mouth of the River *Wetaw*, near the *Baltick*. It was formerly the Seat of the Provincial of *Liesland*; and the Sessions of the Parliament of *Courland*, made it Populous; but its ancient Splendor is lost, and at present 'tis only considerable on account of some Trade; Pitch, Tar, Wax, and other Commodities, being exported hence to Foreign Parts.

*Mittaw* stands on the Banks of the River *Mussa* or *Maus*, 50 Miles South-East from *Goldingen*, 35 South from *Riga*, and above 250 North from *Warsaw*. It is the Capital of *Semigallia*, and the Seat of the Duke of *Courland*. The Town is mean, but the Castle is Magnificent. It was taken by *Gustavus Adolphus*, in 1621. but restored in 1629.

*Bauske* stands upon the same River, about 25 miles East from *Mittaw*.

*Egypten* stands on the Borders of *Lithuania*, 20 miles East from *Bauske*.



## C H A P. V.

## Of the Great Dutchy of LITHUANIA.

**LITHUANIA**, called *Litwa*, by the Inhabitants, *Litweski* by the Poles, and *Littawen* by the Germans, the largest Province of the Kingdom of Poland, lies on the East of the Provinces we have been speaking of, and is bounded on the North by *Couland*, *Livonia*, and *Muscovy*; on the South by *Volhinia* and *Polesia*, and on the East by *Polachia* and *Samogitia*. It extends from the 52d to the 56th Degree of Latitude, and from the 44th, to the 45th Degree of Longitude, in Form almost Circular, and about 250 miles over. The Land is flat and Marshy, and was formerly overrun with Woods, but by the Industry of the Kings, they are in some measure cut down, and the Land cultivated. Here are many Lakes and Rivers which afford the Inhabitants plenty of Fish, as the Forests do Venison, Honey, Pitch, and Furs; which last is very useful to the Inhabitants, for the Air is very cold, and makes such Cloathing very Necessary. The Land yields Corn (but the Cold often spoils the Harvest) and feeds great Herds of Cattle, wherewith the Country is well stock'd. Pitch, Tar, and Timber, are sent hence by the Merchants, and Wine, Salt, and Woollen Cloth receiv'd in return; all other Necessaries the Inhabitants have at Home.

*Lithuania* was formerly Govern'd by its own Prince, called the Great Duke, and comprehended also *Volhinia* and *Polachia*; till *Uladislaus Jagello*, their Duke, being chosen King of Poland, annexed it to that Crown, but with the preservation of the ancient Laws and Form of Government: This was sometimes in future Successions, opposed by the *Lithuanians*, and many Differences happen'd thereupon, till the Year 1569. it was finally agreed that the *Lithuanians* should never elect a Great Duke, but should assemble with the *Polish* Nobility upon an Interregnum, and both Nations together chuse one Prince, and that *Volhinia* and *Polachia* should be granted to Poland.

The Inhabitants were formerly most stupid Idolaters, till *Uladislaus Jagello* being Converted, introduced the Christian Religion here, built a Cathedral, and founded a Bishoprick at *Vilna*, and erected divers other Churches; so that in time Idolatry was suppress'd; but the lower sort being very ignorant and stupid, do to this Day, in many Places, retain some remains of it; and because a Serpent was the God they worshipped formerly, do still keep in their Houses an Adder, which they feed and cherish with great care. The Nobility here, as in Poland, are very Proud, and domineer over the Commonalty, which are as sneaking, and submit to a strange degree, the Tenant being his Lord's Slave, and the greatest part of his time bestow'd in his Service. The whole Country is divided into eight Palatinates, wherein are these Cities and Towns of Note.

In the Palatinate of *Braslaw*, which adjoyns also to *Samogitia*, and lies on the North of *Wilna*.

In the Palatinate of *Poloczko*, lying East from *Braslaw*.

Eastward of *Poloczko*, lies the Palatinate of *Witepsk*, in which are,

On the West of *Wilna* lies the Palatinate of *Troki*, divided into two Parts by the River *Niemen*.

The Palatinate of *Minski* lies on the East of *Wilna*, and South of *Braslaw*, in which are,

In the Palatinate of *Meislaw*, which lies on the East of *Minski*, and South of *Witepsk*.

The Palatinate of *Novogrodeck* is the South-west Corner of *Lithuania*, having *Troki* on the North and *Minski* on the East.

*Wilna*, or *Vilna*, called also *Vilenski* by the Inhabitants, and *die Wilde* by the Germans, is seated at the Confluence of the *Wilia* and *Wilna* Rivers, in the Latitude of 54 30, at the distance of 120 miles from *Koningsberg* to the East, 180 from *Warsaw* to the North-East, and near 120 South from *Mittaw*. It is the Capital of *Lithuania*, and is a large and very populous City, Founded by Duke *Gediminus*, in 1305. The Houses are low, of Wood, and mean, but the publick Buildings are fine, among which are the Castle and Duke's Palace; the Cathedral and several Churches, all built of Stone, the *Bernardine* Monastery, the University Founded by King *Stephen*, in 1579, and the Foreign Merchants Houses, which are built of Stone, and well adorn'd, especially that of the *Muscovian* Company. *Wilna* is an Episcopal See, founded as we have said, by King *Uladislaus Jagello*, and a Place of Trade, but it is chiefly carry'd on by Foreigners, the Inhabitants being Poor and much addicted to Drunkenness. The Parliament, or chief Court of Judicature sit here one Year, and the next Year at *Minsk*. The Ducal Palace hath an Armory very well furnish'd. About two Miles from hence stands another Palace built of Wood, by King *Sigismund*, adorned with a Park, Orchards and Gardens: It is called *Versupa*, being near the Water, which the Word signifies. In 1655. the *Muscovians* took *Vilna*, but it was afterwards recover'd.

The

In the Palatinate of *Wilna*, which adjoyns to *Samogitia*,

*Wilna*,  
*Wilkomirz*,  
*Osmiana*.



The River *Wilia*, on which this City stands, divides the Palatinate into two equal Parts, and then washing the Borders, passes through some part of *Samogitia* and *Prussia*, and falls at last into the *Baltick*, having first received several other Rivers, and changed its Name into that of *Russe*.

*Wilkomierz* stands in the lower part of the Palatinate, 35 Miles North-west from *Wilna*, on the River *Swiera*: And *Osmiana* stands in the upper part, 25 Miles South-West from *Wilna*.

*Braslaw* stands near the Confines of *Courland*, 70 Miles North-East from *Wilna*; it is the Capital of a Palatinate, and has a strong Castle built upon a Rock. The Town is seated upon a Lake, whence issues a small River, that about 20 Miles off falls into the *Duina*.

*Miadzial* stands 50 miles South from *Braslaw*, upon another small Lake and River, and *Narocz* stands upon a River of the same Name, 20 Miles South-West from *Miadzial*. Both these Towns by means of this River, have communication with *Wilna*.

*Poloczko* stands upon the River *Duina*, and another small River to which it gives Name 100 miles East from *Braslaw*. It is the Capital of the Palatinate, which was formerly a Duchy, a large and populous Town, and guarded by two Castles, one on the *Duina*, and the other on the *Polotta*. It was Taken by the *Muscovites* in 1563. regain'd by K. Stephen, in 1579. and since that again taken by the *Muscovites*, and Re-taken by the *Poles*.

*Druia* stands upon the *Duina*, 70 miles below *Poloczko*, and 30 East from *Braslaw*, and hath a Castle near it. *Drissa* stands at the Mouth of a River of the same Name, which falls into the *Duina*, 20 miles East from *Druia*; and *Lissa* is about 30 miles South from it.

*Witepsk*, the Capital of a Palatinate, is seated on the *Duina*, where it receives the *Witza*, 50 miles East from *Poloczko*; it hath a Castle which was often Taken and Re-taken in the last *Muscovite* War. It had formerly Dukes of its own, till *Olgerd* was chosen great Duke.

*Wiszcissa* stands near the *Duina*, 20 miles below *Wetepsk*, and *Ula*, 20 miles below it, at the Mouth of a River of the same Name. *Sarafs* on the *Duina*, also is about 25 miles from *Witepsk*.

*Troki* the Capital of a Palatinate, and formerly the Seat of the Great Duke, is seated among inaccessible Marshes, whence issues the River *Brasala*, that 10 miles below falls into the *Wilna*: It is distant about 20 Miles from *Wilna* to the West, and hath a strong Castle for its Defence, built by *Guedimin*, Great Duke, in 1322. Taken by the *Muscovites*, and the Town very much destroy'd in 1655.

*Grodno* stands on the River *Niemen* near its Mouth into the *Wilna*, 30 Miles West from *Troki*. *Grodno* is seated partly on a rising Ground, near the Banks of the River *Niemen*, over which it has a stately Bridge of Wood. The Town is Fortified with a Castle founded upon a Rock, and is 60 Miles di-

stant from *Troki* to the South. *Bielica* stands also on the *Niemen*, 60 miles above *Grodno*. And *Merecz* 40 Miles below *Grodno*, on a River of the same Name, which there falls into the *Niemen*.

*Minsk*, the Capital of another Palatinate, is seated in a Marsh, near the River *Swislocz*, 80 miles South-East from *Wilna*. It is a well built Town and hath a Castle for its Defence. *Boryssow* stands upon the River *Berezina*, 50 miles East from *Minsk*, which is a Regular Fortification, with deep Ditches and a double Palisade, and hath a Morass on one side. *Brodzieck* upon the same River, 40 Miles to the South. And *Swislocz* 20 miles more South where the River of the same Name falls into the *Berezina*.

*Mscislaw* stands upon the River *Sos*, in the Confines of *Muscovy*, 170 miles East from *Minsk*. It was taken by the *Muscovites* in the last War, and regain'd by King *Sigismund I* whose General *Constantine*, Duke of *Ostrog*, did here cut to pieces the *Muscovite* Army of 40000 Men. *Mobilow*, seated on a Hill near the Banks of the River *Boristhenes* or *Nieper*, (which passes quite through this Palatinate) 50 Miles South-East from *Mscislaw*, is a good well-built Town. It was Taken by the *Muscovite* in 1654, and Re-taken by the *Poles* in 1656. *Orffa* stands also on the *Nieper*, where it receives the River *Orffa*, 60 miles West from *Mscislaw*. It is a good Town and hath a strong Castle, but was Taken by the *Muscovites*.

*Robaczow*, the Capital of a Territory, which by some Geographers is reckon'd as separate from this Palatinate, is a large good Town, seated on the *Nieper* where it receives the *Odrucz*, 80 miles South-West from *Mscislaw*.

*Novogrodeck*, call'd also *Litawiski*, is one of the best Cities in *Lithuania*, and used formerly to be given to the Great Duke's Second Son. It is seated upon the River *Niemen*, 60 Miles South-West from *Minski*, and 60 South from *Wilna*. In this City and in *Minski*, the Diet or Parliament of *Lithuania* is alternately held. *Walkowisca* stands upon the River *Ross*, 60 miles West from *Novogrodeck*. *Slanim* stands upon the *Sczura*, 30 miles South from *Novogrodeck*; and *Nesweis* stands on the Eastern Confines, 60 miles from *Novogrodeck*, and as far South from *Minski*. *Slucz* bears the Title of a Duchy, and was formerly a separate Territory. The City stands upon a River of the same Name, 80 miles South-West from *Novogrodeck*, and is a large Town but the Houses are of Wood. Near this City a famous Victory was obtain'd by the *Poles* over the *Tartars*, in the time of King *Sigismund I*.

And now having Survey'd *Poland* properly call'd, *Prussia*, *Lithuania*, *Samogitia*, and *Courland* we shall proceed to *Warsovia*, wherein stands the City *Warsaw*, whence passing through *Polackia*, *Polesia*, *Red-Russia*, *Podolia* and *Volhinia*, finish our Journey to the *Ukraine*, the extream South-East part of the *Polish* Dominions.



## C H A P. VI.

## Of Warsaw, Polachia and Polesia.

**WARSOVIA** or *Masovia*, call'd by the Poles, *Mazowse*, and by the Germans, *Die Masaw*; may be reckon'd the most considerable part of the Polish Dominion, being the Seat of the King; and the Grand Dyet of the Kingdom, and also of a vast number of Nobility. It lyes in the middle of the Countries we have been Treating of, having *Prussia* on the North, the Upper *Poland* on the South, *Polachia* which parts it from *Lithuania* on the East, and the Lower *Poland* on the West. This is it's present Bounds, but formerly all *Polachia*, and that part of Lower *Poland* on the other side the *Vistula*, that is, the Palatinates of *Dobrzin* and *Ploczko*, were part of it, and the whole govern'd by a Duke of it's own, doing Homage to the King, till in the Year 1495. the Race being Extinct, *Ploczko* and *Dobrzin* were United to the Crown, and the rest given to *Conrade* Brother to King *John Albert*, whose Issue Male failing, in the Year 1526, it was finally annexed to the Crown. And *Polachia* which had been joyn'd to *Lithuania*, was also annexed to the Crown in 1567.

It lies between the 51 Deg. 30 Min. and 53 Deg. 20 Min. of Latitude, in form near Oval, extending from North-East to South-West about 130 miles, and in breadth about 90 Miles. It has the benefit of several Navigable Rivers, especially the *Vistula*, or *Weissel*, which runs through the Southern part, and the *Bug* passes quite cross from East to West. The Country is plain, and the Soil fruitful, yielding Corn, Cattle, Fish and Fowl, in good plenty.

It is but one Palatinate denominated from *Czersko*, which is the Seat of the Palatine; but *Warsaw* is the Principal City, which with the other chief Towns are as follow.

<i>Warsaw.</i>	}	<i>Zakrotin.</i>
<i>Czersko.</i>		<i>Novigrod.</i>
<i>Latowicz.</i>		<i>Lumsa.</i>
<i>Wischegrad.</i>		

*Warsaw*, the Metropolis of *Poland*, is Seated upon the *Vistula*, in the Latitude of 52 Deg. 10 Min. 150 Miles North from *Cracow*, 120 South from *Koninsberg*, 100 East from *Gnesna*, and about 100 West from the Confines of *Lithuania*. It is a large and populous City, the Seat of the King of *Poland*, and of the Sessions of the Grand Dyet of the Kingdom. It is divided into four parts, viz. The Old and the New Town, the Suburbs of *Cracow*, and the *Frag*. The Palace is a noble Structure, in form four-square, built by *Sigismund III.* and much beautified by his Successors. The chief Church of *St. John Baptist* is very fine, as are the other publick Buildings, which are the Arsenal, the Castle, the Market-place, &c. Over the River here is a stately Wooden Bridge, and Beyond it stands another Palace of the King's call'd *Viaslow*, wherein the Dyet Assembles. It stands amidst many delicate Gardens and Groves; and not far from it in the Suburbs of *Cracow*, is to be seen the Monument of *Demetrius* Successor Great Duke of *Muscovy*, who being ra-

ken Prisoner, died a Captive in *Poland*, whose King to Honour him, built a small Chappel over it. In the Plains near this City the Election of the King is made. This City has lately suffer'd a terrible Calamity, for in the Month of *Sept.* 1708. a Fire broke out, which continued burning nine Days, and has reduc'd almost the whole City to Ashes.

*Czersko* stands also on the *Vistula*, 30 Miles South from *Warsaw*. It is a small City, the Seat of the Palatine, but else not very considerable. *Latowicz* stands on the River *Limier* 30 Miles East from *Czersko*. *Wischegrad* is seated on the *Vistula*, where the *Bug* falls into it, about 50 Miles North-West from *Warsaw*, and hardly 20 from *Ploczko*. *Zakrotin* stands upon the *Bug*, 20 Miles above *Wischegrad*. *Novigrod* is seated on the River *Narew* in the North-East part of this Province, 80 Miles from *Warsaw*, and 20 Miles above it stands *Lumsa*.

**POLACHIA**, call'd by the Inhabitants *Podlaske*, and by the Germans *Podlachien*, is but a small Province, lying between *Masovia* and *Lithuania*, with *Polesia* and *Lublin* Palatinate on the South, and *Prussia* on the North. It extends in length, from North to South 120 Miles, but in breadth it is hardly 30. The River runs through the Southern part, and several smaller Rivers water the other parts. It is but one Palatinate, whereof the Capital is *Bielsk*. The Towns of chiefest note are,

<i>Bielsk.</i>	}	<i>Narew.</i>
<i>Drobiezyn.</i>		<i>Suras.</i>
<i>Mielnick.</i>		<i>Augustow.</i>
<i>Lozicze.</i>		

*Bielsk* the chief City of *Polachia* is seated on the River *Biala*, in the midway between *Grodno* in the North, and *Bzeste* on the South, 100 Miles East from *Warsaw*, and 80 West from *Slugk*. It is guarded by a strong Castle, and is a place of good Force. *Drobiezyn* stands on the River *Bug*, 50 Miles South-east from *Bielsk*, as doth also *Mielnick*, 10 Miles above it. *Lozicze* is on the other side of the River, 20 Miles to the South. *Narew* stands 15 Miles from *Bielsk* to the North, and *Suras* 20 Miles further, and *Augustow* in the extreame North part 60 Miles from *Bielsk*.

**POLESIA** is of much larger extent, comprehending in length from East to West above 200 Miles, but in breadth not above 60, or at most 70 Miles. It lies on the South of *Lithuania* and *Polesia*, on the East it is bounded with *Volhinia*, on the West with Upper *Poland*, and on the South with *Red Russia*, and *Volhinia*. It is a very Marshy Soil, and abounds with Forests, and Rivers; and consequently hath plenty of Venison and Fish: Honey also is found in the Woods, which the Inhabitants vend abroad. This Province is sometimes call'd the Palatinate of *Bzeste* or *Bressici*, that being the chief City and Seat of the only Palatine in the whole Province. The chief Cities are these, viz.



<i>Bressci.</i>	}	<i>Wyhoneffcz.</i>	
<i>Koden.</i>		<i>Oleusko.</i>	
<i>Miedzyrzeci.</i>		<i>Pinsk.</i>	
<i>Zanow.</i>		<i>Davidow.</i>	
<i>Bialla.</i>		<i>Wielsk.</i>	

*Bresse* or *Bressici*, is Seated on the River *Bug*, 50 Miles South from *Bielsk*, and 100 East from *Warsaw*; it is the Capital of this Province, and is Fortified with a Castle built upon a Rock. *Koden* stands upon the same River 20 Miles above it. *Miedzyrzeci*

stands in the Confines upon the River *Kryssina* 30 miles to the West. Upon the same River 10 miles to the East, and 20 West from *Koden* stands *Bialla*, the Palace of the Duke of *Radziwil*, adorn'd with a *Gymnasium* or a small University. *Zanow* stands upon the *Bug*, 20 miles West from *Bresse*. *Pinsk* stands upon the River *Pina*, 90 miles West from *Bresse*. *Wyhoneffcz* is 30 miles North from *Pinsk*. *Davidow* 70 East from *Pinsk*. And *Wedlec* a Castle, 20 miles more to the East. *Oleusko* stands in the extreme South-east part of *Polesia*, on a River of the same Name.

## CHAP. VII.

### Of Red Russia, Polodia, Volhynia and the Ukraia.

**RED-RUSSIA** in its ancient extent comprehended all *Volbinia* and *Podolia*, as well as the Province which now bears that Name, *Russia*, because formerly possess'd by *Russes*, and *Red* from a Clay of that Colour very frequent here; and because in the Woods the Earth is very *Black*, the Country is by some call'd *Black-Russia*, as also *Little-Russia*, to distinguish this from *Russia* or *Muscovy*: And in those Days it was govern'd by Princes of their own, who were formidable both to *Poland* and *Muscovy*; till in the Year 1341. *Casimer II.* call'd the Great, did incorporate it with *Poland*. It's present Bounds are *Polesia* on the North, *Volhynia* and *Podolia* on the East, Upper *Poland* on the West, and on the South the *Carpathian* Mountains divide it from *Hungary* and *Transylvania*. It extends from 48 to 51 Degrees 20 Minutes of Latitude, 200 Miles from North to South, and in the Southern part 160, but in the North but half so much in breadth. The Country is something Mountainous, but water'd with abundance of Rivers, which render it very Fruitful.

The River *Bug* rises here, and passes from South to North, almost the whole length of the Country. The River *Niefter* by the Ancients Nam'd *Turla*, hath also it's Source here.

The whole Province is divided into three Palatinates, which passing from North to South Occur in this Order.

The Palatinate of *Chelm* in which are,

{ *Chelm.*  
*Kranoslaw.*  
*Turisk.*

The Palatinate of *Belz*.

{ *Belz.*  
*Zamoscie.*  
*Rubieslaw.*

The Palatinate of *Lemberg*.

Whereof the South-East part is called *Pocutia* or *Pecenk*.

{ *Lemberg.*  
*Przemyslaw.*  
*Zorostaw.*  
*Nidmerow.*  
*Grodeck.*  
*Felstin.*  
*Halicz.*  
*Sniatyn.*

*Chelm* stands in the Latitude of 51 Degrees; 60 miles South from *Bresse*, 110 South-East from *Warsaw*, and 30 East from *Lublin*. It is but a small

City tho' the chief of the Palatinate, and formerly an Episcopal See; but this place being much destroy'd by the *Muscovites* and *Tartars*, during the Wars, the Bishops Seat was Translated to *Kranoslaw*. So that at present the Town is not very considerable, but is Guarded by a Castle of Wood.

*Kranoslaw*, or *Krasnoslaw*, stands 20 Miles to the South-west from *Chelm*, on the River *Wieprz* which here makes a Lake; it is a small City, but in good Condition, and enjoys the Honour of an Episcopal See. *Turisk* stands on the Borders of *Volbinia* 30 Miles East from *Chelm*.

*Belz*, or *Belcz*, stands among Marshes 50 Miles South from *Chelm*. It is a small City built of Wood, and only considerable by being the chief of the Palatinate. *Zamoscie* stands about 30 Miles South from *Chelm*, and 40 North-west from *Belz*, and *Rubieslaw* 30 miles from *Zamoscie*, and as far North from *Belz*.

*Lemberg*, *Leopolis* call'd *Lwów* by the *Poles*, is the most considerable place of this part of *Poland*, being an Archi-Episcopal See, the Capital of a Palatinate, and of all *Red-Russia*, and also a City of very good Trade. It is Seated upon the River *Peltem* which falls into the *Bug*, and is distant 40 miles from *Belz* to the South, 90 North from the Confines of *Transylvania*, 150 East from *Cracow*, and 180 South-East from *Warsaw*. It is no very large City but well Built, and in good State, and hath two Castles for its Defence, one within the Town, and the other without the Walls. *Przemyslaw*, *Premisia*, a well Built Populous City, and an Episcopal See, is seated on the River *Sana*, 60 miles West from *Lemberg*. *Neimeraw* stands 20 miles West from *Lemberg*, and *Zorostaw* 40 miles beyond that Eastward. *Grodeck* is 30 miles South-west from *Lemberg*. And *Felstin* is near 30 miles South-west from it.

*Halicz* the Capital of the Territory of *Pocutia*, stands upon the River *Tyra* 50 miles South-east from *Lemberg*. It was formerly a very considerable place, having been the Capital of a little Kingdom, afterwards had its own Dukes: and lastly was the Seat of the Arch-bishoprick now Translated to *Lemberg*. But the Wars and Revolutions have alter'd it's State, and it is now not very notable, but hath a Castle for its defence. *Sniatyn* upon the River *Pruth*, 40 miles South-East from *Halicz* on the Confines of *Moldavia* is by some reckon'd the Capital of *Pocutia*.

PODOLIA



**PODOLIA** lies on the East of *Red-Russia*, having *Volhinia* on the North, the River *Niester* or *Turla* on the South, *Ocziacow Tartary* on the East, and the Palatinate of *Lemberg* on the West. It is a large Country being 250 miles long, and near 80 miles broad. The River *Boegh* runs quite through it from West to East, and the River *Niester* washes its Southern Frontier, and several other smaller Rivers water the Country, which is exceeding Fruitful, veilding especially Wax and Honey in abundance. The Neighbourhood of the *Turks*, hath subjected this Province to frequent Invasions, especially in the Year 1672. the *Turkish* Army entred it, and took *Caminiec*, which the King of *Poland* granted to them, to obtain a Peace; but the Nation resenting it, in 1673. declared War against the *Turks*, and the *Polish* Army under the General *John Sobieski*, afterwards King, obtain'd a great Victory, and took some Places; but *Caminiec* remain'd in the *Turks* Hands till the late Peace at *Carlowitz*, wherein it was agreed that it should be restor'd to the *Poles*, and the *Turks* quit all Pretensions to *Podolia*, and the *Ukrain*. The Eastern part of this Province, altho' it be good Land, is in a manner a perfect Desert, by reason of the frequent Invasions and Ravage of the *Turks*.

It is divided into two parts Upper, and Lower, wherein are these Town, viz.

In Upper *Podolia*, which is the Western part, a Populous and Fruitful Country.

*Caminiec.*  
*Bouckzowka.*  
*Trambowl.*  
*Tarnopol.*  
*Zbaras.*  
*Bar.*  
*Chelminck.*

In the Lower *Podolia*, the Eastern part, call'd also the Palatinate of *Braclaw*.

*Braclaw.*  
*Winnicza.*  
*Haman.*  
*Koniccpole.*  
*Orihow.*  
*Cazarne.*

*Caminiec* or *Kaminiec*, call'd *Kaminiec Podolski* by the *Poles*, is the Capital of *Podolia*, and of a Palatinate, seated on the River *Smotrżic*, which a little below falls into the *Niester*, at the distance of 100 miles from *Lemberg* to the South-east, and not above 12 from the Confines of *Moldavia*. It is a Populous well built City, and an Episcopal See, surrounded with high craggy Rocks, and besides Fortified with Walls, and a very strong Castle; so that it is the strongest Place on this side, and used to be reckoned the Key of *Poland*. It hath several times been attacked by the *Walachians*, *Tartars* and *Turks*; in the Year 1669. it suffered miserably by Fire, and in 1672. was taken by the *Turks*, who kept possession of it, and thereby often made Inroads into *Poland*, and carried away vast numbers of Captives, till by the late happy Peace concluded at *Carlowitz*, in the Year 1699. it was agreed to be surrender'd, and accordingly the next Spring evacuated, and the *Poles* put in possession of it. *Bouckzowka* stands 20 miles West from *Caminiec*, *Trambowl*, 40 miles North from it, and *Tarnopol* 30 miles more North. *Zbaras* hath the Title of a Dukedom; it stands 20 miles North from *Tarnopol*, and near the Confines of *Volhinia*, *Felstyr* stands 50 miles North from *Caminiec*. *Bar* 60 miles North-east from *Caminiec*, is a strong Fortreis. *Chelminck* stands on the River *Boeg* among Marshes, on the Borders of *Volhinia*.

*Braclaw* the Capital of a Palatinate, and of the Lower *Podolia*, is seated on the River *Bug*, at the distance of 90 miles from *Caminiec* to the East, and 40 from the Confines of *Moldavia*: It cannot be expected that this should be a very flourishing City, considering the long Neighbourhood of the *Turks*, by whom it was laid wast in 1672. *Winnicza* stands upon the same River, 30 miles to the North. *Haman* stands 60 miles East from *Braclaw* towards the *Ukrain*. *Koniccpole* stands upon the *Bug*, 60 miles South-east from *Braclaw*. *Orihow* is seated on the other side the *Niester* in the Confines of *Walachia*. And *Cazarne* is a Fort on the Confines of *Oczakow Tartary* near the *Niester*, in the South-east Corner of this Province.

**VOLHINIA** is a very large Tract of Land, especially if we comprehend the Lower *Volhinia*, otherwise called the *Ukrain*, for then it is 500 miles in length from East to West; but of that we shall speak by it's self, and at present consider *Volhinia* Superior, or the Palatinate of *Lusuc*; which is generally known by the Name of *Volhinia*, and is of itself a large and plentiful Country, near 200 miles in length, and 100 in breadth. It is bounded on the North with *Polesia*, on the South with *Podolia*, on the East with the *Ukrain*, and on the West with *Red-Russia*. And hath in it's Limits these Cities and Towns of note.

*Lusuck* or *Lucko.*  
*Krzemiennec.*  
*Ostrog.*  
*Zaslav.*

*Olyka.*  
*Baranowka.*  
*Zytomierz.*  
*Berdiczow.*

*Lusuc* called *Lucko* by the Inhabitants, is the Metropolis of *Volhinia*, and the Palatinate to which it gives Name. It is seated on the River *Ster*, 90 miles North-east from *Lemberg*, 130 miles North from *Caminiec*, 170 miles South-east from *Warsaw*. It is a large City, and the See of a Bishop, Suffragan to the Arch-bishop of *Gnesna*; but is chiefly Inhabited by *Jews*, *Armenians* and other Eastern People, that Traffick in these Countries. *Krzemiennec* is a small City seated on a Hill near the River *Icua*, 35 miles South-east from *Lusuck*, it is the Capital of a Territory, and hath a Castle founded on a Rock. *Ostrog* formerly the Seat of a Duke, to whom a great part of this Country was Subject, stands about 50 miles East from *Lusuck*. *Olyka* 20 miles East from *Lusuck* bears the Title of a Duchy; as doth also *Zaslav*, 20 miles South from *Ostrog*. *Beretsko* stands 20 miles South from *Lusuck*. *Zytomierz* stands towards the Confines of the *Ukrain*, 120 miles from *Lusuck* to the East, and *Berdiczow* upon the same Confines 40 miles South from *Zytomierz*.

**VOLHINIA INFERIOR**, commonly call'd the *UKRAIN*, or the Palatinate of *Kiow*, is of much larger extent than the Upper *Volhinia*, being near 300 miles in length, and 150 in breadth. The River *Boristhenes* or *Nieper* passes through the middle of it, from North west, to South-east, dividing it into two Parts, whereof the Western only is subject to *Poland*, the Eastern being under the *Muscovites*, who have ever since 1686. possess'd *Kiow* also. The Land in the *Polish Ukrain* is very Fruitful, but the Eastern Part of it (the *Muscovian*) is a meer Desert, by reason of the Neighbourhood of the *Tartars*. This is the Country of



the *COSSACKS*, which being a People often mention'd in the History of these Parts, it will not be amiss to give a short account of 'em. They have their Name from *Kosa* a Scythe, their usual Weapon, and were originally a Crew of dissolute Rogues, that Assembled together from the Frontiers of *Russia*, *Volhinia* and *Podolia*, to practise Piracy on the *Black Sea*: They appear'd first in the Reign of *Sigismund I.* to the Number of six Thousand, who with shallow Boats, could pass those Rocks in the mouth of the *Boristhenes*, that hinder the Navigation from the *Ukrain* to the *Black-Sea*, and during the Summer they Rov'd all over the *Black-Sea*, and its Coasts, pillaging and spoiling wherever they came. This they continued many Years. *Stephen Bathory* King of *Poland* form'd them into an orderly *Militia*, and intending to use them against the *Tartars*, gave them the Town and Territory of *Treshimircw*, appointed a General over them, and gave them many Privileges; and for some time they were serviceable to *Poland*, in opposing the *Tartars*. But being sensible of their Strength, they began to set up for themselves, and in the Year 1557. Rebell'd; but their General being taken and Executed, it was quieted for a time. About the Year 1600. they were so Powerful that the *Poles* were forced to raise a large Army against them, who often worsted 'em, and took their Generals, but still they continued mutinous, wherefore their Privileges were taken away, and they continued in a state of Enmity, till about the Year 1640. King *Vladislavus VI.* making War upon the *Tartars*, collected them together, and set over them for General *Bogdan Chmielniski*; who was afterwards a bitter and formidable Enemy to *Poland*: For the *Cossacks*, being oppressed by the *Polish* Lords their Landlords, and on complaint receiving no redress, they Armed in vast Numbers, and calling in the *Tartars*, furiously attack'd the *Poles*; but King *John Casimer* so well resisted them, that the *Tartars* accepted of a Peace in 1649. But *Chmielniski* not trusting to that, obliged the Prince of *Moldavia* to join with him, which produced another War, in the Year 1651. wherein the *Tartars* and *Cossacks* were worsted. And since that time they have not been so considerable. We shall Speak of the Manners of these People when we come to Treat of *Muscovy*, which the Reader may consult immediately if he please to look toward the latter end of the second Chapter of our account of that Empire.

The Land as we have said, is fruitful, producing Corn and other Commodities, but by reason of the Ravage of the *Turks*, hath been but little Cultivated: For in the Year 1677. by Agreement, this Country was Resigned to the Grand Seignior, who kept it till the Year 1699. when by the Peace concluded at *Carlowitz*, it was restored to the *Pole*.

The whole Province is but one Palatinate, denominated from *Kiow*; the chief Cities and Towns, whereof are these.

<i>Kiow.</i>	}	<i>Czernobel.</i>
<i>Bialogrod.</i>		<i>Treshymircw.</i>
<i>Bialacerkew.</i>		<i>Czirkassy.</i>
<i>Kotelma.</i>		<i>Kudack.</i>

*Kiow*, *Kiovia*, is seated on the River *Boristhenes* or *Nieper*, in the Latitude of 51. at the distance of 200 miles from *Lucka* to the East, 60 miles South from the Frontiers of *Lithuania*, and 100 North from *Padolia*. It is an Episcopal See, a Palatinate, and adorn'd with a kind of University; hath ten Churches, whereof four for the *Roman*, and the rest for the *Greek* way of Worship; it is also a Place of some Trade for Corn, Furs, Tallow, &c. and is Guarded by a Castle, and Surrounded with a Trench, and some other Fortifications; but is not very Populous, nor comparable to the ancient *Kiow*, which stood a little distant, and was formerly a very large and opulent City, whereof the Ruins of many stately Buildings and large Walls, are still to be seen. The two Churches of *St. Sophia*, and *St. Michael*, which remain in tolerable good State, were Sumptuous Buildings, the Walls of the former being Adorn'd with Mosaick Work, and the Roof of the latter very richly Gilt. The City was Founded by a *Russian* Prince Named *Kius* in the Year 861. and was the Metropolis of *Tauro Scythia*. Then it became the Seat of the *Russian* Empire, and was afterwards Govern'd by it's own Princes. It was Storm'd and Pillag'd by the *Tartars* in 1615. and has ever since declined. And as we said above is now subject to the *Muscovite*.

About half a League from hence in the Village of *Piecharre* stands a noble Monastery, the residence of the Patriarch, and under the adjacent Mountains are divers Grotto's or Caverns dug like Mines, wherein are preserv'd a great many Humane Bodies, which tho' long since Buried are still entire, and neither so hard or black as Mummies. Among these, two Princes are shewn to Travellers by the *Russians*, in the same Habit they wore when living. These Caves are just like the Catacombs at *Rome*, and perhaps deserve equal Veneration. The Mountain they are cut in is a Sandy Stone very dry.

Above *Kiow* about 30 miles to the South, stands *Stayky*, and 10 miles above that *Ryszow*, both noted for Passage of the River *Nieper*.

*Bialograd*, stands 20 miles South-West from *Kiow*. *Kotelma* on the Frontiers of the Upper *Volhinia*, 40 miles South-West from *Kiow*. *Bialacerkiew* stands about the same distance South from *Kiow*. *Treshmircw* the Place which King *Bathory*, as has been said, gave to the *Cossacks*, stands upon the *Nieper*, 50 miles above *Kiow*, and is a Place of Strength, having a Castle for it's defence. *Czernobel* stands also on the River, but as many miles below *Kiow*. *Czyrkassy*, stands upon the River too, 80 miles above *Kiow*, and *Kudack* a strong Fort, built by the *Poles* in 1635. against the IncurSIONS of the *Tartars*, stands in the extream East Confines of the *Polish* Dominions, on the West side of the River near the Confines of *Tartary*.

That part of the *Ukrain* that lies on the East Side of the River, is Subject to the *Muscovite*, to whom also the City *Kiow* has been surrender'd ever since the Year 1680.

And thus we conclude our Account of *Poland*, having passed through all the Provinces of this great Kingdom, and according to the best Informations could be procured, not omitted mentioning any considerable City or Town.

MUSCOVY.



# MUSCOVY or RUSSIA.

*Muscovia, aut Alba Russia.*



## CHAP. I.

### Of MUSCOVY in general.

**M**USCOVY, otherwise called *White Russia*, and *Russia Magna*, to distinguish it from the Province of Poland, called *Russia Rubra*, was anciently the greatest part of the *Sarmatia Europea*. The Name of *Russia* was taken from the People, called *Rossi*, q. d. dispersed or scatter'd, being originally Wanderers without any Government. The *Moschi* mention'd by *Strabo*, were one Nation of these People, whence the Name of the Province

of *Muscovy*, most probably, was derived; and since the Monarch has made this his Seat, the Name of this Province hath been Communicated to the whole Empire. It is the largest Country under one Government in *Europe*, nay perhaps in the World, being near 1500 miles broad. It lies between the 50th and 70th Degree of Latitude, including from the 7th Climate of the Temperate Zone, to the 2d Climate of the Frigid Zone: And in Longitude from



from the 50th to the 100th Degree. It is bounded on the North with the Ocean, Denominated from its Shores *Muscovia* and *Tartaria*, and *Nova Zemla* divided from the Continent by the Straights of *Meygar*. On the South with *Tartaria Minor*, the *Palus Meotis*, *Crim-Tartary* and *Turkey*, and the *Caspian Sea* which parts it from *Persia*. On the East with the *Asiatick* or Great *Tartary*, and on the West with some Provinces of *Sweden*, *Lithuania* and *Poland*. It is in vain to talk of it's utmost Extent, for the Eastern Part is all Wilderness, by reason of the *Tartars*; and the North Part the same, because of its extrem cold Climate. So that tho' the whole Empire be reckoned 1500 miles extent either way, yet that part of it that is Populous and well Cultivated (being the South-West Part) is not above 600 miles Square.

The CLIMATE must necessarily be very different in so vast a Tract of Land, but in general it is very Cold, and at *Muscovy* itself, in the Winter time the AIR is not tolerable, the extreme Parts of Men's Bodies, as Noses, Ears, &c. being often mortified with the Cold; and tho' they wrap themselves up in Furrs, yet without continual Chafing their Noses and Fingers they are in danger of losing 'em when they come out of the Air. 'Tis said if a Man Spits it shall be frozen by that time it comes to the Ground, and Water thrown into the Air will fall down Ice. The Summer on the contrary is tolerably Hot, but then it is short, and immediately follows the Winter; for no sooner is the Snow off the Ground, but the Corn shoots up so fast, that in two Months time they cut it; this is Attributed to the Snow, which lying on the Ground not only Mellows the Land, but also keeps the Plants from the Air, and lets them take good Root. As soon as they have Reaped they must Sow immediately for the Summer is not above three Months long, this may be true of some Grain, but not of all, for my Lord *Carlisle* says their Seed time is in *April* or *May*, and their Harvest in *August*. But notwithstanding this extreme Cold, the SOIL is very Fruitful, producing Plenty of Corn and divers Sorts of Fruits, particularly Melons; also Rhubarb in great quantity, Flax, Hemp, good Pasture, Wax and Honey. Many of the Provinces have large Forrests, wherein are taken Bears, Foxes, Sables, Ermins, and those other Wild Beasts, whose Furrs are so esteemed in all Parts; besides which, *Russia* furnishes the World with the Leather, call'd Russian and Buff, Pot-ashes for Soap, Hemp and Flax, Caviar made of the Rows of Sturgeon and Belluga, Ling-glass, Morie's Teeth, Sperma Ceti, and divers other very useful COMMODITIES, which are very Commodiously Transported by means of the many Navigable RIVERS wherewith this Country very much abounds. Those of chiefest note are the *Volga* or *Rba*, the *Don* or *Tanaïs*, the *Occa*, the *Suchana* and *Fugh*, which compose the *Dwina*, the *Kama*, the *Oby*, and the *Jenesaida*. Of these the *Volga* must be reckon'd the Noblest, being of singular use to the *Russians*, who by the means of it have Water-Carriage from *Persia*, quite up into the very Heart of their Country. This was the River of the Ancients, and hath its Source in the Province of *Ros-bow*, which lies on the West of *Moscow*; and after a Course of near 2000 miles, it falls into the *Caspian-Sea*, in 70 Months at *Astrachan*, in its way receiving the *Occa*, which rises in *Moscovia* and receives the *Moska*, as it passes by that Province, and falls into the *Volga* at *Nisi-Noro-*

*gorod*; The *Kama*, which rises in *Permia*, and falls into the *Volga*, a little below *Casim*; and several other smaller Rivers, which contribute to enlarge this great Stream, so as to make it several Leagues broad, before it issues into the Sea. A particular account of it, is given us by a late Dutch Traveller, who Sail'd down the Stream from *Moscow* quite to *Astrachan*, by whose Journal it appears that he was near 4 Months on his Voyage.

The *Don* or *Tanaïs*, rises in the Province of *Ros-bow*, and passing by *Pole*, and the *Rosdori Donski* (dividing it from *Crim Tartary*) comes so near to the *Volga*, that an attempt was made to cut a Canal from one to the other, but the *Nagayan-Tartars*, who at that time possessed the Kingdom of *Astrachan* opposed it, and with a great Army beat off the *Crim-Tartar* and *Turks* from the Work: From hence the River *Don* winding to the West, falls at last into the *Palus Meotis* at *Aoph*. The *Oby*, the greatest River of *Muscovy*, flows out of the Lake *Katbay* in *Great-Tartary*, passes through the *Muscovian-Tartary*, making in its Course divers Lakes and Islands, and receiving many other Rivers, falls into the Northern Ocean at *Samoieda*. The *Jenesaiza* rises also in *Tartary*, and falls into the same Sea, 100 Leagues East from *Oby*. The *Dwina* falls into the White Sea at *Archangel*; the Courses of the *Suchana* and *Fugh*, whose confluence compose it, will be seen in the Map, as will also the Course of the other Rivers, which we shall have occasion to mention in our following Description of the Country.

The INHABITANTS of *Muscovy* have the misfortune to bear but an ill Character abroad; whether they deserve so bad as they have, I cannot determine; but considering that they want the two chief means of Improving Men's Morals and Manners, which are Learning and Travel, we may the less scruple to believe Travellers, who all affirm that they are perfectly Illiterate and Brutish, and so very much addicted to Idleness and Drunkenness, that more than ordinary severe Laws are made against that Vice, and smoking Tobacco, with which they also used to Intoxicate themselves. They constantly Sleep after Dinner, and are fond of Hot Baths, which they frequently go into. And the Women do not scruple to go Naked into them in the Presence of Men, nay even in company with them (says the Baron *Mayerberg*) They affect Farnels, looking upon it as Graceful. In their Dealings they are Crafty and not over Honest: Jealous, Cruel and Proud; but withal of mean Spirit, when severely Treated. The Common People live in great subjection to the Lords, and they in as absolute dependance on the Emperor, who takes Care to keep 'em Ignorant, and therefore no Publick School, much less a University, is to be found in all his Dominions; even the Priesthood have no more Learning than serves them to Read Divine Service. All the Gentry are by Law forbid to Travel. But the Present Czar, having himself in the Years 1696. and 1697. taken a Journey abroad and Visited the Courts of *Poland*, *Sweden*, *Denmark*, *Germany*, *Flanders*, *Holland* and *England*; in seeing the Politeness of those People (added to his own Inclination to Arts and Sciences) hath been induced to change that Politique and encourage the Study of Languages; and already hath Erected Schools at *Moscow*, and sent the young Nobility to Travel, so that in all Probability this Nation will in a short time be much improved. The Nobility keep a great Number of Servants, but they are no better than Slaves



Slaves. And I find in Authors that Boors are reckoned as part of a Nobleman's Estate, which shews there is the same Vassalage here as in Poland. They are of a robust and healthy Constitution, strong and fit to endure any Fatigue in War. The Women are well Favoured and fair enough, very Obedient to their Husbands, and patient under their Churlishness, tho' it often proceed to Blows; they are represented by Travellers as loose in their Behaviour, and too free of their Favours, and that the Wives will accompany their Husbands in Drunkenness, which may justify the Husbands for the Jealousy they are addicted to. Gallantry is so little there in Fashion, that no Body pays respect to Women, even tho' of Quality. The Houses in general all over Muscovy are very mean, being Built of Wood sordidly put together, the Chinks stop'd with Moss plaister'd over, and instead of Tiles, cover'd with Barks of Trees. Nor is the Furniture unsuitable to the Hovels, being of Wooden or Earthen Vessels; every House is furnish'd with a Stove, which they keep always very Hot in the Winter Time. Their Habit is a long Robe lin'd with Furr over a Cassock, Waist-coat and Breeches, with Bonnets of Cloth on their Heads. The Gentry have their Robes of Silk, Velvet or the finest Cloth, but the common Sort have either our coarsest Cloth, or a sorry Sort made at home.

The Russian LANGUAGE is a Dialect of the Slavonian as well as the Polish; so that he who understands either of them cannot be at any great loss in this. The Bibles and such few other Books as they have, are writ in Slavonian; and those who pretend to any degree of Learning, affect that Language in their Writing and Speaking: The Character they use has a near resemblance to the Greek, but they have augmented the Number of their Letters to thirty eight. The Russian Year begins in September, and their Era is the Creation of the World. They reckon their Hours from Sun rising to Sun setting.

The Christian RELIGION was first taught in Muscovy in the Time of Volodimir Great Duke of Russia (A. D. 989.) who having by the Conquest of many Provinces render'd himself very considerable, was honoured with an Embassy from the Emperor Basilus, in whose Time (according to Zonaras) a Bishop was sent from Constantinople to convert the Russes, the Prince himself embracing Christianity, and soon after marrying the Daughter of Basilus, he contributed all his Power to the establishing it, which was accordingly effected. This is the most certain Account in History of the Conversion of Russia from Paganism. But the Russes pretend that St. Andrew the Apostle planted Christianity here, which was afterwards expell'd by the Tartars. As they receiv'd Christianity from Constantinople, so they have always continued in the Faith and Practice of the Greek Church, disbelieving Transubstantiation and Purgatory, communicating in both kinds, but pray to Saints and use images, and observe Auricular Confession; the Athanasian Creed is their Rule of Faith; and they have settled Liturgy which is used three times a Day. They observe four Lents with great strictness, and fast also Wednesday and Friday in every Week. The Grand Festivals are Fifteen in the Year, most consonant to ours. But by reason of their Ignorance, they are miserably involv'd in superstitious ceremonies. The Government of the Church is by Metropolitans, Archbishops and Bishops; where-

of the Metropolitan of Moscow, who was ordain'd by the Patriarch of Constantinople, was Primate, till about the Year 1588. when Hieronymus, Patriarch of Constantinople (that City being then in the Hands of the Turks) came to Moscow, and very solemnly resign'd his Patriarchal Dignity to the Metropolitan of Moscow, whose Successors have ever since born that Dignity, and is supream Head of the Russian Church: Immediately upon the Elevation of this Metropolitan (who was before the only one) two other Archbishops were made Metropolitans, viz. those of Novogorod-Veliki and Rostow, and since that two more have been added, whereof one resideth at Casan, and the other at Moscow. The Bishops are chosen by the Emperor, and the Patriarch by the Bishops. But the Earl of Carlisle says the Patriarch is Chosen by the Czar. Their Service consists in Singing Hymns, pronouncing the Gospod, or, Lord have Mercy upon us, reading some Chapters, Athanasius's Creed, and St. Chrysostom's Homilies, but have no Preaching. The Monastick Life is used, and many Women are shut up in Cloisters, but not so strictly but that they visit the World sometimes, and enjoy their pleasure.

The GOVERNMENT of Russia is absolutely Monarchical; for the Grand Duke, who is called Czar (supposed to be deriv'd from Caesar) is absolute Master over all his Subjects; the Legislative, as well as the Administrative, Power being solely in him. He appoints the Waywoods or Governors of Provinces, and all the Civil and Military Officers. The Nobility are very numerous, and were formerly very considerable, the Dukes being absolute Lords in their Provinces; but the Czars have from time to time taken away their Power, and they, as well as the other Nobles, are now Dependants on the Emperor, by whose Favour they obtain the Governments and Offices of Honour and Profit. At present, the chiefest degree of Nobility is that of the Boiars, which are those whom the Emperor Honours with being of his Council; out of which he chooses the Waywoods and other chief Officers.

The LAWS for deciding Civil Controversies formerly depended upon the Equity of the Judge: But in the Year 1647. by the Czar's Command, a Code or Body of the Law was compiled by the wisest Men in the Kingdom, and comprehended in one Volume in Folio, entituled *Sabrona Uloissenia*; that is to say, Universal and General Right: By which the Judges are to regulate their Sentences.

Several Courts of Judicature are held suitable to the Causes that come before 'em; whereof 'tis unnecessary to give a particular account.

### A short Abstract of the History of Russia.

IT is almost impossible to know the Origine and Acts of a roving Nation of illiterate People; wherefore the Reader must not expect a very ancient Account of the Russes, whose very Name, as we have said, denotes Straglers; and who have apparently chang'd their Seat; for the Russia Rubra, now a Province of Poland, had undoubtedly its Name from them; and that Volhynia also was possess'd by the Russes is evident, since the Seat of their Mo;



Monarchy was *Kiev*, before *Wolodimir* remov'd it to the City of his own Name, which he built; so that the *Muscovites* are now in Possession of some Provinces formerly belonging to *Lithuania* and *Poland*, they are but an equivalent of what they have quitted to *Poland*. But the Acquisitions of the *Russes* have been all on the other side, viz. on the *Tartars*, who were for many Ages their most cruel Enemies: Wherefore the *Tartarian* Provinces they now possess by Conquest is a singular happiness to them; for whereas formerly the *Tartars* made Inroads upon them to the very Heart of their Country, and imposed most ignominious Terms upon their Princes. [as for Example, *Batus* the *Tartar* in 1237. having slain the Great Duke *George*, order'd that the *Tartars* hereafter should choose the Princes of *Moscow*, who should be oblig'd to go out to meet the *Tartarian* Ambassador on Foot and Bare-headed, present him a Platter of Mare's Milk, and give his Horse Provender out of his Cap; and for 200 Years together the *Tartar* had a House and a Guard in the Castle of *Moscow*] I say, whereas formerly the *Tartars* were their cruel Masters, the Case is now so alter'd, that almost all the *European Tartary* is subject to the *Muscovite*. At what time all these vast Regions were conquer'd, will be seen in this

### Account of the Princes of Russia.

Of these Princes we have no certain History before the Time of

1. *Wolodimir*, who having made great Conquests Eastward, removed the Regal Seat to *Wolodimir*, the chief City of that Province, which he built and gave Name to. He also married the Daughter of the Emperor *Basilus Porphyrogenetta*, and planted Christianity in *Russia*. He died in the Year 1015. and was succeeded by his Son
2. *Wolodimir*, or according to others *Jareflow*, and said to have built that City. He died, A. D. 1146.
3. *Wolodimir* his Son succeeded, and was succeeded by his Son
4. *Vitoldus*.
5. *George*, slain by *Batus*, a *Tartarian* Prince, in the Year 1237. from which time the *Russes* were Tributary to the *Tartars*.
6. *Jareflow*, Brother to *George*, succeeded
7. *Alexander* his Son.
8. *Daniel* or *Danielsu*, firman'd *Caleta*. He remov'd the Regal Seat to *Moscow*, and assum'd the Title of Great Duke.
9. *Ivan* or *John*, his Son succeeded, being chosen by the *Tartar*, and much favour'd by him.
10. *Ivan Ivanowitch*, or *John's* Son succeeded.
11. *Demetri Ivanowitch*. He obtain'd great Victories over the *Tartars*, but at last was slain by them.
12. *Vasilie* or *Basil Demetriowitch*. He chased the *Tartars* out of *Russia*, and conquer'd *Bulgar*. Thro' Jealousie of his Wife he disinherited his Son, and was succeeded by his Brother
13. *George*, who at his Death restor'd the Crown to his Nephew
14. *John Vasiliewitch Grotzdyn*. He was the first that united *Russia* into one considerable Body, by taking away the Power of the Dukes, and uniting their Dominions to the Crown. He called himself Czar, King, or Emperor rather, and by some thought to be, *q. d. Cesar*, in imitation of the western Emperor. He is judged to have begun to Reign about the Year 1450. He conquer'd the Duke of *Novogorod*, and added that Province, as also *Twer* to the Crown. He turned the *Tartar* Governor out of *Moscow*, and shook off their Yoke. He put by his eldest Son, and appointed *Gabriel*, his Son by a second Marriage, to succeed him, who changed his Name to
15. *Vasile Ivanowitch*, and began to Reign in 1492. conquer'd *Plescow* and *Smolensko*, and gained great Victories against the *Tartars*, over whom he set a Governor. He died in 1532. leaving his Uncle *George* Guardian to his Son
16. *Ivan Vasiliewitch* a Child, who began to Reign in 1540. He became a very great Tyrant, but withal a great Conqueror. In his Time the *Tartars* ejected the Governor placed over them by his Father, and invading *Russia*, proceeded as far as *Moscow*, which they burnt and pillag'd, insomuch that the Czar was forc'd to submit to very ignominious Terms. This War was carried on by two Brothers, *Mendligeri* und *Sapperi*; who returning homeward, *Sapperi* settl'd himself King of *Casan*, but *Mendligeri* sat down before *Rezan*; and summoning it to surrender, told the Governor what had happen'd at *Moscow*, who replying, he could not believe it, the *Tartar* sent him the Original Instrument, subscrib'd by the Czar to convince him; the Governor seizing the Paper, return'd answer, That he would keep that and the City as long as he had Life: And so courageously he defended it, that the *Tartar* was forced to raise the Siege; and then the Governor sent the Writing to the Czar, with an account of what had happen'd; which so chang'd the Face of Affairs, that an Army was presently raised and marched against *Sapperi*, who was still in *Casan*; which City, after a long Siege, was taken, July 9. 1552. and thereby very much enlarg'd the *Russian* Dominions; and pursuing his Victory, in the Year 1552. he took *Astrachan* also, which brought the Monarchy to its utmost height. He died March 28th 1584.
17. *Fedor* or *Theodore*, Son to *Ivan Vasiliewitch*, succeeded, and was a weak Prince. He married the Sister of *Boris Fedorowich Godanove*, who murder'd him and his Brother *Demetri*; and having made a Party in the Kingdom, was chosen Emperor. *Theodore* reign'd 12 Years, and died, A. 1597.
18. *Fedorowitch Godanow*. He made away with many of the Nobility, and gave his Family all the profitable Employments; which gave such Diligence, that an Impostor starting up in the name of *Demetrius*, the Brother of *Fedor* above-mention'd, obtained such countenance that the Army revolted to him. *Fedorowitch* died, April 13th 1605. supposed by Poison and soon after his Wife and Son *Feder*. So that
19. *Demetrius* the Impostor entring *Moscow* the 20th of June 1605. was Crown'd without opposition; but the *Russes* soon discovering their mistake slew him, and advanced to the Throne



20. *Vaslie Ivanovich Zuskie*, who was Crown'd June 1. 1606. In his time the King of Sweden by pretending to assist him against the new *Demetius* gain'd from *Muscovy* the two Provinces of *Carelia* and *Ingria*. Another pretended *Demetius* started up in *Poland*, and being assisted by that Nation, caus'd great Troubles; and in the end *Zuskie* was deposed and thrust into a Monastery, the *Russes* chusing for their Monarch

21. *Ladislaus*, Son to the King of *Poland*; which raising the Minds of the *Polish* Army, at that time before *Moscow*, made 'em Insolent; and upon a Quarrel with the *Russes*, they run in and Plunder'd and burnt the City, pillag'd the Treasury, and made such miserable Havock, that it is said 4000 Houses were burnt, and 200000 Persons slain. In this desperate State, the *Russes* were quite heartless, till a Butcher stepping out, propos'd a Gentleman nam'd *Pozarskey*, for their General, under whom, with an honest Treasurer, he told 'em the Disorders might be compos'd. Accordingly the People immediately chose *Pozarskey* for their General, and made the Butcher Treasurer, bringing to him what Mony they could spare; with which he rais'd an Army, which, together with a Body of *Cossacks* then in Service in *Muscovy*, soon expell'd the *Poles*, and restor'd in some measure the publick Peace; whereupon the Nobility assembled, and chose for their Czar *Michael Federowich*, Son to the Patriarch *Philaretus Nikidiz* of the House of *Romanow*.

22. *Michael Federowich* began to Reign A.D. 1613. and by the Advice of his Father, (a Man of great Wisdom and Virtue) soon restored the publick Tranquility. He made Peace with the *Poles*, and with the *Svedes*; who, during the Troubles, had possess'd themselves of divers *Russian* Cities and Provinces; these were restor'd, and *Muscovy* made happy in a wise and good Monarch; who dying in 1645. was succeeded by his Son,

23. *Alexis Michaelowich*, a Martial, but mild Governor, who Reigned successfully thirty Years. He first began to reform the Military Discipline of the *Muscovites*, and brought in many Officers from *Germany*, under whom a Band of Foreign Troops have been ever since kept up. He Conquer'd *Smolensko* and *Kiom*, from the *Poles*. And died in the Year 1675, and was succeeded by his Son.

24. *Theodore Alexiowich*, who died in 1682. leaving no Children, and bequeathed the Crown to his Brother

25. *Peter*, his present *Czarish* Majesty, who has ever since had the Government. He is a Valiant Prince, a lover of Science, especially *Mathematicks*: And if it please God to give him Life, he will in all probability, raise the *Russian* Empire to the highest degree it ever was: For he has already in the late *Turkish* War, made himself Master of *Azoph*, an eminent Port, at the Mouth of the *Don*, in the *Paius Meotis*, whence is a Passage to the *Black-Sea*; as also taken *Kasikermant* on the *Black Sea*, at the Mouth of the *Nieper*, and is very busie in building Ships of War; by means whereof, he may in Time, be able to dispute the Mastery of the *Black Sea* with the *Turks*: And moreover, by the Encouragement he gives the Nobility to Study and Travel Abroad, their Manners will be abundantly Polished, the *Russians* become fit for Conversation, and be esteem'd like other Nations. The King of *Sweden*

holds this Prince at present in full Employment, the Effect of which War we must wait.

Of the TROUBLES given to his present  
CZARISH Majesty, by his Sister the  
Princess SOPHIA.

THE present Czar was but Eleven Years of Age when his Brother died, whereby he was the more expos'd to his Half Sister's Machinations. The Princess *Sophia*, as that Sister is Nam'd, was the Daughter of the first Wife of Czar *Alexis*: And the Elder Brother *John*, who was sometime Colleague with Czar *Peter*, was her Brother by the same Mother; whereas *Peter* was the Son by a Second Wife of the same *Alexis*. The Princess is a Person of very uncouth Form in her outward Shape, but of most acute and quick Parts in Mind. Her Temper was too much addicted to Ambition, and her Politick Genius was too extensive to be bound-ed by the narrow Rules of strict Virtue. Her Brother *John* was a weak Prince both in Body and Mind, for he was so extremely afflicted with Epileptick Fits, that his Reason was much impair'd as well as his Limbs disabled. On the contrary, the young Prince *Peter*, was always a very Virtuous, Active and Ingenious Person,

The Princess *Sophia* from the Monastery, where the Royal Princesses usually retire on their Father's Death, had in her Brother *Theodore's* time, got to Court, under pretence of assisting him in his Weakness, which gave her too sweet a taste of Government, to brook afterwards a Private Life. The first Step she made was to procure her Brother *John* (whom she knew she could manage) to be Crown'd Colleague with Czar *Peter*. Next she got to be Administratrix of the Government, upon pretence of the Minority of *Peter*. She then took care to gain the *Strelitzes* or Guards, which is a Body of 18000 Men, intirely to her Devotion. And afterwards, the better to secure herself, she resolv'd to cut off all the Friends of Czar *Peter*, which by the help of her Creature *Kouvanski*, President of the *Strelitzes*, she propos'd to do by open Massacre, upon a pretence that they had been guilty of Poysoning the late Czar *Theodore*; but that Plot was not so secretly carried, but the Court got hint of it, and remov'd to the strong Monastery *Troitz*, about 30 Miles distant from *Moscow*, which gave opportunity to many to escape, who had else Perished in that horrid Slaughter which was made in the Capital City. This Instrument *Kouvanski*, had soon after the just reward of his Villany; for presuming too much on his Merit, by a foolish proposal of Marriage between his Son and the Princess's Sister, he incur'd her Displeasure, and was left to the course of Justice, which put him to Death. Her next Step was the advancing her Creature, and Paramour, as 'twas reported, Prince *Basil Galichin* to the Office of Chancellor and first Minister of State, with whom she concerted many Plots to remove the two Czars: But the more Politick ways of bringing it about proving abortive, they had at length recourse to downright Assassination. Czar *Peter* had always been the Object of their Hatred; and was now the more so, by reason that contrary to their Designs, he was Marry'd and his Wife with Child, the Birth whereof



whereof they foresaw would strengthen him beyond control. *Gallichin* had the Affection of the Army, whom he had Commanded in two Campaigns against the *Crim Tatars*, but had the Enmity of many of the Nobility, by reason of the many Removals he had made to Model the State for his own Safety. The Princess had absolute Power over the Czar *John*, and over the *Strelitzes*, and most of the Great Officers in the Army: But saw her Power daily sinking with Czar *Peter*; and at the same time saw him daily rising in the favour of the Nobility and Populace. These Circumstances may be the reason of the precipitate Boldness, which we are told by a Modern Traveller of Note, they ventur'd upon. For, as he relates it, the Princess engag'd *Theodore Trekilatiraw*, President of the *Strelitzes*, to find out a Party of his Men who should Assassinate the Czar. And that having concerted Matters with all her other Creatures, as most of the Ministry were, they proceeded so far as to pick out a Band of 600 of the *Strelitzes* which they could most confide in, and carry'd the Matter so privately, that these Men were actually on the Road to *Obro-kousko*, a Country Seat where the Czar then lay, about 4 Miles from *Moscow*, before it was discover'd. It was in the Night time, which gave opportunity to two of their own Company under covert of the Darkeness to give them the slip, and by *Gallichin*, got time enough to advertize the Czar of his Danger. He was in Bed, and every Body Asleep; so he had difficulty enough to raise his Friends about him. Two of them he sent out to discover the Truth; who return'd with assurance that they were Eye-Witnesses of the approach of a large Body of Soldiers: This confirm'd him in the resolution of Escaping, which he had just time enough to do, with his Mother, Wife, and nearest Relations and Friends, before the Villains arriv'd; who finding the Bird flown, were in the utmost Confusion, and did no more but return to *Moscow* for new Orders. The Czar by Travelling with Diligence all Night, arriv'd next Day at *Troitza*, which, as we have said, is well Fortify'd; whither he Summon'd the Nobility and proclaim'd the Danger he had escap'd. He had the satisfaction to see them come in apace; and tho' the Body of the *Strelitzes* which he had Summon'd, were withheld by the Princess's Arts, yet many of them in Parties resorted to him. He also Summon'd Prince *Gallichin*, but he excus'd himself on pretence of attending the Commands of Czar *John*. The Princess in the mean time found herself deserted by her darling *Strelitzes*, and saw that her most devoted Friends had not Courage to stir in her behalf; which put her into such Confusion, that she could think of no way of escaping the Czar's Vengeance, but by Pacification, to which purpose she employ'd her Relations, and such others as she thought had most Influence on her Brother; but 'twas all in vain, for the Czar could not be prevail'd upon to see her. And now the German Forces, (which are a good Party of Foreign Troops, that of late are kept up in *Moscow*) being arriv'd at *Troitza*, and even the *Strelitzes* too, who upon second Summons had obey'd; the Court found itself strong enough to execute Justice. Accordingly they sent a Party of Soldiers under a bold Commander to *Moscow*, to seize *Trekilatiraw*, and other Delinquents; which they effected: And having put him to the Torture, made him confess the whole Plot, and in presence of several Boyars,

by Word first, and afterwards by Writing, to the Czar himself declare, that their design was to have Murder'd him, his Wife, Mother, and all their near Relations. Seven others of the Conspirators corroborated his Testimony, and the Truth was too apparent to be deny'd. Prince *Gallichin* in the mean time thought it more advisable to come voluntarily than by compulsion, to *Troitza*, and accordingly resorted thither, but was seized at the Gate, and not admitted to the Czar's Presence. *Trekilatiraw*, and two of the *Strelitzes*, who were the Men that were to have Stabb'd the Czar, were Beheaded; the Colonel that Led them and five more of the boldest of the *Strelitzes*, had their Tongues cut out, and were banish'd to *Siberia*. Which was all the Blood that was spilt on this occasion, for the Princess was only confin'd to the Nunnery, and Prince *Gallichin*, with his Wife and Son Banish'd to *Siberia*. Several Boyars that were of his Party, were either Banish'd or remov'd from Court, and so Tranquillity was restor'd. This happen'd in the Year 1689, and put an end to all dangerous Troubles this Prince has been perplex'd with; for tho' new attempts have been made upon his Life, and Comotions attempted in favour of Prince *Gallichin*, yet they have all pass'd off with little Trouble. This Prince *Gallichin* was a Person of great Genius and Gentility; he was descended of an Illustrious Family, and during the time of his Management, perform'd many noble Works; 'twas he began the Custom of sending the young Nobility Abroad, to learn Languages and Breeding; 'twas he that encourag'd Strangers to come to *Moscow*, to teach the People Manners; 'twas he that introduc'd the custom of Building Stone Houses instead of the Wooden Hovels they live in; and by his Encouragement some Hundred of Stone-Houses were built in *Moscow*: 'Twas he that built the Noble Stone-Bridge over the River in *Moscow*; 'twas he that by the liberal Payment of Adventurers, found out a safe way from *Moscow* to *China* by Land; 'twas he that fix'd Garisons and Stages on the way, and would have made it very Easie, as well as Safe. In short, 'twas he began that Method of Polishing the *Muscovites*, which his present Czarish Majesty has found so Reasonable, as to pursue in every Point. So that if insatiate Ambition had not been his predominant Passion, he must have liv'd the Ornament of his Country, and the Favourite of all Good Men.

The REVENUE of this mighty Prince is very large; it arises by 1. The Crown Lands, valued at 250000 Rubbles *per Annum*, each Rubble being of the value of Ten Shillings Sterling. 2. The *Tagla* and *Podat*, which are an Imposition upon Corn, and a Subsidy upon every Town, reckon'd to bring in 400000 Rubbles yearly. 3. The Customs, producing about 600000 Rubbles *per Annum*. 4. The Duty upon Baths and Publick Houses. 5. A great Duty upon Law-Suits. 6. The Czar hath the Monopoly of Commodities, as *Furrs*, *Ising-glass*, and *Caviare*. 7. Lands, set apart for the Maintenance of his Guards. And besides, the Nobility and Gentry are oblig'd to serve him in the Wars with Men Horses, Arms, and Provisions, proportionate to the Lands they possess, in the nature of Knight's Service.

The Emperor maintains a constant Guard of 18000 Foot, and near 5000 Horse at *Moscow*, and in Garisons on the Frontiers, to the number of



100000 Men more; and in time of War, he hath ordinarily an Army in the Field of 300000 Men, well Arm'd and provided, besides his Garisons and Guards.

Thus much for the Civil. Proceed we now to the Geographical Account of this great Empire.

Muscovy consists of a great number of Provinces, which being not distinguished by Priority of Judicature, we shall consider them according to Situation, dividing the whole Empire into three Parts, viz.

*In entering Muscovy from Lithuania, these Provinces lie between the Wolga and the Lesser Tartary.*

Czernihow.	Chief Cities. Czernihow.
Severia or Sewerski.	{ Novogrodeck-Siewerski, or Seefski. Bransko.
Worotin.	{ Worotin. Bolgoeff. Aarol. Crom.
Smolensko.	{ Smolensko. Dragobusa.
Reschow.	{ Reschow. Woloczko.
Twer.	{ Twer. Tersack.
Muscovy, or Moscua.	{ Moskow. Troitza. Columna.
Rostow.	{ Rostow. Uglitz. Chlopigrod. Perislaw.
Jaroslaw.	{ Jaroslaw. Roma Nova.
Nisi-Novogorod.	{ Nisi-Novogorod. Wasiligorod. Balagna.
Wolodimer.	Wolodimer.
Susdal.	{ Susdal. Castromiogorod. Galez.
Rezan.	{ Rezan. Dankagorod.
Organia, or Belgorod.	Woronitz.
Pole.	
Rosdori Donski.	
Tartaria-Mordua.	{ Adema. Moruma.
Czermisse.	
Muscovian Ukrain.	{ Old-Kiow. New-Kiow.
In the Minor Tartary.	{ Azoph. Petrachina-Tuba. Kafikermant.

PROVINCES lying between the Upper Channel of the Wolga, and the North-Sea.

Pleskow.	Pleskow.
Novogorod-Weliki.	{ Novogorod-Magna. Stara-Russa. Ladoga-Mologa.
Biele Jezoro, or Ozoro.	{ Biele-Ozoro. Gabloma-Sabloda.
Wologda.	{ Wologda. Soaska Strelitz.
Gargapolia.	Kargapol.
Muscovian Lap-land divided into	Towns. { Bellamoreskoy. Mouremanskoy. Terskoy.
Dwina.	{ Archangel. St. Nicholas. Golmagorod. Sollowitzogda.
Juhorski.	Juhora.
Petzora.	{ Petzora. Veliki-Poyasla. Papinow-gorod.
Condora.	Wirchatoura.
Oustrich.	Oustiuch.
Wiadski.	{ Cotelinitz. Slaboda. Chlinaff. Oarloff.
Permia.	{ Permia. Solikamskoi.

The Northern and Tartarian Provinces.

Nova Zemla.	
Samoieda, divided into	Towns. { Obdora. Manamo. Loppa.
Tingoesia.	{ Olschoygorod. Zargelt. Naxenscoy. Taom.
Siberia.	{ Tobolesk. Pobem. Tumen. Zaphanim. Lipen.
Lucomaria.	{ Grustina. Serpenow.
Casan.	Casan.
Bulgaria.	{ Bulgar. Samara.
Astrachan.	{ Astrachan. Saratof. Taritza. Tornogar.



## C H A P. II.

*The Western Provinces of MUSCOVY, lying between the Wolga on the North-East, and Poland and the Muscovian Tartary, on the other sides.*

HAVING in our Table, shewn *Muscovy* divided into three large Parts, we shall in the following Account of it, begin with the Western Provinces adjoining to *Poland*; and having Survey'd all the South-West Part, pass Northward to *Lapland*; and then return from North to South, thro' the middle Provinces; and lastly proceed to the *Muscovian Tartary*. Accordingly in passing from *Poland* to *Muscovy*, we may enter either at *Pleskow*, *Bielski*, *Smolensko*, *Novogorod*, or *Czernibow*. But that we may proceed in a Travelling order, and pass through all the Countries as they lye, we will begin with the most South-West part of *Muscovy*, wherein lye these Provinces, from South to North.

The Dutchy of *CZERNIHOW*, bounded on the South by the *Ukrain*, on the West by *Lithuania*, and on the East by *Severia*; it is in length near 120 Miles, and in breadth in the South, about 80 Miles, but decreases Northward till it ends in a Point.

The chief City, *Czernibow*, is seated on the River *Dniza*, but a few Miles from the Confines of the *Ukrain*, in Lat. 52. and is a well-built, tho' small City.

The Dutchy of *SEVERIA*, or *SEVVERSKI*, adjoyns to *Czernibow* on the East: It is a large and fruitful Province, formerly subject to its own Princes, who in time became Feodals to the Duke of *Lithuania*, and afterwards to the Czar; but the Duke being accused of Treason, in the Reign of *Vasilie*, lost his Royalty, and the Country was annexed to Crown.

The chief City *Novogorodeck Siemerski*, stands upon the River *Dniza*, 50 or 60 Miles above *Czernibow*, hath a Castle and good Fortifications, according to the *Russian* manner, for its Defence. *Bransko*, reckon'd the other chief City, stands far more North.

*VVOROTIN*, another Dutchy, lyes next to *Severia* on the East, having the Lesser *Tartary* on the South, whereby being expos'd to their Ravage, that part is Desert and Woody; but the Northern part is a good Country, Fertile and Populous.

The chief City *VVorotin*, stands on the River *Occa*, about 100 miles South-East from *Siemerski*, and is guarded by a Castle. And higher upon the same River stands *Bolgoff*, *Aarol*, and *Crom*; the Towns that are next considerable.

On the North of these two last mention'd Provinces, lies the Dutchy of *SMOLENSKO*, stretcht out from East to West about 200 Miles, but in breadth not half so much: And was formerly subject to *Lithuania*, but Conquer'd by the Czar, and afterwards Recover'd by the *Poles*, who kept it for some time, notwithstanding the frequent Attacks of the *Russes*; till in the Year 1654 it was recover'd; and in 1656, by Treaty Surrender'd,

and is still subject to the Czar. The River *Nieper* or *Boristhenes*, rises in the North-East Border of this Country, and passes quite through it. This Province abounds with Wild-Beasts, whose Skins are valued.

*Smolensko*, the Capital, is seated on the *Nieper*, near the Confines of *Poland*, a large well-built City, Fortified with good Walls and a strong Castle. *Baudrand* says, the Walls are six Cubits broad, and have 52 Towers upon them; and that the City contains 8000 Houses or more. It hath frequently chang'd its Masters, for sometimes it belong'd to the *Poles*, sometimes to the *Muscovites*, as did the whole Province. *Sigismund III.* King of *Poland*, Established here an Archbishop for the *Greeks* of the *Roman* Communion, and a Bishop for the *Roman* Catholics; but Czar *Alexis* put a *Grecian* Bishop in their place. The City is surrounded with Woods, wherein are taken the best Furrs in *Muscovy*. *Dragobusa*, the next chief Place, is seated also on the *Nieper*, 50 miles above *Smolensko*.

*BIELSKI*, a very small Province, lyes on the North of *Smolensko*, whose chief City *Bielsa* or *Bielow*, stands on the River *Occa*, about 80 miles North-East from *Smolensko*. This was formerly a Dukedom, and Govern'd by its own Princes, subject to *Lithuania*, till *Basilus* subjected himself to the Czar.

*RESCHOVV*, another Dutchy, lies on the North of *Bielski* and *Smolensko*; it joyns to *Lithuania* on the West, and was sometime subject to that Duke. The Country is full of Forests and Lakes, particularly the Forest of *VVolckonski*, wherein the River *VVolga* hath its Source, as also the River *Dzmina*, which passes through *Lithuania* and *Livonia*. The chief City *Reschow*, stands in the East part of the Province in the way to *Moscow*. And *VVoloczka*, 40 miles South from it: This Place is noted for a People remarkably Courteous and Genteel, and for White Hares in the Neighbouring Forests, the Hunting whereof is often the Diversion of the Czar.

*TVER*, a small Province lying on the North-East of *Reschow*, with the Title of a Dutchy, is a very Fruitful and Populous Country. The chief City *Twer*, seated on the *Twaretza* (at its Confluence with the *VVolga*) 40 miles North from *Reschow*, is a large Town, having near 60 Churches, very populous and Rich; the See of a Bishop, and the Station of a Mint. *Tersack*, or *Torsack*, another large Town, stands upon the same River, 20 miles to the North.

The Dutchy of *MUSCOVY*, or *MOSCOWIA*, the chief Province of the Empire, adjoyns to *Twer*, *Reschow*, and *Smolensko*, and hath *Rostow* on the North, *Razan* on the South, and *Razan* and *Susdal*



on the East: Its extent is near 200 miles in length from East to West, and the breadth about 100 miles. The SOIL is not very fruitful, but the Air exceeding wholsom; which with the convenience of its Situation amidst the best Provinces of the Empire, makes it chosen for the Residence of the Czar.

The City *Moscow*, the Metropolis of the Kingdom is seated on the River *Moska*, in the Latitude of 55. 36. Longitude, 58. 45. Of its Magnitude in former times strange things are related, but it is so subject to Fire, by reason of its Wooden Houses, that mighty Conflagrations have happen'd there, and reduc'd the bulk of it half in half. In the great Fire and Ravage of the *Tartars*, which happen'd in 1540. they relate that 80000 Persons perish'd, being either Burnt, Slain, Drown'd, or Trod to Death. In 1611. the *Poles* burnt down (as they report) 41000 Houses: And yet in the Year 1662. when my Lord *Carlisle* was there Ambassador from our King *Charles*, it was judg'd to be 12 miles in Compass, and about 40000 Houses; but the *Russians* pretend it contain'd above twice that Number. It is of Circular Form, and consists of four distinct parts. viz. 1. *Cataigorod*, or Mid-City, surrounded by a Brick-Wall; in it stands the Castle, which is 2 miles in circuit, and Fortified with 3 strong Walls and a Ditch, and in the Castle are 2 Palaces of the Czar's, one of Timber and the other of Stone, built after the *Italian* Manner; the Palace of the Patriarch, the Exchequer, the Magazine, 2 Monasteries, 5 Churches, (among which that of *St. Michael* is adorn'd with the Tombs of the Grand Dukes or Czars) and several other publick and private Buildings. At the Castle-Gate stands the stately Church of *Jerusalem*, and before the Castle is the great Market-place; the great Bell weighing 336000 pounds, hangs in a Tower in the Castle, it is 13 Foot Diameter. 2. *Czargorod* encompasses the other, and is Wall'd about with Stone; herein is the Arsenal. 3. *Skorodom*, on the Northwest of the other, is chiefly Inhabited by the Woodmongers, that sell Houses ready made. 4. *Strelitzs Slavoda*, is the Quarters of the *Strelitzes*, or Guards of the Czar, and is Fortified with Wooden Ramparts. The Houses here are generally very mean, being built only of Fir-Timber Squar'd, and Dovetail'd one into another, and the Chinks fill'd with Moss; these are ready cut out, and when a Fire happens, 'tis but going to Market and you have a new House presently. Nor is their Furniture much better; so that except the Merchandize and Lives that may be lost by a Fire, the Damage is inconsiderable, which makes them never attempt to extinguish it any other way, than by pulling down the Neighbourhood, to hinder its spreading. The Streets are not paved with Stones, but Plank'd with Fir Timber. The Merchants have Vaults of Stone for their Magazines, to prevent the so frequent Damage by Fire. In the City there are no less than 2000 Churches and Chappels, if we may believe the common Accounts. *Moscow* was first Founded in the Year, 1334, by *George*, Duke of *Wolodimer*; and soon after the Great Duke, *Daniel Alexandrowitz*, taking a liking to the Place, made it his Residence, from which time it continually encreased, till it became the Greatest and Richest City in all the North. But the *Tartars* reduc'd it much, when they Took and burnt the City, on the 24th of May, 1570, already

mention'd. The *Polanders* also Took it in 1611. and Burnt down, as we have said, 41000 Houses. However the Enemies were beat off, and the City Repair'd; and tho' it may not now be so exceeding large as formerly, it is however very considerable, being the ordinary Residence of this Great Monarch, the Seat of the Patriarch, and a great Emporium, or place of Trade.

The other most remarkable Towns are, *Troytza*, 30 or 40 miles North from *Moscow*, where is a notable Monastery, and a Palace of the Czars, which is strongly Fortified. And, *Columna* or *Columnas*, upon the River *Mosca*, near its confluence with the *Occa*, 60 miles South-East from *Moscow*; which is a fair City encompass'd with a Wall, and dignified with an Episcopal See.

*ROSTOW* or *ROSTHOW* lies on the North of *Muscovia*, a fruitful and plentiful Country, anciently Govern'd by its own Princes, till *Ivan Vasilowick* put to Death the last Prince, and annex'd it to the Crown. The chief City *Rosthow* stands on a Lake of the same Name, 120 miles North from *Moscow*. *Uglitz* in the same Province seated on the *Wolga*, 80 miles West from *Rosthow* is noted for its excellent Bread. A few miles below stands *Chlopigrod*, which was formerly a great Mart, for all the Neighbouring Nations, but is now ruin'd. *Perislaw* another chief Town of this Province stands on the Borders of *Muscovy*, 50 miles South from *Rosthow*. It is a large Town and very Populous. The Czar comes frequently higher in the Hunting-Season, to divert himself.

*JAROSLAW* lies next to *Rosthow* on the North, and is a Rich and Fruitful Country, abounding with Corn, Cattle, and Honey. It was formerly the Royalty of the younger Sons of the Czar, till *Ivan Vasilowick* in 1563. took it to himself. The chief City *Jaroslawn* is large and populous, said to contain above 40000 Inhabitants; strongly Fortified, and hath a great Trade in Leather, Corn, Cattle and Honey: It stands upon the River *Wolga*, which passes through the middle of this Province. *Roma Nova* the other chief Town, stands on the other side the *Wolga*, 20 miles above *Jaroslawn*.

Returning now Southward.

The Dutchy of *NISI-NOVOGOROD* or *Novogorod Inferior*, lies E. of *Jaroslawn*, and South of *Oustugh*; it is a large Province, and though a great part of it be cover'd with Woods, yet it is a pleasant and fruitful Country. The River *Wolga* passes thro' it, and receives the *Occa* here, near which Confluence on the South Side of the River stands the City of *Nisi-Novogorod* in the Latitude of 56. 40. Longitude 75. and at the distance of 350 miles from *Moscow* to the North-East, it hath a Castle Seated on a Rock, but it is not in very good Condition; being less useful since the adjoining Provinces of *Tartary* have been subject to the Czar. *Vasiligorod* (Built by the Czar *Vasilie* against the Incursions of the *Tartars*) on the same side the River near 100 miles to the East, and *Balagna* somewhat more to the West, are the other Towns of chief Note in this Province; and a large Church built like that *St. Sophia* in *Constantinople*.

The Dutchy of *WOLODIMER* a small Province, but one of the most fruitful in all *Muscovy*



city, is seated between the Rivers *Volga* and *Occa*, on the South of *Niſi-Novogorod*, having *Suſdal* on the Weſt, which divides it from *Muſcovia*, *Rezan* on the South, and *Tartaria Mordua* on the Eaſt. The River *Ceſma*, which riſes in *Muſcovy*, runs thro' this Province, and on it ſtands the chief City *Volodimer* 140 miles Eaſt from *Moscow*, and 150 South-Weſt from *Niſi-Novogorod*; it has its Name from *Volodimer* its Founder about the Year, 928. and was a conſiderable time the Reſidence of the Great Dukes of *Muſcovy*, till *Danielau Michaelowitz* remov'd the Regal Seat to *Moscow*, ſince which time it has declined, but the Ruins of its large Walls and Houſes are undeniable Proofs of its former Grandeur. The City is ſtill conſiderable, and the Country about it ſo fruitful that it yields Thirty for One.

The Duchy of *S U S D A L*, lies on the North-Weſt of that, having *Niſi-Novogorod* on the Eaſt, *Volga* on the North, *Jaroſlaw* and *Roſibow* on the Weſt, and *Muſcovia* on the South-Weſt. It is Water'd by the River *Volga*, which runs croſs the middle of it; and the *Ceſma* in the South Part, on which ſtands the City *Suſdal* an Episcopical See, Seated as we have ſaid on the River *Ceſma*, 50 miles Weſt from *Volodimer*, and 80 North-Eaſt, from *Moscow*; famous for a ſtately Monaſtry of Nuns, and for having been ſometime the Metropolis of *Ruſſia*. *Caſtromogorod*, called alſo *Caſtrum*, on the River *Volga* in the Weſtern, and *Galatz* in the North Confines, 180 miles from *Suſdal*, are the other chief Towns of this Province.

The Duchy of *R E Z A N*, a long Tract of Land, lies on the South of *Muſcovia*, *Suſdal* and *Volodimer*, extending from Eaſt to Weſt near 300 miles along the Banks of the River *Occa*; 'tis the moſt fruitful Soil in the World, if the *Ruſſian* Accounts may be credited, who ſay, that one Grain produceth many Stalks, and each Stalk many Ears, and grows ſo thick that a Horſe can hardly paſs thro': The Fruits alſo are very good, and the Inhabitants Courageous and Civil, and ſo Populous is the Province, that they are able to ſend 15000 Horſe and 40000 Foot to the Wars. It was formerly Govern'd by its own Duke, who was a very powerful Prince, but 'tis now ſubject to the Czar. The great River *Don* or *Tanaïs* hath its Source here, which, after a long angular Courſe, falls into the *Palus Meotis* at *Azoph*. The chief City *Rezan* is Seated on the River *Occa*, 80 miles South-Eaſt from *Moscow*, and 100 South-Weſt from *Volodimer*. It is a large City, the See of a Biſhop, Populous and in good State, and eſpecially famous on account of its notable Defence againſt the *Tartars*, in the Year, 1570. whereby the whole Empire was preſerv'd. *Donkagorod* 40 miles South from *Rezan* near the Head of the River *Don*: and *Toul* in the Weſtern Confines, near the Limits of *Worſtin*: which hath a ſtrongſt Caſtle Built by the Czar *Baſilius*, ſoon after he took it; are the Places of chiefſt Note.

The Province of *O R G A N I A*, or the Palatinate of *BELGOROD*, as I find it call'd in the Modern Map of Mr. *Theſing*, is a large Tract of Land lying on the South of *Rezan* is water'd with divers Rivers, and hath a reaſonable good Soil, but adjoining to the *Leſſer Tartary*, it is ſo ſubjected to the Inſults of that Barbarous People, that it is not very Rich or Populous. Many ſmall Towns

there are, but no Cities nor any Places of conſiderable Note except *Voronitz* or *Veronecz* ſeated on the River *Don*, and of late Years eſpecial'y very conſiderable, on account of the great Ships of War built there by the immediate Direction and Inſpection of the Czar, The River being it ſeems deep enough to carry them down to the Black-Sea; to which, ſince the taking of *Azoph*, the *Muſcovites* have free Access. We muſt not omit taking notice of a Miſtake in all the common Maps, of the Situation of this Town, and the Courſe of the River *Don*; for whereas they place it Eaſt-South Eaſt from *Moscow*, and make the Courſe of the River (in the 70 Deg. Long.) to ariſe Northward as high as the 56 Deg. Lat. and paſs Eaſtward to the 74 Deg. of Longitude; The Town in Truth ſtands almoſt directly South from *Moscow*, at about 200 miles diſtance; and the River continues running Southward from its very Fountain, without ever turning Northward at all: It alſo flows Eaſtward no further than the 69 Deg. of Long. and then returns Weſtward and falls into the *Black-Sea* at *Azoph*, in the 47 Degree of Latitude, and not in the 51 Degree as they lay it. This Correction we have from Mr. *Theſing*, an Ingenious Merchant in *Holland*, at whoſe Houſe the Czar himſelf Lodg'd, and gave him an Opportunity of making a Map from the original Surveys that that Prince had cauſ'd to be made of the Courſe of this River, and Situation of *Azoph*. Again, the quick Paſſage of the Ships from *Voronitz* to *Azoph* confirms this Account, which is perform'd in four Days; but if the River winded about ſo much as the old Maps make it, 'twould take up more than double that Time.

On the Eaſt of *Ograina* lies *POLE*, and on the South of it the *ROSDORI DONSKI*, or the Country of the *Coffacks*, inhabiting the Banks of the River *Don*, and denominated from their Town *Rosdori*, ſeated on the South Bank of that River, The former is a large Bog, and the latter almoſt all Foreſt; ſo that tho' there be ſome Villages on the Banks of the *Don* which River paſſes thro' both Provinces, and divides the latter from the *Circasſ Tartary*, yet no City or Town of Note is found here. This Country, as alſo the greateſt part of what follows, was formerly part of *Tartary*, and from time to time has been Conquer'd by the Czars. The ancient *Tanaitæ*, and the *Eſſedones* lived here. At preſent 'tis Inhabited by the *Coffacks*, who are oblig'd to aſſiſt the Czar in his Wars, and are in return protected by him, but are not immediately Govern'd by him, or indeed by any Body, only as their Wars make 'em chuſe a General, whom they obey with great Submiſſion.

Returning Northward, we enter

*TARTARIA MORDUA*, which is ſurrounded by *Pole* on the South, *Rezan* and *Volodimer* on the Weſt, *Niſi-Novogorod* on the North, and *Czermiſſe* on the Eaſt. It is the Habitation of the *Mordua Tartars*, who are the more Civiliz'd of thoſe People, and have Towns, whereof the chief is *Adema*, 120 miles Eaſt from *Volodimer*, and 60 South from *Niſi-Novogorodeck*. And *Moruma* ſeated on the *Occa*. This is but a ſmall Country, but

The *CZERMIſſE* on the Eaſt of it is a very large Tract of Land, extending from the 54 to the 61 Degree of Latitude; it is divided by the River *Volga* into two Parts, the Southern whereof, which adjoyns



adjoyns to *Mordua*, is called the *NAGORNOI*, because Mountainous, and the Northern *LOGOWI*, because a Flat Pasture Land. On the South of these live the *VACHINES* on the Banks of the *Wolga*.

The Inhabitants of these Countries last nam'd are a rude barbarous People, having a peculiar Language among themselves, and living in Tents and Huts. Those of the *Logowicz* are notable Graziers; for their Country yeilding good Pasture, they breed abundance of Cattle; they are also very expert Archers and Hunt in the Woods. In Religion they are Pagans, for tho' they believe there is one Supreme God, and a Devil, they Sacrifice to him to avoid harm, and Worship the Sun and Moon; but have neither Temple nor Priest. The Women are clad in white Cloath, and all cover'd but their Face; Polygamy is frequent among 'em, and for want of Children a Wife is often put away. They are Subject to the Czar, and are oblig'd to assist him in War, but pay no certain Tribute, and only make voluntary Presents.

We have now made a Journey round one Mory of the best part of *Muscovy*, and should cross the upper Stream of the *Wolga*, and proceed Northward to the other Part; But must first speak of the *Muscovian Ukraine*, which lies on the South-West of these Provinces, on the Frontiers of *Poland*. And altho' I think it proper to mention here the Czar's new Conquests from the *Turks*, I mean *Azoph* and *Cassikermen*, altho' those two Towns are seated in the *Turkish Tartary*.

Of the *UKRAINE* in General and of its chief City *Kiom*, we have already spoken in our account of *Poland*, and there told you that that part of the Country that lies on the East-side of the *Boristhenes*, belongs to *Muscovy*, and that even the City *Kiom* has been surrender'd to the Czar ever since 1636. The Country is often ravag'd by the *Tartars*, and Inhabited by a roving Generation, as are the *COSSACKS*, and therefore is not in so orderly a State, as to afford Cities and Towns, and so might be pass'd over. But in regard the *Cossacks* are one of the Classes of People, who live different from the Civiliz'd part of Mankind, we shall detain the Reader to speak a little of them, especially since we are able to do it satisfactorily from the *Sieur Beauplan*, an Engenier, who was employ'd there by the King of *Poland*, in the Year 1636.

The Old City *Kiom*, was in its time considerable enough to be rank'd with the Best, as the height and breadth of its Ramparts, the depth of its Ditches, the Ruins of Churches, and the old Tombs of Kings demonstrate. The two Churches of *St. Michael* and *St. Sophia* have been Re-built and Adorn'd, especially the latter; but the Ruins of that of *St. Basil*, are not above 6 Foot high, wherein however, are still seen Greek Inscriptions of 1400 Years standing. The Situation of the Old City is on a Plain at the top of a Hill, and commands the Country on one side, and the *Boristhenes*, on 'other. At the Foot of the Hill, on the Bank of the River stands the New *Kiom*, a City of 4 miles extent, containing about 5 or 6000 Inhabitants. It is encompass'd with a wooden Wall, and has a Castle on the brow of the Hill, which commands the Lower Town, but is commanded by the Old one. There are many Churches in this City, whereof 10 of *Russian* of the Greek Communion, and 4

of *Roman Catholicks*. A pretty good Trade is carried on here in Corn, Wax, Honey, Furs, Tallow, Salt Fish, &c. The Houses are built after the manner of *Muscovy*, and seldom above one Story high.

The Land hereabouts is very Fertile, and produces so much Corn, that for want of means of Exportation, it lies upon their Hands; for the *Boristhenes*, which is their only Navigable River, is so clog'd with the Cataracts, that it is not Navigable for 50 Leagues below it, which hinders 'em carrying their Corn to *Constantinople*. Of these Water-falls there are no less than 13. which are made by Ridges of Rocks and great Stones lying cross the River, and by stopping the main Current, make the Falls 10 or 15 Foot deep. These Water-falls are called *Pouruys*, and from them the People that frequent them, *Zapourousky Cossacks*. These Men are able to Navigate the River where no Body dares follow them, and so find a safe Retreat from their Enemies; which makes the Peasants, Servants, or other uneasy People fly thither, and encrease their Number, which is always very great, and has at divers times appear'd in very formidable Armies.

The *Zapourousky Cossacks* are a People of great Activity and Courage, of strong well-made Bodies and healthy Constitutions: They are very hardy against Fatigue, and scud in their little Boats upon the *Boristhenes* and other Waters, with wonderful skill and celerity. They fight better on Foot than on Horseback, and use Fire-Arms with much dexterity; they carry with them a vast number of Carts, which besides carrying their Baggage, serve them for a Rampart round their Camp; and they seldom care to Fight without them. They have among 'em all sorts of Trades, and are expert at Agriculture and all parts of Husbandry. They Brew a strong sort of Beer, which with Mead and Aquavivæ, they drink to excess. They live Merrily without Care, performing just as much Labour as is necessary for their Support, but go no further, as having no regard to Wealth, and are great lovers of Liberty. They are Christians of the *Greek Church*, and observe many Fasts and Feasts, which is indeed the sum of their Religion. There are some Nobility among them descended from *Poland*, who are *Roman Catholicks*. The People are distinguish'd into Gentry and Peasantry; and the latter are miserable enough, being obliged to Work three days in the Week for their Lords; and moreover pay so large a proportion of the product of the Lands they hold, that they are always kept Poor. The Lord's Power over their Vassals is so great, that they extend it to Life and Goods: And therefore the Peasants that happen to have severe Lords, flee to the *Pouruys* on the *Boristhenes*; where after they have acquir'd the Art of passing the Water-falls, they are qualify'd to be denominat'd *Zapourousky Cossacks*. These Cossacks spread themselves all along the Banks of the *Boristhenes* and Neighbouring Country, where they are so Numerous, that our Author says, in his Time they were 120000 Disciplin'd Men, who could be Rendezvouz'd in eight Days time. They were at that time commanded by the King of *Poland*, who made use of them in his Wars against the *Turks*: And they have at several times Plunder'd the *Crim Tartary*, Ravag'd *Anatolia*, Sack'd *Trebizond*, and run to the mouth of the *Black-Sea*, within 3 Leagues of *Constantinople*, where with Fire and Sword, they destroy'd all before 'em, and brought off vast Booty. These



these Excursions are made in Parties of about 10000, who with ferry Boats of their own making, pass the Seas miraculously.

The River *Dni* or *Tanais* hath its source as we have told you in the Province of *Razan*, and the greatest part of its Course lyes through other Provinces of *Muscovy*. But its lower Stream passing by the Frontier of the Minor *Tartary*, the *Muscovite* was thereby stop't in his Passage upon it to the *Palus Mæotis*. And furthermore, the *Turkish* Sultan *Mahomet II.* to shut that Back door to *Constantinople*, wisely seized the Fortrefs *AZOPH*, which stands at the Mouth of that River, into the *Palus Mæotis*, in Lat. 47 Deg. His present Czarish Majesty, whose Genius always lay very much towards Navigation, consider'd with just weight, the Advantage he should reap by possessing this Place; for at *Woronsk* upon this River, he propos'd to build Ships, from whence the Stream is so deep, that he could Float 'em to *Azoph*, and thereby gain the Navigation of the *Palus Mæotis*, whence through the *Black-Sea*, he may pass to *Constantinople*, as in effect his Ships actually did to carry an Ambassador, and even the Czar himself; for as 'twas afterwards reported, that Prince ventur'd himself aboard the Ship. I say, reflecting on this, he took the advantage of the difficult War the *Turk* was then employ'd in in *Hungary* against the Emperor, and in the Year 1693 he March'd with a great Army to Besiege *Azoph*, but had not the Fortune to succeed that time; wherefore leaving it block'd up all the Winter, he return'd next Spring, well supply'd with all Necessaries, and attack'd it with that Violence that he took it, and has ever since possess'd it.

Of the present State of it we are told thus by a Modern Traveller. *Azoph* was a Town of no large extent, and the Fortifications no more than a single Wall, with some Towers, besides a large Intrenchment,

which serv'd for a Citadel. The *Turks* had added some Fortifications of Earth, which enabled them to resist the first Siege, 1693. But the Czar returning the next Summer, Attack'd it so furiously with his Bombs, that the whole Town was laid in Rubbish. So that after it was Taken, it was necessary to build it intirely New. The Czar caus'd it to be Re-built accordingly, and Fortified it perfectly *a la Moderne*, with Counterscarp, Covered-way, Half moons, &c. And in regard his chief purpose in taking this Place, was to open a Passage for Trade into the *Black-Sea*, and thence to *Constantinople* and the *Mediterranean*; His next care was to make a convenient Haven. At *Azoph* here lies a Bar of Sand, which leaves but 7 Foot depth at low Water; wherefore he caus'd the depths all round to be Sounded, and found that at the Mouth of the River *Mæotis*, some Leagues Westward from *Azoph*, where the *Turkish* Ships used to Anchor, there is 15 or 16 Foot at Low Water, near which is a Cape where there is 12 Foot Water and a hard Gravel. Here he built a Fortrefs with five Battions, and a City, which he named *Petrachina Tuba*. He gave to that new City encouraging Privileges, and ordain'd that none but Native *Muscovites* should Inhabit it; which took so well, that in the Year 1697, when the Czar was in *Holland*, he receiv'd Advice, that there were already 10000 Inhabitants in it. He propos'd also to make a Canal of 3750 Foot long, and half so much broad, for a Basin for Ships to lie safely in, which we suppose is perform'd.

*Kasikermant*, his other Conquest in that War, is a Fortrefs seated at the Mouth of the *Borisphenes* into the *Black Sea*; but in regard that the *Borisphenes* is not Navigable, by reason of the *Porouys* or stony Dams below *Kiom*, as we have mention'd above, this place is not of equal convenience with *Azoph*. It stands in the Minor *Tartary* overagainst *Oczakow*.

### CHAP. III.

*Of that Part of Muscovy, that lies between the upper Channel of the Wolga on the South, and the White-Sea, and Ocean on the North*

THIS Part of the Czarish Empire, is bounded on the West by *Sweden* and *Norway*, on the North by the *Muscovian* Ocean, on the South by the Provinces we have mention'd, and on the East by *Siberia*. Comprehending these Provinces, viz. *Pleskow*, *Novogorod-Weliki*, *Biele-Ozoro*, *Wologda*, *Cargopolis*, *Muscovian Lap-land*, *Dwina*, *Juborski*, *Pet-zora*, *Cendora*, *Permia*, *Oustinech*.

The Dutchy of *PLESKOW*, formerly a Powerful and Free State, but now subject to the Czar, is the most Western part of his Dominions, bounded on the North with *Ingria*, on the West with *Lithonia*, (part of the *Swedish* Dominions) on the South with *Lithuania*, and on the East with *Novogorod*. The chief City *Pleskow*, call'd by the *Russies* *Plesow*, is the See of an Archbishop, a City of very large extent, and reckon'd one of the strongest in all the North: It is divided into four Quarters, each of which hath its Wall, and is defended

by a Castle built on a Rock. It was Govern'd by its own Princes, till *Ivan Vasilowits* in 1509. united it to the Crown, and the Citizens who were then famous for their Valour, Civility and Honesty in Trade, were Transported; and *Muscovites* put in their place. There are several other strong Places in this Province, which as they gave the Czar great trouble in Conquering, are maintain'd now for defence of this advanc'd Frontier. Below *Pleskow* is the Lake *Peibus*, the Eastern part whereof which hath many Islands is in this, Dutchy, the rest in *Lithonia*.

*NOVOGOROD*, call'd *WELIKI*, or the Great, to distinguish it from others of the same Name, is a large and fruitful Province, seated between *Pleskow* on the West, *Ingria*, *Carelia* and *Kexholm* (parts of *Sweden*) on the North, *Rescow* and *Twer* on the South, and *Rosthow*; *Ferassow*, &c. on



on the East. Its extent from East to West in the Southern part, is 250 miles, but Northwards it grows exceedingly narrow. The Products of the Country are Wheat, Flax, Hemp, Honey, Wax and Leather, which formerly caus'd a vast Traffick here, when Govern'd by its own Princes; but the *Muscovites* often Warring against 'em diminish'd their Traffick, and since it has been under their Dominion 'tis not in so Flourishing a State. In the middle of the Southern part is the Lake *Ilmen*, whence Issues the River *Volohova*, which passes into the Lake *Ladoga*. On this River stands the chief City *Novogorod Weliki*, in the Latitude of 58. 23. Longitude 55. 0. call'd by the *Dutch Newgarden*: It is a large City surrounded with a Rampart of Timber and Earth, and Guarded by one Castle in the middle of the City well Fortified, and another on the other side the River, which is joyn'd to the City by a large Bridge; and wherein lives the Weywood or chief Governour in Civil Affairs, and the Metropolitan or Arch-bishop, who has the care of Ecclesiastical Matters. This City was once of vast Extent, as the Ruins of it's ancient Walls demonstrate, and its Power and Wealth, obtain'd by the mighty Traffick, was so great that it became a Proverb, *Who can hurt God and Great Novogorod?* *Vitold*, Great Duke of *Lithuania*, and at that time General of the *Polish Army*, was the first that diminish'd its Grandeur, having in the Year 1427. oblig'd it to pay a Tribute to that Crown. About 50 Years after *John Basilowitz Grotzyn* Warring against them, obtain'd a great Victory, and forc'd them to submit to his Government, and not long after caused the City to be Pillag'd, and many of the Inhabitants to be Transported to other places, and in the Pillage 'tis said he carried off 300 Cart Loads of Gold, Silver, and Jewels, besides abundance of other rich Goods; so Wealthy was the place at that time. Afterwards in 1569. *John Basilowitz* came again with an Army, and destroyed the Inhabitants most cruelly. The City and Province have always since been subject to the Czar, except in the Year 1611. when it was taken by the *Poles*, but in the following Treaty restor'd. The Town is but sorry built, the Houses being of Wood, but is adorn'd with 70 Monastries, and above 100 Churches, whose Steeples and Towers are cover'd with Copper gilt; among them that of *St. Sophia* is the Cathedral of this Arch-Episcopal Sec. In the same Province are, *Stara Russa* seated on the opposite shoar of the Lake *Ilmen*, whence issues a River that passes through the Town, and out of which Salt is made, that yields the Inhabitants a profitable Traffick. Some Authors affirm that from the Name of this Town the whole Nation were call'd *Russes*. *Ladoga* and *St. Nicholas* upon the River about 100 miles North from *Novogorod*, and near the Lake *Ladoga* (which in part belongs to this Province, and part to *Sweden*.) *Mologa* at the Confluence of the *Nissa* with the *Volga* on the Confines of *Biele Ozoro*, are the other Towns of Note in this Province.

*BIELE JEZORO* or *OZORO* a small Province of circular Form lying on the East of *Novogorod*, takes it's Name from a Lake of about 13 L. long, call'd *Biele Ozoro*, which signifies White Lake, on which stands the chief Town of the same Name, 200 miles East from *Novogorod*, and as many North from *Moscow*: It is a considerable Town and strong, especially the Castle which stands in the Lake, is

esteem'd Impregnable. The Province is full of Woods and Lakes, and therefore the Ways impassable but in Winter.

*Geblowa Sabloda* on the *Volga* 60 miles above *Jaroslav* is a place of Trade.

*WOLOGDA* lies on the East of *Novogorod*, and on the North of *Jaroslav*, it is a large Province, but very Woody and Mountainous. The chief City *Wologda* stands in a Bog on the River of the same Name (which falls into the *Duina*; at the distance of 120 miles from *Biele Ozoro* to the East: It is Walled with Stone, and it's Castle is reckon'd so strong that to it and the Castle of *Biele Ozoro*, the Emperor sends his Treasure in time of Danger; *Sooska* and *Strelitz* upon the River, 60 or 70 miles to the East, are reckon'd the next chief Towns of this Province.

*CARGAPOLIA* lies on the North of *Wologda* and on the West of *Duina*, extending to the White Sea, otherwise call'd the Bay of *St. Nicholas*. It is a large Province, but Mountainous and Barren. The People live somewhat like the *Laplanders*, tho' not quite so barbarous, having among them some Towns, whereof *Kargapol* is the chief, seated on a Lake out of which flows the River *Onega*, that crossing this Province falls at last into the White Sea.

Northward from hence lies the *Muscovian LAPLAND*, called *LEPORIE*, by the *Russes*, and divided into three Parts, viz.

*BELLAMORESKOY LEPORIE*, which lies at the bottom of the Bay call'd the *White Sea*, or *Bella More*, extending from the 64th. to the 68th. Degree of Latitude, and round about all the West and North-West Coast of that Bay: The Country is Barren, The Air extream Cold, and the Inhabitants a rude uncultivated People: And in general the whole Country is like the *Swedish Lapland*, of which we have already given an Account. Some few Towns here are, whereof the chief are, *Soma*, on the Frontiers of *Cargapol*, and the very entrance of *Lapland*, seated on the *White Sea*, in the Latitude of 64. More North on the same Sea stands *Keretti*, Latitude 66. 30. *Ombay* on the opposite shoar of the same Bay, 20 Leagues to the North-east; and *Kandalax* more Northward, at the very utmost Northern Shoar of the same Bay. *MOUREMANSKOY LEPORIE* the most Northern part, lying between the *Norwegian Lapland* on the North-West, the *Swedish Lapland* on the West, and the *Bella Moreskoy* on the South. It is a Mountainous and Woody Country, and hath no Towns of any note; *Kola* a small Port-Town at the Mouth of a River of the same Name, which falls into the *Muscovian Ocean*, is the chief, it stands in the Latitude of 69 Deg. *TERSKOY LEPORIE* is the East part of the *Muscovian Lapland*, it is almost surrounded by the Sea, and is the Land that makes the Bay called the *White-Sea*. This is also a Woody Barren Country, *Warssga* is the chief Town in it, and stands on the South Coast over against *Archangel*. *Lockena* another small Port stands at the Mouth of the River of the same Name, which falls into the Ocean, in the Latitude of 68 Deg. Returning now Southward we enter,

*DUINA*, a Province of very large extent being near 300 miles broad, in form of a Lozenge; having the Straights of the White Sea on the North-West, *Cargapol* on the South-West, *Condora*



on the East, and *Oustugh* on the South-East. It takes its Name from the River which runs cross it, and is called *Duina* q. d. Twain, because it consists of the two Rivers *Suchana* and *Fugb* united, and falls into the *White Sea*. The Country is Barren and hath but very few Cities and great Towns: The Inhabitants live upon dry'd Fish and Venison, (the Land producing no Corn) and their chief Commodity is Salt, the Vent whereof was their only Trade, before the *English* came to Traffick at *Archangel*; but now the conveying Goods from all parts of *Muscovy* to that Market, doth somewhat enrich the Country. The chief City of the Province is,

*Archangel*, or *St. Michael Arch-Angel*, called by the *Russes* *Archania*, seated on the East Side of the River *Duina*, near its Mouth, in the Latitude of 65, and Longitude of 63 Degrees. It is no very large City, but Rich and Populous, of modern Structure, being not considerable till the the *English* Ships coming there to Traffick made it resorted to. At present 'tis the See of an Arch-bishop, and its Haven so much frequented, that in the Summer Season (for in the Winter 'tis frozen up) there are often seen 3 or 4 Hundred Ships at a time from *England*, *Holland*, *Sweden* and *Denmark*. And indeed 'tis in a manner the only Port of *Muscovy*; for since the way to it has been discover'd, the Voyages to *Narva*, where formerly the *Russian* Commodities were bought, are left off. The *English* were the first Discoverers of it, for Sir *Hugh Willoughby* in the Year. 1553. having receiv'd a Commission to discover the North-East Passage to *China*, *Richard Chancellor*, Master of one of the Ships, was separated from the Fleet, and accidentally fell into the Bay of *St. Nicholas* or *White Sea*, where he was well receiv'd, and being sent for to Court, was kindly Entertain'd by the Czar *Iohn Basilowick*, and a free liberty given to the *English* to Trade in his Dominions; insomuch that a Company of Merchants were Incorporated at *London*, in 1555. and large Privileges granted them by the Czar; upon which Encouragement a Trade to *Russia* was carried on, to the great Profit of both Nations, which for some Time the *English* enjoy'd solely. The Dutch and other Nations struck in for a share of it, but could not Trade upon the same Advantages, by reason of our Privileges, till the Civil War, and the Death of *K. Charles I.* provok'd the Czar so far against the *English*, that he took away those Privileges; and tho' by a solemn Embassy from *K. Charles II.* soon after the Restoration, they were endeavour'd to be regain'd, it could not be effected, and our Merchants have now little better Advantages than other Nations. About 20 Miles to the East of *Arch-Angel* stands *St. Nicholas*, a small Port on the *White-Sea*, which seems to be the more ancient Place, since it has given Name to all this Bay. Colmogored upon the *Duina* 20 miles above *Arch-Angel*, is also reckon'd one of the chief Towns of this Province.

*Sallowitzogda* a large City inhabited by many considerable Merchants and curious Mechanics, as we are told by *Isbrandts*, stands on the Limits of this Province, in Lat. 63. Near it according to the same Author is a Country of 70 German Leagues extent, nam'd *WOLLOSTUSGT*, inhabited by Men of different Language, and suppos'd by that Author to have come from *Livonia*; they are Civil, and Christians of the *Greek Church*.

On the North of *Duina*, in the *Muscovian-Sea*,

lies the Island *Marfonowitz*, divided by a narrow Strait. In the East part of it stands the Town *Candences*, whence the Island is sometimes call'd *Candenora*, and is mention'd in some of the Northern Voyages.

*ZUHORSKI*, called also *Zugoria*, *Zugria*, &c. lies on the North-East of *Duina*, having the Sea on the North and East, and *Oustugh* on the South. By its Northern Situation 'tis no Wonder that the Land is Barren, the Soil overrun with Forrests, and the People of mean Condition. *Zuhora*, the chief Town, stands on a small Bay in the North Coast, in the Latitude of 68 Degrees. And over against it, about 20 Leagues off in the Sea, lies the Island *Calgoja*.

Eastward from hence lies the large Province of *PETZORA*, a Barren and Woody Country, surrounded with Mountains. A River of the same Name rises in the East Confines, and runs quite thro' the Province, and falls at last into the Ocean by many Mouths, on which stands the chief Town *Petzora* or *Puste Ozoro*, about 30 Leagues from the Sea; *Weliki Poyassa* stands near the head of the River, and *Papinowgorod* about 100 miles below it.

The *Montes Ryphei* five *Obii*, commonly call'd *Stolp*, and by the *Russes* *Weliki Kameny Poyas*, i. e. the great Girdle of Rocks, begin from the Bay of the *Muscovian-Sea*, near the Straights of *Weygats*, and continue on almost quite round this Province, and a good part of *Siberia*.

*CONDORA* or *CONDINSKY*, lies between *Duina* on the West, *Zuhorsky* on the North, *Petzora* and *Siberia* on the East, and *Permia* on the South. It is a large Province with the Title of a Dutchy, but not considerable, being very Woody and Mountainous. The chief Town is *Wirchaboura*, seated in the Northern Part, in the Latitude of 66.

*OUSTIUGH* a large Province, lies between *Permia*, *Condora*, *Duina*, *Cargapola* and *Wologda*; this also is but a Poor Country; a great part of it is cover'd with Woods, wherein are the best black Foxes, whose Furrs are the chief Commodity of the Land: The River *Fugb* rises on the East side of the Province, and the *Suchana* enters it out of *Wologda* on the West, and both meeting together about the middle make the great River *Duina*, at the Confluence whereof stands the chief Town *Oustugh*, q. d. (according to *Luyts*) *Ostium Fugæ*, which is noted for the Fairs held Annually in it for the Sale of Fox Skins, &c.

The Dutchy of *WIADSKI* lies on the West of *Siberia*, having *Permia* on the North, *Oustugh* on the West, and *Casan* on the South. It is a Barren and Marshy Country, Conquer'd from the *Tartars* by the Emperor *Vasilie*. The great River *Kam* passes through it, and falls into the *Volga* at *Casan*, and the River *Wiadka* gives Name to the Country. The chief Towns are *Cotelinitz*, upon the *Wiadka*, near the Confines of *Casan*. *Slaboda*, more to the North-west. *Chlinoff* on the *Wiadka*, near the Confines of *Permia*, and *Oorloff* on the same River in the middle of the Province.

*PERMIA* or *PERMSKY*, lies on the South of *Condora*, between that, *Oustugh*, *Wiadski* and *Siberia*. It is a Mountainous Country, and not considerable



considerable but for the Rivers; the great River *Kama* hath its rise here, as also *Tuga*, which falls into the *Wolga*, and several other smaller Streams arise in these Mountains. The chief Town *Permia* should be large by its Name, being called *Veliki* or Great *Permia*; but it is not mention'd by Authors as considerable, and few Travellers have been this way to inform us. It stands upon a small River that falls into the *Kama*, Lat. 62. according to the Maps.

But *Tibbrandts* gives the Capital of *Permia* the Name of *Solikamskoj*, and places it in his Map, in the 60 Deg. Lat. Which, says he, is a very fine large and rich City, abounding with Salt Works, and maintains a good Trade in Salt sent away by Shipping on the *Kama*, which falls into the *Wolga*. Note, That Author reckons the Eastern Frontier of this Province the Limits of *Europe*.

## C H A P. IV.

Of Nova Zembla, Samoieda, and Siberia; with the Kingdoms of Casan, Bulgaria and Astrachan. All which may be call'd the Muscovian Tartary in Europe.

HAVING described all the Western and Midland part of the Muscovian Empire from North to South, we proceed next to the Eastern Part, which tho' of near as large Extent, is by no means comparable for Wealth and Cultivation; this being Inhabited by *Tartars*, who being in general a rude unpolish'd People, we must not expect to hear of fine Cities and cultivated Lands among them; so that tho' here be large Kingdoms, there are only a few Cities, which the *Russians* have Built to maintain their Authority over the Natives. In passing thro' these Countries, we shall begin in the North, and proceed to the South, till we come to *Astrachan*, the utmost City in *Europe*.

*NOVA ZEMLA*, q. d. *New Land*, is separated from the Continent of *Muscovy*, by the Straights of *Wygats*, or as the *Dutch* call it, the *Strait van Nassau*, which lies in the Latitude of 68 Degrees North from the Equator; and this Land which makes the Strait, is a Promontory advancing Southward from the main Country; which is conceived to reach far more North; and is by some affirm'd to join to *Tartary*. But the contrary was supposed by our Navigators, who sought that way to pass to *Cathay* and *China*. The Longitude is from 70 to 90. But the old Maps laid it vastly more Eastward.

The *English* first discover'd this Land, in the Year 1556, since when it has been often visited by *English* and *Dutch*, in search of the North-East Passage. But the coldness of the Air, and the Mountains of Snow which cover'd the Land, hinder'd 'em from giving any great Account of it. Some *Dutchmen* Winter'd there in the Year 1595. But the Cold was so severe, that they had enough to do to keep themselves alive. They saw not the Sun from November 4, to January 24. during all which time they had continual Darkness, except what the Moon gave them from the first to the last Quarter, during which time she was seen by Day as well as Night. However, some parts of it, they say, are Inhabited by a People of low Stature, Idolaters and Barbarous. The Grand Czar having sent to discover the Country, assumes the Title of it, though he receives no Obedience, nor exercises any Authority there, the Air being too Cold for a Governor to live in it. What can more be said of it, the

Reader will find in our account of the Countries about the Pole, at the latter end of this Work.

The most Northern part of the Continent of *Muscovy* is Inhabited by several Nations of Barbarous People, call'd by the *Russes* *SAMOIEDS*, or *Man-Eaters*, and thence the Country *SAMOIEDA*: Which is divided into *OB DORA*, (where liv'd the *Vogulici* and *Hugritifchi*) seated on the West-side of the River *Oby*; and *MANAMO* and *LOPPA*, on the East-side of the River. The Mountains *Riphei*, that surround *Petzora*, is the Boundary on the South-side, and the Sea on the North; but Eastward it extends to the *Asiatick Tartary*. The Inhabitants are of low Stature, with broad flat Faces, small black Eyes, resembling much the *Laplanders* and *Greenlanders*, as well in Form as way of Living, only they Feed more vilely, for they eat raw Flesh, and even Carrion, and dry'd Fish instead of Bread. They have no Towns nor settled Habitations, but like the *Laplanders*, remove from Place to Place, seeking the best Game for themselves, and Pasture for their Rain-Deer; which, as in *Lapland*, is their only Cattle of Service. They Travel in Sleds drawn by Rain-Deer, in which they will run 200 Miles in a Day. They Lodge in Tents made of Skins and Furrs, extended upon Sticks and Poles, are very nimble and excellent Archers, which they acquire by Hunting Wild-Beasts for their Food. Thus they live in the Summer Half-year; but in the Winter they keep in Caves under Ground, and to supply themselves with Light, have Lamps, which are fed with the Oil of Fish. They wear a sort of long Skate on their Feet, with which they slide on the Snow with great ease and celerity. Their Habits are all of Furr, and made close to their Bodies. They are of a hardy and healthy Constitution, Strong and Active. In Religion they are *Pagans*, Worshipping the Sun, and Sacrificing to Idols: They are also addicted to Sorcery, like the *Laplanders*: But this is much suppressed in those Parts subject to the *Muscovite*, where Christianity hath been planted, and pretty well received.

The means whereby they became subjected to the Czar, may be worth Relating. In the Time of *Ivan Basilowitz*, that is about 150 Years ago, there lived in the Province of *Oustingh*, upon the



River *Witigda*, a Husband man, named *Onak*, who by Industry had acquired some Wealth; and having three Sons to assist him, they fell into a Trade with the *Samsieds*, that used to bring Furrs to the Fair of *Ouslingb*: And finding the Furrs exceeding rare, had the Curiosity to enquire out their Country; accordingly he intimated into their Acquaintance, and sent some of his Servants Home with them, with strict Orders to observe the Country, and way to it. At their Return, commanding his Servants to be silent, he sent divers Friends, and more Servants the next Year, and with them some Commodities of small Value, which might be useful there; these passing as far as the River *Oby*, found those Rich Furrs very plenty, and to be purchased at easie Rates: Wherefore lading themselves with their Purchase brought Home a very profitable Return to their Master. Which Trade being continued by this Family, they grew exceeding Rich, so as to build many Churches and Towns, Employ 10000 Servants, and pay the King 20000 Rubbles a Year for Custom. But when they had sufficiently Feather'd their Nest, to prevent Destruction by Envy, they resolv'd to inform the Czar: Accordingly some of them repairing to Court, with Presents to the chief Minister, inform'd him what they knew of these Countries, which was received very kindly; and the Czar *Theodore* being inform'd of it, Rewarded the Family of *Onak*'s with great Privileges and Honours; and sent many Gentlemen, and Soldiers under their Conduct, to make a Discovery. These being Richly Clad, and Furnish'd with such small Presents as might be acceptable to the Natives, took a Journey to *Samsieds*; where behaving themselves discreetly, and bestowing their Presents freely, they gained the Affection of the People; and by extolling the Goodness and Greatness of their Monarch, prevailed upon them to submit to his Government, and pay as an Acknowledgment a pair of Sables every Year for every Head that was able to Shoot, which was but a Trifle to them, but a great Wealth to the Czar: And to satisfy the *Samsieds*, they took several of them with 'em to *Moscow*, (leaving Hostages for their Return) who were so astonish'd at the Pomp of that Court, the Greatness of the Armies, the Convenience of the Houses, and the like, that they immediately desir'd to be accepted as the Czar's Subjects, and have Persons sent to instruct them in this Regular way of Living. Since which time the Christian Religion hath been taught among them, and the People are become more Civiliz'd.

*Ysbrandt's Ides* tells us, that they are several Nations, differing in Language and Customs: But are in general a very Stupid People, and have little of Man more than Speech, and of the most disagreeable Figure in the World, being short of Stature, broad Shoulder'd, flat Faces, broad Noses, hanging Lips, and frightful Eyes, of brown Complexion, small Beards, and long Hair.

The Chief Towns built by the *Russes* here are *Olschborged* in a *Peninsula*, near the Mouth of the *Oby*; but that being found too near the Sea, was razed, and in its stead *Zergolt* was built in an Island of the *Oby*, in the Latitude of 69 Degrees, and above that upon the *Oby*, in the Latitude of 67. 30. *Naxenscoy*, or as others write it, *Niezenscoy*, at first a Castle only, now grown into a good City. Southward from hence on the *Oby* also stands *Toom*, in the Latitude of 66. 0. The Chief City of that part of the Country is called *Lappa*, and seems by the

Map to be the chief City of all *Samsieda*. Several other smaller Towns have been built on the other side.

South and East from hence lies *TINGOESIA*, or Habitation of the *Tingesh*, a Mountainous Country beyond the River *Jenizai*, and properly belonging to *Tartary*, but is by some Geographers reckon'd part of *Moscow*.

The Great Province or Kingdom of *SIBERIA*, lies on the South of *Obdora*, between the River *Oby* on the East and *Petzora*, *Permia*, and *Wiadski* on the West, extending no less than Ten Degrees in Length, viz from the 58th to the 68th. The Land is Woody and Marshy, and the Inhabitants are chiefly of the *Tartarian* Race. The chief Cities built here by the *Russes*, are *Pohem*, a Castle near the Confines of *Obdora* and *Petzora*. *Tobolsca* the chief City, seated upon the Rivers *Irisch* and *Tobol*, in the Latitude of 65. Here is a Bishop's See, a Supreme Court of Jurisdiction for all *Samsieda*, and *Siberia*; and hither the Tribute is brought from all the Provinces beyond, and conveyed to *Moscow*. *Calami* upon the *Oby*, and *Ostro* on the other side, a little above it. *Tumen* or *Tinna*, South from *Tobolska* on a River of the same Name, where is held a great Market for Furrs. *Zaphanim*, more to the North-West, seated upon the River *Toera*, Built for a Stage to Travellers this way, as was also *Vergateria*, the first Town in *Siberia*, out of *Permia*. It was built in the Year 1590, and is the Residence of a Governor and Garrison, who Yearly distribute out the Corn and the other Provisions to the further Garrisons that live where the Ground is not Tilled. *Taara*, in the middle of the Province, seated on the *Irische*, in the Latitude of 62. 0. *Lipen* or *Lopen*, much farther South, viz. in the Latitude of 59.

In this Province are comprehended the People, *Calami*, *Pega-Horda*, *Schibanski*, *Cosaski*, and *Nagja-Horda*.

On the East-side the *Oby*, overagainst *Siberia*, lie *LUCOMORIA* and *Grustinsky*, wherein are *Grustina* on the *Oby*, in Latitude 62, and *Serpenow*, above 200 miles from it to the East.

### *The Account of SIBERIA, given by his Excellency Ysbrandts Ides.*

*SIBERIA*, is Inhabited by various Clans of *Tartars*, whose Interests and Manners are different and are not unlike the common *Tartars* in their way of Living in General, except that they are of a civiler kind. They are either Pagans or Mahometans in Religion, altho' forc'd to pay Obedience to the Czar. The Country is every where well Peopled, as well by *Russians*, who practise Husbandry as *Tartars* and other Nations. Corn and Cattle is very plenty and cheap: And from the River *Irisch* which passes through the middle of the Country they receive such a great quantity of Fish that also is exceeding cheap. Of Wild-Beasts, they have Elks, Stags, Deer, Hares; and of Wild-Fow Pheasants, Partridges, Swans, Wild-Geese, Duck and Storks.

'Tis about an Hundred Years since this Country has been subjected to the Czar, by this Accident. A certain Robber, named *Feremak Temesejewicz* in the Reign of *Ivan Vasilowicz*, Plunder'd all the circumjacent Country, and greatly injur'd the Czar's Subjects.



Subjects, for which being pursued by the Czar's Forces, he fled up the River *Kama*, to the Lands of a famous Rich Man named *Strogino*, of whom he craved Protection, and his intercession to the Czar for Pardon, promising to merit it by the Conquest of *Siberia*. And accordingly Summon'd his Fellow Robbers together, and being assisted by *Strogino* with Boats, Arms and Workmen, he passed by Rivers part of the way, and over-Land the other part, and coming to the Fort *Tumeen*, which is seated on the River *Tura*, in the 55th Deg. of Lat. and in 78 Longit. He took it, and proceeded on the River to *Tobolska*, which he also Took. But he was soon after Drowned by Accident, and so reaped not the Fruits of his Labour. But the Czar took advantage of his Conquest, and sent an Army thither, and subdued the whole Country; which has ever since paid Tribute to him, and been Govern'd by his Waywode or Vice-Roy. The Places of Note which the Ambassador pass'd through in his passage cross this Country, are,

*Utska*, a Castle seated near the Frontiers of *Permia*, in the 55th Deg. Lat. *Ajada*, another Castle, seated 180 miles more to the South-East. *Nenianskoi* on the River *Nena*. *Tumeen*, a City strong and Populous, seated in the 55th Deg. Lat. and 80 Long. on the River *Tura*, and Inhabited mostly by *Russians*. He tells us all the Country he had pass'd through, was Fertile and well-Till'd Grounds, Woods, and charming Fields, with many Villages well Inhabited by *Russians*. The Furrs, which abound near *Tumeen*, are only Red-Fox, Wolf, Bear, and grey Squirrels, of a finer sort than are found any where else all over the *Muscovite* Empire, and therefore none are sold to Merchants, but the whole preserv'd for the Czar's Use.

*Tobolsk*, or *Tobolska*, the chief City of *Siberia*, stands at the confluence of the River *Tobol* with the *Irtisch*, in the 58th Degree of Latitude, as laid down in our Author's Map, altho' the former Maps place it in 64, and in the 82d Degree of Longit. It is seated on a high Hill of large circuit, the bottom whereof is Inhabited by Mahometan *Tartars*, who drive a good Trade up the River *Irtisch*, and carry Goods cross the Grand *Tartary* to *China*. The City is well Fortified, and has always a strong Garison, under the Command of the Weywood who Resides here, and upon Orders from the Czar, can bring 9000 Men into the Field, besides many Thousand *Tartars*, who serve the Czar on Horseback. The *Kalmuck-Tartars*, who live more to the Southward, together with the *Orda* Cossacks, in their strolling IncurSIONS, frequently commit great Insolencies in this Country, but are soon repulsed with the Forces the Weywood sends against them. This City is also the place of Residence of a Metropolitan, sent hither from *Moscow*, who exercises Supreme Spiritual Jurisdiction over all *Siberia* and *Duria*.

For the convenience of Travellers, the Czar allows an annual Pay to a sufficient number of the *Russians*, who Inhabit the Banks of the *Irtisch*, and are called *Jemskicks*; for which they supply all Persons that Travel on the Czars account, with Carriages, Boats, and Men, to convey them as far as *Surgut*, on the *Oby*, which is a Journey 500 miles by Water, which is the ordinary Passage in Summer; but not above half so much by Land as they Travel in Winter, in Sleds over the Ice and Snow. These Sleds are small, and drawn by Dogs, whereof two Yoak'd together, will draw a Load of two or 300 pound Weight very expedi-

tiously. Great numbers of these Sleds are continually seen running over the Snow, and are hired at ealie Rates.

*Demianskoi*, 150 miles North from *Tobolska*, is a Town seated on the *Irtisch*. And *Somarskoy-Jam*, is another on the same River, near its confluence with the *Oby*.

*Surgut*, is a City seated on the East-side of the River *Oby*, in about the 60th Deg. of Lat. and 90th of Long. The River here is half a mile (I suppose he means *German*) over. The Country round about abounds with Sables, Ermins, and Black Foxes, whose Skins are excellent Furrs. These Ermins are the finest and largest of all *Siberia*, and the black Fox-skins are so rich a Furr, that a skin is sold for 2 or 300 Rubbles. *Hyena's* and *Bevers* are also very plentiful here. The *Hyena* is a very rapacious Creature; he will sit on the branch of a Tree, and throw himself on a Hart, an Elk, or a Doe, and fix himself so close with his Claws and Teeth, that he will eat a Hole in the Flesh, and by the violence of Pain, make the Creature fall his Prey. The *Bevers* are strangely Ingenious in gnawing down great Trees and conveying them to their Holes, where they build themselves Houses and Repositories for their Winter Food. The Stories the *Sicarians* tell of the Strength and Ingenuity of these Creatures, are incredible.

*Nazum*, seated also on the *Oby*, in the 58th Deg. of Latitude, 220 miles South-East from *Surgut*, is a City provided with a Fortrefs or Castle, and a pretty strong Garison of Cossacks. The Country all round it abounds with Ermins, Sables, Beavers, and Foxes. The Banks of the *Oby* to this Place, are Inhabited by a People call'd *Ostjacks*, who Worship Idols, and are Ignorant Lazy People, with the broad flat Faces of *Samoieda*. Their Cloaths are made of the Skins of Sturgeon, wherewith the Rivers greatly abound. They have petty Princes among them, one of whom is the *Knezka* or chief, and gathers the Tribute, which they are oblig'd to pay to the Waywoods for the Czar's Service. In Winter they live in Caves under-ground, and their Country is too cold at all times to admit of Tillage; so there is no Corn or Fruits hereabouts. All the Country from hence to the River *Jenizca*, is of the same kind, without any remarkable Place in it, and therefore shall end here, because in our Accounts of *Tartary* we shall give an account of *Jenizescoy*, and all the Country forward.

*Tomskoy*, seated in Lat. 52. on the *Torn*, which falls into the *Oby*, is a strong Frontier, Garison'd with *Russians* and Cossacks.

As for *DAURIA*, which I had occasion once to mention, it's a Country seated far Eastward in *Tartary*, and will be spoken of in its place.

The Kingdom of *CASAN*, formerly Subject to its own Prince, who was a powerful Monarch, but Conquer'd by the Great Duke *John Basilowitz*. Lies on the South of *Oustinch* and *Permia*, but according to *Isbrandts* Map, not near so far to the East as the common Maps make it. The two Rivers *Kama* and *Volga* run thro' it; and the Countrey is Fertile. The chief City *Casan* is seated on a River of the same Name near its Confluence with the *Volga*; in the Lat. 55. Long. 69. It is a large City, the See of a Metropolitan, and the Seat of the Czar's Governour of these Parts, and is well Fortified. The Castle is of Stone, and well provided with Artillery, and a good Garison. On the *Volga* 70 miles more West, stands *Kockschaga*, and 130 miles to the North



North is *Malmisi* on the River *Casan*; and Borders of *Bugar*, *Tatul* Seated on the West-side the *Wolga*. Of the Revolution in this Country by the inroad of *Sapperi* the *Tartar*, in the Reign of *Itan Kaskimich*, we have spoke of when we spoke of that Prince among the Kings of *Muscovy*.

The Kingdom of *BULGARIA*, otherwise called the Region or *Herda* of *Zavkani*, lies on the South of *Casan*. The Chief Cities are *Bulgaria* in the North part, 70 miles South from *Casan*, and *Samara*, 120 miles South from *Bulgar*, and not far from the *Wolga*.

More South lies the Great Kingdom of *ASTRACHAN*, which reaches from the Confines of the *Czermisse*, and *Bulgaria*, as far as the *Caspian* Sea, and is the most Eastern Country of *Europe*; being divided from *Asia*, by the Mountains on the East, and by the *Caspian* Sea on the South-East; the former separates it from Great *Tartary*, and the latter from *Persia*. Its West and Southern Bounds are *Roldri Denski*, and *Pole*, and on the North the Kingdom of *Bulgar*. The Climate here is over Hot, and the Summer very long, for *Olearius* observes that in *Sept.* and *Octob.* the Heat exceeded what is in *Germany* in the middle of Summer. The Winter as he tells us is but of two Months durance, but is so intensely Cold that the *Wolga* is Frozen over and bears Sledges. The Land is fruitful enough; but the *Tartars* that Inhabit it are a People that never Cultivate; so that the Country lies in a manner Desert, and the Inhabitants only Live in Tents, which they Pitch where their Convenience or Fancy invite them. The *Russians* have several Towns on the Banks of the River *Wolga*, which runs through this Kingdom, and falls into the *Caspian* Sea at the Chief City of it. Those of the chiefest Note are these that follow.

*Saratof*, Seated in the Latitude of 52 Degrees, 12 Minutes: It is a Fort with a Garrison constantly in it, to defend Travellers from the Robberies and Inroads of the *Tartars*. Here begins the Country of the *Caimuc Tartars*, a very Deform'd, Barbarous, and Rapacious People. *Tzaritzza*, *Czaritzza*, q. d. *Casaria* and in some Maps erroneously written *Larissa*, which lies on the West side the River *Wolga*, is a strong Town having a good Wall with 6 Bulwarks, and a good Garrison always maintained in it. It is seated, in the Latitude of 49 Degrees, 42 Minutes.

A little below this City is the Trench that was attempted to be cut to make a Communication of the *Wolga* with the *Don* or *Tanaïs*.

Below this is seen the Ruins of *Czarefgorod*, which was Demolish'd by *Tamerlain*. And some Leagues lower, in the Latitude of 48. Degrees, 40 Minutes, on the West side the River stands *Tzernegar*, call'd otherwise, *Michael Novogorod*, a small City, but well Fortified, and the Station of a good Garrison; it is Environ'd with Palisadoes, and hath Watch-Houses at a miles distance on every side, whence they can see any Enemy. The reason of building this place, was to defend the Passage of the River against the *Cossacks* who used to Rob here, and in particular defeated a *Russian* Convoy with great Wealth, letting the Soldiers pass first, who by reason of the rapidity of the Stream could not return to the assistance of the Merchants though they saw 'em Rob'd. Upon the Banks of the River all along grows abundance of Liquorice, but the Country lies all Waste and Unill'd. Three days passage more down the River lies the famous City

*Astrachan* in the Latitude of 46 Deg. 22 Min. [as for the mistake in the Printed Travels of *Olearius*, which Places it in 26. 22. it must be an Error of the Press, for every body agrees in 46 or 47 Deg.] and about 20 Leagues (or 12 or 13 as *Father Avril*) from the *Caspian* Sea. It stands in an Island made by two Branches of the *Wolga*, which by many Mouths falls into the *Caspian* Sea. It was heretofore the Royal Seat of the *Nigayan-Tartars*, till taken by Assault by the Czar *Ivan Basilowitcz*, after his Conquest of *Casan*, in the Year 1554. and the *Tartars* being driven out, he Re-peopled it with *Muscovites*, and Encompass'd it with a Stone Wall and other Fortifications. It was at that time a small City, but becoming a place of Trade, the Czar *Michael Federowitcz* added a large part, call'd, the *Streliatza-gorod*, or *Soldiers Town*, to which many private and publick Buildings have been added, which has encreas'd it to a large City: The Walls are strong, and guarded with 500 Pieces of Brass Cannon, the Gates carefully shut up every Night, and no *Tartar* ever suffer'd to live in the City, neither are they permitted to build Towns, or to Fortify places. The convenient situation of this City makes it resorted to by *Persian*, *Armenian*, and other Merchants, and creates so great a Traffick that the Czar Receives for the Customs, 250000 Crowns *per Annum*, altho' the Duties be very low; Besides the convenience of vending all the Native Commodities of *Russia*, and receiving in Exchange the Silks and other valuable Commodities of *Persia* and *India*.

It is seated in a Temperate AIR, and in a Fruitful SOIL, producing all sorts of *European* Fruits, particularly Vines so plentiful as to make a great quantity of Wine: They have Beef, Mutton, Wild-Swine which make very good Pork, Fowl and Fish, in great Plenty. On one side the Town in a dry and barren Heath, they find abundance of Salt, which is dug out of the Hollows of Rocks, and is vended abroad to great profit. Hereabouts is found a strange sort of Fruit, call'd *Baronez*, or the *Lamb*, in form resembling that Creature, and cover'd with a Down so thick and strong, that the Skins are used in Garments; it grows upon a Stalk two Foot high, fasten'd at its Navel, the Head always inclining to the Grass; and such is its Vegetative Heat, that it consumes all the Grass near it; which makes the People confidently aver, that it eats Grass. In the Year 1669, this City was taken and Plunder'd by the *Cossacks*, under the Leading of *Steno-Radzin*, who upon a disgust on account of his Brother, being punished at *Moscow*, rais'd a Rebellion, and Ravag'd all this Country, and even pass'd over to *Persia*, where he Plunder'd *Tercki* and other Cities on the *Caspian* Sea. But the Year after the Czar sent an Army against him, which Retook the City, and Totally Routed him and his Party.

Below this City towards the *Caspian* Sea, in the River *Wolga*, they take abundance of the Fish call'd *Biloege*, the Rows whereof makes that which we call *Cavear*, whereof they make great Profit. The *NAGAYAN TARTARS* have their Seat upon the Frontiers of this Country; they sometime possess'd the Land between the *Don* and the *Wolga*; but the Czar's Power has driven 'em over this last River to the Eastward, about the Banks of the River *Taick* and the *Caspian* Sea. They are of the common *Tartar* kind in Form and Behaviour, and *Mahometans* in Religion.



# HUNGARY, Hungaria.



**H**UNGARY is a part of the Ancient PANNONIA, which comprehended all that is now call'd Carniola, Croatia, Carinthia, Styria, a great part of Austria, almost the half of Hungary, Slavonia, Bosnia, and a part of Servia. It was divided into Pannonia Superior, or Conularis, and Inferior, or Secunda Conularis. The former lay towards the West, and comprehended Carniola, Croatia, Windorum Marchia, Carinthia, Styria, and the greater part of Austria. The latter lay towards the East, comprehending Bosnia, Slavonia, and as much of Hungary as

lies between the Rivers Danube, Drave, and the Raab. So that not above a third part of that which is now called Hungary, lay within the Ancient Pannonia, the rest lying in the Countries of Fazyges Metanasta, and the Daci. Whether the Pannonii, who first Inhabited Pannonia, gave Name to the Country, or it to them, is more than can be Learned, (as Reiskius observes) from the Grecian or Roman History. Julius Caesar first Invaded it, C. Octavius Cas. Augustus Subdued it, and Tiberius reduced it into a Province. From that time until the declining State of the



the Roman Empire, it was under the Jurisdiction of Rome; but afterwards the Goths invaded it, who were expell'd by the Huns, as these were by the Lombards; whom the Huns drove out again. At last about the Year 900, in the time of the Emperor, *A-rojbus*, there came a Warlike People out of *Scribia*, who overcame the Huns, and mixing with the Remnants of those that were left, made themselves Masters of all that Country, that is now called Hungary; which is bounded (according to *Cluverius*) with the Mountains *Crapack* on the North, which divide it from *Poland* and *Russia*; on the East with *Transilvania*, and *Valachia*; on the South with the *Drave*; and on the West with *Stiria*, *Austria*, and *Meravia*. It lies between 45 and 49 Degrees Latitude, and 38 and 44 Longitude.

The Air of the Country is abundantly Temperate, but not very Healthful in many Places, where Mists and Fogs are too frequent; but the Soil is good, and yields such plenty of all things, for the Life and Delight of Man, that it hardly yields to any Country in Europe; For it brings forth all sorts of Corn, especially Wheat, in great Abundance, and produces plenty of Generous Wine. It so abounds in Cattle that one Year with another the Number of Oxen and Cows that go from thence to *Vienna*, have been computed to be about Four-score Thousand; which are not all consumed there, but dispersed over a great part of Germany. And there is so great Plenty of Venison and Wild-Fowl, that (Hunting and Fowling being free to every Body) Hares, Pheasants, Partridges, and other such like, which seem the property of the Great and Rich among us, are the common Food of the meanest Boars there. This Country is also mighty Rich in Mines of Gold, Silver, and other Metals of less value, which we shall give a particular Account of when we come to describe the Towns and Places near to which they are, and especially that at *Cremnitz*, in which they have Worked Nine Hundred and Fifty Years. There are also many Excellent Hot Baths in this Country; particularly those at *Buda*, which are esteemed the Noblest in Europe, not only in respect of the Large and Hot Springs; but the Magnificence of their Buildings.

There is no County in Europe better River'd than Hungary; on the East-side it is washed with that Noble and Navigable River *Tibiscus*, or the *Tessé*, which runs into the *Danube* between *Peter-Waradin*, and *Belgrade*. On the West-side runs the River *Arabo*, or *Raab*, which rises in *Styria*, and falls into the *Danube* near *Zavinum* or *Raab*. On the South runs the *Drave*; which rising in the Territory of *Salzburgland*, falls into the *Danube* near *Erded*, or *Old Teutoburgium* and *Esseck*, about Three Hundred Miles from its Spring. On the same side is also the River *Save*, which arising in *Carinthia*, enters the *Danube* at *Belgrade*. Upon the North-side of Hungary are the Rivers *Gran* and *Waag*, which rise from the *Carpathian* Mountains. But above all, the great *Danubius* or *Therau* is most considerable. It runs quite through Hungary, and begins to be Navigable at the City of *Ulme* in *Swabenland* or *Suetia*; and passing by *Ingolstadt*, *Ratisbon*, *Strasbourg*, *Passau*, *Lintz*, and *Vienna* to *Presburg*, and from thence through Hungary, makes a Course of above Three Hundred Miles before it passes by *Belgrade*; and having washed the Shoars of *Servia*, *Bulgaria*, *Valachia*, and *Moldavia*, at last empties

at many Mouths, into the *Euxine*, or *Black-Sea*, after having drank in above Sixty considerable Rivers, and perform'd a Course of above Fifteen Hundred Miles.

As this Country excels in Rivers, so has it also many considerable and Long Bridges, as that at *Vienna*, which takes above two Thousand Trees to Plank it; The Long Bridge of Boats over the *Danube* between *Strigonium* and *Barchan*. That between *Buda*, and *Pest*, is above half a Mile long. There is also a Bridge at *Calocza*, very handsome and well contriv'd. But the most considerable of all is that at *Esseck*, built partly over the *Drave*, partly over the *Fenns*, which are often overflow'd. It is five Miles long, and has Towers built upon it at the distance of every Quarter of a Mile, and is handsomely Rail'd on each side, and Supported by great Trees, Erected under it, Nine or Ten in a Rank to each Arch.

There are also in this Country Two considerable Lakes, viz. the Lake *Balaton*, or *Platsee*, which lies between *Vesprinum* and the *Drave*, and has some Forts upon it: And the *Newfidel-See*, so call'd from the Town *Newfidel*. The former of which is said to be above Forty, the other about Twenty Eight Miles long. There are also in this Country several Long and Spacious Plains: Insomuch that *Dr. Brown*, in his Description of it, says, he Travell'd from *Vienna* to *Belgrade*, about Four Hundred Miles, upon continued and uninterrupted Plains.

Many Roman Emperors have Honour'd this Country, with their Presence, Birth, Death and Achievements, For (to omit *Trajan*, *Caracalla*, *Galienus*, *Constantius*, and many more) the Emperors *Aurelianus*, *Probus*, *Gratianus*, *Maximianus* were Born at *Sirmium*. *Claudius Gothicus* Died in or near it. *Zovian* and *Valentinian* were Born in *Damonia*, *Ingenius* and *Vetranio* were saluted Emperors there. And at *Sirmium* was held a General Council. And the Roman Armies being much in this Country, is the reason why such vast Quantities of Old Medals have been found in it.

As to the Genius of the Hungarians, however Barbarous their Ancient Predecessors might be, the Modern Hungarians are a Warlike and Politick People; but are by the Generality of Writers charged with Laziness, and Gluttony, which seems to be the Natural Effect of their Excellent and Fruitful Soil; and they are generally of a Turbulent and Rebellious Disposition. This Country having been the Seat of the War so long, and the Turkish Power so much prevailing in those Parts, Learning has not been allow'd to flourish, and so we are not to expect any University beyond *Vienna*. Those who have a mind to be Scholars, and have Money to bestow upon their Education, do commonly Study at *Vienna*, *Prague*, or *Breslaw*.

The Language of the Hungarians is proper to themselves, and different from all other: A Specimen of which we shall set down for the Curious Reader's Speculation, out of the Lord's Prayer. *My Attyanck Ky vazy az meniegbe megh Szentel Tesseck az te newed*, &c. In some parts of Hungary they speak Slavonian. The great difference between the Languages of these Countries, obliges them to learn other Languages, especially the Latin, which the Gentry and Soldiers generally speak. It is very useful for a Traveller till he come to *Belgrade*, but below it of no use to him at all.

As to the Government of Hungary, Historians are divided about it; for some maintain, particularly *Coringius*,



*Conringius*, that even after the Establishment of Christianity, *Hungary* was no Kingdom, nor Govern'd by any set kind of Laws, before the 12th. Century: but the *Hungary* Writers say, That in the Time of Paganism, their Country was Ruled by Dukes, who Exercised Monarchical Power, tho' they never assum'd the Title of Kings; and that the last of these Dukes was one *Geysca*, or *Geysa*, who in his old Days resign'd the Government, and recommended his Son *Stephen* to the Nobility, who out of the respect they bare to the Old Man, chose his Son their King, and Crown'd him during his Father's Life; from whom down to this present Time we have a Succession of 45 Kings, as the Reader may see in the following Catalogue. The Nature of the *Hungarian* Monarchy has been long in Dispute, some maintaining that it was Hereditary, others, that it was Elective; but the Civilians of that Nation are now generally agreed, That the present Emperor has a just Title to that Kingdom, and that *Jure Hereditario*. It has been also hotly disputed, Whether *Hungary* was an Independent and Absolute Kingdom, or a Tributary Province, under the Emperor of Germany's Protection; but *Lazius* proves by many Examples, That the Kings of *Hungary* have always done Homage to the Emperors, before their Accession to the Crown of that Nation.

The *Hungarian* Horsemen, whom they call *Hussars*, are much better Soldiers than the Foot, whom they call *Heyducks*; which may be ascrib'd in a great Measure to the vast Number of Excellent Horses, which are bred in this Country. In former Ages, the *Hungarians* never went to the Field without their long Shields; but in the Year 1572. their General, *George* Count of *Serin*, persuaded them to lay them aside, by reason they were too great a Burthen to them. Their Naval Force which the Emperor uses for defending this Country, consists in his Ships and Gallies upon the *Danube*. At the Siege of *Belgrade*, as Doctor *Brown* relates, from the *Turkish History*, the *Hungarians* sent down the Stream from *Buda* 200 Ships and Gallies, as *Mahomet* the Great brought the same number up the Stream, as well appointed: And certainly there never was such Numbers of Ships of Force, nor such Signal Engagements at such a distance from the Sea, as there have been upon the *Danube*.

The Revenues of this Crown arise from the Mines of Silver and other Metals, the Impost upon Cattel, and other Customs and Taxes less considerable; which in all, is computed to amount to Two Hundred Twenty and Four Thousands Ducats Yearly: And an *Hungarian* Ducat being valued at 10 Shillings *English*, the Emperor's Revenue, as King of *Hungary*, is an Hundred and Twelve Thousand Pound Sterling.

The Establish'd RELIGION of *Hungary*, since the Emperor's Conquest of it, is the *Roman Catholic*: tho' the number of Protestants be very great; for the *Lutheran* Reform'd Religion prevail'd here, but for many Years it was Persecuted, and Civil Wars ensued thereupon, the People chusing rather to be under the *Turk*, with whom they might enjoy Liberty of Conscience, than submit to the Emperor who was Zealous in Establishing Popery. But now, as we have said, that is the Predominant Religion, and for the Government of the Church there are Two Archbishops at *Gran* and *Colocza*, and Sixteen Suffragan Bishops,

whereof Five are Subordinate to the Archbishop of *Gran*, Eight to the Archbishop of *Colocza*, and the other Three are under the Archbishop of *Spalato* in *Dalmatia*.

### A Chronological Table of the Succession of the Kings of *Hungary* since the Year of our Lord, 1000.

1. Stephen I. in 1000. or 1020. died in the year,	1038
2. Peter the German Succeeded, but Expell'd.	1038
3. Ovon or Aban,	1042
4. Peter the German, Restor'd,	1044
5. Andrew I.	1046
6. Bela I.	1061
7. Solomon,	1063
8. Geiza or Geyza I.	1074
9. Ladislaus I.	1077
10. Coloman or Colman.	1095
11. Stephen II.	1114
12. Bela II.	1132
13. Geiza II	1141
14. Stephen III.	1161
15. Ladislaus, an Usurper,	1172
16. Stephen IV.	1172
17. Bela III.	1173
18. Emerycus,	1195
19. Ladislaus II.	1204
20. Andrew II. of Jerusalem,	1205
21. Bela IV.	1235
22. Stephen V.	1260
23. Ladislaus III.	1272
24. Andrew III. the Venetian, Charles I. Martel.	1290
25. Venceslaus,	1301
26. Otho	1305
27. Charles II: Robere, or Charobert,	1310
28. Lewis I.	1342
29. Mary,	1382
30. Charles III. the Little,	1383
31. Sigismund,	1387
32. Albert of Austria,	1438
33. Ladislaus IV.	1440
34. Joan. Corvinus Huniades	1445
35. Ladislaus V.	1452
36. Matthias Corvinus,	1458
37. Ladislaus VI.	1460
38. Lewis II. the Younger,	1486
39. John of Zapol,	1526
40. John Stephen, or Sigismund,	1540
41. Ferdinand I.	1527
42. Maximilian I.	1564
43. Rodolph,	1576
44. Matthias,	1612
45. Ferdinand II.	1629
46. Ferdinand III.	1637
47. Ferdinand-Francis, Elected in	1657
48. Leopoldus-Ignatius,	1657
49. Joseph now Reigning.	1687

*HUNGARY*, by the Inhabitants call'd *MAGIAR*, and by the *Sclavonians* *Wagierski*; was sometime a Kingdom of vast Extent; for in the middle Ages these Monarchs subdued all the neighbouring Provinces, Eastward as far as the *Black-Sea*, and Southward to the *Adriatick-Sea*, so that *Sclavonia*, *Croatia*, *Bosnia*, and *Dalmatia*, as well



as *Transilvania*, *Servia*, *Wallachia*, *Moldavia* and *Bessarabia*, were under their Subjection till the *Turks* took Possession of 'em But now as we have shewn, the *Drave* is the Southern, and the Mountains on the Limits of *Transilvania*, the Eastern Boundaries

It was divided into many Counties, the Number whereof, is not agreed on by Authors, some reckon 74. others 73. and some again Contract the Number to 60, 54. or 50. But the large and long Possession of the *Turks*, might well confound those Divisions: And we shall consider it as divided by the *Danube* into two parts. The Upper or Larger, on the North and East side of the River, and the Lower on the South-side of it. These two Parts are subdivided into Governments; the Upper into Four, viz. of 1. *Presburg*. 2. *Bergstet*, or the *Berg Towns*. 3. *Newhausel*. And 4. *Caschau*. And the Lower into Three, viz. of 1. *Buda*. 2. *Raab*. And 3. *Canisia*.

### The Principal Cities and remarkable Towns are,

#### In the Upper Hungary.

<i>Presburg</i> .	7	<i>Eisenbach</i> .
<i>Newhausel</i> .	7	<i>Esperies</i> .
<i>Schinta</i> .	7	<i>Caschau</i> .
<i>Tyrnaw</i> .	7	<i>Ungwar</i> .
<i>Leopoldstadt</i> .	7	<i>Tockay</i> .
<i>Neytra</i> .	7	<i>Novigred</i> .
<i>Transschin</i> .	7	<i>Agria</i> .
<i>Chremnitz</i> .	7	<i>Filleck</i> .
<i>Schemnitz</i> .	7	<i>Pest</i> .
<i>Newsol</i> .	7	<i>Celotza</i> .
<i>Pugganz</i> .	7	<i>Zolneck</i> .
<i>Keningsburg</i> .	7	<i>Segedin</i> .
<i>Tillen</i> .	7	<i>Gyula</i> .
<i>Hern-Grundt</i> .	7	<i>Waradin</i> .
<i>Glasbitten</i> .	7	<i>Zatmar</i> .
<i>Liberen</i> .	7	<i>Mongatz</i> .
<i>Leutsche</i> .	7	

#### In the Lower Hungary.

<i>Buda</i> .	7	<i>Weisturn</i> .
<i>Grann</i> .	7	<i>Alba-Regalis</i> .
<i>Raab</i> .	7	<i>Canisia</i> .
<i>Cemarra</i> .	7	<i>Sigeth</i> .
<i>Altemberg</i> .	7	<i>Five-Churches</i> .
<i>Odemburg</i> .	7	<i>Mobacz</i> .
<i>Kermant</i> .	7	

**PRESBURG**, otherwise call'd **POSON** by the Inhabitants, is pleasantly seated on the North side of the *Danube*, 32 miles East from *Vienna*, 28 from *Raab* to the North-west, 32 from *Newhausel* to the West, and not above 5 miles from the Frontiers of *Austria*. It is a pleasant well built City, the Capital of the Upper Hungary, and of a particular County: and after the loss of *Strigonia* or *Gran*, made the Place of Convention of the States of the Realm: It is well Fortified, and has a Castle built of Stone on the top of a Hill, which has four Towers, in the strongest whereof is kept the Royal Crown of Hungary, so much talk'd of, and by the *Hungarians* wonderfully esteem'd, as being believ'd to be presented by an Angel from Heaven to *St. Stephen* their first

*Christian King*. Here are many Churches, among them a Fair one Built for the *Lutherans*, in the year 1638. and a Dome or Cathedral whereof, the *Jesuits* have the Use. The Archbishop hath a Palace here in the Suburbs, well adorn'd with Gardens, Walks, Fountains, &c.

*Newhausel*, call'd *Vimar* by the *Hungarians*, stands on the River *Neutra*, or *Nitrach*, 32 miles East from *Presburg*, 64 North-west from *Buda*, and 10 Miles from the *Danube*; a place of small extent, but the Capital of a large County, and a Fortrefs of great Importance, being the Bulwark against the *Turks* on this side. It is built in a Moorish Plain, but hard at bottom, and every where passable; its Fortifications are in form of a Star, with 6 points, each Defended by a high rais'd Bastion, encompass'd with a large wet Ditch; to which is added by the present Emperor, a Fort nam'd *Leopoldstadt*. There are but two Gates to the Town, which are defended by a Half Moon on each. In the Year 1663, it was taken by the *Turks*, after a great Loss, and a long Siege, But in the late War Prince Charles of *Lorraine*, Set down before this Town, Ann. 1685. and having defeated the *Seraskier*, who was marching to its Relief, he took it by Assault, after a Siege of 40 days, and found in it 100 Peices of Brass Cannon and a Booty of Immense Value.

*Schinta*, a large Fort of 4 Bastions, stands on the River *Vagus*, 20 miles North from *Newhausel*.

*Neytra* stands 10 miles East from *Schinta*, on a small River of the same Name, which 25 Miles below falls into the *Danube*.

*Leopoldstadt*, a noble, regular Fortification, of 6 Bastions, stands on the River *Vagus*, 20 miles from *Schinta*, and 40 from *Newhausel* to the North.

*Tyrnaw*, *Tryn* or *Dyrn*, otherwise call'd *Szombat* is a small Town on a River of the same Name, 20 miles South-west from *Leopoldstadt*, and 30 North-east, from *Presburg*: Chiefly noted for the Residence of the Archbishop and Chapter of *Gran*, whilst that City was in possession of the *Turks*.

*Transschin* the Capital of a County, is a very fair Town seated on the Top of a Rock, 20 miles from *Tyrnaw*, and 10 from *Leopoldstadt*, to the North, and not very far from the Confines of *Silesia*. It is defended by a very strong Castle, which renders it almost Impregnable, and stands so high that it is seen at a great distance. About a mile from this Town are two Hot Baths, much frequented by Strangers. These Waters are so common hereabouts, that the People dig Pits wherein they find hot Water, and that so near the Rivers, that they can reach their Arms into the Cold Water whilst the rest of their Body is Sweating in the Fire.

*Chremnitz* is reckon'd the first among the Berg or Mine-Towns, which Honour is paid to its Antiquity rather than Grandeur, being of small extent, but surrounded with Suburbs, and defended by a strong Castle, suppos'd to stand on the highest Ground in Hungary, 50 miles distant from *Newhausel* to the North-east, 40 miles from *Leopoldstadt* to the East, and 50 miles North from the *Danube*. It is Famous on account of its Gold-Mine, which has been wrought above 900 Years; the Entrance into the Mine is thro' one Cuniculus or Horizontal Passage, call'd the *Erbstal*, which is 170 Fathoms



Fathoms deep, and the Vein runs 9 or 10 miles in length, and some of the Passages, which have formerly been cut thro' Rocks, by being disused are grown up again and hardly passable, tho' undoubtedly at first they were wide enough. So Rich is this Mine that they sometimes find lumps of pure Gold, Specimens whereof are seen in the Emperors Repository at *Vienna*. And even the common Earth on the neighbouring Hills being washed affords Gold.

Not far from the Gold Mine there is another of Vitriol 80 Fathoms deep, the Earth whereof purified and reduc'd to a Calx is used in making *Aqua Fortis*. In the Town is established a Mint wherein Gold Ducats and other Pieces are Coined.

*Schemnitz*, the fairest of all the Seven Berg or Mine-Towns, is built on a Rocky Hill which renders the Street's uneven, 20 miles distant from *Cremnitz* to the South, and 30 from the *Danube* to the North. The Town is adorn'd with Three beautiful Churches, and defended by as many Castles. One whereof is exceeding high, and was used as a Watch Tower, to discover the Approach: The Air of this Place is not Healthy, but the neighbouring Baths are very restorative. And the Country being Rocky, Provisions are difficultly brought hither, so that if it were not for the Rich Silver-Mines, this Town would have few Inhabitants. Of these Mines there are several, but the Two call'd the *Trinity*, and the *Windschat*, are the chief, the former is 70 Fathom deep, and mostly supported by Props, being an Earthy Soil; the latter is much deeper, and in some Places wonderfully Hot. The Ore is Rich, and besides most of it holds some Gold, which they separate by melting the Silver, then grinding it, and afterwards dissolving it in *Aqua-Fortis*, made out of the Vitriol of *Chremnitz*, wherein the Gold subsides, and the *Aqua-Fortis* is drawn from the Silver by Distillation, and made to serve again. Not far from *Schemnitz* is a Rock where is found a red Substance which grows to the Ore called *Cinnaber* of Silver, and which is used for Paint, making as fine a Vermilion as the *Cinnaber* its self. There are also found in these Mines Crystals, Amethysts, and Vitriol naturally Crystalliz'd.

*Newsol* or *Beftricia*, 10 miles North from *Cremnitz*, is the Third in the Number of the Berg-Towns, and stands on the River *Gran* at the Foot of a Hill, on which stands the Castle and the great Church cover'd with Copper. It is a good Market Town, to which is brought plenty of Provisions; but is chiefly remarkable for the Copper-Mines near it, the most considerable in *Hungary*; wherein the Ore is so firmly Incorporated with its Stone-Bed, that the separation cannot be made without great Pains and Difficulty, the Ore being often melted 14 times before it can be made fit for use. The Inhabitants are *Lutherans*, and Speak the *German*, *Hungarian* and *Wendish* Tongues. At *Mismills*, a Village near *Newsol*, are many Furnaces for melting the Mettal, and Silver is sometimes extracted out of the Copper.

*Puggantz* was heretofore a fair Town, and still retains a fourth Place in the Rank of the Berg-Towns, but hath been so often burnt and laid waste by the frequent Incurfions of the *Turks*, that the Miners were forced to give over their Work till peaceable Times should come.

*Kenigsberg*, the Fifth of the Berg-Towns, stands

near the River *Gran*, 10 miles West from *Schemnitz*; it doth not much exceed *Puggantz* in Note and Dignity at this Day, the Miners having for the most part retired from thence to *Chremnitz* and *Schemnitz*, where they meet with much better Employment. However this Town is noted for a sort of four Mineral Water that hath wrought many notable Cures.

*Tillen* another Berg-Town of great Antiquity, but of late Years fallen to decay and deserted, because of the failure of the Veins.

*Libeten*, 15 miles North-East from *Newsol*, the last of the seven Berg-Towns, was likewise formerly more noted than at present, being left for the same Reason. Altho' still some small Quantities of Copper, with a little Silver, are dug out of the Mines.

Besides these there are other Towns remarkable for Mines, tho' they are not registred among the former, among which the most remarkable is

*Hein Grundt*, about 7 miles distant from *Newsol*, where lies a Copper Mine in the Rocks, the Ore whereof is extreme Rich, yielding ordinarily 20 or 30, nay sometimes 40, 50, and even to 60 Pounds of Metal in the Hundred Pound of Ore; which is either of a yellow or black Colour, the former yielding the more Metal, but the latter containing some Silver. There are also several Sorts of Vitriol found in this Mine, *viz.* White, Green, Blew, and clear transparent Red, besides a green Earth or waterish Sedement call'd *Berg-grun*, used in Painting. Moreover here are two Springs of Vitriolate Water that in 14 Days turn Iron into Copper; these Fountains are esteemed, because thereby the worst old Iron is made pure Copper, more Ductile and Malleable than other.

*Glaszkitten*, 7 Miles from *Schemnitz*, was sometime noted for a rich Gold Mine, which has been lost ever since *Betsem Gabor*, Prince of *Transylvania*, over-run this Country, and forced the Inhabitants away. The Place is however much resorted to on account of the Hot-Baths, whereof there are Five; the Waters are very clear, the Sedement Red and Green, and the Wooden Seats under Water incrustated with a Stony Substance. And Silver is gilded by lying in the Water. Among these, the Hot Springs of that call'd the Sweating Bath drain thro' a Hill, and fall into a Bagno built on purpose to receive 'em. At one end whereof is erected a noble Stove, heated by the Streams of those Waters, and so contrived, that by choosing a higher or lower Seat, ones Sweating may be regulated, and any Degree of Heat obtain'd at Pleasure.

*Eisenbach* lies about 4 miles from *Glaszkitten*, and 5 or 6 from *Schemnitz*, and is Famous for its Hot-Baths, Two of which are very convenient and much frequented; but the Third, which is made of the waste Water of the former, is not much used, being almost continually full of Snakes, who delight in this Warmth. The Water is of a Petrifying Nature, the Sedement, which is of a red Colour, turns to Stone, and the Planks which surround the Bath are all Petrified. Silver is chang'd Yellow by lying in it.

*Esperies* or *Eperics*, is a strong Town seated on the River *Tarkzel*, near the Frontiers of *Poland*, 150 miles East from *Fresburg*, and 60 miles North from the River *Teyffe*. It is the Capital of the County of *Sero*, and Famous for its Fairs and Salt-Mines. And about half an Hour from the Town



there is a famous Salt-Mine, the Veins whereof are so large, that there are dug out Pieces of 10000 Pound Weight of pure Salt, which is of a grayish Colour, but being ground to Powder becomes exceeding White; some Pieces are Blew, some Yellow, &c. and so hard that they Carve it into divers Figures. The Water of this Mine is so impregnated with Salt, that being Boyl'd up it affords a blackish Salt which they give to their Cattle. Near this place spring two deadly Fountains, the Waters whereof kill the Birds and Beasts that taste them; wherefore they are always kept cover'd and wall'd round to prevent any coming to them.

*Leutsebe*, the Capital of the County of *Zips*, stands near the Frontiers of *Poland*, 20 Miles West from *Eperies*, on the top of a high Hill, whence is a fine Prospect of the Neighbouring Country. It is a handsome large Town, having a considerable Annual Fair, and inhabited chiefly by Germans of the *Lutheran* Religion, who however talk the *Hungarian* Tongue, and hold a Traffick with all the Neighbouring Places: They are Remarkable for their Courteous Behaviour and Sincerity in Dealing.

*Caschau*, seated on the small River *Tareza*, 20 Miles South from *Eperies*, and 40 North from the *Teyffe*, and 100 North-East from *Newbausel*. It is one of the Royal Free Towns govern'd by the Emperor's immediate Deputy, which makes a great resort of Persons of Quality, and hath render'd the Town one of the best built in *Hungary*. It is very well Fortified, and hath an Arsenal the most considerable in the Kingdom. The great Church is supply'd by a German and *Hungarian* Minister by Turns, both which Languages are ordinarily spoken here. The Air is as Pestilential and Unhealthy as any in *Hungary*, which renders Strangers subject to Sicknes. Moreover their Wine is bad, being ting'd with Chalk or Lime, and breeds Lameness in the Joyns; and yet the same Wine being carry'd abroad is very good; and the chief Trade of the Town consists in the Vent of it into *Poland* and elsewhere. This Place being formerly possess'd by the *Turks*, was regain'd in the Year 1685.

*Agria*, call'd *Eger* by the Germans, and *Erlaw* by the Inhabitants, is seated in the middle of all *Hungary* on the small River *Agria*, which about 15 Miles below falls into the *Teyffe*, 60 Miles from *Buda* to the North-East, and 120 from *Presburg* to the East. It is a considerable City, being the See of a Bishop, and a regular Fortification of great Strength. The Castle stands on the other side the River on a Hill, and has the Reputation of being one of the strongest Holds in the Kingdom. When *Solyman II.* Besieg'd this City in the Year 1552. with 70000 Men, tho' it was not then guarded by such Fortifications, it was defended with wonderful Courage and Resolution; so that after the *Turks* had Batter'd it 40 Days with 30 pieces of Cannon, and made many Assaults in which they lost 8000 Men, they were fain to draw off and quit the Siege. But in the Year 1596. *Mahomet III.* took it, and put the Garrison to the Sword. Since when the *Turks* held it till the late War, when it was regain'd by the Imperial Forces after they had Block'd it up for three Years, in which time 10000 *Turks* perish'd in it, either thro' Hunger or Diseases, 3000 Inhabitants march'd out with the Garrison, 300 staid and demanded Baptism, and many Christian Slaves were set at Liberty. The *Turks* left in the place 150 pieces of Artillery, 7 Mortars, and great store of Provisions

and Ammunition. And by this Conquest all the adjacent Country was reduc'd to the Imperial Obdience.

*Filleck* is a very considerable Fortress by reason of its advantageous Situation, on the top of a Craggy Hill; so inaccessible that there is only one way up to it, and that so very narrow, that only one Person can pass at a time. It stands on the Road from *Presburg* to *Transilvania*, 20 Miles West from *Agria*, and 40 North from *Buda*. It was Fortified with a Castle and strong Walls, but taken by the *Turks* however in 1560. and recover'd by the Imperialists in 1593. and again taken by the *Bassa* of *Waradin* in 1682. But some Differences arising between him and Count *Teckley's* Party, he caus'd it to be Dismantled and Deserted. Near this Town is a Curiosity view'd by Travellers, being a Hole or Cavern in a Rock, wherein the Water dropping from the Arch at top, petrifies at the bottom, and becomes a white Stone us'd by Painters.

*Novigrod*, a small but very strong Town, and the Capital of a County, is seated 30 Miles South-West from *Filleck*, 15 Miles from the *Danube*, and 50 South-East from *Newbausel*. It is defended by a strong Castle, founded on a high Rock, and encompass'd with a Moat cut in the Rock 34 Foot deep. It was taken by the Germans from the *Turks* in the Year 1594. but lost again in 1663. and now recover'd and subject to the Emperor.

*Pest* or *Pesth*, a large Town seated on the *Danube* over against *Buda*, to which you pass by a fine Bridge of Boats half a Mile long. It is built of a Quadrangular Form, and by reason of its fair Walls and Towers of the *Turkish* Mosques, affords a delightful Prospect at a distance. This place hath been often Taken and Retaken by the *Turks* and *Christians*, but was assur'd to the Emperor by the Conquest of *Buda* in 1686.

*Colocza*, *Colocia*, *Coloza*, & ad Statuas Colossas, is an Ancient City, seated on the *Danube* 50 Miles South-East from *Pest*: The Capital of the County of *Bath*, and the See of an Archbishop, but for some Ages overrun with *Mahometanism*, and recover'd by the Imperialists in the Year 1686.

*Bath-Monster*, which gives Name to the County, stands near the *Danube*, 25 Miles South-East from *Colocza*. *Bodrock*, which gives Name to another County, stands also on the *Danube*, 25 Miles below *Bath*.

*Segedin*, or *Seged*, the principal Town of the County of *Bodrock*, is seated on the River *Teyffe*, or *Tibiscus*, over against the Mouth of the *Marisch*, 55 Miles from *Colocza* to the South-East, and 60 from *Belgrade* to the North. It was taken by the *Turks* in 1552. and recover'd by the Imperialists after the taking of *Buda* in 1686. This is the furthest Town on the *Tibisc* subject to the Emperor.

*Gyula*, call'd *Gyua* by the *Hungarians*, is a strong Town seated on a Lake 30 Miles North-East from *Segedin*, and as many South from *Great Waradin*: It was taken by the *Turks* in 1566. but recover'd with the rest of *Hungary* in the late War.

*Lipps*, stands on the South-side of the *Marisch*, 35 Miles South-East from *Gyula*. Being situate in the County of *Temeswar*, which was granted to the *Turks* by the Treaty of *Carlowitz*; it was by the same Article agreed to be Dismantled.

*Caransebes* stands in the same Territory upon the River *Temes*, 50 Miles East from *Temeswar*, also Dismantled by the same Treaty.



The Iron Gate mention'd in the History of the late War, stands on the Frontier of *Transilvania* and *Wallachia*, 30 miles East from *Caransebes*.

*Temeswar* being Surrender'd to the *Turks*, we shall speak of that in our Account of their Countries.

*Waradin* commonly call'd *Great Waradin*, is Seated on the River *Kereç*, in the Confines of *Transilvania*, to which it sometime belonged, 60 miles from *Segedin* to the North-East, and 50 miles from *Zolnock* to the East. It is the See of a Bishop, and a Place of great Strength, being Fortified with a strong Castle on the East-side, and firm Ramparts, besides five Royal Bastions and a Regular Ditch, supply'd by Water from the Rivers: And within is another Enclosure, consisting of some Bastions, and a high Wall, to serve as it were for a Citadel. In the Year 1290. King *Ladislaus III.* built the Cathedral Church: And in 1642, the City was Taken by the *Crim Tartars*, but quitted soon after: In 1662, it submitted to the *Turks*, but was recover'd by the *Imperialists*, after a Memorable Siege and Blockade in 1692.

*Zolnock*, the Capital of a County, to which it gives Name, stands at the Confluence of the River *Zagmja* with the *Teyffe*, 60 miles above *Segedin* to the North, and in the Mid-way between *Great Waradin* to the West, and *Buda* to the East, about 50 miles from both. The Two Rivers almost surround it, and make it a convenient Place for a Garrison, being also large enough to receive 4000 Men, and very well Fortified. Nevertheless this strong Hold was shamefully quitted by a Garrison of 850 Men, in the Year 1552, when the *Turks* had Besieg'd it but Three Days, notwithstanding the Governor's Courage and Resolution to hold out to extremity; who being taken in the Castle, was civilly Treated, and at his Request the Garrison pursued and all cut to pieces by the *Turks*. It continued in their Hands till the Year 1685. when it was recover'd by the *Imperialists*.

*Debreczen* stands 40 miles East from *Zolnock* towards *Transilvania*, and is notable for an Illustrious School, or small University Established in it.

*Zatmar*, a small but well Fortified Town in the Mountains towards *Poland* and *Transilvania*, 50 miles North from *Waradin*, and as many East from *Tockay*, and about 40 South-West from the Head of the River *Teyffe*. It is surrounded by the River *Samasch*, and is a Hold of great Strength, taken by Count *Teckley*, in the Year 1680, and afterwards Regain'd by the *Imperialists*. It is the Chief of a Territory, lately made a County, under the Emperor's Jurisdiction.

*Montgatz*, or *Munkatz*, stands a little beyond the River *Teyffe*, towards the Frontiers of *Poland*, 40 miles East from the Head of that River, 30 North from *Zatmar*, 50 South-East from *Eperies*. It is a Fortress of impregnable Strength, built on a steep Rock, and consists of three Castles one above another, the First commanding the Second, and the Second the Third, each encompass'd with a Trench cut in the Rock, and the whole surrounded with a Morass. The Town stands at the bottom of the Rock in the County of *Pereças*. This Place was for a long time defended by the Princess *Ragotsky*, Wife to Count *Teckley*, against a very considerable Army, that were oblig'd to raise the Siege; but continuing a Blockade for some Years, she was at last forc'd to Surrender, in the Year 1693.

*Ungwar*, or *Ungbuar*, seated on the River *Ungh*: near the Frontiers of that part of *Poland* Nam'd *Red-Russia*, 20 miles North-West from *Mongatz*, 40 East from *Eperies*, and 90 North-East from *Zolnock*, is by some Authors affirm'd to give Name to the whole Kingdom, altho' at present it be not considerable, except for its Strength and commodious Situation at the Foot of the *Karpach* Mountains. It is the Chief of a Country; and being in the Possession of Count *Teckley*, he Lodged his Treasures and best Goods in it, till it was taken by the *Imperialists* in 1685.

*Tockay*, a very strong Town and Citadel, is seated on a Marshy Plain at the Confluence of the *Teyffe* and the *Bodrach*, 40 miles South from *Ungwar*, 50 North from *Zolnock*, and 30 East from *Agria*. It is the chief Town of the County, denominated from *Zemlin*, which stands 20 miles North of it, and is Noted for its good Wine. Count *Teckley* seized it in 1683. but the *Imperialists* recover'd it in 1685. Near this place is found a sort of Earth call'd *Bolus Tockaviensis*, much esteemed for its Medicinal Virtue.

These are the Places of chiefest Note in *Upper Hungary*.

### IN LOWER HUNGARY.

*BUDA*, *Buda* aut *Aquineum*, called *Offen* by the Inhabitants, and *Buden* by the *Turks*, Anciently and still reckoned the Capital of the Kingdom, took its Name probably from *Buda*, King *Attila*'s Brother, its Restorer: Or, according to others, from the *Budini*, a *Scythian* People mention'd by *Herodotus*. It is seated on a Hill, on the South-Bank of the River *Danube*, over against *Pesth*, 90 miles from *Presburg* to the South-East, 100 miles from *Esseck* to the North-West. It is a large City, Rich, Populous, and very strongly Fortified; It was very much Enlarg'd, and Adorn'd with publick Edifices, by *Sigismund* King of *Hungary*, who was Crown'd in 1387, and among others he built the Castle, which is very strong, and was afterwards the Seat of the Kings; it stands on the top of the Hill and commands the Town, and is surrounded by a deep Ditch, divers old Towers, and some Modern Ramparts. The City lies on the declivity of the Hill, and the Suburbs call'd *Wasterland*, beyond it towards the *Danube*, over which you pass by a very fair Bridge of Boats to *Pesth*. The many sumptuous Buildings that were formerly seen in this City, are all fallen to decay during the time the *Turks* possess'd it: For in the Year 1526, *Solyman II.* took this City; but *Ferdinand* Archduke of *Austria*, recover'd it the next Year. In 1529. the same *Solyman* took it a second time, after the Garrison had endured Eleven General Assaults. Again in 1541, it was Attack'd by *Ferdinand*, but by *Solyman* again Reliev'd, and the Siege raised. The Archduke *Matthias* attempted to Besiege it in 1598, and 1601. but both these Enterprizes proved ineffectual. At length the late most Valiant Prince, *Charles* Duke of *Lorraine*, sat down before this City in 1684, but could not then effect what he afterwards accomplish'd: For in the Year 1686, after a Memorable Siege of Ten Weeks continuance, he recover'd this important Place to Christian Obedience, being taken by Assault, on the 15th. of June, 1686. The Baths of *Buda* are reputed the Noblest in *Europe*, not only on account of the plentiful



Plentiful Hot Springs, but also for the Magnificence of their Buildings. They are eight in Number, being appointed for Men in the Morning, and Women in the Afternoon: The chiefest of them is that of *St. Elizabeth*, having a strong sulphureous Smell and petrifying Juice; but it is so intensely Hot, that to make it tolerable a mixture of Cold Water is usually thrown in.

*GRAN, Strigonium*, stands on the South Bank of the *Danube*, 30 miles from *Buda*, 60 South-East from *Presburg*, over against *Barchan*, which stands at the Mouth of the River *Gran*. It is a very considerable City, formerly the Seat of the Kings, and at present the See of an Archbishop who is Primate of the Kingdom, Chancellor and President of the Royal Council: And adorn'd with many magnificent Buildings, whereof the Cathedral Church dedicated to *St. Stephen*, the Archbishop's Palace and the Castle are the most considerable: Here are also two large Towers, one towards *Töcnesburg*, and the other facing the River towards *Barchan*; these are join'd by a Wall, fortified with divers Redoubts and a Ditch flank'd with hewn Stone, besides a Terrass, environ'd with strong Pallisadoes, and 4 great Points like Ravelins. The whole is divided into two Parts, the upper standing on the side of a Hill, and the lower along the Banks of the *Danube*, and fence'd with a strong Fort built on the Hill of *St. Thomas*, so that an Enemy has in a manner three different Towns to take before he can be Master of *Gran*. But notwithstanding this Strength it was taken by *Solyman II.* in the Year 1543. and in vain Besieg'd by *Matthias Arch-Duke of Austria* with 50000 Men in 1574. Afterwards the Imperialists again set down before it in 1595. and their General Count *Mansfield* routed the *Turkish* Army; but he dying soon after, the Siege was continued by the Arch-Duke with great Vigour, and the City at last taken. In this Siege *Sir Thomas Arundel* of *Wardour-Castle* in *Wiltshire* signaliz'd great Valour, he storm'd the Water-Tower, and pull'd down the *Turkish* Banner; for which Service and his continual Bravery during the whole Siege, the Emperor *Rodolphus* created him a Count of the Empire, and King *James I.* made him a Baron of *England*; which Honours his Posterity still enjoy. Afterwards the *Turks* under *Mahomet III.* retook it in the Year 1606. and possess'd it till the late War, when in the Year 1683. after the Defeat of the *Turkish* Army before *Vienna*, the Imperialists recover'd it, and defended it against the *Turks*, who again attack'd it in 1685. but were entirely defeated by the Dukes of *Lorraine* and *Bavaria*. The adjacent Country is exceeding fruitful, affording great quantities of generous Wines.

*Komorra, Comorra, Komara* or *Komara*, is a very strong and populous Town, seated on the East-corner of the Island *Schut* on the Bank of the *Danube*, 40 miles East from *Presburg*, and 25 West from *Gran*: It is almost encompassed with the Rivers *Danube* and *Wagz*, and surrounded with a pleasant Champaign Country, over which from its Towers may be seen many *Turkish* Forts. It was first Fortified by King *Matthias Corvinus*, and became the chiefest Bulwark of *Christendom*, against the *Turks* after the loss of *Gran*. And therefore a good Garrison was always there maintain'd, under a trusty Governour, of whom *Baron Brach* testified his Fidelity very signally, for after the taking of

*Raab* in 1591. *Simon Bassa* besieg'd *Comorra* with 60 Ships, and a large Army of *Turks* and *Tartars*, endeavouring at the same time to Corrupt the Governor; but he instead of accepting the Bribe, beheaded four of the five *Turks* sent to him on the Errand, and spared the 5th. only to go back to his Master with the Answer, that he scorn'd his Offers: And in the end they were fain to raise the Siege: Since that time the Town hath been enlarg'd, and better strengthened with a Fort, call'd the *Tortoise*, and 4 Battions.

*Raab* or *Javarin*, a small City dignified with an Episcopal See, stands on the Southern Branch of the *Danube*, that makes the Island *Schut*, where it receives the River *Raab*, 20 miles South from *Komorra*, 40 South-East from *Presburg*, and 30 West from *Gran*. It is a strong Town, being Fortified with Seven Large Bastions, and Four Cavaliers, or High Mounts overlooking them. The Country round it is Champaign, and nothing can command it but a Neighbouring Hill, which is undermined, and may be blown up at pleasure: Somewhat further in an open Field stands a Watch-Tower; from whence an Enemy's Approach may be seen at a distance. *Sinan Bassa* Besieg'd this City, and at one Attack lost 12000 Men before it: But at last it fell into their Hands, by the Treachery of Count *Hardeck* its Governor, for which he was Beheaded at *Vienna*; and was surpriz'd by Stratagem in the Year 1606, by Count *Swartzenburg* Governor of *Comorra*, and so Recover'd, and ever since Remain'd in the Emperor's Possession. The Famous General *Mentecuculi* was Governor of this Town, and used to reside here when his leisure permitted.

*Altenburg, Ovaria*, call'd *Owar* by the *Hungarians*, is a very strong Town and Fortrefs, seated on the *Danube*, where it receives the *Leytha*, by which Rivers it is surrounded, over against the West-End of the Island *Schut*, and 20 miles South from *Presburg*. It is esteem'd the best Fence the *Austrians* have on this side, and is a considerable Out-Work to *Vienna*, from which it is distant 50 miles to the East.

*Alba Regalis, Stuhl Weissenberg*, call'd *Stolin-Biograd*, by the *Slavonians*, and *Ekekeis Feierwa* by the *Hungarians*, stands in the midst of an inaccessible Marsh on the Banks of the River *Zarniza* near the Lake *Balaton*, whence that River Issues, in the middle between the *Danube* and the *Drave*, 40 miles South from *Gran*, as many South-West from *Buda*, and 80 South-East from *Presburg*. It is well Fortified with three Bastions, and two other Works on one side, the other being sufficiently cover'd with the Morass, and join'd to the firm Land by three Causeways. It was heretofore Famous for the Coronation and Interment of the Kings of *Hungary*, till it was taken by the *Turks* in 1543. From whence it was recover'd by the Duke of *Mercœur* in 1602. But they took it again the Year following, and kept it till the Year 1688. when it was regain'd by the Imperialists.

*Vesprin*, or *Weisburn*, the Capital of a County, and the See of a Bishop, stands near the Lake *Balaton*, 15 miles from *Alba Regalis*, and 55 from *Buda* to the West. This City was taken by the *Turks*, in 1593, but afterwards Recover'd, and now Subject to the Emperor.



*Canisa*, or *Kaniseba*, is one of the strongest Holds in these Parts, seated on the River *Sala*, which a little below falls into the *Drave* about 20 Miles West from the Lake *Eletton*, 6 South-West from *Alba Regalis*, and near 100 South from *Piesburg*. It fell into the Hands of the *Turks* in the Year 1600. and in the following Year the Archduke of *Austria* endeavour'd to regain it; but after a Siege of two Months he was fain to quit it. In 1604. Count *Serini* laid Siege to it, and had carry'd it if timely Succours had been sent him, In the late War it was Block'd up by an Army of 8000 Men, under Count *de Buliani*, from the 30th of July 1688. till April 1690. when at last it was Surrender'd with this Expression from the *Turkish* Officer, *I here resign you the strongest Fortrefs in the Ottoman Empire.*

*Sigeth*, or *Zygeth*, is seated on a Morass near the River *Alne*, which 20 Miles below falls into the *Drave*, 44 Miles from *Alba Regalis* to the South, 64 from *Canisa* to the East, and 74 from *Buda* to the South-West. It is a strong Town, being Fortified with a well-built Castle, besides three Walls, and as many Ditches. It was taken by the *Turks* in the Year 1566. after a Siege of two Months, notwithstanding the brave Defence of *Nicholas Esdrin* its Governor, who perish'd with his Guard of 200 Men in encountring the whole Body of *Ottoman* Forces: During this Siege *Solyman II.* died in the Camp. In the Year 1688. the Imperialists recover'd this important Fortrefs, and found 58 pieces of Cannon in it. There is another Town of this Name in *Transylvania*, near the Spring-head of the River *Teyffe* or *Tibiscus*.

*Five Churches*, or *Funff-Kirken*, *Quinque Ecclesie*, takes its Name from Five Fair Christian Churches in the Town; it stands on the River *Keoritz*, 12 Miles from the *Drave*, 30 Miles East from *Sigeth*,

50 West from *Esseck*, and 70 South from *Buda*; some Authors make this the *Teutoburgium* of *Antoninus*; but others with more Probability fix that old Roman Fort at *Erdoy*, a Hamlet on the Mouth of the *Drave*. It is not a place of equal Strength with those we have been mentioning. It was burnt by Count *Leini* in the former War, in his Return from *Esseck*; and in the late War in the Year 1686. it was taken by surprize by Prince *Lewis* of *Baden*. *St. Stephen*, King of *Hungary*, made this City a Bishop's See,

*Mohatz*, a small Town seated near the *Danube*, between the Rivers *Zarwiza* and the *Drave*, 30 Miles South from *Colocza*, 25 North-West from *Esseck*, and 35 East from *Five-Churches*, chiefly memorable for two Battles Fought near it: The first between *Solyman* the Magnificent, and *Lewis* or *Lodowick II.* King of *Hungary*. Wherein this Prince being in the heat of his Youth, adventur'd with an Army of 20000 Men to engage the Army of 300000 *Turks*, by whom he was overpower'd, many of the Nobility kill'd, and himself in endeavouring to escape, rode into a Bog, where thro' the Weight of his Armour, he perish'd in the 20th Year of his Age. The Consequence of this Battle was very Fatal; for the *Turks* pursuing their Blow slew 200000 *Hungarians*, and got such Footing in the Country, that they could never be remov'd, till the late happy War, whereby all *Hungary* was regain'd. The second Battle was almost as Fortunate on the *Christian* side; for on the 29th of July 1687. the Prime Vicer pass'd the *Drave* at *Esseck*, with design to attack the *Christian* Army under the Duke of *Lorraine*; accordingly on the 20th of August the Battle was Fought, wherein the *Turks* were entirely Defeated with the loss of 12000 Men, all the Tents, Baggage, Treasure, and 100 pieces of Ordinance, 12 Mortars, with Ammunition and Provisions proportionate.



# TRANSILVANIA.

**T**RANSILVANIA, call'd *Erdely* by the *Hungarians*, and *Siebenburgen* by the *Germans*, derives both its *Latin* and *Hungarian* Names from Woods and Forests, with which it is encompass'd, almost on all sides; but the *High-Dutch* Denomination hath a different Original of much later Date, taken from the seven chief Towns in this Principality, and alluding to the manner of Living of the ancient *Pannonians*, who having fixt their Tents in those Parts, for the more ready suppressing of any Insurrection that might be rais'd against them by the Natives, were wont to keep in distinct Bodies, and accordingly divided themselves into seven Bands or Regiments, every one of which contain'd 3857 able Soldiers. Thus being encamp'd in several quarters of *Transilvania*, they made Entrenchments round about, and for their better Security built a Fortrefs or Castle at every Camp, which first occasion'd the Alteration of the Name of this Country; *Siebenburgen*, in the *German* Tongue, signifying seven Forts or Towns. It was added to the *Roman* Empire under the Name of *Dacia*, by the Emperor *Trajan*, and contain'd in Compas about 1000 *Italian* Miles, according to the Report of *Eusepius* and *Jornandes*; but at present nothing more is comprehended under the Name of *Transilvania* than only a part of the Old *Walachia*, lying in form of a Rhomb or Lozenge, and being bounded on the North by *Poland*, on the South by *Walachia* Proper, and part of *Hungary*, on the East by *Moldavia*, and part of the same *Walachia*, and on the West by Upper *Hungary*: Its Extent from North to South, consisting of about 50 Leagues, and 68 from East to West. The AIR is altogether as Temperate as in any part of *Hungary*, and not so much corrupted with infectious Vapours, altho' the Waters are Unwholsome, by reason that they pass thro' Mines of Alum and Mercury. The Country (as the Name imports) is every where environ'd with Forests, growing for the most part on the Sides of high Hills and Mountains. The Chief of these is Mount *Carpathus*, nam'd *Crapack* by the *Transilvanians*, and *Biescid* by the *Russians*, which runs along the North of the whole Principality, dividing it from the *Russian* Empire; and indeed the Inlands are almost as Mountainous as the Limits, insomuch that one can hardly Travel from one great Town to another, but by a Road leading thro' a Wood, and over some Rocky Hill. The highest inland Mountain stands near *Fogaras*, on the River *Alc*, its Top being inaccessible and always cover'd with Snow: However the SOIL brings forth abundance of Corn, Pulse and delicious Fruits; affording likewise good Grapes, Honey and Wax, together with several Mines of Gold, Silver, Lead, Quick-silver

and other Minerals. The chief Mines are at *Scullatti* and *Rimili Dominurdz*, in the latter whereof the Miners have sometimes found large Lumps of Virgin Gold, and sent them to the Mint without any further Purifying. The best Silver Mines are near *Offera* and *Radna*, where they have also good store of Copper, and accidentally light on a Vein of Gold. In the Copper-Mines they usually meet with Brimstone and Ising-glass, as also plenty of Steel at *Cyck*, and of Iron at *Thorosch* and *Huniade*. Lastly, the County of *Marcmarus* affords vast quantities of Stone-Salt, even so far as to supply the greater part of the Neighbouring Nations with that Mineral. The Pasture Grounds yield Fodder to innumerable Herds of Cattle, more especially large Oxen, with which the *Transilvanians*, in time of Peace, are so over-stock'd, that a fat Ox may be then bought for 12 or 14 Shillings, and sold again for 50 or 60 Rix-Dollars in *Austria*. They have also a good Breed of stout and swift Horses, that are very much esteem'd in Foreign Countries. The Forests abound with Buffles, Elks, Stags, and a sort of wild Horses that run incredibly swift, and have large Manes hanging down to the Ground, wild Boars, Foxes, Martins, and other sorts of Game. The Hares are much larger here than in the Western Parts of *Europe*, and their Skins carry a far purer Furr. The Wolves and Bears in *Altland*, and other adjacent Countries, run often in Droves, viz. 30 or 40 together, and do much Mischief, during the Winter, among the Horse and other Cattle. There is no Nation in the World, where Wheat grows, more plentifully than in *Transilvania*, so that even the Peasants feed on no other sort of Bread, the Blade of this Grain being here usually as thick as an ordinary Reed, and shooting up to a great Height. Their Wines are reckon'd much more noble than those of *Walachia*, the *Windisch* Marquissate, *Austria* or *Moravia*, but far inferior to the *Rhenish* and *Hungarian*, having commonly a Tincture of Chalk or Sulphur; for which Reason it is reputed a mighty Promoter of the Gout, and such like Distempers. The most remarkable Rivers are, the *Marisk*, the *Alc*, the *Samos* and the *Chrysa*: The two former of these spring forth out of the *Scythian Carpathus*; the *Alc* falls into the *Danube*, but the *Marisk* and *Samos* intermix their Waters with those of the *Teyffe*.

The Principality of *Transilvania* is inhabited by three sorts of People, that have different Laws and Customs, viz. the *Ciculi* or *Siculi*, the *Saxons* and *Hungarians*. Of these the first lay claim to the greatest Antiquity, and are still govern'd by their old Laws and Constitutions, being really a Branch of the Ancient *Scythians*, who were driven



driven out of *Pannonia*, by *Attila* and his *Huns*. They divide themselves into seven Cantons, every one of which is Absolute within itself: Tho' all of them are united with the *Transilvanians*, and one with another for the defence of their Country against the Common Enemy. As for the *Saxons* (according to the Opinion of *Toppeltrine*) they are the true Relicts of the Ancient *Daci*; calling themselves even at this Day *Decen*, *Defen*, or *Detf. ben*, which is an easie Corruption of the *Daci* or *Deci*. The *German* Writers, especially those of the best Repute, acknowledge the whole *German* Nation (and consequently their *Saxons*) to be the Offspring of the ancient *Transilvanians*. But whencesoever their Original is deriv'd, they are certainly near of Kin to the Inhabitants of the Lower *Saxony*, and use the same Dialect, altho' the Corruption of their Tongue, by a mixture with the *Hungarian*, renders the *High-Dutch* more difficult to be understood among them. Those *Saxons* possess the Province call'd the *Seven Towns*: The *Siculi* dwell on the Banks of the River *Marisk*; and the *Hungarians* possess the Frontiers of *Walachia*; the two latter are for the most part *Calvinists*, and the *Saxons* almost generally embrace the Doctrin of *Luther*, but none will allow any Pictures or Images to be set up in their Churches. There are also among them some *Roman Catholics*, *Greeks*, *Trinitarians*, *Photinians* and *Anabaptists*; tho' their Parry is not so considerable.

However, these three distinct Nations are govern'd by one Sovereign, styl'd the Waywood, or Prince of *Transilvania*, whom the Grand Signior often caus'd to be Elected and Depos'd at his pleasure. But the Power of the *Turks* is now expell'd. The two Noble Families of *Batbori* and *Ragotski*, have supply'd this Country with many Princes, who were oblig'd to send a certain Tribute to the Port, until *Michael Abafsi*, the 23d. Prince from *John Huniades*, who succeeded *John Kermant*, A. D. 1661. with the Consent of the States of *Transilvania*, resign'd the whole Country to the Emperor of *Germany* and King of *Hungary* for ever, as it appears from the Act bearing Date at *Hermanstadt*, May 9. 1658. Whereupon Imperial Garrisons were accordingly receiv'd into all the principal Places. Afterward, the said Prince dying in 1690. the States, in a general Assembly, resolv'd to adhere to the Interests of the Emperor and the young Prince, Son to the deceas'd, who was confirm'd by his Imperial Majesty, against all the Pretensions of Count *Teckely* and the *Ottoman* Port. Thus the Principality of *Transilvania* remains entirely Incorporated with the Crown of *Hungary*, under the Imperial Protection. Its chief Revenues arise from the Sale of Salt, very great Quantities whereof are made at *Tarda*, and convey'd from thence on the River *Marisch*, into *Hungary*. And the first Article of the Treaty of Peace between the Emperor and the *Turk* at *Carlowitz*, declares that *Transilvania* shall remain entire to his Imperial Majesty, with the ancient Limits as before the War. The chief Towns here are,

*Hermanstadt*, *Hermanopolis*, aut *Cibinium*, call'd *Zebe* by the Inhabitants, the Metropolis of *Transilvania*, and the Royal Seat of the Prince, stands in the middle of a large Plain, on the side of the Rivulet *Ciben*, which a little below falls into the *Alt*, being distant 60 Miles from *Colaswar* or *Claußenburg* to the East, and 32 from *Gula Feiruar*, or *Weissenburg*, toward the Frontiers of *Moldavia*;

as also 500 from *Belgrade* to the North-East. It is a large and fair City, bearing the Title of an Episcopal See, under the Metropolitan of *Colocza* in *Hungary*, altho' at present destitute of a Bishop; neither is its Strength less considerable, the great Number of Fish-ponds and Pools of Water rendering it inaccessible, besides its firm Walls and Ramparts. The Houses within the Gates are generally well-built, and for the most part cover'd with Slate, which is esteem'd an extraordinary piece of Magnificence in the Apartments of a *Transilvanian* Citizen. There are also many good Springs; and the River-water is convey'd by small Channels thro' every Street; nevertheless the Air is thought to be very Unhealthy, and to cause the Gout, the Epidemical Distemper of the Burgers, insomuch, that many of the best Houses want Inhabitants. Here are usually held the General Conventions and Courts of Judicature of the other six chief Towns of the *Saxons*, all Actions of Law being brought thither to Tryal. The principal Trade of the Place consists in Cloth and Mead, both which are here made in great Quantities and sent into the Neighbouring Territories. The Princes of *Transilvania* were wont formerly to put themselves under the Protection of the Grand Signior; but Prince *Abafsi* at the Solicitation of the late Duke of *Lorrain*, adher'd to the Emperor's Interest, and was prevail'd with to receive an Imperial Garrison of 3000 Men into this City. A. D. 1687.

Having Travell'd about a *German* Mile from *Hermanstadt*, we meet with *Saltzburg*, or *Wiagna*, that takes its Name from the Salt-pits, which (as it hath been already intimated) bring Yearly a very considerable Revenue into the Prince's Exchequer. Not far from hence appears *Michelberg*, a strong Fortress erected on the top of a Hill, wherein are laid up all the Arms and Military Ammunition of the whole Territory of *Hermanstadt*. Two Miles from this place stands *Roche-Thurn*, or the *Red-Tower*, so nam'd from the Colour of the Freestone with which it is built, where the Inhabitants are forc'd to keep a continual Watch and Ward, for fear of a sudden Invasion by the *Turks*, out of whose Dominions there lies only a very narrow Road this way into *Transilvania*.

*Cronstadt* or *Brassaw*, *Corona* aut *Stephanopolis* and *Brassovia*. is pleasantly situated in the midst of fair and rich Vineyards, about 65 Miles from *Hermanstadt*, almost to the North-East, near the Confines of *Moldavia* and the *Carpathian* Mountains. It is also taken by some Authors for the *Pretoria Augusta* of *Ptolemy*. However it is a Bishop's See, and a place of some Strength, as being tolerably well fortify'd with Walls and Ramparts of Earth. The Houses are high and well-built, but generally cover'd with Laths instead of Slate. The Citizens are all *Saxons*, without the least mixture of *Hungarians* or *Walachians*; so that their peculiar Language is here spoken in its greatest Purity. A good School hath been Founded here for some time, besides a Library, that goes beyond any throughout the whole Kingdom of *Hungary*.

The Country round about *Cronstadt* bears the Name of *Burzia*, or *Burzland*, and is the outmost Boundary of the Principality of *Transilvania*, which gave occasion to the *Hungarian* Proverb, *That Burzia says Amen to the High-Dutch Paternoster*: Meaning, that this Country is the last wherein the *German* Tongue is understood, the *Sclavonian* entering on the Frontiers of *Walachia*. Moreover, it may not



be improper to observe here, that the Road from *Alstadt* and other parts of *Transilvania*, leads directly to *Zeidenstadt*, a Forest extending for the space of 10 Miles in Length; during which unpleasant Passage, Travellers are carry'd over a continu'd Bridge, or Causey of Planks, the Soil being for the most part Marshy and full of Boggs.

*Bisritz*, *Beste cza*, or *Besteriza*, *Bisricia*; sometimes also call'd *Nufenstadt*, by the *Germans*, is remarkable for its Situation in a spacious Plain, on the Banks of a River of its own Name. It is a Town of small extent, but very neat, and of so good Note, that many of the *Hungarian* Historiographers allow it the third place in the Catalogue of the *Saxon* Cities, giving it the Precedency to *Segeswar* and *Megiez*. The Burgers (as it is generally reported) speak as good *Dutch* here, or better, than at *Cronstadt*. But the Air and Water of the adjacent Country are both reputed very Unwholesome; so that the Inhabitants, especially the meaner sort, that drink Water, are very apt to be Deaf, Dumb, and very Unactive. This Town is distant about 80 Miles from *Hermanstadt* to the North-West, as also 20 from *Burgles*, and 60 from *Weissenburg* to the North.

*Megiez*, or *Medwisch*, is seated in the very heart of *Transilvania*, on the Banks of the same River with *Segeswar*, in a Country well furnish'd with Wine and other rich Merchandizes. Indeed it is not very large, yet indifferently well fortify'd with a deep Ditch and an old Wall. But its greatest Strength lies in the Church founded on the top of a Hill, according to the usual Custom of the Inhabitants of those Parts, who built their Churches Castle-wise, to avoid being put to a double Charge.

*Schesburg*, or *Segeswar*, (as it is nam'd by the *Hungarians*) *Segetbusa*, extends itself along the side of a Hill and the Banks of the River *Cochel*, at the foot of the *Carpathian* Mountains, about 10 Miles from *Hermanstadt* to the North, and 14 from *Cronstadt* to the West. As to its Form, it very much resembles *Buda*, but falls far short of that City in its Largeness and number of Inhabitants. It is divided into two Parts, viz. the Upper and Lower, the former being built on a Hill and a place of great Strength; but the latter is not well defended, tho' more Populous, by reason of the Convenience of Water for the use of the Burgers for carrying on their several Manufactures; more especially that of dressing their Cloth, whereas the other part of the Town is destitute of any Brook or Spring.

*Milembach*, or *Zaashebes*, according to the *Hungarian* Denomination, *Zabesus* aut *Sabeseus*, is a Town of much Antiquity, but otherwise scarcely considerable, lying on a very hollow Valley, and Westward tolerably well secur'd with Boggs and Moorish Grounds. But it may be easily attack'd on the other side and is by no means a place of Strength.

*Clausenburg*, *Cardiopolis*, is situate on the Rivulet *Samus*, near the foot of the Mountains towards the Borders of *Hungary*, at the distance of 36 Miles from *Weissenburg* to the North, as many from *Bessegwa* or *Bistritz*, and 60 from *Waradin* to the East. It is a large populous Town, and the Principal of a County of the same Name, being fortify'd with an old Castle and other Bulwarks, so as to be capable of enduring a smart Siege; as it did in the Year 1661, when *Abdül*, Prince of *Transilvania*, joyning with a body of *Turks*, laid Siege to it; it being at that time govern'd by *David Retani*, a valiant and faithful Soldier, who, notwithstanding the Town

was but indifferently Fortify'd, and very ill provided with Cannon and Ammunition (inasmuch that he was forc'd to found Artillery out of the Town Bells) bravely rally'd out upon the Enemy, and was very successful, till General *Schedinau*, who was then in *Hungary*, getting together about 6000 Men, came to his Relief; upon the News of which, the *Turks* thought fit to raise the Siege, and make the best use they could of their Heels, leaving great quantities of Victuals and Provision behind them. It is also a place of great Traffick, and well frequented by reason that all the Conventions of the States of *Transilvania*, and Provincial Courts of Justice are held therein by the Prince. It heretofore perhaps bore the Name of *Patruissa*, but is at present call'd *Coloswar* by the *Hungarians*. The greatest part of the Towns-men are *Arians* and *Platiniens*, inasmuch that the other six Towns (where *Lutheranism* is generally profess'd) took an occasion to exclude *Clausenburg* out of the Number of the seven States of *Transilvanian Saxons*, and to admit *Bross* or *Zafuaras* into its room. Moreover, the *Hungarians* may be made free of this Town, and are allow'd to bear Offices therein; a Privilege never granted them in any other *Saxon* City.

There are divers other small Towns and Burghs in *Transilvania* entirely Inhabited by the *Saxons*; but all of them by some means or other, depend on the Seven preceeding.

### *The chief Towns in Transilvania Inhabited by the Hungarians, Walachians, Siculi, &c.*

*Weissenburg*, *Alba Julia*, call'd by the *Hungarians*, *Giula Fejerwar*, is conveniently situated on a rising Ground, from whence, almost 2 Miles round about, one may take a most delightful Prospect of a champain and fruitful Country. It is water'd with the gentle Streams of the River *Marisk*, and was in Times past much larger than it is at present; as may still be discern'd from its old Boundaries without the Walls, containing 5 Miles in Compass. And it continu'd for a long time the Metropolis of *Dacia*, being honour'd with the Royal Palace and constant Residence of the Monarchs of that Kingdom. It was also formerly a Bishop's See under the Metropolitan of *Colocza*; but that Dignity was transferr'd elsewhere by Queen *Isabel*, the Widow of *John I.* King of *Hungary*. This City is distant 34 Miles from *Hermanstadt* to the West, 68 from *Temeswar* to the North-East, 90 from *Waradin* to the East, and 196 from *Buda*. The ancient Inscriptions and Characters, upon Tombs and Tables, that are found in and about this Place, do plainly shew that the *Goths* anciently Inhabited this Country. And the Coins and Medals that are found in it, are an evident Proof that the *Roman* Legions were once here: It owes its Name of *Alba Julia* to *Julia Augusta*, the Mother of *Marcus Aurelius Antonius Pius*, as appears from an old Inscription upon a Marble Table in the Church of *St. Michael*, which is this,

I. O. M. E. Junoni.

*Pro Salute Imp. M. Aur. Antonii Pii Aug. & Juliae Aug. Matris Aug. M. Ulpius. Mucianus, Mil. Leg. XIII. Gem. Horologiare Templum a Solo de suo ex voto fecit, Falcone & Claro. Cest.*



*Thorda* is suppos'd to stand in or near the same place with the *Salin* of *Ptolomy*, which Town took its Name from the great number of Salt-pits in the adjacent Territory.

*Deva*, a Town chiefly noted for affording a sort of excellent Wine, and guarding the Passage thro' the *Eysenthor*, in the *Turkish* Dominions. It was taken after a small Resistance by *Michael Abaffi*, late Prince of *Transilvania*, during the Wars maintain'd by him against his Competitor *Kemeni Janos*, A. D. 1662.

*Enguedine*, call'd *Annum* by the *Romans*, from a Causeway leading towards it, which one *Annius*, a Captain of one of their Cohorts, had caus'd to be rais'd. Some Fragments of this ancient Military Way are yet to be seen, besides other Monuments of Antiquity often found in and about this Town.

*Newmark*, *Nova Marchia*, or *Waser-Heley*, according to the *Hungarian* Denomination, is seated on the River *Marisch*, at the foot of the *Carpathian* Mountains, 36 Miles from *Clausenburg* or *Coloswar* to the North-East. In this Town the general Assemblies of the *Siculi*, are usually conven'd at certain appointed Times.

*Agnabat* or *Agnethin*, is one of the chief Towns of *Transilvania*, tho' of little Strength, and water'd by the River *Herbach*, 25 Miles from *Hermanstadt* almost to the North. Queen *Isabel* assembled a Diet here for the Preservation of her Son, but *Marvinusius* caus'd it to be dissolv'd, and levy'd War against his Sovereign Prince, the end of which prov'd fatal to both.

## PROVINCES recover'd from the Turks, viz. SCLAVONIA, CROATIA, and MORLACHIA.

The Province of *SCLAVONIA* lies on the South-West of *Hungary*, between the two Rivers *Drave* and *Save*, having the *Danube* for its Eastern and *Stiria* for its Western Bounds, comprehending in extent from East to West according to *Cluverius*, 50 German Leagues (or 200 English Miles) and in Breadth 12 German Leagues (or 48 English Miles) it is part of the ancient *Pannonia*, and took its present Name from the *Slavi*, a Northern Nation, who came from *Scythia* about the time of the Emperor *Justinian*, and overrun *Greece* and the neighbouring Countries, as well as *Poland* and *Moravia*. And on their account in those Times, all the ancient *Illyricum* also (which comprehended *Croatia*, *Bosnia* and *Dalmatia*) bore the Name of *Slavonia*. Their Force was first broken by the *Venetians*, who conquer'd this Country; and to keep the Natives under, oblig'd them to submit to the most servile Employments which their robust, strong Bodies, made them fit for; and some Etymologists pretend that the word *Slave* came from these People thus subjected. They were undoubtedly in former times a very considerable Nation, as is demonstrated by the Extent of their Language, which is one of the four Original ones of *Europe*, and is spoken by the *Poles*, *Russes*, *Hungarians*, and many other Nations: Dr. *Heylin* reckons up Twelve; but *Gesner* says no less than sixty Nations speak the *Slavonian* Language. By divers Revolutions this Country became at last tributary to the *Hungarians*, from whom it

was taken by the *Turks*; *Solyman* the Magnificent invading this Province in 1540. reduc'd it to his Subjection, under which it remain'd till the late War, when in the Year 1687. after the Defeat of the *Ottoman* Forces at *Mohat*, they mur'd again the Grand Visier, which oblig'd the *Turks* to desert it, and so the whole Territory, except *Gradisca*, submit'ted to the Emperor; and by the late Treaty at *Carlowitz*, the greatest part of the Province is for ever resign'd up by the Grand Seignior to his Imperial Majesty.

The Air is Temperate and the Soil Fruitful, producing Corn, Cattle and Pasture. The People Robust and Warlike; those that Inhabit the Eastern Parts, on the Banks of the *Save*, as well on this side, as the *Servian* are call'd *Ratzians*, by which Name they are often mention'd in the History of the late War. Both the *Greek* and *Roman* Profession of Christianity is follow'd here; and the Papists are permitted to have Mass said in their own Language. The Division of their Province into Counties cannot exactly be set down; some divide it into Seven, and others Six, and other makes but Four. The *Turkish* Power has confounded that Distinction, and 'tis sufficient to say these are principal Cities, viz.

*POSSEGA*, otherwise call'd *Picentina*, and *Segovitzza*, the Metropolis of the Province and the Capital of a County to which it gives Name, lies in the middle of the Province with respect to East and West, and 15 Miles North from the River *Save*, in the Lat. of 45. 30. Long. 36. and is seated on the River *Oriana*, 50 Miles from *Five-Churches* to the South, and 120 from *Belgrade* to the West, in an exceeding fertile Country. It contains about 1000 Houses, and is surrounded with Walls and other Fortifications; and is a place of Consequence on account of its Jurisdiction over 400 Villages, and its considerable Traffick. The *Turks* under *Solyman* took it in 1544. and retain'd it till the Year 1687. when the *Germans* besieging it, the *Turkish* Governor made some shew of Resistance by firing some Canon, but soon deserted the place, and left in it a great quantity of Ammunition and Provision, and 5 pieces of Cannon.

*Walpo* or *Valpo*, stands on a River of the same Name, 35 Miles North East from *Possega*, and about 10 from the *Drave*: It was taken by the *Turks* in 1543. and re-taken after a short Siege by General *Dunewalt* in 1687.

*Esseck*, a Place of much Antiquity, and suppos'd to be the ancient *Mursa*, which Conjecture is corroborated by part of an ancient *Latin* Inscription still to be seen on one side the Gate, wherein is read the Emperor *Ælian's* Name in fair Characters. It is a large and populous Town, seated at the Confluence of the *Drave* with the *Danube*, and is particularly remarkable on account of its famous Bridge, which is 5 English Miles long, and near 30 Yards broad; the reason of its Length is, because it not only lies over the River *Drave*, which divides into Branches, but also pass'es over a large Morass. It consists of thick Oaken Planks supported by great Trees, nine or ten in a Rank between every Arch: It is Rail'd on each side, and hath Watch-Towers at every quarter of a Mile's distance; and is in the whole so noble a Work, that it surprizes the Eye with the View of it, and the Imagination in considering whence that vast quantity of Timber could be fetch'd. By this Bridge



the *Turks* Forces us'd to march and invade the Christian Countries; wherefore in the former War, viz. *An. 1684.* Count *Serini* attack'd and burnt the place; and in this late War, *An. 1685.* Count *Leffley* set Fire to it a second time, and took the Town, but the Castle holding out, he blew up the Magazines and left it. The next Year, the place was begun to Repair it, the Duke of *Lorraine* for the taking of *Buda*, march'd this way, and got in destroy'd what they had in many Months, by the Hands of some Men, been raising. In the Year 1687, the *Turks* deserted the Town, which the Imperialists took possession of and held it, notwithstanding the Attack made in 1690. by an Army of 15000 *Turks*. The Town is Large and Populous, well furnish'd with Shops and *Caravanferas* or Inns (as Sir *P. Rycaut* tells us) for Accommodation of the Armies and great number of Travellers that pass thro' it. The Houses are of Wood, and the Streets instead of Paving, plank'd with Trees, which render'd it so liable to Fire, as to be almost entirely burnt down by Accident in 1685 when Count *Leffley* was there. The Fortifications are not very strong, notwithstanding the Cost and Pains the *Turks* have bestow'd on 'em. In History 'tis noted, that *Magnentius* the Usurper and Murderer of *Constantine II.* was defeated by *Constantius* in the Year 349 and *Lewis II.* the young King of *Hungary*, was routed by *Schman II.* near this place. *Esseck* is distant 50 Miles from *Pességa* to the North-East, and 60 from *Belgrade* to the North-West.

*Walcwar*, upon the River *Walpa*, near its Mouth into the *Danube*, about 20 Miles South from *Esseck*. And

*Isack*, about 10 Miles South-West from *Walcwar*, and near the Banks of the *Danube*, have been both often mention'd in the History of the late War.

*Peterwaradin*, *Acuminum* ant *Petro-Varadinum*, seated on the Banks of the *Danube*, 30 Miles South-East from *Esseck*, in the County of ancient *Sirmium*, hath been famous during the late War. The *Turks* made it a Head Quarters after they had lost *Buda*, and kept a Bridge of Boats here over the *Danube*. It was often Taken and Retaken during the late War, and being dismantled in 1688. by the Imperialists, and afterwards burnt by the *Turks*, it was Re-fortify'd by the Emperor in 1691. and made a place of great Strength.

*Salačkament* stands 15 Miles East from *Peterwaradin*, which is a Town of no great Note, except for the Battle fought near it in the Year 1691. between Prince *Lewis* of *Baden* and the Grand Visier, wherein the former obtain'd a very signal Victory with the Death of 25000 *Turks*, among which were the Grand Visier, the Seraskier, and many of the principal Officers: The Particulars whereof the Reader will find in Sir *Paul Rycaut's* late History of that War.

*Carlowitz*, famous for the late Treaty of Peace in the Year 1699. between the Emperor and his Confederates on one part, and the Grand Seignior on the other, stands near *Salačkament*.

*Semjn*, in the Road to *Belgrade*, and on that account often mention'd, stands 12 Miles East from *Salačkament*, and about as far West from *Belgrade*.

*Als-Sirmium*, *Sirmium*, or *Sirmich*, call'd *Szwin* by the *Hungarians*, the Capital of a County to which it gives Name, was heretofore the Metropolis of *Pannonia Inferior*, afterwards the Seat of the *Præfectus Prætorie Italiae*, and hath been honour'd with the Personal Residence of many Emperors, and on

that account the Scene of many Actions. Here *Vetricano* or *Bertanio* was Proclaim'd Emperor by the *Illyrian* Soldiers at the Death of *Constantine* the Great, but was deserted and soon oblig'd to submit to *Constantius*. In its Christian State it was the See of a Bishop, and honour'd with a Council, wherein the Emperor *Constantius* was present, *An. 356.* An *Arian* Synod was also held here soon after; and the City was considerable till the *Turks* became Masters of it, who have to far alter'd its State that Modern Travellers tell us 'tis but a poor Village. It stands 25 Miles South-West from *Peterwaradin*, 60 West from *Belgrade*, and not above 5 from the River *Save*.

From hence to *Posséga*, along the Banks of the *Save*, being subject to the *Turks*, no considerable Town is seen, only *Brodt*, a small Town on the *Save*, 15 Miles South from *Posséga*, is remarkable for a Victory obtain'd over the *Turks* by Prince *Lewis* of *Baden* in 1688. Beyond *Posséga* to the West, stands

*Gradisca* or *Gradisk*, seated on the Banks of the *Save*, about 30 Miles from *Posséga*, a strong fortify'd Town, taken by the Imperialists under the Duke of *Croy*, in the Year 1691.

*Vircovitz* or *Wirobitiza*, a City guarded with a Castle, which was taken by Count *Leffley* in 1684. and thereby the Passage open'd to *Esseck*; stands near the *Drave*, 50 Miles North-West from *Posséga*.

*Zagrab* or *Agram*, seated near the River *Save*, 100 Miles West from *Posséga*, and about 12 from the Frontiers of *Carniola*, is the Capital of a County, and the See of a Bishop; 'tis divided by a small Rivulet into two Parts, one of which being nam'd *Agram*, has occasion'd the whole Town to be sometime so call'd: It is adorn'd with a fair Cathedral, dedicated to St. *Peter*, the first Christian King of *Hungary*, and strengthen'd with good Walls and other Fortifications, and is a populous City.

## CROATIA and MORLACHIA.

This Country was part of the ancient *Pannonia Superior*, according to *Orelins* and *Cluverius*, or part of *Illyricum*, according to the late *Oxford* Maps. And after the declining of the *Roman* Empire was overrun by the Northern *Barbarians*, and in time became a considerable Kingdom: Which, according to *Baudrand*, extended from the River *Drave* to the *Adriatick* Sea, and was divided into three Parts viz. 1. *Croatia Savia* or *interamnensis*, which lay between the *Drave* and the *Save* (the present *Sclavonia*). 2. *Croatia propria*, or the present *Croatia* lying between the *Save* and the Mountains *Rebiu*, and *Albius*. The Third lay between those Mountains and the *Adriatick* Sea, which is the present *Morlachia*: And tho' that Monarchy be long since terminated, yet the Emperor of *Germany* still retain the Title of King of *Croatia*.

The present Boundaries of this Province are the River *Save* on the North, and *Morlachia* on the South, if *Morlachia* may be reckon'd a separate Country, and not rather a part of *Croatia*, as many Geographers do, and then the *Adriatick* Sea must be reckon'd the Southern Boundary. *Bosnia* lies to the East, and *Carniola* on the West; its utmost Extent may be reckon'd about 80 Miles either way. It is a fruitful Soil, producing Wine and Oyl as well as all Necessaries for Life. The People are call'd *Croats*, and by the *Germans* *Krabaten*, are Valiant Hardy



by and good Soldiers, especially the Horsemen, to be noted that they are entertain'd in most of the Courts in Germany as the Prince's Horses. The Foot, call'd *Uskokes*, are exceeding swift, and run up the Mountains like Bucks. The Chief Towns are,

<i>Carlstadt.</i> <i>Sisseg.</i> <i>Petrinia.</i> <i>Castanowitz.</i> <i>Witay.</i> <i>Wibitz.</i> <i>Dubina.</i>	<i>Segna.</i> <i>Fablonitz.</i> <i>Ostrowina.</i> <i>Novigradt.</i>
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------	------------------------------------------------------------------------------

*Carlstadt*, seated on the River *Marosnitz*, near the Frontiers of *Carniola*, and 20 Miles South from the River *Drave*, the Capital of the Imperial *Croatia*, took its Name from *Charles* Arch-Duke of *Austria*, who first caus'd it to be Fortify'd, A. D. 1579. It is a strong Fortrefs, and always well furnish'd with a good Garrison and Stores, which is maintain'd by the *Carniolians*, to whom it is a Bulwark against the *Turks*.

*Sisseg* or *Sisaken* mention'd by *Pliny* and *Antoninus*, under the Name of *Sisia*, is seated on the *Save*, 35 Miles from *Carlstadt* to the East. It was famous for the stout Resistance it made against the *Turks* in 1593 when they Besieg'd it and hop'd to force a Passage this way into Germany; but the Inhabitants gallantly held out till some *Dutch* Regiments came up, and falling on the *Turks* totally Defeated them with the Slaughter of 8000 of their Men.

*Castanowitz* is a strong Castle consisting of three Towers and a Wall, according to the ancient manner of Fortification, near the River *Wana* or *Unna*, 34 Miles from *Gradisca* to the West, and 40 from *Carlstadt*. It was taken from the *Turks* by Prince *Lewis* of *Baden* in 1688. Note, this River *Unna* is made the Boundary of the *Turkish* Dominion on this side, by the late Treaty of Peace. Accordingly,

*Dubina* on the East-side the same River, and near the *Save*, is subject to the *Turk*; as also

*Wibitz* or *Bighion*, seated on the same River, 40 Miles South from the *Save*, and near 50 South East from *Carlstadt*. It was formerly the Capital of *Croatia*, till taken by the *Turks* in 1592. which was a mighty Loss; for this had been the Bulwark of *Christendom* for 150 Years, and that Conquest open'd a Passage for the *Turks* to *Slavonia*, which they soon after overrun.

*MORLACHIA*, which was the ancient *Liburnia*, lies on the South of *Croatia* on the Bank of the *Adriatick* Sea, about 90 Miles in Length, but not above 25 in Breadth. The chief Towns are,

*Segna* or *Zeng*, seated on the Bay of *Canaro* or *Quarnaro*, an ant. *Flanaticum*, over against the Islands *Vegia* and *Aibe*, is the Metropolis of *Morlachia* and an Episcopal See under the Metropolitan of *Spalato*, distant 45 Miles from *Carlstadt* to the South, and 50 from *Wibitz* to the West. It is well fortify'd as well as naturally strong, having vast Woods and craggy Mountains on the Land side and but a bad Haven on the Sea. This Place, being about the Year 1539. in the possession of the Count *de Frangipani*, was claim'd by *Solyman II.* as a dependance on *Hungary*, a great part whereof he had then subdu'd. Which made the Emperor *Ferdinand* take it under his Protection, and for its better Defence entertain'd the *Uskokes*, who practis'd Pyracies upon the Coasts like the *Bucaniers*, sheltering themselves in the adjacent Rocks, Creeks and small Islands. These Rovers became powerful in time, and so much annoy'd the *Turks*, that it occasion'd a new War in 1592. between them and the *Austrian* Family. However, the Town continu'd still a Receptacle for those sort of People. Father *Paul* in his History of the *Uschochi* tells us. that in 1613. *Segna* was inhabited by three sorts of People, viz. the *Casalini* or Citizens, consisting in about 100 Families; the *Stipendarii* or lifted Men, being 200 under four Captains; and the *Venturini*, who were Renegado's out of *Turkey*, *Dalmatia* and *Apulia*; their whole Number not amounting to above 2000, and yet they were wonderfully serviceable to the House of *Austria*; which made Arch-Duke *Ferdinand* take their part against the *Venetians*, who had been provok'd by their many Pyracies, and endeavour'd to rout them out; this occasion'd a War in 1615. wherein the *Dutch* taking part with the *Venetians*, the Arch-Duke was constrain'd the next Year to suppress this Nest of Pyrates, who were never heard of after.

*Fablonitz*, *Ostrowina* and *Novigradt* lie 15, 20 and 25 Miles East from *Segna*, but are not very considerable.

The Islands lying on the Coast of *Morlachia*, being subject to the *Venetians*, have been already spoken of in our Account of the Dominions of that State.

## TURKEY



# TURKEY in Europe.



**T**HAT Part of Europe now subject to the Turks, and by their Arbitrary Government render'd in a great measure depopulate, was formerly the most considerable of all this Continent, and hath been the Habitation of Nations that made the greatest Figure in Ancient History. The Valour, Wisdom and Learning of the Ancient Grecians is known to all the World. Thrace, Macedonia, Bacia, Fennicia and Illyricum, were for many Ages the Seats of considerable Nations, and their Actions

often remember'd in History. And these Parts were by much the most Cultivated and Populous of all Europe. But as Wealth begets Luxury and Pride, and those breed Effeminacy and Animofities; these People lost their Primitive Virtue, and by Wars for Superiority, were in time so weaken'd, that they became a Prey, first to the Macedonians, and afterwards to the Romans; who made all these Countries Provinces of their Empire. But still so considerable was this Country, that Constantine the Great,



Great remov'd his Seat into *Thrace*, and the Succession of that Monarchy continu'd here, after it was terminated in *Italy*. But as the numerous Swarms of *Goths* and other Northern Nations had overrun *Spain* and *Italy*, so the *Huns*, *Goths*, *Slavi*, &c. as much infested the Eastern Empire in *Europe*, as the *Sarazins* did in *Africa* and *Asia*, inasmuch that the latter Emperors had little more than the Title of that Dignity (their Dominions and Power being reduc'd to a small Compass) before the *Turks* attack'd them.

Of the Origin of the *Turks* we shall have occasion to speak in our Account of *Turcomania*. And of the Rise of *Mahomet* in our Account of *Arabia*, where we shall shew that the *Mahometan* Empire was begun by the *Sarazins*, who had held it 400 Years, before the *Turks* under *Tangrolipix* got possession of *Persia*, and thence intulst the *Sarazins*. That both *Turks* and *Sarazins* were worsted by the *Tartars*, who Conquer'd *Persia*, *Affyria*, &c. will be shewn in its proper place; and therefore to avoid Repetition, we shall here only speak of the Rise of the present Race of *Turkish* Kings descended from *Ottoman*.

At the time that *Haalon* the *Tartar* Conquer'd *Persia*, and Expell'd *Cassanes*, the last of *Tangrolipix's* Race, there was another small Kingdom of *Turks* at *Macban* in *Persia*, under the Head of the *Oguzian* Family, which was an Honourable Race; whether more Ancient than the *Seluccian*, of which *Tangrolipix* descended, or second to that, I cannot determine; it was at least so considerable as to be allow'd a Regal Power in that small Dominion it possess'd. *Solyman*, who was the Sultan of it at that time, *An.* 1260. having little Hopes to protect himself against so formidable a Power, thought it his wisest Course to avoid the Rage of the *Tartars* by Flight; and accordingly retir'd into *Asia Minor* with his Family, Friends and Cattle, with sorry Equipage in Carts, and Tents for their Habitations. But it seems he was not easy there; for he was returning to *Persia*, when he was by Misfortune drown'd in the *Euphrates*. Some of his Family pursu'd his Design, and return'd into *Persia*; but his Son *Ertogrul* abode where he was, and beg'd a piece of Land of *Saladin* the *Turkish* Sultan of *Iconium*, to feed his Flocks in. He had a good Train of Followers, and was able to assist the Sultan in his Wars, wherein they did him very signal Service, and therefore had a large share in his Favour. *Ottoman*, the Founder of the present *Turkish* Empire, was the Son of *Ertogrul*. He was a Person of great Courage, penetrating Judgment, and boundless Ambition; by Warring against the *Christians*, who possess'd many Castles in those Parts, he acquir'd a petty Sovereignty, and after the Death of *Saladin* took upon himself the Title of Sultan; and was so successful in his Wars, that in the 28 Years he Reign'd, he Conquer'd the greatest part of *Phrygia* and *Bythinia*; and having taken *Prusa*, he made it the Seat of the *Turkish* Kingdom. He Died in 1328. and was Succeeded by his Son *Orchanes*, in whose Time the *Turks* pass'd the *Hellepont* and took the City *Gallipoli*; which Footing in *Europe* being once obtain'd, they were never after driven out. To him succeeded *Amurath*, who took *Adrianople*, and Conquer'd part of *Servia* and *Bulgaria*. He Died *An.* 1390. and was succeeded by his Son *Bajazet*, who laid Siege to *Constantinople*, Ravag'd *Walachia* and *Theffaly*, and was going on in a furious Torrent of Conquest, but was stop'd in his Career by *Tamarlain* the *Tartar*, who

after a bloody Fight Defeated his Army and took him Prisoner. *Mahomet*, the youngest Son of *Bajazet*, and *Amurath* II. the Son of *Mahomet*, Reign'd successively till the Year 1450. at which time began to Reign the Great *Mahomet* II. who took *Constantinople*. That fatal Conquest happen'd *A. D.* 1453. since which time *Constantinople* has always been the Seat of the *Ottoman* Empire. A particular Account of the Progress of their Arms would be too long to set down here; but the Reader will be able to gather it up out of the Accounts we have given in the Description of these Countries.

The present Boundaries of *TURKEY* in *EUROPE*, are the River *Niesler* or *Twla*, and the *Carpack* Mountains, which divide it from *Poland* on the North; the *Archiepelago*, the Gulf of *Lepanto*, and the *Ionian* Sea on the South; the *Euxine* or *Black-Sea* with the *Thracian Bosphorus*, and the *Propontis* on the East; and *Transylvania*, *Hungaria*, *Sclavonia* and *Croatia* on the West, comprehending in the whole these Countries, viz.

*GREECE*, which is sub-  
divided into Five Countries,  
viz. { 1. *Macedon*,  
2. *Theffaly*,  
3. *Achaia*,  
4. *Epirus*,  
5. *Albania*.

To which must be added, (being  
always reckon'd part of  
*Greece*) tho' now not subject  
to the *Turks*. { 6. The *MOREA*,  
or *Peloponnesus*.

The Provinces of  
*ROMANIA*,  
*BULGARIA*,  
*SERVIA*,  
*BOSNIA*, and part of *DALMATIA*.

The Republick of *RAGUSA*.  
The Provinces of { *WALACHIA*,  
*MOLDAVIA*, } Tributary to  
the *Turks*.

*BESSERABIA* or *BUDZIACK* Tartary.  
The Allies of the *Turks*.

*OCZACOW*, *CRIM* and *MINOR* Tartaries:

Islands on the Coasts of *GREECE*, viz.

In the <i>Ionian</i> Sea,	In the <i>Mediterranean</i> Sea,
<i>Corfu</i> ,	<i>CANDIA</i> ,
<i>Cefalonia</i> ,	<i>Cirego</i> ,
<i>Zant</i> ,	<i>Sapienza</i> .
<i>Pachsu</i> ,	
<span style="font-size: 2em; vertical-align: middle;">{</span> <i>Antipachsu</i> ,	
<span style="font-size: 2em; vertical-align: middle;">{</span> <i>St. Maura</i> ,	
<span style="font-size: 2em; vertical-align: middle;">{</span> <i>Ithica</i> ,	
<span style="font-size: 2em; vertical-align: middle;">{</span> <i>Colombos</i> .	

In the <i>Ægean</i> Sea,	<span style="font-size: 2em; vertical-align: middle;">{</span>	<i>The Cyclades</i> Inf. viz.
		<i>Milo</i> ,
		<i>Paria</i> ,
		<i>Naxia</i> ,
		<i>Morgo</i> ,
In the <i>Archiepelago</i> ,	<span style="font-size: 2em; vertical-align: middle;">{</span>	<i>Sdiller</i> ,
		<i>Tono</i> ,
		<i>Andro</i> .
		<i>Termia</i> , &c.
		<i>Negropont</i> ,
In the <i>Archiepelago</i> ,	<span style="font-size: 2em; vertical-align: middle;">{</span>	<i>Ægina</i> ,
		<i>Coluri</i> ,
		<i>Sciro</i> ,
		<i>Lemnos</i> ,
		<i>Tasso</i> ,
And many other smaller Islands.		



## CHAP. II.

Of GREECE, *hodie* Rumelia.

GREECE is judg'd to have been the part of *Europe* first Inhabited, which its early flourishing State, together with its Neighbourhood to *Asia*, from whence we know all the Earth was Peopled, give very good Grounds to believe. Ancient History is full of the Actions of the many Nations that Inhabited these Parts; and the Learned World is still indebted to the many Wise Philosophers of this Country, whose Writings continue to be most instructive to Mankind. To say nothing of its Celebrated Historians, Orators and Poets; the Wisdom of its Lawgivers, the Valour of its Captains, and Morality of its Inhabitants, are sufficiently known to every body that knows any thing of Antiquity: In short, Greece was anciently the most Celebrated Region of the Universe, surpassing all others in Arms, Arts and Science. It was for many Ages divided into many small Kingdoms and States, till Philip King of *Macedon*, and Alexander his Son, reduced it all to his Subjection. This Kingdom was afterwards pull'd down by the *Romans*, and Greece made a Province of the Empire, as it continu'd (but mangled by the *Gots* and *Huns*) till the *Turks* overrun it; these are its present Masters, and have effaced all its Ancient and Magnificent Monuments, as well as reduc'd the People to the most servile Slavery, and ignorant Stupidity.

The ancient Name of this Country was *Hellas*, which the *Latins* chang'd into *Græcia*, and the *Turks* now call *Rumelia*. But it must be remember'd that the ancient *Hellas* comprehended only that Province, since nam'd *Achaia*, and by the *Turks* is call'd *Livadia*; but that Name is often extended and made to mean the whole Country, which is seated between the 36 and 43 Degree of Latitude, and between the 37 and 45 Degree of Longitude: Bounded on the North by *Romania*, *Bulgaria* and *Servia*, whence it is divided by a Chain of Mountains, whose Eastern part was call'd *Scodrus* by the Ancients; on the South by the *Mediterranean* Sea; on the East the *Archipelago*; and on the West the *Adriatick* Sea, or Gulph of *Venice* bounds it. Extending in Length, from the Mountains above-mention'd in the North, to Cape *Caglia* in the *Morea*, in the South, 100 German

Leagues, according to *Cluverius*, which makes 400 *English* Miles; and its utmost Breadth he reckons to be 89 German Leagues, i. e. 356 Miles.

The AIR is exceeding Temperate and Healthy; and the SOIL very Fruitful, abounding with Corn, Wine, delicious Fruits, and great Herds of Cattle, together with Fowl and Venison in great plenty.

The CHRISTIAN RELIGION was planted in Greece immediately after the Death of our Saviour, by St Paul and Timothy, and it flourish'd there for many Ages with more Purity than in the Western Church, producing many Champions for the Faith, and venerable Fathers, whose Writings convey to us the Discipline and Doctrine of the Church in its Native Purity: Of which Religion there hath been a continu'd Succession to this time; but since the *Turks* have been Masters, and made the People Slaves, its State is much declin'd.

The Ancient LANGUAGE of Greece is still known to us, being preserv'd in the Writings of Aristotle, Plato, Xenophon, Herodotus, Thucydides, Plutarch, Demosthenes, Æschines, Isocrates, Hesiod, Homer, Sophocles, Aristophanes, and many other Philosophers, Historians, Orators and Poets; and has been deservedly esteem'd as well by the *Romans* in their most flourishing State, as by all *Europe* ever since: And to us Christians it is particularly Valuable, by being the Language of the Gospels and the rest of the New Testament, whereby we receive the means of Eternal Salvation. The Greek was spoken in five different Dialects, viz. the Attick, the Dorick, the Æolick, the Ionick, and the Common Dialect; and was the most Manly, Haughty, Comprehensive, and yet most Sweet and Mellow of any Language extant. But the Modern Greek is so far chang'd by the mixture of Foreign Languages, that the Genuine Stile is very little understood among the present Inhabitants.

Because this Country is very much mention'd in ancient History, and the Classick Authors, we shall set down its ancient Division, according to *Cluverius* and *Laurenburger*, before we proceed to its State, viz.

Ancient Greece was Divided into Five Parts, viz. HELLAS, THESSALIA, MACEDONIA, EPIRUS, and PELOPONNESUS. Which were Subdivided thus,

*Hellas* vel *Græcia* propria, ut & *Achaia*, was divided into these Regions.

- { Æolia,
- { Locris Ozolæa,
- { Doris,
- { Phocis,
- { Megaris,
- { Attica,
- { Boeotia,
- { Orchomenus,
- { Locris Epicnemidia,

The chief Cities, and Places Teste Cluverio.

Chalcis, Chalydon, Olenus.  
 Naupactus, now Lepanto.  
 Bojum, Cytinium, Pindus.  
 Anticyra, Chyrba, Pythia, Delphi, Parnassus.  
 Megara, Eleusis.  
 Marathon, ATHENS.  
 Thebie, Lebadia, Cheronea, THEBÆ, Plataea.  
 Delium, Aulis, Leuctra, Ostium, Helicon.  
 Cenemides, Opus, Elafia, Lilea.



<i>Thessalia</i> vel <i>Æmonia</i> , which is sometimes reckon'd part of <i>Macedon</i> .	{	Thessaly proper,	<i>Hypata</i> , <i>Softenes</i> , <i>Cypæa</i> .
		<i>Estiotis</i> ,	{ <i>Gomphi</i> , <i>Pheistus</i> , <i>Tricca</i> , <i>Ætinium</i> , <i>Philippi</i> ,
	{	<i>Pelasgia</i> ,	<i>Pharsalia</i> .
		<i>Magnesia</i> ,	<i>Pythæum</i> , <i>Atrax</i> .
	{	<i>Phthiotis</i> ,	{ <i>Folcus</i> , <i>Hermenium</i> , <i>Castanea</i> , <i>Melibæa</i> , <i>Metbone</i> ,
			<i>Thermopylæ</i> .
	{		{ <i>Phthia</i> , <i>Thebæ-Thessal</i> . <i>Echinus</i> , <i>Larissa</i> , <i>Demetrias</i> ,
			<i>Pagassæ</i> , <i>Tempe</i> .
	{	<i>Taulantiâ</i> ,	<i>Æpidamnium</i> vel <i>Dyrrachium</i> , <i>Apollonia</i> , <i>Aulon</i> .
		<i>Ælymiota</i>	<i>Ælimaca</i> , <i>Bullis</i> .
	{	<i>Orestis</i> ,	<i>Grytone</i> .
		<i>Dassareta</i> ,	<i>Lychnidos</i> , <i>Evia</i> .
	{	<i>Æmathia</i> ,	<i>Pella</i> .
		<i>Ægea</i> ,	<i>Ædeffa</i> , <i>Idomena</i> , <i>Scydra</i> , <i>Europus</i> , <i>Tyriffa</i> .
	{	<i>Pieria</i> ,	<i>Pidna</i> , <i>Phylacæ</i> , <i>Dion</i> .
		<i>Mygdonia</i> ,	<i>Antigonis</i> , <i>Physcæ</i> , <i>Carrhabia</i> , <i>Leta</i> , <i>Terpilus</i> .
	{	<i>Paraxia</i> ,	<i>Antigone</i> , <i>Pellone</i> , <i>Cassandra</i> , <i>Torone</i> .
		<i>Chalcidica</i> ,	<i>Augæa</i> , <i>Singus</i> , <i>Acanthus</i> .
<i>Macedonia</i> , <i>Æmathia</i> an- tea dict.	{	<i>Amphrazitis</i> ,	<i>Thessalonica</i> , <i>Stagira</i> .
		<i>Bisaltæ</i> ,	<i>Euporda</i> , <i>Ossa</i> , <i>Calliteræ</i> .
	{	<i>Edonij</i> ,	<i>Amphipolis</i> , <i>Scotusa</i> , <i>Berga</i> .
		<i>Orbeli</i> ,	<i>Gariscus</i> .
	{	<i>Sintici</i> ,	<i>Heraclea</i> , <i>Paræopolis</i> , <i>Tristolus</i> .
		<i>Pelagones</i> ,	<i>Stobi</i> .
	{	<i>Lyncistæ</i> ,	<i>Heraclea</i> .
		<i>Jororum</i> ,	<i>Forum</i> , <i>Alorus</i> .
	{	<i>Almopum</i> ,	<i>Europas</i> , <i>Albanopolis</i> , <i>Apfalus</i> .
		<i>Æstræorum</i> ,	<i>Æstræum</i> ,
	{	<i>Eordeorum</i> .	<i>Daulia</i> , <i>Dibolia</i> , <i>Scampis</i> .
			<i>Dodone</i> .
<i>Epirus</i> , qui & <i>Albania</i> , dict.	{	<i>Molossia</i> ,	<i>Oricum</i> , <i>Antigonis</i> , <i>Panormus</i> , <i>Elæus</i> .
		<i>Dryopis</i> ,	<i>Buthæum</i> .
	{	<i>Chaonia</i> ,	
		<i>Thesprotia</i> ,	<i>Nicopolis</i> .
	{	<i>Cassiopeæ</i> ,	<i>Amphilochia</i> , <i>Argos-Amphil</i> .
		<i>Dolopia</i> ,	<i>Ambracia</i> , <i>Actium</i> , <i>Leucas</i> , <i>Stratos</i> .
	{	<i>Almene</i> ,	
		<i>Amphilochia</i> ,	<i>Corinthus</i> .
	{	<i>Acranania</i> ,	<i>Olympia</i> , <i>Cyllene</i> .
			<i>Messene</i> , <i>Pylus</i> .
<i>Peloponnesus</i> hodie <i>Morea</i> .	{	<i>Achaia</i> , propr. dict.	<i>Tegea</i> , <i>Stimphalus</i> , <i>Mantineæ</i> , <i>Megalopolis</i> .
		<i>Elis</i> ,	{ <i>LACÆDEMON</i> vel <i>Sparta</i> , <i>Leuctrum</i> ,
	{	<i>Messenia</i> ,	<i>Amycle</i> .
		<i>Arcadia</i> ,	<i>Argos</i> , <i>Hippium</i> , <i>Nemea</i> , <i>Troezen</i> , <i>Epidaurus</i> .
	{	<i>Laconia</i> ,	
		<i>Argia</i> ,	

## GREECE in its present State thus divided.

<i>Macedon</i> , wherein these Towns are of Note.	{	<i>Salonichi</i> .	<i>Preveza</i> .
		<i>Amphipoli</i> .	{ <i>Chimera</i> .
	{	<i>idero capsæ</i> .	<i>Larta</i> .
		<i>Philippi</i> .	{ <i>Butrinto</i> ,
	{	<i>Cavalla</i> .	<i>Perga</i> .
		<i>Contessa</i> .	<i>Actium</i> .
	{	<i>Pella</i> .	
		<i>Strymon</i> ,	{ <i>Larisa</i> .
	{	<i>Stagyræ</i> .	<i>Armiro</i> .
			<i>Volo</i> .
<i>Albania</i> , now <i>Arnaut</i> .	{	<i>Scutari</i> .	<i>Pharsalus</i> .
		<i>Durazzo</i> .	<i>Scotusa</i> .
	{	<i>la Valona</i> .	{ <i>Tricala</i> .
		<i>Ducagini</i> .	<i>Demetriada</i> .
	{	<i>Alessio</i> .	<i>Janna</i> .
		<i>Albanopoli</i> .	<i>Gomfi</i> .
	{	<i>Croya</i> .	<i>Zitton</i> .
		<i>Lychnidos</i> .	<i>Mount-Olympus</i> .



Lepanto.  
 Deiphi or Castri.  
 Athens or Setines.  
 Maraton.  
 Thebes or Stives.  
 Aulis.  
 Megara.  
 Livallia.  
 Orchomene.  
 The Dardane's.  
 Helicon & Parnassus.

## M A C E D O N

Sometime call'd *Emathia*, from *Emathius* one of its Kings; took its present Name from *Macedon*, the Grandson of *Deucalion*, as *Solinus*, or more particularly. Son of *Jupiter* and *Thyia* the Daughter of *Deucalion*, as *Stephanus*; but by *Cluverius* rather thought to be deriv'd from *Mygdonia*, a Province of this Country. Was a considerable Kingdom Founded by *Ceraunius*, and of above 400 Years standing before *Perip* extended its Bounds, and added *Thessaly* with part of *Epirus* and *Albania* to it; but his Son *Alexander*, surnam'd the Great, rais'd it to the highest pitch of Grandeur; for he not only subdu'd all Greece and *Thrace*, but also conquer'd *Asia*, *Egypt* and *Lybia*, so that his Empire extended from the *Danube* to the River *Indus*, and from the *Black* to the *Red Sea*.

The ancient Bounds of *Macedonia propria*, were *Thrace* and Mount *Scedrus* on the North, which divided it from the Upper *Mæsia* and *Illyricum*; on the West the *Adriatick Sea*; on the South *Epirus* and *Thessaly*. Its ancient Division we have already set down; but when *Paulus Æmilius* the Roman General had overcome *Perseus* the last Macedonian King (which happen'd A. M. 3782. U. C. 585. after the first erecting this Monarchy by *Ceraunius*. 615. and before Christ 168 Years) and made this a Province of the Empire; it was divided into four Provinces or Regions. *Teste Livio*: The first, which border'd on *Thrace*, was subdivided into four Parts, *Edris*, *Oimontice*, *Bisaltia* and *Sintica*, seated on the River *Strymon*. In the second Region were nine Parts, *Orbelia*, *Almopia*, part of *Pæonia*, *Jeria*, *Pelagonia*, *Mygdonia*, *Amphraxis*, *Chalcidicia* and *Praxia*. In the third were six Parts, *Pieria*, *Bottica*, *Emathia*, *Lyncestis*, part of *Pæonia* and *Æffraia*. In the fourth and last Region, which was the Western part, and lay on the *Ionian* or *Adriatick Sea*, were twelve or rather ten Parts, *Albania*, *Taulantia*, *Elymiotis*, *Ecdetis*, *Dassareta*, *Parthoyai*, *Deuripus*, *Pelagonia*, *Stymphalia* and *Orestis*.

The present *Macedon* is bounded on the West by *Albania*, on the East by several Bays of the *Archipelago*, on the North by *Romania* and *Bulgaria*, on the South by *Thessaly*. It is Rich in divers Mines of Gold; abounds with Corn, Pasture, Cattle, Venison, and in some Parts Wine and Oyl. Here are many Mountains and Rivers, but none very Large or Remarkable, except Mount *Athos*, whereof we shall speak in its place. By the *Turks*, *Macedon* is divided into three Parts, viz. 1. *Jambli*, which contains the first and second Region of the *Romans*. 2. *Cremolitari*, part of the third Region. And 3. *Macedon*, which is the greatest part of the third Region. The chief Cities are,

*Thessalonica*, commonly call'd *Salonichi*, heretofore the Capital of the second Region of *Macedon*, now the Metropolis of the whole, and the Seat of the *Turkish* Præfect, stands on the Bottom of a Bay, to which it gives Name, in the Latitude of 41. 20. Longitude 43. 200 Miles East from the Coast of the *Adriatick Sea*, 350 West from *Constantinople*, 150 South from the *Danube*, and 100 North from the Isthmus of the *Morea*. The City was anciently call'd *Thermia*, and the Bay *Sinus Thermæcus*, and it was formerly adorn'd with many sumptuous publick Buildings, whereof only a Triumphant Arch remains. *St. Paul* preach'd the Gospel and wrote two Epistles to the People of this City; all which denote its ancient Splendor, and tho' by many Revolutions and the *Turkish* Government it be somewhat reduc'd, it is however still a very considerable Place, being a Celebrated Emporium, and a large and populous City, inhabited by *Christians* and *Jews*, as well as *Turks*; and bears the Title of a Metropolitan See. It is encompass'd with old Walls, which are reckon'd to be four Leagues in Circuit, and defended by a Citadel on a Hill on one side, and two Forts on the other. The *Christians* have 30 Churches, and 5 Convents; and the *Jews* 36 Synagogues, and 2 Colleges where-to their Youth resort from all Parts to Study: The Churches are stately, especially that of *St. Mary*; but the *Turks* have taken that as well as *St. Demetrius* the Cathedral, *St. Sophia* and *St. Gabriel* for Mosques. There is a great Traffick here; and the Haven is much resorted to, for Silk, Leather, Iron, Cotton, Wax, Honey, Wooll, Corn, &c. which is chiefly carry'd on by the *Jews*, who are numerous and wealthy. *Salonichi* was first built by *Cassander* and *Thessalonica*, Daughter to King *Philip*, and Sister to *Alexander* the Great. It was the Birth-place of *Eustatius*, who wrote the Comment on *Homer*, of *Constantius Hermenopolus*, *Demetrius Cyrenodius*, and *Theodorus Gaza*. It always underwent the Fate of *Macedon*, and so was subject to the Greek Emperors, from whom it was snatch'd in 1180. by *William* King of *Sicily*; but soon recover'd by *Andronicus Palæologus*, and sold to the Republick of *Venice*, in 1313. from whom *Sultan Amurath II.* took it, and the *Turks* have ever since possess'd it.

*Amphipolis* Tur. *Embeli*, sometime the Capital of *Macedon*, stands upon the River *Strymon*, which a little below falls into a Bay of the *Archipelago*, and gave Name to it; 60 Miles from *Salonichi* to the North-East. It was heretofore known by the Names of *Urbs Martis*, and *Novem Vix*, and is often mention'd in ancient History; for *Aristagoras* the *Milesian* flying from *Darius*, endeavour'd to settle here, but was oppos'd by the *Edonii*; the *Athenians* planted a Colony here, which were cut off by the *Thracians*; afterwards *Aginon* the Son of *Nicias* repell'd the *Edonii*, and planted a Colony. It is an Archbishop's See, and inhabited by some *Christians*; but it has now only its ancient Grandeur to brag on.

*Siderocapsa*, *Sidrus*, *Sideros* & *Sedra*, Profl. a small Town, notable for its Neighbouring Gold-Mines, which were discover'd in King *Philip's* Time, and yielded him 1000 Talents every Year; they are still wrought, and afford the Grand Seigneur a considerable Revenue. It is a Bishop's See, and stands on the South-East of *Salonichi*, near Mount *Athos*.



*Philippi* or *Filippo*, a City at the foot of Mount *Pangæus*, on the confines of *Thrace*, 20 or 30 miles North from *Amphipolis*, is famous for the Battle fought in its neighbouring Fields, where *Brutus* and *Cassius* the Murderers of *Cæsar* were defeated by *Marc Antony* and *Octavius*. Its ancient Splendor is testified by an Amphitheatre almost entire, and other Ruins of Sumptuous Buildings. Christianity was planted there by *St. Paul*, and the People honoured with an Epistle, which is part of our Canon of Scripture; 'tis still an Archbishop's See, but a place of small Habitation.

*Contessa* and *Cavalla*, seated on the *Strymonian* Bay (which runs between *Thrace* and Mount *Athos*) do both give Names to it, being by some call'd *Golfo di Contessa*, and by others *de Cavalla*. *Strymon*, which first gave Name to this Bay and the River on which it stands; is a little distant from *Amphipolis*. *Staphyra*, now *Libanova*, famous for the Birth of *Aristotle*, stands on the West Shore of the same Bay.

Mount *Athos* is often mention'd in Antiquity for its Height: *Pomp. Mela* tells us, That it rises into the Clouds, above the lower Region of the Air: And *Pliny* says, Its Evening Shadow reaches as far as the Island *Lemnos*, which is 60 miles distant: It stands on a Promontory jetting into the Sea, between the Gulph of *Strymonium* or *Contessa*, and the *Sinus Singiticus* or *Golfo di Monte Santo*, about 70 miles East from *Saloniki*: The *Isthmus*, which is 12 Stadia broad, *Xerxes* dug through, and from thence *Athos* is sometimes called an Island. It is now Nam'd *Monte Santo*, from 24 Monasteries which stand upon it, mostly of the Order of *St. Basil*; these are so fully stock'd with the Monks of the Greek Church, and are so well esteem'd, that the Patriarch of *Constantinople*, Elects all his Bishops out of them.

*Pella* 30 miles South-West from *Theffalonica*, and now call'd *Zuchria*, (and by others *Jeniza* or *Janiza*, tho' that be only a new Town of the *Turks* built near it) is judg'd to have been a Royal Seat of *Philip* and *Alexander*, which the Marbles and Royal Buildings daily dug up do Testifie.

## ALBANIA *hodie*. Arnaut.

Between *Macedon* and the most Eastern part of the *Venetian* Gulph, and near its Mouth, lies *Albania*, by the *Turks* call'd *Arnaut*: It is sometimes call'd *Albania* Proper, or Upper, to distinguish it from *Epirus* which is the Lower, and bounds it on the South, as the Mountains, *Maritas*, or *Argentaro*, and *Servia* do on the North. It extends about 160 miles from North to South, and about 100 from East to West. The SOIL is Fruitful, producing Generous Wine, Flax, and Cotton, as also Wax in the Woods, and Salt dug out of the Mountains. The Inhabitants make Tapistry, which with the other Commodities they vend abroad.

This with *Epirus*, was the Country of the Famous Prince *George Castriot*, commonly call'd *Scenderbeg*, whose mighty Valour against the *Turks* is Celebrated in History: With a small Army for many Years, he oppos'd the whole *Turkish* Power, and gain'd 22 Battles over them. At his Death he left his Country to the *Venetians*, but they were not able to maintain the Inland part of it, which was soon reduc'd by *Mahomet II.* whose Successors have held it for the

last two Ages. The People are eminently Valiant, and their Horses exceeding Swift, so that their Cavalry are made use of by *Turks*. The chief Towns are

*Scutari*, *Scodra*, *Turc. Iscodar* the Metropolis, is seated on a Rock, near a Lake, whence Issues the River *Boiana*, 25 miles North from the *Venetian* Gulph, about 20 from the Frontiers of *Dalmatia*, and 70 from *Ragusa* to the East, 240 from *Saloniki* to the West, and about 40 from the Mountains to the South. *Baudrand* says, It was the Seat of the ancient Kings of *Illyricum*: It is now a good large City, defended with a Castle seated on a Hill, and has been for these 200 Years Subject to the *Turks*. But the Christians have however a Bishop here, and some Churches.

*Ducagni*, *Ducagnium*, stands on the East side of the River *Drino*, 25 miles from *Scutari* to the East.

*Alessio*, *Lissus*, stands on the same River, 30 miles below *Ducagni*, near its Mouth into the *Adriatick* Sea, and forms a Bay now call'd the Gulph of *Drino*, anciently the *Illyric* Bay. It is by some reckon'd the Capital of *Albania*, and is particularly famous for the Sepulchre of *Scanderbeg*, who died here in 1467. and even the *Turks* have such veneration for him, that they carry away pieces of his Tomb for Relicks, and esteem it as a Charm to animate their Courage in Battle: It is fenced with a Castle, and is the Seat of a Bishop; but Subject to the *Turks*.

*Dolcigno*, *Dulcinium*, *Olcinium*, seu *Ulcinium*, is a safe Port Town, with a Castle, seated on the Gulf of *Venice*, 30 miles South-West from *Scutari*, and 40 West from *Alessio*.

*Antivari*, *Antibarum*, another Port Town seated on a Rock, 10 miles West from *Dolcigno*.

*Croya*, *Croia*, or *Crua*, by *Brietius* still the Metropolis of *Albania*, is an impregnable and inaccessible Fort, seated on the River *Lizane*, 30 miles South from *Alessio*, and as many East from the Sea. By reason of its Strength it was chosen by *Scanderbeg*, for his place of Residence, and by him strongly defended against the frequent Attacks of the *Turks*; but a few Years after his Death they took it.

*Durazzo*, *Drazzi*, the *Dyrrhachium* of the *Romans*, and *Epidamnus* more anciently; is a noted Sea Port on the Gulph of *Venice*, at the Mouth of the River *Argentaro*, 20 miles South from the Gulph of *Drino*, and 40 South-West from *Alessio*: It is a large, and was formerly a very fair City; Memorable for the Exile of *Cicero* in it, and the Landing of *Pompey* (when he retir'd before *Cæsar*) from *Brundisium* in *Italy*, over against which it stands, and this was therefore the common Passage thither. In early times, viz. A. U. C. 315. this City was Besieg'd by a Company of *Banditti* or *Corfairs*, and the Citizens implor'd the assistance of the *Corinthians*, who were defeated by the *Corfairs*, and these assisted by the *Athenians*, which gave occasion to the *Corinthian* War, and became at last the Leaven as it were of the great *Peloponnesian* War, so famous in the Greek History. Latterly it has been Subject to the *Turks*, since the time of *Bajazet II.* who took it, but it is not much Inhabited by reason of the unwholsomeness of the Air.

*Albanopoli*, an Inland Town seated not far from the head of the River *Drino*, 70 miles East from *Durazzo*, and as many South-East from *Ducagni*, was anciently the Capital of *Albania*, but now destroy'd and but a small Town.

*Ocryda*, *Lychmidas*, *Turc. Guistandel*, seated upon a Lake of the same Name, whence issues the River

M m m 2

*Drino*,



*Drino*, 25 miles South from *Albanopoli*, and 80 South-East from *Durazzo*; an Archbishop's See; but now Subject to the *Turks*.

*La Valona*, *Aulon*, *Procl. Aulon Navalis*, stands on the Mouth of the Gulph of *Venice*, 40 miles from *Durazzo*, and 60 from the Gulph of *Drino* to the South, and 50 from *Otrida* to the West. It is a very capacious Port, and was formerly a place of Strength, but the *Turks* took it from the *Venetian*, and held it till the late War, when in the Year 1690. they deserted it, upon the taking of *Canina* by the *Venetians*, and the appearance of their Army before it.

Over against *Valona*, about 2 Leagues to Sea, stands the Rocky Island of *Saseno*, a deserted place, and frequented by none but *Turkish* Pirates.

### E P I R U S, or *Canina*.

On the South of *Albania*, along the Coast of the *Ionian* Sea, lies *Epirus* (call'd by some *Albania Inferior*, and by others *Canina*, which Name others restrain to the North-part of *Epirus*) having *Theffaly* on the North-east, and *Acroia* on the South-east. It is from South-East to North-West near 100 miles in Length, and about 60 in Breadth. It is divided from *Albania* by the Mountains *Clamusa cūm*, *Mon-*

20 miles South from *Butrinto*; the *Venetians* gave the Inhabitants the Two Islands on the South of *Corfu*, call'd *Pachsu*, and *Anti-Pachsu*, wherein is very Fat Pasture.

*Larta*, or *Ambracia*, *Ambracia*, and *Ata*. It grew up out of the Ruins of the Ancient City *Ambracia*, sometime the Regal Seat of the Kings of *Epirus*; others make *Ambracia* a different Place. It is seated at the bottom of the *Sinus Ambrochianus* now Gulf of *Larta*, 20 miles from the Sea, 60 from *Butrinto*, and 140 from *Durazzo* to the South-East, 60 from *Lepanto* to the North-West, and 200 from *Saloniki* to the South-West.

*Preveza*, Seated at the Mouth of the Gulf, 20 Miles West from *Larta*, and 40 South-East from the Island *Corfu*, stands in the place of the Ancient City *Nicopolis*. It was a place of Strength, and possess'd by the *Turks* till the Year 1684. when the *Venetian* General *Moresini* took it, and by the Treaty of *Carlowitz* it was agreed to be demolished.

Over-against it on the Mouth of the same Bay stands *Actium*, now *Cape Figalo*, Famous for the Naval Battle between *Marc Antony* and *Augustus*, formerly an Eminent City, wherein stood a Temple of *Apollo*, now an ordinary Sea-Port and Promontory.

The Island *CORFU*, *Corcyra*, or *Phaeacia*, lies in the *Ionian* Sea, over-against the Coast of *Epirus*,



by his Name, and mention'd in History. And to his Sons are attributed the Honour of giving Name to many parts of Greece, as *Hellen* to *Hellas*; *Doris* to the *Dorians*, near Mount *Parnassus*. Xuthus his Third Son was Father to *Achæus* Founder of the *Achæans*, and *Ion* from whom the *Ionians* or Inhabitants of *Attica*.

The Modern *Thessalians* are for the most part *Christians*, but Subject to the *Turk*, remarkable for their Cruelty and Warlike Disposition. The Extent of *Thessaly* is about 120 miles either way, and the chief Towns in it are,

*Larissa*, *Turc. Asababa*, the Capital, seated on the Banks of the River *Peneus*, about 40 miles above its Mouth into the Gulph of *Saloniki*, 80 from *Saloniki* to the South, 50 from the Island *Negropont* to the North-West, and 100 from *Lepanto* to the North-East, and very near Mount *Olympus*. It is one of the most flourishing Cities of Greece; and hath been sometime honour'd with the Grand Seignior's Residence (especially during the War of *Candia*) who hath a Palace here in the upper-part of the Town. It is the See of an Archbishop, and adorn'd with good Buildings, particularly a very fair Stone Bridge of Nine Arches over the River. This was the Birth place of the famous *Achilles*: It was taken by the *Bugarians* in 931. and by the *Turks* in the 13th. Century.

*Tricala* stands upon the same River *Peneus*, about 50 miles West from *Larissa*, and was formerly

*Armiro*, *Eretria*, at the bottom of the same Bay, and gives the present Name to it, being stil'd in the Modern Maps *Golfo del Armiro*, stands over-against *Demetriada*, 20 miles South from it, and 25 North from *Negropont*, is an Ancient place, being mention'd by *Strabo*, *Thucydides*, *Polybius*, *Stephanus*, *Livy*, and others; and by some reckon'd the Port whence the *Argonauts* set Sail; and that it was here that *Xerxes* Fleet was so sorely shatter'd by Tempest, that Greece was deliver'd from his intended Invasion.

*Zeitton*, or *Zeitton*, *Theba Pthioica*, or *Thessalica*, seated upon the *Sinum Malicum*, gives the Modern Name to that Bay which runs between, into the Land of *Thessaly* over-against *Negropont*, being now call'd *Golfo de Zeitton*, it stands 30 miles from *Armiro*, and near 60 from the River *Peneus* to the South, and 30 from the Shoar of *Negropont* to the West.

*Capo di san Georgia*, *Magnesia Promontorium*, a Cape with a Sea-Town on the North of the *Golfo del Armiro*, 20 miles from it, and 30 East from *Pegasa*, and not far from the Mount *Pelion*.

Before we leave *Thessaly*, we must take notice of Mount *Olympus* so Famed in Antiquity for its height, the Top reaching above the middle Region of the Air. it stands on the North of *Larissa*, and is a continued Ridge for many miles.

*Ossa*, more to the South on the other side the River *Peneus*, and *Pelion* somewhat more to the East are Two other Notable Mountains. And between *Olympus* and *Ossa* on the Banks of the River *Peneus*



Albania now Lacedaia.

Lepanto.  
 Delphi or Castri.  
 Athens or Setines.  
 Maraton.  
 Thebes or Stives.  
 Aulis.  
 Megara.  
 Livallia.  
 Orchomene.  
 The Dardanel's.  
 Helicon & Parnassus.

## M A C E D O N

Sometime call'd *Emathia*, from *Emathius* one of its Kings; took its present Name from *Macedon*, the Grandson of *Deucalion*, as *Solinus*, or more particularly. Son of *Jupiter* and *Thyis* the Daughter of *Deucalion*, as *Stephanus*; but by *Cluverius* rather thought to be deriv'd from *Mygdonia*, a Province of this Country. Was a considerable Kingdom Founded by *Ceraunius*, and of above 400 Years standing before *Perseus* extended its Bounds, and added *Thessaly* with part of *Epirus* and *Albania* to it; but his Son *Alexander*, firman'd the Great, rais'd it to the highest pitch of Grandeur; for he not only subdu'd all Greece and Thrace, but also conquer'd *Asia*, *Egypt* and *Lybia*, so that his Empire extended from the *Danube* to the River *Indus*, and from the *Black* to the *Red Sea*.

The ancient Bounds of *Macedonia propria*, were *Thrace* and *Mount Scodrus* on the North, which divided it from the Upper *Mæsia* and *Illyricum*; on the West the *Adriatick Sea*; on the South *Epirus* and *Thessaly*. Its ancient Division we have already set down; but when *Paulus Æmilius* the Roman General had overcome *Perseus* the last Macedonian King (which happen'd A. M. 3782. U. C. 555. after the first erecting this Monarchy by *Ceraunius*, 625. and before Christ 165 Years) and made this a Province of the Empire; it was divided into four Provinces or Regions, *Teste Livio*: The first, which border'd on *Thrace*, was subdivided into four Parts, *Edoris*, *Odmentice*, *Bisaltia* and *Sintica*, seated on the River *Strymon*. In the second Region were nine Parts, *Orbelia*, *Almopia*, part of *Pæonia*, *Jeria*, *Pelagonia*, *Mygdonia*, *Amphraxis*, *Chalcidicia* and *Praxia*. In the third were six Parts, *Pieria*, *Bot-tiza*, *Emathia*, *Lyncæstis*, part of *Pæonia* and *Æ-stræis*. In the fourth and last Region, which was the Western part, and lay on the *Icnian* or *Adriatick Sea*, were twelve or rather ten Parts, *Albania*, *Taulantia*, *Elymiotis*, *Ecdetis*, *Dassareta*, *Parthysi*, *Deuripus*, *Pelagonia*, *Stymphalia* and *Orestis*.

The present *Macedon* is bounded on the West by *Albania*, on the East by several Bays of the *Archipelago*, on the North by *Romania* and *Bulgaria*, on the South by *Thessaly*. It is Rich in divers Mines of Gold; abounds with Corn, Pasture, Cattle, Venison, and in some Parts Wine and Oyl. Here are many Mountains and Rivers, but none very Large or Remarkable, except *Mount Athos*, whereof we shall speak in its place. By the *Turks*, *Macedon* is divided into three Parts, viz. 1. *Jambli*, which contains the first and second Region of the *Romans*. 2. *Cerenolitari*, part of the third Region. And 3. *Macedon*, which is the greatest part of the third Region. The chief Cities are,

*Thessalonica*, commonly call'd *Salonichi*, heretofore the Capital of the second Region of *Macedon*, now the Metropolis of the whole, and the Seat of the *Turkish* Præfect, stands on the Bottom of a Bay, to which it gives Name, in the Latitude of 41. 20. Longitude 43. 200 Miles East from the Coast of the *Adriatick Sea*, 350 West from *Constantinople*, 150 South from the *Danube*, and 100 North from the Isthmus of the *Morea*. The City was anciently call'd *Thermia*, and the Bay *Sinus Thermicus*, and it was formerly adorn'd with many sumptuous publick Buildings, whereof only a Triumphant Arch remains. *St. Paul* preach'd the Gospel and wrote two Epistles to the People of this City; all which denote its ancient Splendor, and tho' by many Revolutions and the *Turkish* Government it be somewhat reduc'd, it is however still a very considerable Place, being a Celebrated Emporium, and a large and populous City, inhabited by *Christians* and *Jews*, as well as *Turks*; and bears the Title of a Metropolitan See. It is encompass'd with old Walls, which are reckon'd to be four Leagues in Circuit, and defended by a Citadel on a Hill on one side, and two Forts on the other. The *Christians* have 30 Churches, and 5 Convents; and the *Jews* 36 Synagogues, and 2 Colleges where-to their Youth resort from all Parts to Study: The Churches are stately, especially that of *St. Mary*; but the *Turks* have taken that as well as *St. Demetrius* the Cathedral, *St. Sophia* and *St. Gabriel* for Mosques. There is a great Traffick here; and the Haven is much resorted to, for Silk, Leather, Iron, Cotton, Wax, Honey, Wooll, Corn, &c. which is chiefly carry'd on by the *Jews*, who are numerous and wealthy. *Salonichi* was first built by *Cassandra* and *Thessalonica*, Daughter to King *Philip*, and Sister to *Alexander the Great*. It was the Birthplace of *Eustathius*, who wrote the Comment on *Homer*, of *Constantius Hermenopolus*, *Demetrius Cy-nodius*, and *Theodorus Gaza*. It always underwent the Fate of *Macedon*, and so was subject to the Greek Emperors, from whom it was snatch'd in 1180. by *William* King of *Sicily*; but soon recover'd by *Andronicus Palæologus*, and sold to the Republick of *Venice*, in 1313. from whom Sultan *Amurath II.* took it, and the *Turks* have ever since possess'd it.

*Amphipolis* Tur. *Embeli*, sometime the Capital of *Macedon*, stands upon the River *Strymon*, which a little below falls into a Bay of the *Archipelago*, and gave Name to it; 60 Miles from *Salonichi* to the North-East. It was heretofore known by the Names of *Urbs Martis*, and *Novem Via*, and is often mention'd in ancient History; for *Aristagoras* the *Milesian* flying from *Darius*, endeavour'd to settle here, but was oppos'd by the *Edonii*; the *Athenians* planted a Colony here, which were cut off by the *Thracians*; afterwards *Agathon* the Son of *Nicia* repell'd the *Edonii*, and planted a Colony. It is an Archbishop's See, and inhabited by some *Christians*; but it has now only its ancient Grandeur to brag on.

*Siderocapsa*, *Sidrus*, *Syderos* & *Scydra*, Procl. a small Town, notable for its Neighbouring Gold Mines, which were discover'd in King *Philip's* Time, and yielded him 1000 Talents every Year they are still wrought, and afford the Grand Seigneur a considerable Revenue. It is a Bishop's See and stands on the South-East of *Salonichi*, near *Mount Athos*.



*Philippi* or *Filippa*, a City at the foot of Mount *Pangæus*, on the confines of *Thrace*, 20 or 30 miles North from *Amphipolis*, is famous for the Battle fought in its neighbouring Fields, where *Brutus* and *Cassius* the Murderers of *Cæsar* were defeated by *Marc Antony* and *Octavius*. Its ancient Splendor is testified by an Amphitheatre almost entire, and other Ruins of Sumptuous Buildings. Christianity was planted there by *St. Paul*, and the People honoured with an Epistle, which is part of our Canon of Scripture; 'tis still an Archbishop's See, but a place of small Habitation.

*Contessa* and *Cavalla*, seated on the *Strymonian* Bay (which runs between *Thrace* and Mount *Athos*) do both give Names to it, being by some call'd *Golfo di Contessa*, and by others *de Cavalla*. *Strymon*, which first gave Name to this Bay and the River on which it stands; is a little distant from *Amphipolis*. *Stagyræ*, now *Libanovæ*, famous for the Birth of *Aristotle*, stands on the West Shore of the same Bay.

Mount *Athos* is often mention'd in Antiquity for its Height: *Pomp. Mela* tells us, That it rises into the Clouds, above the lower Region of the Air: And *Pliny* says, Its Evening Shadow reaches as far as the Island *Lemnos*, which is 60 miles distant: It stands on a Promontory jetting into the Sea, between the Gulph of *Strymonium* or *Contessa*, and the *Sinus Singiticus* or *Golfo di Monte Santo*, about 70 miles East from *Saloniki*: The *Isthmus*, which is 12 Stadia broad, *Xerxes* dug through, and from thence *Athos* is sometimes called an Island. It is now Nam'd *Monte Santo*, from 24 Monasteries which stand upon it, mostly of the Order of *St. Basil*; these are so fully stock'd with the Monks of the Greek Church, and are so well esteem'd, that the Patriarch of *Constantinople*, Elects all his Bishops out of them.

*Peia* 30 miles South-West from *Theffalonica*, and now call'd *Zuchria*, (and by others *Feniza* or *Faniza*, tho' that be only a new Town of the *Turks* built near it) is judg'd to have been a Royal Seat of *Philip* and *Alexander*, which the Marbles and Royal Buildings daily dug up do Testifie.

## ALBANIA *hæd.* Arnaut.

Between *Macedon* and the most Eastern part of the *Venetian* Gulph, and near its Mouth, lies *Albania*, by the *Turks* call'd *Arnaut*: It is sometimes call'd *Albania* Proper, or Upper, to distinguish it from *Epirus* which is the Lower, and bounds it on the South, as the Mountains, *Maritas*, or *Argentaro*, and *Servia* do on the North. It extends about 160 miles from North to South, and about 100 from East to West. The SOIL is Fruitful, producing Generous Wine, Flax, and Cotton, as also Wax in the Woods, and Salt dug out of the Mountains. The Inhabitants make Tapistry, which with the other Commodities they vend abroad.

This with *Epirus*, was the Country of the Famous Prince *George Castriot*, commonly call'd *Scanderbeg*, whose mighty Valour against the *Turks* is Celebrated in History: With a small Army for many Years, he oppos'd the whole *Turkish* Power, and gain'd 22 Battles over them. At his Death he left his Country to the *Venetians*, but they were not able to maintain the Inland part of it, which was soon reduc'd by *Mahomet II.* whose Successors have held it for the

last two Ages. The People are eminently Valiant, and their Horses exceeding Swift, so that their Cavalry are made use of by *Turks*. The chief Towns are

*Scutari*, *Scodia*, *Turc. Iscodar* the Metropolis, is seated on a Rock, near a Lake, whence Issues the River *Boiana*, 25 miles North from the *Venetian* Gulph, about 20 from the Frontiers of *Dalmatia*, and 70 from *Ragusa* to the East, 240 from *Saloniki* to the West, and about 40 from the Mountains to the South. *Baudrand* says, It was the Seat of the ancient Kings of *Illyricum*: It is now a good large City, defended with a Castle seated on a Hill, and has been for these 200 Years Subject to the *Turks*. But the Christians have however a Bishop here, and some Churches.

*Ducagni*, *Ducagnium*, stands on the East side of the River *Drino*, 25 miles from *Scutari* to the East.

*Alessio*, *Lissus*, stands on the same River, 30 miles below *Ducagni*, near its Mouth into the *Adriatick* Sea, and forms a Bay now call'd the Gulph of *Drino*, anciently the *Illyric* Bay. It is by some reckon'd the Capital of *Albania*, and is particularly famous for the Sepulchre of *Scanderbeg*, who died here in 1467. and even the *Turks* have such veneration for him, that they carry away pieces of his Tomb for Relicks, and esteem it as a Charm to animate their Courage in Battle: It is fenced with a Castle, and is the Seat of a Bishop; but Subject to the *Turks*.

*Dolcigno*, *Dulcinium*, *Olcinium*, seu *Ulcinium*, is a safe Port Town, with a Castle, seated on the Gulf of *Venice*, 30 miles South-West from *Scutari*, and 40 West from *Alessio*.

*Antivari*, *Antibarum*, another Port Town seated on a Rock, 10 miles West from *Dolcigno*.

*Croja*, *Croia*, or *Crua*, by *Brietius* still the Metropolis of *Albania*, is an impregnable and inaccessible Fort, seated on the River *Lizane*, 30 miles South from *Alessio*, and as many East from the Sea. By reason of its Strength it was chosen by *Scanderbeg*, for his place of Residence, and by him strongly defended against the frequent Attacks of the *Turks*; but a few Years after his Death they took it.

*Durazzo*, *Drazzi*, the *Dyrrhachium* of the Romans, and *Epidamnus* more anciently; is a noted Sea Port on the Gulph of *Venice*, at the Mouth of the River *Argentaro*, 20 miles South from the Gulph of *Drino*, and 40 South-West from *Alessio*: It is a large, and was formerly a very fair City; Memorable for the Exile of *Cicero* in it, and the Landing of *Pompey* (when he retir'd before *Cæsar*) from *Brundisium* in *Italy*, over against which it stands, and this was therefore the common Passage thither. In early times, viz. A. U. C. 315. this City was Besieg'd by a Company of *Banditti* or *Corfairs*, and the Citizens implor'd the assistance of the *Corinthians*, who were defeated by the *Corfairs*, and these assisted by the *Athenians*, which gave occasion to the *Corinthian* War, and became at last the Leaven as it were of the great *Peloponnesian* War, so famous in the Greek History. Latterly it has been Subject to the *Turks*, since the time of *Bajazet II.* who took it, but it is not much Inhabited by reason of the unwholsomeness of the Air.

*Albanopoli*, an Inland Town seated not far from the head of the River *Drino*, 70 miles East from *Durazzo*, and as many South-East from *Ducagni*, was anciently the Capital of *Albania*, but now destroy'd and but a small Town.

*Ocryda*, *Lychnidæ*, *Turc. Guistandel*, seated upon a Lake of the same Name, whence issues the River



*Drino*, 25 miles South from *Albanopoli*, and 80 South-East from *Durazzo*: an Archbishop's See; but now Subject to the *Turks*.

*La Valona*, *Avon*, *Procl. Auton Navalis*, stands on the Mouth of the Gulph of *Venice*, 40 miles from *Durazzo*, and 60 from the Gulph of *Drino* to the South, and 50 from *Otrida* to the West. It is a very spacious Port, and was formerly a place of Strength, but the *Turks* took it from the *Venetian*, and held it till the late War, when in the Year 1690. they deserted it, upon the taking of *Canina* by the *Venetians*, and the appearance of their Army before it.

Over against *Valona*, about 2 Leagues to Sea, stands the Rocky Island of *Safeno*, a deserted place, and frequented by none but *Turkish* Pirates.

### E P I R U S, or *Canina*.

On the South of *Albania*, along the Coast of the *Ionian* Sea, lies *Epirus* call'd by some *Albania Inferior*, and by others *Canina*, which Name others restrain to the North-part of *Epirus* having *Theffaly* on the North-East, and *Achaia* on the South-East. It is from South-East to North-West near 100 miles in Length, and about 60 in Breadth. It is divided from *Albania* by the Mountains *Chimera*, *clim*, *Montes Arcecerantii*, or the *Ceraunian* Mountains, which by reason of their great height were often torn by Thunder; and from *Theffaly* by the Mountains, *Megrus*, *clim*, *Mens Pindus*, and from *Achaia* by the River *Abelcus*, now *Catichi*. The Soil is good, and especially on Mount *Chimera* the Cattle are exceedingly Fatned.

This Country was Anciently Subject to its own Princes; then was United to the Kingdom of *Macedon*, afterwards Subjected to the *Romans*, and by them very much Ravag'd by reason the Inhabitants often Revoked. Then again to its own Princes, and now to the *Turks*, except some Places which the *Venetians* have regain'd in the late War.

In the Ancient Account of *Albania*, this comprehended the Provinces of *Chacnia*, *Theffrotia*, *Almena*, *Dalopia*, *Amphilecha*, and *Acarminia*. And in the middle of it in the Province of *Theffrotia*, stood the famous City *Dodona*, wherein were Trees that Answer'd, and Vocal Oaks, as the Poets relate. The chief Towns at present are,

*Chimera*, a very strong Town, Seated in the North part of *Epirus* on the Mouth of the Gulf of *Venice*, near the Confines of *Albania*, 50 miles from *Durazzo* to the South, and 20 from the Island *Corfu* to the North. It is a well-built City, and a Place of Trade, the Capital of a Territory of the same Name, and the See of a Bishop, but Subject to the *Turks*.

*Butrinto*, *Butthretum*, *free*, *Butthretus*, a Port Town over-against the Island *Corfu* 35 miles South East from *Chimera*, 100 from the Mountains to the South, and 60 from *Larta* to the North-East. It was formerly a considerable, but now an ordinary Town inhabited chiefly by Fishermen, by reason of the abundance of Fish in the Bay to which it gives Name. It is the See of a Bishop, but has been Subject to the *Turks* above 100 Years.

*Perga*, *Torone*, a Port-Town, with a Castle Subject to the *Venetians*, stands also over-against *Corfu*

20 miles South from *Butrinto*; the *Venetians* gave the Inhabitants the Two Islands on the South of *Corfu*, call'd *Pachsu*, and *Anti-Pachsu*, wherein is very Fat Pasture.

*Larta*, or *Ambracia*, *Ambracia*, and *Ata*. It grew up out of the Ruins of the Ancient City *Ambracia*, some-time the Regal Seat of the Kings of *Epirus*; others make *Ambracia* a different Place. It is seated at the bottom of the *Sinus Ambrachinus* now Gulf of *Larta*, 20 miles from the Sea, 60 from *Butrinto*, and 140 from *Durazzo* to the South-East, 60 from *Lepanto* to the North-West, and 200 from *Saloniki* to the South-West.

*Preveza*, Seated at the Mouth of the Gulf, 20 Miles West from *Larta*, and 40 South East from the Island *Corfu*, stands in the place of the Ancient City *Nicopolis*. It was a place of Strength, and possess'd by the *Turks* till the Year 1681. when the *Venetian* General *Morosini* took it, and by the Treaty of *Carlowitz* it was agreed to be demolished.

Over-against it on the Mouth of the same Bay stands *Actium*, now Cape *Figalo*, Famous for the Naval Battle between *Marc Antony* and *Augustus*, formerly an Eminent City, wherein stood a Temple of *Apollo*, now an ordinary Sea-Port and Promontory.

The Island *CORFU*, *Corcyra*, ut et *Phacacia*, lies in the *Ionian* Sea, over-against the Coast of *Epirus*, but a few Leagues from it, and 30 Leagues from the Coast of *Italy*, extending from South-East to North-West about 40 miles. It was anciently Inhabited by a sort of *Cersairs*, and the People are mention'd in History, particularly in the *Corinthian* War above-mention'd. The Island is possess'd by the *Venetians*, to whom it has been Subject ever since the Year 1382. and enjoys a most fertile Soil, producing Corn, Wine, Oyl, Honey, Flax, Salt, Medicinal Herbs, &c. It is divided into Four parts, and besides many Towns and Villages hath one good City, viz.

*Corfu*, Seated on the Eastern Coast over-against *Butrinto*, and in the Latitude of 40 Degrees; it has a very Capacious Port, and is guarded by Two Castles.

### T H E S S A L Y, *Theffalia*.

The Country next adjoyning to *Epirus* on the East between that and the *Aegean* Sea, and Gulf of *Salonichi*, is *Theffaly*, anciently called *Emonia*, and *Pyrrhaea*, according to *Brictius*. A large part of it is now call'd *Zanna*, and the other part *Comenotiani*. *Macedon* bounds it on the North, and *Achaia*, or *Livadia* on the South. From both which it is divided by Mountains, and also from *Epirus* by Mount *Pindus*, so that it is surrounded with them except on the East, where it opens to the Sea. It enjoys a Fertile Soil, and Healthy Air, and yields all sorts of Grain and Delicious Fruits, such as Oranges, Lemons, Figs, Pomegranates, Grapes, Olives, &c. The Ancient Inhabitants were Noted for their Courtesy, but accused of Gluttony and Sorcery. In the Tradition of those Times they were accounted the first that tam'd Horses, and set out Ships. *Demetrian* Reign'd here contemporary, with *Cecrops* the first King of *Athens*, in whose time happen'd the Deluge (by the overflowing of the River *Penens*) known by



by his Name, and mention'd in History. And to his Sons are attributed the Honour of giving Name to many parts of Greece. as *Hellen* to *Hellas*; *Doris* to the *Dorians*. near Mount *Parnassus*. *Xuthus* his Third Son was Father to *Acheus* Founder of the *Acheans*, and son from whom the *Ionians* or Inhabitants of *Attica*.

The Modern *Thessalians* are for the most part *Christians*. but Subject to the *Turk*. remarkable for their Cruelty and Warlike Disposition. The Extent of *Thessaly* is about 120 miles either way, and the chief Towns in it are,

*Larissa*, *Turc. Asababa*, the Capital, seated on the Banks of the River *Peneus*, about 40 miles above its Mouth into the Gulph of *Saloniki*, 80 from *Saloniki* to the South, 50 from the Island *Negropont* to the North-West, and 100 from *Lepanto* to the North-East, and very near Mount *Olympus*. It is one of the most flourishing Cities of Greece; and hath been sometime honour'd with the Grand Seignior's Residence (specially during the War of *Candia*) who hath a Palace here in the upper-part of the Town. It is the See of an Archbishop, and adorn'd with good Buildings, particularly a very fair Stone Bridge of Nine Arches over the River. This was the Birth place of the famous *Achilles*; It was taken by the *Bulgarians* in 981. and by the *Turks* in the 15th. Century.

*Tricali* stands upon the same River *Peneus*, about 50 miles West from *Larissa*, and was formerly Notable for a fine Temple Dedicated to *Esculapius*.

*Zanna*, from which all this part of the Country is Nam'd, is a well built City, Seated on a Lake of the same Name, 40 miles from *Tricali*, and as many North from *Lepanto*.

*Scotusa*, a small City, and the See of a Bishop, is seated 18 miles West from *Larissa*. In this place there was an Oracle of Old not inferior to that of *Delphi*. And near it *Q. Flaminius* with the Roman Army obtain'd a signal Victory over *Philip* the Son of *Demetrius*.

*Pharsalus*, *Farfa*, Famous for the Battle fought in its Fields between *Pompey* and *Cesar*, wherein the former was intirely Defeated; whence *Lucan's* Poem of this Battle is Entituled *Pharsalia*; is seated 30 miles South from *Larissa*, as many North from *Zeitton*, and is the See of an Archbishop. But we dare not determine this to be the Ancient *Pharsalus*, because *Cuverius* places that in *Esstotis*, and then it ought to lie more to the Westward, and *Laurenburger* in his Map places it in *Pelasgia*, 50 miles North from *Larissa*, whereas *Saxson*, and the Modern Maps place *Pharsa*, as we have said in the mid-way between *Larissa* and *Zeitton*, and about 20 West from the Gulph of *Armiro*.

*Demetriada*, *Demetrias*, 50 milest South-East from *Larissa*, seated upon the Gulf which is sometimes call'd by its Name, otherwise Nam'd *Sinus Pelasgius*, or *Pegasicus* from the City

*Pegasa*, now *Volo*, on the North-side of the same Bay, 20 miles East from *Demetriada*, 50 East from *Larissa*, and 40 North from the Island *Negropont*. It hath a spacious Harbour, and was a strong Fortrefs after the Ancient manner, and in the late War made use of by the *Turks*, for a Magazine for the Provisions they gather'd in the Neighbouring Provinces. till General *Morosini* took it, and found there a vast quantity of Victuals, and 27 Pieces of Cannon; which having carried off, he set Fire to the Magazines, Houses, and Mosques, and demolish'd the Walls.

*Armiro*, *Eretria*, at the bottom of the same Bay, and gives the present Name to it, being still'd in the Modern Maps *Golfo del Armiro*, stands over-against *Demetriada*, 20 miles South from it, and 25 North from *Negropont*, is an Ancient place, being mention'd by *Strabo*, *Thucydides*, *Polybius*, *Stephanus*, *Livy*, and others; and by some reckon'd the Port whence the *Argonauts* set Sail; and that it was here that *Xerxes* Fleet was so sorely shatter'd by Tempest, that Greece was deliver'd from his intended Invasion.

*Zeitton*, or *Zeitton*, *Thebe Pthioice*, or *Thessalica*, seated upon the *Sinum Malicum*, gives the Modern Name to that Bay which runs between, into the Land of *Thessaly* over-against *Negropont*, being now call'd *Golfo de Zeitton*, it stands 30 miles from *Armiro*, and near 60 from the River *Peneus* to the South, and 30 from the Shoar of *Negropont* to the West.

*Capo di san Georgia*, *Magnesia Promontorium*, a Cape with a Sea-Town on the North of the *Golfo del Armiro*, 20 miles from it, and 30 East from *Pegasa*, and not far from the Mount *Pelion*.

Before we leave *Thessaly*, we must take notice of Mount *Olympus* so Famed in Antiquity for its height, the Top reaching above the middle Region of the Air it stands on the North of *Larissa*, and is a continued Ridge for many miles.

*Ossa*, more to the South on the other side the River *Peneus*, and *Pelion* somewhat more to the East are Two other Notable Mountains. And between *Olympus* and *Ossa* on the Banks of the River *Peneus*, lie the fruitful and pleasant Valleys of *Tempe*,

## ACHAIA; HELLAS, five *Grecia* *Propria*, hodie LIVADIA.

This Province tho' the last in our Description, may be reckon'd the most considerable part of Greece, as comprehending the famous Cities of *Thebes*, *Athens*, *Delphi*, *Pythia*, &c. also the Mountain *Parnassus*, *Helicon*, and other places most Eminent in Ancient History. And it is plain that it was Anciently esteem'd the principal part by its Name being Communicated to the Whole; and the Ancient Geographers by way of Excellence term this *Grecia Propria*. Its Name of *Achaia* seems to have been borrow'd from a small Province in *Peloponesus* so call'd. And the present, of *Lavadia*, is most probably taken from the Town so call'd, of which we shall speak in its Place.

*Achaia* lies on the South of *Thessaly*, from which it is divided by Mount *Oeta*, now *Lacha*, having on the South, the *Morea*, divided from it by the *Corinthicus Sinus*, now *Golfo di Lepanto*, the *Corinthian Isthmus*, and the *Mare Saronicum*, now *Golfo di Engia*. On the West the *Ionian Sea*; on the N. W. by *Epirus*; and on the East the *Aegean Sea* and the *Euripan Strait*, which separates it from *Negropont*, and is thence denominat'd *Golfo de Negropont*. It is a Pleasant and Fruitful Country, extending from East to West along the Sea-Coast about 50 miles.

It was divided, as we have shewn in our Table of Ancient Greece, into Eight Parts: At present being Subject to the *Turks*, who are not very Polite, we cannot pretend to set down any Division; but but the Principal Towns are,

THEBES,



**THEBES**, *Thebe*, Surnam'd *Beotica*, being the Capital of that Province and *Ogygia*, from *Ogyges* the King of *Beotia*; also *Hepiapylos*, from its seven Gates; at present by the Inhabitants call'd *Triva*, and by others *Striva*, or *Strides*, as it is written in the common Maps; stands on a rising Ground near the River *Asopa*, 20 miles from the Gulph of *Negropont* to the South-West, 40 from the Isthmus of *Corinth* to the North-East, and 150 miles from *Lepanto* to the East, in the Latitude of 38 Degrees, 22 Minutes. It was anciently a very considerable City, and with the Country about it, one of the most powerful States of Greece. At present, as Sir Geo. Wheeler informs us, it is reduc'd to a small Town, and hardly Inhabited but in that Place, which was the Cattle of *Cadmus*; so that tho' the extent of it may be near 3 miles in Circuit, the Inhabitants are not reckon'd above 3 or 4000, whereof the greatest part are Christians, they having several Churches, and an Archbishop, whose Cathedral is Nam'd *Panagia Chrysochoritia*, whereas the Turks have only two Mosques. As to its ancient State, 'tis said to have been built by *Cadmus*, who, as the Poets Story, being sent by his Father *Agenor* in quest of his Sister *Europa*, carry'd away by *Jupiter*, after many fruitless Journies, coming to *Beotia*, he was admonish'd by the Oracle, to build a City, to which he added a Fort, which always after bore his Name. Many Stories are related of *Cadmus*, that he Kill'd a Dragon, whose Teeth being Sowed in the Ground, grew up Armed Men; that he was the Son of a King of *Sidoniz*, whereas in Truth he was but the Son of a Cock; that he brought Letters into Greece. Some say he had a large Posterity that Reigned after him; others that he lived to see the end of his Family, and he with his Wife, were turn'd into Serpents; and that *Amphion* expell'd him out of *Thebes*, and built the Walls of it by the Harmony of his Lute. Thus far the Poets. Ancient History deduces the Princes of *Thebes* from *Cadmus*, and name *Amphion* as the 5th Prince, who expell'd the Line of *Cadmus* and Wall'd the City. His Son *Lagus* succeeded, and him *Oedipus*, whose Story is well known; his Sons *Eteocles*, and *Polynices*, quarrelling, caused the famous Siege of *Thebes*. *Cadmus* is reckon'd to have been Contemporary with *Josuah*, and the *Theban* Siege to have happen'd 37 Years after that of *Troy*. King *Philip* of *Macedon* took the City, and put the Garrison to the Sword; and afterwards *Alexander* quite destroy'd it, leaving no House standing, but that of the Poet *Pindar*. *Cassander*, the Son of *Antipater*, and King of *Macedon*, Rebuilt it. *Hercules*, and the God *Bacchus*, as well as the Poet *Pindar*, are said to be Natives of this Place; as also the two great Captains, *Epaminondas* and *Pelopidas*. But of all its ancient Grandeur, there now only remain some Vestigia of the *Cadmean* Fort, and some Inscriptions that certify its former State. In the Suburbs is seen a most clear Fountain, suppos'd to be the ancient *Dirce*. It must be noted, that there were other Cities of the same name, which are mention'd in History, as *Thebes* in *Cicilia*, which was Sack'd by the Greeks, when they went against *Troy*. *Thebes* in *Agypt*, near *Troy*, the largest of that Name; it had 100 Gates, and gave Name to the Province *Thebesus*. Another in *Ionia*: Another in *Theffaly*, &c.

*Aulis*, a Sea-port over-against *Negropont*, about 20 miles East from *Thebes*, was famous for its Har-

bour, and was the Rendezvous of the Grecian Fleet when they Sailed to the Siege of *Troy*.

*Orcomene*, *Orchemenus*, formerly celebrated for its Horses, stands 30 miles West from *Thebes*, and near the Centre of the Country, a few miles North from the Lake of *Thebes*, anciently *Copias Lacus*. Here was a very rich Temple, Dedicated to the Graces, now a strong Castle.

*Livadia*, *Libadia*, whence the Country is Nam'd, stands on the Gulph of *Lepanto*, about 20 miles West from the Isthmus of *Corinth*. Here was anciently the Altar of *Trophonius*, celebrated for its Oracle. It is Inhabited chiefly by Greeks and Jews, who drive a Trade in Corn, &c.

*Plataea*, a City often mention'd in History, but especially on account of the notable Battle fought between *Mardonius* the Persian General, and *Pausanias* the Lacedemonian, wherein the vast Army of Persians were Routed, and 40000 Kill'd, by a handful of Greeks, which finish'd the Ruine of *Xerxes*. It stands between *Thebes* and *Athens*.

**ATHENS**, *Athens*, by the Turks *Athina*, corruptly *Saitina*, *Satinas*, and *Satines*, as it is written in the Modern Maps, is seated near the Sea, 40 miles from *Thebes*, and a little more from *Negropont* to the South, 40 miles East from the Isthmus of *Corinth*, and about the same distance West from Cape *Raphai*, the utmost Eastern Land of *Achaia*. It was anciently the Metropolis of Greece, as well as the Capital of *Attica*, and one of the most famous and flourishing Cities of the Universe; whether you consider its Antiquity, Power, Grandeur of its Republick, Senate and Academy; or especially that it was a long time the Seat of the Muses, and the Nursery of all Arts and Sciences, which made it Renown'd throughout all Nations. And we have *Cicero's* Testimony, that the *Athenians* were perfect Masters of Politicks, Philosophy, and Husbandry: That they were the first Founders of Law and Equity: And that they transmitted these things to the rest of Mankind: It is at present the Capital of a Duchy, which before the Turks took it, was subject to its own Dukes, and had the good Fortune to escape the Turkish Fury, better than the other Cities of Greece, being still a good large City, well Inhabited, and place of a pretty good Trade for Wine, Oil, Fish, &c. the Town standing but 2 miles from the Sea, call'd the Gulph of *Engia*, which opens to the *Archipelago*. It is Water'd with the Rivers *Ciphisus*, and *Ilissus*; whence by Aqueducts under Ground, the Water is convey'd into the City, to the publick Fountains, and private Houses. The SOIL round it is exceeding fruitful, and yields very rich Wines, incomparable Olives, as well as Corn, and Pasture in good plenty. And the AIR is so pure, that when the Plague rages round it, *Athens* is Healthful. The City is encompass'd on the North-side with the Mountain *Parnus*; on the North-East with that of *Pentilicis* 6 miles off; and the Hills *Coridalia* now *Daphnibouni*, on the North-West; and *Hemattus*, or *Tellibouni*, on the South-East; and on the Sea-side stand the Citadel, a mile and an half in length, but it is not very strong. Near the Town stands a pointed Rock, now call'd from the Chappel on the Top St. George's Mountain, which is probably the *Anchermus* of *Pausanias*: The River *Ilissus* flows round it by the Hill, heretofore nam'd *Museum*, from the Poet *Museus*, whence it falls into the *Ciphisus* which

pass



passes through a Wood of Olive Trees, at least 6 miles long now the greatest Wealth and Ornament of the *Athenian* Plain. In the Town the Houses stand very close, and the Streets are narrow. The Haven formerly known by the name of *Portus Phalerus*, was formerly a very good one, but now much choak'd up with Sand. The Inhabitants are reckoned about 10000, whereof three parts are always *Christian* *Greeks* and no *Jews* are admitted. *Christianity* was in a pretty good State here, when the Town was under the *Turks*, the Archbishop having then a Revenue of 4000 Dollars *per Annum*, and the *Christians* enjoyed no less than 200 Churches in and about this City, besides several Convents. The *Turks* had 5 Mosques, whereof one is the ancient Temple of *Minerva*.

As to the ancient State of *Athens*, we are told it was Founded by *Cecrops*, who Nam'd the Town *Cecropia*, and Reign'd King there 50 Years; this is suppos'd to have happen'd soon after the *Deucalian* Flood, 800 Years before the building of *Rome*, and 550 before the Birth of *Christ*; He Enacted many Excellent Laws, Erected the Council *Areopagus*, afterwards so celebrated in the World, and added other Cities to his Kingdom; which daily encreas'd in Wealth, Grandeur and Strength. In the time of *Erichonius* the 4th King, the Name of the City was alter'd to *Athens*, in Honour of *Minerva*, whom the *Greeks* call'd by that Name, and to whom the City was dedicated. It continued a Monarchy for near 50 Years, till *Codrus* by his singular Magnanimity, threw himself among the Enemies in Battle, that by his Death he might save his Country; the Oracle having predicted that the party who lost their King, should be Victors. After which the *Athenians* would not admit of a King, that no Man might enjoy the Honour that *Codrus* had had, whose Memory they so much Reverenced. They were afterwards Govern'd by Magistrates, call'd *Archontes*, under whom they most Valiantly defended their Liberties and Territories against all Enemies, even the numerous Armies of *Persians* under *Darius* and *Xerxes* not excepted. The *Lacedemonians* were their constant Enemy, with whom they contended for the Sovereignty of *Greece*. The *Spartans* once took the City and set 30 Tyrants over it, but they soon threw off that Yoke, and with the assistance of the *Thebans* under *Epaminondas*, entirely defeated them, and thereby extended their Dominion exceedingly. But at last growing into Luxury, they were Effeminated, and became a Prey to the *Macedonian* Monarch. Under the *Romans* they were Protected and enjoy'd Liberty; except when *Sylla* to revenge their siding with *Mithridates*, Plunder'd the City, and put the Inhabitants to the Sword. Among the Emperors, *Constantine* the Great was their peculiar Patron and Benefactor, Honouring their Governour with the Title of Arch-Duke: And *Constantine II.* gave them several Islands in the *Archipelago*. In the time of *Arcadius*, they were miserably Haras'd and Pillag'd by the *Goths*, and underwent divers Revolutions afterwards, till at last it was taken by the *Turks*, in 1455. and remain'd subject to them, till the Year 1687, when the *Venetians* happily retook it after a short Siege. The *Christian* Religion was planted here by *St. Paul*, as we are told in Sacred Scripture, and one of the *Areopagus*, with other Persons of the first Quality were his Converts.

The present Vestigia shew the ancient Splendor of its Buildings. Sir *George Wheeler* gives us an Account of those Monuments, too large to insert

here, having only room to name the chief of 'em; which are the *Acropolis*, a Fortrefs built on a Rock, on the West-end of the Town, with inaccessible Precipices on every side but the North West, where you mount by a steep Ascent to the Entrance. This is suppos'd to have been the first City, round which the Buildings encreas'd, and this serv'd afterwards for a Cattle, as it still does, but is now separate from the Town, the Houses about it being fallen down: Toward the bottom of the Hill are seen the remains of ancient Walls, suppos'd to be those built by *Theseus*, when he enlarg'd the City. The Temple of *Minerva*, the most beautiful Piece of Antiquity, stands in the Citadel: The Theatre of *Bacchus*, on the South-side of the Cattle: The Magnificent Pillars, Gate, and Aqueduct of the Emperor *Adrian*: The Stadium, where the Publick Games call'd *Panathenæa* were exercis'd, as also the publick Races, Fighting of Wild-Beasts, &c. The Ruins of the *Areopagus*: The Odeum, or Musick Theatre: The Temples of *Theseus*, *Augustus*, and *Jupiter Olympus*: The Tower of *Andronicus Cyrrhæstes*, or Temple of the Eight Winds: The *Phanari*, or Lanthorn of *Demosthenes*: These are still to be seen; but the Academy where *Plato* taught his Philosophy; the *Portico*, where *Zeno* the Cynick held his Lectures; and the *Lycæum* which was the College where the incomparable *Aristotle* taught Philosophy, are all effac'd.

*Marathon*, still call'd *Marathona*, and *Marafon*, seated on the Gulph of *Negropont*, 40 miles North-East from *Athens*, and 60 South-East from *Thebes*, is now an ordinary Village, but formerly a considerable Town; memorable for the great Victory of the *Athenians* under *Miltiades*, over the *Persians*; wherein 11000 of the former beat 60000 of the latter, having Kill'd no less than 100000 of them. It is also mention'd by *Ovid*, on account of *Theseus*, who drag'd a Wild Bull through the Town, and Sacrific'd it to *Apollo* at *Delphos*.

*Megara*, *Lisæa* vel *Lissa*, anciently the Seat of a Monarch, and afterwards a Republick, who were considerable enough to maintain Wars against the *Athenians* and others, and Plant a Colony in *Sicily*; it was honour'd with the Birth of *Euclid* the great Mathematician, and gave Name to the Country round it; is now but a poor Village, seated about 10 miles from the Sea, 30 miles West from *Athens*, and 20 East from the Isthmus of *Corinth*. The Old City stood on two little Rocks, where some of its Footsteps remain, but at present it consists of about 3 or 400 sorry Huts rather than Houses, on one of those Rocks. The *Turks* had formerly a Veyvode here, but a Party of the Pirates that frequently infested these Coasts, carried him away, which has frighted all others from thence; so that none but *Christians* are its Inhabitants.

*Eleusis*, now call'd *Lepina*, a Sea-Town, 20 miles West from *Athens*, tho' now a poor Village, was formerly a considerable City, and sometime even Vied with *Athens*. But it has been so often pillag'd by Pirates, that it is now in a manner destitute of Inhabitants. The stately Temple of *Ceres*, made the City much resorted to, and the Ruins of it do still invite Travellers to Visit it; where are visible marks of a most superb Structure, all of a very fine white Marble, adorn'd with excellent Carvings and Statues.

*Delphi*, *Sadona*, now *Castri*, the Capital of *Phocis*, was anciently much Celebrated for its Temple and Oracle of *Apollo*; the Temple was a Magnificent Structure, enrich'd with innumerable Gifts, which

render'd



render'd it exceeding Glorious: In it was a dark Cave, where the Priestess Nam'd *Pythia*, and the Cave *Pythium*, sitting on a Tripod or Stool with three Legs, receiv'd the Inspiration of the God, Swelling, Foaming, and Raving, like one Possess'd, or Distracted: The Answers were always Ambiguous, and so Mysterious, that it was difficult to understand 'em; and yet it was plainer than others, for *Hermes* the *Philosopher* says, that those that did not understand the Answers at *Dodona*, came hither for an Explication. The Town of *Casiri*, which sprung out of the Ruins of *Delphi*, consists only of about 200 Houses, Inhabited most by *Christians*, who have 5 or 6 Churches, and the *Turks* but 1 Mosque. It is surrounded with craggy Rocks. *Delphi* stands in the middle of *Greece*, and by ancient *Greeks* call'd the Navel of the Earth, the Poets telling that *Jupiter* let fly two Eagles, one from the East, and the other from the West, that he might discover the middle, and those Eagles met at this Place. Near it stands the Famous Mountain

*Parnassus*, Sacred to *Apollo* and the *Muses*; the high Cliffs of it appear in two points, which makes it to be call'd *Biceps Parnassus*, and between 'em the Water falls down after Rain or Snow in great abundance, and hath almost worn them asunder: And just below the Clift rises a Spring with a very plentiful Source of Water which is undoubtedly the ancient *Castalis*, wherein the *Pythian* Prophetess and the Poets that pretended to Inspiration, us'd to Bath themselves, and drink of its Waters. It has Marble Steps at its descent, and Niches for Statues cut into the Rock. This Stream running down a steep Precipice, falls into the River *Pleistos* and separates Mount *Cirphis* from *Parnassus*, whence it runs by *Crissa*, and falls into the Bay of *Salona*.

Not far from *Parnassus*, but more Eastward, and reckon'd in the Limits of *Boeotia*, stands

*Helicon*, the other Mountain Consecrated to *Apollo*.

*Lepanto*, *Naupactus* ant *Naupactum*, now call'd *Epatos* by the *Greeks*, and *Einebachri* by the *Turks*, is the chief City on the Gulph, whereto it hath lately communicated its Name, tho' formerly it was denominat'd of *Corinth*. It stands near the Straight of the *Dardanelis*, 40 miles from *Delphi*, 80 from the *Corinthian* Isthmus, and 120 from *Athens* to the West, 120 from the Island *Corfu* to the South-East, and not above 8 Leagues from the opposite Shoar of the *Morea* to the North. It is built on the side of a high Hill, rising up from the Shoar, in four several Stages, between every one of which is a Wall, and at the bottom lies the Port, of Oval form, whose Mouth is so narrow that a Chain may be drawn cross it, and it is defended by a small Castle on each side with Cannon; and this Harbour is lin'd

with Walls, which appear of ancient Structure; but the Port cannot admit large Ships, because the Mouth is shallow: Neither are the *Christian* Ships of bulk permitted to come up to the Castle, but lay at *Patras*, on the *Peloponnesian* Shoar. It is a place of Trade for *Turky* Leather, Oil, Tobacco Rice, Barly, &c. And on each side of the Town, under the Mountain (which is probably the ancient *Corax*) fruitful Valleys are stretch'd out towards the Sea; that Westward is Planted with Olive-Trees, Vineyards, and Corn; and the other side is divided into Gardens of Oranges, Citrons and Limons; it is also Water'd with many fresh Streams that issue from the Mountain, and shadow'd with plain Trees. The Wine here is the best in *Greece*. This is the Account Sir *George Wheeler* gives us of this Place, which must needs be very Pleasant, and would undoubtedly be well Inhabited, if the *Turks* did not treat the *Christians* ill, inasmuch that the Archbishop is oblig'd to live at *Arta*. The Emperor *Manuel Paleologus*, gave this City to the *Venetians*, in the Year 1408. who Fortify'd it and made it so strong, that in 1475 it was able to resist *Mahomet* the Great, who Besieg'd it with an Army of 30000 Men. But *Bajazet* II. in 1498, partly by the Power of 150000 Men, and partly by Corrupting the Governor, took it. In the late War. Anno 1697, the *Venetians* retook it, after a few Hours Battery; having just before dishearten'd the *Turks*, by the taking of *Petras*, the *Dardanelis*, and other Places: But by the Treaty of *Carlowitz* in 1699, the *Venetians* were oblig'd to quit *Lepanto*, and demolish the Castle call'd *Romelia*.

Not far from hence happen'd a most memorable Sea-Fight between the *Christians* and *Turks*, on the 2d. of Octob. 1571. Wherein the *Venetian* Fleet consisting of 210 Gallies, 6 Galeasses, and 23 great Transport Ships, obtain'd a most signal Victory over the *Turkish* Fleet, consisting of 200 Gallies, and 70 Frigats, whereof 130 Gallies were taken, many more burnt and sunk, 30000 of their Men kill'd, and near 20000 *Christian* Slaves set at Liberty; with the loss of only 3000 Men, on the *Christian* side.

A few Leagues to the West of *Lepanto*, and 20 Leagues East from the Island *Cefalonia*, is the Straight of the Gulph of *Lepanto*, guarded by two Castles. The two Promontories that make the Straight were anciently Nam'd *Rhium* and *Antirhium*, the former on the *Peloponnesian* side, now nam'd the Castle of *Morea* or *Patras*, and the latter on the *Achaian* Shoar now call'd *Capa Moliceo*, and the Castle *Romelia*. These Castles are strong and well provided with Cannon; and are Nam'd the *Dardanelis* of *Lepanto*, in allusion to those of the *Hellepont*.



## CHAP. III.

## OF PELOPONNESUS, or the MOREA.

ON the South of *Achaia* lies the Peninsula of the *Morea*, join'd to the Continent by the small Isthmus denominat'd from *Corinth*, because that City stands upon it; but otherwise surrounded by the Sea. On the North the Gulphs of *Lepanto* and *Engia* flow between it and *Achaia*; the Gulph of *Patras* between it and *Cefalonia* on the North-West; the *Ionian* Sea on the South-West; the *Mer de Sapienza*, and the Sea of *Candia* on the South; and the *Aegean* Sea on the East. It lies between 36 and 38 Degrees of Latitude, and between 40 and 44 Degrees of Longitude, comprehending about 150 Miles in Breadth.

This Country hath been known by different Names in several Ages: It was at first call'd *Argos*, with the Addition of *Achaicum*, to distinguish from *Argos Peloponicum* or *Thessaly*. Afterwards *Ægialia*, from *Ægius* a King of the *Sicyonians*: Then *Apia*, from *Apis* the third King of *Argos*: And at length *Peloponnesus*, from *Pelops*, the Son of *Tantalus* who brought a Colony hither, out of *Phrygia*, and Reign'd there for some time. The Modern Name of *Morea*, is said to have been deriv'd from *Morus*, a Mulberry Tree, call'd in *Greek* *Μαῖα*, either because the Form of it resembles the Form of that Leaf, or because those Trees grow plentifully here. Others make it deriv'd from *Romea*, by a Change of the Letters. And again, others say, the *Moors* gave it the Name.

This Peninsula is the most Noble of all *Europe*, whether we consider the Courage and Virtue of its ancient Inhabitants, the Splendor of their Cities, and Power of their States, or the Fertility of its SOIL, which produces plenty of Corn, Wine, Oyl, most delicious Fruits, and all that can contribute to the Delight as well as Necessaries of Life. The Mountains, fill'd with Game and Medicinal Plants, were Celebrated by the ancient Poets; the most Remarkable are, Mount *Cyllene* in *Arcadia*, on which *Maja* brought forth *Mercury*. 2. *Menalus*, Consecrated to the God *Pan*, so call'd from *Menalus*, the Son of *Lycan*. 3. *Minthe*, now *Oline*. 4. *Nonacris*, where the River *Styx* takes its Rise. 5. *Taigolus*, &c.

The Principal Rivers are, 1. *Carbon* or *Orfea*, anciently call'd *Alpheus*, and fam'd for its Virtue, in taking away Spots and Blemishes in the Skin:

The Poets attribute a miraculous Course to this River, through the *Ionian* Sea, till it intermixeth with the Fountain *Aethusa*, in *Sicily*, because it is often swallow'd up in the Earth, and rises again with greater Force; but it really rises in the Mountain *Stymphalus*, runs through *Arcadia* and receives the Rivers *Celaden* and *Amarinthe*, with 140 other Rivulets, and falls into the Gulph of *Castel di Torrese*. 2. *Eurotas* or *Valali Patamos*, which rises in *Arcadia*, runs through *Laconia*, and falls into the Gulph of *Pastel Rampari*. 3. *Planizza*, formerly call'd *Inachus*, and *Haliacmon*. 4. *Pamissus* or *Spirnazza*, that falls into the Gulph of *Coron*, near *Calamata*. 5. *Styx*, whose Waters are Deadly, thro' their excessive Coldness, which gave occasion to the Poets to fain it to be one of the Rivers of Hell.

The Inhabitants are esteem'd Ingenious and Warlike, imitating their Ancestors, who maintain'd a War against the *Athenians* for 27 Years, which is the Subject of the excellent Histories of *Thucydides* and *Xenophon*. *Pausanias* reckons but three Nations here, viz. the *Achaians*, *Arcadians* and *Dorians*. But, according to *Ptolemy* it was anciently divided into eight Parts; tho' *Cluverius* reckons but six, as we have shewn in our Table (the other two, *Corinthia* and *Sicyonia*, being by him included in *Achaia propria*) wherein were comprehended many powerful States, as, the *Lacedemonians*, *Corinthians*, *Sicyonians*, *Argives*, *Arcadians* &c. whose Actions are notably remembred in History. After many Revolutions the whole Country became subject to the Emperor *Manuel Comnenus* about the Year 1150. who divided it at his Death among his seven Sons; these Princes were call'd *Despotes*, and tho' appointed, and subordinate to the Emperor, were in a manner Absolute at Home; and the Emperor seldom putting by the next of kin, it was also Hereditary. *Demetrius* and *Thomas*, the Brothers of *Constantine Paleologus*, were the last of these; for in their time the Turkish Sultan *Mahomet II.* took it, and beat out the *Venetians* that were then upon it. Since when they always held it, and maintain'd a *Sangiack* at *Modon*, till in the late War, the *Venetians* under General *Morosini* Re-conquer'd it, and by the Treaty at *Carlowitz*, the whole *Morea* is entirely resign'd by the *Turks* to the *Venetians*.

It is now usually distinguish'd into Four Parts, viz.

I. The Dutchy of *Clarenza*, bounded on the North by the Gulph of *Lepanto*, on the East by *Saccania*, on the West by the Gulph of *Patras*, and on the South by *Zaconia* and *Be'velore*. Containing the old Districts of *Achaia* proper, and *Sicyonia*. The most Remarkable Towns are,

II. *Belvedere*, extended between the River *Carbon* or *Orfea*, which parts it from *Clarenza* on the North, the Sea of *Sapienza* on the South, *Zaconia* on the East, and the *Ionian* Sea on the West. It contains the ancient *Messenia* and *Elis*. The chief Towns are,

*Modon*,  
*Be'vedere*,  
*Coron*,  
*Calamata*,  
*Navarino*,  
*Olympia*.



III. *Laconia*, or *Braccio di Mana*, the largest of the Four, comprehending the ancient *Arcadia* and *Laconia*, and is situated between *Clarenza* on the North, *Saccina* on the East, *Bevedere* on the West, and the Sea of *Argos* on the South.

*Malvasia*.  
*Mistira*, or *Lacedemon*.  
*Zarnata*.  
*Chicicfa*.  
*Megalopolis*, or *Leontari*.  
*Colochina*.

IV. *Saccina*, or *Romania Minor*, comprehending the ancient *Argia*, *Sicyonia* and *Cinuria*. It is seated between the Gulph of *Engia* on the North, and that of *Napoli* on the South, *Clarenza* on the West, and the *Ægean Sea* on the East.

*Napoli di Romanica*.  
*Cerinth*.  
*Argos*.

*Patras*, *Patra* call'd *Badra* and *Balubatra* by the *Turks*, is seated on a Hill near the Sea, at a little distance from the Mountain formerly nam'd *Cerynea*, not above 10 Miles from the Mouth of the Gulph *Lepanto* to the South, near 20 Leagues from the Coasts of the Island *Cefalonia* to the East, and 90 Miles from the Isthmus of *Cerinth* to the West. It was Founded (according to *Pausanias*) by one *Eumelus*, who was instructed in the Arts of Husbandry and Architecture, by *Triptolemus*, and call'd the place *Patra*: afterwards when the *Ionians* were expelled from *Peloponnesus* *Actaia*, another Benefactor, nam'd *Patrus*, very much enlarg'd it, so as to show up the old *Acta*, and gave it his Name. It is commonly written in the Maps *Paleo Patra*, or *Paleo Patras*. It was ruin'd some time after, in the War between the *Aetolians* and the *Gauls*, and was in that State till the time of *Augustus Caesar*, who having made use of its Harbour for his Navy, took notice of the Town, and conferr'd many Privileges on the Inhabitants he invited to it from the Neighbouring Towns, calling it *Colonia Augusta Acta Patrensis*. It is a considerable City, very populous, especially of *Jews*; a Place of good Trade, and the See of an Archbishop. It is defended by a strong Castle, built on the highest point of the Hill, from whence there is an easy Descent every way to a fruitful Valley, well planted with Oranges, Lemons and Citrons, much esteem'd for their delicious Taste: In these Gardens, besides a great number of tall Cedars, there is a famous Cypress Tree, perhaps the oldest and biggest in the World, being 16 Feet round, and the Branches shooting out 20 Feet an end. In ancient Times the Goddess *Diana* was Worship'd here in a most cruel manner; for a Beautiful young Man and Maid were Annually Sacrific'd to her; till by the Preaching of St. *Andrew*, *Euppius* was Converted to Christianity, and the horrid Superstition laid aside. But afterward that Apostle suffer'd Martyrdom here, being Crucify'd by order of *Ægeus*, the Pro-Consul of the Province. The Christian Religion however was so well Planted by him, that it continu'd to flourish, and the Archbishop in the Primitive Ages, was Honour'd with the second Place in the Councils; and at present hath a Thousand Churches under his Jurisdiction. In the time of the *Despotes* of the *Morea*, it enjoy'd the Title of a Dutchy, and was sold by the last of these Princes to the State of *Venice*, in the Year 1405. from whom the *Turks* took it in 1463. The *Venetians* under the famous *And. Doria*, recover'd it in 1533, but lost it again the next Year, and the *Turks* continu'd Masters of it till the late War, when in the Year 1687. it was taken by the *Venetian* General *Moresini*, and is now subject to that State.

This City gives Name to the Gulph or Sea that flows between the Coasts of the *Morea*, and the Island *Cefalonia*.

*Clarenza* or *Chiarenza*, which gives Name to the Dutchy, stands upon the Gulph of *Patras*, 25 Miles South from that City. This is suppos'd to be the ancient *Cyllene*, and was sometime of great Note, the Capital of the Dutchy, and under its own Princes; it was also a place of Trade, having then a commodious Haven, but is now choak'd with Sand: And the Condition of the Town is so far alter'd, that there remains hardly any Footsteps of its former Grandeur. *P. Mela* honours this place with the Birth of *Mercury*, tho' others impute it to a Hill in *Arcadia*, call'd *Cyllene*, and thence is he call'd *Cyllenius*. The Town *Cyllene* was anciently the Sea-Port to the City *Elis*, and a commodious Harbour for Ships, that come from *Sicily*. But some are of Opinion, that not *Chiarenza*, but *Antiradia*, stands in the place of the ancient *Cyllene*.

*Caminitza* a little Town upon the River *Evenus* about 12 Miles South from *Patras*, is thought to be the ancient *Olenus*, which *Strabo* and *Ptolomy* call a Town of *Achaia* in the *Peloponnesus*, Built by *Olenus*, the Son of *Vulcan*. It was an Episcopal See under the Archbishop of *Patras*.

*Modon*, anciently call'd *Methone*, now *Maitune* or *Mutum* by the *Turks*, is seated on the Southern Shoar of the *Morea*, near the Cape, over against the small Island of *Sapienza*, about 140 Miles South from *Patras*. It hath a fair commodious Haven and is a Strong, Rich and Trading City, dignify'd with a Bishop's See, and was the Place of Residence of the *Turkish* Sangiack, or Governor of the *Morea*. This was one of the seven Cities which *Agamemnon* promis'd to *Achilles*, and was at that time possess'd by *Menelaus* King of *Lacedemon*. In the *Actian War* with *Antony*, *Agrippa* at his first Landing made himself Master of this Place, and took it from *Bochus* King of *Mauritania*, whom he slew. It sustain'd much Damage in the time of the Emperor *Trajan*, by the Inroads of the *Illyrians*; but the Prince to make Amends, granted it many Privileges which were confirm'd by *Constantine* the Great. The *Venetians* took it in 1124, but were routed the next Year by the Greek Emperor. In 1204, they got it again, but lost it for some time to the *Genoese* Pirates, whose Captain *Leo Veteran* being taken the Town was again recover'd, and held it till 1498, when *Bajazet II.* Belieg'd it with an Army of 150000 Men, whose Power forc'd a Surrender, tho' it was long Defended. In 1659, the *Venetians* took it again; but the *Turks* recover'd it in the end of the *Candian War*. And finally, in the late War the *Venetians* retook it, and now enjoy it.

*Coron*, *Corona*, one of the most important Place in the *Morea*, is seated about 20 Miles East from the Cape de Gallo, which is the *Acratas Promontorium* of *Ptolomy*, on the West-side of a Gulph, to which it now gives Name, but formerly call'd *Sinus Messeniacus*, on the Southern Shoar of the *Morea*, about 25 Miles East from *Modon*. It was anciently



ently a Colony of the Thebans, call'd *Pedafus* by the Poets, *Epea* by *Paulanias*, and *Corona* by *Strabo* and *Pliny*, from a Brass Coronet found in digging its Foundation. The Town lies on a Tongue of Land, advancing into the Sea, the Land-side being guarded by a large Tower, built by the *Venetians* in 1463. and the two Angles to the Sea surrounded with an old Wall, and flank'd with strong Towers. It hath no immediate Port, but the Gulph which bears its Name, is a safe Harbour. The Country about affords good store of Fruits, Grain, Oyl and Silks, which the Inhabitants vend abroad, to their great Advantage. This Town also was subject to the *Venetians*, taken by *Leo Veteran* in 1204. as well as *Modon*, and recover'd with that soon after. And with that also was lost to *Bajazet II.* in 1498. The *Spaniards* under *Andr. Doria*, *Charles V's* Admiral took it in 1532. but soon lost it. And it remain'd under the *Turks*, till General *Morofini* in the Year 1985. reduc'd it, notwithstanding the obstinate Defence of the Besieg'd, and the Succours that came to their Relief.

*Messeniga*, 10 Miles North from *Coron*, is the ancient *Messene*.

*Calamata*, tho' an unwall'd Town, had a Castle of good Force, which was surpriz'd and burnt by General *Morofini*, in 1657. And again in the late War, *Anno* 1685. the same General retook it, and caus'd it to be entirely demolish'd. It stands on the Confluence of the River *Aris*, with the *Camissus*, not above 10 Miles from the bottom of the Gulph of *Coron*, about 20 Miles from that City to the North, and 35 from *Modon* to the North-East, and is a Place indifferently well inhabited.

*Navarino*, *Navarinum*, aut *Pylus Messeniaca*, one of the most ancient Towns in the *Morea*, is seated on the West side of the same Promontory of Land that *Modon* and *Coron* stands on, 13 Miles North from the former, and 28 Miles West from the latter. It is divided into the Old Town and the New; the former is seated on a Rock that advances out into the Sea, which is naturally very strong, and besides well fortify'd: The latter stands on the side of a Hill, and is defended by strong Walls, and a Citadel with 6 Bastions, built by the *Turks* in 1572. At the bottom whereof lies the Haven, the best and most capacious of all the *Morea*, and its Entrance commanded by the Cannon of the Old Town; and therefore it was chosen by Sultan *Ibrahim* for the Rendezvous of his Fleet, design'd for *Candia* in 1644. The *Turks* were Masters of this Place from the Year 1498. till 1686. when General *Morofini* with a Fleet of 200 Ships, soon forc'd the Old Town to Surrender; but the New Town made a resolute Defence, in hopes of Relief, till they heard of the Defeat of the Serasquier by General *Coningsmark*, which made 'em then Surrender.

Castle *Tornese*, call'd *Clementzi* by the *Turks*, is a small Town near the Cape of *Tornese*, which shoots out into the Sea, on the West side of the *Morea*, between the Gulph of *Arcadia* and that of *Patras*, and is distant 30 Miles from *Chiarenza* to the South, 50 from *Navarino* to the North West, and about 3 Miles from the Sea Coasts. It was formerly nam'd *Chelonates*, and stands on an Eminence that overlooks a pleasant Country. General *Morofini* took this Place, after the taking of *Patras* in 1687.

*Belvedere*, the *Elis* of the Ancients, gave Name to this Duchy, and is a large Town, seated on the River *Peneus*, 15 Miles from the *Ionian* Sea to the East, about 10 from Castle *Tornese* to the North, as

many from *Chiarenza*, and 40 from *Patras* to the South. Formerly Famous for producing excellent Horses, and had its Name *Callesopium* of the *Greeks*, and *Belvedere* of the *Italians*, from its pleasant Situation.

*Cyparissa*, seu *Cyparissia*, now *Arcadia*, sometime a City, and good Port, but now in decay; stands 20 Miles North from *Navarino*, and gives its modern Name to a large Gulph now, as its ancient one did formerly, being then call'd *Sinus Caparissius*.

*Langanico*, the ancient *Olympia*, vel *Olympia Pifa*, is seated on the River *Apheus*, not far from its Mouth into the Gulph of *Arcadia*, 25 Miles from that Town, and near 50 from *Navarino* to the North, and 55 from *Patras* to the South. It was anciently known throughout the World, for the famous Games instituted by *Hercules*, and Celebrated every fifth Year, in its neighbouring Fields, wherein the bravest Youths of *Greece* contended for the Prize, and esteem'd the obtaining it the greatest Honour in the World. Hence came the Computation of Time by the *Olympiads*, well known to Historians. It is now but a small Town, and not at all considerable.

*Mistra*, or *Misistra*, the ancient *LACEDÆMON*, or *SPARTA*; or rather a City about 4 Miles from the Ruins of that, as Sir *George Wheeler* tells us; stands in the South East part of the *Morea*, on the River *Eurotas*, 30 Miles North from its Mouth into the Gulph *Colochina*, or *Sinus Laconicus*, 100 Miles South from *Corinth*, 60 North-East from *Coron*, 40 South-West from *Napoli di Romania*, and 40 from *Maivassia* to the West. The City was first call'd *Lelegia* from *Lelex* its first King, who was Cotemporary with *Cecrops* the first King of *Athens*, afterwards *Lacedemon* from the Name of his Successor, and *Sparta* from his Daughter or Wife so nam'd; or, according to others, from *Spartus*, the Son of *Phoroneus* King of *Argos*, whom they make its Founder. Its Antiquity was very great, so that a true Account of its Foundation is not extant; but 'tis judg'd to have been built in the Time of the Patriarch *Jacob*, and near 1000 Years before the building of *Rome*. We are inform'd by *Polybius*, that it was of a round Form, extending 48 *Greek* Stadia or Furlongs, that is to say, 6 *English* Miles in Compass. There never was any City that surpass'd it for Military Glory, as having had the greatest share in those noble Achievements that made the *Grecian* Name so Illustrious; for they contended with *Athens* for Mastery, and subdu'd almost all *Greece*. Their Lawgiver *Lycurgus* was Famous for Wisdom, and left them such Rules for Government, that the *Lacedemonians* were as Eminent for Politics, as the *Athenians* were for Learning. They were govern'd for many Ages by two Kings, at the same time under the Inspection of the 25 *Gerontes*, or Senators, and afterwards of 5 Magistrates, call'd *Ephori*. The last of the Kings was *Ciccmenes*, who destroy'd the Power of the *Ephori*, and was himself Conquer'd by *Antigonus Dofon* King of *Macedon*, and the City and State made part of that Monarchy. This happen'd about 230 Years before Christ, and about 1300 Years after the Foundation of the City. The Ruins of this City, which testify its ancient Magnificence, are still to be seen at *Mistra*, which is an Episcopal City of some Magnitude, consisting of four different Parts, viz. the Town, the Castle, and the two large Suburbs, one



of which is call'd *Mefecherion*, or the *Middleborough*, and the other *Hexecherion*, or the *Outerborough*. The Castle, City and *Mefecherion* lie on one fide the River *Eurates*, now call'd *Vafeli-petames*; and the *Hexecherion* on the other fide of the River. The Castle or Citadel, now call'd *To Castrum*, advantageously feated on the top of Mount *Taygetus*, is furrounded with good Walls, and by fome is affirm'd to be fo ftrong, as never to have been taken by open Force: Within it formerly flood the Temples of *Diana Lipetbaria*, and *Minerva Panachaia*; beſides the Monument of *Euripylus*, Son of *Eugamemnon*, who was prefent at the taking of *Troy*. The Town lies at the Foot of the Caſtle, which covers it towards the North; it conſiſts of two ſpacious Streets, and ſeveral ſmall croſs ones; the old Market place, call'd *Agora* by the *Greeks*, is beautify'd with a curious Fountain, and hath a Church near it, built out of the Ruins of *Minerva's* Temple: Here are alſo the Remains of four Marble Buildings, which are the moſt conſiderable Antiquities of *Miſitra*, viz. the *Perſian* Gallery, or Portico, built in Memory of the Victory over the *Perſians* at *Plataea*; the Temple of *Helena*; the Temple of *Hercules*; and the Temple of *Venus Armata*. In the Town ſtands alſo the Cathedral Church, call'd *Panagia*, or *All-Holy*: It is a fine Building, having Marble Pillars to ſupport the Roof, which has ſeven Domes, and the Pavement is a curious piece of Moſaick Work; the Biſhop's Palace; the Monastery of the *Pandaneſſis*, whole Church exceeds the Cathedral, for Beauty, tho' not ſo large. In the *Mefecherion*, or *Middle-fuburb*, is another Church call'd alſo *Panagia*, that is far more Sumptuous than the two already nam'd: And there alſo flood the *Turks* fineſt Moſque, for the building of which they made uſe of the Ruins of *Lacedemon*, and thereby undoubtedly deſtroy'd many notable Antiquities. Without the Walls are ſtill to be ſeen the *Dromas*, where the *Spartan* Youth perform'd their Racing, Wreſtling and other Sports; and the *Platon*, or Grove of Plan Trees, the Shade whereof is very reſreſhing and delightful. The *Grecian* Emperors made this City an Appenage of one of their Sons, with the Title of *Dyſpot*, or Lord of *Sparta*; in which it remain'd till it was taken by the *Turkiſh* Sultan *Mahomet II.* ſoon after the taking of *Conſtantinople* about the Year 1460. Three Years after the *Italians* ſtorm'd it, but could not conquer the Citadel, and ſo rais'd the Siege. And again in 1473. the *Venetians* took the Town, but not the Caſtle, and it remain'd ſubject to the *Turks* till the Year 1657. when General *Moroſini* having conquer'd the greateſt part of the *Morea*, oblig'd both Town and Caſtle to Surrender.

*Malvaſia*, or *Napoli di Malvaſia*, heretofore known by the Name of *Epidaurus*, and afterwards *Monambafia*, is ſeated on a Rock in the Sea, on the Eaſtern Coaſt of the *Morea*, near the Mouth of the Gulph of *Napoli di Romania*, near 60 Miles from that City to the South-Eaſt, about 40 from *Miſitra* to the Eaſt, and about 30 from the Iſland *Cerigo* to the North. It is join'd to the Continent by a fair Timber Bridge, and is a place of notable Strength, being inacceſſible but on one ſide, and defended by a triple Wall. It has a convenient Harbour defended by the Fortreſs, which is of great Advantage to the Inhabitants for their Traffick. Tho' it ſtands on a Rock, it is ſupply'd with good Springs of freſh Water, ſufficient for the uſe of the Town, and Gardens about it, which are very Beautiful, and produce

excellent Fruits, eſpecially the Grapes whereof the Wine we call *Malmſey* is made. The City, tho' it be a ſmall one, is dignity'd with a Metropolitan See, and has a Suburb enclos'd with a ſtrong Rampart, beſides the Citadel. 'Tis ſaid to owe its Foundation to a Colony of *Argos*, and was frequented on account of the Temple of *Æſculapius*; but *Baudrand* gives away this Honour to another Town, calling this *Epidaurus* *Limera*, in *Laconia*, and diſtinguiſhes it from another *Epidaurus* in *Argia*, now call'd *Epigadia*, according to *Niger*; and *Æſculapio*, according to *Pinetus*; wherein ſtood that famous Temple, which gave occaſion to the Poets to call *Æſculapius* the *Epidaurian* Deity. *Buno*, in his Notes on *Claudian*, ſays the ſame, and places it in *Argia*. *Epidaurus* was alſo the old Name of *Ragusi Vecchio*, in *Dalmatia*. Tho' the Fortreſs of *Malvaſia* ſeem almoſt impregnable, it was taken by the *French* and *Venetians* from the *Greek* Emperor, and retaken by the *Venetians*, who held it till 1573. when they deliver'd it to Sultan *Solyman* to purchaſe a Peace. In the *Candian* War the *Venetians* Storm'd and Burnt it; but the *Turks* rebuilt and held it till the late War. In the Year 1689. the Doge *Moroſini* attack'd it; but being call'd home, he left the Place Block'd up, which continu'd from the 14th of September to the 10th of Auguſt following, when they ſurrender'd, and was the laſt Place in the *Morea* that held out.

*Zarnata*, a Fortreſs of conſiderable Strength, ſtands on the Weſt-fide of *Zaconia*, 30 miles South-Weſt from *Miſitra*, and but a few miles from the Sea call'd the Gulph of *Coron*. It is ſeated on a Hill, and defended by Towers and other Fortifications. But was however taken by the *Venetians* in the Year 1685. in the very ſight of the Captain Baſſa, who durſt not attempt its Relief.

*Chieleſa*, a ſtrong Town of a mile in Compaſs, ſeated on a Rock, at the diſtance of 20 miles from *Zarnata* to the South-Eaſt, and about 15 from Cape *Matapan* to the North, but 2 miles from the Sea, and near the Place where flood the ancient *Vitulo*, a Trading City of good Note, which gave Name to the Port, formerly well frequented, but now neither Commodious nor ſafe. *Chieleſa* is chiefly valu'd for its Strength, being ſurrounded with Walls, and flank'd with Towers, and the Rock on which it ſtands is very ſteep and craggy. General *Moroſini* took it in 1635. and the *Turks* endeavouring to regain it next Year, were routed, and loſt all their Artillery and Baggage.

Cape *Matapan* is the moſt Southern Point of Land in the *Morea*.

*Colochina*, in the midway between that Cape and *Miſitra*, and 30 miles Eaſt from *Zarnata*, is only notable for giving Name to a Bay, anciently nam'd *Lacenicus Sinus*.

Cape *Malio*, *Malea Promont.* is the moſt Eaſtern Point of the *Morea*, and 25 miles South from *Malvaſia*. Over againſt it on the South, lies the Iſland *Cithera*, now *Cerigo*.

*Megalopolis*, the ancient Metropolis of *Arcadia*, and the Birth place of the Hiſtorian *Polybius*, is now a ſmall City, but Episcopal, nam'd *Leontari*; it is ſeated at the Foot of a Mountain, on the River *Alpheus*, 40 miles North-Weſt from *Lacedemon*, 75 from *Corinth* to the South, in the Center of the *Morea*, and in the North Limits of the Dutchy of *Zaconia*.



*Napoli di Romania*, the Capital of the Duchy of *Seccania*, or *Romania minor*, was anciently nam'd *Nautia*, from *Nautius* the Son of *Neptune*, and is call'd *Anap'ia* by the modern *Greeks*; it is a strong and fair City, seated at the bottom of a Gulph of the *Aegean* Sea, to which it gives the modern Name, but anciently call'd *Argolicus Sinus*. It stands on the top of a small Promontory or Cape, which is divided into two Parts, one side whereof shoots forth into the Sea, making a safe and spacious Harbour, and the other toward the Land, renders the Passage to the Town almost inaccessible, being only thro' a narrow stony Way, between the Mountain *Palamida* and the Sea-shoar. The Haven is spacious enough to receive a large Fleet, but yet so straight in its Entrance, that only one Galee can pass at a time. Besides this Natural Strength, there is a strong Citadel, about 100 Yards from the City, and in the whole this is one of the strongest Places in all the *Morea*, and longer resisted the *Turks*. It is the Capital City of the *Morea*, with respect to Government, and the See of an Archbishop, and reckon'd to contain above 60000 *Greeks*, besides many other Inhabitants. It is seated, as we have said, near the bottom of the Gulph, about 60 Miles North from *Mistra*, and 30 South from *Corinth*. This City had been subject to divers Masters, before it was Sold to the *Venetians* in the Year 1333. who bravely defended it against the Attacks of *Mahomet II.* in 1460. and *Soliman II.* in 1537. but were oblig'd to resign it two Years after to procure a Peace. And it was the Seat of a *Turkish* Sangiack, till the *Venetians* recover'd it again in the Year 1636. when General *Coningsmark* Besieg'd the Town, and *Morosini* defeated the *Seraskier*, on the 29th of *August*, which oblig'd the Garrison to Cap'itulate.

*Argos*, or *Argo*, aut *Argos Peloponnesiacum*, was heretofore the Metropolis of the Dominions of King *Agamemnon*, and the Country of *Argia*. It is seated on the River *Planiza*, or *Inachus*, now *Naja*, 20 Miles North from *Napoli di Romania*, and 40 South from *Corinth*. It was anciently a very stately and magnificent City, and the Capital of a Kingdom for several Ages, till *Percus* remov'd the Regal Seat to *Mycene*; afterwards it was a Commonwealth and had a share in all the Wars of *Greece*. But it is now reduc'd to a very low Estate, consisting of Paltry Houses, except the Citadel and the Bishop's Palace, for it is an Episcopal See. This City was purchas'd by the *Venetians* in 1388. from whom it was taken by *Mahomet II.* in 1463. but recover'd by General *Morosini* in 1626. But we must note, that besides this, there were other Cities in *Greece* of the same Name, viz. *Argos Amphilocheium* in *Epirus*, *Argos Pelasgicum* in *Thessaly*, and *Argos Hippium* in *Achaia*, fam'd for its excellent Horses.

**CORINTH**, now commonly call'd *Corintho*, and *Corinto*, and by the *Turks* *Grieme*, was anciently call'd *Eph'ra*. It stands about the middle of the Isthmus between the Gulph of *Lepanto* and *Angia*, about 2 Miles from the former, and 5 from the other, 85 from *Patras* to the East, 54 from *Athens* to the South West, 25 from *Argos*, and 85 from *Mistra* to the North. Whether *Sisyphus*, the Son of *Aeolus*, built it, (as some say) about the Year of the World 2616. or a Wrestler, call'd *Aletes*, (as others) or by neither, (as others declare) is uncertain; but it was anciently the Capital City of *Achaia*, and the Glory and Ornament of *Greece*. Its Situation between the *Ionian* and the

*Aegean* Seas render it Rich and Strong. It was a Place of great Trade, and in Power and Command, inferior only to *Athens* and *Lacedemon*. The *Athenians* and *Corcyreans* were so sensible of its Naval Force, that it gave Rise to the *Peloponnesian* War. *Dionysius* the *Sicilian* Tyrant, being Banish'd his own Country, came here and set up a School. Its commodious Situation between the Sea-ports of *Lecheus* and *Cenchreae*, the former of which in the *Sinus Corinthiacus* or Gulph of *Lepanto*, the other in the *Sinus Saraconicus*, or Gulph of *Angia*, contributed mightily to its Richness; for *Lecheus* lay to the West of it, and prov'd a most convenient and safe Port for the Ships which came from *Italy* and *Sicily*; the other, *Cenchreae*, lay towards the East, and receiv'd the Ships that came from *Asia*. But as Trade brought Wealth, so that brought in Lewdness Luxury, Insolence and Contempt of their Neighbours, having the Boldness to put Indignities even upon the *Roman* Ambassadors; which, with the Apprehensions which *Rome* had of its growing Power, was the Reason why *A. Luc. Mummius* was sent to Burn it. The *Corinthian* Brass is said to owe its Beginning to the burning of this City, being a mixture of a great many Statues and Images of Gold, Silver and Brass, which were melted down in that Conflagration; tho' others maintain that the *Corinthian* Brass or Meral was well known before this happen'd. Whoredom was so much practis'd, and Whores in such Esteem in this Place, that they not only put all marks of Honour and Respect upon them, but offer'd up Publick Prayers to *Venus* for their Preservation and Increase. *Julius Caesar* in great measure Rebuilt and Peopl'd this City a-new, by sending a Colony of *Veteran* Soldiers to it. It is defended by a Castle, known formerly by the Name of *Acro-Corinthus*, standing on a very high Rock, which is a perfect Precipice all round, except on the South-side, where it slopes a little more. The ancient *Despotes*, or Lords of it, gave it to the *Venetians*, who kept possession of it till *Mahomet II.* took it from them, together with the adjacent Country; but they recover'd it from the *Turks* in the Year 1687. It is now no better than a good Country Town: Nor must we judge of the Number of its Inhabitants from its Compass, the Houses not being contiguous, but standing in 10, 12, or sometimes more together, with a good Space between each of these Parcels, commonly so large as to be a good Corn-field.

The Isthmus of *Corinth* being but 6 Miles over, was often attempted to be cut, viz. by *Demetrius*, *Julius Caesar*, *Caligula*, *Nero*, and by one *Herodes Atticus* a private Man. There was a Wall built cross from *Lecheus* to *Cenchrae* call'd *Hexamilion*, because it was 6 Miles long; which stood till the time of the *Turks*, and was by them twice thrown down, the *Venetians* having rebuilt it. The *Ionians* of old erected a Pillar here, upon the side whereof that look'd to *Africa*, was written *Τὰ δὲ ἔχει Πελοπόννησος ἀλλ' Ἰωνία*: And on the side towards *Corinth*, *Τὰ δὲ ἔστιν ἡ Πελοπόννησος ἔ Ἰωνία*. And in this place Plays were solemnly Celebrated every Fifth Year, (which were thence denominated the *Isthmian* Games) in Honour of *Palaemon* the Son of *Athamos* King of *Thebes*, and his Mother *Ino*, who leapt into the Sea with her Son in her Arms to avoid her Husband's Fury, who had in a mad Fit kill'd his other Son, and as the Poets fable, they were receiv'd by *Neptune* into the Number of the Divinities of his Train. Others say they were Instituted



tated by *Theseus* in Honour of *Neptune*, See *Potter's Antiq. Greece*. The Ruins of the Theatre, Stadium, Temple of *Neptune*, &c. are still to be seen.

*Sigon*, now *Basilica*, or *Vasilica*, the Capital of *Sicyonia*, an ancient Kingdom, which was also call'd *Ionia*, and *Ægialia*, according to *Strabo*; and *Deme-trius* by *Plutarch*; stands on the River *Asopus*, about 20 Miles South-West from *Corinth*, and not above 5 Miles from the Sea, or Gulph of *Lepanto*. It is often mention'd by the Poets, being noted for the fine Oyls growing in its Neighbourhood, also for Marble, Statuary and Painting. It was the Country of the Poet *Aratus*. At present 'tis but a poor Town, and has only the Ruins to demonstrate its ancient Splendor.

*Nemæa*, a Village with a Grove, anciently Fa-mous for the Games there Celebrated in Honour of *Hercules*, who slew the Lyon, whose Skin he after-wards wore, in this Wood; or, according to others, in Honour of *Archemorus*, slain by a Serpent. It is now call'd *Triflina*, and stands about 30 Miles South from *Corinth*.

*Mycene*, now nam'd *Charia*, or *Agios Adrianos*, from a Castle built there by the Emperor *Adrian*; once the Capital of a Kingdom, remov'd from *Argos* by *Perseus*, and continu'd 200 Years. This City was built by *Lacedemon*, the Son of *Semele*, and was in its time very considerable; but now 'tis no more than an ordinary Village, seated about 10 Miles North from *Argos*, and 35 South from *Corinth*.

## CHAP. IV.

### Of the ISLANDS on the Coasts of GREECE, &c.

HAVING Travell'd thro' the Continent of *Greece*, we come now to the Islands that lie round about its Coasts, whereof there are a vast Number in these Seas; but many of them are so small that they are hardly worth mentioning. Those that deserve particular Notice, such as *Candia*, *Negropont*, &c. we will give as ample an Account of as is necessary, and if we pass over the rest with only naming 'em, and their Situation, and a general Character, we hope it will not displease the Reader. Beginning then at the *Ionian* Sea, on the Coast of *Epirus*, we meet with *Corfu*, and the two *Pachsu*, whereof we have already spoken in our Account of *Epirus*. The next is

*St. Maura*, *Leucadia* or *Neritia*, on the Coast of *Achaia*, a pleasant, fruitful Place, with Vines in abundance. It was first inhabited by a Colony of *Corinthians*, now subject to the *Venetians*. On the North-East Point stands the Town of *St. Maur*, which gives the Modern Name to the Island, and is not above a League distant from the Coasts of *Achaia*.

The *Ecbiades*, or *Curzolari*, are a Cluster of Islands that lie on the East of *St. Maura*, and at the Mouth of the River *Acbelcus*. Whereof the Chief is *Colombo*, *Dulichium*, near the Shoar of *Achaia* subject to the *Turks*. The rest are very small.

*Cephalæna* or *Cefalonia*, *Cephalenia* quæ & *Samos*, an Island of good Extent, being 120 Miles in Circuit, and a fertile Soil, producing Wooll, Wax, Honey, Silk, Wine and Oyl; seated between *St. Maura* on the North, and *Zant* on the South, and about 20 Leagues West from the Mouth of the Gulph of *Lepanto*. It is subject to the *Venetians*, and hath two chief Towns, viz. *Cefalonia*, an Episcopal See; and *Argostoli*, a very good Port on the Southern Shoar.

*Zant*, *Zacinthus*, about 4 Leagues South from *Cefalonia*, and above 7 or 8 West from the Coast of the *Morea*; is not of half the Extent of *Cefalonia*, but is very fruitful, affording Wine and Oyl, besides Currants in great plenty, subject to the *Venetians*. The chief Town of the same Name is large

and populous, surrounded with a Wall, hath large Suburbs, and a very capacious Port, where the *Eng-lish* have a Factory. There are also many other Towns (some say 50) upon this Island.

The *Stropiades*, or *Strivali*, are 2 small Islands on the South of *Zant*, producing Wine and Oyl, but subject to the *Turks*.

*Sapientza*, *Sephagia*, *Oenussa*, on the South of the *Morea* over against *Cape de Gallo*, gives Name to the Sea that flows about it; but otherwise not considerable, being almost deserted by reason of the In-cursions of the Pyrates.

*CANDIA*, olim *CRETA*, the largest and most Celebrated Island on the Coasts of *Greece*, was formerly known by divers Names, as *Hecatompolis*, *Aeria*, *Curetis*, *Marcaros*, *Marcaronesos*, &c. And was in times past a considerable Kingdom. It took its Name from *Crete* a Nymph, the Daughter of *Hesperis*; or as others, from *Cretus* its King. It is seated in Latitude between 34 and 35 Degrees, being not above 60 Miles in Breadth, but from East to West, it extends from 42 Degrees 30 Min. to 47 Degrees, being in Length from *Cape Salomon* in the East, to *Cape Cornico* in the West, (according to *Cluverius*, 70 German Leagues, i. e.) 280 *English* Miles. It lies South-East of the *Morea*, and is the Land that includes the Sea call'd the *Archipelago*.

Its SOIL is most Fruitful, producing Corn, Wine; the best Oyl, Oranges, Limons, Figs, and other delicious Fruits, Salt, pleasant Pastures, Cypress, Laurel, Myrtle, and other curious ever Greens.

The AIR also is Healthy and Temperate, except the South Wind, which is sometimes too Robust: Here are no Snags, Wolves, Foxes, or other wild Beasts; but the Spider *Tarantula* is very troublesome, his Sting being Mortal, unless Musick be apply'd to the Patient. Nor are here any large Rivers, only Brooks that water the Meads. The most notable Mountain is *Psiloriti*, or Mount *Ida*, mention'd in Antiquity for the *Corybantes* or *Idæi-Dactyli*, the Priests of *Cybele*, that took care to nourish *Jupiter* in his Infancy, and continually beat their Drums lest *Saturn* should hear the Child cry.

The



The INHABITANTS were always Infamous for their Vice and Piracy, but withal, The Invention of Navigation, The Use of Arrows, The Art of War, and Recording their Laws, is Attributed to them. *Teste Cluverio.* They were very early Govern'd by Kings; and afterwards by Dukes, till *Q Metellus* Conquer'd, and made the Island a Province of the *Roman Empire* and it continu'd under the Emperors of *Constantinople* till about the Year 823. when the *Saracens* surpriz'd and took it, and built the City *Candia*, which in time gave Name to the whole Island. The Emperor *Nicephorus Phocas* retook it; and *Baldwin* Earl of *Flanders* and Emperor, gave it to *Boniface* Marquess of *Monferrat*, who sold it to the *Venetians* for a great Sum of Money.

They held it for above 400 Years, till *Anno* 1645. the *Turks* fell upon this Island, took *Canea*, and sat down before *Candia*, which was so well defended being assisted by divers Nations, that it held out 24 Years, but was taken at last in 1669. and has since with the whole Island been subject to the *Turks*.

The Island was anciently notable for its Hundred Cities, whence it was call'd *Hecatempolis*. Whereof the most considerable (according to *Cluverius*,) were, *Cortyna* the Capital of the Island, *Cydon* which the *Greeks* call'd the Mother of Cities, *Gnossus* the Regal Seat of *Minos*, *Therapna*, *Dium*, *Lyctus*, *Lycastrus*, *Phaestus*, *Manethusa*, *Diclyna*. Under the *Venetians* it was divided into 4 Territories, denominated from the 4 chief Cities, viz.

The Territory of *Setia*, which is the most Eastern Part; where-  
in are these chief Towns,

{ *Setia.*  
  *Lasthi.*  
  *Boniporto.*  
  *Cinosa.*  
  *Gerapetra.*

In the Territory of *Candia*, which lies on the West of *Setia*, are {

{ *Candia.*  
  *Gortina.*  
  *Spinalonga.*

The Territory of *Retimo*, lies next to that of *Candia* on the West & *Retimo*.

The Territory of *Canea* is the most Western Part, and contains

{ *Canea.*  
  *Garabusa.*  
  *Sfachia.*  
  *Fenicha.*  
  *Castle Selino.*

*Candia*, aut *Matium* the Capital of the Island, is seated on the Northern Coast in the middle of the Isle, in respect to East and West. On a Plain, at the Foot of a Mountain, and hath a Commodious Harbour. It is a very large City, divided into the Old Town, and the New, and was a Metropolitan See (now the Seat of the *Turkish* Sangiack) strongly Fortified by the *Venetians*, with a Castle and other Bulwarks, and an Arsenal well furnish'd with Military Stores, which enabled it to hold out that memorable Siege of 24 Years continuance. For the *Turks* sat down before it in the Year 1645. but were beaten off with great loss, yet not so but they continu'd it Block'd up, till 1667. and then the Siege was renew'd with great Vigour, and the Town taken Sept. 27. 1669. Thus the Famous and Fruitful Isle of *Candia*, the Cause, and Occasion of all that Blood and Treasure that was spilt, and exhausted in 24 years Way, fell at length to the Fortune and Increase of the *Turkish* Empire, being the most Impregnable Fortress of the World, strengthen'd with as much Art and Industry, as the Human Wit of this Age was capable of inventing. After a strait Siege of 2 Years, 3 months, the 27 days, allotted for the Surrender, being expir'd on the 27 of Sept. 1669. being Friday, the great Cross Erected on the Wall, was taken down, after Midnight; and about 9 that Morning, the Principal Citizens offer'd the Keys of the City to the Grand Visier, in a Basin of Silver, on the Breach of St. *Andrea*. The *Turkish* Army took Possession that day, and the Grand Visier, made his Entry on the 4th. of October. Four Parts of five of the City were Ruin'd and Demolish'd, during the Siege. All the Bells and Ornaments of the Churches and Houses, to the very Locks of the Doors, were carry'd away; the Arms remaining, were old and

rusty, and not above 350 Pieces of Cannon left upon the Walls, and those for the most part but very small. The Inhabitants (as *Sir Paul Ricaut* goes on) were allow'd by Treaty to retire, so that when the *Turks* entred, there remain'd only 5, except some few decrepit *Jews* and *Greeks*, about 30 in Number, so that never could be a more sad Spectacle of Desolation, nor a more clear Mirrour of the Miseries of War.

During this Siege, on the *Venetians* side were kill'd and wounded 30985. Of the *Turks* 180754. The Storms which the *Turks* made upon the Town, were 56. The Combats under Ground 45. Sallies made by the *Venetians* 96. Mines sprung by the *Venetians* 1137. By the *Turks* 472. Barrels of Powder spent by the *Venetians* 50317. Granadoes of Brass and Iron 100960. Granadoes of Glass 84875. Cannon-shot of all sorts 276743. Pounds of Lead 18044957. Pounds of Match 13012500. It is not certain what quantity of Ammunition the *Turks* spent, only the Brass taken up in the Streets, which came from the Enemies Bombs, was so much, that whole Ware-houses were fill'd with the Metal, and was worth many thousand Crowns. In the year 1692. the *Venetians* attempted to Besiege *Candia*; but were repuls'd with loss.

*Gortina*, formerly one of the chief Cities of *Crete*, now a large Village, Nam'd *Gortina*, stands on the River *Lethæus* 20 miles East from Mount *Ida*, and near as far from the Southern Shoar. About 20 miles East of this Town, towards *Gnossus*, stood the *Labyrinth*, the Stupendious Work of *Dedalus*, and the Seat of the *Minotaur*, some Ruins whereof are still seen.

*Spina longa*, a Castle, on a good Port, in the Northern Shoar, 50 miles East from *Candia*.

*Setia*,



*Seria* or *Sistia*, *Cythera*, the least of the four Principal Cities, stands on a very good Haven, in the North Coast, 70 miles East from *Candia*.

*Grossus* formerly the Regal Seat of *Minas*, now a Village, call'd *Cinfa*, stands about 30 miles West from *Seria*.

*Gerapetra* or *Hierapetra*, *Sacra Petra*, a Town with a Castle, on the South Coast, 20 miles South-West from *Seria*, whence the Neighbouring Promontory takes its Name.

In the extrem East part of the Island are the 2 Capes *Sidero* and *Salomon*, near which was the *Portus Pulcher* now *Boniporto*.

*Retimo*, *Retymna*, *Retbymnum*, the Capital of that Territory, stands on the Northern Coast, 50 miles West from *Candia*. It hath a Castle on a Rock, and a reasonable good Port.

The Mountain *Ida*, now *Pfilariti*, mention'd above, stands in the Limits of this Territory.

*Cezes* the ancient *Cydon*, call'd the Mother of Cities, a strong City of Quadrangular Form, with a Port, on the North Coast, 100 miles West from *Candia*.

*Sirebia* olim *Leuri Montes*, a Castle on the Southern Shoar over against *Canea*.

Castle *Selino*, *Lissus*, on the same Shoar 30 miles West from *Sfacia*.

Cape *Crio*, *Columetopen*, The South-West Point of the Island, over against which, lies the Island *Clauder* now *Goga*.

On the North West of *Candia*, near the Coast of *Laconia*, lies the Island *Cythera*, now *Cerigo*, subject to the *Venetians*, with a Castle on the West side and a safe Port.

### The Cyclades, or Islands of the Archipelago,

So call'd from the Circular Form they lye in, are situated between *Candia* on the South, and *Negropent* on the North. The number of them is various. *Isidorus* makes 'em 50. These that follow are of chief Note, and are all Subject to the *Turks*, but *Tenos*, which the *Venetians* have.

*Santorini*, olim *Therasia*, is an Island 36 miles round; Seated 60 miles North from the middle of the Coast of *Candia*. There are several Castles upon it which stand upon craggy Rocks, those of *St. Nicholas* and *Learo* are extrem high and inaccessible, in the former lives a *Greek* Bishop, and about 500 Souls, most whereof live in Caves dug in the Pumice-Stone Soil: The latter has about 150 Houses built round a Rock, in the middle of the Castle upon which there stands a *Greek* Church. The Land produces Vines, whence they draw Wine enough for their own use, and some small quantity to sell, but no other Fruit, and very little Corn or Cattle. Beans, Pease, Eggs, taken in the Rocks, and Bisket is their Food. The People are Healthy and Stout, but lead an idle, slothful Life. An irruption of Fire that broke out suddenly in the Harbour, about 100 Years ago, so burnt and scorch'd the Coast, that it looks like Hell, says my Author (*Thevenot*.) Another irruption happen'd about the Year 1640 which with hideous Noise threw pumice Stones out of the Sea a vast way.

*Policanare* an Island of 8 miles Circumference, seated 30 miles from *Santorini*, is nam'd by *Thevenot* as a pleasant place producing Corn, Fowl, Sheep and other Necessaries, but no Wine. The Inhabitants make Woollen and Cotton Stuffs, and Cheese, with which and Barley they pay their Tribute. There is a Castle on it, seated on a very high Hill.

*Millo*, call'd *Zephyria* by *Aristotle*, *Mimallis* by *Callymachus*, and *Melos* by *Strabo*, about 20 Leagues North from *Candia*, over against *Canea*, hath an excellent Port, 6 miles long and 3 over, with good depth of Water; but chiefly frequented by Pirates: It is about 40 miles in Circuit, and the whole Country is Mountainous, except a Pleasant and Fertile Plain, 6 or 7 miles long, in the midst of which stands the City of *Millo*, containing (according to the *Sieur du Mont's* Description) about 20 narrow Streets, wherein says *Thevenot* 2500 Souls inhabit. The Inhabitants are generally *Greeks*, but there are also 300 or 400 Souls of the *Latin* Church, who have their Bishop and Cathedral. The Island affords necessities for Life, and the People live well enough. The *Venetians* maintain a *Podestat* in the Island, to gather the Tribute; but there is no Garrison kept in it, so that the first well attended *Corfsair* that comes is King of it, so long as he pleases to reside in it. The Women are so accusom'd to the Converse of the Pirates, that they are generally very liberal of their Favours, but not quite so frank as their Neighbours of *Argenterie*, (anciently call'd *Cimolus*) which is another little Island about 20 miles in Compass, containing only a little Town, and Village, both inhabited by about 500 Women; for there is not a Man in the Island except 7 or 8 *Papa's*, who perform Divine Service. These Women have no Trade to maintain 'em, but live purely on the Work of Nature; so that all the Merchants and *Corfsairs* who come to the Island, chuse a Female Companion, either Fair or Brown, according to every Man's particular Fancy. The Children are left to the disposal of the Women; the Girls grow up, and Work to maintain their Mothers; but as soon as the Boys are 12 years old, they are put on Board the first Vessel that touches on the Island. I do not vouch for the Truth of this, altho' some Travellers report it. *Millo* is surrounded by many smaller Islands, particularly *Argentera*, above mention'd so call'd from a Mine of Silver.

*Siffano*, olim *Siphnus*, a few Leagues on the North of *Millo*, hath a good Town of the same Name, say some Travellers, but *Thevenot* tells us, the Castle which stands on a Hill has 3000 Inhabitants, besides which there are no Houses in the Island except a few Gentlemen's Seats. It is about 40 miles in compass, (according to *Baudrand*) and belong'd formerly to the Family of *Gozadini* in *Venice*; but the *Turks* have been Masters of it ever since the Year 1450. It was anciently famous for its Gold and Silver Mines. Its principal Town is Nam'd *Schinusa*, and stands on a Hill. The Inhabitants are divided in matter of Religion, some following the *Greek*, and some the *Romish* way of Worship, And (says *Thevenot*) are very Rogues.

*Poras*, *Paris*, or *Pario*, a few Leagues to the East of *Siffano*, hath a good Town of the same Name and a Commodious Haven; Famous for its good Wine, and excellent Marble.



*Naxos* now *Nicſia*, lies on the Eaſt of *Paros*, divided by a Channel of 2 or 3 Leagues Broad, is 120 miles in Circuit, hath a Town of the ſame Name, ſeveral Villages and Monaſteries, and ſome Commodious Havens. It has been noted for its plenty of good Wine, and excellent Marble, and at preſent exports very good Wine and Cheeſe, and the Soil produces all neceſſaries to Life. The Inhabitants are Drunkards and idle Drones; in imitation of their Anceſtor *Bacchus*, the ruins of whoſe Palace they pretend to ſhew.

*Amorgo* or *Morgo*, on the South-Eaſt of *Naxos*, hath a Caſtle, and ſome Villages.

*Delos*, or *S. Deli*, or *Sdilles*, 10 Leagues North from *Naxos*, formerly noted by the Poets, for the reception of *Latona*, who is ſaid to have been deliver'd there of *Apollo*, and *Diana*: Here was a Temple and Oracle of *Apollo* richly endow'd.

*Mycone* on the Eaſt ſide very near *Delos*, Populous and Fruitful, but the Inhabitants are Pirates tho' *Chriſtians*.

*Tenos*, now *Tine* or *Titte*, on the Weſt ſide of *Delos*, ſubject to the *Venetians*, is a high Rock of Marble, but in ſome parts Ferril. It has 2 Ports, and a very ſtrong Caſtle with a Town of the ſame Name, ſeated on a high Rock on the Weſt-ſide.

*Rhena*, now *Suda*, and *Seladuffa*, on the South-Weſt of *Delos*.

*Andros*, or *Aadrus*, olim *Cauros*, of near 30 miles extent, but Mountainous. The chief Town of the ſame Name ſtands on a Rock on a Bay in the South-Coaſt, and in the middle of the Iſland. Here are alſo Two other good Towns; *Dium* on the Weſt-Coaſt, and *Hydruffa* on another Bay in the South-Coaſt from *Andros*.

*Zea*, 8 or 9 Leagues South from *Andros*, and Weſt from *Delos*, hath a Town of the ſame upon the Coaſt.

*Polyagos*, now *Fermenia*, lies next to *Zea* on the South, Mountainous and Woody.

*Seriphus*, *Serfino*, next to it, hath a Town of the ſame Name.

*Thera*, olim *Califte*, now *Zermia*, lies a few Leagues South-Weſt from *Seriphus*, and Weſt from *Siphonorus*; hath Salubrious Baths which are much frequented.

### *Islands in the Gulph of Engia, Sinu Saronico, are,*

*Engia*, or *Egina*, in the Mouth of that Gulph, which, as we have ſaid, flows between *Achaia*, and the *Morea*. The Country of the Fabulous *Æacus*, Judge of Hell: It is a fruitful Soil, and has a Town of the ſame Name with a Haven.

*Salamis*, now *Colure*, lies more within the Bay on the Coaſt of *Achaia*: It is of 50 miles compals, and has Three Towns, viz *Coloumi*, *Metropolis*, and *Ambulachi*, near which ſtood the ancient City *Salamis*, memorable for the Deſeat of *Xerxes's* Fleet, by *Themistoctes*, and the *Athenians*. The Birth-place of

*Solon*, and the Regal Seat of *Telamon* the Father of *Ajax*.

*Kera*, a Rock on which *Xerxes* ſate on a Silver Throne to behold the Battle of the Two Navies.

### *Islands in the Ægean Sea.*

**NEGROPONT**, anciently nam'd *EUBOEAE*, and now *Egripas* by the Modern *Greeks*; is an Iſland lying along the Coaſt of that part of *Achaia*, formerly nam'd *Bæotia*, extending above 100 miles in Length, but not above 25 in Breadth. It is ſuppos'd to have been firſt joyn'd to the Continent of *Greece* by an Iſthmus, which, either by the Violence of the Tides, or as others, by an Earthquake was broken: It is divided from the Continent by the narrow Channel *Euripus*, whoſe Tide Ebbs and Flows Seven times a Day, as ſays *Pomp. Mela*; nay, even ſometimes much oftner, as 10, 11, 12, 13, or 14 times a day, being often very irregular; and again at other times obſerving the Courſe of the Moon, and flows as regularly as the Sea. It is next to *Candia*, the largeſt Iſland in theſe Seas, and is call'd the Queen of the *Ægean Sea*, on account of its Fertility as well as Largeneſs; The Soil producing Corn, Wine, Fruits, and Cattle in ſo great abundance, that all ſorts of Proviſions are wonderfully Cheap. The Mountain of *Carifto* is famous for its excellent Marble, and the Stone *Amianthos*, or *Asbeſtos*, whereof 'tis pretended incombustible Cloath was made, was found here. After the Eaſtern Emperors had parted with *Negropont*, it fell into the hands of the *Turks* under *Mahomet II.* about the Year 1470. who with a Fleet of 300 Sail, and 120000 Men attack'd it, and have ever ſine held it.

#### The chief Towns are,

*Negropont*, or *Egripas*, in a Peninſula on the South-Coaſt in the middle of the Iſland with reſpect to Eaſt and Weſt, and over-againſt *Aulis* in *Achaia*, to which it hath a Stone-Bridge with a Caſtle in the miſt of the Channel built by the *Venetians*. It ſtands in the place of the Ancient *Chalcis*, and is a large place, the Walls of the City being two miles in Compals, and the Suburbs much larger. In the former live the *Turks* and *Jews*, and in the latter the *Chriſtians*, the whole being eſteem'd 14 or 15 Thouſand Inhabitants. The *Turks* have four Moſques, one whereof was the Cathedral Church of *St. Mark*: And the *Chriſtians* have ſeveral Churches and a Biſhop. This is the Seat of the Captain *Baſſa*, or Admiral of the *Turkiſh* Navy, who is Governor of this City and Iſland, and alſo of *Achaia*: And in the Harbour which is very ſafe and capacious, there conſtantly rides a large Fleet of Gallies, ready at all times to go out againſt the *Corſairs* or other Enemies. The City is ſo ſtrong that it coſt the *Turks* 40000 Men to take it: And when the *Venetians* attack'd it in the Year 1688. they were ſain to leave it without Succeſs.

*Carifto*, or *Caſtelroſſo*, a good City with a Commodious Port on the Eaſtern Shore of the Iſland 50 miles diſtant from *Negropont*. And a few miles North from it, is the Promontory *Capherus* mention'd in Antiquity, on account of *Nauphius* the Father of *Pelemedes*, who there drowned himſelf becauſe *Ulyſſes* and *Diomedes* had eſcap'd him.



On the North-East of *Negropont* lies the Island *Syros*, by *Ortelius* said to be the lurking-place of *Achilles*: It is of Triangular, or rather Pyramidal Form, with a Ridge of Mountains cross it Two ways, and has a Town of the same Name, with a safe Haven on the Western Shoar, besides some Villages.

At some distance to the North-East, and in the Mouth of the Gulph of *Salonichi* lie a Cluster of Islands, among which *Pelagnisi*, *Olim Alonessus*, *Sciurus*, now *Sciassa*, *Scopelius*, now *Scopulo*, are the chief, but they contain nothing memorable.

**LEMNOS**, now **STALIMENE**, a large Fruitful and well Cultivated Island, seated in the North of the *Aegean* Sea, at an equal distance almost from the Coasts of *Greece*, *Natolia*, and *Thrace*: in the Latitude of 41 Degrees, the chief Town standing directly over-against *Monte Santo*, or *Mount Athos*, whose Shadow reaches to its Market-place, tho' it be 86 miles distant, as some say, tho' by the Maps it does not appear to be above 60 miles. The Form of the Island is Quadrangular, and its extent about 25 miles over. The chief Town of the same Name stands on the West-Shoar: It is a small City, and hath a good Port. Opposite to it on the East-Shoar stands *Misra* another good Town, near which is dug the *Terra Lemnia*, a sort of Mineral Earth

reckon'd good against Poysons, Infections, &c. and is much esteem'd, being sent Abroad in small Peller mark'd with a Publick Seal. This Island is noted in Antiquity for the fabulous Fall of *Vulcan*; and for the Entertainment of *Jasen*, and the *Arginatus* by *Hypsipyle*.

*Samothrace*, now *Samandrachi*, a small Island North from *Stalimene*, in the midst between the and *Thrace*, has plenty of Honey and Wild-Deer but no convenient Port, nor frequented but by Pirates.

*Lembro*, *Imbros*, lies on the East of *Stalimene*, near the Mouth of the *Dardanelis*. It has a Castle on the Top of a Mountain, and a safe Port.

*Tasso*, *Thassus*, seu *Thalassia*, lies near the Coast of *Thrace*, about 12 Leagues North-West from *Stalimene*: It has a Town with a good Harbour on the North-Shoar, and several Castles,

The other Islands in the *Archipelago*, as *Tenedos*, *Lesbos*, *Scio*, *Samos*, *Icaria*, *Pathmos*, *Lero*, *Choos*, *Astypalea*, and *Carpathus*, being situate on the Coast of *Asia* are describ'd there, as well as *Cypus* and *Rhodes*; so we shall now proceed to speak of the rest of the *European Turkey*.

## CHAPTER V.

*Of the Western Part of Turkey in Europe, comprehending the Province of Bosnia, with a small Part of Slavonia, and Hungary; as also of the Republick of Ragusa, and Dalmatia.*

**H**AVING Travell'd through *Hungary*, *Sclavonia*, *Croatia*, and *Morlachia*; and begun our Account of *Turkey in Europe*, with *Greece*, because the most noble part of it: We Return now to speak of the other Provinces of that Empire; and here the Province of *Dalmatia* first offers it self; but that being mostly recover'd by the *Venetians*, the principal Cities of it have been describ'd in our Account of the Dominions of that State; so that it is only necessary here to say, that

**DALMATIA** is seated along the the Coasts of the *Adriatick* Sea, between *Albania* on the East, and *Morlachia* on the West, having *Bosnia* and *Servia* on the North, and the Sea on the South, except where *Ragusa* intervenes: It extends very much in Length even near 200 miles, but its Breadth is not above 30. or at most 40 miles.

The Soil of it is in some parts Mountainous, but otherwise very fertile, producing Corn, Wine, Oyl, Honey and Wax.

This Province was part of the Ancient *ILLYRICUM*, but that extended much farther both West and East; for *Cluverius* tells us, That it was joyn'd to *Italy* on the West, being only parted by the River *Arfia*, in *Istria*; thence by a Line drawn to that Ridge of Mountains that part *Morlachia* from *Croatia*; which Mountains divided it from *Pannonia*. On

the North, and Eastward it extended to *Mount Scodrus*, now *Chimera*, and the River *Drilo*, now *Drin*, in *Albania*; and so comprehended the present *Morlachia*, *Dalmatia*, and part of *Albania*. But its Limits were often extended and restrain'd during the time of its being a Kingdom; which was suppress'd by the *Romans*, and *Illyricum* made a Province of their Empire, a little before the Third *Punick* War. Afterwards the *Dalmatians* assert their Liberty, and were for sometime a considerable People, extending their Country on all sides; but in the end it became part of the Eastern Empire till its Declension, when the *Sclavi* made it part of their Kingdom: Afterwards the *Huns* over-run it; who committing Piracies on their Neighbours, were Attack'd and made Tributary by the *Venetians*. In process of Time *Dalmatia* became a separate Government under its own Dukes, of whom *Demetrius* was about the Year 1076, invested by the Pope with the Title of King. Upon the failure of his Line in 1310, it was claim'd by the King of *Hungary*, as part of the Kingdom of *Croatia*, and part of it was possess'd by him, and part by the *Venetians*. At present the *Venetians* have all the Coasts, and the Principal Cities; and the *Turks* the Skirt of the upland Country on the Limits of *Bosnia*, and *Servia*.



The chief Towns Subject to the *Venetians*, as we have said in our Account of *Italy*, are,

*Zara*, } *Traw*,  
*Nona*, } *Cliffa*,  
*Sebenico*. } *Cattaro*.

Other chief Towns not mention'd there.

*Scardona*, }  
*Castel-novo*, } *Budoa*.

And the chief Towns Subject to the *Turks*, are

*Trebigna*, }  
*Narenza*, } *Antivari*.

*Scardona*, call'd *Skardin* by the *Sclavonians*, is a place of great Antiquity; by *Ptolomy*, plac'd in *Liburnia*, by *Strabo* call'd *Scardo*, and *Scordona* by *Porphyrogenita*, formerly the Metropolis of *Dalmatia*, but now Ruinous; however the See of a Bishop Translated from *Belgrade*. It stands on the River *Kerka* in the Frontiers of *Morlachia*, and *Bosnia*, 20 miles North from *Sebenico*. It was sold to the *Venetians* in 1411. by the Waywood of *Bosnia*; but being afterwards taken by the *Turks*, was recover'd by the *Venetians* in 1683.

*Narenza*, or *Narenta*, which *P. Mela* calls *Nara*, and *Pliny* *Narona*, stands on the River *Naro*, 70 miles East from *Spalato*, and 40 North from *Ragusa*. It was anciently a very Great and Powerful City, having under its Jurisdiction (according to *Varro*) 98 Towns, and assum'd the Sovereignty of the Gulph of *Venice*, but was subdu'd by the *Venetians* in 987, and lost almost all its Ancient Splendor. It was an Episcopal See; but in 1479 the *Turks* took and still possess it. Near to this place there is a Plain 30 miles Long, and 2 miles Broad, which is very Fruitful, and produces plenty of Corn in Six Months of the Year; but constantly about the middle of *October* it is overflow'd, and continues so the other six Months of the Year.

*Trebigna* stands 40 miles South-East from *Narenza*, and the Frontiers of *Ragusa*, Subject to the *Turks*. An Episcopal See, formerly subject to the *Ragusians*.

*Castel-Nevo*, is seated on the West side of the Gulph of *Cattaro*, 3 Leagues from its Mouth, 15 miles West from that City, and near 60 East from *Ragusa*. It is a very strong place, being Built on a Rocky Ground, and defended on the North-side by the Castle *Salimanega*. This Town was taken from the *Turks* in 1583, by the Confederate Forces, but lost the next Year. But in the Year 1687, the *Venetians* finally took and still possess it.

*Budoa*, mention'd by *Pliny*, *Ptolomy*, and *Stephanus*, under the Names of *Butua*, *Bulua*, and *Buthaer*, is situated on the Sea-Coasts between the Gulph of *Cattaro*, and the Town of *Dolcigno*, about 20 miles East from the former. It is an Episcopal See, and subjected to the *Venetians*.

*Antivari*, *Antibatum*, stands on the Borders of *Ilbania*, of which it is sometime reckon'd part, on the Coast in the midway between *Budoa* and *Dolcigno*. It was under the *Venetians* an Archiepiscopal see; but has been Subject to the *Turks* above an Age.

The Territory of the Republick of *RAGUSA*, lies on the Sea-Coasts, partly Island and Peninsula, and partly on the main Land of *Dalmatia*, which

bounds it on the East, as the Bay of *Narenza*, and the Island *Lefina* do on the North, and the *Adriatick* Sea on the South. The Country is about 60 miles Long, but not proportionably Broad. The Soil is not over-fruitful, but the Country is reasonably Populous, and a well govern'd Republick, but Tributary to the *Turks*, and often smubb'd by the *Venetians*, and insulted by other Princes. But they are so fond of their imaginary Liberty, that they will not be persuaded to put themselves under any Potent Master who could protect 'em. The Government is somewhat like that of *Venice*, except that thro' the Jealousy of the Inhabitants, the Doge is chang'd every Month, as also the Governor of the Castle of *Ragusa*. This little Republick brags of Antiquity beyond *Venice*, and put it self (as *Sir P. Rycaut* says) under the Protection of the *Turks* before they were Masters of any part of *Europe*: And by the Treaty of *Carlowitz* this Sovereignty is particularly conserv'd by the *Turks*. The chief Towns are,

*Ragusa*, }  
*Stagno*, } *Sabioncello*.

*RAGUSA*, call'd by the *Sclavonians* *Dubronick*, suppos'd to be the Ancient *Epidaurus*; but as others, Built by the *Epidaurians* after the Destruction of their own City, whereof they say *Ragusi Vecchio*, 2 miles from it is the Ruins, The City is not much above a mile in Compass, but Populous, the See of a Metropolitan, and one of the chiefest Ports in these Parts, having a safe and Commodious Harbour on the *Adriatick* Sea, near 100 miles South-East from *Spalato*, 60 West from *Cattaro*, as also 120 West from *Dura* &c. It is well Fortified with a strong Castle, a steep craggy Rock, and good Bulwarks, and Environ'd with large Suburbs. It hath also a Garison of 200 Men, and the Burghers keep constant Guard. The Port is named *Sante Croce*, and is secur'd by the small Island *Lacinia*, which lies about half a Mile from the Town on the one side, and a Cape of Land on the other, which is Fortified. This City was miserably shatter'd by an Earthquake on the 6th. of *April* in the Year 1667, whereby the greatest part of it was destroy'd.

*Stagno*, *Stagnum*, is a small City with a Commodious Harbour, and an Episcopal See, 20 miles North from *Ragusa*, at the Isthmus of the Peninsula, in whose Western Part, 25 miles from it stands *Sabioncello*, or *Sabio*, another good Town, with a Haven over-against the Island *Curzola*.

To the *Ragusians* are also Subject,

The Islands, *Meleda* and *Augusta*, or *Aufla*, both lying near the Coasts of the Peninsula; the former about 20 miles in Length, with a Town of the same Name, is not above a League distant; the other lies to the West of it, and on the South of *Curzola*, not so large.

*Curzola*, *Coreyra niger* *Strabo*, an Island larger than either of these, lies also not above a League or Two from the Western Coast of *Ragusa*, the chief Town of the same Name, being seated on the North-Shoar over-against *Sabioncello*, formerly Subject to *Ragusa*, but now to the *Venetians*.

There are Three or Four other small Islands, but not considerable.



## B O S N I A.

On the North of *Dalmatia* lies *Bosnia*, call'd *Woffen* by the *Germans*, between that and the River *Save*, which parts it from *Slavonia* on the North, as the River does it from *Servia* on the East, and the *Unna* from *Croatia* on the West. It was anciently that part of *Pannonia*, call'd *Inferior*, or *Secunda Conflularis*, and took its present Name from the River *Bosna*, or *Possna*, which runs through some part of it, and falls into the *Save*. It was sometime an independent Kingdom; afterwards became Tributary to the *Hungarians*; and Lastly, was Subjected to the *Turks*, who still enjoy it.

The *AIR* is Sharp, but the *SOIL* produces some Corn, and some Mines of Gold and Silver. It is divided into the Upper and Lower; the former being the Southern part to *Dalmatia*; the latter on the Banks of the *Save*. The chief Towns are,

In the Upper { *Bagnaluca*,  
                  { *Tina*.

In the Lower { *Fayezza*.  
                  { *Bosna-Serajo*.

*Bagnaluca*, or *Banialuck*, stands on the Confines of *Dalmatia*, 30 miles North from *Spalato*. It was taken by the *Turks* in 1527, and is the Seat of their Governor.

*Tina*, is 30 miles West from *Bagnaluca*, near the Head of the River *il Kirk*, and near the Confines of *Croatia* and *Dalmatia*, 30 miles North from *Sebinico*.

*Fayezza*, *Giezza*, or *Gaitia*, thought to be the Ancient *Emate*, stands upon a Hill 50 miles North from *Tina*, 20 South from the *Save*, and near 40 East from *Wibic* in *Croatia*. It was formerly the Metropolis of *Bosnia*, and the Seat of their King, taken by the *Turks*, and recover'd by the *Hungarians* in the 15th. Century; but finally reconquer'd by the *Turks* in 1530, and made the Seat of their *Sangiac*. It has a strong Castle, and other Fortifications for its Defence.

*Bosna-Saraya*, or *Sarajo*, stands upon the River *Miglazza*, 75 miles East from *Fayezza*, 25 South

from the *Save*, and 15 West from the Frontiers of *Servia*. It is now reckon'd the chief Town of *Bosnia*.

## Of the Part of Slavonia and Hungary granted to the Turks.

By the Treaty of *Carlowitz*, it is agreed, That a Line drawn from the Bank of the *Tibisch*, opposite to *Titul*, and to that Angle of Land made by the Confluence of the *Tibisch* and *Danube*, thence over the *Danube*, and thence over part of *Slavonia* to the place where the *Bosut* falls into the *Save* (which is over-against the Limits of *Bosnia*) shall be the Boundary of the Two Empires: That part toward *Belgrade* being Subject to the *Turk*, and the rest of *Slavonia* remain to the Empire. In the *Turkish* part stands no considerable City; *Salankement*, *Semlyn*, and what else was worth notice, we have already mention'd in our account of *Slavonia*.

By the same Treaty of *Carlowitz*, it is also stipulated, That the Province subject to the Fortress of *Temeswar*, (which is the South-East Corner of *Hungary*) bounded by *Transilvania*, and *Walachia* on the East and North-East, the River *Marosch* on the North, the River *Tibisch* on the West, and the River *Danube* on the South, shall remain under the Ottoman Dominion; and the *Imperialists* shall demolish, *Caransebes*, *Lippa*, *Czanad*, *Berscho*, *Sabla*, and Three or Four other places never to be Refortified. The *Imperialists* and *Turks* to enjoy in common the use of the Rivers *Marosch*, and *Teyffe*, and the Islands which his Imperial Majesty hath therein shall remain in his possession.

*Temeswaer*, the Capital of this Province, is a large strong Town, seated on the River *Temes*, (whence it took its Name) near the Confines of *Transilvania* 40 miles North-East from *Belgrade*, 75 from *Great-Varadin* to the South, and 130 from *Buda* to the South-East. It was taken by the *Turks* in 1552 after a Vigorous Defence, made by a *Spanish* Garrison, then in the place, who contrary to Treaty were all cut to Pieces by the *Turks*. It has ever since been the Seat of a *Bassa*; and is so strongly Fortified, that they call it *Invincible*.

## C H A P. VI.

Of SERVIA and BULGARIA,  
olim Moesia, Superior & Inferior.

THE Ancient *Moesia*, contained these two large Provinces, except the most Eastern part, on the Banks of the *Black Sea*, which was possess'd by the *Scythians*, and call'd *Scythia Pontica*. It was divided into the *Superior* or *Prima*, which is the present *Servia*; and the *Inferior* or *Secunda*, now *Bulgaria*; the Division being at the River *Ciabus*. In the Upper bordering upon *Macedon*, liv'd the *Dardani*, whence the Country was Nam'd *Dardania*. In

the Lower, which Borders upon *Thrace*, the *Tribals* were the most noted Nation; these had the Honour to Vanquish *Philip* King of *Macedon*, in his Return through their Country, from an Expedition to *Sarmatia*. Beyond them Eastward, lay the *Scythians*, of whom the most considerable part were the *Getae*, Inhabitants of both sides the *Danube*, in *Dacia* as well as *Moesia*.

M. Licini



*M. Licinius Crassus* entirely subdu'd it to the Roman Empire; and afterwards the Upper *Masia* took the Name of *Servia*, and the Lower that of *Bulgaria*, and became in time two Independent Kingdoms, which were finally Conquer'd by *Mahomet II.* and are still subject to the *Turks*.

*SERVIA* lies Eastward from *Bosnia*, having the Rivers *Danube* and *Save* on the North, *Albania* and *Macedon* on the South, *Bulgaria* on the East, *Dalmatia* on the South-West, and *Sclavonia* on the North-West, from which it is divided by the River *Save*, as the River *Drino* is its Division from *Bosnia*. Its Extent is above 250 Miles in Length, from East to West; and 130 in Breadth, from North to South. Being seated in Latitude from 43 to 45 Degrees. And in Longitude from 37 to 43 Degree.

The AIR is Temperate and Healthy, and the SOIL so fruitful, that *Masia* was call'd by the *Romans* the Granary for Corn; but by reason of the severe Government of the *Turks*, it is not half Cultivated. *Dr. Brown* tells us, 'tis a fruitful and pleasant Country, consisting of Plains, Woods and Hills, which would produce Wine, Corn and Metals, if duly Manur'd: It hath also excellent Horses, and is well water'd with Rivers.

The INHABITANTS were always reckon'd a Barbarous, Cruel sort of People, much inclin'd to Robbery and Drunkenness, and tho' professing Christianity, according to the Greek Church, are often guilty of selling Children to the *Turks*. There are *Roman Catholicks* among 'em; but the *Greeks* and *Jews* (who manage the Traffick) inhabit the Cities, and the *Turks* the Burghs and Fortresses. The chief Towns in *Servia* are,

<i>Belgrade,</i>	}	{	<i>Nissa,</i>
<i>Semendria,</i>			<i>Scopia,</i>
<i>Widin,</i>			<i>Novibazar:</i>

**BELGRADE**, call'd by the *Germans* *Greichsh-Weisemburg*, and *Nandor Alba* by the *Hungarians*, *Alba Græca*, aut *Alba Bulgaria*; suppos'd to be the ancient *Taurunum*, seeing that is plac'd in the *Pcutingarian* Tables, 3 Miles from the Confluence of the *Danube* and *Save*, at least it grew up out of its Ruins. It is seated on a Hill in the Country of *Rascia*, on the South-side of the *Danube*, and East-side of the *Save*, at the Confluence of those two Rivers, in the Latitude of 45 Deg. and Longitude 38 Deg. 30 Min. It is a large City very well fortify'd, and admirably seated for Trade, having besides the *Danube*, the Convenience of the *Save*, *Drave*, *Tibiscus*, and other Navigable Rivers to convey the Commodities which the Fertility of the Country would produce, if it were inhabited by a Virtuous and Industrious People, under a regular and favourable Government. And in effect this is the greatest Mart in all these Parts, being Traded to by the *Ragufans*, by the Merchants of *Vienna*, who have Factories in this City, and by the *Armenians* and *Jews*, who are numerous here, especially the former, who have a Church. *Belgrade* was formerly the Bulwark of *Hungary*. It resisted the two Sieges of *Amurath II.* in 1439. and *Mahomet II.* in 1456. but was at last taken by *Solyman* the Magnificent in 1521. The *Turks* slighted it for many Years, having Frontiers so much more advanc'd. But when the *Imperialists* had taken *Buda*, in 1686. they thought of repairing these Fortifications, which they immediately set to work upon. But however

could not make it strong enough to resist the Christian Army, who under the Duke of *Bavaria* sat down before it, and September 6th 1688. took it. But it was a Place of too much Importance for the *Turks* to sit down with the Loss of; wherefore in 1690. they invested it with an Army of 60000 Men, under the Command of the Grand Visier. The Garrison consisting of 6000 Men, made a brave Defence, till the Magazine was unhaply blown up by the fall of a Bomb, the Store houses fir'd, part of the Walls blown up, and the Trenches fill'd with Rubbish, which gave the *Turks* so much Advantage, that they enter'd with Sword in Hand, and cut all the Garrison off, except the Governor and 300 Men, who found means to escape. And it is now the Frontier of *Turkey* on this side. The River *Danube* is very broad here, and its Stream so rapid, that it permits not the Waters of the *Save* to mix with it, but (as *Dr. Brown* expresses it) cuts that River off, and the Waters of the one, and the other, are visibly distinguish'd; that of the *Danube* being white and thick, and the *Save* green and clear.

*Semerdrja*, anciently a Roman Colony, and afterwards the Capital of *Servia*, but now ruinous; stands near the Banks of the *Danube*, 20 Miles East from *Belgrade*; near this Place *Sigismund*, King of *Hungary*, was defeated by the *Turks* in the Year 1409. and in 1427. they took the Place; which the Christians beat 'em out of, after they had taken *Belgrade* in 1688. but two Years after the *Turks* retook it by Storm, and put all the Garrison to the Sword.

*Widin* or *Viddin*, seated on the *Danube* at the Mouth of the River *Lom*, is a Fortress of great Moment for covering the adjacent Parts, which made Prince *Lewis* of *Baden*, after he had beaten the *Turks* in 1689. and soon after taken *Nissa*, to march with a Party of *Germans* in the Month of October that Year, to this Place, which he took by Surprise; but the Castle held out for some time, which however was forc'd to submit to the Conqueror; and they held it till the Year 1690. It stands 150 Miles East from *Belgrade*, and about 70 North from *Nissa*. In the Neighbourhood of this Town has happen'd several Battles, viz. in 1443. the Memorable one of *Hunniades*, who set upon the *Turks* by Night, and kill'd 30000 of them. In 1595. the *Turks* lost 19000 in Battle at a little distance from this place. And at the taking of the Town above-mention'd, Prince *Lewis* flew 2000 of those that made defence.

*Nissa*, seated on a River of the same Name, which falls into the *Morava*, the chief River of this Country, at the distance of 140 Miles South-East from *Belgrade*, and 60 South from the *Danube*. It is a Town of Strength and great Importance, and was the most advanc'd Town that the Christian Army possess'd in their Progress in this Province. A. 1689. Prince *Lewis* of *Baden* with an Army of 15000 fought the *Turks* near it, entirely defeated their Army of 80000 Men, and immediately took Possession of the Town, which was reasonably well fortify'd. But in the Year 1690. the *Turks* retook it after a Siege of 3 Weeks; and soon after the Frontiers of *Turkey* were again extended to *Belgrade*, tho' on this Loss the *Turks* were ready to accept Peace on any Terms. But it pleas'd God to order it otherwise, and permit this Province to be still subject to these Arbitrary Masters.

*Scopia* or *Uscopia*, *Scupi*, Ptol. a City of great Trade, and the largest in these Parts, as *Dr. Brown* says, is seated in a pleasant and plentiful Country, partly



partly Hills, and partly Plains, on the River *Var-*  
*dar* or *Axius*, at the Foot of Mount *Orbelus*, near  
the Confines of *Macedon*, 60 Miles from *Nissa*, and  
120 from the *Danube* to the South, 60 from *Sophia*  
to the West, and 100 from *Salonicbi* to the North-  
West. It is a populous Place, adorn'd with fair  
Houses, many Mosques, and delightful Walks all  
round it. 'Tis also a Place of considerable Com-  
merce, between *Bulgaria*, *Macedonia* and *Belgrad*,  
and has Streets of Shops cover'd over, as the man-  
ner is at *Belgrade*, and other Trading Cities of  
*Turkey*. When *Mahomet I.* Conquer'd it, he plac'd  
here a Colony of *Asiaticks*, which with *Jews* were  
its chief Inhabitants. Before that it had been an  
Archi-Episcopal See. In the Year 1689. the *Turks*  
abandon'd this City, and General *Picolomini* took  
Possession; but because it was not strong enough to  
hold, he burnt and left it.

### BULGARIA, *sive* *Moesia Inferior*.

Eastward from *Servia*, along the Southern Banks  
of the *Danube*, quite to the *Black Sea*, lies *Bulgaria*,  
bounded on the South by a Ridge of Mountains,  
which part it from *Thrace* or *Romania*. Its Extent  
is more in Length than *Servia*, being near 300 Miles  
from East to West; but in Breadth 'tis not above  
60 in the middle part, but near twice as much at  
each end. It hath high Mountains, fruitful Valleys,  
plenty of Oxen and Sheep, and in general a good  
fertile Country. Formerly subject to its own Kings,  
now the *Turks*, and inhabited by *Greek Christians*,  
as well as *Turks* and *Jews*. The chief Cities are,

<i>Sophia,</i>	}	<i>Axiopolis,</i>
<i>Silistria,</i>		<i>Proslaviza,</i>
<i>Nigebeli,</i>		<i>Baba,</i>
<i>Ternova,</i>		<i>Magnegalia,</i>
<i>Hafgrad,</i>		<i>Varna,</i>
<i>Dorostero,</i>		<i>Mesember.</i>

**S O P H I A**, or *Sofia*, otherwise call'd *Triadizza*,  
the Capital of this Province, is seated on the River  
*Icher*, in a spacious Plain, near Mount *Hemus*, at an  
equal distance from the Confines of *Servia*, *Romania*  
and *Macedon*, being 65 Miles distant from *Scopia* to  
the East, 110 from *Salonicbi* to the North, 90 from  
the *Danube* to the South, and 100 from *Philippoli*  
in *Romania* to the West. It is a large, populous and  
well-built City, on the Road from *Constantinople* to  
*Belgrade*; the Seat of the *Beglerbeg* of *Rumeli*, but  
however destitute of Walls. It was anciently nam'd  
*Sardica*, and took its present Name (as is general-  
ly believ'd) from *Sophia*, the Wife of the Emperor  
*Justinian*, in whose Honour that Prince Re-founded  
it. It was for some time the See of an Arch-Bishop,  
and was Famous for a general Council held in it in  
the Year 347.

*Silistria*, a large City, the second of Note in *Bul-*  
*garia*, and by some reckon'd as the Capital, and  
the Seat of a *Turkish* Sangiack; stands on the Ri-  
ver *Abis*, or *Jatrus*, 70 Miles North from *Sophia*,  
and 25 South from the *Danube*: *Sanson* places this  
City on the *Danube*, 150 Miles more East, but  
with what Reason I can't tell, since all other Maps  
and Writings place it as we have said.

*Nicopolis* or *Nigebeli*, and by the *Turks* *Sciltaro*,  
stands on the *Danube*, at the Mouth of the *Jatrus*,  
or *Ischar*, 25 Miles North from *Silistria*. *Luyts*  
calls it *Gemin*; major & minor, *quas Danubius inter-*  
*fluit*; but as no Maps express so much, nor other  
Authors mention it, we must leave it to the Read-  
er's further Search. It was built by the Emperor  
*Trajan*, after the Defeat of King *Decabius*; and as  
*Baudrand* tells us, was an Arch-Episcopal See, in  
its *Christian* State. Near this Place *Sigismund*,  
King of *Hungary*, was unfortunately Defeated by  
*Bajazet* the *Turkish* Emperor, in the Year 1396.  
which was owing more to the Divisions among the  
*Christians*, than the Bravery of the *Turks*; for as  
History relates, there fell 60000 of the *Turks*, and  
20000 of the *Christians*.

*Ternova*, another good City, stands on the River  
*Fantra* near Mount *Hemus*, about 20 Miles from the  
Confines of *Romania*, 30 from *Silistria* to the East,  
and 40 from the *Danube* to the South. *Ferrarius* calls  
it Arch-Episcopal, and the Metropolis of *Bulgaria*.

*Dorostero*, *Dorostorus*, *Dorostolon* or *Dorostena*,  
formerly a considerable City, and a Bishop's See,  
is now a Village only, seated near the *Danube*, 130  
Miles East from *Silistria*.

*Axiopolis* stands also on the *Danube*, 30 Miles be-  
low *Dorostero*.

Towns in Bulgaria, on the Coasts of the  
Black-Sea, are,

*Tomi*, *Tomisware* or *Balla*, seated in an Island  
made by the Mouths of the *Danube*, is the Place to  
which the Poet *Ovid* was Banish'd.

*Proslaviza*, or *Chiusenge*, olim *Istropolis*, stands at  
the Mouth of the South Branch of the *Danube*.

*Magnegalia*, 20 Miles more to the South, a small  
Port.

*Varna*, the *Dicynsopolis* of *Pliny*, stands upon the  
River *Zyra*, a few Miles from Sea. A few Miles  
from it a notable Battle was Fought in the year 1444  
between the *Turks* and *Christians*, wherein *Lewis*,  
King of *Hungary*, was kill'd. It stands in the Mid-  
way between *Magnegalia* and *Mesember*.

*Mesember*, *Mesembria*, ut & *Menebria*, *Strabo*,  
*Mesambria*, *Herod.* stands on the Confines of *Roma-*  
*nia*, and on a small Bay, which is an ancient Port,  
mention'd by Historians, as the People about are  
by the Poet *Ovid*. *Ferrarius* calls it *Urbs Archi-*  
*Episcopalis*; but whether it be so still, we dare not  
say.



CHAP. VII.

OF ROMANIA aut THRACIA. And of the Greek and Turkish Emperors.

THIS Country had its first Name, as 'tis thought, from *Thrace* the Son of *Mars*; or as others, from the Sharpness of the Air, and the rough Temper of the People, *quasi Τραχέα aspera regio*, a sharp or cruel Country; thus *Cluverius*. The Name of *Romania* was given it by the Emperors, when they had establish'd their Throne there: And since the *Turks* Conquer'd it, 'tis nam'd *Rumeli*.

It is a large Country, bounded on the North by Mount *Hæmus*, call'd by the *Greeks* *Balkan*, *Sclavonians* *Cumoniça*, *Italians* *Monte Argentaro*, or *Costonazza*, a long continu'd Ridge of high Mountains, which divide this Province from *Bulgaria*, on the South by the *Archipelago*, on the East the *Propontis*, and *Bosphorus*, and the *Euxine* or *Black-Sea*, and on the West by *Macedon* and *Bulgaria*. Its utmost Extent from East to West is near 300 Miles, that is, from the City of *Constantinople* to the Confines of *Macedon*: And its Breadth is about 150 Miles. The Air is Cold, but the Soil however produces plenty of good Corn and Pasture, and some, but very little, Wine. In the Mountains are Mines of Silver, Lead and Alum. It was anciently divided among many Nations or People, even no less than 50, according to *Pliny*. Afterwards made Tributary to the *Macedonians*; then Conquer'd by the *Romans*, under *Caius Scribonius Curio*, Proconsul; long possess'd by the Eastern Emperors; and lastly Conquer'd by the *Turks*, who have govern'd it for near 250 Years past. The chief River is the *Meriza*, olim *Hæbrus*, which takes its Rise at the Foot of Mount *Rhodope*, near the Confines of *Macedon*, passes by *Philippipoli* and *Adrianop'le*, and falls at last into the *Archipelago*; in this River 'tis said Gold Sand is sometimes found.

The *Christian* Religion, according to the *Greek* Church, is generally Profess'd, notwithstanding that the Government is all *Mahometan*; there are also many *Jews*, and some *Papists*. The chief Cities are,

<i>Fanicoli,</i>	{	<i>Scutari,</i>
<i>Philippipolis,</i>		<i>Abdera,</i>
<i>Nicopoli,</i>	{	<i>Gallipoli,</i>
<i>Adrianople,</i>		<i>Sestos,</i>
<i>Trajanople,</i>	{	<i>Selivera,</i>
<i>Constantinople,</i>		<i>Rudisio.</i>
<i>Galata,</i>		

*Fanicoli* or *Nonocolo*, stands on the River *Meriza*, on the Road between *Sophia* and *Philippipoli*, 60 Miles East from the former, and 40 West from the latter.

*Philippipoli* or *Philiba*, olim *Trimontium*, a large City, but without Walls, seated also on the *Meriza*, near 60 miles East from the Confines of *Bulgaria*, and as many North from the *Archipelago*. It is an Archiepiscopal See, and was taken by the *Turks* in the Year 1360. who have ever since held it.

*Nicopoli* stands on the Confines of *Macedon*, 20 Miles from the *Archipelago*, and 40 South from *Philippipoli*.

*Adrianople*, or *Adrinopolis*, call'd *Endrem* & *Drenale*, took its Name from the Emperor *Adrian*, by whom it was Repair'd in the Year 122. and is seated on the River *Meriza*, in the middle of the Province, 130 Miles from the Confines of *Bulgaria* to the East, 150 from *Constantinople* to the West, 70 from the *Archipelago* to the North, and 60 from Mount *Hæmus* to the South. It is a large well-built City in a wholesome Air, esteem'd the second of *Romania*; and before the taking of *Constantinople*, was the Seat of the Turkish Emperor, after the Year 1362. in which they took it; and it is still very frequently Honour'd with his Presence, especially during the late War, and at any time when the Plague rages at *Constantinople*.

*Trajanople*, so nam'd from the Emperor *Trajan*, being before call'd *Zermis*, stands on the *Meriza*, 50 Miles South from *Adrianople*; it was formerly a considerable City, and the See of an Archbishop, but is now dwindled into a small Town.

*Abdera*, or *Asperosa*, seated on the Coast of the *Archipelago*, 70 Miles South-West from *Adrianople*, and 50 West from the Mouth of the River *Meriza*, and about 15 from the *Bistonian* Lake. It is more notable for Antiquity than its present State. It was Built by *Abderus*, the Son of *Diomedes*, or *Abdera*, the Sister of *Diomedes*, according to *Solinus* and others. And it is by others imputed to *Abderus*, one of the Companions of *Hercules*, torn to pieces by *Diomedes's* Horses; and was once in so good Estate as to be proverbially call'd *Abdera* the Beautiful. It was the Birth-place of *Democritus* the Philosopher, who put out his Eyes that he might the better Contemplate; as also of *Protagoras* the Philosopher. The Inhabitants were addicted to Frenzy and Lunacy, which occasion'd the Proverb *Abderrica mens* to denote a Lunatick.

*Gallipoli*, a large City with a Castle, Magazine and Fortification, and a good Port in the Mouth of the *Dardanells* and *Propontis*, stands in the *Thracian Chersonesus*, or Peninsula over against *Lampsaco*, in *Asia*, at the Mouth of the Strait call'd the *Dardanells* or *Hellepont*, toward the *Propontis*, or Sea of *Marmora*, 110 Miles South-West from *Constantinople*, and 130 South-East from *Adrianople*. This Place was heretofore much more considerable than at present; for tho' it be 5 or 6 Miles in Compass, it is not proportionably Populous: The Inhabitants are reckon'd about 20000, whereof two Thirds are *Turks*, and the rest *Christians* and *Jews*. It hath two Bays convenient for Gallies, whereof that on the South-side is capable of Ships of Burden. And on the Shoar are some dry Stations for Ships. The Town appears more advantageously from without than within side; for the high Steeples of the Mosques, and the Cupola's of the *Bezeestans*, or Places of Trade like Exchanges, both here and in all the chief



chief Cities in *Turkey*, make a fine Show at a distance; whereas within the Town the Houses being low, built of Wood and Earth; the Streets narrow and cover'd, make but an ordinary Appearance. This is the Seat of the *Beglerbeg* of the Islands, the *Præfect* of these Seas.

*Sestos*, the ancient Town and Castle, the Ruins whereof still appear 25 Miles South from *Gallipoli*, over against *Abydos* on the *Asian* Shoar, call'd the *Dardanelis*, Famous for *Xerxes's* Bride here over the *Hellepontus*. These two Castles serve to command the Passage of this narrow Straight, and secure *Constantinople* on this side, as do those on the *Thracian Bosphorus* on the other side of the *Propontis*.

*Rudista*, or *Rodesto*, a City of good Trade, having a commodious Haven on the *Propontis*, 20 Leagues North from *Gallipoli*.

*Selivera*, another Port and large Trading City on the *Propontis*, 12 Leagues North-East from *Rudista*, and as many West from *Constantinople*.

The *Propontis*, on which these Towns as well as *Constantinople* are seated, otherwise call'd the Sea of *Mamora*. flows between the *Archipelago*, and the *Euxine* or *Black-Sea*, to both which it communicates only by two narrow Straights; that on the South-west is the *Hellepont*, of which we have been speaking; the other on the North-East is the *Bosphorus* of *Thrace*, which leads to the *Black-Sea*; both these Straights are very narrow, especially the latter; so that the *Propontis* seems but a Lake, the *Asian* Land on one side, and the Lands of *Thrace* on the other, surrounding it, except where these two Channels have broke thro'. It is 140 Miles from East to West, and 60 from North to South.

**CONSTANTINOPLE** is seated in *Europe*, very near the Shoar of *Asia*, on a Point or Tongue of Land that juts out into the Sea of *Mamora*, in a Triangular Figure, 6 Miles long, and 14 in Compass, two of its Sides being wash'd by the Sea. At the distance of about 20 Miles it affords the finest Prospect in the World, to the Wonder and Astonishment of all those who look upon it; for it lies along the Shoar for above 6 Miles, and so situated sloping towards the Sea, that you perceive at once an infinite number of Mosques, adorn'd with high Domes cover'd with Lead, and high Turrets, but especially with a lovely Prospect of the Castle of the *Seven Towers*, and of the *Seraglio*, which are particularly remarkable, both for their Largeness, and vast Number of gilt Globes, and Spires resembling little Steeples. But it appears much more Glorious and Delightful without than it does within; for the Houses are generally of Wood, and the Streets so narrow, that in the greatest part of 'em two loaded Horses cannot go a-breast; and their Houses jut out so far near the Top that in several places one may step from one Window to another, which exposes it to the fatal Inconveniences of Fire, which breaks out frequently, and proceeds irresistibly, till it meets with some Garden or empty Place, where there are no Houses to be burnt: And besides, this sort of Architecture is very offensive to the Eye; for the Streets are extremely disfigur'd by this Irregularity. Nor have their Houses any external Ornament, for they are made for the most part of rough unplann'd Wood daub'd over with nasty red Paint, and look very ugly.

This City was Founded by *Pausanias* King of *Sparta*, about 666 Years before the Birth of Christ, and was call'd *Byzantium*, which Name it retain'd

till *Constantine the Great* resolving to make it the Metropolis of the World, order'd it to be Rebuilt with all imaginable Magnificence, and call'd *Constantinople*, or *Constantine's Town*; but the *Turks* call it *Stamboul*. It was for a long time the Seat of the Eastern Emperor: The *French* in Conjunction with the *Venetians*, took it in the Year 1203 and 7 Years after 'twas retaken by the *Greeks*, who remain'd Masters of it till the Year 1453. when it fell into the hands of *Mahomet II.* and at present it is the Capital City of the *Ottoman* Empire. The Air is so extremely pure here, that the Inhabitants are never subject to any reigning Disease, except the Plague, which once every Year sweeps off vast Numbers of 'em. The Walls which surround this City at present are the same that were built by *Constantine the Great*, except in some places where they have been repair'd. They are double on one side next the Land, with Battlements after the Oriental Fashion, and Towers from place to place; and besides they are defended with a lind, but shallow Ditch. These, with the Castle of the *Seven Towers*, are all the Strength of *Constantinople*; for the Inhabitants not being accusom'd to War, would only serve to hasten a Famine; and Bombs would make terrible Work, considering the Manner and Materials of their Houses.

The Places and Things most worth seeing are, 1. The *Beseftin*, which is a distinct Canton of the City, enclos'd with Walls and Gates, where all the Merchant keep Shops. This is the finest and most regular Place in *Constantinople*: It is divided into Streets, and cover'd above with Planks, joyn'd together with Rasters, which form a kind of Roof, sufficient to secure them against all the Inconveniences of bad Weather. The Merchants in these Shops keep only a Pattern of what they have in their Warehouses. In one part of it there are Goldsmiths, in another Drapers, in another Mercers, and so all other Shopkeepers. And this is the only Place in *Constantinople* where there are Shops; for the rest of the City consists of little narrow Streets so desolate, that one may see more Streets than Persons as he passes along. The second Place remarkable, is the *Hippodrome*, which was Built by the Emperor *Constantine* for Exercises on Horse-back, and is still call'd the *Place of Horses*. It is an Oblong Square 400 Paces long, and about 200 broad; in that End of it which is opposite to the *Seraglio*, there are two Obelisks, one of 'em consisting of one Stone, is 70 Foot high. The third Thing remarkable, is the Church of *Sancta Sophia*, which questionless hath lost much of its Magnificence, and is now the principal Mosque of the City. It is at present 120 Paces long, and 80 broad. The Walls are square, but the Vault or Roof is round, and so artificially contriv'd, that so large a Structure is supported without any Columns; for those Rows of Columns that form the two lower Portico's serve only for Ornament, and are so plac'd, that they cannot be suppos'd to carry any other Weight than that of two Galleries, and even the greatest part of these Columns are so old, that they are forc'd to bind them about with great Iron Hoops to prevent their falling. At the four Corners of the Building, where the Vault begins to be round, the *Four Beasts* mention'd in the *Apocalyps* are painted in Mosaick: but the *Turks* have disfigur'd these, as they have done the Image of our Saviour, which is over the principal Door. This Temple is pav'd with very fine Marble, cover'd with Mats, by reason of the



Coldness of the Marble, which might incommode those that come to pay their Devotion, who always put off their Shoes before they enter. This Mosque is the only Ancient Structure of that Nature in *Constantinople*; for all the rest were built in this and the last Age, by *Sultans* or *Sultaneſſes*, whose Names they bear, the finest of which is that Built by the *Sultaneſſs Valide*, Mother of *Sultan Mahomet IV.* The *Grand Signior's Arsenal* is at the end of the Port beyond *Cassum-pacha* and *Galata*, and contains a considerable Extent of Ground. The Gallies are laid up under 120 Arches; and 'tis said there are Arms in it for 60000 Men; but no *Christian* is allow'd to see them. The *Seraglio*, so much admir'd and talk'd of by those who never saw it, is Built on a Point of Land that juts out into the Sea, and is surrounded with high Walls, with a Parapet at the Top, and Battlements like those of the City. It is almost 4 Miles in Compass, the greatest part of which is taken up with Gardens. The Structure is irregular, and it is nothing but a vast heap of Buildings, not unlike some old Castles in *Christendom*. The principal Entry is near *Sancta Sophia*, and exactly resembles the Gate of an old paltry Town without Architecture or Ornament. On the Right-hand of the first Court, there are Apartments for the Sick, who are lodg'd as poorly as if it were in an Hospital. On the other hand are Magazines for 1000 Men, in case the *Grand Signior* had occasion at any time to Arm his Domestick Servants for the Security of his Person. In the next Court are the *Grand Signior's* Kitchens on one side, and Stables on the other for 100 Horses. Very near this *Seraglio*, and within the same Inclosure, stands the Old *Seraglio*, where the Wives of the *Sultan's* Predecessors are kept, and in a Third *Seraglio* the present *Sultan's* Wives are Lodg'd, joyn'd close to that of the *Grand Signior*. But a longer account of this famous place is not easy to be given, since few are allow'd to survey it all, and besides by this time 'tis like the Reader has enough on't.

But above all things that are to be seen about this City, the Harbour, which is called the Port by way of Excellency, is the most agreeably surprizing. 'Tis 3 Miles long. and almost 1 Broad, clean and deep throughout, even to the Shoar, the largest Ship coming up to the Land. At the Entry into it there is a high square Tower, commonly call'd the Tower of *Leander*, from a person of that Name; who, as the Story goes, us'd to swim thither every Night to his Mistress who was Imprison'd in the Tower.

It would be too tedious, and would swell the Description of this City, beyond what the Nature of

this Work will allow, if we should relate all the various Accidents and Revolutions that have happen'd in it, from the time that *Constantine the Great* removed the Imperial Seat thither from *Rome*, till *Mahomet II.* Emperor of the *Turks*, made himself absolute Master of it, on the 27th. of May 1453, after having Slain *Constantine XV.* the last of the *Grecian* Emperors.

*Constantinople* stands in the Latitude of 41 Degrees, and 30 Minutes, and Longitude of 49 Degrees, and 30 Minutes: On the *Propontis* on one side and the *Thracian Bosphorus* on the other, by which it is separated from *Asia*, but at so little distance, that common Boats pass over; and *Scutari* on the *Asian* side is reckon'd a Suburbs to it; as is also

*Galata* adjoining to *Constantinople* on the North-side the Port: It stands on the South-side of a steep Hill, which juts out a Promontory into the *Bosphorus*. It is a City of its self, being surrounded with Walls and large Suburbs, exceeding Populous, and chiefly inhabited by *Christians* and *Jews*. It is a place of great Trade, and hath a *Caravanſerai*, or Publick Store-house wherein the Merchants Lodge their Goods: It is handsomely Built and well adorn'd with Cupula's, &c. On the Top of the Hill stands a round Tower adorn'd with Spires, and might be intended for a Fortrefs. On the North-side of *Galata* lies the Suburb

*Pera*, by which Name is sometime understood all *Galata*. It consists of one large Street running Northward, with divers cross ones, and is honour'd with the Residence of the *Christians* Ambassadors.

*Scutari*, or *Scudaret*, is seated on the *Asian* Shoar over against the Port between the Two Promontories of the *Seraglio* and *Galata*. It is a large Town, suppos'd to be the *Chrysopolis*, and *Diana Forum* of the Ancients, although there be no remains of Antiquity. It is Adorn'd with a Royal Mosque, Built and Endow'd by the *Sultaneſſs's* Mother: As also a Palace or House of Pleasure of the *Grand Seignior's*. Not far from hence on the Brow of a Hill may be seen one of the most beautiful Prospects in the World; for the City of *Constantinople*, *Galata*, and *Pera*, the *Bosphorus*, and the *Propontis*, with the Country about on both Shoars may be seen at once.

*Constantinople* thus increas'd with *Scutari*, *Pera*, *Galata*, as also *Cassum-pacha*, and *Tophana*, which all lie contiguous, may be reckon'd one of the largest Cities in the World.



*A Chronological Table shewing the Succession of the Emperors of Constantinople, or of the East, from Constantine the Great, to Constantine Palæologus, Depos'd by the Turks.*

	A. C.
Constantine the Great	312
Constantius	337
Gallus	351
Julian the Apostate	361
Jovian	363
Valentinian	364
Valens	366
Procopius	378
Theodosius the Great	383
Arcadius	395
Theodosius the Younger	408
Marcianus	450
Leo the Elder	457
Asper & Patricius	
Zeno the Isaurian	474
Basilicus	475
Marcianus and Procopius	479
Lecentius	487
Anastasius	491
Longinus	
Justin the Elder	518
Justinian	527
Justin the Younger	565
Tiberius	578
Mauritius	582
Phocas	601
Heraclitus	610
Constantine II.	641
Heraclonas	641
Constant II.	641
Constantius Pagonatus	669
Justinian Rhinometus	685
Lecentius	694
Tiberius Appimarus	698
Justinian Rhinometus, Re-establish'd	703
Philippicus Bardanes	711
Artemius or Anastasius II.	713
Theodosius of Atrunetum	715
Leo the Isaurian	717
Constantine Copronymus	741
Leo Porphyrogenetus	775
Constantine the Son of Irene	780
Irene	797
Nicephorus	802
Stauracius	
Michael Rhangabes	811
Leo V.	813
Michael the Stammerer	821
Theophilus	829
Michael the Drinker	841
Bardas.	
Basilus the Macedonian	867
Leo the Philosopher	886
Alexander the Son of Basilus	911
Constantine Porphyrogeneta	912
Romanus Lecaperius	
Constantinus	
Stephanus	
Romanus the Younger	959
Nicephorus Phocas	965
John Zimisces	969
Basilus II. the Conqueror of the Bulgarians	975

Constantine the Younger	1025
Romanus Agrypius	1028
Michael the Paphlagonian	1034
Michael Calaphates	1041
Constantine Monomachus	1042
Zoe and Theodorus	1054
Michael Stratonicus	1056
Isaac Comnenus	1057
Constantine Ducas	1059
Romanus Diogenes	1068
Michael Parapinaceus	1071
Nicephorus Botoniates	1078
Michael Ducas. and Constantine.	
Alexis Comnenus	1081
John Comnenus or Calo Johannes	1118
Manuel Comnenus	1143
Alexis Comnenus the Younger.	1180
Andronicus Comnenus	1182
Isaacius Angelus	1185
Alexis Angelus the Tyrant	1195
Alexis the Younger	1203
Alexis Ducas Murzuffle	1204

*The 5 French Emperors of Constantinople.*

Baldwin I.	1204
Henry	1206
Peter de Courtenay	1217
Robert de Courtenay	1224
Baldwin II. who in 1261. lost Constantinople.	1234

*The other Grecian Emperors.*

Theodorus Lapharis	1204
John Ducas	1222
Theodorus the Younger	1255
John the Blind	1258
Michael Palæologus	1259
Andronicus Palæologus the Elder	1283
Michael.	
Andronicus Palæologus the Younger	1327
John Cantacuzenus	1341
John Palæologus I.	1355
Manuel Palæologus	1384
John Palæologus II.	1419
Constantine Palæologus Dracoses	1438

*The City of Constantinople was taken by Mahomet II. Emperor of the Turks. A. D. 1453.*

*The Turkish Emperors that have Reign'd here, are*

Mahomet II.	1450
Bajazet II.	1481
Selim	1512
Solyman II.	1520
Selim II.	1566
Amurath II.	1574
Mahomet III.	1595
Achmet	1604
Osman	1617
Mustapha	1622
Amurath IV.	1623
Ibrahim	1640
Mahomet IV. Depos'd.	1648
Solyman III.	1687
Achmet II.	1691
Mustapha	1694

*Of*



Of the Government and Customs of the  
Turks.

This Empire was Founded by *Ottoman*, or *Osman* the First, about the Year of our Lord 1300. and its Seat was at first Establish'd at *Prusa*, a City of *Bythinia* in *Asia Minor*, which they took in the Year 1325. Afterwards it was Translated to *Adrianople* in *Thrace*, and at last fix'd at *Constantinople*; where generally their Emperor, whom we commonly call the *Grand Signior*, keeps his Court, and from whence he issues out his Absolute and Uncontrollable Commands over all those vast Dominions that are under his Jurisdiction in *Europe*, *Africa* and *Asia*. For, according to the Primitive and Fundamental Constitution of the Government, the *Turkish* Empire is absolutely and entirely Despotic; that is, the Supreme and Arbitrary Power is lodg'd in the Person of the Emperor, whose Will is the only Law by which he Rules, and who acknowledges no other Maxim of Government than *sic volo, sic jubeo*. He is not curb'd by any Written Law or Custom, and those whom he oppresses, have not so much as a Right to complain. He may take away any Man's Estate, and either keep it, or give it to another. Sometimes he passes by the most Ancient *Bassa's*, and in one Day advances a simple *Chiaux*, or even a Cook to the Dignity of *Grand Visier*. He can, and does send for the Heads of those he has a Mind to be rid of, who are murder'd without any Tryal or Form of Justice, and even without knowing the Reason of his Displeasure, which sometimes is more than he knows himself. In a Word, his Pleasure is the Supreme and Uncontrollable Law. This unlimited Power of the Sultan is founded on the *Mahometan* Religion, which enjoyns a blind Obedience to all his Commands under the pain of Damnation.

The *Grand Visier* is the Chief Minister of State, and is call'd *King* by the *Turks*, to shew how much their Sultans slight and undervalue that Title, in imitation of the old *Roman* Emperors, who bestow'd Kingdoms on their Favourites. The *Grand Visier* is entrusted with the whole Management of Affairs, and his Power is almost equal to the Sultan's. He is in a great measure the Arbitrer of Peace and War, and creates the Fortune of all the great Officers in the Empire. 'Tis true, he ought to do nothing without the Advice of a Council compos'd of Seven *Bassa's*, call'd the *Visiers of the Council*; but they have only the Shadow of Authority, which scarce deserves to be mention'd.

The next to the *Visier Azem*, or first *Visier*, are several *Beglerbegs* (which, as *Sir Paul Rycaut* observes, may not unaptly be compar'd to Vice-roys in some parts of *Christendom*) who have under their Jurisdiction many *Sangiacks*, *Beyes*, *Aga's* and others; to every one of these the *Grand Signior* in Honour gives three Staves trim'd with the Tail of a Horse, to distinguish them from *Basba's* who have only two. They are the Governors of Provinces.

The next in order are the *Bassa's*, who are a sort of Lieutenants in the Provinces. Their Office is to Administer Justice exactly, and to keep the

People in Subjection to the Government. But they often abuse their Authority, and exercise more Arbitrary Power and Tyranny over the People than the *Grand Signior* himself. Every *Bassa* maintains a certain Number of standing Forces at his own Charge, who are always at his Command upon all Occasions, being well paid, which the Emperor's Army sometimes is not, for want of Money. This is the fatal Source of all those Seditions that have so often shaken, and will at last overturn the Empire. A Prince that would secure the Loyalty of his Forces, must take care of them himself, visit them often, give out all Orders, prefer Men of Knowledge, keep both the Officers and Soldiers under an exact Discipline, and pay them punctually. The *Grand Signior* observes not one of these, and therefore he may blame himself for the Unruliness of his Army. The Fate of Monarchs depends on their Armies, and without these neither *Alexander*, *Cesar*, nor *Lewis XIV.* could have made such Conquests; or the Confederates in the late War been able to put a Stop to his growing and formidable Power.

There are two sorts of *Beglerbegs*, says *Sir Paul Rycaut*; the first is call'd *Has ile Beglerbeglick*, which have a certain Rent assign'd them out of the Cities, Countries, and Signiories allotted to the Principality; the second is call'd *Saliame Beglerbeglick*, who have a certain Salary collected by the *Grand Signior's* Offices, with the Treasure of the whole Government, out of which also are paid the *Sangiack Beglers*, that is, the Lords of the several Counties, Towns and Cities, and the Militia of the Country. Of the first sort he reckons up 22, and of the other 6, for a particular Account of both which, we must refer the Reader to the fore said Author's *Present State of the Ottoman Empire*; where he may also find an Account of all the other inferior Officers belonging to that Government.

As to the Manners and Customs of the *Turks*, they are opposite to us almost in every thing. We content our selves with one Wife, they marry several Wives: Our Habit is short, theirs long: We wear our Hair long, and our Beards shav'd, they shave their Hair, and suffer their Beards to grow: we write in a strait Line from Left to Right, and they in a crooked from Right to Left. and it were easie to add several other Instances of the same Nature, since the Opposition reaches even to the meanest Actions, such as the easing of Nature, for they crouch down to Piss, like Women: They obstinately adhere to their ancient Customs, and accuse the *Franks* of Fickleness and Inconstancy, and boast of their Strength of Mind, that fixes on solid Enjoyments, and take no notice of Trifles; but one that seriously considers the Genius of this Nation, will easily find, That what they call *Strength of Mind*, *Constancy* and *Solidity*, is at the bottom nothing else but a pure *Insensibility*, and a Weakness that is altogether inexcusable in any reasonable Creature. They are so far from endeavouring to improve their Understanding, that one would think they affected Ignorance, and are so little acquainted with the Transactions of the World, that many of them scarce know the Name of their reigning *Sultan*. They never publish any Books, Journals, Gazettes, or the least Account of Publick Affairs.



They are much addicted to the Study of Magical Divination, and of the Philosopher's Stone. They are surprizingly negligent of the Publick Interest, and in that respect, run exactly counter to the Maxims that are observ'd in all well-govern'd States. If we consider this incurable Flaw in their Government, we may venture to conclude, That Posterity will not find many Objects of Admiration in the future Monuments of their Power and Glory. If the *Egyptians*, *Greeks* and *Romans* had not been Inspir'd with a nobler Ardour, we should not now see so many Curious and Inquisitive Persons undertake such long and troublesome Voyages, to visit the Ruins of their ancient Grandeur, or discover the Medals that give Light to their History. The *Turks* are so extremely careless of the Management of Publick Affairs, that their Streets are not so much as Pav'd: And if there were not Legacies left for such useful Works, I am apt to believe, there would not be a Fountain in their Towns, or Bridge on their Rivers. They have no Incorporated Societies, Town-Houses, Sheriffs or Burgo-Masters. There are no fixt Posts or Carriers, so that when a Man has occasion to Write to any remote place, except *Constantinople*, *Alger* or *Cairo*, he must sometimes wait a whole Year for an Opportunity; and even between *Smirna* and *Constantinople* there are only *Arabs*, who go on Foot, and frequently stay a Month before they set out.

As to their Administration of Justice, they have no written Laws, but what are contain'd in the *Alcoran*, which they hold to be the Rule of Faith, and the Standard of Justice, and every thing that it forbids is esteem'd unlawful, and punishable. Nevertheless the *Cadis* and *Bassa's* judge as they please, for the Book is very short, and besides, a great deal fuller of Dreams and Absurdities than of Laws or Moral Precepts; and those few it contains are so ambiguously express'd, and deliver'd in so loose a manner, that these greedy Officers cannot desire a more favourable Opportunity to satisfy their Avarice. Besides, they judge without Appeal, and cause the Sentence to be Executed upon the Spot. 'Tis true, some highly injur'd Persons have recourse to the Grand Signior's Divan; but that is seldom done, by reason it is Expensive and Troublesome; and besides, the Injustice done them must be very plain, or 'tis in vain to expect Satisfaction. All Civil Affairs are judg'd by the *Cadis*, according to the Deposition of Witnesses, without any regard to Writings. And if you can but bring two Persons to Swear that they saw you pay 1000 Piasters to your Creditor, which you ow'd him upon your Note or Bond, he loses his Money; and (as *Du Mont* says) there's always plenty of Knights of the Post, to be had for a small matter: And besides, the *Cadi*, whose Office lasts but for a Year, and who grows Rich in a few Months, thinks it not beneath the Dignity of his Office to take a little Money, and give Sentence as you would have it.

The Judgment of Criminal Affairs belongs to the *Bassa*, who proceeds much after the same manner; for Money clears the most Barbarous Malefactor; and without that, Justice degenerates to Cruelty. 'Tis true, the Grand Signior sends Superior *Bassa's* from time to time, attended with some Companies of Soldiers, to search after unpunish'd Malefactors; but these great Inquisitors have not

power enough to resist the Charms of Money. There are several sorts of Punishments inflicted on the Malefactors in this Country; such as Beheading, Drowning, Hanging, Strangling, Burning, Impaling, and the Strapado. The two last for *Turks* that renounce the *Mahometan* Faith. Robbers and Murderers are Hang'd. Women are Drown'd. The Rebellious and Seditious are beheaded. *Christians* who Blaspheme *Mahomet* or the *Alcoran*, or lye with *Turkish* Women, are Burnt.

The Government of the Cities is manag'd by five kind of Officers, the *Bassa*, Sub-*Bassa*, *Vaivod*, *Cadi*, and the Receiver of the Customs. The *Bassa* is properly the Governor, and judges Criminal Causes; and the Sub-*bassa* is as it were his Deputy. The *Vaivod* examines the Measures and Weights, punishes Drunken Persons, and all Disorders in the City. The *Cadi* is the Judge in all Civil Suits. And the Receiver of the Customs is impower'd to take Cognizance of all Fraudulent Practices relating to Pecuniary Duties, in all which Cases he is both Judge and Party.

As for the Religion of the *Turks*, they say, God has sent four Prophets to Reveal his Will to Mankind, viz. *Ensch*, *Moses*, *JESUS CHRIST*, and *Mahomet*. They call *Jesus Christ* the Breath of God: They own his Miraculous Conception, and the Virgin's perpetual Virginity, but say that *Judas* was Crucify'd and not his Matter, which they say, serves better to display the Glory of Christ, than the *Christian* Doctrine; but for all they affirm that Christ was a Holy Man, and a *chosen Vessel*, they will not be persuaded to believe a Trinity. They differ not from us in our Opinions concerning the Divine Attributes, only they have such a peculiar Fondness for Predestination, that they extend it even to the most indifferent Actions. They believe that there is an infinite Number of Angels, some good, some bad; the first they call White, the other Black Angels or Devils, and that every Man has one of each sort. They think that the Souls of the Wicked remain in their Graves, where they are Tormented by the Black Angels till the last day, when they shall be sent to Hell, together with their Bodies, and be punish'd there for a certain time, according to their Crimes, and then go to Paradise; for they think the Doctrine of Eternal Punishment absurd. They believe that at the Day of Judgment the Beasts will rise and give an account before Christ, of all the Kindnesses and Injuries they have receiv'd from Men. They are very Nice and Ceremonious about their Washings, and Bathings after Pollutions. They pray five times a day, in the Morning at Break of Day, at Noon, at 3 of the Clock in the Afternoon, at 6 in the Evening, and an hour after the Close of the Evening. Friday is their Festival-day as Sunday is ours. Their Lent lasts but 30 days, but is very strictly kept; for they neither Eat, Drink, nor Smoak Tobacco, while the Day lasts; which is very hard upon them, when it happens in Summer. They neither Eat Hogs Flesh, nor Drink Wine, nor can they endure Images. They think Deeds of Charity very Meritorious, and therefore leave many Legacies. There are several other things which a *Turk* must believe, and do, but it would be too tedious, and not so fit for a work of this Nature, to give the Reader a particular Account of them.



The whole *Turkish* Militia, (as Sir Paul Rycaut observes) is of two sorts, one that receives Maintenance from certain Lands or Farms, bestow'd on them by the Grand Signior; others that receive their constant Pay in ready Money. The great Nerve or Sinew of the *Turkish* Empire, is that of the first Rank, which are of two sorts, viz. *Zaims*, which are like Barons in some Countries; and *Timariots*, who may be compar'd to the *Decumani* among the *Romans*. Those of the second Sort, paid out of the Grand Signior's Treasury, are *Spahi's Janizaries*, *Gebegi* or Armourers, *Topzi* or Gunners, Sea Soldiers call'd *Levans*, who have no Pay for Life, or are Enroll'd amongst the Military Orders, but only make an Agreement for five or six Thousand Aspers for their Voyage; which being ended, they are Disbanded.

The *Zaims*, in all Expeditions of War, are oblig'd to serve with their Tents, which are to be furnish'd with Kirchins, Stables, and other Things suitable to their State and Quality; and for every 5000 Aspers of Rent receiv'd from the Grand Signior, they are to bring a Horseman into the Field, which is call'd *Gebelu*. The *Timariots* are oblig'd to serve with lesser Tents, and to bring 3 or 4 Baskets for every Man that attends them, for carrying of Earth and Stones, for making Batteries and Trenches, while the *Janizaries* are in the Skirmish with the Enemy. And for every 3000 Aspers Rent, the *Timariots* are sell'd in a Man and a Horse. Both *Zaims* and *Timariots* are dispos'd into Regiments, under Command of Colonels, call'd *Alai-Begler*; these again under the Command of the *Bassa*, and he under the *Beglerbeg*, which Force being united into one Body, repair to their Rendezvous appointed by the *Seraskier*, or General, who is either the Grand Signior, the *Visier Azem*, or some Eminent Person. No Excuse is allow'd in the time of the Grand Signior's Wars; if Sick, they are carry'd in Horse-Litters or Beds; if Infants, in Hampers or Baskets, and in the very Cradles, accusom'd to the Hardship, Hazard and Discipline of War. These *Zaims* and *Timariots* may (as Sir Paul Rycaut com-

putes) be said to amount to in all above 83380, besides the Militia of *Cairo*, and other Orders of Soldiers. The standing Militia of the Kingdom of *Egypt* is 20000 Horse, besides which there is about 80000 *Timariots*. The *Tartars* of *Crimaie* are to send 100000 Men to the Grand Signior's Wars. The Princes of *Moldavia*, *Walachia* and *Transilvania*, 6 or 7000 Men apiece. The *Spahi's* are generally well Educated, Courteous and Refin'd Men, and serve on Horseback, to the Number of 12000. Besides whom there are, according to the aforesaid Author, four other sorts of *Spahi's*, who are rais'd according to the Necessity and Occasions of War. The *Janizaries*, who serve on Foot, were at first not above 6 or 7000, but are now above 20000; but were there a List taken of all who assume this Title, to be freed from Duties and Taxes, the Number would amount to above 100000. In former Times this Militia consisted only of the Sons of *Christians*, but that Politick is now disus'd.

As to the Naval Forces of the *Turks*, tho' they have much plenty of all Things fit for making a great Fleet, particularly Ports, Harbours and Docks, as at *Constantinople* (where no less than 130 Ships may be upon the Stocks at the same time) at *Sinopolis*, *Midia* and *Anchiale*, Cities on the *Black-Sea*; and abundance of Men to be employ'd in the Sea Service; yet for several Years, especially since the War in *Candia*, they have not been able to Equip a Fleet of much above 100 Sail of Gallies. The Pyrates of *Barbary*, the Towns of *Tripoli*, *Tunis* and *Algier*, us'd to be their Auxiliaries at Sea; but that is now in disuse. The Beyes of the *Archipelago* are bound, for certain Islands which are assign'd them in that Sea, to maintain 14 Gallies. The Chief Admiral is call'd the *Captain Pashaw*, his Lieutenant-General *Teshana Kiabiassi*, and the next Officer *Tersane Emini*, or Steward of the Arsenal. But for a more particular Account of these Matters, the Reader may, if he pleases, have recourse to such as have writ fully on the Subject, particularly the forecited Author.



## C H A P. VIII.

Of the North Part of **TURKEY** in **EUROPE**, being the Provinces of **WALACHIA** and **MOLDAVIA**, Tributary to the Turks. Together with **BESSERABIA** and the **OCZAKOW-TARTARY**, Subject to the Turks.

HAVING taken a View of all the South-side of the *Danube*, and Travell'd thro' *Transilvania*, in our Passage from *Hungary*, we now come to the Countries on the North-side of that River, which was the Ancient *DACIA*, that comprehended these two Provinces with *Transilvania*, and so far of *Hungary* as to the River *Theysse*, and was divided into three Parts, viz. *Ripensis*, containing part of *Hungary* and *Walachia*, on the Banks of the *Danube*; *Alpestris*, part of *Walachia* and *Moldavia*; and *Mediterranea*, which was also nam'd *Gepida*, the present *Transilvania*. The Inhabitants were of *Scythian* Extract, Fierce and Barbarous, and were call'd *Getæ*, before the *Romans* gave 'em the Name of *Daci*. They had Kings of their own, till *Trajan* Conquer'd the Country, and made it a Province of the Empire. Afterwards the *Sarmatians*, *Saxons*, *Goths* and *Huns*, at several times, overrun these Countries. These Provinces now distinguish'd by two Names, were in the middle Ages both comprehended under the Name of *Walachia*, or *Woloska Zemla* in the *Sarmatian* Tongue, and the People *Walachy*. Divided into *Major* and *Minor*, whereof the former afterwards took the Name of *Moldavia*. The other, which in order as situated, we are first to speak of, retain'd the Name of

## W A L A C H I A,

Which is extended in a Triangular Form, between the *Danube* on the South, *Hungary* on the West, *Transilvania* on the North-West, and *Moldavia* on the East, about 130 Miles broad, but in its greatest Extent near 200 Miles long. The Air is Temperate, and the Soil Fruitful, producing Corn and Wine, Fruits, Wood, Pasture, Oxen, Sheep and other Cattle; but especially Horses, for which this Country is Famous. The Earth also yields Mines of divers sorts of Metals, and the Forrests Venison. The chief Rivers are the *Aluta* or *Olz*, the *Telsch*, the *Falnicza*, and the *Missovio*, which rise in the upper part of the Province, and all run parallel, and fall into the *Danube*.

The Country is Govern'd by a Waywood, Elect-ed or Approv'd by the Grand Signior; he is styl'd *Hespedar*, that is, Chief General of the Militia, and pays a Tribute to the Turks of 70000 Ducats *per Annum*, and yet is at all Expence in the Government and Defence of his Country. This Tribute was often rais'd; and in the Year 1703. he was constrain'd to make a new Contract with the Port, whereby instead of 135000 Rix-Dollars,

which he paid before, he is oblig'd to pay 250000 *per Annum*.

The *Christian* Religion, according to the *Greek* Church is profess'd in *Walachia*, and the Patriarch of *Constantinople* is their Metropolitan.

The Inhabitants fancy themselves to be the true Offspring of the *Romans*; and their Assertion seems to be confirm'd by the Idiom of their Language, which in many Words and Phrases comes nearer the ancient *Latin*, than the Modern *Italians* does, altho' now it is so corrupted with *Russian*, *Sclavonian* and *Turkish*, that it hardly deserves any of that Character.

In the Government the Waywood always exercis'd a Sovereign Authority. and as long as the Kingdom of *Hungary* stood, was wont to put himself under the Protection of that Monarch. In the Year 1391. the Turks Invaded this Province; and in 1415. compell'd the People, that had gallantly defended themselves in several Reincounters, to submit to the *Ottoman* Yoke, which the Waywood attempted to throw off 10 Years after; but being soon reduc'd to Extremity, was again oblig'd to swear Allegiance to the Grand Signior, and promise to assist the *Turkish* Forces in all their Expeditions against the *Christians*. And tho' in 1595. *Sigismund Basbar*, Prince of *Transilvania*, was able to secure this, as well as his own Principality, from the accusom'd Bondage, yet the Inhabitants were not able long to maintain their Liberty, but have since contentedly paid their Tribute without attempting another Revolt. The chief Towns are,

<i>Tergowisch,</i>	}	<i>Rebnick,</i>
<i>Bucharest,</i>		<i>Alauth,</i>
<i>Braschow,</i>		<i>Peds.</i>

*Tergowisch*, *Terwisch* or *Tarvis*, the Capital City of *Walachia*, wherein the Waywood keeps his Court, is seated on the River *Launiza*, in a Marshy Ground, 60 Miles North from the *Danube*, and as many East from the Confines of *Transilvania*.

*Bucharest*, the second chief City, stands on the River *Dombröwien*, 25 Miles South from *Tergowisch*, and 35 North from the *Danube*:

*Braschow*, *Braslow* or *Brasgow*, is seated in the North part near the Confines of *Moldavia* and *Transilvania*, 50 Miles from *Tergowisch*. It is a considerable City, and the See of a Bishop, Suffragan to the Metropolis of *Colocza*.

*Rebnick* stands upon the River *Alauta*, near the Confines of *Transilvania*, 40 Miles East from *Tergowisch*.

*Alauth*



*Alamb* stands on the same River 30 Miles below *Rebnick*.

*Pelt* is seated on the *Danube*, on the very Limits of this Province towards *Hungary*, 130 Miles West from *Bucharest*, and 90 East from *Belgrade*.

## MOLDAVIA

Lies on the North-East of *Walachia*, bounded on the North by the River *Neister*, or *Tarla*, which divides it from the *Ukrain*, on the South with *Walachia* and the *Danube*, on the East with *Besserabia*, and on the West by *Transilvania*: Its Extent is much greater than *Walachia*, being 240 Miles from North to South, and 150 from East to West. The AIR is very Healthy, and the SOIL fruitful, producing all Necessaries, as Corn, Cattle, and excellent Horses. The Land is diversify'd into Mountains and Plains, and water'd with divers Rivers, the Chief whereof are the *Moldava* (whence the Country has its Modern Name) the *Pruth*, the *Sereth*, the *Bardalash*, &c.

*Moldavia*, says Sir *Paul Rycaut* in his present State of the *Ottoman* Empire, was first made Tributary to the *Turks* by *Mahomet* the Great, but under the small Tribute of 2000 Crowns *per Annum*; afterwards *Begdinus*, Waywood thereof, A. 1585. fearing to become absolute Vassal to the *Turk*, being assisted by *Poland*, took up Arms against *Solyman II.* by whom being driven out of his Country, *John*, a *Moldavian* Born, but one who had embrac'd the *Mahometan* Religion, was prefer'd by *Solyman* to that Principality; but as soon as he was in it, he return'd to his former Religion, which made the *Turks* set upon him too; and *John* losing his Life in the Quarrel, the Province fell to the Power of the *Turks*. in the Year 1574. who appoint the Waywood, and impose an Annual Tribute, which at that time amounted to 80000 Dollars; but now (that is, when he wrote his Book) it is reduc'd to 66000 Dollars in Money, near 40000 Pounds of Wax, as much Honey, and a vast quantity of Tallow for the Arsenal. But besides the Annual Tribute, this Author says, That there were so many accidental Expences, Pretensions and Arts of the *Turks* to squeeze Money out of this oppressed People, as did sometimes double the Charge of their Yearly Tribute. To which may be added, the Price paid to the Grand Signior and others for the Principality, which amounts to 110000 Dollars. In the Year 1686. the *Polanders* overrun this Country, took the chief Cities, and oblig'd the Inhabitants to put themselves under the Protection of the Empire. But at the Treaty of *Carlowitz*, it was agreed, that the *Poles* should retire, and leave this Principality in its former State; and accordingly it is still Tributary to the *Turks*. The chief Towns are,

<i>Jassy</i> ,	{	<i>Moldadania</i> ,
<i>Soczow</i> ,		<i>Vasloye</i> ,
<i>Targorod</i> ,		<i>Romani-Wivar</i> ,
<i>Chotzyn</i> ,		<i>Braila</i> .

*Jassy*, or *Jazy*, a considerable City, and formerly the Seat of the Prince, is seated on the River *Pruth*, in the North part of the Province, about 30 Miles from the Confines of *Poland*, in the Latitude of 47. 30. Longitude 46 Deg. *Bandarand* says it was probably the ancient *Augusta* of *Dacia*.

*Chotzyn*, on the River *Neister* near *Poland*, 90 Miles North-West from *Jassy*, and 25 South-East from *Caminiec*, is a strong Town, and the chief Magazine of the Country, Famous for a great Victory there obtain'd over the *Turks*, by *John Sobiesky*, late King of *Poland*.

*Soczow*, *Soczow* or *Czukaw*, is a large and strong City, styl'd the Capital of the Province, because the Prince usually resides there. It is seated on the River *Sereth*, 50 Miles West from *Jassy*, 70 South from *Caminiec*, and 30 East from the Confines of *Transilvania*, and guarded with a Castle.

*Targorod*, or *Trescott*, stands on the Confluence of the Rivers *Molda* and *Sereth*, 50 Miles from *Soczow*.

*Moldadania*, on the River *Molda*, is about 20 Miles distant from *Soczow* to the South.

*Vasloye* stands on the River *Bardalash*, 60 Miles East from *Targorod*.

*Romani-Wivar* stands on the River *Sereth*, on the Confines of *Walachia*, and not far from the *Danube*.

*Braila* stands at the Mouth of the same River into the *Danube*, 35 Miles South East from *Romani-Wivar*.

## BESSERABIA,

By some reckon'd part of *Moldavia*, but more properly a separate Province, lies on the East of *Moldavia*, between that and the *Black-Sea*, and between the Rivers *Danube* on the South, and *Neister* on the North. It is partly Mountainous, and partly a Marshy Country, inhabited by the *Budjack-Tartars*; the Extent of it is about 150 Miles from East to West, and 60, or more, in the West part, from North to South. The chief Towns that lie on the Banks of the River are,

<i>Tekin</i> ,	{	<i>Kilia Nova</i> ,
<i>Bialogrod</i> ,		<i>Kilia Vechia</i> .

*Tekin*, *Tegina*, or *Beuder*, is a large City, the Capital of the Province, seated on the River *Neister*, near the Confines of *Moldavia*, 100 Miles from the *Black-Sea* to the West, 60 from the *Danube* to the North, and 100 Miles from *Jassy* to the East. It is guarded with a Castle, and reckon'd a strong Frontier.

*Bialogrod*, otherwise call'd *Akierman*, is a strong Fortress seated near the *Black-Sea*, at the Mouth of the *Neister*. Some take this to be the ancient *Tyras*, which *Ptolomy* places at the Mouth of the *Neister*, and which *Herberstein* and others call *Moncastro*: But it is suppos'd, the old *Tyras* being quite destroy'd, this Town sprung up near it.

*Kilia Nova*, is a strong Town, seated on the Northern Branch of the *Danube* near its Mouth into the *Black-Sea*, over against

*Kilia*



*Kilia Vecchia*, or *Vetus*, which stands in the Island made by two Branches of the *Danube*, to which it gives Name:

Of the Mid-Land of this Country thus speaks *Beauplan*.

**BUDZIAK**, which gives Name to a Clan of *Tartars*, is a Plain of 12 German Leagues in Length, and 5 or 6 Leagues in Breadth, lying between *Bialogrod* and *Kilia*, whither the mutinous *Tartars*, who own neither the *Cham* nor the *Turk*, retire. There are about 80 or 90 Villages of those Libertines, who daily run into the Neighbouring Plains to steal *Christians* and sell them to the *Gallies*, for they live upon Rapine. They sometimes break into the *Ukrain* and *Podolia*, but make no stay, being not above 5000 strong. Their Villages are moveable, for their Houses are built on Wheels, and carry'd from one Place to another, as the Pasture fails or abounds.

### The OCZACOW-TARTARY

Lies on the North-East of *Besserabia*, on the other side the *Neister*, surrounded by *Podolia*, or the *Ukrain*, except on the East, where it is bounded by

the *Black-Sea*, and the Mouth of the *Boristhenes*; and on the South where the *Neister* parts it from *Besserabia*. Its Extent is not above 80 Miles, and is divided by the River *Bog*, which rising in *Poland*, here discharges itself into the Sea; other Rivers water it, and the *Ingulet* or *Mali* is its Eastern Boundary. The chief Towns are,

Oczakow, }  
Bilchowskie, } } Koczubi.

*Oczakow*, or *Ocziakow*, otherwise call'd *Dziarkhmenda*, is seated at the Mouth of the River *Boristhenes*, or *Nieper*, into the *Black-Sea*, 60 Miles North-East from *Bialogrod*, and near the Mouth of the River *Bog*. It is a strong Town with a Castle, Founded by *Vitolaus*, Duke of *Lithuania*, and first peopled by his Subjects; afterwards possess'd by the *Tartars*, who had a Denomination from this Place, and were powerful Enemies of *Poland*. But the *Poles* gave them a notable Overthrow in the Year 1644. At present it is garrison'd by the *Turks*, tho' the Inhabitants be *Tartars*.

*Bilchowskie* is seated on the *Boristhenes*, where the River *Ingulet* or *Mali* falls into it on the extreme East part of this Province towards the *Crim-Tartary*, 20 Miles North-East from *Oczakow*.

*Koczubi* is seated on the *Black-Sea*, 30 Miles West from *Oczakow*.

## CHAP. IX.

### Of TARTARY-MINOR, and the CRIM-TARTARY, Allies to the Turks.

THE *Tartars* were always a Roving People that usurp'd upon their Neighbours on every side. Of their Conquests in *Muscovy* we have spoken, and shall have occasion to shew that *China* and *Indostan* are at this Day subject, to Princes of that Race. *Persia*, and a great part of the *Turkish Empire* in *Asia*, was for a long time their Prey: And these Provinces of *Europe* last mention'd, as well as *Hungary*, were at several times overrun by them. But upon the Change of Fate in War, they were as often beaten back. At last, about 300 Years ago, they settled themselves in the Peninsula, between the *Black-Sea* and the *Palus Mæotis*, formerly nam'd *Taurica Chersonesus*, wherein at that time the *Genoueses* had Footing, and in the adjacent Country Northward to the Frontiers of *Muscovy*, which from them has been since nam'd *Tartaria Minor*. And tho' at first they own'd a Subjection to the Grand *Cham*, yet having strengthen'd themselves sufficiently, they threw off that Obedience, and acknowledg'd for their Prince one of their Great Men, who being descended from the Royal Family, took upon himself the Royal Authority with the Title of *Han*, which in their Language signifies King. This Honour is Elective, but always conferr'd on one of the Family, if not the Son of the Predecessor, and

is confirm'd by the Grand Signior, with whom they are always in Alliance, and so far in Subjection to, that the Sultan assumes the Power of Deposing the Father, and setting up the Son, upon default of the usual Assistance or Duty. By ancient Compact between the *Turk* and the *Tartar*, it is agreed, That whenever the Grand Signior goes in Person to the Wars, the *Han* is to accompany him with an Army of 100000 Men; but if the Visier, or some other Officer commands the *Turks Army*, he only sends his Son, or some principal Officer with an Army of 50000 Men. The *Turk* hath been us'd to hold the Son of the *Han* as Hostage for the Performance of this Agreement; and as Sir Paul Rycaut tells us, the present *Han*, *Mahomet Ghirei*, was detain'd during his Father's Life, first at *Jamboli*, and then at *Rhodes*; and before he mounted the Throne swore Fealty to the Grand Signior at *Constantinople*: But the Treatment he met with there so sour'd him, that he has refus'd that part of the Subjection, as being dishonourable to so powerful a People: but has nevertheless assisted the *Turk* in the Wars, according to his Treaty. The *Tartarian Army* have no Pay, but are allow'd the Plunder they take, which consists chiefly in Slaves, whereof they carry away great Numbers, and sell to great Profit. In the Year 1663.



1663. they so pillag'd and waſted Hungary, Moravia and Sileſia, that Sir Paul Rycaut tells us, they carry'd away in one Year 160000 miſerable Creatures into Captivity. Such of the Slaves as are Wounded or Sick, and unable to Travel, they kill; the reſt they carry home, and ſell to the Turks, eſpecially the young Boys and Girls, which is the beſt Traffick the Tartars pretend to.

By Contract on the Turkiſh ſide, it is agreed, That in caſe of Failure of the Ottoman Line, that Empire is to devolve to theſe Tartars, which is the great Knot of this Confederacy. The Han receives a ſort of Pay from the Grand Signior, and is oblig'd not only to aſſiſt him in War, but alſo not to engage in any War, except againſt the Muſcovite, without his Content.

The Kingdom conſiſts of two Parts, TARTARIA MINOR, and the TAURICA CHERSONESUS, or Crim-Tartary.

Cherſoneſus, the Greek Name for a Peninſula, and Taurica, becauſe firſt inhabited by Scythians, of Mount Taurus.

In the Crim-Tartary there are Towns inhabited, and Palaces wherein the Han reſides; but in Tartaria Minor, tho' it be a fertile rich Soil, and was anciently well Cultivated by ſeveral Colonies of Greeks, there is now no ſuch thing as a City or Town, the Inhabitants being a fierce wild People, that live in the open Air in Tents, which they ſet up and remove as their Fancies or Occaſions invite them. In February they are invited by the Cham to Till the Ground, which ſome do; but the greateſt part neglect, eſteeming it beneath them. Their ordinary Food is Raw Fleſh, laid for ſome time between their Saddle and Horſe's Back, which they Eat (tho' dead of Sickneſs, or Putrify'd) without Bread or Salt; ſo that the greateſt part of the Country, eſpecially that towards Muſcovy, lies waſt, and is thereby nothing but Woods, Lakes and unpaſſable Marſhes. The Han with his chief Officers and Courtiers live in the Crim-Tartary, in Palaces and Towns, and have Lands, Herds and Wealth, as other People. The Han has large Revenues ariſing by Tributes and Aids paid by his Subjects, and is able to bring into the Field a very large Army, even 300000 Horſe, but no Foot; for Horſes here are ſo exceeding plenty, that not only every Man is mounted, but has alſo one or two ſpare Horſes.

TARTARIA-MINOR, otherwiſe call'd Nabaiſky, or the Nagayan Tartary, is a very large Tract lying on the South of Muſcovy, between the Frontiers of that Empire and the Black Sea. The Mouth of the River Don, or Tanais, being its Eaſtern Boundary, and the River Nieper, or Borifthenes the Western; ſo that its Length may be reckon'd 300 Miles from Eaſt to Weſt, but the Breadth not proportionate. This Country is, as we have ſaid, a kind of wild Deſert, the People roving about in Herds or Multitudes with their Tents, Cattle, Wives and Children, and never fix in any certain Place. The only Towns mention'd by Geographers being Strelnicza, at the Mouth of the Borifthenes, and Kaſikermant a little above it, on the Weſtern Coaſt; and Azoph on the Eaſtern, at the Mouth of the Don.

The Taurica Cherſoneſus, now call'd the CRIM-TARTARY, from the City Crim; and alſo PRZECOP-TARTARY, from another Town; is, as we have ſaid, a Peninſula between the Black Sea and the Palus Meotis, of about 55 Leagues in Length, from Eaſt to Weſt, (Sir John

Chardin ſays 61 Leagues) and about 35 Leagues broad, from North to South; it is joyn'd to the Land by a very narrow Iſthmus, in the North part, not above a Mile over, thro' which alſo the Tartars have cut a Ditch.

The Country towards the South is Mountainous, and well water'd with Rivers; the reſt is Champaign, but wants freſh Water, except the deep Wells which are dug.

The Taurica Cherſoneſus was Conquer'd by the Romans; and upon the declining of that Empire, the beſt part of it became ſubject to the Genouefe, who maintain'd a conſiderable Traffick there, before the Tartars Invaded it. The Turks have alſo at ſeveral times Attack'd it, and ſtill poſſeſs ſome of its Towns; ſo that between one and the other, the Genouefe have been expell'd theſe 200 Years. The chief Towns are,

Przecop,	{	Crim,
Sackingeri,		Sidagoy,
Ingermen,		Caffa,
Sarigermen,		Kerky,
Balacława,	{	Pontico,
Mangut.		Kiderleri,
Cerciſſegermen,		Taman,
Baccassaray,		Karaſu,
Almaſaray,	{	Araber.

Przecop, call'd Or by the Tartars, Antiq. Taphros & Taphra, is ſeated upon the Dike, in the narroweſt part of the Iſthmus. It hath a Caſtle, wherein reſides a Palatine of the Han's, who Commands the Guards on the Borifthenes and Tanais, and the Tartars in the Plains: And examines all Strangers that paſs.

Sackingeri, not far from it, on the Black-Sea, is a Town of 2000 Houſes, and a place of good Traffick.

Balacława or Balacley, ſtands on the South-Weſt Coaſt, ſometime poſſeſs'd by the Genouefe, and then call'd Zamboli, from the ſtore of Fiſh in the neighbouring Sea. It is a very pleaſant Town of 120 Houſes, with a ſafe and excellent Port, ſurrounded by high Mountains, poſſeſs'd by the Turks, who here build their Ships and Gallies.

Topetarkan or Sarigermen, anciently call'd Cherſoneſus and Corſuna, and was the nobleſt City of all the Peninſula. Whereof the Ruins are ſtill extant on the Weſt Coaſt; but the Place is hardly Inhabited.

Ingermen, on the South-Weſt Cape, anciently a great Town, whereof many Ruins and Greek Inſcriptions remain; but it is now only a ſmall Town, with a Caſtle, poſſeſs'd by the Turks.

Mangut or Mancuſo, an inland Town, once a Magnificent City, now only a Tower and a kind of Caſtle on a Hill with ſome few Houſes, inhabited by Jews.

Cerciſſegermen, a Fort of the Turks, not far from Mangut.

Caffa or Theodoſia, the chief City of the Peninſula, ſtands on the South Coaſt over againſt the Iſthmus, and is a Place of great Trade, begun by the Genouefe, from whom the Turks took it in 1574. The Magnitude is commonly repreſented as conſiſting of 5 or 6000 Houſes; but Sir John Chardin tells us there are 4000 Houſes, whereof 3200 Turks, and 800 Chriſtians. The City is govern'd by a Sangiack, and is diſtant from Conſtantinople about 2 Days Sail, provided the Wind ſerve right, elſe 7 or 8, as Sir John Chardin experienc'd. In the Town are 12 Greek Churches, 32 for the Armenians, and 1 for the Roman Catholicks. This City Trades to all Parts as well within the Black-Sea as throughout all the Archipelago and Mediterranean. (Beuplan.) Q q q Kerkey,



*Kerkey*, *Cimmerium*, is a little Town of the *Tartars*, seated on the East Coast, on the Straight denominated from it, and anciently call'd *Bosphorus Cimmerus*. It contains about 100 Houses.

*Panticæ*, olim *Panticapæum*, was formerly the chief City of all this Country; it stands on the Mouth of the same Straight.

*Kiderleri* is also on that Straight.

*Bassaffaray*, which may be esteem'd the chief City, being the Seat of the *Hans*, stands 20 Miles South from the Isthmus, and about 15 from the Western Sea-Coast: It is a Town of 2000 Houses, (2000 Inhabitants, says *Beauplan*) besides the Palace of the *Hans*, surrounded with a pleasant Country for Hunting, and (according to some Authors) is nobly adorn'd with Gardens, Orchards, Baths, &c. Here is also a Mosque, wherein are many Sepulchres of the *Hans*.

*Almasaray* is another Palace of the *Hans*, with a small Town.

*Crim*, whence the Country and People are denominated, is a strong Castle, wherein is kept the Mint. It hath a small Town to it, which is chiefly inhabited by *Turks*.

*Sidzgoj* or *Sudacum*, was a very noble and strong City, seated in the Mountains, Famous for the Wines growing near it, formerly possess'd by the *Gen-uise*, from whom it was taken after a long Siege by the *Turks*.

*Karasu*, 20 Miles West from *Caffa*, is a Town of 2000 Houses, belonging to the *Cham*.

*Arabet* or *Orbete*, stands near the *Palus Meotis*, 20 Miles North from *Kerkey*, on a Peninsula about half a quarter of a League over, which is Palisado'd from Sea to Sea; it hath 2 Castles for its Defence, and is the Place where the *Han* keeps his Stud of Horses, which are reckon'd to be about 70000 in Number.

Other Towns mention'd by *Beauplan* are,

*Crusla*, where the Salt-pits are; it is a Town of about 80 Houses.

*Combas*, a large Place, having 2000 Houses.

*Ackmectery*, of about 150 Houses.

The Straight between the Continent, on which stands *Arabet* above-mention'd, is call'd *Turkawoda*; it is but 200 Paces over, and fordable in dry Weather.

From *Balacław* to *Caffa* the Sea Coast is very high and steep; but all the rest is low.

From the Mountains of *Balacław* spring 7 Rivers, which water all the Peninsula. The River *Kabats* produces Vines; and on the River *Sagre* are abundance of Gardens and much Fruit.

The Straight of *KERKEY* or *KAFFA*, which is the East Boundary, is not above 4 Leagues over; and on the East Bank of it, in the *Circass-Tartary*, is *Taman*, a small Town and Castle belonging to the *Turk*, wherein a Garrison of about 30 Soldiers are kept.

In the very East part of the Continent of *Tartaria Minor*, on the Banks of the *Don* or *Tanais*, between its Mouth and the Mouth of the *Doniec*, stand several Towns, among which is

*AZOPH*, *Azow* or *Azek*, a strong Fortrefs, seated on the Mouth of the *Don* or *Tanais*, into the *Palus Meotis*, in the Latitude of 47 Deg. Longitude 59 Deg. Taken from the *Tartars* by *Mahomet II.* and possess'd by the *Turks* till the late War, when in the Year 1694. it was taken by the present Czar of *Muscovy*, and still held by him: Being a Post of

that Importance, that he absolutely refus'd Peace with the *Turk*, unless he might keep it. We have spoken of the State of this Place, since the Czar has possess'd it, when we were treating of *Muscovy*.

*Kasikermert*, at the Mouth of the River *Nieper*, is another Fortrefs of great Importance, taken by the same Prince, and still held by him. It stands in Latitude 46. Longitude 58 Deg. 30 Min. and gives Passage into the *Black-Sea*:

The Situation of both these Places is seen in our Map of *Muscovy*.

With which we should finish our Account of *Europe*, and proceed to that of *Asia*, but that it is necessary to speak a little of the *Palus Meotis*.

The *PALUS MÆOTIS*, or the Sea of *Zabache*, is call'd *Limen Mare* by the *Russians*, *Gnilen Morze* by the *Poles*, and *Mare del Tana* by the *Italians*. It was anciently call'd by divers Names, viz. *Palus Sarmatiae*, *Cimmeriae Paludes*, *Scythica Stagna*, and *Pontici Euxini Mater*, Teste *Buno*. The Modern Name of *Zabache* is deriv'd from a certain Fish taken there, at certain times of the Year. It is a large Sea, lying from South-West to North East 130 Leagues in Length, according to the Maps: But *Dionysius* makes its Extent from the *Taurica Chersonesus*, to the Mouth of the *Tanais*, 300 Miles. It is bounded on the North and West by the *Lesser Tartary*, on the South-West by the *Tauric Chersonese*, and on the East and South-East by *Sarmatia Asiatica*, now *Circass Tartary*. The River *Don* or *Tanais*, which is the Boundary of *Europe*, falls into its Eastern Bay. And the Lake *Sura Morzi* on the West, issues from it, and makes the *Precop-Isthmus* so narrow. On the South it has Communication with the *Black Sea*, thro' the Straight of *Kerkey* or *Caffa*, which was the ancient *Bosphorus Cimmerus*.

We have now survey'd all the Provinces of the *Turkish Empire* in *Europe*, and shall next take a View of the Countries of *Asia*, subject to this Monarch, which are

Many Islands lying near its Coasts.

*Natolia*, or *Asia Minor*.

*Turcomania*, part of *Georgia*, Tributary to the *Turk*. *Affyria*, or *Diarbeck*, Comprehending part of the Ancient *Affyria*, with *Mesopotamia*, and *Chaldea*.

*Syria* at large, containing *Syria Proper*, *Phenicia* and *Judea*.

And a great part of *Arabia*.

A large part of *Africa* is also under the *Turkish* Dominion, viz.

The Kingdom of *Egypt*, and *Barca*, on the *Mediterranean*. And

The Coasts of *Abex* on the *Red-Sea*, with part of The Upper *Aethiopia* on the same Sea.

Also the Kingdoms of *Tripoli*, *Tunis* and *Algiers* are Tributary.

All which vast Empire is subject to the Absolute Dominion of the *Ottoman Emperor*, (usually styl'd by us *Europeans*) the Grand Signior and is govern'd by a great Number of Vice-Roys call'd *Beglerbegs*, with Subordinate Governors nam'd *Sangiacks*. And a lesser Order, stil'd *Bassas*. Accordingly the Empire is divided into large Provinces, call'd *Beglerbegships*, and those sub-divided into *Sangiates*. The particular Number whereof is unnecessary to be set down here, but will be observ'd in our Descriptions of these Countries, which will be the Subject of the Second Part of this Work.



**Thesaurus Geographicus:**  
OR, THE  
**Compleat Geographer.**  
PART the SECOND.  
BEING THE  
CHOROGRAPHY, TOPOGRAPHY,  
And HISTORY  
OF  
ASIA, AFRICA  
AND  
AMERICA.

Faithfully Extracted from the Best MODERN TRAVELLERS  
and most Esteem'd HISTORIANS:

And ILLUSTRATED

With MAPS, Fairly Engraven on Copper, according to the  
Modern Discoveries and Corrections by *HERMAN MOLL*.

The Third Edition very much Enlarg'd.

L O N D O N:

Printed for A. and J. CHURCHILL, and T. CHILDE, M.DCC.IX.



## To the READER.

**T**HE only Objection against the former Edition of this Work, was, That the Accounts there given of these three Parts of the World, were not Large and Satisfactory, proportionate to that of *Europe*; the Reason why it was then so Defective, we have given in our *Preface*, and have there also shewn the Reader, whence we have extracted the ample Descriptions here exhibited of all the Parts of these Remote Countries.

We can truly assure the Reader, that the Books there mention'd, have not only been Consulted, but even the full Substance of every one of 'em, so far as concerns Geography, is faithfully introduc'd into this Work, whereby an intimate View is given of these distant Lands, and the true present State of them is shewn.

The former Writers on this Subject have contented themselves with Transcribing those that went before, and the Errors of a Hundred Years standing, have stood in Modern Books Uncorrected: But in this Work we have not only Consulted those that have been upon the Spot, but even those too have not been lightly credited in any wonderful thing; where a Thing appear'd Incredible, a single Testimony has not been taken; and where different Authors have spoken differently of the same place, we have chosen to give the Reader both their Reports, and let him judge for himself. And in General have taken the greatest Pains in making the most diligent Search after Truth: And trust we have not egregiously mis'd it in any one Instance.



(1)

# ASIA.

ASIA



**A** S I A, as it was the largest Part of the Old World, so it was on many Accounts the Principal and most Celebrated. For it was there the Almighty Creator was pleased, not only to Plant the Paradise for the first Man *Adam*, and afford his Presence in a signal Degree to his first elected People; but it was there also that his Son our Lord was pleased to Work the

Redemption of Mankind, and dispense the glorious Light of the Gospel, for our Eternal direction to Salvation. And altho' this alone were Honour enough, and what must always render this Land Venerable, yet the Worldly Advantages were as notably Superior; for the Earth produces not only all the common Necessaries for Life in great Plenty; but gives us over, and above all those Delicacies, which serve for Delight and Luxury; such as the brightest Gems,



Gems, the most Aromatick Spices, the most Balsamick and Salubrious Drugs, the finest Silks, and the richest Metals; besides Fruits and other Plants of more Delicious Kinds, than the other Parts of the World are acquainted with. And as this was the most delightful Habitation, it has been the Seat of the greatest Monarchies that ever appeared in the World.

But much of its ancient Glory is lost, for the Turkish Rudeness has render'd that part of it, which was the most Polite, a wild uncultivated Land. And at this time Asia is only considerable for the rich Commodities it affords, and on which Account it is continually visited by our Merchants.

ASIA is Situated on the East of Europe, commencing at the 45th. Degree of Longitude (the first Meridian being laid on the West side of Ferre Island) and extends to the 150th. Degree, which may be reckon'd 6000 Miles. In its Latitude it possesses all the Temperate, the greatest part of the Torrid, and part of the Frigid Zones; so that it enjoys the whole 24 Climates, and its longest Days, are from 12 to 24 Hours.

Its Boundaries are, On the West, the Mediterranean, the Red, and the Black-Seas, the Mountains which bound the Muscovien Tartary, and the River Ob. The Northern Ocean is its general Boundary on the North; as the Indian and Eastern Oceans, are on the South and East.

In so vast an extent of Land, the Soil must to be sure be various, but in general it may be declared (some Parts of Arabia and Tartary excepted) a Rich and Fruitful Country.

The Inhabitants are reckon'd to be of Effeminate Natures, but we ought to remember, that those we converse with are of the most Southern Parts, which we know produces not so robust Natures as the North; and therefore we may suppose the Northern Inhabitants to be equal to us, at least 'tis certain those of them that have appeared in the South; I mean the Turks and Tartars, are Men of as much Force and Courage as any. Those of the Southern Parts excel in Ingenuity, and send us curious pieces of Workmanship, which our most Polite Mechanics can sooner envy than imitate. Whether the remark, that they are sordid Admirers of Monarchy be just, we cannot judge, for the mighty Powers of the Princes, has always kept them in Slavery, and they have never had an Opportunity of exerting the Love of Liberty, which certainly must be as innate to them, as it is to the rest of Mankind.

In Religion they are very stupid, as will be readily granted, when 'tis consider'd that the Mahometan is the best and most rational among 'em. That Opinion prevails over all Turkey, Arabia, and part of Tartary and India; and the Sect of it who own Haly for their Head in Persia. But in that part of India where Mahometism is not receiv'd, as also in China, Japan, &c. they are stupid Idolaters, and Exercise most extravagant, and even most cruel Rites in their Worship of Thousands of Images.

Our Blessed Lord having revealed himself in this part of the World, it was the Theatre of the first Promulgation of the Gospel; which spread so successfully, that even in the Apostolick Age it was taught so far off as India. But as the unworthiness of Christians produced that Denunciation reveal'd to St. John, the Churches in the Asia-Minor were abandon'd to Persecutions, and by the Barbarisms of the Sarazins, Tartars, and Turks, in fine, utterly Destroy'd. And altho' the pure

Light of the Gospel could never be extinguish'd, but a large Number have always been found in every Part of Asia, who profess the Christian Faith, y thro' the Rudeness of their Governors, the Church has for many Ages been in a Servile State.

To omit the many scrupulous Niceties of Sects and others in the Division of Asia, we shall consider it under the several Dominions it is now subject to, which naturally enough divides it into Five Great Parts, namely, TURKEY, PERSIA, INDIA, CHINA and TARTARY, besides the Islands, many whereof will not come into any of these Classes, and tho' it may be objected, that Tartary is not under one Government, and that India extra Gangem is dependant of the Great-Mogul, as also that the greatest of Arabia is exempt from the Turk; and therefore each of those should be divided into its respective Parts; yet in this Place, it is less necessary to clog the Reader's Memory too much, but rather give him those Distinctions, when we come to speak of those Particular Parts.

#### A View of the Whole.

TURKEY in Asia.	Western Turkey.	ASIA MINOR, SYRIA and Palestine, ARABIA partly under the Turk.	Lying from North to South.
	Eastern Turkey.	DIABECK, i. e. Affric, Chala and Mesopotamia. TURCOMANIA, or the Ancient Armenia major.	
		GEORGIA, MENGRELIA, partly subject to the Turk, and partly to the Persians.	

Smaller Parts adjoining, subject to their own Princes, with some Dependence on either the Turk or Persian, are;

Imeritia, Circasia, Caramania, &c.

On the East of Turkey, lies PERSIA, comprehending Media, Persia, Parthia, &c.

More Eastward, MOGULLISTAN or INDOSTAN, consisting of 39 Provinces or Kingdoms.

INDIA intra Gangem, which may be consider'd in four great Parts, lying South of Mogulistan. Decan, Malabar, Coromandel, Goleconda, Part (sub) to the Mogul.

On the East of those lies,

INDIA extra Gangem, or the Kingdoms of PEGU, SIAM, TONQUIN. Each contain many small Kingdoms.

And farthest Eastward lies CHINA, comprehending 15 large Provinces.

On the North of all these lies,

TARTARY, commonly consider'd in four Parts, Usbeg in the South, Dsair in the North, Turkestan Midland, Cathay in the East.

Thus much for the Continent.



# TURKEY in ASIA.

3

The ISLANDS of Asia may be consider'd in three Classes, viz.

I. The Islands on the Coast of Asia, in the Mediterranean-Sea.

Cyprus,  
Rhodes,  
Lesbos or Meteline,  
Chios or Scio,  
Samos,  
Cos or Lango, &c.

II. Those in the Indian Ocean

Ceylon,  
The Maldive-Islands,  
The Sunda-Islands, Sumatra Java,  
Borneo, &c.  
The Spice-Islands, Banda, &c.  
The Molucca-Islands, Ternate,  
Tidor, &c.  
Amboyne, Ceram, Gilolo, &c.

III. Those in the Eastern Ocean.

The Philippine-Islands,  
The Japonese-Islands,  
The Ladrones-Islands.

We shall now Proceed to the particular Descriptions of each part, beginning with Anatolia as being the nearest to Europe, thence passing thro' Syria, Palestine, Arabia, Diarbek, Georgia, &c. proceed to Persia, and having survey'd all that Kingdom, go thro' Tartary into India, view all that Continent and the Islands adjacent: Then pass into China and Japon.

## OF TURKEY in ASIA.





shewn the Reader, whence we have extracted the ample Descriptions here exhibited of all the Parts of these Remote Countries.

We can truly assure the Reader, that the Books there mention'd, have not only been Consulted, but even the full Substance of every one of 'em, so far as concerns Geography, is faithfully introduc'd into this Work, whereby an intimate View is given of these distant Lands, and the true present State of them is shewn.

The former Writers on this Subject have contented themselves with Transcribing those that went before, and the Errors of a Hundred Years standing, have stood in Modern Books Uncorrected: But in this Work we have not only Consulted those that have been upon the Spot, but even those too have not been lightly credited in any wonderful thing; where a Thing appear'd Incredible, a single Testimony has not been taken; and where different Authors have spoken differently of the same place, we have chosen to give the Reader both their Reports, and let him judge for himself. And in General have taken the greatest Pains in making the most diligent Search after Truth: And trust we have not egregiously mis'd it in any one Instance.





**A** SIA, as it was the largest Part of the Old World, so it was on many Accounts the Principal and most Celebrated. For it was there the Almighty Creator was pleased, not only to Plant the Paradise for the first Man Adam, and afford his Presence in a signal degree to his first elected People; but it was there so that his Son our Lord was pleased to Work the

Redemption of Mankind, and dispense the glorious Light of the Gospel, for our Eternal direction to Salvation. And altho' this alone were Honour enough, and what must always render this Land Venerable, yet the Worldly Advantages were as notably Superior; for the Earth produces not only all the common Necessaries for Life in great Plenty; but gives us over, and above all those Delicacies, which serve for Delight and Luxury; such as the brightest Gems,



Gems, the most Aromatick Spices, the most Balsamick and Salubrious Drugs, the finest Silks, and the richest Metals; besides Fruits and other Plants of more Delicious Kinds, than the other Parts of the World are acquainted with. And as this was the most delightful Habitation, it has been the Seat of the greatest Monarchies that ever appeared in the World.

But much of its ancient Glory is lost, for the *Turk*'s Rudeness has render'd that part of it, which was the most Polite, a wild uncultivated Land. And at this time *Asia* is only considerable for the rich Commodities it affords, and on which Account it is continually visited by our Merchants.

A S I A is Situated on the East of *Europe*, commencing at the 48th. Degree of Longitude (the first Meridian being laid on the West side of *Ferre Island*) and extends to the 150th. Degree, which may be reckon'd 6000 Miles. In its Latitude it possesses all the *Temperate*, the greatest part of the *Torrid*, and part of the *Frigid Zones*; so that it enjoys the whole 24 Climates, and its longest Days, are from 12 to 24 Hours.

Its Boundaries are, On the West, the *Mediterranean*, the *Red*, and the *Black-Seas*, the Mountains which bound the *Muscovian Tartary*, and the River *Oby*. The Northern Ocean is its general Boundary on the North; as the *Indian* and *Eastern Oceans*, are on the South and East.

In so vast an extent of Land, the Soil must to be sure be various, but in general it may be declared (some Parts of *Arabia* and *Tartary* excepted) a Rich and Fruitful Country.

The Inhabitants are reckon'd to be of Effeminate Natures, but we ought to remember, that those we converse with are of the most Southern Parts, which we know produces not so robust Natures as the North; and therefore we may suppose the Northern Inhabitants to be equal to us, at least 'tis certain those of them that have appeared in the South; I mean the *Turks* and *Tartars*, are Men of as much Force and Courage as any. Those of the Southern Parts excel in Ingenuity, and send us curious pieces of Workmanship, which our most Polite Mechanicks can sooner envy than imitate. Whether the remark, that they are sordid Admirers of Monarchy be just, we cannot judge, for the mighty Powers of the Princes, has always kept them in Slavery, and they have never had an Opportunity of exerting the Love of Liberty, which certainly must be as innate to them, as it is to the rest of Mankind.

In Religion they are very stupid, as will be readily granted, when 'tis consider'd that the *Mahometan* is the best and most rational among 'em. That Opinion prevails over all *Turky*, *Arabia*, and part of *Tartary* and *India*; and the Sect of it who own *Haly* for their Head in *Persia*. But in that part of *India* where *Mahometism* is not receiv'd, as also in *China*, *Japan*, &c. they are stupid Idolaters, and Exercise most extravagant, and even most cruel Rites in their Worship of Thousands of Images.

Our Blessed Lord having revealed himself in this part of the World, it was the Theatre of the first Promulgation of the Gospel; which spread so successfully, that even in the Apostolick Age it was taught so far off as *India*. But as the unworthiness of Christians produced that Denunciation reveal'd to St. *John*, the Churches in the *Asia-Minor* were abandon'd to Persecutions, and by the Barbarisms of the *Sarazins*, *Tartars*, and *Turks*, in fine, utterly Destroy'd. And altho' the pure

Light of the Gospel could never be extinguish'd, but a large Number have always been found in every Part of *Asia*, who profess the Christian Faith, yet thro' the Rudeness of their Governors, the Church has for many Ages been in a Servile State.

To omit the many scrupulous Niceties of *Sanfon* and others in the Division of *Asia*, we shall consider it under the several Dominions it is now subject to, which naturally enough divides it into Five Great Parts, namely, *TURKEY*, *PERSIA*, *INDIA*, *CHINA* and *TARTARY*, besides the Islands, many whereof will not come into any of these Classes; and tho' it may be objected, that *Tartary* is not under one Government, and that *India extra Gangem* is independant of the *Great-Mogul*, as also that the greatest of *Arabia* is exempt from the *Turk*; and therefore each of those should be divided into its respective Parts; yet in this Place, it is less necessary to clogg the Reader's Memory too much, but rather give him those Distinctions, when we come to speak of those Particular Parts.

#### A View of the Whole.

TURKEY in Asia.	{	Western	{	<i>ASIA MINOR</i> ,	{	Lying from North to South.
		Turky.		<i>SYRIA</i> and <i>Palestine</i> ,		
				<i>ARABIA</i> partly under the <i>Turk</i> .		
{	Eastern	{	<i>DIABECK</i> , i. e. <i>Affyris</i> , <i>Chaldea</i>	{	to the <i>Turk</i> , and partly to the <i>Persian</i> .	
			and <i>Mesopotamia</i> .			
			<i>TURCOMANIA</i> , or the Ancient <i>Armenia major</i> .			

Smaller Parts adjoining, subject to their own Princes, with some Dependance on either the *Turk* or *Persian*, are;

*Imeritia*, *Circassia*, *Comamia*, &c.

On the East of *Turky*, lies *PERSIA*, comprehending *Media*, *Persia*, *Parthia*, &c.

More Eastward, *MOGULLISTAN* or *INDOSTAN*, consisting of 39 Provinces or Kingdoms.

*INDIA* intra *Gangem*, which may be consider'd in four great Parts, lying South of *Mogulistan*. *Decan*, *Malabar*, *Coromandel*, *Golconda*, *Partly subject to the Mogul*.

On the East of those lies,

*INDIA* extra *Gangem*, or the Kingdoms of *PEGU*, *SIAM*, *TONQUIN*. Each containing many small Kingdoms.

And farthest Eastward lies *CHINA*, comprehending 15 large Provinces.

On the North of all these lies,

*TARTARY*, commonly consider'd in four Parts, *Usbeg* in the South, *Desart* in the North, *Turchestan* Midland, *Cathay* in the East.

Thus much for the Continent.

The



The ISLANDS of Asia may be consider'd in three Classes, viz.

I. The Islands on the Coast of Asia, in the Mediterranean-Sea.

Cyprus,  
Rhodes,  
Lesbos or Meteline,  
Chios or Scio,  
Samos,  
Cos or Lango, &c.

II. Those in the Indian-Ocean

Ceylon,  
The Maldivé-Islands,  
The Sunda-Islands, Sumatra Java,  
Borneo, &c.  
The Spice-Islands, Banda, &c.  
The Molucca-Islands, Ternate,  
Tidor, &c.  
Amboyna, Ceram, Gilolo, &c.

III. Those in the Eastern Ocean.

The Philippine-Islands,  
The Japanese-Islands,  
The Ladrone-Islands.

We shall now Proceed to the particular Descriptions of each part, beginning with *Anatolia* as being the nearest to *Europe*, thence passing thro' *Syria*, *Palestine*, *Arabia*, *Diarbeck*, *Georgia*, &c. proceed to *Persia*, and having survey'd all that Kingdom, go thro' *Tartary* into *India*, view all that Continent and the Islands adjacent: Then pass into *China* and *Japon*.

## Of TURKEY in ASIA.





## CHAP. I.

## NATOLIA or ASIA-MINOR.

**N**atolia or *Anatolia*, called *Nadalu* by the *Turks*, and by the ancient *Greeks* *Ἀσία ἡ μικρὰ*, by reason of its Eastern Situation from *Europe*, and on the same account called also *the Levant* by *Europeans*, had anciently the Name of *Asia* simply, by way of Excellency, as being the best Part of *Asia*, for in it were seated very many Noble Cities and Considerable States: But since distinguish'd by the Epithet *Minor*.

It is a large *Peninsula* of about 300 Miles Broad, and 600 Long, bounded on the North by the *Euxine* or *Black-Sea*.

On the West by the *Thracian Bosphorus*, the *Propontis*, and the *Archipelago*.

On the South by the Eastern Part of the *Mediterranean-Sea*.

And on the East by *Georgia*, the River *Euphrates*, which divides it from *Turcomania*; and by the Confines of *Syria*.

It extends from the 36th. to the 41th. Degree of Latitude; and from the 48th. to the 60th. Degree of Longitude.

Nature has given this Country a very Healthful Climate, and Fruitful Soil, but the *Turkish* Tyranny has render'd it almost Desert: Our *English* Merchants Travelling thither on account of Trade, have frequently the Curiosity to visit the Antiquities of this once Famous Country, but see nothing but Ruins, and can only lament its Misfortunes. Nay, even the Fields are uncultivated, and the Grounds that would produce the best Grains and Fruits, are covered with Brambles and Weeds. Where it is cultivated, it affords excellent Corn, Fruits, most delicious Grapes, the fairest Olives; Cotton, Rhubarb, Opium, Galls, and other valuable Drugs; which with Silk, Grogram Yarn, and some few Tapestries and Carpets, are sent to *Europe*.

*Natolia* taken at large, comprehends the ancient Regions of *Galaria*, *Paphlagonia*, *Bythinia*, *Pontus*, *Myia*, *Phrygia*, *Lydia* and *Mania*, *Æolis*, *Ionia*, *Caria*, *Doris*, *Pamphilia*, *Psidia*, *Capadocia*, *Lycia*, *Psidia*, *Lycania*, and *Cilicia*.

Its present Division according to Geographers, is into Four Parts, viz. 1. *Natolia* properly so called, the Western Part. 2. *Caramania*, the Southern Part. 3. *Adulia*, the East Part, and 4. *Amasia*, the North Part. By the *Turks* the whole is divided into Five Parts, under the Government of Five *Beglerbegs* who reside at *Corycum*, *Tocat*, *Trabezond*, *Maosc*, and *Iznion*. These are subdivided into lesser Governments called *Sangiacates*, denominated from the City or Town where the *Sangiac* resides.

A Table of the Cities and Towns in *NATOLIA*, wherein those that were anciently Considerable, are noted as well as the Modern.

The Places of chief Note in that part which was the Ancient

Bythinia.	{	<i>Pruse</i> or <i>Bursa</i> , Cap.	
		<i>Chalcidon</i> ,	
		<i>Nice</i> ,	
		<i>Nicomedia</i> ,	
			<i>Libusta</i> .

Myfia and Phrygia: { *Cyzicus*,  
*Parium*,  
*Lampsacus*,  
*Abydus*,  
*Troy*,  
*Troas Alexandria*,  
*Scamandria*,  
*Affos*,  
*Pergamus*,  
*Palescepsis*,  
*Antandros*,  
*Pitana*.

Æolis. { *Elea*,  
*Myrina*,  
*Cuma*,  
*Phocæa*.

Ionia. { *Smyrna*,  
*Clazomene* or *Urla*,  
*Ærythraa*,  
*Teos*,  
*Lebidus*,  
*Colophon*,  
*Ephesus*,  
*Priene*.

Caria. { *Miletus*,  
*Palatschia*,  
*Heraclea*,  
*Boryglia*,  
*Mylasa*,  
*Amizon*,  
*Alabanda*,  
*Stratonice*,  
*Alynda*.

Doris. { *Myndus*,  
*Halicarnassus*, now *Nesi*,  
*Ceramus*,  
*Cnydus*,  
*Cressa*.

Lydia or Moenia. { *Sardis*,  
*Philadelphia*, now *Allachsbeyer*,  
*Thyatira*, now *Akbisar*,  
*Magnesia*, now *Guzelbiffer*,  
*Laodicea*, now *Eski-bissar*.

Phrygia Major. { *Cotium*, now *Chiutata*,  
*Gordium*,  
*Midaum*,  
*Apamia*,  
*Colosse*,  
*Hierapolis*,  
*Synnada*,  
*Prymnesia*,  
*Tiberopolis*.

Galatia.



Galatia { Pessinus,  
Germa,  
Therma,  
Ancyra, now Angourî,  
Amurium.

Paphlagonia { Heraclea, now Penderachi,  
Amastris, now Somastro,  
Claudiopolis, now Castrimena,  
Teuthramia, now Tripoli,  
Amisus, now Simisso,  
Pompeopolis,  
Gangara, Ionopolis.

## The Islands on the Coasts of Asia-Minor.

TENEDOS, LESBOS, CHIOS now SCIO,  
SAMOS, ICARIA, PATHMOS now PAL-  
MOSA, LERIA now LERO, CLAROS,  
ASTYPALÆA now STAMPOLA, CARPA-  
THUS now SCARPANTO, RHODES and

CYPRUS, { Paphos or Baffo,  
whose chief Amathus now Lymisso,  
Towns are Nicosia, Capital.  
Famagusta now Hamacosto,  
Salamis.

## II. AMASIA comprehends these Provinces,

Pontus { Amasia,  
Galaticus. Themiscyra,  
Comana.

Pontus { Tocat,  
Prolemoniac. Sebastia.

Pontus { Trabecund,  
Cappadocic. Pharnacia,  
Ischopolis,  
Cerausur.

## III. ALADULIA contains,

Cappadocia, { Suvas,  
and part of Caesar,  
Armenia Nyssa,  
minor. Nazianzum.  
Marosch, Cap.

## IV. CARAMANIA includes these Provinces.

Lycia. { Telmessus, Patara,  
Xanthus, Myra,  
Olympius, Phaselis,  
Pinaria, &c.

Pamphylia. { Attalia, now Sataliab,  
Perga, Aspendus.  
Syde, now Candalar.

Pisidia. { Sangalassus,  
Antioch-Pisidie,  
Telmessus.

Lycaonia. { Lystra,  
Derbe,  
Isauria,  
Iconium, now Cogni.

Cilicia. { Silenus, Stalmura,  
Sole, Adena,  
Tarsus, now Therassa,  
Mopsuesta,  
Issus, now Aiazzo.

## Lastly, The Principal Rivers of ASIA-MINOR are,

Iris or Casalmach,  
Halis Oemigiuth or Aly,  
Sangarius Sangari or Zagari. } Running into  
the Euxine-Sea.

Cydus or Carasu,  
Xanthus aut Sirbis Sirbi, } Running into the  
Mediterranean

Meander sive Meandrus Madre,  
Granicus  
Cayster aut Caystrus Carasou,  
Hermus or Sarabae, receiving the  
Pactolus, Caicus Girmasti or Castris,  
Scamander or Seamandro. } Run-  
ning  
into the  
Archi-  
pelago.

NATOLIA propria, containing Bythinia, Phry-  
gia, Mysia, Æolis, Ionia, Caria, Doris, Lydia, Gala-  
tia and Paphlagonia, is the most Western Part of all  
Asia, and nearest to Europe. It extends from the Coast  
of the Bosphorus, Propontis and Ægean-Sea in the West,  
to the 64th. Degree of Longitude in the East, where  
it is bounded by the two Governments of Amasia  
and Aladulia. And from the Coast of the Black-Sea  
in the North, to the Government of Caramania in  
the South; so that this one Beglerbegate, takes up a-  
bove the moiety of the whole Asia-Minor.

In our Peregrination thro' this Government, we  
shall begin with BYTHINIA now Becsangil, as  
lying next to Europe, the small Strait of Constanti-  
nople, called anciently the Thracian Bosphorus, being  
all that intervenes; and that too so narrow, that  
Scutari on the Asian Shore, is reckon'd but a Suburb  
to Constantinople, as we have already said in our ac-  
count of that City. The Land is naturally a very  
good Soil, but little cultivated at present.

## The Chief Towns are,

Chalcedon, altho' it be quite Ruin'd, yet its Situa-  
tion lying first in our Way, and its former State  
deserving remembrance, we must speak of before  
we pass forwards. It was in its time, a flourishing  
and very considerable City, honoured with the  
Session of the Fourth General Council of the Church,  
and stood two Miles from where Scutari now stands,  
but is now intirely destroy'd, and some Ruins only,  
retain the Memory of it; nay, Segnior Gimelli says  
he found nothing to prove there had been such a  
City.

Nicomedia,



*Nicomedia*, Turc. *Isnigimid* or *Ismie*, seated on the Side of a Hill, in the midst of a delightful Plain, at the bottom of a Bay of the *Propontis*, named *sinus Astacenus*, 80 Miles South-east from *Constantinople*; was anciently a very Wealthy and Populous City, frequently honour'd with the Presence of the *Roman* Emperors, and is still Large and Populous, containing as Mr. *Tavernier* informs us, 30000 Inhabitants who Trade in Silks, Cotton, Fruits, Earthen and Glass-Wares, and hath many Greek Churches, fair Mosques, and several Inns and neat Bazzars in it.

*Nice*, Turc. *Isnicò* or *Nicbor*, lies to the South east of *Nicomedia*, near the *Afcanza Patus*, or Lake of *Asfa*; formerly reckon'd the Metropolis of this Country, and then a very considerable City; it was made Famous by being the Seat of the first General Council assembled by the Emperor *Constantine* against the *Arrian* Heresie; and by the Residence of the Greek Emperors for some time, after the Year 1200. when *Constantinople* was taken by the *Latins*. It has a convenient Haven, and the Country about it is excellent for Hunting, and affords very good Fruits and Wine, which made Sultan *Amuratib* build a Seraglio in the highest Part of the Town, where the *Turkish* Emperors have sometimes resided. The present City is pretty large, and contains about 10000 Inhabitants, *Greeks*, *Jews* and *Turks*, who Trade in Corn, Fruit, Cotton, Fine-Cloth, &c. The Streets are neat; and many Vestigia of ancient Noble Structures are seen about it.

*Prusa* or *Prusa ad Olympium*, Turc. *Bursa*, is seated on the ascent of a Hill, about 40 Miles South from *Nice*, having a pleasant Plain before it, and the Mountain *Olympus* behind it, both cover'd with Trees. It was the Seat of the *Turkish* Kings, from A.D. 1326. till the taking of *Constantinople*, and is still a very flourishing City, well inhabited and enjoys a good Trade, being one of the Stages of the Caravans, that pass from *Alepp* and *Persia* to *Constantinople*. *Tavernier* tell us, a Caravan goes every two Months from hence to *Persia*, and both he and Sir *George Wheeler*, tell us the *Turks* live here in better Splendor, with respect to their Houses and Furniture, than in other Places. The Length of this City according to *Tavernier*, is half a *French* League, in the midst whereof stands a Castle upon a Hill, which commands the Town, and is exceeding strong says *Tavernier*; but *Gimeli* says, it is little frequented and goes to Ruin: This was the Grand Seignior's Palace. The hot Baths in this City, are much praised for their Virtue by *Theophrastus*, and *Gimeli* describes a very handsome one, at a little distance out of Town.

*Libassa*, seated about the mid-way between *Constantinople* and *Nicomedia*, is memorable for the Death of *Heracles*, who here made away with himself, rather than be delivered up to the *Romans*, as the treacherous King of *Byzantium* intended.

*MYSIA* and *PHRYGIA* minor, adjoin on the South-west to *Bythinia*, having the *Propontis* for the Northern bounds, the *Hellepont* on the West, *Pangia Mitis* on the East, and the *Archipelago* and *Egean* on the South. The River *Granicus*, Famous for the first Battle between *Alexander* and *Darius* fought on its Banks, rises in the Mountainous part of this Country and after a short course of 50 or 60 Miles from South to North falls into the *Propontis*. Also, Mount *Ida* whereon the Poets say, *Paris* gave Judgment between the Goddesses, is seated here.

The Chief Towns are,

*Cyzicus* or *Clizico*, by others named *Spiga*, or *Spinga*, and by others *Pala-mi*. In the *Roman* times, it was the Metropolis of the Consular *Hellepont*, and was then a most Beautiful and Strong City. Among its many Noble Buildings, the chief Temple was signally notable for its Pompous Structure. The first Ruin of this Place began by an Earthquake, and the fallen Marbles were carried off to embellish *Constantinople*, which hindered its Re-structure, and it is at this time but an ordinary Place. It stands on an Island joined to the Continent by Bridges, on the South-east Coast of the *Propontis*, 60 Miles West from *Nice*, and South-west from *Nicomedia*.

To the Westward of *Cyzicus* in the *Propontis*, lies the Island *Prænessus*, at a little distance from the North Coast of *Mysia*; it is about 20 Miles in Circuit, and affords so great a quantity of Marble that it has thence receiv'd its Modern Name, and from it the whole *Propontis* is call'd the Sea of *Marmora*.

*Parium*, call'd *Ad estea* by *Homer*, stands about 20 Miles within Land, and is mentioned in Antiquity for the Colony of *Romans* settled there.

*Lampsacus*, seated on the *Propontis*, at the Mouth of the *Hellepont* over against *Gallipoli*, Famous only for being infamous enough to deserve Destruction, which when *Alexander* had resolv'd on, he was hindered by a Wife; for when the Ambassadors came to him to obtain Favour, he before Hand swore he would deny their Request, which gave them an Opportunity to save their City, by desiring him to destroy it.

*Abydos* or *Aido*, the Castle opposite to *Sestos*, stands at the Mouth of the *Hellepont*; made memorable by the Poetical Story of *Hero* and *Leander*; but more memorable for the notable Resistance it made to *Philip* of *Macedon*, and the Heroick Behaviour of destroying themselves, when no longer able to resist. It was taken by the *Turks* thro' the Treachery of the Governor's Daughter, about the Year 1330. and is still one of their Castles of the *Dardanelles*; so named from *Dardanus* a small Town, which stands on the Coast a little more to the South.

To proceed, without regard to the Bounds of *Mysia*, and the *Phrygia parva*, which are long since broken down; passing forward to the South, you enter the Region of *Troas*, where stood the City.

*Troy* or *Ilium*, seated on the River *Scamander*, a few Miles from the Sea-Coast, having the Advantage of a very commodious Haven, made by the Island *Tenedos*, which lay along its Coasts at two or three Leagues distance. It was in its time a considerable Place, at least *Homer* and *Virgil* have render'd it such in their inimitable Poems, on the Wars of the *Greeks* against it. The ten Years Siege, and the glorious Acts of the Heroes on both sides, is so much the Subject of every Bodies talk, that 'tis needless to repeat that Story. Travellers inform us, that there are still to be seen the Ruins of its Walls, and Vestigia of its ancient Grandeur, which is some answer to those who look upon that Story as wholly fabulous. At present the Haven is choak'd up with Sand, and not at all frequented.

*Troas Alexandria*, Built by *Lysimachus*, in Honour of *Alexander* the Great, stood some few Miles to the South. This is supposed to be the Place meant by the Apostle, *Acts* 20. 6. it being at that time the Metropolis of the Province, but now in Ruins, and call'd by the *Turks* *Eski-Stamboul*.

*Scamandria*



*Scamandria* was a strong Fortrefs, surprized by *Ottoman* I. and ever since possessed by the *Turks*: but it is slighted, and now not remarkable.

*Affos*, mentioned by the Apostle, *Acts* 20. 13. stands on the South Coast of this Province, about 20 Miles South-east from *Troas Alexand.* Farther to the East stand *Palescepsis*, *Antandros*, otherwise call'd *St. Dimitri*, *Andrimittum* or *Endromit*; all seated upon the Shoar of the Bay, which takes its Name from this last Town. They are Sees of Christian Bishops, as is also *Pitana*, seated on a River of the same Name 30 Miles more to the South. East from which, about 20 Miles distant stands

*Pergamus*, seated in a fair Plain near the Banks of the River *Caicus*; famous in its time for being the Seat of a Race of Kings, the first whereof was *Phileteus* an Eunuch, Servant to *Antigonus*, one of *Alexander's* Captains, who by the means of a great Wealth of his Master's, which he seized on in his Castle, set up for a King, and left it to his Brother, who being succeeded by Sons and Nephews for about 250 Years, *Attalus* the last King bequeathed it to the *Romans*. This City was Honoured by the Birth of *Galen*, the famous Physician, and noted by being one of those Seven Churches, against whom God's Wrath is denounced by *St. John*. Parchment was invented here, and retains its Name to this Day. Also Tapestry Hangings were invented by King *Attalus*, and first made here. It was also famous for the Noble Library erected by its Kings, wherein 20000 Volumes written on Parchment were placed. Its Ruins described by *Dr. Smith*, testify its ancient Grandeur: But in its present State, 'tis but an ordinary Place, inhabited by *Turks*, whose Mosque is an ancient large and handsom Christian Church, and a few Christians who have a Church.

*ÆOLIS* with *IONIA*, adjoyn on the South to *Phrygia-minor*, running Southward in a narrow Tract along the Sea-Coast, to the 37th. Degree of Latitude. It constituted the Proconsular *Asia* under the *Romans*. In *Æolis* stood these Towns,

*Elea*, at the mouth of the River *Caicus*, the Port to *Pergamus*, and the Birth-place of *Zeno* the Philosopher. *Myrina* called afterwards *Sebastopolis*. *Cama* that gave Name to one of the *Sybils*, it was the Capital of *Æolis*, and stands on the Sea-Coast. As doth also *Phocæa* or *Foggia*, seated more to the South; the Inhabitants of this City, are said to have been the Founders of *Marseilles* in *France*, for being driven from their Country, by the Severity of the *Persians*, they rambled till they settled there: It is now a small Place, altho' the See of a Bishop. About 10 Miles from it to the West, stands another little Port-Town of the same Name, but distinguished with the adjunct of *Neus*, which is a neat Place, with a good Harbour and Castle. All these Towns lie over against the Island *Lesbos*.

In *Ionis*, which stretches along the Sea-Coast Southward from *Æolis*, are these Towns.

*Smirna*, Turc. *Ismyr*, seated in Lat. 38 Deg. 40 Min. on the Isthmus of the *Ionian Peninsula*, near the Gulph of the *Ægean-Sea*, to which it gives Name, and the River *Meles* which here falls into the *Hermus*, and both into the Bay, on the side of a Hill in a healthful temperate Air, and a fruitful Soil. It was eminent under the *Romans*, and was the Seat of one of the seven Churches of Christians; and has for many Ages been a very considerable Place on account of Trade, which makes it resorted to by Merchants

of all Countries, *Turks*, *Greeks*, *Armenians*, *Persians*, and *Jews*, besides *European Nations*; especially *English*, many of our Merchants constantly residing there, and having a Consul for their Protection. The Town has suffered divers Convulsions by Earthquakes, especially one in our Days, namely, *June* 30. 1688. about Noon a most Dreadful one broke out, which immediately overthrew the greatest Part of the Houses, the Castle was swallowed up in a Chasm that opened under it, and the whole Town was very rudely shattered: 5000 Persons perished, and an immense Wealth was swallow'd up. To add to their Misery, a few Hours after a Fire broke out, which consumed almost all that was left. But it is since Rebuilt, and the Merchants who had rerir'd to the Island *Chio* near adjacent are return'd. This was one of the Seven Cities that claim'd to have given Birth to *Homer*, which they were so proud of, that they built a Sumptuous Temple to his Honour. *Sir George Wheeler* and *Mr. Tavernier*, who saw it in its flourishing State, describe it as a beautiful Place, built like an Amphitheatre on the side of a Hill, which open'd to the South-east: But *Dr. Smith* who was there in 1670. places the Modern Town in the Plain near the Heaven; and says, the many stately Ruins on the ascent of the Hill, shew that the old City stood there. The Castle was old and ruinous, says *Dr. Smith*, it commanded the Gulph for 3 or 4 Leagues distance says *Tavernier*. The Haven is encompassed with Rocks, except at its opening on the West, says *Smith*; and 'tis well guarded by two Castles says *Thevenot*. It was reckon'd by these Travellers, to contain 90000 Inhabitants, and to be one of the most considerable Cities of all the *Levant* for Trade. *Seignior Gimelli* was there since the Earthquake, in the Year 1693. whose Account of the State of it is thus. 'The Compass of the Modern City is about four Miles, its shape irregular, somewhat drawing to a Triangle, whose side next the Mountains is longest. There is no Beauty in the Buildings, for they are little Hovels after the *Turkish* fashion, very low with mud Walls, rebuilt since the Earthquake. But the Xans or Caravansera's for lodging Strangers, are very large and well built; the Streets are large, and the whole City a continued Bazar or Fair, where nothing that can be wish'd for is wanting, either for Cloathing, Sustainance or Pleasure, because all the best Commodities of *Europe* and *Asia*, are brought hither and Sold at cheap Rates. The Consuls of *England*, *France*, and *Holland*, live great in stately Houses near the Sea. The Country about this Town, is very Fertile and Pleasant, abounding (says *Thevenot*) with Olive Trees, Vines, and Gardening, and the Wine is excellent. The Soap-Earth near this City, is reckoned a Rarity, 'tis a fatness boiling out of the Earth, which being boiled up with Oil, becomes excellent Soap. Among the ancient Ruins, there are the remains of a *Roman Circus* and a Theatre.

*Clazomene*, now *Urla* or *Vourla*, the Birth-place of *Anaxagoras*. *Ærythraea*, memorable for the Habitation of one of the *Sybils*. *Teos*, the Birth-place of *Anacreon*, and *Lebidus*, are all small Sea-Ports round about the *Ionian Peninsula*.

*Colophon*, another of the Cities that claim *Homer*, whose Inhabitants were so Famous anciently for their Skill in Horsemanship, that they always brought Victory to the Sides they took, so that *Colophonem addere* became a Proverb, to express a good end of any Business, stands 30 Miles South from *Smirna*.

*Ephesus*



*Ephesus* or *Efeso*, Turc. *Ajasalouch*, altho' now but a small Village, was heretofore a most noble City. It stands about 50 Miles South from *Smyrna*, near the Mouth of the River *Caistrus*, and the Shore of the *Icerian-See*, which is a Bay of the *Aegean*. Its Situation was delightful on the side of a Hill, and a pleasant Rivulet, with a fine Haven at some distance; it was under the *Romans* the Metropolis of *Asia*, and the Seat of the Primate of that Diocese. Christianity was early planted in it, and *Timothy* was its first Bishop. *St. Paul* wrote one of his Epistles to this People, which is still a part of our Canon of Scripture: *St. John* the Apostle was Buried here; and the Third General Council of the Church was held in this City. In its more early State, it was famous for the Temple erected in it to *Diana*, of so beautiful and magnificent Structure, that it was reckoned the Wonder of the World: It was 425 Foot long, and 220 Foot broad, supported by 127 Marble Pillars (27 whereof were very curiously carved,) of 70 Foot in height; the old Accounts say it was 200 Years in Building, but sooner Destroyed by the Villanous Ambition of *Herostatus*, who to make his Name memorable set it on Fire, on the same Night that *Alexander* the Great was Born. An ancient Christian Church, now a *Turkish* Mosque is still standing, as also the Ruins of several others; there are still to be seen the Vestigia of a *Roman* Theatre, Circus and Aqueduct, as also heaps of stately Ruins, which some suppose to be the Remains of *Diana's* Temple: But with little Probability I think, for the City was in a flourishing State, so long after the Destruction of that Temple, that 'tis unlikely the Stones of it should not have been remov'd. At present *Epheso* is the Habitation of 40 or 50 Families only.

*Priene*, the Birth-place of *Bias*, one of the Wise Men of *Greece*, stood in the limits of this Country. As did also *Magnesia* where *Theomistecles* died in Exile.

The next Province to the South of *Ionis*, was *CARIA* with *DORIS*, now *Aidinelly*; surrounded by the Sea on the West and South, and the River *Meander* on the North.

The Chief Towns in it are,

*Miletus*, now *Palaschia*, formerly one of the biggest Cities, but at present a Place of small account, stands on the South side of the River *Meander*; near the Sea-Coast; the Birth-place of *Thales*, and sometime the Seat of an Oracle of *Apollo*, to whom they built a Magnificent Temple. This is the Place mentioned, *Acts* 20. *Sir George Wheeler* tells us, there are still large Ruins to be seen, but the Town consists only of a few Shepherds Cottages. Near *Miletus* stood the Mountain *Latmus*; where, as the Poets feigned, the Moon made her visits to *Endymion*, on whom she was enamour'd. *Heraclia* or *Latmum*, at the foot of that Mountain towards the Sea-Coast. *Borgylis*, mentioned in Antiquity for its Temple erected to *Diana*, stands 40 Miles South from *Heraclia*. *Myleffa*, 20 Miles East from *Borgylis*, was famous for two Temples of *Jupiter*; and a Noble one built to the Honour of *Augustus Caesar*, the Ruins whereof are still seen, as also the Remains of a Column called the Pillar of *Meander*, and of a little Temple. These three are Bishops Sees, as are also *Amyzon*, *Alabanda*, *Stratonice*, and *Alynda*; all seated in the Limits of this Province, but none of them considerable enough to deserve Description.

*DORIS* constitutes the Southern part of *Caria*, and has these Towns.

*Myndus*, a Sea-Port on a Small Bay named *Jasticus Sinus*, formerly a small Town, whose Inhabitants in Vanity had built so large Gates to it, that *Diogenes* had them take care the Town did not run out at the Gates. At present 'tis the Chief Town in these Parts, as being the Seat of the *Turkish* Sangiack.

*Halicarnassus*, Turc. *Nesi*, stands more to the South, an uninhabited heap of Ruins (says *Sir George Wheeler*) at this time, altho' so Famous formerly; 'twas the Royal Seat of *Caria*, and by *Queen Artemisia* was adorn'd with a Tomb, in Honour of her Husband *Mausoleus*, of so Noble and Artificial Structure, that it was numbered among the Nine Wonders of the World. This City had the Honour to give Birth to those two celebrated Historians *Herodotus* and *Dionysius*.

*Ceramus* and *Cnidus* on the West, and *Cressa* on the Eastern Coasts, in the Southern Part of this Province, have been notable Havens in their times, but at present of no Fame.

Thus we have passed from North to South, thro' those Provinces that compose the Western Part of *Natolia propria*, we shall now return thro' the Midland Provinces, and give you a view of the rest of it.

*LYDIA* so named, as 'tis said from *Lud* the Son of *Shem*, otherwise named *MOENIA*, was in its time a very considerable Kingdom, and comprehended also both *Eolia* and *Ionis* abovementioned; its strict Limits lie between *Eolis* on the South-west, *Mysia* on the North-west, *Caria* on the South, and *Phrygia-major* on the East. It was a fruitful Country, being watered by four considerable Rivers, viz. the *Caicus*, *Hermus*, *Caistrus* and *Meander*, all which run quite thro' the Country from East to West; the last of them thro' its many Turnings, became a Proverb; together with the *Pactolus* a smaller Stream, but more fam'd by Poets on account of its Golden Sand. It has divers Mountains, but those too are not unfruitful, especially *Tmolus*, which is cover'd with Saffron; this was the Country of King *Craesus*, who was so famed for Wealth.

The Chief Towns were,

*Sardis*, the Regal Seat, now a poor Village, it stood on the River *Pactolus*, at the foot of Mount *Tmolus*, about 70 Miles distant from *Smyrna* to the East; in Christianity, it was the Seat of one of the Seven Churches of *Asia*, and still gives Title to a Bishop. It was overthrown by an Earthquake, and there are now the Remains of some stately Architecture and imperfect Inscriptions to be seen.

*Philadelphia*, formerly the Second City, and another of the Seven Churches, dignified afterwards with the Title of Metropolitan. *Sir George Wheeler* tells us, 'tis now but a poor Place, and thinly Inhabited, but *Dr. Smith* and others, mention it as remarkable for the Number of Christian Inhabitants, viz. 2000. who have four Churches. 'Twas the last Place in these Parts that Surrender'd to the *Turks*, and that too not till after six Years Siege. The *Greeks* retain its old Name, but the *Turks* call it *Al-lach-Sheyer*, or as it is corruptly written in the Maps *Alakars*. It stands on the North side of *Tmolus* in a fruitful Plain, where are still to be seen many Marks of its ancient Magnificence.

*Thystris*



*Thyatira*, about 30 Miles to the North-west, now called *Aklisar*, and sometimes *Thira*, seated in a spacious and delightful Plain, near the South Bank of *Hermus*, was another of the Seven Churches, and still gives Title to a Bishop. The Ruins of ancient Marble Structures testify its former Grandeur, but at present the Houses are but of Turf: it is a Place of some Trade for Corn and Cotton, and inhabited by about 5000 Turks.

*Tralles*, seated near the *Meander* was a famous City, and a Bishops See in the beginning of Christianity; but now in Ruins and called *Sultan-Hisar*.

*Magnesia*, Turc. *Guzethisar*, seated on the River *Meander*, about 50 Miles South from *Sardis*, was a very considerable City in its ancient State, as the Ruins of many great Buildings demonstrate, and is still a large well built Wall'd Town, holding a good Trade with *Smyrna* for Cotton-Yarn.

*Laodicea*, another of the Seven Churches, stood on the Eastern limits of this Province, and sometimes reckon'd to be in *Phrygia*, because by *Constantine* laid into that Province: is by the Turks called *Eski-Hisar*, and at present a heap of Ruins of very large extent, among which are seen three Theatres of White Marble very intire, and a stately Circus, but quite deserted and inhabited only by Beasts. (Dr. Smith.)

*Dingisley*, a very large and handsome Turkish Town, stands four Miles South from *Laodicea*.

*PHRYGIA* major, at present known by the Name of *Germian*, is a Country of somewhat larger extent than those we have been speaking of, but its In-land Situation made it abound with considerable Towns, even so early as *Q. Curtius's* time. It lies between *Pamphylia* on the South, *Myisia* on the West, *Bythinia* on the North, and *Galatia* on the East, and was a fruitful pleasant Country, watered by the Rivers *Sangarius*, *Hermus*, *Meander*, (which all spring here) and *Marsias*, which took its Name as the Poets say, from the Musician *Marsias*, who contended with *Apollo*. In this Province stand

*Cotacum*, now *Chiutaina*, the Seat of the Turkish Beglerbeg or Vice-Roy, who Governs all the Countries we have mentioned, and the rest of *Natolia propria*; it is a considerable City, seated on the River *Ayala*, Lat. 40 D. 40 M. 80 Miles South-east from *Bursa*.

*Gordium* and *Midcum*, the former the Seat of *Gordius* King of *Phrygia*, who tied such a Knot in *Apollo's* Temple, that the Monarchy of the World was promised to him that untied it, which *Alexander* cut to elude the Oracle. And the latter denominated from his Son *Midas*, famous in the Poetical Story for his Golden Wish and his Asses Ears, stood in the Northern Limits. *Apamia*, toward the Southern Confines, seated on the Banks of the *Meander*, near its Conflux with the *Marsias*, formerly a Place of great Trade, but now in Decay. *Colosse* now *Chonos*, on the South side of the *Meander*, to the People whereof *St. Paul* wrote that Epistle, which is part of our Canon. *Hierapolis*, Turc. *Bambouk-kale*, seated more to the West on the Frontiers of *Lydia*; altho' now deserted, its Ruines appear so Magnificent, that *Dr. Smith* believes it to have been one of the most Glorious Cities of the World: A hot Spring rises here, which was in great Repute for its healing Virtues. *Synnada*, noted for its Marble. *Pemnesia* near the head of the River *Sangarius*; and *Tiberiopolis*, near the Mountain *Sipylus*; are the Places of the chiefeſt note in *Phrygia*.

*GALATIA*, now named *Chiagare*, lies next to *Phrygia* on the East, having *Paphlagonia* on the North and *Pamphilia* on the South, and had its Name *Galatia*, from a Colony of Gaul's, who passing thro' Greece into Asia, settled first in *Phrygia-minor* and *Myisia*, but being driven thence by *Attalus* King of *Pergamus*, they removed hither; it was also called *Gallo-Gracia*, from the mixture of Greeks with them. 'Twas a fruitful pleasant Country, and was the Place where the Stone *Amythyst* said to protect Men from Drunkenness was found.

The Chief Towns in it were,

*Pessinus* on the River *Sangarus*, notable in Poetic Story for the Goddess *Cybele*, whose Residence was supposed to be here; at the Request of the Romans, her Image was removed from hence to their City, but it seems, not willing to go there, the Ship that carried it stopt in the *Tyber*, and could not be brought forward, till a Vestal Virgin to clear her Chastity prevail'd upon the Goddess, and by the strength of her Girdle, the Ship was haled up. *Germa* now *Germaste* on the same River, a Bishop's See. *Therma*, so named from its hot Baths, mentioned by both *Ptolemy* and *Strabo*. *Ancyra*, Turc. *Angouri* on the River *Midas*, formerly the chief Town of the *Tectosagi*, and famous for the Victories of *Pompey* over *Mithridates*, and *Tamerlain* over *Bajazet*; a Town of good Trade at this time, which consists chiefly in Chamlers; and the Seat of a Sangiack. Lastly *Amurium* or *Chiongon*, a Bishop's See stands on the same River *Melas* near its head.

*PONTUS* and *PAPHLAGONIA* lay next, on the North of *Galatia*, divided on the East from *Cappadocia* by the River *Halis*, notable for its swift Current. On the West by the River *Parthemius*, from the *Metapontus* or *Pontus propria*; which last extended Westward to the River *Sangarius*; and were both bounded on the North by the *Euxine-Sea*. The Name *Pontus* extended far, even to all the Coast of the *Euxine-Sea*, under some distinctions. This before us, is but a small Part of it cut off from the rest by *Paphlagonia*, so that we shall consider them together.

The Chief Towns whereof were,

In *PONTUS* now *Genech*. ] *Heraclea Pontica* now *Penderachi*, a Sea-Port on the North-west Cape of this Land, sometime famous for the Residence of a Branch of the Imperial Family *Comneni*. *Amastris*, now *Semaſtro*, another Sea-Port at the mouth of the River *Parthemius*, formerly of great Strength. *Claudiopolis*, otherwise called *Bithynium*, and now *Castromena*, seated within Land, formerly a Place of Strength, and still a Bishop's See.

In *PAPHLAGONIA*, now *Roni* or *Bolli*. ] *Teuthramia*, now *Tripoli*, a Port-Town at the bottom of a small Bay. *Synope*, now *Sinabe*, a large Town with a very convenient Haven in the Mouth of a River, to which it gives Name, is seated on the North-east Promontory; it is a Place of good Trade, and maintains a profitable Fishery. *Mithridates* the famous King of *Pontus*, had here both his Birth and Burial, it being for some time the Metropolis of that Kingdom. *Amisus* or *Siniso*, seated on the Coast in the extream East part of this Province. *Pompeopolis* seated within Land, near the Southern Confines. *Gangara* or *Zagy'a*, which stands more Northward, was notable formerly for a Council held



held in it, and is still a Bishoprick. *Ionopolis* now *Ginepoli*.

Having now Travell'd thro' and surveyed all the Provinces of *Natalia* strictly so call'd, we shall proceed thro' the other three Parts, which we told you *Natalia* or *Asie-minor* taken at large, was divided into.

And here **AMASIA**, or the Beglerbegates of *Sebastian* and *Treziende*, lies next on the East to *Paphlagonia*, whence we last came; and comprehends the rest of **PONTUS**, under the various denominations of *Pontus-Galaticus*, *Pontus-Polemoniacus*, and *Pontus-Cappadocius*.

*Pontus-Galaticus* so called, because it was by the *Romans* laid to *Galatia*: Lies on the North-east of *Galatia*, from the Frontiers of *Cappadocia* in the South, to the Banks of the *Euxine-Sea* in the North, extending Eastward to the River *Thermodon*, near the mouth whereof stands the Promontory or Cape *Heracleum* now *Cabo di Limen*. The chief Towns of it are,

*Amasia* or *Amnasan*, seated among Mountains on the Banks of the River *Iris* or *Casalmach*, or rather at a Leagues distance from that River; for *Tavernier* says, there is a Trench cut out of a hard Rock a League in length, to bring fresh Water to the Town. It is a large place, the Capital of this Country and sometimes the Seat of the Beglerbeg, the River which about 60 Miles below, falls into the *Euxine-Sea*, is so large that Ships of Burthen can come up near the Town; but it enjoys not however much Trade, nor are the Buildings at all Beautiful. It is so defended by craggy Mountains, and the Castle that is inaccessible, except on one side. It has been customary for the Eldest Son of the Grand-Segnior to reside here till he is call'd to the Throne. In its ancient State, this City was the Seat of the Kings of *Cappadocia*, and some marks of its Grandeur still appear, in the Ruins of very Magnificent Structures. It is the See of an Archbishop, and had the Honour to give birth to *Strabo* the Geographer. *Ternisycra*, now *Fenagoria* or *Leie*, seated on the Sea-Coast 60 Miles North-east from *Amasia*, is a Bishop's See, and may have been formerly considerable, being always nam'd among the chief Cities, but at present 'tis but in ill State. *Cemana*, for distinction call'd *Pontica*, seated in the South Borders, about 70 Miles from *Ternisycra* and about 80 from *Amasia* to the East, is another Bishop's See, and the next in Rank of the Cities of this Province, but now not very considerable.

*Pontus-Polemoniacus* lies next on the East. The Chief Towns here are, *Nacesaria* now *Tocat* the Metropolis of this Country, and the Seat of the Beglerbeg, it is a City of large extent, and well built, at the foot of a hill, (or on a Rock as *Tavernier*,) near the Northern Bank of the River *Ceranus*, near 100 Miles East from *Amasia*, with a Castle for its Defence; it is the See of an Archbishop, and according to *Tavernier's* account, the Christians are so numerous as to have 12 Churches here: He also tells us this City is well inhabited, and is one of the most remarkable thoroughfares in the East, for the Caravans to and from *Diarbeck*, *Persia*, *Constantinople*, *Smyrna*, &c. here are several Mosques, and one of late Structure is especially notable for its Magnificence. The best blue *Turkey* Leather is made here. The Land round about this City abounds with Saffron, which is a very valuable Commodity farther Eastward.

*Sebestia* or *Cabyra*, now *Sivas*, a considerable Place of great Strength, stands about 40 Miles South from *Tocat*. The Beglerbeg sometimes resides here, and his Government is denominated from this City as frequently as from *Tocat*.

This is supposed to be the Country of the *Anaxions* or the Feminine Monarchy, who admitted no Men among them, and yet were eminent in Warlike Bravery. They were originally the Wives of a *Scythian* Army that broke into these Parts, whose Husbands being all kill'd by Treachery, the Women reveng'd their Death, and maintained the Country for some Ages.

*Pontus-Cappadocius*, the most Eastern part of *Pontus*, extends to the Frontiers of *Georgia*, having the *Armenia-minor* and the upper Stream of the *Euphrates* for its Southern bounds. The chief Towns are *Pharnacia*, *Ischopolis*, *Cerausus*, all on the Sea-Coast in the Western part. And

*Trabezend* or *Trapezus* in the Eastern part, seated also near the Coast of the *Black-Sea*, in the 43d. Degree of Latitude. A notable Place for Trade to *Constantinople*, *Caffa*, and other Places on that Sea. The City and Suburbs contain 20000 Inhabitants says *Gimelli*, but having suffer'd often by Wars, particularly in 1617. when the *Russians* burnt it, the buildings are not considerable. Two small Citadels guard the Town, but neither of them very strong. This City was famous in the middle Ages for the Court of the *Greek* Emperors of the Family of *Comneni*, held in it when the *Latines* had taken *Constantinople*. *Alexius Comnenus* first began to reign here, *An.* 1204. and *David Comnenus* the Eleventh in Succession was conquered, and with his Seven Sons kill'd by *Mahomet* the Great, *An.* 1461. it is still the Seat of the Government of this Countrey, being the Residence of the Beglerbeg. Other Places are nam'd by ancient Geographers, but none very considerable at present.

**ALADULIA**, or the Beglerbegate of *Metit* or *Marusch*, adjoins to that of *Trabezend* on the South, extending Eastward to the River *Euphrates*; it comprehends *Cappadocia* and *Armenia-minor*.

**CAPPADOCIA**, is a large and fruitful Country, producing Wines and Fruit in great Plenty, and in the Mountains (whereof a large Ridge named *Anti-Taurus* runs quite cross the Country,) are found Mines of Silver, Copper, Iron and Allum; this Country is also noted for its excellent breed of Horses. The People were anciently of a very Vicious Nature, but under Christianity were so reform'd as to produce Martyrs, Fathers and Saints in the Church, *Gregory Nazianzen*, *Gregory Nyssen*, and *St. Basil* were all of this Country, as was also (according to the common Opinion) that great Champion of the Faith, *St. George* Patron of our Order of the Garter. The great River *Melas* which rises in the Western limits of *Galatia*, passes thro' the Southern Borders of this Province and *Armenia*, and falls into the *Euphrates*. The River *Halis* mentioned as the Western Boundary of *Pontus*, and the *Iris* which also falls into the *Euxine-Sea* in *Pontus-Galaticus*, have both their Fountains here. The chief Towns are,

*Cesaria* or *Maçaca*, now *Caes*, which was the Capital of *Cappadocia* under the *Romans*, and the See of *St. Basil*, stands about 40 Miles South from *Sivas*, near the North Bank of the River *Melas* or *Cabaquet*. *Tavernier* informs us 'tis a good fair and populous



ious City built round a Rock, at the top whereof stands a Castle well Garrison'd : It is the Stage of all the Caravans from the East, who hence disperse to the several Countries. *Nissa* and *Nazianzum* the Sees of the two *Gregory's*, and several other Cities of *Cappadocia* are mentioned in Antiquity as considerable, but none of them are now observable. The Capital of the *Turkish* Government stands in the *Armenia-minor*; namely,

*Morotch* or *Mars*, Antiq. *Mesena* and *Metita*, situate near the Banks of the River *Euphrates*, in the South-east limits of this Government, is a large and well built City, the Seat of the *Beglerbeg*, who has four *Sangiacks* under his Jurisdiction; and was the chief Town built by the *Aladules*, a fierce Nation which anciently inhabited this Country.

The remaining Part of *Asia-minor*, is the Diocese or *Beglerbegate* of *CARAMANIA* (so named from a Race of Kings descended from *Caraman*) which is all the Southern Part, and comprehends the ancient *Lycia*, *Pamphylia*, *Pisidia*, *Lycania* and *Cilicia*.

*LYCIA*, now *Menteseli*, is a small Province lying on the Coast of the *Mediterranean-Sea*, bounded on the North by *Phrygia-major* and *Pamphylia*, and on the West by *Caria*. The Mountains which are Branches of *Taurus*, surround it on three sides, and the Sea on the fourth; it was a pleasant and flourishing Country in ancient times, but now not considerable. These were the Chief Towns, *Telmessus* seated on a noted Bay in the Western limits, whose Inhabitants are said to have been the first Pretenders to interpretation of Dreams. *Patara*, more Eastward, a little Town seated on a Hill, formerly celebrated for a Temple and Oracle of *Apollo*, almost equal to that of *Delphos*. *Xanthus*, more within Land on a River of the same Name. *Myra*, the Metropolis, seated on a high Hill at some distance from the Coast, mentioned *Acts* 27. 5. the See of a Bishop. *Phaselis*, formerly a notable Nest of Pyrates, now a small Village nam'd *Fionda*, and *Olympus* also give Titles to Bishops, as do likewise *Pinaria*, *Tlos*, *Limyra* and *Rhodia* in the Up-land.

*PAMPHTLIA*, lies next to *Lycia* on the East, having the *Mediterranean-Sea* for its Southern bounds, and *Pisidia* on the North; it is a very Mountainous Country, in the Up-land, but fruitful and pleasant on the Coast, neither are the Mountains unprofitable, for great Herds of Goats that feed on them, whose Hair makes excellent Chamlers. The chief Towns are, *Attalia* or *Satalia*, Turc. *Satalyah*, a Port-town conveniently seated on a Bay, which makes a good Harbour, but of dangerous entrance, with a Castle reckon'd among the principal in this Country, is a Place of good Trade. *Perga*, more Eastward, near the Mouth of the River *Cestrius* famous in ancient times for a Temple to *Diana*: Both these Towns are mention'd *Acts* 14. 25. *Syde* or *Syda*, Turc. *Canda*, another Port-town, seated more to the East. *Aspendus*, more within Land, between *Perga* and *Syde*, strongly situated and the Metropolis of the Country under the *Romans*.

*PISIDIA*, lies on the North of *Pamphylia*, a small Province, but fruitful Land, being a Plain amidst Mountains. The chief Towns were, *Sagalassus* in the Western Confines, mentioned by *Livy* for the Fertility of its Fields. *Antiochia-Pisidia*, the Metropolis when under the *Romans*, mentioned *Acts* 17. 19. *Termessus* strongly seated in a Straight between Mountains.

*LYCAONIA* with *ISAURIA*, adjoined on the North to *Pisidia*, a *Champaign* Country of no large extent, wherein these Towns were of chiefest note, *Lystia*, on the Western limits where *Paul* and *Barnabas* having cured a Cripple, the Priests would have offer'd Sacrifice to them as Gods, *Acts* 14. *Derbe*, on the South limits, where the same Apostle Preached. *Isauria*, which gave Name to that part of the Country, is long since destroyed. And

*Iconium*, now *Cogni*, the Metropolis of *Lycania* formerly, and of *Caramania* now; a large well built and very populous City, wherein the *Beglerbeg* resides; seated in the midst of the Province, in the 40th. Degree of Latitude, near a fresh Water Lake, stiled *Tragilis Palus* 100 Miles North from the Sea-Coast. The Situation being pleasant and secure, it was chosen by the *Turkish* Sultans, descended from *Cutlu Moses* for their Regal Seat, and continued so from 1072. till 1261. when in that Excursion of the *Tartars* under *Haelon*, the City was taken and that Royalty pull'd down. But *Haelon* returning Home to succeed his Brother *Mango* and *Aladine*, II. being dead without Issue, it gave Opportunity to *Caraman Alisinus*, a Nobleman of the Country, to seize the City, and erect a new Monarchy, which comprehended these Provinces from him call'd *Caramania*. At this Place *St. Paul* Preached, and it is now an Archbishoprick.

Lastly, *CILICIA* on the East of *Pamphylia*, extends along the Coasts of the *Mediterranean-Sea*, to the Confines of *Syria*, near 250 Miles from East to West, but hardly 50 in breadth; the Land is in some Parts very Fertile, but in others very Stoney. The Northern and Eastern Borders are very Mountainous, and the Passages between them very narrow; which Straights being possessed by the *Persians* to oppose *Alexander*, occasioned the Battle of *Issus*, where the *Persians* were the second time Defeated. The Chief Towns here are, *Silenus* or *Islenos*, seated on a River to which it gives Name, near the Sea-Coast in the Western Confines, a Place not notable at this time, except for being a Bishop's See, as is also *Jocape* over against it on the right side of the same River. *Selucia-Trachea*, seated on the River *Calycadnus* more Eastward, is an Archbishop's See. *Philadelphia* and *Flaviopolis* more Northward, give Titles also to Bishops, as do also *Lamus*, on the River *Latamus*; and *Sole*, afterwards *Pompeopolis*, seated near the mouth of the same River, noted anciently for a Colony of *Greeks* who in process of time, spoke their own Language so corruptly, that from them any preposterous Expression was call'd a *Solecism*. *Tarsus*, the Metropolis of this Province, and the See of an Archbishop, stands on the River *Cydus*, near its Mouth into the *Rhegma-Lake*, in the Lat. 36. 50. m. near the middle of the Province: The River having passed thro' the Lake, flows forward in a good large Stream into the Sea, which makes it a good Haven, and renders the City a place of Trade; 'tis now called *Therassa*, and sometimes by the *Turks* *Hemsa*, and was the Birth-place of *St. Paul*. *Adena*, seated more to the Eastward, in a fruitful Soil both for Wine and Corn, and therefore resorted to by Travellers for Provisions to carry them over the Mountains. *Mopsuestia*, near the Sea-Coast, anciently a Place of good account; and on the extreme Eastern Frontiers, *Issus*, now *Ainazzo* or *Lajazzo*, seated on a Gulph to which it gives Name, is a neat Town, with a good Haven: Famous in its time for the Battle fought near it, between *Alexander* and



*Darius*, wherein the former with the loss of 100 Men, defeated the mighty Army of the latter, and kill'd above 100000 of his Men, as the Writers of this Prince's Life declare. Several In-land Cities are

mentioned by ancient Authors as considerable; but they are declined, and at present unknown, so we must pass them over, and here finish our Account of ASIA-MINOR.

## CHAP. II.

### The ISLANDS on the Coast of ASIA-MINOR.

THESE Islands were in the flourishing Times of Greece and Rome very considerable, but since the Turks have been Masters of them, they are very much declined; they lie distributed on the Coast from North to South in this Order.

TENEDOS, called *Bosceda* by the Turks, lies at the mouth of the *Hellepont*, over against *Tross* or *Phrygia-minor*, not above two Leagues from the Shoar, and made the Haven to *Troy*, which is now choak'd up with Sand. The Island is 30 Miles in circuit, and contains many Villages, and one large Town of the same Name, with a Castle which defends the Port; the Coast is Rocky, but the Mid-land is good Soil, and produces Muscadine Wine. The Greeks retir'd behind this Island, when they pretended to quit the Siege of *Troy*, and lay by till their Plot took effect, and then in the Night return'd.

LESBOS, now *Metelino* of much larger extent, lies more to the South over against the Coast of *Lydia*; it is near 60 Miles long, and reckoned 160 in circuit; the Soil in some parts Rocky, in others very Fruitful, producing excellent Corn and Wine. *Meteline*, the chief Town stands on the North side on a Rocky Promontory, which makes two several Ports, which are both defended by a Castle on the Hill, and a Fort at the Foot of it, the Castle is well Garrison'd, and is an Arsenal of Stores for the Gallies that Cruise against Pirates; this was formerly a City of beautiful Structure, but at present consists only of ordinary low built Houses: The Venetians were long time Masters of this Island.

CHIOS or *Scio*, Turc. *Sakisedaci*, lies on the South of *Lesbos*, over against the Promontory of *Ionis*, in the same Latitude with *Smyrna*, of 100 Miles (80 says *Thevenot*;) in circuit; it is a fruitful Soil, producing Corn, Oil, Honey, most delicious Wine, Silk, and especially the Gum-Mastick out of the *Lentisk-Tree* in very great quantity, which yields a vast profit to the Inhabitants; the Land is Hilly and Stony, and wants Water, having few Springs and very little Rain which checks the Fertility of it; the People are remarkably Merry and Gay, and the Women very handsome. The Chief Town *Scio*, is pleasantly seated on the East side of the Island, and had a good Haven, fortified by a strong Castle, but the Haven is in decay, and the Town of very ordinary Structure, altho' formerly a good City, which claim'd *Homer*, and pretended to shew his School near it. The *Greeks* were Masters of this Place till outed by the Turks; the present Inhabitants, are chiefly their Offspring and *Greeks*, who occupy 30 small Towns and Villages, (or 60 according to *Thevenot*;) under the Government of a Turkish Garrison residing in the Castle. The Venetians took this Island

in the late War, *An.* 1694. but lost it again the Year following.

SAMOS, lies on the South-east of *Chios*, over against the Coast of *Ionis*, in the Latitude of *Ephesus*, not above 2 Leagues separated from the Coast, and about 80 Miles in compass; it is surrounded with Rocks, but the Mid-land is fruitful in Corn, Oil, and Fruits. The chief Town, *Samo* stands on the South-east part, near a fair and commodious Haven, but now little frequented by reason of the Pirates, who so much infest it, that the Town from a Populous and well Inhabited City, is become a sorry Village. It was an eminent Free-state, and the Birth-place of *Pythagoras*.

ICARIA, now *Nicaria*, lies on the west of *Samos* of much smaller extent, and not at all considerable, being destitute of a Haven, and therefore not visited by Traders. The Inhabitants are about 3000 in number, are Poor and maintain themselves by diving for Sponge, with which they pay their Tribute and carry on a Commerce. (*Thevenot*.)

PATHMOS, now *Palmosa*, lies on the South of *Icaria* a great distance from the main Land; it is a mountainous and woody Soil. The chief Town stands on a Mountain, with a Haven at its Foot, where Ships arrive with Provisions, which the Island does not sufficiently produce, and where the Venetian Fleet used to Winter during the Siege of *Candia*. The sterility of the Soil, made it always a place of little resort, and therefore it was used by the Romans as a place of Banishment, under which Punishment *St. John* resided here and wrote his Revelation.

LERIA or *Lero*, and CLAROS, not far from it, lie both to the South of *Pathmos*; the former is the larger, and has two Havens; the latter has a very high Mountain, but neither of them afford any thing worth mentioning.

COOS or COS, now *Lango*, or *Isola-Lango* by the Italians, and *Stinco* or *Stanchio* by the Greeks and Turks, is of larger extent, being about 80 Miles in Compass, lies North and South over against the Coast of *Doris*, in the Lat. 36. It is a pleasant and fruitful Land, lying in a declivity from the higher Grounds in the East, which affords a beautiful Prospect, and produces rich Wines, the Turpentine-tree, and other useful Plants, with Woods of Cypress-trees, well preserv'd by the Turks. The chief Town of the same Name seated on the Eastern Coast, is large and fortified with a Castle, having a Haven secured by a good Mole, and well guarded from Pirates by Gallies. The Ships from *Egypt* to *Constantinople* commonly touch here: This was the Birth-place of *Hippocrates* the Physician, and *Apelles* the Painter, and was celebrated in Antiquity, for a rich Temple of *Esculapion*.

ASTYPALÆ.



*ASTYPALÆA*, now *Stampala*, lies on the South-west of *Cos*, more out to Sea; it is an Island of about 60 Miles in circuit, and has a Town of the same Name in the South-Coast, and two good Havens.

*CARPATHUS*, now *Scarpanto*, lies far out to Sea on the South of *Doris*, about the same magnitude with the former, but not at all considerable, being a Mountainous and Rocky Soil, and but poorly inhabited. The chief Town of the same Name, lies on a Haven in the West-Coast.

Divers small Islands lie dispers'd on the Coast, but are not considerable enough to deserve notice.

*RHODES*, an Island of great Fame in former Days, and still as considerable as the *Turkish* Tyranny permits any Place to be, lies on the Coast of *Caria* and *Lycia* from the 35th. to the 36th. Degree of Latitude 100 Miles in circuit. It is a most fruitful Soil, producing (at least formerly) the richest Wine and all sorts of delicious Fruits: And for the Serenity of its Climate, (being daily Sun-shine) said to be beloved by *Apollo*, to whose Honour a vast *Colossus* was erected, which was one of the Wonders of the World: It was the Statue of *Apollo* in Brass 70 Cubits high, which stood astride over the Haven, so high that the Ships sail'd between his Legs. It was 12 Years in making by *Chares* its Architect, and after 66 Years standing was overthrown by an Earthquake. *Rhodes* the chief Town, stands on the East side of the Island; it was formerly a Place of great note, and still not contemptible, being pleasantly seated on the side of a Hill, three Miles in circumference, and well Fortified with a treeble Wall and a good Castle, the Streets are wide, straight and well paved; the Houses of squared Stone, after the *Italian* manner, and the Bazars or Markets are well furnished. Its chief Haven is Commodious and Safe, and very strongly Fortified; on one side of it, stands an old Castle built by the Knights, and on the other side a square Tower built by the *Turks*; which altho' 50 Foot asunder, stand on the two Places where the two Feet of the *Colossus* stood. Besides this, there are two other Ports for Gallies, which are also well secured by Cannon. (*Thevenot*) In the middle Ages, this City and Island were possessed by the Religious Knights of St. *John of Jerusalem*, many of whom were notable Champions in the Holy-War: And very especially renowned for the brave Defence, they made when the City was besieged by the *Turks*, first in the Year 1480, when after three Months vigorous Attack, they were forced to retire; and during the second Siege in 1522. wherein *Solyman*, II. in Person, with a Fleet of 400 Ships, and 200000 Men, were so well resisted, that they were ready to depart; if a Traytor in the Town had not inform'd him of its Weakness, and encourag'd him to another Attack, wherein he succeeded, and the Island has ever since been subject to the *Turks*. The Knights who were denominated from this Island, removed to *Malta*, which was granted to them by the Emperor *Charles V.* and the Succession of them continues there to this Day.

*CYPRUS*, an Island exceedingly larger than any we have mentioned, lies extended from East to West

near 200 Miles along the Coast of  *Cilicia*, at the distance of about 10 Leagues. It was formerly a rich and flourishing Country, producing Wine, Oil, Corn, Sugar, Cotton, Honey, Wool, Metals, and many other useful Commodities; Govern'd by its own Kings, of whom there were no less than Nine when *Cyrus* first Conquer'd it. Afterwards it was Subjected by the *Ptolemy's* of *Egypt*, and again by the *Romans*, in whose Succession it was possessed by the *Constantinopolitan* Emperors. Our King *Richard I.* being provok'd by the ill treatment of the Inhabitants, at his arrival here in his way to the Holy-Land, set upon and Conquer'd the Island, and conferr'd the Royalty of it on *Guy de Lusignan*, Anno 1191. whose Posterity reigned Kings of it for 17 Generations. After these the *Venerians* were for some time its Masters. But Lastly, *Selymus II.* Conquer'd it, An. 1571. and ever since it has been possessed by the *Turks*.

The Island was by the ancient Geographers divided into four Parts, viz. *Paphia* to the West, *Amathusia*, to the South. *Lapytha* to the North. And *Salimena* on the East. Under the *Lusignan* Kings, it was divided into twelve Counties denominated from the twelve chief Towns, which were, *Nicosia*, *Famagusta*, *Paphos*, *Audima*, *Limissa*, *Masorum*, *Salines*, *Messaria*, *Crusocus*, *Pentalia*, *Carpassus*, and *Cerines*: Besides which there were no less than 800 Villages; 'tis still so considerable as to be the Government of a Beglerbeg, who has 7 Sangiacks under him. Its chief Towns at present are, *Paphos* or *Baffo*, seated near where the old *Paphia* stood, on the Western-Coast. *Amathus* now *Lymisso* on the Southern-Coast, the chief Port in the Island. *Nicosia* or *Leucosia*, the Metropolis seated in the middle of the Island, the Seat of the Kings anciently, and of the Beglerbeg now, a large and populous City; it was formerly 9 Miles in circumference, but at present but 3 Miles round, as we are told by *Tavernier*; the Walls are Terraced, and in a good posture of Defence: The City was adorn'd by the *Venetians*, with many fair Palaces, but the *Turks* pull them down as they decay; the noble ancient Cathedral of St. *Sophia*, is now a Mosque; the *Greeks* have four Churches here, the *Latines* two, and the *Armenians* one; it is the See of an Archbishop, who has 3 Suffragan Bishops, at *Paphos*, *Larneza*, and *Cerines*. *Famagusta* or *Hamacostos*, seated on the Eastern-Coast, on an excellent Harbour, is a Town of good Trade, and two Miles in circuit; it was notable for its good Defence against the *Turks*, and is still the Bulwark of the Island, having good Walls kept in repair, and a very strong Citadel for its Defence; the *Turks* have turn'd all the Churches to Mosques, and permit no *Christians* to inhabit the Town. (*Tavernier*) The old *Salamis*, out of whose Ruins *Famagusta* was built in the middle Ages, stood a little on the North-east, and its Ruins bear the Name of *Porto Constanzo*, for the Town was sometime called *Constantia*. Lastly, *Cerines*, a Bishop's See is a small City destitute of Walls, but has a Fortrefs by the Sea side, with a Garrison in it.



## CHAPTER III.

## Of SYRIA in General, Ancient and Modern, and of SYRIA and PHOENICIA in particular.

**SYRIA**, another large Part of the *Turkish* Empire in *Asia*, lies next to *Natalia* on the South-east, under which general Name are comprehended not only *Syria* properly so called, but also *Phœnicia* and *Palestine* or the *Holy-Land*. And thus understood, its Boundaries are, on the West the *Mediterranean-Sea*; on the East, the River *Euphrates*, which parts it from *Mesopotamia* or *Diasbeck*, and *Arabia-Deserta*; on the North, Mount *Amanus* and a Branch of Mount *Taurus*, which divides it from *Cilicia* and *Armenia-minor*; and on the South *Arabia Petrea*; in which extent it is reckoned 420 Miles from North to South, and 180 from East to West.

*Syria*, otherwise call'd *Sourie* and *Souristan*, and by the ancient *Hebrews* *Aram* or *Charam* is the Northern Part, denominat'd as it is said from the City *Tyre*, or otherwise written *Tsur*, and melted into *Sur*. The *Hebrew* Name was derived from *Aram*, the Son of *Sem*, who is supposed to have first Peopled it; the Air is Healthful and very Temperate, being seated in the Fifth Climate, between the 33d. and the 36th. Degree of Latitude; and the Soil deep, level, and fruitful, producing Corn, Grapes, Figs, Oranges, Lemons, Dates, Medicinal-Herbs, Silk, and other valuable Commodities.

*Syria* was a Kingdom govern'd by its own Princes in the time of *David* King of *Judea*, as we find in Holy Scripture in the Relation of his Wars; a Race of those Kings succeeded till A. M. 3210. when *Tig-lath Pileser* took *Damascus*, and slew *Rezin* their King; after which it became part of the great Monarchy of the *Assyrians*; and upon the *Persian* Acquisition of that Monarchy, became subject to *Cyrus* and his Successors, with the rest of *Darius's* Dominions Conquer'd by *Alexander*, and after his Death made a separate Kingdom by *Seleucus Nicator*, about A. M. 3633. - A. ante Chr. 317. whose Posterity wore the Regal Dignity 250 Years, after which it was Conquer'd by the *Romans* about A. M. 3865. under whom *Phœnicia* and *Syria* were thus divided, viz.

*Syria*, divided into, 1. *Cœlesyria* or *Syria-Cava*, because a hollow Valley between the Mountains. 2. *Antiochena* call'd also *Seleucia*, from the two Cities of that Name, seated towards the Sea Coast and the Borders of *Phœnicia*. And 3. *Comagena* on the North of *Cœlesyria* towards the River *Euphrates*. In the limits of *Cœlesyria* stood the famous City *Palmyra*, whose Ruins visited a few Years ago, and described by Dr. *Halifax*, Chaplain of the Factory of *Aleppo*, testify its ancient Grandeur; it was the Capital of a Country to which it gave Name. *Berea*, the Modern *Aleppo*, stands also within its Bounds. The *Antiochene* had its Name from the famous City *Antioch*, Metropolis of the *Roman* Dominions in these Parts. *Seleucia*, *Ladicea*, and *Alexandretta*, now *Scanderon*, were also seated in its limits. *Comagena*, the most Northern Part of *Syria* between *Cilicia* and *Euphrates*,

had *Somafeta* for its Capital, seated on the River, which together with *Germanina* on Mount *Amanus* and *Singa*, were its chief Cities.

*Phœnicia*, was divided into *Phœnicia propria vel Meritima*, and *Phœnicia Libani*; the former was the West Part on the Sea-Coast, where the famous Cities of *Tyre* and *Sidon* were seated; the latter more to the East, between the Mountains *Libanus* and *Anti-Libanus*, whose Metropolis was *Damascus*, and in its limits stood *Heliopolis*, now vulgarly call'd *Balbec*; whose magnificent Ruins were lately view'd and described by the very ingenious Mr. *Manderill*, Chaplain to the *English* Factory at *Aleppo*; to whose printed Relation we refer the Reader, for an ample Account of the present State of it and *Damascus*, and several other very judicious Notices of these Parts.

The Ancient State of *Palestine*, we shall speak to more particularly anon.

This Country is famous for its Mountains, whereof a Chain runs cross it on the North, viz. the *Amanus* on the Frontiers of *Cilicia*, and a Branch of *Taurus* which divides *Comagena* from *Armenia-minor*; and more to the South, *Libanus*, famous for its Cedar-Trees, Frankincense and Honey, a high Ridge of 150 Miles in length from the Sea-Coast Eastward, Craggy and in some Parts so high, as to be always cover'd with Snow. *Anti-Libanus*, bending to the South-east, is divided from the former by a small Valley only, and may justly enough be reckon'd part of the same. *Carmel* and the other single Mounts frequent here, we shall mention in their Places. Rivers, here are few, the *Orontes*, *Singas* or *Marsias*, *Eleutherius* and *Jordan*, are the chief, and those of no very long Course.

Upon the decline of the *Roman* and *Constantinopolitan* Empires, *Syria* became the Prey of the *Sarazens*; who under *Haumar* their third Caliph seized this Country, A. C. 636. Afterwards it was partly Conquer'd by *Cutlu Moses*, the Turk, and a Race of *Turkish* Kings possess'd the Land, and kept their Regal Seat at *Damascus*, till Conquer'd by the *Tartars*, who were oured by the *Mameluks*, which last, altho' expell'd by *Tamurlan*, recovered and held it till 1516. when *Selimus* the Turk by the Conquest of *Camsen Gaurus*, gain'd *Damascus* and all the Country, which has been ever since subject to the *Ottoman-Port*.

In its present State, *Syria* is but sorrily cultivated, altho' its natural Fertility, produce excellent Fruits, among which Figs in perfection. The Cotton-Tree is also plenty here, and affords a great Profit to the Inhabitants. Their Sheep are remarkable for their monstrous Tails, which are both broad and long, so as to drag on the Ground, and weigh near 30 Pound. And the Silk-worm gives the Merchant a great Profit. These, besides Corn of all sorts, Herbs and various Plants; among which, that which bears the Galls used in Dying, the *Alces*, *Opium*, &c. are the natural



nal Products of this Country. But the Turkish Tyranny hinders its being sufficiently Peopled; and therefore many Places where anciently famous Cities stood, are now but ruinous Desarts.

In its Government, Syria is divided into Two

Beglerbegates, viz. of Aleppo and Tripoli; and Palestine another, viz. the Beglerbegate of Damascus. That of Aleppo being subdivided into Nine Sangiacks, that of Tripoli into Four, and that of Damascus into Ten.

## A TABLE of the Division of SYRIA, and the most Remarkable Places.

Syria Antiqua, divided into Three Parts,

viz.	Chief Cities
Cœlosyria.	{ Palmyra, Berea.
Antiochene. or Seleucis	{ Antioch, Seleucia, Laodicea, Alexandretta.
Comagena.	{ Samosata, Germanina, Singa.

The Chief Cities of Syria, described in the following Pages.

Scempfat, or Samosata,  
Germanica,  
Aleppo, or Berea,  
Scanderoon, or Alexandretta,  
Antachia, or Antioch.  
Larichea, or Laodicea,  
Peria, or Selucia,  
Damant, or Apamea,  
Hamse, or Emesa,  
Fayd, Palmyra, or Tadmor.

Phœnicia Antiqua, divided into;

Phœnicia Marit. { Tyre,  
q. c. Gallilea { Sidon,  
Gent. { Ptolemais.

Phœnic. Libani. { Damascus  
ceu Syro-Phœnic. { Heliopolis.

The Chief Cities of modern Phœnicia.

Tripolis,  
Gibeletto,  
Baruti, or Berytus,  
Sayd, or Sidon,  
Sur, or Tyre,  
Acre, Acon, or Ptolemais,  
Damascus,  
Balbec, or Heliopolis.

Palestina Antiq. ut sub Roman.

Cis Jordan.	Ultra Jordan.
Gallilee. { Panaas, Capernaum, Julias, Bethsaida, Tiberias, Taritheas, Cana, Nazareth.	Trachonitus or Itaria. { Auran, Gaulon, Gamala, Pella, Julias.
Samaria. { Samaria, Neapolis. Hierosolyma, Joppa, Ascalon,	Perea. { Macherus, Philadelphia. Livias, Callirrhæ.
Judæa. { Azotus, Lidda, Fericbo, Bethelém.	Idumæa. { Caparosa, Gamararis, Elasa.

The Chief Cities and Places in Modern Judæa.

Tboron,  
Belfort,  
Montfort,  
Montroyal,  
Nazra or Nazareth,  
Saffet or Tiberias,  
Elbesan or Bethsan,  
Naplosa or Sichem,  
Jaffa or Joppa,  
JERUSALEM,  
Bethelém,  
Elkabil or Hebron,  
Acaron, Azotus, Ascalon,  
Gazara or Gaza.

TO proceed in our Travelling Method, we will begin with Comagena, which is the most Northern Part of Syria, and adjoyns to Cilicia, whence we last came; whose chief Towns are, Somasata, now Scempfat, seated in the very North limits near the Euphrates, once the Capital of this Country, but now in poor State, the Birth-place of Lucian, and

Paulus the Heretick. Germanica, on the Western limits a Roman Colony, nam'd in Honour of Germanicus by Augustus, the Birth-place of Nestorius the Heretick.

Aleppo, the Capital of all this part of Syria, and the Seat of the Beglerbeg, is a most flourishing large and populous City, reckon'd the best of all  
Turky,



*Turky*, next to *Constantinople* and *Grand-Cairo*. It is seated upon four small Hills, in the midst of a pleasant Plain, on the Banks of the River *Sing*, in the Latitude of 36. D. Long. 58. 45. the first Meridian being placed in *Ferro Infl.* about 80 Miles (25 or 30 Leagues, says *Thevenot*.) West from the River *Euphrates*, and 60 (22 Leagues, *Thevenot*) East from the Coasts of the *Syrian-Sea*, and about 70 Miles South from Mount *Taurus*, and the limits of *Armenia-minor*. By reason of its convenient Situation, it was long since made the Staple of Trade; for by the Gulph of *Ormuz*, and the *Euphrates*. The *Persians*, *Indians*, *Arabians*, *Armenians*, &c. brought hither all the rich Jewels, Silks, Drugs, and other Commodities of *India*, *Persia*, *Armenia*, *Assyria*, &c. which before the Discovery of Navigation to the *East-Indies*, render'd this Trade vastly richer than it is now: however it is still the Market for the richest Commodities of *Europe*, brought hither by the *English*, *Dutch*, *French*, *Venetians*, *Genoese's*, &c. by the *Mediterranean-Sea* and the Port of *Scanderoon*, and hence vended to *Persia*, and divers Parts of *Turkey*; also the best Goods of those Countries, such as Raw-Silk, Cotton, Grogram-Yarn, Galls, divers sorts of Drugs, &c. sent thence to *Europe*. The *English* Merchants have a Consul here as at *Smyrna* and are always treated civilly, the *English* Cloth being a Commodity of great Esteem among the *Turks*. The *French*, *Dutch*, and other Nations have also their Consuls, who have free access to the Government, to make Complaints of any Injuries or Grievances. The Description of the City according to *Tavernier* is thus. *Aleppo* is built upon four Hills, upon the highest whereof stands the Castle, which is large but not strong; the City is surrounded with Walls of Free-stone, which are three Miles in Circuit, in the Walls are ten Gates; and beyond the Walls are large Suburbs which are very Populous. A Rivulet runs by the City, which waters the Gardens, wherein grow abundance of Fruit, Pistaches, Figs, Pomgranates, &c. besides which the City is supplied with Water from two Fountains at a distance. The Buildings either Publick or Private appear not handsome, but are well adorn'd within side with Marble of divers Colours, fretwork Cielings, and golden Inscriptions. The Streets are Pav'd except the Bazars, where the Merchants and Mechanics have their Shops; and are narrow, with a Horse Road in the middle, and Foot Causeys on each side. In the City are 26 Mosques, whereof some are very Magnificent; and three Colleges with Learned Men, to whom Salaries are allow'd to teach Grammar, Philosophy, &c. but there are few Students. The chief Manufactures of this Town is Weaving of Silk and Chamlet. The Suburbs are very well Peopled and Inhabited chiefly by *Christians*, of whom there are *Greeks* about 15 or 16000 Souls who have an Archbishop, *Armenians* about 12000 with a Bishop, *Maronites* 1200 depending on the Pope; and the *Roman-Catholicks* have three Churches, serv'd by *Capuchins*, *Carmelites* and *Jesuites*. And in the whole 'tis commonly reckon'd, that in City and Suburbs, there are not less than 250000. A vast Trade is carried on here in all *European* Commodities, and in Silks, Chamlets, Galls, Rhubarb, Galbanum, Opoponax, Stryak, Scammony, and other Drugs, &c. The City is governed by a *Beſta*, who has a Guard of 300 Men, there is also an *Aga* with 400 Men, who Commands without as well as within the City, a Governour with 100 Musketeers, who

have the Care of the Cannon in the Castle, which are 38 pieces, an *Aga* or Captain of the City commanding 300 Harquebussiers, and a *Soubasha* under him. For the Civil Administration, here are a *Cadi* or Judge, a *Testerdar* or Treasurer, a *Mufti*, and a *Cheik* or Doctor of the Law; here is also a College or Monastery of *Dervises*. To supply what he has omitted, take the following Account from *Thevenot*; *Aleppo* is a large City of Oval Figure surrounded with Walls, which are a large Hours Walk in circuit; they are built on a Rock, but not very strong, and are in some parts encumber'd with Buildings. The Castle in the middle of the City, is also of Oval Form. The Buildings are better than usual in *Turkey*, the Publick have generally Dome-Roofs, and the private Houses are of white Stone (whereof they have large Quarries near the Town) with flat Terras-Roofs, and are beautiful within side, having large Halls with Fountains in the midst, and Rooms very well adorned. Among many fair Mosques the great one is especially remarkable for its fine Structure, and large Court surrounding it, enclosed by an arched Gallery; this was formerly the Church of *St. John Damascene*, whose Pulpit still remains. Here are many fair Khans or large Inns for Strangers; in the chief whereof the Consuls of *England* and *France* reside, which is a very good large Building, with a Court before it shut up with two great Iron Gates. Near the City grow excellent Grapes, whereof the *Franks* and others make a rich Wine, bringing the Grapes home and Press them in their own Houses. The Air is thin and wholesome, but exceeding hot in the Summer Months, during which time there is not only no Rain, but even no Dew in the Night, so that they sleep on the Terrasses in the open Air; Provisions are very plenty, and the Place pleasant to dwell in: Thus far *Thevenot*. Concerning the natural Products, take a word or two from *Dr. Rauwolf*: altho' *Aleppo* be surrounded with rocky Hills and chalky Valleys, there grows plenty of Wheat and Barley, the Harvest beginning in *April* or *May*, but there is few Oats and less Grass, the Soil being too dry and sandy; the Valleys are full of Olive-Trees, and Capers grow very common; in the Gardens and Orchards, grow much Fruit of delicate kinds, as Almonds, Pistaches, Figs, Oranges, Lemons, Citrons, Pomgranates, &c. but Apples, Pears, Cherries, Goosberries, and other Fruits of our Gardens are not common there. In the Kitchen-Garden, they have various Sallading of our sorts, Colly-flowers, Hartichokes, Turnips, Radish, Garlick, Onion, Muskmelons, Water-Melons, Kidney-Beans and other Pulses, with many other edible Herbs and Fruits.

*Scanderoon*, Antiq. *Alexandretta*, is a Port-Town seated on the Sea-Coast, at the bottom of the Gulf *Leiazza* or *Sinus Issicus*, near the foot of Mount *Amanus*, and at the mouth of the River *Solidrat* about 60 Miles West from *Aleppo*; it was founded by *Alexander* the Great, in Memory of his Victory at *Issus* mentioned in our Account of *Cilicia*, but it is seated in a Marshy-Soil, and most unwholesome Air; which has render'd it of a good Traded Town, a poor sorry Village with a Stone-House, where the Officer resides that receives Custom for the Goods landed here from *Europe* for *Aleppo*, and a few ordinary Houses where some Factors reside, to give advice to the Merchants of *Aleppo* of the arrival of Ships, and to land the Goods. The Method of Advice is singular, namely by Pidgeons; who being bred at *Aleppo* and



and brought hither, fly back without stopping, and so a Letter being tied to their Leg, is very safely conveyed. In former times, the *European Ships* used to Import at *Tripoli*, the Goods for *Aleppo*, but the length of the Journey, subjecting the Caravans to Robberies from the *Arabs*; all the Shipping now come to *Scandercon*.

Hence travelling Southward, we enter the *SYRIA Propria*, where stands

*Antioch* surnamed the Great, by the ancient *Greeks* named *Epidaphne*, from the Grove and Oracle of *Apollo*, called *Daphne* adjoining to it, 'tis still call'd *Antachia* by the *Turks*; and now but a poor Town, seated on the River *Haf olim Orontes*. In its ancient State, 'twas the Seat of the Kings of *Syria*, and a large Populous and well Fortified City, the Place where the Disciples were first named Christians, afterwards the Seat of a Patriarch of great Reputation: Honoured sometimes with the presence of the *Roman Emperors*, and the constant Seat of the *Præfettus Prætorio Orientis*. Taken by the *Turks*, as also by the *Mamelukes*, recovered by the *Christians*, An. 1098. and governed by *Bohemund* Prince of *Torrentum* and his Successors, till An. 1120. afterwards made part of the Kingdom of *Jerusalem*. But finally taken by the *Turks* in 1188, who have ever since possessed it, and permitted its Glory to pass away, so as at this time to shew only the Ruins of its ancient Grandeur. The other chief Towns of this part of *Syria*, are

*Selucia*, now call'd *Peria*, founded by *Selucius Nicator*, and formerly a considerable City, and stands more to the South of *Aleppo*. *Ladicea* or *Latichea*, of the same founder, stands on a flat fruitful Ground near the Sea-Coast, with a Capacious Haven; 'It was anciently a place of great Magnificence, but in the general Calamities which have befallen this Country, it was reduced to a very low Condition, and so remain'd for a long time; but of late Years it has been rebuilt, and become one of the most flourishing Places on the Coast, being cherished and put in a way of Trade by *Coplen* Aga, a Man of great Wealth and Authority in these Parts, and much addicted to Merchandize, Mr. Manderil, p. 11. At no great distance from *Latichea*, on the Sea-Coast also stands *Jebike*, Antiq. *Gabala*, a City formerly of Note, as the Remains of a Magnificent Theatre, and other costly Structures mentioned by Mr. Manderil testify, but at present in mean Estate. And at about four Hours more on the same Coast, lies the Remains of *Baneas* or *Balnea*, whose uninhabited Ruins shew it to have been a well built City. *Apamea*, founded also by *Selucus* and named in Honour of his Wife, now called *Damant* seated within land on the River *Orontes*, in a fruitful and pleasant Country. *Emesa*, now *Hemse*, seated on the same River more to the South; it is a pretty Town (says *Thevenot*) with Walls of Stone, and 26 Towers on them, six Gates and five Churches: The Seat of a *Sangiac*.

Farther on to the East towards the Desert, stand the Ruins of the famous *Palmyra* or *Tadmor*, now *Fayd* or *Tamos*: A City of great Reputation in ancient times, mentioned in Holy Writ, 1 Kings. 9. 17. to have been built by King *David*. The City and adjacent Territory constituted a Kingdom, which valiantly resisted the *Romans*, especially under the Warlike Queen *Zenobia*, a Lady of most Noble Accomplishments, and rare Knowledge; for besides Perfections in the Arts of Government and War, she was Mistress of the Liberal Arts, and of the

the *Greek*, *Egyptian*, and *Latin* Tongues: But the Glory of this incomparable Lady, serv'd but to increase the Triumphs of the Emperor *Aurelian*, by whom she was Conquer'd and led Captive to *Rome*, and by the same Emperor's Commands, the City was finally destroyed. Its Ruins were visited in the Year 1695. by the Chaplain (Dr. *Hallifax*) and some Gentlemen of the Factory of *Aleppo*, and a Description of their Magnificence sent in a Letter to Dr. *Barnard*, and afterwards printed in the *Philos. Transactions*, (Dec. 1695.) which shew it to have been a Place of great Splendor and Magnificence; but at present inhabited by 30 or 40 Families only, in little sorry Huts. The lofty Rows of large Columns still standing, the many broken Architraves and Cornishes, and remains of stately Walls with the Inscriptions, are all described in that Letter, but too long to be transcribed here.

On the South of *Syria Propria* lies the ancient *PHOENICIA*, at present part of the Beglerbegate of *Tripoli*, to which *Syria propria* also belongs; it is a narrow Maritime Tract of Land, famous in former times for the Activity and Ingenuity of its Inhabitants, to whom are attributed the invention of Letters, the Arts of Navigation, Astronomy, and making Glass. In Navigation especially they were very great Proficients, and by the great Trade they carried on, became exceeding Wealthy and Famous, and established Colonies in many remote Parts. Places of chiefest Note here are, *Tripoli*, call'd *Tripoli Syria* for distinction, seated about two Miles from the Sea-Coast, in the Lat. 34. D. with a Haven which comes up to within half a mile of the Town on the West side of it, and hath Ware-houses on each side for the Merchants Goods; encompassed with a Wall and fortified with Seven Towers. The City is in a flourishing State as ever, being large and populous, adorned with Gardens, planted with Mulberry-Trees, for breeding Silk-Worms, whence the Inhabitants draw a great Profit; the Streets are mostly narrow, and the Houses low: On the South side stands a strong Castle, Garrison'd by 200 *Fanizaries*; wherein resides the Beglerbeg: On all which account 'tis reckoned the Metropolis of *Phœnicia*; the City stands near the foot of Mount *Libanus*, whence a pleasant Stream falling runs thro' the Town, and affords an excellent watering to their Gardens. Round about the Town lies a rich and delightful Plain, which afforded to the *Christian* Lords of it a Revenue of 200000 Crowns: This City was famous in the time of the Holy-War, being one of the four Capital Cities the *Christians* possessed in these Parts. *Tripoli* is seated about half an Hour from the Sea; the major part of the City lies between two Hills, one on the East, on which stands the Castle commanding the Town, another on the West between the City and the Sea; this last is said to have been at first rais'd, and to be still increas'd by the daily accession of Sand blown to it from the Shore. The Port is an open Sea rather than an enclosed Harbour, however 'tis in part defended by two small Islands, about two Leagues from the Shoar. [M. Manderil.] For security against Pirates there are six square Castles or Towers, built upon the Shoar at convenient distances. *G'belletto*, seated on the Sea-Coast about 20 Miles South from *Tripolis*. *Baruti* or *Berut* about the same distance more Southward, seated also on the Sea, is the ancient *Berytus*, which was re-edified by the *Romans*, honoured with many Favours and Privileges by *Augustus*,  
D adorned



adorned by *Herod* and *Agrippa*; and in the *Christian* times an *Episcopal See*; and it is still a Place of Trade, and a Stage of the Caravans to *Grand Cairo*, seated as *Mr. Manderil* tells us, on the Sea side in a Soil fertile and delightful, raised only so high above the Salt-Water, as to be secure from its overflowings, and the other noxious and unwholesome effects of that Element. It has the Benefit of good fresh Springs, flowing down to it from the adjacent Hills, and dispersed all over the City, in convenient and not unhandsome Fountains: But besides the advantages in Situation, it has at present nothing to boast of. The Palace and Gardens of the former *Emir* of this Country, have been surprizing Curiosities, considering its magnificence and beauty in the midst of a Country, where no such sort of Structures are found, nor since his expulsion by the *Turks*, is even this preserved, being now all decayed, and the fine Walks of Orange-Trees made no better use of than a common Meadow. *Sidon* or *Sayd*, the ancientest City of *Phœnicia*, seated in a fertile and delightful Soil, between the Sea on one side and Mount *Libanus*, on the other in the Latitude of 33 D. formerly a Town of vast Trade, whose Inhabitants were curious Masters in all manual Arts, and said to be the Inventors of Glass; *Solemn* had his best Workmen hence to build the Temple, as had also *Zerobabel* at its Re-structure. The *Saracens* took it in 636. the *Christians* gained it in 1103. and it was afterwards Rebuilt and strongly Fortified; at present 'tis in a decayed State; the Haven tho' large is unsafe, and the Walls and Castle old and impair'd; however here is a *Caneer* Inn for Merchants, in good State, together with a fair Mosque and Bagnio. This City gives Title to an *Emir* or Prince, and by the Pope's Grant to an Archbishop. *Tyre* call'd *Sur* by the *Turks*, stands about 20 Miles more to the South in a rocky Island, at about 70 Paces from the main Land, famous in its ancient State for Wealth and Trade, and the Purple-dye; and then a City of beautiful Structure and mighty strength: Destroy'd however first by *Nebuchadnezzar*, afterwards by *Alexander* the Great, yet again recover'd it self, and was a powerful Ally to the *Romans*; taken by the *Saracens* in 636. by the *Christians* in 1124. and by them made the Metropolitan See of *Phœnicia*, finally taken by the *Turks* in 1289. and ever since subject to them; but reduc'd to a small and ruinous Town, and little frequented altho' its Haven still be capacious and fair. ' *Mr. Manderil's* Account of the modern State of *Tyre* runs thus, ' This City standing in the Sea upon a *Peninsula*, ' promises at a distance something very Magnificent: ' But when you come to it, you find no similitude of ' that Glory, for which it was so renowned in ancient times. On the North side it has an old *Turkish* ungarrison'd Castle, besides which, you see ' nothing here but a meer *Babel* of broken Walls, ' Pillars, Vaults, &c. there being not so much as ' one entire House left. Its present Inhabitants are ' only a few poor Wretches harbouring themselves ' in Vaults, and subsisting chiefly upon Fishing. In ' the midst of the Ruins stands the east end of a ' great Church, probably the ancient Cathedral. ' The Island of *Tyre* (which was joined to the Continent by *Alexander*) in its natural State seems to ' have been of circular Figure, containing no more ' than forty Acres of Ground, round which are the remains of an ancient Wall. Travelling still Southward on the Sea-Coast, we arrive at

*Acce* or *Acem*, named *Ptolemais* from *Ptolemy* I. King of *Egypt* who re-edified it, and so known in *Latin* Writers, but in vulgar speech retaining its old Name, called by the *French* *St. Jean d'Acre*, because of the Knights of *St. John* of *Jerusalem* who resided here, and defended the City against the *Saracens*. Often taken and retaken by the *Christians* and *Turks* in the Holy-War, before our valiant King *Richard I.* regain'd *Anno* 1191. and gave it to the Knights of *St. John* abovenam'd, who kept it an hundred Years, when by the force of an Army of 15000 *Turks* it was finally taken, and its strong Fortifications razed to the Ground. King *Edward I.* then Prince, in his Expedition to the Holy-Land, received a wound at this City, with a poyson'd Dagger, which his Wife cured by Sucking out the Poyson: In its flourishing State, it was a large and very strong built City, of Triangular form, two sides whereof were washed by the Sea, and the third open'd to a Champaign, which was very strongly Fortified: In the midst of the Town, stood a very high Tower, whereon a light was always kept for a guide to Mariners; but as *Mr. Manderil* tells us, when the *Turks* after a long Siege had taken it, they ruin'd it in so barbarous a manner, as if they resolv'd to take full revenge of the Blood it had cost them, and from which it has never been able to redeem it self, being at this time in so low estate, that except a large Kane or Inn, in which the *French* Factors reside, a Mosque and a few poor Cottages; you see nothing here but vast Ruins. In Situation, on the North and East it is compassed with a spacious fertile Plain, on the West it is washed by the *Mediterranean-Sea*, and on the South by a large Bay extending as far as Mount *Carmel*. In the same Latitude with *Sidon*, about 40 Miles to the East, on the North side of Mount *Libanus*, stands the City *Damascus*, upon a River anciently named *Chrysorrheas* now *Barrady*, surrounded with a most fruitful Countrey where the Vines yield the richest Wine, and bear fruit all the Year long, which with the other excellent Fruits, Flowers, Corn, &c. render the Place so exceeding delightful, that *Mahomet* would not venture himself into it, least the Pleasures should too much affect him: This was the Seat of the Race of the *Syrian* Kings 300 Years, before *Tiglath Pileser* King of *Assyria* slew *Rezin* the last King, and added *Damascus* to his Dominion; with that Monarchy, it passed to the *Persian* and *Græcian*, and so downwards with the rest of *Syria*, as already mentioned; till the *Saracens* took it and made it their Regal Seat, before *Bagdad* was built; under whom it had a strong Castle for its Defence, and was a most flourishing and rich Place. It was a separate Kingdom under the *Turkish* Princes, of the *Seljuccian* Family for near 200 Years; which was terminated in 1262. by the Conquest of the City, and Death of the last Prince, by the Hands of *Hæzlon* the *Tartar*. Conquer'd afterwards by the *Mamelukes*, and again by *Tamerlain*, recover'd by the *Mamelukes*; and finally *A. D.* 1516. surrendered to the *Turks*, who have ever since possessed it. The City was much destroyed by *Tamerlain*, but repaired by the *Mamelukes* and *Turks*, and in its present State is a Town of pretty large extent, and reasonably Populous, being the Seat of the *Beglerbeg*, whose Government extends all over *Judea*: The Houses as *Mr. Manderil* tells us, are but ordinary, the Walls being Mud, and the Structure low, but well furnished with Gardens, which makes the place still Pleasant; the view especially at a distance



off the Mountains is very delightful ; the River falling from the neighbouring Mountains, affords a large and quick Stream, supplying not only their Houses, but Gardens too with Water in plenty : The Art of making the Linnens and Silks, which we call Damasks came from hence ; and the Place is still much resorted to for its wrought and raw Silks, Wine, Pruans, Dates, Oyl, Cotton, Drugs, and other valuable Commodities, not only of the Native Product, but also brought hither from *Persia* and other Parts ; for this City is a Stage of the Caravans from *Persia*, *Aleppo*, and *Constantinople* to *Mecca*. Memorable to us *Christians* for the Conversion of *St. Paul*, and still the See of the Greek Patriarch, and the Habitation of many *Christians*, of the various Sects found in these Countries, each whereof have their separate Churches, and the *Roman-Catholicks* two or three Colleges. ' The City ' (says *Mr. Manderil*) is of a long straight figure, its ends pointing near North-east and South-west. It is very slender in the middle but swells bigger at each end, especially at that to the North-east ; in its length as far as I could guess by my Eye, it may extend near two Miles. It is thick set with Mosques and Steeples the usual Ornaments of the *Turkish* Cities, and is encompassed with Gardens extending no less, according to common estimation than 30 Miles round, which makes it look like a noble City in a vast Wood. The Gardens are thick set with Fruit Trees of all kinds, kept fresh and verdant by the

' Waters of *Barrady*. You discover in them many ' Turrets, and Steeples, and Summer-houses, frequently peeping out from amidst the green Boughs, which may be conceived to add no small beauty to the Prospect.

At some distance from *Damascus* to the South-east stands *Balbec*, Antiq. *Heliopolis*, i. e. City of the Sun, a Town at present of about a Mile and halfs Circumference, and of no great account : But the stately Remains of a Building on the South side, which was a Temple dedicated to the Sun, is a Curiosity that attracts a Travellers Eye, and accordingly was visited by *Mr. Manderil*, in his return from *Jerusalem* to *Aleppo* : to whose account of the Magnificence of this Building, we must refer our Reader, as being too large to be particulariz'd here. And can only transcribe from him this general Character, ' That it ' strikes the Mind with an Air of greatness beyond ' any thing extant, and is an eminent Proof of the ' Magnificence of the ancient *Arrichesture*.

Thus have we passed thro' *Syria* and *Phœnicia*, and given our Reader as ample an Account of the Cities and Places of note, as the intended brevity of this Work permits, or indeed as can be expected in a general Geography. We shall now proceed into *Palestine*, which being the place of Action of almost all the History of the Old Testament, we shall be obliged to be more particular in its Description. And besides an account of its present State shew the Situations of the Tribes of *Israel*, and the Cities and Places where the Acts of the Old Testament were perform'd.







## C H A P. IV.

*The Modern State of J U D Æ A.*

*Palestine, Judea* or the *Holy-Land*, under all which Names 'tis known; *Palestine* from the Nation of *Philistines*, who possessed a great part of it, called also in Scripture the Land of *Canaan* from the *Canaanites*, who possessed another great part; *Judea* from the Tribe of *Judah*; and the *Holy-Land* by us *Christians*, because the place of Birth and Preaching of our Blessed Saviour: Is seated on the South of *Syria* and *Phœnicia*, between the most Eastern part of the *Mediterranean-Sea*, and the Desarts of *Arabia*. Extend about 200 Miles from North to South, and hardly 80 from East to West. The Soil and Climate were incomparably fruitful and pleasant, as we are abundantly informed in Holy-Writ, but at present 'tis so ill Cultivated, that except a few Figs, Pomegranates, Palm-trees, Oranges, and some Vines which grow in the Valleys; there remains none of that ancient Plenty. The Rivers are but small Streams, and deserve mention only, because so often spoke of in Holy-Writ; and therefore will be more properly referred to the account of ancient *Judea*, which we shall do in a Chapter by it self. Of Mountains it is very abundant, *Libanus* and *Anti-libanus* are its Boundaries on the North, as *Hermon* is on the East, these are continued Chains; besides which, many single Hills rise in the Midland, of which I must here mention

Mount *Carmel*, because seated just in our way on the South bounds of *Phœnicia*, and by *Ptolemy* placed to that Country; it is of steep ascent and indifferent height, fruitful in Olives, Vines, and Herbs; and remarkable on account of the retreat of *Elias* the Prophet to it from the fury of *Jezabel*; and of later times, for the Order of *Carmelite* Fryars begun here by some Hermits, in Memory of the Prophet (Anno 1121.) and thence dispers'd into all parts of *Christendom*.

This Country is now governed by a *Beglerbeg* under the Grand Seignior, whose Seat as we have said is at *Damascus*, and under him by Ten *Sangiacks*, which is all the Division we can assign in its present State. The chief Places now left are, *Thoron*, a strong Town built by the *Christians* on the Hills near *Tyre*, to secure the City against the *Turks*. *Belfort*, another place of strength, on a Hill near the River *Eleutherus* now *Naar*. *Montfort* and *Mont-Royal* of the same kind, all mentioned in the History of the Holy-War, but now not considerable. *Nazareth* or *Nazra*, a ruinous Town tho' formerly a good City, seated on a Hill about 30 Miles South from *Acon*, the Capital of a Territory containing 25 Villages; and famous for the Residence of the blessed Virgin, whose House that stood here (according to the *Roman* Legends) was removed by Angels, and carried from Place to Place by four several removals, till at last fix'd at where it now stands, near *Ancona* in *Naples*. Divers Ruins on the side of the Hill, shew the limits of the old City. *Tiberias*, on the Banks of the *Galilean* Sea, once a famous City, built and named thus by *Herod*, in Honour of the Emperor *Tiberius*, now in ruinous State and called *Saffer*. *Bethsan* now *Elhesan*, at present a Castle only

seated on the West Bank of the River *Jordan* a little below the Sea of *Galilee*. *Naplosa* a Town risen out of the Ruins of *Samaria*, or rather in the Place of *Sichem*, is seated in a Valley between two Hills *Gerizim* and *Ebal*, in the Mid-land between the Sea and the River *Jordan*; it is the Seat of a *Sangiack*, and the Capital of a Territory of 100 Villages. 'It is (says *Manderil*) in 'poor condition in comparison of what it is represented to have been anciently; consisting of two 'Streets only, lying parallel under Mount *Gerizim*; 'but is full of People, and the Seat of a *Bassa*. 'Just without the City stands a small Mosque said, 'to have been built over the Sepulchre purchased by 'Jacob, in which *Joseph's* Bones lie interr'd: And 'at an Hour's distance they shew *Jacob's* Well, 'where our Saviour had the Conference with the 'Woman of *Samaria*, over which *St. Helena* built 'a Church, but is now destroyed. *Sebaste*, as the ancient *Samaria* was afterwards named, is now in Ruins. *Joppa* or *Jaffa*, seated on the Sea-Coast, and reckoned the Haven to *Jerusalem*, stands 40 miles South-west from *Samaria*, and 30 North-west from *Jerusalem*; the Haven is defended on the South and West by Rocks, but open on the North, and at present much choak'd up with Sands; some small Traffick is still carried on here, and some Inns maintained for reception of Travellers coming from *Europe* to *Jerusalem*.

**JERUSALEM**, Lat. *Hierosolyma*, Turc. *Cudsembarich* and *Coudschrerif*, the ancient Capital of this Land, and formerly one of the most sumptuous and populous Cities of the World, is at present a poor thinly inhabited Town of about three Miles Circumference, seated on a rocky Mountain, with very steep ascents on all sides except the North, and surrounded with deep Valleys, which are again encompassed with Hills; the Soil stony, but affording nevertheless Corn and Olives where cultivated, but at distance from the Town, there grows little else but Grass and other spontaneous Herbs which run up to Seed uncur. *Jerusalem* stands in the 32 D. Lat. and 78 D. Longit. about 30 Miles East from the Sea-Coast, about 100 South from *Protonais* or *Acon*, 25 West from the River *Jordan*, and 60 North from the Mountains of *Seir*, which part *Judea* from *Arabia*. The various Calamities of this City before the Birth of our Saviour, we shall not mention here, as being fitter to be told with the ancient State hereafter: But its Fate since, is in short thus, According to our Lord's Prediction, it was destroyed by the *Romans*, under the Conduct of *Titus Vespasian*, A. C. 71. at which time 1100000 *Jews* died, by Famine, Sword, and civil discord. Destroy'd a second time, and totally razed to the Ground by *Elius Adrianus*, A. 134. and in its place a new City built, which he call'd *Elia Capitolia*; and in opposition to the *Jews*, the *Christians* were permitted to inhabit it, who possessed it 500 Years; in midst of which time, it was re-edified and adorned with many stately Structures by *St. Helena*, Mother of the Emperor *Constantine* the Great, and Daughter of a *Britain*, whose Piety leading her hither to view the Theatre of that great Transaction, the Redemption



Redemption of Mankind, she caused the Filth and Rubbish which had been thrown upon the Place of our Lord's Passion and Burial, to be removed; and as the Story goes, found the Cross on which he suffered, together with the two others of the two Thieves, the right one of which was distinguished by a miraculous Cure of a sick Woman, which the other two being laid on her, affected not. Having removed all the Rubbish from Mount Calvary, and other sacred Places, she built a noble and magnificent Church including them all, which Church is still standing and in good Repair, the Walls of Stone, the Roof of Cedar; the East end including Mount Calvary, and the West the Sepulchre; the West part is circular and cover'd with a stately Cupola, standing upon 16 Massy Columns, (which were crusted with Marble,) whose centre is open at top directly over the Sepulchre; the East end is also crown'd with a Cupola over the great Altar, and the Nave of the Church constitutes the Choir; in the side Isles are shewn the place where *Joseph of Arimathea* anointed our Lord's Body, the place where the Virgin Mary stood at the time of the Crucifixion, the Tombs of *Geoffrey* and *Baldwin*, the two first *Christian* Kings of *Jerusalem*, these on the South side; on the North, the Place where Christ appeared to *Mary Magdalen*, the Pillar he was fixt to when Scourged, and at the North-east corner, the Prison he was kept in; on the South-east side of the Choir, they shew the Place where he was crown'd with Thorns and derided, and from thence is the ascent by 22 steps to Mount Calvary, where in a small Chapel, they shew the Place where he was nail'd to the Cross, and finally where the Cross it self was erected: Here is a sumptuous Altar, whereon stand three Crosses, and before it 46 Lamps are kept continually burning, adjoining to it is another small Chapel, both which Front and open to the Church: The Sepulchre in the West part, is also a sort of a Chapel, into which form the Rock is hewn and adorn'd with a Lanthorn at top supported by Pillars of Porphyry. The Cloister round the Sepulchre is divided into many Chapels, appropriated to the several Sects of *Christians* that reside here, as *Jacobites*, *Armenians*, *Maronites*, *Coptites*, *Abyssines*, *Georgians*; and on the North-west of it, the Apartments of the *Latin*s. These constantly reside here, for the *Turk* keeps the Keys of the Church, and they have not the Liberty of coming out, but receive their Provisions and Necessaries at a Wicket. At *Easter* the Pilgrims paying a Fee are admitted, and after the Ceremony over, let out again, of these there are constantly great numbers, who go in the Evening before *Good-Friday*, and return the Morrow after *Easter-Day*: In which time they view all the Sacred Places, and assist at the ceremonious Rites, wherein the several parts of our Lord's Passion, are acted with more Mimeckry than agree with so Sacred a matter. 'Tis this Church that is the support of the Town, the whole Trade of it consisting in accommodating the Pilgrims with conveniences; and the Fee they pay to the Government for Liberty to go into it, is a very considerable Revenue, for which reason a *Sangiack* resides here with his Officers and Soldiers, who besides the usual dues, frequently extorts Money of the *Franciscans*, whose Convent is the general Receptacle of Pilgrims, for which they are largely allowed by the Pope and other Princes, and besides receive Presents from the Pilgrims at their Departure. *St. Helena* built divers Churches

and Chapels in the City and near it, over the Ground where the sacred Acts were perform'd; as where the last Supper was eaten (which being destroyed has now a Mosque in its Place); where the Palace of *Caiphas* stood, because our Saviour was there buffeted, (the old one destroyed, a less stands now in its Place): at the Sepulchre of the Blessed Virgin: at *Bethlem*, &c. There is to be seen in the South-east part of the City upon Mount *Moria*, a building commonly call'd *Solomon's Temple*, standing indeed in the Place where that stood, but as the Temple was totally destroyed by the *Romans*, by whom this was built is uncertain: It is entered at the East under an eight square Building, with *Cup la* Roof and Lantern, and forward on to the Westward, is a fair direct Isle like a Church; the whole surrounded with a large square Court walled on every side. The Magnitude of this according to *Mr. Manderil*, is 570 common Paces long, and 370 broad: In the midst whereof on the same Ground, where stood the *Sanctum Sanctorum*, there now stands a *Turkish Mosque*. The Area on which the Temple stood, was a Plain cut by vast Labour out of the rocky Mount: Near this Temple stands the House of the *Sangiack*, formerly the Palace of *Pilate*, and suppos'd to be the Castle *Antonia* built by *Herod*: Here they shew the Stairs our Saviour ascended, (at least Stairs instead of them, for the *Scala Sancta* is pretended to be at *Rome*;) the Window where he was shewn to the People by *Pilate*, the way he passed to his Crucifixion, called the *Dolorous Way*, wherein they shew the Places where he fell with the weight of his Cross, where they met *Simon of Cyrene*, where the Blessed Virgin swooned at the sight, (in which a Church was built, but is now ruinous,) the Place where wiping his Face with a Napkin, he left the Print of it on the Cloath, &c. Innumerable are the Antiquities they shew Strangers in this City and about it, as the Valley of *Jebosopha*, the Valley of *Gehinnon*, the *Aeldema*, the Garden of Mount *Olivet*, the Place where our Saviour prayed in his Agony, the Place where the Apostles hid themselves, the Place where *St. Peter* denied Christ, and where he wept. Mount *Olivet* not far from the City on the East side, reckoned near a Mile in height, on the Summit whereof stands a Chapel built over the Place of the Ascension; in the Floor (which is the natural Rock) they shew the impression of a Foot, said to be our Lord's; the Chapel is small not above 12 Foot wide, of round form with a Cupola supported by Columns of white Marble still in good repair, built by *St. Helena*, together with a stately Temple over it, and a Monastery, but those in Ruins. 'Twould be too much to describe all the Antiquities they shew, he that desires the particulars, will find them excellently set forth by *Mr. Sandys*, and what he omitted by *Mr. Manderil*, to which we must refer him. The City is walled round, and has an old Castle on the West side, but is of no great Strength at this time, however famous formerly for its Defence. It was taken by the *Saracens* in *Anno* 636. recover'd by *Godfrey of Bulloign*, in 1099. possessed by him and his Successors Kings of *Jerusalem*, till in 1187. it was taken by *Sciadine Sultan* of *Aegypt*, and by his Successors held till *Anno* 1517. when *Selimus* the *Turk* having Conquer'd both *Aegypt* and the *Holy-Land*, became Master of the City, and his Successors have ever since held it. The Circuit of this City as measured by *Mr. Manderil* without the Walls, is 4167 Yards or two Miles and a half.

*Bethlem,*



*Bethlem*, seated on a Hill in a pleasant Soil, about seven Miles South from *Jerusalem*, was in its ancient State a good City, now a sorry Village; resorted to by Pilgrims to view the Place of our Lord's Nativity, over which *St. Helena* erected a noble Temple, whose Roof is Cedar, supported by four Rows of white Marble Pillars, ten in a Row, and the Wall faced with the same Stone. The Chancel constitutes the upper end of a Cross, and is cover'd with a stately *Cupola*; under the Church in a Cave hewn out of the Rock, is the Chapel of the Nativity, where they shew the Manger our Saviour was laid in, cut also out of the Rock and now crufted with Marble; an Altar with the representation of the Nativity is erected here, and Lamps are kept burning before it; adjoining to the Church, stands a Monastery of *Franjeans* who have the care of it, but neither Monastery nor Temple are in right good estate, bearing the face of Poverty and neglect. Near the Town they shew a Valley wherein *Jacob* fed his Flock, and where the Angels appeared to the Shepherds to declare the Birth of Christ. The pious Empress we have so often named, built here also a Church now in Ruins; not far off stands a Village, which they say was the Habitation of the Shepherds; they also pretend to shew the Place, a Cave, where *Joseph* hid *Mary* and the Child, till he could flee as the Angel had directed, also the place where he lay, when the Angel gave him that Command.

*Hebron*, now named *Elkabil*, the ancient Seat of *David* before he took *Jerusalem* from the *Jebusites*, stands on a Ridge of Mountains which overlook a most delicious Valley, 25 Miles south from *Jerusalem*; the old City is ruined, but near it in a Village is a goodly Temple, built by *Helena* over a Cave where the old Patriarchs lie buried; it is now turned into a Mosque, and is visited in Devotion by the *Turks*. It is the Capital of a District of about 15 Villages, called the Territory of the Friend of God.

On the Sea-Coast stand *Achazur* and *Azotus*, now in Ruins. And *Ascalon* more to the South call'd *Scaplan*, famous heretofore for the Temple of *Dagon*, now a small Town, with a *Turkish* Garrison of no note. *Gaza* or *Gazara*, seated also on the Sea-Coast, in the Lat. 31. 20. once an eminent City of the *Philistines*, famous for the Acts of *Sampson*, stands upon a Hill environ'd with Valleys, and again with Hills planted with delicious Fruits: the Town is at present of but indifferent Structure and sorry Habitation: But retaining many marks of its ancient Beauty by broken Marbles, and Ruins of Arches and other stately Building. It has an old Castle, wherein resides a *Sangiack* who has the Government of a Territory containing 300 Villages. This Town is not above 20 Miles from the Frontiers of *Egypt*, and no considerable Place lying beyond it, we shall here close our account of Modern *Judea*.

## CHAP. V.

### Of the Ancient State of JUDÆA.

*JUDÆA* or the Land of *Canaan*, had its Name as we have said, from the Royal Tribe of *Judah*, and from the Nation of the *Canaanites*, descended from *Canaan* the Son of *Cham*, who possessed the Land when *Abraham* first entred it. The *Philistines* a powerful Nation, who possessed the Maritime Country gave the Name of *Palestine* to their Part, which by *Seneca's* *boche* was applied to the whole by the *Greeks* and *Romans*, and so handed down to us. It is seated in the fourth and fifth Climates, between the 31 D. and the 34 D. 30 m. of North Latitude, the longest Day being about 14 Hours and a quarter. Enjoying therefore a Temperate Air, and an exceeding fruitful SOIL, producing Corn, Wine, Oil, Honey, delicious Fruits, the famous Balm, and other Medicinal Rarities, besides Flowers, Grass, and Herbage in very great Plenty. And tho' the present ill Estate of this Country, might give room to doubt it, the Testimony of *Moses*, *Deut.* 8. and of even the Emperor *Julian*, who in his Epistles speaks of the perpetuity as well as fecundity of the Fruits of *Judea* answer all exceptions. Figs, Oranges, Pomegranates, the Apple of Paradise, Dates, are still found here, but the ancient Balm is lost, and they have no Pears, Plumbs, Cherries or Nuts, but what are brought from *Damascus*.

The chief Rivers are, *Jordan* so named from two little Streams *Jor* and *Dan*, which rise at the Foot of the *Anti-Libanus*, and after a course of about 20

miles uniting, compose its Stream; it is not a River of either length, depth, or breadth equal to its fame, its whole course till it falls into the *Dead-Sea*, being not above 150 Miles, its breadth not above 20 Yards, and its depth not sufficient for Navigation; in its Passage it makes two Lakes, the first call'd *Merom*, of small extent and dry in Summer, the second called the Sea of *Galilee*, or the Lake of *Tiberias*, or Lake of *Gennazareth* of 100 Furlongs in length, and 40 in Breadth. The *Dead-Sea* as it is call'd by a false Opinion, that it kill'd even the Birds that flew over it, is by experience to deserve no such terrible Name; it is indeed extream Salt, and the Water thereby so strong, that it will hardly admit a humane Body to sink, and has a bituminous Stanch: 'Tis said to entertain no Fish or other living Creature, but in regard that Fish-shells are found on its Shoar, and that too as Mr. *Manderil* observes, at two Hours distance from the mouth of *Jordan*, there is reason to doubt the truth of that opinion. Its extent is 70 miles from North to South, and 16 from East to West, and was formerly a Plain wherein stood the Cities of *Sodom*, *Gomorrhah*, *Adama* and *Seboim*, destroyed by Fire from Heaven. The other Rivers are *Cedron*, *Chison*, and some other small Streams which fall into the *Mediterranean-Sea*, *Jaboc* and *Armon*, &c. which fall into *Jordan* and the *Dead-Sea*.



The chief Mountains are *Libanus* and *Anti-Libanus*, already mentioned in speaking of *Syria*. Mount *Hermos*, a long Ridge beginning in the North, at the East point of *Anti-Libanus*, and running South to the Coasts of *Arabia*, constitutes the Eastern limits of *Judea*: Thus this Land is wonderfully fortified by Nature; for *Libanus* and *Anti-Libanus* secure it on the North, Mount *Hermos* on the East, the *Mediterranean-Sea* on the West, and the Mountains of *Seir*, with the Desert of *Paran* on the South.

Other Eminences are Mount *Galaad*, a short Ridge on the East of *Galilee-Sea*, Mount *Gilboa* another ridge on the West of *Jordan*. Mount *Gerizim*, Mount *Tabor*, the Mountains of *Serom*, (which stretch with intermixt Valleys from the Sea of *Galilee*, to the *Mediterranean*, and end in a white Cliff called *Cap: Blanco* by Seamen.) The Mountains of *Bascan*. Mounts *Pisgah*, *Nebo*, *Pbezor*, &c. Mount *Moriab* and Mount *Sion* in *Jerusalem*, (on the former stood the Temple, and on the latter the Palace of *David*.) Mount *Celzary*, Mount *Olivet*, and many others, which will be spoke to in their proper Places.

The Antiquities of this Country do more require our consideration than any other whatsoever, because this was the Place where it pleased the Almighty to Reveal himself to Mankind, to Promulgate his Holy Law and Gospel, and to work many Miracles for the Conviction of Infidels; all which being particularly related in the Holy Scriptures, and the History of the Inhabitants of this Country necessarily intermixt. Our Readers Curiosity will undoubtedly expect a more distinct account of this Land than others; accordingly we shall set forth the several States of *Judas*, as particularly as our purposed brevity will admit.

It was first Peopled by *Canaan* the Son of *Cham*, who with his eleven Sons came hither from *Babel*, five of them settled in *Phœnicia* and *Syria*, and the other seven; viz. *Heth*, *Jebuseus*, *Amoreus*, *Gergesbi*, *Heti*, *Sena*, together with *Canaan* their Father, were Founders of so many Nations. The *Hethites* or *Hittites* inhabited about *Hebron* to *Be-sheba*, and the Brook *Beser*, reckoned by *Moses* the South limits of *Canaan*. The *Jebusites* or Sons of *Jebus*, dwelt next to them on the North as far as *Jebus*, afterwards *Jerusalem*. The *Amorites* of *Amoreus*, possessed the Country on the East side of *Jordan*, between the River *Arnon* on the South-east, and Mount *Galaad* on the North: Afterwards the Seat of the Tribes of *Reuben* and *Gad*. *Gergesbi* was Father of the *Gergesites*, whose Land lay next above the *Amorites*, on the East side of the *Galilean-Sea*, where afterwards the half Tribe of *Manasseh* dwelt. And from *Heti* descended the *Hetites*, who dwelt more to the Northward under Mount *Libanus*. Where the Sons of *Sena* planted is less known, but the Wilderness *Sin* and Mount *Sinai* are supposed to be denominated from them; and by Dr. *Heslin's* Conjecture, the *Perizzites* were of that Origin, because it makes one of the seven Nations of *Canaanites*, that God commanded the *Israelites* to destroy; these dwelt on the West Banks of *Jordan*, and the *Canaanites* next to them in the mid-land of all.

These and some smaller Nations possessed the Land when God commanded *Abraham* to remove from *Uram* where he then dwelt, to separate himself from that idolatrous People, and to Travel into a Land, which he promised to give to him and his Posterity. Accordingly *Abraham* with his Brethren and their Wives, Servants, Cattle, &c.

by the guidance of God Almighty, arrived safe here; And he came to *Sichem* unto the Plain of *Mores*, (says the Text) which is supposed to be in that part afterward possessed by *Iffachar*; here God shewed him the Land, and assured him of his Seeds possessing it: *Abraham* removing Southward planted his Tents at *Bethel* and *Hai*, [in the Tribe of *Benjamin*] whence proceeding Southward, he at length passed into *Ægypt* to avoid Famine, and being returned to *Bethel*, determined to abide there; but a strife arising between his Servants and those of his Nephew *Lot*, they divided, and *Abraham* dwelt about where *Hebron* afterwards was built, and *Lot* dwelt near *Sodom*, on the Banks of the River *Jordan*. This in general was the Country of the first Patriarchs, before *Israel* departed into *Ægypt*.

We must now speak of the most considerable of the neighbouring Nations.

The *AMMONITES*, possessed a large Country on the East side of the River *Arnon*, adjoining to the *Amorites*, by whom they were often insulted.

The *MAIDIANITES*, descended from *Madian* the Son of *Abraham* by *Keturah*, lay next to *Ammon* on the South.

The *MOABITES*, descended from *Moab* the Son of *Lot*, possessed the Country upon the lower part of the River *Arnon*, and extended Southward along the Coast of the *Dead-Sea*, dispossessed of half their Country, and confined more to the South by the *Amorites*.

The *EDOMITES*, or Children of *Esau*, possessed the Country on the South of *Judea*, beyond the Mountains of *Seir* towards *Arabia Petrea*.

*BASHAN*, the Country of King *Og*, lay on the North-east between Mount *Hermos* and *Galaad*, and adjoining on the South to the Country of the *Amorites*.

*ZOBABH*, lay next above it on the North, and *HAMATH*, next on the North-west towards the Confines of *Syria*.

This is a general View of the Pristine State of *Canaan*.

Proceed we next to the Division of the Land, among the Twelve Tribes of the Children of *Israel*.

After the forty Years Peregrination in the Wilderness, the *Israelites* being denied passage thro' *Edom* or *Idumæa* by the King, to whom *Moses* sent a Civil Embassy, he passed thro' the Wilderness by the Borders of *Moab*, to the Banks of the River *Arnon*; hence *Moses* sent an Embassy to *Sihon* King of the *Amorites*, desiring passage thro' his Land, but *Sihon* refusing and opposing him with an Army, *Moses* permitted and encouraged the *Israelites* to fight them, which with great Alacrity they undertook, and in the Battle totally defeated the *Amorites*, and slew their King; immediately they entered the Country, which they found to be a most rich and fruitful Land, and slaying all before them, became entire Masters of it. *Og* the King of *Bashan* being a Friend and Confederate of *Sihon* marched to his Assistance, but was also defeated and slain, and his whole Country made subject to the victorious *Israelites*. *Balaam* King of *Moab* observing the Progress of the *Israelites*, and desirous to stop them, sent for *Balaam* a Prophet, or rather Sorcerer, who lived at a great distance beyond the River *Euphrates*, to come to him to Curse them, but his intended Curses were turned into Blessings, as is told at large in the 23 Numb. so that he could do them no harm, but by his wicked Counsel



Counsel of sending the *Midianite Women* to allure the Men of *Israel*, and tempt them to Sin and Idolatry, which had its intended effect, and was the occasion of much Disorder and the Death of 24000 *Israelites*, as is related *Numb. 25*. To Revenge which, and punish that Idolatrous People, *Moses* levied an Army of 1000 out of every Tribe, which under the Command of *Phineas* invaded *Midian* and overcame them, and slew their Kings, and brought off a vast Plunder. Having thus conquered a large Country, and defeated their Enemies on every side, the two Tribes of *Reuben* and *Dan*, with half the Tribe of *Manasses* requested of *Moses*, that the Country of the *Amorites* and *Basban*, might be given them for their Portion. Accordingly those Tribes had their Seat on the East side of the River *Jordan*, and all the rest of *Israel* possessed the Countries on the other side, between Mount *Libanus* on the North, and the Mountains of *Seir* or Desert of *Paran* on the South, except some part of the Sea-Coast, possessed by the *Philistines*, and another part possessed by the *Phenicians*.

The Distribution of this Land after the Conquest, and utter extirpation of the *Canaanites* was thus: In the North from the foot of Mount *Libanus*, to the Sea of *Galilee* on the Banks of *Jordan*, the Tribe of *NAPHTHALI* had their Portion. Adjoyning to them on the West to the Frontiers of *Phœnicia*, lay the Lands of the Tribe of *ASHER*. On the South of both these between the Sea of *Galilee*, and the Rivers *Jeptael* on the North, and *Chifon* on the South, the Tribe of *ZABULON* were seated. And next to him on the South lay the Territory of *ISSACHAR*, extending from the River *Jordan* to the Sea-Coast. As did also the Lands of the other half Tribe of *MANASSES* adjoyning to *Issachar*. And the Tribe of *EPHRAIM* on the South of *Manasseh*. Next to them lay the Portion of *BENJAMIN*, but extending but half way from *Jordan* to the Sea, the rest not possessed by the *Philistine*, belonging to the Tribe of *DAN*, whose Country extended also Southward by side the Tribe of *JUDAH*, whose Land was of large extent along the whole Coast of the *Dead-Sea*, to the Mountains of *Seir*. Lastly between the Southern part of *Judah* and the Sea-Coast lay the Tribe of *SIMEON*, who possessed the extreme South parts to *Beersheba*, and the other Land beyond it to the Brook *Sichor*. The Tribe of *LEVI* had for their Portion particular Cities assigned to them, not all together, but in every Province some, that so there might be in all parts of the Land, some present to perform the Divine Offices.

We have one more general Division of this Country to mark out, and then we shall proceed to the description of the chief Towns. Namely, the Di-

vision set out by the *Romans*, which was into Six Parts; viz.

*GALILEE*, *TRACHONITIS*, *SAMARIA*, *PERÆA*, *JUDÆA*, and *IDUMÆA*.

*GALILEE* was the North-west part, extending from Mount *Libanus* on the North, to the River *Chifon* on the South; between the *Mediterranean-Sea* on the West, and the River *Jordan* with the *Galilean-Sea* on the East. And comprehended the Lands of the Tribes of *ASHER*, *NAPHTHALI*, *ZABULON* and *ISSACHAR*. It was divided into the *Upper* and *Lower*.

The *Upper Galilee*, which was the Northern part, called also *Galilee of the Gentiles*, and under that Name mentioned by *St. Matth. c. 4. v. 15*. comprehended *Asher* and *Naphtali*, and the *Lower*, *Zabulon* and *Issachar*. Also within the limits of *Galilee* as above set forth, is comprised the Territory of *Decapolis*, or the Country of the ten Cities mentioned *Mat. 4. and Mar. 7*. lying on the Banks of *Jordan* and the Lake.

Those Cities were *Tiberias*, *Yotopata*, *Bethsaida*, *Capernaum*, *Corazain*, *Bethsan* or *Scythopolis*, *Cæsaria-Philippi*, *Sêphet*, *Afor*, and *Kadesch-Naphtali*.

*TRACHONITIS*, otherwise called *ITURÆA*, if it may not rather be divided into two Parts, whereof *Trachonitis* was the Northern part, and *Iturea* the Southern. The whole was the Country lying on the East side of *Jordan*, from Mount *Libanus* to the Frontiers of *Peræa*, and comprehended the Territory of the half Tribe of *Manasses* beyond *Jordan*.

*SAMARIA*, lay on the West side of *Jordan*, between that River and the *Mediterranean*, and the Frontiers of *Galilee* on the North, and those of *Judæa* on the South. Containing the Lands of the other half Tribe of *Manasses*, and the Tribe of *Ephraim*.

*JUDÆA* was the Country lying between the *Dead-Sea* and the *Mediterranean-Sea*, and contained the Territories of the Tribes of *Benjamin*, *Judah*, *Dan* and *Simeon*.

On the East side of the lower Channel of *Jordan* and the *Dead-Sea*, lay the Province *PERÆA*, which had for its Eastern limits, the Mountains of *Arnon*; on the North, the South limits of *Trachonitis*; and on the South, it extended into *Arabia Petrea*, containing the Territory of *Gad* and *Reuben*, and the Countries of the *Ammonites*, *Midianites*, and the *Moabites*.

Lastly, *IDUMÆA* was the Land of *Edom* or the Country of the *Edomites*, it lay beyond the limits of *Palestine*; for its Boundaries, were *Judæa* on the North, *Arabia-Petrea* on the East and South, and the *Mediterranean-Sea* on the West. It is the Country where dwelt the Posterity of *Esau*, who was also called *Edom*, *Gen. 36. 1*.

## A Table of the Cities of Note, in the several Tribes of *Israel*.

In the Tribe of <i>Asher</i> .	<i>Cana major</i> ;	<i>Bethemeth</i> ,	<i>Pancas</i> , & <i>Cæsaria</i>
<i>Maspha Territ</i> ,	<i>Roob</i> ,	<i>Bethdagon</i> ,	<i>Philippi</i> ,
<i>Cabul Territ</i> ,	<i>Gabala</i> ,	<i>Acon</i> or <i>Ptolemais</i> ,	<i>Berim</i> , Regio,
<i>Eat-Valley</i> , or <i>Valley St.</i>	<i>Aphek</i> ,		<i>Arbelis</i> , Regio,
<i>George</i> ,	<i>Hacoc</i> ,	In the Tribe of <i>Naphtali</i> .	<i>Emath</i> , Regio,
<i>Elkath</i> or <i>Alcath</i> ,	<i>Giscala</i> ,	<i>Leshem</i> or <i>Dan</i> , <i>poRea</i>	<i>Heliopolis</i> , hodie <i>Balbec</i> .
	<i>Cabul</i> ;	E	<i>Affedon</i> ,
			<i>Emath</i>



Emath or Hamath,  
Amathden,  
Ser,  
Cajathaim,  
Eblata,  
Meren Lake,  
Arefab or Hartsferi,  
Afer or Hafer,  
Tents of Heber,  
Mascelath,  
Arbelis,  
Magdadel,  
Kadesh Naphtali,  
Sepher,  
Bethsemeth,  
Carthan,  
Hamen,  
Mens Christi,  
Capbarnaim.

In the half Tribe of Ma-  
nasses beyond Jordan.

Gilead Terit,  
Barania Terit,  
Gaulonitis Terit,  
Trachonitis Terit,  
Aurenitis Terit,  
Selfcha,  
Bofra,  
Argch,  
Auren or Cauran,  
Giffur,  
Maebati or Maebce,  
Gerson,  
Aftaroeth,  
Adraeb,  
Gaulon,  
Tents of Kedar,  
Sueta,  
Gamala,  
Keder,  
Idrai,  
Gilead or Gilead.  
Pella,  
Abela or Abel-bethmacha,  
Jabesh Gilead,  
Urozaïm,  
Julias,  
Desart Bethsaida,  
Gerasa or Gergesa,  
Hippos,  
Ephern.

In the Tribe of Zebulun.

Bethsaida,  
Magdalon,  
Jotspata,  
Jopha,  
Tiberias or Cinnareth,  
Cereba,  
Bethulia,  
Remmen,  
Dorbaïm,  
Danna,  
Semeron,  
Tabar City and Mount,  
Saffa or Sephoris.

Nazareth,  
Cana of Galilee,  
Jecnom,  
Zabuion,  
Sicaminum or Ephsa.

Iffachar.

Carmel Mount,  
Gilboa Mount,  
Valley of Jezrael,  
Fields Magiddo or Plain of  
Galilee,

Tarichea,  
Cefion,  
Iffachar,  
Ramoth,  
Engannim,  
Dabereth,  
Rabbath,  
Cedes,  
Jezrael,  
Naboth's Vineyard,  
Apbee.  
Enbadda,  
Suna or Sbuna,  
Endor,  
Naim,  
Bethsheanest,  
Esdrelon,  
Castrum Perigrinorum.

Half Tribe of Manasses,  
cis Jordanum.

Bethsan or Scythopolis,  
Salem,  
Aner,  
Bezek,  
Abelmule,  
Castrum Alexandrinum,  
Terza or Tertia,  
Acabasa,  
Thebes or Thebez,  
Janet or Thanac,  
Gethremmon,  
Maccet,  
Ennon,  
Magiddo,  
Galgai,  
Jebzen,  
Dora,  
Casaria Palestine,  
Antipatris,

Ephraim.

Sarena,  
Lidda or Diospolis,  
Helon,  
Ramatha or Arimathea,  
Bethoron,  
Gazer or Gafra,  
Thamna or Tammathara,  
Hircanium Castr.  
Pharaton,  
Sichem, postea Neapolis ut  
et Flavia Casaria.  
Jacob's Well,

Jacob's Sepulchre,  
Mount Gerazim,  
Mount Ebal,  
Samarra, Capital, postea  
Sebasto,

Jechman,  
Taphna,  
Doch or Dagon,  
Gethremmon,  
Naiath,  
Machmas postea Byra,  
Silo or Shilo.

Gad.

Mahanaim,  
Penuel or Phaniel,  
Succoth,  
Maspha or Mizpeh,  
Rabba or Ribbath, postea  
Philadelphia,  
Ramoth Gilead,  
Rogelim,  
Thebe,  
Mageth,  
Arnon,  
Jazer or Jalsor,  
Arver,  
Dibon,  
Beth-haram.

Reuben.

Pisgab Mount,  
Nebo Mount,  
Phosgor Mount,  
Heshbon or Esbon,  
Jasa,  
Barnoth-Baal,  
Beth-phogor,  
Medaba,  
Mephat,  
Abila,  
Edom or Adam,  
Sethim or Sitim,  
Bethabara,  
Livias,  
Macherus,  
Bosor or Bozra,  
Lasa or Lasha, postea Cal-  
irhoe,  
Kedemoth or Jethson.

Benjamin.

Nebo or Nob.  
Gibeah or Gabcon,  
Gibeab or Gabaa,  
Bethel,  
Hai or Ai,  
Gilgal or Galgala,  
Anathoth,  
Jericho,  
JERUSALEM,  
Mount Olivet,  
Valley of Jehosaphat,  
Gethsamene Village,  
Mount Gibon.  
Valley of Raphaim,

Valley of Tophet,  
Bethany Village,

Judah.

Libna,  
Maceda or Makkeda,  
Azeccha,  
Bethsur or Beth-sora,  
Emaus, postea Nicopolis,  
Bezek,  
Bethlehem,  
Thecua or Tecoa,  
Zoar, Tsohor, or Sogor,  
Engaddi,  
Odalla,  
Keila or Ceila,  
Hebron,  
Jether,  
Jeremoth,  
Taphna,  
Kirjath-jearim,  
Jezrael,  
Ziph,  
Maon,  
Holon or Olon,  
Gozen,  
Gelo,  
Cabsael,  
Hasor or Chatfor,  
Massada.

Philistina,

Gath,  
Acaron,  
Azotus or Ashdod,  
Ascalon,  
Gaza,  
Majuma.

Dan.

Joppa bodie Jaffa,  
Jamina,  
Casphni,  
Thamna,  
Bethsemes,  
Ajalon,  
Lachis,  
Modin,  
Eltece,  
Lebi,  
Gibberhon,  
Saara or Zora,  
Fons Aethiopia,  
Nchel-Eshcol.

Simcon.

Ziglag or Siceley,  
Hain or Aen,  
Harna,  
Dabir, olim Kirjath-  
Sepher,  
Gazar or Gezara,  
Beersheba,  
Anthedon,  
Rhinocorura.



Thus having set forth the limits of the several Partitions of this Country, and given you a view of the whole in one Table; we shall now proceed to the particular descriptions of every part, and the chief Towns seated therein. To continue our travelling Method, we shall decline Priority of Dignity, and begin with the North part, which adjoins to *Syria* whence we last came, and pass on Southward on both sides of *Jordan*.

*Galilee* therefore first presents, and therein the Tribes of *Asher*, *Napthali*, *Zebulon*, and *Issachar*. A Country of great Fertility except in the Northern part, affording excellent Fruits with little Cultivation, and in its flourishing State full of Towns and Villages; so extremely Populous, that *Josephus* tells us, the least contained 15000 Inhabitants, but there is room to doubt that either the Transcriber has err'd, or that he spoke hyperbolically. Certain it is, that *Galilee* was a rich and populous Country, the People of a Warlike disposition, and strict Zeal in the Jewish Religion.

The Tribe of *ASHER* had their Seat on the Coast of the *Mediterranean-Sea*, from the Territories of *Sidon* on the North, to *Acon* or *Ptolemais* on the South, near 50 Miles in length; and from the Sea-Coast (the Territories of *Tyre*, *Sidon* and *Ptolemais* excepted,) half way to *Jordan*, which was about 20 Miles in breadth; a Land of great Fertility in Wine, Oil, Corn and Balms. In the North Tract lay the Land *Maspha*, and that of *Cabul* near the *Tyrian* Mountains, where stood the 20 Cities given to *David* by *Hiram* King of *Tyre*. And in the South part the Valley of *Affer* or *Fat-Valley*, so named for its exceeding Fertility; since call'd the Vally of *St. George*, from a Castle in it dedicated to that Saint. The chief Cities of the Tribe of *Asher* were, *Elkath* or *Alkath*, a City of the *Levites* seated on the Northern limits. *Cana* (called *Cana* the greater, to distinguish it from a lesser more Southward) seated near the River *Eleutherius*. *Roob* but a few Miles distant from the same River, a City of good note, belonging to the *Levites*. *Gabala*, seated more Southward, rebuilt by *Herod*. *Aphek*, memorable for the slaughter of the *Syrians*, by the *Israelites* under *Abah*, of whom 100000 fell in Battle and 27000 by the fall of a Wall, 1 Kings 20. 29, 30. *Haeze*, a City of the *Levites*, stood six Miles South-west from *Aphek*. *Giscala*, about the same distance to the South-east, a City of great Strength, burnt by the *Tyrians* at the time of the Siege of *Jerusalem*, rebuilt by *Josephus* then Governor of *Galilee*, and afterwards surrendered to the *Romans*. *Cabul* or *Chabul*, on the Frontiers of *Napthali*. *Abdon* a City of the *Levites*. *Bethmeth* and *Bethlagan*, both seated on the Frontiers of *Zabulon*; and *Messel* a City of the *Levites*, seated near the Sea-Coasts, the furthest Place South of this Tribe; were all rich and populous Cities. *Acon* or *Ptolemais*, which lay on the Coast of this Tribe, we have spoken of already in our Account of *Phanicia*.

Next to *Asher* the Tribe of *NAPHTHALI*, had their Seat along the Western Shoar of *Jordan*, from Mount *Libanus* down to the Sea of *Galilee*, or Lake of *Gennasretic*, having the Tribe of *Asher* for its Western Bounds. The Soil and Climate here was the same with that of *Asher*, which we told you was exceeding Fertile.

In the North part of this Country, the two Springs *Jor* and *Dan* have their rise, which after a short course uniting, compose the River *Jordan*.

Near the union of the two Streams, lay a little Tract of Land belonging to the Tribe of *Dan*, who conquer'd *Leshem* as we are told, *Josh.* 19. 47. to which Town they gave the Name of *Dan*, which being the extream North part of the Land of *Israel* gave occasion to the saying, *From Dan to Beisheba*, to express the whole extent of *Judea*; it was remarkable for the Golden Calf erected in it by King *Jeroboam*. In the latter Days when taken by the *Romans*, it was by them named *Panæas*, and being given to *Herod*, his Son *Philip* re-edified it, and gave it the Name of *Cæsaria Philippi*. The Woman who was cured of the Flux by the touch of our Saviour's Garment was of this Town, and in memory of it erected his Statue, with her own husband before him, which stood till *Julian* the Apostate destroyed it. In the *Christian* times it was a Bishop's See, and for ought appears, still retains the Dignity. Near this City between the two Spring-heads, stood a sumptuous Temple, built in honour of *Augustus Cæsar*. The Regions of *Beirim*, *Arbelis* and *Emath*, lay within the limits of this Tribe; as did also the City *Heliopolis* now *Balbec*, mentioned in our Account of *Syria*, but never subjected to them. The chief Cities of *Napthali* were,

*Affedim* near Mount *Libanus*. *Emath* or *Hamath*, situate near the Spring-head of *Eleutherius* River a Place of Strength, and reckon'd the Entrance or Gate of *Judea*. *Num.* 8. 34. *Jos.* 13. 5, &c. *Amathdon*, *Ser*, and *Cariathaim*, Cities of the *Levites*. *Reblata* a noted City near the Fountain of *Daphnis*, and the Lake *Meron*. *Aroseth*, at the South-end of the Lake, called *Haroseth* of the Gentiles, (*Judg.* 4.) the City of *Sisera*. *Asor* or *Hasor* the Regal City of the *Canaanites*, where 24 of their Kings came out against *Joshua*, and particularly the Seat of King *Jabin*, who 20 Years afflicted *Israel*, and was at last overcome by *Deborah* and *Barak*, *Jud.* 4. Not above a Mile or two from it, stood the Tent of *Heber* the *Kenite*, where *Jael* slew *Sisera*, *Jud.* 4. *Masealoth* seated more to the East, was a strong Town mentioned in the *Maccabæan* War. *Arbelis* not far from it, the Capital of a Territory. *Magdadel*, a strong Place seated a few Miles more to the South. *Kadesb-Napthali*, Seated on a high Hill, a Regal Seat of the *Canaanites*, conquer'd by *Joshua* and made a City of Refuge, and given to the *Levites*; it was the Birth-place of *Barak*, and one of the ten Cities of *Decapolis* under the *Romans*. *Sephet* another of the *Decapolis*, seated also on a Hill, a Place of almost impregnable Strength. *Bethsemeth*, on the Western Frontiers mention'd, *Jos.* 19. 38. *Carthan*, a City of the *Levites*, stood in the Midway between *Kadus* and *Cephet*. *Hamon*, another City of the *Levites* stood more to the West. Between *Carthan* and the Sea of *Galilee*, and near it stands the Mount called *Mons Christi*, where our Saviour often resorted and there elected his Apostles. *Capharnaum* or *Capernaum*, stood on the River *Jordan*, where it falls into the Sea of *Galilee*: It was the Metropolis of *Galilee* in our Saviour's time, and a City of Opulency and Trade, often mentioned by the Evangelists, on account of our Lord's frequenting it, but now a poor Fisher Town only. Several other Cities stood in this Territory but less considerable.

Crossing the River *Jordan*, we enter the Territory of Half the Tribe of *MANASSEs*. These as we have said, desired their Portion after the Conquest of *Og*, and before they passed the River, accordingly their Land lay between the Desert of *A-*



*rabia* on the East, from which it was parted by Mounts *Hermion* and Mount *Gilead*, and the River *Jordan* on the West, Mount *Hermion* and the Country of *Damascus* on the East, and Southward it extended to the Brook *Jaboc* or near it, where began the Territory of *Gad*, comprehending the Territories of *Gilead* and *Beniamin*, or the Kingdom of *Baschan*. Or as it was afterwards termed by the *Romans*, *Gaulanitis*, *Trachonitis*, *Bitanea*, and *Auranitis*. It was the ancient Habitation of the *Hivites* and the *Gergesites*. And afterwards of a Giganrick Race of Men, whence it was call'd the Land of *Rapheim* or *Giants*. The Soil of the middle part was fruitful and afforded excellent Pasture, which fed numerous Herds of Fat Oxen, but the Skirts Barren and ill inhabited. The whole extent from North to South was about 70 Miles, but its breadth not answerable being hardly 20 Miles. The chief Towns were

On the extrem North Part stood *Seifeba*, at the foot of the Mountains, the North Boundary of *Baschan*. *Besra*, a City of the *Levites*, and afterwards a Bishoprick, stood more to the East on the Frontiers of the Desert, and was a strong Fortified Town. *Argob*, the Capital of a Territory of the same Name. *Auran* or *Cauran* mentioned *Ezekiel* 47. whence the Country about it was named *Auranitis*. *Gessur*, the Capital of a large Region, spoken of by *Moses* as the North Bound of this Tribe, *Deut.* 4. *Maabari*, supposed to be the *Maabba* mentioned *1 Chr.* 19. 6. *Gerson*, in the mid-way between the last mentioned. All these possessed by Foreigners. *Astaroth*, a large Town of the *Levites*, the Seat of the *Rapheims* or *Giants* in ancient times, from whom *Og* descended. *Adreth*, seated on a Hill more to the East, gave name to a Bishoprick in the *Christian* times. *Gaulon*, a City of the *Levites* and of *Refuge*, a fair City, and by the *Romans*, made the Capital of a Country to which it gave Name. The Tents of *Kedar* often mentioned in Scripture, stood at a little distance from this Town to the West, in very fruitful and pleasant Fields, wherein a Fair was held at certain times. *Succa* a noted Town, stood more to the West near the River *Jordan*. *Gemala*, a Town and Castle seated on a Hill like a Camel's back, gave Name to a neighbouring Country. *Kedar*, a neat Town seated on a Hill. *Edrai*, the Regal Seat of *Og* King of *Baschan*. *Galaad* or *Gilead*, near the Mountains to which it gave Name, the Birth-place of *Jephtha*. *Pella*, a Town of more modern date, being built by *Seleucus Nicator* King of *Syria*, and destroyed by *Alexander Jannæus* King of the *Jews*, restored by *Pompey*, and retired to by the *Christians* of *Jerusalem*, as commanded by a Vow from Heaven, to avoid the Destruction coming upon that City. *Abela* or *Abel-beth-maacha*, a few Miles from it to the South, where *Seba* the Rebel being retired, the Citizens beheaded him, and threw it over the Wall to *Jaboc* for Peace, *2 Sam.* 20. *Jabesh-Gilead*, seated on a Hill near the Mountains of *Gilead*, mentioned in Scripture for the Siege of it by the *Ammonites* raised by *Saul*, and the Gratitude of the Men of that Town, in fetching the Bodies of *Saul* and his Sons from *Bethsan* (where they were exposed by the *Philistines*) and burying them. On the Coast of *Jordan* and the Lake stood *Cerazim*, at the mouth of *Jordan* into the Lake, famous for the Miracles wrought in it by our Saviour. *Julias*, built by *Philip* the Tetrach, and named in Honour of *Julia* the Wife of *Tiberias*. The Desert of *Bethsaida*, (altho'

the Town which gave name to it stood on the other side of the Lake) lay near this Town; where our Saviour fed 5000 with the five Barley Loaves and two small Fishes. A little more to the South stands *Gerasa* or *Gergesa* upon a high Hill, where our Saviour casting out the Devil, permitted him to enter into the Swine: This was the chief City of the *Gergesites*, *Hippes*, the Station of a Garrison of Horse placed there by *Herod*. *Ephraim* a strong City.

Returning cross the River *Jordan*, we enter the lower *Galilee*, wherein lay the Territories of the Tribe of *Zabulon* and *Issachar*.

The Tribe of *ZABULON* lay between *Asseer* and *Naphthali* on the North, and *Issachar* on the South, the *Mediterranean-Sea* on the West, and the Sea of *Galilee* on the East. A fruitful and populous Country, whose chief Cities were,

*Bethsaida*, situate on the Sea of *Galilee* or Lake of *Gennesareth* in a small Island, was one of the ten Cities of *Decapolis*, the Birth-place of the Apostles *Peter*, *Andrew* and *Philip*: And renowned for the Miracles wrought by our Saviour in it. The adjacent Country bore the Name of the Land of *Gennesar* or *Gennesareth*, and was very fruitful. *Magdala* on the same Sea Shoar, a little distant on the South, was a strong Fortrefs. *Torapata*, situate near the same Shoar, was also a very strong Hold founded on a Rock accessible but on one side, notable for the Defence made in it by *Josephus* the Historian against the *Romans*, who at last took it and him Prisoner. *Toph*, another strong Fortrefs stood a few Miles off to the West. *Tiberias* built by *Herod*, where formerly stood the Town *Cennereth*, and by him named *Tiberias* in Honour of *Tiberius Caesar*: It was a large and noble City adorned with an Accademy, seated on the Coast of the Sea of *Galilee*, which from this City was named the Lake or Sea of *Tiberias*; 'tis not improbable too, that the other name of *Gennesareth*, by which this Lake was called, had its origine from the old name of this Place: In this City our Saviour called *St. Matthew*, and near it he raised the Daughter of *Jairus*. *Cartha*, a City of the *Levites*, stood about eight Miles West from *Tiberias*. *Bethulia*, 10 Miles to the North of *Cartha*, was a very strong Town seated on a high Hill, mention'd in the Story of *Judith* and *Holofernes*. *Remmon*, a City of the *Levites* stood a few Miles West from *Bethsaida*. *Dothaim* or *Dothan*, a populous Town notable for its Plenty of Vineyards Figs and Olives; it was the Place where *Joseph* found his Brethren feeding their Flocks, when they sold him into *Egypt*. *Damna*, seven or eight Miles to the West was a City of the *Levites*. A few Miles off stood *Semerom*, a Potent and Royal City. *Tabor*, a City of the *Levites*, stands near the Mount of that Name, famous for the Transfiguration of our Lord upon it; in memory whereof, the Empress *Helena* built a sumptuous Chapel at the top, says *Mr. Sandys*, but *Mr. Manderil* takes no notice of that Chapel. It is a very steep high Mountain, beset with Olive-Trees, Vines, and other Fruits, with a flat Oval *Area* at top, of two Furlongs long and one broad, of most fertile and delicious Soil, surrounded with Trees; from which you have a view of Mount *Hermion* and *Gilboa*, the Valleys of *Esdracelon* and *Jezrael*; the Towns of *Nazareth*, *Naim*, *Endor*, &c. At the foot of this Mountain runs the Brook *Kison*. [*Manderil*.] *Saffa* or *Sephoris*, a City of the *Levites*, the habitation of *Joachim* and *Anna* the Parents of the Blessed Virgin; was a wealthy, large, and well fortified



fortified Town, walled by *Herod* and made the Metropolis of the lower *Galilee*; under the *Turks* it has been the Seat of a *Sangiack*. *Nazareth* was a neat Town seated upon a Hill five or six Miles from the Brook *Chifon*. Where the Blessed Virgin lived, and where our Saviour was Conceived and Educated, and spent a great part of his Life, whence he and his Disciples were called *Nazarites*: The Chamber wherein the Virgin received the Annunciation, was removed hence by Angels (according to the *Romish* Legends) and is now shewn at *Loretto* in the Kingdom of *Naples*. *Cana* called *Cana of Galilee*, and *Cana-minor*, memorable for the Miracle of our Saviour, in turning Water into Wine at the Marriage there; it was seated on the Brook *Japrael*. *Jeconam*, the Seat of a *Canaanitish* King slain by *Joshua*, and the City given to the *Levites*, it stood on the Brook *Chifon*. *Zabulon*, near it was a stately City till burnt by the *Romans*. *Sicamirum*, otherwise called *Ephra*, was a Port Town seated on the *Mediterranean-Sea*.

The Territory of the Tribe of *ISSACHAR*, had for its Northern Bounds the Brook *Chifon*, which divided it from *Zabulon*, the half Tribe of *Manasses* on the South, the *Mediterranean-Sea* on the West, and the River *Jordan* on the East. The Land was reasonably fruitful, but the Cities of it not so numerous as in the other parts of *Galilee*. Within the limits above mentioned, stood the Mounts *Carmel* and *Gilboa*.

*Carmel*, was a high Mountain seated in a neck of Land, between the mouth of the Brook *Chifon* and the *Mediterranean-Sea*, in the extream North part of this Province happy in a fruitful Soil cover'd with Groves of Olive-Trees, Vines, and divers other Fruit-Trees, as also fragrant Herbs and Flowers: Famous on account of the Habitation of the Prophet *Elijah* on it, and for the Order of *Carmelite* Monks, instituted in Honour of him as we have already elsewhere told you. And adjoining to it lay the Land of *Naid*.

The Mountains of *Gilboa* was a continued Ridge, beginning at the Town of *Jezerael*, and running along the Southern bounds of this Tribe, and into that of *Manasses* Eastward to the River *Jordan*. Upon this Mountain King *Saul* and his Sons were killed by the *Philistines*.

Within the limits of this Tribe lay the Valley of *Jezerael*, remarkable for several Battles fought in it: As also the Field of *Magiddo*, otherwise called the Plain of *Galilee*, and now named the Plain of *Saba* from a Castle near it: notable for its fertility in Corn, Wine and Oil. The chief Cities of the Tribe of *Issachar* were,

*Tarichea*, on the Bank of the Lake about eight Miles South from *Tiberias*, a place of great Strength and notable for its resistance against *Vespasian*. *Cefion*, a City of the *Levites*, seated on the Brook *Chifo*. *Issachar*, seated on the mid-way between *Cefion* and the Lake. *Ramoth*, a City of *Levites*, ten Miles South from *Issachar*, stands on a Hill which is the beginning of the Mountains of *Gilboa*. *Engannim*, a few Miles more East, another City of *Levites*. *Dabereth*, on the Brook *Chifon*, also a City of *Levites* and a City of Refuge. *Rabboth*, a few Miles distant on the South-east. *Cedes*, a City of *Levites*. *Jezerael*, the Regal Seat of King *Ahab*, seated on the West foot of Mount *Gilboa*, near the Frontiers of *Manasses*, and by *Adrichomius* placed to that Tribe; where *Naboth* was stoned, and *Jezebel* thrown out at Window, and her Car-

kass eaten by Dogs: it gave name to the neighbouring Plains, wherein many Battles were fought. Adjoining to the City on the North-east side, lay the Vineyard of *Naboth*. *Aphec*, a Royal City stood six Miles North-west from *Jezerael*. *Enbadda*, near the Mount *Gilboa*, where *Saul* being overcome by the *Philistines* slew himself. *Suna*, *Shuna* or *Shunem*, where *Elijah* sojourn'd with the Widow, and wrought the Miracles of increasing her Oil, and restoring her Son to Life. *Endor*, near the Brook *Chifon*, notable for *Saul's* consulting the Witch there, and for *Gideon's* Victory over the *Midianites* supported from *Psal.* 83. 10. to have been near it. *Naim*, seated also near *Chifon* River six or seven Miles more to the West, at the Gate whereof our Lord restored the Widow's Son to Life. *Bethshemesh*, seated at equal distance from *Jezerael* and *Endor*, and towards the foot of Mount *Carmel*. *Esdreim*, near the Frontier of *Manasses*, in a spacious Plain to which it gave Name. On the Sea-Coast about seven or eight Miles West from *Bethshemesh* stood the *Castum Peregrinorum*, built in the *Christian* times for the security of Travellers to the Holy Land.

We have now Travelled through *GALILEE*, and shall proceed to *SAMARIA*, or the Territories of the two Tribes of *Manasses* and *Ephraim*. A Country of variable Soil, but generally Fruitful, Rich, and Populous.

The Inhabitants were the Posterity of the *Assyrians* sent hither by *Salmanazar*, when he had carried away the *Israelites* into Captivity, who being Idolaters, were devoured by Lions sent among them by God; to avoid which Plague, they begg'd of *Salmanazar* for Priests to instruct them in the true Religion, who were accordingly sent as is declared at large in the 17. Chap. of 2d. Book of *Kings*. But altho' they were at last brought to the Worship of the true God, yet they always maintained a Schism, and would not go up to *Jerusalem* to worship as the Law commanded. And therefore built a Temple of their own at Mount *Geraizim* near *Samaria*, which tho' destroyed by the *Maccabees*, they continued their Schism; for this reason hated by the *Jews*, and as we find in the Gospel at our Saviour's time esteemed an abominable People, with whom they would hold no converse, *John* 4. 9. As on the other hand, so neither would a *Samaritan* come near a *Jew*, or if he had, esteemed himself defiled.

The Land of the Half Tribe of *MANASSES* was the North part of *Samaria*, stretched out from the River *Jordan* in the East, to the *Mediterranean-Sea* on the West; having the Tribe of *Ephraim* on the South. The Countrey was pleasant to the sight by reason of the admirable variety of the Plains, Mountains, Hills, Valleys and Springs, besides the fertility of the Soil, and the great number of Inhabitants and stately Cities. Of these the Chief were,

*Bethsan*, seated on the River *Jordan* in a little skirt of Land, which run into the Tribe of *Issachar*. Its Name implied the House of an Enemy, given it by the Children of *Manasses*, because they could never drive the Natives out of it; in later Days taken and rebuilt by the *Scythians*, and therefore named *Scythopolis* by the *Greeks*: Memorable under the name of *Bethsan*, for the dead Bodies of *Saul* and *Jonathan* hanged on its Walls; and under the Name of *Scythopolis*, for being one of the ten Cities of *Decapolis*, and afterwards the See of a *Christian* Archbishop. In its flourishing State a noble City, as the many Marble Ruins still remaining testify. *Salem*, near the



the Banks of *Jordan*, in the North-east corner of this Province, supposed to have been the same that was the Royal-Seat of *Melchisedech*. *Aner*, a City of the *Levites*. *Bezek* near *Jordan*, seven Miles East from *Aner* was the City of *Adoni-Bezek*, who being conquered by the *Israelites*, had his Thumbs and great Toes cut off, as he had served 70 Kings before, *Jud.* 1. *Abimelech*, a noted Town stood more to the South, as did *Castrum Alexandrium* of more modern Structure, being built by *Alexander* the Son of *Antipater* against the *Romans*. *Ephra*, still more South and near the Banks of *Jordan*, in which *Gideon* dwelt. *Terza* or *Tersa*, the Royal Seat of *Isaac* before the building of *Samaria*. *Accolata*, the Capital of a Territory, which was afterwards made a *Town*. *Thebes* or *Tiebez*, a Town of good note where *Abimelech* was knock'd on the Head, by a Millstone thrown by a Woman as he besieged the Tower thereof, *Jud.* 9. 50. *Tana*: or *Thana*:, a large and potent City in the Frontiers of *Issachar*. *Gethsemani* a City of *Levites*, as was also *Macoth* near it. A little distant from *Gethsemani*, stood the Mountain and Cave where *Obadiah* the Steward of *Isaac*, hid the hundred Prophets from *Jezabel's* fury, 1 *King.* 18. *Ennon* where *St. John* Baptiz'd the People. *Magiddo*, a noble City near which King *Jesiah* was wounded in his Battle against *Pharaoh Necho*, 2 *Cor.* 36. 22. It gave name to the Valley of *Magiddo* already mentioned in *Issachar*. *Galgai*, the royal City of a Prince slain by *Jeshua*. *Jeban* a strong Fortress. And *Narblata*, which gave name to a *Toparchate*, stood in a triangle with *Magiddo*. On the Sea-Coast were seated, *Dora* a strong and powerful City, seized by *Tryphon* after the Murder of *Jonathan Maccabeus*, who was there besieged by the King of *Syria*, taken and slain. *Casarea Palestina*, anciently the Tower of *Sidon* a King of the *Sidonians*, stood a few Miles from *Dora* to the South, re-edified by *Herod*, and made a stately and sumptuous Place, as described by *Josephus*, lib. 15. c. 13. 'Twas here *St. Paul* appear'd before *Festus*, and 'twas here that *Herod Agrippa* was smitten by God and devoured of Worms for his Arrogance. This was for some time the *Roman* Metropolis of *Palestine*. *Antipatris*, built by *Herod* in the Place where stood the ancient *Capitarsaima*, near to which *Judas Maccabeus* overthrew *Nicanor's* Army; it was encompassed with a Grove, and a very fine Champion, reckoned the richest spot of ground in all *Palestine*.

The Territory of the Tribe of *EPHRAIM* took up the South of *SAMARIA*, and adjoined to that of the half Tribe of *Manasses* we came last from, extending as that does, from the River *Jordan* to the *Mediterranean-Sea*, and bounded on the South by the Tribe of *Benjamin*, and a small part of the Tribe of *Dan*. The Country is Mountainous but the Soil however, Fat and Luxuriant. The chief Cities here were,

*Sarna*, a Royal City conquer'd by *Jeshua*, seated on a Hill 10 Miles South-west from *Antipatris*, and about as far from the Sea Shore; the adjacent Valley to which it gave Name, was a most fruitful Land. *Lidda*, about 15 Miles South from *Sarna*, where *St. Peter* cur'd *Senas* of a Palsie, *Act.* 9. 33. It was by the *Gentiles* called *Diocletia*, and by the *Christians* in the Holy-War, denominated from *St. George* by reason of a splendid Temple built there by *Justinian* in honour of that Saint, and from an Opinion that he was Martyr'd there; it was a Bishop's See. *Helon*, a few Miles from *Sarna* and

*Ramatha*, as little distant from *Lidda* were Cities of *Levites*; the latter is supposed to have been otherwise call'd *Aramathea*, and so the City of *Joseph*, who buried our Lord. *Bethoron*, another City of *Levites*, stood on a high Hill more to the North, beautified by *Solomon*, and notable for the Defeat of *Lysias* by *Judas Maccabeus*. *Gazer* or *Gasera*, also a City of *Levites* stood near the South Borders. *Thamna* or *Thamnafara* 10 Miles East from *Gazer*, *Jeshua's* Patrimony, and given by him to the *Israelites*, where he was Buried, it afterwards gave name to a Jurisdiction called the *Toparchia Thamnatica*. A few Miles more to the North, stood the strong Castle *Hircanum*. *Pharaton*, seated on Mount *Amalek* to the North-west of *Hircanum*, the City of *Abdon* Judge of *Israel*. *Siehem*, 10 Miles East from *Hircanum*, otherwise called *Sicher*, stood in a Valley between Mount *Gerazim* on the South, and Mount *Ebal* on the North at the foot of the former, the City of *Siehem* the Father of *Hamor*, who deflower'd *Dinah* the Daughter of *Jacob*, several times ruined and rebuilt; and in our Saviour's time in good estate, honoured with his Presence, where he converted many; it was a City of Refuge given to the *Levites*, and near it stood the Well of *Jacob*, and the Sepulchre of *Joseph*: in its latter State it was by the *Gracians* nam'd *Neapolis*, and by the Emperor *Vespasian*, who placed a Colony there. *Flavia Caesaria*, it is now called *Naplusa*, and is still the chief City in these Parts and the Seat of a Sangiack; but however in poor condition as we have already said in our account of Modern *Judea*. Near this City towards *Samaria* stood Mount *Gerazim*, where by the Law, *Deut.* 11. 29. the Blessings were to be read, as on the contrary, at Mount *Ebal* over against it the Curses. On *Gerazim* the *Samaritan* Temple was built by *Sanballat* one of their Princes, who ruled at the same time that *Nehemiah* rebuilt the Walls of *Jerusalem*; where they held the Schismatical Worship, in opposition to the Temple at *Jerusalem*; and to this day there is a small Temple wherein the few remains of that Sect, perform their Rites at certain times of the Year.

*Samaria*, The Capital of this Country, and the Seat of the Kings of *Israel*, after *Omri* Father of *Ahab* had built and removed the Court to it from *Terza*, stood on Mount *Seimion* in the borders of *Manasses*, a stately and magnificent City before the *Affyrians* destroyed it. Afterwards repaired and destroyed in the *Jewish* Wars, re-edified and made more stately by King *Herod* and named *Sebaste*, under which name 'tis now known; the broken Marbles and stately Columns still seen here, are testimonies of its then beautiful State, but at present it is in Ruins. This was the Metropolis of the *Palestina Secunda* under the *Romans*, an Archbishoprick in *Christianity*, and the burial Place of *St. John Baptist*. This great City is now wholly converted into Gardens, and all the tokens that remain to testify that there has been such a Place, are only on the North side a large square Piazza, encompassed with Pillars, and on the East some remains of a great Church, said to have been built by the Empress *Helena*, over the Place where *St. John Baptist* was beheaded; in the Body of the Church, you go down a Stair-case into the very Dungeon where the Holy Blood shed was. The *Turks* hold this Dungeon in great Veneration. Mr. *Manderil*, p. 56



*Jeckmen*, a City of *Levites*, stood 20 Miles South-east from *Sannaia*. *Taphna*, a Royal City stood near *Jordan*. A few Miles from this City to the South-east, stands the Mountains of *Ephraim*, out of which flows the Brook *Cherith*, where *Elijah* retiring, was fed by the Ravens, 1 *King*. 17. *Dech*, called *Dagon* by *Josephus*, a strong Fortrelis on a steep Hill with a delightful Prospect, stood near these Mountains. *Gethemmon*, a City of *Levites*. *Naioth*, where *Saul* Prophesied: both stood to the South, as did also *Maachnes*, now called *Byn* a large City, the Habitation of *Jonathan Macab*. *Silo* or *Shilo*, a Town seated on a very high Hill still more Southward, in a slip of Land surrounded by *Benjamin*; famous on account of the Tabernacle of the Covenant there erected, and the Ark of God kept in it, before the *Philistines* took it, 1 *Sam*. 4.

Having now Travell'd through *Galilee* and *Samarina*, we shall cross the River *Jordan*, and view the Territories of the Tribes of *Gad* and *Reuben*, which took up that Country to which the *Romans* gave the name of *P E R Æ A*. Or rather part of *Peræa*, for that extended Southward to *Petra*, the chief Town of *Arabia Petraea*; whereas the Southern limit of the *Israelites* was the River *Arnon*, which springing in the Mountains of *Arnon* runs Southward, and divides the Land of *Reuben* from *Arabia*, and turning Westward, falls into the *Dead-Sea* in the Lat. 31. 50. an Hundred Miles short of the Southern extent of *Peræa*. That Countrey which these Two Tribes possessed, had been the Regions of the *AMORITES*, the *MIDIANITES*, the *AMMONITES* and the *MOABITES*, who being entirely vanquished by the *Israelites*, as is at large declared in the Book of *Numbers*, the two Tribes of *Gad* and *Reuben* upon their Request to *Moses*, and promise of assisting their Brethren in the Conquest of the *Canaanites*, had this Land assigned to them.

The Territory of the Tribe of *GAD*, lay between the half Tribe of *Manasseh* on the North, from which it was divided by the River *Jabbok*, and the Tribe of *Reuben* on the South, the River *Jordan* on the West, which separated it from the Lands of the other half Tribe of *Manasseh*, and those of the Tribe of *Ephraim*, and on the East the Mountains of *Arnon* and *Arabia*; in extent about 40 Miles from North to South, and 25 from East to West. This comprehended the best part of the Land of *Gilead*, denominated from the neighbouring Mountains; and the Land of *Thob* or *Teb*, subject to the *Ammonites*, where *Jephtha* dwelt when thrust out of his Fathers House by his Brethren, *Jud*. 11. The Soil was fruitful and pleasant; and the most remarkable Cities and Towns were,

*Mahanaim*, on the North limits beyond the River *Jaboc*, the Place where *Jacob* in his return to *Canaan*, was met by the Angels of God as an Army to defend him, wherefore he called the Place *Mahanaim*, i. e. *The Camps*; *Gen*. 32. It was a City of great Strength and Repute, and therefore resorted to by the *Kings*; *Abner* here set up *Ishbosheth* the Son of *Saul* to be King against *David*, and *David* retired hither during the Rebellion of his Son *Abalom*. *Penuel* or *Phannuel*, the Place where *Jacob* wrestled with the Angel, where a Town was built, seated near the River *Jabok*, and was grown considerable in *Gideon's* time; for we find he craved relief of it against the *Midianites*, which being refused, and he returning Victorious, beat down their Tower, and slew the

Inhabitants, *Jud*. 8. *Succoth*, i. e. *The Tabernacles or Tents*, where *Jacob* met his Brother *Esau*, and was reconciled to him, stood near the River *Jordan*, a few Miles West from *Penuel*. The Inhabitants of this City having refused relief to *Gideon*, he tortured them at his return, tearing their Flesh with Thorns and Briars, *Jud*. 8. *Maspha* or *Mizpeh*, the Place where *Jephtha* resided in his exile, stood in the North-east limits of this Province, and was a City of the *Levites*. *Rabba* or *Rabbath*, which stood 12 Miles North from *Mizpeh* on the Banks of the *Jabbok* which almost surrounded it, and therefore called the City of Waters, 2 *Sam*. 12. 27. was the Capital and Regal Seat of the *Ammonites*, taken by *Og* King of *Bashan*, but deserted upon the approach of *Moses*, who there found *Og's* Iron Bed nine Cubits long, and four broad; memorable afterwards for the Death of *Uriah*, slain at the Siege of it by *David's* direction. In later times, the adjacent part of *Arabia* being conquered by *Ptolemy Philadelphus* King of *Ægypt*, he re-edified this City and gave it the name of *Philadelphæ*. *Ramoth Gilead*, a City of Refuge belonging to the *Levites*, stood about five Miles South from the River *Jabbok*, and 10 Miles South-east from *Penuel*, it is often mentioned in Scripture, particularly on account of the reconciliation between *Jacob* and *Laban*; the Death of *Abah* King of *Israel*, who deluded by false Prophets, went to the Siege of it when possessed by the *Syrians*, 1 *King*. 17. and for the anointing *Jehu* King over *Israel*, 2 *King*. 9. *Rogaim*, the Town of *Bazillei* the *Gileadite*, who entertained *David* in his retreat from *Abalom*, stood near the East Frontier 15 Miles South-east from *Ramoth Gilead*. *Thesh*, the Birth-place of the Prophet *Elijah*, stood near the River *Jordan*; near which Town on the North lay the Forest of *Ephraim*, in a Wood whereof *Abalom* was caught in a Tree by the Hair of the Head, and slain by *Joab*. *Mageth*, a City of large extent. *Arnon*, at the foot of the Mountain of *Arnon*, and a little above the head of the Brook *Arnon*. *Jazer* or *Jabzor*, one of the Regal Seats of *Og* King of *Bashan*, was seated on the Brook *Arnon*, which soon after spreads out into a Lake, which takes name from the Town: Taken by *Moses*, and given to the *Levites*; afterwards recover'd by the *Moabites*, then by the *Ammonites*, and at last taken by *Judas Maccabeus*, 1 *Mcc*. 5. *Aroer*, seated on the same River *Arnon* in the South-east Frontier, was a noted City and reckoned the Capital of this Tribe. *Dibon*, on the South Frontier more towards *Jordan*, was a Town of note in *Jeshub's* time. Lastly, *Beth-heram*, seated also near *Jordan* mentioned by *Joshuah* in his Terrar of this Tribe

The Tribe of *REUBEN* lay on the South of that of *Gad*, over against the Tribe of *Benjamin*, between the River *Jordan* and some part of the *Dead-Sea* on the West, and the River *Arnon* with *Arabia Petraea* on the East and South. Extending about 40 Miles from North to South, and about 25 m. from East to West. And containing many fruitful and well cultivated Valleys amidst the high and craggy Mountains, wherewith the Land is also invested; among which last *Pisgab* or *Phasga*, whence *Moses* had a view of the Promised Land. *Nebo*, another head of the same Ridge, if not the same; for tho' the Maps distinguish them, *Moses* in the last Chapter of *Deut.* mentions both synonymously, and says he had a view of the Land and died there. *Phogor* to the Top of which *Balak* carried *Balaam* to curse the



the *Israelites*; are especially remarkable. The *Moabites*, and after them the *Amorites* possessed this Country before the *Israelites* conquered it; and this was the Country they first possessed in their entrance of the Promised Land, and hence passed over *Jordan* into *Canaan*. The chief Cities of the *Reubenites* were,

*Heshbon* or *Eshbon*, the Royal Seat of *Sihon* King of the *Amorites*, afterwards a City of *Levites*, stood on a Hill in the Northern Frontiers of this Tribe. *Jasa* a City of *Levites*, stood about 15 Miles South-west from *Eshbon*, and gave Name to a neighbouring Desert. *Bamoth-Baal*, i. e. High-Baal, so named from a Temple to *Baal* seated on a high Hill, whither also, *Baal* brought *Balaam* to curse the *Israelites*. *Beith-shimon*, noted for the Adoration there to a *Moabitish* Idol, stood between *Bamoth-Baal* and Mount *Phogor*. *Megiddo*, seated on the River *Sharon*, was sometime the Capital of the *Ammonites*, famous for the Defeat of the *Syrians* by *Josh*, 1 *Chron.* 19. *Megiddo* also on the *Sharon* more Southward, was mentioned in the History of the *Maccabean War* wherein it was burnt, and the Inhabitants put to the Sword. *Abila*, a City in the Plain Country of *Moab*, which yielded great store of Palm-Trees, stood six or seven Miles East from the River *Jordan*, and as many South from *Jasa* abovementioned. *Etam* or *Adam*, seated near the Banks of *Jordan*, where the *Israelites* passed over dry foot to *Gilgal*; near these two last named Towns it was, that *Elijah* was taken up to Heaven in a fiery Chariot. *Sesim* or *Sisim*, where the *Israelites* committed Fornication with the Daughters of *Midian* and *Moab*; and notable for the Wood whereof the Ark was made, supposed to be named from this Town. *Beithabara*, on the River *Jordan* where *St. John* Baptiz'd, and near which *Moses* made his exhortation to the *Israelites*. *Livias*, seated also on *Jordan* more Southward, was of more modern date, being built by *Herod*, and so named in honour of *Livia* the Mother of *Tiberius*. *Macherus*, a very strong Fortrefs built by *Alexander Jannaeus* King of the *Jews*, stood on a high Hill on the North Shoar of the *Dead-Sea*: Some Authors say, it was here that *St. John Baptist* was Imprisoned and Beheaded, altho' the *Turks* as we have said shewed the Place at *Samaris*. *Beer* or *Bera*, a City of Refuge given to the *Levites*, stood a few Miles from *Macherus*, and six Miles North from the Shoar of the *Dead-Sea*. *Lasa* or *Lispa* mentioned *Gen.* 12. 19. in later Days named *Casaria*: by the *Greeks*, from the fair Fountains issuing from the neighbouring Mountains, and the Salubrious Springs both hot and cold, which made an excellent Bath of great Virtue in Convulsive Distempers. And lastly *Kedemosh*, otherwise named *Jeshen*, a City of the *Levites*, seated near the River *Arnon*; whence *Moses* sent his Embassage to *Sihon* King of the *Amorites*.

Now crossing the River back again we shall survey the remaining part of the Holy-Land, namely *Judea propria* or that part named *Judea* by the *Romans*.

*JUDEA*, was bounded by the *Mediterranean-Sea* on the West, the River *Jordan* and the *Dead-Sea* on the East. The Country of the Tribe of *Ephraim* on the North, and *Luz* on the South. The Soil very Fertile, but diversified with variety of Hills and Valleys, and pleasant Streams of small Ravines. In this Extent, it comprehended the Lands

that were possessed by the Tribes of *Benjamin*, *Judah*, *Dan* and *Simeon*.

The Territory of the Tribe of *BENJAMIN*, border'd on the North upon that of *Ephraim*, on the South upon the Tribe of *Judah*, on the East it was bounded by the River *Jordan*, and on the West *Philistia* and part of the Tribe of *Dan*, lay between it and the *Mediterranean-Sea*. The chief Places were,

*Nebi*, the farthest City to the West of this Tribe. *Nobe* or *Nab*, a City of *Levites* where the Ark sometime resided, after *Sich* was taken by the *Philistines*, where *David* obtained of *Abimelech* the Priest, hallowed Bread, and received the Sword of *Goliath*, 1 *Sam.* 21. *Gibeon* or *Gabeon*, as it is written by *Adrichomius*, stood about five Miles West from *Nobe*, the Capital of the *Gibeonites*, who by a Wile got Peace and Protection from *Jeshuah*, in whose Defence fighting against the five *Amorish* Kings; he by his Prayer made the Sun stand still a whole Day, till they were utterly Defeated, *Josh.* 9. These People therefore dwelt among the *Israelites* performing servile Works, and because of *Joshuah's* Oath, God inflicted Famine on the Land, in Punishment for *Saul's* destroying them, 2 *Sam.* 21. *Gibeon* or *Gaba*, a City of *Levites*, the Birth-place of King *Saul*, stood 10 or 12 Miles North-west from *Gibeon*: Memorable for the Story of the abuse committed by the *Benjamites* on the *Levites* Concubine, to revenge which, all *Israel* rose in Arms and destroyed 25000 Men of the Tribe of *Benjamin*, besides all the Women and Children, the particulars see in the 19, 20, and 21. *Judg.* *Bethel*, before named *Luz*, but changed by the Patriarch *Jacob* who gave it this Name, which signifies the House of God, in Memory of his Vision of Angels ascending and descending, *Gen.* 18. Infamous afterwards for the Golden Calf set up in it by King *Jeroboam*: It was sometime part of the Kingdom of *Israel*, but conquer'd by King *Abijah*, it became subject to the King of *Judah*, and was strongly fortified by King *Asa*. *Hai* or *Hi*, a Royal City of the *Canaanites* taken by *Jeshuah*, memorable on account of the Defeat of the *Israelites* at their first attacking it, by God's Punishment on *Achan's* Sin, *Josh.* 7. *Gilgal* or *Galgala*, near the Banks of *Jordan* where the *Israelites* passed over in their entrance to *Canaan*, the Place where they first pitched their Tents, where *Joshuah* set up twelve Stones for a Memorial of the Waters dividing for their easie passage, *Josh.* 4. and where *Agag* was hewed in pieces by *Samuel*, 1 *Sam.* 15. This was one of the Seats of Justice instituted by *Samuel*, 1 *Sam.* 7. The other two were *Bethel* and *Mizpah*, or *Maspha*, which stood in the limits of this Tribe also, a few Miles West from *Nebi*. *Anathoth* a City of *Levites*, the Birth-place of *Jeremiah* the Prophet, stood in the mid-way between *Gilgal* and *Jerusalem*.

*Jericho*, a large populous and Royal City abounding with Groves of Palm-trees; which being besieged by *Jeshuah*, the Lord wrought a Miracle in their Favour, and upon the sounding of the Ram's-horn Trumpets, the Walls of the City fell down, *Josh.* 6. It was destroyed by *Jeshuah* with a Curse upon the Rebuilder, however in the Days of King *Ahab*, *Hiel* a *Bethelite* rebuilt it, but *Jeshuah's* Curse had such effect at that distance of time, that he lost two of his Sons for it, 1 *King.* 16. 34. Since *Christianity*, it was taken and ruined by *Vespasian*, and re-edified by *Adrian*, but visited by *Trevenst*, and



And Mr. Manderil in our Days, appears a sorry Village of 30 or 40 Houses; it is seated on a little Rivulet with which the *Jordan* forms a little Island, 10 Miles South from *Gilgal* and 20 East from *Jerusalem*. *Almeth* near *Jericho*, was a City of *Levites*.

*JERUSALEM*, or *Hierosalem*, the Capital of all the Land, stood in the South-east limits of this Tribe, so near *Judea*, that part of the City stood within their Territory. When possessed by the *Jebusites* it was called *Salem*, whence we may suppose its Name was derived, *Jebusalem*, q. d. *Salem* of the *Jebusites*, melted afterwards into *Jerusalem*. Being taken by King *David*, he immediately set to Work to re-edifie and adorn it, and in effect he and his Son after him, made it one of the most magnificent Cities of the World. In its most flourishing State it consisted of four Parts, which were separated by Walls; viz. 1. The old City of the *Jebusites* which stood on Mount *Zion*, where the Prophets dwelt, and where *David* built a strong and Magnificent Castle, the Palace of himself and his Successors; wherefore this was afterwards called the City of *David*. The Pallace was encreased and most sumptuously beautified by King *Herod*, and inscribed to *Agrippa* and *Cesar*. 2. The lower City because partly seated in a Valley, called also the Daughter of *Zion*, being built after it; wherein stood *Solomon's* Palace, the Palace he built for his Wife, the Palace of the *Maccabean* Princes, *Hercules's* magnificent and splendid Theatre and Amphitheatre, the latter capable of receiving 80000 People, the Citadel built by the Syrian King *Antiochus* to overtop the Temple; for which reason razed by *Simon Maccabeus*, and the Citadel built by *Herod* on a craggy rock, which he named *Antonias* in honour of *Marc Antony*. 3. The new City inhabited by the Mechanics And 4. Mount *Moriah* where *Abraham* attempted to Sacrifice *Isaac*, and where afterwards the Temple was built by *Solomon*, whose sumptuous Structure is so particularly described in the 6 and 7. h. Chap. 2 *King*. that we need not enlarge on it here. The Destruction of it by the *Babylonians* under *Nebuchadnezzar*, 2 *King*. 24. 2 *Chr*. 36. and the Re-structure after the Captivity by *Zerubbabel* and the Priests, *Ezra*. 3. are also so well known that we need only mention it: But *Herod's* Re-structure we are less acquainted with, that Prince pulled down the old Building, and erecting it wholly new with as much Magnificence as *Solomon* had done, endeavouring if possible to exceed it. The building was of white Marble, each Stone whereof was 25 Cubits long, 8 Cubits high, and 12 Cubits broad, *Josephus*, *Antiq. lib.* 15. c. 14. It was built in most Princely manner, the middle part rising high above the side Isles, and exceeding the former Temple 20 Cubits in height, the whole adorn'd with Columns, Carvings and Gildings in most splendid manner; it was also surrounded with the four Courts as *Solomon's* had been, and appeared so Magnificent and truly Glorious, that *Titus* the Roman General laboured all that in him lay to prevent its Destruction, merely for its beauty sake; but the *Jews* being retired thither when the Roman Soldiers entered by Storm, the disorder was so great that 'twas impossible for him to prevent their firing it: So that it stood not above 85 Years. The Fates of this City and Temple were thus, *David* and *Solomon* built and adorn'd it, A. M. 2900 to 2934. *Nebuchadnezzar* took it and destroyed both the City and Temple about 3362. After 70 Years Captivity,

the *Jews* being released by *Cyrus* in the first Year of his Reign, returned to *Judea* and Rebuilt the City. *Herod* who was made King of *Judea*, A. M. 3913. Adorned the City with many splendid buildings, particularly that part which had been called before the lower City or Daughter of *Zion*, insomuch that that part obtained afterwards the name of *Herod's* City; and rebuilt the Temple as abovesaid. *Herod* possessed *Jerusalem* 37 Years before the Birth of *Christ*, and A. C. 71. *Jerusalem* was taken and destroyed by the Romans under *Titus Vespasian*. The following States of it we have already told in our account of Modern *Judea*, and so we shall here conclude this Subject.

These Places near *Jerusalem* being often mentioned in Scripture, must not pass without notice, viz.

Mount *Olivet*, which took its name from the great number of Olives growing on it, stands on the East side of the City, and was fertile in divers Fruits and agreeable Plants, as Myrtles, Pines, Palms, &c. From its highest Sommet our Saviour ascended into Heaven, in memory whereof the Empress *Helena* built a Chapel there, as we have elsewhere shewn.

The Valley of *Jehosaphat* lay between the City and Mount *Olivet*, being water'd and made fruitful by the Brook *Kedron* which run through it. In this Valley are shewn the Well of *Nehemiah*; the Pool of *Siloam*; the Fountain of the Blessed Virgin, the Pillar of *Solomon*, the Tombs of *Jehosaphat* and *Zachary*, and the Tomb of the Blessed Virgin. Also in this Valley at the foot of Mount *Olivet* stood the Village *Gethsamane*, adjoining to which was the Garden where our Saviour was betrayed. At the end of the Valley of *Jehosaphat* towards the City lies,

The Valley of *Hinnom*, on the West side of which lies the *Potters-field*, called the Field of Blood, and made a burying Place; it is a Plat of about 30 Yards long and 15 broad, the Earth of which is reported to consume the Corps put into it exceeding soon, which is believed by Mr. *Sandy's*, but contradicted by Mr. *Manderil*.

Mount *Calvary* where our Saviour was Crucified, stood on the West side of the City without the Walls, but by the Emperor *Constantine* it was taken in, and the noble Temple built upon it, which we have described in our account of the modern State of this City.

Mount *Gion* or *Gihon*, where *Solomon* was anointed King, stood also on the West at a farther distance.

The Valley of *Raphaim* or of Giants, which was very fertile in Oil, Wine, Corn and all sorts of Fruits, lay also on the West side the City.

The Valley of *Tophet*, called also the Valley of the Sons of *Hinnom*, lay on the South-east at the foot of the Mount of Offence, and was full of green Plats, Gardens and Groves, and water'd with the Brook *Kedron*.

Lastly, *Bethany*, a small Village on the Road that leads to *Jericho*, was made famous by our Saviour's raising *Lazarus* from the dead there.

The Territory of the Tribe of *JUDAH* lay next to *Benjamin* on the South, extending to the Mountains *Seir* and Frontiers of *Idumea*, in length 60 Miles; bounded on the East by the *Dead-Sea*, and on the West by the Tribes of *Dan* and *Simcon*. It was reckoned the largest and most populous Province of the whole Country, and the Inhabitants were esteemed the most Valiant, which with its being the



Royal Tribe, rendered it famous above the rest, and made its name be communicated to the whole Country. The Land was beautified with a very pleatant variety of Hills, Vallcys, Plains, Rivulets, and abounded with Pastures and Vineyards: Except toward the Southern part, where the neighbouring Sand and Rocks of *Idumæa*, communicated its Soil, and rendered it partly Desert. The *Canaanites* strictly so called dwelt here, and the Patriarch *Abraham* had his Seat and Sepulchre in this Province. The chief Places in *Judah*, were

*Libna*, a strong City seated in a narrow neck of Land part of this Tribe, which runs out Northward between *Benjamin* and *Dan*; it revolted from King *Jeram*, and became a Free State. *Maceda* or *Mekkedda*, a Royal City where the five *Amorite* Kings lay hid in the Cave, *Josh.* 10. 15. *Nicebha*, where God rained down great Hailstones upon the *Ammonites* to destroy them, *Josh.* 9. 11. it was a well fortified City, and stood also in a North-west corner near *Libna* and *Mekkedda*, in the Valley of *Teberinib*, and revolted also at the same time with *Libna*. Near these Cities was the place where *David* killed *Goliath*. *Bethsur* or *Beth-sura*, i. e. House on a Rock, being a strong Fortrefs seated on a Rocky Hill six or seven Miles South from *Jerusalem*: First fortified by King *Rehoboam*, and afterwards made impregnable by the *Maccabees*. *Emaus*, a Village seven Miles and half distant from *Jerusalem* to the South-west, famous for our Lord's shewing himself after his Resurrection to *Cleophas* and the other Disciple, *Luk.* 24. and related to for the Hot Baths near it, mentioned by *Strabo* as Miraculous, and by *Josephus* as natural. This Town was afterwards called *Nicopolis*, when re-edified by the *Romans* after the destruction of *Jerusalem*. *Bezek* the Royal Seat of King *Adoni-zedek*, who stirred the four other Kings to come with him in Battle against the *Israelites*, *Josh.* 10. *Beth-lehem* surnamed of *Judah*, to distinguish it from *Beth-lehem* of *Zabulon*, otherwise named *Ephrata*, built by the *Jebusites*, the Birth-place of King *David*, whence it was also called the City of *David*, stood five or six Miles South from *Jerusalem*: Famous to all Eternity for being honoured with the Birth-place of our Blessed Lord *Jesus Christ*, and for the Slaughter of innocent Babes by *Herod*, wherein a Son of his own was killed: The Town justly respected by the Primitive *Christians*, and beautified with a stately Temple over the Place of the Birth, built by the Empress *Helena* as we have already told our Reader in the account of Modern *Judæa*. *Thesua* or *Tecoa*, was seated on a Hill a few Miles distant from *Beth-lehem*, surrounded with excellent Pastures, the Birth-place of the Prophet *Amos*, and of the Woman that perswaded *David* to recal *Jonathan*. In the Wilderness near it the *Ammonites*, &c. who came against *Jerusalem* to battle, were upon his Prayer, confounded by God and destroyed one another, *2 Chr.* 20. *Zoar* *Tijer*, or *Sego*, formerly called *Bela*, stood 15 Miles South from *Jerusalem*, near the Coasts of the Dead-Sea: one of the *Pentapolis* or five Cities doomed to Destruction, (the other four being *Sodom*, *Gomorrhah*, *Seboim* and *Adama*) but preserv'd by *Lot's* entreaty, *Gen.* 19. 22. *Engaddi* before call'd *Asafontbamar*, i. e. the City of Balm-Trees, built upon a high and steep Rock on the Bank of the Dead-Sea, in a Country noted for its quantity of Balm-Trees, and other fragrant Plants. It gave name to the neighbouring Mountains, and near it was the Cave that *Lot* and his Daughters retired to from the Fire of *Sodom*.

*David* retired into the Wilderness of *Engaddi*, and hid himself in a Cave, where being followed by *Saul*, he cut off the Skirt of his Raiment in the Night, to shew him next Day that his Life was in his Power. *Odalla*, a Royal City taken by *Joshuah*. *Keila* or *Ceila*, a small City which *David* rescued with great Slaughter of *Philistines*, *1 Sam.* 23. *Hebron*, before called *Arba* and *Kirjath-Arba*, a most ancient City of *Canaan*, bought by *Abraham* for a Burying Place; near it lay the Plains of *Mamre*, where *Abraham's* Tent and the Oak stood, under which he entertained the Angels: After the *Egyptian* Captivity this Town was given to *Caleb*, and made a City of Refuge; when *David* came to the Crown he made this his Royal Seat till he took and rebuilt *Jerusalem*: It stood on a Hill 24 Miles South from *Jerusalem*. *Jerber*, a City of *Levites*. *Jeremoth* and *Tapna*, two Royal Cities conquered by *Joshuah*, stood near one another in the Western Borders. *Kirjath-jearim*, where the Ark of the Covenant abode for 20 Years after it was recovered from the *Philistines*, stood on a Hill in the Borders of *Dan*, to which Tribe it is placed by some, but being declared *Josh.* 18. 14. to be of *Judah*, we ought not to place it elsewhere. *Jezebel*, the Birth-place of *Amesab*, the General of *Absalom's* Forces stood five Miles South from *Hebron*. *Ziph*, which gave name to the Neighbouring Wilderness, wherein *David* hid himself from *Saul*, stood on a Hill 15 Miles South from *Hebron*; 'twas in this Wilderness that *David* with *Abishai* came into *Saul's* Camp by Night, and carried away his Cup and his Spear from his Bed-side, which he shewed next Day as a Testimony, that it was in his Power again to have slain him. *Maon*, which stood a few Miles more to the South, in a Desert Country full of Groves, Caves and Dens, afforded also a Place of Refuge to *David*. *Hebron* or *Odon*, a City of *Levites*, stood six Miles East from *Maon*. *Gozan*, near it gave name to a Territory. Mount *Carmel*, different from that *Elisha* frequented, which as we have already said stood far North, was the Place where *Churlish Nabal* dwelt. Southward from hence stood *Gelo*, the Birth-place of *Achitophel*. *Capsoel*, on the extream South Point of the Dead-Sea, and *Hasor* or *Chatfor*, a Frontier towards *Idumæa*. In the limits of this Tribe, near the Coasts of the Dead-Sea a few Miles South from *Engaddi*, stood the strong Fortrefs of *Masfada*, often mention'd by *Josephus* as impregnable, built by *Judas Maccabeus*, and by *Herod* much enlarged, improved, and beautified, who also built a Palace in it, the Walls were seven Furlongs in circuit, and the Town stood on a high Hill called *Cellis Aclie*, whereon were Fields yielding Corn to supply a Garrison. And such was its Strength, that it held out the longest of any against the *Romans*.

Adjoining to the Tribe of *Judah* on the West, lay the Tribes of *Dan* and *Simeon*; and beyond them on the Sea-Coasts, lay the Country possessed by the *PHILISTINES*, who were at first Masters of all the Coast, from the Borders of *Phœnicia* to the Frontiers of *Idumæa*, but *Joppa* and all Northward the *Israelites* had recovered; so that what they held during the flourishing State of *Israel*, consisted of the six Towns, *Gath*, *Acaron*, *Azotus*, *Ascalon*, *Gaza*, and *Majuma*, and the Land adjoining. Of which we will now speak before we enter *Dan*.

These



These were all Strong and Populous, and afforded Potent Armies, which being always assisted and increased by the *Edomites*, gave the *Israelites* as great disturbance as any of their Enemies whatsoever. They were an Idolatrous People Worshipping *Dagon*, *Belzebub*, and other Idols; they were also of strong and Gigantick Stature, descended from *Cassubim* and *Caphorim* of the Race of *Mizraim*, and conquered this Country before the time of *Abraham*, whose King always bore the name of *Abimelech*, as those of *Egypt* did the name of *Pharaoh* for many Ages. They were cruel Enemies to the *Israelites* for many Ages; *Sampson* first broke their Force; *David* overthrew them in many Battles, and took *Gath*; *Ozias* defeated them; *Hezekiah* chastiz'd them; and the *Maccabees* finally destroyed them.

*Gath* or *Gith*, stood on the Coast of the *Mediterranean-Sea* in the Lat. of 32. 12. about 25 Miles West from *Jerusalem*, it was the Birth-place of *Goliath* and many other Giants, a strong and populous City, taken by *David* and dismantled, rebuilt by *Rehoboam*, and again demolished by *Uzziah*, and afterwards by *Hazael* King of *Syria*; all which so effectually suppressed its ancient Grandeur, that it became of little note. In the *Christian* times, *Fulk* King of *Jerusalem* built a Castle on its Ruins.

*Accaron*, stood about 15 Miles South of *Gath*, and two or three Miles from the Sea-Coast; it was a strong and wealthy City, the Seat of their Idol *Belzebub*, and often mentioned in Scripture.

*Asdod* or *Astodod*, where stood the Temple of *Dagon*, into which the Ark of the Covenant being brought when it was taken at *Siloh*, the Idol fell down and broke to pieces; the City stood near the Sea-Coast 17 or 18 Miles South from *Accaron*, and was for a long time in very flourishing State; *Jonathan Maccabeus* took it, put the People to the Sword, burnt the Temple and Idol of *Dagon*, and therewith a great number of the Inhabitants who had fled to it for shelter; the *Romans* rebuilt it, and in the time the *Christians* possessed this Country, it was an Episcopal See, now a sorry Village.

*Ascalon*, seated also on the Sea-Coast, at about the same distance more South from *Azotus* as that was from *Accaron*; was reckoned the strongest of all the *Philistine* Cities, and therefore we hear less of its fate in Scripture than of the other Cities, being we suppose seldom attackt. In *Christianity* it was a Bishop's See, and in the Holy War was beautified with a new Wall and many fair Buildings by our King *Richard I.* A Temple built here in Honour to *Directa* the Mother of *Semiramis*, who by the Poets was feigned to be turned into a Fish in the neighbouring Lake, express'd by *Ovid* in his *Metamorph.* l. 6. was resorted to by the *Ethnicks*, as also another of *Apollo*.

*Gaza*, of like distance more South, stood also near the Sea-Coast on a Hill environed with Valleys, and those again with Hills, planted with all sorts of delicious Fruit, and was a large and strong City: Taken by *Caleb*, but recovered by the *Philistines*; notable on account of *Sampson*, who tore the Gares open, when they attempted to confine him in the City, and carried them away on his Shoulder to the top of a neighbouring Hill. *Alexander* the Great destroyed it, but 'twas rebuilt and made great resistance against the *Maccabees*, yet taken at last.

And Lastly, *Majama*, a few Miles South from *Gaza* seated on the Sea-Coast, and the mouth of the Rivulet *Befor*, was a Town of less note than the former, and chiefly remarkable by being the Port to *Gaza*.

The Territory of the Tribe of *DAN*, was bounded on the North by *Ephraim*; on the South by the Land of the Tribe of *Simeon*; on the East by those of *Benjamin* and *Judah*, and on the West by the *Mediterranean-Sea*, and the Country of the *Philistines*. Its extream length from North to South was about 45 Miles, but then in the Northern part it was very narrow, and in the Southern not exceeding 25 Miles in Breadth. The chief Towns were,

*Joppa*, hodie *Jaffa*, a very ancient Sea Port Town, built on a Rock on the Banks of the *Mediterranean-Sea*, in the extream North part of this Tribe, and in the Latitude 32. 20. Famous in those times for its Haven the only one of *Judea*; the Place where *Jonah* took shipping, when he fled from the Presence of God; where *Peter* raised *Dorcas* to life, and where in a Vision he was exhorted to Convert the *Gentiles*. By the *Ethnicks* said to be the Place where *Andromeda*, was rescued from the Sea Monster by *Perseus*, notable in the time of the *Maccabees*, for the burning of the *Syrian* Fleet before it; taken and destroyed by the *Romans*, rebuilt in the Holy War by King *Lewis* of *France*, Anno 1250. and now decayed and but a sorry Town. *Jamnia*, a few Miles South from *Joppa*, stood also on the Sea-Coast, in a pleasant Champion Country: it is often mentioned in the *Maccabean* War; and in *Christianity* was a Bishop's See. *Casphin*, a fortified Town seated on a small Lake six Miles East of *Jamnia*. *Gethemmen*, a City of *Levites* stood six or seven Miles South from *Casphin*. *Thamna* or *Tamnat*, where *Judah* store his Sheep, and where *Sampson* slew a Lion. *Bethsemer*, near the Sea-Coast six or seven Miles South from *Gath*, a City of *Levites*, whither the Ark was brought by the Yoke of Kine loosed by the *Philistines*, and where a great number of the Inhabitants were slain by God, for having looked into it, 1 Sam. 6. *Ajalon*, on the Frontiers of *Judah*, a City of the *Levites*, where 'tis said the Moon stood still at the Prayers of *Joshuah*, as the Sun did at *Gibeon's* *Lachis*, notable for the Death of *Amaziah* King of *Judah*. *Modin*, seated on a Hill, the Place of Birth and Sepulchre of the *Maccabee* Princes, whose Tombs of white Marble were built so high as to be a Land Mark for Seamen. *Eltece*, a City of *Levites*; near this City stood *Lehi* or the *Ramoth-Lehi* of *Sampson*, where he slew 1000 *Philistines* with the Jaw-bone of an Ass. *Gibbethon* or *Gabathon*, a City of *Levites*, but some time possessed by the *Philistines*, at the Siege whereof *Nadab* the Son of *Jeroboam* was slain by *Baasha*, 1 King. 15. *Saara* or *Zora*, a neat Town in a Plain, remarkable for the Birth of *Sampson*: Near it is the Fountain called *Fons Æthyopis*, said to be that wherein *Philip* Baptized the Eunuch. *Nehol-Estocol*, i. e. the *Torrent and Valley of the Cluster*, where the *Israelite* Spies, cut a Bunch of Grapes so big as to be carried between two Men, and Pomegranates and Figs, to carry back to *Moses*; was in the South limits of this Tribe.

The Tribe of *SIMEON* possessed the rest of *Judea*, extending from the Frontiers of *Dan*, to the extream Southern limits of *Judea*, where it was bounded by the Brook *Sichor* or River of *Egypt*, which parted it from *Idumæa*. A Country which in its South Parts was very Rocky and Barren, and therefore the Rivulet *Befor* may be reckoned its Boundary, beyond which they had few or no Towns, and being shut up between the two Rivulets on North and South, the Tribe of *Judah* on the East, and the



*Philistines* on the West; they had so little room, and so much disturbance from the *Philistines* and *Edomites*, that they were forced to disperse themselves among all the Tribes, in the Office of Scribes and Notaries. Their chief Towns were,

*Ziglag* or *Siceleg*, a Town formerly possessed by the *Philistines*, which *Achish* King of *Gath* gave to *David*, for a Refuge against *Saul*. *Hain* or *Aen*, a City of *Levites*. *Harm* or *Horme*, a Royal City subdued by *Joshuah*. *Debir*, before called *Kiriath-Sepher*, i. e. City of Learning, said to be the University of *Judea*, at first possessed by the Sons of *Anak* of *Gigantick* Stature, taken by *Othniel* and given to the *Levites*. *Gerar* or *Gerara*, a Royal City the Boundary of the *Canaanites*, and the Seat of the two *Abimelechs*, in the times of *Abraham* and *Isaac*. *Beerseba* or *Bersab*, named from the Well and the Oath between *Abraham* and *Abimelech*, *Gen.* 21. stood near the Brook *Beser* in the most South limits of *Judea*, and on that account often mentioned in Scripture, memorable for the Grove there planted by *Abraham*, and the wandrings of *Hagar* and her Son *Ismael*, when turned out of *Abraham's* House; where also the Prophet *Elijah* retired. Beyond this is a sandy Desert uninhabitable; except on the Sea-Coast, where stands two Towns, *Antbedon*, a small Port-Town destroyed by *Alexander* King of the *Jews*, re-edified by *Herod* and named *Agrippias*. And *Rhinocorura* *hodie* *Pharamica*, in the very extrem South, at the River *Sicbor*, or River of *Ægypt*: which Town was sometime possessed by the *Ægyptians*; in the Holy War it was strongly fortified, to oppose the *Turks* Auxiliaries coming from *Ægypt*.

We have now Travelled through all the Country, possessed by the Twelve Tribes of *Israel*. To which we must add *IDUMÆA* before we close this Chapter; for that was the Country of the Posterity of the other Son of *Isaac*, namely *Esau*, and was subjected to *Judab* by King *David*; 'tis true in the wicked Reign of *Jebooram*, they revolted and made themselves a King, as we are told *2 Chron.* 21. and continued a separate People always at Enmity with the *Israelites* for many Ages, yet at last being conquer'd, and the Inhabitants Circumcised by *Hircanus* about 170 Years before Christ; it was justly enough esteemed part of *Palestina* by the *Romans*, and so made the sixth Part in their Division, as we have elsewhere shewn.

*IDUMÆA*, lay on the South of *Judab*, between the *Mediterranean-Sea* on the West, and *Arabia Petraea* on the East and South. It is a Country of a dry sandy Soil, destitute of Water, except in Wells here and there Dug by the Inhabitants, and therefore no wonder it was always partly Desert. On the North runs a long Ridge of Rocky Mountains, named the Mountains of *Seir*, denominated from *Esau*, for the Word signified Hairy, alluding to the Hairyness of *Esau*. Towards the Sea-Coast the Earth is Prolifick enough, and yields Palm-trees in abundance; the famous Balm grew plentifully here in old times, but at present there is none to be found. As to the State of this Country, now and for many Ages past, little can be said; for the Natives are of the *Arabian* kind, a wild roving People, with whom none of our *European* Nations have ever conversed, and from whom, altho' we had communication, 'tis not probable any thing could be learnt, since they are so far from Polite, that 'tis to be doubted whether they have any kind of Literature among them; so that we can tell the Reader nothing of Cities or Towns seated here at present, and might pass

it over without further notice, if the frequent mention in Scripture of the *Edomites*, did not require an account of its ancient State.

To speak therefore of this Countrey so far as is necessary for the better understanding the Scripture, we must tell you; the first Inhabitants were the *Horites*, as we are told *Gen.* 14. whom *Esau* subjected, when he retreated into Mount *Seir*, to leave room for his Brother *Jacob* in *Canaan*. From *Esau*, who is also *Edom*, as it is over and over expressed in Scripture, the People were called *Edmites*, under which name we find them very often mention'd in the Wars of *Judab* and *Israel*; called also *Idumæa*, either by Latinizing *Edom*, or from the *Idumæans*, a People of *Arabia Felix*, who are said to have forsok their own Country and Planted here. They were a Rude and Barbarous People, Governed for some time by Kings, a List of eight of which is set down by *Moses*, *Gen.* 36. who reigned before any King or Government was established in *Israel*: But the Succession was broke, and the Government was sometimes Patriarchal in their several Tribes, and sometimes Regal over all. When *Moses* led the *Israelites* out of *Ægypt*, we may suppose it in this last State, for 'twas to the King of *Edom*, that he sent to desire Passage thro' the Land, (*Num.* 20.) The churlish answer of whom, to the civil Entreaties and Declarations of *Moses*, is an instance of the Rudeness of that People. Tho' protected by God at that time, (*Deut.* 2.) yet they were conquer'd afterwards by King *David*, (*2 Sam.* 8.) and govern'd by his and his Successors Vice-Roys for about 160 Years; at the end of which, taking advantage of the loose Reign of *Jebooram*, Son of *Jeboasaphat* King of *Judab*, they threw off the Yoke and resumed their own Government, and were never afterwards Reduced till the *Maccabean* times, when *Joannes Hyrcanus* conquered the *Edomites*, and made them receive Circumcision and the Law of *Moses*, (*Josephus Antiq. Lib.* 13. *Ch.* 14.) With the rest of *Judæa*, afterward conquered by the *Romans*, and since by the *Turks*, but it does not appear these maintain any Government here, except on the Sea-Coast for securing the Road from *Ægypt* to *Judæa*, where stood some Castles and a few scatter'd Villages, among which mentioned by Travellers, are *Larissa* or *Arissa*, as 'tis named by *Sandys*, seated not far from the Frontiers of *Judæa*, and two Miles from the Sea, a Castle with a Garrison of 100 Soldiers, surrounded by a few ordinary Houses, and furnished with good Water. *Salbia*, where a *Bassa* resides standing more towards the Frontiers of *Ægypt*. *Tina*, a Town upon the Sea-Shoar, and *Catia* a Castle with a small Garrison, where Toll is exacted of Merchants and Travellers, stands in a Desert, and is forced to send to *Tina* for Water and Sustenance. To which we must add *Torr*, a small Sea-Port Town and Castle seated near the Straights of *Suez*, or Division of *Ægypt* and *Arabia*, where an *Aga* is Governor, and keeps a Garrison; near it is a fair and spacious Convent of *Greek* Monks, who treated Mr. *Thevenot*, (as I suppose they do other Travellers,) very kindly.

The chief Places mentioned in ancient Authors are, *Dinhabeth*, the Seat of *Bela* the first King of *Edom*. *Pan*, the Seat of *Hadad*, the last of the Kings mentioned by *Moses*. *Anith*, the Royal City of *Hadad*, another of those Kings. *Caparosa*, *Gamararis* and *Elesa*, are noted by *Ptolemy* as chief Cities, but they are not mentioned in History.



In the later accounts of *Idumæa*, they reckoned all that part of the Tribe of *Simeon*, South of the Rivulet *Beja*, and even *Gaza* and the other *Philistine* Cities, within its bounds, whereby *Rhinocorura*, *Anthedon*, and even *Beerſheba*, which we have spoken of as part of *Simeon*, because conquered by them, altho' formerly indeed subject to the *Edomites*, to be part of *Idumæa*: And *Cluverius* names *Gaza* as its Capital City.

Before we quit *Idumæa*, we must not forget to mention, that it was here on the Hill *Cassius*, that the Great *Pompey* received his Death and Sepulchre, murdered by Command of *Ptolemy*, to whom he fled for Succour, and buried by an honest private Soldier, where afterwards the Emperor *Adrian* erected a Monument to his Memory.

## A R A B I A.

**A**Djoining to the Countries we have passed thro' lies *ARABIA*, a Land of vast extent, namely 20 Degrees or 1200 Miles from North to South, and 23 Degrees from East to West: But not proportionately Populous, being a Sandy Barren Soil, and affording but little Subsistence to either Man or Beast.

The Boundaries of *Arabia* are, on the North *Judæa*, *Syria*, and the River *Euphrates*; on the South the Ocean; on the East the River *Euphrates*, dividing it from *Diarbeck*, and the Gulphs of *Bassora* and *Ormuz*, which part it from *Persia*; and on the West *Palestine*, some part of *Egypt* and the *Red-Sea*; extending from the 15th. to the 35th Degree of Latitude, and therein possessing the Third, Fourth and Fifth Climates, and lying partly in the Torrid-Zone, the Tropick of *Cancer* passing over *Arabia-Felix*.

The AIR therefore is exceeding hot, and the SOIL in many Places so very rough, sandy, dry and barren, that tho' a little matter suffices Nature, yet the Earth produces not enough for its support. The Rivers are but few, and those shallow and small, and Rain is seldom seen there; so that they have only the Dew (which Nature affords them very plentifully) to Water the Land. The Sea-Coasts and Banks of Rivers afford indeed a better Soil; there the Ground yields Armatick Plants, and Delicious Fruits, as Aloes, Cassia, Spikenard, Cardamum, Cinnamon, Pepper, Dates, Oranges, Lemons, &c. Frankincense, Myrrh, and other valuable Gums. Honey and Wax, are also plentiful in this Country; and in their Seas, they Fish up the best Coral and Pearls. Among their Beasts, the Camel seems to be purposely created for this Soil, where sandy Deserts afford no Water in many Days Travel; this Creature is so supplied by Nature, with a Faculty of throwing up the Liquids of his Stomach into his Throat, and Perspires so little, that he requires not Water in three Days, and can well subsist 14 days without it; he carries a Burthen of 600 Pound weight, which need never be taken off his Back in the whole Journey, for he only kneels down to rest, and rises with his Loading on. These therefore are the carriage Beasts they use in their Trade Journeys, which are perform'd in Caravans, or very great Troops of Camels with Guards to defend from Robbery. Their Horses are small and ill shaped, but wondrous Fleet; these are used by the wild *Arabians*, who live upon Spoil and

Robbery, and themselves as well as Horses are exceeding swift of Foot. They are sly and silent, upon you before you're aware, and gone before you can think of pursuing: And this leads me to speak of the Humane kind, for we can hardly call them Men.

The Inhabitants are of a Tawny Complexion, whence some derive the name of the Country, from the Hebrew Word *Arab*, which signifies *Black*: Others derive the name from *Harabi*, which in the same Language signifies a Thief or Robber, alluding to the nature of the Men who have in all Ages been so addicted to this Vice, that as *Strabo* del Rio observes, with the Jews it was usual to call a Thief an *Arabian*, as a Merchant a *Canaanite*, and a Mathematician a *Chaldean*. They are of mean Stature, Raw-boned, Feminine Voices, swift as we have said of Foot, of no set dwellings, except on the Sea-Coasts, where Cities and Towns are filled with a more regular Generation, who exercise Trades and carry on Traffick: But all the Inland Country is void of settled Habitations, the Men roving from Place to Place, and sleeping under Tents pitched at Night, where their Convenience or Pleasure has led them. In the middle Ages the Inhabitants (at least those of *Arabia Petraea*) bore the name of *Saracens*, from *Sarra* Desert and *Saken* to inhabit, as some say; or more probably perhaps, from *Sarak* a Thief. So *Scaliger* in his Book *de Emend. Temp. Saracenis*, (says he) *à vicinis dicuntur ab Elfarack, i. e. ἀπὸ γειττονικῶν, quod rapinis victitent.* A People of whom *Amianus Marcellinus* (an Author of the fourth Century) thus Writes. 'The *Saracens* whom we are neither  
' to wish for our Friends nor Enemies, are a Mar-  
' tial People half naked, clad as far as the Groin  
' with painted Cassocks, ranging up and down on  
' Camels and swift Horses, as well in Peace as in  
' troublesome times. Not used unto the Plough;  
' to Plant Trees, or get their living by Tillage;  
' they wander from one Place to another, without  
' House or Home, or any constant Dwelling-Place,  
' or the Use of Laws; nor can they long endure the  
' same either Air or Soil; the manner of their liv-  
' ing being always flitting like ravenous Kites, who  
' snatch up a Prey in their flight, but never will  
' tarry if time be required to carry it off. Their  
' Food is chiefly Venison and Fowls which they  
' catch, or Milk and the Herbs they can meet with,  
' being ignorant of Corn and Wine. Their Wives  
' they only hire for a time, who tho' for a shew of  
Matrimony,



Marrimony, present their Husbands with a Spear and a Tent, Part when they please. Both Sexes are most extreemly given to Carnal Lusts, the Women as rambling as the Men, Married in one Place and brought to bed in another, and leave their Children where they fall, without more Care of them. Thus far he, and for ought appears, this Character exactly suits them still, for all Travellers whose Occasions lead them within their reach find them a rapacious rude Rout, who come in Drove to Rob, catch what they can, and flee away, and as he says like Kites or Wolves, spare nothing that they can carry off, nor scruple murdering those that oppose them.

But having thus shewn the worst of their Character, we must to do them Justice however allow that among the Civiliz'd *Arabians*, have been found Men of most acute Parts, and profound Knowledge in Philosophy, Physick, Astronomy, and Mathematicks: And the common Arithmetical Characters used by us, are said to be of their Invention.

The *Arabick* Language is of large extent, for the *Alphabets* of *Mahomet* being written in it, has made it the learned Language of the *Turks*, and therefore taught in Schools throughout all their Dominions, and spoken as *Latin* with us, by all the Men of Fashion among them.

*Christianity* was Preached here by *St. Paul*, and propagated for some Ages; but upon the Rise and Progress of *Mahomet's* new Religion, it was utterly exterminated, and the whole Country now adheres to that.

*Arabia* was first Peopled by *Chus* the Son of *Chem*, whose Posterity spread themselves over *Arabia-Petrea* and *Arabia-Felix*, and erected many separate Governments. Afterwards, the Children of *Madian*, the Son of *Keturah*; the Children of *Ismael* the Son of *Abraham* by *Hagar*; the Children of *Amalek* the Grandson of *Esau*; grew up to considerable Nations, in the *Arabia-Petrea*.

The *Madianites* (who were a different Branch of the Family of *Madian*, from that spoken of in our account of *Palestine*) dwelt in that part of *Arabia* which joined to *Aegypt*, and had preserved the Worship of the true God, when *Moses* retired thither, and married the Daughter of *Jethro* their Priest; and therefore afforded the *Israelites* all assistance and friendship, when they passed thro' their Country in their flight from *Aegypt*. Of these the *Kenites* mentioned in Scripture were a Branch.

The *Amalekites* were a great and powerful Nation seated on the back of *Idumaea*, and shew'd themselves bitter Enemies to the *Israelites*; setting upon them at *Repheidim* in their passage to *Canaan*, where a remarkable Battle was fought, wherein while *Moses* held up his Hands to God, *Israel* prevailed; but when he let them fall *Amalek* prevailed; wherefore *Aaron* and *Hur* stayed up his Hands till the Evening, and the *Amalekites* were defeated, *Exod.* 17. For their Enmity to *Israel*, doomed to Desolation by God; and accordingly King *Saul* was by *Samuel* directed to go against the *Amalekites*; and utterly destroy them and their Children and Cattle; which he performed in part but brought their King *Agey* alive; with which the Lord was angry, and caused *Samuel* to hew him in pieces, the particulars whereof see, *1 Sam.* 15.

The *Ismaelites* were a most populous Nation, or rather 12 populous Nations, descended from the

12 Sons of *Ismael*, which spread themselves all over *Arabia*. Some of whom were Merchants trading into *Aegypt* with Spices, Frankincense, Balm, and other rich Goods of *Arabia*; but most of them were Thieves and Robbers, the Ancestors of the *Sarazens* above mentioned, and like them, a Vagabond Race of Men, whose Hand was against every Man, and every Man's against them, according to the prediction concerning *Ismael*, *Gen.* 16. 12.

The Barrenness of that part of *Arabia*, which adjoined to their Neighbours, whether on the side of *Aegypt* and *Idumaea*, as on the side of *Chaldea*, may be a reason that it was never conquered, by those great Monarchies; for otherwise the Spices and Gums of *Arabia-Felix*, which they were all acquainted with, would undoubtedly have tempted them to possess it. Accordingly we find *Alexander* intended its Conquest, but was hindered by Death. And *Augustus* sent an Army thither out of *Aegypt*, but the heat of the Air, and the Drought of the Soil so incommoded them, that they were forced to return after the first Defeat. And so it stood under its own Government, divided into many Kingdoms and States when *Mahomet* first appear'd, and by broaching a new Religion, erected a new Monarchy.

*Mahomet* was a Person of obscure Birth and mean Fortune, but happening to get into the Service of a wealthy Merchant of *Mecca*, and after his Death, into the favour of his Mistress, so far as to be accepted her second Husband, he at once jump'd into a rich Estate, which for some Years he continued to employ in Trade: He was illiterate, but Master of a subtil Wit and aspiring Genius, and not satisfied with the good Fortune he had gain'd, would needs set himself at work to obtain Reputation by pretending himself at first to be a Prophet, which they say he was tempted to, by the Fits of the Falling Sickness he was subject to, these Fits he pretended to be Transports, wherein his Soul was carried to Heaven to converse with God. *Sergius* a Monk who had been banished his Country for the *Nestorian* Heresy, becoming intimate with *Mahomet*, and being Master of more Knowledge, was able somewhat to cultivate the very rude Enthusiasms which *Mahomet* threw forth, and both together formed a Religion, which consisted of *Gentilism*, *Judaism*, and *Arrian Christianity* blended together; for they taught that *Moses* was a Prophet sent by God, whom the *Gentiles* having not received, nor the *Jews* obeyed, he sent *Jesus Christ* the second and greater Prophet; but his Doctrine being not duly received, God had now sent his last and greatest Prophet *Mahomet*. By owning *Moses*, he gained the *Jews*, and by granting *Jesus Christ* to be a Prophet, which was almost as much as the *Arrians* allow'd, he gave them content, and withal declaring peremptorily against Images, he pleased the *Iconoclastes*; which two Sects of *Christians* having been driven out of the *Roman Empire*, were pretty numerous in *Arabia*; and Lastly, by his Doctrine of *Polygamy* and Promises of sensual Delights in the future State, he captivated the Libertines, in so much that he soon found a greater number of Believers than he could have expected. His good Success thus far, led him to proceed farther, and therefore by another Doctrine he set up for Power, namely he enjoined all his Votaries to Propagate the Faith even by the Sword, and to all that lost their Lives in that Service, a Promise was made of especial Beatitude in the other World. The *Magistrates* of *Mecca* alarm'd at this bold Pretender, endeavour'd



deavoured to seize him ; but escaping by flight he settled at *Medina*, and thence propogated his Doctrine, which spread most wonderfully. At the same time the *Sarazens* having served the Emperors in their Wars, and been ill rewarded were a disgusted People, and ready to joyn in any Project for Dominion ; these fell in with *Mahomet*, whose Religion pleased them ; and so made him Monarch of *Arabia*. His Government began *A. C.* 622. and he died *Anno.* 632. and was succeeded by *Ububexer*, who took the Title of *Caliph*, which signifies High-Priest as well as Prince, and reigned two Years ; succeeded by *Haumur* or *Omar*, who added to his Dominion *Persia*, *Aegypt*, *Palestine*, and part of *Syria* and *Mesopotamia*. *Osman* who succeeded him added *Barbary* ; and brought the Empire to the highest State that it arrived at in that Succession : For they began to fall into Dissention. *Haly* the Kinsman of *Mahomet* claimed the Government, and in the end obtained it, but was murdered after a short Reign. *Osman's* Heirs got again into the Throne, and made some Additions to their Dominions ; so that *Asia-Minor*, *Armenia* and *Mesopotamia*, besides the Countries we have already mentioned, were all subjected to the *Mahometan Sarazens* within the space of one Hundred Years. A wonderful and swift Progress ! But such as it pleased God for the Sins of the Eastern Empire to permit.

*Mahomet II.* the twentieth *Caliph* about *A. D.* 760. removed the Seat of the Empire to *Bagdat*. And about an Hundred Years after, *Aegypt* set up a *Caliph* of its own, to whom the *Arabians* submitted. But that Race after having reigned for about 300 Years, were outed by the *Turks*, and those again by the *Mama'lukes*, who kept the Government about 250 Years ; till at last *Aegypt* and all the Dominions of that *Caliph*, was finally subjected to the *Turkish* Empire by *Selimus I.* *Anno.* 1517.

Concerning the *Turks* who have so long possessed all the *Sarazen's* Empire, we shall speak of them when we come to *Turcomania*, which was their original Country. 'Tis sufficient here to say, that they are exact Believers on *Mahomet*, and make their Pilgrimages out of a Religious Zeal to this Country, to visit at *Medina* the Tomb of that pretended Prophet, and pay their Devotions at *Mecca* his Birth-place.

*ARABIA* is divided in Ancient Geography into three large Parts, *viz.*

*ARABIA DESERTA*, which is the most Northern Part.

*ARABIA PETRÆA*, the Eastern Part, and *ARABIA FOELIX*, which was by much the largest Part, possessed all the South.

In its Present State the *DESERTA*, is little regarded by the *Turks*, but possessed by divers Princes paying Tribute to the Port : Of these the Chief are,

The Principality of *Anna*, which is the most North lying between the River *Euphrates* on the East, and *Syria* on the West and North.

The Principality of *Argia*, a Midland Country lying West from *Bassora*.

The Principality of *Chevibeda*, extending from the Mouth of *Euphrates* Westward near 300 Miles.

*Arabia PETRÆA*, is immediately under the Government of the *Turks* by a Beglerbeg, who resides at *Bosra*, whence 'tis call'd the Beglerbegate of *Bosra* or *Busereth*.

*Arabia FOELIX*, is divided into many Principalities, *viz.* The Principality of *Mecca*, which is sometimes reckoned part of the *Petraea* : And lies along the Coast of the *Red-Sea*.

The Principality of *Saba*, next adjoining to *Mecca* on the South, extending also on the same Sea-Coast.

The Principality of *Mocha*, possessing the Cape of Land, which makes the Strait of *Babel-Mandel*, at the Mouth of the *Red-Sea*.

The Principality of *Xael* or *Hadramut*, lying along the Coast of the Ocean or *Arabian-Sea*.

The Principality of *Seger* or *Alibanali*, upon the same Sea more Eastward.

The Principality of *Femini* on the same Sea-Coast to the Cape, and back into the Gulph of *Ormuz*.

*Vodane* Principality, lies on the Coast of the Gulph of *Ormuz*, and the *Sinus Persicus*.

The Principality of *Mascalat*, lies on the West of *Vodane*, along the Coast of the Gulf of *Bassora* or *Sinus Persicus*.

The Principality of *Bahraim* or *Gerrberma*, possesses the rest of the Coast of the *Persian* Gulph.

These are the Countries that lie on the Coasts, and so are frequently visited by *European* Traders.

But the Within-Land Country, which comprehends many large Principalities, the Names of some whereof are *Jamana*, *Higgiaz*, *Tabama*, *Oman* and *Fortachi* ; are little known.





### ARABIA DESERTA Comprehends,

#### Chief Cities.

The Principality of Anna, {  
 Anna,  
 Mesebeid-Urfin,  
 Sumiscabae,  
 Tzammec.

#### Argia Princip.

{  
 Argia,  
 Faras,  
 Maaden,  
 Thaalabia,  
 Aladi,  
 Dhat Aliemni.

{  
 Chavabeda,  
 Tangia,  
 Megiara,  
 Merab.

### ARABIA PETRÆA.

The Beglerbegate of Bosra or Bufferich.

{  
 Bosra,  
 Tabuc,  
 Acra,  
 Herat or Petra  
 Sur,  
 Madian,  
 Rephaim,  
 Kadesh Barnea,  
 Horeb,  
 Sinai, } Mounts.

ARABIA



## ARABIA FOELIX Containing on the Sea-Coasts.

Principalities of { Mecca,  
Medina,  
Mecca. { Tarif,  
Algiar or Egra.

Principalities of { Zibet,  
Dhafar or Tacseh,  
Zibet or Zaba. { Almacharana,  
Siden-Giodda.

Mocha Kingd. { Mocha,  
Aden,  
Laghi.

Xaeli or { Xael,  
Hadramut. { Dofar.

Alibanelly. { Alibanelli,  
or Seger. { Guebelhaman.

Jeman Princip. { Calhat or  
Quelhat,  
Mafcate.

Vodane. { Sohar,  
Corfean.

Mafale. { Mafcalat,  
Nubau,  
Suchula.

Bahraim { Elcatif,  
Laffach or  
or Labfa,  
Gerrhen. { Abfa,  
Bifca.

In the Mid-land.

Jamama. { Jamama,  
Chodaia,  
Tima.

Higgiaz. { Cafailo,  
Bain-Nakel,  
Carn-Almanfel.

Tchama. { Saana,  
Saada.

Fartachi. { Fartach,  
Mahri,  
Negram.

Oman. { Amanzirifdin,  
Marair.

To Proceed now to the Particular Description of Arabia.

ARABIA DESERTA, called by the Turks *Berii Arbilstan* or *Beriara*, is bounded on the East with *Diarbeck* or *Mesopotamia*; on the West, with *Palestine* and *Arabia Petrea*; on the North with *Palmyrena* or part of *Syria*; and on the South by *Arabia Foelix*.

It has its Name from the vast sandy Deserts whereof it consists, thro' which those that Travel must carry their Provisions, and be guided as at Sea by the Stars or Mariners Compass. A Countrey (saith *Guilandinus Melchior*, who Travelled thro' it;) where are found neither Men nor Beasts, Birds or Trees, Grass or Pasture, and nothing to be seen but rowling Sands or craggy Mountains: But the Land on the East, which lies along the Banks of the *Euphrates* is a better Soil, and affords Plants and Food to the Inhabitants of divers Towns seated in that Part.

This Country was first inhabited by the Posterity of *Huz* the Son of *Nachor*, and the Sons of *Abraham* by *Keturah*, 'twas the Country where *Job* dwelt, and the Land whence the Wise Men came to Worship *Christ*; the Proofs whereof would be too large to be put down here: Those that desire them, may consult *Frid. Spanheim's History of Job*, where it is largely shewn.

The Barrenness of the Ground is a Protection to the Princes of it; for the Grand Seignior sets no value upon these Deserts, and the Towns are but few. The Chief are,

*Anna*, a large well built Town, the Capital of this Part of *Arabia*, and formerly a famous Mart, now not much frequented; it stands on the River *Euphrates*, in a fruitful and pleasant Soil, in the North limits of this Province, and near the Frontiers of *Diarbeck*, Lat. 35. D. *Mescheid-Ursin*, 60 Miles South from *Anna*. *Sumiscabac*, seated more to the West near the Frontiers of *Arabia Petrea*, supposed by *Melchior* to be the ancient *Saba*, the City of the *Sabaans* who pillaged *Job*, and who were the Descendants of *Sheba*, the Grandson of *Abraham* by *Keturah*. *Tsamma*, on the South Frontiers of the Principality of *Anna*, in the Lat. 31. And in the Mid-land

*Argia*, which gives name to a Principality, is a small Town 70 Miles distant from the River *Euphrates* to the West, in or near the same Latitude with *Balsora*. *Faara*, stands within 60 Miles more West. *Maaden* or *Noera*, seated also 70 or 80 Miles more Westward. *Tbaalabia*, near the Mountains that divide *Petrea* from the *Deserta*. *Aladi* and *Dhat-Aliamin*, more South; are the chief Towns of this Principality.

*Chavebeda*, a small Town which also gives Name to a Prince, whose other chief Towns are *Tangia*, *Megiara* and *Merah*, all seated within Land, and so unknown but by Name; they all lie in the Latitudes of 28 to 30 D.

ARABIA PETRÆA, now called *Dase-lik Arabistan*, or *Barraab* and *Bathalabab*, but more generally the *Beglerbegate* of *Bosra*; hath for its Bounds on the East *Arabia Deserta*; on the West the *Red-Sea*, and the *Isthmus* of *Egypt*; on the North *Palestine*; and on the South *Arabia Foelix*.

The Soil too much like the former, but in some measure better cultivated and more Travelled thro' on account of Trade. The Deserts of *Sin* and *Pharaan* or *Paran*, wherein the *Israelites* wandered so long, lay within the limits of this Province. The chief Towns are,

*Bosra* or *Bufferith*, seated in Midland Lat. 32. in the back of *Palestine*, about 150 Miles East from the Lake of *Galilee*, it was repaired by *Augustus Cesar*, and made a Colony of *Romans* by *Alexander Severus*; an ancient City mentioned by *Moses*, Gen. 36. 33. Under the *Turks*, as it had been under the *Romans*, made the Metropolis of this Country, and the Seat



of the Beglerbeg. *Tibec*, far more South, in the Lat. 30 D. *Acre*, about 100 Miles more to the West, and about 50 South from the Shoar of the *Dead-Sea*. And *Hera* which was the ancient *Petra*, the Capital of the Country, seated more Westward in Lat. 29. and 100 Miles direct South from *Hebron*, a City of great Note and Strength in former times, when it was called *Sela* and *Jekheel* and often mentioned in Scripture, particularly 2 Kings 14. when *Amaziah* took it. It long resisted the *Romans*, and for its impregnable Strength, used by the *Soldans* of *Egypt*, as the repository for their richest Treasures. Other Places mentioned in Scripture, supposed to be in this Province are *Swi*, near the *Red-Sea*, the first encampment of *Israel*. *Midian*, the City of *Jehe*, whose Daughter *Moses* married. *Rephaim*, where the *Amalekites* were defeated. *Kadesh-barnea*, the Station of *Israel* when the Spies were sent to discover the Land of *Canaan*. There, where *Aaron* and *Uriah* mutinied and were punished by God. Lastly, the two Mounts *Sinai* and *Horeb* stood in the limits of this Province, in the West Part at the head of the *Red-Sea*.

*Sinai*, is extream high but of easie ascent, it is call'd by the *Arabians* *Gittol-Moufa*, that is, *Moses* Mountain. At the Foot of it is a fair well built Convent surrounded with strong Walls, from whence the ascent was cut in Steps in the Rock, by the direction of the Empress *Helen* quite to the top. The Monks pretend to shew Pilgrims the very Place where *Moses* abode the 40 Days, and where he received the Tables of the Law. On the top of the Mountain are two Churches, one for the *Greeks*, and another for the *Latines*, and in the ascent many Cells and little Chapels, where formerly Monks and Hermits abode to the number of 14000, as report informed *Tortemur*, but when he was there they were empty, being driven thence by the *Arabians*: The Names of those Chapels are enumerated by that Author, who also tells us that the number of Steps which lead from the Convent to the top of the Mount, were 14000 before they were damag'd, many now being broken, but those that remain are well made and of easie ascent: From this number of Steps, a judgment may be made of the height of the Mount.

*Horeb*, where God appeared to *Moses* in a burning Bush, is but a little distant from *Sinai*, and not near so high, it has also a Church and Monastery upon it, whose Friars are Hospitable to Strangers, and shew where the *Israelites* worshipped the Golden-Calf.

*ARABIA FOELIX*, called *Jeman* or *Hagaman* by the Inhabitants, lies on the South of the two *Arabia's Deserts* and *Petras*, surrounded on all other sides by the Sea; that is to say, the *Red-Sea* on the West, the Gulf of *Perse* and *Ormuz* on the East, and the Ocean or *Arabian-Sea* on the South. A Country so vastly large, as to be reckoned 3000 Miles in circumference, extending from the 14th. to the 27th. Degree of Latitude.

Its Name implies a great Felicity, and by the Ancients it was represented as one of the most fertile and delicious Lands in the World; but either they took their Reports upon trust, or the Soil is wonderfully altered; for at this time none of that fecundity appears. The Mid-land being all Sandy, Mountains, Dry and Barren: So that near the Sea-Coasts, and on the Banks of the few Rivers only, can any Praise at all be bestowed on its Soil. 'Tis true 'tis by much the most fruitful part of *Arabia*, and so comparatively with the rest, it may be called

*Happy*; and withal its Products are exceeding valuable, as Frankincense, peculiar to this Country, Myrrh, Odoriferous Plants of various kinds; which to the Ancients who knew not the way to *India*, might rightly enough endear this Countrey to them. And in such esteem it was, even so late as *Strabo* *Marcellinus's* time, that he gives us this delicious Character of it. The happy *Arabians*, so called 'because so rich in Corn as well as plentiful in Cattle, Vines, and odoriferous Spices of all kinds. So acquainted with all Blessings, which either Element can afford, well furnished with Roads and quiet Harbours for Shipping, the Towns of Trade and Merchandize standing very thick. Besides most wholesome Fountains of Medicinal Waters, they enjoy divers Brooks and Rivers very clear and pure, and a Temperature of Air exceeding healthy: But if the rest of his Character may be judged of by this last Article, what he says must go for nothing: the Air cannot have been other than what it is, and how any Man can applaud the temperature of the Air of this Country, of which two Third Parts lie within the Tropick, I do not understand. What he says of its Harbours and Towns of Trade, might indeed be true then, but is not so now: the *Red-Sea* was very much frequented by Merchant Ships, before the Cape of Good-Hop. and Passage that way to *India* was known; and *Arabia* was the Market where the Goods of *India* and *China*, and all the Eastern Islands were sold to the Merchants of *Egypt* and *Barbary*, who brought them over Land to *Grand Cairo*, and other Ports in the *Mediterranean*, where the *Italian*, and other *European* Merchants used to buy them. But now that the Goods of *India* and *Persia*, are brought directly by Sea, and the Commodities of *Arabia* are less useful to us than formerly, *European* Traffick thither is but small.

Of this Part of *Arabia* the Grand-Seignior is not Master, some of the Princes indeed are Feudataries, but 'tis only some Cities and small Provinces that he is immediate Lord of.

We have mentioned the several Principalities already, we shall pass thro' them, and shew the Reader as many of the Cities and chief Towns, as we could get information of by consulting the best Travellers and Geographers.

*MECCA*, a Country of about 500 Miles extent along the Shoar of the *Red-Sea*, takes its name from the City *Mecca*, the Place where *Abraham* first broached his false Religion, and is govern'd by a Prince called the Emir of *Mecca*, And lies next adjoining to the *Arabia Petraea*, which we last came from, and whereof it is by some Geographers reckoned part. The chief Places are,

*Mecca*, seated in Latit. 23. about 60 Miles from the Coast of the *Red-Sea*, No *Christian* is permitted to come into it; but the *Turks* inform us, 'tis a most wealthy and populous City, being the grand Staple of Trade for the Commodities of this Country, *Egypt*, *Persia*, *India*, &c. Three Caravans arrive yearly from *India*, *Damascus*, and *Grand-Cairo*, with whom vast numbers of Pilgrims, constantly resort hither to pay their Devotions; every Musulman being bound once in his Life-time either by himself or Proxy, to Visit *Mecca* and *Medina*, especially *Mecca* to pay their Devotions at the *Kiaaba* or *Betuelab*; i. e. House of God, which is a small square House 15 foot long, 12 foot broad and about 30 foot high, which stands in the middle of the Town, and is believed by the *Turks* to have been built by the

Patriar



*Patmarch Jerusalem*, it is girt round with two Belts of Gold, one low and the other toward the top, the Door is of Silver, and a Golden Spout carries the Water off its top, the Walls are constantly cover'd with hangings of Silk, and a Court round it enclosed with Walls and beautified with Columns and Arches, serves for the performance of Devotions; the House it self being opened only on the *Ramadan*, and other solemn Festivals (*Trevent*). Notwithstanding the common Opinion that the Pilgrims, come into these Parts, chiefly to visit the Tomb of *Mahomet*. Mr. *Trevent* tells us that is a vulgar Error, for 'tis the *Kieabe* that their Law obliges every Musulman to make his Devotions at once in his Life time, and many having performed their Devoirs there, return without visiting the Tomb. This contributes much to the Wealth of the Place, which contains about 6000 Families. It is not walled round, and therefore they say *Christians* are forbid to come within five Miles of it, lest in the Crowd of Visitors, the Mosque be prophaned or its Wealth stolen; for in memory of their Prophet, who as we have said, lived and first broach'd his Religion here; there is a most Glorious Mosque erected, accounted the most stately in the World, its Roof rising in a lofty Cupola is richly gilded, and the two Towers at the ends, are of exceeding height and curious Architecture it is said to have an hundred Gates, and as many Windows, and is adorned within side with most costly Gildings, and the richest Tapestries. So Steril a Soil is this Countrey, even at no farther distance from the Sea, that they have no Water in *Mecca*, but what they catch of Rain, or fetch from other Places.

*Medina*, called *Medina Tshnabi*, i. e. the City of the Prophet, the Place whither *Mahomet* retired when driven from *Mecca* by the Magistrates, and where he was buried, stands 240 Miles North from *Mecca*, about 80 Miles from the Coast of the *Red-Sea*, upon the River *Laakie*; formerly named *Jatrib*, by some supposed to be the Birth-place of *Mahomet*, and then a small Village, which he fortified and made his Seat, while he spread his Religion and Authority abroad. Now grown up into a large and wealthy City, whither Pilgrims resort from all parts of the *Turks* Dominions to view the Sepulchre of *Mahomet*, which, not hanging in an Iron Coffin, suspended by the force of a Magnet at top, as was of old times reported, stands within an Iron Grate, covered with a green Velvet Pall, sent annually by the Grand-Seignior, the old one being cut into small Shreds, and sold for Relicks, in a Mosque of most magnificent and sumptuous Structure, being supported by 400 Pillars, and enlghtened with 300 Silver Lamps continually burning. The Tomb has a rich embroidered Canopy over it, but is of its self of no Magnificence or Beauty. The Town stands in a Barren Plain, at some distance from two Mountains, namely *Othou* on the North, and *Air* on the South. *Algier* or *Egra*, upon the Coasts of the *Red-Sea*, is the Port to *Medina*. *Tarif*, a populous Town 100 Miles distant from *Medina* to the East, seated upon Mount *Ghaquan*, which is the coolest Air and most fertile of *Arabia*, abounding with Fruits, and furnishes *Medina* with great part of its Sustenance.

*Siddin*. *Ziden* or *Sidde Giotta*, seated on the *Red-Sea*, about 60 Miles South-west from *Mecca*, is the Port to that City; and therefore a place of Trade and resort, Wealthy and well built.

*Dhafar* or *Tafeb*, the Capital of that Division of *Arabia*, call'd *TEHADMA* in the old Maps, about 60 Miles from the *Red-Sea*, in the Mid-way between *Siden* and *Ziber*, Lat. 18 D. 30 m. near the mouth of the River *Nauzaren* is also a Place of Trade; either this or *Ziber* was the ancient *Sieba*, for Authors differ, of which this Description is given by ancient Writers, namely, that it was seated on a Mountain, the most beautiful of all *Arabia*, rich in the excellencies of Nature, especially in Frankincense, a Gum peculiar to them only, and growing in a Wood of 100 Miles long in its Neighbourhood.

The Principality of *ZIBET* or *SABA*, supposed to be the Country of the *Sabians*, whose Queen came to visit *Solomon*, lies on the South of *Mecca* and *Yahama*, stretch'd along the Coasts of the *Red-Sea* above 400 Miles in length. A Country remarkably rich in Balm, Myrrh, Cassia, Manna, and especially Frankincense, the best whereof in the whole World, being here produced in a Wood of 100 Miles long, of almost only that Tree which yields it, gathered Spring and Autumn, and sold to all Nations. The chief Cities are,

*ZIBET* or *SIBET*, the Metropolis of the Principality to which it gives name, and a most rich and populous City seated in the 16 Degree of North Latitude about 50 Miles from the Banks of the *Red-Sea*. This is the greatest Mart in the World for Frankincense, Myrrh, and the other rich Drugs of this Land; and therefore aspired to by the *Turks*, who took it about 100 Years ago, but lost it again, and for ought appears, 'tis now subject to its own Prince.

The Kingdom of *MOCHIA*, adjoins to *Saba* on the South; extending Southward to the Straights of *Babel-mandel*, which is the Mouth of the *Red-Sea*, and reaching Eastward along the Coasts of the *Arabian-Sea* about 350 Miles, comprising therein *Aden* and *Laghi*. Wherein stand

*Zenan*, seated 180 Miles North North-west from *Mocha*; a considerable City as large as *Bristol* (says Sir. H. Middleton) the Place of Residence of the *Turkish Bassa*, and strongly built, but partly of Stone. The Wall about it is of Earth, but strengthened with Turrets in every part, and is a good Defence to the City. There are also two Castles, one to the North on a Hill which overlooks the Town, and defends it from the wild *Arabians*, and another on the East side, which is the Bassa's Palace, and enclosed with several Walls and Batteries. The City stands upon the Coast of the *Red-Sea* in a stony Valley, and has no fresh Water but what is fetched out of Wells, and withal, Wood is very scarce altho' the Winter be extream cold.

*Damare*, 40 Miles from *Zenan*, a well built Town of five different Parts which stand distinct, seated in a fruitful Plain, with Water and all sorts of Grain in good plenty; and is therefore a Store-house for all the neighbouring Places.

*Tayes* or *Tees*, a good City surrounded with a mud Wall, and guarded by a strong Castle on the top of a Hill. *Eufres*, a little Town where an *Arabian* Saint is buried, and is visited by great numbers of superstitious Pilgrims. *Moufa*, a Town not great but populous, about a Days Journey from *Mocha*; the Country about it yields Indico. All these Towns lie between *Zenan* and *Mocha*, and were passed thro' by Sir Hen. Middleton, in the Year 1610. who tells us, the *Turks* are Masters of the Maritime Towns and the flat Country, but the *Arabians* maintain their own Jurisdiction in the Hills.



**MOCHA** *Mohz*, or *Melechla-Saberda*, is a large and populous City seated at the entrance of the *Red-Sea*, in 13 Deg. and half North Latitude. About 150 Years ago, it was according to *Baldus*, no more than a Village inhabited by Fishermen; but so early as 1610. Sir *Hen. Middleton* describes it as a rich and populous Place, about a sixth Part so big as *Zenan*, which as we have said is equal to *Bristol*. It stands in a salt, sandy, barren Soil, close by the Sea side, destitute of Walls, but guarded by a Castle built of Stone by the *Turks* in 1612. on the Sea side. The Streets are large neat and clean; the Houses of Brick or Stone two Stories high, with flat Roofs and Terrasses at top, where they are refreshed in the Night, after the scorching Heat which commonly rages in the day-time: The Shops are well contrived and furnished with all useful Commodities, the Town being a Place of very great Trade, whereof *Baldus* in his *Italian Travels* gives us this account, taken from the reports of the Ships trading annually between *India* and *Mecca*; he says that numerous Caravans arrive here Annually from *Turkey* and *Egypt*, also the great Ship *Manfari* sent by the *Turkish* Sultan, arrives yearly in *September* with a vast Cargo of the richest *European* Goods, and carries back the returns in Spices, Calico's, and other *Indian* Goods: The Ships from divers Parts of *India*, that used to unlade at *Aden*, do likewise come hither to meet the Caravans: All which must needs render the Place exceeding Populous, as in effect it is, at least one half of the Year, viz. from *March* to *September*, which is the time of Trade; and the number of Houses must also be much increased, so that we may believe *Baldus*, who calls it a large City, and one of the chiefest Places of Trade on all that Coast. *Beudrand* and other Geographers, reckon this City subject to its own King, and yet Sir *Hen. Middleton* in 1610. and *Baldus* in 1660. declare it subject to the *Turk*. The chief Commodity our Ships fetch hence is Coffee, which grows in the neighbouring Country, and no where else that we know of, except a bastard sort at the Cape. This Drug which is now so much in use, was unknown to the most learned Botanists that have written. *Prosper Alpinius* is the first that mentions and gives a Cut of it, but both he and Mr. *Rey* speak of it imperfectly: But those excellent Naturalists, Dr. *Sloane* and Mr. *Pettiver*, have by the hands of Purser and Supergargo's of Ships trading thither, procured Specimens of the Plant it self; the former has a Branch of the Tree with the Berries and Leaf on it, and the latter has the Leaf and the Berry in its natural State. By these two Gentlemen, I am informed that that the Plant is a small Tree like a Bay, with a Leaf of that form, producing Berries which grow at the bottom of the Leaf upon a short Stalk, two or three in a Cluster, each coated with a Husk, which opened shews a double Kernel; for the Grain we see, is but the moiety of what grows in the same husk. The Tree is about seven or eight foot high, and grows plentifully in the Inland Country, in the Province called *Zenan*, which lies on the North-east of *Mecca*, vide *Philos. Transact.* N<sup>o</sup>. 208.

*Litry*, seated on the *Red-Sea*, in the Lat. 14 D. 50 m. is a City fortified with four round Bastions, and adorned with three Temples. reckoned one of the chief Places of Trade in those Parts, as the *English* have found by Experience, says *Baldus*.

**ADEN**, seated on the *Arabian-Sea*, 70 Leagues East from the Straights of *Bebel-mandel*, Lat. 14 D. is a large and Populous City, said to contain 6000 Houses, or as others perhaps with more truth, 6000 Inhabitants. It has a large Haven, which is much frequented, and the City is reckoned the fairest of *Arabia*, well fortified both by Art and Nature, and a Place of very great Trade, being the Centre between the *Persian-Gulf* and the *Red-Sea*, but 'tis said the Trade is removed to *Mecca*. It was taken by the *Turks* in the Year 1538. but soon recovered by the *Arabians*, and put under the Protection of the King of *Mecca*. This is supposed to be the *Madec* of *Ptolemy*, or by others rather the famous Empory *Arabia* of the same Author. It was sometime the Capital of a Kingdom to which it gave Name, and the ancient Seat of the People *Hemrite*. Sir *Hen. Middleton*'s account of *Aden* when he was there in 1610. is thus, The City stands in a bottom under the covert of a Mountain; 'tis encompassed with a Stone Wall defended in many Places with Forts and Bulwarks; it may seem indeed to lie open to the Seaward, being quite dry at low Water, but then Nature and Art have both concurred to keep out the Danger, for there are two vast Rocks, so craggy as not to be ascended but in one narrow Path, and round about them are erected Forts and Batteries of good Strength, and well furnished with Artillery and Ammunition. The City is supplied with Provisions, as well from the opposite Coasts of *Africa*, as from the neighbouring Country in *Arabia*, to which purpose they keep constant correspondence with the Town of *Barlora* on the *African* Coast over against it. The Latitude says he, I reckoned to be 12 D. 35 M. North, the variation of the Compass 12 Deg. 40 Min.

*Lagbi*, 100 Miles North-east from *Aden*, and a few Miles from the Sea-Coast, was (if not still) subject to its own Prince, and a Place of some Trade.

*Xael*, about 30 Leagues more to the East on the same Sea-Coast, gives name to another Principality.

*Mascat*, a Port-Town seated in the Chaps of the Golph of *Ormus* just under the Tropic, 60 Leagues North-west from Cape *Razigate*, at the Foot of a Mountain, having three Rocks at the entrance of the Haven, which make its access difficult; it was chosen therefore by the *Portuguese* for a Station of Trade after the loss of *Ormuz*, who fortified it with a well built Castle, and made it the fourth Government under the Vice-Roy of *Goa*; and while they held it, they made a great Profit; but the neighbouring *Arabian* Princes beat them out and still possess it.

*Sohar*, the Capital of *Oman* or *Vodane* Principality, seated upon the same Coast about 25 Leagues from *Mascat*, to the North-west, was a Place of great Trade in ancient time, sending Ships as far as *China*, says the *Nubian* Geographer.

*Elcatif*, seated at the bottom of a small Bay, in the Western Shoar of the *Persian* Gulph in the 27 D. of North Latitude; gives name to a large Principality subject to the *Turk*, and is a Place of Trade. This was the Country of the *Leantæ* in *Ptolemy*.

*Lassach* or *Labst*, the Seat of the *Turkish* Beglerbeg, who Governs the Province of *Babrain*, stands 60 Miles South from *Elcatif*.

These



These are the chief Places on the Coast.

In the Mid-land.

*Sanaa*, the Capital of *Tehama* Principality, seated on a Hill, in the 20 Deg. Latit. 200 Miles East from the Coast of the *Red-Sea*, is one of the greatest and most populous Cities of *Arabia*, according to the *Nubian* Geographer, and blessed with a Fruitful Soil.

*Thema* or *Thema:*, said to be a walled City of fifteen Miles square, but comprehending a great quantity of Ground for Tillage. And

*Sabatha* or *Sabota* mention'd By *Pliny*, seated in the midst of the Country on a high Hill, anciently large and populous, having 60 Temples within its Walls; and strongly Fortified.

## CHAP. VI.

# DIARBECK at Large.

Comprehending DIARBECK, YERACK, and CURDISTAN ;

Which were the Ancient

MESOPOTAMIA, CHALDÆA, and ASSYRIA.

**D**IARBECK or *Diar-Becbia*, i. e. the Duke's Country, in the large Extent of its three Provinces, lies along the Banks of the Rivers *Euphrates* and *Tigris*, from North North-west to South-east; that is, from Mount *Taurus* which divides it from *Turcomania*, in the North, to the inmost recess of the *Persian* Gulph in the South 600 Miles, and from East to West, that is, between *Syria* and *Arabia-Deserta* on one side, and *Persia* on the other, in some Parts 200 Miles, in others near 300, and in the lower or Southern hardly 150.

It is situate between the 30 and 40 Deg. of Latit. and so Possesses the fifth and Sixth Climates, whose longest Day is from 14 Hours and a quarter to 15 Hours, and consequently enjoys a good Temperature of Air, and the Soil also is Rich and Fruitful.

The two great Rivers *Euphrates* and *Tigris*, have almost their whole Course thro' this Country. For

*Euphrates*, now called *Frat*, hath its Source in the Mountains in the North-east corner of *Turcomania*, running cross that Province directly West, turns down Southward at the foot of Mount *Taurus*, and making the West Boundary of *Turcomania*, passes along between *Syria* and *Diarbeck*, and by the limits of Part of *Arabia-Deserta*, continues its Current thro' the Middle of *Yerack* or *Chaldæa*, till it empties its self into the *Persian* Gulph at *Balsora*, dividing often into Branches which unite again.

The River *Tigris*, now *Tigil*, hath its rise also in *Turcomania*, in a Plain says *Cluverius*, in the Mountains *Gordei*, says *Bauraud*, runs thro' the Lake *Arcthusa*, and under Mount *Taurus*, and thro' another Lake *Thespites*, often sinking under Ground and rising again, in one Place passing unseen for 25 Miles, then continuing its Course Southward with a very rapid Stream, whence it hath its Name, *Tigris* signifying a Dart, is increased by many Rivers, passes

between *Assyria* and *Mesopotamia*, and below *Bagdad* Branches out into a new Channel, which running cross, falls into the *Euphrates*, and makes an Island, the main Stream continuing its Southern Course, falls into the *Euphrates*, and the Conflux which bore the Name of *Pasitigris*, runs forward into the *Persian* Gulph.

These and several smaller Rivers effectually watering this Land, rendred it always so exceeding Fruitful, that among the Disputes and various Opinions, concerning the Situation of *Paradise* or the Garden of *Eden*. The most Judicious among the Learned are agreed upon it, that it was seated in the South part of this Country, between the two Rivers *Tigris* and *Euphrates*. Bishop *Patrick*, Dr. *Heylin*, P. *Dan. Huetsius*, and *Frid. Spanheim*, are among those that Concur in this Opinion.

The First Great Monarchy of the World, was denominated and had its Regal Seat in this Country.

The *Assyrian* Monarchy began with *Nimrod*, and continued in two Races of Kings, above 1600 Years, that is to say, under the Successors of *Nimrod* and *Ninus*, above 1300 Years; and under the *Chaldean* Monarchs, from *Phul Belochus* to *Belthassar*, (who was slain by *Cyrus*, and the Monarchy conveyed to *Persia*,) near 300 Years. During which time, not only these Countries, but also all the *Ajia-Minor*, *Syria*, *Palestine*, and some Part of *Arabia*, were under its Dominion.

The *ASSYRIA Propria*, which is the present *Curdistan*, was the North-east Part, lying on the East side of the River *Tigris*, between *Armenia* on the North, and *Babylonia* on the South. Named from *Assur* the Son of *Shem* who first planted it, and was divided into ten Provinces. The chief Cities of it were, *Nineve*, *Ctesiphon*, *Arbela* and *Larissa*.



**MESOPOTAMIA**, which is the present *Diarbeck* Proper, lies between the two Rivers *Euphrates* and *Tigris*, having the Mountains of *Armenia* on the North, and the *Euphrates* with the Branch derived from the *Tigris*, and falling into it on the South. Called *Mesopotamia* from its thus Situation between Rivers, as the Name implied in their Language, and *Aram-naharem* in Hebrew: called also *Padan-Aram* by the *Israelites*; where *Leben* dwelt, and whither *Jacob* fled from his Brother's Wrath. *Padan* signified Fruitful, and *Aram* was the general Name given to all *Syria*, as well as these Countries, so that the Hebrew Name of *Padan*, implied a great Fertility, which the Northern part is blessed with to a very high degree, yielding Corn and Wine, and all Necessaries for Life in abundance; wherefore Dr. *Haylin* will confine that Name to this Part only, the Southern being barren and desert. The chief Cities of it were, *Seleucia*, *Nisibis*, *Edeffa*, *Charran* and *Chabira*, supposed by *Iossius*, to be the *Ur* of the *Chaldees*.

**CHALDÆA** or *Babylonia* was the South part, the present *Yerack* which lies between, and on both sides the two Rivers and united Stream, between *Arabia* on the West, and *Persia* on the East, to the mouth of the *Persian* Gulph on the South. It was divided into four Provinces, and its chief Cities were, *Babylon*, *Volgasia*, *Birsippa* or *Bersia*, and *Ur* or *Ourta*, by others taken to be the *Ur* of the *Chaldees* where *Abraham* was born.

Of the present *Diarbeck*, we have this Account from Modern Travellers and Geographers, that it is a Country of natural Fertility, but thro' the *Turkish* Rudeness, neither well Cultivated, nor populously Inhabited. Being the Frontier towards *Persia*, 'tis indeed pretty well Guarded, but the many famous Cities so very much renowned for Magnitude and Opulency, are at present heaps of Ruins. *Bagdat*, *Moussul*, *Cerabmet*, and some few others are indeed Wealthy and Populous, but the rest are only sorry Towns.

It is by Geographers divided into three Parts, namely *Diarbeck* strictly taken, *Yerack* and *Curdistan*.

The first whereof is the North-west part between the two Rivers *Euphrates* and *Tigris*. The Third, the North-east Part toward *Persia*. And the Second, the South Part toward *Arabia* and the *Persian* Gulph.

In the *Turkish* Government, 'tis subject to these Beglerbegg, viz.

The Beglerbeg of *Diarbequir*, and under him 19 Sangiacks.

The Beglerbeg of *Rika*, and under him 7 Sangiacks.

The Beglerbeg of *Moussul*, and under him 5 Sangiacks.

The Beglerbeg of *Chirazoul* or *Scherezul*, and 20 Sangiacks.

The Beglerbeg of *Bagdat*, who has under him 221 Sangiacks.

The Beglerbeg of *Bassora*, and under him 126 Sangiacks, thus Sir *Paul Ricaut*; but the last ought to be placed elsewhere, for we are told by Travellers, that *Bassora* is now subject to its own Prince, and consequently the *Turkish* Governour must reside in some other Place.

#### A Table of the Chief Cities in *DIARBECK*.

MESOPOTAMIA or Diarbeck Propr.	{	<i>Cerabmet</i> ,
		or <i>Diarbek'r</i> ,
		<i>Rika</i> or <i>Racka</i> ,
		<i>Moussul</i> ,
		<i>Orfa</i> or <i>Edeffa</i> ,
		<i>Bir</i> or <i>Elbin</i> ,
		<i>Nisbin</i> or <i>Nisibis</i> ,
		<i>Gezir</i> ,
		<i>Merdin</i> ,
		<i>Zibin</i> ,
		<i>Ur</i> of the <i>Chaldees</i> .

CHALDÆA Yerack	{	<i>Bagdat</i> ,
		<i>Babylon</i> ,
		<i>Tract</i> ,
		<i>Bassora</i> ,
		<i>Kufa</i> ,
		<i>Ourta</i> ,
		<i>Gorno</i> or <i>Quorna</i> ,
		<i>Seleucia</i> ,
		<i>Ctesiphon</i> .

ASSYRIA or Curdistan.	{	<i>Chirazoul</i> or <i>Scherezul</i> .
		<i>Hampel</i> ,
		<i>Sittace</i> ,
		<i>Bertlis</i> ,
		<i>Nineveh</i> ,
		<i>Rehoboh</i> ,
		<i>Rhesen</i> .

To begin with *Diarbeck* proper, which as we have said, was the ancient *Mesopotamia*; under which Name and that of *Padan-Aram*, we find it remarkable in Scripture for the Births of *Abraham* and *Lot*, *Rebekah*, *Rachel* and *Leah*, the sojournment of *Jacob*, and the Thralldom of the *Israelites* there for eight Years, which was the first Bondage after the Possession of *Canaan*, and from which they were rescued by *Othniel*, *Judg.* 3. Its Inhabitants wallowing in Sin and Idolatry when *Abraham* lived, that Holy Family was called thence by God.

Subject alternately to the *Affyrian*, *Babylonian*, *Median* and *Persian* Monarchs. Conquered by the *Romans* under *Pompey*, recovered in process of time by the *Persians*, Conquered by the *Sarazens*; and now subject to the *Turks*.

*Christianity* was planted here soon after the Ascension by *S. Thaddæus*, being sent by *S. Thomas*, pursuant to the invitation of *Agbarus* King of *Edeffa*, who as *Eusebius* reports it from the Archives of the City, wrote a Letter to Our Saviour, desiring his Presence to heal him of a Sickness. A Story which passed uncontradicted for many Ages, but in our more illuminated times, has been opposed and even condemned. However, 'tis most certain our Holy Religion, was planted and flourished well in this Country, but its Purity was defiled in the beginning of the Sixth Century, by one *Jacobus* (called *Syrius*, because a *Syrian* by Birth) who revived an ancient Heresie that had been first broach'd by *Eutyches*, consisting of some Heterodox Opinions, among which, the denying of the two Natures of Christ, retaining Circumcision, affirming that Angels consist of Fire and Light, that the Souls of the deceased remain in Earth till Christ's coming; are the chief



chief. From him the Sect are called *Jacobites*, and under that Name are often mentioned in History and Travels; whose Patriarch resides here, and has Jurisdiction over all their Sect in Syria as well as here, and thought to have near 10000 Families under his Obedience.

The Land as we have said, is exceeding Fertile in the Northern Part, but Southward it is Barren and Desert. The chief Cities are,

*Edeffa*, which is at present called *Orfa*, *Orpha* or *Oufa*, seated in the 36 Deg. of Lat. about 60 Miles East from the River *Euphrates*, at the head of the River *Sartes*, in a fruitful, well cultivated and pleasant Champion. A City so considerable as by some to be accounted the chief of the Province. *Orpha* (says *Rauwolf*) with its Castle, is situated very pleasantly on a Hill; the Town is pretty large and well provided with Fortifications; the Inhabitants deal in Tapistry of divers sorts, whereof some are made here; there is also a very good Factory of Trade from *Aleppo*, *Damascus* and *Constantinople*, for *Carahmet*, which is five Days Journey from it, and thence sold into *Persia*, *India*, &c. A plentiful Well near the Town is called *Abraham's*, and shewn to Strangers, as that to which *Rebeckah* came to Water her Flocks (*Gen. 24.*) and upon that belief, 'tis held in great Honour. *Orfa* is the Capital of *Mesopotamia*, surrounded with Walls of Free-stone, provided with Battlements and Towers, seated in a good Soil, producing Wine and affords pleasant Gardens, which are watered by Channels brought by Art: The Houses in the Town are small ill built and so ruinous, that in some Places it looks more like a Desert than a Metropolis; the City is governed by a *Basha*, who has under him 150 Janizaries and 600 Spahis. Here is dressed great quantity of yellow Turkey-Leather, the Water of this Place giving it a particular Beauty. (*Tavernier*) *Edeffa*, was so ancient a Place, that in *Isidor's* time *Nimrod* was named as its Founder. Under the Romans 'twas the Capital of the *Ostrobene*, which was the Northern part of *Mesopotamia*. Subject to its own Prince in our Saviour's time, to whom as we have said he wrote a Letter declaring a Faith in him, and desiring his presence to cure him of a Disease he was afflicted with. The See of an Archbishop in Christianity, and in the Holy-War it was subject to the Christians, together with the Country round about it, which was erected into a County, and made one of their four Governments in the East, which was Conquered by the Turks, Anno 1142. By the Greeks this City was named *Callirhoe*, from the fair Fountains; by the Latines it was sometime called *Iustinopolis*, from the Emperor *Iustin* who re-edified it; by the Arabians 'tis called *Rhoa* and *Orrahai*. It is supposed by *Dr. Heylin*, to be the *Charan* or *Haran* whither *Abraham* with his Father and Family removed when they departed from *Ur*: But according to *Golius*, *Niger*, and others, *Charan* which was the same called *Charrhe* by the Romans, and notable for the Defeat and Death of *Crassus* by the *Parthians*, stood more to the North 40 Miles distant from hence. *Edeffa* is remembered in the Roman History, for the Death of the Emperor *Caracalla* by the hand of *Macerinus*. The first taking it by the Sarazens was in Anno 637. Prince *Baldwin* Brother to *Godfrey* of *Buloin* got possession of it in 1097. and the Turks retook it as we have said in 1142.

*Rauwolf* mentions a town named *Zibin*, which he represents as a fine Place, but not very big, lying

on an Ascent surrounded with good Walls and Ditches, and well supplied with fresh Springs and Fountains; this Town by his account must stand in the Mid-way between *Orpha* and *Musul*; but is not seen in the Maps.

*Bir* or *Elbir*, called *Beyscon* by the Inhabitants, is seated on the *Euphrates* in the 37 Deg. of Lat. upon the side of a Hill, defended by one Castle on the Banks of the River, and another on the Land side, in which a Sangiack with 200 Janizaries, and 400 Spahis reside. It is neither big nor strong (says *Rauwolf*, who travelled thro' it) but pretty well defended by the Castle that stands upon a high Rock above the River. *Bir* (says *Tavernier*) is a large City built like an Amphitheatre, upon the brow of a very craggy Mountain, and has two Castles, one by the River under the Hill, and another in the highest part of the Town where the Governor resides. There is a pleasant and very fruitful Country round about it, which is well Till'd and Sow'd with Corn: More towards the East the Country is Hilly, and very Rough and Barren at top. The *Euphrates* at this Town is about a Mile broad, but its Current is not very swift, and therefore ordinarily failed over, which makes this Place a kind of Ferry from Syria. The River is continually muddy, wherefore the People of this and other Places who drink its Water, are forced to keep it in earthen Pots till it subsides (*Rauwolf*) This Town is judg'd by *Dr. Heylin* to be the *Virta* or *Birtba* of *Ptolomy*, which *Alexander* the great fortified and render'd so strong, that *Sapores* the Warlike Persian, who took the Emperor *Valerian* Prisoner, was obliged to quit its Siege without taking it.

*Rika*, *Racka* or *Rixx*, the Capital of the Beglerbegate to which it gives Name, is seated on the *Euphrates* in the Latitude of 36. that is, about 60 Miles below *Bir*, between two Ascents, so as not to be seen till you are just upon it. The Town is pitifully built with sorry Walls, and a Castle old but pretty strong, wherein a Garrison of 1200 Spahis reside with the Beglerbeg; the present Town may be called the New, for upon the higher Ground, are seen the Ruins of an Old Town, which was Magnificent: A large and strong but ruinous Building whereof is still standing; which, says my Author (*Rauwolf*) seems to have been the Palace of a Prince. The Desolation he attributes to the Tartars who under their King *Haalon* took this City Anno. 1260.

*Diarbekir* as some Maps write it, but in the vulgar Language of the Place, 'tis nam'd *Carahmet* or *Kar-Enit*. By its Situation it should be the same which *Sanfon* calls *Ascanusuf*, standing on the Western Bank of the River *Tigris*, in the 38 Degr. of Latit. six Days Journey from *Orpha*; a famous City for Trade says *Rauwolf*. It is a large and populous City Fortified with a double Wall and 62 Towers, and is the Seat of a Beglerbeg who is a *Vizier Bassa*, and has great Power as well as large Dominion, being able to bring 20000 Men into the Field. So Populous, that of Christians only there 20000 Inhabitants, says *Tavernier*. This City has three Gates, two or three fair Piazza's and a magnificent Mosque. The dressing and tanning of the red Goat Skins, which we call Turkey-Leather, is the chief Trade of the Place. The Country about it is fruitful and pleasant, and abounds in Corn, Wine, and Cattel. Its ancient Name was *Amida*, called also for a short time *Constantia*, by *Constantius* the Son of *Constantine*, who Repaired



Repaired and much Beautified it. The *Jacobite* Patriarch resides here. Of *Alencruif*, *Sanfen* gives this Character, viz. 'tis the Metropolis of *Diarbeck*, a large City with several Suburbs and contains a vast number of Inhabitants.

I must not omit, that in some Maps, the Name *Diarbeckir* is given to a Town situate in the Midland, about 50 Miles from *Euphrates* to the East, and North-East from *Bis*.

*Nisibis* now *Nisbin*, a Midland Town 35 Miles from the *Tigris* towards *Cenbe*, was heretofore a very considerable City called *Antonia Mygdonia*, from the River *Mygdanius* which runs thro' it; under the *Romans*, it was the Capital of *Mesopotamia propria*, well defended by its Bishop in *Constantius* time against the *Persians*, but taken by them afterwards in the Reign of *Jeremian*. In its present State, 'tis the Seat of a *Turkish* Sangiack, stands on two small Hills, and makes a handsome view at a distance, but tho' a pretty large Town, has but sorry appearance when you come into it, being pitifully built. The Land about it is very fruitful and well cultivated, the Business of the Place being altogether Agriculture, which their good Soil renders very profitable to them, their Orchards and Corn-Fields, especially the former affording great Profit from the Pomegranates, Figs, Cubebs, &c. which they send to Foreign Parts: And so numerous are their Fruit-Trees, that you would take them for Woods of wild ones. (*Rauwolf*.)

On the East of *Nisibis* between it and *Tigris*, stood Ur of the *Chaldees*, where *Abraham* was born and lived, till by Divine Vocation, he remove to *Charran*, and thence to *Canaan*. 'Tis Disputed indeed, and others place it much more Southward in *Chaldæa*, but the Arguments on the side for this Place, are too forcible to be given up to meer Tradition, its being called of the *Chaldees*, not being sufficient to confine it uncontrollably to the limits of *Chaldæa*, as we understand its Bounds; for either that Name might be extended to more Country in those Days than it was afterward, or the *Chaldeans* may have made Excursions, and taken this and other Places beyond the limits of their own Country. The Place which Tradition named, was *Ourta* upon the Lakes, made by the *Euphrates* on its West side, in the Lat. of 32. the similitude of which Name, might perhaps be the reason: But it must be remembered that in Scripture, (*Gen. 24.*) it is said *Terab* dwelt on the other side the Flood, i. e. *Euphrates*; whereas their *Ourta* was seated on this side of it. And if from thence they had been to have travelled to *Canaan*, 'tis highly improbable they should have gone Northward so high as *Charran*, when the direct way and not far neither, lay cross *Arabia*. Besides 'tis observed by Criticks, that all his Ancestors from *Phaleg* downward, dwelt in the Northern Parts of *Mesopotamia*, and therefore there is little reason to believe that *Terab* should have separated himself so far from his Brethren.

*Mouful*, the Capital of a Beglerbegar, stands on the West Bank of the River *Tigris*, in the Lat. 36. d. It is a large City surrounded with Stone Walls, and has many fair Streets, but withal a great many lying waste. *Tavernier* speaks of it as a very ruin'd Place, that there are only two blind Markets and a sorry Castle, and yet he says it is much frequented by Merchants, and that its Bassa commands 3000 Men. Here is a Bridge of Boats over the *Tigris*, and the City is a thoroughfare from *Persia* to *Syria*, which makes it a Place of Trade, which is the more aug-

mented by a constant Traffick from this Place to *Bazda*. The Country on this side the River is Sandy and Barren, but overagainst it is exceeding Fruitful, and yields them very good Crops of Corn, and divers Fruits. This Town altho' subject to the *Turks*, and the Seat of a Bassa, is mostly inhabited by *Nestorian Christians*; a People (says *Rauwolf*) who tho' pretend to be *Christians*, are worse than *Turks*, for they practice many Villanies, and ordinarily Rob on the High-way. This is commonly called the Successor of *Ninneh*; it may indeed have been built out of its Ruines, but the Situation is different, for that City stood on the other side of the River in *Assyria*, of which we shall speak by and by.

*Gezir* or *Gezira*, stands in an Island of the River *Tigris*, 70 Miles above *Mouful*, in Lat. 37. 30. It is a small City, but rich by the Trade of Galls and Tobacco, which the Plains upon Mount *Taurus* plentifully produce, and by these People is gathered and brought hither. The City is subject to its own Prince, and here is a Bridge of Boats over the *Tigris*.

*Merdin*, seated within Land 60 Miles West from *Girzir*, is a little City well Walled, and has a Castle seated on the North side of the City on a rising Ground, whence flows an excellent fresh Spring, wherein (a Bassa or rather) a Sangiack resides with a Garrison of 200 Spahi's and 400 Janisaries, says *Tavernier*. I am inclined to believe, this is the same Place that *Rauwolf* calls *Zibin* already mentioned, for it agrees in all its Characters: Whereas 'tis not likely so considerable a Place as he makes *Zibin*, should be wholly omitted in the Maps.

*CHALDÆA* or *TERACK*, lies on the South of *Mesopotamia*, between and on both sides the two Rivers *Tigris* and *Euphrates*, as we have already said. We are told by *St. Jerom*, that the *Chaldei* derived their Name from *Chesed*, the fourth Son of *Nachor*, the Brother of *Abraham*: But it seems by Scripture, to have been a Name of more Antiquity.

The Soil was anciently so Fertile, that according to *Herodotus*, it yielded 200 or 300 Fold; and it might still be so if regularly Mannured. The Pastures yield numerous Herds of Cattel, and thence great plenty of Milk and Butter.

This was the Part of the World which was Honoured with the first Presence of Man, the Paradise wherein God placed *Adam*, being as we said judged by the Learned of this Age, to have been seated here.

The Language of this Country was different from the *Hebrew*, which was the Language of *Mesopotamia*, but by the long continuance of the *Jews* among them, the Purity of both Languages was broken, and the *Syrian* which is still used here, produced.

The People were very early Proficients in the Knowledge of the Stars, whence judicial Astrology, and thence all sorts of Divinations and Southsaying became Rife among them. They have also the Reputation of being the first Idolaters in the World. And 'twas here that the Ambition of Man, so far exerted it self as to pretend to Vie with the Power of Heaven, in that bold Structure of the Tower of *Babel*.

*Christianity* 'tis supposed was first Preached here by *St. Peter*, who seems to Date his first Epistle from *Babylon*; but in regard that no mention is made elsewhere of his travelling so far, many are of Opinion that it is not to be understood in a literal Sense, but interpreted



interpreted *Rome* rather. But whoever Planted, the Holy Ghost propagated it; and so early as the *Nice Council*, we find the Bishop of *Seleucia* in great Honour; and in all future Assemblies, he had Place next the Patriarch of *Jerusalem*. The *Christians* are still numerous here, but not truly Orthodox; the two Heresies of *Jacobus* and *Nestorius*, together with several Heterodox Opinions and Customs prevailing among them. Of the *Jacobites* we have spoken already in *Mesopotamia*; and since the *Nestorians* are also much spoken of in Books of Travels in these Parts of the World, altho' it be a little Foreign to our purpose, we will give our Reader a general Idea of that Heresie.

*Nestorius* a Monk at *Antioch* in *Syria*, by his Piety and Preaching obtained such Reputation, that upon the Death of *Sisinnius* Archbishop of *Constantinople*, Anno 427. the Emperor caused him to be chosen to succeed him. But as he appeared exceeding Zealous against Heresie, 'tis no wonder that any new Opinion from him should cause indignation; it happened that a Priest named *Anastatius* whom he favoured, had expressed in his Sermon, That the *Virgin Mary* ought not to be called the Mother of God, for she was a Woman, and God could not be Born of a Woman. Which Proposition the Bishop defending, raised up so many Enemies against him, that he was soon expelled and died in Exile. This was the Origine of that Sect; which by opposition seems to have increased, for it spread it self very far, and its Proselytes became so numerous, that at this Day and for many Ages past, the greatest Part of the *Christians* of the Eastern Parts are of it; and so formidable are they, as to have a Patriarch of their own, who resides at *Mousul*, and has Jurisdiction over all their Bishops in *Syria*, *Chaldæa*, *India*, &c. Their Opinions which have been Condemned are, That there were two Persons as well as two Natures in our Saviour, but confess him to be both God and Man; and that *Mary* ought not to be called the Mother of God, altho' she may be called the Mother of the Son of God. In other Dogmes they differ only from the Church of *Rome*, as communicating in both kinds, allowing Marriage to Priests, denying auricular Confession, not praying to Crucifix's and Images, &c. And upon the whole, if the vain Fopperies used by them in Religion were retrenched, and their Morals reformed: they would not appear so odious as the *Roman Church*, who envies the Power of this Patriarch, represents them.

Before we enter upon an Account of the present Towns, 'tis necessary to speak of the Ancient *Babylon* and *Seleucia*, and the other Places most remarkable in Antiquity.

**BABYLON**, whence the whole Province and even Empire was sometime named, stood on both sides the River *Euphrates*, first built by *Nimrod* near the Tower of *Babel*, and made the Seat of his Empire. A City in its most flourishing State of that Extent and Magnificence, that as it was then reckoned among the Wonders of the World, so it still deserves some remembrance, we shall therefore from *Diod. Siculus*, give the Reader a short Account of it. *Semiramis* the Widow and Successor of *Ninus*, the third Monarch of this Empire, resolving to out-do her Husband, who had built *Nineveh*, Founded or at least Re-edified the City of *Babylon*; wherein says my Author. Two Millions of Men were employed, who in a Years time built the Walls which were as many Furlongs round as the Year had Days,

(which makes near 46 Miles) the height 50 *Ogys's* or Fathom; that is 100 Yards, the breadth so large as to admit six Chariots on a breast. Or according to others, only 50 Cubits high and broad enough for two Chariots. The Wall was adorned and guarded by 250 large Turrets, and the Land round the City lay low, and in some part of it deep Morass; all which must needs render the Place extream strong. The River ran thro' the middle of the City, and on each side of it stood a magnificent Palace, which were made communicable by a Vault under the River, as well as by a most stately Bridge over it. The Palace on the West side, was much the statelier of the two, the Walls of which were 60 Furlongs, or seven Miles and half round the outer Court, for it was divided into three; the second Court was 40 Furlongs, surrounded by a Wall of incredible thickness, namely 300 Bricks, and in height 100 Yards, upon which many Towers were erected much higher, whence the whole City might be surveyed; The third Court was thirty Furlongs in circuit, surrounded also with a Wall of still greater height. This was the Royal Apartment, and was adorn'd with Basso, Relievo's, Gildings, Paintings, and other Decorations suitable to a Structure of such Magnificence. She also built a Temple to *Jupiter* or *Belus* of mighty height, as may be judg'd by the Magnitude of the Statues set at top, which weighed 1000 Talents each, and were 40 foot high. *Nbuchadnezzar* did also in his time beautifie and improve this City so much, that in his Pride we find him vaunting, *Dan. 4. Is not this the great Babylon which I have built?* Lastly, To the Beauty of *Babylon*, the *Horri Pensiles* or hanging Gardens as they were called, added much, and are mostly talked of in Antiquity; these were Gardens raised by Arches above one another to an incredible height, wherein trees of vast Bulk and fruit of the most exquisite kinds, were cultivated and grew in the greatest Perfection. So Great was this City, that *Aristotle* says, it ought rather to be called a Country, and that when the Town was taken, it was three Days before the furthest Part of it had notice of it. Notwithstanding its Strength this City was taken by *Cyrus* and by *Alexander*, the former by Stratagem thus, he cut divers Trenches, by which he drew off the Water of the *Euphrates*, and so entred thro' the dry Channel. The latter having defeated the *Persian Forces* at *Abela*, was received with open Gates. As for the raking it by *Darius Hystaspes*, that does not deserve the name of a Conquest, for it was but a recovery from Rebellion, and that too obtained by a Treachery that will hardly ever be imitated, *Zopyrus* mangled and deformed himself for his Master's Service, but with that Loyalty he acted Treachery; which notwithstanding all counter Merit, must and always will be odious to a Man of true Virtue.

After *Alexander's* Death, which happen'd here, the Glories of this City daily declined; so that *Diod. Siculus* who lived in the time of *Julius Caesar* speaks of it as a decayed Place, *Q. Curtius*, in *Vespasian's* time, says, 'twas lessen'd to a fourth Part, in *Pliny's* time reduced to Desolation: And in *St. Jerome's* Days turned into a Park for the Kings of *Persia* to Hunt in it. Its present condition is thus represented by *Rauwolf*, the Village *Elugo* stands where formerly old *Babylon* stood, whereof at present there remains nothing but Foundations of great Buildings, to testify this to be the very Place, together with some Pieces of the Arches of that so fa-



mous Bridge, which Arches are built of Brick, and wonderfully Strong: The River here is half a League broad, which renders the Structure of this Bridge the more admirable. Upon a Hill near the Village are seen the Ruins of the Castle, where some Vestigia of its Magnificence still appear. And at no great distance may be seen the Foundations of the Tower of *Babel*, which is half a League in Diameter; 'tis perfect Ruins and low almost to the Ground, and so filled with Vipers and Serpents, who have made themselves Dens in it, that 'tis unsafe approaching too near it; he tells us also that the Country hereabout is so dry and barren, that it cannot be tilled. A wonderful Change! The most Magnificent City that ever was reduced to so perfect Delolation, that not a Roof of any sort is left standing, and even the Land about it too, from a fertile Soil changed to a most sterile Desert.

The Tower of *Babel* as Scripture informs us, was began to be build soon after the Flood, with intention to carry it so high, that its top should be out of the reach of all future Inundations: But it pleased God to break their Design by confounding their Language. By ancient Tradition we have this Account of it, namely, that it was built of round form, the Ascent winding about the out-side in a large Road, fit for Carts, Horses, and other Cattle, with Lodgings and Convenience for both Man and Beast, which was already raised 5146 Paces from the Ground, before the confusion of Tongues. But this is only Tradition, and I must question the Truth of this last particular, at least if it be meant in perpendicular height; for 5146 Geometrical Paces, is above four Miles and three quarters, or if by Paces be meant Yards only, it will still be found vastly to exceed any Structure, nay even any Mountain or other Eminence on the whole Earth. 'Tis true if the Mensuration be reckoned spirally of the Journey up, it may come near a probable truth. But to proceed, *Hackluit* tells us, the Ruins of this Tower stand on the West side of *Tigris*, about eight Miles above *Bagdat*, and makes a kind of Mountain, that the Bricks whereof it was built, are half Yard thick and three quarters long, between every Course lies a Mat of Canes as sound as if newly laid. But this Situation not agreeing with that of *Babylon*, which was 60 Miles distant from the present *Bagdat*, 'twill be wiser to believe this the Ruins of *Seleucia*. The whole Plain between the two Rivers, is filled with the Ruins of great Buildings, among which that called *Daniel's-Tower* is the most perfect, and affords a Prospect from its top of the extent of this once Famous City.

*Seleucia* the Successor of *Babylon*, and by ancient Authors supposed to be the same Place; thus *Stephanus* speaking of *Babylon*, says it was also called *Seleucia*. But that he was mistaken, and even the modern Commentator upon him too, (*Hollstenius*) who makes *Bagdat* to have risen out of the Ruins of both, is apparent, from the Situation of the two Places; for *Rauwolf* cannot have been mistaken in the Ruins of *Babylon*, the Bridge over the *Euphrates*, whereof there is none other quite from *Bir* downwards, for so far he sail'd upon the River, being such a Characteristick as puts it out of doubt. And *Bagdat* which indeed arose from *Seleucia*, stands upon the *Tigris* at 60 or 70 Miles distance from that Bridge. Now that *Bagdat* rose out of the Ruins of *Seleucia*, is not disputed, or if it were, the mighty Ruins near it, mentioned by *Hackluit* as we have said above, is a

Testimony that cannot easily be refuted: But this mistake of Authors, is a powerful evidence of the Grandeur of *Seleucia*, since a little City could never been called *Babylon*; as in effect it was in its time a large and populous Place, 500000 Inhabitants we are told, were brought from *Babylon* to it by *Antiochus* the Son of *Seleucus Nicanor*, who built or rather re-edified it; for according to *Strabo*, it was a very ancient City, named first *Coebe*, and afterward *Alexandria*, and at last by *Antiochus* called *Seleucia* in Honour of his Father. In the Primitive Ages of Christianity, it was the See of an Archbishop. To proceed to the present State:

*Bagdat*, the Metropolis of this Country, is seated on the River *Tigris* in the 34 Deg. of Lat. It was built out of the Ruins of *Seleucia* by *Mahomet II.* Surnamed *Bugiasfar*, Caliph of the *Sarazens*, who reigned in the middle of the eighth Century, and by him made the Seat of the *Sarazen* Empire. Its Name is derived from Gardens, wherewith it abounded, or from one Garden belonging to *Dad* a Wealthy *Persian*. The first Structure was on the Western Bank of the River, but in 1095. Caliph *Mustapha* built a new City on the other side, and united both by a Bridge of Boats. It grew up with great speed into a Wealthy and Populous City, and continued the Seat of the *Sarazen* Empire, till the middle of the thirteenth Century, when *Haalon* the Tartar put an end to it, by the Death of the Caliph and all his Family, and the Capture of the City, which he destroyed: But it recovered and is at this Day a large, rich and populous Place. Its Buildings however far short of what those old Accounts render them; which may be reasonably expected, from the many Revolutions of it, the Turk and the Persian having alternately possessed it divers times, till in 1638. the *Turks* finally recovered and have ever since possessed it. The present State of it is thus represented by Travellers; it consists of two Towns, that on the West side of the River open or unwall'd, that on the East side well Fortified with Walls and Ditches; between the two Towns is a Bridge of Boats chained together over the River, which is rapid and about as broad as the *Rhine*; the Streets are narrow, and the common Buildings mean; the Publick Buildings, namely the Bashaw's Pallace, the Bezisteen or Exchange, the Bazaars and the Publick Baths are well built; it is a Place of great Trade for all the Commodities of *Natolia*, *Syria*, *Constantinople*, *Damascus*, *Aleppo*, *Armenia*, *Persia* and *Indie*, Goods being brought by Barges up the River from *Balsora*, as well as by Land in Caravans, and it is the Seat of a Bashaw or Beglerbeg, whose Authority is great. The *Arabians* call it *Dar-Assulam*, the City of Peace. By *Hackluit* we are told, 'twas about two Miles round in 1563. but very Populous, and of great Trade, being the Thoroughfare between *Persia*, *Arabia* and *Syria*. It is three Miles round says *Tavernier*, and of great Trade, but not so Wealthy since the *Turks* have possessed it, as when the *Persians* had it, however all Travellers represent it as a large and rich Place. The Garrison consists of 300 Janizaries commanded by an Aga, and the City is governed by a Bashaw, who is generally a Vizir, and has 600 or 700 Horse in Service; here is also an Aga commanding 3 or 400 Spahi's, besides all which, there is a Body of Horse called *Giroguleler* of 3000 in the City and neighbouring Towns under the Command of two Agas. (*Tavernier*.) *Rauwolf* supposes one Town to be the ancient *Seleucia*, and the other *Ctesiphon*, but his



his Opinion is hardly allowable, because *Ctesiphon* according to the ancient Accounts of it, stood much farther from the River.

*Ctesiphon*, a large Town built by the *Parthians*, over against *Seleucia*, at some distance on the East side of the *Tigris*, adorned and fortified by *Pacorus* a *Parthian* King, who made it his Regal Seat, and rendered it a flourishing Place. The *Romans* often attacked it, and 'twas there that *Julian* the Apostate was slain and uttered that remarkable Blasphemy, *Viciſſi tandem Galilee*. But this City stood in the limits of *Proper Assyria*, and so should have been referred thither, if the Conjecture abovementioned had not led us to speak of it here. It is passed away, and at present is not remarked by Travellers.

*Tract*, seated between the two Rivers two Leagues from the Ruins of *Babylon*, in the Road to the City *Bagdat*, supposed by *Rauwolf* to be the ancient *Apamia* founded by *Seneucus*, is a very strong fortified Town, having a Wall and Ditch, and two Castles for its Defence, and reckoned the Key of *Persia*.

*Gerno* or *Qiorra*, a considerable Fortress seated at the Confluence of the two Rivers *Tigris* and *Euphrates*, in the Lat. 31. where an Account is taken of Merchants Goods passing up the River.

*Kufa*, seated on the West side of the *Euphrates*, in the 32 Deg. Latit. below the *Paludes Euphratis*, and on the Frontiers of *Arabia*, was anciently a great and populous City, being the Residence of the Caliph for some time after the removal of the Regal-Seat from *Damascus*, and before the building of *Bagdat*. *Hali* the *Persian* Prophet was buried here, and therefore it used to be much resorted to by Pilgrims, but the Kings of *Persia* have hindred it, since the Turk has possessed this Country, because that Pilgrimage added much to the Wealth of the Town, and the Place is now become small and poor and almost desolate: says *Tavernier*.

*Ourt* or *Ourehe*, which some suppose to be the *Ur* of *Chaldaea*, the Birth-place of *Abraham*, of which we have already spoken, stood hereabouts.

*Bassora* or *Balsora*, seated on the Western Bank of *Pasitygris*, or the united Stream of both Rivers *Euphrates* and *Tygris*, in the Lat. 30. D. 30 M. not many Leagues above its mouth into the *Persian* Gulph, whose Tide rises up hither and above it, as far as *Gorno*; is a rich and populous City, being a celebrated Mart, to which *European* as well as *Indian* and *Persian* Ships resort, and vend the Commodities of the respective Countries; 'tis reckoned the Port to *Bagdat*. for 'tis thither the Goods imported here are mostly sent. The Emir or Prince of *Balsora*, who is a Feudatory to the Grand-Seignior, made it a free Port, with a small Custom of four per Cent. in the Year 1652. which has raised its Trade to the degree it is now seen in, and very much enriched the Prince. The City is about a half League distant from the River, it is very large and populous, and is surrounded with a Brick Wall, and stands on the Frontiers of *Arabia*, to which it is by some Geographers referred. The *Christians* are numerous here, especially of the Sect called *Sabaens*, of whom *Tavernier* computes there were 25000 Families in his time, in the City and Villages near it.

*ASSYRIA propria*, or that Part of *DIARBECK* now called *Curdistan*, as *Tavernier* testifies, by others *Arzerum*, lies on the East side of the River *Tigris* towards *Persia*, 100 Miles broad in the middle Part, but not half that breadth in the South, extending in

length from the 33. to the 40. Degree of Latitude; that is, from the Lake *Wan* on the Frontiers of *Turcomania* in the North, to the Frontiers of *Chusistan* a Province of *Persia* in the South, the Mountain *Contras* being its Eastern Boundary from *Persia*, and the River *Tigris*, the Western from *Mesopotamia* and *Chaldaea*.

It was called *Assyria* from *Assur* the Son of *Shem*, who first planted this Country. *Curdistan* from the *Curteis*, as Travellers vulgarly call them, or as anciently they were named *Curduchi* and *Curdueni* (according to *Xenophon*) the People that inhabit it. *Arzerum*, perhaps corruptly from *Assyria*, or else from the City *Erzerum*, but this very improbably for that City lies too far out of the limits of this Country to give Name to it. Dr. *Heylin* indeed names a City *Arzeri* of great strength and repute, seated within this Province, but where, he says not, nor do I find it in other Authors.

The Soil was represented in ancient Accounts as very fruitful, but it does not now deserve that Character, for Travellers find it quite otherwise. Dr. *Rauwolf* so often mentioned, travelled thro' it from *Bagdat* to the confines of *Persia*, and back to *Mosul*, and may therefore be allowed to have knowledge of it, and he talks of nothing but vast Deserts and barren Plains, except here and there near a Town, a little cultivated Land may appear. It must indeed be remembered, it was for several Ages a Field of Battle between the *Romans* and *Parthians* first, and the *Turks* and *Persians* since, which must have depopulated it, and where Hands and Industry are wanting, the best Soils are barren.

As to the People, they are mostly *Nestorian Christians*, except the Government, which is *Turkish*: But rude and ignorant *Christians* God knows, practising little what that Holy Profession enjoins. There are a Race of *Curteis* that infest the Roads in *Mesopotamia* in great Troops, and rob the Caravans as the wild *Arabians* do. The Cities or Towns of chief note here are.

*Chirazoul* or *Schebreful*, seated on the River *Caprus*, which falls into the *Tigris*, 60 Miles West from *Mosul*, and in the 36 Deg. of Latitude; 'tis but a small City and of ordinary Structure, and remarkable only by being the Seat of a *Beglerbeg*, who has 20 *Sangiacks* under his Jurisdiction. The City is cut out of a steep Rock (says *Tavernier*) for a quarter of a League, so that you must go up 10 or 15 Steps to every House; this is supposed to have risen out of the Ruins of the ancient

*Arbela*, so famous in History for the Battle at *Gangamela* near it, which being but a small Village, this City was chosen by Historians to give name to the Battle between *Alexander* and *Darius*, which was the decisive Stroke for the *Persian* Empire; wherein with the loss of but 300 on his side, *Alexander* defeated *Darius* and an Army of 200000 Foot and 50000 Horse, killing 90000 on the Spot. The pleasant Plains of *Arbela* lie just beyond this Town and as described by *Tavernier*, are 15 Leagues in extent, watered with several Rivulets and full of Fruit-trees. On a Hill near it which is covered with the fairest Oaks, remain the Ruins of a Castle where they say *Darius* staid while the Battle was fought.

*Harpel*, seated more to the South upon that River named *Gorgus* by *Ptolemy*, is a pretty large Town and the Seat of a *Sangiack*, but of sorry Structure and surrounded with Mud-Walls. This is the account *Rauwolf* who passed thro' it gives us, and from



this a Conjecture may be made, of the State of the rest of those Towns wherein Sangiacks reside, most of which are but sorry Villages, and many but small Castles only; and therefore if we mention no more of them, I suppose the Reader will not be displeased: But several ancient Towns seated in this Province will deserve notice, as

**NINIVEH**, built by *Ninus* or by *Nimrod*, and named in honour of *Ninus* his Son or Nephew, stood on the East Bank of the *Tigris*, overagainst where *Meassul* now stands. So enlarged by its Kings that it became bigger than *Babylon*, namely 480 Furlongs or 60 Miles in compass; the Wall 100 Foot high, and so thick as to admit three Chariots to go on it a breast, and adorned with 1150 Towers of 200 Foot high, which were so strong as to be thought impregnable; neither had *Arbaces* after his three Years Siege taken it, if the River by overflowing had not become its Enemy, and broke down 20 Furlongs of the Wall, thereby fulfilling an old Prophecy; and giving the Victor entrance. The effeminate *Sardanapalus* in the mean time retired into the Palace, and collecting all his Wealth, which Tradition tells us amounted to 20500 Millions of Pounds Sterling, set Fire to the Pile and threw himself into it; an act of Bravery at last, which ought to efface his former Character of Cowardice. To this City the Prophet *Jonah* was sent to denounce God's Judgment, but upon Repentance it was spared. Destroy-

ed afterwards by *Astyages*, the eighth Median King from *Arbaces*, because of its frequent Rebellion: And laid so low in time, that *St. Cyril* of *Alexandria*, in the middle of the fifth Century, in his Comment upon the Prophets, says the Place where it stood was hardly to be discerned. And at this time nothing of it appears, except a heap of Rubbish a League in length. On a Hill not far from *Meassul*, the People shew the Monument of *Jonah*, which is in great Veneration, and has a Mosque built over it.

**Sittace**, a flourishing City in ancient times, which gave Name to the neighbouring Country, stood upon the *Tigris*. **Calach**, in the same District, one of the Cities built by *Nimrod*; and by *Bochart*, alledged to be the *Helah*, whither the *Israelites* were carried in their Captivity, 2 *King*. 17. 6. **Rehoboth** and **Rhesen**, two Cities built by *Nimrod*, the latter supposed to be the *Larissa*, commended by *Xenophon* as a City of great Strength and Extent, the Walls whereof were 100 Foot in height, and 25 in breadth; and so Strong that *Cyrus* was unable to take the Place, till an Eclipse of the Sun frightened the Defendants. Lastly,

**Bertis** seated in the North limits of this Province near the South Shoar of the Lake *Van*, between two Mountains; is a strong Place subject to its own Prince, who it seems by the advantage of its Castle seated on a very steep Rock, is able to defend himself, and refuse Subjection to either *Turk* or *Persian* (*Tavernier*.)

## CHAP. VII.

# TURCOMANIA.

## Or the Ancient ARMENIA-MAJOR.

**TURCOMANIA** has for its Boundaries on the South *Mesopotamia* or *Diarbeck* proper; on the North *Georgia*; on the East *Persia*, and on the West that part of *Natalia*, which was the ancient *Cappadocia*, from which it is parted by the River *Euphrates*. Its extent is about 200 Miles; in Latitude from the 39th. to the 43d. Degree; the Climate Temperate; the Soil much taken up in Mountains, especially on the Frontiers, but in the Mid-land Valleys, Fertile and delightful, producing Fruits, Wine, Corn and Pasture liberally. The People are of strong Bodies and robust Natures, reasonably Industrious in Mechanick Arts as well as Agriculture, making Tapestries and some other Stuffs which they vend abroad, but they lie too much out of the way to have much Traffick at home. Their Language is peculiar to themselves, and spoken only here, and in the lesser *Armenia* or *Cappadocia*. The present Inhabitants are generally *Christians*; but the Government *Turkish*, under the Dominion of the two Beglerbegs of *Erzerum* and *Van*, the former whereof has under his Jurisdiction eleven Sangiacks, and the latter fourteen Sangiacks.

The Christianity of this Country is a particular Sect, holding no Communion with either Greek or Roman Churches. They deny Purgatory, Transubstantiation, Prayers for the Dead, and Celibacy of Priests. They allow but one Nature in *Jesus Christ*; abstain from unclean Beasts; Baptize with Fire, that is, hold the Infant over the Fire, to comply literally with the Expression of *St. John Baptist*; admit Infants to Communion; Fast on *Christmas-day*, &c. They have two Patriarchs of their own, one in *Turcomania*, and the other in *Cilicia*, and under them 30 Bishops, and at least 150000 Families.

Its Name *Armenia* is supposed to be derived from the Hebrew Word *Aram*, which was a Name they extended all over these Countries and *Syria*. *Turcomania*, is apparently from the *Turks*.

Besides the Rivers *Euphrates* and *Tygris*, which we have already told you have their Rise in this Country; the River *Araxes*, now called *Arasse*, has its Fountain here also, in the Mount *Abos*, it runs Eastward in a Serpentine Course, and falls into the *Caspian-Sea*, in the 41 Deg. Lat. after a Course of above 500 Miles, in which it is increased by divers smaller Rivers, and receives into it the large River *Kur*, which rises in *Georgia*.

Mountains,



Mountains, here are many, the most considerable are the *Maschici*, in the Northern limits bending Westward towards *Cappadocia*. *Niphates* out of which the *Euphrates* flows. The *Montes Gordiani* supposed by some to be the Mount *Ararat* where *Noah's Ark* rested.

The Mountain which the *Armenians* alledged to be Mount *Ararat*, Mr. *Tavernier* tells us begins about 3 Miles from *Nackisvan*, a Town in the East Borders of *Armenia*, and rises to a much greater height than the other Mountains, so as to be seen at five days Journey distance, called by the Inhabitants *Messousal*, i. e. The Mountain of the Ark, to which they pay a profound Veneration, and pretend to shew some part of the Ark still remaining.

*Pariedrus* now *Chielder*, a Mountain towards the Frontiers of *Georgia*, a part of which bears the name of *Abos*. whence flows the *Araxes* as already said. And finally in the south limits some Branches of Mount *Taurus*, divide *Armenia* from *Mesopotamia*.

The History of this Country in short seems to be thus, *Hul* or *Chul* the Son of *Aram*, and *Mesech* the Son of *Japhet*, were the first Planters; grown populous, it soon became a Kingdom, and continued for many Ages. In History we find that *Tigranes* their King, extended his Dominions on every side, *Media*, *Syria*, and *Phœnicia* being subjected to him, but with the Defeat of *Tigranes* by *Lucullus* in the *Mithridatic War*, the *Armenians* were again driven home, and *Tigranes's* Kingdom restrained to *Armenia-major*. *Marc-Antony* took *Artavasdes* King of *Armenia* Prisoner, and sent him in Golden Fetters to *Rome*. *Trajan* reduced *Armenia* into a Province: But it recovered its Liberty, and was governed by its own Kings in *Constantine's* time and afterwards, but Feudatories to the Emperors till A. D. 687. that the *Sarazens* invaded and subdued it. Those held it till the Irruption of the *Turks* out of *Scythia*, who possessed themselves of this Province, and gave it the Name of *Turcoman*. which happened as some say A. D. 755. or as others A. 844. The *Turks* employing themselves in other Conquests, gave the *Armenians* opportunity of setting up Kings of their own, who were again subdued by the *Tartars*, but not extirpated, there still remaining *Armenian* Kings, one of whom succeeded in the Throne of *Persia*, and made *Armenia* a Province of that Empire, A. D. 1472. But it was Conquer'd at last by the Sultan *Selimus I.* Anno 1515. and ever since subject to the *Turks*, except the Eastern Part, which the *Persian* still holds.

Having spoken of the Rise of the *Sarazin* Empire in *Arabia*, we will here give the Reader the same short view of the Rise of the *Turkish* Power.

To omit the many fabulous Stories about the origine of the *TURKISH* Nation, 'tis sufficient to say that the best conjecture is, that they were of *Scythian* extraction; and the Inhabitants of the Country lying between Mount *Caucasus* and the *Palus Mæotis*, along the Banks of the River *Don* or *Tanaïs*, spreading in the *Sarmatia-Asiatica*, to the Banks of the *Caspian-Sea*. Which Account agrees with *Pliny* and *Pomp. Mela*, who both mention a Nation in these Parts called *Turæ*; they were in nature like the *Scythian* Nomades, a roving Generation that lived in Tents upon Hunting, and changed their Quarters as their inclinations led them. Why they came more Southward is unknown, but 'tis related by Authors, that about the middle of the eighth Century, they made an inroad into *Georgia*, where they committed Plunder and Ravage and retired. A-

bout Ann. Dom. 844 (as all Authors agree) they brake in again and penetrated as far as *Armenia-major*, where they fixed and lived in their old poor manner, an obscure Nation, till a little after the Year 1000. when the *Persian* Sultan being pressed in his Wars against the *Indians* on one side, and the Caliph of *Babylon* on the other, invited the *Turks* into his Service. Three Thousand of them under the Command of *Tangrolipix* accordingly marched to his assistance, and overcame his Enemy: but the Sultan ungratefully refused to pay and dismiss them, with which disgusted they retired into a Wilderness, their passage Home being shut up by the *Persians*. From that Fastness, they made Excursions and pillaged the neighbouring Country; wherefore the Sultan sent 20000 Men against them, whom by surprize they entirely Defeated, and thereby so encreased their numbers, that soon after they encountered the Sultan himself at the head of his Army near *Ispahan*, and after a terrible Battle, wherein the Sultan *Mahomet* himself was killed, they obtained a second Victory. *Tangrolipix* hereby ascended the Throne of *Persia*, and turning *Mahometan* was unanimously accepted their King about A. D. 1030. Thus we see the *Turkish* Power already raised to a high Degree, but *Tangrolipix* stopped not here, for he soon made War upon the Caliph of *Babylon*; slew him and seized his Kingdom. He next attempted the Conquest of *Arabia* on one side, and *Media* on the other, but without success; he also invaded the lesser *Asia*, where by the means of the Dissentions at *Constantinople*, which left the Provinces neglected, his Son *Axan* and Nephew *Cutlu Mises* advanced with great success. The various progress of their Arms, and the several Defeats they suffered in the Holy-War, is too large a subject for us to enter upon here; 'tis sufficient to say that they possessed the Government of *Persia* till about Anno 1260. when the *Tartars* under Prince *Haaton* invaded that Kingdom, and with as hasty success as before the *Turks* had had, over-ran both *Persia*, *Affyria* and *Asia-minor*, and for that time levelled the *Turkish* Grandeur. But it pleased the Divine Providence to permit it to rise again; and in Place of a *Tangrolipix*, to raise up an *Ottoman* to be a Scourge to the mutinous *Christians*.

At the same time that *Tangrolipix* his Posterity were chief Sultans, there was another small Kingdom of *Turks* in a Part of *Persia*, under a Prince of another Family; for it seems there were two eminent Families, namely the *Selzuccian* whence *Tangrolipix* came, and the *Ogyzian* whence *Ottoman* descended. *Solyman* the Grandfather of *Ottoman*, Sultan of *Macbar*, for that was his Title, seeing *Cursumes* (the last of the *Selzuccian* Family) and his Country become the Victim of the *Tartar*, had little hopes to escape his fury, by any other means than flight, accordingly he with as many of his Kindred and Friends as would follow him, retreated first towards *Armenia*, thence into *Cappadocia* and *Syria*, and afterwards endeavouring to return Home, had the misfortune to be drowned in the *Euphrates*. *Ertogrul* his Son the Father of *Ottoman* with his Carts and sorry Equipage, begged of his Country-man the Sultan of *Iconium*, a small tract of Land to reside in; and at the same time gave that Sultan so seasonable an Assistance with his small Army against the *Tartar* then at War with him, that an entire Victory was obtained, and thereby he effectually obtained his Favour, and had the grant of a piece of Land; where he fed his Flocks, and lived to an old Age, a petty Prince without regard. His Son *Ottoman*



man prov'd a Man of an enterprizing Wise and Courageous Nature, who, from the taking of small Castles in his own Neighbourhood which he began with, proceeded to the attacking of great Cities; and in a little time *Nice* and *Prusa*, with a large part of *Asia-minor*, felt the Power of his Sword, and submitted to his good Fortune. In short *Ottomen* erected a new Kingdom of the *Turks* in *Asia Minor*, which continued to encrease with large Additions, till in the End *Constantinople* became the Seat of their Empire, as we have elsewhere shewn. This short view is sufficient to give the Reader a general Idea, of this Rise of the great Monarchy, which was all we Promised him, the particulars of every Action being not the purpose of this Work. But to proceed,

The Chief Cities of *Turcomania*, are

<i>Erzerum,</i>	{	<i>Irvan,</i>
<i>Wan or Van,</i>		<i>Nackisvan.</i>
<i>Kars,</i>		

*Erzerum*, seated on the *Euphrates* near its Spring head, in the North limits towards *Georgia*, Latit. 41 Deg. a noted Town with a Castle and Suburbs, is the Capital of *Turcomania*, and the Seat of a Beglerbeg. The Town is not very large, and the Buildings of Timber, but the Castle is built of Stone and very strong. It stands at the end of a spacious Plain, which produces good Wheat and Barley, but no Vines; on the North and East, lie Ridges of Mountains, from whence a bleak Air falling upon the Town, makes it esteem'd a cold Place; it is a thoroughfare for the Eastern Caravans, and a Magazine for the *Turkish* Wars in *Persia*. (Sir John Chardin.) The River *Euphrates* has its Spring in the Mountain *Aphar* or *Mingol*, six Hours Journey from *Erzerum*. (Gemelli.)

*Wan or Van*, a large Town with a Castle seated on the side of a Lake to which it gives Name, near the Frontiers of *Diarbeck*, in the 40 Degree of Latitude, the Seat of a Beglerbeg and a populous Place. Tavernier passed thro' it in the Year 1664. and tells us it was a great City, having in it a strong Castle built on a Mountain, which was ineffectually besieged by the *Persians* in 1636. it is always well Garrisoned, as being an important Frontier.

The Lake of *Van* is of large extent being reckoned 50 Miles in compass, and is Navigated by small Ships, which makes *Tadua* a Village, seated on the South side by reason of its Harbour a remarkable Place.

*Kars*, seated 100 Miles North-East from *Erzerum*, within the limits of *Georgia*; but being subject to the *Turks*, whereas *Georgia* in general is subject to the *Persians*, we shall consider it here. It is a large Town and very strongly Fortified, abounding with all Necessaries of Life, yet not very populous, altho' the Grand-Seignior has often endeavoured to draw People to it; 'tis the Seat of a Beglerbeg, who has six Sangiacks under his Jurisdiction. Its two Walls are of Earth with small Towers, two Gates, and as many Bridges on the side of the River and Suburb.

the Fort which stands on a Rock is inaccessible, there is a good Garrison in it, and 40 Horse go out nightly to scour the Country. The Houses by reason of the thinness of Inhabitants, are mean and like Dens of Timber and Earth. (Gemelli.)

*Irvan or Erivan*, a large City, but ill built and dirty, furnished with Gardens, which take up the greatest part of the Ground; is seated in a plentiful Champion Country, surrounded by Mountains; on the Eastern Frontiers of *Turcomania* in 41. D. 15 M. Lat. Two Rivers pass by it, namely the *Zengui* on the North-west, and the *Querboulack* on the South-west. The Houses and Walls are of Earth, the Suburbs better inhabited than the City, the Merchants, Artificers, and *Armenian Christians* living in them. In the City and Suburbs are divers *Christian* Churches, one whereof is Episcopal or Patriarchal, and the City is a great Market for Silk. On the North side of it at a Miles distance, stands upon the side of a craggy Rock a strong Fortress, which is surrounded with three Walls, and esteemed impregnable strong. This Fort is large, being four Miles round, and contains 800 Houses, wherein none but Natural *Persians* are allowed to inhabit; for this City is subject to the King of *Persia*. *Irvan* was often taken and retaken by the *Turks* and *Persians*, till finally in the Year 1635. it was united to *Persia*. (Tavernier and Chardin.)

Near *Irvan* is a notable Monastery described by Sir John Chardin, called *Eci-miazim*, built by the *Armenian Christians* in Memory of the Descent of *Christ*, who they pretend, came down hither from Heaven, to visit St. Gregory their Patron Saint; this Place is held in great Honour by them, and is a fair Church built over the Place St. Gregory stood when so visited, surrounded with a large Quadrangle, wherein are the Cells of the Monks. The *Armenian* Patriarch resides at *Irvan* or sometimes at this Monastery.

*Nackisvan*, subject also to the *Persians*, stands 21 Leagues South from *Irvan*; it is a very large but ruinous City, containing (when Sir John Chardin was there Anno 1672.) 2000 Houses, but daily encreasing, having had as the *Persians* reported, no less than 40000 Houses in it, together with a large Castle and divers Forts, which at that time were also in Ruins, the City having at several times been miserably harassed by the *Turks* and *Persians*. This may be the *Naxuana* of *Ptolemy*, or probably the *Artaxata*, built by the direction of *Hanibal* by *Araxes*, one of the Kings of *Armenia*, and memorable in the *Roman* History for the Battle between *Lucullus* and *Mithridates*; for *Tacitus* places that City near the River *Araxes*, and this stands but 7 Leagues from it, says Sir John Chardin. *Nackisvan* signifies the Station of a Ship, whence the *Armenians* say it was built by *Noah* as soon as he came out of the Ark, and so named in memory of it.

Other Towns here are, but none so considerable as to deserve particular Description; we shall therefore here close our Account of the *Turkish* Dominions in *Asia*.



# GEORGIA,

## MENGRELIA, CIRCASSIA and COMANIA.

**H**AVING Travelled thro' all the *Asiatick* *Turkey*; we shall now before we enter *Persia*, take a view of the Country lying between the *Euxine* and the *Caspian-Sea*. A Land whose natural Fertility would render it happy, if the Industry of the Natives were not wanting: But altho' *Christians* be professed among them, the Men are of so rude and vicious a Nature, that they neither by Ingenuity and Labour perform any Mechanick Works, nor cultivate the Soil so as to produce any quantities of their Native Commodities, whereby to invite Strangers thither for Trade; nor indeed is it quite safe for a Stranger to Travel among them, which Sir *John Chardin's* relation of the Perils he underwent, notwithstanding he was protected by the King of *Persia's* Pass, give us too plain a Proof of.

The Chief Traffick of the Country is in Boys and Girls, a barbarous Trade! yet such an one as is generally practised here, especially in *Mengrelia*; the Parents sell their Children, the Masters their Servants, the Lords their Tenants, and in short every Man sells every Man they have or can obtain Power over, to the *Turks* and *Persians*; who make use of them in their Armies and Seraglios, as Slaves, Mutes, Eunuchs, Soldiers or Statesmen, as the Capacities of their Persons, or the Favours of their Masters recommend them: But more of this hereafter. By this selling off their People, the Land is thin of Inhabitants, so you are not to expect many or great Cities here; what are spoken of by Travellers, we shall give you an Account of, in passing thro' these Four Countries; which lie thus.

*GEORGIA*, wherein the two petty Kingdoms of *Carduelia* and *Gaguetia* are comprehended, lies on the North of *Turcomania*; between the *Caucasian* Mountains on the North, and the *Montes Moschisi* on the South, *Mengrelia* on the West, and the *Caspian-Sea* on the East. The Country is Mountainous and Woody, which has protected it from absolute Conquest. The Soil produces necessaries for Life, and Wine in good plenty. Sir *John Chardin* speaks thus, *Georgia* is as fertile a Land as can be seen, the Bread is good as in any Part of the World, the Fruits are excellent and of divers sorts, no Place in *Europe* yields better Pears and Apples, nor no Place in *Asia* better Pomgranates; there are also abundance of Cattle, Venison and wild Fowl of all sorts; and the River *Kur* is well filled with Fish; the Wine is so rich that the King of *Persia*, has always of it for his own drinking; Silk also is here produced, but not half what Travellers report. The Inhabitants are Robust, Valiant, Merry, great lovers of Wine, and reputed very Trusty and Loyal, of good Natu-

ral Parts, but for want of Education very Vicious. The Women are generally very Fair and Comely, and such is their Beauty that it recommends them to the Court of the King of *Persia*, whose fairest Sultaneesses are *Georgian* Women. Nature has overspread the Women with Graces, no where else to be seen; 'tis impossible to see them and not love them: they are of full Stature, clean Limbs, small Waistes, Fair and very proportionate. (*Chardin*) *Georgia* is governed by its own Princes, subordinate to the King of *Persia*, and are of the *Mahometan* Religion, altho' the Subjects are generally *Christians* of the *Greek Church*.

The present *Georgia*, or *Gurgien*, and *Gurgistan*, was the ancient *Iberia*, whose Inhabitants are noted in History for their Valour; so called from the River *Iberus*, which runs thro' it. The Name *Georgia*, is supposed to be derived from St. *George* the Martyr, who is their tutelar Saint. It is divided as we have said, into two small Kingdoms, of

*Carthuel* or *Carduelia*, the Western Part, whose chief Towns are *Tefflis*, *Gory*, *Suram*; and *Caket* or *Gaguetia*, the Eastern part, chief Town *Zagan*.

*Tefflis* or *Tephlis*, called *Cala* by the *Persians*, the Capital of all these Countries, lies in the Lat. 44. Long. 66. near the Confluence of the River *Iberus*, with the *Cyrus* or *Kur*, 160 Miles West from the Coasts of the *Caspian-Sea*, 250 Miles from the *Euxine-Sea*, and 240 North-east from *Erzerum*. The *Persian Maps* says Sir *John Chardin*, lay it down in Lat. 43. 5. Long. 83. but the Longitude being corrected in our Maps, as we told you at the beginning, we may be allowed to adhere to it, and say *Tefflis* lies in Long. 66. Sir *John Chardin* gives us this description of it; This City is one of the finest of *Persia*, (for he reckons it part of that Empire) altho' it be not very large. It is seated at the bottom of a Mountain, whose Foot on the East side, is washed by the River *Kur*, which River springs in the Mountains of *Georgia*, and falls into the *Araxus*. It is surrounded with good Walls, except on the River side where the Ground is firm Rock; on the South side on the declivity of the Mountain stands a large Castle, wherein natural *Persians* only are permitted to inhabit, and to such it is an *Asylum* or Refuge for all Criminals; this Castle lies upon the Road to *Persia*, and therefore the Prince of *Georgia*, when he receives Letters or Presents from that King, being obliged to go out of the Town to meet them, passes thro' it, but seldom without Terror, least some private Order be sent to the Governor to seize him. The City is very Populous, a Place of great Trade, and one shall no where see so many Strangers of different Nations; the Court of the *Georgian* Prince, who is but Vice-roy to the King of *Persia*, is Nume-



rous and Magnificent, being attended by many Gentlemen of Distinction, he is a *Mahometan* by Profession, (but a *Christian* in his Heart) which he must adjure to obtain the Dignity. His Palace is a sumptuous Building, adorned with large State Rooms and fine Gardens, a large Volary with variety of Birds of Strange kinds, and the finest Falconry that can be seen; before the Palace is a large Square, with Strabling for 1000 Horse; and beyond it there is a long Bazar or Exchange with variety of Shops, which opens against the Palace-gate, and affords a very handsome prospect. There are no less than 14 *Christian* Churches in *Tefflis*, and not one Mosque, except in the Castle one has been lately built, the Inhabitants having always opposed in Tumults the building any in the City; the Cathedral is large and built of Stone, Ancient but in good Repair; its form is a Cross, with a large Dome in the middle. The Bishop's or *Tibetle's* (for so he is called) House adjoins to the Church; of the other Churches, Six are held by the *Georgians*, and the rest by the *Armenians*; the *Roman-Catholic* Missionaries have endeavoured to erect a Church here, but have found but little encouragement; the *Armenians* have also a Bishop here, who resides in a Monastery called *Pechavara*. The Publick Buildings are fine and built of Stone, as are the *Bazars* or Markets, and and the *Caravansera's* or Publick Inns. There are Hot-Baths in the Castle: And roundabout the Town many Houses of Pleasure and Gardens.

*Gory*, is a small City, situate in a Plain between two Mountains, on the Banks of the River *Kur* at the foot of an Eminence, upon the top whereof stands a Castle, which is guarded by natural *Persians*. It was built about 80 Years ago, by *Rustan Can* General of the *Persian* Armies, and is Garrison'd with 100 Soldiers. The Town tho' small is inhabited by rich Merchants, and well supplied with all Necessaries for Life.

*Sarem*, is a Town smaller than *Gory*, but the Castle which stands near it, is large and well built, and has also 100 Men in Garrison.

*Zagzen*, the Capital of the Principality of *Caket* or *Geguentie*, stands upon the River *Kur*, about 80 Miles South from *Tefflis*, a Place which is marked in the Maps, and named by Geographers as a Place of note, and yet I find not any particulars of it in Travellers or Authors. Sir *John Chardin* mentions a Village named *Sogan-leu* situate upon the *Kur*, but a small days Journey from *Tefflis*; but this does not agree either in Situation or Description with the *Zagzen* we look for. The same Gentleman mentions several Towns in his Passage from *Tefflis* to *Iravan*, among which *Cupikent*, notable for a stately Bridge over a River named *Tabedi*. *Melikent* or Royal Village. And *Dirjan*, a Village of 300 Houses near the Frontiers of *Armenia*.

*Cachet*, by some reckoned the Capital of that Country, is notable for a fair Church dedicated to *St. George*.

It must be noted that the ancient *Albania*, lay where is the present *Geguentie*, but extended farther into the Province of *Persia*, now called *Scirvan* to the Banks of the *Caspian-Sea*.

*MENGRELIA*, together with *Imeritia*, *Gouria* and *Samsea*, all formerly subject to one Monarch, form a Country of larger extent than *Georgia*, but by Travellers is reckoned into that Country, and the general Name of *Georgia* given to the whole.

*Guria*, *Goury*, or *Guriel*, is the South Part lying on the Coast of the *Black-Sea*, and extending within Land about 80 Miles.

*Samsea*, another small Province, if not rather a Part of *Guriel*, lies on the back of it on the East, extending to the Mountains which part it from *Georgia*. It is subject to its own Prince, a Tributary to the *Turk*, but has in it no City or Town of note, as *Archang. Lambertus* a Traveller in this Country tells us. It was formerly part of the lesser *Armenia*.

*Imeritia*, lies on the North of both these, between *Mengrelia* on the North-west, and *Georgia* on the East, extending to the Magnitude of both the last named Provinces.

*Mengrelia*, lies more Northward upon the North and East Coast of the *Black-Sea*, and within Land to the Mountain *Caucasus*.

Beyond these to the Westward on the Coast of the *Black-Sea*, live a Tartar Race of Men called the *Abcas*.

Altho' these all account themselves separate People, and have each had their separate Governments, yet One has usually prevailed, and keeps the others under, the King of *Imeritia* was and may still be esteemed chief, but not without paying Tribute to the *Turks*. Th: Government cannot be very constant, for both *Turks* and *Tartars* do frequently invade the Land, and the latter make horrid Devastation when they come.

*MENGRELIA*, is the ancient *Colches*, under which Name 'tis memorable for the famous Voyage of the *Argonauts*, which *Apolodorus* and others have celebrated in their excellent Poems, the Poetical Story of the Golden-Fleece and the Dragon is well known: The truth whereof as far as can be collected from History is only thus,

In the Infant Age of *Greece*, before the States of *Athens*, *Sparta*, *Corinth*, &c. were renowned in the World, before the Siege of *Troy*, and before the *Israelites* were governed by Kings, (for this Expedition is applied to the 11th. Year of *Gideon*) about *A. M.* 2700. The Realm of *Colches* was renowned for its Plenty, and *Aetes* the King of it famous for his excessive Wealth, which excited a set of young Heroes, that happened to live in *Greece* at that time, namely *Jason*, *Orpheus*, the two Brothers *Castor* and *Pollux*, *Telamon* and *Peleus* Sons of *Aacus*, and Fathers of *Ajax* and *Achilles*, *Laertes* the Father of *Ulysses*, *Amphiaraus* the Southsayer, *Hercules*, *Theseus* and others, to shew their Bravery in an Expedition to this famous Country, not with pretence of Conquest, for their Number was too small, nor without pretence of Gain; and consequently upon no other Pretence but Plunder, but soft, least some Pedantick admirer of Antiquity hear. They embarked in a Ship named *Argo*, whence the Adventurers are called *Argonauts*, and passing thro' the *Hellepont*, *Propontis*, and *Thracian-Bosphorus*, valiantly launched out into the *Euxine-Sea*, and arrived at last at King *Aetes* Court, where they were kindly entertained; his Wealth, which is the Golden-Fleece so much talked of, they eyed with covetous desire of obtaining; but the Guards, which is the Dragon, were too watchful to be surprized. But what their Valour could not effect, Love performed; for *Medea* the Daughter of *Aetes*, charmed with the handsome mien of *Jason* became his Victim, and for his sake fell into their measures, and by her Art circumvented the Guards, and brought off the Wealth; with which



which returning into Greece, gave the Poets occasion of dressing up that fine Story.

For the PRESENT STATE of this Country, we cannot better inform the Reader, than from the Account of Sir John Chardin, who was the last Traveller that way: He passed quite thro' it, and being a Gentleman of Integrity, an Abstract of him will undoubtedly be acceptable.

The COLCHIDE called *Odische* by the Orientals, lies at the End of the Black-Sea, bounded on the East by a small Kingdom, called *Imeritia*; on the South by the Black-Sea; on the West by the *Abcas*; and on the North by Mount *Caucasus*; the River *Corax* or *Codours* on the West separates it from the *Abcas*, [a Nation of rude People so called] and the River *Phasus* or *Rione* on the East and South, divides it from *Imeritia* and *Gouriel*. Its length is 110 Miles, and the breadth 60. Formerly it was well defended from the *Abcas*, by a Wall of 60 Miles in length, but that is long since destroyed, and the Forests are at present its best Defences. The Inhabitants of that part of Mount *Caucasus* which bounds upon *Colchis*, are the *Alanes*, the *Suanes*, the *Gignes*, and the *Caracoles* or *Cara-cherks*, People more barbarous than their Names. These *Caracherks*, that is to say *Black Circassians*, are the Southern *Circassians*, who altho' thus termed by the *Turks*, are nevertheless as fair People as any; and were formerly *Christians*, which appears by some things in their Behaviours, and some Ceremonies which they use, but at present they are without Religion. They live by Rapine, go almost quite naked, know nothing of Liberal Arts, and have almost nothing Humane but Speech.

The Ancient Kingdom of *Colchos* was of larger extent, reaching from the Frontiers of *Iberia* Westward, to the *Palus Maotis*. The chief City of the same name, to which the *Argonauts* sail'd, stood at the mouth of the River *Phasis*, where (say some Modern Geographers,) stands a City nam'd *Faso* in its Place; but this, says my Author, I can assure is false.

The Soil is unequal, Hills, Mountains, Valleys and Plains, overrun with Woods, and but here and there cultivated. The natural Produce is but small for want of Tillage, and tho' there are all the kinds of Fruits that are found in *England*; yet growing wild they have little Taste and breed Diseases. The Vine alone yields its Fruit to Perfection, altho' it be left to rear it self round the Bodies of Trees; and did the People understand the true Art of making Wine, that of this Country would be the best in the World; for as it is, with their rude ordering, 'tis pleasant to the Taste, good in the Stomach, and of a strong Body. *Mengrelia* abounds with Water, many Rivers falls down from Mount *Caucasus*, and passing thro' the Country, empty into the Black-Sea; the chief of which are the *Corax* or *Codours*, the *Sacorn* which is the *Tersan* of *Arian*, and the *Thasys* of *Ptolemy*, the *Langur* called *Astolphe* by the Ancients, the *Kelmhel* or *Cobo*, and the *Rione* or *Phasus*, which receives in its Course the *Abasgia* or *Glaucus*, and the *Skeiniscari* or *Hyppus*.

These render the Ground damp, which receives the Grain thrown loosely upon it into root immediately. But for their *Gom*, a sort of Pulse of much use with them, they make holds in the Ground and Plant it; of this *Gom* they make a Paste, which is used for Bread among the common People: Wheat and Barley; and some Rice grows here but in small quantities, and is only used by the better sort.

They have Beeves and Hogs in plenty, wild Boars, Stags, and other Venison excellently good, as also Partridge Pheasant, Quails, and other wild Fowl in Plenty; they have also Falcons, and even Eagles and Pelicans come hither from Mount *Caucasus*; whence also they are sometimes visited by Lions, Leopards, Tygres, Wolves, and Jaccalls. Here are Horses pretty good and in great number, every body has them, for they cost nothing the keeping; as soon as they alight, they unbridle and turn him loose to Graze.

There are no Cities nor Towns in *Mengrelia*, two Villages only on the Sea-Coast, but otherwhere, the Houses are dispersed in two's and three's together at every Mile's distance. There are 9 or 10 Castles, the Principal named *Rues*, wherein the Prince of *Mengrelia* retires, has Stone-walls, but sorry ones, and easie to be destroyed. The other Castles are but enclosures of Trees laid a cross, and filled up with Earth and Stones. The Houses are built of Timber, poor, incommodious, and very nasty; the ordinary People's of one Story only, without Chimney or Window, the Fire is made on the Ground in the middle of the House, and the Light comes in at the Door; and the better sort have but one upper Floor.

The People are very handsome, the Men generally well made, and the Women very beautiful. The People of Quality are very graceful, wear the *Persian* Habit, and appear with majestick Air and good Shape. The Women have such engaging looks that they command affection, they have Wit and good Address, but in their Heart are Proud, Cruel, Perfidious, Impudent, and in general Practice all the Tricks, Cheats and Coquettries that can be thought on. The Men are yet worse, for there is no sort of evil that they do not addict themselves to, Theft is what they are bred up in, 'tis their whole Study and Employment, and what they make their Glory; Murder, Incest, Whoredom, Adultery and Lying, are no Vices with them. They Marry their Aunt, Niece, or other Relations, and take two or three Wives if they please, and as many Concubines as they will. The Husbands live with great Liberty void of Jealousie, and upon the Fact of apparent Adultery, he only levies the small fine of a Hog upon the Gallant, which they eat together. They maintain the reasonableness of this Liberty, because, say they, it produces the more Children, which we can sell for Money or exchange for Necessaries: But what is worse than selling their Children, they have an evil custom of Murdering their young ones, and even burying them alive, when they are not able to nourish them.

The Gentlemen have absolute Power over their Vassals, extending to Life, Liberty, and Goods, so that they take their Wives and Children, and sell them at pleasure. Each Peasant furnishes his Lord with such a quantity of Grain, Cattle, Wine, &c. according to his Power; wherefore Wealth consists in the number of Peasants their Vassals. The Gentlemen maintain their Rights by the Sword, and so are always attended and attended; their Arms are a Lance, a Bow and Arrows, a Sabre and a Buckler, fire Arms being little used among them. Both Gentle and Simple are very nasty, they never have but one Shirt at a time which lasts a Year, and in that time is washed three or four times, but twice a Week they take it off to kill the Vermin. They Eat sitting upon a Carpet crossed-legg'd as the *Persians*, and the ordinary sort upon a Bench in that manner. The



rich have a few Silver Vessels, but the common use is of Wooden ones; and 'tis the Custom here from the King to the Peasant, for the whole Family to eat together at the same Table. The *Mengrelians* and their Neighbours are great Drunkards, sit at it whole Days, and their Cup Conversation is chiefly taken up in bragging of their Thefts, Combars, sale of Slaves, and Debaucheries. The Children are bred up in Theft by the Father, and in Debauchery by the Mother, so the Vices are made hereditary. The Inhumanity of the *Mengrelians* in seeking all opportunities to trap even their best Friends, and sell them into Slavery, is incredible: This Trade has so diminished the number of Inhabitants, that of 80000 that were reckoned here 30 Years ago, there is now not above 20000. 'tis supposed that not less than 12000 are Yearly sold to the *Turks* and *Persians*. Besides this Commodity of Slaves, they export Honey, Wax, Ox-Hides, Castor, and Martin-Skins, Flax, Seed, Thred, Silk, and Linnen Cloath. Their Dealings consists chiefly in Barter, for there is very little Money among them, and notwithstanding the opinion of the Ancients, that a golden Sand was washed from the Mountains, and caught in the Fleeces they spread for it, neither Silver nor Gold is now found here.

The Prince of *Mingrelia* has a Revenue of about 20000 Crowns *per Annum*, arising by the Custom of Goods and by Oppressions. He has a Court of 200 Gentlemen at solemn Occasions, and ordinarily about 120; with a Train of 300 Servants and Guards.

Ecclesiastical History says, that a *Christian* Slave converted the King of *Colebas*, his Queen and Grandees in the time of the Emperor *Constantine* the Great, who sent thither Priests and Doctors to Baptize and Instruct them. Others say that *Christianity* was first Preach'd there by one *Cyril* about A. D. 860. But tho' *Christianity* be professed the People know nothing of its Doctrine, having no Idea of Faith, Eternity, the Resurrection, &c. Nor are the Priests capable of instructing them, being themselves perfectly illiterate and ignorant of the Mysteries of Religion, the best of them can only read and say a Mass by Heart: Yet are rich and have many Vassals, whose Children they sell into Slavery without Scruple. The Church is governed by a *Catholicos* or Metropolitan who is appointed by the Prince, and has Dominion over all *Mengrelia*, *Imeritia*, *Gouriel*, Mount *Caucasus* and *Abcessia*. He is Rich having 400 Vassals who furnish him with all Necessaries and other Tributes. There are six Suffragan Bishops, who are also Rich and clad in Scarlet and Velvet, but are scandalously negligent of the Duties of their Office, seldom or never visiting their Dioceses, or correcting the Manners of the Priests: The Episcopal Churches are well enough in order, and adorned with many rich Images, the Oblations to which is their chief Religion; but the Parish Churches are most nasty; these too are full of Images to which the common People pay a most Servile and Idolatrous Worship. Their Service is according to the *Greek* Church, but all the Rites are so slovenly performed, and their Priests know so little of the *Dogmata* of Religion, that one can hardly say which Church they adhere to. Fasting and Abstinence from certain Meats is the chief part of their Religion; their Prayers are directed to Images. they offer Sacrifice upon the Tombs of their Relations, and make Libations every Day before they drink;

they do not solemnize the Sabbath properly, hardly ever abstaining from their common work, but at the Festivals of *Christmas* and *Easter*. In short they have many extravagant Customs, wherein *Judaism* and *Paganism* are mixt in their Religion, and upon the whole hardly deserve the Name of *Christians*. Thus much for *Mingrelia*.

*GURIEL* with *SAMSEA*, resembles in all things *Mengrelia*, the Nature of the Soil, the Manners of the People, the Religion, Customs, and Vices are much the same.

*IMERITIA*, called by the *Turks* *Pachkue* or *Pocha-koutchkoue*, i. e. little Prince, is 120 Miles in length, and 60 Miles in breadth; a Country Woody and Mountainous like *Mengrelia* but has more fine Valleys and delicious Plains; as also Bread, Pulse, and other Victuals; Money has its Course and is Coined; the Houses are built in Towns, and a general Commerce is maintained: But the Manners of the People are still much the same with those we have described. To the Commodities of *Mengrelia*, this Country of *Imeritia* adds Iron, whereof here are good Mines. The King of *Imeritia* had formerly Dominion over all these Countries; but in the last Age they revolted, and have ever since been at Wars. Those that are nearest the *Turks* craved his assistance, and had his Protection, but by that means the Grand-Seignior made them all Tributaries.

The King of *Imeritia* pays 80 Boys and Girls.

The Prince of *Guriel* pays 46 Children.

The Prince of *Mengrelia* 60000 fathom of Linnen-Cloath.

The *Abcas* have sometimes paid a Tribute, but do it not constantly.

The *Turks* are contented with Tribute rather than take the Country, because the Air is not very wholesome, Bread scarce, and the ordinary Food, Swines flesh with Wine, is what their Law forbids. However he keeps a *Pacha* at *ikizike*, a Castle and Town in *Guriel*, and possesses *Cotatis* the chief Town and Castle of *Imeritia*.

*Akalzike* upon the Frontiers of *Georgia*, and on the Mount *Caucasus*, is a strong Castle and a Town of about 400 Houses mostly new, and built since the *Turks* possessed it, there being nothing ancient but two *Armenian* Churches; the Town is Peopled with *Turks*, *Armenians*, *Georgians*, *Greeks* and *Jews*. The Houses are built of Wood, among which there is a handsome Caravanseray or Inn. The *Christians* have two Churches here, and the *Jews* a Synagogue.

Thus far I have borrow'd from Sir *John Chardin*, and have been more large than elsewhere, that I might give the Reader a true Idea of these Countries, which is so much the more necessary, as they differ so very much from the other Parts we have passed thro', and in regard that their evil Custom of selling Children, makes the Countrey talked of; and especially since that Custom gave Rise to a Nation, that for some Ages Bearded the *Turks*, and suppressed their Power in *Agypt* and some parts of *Asia*; I mean the *MAMALUKES*, who were no other than the Children bought here and carried to *Agypt*, where bred up in Arms and listd in Bands, they composed a Body like the Janizaries in *Turky*; excellent in Service, and therefore by the Caliph much esteemed, and their number encreased, till at last growing proud of their Honour, and sensible of their Power, they rebelled and slew their Master *Melec-Sala*, the seventh *Turkish* Caliph of *Agypt*, surrounded



ounded his Son in a Castle and burnt it; and finally assumed the Throne. The History of that People does not belong to this Place, we shall have occasion to mention it when we come to speak of Egypt, to which we refer it, and shall now proceed.

*Catani*, the chief City of *Imeritia*, where the Kings of *Georgia* formerly resided, stands upon the River *Pirsis* in the 44 Deg. Lat. 'tis a small City with a Castle built upon a Rock at the Foot of a Mountain, as *Archangelus Lambertus* declares, who dwelt some Years in this Country.

*Savastopoli*, *Sebestopolis*, a City of *Cochis* mentioned by *Proteny* and *Pliny*, and by its modern name spoken of by *Niger* and others, and commonly set down in the Maps, as a notable *Emporium* on the Coast of the *Euxine-Sea*, in the Kingdom of *Mengrelia*; was swallow'd up by the overflowings of the Sea about 100 Years ago, as the same *Lambertus* tells us, and its Ruins only are now seen.

Several Cities are mentioned in ancient Authors, as seated in these Countries, but they are passed away and nothing of them remains; wherefore 'tis needless to name them.

The Two other Provinces proposed to be spoke of in this Chapter, *CIRCASSIA* and *COMANIA*, lie on the North of *Mengrelia*. The former is a very large Country, extending from the River *Don* or *Tanais*, the boundary of *Muscovy*, to the *Caspian-Sea*; 'tis a Land of various Soil, having the high Ridge of the Mount *Caucasus* for its South boundary, and other Mountains in its North and Western Parts: But has pleasant Vallies and fruitful Plains, which afford Pasture, Cattle, Flowers, and Herbage in good plenty; but no Towns or Castles, only Villages of circular form, with a large space of Ground in the middle, as *Tavernier* tells us. The Inhabitants vulgarly called *Cherkes*, live by Robbery, invading their Neighbours, and carrying off their Cattle, Slaves, &c. and may in general be reckoned of the kind we spoke of in *Mengrelia*.

*COMANIA*, altho' another name, is for ought I can see but the Western part of *Circassia*, extending to the Straights of *Cassa*, and the Banks of the *Black-Sea*; a People of like Manners with the *Circassians*, and are called *Kamouchs*; commit Plunder like them, and fly into the Mountains for shelter, and commonly reside there.

*DACHESTAN*, a Province comprehended in the general name of *Comania*, is a more civilized Part, and governed by its own Princes; this Country lies between *Georgia*, *Schirwan* and the *Caspian-Sea*. *Tarku* is the principal City; and as *Olearius* tells us, contains 1000 Houses built after the *Persian* manner. On the Coast of the *Caspian-Sea*, in the 43 D. 23 m. Lat. 60 Leagues from *Astracan* by Sea, and 70 by Land, stands the City *Tarki* (different from *Tarku*;) which is the seat of a *Tartar* Prince, and furnished with a Garrison of 2000 Men. It is a good large Town, the Buildings whereof are all of Wood, and is the best Haven on the *Caspian-Sea*. (*Olearius*.) To what Province this Place ought to be assigned, I find not ascertained.

Having often mentioned Mount *CAUCASUS*, 'tis necessary to speak a few words of it before we pass forward. We have already told you in our general Account of *Asia*, that a vast Chain of Mountains passes quite thro' this Part of the Earth, which is variously denominated in its several Parts, the most remarkable and highest Parts are named, *Caucasus*, *Imeus* and *Taurus*. The first which is that which we

are now to speak to, lies nearest to *Euxine*, between the *Black* and the *Caspian Seas*, with *Muscovian-Tartary* on the North, and *Turkey*, *Georgia*, &c. on the South.

It is the highest part of all this grand Ridge, and its Sommer is always covered with Snow. *Sir John Chardin*, who travelled over it gives us this Account of it. 'Mount *Caucasus* is the highest and most difficult to pass that I have ever seen; it is full of Rocks and terrible Precipices, where with great Labour Paths are cut out of the Rock for convenience of Passage, which is nevertheless extream difficult thro' the steep declivity. In Winter (at which time this Author travelled) the Snow lies long, and adds much to the difficulty and danger of the Passage; which the better to provide against, the Guides wear a sort of Shoes with Soles as broad as a Racket and of that form, which preserves them from slipping into the Snow, and with which they slit along upon its Surface with great Celerity, and a kind of Peel, which they carry in their Hands, turn aside the Snow, and make a Path; a high Wind is at that time very dangerous, for the drifts of Snow will cover both Horse and Man: The Natives therefore fail not to make Prayers to their Images as they pass over. The Passage over it is about 36 short Leagues, but in the way there are divers Villages, and plenty of Provisions; for the Earth is in general very prolific, even to the top, and yields Corn and Wine, Fruits, Cattle, and Honey. The Wine is excellent and so exceeding plenty, that near 40 Gallons are sold for a Crown. They have also store of Poultry, Eggs and Pulse, and Fruit to excess. Here is also very good Plenty of Bread, which in *Mengrelia* is very scarce, and the Mountain is almost covered with Fir-trees. The Inhabitants are *Christians*, but subject to the *Turk*, of handsome form, and better conditioned than the *Mengrelians*: Thus much is sufficient for Mount *Caucasus* in general; its Branches and Extents, is more difficult to be told, in regard that as I said, a continued Ridge runs on Eastward, on which this name is by some extended farther, and by others contracted shorter, and therefore we shall forbear to set bounds to it.

Lastly, Before we pass forward to *Persia*, we shall take the liberty to entertain the Reader with a short Account of the *Black-Sea*, which is omitted hitherto, and cannot hereafter be so regularly brought in. And we shall do this the more acceptably we suppose, in taking it from *Sir John Chardin* who sailed the whole extent of it.

The *EUXINE* or *Black-Sea* lies direct East and West, near 200 Leagues in length, and its greatest breadth North and South, from the *Bosphorus* or Strait of *Constantinople*, to the Mouth of the River *Nieper* or *Boristhenes*; about three Degrees: But the other end of it is not near so broad. The Water of it is not so clear, green or salt as that of the Ocean, which may be attributed to the many fresh Rivers which empty into it; and its self being shut up from the Ocean except at the *Bosphorus*, may not improperly be accounted a Lake, as the *Caspian-Sea* by some is; it has no Islands upon it; and the Dominion of it belongs to the Grand-Seignior, who takes care to keep it from Pyrates, and hinders all Navigation there, but in his own Ships or such as are licensed by him. It is a rowling Sea, and abundantly subject to Tempests, whence 'tis called by the *Turks* *Cara-Denguis*, i. e. furious Sea, and in regard that *Cara* signifies also *Black*, it has obtained the Name



of Black-Sea from Europeans; 'tis from this quality, and not from the Colour of the Waters that its name derived. The Reason of its turbulency may be from the narrow Bed of its Waters without egress, for the narrow aperture of the Bosphorus is next to none, whereby

the Body of the Water when moved by the Winds, for want of Passage forward, rebounds from the Shoar, and rowls up in vast Waves, to the inconceivable Terror and damage of those that Sail on it.

# PERSIA.





**P**ERSIA, is so called say the Classicks, from *Pe-seus* the Son of *Jupiter* and *Danae*; or as others, from the Province *Perfis*, which by *Synecdoche*, is extended to the whole, and had its name say the Antiquaries from *Perfis* an illustrious Lord, who for his great Merit, was exalted to the Government of the Country, and gave his name to it. Or according to others, it obtained the name from the word *Paras*, which signified *Heaven*, because being commanded by *Cyrus* to practise Horse-manship, the Inhabitants became wonderfully expert in it. In Scripture, 'tis called *Elam*, which was the name this Country was known by to the *Israelites*, from *Elam* the Son of *Sem*, who first planted it after the Flood. The *Greeks* and *Romans* used the modern name, and all *European* Nations do the same, with some variation in the Termination, and the name *Erastan* or *Pharistan* as the Natives call it, is plainly of the same Radix: But the *Turks* call it *Irak-ash*.

*Perfis*, as it constituted the second of the four great Monarchies of the World, comprehended *Affyria*, *Chaldaea*, *Mesopotamia*, *Armenia*, and the whole *Asia-Minor*, as well as the present *Persia*, and thereby extended from the *Hellepont*, to the Frontiers of *India*: But in its present extent, 'tis bounded on the West with the Countries we last came from, namely *Georgia*, *Turcomania*, *Affyria* and *Chaldaea*; whence the Rivers *Euphrates* and *Tigris*, with the Mountains of *Armenia* divide it. On the East, the River *Indus* and the Mountains divide *Persia* from *India*; on the North the *Caspian-Sea* and the River *Oxus*, divide it from *Tartary*, and on the South the *Persian-Gulph*, the Gulph of *Ormuz* and the *Arabian-Sea*, are its Boundaries.

In which extent it comprehends no less than 15 Degrees in Latitude, and 25 Degrees in Longitude; That is, from the 25th. to the 40th. Degree of North Latitude, and in the North-west near 4 Degrees more; and from the 63d. to the 88th. Degree of Longitude; and its Mensuration from the Frontiers of *Georgia* in the North-west, to the Frontiers of *India* in the South-west, contains near 1500 Miles in length; and from the Frontiers of *Tartary* to the Sea-Coast, near 900 Miles in breadth.

It is seated under the Fourth, Fifth and Sixth Climates, whereby the longest Day in the North Part, is of 15 H. 48 M. and in the South Part 13 H. 48 M. enjoying therefore variety of Air, but except in the very South Part, the hot Weather and cold are of equal duration, and therefore very tolerable. Mr. *Tavernier* tells us that in *Edzerbayan*, it is very cold and very healthy; In *Gilan* and *Tabaristan*, which he calls *Mazenderan*, the Country by reason of its neighbourhood to the *Caspian-Sea* is Fenny, and therefore the Air very unwholesome; at *Ispahan* they have six Months of very hot, and as many of very cold Weather, wherein the Snows fall very thick, and render the ways unpassable.

The Soil cannot be much praised, for tho' some Parts be Fertile and produce excellent Fruits; other Parts are perfectly Steril, being Mountainous and Sandy; and withal here are but very few Rivers, so that they have only Rain and the dissolved Snow to Water the Land, which falling in small Rivulets from the Mountains make the Valleys fruitful; of the Products whereof Travellers give us this Account, namely, that their Corn ripens so expeditiously, that in some Parts they have frequently a three-

fold Crop in the Year. (Dr. *Fryar*.) They have at *Ispahan*, says *Thevenot*, all the kinds of Fruit found in *France*, but fairer and better, and by reason of the dryness of the Air keep the whole Year. The Melons of *Persia* are incomparable, says *Tavernier*, their Peaches large, and Apricots delicious; but their Apples, Pears, Oranges, Granates, Pruans, Cherries and Quinces are not so good as our's in *Europe*. They have Grapes of 9 or 10 sorts, and make a rich White-wine, but their Red-wine, except that made at *Sebi-as* which is very good, will not keep; nor have they any Casks to keep it in, for either they have not the Art of making them, or else, as they say, the Drought would make 'em leaky; and all their Wine is kept in Earthen Jars. They have very few Trees but what grow in their Gardens, and of those the Palm is carefully cultivated, and bears excellent Dates; if the Blossom of the Male-tree be inoculated into the Bud of the Female, without which they say the fruit will have no Pulp, and be only Stone and Skin. (*Thevenot*.) Their Date is so luscious a Food, that if eaten in the hot Season, it causes the Body to break out into Boils and Scabs. The common Herbs for Sallads, and Roots for Food, flourish in *Persia*, but they have no Pulse: *Sparagus* and *Artichokes*, before unknown, being brought from *Europe* by the *Carmelite* Fryars, are found to thrive here. (*Tavernier*.) Here are Plenty of Almonds, and in the Provinces of *Gilan* and *Tabaristan*, some Olives, Oranges, Lemons and Chestnuts.

In *Persia* are found Mines of Copper, Lead, Iron, whereof some so fine as to rise pure Steel. Here are also found *Turquois* Stones, both of the old and new Rock according to *Gimelli*, but *Tavernier* says, there have been none of the old Rock found of late. In the Gulph of *Persia*, are many Fisheries for Pearl, especially at the Island *Baharen*, where are found the richest and fairest in the World. And in some of the Provinces are Quarries of fine Marble, and some Veins of *Lapis Lazuli*; and about *Gombron* the Earth is fit for Porcelain. Many Baths and Mineral Waters, but especially a Spring of Naptha are seen in *Persia*. Silk is exceeding Plenty, 19000 Bales being annually exported, besides what is wrought up at Home, and it yields a vast Manufacture and Traffick to the People; which with fine Carpets (the weaving whereof is the best and most curious Manufacture of the Nation) Cotton, Pearls, *Bezour*-Stone, *Lavi-Lazuli* and some other Commodities they transport to other Countries, but have not enough of these to Ballance Trade, being forced to give Money to the *English* and *Dutch*, for a great part of the Goods they want from *India* and *Europe*.

Of Cattle, the *Persians* have excellent Horses, which tho' small, are strong and fleet, Mules, Camels, and two sorts of Ases, namely, the *Persian* for Burden, and the *Arabian* for Riding, being active and as valuable as Horses; and *Tavernier* mentions Oxen among their serviceable Beasts.

Of Wild Beasts here are Lions, Tygers, Bears, and wild Boars, which live in the Mountainous parts and are seldom seen by Travellers, or known to do much harm, but afford a noble Pastime to the King. There are also Porcupines, Deer of various sorts, wild Ases, Foxes, Hares, &c. The *Oynce* a small Creature of a spotted Skin, is of a most fierce Nature, and yet as tractable as a Dog, and used in hunting, being carried behind a Man on Horseback.



Horseback, and thrown on when the Game springs, will fetch down a Deer or a wild Goat.

Of tame Beasts they have Kine, which tho' small are well fed, Sheep, and Goats whose Skin yields a very beneficial Manufactory and Traffick, and their Kids delicious Food.

And of Fowl they have most of the sorts found in *Europe*, as also Cranes and other kinds. Their Falcons, Hawkes, and Lanerets are excellent in Game, for they will even fly at a wild Boar and peck out his Eyes, which renders him an easie Victim.

*Persia* has few large Rivers, Mr. Tavernier says none but the *Araxes*, (which rises in *Armenia*, and passing thro' *Aiderbeiden*, falls into the *Caspian-Sea*) is Navigable; the other Rivers of note are the *Tigris*, the *Bendamis*, the *Cauca*, and some few others.

Mountains here are many, but none very notable, except the high Peak, which being covered with Sulphur, seems to sparkle in the Night like Fire.

#### Of the Inhabitants.

The *Persians* are a People of good Address and excessively Complimental; of sufficient Understanding; addicted to Dissimulation; very Luxurious in their Habit and Diet; and abominably guilty of Venerie and Lasciviousness in Conversation. And tho' Wine be forbid, they will secretly be Drunk, and they take Opium, Tobacco, and Coffee to excess.

Signior Gimelli writes thus of them, viz. The Manners of the *Persians*, differ much from the *Turks*, for they are Civil, Meek, Peaceable, Modest, Grateful, Generous, Enemies to Fraud, and Lovers of Strangers. They are far from hating *Christians* as the *Turks* do, but are on the contrary, Courteous and Civil to them. In Complements, their Expressions are very Hyperbolic, and their Conversations are full of Flattery, which their natural Pride makes them greedily listen to. They wink at Injuries, but 'tis but for the better opportunity of full Revenge, which they are careful to execute. They have very few Diversions, Play is forbid by the Law, and Dancing, Walking, or Riding they are too lazy to affect. The only manly Diversions they do use, are Hunting and Hawking, which the King and Nobility frequently exercise, but then the Huntsmen are sent before to encompass the Place, and confine the Game. But they commonly spend their time in lolling upon their Sofa's (or Couch,) smoking Tobacco, drinking Coffee, and taking Opium. They are wonderfully Superstitious, and most servilely subject to Astrology, whereby the Professors of that Science have great Power over them, the King himself not excepted. Thus far Gimelli. They commonly Educate their Children in Literature, and have Academies for their Instruction, yet they are generally too lazy to be very Learned says Dr. Fryar. But Thevenot says, there are a great many in *Persia*, that understand the Mathematicks and Philosophy, and the common People are generally curious in Science; but their Ignorance makes their Curiosity impertinent, and the meanest thing not seen before is a sufficient subject of much admiration with them. Of their Learning, Olearius the Writer of the Ambassadors Travels gives us this Account, viz. The Learned Language of *Persia* is the *Arabic*, *Hebrew*, *Greek*, or *Latin* being unknown there. They have Universities, Colleges, and Professors at *Isfahan*, *Aleppo*, *Taurus*, *Isfahan*, *Kem*, *Tifl*, and *Semna*, wherein Youth are put to Study: For tho' the Sciences are far from being in Perfection there,

yet the Gentry affect Learning. They study Philosophy, Astronomy, Astrology, Geometry, Arithmetick, Eloquence and Poetry, of which last they are great Lovers. They have *Aristotle* in *Arabic* and read him in their Universities, but their Knowledge is very shallow. Astronomy they disregard and bend all that part of their study to Judicial Astrology. Anatomy and Chemistry they are perfect Strangers to, and consequently but sorry Physicians. And their Law consisting of the Precepts in the *Alchoran*, and the Municipal Customs, is a study of no large extent. The *Persian* Year is both *Solar* and *Lunar*, *Lunar* in Ecclesiastical Matters, and *Solar* in secular Affairs: it begins with the vernal Equinox, and consists of 365 Days. Their Week begins with *Saturday*, and *Friday* is the Sabbath. The *Persian* Language participates of the *Arabic*, but has no Affinity with the *Turkish*. But the *Turkish* Language is studied as a Gentlemanlike Qualification, being frequently spoken at Court.

In Person, the *Persians* are of low Stature, strong Limb'd, Hawk-nosed, black Hair, of Olive colour'd Complexion; (says Olearius.) But according to others, by their Marriages with the fair *Georgian* Women, or chiefly by reason of the many *Tatars* settled there in these last Ages, they are become of a fairer Skin. They allow *Polygamy*, every Man being allowed four Wives, few are without three or two at least, and the richer sort ten or twelve. Divorces are very common, and the Women are Re-married without Scruple: But it is not lawful for a Man to re-marry his Divorc'd Wife, till she have been first Married to another and Divorc'd.

The present Inhabitants are a mixture of *Tatars*, *Turks*, *Indians*, *Banians*, *Jews*, and *Gurs* or the ancient Native *Persians*, which last are indeed the least in number; the Wars and Migrations, which at several times have happened, and subjected the Country to so many Masters of different Nations, having driven out the original Inhabitants and put Strangers in their Places.

The Predominant Religion of *Persia* is that of *Mahomet*, but the *Mahometan* Religion here is different from that in *Turky*, and the Schism between the *Turks* and *Persians* is so great, that they hate one another as bad as they do *Christians*. The Subject whereof is this, namely, upon the Death of *Mahomet* as we have already told you in our Account of *Arabia*, *Abubeker* succeeded in the Government, and to him *Omar*, and to him *Osman*: all whom say the *Persians*, were Usurpers in prejudice to the Right of *Haly*, the Nephew, Son-in-Law, and only lawful Successor of *Mahomet*, which *Haly* was unjustly slain by *Osman*; and therefore the *Persians* will not communicate with the *Turks*, who hold *Osman* to have been the lawful Caliph. And as they are thus at Enmity with the *Turks*, they have many Rites and Ceremonies different from them; which as it would be too tedious to enumerate, so neither is it necessary in a work of this Nature. But tho' *Mahometan* be the National Religion, a very large part of the People, perhaps the greater moiety are of contrary Faiths; for Conscience being free in *Persia*, the *Christians*, *Jews*, *Indians*, *Pagans*, and *Gurs*, exercise their own Religions undisturbed; and great numbers of each live here, especially *Armenian Christians*. These are not only allowed the Exercise of their Religion under their own Archbishop, and four Suffragan Bishops, but are also endowed with very considerable Privileges, on account of the profitable Traffick they



they manage. The *Indian Bannians* or Merchants, are also numerous, as are likewise the *Jews*. The *Gaurs* or *Guebres*, which are the ancient *Persian* Race, noted in Antiquity for their Worship of Fire, are chiefly seated in the Southern Provinces, and profess a Religion different from all others. They believe in one *Ebrahim-zer-Ateuch*, as the chief Prophet under God, and pay him great Honours, but detest Idolatry, and profess their Honour to Fire, is only in memory of a Miraculous Deliverance of their Prophet from its Flames; and 'tis for that reason, that they keep a perpetual Fire, which they call Holy and Swear by. They allow Polygamy, and exercise some foolish Superstitions, but neither Circumcise nor abstain from Wine and Swines Flesh. On the contrary, they Baptize their Children, believe in and pray to the One God of Heaven and Earth, look for the Resurrection of the Dead, and observe with decent Piety certain Festivals in memory of their Saints. *Gemelli* with an over fondness to contradict *Tavernier* from whom we have taken our Account of these People, says, these *Gaurs* profess themselves the Descendants of *Abraham*, who is that chief Prophet they Adore; But in regard they neglect Circumcision, this is not likely. As to the *Armenians*, their Christianity consists too much in Externals, Fasting is esteemed very Meritorious with them, and the Breach of it on the appointed Days, is imputed as the greatest Crime. Their Churches are well adorned and illuminated with many Tapers at the times of officiating. In Celebrating the Eucharist, they dip the Bread in the Wine, which the Laity as well as their Priests receive. In Baptism they immerse the Infant in Water, and then anoint it with Oil; and in their Marriages and Burials, have many Superstitious Rites.

The *Persian* Garb is the loose long Robe of *Calico*, Silk or fine Cloath, over a Vest of sleeked *Calico* or *Sattin*, and a quilted Waistcoat of Cotton, with Drawers to the Ankle, and Stockings of Cloath, and neat *Turky-Leather* Slippers. All which are of different Colours, and exceeding neat and clean. Their Turban is a Cap with a white Sash, and over it a stript one of various Colours, and sometimes of Gold, which swells it out very large; it is worn of what Colours they fancy, as well by *Christians* as *Mahometans*, and oftentimes richly fringed with Gold. The Rings on their Fingers, altho' set with the richest Stones, are only of Silver, even to the King himself, and none but Women wear them of Gold. The Women never appear but in a thick Vail, which covers every thing of them but their Eyes: but at Home their Face and Breast are uncovered. Their Habit is very rich, but in form not much unlike the Men's, except that they wear their Hair long and loose, and a little Bonnet on their Heads, which rises high in a Spire, and is richly adorned with Jewels, they wear Rings in their Noses, as well as on their Fingers, which are set with fine Diamonds. They sit cross-legg'd as the Men do, and lie (as all the Orientals do) on a Mattress and Carpet without Sheets, and covered with a quilted Carpet. In their Food the *Persians* are much more Luxurious than the *Turks*; it consists of *Pilao* or boil'd Rice, which is always served in, together with a Dish of Fish or Flesh with Broath all which they mix together, and eat very copiously at their *Hazir* or Evening Meal. They have also *Ragou's* and Artificial Dishes, together with Plenty of Fruit, whereof they eat to great excess. Mutton and

Lamb, with Pullets, Capons, Partridges, Pheasants, and other Fowl; and their *Pilao*, *Ragou's*, and Fruit as abovesaid, is their ordinary Food, with which they grow very fat, and pride themselves much in it. Thus we are told by *Tieventot* and *Dr. Fryar*; but on the contrary, some other Travelers represent them as an abstemious People. They use no Knives, but tear the Meat to pieces, and scoop up the Rice with their Fingers, nor have Spoons of better material than Wood. Rice is a constant Food, serv'd up in all Messes, and used for Bread, but they have some Wheat, and so those that desire may have Wheaten Bread. The Common People drink nothing but Water, but the better sort correct it with *Duschat*, and sharpen it with Vinegar; and frequently drink Wine.

The Government of *Persia* is absolute Monarchy, the King's Will is Law in all Cases; he judges of the Lives and Fortunes of his Subjects, without regard to any other Justice or Law than his own Pleasure, and that often leads him to extravagant Severities, which the People submit to without the least repining. And as this Arbitrary way of Government, may be justly suspected to create him many private Enemies, the Ruling Prince always either puts to Death, Imprisons or Blinds, all his Male Relations, to prevent their heading any Rebellion. He has a great many Wives, of all whom he is so jealous, that 'tis Death for any Man to look upon them; wherefore when he Travels, notice is given to all Men to quit the Road, nay their very Houses, and retire to a great distance, which every Body must do if he values his Life; this they call *Carouck*. And in his Arbitrary way, the *Carouck* or Royal Interdict is often laid upon Victuals, insomuch that sometimes for a month together, no Food is to be bought but of the ordinarie kinds, the Sellers not daring to part with Poultry, Venison, and what else is mentioned in the Order, to any Body but the King's Officers.

The King is excessive Rich in Gold, Plate, and precious Stones, which is continually encreased by the Presents made to him by the *Chans* or great Lords, which they often repeat, especially every New-years-day. He has many Lands, which he Farms out at the Rent of one Fifth, Third or sometimes half the Produce. He has the Monopoly of Silk; large Subsidies from the several Companies of Tradesmen; and all Estates confiscated by Delinquency, occur to the Crown. These together with many smaller Taxes, raise his Revenue so high, that all Travelers represent him as a very powerful Prince; and therefore *Dr. Heylin* must be much mistaken, in summing his Revenue to no more than four or five Millions of Crowns, which is far short of what such a Prince may be supposed to have. *Olearius* makes it eight Millions of Gold; but as he mentions not the Specie, we are as much in the dark as to the Sum; but if he means *Tomans*, the *Persian* Denomination each of which is somewhat above three Pound Sterling, he may be supposed to be nearest the Truth; for this Princes constant Charge in his Army comes to near one Million of *Tomans per Annum*. And his Stables are so largely furnished with fine Horses, 1500 in number, some whereof eat out of golden Mangers, says *Gemelli*. His Court so large, his Equipage so sumptuous, his Attendants so numerous, his Gardens so surprizingly large and finely accommodated, his Wives so many, and in short, his Grandeur in all the parts of Pomp and  
Expence



Expence, so remarkable, as all Travellers represent it cannot be maintained with a less Revenue than the largest we have mentioned.

The Army consists of three sorts, viz. 1. The *Co-fchi* who are descended of ancient *Turks*, and live in the Country in Tents, of these about 25000 are in constant Service, and encreased when occasion requires, their Pay is 12 to 15 *Tomans per Annum*, i. e. about 40 or 50 Pound of our Money; this is so considerable a Body of Men, that as *Gimelli* tells us, the *Chans* and great Officers are mostly chosen out of them, as being Men of larger Stature and finer Shapes than others. 2. The *Goulams*, who are slaves or the Sons of such, and chiefly renegado *Georgians*, they are about 14000 in number at the constant pay of six to eight *Tomans per Annum*, these two Orders carry Bows and Arrows, and serve on Horseback. 3. The *Tufenki*, who are Volunteers raised in the Villages, but are mostly renegado *Armenians*, and are about 8000 in number at the same Pay. Besides all these, the King has his Guard of Musketeers, the number whereof is at his own Pleasure, but are commonly 2000. These may be reckoned altogether to amount to about 50000 Men, which is the ordinary Guard in time of Peace; but in the Wars the *Persian* has had, with the *Turk*, the *Tartar*, or the *Great-Mogul*, which are the only Powers that can affect him, he has ordinarily brought into the Field an Army of 150000 Men, the greatest part whereof were well mounted, for the *Persians* cover to serve on Horseback. Note this great Monarch has no Naval Force at all, nor do the *Persians* exercise Navigation, contenting themselves to sell their Goods at *Gembrew*, to the *English* and *Dutch* which come thither to fetch them.

The first Kings of the present Race affected the Title of *Sophy*, because *Aider* the first of them bore it: But it is now disused, and *Sebach* or *Peschach*, which signifies King or great Lord, is his Title. The Succession to the Crown is Hereditary in the Male Line, and in case of failure of Male Issue by his Wives, the Sons of his Concubines are admitted; and for want of both, the next of Kin to the last King succeeds.

The Principal Officers under the King, according to *Trevenot*, are

The *Eatmed Doulet*, or the King's Vice-gerent, like the Grand-Vizir in *Turky*.

The *Serfer Salar* or Generalissimo, an Officer created only in War time.

The *Korougbi-Bassa*, or General of the *Coschi*.

The *Coular-Agasi*, General of the *Goulams*.

The *Nedab* or *Sedre*, who is High-Priest and chief in Spirituals, as the *Eatmed Doulet* is in Temporals; this is an Office of so great Dignity and Wealth, that *Gimelli* says, his Revenue amounts to 14000 *Tomans per Annum*.

The *Scheick-el Selim*, or the *Scheick* of the Law, who judges Spirituals under the *Sedre*. And the *Casi* who is his Assistant.

The *Nazer*, or Overseer of the King's Goods, Furniture, &c.

The *Mebter*, first Gentleman of the Chamber and Chamberlain, who always attends the King in Person.

The *Mirak-bar Bassa*, or Master of the Horse.

The *Vakannvierz*, or Principal Secretary of State.

The *Mirchikir Bassa*, who is chief Huntsman.

The *Ischik-Agasi Bassa*, Master of the Ceremonies.

The *Munidgin Bassa*, chief of the Astrologers.

The *Hakim Bassa* who is the chief Physician.

Signior *Gimelli* adds much to this List in the Names of very many other Officers, but being of less Dignity, and only Servants in the King's Family, we omit them.

For the Administration of Justice, here are

The *Divan-Beghi* of *Ispahan*, who is Lord Chief Justice, and has a Check over all the *Chans*.

The *Chans* are the Governours of Provinces, or particular Districts, whereof *Gimelli* gives us a List of 81, besides 37 smaller Governments, whose Governours bear the Title of *Vizir*. These *Chans* are considerable Persons having great Power and large Revenues, viz. 7 or 8000 *Tomans*, as *Gimelli* tells us, every of them maintains a small Army of Soldiers for the King's extraordinary Service.

The *Derega*, subordinate to the *Divan-Beghi*, is a Judge in small Districts, and not unlike our Justice of the Peace.

The *Auss* performs the Office of our Constable.

In every Province and great Town, there is a *Divan-Beghi* or Judge, who is appointed by the King: And a *Derega*, who is appointed by the *Chan*.

There is also in all great Towns, an Officer called *Kelenter* appointed by the King, whose business is like the *Roman* Tribunes, to defend the People from Oppression of Officers, and to represent their cause at Court: He has also the Care of the King's Revenues.

There is also in every great Town a *Scheick* or *Casi*, to Judge Ecclesiastical Causes: Appointed by the *Sedre*.

By all which it will appear, that altho' the King may act arbitrarily in judging his great Officers and Servants, yet that Justice is nevertheless well Administred among the Subjects.

By the Law of *Persia*, Estates are Hereditary, not forfeited to the Prince, as in *Turky* and *India*; the Sons being assigned two Thirds, and the Daughters one Third. But if a *Christian* turn *Mahometan*, the Estates of all his *Christian* Relations shall devolve upon him, in exclusion of their Children: But *Christians* to evade this Law, make over their Estates before their Death, and settle them in Trust to whom they please; which is winked at and allow'd by the Judges.

Murder is punished by the Friends of the deceased, to whom upon Conviction the Criminal is delivered, and by them sometimes very barbarously put to Death.

Robbery upon the High-way is Punished by very tormenting Death.

Theft is also punished by Death. And they have this remarkable Remedy to prevent Burglary in the Night, that the Watchmen, whereof a competent number is maintained in all Towns, are responsible for any Robbery committed during the time of their Watch.

Adultery is punishable to Death, and may be executed by the Husband; he may also kill the Adulterer if he takes him in the Fact.

The MONEYS of *Persia* as declared very particularly by *Trevenot*, are of the Species and Values as follows, viz. The most common Currant Coins, are the *Abassi*, *Mahmoudi*, *Chair*, and *Casbeghi*.

The



The value of the *Abassi* is 18 *French Solz*; that is, 16 *Pence English*; they are of the finest Silver and most certain value, and withal the most Currant Coin.

The *Mahmondi* is of the Value of half an *Abassi*.

The *Chais* or *Schais*, is the Fourth of an *Abassi*.

The *Casbeghi*, is the Tenth Part of a *Schais*.

The other Denominations and Species are;

The *Piaſter*, which is thirteen *Schais*, or better if full weight, i. e. about 4s. 6d.

The *Bisti*, of the value of 4 *Casbeghis*.

The *Soquelle*, worth 3 *Abassi's*.

The *Toman*, is a denomination rather than a Coin, it is of the value of 15 *Piaſters* or 50 *Abassi's*, which makes 3l. 6s. 8d. of our Money.

In WEIGHT, the *Man* of *Iſpahan* is 12 Pounds.

In Geometrical Measure. The Finger is fix Barley Corns breadth; that is three quarters of our Inch. 24 Fingers make the Cubit. 4000 Cubits the Mile. And 3 Miles the *Farſang* or *Paraſang*. The *Perſian* Geographers reckon 22 *Pharſang*, and one Seventh to a Degree.

Laſtly, The Common Buildings of *Perſia* are very ordinary, the Walls being of Mud intermixt with Bricks baked in the Sun, and arched over, but flat at top and Terras'd. The Gentry have the addition of Marble Columns, and build a ſort of Piazza, round an open Area, wherein are Fountains, Flowers, and Plants; on each ſide are ſmall Rooms, and beyond it a large entertaining Room, whoſe Roof riſes in a Cupola, and the Floor is cover'd with Carpets, and round about are Sofa's or riſing Banks furniſhed with Quilts and Pillows to loll on. The Palaces do not exceed two Stories in height, and have the arch'd Roofs adorn'd with Paintings. The Front is commonly Shops for Traders, wherefore the fineſt Streets in *Iſpahan* for Palaces, have alſo abundance of well furniſh'd Shops.

With which we finiſh our General Notitia of the preſent State of *Perſia*.

As to the HISTORY of it,

The various Revolutions of this Country, the Power of the Nations it formerly conſiſted of, and the Actions of their ſeveral Princes, have been conſiderable enough to deſerve an ample Declaration of them; But the Subject is too Copious for this Place, and therefore to ſatiſſie our Reader, who might perhaps be offended if we wholly paſſed it over, we can only give a ſhort hint of the State of it in former Ages, and refer him to the Hiſtorians for better information.

PERſIA in the Extent we now ſee it, comprehended beſides many ſmaller States, the three Potent Nations of *Media*, *Perſia* and *Parthia*.

*Media*, was the Weſtern Part adjoining to *Aſſyria* and *Armenia*, and may be ſaid to be the ſame Country where theſe Provinces are ſet down in our Map, namely *Iran*, *Scirwan* and *Aidzerbayan*: And perhaps too *Gilan*, and part of *Erack*: Denominated from *Madaï* the Son of *Japhet*, the firſt Planter of it. The ancient Inhabitants were great Warriors, and renowned in Story for their deſtroying the *Babylonian* Empire.

*Perſia*, ſtrictly taken was the Country now called *Farſiſtan*, but extended Northward to the Frontiers of *Tariary*. *Suſiana* or *Chuſiana*, from *Chus* the Son of *Han*, whoſe Son *Havilah* planted it, the ſame with the Modern *Chuſiſtan* adjoining on the Weſt, and was

part of *Perſia*, as were alſo *Caramania*, *Aria*, and other Provinces which lay on the Eaſt.

*Parthia*, was of ſmaller extent, ſeated in the Midland, and did not exceed the the bounds of the Modern *Erack*.

Beſides theſe three Nations, which are moſt frequently mentioned in Hiſtory, there were divers others, whoſe People bore a ſhare in the Wars, and other Tranſactions in theſe Parts; and therefore it may not be improper to give you a view of the ancient *Perſia*, compared with the Modern in its full extent, from *Cluverius* and others.

The preſent *Perſia* contains theſe ancient Countries, viz. *Media*, the limits whereof we have already ſet forth. It comprehended the Regions of *Atropatia*, *Choromiterne*, *Sagrianica*, *Ragiana*, *Dariis*, *Zapavortene*, *Syromedia*; wherein were theſe chief Cities, *Ecbatana*, *Aſſacia*, *Cyropolis*, *Europus*.

2. *Suſiana*, the Modern *Chuſiſtan* as we have ſaid, comprehended the Countries of *Militene*, *Cabamene*, *Characene*, *Ciſſia*, *Chaltapitis*, and the *Campus Derius*; whereof the chief Cities were *Suſa* and *Tariana*.

3. *Perſis*, or the preſent *Farſiſtan*, contained the Regions of *Paratacene*, *Miſſia*, *Mardiene*, *Toacene*. The chief Cities whereof were *Perſepolis*, *Axima*, *Marafium*, *Toace*.

4. *Parthia* or *Erack*, contained theſe Countries, *Comiſene*, *Parthiene*, *Paratauticene*, *Tabiene*. The chief City *Hecatompylus*.

5. *Hyrkania*, lay on the North of *Parthia*, and the Banks of the *Hyrceanian* or *Caspian-Sea*, the ſame with the Province now called *Mazanderan* or *Tebariſtan*.

6. *Aria*, adjoining to *Parthia* on the Eaſt, and ſeems to have been part of the Province now named *Choraffan*. Chief Cities of it were *Aria*, *Alexandria* and *Bitaxa*.

7. *Bactriana*, lay next to the Eaſtward, and may be computed as the reſt of *Choraffan*. Chief Cities were *Bactra*, *Ebuſſini*, *Maracanda*, *Characharta*.

8. *Margiana*, lay on the North of both theſe, extending to the River *Oxus*, which divided it from *Scythia*, and is at preſent named *Eſtaraſbad*. The chief Cities were *Antiochia-Margiana*, formerly called *Alexandria*, and afterwards *Seleucia*.

9. *Paropamiſis*, the Modern *Sablufan*, lies on the Eaſt of *Bactriana*, to the Frontiers of *India*. The chief Cities were *Carura*, otherwiſe called *Ortoſpana* and *Naulibis*.

10. *Arachofia*, the preſent *Candahor*, lies on the Frontiers of *India*, adjoining to *Paropamiſis* on the South-eaſt. The chief Cities were *Arachottus* and *Alexandria*.

11. *Drangiana*, lay on the South of theſe, and is at preſent named *Sigiſtan*. The chief Cities there were *Ariaſpe* and *Prophthaſia*.

12. *Caramania*, the ſame with *Kherman*, lies on the Eaſt of *Perſis*, on the Banks of the *Arabian-Sea*, to the Frontiers of *India*. Its chief Cities were *Carmena*, *Samydate*, *Alexandria*, *Armuza*. Laſtly,

13. *Gedroſia*, lay on the Eaſt of *Caramania*, and on the South of *Drangiana* and *Arachofia*, on the Banks of the *Arabian-Sea*, extending Eaſtward to the Frontiers of *Guzarat* in *India*; whereby it comprehended the Province mark'd in our Map by the name of *Makeran*, as alſo *Tatta* and *Send*, two ſmall Provinces of the *Mogul's* Empire. Its chief Cities were *Perſis*, *Arbis* and *Cuni*.

This was the Extent of *Perſia*, when the Kingdoms of *Media* and *Perſia* were united in the Perſon of *Cyrus the Great*, A. M. 3419. That Prince conquered



quered *Babylonia*, erected the Third or *Persian* Monarchy upon the total Ruin of the *Assyrian*; and thereby extended the *Persian* Dominion thro' *Assyria*, *Armenia*, and all the *Asia-Minor*, to the Frontiers of *Europe*. But this Monarchy lasted no longer than 206 Years, in a Succession of 12 Emperors; the Third of whom, *Darius Hystespes* invaded *Greece* with an Army of 100000 Foot, and 10000 Horse. A Force sufficient to have over-run all that Country, if the Virtue and Bravery of the *Grecians*, had not exceeded what could possibly have been expected from Men. Of these no larger an Army than 10000 could be collected, who under the Conduct of *Miltiades* ventured to give the *Persians* Battle, in the Plains of *Marathon* near *Athens*, and with the loss of but 192, according to *Herodotus*, entirely defeated that vast Army. *Alex* the Son and Successor of *Darius* renewed the Attempt against *Greece*, and after 10 Years preparation, invaded it with so vast an Army, that the whole Land was in a manner covered, and whole Rivers drank dry by them. But neither had this Expedition better effect; for after the Land-fight at the Straights of *Thermopylae*, and the Sea-fight at *Salamis*, *Alex* was glad to retire, and leave his General *Mardenius* with 300000 Men to finish the War; which was indeed soon after ended, by the entire Rout of the *Persian* Army, in the famous Battle of *Platæa*. About 150 Years after this, *Alexander* King of *Macedon* invaded *Asia*, fought the numerous *Persian* Army, First, at the River *Grenicus* in *Phrygia*, Secondly, at *Issus* in *Cilicia*, and Thirdly, at *Arbela* in *Assyria*; in all which Battles he won entire Victories, and finally entered *Babylon* triumphantly. Hereby began the Third or *Græcian* Monarchy, which lasted only during that King's Life.

At the Grand Partition of *Alexander's* Dominions among his Captains, *Persia* was made part of the *Syrian* Kingdom of *Seleucus Nicator*. But it lasted not long so; for in the Reign of *Antiochus Theos*, the Grandson of *Seleucus*, the *Parthians* revolted under the Conduct of *Artabanes* a Nobleman of that Country, who persuaded the neighbouring Nations to join with him, and assumed the Title of King. He was succeeded by a Race of Princes who were Potent Monarchs, and opposed the *Romans* with greater Vigour than any other Nation. And this Kingdom remained thus under the *Parthian* Government from *A. M.* 3718. to *A. C.* 228. that is 470 Years, at the end of which *Artaxerxes* a Noble *Persian* having slain *Artabanus III.* and repelled the *Romans* ascended the Throne, and is reckoned to have restored the Ancient *Persian* Race. From him a new Dynasty or Race of Kings, in 28 Generations governed this Country 406 Years.

In the Year 634, the *Sarazens* under *Haumâr* or *Omar*, the Successor of *Mahomet*, by the Defeat of *Hormisdas II.* put an end to that Kingdom, and *Persia* thence forward became a part of the *Sarazen* Empire, and was governed by certain Deputies, with the Title of Sultans under the Grand Caliph. In process of time the Sultans of *Persia*, *Babylon*, &c. quarrelling among themselves, made divers Revolutions and Fluctuations of Power, which in the end brought in the *Turks*: The Occasion whereof we have already told in our Account of the Rise of the *Turkish* Power, when we were describing *Turcomania*. We there told you that *Tangrolipix* overcame the *Saltan*, *A. D.* 1030. and assumed the Government of *Persia*, he was succeeded by a Race of *Turkish*

Princes for about 200 Years, and then a new Dynasty of *Tartarian* Princes gained the Government. *Hasan* the first of these, became King of *Persia* in the Year 1260. and was succeeded by 8 of his Posterity to the Year 1337. when *Abulaid* the last of that House being dead, the Kingdom became divided among *Tartar* Princes, till *Tamerlain* about the Year 1400 reduced the whole to his obedience, and left it to his Son *Mirza-Charcek*. But that Family, held it not long, for after continual Feuds among themselves in a Succession of Six Generations, *Arzkan* the last of them, was defeated and slain by *Ussum-Cassanes*, who was at that time Governour of *Turcomania*; by the Victory He ascended the Throne of *Persia* in the Year 1472. and was succeeded by his Son *Jacob* in 1478 and he by his Kinsman *Julavar* in 1490; the next Successor was *Baisinger* who began to Reign in 1493. and after two Years left it to *Ruslan*. In his Reign the Ancestor of the present Race began to demand the Crown.

There was an ancient Noble Family in *Media* descended from *Musa Ceradine* the only Grandson of *Haly*, that escaped the fury of *Osman's* Successors who lived in a private Lordship with Honour and Respect. *Guine* the Heir of that Family, seeing his Country the continual Prey of Strangers, began to have thoughts of making himself *Caliph*, an Office which had been long time discontinued, but died without putting his Project in execution. His Son *Aider* or *Socaidar*, who was a *Cicik* or Lawyer ventured upon it, but was overcome and slain. The Man as *Olearius* writes, from the Accounts he received in *Persia*, had married the Daughter of *Ussum-Cassanes*, and thence as he intimates, claim'd the Crown; he was withal a Man of great Pretence to Piety and Purity in Religion, for which he was called *Sophy* or Religious, and thereby had gained much Estimation with the common People; and upon the whole, was able to raise Army enough to fight *Ruslan*: but that Prince, or rather *Alamet* his Successor, (who began to Reign 1498.) overcame and slew him. *Hismael* or *Ismael Sophy*, the Son of *Aider* when grown up renewed his Father's Pretensions and by the assistance of his Friends, reveng'd his Father's Death in the Slaughter of *Alamet*.

Thus began the new Dynasty of the present Kings of *Persia*, and here too began the new Religion; for *Ismael* being descended from *Haly*, declared him the true Successor of *Mahomet*, and himself the true *Caliph*. This Prince by his Virtue, Courage, and many Victories, acquir'd a very great Name, and was address'd to from all Parts: In revenge for the *Turks* having assisted *Alamet* against his Father, he invaded and conquered *Assyria*, *Chaldea* and *Mesopotamia*; and after a Reign of 20 Years left a large Kingdom to his Son.

*Tamas*, who was a weak Prince, he was vanquished by *Solyman* the Magnificent, and lost those Parts of the *Turkish* Dominions which his Father had conquer'd, and died *May 11. 1576.*

*Aider*, the second Son of *Tamas* (according to some Historians) succeeded, but his Cruelty being intolerable, he was put to Death after a Reign of 15 Days; and then

*Ismael II.* who by *Olearius* is accounted the second Son of *Tamas*, but by others the eldest, succeeded and reigned one Year, or two according to others, and was slain for his Tyranny.

*Mahomet Chodebende*, i. e. Servant of God, a Title given him from his Religious Life, the third Son of *Tamas* succeeded. The *Turks* and *Tartars* taking advantage



advantage from the mildness of his Temper, won from him *Armenia*, *Media* and *Georgia*, he reigned seven Years and died in 1585.

*Emir Hemse*, his eldest Son succeeded but was slain after a Reign of eight Months, nor had *Ismael III.* the second Son better Fate.

*Schah Abas*, the youngest Son of *Mahomet*, having taken off his elder Brother *Mirza*, ascended the Throne, and proved a brave Victorious Prince, he recovered what had been lost in his Fathers Reign, and was a Terror to both Turk and Tartar all his time. He extended his Kingdom by Conquest Eastward into *India*, and Southward thro' *Lar* to *Ormus*, whence he expelled the *Portuguese*, and thereby removed to his own Ports of *Gombroon*, (which is since from him named *Bender-abassi*) and *Bender-congo*: And finally he removed the Imperial Seat from *Caswin* to *Isfahan*. He was of a cruel Nature, and therefore it seems hated by his Subjects, who privately intimated to his Son *Mirza Sophy*, that if he would push for the Crown, he should not want assistance. But the young Prince being virtuously disposed, honestly reveal'd it to his Father, in hopes we may suppose, it might reclaim him, but it had so different an effect that out of jealousy he barbarously murder'd that Pious Son. And soon after died himself, *A. D.* 1628. in the 65th. Year of his Age, and the 45th. of his Reign.

*Sophy* or *Sefi*, the son of *Mirza* the injured Son of *Schah Abas*, was by his Grandfather's particular Will, and Declaration declar'd his Successor, and by reason of his Youth, being then but 15 Years of Age, the King nominated a trusty Friend to assist and protect him, for repenting his Wickedness in the Murder of his Son, endeavour'd to atone for it by this care of his Issue. Accordingly *Sophy* reigned, but was a cruel and vicious Prince, he lost *Bagdat* to the *Turks*, and died after 13 Years Reign.

*Schah Alas II.* his Son, a Youth of 12 Years of Age succeeded. He was a Prince of Bravery and Generosity, but so swallow'd up in Drunkenness, that he became unactive and most cruel. He reigned about 21 Years, and was succeeded *A.* 1664 or 1666. by his Son.

*Schah Sephy* or *Sophy II.* who changed his name to *Selim* or *Solyman III.* of whom nothing considerable. He died in 1694. and was succeeded by his Son.

*Seia Offen*, who began to Reign the 6th. of *August*, 1694. being then 25 Years of Age, and is still living for ought appears. These latter Princes have lived in sloathful ease, and attempted no Wars on any side, which renders their History obscure.

Having given our Reader a general Account of the History of *Persia* to this time, and shewn him the natural Products, the Customs, Tempers, and Manners of the Inhabitants, as amply as could consist with the intended brevity of this Work. We shall now proceed to what is more particularly our Business, namely a Geographical and Topographical View of the Country, wherein we shall be as particular as the Authentick Accounts of Judicious Travellers will give us leave. And happily we are pretty well furnished with Materials, by *Seignior Gimmelli*, *Mr. Thevenot*, *Tavernier*, *Olearius*. *Sir Thomas Herbert*, and *Sir John Chardin*, all whom we shall carefully consult and present the Reader with the Substance of all they say.

A Table of the Provinces of *PERSIA*, and chief Cities in each, in order as they stand in the following Description.

SCHIRWAN. { *Derbent*,  
{ *Gangea*,  
{ *Schamaebie*,  
{ *Baku*.

AIDERBEITZAN. { *Tauris*,  
{ *Ardebil*,  
{ *Sultania*.

KYLAN and  
MAZANDERAN. { *Gilan*,  
{ *Mazanderan*,  
{ *Eskeriff*,  
{ *Feiabaut*,  
{ *Chocoporo*,  
{ *Omoal* or *Amoul*,  
{ *Tabaristan*.

ERACK or  
HERAK-AGEMI. { *Casbin*,  
{ *Sawa*,  
{ *Kom*,  
{ *Hamadan*,  
{ *Casban*,  
{ *Yefd*,  
{ *ISPAHAN* with  
{ *Zulpha*.

CHUSISTAN. { *Suster* or *Susa*,  
{ *Elymais*,  
{ *Bender-Rik*,  
{ *Bender-Rakel*.

FARSISTAN. { *Shiras*,  
{ *Persopolis* or  
{ *Tschel-minar*,  
{ *LAR*,  
{ *ORMUS* Insul,  
{ *Gombroon* or  
{ *Bender-Abassi*,  
{ *Bender-Congo*.

BAHAREN, Ins.  
Keckmisse, Id.  
Lareza, Id.

KHERMAN. { *Kerman*,  
{ *Darabegerd*,  
{ *Guadel*,  
{ *Fasques*,  
{ *Armuzza*,  
{ *Barmasir*, &c.

MAKERAN. { *Pasir*,  
{ *Gest*.

SIGISTAN. { *Sirxistan*,  
{ *Phradog*,  
{ *Camulstan*, &c.

[SABLUSTAN. { *Bust*,  
{ *Beckfabash*, &c.

CANDAHAR. *Candahar*.



CHORASSAN. { *Herat or Serberi,*  
*Meschid,*  
*Nichabour,*  
*Toun, &c.*

ESTARABAD. { *Terabad or Ferabat,*  
*Maruwe,*  
 with KHOEMUS. { *Indion,*  
*Zarchas, &c.*

In entering *Persia* from *Georgia*, we pass thro' the Provinces of *Schirwan* and *Aiderbajan* or *Aiderbetzan*, a Country that is cold, but very healthy says *Tavernier*. *SCHIRWAN* says *Olearius*, is a Country of extraordinary fertile Soil, yielding Rice, Wheat, Barley, Hay, and even great store of Vines; the Land was all green when they were there, which was in November, and continued so to the middle of December. The chief Cities in this Part are,

*Derbent*, which signifies a Straight, called by the *Turks* *Demir-can*, or Iron-gate, being a Pass between the Mountains and the *Caspian-Sea*. It was always a Place of importance, and mentioned by *Tacitus* and other ancient Authors, under the Names of *Caspia-Pyle* or *Caspia-Claustre*, and it is still the Gate into *Persia* from *Tartary*, and therefore well Fortified. The City fills up the whole Defile between the *Caspian-Sea*, and the craggy Mountains on the Frontiers of *Georgia*, which is a League in length; and is surrounded with strong Walls, built of a sort of Plaister made out of powder'd Stone and Shells, which is of the consistence of Stone, and as firm as Marble. The Castle wherein the Governor resides, stands upon a Mountain, and has always a Guard of 500 Men in it; the City when possessed by the *Turks*, was well inhabited by Greek Merchants, but when King *Emir Hemse*, the Son of *Mabomet Chodebende* recovered it, he so ruined it, that that part of the Town towards the Sea side, has ever since been uninhabited and chiefly converted into Gardens; the Coast is all Rock, which renders it dangerous to Shipping; and on the whole, the City is only considerable on account of its Strength, and being the passage from *Muscovy* and *Tartary* into *Persia*. It is the utmost limit of *Persia* on the North-west, and is seated in the 41 D. and 50 Min. of Latit. [Ambassadors Travels.]

*Gangea*, a City seated on the Road between *Iran* and *Scamachie*, but hardly within the limits of this Province, since 'tis seated on the other side of the River *Kur*: But since omitted there, we shall speak of it here, as being too considerable to be omitted; for Father *Atrill*, who passed thro' it in the Year 1686. tells us, 'tis one of the best Cities in *Persia*, situate in a very pleasant Plain of 25 or 30 Leagues long, watered by the Conflux of many great Rivers, and so pleasantly surrounded with Groves of Trees, that the *Persians* call it the Garden of the Empire. Its Market-places are Spacious and Magnificent, surrounded with vaulted Ware-houses, filled with various sorts of Commodities, the City being a place of great Trade and Concourse. [Atrill.]

*Scamachie*, the Capital of *Schirwan*, a City says Father *Atrill*, that might formerly challenge Rank among the best and most populous of all *Persia*, before it was almost destroyed by a furious Earthquake, however it is still supposed to contain near 60000 Inhabitants, one half whereof are *Armenians*; and

even the other half are mostly Strangers, whom the pleasantness of the Country, and Traffick have invited thither, thus far *Atrill*. This City stands on a River which falls into the *Caspian-Sea*, 40 German Leagues South from *Derbent*, Lat. 40 D. 50. M. (says *Olearius*) and is a Place of great Trade, the Streets narrow, and the Houses built of Earth and very low. Before it was destroyed by the *Turks* in the Reign of *Sba-Abas*, it contained (says he) above 5000 Houses, which shews that in his time, *An. 1636*. it was far short of what farther *Atrill* talks of; for in its then flourishing State, the 5000 Houses it consisted of, could not be supposed to contain 60000 Inhabitants. The Earthquake mentioned by *Atrill*, happened in the Year 1667, and the City was rebuilt in 1670. say *Struys*. Dr. *Heylin* from *Carrwright*, an English Traveller in these Parts, speaks of a notable Pillar of Men's Skulls, which says *Olearius* I sought for all over the City, but could hear no news of, Dr. *Heylin* must be excused, as being led into the error by *Carrwright*; but why his new Editor who quotes almost the same Page of *Olearius*, where 'tis contradicted, does not correct it I can't imagine.

*Baku*, seated near the Banks of the *Caspian-Sea*, on the River that flows by *Scamachie* is a noted Port, and gives a name to the *Caspian-Sea*.

*AIDERBEITZAN*, commonly called *Adirbajan* or *Adarbigian* by Europeans, the South part of *Media*, and called *Media-major* by the Ancients, is bounded on the North by *Schirwan*, whence 'tis separated by the Desarts of *Mokan*; on the West by the River *Aras*, which divides it from that part of *Georgia* called *Iran* or *Karabag*; on the East with *Kylan* or *Gilan*; and on the South with *Curdistan* or *Affyria*. A Country of prolifick Soil, and healthy tho' cold Climate. The chief Cities here are,

*Tauris* or *Tabris*, supposed to have risen out of the Ruins of the ancient *Ecbatana*, a City as ancient as *Babylon*, and sometime almost equal to it in Beauty and Magnificence. The Walls being reckoned in the Book of *Judith*, to be 70 Cubits high and 50 Cubits broad. It was the seat of the Monarchs of *Media* and *Persia*, whose Palace was of most sumptuous Structure. The present *Tauris* is one of the richest and most populous Cities of *Persia* says *Olearius*; it is seated in a fair Plain, environed with Mountains on all sides but the West, a little River named *Springteba* runs thro' it, over which there are three Bridges; it is a large and well peopled City, as being the Mart between *Turky*, *Muscovy*, *Armenia*, and *India*, and has a great number of Merchants, and vast quantities of rich Goods, especially Silks. Provisions are cheap, and Money more plentiful than in any other part of *Asia*. The Houses are built of Sun-burnt Brick, not above one or two Stories high and vaulted at top; the Silk-Weavers here are excellent Artists, and the Shagreen Skins so valuable every where are dressed here. (*Tavernier*.) *Tauris* (says Sir *John Chardin*) is 51 *Persian* Leagues, of 5000 Paces each distant from *Erivan*, and 40 Leagues from the *Caspian-Sea*, Lat 38 Deg. seated in a Plain at the foot of a Mountain, which modern Authors suppose to be the *Orontes* or *Barchtes* of *Polybius*, *Diodorus*, and *Ptolemy*; in a cold but very healthy Air. It is in Rank, Magnitude, Riches, Commerce, and number of Inhabitants the Second City of *Persia*, but has neither Walls nor Fortifications, it contains 15000 Houses and 15000 Shops, for the Houses and Shops are built apart in *Persia*; the Shops compose Bazaars



Bazars or Markets, which are large, and long Streets vaulted over at 40 or 50 foot height; there are divers Bazars which take up the middle part of the City, and the Houses the outer part of it. The number of the Inhabitants are reckoned to be 500000, nay some affirm they are double that number. It is rendered the more Populous, by the great resort of Strangers from all the Parts of *Turky*, *Muscovy*, the *Black-Sea*, *Tartary* and *India*, for Trade, whence it comes to pass, that the Bazars are always extremely well furnished with all sorts of Foreign, as well as Home Commodities; and because of this great Concourse of Strangers, there are 300 Caravansera's or Inns, some whereof are capable of receiving 300 Lodgers. And yet notwithstanding this great conflux of People, Provisions are so plenty as to be exceeding cheap, for Bread costs not above a third part of a Penny, and Flesh but a Penny Half-penny the Pound, and the City abounds so well with all sorts of Necessaries for Life, that one lives here says he, *assez délicieusement*. Near the City are large Quarries of white Marble, one sort whereof is transparent. And not far from them are two Mines, one of Salt, and the other of Gold, but this last is exhausted and hardly now will yield the charge of digging. Here are also several Mineral Waters, mostly Sulphureous and some of them hot. My Author's (Sir John Chardin) disquisitions concerning the Origine and Fate of this City altho' curious enough, are too large to have Place here, it must be sufficient to say, that the *Persian* Historians unanimously agree, that the time of its Foundation was the 165th. Year of the *Hegira*, i. e. A. D. 787. In the Wars between the *Turks* and *Persians*, it was often taken and regained. The *Turkish* Sultans *Selinus I.* and *Solyman* the Magnificent took it in the Years 1514. and 1530. and again in 1530. the *Turks* took and sacked it, and throwing down the Walls, built a *Ciradil* to curb it. At length in the Reign of *Shah Abbas*, Anno 1614. it was finally recovered and has ever since been subject to the *Persian*.

*Ardebil* or *Ardevil*, and by some called *Ardonil*, stands about 30 Miles East from *Tauris* in the Lat. 38 D. 5 M. in a fair and spacious Plain, environed with Mountains, which occasion a continual changeableness of Weather, from extremity of Heat to extremity of Cold, and renders the City subject to Epidemical Diseases. It claimeth Dignity among the best Cities in *Persia*, partly because it was honour'd with the Residence of several of their Kings, and partly because *Scheich Sofi Aider*, the Author of their Sect in Religion lived and died here, and *Sophy Hissnack* the first King of the present Race lies buried here. And withal it is a Place of great Trade, for Silk and other valuable Commodities. This City is about the same bigness as *Scamachie*, and destitute of Walls, the Houses are all furnished with Gardens, planted with Fruit-trees, which make a pleasant Shew at a distance: The small River *Batchn* divided into two Branches waters the Town, one Branch runs thro' it, and the other encompasses it, and rejoining falls into the River *Karasu*; this small Stream is so encased by the melted Snows, falling from the Mountains in Summer, that they are forced to dig Trenches to carry off the Water, which would otherwise do much damage in the Town. The *Meidan* or grand Market-place, is 300 Paces long and 150 broad, having Shops all round it fill'd with valuable Commodities; but the richest Goods, such as Jewels, Gold and Sil-

ver, Silks, &c. have another Market-house or Exchange, which is a square Building arched over, and opening at three Gates into three long Streets of well furnished Shops, and Caravansera's for Strangers, whereof a great number are always seen here. The Sepulchre of *Scheich Sophi*, is no small Addition to the City, being visited with great Devotion by Pilgrims, the Structures over it and adjoining to it, which have been at divers times built by *Persian* Kings compose a kind of Castle and consists of fair Courts, Cloister-Walks, large Rooms and arched Vaults, all which are exceeding richly adorned with Gold, Silver, Tapestries, Marble-Pavements, &c. especially the Tomb it self and the Chapels leading to it, where are seen Gates plated with Gold, Rails of massy Gold and Silver, &c. the particulars are worth Reading in *Olearius*. But what is most commendable, is the Kitchen of *Sofi*, which he himself endowed with 50 Crowns *per diem*, to provide Food for the Poor, which Endowment has been so increased by several Kings, that now at least 1000 Persons are fed three times a Day out of it, divers of the Royal Family also lie Interred here. Thus much for *Ardebil*, which we have chosen to take out of the Ambassadors Travels, whose judicious Secretary *Olearius*, tells us what he saw in the Year 1637.

*Sultania*, a City built on the Ruins of *Tigranocerta* by King *Mahomet Chodabende*, who named it so from the Royal Title *Sultan*, and made his Residence in it; is seated in a very spacious Plain, which has a high Mountain on two sides in Lat. 36 D. 30 M. six days Journey from *Tauris*. There are many Magnificent remains of the old City, some whereof are at half a Leagues distance from the present Town, and shew how much larger that was than this. (*Olearius*.) It seems afar off a very neat well built Place, but does not appear so when you are within it, yet some of the Publick Buildings are remarkable for Structure and Magnificence. The City contains about 3000 Houses, and was for several Reigns honoured with the Kings Presence. The *Persian* Histories mention the old City, as the largest of the Kingdom, but the *Turks* and *Tartars*, especially *Tamerlain*, in a manner totally destroyed it. (*Chardin*.)

There are several other Cities, and a great number of very good Villages in this Province, but not equal to those mentioned, nor considerable enough to need Description.

The Province of *KYLAN* or *GILAN* with *MAZANDERAN* otherwise called *TABARISTAN*, is that large Tract of Land between the *Caspian-Sea* on the North, and a continued Chain of Mountains in form of a Crescent, which divide it from *Parthia* or *Erack* on the South; the Western part is *Gilan*; and the Eastern *Mazanderan*. The neighbourhood of the *Caspian-Sea*, renders the Earth Swampy and even Marshy in many Parts, which breeds innumerable swarms of Serpents and Insects, which together with the noisome Vapours, render the Air frequently unwholesome: But the Soil is Fertile, and this Province is famous for the good Silk it produces; and some Parts of it are so pleasant, that the Country about *Ferabat* is called the Garden of the Kingdom, says *Olearius*. Sir *Thomas Herbert* says, the Country is generally of good Soil and Climate, abounding in Corn, Grass, Fruit, Flowers and Wood; and in Husbandry, Building, and Civility, more resembling *Europe* than any other part of *Asia*; the Soil is improved by many Rivulets, which



which spring from the Mountains, and run thro' the Country, into the *Caspian-Sea*. This is the ancient *Hyrcania*, whence the Sea which we call *Caspian*, (a name taken from the *Caspii*, an ancient Nation which inhabited these Parts.) is also called *Hyrcanian* in Latin Authors. How the two parts are divided, I dare not pretend to determine; for they are described conjunctly by most Travellers, and so we shall not meddle with the limits of either. The chief Cities are,

*Gilan*, which gives name to that Province, stands on the River *Abiscirni* in the 38 D. of Latitude, 250 Miles East from *Tauris*.

*Mezenderen*, which also gives name to that Province, stands more to the Sea-Coast, 100 Miles North-east from *Gilan*.

*Eskeriff*, *Gserif*, or *Asbaroff*, seated near the Sea-Coast, is a goodly City of 2000 Houses, famous in its time for the Residence of the King *Shah-Abas*, who built there a sumptuous Palace. *Asbaroff*, says Sir Thomas Herbert, who was there in 1626, is seated within two Miles of the *Caspian-Sea*, in a low Ground surrounded with many Salt Marshes, and but meanly water'd by only one Spring from the Mountains: The Bazar is but ordinary, and the Palace which was then newly built, is not large nor very regular but exceeding sumptuous in Decorations and Furniture.

*Ferabat* or *Ferabbat*, seated also near the *Caspian-Sea*, at about five Miles distance from its Shoar, is a City of 3000 Families, wherein the King *Shah-Abas* had also a Palace, adorn'd with noble Furniture and Paintings, and especially a delightful Garden. The Situation of the City is flat, the Soil rich, and full of Gardens. A fresh Water River of 40 Paces broad, which rises in the Mountains, passes by the Town, and falls into the *Caspian-Sea*: Instead of Walls, the Town is surrounded with Moats. The Houses in this Place are bevel Roofed as ours, not flat and terras'd as usual in *Persia*. Here are two Bazars, but they are but ordinary, and the chief Ornament of the Town is the King's Palace. (Herbert.)

*Chocopora*, 12 Miles distant from *Ferabat* seated near the Sea-side, is remarkable for a River whose Water is eleven Months fresh, and the twelfth Salt. (Herbert.)

*Omael* or *Amoul*, seated within Land near the Mountains, is a large Town of 3000 Houses, inhabited by such variety of Strangers, that all the Days of the Week except *Wednesday*, is by one Sect or other kept Sabbath. The Town stands on a large Level in a pleasant and fruitful Soil, and is guarded with a fair strong Castle moated round. In the chief Mosque are buried as they say 444 Princes and Prophets, which creates in the People a great veneration to it. (Herbert.)

*Taberisten*, mention'd by Dr. Fryer as a considerable City for the weaving and selling Silks and Velvets stands hereabouts, and by some Maps it is marked as only another name of *Omael*, which we are willing to acquiesce in, because Sir T. Herbert who travell'd this way, would not have omitted mentioning so notable a Place, as Dr. Fryer speaks that to be.

The Ridge of Mountains which lie on the South, and divide this Province from *Parthia*, is a branch of Mount *Taurus*, which runs on Eastward, and Northward to *Tartary*. The Passage thro' it in the Road from *Isfahan* is so narrow, that a certain Robber in

*Shah-Abas's* time, with his Troop kept Possession of it a long time, in spite of the Force the King sent against him.

*ERACK*, *YERAC*, or *HIERAC-AGEMI*, as Tavernier writes it, or *Erack-atzem* as Olearius, [The word *Ag-m* signifies *Persian*, and serves to distinguish this Province from the other *Yerack* or *Chaldeas*;] the ancient *PARTHIA*, is reckoned the middle, and may be called the Royal Province of *Persia*, in regard the King always resides in it. It is a Country of most serene and healthy Air, but not of extraordinary fertile Soil, Surrounded with Mountains, and much shaded with Woods, which defends from the Heats 'twould be otherwise subject to; for the Soil is in great part a rowling Sand. There is however some good Land, which produces the necessaries for Life, but *Isfahan* is beholden to other Provinces for most of its Provisions. The chief Cities here are,

*Casbin* or *Caswin*, risen out of the Ruins of the ancient *Asfatia*, mentioned by Ptolemy, seated in a large sandy Plain in the 36 D. 15 M. Lat. It is a large City of six Miles Circumference and 12000 Houses, wherein are judged to inhabit 100000 Souls; and was for some time honour'd with the Kings Presence, but *Shah-Abas* as we have said, removed the Court to *Isfahan*. The Palace, which was built either by *Ismael* or *Tamas*, has a very good Garden behind it, and another opposite before it of half a League in circuit, the most delightful that can be, being adorn'd with spacious Walks, shaded with Cypress and other Trees, and extreamly furnished with variety of Fruit-trees. There are in this City two *Meidans* or large Market-places, well furnished with Shops and Ware houses of Merchandize: The Houses are of Brick, destitute of Ornaments without side, but well fitted and furnished within. They have no Water but what is brought in Pipes from Mount *Eiwerd* or *Alauvent*, as Chardin writes it, half a League distant. That Mountain runs Westward as far as *Bagdat*, and abounds with excellent Marble. In *Casbin* they have Vaults under their Houses, where they keep Ice and Snow, and find convenient Retirement in the Heats of Summer; as the Soil is sandy, you may believe 'tis troublesome walking in the Streets, when you are told they are not paved, thus far Olearius. This City has formerly been walled, but at present lies open, the Walls being ruin'd. A small Branch of the River *Baronthe* runs near the Town, but they dare not let in the whole Stream for fear of overflowings. This City is considerable on account of the King's Palace, and many Noblemens Houses in it, for as the Court comes hither sometimes, the great Men from Father to Son keep up their Houses. *Meidan-Cha*, i. e. Place Royal or *Hippodrome*, where they exercise Horsemanship and run Races, is 700 Paces long and 250 broad. The Caravansera's or publick Inns, are some of them very well built, among which the Royal one has 250 Chambers in it. The Royal Mosque is reckoned one of the fairest and largest of all *Persia*. This City is not so well furnished with Gardens as others, because of the sandy Soil and want of Water; lastly, the City is govern'd by a *Deroga* chosen annually, whose place is worth to him 600 *Tomans*. (Sir John Chardin.)

*Sawa* or *Sava*, seated South-East from *Casbin* in a fertile Plain, in the midway between that City and *Kom*, is two Miles in Circumference, but so thinly inhabited, that except in the Heart of the Town, it runs to Ruin for want of People. The chief Trade



of the Place is in little grey Lamb-skins, with which the *Persians* line their Garments. (*Tavernier, Chardin.*) Not far from *Sami*, are seen the Ruins of a once famous City named *Rey*, of which the *Persian* Histories (says *Chardin*) speak as the largest next *Babylon*, of all *Asia*, and gives such monstrous Accounts of it that 'tis incredible. By the Account that Author sets down, it contain'd above 2000000 of Houses, besides 15000 Mosques, 6400 Colleges, 16600 Baths, &c. In the Wars between two Sects of *Turks*, one of which call'd in the *Tartars*, that City was destroyed before the 600th. Year of the *Hijra*.

*Kom* or *Cem*, a large and populous City, is seated in a Plain by a River side, in the 34 D. 30 Min. Lat. It is surrounded with a Moat and Wall, flank'd with Towers, but they are half ruin'd; and contain according to the report of the Inhabitants 15000 Houses, says *Chardin*. Here are fine huge Bazaars, but the Commerce of the Place is not very considerable; it consists in Fruit dried and raw (especially Pomgranates,) Soap, Sword blades, and Pottery-ware: of all which they have the best in the Kingdom, their Pots are greatly esteem'd for a quality of cooling Water in Summer to admiration. Along the River side, there is a fair Key the whole Length of the City, and at the East end a Bridge, beyond which on the other side the River lies a noble Garden, to which the Inhabitants resort for Pleasure, and indeed quite round the City lie fair and pleasant Gardens. The Houses in *Kom* have very deep Cellars, and herein Wells of fresh Water, which in the Summer time is as cool as Ice, a great Refreshment here where the Summer is excessive hot! Here are a great many fair Caravansera's, and several fine Mosques, but the most remarkable is that wherein the Princess *Fatima Mahomet's* Daughter, and two King lie Inter'd; the Structure of this Mosque is Beautiful, and its Ornaments most Sumptuous, the access to it, is thro' four large stately Courts, the first whereof is a fine Garden, and the last is paved with transparent Marble, and surrounded with neat and beautiful Lodgings for the Priests; the Doors to the *Mausoleum* are plac'd with Silver, and the Tomb is enclosed in a mass, Grate of the same Metall. On each side of it lie Inter'd the two Kings, *Abas II.* and *Sepbi I.* at whose Tombs the Priests are continually employed in reading the *Alchoran*, nothing can be imagin'd richer, neater, and more magnificent than this Mosque, which by the *Persians* is call'd *Mossuna* or pure, and in much Veneration. There is a Revenue of 3200 *Tomans* belongs to this Place, that is to say 1500 to the Tomb of *Abas*, 1000 to that of *Sepbi*, and 700 for that of *Fatima*. There are many other fair and sumptuous Buildings in *Kom*, and bating the heat in Summer, it is a pleasant Place to live in, and well supplied with Provisions of all sorts, and excellent Fruits; and withal the People are very tractable and civil. (*Sir John Chardin.*)

*Hamadan*, one of the richest and most considerable Cities of *Persia*, (says *Tavernier*.) stands at the foot of a Mount, where rise a great many Springs which Water the Country, and make it so abundant with Corn, as to be able to furnish the neighbouring Parts, it abounds also with Cattle, Butter, Cheese, Hides and Tobacco. It is a Stage of Caravans going to *Mecca*, for it lies on the Road to *Bagdat* about 100 Miles South East from *Kom*.

*Cashan* or *Kashan*, a populous and wealthy City, stands in a plain near a high Mountain, about 70 Miles North from *Isfahan*, Lat. 33 D. 51 Min. The City and Suburbs (says *Chardin*) contains 6500 Houses, as the Inhabitants report, 40 Mosques, 3 Colleges, and about 200 Sepulchres of the Descendants of *Hali*. The Houses are built of Earth and Brick, but not very handsome; but the Bazaars are well built and in good repair. The Trade of the Town consists in a Manufactory of Silks and Tissues, Velvets and Satins, whereof there is no City in *Persia* makes so much. There is no River at *Cashan*, but they are supplied with Water by *Sitterranean* Canals and deep Wells. The City is encompassed with a double Wall flank'd with round Towers, and hath five Gates. Fruit is so plenty here, that they serve *Isfahan*, especial with Melons, they have also plenty of Corn, but Cattle and wild Fowl are more scarce. (*Chardin*.) 'Tis a large City well Peopled, and furnished with all things necessary for Life, wherein and near it 1000 Families of *Jew* inhabit, who boast themselves to be of the Tribe of *Judah*. The Country hereabouts abounds with *Scorpions*, inso-much that the *Scorpion* of *Cashan* is become Proverbial in *Persia*, (*Tavernier*.) *Cashan* is but little less in compass than *Kom*, being three Miles in length, and the Buildings not far from it as there. The Bazaars are light and airy, the Streets are very good, and the Caravansera's large and well built. The King has a Palace and fine Gardens near this City. (*Girrelli*.)

*ISPAHAN* or *Sperham*, stands in the Place of the ancient *Hecatompyris*, so called from its Hundred Gates, whence its vast Magnitude may be conjectured, and as that was the Regal Seat of the *Parthian* Monarchs, so is this at present of the *Persian*, and therefore esteem'd the Capital of the Kingdom. It is seated in the 32 D. 40 Min. of Lat. and in the 72 D. of Longit. in a plain fruitful Soil, watered with Streams deduced from the River *Sanderu*. The old City had been so totally destroyed, that there only remained two small Villages, when the latter Race of the *Persian* Kings, extending their Dominion Eastward and Southward, caused the encrease of these two Villages, into a gordly Town call'd at first *Sipahan*. *Schah Abbas* taking notice of its advantageous Situation, removed the Royal Seat to it, which before had been held at *Sultania* and *Cashan*, by which it grew up with great speed into a large and populous City, of 12 Miles Circumference, besides *Zalsa* and the other Suburbs, which extend it to 30 Miles extent. (*Gimelli*.) The City is encompassed with a Mud-Wall, wherein are ten Gates, and a shallow Ditch planted with Trees. The Streets are narrow, crooked, and dark, because generally cover'd over, and the Ground always dirty or dusty, being not paved; the Houses are built of Sun-burnt Brick and Mud intermix'd, growing narrower in height and Terraced at top, they do not exceed two Stories in height says one, rise to four Stories says another, and have generally two arched Rooms adorn'd with Paintings. The wholesomeness of the Air, and the Presence of the Court, tempt the Gentry to live there, which creates a very great Trade, and renders the Place very populous. The *Persians* call it half the World, for the diversity of Tongues spoken there, and because of its wealthy Bazaars and multitude of Shops of all sorts of Commodities. The most remarkable Places are, the



the *Sciarback*, the King's Palace, the King's Garden *Azar-gerib*, the *Meidan*, and the Mosque of the five Gates. The *Sciar-back*, i. e. four Gardens, so called from four Gardens of the King's which surround it, is a noble Street of two Miles long and a hundred Paces broad, says *Tavernier*, who continues it on to *Azar-gerib*, and so is in the right; altho *Gimelli*, who terminates it at the River, says 'tis one Mile long, and a Musquet-Shot broad; a Chanal of Water making four great square Pools lie in the middle, and on each side are planted double rows of Trees, where is a common Road for Horse and Carriage, and a foot Causey raised 4 foot above that Road. This Street terminates according to *Gimelli's* Account, at the River *Sanderu*, which runs cross it at the Miles end; over which River there lies a noble Stone Bridge of 35 Arches, whereof *Tavernier* gives us this Description, it is 300 Paces long and 20 broad, on each side instead of the Parapet, there are covered Galleries with Windows to the Water for Foot Passage, and over each a fair Platform with easie Steps up to them, whereby you may walk either in Shade or Sun, free from annoyance of Horse or Carriage, which are confined to the middle Passage. Beyond this Bridge, the Street continues for at least a Mile between Pleasure-Houses and Gardens, and at the end lie the King's Pleasure-Houses, and the great Garden called *Azar-gerib*, which is three Miles long and one broad: The Front is adorn'd with double rows of Balconies on the Street side, and excellent Paintings on the Garden side; at the four Angles are four fine Towers, which overlook the Garden, and shew delightful Cascades, plenty of Fruit-trees, Flowers, shady Walks, Fish-ponds, Summer-houses, and every thing that makes a Garden pleasant. And beyond this lies a Park stock'd with wild Beasts, among which are Lions and Tygers. To return into the City, the *Meidan* or great Square is the best Structure in *Ispahan*, 'twas built by *Schah-Abas*, and is a quarter of a Mile long, and half so much broad, surrounded with very good Houses, which have rows of Shops, under handsome Arches before them; but the upper Windows are fair, and have full view over the Shops into the Square, to see the Diversions there frequently exercised by the King and Nobility. The *Meidan* is planted all round with Trees, and has also a pretty Canal carried round it in a Stone-trough. The King's Palace is entered from the *Meidan*, it consists of divers square Courts, surrounded with fair Buildings, wherein are large Halls and Chambers most richly furnished, and sumptuously adorned with Paintings, Gildings, &c. In the limits of the Palace (besides the King's Mosque which is very fine, and another less one in the same Court, which may be called his Family Chapel, to which belongs a Fountain and large Basin to wash in as they go to their Devotion;) stands the great Mosque called that of the five Gates, it is reckoned the finest in *Persia* having its Walls fac'd with Marble five Fathom high, above which they are painted, as is the noble Cupola which the Roof rises into, and richly gilded; this Mosque was founded by *Schah-Abas*, and finished by *Schah-Sefi*. The Palace is a Sanctuary, and which is strange the first Court is a kind of Market, for there are many Shops in it (*Gimelli* and *Tavernier*.) *Ispahan* is seated in a very fair Plain, (saith *Olearius*) surrounded with very high Mountains at about four Leagues distance, in Lat. 32 D. 26 M. The Mountain *Demawend* lies to the South and South-west, and the Mountain *Ze-*

*lak-Perjan* to the North; the whole extent of the City and Suburbs is about eight German Leagues; the City is walled round and has 12 Gates, whereof nine only are open, and it contains about 18000 Houses, and at least 500000 Inhabitants; the River *Sanderu* arises in Mount *Demawend*, and before it reaches the City divides into two Channels, one whereof falls into the Park, and the other is conveyed by Subterranean Passages thro' the Royal Garden, and both together runs by the South and South-west sides of the City, and by Pipes the Water of it is convey'd into the Houses, which are also pretty well supplied by fresh Water Springs. The City abounds with Gardens, which the *Persians* are expensive in, and adorn them with fine shaded Walks, plenty of Fruit-trees and large Fountains, together with delightful Summer-Houses conveniently placed for taking the Air. The Bazar or *Meidan* is 700 Foot (*Tavernier* says common Paces) long and 250 broad, the Houses round it are all of Brick, and of equal height, the Shops vaulted. Before the Court stand 100 Pieces of Canon which were brought from *Ormus*, *Gimelli* calls them small Pieces, but *Olearius* says, they carry 36 to 38 Pound-Ball; and on the back side of the Palace, stands a Citadel called *Tabrick-Kale*, which is Fortified with a Rampart and several Bastions of Earth. The King's Stables are always filled with the best Horses, 1500 in number for the Service of himself and Family; some whereof, as *Gimelli* tells us, are fed in Golden Mangers, are stod with Silver: Two Horses are continually kept ready Saddled for the King's use, in case of a sudden Exigence. Near the Stables stands the Pillar *Kelemina* or *Moor*, which is a Pillar 80 Spans high and 40 in Compais, built of the Horns says *Olearius*, of the Skulls says *Gimelli*, of the Beasts killed in one Day's hunting by *Schah-Tamas*. For Trade *Ispahan* may be reckoned to equal, if not exceed any City in *Persia*, being resorted to by divers Nations, 12000 *Indians* inhabit here to sell the rich Commodities of their Country, and *Turks*, *Jews*, *Tartars*, &c. as also *English*, *Dutch*, *French* and *Italians* are seen here, with the Commodities of their respective Countries. For Provisions, this City is supplied with Sheep and Lambs from the Province of *Kerman*, with Rice from *Kylan*, with Wood and Charcoal from *Mazanderan*, and with Wheat and Barley from *Schiwan*. Thus have we given you an ample Account of *Ispahan*, and that too not by transcribing old Collectors, but from the Mouths of no less than four Travellers, who are all acknowledg'd to be Men of Credit and Judgment, we shall now proceed from the same Authors to speak of the Suburbs.

*Zuipha* or *Tzulfa*, altho' reckoned a Suburb may be call'd another very good City, for it contains no less than 3000 Houses, which may vie with the best in *Ispahan*; it is wholly inhabited by *Armenians*, who were transplanted thither by *Schah-Abas*, and endowed with very great Privileges. Altho' the Town be so large, its yearly Tribute is but 200 *Tomans*. (*Olearius*) *Zulfa* or *Giolf* (says *Gimelli*,) lies beyond the River *Sanderu*, two Miles and half from *Ispahan*, the interjacent Ground being filled up with Gardens and Pleasure-Houses; it is nine Miles round, and is inhabited by *Armenians* only, who settled there in the Reign of *Schah-Abas*, and by reason of the profitable Trade they manage, enjoy great Privileges, for they have peculiar Judges of their own Nation to decide Civil Causes, and in Ecclesiastical Government have an Archbishop, and four Suffragan Bishops; but in Criminal Causes, they are



are subject to the *Persian* Judges. They are the richest Men in *Persia*, and are the chief Merchants in all valuable Commodities, especially Silk, and their Women are very beautiful. Lastly, the Streets of *Zulja* are larger and neater than those at *Ispahan*, having Canals in the middle, and rows of Trees on each side. The other Suburbs adjoining to *Ispahan* are, *Tabrisabath*, which was originally the Habitation of a Colony brought from *Tabristan* by *Sha-Abas*.

*Hefenabath*, which is inhabited by *Georgian Christians*, who are Wealthy Merchants.

*Kebberbath*, or the Town of the *Kebbers* or *Guebbers*, who as we have said, are the ancient *Persian* Race that worship Fire. They are Infidels says *Olearius*, and having nothing *Persian* but the Language.

The Fields about *Ispahan* are low, and therefore easily overflowed in the Summer, and refreshed in the excessive Heat during *June* and *July*. The Air is very serene and healthy, the Heat and Cold of almost equal duration, and in the depth of Winter the Frost makes not an Ice of above half an Inch thick. There are (say's *Olearius*) 1460 Villages round about *Ispahan*, the Inhabitants whereof live chiefly upon the manufacturing Silk and Wooll.

*Tesd*, a large but ruinous Town 130 Miles distant from *Ispahan* to the East, stands in a sandy Plain not far from the Mountains, and is notable on account of the Colleges in it for Learning, and for a sort of good Wine which grows in its Neighbourhood; the Place is not very populous, but the Women are very beautiful, and the Employment of the Inhabitants is Silk-weaving.

On the South of *Erak* lie the two Provinces of *CHUSISTAN*, which was the ancient *Susiana*, and *FARSISTAN*, which is the ancient *Persis*. The limits of both on the South being the Sea called the *Persian Gulph*.

Altho' the extent of these two Countries be large, even no less than 400 Miles from East to West, yet the heat of the Air and the sandyness of the Soil, have made them so little resorted to, that we cannot give the Reader the same Accounts as we have done of the Provinces we have passed through.

*CHUSISTAN*, is bounded on the West by *Chaldæa* and the River *Passi-Tigris*, on the East with *Farsistan*, on the North with *Assyria* and *Parthia*, and on the South with the Gulph of *Bassora*. The chief City,

*Suster* or *Schouster* according to *Tavernier*, and *Tufter* by *Goliuz*, is the ancient *Susa*, which was the Winter Seat of the *Persian* Monarchs, as *Ecbatana* was the Summer-Seat. It is a fair and large City seated near the Mountains on the River *Tirtiri*, or rather on *Zeymare* which falls into the *Tirtiri*, at the distance of 150 Miles from *Ispahan* to the South-west, and near 200 from the *Persian-Gulph* to the North, mentioned in Scripture by the name of *Shushan*, where *Abasucrus* kept his great Feast, and where he chose *Hester* Queen. It was so wealthy a Place, that *Alexander* found in it 50000 Talents of Gold, besides Silver and Jewels of inestimable value. Sir *Tho. Herbert* says 'tis now named *Valdac*, or *Balda*, and that it was destroyed in the Year 641. and is now in Ruines, he Names the River on which it stands *Choaspes*; but it must be noted he reports this on hear say not ocular Testimony.

*Elymais*, another City anciently so considerable as to bear the title of *oppidum oppulentissimum* in *Sulp. Severus*. *Sela*, *Tarsiana*, and *Agra*, were also Places of Note in former times, but now passed away.

*Bender-Rik*, and *Bender-Rakel*, two small Port Towns on the Gulf, are sometimes visited by our Mariners. The former as *Tavernier* tells us, is but a sorry Town of a few Fishers Huts, made of Hurdles, but is resorted to in the common Voyages from *Bassora* to *Persia*.

*FARSISTAN*, the Ancient *Persis*, lyes next on the East. The places of chiefest Note here are,

*Sciras*, one of the pleasantest Cities in *Persia*, seated on the N. W. side of a spacious Plain, inclosed by lofty Hills, near the Banks of a River, which *Herbert* names *Kur*, and the Maps *Bendemir*, in the 29 D. 20 m. Lat. The City is about 7 Miles in compass, walled in by *Ussum Cassanes*, in 1470. The Houses are built of Sun burnt Bricks, well provided with Gardens. There are 15 Mosques, which are adorned with fine Gildings and high Spires, and a Colledge, wherein is read Philosophy and the other Sciences, and is famous all over *Persia*. The Gardens are large and beautiful, abounding with shady Walks, Oranges, Lemons, Pomgranates and other delicious Fruits. The Country about produces excellent Vines, whence the Wine of *Schiras* is the best in *Persia*, being strong, delicious, and very good to the Stomach, (*Herbert*.) *Sciras*, is about two hours walk in Circumference, and has no Walls, but a sorry Ditch only for it's Defence, says *Thevenot*; The Streets are somewhat narrow, except a few fair ones, with Canals in the midst, of very clear running Water. There are a great many fair cover'd Bazars of Shops well filled with all sorts of *Indian* and *Turkish*, as well as *Persian* Commodities; and many large and well built *Caravansera's*. The Mosques are lovely; and in the Colledge there are Professors who have Salaries for teaching the Sciences, and says my Author (*Thevenot*) I was told there were above 500 Students in it. The chief pleasure of *Schiras* is the Gardens whereof there are many; the King has a very fine one here, wherein are the largest and best shaded Walks that can be seen, Fruit-Trees and Flowers of the finest kinds in great plenty, and Water in Canals, Cascades, Basons and other Fountains very Copious. The People of this Town are witty, and produce the best Poets in *Persia*, they are skilful in making Glass, and blow Bottles of very large size, even to 30 quarts, wherewith they furnish the whole Kingdom. Their Wine is strong enough to carry two thirds Water, without spoiling the Taste, it is sent to *Ispahan* and to *India*, in great quantities yearly. They have also Capers in plenty, which they pickle and send abroad; and Roses in abundance, whence they draw so much Rose-water, as to serve all *India*. In former times *Schiras* was govern'd by a Cham, who was the first in Dignity in *Persia*, and his Government reach'd as far as *Lar*, *Bender*, and *Ormuz*, and so Wealthy was this Cham in the Days of *Shah-Abas*, that the King sent to bid him spend a *Mahmond* per Diem less, that there might be some difference between them. But *Shah-Sefi* reduc'd that Grandure by the Death of all the Family, and at present a *Vizier* only commands here, and pays the King out of the profits of it 1000 *Tomans* per Annum. (*Thevenot*.) The most valuable things in *Schiras*, are Wine and Women, whose Beauty is so Transcendent, that it serves for a Portion. The Gardens are not less delightful to the Eye, for their long Rows of Cypress Trees, than to the taste for the variety and excellence of the Fruit. Thus the Mud Houses being hid by the Trees, it looks at a distance more like a Wood



of 15 Miles Circumference, than a City whose Inhabitants, reckon'd 20000. need not so large a space of Land for Habitation. The King's Garden is of the best in *Scirus*'s, but goes daily to Decay for want of due Reparation, a common fault in *Persia*. (*Gimelli*.)

About 30 Miles North-East from *Scirus*'s are seen the Ruins of the Ancient

*Persepolis*, which in it's time was esteem'd the chief City of the East, and excelled all other Cities in Glory and Worldly Felicity, says *Diodorus*; the Wealth of it is evidenced in the great Plunder *Alexander*'s Soldiers made when he had taken it, and given it up to Destruction in Revenge for the many Cities of *Greece* destroyed by the *Persians*; and by the Treasure he himself seized on, which amounted to 120 thousand Talents in Silver and Gold. The Citadel, which was the King's Palace, was a Structure of such surprizing Magnificence and Beauty, that perhaps no Building ever exceeded it. It stood, on a rocky Hill, and took up 50 Acres of Ground, and was surrounded, says *Diod. Sicul.* with a Triple Wall, the first whereof was 16 Cubits high, the second double that height, and the inner one 60 Cubits high, built of the strongest Marble, it was four square, and had on each side brazen Gates. On the East side stood a high Mount, wherein were the Sepulchres of the *Persian* Kings. The Halls and Apartments of this Palace, were profusely large and lofty, the Walls of them embellished with noble Carvings, some whereof still remain to testify its ancient Pomp, and the Cedar roofs shone with Gold, Silver, Ivory and Amber. The Kings Throne was of pure Gold, adorned with Pearls and precious Stones, and the Furniture of the Chambers so excessive rich, that nothing could exceed it, the Bedstead being of pure Gold, beset with Gems and every thing else proportionate. But its glory did but procure its Destruction, for at a great Feast which *Alexander* held in it, *Thais* the *Athenian* Courtesan propos'd it to the King, then heated with Wine, as a noble Exploit, to burn this fine Palace, which he readily agreed to, and led the way with a Firebrand, which was seconded by *Tean*, and followed by all the young *Grecians*, which soon reduced this pompous Palace to a heap of Ruins, as it has ever since continued; Thus fell *Persepolis*, which had for several Ages been the seat of the *Persian* Monarchs, giving Laws to many Nations, and being long the Terror of the *Grecians*. The Ruins of it (as very particularly Described by Sir *Tho. Herbert*, who visited it in the year, 1626. by *Thevenot*, in 1665. and by *Gimelli* in 1694.) do fully justify the ancient Accounts of it, for the little of it that is standing, shew what the rest must needs have been, the lofty Columns declare the height of the fallen Roof. The Stairs whose steps are 30 foot long, shew the Apartments it led to, were vastly greater than any thing we see now adays; In short, the Descriptions given by these three Authors will give an Idea of the Grandeur and Beauty of this Palace, to which we must refer our Reader, as not having room to be so particular. These Ruins are now called by the *Persians*, *Tschiril-Minar*, the River near it, which *Diod.* calls *Araxe*, is now called *Bendamis*, and a large Town which stands about, where the old City stood, is named *Mirkas-Chan*, says *Thevenot*.

The Dominions of *LAR* and *Ormuz*, are by some referred to this Province, and by others to *Kerman*.

They were anciently separate States, but now united to the Crown, the first together with *Scirus*, whose last Duke had conquer'd *Lar*, and the latter in 1622. by *Shah-Abas*.

*LAR*, is both a City and Province within three days Journey from the *Persian* Gulph. The Province is about 100 Pharasang over, and was for some time a Kingdom. The City is large, but has suffered by Earthquakes, wherein at some times 500 Houses, and at other times 3000 Houses have been overwhelmed. Here is a strong and stately Castle, built of Stone, which commands the Town and Neighbouring Country. It is usually well victualled, and has an Armoury sufficient for 3000 Men. In the Town the Bazar is a noble Building, of a white chalky Stone, covered over head, and filled with Shops. Here are many Mosques, in one whereof is buried a Prophet, whom they very much venerate. Altho' the Country hereabouts be of a sandy Soil, it yields variety of Fruits, and especially Dates; for the Palm tree will flourish in the dryest of their ground. Provisions here are good, but the Water is bad and scarce, for they have little else than Rain-water, which falling but seldom, and therefore kept long, putrifies and is unwholesome. The Inhabitants are a mixture of *Jews* and *Mahometans*, who are most of them blear-eyed, and troubled with sore Legs, from the badness of the Water, and heat of the Climate. (*Herbert*.) The City contains 4000 Houses, built of Brick, but has no Walls nor Gates, the way to the Castle is cut out of a Rock, and is so narrow, that scarce two Horses can go abreast. (*Mandelslo*.) The *Jews* here exercise a Silk Manufactory, and the Inhabitants make the best Musquet-barrells and Gunpowder. The Chan's or Governours House is a fine Building, and the Bazars are fair and large. (*Tavernier*.) The *Guebies* were Masters of *Lar*, when it was a separate Kingdom, but those being first Conquered by the Dukes of *Scirus*, and the Dukes of *Scirus*, being as we have said, reduced by *Shah-Seff*, (or as others by *Shah-Abas*) the Kingdom fell into the Crown, and composes a Province now called *Ghermes*, and is governed by a Chan who resides in the City. Seignior *Gimelli* gives us a much different character of the Castle than the three other we have quoted, namely, that altho' it stands upon the Hill, and commands the Town, its Walls are very ruinous and destitute of Cannon. *Lar*, stands in the 29th Deg. of Lat. about 100 Miles S. E. from *Scirus*.

*ORMUZ*, an Island 30 Miles in circuit, lyes in the midst of the *Persian* Sea or Gulph, for on *Persia* it is but two Leagues from the Shore, and on the *Arabian* side but three or four Leagues from that Coast, and therefore absolutely commands the Trade into it. It is a rocky Soil, and destitute of all necessaries except Salt, wherefore it was possessed unenvied by its own Kings for many Ages, till the *Portuguese* having planted themselves in *India*, discovered the convenient Situation of this Island for Trade, and therefore by the force of their Fleets under the conduct of *Albuquerque*, took footing in it, and so fortified themselves, that it was not in the power of the King to expel them, so that he lived their Vassal, and swore Allegiance to the King of *Portugal*, and was allowed a small Custom for his Maintenance, which being a better Revenue than had



had formerly belonged to that small Crown, \* the Kings liv'd contented; and the Portuguese quietly possess'd it til. King *Shah-Abas* in the year 1622. sent an Army against them: and at the same time perswaded the *English* to assist him with their Shipping upon a promise of giving them the Forts, together with very great immunities; with that help he made himself Master of their Fort, and quite dismantled it. The Reward he gave the *English*, was one half of the Customs of *Gombroon*, which for 50 years, yielded them 40000 *l. per Annum*, but in the Wars against the Great Mogul, the Company sold it, and reserving only 3000 *l. per Annum*. The Portuguese grew so Wealthy here, that they built most sumptuous Houses, and in that time the Town was one of the finest in *Asia*.

*Gombroon*, otherwise named, *Bender-Abassi*, i. e. *Shah-Abas's Port*, for *Bender* in *Persian* signifies Port, and *Shah-Abas* was the Person who by destroying *Ormuz* brought the Trade to it: is seated on the coast of *Farsistan* just over against *Ormuz*, in the narrow straight which that Island makes, and is a very convenient Haven, the best the *Persian* has, says *Herbert*. From a small Village as it was, before the reduction of *Ormuz*, it is grown so considerable, that *Herbert* tells us, it may be ranked with the best Towns of *Persia*: for tho' it be still but a small place, its convenient situation for Trade, brings a great resort of Ships and Caravans. There is one publick Gate, a Bazar the two Houses of the *English* and *Dutch* Merchants, with the Standards of each Nation always erected on them, of handsom Structure, and the Town is fortified with a small Fort on the Sea side, (*Thevenot*.) and two Castles besides that Redoubt says *Herbert*. The Climate is so hot, that they have neither Grass nor Herbs in the Summer time, which makes all Strangers fly it, and remain there only in Winter.

*Nieuhoff*, who was there in the year, 1662. gives us this account of *Gomron*. It is seated in the 27 Deg. Nor. Lat. at the foot of a barren sandy Mountain, producing neither Grass nor Trees, having two Castles for its defence, and three stone Bastions on the Sea-side, but a single Wall only on the Land-side. The Houses are of ordinary Structure built of Loom, with square Turrets for the better receiving the Air, on which they sleep in the Summer time. The Streets are narrow and almost covered by the prominency of the Houses in their upper Stories. There is great scarcity of Water, but plenty of all other Provisions. The Air, from May till September, is very unwholsome thro' the excessive heat, occasioned as we may suppose, by the Towns lying on the South side of the barren Mountain, whence the Sun beams are reflected with double force, and the Winds sitting always West or South West, from March to September, do rather increase the heat, and make the Air so stifling, that it kills both Men and Beasts. The Trade is all Transacted in the Winter Months, during which time it is very great; for in October, Caravans consisting of many thousand Men and Beasts, arrive here from *Turky*, *Bagdat* and *Persia*, also very many Ships from *India*, which bring in hither the rich Goods of their re-

spective Countries, all which, together with the Pearls taken at *Baharen*, are here bought and sold. The Palm-tree, being the only Plant that will flourish in this dry Soil, Dates are used instead of Bread by the Inhabitants: They have also plenty of Sheep and Goats, Hares, Pidgeons and Partridges. The *Persian* Governour residing here, lives in great Splendour.

*Bender-Congo*, seated on the same Coast 10 or 12 Leagues West from *Gombroon*, is also a notable Port; for the Ships from *India*, *Bassora*, *Arabia-Felix*, and other parts, arrive there with the Goods of their respective Countries, which makes the Trade of this place very great, and therefore the Town inhabited by rich Merchants. It is an open Village, and the Houses of Mudd Walls; wherein a *Deroga* resides, to Administer Justice, and an Officer called *Sciabander* to collect the Duties, who Farms the Customs of this Port, *Gombroon* and another small Port adjacent, at 20000 *Tomans per Annum*. After the surrender of *Ormuz*, the Portuguese so obstructed the Navigation of this Sea, by the Fleet they kept in it, that the *Persian* King was obliged to compound with them, and agreed to pay them half the Custom of this Port, and five Horses every year as a Tribute, and withal allow them to have a House here with their Standard on it, wherein an Officer resides to receive the said Tribute, and 11000 *Tomans per Annum*, which they have since agreed on, as an equivalent for the half Customs. Moreover, they were exempted from the Severities of the *Mahometan* Law, granted power over all Christians dwelling here, and other Priviledges. Altho' the Air is excessive hot, and they have no Water but what they save in Cisterns when it rains, yet Trade invites so many people hither, that according to *Gimelli* there are 10000 Inhabitants. One great Addition to the Trade of this Town is, that it is the Market for Pearls caught at the Island *Baharen* and other places in the *Persian* Gulph. (*Gimelli*.)

The Island *BAHAREN* lies near the North-East Coast of *Arabia-Felix*, in the mid-way between *Bassora* and *Ormuz*. The largest, brightest, roundest and most truly Oriental Pearls are found here. They Fish for them twice a year, that is, in the Months of *August* and *September*. Many Boats with Divers go out at that Season, and work every Day Eight or Ten Hours, in which time they fetch up abundance of Oysters, and in most of them Pearls. So great a quantity of Pearls are caught here, that *Gimelli* says, the Fishery yields 110000 *Crowns per Annum*. *Nieuhoff* says, the Profit is 500000 *Ducats* a year, besides what the Officers share; and that the Fishery begins in *June*, and ends with *August*.

*Keckmishe*, an Island of three Leagues in Circuit, about six Leagues distant from *Ormuz*, (or two Leagues in Circuit, and three Leagues from *Ormuz*, as *Nieuhoff*) is notable for its Fertility, bearing plenty of Wheat and Barley, with which it supplies *Ormuz*, and hath also a good Spring of Water. (*Tavernier* and *Nieuhoff*.)

*Laraza*, another small Island near *Ormuz*, altho' of sandy Soil, is well Inhabited, and has store of Deer on it.

\* I am not unaware, that *Nieuhoff* declares this King to have been a most powerful and wealthy Prince, possessing not only this Island, but also a large part of both *Persia* and *Arabia*. But I am inclined to believe, that Author took it upon trust, for 'tis more probable, that *Ormuz* should be Subject to the Dukes of *Lar*, who as we have told you, were considerable Princes, than that the King of so small and barren an Island should be Master of Armies sufficient to conquer *Lar*, with other Provinces of *Persia*, which *Nieuhoff* makes part of his Dominions.



Before we proceed, it will not be improper to add a word or two concerning the

*PERSIAN GULPH*, or Sea of *Elcatif*, as it has been sometime called, which is a large Bed of Water, lying between the Coasts of *Pe-fia* and *Arabia-Felix*, about 10 Leagues wide in the middle part, but contracting narrow to a quarter of that breadth at the two ends. It commences in the West, in the 68 Deg. of Longitude, from the Gulph of *Bassora*, which is made by the influx of the two great Rivers *Euphrates* and *Tigris* United; and extends Eastward to the 75 Deg. Long. where Cape *Muce*, a promontory of the Province *Udama* in *Arabia-Felix*, by stretching forward into the Lat. 25. Deg. 30. M. shuts it up into a Mouth of not above 12 Leagues over, near the middle whereof as we have said the Island *Ormuz* is seated, and with the other two Islands abovementioned, intirely command the Passage. There are divers other Islands in it both on the *Arabian* and on the *Persian* Coast, but none of them, except those abovementioned, are considerable enough to need Description. But to return to Land.

The Province of *KHERMAN* or *Caramania*, lyes next to *Farsistan* on the East, having the *Arabian* Sea on the South, *Sigistan* on the East, and a Desert on the North. The Country is Mountainous, and the upper grounds Barren, but the Valleys are reasonably Fertile, and yield variety of odoniferous Flowers, especially *Roses* in great plenty, which affords a profitable employment to the Inhabitants, who Distill them, and sell the Water to *Ispehan*. Here is also found a Drug which is a Sovereign Antidote against Worms. The Province is large, but the greatest part of it is a barren Desert. (*Olearius*.) The *Gaures* or Ancient *Persians*, that adore Fire, inhabit this Province. *Tavernier*. The chief Places here are

*Kerman* or *Caramania*, the Capital, is a good Town where Cloath of Gold is wove, and the best Scymitars are made. *Tavernier*. tells us the Sheep of this place bear the finest Wool in the World, which they shed after eating new Grass. An Earthen Ware is made here, hardly inferiour to the *China* porcelain.

*Darabegerd*, the ancient *Passegarda*, where was the Sepulchre of the Great *Cyrus*, is reckon'd one of the chief Cities.

*Barnasir*, *Bisir*, *Bem*, *Choabis* and *Trzirest*, are named by *Olearius*, as chief Cities of this Province, within the Limits whereof also stand

*Jasques*, a small Port Town sometime possessed by the *Portuguese*, who built a Fort on it, but in 1623. the *English* expelled them, and delivered it to the *Persian*. (*Herbert*.) And *Guadel* another small Port; as also *Armuza*, whence *Ormuz* is supposed to be denominat.

On the East of *Kerman* to the Mountains, which divide *Persia* from *India*, lyes the small Province of *MAKERAN*, part of the ancient *Gedrosia*; but is commonly included in *Kerman*, and the general Accounts of Travellers omit the Distinction; The *Carra*, or *Imen* River, which rises in the Mountains of *Sigistan*, passes thro' the middle of this Province, and falls into the Sea.

*Pasir*, which may be supposed to be the *Bisir* mentioned by *Olearius*, seems to be the chief City, altho' *Maceran* a small Town nearer to the Sea. gives name to the Land, and *Gesi* is by others, reckoned the Capital.

*SIGISTAN*, which is the ancient *Drangiana*, lyes on the North of *Makeran*, having *Sablutan* for its Northern Bounds; the Mountains of *India* on the East, and the Desert of *Caramania* on the West. It is a Mountainous Country, and no ways not able enough to invite Strangers into it. 'Tis true, the Road by Land from *Persia* to *India*, lyes thro' this Province, but the Country is so Barren, Mountainous and Sandy, that few Travellers care to venture it: but choose rather to go by Sea.

*Sirzistan*, the Capital City, is by some represented as a good Town, but no particular account of it is to be found among Travellers, and so we must pass it over. *Phradez*, the ancient *Prophetia*, said by *Amianus Marcellinus*, to be a rich City, is by Dr. *Heylin* supposed to be still considerable. *Camultan*, *Kets*, *Fardan*, *Mesurgian*, *Majmah* and *Haba*, are set down by Geographers, as the names of chief Towns in this Province.

*SABLUSTAN*, the ancient *Paropamissus*, lyes next to *Sigistan* on the North, extending Eastward to the Frontiers of *India*. 'Tis a Country so covered with barren Mountains, and some of those so high, as to hide the Sun-light from the Valleys; and withal so little productive of any thing beneficial to Mankind, that it has always been a place of small Habitation, and very little visited. Places named, as chief Towns of this Province, are *Buji*, *Becksabath*, *Asba* and *Savenaz*.

On the East of *Sablustan*, lyes the Province of *CANDAHAR*, the greatest part of which is Subject to the Great *Mogul*. But the chief City, after divers Revolutions, hath for the last Hundred years been Subject to the King of *Persia*. The Province was a small Kingdom, and its Prince so wealthy, as to have all his Utensils of pure Gold, but the great Neighbours of *Persia* and *India* always contending for it, the last King was fain to surrender, and put himself under the Protection of the *Persian*, with condition however, that he and his Race should be perpetual Governours.

*Candahar*, the chief City of the Province to which it gives name, is a populous and wealthy Place, by reason of its being a staple of Trade between *Persia* and *India*, the Merchants of both Nations, and even those of *Tartary* and *Turkey* resorting hither, to vend their respective goods, but the Town it self affords no commodities of use or value. Being a Frontier, it is very well guarded, having a strong Castle, seated on a Rock, in the middle of the Town, and on the South and East, it is defended by a strong Wall, but on the West, it needs no better defence than Nature has given, to wit, mighty Rocks.

*Sha-Abas*, left to his Grandson *Sha-Sefi*, the peaceable possession of this City, but in his time, *Alimerdan Ken*, Son of the last King, being Governour, delivered it up to the Great *Mogul*. *Sha-Abas*, II. recovered it in 1650. and kept it, altho' *Sha-Jehan*, the great *Mogul*, with an Army of 300000 Men, attempted to regain it in 1651. Nor had the future Sieges better success, and the *Persian* still holds it. (*Tavernier*.)

*CHORASSAN*, the ancient *Aria* and *Bactria*, lyes on the North of *Sablutan* and *Sigistan*. This is a populous and fertile Country, and one of the most considerable in *Persia*, according to *Olearius*. It produces the best *Manna* in the World, and hath a Rock of the *Turquois* Stone, so excellent,



ent that the King allows none to be sold but to himself. The chief Cities here are,

*Herat* or *Erat*, otherwise named *Serheni* the Capital, is very strongly situated, being surrounded with a good Wall and deep Channels, or rather the River nigh which it stands, deduced and led quite round the City, the Work as 'tis said of *Tennierlain*; it is a Place of very good Trade, being resorted to by *Indian* Merchants. They make here excellent Tapistry, and abundance of Rose-Water, from the great quantity of Roses growing in the neighbourhood. (*Olearius*.) The City is very large, and even 13 Miles in Circumference as some report.

*Meschid*, *Meschat* or *Mexet*, called also *Thus*, seated at a good distance to the North-west from *Herat*, is surrounded with a noble Wall, whereon stand 300 Towers says *Texeira*. A City famous for the Monument of *Iman-Rize*, one of the 12 *Persian* Saints of the Family of *Hay*, which in Wealth and Beauty is said to equal that of *Selsiel Seft* at *Ardebil*. *N'chabour*, a goodly City, near which the excellent Turquoise-Stones are found. *Thum*, *Tuieskiliki*, and *Thabes-messinam* are all considerable Towns, and eminent for the Silk Manufactory. (*Olearius*.) There are also in this Province many other Cities of good Trade and very Populous, but the particular State of them is not come to our knowledge.

*ESTARADAD* together with *KHOEMUS*, is the most North-east part of *Persia*, extending to the River *Oxus* or *Fihun*, which divides this Kingdom from *Tartary*. It is a Mountainous Country, and except near the Banks of the two Rivers *Margab* and *Aras* which run thro' it, the Soil is sandy and barren, but in that part 'tis plain Champaign Land, Fertile and Pleasant, producing Grapes of a wonderful magnitude. The Inhabitants are a mixture of *Persians* and *Tartars*, whose chief Cities are,

*T'chah*, *Ferabat*, or *Farbar* the Capital, seated in the North part of the Province, near the Banks of a fresh Water Lake named *Sakacimber*. *Manuwe*, seated on the other side of the same Lake. *Indion*, the ancient *Alexandria-Margiana*, by *Dr. Heylin* nam'd as the Capital of the Province. *Zarchas*, seated on the River *Margab*, *Damkam* and *Amul*.

With which we finish our Account of *Persia*; and having hereby brought you to the Frontiers of *Tartary*, we shall choose to survey that Great Country, before we enter *India* and *China*, which will be the more proper, in regard that both those Empires are govern'd by Princes who came from thence. But we must first take notice of the *Caspian-Sea*, which lies between *Tartary* and *Persia*.

The *CASPIAN-SEA*, so called as we have elsewhere said from the *Cassii*, a Nation dwelling near its Banks; or otherwise *HYRCANIAN-SEA*, denominated as we have also told you from the Province *Hyrcania* now *Mazanderan*, whose Shoar it washes, is a very large Bed of Waters quite surrounded with Land, and destitute of any known Efflux, and is therefore by some Writers stiled a Lake. Seated between the 39th. and the 46th. Deg. of North Latitude, and between the 69th. and 77th. D. of Longitude. It was formerly represented in the

Maps as of Oval form, extending 200 Leagues from East to West, and 150 from North to South: But modern observations have discover'd that in Form, it nearer approaches an oblong Square: Whose longest side is from North to South; which according to *Olearius* is 120 *German* Leagues, and its breadth from East to West 90 of the same Leagues; on the West it is bounded by *Circassia* and *Schirwan*; on the East with *Estarabad* and the *Usbeg-Tartary*; on the North the *Nagayan-Tartary*; and on the South *Gilan* and *Mazanderan*, two Provinces of *Persia*. The *Persians* call this Sea *Kulsum*, or otherwise the Sea of *Baku*. It receives the great River *Volga*, which it self is like a Sea for largeness, and near 100 other Rivers into its Bosom, and yet is never encreased or diminish'd; nor is it observ'd to Ebb or Flow. This constant Plenitude has given rise to many Speculations, and Conjecturers imagine it must necessarily have Subterranean Communication with either the *Black-Sea*, altho' that be 120 Leagues distant, or with the *Persian-Gulph*, which is near 200 Leagues from it. For the last Opinion *Father Avill* a modern Traveller brings this Proof, namely, that near the Coast of *Alyan* there is in the *Caspian-Sea*, a mighty Whirlpool which sucks every thing in that comes near it, and consequently a Cavity in the Earth there; and in the *Persian-Gulph* there are found to flow on the Waters, a great quantity of the Leaves of Willow-trees but no Willow-tree grows any thing near that Sea, and very many are seen on the *Caspian*; therefore they are carried by Subterranean passage from thence to that; it does not concern me to refute or confirm this Opinion, and therefore shall leave it as I find it, with this remark only; viz. Since the Opinion of the *Caspian-Sea's* communicating with some other, is taken up chiefly on the account of the continual equal fulness of its Waters, it will be worth while to consider more attentively the quantity of Vapour, that must be drawn up by the Sun in that hot Climate, which will be easily computed, if you consult the Discourse on this Subject, written by that very Judicious and Accurate Naturalist and Mathematician *Mr. Edmund Halley*, extant in the *Philos. Transact.* and then consider whether the influx of the Rivers be more than Tantamount. The Water of it is as salt as other Sea-Water, notwithstanding the old Opinion to the contrary, as *Olearius* assures us: Neither is it of a black Colour as some have represented. It has many Islands on it, but none large or inhabited, except one named *Ensil* near *Ferabat*, where a few Huts only are built for the Fishermen that inhabit it. This Sea has various kinds of Fish, (notwithstanding the old Opinion that there was but one sort, and that of monstrous form) as we are assured by *Olearius* from Occular Testimony. Lastly, the best Havens in it are that near *Turki*, which is made by the Island *Tzenzini* and the Land of *Circassia*; that near *Menkischlai* in *Tartary*, and those of *Baku* in *Schirwan*, *Lenkeran* and *Ferabat*, both in *Mazanderan* or *Tabaristan*. This Sea is very little Navigated except by *Cossack* Rovers, who Pillage all they meet.

## TARTARY.



# TARTARY.

A. In these Hills are the Tombs of the Ancestors of the Present Emp<sup>r</sup> of China.

B. The white hills, where formerly inhabited the Tartars that at present Possess China.

PART OF  
CHINA

EASTERN TARTARY



A Part of the Journey which Kath' Verbiest made from Pekin to the Eastern Tartary in the Year 1611



GREAT  
TARTARY  
The Isle of JAPON

Herman Moll fecit.

**T**ARTARY, called the Grand Tartary, to distinguish it from the lesser Tartary in Europe, of which we have spoken, is the Ancient SCYTHIA and SERICA. I do not reckon in the *Sa maria* here, altho' that be generally included in the bounds of Tartary, because we have already spoken of that part of Tartary, which it composed in treating of *Muscovy*, and the Dominions of the *Czar* to whom it is subject. In that part we carried our Reader beyond the great

River *Oby*, which is generally reckon'd the Boundary of *Europe*; and having also there spoken of the Kingdom of *Astrachan* in the South: The limits of Tartary we are now to speak to, is reduced to a smaller extent than the common computations of Geographers make it. Moreover the mistake in the computation of Longitude, which we spoke of in the Preface, being now Corrected, the extent of Tartary Eastward is much contracted; for whereas the old Maps made the Coast of Tartary extend Eastward



ward to the 180th. Deg. of Longitude, but if we comply with the Modern Corrections, it cannot be allowed to extend to above the 150th. or at a most the 160th. Deg. Longitude.

So that amidst the various and confus'd Accounts, the best we can agree with, as being most consonant to the Observations, is that which places *Tartary* between the 75th. Deg. and the 160th. Degree of Longitude, and between the 49th. Deg. and the 80th. Degree of Latitude, which makes about 4000 Miles in length, and 2400 in Breadth, and is agreeable to *Cluverius*, who makes it 1000 German Leagues long, and 600 broad. Dr. *Heylin* indeed makes it 5400 Miles long, but then he goes so far Westward, as to include the better *Tartary*, which is part of *Europe*, and so not to be consider'd here.

The Soil of a Country so large cannot be told in a single Character, the Climate is so different, that to be sure the Products of the Earth must be various: But according to the best Accounts, the Southern parts of it would be fruitful if duly cultivated. 'Tis true even there the Land is much encumber'd with Mountains, and further upward much more, so that upon the whole we hear of no profitable Commodity brought from thence, but *Rhubarb*, which it seems grows very freely here.

The People are an off-spring of the Northern *Scythians*, who came down Southward about 500 Years ago, and like the *Goths* in *Europe*, and the *Sarazens* in *Africa*, carri'd all before them. They conquer'd *Persia* and a great part of *Asia-Minor*, as we have already told you, and tho' they were beaten thence, they forced their way Westward and established a Monarchy in the *Taurica Chersonesus*, which has continued above 300 Years. They are of short squall'd Statures, broad faced, fallow Complexion, and of most rude and barbarous Behaviour. They eat the Enemies they slay in Battle, and drink their Blood in Carousings; their common Food is the Flesh of Horse or other Beast eaten raw, and their best Drink Mare's-Milk. 'Tis said, the Cows here will not stand to be milked while they have Calves, and when they have none they are dry, which may be the reason of the Use of Mare's-Milk. They are strong of Body, swift of Foot, vigilant in time of Service, and patient under the Fatigues of Hunger and Cold. They scorn Agriculture, and laugh at *Europeans* for feeding on Corn, at the expence of so much Labour. Their Wealth consists in Cattle, and their Employment in Grazing. They so far condemn a fix'd Habitation, that 'tis a Curse with them. *may you live in the same Place, till the Stench of your own Dung offend you*: Wherefore they never build Towns, nor even repair those they gain in their Conquest; they exercise no Manufacture, nor maintain any Traffick except in Slaves and Horses, whereof they sell great numbers into *Turky* and *Persia*; and for that reason in Plundering an Enemy, they make most of the Children which they are sure to carry off, and in this Trade their Barbarity extends to the Sale of their own Children, and those of their Neighbours that they can steal. In Religion they were originally *Pagans*, as the Northern Inhabitants still are, but in their IncurSIONS into *Turky*, they became *Mahometans*, and so a great part of them still are. Christianity was Planted in *Schythia* in the Apostolick Age, by St. Andrew and St. Philip, and had large footing there before the *Tartars* came down and overthrew it; there are still *Christians* among them, but very ignorant, and corrupted with the Heresie of *Nestorius*.

They Rove about in Hords or Clans with Carts for their Baggage, and Tents for their Habitations, which they pitch where they find a good spot of Pasture, and when that is eaten up remove to another.

Such a Generation you may suppose are not under very regular Government; but as the most rude Nations do for their own convenience submit to Governors, so here are some, but how many and with what Powers, we are not informed.

The Great *Cham*, whose Imperial Seat is said to be at *Cambalu*, has been much talk'd of as the Sovereign Lord of this vast Tract of Land, and to whom all the Inhabitants pay Tribute. The old Accounts represent him as a most Potent, Wealthy and Arbitrary Prince; who Prides himself so much in his own Grandeur, that when he has Dined the Trumpets sound, and a Herald proclaims that the other Princes of the World may set down to Meat: But where this *Cambalu* is seated is not well agreed on, for the old Accounts of *Paulus Venetus* seem to point at *Pekin*, beyond which there is no City known that will answer his Character of it. They all tell us 'tis the Capital of *Cathay*, which is that part of *Tartary*, which lies on the North and East of *China*; so that the Power of that Monarch if such were still in being, would be known to the *Chinese*, who themselves possess a great deal of that Country; and if they knew any thing of him, we should have hear'd it in these latter Days, when the inquisitive Jesuits have brought us thence such particular Accounts of all notable things. 'Tis probable therefore that this Monarchy, which was so great in the Days of *Tamerlain*, is now broken into small Governments. The Origine of that Monarchy is plac'd by Historians in *Cingis* or *Zingis*, a bold adventurous Fellow of *Tartaria-propria*, who with the pretence of a Vision from Heaven commanding him, put himself at the head of his Clan; a People who having been oppress'd by their neighbour King of *Tenduc*, were ready for desperate Action: and was obeyed by so large a number, that he soon made himself Master of the neighbouring Countries, and being saluted King by his Followers, marched against the King of *Tenduc* and overcame him. Afterwards he invaded and conquer'd *Cathay*, and changed the name of *Scythian* to that of *Tartarian*. He Reign'd but six Years, that is, from A. C. 1162. to 1168. and was succeeded by *Jocutham*, otherwise called *Hoccatu*. In his time the *Tartars* invaded *Europe*, and his Successor *Zain-cham* or *Bathu* enter'd the *Minor Asia* and *Syria*, where they ruined the *Turkish* Kingdom of *Damascus*. *Haalon* the Brother of *Mango* the Great *Cham*, in the middle of the 13th. Century took *Begdat*, and conquered all *Chaldea*, *Affyria* and *Persia*. *Tamerlan*, *Timur-lenk*, or *Tamar-cham*, by all which names he is mentioned in History, began to appear in the Year 1335. and from a small obscure beginning, rais'd himself to a Throne, whether merely by his Valour as some set forth, or by the Marriage of the King's Daughter as others, I cannot pretend to determine. 'Tis certain he very largely encreased the *Tartar* Dominion, as the Histories of those times. (A. 1370 to 1400) do abundantly declare. His Regal-Seat was at *Samar-cand* the Capital of *Usbeck*, whence he made Excursions into *Persia* and *India*, the former he entirely conquered; and the latter in part was made Tributary to him. And Lastly, the proud *Bajazet* Emperor of the *Turks* became by Conquest his Prisoner. His great Empire was too large for one Governour, and



and therefore it seems to have been divided among his Sons. The names of the Successors in *Tartary* recorded in History, are *Lutrochin*, *Allan*, *Mengo-Chem*, *Cubley-Cham*, *Temor-Cham*, *Demy-Cham*, who reigned about the Year 1540. None of these performed any Actions that were considerable enough for History, and so we hear nothing of them nor their Successors.

As to the Conquests of *India* and *China*, altho' performed by *Tartars*, the Great *Chem* does not appear to have had any hand in it. For *Mirzab-Babar* who invaded *India*, altho' a Descendant of *Tamerlain*, was in his best Estate but Prince of *Zagathay*; and *Xunchi* who invaded and conquer'd *China* in the last Age, was King of *Niuche* the Eastern part only of *Cathay*.

The best that I can discover of the present State of *Tartary*, is, that the *Muscovite* is Supream Lord (but with very little Jurisdiction) of the Western Part, and the *Chinese* of the South and East Part. These Monarchs maintain Garrisons at convenient distances, and so command a Road, for an Army to March far into the Country, in case of any formed Design of the *Tartars* to annoy them; which has been found to be the most effectual way of curbing this wild Nation.

The Division of *Tartary* according to Geographers is thus,

**TARTARIA-DESERTA**, which was the Ancient *Sarmaria Asatica*, comprehends *Samoieda*, *Lucanaria*, *Siberia*, *Casen*, *Bulgeria*, and *Astracan*, spoken of in our Account of *Muscovy* together with *Circassia*, which we have also mentioned in the Chapter, wherein we treated of *Georgia* and its neighbouring Countries.

**ZAGATHAY**, bounded by the *Caspian-Sea* on the West; by *Turkestan* on the East; the River *Jaxartes* divides it from *Tartaria-Deserta* on the North; and on the South is bounded by the Northern Provinces of *Persia*. It is in Modern Stile called also *Usbeck* or *Mawarahnabar*; this is reputed the best cultivated Part of *Tartary*, and the Inhabitants maintain a good Traffick with *Persia*. The Places of chief Note here, are *Samarcand*, which was the Regal Seat of the Great *Tamerlain*, a large City built of Stone, with a Castle for its Defence, seated in a most pleasant Valley, and having a Gymnasium or University for *Mahometan* Learning. *Zabasse*, seated at the mouth of the River *Oxus* or *Jikun*, and *Birkent*, in the Mid-land are mention'd by *Cluverius* as Places of Trade.

**TURCHESTAN**, lies next on the East extending to the Frontiers of *Cathay*, having *Tartaria-propria*, or *Real Tartary* on the North, and the Northern Provinces of *Indostan*, or the *Mogul's* Empire on the South. It is otherwise called *Thibet*, by which name 'tis known in *India*. A Country as Desert and ill Planted as the rest of *Tartary*, says *Dr. Heylin*; whose Inhabitants are Civil and Polite enough, says *Cluverius*. *Teibet* is named by Travelers as the Capital City, and *Dr. Heylin* mentions *Crustins* as a Town of Trade resorted to by *Russians* and *Zagathayans*.

**TARTARIA-PROPRIA**, or **VETUS**, the Real or Ancient *Tartary*, so called because it was the Country where the *Tartars* originally inhabited. Is the Northern Part, extending quite from the Desert in the West, to the utmost North-east limits of the Continent where the Sea of the *Kaimakites*, and the Straights of *Anica* terminate it: Having the

great frozen *Tarterian*, or *Scythian* Ocean on the North, and *Turkestan* and *Cathay* on the South. It contained in its old Estate many Nations or Hords of People, whose names are lost, and their respective Countries now not known. *Dr. Heylin* names these Six, *Teibet*, *Tabor*, *Tenduc*, *Barbu*, *Anian*, and *Tartar*. And the Regions of *Ung* and *Mongul*, *Gog* and *Magog*, are spoken of by Learned Men as seated in this Country. Chief Places here, are *Mongul* seated on the Lake *Coras*, thro' which the River *Tartar* runs, not far from the Fortifications of the ancient Kings of *Tartary*. *Tartar* or *Tattar*, near the Spring-Head of the River of that name, whence the Nation take there denomination. *Chakan* or *Chamak*, on the Southern Bank of the River *Ghamas*. *Garantia*, on the Banks of the Lake *Carantia* or *Kitay*, whence the River *Oby* has its Source. *Coras*, the Place of Burial of the Kings of *Tenduc*, and *Caracoras*, where *Cingis* was made King. The Ancient Kings of *Tenduc* bore the Title of *Prestor* or *Presbyter John*, because says *Dr. Heylin* he was both King and Priest; a Name by corruption given afterwards to the King of *Abyssinia* in *Africa*.

Lastly **CATHAY**, which was by the Ancients named **CERICA**, is bounded on the North by real *Tartary*, on the South by *China*, on the West by *Turkestan*, and on the East by the Sea and the Strait of *Jesso*. This Country bears a better Character than the rest of *Tartary*, having cultivated Lands, and neat well built Towns; and so well replenished with all sorts of Wealth, as not to give place to *Greece* or *Italy*, says *Cluverius*: But his Author I am apt to believe spoke of *China*. *Dr. Heylin* tells us, it is a Country of very large extent, 1500 Miles he says, whose Western part is Mountainous and Barren, but the Eastern Part abounds with Wheat, Rice, Wool, Hemp, Silk, Musk, and great quantity of Rhubarb. There are also Camels and Horses in vast numbers, and the Country is well provided with all things necessary for Life; the Air is extream hot in Summer, and miserably Cold in Winter; the People of much better Wit and Address, than the other *Tartars*, live in Houses and adorn themselves with sumptuous Apparel. Places of chiefest Note here, are *Cambalu*, a most populous and Wealthy City, the Capital of the Empire of the Grand *Cham*, and very much frequented by the Merchants of *India* and *China*, 'tis five German Miles (that is 20 English Miles) in Circumference, and surrounded with twelve Suburbs according to the number of its Gates, thus far *Cluverius*, and judge if he must not mean *Pekim*. Others make it nine Miles in Circumference, and say 'tis otherwise named *Mnouchu*: But the most Judicious are of Opinion, these things are spoken of *Pekim*, which *Europeans* had never seen when they were written: And that City being but a little within the Wall, and frequently infested with *Tartars* for many Ages, when the *Chinese* Court was kept at *Namkim*, 'tis not at all improbable that the imperfect Rumors of that City, might be applied to this. Where the real *Cambalu* was seated does not appear, but the old Maps Place it too far Northward, (as the new Editor of *Dr. Heylin* wisely enough observes,) to be so opulent a place as these Accounts render it.

Having thus given you a view of *Tartary* according to the Geographers, we shall now look into Travellers and give you their Accounts of it.



*Tartary* (says Seignior Gimelli) is all the North Part of *Asia*, it is divided by the *Chinese* into the Western and Eastern, the former possessing all the Country lying beyond *Peking*, along the Frontiers of *India* and *Persia* to the Frontiers of *Muscovy*. And the Eastern *Tartary* reaches from the Province of *Leatung* (which lies just without the Wall of *China*) Eastward beyond *Japan*, and contains the Countries of *NIUCHE* west of *Corea*, *NIULHAN* North of *Nuche*, *TUPY* East of *Niucke*, the Country of *TESO* North-east of *Japan* and East of *Tupy*.

These Countries are poor and ill Peopled; there being in them only two or three Cities, and all the rest wild, either Woods or Mountains.

The Jesuit Father *Verbieft* who travelled with the Emperor of *China*, into the Eastern *Tartary* in the Year 1682. gives us this Account. From *Peking* to the Province of *Leatung*, the way is about 300 Miles North-East; and cross the Province of *Leatung* 400 Miles more, North-east, this Country is somewhat Mountainous: from the Frontier of *Leatung*, to the City *La* or *Ula*, the way still North-east, is 400 Miles. All the Country beyond *Leatung* is exceeding Desert, where nothing is to be seen, but Mountains and Valleys, with the Dens of Bears, Tigers and other wild Beasts. You can scarce find a House, except poor Reed Huts upon the sides of some Brooks and Streams. All the Cities and Towns we saw in *Leatung*, which are numerous, are entirely ruined; one can see nothing thro' the whole Country, but old ruined Walls with rubbel Bricks and Stones. In the outskirts of those Cities, there have been of late some few Houses built without any Order, of Earth or the Rubbish of the old Buildings covered with Thatch. Abundance of Towns which were here before the War are so entirely destroyed, as not the least Footsteps of them to be seen; for the Armies forced the Inhabitants into the Wars, and destroyed their Houses to take from them all thoughts of returning. The Capital of *Leatung* which is called *Xin-yam*, is a fair City and pretty entire, and has still the Remains of an ancient Palace. It lies by observation, in the Latitude of 41 Deg. 56 Min. (Oh! that he had made an observation of Longitude too) and there the Magnetick Needle is subject to no Declination. The City *Ula* which was the extremity of their Journey, lies in 44 Deg. 20 Min. Lat. the Needle declining from South to West one Deg. 40 Min. On the North side of *Xin-yam* in the Hills, at small distance from the Town, lies the Sepulchres of the Ancestors of the present Race of *Chinese* Emperors. *Kirin* 400 Miles North-east from *Xin-yam*, seated on the Banks of the River *Songoro* is another City, into which the Emperor entred in State. From thence travelling 32 Miles on the River, they arrived at *Ula*, which is the fairest in all this Country, and has been formerly the Seat of the Empire of the *Tartars*. The River *Songoro* is full of Fish a little below *Ula*: it rises in the Mountain *Champe*, at a great distance to the South, which Mountain being the ancient Seat of the *Tartars*, the Emperor he says, knelt down on the Banks of the River, and bowed to it three times in Reverence. Our Author went no farther than *Ula*, but he tells us by information, that *Ninceritia* a Place renowned in those Parts, is 700 *Chinese* Stadia of 360 Geom. Paces each, distant from *Ula* to the North-east, seated on the great River *Heleum*, into which the *Songoro* falls. And that sailing down the River whose Course is North-east, they arrived in 40 Days

at the Eastern Sea, as I was told says he, by the General of the Militia at *Kirin*, who had himself performed this Voyage.

I omit his Table of Distances, because he has committed to give us account what those Places were, whether Villages, Towns, Castles or Cities. But I must not omit to observe, that in his Relation he mentions the Distances in Miles, and in the Table sets them down in *Chinese* Stadia as he calls them, which makes a vast difference. And yet if those Stadia are reduced to what he speaks, viz. 360 Geometrical Paces, the way will appear too short (being not quite 400 *English* Miles) for so long a Journey as he pretends to make it; and therefore with submission to better Judgment, I think a medium ought to be allowed.

The next Year the same Author travelled with the Emperor 600 Miles into West *Tartary*, of which Country he gives us the same Account, namely, that it is Rude and Mountainous; but speaks not here of any Cities or Towns at all. Thus far Father *Verbieft*.

The Embassador sent from the Czar of *Muscovy*, to the Emperor of *China* in the Year 1693. gives us this Account of *Tartary*; namely,

That he set out from *Muscovy* on the 13 March, and travelling North-east and South-east, thro' divers Provinces which we have already describ'd in our Account of *Muscovy*, he came to the great River *Oby* on the 1st of August, and passing by *Surgut* a City lying on the *Oby*, in the Lat. 61 D. and *Narum* another City in 57. 30. he embark'd on the River *Ketto* which falls into the *Oby* a little below *Narum*, and after a Month's rowing against Stream, he arriv'd at the small City of *Mekulsko*, and in two Days more at *Jenezeskoï*, a City seated on the River *Jenska*, in the 57 D. Lat. and according to the Map that goes along with these Travels, in the 100 D. of Longit. the whole Country thro' which he passed was wild and uncultivated, inhabited by a Rude Pagan People whom he names the *Ostiacks*, among whom no Provisions or Necessaries were to be had. *Jenezeskoï* is well supplied with Fish out of the River which is large, the third part of a Mile over, and convenient for Navigation, as flowing in a direct Line Northward into the Ocean. The City is considerably large and Populous and the Fortrefs pretty strong, govern'd by a Magistrate appointed by the Czar. Several Villages lie round about the City, and the Land is proper for Agriculture, producing Corn, Cattle and Fowl very plentifully. The *Tungusians* who live along the Banks of the River are subject to the Czar, and pay Tribute of Furs at this City. From thence passing forward near the River *Tanguska* which falls into the *Jenska*, and the *Ilney* which falls into the *Tanguska*, he arrived at *Ilenskoï*. The Inhabitants hereabouts are barbarous Pagans, and exercise diabolical Conjurations, which they confide much in. From thence he passed on to the Fort *Burantz* among the *Burattians* a Pagan People, and afterwards to the Fort of *Bulaganski*, in the same Country; the People have small Houses, and do not change there Habitations, are richly stocked with Cows, but utterly ignorant of Agriculture. In Summer time they go abroad in great numbers to hunt down the wild Beasts, which serves them for a Winter Store. They have no Money, but sell Oxen and Camels to Travelers for such Necessaries as are offer'd, whereby they buy them very cheap. The People here are Robust and larger Statur'd than usually the *Tartars* are: the Musk-Cat is found here.



The next City he came to was *Jekutskoi*, seated on the River *Angara*, which rises in the *Baikal-Meer*, (eight miles from this place) in the Lat. 55. D. and Longit. 110 D. This City was not long since Rebuilt, and provided with good Fortifications, and has also large Suburbs, round which lyes good Fertile Land, where Corn grows plentifully, and the City is well furnished with all sort of Grain, Salt, Flesh and Fish. It is inhabited by *Russians*, under a Governour appointed by the Czar, and takes its name from the River *Jekur*, which falls into the *Angara* over against it. Passing over the Lake of *Baikal*, which is 16 *German Leagues* wide, he arrived at *Kabanja*, another *Russian* Castle, in 10 Days time, and in another Day at *Ilinskoy*, another very large Town inhabited by *Russians*, whose chief employment is Sable Hunting. Thence in another Day at *Tanzienzkoy*, which is a Castle provided with a strong Garrison of *Cossacks* to cover the Country from the incursions of the *Mongolians* which border on it. From thence crossing the River *Silirga*, in four or five Days he came to *Udinskoi*, seated on the small River *Uda*, which falls into the *Silirga*. This is a City and strong Fortress seated on a Hill, with a good Garrison of *Russian* *Cossacks* to secure against the *Mongolians*, who often come upon them and steal their Cattle. The Country hereabouts is Mountainous, and therefore improper for Tillage, but produces Garden-herbs and Roots in plenty. Here begins the Province of *DAURIA*, a Desert Country, thro' which Travelling in barbarous Roads, over high and dismal Rocks for three weeks time, they arrived at the Castle of *Jarauna*, Garrisoned with *Cossacks*, and inhabited by *Russians*. Here the Tartar Inhabitants are called *Konni Tunguzi*, who live on Sable-Hunting, and sell the Skins for Money to the *Russians*. From hence thro' difficult ways to the City of *Felimba*, which is a Fortification wherein live many *Russians* who exercise Sable-Hunting, here being found as rich black Sables as are in *Siberia*. Hence passing by the Village *Platbischea*, over some Mountains, and along the River *Schilka*, they arrived in two Days more at *Nerzinskoi* lying on the River *Nerza*, which rising more Northward, falls here into the *Schilka*. This City is strong, being provided with several brass Cannon, and a great Garrison of *Daurian* *Cossacks* both Horse and Foot. It stands among Mountains, but has Champion ground in the Valleys, which they Till, and produce enough for their necessities. *Nerzinskoi* lyes in Lat. 52 D. Long. 123. D. and is a good wealthy place by means of a Traffick which the Inhabitants maintain to *China*. Here are two sorts of Heathens the *Konni-Tunguzians* and the *Oleni Tunguzians*, who have for a long time lived in Subjection to the Czar, being obliged to appear in Arms at the command of the Governour of *Nerzinskoi*, the former on Horseback, and the latter on Foot to oppose the Incursions of the Roving *Tartars*. They are good Soldiers, and attack the *Mongolians* at great disparity of Numbers. They are in Religion and Manners like the other *Tartars* except that they are of the civiler sort, and live in Hurts, which however they build so as to remove at pleasure. They ride much on Horseback, the Women as well as the Men, and go a Hunting like the *Burarians* in the Summer for Winter Provisions, they use Bows and Arrows as indeed all the *Tartars* do, and are excellent Marks-men.

From *Nerzinskoi*, passing the River *Schilka*, and thence Travelling 10 Days Southward, by the Banks

of the River *Argun*, they arrived at *Argunskoi*, which is the last Fortress the Czar has in *Tartary*. Hitherto we have Travelled almost directly East, since we left the *Ob*, and have already made a Journey of at least 40 Degrees, which in this Latitude, wherein Degrees of Longitude are 35 Miles and half, amounts to 1420 Miles. We now pass South East 750 Miles more, before we arrive at the Wall of *China*. *Argunskoi*, as we have said, stands on the Banks of the River *Argun*, which flows from North to South, and falls into the River *Amur*, which flows Eastward, till it fall into the Ocean. Upon this River pretty far Eastward, the Czar had Castles and Dominion, before the year 1685, when by Treaty between the two Monarchs he'd *Nipcheu*, it was agreed that this River *Argun* should be the mutual boundary of the two Empires. Beyond this River, lyes a great uninhabited Wilderness, and beyond that the whole Country from the the River *Amur* Southward, and even Northward as is pretended, was the Kingdom of *Nieuchieu*, [that is the Country of the Ancestor of the present Monarch of *China*] thus my Author; but that does not well agree with the general opinion, which places this Kingdom much more Eastward. After many Days Travel thro' the Wilderness, they arrived at the *Jalischian* Mountains, which are exceeding high, and lye in the Latitude of 48 D. the Country abounds with Harts, Roebuck and wild Sheep, and large Flocks of Wild-Geese, Ducks, Turkeys and Partridges, the Rivers (whereof they passed divers) are well stocked with Fish. And the Air is Temperate. The Valleys afford pleasant Pasture; and in effect being past the Mountains, they entered a very agreeable Country, adorned with Trees of various kinds, Oak, Lime, &c. and bushes of Hazel-nut, well filled with Fruit (it was in September) which led to another high Mountain, upon the Top of which, was the first *Chinese* Guard or Watch, who stop Strangers, and send them to the main Guard at *Mergeen*, a Town at some Distance on the left. Next they passed by the Hurts of *Tanzazians*, another Clan of *Tartars*, who are Subject to their own Chief, but pay Tribute to the Emperor of *China*. They Till the Earth and breed Cattle, whereof they have Horses, Camels, Kine and Sheep, they affect to ride upon Oxen; and are good Artists at making Bows which are esteemed the best in *Tartary*.

Hence passing along the Banks of the River *Ja*, through beautiful Pasture Grounds, watered with delightful Streams, and pleasant Woods, which ravishes the sight; they afterwards Travelled for three Days in as much the contrary, between Mountains and Rocks without Water or refreshment which terminated in a plain, but very barren Field, which with a Days Travel brought them to the City *Xixigar*, the Capital of a very pleasant Province, where live a Clan of handsome *Tartars*. Then journeying three Days, they entered the Country of the *Mongolians*, another Clan of *Tartars*, Subject to the King of *China*, and at four Days end came to the old City, or the Ruins of a City pretended to have been built by *Alexander* the Great; and in four Days more they arrived at a City called *Bugan Koton*, or Idol City, which is also in Ruins. And then they passed the River *Schilka Murin*, and through some Villages to the Country where the King of *China* comes every year a Hunting, which is a Rocky Mountainous Country, and leads to the famous Wall of *China*, which shall



shall put an end to our Description of *Tartary*, supposing that by this time, we have given our Reader a pretty good Idea of the present State of it, for we have carryed him one way Eastward, about 3 or 400 Miles beyond the Wall of *China*; and now brought him above 2000 Miles from the West, to the same place, and done this from the Relations of two Persons of indubitable in-

tegrity, who actually Travelled the Land, they describe, which is certainly the best manner of declaring the true State and Extent of any Country.

And thus having viewed all the North and West Part of *Asia* shall proceed to the East, and pass through *India*, the Islands in the Indian Sea, *China* and *Japan*.

# THE EAST-INDIES.

## Of the EAST-INDIES in General.

**S**OME Geographers have extended the *East-Indies* as far as the Eastern Ocean, comprehending *China* and *Japan* under that general Name: But according to the Opinion of the best Writers, and according to the common Acceptation, by the word *East-Indies*, is understood only, I. The Empire of the Great Mogul. II. The Peninsula of *India* within the River *Ganges*. III. The Peninsula of *India* beyond the River *Ganges*. And IV. The Islands in the Indian Ocean.

The vast Tract of Land generally known by Name of *INDIA*, is situate between *China* on the East; *Persia* on the West; *Tartary* on the North, and the Indian Sea on the South. The most Southern Part (being the Peninsula of *Malacca*) shoots out to the first Degree of North Latitude, but the Bay of *Bengal* which flows between the two Peninsulæ of *India*; ascends to the height of 22 Degrees, so that only that Peninsula lyes within the Torrid Zone. The Mogul's Empire lying mostly within the Tropick of *Cancer*, and extends Northward to the 41 Degree of Latitude. As for the Longitude, there have been great Mistakes, the Dutch Maps make *Surat* lye in the 106 Degree, and *Sanson* places it in the 109. Whereas our Mariners by their Observations make it about 78 Degrees from the *Lizard*, that is, 87 from *Teneriff*, and about 90 from the Island *Fero*, which does not much disagree from the Observations of the best Astronomers in the World, viz. *M. Hevelius*, *Mr. Halley* and *M. Gallet*; as we find by the Account (published in the *Philos. Transact. Feb. 1682.*) of the Meridional Distance between *London* and *Ballasore*, a place in the Bay of *Bengal*, in the Latit. of 22, which was found to be 86 Deg. 24 min. to which adding 17 D. 10 Min. the distance from *Teneriff* to *London*. it amounts to 103 D. 34 Min. but *Ballasore* stands 12 Degrees Eastward from *Surat*, so that that being deducted, there rests 91 Degrees or thereabouts for the Longitude of *Surat* from *Il Pico* in *Teneriff*. Having fixed this, we may venture to say with our Map, that *India* extends in Longitude from the 82 to the 130th Degree.

Whether the Name *India* was derived from the River *Indus*, or from the *Hindows* who were the ancient Inhabitants, and from whom came the word *Indostan*, that signifies the Country of the *Hindows*, is not easy to determine: But it is called East, to distinguish it from *America*, which bears the Name of the *West-Indies*.

The Air is exceeding hot, especially in the Southern parts, which would be utterly uninhabitable, if it were not for the set Seasons of Rain and Wind, wherewith the Countries lying in the Torrid Zone are cool'd and refresh'd. These Regular Winds, which are call'd *Monsoons*, are observed to blow constantly from one Corner, for four or five Months every Year, namely, from the North or rather North-East (according to *Dampier*) from *October* to *March*; and the contrary from *April* to *September*: both which refresh the Land, one with Coolness and the other with Rain.

The Soil of these Countries is generally good, producing not only plenty of Corn, Fruits, Fish, Fowl, Pasture and Cattle, but yields also the most valuable Spices and Druggs; *Indico* and *Cotton*; Mines of *Diamonds*, *Tin* and in some places *Gold*, *Iron*, *Copper* and other Metals: The Seas yield *Pearl* and *Coral*; and the Forests are full of *Lyons*, *Tygers*, *Elephants*, *Rhinoceros*, and many other wild Beasts; But the Country is much infested with hideous Serpents, and most noxious Vermin.

The chief Rivers of *India* in general; are, 1. The *Indus*, which washes its Western Bounds. 2. The *Ganges*, which rises in the Mountains that divide *Tartary* and *India*, runs through the middle of the Country, and falls into the Bay of *Bengal*. 3. The *Caor*. 4. *Cosmin* and 5. *Pegu*, issue from the Lake *Chiamay*, on the Frontier of *Tartary* and *China*, and fall into the Gulph of *Bengal*. 6. The *Menan*, issuing from the same Lake, falls into the Gulph of *Siam*. The *Padder* and *Gemeni* in *Guzarat* and *Cambai*; the *Guenga* in *Golconda*; the *Nagundi* in *Bisnagar*, and other smaller Rivers will be spoken of in their proper places. Suffice it at present to say that



*Indie* is in general very plentifully watered with large and commodious Rivers.

The Mountains of *India* are many. A great Ridge called by the Ancients *Caucasus*, *Taurus* and *Imeus*, runs along on the West side between *Persia* and *Indistan*; as doth another Ridge, on the North between the same Country and *Tartary*: In the Peninsula of *Indie* within *Ganges*, the Mountains *de Gate* or *Ballagate*, continue all the length of the Country from *Narsinga* to *Cape Comarin*.

The Religion of *India*, except where Christianity has prevailed, is either Paganism or Mahometism; the latter having been brought hither out of *Tartary* or *Persia*, and the former was the Religion of the *Hindows* or *Aborigine* Inhabitants of this Country, and taught by the ancient *Brachmans*: They acknowledge one Supreme Eternal Omnipotent Being, Creator of all things; from whom they say proceeded three Cares, viz. *Burma* or *Brama*, the Care of making all things: *Vishnu* or *Bisna*, the Care of preserving all things: And *Maubadeb* or *Iroa*, the Care of destroying all things: Of these three Gods they tell a World of ridiculous Fables, too long for us to insert. They have other smaller Deities and Saints to whom they pay Religious Worship, in their Pagods or Temples, whereof they had one in every Town and Village; and those in Cities or large Towns were built of Stone with great Magnificence and rich Decorations: but Mahometism has prevailed so much, as to destroy a great many of them. The *Bramines* or Priests pretend to be the Offspring of the Brains of their God *Brama*, and are exceedingly revered: They wear no Garments except a Cloath about their middles, and now and then a loose Gown over their Shoulders; they feed on Herbs, Fruit, and the like, religiously abstaining from all things that have Life, and will on no Account kill, though it be a Vermin: They have some Learning, and are generally esteemed the wisest Men of the Nation: They use a peculiar Character and Language, which like our Latin, is the learned Language; and must first be studied by the Pupils that come to them for Instruction. There are many ridiculous Ceremonies in the Gentile Religion; but the most barbarous is that of burying the Wife with her Husband, which is practised in the *Indies*; begun either on a Religious Account (great Rewards of Blessing being promised to the Wife that does it) or on a political Account as some imagine, to prevent the Women's poisoning their Husbands, as they say they us'd to do; however it began, it is religiously observed by the *Hindows*; but in regard that the Government in *Indostan* is Mahometan, the Magistrates restrain, and wont permit the Woman to be burnt without leave, which is not very easy to obtain; and indeed not at all, if she have Children. But then she must put her self into a State of Penance, or endure the utmost Flouts and Contempt from her Neighbours and Friends.

The Christian Religion was undoubtedly planted very early in *India*. *St. Thomas* is generally believ'd to have preached the Gospel and suffered Martyrdom there, in the City *Malicpur*, now *St. Thomas*, on the Coast of *Coromandel*. That Apostle had Converted many, and Baptized the King and most of his Nobles, before the *Bramines* murdered him: And Christianity flourished considerably, till some Pagan Princes making Incursions, sacked *Malicpur*, and forced the Christians to fly to the Mountains, whence they descended into *Malebar*, and in process of time had Bishops and Priests sent to them by the Patriarch of

*Mazal* in *Syria*; a Succession whereof continued to the time that the *Portuguese* came into these parts. But these Teachers brought with them the Heresy of *Nestorius*, with which the *Portuguese* found them much infected; but otherwise very good Christians, having the Bible or at least the New Testament among them in the Syriack Language, receiving the Sacrament, using Prayers to, and professing Faith in God and the Blessed Trinity; and observing the same Calendar, Feasts and Fasts with us: And though Christianity was in as low estate as ever it had been, when the *Portuguese* arrived, they found fifteen or sixteen thousand Families in and about *Cranganor*, who sent to *Vasco de Gama* in the Year 1502, desiring to be receiv'd under the Protection of the King of *Portugal*. *Emanuel* that then reign'd, having receiv'd Encouragement from the Pope, sent over several Priests and Fryars, who preached the Gospel (but with the Corruptions of the *Romish* Church) with great Zeal, and good Success: *John III.* who succeeded him, spared no Cost or Pains to propagate Christianity in *India*, and to that purpose sent over Father *Francis Xavier*, who by his Pains and Piety instructed the People, and by Strictness of Life and Virtuous Disposition, so wrought upon them, that as the *Portuguese* brag, vast Numbers were converted. The *English* and *Dutch* Nations also have contributed their Parts to the propagating Christianity in *India*, so that though the Inland Country be still Heathens and Mahometans, the more civiliz'd People on the Coasts are pretty well reconciled to our Faith.

All the Princes in *India*, from the Great *Mogul*, to the least King of an Island, are Absolute in their Authority, and execute an uncontrouled power over the Lives, Liberties and Estates of their Subjects. Are never approached but with the utmost Submission, nor admit any Client who comes empty handed, a Present being always made at every application for Justice, as well as other business. As this Creates a great dependance on the King, so it causes a Laziness and Despondency in the common People, for to what purpose should Men be industrious, when they cannot reap the benefit of their Labour, and when Wealth cannot be transferred to their Children, but on the contrary makes them the more obnoxious to ill treatment from their Governours. Those of the Pagan Faith (tis supposed) Bury their Money upon a belief it will be useful to them in the other World: And the Mahometans care little for laying up: The richest Governour spends all he gets, and thereby alone can secure himself from the ruin which the Envy of his Wealth would create. And the Land is so far from being a property, that the same Man seldom possesses two Crops; nay, *Gimelli* tells us, the Great *Mogul* sometimes takes away the Land that is Tilled, and gives the poor Peasant other that is Fallow. But the People bear it with great Patience, and know not what Liberty is: contenting themselves with sorry Houses, ill furnished, and Food as ordinary. The common Food is Rice, and Drink, Water. There being no Wine in *India*, they debauch in Rack, which is a Spirit distilled from Rice, and the lower sort in *Neri* or *Tary*, which are the juice of the Toddy and Palm Trees, a pleasant beauvrage, and not unlike Wine. The better sort much affect to Chaw Areck, which is a sort of Nut; this wrapt up very neatly in the Leaf of the Betele-Tree prepared with Lime, is a Regale in Visits; and is generally used all over the *Indies*. It provokes spitting, makes the Lips red,



red, and is reckoned to be good for the Stomach.

The remote Distance of *India* from *Europe*, may make it worth our Enquiry by what steps we obtain'd to intimate a Knowledge of it; for considering how vast a Tract of Land lies between it and the Mediterranean Sea on one side, and how large an Ocean floweth between it and us on the other side; it would be extremely wonderful that we should ever have procur'd the Commodities of those Countries in so plentiful a manner, if we were not acquainted with the Wit and Industry of these latter Ages, wherein Men adventure to pry into every Corner of the habitable World. The first Knowledge of *India* seems to be owing to *Alexander's* Expedition; for after he had conquered *Persia*, we are told by *Curtius* and others, his Ambition led him into *India*, where many Nations submitted without bloodshed; and *Porus* who is thought to have possessed the best part of what is now the *Mogul's* Empire, resisting him, was vanquished and made Captive. Some Authors are apt to believe he penetrated as far as the River *Ganges*, but 'tis more probable he went but a little way beyond the *Indus*, and returning, followed the Course of that River down to the Ocean; and that it was near where *Diu* now stands that he erected the mighty Altars in imitation of *Hercules's* Pillars, and left those vast Beds, Armour, Birts, &c. to amuse future Ages. *Prolemy* and the ancient Geographers speak of 5000 considerable Cities, and as many Nations in *India*. Where the *Brachmans* or *Indian* Philosophers were celebrated, and honoured with the Title of *Gymnosophists* by the *Greeks*. But the Knowledge of *India* proceeding chiefly from the Trade thither, we were to be sure very little acquainted with it, before the *Europeans* found the way by Sea: For before that time all the Traffick into *India* was carried on by the *Persians*, *Arabians* and *Moors*, who brought the Jewels, Spices, Silks, and other valuable commodities of these Countries, partly over Land, and partly by the Red Sea, to *Alexandria* and other Ports in the *Mediterranean*; whence the *Venetians*, *Genuefes* and *Florentines* brought them to *Europe*: by which Trade the Princes of *Syria*, *Arabia* and *Egypt*, as well as the Merchants of those Countries and *Italy* were exceedingly enriched: Till by the Assistance of the Mariner's Compass, the Astrolabe, and other useful Instruments then newly invented, the *Portuguese* were enabled to launch out into the Atlantick Ocean, coast the whole Continent of *Africa*, double the Cape of *Good Hope*, and find the way by Sea to the *East-Indies*. Of which Navigation and the Settlements of *Europeans* in *India*, we shall set down as particular an Account as the brevity of our Work will admit; imagining it may be an agreeable Entertainment to our Reader.

### Of the first Voyages from EUROPE to the EAST-INDIES.

THE Discovery of the Coasts of *Africa* in order to a Voyage to the *East-Indies*, was first attempted in the Year 1482. by *Don Henry* Son to *John I.* King of *Portugal*; who gave all possible Encouragement to it. But in 53 Years time that he lived, they had got no farther than the Coasts of *Guinea*; and after his Death there was little Progress made in it, till the time of *K. John II.* who resuming this Matter with great Zeal and

Courage, first sent out *Bartholomew Diaz*, who doubled the Cape of *Africa*, to which *K. John* gave the Name of *Good Hope*: and afterwards sent *Medo Covillan* by Land, who travelled as far as *Canonor*, *Calecut*, and the neighbouring Places; whence crossing the *Indian Sea*, he passed over to the Coasts of *Zanguebar* in *Africa*, and by the information he received there, concluded that the same Coast continued from the Cape of *Good Hope*; so returning through *Ethiopia*, came back safe to *Lisbon*, and gave the King so much Encouragement, that he made all necessary preparations to set out a large Fleet for that Expedition, but dyed in the Year 1495. before it set out.

*Emanuel* his Successor, prosecuted the design, and in the Year 1497. *Vasco de Gama* with four Ships and 160 Men set Sail from *Lisbon*, and Sailing along the Coast of *Africa*, he doubled the Cape, and came to *Mozambique* on the East Coast of *Africa*, in the 15th Deg. of South Latitude, where being kindly entertained, he staid for some time, receiving instructions for the prosecuting his Voyage, and as some relate, he found there that most useful Instrument the Mariner's Compass. But with more probability it may be said, that it was not then unknown, for 'twas five Years before this, that *Columbus* set out on his discovery of *America*, wherein we may reasonably conclude, he had the use of the Compass; and if the *Spaniards* had it, undoubtedly the *Portuguese*, who were the chief Navigators at that time, would not be without it. But to proceed, *de Gama* parting from hence, prosecuted his Voyage, and in two Months more discovered the Coast of *Malabar*, where Anchoring near *Calecut* on the 20th of May, 1498. He sent some Men ashore for discovery; who by good Fortune met with a *Moor* that understood *Portuguese*, and acquainted them with the State of the Country; and by his means the *Zamorin* or Emperor of *Calecut* was informed of their Arrival. This Prince received them very kindly, and was ready to have entered into a League with the King of *Portugal*, when the *Arabians* and *Moors*, who were the Men that carried on the *Indian Trade* to *Europe* hitherto, being alarm'd at the arrival of the *Portuguese*, and foreseeing the loss of their Trade, if these Men were admitted; apply'd themselves to the King, and laying before him the Advantages that he and his Country had received by their Traffick, and declaring, that in case the *Portuguese* were admitted, they would leave him; so wrought upon the *Zamorin*, that the *Portuguese* were no more favoured but insulted; Wherefore *de Gama* finding himself not safe, and having in a great measure performed what he came for, viz. discovered the *East-Indies*; he returned home, and arrived safe at *Lisbon* in September, 1499.

And now the discovery being made, the next business was to establish a Trade there; to which purpose the next Year, *Pedro Alvarez de Cabrale* was sent out with a Fleet of 13 Ships and 1500 Men, to oblige by fair or foul means the King of *Calecut* to permit them to settle there. Of these Ships, but six perform'd the Voyage, for the rest were either sent back, as unable to perform the Voyage, or cast away. Arriving at *Calecut*, he was entertained with unexpected kindness by the *Zamorin*, a House given the King of *Portugal*, and liberty granted to lade their Ships before any others. But their old Enemies the *Moors* soon made a difference, for the goods were so bought up by them, that notwithstanding the *Zamorin's* order, the *Portuguese* could have none, which made them  
set



set upon the *Moor* Ships and take the Goods thence ; to revenge which, the *Serazens* assaulted the *Portuguese* House, and killed many of the Men ; for which Affront, *Alvarez*, not able to get redress by fair means, set upon 10 *Arabian* Ships in the Port, killed the Men, unladed the Ships, and battered the Town with his Cannon ; and then leaving *Calecut*, he sailed to *Cochin*, where he was very kindly received, furnished with the Commodities he wanted, courted by that King and those of *Coulam* and *Canonor*, and thence returned home with a very rich Cargo, and arrived at *Lisbon*, in *August* 1502. In the mean time, *John de Nova* was sent out with another Fleet to recruit *de Gama*, but missing him, he laded his Ships at *Cochin* and *Canonor*, and came safe to *Lisbon*.

And now the King of *Portugal* assumed to himself the pompous Titles of *Lord of the Navigation, Conquest and Commerce of Ethiopia, Arabia, Persia and India* ; and to maintain that Title, sent out *Vasco de Gama* a second time, with the Title of Admiral, and a larger Fleet than ever ; with which he sailed directly to *Cochin*, whose King *Trimumpara* was a sincere Friend and generous Assistant to the *Portuguese* against their Enemy the *Zamorin* of *Calecut* : Having laden his Ships, and dispatcht his Affairs at *Cochin*, he sailed towards *Canonor*, but was met by 20 stout Ships from *Calecut*, which he quickly defeated, took two of them, and returned to *Portugal*, leaving *Vincens de Seodra* with six Ships to cruise on the Coast, and hinder the Commerce of the *Arabians* and *Moor*s. As soon as *de Gama* was gone, the *Zamorin* fell upon *Trimumpara* and drove him out of his Kingdom, because he would not quit the Interest of the *Portuguese*. But *Francis* and *Alphonso d' Albuquerque* arriving the next Year, at *Cochin*, they soon drove out the *Zamorin*, and reinstated *Trimumpara*, and by his permission built a Castle for the Security of the *Portuguese*, which after was encreased to a Town, and may be called *New-Cochin* : having done this, laded their Ships, and settled a Factory at *Coulam*, they returned to *Portugal*, leaving *Pedro* a valiant Commander with 300 Men, and three Ships to oppose the *Zamorin* : With this small force the *Portuguese* did Wonders, repulsing the *Calecutians* in all the Attacks upon *Cochin*, and supported *Trimumpara* in his Kingdom. The next Year they were reinforced by a considerable Armada from *Portugal* under *Lopez Suarez*, and acquired a mighty Reputation in *India*.

The *Portuguese* having thus in some measure established themselves in *India*, King *Emanuel* sent *Don Francisco d' Almeida* in the Year 1505. to reside there with the Title of Vice-Roy : This Prince maintained the War with great Courage and Hazard, during the five Years that he governed. And *Alphonso d' Albuquerque* that succeeded him, took the Island and City of *Goa*, which was then made, and has ever since continued the Seat of the Government of the *Portuguese Asia* : from hence they sent out Armies and Fleets, and extended their Conquests far and near, establishing Factories, not only all along that Coast of *Malabar*, and the other of *Cormandel*, but also all along the Bay, and the Coasts of *Pegu*, *Siam*, *Malacca*, and on most of the Islands, and possessed for a long time the whole Trade of the *Indies* ; till the *English* and *Dutch* Nations put in for a share with them. Since that time the *Portuguese* Trade daily declined ; and in the War with the *Dutch*, in 1662. &c. they were almost expelled these Parts, having at present besides *Goa*, few Places

of any Importance there. So much for the *Portuguese*.

The Discovery of the *East-Indies* happened in the Reign of our King *Henry VII.* who was a Prince that loved his Money too much to send it abroad in such hazardous Adventures ; and as he refused *Columbus* Assistance in the Discovery of *America*, so he neglected the Trade of the *East-Indies*. His Son *Henry VIII.* was otherwise employed all his Reign, as were his two Successors. But Queen *Elizabeth* having happily settled Affairs at home, and having the Temptation of annoying her Enemy the *Spaniard*, applied her thoughts to Foreign Expeditions, and on that account set out Sir *Francis Drake*, in 1557. with Commission to infest the *Spaniards* in all their distant Plantations. That great Man passed the *Megellanic* Streights, and in the South Sea on the Coast of those rich Provinces of *Chili* and *Peru*, took many and great Prizes from the *Spaniards*, and then stood over to the *East-Indies*, where touching at the *Molucca* Islands and at *Java*, was kindly received, and having sufficiently informed the Natives of the Power and Grandure of the Queen of *England*, came home by the Cape of *Good Hope*, and arrived safe with great Wealth, after an absence of three years, and having quite gone round the Globe. This seems to be the first time that *English* Men had seen the *East-Indies*.

In 1586. *Tho. Candish*, Esq; with like Commission as Sir *Francis Drake*, set out on a second Circumnavigation of the Globe, which he also happily performed in two years and a quarter. He, after he had sufficiently annoyed the *Spaniards* in the South Sea, stood over to the *Ladrone* Islands, thence to the *Philippines* and to *Java*, and so home by the Cape of *Good Hope*.

In 1591. *James Lancaster*, made a successful Voyage for Trade to the *East-Indies*.

Being thus well informed of the Benefit of the *Indian* Trade, and instructed in the way thither, our Nation resolved to put in for a share of it, and therefore having formed a Company, who advanced 72000 *l.* they obtained a Charter of Incorporation from the Queen, bearing Date, Dec. 31. 1600. whereby *George Earl of Cumberland*, Sir *Jelm Hart*, *William Candish*, *James Lancaster*, and others to the number of 216. were constituted a Body Politick, with Power to them and their Successors to Trade to *Africa* and the *East-Indies*, forbidding all others so to do. This Company immediately set out a Fleet of five Ships, who carried a Letter from the Queen to the King of *Achin* on the Island *Sumatra*, where they safely arrived, and delivered the Letter, and were very kindly received. But the *Portuguese* who were settled there, and at that time being Subject to *Spain* included in our Wars with that Nation, interested themselves exceedingly, in opposing us at *Achin*, and accordingly with all their Arts, endeavoured to set the King against us. But as he was a Man of too much Virtue to be led by them, and withal, the Fame of our glorious Victory over the *Spanish Armada* in 88. having reached his Ears, he was so far from being made our Enemy, that he became a very hearty Friend, inasmuch, that he not only entered into a Capitulation of very favourable Terms for our Trade there, but also was so kind to lend us his Assistance, in disappointing the *Portuguese* in all their Plots and Designs against us. Here they took in some Pepper, and passed on to *Bentam* in *Java*, where they settled a good Correspondence



correspondence and Factory: Took a rich Portuguese Ship in the Straights of *Molucca*, and having settled a Factory at *Achen*, returned Home with a very good Cargo. From this time Ships were sent every Year, and endeavours used to settle Trade in all Parts of the *Indies*: But the Portuguese and the Dutch, by Arts with the Natives, and their own Villanies, rendered the Trade very uncertain, and the Ships did not always return well laden. The first Voyages were directed to the Islands, and the chief Commodities they brought back were Spice. But at the same time Agents were employed to obtain a Trade on the Continent: To which purpose Treaties with the *Great-Mogul* were set on foot, wherein were employ'd Mr. *John Mildenhal* first in 1604. and Captain *Harkins* afterwards in 1609. Both these Gentlemen push'd the thing with great Zeal, and frequently brought the King to a good Temper, but by the Insinuations and Tricks of the Portuguese, he was always perverted, and for several Years the Trade thither was very precarious. The Dutch were always in like manner our Enemies at *Golconda*, and on all that Coast, as well as at the Spice-Islands. All which to be sure must have rendred the Trade unprofitable, but that did not discourage the Company, for they continued their Trade with Diligence. And at last (October 1612.) a Treaty was concluded with the *Great-Mogul*, whereby we were allowed free Trade, and to settle Factories in his Dominions. And finally in the Year 1614. Sir *Tho. Rowe* went Ambassador from King *James I.* to the *Great-Mogul*, and got an Establishment of such Privileges, as were necessary for our security in Trade. Our Nation has accordingly ever since, kept Factories in divers Places of that King's Dominions. And in the same Year 1614. our Ships were got as far as *Japan*, where they made a Treaty with the King, and settled a Factory which lasted some time. Soon after *Madraspatan* on the Coast of *Coromandel*, was obtained of the King of *Golconda*, with liberty to build a Noble Fort call'd *St. George*, which is the Seat of our English Sovereignty on that side, and general Factory for all the Company's Affairs beyond *Cape Comorin*, as *Surat* is the chief resort for all Affairs on this side that Cape. Our Nation hath also the Sovereignty of the Island *Bombay* on the Coast of *Cambaja*. The Island *Angediva*, near *Goa*. Fort *St. David's* near *Negapatam*, on the Coast of *Coromandel*, purchased by the Company about 20 Years ago. And Factories at *Ouzley*, *Cassumbezar*, *Patana*, *Deca* and *Ballasore* in *Bengall*; at *Agra*, *Amadabat*, *Cambaya*, *Brodra*, *Baroche*, *Dabul*, *Pertapoli* and *Matfulipatan*, with several others in the Dominions of the *Great-Mogul*; as also in *Syam*, *Cambodia*, *Tonquin*, &c. At *Achin*, *Praimim*, *Ticon*, Fort *Bencouli* and *Jambe* on the Island *Sumatra*. Likewise in the Island *Borneo*, at *Succedmo* and *Bandermaffin*; and in *Celebes* at *Macasser*.

The English might easily have made themselves Masters of many other Places, as the Portuguese and Dutch have done, but that they always chose rather to carry on a peaceable and quiet Commerce with the Inhabitants, than by violating the Laws of Nations, to Enslave and Rob them at the same time both of their Wealth and Liberty; on which account they have been every where kindly entertain'd, and preserv'd an unspotted Reputation.

The States of *Holland*, as soon as that Republick was in a condition to spare her Men and Ships, from the defence of the little Country they had got pos-

session of, had their Eye on the *East-India Trade*, which they wisely foresaw would exceedingly enrich themselves, and weaken their Enemy the *Spaniard*; to which purpose they at first endeavour'd to find out a new and nearer Passage thither by the North, along the Coasts of *Norway*, *Lapland*, *Nova Zembla* and *Tartary*; but their Attempts at several times proving unsuccessful; in the Year 1525. they fitted out Four Ships, under the Command of *Cornelius Hurman*, who having been before employ'd in the Service of the Portuguese, not only learnt the Method of Sailing to those Coasts, but was also well versed in the manner of Trafficking. Thus he set Sail the common way to the *Cape of Good-Hope*, continuing his Course to *Madagascar*, *Sancta-Maria*, and *Antongil*, and came to *Sumatra* on the 12th. of June 1596. Afterward he passed to *Bantam* and *Tuba* in *Java-Major*; and also to the Islands of *Madura* and *Bally*; whence returning homeward after a tedious and difficult Voyage, arrived in *Holland* in the Month of August 1597. without making a Return of Profit answerable to the Expectation of the Merchants. However they were not all discourag'd from the like Adventures, but rather animated by a Prospect of Gain; insomuch that the next Year, 1598. no less than 80 Ships sail'd out of the Ports of *Holland* and *Zealand*, either for the *East* or *West-Indies*, of which Five were sent out by the Authority of the States General, under the Conduct of *Balthazar Mussier*. Divers considerable Voyages were likewise made by *Oliver Noorde*, *George Spitberg*, and *James Van Nee*, besides other of lesser note, undertaken at the Expences of private Persons, or petty Companies of Merchants of *Amsterdam*, *Rotterdam*, *Zealand*, *Brabant*, &c. until the States thought fit to unite all the Adventurers into one Society, to Trade upon a common Stock; freely permitting any Persons to come in at first, but prohibiting all others to Traffick, or repair to any Harbour from the *Cape of Good-Hope* to the Coast of *China* for 21 Years, to commence from the 20th. of March, 1602. Whereupon, within a little while was rais'd a Fund of 600000 Pounds Sterling, which in Six Years time was augmented to near five times as much, besides a yearly Dividend of 30 or 40, and seldom so low as 20 per Cent. Thus the *Hollanders*, having in process of time settled themselves in the most remarkable Places of the *East-Indies*, and ingrossed almost the whole Spice Trade, began to found a Commonwealth in those Parts, govern'd by a *Stadt-Holder*, as potent as the other in the *Netherlands*; although his Office, which was formerly for Life, now continues only during three Years; nevertheless in State and Grandeur he exceeds not only the *Stadt-Holder* of the *United Provinces*, but even most Princes in *Europe*. Indeed, the Strength and Greatness of the *Hollanders* are at present come to so high a pitch, as to dare to contend with the most powerful Monarchs of the *Levant*, being able to put to Sea a Fleet of 40 or 50 Men of War, and at the same time to maintain an Army of 30000 Men on Land. For on the Coast of *Malabar* they possess *Onor*, *Barcelor*, *Mangalor*, *Cananor*, *Cranganor*, *Cochin*, *Coulam*: On the Coast of *Coromandel*; *Tuticorin*, *Negapatam*, *Karkale* and *Palleacate*, which they commonly call *Guelidia*. In the Peninsula, *Malacca*. In the Island of *Ceylon*, *Negumbo*, *Columbo*, *Galla*, *Baticala*, *Tinjuimala*, and *Jessnapatam*. A Fortrefs in the Isle of *Manar*. In *Java*, *Batavia*, anciently known by the Name of *Jaccatra*. Factories in *Borneo*, *Celebes*, and divers other Places, besides



besides the entire Possession of the Islands of *Bima*, *Ambonia* and *Banda*, and several Forts on the *Molucca's*, &c. They likewise keep Factories in almost all the Trading Towns throughout the whole Continent of *Indie*, endeavouring, if it were possible to get in to their Hands the Monopoly of all manner of Commodities, as they have of Spice.

The *Danes* and *French*, in emulation to other *European* Kingdoms, have likewise sought for a Share in the Traffick in the *East-Indies*. The former indeed have establish'd a considerable Trade in the Bay of *Bengal*, and on the Coast of *Pegu*; as also in some little Islands toward the South, but are Masters only of two Places, whereto they repair, both lying on the Coast of *Coromandel*, viz. *Krank-bar* and *Dansburg*. The *French* in the Year 1664. erected a Company for the Commerce of the *East-Indies*, which having fixt their chief Residence and Factory in the Isle of *Madagascar*, on the Coast of *Africa*, should from thence Traffick into *Persia*, *India*, *China*, *Japan*, &c. But they have not been able to carry on their Design with the expected Success, although they still continue earnestly to prosecute it, and have lately got some Interest in the Court of the King of *Siam*.

Thus much in general of the *East-Indies*.

*Ptolemy*, *Strabo*, and the other ancient Geographers, divided *India* into Two Parts only, that is, with respect to the River *Ganges*; the Western being stiled *Intra*, and the Eastern *Extra Gangem*. But in regard that *Indostan* or the Empire of the *Great-Mogul*, lies on both sides that River, and is all subject to one Prince, 'twill be more proper to reckon that as one Part. And the Two *Peninsule* or large Promontories, that launch out into the *Indian Ocean*, on each side of the Bay of *Bengall*, we may reckon Two other Parts: So that the Continent of *India* is divided into Three Parts, viz.

I. **INDOSTAN** or the Empire of the *Great-Mogul*.

II. The **PENINSULA** of **INDIA** within, or on the West side the River **GANGES**.

III. The **PENINSULA** of **INDIA** beyond, or on the East side the **GANGES**.

Each of these contains many Kingdoms, as will be seen in the following Survey of the whole.

MOGU-



# MOGULISTAN or INDOSTAN,

## The EMPIRE of the

# GREAT-MOGUL.



**T**HAT Main Land of INDIA, which now composes the Empire of the Great Mogul, had formerly the name of INDOSTAN or HINDOSTAN, i. e. The Country of the Hindows, which was the general Appellation of the Gentile Inhabitants, who were the Original Possessors of it. But the present Race of Monarchs who have for 300 Years last past, had Dominion here, being of the Tartar Extract,

the Indians have given them the name of Moguls, whether from the whiteness of their Skin, in comparison of the Tawney Indians, or from the Nation of Mongul Tartars, I cannot Determine, for each Opinion has its followers. From this Name, the whole Country bears the name of Mogulistan.

The Bounds of it are, Tartary on the North; the Peninsula of India within Ganges, and the Sea called the Bay of Bengal on the South; India extra Gangem,



*Gengem*, or the Kingdoms of *Pegu* and *Ava*, and *Thibet* on the East; and *Persia* on the West; extending from the 20th. to the 40th. Deg. of North Latitude, and from the 82d. to the 115th. Deg. of Longitude. The Form of the Country is almost Square, and contains 1500 Miles from East to West, and 1200 from North to South.

In respect to the Heavens, it is seated under the Third, Fourth, Fifth and part of the Sixth Climates, whereby the longest Day in the North part is 14 H. 43 m. and in the South part 13 H. 16 m. thus the South Part lies within the Torrid-Zone, and the other Parts are generally excessive Hot. But in the hottest Part of the Year, the rainy Monsoons refresh the Earth and cool the Air, to the very great relief of the Inhabitants. For as at Sea in the Parts lying between the Tropicks, the Winds are periodical, and blow constantly from the same Quarter at the same times of the Year, so here at Land, the Rains return constantly at *July*, the reason of those periodical Winds, called Monsoons or Trade Winds, has been accounted for in our Introduction, by that very Judicious Philosopher Mr. *Edmund Halley*. The reason of the Periodical Rains, was attempted by Mr. *Bernier* from his own observation on the spot; who gives us this Judgment on it; namely, The excessive Heat of the Sun at that Season of the Year when these Rains happen, has these two effects, First, It exhales vast quantity of Vapour from the neighbouring Seas, which hangs condensed in thick Clouds in the middle Region of cooler Air. And Secondly, The same Heat exhales all moisture out of the Earth, and exceedingly Rarefies the Air over it: Whence it most naturally comes to pass, that the Clouds from the Sea, being driven by the Wind over the Earth, are easily received into this finer less resisting Air; and withal the Heat of the Earth at that time attracting the Clouds do necessarily discharge themselves and fall in Rain. Which is confirmed by the Observation, that the sooner the Heat begins, the sooner do the Rains come, and also that the Rains begin not till some Days of Cloudy Weather be passed, whence we may infer, that the Spaces more forward that are equally rarified, must be first filled with Clouds, which most probably submit to the force of the Wind, and fly on till they are stopped by more dense Air, or perhaps opposite Winds. But to proceed,

These Rains put the Earth into so due a temper, that the Plants spring up with incredible speed, and that in most various sorts, and delicious kinds. Rice being the Corn of most general use, is chiefly cultivated, but they want not Wheat, which grows plumper and finer here (says Sir *Iba. Row*) than in *Europe*. Grass is cut and used green, not made into Hay. Their Gardens are planted with delicious Fruits, such as Dates, Figs, *Prunello's*, *Pomegranates*, *Plantains*, *Tamarinds*, *Anana's*, *Brindoins*, *Jambo's*, *Cayans*, *Myrobolans*, and others, unknown in *Europe*, as well as *Mango's*, *Almonds*, *Coco's*, *Oranges* and *Lemons* (but of these last not very good) the *Areck* and *Betele-Trees*; and the eatible Roots, as *Carrots*, *Potato's*, *Onions*, *Garlick* and *Ginger*. In short, the Mould is fat and rich, and produces all the necessary and beautiful Plants and Flowers that can be expected in the Climate. But it must be noted, that the Land is in many Parts incumbered with Mountains, which being of sandy Soil are Steril; yet these have their Excellencies in yielding Stones of Value, as *Jasper*, *Agat*, *Gra-*

*nates*, *Chrysolites*, *Amerhysts*, *Rubies*, and some *Diamonds*.

The Roads are frequently shaded with large tall Trees, whereof many grow here, whose Wood is of much more solid Contexture than any in *Europe*; and one Tree especially remarkable, I mean that commonly called the *Bannean-Tree*, which spreads it self so, as to make in a manner the whole Forest it self; for the young Boughs bend downward till they touch the Earth, and there take fresh Root, and become a new Tree joined to its Mother, which goes on in new Plantations to innumerable Trees, all conjunct and proceeding from one Mother Root. From the Palm and from the *Toddy-tree*, the People by wounding the Trunk extract a Juice, which issues plentifully, and is a delicious Drink called *Tary* and *Nery*, which the Women and common People drink instead of Wine, whereof none grows in *India*. They have the Art of Distillation, and extract a rich Spirit from Rice called *Arack*, which is drank by the better sort.

Cattel and wild Beasts are plentiful, as Sheep who have great fat Tails; Oxen with a great Bunch on the Back; Buffalo's whose skin is smooth without Hair, their Flesh is not very good, but their Milk is pleasant; Goats and Deer very common, being not enclosed in Parks as here; Elks and Antelopes very strong and fierce; Apes and Baboons very numerous. For Service here are Asses, Mules, *Dromedaries*, which are very swift of Foot, Camels and Oxen, which are generally used for drawing Coaches, Wagons, Plow, &c. they are mettlesome and active, and will Trot at a good round rate. Horses are not Natives of this Land, but are brought from *Persia* and *Arabia*, and therefore highly prized, and very kindly used, they are of curious make and Colour, high Mettled, and used only in War and Pleasure; for want of Oats and Barley, they feed them with a Corn called *Dona* somewhat like Tares, which they boil and mix with Butter and Sugar, [the Translator of *Gimelli* makes a merry Remark on this, but many other Travellers speaking the same thing, I believe that Remark was needless.] They have plenty of Elephants, which grow 30 Years and live to 100, in full Stature are 15 Foot high, yet as easily govern'd as a Horse, except at Rutting time, at which time they break out into violent roving. The Rhinoceros is another Creature Native of this Land, he grows to the Stature of the largest sized Ox, and is covered with a Hide as tough as Horn, which lies in Folds like Armour upon his Back, and has in his Nose a sharp strong Horn growing upright. The Forests are fill'd with Lions, Tygers, Wolves, Jackalls, and other wild Beasts; as also Serpents of wonderful Magnitude; and the Houses are infested with Lizards, Scorpions, Moschires, &c.

They have Fowl both tame and wild of very many kinds, and their Rivers yield excellent Fish.

For Sale, the Land yields Cotton which is the prime and Staple Commodity, Indigo, Sugar, Opium, *Asla-Fetida*, *Aloes*, *Borax*, *Salt-petre*, *Lacque*, and other Gums; *Cassia*, *Camphor*, *Sandal-wood*, *Precious-stones*; *Bezoar-stone* found in the Stomach of a Goat; the *Serpentine-stone* found in the Head of a Serpent; *Civet*, *Ginger*, and other Drugs. All which together with the Manufactures, as *Calico's* and *Muslings* of all the finest Sorts and Strains, wrought Silks of many kinds; Cabinets, *Scrivoires*, and other curious Wood Works very finely lacquer'd, and many other pretty Toys, are Commodities that please



please the World so well, *Europe* especially of late Years, that not only all sorts of useful Commodities are brought to exchange for 'em, but even so much Silver is paid to ballance the Trade; that some compute, that the greatest Part of the Wealth of the whole World centers in *India*.

The PEOPLE of *Indoſtan* are generally handsome and well made, none being crooked or deform'd. The *Indians* are of an Olive, or dark Tawney Complexion, the *Moguls* more fair. They are of strong and quick Apprehension, ready Wit and good Fancy, and Ingenious in all manner of fine Manufactory. They are Civil to Strangers, profoundly Submissive to their Governors; Timorous and Cowardly to their Enemies, and mean Spirited in their common Actions; the *Rajapores*, *Potans* and *Rashootes* excepted, who are Courageous, and esteemed good Soldiers. In RELIGION, the *Mogul's* are *Mahometans*, and the Natural *Indians* are *Pagans*. These last generally believe a *Metempsychosis* or Transmigration of Souls, whence they are extremely scrupulous of killing any living Creature, lest they disturb the Soul of their Ancestor. They are divided into many TRIBES, who constantly Herd together and Marry in their own Clans; there are 84 Tribes of them: The chief whereof are, the *Brachmans* or *Bramines*, which are the Priests; the *Rajapores*, who are of Princely extract, and profess Arms; the *Banians* who are Merchants; the *Rasbotes* or *Curterys*, who profess Arms, but live upon Rapine, and submit not to the Government, these pretend to be the Descendants of *Raja's*; the rest being generally Mechanics, are comprehended under the compellation of *Soods* or *Wises*. All these constantly pursue the Profession and Trade of their Family, and marry Daughters of such; so that a Carpenter's Son must be a Carpenter, and marry a Carpenter's Daughter, and a Smith's Son a Smith, and so on. The *Mahometans* are less stiff here than in *Turkey*, and are more civil to *Christians*; they marry four Wives, but the *Indians* take but one at a time; however, those too make it up in Concubines, which they generally keep. The Wife of the *Indians* as we have elsewhere said, must be burnt with her Husband, unless the Governor forbids it. These two People are known by *Europeans*, under these two general Denominations. MOORS and GENTILES, the former being the *Mahometans*, and the latter the *Pagans*.

The BUILDINGS of the Common-People are generally low and poor, but the Publick ones in some of the chief Cities are very Pompous. The Materials are Brick, Timber and Stone, and sometimes Marble. In Towns of Trade they have Sheds or Bulks before the Houses, which serve for Shops to set out Goods for Sale; and they every where plant Trees about their Houses, which makes the Towns seem at a distance like Forests. The Houses are not above two Story, and have flat Roofterraces'd for convenience of receiving the Evening Air upon them. The inside Furniture is but ordinary, a Mat or Carpet on the Floor, and the Walls painted, with Cushions or Pillows round about to sit cross'd legg'd upon is all. The better sort have them in richer manner, and have Court-yards wherein they have Tanks or Ponds of Water, which are fed from some distant Well or Stream, and shaded with Trees: this with their *Sarrajs* or Entertaining-room, and their Gardens they Pride themselves in, and therefore make as fine as they can. In their Visits they are always presented with *Betele*, which we have elsewhere told you, is chaw'd with Pleasure by all *Indians*.

The Diversions are Hunting and Fowling, of both which here are much Game. They TRAVEL in ill built Coaches drawn by Oxen; and the better sort in *Palanquins*, which are kind of Couches carried: upon Men's Shoulders. The Wagons or Carts for carrying Goods, are drawn by eight or ten Oxen, which being ill built, are commonly attended by *Pions* a sort of Soldiers, who at a small Pay go along with Caravans to hold up the Wagon from overturning in bad Way. In Travelling you must carry Provisions, for there are no Inns upon the Road.

Their Weapons in War are Bow and Arrow, Sword, Buckler, Lance, and sometimes Fire-Arms, but these last they care not for, as too violent for their Cowardly Natures. A Train of Artillery attend the Army, whereof some are very large Pieces.

The *Indian* LANGUAGE has an Affinity with the *Persian* and *Arabick*, but is reckon'd smoother and easier pronounced, and is also very comprehensive. They have a peculiar Alphabet, and write from Left to Right. The *Persian* Language is used at Court; and the Ecclesiasticks use the *Arabick*. They have *Aristotle* and *Avicen* in *Arabick*, but study them little; being in general but indifferent Scholars. Astrology is in great Repute with them; and at Legerdemain and strange Feats of Activity, they are most wonderful Artists. The Tricks play'd by these People, seem to be beyond Humane Power. They take very little Physick, and rather choose to cure Diseases by a strict Regimen. They have no Clocks or Sundials, but measure the Time by Water dropt out of one Vessel into another, which a Man attends, and strikes upon a Brass Pan when 'tis empty. The Day is divided into four Parts, and the Night into four Parts.

The common MONEY of *Mogulistan*, is the *Mamood* value 1s. the *Roupie* which is of the value of about 2s. 4d. *Sterl.* gross Sums are reckoned by a *Lecke*, which is 100000 *Roupies* and a *Crou*, which is 100 *Leckes*, and *Arch* which is 10 *Crous*. There are Gold *Roupie's*, which are of the value of 13 Silver ones. And *Pagoda's* of Gold, which are the Coins of *Raja's* or petty Kings, and valu'd at 9 or 10s. *Sterl.*

The GOVERNMENT is Absolute, and the King Arbitrary, he gives Lands and takes them away at Pleasure, and declares the Laws as he thinks fit, there being no Statutes but his Commands. The KING appears publickly in his Palace twice a Day, the first time for Administring Justice, and giving Publick Audience to his Subjects; and the second time which is in the Evening, to give particular Audience to his *Omrabs* and Officers, and treat on the important Affairs of State; at both which Appearances, the *Omrabs* are bound to attend. At the first, which is before Noon, the Elephants, fine Horses, the Soldiery, and any Curiosities which the *Omrabs* have to shew, are made to pass before the King.

This Monarch is very great both in Power and Wealth, maintaining an Army of 300000 Horse, and 400000 Foot, besides 3000 Elephants.

His Menial-Servants are 36000, which are paid every Month at three to ten *Roupie's* a Piece. Several Thousands of Beasts and Birds wild and tame, and 300 Elephants for his own Service, which are high fed and richly harnessed, are kept at Court; whereby he is supposed to expend 50000 *Roupies* per diem. And his Annual Revenue is computed by Sir *Thos. Rowe*, at 500 Millions of *Roupies*. But *Thevenot* reckons it at, but 330 Millions of *French* Money; which *Gimelli* corrects, and says he was inform'd,



the Revenue of the Hereditary Countries, besides the Conquests, amounts to 800 Millions of *Rupies*. His Treasury is excessive Rich in Money, Jewels, Vessels of Gold, Amber, Agar, and other Stones, Cloath of Gold, costly Rarities, &c. valued says *Mandelst*, at 1500 Millions of Crowns. The same Author gives an Inventory of *Eckbar's* Treasury, which 'tis true does not amount so much, but he remarks that he was inform'd 'tis now much richer.

The Provinces are govern'd by the *Omrabs*, who hold the same Government but a short time; Sir *The Res* says but one Year, and then return to Court to give an Account of their Conduct, where they are sure to be Punished if they have not acquitted themselves fairly. And under the Governors are two sorts of Judges, Civil and Criminal to Administer Justice to the People.

The King has four Principal Secretaries of State, to superintend under him in the four Branches of Government; viz. 1. The *Bazsci*, who has the care of the Army, and sees that the *Omrabs* keep their Regiments full, and pay the Soldiers duly. 2. *Adelet*, who takes care that Justice be duly Administred by the Judges, and informs the King of the Actions of his Ministers; which by the way the King is very strict in, and keeps Spies upon every Body. 3. The *Divan*, who divides the Land to the *Omrabs* and other Commanders, and sees that they do not oppress the Inhabitants. And 4. *Conselman*, who is the High Treasurer, and lays before the King every Week, an Account of the Income of each Province, the Week's Payments, and the rest in Cash. And in regard that the extent of the Empire is too large to take all in at own view, particular Provinces are appointed for particular Days, as *Agra*, *Debli* and *Labar* on Monday, *Bengal* with *Patna* on Wednesday, *Guzerat* on Thursday, and so every Day except Friday, which being the Sabbath no Business is done. To all which particular Audits, besides the two Publick daily Audiences *Aareng-Zebe* never fail'd to attend.

The NOBILITY enjoy Titles, as *Chan* or Duke, *Nabob* or Lord, *Mirzab* or General, and *Omrab*, which may be english'd Colonel, but seems to have a higher Dignity. But the significant Distinction, is the number of Horse which they have under their Command; the highest (of which there are but four) Command 12000. others 8, 6, 5, 4000 and less, in proportion to the King's Favour down to 20, the lowest of which Commanders are called *Manseddars*. The Troops are paid by the *Omrabs*, who have Lands assigned them to that purpose, which Lands or Fiefs called *Gieghers* are very profitable, some yields a Million and half of *Rupies* per Annum. and the very largest of all yield as much per Month; they are more or less, proportionate to the Troops they Command.

Of these *Omrabs*, there are about 40 in number, who live in great State and Luxury, but can leave nothing to their Family; for at their Death all their Estate goes to the King, whence it often happens, that the Son of such a Man is little better than a Beggar.

The *Rajas* are either 1. The conquer'd Princes, who submitting to the King, have honourable Posts in the Government and attend the Court: Or 2. the petty Kings who pay him Tribute.

The *Rajas* and *Omrabs* keep Guard at the King's Palace in their turns, the former within the Fortrefs, and the latter in the outer Courts. The King's constant Guard are called *Heddies*, and are about 5 or 6000 in number, but he has an out-guard of 40000

Horse. When he Travels 100000 Soldiers attend him, together with a Train of as many more of other sort of Attendants.

His *Scraglio* contains a very great number of Women, 1000 or 1200 as reported, who are richly maintained and Guarded by Eunuchs.

At the Publick Festivals; of the New-Years-Day, and the King's Birth-Day, all the Nobility and Ministers of State make rich Presents to the King. On the Birth-Day the King weigh's himself with great Solemnity, in Scales of Gold adorn'd with Diamonds; Bales of Silk; Gold; or other rich Commodities being put in the opposite Scale: and when 'tis over, He distributes Presents of Artificial Fruit, Flowers, &c. made in Gold, among the Courtiers, and an Alms among the People.

But this mighty Monarchy is not of very ancient Date, for besides the *Hindows* already mention'd, we read in all Accounts of the ancient State of this Country, of the *Potans* a numerous People that possessed *Bengall*, and all the Provinces of the Empire, Eastward of the *Ganges*: and most of the other Provinces had particular Kings till the time of *Eckbar*, who was the Son of *Homayon*, whose Father *Mirzab Babor* descended from one of the Sons of the Great *Tamerlane*, was the first of the Tartar Race which at present sits on this Throne.

The HISTORY whereof in short is thus.

At the Death of *Tamerlane*, which happened soon after the Year 1400, *Tartary* was divided among his Sons, in which Division *Mawad alnabara*; otherwise called *Zagathay*, fell to the Lot of *Pir Mahomed*, Son to the eldest Son of *Tamerlane*, from whom descended *Mirzab Babor*; who being expell'd his own Country by the *Usbegs* his Neighbours, made himself Master of that part of *Indestani* which lay next him, and dying in the Year 1532, left it to his Son *Homayen*. He had Wars with his younger Brother that conspired against him, but was assisted by the Emperor of *Persia*, whose Daughter he married, and Reign'd till 1552, when dying he left his Kingdom to his Son.

*Eckbar*, a Prince of great Valour, Wisdom and Fortune, to whom may more properly be imputed the Foundation of the present Monarchy; for it was he that extended it to the Grandeur we now see it, by the Conquest of *Tatta*, *Cambaya*, *Bengall*, *Chitor*, *Cassmeer*, and many other considerable Kingdoms. He died of a Poison prepar'd for an Enemy, and by mistake taken by himself A. D. 1604, in the 53d. Year of his Reign: and left one Son named *Sba Selim*, who for rebelling against his Father had been imprison'd for some Years; and now at his Death some of the great ones endeavour'd to put him by, and advance his Son *Cusseroo* to the Throne; however, *Sba Selim* obtain'd the Crown, and took upon himself the Name of *Zeban-Guire*, or as it is corruptly written *Jangbeer*: But as he had been an unnatural and ungrateful Rebel to his Father, he was now paid in his kind, and his Reign was full of Disturbances: His eldest Son *Cusseroo* began his Conspiracies with his Father's Reign, and in a little time appear'd at the Head of an Army against him, but was defeated, and imprison'd the rest of his Life. After that his third Son *Curroone*, having had Success in the Conquest of *Decan*, and by that means obtain'd an Esteem in the Army, his Ambition prompted him to set up for himself; accordingly he declar'd War, and fought a long and hazardous Battle with the Emperor's Army, but was at last defeated and forced to



to fly. Soon after a Civil Dissention happen'd on Account of *Nourmabel*, one of the Emperor's Wives, whom he was exceeding fond of, and permitted to govern him and the Empire just as she pleased; which gave great Disgust to the Ministers of State, and made them raise an Army to separate the King from this arbitrary Woman. And in effect they seized both him and her, but at the Emperor's Promise of Amendment released Her, and soon after He made escape; so that the Lords for their safety joined themselves with *Curroone*, by whom *Cusseroo* in Prison had been killed, and *Pervis* the second Brother being dead, *Curroone* was now the eldest of *Jehan-Guire's* Sons. These Misfortunes broke his Heart, and *Jehan-Guire* died in the Year 1627. naming Sultan *Bullochi* the Son of *Cusseroo* for his Successor. But he was opposed, first by the ambitious *Nourmabel*, who pretended to set up the fourth Brother Sultan *Sherjar*, to whom she had married her Daughter. But she was soon defeated by *Bullochi*, and *Sherjar* committed to close Imprisonment, and his Eyes put out: and next by

*Curroone*, who during the absence of *Bullochi* in his Expedition against *Sherjar*, got possession of *Agra*, and caused himself to be proclaimed Emperor by the Name of *Shah-Jehan*; and soon after confirm'd himself on the Throne by the Deaths of *Bullochi*, *Sherjar*, the Sons of *Pervis*, and all the other Princes of the Blood, whom by the Assistance and Contrivance of *Asaph-Chan*, the Instrument of all the Male administration in the late Reign, he caused to be murdered by Villains in the Castle of *Labor*. But as he ascended the Throne by these bloody Steps, he was fain to be very cautious in his Government, and endeavour by mild and gentle treatment, to sweeten the Minds of his Subjects and keep them firm to him. He was kept the more in awe by a counterfeit *Bullochi*, who was cherished and entertain'd by the Emperor of *Persia* as the true one, and ready to be made use of if Occasion offer'd. So that upon the whole, the Reign of *Shah-Jehan* was very peaceable and happy to the People, till the latter end of it; when through the Ambition of his Sons, there were bloody Wars for four or five Years. *Shah-Jehan* had four Sons, *Dara-Shah*, Sultan *Sujah*, *Aureng-Zebe*, and *Morad Backbe*: Who when they grew up, manifested the same Ambition their Father had been guilty of; wherefore to prevent Mischief he separated them, by appointing them Governors of Provinces at distant Parts of the Empire, the eldest only being allow'd to tarry at Court. But in the Year 1655. the Emperor falling into a Sickness, that oblig'd him to deny access to his Person, occasioned a Suspicion that he was dead; which coming to the Princes Ears, they immediately each set forward to oppose their Elder Brother, and push for the Crown: Sultan *Sujah* arriv'd first and was first defeated, but escap'd with Life and Liberty. *Aureng-Zebe* pretend that he had no Ambition, and would content himself with a private Life, therefore joined with his younger Brother *Morad-Backbe*, and with him march'd against *Dara* the eldest, whose Army they defeated, and seized the Castle of *Agra*, and the Person of the Emperor.

But as soon as he had done his Business, *Aureng-Zebe* threw off the Mask and seiz'd *Morad-Backbe*, whom he had only made a property of, that he might the easier defeat *Dara*, who fled to *Guzerat*, and endeavour'd to make Head again, but by the Subtilty of *Aureng-Zebe*, he was defeated in all his Designs, and hunted about from Place to Place, till at last he

fell into the Toil; and was delivered to him; And having expos'd him to view all over *Agra*, he sent him Prisoner to *Gualeor*, where *Morad-Backbe* was also confin'd: and soon after even *Mahmud* the eldest Son of *Aureng-Zebe*, was committed to the same Place. This Young Gentleman was a Person of great Bravery, and had been successful in seizing the Castle of *Agra* for his Father, and in an Action against his Uncle *Sujah*; and as some write, had shew'd his Fidelity, in refusing very advantageous offers his Grandfather made him when he seized the Castle. But whether he had really Ambitious Thoughts afterwards as his Father suggested, or whether the Services he had perform'd, were too great to be paid to a jealous Prince, and created in the Father a Suspicion only, that he might possibly make an ill use, of the Reputation and Interest he had in the Army, as is by others alledged; *Aureng-Zebe* in a Letter which fell into *Mahmud's* hands, express'd himself displeased with his Son's Conduct: Which so startled him, that he fled for Safety to his Uncle *Sujah*, who was retir'd to *Bengal*. To him he offer'd his Service, but upon his Father's Promise of Pardon, and assurance of Favour, he was soon drawn off: And when he return'd committed close Prisoner. Sultan *Sujah* the elder Brother, and only surviving Competitor with *Aureng-Zebe*, was so distressed, that he was forc'd to fly to *Arracan*, where he received not the Entertainment he expected, and endeavouring to revenge himself, lost his Life. And finally, the Son of *Dara* the eldest Brother, being also taken Prisoner; *Aureng-Zebe* demanded the Investiture of the Government, and required the Oaths and Homage of the *Omrabs* as usual. But was oppos'd in it by the *Cadi* or High-Priest, which being a difficulty necessary to be removed, he summon'd a sort of Council of the Doctors of the Law, to whom he propos'd the Legality of his ascending the Throne, and vindicated his own Conduct; alledging his Brothers were, one a Favourer of Infidels, another a Drunkard, and another a Heretick, and his Father by Age and Infirmities incapable of Governing: But that himself had been always a strict Observer of the Law, and had intended to have turn'd Hermit, if the Ambition of his Brothers had not rais'd such Fends in the Kingdom, as oblig'd him to quit his Retirement, and assist in restoring the Publick Peace. These serv'd for Reasons, as his Power was the motive, to the *Casuits* to agree that he deserved the Crown, and ought now to have it altho' his Father were yet alive. Which Judgment giving a plausible pretext to the removal of the obstinate *Cadi*, the other who was advanc'd to his Place, made no opposition, and he was accordingly inaugurated on the 20th of October 1660. at *Delly*, where on the Throne of *Tamerlane*, the richest in the World, he received the Homage of the *Rajahs*, *Omrabs*, and Ministers of State, according to the Custom of the Country. As he had always profess'd a great deal of Sanctity, he did not forgo it when he was on the Throne, but as a sort of expiation of his Crimes, impos'd upon himself a great Abstinence and strictness of Life, his Food being chiefly Rice, Herbs and Pulse. His Hours were constantly employ'd in the Offices of Government or Religion, and but a very few of them in Sleep.

This great Prince *Aureng-Zebe*, having reigned near 47 Years after his Inauguration, or in the 51st Year of his Reign, as the common Accounts run, who I suppose reckon from his first assuming the Government



verment, departed this Life on the 2d. March 1707. New Stile, or as other Accounts say in the middle of February, perhaps reckoning by Old Stile, in the 91st. Year of his Age. He was a Prince of great Sagacity, Courage, and Industry. He was a perfect Master of the Art of Government, and with so great Skill exercised his Power, that without the cruel Punishments so usual in former Reigns, he was able to keep in awe the most powerful *Rejas*, *Sevagy* excepted. He was almost continually at Wars, in the Conquest of the Southern Kingdoms, adjoining to those he inherited, and by his Arms made the Wealthy King of *Golconda*, notwithstanding his great Armies and strong Fortifications, his Prisoner. *Decan*, *Visapor* and *Canara*, were less able to resist his Force, as being govern'd by Princes less powerful than he of *Golconda*; and therefore where *Sevagy* with his *Rashtres* in inaccessible Mountains did not oppose, he subjected all before him. This continual War kept him almost continually in the Field, especially in his latter days; wherein he resided so much in the Camp, that he was seldom seen at *Agra*. His Application in the Offices of Government was exceeding great, which is testified by *Gimelli*, when he assures us that He not only daily appeared twice in Publick; that is, in the Morning to Administer Justice to all Clients, and in the Afternoon to give Audience and Orders to the *Omrabs*, but also at other Hours, attended the daily Audits of his Secretaries and Treasurers. He affected an Air of Sanctity, and by his frequent Devotion, was thought worthy of Saintship; he appeared indulgent to his Ministers of State, whence the usual Cruelties were wholly laid aside, but as he was Politick and kept his Spies every where, 'twas supposed that Indulgence was only for the sake of endearing to them his Government, for when he pleased he pull'd down the biggest Officer: Which yet he never chose to do in that Arbitrary manner his Ancestors used, but contriv'd to let it be seen to be the Punishment of the Crimes, which the Emperors Indulgence too much led the Statesmen into. In short, were it not for the Cruelties he committed in ascending the Throne, he might pass for a Wise and Virtuous Prince; and even the Villany of those will be much alleviated, if we consider the cruel Custom of that Court, where the Brother that is on the Throne, never fails to put to Death, Blind, or Imprison all his Father's other Children; and therefore the natural Principal of Self-defence, puts every Brother upon pushing for the Throne.

In his Person (as we are told by *Gimelli*, who saw him in the Year 1695.) he was low of Stature, slender and stooping with Age, his Complexion Olive Col'our, his Nose large, his Beard round and white, he leaned on a Staff, but his Sight was so good, that he endorsed the answers to Petitions, with his own Hand without using Spectacles; and appear'd in his dispatch of Publick Business, with a chearful and smiling Countenance.

He left Four Sons, namely, 1. *Scia-Alam* or *Shaw-Alam*, as others write it. 2. *Azam-Scia* or *Azzum-Shan*. 3. *Eckbar*. 4. *Cawne-Bux*. Of the Three elder we have this Account from *Gimelli*, viz. *Scia-Alam* had entertain'd thoughts of destroying his Father, and proceeded so far, as to cause a Pit to be dug near the King's Tent, which slightly covered over, would have let him in as he pass'd on: but it was discover'd, and the impious Son, altho' then near 60 Years of Age, was committed to a dark Prison;

he lay there six Years, and perhaps had not been permitted to have lived so long, but that he was the Darling of the Soldiery, of whom many Thousand publickly declared themselves so much his Friend that they refused the Emperor's Pay during his Imprisonment, and contented themselves with the meagre Stipends, the Prince was able to afford them; he was in 1695. (then just released from his Imprisonment) 65 Years of Age, tall and full Bodied, with a thick long Beard which began to be grey, and appeared very respectful to his Father. *Azam-Scia*, who was at that time 55 Years old, had proceeded so far against his Father, that he joined with the King of *Visapor* in his Wars against him. *Akbar* of more ambitious Temper than the rest, being sent in the Year 1680. with an Army of 30000 Men to make War on *Raja-Lisenc*, who Borders on the Kingdom of *Bando*; instead of subduing him, suffered himself to be brought over to his Party, and prompted by his Ambition, joined his Army to the *Raja's*, and marched against his Father. The Army thus joined, amounted to 70000 Horse, and proportionable number of Foot, which being superior to the Army the Emperor had then with him, the old Man applied himself to this Stratagem for Relief. The *Raja* and all his Subjects were *Gentiles*, who mortally hate the *Mahometans*, as those do them: The King therefore wrote a Letter to his Son, thanking him and commending his Conduct, for drawing the Infidels according to agreement to that Place to be all cut off, and appointed him to advance to Morrow to put it in Execution; this Letter he sent by a trusty Eunuch, ordering the matter so that it should be intercepted, which fell out accordingly, and bred such a Jealousie in the *Raja*, that all *Akbars* Oaths would not convince him it was a Trick of his Father's. So that the King had time to receive his Reinforcements; and setting upon the Enemy, Defeated them. *Akbar* shifted about from Place to Place, but could not be safe from his Father's Revenge, and therefore retired to *Persia*, where he was entertained at Court, and lived there in 1695. being then about 45 Years of Age; and the Accounts that bring us advice of *Aureng-Zebe's* Death, tell us he is still there. The youngest Son is by *Gimelli* nam'd *Sikander*, of 30 Years of Age, infected like the rest with Ambition, but whether *Sikander* be Dead and another sprung up in his Place, or whether the late Accounts mistake his Name I cannot determine; for those Accounts tell us, that the youngest Son is named *Cawne-Bux*, and being his Father's Darling, *Aureng-Zebe* in his Life time, put him in Possession of all the Countries himself had conquer'd, namely *Golconda*, *Visapor* and *Canara*, which all lie contiguous on the South of *Mogulistan*.

Upon the Emperor's Death, the Second Brother *Azam-Scia* took upon himself the Title of King, but his elder Brother *Scia-Alam* sent an Army against him, and gave him Battle near *Agra*, wherein *Azam-Scia* and his two Sons were Slain, and his Army Defeated; there fell on both sides 80 *Omrabs*, and above 100 Thousand Men. But *Cawne-Bux* the youngest Son, being as we have said in Possession of *Golconda*, &c. *Scia-Alam* could not but look on him as a Competitor for the Empire, especially since he was joyned by one of the most powerful *Omrabs*, as also by *Raja Ramrao* the Successor of *Sevagy*, and therefore not thinking himself safe in the Throne, He was in September 1707. (when these Letters came away,) marching with a formidable Army against them. A



A TABLE of the Provinces of *MOGULISTAN*, with the Chief Cities and Remarkable Places in each ; in Order as they stand in the following Description.

AGRA.	{ Agra, Capital. Fertipore, Samonger, Doulpore, Byana, Scanderbad, Itay.	GUZURAT.	{ Suratt, Cambaya, Amadabat, Baroch, Brodra, Goga, Pate, Rageapore, Mangerol, Jaquetta, Dio Id.
DELLY.	Delly.	or CAMBAIA.	
JENUPAR.	{ Fenupar, Syrina, Tanassery.	Jurisdiction of BASAİM.	{ Basaim, Bombaya Id. Canorin Id. Caranio Id. Elephantino Id.
PENGAB or LAHOR.	{ Labor, Fertypore, or Fertiyabad, Temnery, Emenbade.	CHITOR.	{ Chitor, Chicipore, Bilmal, Rudre, Rudrepore.
CASSIMER E.	{ Cassimere, Syrenaker, Achiavel, Sandbrary.	MALVAY.	{ Ugen or Ougel, Rantipore, Calleada, Mando, Syranga, Nader.
ATTOCK.	{ Attock, Candabara, Puckow, &c.	Raja RANAS.	{ Gurchito, Candera.
CABUL.	{ Cabul, Ghidai, &c.	BANDO.	{ Adsmere, Goday, Felour.
MULTAN.	{ Multan, Alican, Seerpore.	GUALEOR.	Gualeor.
CANDAHARA.	Candahara.	NARVAR.	{ Gehud, Ouden.
HAIKAN.	{ Chazkan, Uche.	SAMBAL.	{ Sambal, Sanfaran.
BUCKOR.	{ Buckor, Suckor, Rawree.	BACAR	Bicanor.
HENDOWNS.	{ Hendown, Mearte.	JAMBA.	Jamba.
JESSELMERE.	{ Jesselmere, Ammer, Radimpore.	NAUGRACUT.	{ Naugracut, Callamacha.
SORET.	{ Fanagar, Pacho.	BANKISH.	Beishur.
TATTA or SINDA	{ Tatta, Sindi, Lourebander, Diul.	SIBA.	Hardware.
		KAKARES.	{ Dunkaleu, Purbola.
		GOR.	Gor.
		KANDUANA.	Karakantsaka.



PITAN.	Pitani.
PATNA.	Parna.
UDESSA.	{ Fekemet, Nebel.
JESSUAL.	{ Rajapore, Suigee or Fohnabad, Brinkelerte, Maffee,
MEVAT.	{ Hagipore, Navagur.
BENGAL divided into four Govern- ments.	{ 1. Bengel Proper, or Ouleffer, or Fagenet. 2. Patana. 3. Elabaf. or Helicbafi. 4. Prarop.
The chief Cities of the whole	
Helicbafi or Preja, Bannares, Safferen, Ras, Soumelpore, Perrana, Gowra, Malde, Arsepre, Pipeiy,	Cassumbazer, Rjemabol, Dacca, Satigan, Chatigan or Porte-ma- jore. Huzuey or Ouguey, Ballasore, Baugia, Angelim.
ORIXA.	{ Orixo, Ramana, Carapara, Municaparam, Palbor.
BERAR.	Schapor.
CHANDIS or BRAMPORE.	{ Brampore, Haffera, Taulmere, Mondoue, Canow, &c.
BALLAGATE.	{ Aurengeabad, Dolcabat.
TELENGA.	Beder.
BALANGA.	Moular.

AGRA, which some call *Indesten* by way of Excellence, as being the principal Kingdom of the Empire, is seated between the 27th and the 30th Deg. of Latitude, and between the 97th and 101 Deg. of Longitude; bounded on the North by *Delly*; on the South by *Guelcor* and *Malwey*; on the East by *Sambal* and *Nertor*; and on the West by *Bendo*: It is watered by the large River *Semena*, which runs cross the Kingdom, receiving in its way the *Tchembel*, a River (though much smaller than that) reckoned as large as the *Tames* at *London*. These two Streams water the Land, and make the Soil Fertile in Oranges, Lemmons, and many other Fruits; great plenty of Rice, and especially Cotton and Indigo.

AGRA, the Metropolis of the Kingdom and of the whole Empire, seated on the River *Semena*, about 60 Miles above its Confluence with the *Tchembel*, in the 29th Deg. of Lat. is now reckoned the largest and most populous City in *India*, being nine Miles in Length, built in form of a Half-Moon, along the Banks of the River: Authors speak of its Antiquity, and make it founded by *Bacchus*, and called *Dyonisia*, afterwards *Negara*; or, as others, *Cyrus* built it, and gave it the Name of *Agradarus*; but according to *Hackuyt*, the Name of *Agra* was given it by the *Tartars*, and the Structure much more Modern: at least thus much is certain, that it was but a small inconsiderable place before the Year 1566. when the Emperor *Eckbar* chose it for his place of Residence, called it *Eckbar-abar*, and built a Palace of Stone, so very noble, that *Father Tosi* thinks it deserves to be ranked with the Wonders of the World; it is four Miles in Compass, and contains within it the Courts of Judicature, &c. it is surrounded with a Wall of Stone and a Ditch, over which are two Draw-bridges at the two Gates. We have not room to describe the Magnificence of this Palace, but must refer the Reader to *Heibert*, *Tavernier* and *Bernier*, for more particular Accounts of it; the Nobility have stately Houses, contiguous to the Palace, of Brick, or Stone whereof there are large Quarries of a very beautiful sort, not far from *Agra*: The Caravanseray's, which are 60 in number, are very large, and nobly Built, some of them have six large Courts, with their Portico's, that give entry to very commodious Apartments for Strangers, 800 publick Baths are in this City, and a great Number of Mosques, which are Sanctuaries. The City is not walled, and only moated round, it is a Place of great Traffick, being resorted to by Merchants from *China*, *Persia*, all parts of *India*, and by the *English* and *Dutch*: Our Nation were used to maintain a Factory there, but the long distance from *Surat* (being above 600 Miles) and the Hazards and Difficulties they underwent in passing through the Countries of many *Rajas* and *Rasbootes* has made them withdraw that, though they still maintain a Trade thither. Over against *Agra* on the other side the River stands *Secandra*, a stately Town, or rather Suburbs to the City, adorned with many fine Buildings, curious Gardens, and especially the Magnificent Tombs of *Eckbar*, and the Queen of a succeeding Emperor. *Gehan-guire* caused to be built a stately Tomb in Honour to his Father *Eckbar*, which surpasses in Magnificence all those of the Grand Seigniors. But even that is much surpassed by the Tomb that *Shah-Gehan* built for his Wife *Taje-Mahal*, whereof *Berneir* has given us a particular Description, but 'tis too large to insert here, and therefore I shall only Transcribe *Tavernier's* general account of it, viz. The King sent for all the able Architects of *India*, settled Salaries upon them, and ordered them to make the finest Mausoleum in the World, which they performed to his Satisfaction. The stately Garden into which all the parts of the Mausoleum are distributed, the great Pavilions with their Fronts, the beautiful Porches, the lofty Dome that covers the Tomb, the right disposition of it's Pillars, the Arches which support a great many Galleries, Piazza's and Terrasses, shew the *Indians* are not unskilful in Architecture. And though the Orders be different from the Ancient *Grecian*, it is not without Symetry, a Noble Beauty, and apparent Magnificence.



Not far from *Agra* stands *Fettipore*, which the same *Eckbar* founded, and built in it many stately Structures, intending to have made it outvie all others, but the Water proved unwholsom, and forced him to leave it. *Samonger*, a Village on the South of *Agra*, is famous for the Battle between *Dara* and *Aureng-Zebe*. *Doulbore*, on the *Tchembel*, is a Place of incredible Strength. *Byma*, formerly a large and fair City, is now ruined, but still gives Name to a Country of 50 Miles Circumference. *Scanderbad*, not far from it, is supposed to have been founded by *Alexander*. *Itay*, seated on the *Semena*, 100 Miles East from *Agra*, was formerly the Seat of the *Potan* Kings, but now in a ruined state, except the Castle which stands on a high precipitous Mountain, and is fortified with a double Wall.

On the North-West of *Agra*, lies the Province of *DELLY*, denominated from its chief City, which standing in a purer Air, tempted the Emperor *Shah-Jehan*, Father to *Aureng-Zebe*, to build a stately Palace and new City there, which from him is denominated *Jehanabad*, i. e. the City of *Jehan*, seated on the River *Semena*, about 120 Miles above *Agra*; the Road all that way being shaded with Trees, planted by *Jehan Guire*, and makes a Walk of 150 Leagues in length, (being continued as far as *Lahor*) and is one of the Places where the Great *Mogul* resides. The Palace, which *Bernier* calls the Fortrefs, is about two Miles in Compass, being a Semicircle derived from the River, with a fair Plain before it. At the Entry stand two very large Statues of Elephants, with two famous *Raja's* upon them, and forward on, is a very large Street, with a noble Canal in the middle, and beyond that the large Courts, wherein the Elephants, fine Horses, Soldiery, and other curiosities pass before the King every Day, and where the *Raja's* keep guard. Next the many Offices of Ministers of State, and Courts of Judicature, many Portico's, Arches, stately Halls, but especially the *Amka* or great Hall of Audience, wherein the King appears at Solemn times, seated on his excessive rich Throne, commonly called *Tamerlans*, but was indeed made by *Shah-Jehan*; it stands upon six pillars of Massy Gold, set with Rubies, Emeraulds and Diamonds, the Canopy is set with Diamonds, and surrounded with a Fringe of Pearl, and over it two large Peacocks of enamelled Gold, covered with Diamonds, Pearls or other Stones, whose Tails are set with precious Stones of the respective colours according to Nature, and make a most charming sight; but with what Authority *Gordon* says, a Pearl as big as a Pear hangs at the Breast, I know not; *Bernier* who saw it, mentioning no such thing. This Throne, 'tis said, cost four Gouroures of Roupies, which is near five Millions Sterling. From the two Gates of the Palace, lye two very large well built Streets, and four others lead to the Great Mosque, which is a stately Fabrick, and is resorted to by the King himself every Friday. These Streets are mostly furnished with Arched Walks before the Houses, which, as at *Agra*, serve for Shops. The Grand Caravanferay built by the Daughter of *Shah-Jehan*, is a Magnificent Structure, 'tis a very large Square, surrounded with Arches, which lead to convenient Lodgings, and have over them open Galleries, and other fairer Chambers, for the use of Strangers. The new City is about eight Miles in Compass, and surrounded with Brick-Walls; to which may be added a large Suburb, and the old *Delly* on the other side the River,

but joyned by a Bridge; and then the Place will be found four Miles long. The Country about it is pleasant and fruitful, and the Air more cool and wholsome than that of *Agra*, which being seated in a sandy Soil is scorching hot. The old City was formerly a Magnificent one, where the old *Potan* Kings used to be inaugurated; it had 50 Gates and nine Castles, but is now ruined. There is another *Delly*, where lies interred in a most magnificent Monument the Father of *Eckbar*. The Government of this Province, is reckoned the first in the Empire.

From *Delly*, passing on Northward, you enter the Province of *JENUPAR* or *JENAPAR*, where are the Pits of *Sal Ammoniac*. The chief City *Jenupar*, stands in the 33 Deg. of Latitude, at the Confluence of two small Rivers which compose the *Damiadee*, that flows through this Country and that of the *Hindowns*, and falls into the *Indus*; 'tis a handiome Town, but not very eminent. *Syrind*, on the same River, more to the West, famous for the fine Garden, Summer-House, and Seraglio of the *Moguls*. *Tanasseri*, in the South-part, is noted for the Baths, esteemed Holy and much resorted to. In the Mountains which part this Province from *Delly*, the River *Semena*, otherwise called *Gemene* hath its Source, which after a Course of 400 Miles falls into the *Ganges* at *Holobass*.

The Kingdom of *BENGAB*, otherwise called *LAHOR*, is seated more North, between *Jenupar* on the South; *Cassimier* and *Bankish*, on the North; *Jamba* on the East; and *Multan* and *Attock*, on the West. It is a wealthy Province, by reason of the many Manufactures in it, and yields (according to the information *Thevenot* had) 37 Millions *per Annum* to the *Mogul*. The great Walk of Trees derived from *Agra*, reaches to the Capital of this Province, which is 150 Leagues distant, a most Noble Walk of tall large Trees, which cover the Road, and make a continued Arbour. (*Thevenot*.) This is the third Government of the Empire, being often honoured with the Emperor's Presence in his Palace at *Lahor*, once the Metropolis of the Empire, and the Staple of Trade for Indigo, and in those Days a Magnificent and wealthy City; but since these Emperours have extended their Dominions so far Southward, *Agra* and *Delly* are honoured with their Residence, and this City is declined very much: The Streets are regular and well paved, the Houses all of Wood, but more high than is usual in these Parts; the severe Rains had overthrown many Houses when *Bernier* was there, which rendered the Streets irregular, but he tells us there were five or six principal Ones, whereof two or three were above a League long, which shew the former beauty and grandeur of this City, altho' it be now declined. Its Age was short, for from a small Bourg, King *Homayon* who began to Reign, *A. D.* 1532.) made it a City, built the Castle and kept his Court in it. The Castle or Palace is Magnificent and Stately, the Courts large, the Buildings high and uniform, mostly of Brick, adorned with fine carved Works, and the Gardens large, pleasant and filled with excellent Fruit. The River which formerly run by the Town, is now a quarter of a League distant from it, having changed its Bed, as *Berneir* informs us.



*Fetispre* or *Fetysabad*, a pleasant Town, with a Castle, seated on the South of *Labor*. *Temmeri*, to the East of *Labor*, is the Seat of the *Raja* of *Bosson*, who pays Tribute to the Emperor. And *Emenbadz*, on the North of *Labor*: These are the Cities most noted; many others are in this Province that were formerly famous, but they with the whole Province are now declined.

The Kingdom of *CASSIMERE*, lies between the Mountain *Caucasus* (which divides it from *Tartary*); on the North, the Kingdom of *Pergeb* on the South and *Attock* on the West, between the 36 and the 40 Deg. of Lat. and enjoys a clear and healthy Air, as temperate as in *Europe*; and a fruitful well cultivated Soil, abounding with all the necessaries of Life; and so far exceeding all the neighbouring Provinces (where a scorching Heat parches the Ground) that *Cassimere* is stiled the Paradise of *India*. It is surrounded by Mountains, rising by Degrees one above another; the lower covered with Cattel. and all kinds of innocent Games, without Lyons, Tygers, Bears, Serpents or any sort of noxious Creatures; and the higher covered with Snow; which melting, makes those many Rivulets that water the Country, and make it so fruitful, that it looks like a large Garden of Rice, Corn, Saffron, Hemp, Apricocks, Peaches, Apples, Pears, Plums, Vines, &c. all which render the Country so pleasant, that Mr. *Bernier* tells us, he was astonished to see himself of a sudden, out of the stifling Heat of the Torrid Zone, into the temperate Freshness and Fertility of *Europe*; those pleasant Streams uniting their Waters, compose the River *Tchenas*, which runs cross this Province, and falls into the *Sind* at *Attock*. The People also are of fair Complexion and *European* Beauty, Ingenious, Witty and Industrious. The City, which gives name to the Country, is about two Miles long, and a Mile and half broad, seated on a Lake of fresh Water, and a little River issuing from it; over which are two Bridges: The Houses are built of Wood, two or three Stories high, and many of them adorned with pretty Gardens: The City is not walled; but is surrounded with Houses of Pleasure and Gardens; among which the King's is especially delightful, being furnished with curious Fountains, Canals, Bowers, &c. *Syrenaker* is the next considerable City, being three Miles in Circumference, and by some reckoned the Capital of the Kingdom: 'Tis seated in the Southern confines towards *Pengab*. *Aschavel*, notable for an admirable House of Pleasure of the *Mogul's*; and *Sant-Brey* for an Heathenish Temple, and wondrous Spring, which draws Votaries to it, are the other places of chiefest note in this Kingdom. *Sarsen* places the Country of a certain *Raja* named *Tibien* in its Northern part.

On the South-West of *Cassimere*, lies the large Province of *ATTOCK*, between *Cabul* on the North, and *Multan* on the South, inhabited by a peculiar People called *Puttans*, of low Stature, but courageous Temper, not subjected to the *Mogul* before the Year 1590. The City whence the Province is denominated, stands at the Confluence of the two Rivers *Tchenas* and *Sind*, and is one of the best and strongest Garisons in all the Empire, which no Foreigner is permitted to enter without a Pass from the King. The other chief Towns are *Candabar*, said to be a handsome City, and a place of great Trade.

*Puckow*, *Daddos*, *Ducha*, *Langora*, *Vageston*, and *Haf-senabdel*.

On the North of *Attock*, lies the Province of *CABUL*, the Boundary of the *Mogul's* Empire on the North-West, having *Tartary* for its Northern, and *Persia* for its Eastern Bounds. It is a Barren unpleasant Country, but has Mines of Iron, and by means of its convenient Situation, enjoys a good Trade: its chief City *Cabul*, is reported to be as large as *Grand Cairo*, and resorted to by Merchants from *Persia*, *China* and *Tartary*, for buying of Cattel, especially Horses, whereof vast Numbers are yearly sold here by the *Usbeg Tartars*: The City is fortified by two strong Castles, accomodated with many large Inns for the reception of Strangers, and adorned with many Palaces, the Kings having at some times held their Courts here, and it has often been the Appenage of a Prince of the Blood. The other chief Towns are *Ghidai*, *Parna*, *Chereecullow*, and *Gorehand*.

The Province of *MULTAN* is seated between *Attock* on the North, the River *Ravee* on the South, *Pengab* on the East, and *Haican* on the West, extending about 100 Miles either way. The River *Indus* runs through from North to South, and other smaller Streams contribute to water the Land, which is very fertil, in Sugar and Opium, and affords a mighty Traffick to the Inhabitants; who besides make great Quantities of *Callico's*, which they vend to *Agra*, *Tatta* and elsewhere: So that this Country, especially its chief City, is inhabited by wealthy *Baneans*. The chief City *Multan*, is seated on the River *Indus*, in the Latitude of 34 Deg. and is a considerable place, on account of the Manufactures of *Calicoes* and other Linnens, and the number of rich Trading *Baneans* that live in it: but was formerly more populous, being heretofore the Thorowfare between *Persia* and *Labor*; but the Road lies now through *Cabul*. The People of this Town are notable Dancers, if it be worth while to mention such a Qualification, but since that recommends them to the Courts of *Indostan* and *Persia*, we should do them wrong to omit it. A peculiar Sect of *Gentiles* called *Catrys* live here, and have a fine Pagod to which all their Sect resort in Pilgrimage. The City is well fortified, as being a Frontier, now *Candabar* is possessed by the *Persian*. Over against *Multan*, on the West side the *Indus*, stands *Alisan*, and more Southward *Seerpore*.

*CANDAHARA*, is a Province of the *Mogul's* Empire except the chief City *Candabar*, supposed to be the *Catura* of *Ptolomy*, seated in the 23 Deg. Lat. which is subject to the *Persian*; a place of great Strength, and being on the Road out of *India* into *Persia*, is much resorted to. The Country is Mountainous, and so not over fruitful; but here are Rocks of Salt, which yield a Traffick to the Inhabitants, as also Mines found in the Bowels of the Earth. On the North West of *Candahara*, lyes a small Country named *Balch*, whereof an *Usbeg* Prince is Sovereign. It lies among Mountains, and is not considerable.

*HAIKAN*, otherwise called *HANGIKAN*, a Province seated beyond the *Indus*, among the Mountains on the Frontiers of *Persia*, adjoining to *Candabar* on the South, is a sort of rude Country, inhabited by the



the *Bulliches*, a stout and warlike People, who are Idolaters, and by some Authors represented as wild Robbers; but others say they are of a conversible Temper. Two Towns in this Country are mentioned in the Maps, viz. *Chatzan* on the East side the Mountains, and *Uche* on the Frontiers of *Persia*.

The Province of *BUCKOR* lies next to *Haican* on the South, between *Persia* on the West, and the *Hindown* Country on the East. The River *Indus* runs through, and dividing it into two Parts, waters the Land, and renders the Soil Rich and Fertile. The Inhabitants are a strong robust People, like their Neighbours the *Bulliches*, uneasy under the *Mogul's* Yoke, and not kept under, but by a strong Guard perpetually kept upon them in the chief City named *Buckor*, seated on an Island in the River *Indus*, Lat. 30. D. 20. M. Other Towns of Note here, are *Suckor*, somewhat higher on the East side the River, a place considerable for Trade, as also for the Agriculture much practised by its Inhabitants; and *Rawree* on the same River, more Southward, and near the Mouth of the *Damiadee*, a place also of good Trade, sending Barks down the River, which Trade even as far as *Mozambique*, and other parts of *Africa*.

The Country of the *HINDOWNS*, lies between *Haican* and *Multan* on the West, *Pengab* on the North, *Jenupar* on the East, *Jesselmee* and *Bando* on the South, and enjoys a fertile Soil in Corn, Cattel and Cotton; which last is made up into Cloaths, and exported to other Parts. The Inhabitants are a distinct People, and according to their Name, should be the Descendants of the *Aborigine* Inhabitants of all *India*. The chief City *Hendown*, stands upon the River *Damiadee* (which runs through the Province from East to West) in the 31 D. 20 M. Lat. a large and rich Town, enjoying a good Trade in Cotton and Calico. *Mearta*, seated more to the South, is a great City, and a considerable Mart for the same Commodities.

The Province of *JESSELMEE* lies on the South of the *Hindowns*; having *Guzaratte* for its Southern Bounds, *Bando* on the East, and *Buckor* on the West. The North and East parts are Mountainous, but the South is watered by the River *Padder*; and the greatest part of the Country is very Fertile in Corn and Cattel, especially Sheep. Its extent is from the 25th to the 28th Deg. of Lat. *Jesselmee*, otherwise called *Gislemee*, the chief Town is seated on the North part within Land, but is however a place of very good Trade for Indigo, Cotton and woollen Cloaths, and remarkable for its pleasant situation: 'Tis also Fortified with a very good Castle, and 30 pieces of Ordinance. *Ammer*, a Castle in this Country, is notable for being the Birth-place of the great *Eckbar*. *Radimpore*, seated on the River *Padder*, is the next considerable Town in this Province, near its Southern Limits, and all that I find mentioned by Authors.

The small Kingdom of *SORETT*, lies next to *Jesselmee*, having that for its Eastern Bounds, the Mouth of the River *Padder* for its Southern, the River *Indus* on the West, and *Tatta* on the North. 'Tis a rich Fertile Land, furnished with all things necessary for Life; and the chief City *Fanagar* is populous and rich, being commodiously seated

near the River *Padder*, which a little below falls into the Gulph of *Indus*, and renders the Town a place of good Trade. *Pacho*, seated on an Island made by the Branches of the River *Padder*, in falling into the Sea, is reckoned in the Limits of this Kingdom.

Lastly, the Kingdom of *TATTA*, otherwise named *SINDI*, and by the Inhabitants *ABIND*, also sometimes by *Europeans* called the Kingdom of *DIUL*, from the Port Town of that name. This Province is the South-West Limits of the *Mogul's* Empire, having *Persia* on the West, *Buckor* on the North, *Jesselmee* and *Sorett* on the East, and the Gulph of *Indus*, which parts it from *Guzarat*, on the South. The Kingdom is about 200 Miles in length from North to South, and is divided by the River *Indus*; which waters the Land, and renders the Soil very prolifick in Wheat, Rice, Pasture, &c. The Country also being so conveniently seated, is much enriched by Trade, but not so much as it used to be, before *Suratt* had drawn it away. The chief Cities are, *Tatta* the Metropolis, seated on the East side the River *Indus*, in the 27th Deg. Latitude, a large City, and celebrated for Trade. *Sindi*, in the Heart of the Country, the place of the Governours Residence. *Lourebander* on the West side the *Indus*, 40 Leagues below *Tatta*, and near the Mouth of the River, a noted Port. This is a Town of great Trade, and the best Road for Ships in the *Indies*. (*Thevenot*.) but *Diul* or *Diu* (not *Dio*) is by others reckoned the most commodious and most celebrated Haven of this Kingdom, seated on the Mouth of the Bay of *Indus*, and a small River which takes its name from the Town: This place is usually touched at by the Ships sailing from *India* to *Ormus*.

The Kingdom of *GUZARAT*, or as the *Portuguese* term it *CAMBAIA*, lies next on the South-East, bounded by *Chandis* and *Chitor* on the East, the *Indian* Ocean on the West, and part of the South, the Kingdom of *Decan* bounding the other part on the South, and *Sorett* and *Jesselmee* on the North. It extends from the 19th to the 25th Deg. of North Latitude, that is, about 360 Miles from North to South, and from the 83d to the 92d Degree of Longitude, which makes about 450 Miles from East to West: The two Bays of *Cambai* on the East, and *Indus* on the West, make the greatest part of it a kind of Peninsula: and the whole Country lying either on the Sea, or on the Navigable Rivers the *Tapta*, the *Gemini*, and the *Padder*, (all which run through it, and fall into the two Bays above mentioned) render this a Land of great Traffick; the Soil also producing not only all Necessaries for Life, but likewise great plenty of Cotton, Indigo, Opium, Aloes and many other Drugs; Chrystal, Cornelians, Rubies, Sapphires, Agates, Topazes, Jasper, and other precious Stones. The Inhabitants also make fine Cotton-Linens, Silks, Cabinets, &c. The exportation of these Commodities enrich the Inhabitants, and the Customs yield the *Mogul* a vast Revenue, insomuch, that *Guzarat* is looked upon as one of the best Jewels in his Crown. The Tropic of *Cancer* passes through the vertical Point of *Amadabat*, so that the greatest part of this Kingdom lies in the Torrid Zone, and renders the Air so scorching, that if the rainy Season should fail (as it did in the Year 1630.) a Famine would ensue. This



Kingdom was formerly governed by its own Prince ; but since the year 1565. has been a Province of the *Mogul's* Empire, and governed by his Deputy, styled Sultan, who resides in *Amadabat*. But the Western Part is inhabited by *Rasbootes*, who are notorious Robbers and Outlaws.

Before we proceed to the Cities of this Kingdom, we will speak of the Jurisdiction of *Basaim*, which is the Coast on the South of it towards *Decan*, and comprehends the Island of *Bombay*, with two or three other small Islands, and the City of *Basaim*, formerly subject to the King of *Guzarat*, but conquered by the *Portuguese*. The City *Basaim* stands on the Continent, in the Latitude of 19. 30. of good Structure and Strength, being surrounded with high Walls, wherein are eight Bastions, and the Town is Inhabited by about 300 Families of *Portuguese* Gentry and Nobility ; governed by a Captain with twelve Assistants, whose Power extends over a great many neighbouring Villages and Islands.

*BOMBAY*, that was formerly one of them, was surrendered to the *English* in the Year 1663. according to the Articles of Marriage between King *Charles II.* and *Diana Catherine*. This Island is therefore possessed by the *English* Nation, and though a small one, being but 20 Miles round, is considerable, on Account of its commodious Haven and Situation, for suppressing the *Malebar* Pirates, who used to infest these Coasts : It is situate over against *Chaul* in *Decan*, in the Latitude of 18 Deg. The chief Town is about a Mile long, and pretty well Fortified, having been considerably improved since the *English* have had it. The Island was for a few Years governed by the Kings Deputy, but at the Request of the *East-India* Company, it was granted to them under Homage, and has been ever since under the Jurisdiction of the President of *Surat*, who appoints a Deputy Governour here. The Land has Woods of *Coco-Trees*, which with Salt is the chief Product of the Island.

On the North of *Bombay*, lies the Island *CANOREIN*, which *Gimelli* names *Sasserre*, and describes a wonderful *Pagoda* in it, consisting of Galleries, Halls and Chambers, cut out of a vast Rock, which are stupendious Works. There are other of like sort in these Islands. That of *Elephantino* has its Name from an Elephant cut out of the Rock, where are also many strange Caverns. The chief Town is named *Tancor*. This Island is a Fertile Land of about 70 Miles Circumference, and possessed by the *Portuguese*.

The Islands *CARANIA* and *ELEPHANTINO*, possessed also by the *Portuguese*, lie near *Bombay*, and are comprehended among those called the *Salsette* Islands. From whence we shall now pass to the Continent.

The chief Cities of *Guzerat* are *SURAT*, seated at the Mouth of the River *Tapté*, in the Lat. 21. D. Longit. 91. D. a place formerly inconsiderable, but in these last Hundred Years, by means of the *English* and *Dutch* Trade, it is increased to a large, populous and rich City, surrounded with a good Wall, and guarded by an old Castle, said to be founded by *Yamertain* ; the Houses in general are low and mean,

but the *English* Company's House is a noble Building of squared Stone ; as are also those of the *Dutch* and *French* ; and some of the *Baneans* and *Moorish* Merchants have fine high Houses with Terrasses at top. The City is guarded by 1500 Soldiers, besides the Garrison and Governour in the Castle, and 30 or 40 pieces of Ordinance : The Haven has a Barr of Sand cross it, so that the Ships of greater Burthen are fain to lie without, at *Swally-hole* about four Leagues from the Town, near the Village *Suballa*. *Raja Sevagy* entered this City in the Year 1664. burnt and pillaged it, carrying away a mighty Booty ; at which time the *English* President Sir *George Oxendine* so well defended himself and the Merchants, that not only the Company gave him a Medal, but the Emperor presented him with a Robe of Honour, and gave our Nation an abatement of 2 and half per Cent. in the Customs ; but this has been since revoked. The old Walls being only of Earth and much ruined, they were begun to be Rebuilt of Brick, in the Year 1665. which confine the Town into a narrower compass than it was before. (*Thevenot*.) The Walls, altho' new built are weak, says *Gimelli*. The Castle is square, with round Bastions, seated at the South end of the Town so near the Sea, that the Ditch is filled by its Water on three sides, and by the River on the fourth. The Country round about is fertile and pleasant, abounding with Gardens and Fruit Trees, and the City is a place of vast Traffick for all sorts of *Indian*, *Chinese* and *European* Commodities, as Stuffs and Cotton-cloths made in *India*, Porcelaine Cabinets, adorned with Turquoise, Agat, Cornelian, Ivory and other Embellishments ; Diamonds, Rubies, Pearls and other precious Stones ; Musk, Amber, Myrrh, Manna, Sal Armoniac, Quick-silver, Lacca, Indigo, the Root *Rocoras* for Dying, and all sorts of *Indian* Spices, Fruits and Drugs. The Trade being begun and carried on chiefly by the *English*, our Nation hath peculiar Privileges above others. The Company's Affairs are managed here by a President and Council, who direct and govern the Factories at *Amadabat*, *Agria*, and other inland Places ; also the Trade to *Pessia* : and in general, all the Factories Westward of *Cape Comorin*. The President lives in great State, being always honourably attended, and hath a Salary of 500 lib. per Annum.

*Damaon*, possessed by the *Portuguese*, stands about 50 Miles South from *Surat*, and is a Place of good Strength and Trade, a River to which it gives Name, makes a good Haven, on the North side of which, stands the old City of very ordinary Structure, inhabited by *Gentiles* ; but the new City which stands on the South side, is a neat Town of three broad Streets, and many cross ones. The Houses are of *Indian* build, low, but neat, and have Gardens. It is fortified with a Wall, wherein are four regular Bastions : and a Fort at the entrance of the Haven.

*Baroche*, about as far North from *Surat*, stands on the River *Gemene*, which 15 Miles below, falls into the Bay of *Cambaya* : It is pleasantly seated on a Hill, adorned with handfom Buildings, and enriched by a very good Trade in Cotton-Linens, which are made here, and better whitened than elsewhere, and for that reason the *English* have a House there ; it is surrounded with strong Stone Walls, flanked by large round Towers, and was one of the chief Strengths of the Kingdom, but is neglected, and the Wall out of repair. The Country round is level and very fertile, beyond which at seven or eight Leagues distance are Mountains, wherein plenty of Agat-Stones are found.

*Bredia*,



*Biodra*, seated on a large sandy Plain upon a small River named *Wasset*, is about 15 Leagues distant from *Baroche*, it is well fortified after the Ancient manner, and inhabited by Calico Weavers; An *English* Factory is kept here. *Lacque*, which is the gum of a Tree, whereof sealing-Wax and Lacquer Varrish is made, is so plentiful in the neighbourhood of this City, that one Village named *Sindickera*, sells about 25000 l. every Year. (*Mandeflo*.) I find it mentioned by some Travellers, that *Lacque* is made by Ants, like as Wax by Bees, and whether there may not be such a sort of it, I cannot determine, but what I have said above of its being a Gum, is constantly averred.

*Cambaya*, whence as we have said, the Kingdom is sometime denominated, is seated on the inmost recess of the Bay to which it gives name, in the Lat. of 22 D. Longit. 90 D. It is described by Authors as a place of much better Structure than the Cities of *Indostan* commonly are, and was a place of very great Traffick, so as to be called the *Cairo* of *India*: But the Sea is fallen away, and leaves the Haven quite dry at low water; and that perhaps may be the reason that the Trade also has left it. The ebbing and flowing of the Tide here is very remarkable, for it rolls in with such impetuosity, that an Arrow out of a Bow cannot keep pace with it, and falls away as fast. This City is as large again as *Surat*, but not near so populous, its Streets are large, and are each shut up with Gates, the Houses are high, built of Sun-burnt Bricks, and the Shops are full of Aromatick Perfumes, Spices, Silken and gold Stuffs; It is encompassed with fair stone Walls, and has a large Castle whetein the Governour resides. Near the Town are Mines of Agats, which afford a Manufactory to the Inhabitants; for great Numbers of Cups, Rings and other Utensils are here made of them. (*Thevenot* and *Gimelli*.) *Goga*, a City of good Trade with a safe Harbour, stands on the West-side of the same Bay, about 20 Leagues from *Cambaya*; it was burnt by the *Portuguese* at the time of the Siege of *Dio*. As was also *Antora*, once a considerable City on the same Bay.

In the middle of the South Coast of the Peninsula of *Cambaya*, lies the Island and City of *DIO*, in the 20 D. 40 M. of North Latitude, and the 87 D. of Longit. It is a small piece of Land, of about a League in length, and half so much in breadth, which is cut off from the main Land by a small Branch of the Sea that flows between. The *Portuguese* got footing there in the Year 1535. and built a Fort; which was soon after attacked by *Badur* King of *Guzarat*, but so well defended, that he was forced to raise his Siege; afterwards in the Year 1546, his Son *Mamood* besieged it again with an Army of 40000 Men, who for several Months attacked it with great Vigour, but were so valiantly opposed by the *Portuguese*, that in the end they were beaten off, and have never since returned. The City was formerly very considerable, on Account of the Trade maintained by its Inhabitants to *Persia* and *India*: But it is now declined, and neither the City nor Fort much noted at present. *Pate*, seated on the same Bay, a few Leagues West from *Dio*, is a large City, and was formerly considerable for its fair Buildings and great Trade; but the *Rasbootes* have often plundered it and spoiled both. It is a great Town, and has still a good Manufactory of Silk Stuffs, says *Thevenot*. *Mangerol*, still more Westward, is a place of good Trade for Cotton-Linnen, &c. and has an *English* Factory.

*Jaquette*, on the Western point of this Peninsula, is a fair Town with a famous Pagod or Indian Temple, which sometimes gives Name to the Country. *Rageapore*, seated between *Baroche* and *Cambaya*, is a large walled Town inhabited by *Banians*, and a great number of Artizans, who make the finest Stuffs. It has 200 Villages under its Jurisdiction, near one of which great store of *Lacca* is found. (*Thevenot*.) *Bisantagan*, situate in a very fertile Country, in the Center of the Kingdom, from a small Village is risen up to a large Town of 2000 Houses. (*Mandeflo*.)

Lastly, *Amadabat*, a very large City, seated within Land, about 18 Leagues North from *Cambaya*, being the Seat of the Vice-Roy, may properly be reckoned the Metropolis of the Kingdom: It is a place of very great Trade for Calicoes and other Cotton-Linnens, Indigo, Opium, precious Stones and other Goods, and therefore the *English* have a Factory in it. This City stands in a lovely Plain, watered by the small River *Sabremetty*, enclosed with Walls, partly Stone and partly Brick, flanked with round Towers all kept in good repair, and well Garrisoned. The City with Suburbs is a League and half in length (says *Thevenot*) near 7 Leagues round (says *Mandeflo*.) The Streets are wide; the *Meidan-chab* or King's square is 700 Paces long, and 400 broad, surrounded with noble Arches and adorned with Trees, in several little square Buildings in the *Meidan*, are held the Courts of Judicature: near it on one side stands the King's Palace, and on the other side the Castle. The *English* Factory is in the middle of the Town, it consists of fair Courts, handsome Lodgings, and large Ware-houses. The chief Mosque in this City is a Magnificent Building, as described by *Thevenot* and *Mandeflo*, to whom we must refer our Reader for the other remarkable. The Governour of *Amadabat* has the Title of *Raja* or Prince, he lives in very great Splendour, and maintains 12000 Horse and 50 Elephants for the Kings Service.

*CHITOR*, lies next to *Guzarat*, being bounded by that Kingdom on the West; *Malvay* on the East; *Chandis* on the South; and *Raja Ranai* on the North: Its Extent is about 120 Miles from North to South, and about half as much from East to West. The chief City *Chitor* for Magnificence and Antiquity, did formerly outvie all the Cities in *India*; its Name signifying *Mirror of the World*, and its ancient Name was *Taxilla*, supposed to be the Place whence *Porus* issued against *Alexander*: The Castle of this Place was so strong, that *Eckbar* esteemed the taking of it, one of his most important Conquests: but its Glory is passed away, and 'tis now but an ordinary Place. *Chetipore*, or *Chiripur*, being more noted at present on Account of its considerable Trade in Calicoes called *Chites*, whence they say the Town had its Name. *Billman*; *Mudre*; and *Rudrepore*; have been Places of Grandeur and Note anciently, but now obscure.

The Kingdom of *MALVAT* adjoins to *Chitor*, having that on the West; *Bengall* on the East; and *Berar* on the South. The chief Towns are *Ugen*, by some called *Ougel*, seated on the West-side of the River *Gemini*, by some reckoned the Capital of the Province; but by others, that Honour is given to *Rantipore*, a Town of very great Traffick, seated on the East-side of the same River more Northward, and famous for a strong Castle which serves for a Prison



to Noblemen that fall under the *Mogul's* Displeasure. *Calçada*, the ancient Regal Seat of the King of *Mandae*, whose Dominions extended far. I suppose this to be the place *Tövenet* called *Mando*, and represents as a large Town of natural strength by Situation, and moreover surrounded by strong Walls, and guarded by a good Castle at the top of a Hill, the Houses in the Town well built of Stone, and the place very populous. *Sarampora*, *Syrange* or *Se-cenza*, a large Town where fine painted Calicoes are made. And *Nader*, another Town of large Extent, seated on the top of a steep Hill.

On the North of *Chitr* and West of *Makra*, lye the Territories of *Raja RANAS*, a Prince of ancient Extract, even descended from *Porus*, they say; and was the last of the *Rasboore* Race that became Tributary to the Great *Mogul*. The Castle of *Gur-ditto*, seated on a Rocky Mountain, and famous for its impregnable Strength, is his Place of Residence; as also sometimes *Candera*, the other chief Town in this Jurisdiction.

Northward from *Raja Renas*, lies the Kingdom of *BANDO*, a pretty large Country, but Mountainous and Barren. The City which gives Name to the Kingdom, stands in the 29 Degree of Latitude, about 150 Miles West from *Agra*; it is an ancient Place, but not very considerable. *Adsmere*, *Asmere*, or *Aque*, the Capital of a Government of the same Name, stands more Southward near the River *Padde*; the Tomb of *Cogee-Mendy* a Mahometan Saint buried here, is richly adorned, and visited from all Parts with great Devotion. The great King *Eckbar* made a Pilgrimage on Foot to this Tomb, to obtain by the Saints Intercession Male-Issue. The City is large, but of ordinary Structure; walled and moated round, and defended by a strong Castle, at the top of a very high and almost inaccessible Mountain. This City is reckoned by *Tövenot* to be the Capital of all the three Provinces of *Bando*, *Jessbmeer* and *Soret*. *Goday*, formerly a considerable City, seated in the most fertile part of the Kingdom. And *Jeloure*, a Castle of good Strength, are the other chief Towns.

On the East of *Bando* lies the Province of *GUALEOR*, a narrow Tract of Land between *Agra* on the North, and *Malora* on the South; whose chief Town *Gualer* or *Gualera*, is seated on a craggy Mountain, in the Lat. 27 D. and well fortified, having a most advantageous Situation among inaccessible Rocks, and improved by many artificial Fortifications: In-somuch that the Castle is made the repository of great part of the *Mogul's* Treasure; and a Prison for many Princes whose Birth gives Jealousy, or Misdemeanors Offence to the Emperor: and 'tis here the Emperor *Aureng-Zebe* confined his Brothers, Nephews, and his two eldest Sons.

More Eastward is the Province of *NARVAR*, bounded on the North by the River *Semra*, which parts it from *Sambal*; on the South, by Mountains that divide it from *Bengal*; on the East, with the Province of *Elabass*; and on the West with the Kingdom of *Agra*. The chief Cities of this Country are *Gebud* and *Ouden*; the former seated on the River *Eugenes*, which flowing through *Narvar* and part of *Elabass*, falls into the *Ganges*; whereof nothing considerable is mentioned by Authors. The latter stands more Northward, and is a very ancient

and formerly a notable Place, as the ruins of its Castle declare; 'tis a Place of some Trade, especially for Rhinocerot's Horns, which are much valued in *India*. Not far from this Town is seen the Vestigia of an old Castle named *Radichand*, a place of Devotion mentioned by *Purchas*.

The Kingdom of *SAMBAL* lies on the North of the *Semra*, and the West of the *Ganges*; having *Agra* for its Western Bounds, and *Bacar* for the Northern. The chief City from which the Country is denominated, stands on the River *Ganges*, in the 31 Degree of Latitude, and has the advantage of a pretty good Trade. A day or two's Journey from thence to the West, stands *Sanfaran*, a populous and trading City; where is seen a most magnificent Sepulchre of an ancient Heathen King.

Northward from hence lies the Kingdom or Province of *BACAR*, between the River *Ganges* and the Province of *Delly*; whose chief City *Bicanor* stands on a small River that falls into the *Ganges*.

And farther Northward is the Province of *JAMBA*, a mountainous Country possessed by certain *Rajas*, who are Tributary to the *Mogul*; of these *Raja-Decampergas* hath a large Tract of Land in the North-West part, whereof the chief Town is *Calser*; and *Raja-Manja*, who is reported a Prince of vast Wealth, possesses the North-east part towards the *Ganges*, whereof *Serenager* is the chief Town. But *Jamba* which is reckon'd the Capital is subject to the *Mogul*, and seated more Southward on a small River that falls into the *Ganges*.

Having surveyed all the Western and Mid-land Provinces, we will now take a view of the Northern; beginning from the West, and passing Eastward thro' *Naugricut*, *Bankish*, *Siba*, *Kakares*, *Gor*, *Pitan*, and *Candwana*. All which *Thevenot* comprises in two Provinces, which he names *Ayaoud* or *Haoud*, wherein are contain'd the four first: And *Varad* or *Varal*, wherein the three last are included. Of these two Provinces he confesses he could get no very exact Account, but in general, that being watered with many Rivers, the Land altho' Mountainous is very Fertile and rich. The Province of *Ayaoud* yields the King Ten Millions, and that of *Varad* Twenty Seven Millions *per Annum*; which Revenue proceeds from the great number of Strangers from *Tartary* and *China* resorting hither for Traffick. It must be noted, that the Land we speak of, is near 1000 Miles long and 300 broad.

*NAUGRACUT*, is a very large Country, extending from the Borders of *Labor* in 32 Degr. to the 40 Degree of North Latitude, where it is bounded by *Kakares*, having *Jamba* and *Siba* on the East; and *Labor* and *Bankish* on the West. The Land is very Mountainous, and a great part of it subject to the *Raja Talluck-chan*. The chief City *Naugracut* stands near the head of the River *Ravee*, in the Lat. of 34. and Long. 99. and is a place of good Trade for Druggs and other Commodities brought from *Tartary*, and notable for a rich Temple and Idol, which is visited from far. *Callamacha* or *Jallamaka*, more Eastward, is seated among craggy Rocks, out of which issue Fountains that seem to cast out Flames, and on that account worshiped by the Idolatrous People.



*BENKISH*, is seated between *Siba* on the East, *Casimere* on the West; *Kakares* on the North, and *Labor* on the South. 'Tis a Country not large nor remarkable: The chief City is nam'd *Beishur*, but not considerable or known to us.

The Province of *SIBA*, lies on the North-east of *Naugracut*, divided into two parts by the River *Ganges*, and surrounded by Mountains: Its chief City *Hardware* stands in the 40th. Deg. of Latitude, on a Lake through which the River *Ganges* passes, and near a Rock which the People fancy to be like a Cow's Head; and that Animal being sacred among them, the Rock and the River *Ganges* that falls upon it in a kind of Cataract, is worshiped as Holy. The City enjoys a pretty good Trade, and the Country is reasonably fertile.

Next to *Siba* lies the Kingdom of *KAKARES*, the most Northern of all the *Mogul's* Dominions, as bordering upon *Tartary*, whereof it was part till the Year 1609. 'Tis a Country of very large extent, being 600 Miles in length, but not proportionably broad. It is a very Mountainous and Barren Land, but enjoys the Benefit of a good Trade from *Tartary* and *China*. The chief Cities are *Dankien* in the Western part; *Purboia* more East, and near the *Ganges*; which River hath its Source in the Mountains *Caucasus*, which part this Country from *Tartary*.

On the South of *Kakares* lies the Province of *GOR*, extending Eastward to the Frontiers of *India*. The chief City which gives name to the Kingdom, is seated near the head of the River *Perfely*, in the 39 D. Latit. Of this Country we have no Account, as lying too much out of the way to be visited by Travellers.

*KANDUANA*, adjoins to *Gor* on the South, and lies extended between the 33d. and the 36. Degr. of Latitude, on the North-west of the Lake *Chiamay*, and near the Head of the River *Perfely*. It is a Country seated so far out of the way of Trade that we know little of it, only that the chief City is *Karakantaka*, seated on a small River that falls into the *Perfely*.

*PITAN*, adjoins to it on the South-west; a large Country govern'd by two *Rajas* Tributary to the *Mogul*; the Northern part subject to *Raj-Rodorum*, whose chief Seat is *Camow*: And the South part is commanded by *Raja-Muggo*. The Capital City of the whole is *Pitan*, seated on the East side of the River *Canda*, which rising in the neighbouring Mountains, falls into the *Ganges* in the Latitude of 36.

On the South of these on the East side the River *Ganges*, between that and the River *Perfely*, lies the large Province *PATNA*, having the River *Ganges* dividing it from *Famba* and *Bacar* for its Western Bounds, *Pitan* on the North, *Udessa*, &c. beyond *Perfely* on the East, and the Confluence of the two Rivers dividing it from *Bengal* on the South. The chief City is of the same name, and is seated on the River *Perfely* in the 35 Degree of Latitude. The Country is well seated, and seems to be good Soil; but lies so far within Land, that 'tis never resorted to by Strangers, so we have no account of it. The Name is supposed to be derived from that Warlike People the *Pitans*, who are famous in the ancient History of *India*.

We shall now speak of the Three Eastern Provinces which lie beyond the River *Perfely*; namely, *Udessa*, *Jessual*, and *Mevat*, and then proceed to *Bengal*.

The Kingdom of *UDESSA*, lies on the South of *Candiana*, and on the East of *Patna*; it is a large Province whose chief City *Jekanat* stands in its Southern Limits. Besides which, *Nechal* is represented by Travellers, as a very considerable City, consisting of stately Buildings of Brick and Stone like ours. The Country enjoys a temperate Air and good Soil; inhabited by *Hindows* of civil Nature; and governed by a *Raja* or Prince, who owns no Subjection to the *Mogul*.

*JESSUAL*, a Province of smaller extent but more frequented, lies Southward from *Udessa*, on both sides the River *Gundruk*, which falls into the *Perfely*: The chief City is *Rajapore*, seated on the River *Gundruk*, in the Lat. 31. 10. Longit. 110. *Suigee* or *Johnabad*, seated also on the same River, is sometimes visited by our *English* Merchants; and more Northward stand *Brinkalastere* and *Masse*, other Cities of this Kingdom.

*MEVAT*, lies on the South of *Jessual*, and the North of *Bengal*: A small Province, whose Capital City is *Narval*, seated in the Latitude of 39 D. Several other Towns of note are in this Province, whereof *Hogipore* and *Navagur* have the advantage of *English* Factories established in them.

*BENGALL*, the largest and most famous Kingdom of the *Mogul's* Empire, lies on the South of the Countries we last mention'd, along the Coast of the inner recess of the *Sinus Gangeticus*, otherwise call'd the Bay of *Bengal*, and the Banks of the River *Ganges*; which here falls into the same Bay: extending from the Frontiers of the Kingdom of *Aracani*, and the River *Caor* on the East; to the boundaries of *Orixa*, and the mouth of the River *Guenga* on the West; which is reckon'd 220 Leagues; and from the Sea Coast in the South, it extends Northward, to the borders of *Sambal* a little beyond the River *Gemini*; in the Latitude of 30. Deg. which makes about 120 Leagues. The Air of this Country is temperate and healthy as any in *Indostan*, except *Cassimere*: and the Soil is rich and fruitful, being water'd with the River *Ganges*, that runs through the middle of it from North to South, and divides it self into two large Branches, which are again subdivided into many smaller, before they fall into the Bay; the same River receives also divers smaller ones. And Rice, other Grains and Fruits are so plentifully produc'd here, that *Bengal* is sometimes stil'd the Store-house of *Asia*; it exceeds *Egypt* in Fertility (says *Gimelli*) not only in Rice, Corn, Sugar, and all other necessaries for Life, but abounds also in the richest Commodities as Silk, Cotton, Indigo, &c. together with Oxen, Sheep, Hogs, Venison, Fowl and Fish: abundance of Elephants are found in the Woods, and made tame and very useful to the Inhabitants: here are also Rhinoceroses, Tygers and many other wild Beasts. For Exportation they have these useful Commodities, viz. Ginger, Long-Pepper, Cotton, Silk, Sugar, Aloes, Civit, Walking-Canes, &c. but especially Manufactur'd Cotton-Linnen, as Muzlings, and Calcoes of the finest sorts, Silks and Herba-Stuffs, as Bengals, Elache's, and



and the finest Raw-Silk next the *Perſian*. The Country is full of Caſtles and Towns, and the Inhabitants are employed either in manufacturing their Silk, Cotton and Herba, (which by the way, is the Rind of a Plant, that being pill'd off yields a fine Thread, which is woven into thoſe pretty Stuffs, known to us by the name of this Country) and Civiliz'd ſo far as from vicious Pirates, to become of a very courteous and affable Diſpoſition. This Kingdom had formerly a Prince of its own, who was a Potent Monarch, but overcome by the great *Mogul* in 1582, and the Country made a Province of his Empire. Afterwards the Governors he had appointed in it, ſet up for themſelves; ſo that *Sta-Jehan*, the Father of *Aureng-Zebe*, was put to the trouble of conquering it a ſecond time: ſince when it has been undisputedly ſubject to that Emperor: And is divided into Four Parts, viz. 1. *Bengell* proper, otherwiſe nam'd the Government of *Ouleſſer* or *Jagannet*, being the Maritime part. 2. *Patana* the Eastern Part. 3. *Elabas*, or *Heliabaſs*, the Northern; and 4. *Prurep*, Mid-land. Before we proceed to the account of the Cities, 'tis neceſſary to Correct an Error very common in the Maps, which ſet down *Bengell* as the chief City, whereas indeed there is either no ſuch Town, or at moſt but a very obſcure one; our Merchants and Sea-men that have been there ſo often, know no ſuch place, and according to the accounts of the ſituation of the City *Bengell*, it ſhould ſeem they mean *Chatigan*, a place of conſiderable Traffick, call'd *Porto Maggiore* by the *Portugueſe*, ſeated at the mouth of the Eastern Branch of the *Ganges*, over againſt the ſuppoſed *Bengall*. The chief Cities of this Kingdom being, *Heliabaſs* or *Preja*, ſuppoſed to be the *Paliſotbra* of *Strabo* and *Ptolemy*, which was the Metropolis of the *Gangarides*; it ſtands in the Northern Conſines, at the Confluence of the *Gemini* with the *Ganges*, and is at preſent a very ſtrong Fortification, built about a hundred Years ago, being a Stone Caſtle with a ſtately Palace, the Seat of the Governor of this part of the Kingdom; ſurrounded with three Walls and a deep Moat. The *Indians* pretend to ſhew here the Sepulchre of *Adam* and *Eve*, in an ancient Subterranean Cave. *Bameres* or *Benarou* on the Eaſt ſide the *Ganges*, is a handſome built large City, the Houſes of Brick and Stone, higher than uſual in *India*, and noted for an *Indian* Univerſity, as is alſo *Nudnea*. *Cannourwe* on the Weſt ſide the *Ganges*. *Saſeren* near the great Pool *Barrea*, a ſpacious City of high Houſes, built of a Foſſil dug in the neighbouring Quarries, and burnt to the hardneſs of Stone. *Ratas*, ſomewhat diſtant from the River to the South-weſt, is a Fortreſs ſeated on an inacceſſible Hill, and ſurrounded with three Moats full of Fiſh, and the Walls of that extent, as to incloſe large Fields; all which render the Place impregnable. *Soumelſpre*, notable for the fine Diamonds found in its River, ſuppoſed to be waſhed down from the neighbouring Mountains. *Pattana*, ſeated on the Weſt ſide of the *Ganges*, and not on the Eaſt as ſome Maps place it, is for Largeneſs and Richneſs not exceeded by any in the Kingdom; but its Buildings are not answerable, being but low and mean; 'tis two Miles in length (two Leagues ſays *Tavernier*) and very Populous. This is the Reſidence of a Governor of the neighbouring Country, and the Seat of an *Engliſh* and a *Dutch* Factory, and eſpecially notable for Salt-Petre. A little below *Pattana* lie the Ruins of *Gupta*, once the laſteſt City in the World, being a hundred Miles in compaſs: It was the Seat

of twenty ſix Kings of *Bengall*, every one whereof diſdaining to live in the Houſe of his Predeceſſor, built a ſumptuous Palace, which chiefly contributed to the mighty extent of the Place: thus far Mr. *Marſhal*, an *Engliſh* Traveller in thoſe parts. But Father *Toſi* with more propability tells us, the Walls are nine Miles in compaſs, and encloſe the Ruins of many noble Palaces; at preſent the place is almoſt depopulated. *Malda*, a little diſtant from the River, is a large Town with a good Trade, and the Seat of an *Engliſh* Factory. *Casſimbazar*, ſeated at the Efflux of the Eastern Arm of the *Ganges*, in the Latitude of 26 D. is a City of very great Traffick, eſpecially for Silk. *Rejemahal*, on the Eaſt-ſide of the *Ganges*, at a little diſtance from it, and on a ſmall River that falls into it, which made a commodious Haven, and brought a conſiderable Traffick to the Town, it is well built, and was ſometime the Seat of the Governour of *Bengall*; but *Tavernier* ſays the Haven is choaked up, and the Trade removed to *Dacca*, ſomewhat more to the Eaſt, and ſeated on the little branch that runs croſs the Iſland, made by the two Arms of the *Ganges*, in Lat. 24. 30. and extends in length, along the Banks of the River five or ſix Miles. It is the Seat of the Viceroy or Governour of *Bengall* proper, and a place of very great Trade; reſorted to by Merchants from *China* and divers parts of *India*, and is adorned with many good Buildings, eſpecially the Houſes wherein the *Engliſh* and *Dutch* Factories reſide. 'Tis exceeding populous, very rich, and abounds with all Neceſſaries. *Satigan* ſtands near the ſame Lat. as *Dacca*, on the Eastern branch of the *Ganges*, a little below where the River *Caor* falls into this Stream; and was a place of conſiderable Trade, but declined ſince *Huguely* is grown up. *Chatigan*, ſtands on the ſame branch of the *Ganges* near its mouth, and is a place of conſiderable Traffick, and by way of Eminence called *Porto maggiore* by the *Portugueſe*. Over againſt it on the ſame River, the common Maps place *Bengall*, whereof we have already ſpoke. *Huguely* or *Ouguely*, ſtands on the Weſtern or main Stream of the *Ganges*, in a ſmall Iſland in the middle of the River, about 30 Leagues from its mouth, in the Lat. 24. 10. Lon. 106. 30. of whoſe Original we are told, that the *Portugueſe* about 100 Years ago came hither, and built little Hurts to vend the Commodities they had brought from divers neighbouring Parts, and were ſo far encouraged by *Eckbar*, the *Mogul* then Reigning, that they built a City, and had the entire poſſeſſion of it, till turning Pirates, the *Mogul* expelled them; but the City however encreaſed, and became a large, populous and wealthy place, the chief in all theſe parts for *European* Trade, at leaſt for the *Engliſh*, who had a very conſiderable Factory here; but that the Factory is now removed, perhaps forced by the unwholſomneſs of the Air, and ſettled at Fort *William*, which was built in the Reign of his late Maſteſty at *Calcutta*, ſeated on the *Ganges* below *Huguely*. Farther to the South-Weſt on the Bay of *Bengall*, and at the Mouth of the River *Guenga*, in the Lat. 22. Lon. 103. ſtands *Ballaſore*, formerly named *Ballapur*, a reaſonable good Haven and a Town of great Trade, where alſo the *Engliſh* have a Factory. But this and *Huguely* have both the miſfortune to ſtand in a bad Air, which makes them at ſome times of the Year ſubject to unhealthineſs. *Aiſepore* ſtands on the ſame Coaſt, ſomewhat more to the South: which, as alſo *Piepey*, *Bangia* and *Angelim*, are Towns of Trade. Many other conſiderable Towns are in this Kingdom, but theſe



and as many as the brevity of this work will let us enumerate: and therefore shall pass on to

**ORIXA**, a Province formerly part of the Kingdom of *Golconda*, but now entirely cut off, and made part of the *Mogul's* Empire; it lies between the River *Guenga* on the North; and *Golconda* on the South, that is from the 20th to the 23d D. of Lat. The chief Town which gives Name to the Province, stands in the middle of it on a Hill, 100 Miles from the Sea. Besides which *Remana*, seated on the River *Guenga*; *Carapara*, *Mancipatam* and *Palhor* on the Coast, are reckoned principal Towns of this Province: whose South part bears the Title of *Talengand*.

From hence crossing the River *Guenga*, we enter the Kingdom of *BERAR*, a Province seated on the West of *Bengall*; on the North of *Orixas*; and between them two *Malvay* and *Chandis*. The chief City is *Schapor*, not very considerable, nor are there any Towns of any great Note mentioned by Travellers in this Country.

**CHANDIS** or **KANDISH** that lies next to it, is a Kingdom of larger Extent; bounded on the South by *Orixas* and *Decan*; on the North by *Malvay* and *Chitor*; on the East by *Bengall*; and on the West by *Guzarat*. It has the advantage of a good Soil, being watered with the *Guenga*, and the River *Tapte* which rises in its Mountains, and passing Westward falls into the Bay of *Cambaya* at *Surat*. Upon this River stands the Capital City *Bram-pore*, whence sometimes the whole Kingdom is denominated, a large place, but the Buildings low, and the Air unhealthy; it is fortified with a strong Castle and reckon'd a good Frontier, where the Governour resides, who is commonly a Son or some near Relation to the Emperor: The Town is noted for the manufacture of fine Calicoes interwoven with Gold, which they vend abroad to divers Countries: A few Miles North from *Bram-pore* stands *Hassera*, a Fortress of impregnable Strength, being seated on a craggy Mountain, and furnished with 600 pieces of Ordinance. *Taulneure*, seated on the River *Tapte*, is a considerable City, as is also *Mondoue*, on the Frontiers of *Chitor*. *Canow*, a City from which the Country is by some named the Government of *Canow*; in whose neighbourhood stand *Saddisee*, *Caddor* and *Sambon*. The South part of this Kingdom is inhabited by *Baneans*, who were for some time governed by a King of their own: Their chief Towns are *Dayatote* (whereof the King was allowed to keep his Title after the *Mogul* had conquered him) *Netherbery* and *Salotte*: And on the Mountains in the South-West is the Country formerly possessed by a certain *Raja* named *Partaspha*.

On the South of *Chandis* lies the Province of **BALLAGATE**, which was formerly Subject to the King of *Decan*, but now a Province of the *Mogul's* Empire. It is a fruitful and pleasant Country, well beset with populous Towns and Villages. According to *Thi-venot* 'tis one of the richest Provinces, and yields the Emperor 25 Millions per Annum. The chief Town at present is *Aureng-abad*, to which the Trade is removed from *Dolatabat*; it is a very large and populous Town but has no Wall. The buildings are of Stone pretty high and neat, the Streets are large with fair Trees growing in them, and the Houses provided with pleasant Gardens. The Governour of the Province resides here; he is always a Prince of

the Blood, and *Aureng-Zeb* himself in his Fathers time enjoyed it.

*Dolatabad*, which was the Capital of the Province, and a Place of great Trade when under the King of *Decan*, is a good large Town surrounded with Stone-Walls, Battlements and Towers mounted with Canon, with a Citadel on a Hill which is strongly Fortified, and three other Forts at the foot of the Hill, all which make it esteemed the strongest place the *Mogul* has, and a valuable Frontier: the King has a Palace in the Cittadel. The Dominions of this Emperor extend still more to the Southward; part of the Province of *Telenga*, and the small Province *Baglana*, both taken out of the Kingdom of *Decan*, being subject to him.

*Beder*, the Capital of **TELENGA**, is a large City encompassed with Brick Walls, and Towers mounted with Cannon, some of which are extream large, and a Garrison of 300 Soldiers, and 700 Gunners, which are kept in good order, by reason of the importance of this Frontier Town against *Decan*. The Governour is always a Person of the highest Quality, and lodges in a Castle which stands without the Town; the other chief Town is *Calion*.

**BALAGNA**, is a small Tract of Land lying between *Ballagate* on the East, *Guzarat* on the North, *Telenga* and the Mountains of *Sevagy* on the South, and the *Portuguese* Country on the West. The chief Town is called *Mouler*. I find nothing considerable of this Province, and therefore shall now end my account of the Empire of the Great *Mogul*, having lead my Reader quite round it.

**BUT** Having received an ample Relation of the Death of *Aureng-Zeb*, and the Succession, by the Shipping now just come in since the Printing of what we have said in Page 94. we cannot omit inserting it here.

*A Relation of the Death of Aureng-Zeb, and the Battle between his Sons, &c. sent from Fort St. George, in January 1706-7.*

**ON** the 28th of the Moon *Zulkhaida*, being Tuesday (which answers to the 18th of February 1706-7.) between twelve and one of the Clock in the Afternoon, died *Aureng-Zeb*, in his Camp at *Amadnagar*, three Days Journey from *Aureng-Abad*, in the 1118th Year of the *Hegira*, in the 91st Year of his Age, and in the one and fiftieth Year of his Reign. His Body was soon after without much Ceremony carryed to *Aureng-Abad*, and there interred in a Garden. About the beginning of his last Sickness, he dispatched his youngest Son *Kem-Bachsh* to *Vicapore*, whereof he made him a Grant, and also of the Kingdom of *Golconda*. And his other Son *Azem Tura* he ordered the contrary way toward *Malvay*, apprehending what would be the Fate of the Youngest, if he fell into his Hands, and in taking leave, gave him his Ring off his Finger. To this Second Son he gave (as generally it is reported) all the *Deccan* Country, except *Vicapore* and *Golconda* before mentioned, which contains in it, besides those 2 Kingdoms, four great *Subah's*, viz. the *Subah* of *Aureng-Abad*, the *Subah* of *Zopher-Abad*, the *Subah* of *Berar*, and the *Subah* of *Chandish*: And two *Subah's* more in *Hindowsten*, viz. the *Subah* of *Guzarette*,  
P an.



and the *Subah* of *Maharaj*: And the rest of the Empire he left to *Shah Aalam*. *Azem Tura* (or *Azem Shah*) was not advanced very far on his Way, when News was brought him of his Father's Death, whereupon he immediately returned to the Camp, and with the consent of all the *Omrabs* present, on the 10th of the next Month, viz. *Zul-geida*, he ascended his Father's Throne, and in some Time after he removed to *Aureng-Abad* with the Army, and having staid there the first 10 Days of the Moon *Mehrum* (which are Days of Lamentation for the Death of *Husein* and *Hasan*, and reckoned unlucky) about the middle of this Moon, which fell upon the 5th or 6th of *April* 1707. he began his March towards *Hindowstan*, hoping to get to one of the two Capital Cities, viz. to *Dellie* or *Agra*, before the Eldest Brother, but he failed: For being advanced near the Banks of *Chunpull*, [*Tahambul*, &c.] he found his Brother with his Army to be encamped on the other side: whereupon he put his Father's *Haram*, i. e. his Women, and all his own Baggage into *Guailler* under the Care of *Ashad Khan*, &c. and then advancing towards his Brother, he gave him Battle.

The Accounts we have of this Action from several Parts differ very much in many Particulars; but they all agree in this, That in the beginning of the Battle, *Azem Shah's* Army had the Advantage of the Enemy, and the Victory for some time seemed to be on their side; for they broke the first Fodge (Brigade) of the Enemy commanded by *Azem Uddeen*, second Son to *Shah Aalam*, *Baz Coan* who commanded the Vanguard being killed, and almost all his Men; and forced *Azem Uddeen* to turn his Elephant, and retire with his Troops in great Disorder for a whole Krow (or League) leaving his Tents and all his Baggage as Plunder to the Enemy. Hereupon *Azem Shah* bore the Naghara of Victory. But *Azem Uddeen* in some time rallied again; and his Father and elder Brother coming up with their Foudges, both Armies engaged; and the Fight was maintained very obstinately on both sides for a long time. At last *Beedar Becht*, *Azem Shah's* Eldest Son, who fought in the Front of his Father's Army, happened to be killed on his Elephant; whereupon the Elephant turned, and his whole Fodge was put into Disorder and ran away, and with him, I think, was killed his Son, *Beedar Dill*. In some time after *Mala Jac*, *Azem Shah's* second Son was likewise killed upon his Elephant, and his Fodge put to the Rout: When *Azem Shah* saw his two Sons were dead, he grew Desperate, and said all is now Lost, I have nothing left me but to Die; and rushing into the thickest of the Enemy, was there killed: But how, or by what Hands he received his Death, is variously reported. This Battle was fought on the 19th Day of *Rebia Ul Ah*, Anno. Heg. 1119. which in our Account was the 8th of *June*, and *Trinity Sunday*, 1707. about ten Leagues from *Agra*.

Since that Battel *Shah Aalam* hath continued in quiet Possession of the Throne, and hath nothing to fear but his own Sons, who are four in Number, and have so jealous an Eye upon one another, that none of them dare leave the Court for fear of what may be practised in their Absence by them that stay behind, for which reason the Empire is in a great Measure yet unsettled.

*Kam Baisie*, remains yet possessed of *Vishnapore*, and *Shah Aalam* they say, is willing he should continue

so; but his Sons will not Consent to it. There hath been a constant Talk ever since the Battle of *Chunpull*, that one of *Shah Aalam's* Sons was coming with an Army into the *Dehcan* Country, to settle Affairs in all these Parts; but hitherto no Prince hath come down, and no Army hath been sent into *Dehcan* that we hear of.

Since the Writing of the Account above, we Advis'd from several Parts, that the true Reason why the Government is not yet settled, is, that *Ragepours* have surrounded *Agra*, and block'd up the Avenues to the Place, permitting none to go in or come out, but whom they please: And it by reason of this Blockade that there are no Governors sent to the several Provinces of the Empire, no Orders for Coining of Money with *Shah Aalam's* Stamp, or for Praying for him their *Masjids*, &c. Himself, his Sons, and all great *Omrabs* being shut up in that City.

The Occasion of this Blockade we understand to be this. *Shah Aalam* upon the News of his Father's Death, left *Cabul*, where he had been Viceroy for some Years, and marched with his Army directly towards *Dellie*; and at the same time wrote to the *Rajahs* or Heads of the *Rajapours* (which Nation it is said his Mother was) to come and assist him in his Expedition; The *Ragepours* promised to come to his Assistance, provided he would give them his *Kowl*, to restore to them the same Privileges and Immunities which they enjoyed in *Shah Jehan's* time. This *Shah Aalam* granted without much difficulty; and thereupon the *Rajahs* or Heads of the *Rajapours* joined him with their Forces, and promised to stand by him, as to set him on the Throne, or die in the Attempt, which some of them Actually did in the Battle of *Chunpull*: After *Shah Aalam* had gain'd the Victory in that Battle, and was now in quiet Possession of the Throne, the *Ragepours* minded him of his *Kowl* and desired his Majesty to put it in Execution.

*Shah Aalam*, who never cared much which way the World went, much less now in his dotage and old Age, was not unwilling to perform his *Kowl*; but his two Eldest Sons vehemently opposed it, urging that they could never answer it to God or to the World, if after *Aureng-Zeb* had gone so far to destroy Idolatry out of the Empire, and to establish the true Religion in its stead, that they should now Consent to the setting up of Idolatry again.

Thus matters stood, by our last Advices from those Parts.

Now, in order to understand the Contents of this *Kowl*, we are to know, that *Aureng-Zeb*, after he found himself establish'd in the Throne, out of his great Zeal for *Mahometanism*, order'd all the Pagodes or Heathen Temples within the Empire to be shut up; their Images to be broken, buried in the Ground, or otherwise made away with; order'd Beef to be publickly kill'd and sold in the Bazaars; And their Temple at *Kaushee* to be demolished, which to the *Hindoes* was a Mother-Temple, a Place of singular Holiness above all others, and to which they went in Pilgrimage from all Parts of the Empire. And besides all this, he laid a Poll-Tax, or more properly, a Lock-Tax, upon the *Humood*, (*Hindoo* People) throughout the Empire; obliging all People that wore a Lock of Hair upon the Crown of their Heads, (which the *Hindoes* all do) to pay a certain Sum Yearly to the



the King. The Wealthy and the Able were oblig'd to pay 20 *Rupcas* a Head, and so downward in proportion to their Ability. And whate'er Town or Country they came into, they were oblig'd to pay this Tax, if they could not produce a Certificate, that they had paid it already in the Place of their Abode. The poorer sort in order to evade this Tax, have sometimes cut off this Lock, but that would not excuse them: And if they urg'd, they had nothing to pay it with: the Answer was, Then you must turn *Mahometan*. This Tax is call'd *Jaziab*. Now *Shah Aalam* in the aforementioned Kowl promised to remove all these Grievances, viz. To take off this Tax, to permit them the free use of their Temples, to rebuild *Kansee*, and to suffer no Beef to be killed or sold publickly.

The Names of the twelve Moons, or Months, which make up the *Mahometan* Year, are, 1. *Meherum*. 2. *Sepher*. 3. *Rebia ul Au'l*. 4. *Rebia*

*ul Acher*. 5. *Giamadee ul Au'l*. 6. *Giamadee ul Acher*. 7. *Rejeb*. 8. *Shaban*. 9. *Ramezen*. 10. *Shaval*. 11. *Zulkaida*. 12. *Zulhaja*.

These twelve Moons make up the *Mahometan* Year, without any intercalation of Days or Months to bring it to answer with the *Solar*: so that every new Year begins 11 Days sooner than the former. For instance, Suppose the Moon *Meherum* in the 1119. of the *Hegira*, began the 22d. of *March*; in the Year 1120. it will begin on the 11th. of that Month. So that their Festivals and Solemn Times, do not fall on any set Time or Season of the Year, but run round. For Example, Their *Ramezan* or Lent, which in the Year 1696. fell in *April*, in the Year 1707. fell in *November*. And by this Account we find, that though *Aureng-Zeb* died in the 91st. Year of his Age, according to their reckoning; yet, according to ours, he wanted about two Years and a half of it.

## Of the Peninsula of INDIA,

WITHIN THE

# G A N G E S.

For a Map consult that of the *MOGUL's* Empire, to which this is annexed.

THE Peninsula of *INDIA* within, or on the hither side of the River *Ganges*, is seated between the 90th. and the 100 Degr. of Longitude; and between the 8th. and the 20th. Degr. of North Latitude, being contiguous on the North with *Indistan*, but otherwise surrounded by the Sea; that is, the *Indian* Sea on the West and South, and the Bay of *Bengall* on the East: It is divided from *Ceylon* by the Straights of *Manar*, on the South-East, and is distanced from *Malacca* and the Peninsula beyond *Ganges*, near 300 Leagues, by the Intervention of that Great Bay or Sea, to which in general, is given the Name of *Bengall*, though the inner Part of it only, may properly bear that Appellation. The breadth of this Land in the North Part is near 500 Miles, but decreases Southward, growing narrower by Degrees till it end in a Point at *Cape Comorin*.

The Air is excessive Hot, being seated under the first, second, and part of the third Climates of the Torrid Zone: So that the Inhabitants for the most part go naked: Nevertheless the Soil produces plenty of all Necessaries, as Rice, divers sorts of Fruits. Pepper, and some other Spices, Cotton and Silk; but especially this Land yields Diamonds, and other precious Stones, and its Sea affords Pearls. A great Ridge of Mountains runs along the middle of the Country, from *Bisnager* to *Cape Comorin*; they are called the Mountains *de Gate* or *Ballagate*; and it is very remarkable, that at the same time that the Weather is sultry Hot on one side of these Mountains, it is severely Cold on the other side, though in the same Degree of Latitude. A great Number of the Towns and Castles on the Coasts of this Peninsula, are in the Possession of the *Portuguese*, *English*, and *Hollanders*.

The Country contains a great Number of Kingdoms, but those for the most Part are very small, and the *Rajas* or Kings, Tributaries or Homagers at

least, to a more powerful Monarch; wherefore it will not be necessary to divide it according to its Kingdoms, but we shall rather consider it in five large Parts, viz.

The Coasts and Country of *Malabar*.

*Decan*, with *Curcan*, *Balaguata* and *Canara*.

The Kingdom of *Golconda*.

The Kingdom of *Bisnagar* with the Coasts of *Coromandel*.

The Principalities of *Gingi*, *Tanjouar* and *Madura*, with the Fishing Coast.

The Subdivisions and chief Cities whereof are seen in this Table.

Chief Towns.			On the Coasts.
Calecut	Calecut	Panane Pabur	
	Chale	Parongale	
	Tanor	Curiga Panur	
	Cotigan	Bipur Cucuram	
	Chombays	Badara Moutingue	
Malabar contains these Kingdoms,	Coronor	Idem	On the Coasts.
	Cranganor	Idem	
	Cochin	Idem Viapin or New Orange	
	Coulam	Idem	
	Travancour	Idem Matadavalur	
		Cotate	
	Porcah	Idem	
	Caleccoram	Idem	
	Muterta	Idem	
	Marta	Podingabo	
	Angamala K.	Changanor K.	On the Mountains.
	Mangata K.	Paru K.	
	Turnbale K.	Kingd. of Pepper	
	Changanate K.	Trivilor K.	
	Panalepy K.	Tecantutes K.	
Mallians People.			Chief



	Chief Towns.	
Decan in general comprehends	Decan K. properly so call'd.	{ Andanager Chaul Kerky Danda Bider Sefardon
	Ballagate K.	Doltabad Bider
	Cuncan K.	{ Vifiaper Solapour Paranda Wingerla Carapatan Centapour Dabul Aguada Bardas
	Canara Country comprehending the Kingd. of	{ Onor Onor Barcelor Baticala Baticala  Garzopa { Gavarade-Naghar Ikkeri Abinefi Sagbor
	The City of	Goa and the Island Anchediva
	The Country of	Salfette
The Kingd. of Golconda	{ Baznagar Golconda Condapoly Cundavera Bellumecmda Gemi or Coulour Guadavari	
The Kingd. of Bijnagar.	{ Bijnagar or Chendegry Velour Chariver Narfinga Ciranzapatan Pelagonga Tripity	
And the Coasts of Coromandel.	{ Masulipatan Pettipole Caceiro Caletour Penna Fort Geldria Paliacate Meliapur or St. Thomas Fort St. George and Madraspatam Tirpolier Carcal Negapatam Tranguebar Fort St. David	
The three Principalities or Naiques of	Gingi	Gingi Cidambaran
	Tanjouwar	Tanjouwar
	Madura	Madura Tutecay
	and the Fishing-Coast	{ Trichandur Calipatam Manarcor Manapur Jacancurg
		Negapatan, &c.

MALABAR, lies on the West side of the Mountains *Ballagase*; but Geographers are not agreed of its extent, with respect to the Northern Boundary; some carrying it as high as Cape *Darame*, or *Cabo des Rames*, and the River *Aliga* near *Goa*; and so include *Canara* in that general Name; but *Sansen* and others cut off that Country, and so *Malabar* is to be reckoned no farther Northward than the River *Cangeretia*, a little beyond *Cenaror*; between which and Cape *Comorin* in the South may be reckon'd about 350 Miles, but its breadth is at most 100 Miles, and in the Southern Part not half so much. It is divided from *Co-mandel* on the East by the Ridge of Mountains, and on the West and South, it is washed by the *Indian Sea*. The Coasts have many commodious Bays and Harbours, which invite Merchants from all Parts: but it is much infested by *Mahometan* Pirates, except where the *European* Establishments hinder them. The Country is watered with many Rivulets, and the Soil is fruitful in Pepper, Cardamom, Ginger, Aloes, Bezoar-stones, Salt-Petre, Wax and Honey, Cotton, Coconuts, &c. The Pepper of *Calecut* is lesser in Grain, than those of *Canara* and *Cochin*, and the best of all grows in the In-land Countries; this Plant is of a weak small

Stem, and upheld by Poles like our Hops, each Stem bears six Bunches of a foot long, each of which contain many Grains; they are gathered green in *October* and *November*, and being dried in the Sun, turn black. The Winter in *Malabar* begins in *May* and continues till *November*, during which time the Rains fall. In *January*, *February*, and *March*, the Weather is excessive hot in the day time, but in the Night as cold, and every Day they have a Sea Breeze, and every Night a Land Wind. From *June* till *November* the Winds are so boisterous, that the Coast is scarce Navigable. [*Baldew.*] The Country was formerly all subject to one Monarch, but at present many Kings Reign there, over whom he of *Calicut* pretends a Superiority, and called himself *Zamorin* or Emperor, but his Glory is passed away, and his Country is at present a kind of Aristocracy, thus we are told by Modern Travellers; but I find by *Baldew.*, that in the Year 1662. the *Zamorin* reigned with great Power. However, we shall consider the Country as it was formerly governed; for the Revolutions are so various and frequent, that it is impossible to trace them.

The chief Kingdoms of *MALABAR*, are those of *Calecut*, *Canonar*, *Cranganor*, *Cochin*, and *Coulam*, besides which there are many others; as *Travancor*, adjoining to *Caulam*, *Poichu*, and *Calecoulam*, the former adjoining to *Cochin*, and the latter to it; the *English* trade to *Poreah*, and the *Dutch* have a Factory there. *Muterta*, *Marta*, and *Batymena*, three other small Kingdoms adjoining also to *Cochin*, and divers small Principalities subject to the *Zamorin*. There are also eleven small Kingdoms in the Mountains, viz. *Mangate* and *Paru*; the Kingdom of *Pepper*, *Turnbale*, *Changanate*, *Changanor*, *Trivilar*, *Panapely*, *Angamale*, the Kingdom of the *Tecantutes*, and the People of the Mountains of *Panda*; and lastly, at the top of the Mountains live the People call'd *Mallians*, whose chief Town is *Priate*. The Cities of chiefest Note in all these Kingdoms, are these.

Entering this Continent on the South, we first meet Cape *Comorin*, heretofore call'd *Cory*, *Comaria*, and *Comaria Extrema*: Situate in the 7th. Deg. 30 Min. of North Latitude, 60 Leagues West from the Coast of *Ceylon*; in passing thence Northward, is seen

*COTATE*, the Capital of the Kingdom of *Travancor*, a Place of great Traffick, and adorned with a *Christian Church* built in the Year 1600. *Travancor*, which gives name to the Kingdom, supposed to be the *Cotary* of *Ptolemy*, and *Matadavalur*, a large City in the same Kingdom.

*COULAM*, the Capital of the Kingdom thence denominated, is a large City seated in a most fertile Soil and healthy Air, in the 9th. Degree of North Latitude: it has the advantage of a very commodious Haven at the mouth of a River, and was taken by the *Portuguese* in 1505. who built a new Town, and strengthened it with good Walls, and a Fortress, but were however beaten out by the *Dutch* in 1661.

*CALECOULAM*, the Capital of another Kingdom, was formerly a good City, but being destroy'd by the *Portuguese* in 1523. it hath ever since continued in low Estate; however, for the sake of the Spice Trade, the *Dutch* have a Factory there.

*PORCA*,



**FORCA**, the Capital of a small Kingdom of about 50 Miles extent, where the *English* have a Factory for Pepper, which grows plentifully there. *Catapely* is the name of the chief Town of *Batymena* Kingdom, as *Podiagabo*, otherwise *Mauclycare*, is of *Marta*; and *Muterta* of the small Principality of the same Name.

**COCHIN**, the Capital of a powerful Kingdom, whose Prince is the only one in *Malabar* that dares dispute with the *Zamorin* of *Calecut*; is a large City, or rather two Cities a Mile and half asunder, but however almost united by Suburbs: The upper or ancient *Cochin*, stands about four Miles up the River from the Sea; and is the Seat of the King, whose Palace is a fine Building after the *European* manner; the Streets are large and the Town populous: The lower or new Town stands two Miles lower on the same River, which makes a commodious Haven; it was built by the *Portuguese*, and had many *Christian* Churches, whereof that of the *Jesuits* was the finest, having a stately Tower and a Ring of Bells. 'Tis a place of great Traffick, and was possessed by the *Portuguese* from the Year 1504. till 1663. when the *Dutch* beat them out, and have ever since possessed it; and as both *Baldæus* and *Nieuboff* confess, destroyed many of the fine Churches and Convents, and reduced the City to a much smaller Compass, for the sake of fortifying it the more strongly; the River runs on the South side of it, and on the West it is washed by the Sea, the Haven has 17 or 18 Fathom Water (says *Baldæus*) at High-tide, and the Town stands in the 10th Deg. Lat. *Vaipin*, a small Island in the River, which was formerly a notable Sanctuary, is now possessed by the *Dutch*, who have built a Fort in it called *New Orange*.

**CRANGANOR**, the Capital of the Kingdom of that Name, stands upon the River *Chatua*, 20 Miles North from *Cochin*, and not far from the Sea: The *Portuguese* built a Fort near it, and took the City, but were beaten out of both by the *Dutch* in 1662. It is situate on the Banks of the River about a League from the Sea, defended by a Wall of Earth, and a Stone Breast-work, which had seven Bastions and the Wall of Earth three more. At the point near River, remains still a strong Stone Tower for Defence of the River; and on the opposite side of the River towards *Cochin*, stands the Redoubt called *Pallipert*, on an Island named *Bajpin*, which extends to the River of *Cochin*. (*Nieuboff*.)

From *Cranganor* Northward lies the Kingdom of *CALICUT*, whose King, as we have said, was called *Zamo. in* or Emperor, and was a powerful Monarch, able to bring into the Field an Army of 100000 or more. He had a vast Revenue arising by Tributes, Customs, and the Monopoly of Pepper. The City *Calicut* stands upon the Sea-shoar in the 11th. Degr. of North Latitude; a large Place, being as some relate eleven Miles in Compass, but the Buildings very ordinary; it was a City of great Trade, and was notable 200 Years ago, especially for the *Portuguese* Wars against it, but now a poor and obscure Place; the Palace stands about a Mile from the Town, it is large and surrounded with a low Wall, but the Apartments are proper and well adorned. *Panane*, about 50 Miles from *Calicut*, is a Place of Trade also, having an excellent Haven: 'Twas here the *Portuguese* first arrived, when they discovered

the *East-Indies*; and by the *Zamorin* were at first well entertained, but had afterwards long and grievous Wars with him, wherein the two Castles that guarded this Haven were demolished: *Palur*, where the *Zamorin* sometimes resided. *Chale*, not far from *Calecut*, where the *Portuguese* once had a Fort: and *Parangale* a Town of considerable Traffick; are the other chief Cities of this Kingdom. Which being the most considerable, the whole Country of *Malabar* is sometimes called *Calecut*. Several small Principalities are subject to the *Zamorin*: As *TANOR*, a petty Kingdom, whose Capital of the same Name, is a Sea-port between *Cochin* and *Calicut*; *CURIGA* between *Panane* and *Cranganor*; *PANUR*, *COTIGAN*, *BIPUR*, *CUCURAN*, and *AURIOLA*, In-land Countries; and *Chombays*, *Badara* and *Montinguc*, three Ports lying Northward from *Calecut*: But it must be owned however, that his Dominions are not very large; for from *Cochin*, which as we have said, is the Capital of a considerable Kingdom, it is not much above 100 Miles to

**CANONOR**, the chief Town of another Kingdom, which is the most Northern Part of *Malabar*, a Country of fertile Soil, whose Capital of the same Name is seated about 12 Miles from the Sea, upon the River *Balipatam*, which makes an excellent Haven, and the City was a Place of great Trade, but decay'd of late Years, says *Baldæus*. The *Portuguese* built a Fort here in 1505. which encreased into a Town, and was call'd new *Canonor*; it was taken from them in 1664. by the *Dutch*, who still hold it, and drive a good Trade there for Pepper.

From *Malabar*, Northward to the Confines of the Empire of the *Mogul*, lies the large Country which bears the general Name of *DECAN* or *DE-CAM*, though that Kingdom be but a small Part of it: It is bounded on the North, by the Kingdom of *Guzarat*; on the South, by *Malabar*; on the East, by the Kingdoms of *Golconda* and *Bijnagar*; and on the West, by the Ocean. It comprehends the three Kingdoms of *Decan*, *Cuncan*, and *Balaguata*, the Island of *Goa*, the Island *Salsideva*, and some other smaller Islands; and the Countries of *Canara* and *Salfette*. The Country in general is very fertile, producing many excellent Fruits, and much Cotton, whereof the Inhabitants make very fine Cloath; the Land also yields Diamonds, and other precious Stones; and affords excellent Pasture to divers sorts of Cattle bred here, and sold to *Goa* and other Places.

To proceed in our travelling Method, the Province of *CANARA* is first in our way, call'd by some *Tulimar*, and by others the Kingdom of the *Chatins*; it is divided from *Canonor* in *Malabar* on the South, by the River *Cangerecora*; and from *Cuncan* on the North, by the River *Aliga*; having the Ocean on the West; and the Kingdom of *Bijnagar* on the East: The People are as black as *Ethiopians*. (says *Gimelli*.) It is divided into many petty Kingdoms, but is all subject to the King of *Bijnagar*: Of these Kingdoms, the chief are *BATICALA*, *ONOR* and *GARZOPA*.

*Baticla*, the chief City of that Kingdom, stands in the 13th. Degr. of Latitude, on a small River, about a Mile from the Sea, but is no Port; the Country round it is very fruitful, and the City is (says my Author) a beautiful well built Place; this Kingdom extends pretty far within Land, and is the more powerful of the three.

Next



Next to it Northward lies ONOR, whose Capital of the same Name stands on the River *Mogeu*, in the 14th Deg. Lat. where the *Portuguese* had a strong Fort and good Trade, and the *English* have now a Factory; the Pepper of this Place being heavier and more esteemed than any other. Thirty Miles South from hence stands *Bacolor*, another Fort and Town of good Trade, built by the *Portuguese*, but now subject to the *Dutch*.

GARZOPA, that gave Name to that Kingdom, stood on the same River *Ono*, but was ruined by the *Portuguese*; who about 5 Miles from it, built a large Fortrefs called *Gonçalo Neghar*. *Ikkeri*, *Abileni* and *Sagier* are the chief *Indian* Cities of *Garzopa*.

On the Coast of *Canara* lies the Island *INCHEDIVA*, about 25 Miles in Compass, where is a very good Haven, and therefore taken by the *Portuguese* at their first arrival in these Parts, and by them well fortified: But their chief, and at present almost only Factory in *India*, is

GOA, a City of a League and half in Circuit, situate in an Island called *Tilsee*, of 27 Miles compass, made by two Mouths of the River *Mondoa*, says *Baudrena*; (the Maps call the River *Gazim*, and 'tis often denominated from the City, and called the River of *Goa*;) which falls into the Ocean a few Leagues below the Town, making a very commodious Haven, which is extremely well guarded by Forts. This City is the Seat of the Vice-Roy, the See of an Arch-Bishop, and the Supream Court of Judicature for all the *Portuguese* *Asia*, as well as its Staple of Trade: It is adorned with many sumptuous Buildings, fair Streets, abundance of Churches and Convents. The Cathedral is large, with an arched Roof supported by Columns, and curiously adorned with Figures; and though the Walls of the City be slight, the Island is so well guarded by Forts, that it is reckoned the strongest in *India*. The Houses in this City are the best in *India*, and the Inhabitants are about 20000. whereof the least part are *Portuguese*; for the *Indian* Women are so intermarried with them, that the *Mestiza's* and *Canarines* are the greater number. It was taken by *Alphonso d' Albuquerque*, the *Portuguese* Vice-Roy in the Year 1511, and 15th Deg. of Northern Lat. The *Portuguese* do also possess the neighbouring Country of *Salfette*, where they have two Forts; and the Country of *Bardes* (mentioned below) and reckoned to have 100000 Subjects in *Goa*, *Salfette* and *Bardes*.

From hence Northward lies the Kingdom of CUNCAN or VISAPOR, 120 Miles from North to South, and 200 Miles from East to West, having *Decan* on the North; *Canara* and *Goa* on the South; the Ocean on the West; and *Ballaçate* on the East. *Linschoten* calls it *Idalcan*, from the Title of its King; it is now by *Europeans* commonly named the Kingdom of *Visapor*, from its chief City of that Name. The King *Idalcan* was a most formidable Enemy to the *Portuguese*, and attacked *Goa* with 70000 Men.

VISAPOR, the chief City of this Kingdom, stands a great way within Land, upon the River *Mogeu* or *Degazim*, and is of very large Extent,

even 20 Miles in Circumference, but then the Houses are scattered wide; 'tis however surrounded with Walls and 1000 pieces of Cannon, besides five strong Forts; a mighty piece of Ordinance in this Place is much talked of, being able to carry a Bullet of 800 weight: In the middle of the City stands the Kings Palace, which is a Castle strongly Fortified, and guarded by 2000 Men. On the same River somewhat lower, stand *Solapour* and *Paranda*. On the Coasts stand *Wingzerli* or *Mingrela*, a *Dutch* Factory near *Goa*. *Bardes*, the Capital of a small Country thence Denominated; and Fort *de Aguade* nearer *Goa*, belonging to the *Portuguese*. *Canapaton* more Northward; *Centapur*; and *Dabul* in the Lat. of 17. 45. a Place of good Trade for Pepper and Salt, but somewhat diminished by the Neighbourhood of *Goa* and *Suratt*, in the middle between which it stands.

The Revolution or rather new State erected here in the last Age by *Sevagy*, is so considerable, that we cannot omit giving the Reader a short account of it, as we find it related by *Tavernier* and *Thevenet*.

SEVAGY, who was the Son of a Captain of the King of *Visapores* Guards, and born at *Bessaim*, was of a restless turbulent Spirit, and rebelled in his Fathers life time, putting himself at the Head of a Parcel of *Rasboores*, (which are like *Banditti*) and lived in Power in the Mountains. The King punishing the Sons fault in the Person of the Father, committed him to Prison where he Dyed, for which *Sevagy* resolved to be revenged, and therefore the more furiously pursued his Depredations, and by the Booty that he got in Plunder, he soon grew formidable enough to seize some Towns, and erect a little State, and resolved to Wage perpetual War with the King. But the King being Dead, the Queen Regent complying with some of his Demands, obtained Peace. Hence he turned his Arms upon the *Mogul's*, and plundered some places belonging to that Emperor, who immediately sent an Army against him, but the *Raja* skulking in the Mountains, and by surprizes and Stratagems wearying and outwitting the Emperors Army, they were forced to retire. He then entered upon that bold Action, the Plundering of *Suratt*, which he effected by the hasty and silent march of one Part of his Army, whilst the other lay Encampt to Face the Enemy, and make an appearance that the whole Army was there. That wealthy City was rifled for 4 Days together, by the 4000 Men he brought with him, whilst the Inhabitants fled, and left it to his Mercy. The *English* and *Dutch* saved their Factories by the force of their Guns and Courage, and the Monastery of *Capuchins* by the power of entreaty was not touched; every House else was plundered, and an inestimable Wealth carried off, the Cowardly Governour shutting himself up in the Castle all the time. This happened in the Year 1664. and as it was a sensible Affliction to the Great *Mogul*, he resolved to revenge it, but the State of his other Affairs not permitting him to do it by publick Force, he purposed to effect *Sevagy's* Ruine by private cunning. He therefore appeared to applaud his Courage, and expressed a desire to see so great a Man, promising him Protection if he came to Court. *Sevagi* had the Courage to accept this offer, and having put his Army under a good Commander, with orders to be always upon the Guard, he boldly went to Court, where he was



was to all appearance kindly received; but after some Months, perceiving a coldness in the King, he openly complained of it, and told the King himself, that he apprehended he had a Design to put him to Death, altho' he came to Court without constraint, and under the Protection of the Royal Parole; at the same time letting him know, he had left those behind him that would Revenge his Death; The King fearing to hurt him, lest it should cause an Insurrection of the *Raja's*, assured him he designed him great Honours, and proposed to him to march with him to the Siege of *Candabar*, which *Sevagy* promised, provided he might Command his own Forces, the King agreed to that, and at the *Raja's* request, gave him Passports for their coming to him: But he used these Passports to another purpose, for by the help of them he got Horses to be aid for him, at such Stages as he appointed, and then privately (with his Son who had been with him all the while) got out of Town, and crossing the Rivers, mounted the Horses that were ready for them, and rode Day and Night till he came to his Army. My Author, who is *Thevenot*, carries the Story no further, for this happened but a little before he was in *India*, which was in the Year 1666. But our Merchants who have been there since, tell us he was a potent Enemy to the *Mogul* all his Life time; and *Gimelli* who was there in 1695. tells us his Successor the third in Descent named *Ramrao*, was able to bring into the Field 50000 Horse and as many Foot, of much better Soldiers than any the Great *Mogul* has. That he maintained continual Wars with both the *Mogul* and the *Portuguese*, and was Lord of all the Coast from *Chaul* to *Goa*, which is a space of near 200 Miles, and within Land to *Visiapor*, and had Forts all over the Country, in inaccessible Mountains, besides good Cities and Towns exceeding well Fortified.

Northward from hence between *Cuncan* and the *Mogul's* Frontiers, lies the Kingdom of *DECAN* strictly so called, small of its self, though it gives the general Name to all these Countries, for its Breadth is not above 60 Miles, and its Length from East to West about twice as much. *Golconda* is its Eastern Boundary, and on the West a narrow Tract of it extends to the Sea; the chief Towns are *Chaul*, on the Sea-coasts in the 19th Deg. Lat. at the Mouth of a River which makes a large Haven, taken by the *Portuguese* and very well fortified, having a Castle that is esteemed impregnable: the Trade of this Place is diminished through the neighbourhood of the *English* and *Dutch*; but the *Portuguese* retain it, and are at a great expence in maintaining a Garrison in it. *Danda* and *Sefardon* are two other Ports in this Kingdom: and within Land are, *Andanagar*, seated on the River *Guenga*, towards the Confines of *Golconda*, sometime the residence of the King: and *Bider*, by some reckoned the Metropolis of the Kingdom; but *Sanson* names *Kerky* so: and the ancient Travellers speak of the City *Decan* as the chief, and make it a strong and well built City with a noble Palace; though 'tis probable they mean *Andanagar*, which is

sometimes called *Danaga*, and by Strangers might be corrupted into *Decan*, with the Name of the Kingdom.

*BALLAGATE*, is a small Kingdom seated among the Mountains of *Gate*, whence it is denominated; between *Decan* on the North; *Cuncan* on the West; *Golconda* on the East; and *Bijnagar* on the South. This Kingdom being reduced by the Great *Mogul*, has been spoken of in our account of his Empire.

Having given an Account of the Western Part of this Peninsula, we proceed now to the Eastern; from the Frontiers of the *Mogul's* Empire to Cape *Comorin*, on the East side the Mountains of *Gate*, where we meet with many Names of Countries, as *Narsinga*, *Golconda*, *Delli*, *Bijnagar*, *Coromandel*, &c. but the whole seems properly to be divided but into two Kingdoms, viz. *Golconda* and *Bijnagar*, and three Principalities, viz. of *Tanjouwer*, *Gingi* and *Madura*; *Coromandel* and the *Fishing-Coast*, being general Names of the Coast of all this Country.

*GOLCONDA*, is the North-East part of this Peninsula, and situate between the *Mogul's* Countries on the North and North-East; the Bay of *Bengall* on the East; *Decan* and *Ballagate* on the West; and *Bijnagar* and *Coromandel* on the South. The famous River *Guenga* divides it from the *Mogul's* Dominions on the North, and the Mountains of *Gate* are its Boundary on the West. This Kingdom was formerly called *Orixa*, from a Province on the East towards *Bengall*, which was sometime part of it; but has been conquered by the *Mogul* and intirely cut off; and by that means the Extent of the Kingdom is much restrained, being, instead of 330 Miles in Length, as *J. du Barros* represents it, now not above 200 Miles. The Name of *Golconda* is taken from a strong Fortrefs to which the King retired when in Danger from the *Mogul*. The Country is very fruitful, yielding Rice, Fruits, Indigo, Cassia the best in *India*, says *Tavernier*, Pasture and Cattle in great plenty: But that which chiefly recommends this Country is the Mines of Diamonds, the richest in the World. These were discovered about a hundred Years ago by accident (a Country fellow finding one at Plough) and were immediately seized on by the King, who Farms them out for a vast yearly Rent, even 300 thousand \* *Pagoda's*, says my Author, and yet retains to himself all the large ones that are above twenty Carats in weight. This rendered the King very powerful, but he was often attacked by the Great *Mogul*, who envied him this Possession. He was an absolute Prince, Heir to all his Subjects, and Master of their Lives; but all this has not been able to protect him; for the Great *Mogul*, by continual Warring upon him, has at length got the Victory: and for some Years last past, he has been confined in an honourable Imprisonment, the *Mogul* possessing his Country. The People are of an Ingenious and Virtuous Disposition, except where Trade debauches them, and therein they sometimes recede from the Morality they are generally noted for:

\* The *Pagoda* is a piece of Gold, of which there are old and new ones, the old ones are of most value, being worth 5 and a half *Roupies*, whereas the new are but four *Roupies*, (*Threvent*.)



They are reckoned exquisite in the Painting of Caricatures. The Air is extreme Hot, but the Land is well watered with Rivers and Lakes, and besides they contrive large Receptacles for Water in the rainy Monsoon, which they let out at pleasure to water the Fields in the most sultry Season. The chief Cities and Places are, *Bagnagar* the Metropolis, seated in a very long Plain, surrounded by high Hills at some distance, in 17 D. 10 M. Lat. 15 Leagues from *Visapur* to the East. The City together with the Suburbs, is above three Miles in Length, and is very populous, being inhabited by rich Bankers, Jewellers and skilful Artists, among whom are *Persians*, *Armenians* and *Europeans*. The *English* and *Dutch* have Factories here. In the Suburbs, which is called *Erangabad*, dwell the Tradesmen and Merchants, none but Gentry and Nobility inhabiting the City. The Houses of the common People are low and ordinary, having Earth Walls with flat Terrass-roofs to take the Air upon, but the dwellings of the Gentry are fine. The City is adorned with several Meidans or Squares; The Kings Palace, A sort of Castle called the four Towers, and many fair Gardens. Of the Meidans, that adjoining to the Palace is the fairest, being surrounded with Terras Walks and Ballustres, adorned with two Tribunals for the Coronals or Ordinary Judges, and two fair Basons of Water. In the middle of this Square within view of the Palace, the Elephants are made to Fight, having at first a Wall betwixt them, which when their Fury is raised, they throw down and encounter with great rage. The Palace is 350 Paces in length, the Walls of Stone adorned with Turrets, and the inside is accounted to be very beautiful, but Strangers are not permitted to enter it. There are such reservatories for Water, that it is made to rise to the highest Apartments, and the Terrassed roofs are built upon such Arches, that there are fine Gardens on them, and as some report, Trees of wonderful Magnitude growing in them. The four Towers is a square Building of 10 Fathom broad and seven high, which is entered on every side by large Arches. At the Corners stand the four Towers which are 10 Fathom high, and well adorned with Galleries and Arches. To the tops of these Towers the Water is raised, and thence conveyed through Pipes to the Palace. The Gardens are large, and made pleasant by long shady Walks of Palm and Arecia Trees, many Ponds or Basons of Water, together with Fruit-Trees, and some few Flowers. At two Leagues distance stands the Castle of *Golconda*, where the King usually resided, and kept the Royal Treasury. It is of large Compass, even 12 Miles say some Authors, the Walls of Stone built round about a high Hill, whose top appears like a Sugar-loaf in the middle, the Walls are surrounded with deep Ditches divided into *Tanque's* or Ponds full of fresh and clear Water, provided with five round Towers, which we may call Bastions, all well furnished with Cannon. The Situation of this place, with respect to the Water, Soil and Climate, as well as the Strength, particularly recommended it to the King's approbation, and caused the whole Kingdom to be denominated from it. This Fortrefs after a Siege of nine Months was taken by *Aurang-Zeb* in the Year 1686. The King taken Prisoner, and I suppose the whole Kingdom subjected to the *Mogul*. *Condapet*, an impregnable Fortrefs of large Extent, comprehending great Fields of Rice, and Orchards of Fruit Trees, but so surrounded with Rocks, as to be inaccessible.

*Candavera* another strong Fortrefs; as is also *Bellumconda*, and sixty three others conveniently seated on the Frontiers all round the Kingdom, and mostly built on Rocks; but the most noted Place of all is *Gani* or *Coulour*, for the sake of the Diamond Mines in its Neighbourhood; the Country about is craggy and mountainous, and formerly so thinly inhabited, that this was but a very poor Village, though now a very large Trading Town, which it must needs be, since there are (says *Tavernier*) 60000 People employed in the Mines: This Town is 160 Miles distant from *Golconda* to the East, and 180 North from *Matfuiipatan*, a Port at the Bay of *Bengall*, at the Mouth of the River *Nagundi* the Southern Limit of the Kingdom; which is the chief Place for Foreign Traffick in all this Kingdom, altho' it be small, it is well peopled, the Streets are narrow, and the Houses built of Wood. The Trade consists chiefly in *Chites*, and the Haven is extraordinary good. *Guadivari* gives Name to the Cape, on the East of *Matfuiipatan*. *Binilipatan*, a small Port with a *Dutch* Factory, and *Mancheapatam* more Northward on the same Bay.

### OF the DIAMOND MINES.

Having all along been careful to give the Reader such pieces of Natural History of the Countries we have passed through as are generally desired to be known, we cannot omit a short account of the Diamond Mines, which we shall choose to do out of a Tract upon that Subject extant in N<sup>o</sup> 136. of the Philosophical Transactions, which seems to be written by one that was an eye Witness of what he wrote. The parts of the World known to contain Diamonds are, the Island *Borneo*, and the Continent of *India* intra, and extra *Gangem*. Whereof those supposed to be in *Pegu* are not wrought, because the King suspects the discovery of such Wealth would tempt his Neighbours to invade him. The Diamond Mines in this Continent of *India*, intra *Gangem*, are generally adjacent to the rocky Hills and Mountains which run quite through it. And 'tis supposed all those Mountains contain them, but the greatest part of them being possessed by petty *Raja's* of ancient *Hindows*, who hold no Commerce with the *Moors*, 'tis not known that they dig for them, but rather believed they forbid it, for the same reason as the King of *Pegu*. But in the Kingdoms of *Golconda* and *Visapur*, there are so many Mines worked, as may supply all the World, and many more forbid to be wrought, to avoid their being too common. In the Kingdom of *Golconda* there are 23 Mines employed, whereof that of *Coloure* or *Quoloure* was the first made use of, and afforded great Numbers of very good Stones, but it is now almost exhausted. But *Currure*, which the King has taken from a neighbouring *Hendown Raja*, is the most famed for large Stones. *Milwellee*, or the new Mine, because found out but in the Year 1670. Affords the greatest quantity and well shaped Stones, but then they are but very small. *Muddenburg* far exceeds all the rest for Diamonds of a delicate shape and Water, and of various sizes, some very large. But the Water there is so bad, that it destroys the Health of those that Drink it, which makes few Adventure to Work it. In these that we named and in many of the others, which 'twould be tedious to enumerate, the Diamonds are found scattered in the



the Earth, and within two or three Fathom of the Surface. Whereas in others, as at *Wazzergerre*, *Munnemurg*, *Jonagerre*, *Purville*, &c. they are found to lye in a Mineral in the bodies of the Rocks 40 or 50 Fathom deep, in which case they dig into the Rock five or six Foot deep, and then by Fire soften the Stone, and so proceed, till they find the Vein which runs under the Rock frequently two or three Furlongs. All the Earth is brought out, and being carefully examined, afford Stones of a large size, and pretty good Water, but of ill shapes. The Earth where the Diamonds are found is of a yellowish, or in some places reddish colour, and sometimes adheres to the Stone, with strong a crust that 'tis difficult to get it off. To find the Stones, the Workmen build a sort of Cistern of Stone made tight with Clay or Earth, and the Walls which are the sides of it supported by strong Banks, having a Vent or small passage on one side, a little above the bottom, which is only plugged; then they throw into it all the Earth they have dug, and pour Water upon it sufficient to Dissolve it all, which they hasten by breaking the Clods and stirring it about; thus keeping it in motion, the lighter part is carryed off in Mudd, when the vent hole being opened let's out the Water, thus they continue washing till it be pretty clean, and then in the middle of the Day, when the Sun is at full Height, they very carefully look over all the Sand, at which they are so expert, that the smallest Stone cannot escape them. They never make their search but at that time of the Day, because the steady brightness of the Sun assists them very much to discover the Diamonds, whereas a Cloud intervening would make them slip them over. The Undertakers are fain to watch their Labourers with great Care, lest they conceal what they find, and are even fain to be careful that their Labourers expose not a Stone of larger size, which if the Governour should hear of, he would seize it for the King. The Governours of the Mines covenant with the Adventurers, that all the Stones they find under a *Pagoda* Weight shall be their own, but the great ones above that Weight to be for the King. A *Pagoda* is nine *Mangelleens*, and a *Mangelleen* is five Grains and three fifths, whereas a *Carat* is four Grains. These Governours use the Adventurers and Miners very Tyrannically, and by squeezing and Taxing keep them always very Poor, at least they are always forced to appear so to avoid their Gripping, 'tis is spoken of *Golconda*, for in *Vijapore* they are kindly treated and permitted to enjoy their own. This Trade is almost wholly carryed on by *Banneans* of *Guzerat*, and the workers in the Mines are all *Gentiles*, no *Mos*'s ever applying themselves to it.

*BISNAGAR*, lies on the South of *Golconda*, beginning at *Matfulipatan* and the River *Nagundi*, and runs Southward as far as *Cape Comorin*, six hundred Miles in Length; but it is now contracted; for *Gingi*, *Madura* and *Tanjouwar*, that were formerly Provinces governed by this Kings Officers, are at present separate Principalities under Homage only to him: Westward 'tis stretched out over the Mountains, as far as the *Indian* Sea, and comprehends *Canara* already described next to *Malabar*: So that at present we shall confine our selves to the Kingdom of *Bisnagar* on the East side the Mountains, (which excluding the Principalities) is about 250 Miles from North to South, bounded by the Mountains on the West, and the Bay of *Bengall* on the East. The Soil is fruitful, being well watered with Rivers, the Pastures covered

with Cattle, and the Forests filled with Lyons, Tigers, Elephants, Boars and Staggs. The Air is extreme Hot at all times, but in the Winter (which is distinguished only by great Rains for three Months together) the Nights are severely Cold; and as we observed before, the Seasons here are directly contrary to what they are in *Malabar*, though it be in the same Latitude. The Inhabitants are well shaped, Tawny Complexioned, of effeminate Lazy Tempers, but the Manufacturers are ingenious in making and painting Calicoes, which is the chief Trade of the Country. The King assumed mighty Titles, and was in effect a powerful Prince. *J. du Barros* and other Authors tell us, he brought an Army of near eight hundred thousand (whereof 34000 Horse) besides 600 Elephants, against *Idalcan*: And *Barboza* says there are 900 Elephants and 100 thousand Men constantly maintained for the Guard of the Kingdom; to furnish which Expence, he has the fortune to have some Diamond Mines in his Dominions, but his grandeur is diminished.

The whole Kingdom (excluding *Canara*) may be divided into two Parts, viz. *BISNAGAR* properly so called, and *COROMANDEL*. The former being the Inland Country, and the latter the Sea-Coasts. The chief Cities of *Bisnagar* are the Capital of the same Name, or otherwise called *Chandegry*, thought to be the *Madura* of *Ptolomy*: it is a very large City, seated on a Hill near the Banks of the River *Nagundi*, in the Heart of his Dominions, and therefore the usual Seat of the King; it is guarded by a strong Citadel and three Walls. *Narsinga*, seated also on the *Nagundi*, below *Chandegry*, is also a large City, and so considerable, that the whole Kingdom is frequently Denominated from it, and was sometime the Regal Seat. *V'elour*, another large City, whence the Kingdom is sometimes named. *Chativero* is the Seat of a Prince of this Country. *Cirangapatam* Southward from *Chandegry*. *Pelagonga*, a very large City near *Bisnagar*; and *Tripity* on account of its famous *Indian* Temple ought not to be omitted; it stands on a high Mountain, and is resorted to from all parts of the Kingdom: Great droves of Monkeys are kept in it as sacred and highly revered; and even the King preserves a Tooth of one of those Animals as a precious Relick.

*COROMANDEL*, is extended along the Coasts of the Bay of *Bengall*, from the Limits of *Golconda* to those of *Madura*, that is, from the 16th to the 15th Deg. of Northern Lat. some extend it much farther both North and South, but this seems to be its truest Bounds. 'Tis so fruitful in Rice, that *Texeira* says, it took its Name from that; yet at some times for want of usual Rains the People perish through Famine, and sell themselves into Slavery for Food. The Inhabitants make fine Calicoes and Muslings, with which they purchase the Commodities of other Nations, or rather by selling them to the *English* and other *Europeans* are enriched so as to be able to purchase all Foreign Necessaries. The Coast has many commodious Havens, which makes it a Place of great Traffick, but the Ports are mostly in the Hands of *Europeans*, the *English* especially have *Madraspatan* and the Fort of *St. George*, whereof more in its place.

The chief Towns proceeding from North to South are these. *Matfulipatan* or *Massalapatan*, although already mentioned in our accounts of *Bisnagar*, be-



cause seated on the North side of the River *Nagundi*, which parts that Kingdom from this, is yet by Geographers reckoned in the Limits of *Coromandel*: But it is however in the Hands of the King of *Golconda*, and is his Mart for Diamonds, being indeed the chiefest for that Commodity in all the *Indies*; and therefore the place is much resorted to, and the *English* and *Dutch* have constant Factories in it. 'Tis a large well built and beautiful City, but the Houses stand stragling at distance from each other: wherein resides a Governour annually deputed by the King of *Golconda*, who lives in great State and Splendour; the Customs of this Port are reckoned to amount to 14000 *Pagoda's* per Annum. And the Town is seated, as we have said, at the Mouth of the River *Nagundi*, on the Bay of *Bengell*, in the Lat. of 16 D. 30 M. *Pentapuli* or *Petty-Pole*, about 20 Miles more Southward, stands on a Promontory washed by a large River, which winding about makes it a *Peninsula*, and falls into the Bay of *Bengell*; it is a Port of somewhat difficult Access, and a place of Trade for Cloths, *Pindira's*, *Bettelea's*, &c. The Inhabitants are of different Nations, and the Town is Tributary to the King of *Golconda*: The *English* have a Factory here, as have also the *Dutch*. *Carceiro*, *Calicour* and *Penne*, smaller Towns, are noted for a Plant used in Dying. *Fort Guelárie*, a Fort and Factory of the *Dutch*, stands a few Miles up the Country; 'tis strongly Fortified, secured by a good Garrison, and is the Seat of their Trade in these parts, and therefore may be reckoned the chief Factory. But the Goods are shipped off at *Palicatea* Town ten Miles off, that stands at the Mouth of a River on the Sea Coast possessed also by the *Dutch*: but the Haven is not a very good one. + *Meliapur* famous in Ecclesiastical History for the Martyrdom of *St. Thomas* the Apostle, who planted Christianity in these parts; was formerly the chief City of *Coromandel*: but being ruined, the *Portuguese* in the Year 1523. began to Rebuild it, and in the Ruins of an ancient Church, they found (at least they affirm so) the Bones of the Apostle, which were immediately enshrined, and the new City named *St. Thomas*, which is a place of considerable Trade for Calicoes and such Linnens of a finer Colour than any other. The *French* seized this place about 30 Years ago, and held it for sometime, but were at last beaten out by the *Moors*.

*Madraspatam*, seated on the same Coast a few Miles Northward from *St. Thomas*, in the 14th. Deg. of Lat. is a Town possessed by the *English*, and more known by the name of the Fort denominated from our Champion *St. GEORGE*, in which resides the Governour, and General Factory for all the concerns of the *East-India* Company, beyond *Cape Comorin*, upon the Continent of *Golconda*, *Bengal* and *Pegu*. The *English* Town is surrounded with a strong Wall, the Sea washes the East side of it, a broad Ditch the South and West, and on the North side lies the *Indian* Town; The Fort stands in the middle, which as well as the Town, is of Quadrangular form, with four Bastions raised very high: and in the middle of it, stands the Governours House, a noble Structure of Stone and well adorned: the Bastions of both the Town and Fort are well mounted with Cannon, and the Place is very strong: The Governour lives in very great State, and in compliance with the Custom of those Countries, never goes abroad without a great attendance of Factors and Merchants, Servants and Guard, Drums and

Trumpets, and several Palankeens or Sedans of Ladies; he has a constant Guard of 300 or 400 *Moors*, and raises 1500 Men at Summons; besides the Garrison, which consists of 700 Soldiers in constant pay. This Place has been possessed by the *English* near 100 Years under an annual Tribute to the King of *Golconda*: The *Indian* Town as we have said, lies on the North side of the Fort, and is sometimes called *Maderass*; it consists of divers Streets of neat but low Houses inhabited by the *Moors*. Since the *Portuguese* have been beaten out of *St. Thomas*, they have been entertained at *Fort St. George*, and a Chapel appointed for their Worship.

*Pontichery*, a small Town and Fort where the *French* have a Factory; is seated on the same Coast, a little below *Meliapur*. This place was taken by the *Dutch* in the former War, but restored to the *French* by the Treaty of *Ryswick*, and being an inconsiderable place has not been attempted this War; and for ought appears they still possess it.

*Tirepolier*, in the Latit. 11. 45. is a Fort and Factory of the *Dutch*, being near *Carcal*, where they have a House. *Negapatam*, which in the *Indian* Language signifies the Town of Snakes, because of the number of those Reptiles found here; is the most Southern Port of *Coromandel*, seated upon the Sea Coast in the 10. D. 45. M. of Lat. and washed by a large River, but however no good Harbour; the *Portuguese* did possess it till 1650. that the *Dutch* took it from them, and notwithstanding the Attacks of the *Naique* of *Tanjourwar* still retain it. Not far from them, the *Danes* have a Fort named *Tranguebar*; and also the *English* have a Fort named *St. David*, seated on the Coast not far South from *Negapatam*. *Tavernier* in his Journey through this Country, gives us the names of many Inland Towns of *Coromandel*, but those being not frequented by *Europeans*, nor in themselves considerable we shall omit, and only say, that at every 20 or 30 Miles distance there are Towns. Villages, or *Pagods*, i. e. Heathenish Temples, all over the Country.

The three Principalities or *Naiques* of *GINGI*, *TANJOURWAR* and *MADURA*, take up the rest of this Peninsula, extending from the Frontiers of *Bisnagar* and *Coromandel* to *Cape Comorin*. They were heretofore, as we have said, part of the Kingdom of *Bisnagar*, but the Governours have now thrown off the Obedience, and are Absolute Princes.

The most Northern of them is *GINGI*, a small Country on the West of *Coromandel*, towards the Mountains of *Gate*, and adjoining to *Bisnagar*. The chief City of the same Name, stands in the Lat. of 11. 30. and about 80 Miles from the Sea: a large and populous City, the Seat of the *Naique*, who is a rich Prince, and his Country a fruitful Land; the Inhabitants make fine Calicoes, and receive in exchange for them all the Foreign Commodities they want. *Cidambran* is another principal City of this Country, and notable for the many Magnificent *Pa-gods* and *Gentile* Devotions paid there.

*TANJOURWAR*, lies on the South and East of *Gingi*, taking its Name from the City where the *Naique* resides, situate near *Negapatam*, in the middle of his Dominions, which are not much larger than those of *Gingi*. *Nagapatam*, possessed by the *Dutch*; and *Tranguebar* by the *Danes*; and Fort *St.*

*David*



*David*, already mentioned, are by some reckoned to stand in the Limits of this Princes Dominions.

The Naique or Principality of *MADURA*, lies more to the South, extending from the Confines of *Tanjour* to *Cape Comorin*, and comprehending the Coast commonly called the *FISHING-COAST* from the Fishing for Pearl, which is the chief employment of the Inhabitants; who dive into the Water and bring up the Oysters, which being opened yield many Pearls: but these are a small sort, and the Employment is not very profitable, wherefore would not be followed, but that the Country is Barren, and they have no better Livelihood. The chief Cities are *Madura*, thought to be the *Modura* of *Ptolemy*, a large Place and the usual Residence of the Naique; seated at the foot of the Mountains, in the Latit. of 9. 45. *Tutecory*, seated in the middle of this Coast, a handsom well built Town, subject to the Dutch since the Year 1651. *Cailpatam*, a famous Market for Pearls. *Manoncor*; *Trichandur*; *Manapar* and *Jacancury*, are all Port Towns on the Straight of *Manor*.

Thus have we Travelled round this Peninsula, and viewed all its Countries and chief Cities, wherein we have made use of the best Lights that are given us by Travellers and Geographers. But must own, The Revolutions that have happened here by the Wars of one Prince upon another, but chiefly the Conquests of the *Mogul*; have made great Alterations in the Limits of Kingdoms, Power of the Princes, and condition of Cities and Towns; thus *Calcut* which was formerly so eminent a City, is now an inconsiderable Town; and the Kings of *Geleconda* and *Bisnagar*, that were lately such Potent Monarchs, are now reduced to a low Estate, and the former is even a Prisoner to the *Mogul*. But these Revolutions having not been particularly related by Travellers, and our Merchants frequenting only the Coasts, we have not been able to obtain a better account than is here given, which we hope is not very much different from the present State of the Country.

We shall next proceed to the other Peninsula, seated on the East of the Bay of *Bengall*; and stiled the Peninsula of *India* beyond the River *Ganges*.

# INDIA

Beyond the River

# GANGES.

For a Map consult that of the *MOGUL's* Empire, to which this is annexed.

**T**HIS Large Tract of Land, which we call by the general Name of *INDIA* without or beyond the *Ganges*, comprehends three large Empires, and very many petty Kingdoms, or rather a great number of small Kingdoms Subject or Tributaries to the three Empires of *AVA* and *PEGU*. *SYAM* under which *Malacca* and *Cambodia* are Comprized. *TONKIN*, and *COCHINCHINA* or the *Anamitick* Empire, as *Sanfon* calls it.

The main Land is seated between the 10th and the 35th Degrees of North Latitude, and between the 110th and 130th Degrees of Longitude. To which must be added the Peninsula of *Malacca*, which shoots out Southward, to within two Deg. of the Equinoctial Line.

The Boundaries of the whole are, *Tartary* on the North, *China* on the East, the *Mogul's* Empire on the West, and the *Indian Ocean* on the South.

It is in general a Low Countrey between Mountains; furnished with many Rivers, especially

four Large ones, the *Caor*, the *Cosmin*, the *Capuma* or *Pegu*, and the *Menan*, which flow from the Great Lake *Menan*, on the Northern Frontiers, and running quite thro' the middle of the Land, fall into the Sea. These Rivers are so enlarged by the melted Snows off the Mountains on the Confines of *Tartary*, as to overflow the Land, at least the Southern part every year, which enriches the Soil, and renders it Fertile in all common Fruits, Rice and Herbs. But as to any extraordinary produce of this Land, I find not any credible Testimony, especially that it abounds with Gold (as the Name of *Aurea Chersonesus* given by the Ancients to the *Malacca* Peninsle seems to Promise) does not at all appear. 'Tis true, the situation between *India* and *China*, the neighbourhood to the Spice Islands, and the no vast distance from *Japan*, together with the many convenient Bays and Harbours on the Coasts renders it convenient for Trade, and therefore the *Portuguese* and the *Dutch* made Settlements at divers places on the Coasts, and have reaped great Profit by the Commerce.



## Of the Monarchy of P E G U and A V A.

**T**HE Geography of the Northern part of this Country is less known, than is that of the Countries we have passed through, for it lyes so much within Land, that no modern Travellers have visited it, and therefore the best we can do is to put the old Accounts in the truest Light we are able.

The King of PEGU was formerly Supreme Lord of the greatest part, having no less than twenty other Kingdoms besides his own of Pegu under his Dominion. But we are told that Monarchy is pulled down by the several Invasions of the two powerful Kings of AVA and STAM. The former of which at this Day, either actually Possessing, or feudally Commanding all the Countrey between India on the West; China on the East; Tartary on the North; Syem on the South; and Tonquin on the South-East, which is an extent of at least 1000 Miles from North to South, and above 400 from East to West. A Land so well watered with Rivers, that it must needs be Fruitful; and in effect we are told it produces all things necessary to Life; together with Rubies and Musk, as Doctor Heylin tells us, as also Topaz, Amethysts, Jacynths and Sapphires, according to Sceron; And Elephants and Rhinoceros are very numerous here.

The Principalities or Kingdoms which composed the Monarchy of PEGU, are thus named by Baudrand, viz.

PEGU. MARTABAN. TANGU. TIPOURA. TRANSLANE. ABDIRA. BACAT. CASSUBI. CHACOMAS. ZANGOMA. LARGART. MANDRANELLE. MANAR. MOANTAT. PRON. TAZATAT. LAVAT. TOTAT. VILEP. CABLAN. CAOR.

To which are now added the Monarchy of AVA, which comprehended the Kingdoms of

AVA. ARACAM. BRAMA. CANARENE. COMOTAT and MARSIN.

Our Maps are not particular enough to shew us the Situation and Limits of all these Districts: By shewing the Seat of the chief Cities, that we can obtain information of, the Reader will find the general sit of the several Provinces, which is all that we can give him.

AVA, the Capital of the Kingdom to which it gives name, stands on the River Caypuno or Pegu, in the Latitude of 20 Deg. or according to some Maps in the 25th. Deg. The King keeps his Court here, and it is a Place of Trade for Jewels and Musk.

PEGU, the Capital of the Kingdom of that name, stands on the Western Bank of the River Caypuno (which is also denominated from this City,) near its mouth, into a Bay of the Sea in the Latitude of 18 Deg. well seated for Trade, and resorted to by European Merchants, the Traffick on the Natives part, is Ginger, Rice and Silver, which they give for the Spice, Silks, Calicoes, and other Goods. The City was used to be honoured with the King's Court, but since the King of Ava, has had the Dominion, 'tis probable 'tis less constantly here. This King according to the old Relations, was exceeding powerful even next to the King of China, and capable of bringing an Army of 1500000 Men, and 800 Elephants into the Field, as Gasp. Balbi related about 100 Years ago. The City was divided into two Parts, whereof one Part was the King's Court only, and the other Part well inhabited by Merchants. This Country is exceeding fruitful in Rice and other Grains, affordeth also Rubies, Civer, Lacca, and a great Numbers of Elephants, among which some White ones, which being a great Rarity, the King gives it as an addition to his Titles, and the King's Dominions extended very far, as will be seen by the many Nations we shall have occasion to mention, that were his Vassals.

MARTABAN, a small Kingdom subject to him, lies next to Pegu on the Sea-Coast to the South-east. The chief Town of the same name, stands near the Sea in Lat. 16. The Soil round about it is so Fertile, as to yield a treble crop of Rice as some relate, which enables them to send abroad great quantities of that Grain.

BREMA or BRAMA, another Kingdom within Land, formerly subject to Pegu now to Ava, a Place Dr. Heylin makes the Mother Country of the Bramins or old Indians, whence the present Priesthood descended. He extends this Countrey very far, even 150 Leagues one way, and twice as much another, comprising the Kingdoms of Ava, Tangu and others, as well as this under that denomination. The chief Town of the same name stands on the River Menan, in Lat. 20 Deg.

TANGU Kingdom adjoins to it on the South, and was a Place sometime notable in History for the Ambition of its Vice-roy, who A. D. 1467. setting up for himself, became Lord of this and the Neighbouring Countries, but the Succession lasted not; now subject to the King of Ava.

ARACAM, seated near the Sea-Coast at the mouth of the River Calmin, between Pegu on the South, and Bengall on the North-west. The Capital of a Kingdom which was sometime considerable, as taking



ing part with the Usurper of *Tangu* above mention'd in pulling down the King of *Pegu*. The Portuguese had made some Settlements hereabouts, at the beginning of the last Century, but were expelled. The Island *Sundiva* which they possessed, lay near adjacent to this Coast.

*VERMA*, an In-land Country on the Frontiers of *Bengall*, and on the North of *Arracham*.

*COMOTAGE*, on the North of *Verma*, and adjoining to *Mogulistan*, another small In-land Kingdom was formerly subject to *Pegu*, now to its own King. The chief City of the same name, stands on the River *Caor* in Lat. 28 D.

*CADR*, on the North of *Comatage*, formerly also subject to *Pegu*, but now to its own King; so perfectly In-land, that we know nothing of it. The Maps set down its chief City on the River of the same name, in Lat. 32 Deg. and 130 Miles South from the Lake *Chimay*.

*TOTAT*, whose chief Town of the same name, stands on the *Caor*, was also formerly subject to *Pegu*, now under its own Government.

*LARGARAY*, seated near the head of the River *Menan*, a little below its Efflux, from the Lake *Chimay*, in Lat. 33 Deg. is the Capital of another Kingdom subject to *Pegu*.

*TAVAY*, on the *Menan*.

*TAZATAT*, with in Land, both now under their own Government, tho' formerly subject to *Pegu*.

*TRANSIANA*, also now free, the chief City stands on the *Menan* River, in Lat. 26. Deg.

*TIPRA* or *TIPOURA*, lying between the two Rivers *Cosmin* and *Caypoumo*, with in Land, is also under its own Jurisdiction.

*CASSUBI*, adjoining to *Tipra* on the East, is also a Country which has thrown off the Government of *Pegu*.

*CANARANE*, named also *CAYPOUMO*, and thence the River otherwise call'd *Pegu* is denominat'd, a Country formerly under *Pegu*, but gained its freedom, however its King is still Feudatory to the King of *Ava*. Its chief City seated on the River *Pegu* in Lat. 24. is by *Baudrand* represented as a large well built Place, Populous and Rich, and esteem'd one of the best in these Countries.

*VILEP*, a small Kingdom under its own Government, lies on the South of *Canarane*.

*MANDRANELL*, a Country lying between *Cassubi* on the North, and *Taratay* on the South; the chief City seated on the *Pegu* River, is subject to the King of *Pegu*, as are also

*MOANTA* in the Mid-land, and *MANAR* upon the Frontiers of *Siam*, and on the River *Menan*.

Between *Brama* and the Frontiers of *Siam*, lies the Country named *JANGOMA*, possess'd by the People call'd *Laos*, a Stout and Warlike Nation, and their Country a rich and fertile Soil.

The Old Relations extant in *Hacklun*, render this King so excessive Rich, that when the King of *Tangu* took the City of *Pegu*, he found as much Treasure, as 600 Elephants could carry. What the present State of it is, we are not appriz'd; for as I said before, 'tis too much within Land to be visited by Strangers, and the Natives have never come amongst us.

## Of the Kingdom of

# S Y A M.

**T**HE Kingdom of *SYAM* or the Country of the *SIAOMS*, otherwise by themselves named the Country of *TAI*, or Free-men, as *Lonbire* tells us, extends from the Frontiers of *Jangoma* in the North, down to the City *Parani* in the *Isthmus*, which joins *Malacca* to the Continent, in the South; and on the East side of that Bay to the River *Chautebon*, which parts it from *Cambaya*; in Form like a Horse-shoe, round about the Gulph of *Syam*. In length on the West side, from the 7th. Deg. to the 22d. Deg. of Lat. which makes 900 Miles; and on the East side, from the 12 Deg. (in which the mouth of *Chautebon* River lies) to the 22d. which makes 600 Miles. And in breadth in the upper *Syam*, or the part above the Gulph, near 300 Miles: But in the lower *Syam*,

which is the *Isthmus* of *Malacca*, not above 100 Miles.

It is bounded with a Ridge of Mountains on the West, which divide it from *Pegu*; on the East by another Ridge of Mountains, which divide it from *Cochin-china*; on the North, another Mountain parts it from the Country of *Laos*; and on the South, *Malacca*, the Gulph of *Syam* and *Cambaya* are its Boundaries.

Thus Seated it is a large Valley, thro' the Bosom whereof the large River *Menan* flows, and receives divers other Rivers, which are so encreased by the melted Snows falling off the Mountains, that the whole Land is annually like *Egypt*, overflowed and made exceeding Fertile.



The Products of the Earth, are Rice, Cotton, Sugar, Cinnamon, but not right good; Pepper, but not in much plenty; and of Fruits, Tamarinds, Bananas, Mango's, Ananas, Coco, Limes, Jumbos a Fruit like a Citron, Lemons, Citrons, Oranges, and Pomgranates, and several others peculiar to the Country. Of Trees, the chief is the *Bambou*, which they use in Building; they have also the *Aquila* or *Aloes*, which is a very hard Wood and affords an excellent smell; the *Arec* and *Betele* Trees, which affords the Fruit and Leaf, which they chew continually; and divers others not known among us.

There appears great quantity of Gold in the Ornaments of their Temples, and large Images of that Metal, which give us room to believe there were anciently Mines of it in this Country; but if there were, they are exhausted; for divers *Europeans* employed by the King, could discover only Copper, a bad sort of Tin, such as the Tea-Canisters brought hither are made of, Chrystal, Antimony, Emeralds, white Marble, and Iron, in the Bowels of their Mountains. Mr. *Loubiere* indeed tells us that one Mr. *Vincens* a French-man of his Acquaintance, said he had found a rich Oar, which he judged to be Gold, but would not discover it.

The Iron Mines near *Campeng-pet*, are so excellent as to rise pure Steel, whereof excellent Scymitars, Ponyards, and Knives are made. But they are such bad Forge-Men, that they cannot make an Anchor, nor even Chizels or Saws.

Of Animals, here are found Elephants, Rhinoceros, Tygers, Deer, Buffaloes, Oxen, Cows, Goats, Sheep, Hogs, &c. Of Birds they have divers sorts of lovely and various colour'd Feathers, but 'tis observ'd there are none that have Musical Voice. They have both tame and Wild Fowl for Food, to those that will kill, but that part of the People that are of the *Bramin* Faith, are much displeased to see them catch'd.

Their Earth is a sort of Mud and Clay, as the Waters leave it after the Inundation, which is easily Plow'd, and yields mighty Crops of Rice, so as to enable them to send great quantities abroad, to the neighbouring Islands and Countries, who for want of such Inundations are often reduced to Famine. The higher Land affords some Wheat, but they are not careful to propagate it, contenting themselves with Rice, neither is it indeed good, being too dry.

The People are a mixture of divers Nations, whom Flights from their own Countries, or the prospect of Gain has brought hither; for it is supposed the lowness of the Land, and the inconvenience of the annual Inundations, made the Country longer unpeopled than its neighbourhood; and in effect, they seem by their Form and Manners, to be of the extraction of *India*, *China*, *Tonquin*, &c. They are of rude unpolished Behaviour, unacquainted with the deeper Parts of Literature, which their natural Lazyness keeps them from penetrating into, altho' their Fancy be lively, and Apprehension quick. Their Children are taught to Read, Write and cast Account, by their *Talapains* or Priest, but further Learning they are not fond of; Poetry indeed employs their Wits, and Judicial Astrology with other Divination they are fond of. Altho' they are very Covetous, they are very Honest in Dealing; in Behaviour Courteous, but Puffilanimous, and Lazy; the Mechanics work little and not well, all desire to be Merchants, which with Fishery is their chief

Employment. The common People go almost naked, wearing only a painted Calico round their Waste and down to their Knees, but the better sort put on a Shirt, or Vest of Mulling, and sometimes a Mantle, with a Cap and Slippers: Notwithstanding they go thus almost naked, they are very Modest, and carefully conceal the Privy-Parts. They are in Stature of the smaller size, but well proportioned, and their Complexion Brown. Their Food is Rice and Fish, and their Drink, Water: Wine is not here produced, but being brought from *Schiras*, is drank by them with delight; but their common Debauch is in *Tari* and *Neri*, the juice of the *Coco* and *Arec*-Trees.

The King according to the Custom of the East, is an absolute Monarch; he gives the Land to whom he pleases, and takes it away when he will, wherefore no Families can be enobled by Estates. Nor is there any Nobility but by Offices, which the King confers and takes away at Pleasure; whence says *Loubiere*, 'tis no uncommon thing to see, the Son or Grandson of a Lord tugging at the Oar. All the Men in the Kingdom except the *Talapains* or Priests, are listed Soldiers, and bound to serve the King six Months; he Arms them; but they Maintain and Cloath themselves; and when no Wars are, he employs them in such Services as he thinks fit. Wherefore the People that are able, commute for this Service, and contract with him to be excused for a quantity of Rice, Aloes-wood, Elephants, Cattle or other Commodities, or Money. The King is the Grand Merchant of the Kingdom, and has the Monopoly of all the Staple Goods, as Tin, Ivory, Saltpetre, Sulphur, Lead, Sapan-wood, Arack, Arms and Skins, which he sells to the *Dutch*. He hath Taxes upon all Plow'd-Land, upon Boats, upon Furnaces that distil Arack, upon the Fruit-Trees, Customs upon Merchandize, and other considerable Revenues, which render him excessive rich, and his People extream poor.

In Religion the *Siamses* are stupid Idolaters, worship Images, and have very extravagant Dogmata: But in Morals their Doctrine is good, they are forbid to Lie, to Steal, to commit any sort of Impurity, to Drink Wine, or any intoxicating Liquor, or to Kill, which last they observe with great strictness, and eat no Beasts but what die naturally: They are commanded to fear God, fast on certain Days, and do no manner of Work on those Days; &c.

The Kingdom of *SIAM* is divided into the Upper and the Lower; the Upper which is the Northern Part, is subdivided into Seven Provinces, which bear the Name of the chief Cities, viz.

*Pourselouc*, *Sanquelouc*, *Lacontai*, *Campeng-pet*, *Conrepina*, *Pechebonne*, and *Pitchai*.

The Lower or Southern Part contains the Provinces of *Chantibon*, *Petelon* or *Birdelong*, *Tebiai*, *Tennesserim*, *Ligor*, *Patana*, and *Ihor*.

The Situation of these Provinces are thus,

*Pourselouc*, is the most Northern, the chief Town, is seated on the lesser River *Menan*, in the 20th. Deg. of Latit. A City of great Commerce, and Fortified with 19 Bastions.

*Sanquelouc*, lies on the West of it in the same Latitude, a considerable City.

*Lacontai*, on the South of *Sanquelouc*.

*Campeng-pet*, on the South of *Lacontai*, in Lat. 18 Deg. on the West side of the River *Menan*, the Province extending to the Frontiers of *Pegu*, famous for the fine Iron-Mines near it.

*Pe-*



*Peelebon, Cocon-repina, and Pitchai*, do not appear in the Maps, but may be supposed to lie on the East and South of those before named.

The Provinces of Lower *Siam*, marching from East to North-west, and then down Southward lie thus.

*Chantebon*, as *Loubier* calls it, but the common Maps name it *Liam*, stands at the mouth of the River of the same name, and near the Coast of the Gulph of *Syam*, in Lat. 12. on the extream East Part of *Syam*.

*Tenasserim*, lies on a River of the same name, that 15 Leagues below, falls into the Bay of *Bengall*, in the mouth of the *Isthmus* of *Malacca*, 180 Miles South-west from the City of *Syam*.

*Ligor* in the Peninsula, in the Gulph of *Syam*, near the Sea-Coast in the 8th. Deg. of Lat.

*Patana*, seated also on the same Bay, in the 6 Deg. 30 Min. of Lat. is reckon'd into the Dominions of this King, but it only pays him Homage, being governed by their own Magistrates, whose Chief is a Woman chosen by themselves, and always an old one that she may not Marry.

*Jor, Jhor* or *Fihor*, is the most Southern part of the Peninsula of *Malacca*, which, altho' the King of *Syam* may put into his Title, yields him no Obedience, being governed by its own King.

Having thus given you a general Geography of the Kingdom, we will proceed to as much particular as we can pick out with certainty.

The City of *SYAM*, otherwise named *ODIA* or *ODIOI*, and formerly called *INDIA*, is a large City seated in an Island, in the form of a Purse, made by the windings of the River *Menan*, in the 14 Deg. 20. M. Latit. Longit. 120 D. 30 M. The Streets are large and straight, and in some places paved with Bricks laid edg-ways. Most of the Streets are watered with Canals, over which are many sorry Bridges made of Hurdles, and some few of Brick. The Houses are low, built of Wood, according to the common method in this Country, raised 12 or 13 Foot from the Ground, upon Pillars of large Bambou's, to prevent inundation, with a sorry Ladder instead of Steps. They have usually but one Story, and where in Grandeur a difference is made of Apartments, the Floor of one Room is raised a step or two, and the

next Room as much, and so forward, every Apartment being proportionably more honourable, as it is raised. And therefore the Roofs are of different height, the Walls are but Hurdles hanged with painted Cloath, and the Floors the same cover'd with Matts or Carpets. In fine, the Houses appear near, but not at all Magnificent. This is the general manner of the Houses of the Natives; but the *Europeans* that have been amongst them have built Brick Houses, and some of the better sort have imitated them. Altho' every House stands upon much Ground, by the means of having but one Story, and withal are generally furnished with Gardens, yet not above a sixth part of the Ground within the Walls is built upon, but then the Walls go quite round the Island, which is 2300 French Fathoms long, and 1200 broad. The Kings Palace stands on the North side of the City, and is not of much better Structure than the rest, except that it is built partly of Brick.

*Louvo*, seated to the North of *Siam*, near the East Bank of the River *Menan*, is notable for the Kings Palace of Pleasure, where he has fine Gardens. This Palace is also built of Brick.

*Bancock*, seated in an Island of the *Menan*, about seven Leagues from the Mouth of that River into the Sea, is a Town of Note, and is secured by Forts on the Banks of the River. This is the place where Custom for Merchandize is paid.

On the Northern Frontiers of *Siam* towards *Pegu*, stands the City *Cambori*; and towards the Frontiers of *Laos*, the Town of *Corazema* both famous.

*Scotati*, in the Latitude of 16 Deg. near the *Menan*, is also a considerable City.

Thus we have extracted all that is proper to the purpose of this Work, out of the Relation of Monsieur *Loubiere*, and that of the six *French* Jesuits, who having been the latest Travellers thither, we thought most proper to be followed, and not being able to Collect more from them, finish here our Account of *Syam*, rather than Copy the uncertainties of hear say Informations.



# OF THE Peninsula of MALACCA; Or the Ancient Aurea Chersonesus.

**T**HE Neck of Land adjoining to *Syam* on the South, and stretching out S. E. to N. W. from the 1st to the 8th Deg. of N. Latitude, is now commonly called *Malacca*, from the City of that Name, and surrounded by the Sea on all sides but the North, where it joins to the Province of *Ligor* and *Patana* already mentioned in our account of *Syam*. A Country of about 300 Miles in length, and 150 in breadth. The *Portuguese* in 1511. planted themselves in it, and have ever since had some footing there, but the *Dutch* have mostly driven them out. The Air is exceeding hot, but the Soil however not bad, for it produces Rice, Fruits in great plenty, Cattle, Game of both sorts, wild as well as tame Fowl. And Elephants, Tygers, wild Boars, &c.

The Language of this Country is the most Copious and Polite of any in the *Indies*; and therefore is commonly used all over its parts, and is called the MALAYAN-Tongue. A Dictionary whereof has been lately Printed at *London*, by Captain *Bowry*.

The Country is divided into many small Kingdoms subject to their own Princes, but their Power is not considerable, and the *Dutch* and *Portuguese* have always lived undisturbed by them.

The City *MALACCA*, seated on the Western Coast, in the 2d Deg 30 M. Lat. in the straight which divides this Peninsula from the Island *Sumatra*, is 1800 Paces in Circumference, whereof 600 on the Sea side on the East side runs a River, and on the N. W. stands a Mountain, round which a Channel is cut from the Sea to the River, and thereby the City made an Island. It is strongly Fortified with high

and thick Walls, and a Fort on the other side the River. The *Portuguese* first Fortified it, but the *Dutch* who took it in 1640. now possess it. It is inhabited by 2 or 300 Families *Dutch* and *Portuguese*, together with *Malayans* and *Chinese* in the Suburbs. And is a handsome and populous Town, some of the Streets spacious, and the *Dutch* Houses of Stone, but the common Structure is of *Bamboo* and low. The walking Canes which we use in *England*, come mostly from this place. It is well supplied with Fish and Fruits, and is considerable for its convenient Situation for the Passage to *China* and *Syam*, but not very notable for its own Traffick. (*Dampier*.)

*Singapoura*, seated on the same Coast, about 100 Miles South-East from *Malacca*, is notable for giving Name to the Straights of *Sumatra*, and stands upon the most South point of all *Asia*. It was considerable for Trade before the building of *Malacca*, and had its own King.

*Ibor*, the Capital of a Kingdom which we spoke of in our account of *Syam*, stands at the point of this Continent below *Singapoura*. It was a large considerable City before the *Portuguese* in 1603. destroyed it. The King of it being thereby driven from thence built another City higher up the River, which he called *Batusabar*. (*Nieubuff*.)

*Pahang* and *Potingaram*, on the Eastern Coast are Port Towns. And

*Patana*, the Capital of a Kingdom which we mentioned in our account of *Syam*, is a noted Mart Town.

*Queda*, over against it on the Western Coast, is also a Port Town.

## OF CAMBODIA or CAMBOYA.

**C***ambodia*, lyes on the East side of the Bay of *Syam* on the North; *Cochinchina* on the East; and the Ocean on the South. The Western part is Mountainous and Desert, the midland lyes low, and has the River *Mecan* running quite through it from North to South, which overflows Annually, and drowns the neighbouring Lands. The Country yields Venison, Beef, Pork, Goats, Poultry. As also Oranges, Citrons, Mango's and Coco's, together with Rice in very great plenty.

It is governed by its own King, who is Tributary to the King of *Syam*. The chief City *Camboya* is seated on the River *Mecan*, in the 12th Deg. Lat. it consists of one large Street, built on a high ground to protect it from inundation. The *Portuguese* have a Factory here, and receive in Exchange for the Goods they bring, Rice, Wax, Lacque, Benzoin, Brass, China, Iron, &c. The other Towns of note are *Lauweck* on the *Micon*, 100 Miles above *Camboya*, which *Baudrand* makes the Capital City.

*Tarran*,



*Tarrana, Langor and Cara*, three Port Towns on the Western Coast.

On the Coast of *Cambodia*, at no great distance from the Shoar, there lye a parcel of small Islands, whereof the chief as being the biggest and the only one that is inhabited, is

*Condore* or *Puli-Condore*, *Pulo* signifies Island, so *Pulo Condore* is as much as to say *Condore Island*. It lyes 20 Leagues South and by East from the Mouth of the River of *Cambodia* in 8 D. 40 Min. Latir. It is about four or five Leagues long, lying North East and South West, and not above four Miles broad in its largest part, and in other not above two Miles. The next Island in bigness lyes so conveniently at the West end of it, that it forms a commodious Harbour. In some parts the mold is black and pretty deep, but the greatest part is Sandy; divers tall and large Trees fit for any use grow upon it, among which, one they call the *Dammar-Tree*, yielding a clammy juice of a brown Colour, which being boiled becomes like Tar, and may be boiled to the consistency of Pitch, this Tree is three or four Foot Diameter, and must be wounded very deep Horizontally, and again Perpendicularly, and making a sufficient Cavity, the juice flows down into it. Here are *Mango-Trees*; a Tree

bearing a Fruit like a Grape; and wild *Nutmeg-Trees*. Of Animals here are *Lizards*, *Guano's*, *Pidgeons*, a small sort of *Cocks* and *Hens*, which run wild in the Woods, and are good Food, *Limpits*, *Muscles* and *Turtle*. There be many small Brooks of fresh Water which dry up in the heat of Summer, but Wells may be dug in some parts to supply during that Season. The Inhabitants are of small Stature, dark Complexion and good shape, civil in their behaviour but very poor: they are of *Cochinchina* extract, and are Idolaters. Their chief employment is making *Tarr* or *Diammar* from the Tree above mentioned, and transporting it to *Cochinchina*. (*Dampeir*.)

The Situation of this place is very commodious for carrying on a Trade with *China*, the *Philippine Islands*, *Tonquin*, *Cochinchina*, *Camboja*, *Syam*, and all that Eastern Coast: And was therefore possessed for some time by our new *English East-India Company*, who in the Year 1702. settled a small Factory here which had taken a Party of Natives from *Celebes* to serve and assist them; but these People rose in Rebellion the beginning of *March*, 1705. Burnt, Murdered and destroyed the whole Factory, their Houses and Goods, in so much, that but very few escaped.

O F

TONQUIN;

A N D

COCHINCHINA or ANAM.

THE Continent which we intend to comprize in this Chapter, extends from the 11th Deg. to the 25th Deg. of Lat. lying beyond *Syam* and *Cambodia*, the upper part which is *Tonquin*, extends to the Frontiers of *China*, and the lower part is bounded by the Sea, named the Bay of *Tonquin*. It consists of the three Kingdoms of *Tonkin*, *Cochinchina* and *Chiampa*.

TONQUIN, *Tonkin*, or *Tonchin*, borders on the North and N.E. on the Kingdom of *China*, on the West upon the Country of *Laos* or *Fanzema*, to the South upon *Cochinchina*, and the South East it is washed by the Sea. The Soil is rich, and fertil watered with divers Rivers, the chief of which is large and divided into two Branches, which fall into the Bay, one whereof called *Rokboo*, at the N. W. corner of it, at 20 Deg. 6. M. N. Lat. The other *Domea*, 20 Leagues N. E. of it in 20 D. 45. M. which is both larger and deeper than the other, and frequented by *European Ships*.

The Air is healthy and pleasant in the Dry Season, but is very hot if the Sun appear in the Monsoon. The Rains begin in *May*, and last to *September*, and

cause great Land Floods; but from *November* to *March*, the Weather is dry, warm and pleasant.

The Soil produces every thing necessary to Life, viz. great Store of *Rice*, *Potatoes*, *Herbage*, *Melons*, *Bonana's*, *Mango's*, *Oranges*, *Limes*, *Cocoas*, *Mulberries*, *Betele*, &c. Of Animals, they have *Elephants*, *Buffalo's*, *Bullocks*, *Goats*, *Deer*, *Hogs*, some *Sheep*, *Dogs*, *Cats*, *Lizards*, *Snakes*, *Scorpions*, &c. They abound in tame Fowl, as *Cocks* and *Hens*, *Ducks* and *Geese*, and have *Partridge*, wild *Ducks*, *Teal*, *Hens*, *Turtle-Doves*, *Pelicans*, *Parrots* and *Parrokites*, &c. Their Rivers and Ponds abound in several sorts of good Fish, and the Sea furnishes them with Sea and Land Crabs, *Crawfish*, *Shrimps* and *Prawm*, besides Sea *Tortoizes*; they have also plenty of *Anchovies*. Of all which the Markets are well furnished, as also of the Flesh of *Horses*, *Elephants*, (whose Trunk is esteemed a delicacy) *Cats* and *Dogs*.

The Land abounds with Villages, and People who are clean limbed and middle sized, and not so tawny as the other *Indians*, they are Ingenious, Docile and Faithful, and make curious *Silk Stuffs*, and *Lacquer'd Ware*. The common People wear Cotton-  
R Cloth,



Cloath, but the Mandarins green and red *English* Cloath. Their Houses are low with mudd Walls, and Partitions of Reeds or Canes, with mean Furniture. The Trading part of the People are Civil, the Mandarins or Magistrates Proud, the Soldiers Insolent, and the Poor addicted to Theft.

The Government is Tyrannical under two Kings, the one who is the lawful Successor called *Bona*, is kept in the Palace a kind of Prisoner, while the *Cora* of an usurped Race exercises the Government, this has 300 Horse and 200 Elephants, in his Stables and maintains an Army of between 70 and 80000 Men, whereof 30000 near his Person.

The Religion is Pagan. And the Language has an Affinity to the *Chinese*, and is written in that Character.

#### The chief Cities.

*Cochao* or *Recan*, the Metropolis is seated on the West-side of that Branch of the great River named *Dona*, which is as broad as the *Tames* at *Lambeth*, 50 Miles from the Sea, on a Sandy rising ground with neither Walls nor Ditches, the Houses, which are about 20000, are of Structure above mentioned with Vaults of Brick, being them to secure Goods from Fire, to which the Town is very Subject, the Streets are broad and ill paved. The *English* have a Factory here, and a House of low but handsome Structure. The *Dutch* have also a Factory and House. The King has three Palaces here, with large Stables and fair Court Yards, to draw up Soldiers in. The Kings Houses are built of Timber, two of them are but mean, but the third is more Magnificent, and is surrounded with a Wall faced with Brick three Leagues in Circumference 16 Foss high, and as much thick.

Higher up in the Countrey upon the same River stands *Henan*, another City inhabited by Soldiers and some *Chinese* Merchants, and a *French* Factory.

The whole Kingdom is divided into eight large Provinces, viz. the East and West Provinces, the Province of *Cochao* in the middle of them, and the Provinces of *Tenan*, *Tenchoa* and *Ngeam* on the Frontiers.

The Bay of *Tonkin* is made by the Island of *Amem*, which lies in 19 D. N. Lat. on the East and the Countrey of *Cochinchina* on the West, it is 20 Leagues wide, and has 40 Fathoms Water in its full depth, but a great Shoal called *Pracel* lies across it, with Channels however on each side, for Ships to pass.

Thus much I have extracted from *Dampier*, who was there in 1693. and being a faithful relation, thought him a proper guide; and suppose what he has furnished, is sufficient to give the Reader such an Idea, as he expects from a Book of this Nature.

*COCHINCHINA*, extends above 100 Leagues along the Sea Coast, reckoning from the Kingdom of *Champa*, in the South to the Frontiers of *Tonkin* on the North, between the 11th and 17th Deg. of N. Lat. bounded on the West by a Ridge of Mountains, where live a Savage People called *Kemot*, who will not submit to Government.

The name of *Cochinchina*, has been given it by the *Portuguese*, for the Natives call it *Anam*, the West Countrey because West of China, whereof

some say it was formerly part. *Cochi* is the *Japanese* Name, as signifying West in their Tongue, and because the *Japanese* introduced the *Portuguese* into the Trade of this place, they made use of their name of it, but in regard the Name was too much a-kin to *Cochin*, on the *Malaba* Coast, where they already Traded, to distinguish this, they called it *Cochinchina*, q. d. the *Chinese* *Cochin*.

It is divided into five Provinces, viz. *Sinua*, which lies next to *Tonkin*, wherein the King resides. *Cachiam*, wherein the Prince his Son governs. *Quangay*, *Quignin*, otherwise called *Pulucambi* and *Renan*.

It was formerly part of the Kingdom of *Tonkin*, but of late Subject to its own Prince.

In this as in all other places between the Tropicks, there are two Seasons, the *Dry* and *Wet*, each lasting about six Months, sometimes a little more or less. In the *Dry* Season the Air is generally very hot, excepting that on and near the Sea Coast, it is a little cooled every Day by the Sea Breeze. In the *Wet* Season it is cooler, by reason of the continual Rains. These Rains which are constant and Periodical, (and not the Snows and Rains on Mountains only) are the cause of the Freshes or inundation of the *Indian* Rivers, as also of the *Egyptian* Nile.

Accordingly, the Climate is Temperate here, for altho' the Summer Months of *June*, *July* and *August* be violently hot the Sun being then in the Zenith; in the Months of *September*, *October* and *November*, the Air is cooled by continual Rains which fall on the Mountains of *Kemois*, whence the Waters falling overflow the Lands, these Floods happen once a Fortnight, and last three Days at a time. In *December*, *January* and *February*, there are cold Northerly Winds, and in the other three Months, there appears a pleasant verdant Spring.

These inundations render the Land very fruitful, producing three Crops a year of Rice, together with Oranges, Bananas, Ananas, Melons, the Can, Gnoo, Giacca and Durion, delicious Fruits peculiar to this and the neighbouring Countries. *Areca* and *Betele*, and divers other Fruits as well as Herbs, &c. They have Cattle and Fowl and Fish in plenty. And a sort of Food common to most parts of the East; namely, the edible Birds Nest; there is a small Bird like a Swallow, which builds his Nest in the Rocks upon the Sea Coast, composing it of the Sea Froth, and a juice out of its own Stomach, which hardens in the Sun, and is almost Translucent, this Nest being softened in warm Water, and pulled into small pieces, is usually put into Broths: it is very nourishing, but of little taste, as I am informed by a very ingenious Gentleman, who has Travelled in these parts; altho' Father *Borri*, a Missionary here, applauds it as a most delicious Food.

Here is such plenty of Silk, that the very Peasants are clad with it, and the Mulberry-Trees grow in large Plains, as plentifully as common Hedges with us. The Silk is not so fine and soft but stronger and more substantial than that of *China*.

They have Timber of various sorts, whereof that called *Tin* is so hard as to be incorruptible, and serves for Anchors. And the *Aquila*-Tree grows on the Mountains of *Kemois*, the Wood whereof has a most fragrant smell, the older the Tree the more is the Scent, and therefore the *Calamba*, which is the Wood of an old Tree, is much the more valuable, and is also rare, because these old Trees, grow on high inaccessible Mountains; this is the Kings Monopoly, none else



being allowed to sell it, and it is a most valuable Commodity in *China*, where they use a Block of it for a Pillow. I suppose this to be the Aloes-Tree, for I find the two Names used Synonymously. Elephants and Rhinoceroses are plenty here.

The People are in shape and colour like the *Chinese*, that is, of the lower Stature, Olive colour'd, with flat Noses, and small Eyes. In Manners, civil and courteous, kind to Strangers, and more Polite than their Neighbours, encouraging Learning equal with Military Arts, and Study Morality and the Sciences in Universities, where Professors confer Degrees. They are much more decent in their Cloaths than their Neighbours, being clad in Silk, and their Body quite cover'd; their Garments are of various colour, and are beautiful enough; the Men wear loose Gowns, and swath their lower parts with Bands of Silk instead of Breeches: The Women wear a Wastcoat close to their Bodies, and divers Petticoats, with a Vail over all, and their Hair hanging loose behind. Their Food is chiefly Rice, and fit cross'd leg'd on the Ground, round a low Table. In their Feasts, which they make with great Pomp, they ordinarily have 100 Dishes of Flesh, Fowl, Fish, and Fruits: The Country produces no Grapes, and therefore instead of Wine, they drink *Arack*.

Their Language is somewhat like the *Chinese*, but is written with much less Variety of Characters. The Learned Language is different from that commonly spoken: And their Religion is *Pagan*. Lastly, The Men are reckon'd Braver and better Soldiers than any of their Neighbours.

The King is the Descendant of an Usurper, who about 100 Years ago threw off the Government of

*Tonquin*, but pays him large Tribute for Peace Sake: He is able to bring 80000 Men into the Field, who use Fire Arms, and are good Marks-men.

The *Portuguese* had formerly a Trade here, and the *Chinese* come Yearly hither on Traffick.

Thus far I have borrow'd from Father *Borri*, a *Mileneze* Jesuit, who was one of the first Missionaries in this Country.

*Cochin-china* affords Gold, and I believe a small quantity of Silver, (tho' of this latter I am not certain) but no Pepper nor Porcelain, as Dr. *Heylin* and *Sanfon* relate.

The chief City which bears the Name of the Kingdom, and is the Place of the King's Residence, stands in the 16 Deg. of North Latit. not far from the Sea,

Other Cities and Towns mentioned by Travellers, are, *Bouten* an excellent Haven, *Caccian* a Royal Seat, and resorted to by the *Chinese* for Trade, and *Senso* formerly a Mart-Town, but now decay'd, because its Harbour is choak'd with Sand.

*CHIAMPA* which is another smaller Kingdom, is the South Part of the same Continent, the Town which gives Name to the Country, stands on the Sea-Coast, in the 12 Deg. North Lat. But *Sanfon* Names *Pulocacem* as its Capital, but that must be a mistake, for *Pulo* signifies an Island, but it is not likely that the Metropolis of a Country on the Continent, should be seated in a small Island.

Some Geographers have reckon'd this Country Part of *Cambodia*. But it is now under the King of *Cochinchina*.

And thus much for *India extra Gangem*.







over, but is a most excellent Soil. When the *Portuguese* first discovered it, they stocked it with Goats and Hogs, and planted divers Fruits and Herbs, all which have flourished ever since, and our Seamen find here plenty of fresh Provisions, and which is better, they are sure to be cured of the Scurvy, for not only is the Air serene and wholesome, by reason of the fresh Breezes, but also the Land yields Herbs, which infused in a Bath, supple their Limbs, and taken inwardly, so soon reduces the Blood to a true Crasis, that as *Dampier* tells us, Men that have been carried athoat in Hammocks, have been able to walk in a Weeks time. Here are three Rivers which rising in the high Midland, fall into the Sea. These Streams afford good watering to our Ships, who seldom fail to call here in their return from *India*. *Dampier* speaks only of Potato's, Yams, Plantains and Bonana's, together with Grapes, which they were in hopes to rear, as the Fruits of the place, but *Mandefo* and *Nieuboff*, who were both there the first in 1639. the latter in 1658. talks of Figs, Pomgranates, Citrons and Oranges. And all agree, there are plenty of Hogs, Goats, Bullocks, Dung'il Fowl, Geese, Turkeys and other Fowl. The *Portuguese* only stocked the Island with these conveniences, and left it free to be used by all Nations. The *Dutch* liking the Situation, settled on it, but when their Plantation at the Cape was fixed, they Deserted this, and then our *English East-India* Company settled Servants there, and began to Fortify it, which the *Dutch* it seems would not suffer, for coming upon them in 1672. they expelled them. But our Company soon revenged it, in the recovery of the place, and Capture of two rich *Dutch East-India* Ships. Ever since the Island hath been in the hands of the *English*, and is so well strengthened, as to be in no danger from an Enemy.

**MAURITIUS** Island, or the **MAURUSHES**, as the Seamen call it, lyes on the East side of *Madagascar*, at above 100 Leagues distance from it, in the 20th Deg. of South Lat. Longit. 75. about 30 or 40 Leagues in Circumference. It was first discovered by the *Portuguese*, and by them named *Cerne*, but the *Dutch* making themselves Masters of it in 1598. gave it the present Name in honour of Prince *Maurice* of *Nassau*. The Land is Mountainous, and may be seen very far at Sea, and yields the best Ebony wood in the World; the Valleys produce Fruit and plenty of Fowl, and the Sea abounds in Fish; there are also good Streams of fresh Water, and the Air is very healthy. There are two good Havens, one in the North West in 20 Deg. South Lat. the other North East in 20 Deg. 15 Min. all which have made the *Dutch* build a Fort upon it, and the Ships of *England*, as well as *Holland*, frequently call there for Water and Refreshments.

To proceed now to the *Indian* Islands; Wherein we will begin from the West, and therefore view *Ceylon* and the *Maldives*; Before we proceed to *Sumatra*, *Java*, *Borneo*, *Celebes*, the *Spice Islands*, the *Molucca's*, the *Phillipine Islands*, and the *Ladrones*.

**CEYLON**, supposed to be the *Taprobana* of *Ptolemy*, is a large Island lying from the 6th to the 10th Deg. of North Latit. 240 Miles from North to South, and in breadth, in the South parts 140 Miles, but in the North part not 100; being in form like a

Pear, divided from the Main Land of the Peninsula *intra Gangem*, by the *Straight Manar*, which parts it from the *Coromandel* Coast. It's Long. from the 97th to the 99th Deg. It abounds with Rice, and yields Pepper, Ginger, Cardamum, Sugar and Tobacco. Fruits of all sorts are seen here, but not Cultivated, and grow wild. The *Areck* and *Betele* Tree, and the *Talipot* Tree, the former for the Nut, and the latter for its Leaf, which is two or three yards long, are much Cultivated. The *Betele* is generally used by all Degrees of People here, as elsewhere in *India*. And the *Talipot* Leaf serves for covering from Rain, for Bed and Tent in Travelling, and various other uses: altho' it be very long, it folds up like a Fan in so little Room, that they carry it easily in Journeying. They have all the necessary kinds of Cattle, Fowl and Fish, with many kinds of wild Beasts, among which the Elephants of this Island are reckoned the best and most Docile of all *India*. The Rivers and Sea Coast afford Pearl, and the Land several sorts of precious Stones, especially Rubies. But the more valuable Produce of this Land, and for which the *Dutch* have been so careful to exclude all other *Europeans* is CINNAMON, which grows very plentifully in this Island, and no where else.

The natural Inhabitants are called *Chingulays*, supposed to have come Originally from *China*, with whom are mixed *Malabars* and *Moors*. Of the *Chingulays*, there are a Race who live wild in the Woods without Government, but the civilized part of them are a proper well favoured People, who are Active, Ingenious, Crafty and Treacherous, Grave and Courteous in their behaviour, temperate in Food, and frugal and neat in their Families. They are Pagans in Religion, and have as ridiculous Stories of their Gods as their Neighbours.

Their Houses are poor low thatch'd Cottages, built with Sticks, and dawbed over with Clay, never above one Story high; the better sort have them in the better manner, but none sumptuous. Their chief Food is Rice, for Flesh and Fish being scanty, they rather choose to sell than eat it.

The King is as Absolute here as in the other parts of *India*, engrosses to himself all the Wealth of the Country, and keeps his People Poor, so that none but the Governours of Provinces and Officers under the King have any Wealth.

The *Dutch* possess the Coast, at least all the Havens on it, quite round the Island. The *Portuguese* were the first *European* Inhabitants here, but the *Dutch* have after long Wars, quite beaten them out and have possessed it solely for these 40 or 50 years past.

The Places they possess are

*Jaffnapatam*, a strong Town or Castle seated on a Bay, or Arm of the Sea, in the North part of the Island, of quadrangular form, surrounded with strong Walls and a large Ditch, and well furnished with Cannon. The adjacent Country (which is a Peninsula between the *Straight of Manar*, and the Arm of Sea which passing by *Jaffnapatam*, runs 15 Leagues within Land) is all Subject to the *Dutch*, it bore the Name of the Kingdom of *Jaffnapatam*, and is divided into four Provinces, wherein are a great number of Villages, and many Christian Churches erected, mostly by the *Portuguese*, now exercised by the *Dutch*, who teach great Numbers of Children, and



and instruct them in the Christian Faith. *Baldern*, the Dutch Minister who lived here, has given us the Pictures of 21 of those Churches, which appear handsome Structures. *Jaffnapatam* was taken *an.* 1658.

*MANAER*, a small Island a few Leagues S. from *Jaffnapatam*, famous on account of its Pearl Fishery, has a strong Castle for its Defence. This Island was reduced by the Dutch, *Anno* 1658.

*CALPENTINE*, an Island of larger extent, lyes on the Western Coast, near 20 Leagues more to the South.

*Negumbo*, a strong Fortress seated on the Western Coast of *Ceylon*, in the 7 D. 20 M. Lat. was taken by the Dutch in 1644.

*Columbo*, seated also on the West Coast not many Leagues South from *Negumbo*, is another Fortress taken by them, in 1656.

*Gale*, called *Punta Galla* by the Portuguese, lyes on the South end of the Island in the 6th Deg. Lat. It is very strong in its Situation as well as Fortification, and is a City well built of Stone being the Capital of the Portuguese first, and now of the Dutch in *Ceylon*, and the seat of the Governour.

*Batocales*, another Fortress seated on the East side of the Island, in 8 D. Lat. was taken by the Dutch in 1638.

Lastly, *Trinquemale*, on the North East side of the Island, is another Fort which they took in 1639.

These are all the Notable Places on the Coasts.

The Inland parts of *Ceylon* are almost unknown to Europeans, nay, even to the *Hollanders* themselves, who inhabit the Coasts: Neither is it any Wonder, in regard that the whole Island is every where beset with very steep, barren and dreadful Mountains, that cannot be passed but where the Paths are beaten, which indeed are many in number, but so narrow, that only one Person at a time can go on them; and certain Officers, appointed by publick Authority, always keep Watch on the Borders of these Passages, who suffer none to enter, or go forth, without leave: However, there is extant a large Historical Description of this Country, written by *Robert Knox*, an English Sea-Captain, sometime in the Service of the *East-India* Company, who lived there a Captive for twenty one Years and a half; yet so as during the last Years, he had an Opportunity of viewing all the Provinces, and of taking a particular Account of every thing remarkable in those parts; till at last, he found means to make his Escape, after a wonderful manner on the 18th of October, 1679. According to his Information, the Inland Country abounds with Hills; Springs and Rivers full of Fish; but such as are rocky and unfit for Navigation: The most eminent of these is *Mavelagonga*, which taking its Rise from *Adam's* Mountain, flows towards the North, and having watered a very large Tract of *Ceylon*, discharges it self into the Ocean, near the Town of *Trinquemale*: There are also vast Woods, which serve both for the Boundaries and Ramparts of the several Provinces: The Valleys are for the most part Fenny, and enriched with abundance of Springs of an admirable Clearness.

The innermost Tracts of this Island are very populous, and those that lie near the Sea-Coasts are much less inhabited: In the former, to the East of the Town of *Columbo*, stand the highest Mountain

of *Ceylon*, and even (as some affirm) of the whole Continent of *India*, called *Hamallal* by the Inhabitants, and *Pico de Adam*, or *Adams* Mountain by the Portuguese, and other Europeans: It is extremely steep and of a Conick Figure, having on the top, a plain smooth Stone, on which is imprinted a large Mark of an Humane Foot; The Natives believe this to be the Footstep of the first Parent, who was taken up from thence into Heaven, and upon that account they adore it, with a wonderful Superstition; and to that purpose, in the beginning of the Year, the Men, Women, Boys and Girls, notwithstanding so difficult a passage, climb up to the top of it, out of a Principle of Religion. The Air of the inner Tracts is different, so that the Northern Part, by reason of the Corruption and Scarcity of the Waters, is less healthful and fertile; but the rest are otherwise disposed by their natural Temperature: When the West-winds blow, it rains in the Western Part of the Island, and the Seeds are committed to the Ground; whilst at the same time the other Part, towards the East, enjoys most serene and hot Weather, and the Inhabitants are employed in looking after their Harvest: It happens continually in both Quarters, when the East-winds blow. This Island was sometime divided into four Kingdoms, but the best Part of it is now under the Dominion of *Conde Uda*, a Prince whose Government is Arbitrary, and to whom his Subjects generally give Divine Honours.

The inner Countrey of *Ceylon* is divided into the greater and lesser Parts, the former of which *Capt. Knox* calls Provinces, and the other Counties; because they resemble the Counties or Shires of *England*, but are not like them with respect to the largeness of their Extent: He informs us, That the Province of *Noure Calava* is situated towards the N. and includes five Counties; as also the Province of *Hotcourly*, comprehending seven Counties: On the East, he places the Province of *Mantah*, subdivided into three Counties: Towards the same Quarter, appear *Tammenquod*, *Bintana*, *Vellas* and *Paumao*, all distinct Counties, with the Province of *Onvoh*, to which he attributes three Counties. In the middle, are the Counties of *Wallaponahy*, *Pencipet*, *Goddaponahoy*, *Hevoibattay*, *Cotemul*, *Horipet* and *Timponahoy*; as also, *Oudanour* and *Tattanonar*, the chief of all the Counties of the Inland Country of *Ceylon*: On the West lye *Oudipollat*, *Doinslang* and *Hotteracourly*, in which four Counties are comprised; with *Portaloorn* and *Tuncourly*, that comprehends three Counties, and part of which is subject to the Jurisdiction of the *Hollanders*: All these Provinces and Counties, (except these six, viz. *Noure Calava*, *Hotcourly*, *Tammenquod*, *Vellas*, *Paumao* and *Hottercauly*) lye upon fruitful and well watered Hills, and are expressed by the common Name of *Conde Uda*, i. e. On the tops of the Mountains; which is also the Royal Title.

The same Author reckons up five Capital Towns, besides a great number that are ruined, and several Villages within the Boundaries of the inner *Ceylon*, viz. *Cande* or *Candy*, the Metropolis of the whole Island, built in the Heart of it, on the River *Mavelagonga*; formerly the Royal Seat of the King of *Candee*, after whose departure it fell much to decay. *Nellemby-new*, a Town situated more towards the South, to which that Prince translated the Royal Court from *Cande*. *Allout-new*, seated a great way below *Cande*, and divided into two Parts, by the River



River *Mavelagonga* : *Badonla*, seated at the farthest distance from *Cande* to the East, and at a much less from *Englitz-neur*, a Town not very remote from the said River, which was chosen for the Royal Seat after *Nellemby-neur*.

The MALDIVE ISLANDS, are a ridge of small Islands lying North-West to South-East 140 Leagues in length, from the 8 Deg. North Latit. to the 1 Deg. South Latit. the Northern of them are about 85 Leagues distant from the Coast of *Malabar* on the West. They are reckoned to be at least 1000 in Number, but very small ones. The principal of them are,

On the North of the Equator.	{	<i>Calloumadeux.</i>	<i>Nillendoux.</i>
		<i>Malyqua.</i>	<i>Quelba.</i>
		<i>Puraqua.</i>	<i>Camdycal.</i>
		<i>Gauvir.</i>	<i>Maldiva, &amp;c.</i>
Under the Equator.	{	<i>Sedu.</i>	
		<i>Adoumatia.</i>	
On the South of the Equator.	{	<i>Addou.</i>	<i>Pove.</i>
		<i>Molucquesouadone.</i>	

The general Character of them is, that they produce Coco's and some Fruits, but little else ; that the Inhabitants are ingenious in making Garments of Silk and Cotton, and are Subject to a King, whose place of Residence called *Male* or *Maldiva*, is a good Town built upon four small Islands. The whole is divided into 13 or 14 Provinces called *Atolons*, all Subject to this one King. They lye very low, and are divided from each by so shallow a Sea, and withal so near one another, that they can wade thro' from one to t'other.

The *SUNDA* Islands, so denominated from the Strait of *Sunda*, which lyes between *Sumatra* and *Javn*. Are these that follow.

*SUMATRA*, lying North West to South East, on the West side of the Peninsula of *Malacca*, from the 5th Deg. of North Latit. to the 6th Deg. of South Latit. and from the 114th Deg. to the 124th Deg. of Longit. So that the Equator passes over the middle of it ; 'tis therefore hot as the Neighbouring Countries are, but so refreshed with the Sea Breezes, as to be less sultry than the Main Land.

The Soil is in the Midland Mountainous and Craggy, but in the Valleys 'tis a good deep Mould, and would produce Rice more plentifully than it does, if the Inhabitants were more industrious. Here are good Fruits of various sorts, as Plantains, Bonani's, Oranges, Limes, Coco's, Pomgranates, Mangc's, Mangestans a delicious Fruit according to *Dampeir*, as is also the Pimple-nose, Citrons, Melons, Pine-apples, &c. Pot-herbs, excellent Medicinal Herbs, Camphire and other Drugs. Poultry, Cattle, and wild Beasts plenty enough, and tame Elephants. There are many small Rivers, which

afford plenty of Fish, and in general the necessaries for Life are plenty enough, except that their Crops of Rice not being large enough, they are beholden to their Neighbours, who bring whole Shiploads, and find good Market here. (*Dampeir*.)

But the most considerable Commodities of this Island are Gold and Pepper ; of the former there is found good store in the midland Mountains, and plenty of Pepper in the Valleys.

The People are of the *Malayan* Race, and *Mahometan's* in Religion, of a brown Copper colour in Complexion, and in Temper like the other *Indians*.

The whole Island is 900 Miles long, but not proportionally broad, being in the broadest part, which is the Southern, but 180, and in the other part not above 100 Miles. It is divided into several Kingdoms, some reckon seven, others five.

*ACHIN* Kingdom, which is the Northern part seems to be the most considerable, and extends from the North West point towards the Straights of *Malacca*, 50 or 60 Leagues in length. The Capital City which gives Name to the Kingdom, is seated on the Banks of a River near the North West end of the Island, it consists of 7 or 8000 Houses, says *Dampeir*, and may be reckoned the chief of the whole Island, the buiklings are mean, but better both built and furnished than the neighbouring Nations. The Houses are raised upon Posts from the Ground, two or three Steps, because in the rainy Monsoons, the River overflows, and drowns a great part of the City. This Kingdom is always governed by a Woman, assisted by 12 Lords called *Oronkeys* ; she is always an elderly Maid of the Royal Family, elected by the *Oronkeys*, and bears the Title of Queen, but the Power of Government rests more in the Lords. The Power of this Queen extends beyond the Limits of the Island, as reaching over a good part of *Malacca* ; where *Queda*, *Patana* and *Jbor* are Subject to her. The Gold which is so plenty here, brings Merchants from *Europe*, *China*, *Siam*, *Tinquin* and other parts, so that the Haven is seldom without a good number of Shipping. The *English* have a Factory here, and this was the place they first came to in the first *Indian* Voyages.

The Kingdoms of *MENANCABO* and *CAMPER*, take up the middle of the Island, and *JAMBE* and *PALIMBAN* the South part. But according to *Nieuhoff*, these Kingdoms are subject to Strangers, and the Royalty pulled down. The Places of chiefest Note here are,

*Benconli*, an *English* Fort seated on the West Coast of the Island, in the fourth Deg. South Lat. a small Island lyes before it, which with the Land point of *Sillebar* makes the Haven, and beyond it within Land is a high slender Hill. The Fort faces the Sea, and makes a good appearance, and a River from the Land runs on the North West side of it. The place is unhealthy, by reason of the swampy Ground at some distance on the Land side, which brings an unwholsome Air, but the Land near the Fort is good Champion. The Pepper Trade is the Business of the Factory here, for at *Achin* they have none, its growth being chiefly in these Southern parts ; and whereas they formerly bought it at *Bantam*, when the *Dutch* got the Mastery there, the Company were in danger of losing this Trade, and therefore besetted themselves, and made a Settlement here about the year 1685.



*Indragore*, an *English* Factory, stands also on the West Coast, about 30 Leagues North East from *Bencoolen*.

*Pelimbau*, was a considerable City, and the Seat of a King before the *Dutch* burnt and totally destroyed it in the Year 1659. upon injuries offered by the King of it; it stands on the East Coast, in the 4 Deg. South Lat.

*Jambe*, the Capital of another Kingdom, stands more to the North, on a River that falls into the Sea, on the East Coast, in 2 Deg. South Lat.

*Bencoolen*, on the same Coast more Northward, being in the first Deg. of North Lat. is the chief Town of those parts, and is frequented by the *Dutch* for Pepper: the Inhabitants are *Malayans*, and a civil People.

The Island of *JAVA*, lyes six Deg. South of the Equator, directly opposite to the South East point of *Sumatra*, from which it is separated by the Strait of *Sunda*, which is not above five or six Leagues over. To the North lies the Island *Borneo*, to the East it has the Ile of *Balay*, called the lesser *Java*, from which it is divided by the Channel of *Palembuan*, and to the South the main Ocean. Its length (from the Straights of *Sunda*, to the Channel of *Palembuan* East to West, inclining however a little to the South) is about 130 or 140 Leagues. Its breadth is very different in different parts, but the whole Circumference is reckoned 300 Leagues. The North Coast of *Java* has abundance of very commodious Creeks, Bays, Harbours and good Towns. The Island had formerly as many petty Kings as there were Cities, but 'tis now divided into two Kingdoms under the Jurisdiction of the King or Emperor of *Mataram*, and the King of *Bantam*, the former possessing the Eastern and greatest part of the Island, and is therefore stiled the Emperor of *Java*, the latter the Western and lesser part.

The Climate is of the same temperature and healthiness as the other parts of *India*. One half of the Year, that is, from *May* to *October* is clear Weather, and refreshed with Breezes from the East. In *December* the Rains begin, and the Winds blow, and render the Weather unpleasant till *March*, when they begin to sow Rice, which they reap in *September*, and in *October* the Fruits are ripe.

The Island has many Mountains and impassable Forrefts on it, but in other parts the Soil is good and very Fertile, producing Rice in great plenty, Fruits, Cattle, Fowl and Fish, and Tygers, Rhinoceros's and other wild Beasts in the Forests. Pepper grows here too, but not so plentiful or so good as at *Sumatra*; and the *Dutch* have good Plantations of Sugar. *Sanfon* in Transcribing other Geographers, reckons up Gold, Silver, Diamonds, Emeralds, Rubies and such rarities among the Commodities of this Island, but as *Nieuhoff*, who lived there, and is very particular in his account of the Products, speaks not of them, we shall choose to be silent.

The People are a barbarous, proud and fierce Nation, of a brown Colour, with flat Noses, broad Faces, small Eyes, strong Limbed, and of good proportion. Their Cloathing is a piece of Calico wrapt about their Body, and their Religion is *Mahometan* on the Coasts, but *Pagan* in the Midland. (Thus far I have taken from *Nieuhoff*.)

The Towns of chiefest Note are, on the West end, *Bantam*, *Batavia*, *Karauwan*, *Monucaon*, *Daramayo*, *Charabon*, all on the North Coast. Or the more East part or Kingdom of *Mataram*, *Japara*, *Sadaya*, *Tuban* and *Fortan*, also on the North Coast, *Palembuan* at the East end, and *Mataram* on the South Coast.

*Bantam*, the Metropolis of the Kingdom of the same Name is seated at the West end of the Island on the Strait of *Sunda*, at the Foot of a Mountain out of which three Rivers arise, two whereof surround the City, and the third passes through it; the Houses are miserably built, and the Walls very wretched, as well as the Gates, but provided with many Cannon. The Houses stand upon Piles, and are built of Reeds and Canes, and the City consists of three principal Streets, which have Channels running through them, but the Water is foul and stinking. The Foreigners live in Suburbs, but meet daily at the Bazar or Exchange, besides which are two other Market places, where goods of divers sorts are sold. And in effect this City is populous much resorted to by *Chinese*, *Bengalians* and other *Indian* Strangers as well as *Europeans* for Traffick. (*Mandellc.*)

*BATAVIA*, formerly named *Jacatra* and still so called by the Natives, is seated on a Bay of the Sea in the North Coast 18 Leagues South East from *Bantam*. The *Dutch* took *Jacatra* in the Year 1619. and having demolished it, built a new City which they named *Batavia*, and made it the Seat of their Government in *India*. It is not only surrounded with Walls and a Moat, but also guarded with divers Forts at a distance all round the Town, and a strong Citadel on the Haven, wherein their Governour general of the *East-Indies* lives in great State. Two small Rivers that rise in the Country, water the City, and fill divers Channels that run through the eight Streets the City consists of, which are all built in a strait Line 30 Foot broad, and paved with Brick. The Houses are neat, and the publick Buildings very Magnificent: 'twould be tedious to enumerate them. *Nieuhoff* has given very particular accounts of each, to which we must refer our Reader, and content our selves with saying 'tis a rich and flourishing Mart-Town, resorted to by the *Chinese* and other Eastern Nations.

*Charaben*, is a strong City seated on a River.

*Tuban*, on the same Coast, more to the South, is by Travellers represented as a strong, large and populous place; next *Bantam* the chief Town on the Island, and even better built than that; notable for a spacious Palace, wherein are large Apartments for wild Beasts, and well frequented for Traffick in Pepper and other Goods.

*Mataram*, the Seat of the Emperor of *Java*, is seated near the middle of the South-Coast, but the Trade lying more the other way, our People have seldom been there, and so we have no particular account of it.

The Island of *BORNEO* lies in the middle, between that of *Celebes* on the East; *Java* on the South; *Sumatra* and *Malacca* on the West; and *Paragoia* one of the *Phillipines* on the North; reaching from 7 and half Deg. of Northern Lat. to the fourth of Southern. Its Figure is almost round, and its Compass very wide; although the Opinions of Authors



thors are different as to the latter: However the least Compass that is attributed to it consists of 250 Leagues, and it is generally reputed the largest of all the Islands of *Asia*: It produces most admirable Diamonds, Bezoar Stones, the best Camphire of all that is found throughout the whole Continent of *India*. Rice, and Pepper with other sorts of Spice, Cotton, Honey and Wax; and is beset with Woods; and fine Rivers, more especially towards the West and South, the chief of which is *Succadano*, abounding with Diamonds: So that it may well be reckon'd among the most fruitful Islands of the *Indian Ocean*; but the Air is not very healthful, by reason of the marshy Grounds. The Sea-Coasts are possessed by the *Hollanders*, and the Metropolis bears the same Name of *Borneo*, seated in the Fens and on the shore of a little Bay, towards the Northern Part of the Island, being a large, neat and famous Mart-Town and a Royal Seat, with an excellent Harbour: The other considerable Towns which stand on the Western and Southern Coasts (for the Eastern, and more especially the inland Tracts of this Island are almost unknown to Europeans) are *Malano*, *Puchavaraon*, *Sambas*, *Harmets*, *Landa*, near which are Diamonds of the highest value; *Succadano*, *Lave* and *Bendarmassin*, not far from the Mouth of the River *Succadano*.

*F. Anthony Ventimiglia*, a Portuguese Missionary in the Year 1689. gives this account of *Borneo*: that it is 1650 Italian Miles in Circumference, the Coast inhabited by *Malayans*, who are *Mahometans*, and the inland Country by *Pagans* called *Beajuses*. That these former are governed by several Kings, who reside at *Borneo*, *Bandermassin*, *Succadan*, &c. but the latter have only Captains and chief Men over them. That the Country is Fertile, abounding in Rice of an excellent sort, Cassia, Wax, Camphire the best in the World, Pepper, Gum, excellent Diamonds found in the Rivers, also Gold-dust among the Sands, and the richest Bezoar Stones, found in the Stomach of a wild Ape. Here are Herbs, Roots, Fruits, and the Edible Birds Nest, mentioned in our account of *Cochinchina*. He represents the *Malayan Moors*, as a faithless Covetous Thieving Generation, and on the contrary, the *Beajuse Pagans*, as a Moral virtuous People; but whether Affection and Prejudice had not some influence, I cannot say, for he was intent on converting the *Beajuses*, and was interrupted in it by the *Moors*. There are several Ports on the Island, but that of *Bandermassin* is most frequented, for the Spice there sold.

**CELEBES**, lyes on the East of *Borneo*, between that Island and the *Molucca* Islands, the North part 2 Deg. above the Line, and the South part 6 Deg. below it, in Long. from 138 to 142 Deg. The exact Lat. according to *Dampier* is from 1 Deg. 30 Min. N. to 5 Deg. 30 Min. S. At the North East end there is a long narrow Cape which stretches out 30 Leagues North East, and in the South part there is a Bay or Gulph 7 or 8 Leagues wide, which runs up 40 or 50 Leagues into the Country. There is a high Hill on the North end, but the Land is generally low on the East side, the Mould is black and deep, and extraordinary fat and rich, and so full of Trees as to seem one continued Grove. (*Dampier*.) The North West Wind blows from November to March, and makes the Shore unsafe, the Rains at the same time overflow the low Lands, for which reason their Houses are built upon Piles 9 or 10 Foot above the Ground. The Island

yields much Spice, great plenty of Rice, with the Fruits and Plants usual in these parts. The Inhabitants resemble the *Siamese* in Form and Complexion, and are Industrious in cultivating their Land. (*Mandellso.*) The whole is divided into six Kingdoms, but Europeans have Cognizance of but two, viz. *Celebes* whose Capital stands on the West Coast under the Line. And *Macasser* which is the South part. The Capital of the same Name stands on the West Coast, in the 5 Deg. of South Lat. and is a Town of great Strength and Trade, but is possessed by the Dutch as *Dampier* says. *Navarette* speaks also of the Dutch Conquering it before the Year 1670. whereas it was under its own King when he was there in 1658.

A great many small Islands lye upon the Coasts of these large ones we have been treating of, too many to be each described, and the meer naming them will be of little use to the Reader. Those that are mentioned by our Voyagers, and are of the larger extent are as follows.

**BALT**, or the lesser *Java*, situate at the West end of *Java*, in the same Latit. a populous and fruitful Island, where the Ships for the *Molucca's* touch for fresh Water and Provisions. It is a small Island not above 12 Leagues over.

**LOMBOC** and **CUMBAVA** lye on the same Line Eastward, but I find no account of them Extant.

**FLORES** lyes more to the East, lying East to West, 60 Leagues in length. The chief Town is named *Lusatia*, and lyes on the North-West side.

**TIMOR**, lyes on the South-East of *Flores* at the distance of about 30 Leagues. The Land is high and Mountainous, 70 Leagues long, and 15 or 16 wide, the middle of the Island is in the 9th Deg. South Latit. It produces white Saunders, Wood and Wax.

### *Of the SPICE-ISLANDS.*

It may be matter of Admiration, that those two delicious Fruits, *Nutmegs* and *Cloves*, should be found only in so small a part of the habitable Earth. For no where else but in this Eastern part in a few small Islands do these fragrant Spices grow. 'Tis true, *Dampier* says *Mindanao* Island may be made to produce them, but however, none appears any where but in these Islands, which lye just under or near the *Aequator*. The *Banda* Islands alone produce *Nutmegs*. *Ternate* and *Tidore*, with *Amboyna*, *Ceram* and a few other small Islands furnish the whole World with *Cloves*, as *Ceylon* on the Coast of *India* already Treated of does with *Cinnamon*. But the Wisdom of Providence is as visible in this as in the other parts of its Dispensations, for if but a small part of the Earth produce these Spices, there grows however more than enough to suffice the whole World; for the Earth is so Prolifick of them, that great quantities of *Cloves* drop ungathered, and are permitted to perish on the Earth. Of *Nutmegs* vast quantities are often destroyed on the Spot, to prevent filling the Markets too full. An instance whereof *Sir William Temple* gives us in his Observations on the *Netherlands*, where he says an *East India* Sea-



men told him, he saw at one time three heaps of Nutmegs burnt, each of which was more than a small Church would hold. And indeed, if we consider the Hot Nature of these Spices, and how little of them Suffices for all necessary uses, and how Injurious the too great use of them might be to our Health, we may have Reason to bless Providence, that they come so scantily to us. And content our selves that Pepper, which is of more general use is not so restrained.

These Spices were brought either through *Persia* and *Turkey*, or by the *Red Sea* and through *Aegypt*, to the *Mediterranean Sea*, and thence sold to *Europeans*, before the *Portuguese* in the year 1511. discovered these Islands. The Emperor *Charles V.* claimed the property of them, supposing them to lye within his part of the Division which Pope *Alexander VI.* had made between the *Castilians* and *Portuguese*, but the *Portuguese* would not so part with them, contending still and interrupting the *Castilian* Trade, till in the Year 1529. in consideration of 350000 Ducats, these Islands were Mortgaged to the *Portuguese* and never redeemed. These therefore possessed them, till the *Dutch* in frequent Wars totally expelled them, and all other *Europeans*, and have now the Monopoly of this Trade.

The Nutmeg-Tree is like our *Peach-Tree*, the Leaves somewhat less and more round. The Fruit is enclosed within a Husk, as thick as that of our *Walnuts*, within which lyes a Leaf which encloses the Shell; This Leaf is the Mace, and within the Shell lies the Nutmeg, which comes out green, and is boiled in Lime (as we are told) to prevent the Worm getting into it; and lyes sometime to Dry before it is fit for use. Of this Tree the Earth is almost quite covered in the *Banda* Islands, the Fruit whereof is gathered three times a Year, viz. in *April*, *August* and *December*, but the *April* Crop is the best.

The Clove-Tree resembles the *Lawrel*, but has somewhat a narrower Leaf. The Fruit grows in Clusters, the Blossom white and green turns red, the Fruit is of a brown Colour when ripe, but being dried in the Sun turns black; it is gathered once a Year, from *September* to *February*, according to *Nieuwboff*, although others say, they crop the Buds one Year to make the Crop the better next, and so gather but every second Year. The Clove is called *Chamque* by the Natives, and obtained the Name we know it by, from the *Spanish* word *Clavos* a nail, from its Similitude to one: and is of so drying and attractive a quality, that if a Tub of Water be set near a bag of Cloves, a great deal of it shall be sucked in, and the Weight of the Cloves thereby much increased, wherefore the Knavish dealers play that trick to cheat the Buyers.

**BANDA**, the principal and largest of the Nutmeg-Islands, lyes in the 4 Deg. 30 Min. South Lat. It is a small Island not above 20 Miles long, and half so much broad, but is exceeding Fertile, yielding Oranges and other Fruits, besides whole Forests of Nutmeg-Trees. Our *English* Merchants in their first Navigations sent Ships hither; Captain *Keeling's* Voyage, in 1607. extant in *Hackluit*, shews them well acquainted with this Trade at that time; but the *Dutch* even so early as that, were busie in ingrossing it, and in effect soon after, they built a Fort here, and would permit no body else to buy the Nutmegs. The shape of the Island is like a Horse-shoe: in the middle

whereof is a fair Bay, whereon stands the chief Town surrounded with Groves of Nutmeg-Trees; beyond that there rises a little Mountain, whence flow some Brooks that water the Country, and beyond the Mountain another Plain covered with the same Trees. The People are strong, but ill favoured and live to a great Age. *Mahometans* in Religion and Melancholy in Temper. The Women have the care of the Tillage, and the Men addict themselves to Trade. They are very Zealous and Strict in their way; and in Government a Commonwealth under their Lords or Orankeys. (*Gimelli.*)

There are five or six other very small Islands, which produce Nutmegs, and lye all round about *Banda*, at a few Leagues distance, these are named *PULOWAY*, *PULORIN*, *NERA*, *GUMANAPI*, *GULIGIEN*, all which the *Dutch* have in Subjection.

The **MOLUCCA ISLANDS**, are so called from the *Malayan* word *Molucc* which signifies the Head of a great thing: These Islands being always esteemed the chief of all the Archipelago. They are properly but five in number, viz. *Ternate*, *Tidore*, *Motir*, *Machian* and *Bachian*. And are as notable for the Clove Trade as the *Banda*-Islands are for the Nutmeg. They lye near to one another, under or near the Equinoctial Line.

**TERNATE**, the chiefest and biggest of them lyes in the 1st Deg. of North Latit. it is not above 8 Leagues in extent and affords but little Provisions except Goats and some Poultry, they have excellent Almonds and some Fruits, but the Scorching heat of the Sun, so dries the Earth that no Rice or other Grain grows in this, or the rest of these Islands, but their Bread is made of a Pith of a Tree which they beat into Meal and Bake in Cakes called *Sagu*, an excellent nourishing Food, as we experience, in the Medicinal use of it here in *England*. But the chief Product of the Island is the Clove-Tree which grows Spontaneous, and bears Fruit the 8th Year, which making too great an encrease, the *Dutch* have cut down whole Woods of them.

The chief Town is *Gamma-Lamma*, which consists of one Street 2500 Paces long, built by the Sea side, the Houses built of Cane or Timber (*Mandeflo.*) There is (says *Gimelli*) in this Island, a burning Mountain which at three Mouths casts out fire and Sulphur, and in the Year 1648. its irruption was so violent, as to do a great deal of Mischief. The Country is Mountainous, and has no Rivers or Springs, but the frequent Rains supply the want, and water the Earth very plentifully. The People seem to be of the *Malayan* Race; wear a slight Cloathing, and are tolerably civil; they are healthy, and live to an hundred Years of Age. This Island was Subject to its own King in former Days, who had also Dominion over *Motir*, and divers other Islands. Sir *Francis Drake* was very kindly received by him, and afterwards Sir *Henry Middleton* brought a kind Letter from that King, and another from the King of *Tidore*, to King *James I.* in the Year 1606. But the *Hollanders* have such an Absolute Power over all these Islands, that I suppose those Royalties are destroyed.

**TIDOR,**



TIDOR, is near as large as *Ternate*, and but a little distant from it, the Prince of this Island was equal to and often at Wars with him of *Ternate*, when our Ships first Navigated these parts. The Clove is better cultivated here by the Inhabitants than elsewhere, and so is fairer and larger. The Bird of Paradise which we see in the Musæum's of the curious, are Natives of this and the Neighbouring Islands.

MOTIR, lyes a little more to the South, and very near the Line.

BACHIAN and MACHIAN, lye a little to the Southward of the Line. These are all small Islands, producing Cloves, and all possessed by the *Dutch*, and well guarded by Forts.

Although these only be the *Real* or *Proper* *Molucca* Islands; yet Geographers reckon divers others, no less than 70 near Adjacent into that Class. 'Tis needless to name so large a Number, whereof nothing more can be said, and which the Map will more lively inform you. We shall therefore only speak of two or three of the largest or most notable of them.

AMBOYNA, lyes in 3 Deg. 40 Min. South Latit. 25 Leagues West and by North from *Banda*, is 10 Leagues long, and 24 Leagues in Circumference, producing Cloves, Oranges, Limons, Citrons, Sugar-Canes, Coco, Potato's, Miller, Tobacco and Fruits. The Inhabitants are a poor ignorant sort of People, who dealt fairly with our Traders in the first Voyages, but when the *Dutch* got footing, they treated us with the same insolence as elsewhere. The chief Town has to the West of it a very fair Bay, where is safe Anchorage, and good Shelter for Ships. This Bay enters deep into the Country, so as almost to divide the Island into two. The Inhabitants (says *Gimelli*) are more Docile than those of the *Molucca's* and *Banda*, they are also hardy, and valued as better Soldiers than their Neighbours. There are several very good Villages in this Island, whereof particular accounts are given by *Nieuhoff* too long to Transcribe. The Castle or Fort of *Victory*, built by the *Dutch*, and made the Staple of the Company, stands about two Leagues up in the Bay, and is defended by four Bulwarks, a good Ditch, and a considerable Garrison. In that Castle was acted that barbarous Tragedy of Tor-

menting the *English* that were settled in Trade here in the Year 1622. upon a false Accusation of their, intending to destroy the *Dutch*. The particulars whereof see in *Wilson's* History of King *James's* Reign. This Castle suffered damage not many Years ago, by an inundation of the Sea.

*Ambayna*, was Subject to the King of *Ternate*, before the *Portuguese* made themselves Masters of it in 1546. these were driven out by the *Dutch* in 1603. who soon after expelled the *English* as abovesaid, and have ever since possessed it.

CERAM, an Island of much larger extent, lyes near adjoining to *Ambayna* on the North. It abounds with Spice, and for Peace sake is in Alliance with the *Dutch*. The chief Town of it is named *Cumbello*.

GILOLO, exceedingly larger than any of these, but less considerable, as producing no Spice, the Equinoctial passes over it, it's North part lyes in 2 Deg. North Lat. and the South Coast in 1 Deg. South Lat. The Island is full of large and commodious Bays, and the Land produces Fruit, Rice, &c. as usual in this Climate, but hardly Gold, as the first Discoverers told us; else the Trade thither would be more considerable. The chief Town of the same name lyes in the Northern part, over against *Ternate* Island.

The *TERRA* *de's* *PAPOUS* or *NOVA GUI-NEA*, a Main Land, which extends farther Eastward than has yet been discovered, is found to Commence in a few Degrees Eastward of *Gilolo*. The Coasts of it, are shewn in the Maps, but the Country is but very little known.

NOVA HOLLANDIA, another Main Land, if not a continuation of the same, lyes more to the South, from the 10th Deg. South Lat. This we are as little acquainted with, as only knowing that the Coast continues for very many Deg. in Longit.

Many Islands lye on the South Coast of *Nova Guinea*, as *Aru*, of pretty large extent, about 120 Miles long from North to South.

*Kae*, of much smaller extent lying more to the West, and several others, whereof we find nothing material.



# OF THE PHILLIPINE ISLANDS

**O**N the North of the *Molucca* Islands, the North East of *Borneo*, 200 Leagues East from the Coast of *Cochinchina*, and about 120 South from the Coast of *China* lyes an Archipelago, or a numerous Cluster of Islands between the 5th and 20th Deg. of North Latit. and between the 124 and 147 Deg. of Long. named by *Ferdinand Magellanes*, who discovered it, the Archipelago of *Lazarus*, because he arrived there upon *Saturday* before *Easter* (which is called in *Spain* *St. Lazarus-Day*) in the Year 1521. The name of *Phillippines* was given to these Islands in honour of *Phillip II.* King of *Spain*, by whom they were conquered, since which they have been always subject to that Crown. The Number of these Islands is too large to be told, some pretend there are no less than 1000, others by passing by the very small ones, would reckon 40 of the larger kind; but even that account exceeds the truth, if only such as are considerable be reckoned.

*Luçon*, *Lucnia* or *Manila*, is the most Northern the largest and most considerable.

*Mindanao*, is the Southern, and next in bulk and value.

*Paragua*, is the most Western, and reckoned next to the two former in extent.

*Phillipina* or *Tandaya*, is the most Eastern. Within and about all these lye many others, whereof we shall speak as particularly as is necessary.

The Air in the *Phillipine* Islands is hot and moist, however the heat is not more violent than in the *Dog-Days* in *Italy*, but causes more sweat and weakness. The Dampness is great, because the Land abounds with Rivers and Lakes, and withall there falls great Rains the most part of the Year, so that tho' the Sun be in their Zenith twice a Year (in *May* and *August*) yet the Heat is not so great as to render the place uninhabitable. During the Months of *June*, *July*, *August*, and part of *September*, the West and South Winds Blow, and bring such Rains that the Fields are Flo'ed. From *October* till *December* the North Wind prevails, and from that time till *May*, the East and East South-East affords 'em pleasant Breezes.

The Soil Produces Rice, Fruits of various kinds, Herbs *Cacao*, Cattle, Fowl, Fish, Wild Beasts, Civet, Cats, Honey, Wax, Gums, Medicinal Herbs, Bezoar, &c. But that which renders 'em considerable are the Rich Commodities for Traffick, viz. Rich Pearls, excellent Amber-greece, Cotton, Civet, Bezoar, and Gold, of which alone the value of 200000 Pieces of Eight *per Annum* is gather'd, without the help of Fire or Quick-Silver. Thus much in general, to proceed to Particulars.

The Island *LUZON* or *LUCONIA*, lyes between 13 Deg. 30 M. and 19 Deg. Latit. in shape like a beaded Arc. In Length 160 *Spanish* Leagues, in

Breadth in some parts from 30 to 40 Leagues, in other not above 20. At the Elbow in the S. W. Coast there is a large River, which issues from the great Lake *Babi* within Land, and falling into the Sea makes a fair Commodious Haven. On this River the Chief City *Manila* stands; and at the Mouth of it *Cavite*, which is the Port for the New Spain Ships that Annually arrive here. The whole Island is divided into these Provinces, 1. *Balayan*, wherein *Manilla* stands, it abounds in Cotton, Rice and Palm-Trees. 2. *Calilaya*, larger and more Populous than, 3. *Camarines*, in which are the Towns of *Bondo*, *Passacao*, *Ibalon*, *Bulan*, *Sorsocon*, where large Ships are Built, and *Albai*, near which is a Burning Mountain. 4. *Paracale*, wherein are Rich Mines of Gold. The Soil is good and produces *Cacao* and Palm-Trees. 5. *Cagayan*, the largest Province in the Island: The Capital named *New Segovia* is a Bishop's See, Founded with the City, Anno 1598. This Province is Fruitful and produces Wax, Brazil and Ebony Wood, and Wild Beasts, whose Skins are Merchandize. 6. *Ilocos*, the Richest and best Peopled Province in the Island: The Capital *Fernandina* was Built on the Bank of the River *Bigan* in 1574. Its Mountains in this Province, beyond Woods inhabited by Wild People, are Gold Mines. 7. *Pangasman* running along the Coast is good Land for Eight or Nine Leagues, above which it is Woody and Mountainous, and possess'd like *Ilocos* by Wild Indians. 8. *Pampanga*, a large Province, and Fruitful Soil producing much Rice, and inhabited by more tractable Indians, who assist the Spaniards in the Wars. 9. *Babi*, on the East of *Manilla*, about the Lake above mention'd, Fruitful in *Areca* and *Betele*, and yielding much Timber for Shipping. 10. *Bulacan*, a small Province abounds in Rice, and Palm-Wine. Lastly, 11. *Catanduanes*, and two or three other Islands Subject to a Metropolis on the main Land, compose a Province, it lyes on the East Coast, and affords Rice, Palm-Wine, Coco's, Honey and Wax.

All the Island of *Manilla* produce Gold, Civet, Wax, Cotton, Sulphur, Rice, good Horses, Cows, Buffalo's, Deer and Wild Boars. But it is much Subject to Earthquakes. A word or two of the Chief City and then we will pass on.

*Manilla*, the Capital of this Island, and the Seat of the Government of the *Phillipine* Islands, stands in the 14 Deg. 40 M. South Latit. at a point of Land on the River, which issues from the Lake *Babi* and falls into the Sea, making a good Haven at *Cavite*, which is a very good well built Town on the West Coast. It is two Miles in Circumference, well guarded with good Walls, wherein are six Gates, a strong Castle and divers Out-works: The Streets are broad, the Houses of Timber, and the Palaces very beautiful; but by reason of Earthquakes, which often overthrow Houses, the Buildings are not regular. The City itself contains about 3000 Souls consisting of *Spaniards*,  
or



or a mix'd Race proceeding from them and *Indians*: But the Suburbs are more Copious. The *Chinese* Quarter on one side of the City, consists of divers Streets of Shops of all Trades, 3000 *Chinese* inhabit here, and are the chief Trades-men, the *Spaniards* and *Indians* being too lazy: They are called *Sanglays*, have an *Alcade* to govern them, and are much kept under by the *Spaniards*: There are 15 other Suburbs inhabited by *Indians*, and other Strangers. The Cathedral is large, and several other Churches in the City Rich. The Arch-bishop has a Revenue of 6000 pieces of Eight, and the Canons 500 a piece. The Governor lives in great State, and has a very large Revenue, which would make it a desirable Post, if a Sting in the Tail did not Marr the Sweet, for when a Governor after Eight Years is recalled, he undergoes a Tryal, wherein so much Encouragement is given to Accusations, and the Judges are so severe in their Verdict, that if he be not able to expend 100000 pieces of Eight in Bribes, he is seldom found virtuous enough to escape Imprisonment or other Punishment.

This Island has the Liberty of sending two Ships every Year to New Spain, but because the number is restrain'd they Build those two vastly large. These carry to *Acazulco* a Port in the South Sea, in the Kingdom of Mexico or New Spain, the Spices and Rich Commodities of *India*, and bring back the valuable Commodities of *America* and *Europe*. These are the Ships which *Dampier* lately attempted to take.

The most remarkable of the other Islands are, *CALUL*, at the Mouth of the Straights of *Manilla* on the East, 'tis small being but three Leagues in Compass, but Fruitful and pleasant.

*PHILLIPINA* or *Tandaya*, which *Gimelli* calls *Samar*, on the South side of the same Straight, is large, viz. 130 Leagues in Circumference, and reputed one of the most Fruitful of these Islands. The Chief Town where the *Alcade* resides, is named *Catbalogan*, and the North East Point of the Island is called the *Cabo de Spirito Sancto*.

A Fruit or sort of Nut found near *Catbalogan*, is reported to be of most surprizing virtue, as not only expelling Poison, but even hindering its Effects, and retorting it on him that intends the Mischief. With many other Excellencies enumerated by *Gimelli*.

*MASBATE*, situate West of *Tandaya*, is 30 Leagues in Compass, yields Wax, Salt, Civer and Gold, whereof here are rich Mines, where the Ore rises 22 Carats fine; but they are not wrought.

*MINDORO*, on the South West Coast of *Manilla*, which gives name to the Straight between that Island and it, is 70 Leagues in compass, and yields Coco, and Wax.

*LUBAN*, a small Island 5 Leagues in compass only remarkable for a high Mountain in it, which casts out Flames.

*PARAGUA*, stretching out North East and South West, 100 Leagues in length, and about 12 or 14 in breadth. The middle of it lies in the 9th Deg. of Lat. and it's South Cape *Tagusau* is 50 Leagues North from *Borneo*. The South part of this Island is subject to the King of *Borneo*; in the Midland are wild *Indians*; and the Northern part is Subject to the *Spaniards*,

who keep a Garrison of 200 Men in the Fort *Taytay*. The Island is Mountainous, and abounds with Forests and wild Beasts, and yields Wax, but little Rice.

The three Islands *Calamianes*, lying on the North of *Paraga*, are small in compass, and yield Wax and the Edible Birds Nest.

*PANAY*, an Island of good Extent, being 100 Leagues in Compass, lying 30 Leagues South East from *Mindoro*, Lat. 10 D. It is reckoned the best Peopled, and most fruitful of all the Archipelago. The chief River of the same Name falls into the Sea, over against the small Island *LUTAY*, and makes a convenient Haven. Many other Rivers water this Island, and render its Soil fertile. The South point jutting out over against the Island *IMAVAS*, which yields *Sarsaparilla*, forms another Harbour, which is guarded by a Fort built in 1681. This Island produces for Exportation, 100000 Bushels of Rice, *per Annum*.

*LETTE*, seated to the Southward, hardly 20 Leagues from the Coast of *Mindanao*, is between 90 and 100 Leagues in Compass. Vast Mountains run along the middle, and make such an Alteration in the Air, that when it is Winter on the North side, 'tis Summer on the South, but the Plains are very fruitful, and yield plentiful Crops of Rice, to which the Rivers that run down from the Mountains, do not a little contribute. The Mountains abound in Deer, wild Boars and Fowl, and the Land yields Roots, which is the Food of the Inhabitants, Grain, Coco-Trees and good Timber for Shipping. The Commodities for Trade here are Rice, Wax and Quilts. The inhabitants are a civil People.

*BOHOL*, lying near *Leyte*, towards *Mindanao*, is smaller, being in compass but 40 Leagues. The Soil whereof produces no Rice, but yields Coco's and divers Roots, much Cattle and Fish, and is rich in Gold Mines.

*SIBU*, *Zebu* or *Sogbu*, lyes on the North West of *Leyte*, about 15 or 20 Leagues long, and 8 broad. The chief City is named, *Nombre de Dios*, i. e. the Name of God, and is seated on a point in the middle of the Island, in the 10th Deg. Lat. Here the famous *Ferd. Magellans*, the first Circumnavigator of the Earth was killed by the Treacherous *Indians*, after the King and his chief Attendants had been Baptized, and pretended to be his good Friends. This being the Island where that great Man first Planted his Catholic Majesty's Standard in 1521. and where afterwards the Conquest of the whole was begun. This City was founded by the *Spaniards*, and made a Bishop's See, and the seat of a civil Magistracy, in the Year 1598. It has a good Haven, which is defended by a strong Fort, and a Garrison of two Companies of Soldiers. Here is a Cathedral Church, and divers Monasteries. The Liberty of sending Ships to *New-Spain*, was first granted to this Island of *Zebu*, which made it a place of great Trade, but the rise of *Manilla* has been the sinking of this, and so it is now less resorted to, but still has Hamlets of *Chinese* and *Indian* Merchants and Artificers. This Island wants Rice, but produces *Borona*, Onions, Garlick and other Roots, Cotton of which they make fine Quilts, the Plant *Abaca*, of which Cordage for Shipping is made, Tobacco, and much Civer and Wax.

NEGROS,



NEGROS, on the North West of *Zebu* is 100 Leagues in compass, and is fruitful in Rice. The Mountains are inhabited by *Blacks* of the *Negri*-kind, which gave Name to the Island. These bring Wax out of the Mountains, to exchange for Rice. Much *Cacao* transplanted from *New-Spain* grows here.

In all these Islands, 'tis reckoned there are 100000 People, that pay Tribute to the King of *Spain*, however, his Revenue does not amount to above 40000 pieces of Eight, which does not answer the charge of Government and Garrisons (here being 4000 Soldiers maintained) by 250000 pieces of Eight, so much being Annually sent from *New-Spain*.

Thus far I have taken from *Seignior Gimelli*, who resided some time at *Manila*, in the Year 1696. and seems to be a Man of Judgment and Integrity, and a Person who conversed with People of the best Condition, and therefore we may believe his accounts are right. A great many particulars we are forced to omit for brevity, which yet would appear agreeable to a curious Man, such a one may please to consult the Author himself, a Translation whereof is extant in the late Collection of Voyages, Printed by Mr. *Churchill*.

As for *Mindanao*, another of the *Philippines*, altho' not Subject to the *Spaniards*. We shall consult *Dampier*, who Coasted it all round, and was ashore in it long and often.

MINDANAO, the biggest of all the *Philippine* Islands, except *Luzon*, is 60 Leagues long, and 30 or 50 broad, situate between the 5th and the 8th Deg. of North Lat. and between the 141 and the 145 Deg. of Long. It is a very Mountainous Land, full of Hills and Valleys. The Mould in general is deep and black, and extraordinary fat and fruitful. The sides of the Hills are Stony, yet productive enough of tall Trees. In the heart of the Country, there are some Mountains that yield Gold. The Valleys are well moistened with pleasant Brooks and small Rivers of delicate Water; and have on their Banks Trees of divers sorts flourishing, and green all the year.

The Trees in general are very large, and most of them are of kinds unknown to us. Of these the *Sago* or *Libby*-Tree, is worth notice, as affording Food to the Inhabitants, 'tis frequent in these Eastern Islands, and supplies in a great measure the want of Rice, for the Pith being pounded, and with Water strained through a Cloath, to keep back the Husky part, settles at the bottom, and the Water being drawn off, and the Settlemnt dried, it becomes a Flour, which makes good nourishing Bread; and is also a Medicine against the Flux.

In some parts of *Mindanao*, there is plenty of Rice, but in the Hilly part, they Plant Yams, Potatoes and Pumpkins, which thrive well, the other Fruits of this Island are Melons, Plantains, Bonano's, Guava's, Betel-Nuts, Coco-Nuts, Oranges, &c. And some Nutmegs and Cloves, but neither many nor cultivated, for fear of the *Dutch*, who they apprehend would enslave them as they have done the other Islanders where those Fruits grow. And the Durian and Jack, which are praised by *Dampier* as Delicious Fruits.

Here are many sort of Beasts both wild and tame, as Horses, Kine, Buffalo's, Goats, wild Hogs, Deer, Monkeys, Guano's, an Amphibious oviparous Animal which is good Food, Lizards, Snakes, Scorpions, and other venomous Creatures; but no Beast of Prey.

Of Fowls they have Ducks and Hens, Pidgeons, Turtle Doves, Parrots, Parakites, and many other smaller Birds.

There are a great many Harbours, Creeks, and good Bays for Ships to ride in, and Rivers Navigable for Canoes, and well stored with Fish of divers kind, as also Tortoizes.

The Weather in *Mindanao* is temperate enough for Heat, especially near the Sea, having Breezes by Day and land Winds at Night, to cool the Air. The Easterly Winds blow in October and November, and bring good Weather, but the Westerly Wind brings Rain and Thunder, it begins in May, and in July and August is very violent, so as to overflow the Land. In September it begins to hold up, and from October to April 'tis settled fair Weather.

The Island is not all Subject to one Prince, but consists of four Nations, viz. The *Mindanayans* who are Subjects of the Sultan residing at the chief City *Mindanao*. The *Hilanoones* who live in the Mountains in the Midland, and bring down Bees-Wax to exchange for other Commodities. The *Solagues*, who live in the North West part, and have no Commerce with the *Mindanays*, but Trade to *Manilla*. And the *Alserres*, who are of the same extract as the *Mindanays*, but have for some time been governed by a Sultan of their own. They are all Mahometans in Religion, of tawny Complexion, but of brighter yellow than some other *Indians*, mean Statures, small Limbs, straight Bodies and little Heads, oval Faces, flat Foreheads, small Eyes, wide Mouth and thin Lips. They are ingenious, nimble and active when disposed to it, but much inclined to Lazyness, civil to Strangers, but revengeful on Enemies. They wear a small Turban on their Heads, Frocks and Breeches on their Bodies, but no Stockings or Shooes. The Garments of the common People are made of the Cloath made of the Plantain-Tree, called *Saggen*. The Prince is very Arbitrary, and takes from his Subjects what he pleases, which makes them neglect to get riches, and very few possess more than serves for present convenience. Their Food is Rice, or Sagu and Fish, the better sort eat Buffalo's Flesh and Fowl, with Rice which they dress ill, and eat very slovenly. Besides the proper *Mindanao* Tongue, they speak the *Malayan* Language, in the more civilized part of the Island, and have Schools to instruct their Children to Read and Write; and teach them the Principles of the Mahometan Religion.

The chief City on the Island is *Mindanao*, seated on the South West Coast, in the 7 Deg. 20 Min. North Latit. on the Banks of a small River, about 2 Miles from the Sea. The Houses are only one Story raised upon Posts 14 or 15 Foot high, with a Ladder or Stairs to go up, Partitions made of split Bamboes, divide it into many Rooms, the Floor is made of the same Canes, and the Roof covered with Palmeto Leaves. The Sultan's House is large, and stands upon 180 great Posts, raised higher than the rest: it is guarded with 20 pieces of iron Cannon. He is a very poor Prince, for tho' he takes what he pleases from his Subjects, and never fails to borrow Money of any one that he understands has any, yet the Island holding very little Commerce, the People are all poor. The *Spaniards* formerly settled here, and built several Forts, endeavouring to bring the People under their Subjection, but being called off for the defence of *Manilla*, the Natives destroyed all their Forts, and will never since suffer them to Land, but carry their Commodities which are Gold and Bees-Wax to *Manilla*, in their own



own Ships, whereof they build good serviceable ones. The *Dutch* in Canoes from *Ternate* and *Tidore* come hither sometimes, to buy Rice, Bees-Wax and Tobacco; but the *Mindayans* do not Affect them, being always in fear of being Subjected as the other Islands have been by them, and therefore invite the *English* to settle here. Thus much of *Mindanao*, he that desires more, may read it in *Dampier's* 12th Chapter of his first Volume.

On the North West of *Mindanao*, lies the Island of St. JOHN, at about 3 or 4 Leagues distant from its Coast, in the 7th or 8th Deg. North Latit. This Island is in length about 38 Leagues, and in breadth

24. It is a high land, and full of small Hills, which are covered with Trees. The Soil seems to be a good fat Mould, and may produce Corn and Fruits, but has been very little visited.

XOLLO, a small Island on the South West of *Mindanao*, in the Midway between it and *Borneo*, is reckoned one of the *Phillipines*, and represented by *Gimelli* as a famous place, yielding Pearls and Amber in its Seas, and plenty of Rice, Fruits, Pepper, Cattle and Elephants on its Land. The Air is wholesome, and refreshed with frequent Rains. The Ships from *Borneo* and the neighbouring Islands resort hither, and make it a kind of Mart.

## THE LADRONES ISLANDS.

THESE Islands were first discovered and taken possession of in the Name of King Philip II. A. D. 1565. They called them at first *Ilas das Velas*, afterwards *de las Ladrones*, because when they touched at them in their Voyages from *Mexico* to the *Phillipines*, the inhabitants used to steal their Goods, and then run up into the Mountains, so they called them the Islands of Thieves. Of late, the Island *Guam*, having obtained the Name of *Maria*, these Islands are thence Denominated the *Marian Islands*. They are many in Number, lying North and South at various distances, from the 13 Deg. to the 28 Deg. North Latit. The *Spaniards* having taken Possession of as many as they thought convenient, and built Forts on them, where a Governour and Garrison reside. Altho' the Soil of these Islands be in general pretty good, and produces necessaries for Life, yet they afford so little commodity for Profit, that the Government costs the King of *Spain* 34000 pieces of Eight, as *Gimelli* tells us. But they lying in the Road of the *Acapulco* Ships, the Possession of them by an Enemy would be as inconvenient as the liberty of touching there for Refreshments, is convenient to that Trade. They lye 700 Leagues East from the Coast of *Luzonia*, and 7302 Miles West from the Coast of *America*, as by *Dampier's* observations is made appear.

*Guaban* or *Guam*, as *Dampier* calls it, which I suppose to be the same which *Gimelli* names *Iguana*, is the principal of them, as being that where the *Acapulco* Ships touch, it lyes in 13 Deg. 21 Lat. 12 Leagues long, and 4 broad, lying from North to South. The Soil is indifferently fruitful, yielding

Rice, Pine-apples, Melons, Oranges, Limes, Coco's, and a particular sort of Fruit which *Dampier* calls the Bread-Fruit; this is a kind of very large Apple which being baked eats like Bread, and is very good Food, this Fruit lasts eight Months in the Year, and supplies the Natives with Food; for tho' some Rice be produced, the Soil is too dry to yield very much. The Natives are strong Bodied, large Limbed, and well shaped, they have no manner of Religion in them, says *Gimelli*, from the Reports of the Missionaries, and were very rude to those Fathers, whereof Ten have suffered Martyrdom in these Islands. The wet Season, which begins at June, and lasts to October, is not so violent here as elsewhere in the *Indies*. Upon *Guam* the *Spaniards* have a Fort, and a Garrison, supposed to be 80 or 90 Men, but *Dampier* says, the Fort had but 6 Guns, a Governour and 20 or 30 Men when he was there.

The other of these Islands of most note are, *Sarpanta*, in 14 Deg. Lat. *Buen vista*, in 15 Deg. *Saespara*, in 15 Deg. 40 Min. *Anatan*, in 17 Deg. 20 Min. *Sarigan*, in 17 Deg. 25 Min. *Guagam*, in 18 Deg. *Alamaguan*, in 18 Deg. 18 Min. *Pagon*, in 18 Deg. 4 Min. The burning Mountain of *Griga*, in 19 Deg. 33 Min. *Tinay* and *Manga*, in 20 Deg. 45 Min. *Urrac*, in 20 Deg. 55 Min. Three other burning Mountains. *Isle de Patas*, in 25 Deg. 30 Min. *la Disconocida*, in 25 Deg. 50 Min. *Malabrigo*, in 27 Deg. 40 Min. &c. This I take from *Gimelli*, who sailed by them in his Voyage to *New Spain*.

And here we finish our Account of the Islands in the *Indian Sea*. As looking upon the *Japonesse* not to belong to this Class.

CHINA



# CHINA.



**A**ltho' the Extent and opulency of the Country, and the politeness of its Inhabitants be sufficient to have made China Renown'd throughout the Earth, a thousand Years ago, yet whether the unpassable Mountains, and barren Sands, which are said to bound it towards India; or the Custom of the People, of whom 'tis reported, that they either never

admitted Strangers among them, or else never permitted them to return; or whether the extream distance only may be the cause that the rest of the World were wholly unacquainted with it; but so it is, that till within 200 Years past, that the improvement of Navigation carry'd European Ships round the Globe, the rest of Mankind knew little or nothing of China. 'Tis true, Paulus Venetus's account of

Cam-



*Embalu* (which as we have elsewhere said, was in all probability *Pekin*) and his mighty Character of the *Cham* and his Subjects, may be now applied to *China*; but since at that time, it was understood of *Tartary* only, we may still say that till the *Portuguese* discovered and Traded to this Country by Sea, the other Nations of the World were quite ignorant of it. But as the sudden appearance of a great Light even blinds our Eyes with it's Lustre, so the unexpected discovery of so polite a Nation, which had received no instruction from its Neighbours, so dazzled the understandings of the first Visitors, that the Stories they brought us were more like Romances than Truths: And till the Zeal of the *Romish* Church stirred up its Missionaries to Preach the Faith there, we were still ignorant of the true State of that Empire.

Since the Year 1580. there have continually been a number of *Romish* Priests in *China*; these finding that the *Chinese* had an imperfect Speculation in the Mathematical Sciences, and perceiving it to be no difficult Matter to shew themselves better Masters in that Knowledge, laid hold of the Vain, the Gentry and Nobility of *China* had that way, and by acquainting themselves well in those Arts, before they went hence, gained great Esteem amongst them. Thus by being pretty good Mathematicians and Astronomers, they have obtained so much Favour, especially of late, with Persons of the highest Rank, the Emperor not excepted, that they have been able to live there very comfortably, and propagate their Doctrines as they pleased. 'Tis to these Gentlemen that we owe the discovery of the true State of *China*, at least they all agree to assure us, that 'tis the true State, which otherwise I must confess might be doubted, since in many Cases it seems Hyperbolic. Of these *Navarette*, *Magaillans*, and *le Compte*, being the latest, we have chosen to make most use of. The first of them was a *Spanish* Dominican Fryar, who came from *Manilla* and resided in *China* many Years, between 1650 and 1670. The second a *Portuguese*, who lived there 37 Years from 1640 to 1677, and the third a *French* Jesuit, who came home but lately. Together with these, besides Fathers *Martini* and *Kitcher*, we made use of a Treatise brought from *China* by the *Muscovite* Ambassador, in the Year 1694. which being said to be written by a Native of *China*, and a Christian (his Name *Dionysius Kao*) and recommended by the Ambassador as faithful; we have been willing to have some regard to.

CHINA, has at several times born several Names, for when a Prince of a New Family ascends the Throne, he alters the Name of the Country; and there having been 22 Families of these Princes, 'tis probable so often it has changed its Name: Those Names were all Characteristick, being the word *Kingdom* with some pompous adjunct; as for Example, under the late Family 'twas called *Tai mim que*, i. e. a Kingdom of Great Brightness; and under this Family *Tai cim que*, i. e. a Kingdom of Purity; or otherwise *Xam que*, High and Sovereign Kingdom; and again *Clum que*, Kingdom of the Centre, for they believe it seated in the middle of the Earth. The *Indians* call it *Chin* from a Family that once governed; (or as *Navarette* says, from the great produce of Silk there, which he says that word signifies) from whom the *Portuguese* received that

Name, and adding an *a* conveyed it to the rest of *Europe*.

This Empire is seated in the Eastern Part of *Asia*, having *Tartary* on the North and North West; The *Mogul's* Empire and *India extra Gangem* on the West; *Tonquin* and the *Indian* Sea which flows between it and the *Phillipine* Islands on the South: And the *Chinese* Sea that runs between it and *Japan* on the East. It is a very large Country, extending from the 21 Deg. of Northern Latit. to the 41 Deg. But if the Island *Hainan*, which lyes on the South of the Province of *Quentum* be included, 3 Deg. more must be added, and so according to *Magaillans* it must be reckoned from the 18th to the 41 Deg. and as he tells us from the *Chinese* Books, the length is 5750 *Chinese* Furlongs, which makes 1380 Miles. *Le Compte* reckons it but 450 *French* Leagues, excluding *Hainan*, but agrees with the Maps in the Situation of *Canton* and *Pekin*, from which he takes his Calculation, and so the difference is not much: But in its Breadth he is mistaken, for he supposes the Kingdom to be of a circular Form, and so gives it near the same extent that way; whereas it is rather oval, and according to *Magaillans* but 1020 Miles broad, from *Nimpo* in the East, to the utmost Frontier of *Suebuen* in the West.

The old Maps were guilty of a gross mistake in the Situation of *China*; for Father *le Compte* assures us, that by exact Observation 'tis found to be 500 Leagues nearer to *Europe* than they placed it: Another Correction he gives which is considerable, viz. that the Province of *Leaotum* is without the Wall, and not included, as the former Maps used to make it.

The Climate of *China*, by reason of its extent, must needs be different in several Parts, but in general it is Temperate; for though the Southern Part lye under the Tropick, yet the cold Winds that blow over the large Continent of *Tartary* render the Winters very cold; and *le Compte* tells us in the Account of his Journey from *Nimpo* to *Pekin*, that the Frost was very severe in *January* and *February*, so as to oblige him to lie by till the Ice could be broken for his Passage: And *Martini* says, the Winters are severely cold for three or four Months.

The SOIL produces plenty of Rice, Wheat, Oats, and other Grain, Pasture, Cotton, Wax of a peculiar sort proceeding from a Tree, whereof Father *Magaillans* gives a particular account, p. 140. and Tallow of the same kind, which *le Compte*, *Navarette* and *Kao* describe, and say the Kernel, or rather the Pulp of a Fruit has all the properties of Tallow: Here are also Mines of Gold and Silver, but never wrought: Plenty of Cattle, Fish, Fowl, Fruit; of most of the kinds seen in *Europe*, besides many others not found here. Of Fruits the *Lechia*, the *Longane* and the *Oranges* are singularly Delicious; and they have *Figs*, *Grapes*, *Areka-Nut*, *Anana's*, and the rest of the most delicious of *India*. For Game they have *Bears*, wild *Boars*, *Deer*, and many others, whose Fur is a good Commodity: They have Silk also in vast quantity, so as to afford a great Exportation, besides Cloathing of all kinds to the Natives: And the Earth whereof *Porcelane* or *China-Ware* is made affords them a notable Manufacture. To these productions we must add from *Navarette*, Sugar, Tobacco, Linnen, Cloth, Oil extracted from Seeds, Wine extracted from Rice, and another sort from Quinces, Camphir, Ebony, Sandal Wood, Oaks  
T and



and Pine-Trees, Pit-Coal, Canes, Ginger, China Root, Rhubarb, the Root Jinsu, and the Herb Tea so much esteemed in *Europe* grows here in most plentiful Degree. And of Animals, Elephants, whereof many are bred in *Tunnan*, Tygers which are very numerous and fierce, and go about in great Drove, Leopards, Ounces, the Beast that yields Musk, which hangs in a Bag at its Navel, Horses and Swine, besides several strange Beasts which we have never seen. There are Eagles, Cranes, Birds of Paradise, Peacocks, Pheasants, Geese and Ducks innumerable, and several other Fowl.

The Land is so admirably Cultivated, that not only the Valleys are made as Level as a Bowling-Green, but even the Mountains are cut into large Steps, and artificial Plains cut out of the sides of Hills; which are like Terrasses one above another, and made as Fertile as the Valleys: In other Parts as *Xenfi*, *Honan*, *Quantum* and *Fokien*, where the Moold is not so deep, the Mountains bear large Forests of tall straight Trees, which by means of the Rivers they convey in vast Floats all over the Empire: Some of their Mountains appear in odd shapes, as one represents they say their Idol *Fibi*, another a Dragon, another a Cock, &c. and to some of these Mountains they make Religious Pilgrimages.

The RIVERS and artificial Canals of *China* are very many, and very commodious, both for watering the Land and carriage of Goods: the most considerable whereof are the *Kiam* or the Blew-River, and the *Hoambo* or Yellow-River; the *Kiam* rises in the Province of *Tunnan* near the Frontiers of the *Mogul*, and runs quite cross the Empire from West to East, passing through *Suebuen*, *Huquem* and *Nankim*, and falls into the Sea 30 Leagues below *Kiamnin*, over against the Island *Cummin*, having made a Course of 1000 Miles. This River is very deep, even so as not to be Fathomed, and very broad; but its passage somewhat dangerous, and its course very Rapid. The *Hoambo*, *Hoango* or *Yellow River* hath its Rise on the Mountains, on the West side of the Province of *Suebuen*, runs along the Frontiers of *Tartary*, Northward, beyond the great Wall flows Eastward and then enters *China*, and runs Southward between the Provinces of *Xenfi* and *Xanfi*; then turns Eastward, and passes through *Honan*, part of *Xantum*, and through *Nankim*; and after a Course of 600 Leagues falls into Sea about 30 Leagues North from the Mouth of *Kiam*, the Water of the *Kiang* is always of a Yellow or red Colour, and not fit to Drink till 'tis purified. The *Grand Canal* may deserve the Name of a considerable River, for *le Compte* tells us it runs quite the length of the Empire, from *Pekin* to *Canton*. And *Magillans* says, 'tis 3500 *Chinese* Furlongs (which answers to 840 Miles of 60 to a Degree) in length, and furnished with 72 Locks or Sluces to retain the Water: This was a Work of vast Expence, Art and Labour, and performed by one of the Emperors about 400 Years ago. A multitude of other Rivers and Canals are found here, with Causeys and Bridges suited to the utmost convenience and facility of Travelling. Also a number of Lakes and Hot Fountains, whose Waters have many peculiar Virtues, set down by *le Compte*, but too long for us to repeat.

The INHABITANTS are Ingenious and Industrious, as appears by the curious wrought Silks, Cabinets, Porcelain and other Manufactures, daily brought to *Europe*; by the admirable Cultivation

of their Land; and by the many publick Works of vast Labour; as the *Grand Canal* above mentioned, the Great Wall (whereof more hereafter) the stately Bridges, vast Sluces in the Canal, the convenient Causeys on its Banks, the many publick Inns, &c. And although they had no converse with *Europe* or other parts of the World, yet they have for many Ages had the use of the Mariner's Compass, Gunpowder and Printing; are Masters of all Sciences (though not to the Perfection that we are) and profess the most exact Morality; which was taught by the Philosopher *Confucius*, above 300 Years before Christ, and his Precepts are still in the highest Esteem.

The LANGUAGE of *China* is peculiar to that Nation, as being different from all others in every respect: The Radical Words are but 333 in Number, every one of which is diversified in its Signification five several Ways by Accent, and as these are all Monosyllables, they are not only variously joined and made Compounds innumerable, which by the Pronunciation also are varied so largely, that this is reputed the most copious Language in the World: In their Writing they begin at the top of the Paper, and make not use of an Alphabet of 24 Letters as we do, but use a vast number of Hieroglyphical Characters, even 54409, says *Magillans*, which makes the writing their Language extream difficult to learn; and the nicety of Pronunciation makes it as difficult to Strangers to speak, for with a wrong Accent a Word signifies directly contrary to what you intend. But though Reading and Writing be difficult, it is universally learnt, and the meanest People among them teach it to their Children.

The RELIGION of *China* is Gross Idolatry; their God *Fobe*, and a multitude of other Idols, are daily Sacrificed and Prayed to, and abundance of foolish Legends are part of their Religion: Christianity begins of late to have some Footing, but the Jesuits have been so complaisant to the *Chinese* that it is made too much like their own Religion.

The GOVERNMENT is the most regular in the World; for though the Emperor be absolute; Tribunals and Magistrates are established in most exact and regular manner for performance of all the Offices of Government. At *Pekin* the King with his Grand Council of State, compose the Supreme Tribunal of the Empire: Under that are six other Superiour Tribunals for Civil, and five for Military Affairs held in the same City. The particular Business of each Tribunal is thus. The first has the Care of furnishing the Empire with Persons of Merit and Capacity fit for Government, to which purpose they examine those that are to be made Mandarins, informs the King of the Virtues and Defects of every one before he be preferred to any Post in the Government; take Cognizance of the Conduct and Behaviour of the Mandarins that are employed; enquire into the Merits of the Petty-Kings, Dukes, Princes of the Blood and other Great Lords. This Tribunal also Seals all judicial Acts. The second Superiour Tribunal has the Care of the Finance, supervising the Treasure, Receipts, Revenues and Tributes of the King, and pay the Annual Pensions to the Petty-Kings, &c. This Tribunal also keeps the Roll which is made every Year, of all the Families, Men, Measure of Land, and Du-



ues payable to the King. The third Superior Tribunal has the oversight of Rites and Ceremonies, Arts and Sciences. The fourth has the ordering of War and Military Affairs, gives out Commissions in the Army and Fleet, orders the Levys, replenishes the Magazines, and keeps the Garrisons in repair. The fifth Superiour Tribunal is the Court for trying all Criminal Causes brought hither by Appeals from subordinate Courts. And the sixth has the Care of the publick Works, such as building and repairing the Kings Palaces, the Temples, Sepulchres, the Palaces of the Inferior Tribunals all over the Empire, the Towers, Bridges, Sluices, Dams, Highways, &c. Every one of these Tribunals is composed of a large Number of Mandarins, and divided into several Chambers or Committees, for the better dispatch of Business. The five Military Tribunals govern the Army. The first the Rere-Guard, the second the Left Wing, the third the Right Wing, the fourth the main Battle, and the fifth the Vanguard.

Subordinate to these Tribunals, there are Vice-Rois in Provinces, Governours and Judges in Cities, and smaller Officers in Towns; for dispensing Justice to the People, and maintaining the publick Peace: And so very well contrived is the Government of *China*, that if the Mandarins and Courtiers were not the most covetous in the World, whereby Offices and Justice are constantly bought and sold; the People of this Country would be the happiest on the Earth.

The Emperor appears in the greatest Magnificence that can be imagined, his Palace at *Pekin* is six Miles in Circumference; 'tis true, it comprehends the Courts for the Tribunals, but the Royal Apartment alone, is not less than a Mile and half long, and three quarters of a Mile broad; wherein are many noble Halls and Chambers magnificently adorned; and Gardens, Canals, Parks, &c. And at the times that the King makes his appearance, which is four times a Month, he is attended by four or five thousand Noblemen and Mandarins to make their Court, together with many Petty Kings who are his Vassals, and attend in their turns at Court. And when he goes abroad, his Attendants are so numerous, that they would compose a good Army; *Magaillans* sets down the Order of the Emperor's Procession when he goes out of the Palace to offer Sacrifice, or perform any publick Duty, wherein the Attendants amount to at least 8000 Men, 4 Elephants, and several Hundreds of Horse; when he goes abroad, which is usually to the Province of *Lenotum* or *Tartary*, a Hunting, a vast Army always attends him.

The HISTORY of *China* is very Ancient, the Fabulous Legends make it many thousand Years before the Creation; but those Histories that may be credited, begin within two or three Hundred Years after the Flood, and shew a Succession of Monarchs to this time; but the Families of the Kings have been often changed, viz. 22 times; and when a Prince of a New Family ascends the Throne (which has happened either through Conquest, Misgovernment, or the like) he cuts off all the Nobility and Creatures of his Predecessor, by which means there is no very ancient Family in *China*, except that of *Confucius*, whose Merits have made his Posterity be revered for above 2000 Years. In our Age has happened

such a Change, for in the Year 1645. the Eastern *Tartars* under *Ximchi* seized the Government, of which we shall speak more by and by. This must necessarily have caused some alteration in the Government; but the methods of it were so regular and well established, that the *Tartar* permitted it to remain, and made so little change, that except that *Pekin* is possessed by *Tartars*, and that Nation guards the Fortresses, *China* is just as it was under the former Princes.

For the better shewing the Strength and Populousness of this Kingdom, we will set down the number of Cities, Fortresses, &c. as we find them in *Father Magaillan's History of China*, which he took out of a Book composed by a Learned Mandarin for the use of the Government. But first of the Great Wall, which is indeed a most stupendious Work. It is many Yards thick, and exceeding high; built of Brick cemented by so good Mortar, that though it be 1800 Years old, it is not at all decayed. It was built by the Emperor *Chihobamti*, and as Tradition reports, was finished in five Years, against the Incursions of the *Tartars*; it begins at *Canchu* in *Xenfi* in the West, and is carried on over Mountains as well as Valleys, to the *Cang-Sea*, between the two Provinces *Pekin* and *Lenotum* in the East; 405 *Portuguese* Leagues in length, without accounting for Turnings, says *Magaillans*; or 500 Leagues, allowing for the Windings, says *le Compte*; it is all along fortified with strong Towers at reasonable distance, to the number of 3000, and in the time of the *Chinese* Monarchs, a Million of Soldiers were maintained for its Guard. The number of Walled Towns in *China* are 4402, divided into the Orders of Civil and Military. The Civil are 2045. whereof of the first Rank 175, of the second Rank 270, of the third Rank 1600. The Military Cities are 2350, whereof Fortresses of the first Rank 629, of the second 560, of the third 311, of the fourth 300, of the fifth 150, of the sixth 100, and of the seventh Degree 300. these last are small Forts in the Fields near the Frontiers of *Tartary*, and on the Mountains, against Thieves and Robbers, in *Xanfi* and *Xenfi* especially where the very Soldiers are apt to Pillage. The number of Cities in the whole Empire are seventeen hundred, says *Dionys. Kao*. The number of Cities and Towns according to *Naverette* are thus, 148 Cities of the first Rank called *Fu*, 239 of the second Rank called *Gheu*, 1149 of the third Rank named *Hieu*; 11 Cities of Soldiers where those Military Men live, who have Lands Alligned for their Maintainance, 493 Castles on the Sea Coast, whereof some are extream large and populous, 2910 Boroughs on the Coast, equivalent to Towns, as the Castles are to Cities. And the Boroughs and Villages all round the Country are innumerable, and exceeding Populous. *Le Compte* says, there are 1000 Fortresses of the first Rank, but that the rest are not considerable; the Fortified Towns (except on the Frontiers of *Tartary*) being stronger than others only in Situation and Garrison. Note, in this Account many Cities are included that pay no Tribute to the Emperor, but are Governed by their own Lords or Petty Kings, whereof here are 32 that are independent of the Court, except in Homage, &c. The number of Families in the Kingdom (excluding Soldiers, Women, Children, and all that don't pay Taxes) is reckoned 11502872, and including the Army and others, the Number of Males is 59788364. The Army consists



of 902054 to guard the Frontiers, with 989167 Horses always ready for Auxiliary Forces; and 767970 Men in Garrisons, but the greater part of these have other Occupations, and though listed as Soldiers, exercise their respective Trades. Other Horses maintained by the King for his Troops, or for Posts and Messengers on publick Occasions, 564900. Publick Inns or Places of Entertainment for the Mandarins and others that Travel on the King's account, conveniently seated all over the Empire, 1145. Large Barks constantly employed in bringing Provisions, Silks and Necessaries from the Southern Provinces to the Court at *Peking*, 9999. they will not add another, because this makes a greater sound than ten thousand would. There are 331 famous Bridges over the Rivers, not much inferior to that I have spoken of, says my Author, and that he tells us is built of White Marble 300 Geometrical Paces long and 8 broad, supported by 13 Arches, exceeding well wrought with 140 Marble Pillars upon it, whose interstices are filled with Tables of Marble and serve as a Rail; several other Ornaments to it of Marble Carvings he describes, too long here to mention. Not far from this Bridge there is another of 25 Arches, of admirable Structure also. Both these are in the Province of *Peking*, and the former of them which had stood 2000 Years, was broke down in the Year 1688. by an Inundation. The same Author tells us there are 272 publick Libraries, a vast number of Doctors and Men of Learning; 350000 Bonzi's or Priests; and 3036 Men and 208 Women remember'd in their Calendar as Heroes and Saints.

Having thus given you the general view of *China* from *Megaillan* and *le Compte*, we will now for more particular information enlarge a little out of *Navarette*, *Dicmisse*, *Kao* and others.

*China*, is so exceeding Populous says *Kao*, that they are not to be reckoned by Thousands but Millions, for not only the Cities, but even the Towns and Villages are crowded with Inhabitants, and the Roads as well as Streets are continually full of Passengers. 'Tis confidently averred by the Inhabitants, and even believed by the Jesuits, that there are not less than eight Millions of Souls in *Kiamin*, the Capital of *Nankin*; and although that be reckoned the largest City, yet there are many others that might be thought the biggest in the World. The buildings in the Cities (as far as I can learn from Travellers) are of Brick neat and well adorned, but the Houses are not high, being of one or but two Stories at most, and yet one House ordinarily entertains three or four; nay, sometimes five or six Families. The Streets are usually fair and straight, and the publick Buildings stately enough: in every principal City there is a Palace, for the Vice-Roy, Governour or Mandarin, a publick Inn for those that Travel on the Kings account, and as *Navarette* says, there is in every Metropolis one Tower of nine Story high, and another of seven; which seems to be only for Ornament, or at most to afford a view from it of the adjacent Country: that at *Nankin* which is Crusted with Porcelain, is very beautiful and spoken of by all Travellers.

The People in their Temper are addicted to Study, Trade, Mechanick Arts and Industry in general, wherein Cheating may be included. But are no ways to be applauded for Courage; the Armies have always been large, no less than a Million being employed in guarding the great Wall, and perhaps double that Number elsewhere were kept in Pay, but yet

in all the quarrels with the *Tartars*, they were never able to do more than defend their own Countrey. They are excessive vain, and esteem themselves the only wise People in the Universe. They are wonderfully ceremonious in their Visits and Complements, the form of a Visit is set down by *Navarette*, *Kao* and others, but is too tedious to repeat here. And as those Authors tell us, the civility is so universal, that even Villages and Boors are Masters of it. The Great Men are fond of Learning, and value themselves much upon Knowledge, which is so far imitated by the lower Degrees, that even the Tradesmen have ever a Book before them at leisure Hours. The Merchants are a civil sort of People, and are ready to Deal upon the least Profit, rather than loose a Customer. Formerly they were forbid to Trade to Foreign Parts, but Covetousness has overcome that Law, and the desire of Wealth, which reigns with the *Chinese* to the last Degree, makes them purchase License to go to *Japan*, the *Phillipine* Islands, *Siam*, *Bacovia* and other Neighbouring Countries. The Mechanicks are ingenious and perform curious Works, besides all the common Arts for making Utensils; they have thousands of pretty Toys, more curiously wrought than we can imagine. The wrought Silks, Cabinets and Porcelain, are sufficient Proofs to us at this great distance, that they are no bunglers, except in Painting. The Husbandmen are mightily extolled by *Navarette* for their Care, Industry and Neatness, their Lands are fully cultivated, and their Grounds kept clean from Weeds. The Soil is so good, that in most parts they have two Crops of Rice, one in *June*, and the other in *December*, besides a Crop of Vetches, Beans, Wheat or other Grain between; the Humane as well as all other Dung is daily collected in Tubs in all the Cities, by Persons who make a livelihood of selling it to the Peasants.

I find Lands are enjoyed in Property here, not at the disposal of the Prince as in *India*, for *Navarette* tells us, the Husbandmen are generally but poor People, who Farm the Land of the Lord, at the rate of half the Crop, out of which the Landlord pays the Taxes, as the Tenant out of his half, pays the Tillage and Manure.

As to the Learning and Virtue of the *Chinese*, I do not find reason to extol them, so much as Sir *William Temple* and some of the Jesuits would have us; their Science is certainly very Superficial, for all the deep parts of Learning, and so thorough a Knowledge of things, as is necessary to ascertain Truth they are utter Strangers to. And as to their Virtue, I do not find by those very Jesuits, but that it consists more in Speculation than Practice. The Morals of *Confucius* they brag much off, and their Histories are full of instances of the great Virtue of their Princes, Mandarins, &c. whereof *Navarette* has made a large Collection, but many of them are Hyperbolic, and give reason enough to suspect, that Posterity made those fine Stories of their Ancestors. 'Tis true, there is a Face of much Virtue and exact Justice in the Administration of their Government, and in the disposing of Offices, and yet for all that, *le Compte* tells us, the great ones are the most covetous Men in the World, and do nothing without Bribery. And that the lesser Ranks are so much addicted to Cheating, that they deceive your very sight, and deliver painted Blocks to the buyers for Hams of Bacons, and Chests filled with Brick-bracks instead of Porcelain. That their invention



tion and Genius is not over penetrating, appears plainly from the one notable instance of the multitude of Characters they use in Writing, which as we have said are 54489 in Number, whereby the Knowledge of them is made the Study of a Life almost. Now to say nothing of the inconvenience, how much less ingenious is that than the manner of *Europeans*, who by 24 or rather 26 Characters only, are able to express all manner of Words that can be pronounced.

The *Chinese* differ from the other *Asiatics* in this, that they use Chairs and sit not on the Ground; and have fine Beds and Couches. They are excessively guilty of Gaming, wherein they spend whole Days, and loose immense Sums.

At Feasts the Tables are plentifully spread with Multitudes of Dishes, wherein Dogs Flesh among others is a common Food. They use no Knives, Forks or Napkins, but the Meat being served up in small Morfels, a pair of small Sticks of Wood or Ivory is given to every one, with which he Feed himself, without touching the Meat with his Fingers, and they do this with great Dexterity. They Affect a serious gravity at Table, and are seldom intoxicated, although the Cup goes briskly round, for there is but little filled at a time, and withal the Wine is small. At Feasts 'tis ordinary to entertain the Guests with Tumblers and Sports, and the better sort give a Play, which is Acted before them, by Setts of Players, who are ready at call, and present a Collection of Comedies and Farces, out of which the principal Guest chooses that he likes, but 'tis customary for the Guest to make a present to the Players.

In Marriage the Ceremonies and Pomp are great; the young couple are joined without previous Acquaintance, the bargain being made by the Parents, wherein Presents are made on both sides but the Bride brings no Dowry, the Husband rather purchasing his Wife. The Wives are secluded from the sight of all Men, but their own Husbands, and are Divorced upon Misdeameanour. The Men commonly keep Concubines, but the Wife is Mistress of the Family, and these must serve her. The Women in general never appear in the Streets, and in passing from place to place, are always conveyed in covered Coaches or Sedans.

Funeral Solemnities are also Pompous, and the Mournings very long and severe. Children at the Death of a Parent are not permitted the use of a Bed for an hundred Days, during all which time, they lye on the Earth with Tears, lamenting their loss: They are forbid Matrimonial enjoyment for three Years, and shut up themselves from all Conversation for at least one whole Year. A Wife keeps a rigid Mourning three Years for her Husband, and a Husband one Year for his Wife, which is also the usual Term of Mourning for other Relations. The Piety of Children of this kind is very great, and even the Emperor himself exercised it in the most Rigid manner at the Death of his Grandmother, whose Funeral is particularly described by Father *Bouvet*.

Many Festivals are observed in *China*, that of the New Year, and the other called the *Lantern Feast*, at the Full Moon after it, are the chief. At those times there is the utmost jollity for three Days together; and in the latter all the Houses are illuminated with Candles in wonderful fine Lanterns, wherein every one endeavouring to exceed his Neighbour, they make a very fine show.

Altho' the *Chinese*, according to the Doctrine of the Venerable *Confucius*, believe in one God the Creator of the World, and acknowledge a Future State, yet the Idolatry of *India* has been long since introduced among them, and they pay as much Worship to the hideous Images they set up, and believe as ridiculous Legends as the *Indians* do. 'Tis true, this is reckoned but a Sect of them, but then that Sect is so numerous, that their Temples appear in all parts of the Empire, insomuch that a Stranger can judge no less, than that it is the National Religion. *Mahometism* is also spread among them, and 'tis judged there are not less than 500 thousand of that Opinion in *China*. And the number of Christians is very considerable, for as *le Compte* assures us, there are above 200 Churches and Chappels Consecrated, and there are Annually baptized above 4000 Children. And *Kao* computes, that the number of Christians is at least 200 thousand. The present (if he be still living) Emperor *Chiang*, has been very indulgent to them, and published an Edict in 1692. whereby free Liberty was given to any one of his Subjects to embrace the Faith, and be Baptized.

*Fo-Hi* and not *Yitay*, as some relate, was the Name of the first King of *China*, whose Reign their Chronology reckons to be above 4500 Years ago. During all which time, there has been a Succession of the Government under 22 Families, who produced 238 Emperors.

The present Prince is of a *Tartar* Family, Descended from *Xunchi*, who obtained the Crown of *China*, in the Year 1645. in the following manner.

*Zungchi*, the Reigning Emperor at that time, had lived a Supine and Lazy Life in the Palace, surrounded by Eunuchs and Women, and left the Government to the sole Management of others. Whereby a general Defection was bred in the minds of his Subjects, and a Rebel or Robber as *Navarette* calls him, who set himself up, grew formidable enough to overthrow the Government. This Rebels Name was *Lichuang*; he began his Rebellion in *Xensi* which Province he soon made himself Master of, and thereby encreasing his Forces, overpowred other Provinces, and was advanced almost to the Walls of *Peking*, before the Emperor ever heard of him. The Pusillanimous Emperor was so frightened at the Danger, that he never attempted to oppose it, but having first killed his Wife and Children, retired into the innermost part of the Palace, and hanged himself on a Tree. Whereby the Conqueror had free Access, and immediately seized all the Wealth of the Palace; which was so very great, that although he employed Horses, Carts, Camels and all means of Carriage, he was five Days, some say eight, in carrying off the Gold, Silver, Jewels, and most valuable Goods, and yet left a great Wealth in the Treasury, which the *Tartar* afterwards seized. *Lichuang* had thereby Possession of the Government. But giddy with Power, he used it Unskilfully, as well as Tyrannically; for he put divers of the Nobility to Tormenting Deaths: and among the rest, the Father of *Oufangcii*, the Crown General, because the Son, who at that time commanded at the Great Wall, would not come into his Party. This so enraged the General, that he resolved to Revenge it, and at any rate to pull down this Tyrant.

*Oufangcii*.



*Ousengei*, *Usengei* or *Vij-Sanguai*, for by all these Names I find him written, in pursuing his Revenge and in endeavouring to release his Country from Slavery, committed the greatest piece of false Policy that could be, for to assure himself of Force enough, he invited the *Tartars* from *Leatum* to Assist him; these were the old Enemies of *China*, and therefore should never have been introduced, but Revenge overcome Policy, and the General brought in 7 or 8000 *Tartars* to Reinforce his Army: and with them attacking the Usurper, obtained so Signal a Victory, that *Licluang* who fled to *Pekim*, had only time to carry off his best Effects and set Fire to the Palace, and then fled to the remoter Provinces. The General unwisely left the *Tartars* at *Pekim*, and himself pursued the Enemy, but returning Victorious, was surprized to find the *Tartar* on the Throne.

*Xunchi*, the Commander of the *Tartar* Army, was in his first Estate Prince of a Nation of Eastern *Tartars* called *Manticheens*. This Prince finding *China* in so distracted a State, and himself in Possession of the Capital City and Palace, and having as we suppose Reinforced his Army by supplies from *Tartary*, was tempted to set up for Emperor, and accordingly so declared himself. And to make the General easy, gave him the Province of *Yunnan*, with the Title of King. He was fain to Temporize, and accept of it for the present, but after a few Years time, he set up against the *Tartar*, and took upon himself the Title of Emperor, by the Name of *Vij Sangquei*. He maintained long and vigorous War, and conquered half the Empire; but after his Death the Stream turned the other way, and the *Tartar* in some Years reduced all the Kingdom to his Obedience, and put all the Children and Relations of *Usanguai* to Death.

*Xunchi*, the first Emperor of the present *Tartar* Race, enjoyed not many Years the Throne of *China*, but Dying, left his Son of six Years old to the Protection of his Brother *Amevan*; that Prince courageously reduced the Provinces, while his Nephew was still a Minor, and then honourably delivered him the Empire as soon as he came to Age. *Chuntchi*, or *Xunchi* II. as others write it, as that Emperor was named, enjoyed the Crown not many Years after, for he Dyed in 1662. leaving his Son *Changi* a Minor, of but eight Years of Age. The former part of this Princes Reign was troublesome in Wars and Civil Commotions, but he had the good Fortune to surmount them all, and Reigned Peaceably when our last Advices came from thence. His Son and Heir is named *Hwangaisse*, and was a hopeful Gentleman at 28 Years of Age. He may perhaps be now on the Throne, for our last Accounts are at least 10 Years old.

Of the Splendor this Monarch appears in, and of the form of his Government we have already spoken, and need only add out of *Nazrette* that the Petty Kings who attend him, so often mentioned by *le Comte*, are mostly Titular only, and have no Dominion. And that the Emperor keeps 6000 Horses in his Stables and 24 Elephants. But that the Guard of the Palace is not so large as 10000 Men as commonly reported.

And having now we think given our Reader as large a view of *China* in general as he can expect, we shall proceed to the particular Description of its Provinces.

**CHINA** is divided into 15 Provinces, which from North to South appear thus.

Chief Cities according to *Dionys. Kao*.

PEKIM.	{ <i>Pekim</i> or <i>Xuntien</i> . { <i>Funging</i> . <i>Chinding</i> . { <i>Quoamping</i> , &c.
XANTUM or XANTUNG.	{ <i>Zinan</i> . <i>Junchen</i> . { <i>Tungchang</i> . <i>Cinchen</i> . { <i>Tengchen</i> . <i>Laichen</i> .
XANSI.	{ <i>Thayen</i> . <i>Paute</i> . { <i>Pingiang</i> , &c.
XENSI.	{ <i>Sigan</i> . <i>Zunning</i> . { <i>Hangchung</i> , &c.
HONAN.	{ <i>Schaisung</i> . <i>Quinte</i> . { <i>Hinche</i> , &c.
NANGKING.	{ <i>Nangking</i> or <i>Kiamnin</i> . { <i>Suchue</i> or <i>Chieuchen</i> . { <i>Nienchen</i> , &c.
CHEKIAM.	{ <i>Hamchen</i> . <i>Nimpo</i> . { <i>Viichen</i> , &c.
KIAMSI.	{ <i>Nanchang</i> . <i>Kinchen</i> . { <i>Nanhang</i> , &c.
HUQUAM.	{ <i>Viichang</i> . <i>Hanjang</i> . { <i>Huangchen</i> .
SUCHUEN.	{ <i>Chintu</i> . <i>Lungan</i> . { <i>Xunking</i> , &c.
QUEICHEU.	{ <i>Queyang</i> . <i>Gangxun</i> . { <i>Tuguen</i> , &c.
YUNNAN.	{ <i>Yunnan</i> . <i>Quongsi</i> . { <i>Kaibon</i> , &c.
QUAMSI.	{ <i>Quangchen</i> or <i>Canton</i> . { <i>Nankiang</i> , &c. { <i>Hainan</i> Island. { <i>Macao</i> Island.
FOKIEN.	{ <i>Focken</i> . <i>Zhiwenchen</i> . { <i>Hinghoa</i> , &c. { <i>Quemoy</i> Island. { <i>Formosa</i> Island.
LEAOTUM.	{ <i>Xinyam</i> . <i>Leoyang</i> . { <i>Ningyuen</i> . <i>Kinchen</i> .
CORRA Island.	{ <i>Kimki</i> . <i>Pingang</i> . { <i>Hienking</i> , &c.

**PEKIM** or *Peking*, the chief Province of the Empire at present, as being the seat of the Monarch, is the most N. Part of *China* within the great Wall, bounded on the North by that Wall, which divides it from *Tartary*, on the South by the Province of *Honan*, on the East by the Gulph or Bay called the *Cang-Sea*, on the South East by the Province of *Xantum*, on the West by the Province of *Xansi*. In which situation it extends from the 36th to the 41 Deg. of Lat. The



The Land is Champaign and Arable, but somewhat Barren, by Reason of much gravelly Soil and some Sandy Plains. The Air is Healthy but very cold in the Winter, for it is so effectually chilled by the Dry North Wind, coming over the vast Land of Tartary, that the Sun has not force enough at that time to Heat it. This Province is subdivided into nine smaller Provinces, or great Cities with the Districts Dependant on them; these large Cities bear the adjunct of *Fu*, a second Rank subordinate to them have the Title of *Cheu*, and a third Rank of smaller Cities bear the Surname of *Hien*. Which Appellations are observed in all the Provinces of the Empire. The first which is also the principal City of the Kingdom, is

*Pekin*, or *Xuntien-Fu* which is the ancient and true Name of the City, and signifies *Obedient to Heaven*, the former being made use of only since the King has resided here, and signifies the *Northern Court*, in distinction from *Nanking* the *Southern Court*, from whence the Royal Seat was removed hither, about 300 Years ago. *Pekin* consists of two large Cities, besides Suburbs, that is to say, the Old City, which may be now called the *Tartar City*, because it is wholly inhabited by that Nation, who ever since the *Tartar* Race of Kings have possessed the Throne, have filled it and driven out the *Chinese*: and the new City adjoining on the South side to the old built for the *Chinese*. The whole makes a Place of that Extent and Populoufness, that the *French* Missionaries acknowledge it exceeds *Paris*, and is the most regularly built that can be imagined, being an exact Square; and the Streets in Parallel Lines from North to South, and so cross ways; the Emperor's Court stands in the middle, and is an oblong Square of two Miles long, and above a Mile broad: The old City besides the Suburbs and the *Chinese* City, is about a League Square or 14 Miles about, surrounded with very thick and high Walls, beset with Towers at small distances, and entrenched with a very broad and deep dry Ditch: The Gates are nine in number, three on the South, and two on each of the other sides; and are very large, high and magnificent Structures, appearing like Castles: At each Gate there is a Suburb, and on the South side the *Chinese* City, which is another very large Town of a Mile and half Square: The *Chinese* City joins in a manner, on the North side to the *Tartar* City, and on the other sides, especially on the West, it has large Suburbs. It is surrounded with Walls and has seven Gates. The Streets here also lie in Parallel Lines quite cross the City both ways: So that upon the whole, considering the two Cities and the many Suburbs, *Pekin* may be reckoned at least 25 Miles in Compass: The Houses in both Cities are low, but well built of Brick, and covered with glazed Tiles, which glitter with the Sun: and though the Furniture be ordinary, they are generally neat enough. The Streets are filled with Shops, and all Necessaries are every where to be bought; the only Inconvenience is, that they are not paved, which makes them very dirty in the Winter, and dusty in the Summer. The Croud of People continually passing to and fro is so great, that the Mandarins and Great Men have ordinarily a Servant riding before to make way: Father *le Compte* judges the number of Inhabitants are two Millions. This is not at all incredible, if we consider that this being the Seat of the Court and Supreme Tribunals which Govern this vast Empire, it must needs be continually filled with Officers and other Attendants on Affairs of State,

Law or other Business. But that which is more surprising is, that *Hamcheu* and many other Cities are near as large and populous as this, and *Nanking* much more large. And that, as Father *le Compte* expresses it, one is hardly out of a City which one would think the largest in the Kingdom, but you are in another as large; so opulent and numerous are the Cities of *China*. This City is seated in a Plain, near the Foot of the Mountains, in the 40th Deg. of Lat. at the distance of 100 Miles to the South from the so much celebrated Wall of *China*, and 70 from the Gulph of *Nanking*. The Walls are of so great a Breadth, that twelve Horses may run a-breast, on the top of them; built of Brick, upon a Foundation of huge Stones, and are said to exceed in height those of the most considerable Places in *Europe*; a vast Garrison is constantly maintained for their Defence; and the Guards strictly kept in time of Peace as War. All manner of Rarities, Merchandizes and Treasures of the *Indies* are transported hither; so that every thing is cheap, notwithstanding the vast Multitude of the Inhabitants. Several thousands of Royal Ships, besides those of private Persons are continually employed in furnishing this Court with all sorts of Provisions necessary for the support of Human Life, or for Pleasure: And the whole Work is performed with a great deal of ease, by the means of the Rivers and Channels which the *Chinese* have every where made Navigable. Insomuch, that although this City stands in a Barren and Desert Country, yet it may well be styled *The Cornucopia of China*; which undoubtedly gave rise to a Proverb among them, *That as nothing grows in Pekin, so neither is anything wanting*.

The other chief Cities of this Province are *Junging-Fu*, which hath 6 other Cities under her Command. *Chinding-Fu*, which presides over 26 Cities. *Quoamping-Fu*, whose Jurisdiction reaches over 6 Cities. *Thicmming-Fu*, is chief of 11 Cities. *Funning-Fu*, which governs 6 Cities. *Hokien-Fu* 7. *Paoding-Fu* 10. and *Xunte-Fu* hath 9 inferior Cities. All these eight are large and populous Cities, and 16 of the others are of the second Rank called *Chek*, which according to the common accounts are at least equal to the best of our Towns.

**XANTUM** or *Xantung*, is the next Province to *Pekin* on the South East, having the Sea Coast on the North and East, *Pekin* on the West, and *Nankin* on the South, its Extent is about 200 Miles from East to West, and 150 from North to South. The Latit. between 36 and 39. The Soil is so fertil in Corn and Fruits, that one Years Crop is sufficient for several Years Food. Pulse, Fish and Cattle are also plenty, and Silk is found here in great quantity. This Province is much infested with Robbers, who herd together in great Bodies. Six great Cities divide it into so many parts, under whom are 15 of the Cities called *Cheu*, and 89 of the lesser Rank called *Hien*. The six principal ones are as follows.

*Zinen-Fu*, which hath under its Jurisdiction 4 lesser called *Cheu*, and 16 of those named *Hien*, and those have yet 20 more under their Direction. *Junchu-Fu*, which hath 24 of *Cheu*, and 23 of *Hien* under his Jurisdiction. *Tungchang-Fu*, which presides over three Cities of *Cheu* and 15 of *Hien*. *Cincheu-Fu* hath 14 Cities *Cheu* and 14 *Hien* subordinate to it. *Tengcheu-Fu*, has the Government of one City denominated *Cheu*, and 7 of those called *Hien*. And *Laicheu-Fu*, which hath Dominion over two Cities *Cheu*, and seven of *Hien*. There are many small Islands



Islands on the Coast that are reckoned part of this Province, the principal whereof are named *Fenxi*, *Namuen* and *Tenkeng*. The River *Luen* which they pretend has miraculous Virtues runs thro' this Province.

The Province of *XANSI* lyes on the West of *Pekin*, extending from the great Wall on the North to the Frontiers of *Honan* on the South, having the River *Hoang* or Yellow River on the West, which divides it from *Xerxi*. According to *Dionys. Kao*, this River *Hoang* runs through the middle of this Province, and not Coast its Bounds, as the Maps represent it. The Country here is very Mountainous, and yet the Soil is Fertile, producing especially plenty of delicious Grapes. The Air is healthy, and the Inhabitants numerous. Six large Cities of the sort Denominated *Fu*, may be said to divide it into so many parts, these are *Tsaren-Fu*, *Pante-Fu*, *Pingiang-Fu*, *Zugai-g-Fu*, *Funchet-Fu* and *Tsiring-Fu*. Subordinate to which are eleven Cities surnamed *Chou* and 95 *Hien*.

On the West of *Xansi* lyes *XENSI*, the largest Province of *China*, and had formerly three Viceroy, although now but one. It extends from the 33 Deg. of Latit. to the great Wall, having *Tartary* on the West and North, and *Sutchuen* on the South; and according to *Kao* is 400 Miles long, and 350 broad. The Soil here is very Fertile, the Pastures especially produce vast Herds of Kine, and large Flocks of Sheep; the Creature also that yields Musk is found in this Country. But here is frequent want of Rain and Locusts much infest the Land. This Province adjoining to *Tibet* which extends to the *Mogul's* Empire, there is an intercourse and commerce with the Merchants of those Countries at its City *Zumning*, which makes that a place of great Trade. And by this Commerce it seems the *Mahometan* Religion has crept into *China*, and spread about in all its parts. In this Province are eight large Cities, which have 116 smaller under their Jurisdiction. The Names of the six principal ones are *Sigan-Fu*, a very large and fine City, even three Leagues in Circumference as some Authors report, surrounded with Walls, Ditches and Bulwarks and guarded by a large Garrison of *Tartar*-Soldiers. (Near this City there is abundance of Salt Earth, which being boiled yields a very good white Salt: and at a Town not far from it, the Land after Rain Spews forth a Froth, which is an excellent Soap: the same Ground yields also Salt and Salt-petre.) *Harebung-Fu*, *Fungiang-Fu*, *Pingiang-Fu*, *Linxiu-Fu*, *Vachang-Fu*, *Hingang-Fu*, and *Singan-Fu*. In the Year 1625, there was dug up near *Sigan-Fu* a Monumental Marble Table, 10 Foot long and 5 Foot broad, on the top whereof was engraven a Cross, and below it an Inscription, partly in *Chinese* Characters, and partly in *Syriack*, wherein the *Messias* is mentioned, importing that an Angel brought the tidings of his coming, and that *Olopoen* came from *Judea*, and preached in *China*, where he was favoured by the then Emperor, &c. the Copy of this Inscription is extant in *Kircher's China illustrata*, and the Story told at large by *le Compté*. 'Tis said, this Monument is preserved in a Pagode made by the Emperors Command, and is made use of by some, as an Argument to prove that *St. Thomas* preached here.

The Province of *HONAN* lyes between *Xansi* and *Pekin* on the North, *Xenji* on the West, and *Namkin* on the East, between the Lat. of 33 and 37. This is reckoned the middle of *China*; the Soil is a flat Land well watered with Rivers, and is very fruitful in Rice and other Corn, the Air temperate, and the whole Country so abounding with delightful plenty of all things, as to be esteemed a Paradise. And was therefore some time honoured with the Royal presence at *Schaisung-Fu* which is the Capital of the Province: the old City was destroyed by an Inundation, occasioned by cutting the Banks of the *Hoang* to remove the Rebel *Libuang*; and the new one is built opposite to it, besides this, there are seven other Cities, which have Jurisdiction over 108 smaller Cities and great Towns; those seven are *Quinte-Fu*, *Hinde-Fu*, *Jecse-Fu*, *Vaking-Fu*, *Honang-Fu*, *Nining-Fu*, and *Hojang-Fu*.

*NANGING* or *Namkin*, which lyes on the South East of the Provinces we have passed through, was formerly the first, and is still the second in Rank, of all the Provinces of the Kingdom. It is a large Country, extending from the 30 to the 36 Deg. of Latit. On the East the whole Coast is washed by the Sea, the Northern part whereof is a Bay made by this Island *Corea*, and Denominated from this Province. The *Kiam* River, which as we have told you, is one of the great Rivers of *China*, runs thro' the middle of the Province, and having washed the Walls of *Kiammin*, flows Eastward, and falls into the Sea about 150 Miles below it. And also the *Hoang*, another of the principal Rivers passes through the North part, and falls into the Bay of *Namkin*. The South part of this Province is Mountainous, but the rest is fruitful Champaign, abounding with Silk. The convenience of the two Rivers and the Sea-Coast creates a mighty Traffick in this Province, and a general Fecundity and Wealth in all its parts. It's capital City

*Nanking* or *Kiammin*, as the *Tartars* have named it, is the largest and most populous in the whole Empire, being according to *Dionys. Kao*, 16 or 17 French Leagues in Circumference, and was formerly much larger, as appears by the Ruins of its old Wall, which is 30 Leagues in Circuit, but although by the removal of the Court, *Nanking* is much lessened, yet as it is, 'tis much larger than *Pekin*, which as we have told you, is thought to exceed *Paris*. The number of People inhabiting it, are computed to be eight Millions says *Kao*, whereby although the Streets are very spacious, they are continually crowded with Passengers, the Streets are clean and neat, and the Shops well furnished with all sorts of useful and valuable Commodities. The River *Kiam* or *Tangsku Kiam* which signifies Son of the Sea, flows close by the City, and is two French Leagues broad, it is laden with innumerable Ships and Boats, many whereof are richly gilt, and finely furnished with Tables, Couches and Seats for Passengers, besides large Stowage for Lading; so numerous are those Ships that the *Jesuits* were astonished, and said there are enough almost to make a Bridge to *Europe*. One remarkable Ornament of this City is the *Porcelaine* Tower, which is nine Stories high, the outside of the finest *Porcelaine* of divers colours, and within side the Rooms are finely Painted or Gilt, and the upper one especially is well adorned with Figures of Stone: at the top is a Spire, which renders the whole Structure 200 Foot high. It is an Octogon of 40

Foot



Foot Diameter, it is crusted with Porcelain, but thought to be built of Brick, it diminishes in Magnitude as it rises, by settings in at every Cornish; a small Stair-case within side leads to the top, where an excellent view is had of the whole City. (*Le Compté*, and *Kao*.)

The next great City is *Sucheu* or *Chieucheu*, which is so large, rich and populous, that to see it first, a Man would conclude none could exceed it, and whether *Nanking* does or no I cannot determine, for One Names this as the most Populous as another Names that. 'One who has Patience to stand but a few Minutes by the Water side, and view the Throngs of People that come to buy Commodities and pay the Customs, would imagine it to be a Fair to which the whole Empire was crowding, says *le Compté*. The Emperors Fleet of 9999 Jonks or Ships pass Annually from hence to *Pekin*, to carry the Tributes of the Southern Provinces: Out of the *Kiam* River, they pass into the grand Canal, and are six Months in performing the Voyage.

There are two Viceroys to govern this Province, which is divided into fourteen parts, under the Direction of those two Cities above named, and these twelve; viz. *Nieucheu-Fu*, *Thaiping-Fu*, *Gankang-Fu*, *Sunkiang-Fu*, *Chinkiang-Fu*, *Geancheu-Fu*, *Jangjan-Fu*, *Chingan-Fu*, *Lucheu-Fu*, *Quongte-Fu*, *Chancheu-Fu* and *Kingcheu-Fu*. Subordinate to all which there are in this Province One Hundred and thirteen other considerable Cities.

**CHEKIAM** or *Chekjang*, is the next Province to *Namkin* adjoining to it on the South, having the Sea-Coast on the East, *Kiamsi* on the West and *Fokien* on the South-West and South, extending from the 27 to the 31 Deg. Lat. The Country is a delightful Soil of Hills, Valleys and Plains, enriched with many artificial Channels besides Rivers and Brooks, over which there are many artificial Bridges of Stone curiously Arched. The Multitude of Ships and Bars upon these Rivers, and Canals are innumerable, and the Populousness of the whole Country is incredible. The Soil produces all necessaries for Life in abundance, besides an excessive quantity of Silk from the innumerable Silk Worms hanging on the Woods, as we may call them, of Mulberry-Trees. All which render this Province a kind of Paradise. It contains eleven large Cities, which preside over 76 lesser Cities.

The Capital is *Hamcheu*, a City of 4 Leagues in Circumference, and one of the finest and most populous of the Empire, it is provided within and without with deep and Navigable Canals, which are crowded with Boats, and the Streets are adorned with Triumphant Arches; [I find *le Compté* speaking of these Triumphal Arches at *Nimpo* and not here, wherefore I doubt whether my Author (*Kao*) be not mistaker] It is a place of great Trade, and is seated on a large River, which according to *Kao* is two French Leagues over (or rather half a League wide as *le Compté* reports it) named *Zhien-Tangkiang*, it rises within this Province, and falls into the Sea about 28 Leagues below the City. Near the City is a fine Lake of many Miles extent, which is fed by Water that falls from the Neighbouring Hills, and its Water is conveyed into the Canals. *Vieicheu-Fu*, which stands on the South Limits and near the Sea-Coast, is a very considerable City on account of a great Trade for Silk carryed on there.

*Nimpo-Fu* or *Limpo*, stands about 100 Miles South West from *Hamcheu*, near the Sea-Coast, in Lat. 30 and in Longit. (by observation) 120 Deg. 23 Min. East from *London*, is also a considerable City where a Trade was endeavoured to be established by our New *East-India* Company. This City maintains a great Trade with *Japon*, and both City and Suburbs are well inhabited. The rest of the eleven are *Kiaking-Fu*, *Xankang-Fu*, *Kiuncheu-Fu*, *Vencheu-Fu*, *Niencheu-Fu*, *Chinchem-Fu*, *Kingkon-Fu*, *Taicheu-Fu* and *Ninchi-Fu*.

*Chusan*, an Island lying 20 Leagues East from *Nimpo*, 13 or 14 Leagues long, and about 3 Leagues broad, almost encompassed with a great number of smaller Islands, one whereof called *Pouto*, situated about a League from the East-end, is much celebrated for the Idolatrous Worship of the *Bonzes*. On the Island *Chusan* there is a small City, or rather a walled Town of the same Name to which the New *East-India* Company traded, being not permitted to go with their Ships to *Limpo*. (*Nimpo*.) Their Commerce with this place began in the Year 1700. The Town of *Chusan* lyes in 30 Deg. 10 Min. Lat. and 121½ D. Long. from *London*.

**KIAMSÍ** or *Kiangsi*, is an inland Province lying between *Chekiam* and *Fokien* on the East, *Huquann* on the West, *Namkin* on the North, and *Quantum* on the South. It extends from the 26 to the 31 Degrees of Latit. and at least 3 Degrees in Longit. The South parts of it are Mountainous, where are found Mines of Gold, Silver, Lead, Iron and Tin; the Valleys are well cultivated, and abound with all necessaries for Life. The Women of this Country are famous for Fruitfulness. And at a Village called *Singketesimo*, the finest Porcelaine is made, which exceeding all others, the Water of that place is supposed to give the Superiority, since in others, the Earth is as fine, and as well prepared. But by *Kao* the place, noted for the Porcelaine Manufacture is named *Vieicheu-Fu*, and by *Navarette* *Chao-Hien*.

In the North part of this Province, there is a large Lake of 300 Miles Circumference named *Phajang*, which is Navigated by large Ships, all the Rivers in the Province flow into this Lake, and it discharges it self into the River *Kiam*, many Towns and small Cities are seated on its Banks, which flourish much by the Traffick they maintain.

Thirteen large Cities are seen in this Province, which preside over 78 smaller ones. The chief of them is *Nanchang-Fu*, seated on the South West side of the Lake which is large, but having suffered much by the Wars is reduced and at present in low Estate; the rest are *Kincheu*, *Suicheu*, *Nanhang*, *Quangsin*, *Quienchang*, *Linkiang*, *Chungken*, *Tungcheu* and *Nangang*. All which bear likewise the surname of *Fu*.

**HUQUAM** adjoins to *Kiamsi* on the West, having *Honan* on the North, and *Quantum* with *Quamsi* on the South, it is one of the largest Provinces of the Empire, and is divided into fifteen Parts. The River *Kiam* runs quite through it from West to East, and several other Rivers water the Land, and render it so Fertile in Rice and other Corn, and afford such plenty of Fish, that it is commonly said this Province is capable of feeding the whole Empire. A very large Lake lies in the middle of it, which is 400 Miles in Circuit, several Rivers fall into it, and



the *Kiam* runs through it. many Ships Navigate this Lake, but its Waves are boisterous, and as furious as the main Sea, whence frequent Shipwrecks happen on it. A notable one is related in the *Chinese History*, wherein 300 Ships having an Army of 50000 Men on board, all perished in one Night. Among the products of this Country, Cotton is numbered, whereof great quantity grows here.

The Capital is *Viuchang-Fu*, seated on both sides the great River *Kiam* below the Lake, it is a very large City, and frequented by multitude of Ships, which drive a very great Traffick. The other Cities which preside over its 15 parts are *Hanjiang*, *Huangeheu*, *Gangling*, *Sangiang*, *Zunian*, *Tegan*, *Jangsing*, *Jochen*, *Changxa*, *Peokang*, *Xincheu*, *Changte*, *Hangcheu* and *Jangcheu*, all denominated *Fu*, and have under them 125 other Cities and Towns. This Province suffered much in the Wars of the Rebel *Lichuang*, who was the occasion of calling in the *Tartars*.

But *SUCHUEN* which lyes beyond it on the West, and extends to the Mountains of *India*, was much more punished by those Wars, as being laid waste and almost ruined. This Province is bounded by *Xerxi* on the North, and *Queichu* on the South. The Land is Mountainous, where Mines of *Opick*, silver and Tin are found, but the Valleys being watered with many Rivers, is made Fertile in all necessities for Life, and also produces *Rhubarb*, *China-Root* and *Silk*. But the *Rhubarb* says *Kao* is not of the best, and seldom exported. The whole Country which is large, is divided into nine parts under the Government of nine Cities, which bear the Dignity of *Fu*.

The Capital *Chingru* stands in the middle, and was a very great and considerable City before it was reduced by the Wars to a low Estate: the rest are *Lungan*, *Xinaking*, *Huangching*, *Paoning*, *Chuncheu*, *Lingcheu*, *Hiencheu*, *Mabu* and *Tay*: which have 102 lesser under their Jurisdiction.

*QUEICHEU*, which lyes on the South of *Suchuen*, between *Quangsi* on the East, and *Nannan* on the West, is a large Country which suffered very much in the Wars. The Land is Mountainous, and affords Quicksilver. Copper and Tin in good quantity; and the Valleys are Fertile and well stocked with Cattle. Although this Country be extensive, and divided into fourteen parts, the Cities are not many, and those not very populous, for the Inhabitants having been driven away by the Wars are not yet returned. The presiding Cities with the Title of *Fu* are these 14. *Queyang* the Capital. *Genxun*, *Tuguen*, *Cinquen*, *Laping*, *Sachuen*, *Sunan*, *Xecang*, *Tungin*, *Pingung*, *Pinguen*, *Tsading*, *Veimeng* and *Mefi*. Under whom are 24 smaller Cities.

The Kingdom of *YUNNAN* is the only part of *China* that lyes beyond *Queichu*, as extending to the Frontiers of *India*, and bounded on the South by *Tonquin*. It was formerly a Province of *China*, and is now commonly so reckoned, but by *Kao* we are told its Subject to its own Prince, tributary to the Emperor. The Country is large, as extending from the Tropic in 23 and half up to the 29 Deg. of Latit. and has at least 7 Deg. of Longit. It is wealthy in Mines of Gold, Silver, Copper and Tin, and divers precious Stones, especially *Rubies* are found on its Mountains. The Soil is diversified

in Mountains and Valleys, the former yielding the Metals as abovesaid, and the latter producing Corn, Fruits, Silk and Musk.

Here are 20 large Cities and 68 Subordinate lesser ones. The Capital is *Yunnan* or *Junnang-Fu*, seated in the East, a charming pleasant City where Fruits are exceeding plenty. The other chief Cities are *Quangsi*, *Kaiboo*, *Cinsung*, *Chinkian*, *Quagnan*, *Ivenking*, *Chokium*, *Viiring*, *Kintung*, *Juning*, *Xunming*, *Xingan*, *Tungoba* and *Sinkoa*.

Proceeding now to the Eastward, we enter *QUAMSI* or *Quangsi*, which has *Yunnan* on the West, *Quencheu* on the North, *Quantum* on the East and *Tonquin* and *Cochinchina* on the South. A great part of the Land is Mountainous, however there wants not good Soil where Rice grows in plenty, as also Cinnamon and Sapan-Wood; besides much of that Wood whereof they make their Cabinets. Very good Porcelaine is made here, but both the Earth and Water is brought from other parts: it being found that the Sand of *Namkin* and the Water of *Kamfi*, must concur to make the best Porcelaine. This Province remained a separate Kingdom governed by a Prince of the ancient Imperial Blood till the last King dying without Issue, it fell into the Crown, and the Palace which was at *Queiling* is run to Ruins: that City is pleasantly situated in the Northern confines, besides which are twelve other large Cities of the Dignity of *Fu*, which preside over 80 lesser ones. Those twelve are *Pingco*, *Zincheu*, *Taiping*, *Sumun*, *Tencheu*, *Zhincheu*, *Singuen*, *Chincheu*, *Suchin* and *Chingan*.

*QUANTUM* or *Quangtung*: adjoins to *Quamsi* on the East, having the Ocean on the South, *Huquang* and *Kiamfi* on the North, and *Fukien* on the East. This is a very large Province, extending 10 Deg. in Longitude, namely from the 125 to the 135. and in Latitude about 2 Degrees. The Soil is good, affording plenty of all necessities, besides Sugar and Silk which with Tin, Copper-Work, Salt-petre, wrought Silks and other Merchandise are exported hence, to the great enriching of the Country. This Province suffered much by the Wars at the Revolution, its Capital City being Plundered, and very much ruined by the Army that took it by Treachery, after it had held out a whole Year.

The chief City *Quancheu-Fu*, or *Canton* as Europeans call it, is seated at the bottom of a small and safe Bay of the Ocean, which runs far within Land in the 24 Deg. of Lat. at the Mouth of the River *Langcheng*, which empties it self into that Bay, and is Navigable for many Leagues above the City. The convenient Situation of this place for Trade to *India*, renders it extream populous and wealthy, the Shops being plentifully stocked with all sorts of Indian and European Commodities. And not far from it in a Village named *Puxan*, where Goods are Manufactured for this Market, there lives by report no less than 60 thousand Families. The *English* and *Dutch* Ships, as well as *Portuguese* and *Indian*, coming frequently to this Port. The Province is divided into ten parts under the Jurisdiction of these ten Cities which are Denominated *Fu*, viz. *Quangcheu* or *Canton*, the Capital as abovesaid, *Nankiang*, *Xancheu*, *Hoycheu*, *Xanking*, *Kiaochu*, *Lucheu*, *Liencheu*, *Chaucheu*, together with *Kincheu* situate on the Island *Ainan* or *Hainan*, which lyes in the Ocean on the South-Coast, being distanced by a Strait of about 10 Leagues wide from the Main Land. The Island is 300 Miles in Circumference.



cuit, and has 13 lesser Cities on it, and is considerable on account of a great Trade driven there with the Kingdoms of *Tonquin* and *Cochinchina*, it abounds with Aloes and has a good Pearl Fishery.

In the mouth of the Bay of *Canton* lyes the Island whereon *MACAO* is seated in Lat. 23. This Town the *Portuguese* made themselves Masters of, sometime before the Year 1600. and possessed it under their own Government for many Years: but the *Dutch* disturbed their Trade so much, that although they have still a Fort and Factory there, they are not at all considerable, and are forced to Submit to the *Chinese* with great Servility. I find some Authors say the Emperor took *Macao* in the Year 1668. but since according to the Accounts of both *le Compte* and *Kao*; who wrote long since that time, the *Portuguese* were still in possession of it, we must suppose that a mistake. The Town is small, unwall'd, and built on a narrow uneven Soil on a point of the Island, but the Road is good; Other small Islands that lye to Windward, sheltering the Ships, and securing them from Storms. The Haven is narrow, safe and commodious. (*Le Compte*.) They pay Customs to the Emperor for all their Goods, or rather as *Kao* represents it, pay an Annual Tribute of 10000 or as some say 100000 Ducats. They formerly exercised very great Traffick here, in all Indian and European Commodities. It is worth observing, that the Sunday with the *Portuguese* of this Town, is the Saturday with the *Spaniards* in the *Phillipine* Islands, and so forward throughout all the days of the Week, although there is scarce any difference in the Longit. of both places. But the reason is, the *Portuguese* in coming from *Europe* pass Eastward, whereas the *Spaniards* coming from *America* Westward, between both they have gone round the Globe, in doing which there is necessarily a Day lost, as we have told you in the Introduction.

*FOKIEN*, lyes on the East of *Kiamfi* on the North East of *Quantum*, having *Chekiam* on its North-East, and the Ocean on the East and South-East. The Soil is diversified in Mountains and Valleys, the former well beset with Trees, and the latter well watered with Rivers and Brooks, which render the Land Fertile in Rice and other Corn. The extent of this Province is from the 24 to the 28 Deg. Lat. and of equal Longit. Eight chief Cities with the Title of *Fu*, divide it into so many parts, these are *Fochou* or *Fockou*, seated on a River which falls into a Bay of the Ocean in Lat. 26. and half, it is the Capital of the Province, and is a large City, famous for Commerce with the *Japoneses* Indians and *Europeans* whose Ships daily arrive here. *Zhivouchou*, *Hinghou*, *Chaoheu*, *Fenping*, *Quien*, *Tingczu* and *Change*, to which is added the Island *Formosa* or *Taiouan*, which is laid to this Province, and makes a ninth part. These chief Cities preside over 60 others.

The small Island *Quemoy*, which lyes on the South-East Coast makes a safe and notable Haven, where Ships of the biggest burden lye secure. Near it is

The Island *EMOUY* (or as we often pronounce it *Amoy*) on which is a large Town of the same Name, which of late Years has been famous for the Trade the *English* have had there.

This Province of *Fokien* was a separate Kingdom, but with what Homage to the Emperor I am not apprised. The Prince that governed it at the time of the *Tartar* Revolution, was Potent and Courageous,

and stood out against that Monarch, when the other Provinces had submitted, which occasioned great Wars and Subjected the Country to much Destruction. At length under the pretence of a Treaty the Prince was Decoyed to Court. But contrary to promise was there Detained. His Son whose bravery afterwards has rendered his Name illustrious in that part of the World, maintained a vigorous War in his Fathers behalf against the Emperor, but born down with the overmatch, was forced to quit his Country and put to Sea. *Coxinga* or *Conesius*, as 'tis sometimes written, was the Name of this Prince, who turning his Face to *Formosa*, became a Potent Enemy to the *Dutch* there. Which leads me to speak of that Island, wherein I shall be the more Ample, by reason of the great talk about it, occasioned by the fine dressed up Story of *Psalmanazer*, who pretended to be a Native of it.

When the *Dutch* had established themselves in *India*, they made it their chiefest Care to settle a Trade to *China*, but the *Chinese* would never agree to the Treaties they offered, till the *Dutch* by the force of a good Fleet, seized a little Island near the Coast, which they Fortified, and from it Annoyed the *Chinese* at pleasure. This produced a Treaty, and upon Condition they would quit that place, they were allowed to settle at *Tajouang* or *Teywang* in *Formosa*, whether they accordingly retired, Fortified it and carried on a very profitable Trade there. During the time of their flourishing State in that place, *Monfieur Candidius* a Clergyman lived there, and has published an Account of the Island, which we shall Abstract.

*FORMOSA* is a large Island of oblong form, seated in 22 Deg. Lat. 130 Leagues round, says he, but others represent it larger, *Nieuboff* says 'tis 125 Leagues long, but not proportionably broad, and *Kao* says 'tis 500 Miles in Circumference. The North part of it which lyes in 25 and half Lat. is distant from the Coast of *Fokien* not above 20 Leagues. The Country abounds in Cattle, Fish and Deer, whose Furr is one of their chief Commodities for Trade. The Land is Fertile but not much Cultivated, it produces plenty of Rice, as also Ginger, Sugar, and Fruits of many kinds unknown to us. And 'tis thought there are Mines of Gold and Silver in the Mountains. The Country is very populous, full of large Villages, but no City or great Town: nor is there any King or Superiour Person in Government, every Village managing it self as wisely as it can, and is almost constantly at War with its Neighbours. The Inhabitants at least those along the Coast that were known to the *Dutch*, are tall and strong limbed, of a dark brown Complexion; the Women are of low Stature, and go Clad, whereas the Men are mostly Naked. Some of the Clans of them appear Wild and Barbarous, others are good Natured, Faithful and Industrious. The Women Till the Ground, sow the Rice, and plant Ginger, Sugar and Fruits. And the Men employ themselves in Hunting and Fighting in their frequent Wars. The only shew of Government they have amongst them, is a Council in each Village of twelve Men chosen Annually, who decide Differences and exercise some Authority, but in the Main every Man does himself Justice, without appealing to a Judge. Their Religious Offices are exercised by Women, the Priesthood being held by that Sex. Their Religion, Manners,



and Customs are as rude as one can think, our Author has spoken of them large enough already, but they are too mean and too tedious to be related here.

*Nieuboff* whom we have so often mentioned, in his many Voyages in Service of the Company, was once at *Formosa*, at the same time that *Koxinga* was about to Attack it. We shall therefore borrow a little from him both for proof and further information. *Formosa* is full of Hills intermixed with fertile Valleys, which are watered by many Rivers, and produce much Grass and Corn, here is plenty of Sugar which is exported, and the *European* kinds planted by the *Dutch* thrive well, as abundance of *Indian* Fruits, and Rice in great plenty. Cattle of all sorts and Stags are plenty, and in the Woods are found Tygers, Bears and other wild Beasts. Here is also wild Fowl of various kinds, and 'tis supposed there are Mines of Gold and Silver in the Mountains, 'tis known they are full of Brimstone, and the Subterranean Fire causes many Earthquakes. The Island is destitute of Harbours, and hath only Roads between small Islands for the Ships to Anchor in. As to the People and their Manners, he gives much the same account as *Candidius*.

This was the State of the Place when *Koxinga* with a numerous Fleet and large Army came over and Landed there. The *Dutch* were at that time very Potent, having driven away the *Spaniards*, who from the *Philippine* Islands, had during the Troubles of *Ctina*, planted themselves on the Island. And therefore thought themselves able to resist *Koxinga*, but he so furiously attacked *Tsjouan* both by Sea and Land, that although they defended themselves well, he proved too powerful, and drove them out. This happened in the Year 1659. *Koxinga* afterwards, upon occasion of three Ships freighted with Silver, which were carryed by Treachery to the Emperor, instead of being brought to *Tsjouan* as he ordered, raised a mighty Army and Fleet, and sailed to *Nankin*, which Potent City he Besieged and had near taken; but by a Revel on his Birth-day, he gave the Besieged an opportunity of falling upon his Drunken Army, and cut it all off: With the grief hereof he Dyed, and was succeeded by his Son. The Emperor following his Blow, set out a great Fleet to take *Tsjouan*, but the young Prince had the good Fortune to Defeat them for that time; yet after another Years War, was forced to Submit: and was afterwards for his Virtue and Bravery sake, favoured by the Emperor with a Present of the Island, whereof he remained King under Homage to the Emperor, in the Year 1682.

We have now surveyed all the Provinces of *China*, except *Leatung*, which because it lyes beyond the great Wall, our Journey round did not admit us to take in. We shall therefore speak of it now; and thence take a Survey of the Island *Corea*, and speak a word of the Land of *Jesso*, and so pass on to *Japon*.

**LEAOTUM** or *Leaotung*, is a Province of less extent than those we have passed through, extending hardly 150 Miles either way, it lyes beyond the great Wall, which is its Boundary on the West, as the narrow Arm of the Sea which divides it from *Corea* on the East, the Mountains of *Great Tartary* on the North, and the *Cang-Sea* or Gulph of *Pekim* on the South. It is seated between the 39 and 42 Deg. of Latit. and is a fine fruitful Land, says *Kao*, producing, besides all necessaries for Life, the famous Medicinal Root *Ginseng* or *Jinseng*, which is reckoned a most Sovereign Remedy for recovering Decayed Strength. Here are but 12 Cities great and small, whereof *Xinyam* is the Capital, *Ningyuen* and *Kinchien* the next of Note. Father *Verbiest* who travelled over this Province in the Emperors Train, tells us that the Land is uneven, being encumbered with Mountains, and that the Towns which were formerly very Numerous are almost all destroyed, having never recovered the ravage of the War at the Revolution. The Capital *Xinyam* is a City very fair and pretty intire, but its ancient Palace is in Ruines. This City by his Observation lyes in 41 Deg. 56 Min. Latit. and the Magnetick Needle hath no Declination there.

The Kingdom of *COREA* called *Tiocencouk* by the Inhabitants, is a Peninsula, or as the new Maps shew us an Island, having on the West, the Province of *Leatung* and the Gulph of *Nanking*; on the East and South, by the Sea of *China*; and on the North, by *Niuche* a Kingdom of *Tartary*: It is a very fruitful Country, where the Mountains produce Gold and Silver, the Marshes Rice, and the Sea Pearls. The Inhabitants are governed by their own Prince, under the Protection of the Emperor, and Trade only with the *Chineses* and *Japoneses*. The most remarkable Towns of *Corea*, are *Pingan*; *Kimki*, the Metropolis of the Kingdom; *Hienking*; *Kingzan*, on the Eastern Coast; and *Givenlo* in the South. The Island of *Fumma*, called *Schufere* by the Natives is likewise Subject to the Dominion of the King of *Corea*, being distant 12 Leagues from thence to the South; its Capital Town is *Moggan* or *Mocxo*, the Seat of the Governour.



# The Land of J E S S O.

**T**HE Land of *Jesso*, *Jeso*, *Eso* or *Yedso*, is situate over against the Eastern part of *Tartary*, from which it is separated by a considerable Straight of the same Name.

The Coasts of this Country have been at several times discovered on the West and East, and more especially on the South by the *Portuguese* and *Dutch*. But they have not been able to Discover whether it be an Island or Continent. 'Tis known that a Sea flows between it and *Tartary* on the South-West, but whether more to the Northward, it may not be oined is unknown. In Sailing on its South-Coast to the Westward, they have found no end of the Land, and therefore 'tis conjectured that it extends as far as *America*: where the Straight of *Anian*, on the North of *Califormia*, is supposed to be made by the West Coast of this Land. Again, others contradict this, but say that it is joyned to the North part of *Japon*. 'Tis true, the extreame Northern part of *Japon*, is very little known by even the *Japoneses* themselves, but the distance of that part of *Jesso* that is known (being as *Maffeus* writes, 300 Leagues from *Meaco*) is too great to be joined to *Japon*, and yet never known to be so. The *Dutch* Maps therefore make a broad Sea of at least two Degrees between the North Coast of *Japon*, and the Land of *Jesso*.

Of the Nature of this Country, we are told by *Francis Caron* (a *Dutchman* who lived long in *Japon*) from the Information of the *Japoneses*, who have often penetrated far into it, but could never find the end.

The Land is much incumbered with Mountains and Craggy Rocks, and the Soil Uncultivated and little Inhabited, and the Country only valuable for the rich Furrs and Skins, whereof very

precious ones are brought thence. The Inhabitants are a wild People, their Bodies all over Hairy, and their Beards very long; and in Manners more like Beasts than Men.

*Lud. Frojus*, a Jesuit who lived in *Japon*, writes of them thus. On the North of *Japon*, there lyes a very large Country of Savage Men. Their Bodies are Hairy, their Beards very large, and their Mustacho's so long, that they must hold them aside when they Drink. They Cloath themselves with the Skins of wild Beasts. They pay a Veneration to Heaven, but have no Sacred Rites. They are furious in War, and a Terrour to the *Japoneses*. Being Wounded in War, they wash the Part in Salt Water, which is all the Remedy they use. They are great Lovers of Wine, and use the Women in common. As to their Food we are not told.

They find means to get over Sea sometimes, to come to *Aquita*, the most Northern City of *Japon*, on Account of Trade. And the Inhabitants of *Aquita* go thither sometimes; this however but very seldom, for fear of their Brutality. Between both, 'tis certain, that a Trade is carryed on, and the rich Furrs of *Jesso* are used in *Japon*, and so much valued, that the Emperor forbids all other Nations Trading hither. And he reckons *Jesso* into the number of the Countries he is Lord of.

BETWEEN the Coast of *Tartary* and that of *Jesso*, lyes an Island discovered by the *Dutch*, called *STATEN ISLAND*, of about 20 Leagues in length, but not considerable.

On the East between it and *Jesso*, lyes the Straight called *De Vries Straight*.

## JAPON.



# J A P O N.

**J**APON is the most Eastern part of *Asia*, and the Land the most remote from us in all this Hemisphere, and consequently the place where the Rising Sun is first seen; And being near 130 Degrees East from us, they have the Morning and Mid-Day, at least eight hours before us. You are not to imagine this Country to be a Continent or Main-Land, nor even but one Island, for it consists of divers Islands, which bear the general Name of *Japon*; and lye extended from the 30th to the 38th Deg. of Longitude, and from the 147 Deg. to the 162 Deg. of Latitude. The most Western Coast being 100 Leagues distant from *Nimpo* on the East Coast of *China*, and the most Southern 350 Leagues from the North Coast of the *Phillipine* Islands. Although it be true, that the Empire of *Japon* consists of divers Islands, yet one called *Japon* proper, or otherwise *Nippon*, is by much the largest and most considerable, as extending from South-West to North-East above 600 Miles, and in breadth in some parts 150, in others 100 Miles. Whereas *Cicoco*, which is the next in bigness, has not a fourth part of that Dimension, and *Ximo* or *Fenfa* the next, not a Moyer of that.

In Situation, these Islands possess the 5th and 6th Climates, and their longest Day is from 14 to 15 Hours. And therefore might be expected to exceed in Heat, but we are told by Travellers, that the Winters are excessive Cold, through the vast quantity of Snow which there usually falls: together with great Rains and bleak Winds. The Soil was represented to be but Poor, by some of the Jesuits living there, yet it is certain, that it produces Rice of the whitest and cleanest sort, in so great Plenty, that vast quantities are Annually exported thence by the *Dutch*. And *Japon* hath often furnished the *Phillipine* Islands with Bread-Corn. The *Dutch* in general declare, that the Land is reasonably Fruitful, and that the Country abounds with Men and Cattle. *Francis Caron* a *Dutchman* (who lived many Years here, and has Published an Account of this Countrey, whence we chiefly Collect what we shall say of it) tells us, that *Japon* affords all things that are necessary to sustain Life; and *Hagener* his Annotator adds, that no Region in *India*, enjoys a more Temperate and Healthy Air, a better Fertility, nor exceeds it in production of Silver. Here are many Mountains, whereon there is plenty of tall Grass, and many Herbs and Flowers. Two of the Mountains are especially notable for their height, whereof one casts forth Flames.

There is a large Lake abounding with Fish, at about 13 Miles distance from *Meaco*, which extends 90 Miles in length, and 21 in breadth; it is composed of the Confluence of many small

Rivers, and has an out-let in the South-West, which in a good large River, passes by the City *Meaco*, and after a winding Course of about 20 Leagues, falls into a Bay of the Ocean. There are several Rivers in *Nippon*, and some few in the other Islands, but none of them are of any long course, nor at all remarkable.

Their Trees either for Beauty or Fruit are not unlike ours; but the Cedars are the most plenty, and those grow exceeding high.

Of Animals, there are all the kinds that are seen in *Europe*, as Oxen, Hogs, Hares, Conies, Deer, wild Boars, Bears, Dogs, Cats, and of Horses an incredible plenty. For Birds, they have Cranes, Swans, Geese, Ducks, Pheasants, Pidgeons, Hens, Hawks, Falcons, &c. They have some Silk Worms, but know not how to gather the Silk.

But the principal Products of *Japon*, are Metals, as Gold, Silver, Copper, Iron, Tin and Lead, which are found here in great abundance. Of Silver especially, a quantity exceeding all the rest, of Gold not a little, which the many gilded Roofs of the Emperour and Noblemens Palaces, as well without side as within, is a sufficient Demonstration of. The Land also yields some precious Stones, and the Seas much red Coral, and some Pearls.

## Of the Inhabitants.

According to Tradition, *Japon* was first Peopled from *China*, which is most probable, by reason of the Neighbourhood of that Continent. But whether it be true, that the first Inhabitants were such only as were Banished from *China*, for a Conspiracy against the King, as common Tradition tells, is uncertain. The *Japoneses* are opposite to the *Chinese* in all their common Manners and Customs, which should contradict the Assertion, that they proceed from them; but to that 'tis answered, that in regard they removed their Habitation on a Criminal Account, they studiously avoided their old Manners, and in hatred to that Country which had expelled them, took up new ones directly contrary. The time of this Migration, is supposed to have been about *Anno Dom.* 1000. ever since which, it has been governed by one Supream Monarch, under whom are divers petty Kings, Princes and Lords, who under him govern the Provinces.

This



This Monarch is an Absolute Prince over all his Subjects, the petty Kings not excepted, whom he can Derhron and Punish as he pleases. And he is obeyed by his Subjects with the most Absolute Submission, for he is esteemed by them as a sort of God, and therefore obeyed on a Religious, as well as civil Account. And so strict has been their Loyalty, that Travellers tell us, that under the Reigns of the *Dayro's*; there never happened any Rebellion, but the first Seditions were looked upon with Horrour, and esteemed a Crime against God. He never sets his Foot to the Ground, the Sun is not permitted to shine on him, nor the Wind to blow upon him. From the beginning of this Monarchy to *Anno Dom.* 1500. the Succession from Father to Son continued in the same Family, named *Dayro*. But soon after Civil Wars began, which lasted some Years, and brought the whole Country into miserable Confusion. The Petty-Kings and Lords were all engaged against one another in furious Wars, and gave opportunity to one *Tackyo*, a Man of low Degree and obscure Birth, to raise himself to the highest power. This Man who was but a common Soldier, but of a bold and Courageous Nature, began with 50 Followers only, but Fortune Assisting him, his Numbers encreased; and with such Celebrity and Success he went on, that in three Years time, he conquered all the contending Princes, took all the Castles and strong Cities, and raised himself to the Imperial Dignity. *Dayro*, which was the Family Name of the Emperor, and that which all the preceding *Casars* bore, was allowed to retain the Name and Dignity of Emperor; but *Taycko* took upon him the Power, and exercised the Government, from *Anno Dom.* 1517. for many Years, with great Wisdom and Power; but his Son being left a Minor, under the Ward of a certain Nobleman, was cut off soon after he came to Age. At this time the Government is vested in a new Race of Princes, while the Successor of *Dayro* retains only the show of Majesty, and lives in Splendor, his Person being esteemed so Sacred, that the Ruling Emperor dares not insult him. The Heir of this Family is High-Priest, and is honoured with a Dignity even equal to the Roman Pontiff. The Emperor is obliged to visit him once in three or four Years at farthest, and offer to him Presents and Reverence.

In the State, there was formerly a great Officer called *Cubey*, who was Supream under the Emperor, and in Power such as the Grand Visier in Turkey, but that Office is now suppressed, and four of the Prime Nobility are appointed by the King to Administer the Government under him. As the Number of the Princes and Noblemen are great, there requires the wisest Conduct to keep them in Obedience. The Method the Emperor takes is thus. 1. All the Princes are obliged to be at Court one half of the Year, to which purpose they have Houses at *Tedo*, which is the Royal Seat: there the Lords from the different Parts reside in turns, and pay their Devoirs to the Emperor. 2. The eldest Sons of all the Prime Nobility are bred up at Court, and reside there till the Emperor dismisses or otherwise employs them. 3. He employs Spies in all the Provinces, who give him accounts of all Transactions. And, 4. He obliges all the Noblemen to take Oaths of Fidelity every Year.

And moreover to keep the common People from Sedition, he employs vast numbers of them, even 100000 at a time in Publick Works, such as building Castles, making Roads, Dikes or the like. Cities and great Towns are divided into small Wards, which are shut up every Night, so that the Inhabitants of one Ward can have no intercourse with those of another, and therefore no Riots can happen, or if any be begun, they easily are suppressed: for each Ward has a Magistrate set over it by the Emperor.

This Prince is Addressed to with utmost Reverence, and Attended by a vast Number of Noblemen and Servants. When he goes Abroad, besides Nobility and their Sons, and the chief Officers of the Court, whereof a great Train always accompany him; his Guard consists of 5 or 6 thousand Soldiers. His Palaces are many and Pompous, especially that at *Tedo*. His Revenue must needs be vastly great, since the Annual Pensions paid to the Governours of Provinces, and the Emperors other Annual Expences, according to the List set forth by *Caron*, and reduced to Dutch Guilders, amounts to 283 Millions, which is near 28 Millions of Sterling. These Pensions are paid, some in Gold, some in Silver, others in Copper, Iron, Lead, Tin, Rice, or other products of the respective Provinces. Of these Governours; twenty one bear the Title of Kings. Four are Dukes. Six Princes. Seventeen Barons. And Forty one Lords. The Emperors Council consists of Twenty eight of these, whereof four have the Title of Kings. Besides these Governours, there are a great Number of Noblemen of a lower Rank.

The Army which the Emperor keeps in constant Pay, is 100000 Foot and 20000 Horse. But in War, the Governours of Provinces are obliged to bring into the Field each a certain number of Troops, according to the Pension he receives; which in all Amount to 368000 Foot and 38000 Horse. They carry Fire Arms as well as Bow and Arrows; and are also furnished with Javelins and Scymitars. And moreover the Horse wear Cuirasses, and the Foot Helmets. By reason of the plenty of Mines in *Japon*, the Refining Metals is practised with Art, whence it comes to pass, that their Steel is excellent, and therefore their Arms, as Scymitars, Daggers, &c. are found to exceed all others, and therefore much Coveted by all the neighbouring Nations, but forbid to be exported.

The TEMPER of the People is thus represented by Travellers. They are careful in the Education of their Children, and instil into their minds a Love of Glory and Virtue. They are Fearless in Dangers, contemn Death, and bear the Inclemencies of Weather, Heat and Cold, Wet and Dry with Patience, and contrary to all other Orientals, sustain Watchings and such like Labours incredibly.

They enjoy themselves in Pleasures as much as any Body, but in want of them are not Discontented. They are not covetous after much Wealth, contenting themselves with a Competency. They are Honourable in Fidelity, and avoid all Detraction.

They



They are in general (says *Maffius*) Wise, Acute and Ingenious, surpassing not only the Orientals, but even *Europeans* in Docility, as the Jesuits experienced in their easy learning Latin and the Liberal Sciences. They observe a Decorum in their common Speech, and avoid all loose, light or vain Prating. But on the other side, they are apt to Debauch in Pleasures, and not only indulge themselves in Fornication, but commit Sodomy too without Remorse. Robbery upon the High-way, and Piracy at Sea is frequent. And when in War a Town is taken, they destroy it with Fire and Sword, without any distinction or respect. In other instances, they are also too much addicted to Cruelty; and in Discontent, are apt to lay violent hands on themselves. In Marriage, they take as many Wives as they can keep, but the first is Supream, and her Children the Heirs. Lands are Hereditary, and the Fathers Estate is possessed by the Son, and not seized by the Emperor as in *India*.

The Wives are very Chast and faithful to their Husbands, and the Children very obedient and respectful to their Parents. But Brothel Houses are Publicly kept for those that have no Wives, and the very Bonzi's themselves will be guilty of Sodomy.

In Punishments the Government is very Severe. Almost every Crime is punished with Death, except the Criminal be a King or Prince. Cheating at Play, or Falsifying to a Magistrate, and such sort of Faults do commonly incur Death. Theft, though but of a Penny, and a stroke with a Sword, even though the Scabbard be on, also forfeits Life. Every Lord and Father of a Family, some lower Ranks excepted, have power over their Subjects and Vassals to Life and Limbs. Prisons are not used here, the Criminal being immediately dispatched. For small Transgressions a pecuniary Mult<sup>s</sup> satisfies. But in atrocious Crimes, such as violating the Emperors Edicts, cheating him in his Finance, Counterfeiting the Coin, ill Administration in Magistracy, setting a House on Fire, Deflowring a married Woman or Maid if violently, &c. Not only the Criminal, but even his Father, Sons, and Brothers are all put to Death. Which is performed upon them all at the same time, although they dwell at 2 or 300 Miles distance, for the time wherein Messengers may arrive at every place being Calculated, the Criminal is Reprieved so long, and then at the same Mid-Day the several Executions are made. Thus, says *Caron*, I knew an instance, wherein a Nobleman for exacting too much Tribute upon the Countrymen within his Government suffered Death, together with three Brothers, whereof one lived 240 Miles off, an Uncle who dwelt still further off, three Sons, two whereof were also far off, and a Nephew in the same Circumstance. All these innocent Persons, at various distant parts of the Empire, were all executed at once, by ripping up their Bowels, which is the manner of Death in such cases. For Theft, they Crucifie with the Head downwards. In the case of Consanguineous Punishments, the Female Relations are kinder treated, being only sold into slavery for a time. The Kings and Princes are rarely put to Death, but in lieu of it, are banished to some barren Island to spend their Days in Misery.

Their Cloathing is of Silk, Woollen Cloath being unknown to them, and consists of a long Coat, 2 short Vest, and within Doors a Mantle, which (tis odd) they put off when they go abroad. Their Heads are always bare, notwithstanding that the Hair be shorn, for they wear none but a Lock in their Pole: but generally have Umbrello's carried over their Heads. Both gentle and simple wear Swords, or Daggers at least, and have commonly a Fann in their Hands. Their Garments are of various Colours, but contrary to the rest of the World, black is the Colour of Joy, and therefore used at Festivals, and white their Mourning Weed. Their contrariety in Customs to the rest of the World, is a matter of common Observation; besides these above mentioned, 'tis noted of them that they Affect to have black Teeth and Nails; they sit down instead of rising when a Superiour approaches, and put off their shoes in Salutation, and instead of bowing, erect their Bodies the more stiffly when they Salute.

In the Liberal Sciences they exceed all other Orientals, and are not inferiour to the *Chineses*. The Bonzi's or Doctors study Philosophy, Mathematicks, &c. as well as their own Theology, which they teach in Academies established for the study of the Sciences. Whereof one at *Frenajam*, about 9 Miles distant from *Meaco*, and another at *Facusangin*, are reckoned the principal. Although their Language be different, the Characters they use in writing are the same with the *Chinese*, and with them too they write, not in Lines but in Columns, beginning at the top go down to the bottom of the Paper.

Their Food is chiefly Rice, whereof as we have said they have the whitest in the World, this they Cook in various manners, but eat very little Flesh: As for Oxen, Sheep, Hogs, Poultry and the like, they never eat, nor kill, although their number abound; nay, 'tis even capital to kill an Ox: what Flesh they do Eat is that of wild Beasts and chiefly Venison. Fish they scruple not, and have sufficient quantities of it. Their other Food is Herbs and Fruits, whereof they eat great quantity. In their Kitching and Dining-Room, they are like the *Chinese*, extream cleanly, and like them too, feed themselves with two little Sticks, instead of Forks, with which they take up the smallest Grain, and have never occasion to touch the Food, and consequently need no Napkins, which are not in use there.

For Drink; Water is the common use, which it seems they warm a little; they know not the use of Wine or Ale, but make a Decoction of Rice, with Sugar and Honey, which is drank in Debauch and Fuddles them. The Gentry Regale in Tea, which is much esteemed.

The RELIGION of *Japon* is *Et<sup>h</sup>nic*, but with no Affinity to that of any other Countrey. They Worship the Sun, the Moon, and many other Deities which themselves have invented, and set up Idols to in Sumptuous Temples. The two principal Gods which they call upon, are named *Xaca* and *Amida*, to these they make Prayers on all occasions, and use their Names as we do Gods, as *Amida bless us. Amida, send us health. Xaca, Guard us, &c.*

They



They have no History of the Creation, nor indeed pretend at all to speak to it, but Date the Ages of their Deities many thousand Years ago. They generally believe the Immortality of the Soul, and though they pretend not to Describe the State of the Blessed, they believe the Wicked will be punished by Devils, and therefore paint the Devil in their Temples in as horrid a Manner as we do, to deter Men from Sin. They generally believe the *Indian* Doctrine of Transmigration of Souls, which is the Reason they Eat no Creature that has been killed. They have rich Monasteries wherein Bonzi's live in Retirement and Celibacy all their Lives. There are divers Sects of Religions, but they all agree in the Worship of *Amida* and *Naca*, and in these five Precepts; viz. 1. Not to kill, or eat any Creature that has been killed. 2. Not to Steal. 3. Not to commit Adultery. 4. Not to Lye. And 5. To abstain from Wine. The several Sectaries Live together Friendly, and never quarrel about Religion, although each is so very obstinate in his Opinion, that on occasion he would Dye for it.

They have many Ceremonies agreeable to those of the *Romish* Church, which might contribute to the Facility the Jesuits found in introducing Christianity here: That Work the *Portuguese* commenced about the middle of the XVIth Century, and having made some Converts in the chief Cities, Father *Xavier* in *Anno Domini*, 1552. sent from *India* three Fathers which were soon after followed by others, and the Religion was so far propagated, that in *Ningafack* alone, there were not less than 40000 Christians, when the Persecution began, and moreover Chappels were erected all over the Countrey at reasonable distances, and innumerable were the Converts which the 70 Years that Christianity flourished here produced. But in the height of their Felicity, when even three Kings and many Noblemen as well as lower Degrees had received Baptism: a sudden order came from the Emperor that then Reigned, (named *Combo* or *Combosanna*) in the end of the Year 1622. or beginning of 1623. to extirpate Christianity throughout all the Provinces. Which was immediately executed, and for three Years together so violent a Persecution was carryed on, that many thousands suffered Martyrdom. And in effect Christianity was perfectly Eradicated, insomuch, that although of all the Heathen Countries, Christianity the soonest gained Footing, and spread the fastest here, it is now so much altered, that of all Heathen Countries where Christianity has ever been Preached, this is the most destitute of Christians. And so jealous they are, that no *Europeans* whatsoever but the *Dutch* are permitted to Land there. These indeed from the profitable Trade they Negotiate, by furnishing the *Japnese* with Silk-Stuffs, Calicoes, Raw-Silk, Skins, Hemp, Linnen, Cloaths, Red Wool, Garments, Quick-Silver, Sugar, Spices, Porcelain, Ivory, Crabs-Eyes, Lacca, &c. are permitted to Trade here, but dare not make the least shew of Religion, not even so much as to say Grace to Meat. And in regard that they condemn the Pictures, Crosses, Rosaries and other Superstitions of the Jesuits, and trample on what those knelt to, the *Japnese* are content to take their Answer; That they are *Dutchmen*, and believethem not Christians.

Formerly the Inhabitants of *Japon* and *China* had great intercourse and TRADE together, and many of each lived in the other Nation: but about the beginning of the last Century, the *Japoneses* committing some Insolencies in *China* gave an occasion to that Emperor to Banish them entirely, and forbid his own Subjects to go to *Japon*. And after that *Tajouwan* in *Formosa* was made the Staple of Trade by mutual Agreement of both Nations. The *Japoneses* also made great Traffick in *Siam*, *Tonquin* and other Parts. But latterly, since the expulsion of the Christians, the Emperor forbids his Subjects to go abroad without especial License. Either because he fears they will become Christians by conversing with them in other Countries, or because they are apt to be Rude in foreign Parts, or because they used to carry out Arms which we have told you *Japon* affords of excellent Temperament, or for all these Reasons as some judge, their Navigation is much restrained, and the Commodities of *Siam*, *Tonquin* and the Islands are brought thither by the Natives of those Countries and the *Dutch*.

The first *Europeans* that Traded to *Japon* were the *Portuguese*, who found the way thither in the Year 1542. Afterwards the *Spaniards* from the *Phillipine* Islands made profitable Voyages thither. Soon after the Year 1600. the *English* had a Trade there; And lastly the *Dutch*. These have been able to keep their Station, by complying, as we have said so far in making no shew of Religion, as to be esteemed not Christians. But they are obliged to deliver up their Guns, and all sorts of Offensive Arms, and even the Rudders of their Ships to the Emperors Commissioners, as soon as they arrive, which are restored when they return. This Trade has been exceeding profitable to the *Dutch*, even to the Sum of 150000 Pounds Sterling *per Annum*, but it is diminished one half, since the Imprudence they were guilty of in the Year 1640. when having obtained leave to build a Magazine for their Wares, they erected so strong and beautiful a Building, that the Emperor made them pull it down again the next Year, alledging it exceeded any of his own Castles. And ever since, the *Japoneses* have looked upon the *Dutch* with an evil Eye, abated the prices of their Goods, and raised their own prices at pleasure. And instead of their fine Building, they have been forced to accept of an old *Portuguese* Church, which was granted to them for their Warehouse in the small Island *Kisma* near *Nangasack*, which is their chief Staple of Trade.

The Commodities of *Japon* for Exportation, are as we have said Silver, some small quantity of Steel, and divers other Metals, Coral, Pearl and some Jewels, together with Rice. What the *Dutch* vend, there we have mentioned above and need not repeat. It must be noted, that no Custom or Tax is paid on Goods exported or imported.

The BUILDINGS in *Japon* are generally of Wood and of mean Fabrick, not but that there are some of Stone, and elegantly adorned. The Temples are Magnificent, and the Monasteries of Bonzi's large and well built. There is plenty of Wood both for Building and Fuel, for which Reason, as well as because the Land is subject to Earthquakes, the common People have no other but low wooden Houses. This renders the Towns very



Subject to Fire, which has several times made vast Devastations. They have however always an Apartment of Stone or Earth separate from the rest of the House, and is thereby preserved from the Fire: here they place their richest moveables, and lock up their choicest Wares in Chests. And the Timber building, is their Chamber, Dining-Room, and place of bestowing their Goods of smaller value. The Floor of the Rooms is a Pavement covered with Mats, and always kept very clean: upon these Mats they sit with their Legs under them as other Orientals, and with some improvement make them their Beds too. The Noblemens Houses are divided into two distinct Parts, whereof one is occupied by the Women, wherein they live Recluse, and the other possessed by the Men, and never looked into by the Women. Before the Houses of the Great Men, there is a Court, out of which they descend a few steps into the Garden, which is well provided with green Trees and Flowers, Terrasses and Mounts; and makes a goodly shew from the very Porch, to which there is always a full Visto through the House. The Walls of the Chambers are hung with Pictures or painted Paper, which is very nearly put together; and the Partitions are made to open, or even to be removed, in such manner, that out of three or four small Rooms a large Hall may be occasionally made. The Furniture is not very costly, nor their Cabinets beset with Jewels or Plate. Porcelain Vessels, whereof they have some of great Magnitude and Fineness, Pictures and fine Swords are the chief Ornaments of their Apartments: except the Furniture for Tea-Drinking which they choose to have of the richest Materials they can afford. The Stairs to the upper Apartments are made of Cedar, with curious Art and neatness; and kept so clean, that no Body will tread on them with their Shoes on.

The Island NIPHON or JAPON is the Main part of this Empire, being in Extent as we have said, vastly larger than the other Islands, and reckoned to be 1500 Miles in Compass. It is divided into five great Parts, which are subdivided into 55 distinct Governments or Provinces. The chief Cities in it are,

*Meaco*, which is the Metropolis of the whole Empire, seated near the middle of the South Coast, on a River which issuing from the great Lake, falls into a Bay of the Ocean. It consists of two Parts, the Upper and the Lower Town, and hath been formerly more considerable than at present, for since the Sceptre hath been wrested from the hands of the *Deyo's*, the Court is no longer kept here; and withal, in the Civil Wars of *Nabunanga*, the last *Cubey*, in the Year 1571. he set this City on Fire, and burnt 9000 Houses, which though rebuilt, are not so beautiful as before. The Jesuits write that it contains an hundred thousand Houses, and that it had formerly no less than 180 thousand. The Walls are of vast extent, and the City and Suburbs have been reckoned 20 Miles long and 9 broad. The Heir of the *Deyo* Family resides here, and keeps a noble Court, being as we have said Sovereign Pontiff, very much honoured by the People, and visited by the Emperor himself, every three or four Years.

*Saccsi*, seated also on the South Coast on the Bay of *Meaco*, is a most Wealthy and Populous City: on the West its Walls are washed by the Sea, and on all the other sides by a deep Ditch always full of Water, which renders it strong and free from external Assaults, and the method of shutting up the Wards or Streets in all the Cities as we have said, renders it safe from intestine Feuds, and therefore is resorted to by Foreigners on account of Trade.

*Jedo* or *Tedo*, seated above 300 Miles more to the Eastward, on a Bay of the Ocean to which it gives Name, may be now reckoned the chief City, because it is the place where the Emperor resides. The Castle or Palace is Magnificent and Stately: it is surrounded with three several Ditches and Walls beyond one another, with large Plains between. The Water is conveyed out of one Ditch into the other, by so many Pipes under ground, that they are all equally full. There are eight or nine Gates, which are not over against one another, but in Angular form, so that they turn often to the right and left, before they arrive at the inner Court. Between every two Gates, there is first a large Plain, then an Ascent by Stone steps into Works with high Walls, then other void places, where thousands of Soldiers may be ranged in Battalia on occasion. All which render it sufficiently strong. The inner Court which is the Royal Apartment, consists of many large spacious Lodgings, Halls and Offices for the Emperor and his Wives, furnished with Groves, Canals, Fish-ponds and other conveniences, in the most exquisite manner. The Lodgings and Halls are adorned with the most precious Furniture and Tapestries of Silks mixed with Gold and Silver very splendidly. In the Plain before this Palace, there is a Theatre, wherein Comedies and Plays are Acted.

In the Circuit next without, the Emperors kindred and chief Councillors have their Palaces. In the third Circuit which is the first in entring, the Kings and Princes live in noble and splendid Houses covered with Gold. Beyond this third Circuit are seen the Houses of the Peers, and Noblemen of lower Degree which are also richly adorned, and make the Castle at a distance appear like a Mountain of Gold. The Noblemen of the lower as well as higher order strive to outdo one another in the Splendor of their Houses, and thereby are esteemed to shew the greater respect to the Emperor.

In these Houses the Heirs of the Noblemen, whom as we have told you are kept at Court, and the Princes who in their turns as we have said, are to wait at Court reside. These with their Attendants make a great Concourse of People, and render the City extream populous.

The Circuit of the Castle is about five *English* Miles, and the whole City may swell to double that. This Palace is not talked of in the Jesuits Letters, because it was not then built, being Founded by the Emperor *Taikon* who Reigned about *Anno Dom.* 1600.

The Emperor has many other Castles conveniently seated all over the Country, whereof that of *Nicko* is remarkable, on account of the many thousand Artificers, as Goldsmiths, Jewellers, Painters, Braziers, Smiths, &c. which are kept at Work on curious pieces at the Emperors expence.

*Surunga* the place where the Emperors eldest Son resides. *Osacca* an Imperial City. *Sajoja*, extolled by the *Dutch* Embassy as a most delightful place. And

Many



Many other considerable Cities, and innumerable Towns are seen here, the whole Island being exceeding Populous, but we have no particular accounts of them and merely to Name them will signify little.

The second Island in Magnitude is SAYCOCK, otherwise called BONGO, CIKOKO or XIMO, which lyes at the South-West end of *Nippon*, divided on its North side by a very narrow Strait. It is reckoned 160 Leagues in compass, and is divided into nine Provinces. The chief Cities are *Bongo* the Capital. *Nangasac* built by the *Portuguese*, and afterwards possessed by the *Dutch*. *Congoxuma*, the place where the *Portuguese* first Landed.

XICOCO or CIKOKA, otherwise called TONSA or TOKOESY is the third Island in Magnitude: being 110 Leagues in Compass, and divided into four Provinces. It lyes on the East of *Saycock*, and on the South of *Nippon*, at a small distance from either, be-

ing divided by a narrow Channel. Its chief Cities are

*Nava*, a City and Castle of beautiful Structure, the Houses whereof are Magnificent, and built in our manner with Glass Windows, which is a rarity in this Country. The Furniture of them is extream neat, and the Wainscoting of sweet smelling Cedar. In the Walls are engraved the Annals of ancient times, with Figures in void spaces, curiously adorned with Gold. Of the other chief Cities, which are *Tonsa*, *Sumichi*, *Ivo*, &c. I find nothing particular.

THERE are abundance of small Islands which lye dispersed round about the Coasts of these large ones. But nothing being mentioned by Travellers that deserves Transcribing; We shall here Close our account of *Japon*.

And thereby conclude the Description of ASIA, having we hope given our Reader a sufficient View of every part of it.

HAVING now passed through ASIA, and taken an exact view of the Countries of it, in as ample a manner as could be done with certainty and truth. We should now proceed to AFRICA, but the distance of that part of *Africa* we shall begin with, being so great, 'twill be unnatural to our Reader to turn his mind to it at once, and therefore to comply with our Travelling method, shall return back over Land, and by a short Recapitulation and mention of a few things which have not been spoke enough to; we will lead him to the MEDITERRANEAN-SEA, of which it will be also necessary to speak a little before we Land in *Africa*.

First therefore, to consider this Tract of Land in general, we may truly say, that Nature has been sufficiently Bountiful to it, and the Earth will abundantly repay the labour of the ingenious Planter. The Grains and Fruits here produced, being far more Delicious than those of *Europe*. But the Tyranny of the Governments so far discourages Industry, that it may be much more wonder'd there is so much work done, and so many Manufactures produced, than that a great part of the Land lies uncultivated. In *Persia*, *China* and *Japon* where Lands are Hereditary, we see exact Culture and admirable Plenty, which shews that it is not the natural Lazyness of the Orientals, but rather the precarious Property that makes their Grounds lye untill'd. The Reader cannot but have observed, that *Persia*, *India*, *China*, and all beyond *Turkey*, is very full of Inhabitants, and that among those Inhabitants, there is much a larger number of Ingenious and Industrious Men than there is of Rude and Lazy ones. That manual Arts are practis'd with much Perfection; and that Politeness of Manners is not wanting among them.

Different Customs, Food and way of living may very well be expected in Countries so far distant from us. We have been careful to note the Manners of every Nation, and the variety is thereby made familiar to our Reader. But that which ought especially to be spoken to, as most affecting Strangers has been omitted. I mean their ways of Travelling, and therefore shall speak a word of it here.

In *China*, the Voiture in general is good, the Stages regular, and the passage safe. All over *India* that convenience is wanting, and even in the *Mogul's* Country (which is the most regular part of it) the

Travellers are obliged to furnish themselves with Provisions and Guards; for there are no Inns upon the Roads; and the Country is much infested with *Rasbootes*, who Prey upon Passengers. Neither are even the great Cities furnished with Caravanferays or great Inns, as in *Persia* and *Turkey*. In *Persia*, the Government secures the Roads; but in *Turkey* they are always infested with Robbers; these Herd in great Bodies, and are not to be aw'd but by a large Company. Wherefore no Man ventures to Travel but in a Caravan, that is to say, a large Troop of Men, oftentimes 5 or 600 who are all Armed, and an innumerable Train of Camels and other Cattle: These encamp a-Nights in the open Air, and keep Centinels on all sides. But perhaps it may please our Reader better to have it from the Travellers themselves who have been there, we shall therefore Transcribe a Paragraph from *Tavernier*.

'A Man (says he) cannot Travel in *Asia* as they do in *Europe*, nor at the same Hours or with the same Ease. There are no weekly Coaches or Waggon's from Town to Town, and besides, the Soil of the Countries is of several Natures, for you frequently meet with Lands untill'd, and Countries unpeopled, either through the badness of the Soil, or the sloth of the Inhabitants. There are vast Desarts to cross, which are very dangerous, both for want of Water, and by reason of the Roberies the *Arabs* daily commit in those places. The best Inns are the Tents which you carry with you, and your Hosts are your Servants, who get ready the Victuals you furnish your self with at the Towns you pass through, for there are no certain Stages or Inns upon the Road, at least in *Turkey*. In *Persia*, the Caravanferays or Inns are more frequent, here you may be furnished with Provisions for Money. In *Turkey*, the Country is full of Thieves who keep in Troops together, and way-lay the Merchants upon the Roads, and if they be not very well guarded, will not only Rob but Murther them. But in *Persia*, Passengers pay a certain Duty to the Governours of the Provinces, and the King obliges the Governours to secure the Roads, and repay the loss a Traveller sustains, wherefore it is not necessary to Travel with the Caravans there. In Travelling with the Caravan, says *Father Avril*, you must be on Horseback by break of Day, and Travel till Noon, or till you come to a convenient



ent place for Water or Forage. There you tarry perhaps 2 Hours, and refresh your self with Food, Fruit, Coffee or what you have got. Then you mount again and Travel till Night, when they encamp in a kind of Enclosure or Entrenchment surrounded with Ropes, to which they tye the Horses. The Baggage being placed in the middle, every Body gets as near it as he can, and having taken his Supper lays himself to Rest under the Tent which he must bring with him. And by reason the Caravans are exposed to Robbers, there are always certain Persons appointed to Patrol continually in the Night time, and by Hallowing, give notice both to the Caravan and to the Enemy, that they are upon their Guard.

All the Baggage is carryed on the back of Came's, whereof there are ordinarily 5 or 600 in a Caravan. This Creature is extremely fitted by Nature to Travel in these Countries, for besides his Strength which enables him to carry a Load of 600 pound Weight, he lives with much less Food or Water than other Creatures. When the Caravan rests and the Camels are unloaded, the Drivers turn them loose into the Common to eat Furze, Thistles, and such sorry Food as the Ground affords, and when they come in at Night, as they regularly do, they give them small Balls of Dough made of Barley-Meal. They will ordinarily live without Drink eight or nine Days together. The Female goes eleven Months with young, and as soon as the Foal is come forth, the keepers lap the Legs under it, and keep it in a kneeling posture for 15 or 20 Days, whereby they habituate them from infancy to kneel, which they very obediently perform at any time, and thereby facilitate the laying on and taking off his Load. There are two sorts of them, namely one sort fit only for hot and dry Soils, and cannot Travel in wet dirty Countries; and another which is larger and capable of carrying a Burden of 1500 pound Weight, but cannot endure Heat. Mr. Tazernier says, they are so affected with Musick, as by it to be provoked to Travel on when weary, or to mend their pace at other times.

There runs a great Ridge of MOUNTAINS both ways quite cross *Asia*, that is to say, from West to East Mount TAURUS, which commences in *Anatolia* and runs forward to the Eastern Ocean, and is computed to contain in length, all its windings and turnings considered near upon 6000 Miles. Of one part of it, namely, Mount *Caucasus* we have spoken, when we treated of *Mexgrelia*, p. 59. to which we refer our Reader for a knowledge of the height and quality of this Mountain. The other Ridge is Mount IMAUS, which beginneth near the Shore of the Northern Ocean, and dividing *Scythia* into *intra* and *extra Imaum*, passes forward directly South between *Persia* and *India*, cutting *Taurus* in right Angles, and continues to Cape *Cemeran*.

We shall trouble the Reader with no more remarks concerning *Asia*, what he can else desire to know is told him in the general Description of the several Regions, and having there also spoken of the *Black-Sea*,

the *Caspian-Sea* and the *Persian-Golfe*. We have nothing to hinder us from proceeding to the *Mediterranean-Sea*, which parts *Europe* from *Africa*, whither we are next to pass.

The MEDITERRANEAN-SEA so called as being surrounded with Land on all sides except at the two Straights, that of *Gibraltar* on the West, which lets the *Atlantick Ocean* into this great Bay, and the *Bosphorus* on the East, which lets the *Black or Euxine-Sea* into it. It was named by the Ancients *Hesperium Mare*, *Mare Magnum* and *Mare Internum*. And by the Spaniards at this Day 'tis called *Mar de Levante*.

The Situation of the *Mediterranean-Sea*, is between the 30 and 43 Deg. of Latit. having *Europe* on the North, and *Africa* on the South. In length it contains 709 Leagues. The Dutch Maps indeed represent it much longer, but if the Correction of Longit. be observed, this will be found the exact length. For the Straights Mouth is well known to lye 6 Deg. West from *London*. And by an Observation made there, *Aleppo* is known to lye 38 Deg. 45 Min. East from *London*, and *Scanderon* which is the Port to *Aleppo* is known to stand 60 Miles West from *Aleppo*: which leaves therefore 37 Deg. 45 Min. East, and 6 Deg. West that is 43 Deg. 45 Min. of Longit. for the full length of the *Mediterranean-Sea*. Degrees of Longit. in 35 D. Latit. are of the breadth of 49 Miles: which being computed, will appear to amount to 2127 Miles or 709 Leagues.

It is observable, that the Water always flows into the *Mediterranean* at the Strait of *Gibraltar*, out of the *Atlantick Ocean*, and also as constantly flows in at the *Bosphorus* from the *Black-Sea*. Captain *Bolland*, who made observation there tells us, that in 9 Years time that he lived at *Tangier*, he never saw it fail, that Ships in the middle of the Strait, not hindered by contrary Wind, are carryed into the *Mediterranean* by the Stream. And it is well known, that at *Constantinople* a strong Stream sets always in from the *Black-Sea*. What becomes of all this Water which is thus thrown into the *Mediterranean*, is a Question that is often asked, but not easily answered. Whether at the bottom the Stream runs out; or whether the Sun exhales Vapour enough to answer the influx, as Mr. *Halley* seems inclined to believe, is not easy to determine. It is also observable, that although in the middle of the Strait, there is a broad Stream that always sets in, yet on each side there is a Stream of a third part of that breadth, that Flows six Hours and Ebbs six Hours every Day. And that a narrower Stream along the shore on each side, Flows and Ebbs also in 12 Hours, but at directly contrary times than the other. So that on the 1st Day of the Moon, it is Flood at one a Clock and Ebb at seven, in the two Streams lying next to the middle Stream. And the same Day it is Flood at ten a Clock, and Ebb at four in the two narrow Streams next the shoar. Or rather it Flows at ten and Ebbs at four on the *African* shoar, and Flows at eleven a Clock, and Ebbs at five on the *European* shoar. As we are assured by the said Captain *Bolland*.

## A F R I C A.

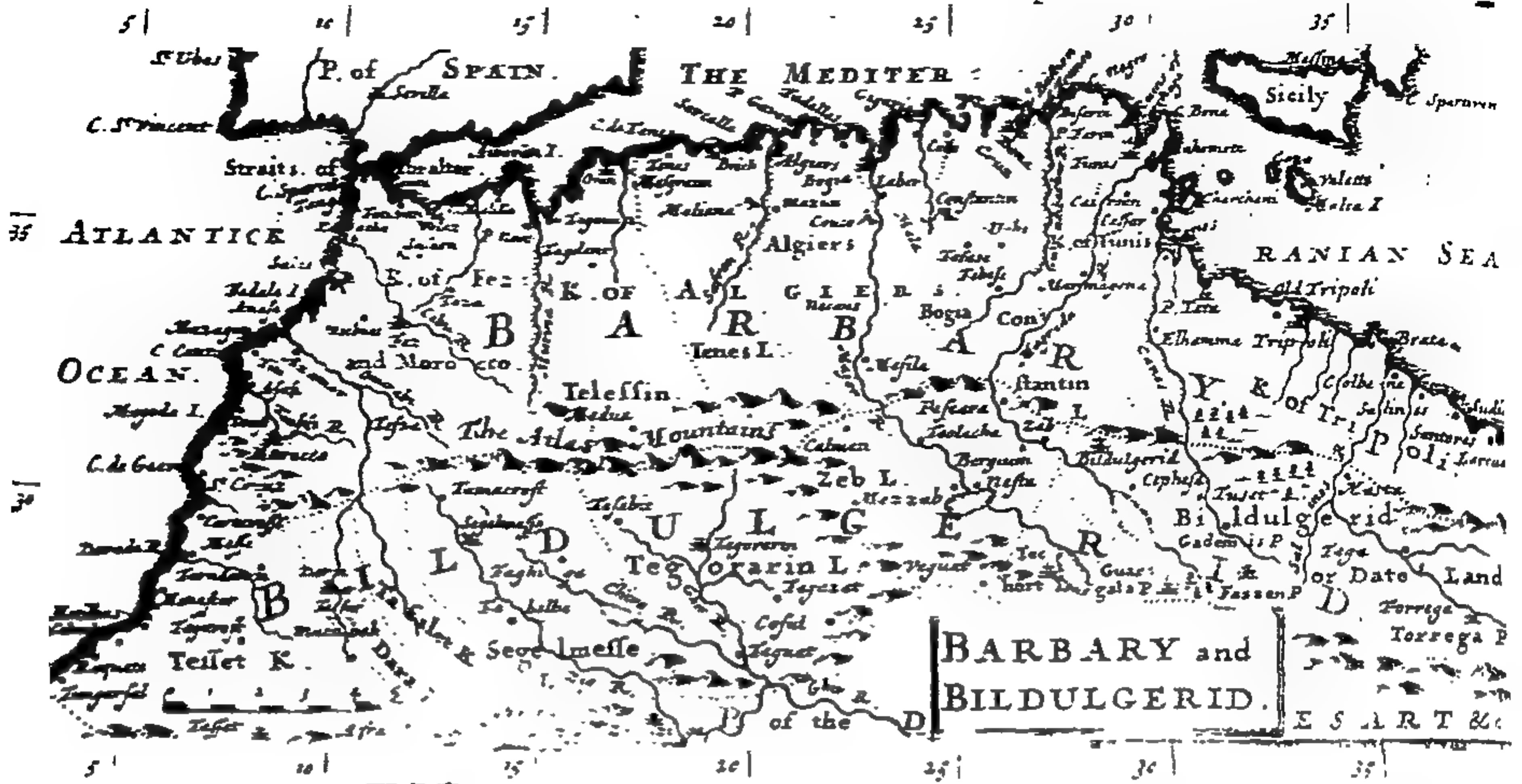


A

# General and Particular DESCRIPTION OF AFRICA.



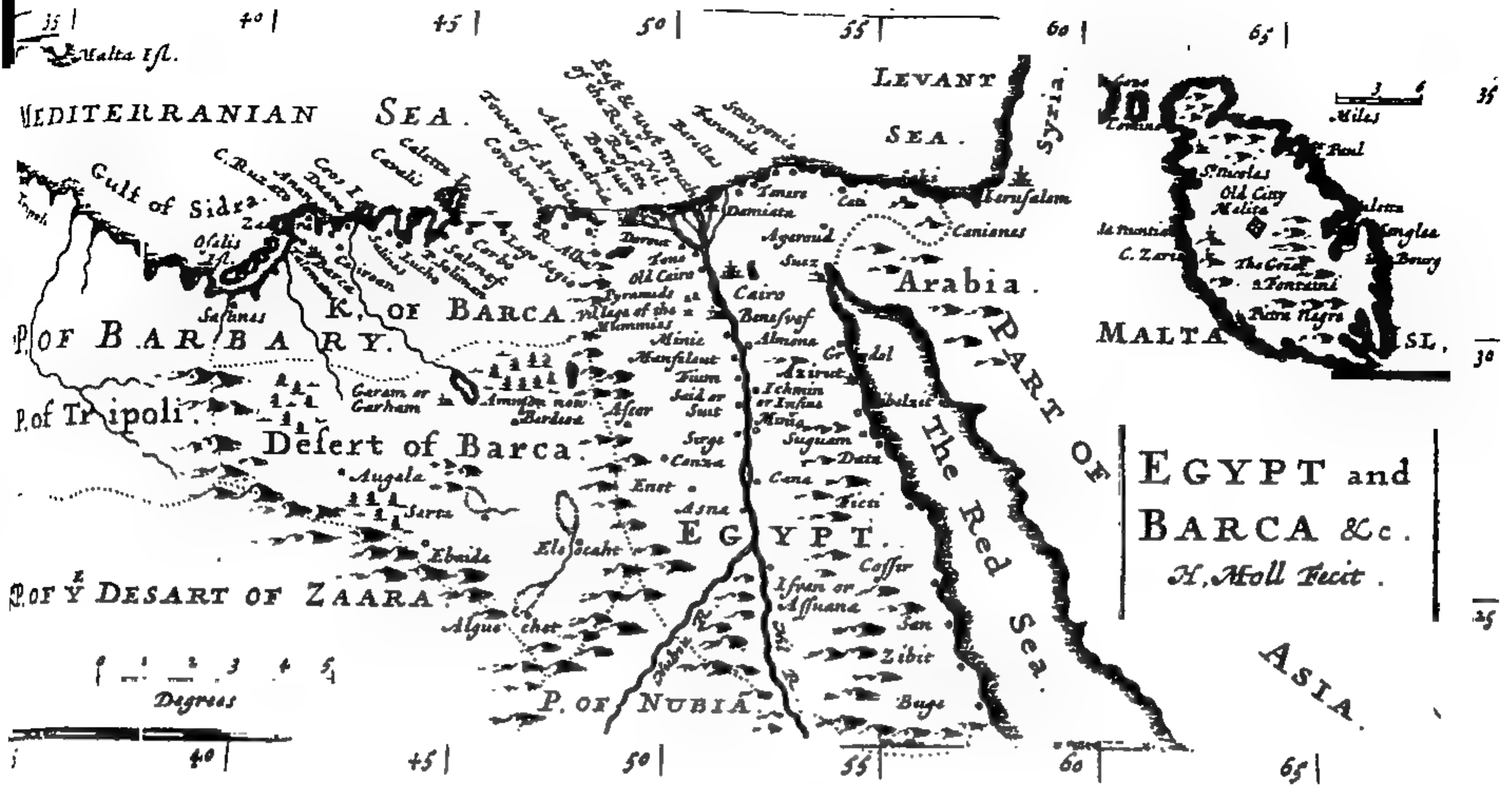




a Map of ZAARA.NEGROE-LAND.GUINEA &amp;c. H. Mot











CONGO. ANGOLA  
CAFRES. MONO-  
EMUGI. Monomotapa.  
Zanguebar & Madagascar.

M. Nyll Fecit.

## ERRATA.

Pag. 168. Parag. 2. Lin. 6. for *East*, read *West*. P. 169. in the Table, col. 1. l. ult. for *Fugast*, r. *Tagoast*.  
P. 170. col. 2. Parag. 7. lin. 1. for *Suez*, r. *Souz*. P. 171. col. 1. lin. 2. for *follow'd*, r. *swallow'd*.  
P. 172. col. 1. lin. 9. for *Suez*, r. *Sus*. P. 173. col. 1. lin. 12. for *distant*, r. *distinct*. Ibid. col. 2. Par. 5. l. 1. for *Province*, r. *Kingdom*. P. 174. c. 2. l. 5. for *Lions*, r. *Licus*. P. 177. c. 1. l. 9. from the bottom, for *Gru-men*, r. *Gorumen*. P. 178. c. 2. l. 14. for *of*, r. *yet benoit Men*. Ibid. l. 34. for *Trees*, r. *Springs*.  
Pag. 181. c. 1. parag. 1. of *Tonis*, l. 5. for *Guadiborbor*, r. *Guadilbarbar*, and the same in all other places.  
P. 182. c. 1. l. 4. for *Persons*, r. *Prisons*. Ibid. c. 2. l. 42. for *Rivers*, r. *Ruins*. P. 184. c. 2. l. 12. for *Mouth of Cape*, r. *Mouth of the Bay of Cape*. P. 186. c. 2. l. 32. for *Suez*, r. *Suz*. P. 190. c. 1. l. 21. for *Mountains*, *Nubia*, r. *Mountains from Nubia*. P. 192. c. 2. of *Biledulgerid*, l. 3. for *a Lake coming*, r. *a Lake, The Xis coming*. P. 197. Chap. of *Nubia*, col. 2. l. 10. for *fills*, r. *kills*. P. 198. in the Table, middle col. for *Angole*, r. *Angose*; correct the same in other places. P. 200. c. 1. l. 36. for *Ambaqueuxen*, r. *Amba-Guexen*. P. 205. c. 1. l. 40. for *full*, r. *fuls*. P. 205. c. 1. parag. 1. of *Negroland*, l. 11. for *Gni ci*, r. *Congo*. Ibid. after the Table, l. 1. for *Westwardly*, r. *Easterly*. P. 208. c. 1. l. 3. for *Cuantes*, r. *Cuciques*. Ibid. after the Table, c. 2. l. 2. for *Ethiopians*, r. *Europeans*. P. 212. in the Table, after *Agynub*, delete; and for *Longo*, r. *Cylenzo*. P. 212. c. 2. l. 26. for *Kingdom*, r. *River*. Ibid. l. 48. for *Por*, r. *Pes*. P. 215. c. 2. l. 55. for *full*, r. *fill*. P. 220. c. 1. of *Madera*, l. 17. for *Eucod*, r. *Europod*. P. 223. c. 1. l. 49. for *Adiscarenbus*, r. *Adalarenbas*. P. 226. c. 1. l. 48. for *all Immenic*, r. *in Immenic*. P. 228. c. 1. l. penult. of *North America*, for *Quivira*, r. *Quivira*. Ibid. c. 1. of *San Agustin*, l. 5. for *Po de la Haba*, r. *Po de la Hacha*. Ibid. c. 2. l. 1. for *Serecipe*, r. *Serecipe*. Ibid. l. 18. for *Corye*, r. *Cory*. Pag. 234. l. 62. for *Eria*, r. *Erie*. Ibid. for *Cut*, r. *Cut*. P. 235. l. 15. for *Erma*, r. *Erma*.

Since the writing the Account of the *African* Islands, and among them of that call'd *Hierro*, one of the *Cape Verde* Islands, we are inform'd by *Ward*, who have been upon it, that the story of the Tree turning into Water, is altogether false; and that there being nothing like it; but the Island has many Springs of other fresh Waters, and the Inhabitants have all great Canals, in which they use the Ram to serve them in the Year. The name of the Island call'd *Hierro* is *San Hierro*.



## CHAP. I.

## OF AFRICA in general.

**A**FRICK was the last of the three Parts into which the World was anciently divided, and still holds the third Place, by reason of its being known before *America*, though much inferior to it, either for Extent, or Wealth, and consequently to all the others in every respect, except only that it is larger than *Europe*. The greatest Part of it has ever continu'd in Obscurity, as being wholly unknown, and even believ'd not habitable in former Ages, and the present being little better acquainted with it, any farther than the Coasts. As much of it as lies along the *Mediterranean* Sea is fruitful in Corn, tho' subject to violent Heats, and has at all times been resorted to by *Europeans* and *Asiatics*. The Midland, once believ'd to be entirely desert and inaccessible on account of the scorching Sun lying over it, as being in the Torrid Zone, has been yet little visited by Travellers, for the same Reason, and no less for the Barbarity of its Inhabitants. The most Southern Parts, which extend to a more temperate Climate, are generally the Dwellings of a People so Savage that they may be said to have little more of Man besides the Shape and an uncouth sort of Language. Learning seems to be there altogether extinct, nor can that great Continent boast of any in former times, but that they call'd, The Wisdom of the *Egyptians*, confin'd to that single Kingdom, and some Literature convey'd into the Northern Coasts by the *Romans*, which all perish'd; when that Country was over-run by the barbarous *Vandals*, and afterwards by the *Arabs*. Nor has that mighty Tract of Land been more fortunate in Warriors, only the *Egyptian* Kings and the *Carthaginians* having ever made such a Figure in the World; for the *Moors*, who conquer'd *Spain* and other Parts, were not native *Africans*, but *Arabs*. Thus we see that only *Egypt* and *Barbary* have given what Reputation this Quarter of the World can claim; and of these the former was also honour'd with the Presence of the Saviour of the World, when in his Infancy he fled thither to shun the bloody Hands of *Herod*.

The Name of *Africk*, or *Africa*, is that which is us'd by all *Europeans*; but the *Indians* call it *Bazecah*, according to *Baudrand*; the *Arabs* *Iphrichia*, or rather *Afrikiab*, as *Herbelot*, that great Master of the Oriental Languages, informs us; and this general Name they have borrow'd from the *Europeans*; for among them it signifies only the Province of *Africa*, properly so call'd, and the Name this vast piece of Continent is peculiarly known by among them, the same Author tells us, is *Magreb*, signifying the West, in regard of its Position, in respect to their Country; lastly the *Ethiopians* stile it *Alkebulan*, as may be seen in *Heylin*. The Etymologies of ancient Names are always uncertain, and for the most part we rather guess at, than positively determine them. So this of *Africa* is variously represented, answerable to the sundry Conceptions of Authors; however there is no doubt, but it was at first peculiar to that Pro-

vince, which lies along the *Mediterranean*, and extended from the ancient *Mauritania* on the West, to *Cyrenaica* on the East, where is now the Kingdom of *Tunis*. By degrees it became universal to all that Quarter of the World; but whence at first deriv'd is the difficulty. Some, and among them *Emanuel de Faria y Sousa*, in his *Africa Portuguesa* derives it from *Melec Isiriqui*, a King of *Arabia Felix*, who being overthrown on the Banks of the *Nile*, by the *Ethiopians*, sorded the River with the remainder of his Forces, and settled in the Eastern Parts of *Barbary*, leaving his own Name to that Country. *Josephus* will have it so call'd from *Epher*, or *Afer* the Grand-son of *Abraham*. *Festus*, the Grammarian supposes it to be *Greek*, from *A Privativum* and *Phrice*, Cold; importing a Country free from Cold. *John Leo* brings it from the *Arabick* *Faraca* to divide, in regard it is separated from *Europe* by the *Mediterranean*, and from *Asia* by the Red Sea. Others derive it from the *Hebrew* *Aphar*, Dust, with respect to the sandiness of its Soil. To conclude, *Bochart* seems to have as much Reason as any of them, in making it a corruption of the *Phœnician* word *Pheric*, or *Pheruc*, signifying an Ear of Corn, whereof there was great Plenty in the Province properly so call'd, which that trading Nation convey'd to several Parts; but enough of this, let us proceed to its Position.

*AFRICK* in that respect lies South of *Europe*, and West of *Asia*, extending in Longitude 83 Degrees from East to West, being near 5000 Miles. Its Latitude is from about 36 North to about 35 South, in all 71 Degrees, or near 4300 Miles, including the whole Torrid Zone, and part of the two Temperate ones, for which reason it is all subject to excessive Heats, without any Cold, unless some little in the most Southern Part. It is bounded on the North by the *Mediterranean*, which divides it from *Europe*; on the East by the Red Sea, separating it from *Asia*, to which it only joyns by a small Isthmus, or neck of Land that cuts off the Communication of the *Mediterranean* and Red Sea, and on the South and West by the Main Ocean.

The Soil varies according to its Situation and other Circumstances, the Northern Parts being most fruitful, and yielding abundance of Wheat, whence many other Countries were formerly supply'd. The Midland is mostly scorched up by the Sun, which occasions vast Deserts of Sand, where nothing can be produc'd, but where there are Rivers and other Waters the Inhabitants live upon such things as the Land will afford; which shall be mention'd when we come to treat of those Places. As much as is within the Southern Temperate Zone abounds in vast numbers of Cattel, large and fair, and will produce any sorts of Fruit or Grain carry'd thither from *Europe*, or other Countries, yet lies most waste; through the Ignorance and Barbarity of the Natives.

Those People in general are the most unpolish'd of the three ancient Parts of the World. Along



the Coasts of the *Mediterranean*, where the *Arabs* formerly extended their Conquests, they are most civiliz'd, that Nation, renown'd in those Days, having still retain'd something of their former Government and more human way of living. The inner Regions, less known to us, as scarce ever frequented by other Nations, continue in greater Ignorance, and entire privation of all Politeness; and the most Southern are altogether brutal, or savage.

The State of Religion is here, for the greatest part, very deplorable, all the Northern Coast being subject to *Mahometans*, who keep what few Christians there are among them in miserable Subjection, or Slavery, the *Jews* being in no better Condition. Towards the East there are some remains of Christianity among the *Ethiopi-ans*, tho' almost buried in Ignorance. On the West great Numbers have been converted by the *Portugueses* and others, so that almost all the Kingdoms of *Congo* and *Angola* have receiv'd the Light of the Gospel. All the rest of that mighty Land continues in Idolatry, or rather supine Stupidity, there being scarce any Track of Divine Worship among many of those Savage Nations.

The shape of this Peninsula, for such it is, as being surrounded by the Sea on all sides, except on the East, where it joyns to *Asia* by a small Isthmus or neck of Land some compare to a Pyramid, others to a Heart, and others to a Triangle; but all these must be much supply'd by Fancy. The principal Wealth of it consists in Gold Mines and Elephants Teeth, both which carry most Nations in *Europe* to Trade on several parts of its Coasts. As it has not much variety of Commodities, so it over abounds in ravenous Beasts and Birds, and other noxious Creatures *Europe* is more free from, as Lions, Tygers, Elephants, Rhinoceroses, Ostriches, Eagles, Serpents, of sundry Kinds, infinite Numbers of mischievous Insects, and offensive Animals. The Lions of *Numidia* are reckon'd the fiercest in the World; the Elephants of *Negroland* have the whitest Teeth; and the *Barbary* Horses are the best shap'd. The principal Rivers of *Africk* are the *Nile* and the *Niger*, other wise call'd *Gambes*; and the most noted Mountains that the Ancients call'd *Atlas*, by the *Spaniards* nam'd *Montes Claros*, and Mountains of the Moon, by the Natives call'd *Bedt*, of all which we shall speak in their Places, and therefore add no more here.

The ancient Division of *Africk* under the *Romans* was into six Parts, viz. *Africa*, properly so call'd, *Mauritania Cesariensis*, *Mauritania Tingitana*, *Numidia*, *Tripolitana*, and *Bizacena*, all which amounted to little more than the present *Barbary*, but was all they possessed, or were acquainted with; except the Kingdom of *Egypt* they did not reckon as part of *Africk*. *Strabo* condemns those who reckon'd *Africk* as a third part of the World, looking upon it as inconsiderable; but *Ptolemy*, who knew much more of it went farther than any other, and divided it into twelve Regions, viz. 1. *Mauritania Tingitana* now *Fez* and *Morocco*. 2. *Mauritania Cesariensis* containing the Kingdoms of *Argier* and *Tremezen*. 3. *Numidia*, or *Biledulgerid*. 4. *Africa* properly so call'd, or the Kingdom of *Tunis*. 5. *Cyrenaica*, or the Kingdom of *Berea*. 6. *Marmarica*, another part of the Kingdom of *Berea*. 7. *Libya propria*, another part of the same Kingdom. 8. *Libya interior*, or *Reled Geneva*. 9. *Aegyptus superior*, the Upper Egypt. 10. *Aegyptus inferior*, the Lower Egypt. 11. *Ethiopia superior*, the upper Ethiopia. 12. *Ethiopia inferior*, the lower Ethiopia. By this we see, that famous Geographer knew not the one half of *Africk*. *John Leo*, who liv'd about the Year 1526, with all his Industry was not much more successful, for he divides it into only four Parts, which are *Barbary*, *Numidia*, *Libya* and *Nigritia*. To the twelve Regions of *Ptolemy* may be added *Agisymba*, being the present Kingdoms of *Monomotapa*, *Monoemugi*, and *Gates*; *Byzacena*, part of the Kingdom of *Tunis*, *Getulia* and *Garamantia*, being *Biledulgerid* and *Zazra*; *Nigritarum Regio*, which is *Guinea* and *Negroland*; and *Troglodytica*, or the Coast of the *Cafres*.

Having given these former Divisions of *Africk* for the Information of those who read ancient Authors, we now come to the present, as it stands at this time, and is best known to us, which can be taken from none better than *Samson*, with some small improvement from the latest Discoveries. This is best done by way of one general Geographical Table of all the principal Regions subdivided into their particular Provinces, reserving the Situation, Limits and Extent of them till we come to speak of each in its proper Place, where shall be added other Tables of their Provinces, and the Towns of Note in every one of them.



## The General Geographical Table of Africa.

AFRICA comprehends	On the Continent these REGIONS.	BARBARY.
		EGYPT.
		BILEDULGERID.
		SAARA.
		NEGRO-Land.
		GUINEA.
		NUBIA.
		ABISSYNIA.
		ZANGUEBAR.
		CONGO.
		MONOMOTAPA, and
		the Land of the Cafres.
		MADERA.
		The CANARIES.
		CABO VERDE.
		S. THOMAS.
		S. HELENA.
		MADAGASCAR, and
		ZOCOTORA.
		In the Mediterranean, that of
		MALTA.

These are again Subdivided as follows:

BARBARY contains the Kingdoms of	{	Morocco.
		Fez.
		Argier.
		Tunis.
		Tripoli, and
		Barca, depending on Tripoli.
EGYPT	{	Upper,
		Middle and Lower.
BILEDULGERID.	{	On the West { Teflet.
		Dahra.
		Tafilet.
		Segelmessé.
		Tegorarin.
	{	On the East { Zeb.
		Biledulgerid.
		The Del. of Barca.
ZAHARA, or the Desert, comprehending those of	{	Zanhaga.
		Zuenziga.
		Targa.
		Lempta, or Suma.
		Berdoa.
		Gaoga, or Kaugha.
Borno.		
NEGROLAND contains	{	North of the Niger. { Gualata.
		Genchoa.
		Tombut.
		Agades.
		Cano.
		Cassena, and
Gangara.		
NEGROLAND	{	South of the Niger. { Zanfara.
		Zegzeg.
		Guber.
		Gago.
		Mandinga.
		Soufos.
Melli.		
Between the Branches of the Niger.	{	Jalof.
		Casanges.
		Bijagos.
		Biafares.
GUINEA is divided into	{	Guinea.
		Malaguetta, and
		Benin.
NUBIA into	{	The Country on the Nile.
		The Inland.
		The Desert of Zeu.
ABISSYNIA into the Kingdoms of	{	Barnagasso.
		Tigremahon.
		Angote.
		Bagamedri.
		Dambea.
		Goyame.
Cafates.		
Amahara.		
Xoa.		
Damux.		
Narea.		
Fategar.		
Dobas.		



ZANGUEBAR into { Zanguebar.  
the Provinces of { Ajan.  
                                  { The Coast of Abex.

CONGO into { Congo.  
those of { Angola.  
                  { Loango.  
                  { Ancicams.  
                  { Cacongo.  
                  { Gabon.  
                  { Cacombo-  
                  { Pongo.  
                  { Biafara.  
                  { Medra.

MONOMOTAPA into { Monomotapa.  
                                  { Monoemugi.

The Coast of the CA- { Malemba.  
FRES into { Mataman.  
                  { The Cafres.  
                  { Chicanga.  
                  { Sedanda.  
                  { Zofala.  
                  { Quieteva.

The Islands mention'd before in General, see  
the Particular Names in their Proper Places.

## CH A P. II.

### OF B A R B A R Y.

**W**E will begin with *B A R B A R Y*, as commencing in the West, and running along the most Northern Part, as far as *Egypt*. The best Account we have of its Name is from *Alaric*, who derives it from *Bar*, signifying Desert, in the *Arabick*, because those Conquerors found it very ill Peopled, when they first overran it, and the Natives are still call'd *Berberes*. Yet there are some that will suppose it to have been nam'd *Barbary* by the *Romans*, from the Barbarity of the Natives, but without any Ground, this Name being never us'd by ancient Authors; besides that the *Carthaginians*, who were Masters of all that Tract, when the *Romans* came first acquainted with it, were a more polite People than the *Romans* themselves.

Its Situation is in the Temperate Northern Zone, under the third and fourth Climates. On the East it Borders on *Egypt*, on the South it is divided from *Biledulgerid* by Mount *Atlas*, the North of it is wash'd by the *Mediterranean* Sea, and the East by the Atlantick Ocean. The whole Extent from East to West is about 34 Degrees, amounting to 2000 Miles, the greatest Breadth from North to South about Six Degrees or 360 Miles. The Climate is hot, as lying betwixt 37 and 30 Degrees of North Latitude; so that it is scarce sensible of any Cold, the Winter consisting most of Rain. In March there are very Stormy Winds, and in April a perfect Spring, so forward, that towards the End of it they have ripe Cherries, Figs in May, and in July Apples, Pears, Plums, and Grapes, all the Harvest being in by the beginning of September. This is the best Part of all *Africa*, excepting only *Egypt*, as producing great Plenty of Corn, and Abundance of all Sorts of Fruit. Nor does it only exceed the Rest in Fertility, but far surpasses in Civility and the Art of Government.

As for the People, they are generally of a tawny Complexion, well shap'd, and strong of Body. They are of two Sorts, the Ancient Natives, more rude and ignorant, and the *Arabs*, who subdu'd them, and still keep the Government in their Hands, being more polite and civiliz'd, tho' much fallen off from what they were in former Times, when Learning flourish'd among them in an extraordinary Degree. *Leo Africanus* gives a mighty

Character of them for Sincerity, Modesty, Integrity, &c. which no doubt proceeded from Affection, as being himself a Native of that Country, for all others since him, who have liv'd many Years among them, say they are Faithless, Lustful, Cruel, Implacable and great Dissemblers.

The Language most in Use, especially in the Maritime Towns, is the *Arabick*, the ancient *African*, or a corruption of the *Carthaginian* Tongue, still continuing in the open Country and on the Mountains among the common Sort, and this Tongue they call *Culha*. The *Latin* notwithstanding the *Romans* were so long Masters of all those Countries is utterly extinct, so that no Memory of it remains.

No Religion can well be reckon'd on, throughout all this mighty Tract, but the *Mahometan*, which has the Power of Government, and oppresses all others. Christianity flourish'd here in the 4th Century to such a Degree, that there were 214 Bishops, but has been so entirely extirpated by the Malice of the Infidels, that there are now no Christian Inhabitants left, except the Slaves they keep in miserable Bondage. Nor do the *Jews* fare much better, tho' there be considerable Numbers scatter'd about in all trading Places, yet so contemn'd and oppress'd, that they may be reckon'd little better than Captives.

The Diseases most frequent in these Parts are the Head-Ach, proceeding from the violent Heats; Pains in the Stomach and Gripping in the Bowels, thought to be caus'd by much drinking of cold Water in hot Weather; the *French Pox*, first said to be brought over by the *Jews*; the Falling Sickness; and above all the Plague, which destroys Multitudes, and seldom misses to rage there once in Ten or Twenty Years.

To come to the Division, *Barbary* contains the Kingdoms of

Morocco.  
Fez.  
Argier.  
Tunis.  
Tripoli, and  
Barca. This last a Dependence on  
Tripoli.

It remains to give the particular Description of each of them.



CHAP. III.

Description of MOROCCO.

THE Kingdom of *MOROCCO* is a Part of the ancient *Mauritania Tingitana*, the Kingdom of *Fez* composing the rest of it. This Name was given it from *Tingis*, since call'd *Tangier*, then its Capital. As to Situation, it is the most Western Part of *Africa*, bounded on the West by the Ocean, along which it extends from the Town of *Messa*, or the Mouth of the River

*Sus*, to the Town of *Azamor*, at the Mouth of the River *Umarabea*. On the North the same River separates it from the Kingdom of *Fez*. On the East and South Mount *Atlas* divides it from *Biledulgerid*.

To descend to Particulars, it is divided into 7 Provinces, which with their Principal Towns see in the following Table.

MOROCCO. { Morocco.  
Agmet.  
Emegiagen.  
Tazarat, or Tefrat.  
Delgamaha.

HEA. { Tedoeft.  
Agobel.  
Alguel.  
Tecueth.  
Hadequis.  
Tefegdel.  
Eitdever.  
Tefethne.

SUS. { Messa.  
Tereut.  
Tarudante.  
Fagoast.

DUCALA. { Azamor.  
Almedina.  
Mazagan.  
Saffi, or Safini.

HASCORA. { Almedina.  
Alendina.  
Tagodast.  
Elguimuha.  
Bizu, or Bzo.

TEDLA. { Tefza.  
Fixtela.  
Cithibeb.  
Eitiat.

Guzula, or Gezula, has no wall'd Towns, but many large open Villages.

This Country is very hot, as lying between 30 and 33 Degrees of North Latitude. However it is fruitful, producing Plenty of Corn, and all Sorts of Fruit, besides Abundance of Cattel, the Land for the most part not being Sandy, like other Parts of *Africa*. Besides, it is nothing Mountainous, but Plain, as the *Sieur Monette* informs us, who liv'd there several Years, and whom therefore we think fit to follow in many Things. Here are abundance of Castles, which serve for a Retreat to the *Arabs*, as they do in other Parts for the *Barbarians*.

The Natives are generally strong, well shap'd, lively and of sharp Wits; applying themselves to Trade, Tillage, War and some Sort of Learning, but their greatest Study is Art Magick. The Women, who ever keep close at home, divert themselves with Spinning, Sewing and all sorts of Curious Works. The common Sort Eat on a Mat spread upon the Ground, without any Knives or Napkins; but those of better Rank, are somewhat Neater. Their Bread is made in Cakes bak'd in a Pot; their Drink Water, or Metheglin, or an Infusion of Raisins. The Men wear Shirts, and Drawers, with fine Scarlet or Silk Coats, Scarlet Caps on their Heads, and Sandals, or Slippers on their Feet. The Women have wide Smocks to their Knees, and Linnen Drawers, in Summer Silk and in Winter Cloth Caps; over the rest they wear long Robes or Gowns, wrought or embroider'd and clos'd before with a rich Buckle; besides other Ornaments of Gold and Silver set with Stones and Pearls.

There are four several Languages spoken here. The *Afforish*, being the ancient Language of the *Africans*, with some mixture of *Arabick*; the

*Arabick* somewhat also corrupted; the *Gemick*, or *Lingua Franca*, being a Corruption of *Spanish* and *Portuguese*; and the *Tamacette*, which is a perfect Jargon, scarce to be express'd in Writing. There is a white People on the North-side of Mount *Atlas*, who speak this Language, and boast that they are descended from Christians.

The Principal River in this Kingdom is that of *Sus*, which gives its Name to the Province, and is by some suppos'd to be the *Una* of *Ptolemy*. Its Springs are on Mount *Atlas*, whence it runs Westward by three small Towns, and falls into the Ocean. The *Tensifs* rises in another Part of Mount *Atlas*, and crossing the Provinces of *Morocco* and *Dukella*, is lost in the Ocean. *Marmol* supposes it to be the *Futh* of *Ptolemy*. Into it fall, the *Ecifsemel*, the *Nistis*, and the *Asifnual*. The *Tecubins* are Twin Rivers rising on Mount *Goguamede*, about 1000 Paces asunder, running through the Plains of *Hascota*, and losing themselves in the River *Hued al Abid*, which springs a Mile from *Bzo* and discharges itself into the *Ommirabih*, or *Uma Rabea*. This River comes out of Mount *Magran*, near the Confines of *Fez*, and meets the Ocean, near the Town of *Azamor*. The other Rivers are too small to deserve any particular mention.

The King's Revenues are very great, a Ducat and a Quarter being paid by way of Poll-Tax for every Head, the 12th of all Grain, and the 10th of all Cattel and Goods, besides many other Duties. The Christians pay dear for Liberty of trading in this Country, and that which makes the Sovereign most formidable is, that none of his Subjects have any Property, so that when any of his Governours or other Officers die, he seizes their Estates, and provides for the Children.

This



This Monarch's Titles are, Emperor of *Africh*, King of *Morocco*, *Fez*, *Sus*, and *Gazo*, Lord of *Barz* and *Guinea*, and Grand *Sherif* or Vicegerent to *Mahomet*.

The Women here are handsome, some very white others more brown. Here is a Noble Breed of Horses, and the People are generally Wealthy.

### The Province of HEA.

#### The Province of MOROCCO, properly so call'd.

The Province of *Morocco*, properly so call'd, from the Name of its Capital City, stretches East and West, from Mount *Hammimet* to Mount *Nefis*; and is bounded on the North by the Province of *Duquela*; on the West by that of *Hea* and Part of *Sus*; on the South by another Part of *Sus*, *Dara*, and *Gezula*; and on the East by that of *Hafcora*. This Province abounds in Grain, Flax, Hemp, Cattel, and all sorts of Fruit.

The City of *Morocco*, Capital of this Kingdom, is suppos'd to have been Built by *Joseph Aben Texifen* and his Son *Ali*, on the Ruins of the Ancient *Bocanum*, mention'd by *Ptolemy*. It is seated between the Rivers *Nefris* and *Agmet*, in 31 Degrees of North Latitude, and in a Plain about 50 Miles over, 6 Miles North from Mount *Atlas*. Formerly here were reck'n'd 100000 Houses, at present the third Part of it is waste, but encompass'd with a high Stone Wall, fortify'd with Towers and Bastions, and a large Ditch without. Many of the ancient Mosques, Colleges and Baths have been destroy'd by the Civil Wars; but there are still three Magnificent Mosques standing. The Royal Palace, call'd by the Natives *Alcazava*, or *Alchouart*, is like a little Town, enclos'd with high Walls, and in the midst of the Court, is a curious Mosque with a high Tower, and on the Top of it an Iron Rod, which runs through four Golden Apples, reported to weigh 700 Pounds, being the Portion of a Daughter of the King of *Gazo*, marry'd by a King of *Morocco*, in whose Right he inherited that Kingdom. All the King's Apartment is cover'd with Leaf Gold, being about 30 Rooms of State, besides several Galleries, with Fish-Ponds in some of them. About half a League from this Palace is a Royal Bower call'd *Moujerat*, in which there are 15000 Limon Trees, as many Orange and Palm-Trees, and 36000 Olive Trees; and near this a Park in which Abundance of Elephants, Lions, Stags and other Creatures are kept. About 4000 *Jews* live at *Morocco*, in a Quarter by themselves, and wall'd in, like another Town. The Common Houses have none but Mud Walls plaster'd over, but those of Persons of Quality are of Stone, the Tops of them all flat. Most of the Mosques are of Marble, leaded, and in the midst of the City there is a Bridge over the River *Tessif*. This Account is from *Mouette*, who liv'd there a considerable Time.

The other Towns have nothing that deserves Describing. The greatest Hills in this Province are *Nefis*, or *Actus*, otherwise call'd *Dere-dere*, *Aden*, or *Asim*, on the Western Borders, the Tops of it cover'd with Snow, and the Inhabitants extremely rude; Mount *Semedo*, separated from the other by the River *Xauxave*, running East and West 7 Miles. *Xauxave*, whence the River takes Name, South from the former; another excessive high; *Temelet*, on which is a Town of the same Name; *Guidimire* or *Gedemeve*, on the West of *Semedo*; and *Antete* West of *Guidimire*.

This is the most Western Province of the Kingdom of *Morocco*, bounded on the West and North by the Ocean, on the South by that Part of Mount *Atlas*, which joyns to *Sus*, and on the East by the River of *Eciffemel*, which separates it from *Morocco*.

*Tedoeft* once the Capital of this Country, and of great Antiquity, built in a Morass, was utterly destroy'd in the Year 1514; since which time the *Jews* have there built above 500 Houses. The other Towns are all of them inconsiderable, yet several wall'd, as *Agobel*, which has not above 330 Houses; *Alguet*, on a Hill water'd by two small Rivers; *Temelet*, a pleasant Place 18 Miles West of *Tedoeft*; *Hadequis* before the *Portugueses* destroy'd it in 1511 contain'd near 20000 Houses, now inhabited only by a few *Jews*; *Tesegdel* the greatest of the Mountain Towns has about 1000 Houses; *Eitdevet* 700; *Tesethane*, or *Tesane*, is a Garrison Town upon the Ocean, near to Mount *Atlas*, which has a considerable Port.

Five Miles up from the Sea, is the Island and Castle of *Mogador*, suppos'd by some to be the Island *Erythrea* of the Ancients, kept by a Garrison of 200 Men, to secure the Gold Mines in the Neighbouring Countries. *Goz*, or *Gozen* is a good Harbour, believ'd to be the *Suriga* of *Ptolemy*.

Mountains here, are *Aidvacal*, which parts *Hea* from *Sus*, is three Days Journey over, and has several rich Villages on it. *Demensere* or *Tensere* is another part of Mount *Atlas*, betwixt *Hea* and *Sus*. *Gebel el Hadith*, or the Mountain of Iron, believ'd by *Ortelius* to be the *Focus* of *Ptolemy*, is quite different from *Atlas*, and parts *Hea*, *Morocco* and *Duquela*.

All this Province is Mountainous, full of Rivulets, and produces little Wheat, but much Barley. The Natives are very brutal. In the Winter they feed much upon Bread and Honey; and in Summer upon Milk and Butter. They also eat boil'd Flesh, Onions, Beans, and *Couscous*, which is made of Meal. Most of them wrap a large piece of thin woollen Stuff about them, like a Sheet, few of them wear Shirts, and some have round Caps on their Heads. They sit upon Mats, and have no other Beds. The Women generally have their Faces veil'd.

### The Province of S U S.

The Province of *Sus*, or *Suez*, formerly a Kingdom inhabited by the *Tangresians* and *Vacauves*, takes its Name from the River *Sus*, and is bounded on the West by the Ocean, on the North by Mount *Atlas*, which divides it from *Hea*; on the South by the Deserts of *Biledulgerid*, and on the East by the River *Sus*, parting it from *Gezula*.

The principal Towns here, are *Messa*, formerly call'd *Temeft*, seated near the Ocean, at the foot of Mount *Atlas*, divided into three several Parts, each of them inclos'd with Walls, and water'd by the River *Sus*. Without this Place towards the Sea stands a Temple, or Mosque, all the Beams and Girders whereof are made of the Bone-



Bones of Whales, whence the People imagine, that the Whale which follow'd *Jonas* cast him up in that place; and there are still many Whales cast ashore there. *Tecent*, an ancient Town, a Mile from *Messa*, contains 4000 Families, and in it is a curious Mosque. A Mile from the last is *Garee*, built by the Sheriff *Abdalla*, in the Year 1520, where they dress the choice *Morocco* Leather, whereof so much is yearly transported into *Europe*, that the Duty of it amounts to 24000 Ducats. *Tarudante* is the Capital of this Province, by the *Moors* call'd *Taurant*, 12 Miles East of *Tecent*, and 2 South of Mount *Atlas*; seated in a pleasant Valley, 18 or 20 Miles in length, and 8 in breadth. The River *Agus* wallies its Walls, and in it was once the Residence of the Kings, and now of the Governours of *Sus*. *Tagoast* is now the greatest City, standing 20 Miles from the Ocean, 18 from Mount *Atlas*, and 3 from the River *Sus*. *Volatteran* supposes *St. Augustin* to have been born in this Place.

On the West side of the River of *Suez*, is Cape *d'Aguer*, believ'd to be the *Usagimof* *Ptolemy*, where the *Portugueses* once built a Town call'd *Santa Cruz*, but were expell'd by the Sheriffs in 1536. To the Southward of it in 17 Degrees of Latitude is the famous Cape *Nam*, so call'd by the *Portugueses*, signifying *not*, because they once believ'd there was no sailing beyond it.

Several Branches of the *Atlas* spread themselves into this Country by the Names of *Henquifa*, *Ilalem*, or *Laalem-Gezule* and *Idle*. The River *Sus* overflows like the *Nile*, and fertilizes the Land, which there produces plenty of Corn, and the Harvest is in *May*. It also yields all sorts of Fruit, Sugar, and good Pasture; has good Horses, and a Silver Mine, but no Oyl. On the Coast *Amber-greece* is often found. The Inhabitants differ but little from those of the Neighbouring Provinces.

### The Province of DUCALA or Duquella

Has for its Boundary on the East the River of *Umarabea*; on the West, that of *Tenfis*; on the North the Ocean; and on the South the River *Habit*. Its greatest extent from East to West is 30 Miles, according to *Marmol*, and 24 from North to South.

*Azanor*, seated on the River *Umarabea*, 3 Miles above *Mazagam*, is one of the principal Towns, it was taken by King *Emanuel* of *Portugal*, in 1513, but since recover'd by the Infidels, and is still large and populous, the Inhabitants having a great Fishery on the River *Umarabea*. *Alazagam*, once containing 5000 Houses, at present has not above 500, and those but poor ones, being a Garrison kept on that Coast by the *Portugueses*. *Saffi*, by the *Portugueses*, who took it in 1507, but lost it again, call'd *Sahn*, is wall'd, and about it 27 Towers. Ten Miles from it, in a fertile Plain is *Almedina*, an ancient City, and once the Capital of the Province. There are several other Towns not worth taking notice of, except *Miathir*, or as the *Italians* call it, *Cento Pozzi*, or an hundred Wells, a Name given it from abundance of deep Cellars or Caves there are in the Suburbs, which serve for Granaries, where they say Corn will keep an hundred Years. The Town is all built with Marble, and stands on a Rock.

The Mountain *Benimeguer*, or *Benimager*, is by

*Marmol* suppos'd to be the Mountain of the Sun of *Ptolemy*. *Inkel-hadva*, or the green Mountain, rises on the East of the River *Ommirabih*, and runs Westward; several Hermits retire to this Mountain, and live upon the Fruits of the Earth; at the foot of it is a large Lake. The Natives are perverse, cowardly, and brutal.

### The Province of HASCORA, or ESCURA

Is the most Northern part of the Kingdom of *Morocco*; the River *Tenfis* shuts it in on the East, as does the *Elquadilhabid* on the West, the *Umarabea* on the North, and the green Mountain on the South.

*Alendin*, or *Elmedin*, seated in a Valley, enclos'd by four Mountains, is a considerable Town here of about 1000 Houses. *Almedina*, a Mile from it, and 20 from the other of the same Name, in the Province of *Ducala*, is less considerable. *Tagoast*, or *Isadogas*, is a pleasant place by reason of several cuts of Water running through it. *Bzo*, or *Bizu* is by some reckon'd the Capital, and is seated on a Mountain.

The Mountains here being Branches of Mount *Atlas*, are call'd *Tevendez*, *Tensirez*, *Guigina*, *Tesevan*, and *Tescevin*. The Product Olives, Raisins, Nuts, Figs, extraordinary large Apricots, and other Fruit; Oil and Honey; Corn and Cattel, as also Woad for Dying. The Natives are more polite than in other Parts, applying themselves to Trade and Handicrafts, civil to Strangers, and feed after the manner of the *Europæans*. The Women are handsome and well dress'd.

### The Province of TEDLA

Lying East of *Morocco* is small, enclosed on the East by the River *Ommirabih*, on the West by that of *Quadel-habid*, on the North it reaches to the conflux of those two Rivers, and on the South to Mount *Atlas*.

The Capital here is *Tefza*, built by the *Arabs*, on the side of Mount *Atlas*, two Miles from the Plain, enclos'd with a Wall of Marble, which the *Arabs* call *Tefza*, whence it takes the Name. It is populous, and has several good Mosques. *Fixtele* is an open Town, a Mile from *Tefza*, containing 700 Houses. *Cithibeb* stands on a Hill 3 Miles East of *Tefza*. *Eitiat*, or *Aitiat*, is 4 Miles from *Cithibeb*, consisting of 300 Houses, wall'd next the Mountain, and defended next the Plain by steep craggy Rocks. In it there is a stately Mosque, with a curious Water running round it.

In the South part is the Mountain *Semege*, or *Seggheme*; more to the Westward Mount *Magran*, and West of that again Mount *Dedes*. The whole is more Mountain than Plain, but what there is of this sort yields plenty of all Fruit. The Inhabitants of *Tefza* are well enough Apparel'd; but those of Mount *Dedes* scarce cover their Nakedness, being rude, addicted to Robbery and Fraud. As for Religion, the *Mahometans* have the Power, the *Jews* are allow'd full Liberty, there are some few Christians, but the Mountainiers have neither Worship, Churches, nor Priests. If any Christian here will Apostatize, there is an equal Number of Christians and *Mahometans* first call'd together, and the former have liberty to use all the Arguments they can



to dissuade him, after which he is free to do as he pleases.

### The Province of GUZULA or GEZULA

Is no doubt a part of the ancient *Getulia*, which Name it almost retains at this time, the *Getuli* being a People of *Libya*, at the foot of Mount *Atlas*, as are the *Gezulians* at present. Its Boundaries are on the West Mount *Ilda*, which parts it from *Suez*; on the South Mount *Atlas*; on the North the Mountain *Haba*, and on the East the Deserts of *Biledulgerid*.

Here are no wall'd Towns, but only Villages and some Burroughs of near 1000 Houses, but those mean, and not worth observing. The Natives are very barbarous and stupid. They wear short woollen Shirts without Sleeves, and Hats made of Palm-Tree Leaves: being poor in Money, but rich in Barley and Cattel. The Iron and Copper Mines among them are very beneficial, for they make all sorts of Utensils,

which they carry to other Parts, and exchange them for Cloth, Spice, Horses and other things they stand in need of. But that which most enriches them, is a Fair they keep every Year for two Months, during which time they use the Strangers that come among them very well; keep Guards to see no Disorders be committed, and punish Robbers with Death. There is a very great Resort to this Fair from all Parts, and especially from the Country of the Blacks. The Weapons us'd by these People are Scimiters, or broad-pointed Swords and Spears. This Province is said to be able to raise 62000 Men, which makes them not afraid of the *Arabs*, and they have formerly plunder'd the City of *Morocco*. It is a free Nation, subject to no King, he of *Morocco* being only their Ally. They were once Tributary to *Portugal*, but that lasted not long. In these general Descriptions we chiefly follow *la Croix*, and *Dipper*, who have writ best of these Parts from the latest and exactest Accounts.

## CH A P. IV.

### Of the Kingdom of F E Z.

**T**HIS is the Eastern Part of the ancient *Mauritania Tingitana*, lying East of the Kingdom of *Morocco*, which is the other, and call'd by the *Moors*, *El*, or *Algarve*. On the West it is bounded by the *Atlantick Ocean*, and by the River *Omarabea*, which parts it from *Morocco*; on the East by the River *Muluya* or *Mulvia*, dividing it from *Argier*; on

the South by Mount *Atlas*, running betwixt it and *Biledulgerid*, and on the North by the *Mediterranean*. From East to West it extends about 200 Miles, and somewhat less from North to South, lying betwixt 31 and 36 Degrees of North Latitude.

It is divided into seven Provinces, which with their Principal Towns, are these;

Fez proper- ly so call'd.	{	Fez.	Habat.	{	Arzila.
	{	Sale.		{	Tangier.
	{	Fanfara.		{	Ceuta.
	{	Mamora.		{	Alcazar.
	{	Mequinez.		{	Beni Teude.
	{	Tifelfelt.		{	Mergo.
	{	Gemoa al Hamen.		{	Bezra.
	{	Hamis Melagare.		{	Tetuan.
	{	Beni-Becil.	Errif.	{	Gomera.
	{	Macarmede.		{	Terga.
	{	Zavia.		{	Velez de la Gomera.
	{	Halvan.		{	Penon de Velez.
				{	Mesemme.
Temefna.	{	Anfa.	Garet.	{	Tegassa.
	{	Almanfora.		{	Melilla.
	{	Sala, or Sella.		{	Casafa.
	{	Rabat.		{	Tessote.
	{	Hain el Chalu.		{	Meggeo.
	{	Thagia.			
Algar.	{	Larache.	Chaus.	{	Teurert.
	{	Moxinar.		{	Hadagia.
	{	Elginmba.		{	Garfis.
	{	Alcafar Quivir.		{	Meza, or Tefar.
				{	Benihulud.
				{	Hamlifnan.

### The Province of FEZ properly so call'd,

On the West is separated from the Province of *Temefna* by the River *Burregreg*, or *Sala*, and ex-

tends even to the Ocean betwixt *Mamora* and *Sale*; Eastward it reaches to the River *Tnovan*, Northward to the River *Subu* or *Cebu*, and Southward to Mount *Atlas*.



The Capital of this Province and of the Kingdom, is the City *Fez*, which some will have to be so call'd from *Fez*, signifying Gold, because a Quantity of that Metal was found in laying the Foundations; but others derive it from the River *Fez* which runs by it. The Founder of it, *Mouette* says, was *Muley Drice*, the first African King of that Country; *la Croix* calls him *Idris*, the Son of *Idris* Patriarch of the *Africans*, in the Year 801. Its Situation is about 200 Miles from the Sea, being divided into two distant Cities, call'd the Old and the New. The Old is seated on the Declivity of two Hills, being neither round, nor quite square, without any Suburbs. The Walls are of Stone, and about 8 Miles in compass, there being many Gardens within them. Without, the Houses, which are all flat-roof'd make no great show, but are very handsome within. The Streets are narrow and have Gates to them, to hinder People going about at Night. Two Castles defend it, the one very ancient and almost ruin'd; the other new, in which is a Garrison of Blacks, neither of these Forts has any Cannon. On the two longest sides of the City there are two sharp Bastions, built upon Hills, with only two Pieces of Iron Cannon on each. A River divides it self into six Branches in the midst of the City, furnishing all the Houses with Water, driving 370 Mills, and serving as many Baths. There are four principal Mosques, and above 500 of less note, all of them well endow'd, besides several Hospitals. The principal Gates of the City are seven. The new City of *Fez* is above the old, serves for a Citadel to it, and was built by *Jacob* the second King of the Race of the *Benmerines* about 500 Years since, having a double Wall about it, well flank'd with Towers, Bastions, and Half-Moons. *Muley Archy* built here a stately Palace and Seraglio, guarded by 300 Blacks. These Cities are Rich and Populous, the inhabitants driving a great Trade to all parts of the Kingdom.

*Salé*, by *Ptolemy* call'd *Sala*, stands on the Coast of the Atlantick Ocean at the Mouth of the River *Gueron*, or *Burregreg*, which divides it into two Towns. That on the South side has two Castles, on a Hill next the Sea, and join'd by a Wall running from the one to the other, with about 30 Pieces of Cannon in them both. There is besides a small Fort with five Guns nearer the Sea, to secure the Pyrates against the Christians. The Walls are of great Compass, and very ancient, but a considerable part is fallen towards the Sea. On the South East of it is a stately high Tower, call'd *Hazens*, under which they have their Docks, and it serves for a Land-Mark by Day, and a Light-House by Night. Thus much of these two Cities is out of *Mouette*, who liv'd in them both. All Goods imported or exported pay the tenth part of their Value; but the principal Wealth of the Town consists in Pyrry. The King of *Fez* appoints a Governour, who with some *Alcalds* chosen from among the inhabitants, has the power of Peace and War.

Two Miles from *Salé* is the ancient Town of *Mafara*, or *Tefensara*, supposed by *Marmol* to be *Ptolemy's Bimassa*. At the Mouth of the River is the Town of *Mamora*, formerly possess'd by the *Spaniards* and *Portugueses*, but lost by them. *Mequinez* is a strong City, and very considerable; being the Residence of the Heirs to

the Crown of *Fez*, supposed to be the *Sidda* of *Ptolemy*. *Tifelselt*, by *Ptolemy* call'd *Tamfara*, is all gone to ruin. *Macarmede*, the *Epis* of the same Geographer, is six Miles from *Fez*. But enough of such inconsiderable Places, the rest are of no better Note.

*Zalah* Mountain rises on the East side of the River *Subu*, or *Cebu*, and runs four Miles Westward. *Zarhon*, or *Zarahannum* commences three Miles from *Fez*, and extends eight Miles to the West, being three Leagues over in some Places; on it are above 40 populous Villages, and here formerly stood the City *Titulit* then above 10 Miles in compass, since utterly destroy'd by *Joseph*, King of the *Almoravides*. *Dar el Hamare*, believ'd to be *Ptolemy's Epitane*, is on this same Mountain, still entire and populous, but suffers much from the Lions, who come thither to seek for Prey. Mount *Tagar* or *Tagat* is two Miles West of *Fez*, stretching two Miles Eastward. Mount *Guerigure*, near the *Atlas*, is very well inhabited.

The Soil of *Fez* is exuberant, yielding all sorts of Grain and Fruit in great Plenty, as also Flax and Cotton, and feeds Multitudes of Cattel, Horses, Camels and Deer. The only fault in this Territory, is, that the Country on the West side of *Old Fez* for ten Miles in length and five in breadth, is of such a Pestilential Air, that the Natives are all of a sickly, yellow Complexion, and very subject to a Pestilential Fever, which destroys great numbers of them.

The People eat after the manner of the other *Moors* of *Barbary*, and make three Meals a Day. In the Summer they Breakfast upon Bread and Fruit, or boil'd Milk; but in Winter they thicken Broth with Meal. Their Dinners are of Flesh, Sallads, Cheese and Olives, but their Suppers lighter: They neither use Knives nor Spoons, and never drink till they have done eating. The better sort over their Shirts wear a Coat with short Sleeves, and over that a looser Garment close before. On their Heads they have a Cap, about which they wind a long piece of Linnen, which comes twice under their Chins. The Women in Summer wear nothing but a Smock, and in Winter a loose Robe with wide Sleeves, quite close before. The *Arabs* here wear a thin white Woollen like our Crape, which they wrap two or three times about their Body, and a red Cap; and others go quite Naked, saving a Clout about their Waist, and hanging down to their Knees. Their Chiefs cloath after the *Turkish* manner, and use a Turbant, but small and peaked.

Here are three sorts of Nobility, one by Extraction; another by Employment, and a third by Wealth; yet all enjoying the same Privileges, and all oblig'd to serve the King, and follow him to the Wars. There are in *Fez* 3000 Noble Families.

### The Province of TEMESNA

Is the most Western Part of the Province of *Fez*, extending Eastward to the River *Burregreg*; Westward to the *Ommirabil*; Northwards to the Ocean, and Southward to Mount *Atlas*; not above 17 Miles from East to West, and 17 from North to South. It was once in such a flourishing Condition, that *John Leo* says it contain'd 40 great Towns, and 3000 Castles; but all this is entirely destroy'd by the Wars, that scarce any Footsteps of it remain.



*Anfa*, or *Anassa* was here built by the *Romans* on the edge of the Sea 20 Miles North of Mount *Atlas*. Near it is a Fort built by the *Arabs*, where they keep Garrison. This place was plunder'd and ruin'd by the *Portugueses*. *Almanfora* was Founded by *Almanfor* King of *Muscat*, two Miles from the Ocean, in a pleasant Plain, near the River *Gair*, only inhabited by *Arabs*: *Sala*, or *Sila*, a different Town from *Sala* in *Fez*, was erected by the *Romans* on the River *Barrageg*, two Miles from the Ocean. Here King *Almanfor* built a stately Mosque, Palace and Chapel of Marble, where he and his Successors the *Morines* were buried. *Kobar* is a large Town which some will have to be the *Opium* of *Prolemy*, and is the Key of *Barbary*, being seated on a Rock at the Mouth of the River *Barrageg*, on which is a strong Fortrefs. Within it there are many Mosques, Palaces, Baths, and considerable Shops, and without, on the South side, a very high Tower to discover the Sea. *Hain el Chou* is small, but populous, and seated in the Plain. *Thag* standing near Mount *Atlas*, tho' not large, has been famous on account of a Saint said to have wrought Miracles there, in restraining the fierceness of *Lions*.

All the Territory of *Tangina* is flat and fertile, especially the Plains of *Anfa*, *Nenchile*, and *Zafsa*, which yield infinite plenty of Corn. The Country in general produces abundance of Fruit, and among the rest a sort call'd *Rahib*, like Cherries to the Eye, and tastes like Jujubs. The Liberty of *Thag* produces little Corn, but great store of Honey, feeds large Flocks of Goats, and has many Lions and Leopards.

The Inhabitants of *Anfa* were once very decently clad, and drove a great Trade abroad, till they ruin'd it by Piracy. This Province was so populous and potent, that it rais'd an Army of 50000 Men against *Joseph Aron Tisfrick*, the Founder of *Morocco*; but they fled at the sight of his Forces, and he entering their Province made such a Massacre, that scarce any thing but wild Beasts was to be seen there long after; yet in process of time, the *Zenetes* and *Hawes* re-peopling the Country, they became so numerous that in the Year 1500 they rais'd 60000 Horse, and had 200 Fortresses under their Jurisdiction.

### The Province of Asgar

Has for its Limit on the North, the Ocean; on the West the River *Barrageg*; on the East the Mountains of *Gomera*, and Mounts *Zachou* and *Zala*, and on the South the River *Banazer*; 18 Miles being its greatest length, and three its breadth.

Its Towns are seated along the Coast of the Ocean. Among these is *Larache*, by *Prolemy* call'd *Lara*, by *Pliny* *Lixus*, and by the *Moors*, *el Harais*. It is six or seven miles from *Arzila*, in 24 Deg. 30. min. Lat. and at the Mouth of the River *Lous*. *Ortelius* is of opinion, that this is the Garden of the *Hesperides*, and *Sannit* that it is the Palace of *Amara*, where *Hercules* encounter'd that Giant. It has been long one of the principal Fortresses of *Fez*, often attempted in vain, both by *Spaniards* and *Portugueses*, till in the Year 1610 *Muley Zeque*, Governour of the Place, deliver'd it up to the Marquis of *S. Germain* the *Spanish* General. The Town is adorn'd with beautiful Structures, and enclosed with

strong Walls, besides three Castles, to which the *Spaniards* have given the Names of three Saints. The Towns of *Morocco*, and *Elgimha*, are scarce worth taking notice of. *Alcazar Quivir*, which signifies a great Palace, is near the River *Lous*, which sometimes overflows to such a degree, as to drown the Town, consisting of about 1500 Houses, several Mosques and other Structures. Many other Places have been ruin'd by the Wars.

The Air of this Province is so pleasant and wholesome, that the Kings of *Fez* generally spend all the Spring there, and divert themselves with hunting of Deer and Hares. Besides here are abundance of Horses bred, with which it supplies the City of *Fez*, and the Territory of *Larache* produces Cotton. The People go decently apparell'd, and are good-natur'd and generous. The *Arabs* here apply themselves to Tillage.

### The Province of Habat

Extends from the River *Gurga* to the *Mediterranean*, North and South, being bounded on the West by the Morasses of *Asgar*, and part of the Ocean on the East by the Mountains of *Gomera*, on the South by the aforesaid River, and on the North by the *Mediterranean*, being 20 Miles in length, and 17 in breadth.

The principal Places are on the Coast of the Ocean, *Arzila*, formerly *Zilia*, built by the *Romans*, 14 Miles from the Mouth of the *Streights*, once subject to the Prince of *Centa*, who was tributary to the *Romans*, next the *Carths* took it, and after them the *Mahometans*. *Alphonso* King of *Portugal* carry'd it by Assault, and sent all the Inhabitants into *Portugal*, yet after defending it several Years, they at last quitted it to the Infidels, who are still Masters of it.

*Cape Spartel*, by *Pliny* call'd *Cotes*, lies betwixt *Arzila* and *Tangier*, butting out into the Ocean. Above it, at the Mouth of the *Streights* was the ancient City of *Tangier*, formerly call'd *Tage*, and from it all the Country *Mauritania Tingitana*. The *African* Historians say it was built by one *Seddal*, the Son of *Had*, and Lord of all the World, who resolv'd to build a City which should be no way inferior to the Terrestrial Paradise for Beauty, and therefore he encompass'd it with a Wall of Brass, and cover'd the Houses with Gold and Silver. To leave these Fables, after the *Mahometans* had long been possess'd of it, King *Alphonso* of *Portugal* took it, in the Year 1464, and the *Portugueses* defended it till it was deliver'd to the *English* in 1662, upon the Marriage of King *Charles* the Second to Queen *Catherine*, and he after some Years growing weary of the Charge, caus'd it to be blown up and destroy'd, since when it has been only a small Fishing Town of the *Moors*.

Eastward of *Tangier*, on the other Promontory, which forms the Mouth of the *Streights*, stands the City of *Centa*, formerly *Septa*, and by *Ortelius* thought to be the *Esilisa* of *Prolemy*. The *Streights* which parts it from *Spain* is very narrow. The *Goths* took it from the *Romans*, and the *Mahometans* from them. King *John* of *Portugal* wretch'd it from those Infidels in 1415, under which Crown it continued till its Union to that of *Spain*, and upon its revolt this was the only Place that remain'd in the Hands of the *Spaniards*, who still keep it, tho' it has been now about 12 Years besieg'd by the *Moors*. The



Town is still considerable and well built, has a good Palace, several Churches and Monasteries, and a Strong Castle.

Seven Miles from *Centa*, is the Town of *Tetegen*, which last Name is said to signify an Eye. It is encompass'd with a good Wall and deep Ditch; and at present contains about 800 Houses.

There are 7 remarkable Mountains in the Province of *Habat*, which are *Rabone*, or *Arabone*, 10 Leagues in Length and 4 over; *Beni Aros*, or *Beni Auros*, 7 Leagues in Length and 3 over; *Cebib*, or *Beni Teilit*, *Beni Hassan*, *Angera*, *Quarles*, or *Huat Adris* and *Guedaseth*. The Plains here being water'd by several Rivers are extraordinary fruitful, and besides Corn yield Flax; the Mountains Wax and Honey, and feed much Cattle. Here are an Abundance of Lions, but so fearful, that they fly even from Children; whence comes a Proverb among them, when they would upbraid a Man with Cowardice, they say, *He is like the Lions of Agle, who let the Cows eat their Tails.*

### The Province of ERRIF.

The River *Nocor* closes it on the East, the Province of *Habat* on the West, the *Mediterranean* on the North, and the Mountains that reach the River *Ganga* on the South. Its Length from East to West 14 Miles, and the Breadth from North to South 8.

*Gomeris*, is a Town on the Coast of the *Mediterranean*, near three small Islands, one of them called *Pennon*, and the other two, being rather great Rocks, *Tarfonella* and *Nesgallu*. *Terga* or *Turga*, some say was Built by the *Goths*, is about 20 Miles from the Mouth of the *Straits*, and contains 500 Houses. *Velez de la Gomeris*, which some will have to be *Ptolemy's Acra*, seated betwixt two high Mountains, has about 600 Houses, one great Square, a weak Castle and a small Arsenal on the Shore, where they build Gallies and other small Vessels. About a Mile from it, is *Pennon de Velez*, standing on a Rock in an Island, and not accessible but up a Way cut in the said Rock; Besides this, there is another Fort in the Mid-way, and some small ones which render it impregnable. *Mesemma*, *Tegassu* and the other Towns are too inconsiderable to have more said of them.

The Mountains here are many, among which that of *Sencafen*, or *Xexuen*, is reck'ned the Delightfullest in all *Africk*. Many of them are High, Steep, Uncouth and Cold, cover'd for the most part with Trees, and yielding no Grain but Oats and Barley, yet produce Grapes, Figs, Olives and Almonds, and have scarce any Wild Beasts, but great Numbers of Goats, Asses and Monkeys. All the Rivers here are very full of Fish.

Most of the Inhabitants of these Mountains have Swellings under their Chins, like the People of the *Alps*, and are very deformed, ignorant and rude, but make good Soldiers; excepting those of Mount *A'cai*, who are more civiliz'd, but so fierce and jealous, that they rather bear with any Criminals than Adulterers. The Food is coarse, as living much upon Barley, red Herrings, Onions, Garlick, Goat's Milk, and some Goat's Flesh.

### The Province of GARET.

The River *Muluya* washes it on the East, the *Nocor* on the West; the *Mediterranean* on the North,

and the Mountains of the Desarts of *Nimidia* run along it on the South. This Province is divided into three Parts; The one containing the Towns and Villages; the second the good Lands, and the third the Desarts, beginning in the North about the *Mediterranean*, and running Southward to those of *Chams*. That Part which contains the Villages is 16 Miles long, and 14 over.

On the Coast of the *Mediterranean* is the Town of *Mcilla*, formerly *Ryffadinum*, which has an indifferent Port, and was once the Capital of the Province, containing about 2000 Houses. In the Year 1497, the Duke of *Medina Sidonia* took and burnt it down; but afterwards peopled it again, so that it became one of the best Garrisons the *Spaniards* had in *Africk*; for the better Security whereof they built a good Cittadel. Six Miles from it is the Town of *Casasa*, and near it so convenient a Harbour, that the *Venetians* for some Time drove there a considerable Trade with the People of *Fez*. King *Ferdinand* of *Spain* afterwards took and annex'd it to his Crown. Up the Inland is *Tesote*, on a high Rock, the Way to it being winding about. *Meggeo* is two Miles from the Sea, on a Mountain.

*Mequib Huan*, or *Equebdenon*, is a Mountain running Eastward from *Casasa* to the River *Muluya*, and Southward from the Sea to the Desarts of *Garet*. There were on it 72 Villages before the *Spaniards* took *Casasa*, but since it is not so well peopled. *Benihafid* extends 8 Miles Eastward from *Casasa* to the River *Nocor*, and has on it 118 Villages.

This Province wants several Things necessary for the Support of Human Life, especially Water; which renders it for the most part Barren. Yet that Part they call the Desart, feeds abundance of Cattel, which in Summer the *Arabs* and other Inhabitants call'd *Batalises*, are forc'd to drive to the River *Muluya*. On some of the Mountains there is good Pasture, and they yield Barley and Honey. They have also Iron Mines, which Metal the Natives exchange for Honey. Besides, here are considerable Breeds of good Horses. The People are generally Brave, Generous and Kind to Strangers.

### The Province of CHAUS

Has on the East the River *Zha*, or *Ezaba*; on the West the *Guraigura*; on the North Mount *Lucato*, and on the South the *Atlas*, being 46 Miles in Length, from East to West, and 40 in Breadth from North to South.

*Tewert* is one of the most considerable Towns of this Province, very Ancient, seated on a Hill, near the River *Zha*, its Liberties extending Northward to the Desarts of *Garet*. *Hsdagia* stands at the Conflux of the Rivers *Mullula* and *Muluya*, which almost enclose it. The *Arabs* of *Dara* Plunder'd it, and it was quite forsaken during the Wars of *Tewert*; but the *Turks* have restor'd it entirely, sending thither a Colony of the *Arabs* of *Motigia*. *Gaisis*, built on a Rock, 5 Miles from *Tewert*; once the Granary of the Kings of the Race of the *Amerines*, is all of black Stone, Houses and Walls. *Mesa* or *Tezar*, a Strong and Ancient Town, two Miles from Mount *Atlas*, was once reckoned the 3d in the Kingdom of *Fez*, and had a Mosque in it Larger than that in the City of *Fez*; at present it contains 500 Houses, besides Palaces, Colleges and Mosques of a good Structure;



ature, and its Liberties without are of a great Extent. *Benikulad*, formerly *Bent*, is on the Descent of Mount *Atlas*, and near it a Road which leads into *Numidia*. *Hamlisum*, or *Air el Gium*, that is, the Spring of the Idols, so call'd from an ancient Temple, where Men and Women met and committed all Sorts of Leudness.

Here are two delightful Plains, that of *Sab el Marza*, signifying, the Plain of the Valiant Men, 14 Miles Long and 10 in Breadth. The other is call'd *Azazari*, *Commaren*. Mount *Angara*, 2 Miles from *Teza*, is very difficult of Ascent by Reason of the Narrowness of the Ways. *Cruza* is 5 Miles from *Teza*, running East and West, 3 Miles in Length, and contains 50 Villages, besides two Springs, which make two considerable Rivers. On Mount *Megeza* there are 40 Villages, and 35 on *Baronis*. On that call'd *Miabir*, or the Mountain of 100 Wells, there is said to be a dry one, so Deep that they cannot find the Bottom of it. *Cunigelgherben*, or *Condigerherben*, is not inhabited, by Reason of its Coldness, being all wooded and full of Leopards and Crows, from which last it is suppos'd to have taken the Name, for *Cunai-el-gherben*, signifies, the Way of the Crows. The North Wind sometimes drives such

Mountains of Snow on it, that Travellers are often Bury'd alive. *Benijassa* and *Silego* are two Mountains, on each Side the River *Sabu*, to each of which is made fast a mighty Beam, with a strong Pulley, through which a Rope passes both Ways, and on it hangs a great Basket that will hold ten Men; the use whereof is, when any will pass over the River, they get into it and are drawn across with much Ease, so that it serves instead of a Bridge.

For the most part this Province is stony, dry, and barren; yet there are some Valleys and Plains which produce Grain and Fruit, being water'd by several small Rivers, as also some Flax, and feed much Cattle and Horses. On some of the Mountains there are abundance of Snakes, and some that go into the Houses and eat what is given them, without doing any Harm.

As for the Natives, those on Mount *Megeza* are white, able of Body, swift, and good Horsemen; those of *Tezerga*, are ill looked; the Women of Mount *Baronis* fair, beautiful and well dress'd; the Men on Mount *Benijechfeten* very brutal, but those of *Beni-yalga* courteous and modest, and so they vary according to the several Places they inhabit.

## CHAP. V.

### Of the Kingdom of ARGIER.

THIS Name is given it from the Capital City, for under the Romans it was call'd *Mauritania Caesariensis*, as *John Leo*, *Mn-mol*, *Druity*, *Heylin*, and all others agree, only *Cluverius* will have the Province *Caesariensis* to be that of *Dara*, in *Numidia*; but that it was this Kingdom appears by the City *Casarea* built there by King *Juba*, in Honour of *Cesar Augustus*. After their Days, when conquer'd by the Arabs, it was long call'd, the Kingdom of *Tremecen*, but at present *Tremecen* is a Dependence on *Argier*.

On the West it borders on the Kingdom of *Fez*, from which it is divided by the Rivers of *Malvia* and *Zba*, or *Zis*; on the South are the Deserts of *Numidia*; on the East the great River *Guadiborbar*, separating it from *Timis*; and on the North the Mediterranean. *Leo*, and from him *Heylin*, make the whole Length from East to West 380 Miles, *La Croix* extends it to 450, and *Pierre Dan* to near 500. The Breadth from North to South where Largest is 150 Miles, in other Places not above 60. The Climate, Seasons, and Temperature of the Air, are much the same as has been said of *Fez* and *Morocco*, they all differing little in Latitude.

The Inhabitants are of several Nations, as *Turks* and *Janisaries*, who come from the Levant to make their Fortunes; Native *Moor*s, Tributary to the *Turks*, and call'd *Cabeg-Lesten*; *Azages*, who come from the Mountains of *Casco* and *Libez*; abundance of *Jews* and *Moriscos* expell'd *Spain*: *Targamis* being those that came from *Armenia* and *Catalonia*, besides great Numbers of Christian Slaves taken at Sea.

The *Larabasses* are *Arabs*, who live in the open Country, along the Banks of the Rivers for the Convenience of Water. Others wander in the Deserts, in such Numbers, that they value not the

Viceroy's of *Argier*, any more than they did the Kings of *Tremecen*, and if the *Argierines* make War on them, they retire to the Deserts of *Biledulgerid*, where they cannot be pursu'd. At present they pay an Acknowledgment to the Commanding *Rassa*.

Many Parts of this Kingdom are dry and barren, yet others abound in all Things necessary, not only for the Support of Life, but for Delight and Pleasure. The Northern Parts of *Tremecen*, next the Mediterranean abound in Pasture; the Mountains West of *Tenez*, *Argier* and *Bugia* are fruitful in Corn and Meadow Land. Along the Coasts of *Bona*, *Constantina* and *Tremecen*, there are Plains full of all sorts of Fruit. The Deserts are the Habitation of Lions, Ostriches, Porcupines, Wild Boars, Hedghogs, Stags, Camæleons, Monkeys and all sorts of Wild-Fowl. The Towns in this Kingdom are thin, and those not populous, excepting the City of *Algier*. Those up the Inland are inhabited by People haughty and bold, who Trade into *Biledulgerid*, *Guinea*, and other Countries of the Blacks.

The most remarkable Rivers here are, the *Zba*, or *Zis*, which runs across the Deserts of *Angued*, along the Frontiers of *Fez*, and falls into the Mediterranean, its Water clear and full of Fish. *Hud-Habra* falls into the *Zis*, near the Plains of *Cirat*, and along it live many desperate *Arabs*, who are ill Neighbours to *Oran*. *Tesne*, by *Ptolemy* call'd *Siga*, and now *Huet-Gol*, comes from Mount *Atlas*, across the Deserts of *Angued*, and loses it self in the Mediterranean, 5 Leagues from *Oran*. *Minia*, is a large River, by *Ptolemy* call'd *Cytlema*, running through the Plains of *Bathala* Northward, and joyning the Mediterranean near the Town of *Arzco*. *Zilif*, formerly *Cartena* descends from Mount *Guanecxis*, and crossing the Deserts



Desarts enters the Sea on the Frontiers of *Tremecen* and *Tenez*. *Ceef*, suppos'd to be the *Chineta* of *Ptolemy* empties it self 3 Miles from *Argier*. *Hoed el Quibir*, by the *Christians* call'd *Zinganor*, and thought to be the *Nazabats* of *Ptolemy*, after rowling down from the high Tops of Mount *Atlas*, ends its Course near *Bugia*. *Sufgemar*, which some believe to be *Ptolemy's Ampyogus*, has its Rise in Mount *Auras*, traverses the barren Plains, and

passing by *Constantina*, meets the *Mediterranean Yadoch*, or *Ladoch*, has its Origin on Mount *Atlas*, and is swallow'd by the Sea near *Bona*. *Gua-diborbar*, takes its Course along the Frontiers of *Tripoli*, and joyns the Sea West of *Biserta*.

This Kingdom was formerly divided into four Parts, which are *Tremecen*, *Tenez*, *Argier* and *Bugia*; at present the *Turks* reckon 18 Provinces in it, which with their chief Towns stand thus,

Tremecen. {	Tremecen.	Tenez. {	Tenez.	Argier. {	Argier.
	Huber.		Medua.		Metafuz.
	Fefezare.				Teddelez.
	Tezela.	Tebessa. {	Tebessa.		Safa.
Angad. {	Guagida.		Humanbar. {		Col des Madejares.
	Tenfegzet.		Teburit.	Bugia. {	Bugia.
	Illi.		Ned-Roma.		Stefe.
Beni-Araxid. {	Beni-Araxa.		Haresgol. {		Necaur.
	Calaa.		Haresgol.	Gigeri. {	Gigeri.
	Elmohascor.				
	Batha.	Oran. {	Oran.	Constantina. {	Constantina.
Miliana. {	Miliana.		Mazagran.		Ascol.
	Mezim.	Mostagan. {	Mostagan.		Sucnizada.
	Tessara.		Masalquivir.	Bona. {	Bona.
Couco Kingdom. {	Conco.		Sargel. {		Mela.
	Tamagus.		Sargel.		Tabarca.
Labez Kingdom. {	Tefli.		Brescor.		
	Bori.				

## The Province of Tremecen

Was formerly a Kingdom of a large Extent, now reduced to a small Part of the Kingdom of *Argier*, lying along the *Mediterranean* from the Confines of *Fez*, to the Province of *Angad*, and stretching Southward to the Desarts under Mount *Atlas*.

*Tremecen* its Capital, thought to be the *Timisi* of *Ptolemy*, stands 5 Miles South from the *Mediterranean*. The Walls of it Built in the Year 1520. are of Square Stone, 40 Cubits high, and fortify'd with many Towers, and in them 5 Gates with Draw-bridges. It has a strong Castle of Modern Structure, with large Apartments for the *Fanizaries*, 5 Square Colleges, 8 Principal Mosques, the remainder of 150, 4 Stately Baths out of 160; 12 Hospitals, one for the *Venetians*, one for the *Genoveses*, four for the *Moors*, and six for all Strangers; 10 Handsom Market-Places. The Houses Larger and more Beautiful than those at *Argier*, with curious Gardens of all Sorts of Fruit. Formerly here were reckoned 6000 Houses, but now most of the Inhabitants are fled from the Cruelty of the *Turks*. *Huber* is a small Town, half a League South of *Tremecen*, built by the *Romans*, and call'd *Minara*. *Tefezare* is still considerable, standing in the Plain, 4 Miles East of *Tremecen* and wall'd, believ'd to be the *Astacilis* of *Ptolemy*.

The Country abounds in Water, and produces Plenty of Corn, and great Variety of Fruit. The Inhabitants are divided into four Sorts, Handicrafts, Merchants, Gun-men and Swordsmen. The Merchants Trade into the Country of the Blacks. The Inhabitants of the Towns are Polite and Courteous; those of the Plains wander about from Place to Place. The Kings of *Tremecen* were once Powerful; they long paid Tribute to the Kings of *Spain*, and now the Country is Subject to the *Turks*, govern'd by an *Alcaide* sent thither by the *Bassa* of *Argier*.

## The Province of Angad

Is no other than the Western Fenny Part of the Province of *Tremecen*, 17 Miles in Length from East to West and 12 in Breadth, the River *Muluya* running through the midst of it, on whose Banks live several considerable Hords of *Arabs*, as those of *Uled Talha*, *Uled Arrax*, and *Uled Manzar*.

The Towns here are, *Guagida*, being *Ptolemy's Lanigara*, seated in a Plain, 9 Miles from the *Mediterranean*, and containing 3000 Families. *Tenfegzet*, Strong, as standing on a Rock, in the Way to *Fez*, where the *Turks* have rais'd Fortifications, made an Arsenal, and keep a good Garrison. *Illi*, or *Zeril*, by some call'd *Giglina*, and taken for the *Giva* of *Ptolemy*, is in a Plain, defended by a Fort.

*Beni-Zenete* is a Mountain in this Province, with several Villages on it, and a Castle in which the Lord of the Mountain lives. It is most barren and unwholesom, but the plain Country yields Corn and all Sorts of Fruit; and in the Desarts there are Abundance of Red and fallow Deer, Wild Boars, Ostriches, Lions, &c. The Desart Part of this Province is full of *Arabs*, who rob the Passengers betwixt *Fez* and *Tremecen*. The Governour resides at *Guagida*.

## The Province of Beni-Araxid

Or *Beni-Razid*, is a Dependance of *Argier*, 11 Miles in Length and 5 in Breadth, the Southern Part of it Plain, the Northern Hilly. Its Capital is *Beni-Arax*, tho' not wall'd, containing 2000 Houses. The next Place is *Calaa*, formerly *Atoa*, enclos'd by a strong Wall between two Mountains. The third *Almohascor* open, but has a Fort to defend it where the Governour resides with a good Garrison. The Soil is every where Fertile in Corn; feeds great Flocks of Cattel, and has store



store of Honey. Most of the Natives are Husbandmen or Graziers.

### The Province of Miliana.

Lies up the Inland of the Kingdom of *Argier*, taking the Name of its Capital, and joining on the West to the Province of *Beni-Araxid*, and on the East to that of *Argier*. The City, formerly *Magnant*, or *Manlian*, is large, and built by the *Romans*, on a high Hill, 9 Miles from *Argier*; encompass'd with high Walls, reaching on the one Side to a Deep Valley, and ascending on the other to the Top of the Hill. *Mezina* was also built by the *Romans*, 12 Miles from the *Mediterranean*, between *Mostagan* and *Tenez*, wall'd, and in it a Citadel, a Palace and a large Temple built by the *Romans*. *Tessra*, by the *Africans* call'd *Tequideat*, that is, the ancient City, is famous in *Roman* History, by the Name of *Cesarea*, and now contains 1300 Houses. All the People of this Province are mean and inconsiderable.

### The Province, or Kingdom of Couco.

It was formerly call'd *Cinnaba*, and tho' a Separate Kingdom, yet being Tributary to *Argier*, the *Turks* reckon it, as a Dependence thereof. The Mountain *Conco*, which has its Name from the Capital, seated near it, is properly call'd *Ezmitu Andalous*, and lies between *Argier* and *Bugia*. The City *Conco* contains 1600 Houses, is naturally very Strong, as being secur'd by steep Rocks, and where those fail, has a good Wall. *Tamazus* is a Sea-Port belonging to the King of *Couco*, but taken from him by the *Argierines*. Here is great Plenty of Fruit, Flax, Honey, Wax, Corn and Cattle, and on the Mountains there are Iron Mines, and Salt-Peter is found. The Inhabitants are all *Mahometans*, except some *Jews*, and a few Christian Merchants. The King's Revenue is val'd at 700000 Ducats, and he maintains himself against the *Turks* by the inaccessibleness of his Mountains, standing always upon his Guard, and rather favouring the *Spaniards* than the *Argierines*. In the Days of the Emperor *Charles* the 5th, the Prince then reigning assisted him with 2000 Men against that City, and when he was gone made Peace with *Argier*, which was not lasting; but tho' the *Spaniards* endeavour'd at other Times to maintain their Intelligence there, it still prov'd of no Effect.

### The Province, or Kingdom of Labez,

Like the last above, is Tributary to *Argier*, being Mountainous, 3 Miles from *Conco* and 10 or 11 from *Bugia*. On the Top of the Hill is a Fort call'd *Calaa*, and at the Foot of it a Town nam'd *Tesli*, with a Citadel, to oppose the *Turks*. Very little Corn, or Fruit grows here, or scarce any thing but Sword Grass. The Natives are much like those of *Couco*: This King is able to bring into the Field 30000 Horse and Foot, but is oblig'd Yearly to send the *Bassa* of *Argier* 400 Horses, and 1000 Goats, in Return for which he has a Turkish Cymitar set with Stones.

### The Province of Tenez

Lies to the Northward of *Couco* and *Labez*, a Maritime Part of the Kingdom of *Argier*, bor-

dering West on *Tremecen*, East on *Argier*, properly so call'd, and reaching on the South Mount *Atlas*. *Tenez*, the Capital City of it, *Marmol* thought to be the *Loquatum*, and by *San* the *Tiposa* of *Ptolemy*, is seated on the flat Top of a Hill, 17 Miles East of *Oran*, and the same Distance West from *Argier*. It has a Castle, formerly the Palace of the Kings, and now of the Governours. *Medina*, or *Mara*, is on the Frontier of *Gerulia* and *Biledulgerid*. The Soil is general Fruitful; the Product of the Country Corn, Cattel, Wax and Honey. The Natives are rude and unpolish'd; but the *Arabs* have something of Bravery and Generosity, and tho' ignorant of Honour of Parts; for if any such happens to con among them, they stop him to decide all Differences among them.

### The Province of Tebessa

Is an Inland Country, bearing the Name of its Capital, formerly call'd *Thabuna*, and seated on the Frontiers next *Biledulgerid*, 32 Miles from the *Mediterranean*. The Walls of it are of Large Square Stones, which gives Occasion to believe was built by the *Romans*; besides, that there are found in it abundance of Antiquities, and particularly, *Latin* Inscriptions on Pillars and other Pieces of Marble. On the Mountain near the Town, there are large Dens, which the People fancy were the Dwellings of Giants, tho' it appears they are only Quarries, whence the Stone was dug to Build the Place. This is reckoned one of the beautifullest Towns in *Africk*, and said to surpass them all in three Things; the Goodness of its Walls, its excellent Trees, and the Multitude of Walnut Trees, which make it look like a Forest on all Sides. However the Air is unwholsom, and the Territory not over fruitful.

### The Province of Humanbar

Being the most Western Maritime Province of this Kingdom, bearing the Name of its Capital bordering on the Province of *Fez*. The City *Humanbar*, or *Humain*, which *Russel* believes to be the *Urbana*, and *Gramaye* the *Siga* of *Ptolemy*, has a little Harbour, and good Walls; its Houses handsome, built of Stone of several Colours, with each a Well of fresh Water. *Tebirrit*, formerly *Thudica*, is at the Foot of a Craggy Mountain, on the Coast of the *Mediterranean*. *Ned-Roma*, that is *New-Rome*, stands in a Plain, three Miles from the Sea, thought to be the *Celama* of *Ptolemy*. Its Walls, Houses, Ruins, and mighty Stones and Pillars of Alabaster found there with *Latin* Inscriptions, plainly show it was the Work of the *Romans*. Here are two Mountains, the one call'd *Tarare*, or *Gualhasu*, very High and Steep; the other *Tubra*. All the Country, both Hills and Plains yield much Cotton, Flax, Fruit and Corn.

### The Province of Haresgol

Is another Maritime Province, so call'd from its Capital, where the Governour resides, standing West from *Humanbar*, and East from *Oran*, at the Mouth of the River *Tescue*, or *Siga*, which walhes it round, except on the South, where is a narrow Passage among the Rocks, was Taken and Plunder'd by Count *Peter* of *Navarre* in 1570, but rebuilt by the *Arabs*, who now possess it, by the



Consent of the *Turks*, by whom the Citadel is garrison'd.

### The Province of Oran

Lies still upon the *Mediterranean*, bounded on the West by that of *Huesga*, and on the East by *Tenez*. The City *Oran*, some say, is the same which *Pliny* calls *Quiza* and *Ptolemy* *Buiza*, or *Uiza*, or according to others, his *Icosium*. Its Situation is opposite to *Carthage* in *Spain*, partly in the Plain, and partly on the ascent of a Hill, with the Sea on one side, and Brooks on the other. It was become a mighty Harbour of Pyrats, who infested the Coasts of *Spain*, which mov'd Cardinal *Ximenez* to undertake the Conquest of it, wherein he Succeeded and releas'd 20000 Christian Captives. Since then it ever continu'd in the Possession of the *Spaniards*, till now about the latter end of the Year 1707, or beginning of 1708, it was after a long Siege retaken by the Infidels.

### The Province of Mostagan

Has been made by the *Turks* of two Sea-Ports, which are *Almazran*, and *Mostagan*, the first of them suppos'd by *Marmol* to be *Ptolemy's* *Portus Decorum*, near the Mouth of the River *Chiles*, two small Leagues from *Oran*. It is wall'd and has a good Castle. *Mostagan*, believ'd to be *Cartena* in *Ptolemy*, is on the *Mediterranean*, 9 Miles from *Oran*, and but two from the River *Chiles* and *Almazran*, containing 1500 Houses, and a stately Mosque, is a good Port, and has a Citadel in the highest Part of it. A League West from *Oran*, over a small Bay, stands *Mazalquivir*, signifying a great Port, likely to be the *Portus Magnus* of *Ptolemy*, for it is reckon'd one of the largest and safest in the World. The *Spaniards* took this Place in the Year 1505. and have maintain'd it till this Day, when it is besieg'd by the Infidels. In this Country is the Mountain *Magarav* running 9 Leagues along the *Mediterranean*, the People on it, tho' Natives, wander about in Tents like the *Arabs*, and pay 12000 Crowns a Year to the *Bassa* of *Algier*.

### The Province of Sargel

Is another of the Maritime Governments, and Disinember'd from that of *Tenez*. Its Capital of the same Name, is thought to be the ancient *Cannico*, built by the *Romans*, on the *Mediterranean*, 9 Miles East of *Tenez*. The Walls are of Square Stone, and there are still to be seen the Remains of a Magnificent Temple erected by the *Romans*. *Besjor*, or *Besjac*, is another *Roman* Town, near the *Mediterranean*, the Walls of it a Mile and half in Compass. Four Miles East of *Sargel* is a Mountain call'd by the *Turks* *Carapula*, by the *Moors* *Gir-gimor*, and by the Christians *Banico*, so high that, from the Top of it, a Ship may be seen 12 Leagues off at Sea. The Country affords Corn, Fruit and Flax. The Inhabitants are ingenious; those of *Sargel* apply themselves to the Silk Manufacture, and those of *Besjor* have a Crois painted on their Hand and Thigh, an ancient Custom remaining among them since the Time of the *Goths*.

### The Province of Algier.

This was one of the four Provinces of the former Kingdom of *Tremecen*, bordering Westward on the Province of *Tenez*, Eastward on that of *Begia*, Southward it reaches to Mount *Atlas*, and

on the North has the *Mediterranean*. The Plains here are inhabited by rich *Arabs*, call'd *Aben Tetix*, and the Mountains by *Bereberes* and *Ar-snares*.

The City of *Algier* was the Capital of *Mauritania*, in the Days of King *Juba*, and its Antiquity is the Cause we cannot decide who was its Founder. Some will have it to be the ancient *Salde*; *Mercator*, and others *Julia Casarea*. The *Mahometan* *Arabs*, who abolish'd all *Roman* Names, gave it that of *Algezir*, that is, the Island, on Account of a small one there is opposite to the Mole. Its Figure is Square, and its Situation is on the Side of a Hill, so that the Houses rise one above another, and by that means every one has a full Prospect of the Sea. The Walls are partly Brick and partly Stone, 12 Foot in Thickness and 30 Foot High, in the Upper-part of the Town, but 40 next the Sea, strengthened with Towers and Bastions, and a large Ditch. The Streets, which ascend, as the Town does, are most of them narrow, to keep out the Sun; except one that runs from East to West, which is wider, and full of Shops of all Sorts of Commodities, and there the Corn, Bread, Fish and Flesh-markets are kept. The Gates that open are Six, some others being wall'd up. The Houses are about 15000, all of Brick and Stone, whitened within and without, but small and only one Story high, the Rooms of them brick'd of several Colours. There are above 100 Fountains to serve the City with Water. Five or six Families live in every House, which has four Galleries above and as many below, and a Court in the Middle. The Rooms next the Street have Windows, but those inwards none, nor are there any Gardens behind the Houses. The *Bassa's* Palace is the noblest Structure in the City. There are Nine other Buildings they call *Casseries*, which are Cazerns, being the Habitations of 600 *Janisaries*. Six Prisons, which they call Baths, serve to keep the Captives they take at Sea. The real Baths amount to 62, and the Mosques to 107. Inns and Lodging Houses there are none, but abundance of Taverns and Cooks Shops, kept by Christian Slaves. The Mole makes all the Harbour there is, defended by a Fort, erected on the Point of the Island opposite to it. Besides this, there are several Forts both within and without the City.

The other Towns are *Teddelez*, formerly *Ad-dima*; *Sefa*, which is the ancient *Tipassus*, and *Col de Mudejares*, built and inhabited by the *Moors* that fled out of *Spain*. The Land here is generally Fruitful, excepting some Barren Mountains, near the Sea. In the Deserts there are Lions, Leopards, Tigers, Wild Boars, Hedgehogs, Buffaloes with long straight Horns, Multitudes of Partridges, and all other Sorts of Wild Fowl. *Gramaye* tells us of a particular Sort of Beast here call'd, a *Gapard*, which they tame, as he says he did some himself, and it serves for Hunting, like a Dog. The Head is like a Cats, the Tail mottled and the hind Legs longer than the fore. Here is another Creature between a Dog and a Fox, whose Breath in a Morning fasting is said to cure Numbness in the Limbs.

The Inhabitants of *Algier* are almost white, strong of Body, and well shap'd, but here are People of all Nations, *Janizaries*, *Turks*, *Moors*, *Andaluzians*, *Jews*, Tawny *Moors* of *Conco* and *Labez*, and *Azuagues*, besides Merchants and Christian Slaves. Without the Towns there are none



none but *Moor*s and *Arabs* living in Tents near the Rivers for the sake of the Water. The Viceroy and great Men let their Beards grow, the common sort wear Whiskers. Their Household-Goods are Pots and Dishes, great wooden Spoons and Trunks, a Mat, a Carpet, a Quilt, and two or three Blankets; yet most of them lie at Night on a Mat, which is their Table-Cloth in the Day. Their Food is Rice, fine Flour made into small grains like Shot, which they call *Cuzzuz*, boild Meat, and Fruit. The Christians that are free wear their own Country Habit, the Slaves a grey Suit and Seaman's Cap. The common sort of *Moor*s over their Shirt have Linen Drawers, and a loose Garment of white Woollen, with a Hood to it; or else a Mantle down to their Knees, which they wrap about them, and is generally black. In Summer they wear two white Shirts. The *Turkish* Men of Quality are more decently clad in Silk, or fine Cloth, their Turbants are curious, and Boots on their Legs. The Womens Apparell differs not much in Make from the Mens, but their Garments are more gay and light, their Smocks reaching down to their Heels; their Hair ty'd behind; and they wear Collars, Bracelets, Rings, Pendants, and Caps on their Heads; and when they go abroad they have a Linen Cloth over their Faces, which they make fast under their Chins, and wrap an upper Robe about them, so that they are not to be known otherwise than by the Slaves that attend them.

The ancient *Algerines* spoke the *Phœnician* and *Latin* under the *Romans*, but the *Arabs* introduc'd their Language, and since the *Turks* theirs. The Native *Moor*s speak the old Language of the Country; but the Christians here and throughout the *Levant* talk *Lingua Franca*, which is a corruption of *Spanish*, *Italian* and *French*.

The Coin here us'd is most foreign, as *Turkish Sultanins* of Gold, worth a Ducat; *Moscovites* of *Fez*, worth two Shillings, *Spanish* Ryals, *French* Crowns, and *Hungarian* Ducats. The Money coin'd here, is *Barbas*, worth half an *Aspre*; *Aspres*, a small square piece of Silver, 15 of them making a *Spanish* Ryal; a *Dobla*, worth above a Crown. At *Tremeten* they coin pieces of Gold call'd *Rubios*, worth 35 *Aspres*; *Meutians*, worth 50; and *Zlans* worth 100.

Some reckon the Revenues of *Algier* at 400000, others at 450000, others at 600000 Ducats, all which goes into the *Bassi's* Pocket, the Grand Signior receiving nothing thence but some young Boys, and other Presents of small Value.

### The Province of Bugia

Lies upon the Coast of the *Mediterranean*, bearing the Name of its Capital, and is East of *Algier*, having been formerly a Kingdom, stretching 50 Miles Southward over the Mountains to *Numidia*, being the Eastern Part of the ancient *Mauritania Caesariensis*, bordering Westward on *Algier*, Eastward on *Gigeri*, Southward on *Biledulgerid*, and wash'd on the North by the *Mediterranean*.

The Town of *Bugia*, about whose former Name Authors vary, is seated near the *Mediterranean*, on the side of a Hill, 17 Miles East of *Algier*. The *Romans* were the Founders of it. The Walls are strong, the Streets handsome, and there are in it many Mosques, Colleges, Monasteries, pub-

lick Inns, Hospitals, a good Market-place, a noble Citadel, the Walls whereof are all full of Letters made in the Plaster, or cut in Wood curiously, that this Ornament is thought to have cost as much as the Fort. *Micile* or *Mesile* is a Town on the Frontiers next *Numidia*. *Stefa*, or *Marmol* call'd *Tetzteza*, and by *Ptolemy*, *Apfa* is 15 Miles South of *Bugia*, in a pleasant Valley the Walls of it of Stones of a wonderful largeness. *Necanz*, formerly *Vaga*, is one of the pleasantest Towns in *Barbary*, towards the Frontiers of *Numidia* wall'd, the Houses but one Story high, with Gardens to them all.

The Soil is poor and bears but little Wheat but good Fruit. The Mountain People are bold, courteous, and much given to Rallery, and they have a Cross painted on their Hands and Cheek ever since the *Giths* were Masters of that Country. Their Wealth consists in Fruit, Cattle, Hempen and Flaxen Cloth. The Money they use is made of pieces of Iron weighing half a Pound and bits of Silver of four Grains.

### The Province of Gigeri

Takes its Name from an open Town and a Castle that commands all the Country. The Town is near the Sea between *Algier* and *Bugia*, and contains 200 Houses. Near it on the top of a Hill stands an old Castle, almost inaccessible. This Province reaches to the Frontiers of *Numidia*, and has within its compass Mount *Auraz* which runs 16 Miles from North to South. *Procopius* mentions this Mountain by the Name of *Aurazia*, and places it ten Miles from *Carthage*. The Land here is poor, bearing only Barley, Flax and Hemp.

### The Province of Constantina

So call'd from its Capital, lies upon the *Mediterranean*, bordering upon *Tunis*. The City of this Name, formerly call'd *Cirta Numidia*, or *Cirta Julia*, was built by *Micipsa*, King of *Numidia*. It is seated on the South side of a high Mountain encompassed on all sides with steep Rocks, and fortified on the North with high Walls of black square Stones, which makes the access very difficult. The Houses in it are about 1000, the Streets handsome, and every Trade has its separate Quarter. On the North side is a Citadel and without the City many ancient Ruins, among which a *Roman* Triumphal Arch. The descent to the River is by Steps cut in the Rocks and opposite to the said River a Vault going down in the same manner, the Roof, Columns and Floor being all of a Piece. Three Stones throw from the City is a hot Spring, and a little further Eastward a cold one, with a Marble Structure, adorn'd with Statues. The People fancy this Structure was a College, and that the Master and Scholars being wicked Men, were converted into Statues.

The Territory of *Constantina* yields thirty for one, and the Mountains want for nothing. The hot Spring above-mention'd breeds abundance of Snails, which the silly Women take for Devils, and believe they give them Fevers, and do other Mischiefs; for prevention whereof they kill a white Pullet, and putting it into a Dish, with a Wax-candle, where some *Marabout*, or pretended Religious Man makes his Advantage of it.



The People on the Mountains are warlike, but civiliz'd; yet often fighting for their Wives, who run from one Hill to another when they grow weary of their Husbands. They are able to bring 40000 Men into the Field.

## The Province of Bona

Is also Maritime, and so call'd from *Bona*, the Capital, formerly *Hippo*, famous for its Bishop *S. Augustin*, built by the *Romans* on steep Rocks, near the *Mediterranean*. The Town is very small, and the Streets narrow. A quarter of a League from it are the Ruins of a Monastery built by *S. Augustin*, and by it a curious Spring which the *Moors* still call by his Name. On the

East side is a Fort, built by the King of *Tunis*, where the Governour resides with 200 *Janisaries*. The Country is fruitful in Corn, shaded with Jujub Trees, the Fruit whereof the Natives dry in Summer to feed on in Winter. There is also great plenty of Cattel, and of all sorts of Fruit. Only a small part of the Mountains is inhabited, by reason of the continual Incurfions and Rapine of the *Arabs*. Six Miles East of *Bona* is a Fort call'd, the Bastion of *France*, kept by the *French*, who have there Magazines of Corn and other Commodities, Apartments for those concern'd, a Chapel, a Burial-place, a Garden, and an Hospital, all kept by a strong Garrison.

## CHAP. VI.

### Of the Kingdom of Tunis.

**T**HIS Kingdom formerly contain'd the Provinces of *Constantina*, *Tunis*, *Tripoli*, and *Essab*, and extended 120 Leagues along the *Mediterranean*, but has now lost them all, and is bounded on the West by the River *Guadilborbar*, separating it from *Constantina*; on the East by the River *Capes*, which parts it from *Tripoli*; on the South it joins to *Numidia*, and on the North is water'd by the *Mediterranean*.

The principal Rivers are *Guadilborbar*, formerly call'd *Tusca*, which rises a little above the Town of *Urbs*, and in its course to the Sea has so many Windings, that those who Travel from *Tunis* to *Bona* are oblig'd to Ford it 25 several times, there being neither Bridge nor Boat on it. The Mouth of it is under *Tabarca*, 7 Miles from *Bagia*. *Magrida*, anciently *Catadus*, seems to be an Arm of *Guadilborbar*, which after watering the Country of *Choros* falls into the Sea near *Marsa*. *Megerada*, or *Magiordecz*, formerly *Bagrada*, where *Atilius Regulus* during the first *Carthaginian* War found a Serpent 120 Foot long, has its Source in the Country of *Zeb*, runs by *Tebessa*, and winds with the Sea near *Garelmeleh*, 10 Miles from *Tunis*. It sometimes o-

verflows to such a degree, that Travellers are oblig'd to wait three or four Days to Ford it. The *Caps* or *Capes*, thought to be the *Triton* of the Ancients, proceeds from a sandy Desert near Mount *Vasalat*, towards the South, and meets the Sea at a Town of the same Name; from which the Bay is so call'd; and by the Ancients *Syrtes*. Near the Town of *Elhamma*, this River makes a Lake call'd, The Lepers Lake, because the Water of it drank, cures such as are troubled with that Disease.

This Kingdom has many fruitful Mountains and Valleys on the South, among which are *Zagaon*, *Gueslet*, *Benitesfren*, and *Nefusus*; the two last seven Miles from *Zerbi* and *Asfacus*. *Zagaon* is six Miles South from *Tunis*; on the top and sides, and at the bottom of it are the Ruins of many Castles built by the *Romans*, with *Latin* Inscriptions cut on Marble Stones. Water was brought from the same Mountain in Aqueducts to *Carthage*. There are also *Roman* Remains on Mount *Gueslet*, which is three Leagues from *Caruan*.

The division of this Kingdom is into eight Provinces, five of them Maritime, and three Inland, which with their Principal Towns, are as follows:

Tunis.	{ Tunis.	Urbs and Beggia.	{ Urbs. Beggia. Hain. Zammin. Casba.
Goletta.	{ Goletta. Marsa. Nebel. Cammart. Ariana.	Susa.	{ Susa. Mahometa. Heractea. Monasterio.
Byferta.	{ Byferta. Porto Farina.	Africa.	{ Africa, or Mehedia.
		Cairoan.	{ Cairoan. Tobulba.

#### The Province and City of Tunis:

This City was known to the *Greeks* and *Romans* by the same Name; and *Livy* places it three Miles from *Carthage*, which shews they are much deceiv'd who make *Tunis* and *Carthage* the same. It is seated near the point of the Gulph

of *Goletta*, two Miles from the *Mediterranean*, is a League in compass, and enclos'd with a Wall 40 Cubits high. All the Outworks about it were destroy'd by the *Turks*. The Gates were five, the great Streets 18, besides abundance of small cross ones; the Markets or Squares 16; 315 Mosques, 12 Christian Chapels in the Suburbs, 8 Synagogues;



Synagogues, 24 Hermitages, 150 Baths, 86 Schools, 9 Colleges, 64 Hospitals, and 300 Woollen and Linen-Drapers; but most of these Structures have been destroy'd. There are now 9 Persons to shut up the Slaves; the Bassa's Palace is a noble Structure, the Citadel is strong, and by it a Mosque, on which there was a Tower, reckon'd the next in all *Africk* to that of *Fez*. The other Structures still remaining, are a Court with Cazernes about it for the *Janizaries*, an Exchange for the Merchants, a Custom-House, the *Aga's* and *Cid Mahomet's* Palace; and for the number of Houses it is inferior to few Cities in *Europe*, but they are small, and only one Story high. There were formerly three Suburbs, at present but two. The Tombs of the *Turks* are about the City, adorn'd with Marble and curious Beds of Flowers about them. Within the City there are neither Wells nor Springs, but only great Cisterns, in which they save the Rain Water, and of late Years an Aqueduct was made by a Bassa to bring some Water.

The Soil of the Kingdom of *Tunis* is generally fruitful towards the West, which is water'd by several Rivers; but very poor Eastward, for want of Water; towards the South it is all Hills and Valleys, yielding good Fruit. About the City the Land is so dry, that it must be water'd, which, with the Incursions of the *Arabs*, makes Corn very dear; yet there are many good Gardens near the Walls, and such Woods of Olive-Trees for a League about, that they have Oil to send abroad, and they make Charcoal of Olive-Wood, having no other. On the Mountains there are great numbers of wild Beasts.

The City is inhabited by *Moors*, *Turks*, *Jews*, and Christian Slaves of all Nations, taken by the Pirates. There is also a sort of Scoundrels, look'd upon as Saints, who go bare-headed, and without Shoes or Stockings, and are maintain'd by the publick. The Scholars, Handicrafts and Traders are decently clad, wearing *Turkish* Turbants, which the Courtiers and Soldiers do not. The Women are neat according to their Quality, and go abroad Veil'd, spending much Money on sweet Scents. The common People feed much on a sort of Composition they call *Besit*, made of Water, Barley Meal, Oil, and Juice of Limons, which they eat raw. They also eat Meat, especially Lamb. They have another Mixture they call *Laisit*, an Ounce whereof makes them extraordinary merry, and creates an Appetite; besides other Inventions to provoke Lust. The People in Mount *Zagaon* live in Tents upon the Front of their Honey; those towards the South have the same Habitations, removing from Place to Place to graze their Cattel.

The Bassa's Revenue is reckon'd worth 200000 Ducats a Year. The greatest Trade here is Oil, Olives, Soap, Ostrich Feathers, and Horses. The *Moorish* Kings of *Tunis* coin'd *Silvanins* of 24 Caracts Weight; there are also square pieces of Silver which they call *Noseras*, as also *Aspers*, *Doubles*, and *Barras*, of the same Value as at *Algier*. As to Government, the *Dey*, who is supreme, is chosen by the *Divan*. The *Divan* is a Council compos'd of the *Aga* of the *Janizaries*, one *Cherif*, 12 *Odabachis*, 24 *Bontombachis*, two Secretaries, and 4 *Cuissas*, who decide all Affairs with the consent of the *Dey*. The *Cadis* are Judges in matters of small Consequence.

After the *Mahometans* had made themselves

Masters of *Barbary*, one *Ibrahim* erected the Kingdom of *Tunis*, whose Successors held it till *Abdal Mumen* King of *Morocco* dispossest'd them, and plac'd a Governour over the Kingdom. Thus it continued for some Generations, till one *Abraham*, or *Abu-Ferez*, who was Governour, revolted, and subduing the Kingdom of *Tiencen*, stild himself Emperour of *Africk* about the Year 1210. From that time the Kingdom descended in the same Line, tho' with many Revolutions, till *Muley Affez* destroy'd all the Royal Family, except his Brother *Arazar*, who fled, and imploring the Assistance of the famous Pirate *Barbarossa*, that false Infidel, instead of restoring him, enthrond himself under the Protection of the *Grand Signior*. *Muley Affez* had recourse to the Emperour *Charles* the 5th, who restor'd him; yet he held it not long, being defeated, and his Eyes put out by his own Son; and not long after *Aluch Hali*, or *Ochiali*, another famous Pirate, conquer'd the Kingdom again for the *Turks*, who kept it till *Don John* of *Austria* drove them thence in 1570, but in 1574 it fell again into the Hands of the Infidels, and has so continued ever since.

#### The Province of Goletta

Adjoins to the Lake of the same Name; it is supposed to be the Island *Galatha*, or *Galitha* of *Ptolemy*, or the *Goulon* of *Pliny*; but others say the Fort was so call'd from the *Italian* *Goletta*, or little Neck, because it is seated on a rising Ground at the Mouth of the Bay, or Lake. The *Mahometans* laid the Foundations, the Emperour *Charles* the 5th finish'd it, and the *Turks* since they were Masters of it have added some Outworks, and many other Structures, so that it is now more like a Town than a Fort.

The other Towns here are *Nebel* or *Nabis*, a small Place built by the *Romans*, which *Ptolemy* calls *Neapolis*, and the *Italians* to this Day *Napoli de Barbaria*, seated on the Ocean, 3 Leagues East of *Tunis*. *Cammart*, near the Rivers of old *Carthage*, wall'd, and populous. *Ariana*, not far from *Tunis*, built by the *Goths*, and so call'd from their Heretick Patriarch *Arius*. *Arrazel*, formerly a *Roman* Colony, rebuilt by the Kings of *Tunis*. *Marsa* in *Arabick* signifying a Port, stands where the ancient Port of *Carthage* was, where there is a curious Palace, and several Houses of Pleasure to which the Bassa's go to divert themselves; 800 Houses, one Mosque and a College. Near this small Town stood the ancient renown'd City of *Carthage*, which contended with *Rome* for the Empire of the World, and after three bloody Wars, fell under the Fortune of that rising City, and was reduc'd to Ashes. Here is still to be seen an Aqueduct which carry'd Water to all parts of the City; this is standing, all the rest are a heap of Ruins.

The Air of this Country is reckon'd wholesome, being cool'd by the Sea, and the Land for the most part producing excellent Fruit, Corn, and Sugar.

#### The Province of Byferta:

*Byferta* at present is but a small Village, near the *Mediterranean*, which some will have to be *Utica*; but *Marmol* and others rather suppose *Utica* stood where now is *Porto Farina*, or *Gal Mellis*.



*Mella*, as the *Bereberes* call it, and the *Turks* *Enflet*, signifying the Son of the Lake, because the Sea coming in there, forms a Bay. This Town contains 6000 Houses, 2 large Prisons, a Magazine, and two Towers that defend the Harbour, and has eight Villages about it. Tho' this Province lies along the Coast, it has no sort of fresh Water, and abundance of excellent Fish is taken in the Lake or Bay; yet the Land yields little, not that it is barren, but because it is destroy'd by the *Arabs*. The Men here are ill Apparell'd, as only wrapping themselves up in a piece of coarse Woollen, with a bit of Linen about their Necks, Turbants on their Heads, and without Shooes or Stockings. Their daintiest Fare is Cakes bak'd with Eggs in them, which they keep the Year about. The common sort lie upon Sheep-skins; the better sort have Beds made fast along the Wall, about the height of a Man, to which they go up with ladders. When they go to War, they wear superstitious Charms about their Necks, which they sanlie will secure them against Danger.

The Provinces of Urbs and Beggia.

These two small Governments contain the Towns of *Urbs*, *Beggia*, *Hain Zammin*, and *Casba*, with some large Plains. *Urbs* was a *Roman* Colony, call'd *Turridis*, about 20 Leagues South of *Tunis*, where there are still Remains of Antiquity, as Marble Statues, and *Latin* Inscriptions. *Beggia* is another *Roman* Foundation, ten Leagues from *Tunis*, and but three from the Sea, most of the Walls yet standing. *Casba*, a *Roman* Colony also, is now Desert. *Hain Zammin* was built by the Kings of *Tunis*, seven Miles from *Beggia*. All the Plains about them abound in Corn. The Inhabitants of *Urbs* are rude; being all Peasants; those of *Beggia* are more polite.

The Province of Sufa, or Soufa.

The Towns here are, first *Sufa*, formerly considerable and thought to be *Adrumetum*, now much decay'd, but has a Port, where the Pirates of *Tunis* ride at Anchor. 2. *Hammameth*, or *Mahometia*, built by the *Mahometans*, on the Coast, 17 Miles from *Tunis*. 3. *Monasterio*, a *Roman* Colony, so called from a Monastery of *Augustinians* which was near it, has high and strong Walls. The Country produces Barley,

Figs and Olives, and has good Pasture Land. The Inhabitants of the Towns are a civil, trading People.

The Province of Mehedia, or Africa.

The Town the *Europeans* call *Africa*, suppos'd to be the *Aphrodisium* of *Ptolemy*, is by the Natives nam'd *Mehedia*, seated on a Neck of Land, wash'd on both sides by the *Mediterranean*; fortify'd with good Walls, Ditches and Towers next the Land, and by banks of Sand to the Sea. The Port is spacious, but the entrance to it extremely narrow. The Gate on the Land-side is very strong, and without it an arch'd Way 70 Foot long, so dark, that it is a Terror to all Strangers.

The Province of Cairoan

Contains the Town of the same Name, and those of *Tobulba* and *Asfachus*, The first of them is 7 Miles from the Sea and 20 from *Tunis*, built by *Ocuba*, General to *Othman*, *Mahomet's* Successor, in the Year 652, and defended with Brick Walls. He there built a stately Mosque, supported by Marble Statues, among which, two are of an inestimable Value, being of a bright sparkling Red, full of curious white Spots, like *Porphyry*. All the Country about it is a sandy barren Desert, without any Water, so that all the Provisions are brought by Sea, from other Maritime Towns. *Tobulba* and *Asfachus* have nothing remarkable. In the Territory of these two last, there are abundance of Olive and other Trees. That which makes *Cairoan* famous is, its being the Seat of *Mahomet's* Vicar; for which Reason all *Arabs* think it so Holy, that those who are bury'd in it can not be Damn'd, as partaking of the Prayers of that Vicar and his Priests; and Great Men, to shew their Respect, take off their Stockings when they enter the Place. They also Build several Chapels there and appoint them Revenues, for which they expect to go straight to Heaven.

Six Miles from *Mascarez*, in this Kingdom, is the Island of *Tabarca*, about 500 Paces from the Continent, possess'd by *French* Merchants, who have built a Fort on it, and keep a Garrison of 200 Men to secure their Trade and the Coral Fishery. Opposite to *Tabarca* is another Island, call'd *Galata*, in which there is nothing remarkable.

C H A P. VII.

Of the Kingdom of TRIPOLI, whereof BARCA is a Dependance.

THIS Kingdom, so nam'd from its Capital, is now govern'd by a *Bassa*, and comprehends the Provinces of *Tripoli*, properly so call'd, *Fessab*, *Mecellata*, *Mefrata*, or *Cyrenaica* and *Barca*, besides some small Islands. Its Extent East and West is from the Island *Zerbi* to *Egypt*,

and from the *Mediterranean* on the North, to the Country of the Blacks on the South. Leaving all other Particulars to be spoken of under the Provinces, the Towns of Note in each of them are these.



Tripoli properly so call'd.	{	Old and New Tripoli.	{	Alcudia.
Eflab.	{	Ras-Axiara.	{	Zimara.
Mecellata.	{	Machres.	{	Zidra.
	{	Elhamma.	{	Favara.
	{	Ziora.	{	Coreno.
	{	Cafarnacur.	{	Berbie.
	{	Ras-Axiara.	{	Bon-Andrea.
	{	Teffusa.	{	Tolomere.
	{	Rafamisar.	{	Trocara.
	{	Lepida.	{	Trabucho.
	{	Brata.	{	Luco.
	{	Mecellata.	{	Mesulomar.
	{	Lard.	{	Salonef.
	{	Cedic.	{	Alberton.
	{	Eufrata.	{	Luguri.
	{	Barca, or Marmarica.	{	Barca.

The Province of **TRIPOLI**, properly so call'd,

On the West is parted from the Kingdom of *Tunis*, by the River *Capes*; Eastward it borders on *Mecellata*; on the North it has the *Mediterranean*, and on the South Mount *Garian*.

The City *Tripoli*, which gives its Name to the Kingdom, is so call'd from those great Rocks, lying at the Mouth of its Harbour, level with the Water, and was first Subject to the *Romans*, then to the Kings of *Morocco*, of *Fez*, and of *Timis*; then the *Genoeses* made themselves Masters of it, and were expell'd by the *Spaniards*. *Barbarossa* took it next, and after him the Emperor *Charles* the 5th, who gave it to the Knights of *Malta*, who kept it till 1551, when *Sinan* and *Dragut*, the *Turkish* Admirals, gain'd it from them; since which Time it has been a sort of Commonwealth like *Timis* and *Algier*, under the Protection of the *Turk*. The old City was destroy'd by *Omar* the Second *Mahometan* Caliph, and is now little inhabited. The New one call'd *Tripoli* in *Barbary*, to distinguish it from the other in *Syria*, is seated not far from the Old, on a Sandy Ground, is not large, but very populous, enclos'd with good Walls, Towers and Ramparts, without a Ditch, and only two Gates; one on the South towards the Land, and the other towards the North, next the Sea. It has no Citadel, but only two Forts on the North and South sides before the Port, which is spacious and good. The Christian Slaves being but few, here is only one Prison to keep them in.

*Cabez*, *Caps*, or *Cipes*, the *Tacape* of the Ancients, stands on a Bay of the same Name, is wall'd and defended by a Fort. *Machres* or *Mahara* is an open Town at the Mouth of *Capes* Bay, but has a Citadel. *Elhamma* was built by the *Romans*, 3 Miles from *Cabez*, wall'd and has still *Latin* Inscriptions on the Gates. *Ziora*, thought to be the Port of *Pisdon*, is very ancient. There is another Place on the same Coast, call'd *Cafarnacur*, thought to be the former *Gichris*.

Two noted Sands render the Access to *Tripoli* difficult, the one opposite to the Province of *Eflab*, the other about the Island *Querqanes*. The Rivers *Cafarnacur*, *Rafamisar*, and *Alagro*, once call'd *Cenises*, descending from Mount *Atlas*, ran through this Province to the Sea. Near *Elhamma* is an excessive hot Spring, convey'd to the Town by an Aqueduct. Some of the Inhabitants drink of it, when it has stood a Day, but it is very Sulphureous. Near the Spring is a Pool, call'd, the *Leper's Lake*, because it Cures that Distemper.

Corn is always dear at *Tripoli*, by reason of the Barrenness of the Soil, which yields nothing but Dates. The Inhabitants of that City are Merchants and Weavers; those of *Cabez* poor Fishermen and Husbandmen; those of *Elhamma* live upon Rapine. The *Bassa's* Revenue amounts to 18000 Ducats a Year. The Pirates here do much harm.

Geographers contest whether the Island *Gerbi* or *Zerbi*, once call'd by the *Arabs* *Gezira*, now *Algibens*, and by the *Spaniards* *Gelves*, be the *Giba*, or the *Egimurus*, or the *Zeta*, or the *Glaucus* of the Ancients. It lies at the Mouth of *Capes*, is 4 Miles about, and has only some small Villages on it, and is so barren that all the Natives Industry will scarce make it bear any Corn. On the Coast next to it grow abundance of *Lotus* Trees, the Fruit whereof is so pleasant when ripe that the *Greeks* said, it made Strangers that eat it forget their Countries; whence the Inhabitants of this Island were call'd *Lotophagites*.

#### The Province of *Eflab*

Commences on the West beyond the Mountain *Garian* and *Benignarid*, and is terminated by a River that parts it from *Mezrata*. We have nothing remarkable to add concerning the Towns it contains, mention'd in the foregoing Table. Mount *Garian*, reckon'd in this Country is extraordinary high and Cold, standing North from Mount *Atlas* 4 Miles South of *Tripoli*, and parted from those of *Benitfren* and *Nefusus* by sundry Desarts, yet contains 130 Villages. *Benignarid* is a Branch of Mount *Atlas*, 4 Miles from *Tripoli*, and has 150 Villages. All this Country produces very little Corn, but plenty of Dates, Olives and Saffron which is Sold at *Grand Cairo*, a third dearer than any other sort. The *Berberes* inhabiting Mount *Garian* are Cowards, and suffer the *Arabs* to trample on them; but those of *Benignarid* defend themselves manfully against those Robbers.

#### The Province of *Mecellata*.

Was by the Ancients call'd *Syrtes*, and by the present *Arabs*, *Cirat el Quivir*, lying along the *Mediterranean*, 8 Miles from *Tripoli* Eastward. The Capital of the same Name, was by *Ptolemy* nam'd *Macomaca* or *Calamacula*. The other Places are inconsiderable. The Land produces plenty of Dates and Olives, and the Inhabitants who can raise 6000 Men, are under the Conduct of a Commander, to defend themselves from the *Arabs*, who are Subject to the *Turk*.



The Province of Mezrata, or Cyrenaica.

*Marmol* supposes this to be the ancient *Cyrenaica*, or *Pentapolis*, which was a Part of *Libya*. It borders Westward on *Mecellata*, Eastward on *Barca*, Northward on the *Mediterranean*, and Southward on *Libya*. *Pentapolis* was but a part of that Province, so call'd from the five Towns, *Cyrene*, *Berenice*, or *Hesperia*, *Apollonia*, *Ptolemais* and *Arjinoe*, or *Tenchira*; now *Coreno*, *Berbic*, or *Bernic*, *Bon-Andrea*, *Tolometa* and *Trocara*. Neither these, nor the other Towns are worth the Readers Information. The Pirates here ravage the Coasts, and the *Arabs* the Inland; yet the People of *Mezrata* are Brave and indifferent wealthy, by their trading with *European* Commodities into the Country of the Blacks, whence, in Exchange, they bring Slaves, Civet and Musk, which yield them good Profit in *Turky*.

The Province, or Desert of Barca or Marmorica.

This Name of *Barca*, seems to be of great Antiquity, for *Virgil* here places the *Barceans*, and *Ptolemy* the *Barcites*; and old Authors placing

the City *Barca* in *Cyrenaica*, does not contradict this Notion, because that Province extended into *Egypt*, and consequently included *Marmarica*. Generally all that Country is call'd *Barca*, and the *Arabs* name it *Sohart*, or *Ceyrat Barca*, the Desert, or the Stormy Way; for in short, it is scarce any thing else but a vast Desert, reaching from the Province of *Mezrata* and Cape *Raxaltin* to the Confines of *Alexandria*, 164 Miles in Length from East to West, and 30 in Breadth from North to South. For Towns here they are inconsiderable and deserve no Description. Almost all the Land is sandy, poor and waste, with very little Water, so that only some small Spots near to Villages yield a little Corn and some Dates, of which little they Exchange some with their Neighbours for Sheep and Camels, having no Forage to breed them. This extreme Poverty obliges the Parents often to send their Children into *Sicily* to get their living. The Men are generally lean and ill look'd, and Want makes them rob on the High-Ways, which obliges the Caravans to take a great Compass to avoid them. When they take any Traveller, they make him drink warm Milk, then shake him, with his Head down, to see if he has swallow'd any Gold.

## CHAP. VIII.

### The Historical Account of BARBARY.

THE History of the several Kingdoms mention'd is so interwoven, that we have thought fit rather to give a short Abstract of it entire, than dismember'd under every Part. The most receiv'd Opinion is, That *Cham*, the Son of *Noah* first peopled *Egypt*, and his Race the rest of *Africk*, but particularly his Son *Phut* first began to inhabit the Eastern Parts of *Barbary*, as is testify'd by *Josephus* and *S. Jerome*, who both tell us the Country was from him call'd *Phut*, and *Ptolemy* also names the River *Phut*, or *Phthuth* in the same Region. Hence they spread themselves farther, and at length all over that Part of the World. However there is no doubt, but that they afterwards receiv'd fresh Colonies by Sea out of *Phœnicia*, of the Race of *Canaan*, for even in *S. Augustin's* Days, as he informs us, the Country People there call'd themselves *Canaanites*. Besides *Procopius* affirms, That there were Marble Pillars near *Tangier*, with this Inscription; *We fly from the Face of the Robber Joshua, the son of Nun*. This, being of the same Extraction, might move *Dido* to fly to this Coast from her Brother *Pygmalion*, and there build the Fortrefs of *Byrsa*, afterwards the mighty City of *Carthage*. Some will have this Place to have been founded long before, and only the Castle added by her; however it was, for we have not room to enter upon that Controversy, these *Canaanites* being a more Politick and Warlike People than the rude *Africans*, and hiring the *Numidian* and *Mauritanian* Soldiers subdu'd their Neighbours first, and by degrees extended their Conquests from the Frontiers of *Egypt*, to the Mouth of the *Streights* along the Shore. Ambition knowing no Bounds, the *Carthaginians* pass'd over into *Spain* and *Sicily*, making themselves Masters of the greatest part of both, till the *Romans*, vying with them for Em-

pire, engag'd in the Quarrel, and after three bloody Wars, the second of which had almost brought *Rome* to Destruction, took *Carthage* and burnt it down to the Ground.

The *Romans* having thus subverted *Carthage*, and brought all its Dominions under their Subjection, rested not there, but extended their Command on all Sides, reducing *Numidia* and its King *Jugurtha*, whose Progenitors had long reign'd there, and afterwards *Juba*, King of *Mauritania*, who had espous'd *Pompey's* Party against *Cæsar*. Thus all this Coast of *Africk*, even to the *Atlantick* Ocean, and all up the Inland as far as the Deserts, became a Part of that mighty Empire, and was divided into the Provinces already mention'd in the proper place. So it continu'd under several Emperors, till Christianity flourishing, this Country became as illustrious as any other for Learning and Piety, as appears by the many Ornaments the Church then receiv'd from it, as particularly the great *S. Augustin*, *Tertullian*, *S. Cyprian*, *Julius Africanus*, *Arnobius*, *Lactantius*, *Victorinus Afer*, *Optatus Milevitanus*, *Victor Uticensis*, *Fulgentius*, *Primasius*, and many others.

This was the flourishing Condition of *Africk*, or *Barbary*, when the *Vandals*, a barbarous Northern Nation, having forc'd their Way through *France*, enter'd *Spain*, with the *Suevians* and *Alans*, and being after 18 Years Possession of the Southern Coast of *Spain*, call'd *Andaluzia*, hard press'd by the *Goths*, upon the Invitation of *Bonifacius* the Emperour's Lieutenant in *Africk*, they pass'd over thither about the Year of *Christ* 427, under their King *Gensericus*, and subdu'd the greater Part of what the *Romans* had there possess'd. These *Vandals* were then *Arians*, and spread their Heresy as wide as their Command, driving thence all the *Orthodox Christians*; and holding the Sovereignty



verignty of all that Tract of Land, under seven Kings successively, till the Year 534, when the renowned *Belisarius*, the Emperour *Justinian's* General, overthrew *Gilimer* the last King, and again brought all that Region under the *Roman* Empire. *Justinian* then made it a Prefecture of it self, whereas before it had been subject to the *Prætorius* of *Italy*, and this form of Government lasted, till

In the Year 647, *Othman* the 3d Caliph of the *Saracens*, sent *Huch*, his General, with a mighty Army, who wrested all that mighty Dominion from the *Roman* Empire, and from that Time it remain'd a Province of the *Mahometan* Arabs. The Caliphs, or *Miramamolin's* held the Sovereignty here till the Year 800, when *Hazoun Raschid*, sent thither *Aglab Ibrahim*, as Governour, but he erected himself a Monarchy, in the Province properly call'd *Africk*, and Parts adjacent, which he left to his Posterity and they held it, by the name of *Aglabites* till 900, their Rule extending from *Egypt* to *Tunis*.

About the same Time with *Aglab*, abovemention'd, the *Edrissites*, descended from *Edris*, of the Race of *Ali*, *Mahomet's* Son-in-Law, erected themselves another Monarchy, in the Western parts of *Barbary*, containing all *Mauritania* and *Numidia*, where that Family rul'd for the space of 100 Years, keeping their Court at *Fez*, *Tangier*, and *Ceuta*.

When the aforesaid two Races had thus divided *Barbary* among them, for above an hundred Years, One *Abou Mohammed Obeidallah*, look'd upon as a Prophet, and pretending to descend from *Fathimah*, *Mahomet's* Daughter, having thus drawn the Multitude to his Side; first expell'd the *Aglabites* the Province of *Africa*, and soon after the *Edrissites* out of all their Dominions, taking the Title of *Mehedi*, signifying Director of the Faithful, and left all those Countries to his Successors, who conquer'd *Egypt*, and being thus possess'd of all that lies between the *Red Sea* and *Atlantick Ocean*, stil'd themselves Caliphs. Of these there were 14 who reign'd till the Year 1163, and were call'd *Fatimites*.

*Adhed*, the last of these, being hard press'd by the Christians, crav'd Aid of *Noureddin*, Sultan of *Bagdat*, who sent *Saladin* with a mighty Army, and he having deliver'd the Country from the *Franks*, took Possession of it for his own Prince, after whose Death he assum'd the Sovereignty, and became one of the most formidable of those *Mahometan* Sovereigns.

However *Saladin* extended not his Kingdom far into *Africk*, for before his Rise the *Almoravides*, who at first only pretended to Religion, being by their Hypocrisy grown formidable, had began to acquire Dominion, and about the Year 1076, when *Joseph Ben Tassefin*, one of that Race extended his Conquests to the Ocean and *Mediterranean*, and built the City of *Morocco*; after which passing over into *Spain*, he subdu'd all the *Moors* there. Yet the Succession continu'd in his Posterity only till the Year 1136, when *Mahomet Abdalmomen* another canting Prophet, having deluded the Mul-

titude, overthrew and expell'd the Race of the *Almoravides*, and rais'd his own Family to the Throne, which possess'd it till the Year 1290.

Then *Bucar Aben Merin* finding that reigning Family much weakned, by the Loss of a mighty Battel in *Spain*, revolted, and bearing down all that oppos'd him, settled the Seat of his Empire at *Fez*, appointing a Viceroy to govern at *Morocco*. His Successors enjoy'd the Sovereignty of the greater Part of *Africk*, by the Name of *Merin*. *Alboscen* the 8th of them, being routed with a great Slaughter in *Spain*, in the Year 1340, was, at his return into *Africk*, depos'd by his own Son *Alboamen*, who enjoy'd not long a Crown so undutifully wrested from his Father, the Eastern Parts of *Barbary* revolting from him, and the *Portugueses* taking many places in the West. Thus the Monarchy being weakned on all Sides went on in a declining Condition, till about the Year 1508, one *Mahomet Ben Hamet*, a fresh Hypocrite, pretending to be descended from *Mahomet*, sent his Sons in Pilgrimage to *Mecca*, which gain'd them such mighty Reputation, that *Mahomet*, then King of *Fez*, made *Hamet* the Elder, Governour of the College at *Amadorach*, and *Mahomet* the Younger, Tutor to his Children. Not long after, these two obtain'd the Command of an Army against the *Portugueses*, whom they routed and took many Places from them. Next they subdu'd the Provinces of *Ducala*, *Suez* and *Hea*, then took *Morocco*, and *Hamet* assum'd the Title of King of it, as *Mahomet* did of *Suez*. The King of *Fez* now dying, *Hamet* refus'd to Acknowledge his Successor, and was himself soon after vanquish'd and expell'd his Kingdom by his own younger Brother *Mahomet*. He after this Success overthrew the King of *Fez*, and left all those Dominions to his Posterity, who still reign there. But it must be observ'd that those Realms, tho' great in themselves, are only a small Part of what the Caliphs there possess'd.

We have already seen how *Algier* separated it self from the Dominion of those mighty Princes, and of an inconsiderable Lamb of their Empire, is become a Potent State, subsisting principally upon Piracy; yet subject to the *Turk*, on whom it has an absolute Dependance, saving that, it has the Power of Peace and War, the Form of Government being Republican; but the *Turkish* Bassa residing there, raises a very great Revenue, and has no small Share in the Government. *Tunis* and *Tripoli* have follow'd the same Example, being both a Sort of Commonwealths, with the same Subordination to the *Grand Seignior*. So that it appears, all this vast Tract of Land call'd *Barbary*, is now divided between that Sultan and the Emperour of *Fez* and *Morocco*, excepting only those few Towns the *Spaniards* and the *Portugueses* still keep along the Coast. The latter have now nothing left but *Mazagan* upon the *Atlantick Ocean*; the former still hold *Mazalquivir*, *Melilla* and *Pemnon* within the *Mediterranean*, and *Ceuta* upon the Mouth of the *Streights*, and thus much may suffice for *Barbary*.



## CHAP. IX.

## OF EGYPT.

**T**HIS is the Fruitfullest, the Richest, the most populous and noblest Kingdom in *Africk*. If we may give any Credit to ancient Historians, here were reckon'd in the days of *Amasis*, who reign'd about the Time of *Nebuchadnezzar* 20000 Towns, but the excessive Number gives us Reason to believe, that the greater Part must have been small Villages; however of later Times here are said to have been 2000 wall'd Towns. The Ancients call'd this Country, the Granary of the World, and it is certain that the Plenty or Scarcity of the *Roman* Empire depended on the good or bad Harvest of *Egypt*; and being thus considerable in all Respects it will deserve a more ample Description than any other Part of *Africk*.

As to the Name of *Egypt*, *Strabo* and *Diodorus Siculus* will have it to be so call'd from *Aegyptus*, the Brother of *Danau*s, who reign'd there 68 Years; yet others derive it from *Aiguphtus*, signifying the Land of *Coptus*, which was once its Capital City. This is the last Name, which has prevail'd, for it had several others before. *Berosus* calls it *Oceania*; *Xenophon*, *Ogygia*; *Herodotus*, *Potamites*; *Lucian* *Melambolos*; *Homier* *Hefestia*; the Holy Scripture *Misraim*, from *Cham*'s Grandson of that Name; the *Arabs* *Mezra*; the *Chaldeans* *Mejray*; the *Syrians* *Misri*; the *Ethiopians* *Gabaz*; the *Turks* *Elkebirs*; and the ancient *Egyptians* themselves *Chamia*, from *Cham* the Son of *Noah*, who first Peopled it; and the Christians of this Country still retain the Name of *Copti*'s, which may very well be a corruption of *Egopthes*, instead of *Egyptians*, the Christians being the true ancient Natives; whereas all the *Mahometans*, now the prevailing Party, are a Mixture of *Arabs*,

*Turks*, *Tartars*, and several other Eastern Nations.

Not to enter upon the various Bounds assign'd to it by ancient Authors, which is only perplexing the Reader, those assign'd to it by Modern Geographers, and the most to be rely'd on are, on the East the Red Sea and *Isthmus* of *Suez*; on the North the *Mediterranean*, on the West *Barbary*, or the Kingdom of *Tripoli* and the Desart of *Barca*, and on the South *Nubia* and *Aethiopia Superior*, or *Abyssinia*; the whole lying between 48 and 55 Degrees of Longitude; and from 23 to 31 of Latitude, being about 600 Miles from North to South, and 400 from East to West, taken both ways in its greatest Extent. It is every where encompass'd with sandy Desarts, except on the North Side next the *Mediterranean*; for on the West and South it has those of *Barca*, *Nubia* and *Ethiopia*, and on the East those of *Thebaida*, formerly so famous for the Multitude of Anchorites, who retir'd to live an Angelical Life, devoting themselves entirely to Contemplation.

*Ptolemy* divides *Egypt* into 40 Districts or Governments, *Herodotus* into 28; and some Authors increase that Number to 44; but the most probable is, that there were 30, because in the famous Labyrinth, or Mysterious Temple of that Kingdom, which was an Emblem of it, there were 30 large Rooms, or Apartments; so the Upper, Middle and Lower *Egypt* had each of them ten, which Division was made by the ancient King *Sesostris*; but afterwards alter'd by other Sovereigns, and therefore it will not need to have more said of it.

The Modern is divided generally into three Parts, as set down with their Principal Towns in the following Table.

The Lower Egypt.	{	<i>Bufris.</i>
		<i>Alexandria.</i>
		<i>Rosetto.</i>
		<i>Damietta.</i>
		<i>Fuoa.</i>
		<i>Mequella.</i>
The Middle Egypt.	{	<i>Mansourz.</i>
		<i>Grand Cairo.</i>
		<i>Suez.</i>
		<i>Fium.</i>

The Upper Egypt.	{	<i>Benisuaif.</i>
		<i>Munta.</i>
		<i>El Fium.</i>
		<i>Azuth.</i>
		<i>Ichium.</i>
		<i>Munfia.</i>
		<i>Thebes.</i>
		<i>Asua.</i>

## The Lower Egypt,

Or *Egypt* properly so call'd, sometimes nam'd *Delta*, because the best Part of it form'd that Greek Letter, being shut in by two Branches of the *Nile* and the *Mediterranean*, which the *Turks* at present call *Errif*. This Province to the Westward Borders on the Desarts of *Barca*, on the North the *Mediterranean* washes it, on the East it has the *Isthmus* of *Suez*, and on the South, the Middle *Egypt*.

This Province is again Subdivided into 5 petty Governments, call'd *Beyhis*, or *Cassilis*, which are *Mansourz*, *Garbia*, *Achenfia*, *Callionbiech* and *Bouhera*, which last, some will not allow to be within the true Bounds of *Egypt*, but in the King-

dom of *Barca*, yet is here joyn'd with the Rest, as being under the same Chief *Bassa*. The first of them lies East of *Delta* and the *Nile*, next the *Isthmus* of *Suez*, containing 197 Villages, and produces abundance of Sugar, Flax and other Growth. *Garbia* is on the East side of the *Nile*, being the Island of *Damietta*, a flat Country, without any Hills, all improv'd, rich in Pasture, Sugar, Rice, Corn and Wine. *Menoufia* is the next to the Westward of *Garbia*, within the *Delta*, and contains but 103 Villages, tho' larger in Extent than the last. *Callionbiech* lies West again of *Mansourz*, comprehending 196 Villages. *Bouhera* still to the Westward, reaches from the *Nile* to Cape *Bon Andrea*, being very large and comprizing 360 Villages. One half of it is so high that the



the Nile cannot overflow it, which is a great disadvantage to the Soil, yet it has good Grazing and abundance of Sheep. Here is the Desert of *S. Macarius*, in which were 363 Hermitages or Monasteries. Several Geographers have divided Egypt otherwise, according to their Fancies, but we here follow the present Partition, according to the *Turks*, who are Masters of it, having spoken of the Ancient in its Place.

On the West stands the ancient Town of *Plinthe*, now call'd, *the Arabs Tower*, and not far from it, on the Sea-Coast is *Bochiri*, formerly *Bufris*, now almost ruin'd, and suppos'd to be so call'd from *Ofris*, who was the *Egyptian Hercules*, tho' others derive it from the Tyrant *Bufris*; but in the Scripture it is nam'd *Phatnes*. Leaving these Places of little Note, the first remarkable City is *Alexandria*, so call'd from *Alexander* the Great, who built it 300 Years before CHRIST. It was once call'd *Ney*, and by the *Hebrews* *Nemmen*; by the *Romans* *Pharos*, *Sebaste*, *Augusta*, *Julia*, *Clandia*, *Domitia* and *Alexandria*; by the Natives formerly *Racotis*, and by the *Turks* at present *Scanderick*, or *Scanderia*, for they change *Alexander* into *Scander*. It is seated at the Mouth of the Nile, call'd *the Canopus*, which there forms a Harbour, tho' none of the Safest, yet much frequented. It is divided into, the Old and the New, both of them being of a very great Compass. The Walls are said to be the same that *Alexander* built, adorn'd with many Towers and Beautiful without; yet within it is rather a Heap of Ruins than a City, there being scarce any entire Street. The Gates are Four, the Houses all flat at top, and built upon Arch'd Vaults, which are fill'd with Water, when the Nile Overflows, and serves them all the Year, there being no other in the City. There are three Hills rais'd of the ancient Ruins, where Medals and other Rarities are often found. On the Sea-shore are the Remains of *Cleopatra's* Palace. 200 Paces from the Town, on a Hill stands *Pompey's* Pillar, all of one Stone, and 125 Foot high, all entire to this Day, with its Capital. This City was once equal to the best in the World, for noble Structures, for Learning, for Religion, and for every Thing that could make it commendable; of all which Perfections, scarce the Shadow remains at this Time.

Opposite to *Alexandria* is the famous Island of *Pharos*, by the Natives call'd *Magras*, and by the *Arabs*, *Magar Alexandri*, or *Alexander's* Light-House. On it stood the renowned Tower of *Pharos*, so Magnificent, that it was reckon'd one of the Seven Wonders of the World, which serv'd for a Light-house to direct Ships in the Night. There is one on the Island at this Time, but nothing Magnificent. There are no Gardens about *Alexandria*, by reason of the Sandiness of the Soil, except some few along the Nile, whose Fruit is not reckon'd wholesome. In this City it was that *Ptolemy Philadelphus* erected his Library, being the greatest in the World, as containing in his days 400000 Volumes, and increas'd by his Successors to 700000, all burnt in the *Roman* Civil Wars.

*Rosetta* is about 30 Miles to the Eastward of *Alexandria*, on another Mouth of the Nile, the *Turks* and *Arabs* call it *Rasbit*, and the Egyptians *Rasbit*; by some taken to be the *Sciadia* of *Strabo*, and by others the *Metolis* of *Ptolemy*. The Extent of it is not large, but the Inhabitants numerous, and the Buildings Stately, tho' it is not wall'd. On the Banks of Nile, are very Magnificent Palaces, and a sumptuous Mosque.

Eastward still on a Bay, which forms a Haven stands the City *Damietta*, or the *Pelufium* of the Ancients, seated in a Plain, two Leagues from the Sea, and between two Branches of the Nile, which make it an Island, and all the Land so fertile, that it is full of Cassia, Limon-Trees, Vines, &c. This City fell under the Thralldom of the *Saracens* with the Rest of Egypt, and continu'd in their Hands till the Year 1218, when it was wrested from them by the Christians; who lost it again in 1221, the Infidels having let out the Waters about them, by which they were reduc'd to Extremity. *Lewis* the 9th, King of France, regain'd it, after being taken Prisoner by the Sultan, was oblig'd again to restore it for his Ransom; when it was destroy'd by the *Saracens*. It is now the Seat of an Archbishop, under the Patriarch of *Alexandria*, and a populous City resorted to by all Nations trading into those Parts.

Higher up the Country, but still within the Delta, is *Fuoa*, formerly *Nile*, very populous, but the Streets narrow. Its Suburb is the Place of Diversion for the handsom Women, who are allow'd to spend the Day there and go home when they think fit at Night, without being blam'd by their Husbands. A League from *Fuoa* in the Nile is the Island *Gezirat Addebeb*, formerly *Machos*, or the Golden Island, full of Villages and stately Palaces, scarce to be seen from without, by reason of the Thickness of the Trees. Nearer towards *Grand Cairo*, is the Town of *Masrassa*, ill Fortify'd; but very Populous. *Masrassa* is the Capital of the Government of the same Name, lying on the East Side of Nile, but has nothing remarkable, nor any other in it, and therefore we will proceed to

### The Middle Egypt.

Which on the West Borders on the Deserts of *Barca*, Northward, on the Lower Egypt, Southward on the Upper, and Eastward on the Red Sea. This Province was formerly call'd *Heptanomos*, from the Seven *Nomis*, or small Prefecture it contain'd, and at present *Becharia* and *Denejor*.

*Grand Cairo*, generally supposed to be the ancient *Memphis*, and by some taken for *Babylon* in Egypt, is the Capital of this Kingdom, divided into the New and the Old. The Name of *Cairo*, *Marmol* says, comes from the *Arabick*, *el Cai*, *bra*, the Assembly or Monastery; and not only he, but *Leo Africanus* and others agree, that it was built by *Gegoar el Quereb* under the *Caliphs*, whence it will follow that *Memphis* stood not in the same place. The Name of *Memphis* is deriv'd from the *Egyptian* Word *Monphsa*, signifying the Water of the Lord, because of the Nile: it was built according to *Herodotus* by *Menes*, the first King of Egypt. Its situation is most convenient, as being near the Place where the Nile divides it self into several Branches. On the one side it is fortify'd by high and strong Banks to defend it against the River as well as Enemies, and on the other by a mighty Lake, fill'd with the overflowing of the Nile. The old Town is on the East side of the River, being now no better than a poor Village, inhabited by a few *Copri* Christians, and *Armenians*. There are still several Churches, and among them, those of *S. Barbara*, of *S. Joris*, and another rais'd on the Ruins of a little House, where they say our Saviour liv'd when he fled into



into Egypt. Besides this, there are three large Suburbs to the City, in each of which are reckon'd 2 or 3000 Houses, and abundance of Mosques and Palaces. About the Circumference of *Cairo* there is much Difference among Travelers, some allowing it 22 Miles, others extending it to 30. To verify this great Extent, they lay here are 24000 Quarters, or Wards, and the whole number of the Inhabitants amounts to 700000, whereof 160000 are Jews. In the Year 1618, 700000 Persons died here of the Plague, and when that scourge sweeps away but 2 or 300000, they are never miss'd. The number of Mosques is 24000, but some of them not above 10 Foot square. The Hospitals are also very numerous, one of which has a Revenue of 100000 Crowns, in which all sorts of Persons whatsoever are receiv'd, and carefully look'd to. The great Streets are 18000, all of them shut up with Gates every Night, to prevent Disorders. They are all narrow, and People ride about them on Asses. The Citadel, which commands the Place, is built on a Rock, round, and so large that it looks like a Town, with abundance of Towns about the Walls. The beautiful Rooms and Apartments are tokens of the Magnificence of the *Mumaluck* Sultans, who reign'd in Egypt before the *Turks* conquer'd it. The Doors and Windows are inlaid with Mother of Pearl, Ebony, Chrystal, and Coral, and the Intervals between them curiously painted. The Water from the *Nile* is convey'd to it by an Aqueduct on 35 Arches. From this City there set out every Year between 15 and 20000 Pilgrims for *Meca*; they are defended against the *Arabs* by a Guard of 300 Men, and live with them from 6 to 9000 Camels. The Grand Signior allows every Year 600000 Ducats towards their support, which is near the fourth part of the Revenue of Egypt. Some make a distinct Town of *Bulak*, but they are join'd by a long Street, and it is the reckoning of this and other such outlets as all one City, which make *Cairo* so large as has been here describ'd.

Scarce any Country is more fertile than the Territory of *Cairo* for all sorts of Fruits and Plants. Betwixt a Canal and a little Lake at a good distance from *Cairo*, is the Village of *Mutina*, thought to be the ancient *Hermopolis*, and by the consent of all Authors, the Place where our Saviour, the Blessed Virgin, and *S. Joseph* resided in Egypt. There is still an old Wall, with a small Window in it, where the Christians have an Altar, and say Mass. Near this Village and the Ruins of the ancient *Heliopolis* stands an Obelisk in the midst of a large Basin, with many Hieroglyphicks cut on it, but by whom erected does not appear. About 250 Paces from *Mutina* are the aforesaid Ruins of *Heliopolis*, so call'd from a Looking-Glass plac'd in the Temple of the Sun, that it receiv'd and reflected its rays all the Day. This Place is now entirely smother'd, so that there are now only some remains of Antiquity.

The so much admir'd Pyramids of Egypt standing but 4 Miles West from *Cairo*, this will be no proper Place to speak of them, and what we may shall be out of *Graves*, who has writ them Learnedly, and with greater exactness than any other. The greatest and most remarkable of them are three standing near to one another on the same Plain. The first and largest of

these, he agrees with *Herodotus* and *Diodorus* to have been built by *Cheops*, or *Chemmis*, who began his Reign about 1266 Years before CHRIST; the second by *Cephren*, or *Chabryis*, Successor to *Cheops*; and the third by *Mycerinus*, who reign'd next to *Cephren*. And the end of building them he suppos'd to be for Sepulchres. The first of them, he says as an Eye-Witness, is seated on the top of a rocky Hill, which rises an hundred Foot above the plain level of Egypt. Each side is 693 Feet in length, and the perpendicular Height 499 Feet. Then computing the Area of the Basis by our Measure he finds it to contain 480249 square Feet, or eleven English Acres of Ground, and 1089 of 43560 parts of an Acre. The ascent to the top of it, is by Degrees each four Foot in height, and retiring inward near three Feet, and thus running about the Pyramid, the top ends not in a Point, but a flat Square 13 Feet and 280 of 1000 parts of a Foot over. On the North side of it, 38 Feet from the Ground, is a square and narrow Passage leading into the Body of the Pyramid, and goes down Hill, the breadth of it little more than 3 Feet, the length 92 Feet and a half. At the end hereof is a larger Place, but not regular, varying in Breadth and Height. On the Left-hand, climbing up a steep and massy Stone 8 or 9 Foot high, is the entrance into the first Gallery; the breadth of it almost 5 Feet, the height the same, and the length 110. At the end of it begins the second Gallery, a piece of exquisite Workmanship. By this Gallery is a Well, now 20 Feet in depth, but suppos'd to be near fill'd up. Going forward from the Well, there is another square Passage 110 Feet in length, which leads into a little Chamber, less than 20 Foot long and 17 broad. Within the second Gallery, there are several small Rooms and a large one, extraordinary beautiful, in which is the Tomb or Monument of *Cheops*, of one piece of Marble within, hollow and uncover'd. Having thus far describ'd this Pyramid, the Reader who desires farther Satisfaction, is referr'd to *Greaves*, and having said so much of it, we shall add no more of the others, but that they are like it in all respects, only much inferior in Magnitude.

Not far from these Pyramids is a monstrous Figure, of a wonderful bulk, commonly call'd, the *Sphinx*, the Head of it like a Man, and the Body of a Lion, but now buried in the Sand up to the Shoulders, *Pliny* says, the Head is 43 Foot long. The work of it is curious, but how that mighty Mass was brought thither, or to what end, does not appear.

All about *Cairo* there are abundance of subterraneous Caves, made to preserve dead Bodies from Corruption and all other Accidents, these reach'd every way for a vast extent, and were like a Labyrinth, having Communication from one to another. The way into these Caves is down a narrow Well 17 or 18 Foot deep. These lead into those Caves or Rooms, where there are Marble Tables, on which the Coffins were laid. The Bodies found here are those we call *Mummies*, being human Carcasses buried many Ages, yet entire, and only dried up, the word *Mummy* in the *Persian* Tongue signifying a Body dried up, and incorruptible; and these *Mummies* are not Bodies dried up by the heat of the Sun in the Sand, but embalm'd and preserv'd by Art.



Having said thus much of *Cairo*, and the Curiousities about it, let us next come to *Suez*, which *Isidore* calls, *The City of Heroes*, seated at the top of the Red Sea, and a considerable Port on it, where the *Grand Signior* has an *Arsenal*, and whither many Merchants resort from *India* with all the Commodities that Country affords. All about it is nothing but a sandy Desert, without any green, or living Creature, so that all Provisions are brought from far, and even the Water from two Leagues distance. It contains not above 200 Houses, and the Port is small and shoal. The Town of *Fuin* lies South of *Cairo*, on an Eminence, not far from the *Nile*.

### The Upper Egypt,

Formerly call'd *Thebais*, or *Thebaida*, from its once renown'd Capital City *Thebes*, and now *Said*, is wash'd all along its East side by the Red Sea, the North joins to the Middle *Egypt*, the West reaches to the Deserts of *Barca*, and the South is parted by high Mountains, *Nubia*, and the Coast of *Abex*.

This large Province is divided into *Said*, properly so call'd, which is the Inland, and the Coast of the Red Sea, a ridge of Hills running in length between these two Parts. But the more particular Partition, like the others, is divided into six *Beylies*, or *Cassilis*, which are those of *Ben*, or *Ebensuef*, the most Northern Inland; then *Manselout*; and *Girgia* on the Left-hand of the *Nile*; *Cherkeff* and *Minia* on the Right; and *Ceffir*, which is the Sea Coast.

The first Town entring this Province on the West side of the *Nile* is *Benisjuaj*, or *Ebensuef*, remarkable for little else but that it gives Name to that small Government. The next is *Minia*, seated on a high Ground near the *Nile*, built by *Caliphs*. Formerly there were stately *Egyptian* Churches, whereof only the Ruins are now to be seen. *El Hium*, different from that in the middle *Egypt*, and formerly call'd *Abydus*, stands upon another Hill near the River. Here they say the Body of the Patriarch *Joseph* was buried before the *Israelites* departed out of *Egypt*. *Azath*, once call'd *Rubastes*, was beautiful, and adorn'd with sumptuous Buildings, now a heap of Ruins, inhabited by about 100 Christian Families who have three or four Churches, all the remains of what it was. Without it, is a Monastery, the Monks whereof feed on nothing but Herbs, Bread, and Olives, yet they have a considerable Revenue, and entertain all the Poor that come to it for three Days.

*Thebes*, now *Said*, was the ancientest and most renown'd of all the Cities in *Egypt*, seated on the West side of the *Nile*, but is now nothing of what it has been. *Strabo* calls it *Diotpolis*, or the City of *Joor*, because he was worshipp'd there; *Homer* and *Scythianus* *Hecatompolis*, or the City of an hundred Gates, for it is reported to have had so many; *Diodorus* names it *Busiris*, the *Ethiopians* *Sirims*, the *Arabs* *Ajna*, and *Saia*. It was the Residence of Kings, who remov'd thence to *Alexandria*, to *Memphis*, and to *Cairo*, and gave its Name to this Province of *Thebais*, so famous for being the Retreat of so many Thousands of holy Anchorites. *Strabo* informs us, that this City was 80 Furlongs in length before destroy'd by *Cumyses* King of *Persia*, and that in his Days the remains of many magnificent Structures were

still to be seen, and among them a mighty *Colossus* all of one Stone entire, besides about 40 Tomb of Kings in subterranean Caves, and many Pyramids and Obelisks.

*Asiut*, or *Sitima*, seated in the Southern part of *Egypt*, still on the West side of *Nile*, has its Name chang'd by the *Arabs*, because *Sient* in their Language signifies Deform'd, and therefore they call'd it *Asiut*, that is, Beautiful. Thoroughly destroy'd by the *Romans*, it was rebuilt by the *Mahometans*. The Inhabitants are rich, as having a considerable Trade into *Nubia*, up the *Nile*, and by Land. The *Ethiopians* call it *Civera*; it has still a great Compass, many stately Buildings, and old *Egyptian* and *Roman* Inscriptions. The *Nile* is Navigable to this Place but a little beyond it, Goods must be carried by Land till past the Cataracts. On the East side of the *Nile*, near this border of *Egypt*, stand the Town of *Affuan*. Next is *Minio*, a good Town returning to the Northward, on the same side of the River, then *Ichnina* and *Almona*, not to mention other Places of less Note. In this Part, which lies next the Sea there are very few Towns, by reason the Soil is most a deep Sand and barren. On the Shore the only Places are *Grodol*, *Azirut*, *Hebelezeit*, *Suguan*, *Dacati*, *Fate Ceffir*, *San*, and *Zibid*, all of them poor and inconsiderable, and consequently deserving no particular Description.

To return to *Egypt* in general, it is most certain that all the boasted Fertility of the Country is owing to the *Nile*, and the Slime and Mud that River leaves behind when it overflows, which fattens the Ground, and produce all that grows; for the Land of it self is naturally so sandy, that no Watering or Rain would make it fruitful; and therefore the People are forced to draw Trenches from the River to feed all their Gardens, and sometimes the overflowing leaves so much of that slime in certain Places, that the Peasants are fain to qualify it with Sand. Formerly this Kingdom furnish'd *Rome*, and several other Parts and now it still supplies *Arabia deserta*, *Palestine*, *Syria*, *Constantinople*, and some Provinces of *Europe* with Corn, Sugar, Cassia, Sena, several sorts of Gums, and other Commodities. *Delta* was always the fruit fullest part of all the Country, as being water'd by several Branches of the *Nile*; and beyond *Cairo* towards *Nubia*, the Ground is generally good for little, except within three or four Miles of the *Nile*, all the rest being deep Sand, unless some Places which have cuts from the River. Even in the *Delta* all about *Alexandria*, and next the Red Sea on the one side, and the Kingdom of *Barca* on the other, there are vast Deserts. The strange Plants growing here, not common in *Europe*, are the *Datura*, *Colocasia*, *Sebeste*, *Cassia*, *Elhame*, *Lablab*, *Melichia*, *Seiban*, *Sofera*, *Abusi*, *Sempfen*, *Berd*, *Chate*, *Abdelavi*, *Batechia*, *Nejemi-el Jalib*, *Tamind*, *Palm-Tree*, *Macez*, *Sant*, &c.

There is no less variety of Animals, as Bulls, Camels, Sheep with great Tails as big as one of their Quarters, *Gazates*, between a Goat and a Deer, a sort of Monkeys, call'd *Cynocephales*, or Dogs Heads, *Chamaeleons*, *Ichnemons*, call'd *Egyptian* Rats; *Ibis*, Birds like Cranes, &c. and for the Water, Crocodils and Sea-Horses.

The Air is naturally excessive hot, by reason of its nearness to the Torrid Zone, and the farther



Southward of consequence the worse. But in Winter the Weather is very uncertain, sometimes hot and sometimes cold. The Spring there begins in *January*, and ends with *February*, which is the most Temperate Season. The Summer begins in *March*, and ends in *August* excessively hot. Autumn lasts *September* and *October*; and Winter *November* and *December*.

The Diseases here are very numerous, as malignant Fevers, Small-Pox, Scurvy, Leprosy, Ruptures, Gout, Weakness in the Nerves, Stone, and the greatest of all, the Plague.

All Degrees use Bathing to excess; and the Women Oil and perfume themselves. Tho' they eat three or four times a Day, yet it is less than the *Europeans*, and their Diet is light, consisting most of Mutton, Fowls, Rice, Lentiles, Pease, Kidney-Beans, Turnips, Cabbage, Cucumbers, Grapes, Melons, and all sorts of Fruit. The poorer sort are satisfied with Beef, and sometimes Camels Flesh. As for Fish, it is little regarded, unless two or three sorts taken in the *Nile*. Their Drink is the Water of the same River; only the Christians, *Jews*, and some *Turks* drink Wine, which they have from *Candia*, *Rhodes*, and *Cyprus*; they also drink much Coffee and Sherbet.

The *Egyptians* go decently Apparell'd, they wear very fine Calico Shirts, and over them long Robes of fine Cloth, or Silk, narrow above, and wide below, with strait Sleeves. On their Heads they have a Turbant, the Christians Red or Blue, the *Jews* Yellow, and the *Mahometans* White, except *Mahomet's* Race, who alone may wear Green. On their Feet they have rather Slippers than Shooes. Women of Quality are generally clad in white, and veil'd; their Slippers are high heel'd. The *Turks* dress their Heads after their own Country Fashion. The *Egyptians* wear a wreath of Silk half a Foot high, ending in a Point, with some Jewels before it; as also rich Collars, Bracelets, Rings, and such Ornaments on their Legs. Next their Body they have a silk Smock curiously wrought, and over it a Robe of several Colours, button'd down before.

The *Turks* here have all Employments, Civil and Military; the Native *Egyptians* follow Husbandry; the *Arabs* live upon Rapine; the *Ethiopians*, Blacks and *Jews* upon Trade, as do the Inhabitants of *Cairo*, and many Christians settled among them. The Languages here are various, the ancient *Coptick* or *Egyptian* being only known to the Clergy and more Learned, the other *Egyptians* speak *Arabick* and *Ethiopick*, the *Turks* their own Language, the *Jews* *Spanish*, *Italian*, *Greek* and *Arabick*, and most Men *Latin*.

#### Historical Account of Egypt.

*Egypt* is certainly one of the ancientest Kingdoms in the World, and had not their Histories been corrupted with multitudes of Fables, perhaps none would have outdone them. Not to meddle with the Controversies handled by many Authors and decided by none, it is generally agreed that *Cham*, the Son of *Noah*, first inhabited *Egypt* after the confusion of Languages at *Babel*. His Son *Mizraim* is the first upon the List of the Kings, *Cham* being reckon'd the same as *Jupiter Hammon*, and *Mizraim* the same as *Osiris*,

the great God of the *Egyptians*. From him descended that Race of Monarchs, known by the Title of *Pharaohs* in general, tho' they had all particular Names of their own. The whole succession of these Princes is too long and uncertain to be inserted by us; but *Orus* the 12th of them, and 2d of the Name is supposed to be the *Besiris* of the *Grecians*, and the cruel Tyrant who commanded the Male Children of the *Israelites* to be destroy'd. *Cenchres*, the 16th in Order, thought to be the *Pharaoh* drown'd in the Red Sea. *Psummiticus*, the 2d of the Name, 63d King in descent, after a Reign of six Months only, was overthrown by *Cambyfes*, the 2d *Persian* Monarch, and thus *Egypt* was annex'd to his Empire, under which it continued till the Reign of *Darius*, 6th Emperour of the *Medes* and *Persians*, in whose 2d Year the *Egyptians* revolted, and *Amyrteus* was their first King. Seven others succeeded him, *Nectanebus* the 2d of the Name, being the last of them, in whose Days *Egypt* was again subdued by *Ochus* the 8th Emperour of *Persia*, to which Empire it remain'd subject, till *Alexander* the Great vanquishing *Darius*, made himself also Master of *Egypt*. *Alexander* dying, and his Conquests being divided among his Generals, this Kingdom fell to the Lot of

*Ptolemy*, the Son of *Lagus*, who reign'd 40 Years, and left the Crown to his Posterity, all of them from him call'd *Ptolemys*, as the first Race had been nam'd *Pharaohs*. His Son and Successor *Ptolemy Philadelphus*, erected the wonderful Library at *Alexandria*, and caused the 72 Interpreters to Translate the Bible. The *Ptolemys* were in all Ten, and *Cleopatra*, the Wife and Sister of the last of them reign'd alone after him, having the Crown bestow'd upon her by *Julius Caesar*. Being Witty, Beautiful, and excessive Lewd, the great *Mark Anthony* became so desperately in Love with her, that it prov'd the ruin of them both, he being overthrown by *Augustus*, and she killing herself to avoid being led in Triumph through *Rome*.

In her ended the Race of the *Ptolemys*. *Egypt* was made a Province of the *Roman* Empire, and so continued till the Days of *Heraclius* the Emperor of *Constantinople*, when the Avarice of the *Greeks* provok'd the *Egyptians* to shake off the Yoke of the Eastern Emperours, and submit themselves to the *Arabs*, and thus fell under the Rule of *Omar*, the 2d Caliph, about the Year of *CHRIST* 640. His Successors held it till *Abou Mahommed Obeidallah*, who pretended to be a Prophet, and descended from *Fathemah*, *Mahomet's* Daughter, subdued all the *Mediterranean* Coast of *Africk*, and his Successor *Obeidallah* conquering *Egypt* took upon him the Title of Caliph, which descended in his Posterity to the 13th Generation, when *Abbed*, the last of them finding himself press'd by the Christians, crav'd Aid of *Noureddin* Prince of *Aleppo*, who sent *Salaheddin*, or as we call him *Saladin*, with a potent Army to his Assistance. He, instead of supporting, oppress'd *Abbed*, after whose Death he kept possession of *Egypt*, for his Master; and he also dying, set himself up absolute Sovereign about the Year of *CHRIST* 1174. His Son succeeding him, and thus the Crown descended in that Race to *Elmutan* the 7th, who, as his Father had been, was also murder'd by the *Mamlucks* of his Guards, who erected a Kingdom for themselves.



*Mameluck*, in the *Arabick* signifies a Slave, and these People so call'd were *Circassian* Slaves, bought up by the *Egyptian* Kings, and train'd up in all martial Discipline for their Guards, by reason the *Egyptians* were an effeminate People, wholly unfit for War. No Jew or *Mahometan* could be admitted into these Troops, nor any but the Sons of Christians, of which the Kings had purchas'd so great a Number, that the Garrisons throughout the Kingdom were in their Hands, and there were no other Forces to draw into the Field. These Men having thus got all the Force of the Kingdom into their own Hands, first murder'd *Muek al Saleh*, and then *Touman-Bah* his Son, the two last of *Suladin's* Race. This done, they made choice of *Ibeck*, a *Turk*, whom they plac'd on the Throne, and thus he became the first King of the *Mameluck* Race. These Princes call'd themselves *Sultans*, and held the Sovereignty of *Egypt* for the space of 275 Years, that is, from 1250 till 1525. *Touman Bah*, commonly call'd *Tomambeius* by *Europeans*, the 2d of this Name, was the last of the *Mameluck* Sultans, and reign'd but three Years, at the end whereof *Selim* the first, Emperor of the *Turks*, attack'd and routed him, and he flying, was betray'd into his Enemies Hands by a Prince of the *Arabs*. *Selim* after ten Days hang'd him at one of the Gates of *Cairo*, and so ended the Race of the *Mamelucks*, rais'd from Slaves to be the Terror of all the East, and now again at once sunk to their primitive Nothing.

Ever since *Selim* conquer'd *Egypt*, as has been said, it has been govern'd by *Baj's*, who have also the Title of *Beglerbegs*, that is, Lord of Lords, as being chief over many other inferior Governours. The time of their Rule is generally three Years, unless upon any Complaint or Offence taken they be remov'd sooner, which happens very often. The Officers under the *Baj's* are many, as the *Tihnia*, who is as it were a Deputy, the *Cidilejchir*, President of the Council, several *Suziacks* and others. The *Divan* is the Council, which has the direction of all things, but generally so subordinate to the *Baj's*, that it is nothing but a Name. The Christians residing among them as Merchants are generally try'd by their own Consuls in all private Differences.

After this succinct Account of the Temporal

State, it will not be ungrateful to the Reader add a Word concerning the Ecclesiastical. The ancient *Egyptians* were the most superstitious Nation in the Universe. They gave divine Honour to several of their ancient Princes, as to *Hammon*, or *Cham*, to *Osiris*, or *Mizraim*, to *Isis*, *Orus*, to *Tiphon*, and to many more; besides they worshipp'd the Sun, Moon, and Stars. Not satisfied, they ador'd Dogs, Cats, Snakes, Calves, Crocodils, and a thousand filthy Creatures which did not yet terminate their Folly, for they extended the same Worship to things inanimate as Leeks, Onions, Garlick, &c. One of the principal Deities was a black Bull, which they offer'd Sacrifice to, under the Name of *Apis*, and no doubt from them the *Israelites* learnt to be fond of Calves. When Christianity began to spread it self abroad, the *Egyptians* embrac'd it as soon, and cultivated it as much as any other Nation, and there it flourish'd in great Splendour for some Ages, and this not only in Town and the cultivated Country, but even in the wildest Deserts, which were the Habitations of many thousand Anchorites, and there are said to have been not only Monasteries, but whole Towns of Religious Persons. This lasted as long as they continued subject to the *Roman* Empire, and till as has been said, they call'd in the *Saracens*, who by degrees almost extirpated the Christian Religion to introduce the *Mahometan*, which prevails to this Day. There are now several sorts of Christians, which, not to mention the *Europians*, who only reside there for Trade, may be reckon'd under these Heads of *Copties*, *Nestorian*, *Alaronites*, *Georgians*, *Jacobites*, *Armenians*, and *Syrians*, who all live dispers'd about the Country in several Towns, Villages, and Monasteries using several Ceremonies. They all acknowledge the Patriarch of *Alexandria*, whom they call *Papa*. The *Copties*, who are the most numerous and native *Egyptians*, in their Divine Service use the Liturgies of *S. Peter*, and *S. Mark*, *S. Basil*, *S. Gregory*, and *S. Syril*, written in their ancient Tongue, and the Epistles and Gospels are still read in *Coptick* and *Arabick*. These People are generally very ignorant, but firm in their Religion, and if they know enough to Salvation they need no greater Wisdom.

## CHAP. X.

### Of Biledulgerid, or Numidia in general.

THIS was formerly one of the seven principal Provinces into which *Africk* was divided, at present it makes one of 12. The Name of *Biledulgerid* is a corruption from *Beled el Gered*, signifying the Country of *Dates*, because it produced more than any other. It extends from *Egypt* in the East to the Ocean on the West, and is divided from *Barbary* by Mount *Atlas* on the North, and by other Mountains and Deserts from *Libya*, or *Szara*, or the Desert on the South. The length of it about 2500 Miles from East to West, the greatest breadth not 200 in the widest Place, and much less in others.

The principal Rivers here are the *Darba*,

which rising in Mount *Atlas*, and giving its Name to the Province it runs through, loses it self in a Lake, coming like the other from Mount *Atlas*, and after watering a great Tract of *Sereimessa*, falls into another Lake. The *Ghir* has likewise its Scource on the same Mountain, runs across thick Woods and Forests, and ends in a Lake in the midst of one of them. *Rio Blanco* or the White River, comes from a Mountain in the Province of *Tesser*, and spreading it self in to several Branches, runs into the Ocean at a many Mouths. *Buzedor* lies Northward of the last, and runs the same Western Course into the Ocean. *Rio Seco*, or the Dry River, so call'd because it dries up in Winter, is still Northward



ward and runs West to the Ocean, betwixt Cape *Rnador*, and the Town of *Nun*. *Lebich* rises also Eastward on the Mountains, and meets the Ocean near *Albena*, after taking in the *Teccutin*. *Himissin* descends from the Mountains of *Sus*, and is lost near *Ansulim*. *Farcala* flows from the Mountains on the North, and running through the Province of the same Name, glides into a Lake in the Kingdom of *Taflet*. The Hot River, so call'd from the Nature of its Water, has its Origin in Mount *Atlas*, and after crossing the Plains of *Biledulgerid*, forms a Lake in the midst of a Desert.

The Soil of *Biledulgerid* is hot, dry and sandy, and therefore bears little Corn, which Want is in some Measure made up by the abundance of Dates it yields; the Country People being better satisfy'd with a plentiful Crop of Dates, than the best Harvest of Wheat, in regard; that tho' the Year be never so kind, this can never maintain them Six Months, besides that their Neighbours bring them Corn enough, in Exchange for their Dates. They sow in *October*, and reap in *April*.

Ostriches, Camels and Goats are here plentiful enough, and some Horses there are; but a prodigious number of Snakes and Scorpions, which are very Mischievous. Besides this Mischief, the East Wind is here so violent, that it often buries Travellers in Sand, and the Natives Eyes are much offended by it. Another Inconveniency is, that they are apt to have their Teeth drop out even in their Youth, in all other Respects they are healthful, and often live to a great Age, the Plague be-

ing never heard of here in many Ages, and the Children always free from the Small Pox. They are a wicked People, Lewd, Treacherous, Robbers, &c. Their common Food is the Flesh of Ostriches, or Camels, and their Drink Camels Milk and Broth, for they seldom drink Water. Some of them are so nasty, that they never wash themselves. The *Arabs* of *Numidia* are lean and shrivell'd, brown of Complexion and a hideous Aspect, and great Lovers of Ostrich hunting. The better Sort are attended by Blacks, and the rest by their Wives, who look to their Horses. Some of them send their Children to School, and the greatest Proficients become *Cadis* or *Marabouts*, that is, Judges, or Priests. Others addict themselves to Trade, and others to Poetry, for which they have no ill Genius. The *Arabs* have possess'd themselves of all those Parts, which produce the greatest Plenty of Dates, and the *Africans* are withdrawn nearer towards the Country of the Blacks. Some of them are free and wander about the Country, with their Cattel, without owning any Superior; others have their particular *Xeques* or Lords, others are subject to the Kings of *Fez* and *Morocco*; for Instance, as those of the Kingdom of *Taflet* and *Isata*, and others are under the *Turk*, who is possess'd of some Places in *Numidia*. They are all *Mahometans*.

This Region is divided into 8 Parts or Provinces, which, taking them from *Egypt* where we left off, and returning Westward, lie thus, with the Towns in each:

The Desert of Barca.	{	<i>Berdoa.</i>	Segelmessa.	{	<i>Segelmessa.</i>
		<i>Gorham.</i>			<i>Teneguent.</i>
Biledulgerid.	{	<i>Sim.</i>	{	Taflet.	<i>Tebuhazant.</i>
		<i>Angela.</i>			<i>Mamma.</i>
		<i>Sarta.</i>			<i>Tebelbelt.</i>
		<i>Ebaida.</i>			<i>Mazaliget.</i>
		<i>Sabia.</i>			<i>Abuhinan.</i>
Zeb.	{	<i>Tenzara.</i>	{	Darha.	<i>Darha.</i>
		<i>Casfesa.</i>			<i>Benisabid.</i>
		<i>Gadamez.</i>			<i>Tezerin.</i>
		<i>Fezzen.</i>			<i>Tinzeda.</i>
		<i>Teorregu.</i>			<i>Tinzulin.</i>
Tegorarin.	{	<i>Biscara.</i>	{	Tesset.	<i>Timesquit.</i>
		<i>Borgi.</i>			<i>Tesser.</i>
		<i>Nefra.</i>			<i>Nun.</i>
		<i>Techort.</i>			<i>Monasterio.</i>
		<i>Theolacha.</i>			<i>Targuez.</i>
The Desert of Barca	{	<i>Densen.</i>	{	Tesset.	<i>Ansulima.</i>
		<i>Tegorarin.</i>			<i>Albena.</i>
		<i>Tesebit.</i>			
		<i>Tegdeat.</i>			
		<i>Benigorai.</i>			

Lies East of the Kingdom of *Egypt*, South of the Kingdom of *Barca*, North of *Zahara*, and East of the Province of *Biledulgerid*. It is really a Desert, being all deep Sand, scarce any where habitable, for the most part destitute of Water, and consequently producing little for the Support of Human Life. A Lake on the North-east Part of it, has given occasion to some People to settle there, where they have two little Towns, or rather Villages, *Sim* on the West, and *Gorham* on the East of it. *Sarta* stands on another smaller Pool more

to the Eastward. *Berdoa* is a Castle, with some Houses about it. *Ebaida* and *Sabia*, two other inconsiderable Places, none of them worth mentioning, but that there are none better, and this all in a Country of several Hundred Miles in Compass.

Biledulgerid, properly so call'd,

Is the Province which extends it self in Length along the South-side of *Tripoli* and *Tunis*, which are its Northern Boundaries, as is the Desert of *Barca* the Eastern, the Province of *Zeb* the Western;



stern, and *Zazra* or the Desert the Southern, about 500 Miles in Length from East to West, and 100 in Breadth from North to South. The Ground bears no Corn, but there are vast Woods of Palm-Trees, producing infinite Quantities of Dates, which supply all the Coast of *Tunis*. The Principal Towns in it are, *Tenkar* built by the *Romans* in the Desert, on a small River, now divided into two Parts; the one inhabited by the Native *Africans*, and the other by *Arabs*. *Cafsa*, or *Cafesa*, is another *Roman* Town, with high Stone Walls of a great Thickness. The Air here is unwholesome and the Water hot, and both these Places are Subject to the *Bassa* of *Tunis*.

The other Parts of this Country are the Territory of *Tesregeu*, lying between *Tripoli* and the Desert of *Barea*, has three small Towns and 26 Villages; the Inhabitants of them all Poor, as lying in the Desert, and remote from Trade. *Jastiten* is higher towards *Tripoli*, has abundance of Dates, and is Subject to the *Bassa* of *Tripoli*. *Gademex* contains 16 wall'd Places, and 60 open Villages, the Capital of the same Name, supposed to be the *Oasis* of *Ptolemy*, and its Inhabitants wealthy by their Trade in Dates, and a free People. In *Fezzen* there are 26 small Towns and 100 Villages. The Inhabitants rich by their Trade with the Blacks, have a Lord of their own.

#### Zeb.

The next Province to the Westward, bounded on the West by the Desert of *Mazila*; on the North by the Mountains of *Bugia*; on the East by the Province of *Biledulgerid*, and on the South by the Deserts, where is the great Road from *Techort* to *Guargala*. It has 5 Towns and many Villages, *Biscara* built by the *Romans*, ruin'd and rebuilt by the *Arabs*, well enough Inhabited by a civil People, who are oblig'd in the Heat of Summer to retire to the Villages to avoid the Biting of the Scorpions, which is Mortal, and return in *November*. *Borgi* is 5 Leagues South of the last, and more populous. *Nesta* is divided by Walls into three Parts, with a Fort in one of them, which appears to be a *Roman* Structure; the Natives are insolent towards Strangers. *Theolacha* is a Foundation of the *Africans*, on a small River, with a poor Wall. *Deusen* is a *Roman* Structure, near it are the Ruins of ancient Monuments, and sometimes after great Rains, there are Gold, Silver, and Copper Medals found in the Fields, with a Head, Inscriptions and Trophies on them. *Mezzab* is a Territory depending on this Province, in which there are several Villages, and the Natives are rich by Trading with the Blacks. The last lies West of *Zeb*, and *Techort*, by some call'd a Kingdom, is South. The Capital of the same Name, is the *Tiaphylum* of *Ptolemy*, founded by the *Numidians* on a Mountain, at the Foot whereof is a small River, with a Draw-Bridge. The Town has Stone Walls within which are 2500 Houses of Stone and Brick, and a beautiful Mosque. There are 40 Castles and 150 Villages in the Country, which all contribute to the Lord of the Town. The Inhabitants are extraordinary courteous to Strangers and entertain them in their Houses, without taking any Reward. *Guargala* is another separate Territory of this Province, to the Eastward of the last, its Capital of the same Name, thought to be *Ptolemy's Tamarca*, built by the *Africans*. Most of the Inhabitants are black, as having

most to do with Black Women, yet generous and courteous to Strangers. They have a Lord of their own, whom they honour as a King, and his Revenue reckon'd worth 150000 Ducats a Year.

#### Tegorarin

Goes on still to the Westward, encompass'd by *Algier*, *Segelmessa*, *Zeb* and *Zaara*. It includes about 50 Castles and 100 Villages. The Land chiefly produces Dates, and some Corn with much watering, but feeds no Cattel except a few Goats. The People trade much, get Gold from the Blacks and carry it into *Barbary*, carrying back other Necessaries thence to the Blacks; being very loving to Strangers, and industrious in improving their Land. Flesh is very scarce among them, for want of Grass, and therefore they commonly eat Horses or Camels, they buy of the *Arabs*. *Tesebit* is a small Territory depending on this Province, in the North-west Part of it, consisting of four Castles, or small Towns and 28 Villages, the Men Black, the Women Brown and Handsome, but all Poor.

#### Segelmessa.

This Province is very large, including several small Territories, and extending over a mighty Tract of Land, from the Kingdoms of *Fez* and *Algier* on the North, to the Deserts of *Libya* on the South; and the Province of *Tegorarin* in the East, to *Morocco* and *Tafilet* on the West, being near 500 Miles in Length and 300 in Breadth. It is water'd by three Principal Rivers, the *Ghir*, the *Zis* and the *Togda*, and takes Name from its Capital City, seated on the River *Zis*. It was once great and populous, but much abandon'd of late Years. Along the River there are abundance of small Towns and Villages, the three chiefest whereof are *Teneguent*, containing about 1000 Houses, *Tebuhazant* and *Mamua*, a very populous Place.

*Queneg* is a small Territory on the North-west of this Province, next Mount *Atlas*, and upon the River *Zis*; yet has in it only three old Castles, and a parcel of scattering Villages or lone Houses. *Matgara* is another District on the same River, in which there are several Villages, the Chief of them call'd *Hilela*, the *Arabian* Lord whereof has a Revenue of 30000 Ducats a Year rais'd by Duties on Goods. The Liberty of *Retel* South of the last, on the same River, is shut in Eastward by an uninhabited Mountain, and Westward by a sandy barren Plain. The Natives are a base Cowardly People, and treated like Slaves by the *Arabs*. *Tebelbelt* is a very poor Town and Country about it; for tho' it has excellent Dates, it affords scarce any Flesh, and they eat little but Ostriches and Stags, which they Hunt. *Todga* is not only the Name of a River, but of the Country on both sides of it, in which there are only four Towns, such as they are, and 10 Villages. *Fercala*, *Tezzerin*, *Benigain*, *Beni-Besseri*, *Guaheda* and *Figbig*, are all small Districts that have nothing remarkable.

#### Tafilet.

This Kingdom, bearing the Name of its Capital, is a long slip of Land, running North-west and South-east, and including the Province of *It-*



the greatest Length of both together being about 300 Miles, and the Breadth not 60, where largest, but much less in many Parts. The Kingdom of *Morocco* touches it on the North-west, *Segelmessa* lies along its North and North-east, *Darha* on the South-west, and Part of *Tesset* and *Zahara* on the South.

The Capital of the same Name is Wall'd, and contains 2000 Houses, inhabited by *Bereberes*. Between this Place and the Desert is a great Road, which runs across Mount *Atlas*. The Soil is hilly and bears Corn, has good Pasture and abundance of Dates, and some Indigo. The Natives breed much Cattel, and particularly Camels and Horses, which last are extraordinary swift, and fed with Oats, Barley and Dates. They drive a great Trade of Indigo, and Leather, besides some strip'd Silks, and most of the Dates brought into *Europe*, come from thence.

The Province of *Itata*, lying on the Frontiers of *Libya* and a Dependence of *Taflet*, is by the Natives call'd *Garib*; they being a mix'd Race, who speak neither good *African* nor *Arabick*, but are brave and keep abundance of Horses, whom they feed with Dates, for want of Barley. They live among the Palm-Trees, which are their Principal Wealth. This Province, and the Kingdom of *Taflet*, are both Subject to the Kings of *Fez* and *Morocco*, who conquer'd it from the Native Princes.

## Darha

Is one of the best Parts of *Numidia*, so call'd from the River of the same Name, which runs through it; being separated on the North by Mount *Atlas* from the Kingdom of *Morocco*; on the West it borders on the Provinces of *Gezula*, *Sus*, and part of *Tesset*; on the South it has another part of *Tesset*, and on the East *Taflet*. The Length of it near 300 Miles. There are many Castles and wall'd Places in it along the River *Darha*. It has a Town of the same Name not very considerable, no more than those of *Benisabil*, *Tezerin*, *Tinzeda* and *Yinzulin*, which last is the best of them, commanded by a Citadel; but *Tinesquet* exceeds them all as containing 2000 Houses within its Walls, besides 200 in the Suburbs. Nothing remains, but the Ruins of *Tesut*, where the Kings once kept their Court.

Some of the Land bears Corn, especially when the River *Darha* over-flows, but never enough to maintain the People, which obliges them to carry their Dates to *Fez*, to exchange for Corn. Abundance of Indigo grows here, and Palm-Trees for four Leagues about, and they feed their Camels and Horses with the worst of the Dates. The Men are generally tawny, as being mix'd with the Blacks; but the Women are handsom and good natur'd, attended by Black Slaves. Their common Food is Milk boil'd with Barley-meal and Dates, as also Camels, Horses and Ostriches Flesh; but they never eat Bread, unless at great Feasts. They are for the most part Subject to the King of *Morocco*, except in some Places, where they have Lords of their own.

Tesset, or the farther Sus,

Lies along the *Atlantick* Ocean on the West, on the North extends along *Alerocco*, *Darha*, and Part of *Segelmessa*, and on the East and South

joins to *Zahara*, or the Desert. It is generally divided into 7 Territories, or Districts, inhabited by as many Tribes of *Bereberes* or Native *Africans*, three on the Coast, and four up the Inland. The Maritime are, *Idausquerit*, the most Northerly, which is pretty well fill'd with Dwellings of the *Bereberes*, who enclose them, and have a Sort of Forts. They are able to raise 5000 Horse and 30000 Foot, but this is because in Time of Need, all the Men go to the Wars, and keep much Cattle and Horses, because the Land is proper for them, and produces Wheat and Barley, in some Places, as also Oranges, Limons and other *European* Fruits. *Estuca* is the next towards the South, whose Principal Town is *Tarquez*, where the *Xequé* or Lord resides. It is all a Rocky Soil, yet bears Barley, and feeds Flocks of Goats, which are the Principal Wealth of the Inhabitants. The most remarkable Thing here is Cape *Nam*, so call'd by the *Portugueses*, as looking upon it as the *Ne plus ultra* in Navigation, because for many Years their Voyages terminated there, and they believ'd it impossible to go any farther. To the Southward still is *Nim*, a miserable poor Country next the Desert, and here is the famous Cape *Bojadar*, so nam'd from its running out far into the Sea, for *Bojar*, in the *Portuguese* Sea Phrase, is to extend. The only Places here worth naming are the Towns of *Nun*, *Albena* and *Ansulima*. The *Arabs* here wander up and down the Plains, and the *Bereberes* reside in Valleys or the Hills. *Tesset* is up the Inland, next the Frontiers of *Zahara*, the Capital of the same Name, wall'd and containing 400 Houses, with about 12000 scattering Habitations round about in the Country, which is all Sand, except a few Spots close to the Town where there are Date Trees, and they sow some Barley and Millet; so that the People are all Poor, and employ themselves in Tillage. *Guaden* lies a little to the North-west, a small District, in all Respects like the last. *Ifran*, or *Ufran*, consists of Four little Towns, built by the *Numidians*, a League from one another, near a small River, which runs only in Winter. About them are several Villages, and great Store of Palm-Trees. These Places are under a more regular Government, than the rest, because resorted to by Christian Merchants trading to *Gualata* and *Tombut*; whither they carry Linen and Woollen Cloth, and bring back Leather, Wax, Rice, and Sugar. They have a Judge among them, who decides all Controversies, and Punishes Criminals, but none beyond Banishment, be their Crime never so Enormous, for they put no Man to Death, tho' they are all *Mahometans*. *Aca* or *Archa*, is the most Inland Part, next to *Zahara*, where are three wall'd Towns, near one another, once almost depopulated by civil Wars, till a *Marabout*, or religious Man reconcil'd them, and became their Lord.

The Religion of all this Region of *Biledulgerid* is *Mahometan* throughout, and as for their History we have nothing of it, whatever has been known of it being included under the Kingdoms of *Barbary*, which have extended their Dominions into these Parts, which of themselves have not afforded any Learned Men to record their Actions, or perhaps that obscure People never perform'd any thing worth committing to Posterity. For want whereof, we will here say something of

Mount *Atlas*, which is one of the greatest in the World, both for Height and Extent. It commences at Cape *Nam* or *Naw*, on the *Atlantick* Ocean,



Ocean, which takes that Name from it. Then turning and winding sometimes to the North, and sometimes to the South, and sending out several Branches it runs to the Eastward the whole Extent of *Africk*, in its Way dividing all *Barbary* from *Biledulgerid*. Coming to *Egypt* it turns away again to the Southward, and parts that Kingdom from *Nubia*, and then continuing its Course Eastward, ends at last in the Red Sea. The Height of it is generally Excessive and much above the Clouds, and tho' in so hot a Country, a great Part is continually cover'd with Snow. This

Name was given it from *Atlas*, King of *Numidia*, who liv'd at the Foot of it, and addicted himself much to the Study of *Astrology*, who, the Poets feign, was turn'd into this Mountain by *Perseus* with *Medusa's* Head. The great Height of it gave Occasion to the Fable of *Atlas*, supporting the Heavens. The *Arabs* call it *Aidn*, and the *Spaniards* *Montes Claros*. Where the Snow lies not always, there are vast Woods, the Habitation of all Sorts of Wild Beasts. The lower Parts afford good Pasture, and many considerable Rivers descend from it.

## CHAP. XI.

### Of ZAHARA, or the Desert.

**D**Escending still Southward and returning from the West to the East, we meet with the Region of *Zahara*, so call'd by the *Arabs*, and signifying, a Desert, because in Effect it is no better. The Ancients knew it by the Name of *Libya Interior*, or *Deserta*, because remotest from them and desert. Whether it had this Denomination, from *Libya*, the Daughter of *Egyptus* and Grandchild of *Jove*, or from the *Arabic* *Lehb*, signifying excessive Heat, is not worth Disputing, there being some to defend both Opinions.

As to its Bounds, it reaches to the *Atlantick* Ocean; on the East to the Desert of *Barcia* and *Nubia*; on the North it joins to *Biledulgerid*, and on the South to *Negroland*, or the Country of the Blacks. The Soil in general is Dry, Sandy and Barren; the Uncouth Mountains producing nothing but Briers and Brambles, and the most fruitful Parts only some little Barley and Dates. The chief Sustenance of the Natives depends on their Camels, their Sheep and Ostriches. To add to their Misery, they are infested with Snakes and Locusts, which flying in Clouds, destroy all the little Green there is.

The People are either Shepherds, whose chief Business is Robbing, Murdering and Hunting, as they wander from Place to Place; or *Bereberes*, who have certain Places of Abode and are affable, friendly, just in the Way of Trade, and Lovers of Strangers. The Men are spare of Body, and generally healthy to 60 Years of Age, the Air being so wholesom, that Sick Persons are brought thither from other Parts to be Cur'd by it. The Women are well-shap'd, and both Sexes Tawny. The *Arabian* Shepherds go stark naked, except the Modest Sort, who wrap a Clout about their Middle, and a kind of Turbant on their Heads made of black Cloth. The richest of them wear a loose Garment of blue Callico, brought them from the Country of the Blacks. They Travel on Camels, lie upon Mats, and cover their Tents with a coarse Cloth of Camels Hair. The Will of their Chiefs, is the only Law among them; their Religion a Corruption of *Mahometism*, and their Language a Barbarous *African*.

The *Arabs* divide this Country into three sorts, by these Names, *Cebel*, which is all small Sand; *Zabara*, stony; and *Agar*, Marshy. The most receiv'd Division among us is into 7 Deserts, under which all other smaller are comprehended, in

which there being no Towns of any Note, it will be needless to give a Table, as in other Countries, but barely the Names of those Deserts; which are, *Zanhaga*, *Zuenziga*, *Targa*, or *Hayr*, *Lempla*, *Bardaa*, *Gazza*, and *Buino*.

#### Zanhaga

Extends to the Ocean on the West, has the Province of *Tesset* on the North, the Desert of *Zuenziga* on the East, and the Kingdoms of *Guala* and *Tombut* on the South. In this Compass are included the small Deserts of *Azoad* and *Tegazza*, the last of which produces a vast Quantity of Rock Salt, convey'd thence all over the Country of the Blacks, and us'd by the People to hold in their Mouths to moisten them and preserve their Gums. This is a very dangerous Place to travel through, if the Summer prove dry, for then there is neither Water, nor any thing to give the Cattel; and in the Territory of *Azoad* are to be seen the Tombs of a Rich Merchant and a Carrier, the first of which bought a Draught of Water of the latter for 10000 Ducats, and yet both of them dy'd of Thirst, before they got out of the Desert. Cities and Towns of Note we must look for none in these Deserts.

#### Zuenziga

Has *Zanhaga* on the West, *Segelmessa* and *Tegorarin* on the North, *Targa* on the East, and the Kingdoms of *Tombut* and *Agades* on the South, and includes the lesser Desert of *Gogden*. This Country, tho' more dry and barren than the last, has many Inhabitants; and is the Thoroughfare of the Merchants, who go from *Tremecen* to the Kingdoms of *Tombut* and *Azades* with great Danger of their Lives, many Men and Beasts dying by the Way, particularly in the District of *Gogden*, for want of Meat and Drink, there being no Water for Nine Days Journey, unless it Ram and make some Pools, and those too soon dry up. The Inhabitants are mix'd *Africans* and *Arabs*, the latter dreaded by the Blacks, whom they take by Force and sell them to *Fez*, but if those Blacks ever light on them, the biggest Piece they leave of their whole Body is an Ear.

#### Targa, or Hayr,

Is the next Desert Eastwards to *Zuenziga*, so call'd from a Race of *Africans* bearing the Name



of *Targa*, and *Hayr*, from the Principal Habitation in it. This Country is not so Dry and Barren as the two last, but has many good Wells of Water, tho' generally deep; the Air is more temperate and the Land produces Grass. Much *Manna* is here found towards the Frontiers of *Agadez*, which is carried thither to Sell, fresh gather'd, in Calabashes, and sold very Cheap. The Blacks drink it dissolv'd in their Water and dress their Meat with it, alledging that it is Cooling and Wholesome, and therefore Strangers are more healthy there than at *Tombut*, tho' the Air is not so good. Both the *Arabs* and *Berberes* deal much in carrying Blacks to *Barbary* to Sell.

Lempta, or Yguidi,

Comes next in Course, as lying East of *Targa*, a Miserable Place, and very Dangerous for Merchants who travel through it from *Constantina* to the Country of the Blacks, being inhabited by fierce and brutal *Africans*, who rob all they meet with, and kill all that are of *Guerghels*, because they lay some Claim to that Province, and therefore are always at War with those that Possess it.

Berdoa

Lies East of *Lempta*, and North of *Borno*, South of *Biledulgerid*, properly so call'd, and West of *Gaoga*. It is as Barren and Dry as any of the Rest, and very unsafe for Travellers, except they be of *Gadames* in *Biledulgerid*, with whom they are ally'd. This is perhaps the Defart of the Ancient *Angiles* mention'd by *Pomponius Mela*. Some Dates grow about such Places as are Inhabited and have any Water, and here are reckon'd to be three little wall'd Towns and some Villages.

Borno

Is South of *Berdoa*, and not to be reckon'd among the Defarts, being a Kingdom, and water'd

by some good Rivers descending from the Mountains, which render it capable of bearing Corn and several sorts of Fruit, especially in the Middle Part, as being remoter from the Defarts. Upon one of these Rivers stands the Capital of the Kingdom of the same Name, a Place not contemptible and resorted to from the neighbouring Countries. The King here is Absolute, as in all Eastern Countries; his People, being some black, some white, are civiliz'd and drive some Trade; but their Women and Children are still in common, for they have scarce any Religion, like the Ancient *Garamantes*, of whom it is doubtless they are a Part.

Gaoga,

Another Kingdom, North-east of *Borno*, and parted from it by Defarts, is also indifferently supply'd with Water from some Rivers, and the Land not altogether unfruitful. The King here is said to be descended from a Black Slave, who after securing his Master's Effects, bought Horses and fell to Robbing, till being grown Powerful, he made himself a Sovereign. Some of his Subjects are Christians, but extremely ignorant and much corrupted for want of good Instructions.

All the People of *Zahara* are generally abstemious and patient of Hunger and Thirst, being us'd to endure Hardships in a Country where sometimes in 8, 10, or 12 days Journey, there is no Water to be found. *Sanfon* is of Opinion that the People of the three or four first Defarts here mention'd towards the Sea, are the Ancient *Getuli*; and the three or four last the *Garamantes*. The Religion of all these Countries is generally the *Mahometan*, except what little of Christianity is said to remain in *Gaoga* and *Borno*. History of these Parts there is none.

## CHAP. XII.

### The Kingdom of NUBIA,

BY the *Africans* call'd *Neube*, from an Ancient People in these Parts formerly known by the Name of *Nubæ*, and mention'd by *Ptolemy*, Lies West of *Gaoga*, and *Borno*, last mention'd, and separated from them by vast Defarts. On the North it Borders on the Defart of *Lica* and *Egypt*, from which 'tis separated by high Mountains, Eastward; and to the South, it is parted from *Ethiopia* by the River *Nile*, and a Ridge of Mountains, and the Defart of *Gorham*. The Position is between 10 and 23 Degrees of Latitude, and between 38 and 52 of Longitude, the Form being Oblong, and lying North and East and South-west.

The principal Rivers are the *Nile*, the *Nubia*, and the *Sira*; these two last fall into the first. Of these the *Nubia* is deeper than the *Nile*, and fatal to the Crocodiles, that they certainly die a very few Days after they come into it. All that Part of the Country which is any thing near the *Nile* is overflow'd by it, as well as *Egypt*, and that Means render'd no less fertile in Grain and Pasture, as is most of the Soil about the other Rivers; but towards the South and West, where

they do not reach it is most Barren and Defart. Besides the Corn, here grows much Sugar, yet not of any great Value, as being generally black, and of an unpleasant Savour. Other Commodities it affords are, a considerable Quantity of very fine Gold, Musk, Sanders and Ivory, as having many Elephants. But the most Mischievous of its Product is a Deadly Poison, sold for an Hundred Ducats an Ounce, and so fatal, that the 10th part of a Grain kills a Man in a Quarter of an Hour; and this is a small Seed gather'd from the Top of an Herb, not unlike a Nettle.

There are in *Nubia* great Numbers of Lions, Tigers, Crocodiles, and Camels. Great Care is taken in breeding up these last, as being of excellent Use. The Female goes Eleven Months with Young, and as soon as they fall, that they may learn to Kneel, to receive their Burden, they bow their fore Legs under their Belly, and lay weight on the Back that it may not rise. Thus they keep it several Days, with very little Milk, that it may learn to drink little. This Practice brings them to Kneel, when they are to be loaded and to live several Days without Water, which is of

F f f

great



great Use in the Desarts, where none is to be found. Sometimes they eat Barley; and sometimes Grass. The general Burden of a Camel is 500 Weight, but they will carry 1000 for a need. The Camel's Milk is reckon'd an excellent Remedy against the Dropsy. The Dromedaries, are much us'd to Ride on, and so swift that they will Travel above 100 Miles a Day.

The Natives living in Towns are Traders, those in the Country Husbandmen. All of them are very black, small of Stature, and for the most part much deform'd by the Small Pox, which they often have two or three Times. The better Sort wear fine Linen, and the Poorer a coarser Sort; but during the hot Season they are quite Naked, except their Privities. They are brave enough, but generally better a Horseback than a foot, lying very close when they ride to the Horse's Neck. Since they have taken to Poisoning their Arrows, the *Turks* do not care to Attack them. Their Language is peculiar to the Country. As for Religion they were Christians, soon after the first preaching of the Gospel, and so continu'd a long Time without deviating. Of later Times *Mahometanism* is crept in among them, especially in the Parts next to *Egypt*; yet it does not prevail, Christianity still being the most receiv'd, but that through Ignorance, and for want of able Instructors much corrupted; however that they pro-

fect to the best of their Knowledge, and acknowledge the Patriarch of *Alexandria* for the Head of the Church. They have a King of their own, whose Power is absolute, and his Will all the Law, independent of any other, and yet the *Turk* has the Vanity to mention him among his Subjects.

The Capital City is *Dancalia*, formerly *Tempis*, seated on the *Nile* next the Frontiers of *Aethiopia*, containing 10000 Houses, but the Buildings mean, being most Timber and Mud Walls. The next is *Susa*, to the Southward of the last, and on the same River, and then *Gorham* the most Southerly of all, and beyond it is the Desert which takes Name from it. *Nubia*, which some will have to be the Metropolis of *Nubia* stands to the North West of *Dancalia* on a Bow the *Nile* makes there, and opposite to it is *Gualva*, a smaller Place. *Jalac* is still nearer to the Frontiers of *Egypt*. *Tamalma* is the Principal Town Westward on the River *Sira*, and *Dancalia* and *Dora* the chiefest in *Nubia* to the Southward. Near the former of these two begins the Desert of *Zin*, extending between it and the *Sira* and the Kingdom of *Borno*. In this Kingdom are still to be seen the Ruins of above 150 ancient Christian Churches, with the Images of our Blessed Saviour, the Virgin *Mary*, and many other Saints carv'd on the Stones.

## CHAP. XIII.

### Of Abyssinia, or the Upper Æthiopia.

WE shall not extend this Country 14 Degrees beyond the Line, as many Geographers do, but give its true Bounds and Provinces, as deliver'd by the *Jesuits*, who travell'd all over them. On the North it runs along *Egypt*, the Desert of *Barca*, and part of *Nubia*; on the West, the River *Maleg*, which falls into the *Nile* is its Boundary, with some Desarts in the South Part where this River fails; the East side is shut in by the Coast of *Abex*, which was once subject to it, but now lost and makes a Province apart; and the South reaches to that we now call the Empire of *Monoemugi*, of which we shall speak in its Place. Thus

the whole Length from North to South is but 9 Degrees at most, or 540 Miles, and the Breadth from East to West about 400 Miles.

The most receiv'd Division is this which follows, with the Towns to each Kingdom or Province, there being many other smaller Territories mention'd in Authors, which do not deserve any particular mention, some of them being only parts of those set down, and others imaginary, besides some so call'd from Strangers that have come to inhabit them from abroad, and in short, to take notice of all that Authors write touching this Empire, would be endless, what can be deliver'd with any certainty, is as follows.

Barnagasso.	{ Baroa. Emacen. Gana. Zama.	Angole.	{ Angole. Dofarzo. Korkora. Bugana.	Goyame.	{ Triebessa. Casates. Tavia. Morduma.
Tigremahon.	{ Tigre. Chaxemo. Fremona. Manadela. Ambacanet.			Amahara.	{ Azel.
Bagamedri.	{ Bagamedri. Alaza. Fogora. Anga. Mechada.	Dambea.	{ Dembea. Fogora. Gorgona. Afras. Arsana. Geneta. Depsan. Goga.	Xaoa.	{ Korkora.
				Damut.	{ Damut.
				Fascal.	{ Fascal.
				Fatigora.	{ ————
				Narca.	{ Zafsan. Gorga. Tirut. Gavi.



Barnagasso

Is generally reckon'd a Kingdom, tho' in reality it be but a part of that of *Tigre*, only it is under a separate Governour call'd *Barnagus*, that is, Lord of the Sea, because formerly his Rule extended to the Sea-side. It reaches Northward to the Frontiers of *Egypt*, on the East to the Coast of *Abex*, on the South the River *Marab* parts it from *Tigre*, and on the West the *Nile* from *Nubia*.

*F. Tehez* divides this into three Districts, viz. *Carfila*, *Dafila*, and *Baroa*; *Debaroa*, to which we may add *Batraxana*, being the most Northern Part among the Mountains. We shall not find any considerable Cities in all *Abyssinia*, and shall therefore be the shorter in the Description of them. The chiefest in this Part of it is *Baroa*, formerly of some Note, when the *Ethiopians* were Masters of the Port of *Arquico* on the Red Sea; since ther very inconsiderable. Next is *Emacen*, to the Northward, and then *Carna* and *Zama*, next the Southern Borders. In this Part is suppos'd to have been the Kingdom of the ancient Queen *Candace*, mention'd *Acts* 8, and 27.

Tigre, or Tigremahon,

Is the next, or rather the same Kingdom to the Southward, separated from the last, as has been said, on the North by the River *Marab*; on the West it borders on *Dambea* and *Bagamedri*; Southward it joins to *Angole*, and Eastward to the Coast of *Abex*. *Tigre*, or *Auzen*, is the Capital of this Kingdom, no way remarkable, but on the Northern Borders stands *Chaxumo*, or *Kaxumo*, supposed to be the *Auxumion* of *Ptolemy*, and the *Axumites* of *Adrian*, or *Auxuma*, formerly famous, now all Ruins, yet the Emperours are Crown'd there, and it is seated in a pleasant Plain, water'd by several Rivulets. Almost in the midst of this Country stands *Fremona*, on a high Hill, so call'd from *S. Fremonatus*, the first Bishop in *Æthiopia*, and the usual residence of the *Jesuits* when they were admitted to the Mission, and there they built a Church. *Ambacant* is but a Day's Journey from *Fremona*, and *Manudela* lies just upon the Southern Frontiers. To the Northward of *Chaxumo*, above-mention'd, there are two famous Monasteries, the greatest of them call'd *Atchman*, the other *Abbagarina*, where once the *Jesuits* resided.

Bagamedri,

A Kingdom extended much in length, lies South West of *Tigre*, from which and *Angole* it is parted on the East by Mountains, on the West by the *Nile*, by *Goyame* on the North, from *Dambea* by the Lake of that Name, and Mountains, and on the South it borders on *Amahara*. On the East side of it are the greatest Mountains and Rocks, where part of the Nation call'd *Agumians* inhabit.

The Capital, of the same Name, is seated in a delightful Plain, on the Banks of the River *Suana*, and bears the Name of a Royal Town, because the Viceroy of *Tigre* receives a second Crown, having one before in the Place where his Employment was conferr'd on him. *Alaba* is a small Town, near to which there is a Bridge o-

ver the *Nile*; *Fogora* another no more considerable, is next the Frontiers of *Goyame*. *Azug* is in the Northern Part, on the River *Abancu*, and *Mochada*, South from that, on a smaller Stream

Angole.

This Kingdom has been wrested from that Empire by the barbarous *Galas*, who broke in from the Southern Parts, and made themselves Masters of many *Æthiopian* Provinces. It lies East of *Bagamedri*, joins Northward with *Tigre*, Eastward with *Dankali*, and on the South the Kingdom of *Amahara*. The Capital here bears the same Name with the Kingdom; *Dofarzo*, not far from the Frontiers of *Tigre* is reckon'd to contain 1000 Houses; *Korkora* is not so considerable. *Bugana* or *Abugana* on the West was once famous for a good Church in it, call'd *Imbre Christos*, besides several others of less Note.

Dambea, or Dembea,

Has the River *Tacaze* to part it on the East from *Tigre*; some Mountains on the West; *Seit* and *Ogwa* are on the North, and *Bagamedri* on the South. Several Trenches drawn from the *Nile* run cross it, and in the midst is a great Lake, call'd *Bahr-Dembea*, that is, *The Sea of Dembea*. The Capital call'd also *Dembea*, or *Zambea*, is generally the Residence of the Emperour from *November* till *Easter*, for the rest of the Year he lives in the Field. About this there are several small Towns, as *Arsana*, *Goga*, *Fogora*, *Afras*, *Ganeta*, and *Gorgona*. This Country is for the most part level, and often overflown by the Lakes and Rivers, which is rare in other Parts of *Æthiopia*. *Gorgona* above-named, is 3 Miles from the ancient Town of that Name, being the Center of *Dambea*, and was once the Residence of the *Jesuits* to be near the Emperour, and here they built a Church and Seminary. About 50 Miles from it is *Ganeta de Jesus*, that is, the Paradise of *JESUS*, seated on a low Ground, which is rare in this Empire, plentifully supply'd with Water, and in it a Church, where the Emperours have been buried for some Ages. Here *F. Paez* built a Church and a Palace for the Emperour after the *European* manner. *Depsan* stands on a Hill, 3 Miles from the Lake of *Dembea*, where the Empress us'd to reside; a pleasant Place, water'd by two Rivers which join there; the Air serene and wholesome.

Mount *Dancation* is on the utmost Part of *Dembea*, and on the top of it a Plain, where the Emperour continued a long time with all his Court, and there was built a House after the manner of *Europe* for the Patriarch, and another for the *Jesuits*. There was besides, an old Church call'd *Gambinet*, and 9000 Huts built of Stone, and cover'd with Thatch, for the Soldiers. Opposite to it is another Mountain extraordinary steep, whither the Natives use to fly when attack'd by their Enemies, and on the East Side of it is the Monastery of the Abbot *Eustachius*.

The Island *Alencercca*, or *Alacercca* is another safe Place of Retreat for the Natives, and in it the famous Monastery of the Abbot *Haymon*. The Lake of *Dambea* is very large, and contains several Islands, with Monasteries in some of them. The *Nile* runs cross a part of it without mixing



its Waters. In it there are River Horses, but no Crocodiles. In the Island *Dec* on this Lake, the Patriarch *Mendez* baptiz'd 1400 Children, and 1340 Persons of riper Age.

#### Goyame.

This Kingdom is South of *Dambea*, the Figure of it almost Oval, and a Peninsula made by the *Nile* running almost round it, the middle of it higher than the extreme sides, partly inhabited by a Race of People descended from *Hagar*, next the Springs of the River *Nile*; at the Neck or Isthmus is a very steep and almost inaccessible Mountain, and on the top of it an oval Plain 250 Fathom in Length, and 130 in Breadth, to which there are two Paths or Ascents across the Rocks, and an excellent Spring on one side. Towards the *Nile* there is a Plain separated from the foot of this Mountain by a natural Trench, where the Viceroy lives. *Nebessa* is a remarkable Town here, in which the Empress *Helena*, Governess to the Emperor *David*, erected a stately Church, afterwards destroy'd by the *Galas*, and rebuilt by the *Jesuits* residing there, they having had several places of Abode in this Kingdom. On the North there is nothing but Desert Mountains; but some say 'tis inhabited by *Jews*. Other Towns here, are *Casnes*, *Tavia*, and *Mirauma*. This Kingdom *Telles* will have to be the *Meroe* of the Ancients.

#### Amahara

Borders Northward on *Bazamedri* and *Angole*, Westward on *Goyame*, Eastward on the Provinces of *Dankali*, and Southward on *Oleka* and *Xaoa*. The Rocks are here more steep and inaccessible than in other Parts; but the most noted of them, call'd *Ambaquezen* and not *Amahara*, as some Authors pretend, is towards the Frontiers of *Xaoa*, only accessible by two narrow and difficult Paths, and here formerly the Emperor's Sons were kept, to prevent their raising any Commotions, which is now no longer us'd. The Rock *Tibae Maria* is also remarkable, standing where the River *Quia* falls into the *Nile*, has a curious Plain on the top, water'd by two Rivulets, and enclos'd by a Ridge of Mountains, with 12 Passages through it, like so many Gates. On it are seven Churches, the chiefest of the Invocation of *S. John*, and in it five Tombs of former Emperours buried there. The most remarkable Town in this Kingdom is call'd *Adel*.

#### Xaoa,

Divided into the Upper and the Lower, lies South of *Amahara*, East of *Gafata*, North of *Oleka* and *Gaziz*, and West of *Oifate*. It is the last Kingdom this way that now owns the Emperour of *Abyssinia*. Here are several Towns, but scarce any of Note, unless it be *Korkora*, where there is a Palace of the Emperour's, a good Church, and a rich Monastery, call'd *Nizacra*.

#### Damut

Borders Northwards on *Gafata*, Southward on *Gurague*, Eastward on *Gaziz*, and Westward on *Narta* and *Bizamo*. In it is that they call the Dead Mountain, the highest and coldest in

all *Abyssinia*, to which the Emperour sends those he has a Mind to be rid of, where they are starv'd with Hunger and Cold. In this Kingdom the *Jesuits* had two Residences. Of the Towns here there is very little to be said, except that the Capital is of the same Name of the Kingdom.

#### Fascalo,

An Inland Western Kingdom, has the River *Nile* on the East, the *Maleg* on the West, *Nubia* on the North, and *Bizamo* on the South. The Metropolis bears the same Name, the Country is very mountainous and uneven, but about the *Nile* there are pleasant and fruitful Valleys, which is the most we know of this Country.

#### Fategar

Is a small Kingdom bordering upon *Balli*, *Oifate*, *Oxelo*, and *Gomara*, what it may have been formerly does not appear, at present there is nothing in it remarkable, except that they call, The Mountain of the Fever, near a Place the *Europeans* nam'd the Market, because thither the Merchants of those Neighbouring Kingdoms resort to Trade, there being a very narrow Way to it on each side. There is another, call'd, The Mountain of the Lake, because at the Foot of it is a Lake three Leagues in Compass, and about it many Monasteries and Churches.

#### Narea, or Nerea,

One of the largest of all the Kingdoms in *Abyssinia*, and the most Southern, extending to 8 Degrees of North Latitude, has the Kingdom of *Gingiro* on the South, *Gurague* and *Damut* on the East, *Bizamo* on the North, and the Desarts on the West. This Kingdom produces great Plenty of Gold, and has ever been faithful to the Emperour, tho' often attack'd by the *Galas*. It had once a King of its own, and the Natives are counted the best People in all the Empire, as being sincere and just, which the others are not.

These are the true Parts of the *Abyssine* Empire, which we may rely on, as being thus describ'd by the *Jesuits* who travell'd the greatest part of it, whom we rather chose to follow, than Geographers who sit at home and make Maps according to their Fancie, or *Ludolphus*, who knew nothing but by hearsay from an *Abyssinian* he talk'd with, and a Man that had no knowledge of Geography. For this reason we omit many Names of Provinces and Kingdoms, some of them imaginary, others only Parts of those here describ'd, which if inserted, would rather serve to confound than inform the Reader.

Having had occasion sometimes to mention the *Galas*, it will not be amiss to inform the Reader that they are a People suppos'd to be descended from the *Jews*, who wandring in their several Dispersions under *Salmanassar*, *Nebuchadnezzar*, and *Titus*, at last settled near the Kingdom of *Dankali*, on the Western Part of *Abyssinia*, and are become the most dangerous Enemies that Emperour has, having wrested from him a considerable Part of his Empire. The *Agas*, another Nation, were not long since Pagans, but many afterwards were converted by the *Jesuits*. At their first coming into the Country, the Em-



perour assign'd one part of them Lands next the source of Nile, and the others among the Mountains of *Bagamedri*, where they are still become troublesome and apt to stir up others to Rebellion.

Having describ'd every Province in particular, it is time to add what may be requisite of the whole Country in general. *Pliny* says it was first call'd *Æthiopia* and *Atlantia*, and afterwards by the *Grecians* *Æthiopia*, from their Verb *Aitho* to Burn, and *Ops* a Countenance, alluding to the black scorch'd Countenances of the Natives. The Name of *Abyssinia* some derive from the *Abiseni*, or *Abysini*, a People of *Arabia Felix*, who crossing the Red Sea, settled there. *F. Mendez* from *Strabo*, says it is so call'd from *Abas*, signifying Desarts in the *Egyptian* Tongue, because it is encompassed by them. The Scripture calls it *Ludim*, from *Lud* the Son of *Mizraim*, who first planted it.

The principal Rivers of *Abyssinia*. 1. The Nile, whose Original so carefully search'd for, and so utterly unknown to the Ancients, is now found by the *Jesuits* to be two small Springs in the West part of the Kingdom of *Goyame*, where the People call'd *Agams* inhabit. These two Springs run separate about a Musket Shot, and then join, then having run about 15 Leagues, it receives the *Gema*, soon after which it turns to the East; then to the Southward, running across the Lake of *Dembea* without mixing its Waters, thence its Course is South East along the Kingdoms of *Bagameder*, *Amora*, and *Ollea*, then again it winds to the West, and lastly to the North, so that it makes an Oval Peninsula, not above a Day's Journey over at the Isthmus. After this it continues its Course, tho' with many great windings to the North, till it comes into *Egypt*, and thence into the *Mediterranean*. The Cataracts of Nile are mighty full of the Water from high Rocks into the Bottoms, with a dreadful Noise. 2. The *Tacaze*, suppos'd to be the *Astaboras* of *Ptolemy*, rising in *Angole*, and after great Windings, first East and then North, then West, and then North again, pays Tribute to the Nile. 3. The *Marab* comes from the Coast of *Alex*, and runs most North West, through *Tigre* and other Northern Provinces into *Tacaze*. 4. The *Maleg* rises in *Damot*, and after a Course of some Leagues to the Westward, turns Northward in *Hare*, waters *Brazano* and *Fajculo* Westward of the Nile, and lastly loses it self in that River. 5. The *Haoaxe* comes from *Aca*, and passes through *Kategar* and *Balli* Eastward to the Red Sea. Others less remarkable, are *Baxilo*, *Quccan*, *Gamar*, and *Obe*, all falling into the Nile, *Machi* into the *Haoaxe*, and *Arquet* into the *Maleg*.

The Mountains here as far exceed the *Alps* and *Pyrenees* in *Europe* as these do common Hills. In the Kingdom of *Tigre* is that call'd *Lamallan*, excessive high, and the way over it extraordinary narrow and dangerous. *Amahara* and *Amman* are not inferior to the last, and in short, all the Country is full of them, except the Province of *Lenber*, which is for the most part Plain. Many of these Mountains have Plains on the tops, to which the Men mount with Ladders, and draw up the Cattel with Cords.

Most of the Bottoms are hot, but the Hills cool, which is the Reason that they are all inhabited, tho' almost inaccessible. The Thunder and Lightning is most dreadful, and the Rain at

those times does not fall in Drops, but in Streams. The Seasons do not answer to ours, tho' on this side the Line their Spring answers to our *August*; their Summer to our Winter; their second Summer, for it cannot be call'd Autumn, to our Spring, and their Winter to our Summer.

That there is Gold in *Abyssinia* is most certain, some Provinces paying their Tribute to the Emperour in that they find among the Sands. It is likely there are other Metals, but the Natives know not how to find or work the Veins. In *Tigre* and *Angole* there are Rocks of Salt, which they dig, and carry all about the Country. All sorts of Grain yield a prodigious Increase, for they have three Crops in a Year, and besides all those known in *Europe*, they have a small sort call'd *Tef*, which makes good Bread. Nor is there less plenty of Grass, or of all odoriferous, useful or Medicinal Plants found in *Europe*, besides many that are utterly unknown to us.

The Kine grow to a prodigious Bulk, and the Horses extraordinary swift, yet they generally travel on Mules, taught to Pace, Camels being only us'd to cross sandy Plains, because they endure the Heat, but not the stony Ways. The Elephants go in great Drove, making dreadful havock in the Woods. Here is another Beast much taller than an Elephant, tho' not so corpulent. the Legs being so long that a Man may pass under its Belly without stooping, the Neck proportionable to reach down to the Ground to graze. This they call *Giratacachem*, and is likely the *Struthio-Camelus* mention'd in ancient Authors. Another the *Portugueses* call a wild Ass, because it has Ears like it, deserves not the Name on any other account, being as big as a Mule, slick and well shap'd, but so curiously and exactly cover'd with black and grey Streaks across the Back, from the Neck to the Tail, that nothing can be done more exact with a Pencil. Besides these, there are Tigers, Lions, Wolves, Leopards, Foxes, Monkeys, Cat a Mounts, Civet-Cats, Hares, Rabbits, and all other sorts of Creatures. The Rivers have River-Horses, thought to be the *Behemoth* in *Job*, Crocodiles, Water-Lizards, &c. And the Air all sorts of Birds, great variety of Insects, and infinite Swarms of Bees.

The Natives are generally peaceable among themselves, and if any Quarrels happen, they seldom go beyond Cuffs, and these Controversies are always decided by Umpires they chuse themselves. The People of the Kingdom of *Narcia* excel all the rest in Wit, Generosity, Courage, and all other Virtues; yet they are generally curious, and love to learn, but the Natives of *Tigre* are for the most part Inconstant, Perfidious, Cruel and Revengeful. They are all in general handsomer than the other sorts of Blacks, differing in nothing from the *Europeans* but in Colour, some of them Jeat Black, others Tawny, and others of an Olive-Colour, which they value most. Besides some are of a deepish Red, and others of a disagreeable yellow Hue. They are Active, good at climbing Rocks, Healthy, and Long-Liv'd.

The Women are Vigorous, and frequently Deliver themselves without help, and bear Children, as appears by the great multitude of People. The common sort wear only Breeches, and a piece of Cloth wrapp'd about them, which is all the Bed-Cloaths



Cloaths they have at Night, lying on a Hide. Those who are better to pass have a light Garment or Shirt, for it serves for both, button'd down before. Both Men and Women wear long Hair, and that always anointed with Butter.

The prevailing, and as we may say, established Religion of *Æthiopia*, is the Christian, which was first brought in by the Eunuch of Queen *Candace*, who was Baptiz'd by *Philip*, as is declar'd in the Acts of the Apostles, but could not spread much, nor did it long after, till in the 4th Century *S. Athanasius*, Patriarch of *Alexandria*, sent *S. Frumentius* thither, who converted the greatest part of the Nation, and from his time there has always been a vast number of Monks or Religious Men throughout the Empire, as there is at this Day. But as to their particular Opinions, they are *Eutychians*, confounding the two Natures in *JESUS CHRIST*, besides several other wild Tenets crept in among them through Ignorance, which was so great, that they had several ways of baptizing their Children, and all of them far from the right. Besides they Circumcise both Males and Females, forbear Swines Flesh, keep the Sabbath, and have many more *Jewish* Observations, which, tho' they pretend to be only ancient Customs, and not perform'd on any Religious Account, yet savour too much of Infection. Besides the Christians, here are also great Numbers of *Jews*, *Mahometans*, and Pagans.

The ancient Language of *Abyssinia* is that they call *Leshau Geez*, or the Tongue of the Kingdom of *Geez*, and this is the Language they generally write in, being very like the *Arabic*, and seems to flow from it. At Court the common Language spoken is that of *Amahara*, and most other Provinces have their particular Dialects. The *Jews* have a peculiar Tongue among themselves.

That this is the Country of the much talk'd of *Prefter John*, has been very obstinately defended by some, and is positively contradicted by others, with very good Reason, tho' the Controversy in it self is of no great Moment, the ground whereof seems to be thus. There was an ancient Race of Christian Princes in the Kingdom of *Tenduc* in the *Proper Tartary*, who as we have already said in our account of *Tartary*, bore the Appellation of *Prefter* or *Presbyter John*, as he was corruptly call'd by the *Europeans*. A Name deriv'd from the first of them,

whose proper Name was *Jug-Chan*, to which the Epithet of *Prefterian*, which signified Apostolical or Orthodox, was added, either by his own Command, or by the Compliment of his Subjects, which being handed to us was corrupted, as we have said, to *Prefter John*, and suppos'd to mean that he was so call'd as being Priest as well as King. The Name of this Prince being great in *Europe*, *Peter Covilan* (who, as we have told you in our Account of the Discovery of *India*, was sent over-Land by *John* the 2d. King of *Portugal*) made enquiry after him in *India*, but heard of no such Prince there; however, being inform'd that there was a potent Christian Prince in *Africa* he took his Court in his way home, and was so kindly treated there, that he concluded this must be the famous *Prefter John* so much talk'd of, and accordingly brought that Name home, which has ever since remain'd in *Europe*. These People call a King, *Nugue*, and their Emperour, *Nugua Nagasta*, that is *King of Kings*. As to their ancient History, it is very uncertain little Learning having ever been among them, yet they pretend the Queen of *Sheba* was their Sovereign, that *Salomon* got her with Child, and from that Son their present Emperours are descended. Queen *Candace* is mention'd in the *Roman History* on account of the War made upon *Egypt* in *Augustus's* Reign, but being repuls'd, and a *Roman Garrison* planted on the Confines, we hear no more of the *Æthiopians* till the *Portugueses* visited their Country. In the Year 1541 *Christopher de Gama* was sent into *Abyssinia* by the King of *Portugal* with 4 or 500 Men to the assistance of the Emperour *David*, who was much distress'd by the *Mahometan* King of *Zeilan*, and the *Turks*. *David* was then newly dead, and *Claudius* had succeeded him, who with this new Reinforcement gain'd two Victories over his Enemies, but the *Portugueses* being at last most of them cut off in a third Engagement, the Affairs of the *Abyssinians* declin'd, and in short, the *Turks* have taken from them all the Sea Coast, and the barbarous *Galas* the better half of the Inland Country. When the *Portugueses* undertook to assist the *Abyssinians*, they also sent Learned Men to instruct them in the *Roman Catholick Religion*, whom the Natives cherish'd for some time, but afterwards they put to Death or expell'd the Missioners, chusing rather to adhere to their old Rites than submit to them of that Church.

## C H A P. XIV.

### The Coast of Zanguebar, including Aiani and Abex.

THE Coast of *Abex* is a narrow slip of Land running along the Red Sea, from the South Frontiers of *Egypt* to the Streight of *Babel-Mandel*. It was all formerly subject to the Emperour of *Æthiopia*, but at present to the *Turk*, by whom it has been Conquer'd above 100 Years, by which means the *Abyssinians* are quite shut up from the Red Sea, the *Mahometans* being possess'd of all the Coast and Ports in it.

The principal Places here are the Town and Port of *Saigum*, in the Province of *Damir*,

in about 18 Degrees 4 Minutes of North Latitude, and opposite to it, at a small distance, is a small Island of the same Name. Southward of it is the Port of *Arquico*, or *Ercoco*, the *Adula* of the Ancients, in about 15 Degrees and half Latitude, and opposite to another little Island call'd *Mazea*. The other Towns along this Coast, are *Degibeldara*, *Degibelcora*, and *Vellu*.

*Mazea* Island, above mention'd, is dangerous of access, especially when the Wind blows at South. The Natives of it are reckon'd good Soldiers.



are cloath'd in Cotton, or Silk, and the Women ever kept close till Married. *Delica*, or *Dalaca*, about 20 Leagues South of *Mizua*, another Island larger than either of the others, well water'd, healthy, and therefore well Peopled; yet being very Rocky, yields not much Corn, but abundance of Pasture. The Natives have Barley and Honey from the Continent; for Fish, whereof they take Plenty, as also some Pearls. The People are Black, Courageous, and sworn Enemies to the *Turks*; ill-look'd, and no better natur'd to Strangers, and all of them Pirates, robbing *Mahometans*, *Jews*, and Christians alike. Their Language differs from all others about them; they go naked down to the Waste, and wrap a piece of Calico about the rest. Their Prince is Sovereign over some other Neighbouring Islands, and most of them *Abyssine* Christians, the rest *Mahometans* of the Sect of *Hali*.

The Island of *Babel-Mandel* lies directly in the Mouth of the Red Sea. The Name signifies, The Gate of Affliction, and was formerly call'd *The Island of Diodorus*. It lies about 12 Degrees 50 Minutes of North Latitude, and is about 4 or 5 Miles in Compass, bearing neither Grass nor Trees. The *Arabs* and *Abyssinians* long contended for it, till the *Portugueses* utterly destroy'd all that was on it, since which time it has never been Peopled.

All along this Coast of *Abex* runs a ridge of steep, craggy Mountains, so that there is no passage into *Abyssinia* but by *Arquico* and *Suaquem*, and even there the Road is so bad that there is no Travelling above four or five Miles a Day. The Country is generally dry and barren, yet abounds with Lions, Tigers, Elephants and Deer. The Inhabitants are Blacks, *Turks*, and *Arabs*, and drive a Trade with the opposite Coast of *Arabia*.

The *Arabs* call the Red Sea *Bahaz Queizum*, that is, the dry Sea; others the Streights of *Mecca*, from that famous City in *Arabia*. It runs up between the Coasts of *Africk* and *Asia*, parting these two Quarters of the World. The Mouth of it is form'd by the two famous Capes, *Guardafu* in *Africk*, and *Fartaque* in *Arabia*, which are 60 Leagues asunder, the Island *Babel-Mandel* above spoken of lying directly between two others 100 Leagues from those above. The Length of this Sea from the Mouth now describ'd to *Suez*, where it ends, is 500 Leagues. Much contest has been about the reason of calling this the Red Sea, some pretending it was from the Red Sands, others from Red Coral, and others from King *Erythrus*, whereas there is nothing more certain than that it was so call'd from *Esan*, the Son of *Isaac*, otherwise nam'd *Edom*, whence the Land of *Edom* and this Sea of *Edom*, which Word in *Hebrew* signifies Red, and this the first *Greeks* translated *Erythros*, from them the *Latins*, *Mare Rubrum*, and so the Red Sea in all Languages.

The Coast of *Aian* being the second Part of what we include under the general Name of *Zanguebar*, begins at the Streight of *Babel-Mandel*, and running Eastward to Cape *Guardafu* in 11 Degrees Latitude, there it turns away to South-West till it comes to the Equator, where it is parted by the River *Quilmanca* from *Zanguebar*, properly so call'd. *Aian* is divided into the Kingdoms of *Adel*, or *Zeila*, *Adea*, and *Magadoxa*, and the Republick of *Brava*.

The Kingdom of *Adel*, or *Zeila*, so call'd from the two most considerable Cities in it has the Mouth of the Red Sea on the North, part of the Coast of *Abex* and of *Abyssinia* on the West; the Kingdom of *Adea* on the South, and the *Indian Ocean* on the East. The Side from *Abex* to Cape *Guardafu* is about 100 Leagues, and the other from that Cape to the Frontiers of *Adea*, above 70.

*Adel*, the Capital City, lies up the Inland in about 9 Degrees of Latitude, not much resorted to by our Travellers, and consequently little known, *Affum*, or *Affion* is on the *Indian Sea*, plentifully supply'd with all sorts of Provisions, yet little frequented by Ships, because it wants a Harbour. Cape *Guardafu* is to the Northward in 12 Degrees and a half Latitude, thought to be the *Aromata* of *Ptolemy*. To the Westward of the Cape are *Salir*, formerly *Mosilon*, then *Barbora*, *Meth*, and lastly, *Zeila*, one of the best Towns in the Country, seated on a Bay, without the Streight of *Babel-Mandel*, and forming a good Harbour. It is very populous, the Streets handsome, and the Buildings of Lime and Stone.

This Kingdom has scarce any Mountains, and tho' it has little Rain, yet it is very fruitful, as being water'd by several Rivers. One of these call'd *Havafsch* comes out of *Abyssinia*, but cannot finish its Course to the Sea, by Reason it is all drein'd away by the many Trenches the Country People draw from it to water their Land, which produces so much Wheat, Barley and Millet, that it supplies other Neighbouring Countries. Here are Sheep, whose Tails weigh 25 Pounds; and Cows with Horns like Deer; and others with only one Horn. Besides Grain and Cattel, this Kingdom affords Gold, Ivory, Frankincense, Pepper and Slaves.

The King and all his Subjects are *Mahometans*; and he is reckon'd a Saint by the *Turks*, for making War on the *Abyssinians*. The Natives are either white or tawny, and wear Calico from their Waste downward, the Rest of the Body naked. They are good Soldiers and Buy all their Arms of the *Turks* and *Arabs*.

The Kingdom of *Adea* has *Adel* on the North, *Oyia* a Kingdom of *Ethiopia* on the West; *Magadoxa* on the South, and the *Indian Sea* on the East. The Principal Towns in it are *Zachet* an Inland Place Westward; *Migiale* more to the Eastward, and *Bendel*, the only Sea-Port, all this Kingdom lying up the Land, and towards the Back of *Magadoxa*. *Orgabra* lies to the Southward of the others. The King and Natives are *Mahometans*, but the Lordship of *Granze*, which lies next *Ethiopia*, is most inhabited by Idolaters, and hence sally'd a People, who broke into *Abyssinia*, and made great Conquests there.

*Magadoxa* is hemm'd in on the North and West by the Kingdom of *Adea*; to the Eastward it lies along the *Indian Ocean*, and on the South has the Republick of *Brava*, being a narrow Dominion along the Sea Coast, much traded to from *Cambaya* and *Aden*. The King is a *Mahometan*, and all his Subjects speak *Arabick*, tho' there be White, Tawny, and Black. In their Wars they use poison'd Arrows. The Country abounds in Pasture, Barley, and Fruit.

*Brava*, is a considerable Town, almost under the Equator, betwixt two Branches of the River *Quilmanca*, Wall'd and Built after the *Moorish* manner. The Inhabitants are rich Merchants, trading in Gold, Silver, Silks, &c. This is in all likelihood



Unlikeliest the only Commonwealth in all *Africa*, the Government Aristocratical, the Inhabitants choosing 12 *Xeques*, out of the Ancientest of certain *African* Families, which are the Offspring of 7 Brothers *Arabs*, who fled thither from the Tyranny of the Kings of *Lycia*. Much Ambergreece is found upon this Coast. The City was by the *Portuguese* call'd *Barraboa*, that is, the Good Bar, because there is good Access to it from the Sea.

Before we leave the Coast of *Africa*, we must not omit to say something of the famous Island *Zocotoro*. *Pliny* and *Ptolemy* call it the Island of *Dicoides*, and it lies in 12 Degrees Latitude, due West from Cape *Guardafui*, being about 25 Leagues in Length, and 18 over in the widest Place. About it there is good Anchoring in deep Water, besides two sufficient Harbours call'd *Cora* and *Benin*. There is but one Town in it, where the *Xeque* resides, besides several scatter'd Dwellings about. The great Product here is the Aloes, which being the best in the World, has given Occasion to the Name of *Aloe Succotrina*, corruptly for *Zocotrina*. Here is also Dragon's Blood, which is the Gum of a Tree the *Indians* call *Ser*. The Inhabitants are either *Arabs*, or Natives, call'd by those others *Beduines*, that is, brutal, stupid People, or Mongrels, between *Beduines* and *Arabs*. As for these last, they are like the Rest of their Nations; the Mongrels are generally deformed, and little regarded. The true *Beduines* hate the *Arabs*, are white and Well-shap'd, but Base, Cowardly and Slothful, and think it a Crime to cut their Hair or Beard. They feed on Milk, Butter, Dates and Flesh. Their Habit is a sort of Stuff made of Goats Hair, which they wrap about their Waist, and a long Cloak over their Shoulders hanging down to their Heels. As to Religion, they are Idolaters, and pay their principal Adoration to the Moon; but the greatest part of those who ever conversed with the *Arabs*, are become *Mahometans*.

#### Zanguebar,

Properly so call'd from the *Arabick* *Zangue*, Black, is thought to be the same *Ptolemy* names *Agisimba*, reaching from the River *Quilmanca*, above mention'd, which parts it from the Coast of *Africa*, to the River of *Cuama*, dividing it from the Coast of the *Cafres*, in 18 Degrees of South Latitude. The West Side of it running along the Lower *Aethiopia*, and the East along the *Indian* Ocean. This great Length of 18 Degrees, or 1080 Miles has no proportionable Breadth, which in the widest Place is not above 300 Miles, and much less in others.

Passing the Line to the Southward, the first Places we meet with are *Pase* and *Lamo*, both on the Coast, which are two small Principalities. The first a large City, well built, and has a good Harbour; the latter not so Large, but wall'd, and the Residence of another *Mahometan* Prince. *Sana*, *Cochie* and *Ampaza*, are three other inconsiderable States, close by the former, and to one another; of all which there is scarce any more to say, but that in the flourishing Times of the *Portuguese*, they were Tributary to them, and have since cast off their Yoke.

The Kingdom of *Melinde* is next to the Southward, more considerable than all those above, as extending back behind them up to the

Line, and having some small Extent along the Coast. The Capital City bears the same Name, seated in the Plain of a Rocky Coast, encompass'd with Orchards, Palm-Trees and Woods of Fruit-Trees; the Buildings slightly, the Country well stor'd with Cattel, the Natives Pagans, of Colour swarthy, and strong of Body; the Women agreeable, and cloath'd from the Waist down in Silk or Calico, and Veils with Gold Laces on their Heads. The *Guzerat* Merchants Trade here, and in return for their Spice, Silks and Calicoes, carry back Gold, Ivory, Ambergreece and Wax. The King is a *Mahometan*, and is serv'd in great State and Splendor. The *Portuguese*, at their first coming into *India*, establish'd a lasting Peace with this Prince, which has been generally well observ'd, and by virtue of it the Christians have free Exercise of their Religion in several Churches.

Next follows *Mombaza*, another Kingdom, the City standing in an Island, is Beautiful and Strong, and before it a large Bay capable of holding of many Ships. The *Portuguese* made themselves Masters of this Place and held it many Years, but were at last expell'd by the *Moors*, who for their greater Security, put themselves under the Protection of the *Turks*.

*Quiloa*, is another City and Kingdom, still to the Southward, taking its Name from a little Island near the Continent, at the Mouth of the River *Cuavo*. The City is in the Island; the Buildings handsom, after the *Spanish* Fashion, several Stories high, with a Garden to each. There is another City on the Continent, call'd *Old Quiloa*. The *Mahometan* Prince, who reign'd there was very Potent, before the *Portuguese* made themselves Masters of that Coast, for his Dominions extended 250 Leagues; but in the Year 1505, *Francis de Almeida* took the City, and made all the Kingdom Tributary to *Portugal*; however of late Years they have lost all their Power in those Parts. The Sea yields great Store of Fish, and the Land abounds in Cattel, and all sorts of Fowl. The People are Clad some after the *Arabian*, others according to the *Turkish* Manner, wearing rich Cloth of Gold, Silks and Calicoes, with Turbants of the same. The Women wear Gold Chains about their Arms and Ancles, and rich Pendants. In Mourning for their Kindred, they lay aside all their Costly Ornaments. The Language generally Spoken is *Arabick*; most of them are *Mahometans*, the Rest Pagans, or Atheists.

*Mozambique* City and Kingdom is in about 15 Degrees of South Latitude. The Land bears much Rice, and other Grain, as also Oranges and Limons. Here are vast Numbers of Wild Beasts, but particularly so many Elephants, that they have much Difficulty to keep them out of the Corn Fields, and the People dare hardly go far without Firebrands in their Hands to fright them. The Blacks here have frizly Hair and thick Lips, going naked, only their Privities cover'd with a Clout, or the Bark of a Tree, painting the rest of their Bodies of several Colours, and boring their Lips to hang Ivory Toys on them. They Eat all sorts of Flesh, especially the Elephants, and even Men they take in War, and are false, brutal and fit for Labour. Their Wealth consists in Gold, found in the Rivers, Ebony, Ivory and Slaves. Their Religion is partly *Mahometan* and partly Pagan, or rather none at all.



The two last Kingdoms in *Zanguebar* to the South are *Mongalo* and *Angos*, both small and inconsiderable, differing very little from the last, and lying along the Banks of the River *Cuama*.

Opposite to this Coast are several small Islands, inhabited by Blacks and *Arabs*, but have not any thing particular to deserve describing.

## CHAP. XV.

### OF NEGROLAND, or the Country of the Blacks.

HAVING pursu'd this Coast so far to the South, it is Time now to return to the Westward of *Abyssinia*, to the Country of the Blacks, particularly call'd by this Name, tho' other Parts of *Africk*, might as well deserve it, the Natives being all of the same Colour. This great Tract of Land runs along the Country of *Zahara*, or the Desert, on the North, from which it is parted by Mountains and Desarts; on the East it has the Kingdom of *Borno*, and the most Northern Slip of *Guinea*, on the South a Chain of Mountains parts it from *Guinea*, and on the West the *Atlantick* Ocean. From East to West it is above 2000 Miles in Length, and the greatest Breadth from North to South, which is next the Sea, about 900.

The River *Niger*, the greatest in *Africk*, by the Natives call'd *Hued Niger*, cuts all this Land in two from East to West, leaving several Kingdoms on the North and others to the South, as we shall see in their proper Place. All the ancient Geographers were Positive that this River came

from the same Source as the *Nile*; but the late Discovery of the Springs of this last has clear'd that Mistake; and it is now agreed among all Modern Writers, that the *Niger* flows out of a Lake in the Lower *Ethiopia*, whence winding to the Northward till it reaches the Kingdom of *Borno*, already spoke of, it there turns to the West, and traverses all *Negroland*, as has been said. It swells in *June*, like the *Nile*, and overflows all the Low Lands for 24 and 30 Days, fertilizing the Country, and then returning into its Channel, falls into the Sea at several Mouths, the most Northerly, in about 15 Degrees of North Latitude call'd *Senega*, the next Southward *Gambia*, the third *Santo Domingo*, and the fourth *Rio Grande*, or the Great River.

The Division of *Negroland*, allowing the Kingdoms of *Borno* and *Gaogao* to *Zahara*, or the Desert, as we describ'd them in speaking of that Country, will be into the following Kingdoms, with the Towns of any Note we can find in them.

On the North Side of the <i>Niger</i> .	Gangara.	{ <i>Gangara.</i> <i>Secmwa.</i> <i>Semegonda.</i>	On the South Side of the <i>Niger</i> .	Zanfara.	{ <i>Zanfara.</i> <i>Reghebil.</i>					
	Cassena.	{ <i>Cassena.</i> <i>Marata.</i> <i>Tirca.</i>		Zegzeg.	{ <i>Zegzeg.</i> <i>Ghanara.</i>					
	Cano.	{ <i>Cano.</i> <i>Germa.</i> <i>Tassava.</i>		Guber.	{ <i>Guber.</i> <i>Malel.</i>					
	Agades.	{ <i>Agades.</i> <i>Mira.</i> <i>Mayma.</i> <i>Tombut.</i>		Gago.	{ <i>Gago.</i> <i>Dau.</i> <i>Tombi.</i>					
	Tombut.	{ <i>Cabra.</i> <i>Salla.</i> <i>Berissa.</i> <i>Tocror.</i> <i>Gueguere.</i> <i>Godia.</i> <i>Genehoa.</i>		Mandinga.	{ <i>Mandinga.</i> <i>Tocror.</i>					
		Genehoa.		{ <i>Ganar.</i> <i>Kockio.</i> <i>Sambalamck.</i> <i>Kellen.</i> <i>Gualata.</i> <i>Angra.</i> <i>Arguyn.</i> <i>Hoden.</i> <i>Fulli.</i>	Soufos.	{ <i>Soufos.</i>				
				Gualata.		Melli.	{ <i>Melli.</i> <i>Cantori.</i>			
						Among the Branches of the <i>Niger</i> .		Jaloses.	{ <i>Budomel.</i> <i>Solul.</i> <i>Juala.</i> <i>Refasco.</i> <i>Barfola.</i> <i>Cassan.</i>	
										Cofanges.
				Biafara.						

Gangara.

This Kingdom, the most Westwardly of *Negroland*, has *Borno* on the East, *Lempta* on the North, *Quat* on the West, and the River *Niger*, parting it from *Zanfara*, on the South. The Capital

of the same Name is wall'd, the other Towns very mean, and consisting of Cottages, rather than Houses; but the People are rich, as Trading for Gold; which they fetch over such steep high Mountains, that no Beasts can Climb them, and the Slaves carry the Commodities; and their Provisions



in large Calabashes. The King can raise 2000 Archers and 500 Horse upon call, and is an absolute Prince.

#### Zanfara

Lies South of *Gumma*, East of *Zegzeg*, North of *Bornu* and *Bornu*, and West of *Bornu*. The Town is not worth mentioning, nor scarce are there others. The Natives are well shaped of Body, and very Black, but their Faces deformed and hideous, and the Soil yields Corn, Rice and Cotton.

#### Zegzeg,

The next Kingdom Westward, borders Eastward on *Zanfara*, Southward on *Benin*, Westward on *Gago*, and Northward has the River *Niger* to part it from *Cassena*. One half of it is Plain, excessive Hot, the other half very cold Mountains, on which the Natives are fain to keep Pans of Fire under their Beds to warm them. All the Country abounds in Water and Corn, the People are rich by Trade, but their Habitations very miserable.

#### Cassena,

Parted from the last by the *Niger* on the South, joins to *Gumma* on the East, to *Lompia* on the North, and to *Cano* on the West. All its Towns are open, like great scattering Villages, and the Houses mere Cottages. The Country Mountainous, producing much Barley and Millet. The Natives are very black, have large flat Noses and thick Lips.

#### Cano

Borders Eastward on *Cassena*, Northward on *Lompia* and *Tapi*, Westward on *Agades*, and Southward is separated by the *Niger* from *Guber*. Its Metropolis, bearing the same Name, stands near the Middle of it, enclosed with Walls of Stone and Timber, and the Houses built after the same Manner. The Country is divided by Hills covered with Wild Orange and Limon-Trees, bearing good Fruit, the Land well water'd and feeding great Numbers of Cattel; as also bearing much Wheat, Rice and Cotton. There are many more open Towns, like Villages, the Inhabitants whereof are Shepherds and Husbandmen; those of the Capital follow Trade. The Prince here was formerly Powerful, but now Tributary to the King of *Cassena*.

#### Guber

Lies South of *Cano*, parted from it by the *Niger*, has *Zegzeg* on the East, the Gold Coast on the South, and *Gago* on the West, from which it is parted by a Desert. The Country is in the midst of high Mountains, and full of open Towns, like Villages, that where the King keeps his Court contains about 6000 Houses. It is well regulated, on account of the many Merchants and Handicrafts, many of these being Cotton Weavers, and others Shoe-makers, which they carry to sell at *Gago* and *Tombut*.

#### Gago

Is West of *Guber*, North of the Gold Coast, East of *Mandinga*, and South of *Tombut* and *Agades*. The Chief Town of it, bearing the same

Name, is in about 12 Degrees of North Latitude, without Walls, or any Defence, but has some tolerable Houses. The Country abounds in Corn, Rice, Cattel and Grass, has little Fruit, but bounds with Gold; for which Caravans of Merchants come from *Morocco*, with great Danger of their Lives crossing the Unhabitable Desert. Only the Capital deserves the Name of a Town, the rest being poor Villages, inhabited by Savage Country People. In Winter they wear Skins, and in Summer go naked, with only a Clout before them.

#### Agades

Has the *Niger* on the South which parts it from *Gago*, *Cano* on the East *Zuenziga* and *Tapi* on the North, and *Tombut* on the West. The Town it takes Name from, is towards the Frontiers next *Zanfara*, wall'd, built after the *Moorish* Fashion, and the King's Palace in the midst of it. The Inhabitants are many of them Merchants and Strangers, the rest Handicrafts and Soldiers. Those of the Southern Parts of the Kingdom, are generally Shepherds and Herdsmen, living in Huts made of Boughs and Mats, and wandring from Place to Place. The Prince is Tributary to the King of *Tombut*. There is great Plenty of Cattel, Grass and Water in the Country, and in the Deserts they gather Manna, which they keep in Calabashes to sell to the Merchants.

#### Tombut,

The Largest and most Powerful of all these Kingdoms, is bounded on the East by *Agades*, on the North by *Zuenziga* and *Zimbaga*, on the West by *Gualata* and *Geneboa*, and on the South by the River *Niger*, dividing it from *Jalofes*, *Mandinga* and *Gago*. Its chief Town was built in the Year 1221 by King *Mense Soliman*, four Leagues from the Branch of the *Niger*, call'd *Seneza*, the Houses of Timber cover'd with Mud and Straw; but there is a Mosque and Palace made of Stone. Four Leagues from it on the *Niger*, is another large Town, call'd *Babra*, without Walls or other Defence, the Houses like those of *Tombut*. There the Vessels that bring Goods along the River either way, Unload, to transport them by Land to *Guinea*.

The Country abounds in Wheat, Barley, and Millet, and feeds so much Cattel, that Milk and Butter are very cheap; but Salt dear, being brought 170 Leagues, and all their good Horses are brought from *Babary*. The Natives are *Mahometans*, but Courteous, Affable, and Pleasant, using to Dance to a flat sort of Tabers, they hold with one Hand and beat with the other, having Bells hanging to them, and they keep many Slaves. The King maintains learned Men, and they have many *Arabic* Books, which they Purchase at any Rate. The Townsfolk trade much in Cotton. They feed on Milk, Butter, Flesh and Fish. The Women, who are not Slaves, cover their Faces abroad. Their Money has but one Letter on it, and the most Valuable is only small Bits of Gold.

The King styles himself Emperour of *Melli*, and is very rich in Ingots of Gold. The Kingdoms *Gualata*, *Cano*, *Cassena*, *Zegzeg*, *Guber*, *Melli* and *Agades* are Tributary to him. The Merchants of *Fez* and *Morocco* bring many Commodities hither to exchange for *Mandinga* Gold.

#### Mandinga,



Mandinga

Lies South of *Tombut*, parted from it by the *Niger*, with *Gago* on the East of it, the *Soufos* and Gold Coast on the South, and the same *Soufos* and *Melli* on the East. It is water'd by several small Rivers, which fall into the *Niger*. The principal Town, of the same Name with the Kingdom, stands in the Western Part, next to *Melli*; besides which, there is another call'd *Tocror*, on the *Niger*.

The People here are reckon'd the Handsomest in all *Negroland*, but Barbarous and Perfidious; yet counted the best Horsemen and Soldiers in those Parts. This Country yields much Gold, which the Merchants carry to *Tombut*, to Trade with those that come from *Barbary*. The Prince once Lorded it over many of his Neighbours, but at present his Power extends no farther than his own Kingdom. The Religion was formerly Idolatry, but of late Mahometanism has prevail'd.

Soufos, or Bena,

Has *Mandinga* on the North, the Gold Coast on the East, *Malagueta* on the South, and the same and *Melli* on the West. It is a small Country, all Hilly, well water'd and full of Grass. Here are Snakes, spotted of several Colours, as thick as a Man's Thigh; the King generally has one of them about him, as we keep Dogs, and no Man does hurt it. The King here, and all his Subjects are Idolaters.

Melli

Reaches to the Ocean on the West, to *Malagueta* on the South, to *Soufos* and *Mandinga* on the East, and to *Tombut* on the North. The Town of the same Name is open, scattering and consists of about 6000 Inhabitants, where the Prince keeps his Court. The Country affords Corn, Cattel and Cotton, and the Inhabitants are enrich'd by Trade. They have *Mosques*, and Doctors to instruct them in Religion and *Arabick*, being most *Mahometans*, and Tributary to the King of *Tombut*.

Genehoa

Lies beyond the River *Senega*, which is its Boundary on the South as the Ocean is on the West; the River *Arguin*, which parts it from *Gualata* on the North, and the Kingdom of *Tombut* on the East. The Capital of it is no better than a great Village, where the King lives, with the Doctors of the Law and his Chief Men, the Houses being all Thatch'd Cottages, with Mud Walls. The Overflowing of the *Niger* makes this Town an Island, whilst it lasts. Barley, Rice, Cattel and Fish is here in Plenty, but little Fruit. They have much Cotton, and exchange the Cloth made of it for that of *Europe*, Copper, Brass and other Necessaries, brought them from *Barbary*. The Natives wear Black or Blue Cotton Cloth, with Caps of the same.

Gualata

Follows next, divided on the South from *Genehoa* by the River *Arguin*, on the West it has the Ocean, on the North a Ridge of Mountains parts

it from *Zanhaga*, and on the West it borders on *Tombut*. It bears the Name of its Capital, which, as all the rest of the Towns, is no better than a great Village. The principal Product here is Rice, small Millet, Barley and Dates, and Flesh is very Dear. The People are tractable enough, tho' very disorderly in their way of Living, and are some *Mahometans* and some *Pagans*.

Jalofes, or Senega.

We come now to the Nations lying between the Branches of the *Niger*, whereof the most Northerly is that of the *Jalofes*, or *Senega*; the last of these Names given it from the great River which bounds it on the North, as does the *Gambia* on the South, the Ocean on the West, and the Conflux of those two Branches on the East. The greatest Prince here styles himself the Great *Jalofe*, being Sovereign over 13 or 14 petty Kings or Lords. In all this Dominion there is no wall'd Town. The famous *Cape Verd*, that is, the Green Cape, because the *Portuguese*, who first discover'd it found it very Green, is in his Dominions, in 15 Degrees of North Latitude, being the same *Ptolemy* calls *Arfinarium*. It is low, runs far out into the Sea, and has several Villages on it. The Soil of it self is good, but the Sloath of the Inhabitants is the Cause it produces little; only about *Cape Verd* there grows much Rice, Barley, and Cardamom; the common Grain is Indian Wheat, but here is store of Grass, Trees and Herbs, and abundance of Cattel; as also, Camels, Mules, Horses, Asses, Hares, Dogs, Cats and Monkeys. As for Birds, there are infinite Numbers of Parrots, and no want of Hens, Geese, Pigeons, Partridges, Woodcocks, Ducks and many more, peculiar to the Country. Salt hardens of it self in the *Senega*, whence it is taken out and dry'd upon the Land, in such Quantity that there is no End of it. The People are very Black, and strong of Body, Ignorant, and much addicted to Superstition and Sorcery. Their Houses are poor thatch'd Cottages and their Beds made of 5 or 6 Pieces of Wood rais'd from the Ground, on which they lay a Mat, and that serves for Quilt and Blankets. All the Household-stuff consists in a few Earthen Pots, their Arms, Axes to cleave Wood, and Shovels to throw up the Earth. All their Cloathing is only a Piece of Cotton Cloth lapp'd about them; but the Women have two, one about their Body and the other on their Head. They use little or no Ceremony in Marriages, but every Man may take as many Wives as he pleases; but they Bury their Dead with great Lamentation, and attend the Corps to the Grave. Their usual Weapons are Bows, Arrows and Darts, besides Cutlances, or Broad Swords. The generality of them are Pagans, tho' *Mahometanism* has long since crept in among them.

Casangas, Bijagas, or Biafara,

Is the next Nation of Note lying between the *Gambia*, the River *Santo Domingo*, and the Ocean. Next follow the *Bijagas*, betwixt the same Rivers, and *Biafara* beyond *Santo Domingo* to the Southward, in which there is nothing remarkable more than has been said of the others above, they being all Blacks, and little Differing from one another. Some Geographers name many Kingdoms, as they call them, besides what are



here mention'd, but they are only Villages and small Territories, which have Petty Lords, like the *Cangues* in the *West-Indies*, and not worth a Particular Account. All these Nations are too

Ignorant to have any thing of History; and even that Knowledge we have of them is very imperfect, except only along the Sea-Coast.

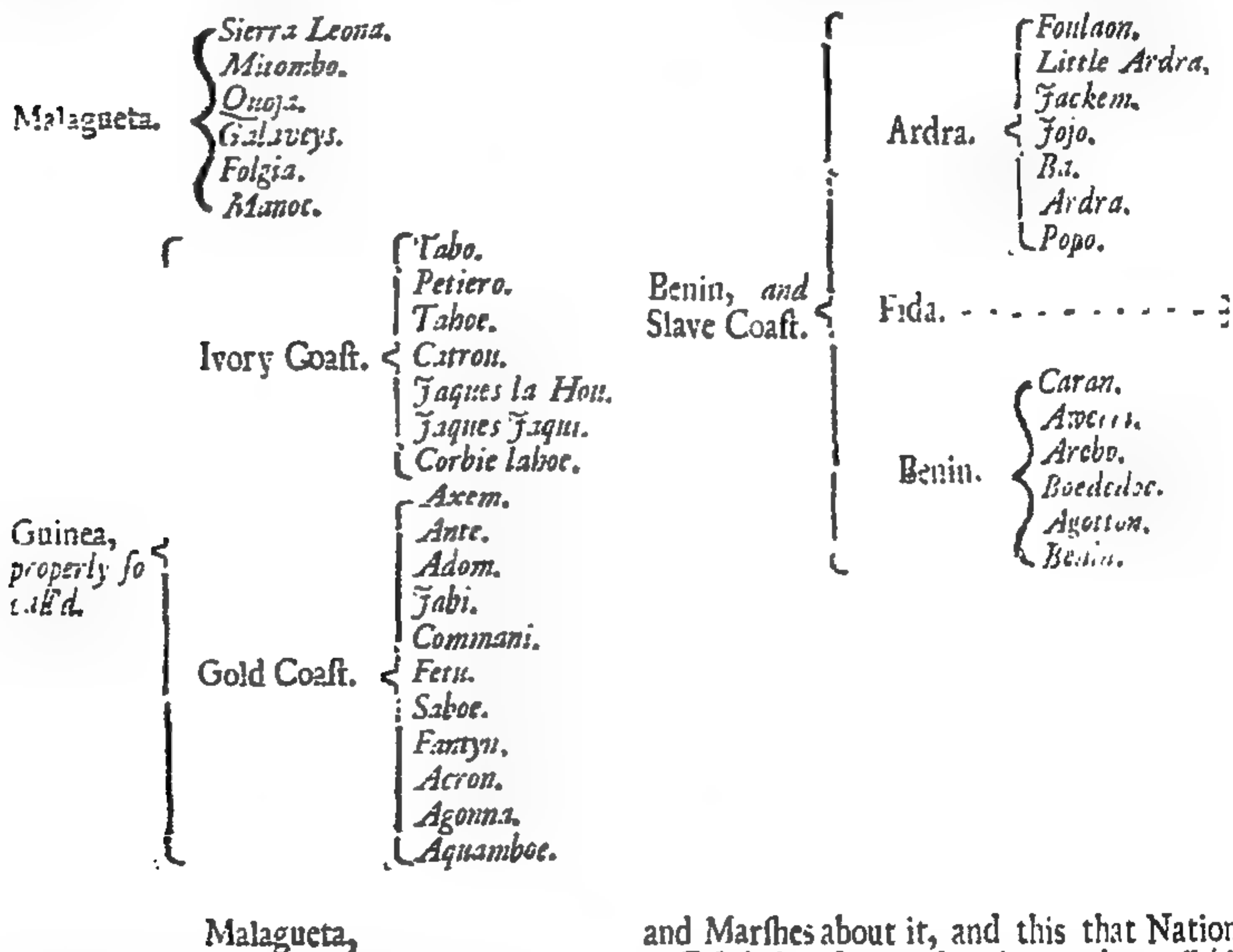
## C H A P. XVI.

## OF GUINEA.

**D**Escending Southward from *Negroland*, in Order to return Eastward, the next great Region we meet with is *Guinea*, extending about 1500 Miles in Length, from East to West, and 400 in the broadest Place from North to South, the Latitude between 5 and 11 Degrees North. On that Side it runs all along joyning to *Negroland*; on the East to the Upper or Northern Part of *Congo*, and on the South and West it has the Great Ocean.

The most general Division is into three Parts, *Malagueta*, *Guinea* properly so call'd, and *Benin*.

The first of them is that Vulgarly known by the Name of the Grain Coast, from the Grains of Paradise or Cardamom growing there, which in *Spanish* they call *Malagueta*; The second contains the Ivory and Gold Coasts; and the third may all be taken in under the Denomination of the Slave Coast. Each of these is again Sub-divided into several smaller Kingdoms and Dominions; of each whereof we will endeavour to give a Brief Account. The Names affix'd here to each Division are not of Towns, there being none worth naming, but of Kingdoms, Districts, or Provinces.



The most Western of these three large Provinces, has *Melli* and *Sorsos* on the North, *Guinea* properly so call'd, on the East, and the Ocean on the South and West, extending, according to the most receiv'd Limitation, to Cape *Palmas*; tho' *Bojman* carries it no farther than S. *John's* River, the Extent along the Coast North-west and South-east being short of 400 Miles, reckoning from *Sierra Leona* to the aforesaid Cape *Palmas*. *Sierra Leona* is the Name of a Mountain, a River, and a Kingdom; the Mountain so call'd by the *Portugueses*, because the beating of the Sea against it makes a Noise, like the roaring of a Lion. This is the first Kingdom to the Westward, and in it the Village of *Temb*, where the *English* Ships often Anchor. Up the Inland is the Kingdom of *Mitombo*, which Name the River of *Sierra Leona* also bears, where is a Town or Village the *Portugueses* call *At Alag*, because there are Lakes

and Marshes about it, and this that Nation have possess'd themselves of to keep other *Aethiopians* thence.

Next follows *Quoja*, reaching from the River *Magriba* to that of S. *Paul*, on both Sides Cape *Monte*, and has many Villages along the Rivers. Above them, up the Land, are the *Galaveys*, about the Springs of the River *Mavah*. *Folgja* and *Manoe* tend still to the South-east, near two Rivers the *Portugueses* call *dos Juncos*, or of Rushes, and *do Arvoredo*, of the Trees. Beyond that River *dos Juncos*, is that which in a stricter Sense is call'd, the Grain Coast, as producing the greatest Quantity, and most resorted to for it. However the Trade here is inconsiderable, and more especially of late Years. The Lords or Petty Kings in all this Tract of Land are almost as many as the Villages, under no fewer Barbarous Names, but most of them pay some Homage to the King of the *Quoja*; and therefore we shall not trouble the Reader with more of their insignificant



significant Dominions, but only add something in general of them all.

On this Coast, the Winter or rainy Season is from *May* till *October*, the latter part of it very subject to Storms. The whole Country is fruitful, and produces abundance of Plants wholly unknown to us. The Rivers of *Magnabah* and *Mavah* breed Crocodiles and River Horses. The Land has variety of Reptiles and Fowl, and most of our Animals, and many more never seen in *Europe*; among which are a sort of Satyrs in the Woods, thought to be Savage Men, altho' void of Reason, who Ravish Women, if they find an Opportunity. Of which Animal *Dr. Tyson* in his *Orange Outan* published on Occasion of one brought to *London*, has given a very Learned Account.

Most of these People live upon Tillage, the Land being free to every Body, Rice being the principal Grain, which they can gather thrice in a Year. The Women work at it as much as the Men, besides which, the latter employ themselves in Fishing and Hunting. The King has one out of every two Elephants, or Buffaloes they take, and the third of other Creatures; but if it be a River-Horse, or other Monstrous Creature, it all belongs to him. Besides, they give him about a tenth Part of all their Harvest, and the first Fruits they offer to their Idol *Belly*. Their Houses are round, as are their Villages, Palisadoed about, instead of a Wall, with four Bulwarks, covering as many Gates, so narrow that only one can go in or out at a time.

These Blacks are much addicted to Venery, and Drunkenness, otherwise they are good natur'd one to another; but make no scruple of robbing any Europeans. Sorcery is much practis'd among them, by which they pretend to do extraordinary Matters. The most common Diseases among them are the Flux, the Small Pox, Meagrim, and in old Age a Swelling in the Testicles. There are several Languages spoken among them, at no great Distance from one another, but that they call *Folgis* is the most Universal. In Point of Religion, they all Acknowledge one only God, Creator of Heaven and Earth, and Adore no Creature whatsoever, nor admit of any Representation of the Deity; yet they have a sort of Invocation of the Souls of their Ancestors, and generally use Circumcision.

Guinea, properly so call'd,

Contains the Ivory and Gold Coasts, reaching from Cape *Palmas*, to the River *Volta*, about 600 Miles in Length along the Sea Coast, and bordering Eastward on *Benin*, Northward on *Zegzeg*, *Guber*, *Gingo* and *Mandinga*, Westward on *Sonjos* and *Malagneta*, and to the Southward lying along the Ocean.

This, according to our common Acceptation, is subdivided into the Ivory and Gold Coasts; the first extending from Cape *Palmas* to the River *Suero da Cista*, and the other from thence to the River *Volta*.

The Ivory Coast is so call'd from the great Plenty of Elephants Teeth found there. About 5 Leagues to the Eastward of Cape *Palmas*, is the Village of *Tabe*; before which Ships often come to an Anchor to Trade, in 14 Fathom Water; farther on are the Villages of *Petiero* and *Tahoe*, and then the River of *S. Andree*. Next follows Cape *Lahoe*, where the Ivory Coast, properly so

call'd Ends, and that of *Quaqua* commences. Two Leagues from Cape *Lahoe*, is the Village of *Catron*, and Six Leagues farther that of *Jaques la Hou*; Six Leagues from that is *Jaques Jaqui*; where within Musket-shot of the Shore there is 50 Fathom Water. The last Village on this Coast, is that of *Corbie Lahoe*.

The Natives here are reckon'd as Polite as any of their Neighbours; they hate Drunkenness, and pretend to be averse to all Fraud in Trade. Their Principal Commodities are Elephants Teeth, as has been said, and Cotton Cloth; thence call'd *Quaqua*, which signifies - - - for indeed the Distinction of the Ivory Coast and that of *Quaqua* is imaginary, the one being the *English* and the other the Country Name. All this Coast, tho' there be abundance of petty Princes, is Subject to one Sovereign whom they call *Sacoo*, who is much dreaded of all his Neighbours, not so much for his Power, as for the Opinion they have that he can perform wonderful Things by Sorcery. One fundamental Law of this Government is, that every Man must remain in the Condition he was born, so that the Son of a Fisherman must follow that Trade, the Son of a Merchant must be of that Profession and so of all others. Their Worship is Idolatrous and full of Superstition, and they sometimes offer Men in Sacrifice.

The Gold Coast, so nam'd from the great Quantity of that Metal brought thence, is divided into eleven Districts, with each of them 1, 2, or 3 Villages. *Azem* the first of those Provinces, was once a considerable Kingdom, now divided between the *Dutch* and the *Brandenburgers*, the former of whom have a Fort there call'd *S. Antonies*, and the latter another 3 Miles East of them, which serve as a Check upon the Blacks. 2. *Ante*, or *Hante*, where by a Village call'd *Infuma*, the *English* built a small Fort in 1691, and the *Dutch* have another less than two Miles from it, call'd *Bafensteid*, and four Miles from that another call'd *Orange*. 3. *Adom*. 4. *Jabi*, in neither of which there is no Fort. 5. *Commami*, in which is the *Dutch* Fort call'd *Vreden-Burgh*, and a Musket shot from it an *English* one, and within three Miles another of the *Dutch*, the most famous of them all, built by the *Portugueses*, and by them call'd *S. George de la Mina*, or of the Mine, because of the great quantity of Gold they got there. 6. *Fetu*, and in it the *Dutch* Fort *Comradsburg*, and three Miles from it the *English* of Cape *Cors*, being the best on all that Coast, except *S. George de la Mina*, and close by, another on a Hill which over-looks the first. 7. *Saboe*, whereby the Village *Mourree* is the *Dutch* Fort *Nassau*. 8. *Fantyn*, in which the *Dutch* have one Fort, the *English* two, and three Lodges. 9. *Acron*, where the *Dutch* in 1697. built a Fort call'd *Leydsambeyd*, or Fort Patience. 10. *Agonna*, with a wretched *English* Fort built in 1694. And lastly, *Aquamboe*, where at the Village *Acra*, the *English*, *Dutch* and *Danes* have each of them a Fort.

All these here mention'd are along the Coast, those up the Inland are so numerous, so inconsiderable and so little known, that any Account of them would rather tire than inform the Reader, they being all meer Villages and their Territories, with the Names of Kings to them, tho' many of their Kingdoms do not extend 5 Miles.

To come to the Coast in general, our Summer is their Winter, and the Contrary, the Summer excessive Hot, as being within 5 or 6 Degrees of the



the Line. It is generally very unhealthy, but that is rather to Strangers than Natives, the unusual Heat of the Season being fatal to those who are us'd to colder Climates. The whole Coast is almost a continu'd Chain of Mountains, which occasions great Mists to rise from the Valleys amidst them, and these prove very Infections. The greatest Distempers the Natives are subject to, are the Worms and Small Pox; by which last, many Thousands are swept away.

The Blacks are here generally Crafty and Deceitful, given to Sloath and Idleness, and no less Careless and Stupid. Their Heads they adorn after several Manners, moistening their Hair with Oil, and fastning Trinkets to it of several sorts of Coral, and are so fond of Hats that they think no Price too great for them. Their Arms, Legs, and Wastes are adorn'd with Gold and Coral. Their Cloathing is 3 or 4 Yards of Velvet, Silk, Cloth or Stuff wrapp'd about their Middle and hanging down half way the Legs. The poorer sort wear just as much as will cover their Nakedness, and an old Hat, or a Cap made of Deers Skin, or of Rushes. The Women as in other Countries go finer than the Men, platting their Hair, and wearing much Gold and Coral about their Necks, Arms and Legs, and so great a Quantity about their Waste as would hide their Nakedness, if they had no Cloaths, which are like the Mens, distinguish'd only by being longer.

The Children are suckled two or three Years, and then no farther care taken of Education, but only give them something to Eat, and let them do what they please; only that they are all to follow their Parents Profession. The common Food is Millet boild thick, with a little Palm-Oil over it, now and then some Fish, and Flesh but very seldom, or upon Festivals; but what they spare in Meat they make up in Drink, being extremely fond of Brandy and Palm-Wine. All their Handicrafts consist in making of Wooden, or Earthen Cups and Troughs, Marrying, Copper Boxes for Ointment, Bracelets and other Ornaments; but tho' they have sorry Tools they are good Smiths, especially for making all sorts of Arms, except Guns. The Language differs very often, there being 7 or 8 several sorts spoken along the Gold Coast.

#### The Kingdom of Benin, and Slave Coast,

Both of them comprehended under one Head, as a Third Division of the Coast of Guinea, extend from the Village of *Popo*, East of *Rio Volta* to the River *Camaroons* on the East, being about 600 Miles in Length, and from the Frontiers of *Zigzag* on the North, to the Ocean on the South, which is about 400 Miles in Breadth.

On the Slave Coast the first Kingdom we find is that of *Arder*, or *Adra*, reaching about 18 Leagues along the Coast, on which are the Villages of *Foulson* and *Little Arder*. Northward from *Arder* about a League is the Town of *Jackem*, encompass'd with a Ditch, fill'd from a River. Three days Journey up the Land, is the Village of *Jepo*, and half a League from it, that of *Ba*, where the King's Governour resides. Eighteen Leagues North North-east from the Coast is *Great Adra*, an open Town, but very Large, the Houses scattering, and the Residence of the King. This Country does not agree with *Europeans*, and the Port of *Popo*, often proves fatal to them, and yet they resort thither very much for Slaves. As

for the Land it is good, being most plain and fruitful, yielding Millet, Palm Wine, all sorts of Plants and Fruits, which last all the Year; besides here is plenty of Salt, and a considerable breed of Horses. The Houses consist of Mud Walls thatch'd; their Diet all sorts of Fish, Rice, Millet, and Herbs. Their Customs and Manners differ little from their Neighbours. The King is absolute, and accordingly disposes of all things at Pleasure; but as to Religious Matters, tho' they have no publick Temples or Assemblies, these Blacks are more Superstitious than any before spoken of, and have a greater number of Idols.

A little Eastward of *Popo* begins the Country of *Fida*, extending that Way as far as *Rio Lagos* on the Coast, and has a Road and Port, but so very dangerous that abundance of Men are lost there going ashore, yet all *European* Nations Trade here for Slaves, and the Land makes some amends for the Dangers of the Sea, being full of small, and some considerable Villages, and all the rest of the Land is a most beautiful Prospect, being cover'd with Grass, Corn, and an innumerable number of Fruit-Trees standing so thick, that in many Places there is only a small Path betwixt them, the Blacks planting all that will bear, and sowing as soon as ever they have reap'd, and the Soil so grateful that it fully answers their Expectations. How far it reaches up Northward into the Inland is not known, none having yet hazarded themselves to Travel that way, because of the Danger there is in trusting to those People far from the Sea Coast. These Blacks are more generous than any others on that Coast, and courteous in the highest degree, always kneeling to their Superiors, and even Equals to one another. Industry and Labour are peculiar to them among those People, for they are never Idle, but working at several Handicrafts, and particularly weaving and spinning of Cotton Cloth, Forging, and Husbandry, the Women taking as much Pains as the Men. In return for these good Qualities, they are the greatest Thieves in the World, so that few Ships Trade thither without losing considerable quantities of Goods, and no reparation to be had. They wear several Clothes, the richest they can get, wrapp'd about their Bodies one over another. It is a mistake which many believe, that Parents here sell their Children, Husbands their Wives, &c. for this is never done without some great Crime committed; but all the Slaves here sold, are Prisoners taken in War. These poor Wretches are pack'd 4 or 500 in a Ship, and in that miserable condition transported to *America*. The King is honour'd as a Demi-God, and the number of their Deities is so great that none of themselves can determine it, but Snakes are of the greatest Veneration among them of all others. For Cattel, they have the same with us, as also tame Fowl, and infinite quantities of wild; and the Ground produces all *European* Plants that are sow'd on it, besides plenty of very good Indigo, which the Natives use for dying their own Clothes. The Weapons us'd by them are Mallets, Bows, Arrows, Hangers, Darts, and Clubs; but they and their Neighbours of *Adra* are generally rank Cowards.

The Kingdom of *Benin* begins at the River *Lagos* on the West, and runs to that of *Camaroons*.



rooms on the East, which parts it from *Congo*, having *Zegzeg* and *Bito* on the North, and the Ocean on the South.

Between *Lagos* and the River of *Benin*, otherwise call'd *Rio Formoso*, or the Beautiful River, there are no Places worth taking notice of but only one Village call'd *Cram*. The last of the two Rivers above-mention'd divides it self into several Branches. About a Mile above the Mouth of it At the Town of *Amerri*, the *Portugueses* have a Lodge and Church, and this Place has a particular King, who does not look upon himself as a Subject to him of *Benin*. Near 60 Miles higher is the Town of *Archo*, the Trading Place of all *Europeans*, for any Ships may go much higher up the River. Here the *Dutch* and *Portugueses* still drive a Trade, but the *English* have not of late. Lower towards the Mouth is the Village of *Bodedoc*, and higher, that of *Agarion*, now almost ruin'd. A Day's Journey higher is the City of great *Benin*, so call'd because the best in those Parts, and the Residence of the King. The Streets are of a vast Length and Breadth, and in them a continual Market kept of all sorts of Provisions and other Commodities, the Houses large and handsome, tho' the Walls be of Mud and the top of Thatch, and they stand scattering, and at a distance from one another. The Inhabitants are all Natives, and no Foreigners permitted to reside in it. The King's Palace is a good Structure of the sort, and very large, and all the Streets kept very clean. The People are good natur'd and courteous, complying to any thing by fair means, but no way to be prevail'd upon by foul. Their Habit is decent, after the manner of those Parts, but the Children go stark naked.

It is not worth while to speak of the other Villages in this Country, there being nothing remarkable in them but what has already been said in speaking of those before-mention'd. The Coast here turns away to the Southward, and then the next River of Note is that of *Forcados*, from which holding on the same Course, we come to Cape *Formoso*, or Beautiful, and then turning again to the Eastward, there is a considerable River, call'd *Rio Real de Calabari*, next *Rio del*

*Key*, and lastly, *Rio de Cameroens*, the boundary of this Country. Thus much of the Coast, for the Inland is not known to us any farther than a little up the Rivers. Forty Leagues up the River *Forcados* is the Town of *Ouzerra*, where the King of that Country holds his Court, and to the Westward lie the Provinces and petty Kingdoms of the *Amboises*, *Calabari*, *Kribi*, *Moco*, and *Bani*.

The Country is generally plain, wooded, well water'd, except only in some Places where the last is scarce. It abounds in all sorts of tame Cattel and Poultry; besides Elephants, Lions, and Tigers, but of the first of them prodigious Numbers, as also Jackals, Monkeys, and Baboons. The Product of the Earth is no less various, as most sorts of Grain and Fruit; and the Natives make several Dyes, as Green, Blue, Black, Red, and Yellow. The chief Money is a sort of Shells brought from *India*, which they call *Borjias*.

*Europeans* have all the encouragement imaginable to Trade here, the People being as courteous and obliging as any in the World, and the Duties they pay so inconsiderable, that they do not amount to above five or six Pounds sterling for any Ship. The Commodities sent thither are all sorts of Cloth, from the richest to the poorest Linen; fine Earthen Ware, Preserves, Bracelets of Copper, Coral, Pendants, Looking-glasses, Iron in Bars, Crystal, and Shells, which last serve instead of Money. In exchange for these things they receive Cotton Cloth, which they sell along the Coast, Slaves, and Elephants Teeth.

Their Religion teaches them to worship abundance of Idols, and even living Creatures and Vegetables. The Priests are all Sorcerers, or such as impose on the People by juggling Tricks, so that they are all full of intolerable Superstitions, much like what has been already said of the other Parts of *Guinea*, which it is time we should leave to proceed, having in the description of this Country made particular use of *Bosman's* description of *Guinea*, as the latest Account of those Parts, only supplying from others what was deficient in him.

## CHAP. XVII.

## OF CONGO.

THIS Country taken in the largest Sense, as we here describe it, will be found to extend from about 10 Degrees of North Latitude to 15 South, amounting to 1500 Miles in Length, and 720 in Breadth from East to West in the largest Place. On the North it touches upon the Kingdom of *Benin* in *Guinea*; *Zanjia* and *Borno* in *Negroland*, and a small part of *Nubia*; the East side lies along the Up-

per and Lower *Aethiopia*; on the South it has the Coast of the *Cafres*, and on the West the Southern, or *Aethiopick* Ocean.

The most certain Division we find of it, not to descend to inconsiderable Districts, some of which will be mention'd under the particular Provinces they belong to, is into these principal Parts with their several Towns, as in the following Table.



Biafara.	{ Biafara.	Cacongo.	{ Cacongo. Malembra.
Medra.	{ Medra.		{ S. Salvador. Pembz. Bambz. Sombz. Sandz. Pangz. Buzz. S. Paul de Loande.
Loango, or the Land of Brazz.	{ Loango. Mayumba by Longo. Karol. Seria. Salafy. Mabonde.	Congo, properly so call'd.	
Anzico. . . . .		Angola.	{ Mapongo. Dongo. Maffingaz. Benguela.

## Biafara,

The Northern Dominion of this Tract of Land we are to describe, reaches that Way to the Land of *Negres*, on the East is parted by Mountains from the Kingdom of *Medra*, on the South reaches to the 4th Degree of North Latitude, where it joins with the Kingdom of *Loango*, and on the West partly borders upon *Benin*, and partly lies upon the Ocean. The Capital bearing the same Name, is in about 6 Degrees of North Latitude, towards the Frontiers of *Benin*, and a Place much like those already mention'd, that is, an open scattering Village without any Buildings of Note. This Country being most Inland, is little known to us, scarce any *Europeans* Trading to it. The Natives are so very much addicted to Sorcery, that they imagine they have Power to raise Storms, and do other extraordinary things beyond the Power of Man, and for this reason they serve the Devil so zealously, as even to sacrifice their own Children to him.

## Medra,

The next Kingdom on the East, is separated from *Biafara* on the East by Mountains; on the opposite side joins to *Ethiopia*, on the North to *Negroland*, and on the South to *Loango*. The Metropolis is also call'd *Medra*, an inconsiderable Place next to *Ethiopia*, and all the Country little frequented by Strangers, particularly for being remote from the Sea, as also because it lies much buried among Mountains, and produces nothing to attract the Avarice of Men, for which Reason the Inhabitants are rude, and addicted to the Superstitions of their Neighbours.

## Loango.

Otherwise call'd the Country of the *Brazz*, commences Northward at the River call'd *S. Benito*, and extends its Coast, being the West side, down to the River *Loango*, *Loanze*, which is from two Degrees of North Latitude to about six South, where it borders on the Kingdom of *Cacongo*, as it does Eastward on the *Ambez*, a People of *Ethiopia*, and Northward on *Biafara* and *Medra*.

Coming down this Coast from the Northward, after passing the River *S. Benito*, which is the

Boundary, the first we meet is that of *S. John*, and below it Cape *S. John*, and the Bay of the same Name, into which the River *Angra* falls, the last the only Place the *Dutch* ever resort to. The Blacks all along this Coast are large and strong of Body, every Village having its particular King, and they always at War among themselves. At the entrance of the aforesaid Bay is an Island call'd *Corisca*, on the South side whereof is the Anchoring Place, in about 40 Minutes of North Latitude. Next follows the River *Gubam* under the Line, which breeds Crocodiles, and River Horses, and at the Mouth of it two small Islands, one of which the Natives call *Pongo*, and the *Dutch* the King's Island, because the King resides there; the other is the Island of the Parrots, from the Multitude of those Birds. South of the Line about 44 Minutes is Cape *Lope Gonzalez*, next the Mouth of the River *Olibata*, where the greatest Trade is of all those Parts, and the petty King lives 6 or 7 Leagues up the Country. The next after these are the Rivers of *S. Catherine*, *Sette*, *Mayumba*, and lastly, *Loango*, *Loanze*.

The Dominions of the King of *Loango* extend no farther than the Kingdom of *S. Catherine*, and formerly this Tract of Land was divided into many Provinces, as those of *Longiri*, *Loanzongo*, *Chilongo*, *Puri*, &c. under as many petty Kings, who had bloody Wars among themselves, and were so barbarous as to eat one another, till he of *Loango* having at length subdued all the rest, all this became one Monarchy.

The Conquerour settled his Residence at *Loango*, which the Blacks call *Baziri*, or *Buri*, a Town four or five Miles in Compass, but the Houses are not contiguous, and the Streets wide, kept very clean, with rows of Palm and *Banana* Trees before the Doors, and sometimes quite about the Houses. Before the King's Palace is a very large Square, Palisado'd in, with abundance of Houses about it for his Women, who have sometimes eight in a House, and are strictly guarded, not being allow'd to go out of the Square without his Leave. The Houses are long, and the Roofs flat in the middle, and shelving off on the sides. Every House has 3, 4, or 5 Rooms. Their Household Goods are Pot Calabashes, Baskets, Mats, &c.

Other Towns are rather Villages, here are *Kail*, *Boche*, *Saluz*, *Mabonde*, *Schie*, *Kate*. Besides which we may reckon the Province and Town of *Mayumba*, seated at the Mouth of the River



River of the same Name, whence upon Floods the Inhabitants are oblig'd to remove their Houses to some other Place. *Cylongo*, *Sete*, and *Gabbi* are also little Territories, once Kingdoms, but now all subject to *Loango*.

All this Country in general produces *Indian* Wheat, Millet, and a prodigious variety of Fruits not at all known among us, as also all sorts of Herbs, as well eatable as others; Tobacco, Sugar, scarlet Berries, Cotton, and *West-India* Pepper; and as for all Cattel and Poultry, it is so plentiful that they sell it for little or nothing.

The Natives are strong, vigorous, well-shap'd, voluptuous, jealous of Strangers, yet courteous and friendly to those they know. Their Apparel is all of Palm Leaves curiously wove together, being only from the Waste downwards, the Body upwards being Naked; but the better sort wear many Ornaments of Gold and Coral on their Arms, Legs, and Necks. For their Diet, they eat all Flesh, much Fish and Millet. The chief Trade of the Country consists in Slaves, which are the greatest Wealth of those Blacks; but they also sell Ivory, Tin, Lead, and Iron, which they bring very far from *Aethiopia*.

In Religious Matters, these People have but a dark Notion of God, whom they call *Sambian Pongo*, but are on the contrary extravagantly superstitious, calling upon the Household and Country Spirits or Demons, attributing to them strange Power, according to their Fancies. Accordingly they make all sorts of Idols, some like Men, and others of several Shapes, every one to his own Fancie. These they call *Mockies*, a Name comprehending all things, which they imagine have a secret Power of hurting, or doing them good. Their Priests are all Sorcerers, or Juglers, that impose on them by their subtle Arts.

#### Anzico

Is a large Dominion up the Inland, remote from the Sea, and among Mountains, extending Northward to the Desarts leading to *Negro-Lana*, Westward it lies along *Loango*, *Cacongo*, and *Congo*; Southward it reaches to *Angola*, and Eastward to the Lower *Aethiopia*. This is reckon'd as potent a Kingdom as most in *Africk*, the supreme Monarch having 13 petty kings under him, and is call'd *Macoco*. The principal Commodities this Country affords, are red and white Sanders, and Copper; but it has more Rhinoceroses than any other, and they are sent thence to *Congo*.

All the People here are active, handsome, vigorous, and undaunted; but being very brutal, the *Europeans* have little or no Commerce with them; for they are Man-eaters, and sell that Flesh as publicly in the Markets as we do Beef or Mutton, believing that every Man has the same Right to eat his Prisoner or Slave as his Cattel. Nay, the Children make no scruple of devouring their Parents, or the Parents their Children. They go all Naked from the Waste upward, and every Man has as many Wives as he pleases, never taking care for the Children, which sometimes the Mothers are inhuman enough to devour. Their Language is barbarous, their Money only Shells found on the Coast, and call'd *Symbos*. Their Weapons are

very strong, tho' small Bows cover'd with Snakes Skins. The Arrows of a hard Wood, which they let fly with a wonderful Dexterity. Besides they use Battle-Axes and Daggers, with Bucklers.

The Sun is their principal Deity, whom they represent like a Man, and the Moon like a Woman, besides which they have abundance of Idols. In this Kingdom are a People call'd *Jagos*, who are the cruellest of all the Man-eaters, and have dispersed themselves throughout several Parts of *Africk*. The ancient *Angolese*s say, these *Jagos* are Strangers who settled in that Kingdom, and they are reported to have come from *Sierra Leona*, and to have over-run all the Coast, till being weakned by many Engagements, and not able to return home, they went up the Country, and coming to the Frontiers of *Monomotapa*, were there defeated, whereupon they settled in *Anzico*, and about *Angola*.

#### Cacongo

Has the Ocean for its Boundary on the West, the River *Loango* *Louise* on the North, and that of *Zaire* on the West and South, running up the Inland as far as *Anzico*. The Capital bearing the same Name, is pleasantly seated on the River several Miles from the Sea, well built for those Countries, and plentifully supplied with Provisions.

The River *Cacongo* runs quite across the Country from East to West, and falls into the Ocean in about 5 Degrees of South Latitude. Southward of the River is the Village of *Malemba*, where the Sea makes a Bay, and there is good Anchoring for Ships. All the rest of the Coast to the Mouth of the River *Zaire* is very dangerous, being full of Rocks and Flats. The Country is very woody and mountainous, and neither fruitful nor well till'd. The Natives are false, changeable, quarrellsome, and yet Cowards. All the Trade is at *Malemba*, where the *Dutch* and *Portuguese*s sell some sorts of Cloth, Iron Ware, and other Commodities, which the *Caconge*s sell farther up the Country, and return Slaves. The Manners of the People and Religion are the same as at *Loango*.

The Kingdom of *Angoij* is the Southern Part of *Cacongo* next the River *Zaire*, and independent of it, the Inhabitants being People of more Courage, and who would soon subdue that Country were they not kept under by their Neighbours. The Province of *Lemba*, so call'd from its Metropolis, is another Limb of *Cacongo*, and subject to it, and having a Copper Mine, is resorted to by *Europeans* for that Metal.

#### Congo, properly so call'd,

Runs along the Ocean on the West from the great River *Zaire*, which parts it from *Angoij* and *Cacongo* on the North, to that of *Coanza* dividing it from *Angola* on the South, that is, from 6 to 10 Degrees of South Latitude. On the East a ridge of Mountains separates it from several Eastern Nations little known to us, of which we shall in its place say as much as can be found in the best Accounts.

This Kingdom is generally divided into 6 Provinces, viz. *Sonho*, *Bamba*, *Sunda*, *Pemba*, *Pango*, and *Banta*. *Sonho*, the first and most Northerly,



lies between the Rivers *Zaire* and *Ambizi* North and South, and reaches to *Pemba* East, with the Ocean on the West. It is divided under several petty Lords, who were formerly independent, but now subject to the King of Congo. The Capital call'd also *Semba*, is seated 3 Leagues above the Mouth of the River *Lalunda*. Besides it, here is a Village call'd *Tinde*, now become considerable by the Trade of the *Portugueses*, who hold it of the King.

*Bamba* is next to the Southward call'd a Dukedom, and reaching from the River *Ambizi* above-mention'd, on the North, to that of *Cuanza*, parting it from *Angola* on the South, with *Pemba* on the East. This Province has a Duke, or chief Lord, subject to the King of Congo, and under him the Country is subdivided into many little States not worth naming, which all pay Obedience to the Duke. *Bamba* is also the Name of the Metropolis, which is also a very large Town, but built as the others above-mention'd, the Houses at a distance from one another, and all of mud Walls, but some Churches are a little better Plaster'd. Its Situation is amidst Hills, far from the Sea, and water'd by two Rivulets. The Duke of *Bamba* is the greatest Subject of Congo, and General of the King's Army, having abundance of *Sons*, or lesser Lords under his Command. The Blacks here being generally Christians, as in the rest of Congo. Here are abundance of Mulattoes, being the Sons of *Portugueses*, and many white and black Priests. *S. Paul de Lenda* is a Town on the Southern Coast of this Dukedom, possess'd by the *Portugueses* ever since they first discover'd this Country, and convert'd it, but many of the Inhabitants are Blacks and Mulattoes, these latter bred between the Whites and the Blacks living there. This is the Capital of all the *Portuguese* Dominions in those Parts. The *Dutch* once took it, but were beaten out again. Here resides the Bishop of Congo and Angola, with a Chapter of 8 or 9 Canons. The Religious Houses are three of *Jesuits*, barefoot *Convents*, and *Franciscans*. Of these the first keep Schools, and all of them labour in instructing the Natives. The City is large and beautiful enough; the Houses of the Whites of Lime and Stone til'd, and those of the Blacks mud Walls thatch'd. The first of these are about 3000, the number of the latter much greater, because some Whites have one, two, or three hundred of them, and some 3000 for their Slaves; for he who has most is richest, because they work abroad, and pay their Masters a set Rate a Day. Two of them carry their Master about the Town in a Hammock, and a third holds an Umbrello over him. The generality of the Women here lord it over their Husbands, and scarce ever go to Church, but never fail of appearing at all publick Diversions. The Mulatto Men, got between Whites and Blacks, are a wicked Generation, proud and haughty, and insulting the poor Natives without any Mercy, nor are the Whites less guilty of this Barbarity, making no scruple to sell their own Children they get on those poor People. The Blacks are all slaves to the Whites, and work for them, and all Christians, but by their course of Life they appear to be none of the best. The current Coins here are what they call *Mucimas*, being pieces of Straw Cloth as big as a large piece of Paper, answerable to our Brass. Instead of Silver

they use pieces of Cotton Cloth as big as two Handkerchiefs, and worth about 18 *d.* each. Another finer sort is worth 3 *s.* 6 *d.* The best sort, call'd *Birami*, and answering our Gold, is made of fine Linnen, and worth 7 *s.* 6 *d.* or 8 *s.* each. No Gold, Silver, or Brass Coins are here made use of.

*Sunda* is an Island Northern Province along the River *Zaire*, East of *Semba*, West of *Pango*, and North of *Pemba* and *Butta*; the Metropolis of it, and Residence of its Viceroy is a large Town bearing the same Name, towards the Frontiers of *Pango*.

*Pemba* lies South of *Sunda*, East of *Bamba*, North of *Angola*, and West of *Butta*. This is the prime Province, and in it the Capital City of all Congo, by the Natives call'd *Banza*, and by the *Portugueses* *S. Salvador*, or *S. Saviour*, where the King keeps his Court. It is almost in the middle of the Province, about 150 Miles from the Sea, seated on a Hill that overlooks all the Country, and all shaded with Palm, Limon, Orange and other Fruit Trees, wall'd only in part, but the King's Palace is enclos'd by it self. The top of the Hill is all inhabited by the better sort, the meaner below in good Streets, but the Houses all of Clay, except some few the *Portugueses* have built of Brick. The Palace is as large as a little Town, and within it three Churches, and in the Town ten or twelve, besides the Cathedral, and seven Chapels.

*Pango* is to the North East of *Sunda*, along the River *Zaire*, North of *Butta*, and has the Mountains of the Sun dividing it from the barbarous Nations. Its principal Town, where the Governour resides, is call'd by the same Name. This was once a free Province, but submitted to the King of Congo to put an end to the bloody Wars which had long consum'd it.

*Butta*, formerly *Agilymba*, is on the East of *Pemba*, South of *Sunda*, West of those they call the burnt Mountains, and North of *Angola*. The Metropolis of it is also call'd *Butta*, standing in a fruitful Country, all along the Road from which to *S. Salvador* there are abundance of Houses. To the Eastward of this Province is another call'd *Ocango*, which according to ancient custom is always govern'd by a Woman, who is subordinate to the Viceroy of *Butta*. These People, who have scarce ever been visited by *Europeans*, report, that to the East of them there are white Men, but not so white as those of our Parts.

This Kingdom is extraordinary well water'd by many considerable Rivers, the chiefest of these is the *Zaire*, coming out of the vast Lake of the same Name in the Kingdom of *Mafamba*. In the Lake it is confidently reported, that there is a sort of Fishes which differ in nothing from Mankind but in the want of Speech and Reason; and this *F. Francis de Pavia*, a Missioner, who before would not believe it, was shown by the Queen of *Singa*, on the same Lake. In the River there are many Mermaids, somewhat resembling a Woman in the Breasts, Nipples, Hands, and Arms, but the lower Part is perfect Fish and the Head round, the Face like a Cat, a large Mouth, little Ears, and round full Eyes; which Creatures *F. Meroua* often law, and eat of them. The *Portugueses* call it *Peixe Molier*, that is, Womans Fish. The River has also Sea Horses, and other strange sorts of Creatures,



res, it runs from the Lake North West, till coming to the Borders of *Anzico*, it there turns to South West, swells to a mighty Body, and forming several small Islands, at last loses itself in the Ocean in about 6 Degrees of South Latitude. The other Rivers of most Note here, are the *Lelanda*, the *Ambrizi*, the *Eucoqui*, the *Missula*, the *Libongo*, the *Dondi*, and the *Coanza*.

Summer begins here in *September*, and Winter in *March*, being only a Rainy Season, which cools the Air and Ground. The Multitude of Rivers which overflow in the Rainy Season render the Land extraordinary fruitful, so that they generally produce much Grain, and infinite quantities of Fruit; besides abundance of Pasture, which makes Plenty of all sorts of Cattle and Poultry. The number of Elephants is very great, tho' so many are continually destroyed, not only for their Teeth, but because the Blacks eat their Flesh. A strange Creature here is that they call *Zebra*, being a sort of a wild Horse, somewhat shap'd like a Mule, beautifully spotted black, white, red, and blue, and extraordinary swift. It were too tedious to descend to all other Particulars.

The Natives are generally coal black, middle-sized and well shap'd, and for the most part handsomer than those of *Guinea*. They are haughty to one another, but courteous to Strangers, great lovers of Wine and Brandy, and such wretched Soldiers, that 20 *Europeans* will drive several Hundreds of them. The whole Nation professes Christianity, but many of them only in outward appearance, still retaining many of their ancient Idolatrous Superstitions. Yet the greater part are truly converted, tho' there be Vices among them, as in all Christian Countries, and there is no doubt but that they might have perhaps exceeded many others had they sufficient Instruction, which they want through the fault of their Climate, the excessive Heats destroying all the Missioners, and deterring others from undertaking that Function, and yet many thousands have expos'd themselves to those Suffering and Dangers for the Conversion of those People.

The Men of Quality wear fine Cloaks, white Shirts, and a piece of rich Cloth or Stuff wrapp'd about them, Boots on their Legs, white Caps, Gold and Silver Girdles, and Coral Collars. The Inhabitants of Towns are great Traders, selling Slaves to the *Europeans*; the Country People follow Tillage, those along the *Zaire* Fishing, and selling of Palm-Wine and a sort of a Cloth they make.

This Country was discover'd about the Year 1484, by the *Portugueses*, who found there a favourable Reception, and easily perswaded the King then reigning to embrace Christianity. This Example was follow'd by the great Men first, and then by the Commonalty, so that all publick practice of Idolatry was soon banish'd. Since which time Missioners have been continually sent over to instruct those People, and many of themselves being well educated, have been ordain'd Priests, so that the whole Kingdom has thorowly receiv'd the Light of the Gospel.

#### Angola

Comes next to the Southward, extending

along the Coast, from the River *Coanza*, in 9 Degrees of South Latitude to the Kingdom of *Metamon*, from which it is parted by a small River and a ridge of Mountains in 14 Degrees; so that it has *Congo* on the North, the Ocean on the West, *Metamon* on the South, and *Ethiopia* on the East, because we shall here include the Kingdom of *Malemba*, which more properly belongs to this Tract of Land than to *Monomotapa*, tho' it be under a different King.

This Country is best divided into *Angola*, properly so call'd, *Benguela*, and *Malemba*. *Angola*, properly so call'd, lies between *Congo* in the North, the Ocean on the West, *Benguela* on the South, and *Malemba* on the East. The *Europeans* have given it this Name from the Founder of it, who first revolted from the King of *Congo*, for the Natives still call it *Dongo*, which is the Name of the Capital City. Its extent on the Sea between the Rivers *Coanza* and *Singz* is narrow, but enlarges much up the Inland.

*Dongo*, or *Engaze Dongo*, is reckon'd the Capital City, seated amidst several Rivers which water it and the Country about, in the Northernmost part of the Kingdom next the Frontiers of *Pemba* and *Barta*. Tho' this be the chief City the King has, his Residence at *Mapongo*, at least 20 Miles South West of it, being no better than a Village, but seated on a Rock above 20 Miles in compass at the bottom, and so high, that the top seems to touch the Clouds. All about it are pleasant and fertile Plains, producing all things that are necessary for Life, and there is only one difficult Ascent to the Rock, which being guarded, the King need fear no Enemy. Not far from this Place is *Maffingan*, signifying Conjunction, because it stands on the conflux of the two Rivers *Lucala* and *Coanza*. Here the *Portugueses* have built a Castle, and they are still Masters of it, the Houses being built of Stone.

*Benguela* is the next Kingdom, and contains the rest of what was above ascrib'd to *Angola* in general, terminating Eastward on the Kingdom of *Malemba*, from which it is divided by the River *Coanza* and the Mountains. The Town or Village of *Benguela* is seated on a Bay where there is good Anchoring in 13 Degrees of South Latitude. By the Village is a Castle, and about it seven other Villages, all depending on it, and subject to the *Portugueses*. On the South side of this Bay is a flat Mountain, which the *Portugueses* call *Sombrero*, because at a distance it somewhat resembles a Hat. *Manikicongo* is another Village full to the Southward, where the *Portugueses* have another Factory.

The Air of this Country is reckon'd very unhealthy, and the Diseases here are many, as burning Fevers, which carry a Man off in 24 Hours, Fluxes, Stupefaction of the Limbs, Gangrenes, Jaundice, Small-Pox, &c. The Land which is well water'd is fruitful enough, producing all sorts of Grain, Fruit and Plants, and very good Sugar. As for Beasts, it has all the same as *Congo*, and so for Fowl and Fish. Nor can any thing remarkable be added concerning their Manners, Language, or Coins, which differ very little from what has been said already. It is incredible what number of Slaves are yearly transported out of *Angola* into *America*, they being almost the only Commodity the *Portugueses* and other Nations resort thither for.



The whole Dominions of *Angola* were formerly divided into abundance of Principalities under so many little Kings or Lords, who all pay'd Homage to the King of *Conze*, till one of them call'd *Angola*, with the Assistance of the *Portugueses*, subdu'd all the rest, and erected himself a Monarchy; yet still sending Presents to the King of *Congo*, and mimicking him in all things that represent Grandeur. Tho' the *Portugueses* have taken much Pains here to Establish the Christian Religion, they have not yet been so successful as in *Congo*. The Christians indeed are very Numerous, especially about the Coast, but still there are many Idolaters, it being very difficult to extirpate a

false Religion in Countries of such vast Extent and indeed it is wonderful that so much has been done towards it.

*Malemba* is a Mountainous Kingdom of a large Extent, East of *Angola*, North of *Marame*, West of *Monoemugi*, and South of the *Giaqua*, another more Northern Mountain Nation, lying along the Lake *Zaire*. Of both these, little can be said, no *Europeans* having ever been amongst them, they being a Barbarous People, either over-run by the *Jagos*, or of the same Disposition themselves, which is the Reason, no Travellers dare venture to view them, and what so may pretend to write is mere Invention.

## CHAP. XVIII.

### OF MONOMOTAPA, or the Lower ÆTHIOPIA.

**T**HIS is a vast Inland Part of *Africk*, so little visited by Travellers, that we have but a very obscure Account of it. The *Portugueses* have been the only People who have ventur'd farthest into it of any *Europeans*, and theirs the surest Relations; what else can be said of it is all taken from the Neighbouring Nations, which Trade thither, and they being all ignorant People, give us very imperfect Descriptions. The Lights we have of either Sort shall be here communicated, without running into the fabulous Stories of such as have deliver'd their own Imaginations for certain Truths.

The Lower *Æthiopia* commences where the Upper Ends; that is, in about Six Degrees of North Latitude and extends to 31 South, being about 2200 Miles in Length, and 16 Degrees in Breadth in the largest Place from East to West, amounting to 930 Miles. Thus we see the greatest

Part of it lies under the Torrid Zone, except that which extends from the Tropick of *Cancer* to 31 Degrees South. Its general Boundaries are, *Abyssinia*, or the Upper *Æthiopia* on North, the Coasts of *Zanguebar* and the *Cafres* on the East, the same Coast of *Cafres* on the South, as also on the West, with *Congo* higher towards the Line.

Authors differ very much in dividing this vast Region, by Reason of its Obscurity in Relation to us, and therefore to avoid Confusion we will follow those who have either seen something of it, or liv'd so near as to receive the best Information. The great and general Division is into two Parts, which are *Monoemugi* and *Monomotapa* properly so call'd, which again are subdivided into their several Kingdoms and Provinces as we shall see in the Table, with what Towns we can find belonging to each of them.

Monoemugi.	Mujaco. . . . .	
	Macoco. . . . .	<i>Monfol.</i>
	Gingiro. . . . .	
	Cambate. . . . .	<i>Sangara.</i>
	Alaba. . . . .	
	Monoemugi, properly so call'd,	<i>Gamba.</i> <i>Astagoa.</i> <i>Leuma.</i> <i>Agag.</i> <i>Cammt.</i> <i>Beif.</i>

#### Monoemugi

Is the most Northern of the two grand Divisions beforemention'd, and therefore comes next in Course, as lying East of *Congo*, North of *Monomotapa*, West of the Coast of *Zanguebar* and South of *Nubia* and *Abyssinia*. Its first Kingdom on the North, is

#### Mujaco

Bordering on *Congo* Westward, on *Nubia* Northward, on *Abyssinia* Eastward, and on *Macoco* Southward. That the Extent of this Monarchy is very great, appears by the distant Countries

Monomotapa.	prop. so call'd.	<i>Monomotapa.</i>
		<i>Mofata.</i>
		<i>Jowros.</i>
		<i>Zimbro.</i>
	Butua.	<i>Butua.</i>
		<i>Amara.</i>
		<i>Boro.</i>
		<i>Giera.</i>
	Inhambane.	<i>Hagala.</i>
		<i>Inhambane.</i>
	Inhamior.	<i>Gamba.</i>
		<i>Inhamior.</i>

its Confines extend to, and the Sovereign's great Power by his being in continual War with his Neighbour the Emperor of *Macoco*, who can never subdue him; yet such as he is this is all the Account we have of him, and that from the People of *Congo*, who travel thither for Elephant Teeth, which Beasts they say are Kill'd there by a Dwarfish Breed of wild Blacks, living in the Woods and feeding on that Flesh.

#### Macoco

Is the next great Monarchy bordering Northwards on *Mujaco*, *Gingiro* and *Cambate*, Westward on *Congo*, Southward on *Monoemugi*, properly so call'd.



perly so call'd, and Westward on the Coast of *Zanguebar*. The Natives of it are call'd *Monfoles*, from *Monfol*, the Capitol Town of the Nation, a Place of no Note, and are great Men-Eaters. The King is very Potent, as having 10 other Kings that Pay Homage to him, and is said to Slaughter 200 Men, either Malefactors, or Prisoners of War, every Day, to feed his Court, as the more dainty Fleh, the Country having no want of Cattel or other Provisions. His Retinue is very numerous, and his Palace stately enough for that Country, his Wealth consisting in Slaves, in *Senibos*, which are the Shells of *Loanda*, *Boefies*, being those of *India*, little Pieces of Stuff and such Trifles, which they there Value as much as we do Gold and Silver. He always keeps a great Army on his Frontiers to secure them against the King of *Muyaco*, above-mention'd. The *Portugueses* of *Loanda* send their Slaves, they call *Pomberos*, bred up in their Houses to write and Cast Accounts, and of wonderful Fidelity, into this Kingdom to buy Slaves, Ivory and Copper, in which Journey they spend a Year, and sometimes two, and from them their Masters have this Information of that Country. *Fungendo* is one of the Kingdoms Tributary to the Monarch of *Macoco*, and lying next to *Congo* on the West, as is *Giringbomba* another on the North-east.

Gingiro,

Another Potent Kingdom lies between *Narca*, the Southermost Kingdom of *Abyssinia*, and those of *Macoco* and *Cimbate*, North and East of the first of them, and West of the latter. The great River *Zebee*, which runs down into *Macoco*, almost encompassing it. *F. Antony Fernandez* travell'd through this Kingdom, being sent to find a Way Southward to the Coast by the Emperour of *Abyssinia*, because the *Turks* had shut up all the Passes to the Red Sea. He informs us, that *Gingiro* signifies a Monkey, and says it was a very Proper Name, the King very much resembling that Creature. His State is extraordinary great, and he contends with the Sun, for which Reason he never goes Abroad, or gives Audience but before Sun-rising, alledging that two Suns cannot appear at once. This King is Elective, and much Sorcery us'd in the Way of chusing him; all those of the Family, who may be chosen, hiding themselves in Woods, and seeming to refuse the Honour, till it is forc'd upon them. His Palace is no better than a Cottage, which when he dies is always burnt, and the Successor has a new one built him, which is dedicated with the Blood of two or three Men of a certain Family, kill'd at the Door, and on that Account the said Family is free from all other Duties, which are so heavy that they render this cruel Composition acceptable; for when the King buys any thing of foreign Merchants, he pays them in Slaves, and those are the Sons, or Daughters of any Family, which he takes at Pleasure, without any Contradiction.

Cambate

Joins to this Kingdom on the West, has *Abyssinia* on the North, *Alaba*, or the Country of the *Galas* on the East, and *Macoco* on the South. This Country pays some Acknowledgment to the Emperour of *Abyssinia*, which is only voluntary, and as far as the People please themselves. One of the Principal Towns here is call'd *Sangara*, but of any more the aforesaid *F. Antony* gives no Names.

Alaba

Is another large Kingdom still to the Eastward of *Cambate*, inhabited by the cruel People call'd *Galas*, and reaching to the Coast of *Zanguebar*. The Prince is a *Mahometan*, but abundance of the Lords, his Subjects, are still Idolaters of the worst Sort, offering the Sacrifices of Human Blood, and sparing none that dare Travel through their Country.

Monoemugi, properly so call'd,

Follows next to the Southward, lying in the Torrid Zone, and about the Equinoctial, South of *Macoco*, West of *Zanguebar*, North of *Monomotapa*, and East of *Congo* and the Northern Part of *Monomotapa*. To ascertain the Extent is too difficult a Task, being a Country so little frequented. There are several petty Princes on all Sides, which pay Subjection to this Crown. The Country abounds in Gold, Silver, and Copper Mines, and Elephants. The Natives Cloth themselves in Silks and Cottons, which they buy of Strangers, and wear Collars of transparent Amber Beads, brought them from *Cambaya*; which Beads also serve for Money, Gold and Silver being too common and of little Value among them; and therefore they give them, as also Copper and Ivory, in Exchange for those Commodities. This Monarch always endeavours to be at Peace with the Princes round about him, to keep an open Trade with *Quiloa*, *Melinde* and *Monbaza* on the East, and *Congo* on the West; from all which Parts the Black Merchants resort thither for Gold. Those Merchants report, that on the East-side of *Monoemugi*, there is a great Lake full of little Islands, abounding in all sorts of Fowl and Cattel. Besides Gold, Silver, Copper and Elephants Teeth, already mention'd, this Country affords abundance of Palm-Wine and Oil, and such great Plenty of Honey, that above half of it is lost, the Blacks not being able to consume it. The Air is generally very unwholsom and fiery Hot, which is the Reason that no Christians dare undertake to travel this Empire, besides that the *Jags*, who are the Cruellest of Man-Eaters, lie on the Way and spare none they meet. The Religion of this Country is Idolatry, nor do we find that either Christianity or *Mahometanism* have gotten any footing here, and the People are generally reckon'd barbarous and scarce tractable. The principal Names of Towns we find in this Country from the Relations of the Neighbouring People, *Gamba*, *Astagoa*, *Leuma*, *Agag*, *Camut*, *Beif*, but what sort of Places they are, we know not, only suppose them according to the Nation, to be mean and inconsiderable.

Monomotapa, properly so call'd,

Is the other great Part of the Lower *Æthiopia*, reaching from 14 Degrees of South Latitude to about 31, and the same Breadth from East to West, as was before mention'd in speaking of the whole. Tho' not very perfect, we have yet some better Information of this Region than of the last, which we shall take from *Manuel de Faria Sousa*, who had all the Accounts of the *Portugueses* that were in *Monomotapa*, and generally enter'd by the way of the River *Cuama*.

This



This Empire is divided into 25 Kingdoms, which are *Mongas, Barot, Manica, Bese, Macingo, Reno, Chique, Chiriz, Chidima, Boquiza, Inhama, Chiruvia, Condesaca, Dabiriz, Mozambique, Munguf, Antiova, Chove, Chingue, Duia, Romba, Ruffa, Chiara, Mocaranga, and Remo de Beza*. All this was originally one great Monarchy, afterwards divided into three, call'd *Quirve, Sebenda, and Chicanga*, which in process of Time came to break themselves into so many smaller Dominions, yet so that all or most of them still own the great Emperour of *Monomotapa*.

All these Dominions are certainly the Richest of the World in Gold, no Mines affording such Quantities of that precious Metal as those of *Misapa, Manchica* and *Batua*, in the first of which has been found a Lump of pure Gold worth 12000 Ducats, and another of 40000. Three great Fairs are Yearly held, to which the Merchants resort to Trade; The first at *Luanze*, four Days Journey up the Country from the Frontiers of *Zofala*; the second at *Bueto*, farther up, and the third at *Majapa* still higher.

The Capital of this Empire is of the same Name, seated on the great River of the Holy Ghost. It is very Large, but the Houses all of Timber, neatly whited both within and without, the Roofs rising on all Sides till they end in a Point. The Emperour's Palace, tho' of Wood, is large, and divided into three Apartments; one for himself, another for his Wives, and a third for his Servants. This they say is all gilt or cover'd with Plates of Gold, as are the Chairs and other Moveables, except the Candlesticks, which are of Ivory hanging by Silver Chains, and his Plates and Dishes of Porcelane, inlaid with Gold. The Emperour has many Wives, and is serv'd even in the meanest Employments by the Greatest Men of the Nation.

*Batua* is a Province and City of the same Name to the Northward, towards the Mountains of the Moon, very rich in Gold, and consequently much resorted to by Merchants. *Inhamban* is another Province on the Frontiers of *Monomotapa*, shut up among the Mountains, the Capital whereof is call'd *Tongue*, and the People Idolaters, except some

few converted by the *Jesuits* of late Years. The Heat is here so excessive, that few *Portugueses* are able to endure it. *Inhamior* lies lower towards *Zofala* and the River *Cuama*, its Capital, no better than a Village, where many *Portugueses* us'd to reside for Trade.

*Monomotapa* in general is more temperate than other Parts of *Africk*, especially towards the South, where it is out of the Torrid Zone. The Land being for the most part well water'd, yields Plenty of Pasture, and all Sorts of Grain, full of Trees and Sugar-Canes, which grow without the Help of Art, and yet the Country is not every where inhabited. The Natives are rich in Cattel, which they value above Gold, and the Elephants are very Numerous. Generally the People are Handsom and have short black Hair, and of a more ready Wit than those of the Coast. Their common Food is Beef, their Drink sower Milk, their Bread, Cakes of Rice, of Millet, or of the Root call'd *Miames*. Their Habit is a Piece of Cloth of any colour wrapp'd about their Waste, being naked upwards, with their Privities in a Calabash. Their Arms are Bows, Arrows, and Javelins. Religion they know little of, nor have they any Idols, but acknowledge one only God, and believe there is a Devil, whom they call *Mazaco*, and having no Knowledge of Letters, they speak of Things past by Tradition, and are very inclinable to the Doctrine of Christianity, so that great Numbers have been converted by the *Dominicans*, who have several Monasteries there, and all free Exercise of Religion is allow'd.

Having had Occasion to mention the Mountains of the Moon, it is requisite to inform the Reader, that they divide the Upper from the Lower *Ethiopia*, running quite across *Africk* from East to West, and of such a Prodigious Height in some Places, that they are thought to exceed all others in the World. Yet must it not be thought a Mistake what we said above of *Batua* lying towards the Mountains of the Moon; for there are several vast Branches of them running out sundry Ways, and still retaining the same Name, as Parts of the Whole.

## C H A P. XIX.

## Of the Coast of the C A F R E S.

**T**HIS is the Coast running round the Southern Part of *Africk*, and compassing the greater Part of the Lower *Ethiopia* on the West, South and East. It begins in 15 Degrees of South Latitude, and holds on to the Cape of *Good Hope*, in 35, which is 1200 Miles South-

east, at the said Cape it turns again to North-east to 22 Degrees of South Latitude, and tho' it reaches not so far Northward as the other Way; yet reckoning the Bow it makes, amounts to no less Number of Miles. The best Division that can be made of this Coast is this,

*Mataman.*

*Cafres*, properly so call'd, The Dutch Town at the Cape of *Good Hope*.

*Chicanga.*

*Sedanda.*

*Zofala.*

*Quiteva.*

*Zofala.*

*Quiteva.*

*Mataman,*

Is properly the Name of the Kings, tho' now appropriated to the Country, the People being call'd *Climbebas*. On the North it is parted from

*Angola* by the Mountains of the Moon, on the East by a Branch of the same Mountains from *Monomotapa*; on the South by the River *Bravagul* from the Coast of *Cafres*, properly so call'd, and on the West it has the *Ethiopic* Ocean, extending



ing in Length from 15 Degrees of South Latitude to 25, about 600 Miles, and lies in the Torrid Zone, a very small Part reaching beyond the Tropick of *Capricorn*.

Here are no Towns, or Cities, but only poor scattering Villages. However all this Land is subject to one absolute Monarch, under whom there are several petty Lords, who stile themselves King, tho' their Dominions be very small, poor and weak. The Climate is temperate enough for the Torrid Zone, and tho' the Coast be all a barren Sand, yet further up, the Soil is fruitful, producing all Sorts of Provisions, and in the Mountains, there is much Crystal and several Metals. All the Coast as has been said is a deep Sand: In 18 Degrees South Latitude is *Cabo Negro*, or the Black Cape; in 21 that of *Ruy Perez*, and in 22 the Bay *das Neves*, or *Golfo Frio*, the Snowy or Cold Bay, about which there are abundance of Trees. The little Island *Frisland* is almost under the Tropick of *Capricorn*, and then follows the River of *Bravagbul*, which as has been said, parts this Kingdom from the rest of the *Cafres*.

The Coast of *Cafres*, properly so call'd,

Extends from the Kingdom of *Matanen* above mention'd to the Cape of *Good Hope*, and back again towards the North-east, as far as *Chicanga*, from which it is parted by the River of the Holy Ghost, in about 28 Degrees of South Latitude. Here are no particular Kingdoms, or States, but what Distinction can be found among them is rather by Families or Tribes, each of which has its Chief, and lives in Villages separate from the Rest. None has ever visited any of this Country but the *Dutch*, and even they only a small Part about the Cape of *Good Hope*, for others have only touch'd upon the Coast, except some unfortunate *Portugueses*, who have been cast away on it, and forc'd to travel by Land towards *Zofala*, most of them perishing by the Way, either destroy'd by the Natives or for Want of Provisions. The Great Barbarity of these People has been the Occasion that no *Europeans* have ventur'd among them, and the little there is to be got by running such Hazards has made Men backward in exposing themselves. What is said of one Part of them may be apply'd to the Rest, for they all agree in their brutal way of Living, and the Country is much the same throughout all its Compass; for which Reason we shall content our selves with the Account *Ten Rhine* gives of the *Hotentotes* about the Cape of *Good Hope*, which will suit any others, and is the latest we have from any one that was upon the Spot.

The Cape of *Good Hope* is in 34 Degrees 30 Minutes of South Latitude, first Discover'd by *Bartholomew Diaz*, in the Year 1489, for *Ten Rhine* mistakes in assigning it to *F.asco de Gama* in 1498. The Discoverers call'd it *Cabo Tormentoso*, or Stormy Cape, from the great Storms they there met with, but King *John* the 2d of *Portugal* gave it the Name of *Cabo de buena Esperanza*, the Cape of *Good Hope*, from the Hopes it promised in discovering the *East-Indies*. The Soil *Ten Rhine* says, is Barren, affording nothing but what is reduc'd by much Labour; yet all others agree, but generally this Coast has Plenty of Pasture, and abounds in Cattel. The Table Mount adjoining to it is so call'd from its Flatness on the top. The next is *Lions Mount* because it resembles that Beast at a Distance.

These Mountains are full of Wild Beasts, as Lions, Elephants, Rhinoceros, Tigers, &c. and the Plains abound in great and small Cattel. For Birds there are Ostriches, Peacocks, Cranes, Storks, Herons, Geese, Bitterns, Ducks, Turkeys, Hens, Teals, Felfares, Cormorants, Partridges, Pheasants, Lapwings, Nightingales, Snipes, Owles, Sea-Gulls, Martins, Swallows, and many peculiar to the Place. The Sea affords most Sorts of Fish known to us, and many more we are Strangers to; and as for Insects here are as many as in any Part of the World.

The People, whom we commonly call *Cafres* and *Hotentotes*, are, as was said above, divided into many Tribes or Families; their Barbarous Names will afford us little Satisfaction, since, as was said, they all agree in the Particulars we shall give of them. They are generally Tawny, but reckon Blackness a Beauty, and therefore daub their Hair and Faces with Grease and Earth of several Colours. Their Bodies for the most part tall, well-shap'd, and strong, their Lips large, their Noses flat, and their Hair woolly. All their Apparel is a piece of Leather hanging down before, like an Apron, the rest naked. The Women are known by being more deformed than the Men, and have two natural Labels hanging from their Privities, which they are so proud of, that they show them to all Strangers. In cold Weather, besides the Apron abovemention'd they wear a Leathern sort of Vest, hanging down to their Knees, and a Cap of the same on their Heads, with a Pouch hanging at their Back, to carry their Tobacco and other Necessaries.

They have no other Dwellings but little Huts, and all the Goods in them are Drinking Cups, made of Shells, and either Earthen Pots, or pieces of Trees hollow'd to put their Meat in, which they either roast on the Coals or eat raw. Being under no Restraint from Conscience, or Education they indulge themselves in all manner of Vice. Laws they have none. They despise the Female Sex, and put them upon all Labour. Their Food is Beef, Mutton, Fish, Butter, Milk and Sword-Grass instead of Bread. Their Weapons are Bows and Arrows, Darts, and Javelins. They know no Wealth but their Cattel, and that they Trade with, exchanging it for Tobacco, Aquavita, and Coral, Glals, or Copper Beads. Some notion of a Deity they have and call God, the Great Captain, yet have scarce any thing of Religion, but that they Adore the Sun and Moon. Every Tribe and Village has its peculiar Captain; which may suffice in Relation to these Barbarous People.

At the Foot of the Table Mountain the *Dutch* have built a Fort, where they keep a good Garrison, and have Gardens and Orchards about it, besides much till'd Land, the Fort being grown up to a Town, and well inhabited, and this is the general Watering-place of their Ships in their Voyages to and from the *East-Indies*.

*Chicanga* is a part of the Coast of *Cafres*, distinguish'd from the rest by this Name, and lying between the great River of the Holy Ghost, and the little one of the Kings; but on what account this separation is made, does not appear; since the Natives are nothing more civiliz'd than those already spoken of, nor have they any Towns or other thing of note among them, and the same may be said of the next Province, call'd *Sedanda*, lying between the aforesaid River of the Kings and that of *Zimbere*. *Zofa*.



*Zofala* follows next, which some confine betwixt the Rivers of *Cuama* and *Zambere*, and others extend to that of the Holy-Ghost, which last includes the above-mention'd Provinces of *Chicunga* and *Saunda*, and also the other not yet spoken of, call'd *Quiteza*; this greater extent is allotted it by *Emanuel de Faria y Sousa*, whom we shall follow in the account of it, as being certainly the perfectest, none being so well able to give it as the *Portugueses*, who first settled there, and have continued till this Day for above 200 Years. When first discover'd, it was a Kingdom subject to the Emperour of *Monomotapa*, tho' it had a King residing in it, being about 250 Leagues in compass. Many Rivers water it, and most of them rowl golden Sands. It generally enjoys a temperate Air, and is pleasant, wholesome, and fruitful. Some Parts feed mighty Flocks of Sheep, with whose Skins the Natives cloath themselves because of the cold South Winds. Along the River *Cuama* the Country is mountainous, woody, and well water'd, which makes it delightful and populous. Elephants are here very numerous, and consequently Ivory plentiful. The Town of *Zofala* stands upon the River of the same Name, not far from that of *Cuama*. Fifty Leagues South West of

it are the rich Gold Mines of *Monica*, encompass'd 30 Leagues about with high Mountains. In these Parts there are the remains of Buildings of a wonderful Structure, with Inscriptions on them in unknown Characters, but by whom erected the Natives have no Account. They believe in one God, whom they call *Mozimo*, and use no Idols; Witchcraft, Theft, and Adultery are severely punish'd. Their Wives, as many as they can keep. The better sort use Cotton Cloathing, and that adorn'd with Gold. The Houses are all of Wood; the Weapons Bows, Arrows, Javelins, Darts, Daggers, and small Hatchets. The Women are so much respected, that if the King's Son meets one, he gives her the way, and stops till she passes.

Of *Quiteza* we shall not need, nor is there any thing to add, that being only a small Province belonging to *Zofala*, and in it a Town which is much gone to ruin. Having thus run through the whole Continent of *Africk*, we will next proceed to the Islands belonging to it, which we have reserv'd to be spoken of all in one Chapter, as they are distinct Bodies and only belonging to the Continent, as nearer to it than to any other of the Parts of the Earth.

## CH A P. XX.

### Of the AFRICAN ISLANDS.

WE will begin with them as we did with the Continent on the North West, and so proceed Southward, to the Cape of Good Hope, then turning to the East and North finish the whole Compass of this Part of the World.

#### Madera and Porto Santo

Are two Islands in the *Atlantick* Ocean, lying off Westward from the Kingdom of *Fez*. *Madera*, the chief of them was discover'd in the Year 1420 by *John Gonzalez*, and *Tristan Vaz*, sent out to discover by Prince *Henry* of *Portugal*, who gave it this Name of *Madera*, or Wood, because it was all over one continu'd Forest without any Inhabitants; but the Trees being set on Fire, it run throughout, so that scarce a Stick was left in it. The Latitude of it is 31 Degrees and a half, the Shape Triangular, the Length about 140 Miles, and the Breadth about 24.

The Fire having discover'd the Land, it was found fruitful and pleasant, so that the *Portugueses* soon settled upon it, and in process of time built three Towns, the chief of them call'd *Funchal*, which is a Bishoprick, and besides the Cathedral, has three Parish-Churches, two Monasteries of *S. Francis*, and a College of *Jesuits*, the other two are *Manchico*, and *Santa Cruz*. The whole Island contains 36 Parishes, 5 or 6 Monasteries, 4 Hospitals, and about 25000 of both Sexes, not including Children, being so full of Country-Houses and Farms that it looks like one continued Garden. It produces all sorts of Fruit and Grain, has sufficient Cattel, and all sorts of Fowl; but the chief Trade is in its Wine, so strong that scarce any comes near

it, excellent Sugar, whereof they make curious Sweet-meats, especially candy'd Citron, Wax, and Honey, and Dragon's Blood.

About 13 Leagues North-east from it is another Island, call'd *Porto Santo*, not above 5 Leagues in Compass, and discover'd by *John Zarco* and *Tristan Vaz* in 1428. It is in all Respects answerable to that of *Madera*, and inhabited by the *Portugueses*.

#### The CANARY Islands

Lie to the Southward of *Madera*, West of the Coast of *Biledulgerid*, being by common consent the Fortunate Islands of *Ptolemy*; they are so call'd from the greatest of them bearing that Name, and that had it from the many Dogs found in it when first discover'd, in *Spanish* call'd *Canes*.

That they were known to the Ancients is certain, but lay many Ages forgotten, till in the Year 1405, King *John* of *Castile* employ'd *John de Betancour*, a French Gentleman, who again found and took possession of them. They are seven in number, viz. *Palma*, *Hierro*, *Gomera*, *Tenerife*, *Gran Canaria*, *Fuente Ventura*, and *Lanzarote*.

*Palma* lies most to the West, except *Hierro*, which is 12 Leagues South of it, in 28 Degrees of North Latitude. It is small, but the Soil very rich, having very good Pasture, and producing much Wine, Sugar, and other Fruits. Its Wine is reckon'd the best of all those Islands, and much valued in all Parts. The Town in it bears the same Name, and much resorted to.

*Hierro*, or *Ferro* is 12 Leagues South of *Palma*, and S West of *Gomera*, in 27 Degrees of North Latitude.



Latitude, being about 6 or 7 Leagues in Compass. On the West Point hereof most modern Geographers, and we after them, place the first Meridian. Tho' this Island be one of those so much resorted to, yet there is a most unaccountable Story told of it, which very many afford little Credit to, and the Relaters themselves differ much in the Account of it. In short, they tell us, that it is wholly destitute of Water, but what drops from a Tree standing in the midst of it, which is receiv'd into a Basen in such quantity, that it not only supplies the Island abundantly, but all Ships that arrive there. They add, that this Tree is always cover'd with a Cloud, or thick Mist which settles on it, and so distils into Water. *Jackson*, an *Englishman*, who pretends to have measur'd it, says, the Basen under the Tree contains 20000 Tun, and is fill'd in a Night, but who should make such a Basen or Cistern in that Island is what appears as incredible as the rest. *Nichols*, another *Englishman*, speaks of the Tree, and its serving the Island with Water, as an Eye-witness. Many more write the same, but take it by hearsay, and most of them differ in the Particulars, so that nothing is decided, nor is the thing at all probable. However that be, the Island is fertile enough, and bears Corn, Sugar, all sorts of Fruit, and plenty of Pasture.

*Gomera* is Eastward of *Hierro*, and some small matter Northward. It is an Island not well improv'd, the Soil not being very kind, yet it has a small Town of the same Name, and a Port towards *Tenerife*, whence some Wine is exported.

*Tenerife*, notwithstanding that *Grand Canaria* is the biggest, and has given its Name to the rest, is now the chiefest, as being the principal Place of Trade, lying East of *Hierro*, and is about 60 Miles in length. The principal Town in it is call'd *S. Christoval de la Laguna*, or *S. Christopher of the Lake*, besides which there are *Santa Cruz*, *Rotava*, *Rialejo*, and *Garachico*. When first discover'd, it was under several Kings, who liv'd in Caves, and kept the Bodies of their Ancestors dried up like Mummies. In this Island is the famous Mountain, known by the Name of the Peak of *Tenerife*, reckon'd by some the highest Land in the World, but that is not to be rely'd on. The Ascent is reckon'd about 15 Miles, and the perpendicular height suppos'd to be a third Part. The best Wine in this Island is that which grows about the Sea-Coast, and here is a great resort of Ships from all Parts for it.

*Gran Canaria*, from which the rest have their Name, is the largest of them, and seated to the East, somewhat Southward from *Tenerife*. The City of *Palmas*, or *Canaria*, is the Capital of all the Islands, a Bishop's See, and the Residence of the Governour, well built, the Inhabitants wealthy, and the Streets always clean. Besides this, there are several other small Towns. The whole Island abounds in Fruit of all sorts, Corn, Pasture, and Vineyards, as being inferior to none for fertility.

*Fuerteventura*, still to the Eastward of the last, not above 12 Leagues from the Continent of *Africa*, and has four good Towns, *Lanagala*, *Arasala*, *Pozzo Negro*, and *Fuerteventura*. All sorts of Fruit grow here to Perfection, as does Corn; but being something Mountainous, it

breeds infinite quantities of Goats, whose Skins and Tallow are of considerable value, besides that the Flesh is good, and they make excellent Cheese of their Milk.

*Lanzarote* stands North from the last, containing three Towns, *Cayas*, or *Lanzarote*, *Puerto de Ajos*, and *Puerto de Cavallos*, and is in all Points like *Fuerteventura*.

These Islands in general must be hot by Situation, as drawing near to the Tropick of *Cancer*, but cool'd by the Air of the Sea. The Soil of them all is good, and produces every thing necessary for the support of Human Life, but their principal Wealth consists in that rich Wine, which is thence transported to all Parts of *Europe*, and their Singing-Birds are known to exceed all others, being much better than those of the same Breed brought from *Germany*. All the Islands being subject to the Dominion of the Crown of *Spain*, and inhabited by *Spaniards*, we need not add any thing of their Religion, Government, or Manners.

#### The Islands of Cabo Verde,

So call'd from being to the Westward of that Cape, lie between 14 and 19 Degrees of North Latitude, and are 10 in Number, viz. *S. Antonio*, *S. Vincent*, *S. Lucia*, *S. Nicolas*, *Sol*, *Boa Vista*, *Santiago*, *Mayo*, *Fogo*, and *Brava*.

*S. Antonio*, which is most to the North West, and not three Leagues from *S. Vincent*, is small, and inhabited by about 500 Blacks, under a *Portuguese* Governour, without any Town but only a small Village of 20 or 30 Houses, the rest scattering about the Island, which produces all sorts of Fruit in Perfection, and some Goats, but has no Corn, nor any Trade, so that all the Inhabitants are miserable Poor.

*S. Vincent*, as was said, is three Leagues East of the last, about the same bigness, but affords no manner of Refreshment to Ships that touch there, except Water and an infinite quantity of Tortoises, which come daily out of the Sea, are excellent Meat, and of a prodigious bigness. Here are also wild Goats, but scarce ever above 20 or 30 Inhabitants.

*Santa Lucia* is to the Southward of both the last, and bigger than they put together, high and hilly, well wooded and water'd, yet generally has but very few or no Inhabitants.

*S. Nicholas*, South East from *S. Lucia*, not inferior to it in bigness, little inhabited, and the most Creatures it produces are Cats and Goats.

The *Salt Island*, so call'd from the great Plenty of Salt it affords, is very small, and lies East of *S. Nicholas*. It has a good Road, but the Soil is barren, yet it is frequently resorted to by Ships for its Salt.

*Boa Vista* has the Name from its agreeable Prospect off at Sea, and is South of the last above, being much of the same magnitude; only inhabited by poor, wretched People.

*Mayo*, or the Island of *May*, less than any others, and to the South of *Boa Vista*. On the North side of it is a good Bay and Road, and on it a little Village of 10 or 12 Houses. The Ground of it is Rocky, and consequently produces little Grass, yet it has abundance of wild Goats, and some little wild Horses, Asses, and Kine; those few People there are on it have but an uncomfortable Life.



*Santiago*, the biggest of all these Islands, lies West of *Mayo*. In it is a Town, which the *Portugueses* call *Praya*, or the Strand, betwixt two Bays, where there is a Bishop, this being the Capital of all the Islands, and near the Shore, where the Ships generally Anchor, there is a small Fort.

*Fogo* and *Brava* are two other very inconsiderable Islands South of *Santiago*, in which there is Nothing worth observing.

Some will have these Islands to be the *Gorgones* of *Mela*, others the *Gorgades* of *Pliny*, and others the *Hesperides* of *Ptolemy*. The first Discovery of them in later Ages was by *Antony Nole*, a *Genoese*, serving the King of *Portugal*, in the Year 1460. They are subject to the Crown of *Portugal*; most of the Inhabitants Blacks, except some few Unfortunate *Portugueses*, who know not how to live elsewhere, and therefore pass their Days there in Poverty and Want, having no Trade, nor any Relief from abroad, but from those few Ships which touch there, some Times for Water, Salt, Goats, Tortoises, or Fruit.

Islands from the Gulf of Guinea, to the Cape of Good Hope.

The Island of *Fernando Po*, so call'd from its first Discoverer, is in three Degrees and a half of South Latitude, near the Coast of *Guinea* and *Congo*, is not inconsiderable for Bigness, being above 30 Miles in Length and 20 over, very high, producing *Mandarin* Roots, whereof they make Bread; as also Tabaco, Rice, and abundance of Fruit. The *Europeans* never touch at it, unless to be for Water, because the Natives are Savage, and fly as soon as they see them.

The *Prince's Island*, is next, lying South-west of the last, and about 30 Leagues from the Continent. It is smaller than the other, and inhabited by *Portugueses*, Mulattoes and Blacks, who have many Slaves, whom they employ in Sugar-Works, Planting of Tabaco, and Sowing Rice and other Grain; Some Cotton also grows in it, which the Women spin for their own Use. They have Plenty of Swine and Poultry, and as much Fish as they will take. On the Sea-shore is a small Town of about 200 Houses, defended by a small Parapet and 5 Pieces of Cannon.

*S. Thomas's Island* is directly under the Line, between 40 and 50 Leagues from the Coast of *Congo*, almost Round, and about 120 Miles in Compass. The *Portugueses* discover'd it, in the Year 1471, on *S. Thomas's Day*, from whom it had the Name. It was then all one entire Forest, having never been inhabited, but they Peopled and Planted it, since when it produces vast Quantities of Sugar, but no Wheat, by reason of its excessive Heat. Their Chief Town is call'd *Po-voação*, and is a Bishop's See, containing 5 or 600 *Portuguese* Families.

*Anson* seated towards the 2d Degree of South Latitude, some Leagues to the South-west of *S. Thomas*, is about 10 Leagues in Compass, well furnish'd with Necessaries for Life, and inhabited by a few *Portuguese* Families, and many Blacks; who have a little Town intrench'd, to secure it against any Enemy.

*S. Matthew* is between the Second and Third Degrees of South Latitude, above 100 Leagues distant from the nearest Land, which is that of *Guinea*, but Desert.

The Island of *Ascension*, another small Place not inhabited, lies between 8 and 9 Degrees of South Latitude, above 200 Leagues from any Land. Ships often touch there for Water and Tortoises.

*S. Helena*, so call'd, because discover'd by the *Portugueses* on that Saint's Day, lies in 16 Degrees 15 Minutes of South Latitude 550 Leagues North-west from the Cape of *Good Hope*, 350 West from *Angola*, and 510 East from *Brazil*, being the farthest from any Continent we know of, and yet not above 20 Miles in Compass. It is all surrounded with high and inaccessible Rocks, except on the East side, where there are two small Bays, and good Anchoring for Ships, under the shelter of the Island. In this Place stands a small Fort maintain'd by the *English*, who are possess'd of the Island, and the only Inhabitants, being very few in Number, as may be imagin'd of such a small and solitary Place. Tho' thus Lonesome, it is healthy and pleasant, the great Heat being temper'd by the constant Winds on the Hills. The Mountains pour down excellent Water, which supplies not only the Inhabitants, but all Ships that touch there in their Way, to or from *India*. Most of it is Rocky and Mountainous, but the Valleys produce all sorts of Herbs and Fruit, tho' not much Grain, because the Rats destroy it. The Mountains swarm with Wild Goats, and there is great store of tame Fowl bred about the Houses. Besides there are Wild Boars and some Horses. The *English* have kept Possession of this Island many Years, for the Conveniency of Watering and the other Refreshments the *East-India* Ships find there, the Sick generally recovering when they are but a few Days ashore. From this forward we meet with no Island worth mentioning, till we come to that of

*Madagascar*, which is one of the largest Islands hitherto known in the World, extends about 1000 Miles in Length, and above 200 in Breadth, in the widest Part, being seated between the 12th and the 26th Degrees of South Latitude, on the East side of *Africa*, opposite to the Coasts of the *Cafres* and *Zanguebar*; *Mozambique* being the nearest Place to it on the Continent, from which it is distant above 200 Miles. The *Portugueses*, who first Discover'd it, gave it the Name of *S. Lawrence*; the Natives call it *Madagascar*; the *Arabs* *Sarandib*; and the *French*, *L'Isle Dauphine*, or the Dauphin's Island. The Length of it runs North-east and South-west. All along the Coast there are many pleasant Rivers that fall into the Sea, and good Bays, which afford safe Anchoring for Ships. The *French* have made the greatest Discoveries both of the Coast and Inland, as being the only People, who have had a Settlement there for many Years, having built a Fort on the Southermost Part of the East side of it, which they call, the *Dauphin's Fort*, in about 25 Degrees 6 Minutes of South Latitude, whence they have conquer'd a considerable Part of the Island, and are long since settled in Peace with the Natives, many of whom they Convert. Here is great Plenty of Iron, and some Gold is found in the Mountains, but the Quantity small, and the Value inconsiderable; as also Crystal, Topazes, Granates, Amethysts, Eagle Stones, Emeralds, Sapphires, Hyacinths, Jasper and Blood Stones. No Place abounds more in Cattle, besides which, there are infinite Numbers of Monkeys, abundance of Wild Dogs and Cats, besides Porcupines, Crocodiles, Snakes and great Variety of



of Fowls and Fish. The Product of the Earth is no less various; for it produces all sorts of Grain, Fruit and Plants known to us, besides many more we are Strangers to; as also some Pepper, Tobacco, Sugar, and all these Things, except the last, may be gather'd twice a Year. Nor is this all, for the Trees and Shrubs yield the Gum call'd *Tacumaca*, Frankincense and Benjamin; The Sea often throws up Amber-greece; the Wild Beasts yield Musk and Civit; the Land has Talk, or lizing-glass for the Windows, instead of Glass; as also Salt-Peter, and good Coals in Pits. The Towns and Villages differ only in Bigness, as consisting only of Huts or Cottages, only the House belonging to the Lord of the Place, is larger and more lofty than the Rest; yet these Dwellings have generally a Ditch round them and are Palisado'd. Their chief Wealth consists in Cattel; their ordinary Diet is Milk, Rice and Roots, and some Beef, and they make a Drink of Honey, and of Sugar; their Habit a sort of Mantle about their Shoulders, and another Cloth wrapp'd about their Waist and hanging down, with Sandals on their Feet, and a Thing like a Basket on their Heads. All the Natives are Black, except those of one small Province, on the West side next the Tropick of *Capricorn*, who are Tawny, and most of the Chief Men, who say they are descended from the *Arabs*. They are generally of the larger Size, active and fierce, ready enough at any Handicraft, write Arabick Characters, and are addicted to Astrology and something of Divination, and extremely complaisant to their Wives. As for Religion, they have no particular Places of Worship, nor Priests, but use Circumcision and believe in One God, Creator of all Things, yet pay him no Adoration, living only according to the Law of Nature, and confessing their Sins. They also believe there is a Devil, whom they much Dread, by the Name of *Taiwadey*, and that he is the Author of all Evil, as God is of all Good; and therefore they adore and endeavour to appease that mischievous Spirit. None exceed them in superstitious Observations of Signs and Tokens, and they have abundance of ridiculous Fables concerning the Beginning of the World.

There are many more small Islands about *Madagascar*, as those of *John de Lisboa*, *Maurice*, *Miscarenbus*, &c. on the East side, *Comera*, *S. Christopher*, the *Holy Ghost*, and others on the North-west, and more along the Coast of *Zanguebar*, which have nothing Particular worth our describing. *Zacotora*, at the Mouth of the Red Sea, we gave an Account of, together with the Coast of *Adrian*, and the Islands in the Red Sea, do not deserve any peculiar Description. It therefore only remains that we proceed into the *Mediterranean*, and say something of the Island of

## MALTA.

Which, tho' much nearer to the Coast of *Sicily*, is yet by most Geographers reckon'd as a Part of *Africa*. The present Name is only a Corruption of the Ancient, which was *Melita*. Its Situation is in the 36th Degree of North Latitude, the Length about 15 Miles, the Breadth 7, and the Circumference 40, the Form almost Oval, with several Harbours on the Coast, defended by as many Castles, and the Position is South of *Sicily*, and North of *Tripoli* in *Barbary*. *Valetta* so call'd from *John de Valette*, the Great Master that Found-  
ed it, is the Capital Town, built on the Port

call'd *Marza*, upon a Rock, and almost cut off from the Island by a Deep Trench cut in the Rock. It is extraordinary well fortify'd with Outworks, after the Modern manner. The Streets are large and strait, the Houses lofty, all of Stone, to the Number of about 2000, with flat Roofs. The Gates are three, one to the Sea, and two to the Land, the Churches 7, that of *S. John*, the Patron of the Order being the chiefest. Here are also 6 Palaces, for as many Nations as the Order consists of, being those of *Provence*, *Anvergne*, *France*, *Italy*, *Aragon* and *Castile*; there was formerly one for *England*, but that is abolish'd. Besides these, the Great Master has a Magnificent Palace of his own; there are also some Monasteries, and a Noble Hospital, where the Sick are serv'd in Plate, and by the Knights of the Order themselves. The Arsenal is stor'd with all sorts of Necessaries for War. The Castle of *S. Elmo*, seated on the Point of Land next the Sea, from the City and founded on a Rock, is a regular Work of Modern Structure, and defends the City and Port. On the other Side of the Port is the Castle of *S. Angelo*, and behind it another Town, call'd *Citta Vittoriosa*, the Victorious City, because it held out a Siege against the Turks. Besides these, there is the Town of *S. Michael*, cut off from the Island by a Ditch, and *Citta Vecchia*, or the Old City, otherwise call'd *Medina*, in the midst of the Island. There are many Villages and scattering Parishes, which do not deserve any particular mention. The Natives hold that the Land of this Island, which is like a soft Stone, was blest'd by *S. Paul* when he landed there, after his Dangers at Sea, and they find abundance of Eyes, Tongues and other pieces of Snakes, so lively represented in Stone, that nothing of Art can exceed them. These they say were left there ever since the Apostle shook the Viper from his Hand, and they pretend they are an Antidote against all Poison. The Soil is naturally stony and barren, so that it yields not half the Subsistence necessary for the Inhabitants; yet Industry has made several curious Gardens. Men and Women of any Note are all clad after the *Italian* Fashion, the Meaner sort wear a close short Waistcoat with a Hood behind, and a red Cap. All Strangers are clad after their own Country manner. There are thought to be 40000 Souls living upon the Island, whereof 25000 Men able to bear Arms, many being Knights and Soldiers, who are not Married. *Malta* was anciently Subject to the *Carthaginians*, next to the *Romans*. After them the *Mahometans* possess'd themselves of it about the Year 828, but were again expell'd in 1090, by *Roger*, the *Norman*, Earl of *Sicily*; from which Time it continu'd annex'd to the Crown of *Sicily*, till the Emperour *Charles* the 5th being Master of that Island, gave it to the Knights of *S. John of Jerusalem*, who after being expell'd the Island of *Rhodes* by the *Turks*, in the Year 1522, had wander'd about from Place to Place, without any certain Abode. In 1530, they took Possession of this Island, and that of *Gozo*, a small one close by it, granted them, as has been said by the Emperour, where they have continu'd ever since, and thence call'd Knights of *Malta*, defending it bravely against the *Turks*, when attack'd by them, and they have always done great Harm to those Infidels, being ever at open War with them, and taking many of their Ships.



*A Leaf of the Copy being Mislaid, this Account of the River Nile which should have been inserted in our Description of Egypt, was omitted by the Printer.*

THE River *NILE* is so much talk'd of, as well on account of its Annual overflowing and fertilizing *Egypt*, as the length of its Course, that every body has heard its Fame. And it therefore we stretch a little our usual brevity in Speaking of it, we hope we shall not offend our Readers.

The Source or fountain head of *Nile* was in such obscurity in ancient Times that it became a Proverb of Similitude to an inscrutable thing. Nor was even the Learned *Ptolemy* rightly inform'd of it, for he and all others after him till of late, laid it in the 10th Degree of South Latitude, in the Lower *Ethiopia* where is now the Kingdom of *Mourenge*, where, says he, it issues from two Pools or Lakes lying at some distance East and West, which being encreas'd by the melted Snows from the Mountains of the Moon overflow, and unite in one Channel, which by the access of very many other Rivers, is encreas'd to the Magnitude we see it. Thus the common Opinion stood, till the Jesuits and other Missionaries in the last Age travell'd into the heart of *Africa*, and have by ocular Testimony discover'd that the River *Nile* primarily issues under the 11th Degree of North Latitude in the Western Part of the Upper *Ethiopia*; in the Country *Goyame*, which is a Province of *Abyssinia*: There two small Springs issue, in a verdant Plain on the Side of a Mountain, which soon unite and make a small River call'd the *Abavis*, and after a course of about 20 Leagues Northward it turns Eastward, and running about the same length that way, falls into the Lake of *Dambee*, whence issuing on the South, it makes a Course of 20 or 30 Leagues that way, then turns to the West, encircles the Province *Goyame*, and then turns its course Northward between *Abyssinia* and *Nubia*, passes thro' *Egypt*, and finally empties it self into the Mediterranean Sea. It is encreased by many Rivers in its course; as the *Gema*, and two other small Streams near its head, the *Bashlo*, the *Kesem* and some others, as it encircles *Goyame*; the *Maleg* and *Taccaze* larger Streams, in the 15 and 19 D. Lat. and the *Nubia* a very considerable River in the 25 D. of Latitude; with many others, But that the *Niger* R. issues from the same Fountain with *Nile*, as has been maintain'd by the Ancients, is not so, as we have told you when we spake of that River in Page 205. It's course is near 1500 Miles, but its breadth is not very great, for *Thevenot* compares it to the *Seine*; nor is its Stream very rapid. In its course it has Seven Cataracts or Falls, wherein the whole Body of the River falls Perpendicular from a very great height, and causes a Noise that is heard several Miles off. At its flux into the Sea it is divided into two great Branches, and formerly five more small ones, whence it was said to have seven Mouths, but these are so choak'd with Sand, that they are hardly discernable. It is a little below the ancient City *Memphis*, where the Town *Rudac* now stands, that it branches out, and composing a Triangle whose bottom is the Mediterranean Sea, was nam'd by the Ancients the Delta from it's Similitude to that

Character in the Greek Alphabet. The Mouths of the two great Streams are, the East at *Damietta*, and the West at *Rosetta*. This is the only River in *Egypt*, and the only Water they have to Drink, wherefore all their Towns are seated near its Banks. The Water is muddy, but they have an Art to clarify it, and it is very wholsom Drink. It affords but little Fish, but abounds with *Crocodiles*, a Creature of ravenous Nature, and by his devilish Nature of loving Man's Flesh is very terrible: It is in form like a Lizard, with four Legs and a long Tail, and long Snout; arm'd with a wonderfully strong scaly Coat, which renders him almost invulnerable; his Mouth is very long, and his Jaws arm'd with long and sharp Teeth; and has these two Peculiarities in his Mouth, namely, has no Tongue, and moves his Upper Jaw while his under remains fix'd. The Crocodile is amphibious, and lives at Land as well as in Water, is oviparous and lays her Eggs in the Sand, which warm'd by the Sun hatches 'em; it grows its whole life, and so from 4 or 5 Inches, grows to 20 Foot in length; and is exceeding Strong.

The Encrease of the *Nile*, is by some attributed to the great Rains that fall in *Ethiopia* at that Season; by others, to the melted Snow from off the Mountains; and perhaps by both, as the Rivers in the *India extra Gangem* are in the same manner annually encreas'd, as we told in its place; the great River *Niger* is observ'd to overflow in the same manner. Of the encrease of the *Nile*, Mr. *Thevenot* has treated very particularly, from his own Observation on the Spot; the curious Reader may consult him for the tarriff of every day's rise of the Water, which not being so generally desir'd, and withal is of so much length, that it might seem tedious and impertinent to transcribe it here. The sum of that account is, that it begins to encrease about the Middle of *May*, and continues encreasing by easy additions of 4 or 5 Inches a day till the Middle of *September*, and sometimes till *October*. Because the *Egyptians* receive so much benefit by the Inundation of their Land, they are careful in observing its Rise. They call the Measure by which they observe its rise *Pic*, which is 24 Fingers breadth. When it is risen 16 *Pic's* they cut the *Khalis* or Bank that is made to confine the Stream, which is perform'd with great Ceremony by the Basha and his Chief Officers. On the 28 or 29 of *June*, a solemn Publication is made of the encrease of the River by a Cryer, whose business it is to declare every day after that day what addition of Water is made. The Year Mr. *Thevenot* was there, the Water of the *Nile* was encreas'd on the 28 *June* 8 *Pic's*; on the 14 *Aug.* it being risen to 16 *Pic's* the *Khalis* was cut, and continued encreasing to the 22 *Sept.* on which day it was risen to 21 *Pic's* and 16 Fingers breadth, which we may reckon to be above 40 Foot. After that day the Waters decreas'd, and went off in as gentle a manner as they came on. The Waters overflow almost the whole Land, for it lies so low, that the River from one Furlong's breadth encreases to 300 Furlongs.



A

## General and Particular DESCRIPTION

OF

## AMERICA.

## AMERICA





## C H A P. I.

### O F A M E R I C A in General.

**T**HIS last and greatest Part, of the Four the World is divided into, lay totally bury'd in Obscurity, and unknown to the other Three, for so many Ages as pass'd from the Creation till the Year of our Lord 1492, when first discover'd by the ever renowned *Christopher Columbus*, a *Genese*, but employ'd by *Ferdinand* and *Elizabeth*, King and Queen of *Spain*. It is in vain to form to our selves vain Notions of the Ancients being acquainted with it, on Account of *Plato's Atlantis*, and such groundless Hints in other Authors. These are all Chimerical Suppositions, for so vast a Continent once found out could never be lost again, unless Mankind had perish'd, and a new Race had sprung up that was totally ignorant of it.

The Name of *America* is certainly, tho' no less undeservedly deriv'd from *Americus Vespasius*, who continuing the Discoveries begun along the Continent by *Columbus*, usurp'd the Honour justly due to the first Undertaker of so Noble an Enterprize. The *Spaniards* to whom the World owes the Discovery, gave it the Name of the New World, and that properly enough, as being so immense a Tract that it exceeds any of the other three Parts, and is not much inferior to them all put together. A third Name of *West-Indies* it receiv'd from the first Discoverers, as no Way inferior to *India* for Wealth, with the Distinction of West, in Regard of its having that Position from us, as the other is East.

As to the Extent, it is so Prodigious, that in 200 Years since our first knowledge of it, we have not been able to ascertain its Bounds. What has been view'd is from 78 Degrees of North Latitude, in which Sir *Thomas Smith's* Bay lies, to 60 Degrees South Latitude, in all 138 Degrees North and South; which taken in a strait Line, amounts to 8280 Miles in Length, with a sutable Breadth in some Parts of near 4000 Miles, tho' the Isthmus it self, which joyns North and South *America*, be not 60 Miles over; yet from thence both Parts of the Continent stretch themselves out East and West, till they make the Breadth already mention'd.

What can be said of the Soil in such Variety of Climates, but that excepting the most Northern and Southern Parts, made barren, as elsewhere, by excessive Cold, the rest is all Immense Treasury of Nature, producing all Plants, Grain and Fruit known in the rest of the World in great Plenty, besides infinite other Sorts peculiar to it self, and which will not thrive elsewhere. Yet what is all this to the Inexhaustible Mines of Gold and Silver; which tho' all the Art of Man has been endeavouring to Drain for 200 Years, are yet so far from being impoverish'd, that they only want fresh Supplies of Hands to draw out their endless Wealth, to Gorge the insatiable Avarice of Man. Nor are Gold and Silver the only precious Commodities, such Quantities of Pearls, Emeralds and Amethysts have been there found, that they are become of inconsiderable Value, in respect of what they were. And to descend to other Particulars though not of so high

a price, yet valuable and of Use, thence we receive our constant and plentiful Supplies of *Cochineele*, *Indigo*, *Anatto*, *Logwood*, *Brazil*, *Fustick*, *Lignum Vitæ*, *Sugar*, *Ginger*, *Cacao*, *Banillas*, *Cotton*, *Red Wooll*, *Tabaco*, *Hides*, *Amber-greece*, *Bezoar*, *Balsam of Tolu*, of *Peru* and of *Chili*, *Jesuits Bark*, *Jalap*, *Mechoacan*, *Sarsaparilla*, *Sassafras*, *Tamarinds*, *Cassia*, and very many other Things which these Parts were before utter Strangers to, or at least receiv'd them at second or third Hand, and at exorbitant Rates, from such as trading to *Egypt* and the Coast of *Africa*, distributed what they there had brought to them by Land, into all the Parts of *Europe* by Sea.

The Natives when first found out, were, as may be imagin'd in such a vast Extent of several sorts, some living according to the Primitive Innocence, as in many of the Islands; others Inhuman and Barbarous *Canibals*, or Man-Eaters as in other Islands and Parts of the Continent; some under Polite Government, and mighty Monarchies, as were those of *Mexico* and *Peru*, with stately Cities, and other Magnificent Structures; others more Rude, and scattering in Villages under petty Princes, as in the North and South, and between the two great Empires beforemention'd; and lastly, one Commonwealth regularly govern'd and civiliz'd, which was that of *Tlascala*. In such Variety of Nations, there must be no less of Customs and Manners. Learning cannot be said to have had any Entrance there, no Man among them ever knew what it was to write, or read, and consequently there must be a profound Ignorance of all Sciences.

Religion could not be expected to have any Footing in a Place, which had never been known to those who had receiv'd the Word of God. It is true, there are Authors who labour to find out some dark Tokens of Christianity, having been introduc'd among those Savages, and they take no little Pains to make *S. Thomas*, the Apostle, their Instructor; but these are such far-fetch'd Fancies, as have not the least Appearance of Possibility, much less of Probability; for which Way shall we suppose the Apostle to get thither, unless an Angel took him up, as we read of *S. Philip*, when he was carried to Convert the Eunuch. But it belongs not to us to enter upon these needless Arguments, this is certain, that when *America* was discover'd, nothing appear'd in it from North to South but Idolatrous Superstition. The most Innocent paid Adoration to Sticks and Stones, before which they perform'd many absurd and ridiculous Ceremonies; whilst the wickedest Part honour'd the Devil with Sacrifices of Human Blood, wherein they butcher'd Multitudes of Men.

The Seasons and Temperature of the Air are not as in the other Parts of the World, only answerable to the Climate or Position in Regard to North and South, but differ sometimes extremely in the same Latitude, one side of a Mountain being temperate and the other excessive hot; one hour scorch'd, and another frozen, and in other



other Respects, as we shall see when we come to speak of those Countries.

The living Creatures are no less various than are all other Productions. Horses had never been seen in all this Continent, nor do we hear of any Kine, unless in the most Northern Parts; but for other sorts, they wanted scarce any that we have, unless we mention the Elephants and Camels of *Asia* and *Africa*, which are strangers to *Europe*. The great variety of Birds is wonderful, and many of them the most beautiful in the World for curious Feathers of the most delightful Colours to behold. Nor do the Seas afford less Diversity, and abundance of Fishes.

The Rivers here are the greatest in the Universe beyond all Controversie, as to instance in a few, that of *Canada*, in the North, which is known to run above 1500 Miles, and is 90 Miles over at the Mouth. That of the *Amazon* in South *America*, which rises in *Peru*, and after watering several Nations, and a Course of 3600 Miles, falls into the Northern Ocean, between *Brazil* and *Guiana*, rowling such a prodigious quantity of Water, that they take it fresh several Leagues out of the Sea from the Mouth of it. That of *Plata* descending from the Inland of South *America*, and growing so great with the accession of many other Rivers, that for many Leagues it looks like a Sea, and discharges it self into the Ocean at a Mouth above 150 Miles in Breadth.

What Mountains can be compar'd to those we find here? Those call'd *Andes* begin on the Shore of that call'd *Tierra Firme*, which is next the Isthmus of *America*, and cutting all that Southern Part into two, end at the Streight of *Magellan*, their length being about 3800 Miles, and their height so excessive, that they are several Days Journey over, and those who cross them ever suffer very much cold, tho' in the hottest Season, besides other Inconveniences. Of the rest it will be needless to speak here, when we shall offer more Particulars coming to the Provinces in which they are found.

This new World, as it was first discover'd by the *Spaniards*, so the greatest and best part of it fell to their share. Other Nations perceiving what a vast addition this was like to make to their Monarchy, would not suffer them to be the sole Possessors of such an ample Dominion. The *Portugueses* accidentally were cast upon the Coast of *Brazil*, when they were design'd for the *East-Indies*, and improving their good Fortune have made themselves Masters of all those Coasts. The *English* were not idle, but by degrees, and at several times, spread themselves along the Northern Shores, where they settled in *Virginia*, *Ala-bama*, *Carolina*, and other Provinces, besides the Islands of *Jamaica*, *Barbadoes*, and some of less Note. The *French* have a considerable Northern extent of Land along the River of *Canada*, which gives its Name to all their Conquests. And even the *Dutch* would not go without some Portion in this common Dividend, but have secur'd to themselves good Footing at *Curaçao* and *Surinam*, in South *America*. All this, as has been said, is nothing to what the *Spaniards*

enjoy, as having no Competitor on the South Sea, where their Dominions extend from 40 Degrees of North to near 45 of South Latitude, being about 5000 Miles in Length, the more Northern and Southern Parts being still unconquer'd; and possess'd by the savage Natives. In all these vast Conquests of so many *European* Nations, Christianity has now utterly abolish'd Idolatry, so that nothing of it remains but only in those Parts which have not been subdued, which are principally far North and South. But only the *Spaniards* have spread the Light of the Gospel among the Natives, for the other *European* Nations have none, or very few Subjects of them, whereas the *Spaniards* have many Millions who have no knowledge of the Pagan Superstitions of their Fore-Fathers, and at this time the Christian Religion is so far advanc'd, that they have 5 Archbishopricks, 26 Bishopricks, 2 Universities, above 400 Monasteries, many more Hospitals, and an infinite number of Parish Churches. All these Matters have been here lightly touch'd upon, only to give the Reader a general View of the whole, referring him for a more particular Account to the Description of every Province.

It remains that we come to the Division of *America*, in order to which it is necessary to premise, that it is always divided into two principal Parts, call'd North and South *America*, these being two mighty pieces of the Continent, almost cut asunder by the Sea, and only join'd by the narrow *Isthmus*, or Neck of Land, which has *Panama* on the one side, and *Nombre de Dios* on the other, and is but 18 Leagues, or 54 Miles over, so small a Bar parting the North and South Seas. Now each of these two principal Parts or Regions is subdivided into its several Kingdoms, Provinces, or Dominions, as will appear by the following Table, in which the same Order shall be observ'd as in the other Parts of the World. Before we proceed, it is necessary to observe, that *America* is not known to join to any other Part of the World, and therefore the Boundaries on the East and West sides are those commonly call'd, the North and South Seas; on the South another part of the Ocean beyond *Tierra del Fuego*; but on the North, where it ends, has not hitherto been discover'd, the farthest attempts that Way proving in vain, those who have sail'd highest still meeting Land and Ice on the side next to *Europe*, and on the Western side, tho' some Maps represent the Land of *Jesso* and Streights of *Anian* as exactly as if they had seen them, there is nothing in it but Fancie, none having ever made a Progress far enough that Way to determine whether there is an open Sea, or a narrow Streight, betwixt *Asia* and *America*. Nay, were the World once convinc'd that there was only a Streight to separate these two Parts of the Earth, it would put an end to the many Speculations for discovering which way *America* came first to be inhabited, that being a Point much controverted, and to very little purpose, among the Learned, as only known to him that made it. But let us come to the Table of Divisions, which stands thus,



## In North AMERICA.

The Polar or Arctick Countries, Defart or not conquer'd.	{	Groenland.	{	Cinaloa.
		New Denmark.		Culiacan.
	{	New Wales.		New Biscay.
		New Britain, or		Zacatecas.
	{	Tierra de Labrador,		Chiemetian.
		or Estotiland.		Xalisco.
	{	Esquimaas.		Guadalajara, properly
		Berriamites.		so call'd.
	{	Saguenay.		Mechoacan.
		Canada, properly so		Panuco.
Canada, or the French Dominions.	{	call'd.		Mexico, properly so
		Louisiana.		call'd.
	{	Iroquois.		Tlascala.
		Etechemins.		Guaxaca.
	{	Accadia.		Tabasco.
		New England.		Yucatan.
	{	New York.		Chiapa.
		New Jersey.		Soconusco.
English Dominions.	{	Pennsylvania.		Vera Paz.
		Virginia.		Guatemala.
	{	Maryland.		Honduras.
		Carolina.		Nicaragua.
Florida not well Discover'd. . . . .	{	Conchos.		Costa Rica.
		Tiguas.		Veragua.
	{	Passaguates.		
		Tobosos.		
	{	Jumanes.		
		Cibola.		
New Mexico, Sub-	{	Quires.		
		Cinames.		
ject to Spain.	{	Hubates.		
		Tamos.		
	{	Quivixa.		
		Apaches.		

Government of Guadaluajara, Subject to Spain.

Government of Mexico, of the Crown of Spain.

Government of Guatemala belonging to Spain.

## The ISLANDS.

## In South AMERICA.

Tierra Firme, or the Main-land, Subject to Spain.	{	Tierra Firme, or Panama Province.	{	Serepise.
		Cartagena.		Bahia.
	{	Santa Marta.		Ilheos.
		Rio de la Hatha.		Porto Seguro.
	{	Venezuela.		Espiritu Santo.
		Paria, or New Andalezia.		Rio de Janeiro.
	{	The New Kingdom of Granada.		S. Vicente.
		Popayan.		Guayra.
	{	Quito.		Paraguay, properly
		Los Quixos.		so call'd.
	{	Pacamoros.		Chaco.
		Los Reyes, or Lima or Peru Proper.		Tucuman.
	{	Los Charcas.		Parana.
		La Sierra.		Urvaiga.
	{	Cayana.		Rio de la Plata, properly
		Mataya.		so call'd.
	{	Tapayfa.		Chili.
		Paranaiba.		Criyo, or Chucuyto.
	{	Aparia.		
		Caribana.		
	{	Apama.		
		Coropa.		
	{	Para.		
		Maragnao.		
	{	Siara.		
		Rio Grande.		
	{	Praiba.		
		Tamaraca.		
Brazil, belonging to Portugal.	{	Pernambucc.		

Brazil, belonging to Portugal.

Paraguay, or Rio de la Plata, Subject to Spain.

Chili, Subject to Spain.

Terra Magellanica. . . . . possess'd by the Natives.

## The ISLANDS.



## C H A P. II.

## The POLAR or ARCTICK Countries.

**G**reenland is the most Northern Part of *America*, if we may assign it to this Quarter of the World, and it joins to it for any thing we yet know. How far it extends East and West cannot be determin'd, neither Extreimity being yet found out, only some will have it to be separated from *America* by *Hudson's* Streights, which cannot be assur'd, since we are ignorant of what is higher. Southward it reaches to Cape *Farewell* in 60 Degrees of Latitude, and how far it runs to the North no Man yet could find out. From that Southern Point it runs away to the North East to *Spitzbergen* or *Greenland*. This Country the *Danish* and *Iceland* Chronicles say was first Discover'd and Peopled by one *Torwald* a *Norwegian*, about the Year 779. In his Son *Erick's* time it was divided into two Provinces, the Eastern and the Western, and the Christian Religion brought in from *Denmark*. The principal Town is in the East, and call'd *Garde*, and another nam'd *Alb*; in the West *Kindlefjord*, and *Rempesingfjord*, which Places had one Bishop, and several Monasteries. From the time above-mention'd all that was known of this Country, continued in subjection to the Crowns of *Denmark* and *Norway*, till about the Year 1390, the Communication being somewhat interrupted by Troubles at Home, and Losses at Sea, the *Greenlanders* were left to themselves, and utterly lost again till in the Year 1578, *Martin Frobisher* discover'd that we now call *New Greenland*, but the Natives so salvage that there was no possibility of dealing with them, as may be seen in the Accounts of his Voyages. They are strong of Body, and cloath'd in Sea Calves-Skins sew'd together with the Sinews of Beasts, the Women wearing Breeches as well as the Men; their Complexion Olive Colour, their Hair long, their Faces painted with Blue, all very nasty, and strangers to Modesty. They know no other Wealth but their Slings, Bows, Arrows, and Boats. The last hold but one Man, and are cover'd with Sea-Calves Skins; but they have a large Sort, cover'd with Whales-Skins, which will contain 20 Persons. Since then other Ships have several times been on the Coast, and in some Parts have Traded with the Natives for Furs, Sea Calves Skins, and pieces of Unicorn's Horn. Having mention'd this Horn, it is proper to observe, that the Beast call'd a Unicorn we cannot find in any Part of the World, but in these Northern Seas there are many of a sort of Fish, with a long Horn in the Forehead, and exactly answering to that we see in several Parts, vulgarly reckon'd to belong to that always invincible Beast. The Soil is certainly barren, by reason of the excessive Cold, inasmuch that the Natives do not know what Corn is, and their whole Subsistence is Fish, some Roots, Deer, and Bears, and the Drink they most delight in is Whale-Oil. Other Parts of *Greenland* are altogether Desert, and thither it is that several Nations of *Europe* resort for the Whale Fishery. But to draw nearer to *America*, in the Year 1576, *Frobisher* above-mention'd, after discovering se-

veral Capes and Bays, came into the Streight to which he gave his own Name, in 62 Degrees of North Latitude, and forcing his Way through the Ice, arriv'd at the Place he nam'd the Countess of *Warwick's* Sound, where he had design'd to build a Fort, having brought Timber from *England*, but part of that being lost in another Ship, he return'd home loaded with glittering Sand, which he imagin'd to be Gold.

In 1585, Mr. *John Davis* found the Streight which bears his Name, and tends to the North West, where he Traded with the Salvage Natives. Next, Mr. *Hudson* found another Streight, and through it came into the vast Bay which retains his Name, and lies between *Estotiland* and *New Wales*. Sir *Thomas Button* follow'd, and keeping more Northwards, fell into that still call'd *Button's* Bay, and Winter'd at Port *Nelson*. *Baffin* after this sail'd into 78 Degrees of North Latitude, where a Bay retains his Name, and return'd convinc'd that there was no Passage. Captain *James*, an *Englishman*, and Captain *Munk*, a *Dane*, made the like Attempts with as little success. Thus all the Advantage we have gain'd by their Labours, is to be satisfied there is no Passage or open Sea on the North of *America*, and that *Greenland* does not join to *America* as high as 78 Degrees of North Latitude, where *Baffin's* Bay parts them.

Captain *Munk's* Voyage has brought us to *New Denmark*, lying from 60 Degrees no Man knows how far Northward, nor can we give it any bounds Southward. A miserable Land, almost ever frozen, and consequently affording nothing for the support of Life but such as the barbarous Natives are oblig'd to take up with, being Fish, Deer, Bears, and several sorts of Water-Fowl, without any sort of Grain.

*New Wales* was partly found by *Hudson*, and part by *James* and others, being a Land lying South and East of *New Denmark*, bounded by that and *Hudson's* Bay on the North, by the same Bay on the East, by *New France* on the South, the Extent Westward unknown.

*New Britain*, *Tierra de Labrador*, or *Estotiland*, or *Tierra de Cortereal*, for it has all these Names, and the last from one *Cortereal* a *Spaniard*, who first found it after the Southern Discoveries were much advanc'd. It is divided on the North and East from the other Part of *America* and *Greenland* by *Hudson's* Bay and Streight, on the West it has the Northern Ocean, and on the South *New France*. All these Countries, and what lies North and West from them still unknown to us, have no Town, or Houses better than Huts; the Natives a wretched, salvage People, little better than Brutes, without any knowledge of Religion, or even of the Conveniences of this present Life; generally clad in Skins, and feeding on Fish, and the Flesh of wild Beasts, and such Water-Fowls as can live in those frozen Countries. The Land is bare and fruitless, and all that Merchants venture for to any of these Parts, is either the Whale Fishery of *Greenland*, or the Furs of *Hudson's* Bay. Therefore this may suffice for those unhappy Countries.



CANADA, or New France,

The Isle of CALIFORNIA  
New MEXICO. LOUISIANE  
The River MISISSIPI. and  
the Lake's of CANADA.

*Herman Voll Fict*



**W**AS first discover'd by the *Spaniards*, who finding nothing there of Value, call'd it *Cabo de Nada*, or *Cape Nothing*; whence by Corruption came the Name of *Canada*, that of *New France* being given it in Regard the *French* are possess'd of a great Part, and are daily extending their Conquests through the Rest. On the North it Borders on *Estetiland*, *Hudson's Bay*, and Part of *New Wales*; The East extends along the Northern Ocean; The South lies upon the Dominions of *New England* and *Florida* and the West is not determin'd as reaching to Nations not yet discover'd. The most Northern Part comes up to about 55 Degrees of Latitude, and the most Southern descends to 34, but the Figure is very irregular; the Length from East to West cannot be decided, as has been already observ'd, what has been hitherto discover'd runs above 2000 Miles.

The River of *Caritz*, or of *S. Lumentz*, as the *French* call it, or *Haidelz*, is the largest in all *North-America*, and inferior to few in the World, being above 30 Leagues over at the Mouth, and 200 Fathom deep. The Course of it is already known for 1500 Miles, as flowing out of the Lake of the *Haris*, which has a Communication with

that call'd *Superieur*, or the Upper, and that of *des Puans*, or of the Stinking People, from which there is a Communication with that of *Siout*, and from that to another call'd *Affibouels*, 7 or 800 Miles North-west of that of *Hurons*; for so far the Friars have gone upon the Mission: and many are of Opinion that a Passage may be found that Way unto the South Sea. Several other Waters considerable enough in themselves, tho' inconsiderable compar'd with this, fall into it, as first that of *Des Prairies*, or of the Meadows, *De Mons*, *Les Trois Rivières*, or the Triple River, the greater of *Saguenay*, and *S. Marguerites*, near the Mouth, all those on the North-side, those on the South-side being inconsiderable. The Worst of this River is, that it has several great Falls which hinder Navigation; that at *Niagara*, *La Hontan* says is 7 or 800 Foot high, and half a League broad, the Water running to it with such Violence, that all Beasts attempting to cross it a quarter of a League above it, are swallow'd up, and it Tumbles off the Precipice with such Fury, that it makes an Arch, under which three Men may pass a Breast, without any Danger or Damage, but a few Drops of Water falling on them.

The





The Temperature of Weather must needs vary in so many Degrees of Latitude, as this Country lies under, but generally speaking all that Part, which is inhabited by the *French*, being along the Banks of the great River, is excessive Cold in Winter, but considerably hot in Summer, as most of those *American Nations* are, which lie not too far up to the Northward. The Soil is naturally good, and this mixture of Heat and Cold together with the great Abundance of Waters every where, makes it fit to produce all Things, which

our *European Northern Climate* affords. Nothing is wanting but Hands to improve it, the *French* being too few, and those otherwise employ'd for the most Part, and the Natives void of Industry, as contenting themselves with what the Earth yields with the least Labour. There is Variety of all sorts of Ground, as Mountains, Rocks, Marshes, Pasture, Arable Land, and Vast Woods. These last are full of Stags, Elks, Bears, Foxes, Martins, Wild Cats, and of all sorts of wild Fowl. The Meadows and Hills abound in Grass, and feed







## Esquimaux

Is the most Eastern Part of *Canada*, lying with-  
out the Great River of *S. Laurence*, bordering  
Northward, on *Tierra de Labrador*; on the East  
it has the Northern Ocean; on the South the  
Gulph of *S. Laurence*, shut in between this Pro-  
vince, *Newfound-Land* and *Accadia*; and on the  
West the River of *S. Margaret* divides it from  
the *Berhamites*. The *French* at several Times built  
here the little Towns or Forts of *Port Quartier*,  
*Port S. Nicholas*, *Ch. chequedec* and *Port Neuf*, all  
of them at present little regarded, the better  
Trade up the River, having much obstructed the  
Increase of these Places. However they serve to  
keep Possession, and to protect the Missioners.  
The Natives are extremely Brutal and Salvage, as  
in most of these Northern Parts, for we shall  
generally observe that the Politest *Indians* were  
farther remov'd from both the Poles. The Soil  
might be brought to bear all that is Necessary,  
but wants improving, and those People are sa-  
tisfy'd with what they have, as being Strangers  
to better.

## The Berhamites

Are the next People to the Westward, inclu-  
ding on the North of them the *Oupapichoult*  
Tribe, or Nation, and taking them both together,  
their Borders on the North lie upon *Tierra de La-  
brador*, on the East the River of *S. Margaret* di-  
vides them from the *Esquimaux*, on the South they  
have the River of *Canada*, and on the East the  
River *Lequemin* separates them from the *Saguenay*  
Nation, of the Province of *Canada*, properly so  
call'd. Here are no *French* Towns, Forts, or Set-  
tlements, the Country being like that last men-  
tion'd in all Respects, yielding little Profit,  
excessive cold and the Natives of the same Dis-  
position; so that we shall not need to say more  
of them.

## Saguenay,

The next Province to the *Berhamites*, and of a  
large Extent, is parted from it on the East by the  
little River *Lequemin*, has *Tierra de Labrador* on  
the North, the River of its own Name on the  
West, dividing it from *Canada* properly so call'd,  
and the great River of *S. Laurence* on the South.  
*Tadoussac* is the only *French* Town in this Pro-  
vince seated at the Mouth of the River of *Sague-  
nay*, the Port small under a Hill, which is almost  
cut off from the Continent, with a Point on the  
West call'd *S. Matthew's*, running almost a League  
into the Sea; the other South-east, call'd of all  
the *Devils*.

These People are Subject to a King of their own,  
who is in strict Alliance with the *French*, and has  
several petty Princes under him. Their Diversion  
consists most in Dancing, with abundance of An-  
tick Actions. They are of an Olive Colour, but  
that is occasion'd by their Painting, for naturally  
they are white. All their Clothes are made of  
Skins and Furs covering their whole Bodies in  
Winter, but only Part in Summer. Their Reli-  
gion is much what was hinted at before, for they  
believe in one God, one Mother, one Son, and the  
Sun in the Firmament, but God above all; yet  
they trouble themselves little with Acts of Devo-

tion. The way of Marriage is for the Woman to  
make Tryal of as many Men as she pleases, and  
for what Time she will, and then to chuse him  
she likes best.

## Canada.

This is the principal Province of *N<sup>ew</sup> France* on  
all Accounts, farthest subdu'd and the Extent of  
it yet not known. On the North it lies along  
*Tierra de Labrador*, *Hudson's Bay* and *New Wales*;  
on the East the River of *Saguenay* parts it from  
the Country of the same Name; on the South the  
great River of *S. Laurence*, the Lakes and the Ri-  
vers *Miamis* and *Illinois*, separate it from the *Ete-  
chemins*, the *Iroquois* and *Louisiana*; but how far  
it runs to the West, must be left to Time to  
discover.

It is needless to speak in particular of all the  
Tribes mention'd in the Table, they being but so  
many small Parts of the Whole Body and differ-  
ing little from one another, tho' they have several  
Names, and make distinct Districts. *La Hontan*  
one of the latest Writers of that Country, and  
who was conversant among the Natives, informs us,  
That they have no Beards, nor Hair on any Part  
of their Body, but only on their Heads, which is  
generally Black. As to their Persons they are  
proper, well shap'd, with large black Eyes and of  
an Olive Colour, which proceeds from their daub-  
ing their Skins, that would otherwise be white.  
All Things among them are in common, they de-  
spise Sciences, and allow of no different Degrees  
among them. Their Food is Fish or Flesh boil'd  
or roasted, without Salt or Spice, both which they  
loath. Few Diseases reign among them, the chief-  
est whereof are Pleurisies, and these they have no  
Cure for. The Small Pox are common in the  
North, and as little regarded, the Venereal Dis-  
ease is frequent in the Southern Parts, and that  
they cure with Simples and a regular Diet. Bran-  
dy is their greatest Enemy, for it destroys their  
Constitution, and throws them into Consump-  
tions. They despise all *European* Remedies, ab-  
hor Bleeding, and admire that Men should ever  
allow of Vomiting; but their principal Cures  
consist in Sweating, Sleeping when they can, and  
drinking of Water. All Wounds and other Hurts  
they perfectly Cure with Simples.

The most remarkable living Creatures here, not  
to speak of such as are common with us, are the  
Beavers, some of them above two foot long in the  
Body and three foot round, besides the length of  
the Head, which is 7 Inches and the Tail 14. These  
Creatures cut down great Trees with their Teeth,  
and carrying Earth on their Tails, make Banks 4,  
or 500 Paces long, 20 foot high, and 7 or 8 thick,  
with which they intrench themselves against the  
Water, and secure their Habitations. These the  
People catch in Nets, or else shoot them for their  
Furs and the Castor, which are the best Commo-  
dities of this Country. The *Michibichi* is a sort  
of Tyger, that never hurts Man, but assists the  
Natives in Hunting of Bears, and therefore they  
are never suffer'd to be kill'd. Bears are of three  
sorts, White, Black and Red. Flying Squirrels,  
so call'd from their skipping from one Tree to  
another, are not much bigger than curs. Here are  
also Black, White and Red Partridges, and Par-  
rots along the *Mississipi* River; in which there  
are abundance of Crocodils, large Carps, and o-  
ther great Variety of Fish, and in that of *Canada*  
white



white People, as big as Oxen. As to the Product of the Land, it is needless to add any more than what has been said in the General Account.

This Country may reckon'd to contain 150000 French of all sorts, the common sort living in good wooden Houses, well furnish'd and 2 Stories high, free from all Taxes, and with full Liberty to hunt and fish, so that they want for nothing to make them easy. The greatest hardship is the Winter Cold, which is excessive from *December* till *April*, in so much that the great River freezes over, and the Snow lies two or three foot deep on the Ground, and what is strangest, this is in 47 Degrees Latitude.

*Quebec* seated on the great River *S. Laurence*, in 47 and half Latitude, is the Capital City, divided into the Upper and the Lower; both of them commanded by a Castle standing on a higher Ground. In the Upper City there are six Churches, and to the Cathedral there is a Bishop and 12 Prebendaries, who live in Community in the Chapter-house, which is a magnificent and wonderful piece of Architecture, and the Priests live virtuously, allowing themselves bare Necessaries, and meddling with nothing but their Church Affairs. The *Jesuits* Church is stately, but their College small. This City has no Navy, nor Fortifications, but is the Residence of the Governour of the Country, who has 20000 Crowns a Year, besides Presents and other Profits amounting to as much more. The Bishop's Income is so small, that he could scarce subsist, did not the King allow him some other Benefice in *France*.

A little above *Quebec*, on the Bank of the same River is *Sillery*, another French Town, and about 60 Leagues above the *Montreal*, or *Mount-Royal*, another considerable Town, but all this way on both sides of the River the Habitations are so thick that they look like one continued Village.

*Frontinac*, as the French call it, or *Catarakomy*, according to the Natives, is a Fort about 100 Leagues up the River of *S. Laurence* from *Quebec*, at the Mouth of the Lake *Ontario*, or *Pretty Lake*, built to curb the barbarous *Iroquois*, into the Heart of whose Country the French can thence make Excursions in 24 Hours. The Winter about this Place is much shorter than at *Quebec*, and the Ground beginning to be till'd yields all sorts of European and Indian Grain and Plants, as *Hennepin*, who liv'd there some time informs us, and whom we shall follow in the remaining Description of these Parts.

The Lake *Ontario* last mention'd, which the French call Lake *Frontinac*, in Honour of the Count of that Name, who was Governour there, and built the Fort, is 80 Leagues long, and 25 broad, full of Fish, and Navigable all over, the great River of *S. Laurence* flows from it. From this Lake is a Passage at the Fall of *Niagara* before describ'd, into that of *Erie*, or of the Cut lying South West from it, and is about 140 Leagues in Length. Betwixt this and Lake *Huron* to the Northward is a Streight 30 Leagues long, and the said Lake is reckon'd to be about 700 Leagues in Compass, 200 in Length, and of an uncertain Breadth. Hence there are two other Outlets, the one Westward in the Lake of the *Illinois*, signifying the Lake of Men, 120 Leagues in Length, and 40 in Breadth, Navigable all over, and forming a great Bay to

the Westward, call'd *des Puans*, or of the stinking People, because those who live about it came thither from their former Habitations towards the Sea, on account of the stinking Waters they had there. The other Outlet from Lake *Huron* is to the Northward into the upper Lake, which runs East and West above 150 Leagues, being about 60 from North to South, and upon Sounding, no Bottom was found to it. All these Lakes running into one another, and disburdening themselves into the great River of *Canada*, may be reckon'd as Parts of it, and make the Navigation of it of a prodigious length, as was observ'd speaking of that River.

Having spoken of all the Lakes, we must return to the South West end of that of the *Illinois*, where *Monsieur de la Salle* in the Year 1679, built a Fort, call'd *Miamis*, because it is at the Mouth of that River which runs from this Lake South West, at some small distance from which is that of *Illinois*, holding much the same Course till it falls into the mighty *Mississipi*, or *Meschaspe*, signifying the Great River. The other two with the Lakes divide *Canada* from *Louisiana*. Along this River lives the great Tribe or Nation of the *Illinois*, which in their Tongue signifies Perfect Men; they live in great open Villages, are tall and strong, but lazy, timorous, and have little regard for their Chiefs; besides they are brutish, wild, and stupid, and therefore little hope appears of their Conversion. On this River *Monsieur de la Salle* built another Fort, by him call'd *Crevecoeur*, and by the Natives *Checagon*. Somewhat to the Eastward are the *Miamis* People on the River of the same Name, and about 41 Degrees of Latitude; the *Maskoutens*, and *Ontonagamis* live higher in 43 Degrees Latitude. Still to the Northward of these are the *Acadois*, the *Changas*, the *Chongaskaby*, and the *Affenipais*; these last in above 55 Degrees of North Latitude, all which Parts hitherto little known but by the Relation of the Natives, only the *Franciscans* have a Mission in about 50 Degrees Latitude, and the French a small Fort on a Lake above that, call'd the Upper Lake. The *Hurons* are among the Lakes, and upon their Banks, are their Neighbours and Allies the *Ontonagamis*, both united against the *Iroquois*. They both live upon Indian Wheat they sow, and Fish they take in the Lakes. The *Algonquins* lie between the *Hurons* and *Montreal*, little differing from those already mention'd. These are the most noted Nations we find in *Canada*, it being needless to trouble the Reader with the repetition of many more barbarous Names to be seen in the Table, there being nothing to say of them in particular, and therefore we will proceed to

#### Louisiana.

The only Accounts of this Country are such as we have from *F. Hennepin*, and *Monsieur de la Salle's* Discoveries on the River *Mississipi*, or *Meschaspe*, whom we must be beholding to for what we can say. This mighty River is in the North, between 50 and 55 Degrees of Latitude, but the Springs of it are not certainly known. It runs to the Southward till it is lost in the Sea in about 38 Degrees, where it falls into the Gulph of *Florida*. Many great and small Rivers swell it with the addition of their Waters, the chief whereof



whereof are *S. Francis*, and *S. Antony*, *Tombeau*, the River of *Oxen*, the *Black River*, *Onisconsing*, *Illinois*, *Tamaron*, *Hohio*, *Ouma*, *Hiens*, and *Sauvriere*. The great River sometimes overflows, but not considerably, being stopp'd by Hills, beyond which the Country is most delicious, most Plains, whose Bounds are not yet known, with some few Hills cover'd with Trees. All the Country abounds in Game, as Turkeys, Partridges, Quails, Parrots, Wood-cocks, Turtle-Doves, Wood-Pidgeons; and for Beasts, wild Bulls, wild Goats, Stags, Bevers, Otters, Martins, and wild Cats; but for dangerous, devouring Beasts, there are none. All the Trees *Europe* affords are there in great plenty, besides very many unknown to us, but particularly, there are stately Cedars, and a Tree, from which drops a Gum exceeding our noblest Perfumes; besides Cotton-Trees here growing to a prodigious height. The Meadows are full of Grass, and fit for any Seed, Beans growing up and down naturally. The Ground yields three or four Crops of *Indian* Wheat in a Year, for there is no Winter, but a rainy Season, and there are Cole-Pits, Lead and Copper Mines, and Quarries of Free-stone, and of a black and white Marble. The Natives are affable, civil and obliging, without any Religion more than some Veneration they pay to the Sun, whom they call *Louis*, offering him the first Smoke of their Pipes, and some of the best part of the Beasts they kill, which they leave with their Chief, and he makes his Advantage of it. Throughout all the Northern Parts of *America* there is wonderful variety of Language, insomuch that those who live 10 or 12 Leagues asunder cannot understand one another without an Interpreter. The People of *Louisiana* differ from those of *Canada* in all respects, being less morose and thoughtful, more lively and active, and the very Shape of their Heads much flatter. Their Chiefs are much more absolute, and their Government much Politic. They know nothing of Fire-Arms, or have any Instruments of Steel or Iron, all their Cutting Tools being made of sharp Flints. Their principal Ornaments are Bracelets, and Pendants of Pearls, which they spoil for want of knowing how to bore them. To give an Account of the Extent of this Country is impossible, tho' it is true *Hennepin*, from whom we have taken this Account, says it is bigger than all *Africa*, but he saw no more than what was adjacent to the River, and therefore speaks of all the rest by guess; and if we consider what was before discover'd and known, we shall perceive he magnifies his own Discovery, which appears thus. The River of the *Illinois*, where he began, is between 35 and 36 Degrees of North Latitude, and from thence according to his own Account, but 120, or 130 Leagues to the Gulph of *Mexico*, and from the River of the *Illinois* upward to the *Indes* may be about 180, so that the whole Length may make 300 Leagues, but then the breadth of his Progress, as has been said, is but along the River. In the Northern Part Eastward *Canada* was before discover'd, and the Southern Part of it cannot reach farther than *Virginia* and *Carolina*; then on the South side *Florida* has long been known, to which some Extent must be allow'd up the Land, and lastly, on the West *New Mexico*, *Quivira* and *Calaha* have been many Years subject to the

*Spaniards*, who all place *Quevira* and the *Apaches Vaqueros* in 40 Degrees Latitude, describing the very wild Bulls, as *Hennepin* does, and it is certainly the same Country, as may appear by comparing the Position and Description, but that he enhances upon his Discovery, so that it wants to be made more plain by such as shall follow him, and *Monsieur de La Salle*, which last might perhaps have given us further Satisfaction had not he been unfortunately kill'd by the *Indians*.

#### Iroquois.

This Nation, as was said at first, lies along the Southern Bank of the River of *Canada*, which is its proper Northern Bordering, on the East it touches the *Erechemins*, has the *English* Plantation, on the South, and towards the South East *Louisiana*. It is true, *F. Hennepin*, whom we still follow, says there are three or four *Iroquois* Villages on the other side the great River of *S. Laurence* or *Canada*, about *Fort Frontinac*, but these are only Colonies of the others, and more civiliz'd than they, as living under the *French*.

These People are divided into five Cantons, or Tribes. The first to the North East is that of the *Gumiegniez*, or *Aguiez*, neighbouring upon *New York*, who have three Villages, and make up 400 Fighting Men. The second to the Westward the *Onrecionts*, being not above 150 Fighting Men. The third still the same way of the *Oumontagnez*, or Mountaineers, because they live on the highest Ground, 300 Fighting Men the bravest of the Nation. The fourth the *Oionguens*, who make three Villages, and in them 300 Fighting Men. The fifth and last, the *Tsennontouans*, towards the farther end of the Lake *Ontario*, or *Frontinac*, containing in three Villages 300 Fighting Men. It is needless to say any thing of their Country, which is the same as all that Part of *Canada* already describ'd; but for the People, they are the most Barbarous, Insolent, and Inhuman of any in North *America*, and would never be at Peace, or entertain any Commerce with the *Europeans*, but for the advantage of such Commodities as they want, and particularly for Fire-Arms and Ammunition, which it is pity they were ever furnish'd with, since they have only serv'd to destroy many *Christians*, and thousands of *Americans*, whom they bloodily Butcher, and have made no difficulty to make Excursions some Hundreds of Leagues, only to satisfy their own cruel Disposition, which is such, that they are more like ravenous Beasts than Men. They put all the Prisoners they take in War to the most exquisite Torments, leave them extended whole Nights on the Ground in the coldest Weather; burn them by Piece-meal with hot Irons, tear off their Nails and Hair, cut out their Tongues, throw hot Ashes upon their Wounds. In all which Barbarities the Women are as active as the Men, and they give their Children the Blood of those Wretches to drink, which done, they devour the Flesh themselves. Yet nothing is done among these Monsters without mature deliberation, Councils being always held to consult about all publick Affairs. If they would put any of their own to Death for some enormous Crime, they have a Man to do the Execution, and first make him drunk with Brandy, that the Kindred of the Party put to Death may not seek Revenge; for they alledge that



the Executioner being Mad and Drunk when he did it ought to be excus'd, and that appeases them. They always keep Spies abroad to give them Intelligence, and are themselves a subtle crafty People, and wary enough in the way of Trade.

#### The Etechemins

Are the next North East of the *Iroquois*, divided from them by a small River, has the River *Canaan* on the North, *Georgian* and *Accadia* with the Gulf of that Sea that forms it on the East, and the Ocean and New *England* on the South. The Country takes its Name from a River so call'd, running cross the middle of it, and falling into the Bay of *Accadia*. Here are vast quantities of Herrings in *May* and *June*. The Country is all so cover'd with Trees and Bushes, that it looks like one continued Forest, which renders it unfit for Tillage till that Obstacle be remov'd, yet the Soil seems Good. The Woods and Waters breed such infinite Multitudes of Gnats that they are not to be endur'd. The Natives suffer nothing from the *Souriquois* we shall speak of below, in Manners, Customs, and Shape of Body; but their Language is quite different.

#### Accadia,

Once call'd New *Scotland*, but surrender'd up to the *French*, had by them the present Name, being a Peninsula, compass'd on all sides by the Sea, except on the North, where a small isthmus joins it to the Continent in that Part which some wrongfully call *Canada*, but is in reality that part of the *Etechemins* Country to which others have given the Name of *Gaspe*, from the Port of *Gaspe*, much celebrated by the *French*. On this Peninsula the *French* have several Settlements, the chief of them *Port Royal* on the West side of it, where the Sea makes a great Bay, the Port good, but the Town inconsiderable, yet fortified of late. The other *French* Dwellings are of less Note, as *Port d'Espagnol*, and *La Hève*, and *Pessey* on the South side, *Toucheville* on the West, and *Martengo* on the Eastern Point. The People here inhabiting the Inland, and about *Port Royal* are call'd *Sauquois*, handsome and of a middle Stature, most black Hair, and of a dark Complexion, occasion'd by their daubing; only the principal Men wearing Beards, the rest pulling them up by the Roots; in other respects they are like the rest of the Savages. In Summer they live on Fish, and in Winter on what they kill in Hunting, and knew nothing of *Wheat* till they learn'd of the *Iroquois*. They are submissive to their Cacques, but know little of God, or Religion, yet believe in Sorcerers, and respect them, these being also their Physicians and Surgeons, for which they use many Charms. Their Language differs from all other Parts of *Canada*. In this Province, and that of the *Etechemins* we have chiefly follow'd *Lut.*

Running through the Description of these Provinces, it remains that something be added to the former, which can only consist in speaking of the Discoveries and their Actions, all *America* except *Albion* and *Peru*, affording nothing of new, before found out by the *Europeans*. The first Discoverer of the *French* was *John Ver-*

zand a *French* Man, in the Year 1524, who run along all the Coast from 28 to 50 Degrees of North Latitude, whence the *French* have since time given the Name of *New France* to all that Tract of Land, yet he did no more than view along the Sea. Nor did this Discovery produce any thing for Years, for it does not appear that there was any Prosecution of it till 1541, when *Jacques Cartier* was upon *Novfoundland*, and the next Year proceeded to *S. Laurence's Bay*, and to *Canada*, making farther Observations on that Coast, and Trading with the Natives, and in 1542 he built a Fort, and Winter'd there, but this came to nothing as well as the rest. In 1542 *Monsieur Ribault* went upon the Coast of *Florida*, of whom, and those who follow'd him thither we shall speak when we come to that Province. The Northern Expeditions still ceas'd till the Year 1603, when *Samuel Champlain* sail'd to those Parts, and in his Way met Mountains of Ice, yet went up the River of *Canada*, as far as *Tadoussac*, before describ'd, where he was entertain'd in most friendly Manner by the great *Sagamo*, or Prince of that Part of the Country. He went 10 or 12 Leagues up the River of *Saguenay*; but on that of *Canada* they proceeded as far as *Quebec*, where it narrows to 300 Paces, and thence proceeded to the great Cataract or fall, which they went by Land to View, and tho' *La Hontan* and *Hennepin* both represent it to be one, and entire of several hundred Foot, yet *Champlain*, who says he saw it as well as they, affirms it is step by step, that is, rowling from one Rock to another, and divided into Branches. Having view'd so much of the River and Country, he left a Colony at *Quebec*, and in all made six Voyages thither from *France*, contracting strict Amity with the Natives, and giving the *Indians* two great Defeats, with great Slaughter of them. All that follow'd after him have left little light of what they did, being wholly employ'd in Trade, and settling the Possession before taken, so that they fortified themselves and erected other Forts in several Parts, as has been mention'd. The next Discoverer here was *L. Hennepin*, in the Year 1679, who running up the River of *Canada* into the Lakes, made his way through them to the River *Missipi*, or *Mississipi*, and sailing down that to the Southward, penetrated as far as the Bay of *Mexico*, taking a View of all that Country call'd *Louisiana*, before describ'd. *Monsieur de la Sale* he tells us did the same two Years after him, and then thinking to find the same way by the Mouth of the River upwards, sail'd from *France* to that purpose in the Year 1684, and after much wandring in vain was at last kill'd by his own Men, some of whom got safe into *Canada*, and thence to *France*. Baron *La Hontan* was the next Adventurer, who made his Discovery to the Westward of the *Missipi*, up that he calls the Long River, visiting the Nations of the *Esquimaux* and *Grinians*, who told him strange Stories of those beyond them, very little to be regarded till we have some better Information, and therefore with this we must conclude the Discoveries in *New France*, which has ever since continued annex'd to the Crown of *France*. Only in the Year 1629, *Quebec* being destitute of Provisions and Ammunition, as having receiv'd no Supplies from *France* in two Years, was taken by the *English*, *Monsieur Champlain* the Gover-



by safely surrendering to make his private Advantage, contrary to the Opinion of others, who were for defending themselves. However, the *French* soon after recover'd their Possession. In 1689, Sir *William Phips*, Governour of *New-England*, having got together a Fleet of 4 Ships, sail'd up the River of *Canada* as far as *Quebec* with a design to make himself Master of that Place; in order to it he Land'd 3000 Men a League and a half below the City, with some Field-Pieces, and advanc'd towards the Place, but they were receiv'd so warmly in a Copice by 3 or 400 *French* and *Indians*, that they fled back to their Ships, leaving 300 dead upon the Spot. They repeated their Attempt upon the Copice another Day, and fought better than the first, yet

with as little Success, losing as many, and retiring to the River; by which the *French* were so encourag'd, that they pursued them to their Camp, and lay all Night flat on the Ground to be ready to attack it in the Morning, wherein they were prevented, for there being very few regular Troops in that great Number, they embark'd at Midnight with such Confusion that 50 more were kill'd getting into their Boats. In the Morning the *French* carry'd the Tents and Cannon they had left behind them into the City, and the *Indians* had the stripping of the Dead. Sir *William Phips* having thrown away so many Men to no purpose through his ill Conduct, Sail'd again out of the River, and return'd to *New-England*.

## C H A P. IV.

## Of the BRITISH DOMINIONS upon the Continent.

[ See the Map in Page 229. ]

Their Length from North to South is considerable, but the Breadth from East to West not answerable. The first of these Ways, they reach from 32 to 45 Degrees of North Latitude, including *Carolina*, and may be about 350 Leagues of Coast; yet up the Land they reach not far; the farthest is *Virginia*, which extends wider than any other, being within an hundred Miles of the Ocean, and that only where there are considerable Rivers. In this long Tract and variety of Latitude we may well imagine there is no less diversity as to Temperature of Air, difference in Soil, and multipli-

city of *Indian* Nations, as also many Rivers of Note, and other Particulars worth observing, which however shall not be touch'd in this Place for fear of Repetitions; but being to speak particularly of each Province, we shall in every one give as ample a Description of all those things which deserve it, as may form a true Idea of those Parts, and this Volume will permit. To come to the Division, beginning on the North, as we have hitherto done, and descending Southward, the several Provinces with the Counties in them, lie thus.

	Counties.		Counties.
New-England.	{ <i>Main.</i>	Pennsylvania.	{ <i>Buckingham.</i>
	{ <i>Cornwal.</i>		{ <i>Philadelphia.</i>
	{ <i>Essex.</i>		{ <i>Newcastle.</i>
	{ <i>Middlesex.</i>		{ <i>Kent.</i>
	{ <i>Suffolk.</i>		{ <i>Suffex.</i>
	{ <i>Hampshire.</i>		{ <i>Chester.</i>
	{ <i>Plimouth.</i>	Maryland.	{ <i>Baltimore.</i>
	{ <i>Barnstable.</i>		{ <i>Arundel.</i>
	{ <i>Bristol.</i>		{ <i>Calvert.</i>
	{ <i>New-London.</i>		{ <i>Prince George.</i>
	{ <i>Hartford.</i>		{ <i>Charles.</i>
	{ <i>New-Haven.</i>		{ <i>S. Mary's.</i>
	{ <i>Fairfield.</i>		{ <i>Somerset.</i>
	{ <i>Albany.</i>		{ <i>Dorchester.</i>
	{ <i>Ulster.</i>		{ <i>Talbot.</i>
	{ <i>Dutchess.</i>		{ <i>Kent.</i>
	{ <i>Orange.</i>		{ <i>Cecil.</i>
New-York.	{ <i>Kings.</i>	Virginia.	{ <i>Richmond.</i>
	{ <i>Suffolk.</i>		{ <i>Stafford.</i>
	{ <i>Chester.</i>		{ <i>Essex.</i>
	{ <i>Richmond.</i>		{ <i>Middlesex.</i>
	{ <i>New-York.</i>		{ <i>Glocester.</i>
East New-Jersey.	{ <i>Queens County</i>		{ <i>King and Queen's County.</i>
	{ <i>Bergen.</i>		{ <i>King William's County.</i>
	{ <i>Essex.</i>		{ <i>New Kent.</i>
	{ <i>Middlesex.</i>		{ <i>Elizabeth.</i>
West New-Jersey.	{ <i>Monmouth.</i>		{ <i>Warwick.</i>
	{ <i>Burlington.</i>		{ <i>Tork.</i>
	{ <i>Glocester.</i>		{ <i>James.</i>
	{ <i>Salem.</i>		{ <i>Prince George.</i>
	{ <i>Cape May.</i>		{ <i>Charles City.</i>



	Counties.
Virginia.	{ <i>Henrico County.</i>
	{ <i>Surrey.</i>
	{ <i>I. of Wight.</i>
	{ <i>Nansemond.</i>
	{ <i>Princess Anne.</i>
	{ <i>Norfolk.</i>
	{ <i>Westmorland.</i>
	{ <i>Lancaster.</i>
	{ <i>Northumberland.</i>
	{ <i>Accomack.</i>
	{ <i>Northampton.</i>

## New-England.

This most Northern of the *English* Plantations lies between 41 and 45 Degrees of North Latitude, bounded on the East by the Ocean; on the North and West by *New-France*, and particularly the Province of the *Etechemins*, and the *Iroquois*; and on the South by *New-York*. The Inland Extent, as was said before of the *English* Plantations in General, is but small, all the Planters covering to be near the Sea, or at least on some Navigable River, for the Conveniency of Trade.

Those Rivers here are none of them very great, for their Course being short, they receive not the Addition of many Waters to swell them; but of

Massachusetts Province.	Main.	{ <i>Tork.</i> <i>Wells.</i>
	Cornwal.	{ <i>Dover.</i>
	Essex.	{ <i>Salem.</i> <i>Lyn.</i> <i>Ipswich.</i>
	Middlesex.	{ <i>Cambridge.</i> <i>Charles Town.</i> <i>Reading.</i> <i>Watertown.</i>
	Suffolk.	{ <i>Boston.</i> <i>Dorchester.</i> <i>Roxbury.</i> <i>Weymouth.</i>
	Hampshire.	{ <i>Northampton.</i> <i>Springfield.</i>

## Massachusetts

Province is reckon'd to extend along the Coast North-east and South-west about 110 Miles in Length, the greatest Breadth up the Inland, being under 60, and much less in all other Places. The Northern Boundary of this Province, and of the whole Country, is the little River *Saco*. On the South this Province is divided from that of *Plimouth*, by another small Water at the Town of *Scituate*; to the East it has the Ocean, and on the West it has high Mountains and thick Forests to divide it from the yet unconquer'd Country of the Natives.

We will take the Counties and Towns as they lie from North to South. *Main* and *Cornwal* are very barren up the Inland, but towards the Sea and along the Rivers yield Corn, and Pasture; there are several Towns nam'd within them, which, as was said before, do not deserve to be so call'd and therefore not mention'd here; for even among the three Chiefest, which are *Tork*, *Dorset*, and *Wells*, it will be hard to make a tolerable one, since they tell us, there were 100 Families in *Wells* before

	Counties:
Carolina.	{ <i>Albemarle.</i>
	{ <i>Clarendon.</i>
	{ <i>Craven.</i>
	{ <i>Berkley.</i>
	{ <i>Colliton.</i>
	{ <i>Carteret.</i>

these the *Connecticut* is the Chief, Navigable in Boats about 50 Miles; and next to this the *Thames*, the *Glass River*, *Patuxet*, *Ware*, *Providence*, *Quinebequin*, *Marimack*, *Saco*, *Pemmaquid*, *Casco*, *Sagadehock*, *Kenebeck* and *Penobscot*; most of them so inconsiderable, that to Name them is enough; but if any deserve more, it shall be in their proper Provinces.

This Country is divided into three Provinces and those again into several Counties, which with their Towns of any Note, are set down in the following Table, not to fill up Paper with above an Hundred Names of Places call'd Towns which are scarce Villages, but most of them Country Parishes, and not worth so much as Naming.

Plimouth Province.	Plimouth.	{ <i>New Plimouth.</i> <i>Scituate.</i>
	Barnstable.	{ <i>Barnstable.</i>
	Bristol.	{ <i>Swansfey.</i> <i>Bristol.</i>
Connecticut and New- haven Pro- vinces.	New-London.	{ <i>Saybrook.</i> <i>New-London.</i> <i>Lime.</i>
	Hartford.	{ <i>Hartford.</i>
	New-haven.	{ <i>Brainford.</i>
	Fairfield.	

the Wars with the Natives, and consequently fewer now, by which we see they are inconsiderable Places, only that they have some Works thrown up about them, for a Fence against the *Indians*. This same may be understood of all the other Towns we give no particular Account of, which therefore shall not need repeating.

*Essex* County is water'd by the River *Marimack*, Navigable near 40 Miles; the Soil poor, except near the Coast; its principal Town *Salem*, where the County-Court is kept, a Market every Week, and two Fairs in a Year. *Middlesex* County, being water'd by many small Rivulets, is reckon'd one of the pleasantest and fruitfulest Parts of *New-England*, abounding in all sorts of Cattel, which is thence exported to other Parts. Its Chief Town is *Cambridge*, at first call'd *New-Town*, seated on the Northern Branch of *Charles* River, and chang'd its Name upon being made an University, and having two Colleges built in it, which are *Howard* College and *Stoughton* Hall, besides which, it has several good Houses and handiome Streets, and the County-Court is held in it twice a Year. *Charles-town* is the next, 4 Mile from *Boston*, across the Harbour, consisting



of two long Streets, a Market-place, and a handsome Church; and here the County-Court is kept twice a Year. At *Reading*, another good Town, there is a Corn Mill and another to saw Timber. At *Watertown* there are two Fairs yearly.

*Suffolk* County is honour'd with the Capital of the Country, which is *Boston*, the largest and best Town in the *English American* Dominions, built on the Sea Coast, conveniently for Trade. The Harbour secur'd by a strong Castle in an Island, at the Mouth of it, with Forts on the Shoar of the Continent to secure all the Avenues. This may be call'd a City, as well by reason of its Opacity, as for the several handfom Buildings in it, both Publick and Private; as the Court-House, Market-Place, Sir *Will. Phip's* House, &c. besides several spacious handfom Streets, and said to contain 10, or 12000 Souls, out of which they form four Companies of Militia, which is too little if the aforesaid Number of Inhabitants be true. There are 3 Parish Churches belonging to the Presbyterians, a *French* Church for that Nation, and two Meeting-Houses for a particular Congregation of the Church of *England*, and the Anabaptists. This is the great Port of *New-England*, where 3, or 400 Ships have been loaded in a Year with Lumber, Fish, Beef, Pork, &c. for several Parts of *Europe* and *America*, and here the Governour resides, the Courts of Judicature sit, and the Assembly, being like a Parliament, meets. There is a Market every Week, and two Fairs Yearly. The next good Town is *Dorchester*, built near the Sea and has two Fairs, and next to that *Roxbury*, only remarkable for having a Free School; and lastly, *Weymouth*, the ancientest, but inconsiderable.

*Plymouth* Colony, or Province is the next to *Massachusetts*, stretching along the Sea about 100 Miles, with a long Outlet, or slip of Land running into the Sea, ending at *Cape Cod*, and forming *Barnstable* Bay. *Plymouth* County is the first, of which little needs be said in Regard it is in all Respects like the last spoken of; *Plymouth* and *Scituate* being the only Towns of any Note in it, the last of which has two Churches. Next is *Barnstable* County containing the above-mention'd slips of Land, running out into the Sea and *Cape Cod*, which is very high and the Country about it barren, for which the Fishing makes amends. Its principal Town, call'd also *Barnstable*, is no way remarkable. *Bristol* County follows, in which are *Swanzy* and *Bristol* Towns, which have nothing worth taking Notice of. The Rivers of this Country are small, and there is nothing in it different from what has been said before.

*Connecticut* and *New-haven* Provinces, being now joyn'd, and but one Colony, lie along the Sea, where it turns away from *Monmouth* Bay, and lies almost East and West, a little inclining Southward, about 70 Miles from the Edge of *Plymouth* Colony to the Borders of *New-York*; and from the Sea up the Inland it extends about 50 Miles. All this Province to the Westward, and up the Country, is full of Woods, Mountains, and Morasses, where there is good Game and Trade of Furs. *New-London* County is the first here, whose Capital Town bears the same Name, seated on the River call'd *Thames*, which has several Branches that Water the Country. *Saybrook* the oldest Town in this County and *Lime*, are seated on both Sides, and at the Mouth of *Connecticut* River, which is Navigable in Boats, about 60

Miles up to *Hartford*, which is the Chief Town of a County of the same Name, lying from the Sea. *New-haven* is the next Maritime County, and then *Fairfield* the last, in both which there is no Town of any Note, but poor inconsiderable Places, most of the Country 8, or 10 Miles from the Sea, being barren Hills and Morasses, and uninhabited; the rest nearer the Sea does not want Beef, Pork and Corn, but has little Trade.

Thus much may suffice for these Provinces and Counties in particular; it remains to add something of the Country in general. No Sea affords more Plenty, or variety of Fish, but *Newfoundland*, has taken off much of the Cod Fishery, whereof there is still a considerable Trade to the Islands. For Beasts there are Bears, Foxes, Raccoons, Otters, Beavers, Deer, Hairs, Rabbits, and a strange Creature call'd a Mose, 12 Foot high, the Body as big as a Bulls, the Neck like a Stags, the Legs short, the Tail longer than a Bucks, and the Tips of the Horns 12 Foot alunder. There are besides abundance of *European* Beasts, as Cows, Sheep, Goats, Hogs, and Horses, the last small but hardy, sometimes exported to the Leeward Islands, as is a good Quantity of Leather, Beef and Pork.

Insects of all Sorts there are abundance, especially Flies and Gnats, which are very troublesome; and of Reptiles the most noted is the Rattle-Snake, so call'd from a noise it makes with the Tail, like a Rattle, and this is a dangerous Creature. Nor is there less Variety of Fowl, both Wild and Tame. The Product of the Earth is generally of all such Herbs and Fruit as grow in *England*, Corn and *Indian* Wheat, and for Trees Oak, Elm, Ash, Cypress, Pine, Chesnut, Cedar, Aspin, Beech, Fir, and Sassafras.

They carry hence to the Islands Boards, Masts, Pipe-Staves, Hoops, and Beef, Pork, Meal and other Provisions; and in Return, receive Sugar, Molasses, Rum, Ginger, Indigo and Cotton, either for their own Expence, or to transport into *England*, from whence they have Stuffs, Silks, Linnen, *Birmingham*-Ware, all Sorts of Working-Tools and Apparel. Money they have but very little, and therefore generally barter one Commodity for another, tho' they have a Mint at *Boston*.

It is needless to trouble the Reader with abundance of Barbarous Names of Nations, as they call them, of *Indians*, most of which are no longer to be found, being either destroy'd by the *English*, or fled from them. In general they were a naked People, Subject to petty Kings, whose Territories seldom extended above 10 Miles, and very often much less. The greatest Difference among them being in their several Languages. In Winter they would cover themselves with the Skins of Wild-Beasts, which they laid by in Summer. They fed on *Indian* Wheat, Fish and Game; their Weapons Bows and Arrows pointed with Fish Bones; their Boats and Canoes made of solid Trunks of Trees hollow'd. Some had settled Habitations, and others wander'd about like the *Tartars*. All their Religion consisted in a little Familiarity with and Worship paid to the Devil, to which Purpose they had a sort of Conjurers, or Juglers among them, who were both Priests and Physicians.

Since the *English* have been among them, those who live near them are something more civilized. Their Kings are Absolute; their Houses Maty'd about Poles fastned in the Earth. They believe



lieve there are many Gods, and Dancing is their chief Religious Ceremony.

They tell us of abundance of *Indian* Converts, say of *Indian* Preachers, by whom it is likely those People must be well instructed; but the British Empire in *America* gives us a good Instance of this Nature, where it says, one *Jacomes* an *Indian* being converted, told the *Sachems*, or chief Men of his Country, *The Gods they Worshipp'd had great Power, but limited and subservient to the God he had chosen.* An excellent Expression to show what a Convert he was, for what more could the most stupid Idolater have said? He allows those they worship'd to be Gods, and of great Power, only that he had chosen one had more. Thus it appears what Notion he had of Christianity, and yet such Creatures as these they tell us in a few Years are made Pastors to Convert and Instruct others, then no Question but such Masters must have suitable Disciples. Enough of this and of the Colony, the Historical Part whereof, as to the Discovery and Planting shall be referr'd to the last, after speaking of all the other *English* Dominions along the Continent.

#### New-York

Is a narrow Slip of Land lying between *New-England* on the East and *Hudson's River* on the West, on the North it has the savage Country of the Natives, and on the South it has the Ocean, washing the Coast of *Long-Island*, which is a considerable, if not the best Part of the Colony, and separated by a small Arm of the Sea. The Continent is scarce 20 Miles over in the broadest place from East to West, and but near 150 in length from North to South. And *Long Island* is about 100 Miles in Length North-east and South-west, and not above 12 in Breadth.

The Climate is reckon'd more temperate than that of *New-England*, and the Soil so fruitful, that it has been known to yield an Hundred for one in Wheat, if we may believe the Planters. There is a great Manufacture in *Long-Island* in Earthen Ware; but the main Trade of the Province consists in Furs, Skins, Tabaco, Horses, Beef, Pork, Pease, Wheat, and Fish Oil. The Soil produces Flax, Hemp, and all Sorts of Fruit. In the midst of the Island is a Plain 16 Miles in Length and 1 in Breadth, which yields excellent Hay. In Winter the Inhabitants catch many Whales and Seals along the South-side of the Island, of which they make a considerable Quantity of Oil.

The Inhabitants on the Continent, trade with the *Indians* for Skins of Elks, Deer, Bears, Beavers, Otters, Rackoons, and all Sorts of rich Furs, and have Venison and Fowl from them very cheap. To *Barbadoes*, and the other Islands, they carry Hories, Beef and Pork, for which they receive Sugar, Molasses, Rum, &c. To *Madera* and the *Azores* they carry Pipe-staves and Fish, in return whereof they bring Wine and Brandy. The Soil is here Richer, and the Climate more temperate than in *New-England*; but it is hotter in Summer and colder in Winter than in the same Latitude in *Europe*.

The Beasts, Birds, Insects and Fish are much the same here as in *New-England*, and therefore nothing need be said of them; nor is there any considerable Difference as to the Natives, except in their Languages, which are difficult and barbarous. They are generally a handsome People,

only make their Skins tawny by continually daubing, very dexterous at their Bows and Arrows apt to Learn, but much addicted to Sorcery, which is practis'd by their Priests, who endeavour to give them a great Aversion to Christianity. If a Man dislikes his Wife, he turns her off and takes another. They are extraordinary Submissive to their Kings, believe the Transmigration of Souls, mighty Dancers, fond of all Sports, and those who have learnt to play at Cards, so fond of them that they will lose all they have at them. In all the Territory of *New-York* there are scarce 1000 *Indian* Men left.

*New-York* is the Name of the Chief Town of this Province, containing about 800 Houses, many of them handsome, a great Church lately built, a *Dutch*, a *French*, and a *Lutheran* Church, as also a Free-School. The Town is conveniently seated at the Mouth of *Hudson's River*, and is defended by a Fort, call'd *Anne*, and two Batteries towards the Sea. This Place was most of it built by the *Dutch*, before the *English* took it from them, the greatest Part of Brick and Stone, and cover'd with Tiles. Near 150 Miles up the Country from *New-York* stands the Town of *Albany*, most inhabited by *Dutch*, who remain'd there after their Country-men lost the Province, and here a Stone Fort is lately built. Above *Albany* was another Town call'd *Senechtada*, of about 100 Houses, inhabited by *Dutch* and *English*, but destroy'd by the *Indians*. The rest of the Towns are not worth mentioning.

Yet this Province is divided into 10 Counties, 5 of them inhabited by *Dutch* and their Children, which are *Albany*, *Ulster*, *Dutchess*, *Orange* and *King's-County*; the others *Suffolk*, *Chester*, *Richmond*, *New-York*, and *Queen's-County*; in each of which there are Settlements, but most of them such as do not deserve the Name of Towns, tho' so call'd.

#### New-Jersey

On the East is bounded by the Sea and *Hudson's River*, this last dividing it from *New-York*; on the West by *Delaware River*, which parts it from *Pensylvania*; on the South it has the Ocean and *Delaware Bay*, and on the North a Line drawn from *Delaware* to *Hudson's River*, at 41 Degrees of North Latitude separates it from the upper Continent; so the Length from North to South is about 120 Miles, and the greatest Breadth about half as much East and West. The utmost Southern Extent reaching to about 39 Degrees Latitude.

It is divided into two Parts from North to South, which are therefore call'd *East* and *West Jersey*. The first is the biggest and best inhabited of them, commencing at *Egg-Harbour* in the South, and divided from the other by a Line drawn thence Northward, by which it has more of the Sea Coast. The Counties it is Subdivided into are four, viz. *Berghen* County on *Hudson's River* next *New-York*, besides which, several other Streams water it. The Chief Town bears the same Name, and is most inhabited by *Dutch*, being about 350 Souls, and about as many more dispers'd abroad in the Country. 2. *Essex* County, in which is *Lizabet* Town, opposite to *Staten Island*, inhabited by about 250 Families, and in it the Courts are kept and the greatest Trade carried on. To the Northward is another little Town of about 100 Families, call'd *Newark*. 3. *Mid-*  
dleton



*West* County, where are *Perth* City, yet will scarce make a Village; *Piscataway* of 80 Families, *Woodbridge* of about 100, and *Perth Amboy* of 40, yet call'd a City; by which appears what small Places they dignify with such Names. 4. *Monmouth* County, and in it *Middleton*, containing 100 Families; *Shrewsbury* 160, and *Freehold* about 40; and in all these Counties no Parish, nor Church, but only some Meeting-Houses.

*West-Jersey*, so call'd, in regard to its Position from *East-Jersey*; from which it is divided by the Line aforesaid in the East, and the same other Boundaries above-mentioned. It is divided into 4 Counties, viz. *Burlington*, whose Trade consists in Pel-tage; *Glocester* in Pitch, Tar and Rosin; *Salen* in Rice; and *Cape-May* County in Whale-Bone and Oil. The Capital Town is *Burlington*, where the Courts are kept, contains about 200 Families, the Houses of Brick, and the Market plentifully supply'd with all Provisions.

Nothing more particular need be added concerning the Soil and Climate, which are much like the other Neighbouring Parts we have treated of. The Trade here mention'd in speaking of *West-Jersey* is common to both, beside which, they also Export sufficient Quantities of Provisions. In all *New-Jersey* there are scarce 200 Natives left of all that inhabited so great a Tract of Land.

### Pensylvania.

The next Province to *New-Jersey*, is divided from it on the East by *Delaware* River and Bay; Northward it extends towards the *Iroquois* Indians, or *New-France*; on the West of it are still the same *Iroquois* Natives, and Part of *Virginia*, and on the South *Maryland*, and the aforesaid *Delaware* Bay. The Length of it North and South from *Pensbery*, on the River *Delaware* to *Cape Hontope*, at the Mouth of *Delaware* Bay, being about 120 Miles, whereof about 50 are but a very narrow Slip of Land, between *Maryland* and the Bay, no where above 10, or 12 Miles over. This is the Length we find most agreeable to all Maps, and in reality the Truth of it; for tho' *Gabriel Thomas* in his Account extends it to 300, and the History of the *British* Empire to 330 Miles, that is all imaginary, supposing so much may be conquer'd or peopled, for the same History says the Extent is from the Beginning of the 40th Degree to the 43d Degree of Latitude; so that should we include all the 43d Degree, it would be but 3 Degrees in all, which can make no more than 180 Miles; but we have rather, according to their own Accounts allow'd it from the End of 39 where *Cape Kinlope* is, to the Beginning of 42 where the Falls of *Delaware* River are, being two whole Degrees, and making, as was said before, 120 Miles. The Breadth from East to West the first Author above-mention'd makes 180 and the latter 200 Miles, which must be understood in the same Manner as has been said of their great Length, rather what they would have it, than what it is.

The whole Province is divided into six Counties. 1. That of *Buckingham*, where the first Town, call'd *Edis Township*, has only 20 or 30 Houses, and then *Bristol* the Capital of 50 Houses. 2. *Philadelphia*, in which is the Capital of the whole Province, bearing the same Name, and dignify'd with the Title of a City, seated between two Navigable Rivers, the *Delaware* and the *Schoolkil*. The Houses being about 1200, built of

Brick, 2 or 3 Stories high, with many Warehouses and Wharfs along the Rivers, a handsom Court-House, and under it a Prison. Two Fairs are kept here every Year, and two Markets a Week. It is inhabited by People of several Principles; so there is a Church for such as are bred to it, and Meeting-Houses for Quakers, Presbyterians, Anabaptists, as also a *Swedish* Church. The Assemblies and Courts of Judicature are held here, and there is a Key 200 Foot square, close to which a Ship of 500 Tun may lie. Next to *Philadelphia*, the best Town is *German Town*, of about 200 Houses. Over the River *Schoolkil* is the *Welsh* Plantation of 40000 Acres.

The third County is call'd *Chester*, whose Capital of the same Name contains not above 100 Houses; and besides that there is *Chichester* of the like Number of Inhabitants. 4. *New-Castle* County, whose Capital bears the same Name, and contains above 2000 Souls. 5. *Kent*, whose chief Town *Dover* has not above 30 or 40 Houses. 6. *Suffex*, where the principal Place is call'd *Lewis*, reckoned a good Town, as Towns go in those Parts.

The great Rivers here are, the *Delaware* on the East-side, descending from the Country of the *Iroquois*, and falling into the Bay of the same Name, and the *Sasquahanagh* coming out of the same Inland Country, and running almost Parallel to the *Delaware* till it falls into *Chesapeak* Bay. The *Schoolkil* before mention'd washing one side of the City *Philadelphia* is small, and loses its self in the *Delaware*.

As to the Climate, this Country lies equal with the South Part of *France* and *Italy*, which it somewhat resembles, the Air being Serene, Pleasant and wholesome, but colder in Winter and hotter in Summer. And for an Instance of the Cold, the great River *Delaware*, which is near two Miles broad at *Philadelphia*, has been quite frozen up. The Summer here would be intolerable were it not moderated by cool Breezes.

The Soil in so large a Tract may be imagin'd to vary, some good and some bad. The Product differs little from the Neighbouring Provinces already mention'd, for here are most Trees which *England* affords; and besides them, Cedar, Sassafras and Chestnut; and for Shrubs Sumack, Snake-root, Sassa-parilla, Calamus Aromaticus, Jalap and Cranberries. Here is also Plenty of Grain of every Kind, and all possible Variety of Fruit; nor is there less Diversity of Animals, as Tame Cattle and all the Wild Beasts, whose Flesh, Skins or Furs are of any Value, but all these last lie up the Country, and cannot properly be said to be in *Pensylvania*. Fish and Plants need not be mention'd, it being well known that all these Coasts afford the greatest Variety that can be imagin'd.

The Natives are handsom, and would have good Complexions, did they not spoil them, as has been said of their Neighbours, by anointing themselves with Bear's Fat, and other filthy Ingredients. They wash their Children, as soon as born, and carry them on their Backs ty'd fast to a board. The Boys first fish, and when big enough hunt; the Girls plant Corn, and carry Burdens as their Mothers do. Their Houses are Huts, made of Mat, or Bark; their Food, *Indian* Wheat, Beans, Pease, Flesh and Fish. No People are merrier, for half their life is Feasting and Dancing, and they are generous and free of what they have, as coveting nothing. The same Apparel they wear living,



living, they are buried in when dead, and the Kindred throw some valuable things into their Graves. As for their Religion, they believe a God, and the Immortality of the Soul, and pay their Worship with Sacrifices and Singing. Their Government is Kingly and Hereditary, but the Kings or Sovereigns have very small Dominions. With the *English* they have always been friendly and courteous, so that there has never been any War between them.

The present Inhabitants *English*, *Dutch*, and *Saxons*, are reckon'd to be above 20000, who drive a considerable Trade to all the other *American* Plantations on the Continent, as well as to the Islands, and to *England*. The Commodities they export are Horses, Pipe-slaves, Beef, Pork, Bread, Meal, all sorts of Grain, Skins, Furs, Pot-Ashes, Wax, and Tabaco. In return for which they receive Rum, Sugar, Molasses, Silver, Slaves, Salt, Wine, Linen, all sorts of Wearing Apparel and Household stuff, &c.

### Mary-Land

On the North reaches up to 40 Degrees Latitude, where a Line drawn from East to West divides it from *Pennsylvania*, and the Inland *Indian* Country; on the West *Potomack* River parts it from *Virginia*; as does the same River and *Pocomuck* Bay on the South; *Pocomack* River severs it from the rest of *Virginia* on the East, and the remaining Eastern Part lies along the Ocean. For the better understanding whereof, it is to be observ'd, that the great Bay of *Chesapeak* divides both *Maryland* and *Virginia* into two Parts, each of them from North to South, one Part of each lying on the East side of the said Bay, and the other on the West.

This Province, like the rest, is divided into Counties, whereof there are 11, 6 on the West, and 5 on the East of *Chesapeak* Bay. The most Northern on the West commencing at 40 Degrees Latitude, as has been said, is call'd *Baltimore* County, reaching as far as *Bail's* Creek Southward, whence only some scattering Trees to the Westward shew its Extent and Limits, and in it nothing that can properly be call'd a Town, tho' that Name is given to a parcel of flatter'd Houses. The next is *Ann Arundel* County, not much better furnish'd with Towns, here being only one call'd *Annapolis*, consisting of 40 Houses, and a Free-School, and here the Courts of Judicature are held. Then follows *Calvert* County, lying along the East side of the River *Potomack*. On the West of the said River *Prince George's* County. South of this, *Charles* County, and again South of this *S. Mary's*, where is a Place bearing the same Name with the Title of a City, yet contains not above 60 Houses. Passing hence over *Chesapeak* Bay, the first we come at is *Somerset* County, then *Dorchester*, where there are more *Indians* than in any of the others, but the chief Place of the same Name with the County, has not above 10 Houses. Proceeding still Northward, the next is *Talbot* County, then *Kent*, running out into *Chesapeak* Bay, and lastly *Cecil*, the most Northern County on the East.

The Air, Soil, Product, and Animals here are the same as in *Virginia*, where the Reader may find them; but the abundance of Brooks and Ri-

vers makes the Ground exceeding fertile; and for the Natives, we must refer to the same Place, since there is no remarkable difference between them, only it is here observable, that of those People there are not at present thought to be 500 Men able to bear Arms remaining. Most of these live upon the Eastern Shore in two or three little Towns, but go over in Winter to hunt Deer, which is their only Delight, being very averse to the *Europeans* way of Living and Christianity.

The whole Country was like one continued Wood when the *English* came into it, and is now no otherwise any farther than they have clear'd, which is very much. The main Trade here is Tabaco, so strong that few *English* care to smoke it, and yet it turns to better Account than the sweet scented of *Virginia*, being most esteem'd in the North East Parts of *Europe*, whither vast Quantities are sent, and it proves so advantageous, that it encourages the Inhabitants to increase their Plantations, which are now so much improv'd that here is more Tabaco thought to grow than in *Virginia*, tho' it be a later Plantation. Most of the Country is plain, and what Hills there are, easie of Ascent, so that they afford a delightful Prospect.

### Virginia

On the North is bounded by *Potomack* River, which parts it from *Mary-land*; on the East by the Ocean, on the South by a ridge of Hills dividing it from *Carolina*; and on the West the *Apalachean* Mountains part it from the Inland unconquer'd Country, which may be reckon'd a Part of *New-France*, or *Hennepin's Louisiana*, as being no great distance from the known Lake of *Eric*. Thus this Country will in reality appear to extend above 300 Miles in length from North to South, stretching it the most that may, and not 100 in Breadth from East to West, allowing it to extend to the aforesaid Mountains, the one half of which is not yet inhabited by any *English*. And lest this should be thought a lessening of the Country, it must be observ'd that the History of the British Empire extending it to 400 Miles, must of necessity either run in deep into *Carolina* Southward, or into the Country of the *Iroquois* Northward, as will appear to any one that will take the Pains to examine whatsoever Maps are extant of those Parts. But let it be never so much stretch'd this way, nothing can be parallel'd to the extravagant Notion of extending *Virginia* Westward to the South Sea, which is at least 2500 Miles across the Country, either through *Florida*, or *New-France*, and then athwart all *New-Mexico*, now actually in the Possession of the Crown of *Spain*, and yet at the same time it is most certain that the most Inland Settlements come not near the *Apalachean* Mountains, which as has been said, are not above 100 Miles from the Sea.

Thus much may suffice upon this Point to convince the Reader that nothing is here deliver'd but upon good Authority, without following blindly the Mistakes or willful Errors common in Books of this Nature. *Chesapeak* Bay, as was said before in speaking of *Mary-land*, divides this Province as well as that into two Parts. Now this might be more properly call'd a River than a Bay, in regard it runs up the Country



try about 200 Miles, being near 20 Miles over at the Mouth, little less in most Parts within, and much more in many. It has a bold Coast all along on both sides, so that any Ship may go in at all times sounding, without the help of a Pilot. Many Rivers fall into it on both sides, and along the Shores there are several little Islands, some of which are Planted.

The whole Province is divided into 25 Counties, in which there are but 49 Parishes, a small Number for such an Extent, and what is more, no Place worthy being taken notice of as a Town; for that they call *James City* has not above 70 Houses, and those scattering; as for the New Town of *Williamstadt*, or *Williamsburg*, there are not 30 Houses in it, the Habitations being single for the sake of the Plantations. Of such there are great Numbers all along the Banks of the Rivers especially, which is a Situation every one desires, for the convenience of shipping off their *Tabaco*. The Names of the Counties, which is as much as need be said of them in particular, are *Richmond*, *Stafford*, *Essex*, *Middlesex*, *Glocester*, *King's* and *Queen's* County, *King William's* County, *New-Kent*, *Elizabeth*, *Warwick*, *York*, *James*, *Prince George*, and *Charles* City Counties, *Henrico*, *Surrey*, *Isle of Wight*, *Nansemond*, *Princess Anne*, and *Norfolk*, *Westmoreland*, *Lancaster*, *Northumberland*, *Accomack*, and *Northampton*.

The main Rivers here, are, 1. *James River*, in the South, by the *Indians* call'd *Pombatan*, on which the *English* first settled, runs from the West to the East, and is Navigable 140 Miles above the Mouth. 2. Northward of the last is *York River*, coming from the North West, and running South East, passing so near *James River* in some Places, that they are not above 5 Miles distant; good Ships may sail up it 60 Miles, and smaller Vessels 30 Miles higher. The *Indians* call it *Pamunky*, a Name still given by the *English* to a Branch of it higher in the Country. 3. *Rappahannock River*, which runs the same Course with the two former, but somewhat longer, being also Navigable above 100 Miles. 4. The *Potomack* far exceeds them all, both in length of Course, and breadth, being some Miles over in several Places, Navigable higher than any of the others, and very full of Windings. Rivers of less Note there are many, as *Elizabeth River*, *Nansemond*, *Chickahomony*, *Pocosen*, *North River*, *Eastmost River*, *Corotoman*, *Wicocomoco*, *Pocomoke*, *Chiffenisseke*, *Punguetague*, &c. Of the *Apalachean* Mountains little can be said, but those who have ventur'd so far as to see them, tell us they are of a vast height, and most difficult Ascent, but very few have taken the Pains to Travel over, and therefore little is known. Some, it is true, have conceited there are mighty Mines in them, which hitherto has appear'd a meer Notion, for had they been worth the looking after they had not lain so long neglected.

The Climate is much commended, in order to draw People over, yet there is nothing more certain than that it is extreme hot, which, with the uncertainty of the Weather, makes the Country very unhealthy; for the Heat being so violent, all Men naturally seek to be as fresh as they may, and on a sudden there rise such sharp, piercing Winds as strike them through, and are the cause of many Distempers; not to speak

of the danger of drinking too hot, or too cooling Liquors. Besides, there is a continual Plague of all sorts of Insects, as Gnats, Punaises, and other Vermin; and for the larger sort, the Rattle-Snake, whose bite is Mortal without immediate Cure. The Winter is no less troublesome than the Summer, consisting either of most violent Cold, or Floods of Rain.

The Soil is generally good, the best Plains near the Mouths of Rivers, producing Rice, Hemp, and *Indian* Wheat; the upper Country yields all sorts of *European* Trees, besides some others of the *American* Kind. They tell us of Iron, Lead, nay of Silver Mines, but these may very well be look'd upon as Notions till they produce the Metals. Nor is any more account to be made of their Vines, which tho' attempted by several, could never be brought to Perfection. Their best Trees are the Oak, Cedar, Cypress, Fir, Walnut, and Ash; besides the Sassafras, and Fruit Trees.

But of all the Growth, nothing comes near the *Tabacco* for Profit, and being so well known in *England* needs no Description. The manner of sowing it is in Beds, where it continues a Month constantly Weeded, and is then transplanted, after which there must be continual care to prune, top, and take off the bottom Leaves, as also to clear them of Worms. When ripe, which appears by the Leaves turning brownish, the Plants are cut, and after sweating in Heaps, every Plant is hung up in the *Tabacco-House* for a Month or five Weeks, then taken down again in moist Weather and sweated, then stripp'd and sorted. The top Leaves being the best, and the lowest the worst, and lastly it is put up in Hogheads.

Beasts in *Virginia* are as various as the Product of the Earth, for there is plenty of *European* Cattel, since first carry'd over by the *English*, and great numbers of Horses; the wild Beasts are Deer, Elks, Bears, Wolves, Foxes, Otters, and Beavers, as also Lions, and Leopards. The strange ones, unknown to us, are the flying Squirrel, so call'd, because it has a fleshy substance like Wings, which it extends, and by the help of it skips from Tree to Tree, tho' they be 20 or 30 Yards distant. The *Opissum* has a Head like a Hog, and the Tail like a Rat, being about the bigness of a Cat. The Female has a Bag under its Belly, in which it carries its Young, and thither they fly in case of Danger. The *Mussascus* is a sort of Water-Rat, so call'd because it smells of Musk. Besides these there are Buffaloes, wild Boars, infinite numbers of common Rats and Mice, some Polecats and Weezels, and abundance of Hares and Rabbits.

Fowl are no less plentiful and various, and not to trouble the Reader, they have all that *England* affords, besides other sorts over and above, among which the Humming Bird is remarkable for Size and Beauty, being scarce half so big as a Wren, and cloath'd in most lovely Scarlet, Green and Gold. Then for eating, there are wild Turkeys much bigger than ours, which we may suppose are large Bustards. It would be endless to enumerate their Fishes, and without following their Romantick Fables, no Place in the World affords more Variety, or greater Plenty.

Money is here so scarce, that rich Men can scarce get enough to pay their Travelling Charges;



ges; but all sorts of Coins pass, and it is a happiness to get any. The known Varieties are *Spanish* Dobloons, Pistoles, and Pieces of Eight at the common rates; *Arabian* Gold, Chequins at 10 s. *French* Crowns at 5 s. *Dutch* Dollars at 4 s. and all *English* Coin as in *England*. The whole Trade of *Virginia* is Tobacco.

The mighty numerous Nations of *Indians* which inhabited this large Country, are now reduc'd to about 500 Men, whereas when the *English* first Planted, one of the many *Indian* Kings was able to bring 20000 Men into the Field, and yet we exclaim that others have unpeopled Countries, without observing that they have infinitely greater Numbers of *Indian* Subjects in much smaller Provinces. This little Handful which remains, still follows the Religion of their Forefathers, which shews what Care has been taken of their Conversion. These People always had, and still retain the Notion of a Sovereign Deity, yet as our Deists do, believing that he does not concern himself with Worldly Affairs, but leaves us entirely to our own Disposal, and therefore expects no Worship from us, nor heeds it if paid. But they believe there is a wicked Spirit who always watches to do harm to Man, and therefore they use all possible means to please and appease him. They honour their Priests, who are great Conjurers, and reputed to perform extraordinary things among them by that Art. These Priests speak of a Heaven and Hell after their Way, are bloody in their Sacrifices, and sometimes offer up Children to the Devil. They have a Custom of shutting up their Youth, as it were in a Cage, and intoxicating them with poisonous Roots, till they are in a manner distracted, when they take them out and cure them, and they say they forget all their past Lives, and then are reckon'd Gentlemen. Matrimony they observe Religiously, and reckon Adultery an unpardonable Crime.

Their Cloaths consist in a Mantle, and under it a Cloth round their Waste, both of them ty'd with a Girdle. Their Food is all sorts of Fish, Fowl, and Cattle boil'd and roasted; they also eat Snakes, and *Indian* Corn steep'd, bruis'd in a Mortar, and then boil'd. They express their Friendship to Strangers by smoaking round in a Pipe, which if refus'd, it is a Declaration of War. All their Wealth consists in Furs, and Shells. Their Government is Monarchical, and they are zealous in preserving the Succession in the right Line.

The present Inhabitants being under an *English* Government, much need not be said of them, only as to their Number they are thought to be 20000 Souls, a great Number, if true, yet little enough for so much Land; but these must not be thought to be all *English*, for there are many Thousand Blacks, besides a considerable number of *French* gone over of late Years. The most usual Distempers are Colds, proceeding from the uncertainty of the Weather, as also Gripes and Fluxes, flowing much from the same Cause, or overmuch eating of Fruit; the seasoning being a sort of Fever New-comers are subject to; and the *Typhus*, which some represent as a high Scurvy, but others rather look upon as a Species of the Pox. The Government is by a Governour, Council, and general Assembly; this last is of the Nature of a Parliament.

### Carolina.

The next and last *English* Province to the Southward, on the Continent, is reckon'd to lie between 31 and 36 Degrees of North Latitude, and may be about 250 Miles in Length, the Breadth at utmost scarce an Hundred, not to speak of the extravagant Notion of extending it to the South Sea, athwart all *Florida*, and the *Spanish* New *Mexico* before spoken of in *Virginia*. On the North it Borders on *Virginia*, on the East of it is the Ocean; on the South it joins to the *Spanish Florida*, and on the West to that part of the same Country, which is yet unconquer'd, and little known.

The whole Country is divided into North and South *Carolina*, and those two into six Counties, two in the North, viz. *Albemarle* and *Clarendon*; and four in the South, which are *Craven*, *Berkley*, *Colliton*, and *Carteret*. *Albemarle* County is the most Northerly, joining to *Virginia*, water'd by *Albemarle* River, which is made up of two, the *Noratoke* and *Notoway*. Next to it is the *Pantagoe*, and then the *Nense*, but there is no Town in this County that deserves the Name. The next is *Clarendon* County, whose first River is call'd *Clarendon*, or *Cape Fear* River, the first Name from a Proprietor, the latter from the Promontory so call'd, at the Mouth of it, and this descends from two Branches. Then follows *Watercree* River, capable of large Ships. Between these two is the little River *Wingon*, on which is a Settlement call'd *Charles* Town. *Sante* River parts North and South *Carolina*, and the first County in the latter is that of *Craven*, tolerably inhabited by *English* and *French*, the latter whereof have a Settlement on *Sante* River, as have the *English* on the next, call'd *Sewer*. *Berkley* County is next, the South Part whereof is only inhabited along the two Rivers, *Cooper* and *Ashley*. Between them is the Capital of the Country *Charles* Town, in about 31 Degrees and 40 Minutes Latitude, and 2 Leagues from the Sea. It is fortify'd with six Bastions, and Lines quite round, and hither all the Trade of the County is brought, yet no Ship of above 200 Tun can come into the Harbour. There are 14 or 15 good Houses, and as many others as make up some Streets. Here is also a Church and a publick Library, besides the Church a Presbyterian Meeting-House, another of Anabaptists, and a third of Quakers, as also a *French* Church, and the whole Number of the Inhabitants is about 250 Families. The Governour resides here, as do the Courts of Judicature. On the Southern Edge of this County is another Town call'd *Dorchester*, containing about 350 Souls, on the River *Stono*, and in it an Independent Meeting-House. *Colliton* County follows to the Southward, the two chief Rivers whereof are North *Edistow*, and South *Edistow*, along whose Banks there are several Plantations, and some *Indian* Towns about the Country. Above the meeting of the two *Edistows* is a Town of about 80 Houses, by some call'd *Wilton*, by others *New-London*. *Carteret* is the last County, not yet inhabited, tho' reckon'd the best Part of all the Province.

The Air here is Healthy, being always serene, pleasant and temperate, never subject to excessive Heat or Cold, nor to sudden Changes. The

Winter



Winter is regular and short, and the Summer always cool'd with fresh Breezes. The Soil is naturally fertile, and easie to manure, and the continual Temperature makes the Trees and Fields green all the Year. The Beasts, Birds, and Fish, are much the same as in *Virginia*, and so for Timber and Fruit-Trees, Plants, and other common Product. *Europe* produces nothing but what will grow here, either as to Grain or Fruit. Sassafras, Cassia, or other sorts of Trees grow in the Woods, yielding Gums and Rozin, as also some Oil excellent for curing of Wounds.

Its principal Commodities are Beef, Pork, Corn, Pease, Butter, Tallow, Hides, Pipe-staves, Hoops, Cotton, Silk, Rice, Skins, Pitch and Tar. The Provisions generally transported to the Islands, the latter sort to *England*. They also talk much of *Vineyards*, but no Wine of theirs having as yet appear'd abroad, no more need be said of it.

The Natives are generally well made, handsome, of good natural Parts, and much addicted to Hunting; their Skins tawny with Oiling and being much expos'd to the Sun. Their Religion and Customs differ little from the *Virginians*, and therefore need not be repeated, and they are like them given to drinking, but whether they learn'd it of the *English*, as some pretend, or had it of their own, is not worth disputing, tho it be known, that in most Parts of *America* that Vice was common before any *Europeans* came among them. The History of the *British* Empire says, the converting of them to Christianity is put off, for fear they should return to the Obedience of the *Spaniards*; a very unaccountable Argument to obstruct the Conversion of Infidels. Having thus run through all the *British* Dominions on the Continent, it remains to acquaint the Reader, that what is here said of them has been collected from the best Authors, who have treated of them, for to pass by Foreigners, we have extracted the substance of all the publick Accounts of Discoveries and Plantations in *Virginia*, *New-England*, and the rest down to *Carolina*, still keeping closest to the newest, the Particulars whereof may be seen in the Catalogue, omitting to quote them upon every occasion for Brevity sake, they often interfering too much one with another; besides that we have several Additions and Amendments receiv'd from Persons of Reputation, who have liv'd in those Parts. The next thing requisite, is, to shew with our usual Brevity, the first Discoveries and Settlements made in each of them.

#### Historical Account.

It is needless to argue whether the *English*, *French*, or *Spaniards* were the first Discoverers of this Tract of Land, each Nation having enough to alledge in its own behalf, but all the World knows that the *Spaniards* first discovering *America*, gave encouragement for others to follow their Example, and the *English* being possess'd of these Lands, 'tis no matter who saw them first. To come to the Point, the first that brought any good Account of these Countries into *England* were Captain *Philip Amidas*, and Captain *Arthur Barlow*, fitted out in two small Ships by the Procurement of Sir *Walter Raleigh* in the Year 1583. The first Land they came to was *Roanoke*, and Landed in a Country

call'd *Winpandacoa*, between *Virginia* and *Carolina*, where they traded for Furs, Sassafras, Cedar, and some Pearl, with which they return'd home, and giving a good Account of the Country, Queen *Elizabeth* gave it the Name of *Virginia*, which Name was extended to the whole Continent, now possess'd by *England*, till particular Grants of several Parts made a change of the Names of those Parts. Their Success encouraged the Adventurers to fit out seven Ships under Sir *Richard Greenville*, who arriving at *Roanoke* Island in 36 Degrees of North Latitude, in the Year 1585, after Trading with the Natives, left 108 Men on the said Island under Captain *Lane*, and return'd to *England*. These Men not being supply'd from *England*, as was promis'd, were reduc'd to the utmost Want, and Sir *Francis Drake* happening to come that way, he brought away as many of them as were left alive. Sir *Richard Greenville* return'd to *Roanoke* after the Men were gone, and again left 50 more there, with Promises to return to their Relief; but they were all destroy'd before it came, which was in 1587, under Captain *White*, who a third time settled there, and after a while leaving 115 Men in the Place, set sail for *England* to fetch Supplies, which he brought in 1589, but the Men he left being remov'd, and a sudden Storm dispersing his Ships, they all made the best of their way home, and none was sent for 16 Years to look after those Men, so that what became of them was never known.

The next that went out was Captain *Gosnold* in 1602, who fell in about *Massachusetts Bay*, in 42 Degrees Latitude, and thence sail'd to *Cape Cod*, on the Coast of *New-England*, where he Traded and return'd home. After him several Ships set out, and traded along that Coast very peaceably, till the *English* wronging the ignorant Natives, gave occasion to the many Slaughters that ensued. In 1606, a Charter of Incorporation and Donation of these Countries being granted by King *James* to the Adventurers therein nam'd, they sent Captain *Nemport* with 2 Ships, who erected a Fort at the Mouth of *Powhatan* River, left 100 Men there with all Necessaries for their Support, which was the first Colony that took effect; Captain *Smith* was also sent by the same Company, whom some will have to be the Settler of the first Colony, but that we leave to others to argue, and proceed to what is known, which is, that *Smith* having the management of Affairs, built a Fort on the South Cape at the Mouth of *Chesapeake Bay*, call'd *Powhatan James River*, in honour of the King, the Northern Cape *Charles*, and the Southern Cape *Henry*, from the King's two Sons. Next they pitch'd upon a Place 50 Miles up the River, where they built that they call'd *James-Town*. Here they gather'd a vast quantity of yellow Sand, with which they loaded a Ship, and sent it home, imagining it had been all Gold, but found it to be meer Dirt. Constant Supplies coming from *England*, the new Colony at *James-Town* was enabled to send out two others of 120 Men each, and continued still 500 strong, who not long after were through Want, and their Wars with the Natives, reduc'd to 60, when some other Ships arriving, they resolv'd to quit the Plantation, and were all accordingly got on Board when the Lord *Delaware* came with three other Ships as Governour, and pre-



vail'd with them to return to *James-Town*, where they settled again. Sir *Thomas Dale* being Governour in 1611, stretch'd out and made a Settlement, which is from him call'd *Dale's Gift*. Thus they continued to increase till the Year 1622, when a Captain belonging to the *Indian* Monarch *Oppeccanough* being murder'd or kill'd by the *English*, the said Prince in revenge form'd a Conspiracy with all the neighbouring Natives, and on a sudden cut off 334 Men, Women, and Children of the *English*, who had far'd much worse but that an *Indian* discover'd the Design to them a few Hours before it was put in Execution. This put an end to all Improvements at that time, and so enrag'd the *English*, that they never gave over till they had utterly destroy'd all the Natives, so that there are now scarce 500 Men left of those Multitudes they found there. From that time the Power of the Planters increasing, and the Natives diminishing, all things have gone on more successfully, till the Province is brought into the Condition that has been shewn in its Place.

*New-England*, which was call'd South *Virginia*, after Captain *Gosford* above-mention'd, had Traded on the Coast, and several Settlements endeavour'd in vain, was for some Years resorted to by Ships from *England* with good Success, for Furs and other Commodities, and had the Name of *New-England* given to it in the Year 1614, by the Colony of North *Virginia*, who for some Years carried on a profitable Trade, tho' without thoughts of settling till the Year 1620, when some Independents first propos'd it, and Landing over against *Rhode Island*, built the Town of *New Plymouth* in about 43 Degrees of North Latitude, where the first Governour who had been one of the Promoters of the Colony, was Mr. *John Carver*. Soon after, one Mr. *Weston* dissenting from the rest of the Brethren, drew such as were of his Opinion after him, and settled at *Weymouth* on *Massachusetts Bay*. A War ensued with the Natives, upon the new Planters at *Weymouth* using them ill, who destroy'd the greater Number, and drove the rest out of the Country. Several other Colonies were from that time sent to divers Parts, which 'tis needless to repeat, having nam'd them all in the Description. In the Year 1630, a new War broke out with the *Indians*, call'd *Pequots*, *Narragansets*, and others about *Massachusetts Bay*, who were most of them destroy'd, others oblig'd to fly farther up into the Country, and those few that remain'd, to submit. Having thus oppress'd their Enemy abroad, they fell at Variance among themselves on pretence of Religion, the then prevailing Humour, but still the Colonies here increas'd, abundance of the Republican Gang flocking over, till the Rebellion breaking out in *England* they got all the Power in their own Hands, and then the Affairs of the Brethren thro' amain. In the Year 1672, a new War broke out with the *Indians*, which began in *Flynnish County*, and thence by degrees spread over all *New-England*, sometimes one Party, and sometimes the other prevailing, and both sustaining great Losses, but the Actions were not considerable enough to deserve any particular Mention. This War lasted from 1672 till 1676, when great numbers of the Natives having been cut off, and many more sold for Slaves, the small remainder submitted, and Peace ensued. In

1688, the *Indian* War commenc'd again, which was no more successful to them than the former, yet they held it on till the Peace of *Europe* was concluded at *Reswick*. During this time Sir *William Phips*, Governour of *New-England*, undertook an Expedition against the *French* in *Canada*, where he lost abundance of his Men, and came off with Disgrace, as may be seen in *La Hontan*, who was then present.

*New-York* was first call'd *New-Netherlands*, the *Dutch* having possess'd themselves of it, and settled there, building the City of *New-Amsterdam*, now *New-York*, and several Forts up the Country, but the first *Dutch* War breaking out after the Restoration, and King *Charles* the 2d. having bellow'd that Country on his Brother the Duke of *York*, Sir *Robert Cur* was sent thither with 3000 Men in the Year 1664, who easily possess'd himself of the City of *New-Amsterdam*, and from his Royal Highness gave it and the Country the Name of *New-York*. Many of the *Dutch* Inhabitants remain'd there under the *English* Government, as do their Children to this Day, the rest of the Country was distributed to *English* Planters, among whom nothing remarkable has happen'd since that time.

*New-Jersey* was first possess'd by the *Svedes*, of all *Europeans*, who built here three Towns, call'd *Christians*, *Elsinburg*, and *Corumburg*, and extended their Plantations along the River, but made not any great Advantage of them, which the *Dutch* perceiving, who let slip no Opportunity that may turn to their Benefit; they encroach'd so far upon them as to take Possession of all the Northern Part of the Country, which went by the Name of *Berghen*. King *Charles* the 2d inserted this Country in the Grant above-mention'd to his Brother of *New-York*. His Royal Highness transferr'd his Grant to *John Lord Berkley*, and Sir *George Carteret* the same Year 1664, who divided the Country into two Parts, which are those now call'd *East-Jersey*, and *West-Jersey*. The Lord *Berkley*, and Sir *George Carteret's* Executors afterwards assign'd over their Shares to others, who procur'd a Confirmation of their Patent from the Duke of *York* in 1682. Most of the first Inhabitants that went over from *England* were Quakers and Anabaptists, and to this Day there are but two Church of *England* Ministers in all that Country, where there have not been any Actions that merit the Reader's particular Observation.

*Pennsylvania* may well be reckon'd still a Part of the *New-Netherlands*, as lying in a manner behind *New-Jersey*, and having nothing on the Sea but a Slip along *Delaware Bay*, and the rest all inland upon the Rivers *Delaware* and *Susquehannough*. Some few *English* had before straggled thither by the way of *New-Jersey*, but it became not an absolute Province of it self, till the Year 1681, when *William Pen*, Esq; obtain'd a Grant of it from King *Charles* the 2d, and from his own Name call'd it *Pennsylvania*. The *Svedes* and *Dutch* inhabiting there, had before submitted, and were under an *English* Governour, being about 3000 Souls, but the *English* very few. In 1681 *Pen* went over, and carried with him, or was immediately follow'd by 2000 Souls, most of them Quakers, he being the Head of those People. As soon as these People were a little settled, they built good Houses, and the City of *Philadelphia*, which tho' so young, is one of the best



best in the *British* Plantations, and indeed the whole Province has throve for the time more than any other, and is likely so to do, having never had any War with the Natives, nor any Disturbance among the Planters.

*Maryland* was always reckon'd a Part of *Virginia* till the Year 1631, when King *Charles* the first made a Grant of it to *George Calvert*, Lord *Baltimore*, and gave it the Name of *Maryland* in honour of his Queen *Henrietta Maria*, so that the first discovery of it may be seen under that Province. In the Year 1633, *Leonard Calvert*, Esq; Brother to the Lord *Baltimore*, *Jeremy Hartley*, and *Thomas Cornwallis*, Esq; carry'd over the first Colony of about 200 Persons, several of them being Gentlemen of good Families, and *Roman Catholics*, who hop'd they might there enjoy Liberty of Conscience, which was refus'd them in *England*. Coming to *Potomack* River, the Governour call'd the South Point of it *S. Gregory's*, and the North *S. Michael's*. Fourteen Leagues hence Mr. *Calvert* setup a Cross, and took Possession of the Country. After sailing several Leagues up that great River he return'd to that he call'd *S. George's*, which is within 4 Leagues of the Mouth of *Potomack*, where he presented the Natives with Cloth, Axes, Hoes, and Knives, which they accepted so kindly, that in return they resign'd him their Town, then call'd *Yaamoco*, and by him *S. Marice*, and both sides promising to live friendly, and make Satisfaction to one another if any Injury were offer'd on either side, the Governour took Possession, and the Natives remov'd. Being thus settled, they fell to building of Houses and a Fort, which they soon finished, notwithstanding some of the *Virginian* Planters endeavour'd to render them odious to the Natives. From that time fresh Recruits of People flocking over, the whole Country was Planted as it is at present, by degrees, without any War or Controversy with the Natives.

*Carolina* being the Northern Part of *Florida*, it is needless to contend about the first Discoverers of it, when all who have read any thing of those Parts, must be satisfied it was first found by *John Ponce de Leon*, a *Spaniard*, in the Year 1512, who took Possession, as the Form then was, and gave it the Name of *Florida*, both on account of its flourishing condition, and because he came upon it about *Easter*, which the *Spaniards* call *Pascua Florida*. After this other *Spaniards* made some unfortunate Attempts to settle there, which discourag'd others from proceeding

for some time. Next the *French* settled there twice in *Carolina*, but were starv'd out the first time, and the next expell'd by the *Spaniards*, from which time that Country was never attempted by any *European* Nation, till in the Year 1663, King *Charles* the 2d gave a Grant of it to *Edward*, Earl of *Clarendon*, *George*, Duke of *Albemarle*, *William* Lord *Craven*, *John* Lord *Berkley*, *Anthony* Lord *Ashley*, *Sir George Carteret*, *Sir William Berkley*, and *Sir John Colliton*, and call'd it *Carolina*. The first thing these Proprietors did, was for the encouraging all sorts of Persons to go over to their Province, to grant entire Liberty of Conscience to all Religions, not only Christians, but even *Jews*, *Heathens*, and others, only excepting that no Person should have any Protection of the Law who was not a Member of some Church or Profession. In the Year 1670, the first Planters went over and brought the first Plantations to Perfection about *Albemarle*, and *Port-Royal* Rivers; but more People flock'd to *Ashley* and *Cooper* Rivers, which is accordingly best inhabited, on account of the conveniency of Pasture and Tillage. From that time constant Supplies have been sent, till the Province is brought into the Condition already mention'd in the Description. The Reception of these new Planters was peaceable, and the *Indians* continued so till provok'd by the Cruelties of those People, they commenc'd a War in the Year 1680, which had like to have prov'd the Ruin of the Colony, however it had the good Fortune to prevail, and ever since has gather'd Strength. But they have been continually at variance among themselves, and no Endeavours that have been us'd can ever set them right. In the Year 1702, this Province undertook to make War on their Neighbours the *Spaniards*, and accordingly drew together 600 *English*, and as many *Indians*, commanded by Colonel *Moor*, then Governour. He did some Harm in the open Country, and laid Siege to *S. Augustine's* Fort for near three Months, at the end whereof seeing two *Spanish* Ships making towards the Fort, he broke up in a Consternation, and march'd back to *Charles-Town* in *Carolina* 300 Miles by Land, leaving his Ships and a great quantity of Stores, Ammunition, and Provision to the Enemy. Since that time the Province has continued full of Broils and Confusions, which must needs much obstruct its Advancement, and yet it has throve as much as any other for the time, as being the most Southern, and consequently the best Land of any.

## CHAP. V. OF FLORIDA.

[Consult the Map of Mexico.]

HAVING run through the *French* and *English* Dominions, we come next in Course to the *Spanish*, far exceeding them both in Extent and Value, as containing not only the greatest Part of *America*, but the best and wealthiest, as we shall perceive by the Description of them. We begin in Course with *Florida*, as next to the

*English* Plantations last spoken of. This great Piece of Continent, including *Carolina* already mention'd with the *English* Provinces, as being one of them, and yet a Member of this great Division, is separated on the North from *New-France* and *Virginia*, by the *Apalachian* Mountains, on the West it Borders on the Kingdom of *New-Mexico*,



*Mexico*, and Part of the Old, being the Province of *New-Biscay*; on the South it has that of *Panuco* and the Gulph of *Mexico*, and on the East the Channel of *Bahama* and the Ocean. The *Bahama* Islands which lie off the East Coast at about 20 Leagues form a Bay which our Seamen call the Gulph of *Florida*. It is known to extend upon the Coast, from 25 to 35 Degrees of North Latitude; but what Height to allot it up the Inland is uncertain, that Discovery not being yet perfected, so as to determine where to set the Limits of this Country and those of *Louisiana*. The Maps it is true do lay them down, but that is at Pleasure, as is practis'd by some Geographers in other Parts they know nothing of, which is imposing on those who seek for Information. The Length of it from East to West is about 500 Leagues.

It is no less uncertain to pretend to divide this Country into Provinces, for tho' it be known to contain several Nations, yet they being unconquer'd, we cannot assign them any true Bounds; for which reason we shall content our selves with first speaking of it in General, then describing the Coasts, and lastly, delivering such Accounts of the Inland, as we shall find among those who travell'd any Part of it.

We may well observe out of *Herrera*, that the *Spaniards*, at first under the Name of *Florida* comprehended all that mighty Tract of Land which lies from the Cape of *Florida*, opposite to *Cuba* in 26 Degrees to 48 Degrees of North Latitude; after which they again restrain'd it to only that Part, which lies between the said Cape and the *Apalachian* Mountains above mention'd, but that extent above assign'd is what all Geographers at present allow it.

By the Situation already mention'd, it appears to lie all within the Temperate Zone, yet being so near the Tropick rather subject to Heat than Cold, which with the many Rivers that water the Ground, makes it inferiour to no other Country whatsoever for Pleasantness and Fertility. Much of the Coast is indeed Sandy, but at a small distance from the Sea the Soil is excellent good, as appears by its natural Product; for with the least Trouble in the World it yields all Sorts of Grain and Herbs, and Grapes. Then for Trees, not to speak of Pines, Cedars, Cypress, Lawrel and the like, there is all variety of Fruit growing without the least Improvement from Art, and tho' Wild, most delicious to the Taste. The Meadows abound in Grass, and the Woods swarm with Deer, Goats, Lions, Leopards, Wolves, Hares, Rabbits, and several other Creatures. As for Birds, there are infinite numbers of Turkeys, Partridges, Parrots, Pigeons, Turtles, Black-Birds, Herons, Storks, Cranes, Geese, Ducks, all Birds of Prey, and many others peculiar to *America*, the most beautiful in the World for delicate colour'd Feathers.

The Natives are generally of a large Stature, well shap'd and of an Olive Colour. They cover their Nakedness with Deer-Skins neatly fitted, the rest of their Bodies remaining naked; and therefore their Legs and Arms are adorn'd with many Figures, so printed that they will not wear out; their Hair black and long. For their Temper they are subtle, apt to dissemble, but bold and courageous, fighting with Bows and Arrows; which last they point with Fish-Bones, or sharp Stones. The Women are in all Respects like the

Men, and their Olive colour not natural, but caus'd by anointing with a Sort of Oil, which hardens their Skins against the Heat of the Sun. All their Corn is laid up in Common and distributed out to every Family, according to its Number, the whole Stock being so contriv'd as to serve but half the Year; tho' the Fruitfulness of the Soil would yield much more than they have occasion for; but they sow no more, and live the rest of the Year upon Roots, dry'd Fruit, Fish and Flesh, much of which they dry to keep, and are very fond of the Crocodils Flesh which is delicious and smells of Musk. The common Drink is Water, but they are never without a good Quantity of a Liquor they call *Cassia*, made of the Fruit of a Tree, and much valu'd, not only by them, but by the *Spaniards*, for provoking of Urine.

To come to the Sea Coast, we must pass over that of *Carolina*, before spoken of among the *English* Dominions, and begin at the River of *May* where that ends. Thence it runs South-west to Cape *S. Francis*, about 20 Leagues, in the midst of which Space is the River of *Dolphins*. At the Cape it turns away West, forming another Bay, 25 Leagues farther to the Town and Fort of *S. Mateo*, a small Place possess'd by the *Spaniards*, who about 15 Leagues to the Southward have another Town and Fort call'd *S. Augustin*, which two secure them the Possession of all this Coast, running down South as far as *Cabeza de la Martyres*, or Cape *Martyrs*, in 25 Degrees and a half, above 80 Leagues, where the only Places of Note are *Barra de Mosquitos*, and Cape *Cannaveral*, the first an Inlet of the Sea to the Land, the other a Head Land, without any Towns. From Cape *Martyrs* the Land stretches West about 20 Leagues, then North-west 120, in which Space are the small Bays of *Callos*, *Tampa*, and some other small ones. At the Height last mention'd, the Land winds again to South-west 45 Leagues, forming another large Bay; thence West to the Bay and River of the *Holy Ghost*, 80 Leagues more, and then inclines again to South-west, above 100 Leagues to the River of *Palms*, which parts it from the Province of *Panuco*. This is the Account we have of this Coast from all the *Spanish* and *French* Discoverers, who have been most upon it, whom we shall Name in the Relation of their Discoveries; but it is fit here to observe from *F. Hennepin*, that he places the Mouth of his great River *Meschassipi* or *Messissippi* in the last mention'd Part of the Coast of *Florida*, between the Bay of the *Holy Ghost* and the River of *S. Magdalen*, whence he with Reason infers, that it must be the same, which in our Maps is call'd *Rio Escondido*, or the hidden River, which seems probable, if his Position be true; but that all Geographers hitherto have made the *Rio Escondido* very small, in Comparison of that he describes, and therefore this Point will remain undecided till some better Information.

It remains to proceed to what can be found more particular among the Discoverers. The first of these was *John Ponce de Leon*, who after settling in the Island of *S. John de Puerto Rico*, being ambitious of finding some new Land, sailed from that Island in the Year 1512, with three Ships well provided for such an Undertaking, and directing his Course to the North-west, after passing by the *Lucayo* Islands, on the 3d of *April*, saw Land in 30 Degrees and 8 Minutes of North Latitude, and supposing it to be an Island, gave it



it the Name of *Florida*. that is Flowry, or Flourishing, both in Regard of its beautiful Prospect, as also because he discover'd it on *Easter-Day*, which the *Spaniards* call *Pasqua Florida*. Running on still farther they came to an Anchor in such a strong Current, that their Anchors would scarce hold them; yet there they Landed and erecting a great Cross, call'd the Place from it *Rio de la Cruz*, or the River of the Cross. On the 8th of *May* they pass'd *Cape Florida*, which they call'd *Cabo de Corrientes*, or *Cape Currents*, by Reason of the strong setting of the Water, and came to an Anchor under it, near the *Indian Village* of *Abasco*. Off it lie those small Islands, or Rocks, which because at a Distance they look like Men impal'd, he call'd, the *Martyrs*. Having thus run along this Coast North and North-east, he return'd the same way he came, after some Skirmishes with the Natives, to the Island of *S. John de Puerto Rico*, whence he had set out, believing the Land he had discover'd to be an Island.

*Lucas Vasquez de Aillon* sail'd next from *Hispaniola*, with a Design to take some *Indians* out of the Islands, to work in the Gold Mines, and whether by Chance, or designedly fell in upon the Coast of *Florida*, in 32 Degrees of North Latitude, at the Place then call'd *Chicora*, and since *S. Helena*, being a River in *Carolina*. The Inhabitants were amaz'd to see the Ships under Sail, and fled at the Landing of the *Spaniards*, but two of them being taken, were well treated and sent ashore cloath'd, which invited many of them to come down and show the *Spaniards* all they desir'd; but they having inveigled many Aboard, set Sail to carry them to the Mines. One of the Ships was cast away in its return, with most of the poor *Indians* carry'd away, and the others dy'd. Yet *Vasquez* return'd thither again, in Hopes of much Treasure of Gold and Silver, where entering the River of *S. Helena*, one of his Ships perish'd and 200 of his Men were kill'd ashore, which made him return home empty and despairing of any good Success there.

In the Year 1526, *Pamphilo Narvaez*, nothing daunted at the Disaster of *Lucas Vasquez*, and having obtain'd a Grant of the Emperor *Charles* the 5th, to be Governour of the Lands he could discover from the River of *Palms*, that divides this Country from *New Spain* to the farthest Parts of *Florida*, set Sail from the Port of *Xagua*, on the South Coast of *Cuba*, with 4 Ships and a Bark, in which he had 400 Men and 80 Horses. Of these last, the one half dy'd before he came to Land at *Cabo de la Cruz*. There hearing News of Gold at *Apalache*, he march'd that Way with 300 Men and 40 Horse by Land, ordering the Ships to Coast along. *Alvar Nunez Cabeza de Vaca*, the Treasurer, was against this Enterprize, but *Narvaez* being resolv'd, they travell'd 15 Days without finding any Inhabitants, or other Provisions, but *Palmitos*, tho' they took with them but two Pounds of Bisket and half a Pound of Bacon a Man. At the End they pass'd a River, on the other side whereof the *Indians* reliev'd and entertain'd them some Days, and then travell'd 15 Days more, without finding any Inhabitants; and lastly, came to *Apalache*, which Place they enter'd by Force, and found in it Store of *Indian* Wheat, Skins of Wild Beasts and Cotton Cloth. Here they continu'd 25 Days, and were several Times assaulted by the Natives, who still retir'd to the Woods and Marshes. Hence, by the Ad-

vice of a Cacique they had taken, they return'd to *Aute*, in about 32 Degrees of North Latitude; and after losing several Men, to the Sea, where having no News of their Ships, they contriv'd to build 5 Boats, making Sails of their Shirts, Vessels for Water of their Horses Hides, and Ropes of their Manes and Tails. In these they rang'd up and down several Days, till they were separated, and that which *Alvar Nunez* was in perish'd on an Island, where the Men stay'd as long as there was any thing to Eat. After which 15, who only remain'd, got over into *Florida*, ten of them dy'd traversing that vast piece of Continent, and only *Alvar Nunez*, and four more, arriv'd at last in *New Spain*, who gave this Account, for the other four Boats were never more heard of.

These Disasters made all Attempts upon *Florida* be laid aside for some Time, till in the Year 1538, *Ferdinand de Soto* obtain'd of the Emperour *Charles* the 5th another Grant for Discovering and Conquering of *Florida*, together with the Government of *Cuba*. To this purpose, he sail'd from *Havana* in *Cuba*, with 350 Horse, and 900 Foot, besides a considerable Number of Seamen, on the 12th of *May* 1539, and about the End of the same Month arriv'd in the Bay of *Espiritu Santo*, or the Holy Ghost, on the Southern Coast of *Florida*, lying upon the Gulph of *Mexico*. There he land-ed his Men, and had one *John Ortiz* sent him by the Cacique *Moscoso*, who had kept him, ever since the Misfortune of *Narvaez*, above-mention'd. Upon his Information, that the Country higher up was pleasant and fruitful, he sent away all his Ships, but four, to deprive his Men of all Hopes of returning. He left one *Calderon* with 40 Horse on the Coast, near the Ships, with Orders to give no Offence to the Natives, and then advanc'd North-North-east, through a Country full of Wild Vines, Mulberry, Cherry and other Sorts of Trees, and pass'd into a Province call'd *Acuera*, losing several Men in the Way, kill'd by the Natives, who took all Advantages against him. Thence he took due North and travelling 20 Leagues came to the Village of *Ocali*, of about 600 Cottages full of Grain and Nuts; Sixteen Leagues farther they came to the Province of *Vitatucho*, which extends 50 Leagues, and being past it arriv'd at *Offachile*, and thence to *Apalache*, the intended End of their Journey, where they stay'd some Days, sending one Party Northward and another Southward. The first of which found a pleasant fruitful Country and peaceable People; but the latter a barren Soil and little cultivated. It being now the Month of *October*, *Ferdinand de Soto* winter'd at *Apalache*, sending Advice of what he had done to *Cuba*. When the Season was proper, he advanc'd 5 Days march to the Northward to the Province *Atalpaha*, where he appeas'd the Salvages, and was then kindly receiv'd; and proceeding 10 Days Way farther through a fertile Land, arriv'd at the Territory of *Achalaquin*, which was barren, and ill peopled. Thence they came to the Province of *Cofachi* and that of *Cofachiqui*, where they gather'd a mighty Quantity of Pearls, and thence to that of *Xuala*. Here by Computation it was reckon'd they had travell'd 410 Leagues from the Place where they Landed. Having rested 15 Days at *Xuala*, they turn'd off to *Guazala*, then to *Ychiaba*, next to the Province of *Coza*, to *Talissa*, *Tascaluza*, *Manila*, *Cnicora*, *Chicacolla*, *Alibamo*, *Chisca*, *Capaha*, *Cijuna*, *Quignata*,



*Quiguala, Colima, Tala, Pirangua, Nahuoter, Guacharo, and Quigualonzi*, all which Places, are here only nam'd, because the Relation of *Soto's* Expedition gives no manner of Light for finding their Position. In the last of these Places, the Governour *Ferdinand de Soto* dy'd, when he had lost the one half of his Men on the Expedition, and left the Command of the Rest to *Lewis de Moscoso de Alvarado*. The *Spaniards* now much discourag'd with the Addition of the Governour's Death to all their other Losses, resolv'd to quit *Florida*; and in *November* came to that they call *Rio Grande*, or the Great River, on which they built 5 Boats, and Imbarking on them and some Canoes, ran down the River, being soon pursu'd by at least 5000 Canoes full of *Indians*, who pour'd in Clouds of Arrows upon them, and never ceas'd the Pursuit for ten Days, after which they forbore, and the *Spaniards* came the 19th Day after they embark'd into the Sea, reckoning that they had run down the River 800 Leagues, which some look upon as Fabulous, and yet make no Scruple to allow *Hennepin* the same Length upon his River *Meschasipi*, and yet we know not, whether this may not be the same, or supposing it to be another, with the Windings it may well be equal to it. Being come to the Sea, they directed their Course Westward, and at last enter'd the River of *Panuco*, whence they made their Way with Safety to the City of *Mexico*, about the End of the Year 1543.

The *Spaniards* deterr'd by these Misfortunes, forbore farther Attempts upon *Florida*, which the *French* next took up, and *John Ribault* in the Year 1562, with two Ships visit'd that Coast of *Florida*, which now we call *Carolina*, Anchoring 3 Leagues up *Port Royal*, and running up 12 Leagues farther in his Boats. Here, having made Peace with the Natives, he built a small Fort, in which he left 26 Men, under the Command of one *Albert*, and return'd to *France*. These Men were some Time maintain'd by the Natives, but their Provisions at length failing, and no Prospect appearing of any Relief from *France*, they built a Bark and shipp'd themselves in it, with what little Provision they had, and venturing to return Home, were reduc'd to such Extremity as to kill one of their Company to eat him; and being taken up in this Distress by an *English* Ship, some of them were Land'd on the Coast of *France*, and the rest carried into *England*.

*Rene Laudoniere*, was the next *French* Adventurer in the Year 1564, and arriv'd in *June* at *May River*; where the King of the Country, whom they call'd *Panacoussi*, met and show'd him the

Pillar erected by *Ribault*, and crown'd with the Laurel. In this Place he erected a Triangular Fort, which he call'd *Caroline*, and thence sent out to several Parts, where he was inform'd there was Gold and Silver, yet found very little, and at last wanting Provisions, committed much Rapine upon the Natives, to get as much as would carry him and his Men back to *France*. Whilst he was preparing for his Departure, Mr. *John Harkins* hapned to come upon the Coast, who sold him a Ship and Provisions to return Home. Just at this Time *John Ribault* arriv'd again with 7 Ships, 3 of which were sent up the River, and immediately 6 *Spanish* Ships came to an Anchor near the other 4, who finding themselves too weak to withstand that Force, cut their Cables and put out to Sea. The other 3 coming down the River again, follow'd them and were surpriz'd by a violent Storm, which wreck'd some of them on the Shore, whilst the *Spaniards* landing their Men, enter'd the Fort, and put all they found in it to the Sword, except *Laudoniere*, who escap'd to the Ships that had been sav'd, and got safe to *France*.

*Dominick Gourgues* took upon him next the Enterprize of *Florida*, and arriv'd at *May River*, with 3 Ships and 200 Men, in *August* 1567, and surprizing the *Spaniards*, put all to the Sword that could not make their Escape with the Governour; but thinking himself too weak to keep that Place, perswaded the *Indians* to demolish the Forts, and return'd himself safe with his Ships to *France*; since which Time the *French* have not made any considerable Attempt upon *Florida*.

Since then the *English* have possess'd themselves of all that Coast call'd *Carolina*, as has been show'd above, and the *Spaniards* observing how other Nations incroach upon their Discoveries, to secure what remains on that Eastern Coast, have there built the Town and Fort of *S. Augustin*, in about 29 Degrees and a half of North Latitude, and that of *S. Mateo*, a little Higher, which last was attempted by the *English*, in the Year 1705. and formally besieg'd, but they were oblig'd to desist with considerable Loss. These two are all the Places the *Spaniards* possess on that Coast; but on the South Coast which faces the Bay of *Mexico*, and where none have made Attempts upon them, till the late of *Monsr. de la Salle*, mention'd by *Hennepin*, they have the Towns of *Achalaque*, *Offachile*, *Hirritiqua*, *Colima*, and some others of less Note. In this Description of *Florida*, we have made use of *Herrera*, *Laet*, *Sanfon*, and the Particular Relations of all those Discoverers already mention'd.

## CHAP. VI.

### Of New MEXICO.

THIS most Northern Kingdom of the *Spanish* Dominions in *America*, is of so great an Extent, that they have not been able in near 200 Years since its first Discovery to find out the utmost Bounds of it; tho' we must not altogether assign its Greatness for the Reason of their making no farther Progress in it, but their having so much Employment in wealthier Countries, and its running so far to the North, that

little Profit is to be expected from what remains of it unknown, and the excessive Cold, which deterrs People born in a Hot Climate from pushing too far into frozen Regions. Yet is it wonderful that they who in less than 40 Years could Discover above 2000 Leagues in length from North to South, both Inland and Sea Coast, should not in near 200 Years more penetrate to the utmost Limits of this Kingdom. Whatever the Reason is,



we must leave that for others to decide, and come to what is known of it.

Its Borders on the North, we are still ignorant of, as has been said, nor can they be exactly ascertain'd on the East any farther than by saying it joins to *Canada* and *Florida*, whose Extent is not yet agreed on; Southward it joins to the Kingdom of *New Spain*, or *Old Mexico* and its Provinces of *New-Biscay*, *Culiacan*, and *Cinaloa*, and on the West that which the *Spaniards* call the *Red Sea*, and we the Streight of *California*, parts it from the Island of that Name. To assign it a certain Length and Breadth, after what has been said of our Ignorance as to its Boundaries, would be a Contradiction; however this may be said, that what has been discover'd extends 300 Leagues North from *New-Biscay*, and there is no less East and West from the Sea of *California*, toward *Florida* and *New-France*.

The particular Nations mention'd in the General Table of North *America*, are not distinguish'd from one another by any certain Limits, and the *Spaniards* have built but few Towns among them, the Natives since the first Conquest being Submissive, and become like Native *Spaniards*, and some of the remoter Parts living in perfect Amity, tho' not perhaps in entire Subjection to them, till we come to above 40 Degrees of North Latitude and 250 Leagues Eastward of the Sea of *California*, where there are still Nations unknown, and those there is any knowledge of are in Enmity with all *Europeans*. For these Reasons we shall not give any particular Table of Towns or Provinces, as in other Countries we have exact Information of, but proceed to the best Accounts we can find among the *Spanish* Travellers, as was done in *Florida*.

The best Description we have of this Country is from *F. Alonso de Benavides*, who printed it at *Madrid* in the Year 1630, and is to this Effect. The Metropolis of *New-Mexico*, call'd *Santa Fe*, or *S. Faith*, is in 37 Degrees of North Latitude. The way to it from *New-Biscay*, is through the Province of the *Conchos*, parted from *New-Biscay* by the River of the same Name. Next follow the *Tobosos*, *Tarrahumaxes*, *Tepoanes*, *Tomites*, *Sumas*, *Hanos*, and other Salvage Nations for an Hundred Leagues North and North-west, most of which were Salvage and Naked, and did the *Spaniards* much Harm before they were subdu'd. These hundred Leagues bring us to the North River, which is very Large, comes out of a Lake in the North-east, and after running above 250 Leagues South-west, falls into the Streight of *California*, in about 30 Degrees of North Latitude, and not into the Gulph of *Mexico*, as some Maps falsely represent it. From the *Hanos* above-mention'd, there are about 100 Leagues more to *New-Mexico*, properly so call'd; travelling Northward, a little to the East, through the Countries of the *Mansos* and *Gornetas*, who went quite naked, only the Women wearing Aprons of Deer-skins, and fed on raw Flesh, but are since civiliz'd and become Christians. Next follow the *Apaches*, a mighty Nation, of whom more anon. Here we again meet the North River, where *New-Mexico*, properly so call'd, commences and extends 100 Leagues Northward, from *S. Antony* of *Seneca*, the first Town of the *Biroras*, to the Town of *S. Jerome* in the Province of the *Tuoros*. *New-Mexico*, properly so call'd, contain'd several Nations, in this Order. At the North River begin the *Piros*, a civiliz'd People, clad, dwelling in Houses and Sub-

ject to their Chiefs, and have abundance of *Indian* Wheat, other Grain and Cotton, the Soil being fruitful and the Air wholesome. The chief Town here is call'd *Socorro*, that is, Relief; because here the first Discoverers being almost famish'd, found Plenty of Provisions. The *Tebas* are next, inhabiting 15 Towns, then the *Queres* 7, and next the *Tompires* 15, the Chief of them call'd *Chilili*. Farther Northward are the *Tanos*, in 5 Towns, and beyond them the *Peicis* in one great Town. Seven Leagues West of them is the Metropolis call'd *Santa Fe*, where at first only 250 *Spaniards*, not above 50 of them Soldiers, kept all this vast Country in awe, only by the Terror of their Name, but their Numbers are since vastly increas'd not only there, but in all the other Towns we mention. Besides, that all these Nations are become Christians, have quite forgot their Barbarity, and are become perfect *Spaniards*. Not far from thence towards the North River, from which we had stepp'd aside, live the *Teos* in 8 Villages, being the first that imbrac'd Christianity, and most passionate Lovers of the *Spaniards*. West of them are the *Hemes*, and to the North of these the *Picwies*, and beyond them the *Taosis*. Again West of the *Queres* is *Acoma*, a strong Town, on a Rock, and 30 Leagues West of them the *Zumis* in 12 Towns, and at the same Distance the *Moquis*, all of these now Christians; their Lands fruitful and abounding in Cattel and wild Beasts, as do their Rivers in excellent Fish. They have such an Art in Taming of Stags, that they make them draw Carts. The Summer is excessive hot and the Winter so cold, that the Rivers are Frozen over. All this Country of *New-Mexico* properly so call'd, is near encompass'd round with the numerous and warlike Nation of the *Apaches*, differing from all the other Natives in Language, living in Tents, without Houses, and removing up and down, and clad in Deer-Skins. They have many Wives, punishing Adultery by cutting off the Ears and Nose, are submissive to their Superiours, careful in instructing and punishing their Youth, which others do not, and some of them adore the Sun and Moon. The *Spaniards* distinguish them by several Names. Those next the *Pires* they call *Apaches del Perillo*, the next Northward of them, *Apaches de Xila*; the others still North of these *Apaches de Navajo*, the Extent of whose Country is not known; and lastly those on the East *Apaches Vaqueros*, or Cowherds, because they have great Numbers of a sort of Cows, that have large Bunches on their Backs. Passing on 112 Leagues through the Country of these last we come to the *Xumonas*, *Xapies* and *Xabotoas*, near whom, on the East are the *Aixais*, and the Province of *Quivira*; from which to the Bay of *Espiritu Santo*, in *Florida*, the *Spaniards*, who have travell'd it reckon but 100 Leagues. This shews that either *Hennepin* is much deceiv'd in making the *Rio Escondido*, or hidden River, to be the same with his *Meschasipi*, that River lying between the Bay of *Espiritu Santo* & *Quivira*, or else that he imposes upon the World in pretending the Natives along it knew nothing of the *Spaniards*, or that these were unacquainted with that mighty River. Besides, be the *Meschasipi* where it will, the *Spaniards*, who have travell'd all *Florida* from East to West, could not be ignorant of so great a Stream. But these are not all the Improbabilities in his Account, and it is not our Business now to pursue them.



This Description is chiefly taken, as was said at first from *F. Alonso de Benavides*, with only some small Additions from others, who travell'd there as well as he, and some later Accounts, about the Improvement of that Conquest, some whereof may be seen in *Laet*, some in *Herrera*, and others since them. To come now to the Discoverers, *F. Mark de Niza*, a *Franciscan*, with only his Companion, a Black, and some *Indians* that spoke *Spanish*, set out from the Province of *Culiacan*, in *New-Spain*, in the Year 1529, and travell'd 60 Leagues, keeping towards the Sea to *Petatlan*, every where civilly entertain'd by the Natives, and advanc'd 30 Leagues farther on the Coast, without meeting any thing remarkable. Then crossing a Desert of four Days Journey, he came into a Country, whose Natives receiv'd him with much Respect and Admiration, and proceeding four Days farther, through their Territories arriv'd at *Vaceya*, 40 Leagues from the Sea. Having sent the Black before him to the Northward, he here receiv'd a Message from him, with a mighty Account of *Cibola*, which was 30 Days Journey from him, and in it three great Kingdoms call'd *Marua*, *Acus* and *Tomeo*; in the last of which the *Indians* said there was Woollen Cloth made. He was inform'd that in *Cibola* there were 7 great Cities, the Houses all of Lime and Stone, and many other Things which had not been seen in those Parts. Some of those, who had been sent before with the Black return'd and reported that he and the rest had been kill'd by the People of *Cibola*, whereupon the *Indians* with *F. Mark* refus'd to proceed any farther; yet he reported he did himself, and having seen a great City at a Distance, return'd to his Company, and with them to *New-Spain*.

This Relation caus'd *Don Antonio de Mendoza*, Viceroy of *Mexico*, to order *Francis Vasquez de Coronado*, Governour of *New-Galicia*, to take a Progress into those Countries. Accordingly he set out with 150 Horse, 200 Foot, some Field-Pieces, and abundance of Provisions, in April 1540, and traversing those Parts *F. Mark de Niza* had describ'd, came into the Province of *Tucayan*, five Days Journey from *Cibola*, where he found 7 populous Towns, which might pass for the 7 Cities *F. Mark* spoke of. All the Way as far as *Cibola*, all the Rivers run to the Westward, and doubtless fall into the South Sea. Thence they proceeded to the River *Huex*, on whose Banks there are 15 Towns in the space of 20 Leagues. After being some Days maliciously misled by an *Indian* that was their Guide, and set right by another, *Vasquez* left the rest of his Company behind, and with only 39 Horse travell'd 30 Days directly North till he came to a little River, which he call'd *S. Peter and S. Paul*, whence taking 2 Com-pas to *Quivira*, and to the Company he had left behind, he made his Way home again, much dissatisfy'd, for that he had found Nothing of what he came to look for. The seven Cities of *Cibola*, which he saw, and gives the Vice-roy an Account of, were nothing like what *F. Mark* had represented, but only 7 small Towns, yet the Houses, he says, were three or four Stories high, with Cellars under Ground, against the excessive cold. The Towns are about 4 Leagues distant from one another, some bigger than others. The Inhabitants proper well-shap'd Men, who cover their Nakedness slightly, and wear Cloaks of several Colours. The Country is very Cold, most Plain, with some few Mountains. *Tomeo*, which *F. Mark*

took for a Kingdom is only a Lake; All *Spanish* Authors agree, that *Quivira* is in 40 Degrees of North Latitude.

After *Vasquez*; *F. Augustin Ruiz*, a *Franciscan*, travell'd about 250 Leagues directly North from the Province of the Mines of *S. Barbara*, in *New-Biscay* to the Province of the *Tiguas*, where a Frier being kill'd by the Natives, some Soldiers that had attended them return'd home, but *F. Augustin* venturing to proceed farther, was never heard of. The Report of those who came back mov'd *Antony de Espejo* to undertake an Expedition that Way with an Hundred Horses and Mules, a good Number of Men and all Necessaries. He pass'd the *Conchos*, *Passaguates*, *Tobosos*, *Jumanes*, or *Patarabuyes*; which last has good Houses built of Stone. Thence they pass'd into the Province of *New-Mexico*, properly so call'd, where they were kindly receiv'd in good Towns, where the Houses were Large, four Stories high, and well fenc'd against the Cold. The Natives were all clad in Cotton and Skins of Beasts, and what was not usual in the adjacent Parts, wore Shooes and Boots made of the Skins of Wild Beasts, and of Neats-Leather. The Womens Hair was curiously comb'd and platted; but they had no other Thing on their Heads. Every Town had a King, and abundance of Idols, which they worshipp'd as well in Publick, as in their Houses. The Country is Mountainous and Woody, but well cultivated. After resting here four Days, they proceeded to the Province of the *Tiguas*, and upon the Report of some rich Countries Eastward, the Commander, with only two Men went two Days farther to a Province, in which there were eleven Towns, which having view'd, he return'd to his Company and they all march'd together to the *Queres*, above-mention'd, and through the *Cumames* to *Zumi*, or *Cibola*, where *Vasquez*, before spoken of, had been. Here *Espejo* found three *Spaniards* left behind in that Expedition, who gave him an Account of a rich Country 60 Days Journey from thence, and the Company being unwilling to venture so far, he with only 9 Men set out that way, and at 20 Leagues distance Westward came to a Province, where he was courteously receiv'd, and presented him with 40000 Cotton Cloaks and other Things, which he sent away with 5 of his Men and some *Indians*, and ventur'd to proceed himself with the other four, and travelling 45 Leagues found the Silver Mine he had been told of, being a very rich Vein, on a Mountain of easy Access, and the Natives about it Courteous and good natur'd. Having made this Discovery he return'd to his Company at *Cibola*, and thence, after some small Excursions to *New-Biscay*.

In 1599, *Don John de Onate* set out from *Mexico*, with 5000 Persons of both Sexes and all Ages, abundance of Cattle and all other Necessaries, and subduing all those Nations lying directly Northward, which have been already mention'd, took the strong City of *Acoma* by Force, and laid it level with the Ground. Two other great Cities submitted to him, and he resolving to keep what he had gain'd, built a new Town and call'd it *S. John's*, where he discover'd rich Silver Mines. In 1602. he undertook another Expedition this Way, and passing beyond the North River, found the great Lake of *Conibas*, on the Banks whereof was a vast City 7 Leagues long and 2 in breadth, and full of stately Structures, but all of them parted from one another by small Woods, Garden-



dens, and sometimes Ditches. The Natives being all here gather'd in the Market-Place to defend themselves, the Commander did not think fit then to Attack them. From this Time the Spaniards continu'd to undertake new Expeditions into all Parts of this Country, till they

entirely subdu'd it, and are now extended to almost 45 Degrees of North Latitude. This shews, as was hinted before, that *Hennepin* magnifies his Discovery, and so does *La Hontan*; all the Western Parts they pretend to have found out, being long before known to the Spaniards.

CHAP. VII.

Of the Kingdom of NEW-SPAIN, divided into three Governments, viz. GUADALAJARA, MEXICO, and GUATIMALA; and first of that of GUADALAJARA.



IT is to be observ'd, that as we divide *America* into the North and South, so the Spaniards, make only two Viceroyships of all their vast Dominions in those Parts, all the other Governments being subordinate to them. These are the Viceroyships of *Mexico* or *New-Spain* in the North, and *Peru* in the South. The first of these which we are here to speak of, comprehends all we have spoken of in the North, and thence down to the Streight, or Isthmus of *Panama*

What has been describ'd needs no Repetition, we come now to that, which is perfectly known and entirely subdu'd, being the Provinces, from *New-Mexico* and *Florida*, on the North, to the afore-said Isthmus of *Panama*. This, tho' under the Inspection of the Viceroy, is divided into three Districts, or Governments, call'd *Audiencias*, that is, Sovereign Courts, which decide all Matters whatsoever, whether Civil or Criminal, and this is done for the Ease of the People, who else would be



be oblig'd to repair to the City of *Mexico* from the remotest Parts upon all Suits; whereas by this Means they have Sovereign Courts to decide all Controversies, and direct all Affairs relating to the Government, within a Reasonable Distance. The three Districts, Courts, or Governments are those of *Guadalajara*, *Mexico*, and *Guatemala*, of the first whereof only we are to speak in this Chapter.

This *Audiencia*, District, or Sovereign Court of *Guadalajara*, is the most Northern of the three, bordering Northward on the Kingdom of *New-Mexico*; on the East it lies along Part of *Florida*, and the Province of *Panuco*, belonging to the

Cinaloa.	{ S. Juan.
	{ S. Felipe, y Santiago.
	{ Culiacan.
Culiacan.	{ Macoa.
	{ S. Miguel.
	{ Quinola.
New-Biscay.	{ Santa Barbara.
	{ S. Juan.
	{ Endebe.
	{ Zacatecas.
	{ Xeres de la Fuente.
Zacatecas.	{ Ellerenz.
	{ Nombre de Dios.
	{ Durango.
	{ S. Martin.

#### Cinaloa,

The most Northern Province of this Government, and stretching out farthest to the West, as the Gulph of *California* on this and part of the South side, the Prov. of *Culiacan* on the other Southern side, and the Kingdom of *New-Mexico* on the East and North. Its Situation is between the 27th and the 30th Degrees of North Latitude, and the Length North-west and South-east about 100 Leagues, the greatest Breadth not 40, and much less in other Parts.

On the East side it is bounded by a Ridge of high and craggy Mountains, call'd *Tepecum*. Across it run several small Rivers, along whose Banks the Natives live in Villages, for the Conveniency of Fishing. The Air is serene and wholesome, and the Soil fertile, bearing all sorts of Fruit and Grain, particularly *Indian* Wheat, as also Cotton, wherewith the Natives cloath'd themselves after the *Mexican* Fashion, both Sexes wearing very long Hair, being a tall, lusty, and warlike People, formerly using Bows and poison'd Arrows, as also Clubs of a very hard Wood, and Bucklers of Red-Wood. The *Spaniards* found much Difficulty in subduing them, but they have been long since brought under and converted.

The first Town the *Spaniards* built here was call'd *S. Juan*, or *S. John of Cinaloa*, on a small River, that runs into the Gulph of *California*, which went to Ruin, and was again restor'd by *Francis de Herrera*, in the Year 1554; yet the Difficulties they met with had almost destroy'd this second Colony, but that it was supported by constant Supplies from *Culiacan*. After the settling of this Town they founded another, nearer to the Borders of *Culiacan*, by the Name of *S. Philip* and *Jacob*; of both which there is not any Thing particular to say, nor are there any others of Note but small open Places, like Villages all inhabited by the Natives. The Substance

Government of *Mexico*; on the South of it is *Mechoacan*, another Province of the same Government; and on the West the South Sea and Gulph of *California*. The greatest Extent of it along the Sea Coast, North west and South-east, is above 200 Leagues; from East to West, in the largest Place it stretches not much less, but the Northern Part, which is the whole Province of *Cinaloa*, is very narrow, and from the South Part of *New-Biscay* it narrows again apace, the Shape of it being very irregular up the Inland, and the Coast forming a Bow. The Provinces it is divided into, with their Principal Towns, stand thus:

	{ S. Sebastian.
Chiametlan.	{ Chiametlan.
	{ Aguacarana.
	{ Xalisco.
Xalisco.	{ Purificacion.
	{ Compostela.
	{ Guadalajara.
	{ Espiritu Santo.
	{ Guanaxatlan.
	{ S. Maria de los Lagos.
Guadalajara.	{ Zaporaco.
	{ Centiniquaque.
	{ Guacumota.
	{ Nochistan.
	{ Miskeytan.
	{ Tazazatlan.

of which Account we have from *F. Martin Perez*, a *Jesuite*, the rest from *Herrera*, *Sanfon*, &c.

*Nuno de Guzman* discover'd this Province in the Year 1532, and found 25 very Populous Towns, in which he was oblig'd to stay 42 Days, by reason of the continual Rains; being maintain'd with all his Men; during that Time by the Natives upon Venison and Fowl, till they growing weary of their Guests, fled into the adjacent Woods and Mountains. Being thus forsaken, they travell'd to the Southward, through a very desert Country, in which they often suffer'd much for Want of Water and Provisions. This and the Difficulty of passing the Mountains towards the Inland, as also the Thickness of the Woods on the Sea Coast, oblig'd them to return to *Culiacan*.

#### Culiacan

Joins next on the South-east to *Cinaloa*, which is its Northern Boundary, with some little Skirt of the *Conchos*; on the East is *New-Biscay*, and the *Zacatecas*; on the South *Chiametlan*, and on the West the Gulph of *California*, its Situation being between 24 and 28 Degrees of North Latitude; the Length about 60 Leagues, and the Breadth 50, being near an oblong Square.

*Nuno de Guzman* above mention'd, discover'd this as well as the last Province, and subdu'd it, in the Year 1531. He found the Houses here different in their Way of Building from all other Parts, and in the Corners of them Heaps of Snakes, stretching out their Heads, and gaping if any Body came near them, but without doing any Harm. These the Natives worship'd, because the Devil us'd to appear to them in that Shape, however they handled, and sometimes fed upon them. The Women were handsome, and there being great Plenty of Cotton, both they and the Men were clad in it. Most of the Towns or Villages were Desert, the Inhabitants being fled. At length he came to a River, where he saw a great Multitude



Multitude of Women, and therefore he call'd it *Rio de las Mujeres*, or the Women's River, which gave Occasion to the Fable of *Amazons* living in that Country. Here were very thick Woods, where the People had their Villages and often encounter'd the *Spaniards*, killing many of them. When they had travers'd the whole Province and found nothing in it of Value, being much streighten'd for Provisions, they return'd to *Chiametlan*. *Nunc de Guzman* having thus taken a View of the Country, gather'd a Number of People and Cattle, and built a Town, which he call'd *S. Michael*. on the River he had nam'd *de las Mujeres*, or of Women, in 25 Degrees of North Latitude; but it was afterwards remov'd some Leagues from thence, and two from the Sea, to a Valley call'd *Horana*, because it abounds in Pasture and all Sorts of Fruit. This is 80 Leagues from *Compostela*, in the Province of *Xalisco*. In Process of Time the Number of *Spaniards* increasing, they built another Town, North of the last, and from the Province call'd it *Culnacan*, and after that some others of less Note, among which the Principal are *Macoa* and *Quinola*. This from *Herrera*.

### New-Biscay

Has the last spoken of Province of *Culnacan*, for its Western Boundary, the Kingdom of *New-Mexico* on the North, *Florida* on the East, and the *Zacatecas* with Part of *Panuco* on the South, lies between 24 and 28 Degrees of North Latitude, and is about 140 Leagues in Length, from East to West, and 50 in Breadth from North to South.

Most of this Country is Pleasant and abounding in all Sorts of Provisions, its Position a little above the Tropick of *Cancer* making it temperate, and the Waters that run through it fertilizing the Land. However towards the North-east Part of it there is a District, call'd *Topia*, which is for the most part Mountainous almost inaccessible, and by Reason of their Height excessive Cold, which Territory is of little or no value. In the other better Part there are three *Spanish* Towns, *Endebe* the most Western, then *S. John* to the East, and *S. Barbara* South of that. All three of them have considerable Silver Mines, which draw People to them, and therefore they are well inhabited; but particularly the last, which is extraordinary rich, the Veins proving inferiour to few of the rest, so that their Product is of great Value, and occasions a considerable Resort. These are the Mines *Hennepin* tells us, *Monsieur de la Salle* arriv'd at, when under Pretence of seeking the Mouth of the River *Missipi*, he rang'd on the Coast of *Florida*.

*Francis de Ybarra*, after settling the New Town of *Durango*, in the Province of the *Zacatecas*, march'd into this Province, before any other had discover'd it, with 130 Men, and first found the Mines of *Ladene* and *S. John*. Not so satisfy'd, he left the rest of his Men behind, and advanc'd with only 30 to the Mountainous barren Part call'd *Topia*, where they suffer'd the utmost Extremities of Cold and Hunger; besides all the Difficulties in climbing those steep craggy Mountains, where several Men and Horses perill'd. This oblig'd them to take a Compass about through the Province of *Coahuila*, for an easier Road, and being return'd, he carry'd Colonies to the Mines, and fortify'd them against any Attempts of the

Natives, which still continue and are very wealthy; but besides these three Towns, there are no others of any Note in the Province, which is entirely subdu'd and Christian. Lact out of the best *Spanish* Authors.

### Zacatecas.

This is the next Province to *New-Biscay*, which borders on it Northward, as does *Panuco* on the East, *Mechoacan*, *Guadalajara*, and *Chiametlan* on the South, and the same *Chiametlan* and *Culnacan* on the West. A small Part of it reaches into the Torrid-Zone, the rest in the Temperate, as being seated between 23 and 27 Degrees of North Latitude; its Length from East to West about 100 Leagues, the greatest Breadth from North to South between *Durango* and *Xeres* 45 Leagues, and much less in all other Parts.

The Inhabiting of this Province is owing to its rich Mines, which are many and considerable, for in all other respects it is of no Value, as wanting Water, and producing no sort of Corn, or scarce any other Provision. However the Treasure has drawn People to it, so that there are in it 3 wall'd, and 4 or 5 open *Spanish* Towns, besides others of the Natives, and many Villages. The Principal bears the Name of the Province, and is about 40 Leagues North from the great City of *Guadalajara*, and so North West from the greater of *Mexico*, inhabited by many *Spanish* Families, and has several Churches and Monasteries. 27 Leagues to the North West stands the Town of *S. Martin*, little inferior to the former. In the same Way about 25 Leagues from *Zacatecas* is that of *Ellerena*, and North from this is *Nombre de Dios*, as *Durango* is to the North West of the last, and *Xeres* the most Southern of the Province. At all these Places there are Mines, besides others at *Avino*, *S. Lucas*, *Sombreta*, *los Ranchos*, *los Chalenites*, *las Nieves*, and *el Frenillo*, on all which there are open Towns.

*Francis de Ybarra*, already spoken of, discover'd and subdu'd all this Province, and settled most of the Colonies, tho' not without great Opposition from the Natives, and after them from their barbarous Neighbours the *Chickimetas*, of whom we shall speak hereafter, and the *Guachachiles*, who infested the Roads from *Guadalajara* to *Zacatecas*, till they were finally brought under by the *Marques de Villa Manrique*, Viceroy of *New-Spain*, since when they have been divided into 104 Tribes, which the *Spaniards* call *Repartimientos*, that is, Divisions, and live in entire subjection and Christianity, without knowing any thing of the Rudeness or Idolatry of their Fore-fathers.

### Chiametlan

Is a small Maritime Province, having the last mention'd of the *Zacatecas* on the East, *Guadalajara* on the South, the South Sea on the West, and *Culnacan* on the North; seated under the Tropick, the one half in the Temperate, and the other in the Torrid Zone, about 20 Leagues in Length from North to South, and near the same in Breadth from East to West in the largest Places.

The Soil of it is fruitful, and it yields much Wax and Honey, besides very good Silver Mines. Captain *Francis de Ybarra*, the same above-mention'd,



tion'd, led the first Colony thither, in the Year 1554, which he call'd *S. Sebastian*, and from him the Province has by some been nam'd of *Tbarra*. At his coming he found the Natives arm'd with Bows and Arrows, Clubs and Bucklers, which last were made of small Sticks strongly bound together. The Women were handsome, and clad from Head to Foot; the Men wore short Coats, and Shooes made of Bucks-skins. All their Luggage they carry'd on a Stick upon their Shoulder, thinking it mean to carry any thing under their Arms. When they went not to the Wars, they spent all their time in Hunting. They had many Idols, and made no scruple of eating Man's Flesh, indulging themselves in many Vices. Since the Light of the Gospel has shone among them, they have forsaken their inhuman Customs, and are become civiliz'd. Besides the Town of *S. Sebastian* above-mention'd, here are those of *Chiametlan*, so call'd from the Province it self, and *Aguacera*. Authors *Herrera*, *Gomara*, and *Sanson*.

#### Xalisco,

Tho' here mention'd next to *Chiametlan*, is separated from it by a narrow slip of Land, belonging to the Province of *Guadalajara*, and running out to the Sea, which is its Northern Boundary, as the same Province, and that of *Michoacan* are the Eastern, the South Sea washing both the South and West sides; its Situation being within the Torrid Zone, between the 19th and 22d Degrees of North Latitude, and the extent small, as not exceeding 50 Leagues any Way.

It produces abundance of *Indian* Wheat, but has very little Cattel of any sort. The principal Town is call'd *Compostela*, seated between one and two and twenty Degrees of North Latitude, and built by *Nuno de Guzman*, the Conquerour of the Province, in the Year 1531, on the Bank of a River, so barren that there is no Pasture for Cattel, nor any Necessaries for building of Houses; besides that the Air being extremely hot and moist, breeds infinite Insects, which shews that this Place was not well chosen. On the other Southern Extremity stands the Town call'd the *Purification*, at the Sea side, and that of *Xalisco* from the Province it self, up the Inland between them both. From this Province, *Monardes* says, is brought the Oil the *Spaniards* call of the *Infernal* Fig-tree, which has many excellent Qualities, being good against all cold Humours, for dissolving of Tumours, and expelling Wind, anointing the Belly, and taking a few Drops inwardly in Wine; as also by Clyster. It is also of excellent use for Ulcers in the Head, and Deafness; its Nature hot in the beginning of the 3d Degree, and moist in the second. *Herrera*, *Monardes*, and *Laet*.

#### Guadalajara,

The principal Province of this *Audiencia*, or District, and giving its Name to the whole, is limited on the East and South by the Province of *Mechoacan*; on the West by *Xalisco*, and on the North by the *Zacatecas*; only one narrow slip of it running out to the South Sea between *Xalisco* and *Chiametlan*; its Situation being just within the Torrid Zone, from 20 to 23 Degrees Latitude, nor above 50 Leagues over any way.

Notwithstanding its being in the Torrid Zone scarce any other Province is more temperate or fertile, producing *European* and *Indian* Wheat in great Plenty, and all Fruits of both these Kinds, besides the mighty Treasure of Silver continually taken out of its Mines.

The City of *Guadalajara*, built by *Nuno de Guzman*, in the Year 1531, in about 22 Degree Latitude, gave its Name to all this Province and Government, and took it from another so call'd in *Spain*. It is 87 Leagues North-west from *Mexico*. The Natives call'd the Territory of this City formerly *Molino*, and it is a large Plain near a good River, and water'd by several Brooks and Springs, which cause it to produce great store of Grain, and no less plenty of Grass, the Neighbouring Mountains furnishing all Necessaries for building of Houses. The Air is neither excessive hot nor cold, but wholesome, and breeds very few Insects. Four Leagues from it towards the *Zacatecas* is a very high Mountain, so steep that no Beasts of Burden can climb it, and it is a full League to the top; all the other Mountains about are craggy, and wooded, full of large Pines and Oaks. The City being the Metropolis of all these Provinces, is very large, populous, and curiously built, and the Residence of the Sovereign Court for all this District; besides that it is a Bishop's See, and consequently has a stately Cathedral, and several Parish-Churches, and Monasteries.

The next Town of Note is call'd *Espiritu Santo*, built by the same *Nuno de Guzman*, in a Part of the Province formerly call'd *Tepique*. The 3d is *Santa Maria de los Lagos*, founded by the same Man to the Eastward of *Guadalajara*, to curb the then salvage *Chichimecas*, who rang'd about the North and East Parts. *Centiquipaque* is an inconsiderable Maritime Town, on the Shore of that narrow Slip we said above, extended to the Sea. *Guaxacatlan*, *Zapozaco*, and the others mention'd in the Table, are open Places, of which nothing more can be added.

The greatest River here some call *Barania*, and others *Esquitlan*, proceeding from the Lake of *Mechoacan*, where it drives a rapid Stream towards the North-west, and four Leagues from the City of *Guadalajara* falls from a great height, whence it hastes into the South Sea, which it enters betwixt *Xalisco* and *Chiametlan*. It is no where fordable, but us'd formerly to be cross'd on Floats made of Calabashes and Canes, on which the Men sat with their Goods, and held their Horses in the Water, whilst the *Indians* swimming, drew all over, not without great Danger, but the *Spaniards* have made all conveniences of Boats.

The Natives were formerly like their Neighbours, large of Body, cloath'd in Cotton, lying upon Mats, and such lovers of Dancing to a little scurvy sort of Drums, that they would spend whole Days at that Folly. They are now all brought to live in Towns, and have their own Lords, Judges, and other Magistrates and Officers, after the *Spanish* manner; the Race of their ancient petty Kings still hold a Sovereignty over them, but other Officers are appointed by the *Spanish* Governours.

The *Cizcacos* were formerly a distinct Nation, living towards the Frontiers of the *Zacatecas*, and differ'd from the other Natives of this Province in their Language, and some Customs; the



the *Guachachiles* had also a particular Tongue; and the *Guameres* were not understood by the rest; but the bringing of them to live together in Towns, and a constant Interchange, which before were wanting, has now mollified their uncouth Geni's, brought them all to speak one Language, and Christianity has banish'd all their Heathen Barbarities, yet the prevailing Vice among them is observ'd to be Stealing.

The better sort of *Spaniards* here live by Trade, and are Masters of the rich Silver Mines; others follow grazing, and some apply themselves to Tillage. Tho' this Soil produces abundance of Sugar-Canes, yet no Body regards them, no

more than they do whole Woods of the *Tuna*; which is the Tree that breeds the *Cochineal*, from which a vast quantity might be gather'd, did they take the Pains to look after, and cultivate the Trees, but it seems their other Employments turn to better Account. They every where make use of Carts and Waggon's drawn by Oxen, Horses, and Mules, and their Weights and Measures are the same as in *Spain*. The Towns us'd to be Palisado'd about to defend them against the Natives, who being entirely subdued, that Precaution ceases. Authors, *Herrera*, *Oviedo*, *Gomara*, and *Sanfon*.

## CHAP. VIII.

### Of the Provinces subject to the AUDIENCIA, or the Sovereign Court of MEXICO.

THIS District, or Part of *America* we are here to speak of, is such as would require a greater Volume than this to be describ'd as it deserves, it shall therefore be our Care to insert as much as may be in the Compass allow'd us. Its Situation is almost all under the Torrid Zone, only a Slip of *Mechoacan*, and a Part of *Panuco* being on this side of the Tropick, the whole lying between 25 and 14 Degrees of North Latitude, the Northern side bordering on *New-Mexico* and *Florida*, and all the rest encompass'd by the North and South Seas, except only that small Part of the South-west which joins the Provinces of *Chiapa* and *Sacomisco* of the Government of *Guatemala*. The Figure is so irregular, that it is hard to assign the Extent, but between the two remotest Points of *Panuco* and *Mechoacan*, North-east and South-west, where the greatest solid Breadth is, we find above 200 Leagues from Sea to Sea, from the Northern Part of *Mechoacan* to the Province of *Chiapa* North-west and South-east much the same Distance; but then across the Province of *Guanaxaca* from Sea to Sea scarce 60 Leagues; but these Dimensions wholly exclude the large Province of *Yucatan*, because it is a Peninsula running out into the Sea above an hundred Leagues in Length, and only join'd to the Continent by a narrow Isthmus of less than 20 Leagues. I cannot give a better Account of this Country than what *Joseph de Acofta* does of *New-Spain* in general, of which this is the principal Part, and this Author speaks not by hearsay, but as an Eye-witness, it is to this effect.

*New-Spain* surpasses all the rest of *America* in fruitful Plains and Meadows, which is the Reason it has an infinite number of Horses, Kine, and other sorts of Cattel. It abounds in all sorts of Fruit, Grain, and whatever is necessary for the support of Human Life. Only *Panuco* exceeds it in Wine, because the Rains in

*July* and *August* spoil the Grapes, and what little Wine they make is small and sharp. The Air is serene from the beginning of *November* till *April*, when the Sun is farthest off, for when it draws near, the Rains fall so heavy, that most Rivers overflow. They Sow and Reap twice a Year, and most Parts abound in Silver Mines, but there are few of Gold.

*Francis Ximenes* gives a particular Relation of the excellent Gums, Aromatick Liquors, and other Medicinal Product, as the *Liquid Amber*, as sweet as *Storax*, and of great use in Physick against Head-aches, Pains in the Stomach, Vapors, and Convulsions; the *Copal*, whereof he reckons eight several sorts, and all very Medicinal; the Balsam, not inferior to that of *Gilead*, and many more well deserving to be mention'd, but that we must not run too far into Natural History, no more than in describing the great variety of Fruit-Trees, Herbs, and Flowers this and other Authors treat of.

Being to speak of each Province in particular, the shorter general Account may serve turn, and therefore nothing shall be here said of the Natives reserving it to its proper Place, and so of every thing else that may be expected in this Description. But it is fit to observe here, that in the Division we are about to make, we follow that which is now settled, and in use among the *Spaniards*, as Masters of all these Dominions, for it were endless to follow all the small Divisions there were among the ancient Inhabitants, every great Town in some Parts being reckon'd a several Nation; besides that it is most proper to represent the Country as it is at present, yet so that Mention shall be made of those many Nations, Tribes, or petty Governments that were in each of these Provinces, which we shall begin to treat of in the North, and so descend to the Southward, according to which Method they stand thus:



Panuco.	{	Panuco.	Mexico.	{	Acapulco.
		Santiago de los Valles.			Chalco.
		S. Luis de Tampico.			Chiautla.
		Tanculabo.			
		Escalapa.			Puebla de los Angeles.
Mechoacan.	{	Tancacana.	Tlascala.	{	Tlascala.
		Tancuio.			Villa rica.
		Tamoco.			Vera Cruz.
					S. Juan de Ulva.
					Segura.
Mexico.	{	Mechoacan.	Guaxaca.	{	Puebla.
		Valladolid.			Capotitlan.
		S. Miguel.			Matlatlan.
		Concepcion de Salaya.			Caceres.
		S. Felipe.			Torre Blanca.
Mexico.	{	Leon.	Tabasco.	{	Antequeria.
		Zamora.			S. Ildefonso de los Zapatecas.
		Villa de Lagos.			Santiago.
		Colima.			Espiritu Santo.
		Zacatula.			Aguatulco.
Mexico.	{		Yucatan.	{	Taculula.
		Mexico.			
		Chulula.			Merida.
		Tezcuco.			Valladolid.
		Quintanara.			S. Francisco de Campeche.
Mexico.	{	Tzacpalapa.	Yucatan.	{	Salamanca.
		Mexicaltzingo.			Conil.
		Cuyocan.			
		Guatulan.			
		Suchimilco.			
Mexico.	{	Queretaro.			
		S. Juan.			

## Panuco.

The most Northern Province of the Government, subject to the supreme Court of Mexico, has the Gulph of Mexico on the East. Florida on the North, the Zacatecas and Mechoacan on the West, and the Provinces of Mexico and Tlascala on the South. It is under the Tropick of Cancer, part in the Temperate, and part in the Torrid Zone, being about 5 Leagues in length, and no less in breadth. All of it that lies next to Mexico is the best and richest, abounding in Provisions, and yielding some Gold; but the other Part adjoining to Florida is wretched, poor, and barren.

The principal Spanish Towns here are three; the first Panuco, otherwise call'd Santistevan del Puerto, built by Gonzalo de Sandoval, in about 23 Degrees of North Latitude, by Order of the Marquis Don Ferdinand Cortez, in the Year 1520, seated 65 Leagues North-east from Mexico, and 8 from the Sea, on a River, whose Mouth makes a Harbour. The next is Santiago de los Valles, 25 Leagues West from Panuco, the third S. Luis de Tampico, 8 Leagues North-east from Panuco, on the Sea Coast. There are several Rivers and Anchoring Places along the Coast of this County up to the River of Palms, but none of them worth noting, or ever resorted to, except Panuco River and Port, which is none of the best. Thus much Herrera, the most solid Author, gives us of Panuco.

Colton in Hackling's Collection tells us, that travelling to this Country from Mexico, he came out of that Province into that of Guastela, which is the Southern Part of Panuco, the first Town whereof was Tanculabo, where the Natives paint-

ed themselves Blue, and had Hair down to their Knees, but we cannot rely upon the Stories of these rambling Travellers of no Reputation, since the Spaniards, who live in those Countries, mention no such monstrous Hair. It will therefore be needless to spend more time upon his frivolous Relation, but to proceed from this Province to another more considerable.

## Mechoacan

Follows, as the next Northern Province, bounded on the North by the Provinces of Zacatecas, and Guadaluara, on the West by that of Jalisco, and the South Sea, on the South by the same Sea and Mexico, and on the East by that same Province and Panuco. Along the Sea it extends 80 Leagues, and more in length up the Land. The Name in the Mexican Tongue signifies a Place abounding in Fish, and there were several Nations inhabited it, as we shall mention.

The Temperature of the Air differs much, some Parts being hotter, and others colder, according to their higher or lower Situation, or their being more or less expos'd to hot or cold Winds, which things alter the Weather there more than many Degrees difference of Latitude, yet in general it is pleasant, and so healthy, that many resort thither from other Parts to recover from Diseases. Here are abundance of Lakes, Rivers, and Springs, which are the occasion of feeding infinite numbers of fat Cattle; besides several Degrees of hot Medicinal Waters. This abundance of Water occasions such wonderful fertility, that the Ground has been known to yield above an hundred for one, producing all sorts of Fruit and Grain, and exceeding most others in excellent Pasture.



But besides these things common to *Europe*, it has several noble Trees, unknown in our Parts, as the *Xochicopilli*, which distils a sort of *Copal*, or odoriferous Gum; the *Quauhatepatli*, yielding a yellow Liquor that cures the Itch and Scab, and will Purge, outwardly applied; the *Copalxocotl*, reckon'd a Cure for Fevers; the *Moripenda*, the Sprigs of which cut small, and boild to the consistence of a Salve, heals most Wounds and Sores; and to pass by many others, above all the *Mechoacan* Root, now well known, and much us'd in *Europe*, of which and many more the Curious may read *Francis Ximenes*.

For Beasts, here are great Numbers of great and small Cattel, as also Beasts of Burden, Goats, and Swine in Herds, without any Owners, Wild-Boars, Hares, and Rabbits, and that sort of Goat in which the Bezoar is found; and here we must observe, that the same *Francis Ximenes* affirms here is a sort of Bezoar found in the Rivers, which he says is wash'd down from the Mountains, where there is great store of Bolearmoniac.

The Natives formerly had four several Languages, the *Chichimecan*, the *Ottomite*, the *Mexican*, and the *Tarasque*; their Habit, and other Particulars was much like the *Mexicans*, they being of the same Race, tho' become Enemies to them. At present their Habit, Language, Manners, and Customs are all *Spanish*, being so incorporated with their Conquerours, that they are as it were one People, and know none but the Christian Religion. They learn all Trades, and particularly make curious Cabinets, and much Silk, and breed Cattel, but are particularly fond of Dogs. Their greatest Art is in making Pictures, or Imagery of Feathers, which they perform so exquisitely, that the ablest Painter cannot represent any thing finer in Colours than they do with Feathers, shadowing and giving every thing its proper Colour so exactly that it is really stupendious, and this done with such small Feathers, that it is wonderful how they can handle, and put them together, and what Birds they have to take them from, as *Acofta*, and many others who have seen this Work, inform us.

*Mechoacan* was formerly a Kingdom, which the *Spaniards* have reduc'd to a Province and Bishoprick, in which there are near 200 Towns of Natives, now all Converted, with their Parish-Churches, and many Monasteries. The principal *Spanish* Towns are these, 1. *Valladolid*, or *Guanajuato*, where the Bishop's See is, and near it a Lake larger than that of *Mexico*, full of Fish, especially one small sort, which dry'd and sold in the Country about, yields a considerable Revenue. 2. *S. Michael*, 40 Leagues West from *Mexico*, very populous, and seated in a Plain, which has the best Pasture of all the Country. 3. *S. Philip*, standing 60 Leagues North-west from *Mexico*, in a cold and poor Soil. This City, and the last above were built by the Viceroy *Don Luis de Velasco*, to secure the Country in those Days against the barbarous *Chichimecas* and others. 4. The Conception of *S. J. de* was built in the Year 1570, by the Viceroy *Don Martin Enriquez*, 35 Leagues from *Mexico*. 5. *Leon* is 60 Leagues from that Capital City. 6. *Zimora* 13 from *Pascuaro*. And 7. *Lagos*, 13 from *Valladolid*. Towards the South Sea

is *Zacatula*, otherwise call'd the *Conception*, seated on a River a League from the Sea; and *Colima* towards the Borders of *Xalisco*, in a rich Soil, producing much *Cacao*, *Cassia*, and other things of Value, besides some Gold. Near this City are two Sea-Ports, the one call'd *Navidad*, and the other *Santiago de Buena Esperanza*, the first of them resorted to by those who go to the *Philippine* Islands. All about here there are abundance of Copper Mines, some of it so soft, that they turn and wind it to any uses, and some again so hard, that it serves for Country Tools as well as Iron.

The Coast of this Province runs North-west, and South-east, with several small Bays and Creeks along it, but the principal River is that of *Zacatula*, not considerable among those of *America*. Under this Province, as it is now, liv'd several Nations of *Indians* in former times, but all those Distinctions are now laid aside, and they are become one People.

Mexico,

From which the whole Government takes its Name, is the principal Province of all North *America*, and an Archbishoprick, extending about 130 Leagues in Length North-east and South-west, and about 60 in Breadth. On the North it is limited by *Panuco*, and part of *Mechoacan*, on the East by *Tlascala*, on the South by the same Province and the South Sea, and on the West by that Sea and *Mechoacan*.

In this Compass were formerly several Districts, or Lordships, as those of *Lateotlapa*, *Meztitla*, and *Xilotepeque*, Northward from the Capital; *Maltatzingo*, and *Cultepeque* Westward; *Texcoco* on the East, and on the South *Chalco*, *Suchimilco*, *Tlalucio*, *Coyxaca*, and *Acapulco*. The burning Mountain between this Province and that of *Tlascala*, is call'd *Popocatepec*, all cover'd with Wood, and the bottom abounding in Wheat and Cotton. At the Foot of it is also *Tepexco*, rich in curious white transparent Allom; the Neighbouring Hills producing great store of the sweet Gums, *Copal*, and *Anime*, by Incision on the Trees. In the Neighbouring Villages much Salt is made, and a most curious Jasper Stone dug out of the Quarries; and at *Tuculula* there are rich Gold Mines, but the Place is subject to Earthquakes, and therefore the Natives live in low Huts. South of the Metropolis are the Towns of *Ceantrahuacal*, *Acapistla*, *Guatepeque*, and *Autepeque*, belonging to the *Marquess del Valle*, descended from *Cortez*, and pleasant, hot and fertile Places, producing much Wheat, Cotton, and delicious Flowers; besides very white Sugar. North-west from *Mexico* are *Escapuzalco*, *Tenyanca*, *Guatitlan*, and *Alexepit*, and the Country of *Xilotepeque*, inhabited by an industrious labouring People. North from the City is *Tepeaquilla*, &c. yielding Cotton, Grain, and much Fruit, besides infinite Fish in its Waters. In fine, every where the Land is rich, and there are very many Silver Mines at these distances from the Metropolis, *Puchia* 14 Leagues, *Tasco* 22, *Tzquiquilpo* of Lead, 20, *Zacualpa* 20, *Zumpango* 40, *Guanajuato* 60, *Comania* 70, *Achia-cica*, *Gautla*, *Zumatlan*, and *S. Luis de la Paz*, all of Silver, about which several thousand *Spaniards* live, besides great multitudes of Slaves.

The



The City of *México*, Capital of all North America, was first call'd *Tenochtitlan*, and is seated in the Latitude of 19 Degrees, and 40 Minutes, in a Valley 14 Leagues long, and 7 in breadth, surrounded with a ridge of very high Mountains, on the East side of the Valley is a great Lake that receives several Rivers and other Waters, in the midst whereof the City is seated, so that for want of a good Bottom, the Buildings sink very much. The Form of it is square, the Streets long, wide, and well pav'd, running North and South, East and West, whereby the whole Extent may be seen in the middle. The Compass of it is two Leagues, and the Diameter half a League, because it is almost square. There are five Ways into the City, over as many Causeways across the Lake. For noble Structures, and rich Churches, it vies with *Italy*, and surpasses it for beautiful Women. Of Inhabitants, there are about 100000 Families, but great Numbers of them Blacks, or Mulattoes. Within the City there are 22 Monasteries of Nuns, and 29 of Religious Men, all of them vastly rich. The Cathedral has 10 Canons, 5 Dignify'd Priests, viz. Dean, Archdeacon, School-master, Chanter, and Treasurer, 6 Demi-Canons, and 6 half Demi-Canons; one Head-Sacristan, 4 Curates, 12 Royal Chaplains, and 8 others call'd of *Laurenziana*. The Archbishop's Revenue is 60000 Pieces of Eight, the Dean's 11000, the four other Dignified Priests 8000 each, every Canon 6000, Demi-Canons 5000, the half Demi-Canons 3000, each Curate 4000, every Chaplain 300, the other Priests and Attendants less, being all in Number 300; so that the Revenue of the Church will all appear to be 300000 Pieces of Eight a Year. Yet all this is nothing to the Magnificence of that City before the *Spaniards* were Masters of it. The Clergy it seems are the Landlords of this City, most of the Grounds and Houses being theirs. (*Gemelli*.)

The Lake on which the City stands, consists of divers Limbs or Parts, some whereof are separated by Causeys only, others are more distant, and have Communication by small Canals. One part is stagnant, yet its Waters are fresh and good, and fill'd with Fish; another part ebbs and flows, and its Waters are brackish and naught, thus we are told by *Gage*. The Lake has about 30 Towns and Villages round on its Coasts, but before the *Spaniards* took it there were three times that Number, all very well inhabited. The old City consisted of at least 600000 Houses, some say 1000000. And *Montezuma's* Palace was the most noble that can be thought, for the Walls were of Marble, and other fine Stone, the Roofs of Cedar, the Chambers large, 100 in Number were adorn'd with curious Hangings of Feather-work, gilded Cielings, and all other sumptuous and beautiful Decorations. He had large Gardens, most pompous Summer-Houses, and vast Manereries for wild Beasts, Fowl, Serpents, &c. of the strangest, and of the most fierce Nature. His Chappel was so rich, that nothing was to be seen but Gold, which cover'd the Cieling, Agats, Cornelians, Rubies, and other rich Stones the Walls, and Pearls the Seats. There were many Temples for their Devotion to Idols furnish'd with high Steeples, the chief whereof was built of well wrought Stone and Timber, it was square, and a Cross-bow shot

broad, in the middle was a high Mount, of Pyramidical Form, which had 114 Steps to the top, where stood the Altars whereon the Sacrifices, which were of Men taken in Battel, were offer'd. From this Pyramid a high Tower ascended, which over-look'd all the City. The Market-place was so large that 100000 Persons might have Dealings in it, and was well furnish'd with all Necessaries, and especially Gold, Silver, and Pearls, together with most beautiful Pictures made of Feathers, which is a Curiosity that no other Part of the World is acquainted with; in this Art the *Indians* were wonderfully Ingenious, as they were also in working Gold and Silver, whereof they make curious Pieces, far surpassing any wrought here. The Inhabitants were so numerous, that 50000 Boats were employ'd in bringing the daily Food necessary, and Passengers. When the City was taken on the 13th of August, 1521, after a three Month's Siege, 'twas reckon'd that at least 120000 *Indians* were slain on the Defendant's side, besides a vast number that died of Hunger and Pestilence. When *Cortez* had taken the City, he destroy'd all the *Indian* Buildings, and re-edify'd the City, giving out parcels of Ground to those that had assisted in the Siege, and obliging the *Indians* to work in the Building; 100000 Houses were then erected, but those being thro' haste but ordinary Structures, it has in process of time been in a manner all new built, and tho' at this time the Houses may not be so numerous, they are however much better, being built of Brick and Stone, and very fair, but not high, for the Ground being tender, and subject to Earthquakes, must not be too much loaded. The *Indians* live in the Suburbs, for the *Spaniards* by cozening them of their plot of Ground (which in the Foundation of the City had been equally distributed to such *Indians* as had assisted the *Spaniards*,) have from time to time so encroach'd, that all their little Houses are pull'd down, and new pompous ones built in their Place. *Cortez* built himself a stately Palace on the same Ground where *Montezuma's* stood, so large that 7000 Cedar Trees were us'd in it; which at this Day is call'd the Marquis del Valle's Palace, and Letts for 4000 Ducats Rent. The Market-place, altho' not so large as that of the *Indians*, is however very spacious, surrounded with Arch'd Piazza's, and well furnish'd with Shops of the richest Merchandize as well as all useful Commodities. Over against the Market-place stands the Viceroy's Palace, which is a large Building, with fair Gardens. The Streets in general are large and beautiful, surpassing ours in Europe, especially that call'd the *Platería*, where the Goldsmiths live, exceeding in Wealth any that can elsewhere be seen; the Street of St. *Austin*, where the Dealers in Silk inhabit, remarkable for its Length and Breadth; and the Street *del Aguila*, where the Gentry dwell, admir'd for its fine Structure. The *Spaniards* live in great Splendour and Luxury, and so ordinarily keep Coaches, that *Gage* says there were in his time (1625,) reckon'd to be 15000 in the City, many whereof were surprizingly rich. 'Tis a Saying, that in *Mexico* there are four things remarkably fair, viz. the Women, the Apparel, the Horses, and the Streets; to which, says he, we may add the Coaches of the Gentry. The *Alameda* is an open Field shaded



shaded with Trees, where the *beau monde* daily appear in Coaches, or on Horses, where every Afternoon may be seen 2000 Coaches fill'd with Ladies and Cavaliers dress'd in most gorgeous manner, and attended with large Equipages, and fine Liveries. The Town lies open, being not secur'd by any Walls or Gates, for the *Indians* are so perfectly reduc'd on all sides that the *Spaniards* esteem themselves in no danger, and therefore the Arms which the Inhabitants heretofore always kept by 'em are now slighted, and the Place is the least capable of Defence that can be; the narrowness of the Causeys from the Main Land, which may be defended by small Numbers, being all the security they have to trust to. The Viceroy is allow'd by the King 100000 Ducats *per Annum* Salary, together with Plenipotentiary Power, whereby he is able by Perquisites to raise his Revenue inconceivably high; whereby the five Years Government, which is the stint of their Commission, is considerable enough to be desir'd by the greatest Favourite at Court. Thus far I have taken from *Gage*.

All round this great City there are many other Towns of Note, as *Chulula* upon the same Lake, *Telcma* 6 Leagues distant, *Quilavaca*, *Tztaepalapa*, *Alexicalizingo*, *Guatitlan*, *Suchimilco*, *Queretario*, and many more, all of them large Cities formerly, and still considerable Towns, so curiously seated, that in one Plain not above 9 Leagues long, and two in breadth, there constantly feed above 100000 Head of great Cattel, 200000 Sheep, and 10000 Horses, and other Beasts of Burden.

*Acapulco* is a Sea-Port on the South Sea, whence the Ships set out for the *Philippine* Islands, and return thither again. It is call'd a City, but more like a Village, all the Houses being either of Timber or Mud Walls, seated in almost 17 Degrees Latitude, at the Foot of high Mountains, in an unhealthy Air, and destitute of Provisions. The Inhabitants are all Blacks and Mulattoes, the *Spanish* Merchants hasting away thence as soon as the Fair is over, which is when the Ships come from the *Philippine* Islands, loaded with Commodities of *China*, at which time the Place looks like a City, being fill'd with genteel People, and plentifully supplied with Provisions from all Parts. Here is a small Castle with good brass Guns, but has no Ditch nor Bastions. In describing *Mexico* and this Place, we have follow'd *Gemelli*, the last Traveller who has writ of those Places, and a judicious Man.

About 7 Leagues from *Mexico* stands a notable piece of *Indian* Antiquity, being a Pyramid two sides of it, about 160 *English* Yards in length, the other two about a fourth part less, and the height 50 Yards, made in Steps like those of *Egypt*, on which formerly stood a prodigious Idol of the Moon, and within the Pyramid were Vaults, in which they buried the Kings. 200 Paces from this is the Pyramid of the Sun, a third part longer on the sides than the former, and a fourth part higher than that, and on this stood the Idol of the Sun, of a monstrous Magnitude. These are so ancient, that there is no account who were the Founders of them.

But that we may not exceed, a word of the Birds, whereof there is such a beautiful Variety, that the World can scarce match it, among which

is the *Sesontle*, which Name signifies 500 Voices, from the mighty variety of its sweet Notes; the Cardinal, which sings well, but is so call'd, because all over of a beautiful Scarlet, not only Feathers, but the Beak. The *Tigrillo*, or little Tiger, because spotted like a Tiger, and sings well, and many more both for Beauty and sweet Notes, besides several sorts of Parrots, which talk to Admiration. For eatable Fowl, there is no less Variety, and the same for Beasts, not to mention the infinite Herds and Flocks of Kine, Sheep, Goats, and Horses, there are Bears, Wolves, Wild-Boars, Hares, Rabbits, Deer, Foxes, Tigers, Lions, and Squirrels.

The Product of the Earth is no less amazing, the preciousst whereof is the Silver and Gold taken out of the Mines. Then for Fruit, there are all sorts *Europe* affords, except Nuts, Cherries, Medlars, and Service-Berries, and besides these, many others unknown to us, as *Aguacates*, *Sapotes*, *Mamey's*, *Granadilla's*, and one prime Plant, which is the *Cacao*, we are now acquainted with through the use of Chocolate. Of the Silver Mines, what is necessary shall be said when we come to those of *Pernu*, that the Subject may be entire; the History ancient and modern shall follow after describing the other Provinces of this Government, which it would be improper to part.

#### Tlascala

Follows next after *Mexico*, not only in Situation, but Dignity, and rather superiour in Extent, as reaching from Sea to Sea; for it has the Gulph of *Mexico* on the East, *Panuco*, and the Province of *Mexico* on the North, the same Province on the West, and the South Sea and *Guavaca* on the South.

The Product here is much the same as in *Mexico*, and the Temperature of the Air differs but little, for they both lie very near in the same Latitude; and as for the Natives, we refer the speaking of them till the last, when we come to their History, where it will appear that as *Mexico* was an absolute Monarchy, so *Tlascala* was a Republican Government, and having faithfully serv'd *Cortez* in the Conquest of *Mexico*, he obtain'd a Grant of the Emperour *Charles* the 5th, then Reigning, by which to this Day they are exempt from all Service or Duty whatsoever, and only pay the King of *Spain* a handful of Wheat a Head, as an Acknowledgment, which inconsiderable Parcels are yet said to make up 13000 Bushels.

The length of the Province from Sea to Sea is above 100 Leagues, and the greatest Breadth, which is along the Gulph of *Mexico*, about 80 Leagues, within which Limits are included the ancient Districts, or lesser Provinces of *Tepeaca*, reaching within 8 Leagues of the City *Tlascala*, *Zempoala*, the Mountaineers call'd *Totonaques*, and others.

The Capital City here is call'd *Puebla de los Angeles*, or the Town of Angels, 22 Leagues from *Mexico*, East and by South, containing 1500 Houses, and built by *Sebastian Ramirez*, in the Year 1531, on the Road from the Port of *Vera Cruz* to *Mexico*, and 5 Leagues from the ancient City of *Tlascala*, in a delightful Plain. The Buildings most of Lime and Stone, vying with *Mexico*, the Streets neat, handsome, and strait, crossing one another towards the four Quarters of the



World. In the midst of it is a great Square, which on three sides is adorn'd with uniform Portico's, where are rich Shops of all sorts of Commodities. On the fourth side is the Cathedral, with a most beautiful Front, and one stately Tower, the other not yet finish'd. Within the Church there are 7 large Pillars on each side, forming 3 Isles; the Choir and High Altar have only 2 Pillars of Marble, the Revenue of the Church is worth 300000 Pieces of Eight a Year. *General.*

*Tlascala* may be also call'd a Capital, having been so long before the last mention'd was built, and still a noble City, but most inhabited by Natives, whereas the other is most Peopled by *Spaniards*. It has four principal great Streets, the first on the top of the Hill, built there before the rest, because safe in the time of War, the second on the side of the Hill towards the River; the third along the River, and the fourth back from the River. All the Buildings since the coming of the *Spaniards* are improv'd. To this City were subject 28 Towns and Villages, containing 150000 Families. Almost all the Inhabitants being Natives, are, as has been said, free from all Taxes or Duties, and therefore live at Ease upon their Lands, or follow Trades, and being all entirely converted, they have several good Churches and Monasteries, where the Service is perform'd with Musick, and much Solemnity.

*Vera Cruz*, the Port on the Gulph of *Mexico*, is the next Place of Note, seated in a barren Soil, which makes Provisions dear, because they are brought far; The Air is not wholesome, and the North Wind drives the Sand so, that it almost overwhelms the Houses, and has actually buried the Walls of the Town, which now People constantly ride over. The Bastions, and other Works are irregular, and too far distant from one another. The Castle is half a League from the City, and serves to secure the Harbour, and Ships in it. These Inconveniences mention'd, are the cause the City is but poor, as only inhabited by Blacks and Mulatto's, the *Spaniards* staying no longer than they have Business, or Ships come in.

*S. John de Ulva* is the principal Sea-Port for the Kingdom of *Mexico*; and here I cannot but observe the great Ignorance of *Gage*, who confounds this Place and the last above-mention'd so together, that it is not easie to understand him, saying, the one was remov'd to the other, as if there were but one still, whereas they are to this Day two distinct Towns, only *S. John de Ulva* is more frequented, as being much the wholesomer Place, and the better Harbour, and therefore inhabited by *Spaniards*, and better fortified and adorn'd with Churches, and other Structures.

*Chil-Rico* is to the Northward of both the last, and on the Coast, all three of them in that Country which formerly was distinguish'd by the Name of *Zempoalla*; we will now go back to that District, within 8 Leagues of *Tlascala*, which was call'd *Itepec*, where the *Spaniards* have built the Town they call *Segura de la Frontera*. The upper Part was formerly, and is still inhabited by the Natives, the lower by the *Spaniards*; but all of it is built on Rocks, so that it had none but Rain-Water, till they had some brought from a River that falls from the Mountains of

*Tlascala*. After saying so much of these principal Places, the others of less Note will not deserve any particular Mention to be made of them.

#### Guaxaca

As well as *Tlascala* reaches from Sea to Sea, being on that narrow Part which joins North and South *America*, having that Province, and the Bay of *Mexico* on the North; the same Bay and *Tabasco* on the East, *Chiapa* and the South Sea on the South, and the same Sea and *Tlascala* on the West. It runs near 100 Leagues along the South Sea, 50 along the Bay of *Mexico*, and extends near 120 Leagues along the side of *Tlascala*, but not above 50 on that of *Chiapa*. In it are comprehended several ancient Nations or Provinces, the chiefest whereof is the Valley of *Guaxaca*, giving Name to the rest, and that of *Marques del Valle* to *Ferdinand Cortez*, the first Conquerour of that Country, being 16 Leagues in length, 80 South from *Mexico*, and in 18 Degrees Latitude, according to *Herrera* and others. Here are Gold and Silver Mines, Crystal, and some Stones of small Value, and the Land produces much Wheat, Cacao, Cochineal, and Cassia Fittula, of which the Curious may see a particular Account in *Francis Ximenes*. The Air is serene and healthy, and much Silk is made here, because they have Woods of Mulberry-Trees, which Productions make all the Natives live at Ease, and in great Plenty. There are reckon'd in this Province 350 considerable Towns of the Natives, besides above 300 Villages, and among them above 120 Monasteries of Religious Men, and several Colleges of Clergy.

Except the Valley of *Guaxaca*, most other Parts are Mountainous, and yet extraordinary fruitful in all sorts of useful Trees and Plants. All the Rivers roul Golden Sands, which the Natives sometimes take the Pains to gather, and sell for Provisions and other Necessaries, taking no care as long as that lasts to labour for any more, but when their Stock is spent, they repair to the Rivers again. That which was formerly the Province of *Misteca*, runs along between *Tlascala* and the Valley of *Guaxaca*, *Tutepeque* is on the South of the said Valley, *Zapoteca* on the North of it; and *Guazacoulco* towards the East, but at present all these, as has been said, are comprehended under the Province of *Guaxaca*.

*Antequer* is the Capital City of this Province, a Bishop's See, 80 Miles South of *Mexico*, in the sweet Valley of *Guaxaca*, on the Road through *Chiapa* to *Guatemala*, and it is sometimes call'd by the Name of the Province. *Gage* is much mistaken when in speaking of the City and Valley of *Guaxaca*, he says the latter is 15 Miles in length, and ten in breadth, whereas nothing is more certain, than that it is 40 Miles in length, and near 20 in breadth, if we may believe all the *Spaniards* that ever mention'd it. To return to the City, it contains several Thousand Families, *Spaniards*, and Natives, and has a very stately Cathedral.

The next Town of Note is *S. Ildefonso de los Zapotecas*, 20 Leagues from *Antequer*, seated in a Territory rich in Gold, Cotton, and Indian Wheat, and on a Hill, formerly the Habitation of *Indians*, call'd *Migas*, who were tall of Stature, and had great Beards, which was a Rarity



in *America*. The third is *Santiago*, call'd *Nexapa* from the Valley it stands in, the fourth *Espiritu Santo* in the District of *Guaxacoalco*.

Tabasco

Is a small Maritime Province, extending about 40 Leagues from East to West along the Gulph of *Mexico*, which is its Northern Boundary, but the breadth is less, and on the East it joins to *Yucatan*; on the South it is parted by Mountains from *Vera Paz* and *Chiapa*, and on the West it has the Territory of *Guaxacoalco* of the Province of *Guaxaca*.

Most of this Country is flat and moist, with many Marshes and Lakes, breeding abundance of Fish. The Air is excessive damp, by reason it rains 6 Months in 12, and it is no less hot, which breeds infinite multitudes of Gnats; yet the Soil is rich, producing much *Indian* Wheat, and *Cacao*, wherein consists the principal Wealth of the Country. The Natives of this Province were extraordinary drinkers of *Chocalute*, and from them chiefly the *Spaniards* learnt it, and have since imparted it to all *Europe*.

The only *Spanish* Town here is call'd *Tabasco*, or *Nuestra Senora de la Victoria*, that is, our Lady of Victory, from a great one *Cortez* obtain'd there at his first Arrival. The River *Grijalva* here is large, but shallow within the Mouth. Three Leagues from the City another River falls into the Sea at two Mouths, one of them passing by the Town of *Tabasquillo*, the remainder of that of *Potonchan*, *Cortez* found at his Landing there. There is another River call'd *S. Peter* and *S. Paul*, which has a narrow Mouth, but deep, and very clear, and swarming with excellent Fish. The *Mexicans*, whilst their Monarchy stood, had Garrisons throughout this Country. This Coast, from *September* till the end of *March*, is subject to tempestuous North, North-east, and North-west Winds, which render it dangerous Sailing in it during that time.

Yucatan

Had this Name given it in the Year 1517, when *Francis Hernandez* first discover'd it, and was then thought an Island, as well it might, being a Peninsula, running out into the Sea 100 Leagues in length, and join'd to the Continent by a very narrow Isthmus at *Tabasco*, and *Vera Paz*, its Situation between 16 and 23 Degrees of North Latitude, the Gulph of *Mexico* washing its West and North sides, and that of *Honduras* the East and South, excepting only the small Isthmus, or Neck of Land above-mentioned.

The Temper of the Air is very hot, and there is never a River in all this great Peninsula, which, nevertheless, has no want of Water, through the innumerable multitude of Wells. Wherever they dig up the Land, they find abundance of Shells, which, with the lowness of the Country, and shallowness of the Sea about it, have given many sufficient ground to believe that the greatest Part of it was once under Water. Their Winter begins in *October*, and lasts till the end of *March*, during which time there is scarce any Rain, but in Summer, beginning in *April*, and lasting till the end of *September* it rains continually, yet they

Sow and Reap, but it affords no *European* Grain or Fruit, nor does it yield any Gold or other Metal.

The Natives us'd to say, they had a Tradition from their Fore-fathers, that the first Inhabitants of the Country came thither from far Eastward, and that their God had parted the Waters on both sides for them to pass. The *Spaniards* add, that in this only Peninsula they found some shadow of Baptism, which the Natives call'd a second Birth, or Regeneration, looking upon it as a security against all the Snares of Evil Spirits.

Throughout all this Province they found many Structures of Stone, which they had not before seen in any other Part, and these were their Temples. At present the Country is full of black Cattel and Horses, and produces much Cotton and Indigo. A Ridge of low Mountains runs from the City of *Salamanca* in the West, quite across the Province to the East, and divides it into two Parts, the Southern whereof is ill-peopl'd and worse cultivated, for want of Water; but the Northern is very populous, for tho' the Sun be very Hot, it is moderated by the constant Breezes. However the Mountain Country is the healthiest.

The Capital City is *Merida*, about 12 Leagues from the Sea, in 20 Degrees of North Latitude, which is the Residence of the Governour, and a Bishop's See. The next is *Valladolid*, 31 Leagues to the South-east of the other, about which there are above 50000 *Indians* who pay Tribute to the *Spaniards*. The third is *Campeche*, almost 50 Leagues South-west from *Merida*, on the Shoar that looks towards *New-Spain*. This Name was given it from a sort of Wood like *Brazil*, us'd by Dyers, whereof great Quantities are transported into *Europe*. *Campeche* is a fair Town standing on the Coast in a small bending of Land, and is the only Town on all this Coast that stands open to the Sea; it makes a fine shew, being all built of good Stone; the Houses are not high but the Walls very strong, the Roofs flattish after the *Spanish* fashion cover'd with Pan-tile. There is a strong Citadel or Fort at one End planted with Guns, where the Governour resides with a small Garrison. Though this Fort commands the Town and Harbour, it has been twice taken, first by Sir *Christopher Mims* by Storm in 1659, and the second time by the *Bucaneers* in 1678 by Surprise. The Town is not very rich, the chiefest Manufacture is Cotton Cloth, which with Salt is the Trade of the Place; formerly it was the Market for Logwood, but now the *English* from *Jamaica* Land in the neighbouring Countrey, and Cut it themselves. 'Tis on account of this Commodity that the Bay of *Campeche* is become notable. Logwood is the Heart of a Tree that grows in this Country of *Yucatan*, and no where else. The Tree is like a White-Thorn but much larger, being sometime 5 or 6 foot about, the outer part is white, and therefore cut away till the heart, which is red, appears; this is useful in Dying, and therefore a valuable Commodity. It is but within 20 or 30 Years past, that the *English* have known the Tree; which they first found out at *Cape Catoch* the East-point of this Land, but having soon cut ail near the Coast there, they have since cut it at the Isthmus which they enter at *Triste* Island, seated at the bottom of the Bay, about 40 Leagues S. W. from *Campeche* (*Dampier*.)



Lastly, *Salamanca* stands 70 Leagues South-west from *Mérida*, is in a District which was formerly call'd *Chetmal*. *Campeche* was another Province, where is now the City of the same name. *Cochuacque* was a Mountain Province, where are the Towns of *Tulma* and *Chable*, and next to it is that of *Guazmil*. In the North-east was the Territory of *Coehinzá*, adjoining to it that of the Co-

comes, and Westward that of *Camul*, inhabited by *Mexicans*. In all these Provinces, where other Authors are not nam'd, we have principally follow'd the undoubted Authority of *Herrera*, and where he fails, *Laet*, *Gomara*, *Oviedo* and *Suñer*. Let us next proceed to the Discovery, Conquest, and Ancient History.

## CHAP. IX.

### Containing the Discovery, Conquest, and History of NEW-SPAIN.

**C**olumbus having first Discover'd *America*, beginning with the Islands, and then proceeding to some Parts of the Continent, several other Adventurers set out, some from *Spain*, and others from the Islands already subdu'd, to make their Fortunes by finding some New Lands. In the Year 1517, *Francis Hernandez de Cordova*, fell upon the Coast of *Yucatán*, and discover'd from *Campeche*, as far along the Continent, as *S. John de Ulva*. In 1518, *John de Grijalva*, set out by *James Velázquez*, Governour of *Cuba*, ran along the same Coast, but did nothing of moment.

That same Year *Ferdinand Cortez*, was set out by the same Governour of *Cuba*, with 10 Ships, 508 Soldiers and 109 Sailers. His first Conquest was over the Town of *Tabasco*, but removing thence he came to *S. John de Ulva* in 1519, where he continu'd some Months, and having broke up his Ships, that his Men might have no Hopes of returning, and leaving a Garrison in the Fort he built, he in *August* advanc'd with 400 Men towards the Province of *Tlascala*, which was a Potent Commonwealth, and always at War with the mighty Emperor of *Mexico*, *Montezuma*. The *Tlascalans* fearing lest the *Spaniards* should prove Friends to their Enemies the *Mexicans*, resolv'd to use their utmost Endeavours to destroy them. Accordingly they laid 30000 Men in Ambush, and 1000 others appearing drew the *Spaniards* into the Danger, who they were very near perishing, being enclos'd and in a narrow Compass, till forcing through and opening themselves a way, when they had more Room for their few Horse and Guns, they soon made their Enemies retire. They being thus worsted, drew out all their Forces, amounting to above 100000 fighting Men, wherewith they attack'd *Cortez* three several Days, and were every Time routed with wonderful Slaughter. This Success of so few Men against such mighty Numbers so very much daunted the *Tlascalans*, that they presently sent to sue for Peace, which was willingly granted, and *Cortez* with his Forces receiv'd into the City. There he enter'd into such a strict Alliance with the Commonwealth, that they never after forsook him, but prov'd faithful to the *Spaniards* in their utmost Extremities.

This Republick was erected by a Race of People descended from the Barbarous *Chichimecas*, who took Possession of the Country, expelling the ancient Inhabitants, and setting a Republican Government, maintain'd War against *Mexico* 70 Years, their own Dominions being 50 Leagues in Extent, naturally Strong, very fruitful in Corn, and extraordinary Populous.

*Cortez* having refresh'd his Men at *Tlascala*, notwithstanding all Persuasions to the Contrary, set out with a Resolution to enter the City of *Mexico*, as he did, and was receiv'd in friendly Manner by the mighty Emperor, *Montezuma*. To give some Idea of the Greatness of this Monarch, it is fit to observe, that he had every Day 3000 Dishes of Meat, and as many Bowls of their Wine serv'd up to his Dinner, and neither Dish nor Napkin was ever us'd by him twice. His Palace had three spacious Courts, and many Stately Rooms 100 Foot long, besides abundance of lesser Chambers 25, or 30 Foot Square, and 100 Baths. Every Thing about these Rooms was rich, and the greatest part of them were taken up by 3000 Women, and the Gardens and Fish-ponds belonging to it were amazing. The City was Stupendious, for it contain'd 60000 Houses, had three great Markets, where all Things necessary for Human Life were Sold, and above 50000 Boats were continually employ'd in the Service of it. The Temples were many, the greatest a mighty Pile, but most remarkable for the Inhuman Religion taught and practis'd by the barbarous Priests, who there sacrific'd Thousands of Men every Year, ripping out their Hearts and shedding their Blood, which caus'd an intolerable Stench, all that could get any Part, afterwards Feasting upon the Bodies of those human Victims.

But let us return to *Cortez*. After a considerable stay in *Mexico*, observing that the People grew weary and contriv'd his Destruction, he seiz'd the Great Emperour *Montezuma*, thinking by that Means to secure himself, and govern absolutely in *Mexico*, receiving infinite Sums of Gold and Silver by way of Tribute. Whilst he was in this Prosperity, *James Velázquez*, the Governour of *Cuba*, who had set him out, knowing that he acted for himself, without acknowledging who had employ'd him, sent *Pamfilo Narváez* with 18 Sail, and in them 85 Horse, 800 Foot and 12 Pieces of Cannon to reduce him by Force. *Cortez* hearing that these Forces were Landed against him at *Vera-Cruz*, left *Peter de Alvarado* with 150 Men to keep Possession at *Mexico*, and march'd away himself with the Rest to meet *Narváez*, to whom he sent several Messengers with Proposals of Accommodation, all of which manag'd their Business so dexterously that *Narváez's* own Men began soon to be against him, and many forsook him. To put an End to the Controversy, *Cortez* surpriz'd him in his Quarters at *Zempoala*, took him Prisoner, and all the Men came over to his Service.



This done, he return'd with all speed to *Mexico*, to rescue his Men, who he heard were in Distress, the City taking up Arms against them. There he was besieg'd by the whole Multitude of the Town, who made furious Attacks upon his Quarters and were still repuls'd with incredible Singularity, yet they abated nothing of their Fury, being all resolv'd to perish, or destroy the Spaniards. In fine, Cortez seeing no End of his Confinement, and that he must either be starv'd out, or oppress'd by Numbers, he march'd out, fought his Way through all the City, with the loss of 200 of his Men, and all the Cannon and Baggage, besides 40 Horses, and 4000 Confederate Indians. When they were got out into the open Country, the *Mexicans* pursu'd several Days longer, killing above 100 Men more and some Horses, but at last the poor remainder got safe to *Tlascala*, where they were favourably receiv'd, and supply'd with all Things they could desire.

Cortez having refresh'd his Men, lost no Time, but subdu'd the Province of *Tepeaca* and other Parts, and having provided all Necessaries, and 13 small Brigantines to Sail on the Lake of *Mexico*, which he carry'd over Land, he march'd out with about 500 Spaniards and 100000 *Tlascalans*, with which Forces he laid Siege to that vast City of *Mexico*, subdu'd all the Country about it, and at last made himself Master of the Place, by which he brought under a great Empire and made Way for his future Successes, for hence ensu'd the subduing of *Mechonacan*, *Guaxaca*, *Tabasco* and *Tucatan*, in a continual Course of Successes, and thus was laid the Foundation of all the ensuing Conquests; for from hence, some spread themselves into the Northern Parts as far as 40 Degrees of Latitude, as has been shew'd, and others descended towards South *America* and *Peru*, which could not have been so easily conquer'd but for the preceding reducing of all that Continent of *New Spain*, where Spaniards began to swarm, and whence those Enterprizes Southward were supply'd.

As to the Manner of *Montezuma's* Death, *Herrera*, who saw all the Original Accounts from *Mexico*, delivers it thus. Cortez and the Spaniards being reduc'd to great Distress in their Quarters, in *Mexico*, the Indians attacking them for several Days, with unspeakable Fury, *Montezuma*, who was with Cortez, offer'd to speak to the Multitude from a Window, hoping to appease them. They gave him a Hearing, but as soon as he had done fell a railing and reviling of him bitterly, and let fly such a Shower of Arrows and Stones, that tho' two Spaniards stood to cover him with their Bucklers, a Stone hit him on the Temple. He so highly resentec this Affront and the Disrespect of his Subjects, that he would never suffer any Application to the Hurt, which was look'd upon as inconsiderable of it self; yet he dy'd the 4th Day, as was believ'd rather of Grief and Vexation than the Wound, tho' it was not dress'd. This was the more likely, because he all the while appear'd loving to the Spaniards, and at his Death charg'd Cortez to take Care of his Children, and not to fail of revenging the Affront and Indignity offer'd him by his People. *Acosta* gives the same Account of his Death, only adding, that the Indians deny it, and say they found his Body Stabb'd through in many Places, in the Spanish Quarters, when they left them. *Gomara* agrees with *Herrera's* Relation, and *Gage* delivers the same; so that there

does not appear any Ground to question the Truth of the Fact.

Having thus briefly run over the Discovery and Conquest of *Mexico*, it only remains, that we add something of its History, which must needs be very obscure, it being well known that those People had no use of Letters; to make some amends for which Want, they had a sort of Painting, which with the Tradition deliver'd down by word of Mouth, preserv'd some little dark Knowledge of former Ages. It is needless to run too far back, where we are sure of nothing but Fables, as there are very many and those monstrous ones, about the first coming of the *Mexicans* into that Province so call'd; whence they came they knew not, but that it was from the Northward, and that they were of the Race of the *Chichimecas*, to which they add that they left their former Seats by the Command of their God *Huitziliputzli*, who after many Years wandring, at length conducted them to the Lake, and shew'd them the Place where they were to settle, erecting his Temple in the Midst, and dividing themselves into four Quarters or Wards about it, which were distinguish'd into other Sub-divisions, with every one its lesser Tutelar God.

When they were thus settled, they began to order their Civil Government, and in order to it chose them a King, which was *Acamapichtli*, the Son of a Mexican Prince, by a Daughter of the King of *Culhuacan*. This rais'd their Reputation, which before ran very low, and therefore the *Tepanecas*, to whom they were tributary; oppress'd them, still imposing new Burdens, and as their Stories tell us, demanding Things above Nature, which still they perform'd by the Help of their God *Huitziliputzli*; but those Fables we may well pass by. *Acamapitzli* reign'd 40 Years in this Subjection, and dying left not the Crown to his Children, but gave the People their full Liberty to choose his Successor.

The People in Return made Choice of his Son *Vitzilonitli*, or *Huiztlauhli*, who marry'd the Daughter of the King of *Azcapuzalco*, or the *Tepanecas*, and she prevail'd to have all the Tribute paid her Father to be reduc'd to only a couple of Geese and some Fish, which was a mighty Ease; but to qualify this Joy she dy'd, and her Husband the following Year, when he had reign'd but 13, leaving a Son at the Age of 10, whose name was *Chimalpopoca*.

Him they immediately inthron'd, and the City being in want of Water, because that of the Lake was muddy, they sent to the King of *Azcapuzalco*, to grant them leave to bring Water from the Mountain of *Chapultepec*, which they did, but the Aqueduct being of Canes, soon fail'd, and then they sent to the same King to demand all Necessaries of him, for making a solid Aqueduct of Stone. These repeated Demands the *Tepanecas* look'd upon as an Affront, and therefore enter'd into a bloody War with the *Mexicans*, which made the old King die for Grief, and the *Tepanecas* stealing into *Mexico* by Night, murder'd the young *Chimalpopoca*.

The *Mexicans* vowing revenge, elected *Izcoatl*, Son to their first King, to succeed in the Throne, and he heading his People overthrew the *Tepanecas*, plunder'd and destroy'd their Capital City of *Azcapuzalco*, and pursuing those that fled into the Mountains, entirely brought them under Subjection, dividing the Booty and Lands among his



his own Men. This Success encourag'd him to farther Enterprizes, and accordingly he conquer'd *Tambá* and *Cyotacan*, who before had Princes of their own, and almost destroy'd the *Suchimilcos*, who were the first Inhabitants of the Lake. The King of *Chilpancingo* voluntarily submitted and own'd him for his Sovereign, by which means the *Mexicans* became Masters of all about them. This was done in only 12 Years *Ixcóatl* reign'd, who then dy'd, and

*Montezuma*, the 5th King, but of another Family was chosen. He first brought up the inhuman Custom, that no King should be Crown'd till he had sacrific'd some Captives taken by himself in War, and to this Purpose pick'd a Quarrel with the People of the Province of *Chalco*, from whom he took several Prisoners and sacrific'd them on his Coronation-Day. *Chalco* being subdu'd, the new King still resolv'd to extend the Limits of his Empire, and accordingly was in continual Wars with his Neighbours. Yet he erected a stately Palace for himself, and a Temple for his God, and dy'd when he had reign'd 28 Years.

The Electors meeting chose *Tlaxcellel*, Uncle and General to the last King, who would not accept of the Crown, but prefer'd *Ticochu*, Son to the late King, whom the *Mexicans* soon poison'd, because he was no Soldier, and substituted his Brother *Axagacac* in his Place. His first Expedition was against the Province of *Tehuantepec*, which he entirely subdu'd, as he did the City and petty Kingdom of *Tlatelulco*, and dy'd after a Reign of only 11 Years.

The 8th King was *Ahuizotl*, who before his Coronation, made War with the *Quaxatlans*, and extended his Conquests as far as *Guatemala*. The *Mexican* Story informs us, that at the Dedication of the Temple of *Huitzilpuzli*, this Inhuman King sacrific'd 64080 Men, in the compass of four Days. This Devil dy'd in the 11th Year of his Age.

Next to him was chosen *Montezuma*, whom the *Spaniards* found on the Throne, and whose Name signifies Angry Lord. Before his Election he appear'd extraordinary Grave, Modest, and Hypocritically Religious, which recommended him to the Electors, and after his Installment he show'd more of his haughty Temper, turning away all his servants of the Common Sort, and refusing to be serv'd by any but the Nobility. Then he subdu'd a Nation towards the North-Sea, which had revolted, and returning with abundance of Prisoners to sacrifice, took such mighty State upon him, that he was almost ador'd as a God. Before the coming of the *Spaniards*, the *Indians* tell of many Prodiges, which presag'd the Downfall of their Empire; but those Follies are not worth observing. When *Montezuma* heard of their Arrival on his Coasts, he was much amaz'd, and us'd all Means to divert them from coming to *Mexico*, but God having decreed the Destruction of that barbarous Empire, all his Endeavours were in vain, and *Cortez* overthrew all his Power, as has been shown above.

*Cuauhtémoc* was chosen Successor to *Montezuma*, but his Reign prov'd short and miserable,

he being taken in *Mexico* by *Cortez*. The Account of those Kings is much the same in *Acosta*, *Herrera*, *Gomara*, the *Indian* painted Annals, *Liet* and *Gemelli*, all whom we have examin'd to give this short Abstract. Only *Gage*, will have *Vitzilovitzli* to be the first King, and *Acamapitzli* the second; tho' all Authors whatsoever make his Second first and his first Second.

It will easily appear by what has been said, that this Empire was nothing near so great as the *Indians* represented it, the farthest Extent being to the South-east, and that only as far as *Guatemala*, and Northward it reach'd but a very little way; besides that *Mechoacan*, *Tlascala* and *Tepeaca* were never subdu'd, and all of them lay within a very few Leagues of the City of *Mexico*. Then as for Duration, we find but Nine Kings to have succeeded one another, besides the last not worth mentioning; so that in all Respects this Monarchy is infinitely inferior to that of *Peru*, as we shall see in treating of that Country.

As to the Government, there is no Question, but it was as Politick and Civiliz'd as any other whatsoever, the Crown bestow'd by Election, but *Montezuma* was become a most absolute Monarch, and there was little to blame in his Management of Temporal Affairs. Yet if we come to their Religion, there shall we find all the Barbarity and Inhumanity of Devils rather than Brutes, for their Sacrifices as has been said were of Men, and 20000 are said to have been butcher'd this way in a Year, not forgetting what was instanc'd above of *Ahuizotl* slaughtering 64080 in 4 Days. The Manner was to rip out the Heart of the Victim and cast it still leaping into the face of the Idol, the Body at the same time being kick'd down the Steps that were before it. To this End they fattened the Slaves and eat them that were sacrific'd. They had another cursed Practice, which was to flea a Slave and draw his Skin upon another, who went about the City begging for the Temple in that Equipage, and striking such as would not give, over the Face with some of the Skin.

Christianity has long since put an End to all those Hellish Practices, the whole Nation being converted, and all those Diabolical Rites not so much as known among them. It is true, Men whose Talent lies in railing at all the World, make it their Business to inveigh against these People and the *Spaniards* both; but in all Countries it is likely there are more ill than good Livers, every Nation has its Vices, and the *Indians* are not exempt from their Failings, which are none of the smallest; as cruelty, when they have Power to show it; Lewdness even to committing of Incest with their own Mothers and Sisters; Thieving, Cheating, Falshood of Heart, Beastliness in their Way of Living, and Stupidity in Dying. These and other horrid Crimes have oblig'd the *Spaniards* to treat them with the utmost Rigour, without which, how could such a Handful of Men, have preserv'd the Superiority over so many Millions, as they keep under, notwithstanding the so much inculcated Falshood, as if the *Spaniards* had destroy'd all the Natives; but it is Time to have done with *Mexico* and proceed.



CHAP. X.

Of the Third Division of NEW-SPAIN, being the Provinces Subject to the Audiencia, or Sovereign Court of GUATIMALA.

THIS great District, under which are several Provinces, as we shall soon see, is bounded by the Provinces of *Guaxaca* and *Tabasco*, which are the utmost of the Jurisdiction of the Sovereign Court of *Mexico*, and this is all the Boundary it has by Land to the Northward, all the other Northern and Eastern Part being wash'd by the North-Sea, except that small Neck of Land on the East, which joins *Veragua* to the Province of *Tierra Firme*, or the Firm Land, of South *America*, which past all the South and West side to the Northward, is again expos'd to the South Sea. The Length of it along the South Sea, from South-east to North-west is above 300 Leagues. The Breadth is very uncertain, being 150 Leagues where largest, and not 30 where narrowest.

The Name of *Guatimala* is given it from the Province of that Name, and the City of *Santiago de Guatimala* in it, where the Sovereign Court is fixt. This Country as it is now divided into several Provinces, so was it before the *Spaniards* discover'd it, subject to an infinite Number of *Caciques*, or Petty Kings, or Lords, every little Town or Village having a Prince of its own, as shall be shown in the Particular Descriptions.

The Discoverers and Conquerors were also many, and very great the Losses sustain'd before those Petty Princes could be brought under; but the Desire of Wealth overcame all Difficulties, for no Island or Part of the Continent had given greater Hopes of mighty Treasure in Gold than most of this. Wheresoever Ships touch'd upon this Coast, they met with Plenty of that Metal, and

the more Covetous the *Spaniards* appear'd of it, the more Pains the Natives took to convince them of the great Plenty there was of it farther on.

The Natives were not so Salvage as some have endeavour'd to represent them, they had all rational Forms of Government, and some of them better Notions of Religion, than most of our Ancient Idolaters, tho' the Generality were stupid enough. Their going so naked, may rather be ascrib'd to the Heat than any want of Understanding to Cloath themselves. For Fertility scarce any Parts exceed it, the Fruits are infinite of all Sorts. *Indian* Corn is every where Plentiful, the many Waters produce Plenty of Grass, especially along the Hills, which Feeds numerous Flocks and Herds of Cattle.

These Countries abound in *Cacao*, before mention'd, and now well known to us, being the Nut whereof Chocolate is made, a Drink generally us'd by all those People, who had no Wine, as both *Acosta* and *Ximenes* testify, who inform us, that the Nut pass'd among them for Money, 5, 10, 20, 40, or a greater Number being given in exchange for other Things, and that continu'd many Years, being scarce out of use at this Time; and the Liquor made of it, is well known to be pleasant and nourishing.

The Division of this Government is into Eight several Provinces, each of which contains several Petty Lordships or Nations of *Indians*, as they were before the Conquest, but since reduc'd into the present Form, with such Principal Cities, or Towns, as are here specify'd.

Chiapa.	{ Cidad Real. Chiapa. Tecparlan. Copananztla.	Nicaragua.	{ Leon. Granada. Segovia. Jaen. Realejo.
Soconusco.	{ Guevetlan.	Costa Rica.	{ Aranjuez. Cartago. Castro de Austria. Nicoya.
Vera Paz.	{ Vera Paz. S. Augustin. Santiago. San Salvador.	Veragua.	{ La Concepcion. La Trinidad. Santa Fe. Carlos. Parita.
Guatimala.	{ La Trinidad. S. Mignel. Xeres. Valladolid.		
Honduras.	{ Gracias a Dios. S. Pedro. Truxillo. S. George de Olancho.		

Chiapa

Is an Inland Province bordering Northwards on *Guaxaca* and *Tabasco*, Westward on *Soconusco*, the same on the South, and *Vera Paz* on the East. The Length of it from East to West is 40 Leagues, and the greatest Breadth not much less; but then some Parts are much narrower. Four Nations, or Tribes of *Indians* formerly inhabited it, being *Chiapi neses*, the *Zoques*, the *Zelsales* and the *Quelenes*.

Here are great Woods of Pine, Cypress, Cedar, Oak, Myrtle and Walnut Trees, with wild Vines running up them, which *Ximenes* particularly describes. And for those Trees which distill Aromatick Gums, those of Liquid Amber, Tacamahaca, Copal, and others that yield sovereign Balsam. All Kitchen Herbs and Salads grow to Perfection, as also Beans, which once sow'd last several Years and Coleworts growing to a wonderful Bigness, and yet sweet and tender.

Among



Among the Birds of Prey *Ximenes* tells us of one, that has one foot like a Goose, and the other like a Faulcon, about the Bigness of a Hen, and not unlike it, the Feathers white, with some mixture of brown. It lives upon Fish, and being much in the Water the Goose's Foot serves it to swim, and the Faulcon's to seize its Prey. Besides this, there are most other sorts of wild and tame Fowl, and particularly most beautiful Parrots.

All four-footed Beasts brought from *Spain*; as Cows, Sheep, Goats and Swine have multiply'd to Admiration; but above all the Race of Horses here is so valuable, that they send Colts to *Mexico*, tho' it be 200 Leagues off. Of the Wild Beasts it will be needless to say any thing, they being such as are often mention'd in other Places. The worst is, here is no less Plenty of Snakes and other venomous Creatures, some of those last nam'd growing to 20 Foot long, and among them some of a curious red and streak'd with black and white, and these the Natives call, the Mothers of the Ants, and wear them about their Necks, without any Harm.

The *Chiapenses* above-mention'd breed the best Horses and know how to break them, and are besides great Masters in Musick, Painting, and Mechanick Arts; being naturally very civil and courteous, and obedient to their Superiours, originally descended from *Nicaragua*, as they declare. Among them the *Spaniards* found a pleasant Valley encompass'd with Mountains, and a Hill in the midst of it, at the Foot whereof, on the East side, they built a Town and call'd it *Ciudad Real*, or the Royal City, the Capital of the Province, 70 Leagues North-west from *Santiago de Guatemala*. This City by particular Privilege is Govern'd by *Alcaldes*, or Magistrates of their own Choosing, and is a Bishop's See, having a beautiful Cathedral and some Monasteries, besides the Parish Churches. I cannot impose upon the Reader the Forgeries of *Gage*, for in describing this Place, he is as much out as in all the Rest, dividing it but into three Parts, whereas, as was shown above, it certainly contains those four; then he makes but one Place of *Ciudad Real* and *Chiapa*, whereas they are two distinct Towns, the one *Spanish*, the other *Indian*; and therefore we must follow the *Spaniards*, who know what they have been so many Years in Possession of better than that Strowler, who by the fallhood of his Account, must needs take all he writes upon Trust. In short, *Ciudad Real*, as has been said is the Capital *Spanish* Town, about which there are many *Indian* Towns, the Chief whereof is call'd *Chiapa*.

The next People are the *Zoques*, inhabiting 25 Towns, the Principal call'd *Telpatlan*, where there is a Monastery of *Dominicans*. The third the *Zeltales*, dwelling in 13 Towns, and sowing much *Indian* Wheat, wherewith they feed great Herds of Swine, and have so much *Cochineal*, that they colour their Houses with it. The fourth and last are the *Quelenes*, who have 25 Towns, the Capital of them call'd *Copanamastla*, where is a *Dominican* Monastery.

The Chief Rivers here are, that of *Chiapa* running from the Northward across the Country of the *Quelenes*, and after receiving several lesser Streams, falls into the Sea of *Tabasco*. The other is *Rio Blanco*, or the White River, whose Water, covers any Piece of Wood thrown into it with a hard stony Crust, and yet is clear and may be drank without Danger. In the Village of *Caza-*

*cuapza*, a League and a half from the Capital, is a curious Spring, which Ebbs and Flows, like the Sea, and yet is at a vast Distance from it. Five Leagues from the aforesaid City is another Spring, which always swells and overflows in the Heat of Summer and dries up in Winter. In the Town of *Chicomuzelo* there is a Cave, with a very narrow Entrance, but within of a vast spacious Extent, and on one side of it a Lake of most clear Water, but standing, and two Fathom deep near the Bank.

#### Soconusco,

The next Province to the Westward, and consequently bounded on the East by *Chiapa*, and *Vera Paz*, on the South by *Guatemala*, and the South Sea, on the West by the same Sea, and on the North by *Guaxaca* and *Chiapa*. The Extent of it is about 35 Leagues along the South Sea, and less in breadth where largest.

The principal Wealth of it consists in Cacao-Nuts, which by reason of their nearness to the Sea, they easily send to all other Parts of *New-Spain*, and it is a considerable Trade. The Soil does not bear Wheat well, but any other Grain grows well enough.

The only *Spanish* Town here is both by them and the Natives call'd *Guevetlan*, built by *Don Pedro de Alvarado*, when he was Governour of these Countries. *Chilton* tells us, that when he travell'd through this Province, which was in 1560, there were very few *Spaniards*, if so, it is very much alter'd since, for all agree there are many there since. The Trade of Cacao, above-spoken of, makes the Inhabitants very rich, and they pay their Tribute to the King in Kind, which is carried to *Mexico*, and would be of considerable Value in *Europe*.

The Province is very subject to Storms and Rain from *April* till *September*, when such Floods fall from the Mountains, that there is no Travelling, and therefore those who have occasion to Travel to or from the other Parts of *New-Spain* during that time, must go about, tho' this be the shortest way. *Suchitepeque*, and *Guastapacan*, are two small Territories at the Eastern end of *Soconusco*, very ill Peopled, the greatest Town of them not containing above 200 Inhabitants.

The Coast of this Province commences 7 Leagues West of the River *Ayula*, from which it runs North-west, and receives those of *Coatlan*, *Capanercalte*, *Colatl*, *Hazatlan*, *Amaticut*, and *Quizatatlan*, above which last the Mountains divide it from *Guaxaca*.

#### Vera Paz

Had this Name given it, signifying true Peace, because it was never conquer'd by Force of Arms, but only brought into subjection by the Preaching of the *Dominican* Friars, who obtain'd it of the Emperour *Charles* the Fifth, that they might make such a spiritual Conquest, without being disturb'd by any Conquerors, which was granted them, and punctually observ'd, so that no Soldiers ever came into the Province, which was entirely reduc'd by only the Preaching of those Friars. For this reason it has ever remain'd free from all Duties and Taxes, only receiving a Judge from the *Spaniards*, who ul-



no manner of Authority there, the Natives only paying a voluntary Acknowledgment rather than Tribute to the King. Tho' this be a known Truth, deliver'd by all that ever writ of those Parts, as *Herrera*, *Gomara*, *Oviedo*, *Laet*, and several others; yet *Gage* stubbers this over, saying, that the *Spaniards* had conquer'd *Guatemala*, and the Country about, yielded themselves peaceably, and therefore it was call'd *Vera Paz*. He adds, it is not yet all subdued by the *Spaniards*, and talks of a Town of 12000 Inhabitants, not subject to them, yet there were several *Spaniards* found in it by the Friar he pretends went thither, with mighty danger of his Life, as if he could be in more Danger than those he owns were there before him. This shews his Ignorance, for the Country being, as has been said, free, there are few *Spaniards* settled in it, only some few go thither to Trade with the Natives, and others pass backward and forward with all the safety imaginable. But the *Dominicans*, who were the Converters of the People, or spiritual Conquerours, have some Monasteries here, being highly respected, and preferring the first Immunities granted to those People inevitably; another Instance of the same sort we shall see when we come to *Paraguay* in South America.

This Province is enclos'd on the West by *Chiapa*, and *Soconusco*, on the South by *Guatemala*, on the East by *Honduras*, and on the North by *Yucatan*, no Part of it but *Golfo Dulce*, or the sweet Bay reaching to the Sea, which is the Gulph of *Honduras*. The Length of it is about 30 Leagues, and near the same Breadth. The Country is most Mountainous, with deep Valleys and thick Woods; the middle part temperate enough, but both ends extremely hot, and much pester'd with Gnats. Since the Woods have been destroy'd, it is much healthier and pleasanter.

Near the Town of *S. Augustin* is a large Cave in a Rock, with many others about it, which continually drop, and the Liquor which falls Petrefies, so that it forms abundance of Pillars of Stone as white as Alabaster; the cold within is so piercing that it is not to be endur'd. The Soil is not good for Corn, but produces all sorts of Aromatick Trees, as also a sort of hard Canes, which sometimes run 100 Spans in heighth, and so thick, that they will hold three or four Gallons of Liquor betwixt two Joints. The Beasts and Birds are much the same here as in the Neighbouring Provinces.

The East side of this Province is every where water'd by abundance of Rivulets, which all fall into a deep Bay, call'd *Golfo Dulce*, or the sweet Bay, and that into the Gulph of *Honduras*, being a Sea-Port to this Country. The *Spaniards* have never a Town in this Province, for the Reason above given; but the Natives are brought to live in 17 open Towns, some few *Spaniards* living among them, and many *Dominicans*, who have the whole Charge of instructing those People in Religion.

Guatemala,

By the *Indians* call'd *Quatemallac*, signifying a rotten Tree, runs along the South Sea North-west and South-east, and has *Nicaragua* and *Honduras* on the East, and *Vera Paz* and *Soconusco* on the North. The Soil produces abundance of

Cotton, and *Indian*, as also *European* Wheat. Here is not much Rain, but when it falls it is very heavy, which is most between *April* and *October*. The South Wind reigns most, and the North is very cold and stormy. All the Country is Hillv, and full of Rivers, which makes Plenty of Game, and Fish, as there is of all sorts of Fruit, and more especially of excellent *Cacao*, which yields a great Revenue. The great Plenty of Grass occasions the breeding infinite numbers of Cattel.

Notwithstanding all these Advantages, the Country is not healthy, because of the excessive Heat and Moisture, and very troublesome on account of the innumerable Gnats, and other Vermin. In the North-west Part of it is a burning Mountain, which sometimes casts out vast quantities of Alhes, very prejudicial to all the *Cacao* growing near. There were several Tribes here formerly, which gave as many Names to the Parts they inhabited, as the *Tzalcas* in the North-west; below them the *Papeles*; more to the South-east *Chuluteca*, and towards the Mountains the *Chontales*.

The ancient Idolatries of these People were much the same as what has been said of their Neighbours, and so for their Customs and Manners; but at present they have all embrac'd Christianity, and learn'd much of the *Spanish* Behaviour, living in perfect Liberty, notwithstanding *Gage's* Stories of their Slavery, for they are as free as the *Spaniards*, as absolute Masters of what they have, and they grow as rich as their Conquerours, if they are industrious. *Don Pedro de Alvarado* conquer'd this Province in the Year 1526, under whom it immediately flourish'd to a great Degree, and is still reckon'd one of the richest in those Parts.

*Santiago de Guatemala* is the Metropolis, not only of this Province, but of all the others subject to its Sovereign Court, which is settled in this City, which is seated in fourteen Degrees and a half of Latitude, 12 or 14 Leagues from the South Sea, in the midst of a Valley, divided by a River, and between two burning Mountains, which often cast out Smoke and Alhes, and sometimes cause Earthquakes. This is the most healthy Part of all about it, and no less fruitful. It is a Bishop's See, who is Suffragan to the Archbishop of *Mexico*, and besides the Cathedral and Parishes, here are two Monasteries, the one of *Dominicans*, and the other of *Mercenarians*, besides a good Hospital, as there is generally in all Towns of any Note. In the Year 1541 this City was almost destroy'd by an Eruption of one of the burning Mountains, but is since restor'd, and much improv'd, being counted very rich by reason of its Trade with *Veragua*, and other Parts.

*San Salvador*, by the Natives formerly call'd *Cuzcatlan*, is about 13 Degrees from the Line, 30 Leagues South-east from *Santiago de Guatemala*, and 7 from the South Sea, and Port of *Atacavala*, where the Ships for and from *New-Spain* usually load and unload. Here is another Monastery of *Dominicans*. *La Trinidad*, by the Natives call'd *Sanfonuc*, is but 26 Leagues from *Santiago*, and 4 from the Port of *Atacavala*, and the Place to which all Goods brought from *Peru* and *Mexico* to the aforesaid Harbour, are transported, and it has another Monastery of *Dominicans*. The Town of *S. Michael* is about 60

P p p

Leagues



Leagues from *Santiago*, and 2 from the South Sea and Bay of *Fonseca*, which is its Port. *Xeres de la Frontera*, the last *Spanish* Town towards the Frontiers of *Nicaragua*, and near 80 Leagues from *Santiago*. Besides these *Spanish* Towns, in which some Thousands of Natives live with them, there are some Hundreds of smaller *Indian* Towns, and many Thousands of scattering Country-Houses, by which it plainly appears that these Countries are not depopulated, as some would inculcate without any Ground; tho' they are not so populous as most Countries in *Europe*, which it is most certain they never were, even before the Conquest.

#### Honduras

Extends along the North Sea East and West above 150 Leagues, and may be near 60 Leagues over from North to South in some Places. On the North and East it is wash'd by the North Sea, on the South it has *Nicaragua*, and on the West *Guatemala*, and *Verapaz*. The Country is generally distinguish'd into Hills and deep Dales, and does not only produce *Indian* Corn thrice a Year, but also *European* Wheat, and Pease, and has excellent Pasture for Cattel; so that it abounds in all sorts of Provisions, as also Honey and Wax. Besides here are Mines of Gold and Silver.

Besides what has been said, it produces great quantities of extraordinary large *Gourds*, which the *Hispaniola* *Indians* call'd *Hibueras*; and the first Discoverers of this Country seeing many of them float along the Coast, call'd it *Golfo de Hibueras*, or Bay of Gourds, and the Province it self *Hibueras*; yet afterwards finding very deep Water at the great Cape of this Land, they call'd it *Cabo de Honduras*, that is, Cape Depth, and the Country it self *Honduras*, or Depth, which last Name prevail'd, and the other was forgot.

The ancient Inhabitants being extraordinary Sloathful, us'd to sow so sparingly that they often were in Want, and forc'd to feed on Roots, and even on many filthy things. At their Feasts they us'd to make themselves drunk with a sort of *Metheglin*, and then committed all the most heastly and abominable Crimes, which they have since left off by being converted to Christianity, and conversing with the *Spaniards*. Only the better Sort were allow'd to drink Chocolate, but at present it is common to the meanest.

Here is a Bishop, and four principal *Spanish* Towns, besides two of less Note, not to speak of those belonging only to the Natives, which are very many. The first and chief City is *Valladolid*, whose *Indian* Name is *Commyague*, about 40 Leagues from the North Sea, in a delightful Valley, temperate and wholesome, the Country about swarming with Cattel, which increases there wonderfully; besides very rich Silver Mines there are within the Liberty. *Alonso de Caceres* built this City by order of the Governour *Francis de Montejo*, in the Year 1539. This is the Residence of the Governour of the Province, and other the King's Officers, as also of the Bishop, who has here his Cathedral and Palace. The next Town is call'd *Gracias a Dios*, about 30 Leagues Westward of *Valladolid*, built in 1530, by *Gabriel de Rojas*, to secure those who wrought at the Gold Mines; and being abandon'd, was after restor'd by *Gonzalo de Alvarado*, in a very

hard and rocky Soil, yet the Inhabitants, with much Pains, have good Corn, and breed very good Mules, and some Horses. *S. Pedro*, or *S. Peter*, is the third, 30 Leagues North-west from *Valladolid*, and 11 from *Puerto de Cavallos*, on the Bay of Horses. *Truxillo* the fourth, is 60 Leagues North-east from *Valladolid*, and on from the North Sea, having a safe Harbour at the bottom of a Bay call'd *S. Giles*. The Territory about it is so good that it produces all sort of Grain and Fruit, both of the Country, and *Europe*. *S. George de Olancho* is the fifth, about 40 Leagues East from *Valladolid*, inhabited by very few *Spaniards*, but its Territory swarm with *Indians*.

The running out of the Peninsula of *Yucatan* into the Sea, forms a very deep Bay with the Coast of *Honduras*, on which there are no any Rivers of Note, nor indeed any considerable Harbours, that call'd of *Cavallos*, or the Horses taking the Name from many Horses cast away there.

#### Nicaragua

Was first call'd the new Kingdom of *Leon* by the Governour *James Lopez de Salzedo*, and has *Honduras* on the North, the North Sea on the East, *Costa Rica*, and the South Sea on the South and the same Sea and *Guatemala* on the West, extending 150 Leagues East and West, and about 80 North and South, and formerly contain'd several Tribes of *Indians*, whose Territories were call'd *Nicoya*, *Nequecheri*, *Mabyte*, *Diria*, *Mafaya*, *Managua*, *Cocoloaque*, *Cebraco*, *Miques*, and *Madera*.

The Summer is excessive hot, and the Winter rainy and tempestuous. The Land is most plain, yielding little Corn, but abounds in Fruit and Cattel, as also Cotton, Honey, and *Axi*, which is the *American* Pepper. The Forests cover a great part of it, and consist of all sorts of Trees, especially one call'd *Zeyba*, which *Herrera* says sometimes grows so big that 15 Men can scarce Fathom it. *Oviedo* writes, that on the Coast there is a sort of long Shells, in which they find some Pearls, but not so good as those taken out of Oysters. The Natives were formerly much like their Neighbours as to their Customs and Manners, and have since, like them, embrac'd Christianity, and live like the *Spaniards*.

The most remarkable thing peculiar to this Province, is the famous Lake of *Nicaragua*, above 130 Leagues in Compass, all the Shores of it cover'd with Towns and Villages of the Natives, and ebbing and flowing as the Sea does. The Head of it is not above 4 or 5 Leagues from the South Sea, and yet it runs into the North Sea, through a Channel of a considerable breadth, which might have afforded a shorter Passage into the South Sea than by *Panamá*, but that there are several great Falls in it, where those who pass up or down must of necessity go ashore, and transport themselves and Goods by Land beyond the Cataract. In the Lake there are several Islands, and it breeds abundance of Fish.

*Leon de Nicaragua* is the Capital City of the Province, seated about 12 Leagues from the South Sea, on the Bank of the great Lake above-mention'd, and the Residence of the Governour, and other Officers, as also of the Bishop, who has here a good Cathedral, and Palace, besides which

there



there are five Monasteries, and 120000 Natives within its Liberty. Near the same Lake stands *Granada*, the second City, 16 Leagues from *Leon*, where *Francis Hernandez de Cordova* erected a magnificent Church, and a good Fort, to oppose the Natives before they were subdued. About this Place grow abundance of Sugar-Canes, and the *Spaniards* have several Mills for making of the Sugar. The third City is *Segovia*, 30 Leagues from both the former Northward, in whose Territory there are rich Gold Mines. The fourth is *Jaen*, at the Mouth of the Lake, 30 Leagues from the North Sea. Lastly *Realejo*, seated a League from the Port call'd *Possession*.

On the North-east end of the Lake is the burning Mountain, call'd *Maffayatan*, very high and steep, with a great Mouth at the top, which sends forth a thick smook Morning and Evening, and sometimes great quantities of Pumice stones. Seven Leagues from the City *Granada* is another burning Mountain call'd *Monbacho*, most cover'd with excellent Fruit-trees, which are a delightful Supply to all the Country about. *Herrera* informs us, that a Friar once conceited that the Mass of Fire which continually burnt in this Mountain without being consum'd, could be no other than Gold, and therefore contriv'd a way to let down a great Kettle, with a strong Chain to draw it up, but no sooner they came to the fire than both the Kettle and Chain melted, as if they had been Lead.

#### Costa Rica,

That is, the Rich Coast, so call'd by the first Discoverers, from the great quantity of Gold they there found among the Natives, borders Northward upon *Nicaragua* and the Northern Ocean, has the same Sea, and *Veragua* on the East, and the South Sea on the South and West, with some Part of *Nicaragua* on the South side; and extends about 90 Leagues from East to West, and about 50 in the largest Place from North to South.

As for Product, it has much the same as its Neighbouring Provinces, but is somewhat Mountainous, and that Part is for the most part Barren, yet Wealthy, as containing Mines of Gold and Silver, which are not so much made of as might be, for want of Labourers.

The Spanish Towns here are four. First, *Aranjuez*, seated about 5 Leagues from the South Sea, upon the Borders of the *Indians*, call'd *Chomes*, and not far from their chief Town; 2. *Cartago*, 20 Leagues from both Seas, being in the Mid-way betwixt them, so that it has a Sea-Port on each; 3. *Castro de Austria*, near the North Sea, and the most inconsiderable of the three, there being nothing but the Name in any Author. Lastly, *Nicoya*, which some make a distinct Province, but in reality it is only a Part of this. The Town lies on the Sea, and has a small Port on the Coast, near which was formerly the Spanish Colony, call'd *Brussels*; afterwards destroy'd when the *Spaniards* fell at Variance among themselves.

On the North Sea this Province has two large and convenient Bays; that lying most to the West-

ward call'd of *S. Jerome*, the other near the Frontiers of *Veragua*, *Caribaco*. On the South Sea, besides the Port of *Nicoya*, it has several Bays, Capes, and convenient anchoring Places all along the Coast.

#### Veragua,

The last Province not only of the Government of *Guatemala*, but of North America and the least of them, joins on the West to *Costa Rica*, on the East to the Government of *Panama*, and has the North Sea on the North, and the South Sea on the South. The greatest Length of it from North to South is not above 50 Leagues, and the Breadth from East to West 25.

The Country is most Mountainous and full of impenetrable Woods, so that it affords little Food for Cattle, and as little of any Grain, except only some Indian Wheat and Kitchen Herbs; but to make amends it abounds in Mines, and especially of Gold, which are wrought by such as have Labourers, or else the Metal taken up in the Sands of the Rivers. The Natives were a bold daring People, and hard to be subdu'd by the *Spaniards*.

The Capital of this Province, where the Governour and others of the King's Officers reside, is call'd, the *Conception*, 40 Leagues West from *Nombre de Dios*, near the Coast of the North Sea. 2. *La Trinidad*, or the Trinity, an open Town, 6 Leagues East from the *Conception*, along the Sea Coast, the Inland Way being almost impassable, it stands on the Banks of the River *Belen*, 3 Leagues from the Sea. 3. *Santa Fe*, 12 Leagues South from the *Conception*, where the Gold is generally cast and refin'd, and to that Purpose the King keeps Officers there. 4. *Carlos*, a Town on the South Sea.

*Christopher Columbus* first discover'd these Provinces we have last spoken of, in the Year 1502, beginning at Cape *Casinas*, in the Province of *Honduras*, and thence turning it to the Eastward with much trouble, by reason of the continual East Winds, he sail'd 60 Leagues to another Cape, which he call'd *Gracias a Dios*, or Thanks be to God, because there the Land run away to the Southward, a Course he could better stand with the East Wind. Thence he sail'd down all that Coast, Bartering with the *Indians*, Looking-Glasses, Hawk's-Bells, Pins and other Trifles for Gold, till he came to *Porto Bello* and *Nombre de Dios*, since two noted Places, we shall have Occasion to speak of, when we begin with South America. This Province was particularly pitch'd upon to reward the great Admiral *Christopher Columbus*'s extraordinary Merits, and to make amends for the Violation of the mighty Advantages he was depriv'd of, and which were his due by Grants made to him, when he undertook the Discovery. In short, his Heirs had this Province of *Veragua* granted them in Propriety, with the Title of Dukes thereof, which they hold to this Day, and are of the rich Families of *Spain* sufficiently ennobled by so glorious an Action, as the Discovering the greatest of the Four Parts of the World, which had been unknown to the other Three for so many Ages.



## CHAP. XI.

## Of the Islands.

THOSE belonging to this *North-America* are very numerous, and the more because it will be requisite to reckon among them all those which lie close to the Northern Coast of *South-America*, and might be reckon'd to belong to it, and this because they all lie within that vast Bay, the *North* and *South-America* make; for which Reason it would be improper to part them.

It will be needless to say any thing of those which lie in the Northern Frozen Sea, such as *Mansfield Island* in *Hudson's Bay*, *Cumberland's Isles*, between *Hudson's* and *Davis's* Streights,

*Good Fortune*, *Resolution*, and *Button's* Islands, without *Hudson's* Streight, and many more lying dispers'd in those Seas, they being neither habitable, nor scarce known any farther than that they have a being. Wherefore we shall come directly to those which can afford something to be said of them, and to give one general View, place them in their Natural Order from North to South, beginning on the East side of *America*, and then proceed to those few on the West side, as they are plac'd in the following Table.

Newfoundland, and about it.	Assumption.	Windward Islands.	Redonda.
	S. John.		Monferrate.
	Cape Breton.		Guadalupe.
	Pelce.		Desca.
	Magdalen.		Marigalante.
	Holy Cross.		Los Santos.
	Ramee.		Dominica.
	Brion.		Martinico.
	Bird Island.		Santa Lucia.
	S. Paul.		Barbudos, or Barbadoes.
	Bell Isle.		S. Vincent.
	Sand Island.		Bechia.
Bermudas, or Summer Islands.			Granada.
			La Trinidad.
		Caribbee, Leeward Islands.	Margarita.
			Tortuga.
	Bahama.		Aires.
	Lucayoneque.		Orchilla.
	Ciguatao.		Tabago.
	Guamahani, or, S. Salvador.		Roca.
	Triangulo.		Buen Ayre.
	Samana.		Cirazao.
	Mayomana.		Oruba.
	Caicos.		Arenas.
Lucayo Islands.	Ymeta.		La Bermeja.
	Colomera.		Negrillos.
	Cerateo.		Los Alacranes.
	Labaquen.		Cozumel.
	Abacoa.		Quitafuenno.
	Bimini.		Pantoja.
	Mirapuerco.		Lamana.
	Humana.		Guayana.
	Hinagoa.		Guanaja.
	Linage.		Guayamo.
Hispaniola.		Small Islands on the Coast of New-Spain.	Perlas.
	Cuba.		Santander.
	Jamaica.		Santa Catalina.
	Puerto Rico.		Santanilla.
			Serranilla.
			Serrana.
	Anezada.		Del Gigante.
	Sombrero.		Santa Catalina.
	Virgenes.		S. Clemente.
	Anguila.		S. Martin.
	Santa Cruz.		De Pajaras.
	S. Martin.		S. Marco.
	S. Bartholomew.		De Cintas.
	Saba.		De la Carne.
	S. Eustachius.		Tres Marias.
	S. Christopher.		La Neblada.
	Nieves.		Santo Tomas.
	Barbada.		
Caribbee,	S. M. la Antigua.	California, and small Islands about it.	

Newfound-Land.



## Newfound-Land.

The *English* will have this Island to be first discover'd by *Sebastian Cabot* in the Service of this Nation; the *Spaniards* pretend it was found out by *Cortereal*, who gave his Name to that great Part of the Northern Continent, otherwise call'd *Tierra de Labrador*, which *Spanish* Name seems to be an Argument on their Side; and the *French* are not without Pretensions to this Discovery. Whoever it was, for we avoid all Controversies, the Island is Triangular, about 300 Leagues in Compass, lying before the Bay of *S. Laurence* between North *Canada* and *Accadia*, but 600 Leagues from the Lands-End of *England*, and between 46 and 53 Degrees of North Latitude.

The Country is hotter and colder than could naturally be expected from such Latitude, the Winter being so excessive Cold that for five Months there is scarce any stirring abroad. The Soil is as barren as may be, being all Rocks, Sand and Gravel, so that the Inhabitants have no Provisions, but what are sent them from *England*, except Wild-Fowl, Fish and Venison; the whole Island being either cover'd with Woods, or where there is any Part open nothing grows but Moss, or else Sedge, instead of Grass. The Trees are Fir, Spruce, Pine, Birch and other Sorts of Timber; the Beasts Deer, Hares, Foxes, Squirrels, Wolves, Bears, Beavers and Otters.

The Natives are always represented as a tractable People, neither subdu'd, nor converted, but living after their old Manner; of the smaller size, broad-fac'd and chested, without Beards, painting themselves, and wearing only an Apron of Stag-skins about them in the Summer, and painting their Skins. They believe in one God, who they say created Men and Women by sticking Arrows in the Ground; yet they farther say there is one God, one Son, one Mother, and one Sun; but God above all. Some of them are said to have much Familiarity with the Devil; and the Women allow'd to try many Men before they Marry, but to be very faithful to him they make choice of. The Dead they place standing in the Grave, with all Necessaries for a long Journey.

The only Trade and Business here is Fish, whereof there is such Plenty in this Sea, that all the World might be supply'd from it. All sorts may be here taken in immense Quantities, but the only Fishery regarded is that of the Cod, whereof at least 500 Ships are Laden every Year for *France*, *Spain*, *Portugal*, *Italy*, *England* and other Parts. The Great Bank, where the Main Fishery is, being a Sand 300 Miles in Length and 75 in Breadth, is 20 Leagues from Cape Raz, the nearest Land to it. The next is *Verr Bank* 80 Miles long, and 10 over in the broadest Place; then *Banquero*, about as big as the last, and some others of less Note. The *French* generally fish most off these Banks, and the *English* about the Island in Sloops. The fishing Season is from Spring till September.

The first Settlement here was made by Mr. *John Guy*, in the Year 1610, at *Conception Harbour*, on the East side of the Island, but was forc'd to quit it. In 1521, Captain *Winn* carried over another Colony for *S. George Calvert*, and settled at *Ferryland*, South of *Conception Harbour*, and call'd that Part of the Country *Avalon*, which Name it still retains. The other Settlements of the *English*, which deserve no particular Account

are *Ferryland*, *Cape Broil*, *Bay of Bulls*, *Brigs Bay*, *Bell Inn*, *Toads Cove*, *Mummables Bay*, *Pretty Harbour*, and *S. John's Town*, this last containing about 60 Houses, or Huts; the best of the others 20 and the worst 2, or 3. Besides these, there were 12 other such like Settlements scatter'd about, so that there have been reckon'd 4000 *English* Men, Women and Children on the Island. The *French* have always kept good Footing here, their Principal Town and Fortrefs is *Placentia*, and next to it *S. Peters*, then *S. Laurence*, and many more Habitations along the Southern Coast, where they are very Strong, and both Nations have there done one another much Harm during these Wars, yet both keep their own.

*Assumption* Island lies West of *Newfoundland* in the Bay the Land forms there at the Mouth of the great River of *Canada*; it is above 30 Leagues long, and 7 or 8 in Breadth, most Plain, and the Soil seems to be indifferent. *S. John's Isle* is to the South of the last, in the same Bay, and close to the Coast of *Accadia*, about 20 Leagues in length, and about 5 in Breadth where widest.

*Breton* Island, is so call'd from its Eastermost Cape, and *S. Laurence* from being the Entrance into the Bay of that Name, about 80 Leagues in Compass, inhabited by *Indians* like those on the Continent, and has nothing else remarkable. No more have any of those small Islands nam'd in the foregoing Table, being all inconsiderable, mostly barren and none inhabited.

## Bermudas, or Summer Islands.

*John Bermudez*, a *Spaniard*, was the first who discover'd these Islands, and gave them his Name, after whom others of his Countrymen touch'd there, but none attempted to settle, as not thinking the Islands worth looking after. The first *Englishman* that saw them, was one *May* cast on them by Stress of Weather in the Year 1593. Yet his Account mov'd not any Body to look out for them till Sir *George Sommers* had been wreck'd upon them in 1609, and given them his Name, which by Corruption is come to that we now give them of Summer Islands. After the return of Sir *George's* Company into *England*, the *Virginia* Company Sold these Islands to 120 Persons, who by Charter from King *James* the First became Proprietors of them. In 1612. one *Richard Moor* brought 60 Persons into the great Island, where they settled and built Huts, which after grew into Houses, and by degrees to a handsom Town call'd *S. George*, whence the same Name is given to the whole Island, which yielding good Tobacco at first and much Ambergreece, being found about it, encourag'd the relieving of them with fresh Supplies; but when they began to flourish, a Plague of Rats, which devour'd all Things both in the Houses and Fields, had like to have overthrown the Young Settlement. In 1619, there were 1000 *English* on the Islands, and soon after 3000, who had Ten Forts for their Security, but at last they increas'd to near 10000, a considerable Number for those small Islands.

The Number of these Islands is uncertain, they are so many and so small, the Names of the chiefest are, *S. George*, *S. David*, *Ireland*, *Somerset*, *Long Bird*, *Cooper's*, *Nonjuch*, &c. amounting in all to about 400, but most of them so small that they are not habitable; the greatest Length they all together extend to being under 20 Miles, and the



the greatest Breadth they take up 5. Their Latitude is between 32 and 33 Degrees, and they are 300 Leagues from Cape *Hatteras* in *Carolina*, which is the nearest Land to them. The greatest Island is call'd *S. George*, about 16 Miles long, and not 3 over in the broadest Place, naturally defended by Rocks out at Sea, and Artificially by several Forts on the Channels, and only two of them fit for any Ships to come in at. It is remarkable, that tho' these small Spots of Islands are so far from any other Land, yet here is a Tide, which rises and falls 3 Foot.

The Town of *S. George* has 6 or 7 Forts and Batteries to defend it, mounted with 70 Pieces of Cannon, a good Church, a tolerable Library, about 1000 Houses, well Built and a State-House. Besides this Town there are 8 Tribes, call'd *Hamilton's*, *Smith's*, *Devonshire*, *Pembroke*, *Pager's*, *Warwick*, *Southampton* and *Sandy's* Tribes.

The Air here is serene, delightful, temperate and healthy, whence the Trees are always green, new Leaves sprouting out, as the old ones drop off. The greatest Fault is, they are subject to dreadful Storms of Thunder and Lightning. Generally the Country is so very healthy, that the greatest Distemper is for the most part a Cold. Their Water is all brackish, which obliges them to save the Rain in Cisterns. The Soil is very fruitful, yielding two Crops every Year of *Indian* Wheat, which is the Common Food. All *American* and *European* Plants grow to Perfection. Trees there are of all sorts, particularly Cedars, which are the best of all the *English-American* Plantations, Palm, Barberry, Laurel, Olive, Mulberry, Pear, and Orange-Trees; the Fruit of these last the most delicious of any yet known. Of Fowl there is great Variety; but of Beasts the *English* found none but Swine, which had been left there by the *Spaniards* and increas'd; but for Fish there is as great Plenty as in any Part of the World.

Oranges us'd formerly to be brought over from *Bermuda*, which have not of late Years. Amber-greece is another of their Commodities, which they find upon the Shore, as was *Sperma Ceti*, and Whale Oil; but their Trade is much decay'd, and now they employ themselves much in building of small Ships and Sloops; so that the People are generally Poor, and their Diet ordinary, of which they have Plenty and live Easy.

#### The Lucayo Islands.

*Guana mi* one of these Islands, was the first Land of *America*, *Christopher Columbus* discover'd in his first Voyage upon that Design, which he call'd *S. Salvador*, and reckon'd it was 950 Leagues from the *Cape Verde*. This Island was very small, lying in 26 Degrees of North Latitude, and about it a vast Number of other Islands great and small. The Natives of them all seem'd to be in their Primitive Innocence, going naked, amaz'd at the sight of the Ships, flocking Aboard them, and admiring every Thing they saw. No Cattel or living Creatures were found in them, but Birds, especially Parrots, and some Snakes. They knew nothing of Iron, but instead of it made Use of sharp Stones and Bones of Fishes. The only Thing they had to Trade with was Cotton, Parrots, and Weapons pointed with Fish Bones. All these Islands are most Pleasant and Delightful, the Air being generally serene, the Heat temper'd with the constant

Breezes, and the Soil extraordinary fruitful, the Trees and Fields always green. Some little Gold was seen among the People, but that they had from other Parts. Some of these Islands, are 20, 30, or more Leagues in Length; others much less, and many so small that they look more like Rocks. They differ not at all from one another, nor have they been much sought after by *Europeans*, and therefore there is the less to be said of them, since what serves one may be taken for them all.

*Providence* Island may be reckon'd in this Number, which has been possess'd by the Proprietors of *Carolina*, since the Year 1667, being in 25 Degrees of North Latitude, 28 Miles long and 11 over where broadest. The People that first went to inhabit it were, as is usual in such Colonies, a Lewd Gang, who shipp'd off their Governour for *Jamaica*, and liv'd as they pleas'd. Some Years after, the *Spaniards* carry'd off and destroy'd all they found upon the Island, and by that Means oblig'd the Rest of the Planters to quit it. About 1689, a fresh Parcel went over from *England* and other Parts. The chief support of this wretched Colony depended upon Wrecks and Trade with Pyrates, who often come thither to spend their Money and Riot. The Town in it was call'd *Nassau*, and said to contain 160 Houses, or Cottages, with a Fort. Besides this, there were other miserable Settlements on *Harbour* Island, and *Eleuthera*. The only Commodity they have here to Export is Salt, whereof they transport considerable Quantities to the Continent. In 1703, the *French* and *Spaniards* utterly destroy'd the Town and Fort here, carry'd away the Governour, all the Blacks, and several Inhabitants, the rest flying to the Continent, since which it continues Desert, as do the others above-mention'd.

#### Hispaniola,

Discover'd by *Columbus* in his first Voyage, and by the Natives call'd *Ayti*, or *Hayti*, and *Quisqueia*, lies between 18 and 20 Degrees of North Latitude, and is about 400 Leagues in Compass, as being near 150 in Length, and 60 in Breadth where largest. The Mornings are somewhat hot, but the Winds then rising from the Sea make it temperate all the rest of the Day. The Soil is very Fruitful, and the abundance of Pasture has occasion'd all Sorts of Cattel, as Horses, Kine, and Swine to increase so prodigiously, that they run wild, belonging to no Man, but are free to any that will take them. These were first brought from *Spain*; for at the Time of the first Discovery, here were no other Beasts, but a sort of little Creatures call'd *Hutias*, something like Rabbits, but smaller; and a sort of little dumb Dogs, which never bark'd.

Of all the sorts of Fish, which were most of thole known in *Europe*, and others we are Strangers to, the *Mamati* was singular, being as big as a Calf, with two Feet before, which serve it to go on Land and swim in the Water. Some of these are 20 Foot long; the Females are deliver'd of their Young like Cows, and have two Dugs to suckle them. The Flesh of them is as good as Veal, and will keep a long Time either smoak'd, or dry'd in the Sun. The Fat of it never grows rusty, and is good for several Uses. Of Birds here is the greatest and most beautiful Variety, being of all sorts that *America* breeds.



Nor is there less Diversity of Fruits and Plants, than in any Part of the Continent.

When first discover'd, this Island was extraordinary rich in Gold Mines, particularly those in the Province of *Cibao* and *S. Christophers*, which yielded incredible Quantities, and were the Death of abundance of the Natives. At present we hear of no Gold brought from thence; which doubtless is because the Mines have been exhausted by the greedy search of the first Discoverers. Its other Product is Cotton, and Indigo, which is the main Trade at this Time.

The Natives went naked, and were an innocent simple sort of People, living upon what the Earth naturally produc'd, or at least with little Labour, in Villages of small Huts. They had something of Religious Worship, which they Paid to little Images of Wood or Stone, and endeavour'd to hide them from the *Spaniards*. These they call'd *Cemis*, and had Houses set apart to keep them in. Besides the *Caciques* kept three Stones, which they honour'd, pretending the one was good to preserve their Harvest, another to obtain Rain, and the third for Women in Labour. When a *Cacique* dy'd, they Bow'd him and dry'd up his Body at the Fire, preserving it afterwards with Bread and Drink by it, and his Wives to attend. They imagin'd the Souls of the Dead went to a Delightful Valley, where they found their Ancestors, and liv'd in all fulness of Pleasure. Many Superstitions were in Use among them, too tedious to relate, especially considering there are none of those People now left, they being all consum'd by the Wars, Diseases and the Labour of the Mines.

When *Columbus* first Discover'd this Island, he built a Wooden Fort on it, in which he left 30 Men, but at his return found them all kill'd, and the Fort burnt. He therefore remov'd thence, and built the Town he call'd *Isabella*, on the North side of the Island, where he found a small Harbour and a pleasant Situation; but neither was this lasting, the Inhabitants being afterwards remov'd to *Santo Domingo*. This is now the Metropolis seated on the South side of the Island, upon a good Harbour, in a delightful Plain. It is reckon'd one of the best Cities in those Parts, being very spacious, almost all of Stone, and encompass'd with a strong Wall. Here is also a Cathedral, this being an Archbishoprick, several Monasteries of *Dominicans*, *Franciscans*, *Mercenarians* and two of Nuns, a free School, to which is annex'd a Revenue of 4000 Ducats, and an Hospital worth 22000 Ducats a Year, besides a Mint, and a strong Castle; and it is the Residence of the Sovereign Court of all the Islands. The Trade of the *West-Indies* being remov'd to other Parts, this City is much decay'd. This Place was taken in the Year 1586 by Sir *Francis Drake*, who after Plundering and doing much Mischief, ransom'd what remain'd. There are 10, or 12 other Towns, but none to compare to this, and all much decay'd; the other Discoveries and Conquests on the Continent having drawn away the Inhabitants. The Names of the Principal Towns are *Salvaleon*, *Zeybo*, *Cotuy*, *Azua*, *Jaguana*, *Concepcion de la Vega*, *Santiago de los Cavalleros*, *Puerto de Plata*, and *Monte Christo*.

#### Cuba

Was like the last discover'd by *Columbus*, in his first Voyage, but he made not stay on it, nor did

he know whether it was an Island, or part of the Continent. The second Voyage he sail'd a considerable Way along the Coast of it, but not about. *James Velasquez*, was the Man who entirely discover'd and subdu'd it, in the Year 1511.

The Island lies between 20 and 23 Degrees of North Latitude, East of the Coast of *Mexico*; South of *Florida*, West of *Hispaniola*, and North of *Jamaica*. The Length of it is above 230 Leagues from East to West, but not above 45 in Breadth in the widest Part. As to Air, Fertility, Product, Natives and Animals it agrees in most Particulars with what has been said of *Hispaniola*, the nearest Lands of them being not above 10 Leagues asunder, and both of them within the Tropick of *Cancer*, with inconsiderable Difference in Latitude. The Land is for the most part Plain, tho' there are very high Mountains at the East End, and others not so high in the Middle, from which several pleasant Rivers flow, some to the North and others to the South, and all full of excellent Fish. The whole Length of it is cover'd with Woods; so that Travellers may go from one End to the other in a continual Shade, of abundance of sorts of Trees, among which there are most stately Cedars; so large that Canoes have been made of the Body of a single one, that would carry 50 Men, or upwards. *Gemelli* tells us for Fruit, here are two particular sorts, which are not found elsewhere. The one is like a Hart, call'd *Guanavana*, green without, and has some thorny Prickles, within made up of white Morfels of a pleasant Taste, between sweet and sharp, with some Stones. The other sort is call'd *Camito*, exactly like an Orange on the out-side, and within has a white and red Pulp, of a sweet Taste. The Tree as tall as a Pear Tree, the Leaf on the one side green, and on the other a Cinamon Colour. Besides these, there are all other sorts of *American* and *European* Fruits.

The Mountains, he says, and is the last who has writ of that Place, are full of Wild Boars, Cows, Horses and Mules. Besides, there are abundance of all sorts of Birds, especially Parrots and Partridges, bigger than Quails, with blue Heads. And of those that are fit for the Cage, there is great Plenty of a delicate sort they call *Chambergos*. There is a sort of Parrots very common, call'd *Cotorreras*, some of which have Black and Green Feathers, and others Blue; others Black and Green Feathers, their Breast red and half the Head white, being good to eat. The *Guacamayas* do not talk, but are so curiously colour'd, that the best Pencil can scarce equal them. The County in general is very Delightful, being full of little Houses, with Gardens and Farms, where there is no want of *Indian* Fruit.

The Capital City and Bishop's See is call'd *Santiago de Cuba*, built by *James Velasquez* the first Conqueror, on the South side of the Island, about two Leagues from the Sea, at the bottom of a Harbour, which justly claims Place among the best in *America*, having a narrow Entrance, within which is a spacious Bay, full of little Islands, and is so still that there is scarce any need of Anchors. The Trade being remov'd to the *Havana*, this City is much decay'd, and is the Residence of the Deputy-Governour of the Island. The principal Commodities Exported thence, are Hides and Sugar, besides Copper, whereof there are rich Mines on high Mountains 3 Leagues from the City.

The



The *Hayti*, tho' it has not the Title, may now be reckon'd the Chief, seated in 23 Degrees 20 Minutes Latitude, in a delightful Plain. It is almost Round, about half a League in Compass, wall'd and lately much fortify'd. The Inhabitants are about 4000 *Spaniards*, *Mulattos* and Blacks; the Women beautiful, the Men ingenious, and the Houses low. The Harbour encloies two sides of the City, and is safe against Enemies and Weather, so deep that the greatest Ships Anchor at a small Distance from the Shore. It is defended by three Castles, the Chief of them call'd *El Morro*, the second *De la Punta*, and the third only The Fort. The first on the Left hand entring the Harbour, which it defends with 12 heavy Pieces of Cannon call'd, The Apostles, lying level with the Water, and has 55 Pieces mounted in all. The Fort which is on the other side of the Harbour has 4 good Bastions and a Platform towards the Mouth of the Port, well furnish'd with Brass Cannon. The Castle of the Point is small, but has also 4 Bastions. There are several Churches and Monasteries, and two very good Hospitals, and it is to be observ'd that of late Years the Fortifications of this Place have been very much improv'd.

Besides these two, here are many other considerable Towns, as *Baracoa*, *S. Salvador* or *Bayamo*, *Puerto del Principe*, *Esperanza*, *Sancti Spiritus*, *La Trinitad*, and others, which would require a much greater Compass to treat of in Particular, than this Volume will allow. Along the Southern Coast there lies a vast Number of Islands, parted by very narrow Channels; the Islands always green and beautiful, and therefore call'd by the *Spaniards*, *Jardin de la Reyna*, the Queens Garden. Many other small Islands lie about not only *Cuba* but *Hispaniola*, *Jamaica* and *Puerto Rico*, which cannot here be taken Notice of, as being too inconsiderable, and would take up a Volume to treat of them all, which no Man has yet done, and therefore it may suffice to speak of those, which deserve it.

#### Jamaica.

As well as the other two already mention'd, was discover'd by *Christopher Columbus*, but this in his second Voyage to *America*. It lies in about 17 or 18 Degrees of North Latitude, about 30 Leagues South from *Cuba*, and the same Distance West from *Hispaniola*; reckon'd 50 Leagues in Length, and 20 in Breadth.

The *Spaniards* possess'd themselves of this Island, as soon as any of the others after *Hispaniola*, and built some Towns in it, where they traded with Hides, Tallow, Pepper, Cotton and Indigo; for it never yielded any Gold, like *Hispaniola* and *Cuba*, and therefore it was always more neglected, and never well inhabited, or fortify'd. However they remain'd possess'd of it till the Days of the *Harper* *Cromwell*, who being at War with the *Spaniards*, on Account of their harbouring King *Charles* in his Exile, fitted out a Fleet under the Command of Admiral *Pen*, with 6 or 7000 Land men aboard, Commanded by General *Wentworth*, against the *West-Indies*. Those Forces at the Leeward Islands were increas'd to near 10000 Men, and sail'd thence to *Hispaniola*, where they Land'd, near the City of *Santo Domingo*, but were defeated and forc'd back to their Ships. This Disappointment put them upon some other Adventure, and accordingly they Land'd next

in *Jamaica*, which being wholly unprovided to withstand such a Power as wanting both Men and Ammunition, they made an easy Conquest. The *Spaniards* retir'd to the Woods and Mountains, whence they made some Excursions, but receiving no Recruits, and being themselves no way Able to Cope with such a Numerous Enemy, they at last wasted themselves over to *Cuba*, and thence to other Parts.

Passing by other Particulars since it came into the *Engl'sh* Hands, which do not make to our Purpose, as the shameful sheltering of Pyrates so constantly practis'd there, and much more of that Nature, we will only speak a few Words of the most Dreadful Earthquake which hapned in the Year 1692. It began on the 7th of *June* about Noon, and in two Minutes shook down and drown'd 9 parts in 10 of the City of *Port-Royal*, the Water breaking and the Land sinking, so that the Houses were some half, and others quite under Water, above 1000 *Engl'sh* and Blacks perishing in the Town. All the Houses in the Island were thrown Down. Two Mountains were overthrown and met, and another split. The *Swan* Frigate, a Man of War, lying by the Wharf to *Careen*, was thrown over the Tops of some Houses. A hideous Noise was heard on the Mountains, and those few Houses that did not quite fall were so shaken that no Man durst live in them. The Shock was so strong, that People could scarce keep their Legs, when running for their Lives; many fell upon their Knees or Faces. Not one House was left standing at *Passage Fort*, one at *Liguania*, and none at *Santiago*, but a few low ones built by the *Spaniards*. The Earth open'd in several Places, and on the North side of the Island swallow'd People, Houses, Trees, and whole Plantations, leaving instead of them a Lake of above 1000 Acres.

The Island is cut in two by a Ridge of Mountains running across it from East to West, so high that they are scarce passable; and by them it is divided into the North and South sides. From these Mountains very many Rivers run down, crossing it the other way, which render the Land extraordinary fertile, and pleasant; for the Trees are green all the Year.

The Heat is temper'd by the daily Breezes, so that the Hottest Time of the Day is the first Part of the Morning, after which those Constant Gales rising from the Sea render it Moderate; besides which the Rains and Dews falling at Night help very much to cool. On the Hills the Weather is cool enough, especially towards the Tops of the high Mountains, which are excessive cold. The Length of the Days and Nights does not vary much, by Reason of the Nearness to the Equinoctial. All the Night the Wind blows off the Island, from every Part of it to the Sea.

The Product and Commodities of *Jamaica*, are  
1. Sugar, which is finer than that of *Barbadoes*, and the Quantity yearly brought over very great.  
2. *Cacao* Nuts, for making of Chocolate, whereof there is now very little, the Trees of late Years being said not to thrive, and when they did the Nut was one of the worst sorts that grew in *America*.  
3. Indigo, which is good, tho' of less Value than the *East-India*, but abundance of it grows in the Island.  
4. *Jamaica* Pepper, by some call'd *All-Spice*, how properly, is not worth controverting, but the two prevailing Tastes in it are of Pepper and Cloves.  
5. Cotton, the Quantity



tity very considerable, but not reckon'd so good as that of the East. 6. Ginger, which also is plentiful enough. These are the chief Commodities for Trade, besides which the Island produces most Things necessary for Human Life; as Pasture, Fruit and Timber-Trees, and all Sorts of Herbs and Plants, Variety of Fowl, and the Sea Store of Fish. Besides what has been mention'd, here grows *Guajacum*, *China*, *Sarsaparilla*, *Cassia*, *Tamarinds*, and many more Medicinal and Useful Plants and Trees. The Tabacco here is not worth speaking of, for tho' it grows where planted, yet the Quantity is inconsiderable; either that it proves not good, or that the Inhabitants find better Advantage other Ways. More of the Growth of the Island the Curious may find in Dr. Sloan's Natural History of it.

Besides the Trade to *Europe*, there was another far more beneficial from *Jamaica* to the *Spanish American* Dominions, for Blacks, and *English* Manufactures, which brought in very considerable Sums of Pieces of Eight, and was a great Advantage, not only to the Island but to *England*. The present War has interrupted, and Peace may restore it. From *England* Provisions, all sorts of Cloathing, Household-Stuff, Working-Tools, and many other Necessaries are carried over thither, which yield a considerable Profit.

To pass by what this Island has been, it is at present divided into 16 Parishes, which beginning at *Morant Point*, being the first on the South-east side, lie thus. 1. *S. Davids*, where is a small Place call'd *Free-Town*, and Port *Morant*, where Ships find Shelter. 2. *Port-Poyal*, the Name of the Capital City of *Jamaica*, very great and considerable before the Earthquake above-mention'd, but totally ruin'd by it, and being Rebuilt, was 10 Years after burnt down, and the Town remov'd to *Kingston* in *S. Andrew's* Parish. The Port which gave Occasion to build this City is so deep and large that it can contain the largest Fleet in the World, and Ships ride safe in it from all Weather. 3. *S. Andrews*, where, as has been said, is the Town of *Kingston*, increas'd to 7 or 800 Houses by the Destruction of *Port-Royal*. 4. *S. Catharines* Parish, and in it the small Town of *Passage Fort*, at the Mouth of the River that runs to *Santiago*, containing 200 Houses, being 6 Miles from that Town, and as many from *Port-Royal*. 5. *S. John's* up the Inland, reckon'd the Best in all *Jamaica*, and in it *Spanish-Town*, or *Santiago*, the Capital of the Island, of about 2000 Houses since the Ruin of *Port-Royal*. A Pleasant City, whose Inhabitants spare for nothing that Luxury can prompt. 6. *S. Dorothy's* Parish, has *Old Harbour* in it, a good Road, where many ships may Ride. 7. *Vere Parish*. 8. *Elizabeth's*. 9. *S. James's*. 10. *S. Annes*. 11. *Clarendon*. 12. *S. Maries*. 13. *S. Thomas in the Vale*. 14. *S. Georges*. 15. *S. Thomas*, and 16. *Kingston*.

It is remarkable that in so great and fruitful an Island as this is, there is scarce any Place that can be call'd a Town, besides those already mention'd; and yet some pretend to tell us there are 60000 *English* Men, Women and Children in the Island; how true is hard to determine.

#### Puerto Rico

By the Natives call'd *Borriquen*, was first discover'd by *Christopher Columbus* in his 2d. Voyage, *Ann.* 1493, and by him nam'd *S. John*, to which

was afterwards added *de Puerto Rico*, or of the *Rich Port*, and lies East from *Hispaniola* about 20 Leagues. The Length of it is between 30 and 35 Leagues and the Breadth 20, being a long Square. It is for the most part temperate, being cool'd as has been said of *Jamaica*. The Soil is rich and affords excellent Pasture; but the Cattel here naturally are apt to grow very wild. Most of the Country is Hilly, but the Middle of it is cut asunder by a very high Ridge of Mountains, call'd by the *Spaniards*, *Sierra del Loquillo*, the little Madman's Mountain. Several Rivers fall from it and water the Land. The general Growth is the same as in *Jamaica*, and in the other Islands, and in this as well as them grows the poisonous Fruit the *Spaniards* call *Manzanilla*, or little Apple, most agreeable to look to, and of a delicious Scent, but eaten is certain Death; nay, the very Shade of it causes such as Sleep under the Tree to swell, and any Drops falling from it on the Flesh raise Blisters. To make Amends here are several Medicinal Trees, and among them the *Tabornu*, from which a Bituminous Substance distills, which heals Wounds and cures all Pains caus'd by Cold.

It was formerly extraordinary rich in Gold and Silver Mines, which are now either exhausted, or neglected for want of People to work in them. The main Wealth of it at present consists in Sugar, Ginger, Cassia, Cotton and Hides, there being such Multitudes of Cattel that they are kill'd only for them, and the Tallow, the Flesh being left a Prey to the Birds and Dogs.

*John Ponce de Leon*, was the *Spaniard* that began to settle here, in the Year 1510, who built a Town on the North side, but was forc'd to remove it, and afterwards fix'd it at that which is still call'd *S. Germain* on the West side. In 1514, the City call'd *S. Juan de Puerto Rico*, as well as the Island, was founded, on the North side, and had the Name from the Goodness of the Harbour, on which it is seated. It is a Bishop's See and has a noble Cathedral, two other Churches, and without a Monastery of *Dominicans*. The Port is large and defended against all Winds, as well as Enemies, the Entrance being a narrow Channel, commanded by a strong Fort, and another call'd the Fortress at a small Distance from it. The 3d Town is call'd *Arezibo*, besides which there are several smaller Places or Villages, and abundance of scatter'd Settlements.

#### The Caribbee Windward and Leeward Islands.

According to *Herrera* and the *Spaniards*, who gave the Names, the Windward Islands, or those which reach from the Island of *S. John de Puerto Rico*, above describ'd on the North, as far as *Martinico* Southward, that and all the rest below it towards the Continent of *South America*, being call'd, the Leeward Islands, because they lie off out of the common Course of Ships sailing from *Spain* to the *West-Indies*. Under the latter Name we include several small Islands lying farther in to the Westward, along the Coast of *South America*.

The *Caribbee* Islands, are also call'd *Antilles*; as is thought from the Greek *Anti*, opposite, with respect to their Position to the greater Islands. They have the Name of Islands of *Caribbes* and *Canibals*, from the Inhabitants eating of Man's Flesh. They are all within the Torrid Zone;



from 10 to 19 Degrees of North Latitude, and yet healthy and temperate, for the same Reason as has been said in speaking of the other Islands, which is the Sea Breeze coming duly up in the Morning, and blowing the greater part of the Day. As for Cold, it is scarce known in these Islands. All the difference constituting Summer and Winter, is Rain and fair Weather, for the Trees and Fields are consequently green all the Year about. However the Nights are delightfully cool, but it is dangerous to lie uncovered, because that coolness gives Colds, and causes many Distempers, especially in the Stomach. The Days are never above 14 Hours long, or ever less than 10.

The Soil in many Places is as rich as any in the World, and all the inhabited Islands produce Plenty of all things for the Subsistence of the Inhabitants. To forward the which, they are all well provided with excellent Springs, Lakes, Brooks, and even good Rivers; besides Mineral Waters found in some of them, and successful for the Cure of several Distempers. Sulphur is found in many Parts of the Mountains; those which deserve the Name of Rivers are never dry, and have an infinite quantity of Fish; Vines thrive very well, and bear twice a Year, the Grapes are good, but the Wine made of them will not keep; Wheat never ripens here, by reason the Land is too rank, and it never comes to Ear.

The Natives call'd *Caribbes*, or *Canibals*, are well shap'd, proportionable, of a middle Stature, and a pleasant smiling Aspect, their Skins of an Olive Colour, and their Eyes black, their Nose and Forehead flat, which is done designedly, and not natural; but there are none lame, or Crook'd, or otherwise deform'd, and they have no Beard at all to be seen, for if any grows, they pull it up by the Root, thinking it a great Deformity. They go stark Naked as they come into the World, both Men and Women, and if any of them should go about to hide their Privities, they would be laugh'd at by the rest; nor could the Christians living among them ever persuade them to wear any Covering, only out of Complaisance, when they come among Christians, some of them will put on a Shirt, Drawers, and Hat, which they lay by as soon as they return home. Instead of Cloaths they paint their Bodies after several manners, but generally Red. As for Religion, they practise little, yet have some natural Notion of a Deity, or superior Power residing in Heaven, in the same manner as our Deists; for they believe God does not concern himself with our Actions, good or bad, and therefore they neither honour nor regard him. All their Worship is paid to some good Spirits they talk of, which are their Gods, and they suppose to be very numerous, and that every Person has one peculiar. They have also a sort of Conjurers, which are their Priests, and have each of them a God of their own, or rather, as is believ'd, a familiar Devil. This may suffice in general; we now come to say something of each Island of Note in particular, beginning with the most Northerly, and so proceeding Southward.

*Anguilla*, and *Sombbrero*, are the two first, in 18 Degrees North Latitude, both small and uninhabited.

*Virgines*, the Virgins, are 12 or 13 very little ones about the same Latitude, between the for-

mer and *Puerto Rico*, and desert as the last.

*Santa Cruz*, or the Holy Cross, somewhat to the Southward of the Virgins, is about 10 League in length, and somewhat less in breadth, has very fruitful Plains, possess'd by the *French*, who have made very good Settlements on it, the principal Trade being Sugar, for they do not much regard the Cotton, which it will produce in great Plenty.

*Anguila*, in *Spanish* an Eel, because it is long and narrow, is in 18 Degrees, all plain, but no thought worth a regular Plantation, yet there are several Families of *English* on it, who live almost like *Indians*, under no Government, and without any Trade, upon the Product of the Land.

*S. Martin* lies a little to the Southward of *Anguila*, 7 Leagues long, and 4 broad, famous for its great Salt-Pits, and possess'd by the *French*, and *Dutch* jointly, its principal Commodity besides Salt being Tobacco, which is here very good.

*Saba* is to the South-west, between the last and *Santa Cruz*, a pleasant Spot, and inhabited by some few *Dutch* Families, sent thither from their Colony at *S. Eustace*.

*S. Bartholomew*, East of *Saba*, bears abundance of good Trees, is full of variety of Birds, and has very good Stone for making of Lime, which the *French* who inhabit it, send to all the other Islands.

*S. Eustace*, West of the last, in 17 Degrees, 40 Minutes Latitude, and not above 5 Leagues in Compass, being one entire Mountain rising in the middle of the Sea, like a Sugar-Loaf. Yet the *Dutch* have there a Colony of about 1600 Men well provided. Only the top of the Mountain is wooded, all the rest being improv'd, and yielding abundance of Tobacco. There are no Springs in it, but every House has a large Cistern to preserve Rain-water.

*S. Christophers*, in 17 Degrees, 25 Minutes Latitude, is about 25 Leagues in Compass, divided into four Quarters, or Cantons, two belonging to the *French*, and two to the *English*, the former having the plainer and better Lands, and better Forts, but the latter are more numerous. The *French* Forts are four, mounted with good Cannon, especially towards the Sea; the *English* have but two. There is scarce any crossing the high Mountains which divide this Island, but the Communication is by Sea. The *French* have also here a good Town, inhabited by Merchants and Handicrafts. The Houses are of Timber, on a Stone Foundation, and the *Capucins*, *Jesuits*, and *Carmelites* have Monasteries; there is also an Hospital, and the Governour has a very stately House. The *English* have several good Houses, and five Churches. The chief Commodity of the Island is Sugar.

*Nieves*, or as we call it *Nevis*, in 17 Degrees 19 Minutes Latitude, only 6 Leagues in Compass, and in the midst of it a high Mountain wooded to the top. All the Houses of the Inhabitants, being about 3000 *English*, are round the Mountain, which is well water'd down to the Sea side. They drive a considerable Trade of Sugar, Ginger, and Tobacco, have 3 Churches meanly built, and a good Fort to secure the Landing-place, and Ware-houses.

*Redonda*, so call'd because round, is very small, and not inhabited.

*B. v. b. id.*



*Barbada*, or as the *English* call it, *Barbuda*, is in 17 Degrees, 30 Minutes Latitude, and 5 Leagues round. The *English* possess'd themselves of it long ago, and were forc'd to abandon it by the continual Persecutions of the *Caribbes* from other Islands; however they settled there again, and are now stronger than ever, dealing much in Cattel and Corn, which they have plenty of Trade for to the other Islands.

*Antego*, as we call it, properly *Santa Maria la Amigua*, in 16 Degrees, 40 Minutes Latitude, about 6 Leagues long, but not so broad. It was once thought not habitable, for want of fresh Water, but the *English*, who are Masters of it, have dry Wells, and made Cisterns for Rain-water, which supply them, and it is now well Inhabited. Its Capital Town, call'd *S. Johns*, has about 100 Houses, the People are very well to pass, having a good Trade with the other Islands, and very great plenty of Fowl and Cattel.

*Monserate*, in the same Latitude, to the Westward of the last, in Figure Oval, and about 3 Leagues in length. Here is much Mountain, cover'd with Cedars, and other beautiful Trees, but the Valleys are very fruitful, being well water'd. All the Product is like the other Islands. The *English* have been possess'd of it many Years, and are grown numerous, the most remarkable thing in it being a handsome Church, the Pulpit, Pews, and Wainscoting whereof is neat, and all of sweet-scented Wood.

*Guadalupe* is the largest, and one of the finest Islands the *French* possess in that Part, being about 60 Leagues in Compass, in 16 Degrees Latitude, and is cut in two from North to South by a little Channel, only capable of carrying Canoes. The Eastern Part is call'd *Cabes Terre*, and the Western *Basse Terre*. There are several Hills in it, and particularly about the middle is a high Mountain, partly craggy Rocks, and partly cover'd with stately Trees. At the foot of these Mountains are many large Vales, water'd by several Rivers and Brooks, as also some hot Waters, good for curing several Distempers proceeding from Cold. Several parts of these Plains are Plow'd, which is not usual in the other Islands, and they produce Rice, *Indian* Wheat, *Mandioca* Root to make their *Cassavi* Bread, *Potatoes*, Ginger, and Sugar, as well as any Country in the World.

In that Part call'd *Basse-Terre* there is a good Town, consisting of several Streets, the Houses well built, and two Stories high; besides a Parish-Church, and Monasteries of *Jesuits* and *Carmelites*, and large Ware-houses. The Governour lives in a square Castle without the Town. In the other Part, call'd *Cabes-Terre*, there is also a very good Fort for the security of it. The *French*, who are possess'd of this large Island, have erected several Sugar-works, and drive a considerable Trade with that Commodity, and the others above-mention'd.

*Desseada* lies to the Eastward of *Guadalupe*, in the same Latitude, and but 10 Leagues from it. The Land is good enough, but not inhabited as yet.

*Los Santos*, and *Las Aves*, or the Saints and Island of Birds; they are four in number, South of *Guadalupe*, the other West from them, and so call'd from the multitude of Birds in it, besides which they have nothing remarkable, none of them being inhabited.

*Marigalante* is in 15 Degrees, 40 Minutes Latitude, plain and woody, inhabited by the *French* who have made their Settlements there later than in other Islands.

*Dominica*, in 15 Degrees, 30 Minutes Latitude, 13 Leagues in length, and near as much over in the broadest Place. In the midst of it several high Mountains enclose an inaccessible Bottom, where from the tops of certain Rocks may be seen an infinite multitude of Reptiles of a prodigious Length and Bulk. This Island has never been possess'd by any *Europeans*, but continues still in the Dominion of the Native *Canibals*, who are at Peace with the *French*, but hate the *English*, and do them all the Mischief they are able. Those who have seen it, say it is one of the best of the *Caribbe* Islands, for its fruitful Valleys, and large Plains, water'd by abundance of excellent Springs. And this is the last of those the *Spaniards* call the Windward Islands.

*Martinico*, as we call it, or *Madanina* according to the *Indians*, is the first to the Northward of those the *Spaniards* call the Leeward Islands, seated in 14 Degrees, 30 Minutes of North Latitude, 16 Leagues long, and about 45 in compass, now one of the most noted, and best Peopled of all the *Caribbe* Islands. It has more Mountains than any of the other Islands, which are all not habitable, being full of wild Beasts, and Serpents, and cover'd with stately Trees. But there are abundance of Flats on Hills, and the sides of them all habitable, and good Land, tho' hard to cultivate, by reason of their extraordinary steepness. The Tobacco that grows on the Eminences is much better than that in the Plains. Here are said to be above 10000 *French* Inhabitants, besides *Indians* and Slaves, who are no less numerous. The *French* have very much fortified this Place, and it is now one of the strongest they have in the *West-Indies*.

*S. Lucy* lies South of the last, in 13 Degrees, 40 Minutes Latitude. There are in it two very high and steep Mountains, and at the foot of them pleasant Valleys, shaded with Trees, and water'd with many Springs, where the *French* have some Settlements.

*Barbadoes*, or according to the *Spaniards*, *Barbudas*, is between 13 and 14 Degrees of North Latitude, about 25 Miles in Length, and 12 in Breadth, and lies more to the Eastward than any of the *Caribbe* Islands, the Land generally Plain, or with only some easie Ascents, which afford a pleasant Prospect, being always green. The Capital of it is call'd *Bridge-Town*, seated on *Carlisle Bay*, in the South-east Part of the Island, on a low, boggy Ground, and consequently unhealthy, yet the best in all the *English* Islands, as containing 1200 Houses all of Stone, and lofty, and the Streets spacious. The Wharfs and Keys are handsome and convenient, and the Forts strong, being two, call'd *James*, and *Willoughby's* Forts, besides *Nedham's* at a distance, and three Batteries along the Bay betwixt them. Above this last the new Citadel is now building. Here is one large Church, and many Taverns and Eating-Houses. The Bay is capable of 500 Ships. Other Towns there are none of Note, but the Island is divided into eleven Parishes. Here are only two that can be call'd Rivers, which are *S. Joseph's* and *Scotland River*, the rest are all inconsiderable Brooks. The prin-



and Commodity of the Island is well known to be Sugar, besides which it produces Indigo, Cotton, and Ginger. The Inhabitants at present are computed at 25000 *English*, Men, Women and Children, and about 60000 Slaves.

*S. Vincent* is West from *Barbadoes*, somewhat Southerly, about 8 Leagues long, and 6 in breadth, with good Valleys under the Mountains, where the Native *Cambals* live pleasantly, and undisturb'd by any *European* Nation.

*Balia*, in 12 Degrees, 25 Minutes Latitude, is but 10 or 12 Leagues in Compass, and has a good Harbour, but is not inhabited, nor resorted to for want of fresh Water.

*Grenada*, in 12 Degrees, 16 Minutes Latitude, 7 Leagues long, the Breadth varying much. The *French* are in Possession of it, and drive a good Trade with Sugar, Ginger, and excellent Tobacco.

*Tobago* lies almost as far to the Eastward as *Barbadoes*, in 11 Degrees, 16 Minutes Latitude, is about 20 Leagues in Compass, and by the *Dutch*, who possess'd it, is call'd *New-Walchre*. It has no high Mountains, but some pleasant Hills, delightful Valleys, and fruitful Plains, shaded with Cedars, and other valuable Trees of a prodigious Height. The Land produces all things proper to those hot Countries without any great Labour; as Rice, Millet, Pease, Beans, Mandioca-Root, &c. being most plentifully water'd with curious Rivers, Brooks, and Springs. The *Dutch*, who have the Dominion of this Island, have, for their own Security, built on it 3 good Forts, and the Planters being grown very numerous, have now a very considerable Trade of Tobacco, Ginger, Cotton, Indigo, and Sugar.

*La Trinidad*, or the *Trinity*. The *Spaniards* reckon this and the others we are here to speak of, among the Leeward Islands, and therefore, as has been before observ'd, they are here plac'd with the others, tho' they seem more particularly to belong to South *America*. It is much larger than any of the others, seated between 10 and 11 Degrees Latitude, divided from the Continent, or Coast of *Paria*, by a *Streight*, which *Columbus*, the first Discoverer, call'd *Boca del Drago*, or the Dragon's Mouth, and is about 27 Leagues in length from East to West, and 25 in breadth from North to South. The *Spaniards* say it is neither healthy nor fruitful, tho' Sir *Walter Raleigh* contradicts them, yet they ought to know best, who settled it, and have there a small Town they call *S. Joseph*, which is as much as need be said of it, as being never famous for Trade, or any thing commendable.

*Margarita* lies to the Westward of the *Trinidad*, on the same Coast, in 11 Degrees Latitude, being about 15 Leagues long, and 6 in breadth, parted from the Continent of South *America* by a Channel about 7 Leagues wide. It is very destitute of fresh Water, and yet fruitful, woody, and full of Pasture. The *Spaniards* here have two small Towns, the one on the Sea Coast, with a Castle, the other two Leagues up the Land. This Place was formerly famous for the Pearl-Fishery, which was the occasion of building the aforesaid Fort, but at present that Fishery has ceas'd. The Natives receiv'd the *Spaniards* friendly, and were treated accordingly, so that they are still numerous, and live amicable with the *Spaniards*.

*Guaya* and *Corte* are two very small Islands

between *Margarita* and the Continent. They were in esteem whilst the Pearl Fishery lasted, but quite neglected since that ceas'd.

*Blanca*, *Tortuga*, *Orchilla*, *Roca*, and *Aves* lie almost in a Row, still to the Westward on the same Coast, and have nothing in them worth taking notice of.

*Buen-Ayre* is still West, in about 12 Degrees Latitude, about 16 Leagues in Compass. The Banks are so steep that the Ships must make fast to Trees, or carry their Anchors ashore. It is full of Cows, Sheep, Horses, Swine, and Goats, which have multiply'd there since the *Spaniards* put them in, who live there, tho' very few in number, among the Natives, they being all Christians. The only thing it yields to carry abroad is Logwood.

*Curaçao* is to the West of the last, about 10 Leagues in length, the breadth various. On the North-east side of it is a large Bay, but it has no good Anchoring for large Ships. It abounds in Cattel, and has much Logwood, but the *Dutch*, who have made themselves Masters of it, now plant Tobacco, and have Sugar-works on it.

*Aruba* is the last of these Islands, still to the Westward, about 5 Leagues in Compass, inhabited by a few *Spaniards* and Natives, which is as much as needs be said of it.

All the Islands on the Coast of *New-Spain*, set down in the Table, are so small and inconsiderable, that no Author has any more than their bare Names, which shall also suffice us, there being nothing in them that can require a particular mention.

#### California, or New-Albion,

Is in the South Sea, on the back of *New-Mexico*, and it was long dubious whether a Peninsula or an Island, but at last the *Spaniards* sail'd quite round, and made a Map of it, which shews it to extend from 24 to 36 Degrees of North Latitude, lying North west and South-east, being above 500 Leagues in length, the breadth near 150 Leagues, in 40 Degrees Latitude, but somewhat to the Southward it grows narrower, and continues tapering off all the way to the end. The *Streight* which parts it from the Continent is all along 30, 40, or 50 Leagues over, and even more in many Places, but every where shoal, and many small scattering Islands in it, which renders the Passage very dangerous, and together with the vehement Cold of the Northern Part hinder'd the full Discovery of it for many Years; for the Discoverers have found it colder in 50 Degrees of North Latitude in *America* than in 60 in *Europe*, and so proportionably. All the Island is inhabited by abundance of *Indian* Nations, who either go naked, or at best use only some small covering of Mats, or Skins. Their way of Living and Superstitions much the same, as has been said, of other Northern *Americans*, besides that, to say the Truth, the Inland of it has never been discover'd, nor have any made so long a stay upon the Coasts as to know much of it. To this Day the *Spaniards* have made no Conquests in it that we have heard of, tho' on the Continent they have subdued as high as the most Northern Part of *California*. This makes it evident that the Island is not worth their trouble, tho' so large, for had it been, they who have run up to above 45 Degrees Latitude on the Continent



Continent would never have totally neglected that which is so near, and reaches even within the Tropick of Cancer. It is too remote from any other Nation, and that distance has been its greatest Protection, for except the Spaniards, no other European People can come at them, but that immense way of the Streights of Magellan, or the French, crossing all the Continent at Ca-

nada, the breadth whereof is yet unknown, notwithstanding the blind Guesles and Conjecture of F. Hennepin, which no Man who understands any thing of Geography can think reasonable. This is as much as need be said of California till better known, and for the small Islands about it, the Name of them may suffice, there being nothing in them remarkable.

## CHAP. XII.

Of South A M E R I C A, and first of T I E R R A F I R M E;  
or the M A I N - L A N D, subject to S P A I N.  
TERRA FIRMA.



AS all the North America, as far as subject to the Spaniards, being much the greater Part of what is worth Conquering, is subordinate to the Viceroy of Mexico, and comprehended under the Title of New Spain, so is all the South America, tho' of such vast Extent, under the direction of the Viceroy of Peru, and often call'd by that Name. However, this, as well as the North America,

is divided into several Regions and Governments, and those again subdivided into Provinces, of all which we are now to treat, as has been done of the others, they being all to be seen at one View in the general Table of America, and now we come to describe them in particular.

The first entire Region, or Portion of this Southern Continent, is by one universal Name call'd *Tierra Firme*, or the *Main-Land*, not but that



that all the others are also upon the Continent ; but this Name was given to this Part, because it was the first found out after the Islands, and therefore call'd *Main-Land*, to distinguish it from them ; yet as Discoveries encreas'd, every Country had its distinctive Denomination,

and this still retain'd the first, which peculiarly adher'd to the Province of *Panama*, and more generally to the rest here mention'd under the Head, which may be seen at once under the following Table.

Tierra Firme, or the Province peculiarly call'd the <i>Main-Land</i> , or of <i>Panama</i> , or <i>Castilla del Oro</i> .	{	Panama. Porto Belo. Nombre de Dios. Nata. Acla. Caretta. Comagre.	{	Santiago Fort. Cumana, o Nueva Cordova. Morequito. Acavacuri. Santo Tome.
Cartagena.	{	Cartagena. Villa de Maria. Mopox. Cenit. Tolu. S. Sebastian de buena Vista.	{	Santa Fe de Bogota. San Miguel. Torayma. La Trinidad. Palma. Timia. Pamplona. Merida. S. Christoval. Velez. Marequita. Ybague. Vitoria. S. Juan de los Llanos. Caceres. Plasencia.
Santa Marta.	{	Santa Marta. Los Reyes. Ocana. Tamalameque. Tenerife. La Ramada.	{	Popayan. Santa Fe de Antiochia. Caramanta. Arma. Sinzerma. Cartago. Cali. S. Sebastian de la Plata. Buena Ventura. Timane. Pasto. Madrigal. Almaguer. Agreda. Guadalajara de Buga. S. Juan de Truxillo.
Rio de la Hacha.	{	Rio de la Hacha. La Rancheria. Coquibocoa.	{	The New Kingdom of Granada.
Venezuela.	{	Venezuela, o Coro. Nuestra Senora de Carvalledo. Santiago de Leon. Nueva Valencia. Nueva Xerez. Nueva Segovia. Tucuyo. Truxillo. Portilla de Croya. Laguna. Maracayana. Comanagossa.	{	Paria, or Nueva Andaluzia.

Tierra Firme, or the Province peculiarly call'd the *Main-Land*, or Province of *Panama*, and *Castilla del Oro*.

Which last Name is now quite out of use, and cannot be properly apply'd to this Province, because under that Name there was a much greater extent of Land, which in some old Maps is still made much more than it was ; but being to speak of things as they now are, it is needless to enter upon a farther Disquisition of that Matter. The Name it now generally goes by, is either *Tierra Firme*, the *Main-Land*, or the Province of *Panama*, from its Capital City.

The Extent of it is not considerable, the Sovereign Court establish'd at *Panama* being only intended to dispatch the Fleets, and decide all Controversies among those concern'd in Trade. Thus the greatest length of it from the Frontiers of *Cartagena* and *Popayan*, to those of *Veragua*, is about 90 Leagues, and the greatest breadth from Sea to Sea, 60, but where least, only 18,

which is between *Porto Belo* and *Panama*, and that in a strait Line is not above 7 or 8 Leagues, as *Acosta* makes out, but the great Hills and Windings make it so long.

Most of the Land is uncouth and Mountainous, with abundance of Bogs, and consequently barren, producing little besides *Indian Wheat*, and but a small quantity of that, yet has good grazing for Cattel, and particularly Cows. The Air is generally thick, full of Vapours, hot and moist, and therefore very unwholesome from May till November ; however, the Trees are continually green, and cover'd with Leaves, but afford little Fruit. The Sea and Rivers afford great plenty of Fish, but the latter are very full of Alligators ; and as for Beasts, here are all sorts, but especially multitudes of wild Cats, and of a small sort of Creatures, which have a sort of a Bag under their Bellies, wherein they carry their young ones, and at Night get into Houses and Yards, and destroy the Poultry.

This Province is form'd of the famous *Isthmus* which joins the North and South *America*, and across



across which all the Trade between *Peru* and *Spain* is manag'd, the distance round by Sea being too great, and the Danger, either through the Streights of *Magellan*, or farther to the Southward too great. The Resort of the *Spanish* Ships was first to *Nombre de Dios*, afterwards to *Porto Belo*, as the safer and more convenient Harbour, there the Commodities are all landed, and carried over that Neck of Land of 18 Leagues, as has been said, to *Panama*, where they are again Shipp'd for *Peru*, and all the Coasts of the South Sea. In like manner the Plate and other Goods of *Peru* are transported by Ship to *Panama*, and thence convey'd by Land-Carriage to *Porto Belo*, where they are imbark'd on board the *Spanish* Ships.

The City of *Panama*, Capital of the Province, is seated on the Coast of the South Sea, 18 Leagues, as has been said, from *Nombre de Dios*, its opposite on the North Sea. It takes up but a small Compass, because hemm'd in on the one side by a Marsh, whose foul Exhalations render it very unwholesome; besides that it stands due East and West, so that as soon as the Sun is up, there is no being in any of the Streets for want of Shade, and the Heat is so violent, that it kills any Man that goes about much in the Sun. It might have been built in healthy Places, half a League from the Sea, but the Mistake being once committed, building is so chargeable there, that they care not to remove, besides that, it is only inhabited by Merchants, who get Estates in a few Years, and are gone. Tho' the Country about it is barren, the City is plentifully provided with all things by Sea. *Peter Arias de Avila*, the first Governour of the Country for the Emperour *Charles* the Fifth, was the Founder, and it stands in near 8 Degrees of North Latitude. It has a good Port, where the Ships remain dry at the Ebb, as does all the Coast for half a League. This is the Account of *Cieza* in his first Part of the Chronicle of *Peru*, who speaks not by hearsay, but as an Eye-witness.

*Nombre de Dios* was built by *James de Nicuesa*, on the North Sea, where, for some time, it had all the Trade of *Spain*, and *Peru*, but being found to be extremely unhealthy, the Engineer *John Baptista Antonelli*, by the King of *Spain's* Order, remov'd the Station to *Porto Belo*, and says, that when he went to view it, there were not above 30 Families, and since it has decreas'd, as not being relorted to, so that it is only inhabited by a few *Indians* and Blacks.

*Porto Belo*, is the Place the Fleets now resort to, as being more healthy, and convenient for loading and unloading of the Ships, and their security against the Weather, and Enemies, having two Forts, one on each side the entrance of the Harbour. It is 5 Leagues West from *Nombre de Dios*, the Harbour deep, and capable of many Ships, all a good Sand, without Rocks or Flats, with 12 Rivers and Brooks falling into it, which make easie watering for Ships at all times. About it there is plenty of excellent Timber for building of Ships, and Stones for Ballist. There are two ways from hence to *Panama* for transporting of Goods, the one all by Land, of 18 Leagues, a better Road than that from *Nombre de Dios*; the other, 18 Leagues by Sea to the Mouth of the River *Chagre*, West-

ward, and thence up that River, when it has Water enough to a Place call'd *Venta de las Cruces*, whence there are but 5 Leagues more by Land to *Panama*.

*Nata* is seated 30 Leagues West from *Panama*, on the South Sea, Founded by the Governour *Peter Arias's* Order, but this is no considerable Place of Trade, and consequently of little Note. The same may be said of *Acla*, another inconsiderable Place of Trade, founded also by *Peter Arias*, above-mention'd, on the North Sea, at the Mouth of the Gulph of *Uraba*, now gone to ruin. *Careta* and *Comagre* are also upon the North Sea, inhabited only by Natives, and formerly the Heads of two Tribes of them, which had each its *Cacique*, or Petty King.

The chief River here is that above-mention'd, by the Natives call'd *Chagre*, and by the *Spaniards* sometimes *Rio de Lagartos*, that is, the River of *Alligators*, up which, as has been said, the Goods are sometimes carry'd towards *Panama*, that is, chiefly in Winter, when it has Water enough, for in Summer it has very little. This is on the North Sea, and on the South that of *Chapo*, near whose Springs formerly much Gold was found. Westward from *Panama*, is that call'd *de las Balsas*, on whose Banks there grows plenty of good Timber for building of Ships. At certain times this River swells so high, that it overflows all the Country about.

*Columbus* was the first that discover'd this Country, that is, the Coast along the North Sea, and gave the Names to *Porto Belo*, and *Nombre de Dios*. After him several attempted to make Settlements in those Parts, and when they had sustain'd great Losses, and suffer'd the greatest hardships imaginable, at length *Vasco Nunez de Balboa* commanding, got intelligence from the *Indians* of the nearness of the South Sea, and travelling over the *Isthmus*, open'd the way to it. *Peter Arias*, the succeeding Governour, founded, as was said above, *Panama*, and Ships were then built on the South-Sea to discover along those Coasts.

The *Spaniards* being possess'd of these wealthy Countries, and the Fame of the Treasure found there spread abroad, excited the Avarice of many to rob them of what they had purchas'd with such unspeakable Fatigues. The first we find attempting upon these Parts was Sir *Francis Drake*, who took *Nombre de Dios* and plunder'd it, and proceeded thence to *Porto Belo*, where he did the same and dy'd, as we read in his Expeditions; but when he took *Nombre de Dios* it was almost abandon'd, for its Unhealthiness, as was said above, and at *Porto Belo* there were not above 8, or 10 Houses built as yet. Capt. *Parker* in the Year 1601, again surpriz'd *Porto Belo*, when it was in a better Condition, which he Plunder'd and went off, without doing any farther Harm, and carrying away 9 or 10000 Ducats there was then in the King's Treasury, 120000 having been sent away to *Cartagena* before his coming. Next to him Capt. *Morgan*, having gather'd a great Number of Pyrates in the Year 1669, attack'd *Porto Belo* in the Night, and surprizing the Sentinels, who there lay secure without Thoughts of an Enemy, Master'd the Forts, Plunder'd the Town, and put the Inhabitants to Ransom. Here they stay'd several Days, committing all the Outrages the most barbarous Pagans could be guilty of, ravishing the Women, murdering the Soldiers after

Quarter



Quarter given, and putting the Inhabitants to the Torture to oblige them to discover, whether they had any hidden Treasure. The following Year 1670, *Morgan* return'd again with a greater number of Pyrates, and running up the River *Chagre*, made his Way to *Panama*, which he also took, plunder'd and burnt, committing the same Barbarities over again, that they had practis'd the Year before, all which may be seen as large in the History of *Bucaniers of America*.

Before we leave this Province, it is proper to observe that *Darien*, once a Province of it self is now only a part of this we here speak of; but at present quite desert and abandon'd. It takes Name from a River so call'd, on which in the Year 1510 the *Spaniards* built a Town, and call'd it *Nuestra Señora la Antigua del Darien*, which advanc'd so far as to be erected into a Bishop's See. However when the South Sea was discover'd, *Peter Arias*, the Governour, remov'd all the Inhabitants to *Panama*, by reason of the unwholesomeness of the other, which had been the Death of many Hundreds of *Spaniards*, as both *Peter Martyr* and *Comara* inform us. This is the Place so much talk'd on of late Years, on Account of the *Scots* Settlement attempted to be made there, on Pretence that the *Spaniards*, with whom we were then at Peace had no Title to it, after an unquestion'd Possession of near 200 Years.

#### Cartagena,

The next Province to the Eastward, is divided from that of *Panama*, by the Gulph of *Uraba* and River of *Darien*, which are its Western Boundaries, on the North it has the North Sea; on the East *Rio Grande*, or the Great River; parting it from the Province of *Santa Marta*, and on the South is separated by a Ridge of Mountains from the Province of *Papayan*, according to *Cieza*, whom I rather choose to follow, as one that liv'd there, than *Lut*, who makes the New Kingdom of *Granada*, its Southern Boundary. Its whole Length from East to West, between *Rio Grande* and the Gulph of *Uraba* is about 80 Leagues, and about the same Breadth from North to South between the Ocean and *Papayan*.

The Country is mostly high Mountains and deep Valleys, cover'd with thick Woods, which make it very Moist, and the nearest to the Line, for it lies between 7 and 11 Degrees of Latitude, extremely hot, and consequently not at all healthy. That excess of Moisture is also the Cause it does not produce any *European* Grain, or Fruit; but the Mountains are full of Aromatick Trees, from which the Natives draw Odoriferous Gums and Medicinal Balsam of singular Virtue. There does not appear to be any Gold in this Country, or but very little. The Natives were fierce and warlike, doing much Mischief to the *Spaniards* for a long Time with their poison'd Arrows, till they have been all either destroy'd, or brought into Subjection. On the Mountains there are all sorts of Wild Beasts, and no less Variety of Fowl, and the Sea yields great Plenty of Fish.

*Cartagena*, the Metropolis of this Province, had its Name from that in *Spain*, because of some Resemblance there is between both their Ports; It is seated in 10 Degrees of North Latitude, in a Peninsula, on a large Plain, the Coast running flat and sandy to the Sea. On the South side it has a Morass, call'd *Canapote*, over which there is

a Causeway, with two Arches in it, for the Tide to come in and out to the Marsh. The Building of the Town is very handsome, and it has 5 Principal Streets, each near 600 Paces in Length, with Stately Houses; besides a large Street running athwart them all, and several other smaller. The publick Structures are the Cathedral; the Town House, the Custom-House and some Monasteries of *Dominicans* and *Franciscans*. The Harbour is reckon'd one of the best in the World: And is the place where the Galleons lie at Anchor, and receive their Lading from *Porto-Belo*; and hence they sail to the *Havana* in *Cuba*, in their Way to *Europe*.

Sir *Francis Drake* took this City in the Year 1585, and after Plundering, set Fire to it, which consum'd only one Part of it, the rest being ransom'd by the Inhabitants for 120000 Ducats; however the Booty was not considerable, the Inhabitants having before sent away all their best Effects to *Tolu*, an Inland Town. This we have in the Accounts of Sir *Francis Drake's* Voyages. In 1697, Monsieur de *Pointi* with a Squadron of French Ships, took this City, after a formal Siege and carry'd off a very considerable Mass of Treasure, as may be seen in the particular Relation of that Expedition.

The other Towns here are *Villa de Maria*, Maries Town 32 Leagues South from *Cartagena*, built by Don *Pedro de Heredia*, in the Year 1534. Next *Santa Cruz de Mopox*, 70 Leagues distant from *Cartagena*, the Way that is always us'd, that is by Sea to the Great River and then up it, for it stands on the Banks of the River of *S. Magdalena*, very conveniently for Trade, but not healthy, as lying among Morasses, built by Capt. *Peter de Heredia*, Ann. 1535. *Zenu* is a Harbour, or large Bay 25 Leagues from *Cartagena*, where abundance of Salt is made, which has drawn some People, who have there built an inconsiderable Town of the same Name. *S. Sebastian de Buena Vista*, once an indifferent Place at the Bottom of the Gulph of *Uraba*, was afterwards abandon'd, so that it has scarce any Inhabitants at present. *Tolu*, or *Santiago de Tolu* is 6 Leagues from the Sea south-west from *Cartagena* and 12 Leagues distant from it, because there is no going all the way by Land, but about by Sea, and then round Morasses yet is reckon'd healthy, and the Land produces all sorts of *European* Grain and Fruit. From hence comes the precious and much fam'd Balsam of *Tolu*, reckon'd the best of Balsams, flowing from Trees by Incision, when the Sun is hottest. It is of a ruddy gold colour, of an indifferent Consistence, and no ill Taste, but an excellent Smell, and it is good for all the Uses that Balm of *Gilead* was put to; the Curious may see all its Vertues in *Monardes*, from whom we have taken this little.

#### Santa Marta

Follows next to the Eastward, having *Cartagena* on the West, the North Sea on the North, *Rio de la Hacha* on the East, and the New Kingdom of *Granada* on the South; its Extent 70 Leagues in Length and as much in Breadth. A Country abounding in *Indian* Wheat, and Potatoes, and yielding much Gold and Copper, as also some Emeraulds, and other precious Stones.

Towards the Sea, the Heat is excessive, but farther up the Land the Air is much more temperate,



rate, because of the nearness of the snowy Mountains, which cool it; particularly that District or Liberty they call *Tairona* is very Cold, as being high and Mountainous. Near the Sea, the Breezes help much to moderate the Heat, being the East and North-east Winds. *September* and *October* are very rainy Months, because then the Winds blow more from the Land, but the rest of the Year the dry Winds prevailing, there is very little Rain.

The Natives are of a good Stature, and active; but haughty and perverse, so that the *Spaniards* have not yet been able entirely to subdue them; many still living a brutal Life on the Mountains, under their own petty King, wearing Cotton Cloaks of several Colours, and using poison'd Arrows in their Wars.

This Province is sub-divided into several Districts, as that of *Tairona* abovemention'd, six Leagues from the North Sea, the Mountain Part whereof is not yet fully subdu'd, but the *Spaniards* are Masters of the rich Valley; near to which is that of *Mongay*, no less large and wealthy. *Buritica* is a Liberty 13 Leagues from *Santa Marta*; *Bondu* but three Leagues and a half from it; and the Valley of *Coto* is half way between the City and the District of *Poziguecia*. *Betema* and *Chimala* are two other Territories; the Men of the latter are noted for Strength and Bravery and the Women for Beauty. In this Province begins the great Ridge of Mountains, which cuts all South America in two, and runs down to the Streights of *Magellan*, of which we shall speak in another Place.

*Santa Marta* is the Capital City from which the Province takes Name, seated in 10 Degrees and a half of North Latitude, in a very wholesome Place; on the Coast of the North Sea, where it has a safe and spacious Harbour, with good Anchorage, and conveniency for refitting of Ships, and Watering. The City was once much more populous than it is since the Trade of *Spain* has decreas'd, however it is a Bishop's See, whose Prelate is Suffragan to the Metropolitan of the New Kingdom of *Granada*, and yet that scarce keeps up the Place, which is therefore neglected and expos'd to all Enemies.

The other Towns are *Tenerife*, 40 Leagues South-west from *Santa Marta*, on the Banks of the great River of *St. Magdalen*. 2. *Tamalameque*, or *Villa de las Palmas*, 20 Leagues South of *Tenerife*, and 2 from *Magdalen* River, in 8 Degrees North Latitude, the Country about it hot, but often overflow'd by the River, which occasions much Pasture, and consequently Plenty of Cattle, but it bears little else. The *Indians* of this Part are very stupid, and wholly addicted to Sloth and Feasting. 3. *Ciudad de los Reyes*, or the City of the Kings, 50 Leagues South-east from *Santa Marta*, on the River *Guatapori*, having its Summer when our Winter is, and that Temperate, by reason of the East Winds continually blowing, and their Winter all Rain, when the People are subject to Agues. The Soil is fruitful in Pasture and Fruit; and the Natives are Numerous, Cruel and Warlike, so that the *Spaniards* being very few, have not been able to subdue them all. 4. *Oconia* is a small Town upon a Pate up the Country, next the Territory of *Tamalameque*.

*La Ramada*, first call'd *Salamanca*, is 20 Leagues East from *Santa Marta*, at the Foot of the snowy Mountains, and on the Edge of the Val-

ley of *Enpori*, which is as full of Veins of Copper as of Stones.

#### Rio de la Hacha

Is a very small Province joining on the West to *Santa Marta*, on the North it has the North Sea, on the East a great Bay that parts it from *Venezuela*, and on the South the New Kingdom of *Granada*. The Extent of it up the Inland is but small, yet that extraordinary fruitful, once plentiful in Gold and precious Stones, and the Sea yielding Pearls and Salt; but all those precious Commodities have fail'd, except the last, which is of least Value. The Land has many wild Beasts, and the Water swarms with Alligators.

The Town call'd *Rio de la Hacha*, had first the Name of *Nuestra Sennora de los Nieves*, and after that *de los Remedios*, is 30 Leagues East from *Santa Marta*, 17 South from *Cape de la Vela*, built on a small Hill, about a Mile from the Sea, where it has an indifferent Port. It was formerly considerable for Wealth, yet had not above an hundred Houses, when in greatest Prosperity, and much less, when taken by Sir *Francis Drake* in his *American* Expeditions. Six Leagues to the Eastward of it is another small open Town call'd *La Rancheria*, being only a Village of Huts, as the Name imports, for those who follow'd the Pearl Fishery; besides there are two other Villages rather than Towns, the one call'd *Tapia* and the other *Ramada*, of all which there is nothing worth mentioning.

#### Venezuela,

On the West is separated from the Province of *Rio de la Hacha*, by the Gulph of *Coro* and the Lake *Maracaibo*, and by the Mountains from the New Kingdom of *Granada*; the same Kingdom of *Granada* being on the South; *Paria*, or New *Andalusia* on the East, and the North Sea on the North; so that it extends about 130 Leagues in Length from East to West, and 80 in Breadth, from North to South.

The Soil is fruitful and yields two Crops in a Year; besides there is excellent grazing, and abundance of Cattel, which is the Reason this is call'd the Magazine, or Granary; because from hence they send to other Provinces great Quantities of Wheaten Meal, Bisket, Cheele and Bacon; as also much Cotton Cloth, great Numbers of Hides, and vast Quantities of *Sarsaparilla*, but above all of *Cacao* growing in the Territory of *Caracas*, and reckon'd the best in the World. For all Game and Fish, there is as much Plenty as any where; but as for Gold or Silver, none is yet found.

This large Province contain'd several Nations of *Indians*, from whom of Consequence several Districts took Names, of some of which mention will be made. It is worth observing, that notwithstanding the great Havock made in this Province by the *Germans* and all the pretended Cruelty of the *Spaniards*, there are still reckon'd in this Country above 100000 Tributary *Indians*, all above 18 and under 50 Years of Age, for no others Pay. The Towns the *Spaniards* have built here are

*Coro*, or *Venezuela*, the Capital, seated in 11 Degrees Latitude, in a temperate Country, but ill provided with fresh Water, and standing in a



Plain, tho' all about it be Mountainous. About the Town *Santa Clara* grow to a wonderful bigness, and there is much Honey and Wax, and sufficient of both *European* and *Indian* Wheat. Two Ports belong to it, the one a League from it Westward, the other 2 Leagues and a half to the Northward. The Land puts out from the City 12 Leagues into the Sea, and is call'd *Paragana*; but the utmost Point *Cape S. Roman*. The Governour of the Province and the Bishop, who is Suffragan to *Santo Domingo* in the Island *Hispaniola* reside here. Near the City, and the Way leading to the Mountains, is the Plain the *Spaniards* call *Los Llanos de Carora*, 16 Leagues in Length and 6 in Breadth, abounding in all things for the Support of Life, particularly *Indian* Wheat, as also Beasts of Burden. From the Town they go into the Territory call'd *Bariquezameru*, over the Hills *Zicabaras*, where are a barbarous sort of *Indians*, not yet wholly subdu'd.

*Nuestra Señora de Carvalleda*, is the next Town, about 80 Leagues East from *Coro*, in the Province of *Caracas*, near the Sea, but the Port not Safe; yet there is a Fort call'd also *Caracas* built on it. Next is *Santiago de Leon* in the same Province, 4 Leagues to the Southward of the last. 4. *New Valencia*, 25 Leagues from the last, and 7 from the Port of *Bombana*. 5. *Nueva Xerez*, 15 Leagues almost South from the last. 6. *New Segovia*, 25 Leagues South from *New Xerez*, and 80 South-east from *Coro*. 7. *Tucayo*, so call'd from the Valley it stands in, and is about 50 Leagues from the North Sea. 8. *Truxillo*, or *Nuestra Señora de la Paz*, almost 80 Leagues South from *Coro*, in the Country of the *Cucacas*. 9. *Laguna* is on the Bank of the Lake *Maracaibo*, about 40 Leagues from *Coro*. 10. *Maracapaná* is one of the best Ports on all this Coast, on which Account there is a small Town built on it. There are two other little Towns or Villages call'd *Porrilla de Carora* and *Comanagossa*, of which there needs no more to be said.

The great Lake *Maracaibo*, abovemention'd, and by the *Spaniards* sometimes call'd *Lago de Nuestra Señora*, or our Ladies Lake, runs in from the Sea, or Gulph of *Coro*, reckon'd about 80 Leagues in Compass, or less according to some. Being open to the Sea, it ebbs and flows; several small Rivers fall into it, and it breeds abundance of Fish, especially *Manatis*. At the Bottom it receives a River which comes out of the New Kingdom of *Granada*, which make a great conveniency of Trade between the two Countries. Some of the Natives to this Day build their Huts on Trees hanging over the Lake, which the first Discoverers are thought to have taken for the Occasion of calling this Country *Venezuela*, or little *Venice*, from the People living so among the Waters.

This Country and all the Coast along to the North *America* was first discover'd by *Christopher Columbus*, after whom *John de Ampues*, in the Year 1527, by Order of the Sovereign Court of *Hispaniola* took Possession and began to settle in it, contracting Friendship with *Manare*, a Powerful *Cacique*. Whilst he was there, the Emperor *Charles* the 5th made a Grant of these Countries to the *Veslers*, rich Merchants of *Ausburg*, whose Lieutenant *Alfinger* arriv'd there in 1529, with 400 Foot and 80 Horse. He having subdu'd the Natives about the Lake of *Maracaibo*, bent all his Thoughts upon finding out of Mines of Gold

and Silver, which failing, he rang'd about the Inland Provinces, Plundering and Butchering the Natives, till he was wounded by them, whereof he dy'd. His Successors manag'd no better, all their Design being to enrich themselves at once, till the *Veslers* neglecting to send new Commanders and fresh Supplies of Men, the Sovereign Court in *Hispaniola*, undertook the Province again, and sent several successive Commanders, who settled in the Country and built the Towns we have mention'd, subduing all the Natives, except some that shelter'd themselves on inaccessible Mountains. In the Year 1550, the Blacks being grown very numerous, began to Mutiny, which oblig'd the *Spaniards* to put all the Males to the Sword.

*Paria*, or *New-Andalusia*, and *Cumana*.

There is no ascertaining the Bounds of this Province, especially on the South, because there the Inland is not conquer'd, and but little known; but on the West it borders on *Venezuela*, on the North it has the Ocean, and on the East no other Limits can be ascrib'd it but the Gulph of *Paria*, and the Country of *Caribana*.

It commences on the East at *Cape Salinas*, running out upon *Boca del Drago*, and tends Westward 70 Leagues to *Cape Araya*, along which space there is no Town, nor any thing remarkable till we come to *Cape Araya*, where there is a natural Salt-pit, which is capable of furnishing a great Fleet every Year, and thither the *Dutch* used to go for it without any Obstruction; till in the Year 1605, all their Ships were surpriz'd by the *Spaniards*, as the Men were loading the Salt, many of them put to the Sword, and the rest sent to the Gallies. After which the King of *Spain* caus'd a Fort to be built there, call'd *Santiago*, which hinders all other Nations taking Salt there.

Turning the aforelaid *Cape Araya*, is the Gulph of *Cumana*, which runs about 40 Leagues into the Land, and from the Mouth of the said Gulph the Coast is reckon'd about 40 Leagues more to *Cape Cordillera*, where *Venezuela* meets it. Near the Mouth of the Gulph, *James de Castellon*, in the Year 1522, built a Fort at the Mouth of the River *Cumana*; and 2 Leagues higher is the Town of *Cumana*, or *New-Cordova*, where the *Spaniards* have been ever since settled, and command all the Coast, by the help of three other small Towns and Forts, call'd *Morequito*, *Acacurari*, and *Santo Tome*. Up the Inland they do not extend far, the Natives being still unconquer'd, who yet come not within some Leagues to molest them.

These *Indians* went, and still go naked, only covering their Privities with Gourds, or Cakes of Gold, or bits of Cotton Cloth. The Maids hide nothing, but when Marry'd, they cover as much as the Men. The *Caciques* keep as many Wives as they please, and by way of Courtship always offer one of them to their Guests. These Salvages eat Man's Flesh, and are of strong Bodies, and courageous. As for the Growth of the Country, it is much the same as in the Neighbouring Provinces, the Soil producing all sorts of Trees, Plants, and Grain.

Not to forget the East side, it begins at *Boca del Drago*, so call'd from the violent Current setting out of it, which is ready to swallow Ships, being a Streight form'd by *Cape Salinas*, and



the Island of the *Trinity*, leading into the Gulph of *Paria*, which is between this Coast and the said Island, whence the Coast runs first South, and then South east to the Mouth of the great River of *Paria*, or *Oronoko*.

*Colambus* having discover'd this Coast, the *Dominican Friars* begg'd of the King, in the Year 1513, that they might have the converting of those Infidels without any Force. This being granted, two of them landed, and being well receiv'd, continued there with hopes of Success, till a *Spanish Ship* carrying away several of the Natives, the others in Revenge murder'd the Friars. Nevertheless, in 1518, several *Dominicans* and *Franciscans* ventur'd thither again, and built two small Houses with the Consent of the People; but in 1520, *Alonso de Ojeda* surprizing several of the Natives, so incens'd the rest, that they combin'd together, kill'd him the next time he landed, and murder'd all the Friars. To revenge this, *Gonzalo de Ocampo* was sent with 300 Men from *Hispaniola*, who slew a great number of those Salvages, and destroy'd their Villages. The Natives soon after had their Satisfaction, falling upon a little Town *Francis de Soto* had founded on the Coast, and destroying all the *Spaniards*, except only 19 that escap'd in a Boat. To requite this Slaughter, *James de Castellon* came in the Year 1522 from *Hispaniola*, and put to cruel Deaths all the *Indians* he could catch who were any way concern'd in the Slaughter of the Religious Men, and other *Spaniards*, and then built the Town of *Cumana* on the Continent. Afterwards *Jerome Ortal*, and *Anthony Sedeno*, ventur'd many Leagues up the Inland, and dy'd there, so that their Followers grown weary of those fruitless Toils, return'd some of them to *Venezuela*, and others to *Cumana*, without finding any thing worth their Labour in several hundred Leagues.

#### The New Kingdom of Granada

Comes next in our way returning back to the Westward, and borders Northward on *Santa Marta*, Eastward on *Venezuela*, and other Countries not yet subdued, Southward with more Regions, as yet scarce known to us, and Westward on *Popayan*; the whole Length being 130 Leagues, and the breadth above 30, lying between 2 and 9 Degrees of North Latitude.

The whole Country is subject to great Rains, and is full of Woods, but breeds mighty numbers of black Cattel, Horses, and Mules. Its principal Subdivisions are those of *Bogota* and *Tumia*, and the Country of the *Panches*, almost surrounding them both, which last is excessive hot, but that of *Bogota* temperate; the People of this last, and of *Tumia*, are by one common Name call'd *Moxes*. *Tumia* far exceeds *Bogota* in Veins of Gold and Emeralds, tho' the other is not without much Wealth. All Parts here are healthy, and yields great plenty of Salt, which is a good Commodity in the adjacent Parts. The *Bogotes* and *Tumians* are of a large Stature, and strong of Body, and their Women Beautiful and Fair, wearing Garments of Cotton of several Colours girt about their Waists, and on their Heads some use Caps, and others Coronets of Cotton curiously wrought. They are extremely addicted to Dancing and Singing, much given to Lying, and tolerably industrious in learning of Arts. The

*Panches* were formerly Man-eaters, but the other two Nations abhor'd that Food.

Generally the whole Country abounds in Provisions, yet there was a Territory adjoining to *Tumia*, where the People fed much upon *Pismires*. No Province affords better Grazing, but the main thing is, that there are many very rich Gold Mines, and more of excellent Copper. The great Wealth of this Country, and the goodness of the Climate has drawn abundance of *Spaniards* to settle here, so that they have many Towns, of which we are now to speak.

The Metropolis is call'd *Santa Fe de Bogota*, built by *Gonzalo Ximenes de Quesada*, in the 4th Degree of North Latitude, at the Foot of the Mountains of *Bogota*. This is the Residence of the Governour, the Sovereign Court, the Archbishop, and other Officers; besides here are two Monasteries, one of *Dominicans*, and the other of *Franciscans*. Near it is the Lake *Guatavita*, where the Natives us'd to offer much Gold, and other things of Value to their Idols. The Air is extraordinary wholesome, and there is great plenty of all Provisions, but no Gold has been found near it.

The Town of *S. Miguel* or *S. Michael*, is 12 Leagues to the Northward, erected for convenience of Trading with the *Panches*. *Tocayma* is 15 Leagues from *Santa Fe*, West North-west; on the Banks of the River *Pati*, which falls into that of the *Magdalen*, and in the Country of the *Panches*, a People much civiliz'd since the coming of the *Spaniards*. *La Trinidad* is 24 Leagues North-West from *Santa Fe*, and 6 West from the great Snowy Mountains, commonly call'd *Paramo* for their excessive Coldness, being a branch of the great *Cordillera*, or *Andes*, that runs to the Streight of *Magellan*, of which we shall speak elsewhere. *Palma* is another Town in this same Territory, 15 Leagues North-west from *Santa Fe*. *Tumia* takes Name from its Province, built on the top of a Hill 20 Leagues North-east from the Metropolis, and the most trading Town of all the Country. *Pamplona*, 60 Leagues North-east from *Santa Fe*, rich in Gold Mines, and abundance of Sheep. *Merida*, next the Borders of *Venezuela*, has some Gold, and a good Trade by way of the great Lake *Maracaibo*. *S. Christoval*, 30 Leagues North of *Pamplona*, quite destitute of Gold, but rich in Pasture and Cattel. The rest of the Towns are nam'd in the Table, and have not any thing particular to claim farther Mention.

Besides Gold and Provisions, and Salt above-mention'd, this Country produces all sorts of Fruit, much *Guajacum*, good for the Pox, and *Xagua Wood*, which tho' it self white, makes a black Dye.

In the Year 1536, *Ferdinand de Lugo*, Admiral of the *Canary Islands*, sent *Gonzalo Ximenes de Quesada* to discover the Countries along the great *Magdalen River*. He advanc'd above 200 Leagues from the Sea with unspeakable Labour, by reason of the difficulty of the Way through Woods, and over Morasses, and coming to the Territories of the powerful Cacique *Bogota*, easily overthrew him, which so terrified the rest of the Natives, that none durst oppose him. In plundering the Cottages of the *Indians*, he found every where abundance of Gold and Emeralds. Hence he advanc'd to the *Panches*, and thence



to *Terra*. Then reckoning the *Potos* that had been got, they found 191294 *Pesos* of the finest Gold, above 37000 of a coarser sort, and 18000 of the worst; besides 16000 *Emeraulds*, great and small. Note that every *Peso* is worth about eight *Shillings*. *Ximenes* having afterwards subdu'd many of the *Indians*, built the Town of *Santa Fe de Bogota*, and call'd the Country the New Kingdom of *Granada*, because he was himself born at *Granada* in *Spain*. Having done thus much, and hearing that *Sebastian de Belalcázar* drew near to him by the way of *Popayan*, and *Nicholas Paredman* from *Venezuela*, he hasten'd away, as did both the others into *Spain*, for the King to ascertain the Limits of their Conquests, and reward their Labours.

#### Popayan.

As in describing all the Provinces above, where others are not nam'd, we have follow'd *Herrera*, *Gomara*, *Oviedo*, *Las*, and *Sanson*, without naming them at every turn, to avoid so much Retition, so now we shall in great measure take the ensuing Account of *Popayan*, and most of *Peru* from *Cieza*, who travell'd those Parts from end to end, and has left a more perfect Description of them than any other.

According to him then, this Province is 200 Leagues in length, and 30 or 40 in breadth, in some Parts more, and in others less. On the West it has the South Sea, and high Mountains dividing it from the Province of *Quito* in *Peru*; on the North is the Province of *Cartagena*; on the East the New Kingdom of *Granada*, from which the vast Mountains call'd *Andes* part it, and on the South the Kingdom of *Peru*, and some other yet unconquer'd Nations.

The *Andes*, last mention'd, on the one side, and the other opposite ridge of Mountains send out many Branches, from all which many Rivers fall, and several deep Valleys are form'd, across the largest of which runs the River of *Santa Marta*. This various Situation causes no less Variety of Weather, and other Consequences, some Places being hot, and others cold; some healthy, and others unwholesome; some very wet, and others dry. The Natives were generally a free People, owning no Sovereign, but some of them were Man-eaters, and others abhorr'd it. That former Liberty made them disdain being subject to the *Spaniards*, but what most contributed to maintain it, was the Fertility of the Country, which every where afforded them enough to live on, and therefore they fled from Place to Place, till they were tir'd out, having no Rest any where, and are now wholly subdu'd. It will therefore be improper to say any thing in general of the Soil, and much better to hint at it under each Township or Subdivision.

*Popayan* is the Capital City, as well as the Name of the Province, and both of them so call'd from *Popayan*, a powerful Cacique the *Spaniards* found there at their first coming; it is in 2 Degrees and a half of North Latitude, in a healthy Situation, all the Year being like a continual Spring, without any excess of Heat or Cold, but it Rains very often, and Thunders oftner. The Territory above it is extraordinary fertile, yielding two Crops a Year, and better *Indian* Wheat than other Parts, besides all sorts of Fruits, both *American* and *European*, and feeding mighty Flocks

and Herds of Sheep, Cows, and Swine. The Natives out-do all other *Americans* in Industry, Courtesie, and civil Behaviour. The City stands upon a high Plain, the common Houses are spacious, but slightly built; but this is the Residence of the Governour and Bishop, and besides the Cathedral, here is a Monastery of *Mercenarians*. The Liberty of the City is very large, and contains several *Indian* Towns, and many Thousands of Natives, and it produces plenty of Gold, but that is generally of low Price.

*Santa Fe de Antiochia* is on the utmost Northern Borders of this Province, next to *Cartagena*, seated in a large and delightful Plain, between the Rivers of *Darien*, and *Santa Marta* in 7 Degrees of North Latitude. The Natives about it are of a peaceable Disposition, handsome, and fair; the Air temperate and wholesome, insomuch that they lie out all Night without any harm; the Land feeds much Sheep, and produces Fruits, and the Rivers Fish.

*Caramanta* is about 60 Leagues North-east from *Popayan*, on the River *Cauca*, and abundant in *Indian* Corn, and Fruit, but has no Wheat, few Cows or Sheep, and abundance of Swine. *Anzerma*, or *S. Anne* of *Anzerma* stands on an Eminence between two Rivers, about 50 Leagues North-east from the City of *Popayan*, with innumerable Fruit-Trees about it. From the Neighbouring Hills run some Streams very full of Gold Sands, which the *Indians* and *Spaniards* gather in considerable quantities. *Arma* is about 12 Leagues North-east from *Anzerma*, in a fruitful Plain, where there are rich Gold Mines, particularly near the River, and its Territory is very large, extraordinary populous, and surpasses all others in Wealth. The City *Carthage* stands in a Plain betwixt two Streams, 7 Leagues from the River *Cauca*, and 25 from *Popayan* to the North-east; the Country about it yielding neither Wheat nor Gold, but very rich in Cattel. *Cali* stands in a Plain, at the foot of high Mountains, in 4 Degrees North Latitude, 22 Leagues from *Popayan* and 28 from the South Sea. It is a Place of great Trade, but somewhat hot, and the Soil generally good about it. *Buenaventura* is a Sea Port to which all Goods are brought from *New-Spain* for this Country, is very thinly inhabited. *Pasto* or *S. John de Pasto*, is 40 Leagues South-west from *Popayan*, in a delightful Valley, encompass'd with Hills, healthy, the Territory fruitful, full of Cattel, and not altogether destitute of Gold. Besides these, here are many other *Spanish* Towns of less note, as *Guadalajara de Buga*, *S. Sebastian de la Plata*, *Almaguer*, *S. Juan de Truxillo*, *Madrugal*, *Azreda*, &c.

This is a proper Place to say something of the great River of *S. Martina*, and *S. Magdalena*. The Branch call'd of *S. Martha*, or by the *Indian* Name *Cauca*, rises in a Valley of the Mountains *Andes*, about 6 Leagues South-west from the City *Popayan*, among the populous Nation of *Indians*, call'd *Coconucos*, whence it runs a way to the North, as far as the Town of *Cali* receiving all the smaller Streams on both sides, so that at the said Town of *Cali* it seems to be as big as the *Guadalquivir* at *Sevil*, and this is not a Course of above 30 Leagues. Thence it rowls still Northward, gathering many more Waters, and is by them extremely swell'd when it comes to *Buenavista*, which is about 60 Leagues farther, and 60 Leagues below that again, which is also below the



the Town of *Mopox*, it meets the other Branch call'd of the *Magdalen*. This Branch has its Source above the Town of *Timana*, on the East side of the Mountains *Andes*, which divide the Springs at about 40 Leagues distance, from which Place they continually draw nearer and nearer till they meet, as above. This River of *Magdalen* is no less increas'd than that of *S. Martha*, by the accession of many others, whereof those of *Pati*, *Carare*, and *Pompatao*, are the chiefest. Where these two Streams meet they form one River a League broad, so great is the quantity of Water they rowl, and in the midst of it are several Islands, some of them inhabited, whence it runs always swelling down to the Sea, between the Provinces of *Cartagena*, and *Santa Marta*, and enters the Ocean with such Violence, that the Water is said to be sweet four Leagues out from the Mouth. No River has more plenty of Fish, and near the Sea more Alligators and *Manatics*, which last are River Cows. Both these Rivers run 400 Leagues betwixt their Sources and the Sea. All the Wealth of the Provinces of *Cartagena*, *Santa Marta*, *Popayan*, and the New Kingdom of *Granada* is about these Rivers; the whole Length whereof there are many rich, and inexhaustible Mines of Gold, besides the excellent Pasture, and Arable Lands, and all other sort of Product, and particularly between the two Branches is all a de-

lightful Paradise, and a continual Mass of Treasure.

*Sebastian de Belalcazar*, Governour of the Province of *Quito*, after *Pizarro*, was the first who penetrated into this Province of *Popayan*, in the Year 1536, designing to open a Passage out of his Government to the North Sea, and to make himself Master of a mighty Treasure he was inform'd might be had out of the Gold Mines possess'd by the two Brothers, *Calambaz*, and *Popayan*. The Nations call'd *Pastos* and *Patias* united to oppose his entering the Country, and put him to much Trouble, together with the difficulty of the Ways, and scarcity of Provisions, which those People had hid. However, *Belalcazar* made his way through to the *Cacique Popayan*, where being taken with the richness and deliciousness of the Country, he first plac'd a Garrison. From that time, tho' the Natives were very Numerous, and most of them fierce, and Man-eaters, yet the *Spaniards* by degrees spread themselves abroad, building all the Towns above-mention'd, by which they have subdued all the Country, destroying great Numbers of such as obstinately oppos'd them, and bringing all the rest to Christianity and Submission, except some few who choose rather to live miserably, like wild Beasts in the Mountains, than be brought to Humanity and Politeness.



## C H A P. XIII.

## Of the Kingdom of PERU



IN describing of this mighty Kingdom, we shall chiefly follow *Cieza*, who travell'd all over it, *Acosta*, who resided in it several Years, and *Herrera*, who as the King's Historiographer, had the most Authentick Informations, both in Writing, and by word of Mouth. Besides, they are all three judicious Authors, in great Reputation among all that are acquainted with their Works, and Men of known Sincerity and Integrity.

This Kingdom extends from the Province of *Quito* under the Line, to the Kingdom of *Chile*, beyond the Tropick of *Capricorn*. 700 Leagues, says *Cieza*, 600 *Acosta*, and above 600 *Herrera*, in all which Accounts there must be allowance for the main Windings of the Coast from North to South, without which they will be found too long; because *Quito* beginning under the Line, and *Chile* commencing at 25 Degrees South Latitude, the whole length left for *Peru* in a direct

Line, is but those 25 Degrees; which at 20 Leagues make 500. The breadth is very various, but most generally about 50 Leagues from the Sea to the ridge of Mountains, call'd *Andes*, yet stretching much farther in some Places about the Country of the *Chachapoyas*.

The most remarkable things belonging to this Kingdom, are, First, That only the South or South-west Wind reigns continually along its Coast, contrary to all other Countries under the Torrid Zone, where the East always prevails. 2<sup>dly</sup>. That whereas this Wind is elsewhere naturally stormy and unwholesome; here on the contrary it is gentle, healthy, and delightful, rendring all the Coast temperate, which would otherwise be too excessive hot and destructive. 3<sup>dly</sup>. That it never Rains, Hails, or Snows along all this Coast. 4<sup>thly</sup>. That at a small distance from it there is not only excess of Rain, but of Snow, and Thunder. 5<sup>thly</sup>. That there are



two ridges of Mountains, which run through all *Peru*, always at an equal distance from one another, under the same Latitude, the one entirely cover'd with Trees, and subject most part of the Year to Rain, and a sultry Summer, the other quite bare and naked, rather cold than hot, and where Summer and Winter, Rain and fair Weather succeed in their turns. For the better understanding whereof, it is to be understood that all *Peru* is divided into three long, but very narrow Strips, which are Plains, Mountains, and the *Andes*. The Plains are next the South Sea; the Mountains consist of Hills and Valleys; and the *Andes* are prodigious high Mountains. The Plains are generally ten Leagues wide, little more or less, the Mountains 20, and the *Andes* the same; the length taken from North to South, and the breadth from East to West. Now it is wonderful, that in the small distance of 50 Leagues in the same Latitude, in one Place it should always Rain, in another never, and in a third there should be Rain and fair Weather alternatively; for in the Plains it never rains, but only a small Dew falls sometimes; on the *Andes* it rains almost continually, and on the other Mountains, it rains and is fair much as it is in *Spain*. Both the *Andes* and other Mountains run a Thousand Leagues from North to South, always equidistant from one another. Where these Mountains part they leave great Valleys, accounted the pleasantest, and healthiest Dwellings in *Peru*, as are those of *Xauxa*, *Andaguayla*, *Yucay*, &c.

The ancient Inhabitants of the Plains liv'd generally in open Air, or under Trees, the Men wearing short Garments to their Knees, and Cloaks on their Shoulders, and the Women their Robes down to their Feet. Those of the Mountains being much stronger of Body and more witty and industrious than the others, had their Houses cover'd with Turf, the Men wearing Garments and Cloaks made of the Wool of *Peruvian* Sheep, and the Women Robes swath'd about their Bodies, and Mantles. Before these People were united under one Monarchy, they were rude and barbarous, and addicted to great variety of Superstitions; but when subdued by the *Incas*, and brought into one Body Politick, they became civiliz'd, and only ador'd the Sun, as the principal Creature appointed by the Creator over the World.

The common Grain of this Country was that we call *Indian* Wheat, of which they not only made Bread, but also a Liquor like our Beer or Ale; and where this Corn was wanting, they made Bread of a Root they call *Papas*. Here is a Plant peculiar to this Province, call'd *Coca*, which they mix with a little Lime, as they do the *Betele* in the *East-Indies*, and chew it, affirming that it prevents Hunger and Thirst, and revives the Spirits. Of this Herb such vast quantities are consum'd at *Potosi*, that they amount to 50000 Ducats a Year. *Acosta*, and *Garcilasso de la Vega* describe it very particularly, in whom, and *Monardes*, and *Ximenes*, most *Indian* Plants of Note may be found, to treat of which would require an entire Volume. Much might be said of the Beasts, but those which deserve particular notice are the *Peruvian* Sheep; which they call *Llama*, and are most excellent Creatures, as being of great use, and kept with very little Charge. They have very fine Wool, whereof the best Cloth is made, and they carry

Burdens, like Horses, without standing in need of Shoes, Bridles, or Oats, living upon the Grass they find in the common Fields, or along the sides of Roads. But it must be observ'd, that there are two sorts of them, the one, which is woolly, for distinction call'd *Pacos*; and the other almost naked, with only a little Hair, and therefore properer for carrying of Burdens, and these they call *Guanacos*. They are larger than our Sheep, and have long Necks and Legs, and are of several Colours, will carry an hundred weight each, and are good to eat, and the only Beasts used there for carrying of Burdens of all sorts, and they it is that transport the Plate from the Mines to the Sea, sometimes 150 Leagues. Their Day's Journey is 3 or 4 Leagues when they have many Days to travel, or more for one Day, and for that time they will carry two hundred Weight. The *Vicunas* are wild Beasts, like Hinds, breeding on the high Mountains, and have a delicate Hair to spin, and in them the Bezoar Stones are often found; as also in the *Tarugas*, which are a larger sort, not unlike the last. For other Beasts, there are the same as in other Parts of the South *America*, and no less variety of wild Fowl; but as for tame Fowl, there was but very little before the *Spaniards* brought it.

*Monardes* says, there are a sort of Insects in this Kingdom, which the *Spaniards* call Spiders, because they spin Webs like ours, but are as large as Oranges, and so venomous that the Bite of them is mortal, unless immediate Remedy be apply'd; for if it once pierces into the Body, it is certain Death. God has provided against it, for the Fig-trees are here continually green, and two or three drops of the milky Juice of the Leaves perfectly deads the Vemon, after which they keep the little Bite open some time, and it heals.

Before we enter upon the Division of *Peru*, it will be proper here to give some Account of the vast Ridge of Mountains, call'd *Andes*, being one of the greatest in the World. It begins at the Streights of *Magellan*, and runs Northward through all South *America*, in some Places continually cover'd with Snow, in many others casting out Fire. In other Parts it generally rains all the Year, and it is very toilsome passing over, by reason of the thickness of the Trees. In the most uncouth, woody recesses of them, there are said to be People so brutal, that they have neither Cloaths, nor Houses, and only living upon such Beasts and Birds as they kill with their Arrows; without any Chiefs, or Governours, and only meeting accidentally in hollow Trees, or Caves. The Natives on the West side, towards the South Sea, were Men of good Sense, cloath'd, and govern'd by the Laws of the *Incas*; but those on the other side were more dull, and their chief Employment was to plant and gather much of the Herb *Coca*, above-mention'd. The highest Parts of the *Andes* are not habitable, either for their being perpetually cover'd with Snow, or the excessive Cold; but the lower were populous, and fruitful, yielding much *Indian* Wheat, and of the Root *Tuca*, us'd to make Bread, and excellent Fruit, not only of the Country, but of *Europe*. *Cieza*. It is needless to say more of them in this Place, because we may have Occasion to mention other Particulars in speaking of the several Provinces.



In so vast a Country, it is certain there were several Languages spoken, which are now almost forgot, and laid aside, all the Natives being brought to speak *Spanish*, which is the universal Tongue. The Government was Monarchical, under those mighty Princes the *Incas*, who were Sovereigns of all these Provinces, of whom we

shall speak at last. Their Religion was Idolatry, and the Sun the principal Object of their Adoration, but since the *Spaniards* are become Masters, they are all converted to Christianity.

Let us now come to the Division of the several Provinces, and their respective chief Towns, being those set down in the following Table.

Quito.	{ Quito. Rio Bamba. Cuenca. Loxa. Zamora. Jaen. S. Miguel. Paita. Guayaquil. Puerto Viejo.	Los Reyes, or Lima, or Peru, properly so call'd.	{ S. Francisco de la Vitoria. S. Juan del Oro. Arequipa. S. Miguel de la Ribera. Valverde. Castro Virreyria, or Chocolacocha. Val Guaura. Guamachuco.
Los Quixos.	{ Baeza. Avila. Sevilla del Oro. Archidona.		{ La Plata. Potosi. N. S. de la Paz. Oropesa. Escorlaque. Porco. Arica. Tobiso. Misque. Orizeque.
Pacamoros.	{ Valladolid. Loyola. Santiago de las Montanas.		{ Tarya. Tarixa. Tomina. La Lagunilla. Tazabuco. Cochaya. Sinisca. Gagui. Paria. Caracora. Laxa. Pico. S. Bernardo de la Frontera.
Los Reyes, or Lima, or Peru, properly so call'd.	{ Lima. Cusco. Arnedo. Santa. Truxillo. Miraflores. S. Juan de la Frontera. Santiago de los Valles. Leon de Guanuco. S. Juan de la Vitoria, or Guamanga. Callao. Caxamalca.	Los Charcas, or la Plata.	{ Santa Cruz de la Sierra. Santa Cruz la Nueva. Jesus Maria. Barranca.
	La Sierra.		

Quito.

The Province properly so call'd, commences North of the Equinoctial, and extends 80 Leagues to the Southward, according to *Herrera*, and 70 says *Cieza*, which difference, as has been before observ'd, and is now again repeated, to avoid it for the future, may arise from the different ways of taking the Dimensions in a straiter Line, or allowing more for Windings. The Breadth is about 25 or 30 Leagues. The Boundaries of it are on the West of the South Sea; on the North the same Sea and Province of *Popayan*; on the East that same Province, and *los Quixos*; and on the South the Province of *Los Reyes*.

This Country, tho' lying under the Equator, is like *Spain*, the Air clear and serene, rather cold than hot, and the Snow lies all the Year in some Places. The Rains last from *October* till *March*, which they call their Winter, and during the other Months the Grass is parch'd up, which tho' not very long, is proper for the Cattel of *Castile*, whereof there are great Numbers,

as also abundance of Wheat and Barly, and Gold in some Places. And this is a most pleasant Province to live in, for nothing can be more delightful than a clear and healthful Air, there being no excess of cold in Winter, nor of heat in Summer. Much more Gold might be gathered here, had they Slaves to set to work, but it is strictly forbid to force the Natives to it; but here is great Plenty of Salt-Petre, whereof they make good Powder. Fruits of all sorts, either *Indian* or *European* thrive well, and there is abundance of both.

The Natives are generally of a proportionable Stature, strong, and healthy, industrious enough, and apt to learn any Trade; but then they have other ill Qualities, as particularly they are given to Lying, and Drunkenness, vain, inconstant, and hard to be civiliz'd, except some that have been brought to live in the *Spanish* Towns, for they choose rather to dwell scatter'd about, than in Towns and Villages, but that they are constrain'd to it, in order to their living more like Christians, which they are naturally averse to. Their Habit is a loose Garment,



ment, without Sleeves, so that their Legs and Arms are naked. Their chief Employment is making Cloth of Cotton, and Wool, and they pay Tribute to the *Spaniards*.

*Monardes* says we have the best *Sulphur Vivum*, or live Brimstone from *Quito*, which is of a fine Gold Colour, and found near the Gold Mines, whence Naturalists have reason to say that Quick-silver is the Matter of Gold, and Sulphur the Form.

*Guaya* is a small Northern Territory in this Province, where commences the so famous Road of the *Ingas*, running above 1000 Leagues in length, and carry'd across Mountains, Bogs, and Desarts, with such immense Labour, that it seems incredible, being every where smooth and fair, laid with vast Stones where there was need, tho' they had no Iron, nor other Inventions, such as we have. And what is yet more remarkable, there were Inns built all the length of it at 4, 5, or 6 Leagues distance from one another, for the conveniency of Travellers, and these Inns were call'd *Tambos*, and are in use to this Day, there being *Indians* under a Chief in each of them, who, as soon as any Traveller comes in, bring him Water, Wood to make Fire, provide a Bed, and other Necessaries; dress his Meat, and carry out his Horse or Mule to Grass, and secure his Baggage; all which they do very justly and carefully for nothing, and if he require it, furnish him with Guides.

Near where this Road begins, there runs a River, over which there is a natural Bridge of solid Rock, the Water running through a hollow below, over which the said Rock lies above like an Arch, which the Natives call *Lymichaca*, that is, Stone Bridge. In the way to the City of *Quito*, is the Lake call'd *Yaguarcocha*, that is, Sea of Blood, because the *Inga Guainacapa* cast into it the Bodies of 20000 Men of the *Carangues* he had slain, for rebelling, and being bloody Man-eaters: and not far from the Lake is the wonderful Palace of *Carangues*, built all of Stone, without Lime, or any other Cement. Hence all the Country forwards is full of *Indian* Towns, and *Spanish* Seats and Villages.

*S. Francis de Quito* is the Metropolis of this Province, seated in the declivity of a Valley, enclosed on the North and West with a ridge of high Mountains, in half a Degree of South Latitude. The Territory about it fruitful, and well stock'd with Sheep, and the Natives more civil and industrious than others more remote. The Streets are wide, and strait, with four Squares, one of them before the Cathedral, another before the *Dominicans*, and a third before the *Franciscans* Monasteries, besides which there are two other Churches. Here is the Residence of the Sovereign Court, the Bishop, and other the King's Officers, and a noble College of Canons. Besides the Town is fortified, and good Gun-powder made in it. A League from it is a burning Mountain. In these Descriptions we follow *Herrera*, *Cieza*, *Zarate*, *James Fernandez*, and *Garcilasso de la Vega*, who are the Authors that have writ best of *Peru*, which may serve once for all.

From *Quito* to *Rio Bamba* is about 25 Leagues, which tho' nam'd among the Towns, is rather a Village, chiefly inhabited by Shepherds, who have vast Flocks of Sheep on the Plains about it. Thence to the magnificent Palace of *Thomebamba* they reckon 20 Leagues. It is to be observ'd, that

the *Ingas*, Emperors of *Peru*, had very many Palaces in several Parts of their Dominions, but this of *Thomebamba* was a wonderful Structure, as still appears by the Ruins, besides the Tradition that is preserv'd of it. Close to it was a Temple of the Sun, built with Stones as black as Jet, and others like a green Jasper. The Portico's were of several Stones of curious Colours, and the Floors not only of the Temple, but of the Palace, cover'd with Gold, curiously wrought. In short, the Treasure of Gold and Silver within it was inestimable, but at present only the Ruins remain. The *Indians* of this Territory are call'd *Canares*, a handsome, and well dress'd People, and the Country very rich in Gold and Silver.

Following the same Road 51 Leagues from *Quito*, we come to *Loxa*, another good *Spanish* Town, whose Territory has Gold, Silver, Copper, Iron, and Sulphur Mines; and 16 Leagues still South from that, is *Cuenca*, in 5 Degrees of South Latitude, in the Valley of *Cuxibamba*, a pleasant and healthy Seat, and free from all sorts of Insects. Next is *Zamora*, 80 Leagues from *Quito*, no less healthful and delicious than the last, and its Gold Mines so rich, that one pure Lump of that Metal found in the Earth, is said to have been presented to King *Philip the 2d* of *Spain*, which weigh'd 8 Pounds. None but Blacks work in the Mines, for the Natives must not be compell'd, there being severe Laws against it, and they are sloathful, and unfit for Labour. Fifty Leagues from *Loxa* is *Jaen*, in the Territory call'd *Chacaynga*, among Mountains, but very temperate.

Having run through the upper Country along the great Road, we come now in the Plain, where we find the Town of *S. Miguel de Piura*, in the Territory of *Chila*, which is the extremity of the Province of *Quito* Southward, where tho' it never Rains, yet the Soil is water'd, and produces all sorts of Grain and Fruit. In the Liberty of this City is the Port of *Payta*, which is large and safe, and where the Ships touch in their Passage from *Guatemala* to *Peru*. The Marquess *Francis Pizarro* was founder of the City, being the first the *Spaniards* built in *Peru*.

*Santiago de Guayaquil* stands 15 Leagues from the South Sea, and is otherwise call'd *La Culata*, because seated at the bottom of a Bay, or deep Inlet the Sea makes there, and this and the last above are in that they call the Valley of *Turnbez*, from an *Indian* Town of that Name, formerly very famous, and Capital of that lower Territory.

*Puerto Viejo*, or the old Port, is in one Degree of South Latitude, and tho' so call'd, is not a Sea Port, being at some distance from the South Sea, but there is a Place call'd *Manta*, which is a Harbour to it.

Besides the Road above-mention'd, which was along the Mountain, the *Ingas* had made another along the Plain, 15 or 16 Foot wide, pav'd with great Stones, wall'd in on both sides, and shaded with Trees against the violent heat of the Sun, with Inns at proper distances, and all other Conveniences, as has been said of the upper Road.

The most remarkable Rivers here, are that of *Santiago*, the most Northern, remarkable for the uprightness of its Banks, which is such, that



A Ship touching the Ground with its Prow, has eight Fathom Water at the Poop, for rowling with incredible Swiftneſs, it makes an extraordinary deep Channel, and yet Ships enter it without any Danger. The next to the Southward is the River of *Tumbez*, which is in three Degrees and a half of South Latitude, of which there is nothing remarkable.

### Los Quixos

Is an Inland Province, partly Plain, and partly Mountainous, and not discover'd till the Year 1557, after the building of the Spanish Town of *Cuenca*, abovemention'd. On the West it has the Province of *Quito*, on the North that of *Papayan*, on the East the unknown Country, call'd *Dorado*, from the abundance of Gold suppos'd to be in it, and on the South that of the *Bracamoros*. Northward it scarce reaches to the first Degree of South Latitude, being 60 Leagues in length, and no less in breadth.

All this Country is excessive hot and rainy, bearing little *Indian* Corn, and no Wheat, but abundance of all *Peruvian* Fruit, as also the *European*, and variety of Kitchen Plants. It is under a particular Governour, appointed by the Viceroy of *Peru*, and has but four Spanish Towns.

The chief of them is *Baeza*, built in the Year 1559, by *Giles Ramirez Davalos*, 181 leagues from that of *Quito*, where the Governour resides. 2. *Archidona*, about 20 Leagues South-east from that of *Baeza*. 3. *Avila*, to the Northward of *Archidona*. 4. *Sevilla del Oro*, or the Golden *Sevil*, the Southermost of them all.

The Natives have a peculiar Language of their own, tho' they understand that of *Peru*, and differ in nothing from the rest of their Neighbours. They vigorously oppos'd the *Spaniards*, and rebell'd once or twice, but being since indirectly subdued, have embrac'd Christianity, and apply themselves to Husbandry.

The Eastern Part of this Country is by a peculiar Name call'd *Canela*, or Cinnamon, from whole Woods there are in it of Trees, in some respect resembling those of the Cinnamon in the *East-Indies*. *Monardes* says, these Trees are of an indifferent size, always green, their Leaves like Laurel, and the Fruit shap'd like a little Hat, about the bigness of a Crown-piece, of a Purple Colour, which has the perfect taste and scent of true Cinnamon.

### Pacamoros,

Or *Bracamoros*, as also *Tgaxifongo*, and *John de Salinas*, are all the same Province, or several Parts of it, bounded on the West by the high Mountains *Andes*, before spoken of, on the North by *Los Quixos*, on the East by the Countries undiscover'd, and on the South by *Peru*, properly so call'd, being about 100 Leagues in length from North to South, and as much from East to West.

All the Country enjoys a pleasant, temperate Climate, and the Soil is fertile, producing every sort of Grain and Fruit; but above all proper for Cattel, by reason of the great Plenty of Grass. But the greatest Wealth consists in the Gold Mines, in which they find Grains of an unusual bigness, which are highly beneficial to the *Spaniards* of the Colonies there.

Here are three Spanish Towns, all of them founded by *John de Salinas de Loyola*, when he was Governour. The first is *Valladolid*, about 20 Leagues East from *Zamora*, in 7 Degrees of South Latitude. 2. *Loyola*, 20 Leagues East from *Valladolid*, and so call'd from the Founder, the *Indian* Name being *Cumbinama*. 3. *Santiago de los Montanas*, 50 Leagues East from *Loyola*, in a Country extraordinary rich in Gold, and that so fine, that it excells all the Neighbouring Parts, and none exceeds it but that of *Carabaya* in *Peru*, and *Valdivia* in *Chile*.

Since we have so often had occasion to speak of the Gold found in these Countries, and shall again as often, it will not be amiss to speak a word of the Nature of it, out of *Acosta*, who writes what he saw. He says it is found in three sorts, in Grain, in Dust, and in Stone. The Gold in Grain needs no refining, being bits as big as the Seeds of Cucumbers, or Pumpions, fine, and without any mixture; yet some happen to be bigger, and even to weigh some Pounds. Of this kind there is least Gold. The Gold in Stone, is Veins of it running through hard pieces of Rock, of which he says he has seen many at the Mines of *Zaruma*, which is in the Province of *Pacamoros*, and some were half Gold, and half Stone. This sort is dug out of Mines, where there are Veins like those of Silver, and they are extraordinary laborious to dig. The greatest quantity of Gold in the *Indies*, is in Dust, found in Rivers, or other Places where much Water has run. The Gold Dust is cleans'd by much washing in Water, till the Earth or Sand runs clear off from the Vessels they do it in, and the Gold being heaviest, settles at the bottom. There is another way of cleansing it with Quick-silver; and another with *Aqua Fortis*, which separates the Gold from any other thing. When refin'd, it is cast into Pigs, or small Bars, in order to be sent into *Spain*, for none can be exported in Dust, because it cannot be essay'd, and mark'd, and pay the King's fifth till it is Cast. There is no ascertaining what Quantity is sent into *Spain* every Year; but in the Fleet *Acosta* return'd to *Spain*, he says there went from the *Main* 12 Chests, each containing at least an hundred weight, and from *New Spain* 1156 Marks, each Mark being half a Pound, and all this only for the King; without reckoning all that went for private Persons, which is always much more, the King having only the fifth Part of what is found.

Los Reyes, or Lima, or Peru, properly so call'd.

The last the general Name, the two others taken from the Capital City, which is call'd by them both, and it is a large, rich, and noble Province, commencing at about the sixth Degree of South Latitude, and extending to about 17; the Length upon the Coast in a strait Line, reckon'd at least 220 Leagues from *Cabo de la Aguya* in the North, where *Quito* ends to a little below *Arequipa* in the South, where *Los Charcas* begins. From East to West it stretches out in breadth in some Parts 100 Leagues, in some more, in other less, not to include any of the other Provinces we are to speak of apart.

The South Sea washes it on the West, *Quito* and *Pacamoros* are on the North, the Countries



as yet unknown on the East, and *Los Charcas* on the South. *Augustine Zarate*, in his History of *Pern*, divides the Natives into three Nations, by the Names of *Tungu*, *Tassanes*, and *Mochichu*, differing among themselves in Languages, but all of them speaking that of *Cusco*. *Garcilasso* informs us, that the *Peruvians* call all Countries near the Sea, and such as are hot, *Tunga*, and thence all the Inhabitants of the Plains are call'd *Tungu*. Now for the better understanding the Situation of these Countries, we will begin with the Plain, and run along the Sea Coast from North to South.

This lower Part is call'd the Plains of *Pern*, where it never Rains, nor Thunders, because the height of the Mountains shelters the bottom, so that there can be no Land Breezes, and consequently the Wind off the Sea prevails, which meeting with no opposition, does not press the Vapours that rise into Rain, for they can never sufficiently condense. This is the Reason that here never falls any more than a thick Mist, which yet helps to ripen the Corn, and all the watering is less beneficial to this end. The Land is generally a deep Sand, except in the Bottoms about the Rivers that come down from the Mountains, where Channells being cut to water the Ground, there grows much Corn, Oil, Sugar, and all sorts of *European* and *American* Grain, and Fruit. At the foot, and sides of the Mountains there is rich Pasture, and multitudes of Cattel, and as much difference of Weather as can be wish'd, for the top is cold, the bottom hot, and the middle part temperate.

Coming along these Plains from the Province of *Quito*, the first Valley is that of *Xayama*, about 26 Leagues South from the Town of *S. Michael*, before-mention'd, then that of *Tuqueme*, 3. *Cinto*, 4. *C.liquen*, and 5thly, *Sana*. All which as has been said before, are fertile and delightful, with Rivers running across them, and all between them deep, barren Sands, without any Tree, Plant, or living Creature on them, which the Reader is to observe, holds all along the Coast, and therefore shall not be repeated.

In this last Valley of *Zana* stands the *Spanish* Town of *Miraflores*, sometimes call'd by the Name of the Valley, about 110 Leagues from *Lima*, the Capital, and 5 from the Sea, on which it has a Port call'd *Clemepen*, all the Way between them full of pleasant Woods, Villages and Farms, and the Town it self populous and very rich.

The next Valley still Southward is *Pasacamayo*, reckon'd the best and most populous of them all, the Inhabitants whereof, before the *Incas* subdu'd them, were Potent and dreaded by their Neighbours, and had abundance of Idol Temples, but are all now carefully instructed in Christianity. *Coacama* follows, little inferiour to the last, and then *Chimo*, much admir'd by the *Incas*, and now the Seat of the Town of *Truxillo*, abounding in all Things for Conveniency and Delight, in 7 Degrees and a half of South Latitude and 80 Leagues from *Lima*. It is reckon'd one of the best Towns in *Pern*, very Large and well Built, and has 4 Monasteries. About 20 Leagues South from it is the Town and Valley of *Santa*, otherwise call'd *La Parilla*, near the Sea on a good River, forming a convenient Harbour. *Ancudo*, another *Spanish* Town is in the Valley of *Cuancay*, 9 or 10 Leagues from *Lima*, and a half from the Sea.

The Valley of *Lima* is the Largest in all the Plains from *Tumbez*, of the Delightfulness whereof all Men speak Wonders, for the Heat is never offensive, nor is there ever so much Cold as to require a Fire, for the tenderest Persons. Their Summer is our Winter, and their Days are never longer than 14 Hours, or shorter than 12, and the Earth produces all Things in wonderful Plenty. To come to the City which is the Metropolis of this Province, it is call'd *Ciudad de los Reyes*, that is, the City of the Kings, and sometimes *Lima*, from the Valley it stands in, the Latitude being 12 Degrees and a half South; no Town in *Pern*, unless it be *Cusco*, can compare with it. The whole is divided into square Wards, each of them of 150 Paces, the Streets crossing them all strait, without the least winding, and there are 22 of these Wards or Quarters from East to West and 14 from North to South. A great River runs on the North side of it, over which there is a good Stone Bridge, and over it the Suburb of *S. Lazarus*, divided after the same Manner: On the East is another Suburb inhabited by 800 rich *Indian* Families, enclos'd with a Rampart of Earth, with a College of Jesuits, and a Governour of their own. In the City is the Viceroy's Palace, and the Sovereign Court consisting of 8 Judges. The Viceroy's Salary is 40000 Ducats, but that is the least Part of his Revenue, which in Effect cannot be worth much less than a Million of Crowns a Year. The Archbishop's Revenue is 30000 Ducats, and the other Churchmen proportionable. In the midst of the City is a large Square, and on the North side of it the Viceroy's Palace, extraordinary Great and Magnificent; on the East side the Cathedral, like that of *Sevil*; on the South rich Shops, and on the West more Shops, the Town-House and Prison; near which is the Arsenal for all Publick Stores. From this Square eight spacious Streets lead directly through the Town into the Fields. In short, there are many other noble Streets, and stately Structures, too long to be mention'd particularly; but in the main, there are 6 Parish Churches, 15 Monasteries of Religious Men, Jesuits and Nuns, four Hospitals for the Sick and Poor, and several other Churches and Chappels. This is the Place of greatest Trade in all South America, all the Treasure of the Countries about being convey'd thither, as are all the Goods coming from *Spain*, and other Parts, in return of it. The Number of *Spanish* Inhabitants does not exceed 5000, who are reckon'd to have 40000 Blacks. This Account, *Laet* says, he had from Persons of Credit, who had liv'd in *Lima*, and the Compiler of this Work has had much Information to this Effect from *Spaniards*, who knew this and other Parts of the *West-Indies*, of which as being the most Modern Relations, he has sometimes made Use.

*Callao* is the Port belonging to this City, about two Leagues distant from it, and inhabited by 600 *Spaniards*, besides Blacks and Natives. Of late Years some slight Works have been thrown up about it, since the Pyrates have made their Attempts upon those Coasts.

Four Leagues from the Valley of *Lima* Southward is that of *Pachacama*, than which nothing can be more Pleasant and Delightful; and there formerly stood that prodigious rich Temple, from which *Ferdinand Pizarro* is said to have taken the Value of 900000 Ducats in Gold and Silver, besides the immense Treasure the Soldiers had already



dy Plunder'd, and what the Heathen Priests had hid before their coming; at present only the Ruins of it remain. The Valley of *Chilca* is next, 10 Leagues from *Lima*; three Leagues farther that of *Malá*, and 5 from this that of *Guarco*, where is a small *Spanish* Town call'd *Cannete* or *Guarco*. Two Leagues from it is the River and Valley of *Lunguana*, and 6 from that to *Chinca*; then *Yca*, and in it the *Spanish* Town call'd *Valverde* very beautiful and rich, containing about 500 *Spaniards*, 3 Monasteries and an Hospital. Six Leagues from it is a Port on the Sea, call'd *Puerto Quemado*, whence they transport the Wine growing along these Coasts in vast Quantities, to other Parts which want. Four Leagues hence is the Valley of *Tingez*.

About 20 Leagues to the Eastward is the Town of *Chocolococha*, or *Castro Virreyña*, the Way to it rough and stony; but the Place famous for the great Quantity of fine Silver taken out of the Mines, which are but 2 Leagues from it, on the top of a high and barren Mountain, always cover'd with Snow, and excessive Cold. After *Yca* follow other pleasant and delightful Valleys, call'd in general *Lauasca*; in one whereof known by the particular Name of *Caxamalca*, the *Incas* had formerly a wonderful Palace; then *Nasca*, *Hacari*, *Oconna* and *Camana*, where is the Town of *S. Miguel de Ribera*, 13 Leagues South from *Lima* and 22 North from *Arequipa*. Lastly, the Town of *Arequipa*, is in the Valley of *Quilca*, about 12 Leagues from the Sea, standing in an excellent Situation for Fertility and wholsom Air, with a good Port at the Mouth of the River *Chilca*, which passes by the Town, and brings a great Trade to it. It is 150 Leagues from *Potosí*, and the Way very bad; yet formerly all the Treasure was brought down thither, as it is now to *Arica*. Not far from the Town is a burning Mountain, and the only Fault of it is, that it is very subject to Earthquakes.

Having run along the Sea Coast and Plains of *Peru*, let us now return to the Inland and Mountain. The first Province there to the Northward, joining to that of *S. Miguel* of *Quito*, is *Caxamalca*, distinct from the Valley of the same Name mention'd above. In this Province the Ancient *Incas* had a Palace, a Stately Temple of the Sun, and other noble Structures, and here *Atagualpa* the last of them was taken and dy'd. The Soil is as fruitful as any in the Universe, and has Mines of several Metals; and the Natives are peaceable, courteous and industrious, making curious Cloth of the Wool of the *Peruvian* Sheep. The Town call'd by the Name of the Province is at the Foot of a Hill divided by two Rivers, over which there are Stone Bridges. This Province is 90 Leagues from *Lima*, in the Way to which is the Territory of *Guaylos*, inhabited by few *Spaniards*, and many *Indians*, vastly rich in Sheep, Wool, and fine Cloth they make of it.

Beyond *Caxamalca*, there is another Road Paved by the *Incas* of *Peru*, leading to the *Chachapoyas*, where there is a *Spanish* Town call'd *S. Juan de la Encuentra*, 100 Leagues North-east from *Lima*, and with Gold Mines, besides Multitudes of Sheep of whose Wool much Cloth is made; besides *Acofia* describes a sort of Almonds, or Fruit growing here, not unlike them, in great Plenty, which he says is the best and most delicious of all Fruit in the World. The Mountains *Andes* enclose this Territory of *Caxamalca* on the East, and beyond

them is the River and District of *Moyobamba*, where the *Spaniards* have another Town, call'd *Santiago de los Valles* and sometimes *Moyobamba*, above 100 Leagues North-east from *Lima*.

From *Caxamalca* 11 Leagues to the spacious and populous Valley of *Guamachuco*, whence another Road ran to the *Conchucos* and *Bombon*, the first of which is two Days Journey off and has several Gold Mines; from *Conchucos* to *Piscobamba* 17 Leagues; from *Piscobamba* to *Guaraz* 8, where the *Indians* are so laborious, that they will work in the Mines; next is the Territory of *Pincos*, and then that of *Chucurpu*, near which was one of the Stateliest Palaces in *Peru*, with a Temple of the Sun and *Vestal* Virgins attending it. At present there is a *Spanish* Colony call'd *Leon de Guanuco*, 60 Leagues from *Lima*, the Mountain Way, others call it *Guanuco de los Cavalleros*; it is pleasant, rich, and abounds in all Things for the Conveniency of Life, having many *Indian* Towns about it.

Next to *Guanuco* follows *Bombon*, which *Zarate* says is the highest Country in *Peru*, and all Plain, consequently Cold, and the Natives warlike. In it is a Lake 10 Leagues in Compass about which the Natives live in Villages. Ten Leagues from *Bombon* begins the Territory of *Tarama*, more fruitful than the last, and adjoining to it those of *Attabillos* and *Chupachos*, beyond which Eastward is that of *Mama*, and beyond that again downright Deserts. From *Tarama* the great Road leads next to *Xauxa*, the most famous Port of all *Peru*, with the River *Xauxa* running through it, often call'd the *Marañon*, as believ'd to take in many other Rivers from the Midland Provinces, and to fall into the North Sea. This Valley of *Xauxa* is 14 Leagues in Length and 4 or 5 in Breadth, and in it a stately Palace of the *Incas*. The whole District enclos'd by high snowy Mountains, and about 36 or 40 Leagues distant from *Lima*, in it there are 14 great Towns of *Indians*, with several Monasteries of *Dominicans* and *Franciscans* to instruct them.

From *Xauxa* to the *Spanish* Town of *S. John de la Vitoria* or *Guamanga*, is 30 Leagues over the high Mountains enclosing the Valley of *Xauxa*; on which are to be seen the Ruins of ancient Structures. The Town of *Guamanga* stands in 13 Degrees of South Latitude between 70 and 80 Leagues East, somewhat Southerly from *Lima*, near the great Road, on a Rivulet of excellent Water. The Houses are all of Stone til'd, and there are three Churches, besides several Monasteries, many Brotherhoods, and a noble Hospital, as also a Bishop. The Air here is temperate and the Soil fertile, yielding excellent Wheat, abundance of the Herb *Coca*, before spoken of, many Medicinal Plants and feeding Plenty of Cattel; besides all which, here are Mines of Gold, Silver, Copper, Iron, Sulphur, and Loadstone.

From *Guamanga* to the Plain of *Chupa* are two Leagues, and thence 11 to the great Palace of *Bilcas*, reckon'd by the *Indians* the Centre, and formerly one of the most Magnificent in *Peru*, now only Ruins, with an *Indian* Town about it, and several others at a Distance. Seven Leagues from *Bilcas* is *Uranorca*, or *Andaguayla*, thence to *Abancay* 11, thence to the River *Apurima* 12, and from *Apurima* 12 more to *Cusco*, before we speak of which City, we must return towards *Guamanga* to give some Account of the famous Mines of *Guancavelica*, 8 or 10 Leagues distant from



from *Cuzamanga* North-west, and call'd by the *Spaniards*, *El Affiento de Oropesa*, yielding a vast Quantity of Quick-silver, of mighty use for Cleaning the Silver taken out of the Mines. The Natives knew nothing of this Metal, but dug out the *Vermillion*, which runs in the Vein with it, to Paint themselves; nor did the *Spaniards* themselves know it till the Year 1566, when one *Henry Garces*, a *Portuguese*, who had seen the Quick-silver Mines in *Spain* found it out; for the Quick-silver does not run Liquid in the Vein as many imagine, but is solid mix'd with the Vermilion; and this Mineral is beaten small and put into Crucibles, where the Metal running, all the Quick-silver evaporates with the Smoke, and as soon as it cools, or meets with any other Body it falls down again Liquid, as we see it, which the Curious may see at large in *Acosta*. Nor is there any Danger in the Digging of it, which many conceit, but all the Hurt is in the Smoke that rises from melting, and therefore they come not near it till quite cold, when it does no farther Harm. Of this Quick-silver between 6 and 7000 Quintals, or hundred Weight is spent every Year in refining the Plate at *Potosi*. To return to

The City of *Cusco*, it was the Metropolis of *Peru*, the Court of the *Ingas* and noblest of their Cities, seated in 13 Degrees and a half of South Latitude, 120 Leagues East from *Lima*, on a hard rugged Ground, encompass'd with Mountains. It is divided into two Parts, which are *Hanan-Cusco*, the *Upper Cusco*, and *Hurin-Cusco*, the *Lower Cusco*, and the *e* into 7 Quarters or Wards, and 5 Suburbs. On the Top of the Mountain *Sacsahuama*, which hangs over the City, the *Ingas* have a Castle, the Ruins whereof still show it was a wonderful Structure, the Stones of it being of such a Prodigious Magnitude, that no Man can imagine how the *Indians* destitute of all Iron Tools could cut them, or how they could bring them 6 or 7 Leagues without Horses, or Carts, and even across great Rivers: and lastly, how they could join them so nicely without Lime, or other Cement. This they who desire more Particulars may see farther describ'd in *Garcilasso*, *Zarate*, and *Laet*. The Streets of the City are long, but narrow; the Houses of Massive Stone, and it has 4 Churches, besides as many Monasteries, a College of Jesuits, and some Hospitals. In the midst of it is a Spring, whose Water congeals of it self into pure Salt. 3000 *Spaniards* and 10000 *Indians* inhabit this Place, which is also a Bishoprick, and the Treasure found in it, when the *Spaniards* came first was incredible, besides what has been often found since in places under Ground, which have been accidentally discover'd.

Four Leagues North-east from *Cusco* in the delightful and fertile Valley of *Tucay*, whither they send the Sick from *Cusco*, to recover their Health. On the West is that of *Cumbibiltu*; Eastward towards the *Andes* that of *Vilcabamba*, where the *Spaniards* have the Town of *S. Francis de la Vitoria*, among the Mountains *Andes*; and lastly, 40 Leagues South is the Valley of *Carabaya*, beset with Mountains, and in it the rich Gold Mines, which yield it 24 and 23 Carats and a half fine, and sometimes in large Pieces, near to which the *Spaniards* have built the small Town of *S. Juan del Oro*, or *Golden S. John*, which is the last Place we have Occasion to speak of in this Province.

### Los Charcas, or La Plata.

The latter Name given it from its Capital City so call'd. Its Length from East to West is about 150 Leagues, where most, and the Breadth from North to South along the Sea Coast 150. On the North it borders all along upon the Province of *Peru*, properly so call'd, Eastward for the most part on *Santa Cruz de la Sierra*; Southward on *Tucuman* and *Chile*, and the West side is wash'd by the South Sea.

The Seasons here are the Reverse of *Europe*, our Summer is their Winter and their Winter our Summer, as lying between 17 and 25 Degrees of South Latitude, and the Cold is much more prevalent than the Heat; yet there are Valleys, encompass'd with high Mountains, which are hot and fruitful. The rest of the Land is generally barren, as to bearing of Wheat and other Grain; but abounds in Pasture, especially in the large Province of *Collao*, and about the Banks of the Lake *Titicaca*; more particularly it is excellent for feeding of Sheep, whereof there are great Multitudes, and have very fine Wool; but above all the Plenty of Silver Mines and other Metals is here stupendious.

This Province is divided into several Districts, whereof that call'd *el Collao* is the largest and most populous of all *Peru*, extending Eastward to the *Andes*, Westward to the Snowy Mountains, Northward the Territory of *Cusco*, and Southward *La Plata* and *La Sierra*. All this Country is plain, water'd by many Rivers, and consequently vastly Rich in Flocks of Sheep. The Cold is more intense than in any Part of *Peru*, except the snowy Mountains, and the Reason they think is, because this Plain is as high as they; and this Coldness is the Cause that it yields not much Grain, which makes the People feed on the Roots they call *Papa*. The Natives are of a ready Wit and Industrious, and understood the Course of the Sun and Moon, and reckon'd by Months and Years, before the coming of the *Spaniards*. Here following the High Way from *Cusco*, we meet with the Lake *Titicaca*, where the great Road made by the *Ingas*, before spoken of divides it self, on both sides the said Lake.

This Lake *Titicaca*, the Largest yet known of in the South America, is in the Middle of *el Collao*, about whose Banks there are abundance of *Indian* Towns, as there are in the several small Islands within it. The Compass of it is about 80 Leagues, and the Depth in some Places reaches to 70 or 80 Fathom, and it swells with Storms, as if it were an Arm of the Sea, tho' it be 60 Leagues from it. *Acosta* tells us above 10 considerable Rivers fall into this Lake, which has but one Out-let, not large but deep, along which the Water runs so swift, that there is no building either a Wooden or Stone Bridge over it; yet the *Indians* have contriv'd a Bridge of Straw and Rushes ty'd in Bundles, and made fast to both Banks with Ropes, so that both Men and Beasts loaded pass over without any Danger, and it rises so lightly upon the Water, that giving no Opposition, it easily subsists. In the Lake grow a sort of Rushes call'd *Tutora*, which the Natives eat, and feed Swine, Horses and other Beasts with them; they serve to thatch their Houses, to make Boats, for Fuel and many other Uses.



Uses. The Water is not salt, but muddy and unfit to drink. For Fish it has but of two sorts, the one call'd *Bucos* and the other *Sachos*, neither of them very good; but there is on it an innumerable Multitude of Geese, Ducks, and other Water-Fowl. The Out-let having run near 50 Leagues, forms another smaller Lake, call'd *Paria*, or *de Andagay*, in which there are several Islands, but no other Out-let to it, which makes many believe that it has some subterraneous Passage into the South Sea, and the rather because not far from it, there is a River that runs to the Sea, whose source cannot be found. The Land about the Lake is full of Cattle, especially Swine, because of the *Turra* Rushes, which those Creatures delight in, and fattens them extreamly.

Passing along the great Road by abundance of *Indian* Towns, on the Western Bank of the Lake, the next District is that of *Colquito*, inhabited by many Thousands of Natives, among whom the *Jesuits* have several Schools, and the *Spaniards* a Town of the same Name, the Government whereof is worth above 40000 Ducats a Year. Beyond the Out-let, is a small *Indian* Town, in which there are Ancient Structures of marvellous Magnificence, and beyond them a Hill wall'd in, and on it two Figures of Men, of a Gigantick Stature, with long Robes, and Veils over their Heads, nothing like what the *Peruvians* wear, and seem to be carv'd by excellent Statuaries, whereof the Natives can give no Account; as *Cieza* and *Garcilasso* write.

*Nuestra Señora de la Paz*, otherwise call'd *Pueblo Nuevo*, is on the East of the Lake, at a great Distance from it, a Town taking up a small Valley among the Mountains which shelter it from the Winds, the Winter being very sharp, and but 10 Leagues from the *Andes*. The Territory yields little Corn, but has Cold Mines and much Salt. This Town is in the Territory call'd *Chaquabac*. Proceeding along the Out-let of the great Lake, follows the Territory call'd *Paria*, full of *Indian* Towns, and turning thence towards the Mountains *Andes*, that of *Conquisaca*, where stands the Metropolis of this Province, sometimes call'd *Conquisaca*, but more generally *La Plata*, 18 Leagues East from *Potosi*. Here resides the Sovereign Court of the Province *de los Charcas*, and therefore it is very populous, and has several Monasteries and a Cathedral, the Bishop's Revenue being worth 80000 Ducats a Year. All the Country about is full of rich Silver Mines, which gave the Name to the Town. Besides those in it, there are several Hundred *Spaniards* living in Country Houses, and many Thousand *Indians* Tributary to them, all extraordinary rich.

Twenty two Leagues from *Potosi* to the Eastward is another Town call'd *Oropesa*, the Inhabitants whereof make a great Trade of carrying their Corn and Cattel to that City. Thirty Leagues to the Eastward of *Conquisaca*, there are three little Towns, which serve as Fortresses against the *Chiriguano*, an Inland People not well affected.

The Imperial City of *Potosi*, as the *Spaniards* call it, lies in 21 Degrees of South Latitude, 10 Leagues West from *La Plata*, 80 Eastward from the Mouth of the South Sea, and above 350 from the Mouth of the great River of *Plata*, inhabited by 5 or 6000 *Spaniards*, and a much greater number of Strangers; for Traders resort to it from all Parts, and no fewer idle People, who

have nothing to do but Game and make Merry. Above 30000 *Indians* are continually in the Suburbs, who come far and near to work in the Mines, because the Pay is very great, and very often they give the Proprietor so much a Day and make all they can of a Mine, by which they enrich themselves prodigiously. In the City there are several Monasteries of Religious Men and Women, and a College of *Jesuits*. *Acosta* says, all the Country about is extreme Cold, barren and destitute of all Things necessary for the support of Human Life; yet the Plenty of Silver has not only made it so populous, but brings the greatest Plenty of Provisions and all other Necessaries, or Conveniences from the remotest Parts, so that no Place is better serv'd. The Mountain of *Potosi* appears above the rest, like a Sugar-Loaf, naturally difficult of Access, but now Horses go up. The Bottom of it takes up a League, and the Top ends in a Point. At the Foot of this is a Part of the Mountain, proceeding from the great one, where several flat Pieces of natural pure Silver have been found. This is call'd *Little Potosi*, and on the side of it begin the Buildings of the *Spaniards* and *Indians*, being almost two Leagues in Compass, so that it is the largest City in *Peru*. The Mines here were not known to the *Incas* of *Peru*, but accidentally discover'd by an *Indian* 12 Years after the coming in of the *Spaniards*, and were four in Number, so rich, that none in the World could ever compare to them; for almost half the Ore was at first pure Plate, and the King's fifth Part of them for several Years amounted to at least a Million of Pieces of Eight a Year, and there is no Doubt but that he was cheated of half. Another excellency of these Mines is, that at 200 Fathom depth, they find no Water; but to ease that immense sinking downright, in many Places they dig in at the Side of the Hill and meet the Veins upon the Level, which are sometimes larger, and sometimes smaller, some richer, some poorer in Ore; but the Vein is always found to run between two Rocks, the one side of which is much harder than the other, and those Rocks, they call the Box, or the Case.

Having extended so much on account of this beloved Metal, it will be grateful to add a Word more concerning the manner of cleansing and refining it, wherein we shall still follow *Acosta*. All the Ore is carried on Sheeps Backs to the Mills. When broken and bruise'd, the rich Ore is refin'd by melting only in Crucibles, where the Dross settles to the bottom, the Lead which is always mix'd with it, lies on the Dross, and the pure Silver swims on the Lead. An hundred weight of Ore will yield 30, 40, or 50 piece of Eight of pure Silver by this way of melting; nay some has yielded 200, and 250, but that is rare. The poor Ore is that which of an hundred Weight yields 2, 3, 4, 5, or 6 pieces of Eight at most, and this being hard and dry, without mixture of Lead, cannot be refin'd by Fire, and therefore vast quantities of it lay about *Potosi*, as meer Dross, till the cleansing with Quicksilver was brought into use, which is thus. The Ore is ground in the Mills, and then sifted through Wire Sieves, very close. The fine Stuff is put into Troughs, where it is temper'd with Brine, allowing five hundred Weight of Salt to every fifty of pounded Ore, which serves to loosen the Plate from the Clay. Then they squeeze the Quicksilver on it thro'

a Holland



a Holland Cloth, which makes it fall like a Dew, working and stirring all continually, that they may mix, and incorporate. The better to bring this to pass, they make a gentle Fire in Vaults under the Troughs, and that heat makes the Quicksilver operate, and cling to the Plate in 5 Days, whereas before, when they did it by the heat of the Sun, it took up 20 Days, and much Labour to work it together over and over. When the Quicksilver and Plate are well incorporated, the Ore is all put into Vessels of Water, where stirring it continually about, all the Clay and Earth washes off, and the two Metals sink to the bottom. This they squeeze in Cloths, through which much of the Quicksilver will drop, the rest remains in a Mass with the Silver; and that they put over a fierce Fire, with a hollow Vessel over it. The Fire expells all the Mercury, which the hollow Vessel receives, and the Plate remains in a Mass, full of holes, like a Honey comb, where the Quicksilver has flown out of it. We have exceeded on the Account of this precious Metal, they who desire more Particulars, may see them in *Acosta*.

*Porco* is another Town 6 Leagues West from *La Plata*, where were once the famous Mines of *Peru*, before the discovery of *Potosi*, but much decay'd by reason of their being so much infested with Water. Continuing on the way hence to the Sea, we come to the famous Port of *Arica*, in 17 Degrees, 20 Minutes of South Latitude, well fortified of late Years against the attempts of Pirates; because all the Plate of *Potosi*, and other Parts, thereabouts, is brought down hither on Sheep, and here shipp'd off for *Lima*, and this is the only Place of Note of this Province on the Coast.

Having spoken so fully of all Places, and matters of Note in this Province, it will be needless to add any more, relating to things of less Consequence. What other Towns there are, have not any thing that can require a special mention, and to run through all the *Indian* Names of Tribes, which are almost as many as Towns, would not afford any matter of Information, and therefore we proceed to the next Province, which is

La Sierra, or Santa Cruz de la Sierra,  
Lies up the Inland, has *Los Charcas* for its bound-

dary on the West, on the North for the most part the Inland Countries little known, and much of the same sort on the West, and South; the Name of *La Sierra* signifying the Mountain taken from its Position among them, and the addition of *Santa Cruz*, or the Holy Cross given to the Capital City.

The City bearing the same Name of *Santa Cruz de la Sierra*, is about 100 Leagues to the Eastward of *La Plata*, on the Road to the *Assumption*, in *Paraguay*. The Country about it is scarce of Water, yet not barren, as bearing Wheat, *Indian* Corn, and Wine. Its Situation a Plain, extending far, the Houses cover'd with Palm-Tree Leaves, and by it runs a Brook, issuing from a Rock, and forming a Lake 4 Leagues from it, whence it is plentifully provided with Fish, as it is from the Neighbourhood with all Fruit of those Parts.

The Natives of this Province formerly liv'd in Houses of Clay, and gather'd the Rain-Water in Wells, or Cisterns, yet they often suffer'd to Extremity for want of it, and were cruelly infested by their Neighbours the *Cheriguanes*, and *Titanes*, who enjoy a fertile Soil 35 Leagues from them, and are great Man-eaters. Twenty five Leagues from the City is the Territory of the *Paicanos*, where there are Gourds of such a prodigious bigness, that the Shells of them hold a quarter Cask of Wine, and the Natives use them instead of Chests, to put up their Cloaths, and other Goods. Their Country is subject to much Heat and Cold, only inverting our Seasons. The Natives are of a base and dull Disposition, without any Industry. The Men wore loose Robes of Ostrich Feathers, and the Women others straiter, of *Peru* Wooll; at present they all use Cotton.

There are some other small Towns of *Spaniards* in this Country, and many of Natives, and among the first, *Barranca*, *Santa Cruz la Nueva*, *Jesus Maria*, &c. Of all which it would be superfluous to make any particular Description, nor indeed do any Travellers, or Historians furnish us with any thing of Moment concerning them, for being very near the barbarous Nations, and destitute of Gold or Silver Mines, they are not as yet any way famous.

## C H A P. XIV.

### Containing the Historical Account of P E R U.

**I**T is most certain, that before the coming of the *Spaniards*, the *Peruvians* had no knowledge of Letters, Characters, or any sort of Writing, any more than the rest of the *Indians*, and yet they had Methods to preserve their Ancient History, and good Order in things relating to their Government. In order to it, they were very exact in their *Tradition*, which the Youth receiv'd from their Elders, and deliver'd to their Children, as a thing Sacred. Besides this, they had a sort of Pictures to supply the want of Writing; but the most wonderful, and unintelligible thing to us, were those they call'd

*Quipos*. Those consisted of abundance of Twists, or Threads put together, and those full of variety of Knots, and diversity of Colours, every one of which signified something; so that a bunch of these Threads was to them instead of a Book, and by it they told all things in their History, knew their Laws and Ceremonies, and cast Accounts to Admiration. For the preserving of these *Quipos*, there were Officers, call'd *Quipocamayos*, who were oblig'd to give an exact Account of what all those things signified, as the ablest Scholar in *Europe* may do; having several *Quipos* for all different Uses. This they



can do to this Day, and an *Indian* by such a cluster of Threads will tell exactly what any Officer has done there for several Years, and in all Parts. Others have little Stones, by which they remember any thing they are to learn, and by that means get all the Christian Doctrine, so that when they are out, looking upon the Stones, they set themselves right again, as we might do by looking in a Book. Then for the most intricate Accompt in Arithmetick, they will cast it up in a Moment with only a few Grains of their Corn, better than an able Accountant shall do with his Pen, which must be what is still practis'd among us with Counters.

These were the Means by which the *Indians* preserv'd the Knowledge of their Antiquities, and the Kings of *Spain* having order'd all that could be learn'd of this sort, to be diligently collect-ed, and preserv'd; several Authors have treat-ed of it, and tho' they differ in many Points, that is no more than we see in our own written Histories, and in the main they agree all well enough, but because we have not here room to deliver things more at large, we shall content our selves to follow *Acosta*, a learned and judicious Man, who learnt what he delivers, upon the Spot.

Formerly, before the *Ingas* had subdu'd all the Country, there was no Kingdom of any Note, but the People liv'd either absolutely free, or under petty Princes, or Lords, like the Caciques of most other Parts of *America*. Since the *Ingas* began to reign, is under 4, and above 300 Years before the coming of the *Spaniards*; but for a long time their Dominion did not extend above 5 or 6 Leagues about the City of *Cusco*, where they had their Original, and by Degrees stretch'd farther and farther over all the Country we call *Peru*, from above *Quito*, and the River *Paslo*, in the North to *Coile*, in the South being almost 1000 Leagues in Length. In Breadth from the South Sea, on the West to the great Plains beyond the long Ridge of the Mountains *Andes* in the East, where is the *Inga's* *Pucara*, being a Fortrelis erected to secure the Frontiers on that side; and they went no farther that way, because of the immense Waters, Morasses, Lakes, and vast Rivers there were in the way to obstruct their Passage, so that it did not exceed an hundred Leagues. These *Ingas* surpass'd all other Nations of *America* in the Art of Government and Politicks, and much more in Martial Discipline, and Bravery.

The Pretence they had for conquering of that Country, was the Fable, that after the universal Deluge, of which they had some dark Knowledge, the *Ingas* had been the Restorers of Mankind, seven of them coming out of the Cave of *Pacaritambo*, and therefore all other Men ow'd them Tribute and Subjection, as to their Progenitors. Besides they affirm'd, that they only had the true Religion, and knew how God ought to be serv'd and honour'd, and therefore were to instruct all others. For this Reason they insist'd much on their Rites and Ceremonies, for which end they had above 400 Places of Worship in *Cusco*, as a Holy Land, and all Places about it contain'd some Mystery, and as they conquer'd, so they introduc'd their Religion. The principal Object of their Adoration, was *Viracoma Pachayachacbi*, that is, the Creator of the World, and next to him, the Sun, who, as well as all their other *Gua-*

*cas*, or Idols, they said, had their Virtue and Being from the Creator, and interceded with him.

The first *Inga* the People of *Peru* name, was *Mangocapa*, who, they feign, after the Flood came out of the Cave of *Tambo*, 5 or 6 League from *Cusco*, and from him descended the chie Families of *Ingas*, the first of them call'd *Huancusco*, and the other *Urincusco*, from the former of them came the Sovereigns, who conquer'd the Country. *Inga Roca* was the next they mention, as head of the Family they call *Vizquirao*, who tho' not great, first was serv'd in Gold and Plate, and order'd that all his Treasure should be dedicated to the Worship of his Body, and maintainance of his Family, and in his Days they us'd golden Idols. His Successor did the same, and thence it became a Custom, that no *Inga* should inherit the Wealth or Goods of his Predecessor, but furnish all anew.

It is here to be observ'd, that *Inga* among the *Peruvians* signifies King, or Emperour, and *Capac Inga*, the only King, which was the Title they gave their Sovereigns, all the Male Issue being call'd barely *Ingas*; and the Queen was call'd *Coya*. *Tagnarguaqueia* succeeded *Ingaroca*, for the Crown was Hereditary, and was founder of the Family call'd *Ascailli Panaca*. His Son *Viracocha Inga* succeeded him, and was wonderful rich in Gold and Silver, whose Treasure, buried with him, *Gonzalo Pizarro* found at *Xaquixaguana*, and burnt his Body because the *Indians* worhipp'd it; yet they gather'd the Ashes, and offer'd Sacrifice to them, till afterwards those, and all the Bodies of the other *Ingas* kept embalm'd, were taken away to destroy that Idolatry. This *Inga* was blam'd for calling himself *Viracocha*, which is the Name of God, and he to excuse it, pretended that *Viracocha* had appear'd to him in a Dream, and order'd he should do so.

*Pachacuti Inga Tupangui* reign'd next for 60 Years, and was a great Conquerour. During his Father's Life, it happened that his elder Brother, who govern'd for the old *Inga*, was routed by the *Changas*, which are the People of *Andaguaylas*, about 30 Leagues from *Cusco*. Hereupon *Tupangui* gave out, that *Viracocha*, or God, had appear'd to him, and order'd that he should raise Forces, and cause him to be worhipp'd, as he ought, because Men paid equal Worship to the Sun, and other Creatures, whereas he was their Creator; and that he would assist, and make him Victorious. He did so, thrust out his Father and Brother, overthrew the *Changas*, and then ordain'd that *Viracocha* should be held the universal Lord, and from that time his Idol was set above that of the Sun, and their other *Gua-cas*, or Deities. After the Victory, he acquaint-ed his Soldiers, that it was not they who gain'd it, but certain bearded Men sent him by *Viracocha*, whom he saw, tho' they did not, and had been converted into Stones, which were to be found out, for he should know them again. Accordingly he gather'd abundance of Stones near the Mountains, which he appointed for *Gua-cas*, or Idols, and to them they offer'd Sacrifice, and carry'd them to their Wars, with assurance of Success through their assistance, and through this Conceit they gain'd many Victories. He made a large Statue of Gold, which he call'd *Indalapa*, and plac'd it on a Bier of Gold, much whereof was carry'd to *Caxamalca* to ransom *Atahualpa*, when.



when *Pizarro* had him Prisoner. His Body, with those of many of his Servants to attend it, was found afterwards at *Cusco*, as entire as if it had been alive, and it was sent to *Lima*, and there kept a long time to be seen by the *Spaniards*.

*Topa Inca Tupac Inca* was his Successor, and after him another ascended the Throne, of the same Name. The next was *Guaynacapa*, which Name signifies a Valorous, and Wealthy Youth, and he was both, governing with Prudence and Wisdom, and extending his Conquests on all sides much farther than any of his Predecessors, till he dy'd at *Quito*. He was ador'd whilst he liv'd, which the *Indians* affirm'd had never been done to any other; and when he dy'd they slew a Thousand of his Family, to go wait on him in the other World, which they all willingly embrac'd. His Treasure was immense, and the *Spaniards* coming in soon after, the *Indians* took care to hide it, tho' they afterwards produc'd a considerable Part for the Ransom of his Son *Atahualpa*. His Son, *Tito Cusi Gualpa*, who afterwards took the Name of *Guascar Inca*, ascended the Throne at *Cusco*; but *Atahualpa*, his younger Brother, rebell'd at *Quito*, and sent Forces which took the elder Prisoner after he had been proclaim'd King. All the People were extremely afflicted at this his Misfortune, and not being able to assist him, because *Atahualpa* had such a powerful Army, they offer'd up a great Sacrifice to *Viracocha Pachayachac*, the universal Creator beseeching him, that since they could not deliver their Sovereign, he would send People from Heaven to do it for them. Soon after this was done, they receiv'd Advice, that a strange People coming by Sea, had Landed, and taken *Atahualpa*. Now this happening soon after their Sacrifice, and those that took him being so few, they concluded they were Men sent by God, and therefore call'd them *Viracochas*, a Name given the *Spaniards* to this Day.

After the Death of *Atahualpa*, and *Guascar*, *Pizarro* possess'd himself of a great Part of the Kingdom; but *Almagro*, another Son to *Guaynacapa*, belieg'd him in *Cusco*, and reduc'd him to great straits, but was at last forc'd to desist, and retire to *Vilcabamba* on the Mountains, where he defended himself by the natural strength of the Place, as did his Successors, till *Amaro*, one of them, was taken, and publicly executed in the Market-place of *Cusco*, to the unspeakable sorrow of the *Indians*. After him several others of the Family were made Prisoners. One *Don Carlos*, Grandson to *Guaynacapa*, and Son to *Paul*, became a Christian, and always favour'd the *Spaniards* against *Almagro*. When the Marquis de *Caceres* was Viceroy, *Sayritopa Inca* came from *Vilcabamba* to the City of *Lima*, where he submitted, and had the Valley of *Tucay* and other Lands given him, which his Daughter inherited.

Hitherto we have follow'd *Acosta* in this brief Account of the Reigns of the *Incas*, now we will add a few Words out of *Garcilasso* concerning their Government. They had divided their Dominions into four Parts, answering to the Quarters of the World, and all the People were to be distributed, that there were Officers to every Ten, to every Fifty, every Hundred, and every Thousand, who were to see they wanted for nothing, and committed no Offence, so that the King knew

exactly how many Subjects he had, and in every Village there were Judges, who decided all Controversies without Appeal, the *Inca* himself determining all Disputes between Provinces. The People pay'd the greatest Honour imaginable to their Sovereigns, and they had secret Spies in all Parts, who gave them notice of any Misdemeanours, which they caus'd to be severely punish'd. The Kings were absolute over the Estates and Persons of their Subjects, so that they took such of their Daughters as they pleas'd, either for their Concubines or Servants; and it was a general Rule among them to Marry their own eldest Sisters, who dying, or proving barren, they Marry'd the next, and so on; and for want of them, the next of Kin. Extraordinary Care was taken that the Fields should be till'd and sow'd, and because there was want of Water, there were magnificent Conduits in all Parts, and Trenches drawn for Rivers. The Land which was sow'd they divided into three Parts, the first belong'd to the Sun, the next to the King, and the 3d to the Tiller. The King exacted no other Duties from his Subjects but the sowing, reaping, and carrying in of his Corn to his Granaries, and the Cloaths and Arms for his Soldiers, besides the Sustenance of the Poor, whose Tribute was a certain number of Lice, that they might not add to their own Misery by being natty. Gold and Silver they receiv'd from their Subjects as a Present, not as any Duty, they knowing no other use of it but to adorn the Temples, and Palaces. Of their sumptuous Works and Structures enough has been said in speaking of the Places where any of them were.

It has been also said, that they ador'd God by the Name of *Viracocha*, and under him the Sun; to God they gave nothing, because he is Lord of all, but to the Sun they offer'd Sacrifice of Sheep, of Corn, of Garments, &c. and to this purpose they had many Priests, and one chief of them. They consecrated Virgins to the Sun at 8 Years of Age, like the *Roman Vestal* Virgins, of which there were near 1000 in the City of *Cusco*, who never went abroad, but were employ'd in spinning for the King and Queen. They also made the Bread us'd at Sacrifices, as also the Liquor call'd *Aca*, for the *Inca* and his Family to drink on Festivals; and all the Vessels they us'd were either of Silver or Gold.

To say something of the Discovery and Conquest of this Kingdom, after some vain Attempts to the Southward from *Panama*, by Persons who met with nothing but Discouragements, *Francis Pizarro*, *James de Almagro*, and *Ferdinand de Luque*, in the Year 1524, join'd Partners for this Undertaking. A Ship was bought, in which *Pizarro* sail'd to Port *Pumas*, near the Line, where he Land'd his Men in a Country belonging to a Cacique, call'd *Bira*, or *Burque*, from whom it is supposed by Corruption the *Spaniards* afterwards gave that Name to all this great Monarchy. The Natives here fled before them, and they, after travelling three Days with scarce any Provision, through a rocky, impetrable Country, return'd to their ship, and sail'd ten Leagues farther to *San Juan*, so call'd, because some dy'd there for Hunger. He continued his Discovery with unpeasable hardships, which, as well as the *Indians*, destroy'd many of his Men. *Diego* was not able the



mean while, he fitted out another Ship, and steer'd the same Course with no less Sufferings, at length he met *Pizarro* and his Men, whom, after consulting together, he left ashore, and return'd to *Panama* for more Men. He came back with that Reinforcement, and they advanc'd, but with no better Success than before, for they lost many of their Men, and having proceeded only as far as *Tumbez*, made their way back again to *Panama* for Supplies. There the Governour refus'd to expose any more Men to be lost as the rest had been, whereupon *Pizarro* went away to *Spain* in the Year 1527, where he obtain'd a Grant of the King for carrying on his Discovery, and making such Conquests as he should think fit, and accordingly he made what Provision he could for his Expedition at *Sevil*, and went over to *Nombre de Dios*, and thence to *Panama*. In the Year 1530 he set out again for *Peru*, Landed his Horse at the Bay call'd *S. Mateo*, and Coasted along with the Ships, plundering an *Indian* Town call'd *Quaque* in the way, where was found a mighty Booty in Gold, Silver, and Emeraulds, which he sent back to *Panama*, and *Nicaragua*, to fetch more Men and other Necessaries. This done, and a Ship having brought him some Supplies from *Panama*, he advanc'd to *Puerto Viejo*, and thence went over to the Island *Puna*, where he continued till the following Year 1571, when two Ships join'd him with Supplies. With this Reinforcement he sail'd to *Tumbez*, where after several small Encounters with the Natives, he founded the Town of *S. Michael*, the first in that Kingdom, which still continues, tho' a little remov'd from the first Situation.

It happen'd fortunately for the *Spaniards*, that at this time the Kingdom of *Peru* was divided in it self; *Guscar*, the elder Brother having been Proclaim'd *Inga*, or King at *Cusco*, the Capital City, and *Atahualpa*, the younger Brother, supported by the Army usurping the same Dignity in *Quiro*, and overthrowing his Brother in the Country of the *Patia*, whereupon he march'd on towards *Cusco*, but stopp'd at *Caxamalca*, upon the News of the *Spaniards* being in *Tumbez*, and sent part of his Forces against *Guscar*, which defeated him twice, and at last took him Prisoner. *Pizarro* at this time had but 200 Men with him, which *Atahualpa* understanding, he made slight of so inconsiderable an Enemy, and applied himself to settle his Affairs at Home. However *Pizarro*, in September 1532, set out from his new Town of *S. Michael* with a Resolution to proceed to *Caxamalca* to see *Atahualpa*, the whole Force he had with him being only 67 Horse, and 110 Foot, among all whom there were but 3 or 4 Muskets, of which Number 5 Horsemen, and 4 Foot Soldiers with Leave return'd to the Town of *S. Michael*.

About the beginning of the Year 1533, *Pizarro* came to *Caxamalca*, where *Atahualpa* expected him with 100.00 Men, resolving to destroy all the *Spaniards*, who entered the Place in good order, as knowing the Reception that was designed them. *Atahualpa* came into the Marketplace with 8000 Men, the rest of his Forces following, and order'd them to sieze all the strangers, and not suffer one to escape, nor to touch as a Dog. Hereupon *Pizarro* gave the Sig-

nal for his Men to fall on, which they did with such Fury, that the *Indians* not expecting an Attack fled with so much Precipitation that they bore down one another. *Pizarro* himself with 15 Men made up to the *Inga*, and took him Prisoner. When he had been some time confin'd, tho' with civil Usage, he offer'd 10000 Ingots of Gold, and a great Room full of silver Vessels for his Ransom, which being accepted of, he sent to *Cusco* and all other Parts to have all that could be found of those Metals brought to him with all possible Expedition. His Forces, as was said before had taken his Brother *Guscar*, who was brought towards *Caxamalca*, and by his Order put to Death on the Road. Vast heaps of Treasure were brought from *Cusco* for the *Inga's* Ransome, and at the same time the famous Temple of *Pachacama* was stripp'd of all its Wealth, which amounted to 90000 *Castellanos*, worth about 8 Shillings each, besides what the Soldiers stole, and the Priests had before conceal'd, thought to be much the greater Quantity. Now was *Pizarro* reinforc'd by his old Partner *Almagro*, who brought him 200 Men. After his arrival, there being repeated Information that the *Inga* underhand contriv'd the Destruction of all the *Spaniards*, and no security for so small a Number against the Power of so great a Prince, he was put to Death, which caus'd an universal Lamentation throughout all the Kingdom, and *Toparpa*, a Son of *Guaynacapa*, was chosen his Successor by consent not only of the Natives, but of *Pizarro* himself, who immediately advanc'd towards *Cusco*, and coming to the delicious Valley of *Xauxa* had there several Encounters with the *Indians*, whom he as often routed with great Slaughter, and at length arriv'd at *Cusco*, the Capital City of that Empire, where *Mango Inga*, who had a better Right to the Crown than the other before-mention'd, being able to make no Opposition, put himself into the Hands of the *Spaniards*, and was courteously receiv'd. The Inhabitants all fled, setting Fire to the City in several Places, which the *Spaniards* put out, and found immense Treasure in it.

After subduing the Country about *Cusco*, *Pizarro* march'd into the Plains, and founded the City of *Lima*, since the Capital of that Empire. The Natives being pretty well brought into subjection, there happen'd to be much Variance between *Pizarro* and *Almagro*, who were at first reconcil'd, the latter going away to *Chile*. *Mango Inga* however gave the *Spaniards* much Trouble, but he was still defeated, and all those Enemies drove far off, and the Country might have been soon settled in Peace could the Conquerours have agreed among themselves; but the Differences increasing between the Factions of *Almagro* and *Pizarro*, after long Treaties, and many endeavours of Accommodation, in the Year 1538 they came to a Battel, in which the former was routed, and taken, and some time after put to Death. Next follow'd the Rebellion of the *Pizarros*, which ended in their utter Ruin, but that being foreign from our Purpose, we must refer the Reader to see it in *Herrera*, *James Fernandez*, and others, who have treated of those Wars, whilst we proceed to those Countries that lie next in our Way.



## C H A P. XV.

Of the unconquer'd vast Provinces comprehended under the Names of  
CARIBANA, GUIANA, CAYANA, and EL  
DORADO.

**T**His great Portion of the Continent is so little known, that to pretend to give a true Description of it, would be only imposing upon the Reader, whereas it is not design'd to inculcate Notions for Truth, but rather to deliver things as really they are, and where not known to relate what has been seen by any who have travell'd those Parts, without adding our own Conceits, or asserting more than is probable. This Method shall be here follow'd, using all possible Caution to omit nothing material that has been writ of these Parts, without presuming to determine what is not perfectly come to Knowledge.

In general, this Tract of Land borders all Westward on the Kingdom of *Peru*, Northward on *Papayan*, the new Kingdom of *Granada*, *Venezuela*, and New *Andalusia*, with a considerable Coast upon the North Sea; on the East it has the same North Sea, and *Brazil*, and on the South the Provinces of *Paraguay*, and part of *Peru*.

To assign the Extent of these Regions is impossible, the Inland having scarce been seen by any *Europeans*, and tho' we would fix the Limits of *Peru* on the West, yet how far to extend what the *Spaniards* have on the North Sea, is uncertain; the *Portugueses* in *Brazil* have made very little Progress up the Country, and how far the Provinces of *Paraguay* should reach, is not ascertain'd. This same Ignorance must follow of Course, as to the Manners, Customs, Religion, and Government of those Nations, and it must be observ'd, that those set Limits assign'd in Maps to all these Provinces, are Arbitrary and at the Pleasure of the Maker; as also that many of the Names of Nations we there find, are plac'd after the same manner, or at best by guess, most of them having been only heard of and never seen, and perhaps many altogether fabulous, as taken upon Hear-say from *Indians* who were never rightly understood, or perhaps knew what they said.

To proceed Methodically, as has been hitherto done, that is, returning from West to East, since these Countries are not yet to be regularly describ'd, we will next speak of the mighty River of the *Amazons*, or of *Orellana*, which runs through them. When the Commander *Belalcazar*, before mention'd in his proper Place, had subdu'd the Province of *Papayan*, he met with an Inland *Indian*, who told him wonderful Stories of the great Plenty of Gold in those Parts, from which the *Spaniards* gave them the Name of *El Dorado*, in the Year 1535. *Gonzalo Pizarro* being afterwards made Governour of *Peru* by his Brother, set out with some Men to find this Golden Country, taking *Francis de Orellana* with him for his Lieutenant. Having pass'd the Mountains *Andes*, and being in Want of Provisions, a Boat was built and *Orellana* sent in it with some Canoes down a River they found, which prov'd to be this of the

*Amazons*, to gather some Subsistence. He running 20 or 25 Leagues a Day, with the Violence of the Stream, which receiv'd several other Rivers on both sides, without seeing any Man; at last on the 8th of *January* 1541. he found a Village, whose Inhabitants had abundance of Provisions, and Ornaments of Gold, which he took without any Opposition. Here, he built another Boat and resolv'd to run down farther. Having finish'd it in *February*, he proceeded 20 Leagues farther, where he had like to be Over-set by the Rapidity of another River falling in from the South. Then running 200 Leagues farther, they saw neither House, nor living Creature. After this they came to a Village, the *Cacique* whereof, call'd *Apuria*, treated and presented them with Parrots, Partridges and Fish. Having taken in Provisions, he went on in *April* about 80 Leagues, into other Desert Provinces, where the Banks of the River were so steep that they could not Land. In *May* they came to the populous Country of *Machiporo*, and were pursu'd two Days by the Natives, till they came to a Village stor'd with Provisions, which they enter'd without Opposition, the Inhabitants being fled, and here they found by their reckoning, that they had run 340 Leagues from *Apuria*. Proceeding thence, they found the Country pleasant and plentiful, abundance of Canoes following them full of *Indians*, and thus they held on 100 Leagues, which brought them to the Country of another *Cacique* call'd *Pannana*, where they had a good Reception and saw many Sheep of such as are in *Peru*. In the next Province they were oppos'd and took Provisions by Force. Below this they met a River coming down on the left, which they call'd *Rio Negro*, or the Black River, because the Water of it discolour'd that they were on, for 20 Leagues. Having pass'd by several Provinces and Villages they came to the Country of the *Amazons*, as they were told. Below this a Woman told them, that up the Country there were Men, like them, by which they guess'd that some *Spaniards* had been that Way. On the 22th of *June* they saw many Villages on the Left-hand Bank, but could not Land by Reason of the Current. To pass by many more Repetitions of this sort, they saw some fighting Women among the Men, which was the Occasion of calling this the River of the *Amazons*, and at last came out into the Sea, on the 26th of *August* 1541, whence they coasted along the Gulph of *Paria*, and to the Coast of *Cubagua*, and were thence transported to *Spain*. By their reckoning they made Account that they had run upon that River about 1800 Leagues.

*Orellana* going into *Spain* obtain'd a Grant from the Emperour *Charles* the 5th for farther Discovering upon that River, and set out with three Ships for that Purpole, one of them he lost at Sea, and with the other two enter'd the River,



up which he sail'd 120 Leagues in 14 Days, and more in Boats, but he left no exact Account of that Country, that may be a help to Geography. Thus much we have in *Herrera*, and *Acosta* inform us that in the Year 1560, *Peter de Orta* came down the River *Amazon*, 4 or 500 Leagues from *Quaraca* in *Peru*, and fell into the River of *Amazons*, about 200 Leagues from its Source, but was himself Kill'd by the Way, his Companions prosecuted the Voyage to the Sea, and we have nothing more of them worth relating.

Not to be tedious in these Uncertainties, *Samler*, who has collected all that can be said of this River and the Country about it; finds it runs above 800 Leagues, without including the Windings, which are much more as has been seen above. Abundant other Rivers are swallow'd up by it on both sides, some of which have a Course of 2, 3, or 400 Leagues. The People inhabiting along it are infinite, neither so Barbarous as those of *Brazil*, nor so Polite as those of *Peru*. They do not eat Man's Flesh, but have abundantly to subsist on of Game, Fish, Grain and Fruit, and worship Idols, without troubling themselves with much Ceremony.

The River, he says, springs at the foot of the Mountains 8 or 10 Leagues from *Quito*, and runs to the Eastward; both the Source and the Mouth being near the Equinoctial. The Breadth of its Mouth is variously represented, some allowing it 50, others 40, and others but 25 Leagues.

In the Year 1635, two Religious Men, with only five or six Soldiers, ventur'd down this vast River and arriv'd safe at *Para* in *Brazil*, where they gave an Account of their Expedition to *Pedro Texeira*, the Governour there. *Texeira* fitted out 47 Barks, aboard which he put 70 Portuguese, with 1200 *Indians* well Skill'd at their Arms, and 800 Servants and Women and set out in October 1637, ran up the River and arriv'd safe in *Peru*. When leaving his People behind, he went himself with a few to *Quito*, and reported what he had done in September 1638. The Count de *Chinchen*, then Viceroy of *Peru*, order'd him to be furnish'd with all Necessaries, and *F. Christopher de Acuña* a Jesuit, with his Companion, to go down the River with *Texeira* and carry an Account to *Spain*, which he did in the Year 1640, publishing his Relation, as we now have it.

Hence it is we have more Light than from all that was done before, and according to their Information all the Country along that River, tho' in the midst of the Torrid Zone, is temperate. The East Winds, blowing all the Day, the Nights equal in length to the Days, the Annual Inundations like those of the Nile, and the Multitude

of Trees refreshing the Air, and rendering it delightful. The Honey there is excellent, they have Pastures for all Horses, all Grain and Fruit grows in Plenty and as good as in any other Part of the World, and there is infinite Fish in the Rivers and Lakes. There is vast Plenty of excellent Timber for building of Ships, and no End of the Ebony, and *Brazil*, and so of Cacao, Tobacco, Sugar, Cochinele and abundance of other Commodities, besides Gold and Silver. The Navigation on the River easy, the Stream carrying Vessels down, and the East Wind up it.

Along it, and the other Rivers that fall into it, they reckon'd 150 several Nations, populous and inhabiting many Villages; of which the *Honones* excel in making Cotton Cloth; the *Coropoceros*

Earthen Ware; the *Shanones* in Journey; and the *Topinambes* are the strongest. Arrows and Javelins are their Weapons, and they only make War to get Slaves to serve them, whom they use very favourably.

The *Napo*, the *Agarick*, the *Putomayo*, the *Temapo* and the *Coropitibe*, Rivers falling into that of the *Amazons*, all rowl Golden Sands. Above *Coropitibe* there are many Mines in the Mountains of Gold in that of *Tuxire*, of Silver in that of *Picore*, of precious Stones in that of *Paracale*, and of Sulphur in others. The Story of the *Amazons* is found to be a Fable, as has been hinted above.

Let us go up from this great River to that of *Oronoco*, or *Paria*, or *Viapuri*, the Mouth whereof lies between 8 and 9 Degrees of North Latitude. *James de Orta*, a Spaniard, was the first that attempted any Discovery up it in the Year 1531, and 1532 marching along the Bank of it with 200 Foot and 40 Horse for fifty Days, without meeting with any Town, and only a few Fishermen, who had no Corn, but fed upon Roots, he proceeded up the River 200 Leagues in all, till he came to a great fall, and then return'd to his Ship, and to *Spain*, where he died.

The Spaniards had made other Attempts to discover farther along this River, but with little Success. At length Sir *Walter Raleigh* having taken one *Bueto*, a Spaniard, who had been one of those Adventurers; and being told mighty Things by him of the Riches of *Gumana*, he undertook a Voyage thither in the Year 1595, and contracting Friendship with the Natives, obtain'd of them Guides to conduct him up the River *Oronoco*, without the Mouth of which there is such a Multitude of Islands, that it is a Matter of the greatest Difficulty to find the Way through them. Sir *Walter* having got Guides, found the true Mouth of the River, yet after all sail'd up it but five or six Days, to the Place where the River *Caroli* falls into it, and then return'd towards the Sea, promising the *Indians* his Friends to be with them again the next Year. At his coming Home he publish'd a mighty Account of his Discoveries, and the immense Wealth of those Countries, tho' at the same Time he knew no more than what some of the Natives had told him, nor indeed had he been near so far as *Orta*, before spoken of.

After his Return, in the Year 1596, he sent *Laurence Keymis*, with two Ships to the River *Oronoco*, who indeed found the best Way into, and sail'd up it 8 Days, but finding the Spaniards had a Settlement there, made all the haste home he could, without doing any thing remarkable. Nor was Sir *Walter* himself more successful in his next and last Undertaking, for he never so much as Landed, or made any new Discovery, but only incens'd the King of *Spain* against himself, and had his Head cut off soon after.

To leave these useless Voyages, the Spaniards, perceiving that other Nations began to attempt settling on that River, as looking on it as the best Inlet to that Country reputed so rich in Gold, built themselves a small Town some Leagues above the Mouth of the River, where it makes a sort of Bay, and call'd it *S. Thomas*, where they planted Tobacco, and Traded with other Nations for several Years, till that Commerce was Prohibited. However the Town increas'd, and is a part of the Government of *New Andalusia*.



What more we find of this River, is that it comes down from the New Kingdom of *Granada*, or Government of *Popayan*, the Country it runs through from West to East being above 300 Leagues in a direct Line, its Course with the Windings, must of Necessity be much more.

The Reason of Skipping from the River of the *Amazons* to this of *Oronoco*, is because the Country lying between them generally bears the Names of *Guiana* and *Caribana*, which some distinguish and will have *Caribana* to be that next the Sea, and *Guiana* the Inland, but these are imaginary Distinctions.

The length of this Country is above 400 Leagues, where several Nations have endeavour'd to establish themselves upon the mighty Hopes of a Golden Trade with the much talk'd of, but never discover'd *Dorado* and *Manoa*, which doubtless have no other Being, but in Imagination. *Sanson* has best collected all that these Adventurers agree in, touching this Coast, and from him we will deliver as much as is requisite.

The first River of any Note South-east from *Oronoco* is that of *Essekebe*, whose Source is but a Days Journey from the great Lake of *Parima*, and on it there are several Cataracts or Falls, which hinder the sailing up it to discover the Country. Next follow the *Berbice* and *Corretino*, whose Course is much shorter than the last; but no less interrupted with Falls. The next is *Surinam*, where a Fort was first erected by the *French*, from whom it was taken by the *English*, and from them again by the *Dutch*, who still keep it, with some Country about it, which with some other small Settlements on the *Berbice* and *Essekebe* affords them a considerable Trade of Tabacco and Sugar. The *Marmyn* is about 4 or 5 Leagues wide at the Mouth, and the length of its Course about 30 or 40 Days Journey. The *Cayana* has also its Rise among the Mountains near the Lake of *Parima*, and runs about 100 Leagues in a direct Line to the Sea, where it forms an Island, on which the *French* have settled a Colony, and some others along the Continent. *Aperuvaca*, or *Coveruvaca* has a longer Course than the *Cayana*, forms a large Lake, not far from its Source, and encloses an Island, where it falls into the Sea. *Wapero* is little inferior to the last, and like the rest, has a great Fall, or Cataract about 18 or 20 Leagues from the Sea. Along this River

there is Tabacco, Sugar Canes, Cotton Trees, and several sorts of wild Beasts.

As for the Temperature of the Air, it is the same in *Guiana*, as was said above of both sides of the River of the *Amazons*. Provisions are so plentiful that they may be had for little or nothing. For Game they have Deer, Wild Boars, Wild Goats, and all sorts of Fowl, not only of those known among us, but many others. Nor is there less Variety of most delicious Fish, and such Plenty that any Man may take more than will serve a great Number in a very small Time, especially of Tortoises weighing some hundred Weights, of which as many may be taken in one Night as every one Pleases. Of Fruit there are infinite sorts totally unknown to us, and most of them pleasant and delicious.

The Commodities the *Europeans* carry them are necessary Tools, as Hatchets, Hoes, Shovels, Knives, Scissors, Saws, Hooks, Nails, &c; or Curiosities, as Looking-Glasses, Bells, Rings, Glass Beads, Bits of Chrystal, Pendants for their Ears, Trumpets, Needles, Pins and all sorts of Toys, worth little here, in return whereof, we bring home an incredible Quantity of Cotton, Hammocks made of the same, which are sold in the Islands for 3 or 4 hundred Weight of Tabacco. Here is also Ebony, red and white Sanders, Indigo, Brazil Wood, Balsam, Sarsaparilla, Jalap, Turbith, Guajacum, several sorts of Gums, Turkey-stones, Emeralds, Deers, Tigres and Foxes Skins, Musk taken from the Alligators, and Monkeys.

Nothing of the Inland can be said with any Certainty, but there the imaginary *Dorado* and *Manoa*, so long sought after are plac'd. The Lake *Parima* above mention'd is as little known, as those Places, but suppos'd to be of a vast Extent, the only Account there is of it being from the Natives, who represent things as they please; for I do not find any *Europeans* that have been at it. These People are said to practise a singular Custom, which is, that on their Festival they anoint their Bodies all over with Oyl, or the most precious Balsam, and then strow all over that the finest of Gold Dust, as thick as it can lie; so that they are all over in an entire Case of Gold. We will not pretend to any farther Account of the Inland, which is altogether unknown, but proceed in Order.



CHAP. XVI.  
OF BRAZIL.



**T**HIS is the only Part of *America*, belonging to the Crown of *Portugal*, and of a considerable Extent, the Coast of it running almost 1000 Leagues, not in one Line, but first East and West, and then North and South, the whole lying between One and 25 Degrees of South Latitude, which will amount to near 500 Leagues from North to South; but then up the Inland they have gone a very little Way, so that they have only; a long Skirt upon the Sea, whilst all the Mediterranean Part remains unconquer'd and unknown.

The North Sea washes the North, East, and part of the South sides of it, the rest of the Southern side and Part of the Western borders upon the large Provinces of *Paraguay*; the remaining Part on the West reaches out to other Provinces hitherto unknown. It commences at the Mouth of the great River of the *Amazon*, whence it runs out Eastward near 500 Leagues, and there

turns away to the South about the same Length, till it comes to joyn the *Spanish* Province of *Guayra*, from which it is parted by the River *Capibari*, two Leagues from the City of *S. Vincent*. Thus we find it lies all under the Torrid Zone, except only some very small Part in the South, which reaches but a few Leagues beyond it.

It is true, the *Portugueses* would extend their Right as far as the Mouth of the River of Plate Southward, and quite to the Mountains of *Pern* Westward; but those are only Pretensions, for they have never been possess'd of any thing farther either Way, than what has been above set down in General, and shall be hereafter specify'd, when we come to the Particular Subdivisions. *Herrera* tells us this Country was first discover'd by *Vincent Tanz Pinzon*, and after him by *James de Lepe* in the Year 1500, both of them *Spaniards*, and in the Service of the Crown of *Spain*. However the *Portuguese* claim the first Discovery of



it, alledging, that *Peter Alvarez Cabral* sailing from *Lisbon*, with 13 Ships, for the *East-Indies* in the Year 1500, was by a Storm cast upon an unknown Country in 10 Degrees of South Latitude, where he saw a Tawny People with lank Hair and flat Faces, who fled at the sight of them, and being spoken to at a Distance in several Languages, understood none of them. Hence *Cabral* pass'd on and anchor'd in a Port he call'd *Seguro* or Safe, because it prov'd so to him, where he set up an Altar, had Mass said and a Sermon preach'd, the Heathens being present with wonderful Attention. That Admiral sent back one of his Ships to give his King an Account of his Discovery and erecting a Cross on a great Tree, call'd the Country *Santa Cruz*, or the Holy Cross. He also left two *Portuguese* there, to learn the Language and enquire into the Customs of the People and Product of the Land. The Name of *Santa Cruz* was afterwards chang'd into that of *Brazil*, from the abundance of that sort of Wood found there; as may be seen in *Emanuel de Faria y Sousa* and all other *Portuguese* Authors who treat of this Country.

*Niuehoff* who resided here some Years with the *Dutch*, and one of the last who has writ of the Country, speaks thus of it. *Brazil* is excellently qualify'd for the producing of all Things, which are generally found in the *West-Indies* about the same Climate; but no Mines of Gold, or Silver worth taking notice of have been yet found, and Sugar is the Principal Commodity. He highly extols the Conveniency of its Situation and many Rivers and Harbours proper for Trade and Shipping. Besides, he says it enjoys a very wholesome Climate; for tho' lying betwixt the Equinoctial and the Tropick of *Capricorn*, and consequently subject to burning Heats, yet they are allay'd by the East Winds off the Sea, not interrupted by Mountains or Islands, which is the Reason the same Distempers are rarely to be met with, which frequently reign in *Angola*, *Guinea*, and other Places, where the East Winds cannot afford the same Advantage. The Plague is a Thing unknown in *Brazil*; but they are not free from continual Putrid Fevers, caus'd by the hot and moist Air and excessive Use of Fruit.

Thus far he agrees well enough with all others, but besides the Sugar we must observe, that the next great Commodity is Tobacco, which is very strong, and inferiour to none for Goodness if kept till old enough. Cotton does not prove so well, tho' it grows in several Parts, yet not so as to make any considerable Trade. For other Goods here is sometimes Amber-greece found, but inconsiderable, some Kozin, and Train-Oyl, the excellent Balsam of *Copayva*, and abundance of Sweetmeats, Hides, and Ginger, as also some Indigo.

The Natives are divided into several Nations, the Chief of them distinguish'd by the Names of *Tubnanbas*, *Tebanabas*, *Petignaras*, and *Tapuyas*, or *Tapyers*, the three first using the same Language, and only differing in Dialect; but the latter subdivided into several Tribes or petty Nations, differing both in Customs and Tongue. They are generally of a middle stature, blackey'd, wide mouth'd, with black curl'd Hair, and a flat Nose, and commonly Paint themselves. The Women generally of the same size, well limb'd, and not ill featn'd. The People up the Inland go stark naked both Sexes; but those near the Sea, who have convers'd with Christians wear a Cot-

ton Shirt, or a Clout wrapp'd about them, and some of the Chiefest begin to be proud of Cloaths. The Wife follows the Husband wheresoever he goes, tho' it be to the Wars. He carries nothing but his Arms, and she is loaded with a Basket at her Back and another on her Head, containing all the Household-stuff; and perhaps a Child hanging in a piece of Callico over her Shoulder; besides all which, she often carries a Parrot or an Ape in one Hand, and leads a Dog in a string. Travelling they lie in the open Fields, on their Hammocks, hanging at Trees or Stakes.

Their Dwellings are small Villages, consisting of Huts, made of Stakes and Palm Tree Leaves, or such like Covering. All the Household-stuff consists in Hammocks made of Cotton Net-work to lie in, Cups and Dishes all made of Calabashes cut in the middle, painted red without and black within; the biggest of which will hold 30 or 35 Quarts. The poorer sort have Knives made of Stone, or of Cane, which was all they had before the *Portuguese* came among them; now the rich ones buy of them. Besides which they have several sorts of Baskets for divers Uses. Their general Food is Flour made of *Mandioka* Root, and the Flesh of all Beasts and Birds; as also Fish, boild or roasted, but half raw. For Spoons they commonly make Use of Oyster-shells. The General Drink is Water, besides which they sometimes make a Liquor with Black Sugar and Water, which they will sit Drinking whole Days, and adding to it some *Akaju* Leaves, it grows heady. They also press a Liquor from the *Akaju* Fruit, with which they will be very drunk, both Men and Women. The same they do with other sorts of Drink made of several Roots, all which they will drink to great Excess, and be very Frolicksome, and Dance for whole Days together. Nor are they less fond of Brandy, which they swallow very greedily, and smoke Tobacco in great Quantities.

As for any Thing of Religion, they have but little Notion of it; yet they are not void of some Idea of a God, whom they call *Tuba*, signifying, a most excellent Being. Therefore they call the Thunder *Tubakunanga*, a noise made by the Sovereign Essence. So much Knowledge they have of Heaven and Hell, as to believe the Souls do not die with the Bodies, but are either sent into Mansions of Misery, or else enjoy much Pleasure in Dancing and Singing, in some delightful Fields, behind the Mountains. These Fields they fancy are enjoy'd by all the brave Men and Women, who have kill'd and eaten many of their Enemies; but such as have been idle and done Nothing considerable are tortur'd by their Devil. They have a sort of Priests, whose Business it is to Sacrifice and foretel Things to come, whom they particularly consult upon undertaking a War or Journey. The Dread they have of Spirits is incredible, for some have dy'd upon the Apprehension of Apparitions. Yet all the Worship they pay to these Spirits, is endeavouring to appease them by Presents they fix to stakes drove into the Ground. Some of them pay a sort of Adoration to Thunder, and others to several Constellations. Among them the Nation call'd *Petignaras* are accounted mighty Sorcerers, inasmuch that they believe they can bewitch their Enemies, even to Death. Some Knowledge they have of a general Deluge, by which they say, the whole Race of Mankind was extirpated, except only one



one Man and his own Sister, &c. w<sup>h</sup> in the World has again re-peopled.

Many Distempers, common in *Europ*, are scarce known in *Brazil*. All their Remedies consist of Samples, and they laugh at our Compositions. Bleeding is us'd both by Suction upon Scarifications, and by opening a Vein. When any one falls Sick, they all consult together, and every Man declares the Medicine he knows, and that which they approve of is us'd. If all their Remedies prove ineffectual, they apply the last, which is knocking out the Patient's Brains with their Clubs, whom then they eat as well as their Enemies, the one for Love, the other out of Hatred.

The Women are extraordinary fruitful, have very easy Labour, and seldom Miscarry; but as soon as deliver'd, they get up and going to the next River without any Help, wash themselves. Then the Husband keeps his Bed 24 Hours and is very much made of, as if he lay in. Mothers Lament the Death of their Infants, with Howling and Crying for three or four Days. This may surmise in general as to the Natives and Product of the Country out of *Nienhoff*, who therein agrees very well with all others before him, as he does in respect to the living Creatures and growth of the Land, for which Reason we shall continue to say something of them out of him.

The *Indian* Salamander, call'd *Gekko*, is a long four-legged Insect so venomous, that the Sting of it is Mortal, unless immediately burnt with a red hot Iron, or cut off. Of Snakes or Serpents there are several sorts, among which is the Rattle-snake, so call'd from the Noise it makes with the Tail, like a Rattle. The *Gurka*, has a narrow Throat and a vast Belly, sometimes 30 Foot long. The *Senembi* or *Leopon* is a sort of Land Crocodile, seldom exceeding 5 Foot in Length, in the Head whereof there are certain Stones, reckon'd an infallible Remedy for the Gravel in the Reins, either taken inwardly, the Quantity of two Drams at a Time, or worn on some Part of the Body. Lizards there are infinite Numbers, and some 4 Foot long; as also Creatures call'd a Thousand and others an Hundred Legs, both very Venomous. Scorpions are no less frequent, and some grow to 5 Foot in length, but their sting not so pestiferous as those of *Europe*. Pismires are so prodigiously numerous, that the *Portuguese* therefore call them Kings of *Brazil*, and they devour all that lies in their Way.

For Beasts the *Kuandu*, or Porcupine, is as big as an Ape, without any Hair, but with strong Quills

sticking thick upon the Back, which it can dart out when vex'd. The *Ay*, or Lazy Beast is about the bigness of a Small Fox, the Head round, the hind Legs much longer than the fore, and has the Name from its slow Pace, for it will scarce move a Stone thrown in 15 Days. The *Pismire* Eater is call'd, because it feeds on those Creatures, has a Body like a Bear, but longer and a long Tail as is the Snout and the Tongue, which it lays on and with it roots up the Pismires. The *Armadillo*, or Beast in Armour, has a Head like a Swine and is about the same Bigness, all over cover'd with scales like Armour.

There is no less Variety of strange Birds; the *Toucan*, or large Bill, is about the bigness of a Wood Pigeon, and so call'd, because the Beak is prodigious large and a Span long, yellow without and red within, but very thin and light. The *Cocoi* is like our Stork, but of most curious Variety of Colours. The *Jabou-Gurka*, or Barn Bird, has no Tongue, but a Bill of a wonderful length, turning up like a Bow towards the End, and is of the bigness of a Stork. There is a small Bird no bigger than the Joint of a Finger, which yet makes a great Noise, and is easily taken off the Flowers on which it feeds. The feathers of it are changeable, for as you turn them, they still appear of a different Colour. Besides these, there are many other sorts too tedious to treat of, and an infinite Number of Parrots.

To speak of the sundry sorts of Fish would much exceed the Bounds of this Work, and no less the great Variety of Fruits and Plants, more proper for a Natural History. On the North-west Coast of *Brazil* there are very considerable Salt-Pits, in several places, where the Salt is made in 3 or 4 Weeks, only by letting the Sea into them, by the Heat of the Sun, without any other Industry, and therefore require very few Hands to manage them, tho' they will yield some Thousand Tuns of Salt, to serve all the Country. In all that has been said, we have not only follow'd *Nienhoff*, but compar'd him with *Lery*, *Thevet*, *Knivet*, and all the Ancient and Modern *Portuguese* Writers.

It is Time to come to the Division of *Brazil* into its several small Governments, which the *Portuguese* call *Capitanias*, that is Captainships; because each under a particular Commander, they being 14 in Number, which begin at the West, and run along the Coast Eastward, and then to the South, with the *Portuguese* Towns in them.

Para.	{ Para. Commot.	Serecipe.	{ Serecipe del Rey.
Maranhao.	{ Maranhao. S. Andre.	Bahia de todos os Santos.	{ S. Salvador. Villa Velha.
Siara.	{ Siara. C. Corjo.	Ilheos.	{ Ilheos.
Rio Grande.	{ Natal, e los Fejos.	Porto Seguro.	{ Porto Seguro. Santa Cruz.
Parabiba.	{ Parabiba.	Espiritu Santo.	{ Espiritu Santo.
Itamarica.	{ N. Senhora da Conceicao, or Itamarica. Goyaz.	Rio de Janeiro.	{ S. Sebastian. Angra dos Reys.
Pernambuco.	{ Olinda. Grazia. Arratice. S. Miguel.	S. Vicente.	{ S. Vicente. Santos. S. Paulo. S. Felipe.



The Captainship of Para,

Bounded on the West by a large Bay the Sea makes before the Mouth of the River of the *Amazons*, on the North by the Ocean, on the East borders on the Captainship of *Siara*, and on the South is shut in by the unconquer'd Natives, call'd *Toupinambes*. The *Portuguese* Town or Fort bears the same Name, in which there is nothing remarkable, but that it is seated on a Rock rising 5 or 6 Fathom above the Plain. Next the River it has no other Fortification but Gabions, between which there are many Pieces of Cannon. On the other sides it is enclos'd by a Stone Wall two Fathom high, with a dry Ditch about it. About 300 *Portuguese* inhabit it, whose Employment is Planting of Tobacco, and Sugar Canes, and gathering some Cotton, which grows wild. The River running by it is almost two Leagues over in that Place, having about 15 Fathom Water in the Channel, and 10 close by the Fort. To the South-east of this Fort, near the bottom of the Bay above-mention'd, is another small Fort call'd *Commora*, which serves to check the salvage Natives, and cover the *Portuguese* Plantations. Of late Years the *Portuguese* have from this Captainship pass'd beyond the Mouth of the River of the *Amazons*, and made two small Settlements, which they call *Corupa*, and *Esseiro*, and another in an Island among the Mouths of of the same River, which they name *Cagemina*.

The Captainship of Maranhao

Follows next to that of *Para*, which bounds it on the West, as does the Ocean on the North, *Siara* on the East, and the Country, not yet subdued, on the South. The greatest Length of it from East to West may be about 80 Leagues, and the Breadth from North to South up the Inland inconsiderable, which may be observ'd once for all in speaking of the several Captainships, or Governments, for the *Portuguese* have never been able to penetrate far into the Country. And to say the Truth, the best Possession they have in this Captainship is the Island of *Maranhao*, at the Mouth of the River of the same Name, for in the Island stands their only Town, which is also call'd like the said Island, and River, or *S. Francis* of *Maranhao*. Besides which they have some small Dwellings, the most noted whereof are *S. Arãrem* on the most Northern Point, and *Santiago* on the South.

On the Continent opposite to the said Island, and but 3 or 4 Leagues from it is the Nation the *Indians* call *Taponytapare*, inhabited by the *Toupinambes*, who have there 15 or 16 Villages. Adjoining to this is the Territory call'd *Commã*, and next that of *Cayeta*, all of the same People, in both which there are above 40 Villages, and the Soil of them is much richer than that of the Island where the *Portuguese* reside. All these are Enemies to the *Tapoumets*, their Neighbours, with whom they us'd to be continually at War, and therefore agree the better with the *Portuguese*, who have their Plantations among them, and have destroy'd the greatest part of them. The *Dutch* once settled in this Island, but were beaten out, and the *Dutch* have made several unsuccessful Attempts towards possessing themselves of it.

There is no such thing as a River *Maranhao*, which some Geographers lay down in their Maps, if we may believe the Account of *Claude de Abbeville*, who was there a considerable time; but three Rivers, the first call'd the Easterliest *Mounin*, whose whole Course is not above 50 Leagues; the second, *Taboucourou*, of the same Length, and the third *Miary*, 4 Leagues over at the Mouth, which springs under the Tropick, as the Natives say, and all these fall into the Bay that is before the Island *Maranhao*.

The Captainship of Siara.

Let us hear *Nienhoff* concerning it, that we may not be impos'd upon by *Portuguese* Relations, magnifying all their own Affairs to Extravagancy. It is of no great Extent, says he, its whole Compass being not above 10 or 12 Leagues. The River *Siara*, which rises far up in the Continent, disembogues about 7 Leagues and a half to the North of the Bay *Alangorypa*, under 3 Degrees, and 40 Minutes of South Latitude. The Natives of this Captainship are of a large Stature, with ugly Faces, long Hair, and a swarthy Skin. They have large holes in their Ears, stretch'd down to their Shoulders, and some of them holes in their Lips and Noses, in which they wear Stones for Ornament. The Country produces Sugar Canes, Crystal, Cotton, Pearls, Salt, and other Commodities. The Inland was in 1636 govern'd by a King of its own, call'd *Algodoi*, who was a sort of Tributary to the *Portuguese*, who had built a Fort upon the River *Siara*, and made themselves Masters of all the Sea Coast about it. In 1638, the *Dutch* took this Fort from the *Portuguese*, but were some Years after beaten out again, and the former Conquerours recover'd their Dominion, which we see was but small, and just upon the Shore; tho' that People would perswade the World that their Conquests extend a mighty way up the Land, where in reality, they have nothing.

The Captainship of Rio Grande.

This we shall also take from *Nienhoff*, as the last that has writ of it. The Name is given it from a River so call'd by the *Portuguese*, for among the Natives it is nam'd *Potigi*, or *Potingi*. Southward it borders on *Parayba*, Westward on the Captainship of *Siara*, the North and East are expos'd to the Ocean. It is divided into 4 Parts, from so many Rivers that run through them, viz. *Cunhao*, *Goyana*, *Mumpobu*, and *Potegi*.

The *Portuguese* have never made any great matter of this Country, and yet it produces plenty of wild Fowl, and most delicate Fish. Of the latter there is an incredible Quantity in a Lake call'd *Goraires*, and abundance of the Root *Aimidioka*, of which they make Meal, grows in most Parts.

*Rio Grande*, the great River, is so call'd by the *Portuguese*, from its bigness, and by the Natives, *Potigi*; the Mouth of it is in 5 Degrees, 42 Minutes of South Latitude, 3 Leagues from *Punta Agria*, coming from the West, and falls into the Sea, 4 Leagues above the Fort *Tres Reyes*, or three Kings, and bears great Ships. The River *Cunhao* is only Navigable in Barges, and Yachts. The Fort *Tres Reyes* is the only one



the *Portugueses* have in this *Captainship*, under which is the Town, or rather Village of *Natal*.

#### The Captainship of Parayba,

Following the same *Nienhoff*, derives its Name from the River *Parayba*, which has also communicated it to the Capital City, seated upon its Banks, 5 Leagues up from the Sea, and otherwise call'd *Nossa Senhora dos Naves*. This Place has many stately Houses with Marble Pillars, the rest being only of Stone. Here is kept the Court of Judicature for this Captainship. Within the Mouth of the River *Parayba* there are 3 Forts, one on the South Point, call'd *S. Catherine*, defended by 5 good Bastions, and a Hornwork. The second on a small Island, off the North Point, and call'd *S. Anthony*, with strong Walls, and a wet Ditch. The third in another Island higher up the River, and call'd *Refugio*.

Two considerable Rivers water and divide this Captainship, viz. *Parayba* and *Mongoipa*, or *S. Domingo*. The former lies under 6 Degrees, 24 Minutes of South Latitude, 4 Leagues North of *Cabo Blanco*, and discharges it self by two Mouths into the Sea, being separated by a large Sand Bank. In Summer this River is very shallow, but in Winter swells so high, that it often overflows the adjacent Country, and carries away many Men and Cattel. Two Leagues North of this River is a Bay, which affords a safe station to the largest Ships, and is call'd *Porto Lucena*. Half a League farther North is the River *Mongoipa*, which contrary to all others, is larger towards its Source than at its Mouth.

The Natives of *Parayba* inhabit about 7 Villages, the chiefest of which call'd *Pinda Una*, in the Year 1634, contain'd 1500 Inhabitants, the others scarce 300 each, and consisting of only 5 or 6 very long Buildings, with a great many Doors, but very small.

The chief Commodities of this Captainship are Sugar, Brazil-wood, Tobacco, Hides, and Cotton. Near the River the Country is low, and plain, but not far from thence rises by degrees, and affords an agreeable Variety of Hills and Valleys. The flat Country being the most fertile, is distinguish'd into several Divisions, under as many Names, much fertiliz'd by the overflowing of the River, and producing Sugar, Barley, Indian Wheat, Potatoes, Ananas, Cacao-Nuts, Melons, Oranges, Citrons, Bananas, *Pimenta*, and other Necessaries for Humane Life. In 1634, the *Dutch* possess'd themselves of this Country, but were at last beaten out, and continued ever since under the Crown of *Portugal*.

#### The Captainship of Itamarika

Owes its Name to an Island so call'd, being the chiefest Part of its District, which however extends 35 Leagues along the Sea-Coast on the Continent, having *Parayba* on the North, and *Serribuco* on the South, the Ocean washing it on the East, and the West extending to the unconquer'd Nations.

The Island *Itamarika* is parted from the Continent by the River of the same Name, the most Southern Part of it lying in 7 Degrees, 58 Minutes South Latitude. The Length of it from

North to South is about 2 Leagues, and the Circumference 7; pleasant and fertile enough, producing Brazil-wood, Cacao-Nuts, Cotton, Sugar, Melons, &c. Besides Wood for Firing, Timber for Building, and good Water. On it, next the Entrance of the River is the *Portuguese* Town, call'd *Nossa Senhora da Conceicao*, or *Itamarika*, and over it a small Fort, with a Redoubt at the entrance of the Harbour, which is at the South Entrance of the River forming the Island, where Ships drawing 14 or 15 Foot Water, may safely pass. Several small Rivers cross this Country not worth naming, but a League and a half North of the North Entrance of *Itamarika* is the famous Point of Land call'd *Ponta Pedra*.

A League farther North is the small River *Goyara*, in 7 Degrees 46 Minutes South Latitude; and 3 Leagues up it, is the Town of the same Name, in which the Court of Judicature for the Captainship is kept. This Country also produces Brazil-wood, Ginger, Cotton, and Indian Nuts.

The People call'd *Periguanes* inhabit here, tho' this whole Tract of Land, as far as *Cabo Blanco*, is not very populous, as having only a few Villages, inhabited by Natives. But this is to be understood of Natives who live subject to the *Portugueses* along the Coast, for up the Country, where they are not subdued, there are People enough. Besides *Goyama*, there is another Settlement, call'd *Capibaribi*, well inhabited, and has several Sugar Mills belonging to it.

#### The Captainship of Pernambuco

Extends above 60 Leagues along the Coast, having *Itamarika* on the North, the Ocean on the East, the River of *S. Francis* dividing it from *Serezac* on the South, and the unconquer'd Country on the West. It is subdivided into 11 small Districts, which are, the City of *Olinda*, *Garazu*, *Abracife*, *Moribela*, *S. Anthony*, *Poyulca*, *Serribuco*, *Gonzalo de Uma*, *Porto Calvo*, the Northern *Alagoa*, and the Southern *Alagoa*; among all which *Olinda* and *Garazu* are the chiefest.

*Olinda* was once the Capital Town of this Captainship, seated on the Northern Part of it, at a small distance from the *Abracife*, where was the Harbour. This was a Place of Note, a great Part of the Product of North Brazil being transported from it to Portugal. The best Part of it is built upon several Hills, pretty plain on the South side, extending to the Sea Shore, which has a very white Sand; and more steep and craggy towards the Land, and North side. The upper Part has a curious Prospect both to Sea and Land, and over the adjacent Islands and Villages. On the highest Hill in the Place stands the Convent of the *Jesuits*, very richly endow'd, and may be seen far at Sea. Not far from it is the Monastery of the *Capucins*, and near the Sea another of *Dominicans*; besides all which there are two other Churches of *S. Saviour*, and *S. Peter*. The Inhabitants were reckon'd about 2000 besides Clergy-men and Slaves, but the *Dutch* having formerly destroy'd it, what remains is inconsiderable. About a League from the City, near the Water-side, is a Village, or Suburb, with many Warehouses. The Capital now is call'd by the Name of the Captainship,



the same Town the Dutch built, and call'd *Maurice's Town*. As may be seen in the *H. E. Cartier*, and *Carl's Voyage to Congo*.

*Goniz* is rather a Village than a Town, about 5 Leagues from *Olinda*, on a River of its own Name. *Abrietta* more to the South, about 5 Leagues from the *Arracife*. *S. Anthony* about 7 Leagues South of *Arracife*, near the famous Cape *S. Augustin*. The City of *S. Alchael de Poyrk*, 10 Leagues South of *Arracife*, on a River of its own Name, that falls into the Sea on the South side of Cape *S. Augustin*, it was once populous, but much decay'd. *Serribim* is a Village, but a pleasant Place, and producing much Sugar. *Goniz* is also a Village 20 Leagues from the *Arracife*, and has 5 Sugar Mills. *Porto Calera*, and the *Alvares* are also Villages, whereof there are two more in the *Palmeira*, or Palm-Tree Woods, inhabited by Blacks. The *Arracife* is by situation the strongest Place in all *Brazil*, and defended by several Forts. *Arracife* in *Portuguese* signifies a Ridge of Rocks, or of Sand running in Length, such as there is before a great Part of the Coast of *Brazil*, with some openings, through which Ships pass. On a small Island of Sand, near the rocky Ridge stands a small Town well-built, and inhabited, taking its Name from that Ridge, and call'd *Arracife*. Its Situation is in 8 Degrees, 20 Minutes of South Latitude. To the South of the *Arracife* lies the Island of *Anthony Paz*, on which the Dutch, when possess'd of that Country, built that they call'd *Maurice's Town*, above-mention'd, with several Forts about it, whence they were afterwards expell'd by the *Portugueses*. The Harbour being the space between the Town of *Arracife* and the rocky Ridge, is very safe, but has not above 13 or 14 Foot Water. The Town of *S. Paul* the farthest up the Country, is a Place of Delight, where any Stranger is welcome, and soon meets with a rich Wife that will keep him at his Ease. *Gattina*, and *Carli*.

*Kapibari* is a River rising several Leagues to the Westward, and then dividing it self into two Branches, the one call'd *Ayogad*, running to the South, and the other to the North, under its first Name, and so falls into the River *Biribi*, or Salt River, near the Island of *Anthony Paz*. The whole Province of *Pernambuco* abounds in several sorts of Fruit, and Pasture which makes plenty of Cattel, and the lower Grounds, near the Rivers, produce much Sugar. During the rainy Season, the Heat is more tolerable in the Day, than the Cold Nights.

#### The Captainship of Seregipe,

Otherwise call'd *Curip*, from a small Lake of that Name in it, extends about 23 Leagues along the Sea Coast, the River of *S. Francis* dividing it on the North from *Pernambuco*, as does *Rio Real* on the South from *Baia de todos os Santos*, the Ocean being on the East, and the Country not subdued on the West. All these Captainships are divided into several Districts, or rather Parishes.

The principal Town here is call'd by the same Name of *Serigipe*, or *Vila de Bon Saccis*, seated at the Confluence of the 4 Rivers, *Mucuna*, *Tamandu*, *Comantabunda*, and *Monguaba*, on a rising Ground 4 Leagues from the Sea, which the *Portes* when there, fortified, but it is an inhabitable Place. Within this Captainship is

the Mountain *Talanda*, whence several Samples of Ore have been taken, which have prov'd not worth looking after.

On the back of these Captainships, that is, towards the Westward, live the Natives, call'd *Tupoyers*, or *Tapoyers*, divided into several Nations, under as many Kings of their own. They are taller and stronger than the other *Brazilians*, of a dark brown Colour, with black Hair hanging over their Shoulders, only the Forehead shav'd as far as the Ears, all the rest of their Bodies they keep without Hair, even to their Eyebrows. Their Kings, and great Men shave their Heads like a Crown, and wear long Nails on their Fingers and Thumbs; the common sort keeping those of their Thumbs short, as not permitted to let them grow, because long Nails are accounted an Ornament. Both Men and Women go stark Nakt, the Men only tying up their Privities in a Bag, which yet they are very cautious of exposing. The Women cover theirs with a bundle of Leaves, or small Branch of a Tree, and the same over their Backsides, but so carelessly, that much is expos'd to View. The Men tie some Feathers about their Heads, and have Cloaks of Cotton wove like a Net, stuck so close with Feathers, that they will keep out the Rain, and fasten Combs of some Birds to their Foreheads with wild Honey. If their Fathers or Mothers die, they pull every Hair out of their Heads, and have Holes in their Ears big enough to thrust a Finger through, in which they wear the Bone of an Ape, or a Stick wrapp'd up in Cotton; and holes in their Lips and Cheeks, in which they wear fine Stones and Sticks in those of their Nostrils. They paint their Bodies brown, and stick abundance of Feathers on them, and their Shooes are made of the Rind of a Fruit call'd *Aguay*. Some of them use no Bows or Arrows, but throw their Darts with their Hands, and have Clubs made of hard Wood, and make Trumpets of Men's Bones, or of Horns, yet are they not so good Soldiers as the other *Brazilians*. They neither Sow nor Plant, but feed upon such Roots and Fruit as they find, and the wild Beasts they Kill. They also eat Man's Flesh, and if a Woman happens to miscarry, devour the Child immediately. Nor have they any settled Habitation, but wander about like the *Arabs*, yet within certain Bounds, for the most part in Woods, and those who have Bows are so expert, that they will shoot a Bird flying. As soon as a Woman has conceiv'd, she abstains from her Husband, and when brought to Bed, cuts the Child's Navel-string with a Shell, which she boils with the After-birth, and eats them both. If she is convicted of Adultery, the Husband puts her away, but if taken in the Fact, he may kill both. Of their Religion enough was said in the general Account, and these People will not hear of any more. They are generally Enemies to the *Portugueses*, and preserve their Brutal Liberty. Thus far the Dutch had once extended their Conquests upon the *Portugueses*, who at last expell'd them, and recover'd their own, and *Nieuworf* was there in the Dutch Service, whom we have therefore mostly follow'd thus far, as giving the most exact modern Account of those Places, and must have recourse to others for what follows.



The Captainship of Bahia de todos os Santos,

On the Bay of *All Saints*, so call'd from a very large Bay the Sea makes there, about 2 Leagues and a half over, in some Places 12, in others 18 Fathom deep, and full of little Islands, very pleasant, and producing much Cotton. It is divided into several Branches, and runs into the Land above 14 Leagues, with many small Rivers falling into it, and among them three more considerable; the first of them running by the Capital City call'd *Pitanga*, the next *Goiabe*, and the third *Cachoeira*. This Bay opens to the South, and runs up to the Northward, a long Island call'd *Tapetica*, helping to secure the Mouth of it, on the Point whereof stands the Fort of *S. Antony*, and the small Town they call *Vila Velha*, or the Old Town, within which a Point of Land makes an Inlet like a half Moon, on which stands the Capital City *S. Salvador*.

This Captainship reaches about 60 Leagues along the Sea Coast, and runs up the Continent as little as the rest, bounded on the North by *Rio Real*, parting it from *Sergipe*, on the East by the Ocean, on the South by the Captainship of *Ilheos*, and on the West by the *Indian* Nations, who still stand in defiance of the *Portugueses*. It is the richest, and most populous of all *Brazil*, and has between 40 and 50 Sugar Mills about the Bay; besides that, it produces much Cotton, and some Amber-greece is found along the Coast.

Concerning the Capital City of *S. Salvador*, *Dampier* places it in 13 Degrees of South Latitude, and besides what has been already said of the Bay, says, there are several Forts about it, one whereof stands on a Rock in the Sea, half a Mile from the Shore, betwixt which and another call'd the *Dutch Fort* all Ships must pass. There is another Fort on the Hill where the Town stands. The City he makes to contain 2000 Houses, 13 Churches, Chappels, Hospitals, and Convents, and one Nunnery. The Governours and Archbishops Palaces are very noble Structures, but indifferently furnish'd within. This is the Residence of abundance of rich Merchants, who import Serges, Bays, Hats, Stockings, Biscuit, Wheat, Flour, Wine, Oil, Cheese, Salt-Beef, and Pork, as also Iron, and Pewter, Looking-glasses, and Toys, in lieu whereof they export Sugar, Tobacco, Snuff, Brazil, and other Woods for Dying, raw Hides, Tallow, Whale Oil, &c. The Country about it is flat, neither very high, nor low, and very fruitful, producing all those things we have already mention'd *Brazil* affords.

It will not be amiss to add a few Words out of *F. Alencar*, in his Voyage to *Congo*, who speaking of this City, and the Country about it, tells us, the Number of Slaves kept to work at the Tobacco and Sugar is so great, that there are some Masters who have no less than 500, wherein it is to be mistrusted he was impos'd upon by those boasting People, and their Labour so hard, and Sustenance so small, that they are reckon'd to live long if they hold out seven Years. So great is the Application of all People there to this Trade, that they take no care to sow, or plant, which makes all Provisions excessive dear, the Fish, tho' they are upon the Sea, because there are none to take it, and

the Meat, because the Fish is so gross, that the Cattle either starve for the Want, or is made so ill, that it does not come to Town. *F. Alencar* adds, that a *Comeiro* who had resided there 14 Years, assur'd him that the Natives were very docile, and readily embrac'd the Christian Religion, and when once converted, continued very active and devout, all which is directly contrary to what all others have writ of the *Portugueses*, which makes it much to be mistrusted, unless we suppose some particular Tribe or Nation of those People living about that City, to be so much better than the rest.

#### The Captainship of Ilheos,

So call'd from several Islands lying before the Bay, on which the chief Town of it is seated, follows next to *Bahia de todos os Santos*, from which it is divided on the North by the River *Comary*, on the East it has the Ocean, on the South the Captainship of *Porto Seguro*, and on the West the barbarous Nations.

The chief Town above mention'd, is in about 12 Degrees and 45 Minutes of South Latitude, and contains about two hundred Families, and has eight Sugar Mills belonging to it, the Product whereof, and other Commodities, are sent to *Pernambuco* in Barks. Seven Leagues from it, up the Country, there is a sweet Water-Lake, 3 Leagues over every way, and 15 Fathom deep, out of which runs a River through such a narrow Channel, that small Boats can scarce get through it. In blowing Weather the Waves rise very high in this Lake, which abounds in good Fish, especially *Almonas*, some of them so big as to weigh ten hundred Weight.

On the back, or West of this Government, and that of *Bahia*, live first the *Tapinambas*, then the *Cariacis*, and the *Tupiniquins*, which last came from the Coast of *Pernambuco*, and since then there is come a worse sort of People, no Man knows from whence, call'd *Cacipuanes*, and reckon'd the most barbarous of the *Brazilians*, for they eat their own Children, and rip up Women with Child to devour the *Fetus*, besides they drive Flocks of Men as if they were Cattel, to kill and feed on them. They are of a Gigantick stature, whiter than the other Salvages, and said to have been expell'd their Native Country by their Enemies; wandering up and down, without any Houses, but lying in the open Fields, like Beasts; using strong Bows, and long Arrows, and never fighting openly, but lying in Ambush, and taking Men by surprize. By these means they much distress'd the *Portugueses*, and at last almost destroy'd the Town of *Ilheos*, till about the Year 1581, the *Portugueses* taking Courage, and receiving some Succours, destroy'd them upon several Occasions, so that they have since done but little harm. *Liet.*

#### The Captainship of Porto Seguro

Retains this Name given it by *Peter Alvarez Cabral*, the first Discoverer, drove on it by a Storm, as has been said above. On the North it borders on *Ilheos*, the East is wash'd by the Ocean, the South is divided by the River call'd *Rio de São* from the Captainship of *Esperita Sousa*, and the West is shut in by the barbarous *Cacipuanes*, above-mention'd, and the Native *Tapinambas*.



... which extend far up the Country, and along the *Portuguese* Dominions as far as the Captainship of *S. Vincent*, and are mortal Enemies to the *Portuguese*.

The principal, or rather only Town in it bears the same Name, inhabited by near 500 Families of *Portuguese*, seated on the top of a white Rock, far which there is very high Land to the Northward, plainer to the Southward, and ending in a flat Strand. In the Town there is a small College of *Jesuits*, who instruct the Youth, and attempt to convert the Natives. This Place, as well as *Ilheus*, was almost ruin'd by the Inhumane *Guanymas*, who utterly destroy'd another *Portuguese* Town, call'd *S. Amaro*, so that at present there is only this *Porto Seguro*, and a poor Place call'd *S. Ana Cruz*. The whole Livelihood of these *Portuguese* depends on carrying Provisions to sell along the Coast, for they abound in them, but have very little Sugar.

The *Dutch*, and others, who of late Years have touch'd on this Coast, especially towards the Captainship of *Espirito Santo*, say they have found no People at all, but large Deserts, and impenetrable Woods, which shows, that the *Portuguese* for the most part along all this vast Continent, have only a little Land about their Towns, tho' they represent it as if all the Coast were in their Possession, because they have the few Towns we mention along it at such Distances. *Jaricis*, *Laci*, and *Sanfon*.

#### The Captainship of Espiritu Santo,

Joining on the North to that of *Porto Seguro*, on the South to *Rio de Janeiro*, on the East lying along the Ocean, and on the West by the Natives *Topugus*, and *Apiactangus*, mortal Enemies to the *Portuguese*.

The only *Portuguese* Town here bears the same Name, is in about 20 Degrees of South Latitude, 60 Leagues North from *Rio de Janeiro*, and 50 South from *Porto Seguro*; inhabited by about 200 Families, the *Jesuits* have a House here, and there is a small Fort on one side of it.

This Captainship is reckon'd the best furnish'd with all sorts of Provisions of any in *Brazil*, having incredible Plenty of Fish, and infinite Game of all sorts in the Woods and Forests; besides that, the many Rivers crossing it every way, render the Land extraordinary fruitful. The noble River *Parayba* divides this Province from that of *Rio de Janeiro*, falling into the Sea in 20 Degrees and a half of South Latitude, about which live a People call'd *Paraybes*, differing little from the other Natives. We must here observe, that there are 3 Rivers bearing this Name upon this same Course. The one in the Northern Part of *Brazil*; this we here speak of the second, said to come far from the Westward; and the third between the Captainship of *S. Vincent*, and the River of *Plate*.

The Town stands on a Bay on the right side of it, about 3 Leagues from the main Sea, without any Wall, or other Defence; on the East side of it is the Monastery of *S. Benedict*, and its Church, in the midst of it, on the upper Ground, is that of *S. Francis*, and on the West that of the *Jesuits*. The Natives of this Spot are call'd *Margayates*, formerly mortal Enemies to the *Portuguese*, now their Confederates, and

little differing from the rest of the *Brazilians*. They live in 7 or 8 Villages about the Town, and many of them are become Christians. *Lery*, *Horcia*, and *Jaric*.

#### The Captainship of Rio de Janeiro.

So call'd from the River of that Name, discover'd by *John de Solis* in the Month of *January*, tho' the *French*, who once endeavour'd to settle there under *Villegaignon* in the Year 1555, call'd it *Gracubara*. The Mouth of it is 23 Degrees South Latitude. The Land of *Brazil*, which hitherto from *Rio Grande* runs most to the Southward, now at Cape *S. Thomas*, where this Government commences, turns off, and lies almost East and West, only a little inclining to the South, or between the North-east, and South-west, so that the North-east side of this Captainship lies to that of *Espirito Santo*, the South-east to the Ocean, the South-west to the Captainship of *S. Vincent*, and the North-west to the Barbarians.

The *French*, who, as was said above, made a Settlement here in 1555, being beaten out by the *Portuguese*, these built the Town of *S. Sebastian* on a small Bay, which is about 2 Leagues in from the Main Sea, on a plain Spot, encompass'd round with Mountains, to which there is an easie Ascent. The Town lies in length the whole extent of the Bay, but has very little Breadth, without Walls or Ramparts, but has four Forts to secure it against Enemies; the first on the East side of the Bay; the second, an Island on the West side; the third on a Rock to the South-west; and the fourth on the North-west side of the Place, which is divided into three Parts; the first, which may be call'd the upper, where stands the best Church, and the College of the *Jesuits*; the second, the lower in the Valley, call'd *S. Anthony's Ward*, and the third upon the edge of the Bay from the Castle up the Land, to the Monastery of *S. Benedict*. The *Jesuits* above-mention'd, teach Divinity, Philosophy, and Latin, and have the Charge of instructing the Natives, who live by the Town in two great Villages, being about 2000 Men, converted by them to Christianity. There are some few Sugar Mills belonging to this Place, but the principal Trade of the Inhabitants is Cotton, Brazil-Wood, and Provisions, whereof there is great Plenty.

The other Town belonging to this Captainship, is call'd *Angra dos Reyes*, about 12 or 13 Leagues West of *Rio de Janeiro*, as *Figueiredo* represents it in his Chart, seated on the Continent opposite to an Island, they call *Grande* or great, and a lesser, nam'd *Ypoia*. This Colony was Planted much later than the other, and is inconsiderable. The ancient Natives were call'd *Toupinambaults*, who have been all destroy'd, or fled, for those *Indians*, said to inhabit there now, seem to be a medley of several Nations, being no better than Slaves to the *Portuguese*. *Lery*, *Thevet*, and *Lut*.

#### The Captainship of S. Vincent

Is the last to the Southward, joining on the West to the Province of *Goias*, belonging to *Paraguay*, on the East to the Captainship of *Rio de Janeiro*, on the South it has the Ocean, and



on the North, the Inland unknown Nations.

The chief Town here is call'd *Santos*, seated about 2 Leagues from the Sea, defended by a Rampart on the side next the River, which is there half a League over, and 5 fathom deep. Besides it has two Castles, the one on the South side, and the other in the middle of the Town, which does not contain above 200 Inhabitants, part *Portuguese*, and part *Mestizos*, or Mungrels, one Parish-Church, one Monastery of Monks, and a House of the Society.

The next Town, 3 or 4 Leagues South from this, is *S. Vincent*, the Place it self well enough built, but has an ill Harbour, and not above an hundred Inhabitants, and 3 or 4 Sugar Mills, but 8 Leagues up the Country they have two Villages, call'd *Tanji*, and *Caxace*. Besides there are some other inconsiderable Settlements, such as *Itanibon*, *Comma*, &c.

The little Town of *S. Paul* lies some Leagues up the Country, seated on an Eminency, at the Foot whereof run two small Rivers, the one coming from the South, and the other from the West, which meeting here, fall into the *Jurambi*. This Place has not above 100 Houses, one Parish Church, two Monasteries of *Benedictines* and *Carmites*, and a House of the *Jesuits*. The chief Revenue of the Inhabitants proceeds from Sheep, and Tillage. The Summer heat is cool'd by the Air from the Mountains; but in Winter sometimes it freezes. The Soil produces good Wheat, it is proper for feeding of Cows, so that nothing is wanting but Salt, Wine, and Oil. About a League North from the Town runs the River *Jurambi*, capable of small Barks, and well stor'd with Fish, coming from the Mountains of *Paracipicaba*, and running to the Westward.

On the abovesaid Mountains of *Paracipicaba*, there are some Gold Mines, which at first were

thought considerable, but afterwards came to little or nothing. Since which there is an old Ven. Ford on the Mountains of *Bonitudo*, or *Joaquim*, about 20 Leagues South from the Town of *S. Paul*, whereupon the little Town or Village of *S. Philip* has been built there, and now, within these few Years, we have heard of Gold brought to *Lisbon* from the New Mines, since when it has been said, that the *Portuguese* from the River of *Para*, have beaten the *Portuguese* off, and possess'd themselves of the Place.

To the North of this Province live the *Tupacambas*, before spoken of, who are irreconcilable Enemies to the *Portuguese*; on the adjacent Mountains, and farther off, are the *Tupikissis* stretching down to the Sea side, and in Peace with the *Portuguese*, and to the Southward of them are the *Caros*, belonging to the Provinces of *Paraguay*, and therefore need no mention here. The *Jesuits* in their Annual Letters from those Parts, make mention of a salvage Nation, they call *Aicommucos*, or *Mernimus*, vagrant, herce and cruel, which have done much Mischief to the *Portuguese*. A great part of the Country has been depopulated by the Cruelty and Baseness of the *Portuguese* towards the Natives; for the Religious Men use all their Endeavours to obstruct the treating of those People barbarously or sending them away into Slavery, yet the *Portuguese* have been so far from being averted from their Inhumanity, that because those Religious Men are confided in by the Natives, they have often made use of their Habit to deceive those Wretches, and by that means drawn them into their Snare. But we shall have more occasion to speak to this Point in treating of the Provinces *Paraguay*, where they have committed the utmost Barbarities, as will appear; and thus we close the Description of *Brazil*.



## CHAP. XIV.

Of the Provinces of PARAGUAY, or the River of PLATE, including GUAYRA, PARAGUAY, properly so call'd, TUCUMAN, PARANA, URVAIGA, and RIO DE LA PLATA.



These Provinces, frequently call'd by the general Name of *Paraguay*, are of a vast Extent, as reaching about 500 Leagues from North to South, and near 600 from East to West in the largest Part, but much less in others, for they slope off both Northward and Southward, yet so, that they are at least 200 Leagues over in the narrowest Place. The Limits of them to the North lie along the yet undiscover'd Midland Nations, almost at 12 Degrees of South Latitude, about the Springs of the River of the same Name; those on the South lie about 33 Degrees of the same Latitude, on the

unconquer'd *Magellanick* Land. Westward they border upon *Peru* and *Chile*, in about 304 Degrees of Longitude, and Eastward they lie along the Ocean as far as 377 Degrees of Longitude.

Besides the large Provinces contain'd in this immense Tract of Land, a vast multitude of *Indian* Petty Nations may be reckon'd to inhabit it, of which we shall have occasion to speak in the particular Parts. The Manners and Customs of those several People must therefore be referr'd to the same Places, to avoid Repetitions of the same things, or giving one imperfect Account of Countries differing much from one another. As for the



the Product, tho' it vary not so much, it will be no less convenient to follow the same Method, only observing that none of these Provinces have been yet found to yield any Gold, or Silver, which may in a great measure have obstructed the better Peopling of it with *Spaniards*, those precious Metals having drawn the greater Multitude to other Regions, where they abound, and yet we shall not find these are well Planted, considering the immense Extent. But the most remarkable thing here, will be to see a mighty Tract of Land subdued, and con-

verted, without the least Force, only by the Preaching of a few Missioners, notwithstanding the incredible Discouragements from the *Portuguese* Inhabitants of *Brazil*, whose Inhumanities committed against the poor Natives, were sufficient to have given the best dispos'd Infidels an Aversion to the Name of Christianity, and an utter Hatred to all *Europeans*. But leaving this to its proper Place, let us come to the Division, where the several Provinces, with their respective Towns, lie thus.

Paraguay, properly so call'd, and Chaqua.	{	Assumption.	Paragua.	{	S. Anne.
		Villa Rica.			Itapoa.
		Maracay.			Acaray.
		Areacay.			Iguazu.
		Ypime.			Cucapa.
		S. Ignacio.			Yuti.
		N. S. de la Ec.			
		Xeres.			
		Conception Antigua.			
		Santiago del Estero.			
Tucuman.	{	Cordoba.	Guaira.	{	Ciudad Real.
		S. Miguel.			Villa Rica.
		Liseco, or N. S. de Talavera.			La Concepcion.
		S. J. or Lerma.			Camana.
		Londres.			Los Archangeles.
		S. Salvador, or Xuxu.			La Incarnation.
		Rioja.			
		Palapas.			
		Soro.			
		La Punta.			
Rio de la Plata.	{	C. de San Luis.	Urvaiga.	{	Ros Reyes.
		Los Santos.			The Assumption.
		Buenos Ayres.			The Concepcion.
		Santa Fe.			Santo Tome.
		Corrientes.			S. Nicholas.
		Santa Luiza.			S. Miguel.
		Couas.			Los Apostoles.
					Santa Teresa.
					Jesus Maria.
					S. Joachin.
					Santa Anna.
					S. Salvador.

Paraguay, properly so call'd, and Chaqua.

The most Northern of the Provinces contain'd under the general Name of *Paraguay*, has on the North the Midland Nations not yet known, on the East *Brazil*, *Guaya* and *Parana*, on the South another Part of *Parana*, *Rio de la Plata*, and *Tucuman*, and on the West another Part of *Tucuman* and *Peru*. There is no ascertaining its Bounds on the North and West, tho' in most Maps they are set down at Pleasure, neither of those Sides, or the Countries joyning to them being known, only about so far as has been discover'd by the *Spaniards*, as is mention'd in the general Account.

All the Inland Country between the River of the *Amazons* and that of *Parana*, being above 1000 Leagues is inhabited by the Nation call'd *Guaranian*, who have extended themselves beyond the *Paraguay* to the Borders of *Peru*, which makes the whole Province of *Paraguay*. Yet do not these Possess all that vast Tract of Land, but are mix'd with very many other lesser Nations, as Conquerors who have subdu'd those Parts, the Natives being scatter'd among them, whom they call Slaves, and have continual Wars with them, eating the Prisoners they take, to eat. They live in scatter'd Villages under *Caciques*, choosing

a General for their Wars, being hot the first Charge, but cowardly when cool, their Weapons being Clubs and Arrows. Their Houses are built of Clay, and commonly so large, that one contains the whole Village. Every one has as many Wives as he can get, and each *Cacique* has a Right to choose the handsomest, whom they often give up to be made Use of by their Followers, or Friends. To turn any Stranger out of Doors, is look'd upon as a heinous Crime. All their Bodies are naked, except their Privities cover'd with short Garments, made of Shells, or Feathers put together. They sow *Indian* Wheat, Pompions, Beans and Roots. When any Person of Note dies, the Women make horrid Lamentation, shrieking and howling, tear their Hair, beat their Foreheads, sometimes cast themselves Headlong from high Places, do many extravagant Actions, lay the Carcasses into great Pots, and, believing the Souls are bury'd with the Bodies, cover the Faces with Concave Dishes, that the Souls may not be filled.

Touching Religion they have no particular Worship of God, but are addicted to Superstitions of Wizards and such Impostors, giving the greatest Honour to those who are most familiar with the Devil. Those who are to be initiated in Magick Arts, Macerate their Bodies with fasting and other Austerities, letting their Nails grow



and living alone in a beastly Manner, and then their Practice is to do Mischief. Another sort of them do no Harm, but only, like our cheating Astrologers, pretend to tell Fortunes and the like, and others to Physick, sucking the Patient to draw out the Distemper. Besides these follies, they believe in Dreams and many other Superstitions. Notwithstanding all this Barbarity, this Nation, is found by Experience, if well taught, more apt than any other Nation to embrace and retain Christianity, and to learn Mechanick Trades and Civility.

No Part of the new World did so much deceive the Expectation of the Europeans, for Paraguay affords no Gold, Silver, or Jewels, nor do they dig any Iron, tho' the Country abounds in it, so that the Inhabitants have no Use of Money, but live by exchanging of Commodities. There are few Places, where they make Wine, or sow Corn, but they make Bread and Drink of Indian Wheat. All their other Dainties, they seek by Fishing, Hunting, and Shooting; but have vast Herds of Black Cattel. For a long time Sugar and Cotton, both produc'd in small Quantities, were their chiefest Wealth, till the Leaves of certain Trees, growing in Marshy Grounds, and commonly call'd the Herb of Paraguay, began to be in Esteem. These Leaves they dry, and reduce to fine Powder, then mixing it with Water, the Spaniards and Indians, both Men and Women, drink of it several Times a Day, which provokes them to Vomit what they have eaten, and creates an Appetite. They pretend it has many Virtues, but the immoderate Use, causes Drunkenness and breeds Distempers. This is become a principal Commodity, in all the Countries round about.

That Part of Paraguay, which lies on the West side of the River Paraguay, is call'd by a Particular Name *Chagua*, and divided by several Rivers rising in the Mountains of Peru, and running down to this great River. The most noted Nations here are the *Tamirians*, formerly inhabiting 188 Villages, the *Tents*, *Muraquois*, *Agois*, *Mosobies*, *Japitilagans*, *Churumatan*, *Tonocetus*, *Aipenes*, &c. differing more in Languages than Customs. They are subject to *Caciques*, whose Power extends not beyond a Village. Every Man chooses a Fish for his Deity and worships it so religiously, as rather to starve, than eat any of the same Species. These People the Jesuits drew together into Towns, where they converted and civiliz'd them; so that of most bloody Infidels, they are become a peaceable Christian People.

The Metropolis of Paraguay is call'd, the *Assumption*, seated in 25 Degrees of South Latitude, 240 Leagues from the Mouth of the River of Plate, and 40 above that of the Paraguay, on the East side of that River. The City is Populous, being inhabited by about 400 Spanish Families, besides several thousands *Mestizos*, which are the Race of Spaniards and Indians, as many Mulattoes being the Off-spring of Spaniards and Blacks, and no less Number of Native Indians, infinite Multitudes of whom live in the Country about the Place, which is extraordinary delightful and fertile, which occasions great Plenty of all sorts of Provisions. The Air is temperate, and healthy, and the Trees continue green all the Year. Most of the Americans in the Neighbourhood are passionate Lovers of the Spaniards, and fond of serving them, out of that natural Affection. And it is to be observ'd, that the Spanish Inhabitants

are many of them of the best Families in Spain, who settled here after most of the Scum had flock'd into other Parts of America, and being Gentry, they knew better how to gain the Love of those People than others in other Parts.

The other Spanish Towns in this Country, are *Villa Rica*, between 30 and 40 Leagues to the North east of the *Assumption*, on a little River of no Note. Next *Amarapí*, 20 Leagues North-east still from the last; *Artacia*, and *Ypane*, still Northward; *Nuestra Señora de la Fe*, higher the same way, betwixt the Rivers *Picari*, and *Taqueri*, and *Xeres de la Frontera*, North-west from the last, which is the furthest the Spaniards have any Settlement that Way. But on the West side of the River Paraguay, in that part of the Province call'd *Chagua*, is the Town of the *Conception* on the *Rio Vermelho*, or Red River, which coming from the Mountains of Peru, falls into the River of Plate, a little below the Paraguay. *S. Jeronimo* is on the River *Lobo*, and these are all the Towns that we know the Spaniards have there.

The River of Paraguay, here several times mention'd, and which gives its Name to the Province, runs 300 Leagues from its Source, which is to the Northwards, among the Nations not well known, receiving several other great Rivers on both sides, and carrying a Channel fit for Ships of Burthen, before it falls into the *Parana*, by which it is swallow'd up 200 Leagues from the Sea, and the Conjunction of these two mighty Rivers makes that which is afterwards call'd the River of Plate, of which, and the *Parana*, we shall speak in their Places. It is remarkable in the meeting of these two Rivers, that tho' they run in the same Channel, yet for several Miles each preserves its own Colour, the *Parana* running clear, and the Paraguay troubled.

#### Tucuman

On the East, borders upon the Provinces of Paraguay, and *Rio de la Plate*, Northward on Peru, and the Province of *Chagua*, Westward on the Province of *Cuyo*, or *Conchuyo*, a dependence of Chile, and Southward the Plains that run to the Streights of Magellan, call'd the *Magellanic* Country. It is all within the Temperate Southern Zone, a very small Part of it reaching the Torrid, and that, contrary to the Opinion of the Ancients, excessive Cold, as being full of high Mountains.

The Length of it is about 300 Leagues, the Breadth varying, as ending somewhat like a Cone; and generally speaking, inhabited by four sorts of People. The most Southern liv'd in the Plains, and on craggy Mountains, without any Habitation, feeding on what they kill'd, and carry'd about Mats to serve them for Houses, or Tents. The Northern liv'd in Marshes, and fed upon Fish, both of them equally fierce; the Northern the tallest, and the Southern the more brutal. Others born to Darkness, deny'd themselves the enjoyment of the Air, lying buried most of their Days in Caves under Ground. The last liv'd in small Villages about the Plains and Mountains, being more civiliz'd by the Neighbourhood on Peru. They are all given to Sloth, and value neither Silver nor Brats, some of which they have, for Gold there is none. They make use of Sheep to carry their Burthens, like those be-



fore spoken of in *Peru*. Here are Lions no bigger than a Mastiff, but not so strong, or fierce, without Manes, and only terrible for their roaring; but the Tigers are fiercer than in any other Country.

The chief Rivers are two, the one call'd *Dulce*, or sweet, and the other *Salado*, or Salt, from the taste of their Waters. Both, tho' increas'd by many other, incapable of carrying any but little Boats, and that not in all Places. Next to these is *Corcaranial*, and some others not worth naming, which are either swallow'd up by the Earth, or lose themselves in Lakes. Some of them petrifie Sticks and Bones, and cause great Swellings under the Chins of Men and Beasts, which are dissolv'd by the Waters of other Rivers. This scarcity of Rivers is sufficiently made amends for by the multitude of Springs gushing from the Woods and Mountains, as also the Lakes in many Plains, which was the Reason that most of the Province was well Peopled. That Part which lay next to *Peru*, was subject to the *Incas*, the rest to many *Caciques*, less distinct in Manners than Languages. They seldom combin'd to repel their Enemies, which was a great help to the *Spaniards* towards subduing of them.

The City of *Santiago del Esteco* is the Metropolis of *Tucuman*, and Bishop's See, seated on the Banks of the River call'd *Dulce*, or Sweet, in 28 Degrees of South Latitude, and inhabited by 500 *Spanish* Families, besides great Numbers of *Mestizos*, and *Mulattoes*. The Country about it is inhabited by many Thousand Families of Natives, all converted, and become a very civiliz'd People. *S. Michael* was the first Town the *Spaniards* founded in this Country, 28 Leagues North-west from *Santiago*, on a Plain at the foot of high Mountains, well water'd, which renders the Territorry fertile, producing abundance of Wheat, Barley, and Grass, so that there is Plenty of Cattel; as also much Cotton, and Flax, and some Wine, besides abundance of Wood for all Uses. The Air is reckon'd the wholesomest of any Part of the Province. *Cordova*, another large Town, is in 32 Degrees and a half of South Latitude, in a temperate, and delightful Climate, with equal Winter and Summer, and all the Territorry full of Cattel, great and small, by reason of the excellent Pasture; and besides Corn, and all other Necessaries, here are plentiful Salt-Pits. This Place is conveniently seated, as being in the Road from *Buenos Ayres* to *Peru*, and therefore has a considerable Trade. The Inhabitants are about 300 *Spaniards*, whose main Business is Tillage, and making of Cotton Cloth, which they sell at *Porosi*. *Esteco*, or *Nuestra Senora de Talarza* is to the North of *S. Michael*, *Solta*, or *Lerma* North of that, and *Xuxui*, or *S. Salvador*, the most Northerly of them all, being within a Degree of the Tropick. *Londres*, or *London*, why so call'd I do not find, lies West from *S. Miguel*, *Rioja* next the Frontiers of *Cuyo*, besides which, there are several other Places of less Note, have nothing remarkable.

#### The Province of Rio de la Plata

Borders Northward on that of *Paraguay*, properly so call'd, and Part of *Parana*; Westward on *Tucuman*, the South it has the *Magellanick* Plains, and to the East *Urugaica*, and the Ocean.

It lies all along the River of the same Name, on both sides of it, and thence has the Name, the Extent being the same as that of the River, that is, 200 Leagues from North to South; but from East to West, the greatest Breadth scarce exceeds 100 Leagues; yet, to say the Truth, the Limits of these Provinces are not well ascertain'd, especially those between this and *Tucuman*, because there are no Boundaries, the Country being all a Plain, without the least Hill, nor so much as a Tree, House, or Hut.

The River which gives its Name to this Province, was by the *Indians* call'd *Parana*, signifying a Sea, for they reckon'd the *Parana* and this all one, but the *Spaniards* call this the River of *Plate*, from the Mouth to the Place where the *Parana* and the *Paraguay* meet, the latter whereof has been already spoken of, and the other shall be in its Place. The Name of the River of *Plate* was given it on account of a considerable Parcel found by some who went very far up it, which gave them hopes of rich Mines to be found in the Neighbourhood, but what they found had been brought from *Peru*, and all this Country, as has been said, produces none. To return to the River of *Plate*, it commences, as was said, where the two others join, in 33 Degrees of South Latitude, and runs 200 Leagues to the South, and South-east, all the way Navigable for the greatest Ships, and full of delightful Islands. The Mouth of it is reckon'd 60 Leagues wide, tho' it is true some allow but 30, which vast difference proceeds from the taking of it farther up the Land, or out to Sea, for all the latest Writers do allow it 60. Several great Rivers fall into it on both sides, and among them, those call'd *Rio Vermeyo*, *Rio Dulce*, *Rio Salado*, *Carcarual*, and others on the West, and the mighty one of *Urugaica* on the East, not to mention others of less Note. In short, this is in all Probability the greatest River in the World, for Breadth, and continued Depth, tho' perhaps that of the *Amazons*, or others may equal, or exceed it in length of Course.

The Natives inhabiting next the Mouth of this River on the South side, where *Buenos Ayres* stands, are call'd *Quirandies*, when first discover'd, they were a wandering Nation, like the *Arabs*, often changing their Dwelling-Places, and removing their Huts; fierce, and Man-eaters, who at first put the *Spaniards* to much trouble, and destroy'd many of them. Above these are the *Timbues*, and *Carcares*, a People then living most upon Fish, but more peaceable and courteous than the others. The rest were, for the most part, the *Guaranians*, before spoken of in *Paraguay*, and for those on the North side of the Mouth of the River, they will be mention'd in the Province of *Urugaica*, to which they belong.

The Product is much the same as is said of the other Provinces, that is, all sorts of *European*, or *American* Fruit, where Planted, and both sorts of Wheat, as also Cotton, and Sugar. But the most wonderful increase of this Country consists in Cattel of all Kinds, for here being Plains, as was before hinted, which extend 200 Leagues in length, and these abounding in Pasture, the Beasts brought out of *Spain* have multiplied to such a prodigious degree, that they are all in common, and no Man has any Property in them, but whosoever has occasion, takes what he wants. The number of black Cattel is so great, that the;



they kill many Thousands every time Ships go for *Spain*, only for the Hides, leaving the Carcasses to be devour'd by Birds of Prey, whereof there are no less Numbers; nay, when they have not vent for the Hides, they kill them only for the Tongues. Those who will not be at the trouble of catching those Beasts, may buy a good fat Cow for two Shillings, or less. The same is to be understood of Horses, which are no less numerous, and have no Owners, but he who wants, takes what he likes, and breaks it, or may buy one ready broke for a Piece of Eight, and these not poor Jades, but of the true *Spanish* breed, strong, mettlesome, and serviceable Beasts, fit for War, and all other Uses; and it is certain the *Spaniards* here can bring 30000 Horses into the Field, of *Indians* well mounted, accouter'd and disciplin'd, as *F. Sepp* avers to his own Knowledge, having been long a Missioner in those Parts.

Of Partridges there are such Multitudes, that they may be kill'd with a Stick, being as tame as our Hens, and as large as they. Their Bread is made of the best Wheat, and as white as Snow, but the Natives want Salt. All the Fuel they burn, is of Almond and Peach Trees, there being no other, and whole Woods of these, all Planted by the *Spaniards*, who keep them up by only putting the Kernels into the Ground, and the next Year they bear.

The Return for *European* Commodities is immense, they give a Crown for a twopenny Knife, for a Hat not worth 2 s. here, 10 or 12 Crowns; for a Gun of 10 or 12 Shillings, 30 Crowns, and so in Proportion for other things. Nay they will give two good Horses for a sixpenny Knife, a good Oxe for a few Needles.

The Town of *Buenos Ayres* is seated in 35 Degrees of South Latitude about 60 Leagues from the Mouth of the great River, upon a gently rising Ground, healthy, and pleasant, as the Name imports, for *Buenos Ayres*, is good Air. The Houses and Churches have none but Mud Walls, the former but one Story high, not for want of Stone, but of Lime, which they have but lately began to burn, as also to make Tiles and Bricks. Since when they have built a Steeple, and intend a Church of those Materials. The *Jesuits* are the Architects, and certain *Indians* sent from the several Cantons the Workmen. The whole Town consists of two principal cross Streets, but it has four Monasteries, of *Franciscans*, *Dominicans*, *Trinitarians*, and *Jesuits*, all of them very poor. The Castle where the Governour resides, has only Mud Walls, with a deep Trench, defended by 900 *Spaniards*. The Ecclesiastical Government consists of a Bishop, and three Canons, whose Revenue is not above 3000 Crowns, which is very inconsiderable, especially considering the little Value of Plate, and the great Price of any *European* Commodities in that Place, to make amends for which, Provisions are almost for nothing, as has been mention'd already. Most of this Account is from *F. Sepp*, who was there in the Year 1692.

*Santa Fe*, the next *Spanish* Town, is 80 Leagues up the River from *Buenos Ayres*, and in about 31 Degrees of South Latitude, on the same side. *Corrientes* is near 50 Leagues higher in the Latitude of 27, on the East side of the River, opposite to the Place where the *Paraguay* and the *Parana* meet. *Santa Lucia*, and *Chanas*, are inconsiderable Villages between the two last.

#### The Province of Parana

Has its Name from the great River so call'd, which is its Boundary on the South and East, dividing it from the Provinces of *Buenos Ayres*, *Urvaica*, and *Guayra*; on the North it joins the unknown Inland we call of *Brazil*, and on the West that of *Paraguay*, the extent of it may be reckon'd 200 Leagues, which is what is well known, all above that not yet conquer'd, or converted, the greatest Breadth being about 100 Leagues.

The River *Parana* runs above 300 Leagues before it joins the *Paraguay*, at which Place, as has been said, the *Spaniards* have chang'd its Name, and from the Conflux to the Mouth call it the River of Plate. The Name of *Parana* signifies a Sea, given on account of its greatness, and sometimes they call'd it *Paranaguazu*, that is, the great Sea. It has the quality of petrifying Wood, as is daily seen, and the Governour *Ferdinand Arias* set up a wooden Pillar thus turn'd into Stone in the Porch of his House. The Springs of it are scarce known, as lying far up in the Inland of *Brazil*, whence it is South and South-west, cutting the Province of *Guayra* in two, and then running between those of *Parana* and *Urvaica*, till it loses its Name, as has been said.

In the middle of this River is an Island 18 Leagues in Compass, beset with Rocks and Whirlpools, which render it almost inaccessible, and was therefore formerly the Fortrefs of the Natives against the *Spaniards*. Both the Shores, as well where open, as where wooded, produce a multitude of Beasts and Birds, especially Parrots, three times as big as those of other Parts, and most beautifully Feather'd. Several Nations inhabit along its Banks, differing little in any thing but Languages, excepting those who liv'd upon a certain sort of Earth dried at the Fire, and then dipp'd in the Fat of Fish, an unaccountable Diet. Yet these several Nations all agreed in fierceness, and opposing the *Spaniards*, who sustain'd great Losses by them, till they were at last civiliz'd, and brought to Subjection, only by the Preaching of the *Jesuits* and the *Franciscans*, who drew them from their salvage way of living dispersed, into Towns, where they all profess Christianity, acknowledge the King of *Spain* for their Sovereign, and are exempted from all Duties, or Burthens, having no *Spanish* Garrisons, nor any other Governours but those Religious Men. The Towns built here were *S. Anne*, on the Lake *Appupen*, *Itapua* on the great River, 60 Leagues above its Mouth; *Acarai*, 60 Leagues higher; *Yguazu*, on the East side of the same River, and upon the River *Yguazu*. *Cacapa*, and *Tuti*, more remote from the *Parana* on the West side.

#### The Province of Guayra

On the North lies along the Inland of *Brazil*; on the West it borders on the Captainship of *S. Vincent*, in the same Country, and part of the Ocean, on the South it has the Province of *Urvaica*, and some part of *Parana*, and on the West the River *Parana* parts it from the Province of that same Name. Its greatest Length from East to West is near 200 Leagues, and the Breadth from North to South may be set at about 120, there being no certainty in the Northern Limits.



Its Situation being most under the Tropick of *Cancer*, renders it excessive hot and moist, and consequently very fruitful in Provisions, and no less subject to Diseases, being much fitter for the habitation of Beasts than Men, and yet it was indifferently Peopled at the first coming of the *Spaniards*, as appears by the Ruins of many Villages destroy'd by Sickness, and by the inhumane driving away the Natives by the *Portugueses* of *Brazil*, as we shall see in its Place. The Inhabitants of two little *Spanish* Towns here are the Posterity of some who settled here in the Year 1550. The whole Nation lives miserably, having no Bread but what is made of the Root *Mandica*, nor any Flesh but that of wild Beasts.

Here are many Trees that yield Balsam, and the Woods are full of several sorts of Fruit-Trees, and among them abundance of Swine, with a thung like a Navel on their Backs. Wild Bees there are abundance, but their Wax will never be made white, yet the Honey is good. Snakes there are of sundry sorts, which do much harm to Men and Beasts, and this Country affords little else remarkable. The River *Paranapan* runs down into this Country from the Mountains of *Brazil*, almost as large as the *Paraguay*, and falls into the *Parana*, after it has receiv'd the *Tibaxiva*, *Pirapua*, *Itangua*, and other lesser Streams; both sides of it cover'd with several sorts of Trees, of which the Natives value the Cedars most, some whereof are so big and tall, that there are Vessels made out of single Trunks, which carry 20 Oars. Here the *Jesuits* built the Town of *Our Lady of Loretto*, and 4 Leagues from it, that of *S. Ignatius*, as also a fourth, call'd *Itabasca*, and the *Indians* being then protected from any Oppression of the *Spaniards*, in process of time built eleven more.

#### The Province of Urvaica

Has the Ocean on the East, the same Ocean and River of *Plate* on the South, *Parana* on the West, and *Guayra* on the North, extending from 25 to 35 Degrees of South Latitude. The length of it North-east and South-west, is about 300 Leagues; and the Breadth North-west and South-east, near 140, where most.

The great River *Urvaica* rises out of a small Spring on the Mountains of *Brazil*, and runs a considerable Way very little observ'd, till receiving many other Streams and Rivers, it swells equal to the *Paraguay*, and falls into the River of *Plate*, a little above *Buenos Ayres*. Having left *Brazil*, it gives a turn, and takes its Course almost parallel to the *Parana*. Great Stones and Rocks lying in it at certain Distances make it incapable of Ships of Burthen; but the Winter Floods make it spread abroad like a Sea. For 200 Leagues from the source it runs with a mighty Noise, being streightned by continual ridges of Rocks, and Woods, after which having found more room, it glides in a gentler manner. The whole Course of it is above 400 Leagues.

The Woods abounding in Monkeys, Tigers, Parrots, and many other Creatures, differ little from the Neighbouring Provinces, and formerly the Plains were full of Ostriches, Lions, and several sorts of Goats, and Deer; at present all that vast extent of Land, on both sides of the River, is a full cover'd with an infinite Number of

Cows and Horses. There were many Nations of barbarous Inhabitants, distinguish'd from one another only by different Languages; among whom the *Guaranians*, before spoken of, excell'd the rest, both in Number and aptness to be civiliz'd, and become Christians.

#### Historical Account of these Provinces.

The first *European* we find to have been in them, was *Alexius Garcia*, a *Portuguese*, sent by the Governour of *Brazil* in the Year 1524, to discover the Inland, with his Son, three other *Portugueses*, and a considerable number of *Indians*, who travell'd to the Confines of *Peru*, and gathering a great quantity of Plate, in his return was kill'd, with most of his Men. Before his Death was known in *Brazil*, *George Sedenho* was sent out with 60 *Portugueses*, and many *Indians* to his Assistance, all which *Portugueses* were also destroy'd, and only some of the *Indians* return'd to *Brazil*.

Not long after, that is, in the Year 1526, *Sebastian Gabot*, who had discover'd *Virginia* for the King of *England*, being employ'd by the Emperour *Charles* the Fifth, came to the River of *Plate*, first discover'd by *John Diaz de Solis*, in the Year 1515, and sayling up it to the Mouth of the *Paraguay*, run 40 Leagues up that, till he came to the Place where *Alexius Garcia*, above-mention'd, had been kill'd, and there found all the Plate taken from the said *Garcia*, which he supposing to be the Product of the Country, bought up, believing he had made a rich Discovery, and therefore leaving 120 Men in a Fort he erected at the Mouth of the River *Carciranna*, about 30 Leagues above the Place where *Buenos Ayres* stands, he hastened into *Spain*, and spread such a Fame of the Wealth of that Country, as caus'd the River to be call'd of *Plate*, and prevail'd with abundance of Gentry of the best Families in *Spain* to enter themselves under *Peter de Mendoza*, a Man of the first Quality, appointed by the Emperour to settle Colonies there, so that he had 2200 Landmen, and *Gabot* commanded the Fleet.

*Mendoza* it was that first founded *Buenos Ayres*, which his Successor *Irala* abandon'd to build the City of the *Assumption*. After him the Governour *Alvar Nunez Cabeza de Vaca* continued the Discoveries to the upper Part of *Paraguay*, and he and his Successor rebuilt *Buenos Ayres*, and settled all the other Colonies mention'd in the Description of the Province, most of which was successively subdu'd by Force of Arms, with great loss of the *Spaniards*, the Natives being numerous, fierce, and abhorring to submit to a Foreign Yoke.

Whilst this Province was settling, one *Cesar*, a Soldier belonging to *Gabot*, in the Year 1530, undertook to find out a Way from the River of *Plate* to *Peru*, with only three Companions, and was the first that came into the Province of *Tucuman*, which he cross'd over into *Chile*, and thence to *Peru*, travelling about 2000 Leagues by Land. Five Years after, two other *Spanish* Soldiers, with incredible boldness, perform'd the same Journey through *Tucuman* to *Peru*, filling their Countrymen with Hopes of a vast Empire. Accordingly in 1540, *Paca de Castro*, then Viceroy of *Peru*, sent *Joan de Rojas* over the Mountains of *Peru* with 200 *Spaniards*, and he being kill'd by the Way, they chose *Francis Mendoza* for



for their Commander, with whom they march'd to the River of *Plate*, where they murder'd their Officer, and march'd back the same Way they came. In 1549 *John Nunez Prada*, with a Company of brave *Spaniards* penetrated from *Pern* into the Heart of *Tucuman*, where he built the Town of *S. Michael*, on the Banks of the River *Escava*. In 1553, *Francis de Aguirre*, sent out of *Chile* by the Governour *Valdivia* with 200 Men, destroy'd the Town of *S. Michael*, and built the City of *Santiago*, since the Metropolis of the Province, and a Bishop's See, on the River *Dulce*, and in 28 Degrees of South Latitude. In 1558, *John Gomez Zurita* came out of *Chile* with fresh Forces, and built the City of *London*, to curb the barbarous Natives call'd *Calchaquines*, rebuilt the Town of *S. Michael*, and rais'd the Fort of *Cordova*, since grown to a City. He made so compleat a Conquest of all the Country, that little more had remain'd to do, but that he was rout'd, and sent away to *Pern* by *Gregory Castaneda*, another *Spaniard*, whereupon the *Indians* revolted, and destroy'd several Colonies, which cost much Blood to be restor'd, but at length the succeeding Governours pacified all again, and fix'd the several Towns above-mention'd in the Description, which remain to this Day, and all the Natives in subjection, and converted to the Christian Faith, the *Jesuits* having drawn them from their barbarous course of Life to live in Towns, and by degrees perfectly civiliz'd them.

As for the three Provinces of *Parana*, *Guayra*, and *Uruguay*, they were never any of them conquer'd by Force of Arms, but the *Jesuits* undertook the reducing of those brutal Nations to Christianity, and Subjection to the Crown of *Spain*. This they perform'd with much Labour, living among those brutal People to learn their Languages, and feeding on such miserable Diet as was natural to the Salvages, their Habitations being none but Huts made of Mats. Being thus become acquainted, they began to instruct them in the Faith, shew'd them the Advantages of a polite, civil Life, and prevail'd upon them to gather into Towns, where they put themselves entirely under the Direction of those Fathers; and this the more willingly, because they protected them against any Invasion from the Soldiers, or Subjection to the *Spanish* Governours. Yet the Difficulties to be overcome were immense, the People being naturally so salvage, having little Notion of a God, being addicted to Sorcery, and Superstition, and indulging themselves in all manner of Vice, and brutal Satisfactions, and were inhumane Man-eaters. To break them of all these horrid Practices, and instil good Doctrine into such stupid Creatures, was an incredible Labour; yet Patience, and continual Application, gave daily greater Hopes of Success, most of those People taking an Affection to the *Jesuits*, and putting themselves under their Direction.

In the midst of this Success, the *Alzures*, as the *Portugueses* call them, to cast the Odium of their Villanies from their own Name, being worse than the most salvage *Indians*, put a great stop to their prosperous Beginnings, and might have quite overthrown all that had been done by their Inhumanities. In short, these *Alzures* were no other than the Race of the first *Portuguese* Planters of *Brazil*, got upon Indian

Women, and with them all the *Portugueses* from all Parts, who lov'd to live upon Rapine and Villany, so that call them by what Name soever, they were natural Born *Portugueses*, and the Sons of such, with a new Name to excuse the Nation. These Miscreants gathering in great Numbers, for several Years made it their business to sally out upon the *Indians* about them, whom they drove away like Herds of Cattel to *Brazil*, where they sold them openly for Slaves. The King of *Spain* sent repeated Orders to punish them, and prevent the like for the future; but the Fault was not only theirs, for they might have been soon suppress'd, which the Governours, nor Inhabitants of *Brazil* did not care to do, because they were all their own Kindred, and acted by Connivance, as furnishing them with Slaves at easie Rates, which was what they wanted. Nor are they any way excusable, since they not only permitted them to go out upon those inhumane Expeditions, but receiv'd them again at their Return, and allow'd the poor Wretches they had forc'd from their Beings, to be publickly sold in the Markets, like Sheep. These Monsters having made all the Countries near them desolate, at length broke into the Province of *Guayra*, where, as has been said, the *Jesuits* had brought all the Natives into Towns, which they fell upon, and after Butchering such as offer'd to defend themselves, drove away all the rest into miserable Captivity, and tho' some *Jesuits* follow'd into *Brazil* to demand Justice of the Governour, it was in vain, for, as has been said, they were all consenting, and Partakers in the Booty. This gave occasion to many of the Natives to believe that the Fathers gather'd them into Towns, that they might be the better carry'd away into Captivity, and therefore they concluded it was safer to live dispers'd in the Woods. At length one of their *Caciques*, who had been rescued, with a few others, by the *Jesuits* that went to *Brazil*, undeceiv'd them, and they began to gather again, but were not long at Peace, for the wicked *Mamelucs* return'd several times, driving away Multitudes, till at last the *Jesuits* were oblig'd to abandon all the Towns they had left in the upper Country, and retire farther down towards the River *Parana*.

No Distance was great enough to protect them against these Devils incarnate, and therefore the *Jesuits*, tho' with much Difficulty and Opposition, at length prevail'd that the *Indians* might be Arm'd, after which they several times resolutely enough engag'd the *Mamelucs* with various Fortune, and at last gave them several considerable Defeats, after which many were cut off in the Woods, which so daunted them, that they never since return'd; shewing they were true Villains, merciless where there is no Opposition, and Cowards when any thing withstands them. Hitherto we have in these Accounts for the most part follow'd *E. del Techo*, in his History of *Paraguay*, &c. only supplying what was wanting in him out of *Lact*, *Herrera*, and *Saizon*, besides some few things out of *E. Scpp*, who having writ his Account of those Parts, where he was then Resident in the Year 1692, we will from him add a short Relation of the Present State of the *Indians*, in the Province of *Uruguay*, which with *Guayra* is the particular Spiritual Conquest of the *Jesuits*, who have the entire Direction of those People.

The



The Country is divided into 26 Cantons, each of them containing 5, 6, 7, or 8000 Souls, or perhaps a greater Number, with two Missioners, who have the whole Charge of their Temporal and Spiritual Concerns, for they must not only instruct, and administer to them as Pastors, but to play the Part of Stewards, Physicians, Architects, Gardeners, and in fine, order every thing that is necessary for Life. The Cantons are generally seated on an Ascent near the Rivers *Uruguay* and *Parana*. Near the Church of each Canton is a Square 400 Foot long, and as many broad, the rest being divided into Streets; but the Houses are no other than Huts of Clay, thatch'd, only some few of late Til'd. Every Hut consists of but one Chamber, without Window, or Chimney, all the Cellar being a Calabash full of Water. The better sort lie in Hammocks, the rest on Tigers Skins, or Oxes Hides, with a Stone or Block for a Pillow. All the Furniture of their Kitchen consists of two or three Pots or Pans, the Hands serve for Spoons, the Teeth for Knives. The Door is a piece of Ox's Hide, about 6 Spans high, and 3 in breadth, and within that one Room lies the whole Family, tho' never so numerous, with three or four Dogs, and as many Cats. When the Maids are 14, and the Lads 16, they are presently Marry'd for fear of woric; and there is no trouble about Portion, or Jointure, or any other Articles, only the Wife promises to fetch Water, and the Husband to furnish Fuel.

Each Canton has a handsome, lofty built Church and Steeple, with 4 or 5 Bells, and sometimes two Organs, but one certain, a high Altar richly gilt; besides 2, or 4 side Altars, a curious Pulpit, 2, 4, or 6 Silver Candlesticks, 3 or 4 pair of silver Offering Vessels, 3 silver Crosses, and a large silver Ciborium; the Chalice is gilt, and all the Antependiums and Vestments as rich as any in *Europe*. Every Sunday there is high Mass, and a Sermon, the *Indian* Musicians performing their Parts well, having been taught by the *Jesuits*.

These *Indians*, as dull as they are at Invention, are no less ready and apt at Imitation; show an *Indian* Woman a piece of *Flanders* Lace, and she will undo it with a Needle, and make exactly the like again. *F. Sepp* said he had two Organs, one of which was carry'd from *Europe*, the other

made by the Natives so exactly, that there was no distinguishing between them; the same of a Printed Missal, which they copied so nicely that it was scarce discernable. They also make Trumpers and Watches, and so will imitate any thing to Perfection, provided they have the Model before them, even to copying of Pictures with great Curiosity.

They are monstrous Eaters when they have it before them, and will devour an incredible quantity of Flesh half raw, yet their Nature does not require it, but they do it out of Gluttony, and therefore the Missioners are their Store-keepers, and every Day deliver out their Allowance; Flesh is so plenty that they need not stint them, there being Millions of Cows to be had for nothing, as was observ'd before, besides swarms of Hens, Pigs, Goats, and Sheep, and scarce a Canton but has 3 or 4000 Horses, yet they value Mules at a higher rate. One Sheep, or Lamb, is worth three Oxen, or Cows, on account of the Wool. Cotton there is enough, but no Hemp, or Flax. Hats, which us'd to be excessive dear, are now made by the *Indians*. There might be plenty of Corn but that the People will not take Pains, and barely are brought to sow as much as may serve them, which is *Indian* Wheat, and that they pound in a Mortar, and boil with their Meat, or make Cakes on the Embers, having no Ovens, and all this through Laziness; for they might have *European* Wheat and Bread if they would, yet are they so fond of our Bread, that they will give two or three Horses for a Loaf of it.

Tho' there be such Plenty of Horses, there are no Stables, nor any Hay made, because the Cattel feeds all the Year up to the Knees in Grass, without being watch'd; Theft being either not understood, or at least not practis'd among those *Indians*. Whosoever has occasion for Milk, sends, or goes into the Fields, and milks the first Cow he meets with, and brings home as much as he has occasion for, the Milking-Pails being no other than large Calabashes. The worst is, that the Fields are much infested with Tigers, which sometimes come down in Flocks, and devour the Calves, but seldom the Cows or Oxen, because they are able to defend themselves. These Tigers are now the only Enemies the Natives fear, or so much as know of.



## C H A P. XVIII.

## Of the Kingdom of C H I L E.



**I**T extends from 25 Degrees of South Latitude to the Streight of Magellan in 53, being above 500 Leagues; the Breadth various. *Chile*, properly so call'd, being not above 20 or 30 Leagues, but including the Plains of *Cuyo*, which run the whole length, and are subject to its Government, it will be above 60 Leagues broad. On the North it is contiguous, with the rich Provinces of *Peru* about the Mines of *Potosi*, on the South it has the Streights of *Magellan*, on the East *Tucuman*, and the unconquer'd *Magellanick* Lands, and on the West the South Sea. This Extent Southward is given it by *Ovalle*, whom we shall follow in the Account of this Kingdom, as the most approv'd of any, being a Learned Man, born there, and inhabiting the most part of his Life, and therefore speaking mostly upon his own Knowledge, and not by hearsay.

Yet our Maps generally carry *Chile* no farther than 47 Degrees of South Latitude, and with reason enough, that being the farthest inhabited by *Spaniards*, all beyond it excessive cold, and as such not yet subdued. But our Author carries it to the Streight of *Magellan*, because the Mountains *Andes* run so far, and there is no certain Southern Boundary till you come to the said Streight.

This Kingdom he divides into *Chile*, properly so call'd, the Islands, and the Province of *Cuyo*, or *Chucuyto*. The Islands we shall leave to be spoken of among the rest of those belonging to South America; of the two Parts in the Continent we will treat in this Place, without giving any general Account of them together, forasmuch as the difference between, tho' in the same Latitude, is so great, that nothing can be said in common,



common, the two varying as much in all respects as if they were Antipodes to one another, and therefore we proceed to the Table of principal Towns, as has been done in other Provinces.

Chile.	{	Copiapo.	Chile.	{	Arauco.
		Gnasco.			Angol.
		La Serena.			Imperial.
		Coquimbo.			Valdivia.
		Chnapa.			Villa Rica.
		Longotoma.			Osnorno.
		Quillata.			S. Cebrian.
		Concon.			Calbuco.
		Melipilla.			Los Corenados.
		Santiago.			
		Itata.			
		Chillan.			
		La Concepcion.			

Cuyo, or Chucuyto { S. Juan de la Frontera.  
Mendoza.  
Oronante.

### The Kingdom of Chile, properly so call'd,

Lies North, West, and South within the Limits above-mention'd, but on the East it has the vast Mountains *Andes*, which part it from the Province of *Cuzco*, or *Chucuyto*, being under the third, fourth, and fifth Climates, the longest Day in the third Climate 13 Hours, and 14 in the fifth, but opposite to *Europe*, for *S. Lucy's* Day is the longest, and *S. Barnaby's* the shortest.

It much resembles *Europe* in many respects, bating that it is Spring and Summer in the one, when it is Autumn and Winter in the other; nor are the Heat or Cold so excessive as in *Europe*, as far as the 45th degree of Latitude, for from thence forward to the Pole the violent Cold begins. Generally speaking, the Heat is not to be complain'd of, Day or Night, nor is here ever any Lightning, and Thunder, only heard at a great distance on the Mountains, nor any Storms of Hail, but constant fair Weather in Summer, and moderate Rains in Winter. Another Blessing is, that there are no venomous Creatures of any sort, nor any mischievous wild Beasts, except some few small Lions, which now and then do harm among Cattel; and as for Insects, no Punaife will live there, though brought from other Parts.

No Soil in all *America* is so conformable to that of *Europe* as this, for it produces all sorts of Grain and Fruit brought from thence in Perfection, and at the same time it yields all that grows in other Parts of that New World; and what is most to be admir'd, is, that *Cuyo*, the very next Province in the same Latitude differs in all respects, as we shall see when we come to speak of it.

The Riches of *Chile* are immense, for it has Gold, Silver, Copper, Tin, Quicksilver, and Lead Mines. The Lead is neglected, as of little use; the Quick-silver not yet much us'd, because lately discover'd, and *Guanacablica* supplies enough for Use; the Tin neither is not much regarded; the Copper is us'd for Cannon, and Balls, the Silver is not sought after, because the Gold draws away all the Application. These Gold Mines lie all along from the Borders of *Peru* to the very Straights of *Magellan*, and many of them so rich, that an *Indian* has been known to gather the value of 12 or 14 Pounds Sterling in a Day. The Gold dug out of the Mines costs no more Trouble but washing away the Earth which is among it, and then the Metal remains pure. Iron

is here of greater Value than Silver, and therefore most Utensils are of this last Metal, and the Soldiers have their Sword-Hilts, and Plates on the But-ends of their Muskets of it, Officers, and all other Persons of any Degree wearing none but Gold-hilted Swords.

As for other Wealth procur'd by Industry, here are vast Breeds of Cattel, whose Tallow, Hides, and dry'd Flesh is sent to *Peru*, and other Parts; Hemp growing in no other Part of *America*, and serving for all sorts of Tackling and Cordage, us'd along the South Sea, as also Packthread; excellent Mules convey'd by Land to *Peru*, besides generous Wine, and many sorts of Fruits which will not grow in other Provinces.

The Mountains *Andes*, before spoken of in *Peru*, when they come to *Chile* join into one Ridge, whereas before, as has been said, they divide with a Valley between, but here there is nothing but a continual Ascent from Mountain to Mountain, till you come to one in the middle, infinitely higher than the rest, and it is reckon'd 40 Leagues over from the bottom on the one side, to the bottom on the other, the Ascent so prodigious, that 3 or 4 Days are spent in mounting to the top, and as many again in going down. The Air on the top is so violent sharp and thin, that those who travel are fain to hold their Handkerchiefs before their Mouths to condense it, lest it should take away their Breath, and prove mortal. In other Parts Passengers are sick, and troubled with Vomiting, just as if they were at Sea, and others feel various Effects, as the alteration of Air works upon their different Constitutions. The Clouds, which at first ascending, take away the sight of the clear Sky, on the top obstruct seeing the Earth, as being much below. Along this Ridge there are 16 Burning Mountains, which often break out in a dreadful manner, and in the Year 1640, one of them cleft in two, and threw pieces of Rock all on Fire a great distance.

From these Mountains an innumerable Number of Springs run down into the Plains, forming many Rivers, the first of which is that they call *Salado*, or the Salt River, in 25 Degrees Latitude, next the *Copiapo* in 26; then that of *Coquimbo* in 30, whose Mouth makes a Bay, which is an excellent Harbour; next follows *Conapaz* in 31, and after it *Longotoma*; in 33 and a half *Mayapo*, so rapid that no Bridge can stand on it. In 34 Degrees *Epel*, in 35 *Maule*; in 36 *Itata*; in 37 *Biobio*, the greatest River of *Chile*, 2 or 3 Miles



Miles over at the Mouth. *Levo* is in 38, *Coyo* in 39; *Valdivia* is in 40, up which great Ships go to the very City, being 2 or 3 Leagues from the Sea, through a narrow Streight, or Channel, which leads into a spacious Port as still as a Pond. After this is *Chalbin*, *Rio Bueno*, *Rio Chico*, *de los Coronados*, *de la Esperanza*, *Galagos*, *de las Martyres*, *de los Apostoles*, *de las Gacetas*, *de la Campina*, *de los Pixares*, *S. Victorian*, and many more, besides a Multitude of less Note that fall into these here nam'd.

On these Coasts there are abundance of good Harbours, *Valdivia* has been already mention'd; *Cochinbo* is a noble Bay, secure from all Danger, and resorted to for Gold and Copper. *Quintero* is much commended by *Spilberg*, the Dutch Admiral, who went to rob those Coasts. *Concon*, or *Quillota Valparaiso*, and *S. Antonio*, are all safe and convenient, besides the rest, which only to mention would be tedious.

Here is an infinite Variety, and Multitude of Fish in this Sea, and particularly the Whales, they are so many, and so large, that *William Secoten*, the Dutchman, says, he thought he sail'd in Danger from, and took great Care to avoid them. No Country in the World has more diversity of all sorts of Birds, wild and tame, both *European* and *American*. Before the coming of the *Spaniards* here were no Cows, Horses, Sheep, Swine, Cats, Rabbits, or Dogs, except only a sort of little Cows, nor Goats, or Asses, yet now the Richness of the Country has so caus'd them to increase, that there are more than they have occasion for, and very much Flesh is wasted, and expos'd to Birds, and Beasts of Prey, and for Horses, which at first were sold for 2, 3, and even 5000 Pieces of Eight, they now scarce bear any Price at all. The *Peru* Sheep are also natural to this Country. The *Guanacos*, or wild Goats, are much like the Sheep, but can never be tam'd, and feed in Flocks in the Fields, being so swift, that the best Horses have enough to do to overtake them. The Flesh of the old ones is good dry'd and smoak'd; but the young ones eat like Kid. They breed the *Rezoar* Stones in a Bag they have under their Bellies.

It would be endless, and require a particular Book to treat of the Plants and Trees, but among the rest, here is one call'd *Murtilla*, or the little Myrtle, which bears a red Fruit, like a small Grape, hot and dry, of which they make a Liquor, far exceeding all others in goodness, for it is clear, fine, warm, agreeable to the Taste, comfortable to the Stomach, dispels all Vapours in the Heart, without offending it, and creates an Appetite; being of a golden Colour, and as delicious as the best of Wine; besides which it makes better Vinegar than Wine does.

The Natives are by the consent of all Men allow'd to be the bravest of all the *Americans*, as the *Spaniards* have found by costly Experience, against whom they maintain'd open War for full an hundred Years, and the *Indians* of *Peru*, with all their Power, could never conquer them. They destroy'd many *Spanish* Towns, kill'd some Thousands of them in open Field, and defended themselves upon all occasions, without Walls, or Fire-Arms, with such Valour and Conduct, as is amazing, and makes their final Conquest the more honourable to *Spain*.

They bred their Children to Hardship, Funning, and exercise of Arms, which were Pikes,

Hilberts, Lances, Hatchets, Rattel-Axes, Darts, Arrows, Clubs, Slings, and Nooses to throw upon Men. After Horses had bred in the Country, they learnt to ride, and fought on Horseback with Lances and Bucklers, as well as the *Spaniards*, all their Weapons being made of a Wood harden'd in the Fire, little inferior to Steel, having compleat Armour made of Hides as impenetrable as Iron. Their Forces were regularly drawn up, an hundred deep in File, being always mix'd, a Pikeman and an Archer, and if one Line was broke, the next advanc'd to its Place. Their Forts were made of Trees interwoven one upon another, with Trenches, and Places to retreat to.

Their warlike Spirit proceeded from their natural Temper, which was Cholerick, Proud, Fierce, and Cruel, cutting the Enemies that fell into their Power, in pieces, and wallowing in their Blood. They are strong, and robust of Body, broad Shoulder'd, high Chested, well set, nimble, active, vigorous, patient of Hunger, Thirst, Heat, and Cold, obstinate in what they hold, and excellent Horsemen, riding down a steep Hill as upright and steady as if they were nail'd to the Horse, and this with any Saddle, or without one.

They were very numerous at the coming of the *Spaniards*, but liv'd dispers'd in the Valleys, or by the Hills or Rivers, under their several *Caciques*, to whom they paid a ready Obedience. Their Houses were of Wood, all on a Floor, and each Room apart, so that when they would remove, they could lift up every one, and carry it where they pleas'd. Nor had they any Locks, or Hinges, relying altogether on their own Honesty, and as for Furniture, their Beds were the hard Ground, with a Stone, or Log for a Pillow, and their Cloaks to cover them, besides one or two Blankets, and consequently we may believe they knew not what Hangings were. Gold and Silver they made little use of, but had 4 or 5 wooden Dishes and Spoons of the same sort, a Calabash to drink out of, and a Leaf for a Saltceller. The Ground, or a little Bench serv'd for a Table, without Cloth, or Napkin, but only a little Broom to wipe their Fingers. Their Diet consisted of *Indian* Wheat, Fruit, Herbs, Fish, and such Game as they kill'd in Hunting. Of the *Indian* Wheat they also made a sort of Ale, and call'd it *Cuicha*.

There were, and still are Physicians among them, who perform wonderful Cures with Simples, and keep their Secrets to themselves. Their letting Blood was with a Flint made exactly like our Farriers Flems. For Cloaths, they have Drawers without Shirts, and Wastecoats put over their Heads, and girt about. Both Men and Women have their Arms naked, but no other Part, the latter having Cloaths that cover them from Head to Foot, they have learnt of the *Spaniards* to wear Smocks, but will not hear of any Head-dresses, Necklaces, Sleeves, or Gloves. These Women are so bold, that for want of Men they will play the Parts of Soldiers, being wonderful active, strong, and patient of Hardship.

As to Complexion, they are the fairest of all the *Americans*, but their Hair is always black, and harsh, and no red hair'd Person was ever seen among them; nor do they differ in any other respect from *Europeans*, and those who live among *Spaniards* reach *Spanish* to such Perfection,



that there is no distinguishing between them.

The City of *Santiago* is the Capital of *Chile*, founded by *Pedro de Valdivia*, the Conquerour of the Kingdom, in the Year 1541, in the delightful Valley of *Mapocho*, at the Foot of a Hill in 34 Degrees of South Latitude. The Shape of it is like a Chess-board, being all cut out into Squares, so that wheresoever a Man stands at a Corner, he sees the Streets, extending strait forward to the ends of the Town. On the North side of it is a pleasant River, which is let by Cuts into all Parts of the City, so that all the Streets are easily water'd, and the Filth carry'd away. There is one Street running from East to West the whole length of the City, so wide, that 15 or 16 Coaches may go abreast in it; a most delightful Place in Summer to take the Air, and see, all the Coaches pass by, and in it is the Church of *S. Lazarus*, and the Monastery of *S. Francis*. Besides this noble Street, there are abundance of curious Squares, generally one before every Monastery, and the great Market-place exceeding them all, the North side adorn'd with a stately Town-House, the West with a sumptuous Cathedral. The Monasteries of *S. Dominick*, *S. Francis*, and the *Jesuits*, are very stately. The Extent of the City is very great, the Inhabitants very numerous, it is a Bishoprick, and University, and one of the wealthiest Places in the Universe.

The City *Imperial* is in 38 Degrees of South Latitude, so call'd, because the *Spaniards* at their first coming found Eagles there cut in Stone over several Houses. *Valdivia* founded another City of his own Name in 40 Degrees of South Latitude, not far from the Sea, in a Country abounding in Gold. He also built *La Serena* in a pleasant and fruitful Valley, in 30 Degrees; and *Pilla Rica*, so call'd, from the great Prospect of Wealth the Country afforded, in 40 Degrees up the Inland towards the *Andes*; the *Concepcion* in 37, near the Sea, and *Angol* in 38 higher up the Country. The Governour, *Alonso de Mendoza*, afterwards built the Town of *Osorno*, in the Latitude of 41. Besides which there are several other Places of less Note, later built, as particularly *S. Cibrán*, and *Calbuco*, in about 43 Degrees Latitude, and *los Coronados* in 46, being the last the *Spaniards* inhabit to the Southward.

#### The Province of Cuyo, or Chucuyto

Being a Dependence of *Coile*, has that Kingdom on the West, and is divided from it by the Mountains *Andes*; on the North it has the Mountains of *Riqui*, which part it from *Tucuman*; on the East another Part of *Tucuman*, and the vast Plains of the *Pampas*, part of the *Magellanick* Lands; and on the South, *Ovalle* extends it to the Straights of *Magellan*; but we may better confine it to 39 Degrees of South Latitude, where the unconquer'd Country begins, ~~which stretch'd out so far among People no way~~ subject to its Dominion, and scarce known.

The whole Country is a Plain, so flat, that they use to travel by the Compaſs, there being nothing to direct, or show the Way, but like an open Sea; and they go in large Waggonſ drawn by Oxen, with beds, and all Conveniences in them. It is wonderful that only the Mountains *Andes* dividing this Country from *Coile*, they should differ so much in their Qualities; for here

the Heats are not so like mine as there, and they are such Moderates of Fruits, as is oblig'd to People to be more industrious in Cultivating them, than is to be had in the *Hesperides*. They are prodigious stores of Timber and English, and abundance of Potatoes, Corn, besides a sort of Grains, so much, that it can hardly be seen, and yet as good as the greater.

So much for the all Quilmes, the good are, a Land so fertile, that in some Places it almost out does *Chile*, the great Heat ripening all things to Perfection, so that there is store of Corn, Wine, Flesh, and all sorts of *Vegetables*, Fruits, and Herbs.

The Sea being every where remote from this Province, it can have no Fish from thence, but is supply'd by some Lakes. Of late Years very rich Silver Mines have been discover'd here, which drew many People from *Peru*, because they were said even to exceed those in *Andes*, and being in a Plain much easier to come at than *Venus*, besides the conveniency of travelling with Carts, and the cheapness of Provisions. But this is not all, for soon after there were Gold Mines found so wonderful Rich, that they are said far to exceed all others hitherto known.

The Wines here are so generous, that they carry them 3 or 400 Leagues across those immense Plains in Carts during the excessive Heats, without the least Detriment, and they will keep after that as long as they will have them. The Bread is excellent, and so is the Oil, and all sorts of Gardening; the Fish as good as that of the Sea; Flax and Hemp nothing inferior to that of *Chile*, and in short, here are all the Necessaries for Life in Perfection.

To recompense these blessings, the travelling is miserable, by reason of the moderate Heat, through vast Plains, before spoken of, where in some hundreds of Leagues there is not so much as a Stick, or a Stone, and sometimes 2 or 3 Days Journey no Water to be found, which therefore Travellers must take care to carry with them, or Perish.

The Natives here were much like their Neighbours of *Tucuman*, and other Provinces, rude and barbarous, living dispers'd under little *Caciques*, much addicted to Drunkenness, which they would stick to for three Days together, without sleeping, but continually Dancing, and Drinking, within a Ring made with Straw, or dry Rushes, into which no Women were to come, but to bring them Drink, and then they were to shut their Eyes. They were also strangely affected to Sorcery, and had their Children initiated in that hellish Practice by old Men appointed for that Purpose, who did it by drawing Blood from them, and then making them fast in some retir'd Place. They all worshipp'd the Sun, Moon, and Morning Star.

The chief Town here is call'd *Mendoza*, from *Don Hernando de Mendoza*, Marquis of *Canera*, Viceroy of *Peru*. It is seated at a small Distance from the Pass of the Mountains that leads into *Coile*, and built by *Peter Cistillo*, who took *Pizarro's* Standard in the Civil Wars of *Peru*. The other two Towns are *S. Juan de la Torre*, in the more Northern Part, and *Oromonte* in the South, none of them all were very considerable till of late Years, the Wealth of the Mines above-mention'd, has drawn abundance of People from the adjacent Provinces, by which means they



begin to increase, and may in some time be equal to others of the first Magnitude.

### The Historical Account of Chile.

There is nothing to be said before the coming of the *Spaniards*, for these People were not so polite as the *Peruvians*, or *Mexicans*, who living under Potent Monarchies, had a civiliz'd Government, and preserv'd some Memory of their Ancestors, as we have seen in speaking of those Empires. But in *Chile* there was no considerable Prince, every Village, or hundred stragling Houses had its own *Curique*, and in time of War they met, and chose a General, so that there was no Form of Government, and consequently no regard to Antiquity, or the actions of past Ages. It will therefore suffice briefly to touch upon the Conquest of the Country by the *Spaniards*.

When *Pizarro*, as has been said before, had subdu'd the greatest Part of *Peru*, and assign'd *Cusco* to *James de Almagro*, who had supported and enabled him to go through with that mighty undertaking, a Commission came from *Spain*, giving *Almagro* the Title of Marshal, and with it the Government and Conquest of 200 Leagues, beginning at *Chinchas* in *Peru*, and running to the Southward along the Coast. Upon this Advice he left *Cusco*, and march'd away to *Chile* with 200 Horse, and 300 Foot, in the Year 1535. It is impossible to express what these brave Men endur'd in passing the Mountains *Andes*, for being so many, and all Strangers to the Country, they were at the point of Perishing for Want, having made no Provision for marching over that Desert; besides the unexpected and violent Cold was enough to have destroy'd them, with the continual Labour, and Fatigue of marching in such dismal Ways with their Arms and Baggage, and climbing such almost inaccessible Rocks and Precipices. Such were the Hardships they endur'd, that very many Perish'd, some sunk in the Snow, and were frozen to Death. Of the *Spaniards*, *Garcilasso de la Vega* says 150 dy'd thus miserably, and 30 of their Horses, and of 15000 *Indians*, who were us'd to, and worse prov'd against the Cold, 10000 starv'd to Death. Others who follow'd afterwards came off no better, some losing their Fingers, some their Toes, and many their Lives, through the excessive Cold. *Almagro* having at length pass'd the Mountain, descended into the delightful Valley of *Copiapo*, where he refresh'd his Men. Here *Paul the Inga*, who came along with *Almagro*, soon gather'd the Value of 500000 Ducats in Gold, which he presented him. This put all the *Spaniards* in hopes of a glorious Conquest, which would soon enrich them all. This Valley of *Copiapo* was subject to the *Ingas* of *Peru*, and there ore receiv'd the *Spaniards*, and refresh'd them; but when they advanc'd farther to the Country of the *Promocacs*, whom the *Ingas* could never conquer, they were met by that Nation, and a very bloody Battel ensued, wherein the *Indians* were at last routed with much difficulty. After this good Beginning, *Almagro* was persuaded to go back into *Peru*, to secure his Possession of *Cusco*, where coming to a Battel with *Pizarro* about it, he was overthrown, taken, and cruelly put to Death.

*Almagro* being dead, *Peter de Valdivia* was next sent by *Pizarro* into *Chile*, who enter'd that King-

dom in the Year 1540, with a great number of *Spaniards* and *Indians*, who all suffer'd the same Hardships on the Mountains the others had endur'd before. In the Valley of *Copiapo*, before-mention'd, such a quantity of *Turkey Stones* was found, as has abated the Price ever since. There *Valdivia* was well receiv'd, as he was in those of *Guaico* and *Coquimbo*; but at *Quilotta* he found Opposition, yet penetrated to the fertile and populous Valley of *Mapocho*, where he founded the first *Spanish* Town, which was that of *Santiago*, the Metropolis of the Kingdom. Next he resolv'd to build a Fort upon the rich Mines of *Quilotta*, but wanting Men, he sent 6 with Golden Stirrups, Bridles, and all other Accoutrements of the same Metal to *Peru*, to draw Supplies. These, and 30 more sent with them, all Perish'd but two, who after a long time escap'd to *Peru*, and gave an Account of the Posture of Affairs to *Vuaca de Castro*, then Viceroy, who sent them considerable Supplies, wherewith *Valdivia* prosecuted his Conquests, and in the Year 1544, founded the second *Spanish* Town, call'd *La Serena*. This done, *Valdivia* went away to *Peru*, to assist the King's Forces against the *Pizarro's*, then in Rebellion, and having vanquish'd them, return'd to his Province, where he found all the *Indians* up in Arms, and his New Town of *La Serena* destroy'd, which he rebuilt, then conquering the *Promocacs*, and marching deeper along the Country, he erected the City of the *Conception* on the Coast, in 37 Degrees of South Latitude. This great Man not so satisfied, carried on his Conquests beyond 40 Degrees of Latitude, and founded the Towns of *Imperial*, *Valdivia*, and *Villa Rica*, with 3 Forts in *Arauco*, and lastly, the Town of *Angol*, at the rich Gold Mines found in that Place.

This was the Posture of Affairs, when the *Caciques* of *Arauco* conspiring together, revolted with an Army of above 60000 Men, surpriz'd several *Spanish* Towns, where they slaughter'd all the Inhabitants, and cut off the Governour *Valdivia* himself, with all the Forces he could draw together, only two *Indians* escaping, who hid themselves. *Francis de Villagran*, *Valdivia's* Lieutenant, being chief after his Death, march'd with all the Strength he could make to revenge *Valdivia's* Death, but being oppress'd by the Multitude of *Indians*, after a furious Encounter, was forc'd to make the best Retreat he could, with great Loss to the City of the *Conception*, which, the *Indians* pursuing, they were fain to abandon the next Day, when it was plunder'd, and burnt. *Lantaro*, the General of the *Araucans*, follow'd his Success, and laid Siege to the City of *Santiago*, but was kill'd before it.

The next Governour of *Chile*, was *Don Garcia Hurtado de Mendoza*, who twice defeated *Campesino*, the new *Chilenian* General, took him Prisoner, and put him to Death for a Terror to his Followers. From this time the *Spaniards* held their own, and gain'd many Advantages, rebuilding the Towns that had been destroy'd, and building others as they advanc'd. Yet the War held on very bloody on both sides, and lasted an hundred Years from the beginning, till the *Araucans* being almost destroy'd, and the remains of them discourag'd by continual Losses, concluded a Peace in the Year 1641, with the *Marquels de Ujaces*, then Governour, submitting themselves to the King of *Spain*, and embracing



the Christian Religion, since which time they have been kept under, and the whole Country enjoys Peace, notwithstanding several Attempts

made by other *European* Nations to raise Troubles, by exciting the *Indians* to revolt.

## C H A P. XIX.

### Of TERRA MAGELLANICA and the STREIGHTS of MAGELLAN.

**T**HIS is the utmost Part of the Continent of *America*, lying South of all that has been hitherto describ'd. The Northern Extent is that alone, which cannot well be ascertain'd, for as *Ovalle* stretches out the Kingdom of *Chile* to the Streights, this Country would have nothing on that side next the South-Sea; but the *Spaniards* possessing nothing beyond 46 Degrees of South Latitude, that must of Course be reckon'd the beginning of this Land. However on the East side it reaches much higher, for there the *Spanish* Dominions scarce go beyond the Mouth of the River of *Plate*, for which Reason, the *Magellanick* Lands may well be allow'd to commence in 37 or 38 Degrees of South Latitude. They border Northward on *Chile*, *Cuyo*, or *Chucuyto*, *Tucuman* and the Province of the River of *Plate*; on the East they have the *Atlantic* Ocean, on the South the Streight of *Magellan*, and on the West the South-Sea and Part of *Chile* and *Cuyo*.

*Ferdinand Magalhaens*, or as we call him, *Magellan*, was the first that discover'd this Country and Streight, to both which he gave his Name. Neither did he, nor any that have follow'd him, learn much of the Country. All we find is, that for the most Part, where he sent ashore, it was Desert. Some few Men he saw, which his Company and others have since reported to be of a Gigantick stature, barbarous, and naked, though in a Climate excessive cold. These they call *Patagones*, which is as much as can be said of them.

Beyond the Streight on the South-Sea *del Techo*, informs us, the *Jesuits*, who were on the Mission in those Parts, discover'd two Nations call'd *Chiriquians* and *Huillans*, many of whom they convert'd. Of whom they give this Account. The *Chiriquians* inhabit the Continent and several Islands to the Northward of the *Huillans*, who are next to the Streight of *Magellan*. In the Islands there are only a few scatter'd Families. The Soil is generally barren, scarce bearing any Grain, and the Trees for the most part look dismal. The Natives live upon Fish, and what the Sea casts up; the Women diving to the Bottom, and coming up again with store of Fish in Baskets hanging about their Necks. Their greatest Want is of fresh Water. They press an Oil out of Sea-Wolves, which they drink and know no other Liquor. But they have some little *Indian* Wheat growing in the biggest of their Islands, call'd *Guzuma*. The People are for the most part red hair'd, of an Olive-colour and mild Disposition. In the remoter Islands they breed Dogs with long Hair, whom they trim, and of their Hair make short Garments, which cover only the Shoulders and Breast, covering their Nakedness with Sea-weeds. The *Huillans*, who are next the Streights of *Magellan*, are in a more miserable Condition, and

their Disposition is more barbarous. They live from 50 Degrees of South Latitude forwards in a very cold Climate, and stark naked, building moveable Huts of the Barks of Trees, like Sugar-Loaves and eat nothing dress'd. Their Skins are almost black, and their Hair so hard and upright, that it looks like a Bush. Their number is small, and their Neighbours, the *Chiriquians*, hunt them like wild Beasts, either to keep or sell them for Slaves, and they are happier in Slavery than in their own Country. Abundance of both these Nations, as was said have been Converted, many Years since, and it is likely they may have all embrac'd Christianity. What other Nations there are is not known, nor any more but that as was said before, much of the Country is Desert, and all of it wretched enough.

The Streights of *Magellan*, discover'd by that famous *Portuguese* in the Year 1520, as has been said, are according to the Account of *Spaniards*, who know them best, 100 Leagues in Length, from the Cape of the 11000 *Virgins*, at the Entrance from the North-Sea, to Cape *Desire*, on the South-Sea. The Breadth varies much, being not above a League in several Places, in others more, but every where narrow. In the Streight there are many safe Harbours, narrow at the entrance and spacious Bays within, encompass'd with Mountains, which shelter them so close on all sides, that Ships may ride in them, whatsoever the Weather be, upon the least Anchor.

After *Magellan* had discover'd this Streight, in the Year 1522. *D. Gutierre Carvajal*, Bishop of *Placencia*, fitted out 4 Ships, in the Name of the Emperour *Charles* the Fifth, to take a more exact Account of it, and sail to the *Molucco* Islands. Three of those Ships were lost in the said Streights and the 4th passed through to *Lima*. In 1526, *Garcia de Loaysa* was by the Emperour appointed Admiral of 6 Ships to pass through the Streights of *Magellan* to the *Molucco* Islands. They all pass'd, but the Admiral was lost as soon as they came into the South-Sea, and the rest went on their Voyage, except one that was cast upon the Coast of *New Spain*. *Simon de Alcazova* attempted this Passage in 1535, but his Men mutinying, he was stopp'd and afterwards murder'd, the Ships returning to North *America*. In 1539. *Don Gutierre de Carvajal*, the abovemention'd Bishop of *Placencia* fitted out 3 Ships more, the Commodore whereof was lost, and the 3d perform'd the Voyage. After all these it was that Sir *Francis Drake* pass'd this Streight, which was the Occasion that King *Philip* the 2d of *Spain* sent a Fleet to Plant Colonies, and erect Forts on the Streight to hinder others from attempting the like, but many of these Ships were lost and two Colonies being planted, one at the Mouth and the other higher



up the Streight, by the Names of *Jesus* the First, and the other *Ciudad del Rey Felipe*, or King *Philip's* City, all the Men left there perish'd and were never heard of. Since then many of all Nations have pass'd that Way; but scarce any have made the Advantages they expected.

In the Year 1617 almost 100 Years after *Magellan*; *Inac le Maire*, a Dutch Man, discover'd another Streight to the Southward of *Magellan's*, and much shorter, still known by his Name, since

which scarce any have gone through that of *Magellan*; but of later Years they are both avoided upon discovering that to the Southward of them both is an open Sea, which all that are bound for the South-Sea chuse rather to run into, tho' excessive Cold, than hazard all the Dangers of those narrow Streights. Yet none of these Ways have been at all in Use of late Years, unless for Pyrates, who have ventur'd to rob in the South-Sea, generally with little Success.

## C H A P. XX.

## Of the Islands of South A M E R I C A.

HAVING spoken of the Island of the *Trinity* and the others along the Coast of *Paria* and *Venezuela*, among those of *North America*, there remain not many of Note to speak of in the South. It is true the Gulph of *Paria* to the South of the *Trinity*, is full of small Islands, but neither are their Names, nor so much as their Number known; not but that all the *Europeans* have been enough upon that Coast and among them, as being at the Mouth of the great River *Orinoco*, but they have not found it worth their while to settle, or so much as give any Account of them.

Leaving these and descending Southward, at the Mouth of the River *Cayana*, in 5 Degrees of North Latitude, there is a small Island, on which as was observ'd in speaking of that Country, the *French* have settled a Colony, which is as much as is requisite to repeat. Again at the Mouth of the mighty River of the *Amazons*, about the first Degree of South Latitude there is another Parcel of Islands, but neither is there any thing observ'd of them, nor so much as their Names. The little Island *Maranhao* in the 3d Degree of South Latitude has been spoken of in the Description of *Brazil*.

The Island of *Ferdinand de Noronha*, who first discover'd it, is in 3 Degrees 40 Minutes of South Latitude, the *Dutch* say 70, the *Portugueses* 50 Leagues from the Coast of *Brazil*, and is not above two Leagues long and one in breadth. It is for the most part Plain, but has two such high Rocks that at a distance they look like Towers. There are abundance of Wild Goats in it, which are the Product of some few the *Portugueses* put in to breed; but it has no Inhabitants.

Next follow, the *Trinity*, between 18 and 19 Degrees South from the *Aequator*, and about 80 Leagues East from the Coast of *Brazil*; the *Ascension* between 19 and 20 Degrees South Latitude 50 Leagues East from the same Coast; *Santa Maria de Agostu*, in the same Latitude, near 100 Leagues East from the last, the Island of *Martin Vaz*, still in the same Latitude and 20 Leagues East from *S. Maria*; and then the Island *dos Picos*, in 22 Degrees South Latitude and 40 Leagues more Easterly than *Martin Vaz*. On the Coast of *Paraguay* in 28 and 29 Degrees of South Latitude are two inconsiderable Islands call'd *S. Catherine's* and *de Arvoredo*, and between 51 and 52 near 80 Leagues from the Continent three small ones call'd *Sevald de Waerdes* Islands; of all which it is enough to have given the Names and Position.

*Tierra del Fuego*, or the Land of Fire so call'd, from the many Fires the first Discoverers saw on it, is the greatest Island, we know of, belonging to South America. It forms the South side of the Streights of *Magellan*, which way it extends from East to West 150 Leagues, and from North to South about 80 in the widest Part, but much less in all the rest. This some have said is divided into many Islands, but with how good ground does not appear, only on the North side we find a Piece cut off by a narrow Channel, which forms a small Island and two Ways into the Streight of *Magellan*. Again on the East is another small Island call'd *Saten Land*, discover'd by *Le Maire*, which with *Tierra del Fuego* forms the Streight call'd of *Le Maire*, or *S. Vincents*, thought better than *Magellans*, as soon leading into an open Sea; but that also is neglected of late, since later Discoverers have found there is all along an open Passage into the South Sea, without any Streight, by keeping more to the Southward and avoiding all those Islands. Of this *Tierra del Fuego*, those who have pass'd the Streights tell us, that it is very Mountainous, but has many pleasant Valleys water'd by abundance of Brooks and small Rivers, and full of Grass and Trees. The Mountains are all Wooded and the Soil of them most sandy, on a rocky Bottom. The Country is extraordinary subject to Stormy Winds, which are generally West, and tho' it lies between 52 and 54 Degrees of Latitude, the Winter Cold is much more intense than in our Northern Parts equally distant from the *Equinoctial*. The Natives are naturally as white as any *Europeans*, but that they paint their Bodies, and that continual Practice discolours their Skins. Their Stature is indifferent and their Hair black. The Men go stark naked, and the Women only cover their Privities very slightly, some of them wearing a Skin of some Beast on their Backs, and it is wonderful they can subsist so in such a cold Climate. Their Huts, are made of Poles stuck round in the Earth and meeting at the Top, like a Sugar-Loaf, sunk two or three foot into the Ground, and cover'd with Earth. All their Furniture is some Baskets, Nets and Lines for fishing. Their Weapons are Bows and Arrows, or Darts, pointed with sharp Stones, or Bones, wooden Clubs, Slings and Knives made of sharp Stones. Their Canoes are made of the Bark of Trees, which they joyn together very ingeniously. They eat their Flesh raw, and even that of Men. Religion has not been discover'd among them, nor any regular



regular Form of Government; neither have they any sense of Modesty in regard to any of those Things in which we think it concern'd.

Within the Streight of *Magellan*, especially in the widest Part, where it is 7 or 8 Leagues over, there are several Islands, as those of *S. Lawrence*, *S. Stephen*, or *Raprevel*; the *Penguin* Islands, so call'd from the Multitude of those Birds found in them, being as large as Geese and good Meat. Besides which there are the *Holy Kings*, the *Angels*, the *Paragons*, and several others.

Having pass'd the Streights of *Magellan*, off the Northern Point on the South Sea, call'd *Cabo de la Victoria*, lies a Parcel of very small Islands, which the *Spaniards* call *Los Evangelistas*, the *Emmanuelists*; and the *English*, the *Sorlers*; and so at the Southern Point there is another Knot of them call'd *Los Apostoles*, the *Apostles*, but by the *Dutch* *Sugar Islands*. Turning to the Northward, the Continent of the *Magellanick* Land forms a large Bay, wherein are two large Islands, and a vast Number of small ones, these last have no Names known to us, nor any thing else worth observing.

*Madre de Deos*, the Mother of God, by the Natives call'd *Guama*, is the bigger of these two Islands, near 40 Leagues in Length, and 10 over in the widest place, lies under 50 Degrees of South Latitude. The Soil barren, stony and wild, bearing very little Grain, except some *Indian* Wheat. The Trees look dismal, being scarce ever Green, through cold and violent stormy Winds, and wants fresh Water. The Natives barbarous, for the most part naked, and only covering their Privities with Sea Weeds, living mostly on Fish, and their choicest Drink being the Oil press'd from Sea Wolves, but of late Years many of them have been converted by the *Jesuits*, and are very inclinable to embrace Christianity, as *F. del Techo* informs us, who had it from the *Jesuits* of *Chile*. The other lesser Island lies a little to the Southward of this, and differs from it in nothing, only that it is not so well inhabited, most of the other little ones being quite Desert.

Ascending still Northwards to the Coast of *Chile*, between 43 and 47 Degrees of South Latitude lies the *Archipelago* of *Chiloe*, being another large Bay, the Southern Part of *Chile* forms, all strew'd with a Multitude of small Islands, below deserving any particular mention; but without them, as it were a Barrier to defend them from the South Sea is the great one of *Chiloe*, 50 Leagues in Length, and but 7 in Breadth, being in the shape of an Arm bent, tho' most Maps make it a long Square. It is all uneven, Mountainous, Woody and Marshy, subject to extraordinary Cold and Excessive Rains, which last the greatest Part of the Year; so that it only produces *Indian* Wheat, and such other sorts of Grain, as require least Sun to ripen them. The Summer is interrupted by such cold Storms, that it differs little from Winter, those Storms in *August* hinder the ripening of Fruit. The Earth if turn'd up a Span deep, is all a red Sand, so dry that it choakes any Seed, and yet the Trees run up to such a vast Height, that they cut several Lengths of Boards out of them. Such is the Barrenness, that they think five for one a good Increase, and most of the Growth consists in *Indian* Roots. However Sheep, Cows and Swine live and increase well enough. On the North End of it, some few *Spaniards*, who formerly escap'd the Fury of the

*Araucans*, when they revolted, built a Town, which still continues and is considerably increas'd, since the Subduing of those People, having a good Fort, where the *Spaniards* make a shift to live well enough, with what the Island produces and is brought them from the Continent. The Natives go naked, wearing only a sort of Net-work about their Middle, and use Boats made of three Boards sew'd together with a thick Cord, and caulk'd with the Bark of Trees, steep'd in Water. So say *del Techo* and *Ovalle*.

*Mocha* Island is in about 38 Degrees of South Latitude, about 10 Leagues from the Coast of *Chile*, and near the same Length, inhabited by the Natives, and some few stragling *Spaniards*. It is fruitful, and abounds in Sheep, Fowl, Fruit, and other Provisions.

*Santa Maria* lies in 37 Degrees Latitude, 5 Leagues from the Coast of *Arauco* in *Chile*, and differs very little from the last. But the Inhabitants of it formerly are said to have had Communication with the Devil, and perform'd many abominable Ceremonies; at present they are all Christians.

Next follow the little Islands of *John Fernandez*, being 8 in Number, and their Latitude 34 Degrees South; then *los Pajaros*, *Mexillones* and *Sobora*, in about 30; and in 26 *S. Ambrosio* and *S. Felices*, all of them very inconsiderable.

*Puna* is in 2 Degrees 50 Minutes of South Latitude, being about 10 or 12 Leagues in Compass, formerly famous among the *Indians* of the Continent, as abounding in all Things necessary for the support of Humane Life, and the Natives of it being reckon'd cunning Merchants and bold Soldiers. Several Ships are now built in it, to trade along the South Sea.

*Gorgona* lies in 3 Degrees of North Latitude, on the Coast of *Popayan*, compar'd by those who have been on it to Hell, because the Thickness of the Woods and Closeness of the High Mountains produce an infinite Multitude of Gnats, which torment People, besides it is Unhealthy, subject to Storms and Continual Rains.

The *Pearl Islands*, so call'd, because there was a Pearl Fishery there, one at the Mouth of the Gulph of *Panama*, in about 8 Degrees of North Latitude, and about 20 in Number, but small, and now no way considerable since the Decay of the Pearl Fishery.

The Islands of *Solomon* lie about 1500 Leagues to the West of *Lima* in *Pern*, extending from 7 to 12 Degrees of South Latitude. The chief of them are 18 in Number, some of them 300, some 200, others 100, others 50 Leagues in Compass, and others less. They are all most delightful, exuberant, rich and healthy, and the Natives a Courteous peaceable and civiliz'd People, but there have been so few Adventurers to them, and their stay so short, that nothing can be said in particular of those charming Places.

*Alvaro de Mendana*, a *Spanish* Commander, sailing for the Islands of *Solomon*, discover'd 4 others, between 9 and 10 Degrees of Latitude, 1000 Leagues from *Lima*, and 650 from *New-Spain*, where he says the *Indians* or Natives were the best sort of People that had been yet discover'd, but for Shape and Complexion, like the *Americans*.

Between the Islands of *Solomon* and the Coast of *Pern*, inclining towards that of *Chile*, in 15 Degrees Latitude and about 700 Leagues from the Continent, is the Island call'd *S. Paul*, of which



we have no other Account. These are all the Lands we can find belong to South America, which conclude the Description of that Part of the World.

## NAVIGATORS round the GLOBE of the EARTH.

**I**T may not be improper here to take some notice of the principal Navigators that made Discoveries toward the Southern Parts of the Globe, both South-East and South-West. The first of these was *Ferdinand de Albuquerque*, or *Magellan*, a Portuguese Gentleman, who not being (as he thought) sufficient encouraged by his Master King *Emmanuel*, apply'd himself to the Court of *Castile*, and obtained of the Emperor *Charles V.* five Ships well furnished with necessary Provisions, and 250 Men. These he sail'd from *Sevil*, Aug. 10. 1519. And at first endeavouring to find a Passage through the great River of *Plate*, were oblig'd to Winter in Port *S. Julian*, but afterward they happily sail'd through that famous Streight call'd the *Magellanic*, from the Inventor's Name, and so pass'd from the *Atlantick* into the *Pacifick* Ocean, and sail'd Eastward as far as the Islands *de los Ladrones*, or of *Thieves*, where some say, *Magellan* himself was poison'd; but according to others, he perish'd in an Engagement at *Maran*, one of the *Philippine* Islands, after he had subdu'd that of *Cebu*, in 1520. However, one of his Ships having sail'd round the Globe, came by the *Moluccas* and Cape of Good Hope, and at length arriv'd safe at *Sevil*, Sept. 8. 1522.

In the Year 1525, *Garcia de Loaysa*, a Spaniard, entered into the same Streight, giving Names to several Places; and was follow'd by *Simon de Alcazova*, in 1534. Afterward three Ships were equip'd by the order of the Bishop of *Placentia*, in 1539, and one of them got through the Streight to *Arica*, a Port of *Peru*.

On the Thirteenth of November 1577, Sir *Francis Drake* with five Ships, and 164 Seamen, set out from *London*, and having sent back two of them as Impediments, pass'd the *Magellanic* Streights only with three, and enter'd into the *Pacifick* Sea, where these Ships were dispers'd by a violent Storm, and one of them was never heard of after; nevertheless *Drake* continu'd sailing along the Coasts of *Peru*, *New Spain*, *Alexico*, *Californie*, and other Parts of *America*, and took several Spanish Vessels richly laden during this famous Voyage round the World, which he finish'd within the space of three Years, returning by the *East-Indies* and Cape of Good Hope to the Coasts of *England*, where he arriv'd on November 3d. 1580. In the mean while Captain *Juan Winter* having been separated from Sir *Francis*, upon their Entrance into the South-Sea, was driven back again into the Streight of *Magellan*, which he repass'd, and was the first that sail'd through this Passage from the *Pacifick* into the *Atlantick* Ocean.

The third Compasser of the World was *Thomas Candish* Esq; who set out in 1586, and very fortunately finish'd that Course in two Years and two Months; in the carrying on of which, both *Magellan* and Sir *Francis Drake* had spent three whole Years. The same renown'd Navigator pass'd the *Magellanic* Streights a second time in 1591, but died in this last Voyage.

In 1593, Sir *William Baffin* sail'd for a long while in sight of *Terra del Fuego*, in the Latitude of fifty Degrees, ran through the Streights of *Ar-*

*gellan* the next Year, and was at last taken by the Spaniards, after a sharp Fight, on the Coasts of *Peru*.

The fourth Circum-navigation of the Globe, was perform'd by *Olivier Noort*, or *Nordt*, a *Hollander*, his chief Pilot being Captain *Melis*, an *Englisman*, who had accompanied Mr. *Candish* in his Voyage. This *Noort* steer'd much the same Course with *Magellan*, *Drake*, and *Candish*, and spent three Years in encompassing the Earth. About the same time also, the Dutch Fleet under Sir *James Mahe*, *Simon de Cordes*, *Sebast de Waerr*, &c. wherein *William Adams* was chief Pilot, suffer'd great Inconveniencies in these Streights. They discover'd *Seladi* Isles, and a Gulph call'd by them *Green Bay*, in 54 Degrees Latitude. In 1614, *George Spilberg*, Commander in Chief of another Dutch Fleet of six Ships, sail'd through the Streights of *Magellan*, and the South-Sea, to the *East-Indies*, and came back from thence by the Cape of good Hope, to the *Texel*, after having been out near three Years, and finish'd the fifth Circum-navigation of the World.

In 1609 and 1610, *Pedro Fernandez Giras*, a Portuguese, and *Ferdinand de Quir*, a Spaniard, (as they both affirm) sail'd at several times about 800 Leagues together on the Coasts of a Southern Continent, to the height of the 15 Degree of South Latitude; where they met with a very fruitful, pleasant and populous Country. This vast Tract of Land may be perhaps some part of *Jansen Tasmen's* Land, *Van Diemen's* Land, *New Zealand*, *New Holland*, *New Carpentaria*, and *New Guinea*, which were discover'd and coasted by the Dutch, who gave Names to many Bays, Rivers, and Capes hereabouts, in the Years 1619, 1622, 1627, 1628, 1642, and 1644, from the Equinoctial Line, as far as the 44th. Degree of South Latitude. And indeed the *Hollanders* have made the greatest Discoveries toward the South *Terra incognita*, but have publish'd very little concerning their Expeditions in those Parts.

In 1615, *William Cornelius Schouten* of *Horn*, and *Jacob le Maire* of *Amsterdam*, encompass'd the Globe a sixth time, discovering a new Entrance Southward from the Streights of *Magellan* into the South-Sea, by Cape *Horn*, in the 57 Degree of South Latitude; which Passage has been ever since known by the Name of *Le Maire's* Streight. This was an important Discovery and is now made use of to good Advantage, for whereas the Streight of *Magellan* is long, in some Parts narrow, in others shoal, and throughout uneven by reason of the many Windings, and the Capes and Points of Land in it, all which render'd the Navigation of it difficult and uncertain. Now that we are acquainted with the Extent of *Tierra del Fuego*, and find that it reaches not too far Southward to be encompass'd, the short Streight of *Le Maire* which lies between the South-east Point of *Terra del Fuego* and a small Island, is so easily pass'd that the increase of the Voyage by sailing round that Continent is a much less inconvenience than what the Ships suffer'd in passing through the long Streight of *Magellan*, and accordingly



though the Ships now a days make either that Streight, or the inner of *Bremer*, which lies more to the East, between the same small Island and a main Land denominated from the same *Bremer*. *Le Maire* imposed Names on several Islands and Countries; and having spent two Years and eighteen Days in this Voyage return'd by the *East-Indies* to *Holland*. Afterwards in 1618, a Spanish Fleet under the Conduct of *Bartholome Garcia de Nodal*, sail'd through *Le Maire's* Streight. And in 1623, part of Prince *Maurice's* Fleet steer'd the same Course, discovering some small Islands in their Passage.

In 1642, *Abel Jansen Tasman*, a *Hollander*, made a very remarkable Voyage toward the South *Terrae Incognitae*. And in 1643, Captain *Bremer*, or *Brouwer*, found out a new way into the South-Sea, by a Passage call'd after his own Name, lying East of *Le Maire's* Streight. But in 1669, that famous Navigator and valiant Commander Sir *John Narborough*, having receiv'd a Commission from King *Charles II.* to make a better Discovery of these Parts, more especially of the Country of *Chile*, set out with two Ships, viz. the *Swampstake* and *Burdelow Pink*; the former of 300 Tuns burthen, and the other of 70, and return'd in 1671, after having spent above two Years in passing and re-passing the Streight of *Mazellan*, and sailing along the Coasts of *Patagonia* and *Chile*, whose Observations and Draughts since publish'd are most judicious and accurate.

In 1680 and 1681, Captain *Sloop* rambl'd over the South-Sea, steering one while near 800 Leagues to the Eastwards and at another time as many to

the Westwards; and hearing about many Islands and Coasts: But in his return not being able to recover the Streights of *Mazellan*, or those of *Le Maire*, or *Brouwer*, he was constrain'd to seek for a new Passage farther South than by *Cape Horn*, and sail'd to the 60 Degree of South Latitude, where in departing from a small place call'd by him the *Isle of Jack's Island*, he met with abundance of Ice, Snow, Frost, and Whales, and saw no Land for three Months together, till his arrival at the Island of *Babadoes*. Since these Attempts, divers *East-India* Ships have pass'd on several Occasions into the South-Sea, both by the *Mazellan's* Streights, and by the South of *Cape Horn*. Among which that wherein Mr. *William Dampier* travell'd, in the Years 1684, 1685, and 1686, sail'd round the *Tierra del Fuego* by *Cape Horn*, and pass'd all along the Coasts of *Patagonia*, *Chile*, *Peru*, *Tierra-Firma*, *Mexico*, and even to the height of *California*, whence they stood over to the *Ladrones* and *Philippine* Islands, and so came home to *England* by the *Cape of Good Hope*. None that ever sail'd this Course have done such Service to future Navigators as that ingenious Person; for in the Relation of this Voyage which he printed, all those Coasts are so plainly describ'd, the Latitudes and Longitudes so exactly set down, the Tides, Currents, Trade-Winds, &c. so judiciously and (in all probability) faithfully given an Account of, that his Work would be of inestimable Value, if the State of Affairs ever happen to be such that our Nation may have Occasion to Navigate those Seas.



# COUNTRIES

ABOUT

## The POLES,

NORTH and SOUTH.

**B**Y the Countries about the Poles I understand not only the Countries that lie near the Poles, but also those Islands and *Peninsule* lying over against the old and new Continent, that have been lately discovered; which I shall divide into the Arctick or Northern, and Antarctick or Southern, as they are set down in this Table, *viz.*

1. Arctick, or Northern.	{	Estotiland.
		Groenland.
	{	Nova-Zembla.
		Spitsberg.
	{	Terra de Jesso.
		New-Denmark.
	{	New North-Wales.
		Isles of Cumberland.
2. Antarctick, or Southern.	{	Nova-Guinea.
		Isles of Solomon, S. Isable, S. Jorge.
	{	Horn, Cocos, Monches, Sans-
		fond, Prince-William, Good
	{	hope, Traitors, Mid-Isberg.
		Eleven thousand Virgins.
	{	Terre del Fua, or Fuoga.
		Stoteland.
	{	Hermit's Isle.
		Diego Ramires Isle.
	{	King's-Isle.
	{	Carpentery.
		The Country of Diemens.
	{	New Zealand, { Port S. Philip,
		{ Port S. James.
	{	Quiri.
		The Country of Brokers.
	{	The Country of Parrots.
		The Kingdom of Bech.
	{	The Kingdom of Luta.
		The Kingdom of Alutur.
Terra Australis Incognita.	{	1. Country of Levechen.
		2. Country of Idels.
	{	3. Country of Nuts.
		4. Country of Conco.
	{	5. De Wit's Land.
		6. Country of Arctat.
New-Holland, in Six Parts.	{	

### SECT. I.

#### The Arctick, or Northern Countries.

I call by the name of the *Arctick* Countries all those Regions, which lie toward the Northern or *Arctick* Pole, which are newly discovered. Their Situation is almost all in the Frigid or Cold Zone. The Extent of them is so irregular, that I know not how to write any thing of that. 'Tis enough, That they are discovered, and to set down the Names by which the Natives call them, as we have them from divers Travellers thither. Nevertheless we may describe their Bounds which part them in our Upper Hemisphere, from *Muscovy* and *Tartary* by the Frozen-sea; and in the other Hemisphere by the South-sea, Christian-sea, and *Hudson's* Streights, which separate them from the Northern *America*.

According to our last Relations, the Air is extremely cold; the Sun appears but little in several places for the greatest part of the Year; but in some places more, in some less, according to their distance from the *Æquator*. In general it may be said of them, They have much Pasture, large Meadows, many Forests, where the Inhabitants maintain a great Number of Beasts; That they live in some of the Countries upon Hunting and Fishing; That they have no Corn nor Wine. All the Country is Islands and *Peninsule*. They have divers sorts of Beasts, especially Bears, Foxes and Deer. *Hudson*, *Davis* and *Frobisher's* Streights are in this Lower Hemisphere; so called, because *Cavot*, *Willoughby*, *Frobisher*, *Davis*, *Hudson*, and some other *Englishmen*, discover'd 'em, endeavouring to find a Passage that Way to the *East-Indies*; as the *Dutch* did, by the Streights of *Wagats* or *Nassau*, which are on the North of our Continent; but both to no purpose, because of the continual Ice which hindred their Sailing, and prevents all Navigation, beyond the 80 Degr. of Latitude. Tho' it be said, That some *Dutch* Pilots went to the 88 Degree, and found a Passage towards *China*; that Passage is unknown to the other Nations of *Europe*, who make ordinarily but three Voyages towards the North: 1. To *Archangel* in *Russia*, for Furs. 2. To *Spitsberg* in *Greenland*, for Whale-fishing. 3. To *Norway*, for Wood and Herrings.

However, it may not be improper here to give a brief Account of the several Navigations and Discoveries made toward the North-east and North-



North-west, viz. *Nova Zembla*, North-east *Greenland* or *Spatberg*, and North-west *Greenland*, commonly call'd *Greenland* and *Engueland*. The first Discovery of these Countries is owing to an Accident; for in 1380, *Nicholas* and *Antony Zmi*, two Brothers and rich Citizens of *Venice*, having set Sail from the Streight of *Gibraltar* for *Flanders* and *England*, were accidentally driven Northwards by violent Storms, even as far as *Friesland*, *Iceland* and *Greenland*. But in 1497, *John Cabot* and *Sebastien* his Son of the same Nation received a Commission from our King *Henry VII.* to undertake the like Voyage, who made a Draught and Description of some North-west Parts of *America*, and brought along with them four of the Natives.

These Discoveries gave rise to a Project of finding out a nearer Passage that way to the *East-Indies*; which was attempted many times, but without success. A short Account of these Voyages is as follows.

*Sir Hugh Willoughby* was the first that attempted to discover a *NORTH-EAST* Passage into the *Indies*; and to that purpose set out with three sail of Ships in the Year 1553. It is very probable that he landed on *Nova Zembla* and *Greenland*; but we have no Memoirs of this Voyage, except certain short and imperfect Notes which were taken off from his Table after his Death; wherein it is express'd, That the Fleet under his Command parted from *Simien*, which lies on the Coast of *Normy* in 70 Deg. of North Lat. on the second day of *August*: That on the fourteenth they were above 160 Leagues from the same place to the North-east, and continu'd sailing until *September* 14. when they came ashore on a high, rocky and desert Country; from whence the Cold and Ice forc'd them to return more Southerly, which they did till they reach'd a River in *Lapland* call'd *Arctus*, where, by the continuance of foul Weather they were shut up in the Harbour, and the next Spring were all found frozen to death in their Ship.

A few Years after this Misfortune, viz. about 1556, one Captain *Stephen Burroughs*, sometime Comptroller of the Navy to Queen *Elizabeth*, prosecuting the same Design, pass'd the North Cape, and sailing farther Eastward, discover'd the *Wagars*, or Streight that runs between the South part of *Nova Zembla* and the Country of the *Samoieds*; thus, continuing his Course, he arriv'd in 112 Deg. 25 Min. of Longitude, and 76 of Northern Latitude. Afterward he sail'd to 80 Deg. 11 Min. Latitude, and return'd thence to *Nova Zembla*; having cruiz'd (as is most probable) on the Coasts of *Greenland*; since he makes mention of the desolate Country, the blue Ice, and great Numbers of various Fowl thereabouts.

The first Person whose Name we find celebrated in History for endeavouring to search out a *NORTH-WEST* Passage into *China*, was *Sir Martin Frobisher*, who, in three several Voyages, made divers new Discoveries of large Bays, Streights, Islands, Capes, &c. and impos'd on them different Names. In the Year 1576, arriving with two Barks at the height of 62 Deg. North Latitude, he discover'd a great Inlet, since call'd *Frobisher's Streights*, and sail'd into it 60 Leagues, with main Land on each side. He met with Inhabitants along the Coasts, whose Canoes or little Boats were made of Seal-skins, but had wooden

Keels. The Ships Company exchange'd Toys with these Natives for Salmon and other Fish, and brought home certain Marcasites, which were taken for Gold-ore; but after they had made a more exact search the next Year, with a design to carry away a quantity thereof, it prov'd to be nothing but black Lead. At the same time they found a Silver-Mine, which nevertheless lay so deep within the Rocks, that it could not be dug; as also a dead Fish about 12 Foot long, somewhat resembling a *Porpois* in shape. It had a Horn growing out of its Snout (of the same Nature as those commonly call'd Unicorns Horns) which is still preserv'd in a Repository at *Windsor*, and is six Foot in length. In 1578 the same *Sir Martin* undertook his third Voyage, wherein, having pass'd as far as seem'd convenient to him, he took Possession of the Land in the Name of Queen *Elizabeth*, and call'd it *Meta Incognita*.

In the Year 1580, *Arthur Pett* and *Charles Jackman* having receiv'd a Commission from Queen *Elizabeth* to follow the Track of *Stephen Burroughs*, rambled over the Northern Seas, and in all likelihood land'd in *Greenland*; but there is nothing particularly known concerning their Voyage, except that they pass'd the Streights of *Way-gus* and launch'd into the Ocean to the Eastward, where, meeting with vast heaps of Ice, they were constrain'd to return with great Peril and Labour; insomuch, that they lost one another by reason of the foul Weather, and *Pett* was never heard of after.

In 1583, *Sir Humphrey Gilbert*, by the direction of *Sir Francis Walsingham*, Principal Secretary of State, sail'd upon the same Design, to *Newfoundland* and the great River of *St. Lawrence* in *Canada*, took Possession of the Country in the Name of Queen *Elizabeth*, and settl'd a Filling-trade there. This Voyage was made upon suggestion of a certain *Greek* Mariner, who positively affirm'd to some *English* Gentlemen, That himself had pass'd through a great Streight to the North of *Virginia* from the North-west Ocean, and offer'd to be Pilot for the Discovery, but died before he came into *England*.

In 1585, *Mr. John Davis* having undertaken with two Barks to search out the North west Coasts, made farther Discoveries in those Parts, and nam'd the Land he came to, *Cape Desolation*, being a Part of *Greenland*; where he found many pieces of Furr and Wool like Beaver, and exchange'd some Commodities with the Natives, who often repair'd to him in their Canoes bringing Stag-skins, white Hares, small Cod, Muscles, &c. Afterward he arriv'd in the Latitude of 64 Deg. 15 Min. where was found a great quantity of such Ore as *Frobisher* had before brought into *England*; and steer'd thence to 66 Deg. 40 Min. as far as *Mount Raleigh*, *Ternesi-land*, &c. In 1586 he made a second Voyage to the same Coasts, searching out many places toward the West; and the next Year, in a third Voyage, came to 72 Deg. 12 Min. the Compass varying to 82 Deg. Westward. He gave the Name of *London-Cast* to the Land, and the Streight (being 40 Leagues wide) was from him call'd *Fretum Davis*.

Thus the *English* Nation alone, for a long time, frequented those Northern Seas till 1578, that a *Dutch* Ship came to *Kola* in *Lapland*, and a Year or two after another to *Sa. Nicholas*, by the instigation of an *English* Man who set him-



self against the Company of *Russian* Merchants; whereupon the *Hollanders* crept in more and more, and in 1594, sent *William Barents*, a skilful Navigator, and some others, to find out a Passage from thence to the *Indies*.

In 1596 the same *William Barents*, accompanied with two other *Dutch* Pilots, viz. *Jacob Heemskirk* and *John Cornelius Ryp*, first discover'd *Bear or Cherry Island*, and pass'd from thence to *Greenland*; but *Barents* being separated from them, sail'd along the Coasts of *Nova Zembla* to the 76 Degree of Latitude, until at length his Ship was driven ashore, and broke in pieces by the Ice, so that all the Mariners were compell'd to Winter there, and endur'd the utmost extremity of Cold. Afterward with much difficulty, in two Boats they got to *Kola* in *Lapland*; but *William Barents* died before their Arrival, to the great Grief of the whole Company.

In 1603 *Stephen Bennet* was employ'd, but went no farther than *Cherry Island*, and brought from thence a certain quantity of Lead Oar. In 1608, that famous Navigator Mr. *Henry Hudson*, was sent forth to discover the North Pole, and sail'd even to the 82 Degree of North Latitude; but being satisfy'd that there was no North-East Passage, he was appointed to make the like trial in the North-West Seas. Therefore in 1610 he set sail again, and proceeded 100 Leagues farther than any had done before, and gave several Denominations to certain Places, as *Desire provokes*, *Ile of God's Mercies*, *Prince Henry's Cape*, *King James's Cape*, *Queen Ann's Cape*, &c. besides the Streight and Bay that still bear his Name. But the Ice hinder'd him from continuing his Course farther, and the Sedition of his Men from returning home.

In 1611 Sir *Thomas Button*, Servant to *Henry Prince of Wales*, eldest Son of King *James I.* being enjoin'd by that renowned young Prince to pursue the North-West Discoveries, pass'd through *Hudson's* Streight; and sailing above 200 Leagues to the South-Westward over a Sea above 80 Fathom deep, discover'd a large Continent, call'd by him *New-Wales*. Afterward, having endur'd great Fatigues in his wintering at *Port Nelson*, notwithstanding the loss of many of his Men, he search'd out the whole Bay, which is now known by his Name, even back again almost to *Digge's Island*, and found out the large Tract of Land which he nam'd *Cory's Swans Nest*. Moreover in the Years 1612, 1615, 1616, *James Hall*, and *William Baffin*, proceeded much farther in the North west Parts, and impos'd Names on divers Places discover'd by them, besides that the *English* Merchants perceiving these Northern Voyages to be very profitable by reason of the great quantity of rich Furs that were brought thence, increas'd the number of their Shipping to thirteen or fourteen yearly, under the Conduct of *Poole*, *Fotherby*, *Edge*, *Heij*, and other skilful Pilots, from whom several Sounds, Bays, Promontories, &c. have receiv'd their respective Names.

In the mean while the King of *Denmark* observing the Progress of the neighbouring Nations in these Northern Seas, began to consider that the Traffick of his own might be much advanc'd by the like Discoveries, being also desirous to renew his ancient Pretensions to these Countries, in case any thing should be found out worth the claiming. Therefore he caus'd two Ships and a Pinnace to be fitted out in

the Year 1605. Of these, Captain *John Cunningham*, a *Scot* was Admiral; *Godske Lindenaw*, a *Danish* Nobleman was Vice-Admiral, and the chief Pilots were *James Hall* and *John Knight*, *Englishmen*. *Godske* arriving on some part of the Country, barter'd some small Wares with the Natives, took two of them, and return'd to *Denmark*. The other two Vessels came to *Cape Farewell*, sail'd from thence to *Frobisher's* Streights, gave *Danish* Names to certain Places, seiz'd on three of the Inhabitants, and at *Cunningham's Ford* met with a kind of Silver Mine, which was afterwards try'd by the *English*, and found to be of no Value. In 1606, four Ships and a Pinnace were sent thither under the same *Godske Lindenaw* Admiral, and *James Hall* Pilot-General, who brought away five of the Natives. In 1607 *James Hall* receiv'd a new Commission; but the Sea-men mutining as soon as they made the Coast, brought the Ship back again into *Denmark*, without effecting any thing. However, his *Danish* Majesty set out two other Ships mann'd with *Norwegian* and *Islandish* Mariners, and commanded by *Christian Richardson*, a *Holsteiner*; but these returned before they came in view of the Shore. The rest of their Expeditions are unknown until *An.* 1619, when *John Munck* was sent out with two Ships, which arriv'd safe at *Cape Finewell*, from thence this Pilot steer'd to 63 Degree 20 Min. (as it is probable near *Digge's Island*) and winter'd there, calling the Place *Munck's Winter Harbour*, and the Continent *New Denmark*. The South-part of *Hudson's Bay* he likewise nam'd *Mare novum*, and that part toward *Greenland*, *Mare Christianum*. But of all his Company, which consisted of Forty six in a Ship, and Sixteen in a Pinnace, scarce so many were left alive, as were able to bring the Pinnace through extream Danger to their own Country. However, in the Year 1653, *Frederick III.* King of *Denmark*, resolving to advance the Northern Discoveries, caus'd three Ships to be fitted out with skilful Mariners, enjoyning them to take a most exact Account of all the Coasts and Places where they arriv'd. These having pass'd the Streight of *Waygats*, met with some Inhabitants of *Nova Zembla* in their Canoes or little Fishing-Boats, and steer'd from thence to *Greenland*. These particular Adventures are contain'd in the *French Relations* of the *Danish* Voyages publish'd at *Paris* by *M. Peyrere* and *Martiniere*.

We do not read of any more Voyages from *England* to find out the North-West Passage since the last Expedition of *William Baffin* in 1616, until the Reign of King *Charles I.* when Captain *Luke Fox* was sent upon the same design in 1630, in his Majesty's Pinnace nam'd the *Charles*, victuall'd for eighteen Months. He traced *Frobisher*, *Hudson*, *Davis*, *Button* and *Baffin*, meeting with Whales, much Ice, and Fowls, and built a Pinnace in *Port Nelson*, where he found several Remains left by Sir *Thomas Button*, but no Natives or Inhabitants, though in other Parts of those Seas he saw some Salvages. About the same time, viz. in 1631, Captain *Thomas James* being employ'd by the Merchants of *Bristol* for the like purpose, sail'd from *Cape Farewell* by the *Ilands of Resolution* to *Mill* and *Nottingham* Isles, as also those of



*Marsfield*, from whence he steer'd over a large Bay to the Westward near *Port Nelson*, and nam'd the Land *New South Wales*, Hereabouts meeting with Captain *Tex*, they congratulated one another, but were soon separated by foul Weather; so that Captain *James* still continu'd roving up and down, and giving Name to divers Places; as *Cape Henrietta Maria*, *Lord Weston's Island*, *The Earl of Bristol's Island*, *Sir Thomas Roe's Island*, *Earl of Danby's Island*, *Charlton Island*, &c. in this last he Winter'd in the Latitude of 52 Deg. 3 Min. and having built a little Pinnacle out of his Ship, pass'd over to *Corn's Swan's Nest*, whence he return'd by *Cape Charles* and *Shubury Isle*, and arriv'd on the Coasts of *England* in 1632. The Voyage of this most skilful Navigator was publish'd in 1633, by the special Command of King *Charles I.* containing an Account of the Hardships he endur'd; as also of the Streights, Capes, Bays, Tides, Soundings, Variations of the Compass, Natural Richities, &c. very accurate and judicious.

The last Voyage, in order to make a more perfect Discovery (if it were possible) of the North east Seas; for a Passage to the *Last-Indies*, was undertaken in the Year 1676, by the Ingenious Captain *J. Wood*. Having receiv'd a Commission from King *Charles II.* he arriv'd in the 76 Degree of North Latitude, but unfortunately lost his Ship, near the *Yeddo*, on the Coast of *New Zembel*, and return'd home in the *Progranus* that accompanied him under the Command of Captain *Fleetes*. His Opinion is, that it is impossible to Sail

attempted to make an escape into another Country, whereof he had only heard some obscure flying Reports. This Gentleman was so fortunate as to get safe to the Harbour of *Sindsby*, lying between two mountainous Promontories, one on an Isle over against *Greenland*, which he call'd *Haidserken* or *White Shirt*, by reason of its being covered with Snow; the other on the Continent, bearing the Name of *Huaf Eric*. He Winter'd in the Island, and afterward passing into the Continent, impos'd on it the Name of *Groenland* or *Greenland*, from its flourishing Verdure. His Son being sent to *Olus Trugger* King of *Norway*, to procure a Pardon, easily obtain'd it upon Information of the new Discovery. Thus, in process of time, a Plantation was settled there, and two Cities were built, viz. *Garde* and *Albe*; the latter was honoured with a Bishop's See and the Residence of the *Norwegian* Vice-Roy, the Cathedral Church being dedicated to *St. Antony*. However, these new Inhabitants having been long since destroy'd, either by the Natives, the Rage of an Epidemical Disease call'd the *Black Plume*, or otherwise, very little Intelligence concerning *Greenland* has come to us since the Year 1349. Nevertheless in 1389 (as they say) the King of *Denmark* determining to re-establish his Dominion in those Parts, sent a Fleet thither; which having suffer'd Shipwreck, he was discourag'd from any farther Enterprize, until of late that Navigation was somewhat renew'd by *Christian IV.* who was wont to call this Country his *Philosopher's Stone*; in regard that it was sometimes not to be found when his



Sometimes black streaks, letting the Colour in-  
to their very Skin by pricking it with a sharp  
Bone, so that it can never be worn out. These  
Natives are not unlike the *Samoeids* and *Lap-  
landers*, being very healthy, active and strong.  
They are also courageous, and sometimes despe-  
rate, often choosing rather to throw themselves  
down the Rocks, than stand to be taken. But  
they are true *Barbarians*, extremely thievish,  
treacherous and revengeful, not to be won by  
any kindness or fair dealing. They live alto-  
gether by Hunting and Fishing, making Bread  
of Fish-bones ground to Meal, and drink the  
Sea-water without receiving any Prejudice by  
it. They ordinarily go a Fishing with Darts,  
which are strongly barbed, and have Bladders  
fasten'd to them at the other end; that the  
Fish, when struck, may spend its Strength in  
struggling to get under Water, yet can't do  
it, and so is easily taken. Their Cloaths are  
either made of Bird-skins with the Feathers and  
Down upon them, or of those of Seals, Dog-  
fish, or Wild Beasts. They wear the hairy  
sides of them outward in Summer, and inward  
in Winter, and in vehement cold Weather car-  
ry two or more Suits one upon another. They  
also drels their Skins very well, and sew them  
exceeding strong with Sinews of Beasts and  
Needles made of Fish-bones. But their Inge-  
nuity appears in nothing so much as in their  
Canoes or Boats, which are made of Whale-  
bone about an Inch thick and very broad,  
stitch'd close together with strong Sinews and  
cover'd with Seal-skins. These Boats are wrought  
sharp at both ends in form of a Weaver's Shut-

ty, separated from thence by the Streights of  
*Waygats* or *Nassau*; but whether it be an  
Island, or join'd to the Continent of *Tartar-  
ry*, is not certainly known. It was discovered  
by *Stephen Burroughs*, in the Year 1556, and  
since visited by several Persons both of the  
*English* and *Dutch* Nation; who have in vain  
attempted to find out a Passage that way into  
the *Tartarian* Sea, and so farther to *Cathay*,  
*China*, *Japan*, &c.

This Country (according to the Information  
of Captain *John Wood*, who lost his Ship there)  
is for the most part perpetually cover'd with  
Snow, neither can one walk on the few bare  
Plats of Ground, by reason that they are bog-  
gy; upon the Surface whereof grows a kind  
of Moss, bearing a small blue and yellow  
Flower; under which Green-sod, in digging  
about two Foot deep, appears a firm Body of  
Ice. The same ingenious Pilot assures us, That  
the Snow lies here, contrary to what it does  
in any other Country; since in all other Cli-  
mates it melts soonest away near the Shoar,  
but here the Sea beats against the snowy Cliffs,  
that in some places are as high as either of the  
*Forelands* in *Kent*; the Sea having wash'd un-  
derneath the Snow a prodigious way, and the  
Snow hanging over, most fearful to behold:  
But there are many Rivulets of very good Wa-  
ter, melted from the Snow, which run down  
every quarter of a Mile from Hills into the  
Sea. On the Hills are found abundance of  
Slate Stone, and on the Shoar very good black  
Marble with white Veins. The *Dutch*, who  
wintered in *Nova Zembla*, mention no other



North-west ; viz. *Nova Zembla*, North-east *Greenland* or *Spiriberg*, and North-west *Greenland*, commonly call'd *Groenland* and *Engroenland*. The first Discovery of these Countries is owing to an Accident ; for in 1380, *Nicholas* and *Antony Zani*, two Brothers and rich Citizens of *Venice*, having set Sail from the Streight of *Gibraltar* for *Flanders* and *England*, were accidentally driven Northwards by violent Storms, even as far as *Friesland*, *Iceland* and *Greenland*. But in 1497, *John Cabot* and *Sebastien* his Son of the same Nation received a Commission from our King *Henry VII.* to undertake the like Voyage, who made a Draught and Description of some North-west Parts of *America*, and brought along with them four of the Natives.

These Discoveries gave rise to a Project of finding out a nearer Passage that way to the *East-Indies* ; which was attempted many times, but without success. A short Account of those Voyages is as follows.

Sir *Hugh Willoughby* was the first that attempted to discover a *NORTH-EAST* Passage into the *Indies* ; and to that purpose set out with three sail of Ships in the Year 1553. It is very probable that he landed on *Nova Zembla* and *Greenland* ; but we have no Memoirs of this Voyage, except certain short and imperfect Notes which were taken off from his Table after his Death ; wherein it is express'd, That the Fleet under his Command parted from *Samien*, which lies on the Coast of *Norway* in 70 Deg. of North Lat. on the second day of *August* : That on the fourteenth they were above 160 Leagues from the same place to the North-east, and continu'd sailing until *September* 14. when they came ashore on a high, rocky and desert Country ; from whence the Cold and Ice forc'd them to return more Southerly, which they did till they reach'd a River in *Lapland* call'd *Arzua*, where, by the continuance of foul Weather they were shut up in the Harbour, and the next Spring were all found frozen to death in their Ship.

A few Years after this Misfortune, viz. about 1556, one Captain *Stephen Burroughs*, sometime Comptroller of the Navy to Queen *Elizabeth*, prosecuting the same Design, pass'd the North Cape, and sailing farther Eastward, discover'd the *Hugus*, or Streight that runs between the South part of *Nova Zembla* and the Country of the *Samoeds* ; thus, continuing his Course, he arriv'd in 112 Deg. 25 Min. of Longitude, and 76 of Northern Latitude. Afterward he sail'd to 80 Deg. 11 Min. Latitude, and return'd thence to *Nova Zembla* ; having cruiz'd (as is most probable) on the Coasts of *Greenland* ; since he makes mention of the desolate Country, the blue Ice, and great Numbers of various Fowl thereabouts.

The first Person whose Name we find celebrated in History for endeavouring to search out a *NORTH-WEST* Passage into *China*, was Sir *Martin Frobisher*, who, in three several Voyages, made divers new Discoveries of large Bays, Streights, Islands, Capes, &c. and impos'd on them different Names. In the Year 1576, arriving with two Barks at the height of 62 Deg. North Latitude, he discover'd a great Inlet, since call'd *Frobisher's* Streights, and sail'd into it 60 Leagues, with main Land on each side. He met with Inhabitants along the Coasts, whose Canoes or little Boats were made of Seal-skins, but had wooden

Keels. The Ships Company exchange'd Toys with these Natives for Salmon and other Fish, and brought home certain Marcasites, which were taken for Gold-ore ; but after they had made a more exact search the next Year, with a design to carry away a quantity thereof, it prov'd to be nothing but black Lead. At the same time they found a Silver-Mine, which nevertheless lay so deep within the Rocks, that it could not be dug ; as also a dead Fish about 12 Foot long, somewhat resembling a *Porpois* in shape. It had a Horn growing out of its Snout (of the same Nature as those commonly call'd Unicorns Horns) which is still preserv'd in a Repository at *Windsor*, and is six Foot in length. In 1578 the same Sir *Martin* undertook his third Voyage, wherein, having pass'd as far as seem'd convenient to him, he took Possession of the Land in the Name of Queen *Elizabeth*, and call'd it *Meta Incognita*.

In the Year 1580, *Arthur Pert* and *Charles Jackman* having receiv'd a Commission from Queen *Elizabeth* to follow the Track of *Stephen Burroughs*, rambled over the Northern Seas, and in all likelihood landed in *Greenland* ; but there is nothing particularly known concerning their Voyage, except that they pass'd the Streights of *Wayanus* and launch'd into the Ocean to the Eastward, where, meeting with vast heaps of Ice, they were constrain'd to return with great Peril and Labour ; insomuch, that they lost one another by reason of the foul Weather, and *Pert* was never heard of after.

In 1583, Sir *Humphrey Gilbert*, by the direction of Sir *Francis Walsingham*, Principal Secretary of State, sail'd upon the same Design, to *Newfoundland* and the great River of *St. Lawrence* in *Canada*, took Possession of the Country in the Name of Queen *Elizabeth*, and settled a Fishing-trade there. This Voyage was made upon suggestion of a certain *Greek* Mariner, who positively affirm'd to some *English* Gentlemen, That himself had pass'd through a great Streight to the North of *Virginia* from the North-west Ocean, and offer'd to be Pilot for the Discovery, but died before he came into *England*.

In 1585, Mr. *John Davis* having undertaken with two Barks to search out the North west Coasts, made farther Discoveries in those Parts, and nam'd the Land he came to, *Cape Desolation*, being a Part of *Greenland* ; where he found many pieces of Furr and Wool like Beaver, and exchange'd some Commodities with the Natives, who often repair'd to him in their Canoes bringing Stag-skins, white Hares, small Cod, Mussels, &c. Afterward he arrived in the Latitude of 64 Deg. 15 Min. where was found a great quantity of such Oar as *Frobisher* had before brought into *England* ; and steer'd thence to 66 Deg. 40 Min. as far as Mount *Raleigh*, *Tornejs-land*, &c. In 1586 he made a second Voyage to the same Coasts, searching out many places toward the West ; and the next Year, in a third Voyage, came to 72 Deg. 12 Min. the Compass varying to 82 Deg. Westward. He gave the Name of *London-Crest* to the Land, and the Streight (being 40 Leagues wide) was from him call'd *Fretum Davis*.

Thus the *English* Nation alone, for a long time, frequented those Northern Seas till 1578, that a *Dutch* Ship came to *Kola* in *Lapland*, and a Year or two after another to *Sa. Nicholas*, by the instigation of an *English* Man who set him-



self against the Company of *Russian* Merchants; whereupon the *Hollanders* crept in more and more, and in 1594, sent *William Barents*, a skilful Navigator, and some others, to find out a Passage from thence to the *Indies*.

In 1596 the same *William Barents*, accompanied with two other *Dutch* Pilots, viz. *Jacob Heemskirk* and *John Cornelius Ryp*, first discover'd *Bear or Cherry Island*, and pass'd from thence to *Greenland*; but *Barents* being separated from them, sail'd along the Coasts of *Nova Zembla* to the 76 Degree of Latitude, until at length his Ship was driven ashore, and broke in pieces by the Ice, so that all the Mariners were compell'd to Winter there, and endur'd the utmost extremity of Cold. Afterward with much difficulty, in two Boats they got to *Kola* in *Lapland*; but *William Barents* died before their Arrival, to the great Grief of the whole Company.

In 1603 *Stephen Bennet* was employ'd, but went no farther than *Cherry Island*, and brought from thence a certain quantity of Lead Oar. In 1608, that famous Navigator Mr. *Henry Hudson*, was sent forth to discover the North Pole, and sail'd even to the 82 Degree of North Latitude; but being satisfy'd that there was no North-East-Passage, he was appointed to make the like trial in the North-West Seas. Therefore in 1610 he set sail again, and proceeded 100 Leagues farther than any had done before, and gave several Denominations to certain Places, as *Desire provokes*, *Ile of God's Mercies*, *Prince Henry's Cape*, *King James Cape*, *Queen Ann's Cape*, &c. besides the Streight and Bay that still bear his Name. But the Ice hinder'd him from continuing his Course farther, and the Sedition of his Men from returning home.

In 1611 *Sir Thomas Button*, Servant to *Henry Prince of Wales*, eldest Son of King *James I.* being enjoin'd by that renowned young Prince to pursue the North-West Discoveries, pass'd through *Hudson's* Streight; and sailing above 200 Leagues to the South-Westward over a Sea above 80 Fathom deep, discover'd a large Continent, call'd by him *New-Wales*. Afterward, having endur'd great Fatigues in his wintering at *Port Nelson*, notwithstanding the loss of many of his Men, he search'd out the whole Bay, which is now known by his Name, even back again almost to *Digge's Island*, and found out the large Tract of Land which he nam'd *Cary's Swans Nest*. Moreover in the Years 1612, 1615, 1616, *James Hall*, and *William Baffin*, proceeded much farther in the North west Parts, and impos'd Names on divers Places discover'd by them, besides that the *English* Merchants perceiving these Northern Voyages to be very profitable by reason of the great quantity of rich Furs that were brought thence, increas'd the number of their Shipping to thirteen or fourteen yearly, under the Conduct of *Poole*, *Fotherby*, *Edge*, *Hely*, and other skilful Pilots, from whom several Sounds, Bays, Promontories, &c. have receiv'd their respective Names.

In the mean while the King of *Denmark* observing the Progress of the neighbouring Nations in these Northern Seas, began to consider that the Traffick of his own might be much advanc'd by the like Discoveries, being also desirous to renew his ancient Pretensions to these Countries, in case any thing should be found out worth the claiming. Therefore he caus'd two Ships and a Pinnace to be fitted out in

the Year 1605. Of these, Captain *John Cunningham*, a *Scot* was Admiral; *Godske Lindenaw*, a *Danish* Nobleman was Vice-Admiral, and the chief Pilots were *James Hall* and *John Knight*, *Englishmen*. *Godske* arriving on some part of the Country, barter'd some small Wares with the Natives, took two of them, and return'd to *Denmark*. The other two Vessels came to *Cape Farewell*, sail'd from thence to *Frobisher's* Streights, gave *Danish* Names to certain Places, seiz'd on three of the Inhabitants, and at *Cunningham's Ford* met with a kind of Silver Mine, which was afterwards try'd by the *English*, and found to be of no Value. In 1606, four Ships and a Pinnace were sent thither under the same *Godske Lindenaw* Admiral, and *James Hall* Pilot-General, who brought away five of the Natives. In 1607 *James Hall* receiv'd a new Commission; but the Sea-men mutining as soon as they made the Coast, brought the Ship back again into *Denmark*, without effecting any thing. However, his *Danish* Majesty set out two other Ships mann'd with *Norwegian* and *Islandish* Mariners, and commanded by *Christian Richardson*, a *Holsteiner*; but these returned before they came in view of the Shore. The rest of their Expeditions are unknown until *An.* 1619, when *John Munck* was sent out with two Ships, which arriv'd safe at *Cape Farewell*, from thence this Pilot steer'd to 63 Degree 20 Min. (as it is probable near *Digge's Island*) and winter'd there, calling the Place *Munck's Winter Harbour*, and the Continent *New Denmark*. The South-part of *Hudson's Bay* he likewise nam'd *Mare novum*, and that part toward *Greenland*, *Mare Christianum*. But of all his Company, which consisted of Forty six in a Ship, and Sixteen in a Pinnace, scarce so many were left alive, as were able to bring the Pinnace through extream Danger to their own Country. However, in the Year 1653, *Frederick III.* King of *Denmark*, resolving to advance the Northern Discoveries, caus'd three Ships to be fitted out with skilful Mariners, enjoyning them to take a most exact Account of all the Coasts and Places where they arriv'd. These having pass'd the Streight of *Waygats*, met with some Inhabitants of *Nova Zembla* in their Canoes or little Fishing-Boats, and steer'd from thence to *Greenland*. These particular Adventures are contain'd in the *French Relations* of the *Danish* Voyages publish'd at *Paris* by *M. Peyrere* and *Martiniere*.

We do not read of any more Voyages from *England* to find out the North-West Passage since the last Expedition of *William Baffin* in 1616, until the Reign of King *Charles I.* when Captain *Luke Fox* was sent upon the same design in 1630, in his Majesty's Pinnace nam'd the *Charles*, victuall'd for eighteen Months. He traced *Frobisher*, *Hudson*, *Davis*, *Button* and *Baffin*, meeting with Whales, much Ice, and Fowls, and built a Pinnace in *Port Nelson*, where he found several Remains left by *Sir Thomas Button*, but no Natives or Inhabitants, though in other Parts of those Seas he saw some Salvages. About the same time, viz. in 1631, Captain *Thomas James* being employ'd by the Merchants of *Bristol* for the like purpose, sail'd from *Cape Farewell* by the *Islands of Resolution* to *Milli* and *Nottingham* Isles, as also those of



*Mansfield*, from whence he steer'd over a large Bay to the Westward near *Port Nelson*, and nam'd the Land *New South Wales*, Hereabouts meeting with Captain *Fox*, they congratulated one another, but were soon separated by foul Weather; so that Captain *James* still continu'd roving up and down, and giving Name to divers Places; as *Cape Henrietta Maria*, *Lord Weston's Island*, *The Earl of Bristol's Island*, *Sir Thomas Roe's Island*, *Earl of Darby's Island*, *Charlton Island*, &c. in this last he Winter'd in the Latitude of 52 Deg. 3 Min. and having built a little Pinnacle out of his Ship, pass'd over to *Corn's Swan's Nest*, whence he return'd by *Cape Charles* and *Slisbury Isle*, and arriv'd on the Coasts of *England* in 1632. The Voyage of this most skilful Navigator was publish'd in 1633, by the special Command of King *Charles I.* containing an Account of the Hardships he endur'd; as also of the Straights, Capes, Bays, Tides, Soundings, Variations of the Compass, Natural Rarities, &c. very accurate and judicious.

The last Voyage, in order to make a more perfect Discovery (if it were possible) of the North-east Seas; for a Passage to the *East-Indies*, was undertaken in the Year 1676, by the Ingenious Captain *John Wood*. Having receiv'd a Commission from King *Charles II.* he arriv'd in the 76 Degree of North Latitude, but unfortunately lost his Ship, nam'd the *Speedwell*, on the Coast of *New Zembla*, and return'd home in the *Profligate's Pink* that accompanied him under the Command of Captain *Flamers*. His Opinion is, that it is impossible to Sail this Way to *China* and *Japan*, as Captain *James* before had declared, being both induc'd thereto by the situation of the Land, the reversion and uncertainty of half Tides, the motion of the Ice, &c. Besides, that the Fogs, Snow, Frosts, the vast Islands of Ice, and the tempestuousness of the Weather, are altogether insuperable.

**ESTOTILAND** is on the North of *America*, and is divided from it by *Hudson's* Streight. *Antonius Zoni* the *Venetian*, is said to have discover'd it in 1390, or thereabouts; and *John Scolte*, a *Poleman*, found it out again in 1477. He was lost in the Sea, as well as *Michael Cortrealis*. This Country is very fruitful, especially in Gold. The Inhabitants are very industrious. The *English* possess on the Coast, *Terra Lavator*, or *New Britain*, or *Terra Cortrealis*; but they know nothing but the Coast.

**GROENLAND**, *Greenlandia*, call'd also *Greenland*, and more anciently *Engroeland*, lies (according to the report of the *Inlanders*) like a half Moon about the North of their Country, at the distance of four Days sailing. *Cape Fartzen*, its most Southern Promontory, is situated in the Latitude of 60 Degr. 30 Min. but how far the Continent may extend it self Northward, is unknown. The Eastern and Western sides are encompass'd with two vast Oceans, but at what Degrees of Longitude, is not yet discover'd. This Land is suppos'd to have been first discover'd by a *Norwegian* Gentleman, nam'd *Eric Rorup*, or *Red-head*, who having committed a Murder in *Iceland*, to save his Life

attempted to make an escape into another Country, whereof he had only heard some obscure flying Reports. This Gentleman was so fortunate as to get safe to the Harbour of *Sundbyse*, lying between two mountainous Promontories, one on an Isle over against *Greenland*, which he call'd *Hudserken* or *White Shirt*, by reason of its being covered with Snow; the other on the Continent, bearing the Name of *Hurf Eric*. He Winter'd in the Island, and afterward passing into the Continent, impos'd on it the Name of *Greenland* or *Greenland*, from its flourishing Verdure. His Son being sent to *Olus Trugger* King of *Normay*, to procure a Pardon, easily obtain'd it upon Information of the new Discovery. Thus, in process of time, a Plantation was settled there, and two Cities were built, viz. *Gard* and *Albe*; the latter was honoured with a Bishop's See and the Residence of the *Norwegian* Vice-Roy, the Cathedral Church being dedicated to St. *Anony*. However, these new Inhabitants having been long since destroyed, either by the Natives, the Rage of an Epidemical Disease call'd the *Black Plague*, or otherwise, very little Intelligence concerning *Greenland* has come to us since the Year 1349. Nevertheless in 1389 (as they say) the King of *Denmark* determining to re-establish his Dominion in those Parts, sent a Fleet thither; which having suffer'd Shipwreck, he was discourag'd from any farther Enterprize, until of late that Navigation was somewhat renew'd by *Christian IV.* who was wont to call this Country his *Philosopher's Stone*; in regard that it was sometimes not to be found when his Ships undertook a Voyage thither; and because a certain *Dane* in 1626 brought some Sand from thence which was of the same colour and weight with Gold.

The Air in *Greenland* is so excessive cold that the *Danes* cannot dwell there; neither does the Soil produce any thing but Moss, with some few Bushes and Plants; the Country consisting for the most part in High-lands and Mountains continually cover'd with snow; but the Southern parts more than the Northern, which by reason of the terrible Ice and Cold, are very little known. Among the Beasts, the chief are Bears, Foxes, Rain-Deer and Dogs; there is also great plenty and variety of Fish, as Whales, Seals, Dog fish, &c. But on these Coasts are caught the greatest Quantities of Sea Unicorns, whose horns are so much esteem'd, and kept as Rarities even in the Cabinets of Princes. All the Navigators that arrive here often observe a wonderful Meteor call'd a North-light, which usually appears about the time of the New Moon, and tho' only in the North, yet enlightens the whole Country; perhaps it may be the same which is sometimes seen in *England*, especially in the Northern Parts, and commonly termed *streaming*. It is said to resemble a great Pillar or Beam of Fire, darting out Rays and Streams every where. It also moves from one place to another, leaving behind it a kind of Mist and Cloud, and continues till hid by the Sun-beams.

The *Greenlanders* are generally of a low Stature, of a ripe Olive Colour, and some of them quite Black; having black Hair, flat Noses, broad Faces, and Lips turned up. The Women frequently stain their Faces in blue, and some-



sometimes black streaks, letting the Colour into their very Skin by pricking it with a sharp Bone, so that it can never be worn out. These Natives are not unlike the *Samoeids* and *Laplanders*, being very healthy, active and strong. They are also courageous, and sometimes desperate, often choosing rather to throw themselves down the Rocks, than stand to be taken. But they are true *Barbarians*, extremely thievish, treacherous and revengeful, not to be won by any kindness or fair dealing. They live altogether by Hunting and Fishing, making Bread of Fish-bones ground to Meal, and drink the Sea-water without receiving any Prejudice by it. They ordinarily go a Fishing with Darts, which are strongly barbed, and have Bladders fasten'd to them at the other end; that the Fish, when struck, may spend its Strength in struggling to get under Water, yet can't do it, and so is easily taken. Their Cloaths are either made of Bird-skins with the Feathers and Down upon them, or of those of Seals, Dog-fish, or Wild Beasts. They wear the hairy sides of them outward in Summer, and inward in Winter, and in vehement cold Weather carry two or more Suits one upon another. They also dress their Skins very well, and sew them exceeding strong, with Sinews of Beasts and Needles made of Fish-bones. But their Ingenuity appears in nothing so much as in their Canoes or Boats, which are made of Whale-bone about an Inch thick and very broad, stitch'd close together with strong Sinews and cover'd with Seal-skins. These Boats are wrought sharp at both ends in form of a Weaver's Shuttle, so as they may be row'd either way, being from ten to twenty Foot long, and two broad; they have a Deck of the same Materials fasten'd to the sides, in the midst whereof is a round hole as big as the waste of a Man; so that when he goes to Sea, he sets himself in that Hole, stretching out his Feet forward into the hollow of the Vessel, which is row'd only with one Oar about six Foot long, having a Paddle six Inches broad at each end, serving both to balance and move the Boat, which is done with incredible swiftness, insomuch that one of our Skiffs with ten Oars is not able to accompany them. And we are inform'd by the *Danish* Relations, That the *Groenlanders* row'd so swift, that they even dazzl'd the Eyes of the Spectators; and tho' they often crossed, yet never interfer'd or fell foul one upon another. As for their Religion they are Idolaters, and seem to have a great Veneration for the Sun. They have also been seen lying flat on the Earth, and muttering certain Prayers or Charms to the Devil, whose proper Habitation they believe to be under Ground. *John Murck*, and divers others that have travell'd farther into the Country, found many Images, such as we commonly make of *Demons* and hellish Fiends with Horns, Beaks, Claws and cloven Feet; near which lay quantities of Bones of Beasts, as of Deer, Foxes, Dogs, &c. suppos'd to have been offer'd to them in Sacrifice.

*N O V A Z E M B I A*, was so call'd by the *Russians*, the word in their Language signifying *New Land*; but was however known to the Ancients (as it is probable) under the Name of *Cerambrina*. It lies on the North of *Musco-*

*vy*, separated from thence by the Streights of *Waygats* or *Nassau*; but whether it be an Island, or join'd to the Continent of *Tartary*, is not certainly known. It was discovered by *Stephen Burroughs*, in the Year 1556, and since visited by several Persons both of the *English* and *Dutch* Nation; who have in vain attempted to find out a Passage that way into the *Tartarian* Sea, and so farther to *Cathay*, *China*, *Japan*, &c.

This Country (according to the Information of Captain *John Wood*, who lost his Ship there) is for the most part perpetually cover'd with Snow, neither can one walk on the few bare Plats of Ground, by reason that they are boggy; upon the Surface whereof grows a kind of Moss, bearing a small blue and yellow Flower; under which Green-sod, in digging about two Foot deep, appears a firm Body of Ice. The same Ingenious Pilot assures us, That the Snow lies here, contrary to what it does in any other Country; since in all other Climates it melts soonest away near the Shoar, but here the Sea beats against the snowy Cliffs, that in some places are as high as either of the *Forelands* in *Kent*; the Sea having wash'd underneath the Snow a prodigious way, and the Snow hanging over, most fearful to behold: But there are many Rivulets of very good Water, melted from the Snow, which run down every quarter of a Mile from Hills into the Sea. On the Hills are found abundance of Slate stone, and on the Shoar very good black Marble with white Veins. The *Dutch*, who wintered in *Nova Zembla*, mention no other Beasts than Bears, Foxes, and such others as live upon Prey; for that (say they) there is neither Leaves nor Grass to afford any Fodder for tame Cattel; nevertheless Captain *Wood* found the track of many large Deer, and saw a small Creature much like a Coney, but not so big as a Rat, together with some few little Birds like Larks. Moreover some *English* Merchants that resided in *Russia*, have affirm'd that there is a spacious Lake upon *Nova Zembla*, wherein are bred a great number of Swans and Geese, which molt their Feathers about *St. Peter's Day*; and that at that Time the *Russians* pass over thither to gather these Feathers and kill the Fowls, which they dry and bring into their own Country for Winter-Provision. The most Western Point of *Nova Zembla*, to which *Wood* gave the Name of *Cape Speedill*, lies in 74 Deg. 30 Min. Nor. Lat. and in Longitude 63 Deg. East from *London*. The Sea here is the saltest and the heaviest and clearest Water in the World, insomuch that he could see Shells at the bottom at 80 Fathom depth.

*S P I T S B E R G*, otherwise call'd *North-east GREENLAND*, took its *Dutch* Name from the sharp-pointed Rocks and Mountains with which it is environ'd; *Spitz* in that Language signifying *pointed*, and *Berg* a *Hill* or *Mount*. It reaches from the 76 Deg. to the 82 Deg. of Latitude, but how much farther, as also whether Island or Continent, is not as yet discovered. Indeed our Mariners generally take it for an Island; and the *Dutch* only conjecture that the Land is extended more North, because the Ice stands firm, and does not float as in the open Sea. The South Parts look toward the Promontories of *Finland*,



*Finland, Laponia, the North-Cape, &c.* The next Land on the East is *Nova Zembla*, and the large Territories of *Greenland* or *Engvooland* on the West, but those at so vast a distance, that they cannot be reckoned as its Confines. The principal Harbours are, 1. *Soub-haven*, which is capable of containing above 40 Ships at one time, and wherein faulty Vessels are often repair'd. 2. *Mauritus-Bay*, so call'd by the *Hollanders*, where some have winter'd; and near it stand a few Cottages, which they built for the trying up their Oil, with a Piece of Ordnance for their Defence. These Houses they termed *Schmeckenbergs*, from *Schmel*, signifying *Grease*, and the *Herrens-Cocken*, but all other Nations usually burn theirs before their Departure. 3. The *Northern-Bay*, where is an Island the *Dutch* name *Tegel-Sing*, from the great Noise the Fowl make there in taking their Flight. 4. *Monyer's-Bay*, the farthest North of the Western-part of *Greenland*. 5. *Middle-Haven*, lying at the Mouth of the Straights of *Wygat*. 6. *Walter Thymen's Ford*, which the *English* commonly call *Alderman Freeman's Inlet*, and is a large Mouth of a River, as yet undiscover'd.

The whole Country is so encompass'd with Ice that it is very difficult to come near the Shores, and the Air is so extreme cold that the *Europeans* cannot dwell there with safety of their Lives; as neither in *Greenland* nor *Nova Zembla*. The Soil, as much as hath been hitherto discovered, is nothing but Rocks or Heaps of vast Stones, so steep that they seem ready to tumble down; and indeed many great Pieces often break off from the Tops with a terrible Noise. The greatest part of the Mountains are of Red Earth, and communicate that Colour to the Snow upon them, which often appears marbled, and resembles as it were the Boughs and Branches of Trees, giving a bright Lustre to the Air or Skies, as if the Sun shone. There are also seven bright blue Mountains in a Line, which tinge the Snow and Ice with the same colour, and betwixt them many sharp-pointed Rocks, the Holes whereof afford Nests to an infinite multitude of Fowls, whose Dung being mixt with the Moss, washed down by the melted Snow, makes Mould in the Clefts and Valleys, which lying open to the Sun-Beams, when the Ice is dissolv'd produceth some few Plants, as a kind of Cabbage-Lettice, Scurvy-Grass, Sorrel, Snakeweed, Mousse-ear, a kind of wild Strawberry, divers sorts of *Ranunculus's*, *Sempervivus's*, &c.

The Beasts of this Country are only these, viz. Foxes white, grey, tawny and black; Rain-Deer, which grow extreme fat by feeding upon yellow Moss; white Bears of a prodigious Size, some of them being 6 Foot high, and their Skins 14 foot long; Water Bear, that live by what they catch in the Sea, where they have been seen swimming 12 Miles from any Shore, Seals or Sea-Dogs and Morfes. Very few Land-fowl breed here, of which the most remarkable is the *Sooty* or *Strand-Runner*, of the bigness of a Partridge, with a longish Bill resembling a Plover, that feeds on Worms and does not taste ill. But of Water-fowl there is great variety, as Snow-Birds and Ice-Birds, so call'd for their running upon the Ice; Mountain-Geese, Willocks, Red-Geese; Stints, Gulls, Auks, Sea Pigeons, Sea Parrots, Kirmews, Murrelets, Pigeon-divers, Larks, Rathlers

or Aldermen, Burgermeisters or Mayors, Rotger-Divers, Strunt-jagers or Dung-Hunters, &c. Most of these Birds, except the Strunt-jager, Kirmew and Mountain-Ducks, make their Nests upon the high Rocks, to be secur'd from the Bears and Foxes. They sit in so numerous Flocks, especially at the time when their young ones are hatch'd, about the latter End of *June* and beginning of *July*, that at their taking Flight they shade the Ground from the Sun-Beams, as it were a Cloud, and make such a Noise that one can hardly hear another speak. There are also great quantities of Fish in these Seas, as Seals or Sea-Dogs, Morfes or Sea-Horses, Hays, Dragon-Fish, Butts-Head, Unicorns, Sword-Fish, Mackarel, Lobsters, Garnets, Shrimps, Star-Fish, &c. But the chiefest Profit that draws Men to those desert and desolate Places, ariseth from the Whale-Fishing, of which perhaps it may not be impertinent here to give a Description.

As to the natural History of Whales, the Writings of Authors are confus'd, some reckoning 10 several Species, and others, as *Wormins* and *Bartholinus*, making them up 22; giving them various Names from their Difference in Colours, Fins, Teeth, Whalebone, Oyl. *Sperma Ceti*, &c. But the Fish properly call'd the *Whale*, for the catching of which our Ships chiefly undertake the Voyage to *Spitsberg* and *Greenland*, differs from other Whales in his Fins and Mouth, that is altogether destitute of Teeth, instead whereof there are long, black, somewhat broad and horny Flakes, all jagg'd like Hairs. The Head is commonly the third part of the whole Fish, yet some have bigger than others. Their Lips are plain, smooth and black, somewhat bended, like the Letter S, and end underneath the Eyes, before the two Fins, being lock'd one into another when drawn together. Within, on the uppermost Lip, lies that which we call Whale-bone, of a brown, black and yellow Colour, with Streaks of several Colours, others being of a blue and light blue Tincture, are reputed to come from young Whales; the smallest Whale-bone is before, in the Mouth, and behind toward the Throat, but the middlemost is the largest and longest, reaching sometimes about the length of two or three Men; these are covered all over with long Hairs, like Horse hair, hanging down on both sides round about the Tongue; on one side, all in a Row, are 250 pieces of Whale-bone, and as many on the other, besides some others so small that they cannot be conveniently cut out, which is a peculiar Trade, abundance of Iron-Tools belonging thereto. The lower part of the Whale's Mouth is generally white, and the Tongue, lying amidst the Whale-bones, is very close ty'd to the undermost Chap or Lip; it is large and white, with black Spots at the Edges, consisting of a soft spongy Fat, so hard to be cut that it is often flung away, tho' otherwise it would yield six or seven Barrels of Train-Oil. On the Head stands a Hovel or Bump, and at the Top of it, on each side is a Spout-hole, bended like an S, or the Hole of a Violin, out of which the Whale blows the Water, especially when wounded, so fiercely that it roars like a hollow Wind, or the Waves of the Sea in a Storm; which Noise may be heard at a League's Distance. The Eyes lie very low al-

most



most at the End of the Upper-Lip, and are not much bigger than those of a Bullock, with Eye-Lids and Hair like those of a Man; the Crystal of the Eye is not much bigger than a Pea, clear white, and transparent, the Colour of some is yellowish, and of others pure white. The Shape of the whole Fish is not unlike that of a Shoemaker's-Last, if you look upon it from beneath; their Belly and Back are generally reddish, but underneath the Belly they are white; yet some of them are Coal-black; some of them are also curiously marbled on their Fins, Back and Tail. The young ones are bigger than a Hoghead, when first brought forth. At the Sides of the *Pudendum*, of the Female, stand out two Breasts, with Teats on them like those of Cows, which nevertheless are, as it were, sheath'd within till the young one comes to suck; some of these Breasts are all over white, others speckled with black and blue Spots, like a Lapwing's Egg, the Milk that issues from them being white and sweet, but of a somewhat fishy Taste. The Bones of the Whale are hard, as those of large four-footed Beasts, but porous as a Sponge, and filled with Marrow. His Flesh, which appears coarse and hard, like that of a Bull, is alone by it self, and the Fat lying at the Top, between the Flesh and Skin, is about six Inches thick on the Back and Belly, as also a Foot thick upon the Fins, proportionable to the Size of the Fish, but the Fat of the under Lip is often thicker than two Foot. The Tail does not stand up as those of most other Fishes, but lies Horizontal, as that of the Fin-Fish, But's-Head, Dolphin, &c. being three, three and a half, and sometimes four Fathom broad; with this the Whale winds himself as a Vessel is turned by the Rudder, and his Fins serve instead of Oars, so that he rows along as swiftly as a Bird flies, and makes a long Track in the Sea, which remains divided for a while as that of a huge Ship under Sail.

As for the Food of the Whale, the Ancients thought that he liv'd upon the Froth of the Sea, churn'd with his violent beating on the Water; others say, he is nourish'd with such Weeds and Plants as the Sea affords, since good store of them have been sometimes found in his Stomach: But it is most probable that his chiefest Meat are a certain sort of small Crabs, otherwise call'd Sea-Beetles or Sea-Spiders, with which the Bays of *Greenland* are so cover'd that they seem all over black, these frequently hang thick on his Fins and Hairs, and are afterward suck'd into his Mouth. Indeed not only the Crabs themselves, but also great Quantities of little Stones, call'd *Oculi Cancrorum*, have been taken out of his Stomach. The Whales, as well as other Beasts, have their peculiar Distempers and divers Enemies; of these last the chief are,

1. A kind of Lowle or Insect, having many Feet and a Head like an Acorn, with 4 Horns, which eats through the Skin to devour the Fat.
2. The Saw-Fish or Sword-Fish, which has a long Bone on the End of his Snout, set on each side with Teeth like a Saw; he seldom gives over encountering the Whale till he has kill'd him, yet eats up nothing but his Tongue.
3. The Hay, a long round and thin Fish, yet very voracious, whose Mouth, shap'd as that of the Sword-Fish, is full of sharp Teeth, three upper

and three under Rows one by another; with these he bites great Pieces from the Whale, as if dug out with a Spade, and often devours all his Fat. These Fishes are also very eager after the Flesh of Men, and assault many that go to swim or walk in the Sea; they are usually taken with a Bait of Flesh fasten'd to a Hook with a strong Iron Chain, for they would soon sheer a Rope asunder with their Teeth.

The manner of Catching Whales is thus; When any are seen or discover'd by their Blowing or Spouting up of Water, which may be discern'd at a great distance, upon notice given, all the Mariners get into the Long Boats, which hold about 6 or 7 Men apiece. These row till they come very near the Whale, and then the Harpoonier, who always sits before in the Boat, takes an opportunity to throw out his Harpoon; which is an Iron shap'd at the Point like an Arrow, and fix'd at the End of a Stick or Pole, having two Beards, sharp at the Edge and blunt on the Backs, otherwise it would tear out and all the Labour would be lost. The best Harping-Irons are made of clean and fine Steel, not too much harden'd, so that they may be bended without snapping, for 200 Pound (a middling Whale being valued at so much) is often lost for want of such a well-temper'd Instrument, which is light behind and heavy toward the Point, so that sling it which way you will, it always falls upon the Point: To the End or Handle of the Harpoon is fasten'd a Rope 5 or 7 fathom long, and about an Inch thick, being more plyable than the other Cords that are afterward tyed to it (for it is made of the finest and softest Hemp, not daub'd with Tar, so that it swells and grows hard in the Water.) In every one of the Sloops a whole Heap of Lines lie between the Seats, divided into 3, 4, or 5 parts, and each of them is of 80, 90 or 100 Fathom long. The first of them is tyed to the Fore-runner or small Line, and as the Whale dives they tye more and more Line to it. These Ropes are thicker than the Fore-runner, wrought with strong and tough Hemp, and tarr'd over; but the Line-Furnisher or Person whose Business it is to look after the Ropes, as also the other Men in the Long-boat, must take great Care that they be not entangled, or that they may not run toward the Side of the Boat, lest it should be thereby overset, but they must run out just before in the middle, commonly call'd the *Slave* by the Seamen. The Harpoonier darts the Harpoon with his Right-Hand just behind the Spout-Hole of the Whale (if he can conveniently) or in the thick Fat of his Back, for he dies sooner if wounded thereabout than if he were launch'd into the Belly or through the Guts; but about the Head the Harpoon can do him little Hurt, because the Fat is very thin there upon the Bones, so that it breaks out more easily, and the Whale finds means to escape. However, for the most part the Seamen do not much mind where they lance or push them, doing it as well as they can, since there is no Time to take great Deliberation. The Beast, as soon as wounded, runs away with the Long-Boat as swift as Wind, and diving underneath draws the Rope very hard, so that great Care must be taken to give him Rope enough lest the Boat be overset. In the mean while all the other



other Sloops row out before, and take notice which way the Line stands, for if it is stiff and heavy, the Whale still draws it with main Strength; but if it hangs loose, so that the Boat both before and behind is equally high out of the Water, then the Men hale in the Rope, laying it in good order, that if the Whale should draw on again, it may be given him without being entangled. It is also to be observ'd, That if the Whale runs upon the Level, too much Rope must not be allow'd, lest in turning much and often about he should wind it about a Rock or heavy Stone, so that the Harping-Iron would be loos'd and tear out, which has often happen'd. Whensoever the Whale rolls upon the Ground, the Long-boat lying still, the Lines are drawn in again by degrees, and the Rope-Master lays them down in their proper Places. If he runs underneath a great Ice-field, and, and the Rope is not long enough to follow him, they draw it in as much as is possible, and cut it off, losing the piece of Rope and the Whale; and indeed they frequently run away with the Lines belonging to five or more Sloops. Where great quantities of small Ice are crowded together it is very dangerous and difficult to pursue the Whale, for he is so cunning as to retire thither immediately, and the Long-Boats are very often dash'd to pieces against the Rocks of Ice. But when he rises they sling one or two more Harping-Irons into him, accordingly as they perceive him more or less tir'd, and then he dives under Water again, some swim even all a-long, playing with their Tail and Fins, so that great Care must be taken not to come too near them, for they can beat a Long-Boat to pieces at a Blow. Thus the Seamen wait till the Whale is pretty well tir'd, and then kill him outright with Launces, nevertheless not without great Danger, for they strike as well upon his Body as at his Sides, and receive many severe Blows, all the other Men in the Sloops rowing diligently, sometimes forward and sometimes backward, whilst the Whale lifts himself up and often beats so violently with his Tail and Fins that the Water dashes up into the Air like Dust. The Launces are fix'd to a wooden Pole above two Fathom long, or somewhat shorter than a Pike-staff; the other part of the Lance being commonly a Fathom long, and pointed before, as that of a Pike; is made of Steel or tough Iron, so as to bend without breaking: For the Harpooners, having made a deep Hole in the Whale's Back or sides with their Launces, continue thrusting their first one way then another; but if one or more are got out of their Hands they soon take another, every Sloop being furnished with at least 5, 6 or 7; yet sometimes the Whale has them all out of 3, 4 or more boats sticking in his Body. After he is struck he spouts Water or Blood with all his force, so that the Noise thereof may be heard as far as the Report of a Cannon; but when he is quite wearied it comes out only by Drops, for he has not strength enough to force it up any more. Some Whales blow Blood to the very Top, making the Air most filthy, and dyeing their Sloops as deep as if they were painted with Vermilion, nay the very Sea is tinged red along where-ever they swim. Those Whales that are mortally wounded, heat themselves to such a pitch, that they rock, and the Birds sit on

them and eat their Flesh whilst yet alive. They are surest struck with a Harpoon, as they spout Water, and so do not mind the striking of the Oars, for when they lie still they listen, and are sometimes above and sometimes under Water; but it is very dangerous to assault the Females, especially when big with young, for they defend themselves very long and are harder to be dispatch'd than the Males.

The Long-Boats often waste 6 or 7 Hours, nay even a whole Day before one is seen; but when he is thus kill'd they convey him to the Ship's side, fastning that part where the Tail is cut off to the Fore-Castle, and the Head toward the Stern: Then 2 Sloops hold at each End of the Fish, whilst the Harpooners stand in them before or upon the Whale, clad with a leathern Suit. These 2 Men, who have their peculiar Wages, viz. about 4 or 5 Crowns a-piece, slice his Sides with long Knives, raising the Blubber or Fat from the Flesh, which the more it is loosen'd, as the Hide is flaid from an Ox, the higher it must be hal'd up with the Pulleys, that it may be more easily cut. Afterward the Fat is cut into small pieces in the Ship, and kept in Vessels or Cardels (as they call them) until they try it up into Train-Oil. The Blubber of some Whales is White, others Yellow; and some of Red: The White, being full of small Sinews, does not yield so much Oil, as the Yellow; the Red and watery Fat comes from dead Whales, taking its Colour from the Settling of the Blood, and affords the worst and least Oil, but the Yellow Fat, which looks like Butter, is the best. The Fat being thus chopt into small Pieces, and slic'd thin, is boyld in Cauldrons or Coppers: Afterward the Liquor is lad'd out into a Vessel, half full of Water, that it may be cool'd, and that the Dirt, Blood and other Dregs may fall to the bottom; then it is put into Troughs, to be more cool'd, and convey'd thence into the Cardels or Hogheads, which generally hold 64 Gallons. It is reported that one *Houffon*, a *Diep-man*, in the Year 1634. got 26 Hogheads (Cides) out of the Tongue of one Whale, and 120 out of its Body. The Train-Oil is us'd by divers Tradesmen, as Frize-makers, Curriers, Cloth-workers and Soap-Boilers. The *Greenland* Ships, of the largest size, carry 30 or 40 Men, Men, and sometimes more, having 6 Sloops to tend them, and hold from 800 to 1000 Cardels of Fat: The lesser Ships contain fewer Cardels, viz. from 400 to 700, and have commonly 5 Sloops or Boats belonging to them. There also go some Gallies to *Spitsberg* to catch Whales, which have only 3 or 4 Sloops.

The *Hollanders* attribute the first Discovery of *Greenland* or *Spitsberg* to three of their own Pilots, viz. *Jacob Heemskirk*, *William Barents* and *John Cornelius Ryp*, imposing Names on several Creeks and Promontories, according to their Fancy. But it is certain that they only followed our Steps, and that had our Men been as diligent in that particular from time to time, as also no less careful in making of sea Charts on such occasions, divers Discoveries would have been unquestionably asserted to this Nation, which are now almost disputed from us. Indeed it is not to be doubted but that *Sir Hugo Willoughby*, in the Year 1553, and *Stephen Barrow* in 1556, landed in this Country long before



fore the arrival of the *Dutch* Fleet ; therefore the latter had no other way to derogate from Sir *Hugh's* Honour, but by conferring on him an imaginary Title of an Island, which they call *Willoughby's Island*, a Place near *Nova Zembla* : However, in 1610. the *Russia* Company of *English* Merchants, sent a Ship nam'd the *Amity*, under the command of *Jonas Pool*, for Whale-Fishing, who fell upon this Country formerly discover'd, tho' not much regarded, and call'd it *Greenland*; either by reason of the green Moss with which it was cover'd; or perhaps mistaking it for *Groenland*, a large Northern Continent before discover'd. He also gave Names to many of the principal Places on the Western Side; as *Horn-sound*, (because a Unicorn's Horn was there found) *Ice-Point*, *Bell-Point*, *Black-Point*, *Knotty-Point*, *Lowness Island*, *Cape-Cold*, *Ice-Sound*, *Fowl-Sound*, *Deer-Sound*, &c. This was the first Time that any Benefit was made by the Fishing in these Seas. In 1611 the Company hir'd six Basques, expert Fishermen, and furnish'd them with two Ships to fish for Whales; the first that was taken by them yielded 12 Tuns of Oil, and they likewise kill'd 500 Morfles. In 1662 two other Ships were sent, which caught 17 Whales, together with some Morfles, and made 180 Tuns of Oil. The *Hollanders* came thither the same Year with one Ship, conducted by *Andrew Swallow* an *Englishman*, whilst another *English* Pilot likewise brought a *Spanish* Vessel. Afterward many other Voyages were undertaken on the Company's Account, and these Coasts were frequented by the *English*, *Dutch*, *Danes*, and other Nations; nevertheless we find little worth relating of *Greenland* till the Year 1630, when some *English*, commanded by Captain *William Goodier*, were forc'd to wander up and down the Country, and to Winter there; a large Relation whereof has been publish'd by Dr. *W. Watts*, to which we shall refer the Reader. Some *English* in like manner, winter'd in *Greenland*, A. D. 1633, and another Company in 1634, but the latter all perished there. The last that has brought us any considerable News from this Country is *Frederick Martens* a *Hamburger*, who set sail from the River *Elbe*, April 15. A. D. 1671, and return'd thither on Aug. 21. He set forth a large and very accurate Description of the Land, and all things therein, as Mountains, Plants, Beasts, Fowls, &c. chiefly upon a desire to satisfy the Curiosity of some Gentlemen of the Royal Society. This Work was first written in *High-Dutch*, and after Printed in *English*.

In these Countries there is a continu'd Day for four or five Months in a Year, and a perpetual Night for three Months; so that for the most part there is either all Light, or all Darknes. The *English* that winter'd in *Greenland* in the Year 1630, entirely lost the Light of the Sun Octob. 14, and saw it not again till Feb. 3. It is reported by those that staid there in 1633, that Octob. 5. was the last Day that they beheld the Sun; tho' they could see to read in the Twi-light, which continu'd till Octob. 17. That on the twenty-second the Stars plainly appear'd all the twenty-four Hours, and were visible during the whole Winter. That on Jan. 15. they perceiv'd for six or seven Hours about Noon, so much Light as they could make a shift to read by it: And that on Febr. 12. they discerned the Sun-Beams upon the tops of the Mountains, and the next day his whole Body. Our Men that remain'd in *Green-*

land in 1634, and all perish'd there, left in Writing before their Deaths, that the Sun disappear'd Octob. 10. and was seen again Feb. 14. The *Hollanders* that winter'd in *Nova Zembla* A. D. 1596, on Novemb. 2. New Stile, or Octob. 23. Old Stile, (according to *Purchas*) saw the Sun not fully above the Earth; when it rose South-south-east, and set South-south-west. After Novemb. 4. New Stile, or Octob. 2. Old Stile, the Sun was no longer seen, but the Moon appear'd Day and Night, as long as she continu'd in the highest Degrees. On Jan. 24. they perceived the edge of the Sun above the Horizon, and on Jan. 27. he came totally in view; being in 5 Deg. 25 Min. of *Aquarius*. It is difficult to assign a Reason of these various Appearances, unless they proceed from the differences of Latitude; wherein the *English* and *Dutch* took up their Winter-Quarters: But the Cold in *Nova Zembla*, was more intense than that in *Greenland*.

The *English* that Winter'd in this Country liv'd upon Venison, as Rain-Deer, Bears, Foxes, Morfles, &c. The Bear's-flesh was tolerably pleasant and wholesom, but the Liver caus'd their Skins to peel off; which was also observ'd by the *Hollanders*, that abode in *Nova Zembla*. As the Sun and Day began to appear, the Fowls and Foxes crept abroad, for which they set many Traps and Ginns; insomuch that a vast number of Birds were taken, and at several times, above 50 Foxes: These last prov'd very good Meat, and the *Dutch* in *Nova Zembla* were likewise much reliev'd by them in their Scurvies. Afterward, in going abroad to seek Provisions, they found great quantities of Willock's Eggs, that afforded no small Refreshment: But the effects of the Cold upon their Bodies were wonderful, raising Blisters on their Flesh, as if they had been burnt: Iron stuck to their Fingers when touch'd, and their Stockings were all over sing'd as they sat by a great Fire, yet their Feet felt no warmth, and their Backs were frozen. However, our Men either had not altogether endur'd so much hardship, or at least were not so ready to complain as *William Barents's* Company in *Nova Zembla*; for the Cold was so excessive sharp in those Parts, that (as it was related by them at their return) their Shooes froze as hard as Horn to their Feet, their Sack and other strong Liquors were likewise frozen, and a Barrel of Water became perfect Ice in one Night. They also add, that their Carpenter taking a Nail out of his Mouth, the Skin and Flesh follow'd, glu'd to it with Ice; that in their Hutts they were wont to apply Stones heated at the Fire to their Feet, and other Parts of their Body, to keep them from freezing; and that they suffer'd many other Calamities, the particular Circumstances whereof it would be too tedious to recite.

The Land of JESSO, Terra ESONIS (of which we have already spoken in our Account of *China*) is altogether unknown, except some Coasts of it which lie in 42 Deg. of Latitude. It is seated between *Asia* and *America*, and is a long continued Tract of Land; by some thought to be contiguous to both Continents, and that thereby *America* was Peopl'd. But the Streight of *Josis* or *Tessay* which parts it from *Tartary*, and the Streight of *Anian* that separates it from that part of *America* which has been yet discover'd, seem to contradict that Opinion. The Nature



of the Soil and Air is not known; 'tis thought that they are like *Canada*, and that the Country is fruitful in all things. The Inhabitants, so far as we know of them, live upon Fishing and Hunting, and they are cloath'd with the Skins of Beasts. Their Canoes, or little Gallies, are fastned together with Cords made of the Bark of Coco's, which never rots in the Water. They Trade with the People of *Japan*, and are subject to that Emperor, paying him Tribute: Upon which account it is, that this Prince forbids all Strangers which Trade to his Kingdom, to have any Commerce in the Land of *Jesso*. The Natives are Idolaters.

As for NEW DENMARK, NEW NORTH-WALES, the Isles of CUMBERLAND and RAWLEIGH, we know nothing of them but the Names, and some Coasts: so that all we have to say of them is, That these Countries lie on the North of *America*, toward *Hudson's-Sea*, that they are very Cold, and that we have little Account of them.

## S E C T. II

### *The Antarctic, or Southern Countries.*

These Countries are call'd ANTARCTICK from the Pole of that Name, near which they lie; they are also nam'd Southern, because of their Situation. The *Dutch* Relations pretend, that they are not less than *America*, and as Fruitful and well Peopled as *Europe*. They reach not farther than the Sixtieth Degree of Southern Latitude: *Magellan*, who discover'd them first, gave them the Name of *Magellanica*.

The Air is very different, according to the several Regions of it; but it is said, the Soil is generally fertil in all sorts of Fruit, wild and tame Beasts, some of which are unknown to us. *Fernando Quiros* the Spaniard, *Mayre*, *Browers* and *Schouten*, *Durchmen*, observ'd several Mouths of Rivers, but durst not venture upon the Land; they only entred some Gulphs and commodious Havens. The Streight of *Magellan*, discover'd in 1520, is two hundred Leagues in length; and in some places two or three, in other six or ten Leagues wide. *Mayre's* Streights, on the East of *Terra del Fuogo*, discover'd in 1615, is ten Leagues long, and as many wide. *Brower's* Streight, found out in 1643, is much like *Mayre's*. The *English* and *Dutch* go that Way sometimes to the *East-Indies*; and *Dampier* chose rather to go this Way, and Coast the *Terra del Fuogo*, than venture thro' the *Magellanick* Streight; because of the difficulty of that Passage.

NEW GUINEE, *NOVA GUINEA*, is near the Equinoctial Line; it is one of the biggest Isles in the World. It is so call'd, because it seems to be diametrically opposite to *Guinee* in *Africa*, and because 'tis part of the *West-Indies*: It is separated from the Continent by a Streight or Current of the Sea of the Land of *Papua*, which is a very considerable Island on the East of *Guinea*; it is a good Country, but little frequented by the *Europeans*.

TERRA del FUOGO, already mention'd, is on the South of *America*; it consists of several Islands, call'd the *Magellanick*, the *Sereights* of

*Magellan*, and the *Fires* which they observ'd there gave Name to the Land. The Air and Soil are very good.

The STATES ISLAND lies South-east of it, and hath almost the same Nature and Air.

The SOUTHERN UNKNOWN REGION, or *TERRA AUSTRALIS INCOGNITA*, is a vast Tract of Land, as we judge by the Coasts. I have distinguish'd the Parts of it by the several Names given it by Pilots and Captains, who have sail'd by them, which are to be seen in the foregoing Table. The Inhabitants are white, of a large Stature, strong, industrious and courageous; it is very sad to fall into their Hands, as some *Europeans* have found by unhappy Experience. Some modern Relations tell us, That in all that vast Country they have neither King nor Prince, all the People are only combin'd together in several Factions, in the Form of a Commonwealth. They chuse Governours only to make the Lazy work, punish Offenders, and render Justice to every Man. They are Idolaters, and have Oratories to pray to their Idols in: They observe certain Fasts, and Wash their Bodies on certain Days every Year.

The Country of NEW ZEALAND is *Antipodes* to *France*; the *Dutch*, in the Year 1642, were used cruelly by the Men they found there of an extraordinary Stature. *Fernando de Quiros*, who spent 14 Years in these Voyages, discover'd it before those Republicans. He was fourteen Months at the Court of the King of *Spain*, to persuade his Catholick Majesty by eight several Petitions, to send Colonies thither; and represented a thousand Advantages that would arise to them by the Extent of it, Fruitfulness, People, and Conveniency of the Ports, but was not regarded. It is placed in the Dutch Maps between the 34 and 44 Degr. of South Latitude, and between the 189 and 194 Degr. of Longitude.

VAN DIEMEN'S LAND is situated farther Westward, between the 163 and 169 Degr. of Longitude; and between the 41 and 44 Degr. of Southern Latitude. This Country was first discover'd Novemb. 24. A. D. 1642, by *Abel Tasman* a *Hollander*, who impos'd on it that Name in Honour of *Anthony van Diemens*, Governour of the *Dutch East-India Company*; whence it is also termed, *The Country of Anthony van Diemens*: But 'tis not known, whether it be an Island, or a Continent; in regard that its Northern Coast only was descri'd, with *Fredrick-Henry's Bay*, &c.

The other Parts of *Terra Australis* lie farther Northward, and follow in their Order.

NEW HOLLAND is wash'd on the North, by the Seas of the *Molucca's* and *Anchidol*, and on the West and South by the *Indian Ocean*. Its Sea-Coasts were discover'd by the *Hollanders*, above Fifty Years ago; and its Bounds are usually set out in the Maps, between the 12 and 35 Degrees of Southern Latitude, and between the 134 and the 169 Degr. of Longitude. This Country is divided into several Parts, viz. *Peter Nuytz's Land*, which derives its Name from its first Discoverer,



Discoverer, who arriv'd on those Coasts A. D. 1625; *Het Landt van Lemoren*, or, *The Lions-Island*; *The Land of Concord*; in Dutch, *'t Landt van Concordia*; accidentally found out, and so nam'd by the *Hollanders*, as they were making a Voyage to the *Molucca's*, A. D. 1618; the Countries of *Ldel*, *Du-Wit*, and *Arrent*.

*CARPENTARIA*, or CARPENTER'S LAND, owes its Denomination to one *Carpenter*, a *Dutch* Commander, who first made a discovery of its Coast; and is remarkable for its situation between *New Holland* and *New Guinea*, in the innermost part of the *Indian Ocean*.

*LA TIERRA AUSTRAL DEL ESPIRITU SANTO*, i. e. THE SOUTHERN COUNTRY OF THE HOLY GHOST, a large Tract of *Terra Australis*, in the Southern part of the *Pacifick Sea*, was first found out and so call'd, by *Peter Ferdinand de Quiros*, in the Name of *Philip III.* King of *Spain*, A. D. 1606. It is extended very far from the North-west to the South-east; and to 15, or 16 Deg. of Southern Latitude: It contains the Harbours of *S. Felipe*, *S. Jago*, and *Veracruz*, near the Rivers *Jordan* and *S. Salvador*; and many Islands lie over against its Northern Coast, according to the Relation of *John de Turresmata*, in the Voyage of the said *Ferdinand Quiros*. *M. Sanson* places this Country on the South-east of *New Guinea*, and on the North of it the *Islands of Solomon*; but both are omitted in the *Dutch Maps*. *Jacob le Mayre* took the *Island of Good Fortune*, and the *Horn-Isles*, which he discover'd in his Voyage to *New Guinea*, for those of *Solomon*; because he found them to agree with *Ferdinand Quiros's* Description. Others make the Number of *Solomon's* Islands to amount to 20, but their Names are scarce known; neither are they inhabited by any *European* Colony. The chief of them are, *S. Isabella*, which

is of a larger extent than the rest; *Guadalcanale*, and *S. Nicholo*. *Anthony of Leon* informs us, That the *Spaniards* made three several Discoveries of these Islands, viz. The first by *Alvarez de Mendana*, A. D. 1567; the second by the same *Alvarez*, in 1599, who was then accompanied by *Peter Ferdinand de Quiros*, and died there; and the third by the same *Ferdinand de Quiros*, in 1605.

We have but lightly touch'd upon the Parts of *Terra Australis*, in regard that its Sea-coasts only were discover'd by the *Hollanders* about 50 Years ago; but the Nature of the inland Country, is altogether unknown to them, as well as to the rest of the *European Nations*.

Neither indeed can much more be deliver'd; concerning a great number of Islands of the *Pacifick Sea*, which are but of small compass, and were only discover'd accidentally upon several Occasions. Those that lie on the North of the Equinoctial Line, were discover'd and nam'd by the *Spaniards*, as they were sailing from *America*, to the *Ladrones* and the *Philippines*: But those that appear on the South of the same Line, were found out, for the most part, by *Jacob le Mayre*, and *William Cornelius Schouten*, and call'd by their Names, when after having pass'd the *New Streight*, they sail'd from *South America* to *New Guinea*.

Time may possibly bring to Light as particular Accounts of all these Countries, as we now have of *America*, which was as much unknown to former Ages. But for the Present these Descriptions are as succinct as are to be had, or at least as good as needs of Countries which are never travell'd to, nor from which any thing is brought for our use. And with them we shall close our Description, which we hope has answer'd the Reader's Expectation, and given him an *Idea* of all the Known Parts of the Earth. We heartily wish him as much Pleasure and Profit in reading it, as we have had Care and Pains in composing it, and then I am sure we shall both be pleas'd.



# BOOKS Printed for Awnsham and John Churchill, in Pater-Noster-Row.

**A** Treatise of Antient and Present Geography. Together with a Set of Maps, both of Antient and Present Geography, design'd for the Use of Young Students in the Universities.

A New Set of Maps both of Antient and Present Geography, wherein not only the Latitude and Longitude of many Places are Corrected, and according to the latest Observations; but also the most Remarkable Differences of Antient and Present Geography may be quickly discern'd by a bare Inspection or comparing of Correspondent Maps; which seems to be the most natural and easie Method to lead Young Students (for whose use the Work is principally intended) unto a Competent knowledge of the Geographical Science. Both by *Edward Wells*, D. D. and Student of *Christ-Church*, Oxon.

Mr. *Lock's* Essay of Human Understanding. in Folio.

— Two Treatises of Government; in the former, the false Principles and Foundation of *Sir Robert Filmer* and his Followers are detected and overthrown; The latter an Essay concerning the True Original, Extent, and End of Civil Government.

— Letter concerning Toleration.

— 2d Letter concerning Toleration.

— 3d Letter for Toleration, to the Author of the 3d Letter concerning Toleration.

— The Reasonableness of Christianity as delivered in the Scriptures.

— 1st Vindication of Reasonableness of Christianity.

— 2d Vindication of Reasonableness of Christianity.

— Some Thoughts concerning Education.

— Several Papers relating to Money, Interest and Trade, 8vo.

— Letter to *Edward L. Bp. of Worcester*.

— Reply to the Bp. of Worcester.

— Reply to the Bp. of Worcester's Answer to his 2d Letter, where besides other incident Matters, what his Lordship has said, concerning Certainty by Reason, Certainty by Ideas, and Certainty of Faith; the Resurrection of the same Body; The Immateriality of the Soul; the Incon-

sistency of Mr. *Lock's* Notions of the Articles of the Christian Faith, and their Tendency to Scepticism is examined.

Posthumous Works of Mr. *John Lock*, viz. 1. Of the Conduct of the Understanding. 2. An Examination of *P. Malebranch's* Opinion of seeing all things in God. 3. A Discourse of Miracles. 4. Part of a Fourth Letter for Toleration. 5. Memoirs relating to the Life of *Anthony*, first Earl of *Saftsbury*. To which is added, 6. His New Method of a Common-Place Book. Written Originally in French, and now translated into English. 8vo.

A Paraphrase and Notes on the Epistles of *St. Paul* to the *Galatians*, 1 and 2 *Corinthians*, *Romans*, *Ephesians*. To which is Prefix'd, an Essay for the Understanding of *St. Paul's* Epistles, by consulting *St. Paul* himself. The Second Edition. 4to.

Some Familiar Letters between Mr. *Lock*, and several of his Friends. 8vo.

All these above writ by Mr. *Lock*.

Mr. *Talant's* View of Universal History, being a complete Chronology from the Creation to this time, in 16 Copper-Plates.

Cambridge Concordance.

Common-place Book to the Holy Bible.

Dr. *Gibson's* Anatomy of Humane Bodies, Epitomiz'd with Figures.

*Sir William Tempie's* History of the *Netherlands*.

— Miscellanies.

— Letters.

*Dion Cassius's* Roman History, Abridg'd by *Xiphilin*, in 2 Volumes, 8vo. English'd by Mr. *Manning*.

Mr. *Kestlewell's* great Evil and Danger of Prophaneness and Prodigality. In a Letter to a Friend.

Mr. *Nelson's* Companion for the Festivals and Fasts of the Church of *England*: With Collects and Prayers for every Solemnity.

Mr. *Paschal's* Thoughts on Religion, and other Subjects.

*Aesop's* Fables in English and Latin interlineary, for the Benefit of those who not having a Master, would learn either of these Tongues, with Sculptures.

# BOOKS lately Printed for Timothy Childe, at the White-Hart in St. Paul's-Church-Yard.

**D**ictor Historicus: Or, a short System of Universal History, and an Introduction to the Study of it; in 2 Volumes in 8vo. Containing 1. An Explication of Terms and other Præcognita in Chronology. 2. An account of all the Ancient Greek and Roman Historians, with the judgments of the best Critics upon them; also an ample Collection of English Historians. 3. A Chronology of all the most celebrated Persons and Actions from the Creation to this Time. All which is followed by a Compleat History of all the Ancient Monarchies of *Asia* and *Greece*. The *Roman* Empire from the Origine of that State to the Time of *Charlemaign*. The Kingdoms of the *Goths*, *Vandals*, *Lombards* and *Franks*. The State of *Britain* from the Primitive Times to the End of the *Saxon* Heptarchy. The History of *Scotland* and *Ireland*; as also the State of *Venice*. And lastly the Rise and Progress of the *Saragen* Power. Written by *T. Hearne*, M. A. of *St. Edmund Hall*. Oxon.

The Essays or Councils, Civil and Moral, of *Sir Francis Bacon*, Lord *Verulam* Viscount *St. Albans*. With a Table of the Colours of Good and Evil. And a Discourse of the Wisdom of the Ancients. 8vo.

The History of *Greece*. Volume First. Containing the space of about 1660 Years; from the first Plantation of *Greece* to the *Peloponnesian* War: By *T. Hind*, M. A. Fellow of *Lincoln College* in *Oxford*. 8vo.

The Celestial Worlds discover'd: Or Conjectures concerning the Inhabitants, Plants, and Productions of the Worlds in the Planets. Written in Latin by *Christianus Huygens*. 8vo.

*Joan. Clerici Physica, sive de Rebus Corporeis Libri Quinque*. In quibus, præmissis potissimis Corporearum Naturarum Phenomenis & Proprietatibus, Veterum & Recentiorum de eorum causis celeberrimæ conjectura traduntur. Editio Septima auctior & accuratior.

*Archæologia Græca*, Or the Antiquities of *Greece*: In four Books. 1. The Civil Government of *Athens*. 2. The Religion of *Greece*. 3. The Military Affairs of the *Grecians*. 4. Some of the Miscellany Customs. By *John Potter*, D. D. In two Volumes. 8vo. The Second Edition very much Augmented and Improv'd.

*Roma Antiquæ Notitia*, Or the Antiquities of *Rome*. By *Basil Kennet*, of *Corp. Chr. Col. Oxon*. Illustrated with Sculptures. The fourth Edition Revised and Corrected. 8vo.

*P. Virgils Maronis Opera*. Cum Notis & Interpretatione *Carol. Ruej. S. J. ad usum Delphini*. Editio Nova Figuris Aeneis Ornata. 8vo.

*P. Ovidii Nasonis Metamorphoseon*. Cum Interpretatione & Notis *Danielis Crispini ad usum Delphini*. Editio Secunda in quâ quarta fere Notarum Pars expungitur, quarum loco adjiciuntur alie: Et Interpretatio passim emendatur. 8vo.

A TABLE





A.

A Aiderbeitzan P. 68

Abancai 199

Abela 28

Abel-beth ibid.

Abelmeula 30

Abex, P. 202

Abila 32

Abiud P. 99

ABYSSINIA 198

the Name 201

Aca, Terr. 195

Acapulco 261

Acarni 319

Accadia P. 236

Accaron 35

Acharon 23

Achiavel 98

Achillz Collis 34

Achiv, K. and C. 127

Acla 283

Acra 42

Fort 209

Acra 30

Acra 48

Acon ibid.

Acron P. 209

Adea K. 203

Adel, K. and C. ibid.

Aden, P. and C. 44

Adom P. 208

Adrach 28

Admer or Almer 102

Aen 36

ÆTHIOPIA upper 216

lower ibid.

Æthiopis Fons 35

AFRICA 165

T. or

Mehedia 183

Agades K. 206

Agobel 170

Agonna P. 209

Agosto 327

Agra P. and K. 96

Agueda Fort 110

Aguer Cape 171

Ai 32

Ajalon 35

Aian P. 203

Ajafalouch 8

Aiazzo 11

Aider 210

Aidvacal. M. 170

Ainan. Isl. 146

Air el Ginum 176

Akhisar 9

Alaba Abyfs. 199

Alaba, K. Æthiop. 217

Aladulia P. 10

Alagoas 311

Alaguan I. 133

Alcath 27

Alcazer Cuivir 174

Alendin or Elendin 171

Aleppo 15, 16

Alexandria in Egypt. 188

Alexandrinum Castrum 30

Alfoores Pop. 134

Algier P. and C. 179

Alguel 170

Allach Sheyer 8

Allout-neur 126

All-Saints Bay 312

Almanfora 174

Almath 32

Almedina 171

Almochaschor 177

Alvaro de Mindano 1.

Amadabat 328

Amahara P. 401

Amalekites 200

Amatia 38

Amazons Countrey 10

River 303

Ambacanet 199

Amba Guezen Rock 200

Amboyna I. 131

AMERICA 226

Ammer 99

Ammonites 24. 31

Amnafan 10

Amorites 24. 31

Amethdan 27

Amoul 70

Anatan I. 135

Anathoth 32

Anatolia 4

Anchediva I. 110

Andalusia New P. 286

Andes M. 288

Anegada I. 278

Aner 30

Anfa 174

Angad P. 177

Angelim 104

Angofe P. and C. 189

Angola K. 215

Angos K. 205

Angouri 9

Angoy K. 213

Angra dos Reyes 313

Anguila I. 278

Anith 36

Anna P. and C. 41

Saint Anna on Appapuen

319

Annobon I. 222

Antachia 17

Antandros 7

Antarctick Countries 335

Ante P. 208

Antego I. 279

Antequara 262

Anthedon 35

St. Anthony's Fort 312

Anth. Vaz I. 311

Antioch 17

Antiochia Pifidiz 11

Antiochia in America 288

Antilles Isles. 277

Antipatris 30

Antoce 101

St. Antonio I. 221

Anzerma 288

Anzico K. 213

Apaches Pop. 251

Apalachean M. 243

Aperuvaca R. 305

Aphec 29

Aphed 27

Aquambod P. 209

ARABIA 37

Deserta 41

Felix 42

Petra 41

Aracam P. 116

Aramathza 30

Araya Cape 286

Arba or Kirjah-arba 34

Arbela 51

Arbelis 27

Archedona 294

Arctick Countries 229.

Ardebil 335

Arder 69

Magna ibid.

Arebo 210

Arequipa 296

Argia P. and C. 41

Argier K. 176

Argob 28

Argunskoi 82

Ariana 182

Ariffa 36

Arma 288

ARMENIA Maj. 52

Arnedo 295

Arnot 31

Aroer ibid.

Aroseth 27

Arracife 311

B b b b

Arradez 182

Arsepone 104

Aru I. 131

Aruba I. 280

Arzila or Zilia 174

As Alogas 208

Ascalon 35

Ascension I. 222. 327

Asgar P. 174

Asharoff 70

Aslidod 35

ASHER Tribe 27

Asmer 102

Asna 190

Afor 27

Affedim ibid.

Affos 7

Affuan 190

Affum 203

Assumption 317

ASSYRIA 45. 58

Astaroth 28

Atlas M. 170, 171. 195

Attock P. and C. 93

Ava K. and C. 116

Las Aves Is 279

St. Augustine Cape 318

Avido 6

Avila 294

Auranitis 28

Aurarc ibid.

Auraz M. 180

Auriola P. 109

Awerrri 810

Axem P. 208

Azamor 171

Azecha 34

Azel 200

Azotus 23. 35

Azuga 199

Azuth 190

B.

B A 210

Babel-mandel I. 203

Babereth 29

Babylon 48

Bacar P. 102

Bachian I. 131

Badoula 127

Baeza 294

Bafenstede Fort 208

Bathur's Bay 229

Baffo 13

Bagamedri P. and C. 199

Bagdat 48

Bag-



Bagnagar	112	Bengholz P. and C.	215	Brescat or Bersac	179	CANADA	230
Baharen I.	75	RENJAMIN Tribe	32	Brinkalattre	103	———Prop.	233
Bahia de todos Santos	312	Beniquarid M.	124	Britain New	229	———River	230
Bakal L.	82	Benihulud	176	Brodra	101	Canara P.	109
Baku	68	Benijafgar M.	ibid.	Bucker P. and C.	99	Canarane or Caypoumo K.	117
Bakana P.	105	Beni-meguer M.	171	Buenventura	288	Canares Terr.	293
Balbec	19	Benin K.	210, 211	Buenos Ayres	319	Canaria Grand I.	221
Baleh P.	98	———City	211	Buen Vista I.	135	———C.	ibid.
Baldivia or Valdivia	324	Berfort	153	Bugana	199	Canary Isles	220
Balia I.	250	Bersafucaba M.	314	Bugia P. and C.	180	Candabora	98
Ballagato K.	111	Berdan P.	197	Bulaganski	81	Candahara P. and C.	ibid.
———Fr.	105	Berni	27	Bulak	189	Gandalor	11
Ballapur	104	Bermudas I.	273	Bullodies Pop.	99	Cinde in Ceylon	126
Ballafore	ibid.	Berout	19	Eurantz	81	Cindegry	113
Balfas R.	253	Berfoc	179	Burattians Pop.	ibid.	Cinela Terr.	294
Balfora	51	Berhamites Pop.	233	Bussa	6	Cannowe	104
Baly I.	129	Bethabara	32	Busserith	41	Capo K. and C.	206
Bamba P. and C.	214	Bethany	33	Button's Bay	229	Canonor K. and C.	109
———R.	293	Bethdagon	27	Butua P. and C.	217	Canorein I.	100
Bambouk-kale	9	Bethel	32	Byana	97	Canow	105
Bamoth-Baal	32	Beth-haram	31	Byra	31	Canton	146
Bancock	119	Bethlehem	34	Byferta P. and T.	182	Cior P. and C.	117
Bandarmassia	128	Bethmeth	23	Bzo or Bizo	171	Caparosa	36
Banda I.	130	Bethoron	27			Cape Cors P.	219
Bando P. and C.	102	Bethphogor	30			Cape of good Hope	219
Bandia	104	Bethphogor	32			Cape Verd	207
Baskin P.	103	Bethsaida	28			———Isles	221
B. enares	104	———Desart	ibid.			Cape and Bay of St. John	212
Baniam K. and C.	128	Bethsan	21, 29	Cabez	184		
Barcada or Barbuda I.	279	Bethseles	35	Cabo di Limon	10	Capernaum	27
		Bethsemeth	27	Cabo Verde I.	221	Capharsolusa	30
Barbadoes I.	ibid.	Bethshemosh	29	Cabul in Palestine	27	Capibaribi	310
BARBARY	168	Bethser or Bethsora	34	Cabul in India P. and C.	98	Capoul	34
Barca P.	155	Bethulia	28	Cachet	56	Capul I.	133
———Desart	193	Bettlis	52	Cacongo K.	213	Carahmet	47
Barcelor	110	Bezok	30, 34	———R.	ibid.	Carahmet	47
Barces	ibid.	Biafara P. and C.	112	Cafarea Flavia	30	Carahmet	47
Barcagallo P.	199	Bicaner	102	———Patist	ibid.	Carahmet	47
Barique Zimeto	285	Bijagas or Biafara	207	———Philippi	27	Carahmet	47
		Bilcara	194	Catres Coast	218, 219	Carahmet	47
		Bilcas	296	Catia	194	Carahmet	47
		BILEDULGERID	192	Cagemina I.	309	Carahmet	47
		———P.	193	Cairo	188	Carahmet	47
		Binilipatan	112	Cairoan P. and T.	183	Carahmet	47
		Bipur P.	109	Caifar	10	Carahmet	47
		Bir or Elbir	47	Calamianes I.	133	Carahmet	47
		Birkent	80	Calao	178	Carahmet	47
		Biscay New. P.	255	———Fort	ibid.	Carahmet	47
		Bisnagar K. and C.	113	Calcutta	104	Carahmet	47
		Bizo	171	Caleconlam K. and C.	103	Carahmet	47
		Boa Vista I.	221	Cali	258	Carahmet	47
		Bobat	174	Calicut K. and C.	109	Carahmet	47
		Bocchiri	128	California	280	Carahmet	47
		Bogota	287	Calipatam	115	Carahmet	47
		Bohol I.	133	Callao Port	295	Carahmet	47
		Bojadar Cape	195	Callamacha	102	Carahmet	47
		Boili P.	9	Calceda	ibid.	Carahmet	47
		Bombay I.	100	Callionbiech P.	187	Carahmet	47
		Bombon Ter.	296	Callirhoe	32	Carahmet	47
		Bona P. and C.	181	Calpentine I.	126	Carahmet	47
		Borgi	194	Calvary M.	33	Carahmet	47
		Borneo I.	128	Calvo Port	311	Carahmet	47
		———City	129	Cambaia P. and C.	99, 101	Carahmet	47
		Borno K.	197	Cambalu	80	Carahmet	47
		Bosciana I.	11	Cambate K.	217	Carahmet	47
		Boso or Bozra	32	Cambodia	120	Carahmet	47
		Bosra	28	Cambori	119	Carahmet	47
		Bosra or Basserith	41	Cammar	182	Carahmet	47
		Boston New England	239	Camow	103	Carahmet	47
		Botthera P.	187	Campeche T.	263	Carahmet	47
		Brampore	105	———Bay	ibid.	Carahmet	47
		ERAZIL	306	Campeng-pet	117	Carahmet	47
		Erava	203	Camper K.	127	Carahmet	47
		———Isle	222	Cana Maj.	27	Carahmet	47
		Eravaghal R.	218	———of Galilee	29	Carahmet	47
		Brama P. and C.	116	Canaanites	24, 33	Carahmet	47



# The TABLE.

iii

Cavata	175	Chungken	143	Cumberland I.	335	Doulbore	97
Caucasus M.	59	Chunians Pop.	326	Cuncan K.	109	Ducala P.	171
Cavite	132	Cinalao P.	254	Cundarera	112		
Caxamalca	296	Cincheu	143	Cuniagelherben M.	176		
Cayana	304	Cinquen	146	Curazoa	280	E.	
———— River	305	Cirangapatam	113	CURDISTAN	51		
Caypoumo R.	117	Cithebib	171	Curiga P.	109		
Cedes	29	Ciudad de los Reyes	285	Cusco	297	EAST-INDIES	83
Celebes I.	129	Ciudad dos Reyes	295	Cuyo or Chuchyto	324	Ebal M.	30
———— City	ibid.	Ciudad Real	268	Cyprus I.	12	Edeffa	47
Celet R.	177			Cyzicus	6	Edom or Adam	32
Cento Pozzi	171	Chimbebas Pop.	218			Edomites	24
Cennereth	28	Coast of Fishing	115			Edrai	28
Ceram I.	131	———— Gold	208			EGYPT	178
Cerika	80	———— Grain	ibid.			———— Lower	ibid.
Ceuta	174	———— Ivory	ibid.			———— Middle	188
Ceylon I.	125	———— Slaves	210			———— Upper	190
Chabol	27	———— Cafres Gen.	218	D. Abir	36	Eitrat	171
Chakan or Chamak	80	———— Prop.	219	Dabul	110	Elabass or Heliobass	104
Chalcedon	5	Cochao or Keccio	122	Dacca	104	Elasa	36
CHALDAA	46, 47	Cocha I.	280	Daghestan P.	59	Elbasan	21
Chale	109	Cochin K. and C.	109	Damant	17	Elbir	47
Chancheu	145	Cochinchina	122	Damaon	100	Elcatif	44
Chandish P.	105	———— C.	123	Damare	43	Elephantino I.	100
Change	147	Cogni	11	Damascus	18	El-Fium	190
Changte	146	Col de Mudajarez	179	Dambea P. and C	199	Elhamma	184
Changxa	ibid.	COLCHIS	57	Damietta	188	Eikath	27
Chantebon P.	119	Collis Achillæ	34	Damna	28	Eitece	35
Chaoheu	147	Columba	126	Damut P. and C.	200	Elymais	73
Chao-Hien	145	Com	71	Dan	27	Emath	27
Chaque R.	283	Comagre	283	DAN Tribe	35	Emaus	31
Charabepa P. and C.	41	Comana	10	Dancala	198	Enienbade	98
Charabon	128	Comani P.	208	Dancation M.	199	Emouy I.	147
Los Charcas	297	COMANIA	59	Dankalen	103	Endor	29
Charles Town	244	Comorin Cape	108	Darbegerd	76	Endromit	7
Chasor	34	Comota Fort	309	Dardanus	6	Engaddi	34
Chatigan	104	Comotage P.	117	Darha P. and C.	195	Engannim	29
Chativero	113	Conceicao	310	———— R.	192	England New	238
Chatzan	99	Conception	271	Darien	248	Echadda	29
Chaul	111	———— in Brasil	317	Davis's Straights	219	Ennon	30
Chaus P.	174	Coaspoly	112	Dauphin's Fort	222	Ephesus	8
Chaxumo	199	CONGO	211	Dauria P.	82	Ephra	30
Chekiam P.	145	———— Prop.	213	Dealen	194	EPHRAIM Tribe	ibid.
Chetipore	101	Connecticut P.	239	Dec I.	200	Ephron	38
Chiagare	9	Conradsburgh P.	208	Decan K.	109	Ephisa	29
Chiametlan P.	255	Constantina P. and C.	180	Dedes M.	171	Erack-Agemi P.	70
Chiampa K. and C.	123	Coracas Fort	286	Defarzo	199	Erat	77
Chiapa P.	267	Corantia	80	Delaca I.	203	Erengabad	112
———— City	268	Coras	ibid.	Delly P. and C.	97	Erivan	52
Chiapeses Pop.	ibid.	Corazema	119	Dembea L.	199	Errif	175
Chicanga P.	219	Cordoru	318	Denmark New	337	Erzerum	52
Chioucheu	145	Corisca I.	212	Deod M.	200	Eschol	35
CHILI	323	Coro	285	Depfan	199	Esebon	32
———— Prop. P.	324	Coromandel P.	113	Derbent	68	Eskeriff or Glerif	70
Chiloe I.	328	Corozani	28	Desscada I.	279	Eski-Hisar	9
CHINA	136	Corfe Cape	209	Dhafar or Taclob	43	Eski-Stamboul	6
Chinchem	145	Corupa	309	Diamond Mines	112	Espiritu Sancto Cape	313
Chinding	143	Costa Rica P.	271	DIARBECK	45, 46	———— Town	ibid.
Chingan	145	Cotate	108	Diarbequir	47	Esquimaux P.	233
Chingtu	146	Cotatis	59	Dibore	31	Essab P.	184
Chinkiang	145	Couco P.	178	Diego Ramirez I.	335	Essekebe R.	305
Chiongon	9	———— M. and C.	ibid.	Diemens Land	ibid.	Esterabad P.	77
Chiquito	298	Coulam K. and C.	108	Digligy Neur	127	Estece or Talavera	318
Chitor P. and C.	101	Coulour	112	St. Dimitri	7	Esteiro	309
Chirazoul	51	Cranganor K. and C.	109	Dingisley	9	Estotiland	229, 334
Chiutaia	9	Cruftina	80	Dinhabath	36	Estuca Ter.	195
Chizico	6	St. Cruz I.	278	Dio I. and C.	101	Etechemins Pop.	286
Chocolococha	296	St. Cruz de la Sierra	299	Diospolis	30	Los Evangelistos I.	328
Chocoporo	70	Ctesiphon	51	Diul K. and C.	99	Euphrates R.	45
Chokium	146	Cuba I.	275	Doch	31	St. Eustace I.	278
Chonas	9	Cubagua I.	280	Doltabat	105	Euxine Sea	59
St. Christophers I.	278	Cucuran P.	109	St. Domingo	275		
St. Christoval	287	Cabulata	293	Dominga I.	279		
St. Christoval de Laguna	221	Culuacan P.	254	Dongo P. and C.	215		
Chuchuyto	324	Cumana P. and Gulph	286	Dora	30		
Chunching	146	Gumbava I.	129	El Dorado	304		
				Dothaim or Dothan	28		



## The TABLE.

F.		Galilee	25	Gonzalo de Uma	311	Hain el Chalo	174
Fago I.	222	Gamala	28	Good Hope Cape	219	Hainan I.	146
Famagusta	13	Gamararis	36	Gor P.	103	Hainliwar or Air el Ginum	175
Famagoria	10	Gambianet	199	Gorgona	199	Halicarnassus	8
Fantyn P.	209	Gamma	130	— I.	221	Hamadan	71
Farcala R.	193	Ganeta de Jesus	199	Gorno or Quorno	51	Hamath	24. 27
Farilhoens I.	218	Gangara K. and C.	205	Gort	253	Hamcheu	149
Faristhan P.	73	Gangea	68	Gory	56	Hammameth	183
Fascalo P. and C.	200	Gangling	146	Gowra	104	Hamon	27
Fategar P.	ibid.	Gani	112	Goyame R.	200	Hamse	11
Fat-Valley	27	Ganking	145	Goyana	310	Hangcheu	146
St. Fe	217. 319	Ganxgun	146	Goz	170	Hanjang	ibid.
— de Bogota	287	Gauga K.	197	Gozen	34	Haregold P. and C.	178
— de Antiochia	288	Garazu	311	Grain-Coast or Malagata	208	Harware	103
Felimba	82	Garbia P.	184	Granada New P.	287	Harma or Horma	35
Ferabaut or Ferahbat	70	Garde	229	— I.	280	Haroseth	27
Ferbad	77	Gared	171	Gran Canaria	221	Harpel	51
Ferer M.	200	Garet P.	175	Grand Cairo	188	Hascora P.	171
Fernand de Neronha I.	327	Garion M.	184	Griga I.	135	Hasor	27. 34
Fernandez I.	328	Garfis	175	Groenland	229. 334	Haffera	105
Fernando Po. I.	222	Garzopa K. and C.	110	Gleriff	70	Havana	276
Ferro I.	220	Gafera	30	Guadalajara	254	Hanchung	144
Fettipore	97	Gath	34	— Prop.	256	Hayaman	42
Fettyabad	98	Gaulon	28	Guadalupe I.	179	Hayr	196
Feru P.	208	Gaza	23. 24	Guadareri	112	Hea Pr.	170
Feusue L.	144	Gazer	30	Guadel	76	Heber Tent	29
FEZ	172	Geanchen	145	Guaden Ter.	194	Hebron	23. 24
Fezzen Ter.	193	Gehud	102	Guadiborba R.	176	St. Helena I.	124. 222
Fida P.	210	Gelo	34	Guagam I.	135	Heliabaf or Praya	104
Fionda	11	Genehoa K.	207	Guagida	177	Helon	30
Fishing-Coast	115	Genelar Ter.	28	Gualata P. and C.	207	Hemsa	11
Fium	190	St. George Fort	114	Gualcor P. and C.	102	Henan	122
Fixtdle	171	— de la Mina P.	208	Guam I.	135	Herat in Arab.	42
Flores I.	129	GEORGIA	55	Guamacho Valley	296	— or Kiat	in
Florida	247	Gerar or Gergesa	28	Guamanga	ibid.	Persia	77
Fochen	147	Gerazim M.	30	Guanahani I.	274	Hermits I.	339
Foggia	7	Gerbes I.	184	Guancavelica-Mines	297	Heshbon	32
Fogora	199	Gergeshites	24	Guargala Ter.	194	Hevites	24
Fokien P.	147	Germian P.	9	Guatemala Government	267	Hiencheu	146
Fons Ethiopis	36	Gerlon	28	— Pr.	269	Hierro I.	220
Forbifbers Straights	229	Gellur	ibid.	— City	ibid.	Hilanoones Pop.	134
Formosa I.	147	Gethremmon	30. 31. 34	Guava Ter.	293	Himiffa A.	192
Formoso R.	211	Getlamane	33	Guaxaca Prov. and Vall.	262	Hindowns P. and C.	99
Fort William	104	Gezir or Gezira	48	Guayra P.	319	Hinete	144
St. Francisco de Maranha	309	Gezala	172	Guber R.	206	Hionom Vall.	33
— de Quito	293	Ghir	192	Guedria Fort	114	Hippos	28
— de Vittoria	297	Gibbethon or Gabbathon	35	Guevetlan	268	Hisara Eski	9
Frootiniac	234	Gibead or Gabaa	32	Guamares Pop.	312	— Sultan	ibid.
Fverteventura	221	Gibeon or Gabeon	ibid.	GUINEA	208	Hittites	24
Funcheu	144	Gigeri P. and C.	180	— Prop.	209	Hogipore	103
Fungiang	ibid.	Gilal P. and C.	69. 70	— Nova	131. 315	Hokien	143
Funning	143	Gilboa M.	29	Guligien I.	130	Holon	34
Fuza	188	Gilead	28	Gumanapi I.	ibid.	Hojang	144
		— Land	31	Gurchito	102	Homgikau	98
		— Jabeth	28	Guria P.	57	Honan P.	144
		— Ramoth	31	Gurial P.	58	Honang	ibid.
		Gilgal or Galgala	32	Guthesizar	9	Honduras P.	270
		Gilolo I.	131	Guzula or Gezula	172	Horeb M.	42
		Ginana	304	Guzurat P.	99	Horn I.	335
		Gingi P. and C.	114			Hotentois Pop.	219
		Gingiro K.	217			Howafch A.	203
		Ginopoli	10			Hoycheu	146
		Gion or Gihon M.	33			Huan M.	179
		Girafamor M.	179			Huangcheu	146
		Giscala	27			Hubet	177
		Goa	110			Hudson's Straight and Bay	229
		Goga	101			Hued el Quiber R.	177
		Golconda K.	111			Huguely or Ouguely	104
		— Fort	112			Huillons Pop.	326
		Gold-Coast	208			Humaubar P. and C.	178
		Goletta P. and C.	182			Hungking	146
		Gombron	75			Huquam P.	145
		Gomera	175			Hurons Lake	230
		— I.	221			Hispaniola	274 P.
		Gonzales Cape	212				
G.							
GAbia	32						
GAbula	17. 27						
Gabbathon	35						
Gabeon	32						
GAD Tribe	31						
Gademcz Ter.	194						
Gago R. and C.	206						
Gaibam R.	212						
Galaad or Gilead	28						
— Mount	24						
Galas Pop.	200						
Galgal	30						
Galgala	32						
Gale or Punta	126						



**V**

—P.	234	Jihor	119	Kandish P.	105	Los Lhanos de Carera	285
Hyrcanum C.	30	Jihua	80	Kanduana	13	Libanus	24
		St. Iteonic de Copotecas	262	Kapibari R.	311	Libna	34
			81	Karakantaka	103	Licofia	13
J.			312	Kars	32	Lidda	30
—Abesh-Gilead	28		234	Kedar	27	Ligor P. and C.	119
Jabi P.	20		133	—Tents	ibid.	Lima P.	294
Jackem	111	—TENTIA	57, 58	Kedemoth	32	—Vall. and C.	295
Jacob's Well		—TENTIA	324	Keila or Ceila	34	Limgang	146
Jaffa		—TENTIA	115	Kekmishe I.	75	Limpo	145
Jaffnapatam		—TENTIA	107	Kherman P. and C.	76	Lingcheu	146
Jagznet		—TENTIA	83	Khoemus P.	77	Linkiang	145
St. Jago I.		—TENTIA	89	Kiaking	145	Livias	31
—River	252	—TENTIA	128	Kiamoin	124	Lomboc I.	129
—de Cuba	275	—TENTIA	208	Kiamfi P.	145	Londres	318
—de Cuba	324	—TENTIA	218	Kincheu	ibid.	Louifiana	234, 235
—del Estero	318	—TENTIA	ibid.	Kingcheu	ibid.	Lourebander	99
—de Guayaquil	393	—TENTIA	11	Kinghoa	147	Louvo	119
—de Leon	285	—TENTIA	146	Kingkoa	145	Loxa	293
—de los Montes	294	—TENTIA	42	Kings I.	335	Loyoia	294
—de los Valles	296	—TENTIA	99	Kirjath Arba	34	Luban I.	133
Jagos Pop.	217	—TENTIA	135	—Jearim	ibid.	Lucayo I.	274
Jahfor or Jazer	31	—TENTIA	212	—Sepher	36	Lucheu	145
Jalac	198	—TENTIA	28	Kirin	81	St. Lucia I.	221, 279
Jalischian M.	82	—TENTIA	21, 35	Kiuncheu	145	Luconia I.	132
Jallamaka	102	—TENTIA	118, 119	Kom or Com	71	Luen A.	144
Jalose Pop.	207	—TENTIA	23	Konni Pop.	82	Luix'in	ibid.
Jamaica I.	276	—TENTIA	28	Korkora	200	Lutay I.	133
Jamba P. and C.	102	—TENTIA	235	Kusa	51	Lymesco	13
Jambe K. and C.	128	—TENTIA	52			Lycia	11
James R.	243	—TENTIA	171				
Jamnia	35	—TENTIA	11				
Janeiro R.	313	—TENTIA	221				
—Town	ibid.	—TENTIA	ibid.				
Jangcheu	146	—TENTIA	129				
Jangjan	145	—TENTIA	177				
Jangiang	146	—TENTIA	6				
Jangoma K.	117	—TENTIA	ibid.				
JAPON	150	—TENTIA	7				
Jaquenette	101	—TENTIA	6				
Jala	32	—TENTIA	71				
Jalques	76	—TENTIA	9				
Jalitten	194	—TENTIA	310				
Java I.	128	—TENTIA	ibid.				
Jazer	31	—TENTIA	319				
Jconium	11	—TENTIA	195				
Jdauquerit Ter.	195	—TENTIA	97				
IDUMÆA	25, 36	—TENTIA	328				
Jebian	30	—TENTIA	135				
Jebufites	24	—TENTIA	296, 324				
Jecfe	144	—TENTIA	296				
Jechmah	31	—TENTIA	262				
Jeconam	29	—TENTIA	21, 25				
Jehanabad	103	—TENTIA	23				
Jehosaphat Valley	33	—TENTIA	21				
Jekauat	103	—TENTIA	32				
Jekutskoi	82	—TENTIA	33				
Jeloure	102	—TENTIA	171				
Jemman or Hayaman	42	—TENTIA	28				
Jeneziskoy	81	—TENTIA	143				
Jenping	147	—TENTIA	146				
Jenupar P. and C.	97	—TENTIA	143				
Jeremoth	34	—TENTIA	209				
Jericho	32	—TENTIA					
JERSEY New	240	—TENTIA					
Jerusalem	21, 33	—TENTIA					
Jesselmere P. and C.	99	—TENTIA					
JESSO-LAND	145, 335	—TENTIA					
Jessual P.	103	—TENTIA					
Jether	34	—TENTIA					
Jethlon	32	—TENTIA					
Jesrael	29, 34	—TENTIA					
—Valley	29	—TENTIA					
Jfran Ter.	195	—TENTIA					



Mamipatam	105	Mellila	175	Mons Chriffi	27	New Guinea	131. 335
Manere Plain and Oak	34	Memabo K.	127	Montferate I.	279	—Holland	335
Man	52	Memphis	188	Morocco K.	169	—Jersey	240
Maner I.	126	Mendoza	324	—City	170	—Mexico	250
Manar K.	117	MENGRELIA	55, 57	Moflagan P. and C.	179	—North Wales	335
MANASSEH Tribe	27, 29	Menoufia P.	187	Motir I.	131	—Orange Fort	109
Manchezpatan	112	Mentefele P.	11	Moulen	105	—Segovia	286
Mandinga K.	207	Mephat	32	Mount of the Moon	218	—Spain	253
Mando	102	Mequeb Huan	175	—Sun	171	—Valencia	286
Mandrael K.	117	Mequelha	188	Moufoles Pop.	217	—Wales	229
Manilha	132	Meroceraca I.	199	Mouful	48	—Xeres	286
Maon	34	Mesdin	48	Mozambique P. and C.	204	—York	240
Mara	178	Mergeren	82	Mudejares	180	—Zealand	335
Maracaiibo Lake	285	Merida	253, 287	Mujaco K.	216	Newfoundland	273
Maracapan	ibid.	Mefa or Tezar	175	Multan P. and C.	98	Nicaragua P. and L.	270
Maracapi	317	MESOPOTAMIA	46	Munia	190	Nicaria I.	12
Maranhao Cap.	309	Mefla	170	Muterta P. and C.	109	St. Nicholas I.	221
—Isle and Town	ibid.	Meffal	27	Myndus	8	Nichor	6
Margarita I.	280	Meffilipi R.	234, 235	Myra	11	Nicopolis	34
St. Maria I.	323	Meteleno I.	12			Nicolia	13
—del Agoflo	327	Mevat P.	103			Nicoys	271
Marian I. or Ladrones	135	MEXICO	253			Nienchen	145
Marigalanta I.	279	—Government	257			Nienchen	ibid.
Marmora I.	6	—City	ibid.			Nieucheu P.	81
Marofch	11	—P. and C.	259, 260			Nievis I.	278
Marfa	182	—New	250			Nile R.	200, 224
Marta K.	109	Mezrata P.	185			Nimpo	145
Martaban K. and C.	116	Mezuna	178			Ninchi	ibid.
St. Martha R.	288	Mezzab Ter.	194			Nincritia	81
St. Martin I.	278	Miamis F.	234			Nineveh	52
Martin Vaz. I.	327	Miatbir M.	175			Nining	144
Martinico I.	279	Miathir or Cento	Pozzi			Nilbis or Nibin	48
Mary-Land	242		171			Niulhan P.	81
Mashate I. —	133	St. Michael	318			Nob or Nobe	32
Mafcaloth	27	Michael de Poyuka	311			Nombre de Dios	283
Mafchate	44	Micile or Mifile	180			Nova Guinea	131, 335
Mafchid	77	Midianites	24, 31			Nova Zembla	335
Mafpha	31	Migiale	203			NUBIA	197
—Ter.	27	St. Miguel	287, 318			—C.	198
Mafphila	32	—de Piura	293			Nudaea	104
Maffachusset P.	238	—de Ribera	295			Nueflra Senora de Carvalleda	286
Maffada	34	Miletus	8			—de Conceirao	310
Maffayatan P.	270	Milians P. and C.	178			—de la Fe	317
Maffee	103	Mina R.	176			—de Loretto	320
Mafgara M.	175	Mindanao I.	124			—das Neves	310
Mafman K.	218	—City	ibid.			—de la Paz.	286, 298
Mafaran	128	Mindoro I.	133			Nueva Xeres	286
Mafulipatan	112	Minio	190			Nun Terr.	195
St. Matthew I.	222	Miraflores	295				
Mazgerol	101	Mitombo K.	208				
Maurices Town in Brazil	311	Mizpah or Mafphila	32				
	125	Mizpeth	31				
Mauritius I.	221	Moabites	24, 31				
Mayo I.	212, 213	Moanto K.	117				
Mayumba P. and C.	171	Mochu P. and C.	43, 44				
Mazzagam	179	Mochu I.	328				
Mazzagorn	ibid.	Modio	35				
Mazzalquivir	69, 70	Modra K.	212				
Mazanderan P. and C.	202	Mogador	170				
	99	MOGOLISTAN	89				
Mazuz I.	99	MOLUCCA Ifles	130				
Mearta	42	Momua	194				
Mecca P. and C.	258, 259	Monasterio	183				
Mechoacan P.	32	Monbaza K. and C.	204				
Medaba	43	Monbeka	311				
Medina	212	Mondoue	105				
Medra K. and C.	178	Mongale K.	205				
Medua or Mara	180	Mongalion Pop.	82				
Mefile	176	Mongoapa R.	310				
Megeza M.	175	Mongul	80				
Megezo	183	Monica Mines	220				
Mehedia P.	34	Monocemugi	216				
Mekkeda	114	MONOMOTAPA	ibid.				
Mefipur	204	—Prop.	217, 218				
Mefinde K. and C.	207	—City	218				
Mefli P. and C.							



## vii

P.		Pergamus	7			Rio de la Plata P.	318
		Peria	17			— River	ibid.
		Pernambuco Cap.	310	Q.		— Secco	192
		Persepolis	74			Rifantagan	101
P.		PERSIA	60	Q	Uamoy I.	Rojomahel	104
P.	294	Persian Sea or Gulph	76		Quamfi P.	Roni P.	9
P.	99	PERU	290		Quancheu	Roob	27
P.	120	— Prop.	294		Quantum P.	Rofetto	183
P.	8	Peffinus	9		Quaqua	Rotas	104
P.	7	Petra	42		Quebec		
P.	105	Petty-pole	114		Queda		
P.	114	Phanuel	31		Queicheu		
P.	128	Pharannica	36		Quemado Port		
P.	287	Pharos	118		Quenag Tcr.		
P.	220	Philadelphia	8		Queyang		
P.	12	— in America	241		Qulen		
P.	17	Philippina	133		Quienchang		
P.	6	PHILIPPINE ISLANDS	132		Quiloa R. and C.		
P.	109	PHILISTINES	35		Quincfa P.		
P.	36	PHOENICIA	17		Quinte		
P.	283	Phogor M.	31		Quiri		
P.	109	Pieply	104		Quito		
P.	133	Pifgah M.	31		Los Quito P.		
P.	27	Pitana	7		Quoampin		
P.	214	Pingco	146		Quoangfin		
P.	258	Pingiang	144		Quoangtung		
P.	143	Pinginen	146		Quoja R.		
P.	146	Pingliang	144		Quongfi		
P.	ibid.	Piojung	146		Quongte		
P.	13	Pitana	7				
P.	309	Pitange	312				
P.	ibid.	Pitau P. and C.	123				
P.	133	Plain of Saba	29				
P.	315	La Plata	297	R.			
P.	316	— P.	318				
P.	317	— River	318				
P.	319	Plimouth P. New Eng.	239				
P.	317	Plinthine	188				
P.	320	Podiagabro	109				
P.	109	Polar Countries	229				
P.	310	Pontichery	114				
P.	ibid.	Popayan P. and C.	288				
P.	286	Popo Port	210				
P.	298	Porca K. and C.	109				
P.	105	Porco	298				
P.	295	Port Royal	276, 277				
P.	204	Porto Bello	283				
P.	76	— Constanzo	13				
P.	288	— Calvo	311				
P.	326	— Sancto I.	220				
P.	119, 120	— Seguro Cape	312				
P.	11	— Town	313				
P.	104	Posingaram	120				
P.	101	Potafi	298				
P.	103	Pourelouc P. and C.	118				
P.	243	Praya	104				
P.	104	Prestor John	202				
P.	311, 314	Princes I.	222				
P.	214	Providence I.	274				
P.	293	Prurop	104				
P.	268	Ptolemais	18				
P.	328	Puebla de los Angeles	261				
P.	116	Pueblo Novo	298				
P.	142	Puerto Quemado	296				
P.	113	— Rico I.	276				
P.	28	— Vicjo	293				
P.	214	Pulo Condore	127				
P.	9	Pulorin I.	130				
P.	97	Puloway I.	ibid.				
P.	328	Puna I.	328				
P.	175	Punta Galla	126				
P.	241	— Pedro Cape	310				
P.	114	Purbola	103				
P.	31	Puttans P.	98				
P.	ibid.	Pyramids of Egypt	189				
P.	11						







JK

## An



# An Alphabetical

# T A B L E

Of the Ancient Latin Names of Places in  
EUROPE, ASIA and AFRICA, mentioned  
in this Work, with the Modern  
Names Apposite.

Note, The Figures with a Asterisc, denote the Pages of the Second Part.

			Aletium.	Lece	300	— Helvetix.	Baden.	241
			Alexandria.	Scanderoon.	* 16	— Sextiz.	Aix.	117
			— Egypti.	—	* 188	— Solis.	Bath	11
			— Statellorum.	—	260	— Statellz.	Acq'd	259
<b>A</b> bellada.	Apelby	37	Allobreges Pop.	—	228. 242	Aquarius Vicus	Vico.	346
Abbatiscella.	Appenzel	235	Alotensis Ager.	Annis	95	Aquila.	Aquapendente	287
Abone.	Aventon	18	Alone.	Old Taron	39	Aquilonia.	La Ccdagna	296
Abtravans.	Abtrav. of Ruan R.	51	Alone.	Alicant	327	Aquinum.	Buda	437
Abforus	Ofero T.	274	Alternum.	Pescara	299	Aquinum Caput.	Capaccio	297
Abydus.	Abido	* 6	Amasia.	—	* 10	Aquisgranum.	Aix-la Chapelle	227
Acri.	Amis	344	Amasia.	Embsen	224	Ara Ubiorum.	Bonne	181
Achaia.	Græcæ	448. 453	Amastis.	Martarg	185	Arabia Deserta.	—	* 41
Acherontia.	Acetenza	297	Amastis.	Semastre.	* 9	— Fœlix.	—	* 42
Acra.	Velez Gomera	* 175	Amathus.	Limisso	* 13	— Petra.	—	* 41
Actium.	Capit Figli	452	Amathus.	—	* 14	Arachosia.	—	* 69
Acula.	Aquapendente	287	Amavus M.	—	74	Arbeia.	Irby	38
Ad Aniam.	Wintham	23	Ambianensis Ager.	Amiensis.	37	Arclatum.	Ales.	118
Addima.	Teddelex	* 170	Amboglana.	Ambleside	452	Arvacorum Urbs.	Segovia	333
Ad Pontem.	Pantem.	28	Ambracia.	Larsa	108	Argentomagus.	Argentum	97
Adrumetum.	Safa	* 183	Amilhanum.	Asilnau	* 9	Argentomum.	Argentum	72
Aduatia Tangorum.	Tongres.	145	Amisus.	Simiso	450	Argentoratun.	Strasbourg	191
Adura.	Aire.	109	Amphibolis.	Embili	* 177	Argentina.	—	97
Adurni Portus.	Edefington	16	Ampylogus.	Suffemar R.	154	Argi Mons.	Montargis	55
Ædri Pop. Gall.	—	99	Amstelodamum.	Amsterdam	74	Argita.	Lake Swilly	462
Ægihum.	Grigis I.	305	Amviani.	Amiens	* 9	Argos Adrianos.	Mycene	* 65. * 76
Ælia Capititolina.	Jerusalem	* 21	Amurium.	Chengon	308	Aria.	—	* 33
Ælii Pons.	Eland	39	Anas.	Guadiana R.	201	Ariconium.	Kenchester	* 52
Æmate.	Jayca	462	Anasium.	Ena	* 4	Armenia.	Turcomana	87
Æmathia.	Macedon	449	Anatolia.	—	19	Armorica.	Bretagne	* 70
Æmonia.	Theffaly	449. 452	Ancalites Pop.	Oxon.	* 9	Arfatia.	Cashin	345
Æolis.	Liparean Isles	305	Ancyra.	Angouri	94	Artigis.	Alabama	105
Æolis	—	* 7	Andegarum.	Angers.	137	Arvernum.	Clermont	345
Æqui Pop.	—	283	Anderida.	—	* 7	Ascia.	Guefcar	* 1
Acra.	Candia I.	454	Andoverpum.	Antwerp	79	ASIA.	—	38
Æthalia.	Elba I.	305	Andromittum.	Endromit.	109	Asieni Forum.	Ferrara	291
Africa Propria.	—	* 165	Andromatum.	Langres.	116	Aspalathum.	Spalata	* 11
Agatha.	Agde	115	Angeriacum.	St. Jean d' Angely	443	Aspendus.	—	* 7
Agelocum.	Littlebarrow	29	Anicium.	Puy	* 7	Affodum.	Medina S. dor.	* 45. * 51
Agendicum Senonum.	Senas.	79	Annum.	Enguedine	* 17	Affor.	—	* 208
Agilymba.	—	* 165	Antandros.	St. Demetri	* 11	Assyria.	Curiffon	* 6
Agilymba.	Zanguebar	* 204	Antiochia.	Antioch	100	Astaboras.	Tacaze R.	* 177
Agigentum.	Gergenti	302	Antiochia Pifidiz.	—	119	Astacilis.	Tefezare	* 13
Aladules Pop.	—	* 11	Antiochene.	—	285	Astypylæ I.	Stampala	453
Aladulia.	—	* 10	Antiffiodorum.	Auxerre	114	Athens.	Athens.	451
Alana.	Riv. Alas	51	Antipolis.	Antibes	* 180	Athos Mons.	Monte Santo.	* 195. 196
Alanz.	Valgues	70	Auxur.	Terracina	340	Atlas M.	—	130
Alanti Offium.	—	13	Amapiz.	Pamiers	* 183	Atrebatum.	Arras	* 11
Alanus.	Alas	39	Apfar.	Stefa	299	Atrelia.	Sat. Alad	272
Alba Belgaria	Belgrade	469	Aphrodifia.	Cadix	120	Atteste.	—	7
— Pompeia.	Alba	259	Aphrodifium.	Africa	300	Attrebrates Pop.	Brit.	109
— Julia.	Weiffenturg	442	Aprutium.	Abruzzo	244	Atufatem.	—	96
— Ruffia.	Mufcovy	413	Apta Julia Vulgentium.	—	355	Avenio.	Avignon	120
Albania.	Epirus	449. 451	Apulum.	Ascoli	—			Avendi
Albiga.	Alby	113	Aquz Gratianz.	Aix.	—			
Albintermelium.	Vintimiglia	257	— Flaviz.	Chaves.	—			
Alectum.	Dundee	51						
Abula. Avila	—	335						



Avendi Castrum.	Remirout	125	Boccanum.	Morocco	* 170	Cameriacum.	Chambery	244
Auga.	Eu	69	Bodincornagus.	Casal	259	Canganum.	Lbyn Promont.	43
Augusta.	London	22	Bodotria.	Edinburgh-Fryth	51	Cangi Pop. Britan.	—	32
— Bona	Troyes	77	Boetica.	Part of Spain.	308	Canina.	Epirus	452
— Bracara	Braga	253	Boii Pop.	—	497	Canonium.	Wristle	23
— Daciz.	Fassy	463	Bonium.	Banchar	32	Canrium.	—	7
— Emeriti.	Merida	337	Bononia.	Bologna	291	Cantæ Pop. Scot.	—	51
— Pax.	Badajoz	337	Borbetomagus.	Worms	191	Cantium.	Kent	7
— Successionum.	Soissons	86	Borcovicu.	Borwick	39	— Promontorium.	Fireland	17
— Prætoria.	Acusle	245	Boreum Prora.	—	55	Canuceis	Sargel	172
— Taurinorum.	Turin	253	Boscum Ducis.	Bois-le-Duc	138	Cappadocia	—	* 10
— Trevirorum.	Triers	182	Bovina.	Byne R.	55	Cappadocicus Pontus.	—	ibid
— Vagiennorum.	Saluzzo	256	Bovianum.	Bolano	299	Caput Aquium.	Capaccio	297
— Vindelicorum.	Augsburg.	195	Bovium.	Boverton	41	Caramania.	—	* 65. 76
Augusti Lacus.	Lugo.	316	Bracchium.	Burgh	35	Caria.	—	* 8
Augustobrica.	Cind. Rodrigo	335	Brage.	Broughton	13	Caroutum.	Chartres	93
Augustodunum.	Autun	99	Branonium.	Worcester	31	Carpathus Mons.	—	340
Bibracte.	—	—	Bremetacum.	Overburrow	36	Carpathus.	Scarpanto I.	* 13
Augustometum.	Clermont	105	Bremonium.	Branton	38	Carpetani Pop.	—	328
Aula Quiriaca.	Guerande	88	Brigantes Pop. Brit.	—	7	Carrea.	Cherusco	254
Uulis	—	454	— Pop. Hibern.	—	55	Carthaa.	Charau	* 47
Aurasio.	Orange	120	Britannia Prima.	S. part of England	7	Cartena.	Mistaga.	* 179
Aurea Chersonesus.	Malacca	* 120	— Secunda.	Wales	ibid.	Cartena.	Zilif R.	* 196
Aurelia.	Orleans	92	— Maxima	Cœ-aricenis.	N.	Carthage.	—	* 182
Aurelianensis Urbs.	—	—	—	England	ibid.	Caaba.	—	* 183
Aurelianum.	Lintz	201	Brivates Portus.	Brest	90	Calpiz Pylæ.	Derbent	* 68
Aureopolis.	Ingolstadt	197	Brixellium.	Bersello	264	Calpii Pop.	—	* 70
Auschii.	Aux	109	Brixia.	Brescia	273	Castellum Arianorum.	—	113
Ausoba Fl. Hiberniæ.	—	55	Brunopolis.	Brunswick	218	— Aquarium.	Baden	241
Ausonia.	Italy	248	Bubelix.	Bautzen	215	— Cattorum.	Cassel	185
Auten.	Aterith	55	Eugella.	Bielta	255	Castra Alata.	Edinburgh	51
Autricum.	Chartres	93	Buifa.	Oran	* 179	— Constantina.	Contance.	70
Auxunum.	Ofina.	289	Bunatia.	Beau-Castle	51	— Exploratorium.	Old Carlisle	38
Axantus.	Ushant I.	90	Burdigala.	Bordeaux	107	— Regina.	Ratisbon.	198
Uxantiffena.	—	—	Burrium.	Brynbiga	41	Castrum Albienfe.	Casires	113
Axelodunum.	Hexam	99	Busiris.	Bocbiri	* 188	Catalaunum.	Chaulons	77
	B.		Bathrotum.	Butrinto	452	Catactonium.	Cattarick	35
			Bythinia.	Becfargil	* 5	Catini.	Cathness	51
			Byzacena.	—	* 166	Catticuchiani Pop. Brit.	—	7
			Byzantium.	Constantinople	463	Cauci Pop. Hibern.	—	55
				C.		Caurium.	Coria	337
Babenberga.	Bamberg	188	Abillonium.	Chaalins	99	Cauros.	Andros I.	465
Babylon.	Elugo	* 41	— Cabyra.	Suvas.	* 10	Celama.	Ned Roma	* 178
Bactriana.	—	65. * 76	Cadomum.	Caen	70	Celiabraga.	Brag-nza	335
Baleares Insulæ.	—	346	Cadurcum.	Cahors	107	Celinus.	Kilian	51
Bannavenna.	Weeden on Street	27	Casaria	Caifar	* 10	Celtæ Pop.	—	349
Barontes M.	—	* 68	Mazica	—	—	Celviacum.	Chaunes	74
Batava Castrum.	Passau	198	Casatea Insula.	Jersey I.	56	Cenionis Ostium.	Falmouth	8
Baravia.	Holland	153	— Julia.	Algier	* 179	Cenomenum.	—	93
Beggia.	—	* 183	— Tessara.	—	* 198	Vindinum.	Mans.	93
Belatia.	Vera	345	Casaris Burgus.	Cherbourg	70	Centrones Pop.	—	242
Belerium.	Lands-End	8	Casaromagus.	Beauvais	85	Centumcellæ.	Civita Vecchia	286
Belgæ Pop. Britan.	—	7	Casaromagus.	Dunmow	23	Cephalonia Insula.	—	462
BELGIUM.	Netherlands	125	Caslorotium.	Gisors	69	Ceramus.	—	* 8
Bellicum.	Bellay	101	Calagurris.	Calabora	333	Ceretanorum Jaga.	Puyceda	325
Bellisama.	—	36	Calaris.	Cagliari	303	Cerica.	Cathay	* 80
Bembium.	Urdhead	51	Calcatia.	Newton-kine	34	Cerones Pop. Scot.	—	38
Bennones.	—	27	Caledobecum.	Caudebec.	69	Cetobriga.	Setuval	358
Bercizoma.	Bergen-op-Zoom	138	Caledonia.	Part of Scotland	47. 51	Chalach.	Halab	* 52
Berea.	Aleppo.	* 15	Caletum.	Calais	79	Chalcedon	—	* 5
Berolinum.	Berlin	210	Calipus.	Sadao R.	352	Chalda.	Terack	* 46. 48
Berytus.	Beroth	* 17	Calitle.	Thera Zermia	465	Chersonesus Aurea.	—	* 120
Besidia.	Bisignano	298	Callirhoe.	Orsa	47	Chilonum.	Kiel	369
Desidia.	—	—	Calniacum.	Champ	87	Chineta.	Celef R.	* 177.
Betis.	Guadalquivir R.	308	Calonefus.	Belle-Isle	91	Chios.	Scio I.	* 12
Biatia.	Baeza	341	Calpe.	Gibraltar	341	Chrysothoeas.	Damascus	* 18
Bibroci Pop. Brit.	—	14	Camalodunum.	Maldon	23	Chylema.	Mina R.	* 176
Bibracte.	Autun	99	Cambodunum.	Almondbury	34	Cilicia.	—	* 11
Bipontium.	Deux-ponts	191	Camboritum.	Cambridge	26	Gilurnum.	Cilcester	39
Birgantes Pop. Hibern.	—	55	Cameracensi Ager.	Cambrsie	142	Cimbri Pop.	—	365. 372
Birtha.	Bir.	* 47	Cameracum.	Cambray	ibid.	Cimbrica Chersonesus.	—	365
Bisuntia.	Bezancon	101	Calamina.	Meliapur	114	Cimmeriz Palus.	—	481
Biteria.	Befiers.	114				Cimmerium Kerky	—	481
Biturix.	Bourges	96				Cirta Numidia.	Constantz	* 180
Blani Pop. Hibern.	—	55				Cistertium.	Citeah	99
Blatum Bulgium.	Balnfs	38					Civitas	
Blesense Castrum.	Blois	92						
Blestium.	Old Foari	33						



Civitas Offimionum. St. Pol de Leon

Claron.	Glaris	234
Claros I.	—	* 12
Claudiopolis.	Castromena	* 9
Clavenna.	Chirveena	237
Claventum.	Southampton	13
Clanula.	Slays	135
Clazemene.	Oriz	* 7
Caydus.	—	* 5
Codani Pop.	—	355
Coelofyria	—	* 14
Colchios.	Atingrelia	* 55
Colonia.	Cotchester	23
Colonia Agrippina.	Calaga	181
— Augusta Arva Patrensis	—	453
— Julia Bona.	Bonne	181
— Patricia	Cardova	340
Cotophon.	—	* 7
Columbaria.	Colaniers	80
Comagena.	—	* 14, 15
Comana Pontica.	—	* 10
Conbrelonium.	Bretenham	24
Compendium.	Compeign	85
Complutum.	Alcala de Henarez	331
Concha.	Cuenca	330
Conchani Pop. Hibern.	—	55
Condatum.	Conglétes	32
Condercum	—	36
Conductum Rhedonum.	Rennes	88
Congavata.	Rose-Castle	38
Connium.	Cirencester	18
Conovius.	Conwy R.	44
Consentina.	Cosenza	298
Coosopitum }	Quimper Carentin	90
Curiofativz. }	—	—
Cotimula.	Cadix	340
Convennos.	Carvey	23
Convinensis Ager.	Coringes	11
Cocs.	Long I.	* 12
Corbantorium.	Czer Lovetack	51
Corbilium.	Nantes	88
Coreyra.	Corfu I.	275, 452
Coreyra Nigra.	Corzda	467
Corda.	—	51
Coria Damuorum.	Camelot	ibid.
Corinthus.	Gereme	461
Coriondi Pop. Hibern.	—	55
Coritani Pop. Brit.	—	7
Cornabii Pop. Scot.	—	51
Cornavii Pop. Brit.	—	7
Cornelii Forum.	Imola	291
Corstipitum.	Cambridge	39
Cosium.	Bazas	107
Cotes.	Cape Spartel	* 174
Coteum.	Chintais	* 9
Cressa.	—	8
Creta.	Cardia I.	462
Crexz.	Cherfs I.	274
Crococalana.	Arcafter	28
Cuma.	—	* 7
Cureis.	Cardia I.	452
Cumerio.	Marlbrough	12
Curista.	Vegia I.	274
Curiofativz.	Quimper-Carentin	90
Cyclades	—	464
Cydon.	Canea	464
Cyprus I.	—	* 13
Cyrenaica.	—	* 166, 185
Cyruus.	Corfica I.	304
Cyteum.	Seria.	454
Cythera.	Cerigo I.	275, 454
Cyzicus, Chizico.	Spiga, Palumi	* 5
Colonia Allobrogum	—	230

## D.

Acia.	Walachia, &c.	478
Damnii Pop. Scot.	—	47
Danmonii Pop. Brit.	—	7
Danum.	Duncasser	34
Dardiscum.	Dardan	85
Darni Pop. Hibern.	—	55
Dariotrigum Venetorum.	Vannes	97
Daurona.	Cork R.	55
Decapolis.	—	* 25
Delphi.	Castri	455
Delphi.	Delfs	157
Delphinatus.	Dauphiné	122
Delta	—	* 187
Berton.	Tertona	261
Desidiz.	Bisignano	298
Deva.	Chester	32
Deucamanorum Colonia	—	114
Dianium.	Denia	327
Dicazarchia.	Pazzoli	295
Dictum.	Digany	44
Dimetz Pop. Brit.	—	7
Dioxytopolis.	Varna	470
Dioscoridis H.	Zocotora	* 204
Diva.	Dee Riv.	51
Divio.	Dijn	98
Divedurum.	Meta	126
Dobuni Pop. Brit.	—	7
Dordrecht.	Dort	157
Doris.	—	8
Dournoviz.	Dorchester	10
Drangiana.	—	* 65, 76
Drepanum.	Trapani	302
Drosomagus.	Kempton	195
Duacum.	Doway	134
Dubris.	Dover	17
Dumna.	Fair Isl.	52
Dunam.	Dun	55
Danas Sinus.	Dunestey.	34
Duris.	Riv. in Kerry	55
Durebrovis.	Rochester	17
Durobrivz.	Dunferd	26
Duroobrivz.	—	21
Durocortorum.	Reims	78
Duroletum.	—	17
Durolitum.	Layton	23
Durostadium Batav.	Duyfster-de Wyk	163
Durofiponte.	Grimsby	26
Durotriges Pop. Bri.	—	7
Durovernum.	Canterbury	17
Dyrachium.	Durazzo	451

## E.

Elana.	Dublin	55
Eboracum.	Tork	34
Ebroicum.	Eurena	72
Ecbatana.	Tauris	* 68
Edeffa.	Orfa	* 47
Elderberga.	Heidelberg	190
Elea.	—	* 7
Elenfis.	Lepina	455
Elis.	Belvedere	459
Elorona.	Oleron	111
Elymais	—	* 73
Emeriti Augusta.	Menda	337
Ephesus.	Ajafalouth	* 8
Ephyra.	Corinth	461
Epidaphne.	Antich	* 17
Epidaurus.	Ragusa	467
Epidorium Promontorium.	Cantyre	51
Epidium.	Ila I.	52
Eporredia.	Iurea	255
Erdini Pop. Hibern.	—	55
Egetria.	Armito	453

Erythra.	Cadix	304
— I. Magador	—	* 170
Erythrazum Mare.	The Red Sea	—
Efiliffa.	Centa	* 174
Ethiopia Superior	—	* 198
Etocetum.	Wale	31
Eubœa.	Negropont	465
Exolodunum.	Issodon	97
Extensio.	Easton-nefs	24

## F.

FAnum Romanum.	St. Remo	257
Faustina Villa.	St. Edmunds-Bury	24
Fefu'z.	Flefoli	278
Fidentia.	Borgo St. Domino	263
Finni Pop.	—	381
Firmum Julium.	Motril	345
Flava Cælarientis.	The middle part of England	7
Flexia.	La Fleche	94
Floriopolis.	St. Flour	105
Fons Salutis.	Mailbron	194
Foro Julium.	Frejthe	112
Forum Asieni.	Ferrara	291
— Corneli.	Imola	291
— Julii.	Civitati ai Friuli	268
— Neronis.	Musstriers	245
Francofurta ad Moenum.	Frankfurt on the Maye	188
Franequera.	Francher	168

## G.

GA aut Varacum.	Gueret	106
Gabrosentum.	Gateshead	39
Gadeni Pop. Scot.	—	47
Gades.	Cadix	340
Gaium.	Gix	102
Galatia.	Clia-gari	* 9
Galaticus Pontus.	—	* 10
Galuza	—	* 25, 27
Gallana.	Walmick	39
Gallatum.	Whelp-Castle	37
Gallea.	Wallingford	14
Gallia Subalpina.	Piedmont	253
Gandavum.	Ghent	135
Gangara.	—	* 9
Garamantia.	—	* 165
Gariensis Ostium.	Tarmouth	25
Garocelli Pop.	—	242
Gasinonoum.	Burgh Castle	24
Gaulennz.	Brig-Casterton	29
Gedacum.	Dantick	404
Gedrosia.	—	* 65, 76
Gega aut Gaium.	Gerz	107
Genatum.	Orleans	92
Germa.	Germafle	* 9
Germanica.	—	* 19
Gefobricale-Vate.	Brest	90
Gestariacum.	Boulogne	75
Getz Pop.	—	469
Getulia.	—	* 176, 172
Gibelette.	—	* 17
Giva.	Ylli	* 177
Glanium.	Lodeve	113
Glanvoenta.	—	99
Glevum.	Gloucester	18
Glotta.	Arran	91
Gobannium.	Abergavenny	41
Gordium	—	* 9
Gortina.	Gurtina	463
Gracium.	Gracz	202
Grampius.	—	51
Granicus Fl.	—	* 10
Gratianapolis.	Grenoble	122

Guete



## xiii

Güete.	Hæte	330
Gutæ Pop.	—————	356
Gymnesia Inf.	Majorca, &c.	346
 H.		
Abitaneum.	Rifingham	39
Habrus Fluv.	—————	463
Hæmus Mons.	—————	471
Hadria.	—————	271. 299
Halis Fluv.	—————	* 10
Halicarnassus.	—————	* 8
Hamacostos.	Famagusta	* 13
Hebuda.	Skie Lewes I.	52
Hebudes.	West Isles of Scotland	ibid.
Hecatompolis.	Candia I.	462
Hecatompilos.	Ispahan.	* 71
Helicon M.	—————	456
Heliocrata.	Lorca	346
Heliopolis.	Balbec	* 19
Hellas.	Greece	448. 453
Helleviones Pop.	—————	356
Helvetica.	Switzerland	228
Hephæstiades.	Liparean Isles	305
Heptamonos.	Middle Egypt	* 188
Heraclea Ponti.	Penderachi	* 9
Herbanum.	Orvioto	287
Herbipolis.	Wurtzburg	188
Herculis Monzei Portus.	—————	257
Herculis Promontorium.	Hirtz Point	9
Hesperia.	Italy	248
—————	Spain	307
Hetruria.	Tuscany	276
Hieron Promontorium.	—————	55
Hierosolyma.	Jerusalem	* 21
Hippo.	Bona	* 181
Hispalis.	Sevil	339
Holmia.	Stockholm	387
Holfatia.	Holftein	368
Horesti.	Highlanders	51
Hortanum.	Orti	286
Hunnum.	—————	39
Hydruntum.	Otranto	300
Hyrcania.	—————	65. * 70
Haga Tironum	—————	96
 I.		
Iadera.	Zara	274
Iaficus Sinus.	—————	* 8
Iazyges Metanastæ.	—————	431
Iberia.	Spain	307
—————	Georgia	* 55
Ibernî Pop.	—————	55
Iberus.	Ebro R.	308
Icaria I.	—————	* 12
Iceni Pop. Brit.	—————	7
Icenorum Venta.	Castor	25
Iconium.	Cogni	* 11
Ida Mons.	—————	464
Idumæa.	—————	* 25. * 36
Idomani Ostium.	Black-Water	23
Jeraus.	Maine R.	55
Iguvium.	Gubioj	290
Ila.	Witle R.	51
Illum.	Troy	* 6
Illiberis.	Granada	343
Illyricum.	Croatia, &c.	444. 445
Iluro.	Oleron I.	111
Inculisma.	Angouleme	95
India extra Gangem.	—————	* 80
————intra Gangem.	—————	ibid.
Inferiores Therma.	Baden	194
Ingena Abrincatuorum.	—————	71
Insula.	Lisse	134
Interamna.	Terni	288
Interamnensis Provincia.	—————	353
Ionía.	—————	* 7
Josedum:	Corbeil	84
Jovis Villæ.	—————	78
Ifanium.	St. John's Fareland	56
Ifauria.	—————	* 11
Ifca.	Ex R.	9
Ifca.	Visk R.	41
Ifca Danmoniorum.	Exeter	9
Ifchalis.	Ivelchester	11
Ifenacum.	Eisenach	216
Ifflus.	Lajazzo	* 11
Ifurium.	Aldborrow	34
Italia.	Italy	248
Ituna.	Eden R.	37
Iturza.	—————	* 25
udaa.	—————	* 25. * 32
udiciacus.	St. Flour	105
uga Ceretanorum.	Puycerda	325
ulia Alba.	Weissenberg	442
uliabona.	Bayeux	70
ulia Cafaria.	Algier	* 179
ulia Liberalitas.	Evora	359
ulia Turris.	Truxillo	338
ulia Pax.	Beja	359
ulii Forum.	Friuli	268
uliomagus.	Angers	94
ulum Firmum.	Motril	345
ulum Præsidium.	Sontarem	358
ustinopolis.	Capo d' Istria	267
ustinopolis.	Orta	* 47
utzæ Pop.	—————	365
 K.		
Kera Rupes	—————	465
 L.		
L Aberus.	Killair-Castle	56
Labro.	Leghorn	279
Lacedæmon.	Mistira	459
Lacus Augusti.	Lugo	316
——Setantiorum.	Windermere	37
Latitia.	Liesse	87
Lanigara.	Guagida	* 177
Laodicea.	—————	* 9
Lappones Pop.	—————	356
Lapurdum.	Bayone	110
Lariffa.	—————	* 52
Latini Pop. Ital.	—————	283
Latinicum.	Lagny	84
Latium.	Italy	248
——Campagne	of Rome	283
Lavatra.	—————	35
Laudanum.	Laon	86
Lauretum.	Loretto	289
Laus Pompepii.	Lodi	261
Lebretum.	Albret	110
Lectodurum.	Stony Stratford	20
Legedia.	Auranthes.	71
Legeolium.	Castleford	34
Legio.	Leon	335
Leglo Secunda.	Caer-Lheion	41
Lelanonomius.	Levin R.	51
Lemanis.	—————	17
Lemnós.	Stalimene	466
Leodium.	Liege	147
Leonis Castrum.	Holt	44
Leopolis.	Lamberg	410
Lepidi Regium.	Reggio	263
Leria.	Lero I.	* 12
Lesbos.	Metelin I.	* 12
Lethe.	Lima R.	352-
Leucadia.	St. Maura	462
Leucarum.	Logbor	41
 E c e e		
Leuci Montes.	Sfachia	464
Leucopibia.	Whiterne	51
Leucoia.	Nicosia	* 13



Nazaca.	Callar	* 16	Nemetum.	Spire	160	Palus Mazotis.	—	ibid.
Media.	—	* 65	Nemofium.	Nemours	85	—Sagmatiz.	—	ibid.
Mediolanum.	Meried	43	Neocæfarea.	Ticat	* 10	—Tragitia	—	* 11
—Ital.	Milian	260	Neodunum.	Nogent le Rotry	93	Pamphylia	—	ibid.
Mediomatricos.	Metz	126	Nepete.	Neger	286	Pannonia.	Hungary, &c.	431
Meduacus Ager.	La Motte	93	Neritia.	St. Mauri I.	462	Panormus.	Palermo	302
Medusta.	Mante	85	Nevotium.	Niys	182	Paphia.	Baffos	* 13
Megalopolis.	Leantari	450	Nice.	Niich.	* 6	Paphlagonia.	Roni	9
Megara.	—	454	Nicomedia.	Imigid	ibid.	Papirianum.	Perpignan	114
Melas Fl.	—	* 10	Nicofia.	—	* 13	Parnassus M.	—	456
Meſita.	Malta I.	* 223	Nidum.	Nedb	41	Paropamiffus.	—	* 65.
Melodunum.	Molon	84	Nigra Corcyra.	Ciozola	467	Parthia.	—	ibid.
Melos.	Millo	454	Nigritiarum Regio.	—	* 166	Patara.	—	* 11
Memphis.	Grand Cairo	* 188	Nile Fl.	—	* 201.	Patavium.	Padua	271
Menapii Pop. Hibern.	—	55	Nivernum.	Nevers	97	Pathmos.	Palinofa I.	* 12
Menova.	San Lycar	342	Nodius.	Nid R.	52	Patinum Meldarum.	Meaux	79
Menova.	Velez Malaga	345	Norba Cæfareâ.	Alcantara	338	Patricia Colonia.	Cordova	340
Merobriga.	Ciudad Rodrigo	335	Norwegia.	Norway	375	Pax Augusta.	Badajoz	337
Mefena.	Marajob	* 11	Nopium.	Stiffentead	56	—Julia.	Beja	359
Mefopotamis.	Diarbeck	* 45	Novantes Pop. Scot.	—	47	Peloponnefus.	Morea	449
Metanaſtæ Jazyges.	—	431	Novantium.	Chefren. Mull.	52	Pelufium.	Damietta	* 188
Metaris Æſtuarium.	The Waſhes	25	Novidubum.	Nogent le Rotry	93	Pennocrucium.	—	31
Metenſis Urbs.	Metz	126	Novocomum.	Camo	261	Peræa.	—	* 25.
Methone.	Midon	458	Noviodunum.	Noyen	87	Perga.	—	* 11
Metita.	Marajob	* 11	—Vadicæſcium.	—	97	Pergamus.	—	* 7
Metolia.	Rafetta	* 188	Noviomagus Belg.	Nimeguen	165	Perrafium.	Perugia	288
Midzum.	—	* 9	—Brit.	—	17	Perfeopolis.	—	* 74
Miletus.	Palafchia	* 8	—Gall.	Noyen	87	Perfus.	—	* 65.
Mimallus.	Millo	454	—Germ.	Spire	190	Peffinus.	—	* 9
Mimatium.	Meude	116	Numidia.	—	166.	Pefures Pop.	—	349
Minara.	Habet	* 177				Petrianæ.	Perith	38
Minerogoda.	Maffer	223				Petroconium.	Perithene	108
Mocontiacum.	Mentz	183				Phæcia.	Corfu I.	452
Modona.	Slane R.	56				Pharos.	Magraf	* 188
Mœnia.	—	* 8				Pharfalus.	Fafda	453
Mœfia.	Servia & Bulgaria	469				Pharfelis.	Fionda	* 11
Mæguntia.	Mentz	183				Philadelphia.	—	* 8
Moma.	Man I.	45				Phœnicia.	—	* 14.
Monzchium.	Marajob	197				Phrygia Major.	—	* 9
Mons Argi.	Montargis	97				—Minor.	—	* 6
—Luellarum.	—	15				Piftavium.	Poitiers	94
—Realis.	Manderi	254				Pinnacolum.	Pignerol	254
—Relatus.	Marlaix	89				Pintia.	Valladolid	333
—Vitarum.	Wittemberg	214				Pifidia.	—	* 11
Montes Leuci.	Stachia	464				Pifidona Zaira.	—	* 185
Mopfeuffa.	—	* 11				Pityufæ Infalz.	—	346
Morbium.	Moresby	38				Plata.	—	454
Moricambi.	—	ibid.				Plinthine.	Arabs Tower	* 188
Meridunum.	Caermarthen	42				Pomona.	Mainland I.	* 52
Meridunum.	Seaton	9				Pompeiopolis.	—	* 9
Murgia.	Marcia	346				Pons Aëlii.	Pont Eland	39
Murfa.	Effeck	443				—Syriacus.	Pont fur Yonne	79
Mutina.	Madena	263				Pontes.	Colbrook	26
Mycene.	Charia	462				Pontus.	Genech	* 9
Myndus.	—	* 8				—Cappadocius.	—	* 10
Myra.	—	* 11				—Galaticus.	—	* 10
Myrina.	—	* 7				—Ptolemaicus.	—	ibid.
Myfia.	—	* 6				—Euxinus.	Black-Sea	* 59
						Portus Adurni.	Ederington	16
						—Deorum.	Maſagran	* 179
						—Herculi Monaci.	—	257
						—Magnus.	Maſalquulir	* 179
						—Santonum.	Roche	95
						—Stariocanus.	St. Pol de Leon	90
								285
								30
								* 8
								* 6
								17
								51
								55
								358
								453
								460
								Promon.



# Places in EUROPE, ASIA and AFRICA.

xv

Promontorium Ostropitarum. — 42	Salina.	Chesterfield	20	Stagna Scythica. — 481
—— Rhium & Antirhium — 456	Salmantica.	Salamanca	335	Stampa. Estampes 97
—— Robogdium. — 56	Salmurium.	Saumur	94	Stapula. Estaples 76
—— Rutuba. North-Cape 381	Silona.	Castri	455	Stariocanus Portus. St. Pol de Leon 90
—— Sacrum. Cape St. Vincent 349	Salutis Pons.	Haitbron	194	Stephanopolis. Cronstadt 441
—— Venicium. — 56	Samarina.	Amiens	* 25. 29	Sterdontium. Cassel 185
Protolitia. Brudhow-Castle 39	Samarobrina.	Cephalogna	462	Strigonium. Gran 438
Prusa ad Olymp. Bursa * 6	Samos.	—— Inf.	* 12	Strophades Insula. — 462
Prolemaia. Acre * 18	Samofata.	Scempfat	* 15	Stuccia. Ystwith R. 43
Ptolemoniacus Pontus. — * 10	Sanitium.	Senex	118	Suecia. Sweden 382
Puteloi. Puzzoli 295	Santonis.	Saintes	109	Suevia. Portugal 349
Pylus Messeniaca. Navarino 459	Saracossa.	Syracuse	303	Suevio. Schwaben 193
	Sarabris.	Toro	336	Suiones Pop. — 356
	Sardis.	——	* 8	Suitia. Schweiz 233
	Sarmatia.	Poland, &c.	397	Sulloniaca. Brockley-Hill 22
	Sarnia Inf.	Garnsey I.	56	Sulsana. — * 65
	Sarrii Pop.	——	349	Syberos. — 450
Q	Saturnia.	Italy	248	Sylva Ducis. Bois-le-Duc 138
Quiriaca Aula. Guerande 88	Scalabis.	Scantartin	358	Sylvanectum. Senlis 86
Quiza. Oran * 179	Scalona.	Afcalon	* 23	Sylvania. Underwald 233
	Scamandria.	——	* 7	Synope. Sinope * 9
	Scandia.	Norway and Sweden	356	Syria. Sourie * 14
R	Schaphusia.	Schaffhausen	235	Syrtes. Mecellata * 184
Racovia. Cracow 401	Schedia.	Rosetto	* 188	
Randavara. Ransfrew 52	Sclavi Pop.	——	443	T.
Rutæ. Leicester 27	Scodrus Mons.	Chimera	466	
Rhottibius. Tav. Frith 41	Scudera	——	450	
Ratiastum. Angouleme 95	Scupi Lonia.	——	470	
Ravis. Trebis R. 56	Scythica Stagna.	——	481	T
Reacus. Rhe I. 97	Sebastia.	Sivas.	* 10	T
Ricino. Racine 52	Sebastopolis.	——	* 7	T
Regia. — 56	Sebastiames Ager.	La Bresse	101	T
Regium.	Secantia.	Siguenza	333	T
Regium Lepidi. Reggio 263	Sedunum.	Sion	238	T
Regni Pop. Brit. — 7	Sedunum.	Seghill	39	T
Regnum. Ringwood 13	Segelocum.	Littleburton	29	T
Regulbium. Reculver 17	Segobriga.	Segorbe	327	T
Rei Apollonarii. Reez 117	Segontiaci Pop. Brit. — 13	——	13	T
Reiteste. Rhefel 78	Segontium.	Caernarvon	44	T
Remorum Caput. Rheims ibid.	Segorium.	Suja	256	T
Reigonium. — 52	Segusianorum Fanum. — 104	——	104	T
Rheba. Rheban 56	Segustero.	Sistron	119	T
Rhedones. Rennes 88	Seleucia.	——	* 50	T
Rhingovia. Rhintal 240	Seleucia Trachea. — * 11	——	* 11	T
Rhium Promont. — 456	Selgovæ Pop. Scot. — 47	——	47	T
Rhodigium. Rovigo 271	Sella seu Sala. — * 174	——	* 174	T
Rhodumna. Rouanne 104	Sentica.	Zamora	335	T
Rhodus. Rhodes I. * 13	Senus.	Shannon R.	56	T
Rhutupiz. Richburrew 17	Sephagia.	Sapienza I.	462	T
Ribodunum. Preston 36	Septa.	Centa	* 174	T
Ricolocus. Richelieu 96	Septempeda.	S. Severino	289	T
Rigia. Lough-Regith 56	Sequana.	Seine R.	99	T
Robogdii. Robogh ibid.	Setantiorium Lacus. Windermere 37	——	37	T
Robogdium Promont. — ibid.	Sicyon.	Basilica	462	T
Roma. Rome 283	Sidon.	Sayd	* 18	T
Romuli Fanum. St. Remo 257	Siena.	Ajna	* 190	T
Rothomagus. Rouen 68	Siga.	Humambar	178	T
Rubieni. — 207	Siga Fl.	Tefne R.	* 176	T
Rupella. Rochel 95	Silenus.	Islenos	* 11	T
Rupes Fucaldi. Rochefaucut 96	Silius Fesula.	Fiesoli	298	T
Rupifortium. Rochefort 95	Silures Pop. Brit. — 7	——	7	T
Ruffia Alba. Muscovy 413	Silurum Venta.	Caerwent	40	T
Rutanum. Ranton 32	Sipontum Novum.	Manfredonia	300	T
Ruteni. Rhodes C. 108	Sinus Astacenus. — * 6	——	* 6	T
Rutebz Promont. North Cape 321	—— Dunus.	Dunefley	35	T
Rutuli Pop. — 283	—— Vararia.	Murray Bay	52	T
Byssadium. Mellila * 175	Sisia.	Sifeg	445	T
	Sitomagus.	Thetford	25	T
	Sitones Pop.	——	356	T
	Sittace.	——	* 52	T
S	Smyrna.	Ismir	* 7	T
Sabandia. Savoy 242	Sole aut Pompeipolis. — * 11	——	* 11	T
Sagalassus. — * 11	Solodurum.	Solothurn	234	T
Saguntum. Morviedro 327	Sondrisio.	Sondro	237	T
Sala. Sale * 173	Sorbiodunum.	Old Sarum	12	T
Sala aut Sella. — * 174	Sparta.	Mistra	459	T
Salamis. Famagusta * 13	Spiga.	——	* 6	T
Salamis. Colure 465	Spinæ.	Spinham	14	T
Salassii Pop. — 243				T
Salde. Algier * 179				T
				Tobius







# A

## GENERAL INDEX

### OF THE

## PRINCIPAL MATTERS.

*Note, The Numeral Letters denote the Pages of the Introduction; and where an Asterisk is added to the Figure, it means the Page to be in the Second Part.*

## A:

<b>A</b> cademies Royal in Paris	82
Abyssinia, (K. of) assisted by the Portuguese	* 202
—Christianity Preach'd there by Philip the Eunuch	ibid.
Adam and Eve, their Sepulchre	* 104
Adriatick Sea, whence so named	271
Egypt, whence that Name	* 187
Etna Mount, it's Eruptions	303
Africa, whence that Name	* 165
Agamemnon, Argos the Metropolis of his Kingdom	461
Agbarus, the Story of his Inviting Christ to Edessa	* 46
Air, Definition, Properties, &c.	xlii, &c.
Aix la Chapelle, or Aken: Treaty there	66, 227
Aken, the Seat of Charlemaign 227. famous for Baths	227
Albigenses and Waldenses, their Origen	113
Alexander the Great, where his first Battle with the Persians * 6 where his Second * 11 * 12 and the Third	* 51
How far he pass'd into India * 85 where his vast Beds and Armour were placed	ibid.
Alman, whence that Name deriv'd	172
Amber, found in Prussia	404
Amber Beads, us'd for Money	* 217
Amazons, where they liv'd	* 10
Amazons River describ'd	* 303
Ammonites, their Countrey	* 24
Amorites, their Countrey	* 24
Andes, or Mountains in America describ'd	* 288
St. Andrew's Bones, remov'd to Scotland	50
Angles, from whom England nam'd, their Original Countrey	371
Anjou, how annex'd to the English Crown	94
Antwerp, it's vast Trade some time	140
Antilles Islands, why so call'd	* 277
Aqua-Regalis, why it dissolves Gold only	xxvii
Aquila Wood, where the best found	* 123
Aquileia, how considerable anciently	267
Aquitain Dutchy, it's Succession and Conveyance to the English	106
Arabians, Character and History of that People	* 37
Archangel, the English first Traded thither	426
Arcopagus Council, at Athens establish'd	455
Argonauts, the Port whence they sail'd	453
—History of their Voyage	* 56
Armenia, it's History and present State	* 53
Armenians, of their Religion	* 63
Arragon, it's great Priviledges before Phil. II. destroy'd	321

Assyrian Monarchy	45
Athens, the Air of it remarkably healthy	454
Athenians, the Founders of Law and Science	ibid.
Atlas Mount describ'd	* 195, 6
Augustan or Lutheran Confession, when and where made	195
Avignon. Popes resided there for Seventy Years	120
Aureng-Zebe, his History and Character	* 93 * 94
his Death	105
Austrasia, Ancient Name of Part of France	61
Austrian Family, History of it	203
Azoph, it's Situation correctly	424, 482
Azores Islands, their Discovery and Description	365

## B.

<b>B</b> abel Tower describ'd	* 50
Babylon describ'd	* 49
Bahians in India, what	* 91
Bath and Wells, when United in the Bishop's Title	11
Baths of Dax, 110 many in Germany	194, 237, &c.
Battle of Spurs	131
Beemster, formerly a Lake	159
Belgium, whence so named	127
Bell, great one at Rouen 68 at Ghent 136 at Moscow	421
Bell at Borja, said to ring of it's self against Calamities	323
Bengal, no such City	* 104
Bergh Towns, in Hungary	435
Bermudas Islands, had the name of Summer, from Sir Geo. Summers * 273 when the English settled there	ibid.
Bertele and Areck, chew'd by the Indians	* 84
Bird's-nest, (Edible) a nourishing Food	* 122
Biscay, never Conquer'd by the Moors	319
Bitumen, it's Nature and Use	xxi
Blessings and Curses, on Mounts Gerazim and Ebal	* 30
Boiars in Russia, the Emperor's Counsellors	415
Boiling-Spring, in Dauphine	119
Borough English, what	29
Bramines, are Indian Priests	* 91
Brasil, when discover'd	* 307
Brasilians, Character of that People	* 307 * 311
Breda, how descended to the E. of Nassau	141
Bretaign, how United to the Crown of France	87
Bruges, the great Trade some time there	129, 136
Bucaniers, their Actions against the Spaniards in America	283
Bumath's-Hole, a notable Cave in Germany	218
Burg-grave, what	175
Burgundy Kingdom, the Succession	103
How it devolv'd to Spain	182

F f f f

Bür.



Burgundy Province, how obtained by the French  
Burgundians, their Origine

103  
103

## C.

**C**acao, the best grows at Caracas \* 285  
Cadmus, the History of him 454  
Calais, when taken and lost by the English 76  
Camels, that Creature describ'd \* 156, \* 197  
Cambalu, concerning that City \* 79  
Campi Catalaunici, acted for a famous Battle 77, 113  
Canaan, it's Ancient State, and the Nations that Inhabited it \* 24  
Canal of Languedoc 112 it's Sluices 113  
Canal attempted from the Don to the Wolga. 418  
Canada River, it's Cataracts \* 230 \* 236  
Canary Islands, when discover'd \* 220 why so named ibid.  
Candace, Queen of Ethiopia \* 202  
Candia, Account of it's Siege 463  
Cape Good Hope, when discover'd 219  
—The Country about it describ'd ibid.  
Caracas, where the best Cacao \* 285  
Caraman Alcinous, a Nobleman of Lycia, erected a Kingdom \* 11  
Caravans in Asia, describ'd \* 155  
Carmelite Monks, whence deriv'd \* 21 \* 29  
Carthage, not the same with Tunis \* 181  
—Where it stood \* 182  
Caspian Sea, why it's Waters are always of equal height \* 77  
Castile and Arragon, when those two Crowns United 312, 321  
Catalonia, the Natives of ready Wit 323  
Cave, where Obadiah hid the Prophets \* 30  
Caucasus Mountain, describ'd \* 59  
Cecrops, the Founder of Athens, when he lived 455  
Chambers of Accounts in France, what and where seated 63  
Champagne, how convey'd to the French King 80  
Charlemain, his Actions 61 and Grandeur 173  
Chili, when discover'd \* 324 Character of the Inhabitants \* 325 never Conquered by the Inga's ibid.  
Children of Hamelen, seduc'd into a Cave by a Piper 218  
China, 500 Leagues nearer to Europe than the old Maps make it \* 137 Number of its Cities, People, &c. ibid. Character of the People \* 140 History of the Tartar Revolution \* 141 A Marble found there mentioning the Messiah \* 144  
Christ, the Place where he fed Five Thousand \* 28  
Where he raised the Daughter of Jairus ibid. Where he raised the Widow's Son \* 29 Where he raised Lazarus \* 33 Where Crucified ibid. Whence Ascended to Heaven \* 32  
Christianity very early Preach'd in India \* 84  
Chusan in China, English East India Company settled there \* 145  
Cicero, where he was kill'd 296 Where Exiled 451  
Cimbri, whence so named 372  
Cinnamon, grows only at Ceylon \* 125  
Cinque Ports 17  
Circles of the Empire 179  
Cistercian Monks, when Founded, and why so named 99  
Clock at Lunden in Sweden, extraordinary ingenious 389  
Cloth incombustible, the Stone wherof it was made 465  
Cloth used for Money \* 214 \* 217  
Cloves, where they grow \* 129  
The Tree and Fruit describ'd \* 130  
Cnut Mack, when instituted 100  
Coal, it's Substance and Nature xxi.  
Codrus K. of Athens, his Story 455  
Coffee, its Tree describ'd \* 44  
Colleges of Oxford, the Founders Names and Times 19  
—Cambridge, ditto 25  
Colossus at Rhodes, it's Magnitude \* 13  
Coins (French) — — — — — 64

Columbus, discovered America \* 226  
Where he first touched 274  
The Part of it given him for Reward \* 271  
Congo, the Inhabitants Converted to Christianity \* 215  
Consanguineous Punishments in Japon \* 153  
Copernicus System of the World iv.  
Coptites, Christians of Egypt \* 187  
Coptus, Anciently the Name of the Capital City of Egypt \* 187  
Corinth, it's ancient and present State 461  
Cossacks, an Account of that People 412, 423  
Court of Aids in France, what and where seated 64  
Coxinga, a Famous Chinese Prince, his History \* 147  
Cran or Campi Lapidei, near Arles 118  
Cretans, Inventors of Navigation, Arrows, &c. 425  
Cressly, Battle there 75  
Cuttyres in India, what \* 91  
Cyprus, the Kingdom of it given by K. Rich. I. to Guy de Luyfignan \* 13

## D.

**D**anewalk, a notable ancient Wall in Sleswick 371  
Darien, where the Scots endeavoured to settle \* 284  
David, (K.) the Places of his Retirement when Persecuted by Saul \* 31 \* 34  
St. Davids, sometime an Arch-Bishoprick 42  
Dauphine, whence so named 119  
How convey'd to the Crown of France ibid.  
A Day left in encompassing the Earth xiv. \* 147  
Dayro, the Title of the Kings of Japon 152  
Delphian Oracle describ'd 455-6  
Denmark, when the Crown was made Hereditary 366  
Denis the Areopagite, not in France as pretended 59  
Despotes, of the Morea 457  
Deucalion, Reign'd in Thessaly 452  
Diamond Mines in Golconda, how discovered \* 111  
The Mines describ'd, and Manner of finding the Stones \* 112  
Diamonds found in Borneo 129  
Diana's Temple at Ephesus, it's Magnitude \* 8  
Dieren Palace 164  
Dort, Synod there 158  
Drake, (Sir Fran.) his Actions in America \* 283, 284  
Dunkirk, when taken by the English 155  
Ductility of Metals xxvii.  
Dyet of the Empire 179 Where held 198

## E.

**E**agle, Artificial one, that flew a Mile 172  
The Earth, it's Globular Form xiv.  
—it's Substance xx.  
Earthquake, cause of it xxv.  
Earthquake at Smirna \* 7  
—at Jamaica \* 276  
East, Emperors of the East, a Table of their Succession 474  
East Indies, when first sailed to \* 85  
Eckbar the Great, Emperor of Indostan \* 26  
Edessa; a Christian Principality in the time of the Holy War \* 47  
Edomites, Character and History of them \* 36  
Election Courts in France, what 64  
Electors, of the Empire 176  
Elephants, the Stature and Age of them \* 90 Their Nature ibid.  
Elijah, the Place of his Birth \* 31 Where he encreased the Widow's Oyl \* 29 Where fed by Ravens \* 31  
Whence taken up to Heaven \* 32  
Embsen, sometime the Staple for English Cloth 224  
Emperors of Germany 174 The Emperor's Power 175  
Emperors resided sometime at Trabezond \* 10  
England, the Christian Religion planted there 3 Ancient State and first Inhabitants 2, 4 Government 5, 6, 7 Saxon



Saxon Hierarchy 5. Succession of the Kings 5. Ecclesiastical Government 6. 7  
 English Language 3  
 English murdered at Amboyna \* 131  
 — at Pulo Condore \* 121  
 English East-India Company where they lately settled in China \* 145  
 Esau, the Countrey of his Posterity \* 36  
 Esbeck, its Bridge described 443  
 Estates of France formerly like the English Parliament 63  
 Ethiopians, the Character of that People \* 201  
 Exhalation from the Earth in Wales 43  
 Euxine Sea described \* 59

## F.

Farnese (Alex. D. of) the Story how his Life was saved 262  
 Ferro, the Island where the French placed the first Meridian \* 220. the difference between that and Teneriff xii  
 Feather-Pictures, curiously made \* 259  
 Fire, its production, effects, &c. xxii  
 — Of Subterraneous Fires xxiv  
 — How it Dissolves Metals. xxv  
 Fountains, the Origine of them xxvii, &c.  
 Formosa, a particular Description of that Island \* 147  
 Franche Compté, when taken by the French 101  
 France, whence they came and why so called 61 Conquer Gaul ibid.  
 Franconia, whence Denominated 187  
 France, Taxes and Kings Revenue 64. Government and Courts 63. Provinces 67  
 French Kings, the Succession of them from Pharamond 61. 62  
 Frizii Antiqui, their Countrey 168  
 Fuggers, a noble Family at Augsburg. 195

## G.

Gallas, a People of Æthiopia \* 200  
 Gavel-kind, what 17  
 Gaul ancient, its several Divisions 61. Goths in Gaul 61 and Burgundians 61  
 Gauls, their ancient Language the same with the British 59  
 Besiege the Capital 60. Conquer'd by the Romans 60  
 Generality in France, what 64  
 Georgians, Character of that People \* 55  
 Gergesites, their Countrey \* 24  
 German, whence that Name was derived 171  
 Gold, very much in Monomotapa \* 218 and at Sumatra \* 127  
 Gold-Mines: \* 271. 284. 287. 293. 294. 324  
 Golden-Bull, why so called 176 kept at Francfort 188  
 Goliath, where kill'd by David \* 34  
 Goths, their Origine in Sweden 383  
 Gothish Kings in Spain 310  
 Grain-Coast in Guinea, so called from the Grain of Paradise, or Cardamum that grows there \* 208  
 Granada, how long a Moorish Kingdom 343  
 Grand Seigniors Eldest Son resides at Amasia \* 10  
 Greece, the part of Europe first Inhabited 448  
 Greek Emperors resided at Nice \* 6 and at Prabezond \* 10  
 Green-land, some English wintered there \* 339 an account of the Cold, and long Night there \* ibid.  
 Greenlanders, a Character of that People \* 335  
 Guebres, or ancient Persians, their Religion \* 63  
 Guelphs Family, a notable story of its Origine 217  
 Guns invented 172

## H.

Halle, Shrine of Virgin Mary there much revered 144  
 Haly, the Reason of the Sect of Mahometans from him \* 62  
 Hanibal, where he killed himself \* 6  
 Hans-Towns, what 176  
 Heat and Cold at the same time in the same Latitude \* 107  
 Hercules Pillars, where seated \* 341  
 Herod, where smitten by God \* 30  
 Heydukes, what 433  
 Hindows, the ancient Inhabitants of India \* 89  
 Hivites, their Countrey \* 24  
 Horseman-ship, the People of Colophon expert in it \* 7  
 the Persians the same \* 61  
 Hottentots Character of that People \* 219  
 Humane Sacrifices very great made by the Mexicans \* 266  
 Hussars, what 433  
 Husse (John) 206

## I.

Jacob, where he was met by the Angels \* 31. where he wrestled with an Angel \* 31. where he met his Brother \* 31. \* 34  
 Jacobs Well \* 21  
 Jacobite Christians, whence that Sect derived \* 46. \* 47  
 Japon, History of Revolution there \* 151. the Grandeur of the Monarch ibid. His Court described \* 154. when Christianity expelled thence \* 153. when Europeans first Traded thither \* 153  
 Japonese, a Character of that People \* 151  
 James VI. King of Scotland Married at Christina 379  
 Jasons Voyage to Colchis \* 56  
 Jerusalem, its ancient State \* 33. present State \* 21  
 Imperial Chamber, what 177. where held 190  
 Imperial City, what 176  
 Indians, a Character of that People \* 84. \* 91  
 Indostan, whence that name \* 89  
 Inga's K. of Peru, History of them \* 300  
 The Wisdom of their Government 301  
 Inundation Annual in Syam \* 117. in Cochinchina \* 122  
 in Suz \* 171. in Ægypt \* 224. in Negroland \* 205  
 St. John Baptist where Beheaded \* 30. \* 32  
 Joseph's Sepulchre \* 21  
 Ireland first Peopled from Britain 52. Christianity planted there ibid. anciently very Learned 53. when Conquered 52  
 Provinces and Counties 54  
 Iroquois, the Cruelty of that People \* 235  
 Isaac, the place where Abraham intended to Sacrifice him \* 33  
 Ishmael, where his Posterity lived 38  
 Israelite Spies, where they cut the Bunch of Grapes \* 35  
 Isbahan Described \* 72  
 Isthmian-Games, whence so named 462  
 Julian the Apostle, where Slain \* 51  
 Justice-Seats instituted by Samuel \* 32  
 Jutes, that Invaded Britain their Countrey 372

## K.

King of the Romans 175  
 Knox (Cap. Rob.) his account of Ceylon \* 126

## L.

L Acque, what it is \* 101  
 Latitude and Longitude those Terms Defined xli  
 Lake called Czernitzzer-zec in Germany, of wonderful Nature 203  
 Landgrave



- Landgrave, what 175  
 Laplanders, an Account of those People 391  
 Lepanto, the famous Battle there 456  
 Lightning, Definition of it xlix  
 Lithuania, how united to Poland 406  
 Load Stone, its Nature xxxiii. &c.  
 — Enquiry into the causes of its Virtue ibid.  
 Lodowick King of Hungary, Defeated by the Turks 439  
 The Fatal consequences of it ibid.  
 Lombards in Italy 259. Pavia the Metropolis of their Kingdom 261  
 Longitude of Saratt corrected 83  
 Longitude of many places corrected xviii  
 Legend described \* 263  
 Lion Palace 164  
 Loretto, the House of the Virgin and the Shrine there Described 289  
 Lot, the Cave where he and his Daughter retired \* 34  
 Loudon, a noted Imposture there 94  
 Louisiana, not so large as Henepin represents it \* 235  
 Louvesleine Fashion, whence so named 158  
 Luther when and where he opposed Popery 173
- M.
- M**acao in China, the Sunday there is Saturday in the Philippine Islands 147  
 Madras, the Indian Town at Fort St. George \* 114  
 Madrid, not a City 329  
 Maestricht, the Bishoprick removed to Liege 142 when that Town was gained by the Hollanders ibid.  
 Magellan first sailed round the Earth \* 329 where he Dyed \* 133  
 Magellanic Strait, when Discovered \* 326  
 Magdeburg Duchy, how descended to the Marquess of Brandenburg 211  
 Maire of the Palace in France, what that Office was 61  
 Mahomet his History \* 433  
 Mahometans visit the Kiblah at Mecca in Devotion, rather than Mahomet's Tomb \* 43  
 Malayan Language, understood all over India \* 120  
 Malta, its Properties xxi  
 Mamelukes, whence derived \* 58  
 — their Monarchy in Egypt \* 192  
 Mamelucs People of Paraguay, their Character \* 321  
 Mamora (Sea of) why so named \* 6  
 Marathon, the famous Battle there 455  
 Marse-grave, what 175  
 Marcellus, said to be Founded by the People of Foggia \* 7  
 Massacre at Paris 59  
 Mastick, plentiful in Scio \* 12  
 Mausoleum built by Artemesia \* 8  
 Mediterranean Sea, its Length, &c. 150  
 Melchisedec, where his Royal Seat \* 30  
 Mengrelians, Character of that People \* 57  
 Mermaids, seen in the Lake Zaire \* 214  
 Meridian, the first Meridian laid at Ferro \* 221  
 Meteors, the several kinds xlv. their Nature and Effects xlv.  
 Mexico City described \* 260 History of its Monarchs \* 264  
 when Conquered by the Spaniards ibid.  
 Mice and Rats, a Bishop of Mentz devoured by 'em 184  
 Mineral Waters at Bourbon 99  
 at Spaw 148  
 Mithridates, where born and buried \* 9  
 Moabites, their Country \* 24  
 Mogul, Great Mogul Emperor of India, his Power, Wealth, &c. \* 91 \* 92 History of those Monarchs \* 92-3  
 his rich Throne described \* 97  
 Mondovi, the Rebellion there 254  
 Monsoons or Rainy Seasons in India \* 90  
 Montezuma K. of Mexico, his History \* 265
- Moon, of its Motion and Eclipses iv, v.  
 — How it affects the Tides xl.  
 Moon, Mountains of the Moon in Africa \* 218  
 Moors, when they Invaded Spain 311
- N.
- N**antes Edict, when made 88  
 Naptha, its Properties xxi.  
 Nassau, an Account of that Family 186  
 Navel of the Earth, why Delphi so called 456  
 Navigators round the Earth \* 329  
 Nemean Games 462  
 Nestorian Christians, whence that Sect derived \* 49  
 Neustria, Ancient Name of part of France 61  
 Newbury, (Duke of) his Three Daughters Married to Kings, &c. 199  
 Nile River, its Source \* 201 its Course \* 201 \* 224  
 Of its overflowing \* 224  
 Niger, R. its Source \* 205 it overflows like the Nile ibid.  
 Nimeguen Treaty 66  
 Nineveh described \* 52  
 Nitre, how made, &c. xxi.  
 Noah's Ark, where it rested \* 53  
 Nutmegs, where they grow \* 129  
 — the Tree and Fruit described \* 130
- O.
- O**ssa's Dike described 40  
 Og King of Basan, his Countrey \* 24, 31.  
 Olympian Games, and thence Olympiads in Chronology 459  
 Oran in Africa, taken by the Moors \* 179  
 Orang-Outan or Savage Man, where found \* 209  
 Organ, a very large one at Ulm 192  
 Ormus Isle, sometime possessed by the Portuguese \* 74  
 Where they settled after the Loss of it \* 44  
 Ottoman, the History of his Rise 475. \* 53  
 Ovid, where Banished 470
- P.
- P**agoda an Indian Coin, its Value \* 118  
 Palatine of Chester, his Power 32  
 Palatine of the Rhine, made an Elector 189  
 Palestine, whence that Name \* 23  
 The Roman Metropolis of it \* 30  
 Papal Monarchy, History of its Rise and present State 280  
 Paper first made, when and where 234  
 Panathenæan Games 455  
 Paradise, where seated \* 45. \* 48  
 Paradise of India, Cassimere so stilled \* 98  
 Parchment, invented at Pergamus \* 7  
 Parliaments of France, how many and where seated 63  
 Parnassus Mount described 456  
 Pasquin a Statue at Rome, why so called 284  
 Pearls, where the best are found \* 74  
 Pepper, the Tree and Fruit described \* 108  
 Pergamus, the great Library there \* 7  
 Persians, Character of that People \* 62  
 Persepolis, its ancient and present State \* 74  
 Peruvians, Character of that People \* 299  
 St. Peter, where he cured Æneas \* 30  
 St. Peter's Church at Rome described 284  
 Pharsalian Battle 453  
 Phœnicians, their great Ingenuity \* 17  
 Philipians,



**Philippians, Epistle to, where that City** 451  
**Phileteus the Eunuch, erected the Kingdom of Pergamus** \* 7  
**Philistines, their Countrey described** \* 35  
**Piper of Hamelen, a notable Story** 218  
**Platea, the Battle there** 454  
**Pompey, the place of his Death and Burial** \* 37  
**Portuguese Discovery of India** \* 85  
**Potosi, the Wealth of the Silver Mine there** \* 198  
**The Potter's Field** \* 33  
**Presidial in France, what** 64  
**Preller (John) whence that Name** \* 80  
**Printing invented** 155. 172. 184  
**Protestant, whence that Name** 173  
**Ptolemy's System of the Universe** iii.  
**Provence, how conveyed to the French King** 117  
**Pyrrhemian Treaty** 65 Where made 319  
**Pyramids of Egypt described** 189

**Quick-Silver, its Nature, &c.**  
**Quick-Silver Mines**

R.

**Rajapores in India, what** \* 91  
**Rasbootes in India, live upon Rapine** ibid.  
**Rain, reason of the Rainy Monsoons in India** \* 90  
**Rainbow, Natural Account of it** xlv.  
**Reformation of Religion in Germany, an Account of it** 173  
**Rhinocero's, that Beast described** \* 90  
**Rhodes, the Knights of it removed to Maltha** \* 12  
**Rio de la Plata, or the River of Plate described** \* 318  
**Rome described** 283  
**Roupie an Indian Coin, it's Value** \* 91  
**Ruffia, whence that Name** 413

S.

**Salique Law, what, and why so named** 83  
**Salt, its Properties, &c.** xxix  
**Samaritan Temple, where it stood** \* 30  
**Sarazens, Character of that People** \* 37  
**Scanderbeg, his Countrey** 451  
**Schiras Wine, extraordinary good** \* 63 \* 73  
**Sclavi, People powerful in Europe** 443  
**Sclavonian Language, extends very far** ibid.  
**Scots and Picts** 46 Scots came out of Scythia 52  
**Scotland Peopled from Ireland** 2  
**Sea, Nature and Properties of it** xxxix  
**Seleucia, not the Successor of Babylon** \* 50  
**Sepulchre of Scheich-Schi exceeding rich** \* 69 of Fatima  
**the like** \* 71 Of Iman Riza, the same \* 7 of Gogea-  
**mundy, ditto** \* 102  
**Sevagy, the Indian Raja, his History** \* 110  
**Sheba (Queen of) supposed to be of Arabia** \* 43. Of Aethiopia  
**Shells pass for Money** \* 211. 217  
**Sicilian Vespers** 292  
**Sidon, the ingenuity of its Inhabitants** \* 18  
**Silver Mines** \* 255. 257. 259. 261. 262.  
**270. 298**  
**—The Manner of Refining the Ore** \* 298-9

**Sinai Mount described** 42  
**Smalcaldian League** 185  
**Solcisme, whence that word** \* 11  
**Sophy, the former Title of the King of Persia, now disused** \* 64  
**Spain very fruitful** 299  
**—a little part of it called Europe, where**  
**is a Countrey said to have been long unknown** 318  
**Stamford, sometime a University** 28  
**Steel at Japon very excellent** \* 151  
**Stone, the Nature and Property of it** xxxiii  
**Sulphur, its Nature** xxi  
**Sun, where it stood still at Joshua's Prayer** \* 32  
**Susatt pillaged by Savag** \* 100  
**Syria conquered by the Persians, &c.** 14 By the Sarazins  
**Syrian Kings resided at Damascus** 18

**Tamerlan, his Life and Actions** \* 79  
**—his Royal Seat at Samarcand** \* 80  
**Tapestry invented at Pergamus** \* 7  
**Tallow-Tree in China** \* 137  
**Tartars, Origine, Character and History of that People** \* 67  
**—whence that Name** ibid.

**Telle (Will.) of Switzerland, condemned to shoot an Apple off**  
**his Sons head** 229  
**Teneriffe, the Peak or high Mountain on it Described** 348  
**Terra-Lemnia, an esteemed Medicine** 466  
**Tercera Islands, vide Azores**  
**Thirst, a Monument of Merchant who gave 10000 Ducats**  
**for a Draught of Water** \* 196  
**St. Thomas preached in India** \* 84 Martyr'd at Meliapur  
**Throne of Great Mogul very rich** \* 97  
**Thule, the North-East part of Scotland** 52  
**Thunder, the cause of it &c.** xlviii  
**Thunderbolt Defined** xlix  
**Tide, the reason of it examined** xl  
**Tide, four several Tides at the same time in the Straights**  
**Month** \* 156  
**Remarkable Tide at Negropont 465. wonderful swift at**  
**Cambaia** \* 101  
**Tolu-Balsam, whence brought** \* 284  
**Tree in India, whose Branches sloop down and take fresh Root**  
**Trees a Walk of them one hundred and fifty Leagues long** \* 91  
**Trumpets sound, when the Grand Cham has Dined, &c.** \* 79  
**Turks, History of their Rise and Progress** \* 53  
**—Government and Customs of the Turks** 475  
**Turkish Kings resided at Bursa** \* 6  
**Turkish Kingdom of Damascus** \* 18  
**Turkish Sultans resided at Iconium.** \* 11  
**Tyre, its Revolutions and present State** \* 18

V.

**Vaudois, vide Waldenses**  
**Vellers, a Country in America, given to that Family**  
**Venice, when Founded** 265  
**Venomous Creature, none will live in Ytica** 347  
**Verfailles,**



Verfailles, Castle Garden and Water-works described	113	Wittikind King of Saxony	336
Virgin Mary, her Hair removed, &c.	113	Whales, several Species	336
Virginia first Discovered	113	Manner of killing them	337
Vitriol, its Properties &c.	113		
Unicorns Horn, what	113		
Union of Utrecht	113		
Ur of the Chaldees, where seated	113		

W.

Waldenses

Waldenses, whence Denominated

the Persecutions they suffered

Wales, when conquered

Water, its nature and qualities

Wax and Tallow grow on Trees

West Frizeland

Westphalia, whence so named

Wine of Schiras exceeding good

Wind, Definition of it

Of Mansons or regular Winds

Year, the Months of it according to the Mahometans

Ysbrand Ides, his account of Tartary

his account of Siberia

Zamorin, or King of Calicut, his former Grandeur

Zenobia Queen of Palmyra, her Character

Zisca, the Hussite General; a Drum made of his Skin had

a strange effect on the Enemy

Zuyder-zee in Holland, formerly Dry-land

E I N I S.

